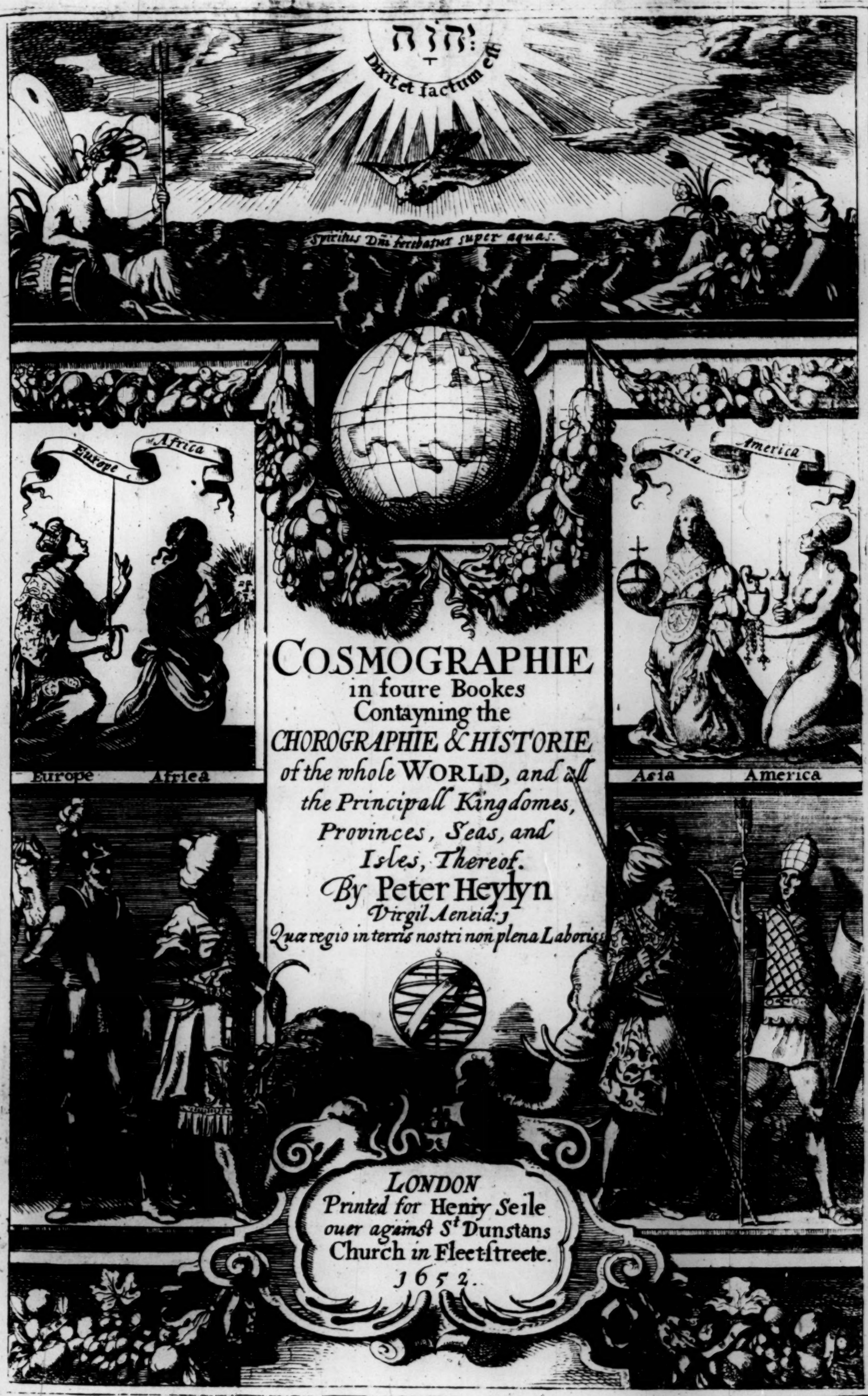


COSMOGRAPHIE

in foure Bookes
Contayning the
CHOROGRAPHIE & HISTORIE
of the whole WORLD, *and all*
the Principall Kingdomes,
Provinces, Seas, and
Isles, Thereof.

By Peter Heylyn

Virgil Aeneid: 1
Quæ regio in terris nostri non plena Laboris?

LONDON
Printed for Henry Seile
ouer against S^t^ Dunstans
Church *in* Fleetstreete.
1652.

COSMOGRAPHIE

In Four Bookes.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE

AND

HISTORIE

Of the whole

VVORLD,

And all the principall Kingdomes, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

Acts 17. 24. 26.

Deus qui fecit mundum, & omnia quæ in eo sunt; fecit ex uno omne genus hominum, inhabitare super universam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.

Plin. in Proem. l. 7.

MVNDVS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Insulæ, insignes Vrbes, ad hunc modum se habent.

LONDON,

Printed for *Henry Seile*, and are to be sold at his Shop over against Saint *Dunstans Church* in *Fleetstreet*.

MDCLII.

TO
THE READER,

The Author rendreth this Account of his Vndertaking and Performance in the following Work.

IT *is a great complaint with many, that they want time either to undertake great matters, or to accompliſh thoſe they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by* Seneca, *that we do not ſo much want, as waſt it.* Non parum temporis habemus, ſed multum perdimus, *as that Author hath it. We triſle out too much of our precious time, as he well obſerveth,* Aut malè agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo; *either in doing ill, or nothing, or elſe things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want time convenient to perform thoſe duties, which are expected from us, in our ſeverall places. Nor have we onely time enough to ſpend, but ſome time to ſpare; ſome privacies and retreats from buſineſs; ſome breathing fits from the affairs of our* Vocations: *and even of them, thoſe times of leiſure and receſs, we are to render an Accompt, in* Cato's *judgement.* Otii reddendam rationem judicabat Cato, *as we read in* Tullie. *In which Accompt, as all men generally are concerned, ſo am I intereſſed therein as much as any. For being by the unhappineſs of my Deſtinie, or the infelicity of the times, deprived of my Preferments, and deveſted of my Miniſteriall Function (as to the ordinary and publique exerciſe thereof) I cannot chooſe but ſay I have leiſure enough; the opportunity of ſpending more idle hours (if I were ſo minded) than I ever expected or deſired. And though perhaps I could have ſpent thoſe times of leiſure, which the change of my affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my ſelf, and more to the advantage of my private fortunes: yet that of* Cato *did ſo over-ballance me, that I was willing to do ſomewhat which might witneſs to inſuing times, how I had paſſed away thoſe hours, and imployed that leiſure. And when I was conſidering of ſome particulars within the compaſs of my power, and anſwerable to that ſmall ſtock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me and diſpoſed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requeſted by ſome friends of no common quality to review my* Geographie; *to make it more complete and uſefull to an Engliſh Reader: My vacancy from buſineſs, uſed by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when firſt made, with neglect enough, my deſuetude from thoſe younger Studies, my great want of Books, the ſad complexion of the times, and the unhandſom entertainment which my endeavours for the publick had lately met with, ſeeming ſufficient to diſſwade me from the undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to*

enjoy my own; or to imploy my ſelf in order to a publick *ſervice, when not alone my private fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church was deſtroyed and diſſipated. But afterwards being preſſed unto it by ſome Members of Parliament, whom I found loath to be denied, and by ſome others of great rank, but ſuch different* Intereſſes, *that I wondred how they could all center upon the ſame* Propoſall: *I thought it at the laſt a more* Chriſtian *dutie to ſatisfie the honeſt deſires of ſo many men, than to* ſacrifiſe *any longer to my own privacy and retiredneſs, to which I had intended to devote my ſelf. So I reſolved to venture on it, though well I ſaw that my condition in ſo doing might be reſembled unto that of the* Iſraelites *in the Land of* Egypt: *of whom the* Task-maſters *did expect the full tale of* Bricks, *and yet denyed them their accuſtomed allowance of* Straw *and* Stubble. *My caſe in this not much unlike to that of the Duke of* Alva, *Who being under the diſpleaſure of the King of* Spain *in quality of a Priſoner, without the leaſt aſſurance of recovering the Kings favour, or his own liberty, and yet imployed in that Conjuncture, for the conqueſt of* Portugal; *was wont to ſay,* That he was ſent to conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on.

And here I cannot but remember a pretty accident which befell me in the moneth of January, *An.* 1640. *at what time it had been my ill fortune to ſuffer under ſome miſapprehenſions which had been entertain'd againſt me, and to be brought before the* Committee for the Courts of Juſtice, *on the complaint of M.*Prynne, *then newly return'd from his confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, I confeſs I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience; but moſt deſpitefully reviled and perſecuted with exceſſive both noiſe and violence, by ſuch as thronged about the doors of that* Committee *to expect the iſſue: it being as naturall to many weak and inconſiderate men, as it is to Dogs, to bark at thoſe they do not know, and to accompany each other in thoſe kinds of clamors. And though I had the happineſs to come off cleat, without any cenſure, and to recover by degrees amongſt knowing men, that eſtimation which before had been much endangered, yet ſuch as took up matters upon truſt and Hear-ſay, looked on me as a perſon forfeited, and marked out for ruin. Amongſt others, I was then incountred in my paſſage from* Weſtminſter *to* Whitehall, *by a tall big Gentleman, who thruſting me rudely from the wall, and looking over his ſhoulder on me in a ſcornfull manner, ſaid in an hoarſe voyce theſe words,* Geographie is better than Divinitie; *and ſo paſſed along. Whether his meaning were, that I was a better* Geographer *than* Divine; *or that* Geographie *had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of men, than* Divinitie *was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But ſure I am, I have ſince thought very often of it, and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on thoſe younger ſtuaies, in which I was reſolved to have dealt no more; and thereto, in the Preface to my* Microcoſm, *had obliged my ſelf.*

And it is poſſible enough, that in reſpect of that generall promiſe, I may lie under the cenſure of inconſtancy, and breach of Covenant, *in that I had ſolemnly declared in the aforeſaid* Preface, *that the Reader* ſhould not fear any further inlargements, which might make him repent his (*then*) preſent Markets; that it had received my laſt hand, and that from thenceforth, I would look upon it as a Stranger onely. *But it was meant withall, and expreſſed accordingly, unleſs it were for the* amending of ſuch Errors, of which by the ſtrength of mine own judgement, or any ingenuous information, I ſhould be convicted. *And* Errors *I muſt needs ſay, I have found ſo many on this laſt peruſall, and thoſe not onely* verball, *but* materiall *too; as did not onely free me from that* Obligation, *but did* oblige *me to a further* Review *thereof. For being written in an age, on which the pride of youth and ſelf-opinion might have ſome predominancies, I thought it freer from miſtakes than I ſince have found it: And thoſe miſtakes, by running thorough eight Editions (ſix of them without my peruſall or ſuper-viſing) ſo increaſed and multiplied, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that in caſe the importunity of friends had not inforced me, in a manner, upon this Employment, the neceſsity of conſulting my own fame, and leaving the Work fair behind me to ſucceeding times, would have perſwaded me in the end to doe ſomewhat in it. Which though the laſt, was not the leaſt of thoſe inducements which inclined me to the undertaking of this preſent Work.*

Having thus plainly and ingenuouſly laid down the reaſons which did induce, though

not

not incourage me, unto this performance: It is now fit I should declare what I have done in it, and what the Reader may expect from so great inlargements. And first the Reader is to know, that my design originally, was onely to look over the former Book, to give it a Review, to purge it of the Errors which it had contracted, and not so much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more seriously considered of it, I found sufficient reason to change that purpose, to make it new both in form and matter, and to present it to the world with all those advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived would the benefit be which might from thence redound to those who should please to read it: And I would willingly so fain comply with all expectations, that the short Taper of my life should give light to others in the consuming of it self; Non nobis solum nati sumus, may well become a Christians mouth, though an Heathen spake it. But if all expectations be not satisfied in the completeness of the work, as I fear they will not, I desire it may not be ascribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties which I was to struggle with. Books I had few to help my self with of mine own; nor live I neer so rich a Clergie (most of the Benefices of these parts being poor and mean) as to supply my self from them with such commodities. The greatest helps I had was from Oxford-Librarie, which though but nine or ten miles off from my present dwelling, yet the charge and trouble of the journey, with the loss of time, made my visits to that place less frequent, and consequently the Neighbourhood thereof less usefull to me, than the generality of the design might well comport with. So that when all things are considered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondred at by an equall Reader, how I could come to write so much, with so little helps, upon a subject of such a large and diffused variety, than that in any part thereof I have writ too little. And to say truth, the work so prospered in my hand, and swelled so much above my thought and expectation, that I hope I may with modesty enough use those words of Jacob, Voluntas Dei fuit, ut citò occurreret mihi quod volebam; The Lord God brought it to me, as the English reads it.

In the pursuance of this Work, as I have taken on my self the parts of an Historian and Geographer; so have I not forgotten that I an English-man, and which is somewhat more, a Church-man. As an English-man I have been mindfull upon all occasions to commit to memory the noble actions of my Countrey; exployted both by Sea and Land, in most parts of the World, and represented on the same Theaters, upon which they were acted. And herein I have followed the example of the great Annalist, Baronius. Who pretending in that learned and laborious Work, a sincere History of the Church, and no more than so; yet tells the Pope in his Epistle, that he principally did intend the same, Pro Sacrarum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Autoritate *Romanæ* Ecclesiæ; to manifest therein the Antiquity of such Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this day are taught and exercised in the Church of Kome. And so much I may also say of my self in this performance, though without any by-design to abuse the Reader, that though the Historie and Chorographie of the World be my principall business, yet I have apprehended every modest occasion, of recording the heroick Acts of my native Soil, and filing on the Registers of perpetuall Fame the Gallantrie and brave Atchievements of the People of England. Exemplified in their many victories, and signall services in Italie, France, Spain, Scotland, Belgium, in Palestine, Cyprus, Africk and America, and indeed where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great zeal and piety in converting to the Faith so many of the German and Northern Nations; Franconians, Thuringians, Hassians, Saxons, Danes, Frisons; as also amongst the Scots and Picts, together with those of Lituania and the people of Norwey: by that means more inlarging Christs Kingdom than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to record the Actions, so have I been as carefull to assert the Rights of the English Nation: inherent personally in their Kings, by way of publick interess in the Subject also; as the whole body doth partake of that sense and motion, which is originally in the Head. And of this kinde I reckon the true stating of the Title of the Kings of England to the Crown of France; demonstrating the Vassallage of the Kingdom of Scotland to the Crown of England; vouching the legal Interess of the English Nation, in Right of the first Discovery or Primier Seisin, to Estotiland, Terra Corterialis, New-found-Land, Novum Belgium, Guiana, the Countries neer the Cape of good Hope, and some other places against all Pretenders: insinuating the precedency of the

the English *Kings before thoſe of* Spain; *their Soveraignty and Dominion in the* Britiſh *Ocean, with the great benefit which might from thence ariſe unto us, invaded and almoſt ingroſsed by the* Hanſe *and* Hollanders. *And yet there is another thing which ſpeaks me more an* Engliſhman, *than all theſe together; which I ſhall fall on ſoon enough, and indeed too ſoon, the ſadneſs of the ſubject being well conſidered.*

Next, as a Church-man, *I have taken more eſpeciall notice of the antient and preſent face of* Chriſtianity, *in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the* Hetrodoxies *and opinions of thoſe ſeverall Sects into which it now doth ſtand diſmembred. By which it will appear moſt clearly amongſt other things, that the Doctrin and Government of the Church were of equall ſtanding; that this government was no other than that of* Biſhops; *and that whereſoever* Chriſtianity *did find any admittance,* Epiſcopacie *was admitted alſo as a part thereof: the Goſpel being in moſt places firſt preached by* Biſhops, *or growing to eſteem and ſtrength under their Authority. And it is found on theſe* Recherches, *that as* Eſpiſcopacie *was co-ævall with the Church it ſelf: ſo the* Subordination *of* Biſhops *to their ſeverall* Primates, *and the* Coordination *of thoſe* Primates *amongſt themſelves in the common Government thereof, was of ſuch antiquitie (as being ſetled and confirmed in St.* Cyprians *time, who flouriſhed in the year* 250.) *that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it.* Debere *Epiſcopos* in commune *Eccleſiam* regere, *is a noted* Maxime *in St.* Hierome; *but practically true in the* Communicatoriæ *and* Formatæ, *of the Elder Ages: Which happy courſe had it been preſerved,* Epiſcopacie *had been ſo far from being* made a ſtirrup for *Antichriſt* to mount into his throne, *as the* Smectymnuans *falſly charge it; that it had ſerved rather as a* Martingall *to have kept him down from lifting up his head too high above the reſt of his Brethren. And that this courſe was not preſerved, came not intentionally from the Popes (for that by* Antichriſt *they mean the Popes of* Rome, *is a thing paſt queſtion) but from the Inundation of the barbarous Nations: though I confeſs the Popes were apt enough to make the beſt advantage of thoſe various Accidents, which the diſtreſſes of the Church did preſent unto them. For by the overflowing of the Barbarous Nations,* Chriſtianitie *was either quite extinquiſhed, or the authoritie of the* Primates *trodden under foot; or that intelligence and commerce which had been anciently amongſt them interdicted on good reaſons of ſtate, by ſuch* Heathen *or* Mahometan *Princes, under whom they lived. And then how eaſie was it for the Pope, in the new planting of the Goſpel in theſe Weſtern parts (done either by his Miniſters, or by his Incouragement) to give unto the Biſhops of his own appointing ſuch a limited power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his commands, and afterwards to leſſen their Authoritie, as he ſaw occaſion, by granting large* Exemptions *to Monaſteries, Convents, and Cathedrals; with* Juriſdiction *over the* Parochiall *Churches which belong'd unto them. So that it is moſt evident in the courſe of Story, that the Popes never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superſtitions and Novations on the Church of* CHRIST; *till they had weakened, by degrees, the* Epiſcopall *power. Followed in that deſign, though on different ends, by* Wicliff, *and ſome others in the Ages ſince; who have driven on their private projects under the colour and pretence of a* Reformation. Epiſcopacie *as it was co-ævall with the Church of* CHRIST, *ſo was it the beſt and ſtrongeſt Buttreſs in that ſacred Building. The weakning or ſubverting of which Primitive Order, did either proſtitute the Church to the luſt and tyranny of that proud Uſurper, or expoſe the Patrimonie thereof unto ſpoyl and rapine; or finally ſubject it to the* Anarchy *and licentiouſneſs of* Hetrodoxies *and confuſed Opinions. But I fear I have digreſſed too far in this ſpeculation.*

As a Geographer, *I have been punctuall and exact, in giving unto every Province its peculiar bounds, in laying out their ſeverall Land-marks, tracing the courſe of moſt of the principal Rivers, and ſetting forth the ſituation and eſtate of the chiefeſt Towns; and did once think of beautifying the Work with as many Maps as the ſeverall States and Kingdoms which are here deſcribed. But upon further conſideration, how much it would increaſe the Book both in bulk and price, and conſequently make it of leſs publick uſe than I did intend it; I laid by thoſe thoughts, and reſted ſatisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World: by which the Reader may diſcern how each Countrie lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much leſs all the Towns and Cities which are here expreſſed; and on the other ſide may meet with many Towns of inferior note which are here omitted. And herein I have took ſome pains in ſearching out the firſt Inhabitants of each*

ſeverall

severall Country, as far as I could see by the light of Letters, or go by probable conjectures; in finding out the place of such antient Cities as are now decayed, not easily visible in their ruins; and adding to such Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Originall names. A thing as necessary to the understanding of the Histories of those elder times, as the knowledge of the present names is to the more delightfull reading of our modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be specified and insisted on in a work of this nature; yet would I not have the Reader look for such a punctuall enumeration and description of them, as he may meet withall in those who have written the Chorographie *of some Countrey onely; or think himself unsatisfied in his expectation if he find not here the situation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering place of every Company or Troop of Souldiers, which are presented to him in the Weekly* News-Books. *In all Countreys there are many places which either by the advantage of their situation, or some present exigency of affairs, are fortified and made Towns of Warr; or otherwise remarkable for some signall battell, in these late bustles and commotions of the Christian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and consequently not within the compass of this Discourse: and yet perhaps may grow as famous and considerable in the times to come, as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that shal think the work imperfect (though I confess it to be nothing but imperfections) for some deficiencies in this kinde, may be likned to the Countrey-Fellow in* Aristophanes *(if my memory fail not) who picked a great quarrell with the Map, because he could not finde where his own Farm stood. And such a Countrey-customer I did meet with one, a servant of my elder Brothers, sent by him with some horses to* Oxon, *to bring me and a friend of mine unto his house. Who having lost his way as we passed thorow the Forest of* Whichwood, *and not able to recover any beaten Track; did very earnestly intreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him past the Woods to the open Fields. Which when I had refused to do, as I had good reason, alleging that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him:* That's strange, *said he,* I have heard my old Master your Father say, that you made a Book of all the World, and cannot you finde your way out of the Wood? *Which being spoken out of an honest simplicity, not out of any pretence to wit, or the least thought of putting a blunt jest upon me, occasioned a great deal of merriment for a long time; but I hope to meet with no such Readers. The greatness of the bulk, and consequently of the price, makes me somewhat confident that none but men of judgement and understanding will peruse these Papers: and such as they will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a generall Discourse will fitly bear. Perfection and exactness is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is observed by* Aristotle *in the 2d Book of his Ethicks,* εἰ' ἐστὶ τὸ ἀκριβὲς ἐν ἅπασι τοῖς λόγοις, *as far forth, as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And so much if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reason be expected from me. To look for more were as improper and absurd (in the words of* Aristotle) *as for an* Artist *to expect Tropes of Rhetorick from a Mathematician, or Demonstrations from an Orator.*

Lastly, as an Historian, *I have traced the affairs of each severall Countrey from the first Inhabitants thereof, (such as the* Latines *call* Aborigines, *and the* Greeks Αὐτόχθονες) *till these later times. Which that I might be sure to do on a good foundation, I have took more than common care, to settle all the first Adventurers (after the proud attempt at* Babel) *in their right Plantations: and that too in the way of an* Introduction, *that I might the better know where I was to finde them, and to go on with their affairs with the less disturbance. The rest of their* Occurrences *I have summed into so short an* Abstract, *as may be usefull to the learned in the way of a* Remembrancer; *to the less knowing man, in the way of a Tutor; Brevity in this kinde, I have much indeavoured; but so as to avoid all obscurity also. Nor have I only kept my self to the Storie of Kingdoms, or of the greater* Signieuries, *Estates, or Nations, which are or have been of the greatest consideration in the sway of the world: but looked on the Estates of such Dukes, Earls, and inferiour Princes, as in their times have had the Government of those parts which gave Title to them; whose actions and successions are distinctly specified, and all such alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruin of such Estates, or the transflating of them from one House to another. The Catalogues and Successions of which royall and illustrious Families, I have drawn down unto the yeer* 1648. *towards the expiring of which yeer, I began to set my*

self

ſelf upon this Imployment. And there I fix as on the top of ſome dreadfull Precipice, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of ſuch a nature, that either to ſpeak of them, or to hold our peace, is alike unſafe. In ſuch a caſe it is beſt keeping at a diſtance. For though Truth be the beſt Miſtreſs which a man can ſerve, (Magis amica Veritas, ſaid the great Philoſopher;) yet it is well obſerved withall, that if a man follow her too cloſe at the heels, ſhe may chance to kick out his teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as alſo out of that compaſſionate affection which a true Engliſhman ought to bear his native Country, although in my approaches towards theſe preſent times, I have took notice in ſome other places of ſuch battells, ſieges, and ſucceſſes in the chances of War, as have hapned in theſe later dayes: I have ſorborn to take the leaſt notice of thoſe Tragedies of blood and death, which have been lately acted on the Stage of England. I cannot but with grief confeſs, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars amongſt our ſelves: in which there have been more pitched fields, more ſtrong pieces taken, more notable traverſes of State, and exploits of war, than all the world can parallel in an equall time. But I have too much Engliſh bowels to pleaſe my ſelf in the recitall, or to look back on thoſe unfortunate adventures, which I ſhould rather chooſe to cover with the Act of Oblivion, or bury in the grave of perpetuall ſilence. How gladly I could have recorded theſe exploits of war, had they been exerciſed on a ſubject more proper for them; my willingneſs to take notice upon all occaſions, of the actions and achievements of the Engliſh Nation, will bear witneſs for me. But the imploying of that valor againſt our ſelves, as if not to be conquered but by one another, ſtrikes ſuch horror in me, that I cannot think thereof without much affrightment, nor intimate thus much of it without great reluctancies. I fear it may be ſaid too truly of our late imbroilments, as the Hiſtorian of the Civill Wars betwixt Cæſar and Pompey; Cauſa hujus Belli eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas; that they were principally occaſioned by a ſurfet of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own proſperities; and that that prayer & paſſage in the publick Liturgie (Give peace in our time O Lord) did not reliſh with us: how happy had it been if we had found ſome other field to have tried our valour in? and made ſome forein Country that Aceldama, which ſo fatally was made at home? The diſhonor which we ſuffered in the Iſle of Re, when beat thence ingloriouſly by the French; the forcible and long detention of the Palatinate by the power of the Spaniard; the barbarous butchery at Amboyna, and the beating up of the Spaniſh Fleet within the protection of our Caſtles, by thoſe of Holland; the inſolencies of the Scots, and the rebellions of the Iriſh, might well have ſtirred ſome indignation in an Engliſh breſt. And had we fought upon thoſe ſcores, or on none but them, our victories had deſerved the honor of a ſolemn triumph, denied by the old Roman Laws to a Civill War: But our infelicity (as it ſeems) was like that of Rome, in following thoſe unnaturall wars with ſuch animoſities; when the unrevenged death of Craſſus, the blood of ſo many thouſand of their ſlaughtered Citizens, and the ſhamefull loſs of ſo many of the Roman Enſigns, ſhould rather have invited them to the conqueſt of the Parthian Empire. Of which thus feelingly the Poet,

Cumque ſuperba foret Babylon ſpolianda Trophæis,
Bella geri placuit, nullos habitura Triumphos.
And when proud Babylon ſhould have been conſtrain'd
To give us back our Enſigns lately gain'd;
We rather choſe ſuch Quarrells to purſue,
For which no Triumph could be juſtly due.

But ſuch is the condition and viciſſitude of humane affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much leſs of certainty. The greateſt Monarchies of the world, the Babylonian, Perſian, Grecian, Roman, have all had their periods, nothing remaining of them now but the name and memory. And what is now become of thoſe mighty Cities of the Eaſt, Ninive, Babylon, Ecbatana, Suſa, with the reſt mentioned in the Scriptures, and in Claſſical Authors? are not their very ruins now become inviſible? Where are the puiſſant Families of the Achæmenides of Perſia, the Seleucidæ of Syria, the Pharaohs and Ptolomies of Egypt, the Cæſars of Italy the Merovingians and Carolovingians of the Realm of France, & the Plantagenets of England? are they not all extinct & gone, not to be found but by the benefit of ſtory, and ſome antient monuments? And if it be ſo, as it is, with the greateſt Monarchies, the moſt mighty Cities of the world, we muſt not think that ſmaller Kingdoms & Eſtates can either be ſo evenly ballanced, or ſo ſurely founded, as not to be obnoxious alſo to the ſame viciſſitudes.

And

And being that saying of Optatus *is most undoubtedly true,* Ecclesia est in Republica, *that the Church is but a part of the Common-wealth, we must not hope to finde it in a better posture than the Civill State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it subsists and flourisheth. The Church must needs miscarry in the ruin of the* Civill State, *and may miscarry many times, although the* Civill State *receive no such alterations. Compared for this reason to the Moon by the antient Fathers, who had observed her in her Prime, in her Increases, and her Full; and finally had not only seen her in the* Wane *also, but sometimes too under some horrible* Eclipses. *Which various condition of the* Militant *Church, the Scriptures and succeeding Stories have set forth so fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonstrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the* Philistins, *the Temple destroyed by the* Chaldæans, *and prophaned by the* Syrians, *the Apostacy of ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a short time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and estate of the* Jewish *Church. And finde we not the same for the* Christian *also, in the removing of the* Candlestick *from the* Asian *Churches; and making them, together with those of* Greece *and* Egypt, *and all the flourishing Churches in the East and South, to languish and decay remedilesly under the mercilesse incroachments of the* Turks *and* Saracens? *He must be more than blind that sees not, more savage than those merciless men that grieves not, at their sad condition: but a dead member, at the most, of* Christs *mysticall Body, who feels not in himself the sufferings of those wretched* Christians.

If now we look into the causes of that desolation which hath hapned in the Civill State of those mighty Empires; to what can we impute it but their crying sins? the pride of the Babylonians, *the effeminacy of the* Persians, *the luxury of the* Greeks: *and such an aggregation of vices amongst the* Romans (*or Western* Christians) *before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a scandall unto* Christianity. In nobis patitur *Christus* opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex *Christiana* maledictum, *as the devout* Salvian *then complained. Thus also in reference to the Church, did not the Idolatries of the ten Tribes hasten in the* Assyrians? *the shedding of the blood of so many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the* Chaldæans *first, and the* Romans *afterwards? Do we not find the* Arianism *of the Eastern Churches to usher in the inundation of the* Saracens; *the* Donatism *of the South to have set open a wide Door to let in the* Vandals? *Did not the* Saxons *follow on the heels of* Pelagianism, *as soon almost as entertained amongst the* Britains? *If so, as most undoubtedly it was in the dayes of old, why should we think but that the Superstitions and Corruptions of the Church of* Rome, *the sacrilege and faction of the Churches of the Reformation, shall at the last receive the like Retribution: Or that the Divine Justice is so fast asleep that our sins must cry as loud, as the Priests of* Baal *did unto their God, before it be awakened by us? Assuredly we are no lesse* sinners *than any of those on whom the* Tower *of the Divine vengeance hath so heavily fallen, whose blood the Pilates of all Ages have mingled with their solemn and religious* sacrifices: *and therefore have no cause to hope, but that* unless we do repent, *we shall likewise* perish.

The serious consideration of all these particulars hath made those alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongst our selves, the less strange unto me. For is there any of these things, whereof it may be said, *Ecce hoc est novum,* Behold this is new? *Eccl.* 1.10. *Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not finde it positively affirmed by the wisest man that ever was,* That which hath been is now, and that which is to be hath already been; *Nihil enim novum est sub sole,* for there is no *new thing* under the Sun, *Eccl.* 3.15. & 1.11. *And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably say thus much of my self, that the observation of the fall of so many great and puissant Empires, the extirpation of so many mighty and renowned Families, the desolation of so many flourishing* Christian *Churches, as the composing of this Book did present me with (though formerly no strangers to me in the course of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my soul under the mighty hand of God, than either the sense of my misfortune, or any other morall consideration which had come before me. And I could wish the Reader may receive so much benefit by it (besides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the mighty man may learn hereby not to glory in his great strength, nor the wise to glo-*

ry

ry in his wiſdoom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great deſigns. Let the great Leaders of theſe times in the Art of War, conſider the ſad ends of Joab, *the Generall of* David; *and of* Beliſarius, *the Commander of* Juſtinians *Armies: whereof the one was ſlain inglorioufly at the* Horns *of the* Altar, *after all his ſervices; the other forced to beg his bread at the* Gates of the Temple. *Let the great Maſters of Wit and* State-craft *have before their eyes, the unſucceſſull ends of* Achitopel, *the* Oracle *of the times he lived in; and of* Cæſar Borgias, *propoſed by* Machiavel *for the Pattern of a Politick Prince: of which the one laid violent hands upon himſelf, becauſe his* Counſell was not followed; *the other, after the defailment of all his projects, and a long impriſonment to boot, forced to flie his Countrey, and ſlain obſcurely in an Ambuſh. Let all men lay unto their hearts the ebbs and floods, thoſe alternations and viciſſitudes, to which all humane power is ſubject; the ſlippery foundations of that might and greatneſs, which is not laid upon the Principles of Juſtice, and regulated by the* Maximes *of Chriſtian Piety; and that even thoſe which have dominion over others, have a God too above themſelves, to whom they are to render an accompt of all their Actions. Not ſuch a God, as that of* Lewis *the* 11th. *of* France. *Of whom it is reported, that he wore a Leaden Medail in his Bonnet in the form of a* Crucifix: *which, when he had cauſed any man to be killed whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands and kiſs it, deſiring it to pardon him that one murther more, and it ſhould be the laſt which he would commit. Such mockeries as theſe may well be put on a* Leaden God, *but the God of Heaven and Earth will not ſo be* mocked: *who being* Totus oculus *and* totum lumen, *as the Father calleth him, can eaſily diſcern our intents and purpoſes, notwithſtanding thoſe diſguiſes which are put upon them; and ſee the nakedneſs of ſin in its uglieſt ſhape, though apparelled with the* Fig-leaves *of the beſt pretences, which the ſelf-deceiving wit of man can patch up together. God is the ſame God now as in former times,* Primus ad extremum ſimilis ſibi, *Yeſterday, and to day, and the ſame for ever; and will not put up thoſe affronts which the impieties of men doe afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience and long ſuffering, they may flatter their poor ſouls, and ſay,* Tuſh, God doth not ſee it,

Laſtly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other Patron *than himſelf, to whom to dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and incouragement in it. The time was when I might have ſaid with* Seneca, Unus mihi erat pro Populo, *that one man was to me inſtead of all men: the Powers of all the* People *being vertually united in him. But now, I muſt be fain to invert that ſaying,* Populus mihi eſt pro uno; *the* Body *of the* Nation *is to me, in this reſpect, as the* Head *before. But being that all the* Members *of the* Body Collective *have not abilities to read, and much leſs to judge; I look eſpecially on the* Nobility, Clergie, Gentrie, *as their* Repreſentatives *in this kinde; to whoſe favourable and ingenuous acceptance I preſent this* Work. *Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no ſmall comfort to me, in the middeſt of ſo many ſorrows as are round about me, that I have been uſefull to the publick; or added any thing by my Studies, unto the honour and content of the* Engliſh *Nation: whoſe peace and happineſs is heartily commended to Almighty God, by*

The Author of theſe following Papers,

PETER HEYLYN.

To my Brother the Author.

THY first prest-Grapes *did yield approved* Wine,
Such as did praise it self; yet to indear
Our Approbation, thou doest here refine
Those former Fruits; *and for our better* Chear
Presentst us with a pure and stronger Vine:
Lest else some curious tast might it distast.
If so, what needs my second Bush? *'Tis* Wast.

Yet well thy choice Minerva *merits this.*
This Ivy-garland, *everlasting green;*
Which like the Muses *cup proportion'd is,*
Wherout thou drink'st, wherein their Liquors *been.*
Nor wouldst thou scape the lash of Nemesis.
If with Diogenes *thou shouldst refuse,*
To let the thirsty *drink there hence.* *'Twere* News.

Thy Book's an Ark *which all the* World *contains,*
And well may bear a short Encomion.
'Tis slender meed, yet who such pay disdains?
Good Wine *may have a* Bush, *though it* need none.
Nor let these lines of mine seem partial straines.
Thy Work *ingenious is; and* Vertues *brood.*
Like it, increaseth with due praise. *'Tis* Good.

Much pains it cost, much cost, and labor more;
Fame's *breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchase* Praise.
The Muses *seat ascends an hundred score,*
And Honours *journey lies not in plain waies.*
Who to Parnassus *high-crown'd top will sore,*
Must with elaborate Quill climb up; and such
Thy tender Genius *boasteth thee.* *'Tis* Much.

Too much indeed it were, but that in part
The Guerdon *of well-doing is the doing.*
Fame *and* Reward *but wait upon thine Art;*
Which yet deserves that in this Forward *going,*
Thy Fortunes *may even-balance thy Desert.*
But Fortune's base, and sells the Wages *due*
To Worth, *unto her* Favourites. *'Tis* True.

The Earth *thy Ground-plot is,* Geographi'd;
Kings *sometimes are thy Subjects peopling it.*
Thy story, History *hath beautifi'd,*
Penn'd by the vigour of an Home-bred *wit;*
Whose Art *hath travell'd all the World beside,*
And can of every Countrey *well declare*
Th'Occurrents, Nature, Site, and Bounds. *'Tis* Rare.

Thus that the Earth, so young thou compast hast:
Is Rare, True, Much, Good, News; *and my* Bush Wast.

Edw. Heylyn J. C.
e soc. Int. Temp.

These verses prefix'd before the second Edition of the former book Anno 1624. I have made bold to borrow and imprint with this, to preserve the memory of the Author, who died in *February* 1640.

A GENERALL INTRODUCTION

to the following Work, containing the *Creation* of the World by Almighty God, and the *Plantation* of the same by the sonnes of men; the necessary use of *History* and *Geographie*, as well for understanding the Affairs of the *Ages* past, as for converse and correspondence with the *Nations* present; together with a brief view of some *Generall Præcognita* which necessarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.

WIth great both Piety and Prudence did the Apostles in their Summarie of the *Christian* faith, joyn our Belief in *God the Father Almighty*, with that clause or Article of making or *Creating* the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply making (*Is not he thy father which hath made thee*? saith the Prophet *Moses*, *Deut.* 32. *v.* 6.) so who but an Almighty Father could by his meer word, without any preexistent matter, create that goodly edifice of Heaven and Earth which we behold with so much wonder and applause. A work so full of wonder to the antient *Gentiles*, that some of them made the World a God. *Vis illum* (*i. e. Deum*) *mundum vocare? non falleris*; as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the *World*, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the *World* a God, as God to be the Soul of the *World*, yet might they very well have said as one since hath done, That the World is nothing else but God unfolded, and manifested in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus universus quam Deus explicatus*, as *Cusanus* a late Cardinall hath it. For certainely the speciall motives which did induce God unto this great work, were a desire and purpose to manifest his power, to exercise his providence, and declare his goodness. Not that God needed to have made the *World* in regard of himself; for the *World* we know was made in the beginning of time, but God is infinite and eternall before all times: but that it seemed good to him to *create* it at last, as a thing most conducible to his praise and glory; the *Heavens declaring the glory of God, and the Earth shewing his handy-work*, saith the Royall *Psalmist*. Some measuring the God of Heaven by their own affections, and finding nothing so agreeable to their own dispositions as to be in company, conceive that God being at last weary of his owne solitudes, did create the *World*, that he might have the company of the *Angels* in Heaven, and make a start into the Earth (when he saw occasion) to recreate himself with the sonnes of men. *Quæ beata esse solitudo queat*? What happiness (said *Hortensius*) can there be in solitude? To which *Lactantius*, Lib. 1. cap. 7. not being furnished with a better, doth return this Answer; That God cannot be sayd to be alone; *habet enim Ministros quos vocamus Nuntios*, as having the society of the *Angels*. But then *Lactantius* must suppose that the *Angels* were Co-eternal with God himself, (which were to make all Gods, & no God at all;) or else his Answer is no Answer, as to that Objection. How much more appositely might he have thus replyed unto *Hortensius*, That the supreme contentment possible to Almighty God is by reflecting on himself, and in himself contemplating his owne infinite glories: which being Co-eternall with himself, even from all Eternity, he needed no more company before the World was made, than he hath done since. *Lactantius* being himself a man of a very great reading, (though indeed a better *Humanitian* than *Divine*) could not but know those sweet delights which a man habited in learning takes in contemplation, and the good society he hath of his own dear thoughts when he is most retired from the sight of men. And if the wise *Gentile* could affirm so sadly, *nunquam minus solum quam cum Solus esset*, that he was never lesse alone than when he was by himself: what need can any rationall man suppose in Almighty God of having more company than himself to delight himself in? If this suffice not for an answer to that needless question, *What God did before he made the World*; let him take that of *Augustine* on the like occasion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is said to have returned this Answer, *fabricasse inferos curiosis*, that he made Hell for all such troublesome and idle *Questionists*. Which resolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late *Dutch* Poet, moulded into this handsome Epigram.

Dum

Dum Chriſtum Lybicis *Pater* Auguſtinus *in oris*
Aſſerit, & peragit munus in æde ſuum;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi,
Eſſe docens verbo cuncta creata Dei;
Impius aſſurgit, verbiſq; procacibus, Afer,
Ergo Opifex rerum quid faciebat, ait,
Aut quibus intentus fallebat tempora curis,
Mundus adhuc nondum cum fabricatus erat?
Præſul ad hæc Lybicus, *fabricavit tartara, dixit,*
His quòs ſcrutari talia, mente iuvat.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

When reverend *Auſtin* did in *Africk* preach,
An in Gods Houſe the ruder people teach,
As he the Worlds Creation prov'd, and taught
That God made all things by his Word, of nought:
A ſawcy Swain upſtarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time beſtow;
And what to ſpend his thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made:
To which the Father tartly thus; He then
Made *Hel* for thee, and ſuch audacious men.

But not to ſpend more time in anſwering ſo vain a caption, ſuffice it us to know, that it pleaſed God at laſt; when it ſeemed beſt unto his infinite and eternall Wiſdome, to create the World, and all things viſible and inviſible in the ſame contained. A time it had, in which it firſt began to be, which before was not; This *Moſes* calls *Principium*, a beginning ſimply. *In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth*, in the firſt words of the Book of *Geneſis*, which is all one as if he had ſaid, the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that this unformed *Maſs* or *Chaos* which he entituleth there by the name of *heaven and earth*, was the *beginning* of, or firſt draught of thoſe ſeverall things which after were created in their proper times, that is to ſay, the firſt in order of time, becauſe made before them, not in order of cauſality, as the cauſes of them. *Cœlum & terra in principio*, i.e. *ante omnia facta ſunt*, ſaith *Simon Pettius* in his *Scholies* on S. *Johns* Goſpell: So that whether we do expound thoſe words that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning, or that *Moſes* by theſe words did mean, that out of that matter which he calls *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning, or firſt matter, all things were created, it comes all to one: becauſe it is thereby acknowledged that the firſt matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of neceſſity to have a *beginning*. And to this truth we have not only the authority and conſent of Scripture, but of the greateſt part of the old *Philoſophers*, guided thereto by this impoſſibility in nature, that any viſible work, whether it be *naturall* or *artificiall*, ſhould either give it ſelf a being, or have that being which it hath from no cauſe precedent: For from that Principle *Tully* argueth very rightly in his moſt excellent Book *de Natura Deorum*, that as a man coming into a goodly houſe in which he found nothing but Rats and Mice, could not conceive that either the houſe had built it ſelf, or had no other maker but thoſe Rats and Mice which were neſted in it; ſo neither can it be imagned, that either this World ſhould be eternall, of a ſelf-exiſtency, or was compoſed by any naturall Agent of what ſort ſoever. And this is that which is more briefly and expreſly ſaid by the Apoſtle, *viz.* that *every houſe is built by ſome man, but he that built all things is God*, Heb. 3. v. 4. It is true, that *Ariſtotle* being a very great enquirer into the works of Nature, conceived the world to be eternall; and yet was not alwaies conſtant unto that opinion. But then it is as true withall, that there was ſomething elſe that inclined him to it, than a meer admiration of the works of Nature. *Democritus* and ſome others had been of opinion, that the World was made in the beginning *fortuitis atomorum concurſionibus*, by the accidentall union or conjunction of thoſe ſeverall parcells, of which the Univerſe conſiſted; and that man himſelf was but *voluntaria elementorum concretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the elements, as *Minutius* hath obſerved out of their writings. To which abſurd opinion (as it was no better) though it found a generall imbracement amongſt many of the old Philoſophers, when *Ariſtotle* knew not how to ſubmit his moſt exquiſite judgement, and yet was deſtitute of ſuch further light as might more fully have inſtructed him in its true *Originall*; he rather choſe to grant the world to be eternall, than to be made of ſuch ridiculous, and unſound, though eternall *Atoms*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab æterno eſſe quam aliquando ex æterna deformitate emerſiſſe*: *Valeſius* in his Book *de Sacra Philoſophia* ſo pleads the caſe in his behalf; and I thank him for it, who am (I muſt confeſs) a great friend of *Ariſtotles*, whom ſome account for the *Precurſor* of our Saviour Chriſt *in rebus naturalibus*, as *John the Baptiſt* was *in divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reaſon tell us onely this, that the whole world had a beginning, but by the help of Scripture, and the workes of ſome learned men, we are able to point out the time when it did begin, or to compute how many years it is preciſely from the firſt beginning, without any notable difference in the calculation. For though it be moſt truly ſaid *citius inter Horologias quam Chronologias*, that *Clocks* may ſooner be agreed than

then *Chronologers*, yet moſt *Chronologers* in this point come ſo neer one another, that the difference is ſcarce obſervable. From the beginning of the *world* to the Birth of *Chriſt*, in the accompt of *Beroaldus*, are 3928. yeers; 3945. in the computation of the *Genevians*; 3960. in the eſteem of *Luther*, and 3963. in the calculation of *Melanchthon*, between whom and *Beroaldus* (being the leaſt and the greateſt) there is but 35. years difference, which in ſo long a courſe of time can be no great matter: Now if unto the calculation made by *Beroaldus*, which I conceive to be the trueſt, we add 1648. ſince the Birth of *Chriſt*, the totall of the time ſince the worlds creation will be 5576. yeers, neither more nor leſs. A thing which I the rather have inſiſted on, becauſe that from this *Epoche* or *Æra* of the *Worlds creation*, we ſhall compute the times of ſuch Kings and Princes, as reigned and flouriſhed in the world before the *Incarnation* of our Lord and Saviour.

It being then reſolved as a thing undoubted, that God made the World, and that he made it in ſuch time as himſelf beſt pleaſed; let us next look upon the *matter* and the *method* which it pleaſed the Divine Majeſty to make uſe of in this wondrous work.

Firſt, for the *matter*, out of which all things were created, I take it, as before was ſaid, to be that which *Moſes* in the firſt words of *Geneſis* calls the *Heaven and the Earth*, becauſe they were ſo *in potentia*; but after telleth us more expliciteley, that that which he calleth *Earth*, was *inanis et vacua*, without form and void; and that which he called *Heaven* was but an overcaſt of darkneſs, or *tenebræ ſuper faciem Abyſsi*, as the vulgar reads it: Of which *Chaos* or confuſed Maſs we thus read in *Ovid*, who queſtionleſs had herein conſulted with the works of *Moſes*, being before his time communicated to the learned Gentiles:

Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Cœlum
Unus erat toto naturæ vultus in Orbe,
Quem dixere Chaos, *rudis indigeſtaq́, moles,*
Nec quicquam niſi pondus iners, congeſtaq́, eodem
Non bene junctarum diſcordia ſemina rerum, &c.

Which I ſhall Engliſh from *G. Sandys* with ſome little change.

Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,
One face had natnre, which they *Chaos* named;
An indigeſted lump, a barren load,
Where jarring ſeeds of things ill-joyn'd abode:
No Sun as yet with light the world adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waining horns:
Nor hung the ſelf-poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd;
Nor had the Ocean the vaſt Shores imbrac'd;
Earth, Sea, and Ayr, all mixt: the Earth unſtable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one aſſign'd,
This that reſiſts: For in one body joyn'd
The cold and hot, the dry and humid fight,
The ſoft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos*, or firſt matter, did God raiſe the world, according to thoſe ſeverall patts and lineaments which we ſee it in, not as out of any pre-exiſtent matter which was made before, and had not God for the Author or firſt Maker of it; but as the firſt preparatory matter which himſelf had made, including in the ſame *potentially* both the form and matter of the whole Creation, except the ſoul of man onely which God breathed into him: And therefore it is truly ſaid, that God made all things out of nothing; not out of nothing as the matter out of which it was made, for then that *nothing* muſt be *ſomething*, but as the *terminus à quo*, in giving them a reall and corporall being which before they had not, and did then firſt begin to have by the meer force and efficacy of his powerfull Word. And though it be a *Maxim* in the Schools of Philoſophie, *Ex nihilo nil fit*, that nothing can be made of nothing, that every thing which hath a being doth require ſome matter, which muſt be pre-exiſtent to it; yet this muſt either be condemned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divinity, or elſe be limited and reſtrained to *Naturall agents*, which cannot go beyond the ſphere of their own activity. *Inviſible* and *ſupernaturall* Agents are not tied to Rules, no not in the production of the works of Nature, though Nature conſtituted and eſtabliſhed in a certain courſe, work every thing by line and meaſure as a certain Rule: And ſo it was with God in the Worlds Creation; he did not only make the world, but he made it out of nothing, by his Word alone: *Dixit et facta ſunt*, he ſpake the word and they were made, ſaith the royal *Pſalmiſt*, *Pſ.* 33. v. 9. There went no greater pains nor matter to the whole Creation, but a *Dixit Deus*: And this not only ſaid by *Moſes*, but by *David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati ſunt Cœli, & ſpiritu Oris ejus omnis virtus eorum*, *v.* 6. i.e. by the *Word* of the Lord were the heavens made, and all the Hoſts thereof by the *breath* of his mouth. In which it is to be obſerved, that though the *Creation* of the *World* be generally aſcribed to God the *Father*, yet both the *Son* and the *Holy Ghoſt* had their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the *Word* of the Lord were the Heavens made, ſaith the Prophet *David*: *In the beginning was the Word*; *all things*

were made by him, and without him was nothing made, ſaith S. *John* the Apoſtle. The *Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters*, ſaith *Moſes* in the Book of the Law: *Et ſpiritu oris ejus*, and by the breath (or Spirit) of his mouth were all the Hoſts of Heaven created, ſaith *David* in the Book of *Pſalms*. Made by his Word, and yet not made together in one inſtant of time. In the firſt day he laid the foundation, and no more; in the five next he raiſed the building: and this he did, to teach us men deliberation in our words and actions: and to ſet forth withall unto us both his Power and Wiſdom. His *Power* he manifeſted in the *Method* of the whole Creation, in that he did produce what effects he pleaſed without the help of naturall cauſes: as giving Light unto the World before he had created either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitfull, and to bring forth plants, without the influence or motion of the Heavenly bodies. And for his *Wiſdom* he expreſſed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the very Beaſts of the field before he had provided them of fodder and ſufficient herbage; nor *made man after his own Image*, before he had finiſhed all the reſt of his works, fitted his houſe, and furniſhed it with all things neceſſary both for life and pleaſures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at laſt comes Man into the world; and he doth make his entrance with a greater pomp than any of the reſt of the Creatures which were before him. They came in with no other Ceremony than a *Dixit Deus*: but in the workmanſhip of Man there was a Conſultation held by the bleſſed *Trinity*: It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make a Man; each Perſon contributing ſomewhat (as it were) to his compoſition. For God the *Father* as the chief Workman, or principall Agent, gave him form and feature, in which he did imprint his own heavenly image. The *Son*, who is the living and eternall *Word*, gave him voice or ſpeech, that ſo he might be able to ſet forth Gods praiſes. The *Holy Ghoſt*, the *Lord and giver of life*, (as the *Nicene* Fathers truly call him) *breathing into his noſtrills the breath of life*, whereby he became a living Spirit. In this one *Creature* was amaſſed whatever thing was excellent in the whole Creation; the quantity or ſubſtance of Inanimate creatures, the life of Plants, the ſenſe of Beaſts, and the underſtanding of Angells. In this one Creature did God ſhew the excellency of his power and wiſdom, in printing on him his *own Image*, and giving him Dominion over all the *works of his hands*; which *Image of God* they look for in a very wrong place, who hope to finde it in mans Body, though of a gallant compoſition and erected ſtructure. The Heathen Oratour was able in this point to inform ſome erroneous *Chriſtians*, *Ad Divinam imaginem propius accedit humana virtus quam figura*, Man doth approach more neer to the Image of God in the endowments of his Minde, than in the ſtructure of his body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that Dominion which God gave him over the works of his hands, the Patent is at large laid down in the firſt of *Geneſis*. For God no ſooner ſaid, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make man after our own Image, but preſently he addes this *Charter* of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over the fiſh of the Sea, and over the fowles of the Air, and over the Cattell, and over all the Earth.* A more particular explication of thoſe ſeverall points, wherein that *Image* and this *Power* do conſiſt eſpecially, I ſhall not take upon me or endeavour now, as being not of this place and purpoſe: Which onely is to ſhew, that as man in the very act of his Creation participated more of the *Divine Image*, than all other Creatures; ſo was he by Gods ſpeciall grant infeoffed with a larger *power* than any of the reſt could pretend unto. *Man*, though made lower than the Angells, is in this above them, that all the Creatures of the World were made to be his ſervants, and to attend upon his pleaſure. And yet this great and mighty Prince, this generall Lord of all the World, and the Creatures in it (ſetting aſide the dignity of his firſt Creation) doth come into the world in a worſe condition than any of the Creatures which were made to ſerve him, naked, and impotent, and ſpeechleſs, without the uſe of reaſon; neither of power to help himſelfe, or ask help of others. Whereof *Lactantius* in my minde gives a very good reaſon, who telleth us, that God ſends man into the world, *nudum & inermem*, naked, and weak, and undefenced againſt all violences and dangers; whereas all Creatures elſe, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata ſunt*, are naturally both armed and clothed, and able to relieve themſelves. And this he doth unto this end, that man being naturally deſtitute of thoſe outward helps, might make uſe of his inward faculties of judgement, wit and underſtanding, in furniſhing himſelf with that which he wants by nature. For hereunto the firſt originall of all Manufactures and mechanick Arts is to be referred, as is moſt plain and evident from the Book of God; in which we ſee, that preſently upon the procreation of mankind, *Abel* betook himſelf unto keeping ſheep, and *Cain* to husbandry; *Iubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and ſuch Muſicall Inſtruments; and *Tubal-Cain* to work upon braſs and iron, two metalls very neceſſary to moſt kinde of Trades. The like may be ſuppoſed in all other myſteries and Arts of living, though there be no expreſſe mention of them in thoſe early dayes, except it be the Art of building, or the Carpenters Trade, which no queſtion is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain*'s City, and *Noah*'s Ark is moſt cleerly evidenced. God made the world, and fitted it with all things neceſſary for the life of man, leaving man to provide himſelf of ſuch Additions, as rather ſerve for comforts and conveniencies in the way of his living, than the neceſſities of his life.

Here then we have the works of God, and the works of Men to be conſidered in purſuit of our preſent Argument. The works of God, in ſhadowing the Earth with *Trees* and *Forreſts*, interlacing it with Chryſtall *ſtreams* and capacious *Rivers*, inriching it with fruitfull and *delicious*

Vales,

Vales, adorning it with lofty Mountains, and ſtocking both the Hils and Vales with all ſorts of *Cattell*. But nothing more ſets forth the Power and Wiſdom of Almighty God, as it relates to theſe particulars, than that moſt admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continuall Traffique and Commerce with one another; ſome Countries being deſtitute of thoſe Commodities with which others abound, and being plentifull in thoſe which the others want. Inſomuch that as in the Body of man, that *Microſm*, or little World, the Head cannot ſay that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other members of the reſt: ſo neither in the Body of the great World, can *Europe* ſay to *Aſia*, or *Spain* to *England*, I have no need of your Commodities, or am not wanting in thoſe things whereof thou boaſteſt an abundance. Some thing there is in every Countrey, which may be ſpared to ſupply the defect of others, and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandiſe: Of which, thus *Du Bartas* in his *Colonies*.

Hence come our Sugars from Canary *Iſles.*
From Candie *Currans, Muſcadels, and Oyls.*
From the Moluccoes, *Spices; Balſamum*
From Egypt; *Odours from* Arabia *come.*
From India *Gums, rich Drugs and Ivorie.*
From Syria *Mummie; black, red Ebonie*
From burning Chus; *from* Peru *Pearls and Gold.*
From Ruſſia *Furs to keep the rich from cold.*
From Florence *Silks; from* Spain *Fruit, Saffron, Sacks.*
From Danemark *Amber, Cordage, Firs, and Flax.*
From France *and* Flanders *Linnen, Woad, and Wine.*
From Holland *Hops; Horſe from the banks of* Rhine.
From England *Wooll. All lands, as God diſtributes,*
To the Worlds treaſure pay their ſundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* ſpeaks of the preſent times, ſo queſtionleſs the ſame, or the like Commerce held good in the firſt Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furniſhing all Countries from the firſt beginning with ſome Staple-commodities for the benefit of themſelves and others; for the maintaining of that entercourſe between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the cloſer in the bonds of Amitie. And to this end alſo ſerve thoſe ſeverall *Manufactures* wherewith ſome Countries do abound in reſpect of others, but looked on in the preſent Book as the works of men. And of this kind alſo are there ſeverall *Politses* and forms of Government: For though all *Magiſtracy* in it ſelf be from God originally, and that the *Monarchicall* form comes neereſt to the Government uſed by God himſelf; yet being that ſome *Polities* are meerly but humane inventions, and that even *Monarchy* it ſelf is founded on the conſent of men, explicitely or implicitely required unto it; All *Government* or Magiſtracie is called an *Ordinance of man* in holy Scripture. 1 *Pet.* 11. *v.* 13. But thoſe particular Works of men which are the moſt conſiderable part of our preſent ſubject, are *Caſtles, Towns*, and *Cities* of moſt eminent note; which thrive and proſper in the World according as they do partake of thoſe Conveniencies which conduce moſt to their Magnificence and Greatneſs. Of theſe *Boterus* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of thoſe many we ſhall touch upon the principall onely, paſſing by thoſe of leſſer note, as pleaſantneſs of Site, fruitfulneſs of Soyl, ſalubritie of Air, and ſuch like obvious Obſervations. Firſt then, there is required to the Magnificence and Splendour of Cities, a Navigable River, or ſome ſuch eaſie paſſage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourſe and trade of Merchants; as at *Venice, London, Amſterdam*. Secondly, ſome Staple-Manufactures or Commodities, which will draw the like reſort of Merchants, though the conveniencie of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in *Nurenberg* in *Germany*, a dry Town, but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince: For *ubi Imperator, ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continuall confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all ſorts of Trades: And by this means *Madrid*, not long ſince a poor beggerly Village, is grown the moſt populous Citie in all *Spain*. Fourthly, the Reſidence of the Nobility, beautifieth a Citie with ſtately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of *Italy* ſo much excell ours in *England*, their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the moſt part in their Countrie-houſes. Fifthly, the Seats, or *Tribunals* of Juſtice, on which both *Advocates* and *Clients* are to give attendance; as in the *Parliamentary* Cities in *France*, and *Spires* in *Germany*. Sixtly, Univerſities and Schools of Learning, to which the Youth from all parts are to make reſort; which hath been long the chief cauſe of the flouriſhing of *Oxford, Cambridge, Bononia* in *Italy*, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; moſt men being moſt deſirous to inhabit there, where their Income will be greateſt, their Privileges largeſt, and their Diſburſements leaſt: So *Naples, Florence, Venice*, having been deſolated by Plagues, were again ſuddainly re-peopled by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And laſt of all, the opinion of Sanctitie, either for the *Reliques* of Saints, or ſome noted Shrines, or the reſidence of ſome Famous man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the leaſt *Allomant* which draws people to it, to the great enriching of ſome Cities: And of this, *Rome* it ſelf can give

us two moſt pregnant evidences, the one in reference to the *Popes*, and theſe latter times, that famous Town, not otherwiſe ſubſiſting now, than by the conſtant reſidence of the Popes and Cardinals; whoſe abſence while the Papall Sea was kept at *Avignon*, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almoſt in its own ſad ruins. The other, in the perſon of *Titus Livius* the Hiſtorian, to ſee which man there came ſo many from the Coaſts of *France* and *Spain*, that Saint *Hierome* elegantly ſaith, *Quos ad ſui contemplationem* Roma *non traxerat, unius hujus hominis fama perduxit; qui jam urbem tantam ingreſſi, aliud extra* Urbem *quærerent.*

Such are the cauſes of the Greatneſs and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might poſſibly be looked at by the firſt builders of Cities, I mean by *Cain* before the Flood, and by *Nimrod* after it; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and ſelf-preſervation, than at the generall good of Mankind, or the particular wealth of thoſe amongſt whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expreſly in the Book of God, That being poſſeſſed with this fear, that *every one that found him would lay hands upon him and ſlay him*, in revenge of the blood of *Abel*; *He builded a Citie, and called it by the name of his ſon* Enoch. *Gen.* 4. 17. *Builded a Citie?* For what reaſon? To fortifie and ſecure himſelf againſt all revenge, as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppreſſe his Neighbours, as *Ioſephus* witneſſeth. Neither was this the onely Citie of the firſt Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. And that which the Scripture ſaith of *Jubal*, that he was the *Father of ſuch as dwell in Tents*, and of ſuch as have Cattell; that is to ſay, he was the firſt of thoſe which lived upon Paſturage, and followed their cattell up and down with their moveable Tents, not having any certain home or habitations, as the wild *Arabs* now, and the ancient *Nomades*; Is proof ſufficient, that the reſidue of all Mankind lived a more civill kind of life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in theſe things, I think, he is) he will inform us, that the Citie of *Ioppa* was built before the Flood; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his Brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of ſtone. But whether this be ſo, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the Weſt, whereon *Ioppa* ſtood, as the *Land of Nod* on the Eaſt ſide of *Paradiſe*, where *Cain* built his Citie, were peopled long before the Flood; and ſo were moſt of the other parts of the *World* beſides: And if well peopled in all, or moſt parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for neceſſary habitation, as for ſtrength and ſafety. Now that the World was throughly peopled before the Flood, ſeems clear to me by that great and univerſall Deluge, which God was pleaſed to bring upon the *Face of all the earth*: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guiltie of oppreſſion in the ſight of God? Beſides, it is expreſſly ſaid in the Holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the *Flood*, in the largeſt Accompt, and not 300 in the ſhorteſt, there were Kings of *Egypt*, and of the *Philiſtims*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinaar*, *Elaſar*, *Ellas*, and of the *Nations*, who queſtionleſſe had their Lands well peopled; that both *Chaldea*, and *Meſopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham*, had their ſeverall Cities, as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan* in the other; and that *Damaſcus* the chief Citie of *Syria* was then founded alſo: Not to ſay any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erach*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the land of *Shinar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Reſen*, *Rehoboth*, and *Chalah* in the land of *Aſſyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10 of *Geneſis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Aſſyrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having ſubdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia*, invaded *Baſtria* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horſe, and 16000 armed Chariots, and was encountred by *Zoroaſter* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thouſand. The credibility whereof if it were diſputed, might be affirmed from the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* againſt the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Cteſias* for his Author, *Semiramis* the Wife of *Ninus* invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of men, and upwards; and yet was overmatched, and ſlain by an *Indian* King. If then within the ſpace of 400 years, we find the Eaſtern parts to be ſo well planted, ſo many Kings poſſeſſed of their Regall Thrones, and many of them able to impreſs ſuch infinite Armies; Why may we not conclude, that in the courſe of 1656 years (for ſo long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; eſpecially conſidering the long lives of men, amounting to 800, or 900 years; and conſequently the long time they had to apply themſelves to the Act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Mercators* opinion; who placing the 16 Dynaſty of the Kings of *Egypt* (where *Euſebius* begins to calculate the *Egyptian* times) at the firſt planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*, reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the *Flood*, and to reach very neer the times of the firſt Creation. That *Miſraim* the Son of *Ham* was poſſeſſed of *Egypt* within two hundred years after the *Flood*, is a truth undoubted. Nor ſee I any cauſe to doubt, but that in the like ſpace of time from the firſt Creation, it might be planted alſo by the ſons of *Adam*; conſidering, as we ought to do, that in the infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were moſt perfect, and of greateſt vigour, they obſerved no degree of Kindred or Conſanguinity, nor tied themſelves ſo ſtrictly to one woman as they ſhould have done. And for the names of all the Kings of thoſe ſeverall Dynaſties, either they

they might be left engraven upon Pillars, such as that of *Seth*, or upon Altars of stone, as in those of *Ioppa*; or *Misraim* might have them by tradition from the hands of *Noah*, and so deliver them by tale unto his posteritie: the *Egyptians* being generally very good Heralds, and standing very much on their own Antiquitie. And if this may be said of *Egypt* (as for my part I see no reason but it may) then may the like be said of all Countries else, that they had their severall Kings and Rulers, and set forms of Government: The Fathers of Families in those times having the command and soveraignty over all that descended of them. Nor make I any question of it, but they had severall Languages and forms of Speech, at least as to the *Dialect* and pronunciation, although the *Radicals* of the Language might remain the same: But being there are no *Remainders* of this first *Plantation* (unless we will give credit to some *Iewish* Fablers, who tell us of some Giants who saved themselves upon Mount *Sion*; or that of *Masius Damascenus*, who speaks of some that saved themselves on an high Hill called *Baris*, in some part of *Armenia*) I shall the less insist upon it: Nor had I stood so long upon these first Ages, which *Moses* passeth over with so short a Narrative, but that it is affirmed by *Pererius*, a right learned *Jesuit*, that neither *Egypt*, nor *Assyria*, nor the rest of the *World* was planted and inhabited before the Flood; and that upon no stronger reason, for ought I can find, but that it is affirmed in the last words of the tenth of *Genesis*, That, *by these* (that is to say, by the posteritie of the Sons of *Noah*) *were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood.* Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo significatur talem divisionem non fuisse ante diluvium*; By which it doth appear (saith he) that in the times before the Flood was no such division.

'Tis true, that this division of the world by the Sonnes of *Noah* hath the best evidence in Scripture; because there is expresse Text for it, which is not for the first Plantations: But looking on the great increase of mankind before the flood, that saying of *Berosus* will prove *tantamont* to a Text of Scripture, *Ad comparandas novas sedes necessitatem compulisse*, that they were driven then by necessity to seek new dwellings; the necessity of providing victualls for themselves and their families, being as strong a motive unto such dispersions, as the *Confusion of Tongues* was afterwards: The difference is, that that which such *necessity* would have done in long tract of time, the *confusion of Tongues* did in an instant: not onely making those proud *Builders* to give over the finishing of the Tower which they had begun, but to unite themselves with such whose language came most neer to that which themselves were masters of. It was high time, no question, to desist from this proud attempt, when the Labourer understood not what the Workman called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But because some Plantations had no reference to the *Confusion of Tongues*, but were made before it, or on the sending out of such Colonies as were neerest to the place where the *Ark* did rest; I think it not amiss to resolve that question touching the resting of the Ark, on which the Plantations of the East have so great dependance. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the *Ark* rested on the *Mountains of Ararat*; but where those Mountains are, that it telleth us not: I know *Iosephus*, and some other, of more eminent note, (but such as ground themselves upon his authority) affirm those Mountaines of *Ararat* to be the hills of *Armenia*, which they doe chiefly on these Reasons: First, because *Armenia* is called *Ararat* in the Book of God, as it is confessedly. And secondly, because of an old Tradition, countenanced by *Berosus*, and some others of the ancient Writers, cited by *Iosephus*, affirming, that on the *Gordiean* Mountains in *Armenia Major*, some of the Relicks of the *Ark* were remaining in their times, and used as a preservative against inchantments: Which notwithstanding I incline rather to the opinion of *Goropius Becanus*, (who amongst many strange whimseys broached some notable truths) by whom the Ark is said to rest on the top of Mount *Caucasus* in the Confines of *Tartaria*, *Persia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greatest consequence: the first whereof is grounded upon evident reason; the second on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon reason, is the exceeding populosity of those Eastern Countreys, into which none of those by whom the world was planted after the *Confusion* of Languages, are yet reported to have travailed with their severall Colonies, by any who have took most pains in this discovery. Those infinite numbers which *Staurobates*, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians*, brought into the field against *Semiramis*; and the vast Army of *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province against *Ninus*; are proof enough, that those Countries were of an elder Plantation, than to be a second or third Casting of some other Swarm setled in *Persia*, or *Assyria*, after the *Confusion*: For *Ninus* who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I must needs look upon it, as a thing impossible, that those vast Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raise out of all her Dominions, should be encountred by one King with an equall force, and that of his own Subjects onely; If that one King, and those his Subjects had been some late Colonie of those new Plantations, and not possessed of a Country peopled and inhabited before that *Confusion*. Nor was it but upon some good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucasus*) were generally esteemed the most antient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitours, with this publick Verdict, *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*; which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the *Ark* unto them (though perhaps that ground long since forgotten, was not stood upon)

and

and the dwelling of *Noah* and his children neer the place of the *Ark*, till numbers, and neceſſity compelled them to inlarge their borders. And in the inlarging of their Borders, I ſhall make no queſtion, but that ſuch parts as lay neereſt, were peopled and poſſeſſed before thoſe which lay furtheſt off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages ſince. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it falls ſhort of that which comes from the Text it ſelf, both in authority and weight; where it is ſaid of the Heads of thoſe ſeverall Families which afterwards joyned together in the building of *Babel*, that, *As they went from the* East, *they found a Plain in the land of* Shinaar, *and there they abode. Gen.* 11. *v.*2. If then they came from the *Eaſt* to the land of *Shinaar*, as the Text ſaith plainly that they did, it might well be that they came from thoſe parts of *Aſia*, on the South of *Caucaſus*, which lie East of *Shinaar*, though ſomewhat bending to the North; impoſſible they ſhould come from the *Gordiæan* Mountains in the greater *Armenia* (ſuppoſed to be the Hills which the *Ark* did reſt on) which lie not onely full North of *Shinaar*, but many degrees unto the Weſt: For *Babylonia*, or *Shinaar*, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 35, and the *Longitude* of 79, and 80. the *Latitude* of the *Gordiæan* Mountains in 41, and their *Longitude* in 75. By which Accompt thoſe Mountains are 6 Degrees more Northwards, and 5 Degrees more Weſtwards than the Land of *Shinaar*; by no means to be reckoned on the East of that Vallie, except we make *Moſes* (whoſe hand God guided in his Books) to ſpeak God knows what; or in plain terms, to ſpeak plain non ſenſe. And though this Scripture be ſo clear, that it needs no Commentarie, yet the perplexities I find amongſt thoſe of the other opinion, in ſhifting out of the autoritie of ſo plain a Text, doe adde in my conceit ſome moment and weight unto it. For ſome will have the Mountains of *Ararat* to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinaar*, but with ſome bending towards the East; which were it true, as nothing is more truly falſe, *Moſes* had never told us that they came from the *Eaſt*, but from ſome Countries of the *North*, which lay towards the *Eaſt*. Others will have a double progreſs of the *Heads* of their ſeverall Families: Firſt, from the Mountains of *Ararat*, or the Plains of *Armenia*, to the Fields of *Aſſyria*, and *Suſiana*; And ſecondly, from thence to the land of *Shinaar*. But of this firſt journey there is *ne gry quidem*, nor ſo much as any one ſyllable in all the Scripture; beſides the needleſneſs of making them go ſo far about, and to croſs over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; whereas they had a ſhorter, and an eaſier paſſage. *Capellus*, ſingular by himſelf, quarrelleth with the Tranſlation (received without diſpute by all other *Criticks*) and will not have the *Hebrew Kedem* to be rendred *Eaſt*, but to ſignifie that Region, whatſoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedem* the ſon of *Iſmael*, of whom we find mention *Gen.* 25. 15. But then beſides his quarrell with all other Tranſlations, he ſuppoſeth a former progreſs from the Mountains of *Ararat* to that land of *Kedem*; and conſequently falleth into a part of the Errour before refelled. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Aſſyrians* called all thoſe parts of their Empire beyond *Tygris*, the Eaſtern, and thoſe on this ſide of it, the Weſtern; Would thence conclude, that theſe *Heads* may be ſaid by *Moſes* to have come from the *Eaſt*, becauſe they came from one of the *Eaſtern* Provinces of the *Aſſyrian* Empire. Every way faulty in this point: For beſides that, the greateſt part of *Armenia* lieth on the North of *Tygris*, and the leaſt part of it on the Weſt, and therefore not within the compaſs of the Eaſtern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this diviſion was in uſe in the time of *Moſes*; We may as rationally conclude, and with leſs abſurditie, that the firſt Inhabitants of *Britain*, might have been ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the *Weſt* (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly *Eaſt* of it) becauſe *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the *Weſt* parts of the Empire. Having thus fortified our opinion both with Scripture and Reaſon, the Arguments produced againſt us will be eaſily anſwered. For though *Armenia* be granted to be the Countrie of *Ararat*; yet the Mountains of *Ararat* may extend beyond the Countrie. That mighty Ridge of Mountains which beginning in *Aſia* the leſs run as far as *India* (by the Antients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Moſes* the Mountains of *Ararat*, becauſe that was the firſt Countrie of the greater *Aſia* by which they paſſed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly. Juſt as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it waſhed many Shores beſides: Or as ſome Hils with us are called *Malvern* Hils, becauſe they are higheſt neer that Village, though they extend themſelves into other Lordſhips. And as for the Authoritie of Tradition, and the Teſtimony of humane Writers, which (as before was ſaid) are brought in for an help, touching ſome Relicks of the *Ark* to be ſeen on the *Gordiæan* Mountains, I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For firſt, *Beroſus* (followed herein by all the reſt) reports it onely on the ground of uncertain hear-ſay; which is a weak ſtaff for ſo heavy a cauſe to rely upon. Secondly, to balance the authoritie of *Beroſus* (if of any credit in this caſe) we have the teſtimony and authoritie of *Porcius Cato*, as antient almoſt as he, affirming poſitively, in *Scythia Saga renatum eſſe mortale genus*, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Scythia*, which after was poſſeſſed by the *Sacans*: And they, we know, dwelt in thoſe parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucaſus*. And Thirdly, unto one *Tradition* to oppoſe another; thoſe of Mount *Caucaſus* do aver, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, neer the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah*'s Plantation: Of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Tartaria*.

It is now time I ſhould go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide diſperſions; for

for whom it was high time to conſort themſelves with ſuch as they could underſtand; the neceſſity of diſcourſe and conference on that fatall Accident, making them lay aſide their old acquaintances, and joyn themſelves to others of their own new Language. I know that many learned men, according to the number of names laid down in the tenth of *Gen.* being 70, have made ſo many Languages to have been ſpoken upon that *Confuſion*: And that of thoſe, 26 being the Poſteritie of *Sem*, diſperſed themſelves about *Aſia* the greater; 30 others of the loyns of *Cham*, peopled *Africk*, *Arabia* and *Syria*; and that the 14 which remain, being the iſſue of *Japhet*, withdrew themſelves towards *Europe*, and the leſſer *Aſia*. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a conceit, though many, more improbable, have paſſed for currant: It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sonnes, eleven in all, had but one Language amongſt them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the land of *Canaan*. And as for *Iokan* and his Sonnes, being 13 in number, conſidering that he was the younger Brother of *Phaleg*, in whoſe time this *Confuſion* hapned, it is moſt probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the deſign for the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and conſequently could not be within the curſe of confounded Languages. So, here is neer a third part of the 70 to be taken off; as poſſibly might all the Sons of *Miſraim* be, if it were worth the while to inſiſt upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the diſperſion into the ſaid three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but falſe enough, if underſtood of any preſent ſeparation of the Sonnes of *Noah* into parts ſo far remote and diſtant from one another. For what needed any ſuch remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one neer another, and ſo enjoy that civill entercourſe, and mutuall ſociety which the nature of Mankind doth moſt delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joyning themſelves to men of the ſame Language with them, did firſt ſet down upon the places neer the Valley of *Shinaar*; and from thence propagated and diſperſed themſelves into further Countries, as either the neceſſity of providing of Victuals; or ſeeking better and more fruitfull habitations for themſelves and theirs; or the deſire of being out of the reach of ſome potent Neighbours, whoſe yoke they found too heavy for their necks to bear, did enforce them to it. And being ſo ſetled to their mindes, the addition of a few more years brought the like neceſſitie of ſending *Colonies* further off, as they grew more or leſs populous in their generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongſt whom one *Swarm* ſends out another, that begets a *Caſtling*, till the whole ground or Garden grow too ſmall to hold them. For thus (to ſeek no further for an inſtance of it) the *Gauls* firſt planted *Britain*, the *Britans Ireland*, the *Iriſh Scotland* and the *Iſles*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to ſuſtein, and too narrow to contain their multitudes, *anguſtos ſe fines habere arbitrantes*, as in *Cæſars Commentaries*, intended to plant themſelves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* flying the dreadfull ſword of *Ioſuah* the ſon of *Nun*, ſought them out dwellings further off from the preſent danger, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the firſt people after the Flood diſtribute and diſperſe themſelves into ſeverall parts, as their poſterities have done ſince, and will do to the end of the World in all probabilitie: Giving their own names, or ſome names of their own impoſing, upon the Countries planted or diſcovered by them. And though the length, and conſuming nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the names impoſed by the firſt *Adventurers*, I mean the firſt *Planters* after the Flood: Yet all the Footſteps of Antiquitie are not ſo defaced, but that ſome Nations and Cities have preſerved the memory of their firſt Founders and true Parents. In the diſcovery whereof, as *Ioſephus* in his Book of *Iewiſh Antiquities* did firſt lead the way, and gave good light to thoſe who have travelled in it: So a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the tenth of *Geneſis*, Sir *Walter Ralegh* in his excellent Hiſtory, and lately by *Bochartus* a *French* Writer in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. Out of whoſe learned labours, and ſome Animadverſions of mine own, I ſhall here ſay ſomewhat concerning the Plantation of the World by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctuall deſcription of it unto the Hiſtory of thoſe ſeverall Lands and Countries which were planted by them.

Firſt therefore to begin with the poſterity of *Sem*, as thoſe who fixed themſelves in *Aſia*, without wandring further, we finde *Sem* to have had five ſons, that is to ſay, *Elam*, *Aſſur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, and *Aram*, of whom there is no iſſue on Record in holy Scripture, but onely of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*: And of theſe two there are but four ſonnes given to *Aram*, *viz. Uz*, *Hul*, *Gether*, and *Meſech*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*: To *Selah* was born *Heber*, to *Heber*, *Phales*, the Anceſter of *Abraham*, and *Iokan* the father of thoſe thirteen ſonnes, whoſe names we ſhall rehearſe hereafter, if occaſion be. From *Elam*, who is firſt named, did deſcend the *Elamites*, a people bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times joyned together in the Scriptures, as, *Go up, O* Elam; *beſiege, O* Media. *Eſ.* 21.*v.*2. *And all the Kings of* Elam, *all the Kings of the* Medes. *Ier.*25.*v.*25. And in the ſecond of the *Acts*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in rank and file, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principall City of this people was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the ſecond of *Maccab. cap.* 6.*v.*2. Sufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there conſecrated to *Diana*. A City ſeated on the banks of the River *Eulæus*, and neighbouring cloſe to *Suſiana*, which therefore is ſometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan.* 8. *ver.*2. *I was* (ſaith he)

in the Palace of Susa, *in the Province of* Elam; where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination unto all those Nations whom they after mastered. The second son of *Sem* is *Assur*, of whom there is no question made amongst the Learned, but that he was the Father of the *Assyrians*, called *Assyres* in some old *Greek* Writers: Not of the whole people of that great and unwieldy Empire, who sometimes generally passe by the name of *Assyrians*; but of the people of *Assyria* strictly and properly so called, as it denotes the Country about *Nineve* (the Regall City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Iuxta hunc Circuitum Adiabene*, Assyria *priscis temporibus vocata*, as in *Ammianus Marcellinus*, lib. 33. *Arphaxad* comes next after *Assur*, and him *Iosephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldeans*, called antiently *Arphaxadæi*, if he tell us true. But others tells us, and that more probably perhaps, that he planted in that part of *Assyria* which was first called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arrapachitis*; by which name it occurreth in the Tables of *Ptolomie*. *Lud* the fourth son is generally said to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a people of *Asia* the lesse; the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or Λυδοι, as the *Grecians* call them) being much alike. And it is possible enough that some of the posterity of this *Lud* might afterwards settle in those parts, and call the Country by the name of *Lud* their common Ancestor; as the posteritie of *Abraham* took unto themselves the name of *Hebrews* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* should in person go so far from the rest of the sonnes of *Sem*, I cannot easily imagine. For *Aram* the fift and last (as they stand in order of the Text) sets himself down close by his Brethren, in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the severall Provinces which were hence denominated, we shall hereafter speak more fully when we come to *Syria*. Onely take now this testimony and acknowledgment from the pen of *Strabo*, *Quos nos* Syros *vocamus, ipsi Syri* Aramehios & Arameos *vocant*. Those (saith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themselves *Arameans*, or *Aramenians*. In, and about the same parts did the four Sons of *Aram* set themselves and their Families; *Uz* in that part of *Syria*, which is called *Syria Damascena*, or *Aram Dammesek*; the building of the great Citie of *Damascus* being generally ascribed unto him; and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damascus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hul*, or *Chul*, the next son of *Aram*, whom both *Josephus* and St. *Hierome* setle in *Armenia*, or *Aramenia*, as in *Strabo*: And that not improbably, considering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* calls *Cholobetene*; and divers Cities in that tract, which still preserve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholus*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimna*, *Colsa*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolomie*. For *Gether*, the third son of *Aram*, it is not yet agreed on where to find his dwelling. *Josephus*, contrary to all reason, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer* with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*, and *Acarnania* of *Greece*. *Junius* sets him down in the Province of *Cassiotis*, and *Seleucis*, neer his Father *Aram*, where *Ptolomie* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nation called by *Plinie Gindareni*: *Bochartus* on the banks of the River *Centrites*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjecturech it might be, the controversie were at an end. But being that we find in *Ptolomie*, a City of *Albania* (which bordererh on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the same Country called *Getras*; I see no cause why we should seek further for the seat of *Gether*; though the *Greek* Copies (more subject to corruption in the times of ignorance, than the *Latin* were) insteed of *Getara* read *Gagara*. But if this be too far to set him, we shall find *Mas* or *Mesch*, the last Son, planted neerer hand, even in the Northern part of *Syria*, towards *Mesopotamia*, neer the Hill called *Masius*: at the foot whereof there is a people, which *Stephanus* calls *Masieni*, and thereabouts a River, which in *Xenophon* is named *Masca*. Both which do evidently declare from what root they come.

Come we next to the second branch of the house of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*; whom we left setled in the Region of *Arrapachitis*, in, or neer *Assyria*. Not far from which in *Susiana*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire, there is a Citie of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Ptolomies* Tables, and the 23 Book of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. Adde unto this the autoritie of *Eustathius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, Σαλα ἀφ' ἧς Σουσοι, The People of *Susiana* came from *Sala*. But this, as I conceive, must be understood onely of that part of this people, which lived in and about the Citie of *Sela*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Susians*, or *Susiani*, which borrowed their nomination from another root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the people of the *Hebræi*, or *Hebrews* do derive their name: And to him *Phaleg* his first-born, who in all probabilitie gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, situate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Seleucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book *de Urbibus*, and by *Ptolomie* in his *Geography*; where it is placed right on the banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chaboras* mingles waters with it; but there corruptly called *Pharga* instead of *Phalga*.

But the great increase of *Sems* posteritie came by *Jocktan*, the second Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whose names are on record in the tenth of *Genesis*, where it is said, that *their dwelling was from* Mesha, *as thou goest to* Sephar, *a Mount in the East*. And here I must crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath thronged *Jocktan* and his Sons into a little corner of *Arabia Felix*, where I can find no room for them, and less reason to place them. For being that *Chus* the son of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his posteritie, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himself confesseth, it must needs be, that they had spread themselves over all

the

the Country before any of the ſons of *Jocktan* were of age ſufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Jocktan* is credibly ſuppoſed not to have been born when ſuch of *Noahs* poſteritie as are mentioned *Gen.* 10. diſperſed themſelves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two ſeverall places. Firſt, granting that neither *Phaleg*, nor *Jocktan* were preſent at the building of *Babel*, *multo minus* Jocktanis *filii poſt aliquot annos geniti*; much leſs the Sonnes of *Joktan* begot many yeares after; *Lib.* 1. *cap.* 16. And Secondly, affirming that *Jocktan* and his children came not within the curſe of *Confounded Languages*, *quia nondum erant geniti*, becauſe then unborn, *Cap.* 15. Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable, that *Jocktan* and his children ſhould find room in the beſt parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his poſteritie had inhabited ſo long before. And as it is improbable that the Sons of *Chus* would plant themſelves in the worſt part of the Country for ſo many Ages, and leave the beſt and richeſt of it for ſome new Adventurers: So it is impoſſible that the Sons of *Jocktan* ſhould either be removed ſo far from the reſt of the houſe of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the Eaſt of the River *Tigris*, as was before ſhewed; or that they ſhou'd be able, had they been ſo minded, to break thorough the whole Countries of the *Aſſyrians*, *Chuſites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmoſt corners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, muſt have a ſtronger Faith than mine; but it ſhall never conduce any thing to his *juſtification*. Nor am I moved at all with that which ſeems to me to be his weightieſt Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joſeph Ben Abdallatif*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers affirm, that *Jocktan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine and ſervant of *Abraham*; becauſe that people ſo report it for their greater glory.

And for the ſeverall Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whoſe original he aſcribes to the ſons of *Jocktan*, I ſee ſo many tranſpoſitions of Syllables, alterations even of *Radicall* Letters, ſuch and ſo many wreſted *Originations*, as by the like libertie of making *quidlibet ex quolibet*, it were no difficult matter to find place for them in any Country whatſoever; For how extorted and unnaturall are the derivations of the *Allumæotæ* from *Almodad*, of the *Manitæ* from *Abimail*, of the *Jobaritæ* from *Jobab*? How impoſſible is it that *Jaraeh* ſhould give name to the Iſle which *Ptolomie* calleth Νῆσοι Ἱερᾶναι, *Inſula Ieracum*, or *Accipitrum*, as the *Latin* hath it, that is to ſay, the Iſle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks* which are therein bred: There being another Iſland of the ſame name neer unto *Sardinia* (ſo called for the ſelf ſame reaſon) and a Town called *Ierax* in *Hammoniaca* a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jarach* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Ieracum*, or *Accipitrum* in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* ſhould give name to *Urphire*, a poor *Iſle* of the *Red Sea*, *Obal* to *Sinus Avalites* in *Æthiopia*, on the other ſide of that Gulf? Or that *Dicla* muſt be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reaſon, but becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm-tree*, of which that Country yeelds good plenty; as if ſome other Countries did not yeeld as much? Theſe, and ſome other reaſons hereafter following, have made me bold to differ from that learned man in this particular, whoſe induſtry and abilities I do otherwiſe honour; and rather to look for *Joktan* and his ſonnes in the Eaſt part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with reference to the Wilderneſs, or land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Geneſis* was witten) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet ſo far I muſt yeeld to that learned man, that ſome of the Deſcendants of *Joktan* in long tract of time, moved with the rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themſelves upon the Sea-coaſts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this day moved with the wealth and trade of *India*, have poſſeſſed themſelves of many of the Ports and peeces on the ſhores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sonnes of *Joktan*, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount of the Eaſt*; ſo that by theſe two boundaries, *Meſha* and *Sephar*, their habitation muſt be found. I know *Bochartus* would have *Meſha* to be *Muſa*, a noted Port-Town on the South-Weſt of *Arabia Felix*; and *Sephar* to be the Citie of *Saphar* in the South-Eaſt of that Country; that Citie giving name to ſome Mount adjoyning. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Moſes* wrote, I cannot ſee how this poſition can agree with the word of Scripture; and therefore we muſt look for both in ſome other place. And firſt to find out *Meſha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himſelf, who maketh *Meſh*, the laſt of the Sonnes of *Aram*, the Sonne of *Sem* (according to the generall opinion of moſt Writers elſe) to be planted in the mountainous tracts of *Meſopotamia*, from him called *Mons Maſius*; more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a *Mount of the Eaſt*; if it be the Southern part of Mount *Imaus*, by *Ptolomy* named *Bitigo*, by the Moderns *Gates*, extending from Mount *Caucaſus* to the *Cape Comari* in the hither *India*, as *Poſtellus* a right learned man doth conceive it to be; We have without more difficulty found out the dwellings of the ſonnes of *Jocktan*, according to the bounds laid down in Holy Scripture. But for fear this may not ſatiſfie, for want of ſome Seconds to *Poſtellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a Citie of *Aria*, directly Eaſt from *Mons Maſius*, or the dwellings of *Meſh*; both in the Eaſt parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Moſes* writ: *Mons Maſius* being placed by *Ptolomie* in the 74 degree of *Longitude*, and the 37 of *Latitude*; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more towards the Eaſt, but with no more than two degrees of *Latitude* ſuper-added to it. And this agreeth to the poſition aſſigned to the ſonnes of *Joktan*, by *Joſephus*, *Euſebius*, and St. *Hierome*;

the

the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Josephus* that the *Joktanites* possessed all that Tract, ἀπὸ Κωφήνου ποταμοῦ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς, καὶ τῆς πρὸς αὐτῇ Συρίας τινὰ, which lieth about *Kophenus* a River of *India*, together with such parts of *Syria* as did border neer it. These words being borrowed from *Josephus* both by *Eusebius* and S. *Hierome*; the first instead of *Syria* reads *Seria*, and the other *Jeria*, but neither rightly: there being no such place in the world as *Jeria*; and *Syria* and *Seria* (or the Countrey of the *Seres*) lying too far off to border on *Cophenus* a River of *India*. *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we should there read *Aria*: and withall granting, as he may, that *Aria* in the largest latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Paropamisus* and *Arachosia*, extendeth as far Eastward as the River *Cophenus*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the Sonnes of *Joktan*, betwixt *Mons Masius* and *Siphare*, a Town of *Aria*: which probably might give name to some Mount adjoyning, as *Saphar* by *Bochartus* is supposed to do to some of the *Arabian* hills bordering neer unto it. And as these Situations do agree exactly with the meaning of those Antient Writers; so is it also very suitable to the other Plantations of the Sonnes of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all dispute, that *Phaleg* and *Joktan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when so many of the relidue of *Noahs* Posterity removed toward *Shinaar*, kept themselves under the tuition of their Grandfather *Noah*; or at least wandred not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*, till *Joktan*'s Sonnes being grown to be Fathers of *Families*, were forced to cast about for new habitations. And when necessity compelled them to seek new seats, I would fain know, why they should think of making themselves a way to *Arabia Felix*, thorough Countreys peopled and possessed a long time before; when they had Elbow-room enough on the East of *Tigris*, and the unpeopled Countreys of some parts of *India* lay so neer at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence and as little forced for some of their Plantations in the Eastern parts, as *Bochartus* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodad* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the *Metropolis* of *Mesopotamia*, not far from *Mesha* or *Mons Masius* the Western Boundary; and *Jarach* of the Nation of the *Arachosians* inhabiting neer *Siphare* the Eastern limit, assigned unto the Sonnes of *Joktan*. With what an easie change might *Obal* or *Chobal* be supposed to be the Father of the *Cabolites* of *Paropamisus*? *Hadoram* of the *Orites* an *Indian* people neer unto the other? But these North-Eastern parts being peopled, or not very pleasant, how many of the Sonnes of *Joktan* shall we find in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bochartus* himself confesseth that the Land of *Ophir* (another of the sonnes of *Joktan*) was a part of *India*, but whether *Sumatra*, *Taprobane*, or *Aurea Chersonesus*, I dispute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whose name are found in *Sabalassa*, one of the mouthes of the River *Indus*, *Sabana* a City of the *Golden Chersonese*, a River in the same Tract named *Sabanus*, and a City called *Sabe*: besides the whole Nation of the *Sabæi* mentioned by *Dionysius* in his *Periegesis*. And though some late Criticks read it *Siba* instead of *Sabæi*, (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Siba*, is confessed on all sides:) yet seeing *Eustathius* finds the *Saba* in this Countrey also, I cannot see but that there should be room enough in *India* for both people to dwell in. For *Abimail* another of the Sonnes of *Joktan* we find more evident footsteps of him in the *Mali* or *Malli* an *Indian* people, in *Maleta* and *Maliba* two Towns of *India*, in *Malæus* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally in *Malæi Colon* a Promontory of *Aurea Chersonesus*, than in the *Manitæ* of *Bochartus*. For if *Abimail* signifie the Father of the *Mali*, as he saith it doth, he was more like to be the Father of the *Mali*, commonly and literally so called, whom we find in *India*; than that we should be forced to look for them in the *Manitæ*, or look for the *Manitæ* in the house of *Abimail*. If *Dicla* must be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reason, than because the word signifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Countrey; I doubt not to find as many *Palms* to plant by amongst the *Indians*, as *Bochartus* doth among the *Arabians*. And finally, if *Chatramis*, or *Chatramatitis* an *Arabian* Region, have such resemblance to the name of *Chatsarmaveth*, as to take that Appellation from him, as *Bochartus* telleth us it did, we may conclude with equall, if not better reason, that the *Chadramotitæ* an *Indian* people, seated upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whose streams some of the refidue of his Brethren had their habitations, had their first Originall from that *Chatsarmaveth*. For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the Antients generally set him in the *Indies* also, not far from *Saba* and *Ophir* two of his Brethren: to whose authority I submit, because I find a *Province* in the Golden *Chersonese*, called the Kingdom of *Ava*, and thought to be so called from this very man. And I conceive the like also of the rest of the *Joktanites*, whose habitations might be found in *India*, or neer *Mesh* and *Sephar*, if one would take that liberty of *Critizizing*, altering and transposing letters, as *Bochartus* doth, only to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this short Essay may inform the Reader, that *Bochartus* was too confident a lover of his own opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium* Sephar *nomine, nec ulla posterorum* Ioktan *in* Aria *aut* India *vestigia jam supereſſe*; that is to say, that there is no such place as *Sephar*, nor any tract or footstep of the Sonnes of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is so clearly evidenced.

These were the Generations and Dispersions of the Sonnes of *Sem*, contracted in a narrower compass than either the Posterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*: of whom the first, besides the great footing which he had in *Asia*, did possess all *Africk*, and the other, besides his share in the greater *Asia*, filled almost all the lesser *Asia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe* with the Isles thereof,

thereof, with his fruitfull Progeny. And first beginning with *Cham*, we find him the Father of four sonnes, that is to say, *Cush, Mizraim, Phut*, and *Canaan*; of which onely *Phut* the third Sonne hath no issue assigned him. To *Chush* the eldest Sonne were born *Seba* and *Havilah*, and *Sabtah, Nimrod, Sabtecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Dedan*. And unto *Mizraim* the second Sonne were born *Ludim*, and *Amamim*, *Lehabim*, *Naphtuhim*; *Pathrusim, Caphtorim*, and *Casluhim*, who was the Father of *Philistim*. Of *Canaan* and his issue we shall speak hereafter: In the mean time we will dispose of these first branches of the stock of *Cham*, beginning first with *Chus* the eldest, and so descending to the rest of this first Line. And first for *Chush*, though it be generally said both by the *Greek* and *Jewish* Writers, that he was the Father of the *Æthiopians* in the heart of *Africa*, yet upon better search he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, possessing himself of a good part of that which is called *Petræa*, and some part of *Arabia Felix*. For whereas *Zipora* the wife of *Moses* was daughter unto *Jethro* the Priest or Prince of *Madian*, *Exod.* 2. v. 16. *&c.* and yet is called an *Æthiopian woman*, in the 12. of *Num.* v. 1. it must needs be that by *Æthiopian*, in the last place, must be meant an *Arabian*; for *Madian* doubtless was a City of *Arabia* neer unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Josephus* for the *Jewes*, *Ptolomie* for the *Grecians*, and S. *Hierome* for the *Latine* Writers. But we shall canvass this more throughly in its proper place: the strength of reason serving for a supplement of that one main defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the name of *Chus* in any of the Cities, Promontories, Hills or Rivers of all that Countrey, by which his planting there might be made more evident. *Seba*, the eldest Sonne of *Chus*, sets himself down on the shores of the *Red Sea*, as neer his Father as he could, becoming the Originall of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Sabæans*; the so much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the best Frankincense, being their *Metropolis* or head City. A Nation seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsula*, subject in *Solomons* time to that famous Lady called in the old Testament from her Country, the Queen of *Sheba*, and in the new Testament from the situation of it, the Queen of the *South*: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable testimony.

For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the second of the Sonnes of *Chus*, most probable it is that he possessed himself of that part of *Arabia* which lay neerest unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Pison* is said to incompass, *Gen.* 2. v. 2. Some footsteps of whose name remain in the *Chaulotæi* of *Eratosthenes*, the *Chaulasii* of *Festus Avienus*, but more plainly in the *Chavelei* of *Plinie*; being all three but one people, though thus diversly named, and all of them planted towards the *Persian* Gulf, and so to *Babylon*. On the same shore of the *Persian* Gulf, we are to look for *Sabta* the third sonne of *Chus*, where *Ptolomie* informs us of a Citie called *Saphta*, and of an Iland in the same Gulf called *Sopththa* also. From whence in probabilitie some of this people might pass over into *Persia*, on the other side of the Gulf, and there give name to the *Sabtæi*, which by the transposition of the letter *T.* are by *Ptolomie* called the *Stabæi*. That *Nimrod* the fourth sonne of *Chus* did first plant himself in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is so plain and positive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabteca* the fift sonne, I confess I can find no tract in any of the antient Authors. For why we should admit of so great a change, as first, of *B.* into *M.* and then, of *T.* into *D.* (which could not easily be done by very careless Transcribers) and so finde *Sabteca* in *Samydace*, a City or Country of the *Carmanians* on the *Persian* side of the Gulf, I can see no reason: And therefore rather chuse to mingle him and his posterity with the sonnes of *Sabta*, and the children of his brother *Regma*, all planted on the same shore of the *Persian* Gulf. For that *Regma* (our *English* Bibles call him *Raama*) was setled on the banks of the Bay of *Persia*, hath so good autority, that there is no dispute to be made of that: *Ptolomie* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regama* it is called in the *Latin* Translation) by which name it occurreth in *Stephanus* also in his Book *De Urbibus*, Καὶ Ῥῆγμα ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον. And *Regma*, on the *Persian* Gulf, as his words there are. And not far thence we are to look for his sonne *Sheba*; both being joyned together in the Book of God; and both there said to busie and employ themselves in the trade of Merchandizing: *The Merchants of* Shebah, *and* Raamah (saith the Text) *they were thy Merchants; they occupied in thy Fairs with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold. Ezek.* 27. *v.* 22. So that the Nations of the *Sabæans*, though descended at the first from severall parents, inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix* from one Sea to the other; as evidently appeareth by those words of *Plinie*; where he informeth us most truly, that the *Sabæans*, or *Arabian* people, well known for their abundance of Frankincense, *ad utraq; maria porrectis gentibus habitare*, had spread themselves over all the Country, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Persia*. Finally, in the same tract we find *Dedan* the other sonne of *Regma*, and the last of all the sonnes of *Chus*; there being on the mouth of the *Persian* Gulf (but on the *Arabian* coast thereof) not onely a City, but a Province called by the name of *Dedan*, which both *Ortelius*, and some other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than so, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joyns him with his brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the same trade of Merchandise; *The men of* Dedan *were thy Merchants*, chap. 27. 15. Sheba, *and* Dedan, *and the Merchants of* Tarshish. chap. 38. 13. *They brought thee hornes of Ivorie, and Ebonie*, saith the Prophet in the former Text.

The head of the next house of the race of *Cham*, was *Mizraim*, the second sonne, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder brother *Chus* and his posteritie in the rich and de-

lectable Countries of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylonia*, or the land of *Shinaar*, he went with his own ſonnes, and his Brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no queſtion amongſt the Learned, though all the tracts and footſteps of *Miſraim* be quite worn out; unleſs any thing of it were preſerved in the word *Meſari*, by which the *Ægyptians* antiently called the firſt Moneth in the year; or in that of *Meſre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt* to this day: But being *Egypt* is called *Miſraim* in the *Hebrew* Bibles, that onely is ſufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*, let us look after his ſonne *Ludim*, whom he ſent out to people *Æthiopia*, the next Country to him. For that this *Ludim* was the Father of thoſe *Ethiopians*, many good reaſons are alleged. Firſt, from the Texts of *Eſaiah cap* 66. 19. and *Jer.* 46 9. where *Lud* is ſaid to be very *skilfull in drawing the bow*; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Ethiopians* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the antient Writers. Secondly, from the joyning of the children or people of *Ludim* with thoſe of *Phul*, in the place of *Eſaiah* before cited; which *Phul* may very probably be the Citie which the *Gracians* call *Phila*, ſituate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Ethiopia*, and antiently inhabited both by the *Ethiopians* and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and ſome others of the Antients witneſs. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the children of *Lud* or *Ludim*, with thoſe of *Chus*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and thoſe of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*, both next neighbours to them; as in *Ezek.* 30. *ver.* 5. and that of *Jer.* above mentioned; where our *Engliſh* very ſtrangely rendereth *Ludim* by the name of *Lydians*, which dwell too far off both from *Chuſh* and *Phut*, to be joyned together in one action. But of this, more than enough already, the Arguments being ſo ſtrong, and alſo moſt demonſtrative. I go on therefore to the next; onely obſerving by the way, that the *Ethiopians* mentioned in thoſe Texts of our *Engliſh* Bibles, are not theſe of *Africa*, but the *Chuſites* of *Arabia Felix*; our Tranſlators alwaies rendring *Chus* by *Ethiopia*. The *Anamim*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unleſs they were the ſame with the *Amantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammanientes* of *Plinie*, a people ſeated on the ſea-ſide neer the greater *Syrtis*; to which the neighbourhood of the *Lehabim* may give ſome countenance; who ſeem to be the ſame with the people of *Libya*, a Province ſeated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenaica*, and were called *Libyægyptii* by the old Geographers, to difference them from the inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, whereof more hereafter. For the *Naphtuhim*, I am alſo at a loſs, unleſs we find them ſomewhere in *Cyrenaica*; and that ſome remnant of the name be in *Aptucht fanum*, which occurs in *Ptolomie*. But for the *Pathruſim*, I think no queſtion need be made, but that they were the people of that Province of *Egypt*, which in divers places of the Scripture is called *Pathros*, as *Eſay* 11. 11. *Jer.* 44. 1. *Ezek.* 29. 14. and ſeems to be that part of *Egypt*, which is called *Thebais*, where *Ptolomie* placeth *Pathyris*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebe*. (And *Pathuris* the *Greek* or *Septuagint* term that, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Pathros*.)

Hitherto wee have found the Nations which deſcended from the ſonnes of *Miſraim*, in *Egypt*, and the Countries adjoyning to it. And there, or there abouts, wee are to looke for *Caphtorim*, and *Caſluhim*, the two ſonnes remaining. I know there hath been great paines taken to find the *Caſluhim* in *Colchis*, and the *Caphtorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus*, not far from *Trabezond*; where notwithſtanding there is no tract of the names remaining. But this being ſo far off from *Egypt*, in, and neer which, both *Miſraim* himſelf, and all the reſt of his ſonnes were planted, I can by no means yeeld unto it; though to content ſuch Learned men, as would faine have it ſo, I think it poſſible enough that ſome of the *Egyptians* in ſucceeding times, moved with the fame of that great wealth which *Colchis* was ſuppoſed to yeeld to ſome Adventurers, might leave their native ſoyl to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the learned *Junius*, that the *Caſluhim* were firſt planted in the Region of *Caſſiotis* (not far from *Damiata*, a chief town of *Egypt*) which retains ſomewhat of the name; and ſo doth *Coptus*, an old Citie of *Egypt*, of the name of *Caphtorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Copti*, which at this day is given to the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, may not be thought to have its firſt riſe from *Caphtorim*, rather than that they are ſo called *quaſi Ægyptii*, corruptly for *Ægyptii*, I muſt needs ſay I am not ſatisfied. Beſides, it being cleer in Scripture, that the *Caſluhim*, and *Caphtorim* dwelt neer together, and that the *Philiſtims* are ſaid to deſcend from *Caſluhim*, if *Caſluhim* ſhould go for *Colchis*, and *Caphtorim* for *Cappadocia*, we muſt firſt carry them I know not how far off from the reſt of their Brethren, againſt the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philiſtims* back again from *Colchis*, to find a dwelling on the borders of the land of *Egypt*, from whence their Anceſtors and Allies were ſo far remote. Whereas by ſetling theſe two Nations amongſt the reſt of their Brethren, the journey of the *Philiſtims* unto *Canaan*, and ſetling themſelves in the poſſeſſions of the *Avim* (a *Canaanitiſh* people) whom they had ſubdued, *Deut.* 2. 23. is both eaſie and naturall. But before we follow theſe *Philiſtims* further in their new Plantation amongſt the *Canaanites*, we will firſt ſee what became of *Phut* the third ſonne of *Cham*. And if we guide our ſelves in this *Labyrinth* by the clew of Antiquitie, we ſhall find him ſetled West of his Brother *Miſraim*, and ſo to the *Atlantick* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their dominions. Some Reliques of the name there were in the time of *Joſephus*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Plinie* makes mention of it alſo. *Ptolomie* takes notice of a River in thoſe parts called *Phuth*, which comes very neer it. And ſo doth *Iſidore*, Origen. l. 9. 2. But St. *Hierome* in my mind puts it out of doubt,

whoſe

whose words I shall put down, and so leave *Africa*; Phut *Libye, à quo & Mauritania finitimus usque ad præsens* Phut *dicitur, omnisque circa eum Regio* Phutensis; *cujus rei multi Scriptores tam Græci quam Latini testes sunt*. Where we have not onely a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*; and many antient Writers both *Greek* and *Latin* called to witness it.

And now we should proceed to *Canaan* and his sonnes (eleven in all) being the fourth and last branch of the house of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or neer the land of *Canaan*, we shall find them there, or meet with them in such Plantations and Colonies as they sent abroad, under the title of *Phœnicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whose *Tents* God promised to *enlarge*, as indeed he did; spreading his branches over *Europe*, the lesser *Asia*, and a great part of the greater also. To him were born seven sonnes in all, that is to say, *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal*, *Meshech*, and *Thyras*: Of which, the Issue of two onely are upon record, viz. *Aschenaz*, *Riphath*, and *Togarma*, the sonnes of *Gomer*: *Elisha*, *Tarshish*, *Kittim* and *Dodanim*, the sonnes of *Javan*. And first for *Gomer* and his sonnes, they first possessed themselves of convenient dwellings in the *greater*, and the *lesser Asia*. *Gomer* himself first planting in the mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long retained his name; and after changing that unpleasant, and unfruitfull dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the Citie *Cimmeris*, in the daies of *Plinie*, did preserve his memory. For that the posteritie and people of *Gomer*, called at first *Gomerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimbri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongst the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himself in the *Greater Phrygia*, so did his eldest sonne *Aschenaz* in *Phrygia minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, spreading himself along upon the *Hellespont*, and those *Greekish* Seas, as far as *Bithynia*. In all which places there were left some memory of this Plantation: For in *Bithynia* there is a Bay called *Sinus Ascanius*, together with a River, and a Lake of the same name also. And in the *Lesser Phrygia*, and the Country of *Troas*, there was both a Citie and a Province adjoyning, antiently known by the name of *Ascania*; and the *Ascanie Insulæ* also on the coasts thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in honour of this *Aschenaz*, the Kings and great men of those parts took the name of *Ascanius*. Of which name, besides *Ascanius* the sonne of *Æneas*, we find a King mentioned in the second of *Homers Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the siedge of *Troy*. In the same quarters of the World we find *Riphath* also, the founder of the *Riphei*; a people dwelling in the East parts of *Bithynia*, and spreading also over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are some remnants of his name to be found amongst the Antients. For besides that *Josephus* saith expressly, that the *Paphlagonians* antiently were called *Riphei*; there is mention in *Apollonius Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebaus*, which rising in *Bithynia*, emptieth it self into the *Pontus Euxinus*, neer to *Paphlagonia*, of which River *Plinie* also doth inform us; and *Stephanus* doth not onely acquaint us with the River it self, but tels us also of a Region of the same name, and of a people thereabouts which is called *Rhebai*. Nor need we look much further to find out the seat of *Togarma* the third sonne of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not onely joyneth with his Father as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judæa*; Gomer *and all his bands, the house of* Togarma *in the North quarters and all his bands*, cap. 38. 6. So that they do not guess amiss, who place *Togarma* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*; a Country not onely bordering neer to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the North of the land of *Canaan*, but very well stocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horses, as *Strabo* testifieth in the 11 Book of his *Geographie*; with which commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the same Prophet tels us of them, *cap.* 27. 14. But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarma*'s dwelling must be found in *Cappadocia*; we must first know that the *Greek* Translators call him generally by the name of *Torgama*; and then, that antiently there was a people in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trocmi*, and *Tully*, *Trogmi*; by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmeni*, and *Trogmades* in the Councel of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyriacus* Bishop of the *Trogmades* (Κυριακὸς Ἐπίσκοπος Τογμάδων) is often mentioned. Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the sonnes of *Gomer*, we will next pursue the rest of the sonnes of *Japhet*, except *Javan* onely, whom with his four sonnes we will keep together. And the next sonne of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much dispute and difference amongst our *Antiquaries*; some making him the Father of the *Scythians*, some of the *Goths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that such terible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but such terrible Nations. And possible enough it is, that some of his posteritie in succeeding times, finding their own seats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be founders of some *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nations; but that *Magog* himself in his first Plantation should wander so far out of the way from the rest of his brethren, when he had elbow-room enough amongst them, I cannot easily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogæus*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Plinie*, that the Citie of *Cœle Syria*, which the *Grecians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themselves called *Magog*; I shall not trouble my self to look for *Magog* any where else, than in those Countries where they have left such evident Land-marks to discern themselves by. But this we shall the better see by looking out the dwellings of his two brethren, *Meshech* and *Tubal*, who being joyned together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek.* cap. 38. 2. & 39. 1. are very unlike to have their dwellings far asunder: or that they could concur in any publick Action against the *Jews*, according to the scope and purpose of the holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Meshech*, whom

the Antients named *Mosoch*, seated himself on the North and North-East of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and so unto the *Caspian*, or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that tract runs a ridge of Hils, which *Plinie*, *Ptolomie*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moschici*, determinating *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and most like to be the dwelling of *Mesech*, or *Mosoch*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, because *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally joyn together with *Mesech*, is by most Writers said to have setled himself in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Josephus* also telling us, that anciently the *Iberi* were called *Thobeli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on some new occasion. And hereunto the constant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives some good authoritie, who boast of their descent from *Tubal*: which can no otherwise be granted, than as they were a Colonie of these *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*, and where one of the principall Rivers is still called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Sonne of *Japhet*, it is most plain by the autority of Scripture (were there no proof else) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who in the book of *Daniel*, and that of *Hester*, are represented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of those who first themselves in either, or in both the *Asias*; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the sonnes of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the lesser *Asia*, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous progenies. And first beginning with *Javan* as the Elder brother, most Authors make him the Originall of those *Greek* Nations which pass under the generall name of *Iones*; and there is very good ground for the assertion, considering that the *Greek* Translators of the Bible instead of *Javan*, read *Jovan*, and that all those, who elsewhere ordinarily are called *Iones*, are by *Homer*, one of the antientest of the *Greeks*, named *Jaones*. Now *Javan* and *Jion* sound so like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the same. A name not onely proper to the *Athenians*, and their *Colonies*, though probable enough first belonging to them of *Attica*, but comprehending the *Baotians* and *Achaans* also; yea, and extending also into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan.* 8. 21. where *Alexander* the Great in the *Hebrew* is called King of *Javan*, which we *English Grecia*. Nor do we much dis-joyn *Javan* from the rest of that stock, by carrying him cross the seas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his second Plantation; And leaving him well setled in the greater *Phrygia*, and his sonne *Askenaz* in the lesser; might then with very little trouble (and no improbalitie at all) pass over the *Hellespont*, and plant himself in *Attica*, called at first *Ionia*, saith *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus*. Or if any one notwithstanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecataeus*, that the *Iones* came out of *Asia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpose) I shall not much contend against that opinion; so it be also granted on the other side, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the shores of *Asia*, passed over into *Greece*, as a land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Elisha* his eldest sonne, the Father of the *Æoles*, or *Æolians*, on the *Asian* side, as *Josephus* hath it; and the founder of *Elis* in *Peloponnesus*, and planter of the *Grecian* Isles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, 27. 7. are called the Iles of *Elisha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Isles of *Greece*, which by the Prophet is affirmed of the Isles of *Elisha*; namely, that the inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blew* and *Purple*; in which some of the *Grecian* Isles were such excellent Artizans, that *Carpathus* had the name of *Porphyris*, and *Cithera* was called Πορφυρίωσσα, onely from the abundance of *Purple* which they had amongst them. Not to say any thing of *Coos*, *Nisyrus*, and *Gyarus*, and some other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors for that commoditie.

A shorter journey, but withall a far shorter Territory fell to the lot of *Tarshish* the second sonne; whom *Javan* when he travelled further upon new discoveries, left setled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*, where either he, or some of his Posteritie in honour of him, built the City of *Tarsus*, the principall City of that Province. For that *Tarshish* in those early daies should go into *Spain*, and there build *Tarnessus*, I take to be a strange (if not idle) *Romance*; that Town being built by the *Phœnicians* many ages after, without relation unto *Tarshish*, or his memory either. What Voyages or Plantations those of *Cilicia* or *Tarsus* made in times succeeding, as I no where finde, so is not materiall to my present purpose; which principally is to settle the sonnes of *Noah* in their first habitations. On therefore unto *Citim* the third sonne of *Javan*, whom *Josephus* settleth first in the Ile of *Cyprus*, where he finds a Citie called *Citium*, the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, thence surnamed Κιτιεύς. *Josephus* is herein followed by St. *Hierome* in his Notes on *Genesis*, in whose time (as *Pintus* telleth us in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Citium* was still standing; so do *Eustathius* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* sets him further off, giving the name of *Citim* unto *Macedonia*. *After that* (saith the Author) Alexander *the son of* Philip, *went forth of the land of* Cethim, *and slew* Darius *King of the* Persians *and* Medes, *cap.* 1. *v.* 1. And after in the 18. Chapter of the same Book, verse 5. *Perseus* King of *Macedon* is called King of the *Citims*. But this doth no way contradict that of his first planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reason of the neighbourhood of his brother *Tarshish* (*Cilicia* and the Citie of *Tarsus* lying neer unto it;) But finding in time that Iland to be too small for his people; and that the other parts both of *Greece* and *Asia* were taken up already by the first Adventurers, he might finally fix himself, or some of his posteritie, in *Macedonia*, as a spare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he or any of his

sonnes

ſonnes planted firſt in *Italy*, which I ſee *Bochartus* would fain have, were againſt the method of Plantations; and he muſt give them wings to fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the uſe of ſhipping, or not accuſtomed at leaſt to make long voyages. But that in courſe of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contain its multitudes, ſome of the race of *Cittim* might paſs over into *Italy*, the paſſage thither from ſome of the Ports of *Greece* being ſhort and eaſie, I am apt enough to beleeve, and in its proper place ſhall declare my ſelf for it. Nor can I otherwiſe agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom againſt all right and reaſon he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Country, to be named of him; whom the *Greeks*, miſtaking the letter *Daleth* for that of *Reſh* (as indeed the letters are ſo like, that one may very eaſily be miſtook for the other) moſt commonly preſent unto us by the name of *Rhodanim*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to ſettle *Rhodanim* for a while in the Iſle of *Rhodes*, lying ſo neer the dwellings of his other brethren; till wanting room for the increaſe of his poſterity in ſo ſmall an Iſland, he might coaſt along the ſhores of *Peloponneſus*, and fix himſelf finally in *Epirus* by his brother *Eliſha*, where in the Province of the *Molloſſians*, we ſhall finde a City called *Dodona*, without any ſuch miſtake or change of letters as before is mentioned. For that the three furtheſt parts of *Europe* in reſpect of *Aſia* ſhould be planted all at once by theſe ſonnes of *Javan*, is ſo incredible an imagination, that he muſt have a very ſtrong fancy, or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally, as for *Thyras* the laſt ſonne of *Japhet*, having accompanied his brother *Javan* to the ſhores of *Aſia*, and ſeeing him paſſed over the ſeas to *Greece*, he took the opportunity of the next ſtreight or *Fretum* (ſince called *Thracius Boſphorus*) and fixed himſelf in *Thrace*, which Country he gave name unto, as moſt Writers teſtifie. Nor want there ſuch apparent footſteps of the name of *Thyras*, beſides the name of *Thracia* (as ſome ſpell the word) which may adde good autoritie to this generall teſtimony; there being both a River and a nHaven-town not far from *Bizantium*, which *Plinie*, *Ptolomie*, and *Mela* call *Athyras*: A River and Town called *Tyras* in the Province of *Mœſia*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof moſt of all the old *Geographers* have taken notice; and finally the *Thracians* calling their God *Mars* by the name of *Thuras*. Not to ſay any thing of *Tereus*, *Therops*, and ſome others of the Kings of *Thrace*, whoſe names come very neer unto that of *Thyras*, as the firſt founder of their Nation.

Thus have we ſeen the ſeverall Generations and Diſperſions of the Sonnes of *Noah*, ſo far forth as their names are regiſtred in holy Scripture: theſe being the Heads and Leaders of thoſe ſeverall Tribes which joyned together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards diſperſed themſelves, as before was ſhewn. But that no more than theſe (I mean Heads of Families) deſcended in ſo long a time from the loyns of *Noah*; that they ſhould have towards the new peopling of the world, in an hundred years (for ſo long it muſt be at leaſt from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more than ſixteen ſonnes in all; and ten of thoſe ſixteen go childleſs alſo to the grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the people which were born ſince the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by inſpiration; or being met would joyn together in a work of ſo little profit; or that if *Noah* or *Sem* had been there amongſt them they would not have diſſwaded them from that fooliſh enterprize. And therefore I ſhould rather be of their opinion, which think that *Noah* fixed himſelf in thoſe parts which lay neereſt to the place where the Ark took land: and having planted as far Eaſtward as he thought convenient, ſent out the ſurpluſage of his people under the Conduct of one or more of theſe *Undertakers*; directing them perhaps to the Land of *Shinaar*, where himſelf had dwelt before the *Flood*. Where being come, and deſtitute of graver and more ſober counſells, they fell upon that vain attempt which became their ruin; and made them ſcatter and diſperſe themſelves into ſo many Companies. For in my minde Sir *Walt. Ralegh* pleads the point exceeding ſtrongly, that it muſt needs be that *Noah* was ſetled in the Eaſt, and had well peopled all thoſe parts which lay neereſt to him, before he ſent this Troop abroad upon new diſcoveries. For being it is expreſly ſaid in holy Scripture, that *as they went from the Eaſt, they found a plain in the Land of Shinaar*; it muſt needs follow without controverſie, that they came from the *Eaſt* Countreys into *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, and not from any part of *Armenia* (as the Vulgar opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countreys whence they came were not left utterly deſolate upon this remove, but very ſufficiently provided both of men and Cities, appeareth by thoſe huge Armies which *Zoroaſter* the King of *Baſtria*, and *Staurobates* King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the field. Of whom the firſt being invaded by *Ninus* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, encountred him with an Army of 400000. fighting men; the other on the like occaſion out-vied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did conſiſt, as we read in *Diodorus Siculus*, of three millions and an half of men, beſides 10000. armed Waggons; whereof if we believe but the third part, it may ſerve to prove that the Eaſt muſt needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For conſidering that *Ninus* the husband of *Semiramis* was but the third in deſcent from *Nimrod*, that is to ſay, the ſonne of *Belus*, the ſonne of *Nimrod*, it had been a moſt impoſſible thing that ſuch a vaſt increaſe ſhould be made onely out of *Colonies* in ſo ſhort a time, as needs muſt be between the planting of the Countreys before ſpecified, and theſe two great Actions, unleſs God raiſed them out of ſtones, or by ſome ſuch miracle, to abate the pride of theſe Uſurpers over other

Nations. Without a miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wise man would expect to find) it is I say, a thing impossible that *Semirobates* should exceed *Semiramis* in number of men, as *Diodorus* saith he did, he being but a Castling of a second Swarm, and she the great Commandress of that part of the world from whence he came upon a second or a third Plantation. Add unto this, that those who have recorded the Acts of *Alexander* the great, assure us that he found more Cities and sumptuosities in that little Kingdome of *Porus*, which lay side by side to the East of the River *Indus*, than in all his other travells and undertakings: And this may serve instead of a further evidence, that the East Countreys were not planted after this dispersion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under forms of Government as soon as any in the World. Nor know I else where to finde either *Noah* himself, or *Sem* and *Japhet*, unless they staid behind with their Father *Noah*, or were disposed of by themselves in their severall quarters: there being none of those, though most diligent men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this dispersion, that either speak of any Nations planted by them, or of their setling in the Colonies of any one of their descendants. Which is to me a very strong Argument that they came not with the rest to the plains of *Shinaar*, but tarried still in those habitations wherein God had placed them. Against this I can see but two Objections of any moment; one from the Text, the other from an old *Tradition* amongst the *Jews*. That from the Text is gathered from those words of *Moses*, where having made his Catalogue of the Families of the Sonnes of *Noah*, he adds, *And by these were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood*, *Gen.*10.v.*ult*. But these words, as I take it, do relate onely unto that division which was made upon occasion of the *confusion* of *Languages*, when they were forced to give over their work, and sort themselves into severall Companies; and not to such Plantations as were made before, who being all of one tongue, though in divers dwellings, could not be looked upon as severall and divided Nations. For the *Tradition* of the *Jews*, tis this, that from the beginning of the world to the building of *Babel*, that language which in after-times was called the *Hebrew*, was the common language of Mankinde; and that it did continue uncorrupt in the house of *Eber*, (whence it had the name) because he joyned not with the rest in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may possibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-spring of *Noah* which came not with the rest to the plains of *Shinaar*, and consequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curse of *confounded Languages*, but must needs speak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as those descended of the loyns of *Heber*. But against this Tradition, and the consequents of it, there are some things to be objected. For first it is but a *Tradition*, and therefore of no sure foundation to build upon. And secondly, it is such a *Tradition* as holds no good coherence with the truth of Story, it being a most clear and demonstrative truth, that the *Hebrew* Tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Mesopotamia*, but that which he found spoken in the Land of *Canaan* at his coming thither; to which both he and his Posterity did conform themselves. Or had it been the Language of *Heber*, as they say it was, (but most undoubtedly was not) Yet, Thirdly, had this been a privilege conferred on *Heber*, that he and his Posterity should speak the Originall Language, without alteration or corruption, it must have been extended to all those of the house of *Joktan* which descended from him; as also to the house of *Laban* in *Padan Aram*, and to the *Moabites*, and the *Ammonites* as the seed of *Lot*; and finally to the *Ishmaelites* and *Idumæans*, descended of *Abraham* and *Esau*, and not be limited and confined onely to the house of *Jacob*. Either all these must be partakers of so great a privilege, because their Father *Heber* had obtained it for himself and his; or else it was not such a prvilege, or given so universally and communicably to the house of *Heber*, as they say it was. So the *Tradition* falls to ground as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that those who staid behind with *Noah*, spake the same Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the *Hebrew*, or what else soever it was) I see no reason to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into severall Languages or *Dialects* of the same one Language, by the commerce and intercourse which they had with Nations of a different speech; as well as those of *Judah* in so short a time as the *Captivity* of *Babylon*, had lost the purity of that Language which they so much brag of, and could not understand their own Bibles at their coming home but by an *Interpreter*. Of which see *Nehem.c.*8.*v.*7,8.

But to proceed: On this dispersion of the Families of the sonnes of *Noah*, it came to pass, that though they all descended from one common Root, yet by the situations of their severall dwellings they came to be of severall tempers and affections; in which they were so different from one another, that it might seem they had been made at first out of severall Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Du Bartas*.

O see how full of wonders strange is Nature,
Sith in each Climate, *not alone in stature,*
Strength, colour, hair; but that men differ do
Both in their humours, and their manners too.
The Northern *man is fair, the* Southern *fowl;*
That's white, this black, that smiles, and this doth scowl.
Th' one's blith and frolick, the other dull and froward;
Th' one's full of courage, th' other a fearfull coward, &c.

The

The ground or reason of which difference is to be attributed to the different tempers of those Countries in which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on those severall Countries: which do continue still the same, though many times the Countries do shift and change their old Inhabitants. *Hinc illa ab antiquo vitia, & patriâ sorte duramia, quæ totis in historiis gentes aut commendant aut notant*, saith a Modern, but judicious Author. Two or three evidences of this truth wil make it cleer and evident to a practical judgment, which otherwise might appear obscure in the search of causes. *Florus* hath told us of the *Gauls*, *Primum eorum impetum esse majorem quam virorum, secundum minorem quam fœminarum.* Which is the same which *Rob. Dallington* hath told us of the Modern *French*, That he begins an action like thunder, and ends it in a smoak. *Ut sunt* Gallorum *subita ingenia*, saith *Cæsar* of the antient *Gauls*: and I believe the present *French* are altogether as rash and harebraind as the other were. *Gallia fœcunda Causidorum*, was part of the character of the *Gauls* in the time of *Juvenal*; and it is told us of the *French* by some late Observers, that there are commonly more Law-tryals amongst them in one year, than have been in *England* since the Conquest. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholy rooted out of the Country, the severall Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britons*, *Normans*, and *Goths* being in possession of their severall dwellings. Thus also it is said by *Tacitus* of the antient *Germans*, *Diem noctemque continuare potando, nulli opprobrium*; that it was no disgrace to any to spend the whole day and night in drinking: and more than so, *De jungendis affinitatibus, de bello denique & pace in conviviis consultare*, that they consulted over their Cups of their weightiest Businesses. Since which time though all *Germany* hath shifted almost all her old inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Sueves*, *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Sclaves*, *Hunnes*, *Saxons*, and other Nations, yet still those ill customs are as much in use amongst them, as ever formerly. To go a little further off; the old Philosopher *Anacharsis* tells us of the antient *Grecians*, that at the beginning of their Feasts they used little Goblets, καὶ δίσκοις ἐν μεγάλοις πίνουσι, and greater towards the end when they were almost drunken; which custom still remains amongst them, as *G. Sandys* observeth, notwithstanding the great length of time, and all the other changes of state and people which have hapned since. I shall not speak here of the effeminateness of the *Asiaticks*, or the crueltie or implacableness of the *African* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithstanding the great and numerous Plantations of the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, successively, and respectively, in these severall Countries: And therefore I conclude this point in these words of *Barclay*, *Hæret itaque in omni gente vis quædam inconcussa quæ hominibus pro conditione terrarum in quibus nasci contigerit sua fata diviserit.* Nor is this all the consequent of this *dispersion* of the Families of the sonnes of *Noah*; the separation of their persons producing, first, an alteration of affections, and that engendring naturall *Animosities*, which seconded by their severall interesses and *Reasons* of *State*, hath left almost no people without some such enemy, as doth particularly and perversly cross them in all their Counsels. Concerning which, take here the Observation of that notable Statesman and Historian, *Philip de Comines*, which though it be with reference to the *Meridian* of his own time onely, yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages. "*In rebus humanis ita comparatum est, ut nullus fere sit populus quem non æmulus aliquis exerceat*, &c. It is (saith he) so ordered in the state of humane affairs, that there "is almost no Nation without a more particular Enemy. The *English* are enemies to the "*French*, the *Scots* to the *English*; the *Portugueze* have the like inveterate hatred against the *Spa*"*niards*. The Princes of *Italy* enjoy great possessions without any good title; but are conti"nually opposed by the more potent Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Luca*. The *Arragonian* "Kings of *Naples*, have found perpetuall Enemies of the Dukes of *Anjou*; as have the Dukes "of *Millain* of the house of *Orleans*. The Princes of *Italy*, and the *Florentines*, have a stich at "*Venice*; as the States of *Genoa* and *Sienna* have against the *Florentines*. In *Germany* the Ani"mosities have been great and of long continuance between the houses of *Austria* and *Bavaria*; "the hatred grown beyond all hopes of reconciliation which is between the *Switzers* and the "*Austrian* Family. The Dukes of *Cleve* and *Gulick* are alwaies upon ill terms with their neigh"bours of *Gelderland*: And in the North, the Cities on the *Baltick* Seas have their continuall "quarrels with the Kings of *Danemark*. Nor are the enmities any thing less, if they be not "greater, which are discernable amongst the people of *Asia*, and *Africk*, than those that are above "remembred. So far, and to this purpose saith that notable and judicious Writer.

The consideration of which points, if there were no other, were of it self sufficient to shew the necessary use of *History* and *Geography*, as well for the understanding the affairs of the Ages past, as for commerce and correspondency with the Nations present. For had no *Histories* been written in the former times, in what a dull ignorance had we lived of all those occurrences which do so much concern the whole state of Mankind, and are our principall directors in life and action; in which respect the Orator most truly calleth it, *Magistram vitæ*. For upon the credit of this *History*, the examples of our Ancestors, the grounds of civill prudence, and the fames of men do most especially depend. And certainly to draw back the mind to the contemplation of matters long ago passed; to search out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expression, such things as are found out on a diligent search; to represent unto our eyes the changes of Times, the characters of Persons, the uncertainties of Counsels,

ſels, and the conveyances of Actions, the ſubtilties of Pretenſions, and the ſecrets of State; muſt of neceſſity be a work of as publique uſe, as it is of great both pains and judgement. Beſides, it gives a kind of eternitie to all ſuch men, who by their Counſels or Atchievements have deſerved nobly of thoſe Kingdoms and Common-wealths wherein they lived. And thereupon the *Orator* doth not only call it *Magiſtram vitæ*, but *Lucem veritatis, Teſtem temporis, Nunciam vetuſtatis, & Vitæ memoriam*: According to which character, I find theſe Verſes ſet before a Chronicle of ſome Kings of *England* (more worth than all the Book beſides.)

For though in theſe daies Miracles be fled,
Yet this ſhall of good Hiſtories *be ſed,*
They call back time that's paſt, and give life to the dead.

Nor want there other motives to indear unto us the uſe of *Hiſtory*, beſides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding times, and the *eternitie* (if I may ſay ſo) which it conferreth on the *Actors* themſelves, by the preſervation of their names from the ruins of Time, and the pit of Oblivion. For Firſt, it ſtirreth men to Vertue, and deters them from Vice, by ſhewing forth the glorious memories of vertuous men, and the ill ſavour which is left behind men of ungodly life; and eſpecially keeps perſons of moſt eminent place from letting looſe the reins unto all licentiouſneſs, by repreſenting this to their conſideration, that all their actions ſhall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, it hath been a principall Conſerver of moſt Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of ſo many of the old *Philoſophers*, out of which a perfect Body of *Philoſophy*, and others of the Liberall Arts hath been collected and digeſted. Thirdly, it is the beſt *School-maſter* in the Art of War, and teacher of Stratagems; and in that can practically afford more punctuall directions than can be otherwiſe obtained; and is withall the beſt Aſſiſtant to the Stateſman or Politician, who from hence draw their Obſervations and Concluſions, and become thereby ſerviceable to their Prince and Country, though never travelled more than amongſt their Books. So *Archimedes* in his ſtudy, and *Demoſthenes* in his Orators gown, endangered more the enemies of their ſeverall Countries; than the *Athenians* or *Syracuſans* did by dint of ſword. And laſt of all, beſides theſe civill benefits and conſiderations, and the great help which it affords in the way of diſcourſe, there is no particular branch of knowledge more uſefull for the true and perfect underſtanding of holy Scripture, than that of *Eccleſiaſticall* and *Profane* Hiſtory; or which gives clearer light to many dark paſſages thereof, eſpecially in the *Propheticall* writings of either Teſtament.

This, as it ſhews the neceſſary uſe and benefit which redounds from *Hiſtory*, ſo doth it ſerve to uſher in that commendation which belongs to the ſtudy of *Geography* alſo; without ſome knowledge wherein, the ſtudy of Hiſtory is neither ſo pleaſant, nor ſo profitable, as a judicious Reader would deſire to have it. 'Tis true, *Geography* without *Hiſtory* hath life and motion, but very unſtable and at random; but *Hiſtory* without *Geography*, like a dead carkaſs, hath neither life, nor motion at all, or moves at leaſt but ſlowly on the underſtanding. For what delight or ſatisfaction can any man receive from the reading of Story, without he know ſomewhat of the places and the conditions of the people which are therein mentioned. In which regard *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath deſerved very well of all his Readers, premiſing to the Actions of every Country, ſome brief deſcription of the place, and chief Towns therein. For though the greatneſs of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place which addes delight and ſatisfaction unto the reading of the ſtory which conveighs it to us. *Hiſtory* therefore and *Geography*, like the two Fires or Meteors which Philoſophers do *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, if joyned together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threaten both with a certain ſhipwrack: and are like two Siſters dearly loving, not without pitie (I had almoſt ſaid impiety) to be kept aſunder. So as that which Sr. *Phil. Sidney* ſaid of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

Her being was in him alone,
And ſhe not being, he was none.

may be as juſtly ſaid of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as of thoſe two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the ſtudy of *Geography*, which is exceeding uſefull to the reading of the holy Scriptures, as in diſcovering the ſituation of *Paradiſe*, the bounds and borders of thoſe Countries which are therein mentioned; eſpecially with relation to the travels of the *Patriarchs*, *Prophets*, *Evangeliſts* and *Apoſtles*, yea of *Chriſt* himſelf, not otherwiſe to be comprehended and underſtood but by the help of *Geographicall* Tables and Deſcriptions. Beſides this, it is uſefull to moſt ſorts of men, as to *Aſtronomers*, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in ſeverall Countries, their ſeverall influences and aſpects, their riſing and ſetting, according to different *Horizons*. Secondly, to *Phyſicians*, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of mens bodies, according to the *Climes* they live in; the nature and growth of many Simples and Medicinall Drugs, whereof every Country under Heaven hath ſome more naturall and proper to it ſelf, than to any others. Thirdly, to

Stateſmen,

States-men, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and disposition of those people with whom they are to negotiate, the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms and the Neighbouring Countreys, with the extent of their respective Dominions both by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which there would be a perpetuall Seminary of wars and discord. Fourthly, to *Merchants*, *Mariners* and *Souldiers*, the severall Professors of which kinds of life, find nothing more necessary for them in their severall callings, than a competent knowledge in *Geography*, which presents to them many notable advantages, both for their profit and contentment. Finally, by the study of *Geography*, a man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far less danger and expence, acquaint himself with the particular descriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns and Castles, with all things considerable in the same, together with the customes, manners, and dispositions of all Forrain Nations: and that too in as full a manner, as if he had survey'd the one, and observed the other, by a personall visit of the places represented to him.

Such is the necessary use which men of ingenuous Studies and Professions do and may make of *History* and *Geographie*, in the course of their callings and imployments. And there are some things also necessary to the knowledge of each, that we may study them with the greater benefit and contentation. To *History* it is onely requisite that it be defined, distinguished from such writings as do seem to challenge the name of *Histories*, and that somewhat be premised of those severall *Epochs*, from which all people do begin their computations. But to *Geography* it is needfull not onely that we do define it, but that we explicate those Terms or second *Notions*, which are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First then for *History*, if we consult the name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived ἀπὸ τῆς ἱστορῶ, *i. e. Videre*, and therefore properly doth signifie a Relation of such remarkable actions at which the Author was an Eye-witness, if not an Agent. *Apud veteres enim* (saith *Isidore*) *nemo scribebat* Historiam, *nisi is qui interfuisset, & ea quæ scribenda essent vidisset.* But now the customary use of the Word hath taught it a more ample signification. *History* being defined to be a *Perfect Relation of all Occurrents observable happning in the State whereof it is written, described by the Motives, Pretexts, Consultations, Speeches and Events, a speciall care being had both of time and place.*

As for the writings which do challenge the name of *History*, but indeed are really distinguished from it, they are *Commentaries*, *Annals*, *Diaries* or *Journals*, and *Chronologies*. First *Commentaries* set down onely a naked cognisance of Events and Actions, without the Motives and designs, the Counsells, Speeches, Occasions, and Pretexts of businesses. So that *Cæsar* with more modesty than true propriety of speech, applied the name of *Commentaries* to the best *History* in the World. A History commended by King *James* to his Sonne Prince *Henry*, above all other profane Authors, both for the sweet flowing of the stile, and the worthiness of the matter it selfe. "For I have ever (saith he) been of this opinion, that of all *Ethnick* Emperors, or great "Captains, he hath farthest exceeded both in his practice and in his precepts for martiall affairs. Which makes me the more wonder at the strange and unjust Censure of *Justus Lipsius*, who calls them *Nudam & simplicem narrationem*, for being entituled *Commentaries*, they do (saith he) *nil pollicieri præter nomen*, with pride and arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next, they are a bare recitall onely of the Actions happening every yeer, without regard had to the causes and pretexts, or any of the chief Ingredients required in History. So that *Tacitus* had no other Reason to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is distinguished by the yeers of the Consuls. Otherwise there is no great difference as unto the matter betwixt an *History* and an *Annal*, the subject of them both being matter of State, and not such triviall things as Triumphs, Pageants, and such like, which stand not with the gravity and authority of Historicall *Annals*: betwixt which and a *Diary* the same *Tacitus* (speaking of some magnificent Structures which were built that yeer) doth make this difference, *Res illustres* Annalibus, *talia* diurnis *Urbis actis mandari*, that matters of the greater moment were committed to *Annals*, and unto *Diaries* the Acts and Accidents of a meaner nature. 3. But *Diaries*, besides this difference in point of matter, are distinguished from *Annals* also in point of time; a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the name imports, containing the Actions of each day; of which kind was the Chronicle called for by *Ahasuerus*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in the which he found the relation of the treason intended against him by his Eunuchs. And of this kinde was that of King *Edward* the fixt, mentioned in the History of his life by Sir *John Hayward*. 4. Last of all, for *Chronologies* they are onely bare supputations of times, with some brief touch upon the Actions therein hapning, such as are those of *Eusebius*, *Funccius*, *Calvisius*, and *Helvicus*; of which last I dare give that testimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovid*, *viz.* that he is *perfectissimus in forma operis sui*; though he and all the rest are debtors to *Eusebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of these four, as out of the four Elements, the *Quintessence* of History is extracted: borrowing from *Annals* time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* matter, from *Chronologies* consent of time and co-etanity of Princes; and thereto adding of her own all such other Ornaments in which these four are found defective.

That which remains is to premise somewhat of these severall *Epochs*, from whence particular States, Nations and People, make their computations. These have been very different in former times, according to the severall occasions took in severall Countreys. The *Jews* had severall *Epochs* peculiar to themselves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Those

which

which they had amongst themselves were First from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of time; Secondly, from the universall Deluge, which hapned *A. M.* 1656. Thirdly, from the Confusion of Tongues, *A. M.* 1786. Fourthly, from *Abrahams* journey out of *Chaldea* into *Canaan*, *A. M.* 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of *Egypt*, *A. M.* 2453. Sixthly, from the first yeer of *Jubilee*, *A. M.* 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomons* Temple, *An.* 2932. And lastly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, *An.* 3357. That which they had common with other Nations, was the *Æra* or *Epoche* of the Victory of the *Greeks*, which took beginning on the first Victory which *Seleucus* had against *Antigonus*, which was in *A. M.* 3637. an Accompt much used by the *Jews*, *Chaldeans*, *Syrians*, and other Nations of the East. But the *Chaldeans* also had their own *Epoche* or Accompt apart, reckoning their time from the first yeer of *Nabonassar* (*Salmanassar* he is called in Scripture) which being 438. yeers before this of *Seleucus*, must fall in *A. M.* 3201. Next for the *Grecians*, they reckoned a long while by *Olympiades*, the first of which is placed in the yeer of the World, 3174. (of which more hereafter.) But this Accompt perishing under the *Constantinopolitans*, they reckoned after by *Indictions* (an Accompt devised by *Justinian*:) every *Indiction* containing 15. yeers, the first beginning *A.Ch.* 513. which amongst *Chronologers* is still used. The *Romans* reckoned first from the foundation of their City, which was *A.M.* 3213, and afterwards from the sixteenth yeer of *Augustus* his Empire, (being that which properly is called the *Roman Æra*) *A.M.* 3936. An Accompt used by the *Spaniards* (where it first began) till the Reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Aragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions, *An Ch.* 1350. followed therein by *John* the first of *Castile*, *An.* 1383. and at last by the King of *Portugal* also, 1415. The *Christians* generally do reckon from the Birth of *CHRIST*, but this they did not use till the yeer 600. following in the mean time the Accompt of the Empire. And finally the *Mahometans* beginning their *Hegira* (for so they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Mecca*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylarche*; which hapned *A.Ch.* 617. Of these we shall make use generally but of two alone, those namely of the Worlds Creation, and our Saviours Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to those severall States.

Next for *Geographie* we will first define it, and after explicate such terms or second notions as are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First for the definition of it, it is said by *Ptolomie* to be a *description of the whole Earth*, or *the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it.* Ἡ γεωγραφία μίμησις ἐστὶ διὰ γραφῆς (and not διαγραφῆς, as it is commonly, but corruptly read) τῆς κατοικουμένης ἅπασ ης μέρους ὅλου μετὰ τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ συνεχόντων, as his own words are. In which we look not on the Earth simply as it is an Element, for so it belongeth to *Philosophy*; but as it is a *Spherscall* body proportionably composed of Earth and Water, and so it is the subject of *Geography*.

First for the *Earth*, which is the first part of this body, it is affirmed by the best Writers to be 21600. miles in compass, which is demonstrable enough. For being there are in every of the greater Circles 360. degrees, every degree being reckoned at 60. miles: let 360. be multiplied by 60. and the *Product* will be 21600. as before is said. So that if it were possible to make a path round about the Earth, an able Footman going constantly 24. miles a day, would compass it in 900. days.

The Earth is divided { In respect of men, into the right hand and the left. / In respect of it self, into parts Reall and Imaginary.

To *Poets*, which turn their Faces towards the *Fortunate Islands* (so memorized and chanted by them) the which are situated in the West; the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Augures* of old, and in our days to *Priests* and Men in holy Orders, who usually in their Sacrifices, and divine Oblations, convert themselves unto the East; the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Astronomers*, who turn their faces towards the South, because that way the motions of the *Planets* may be best observed; the West is the right hand, and the East the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who by reason they have so much to do with the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, do turn their faces towards the North; the East is the right hand, and the West the left.

The *Reall* parts of the Earth are divided commonly into { Continents, / Ilands.

A *Continent* is a great quantity of Land, not separated by any Sea from the rest of the World; as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*; or the Continents of *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*.

An *Iland* is a part of the Earth environed round about with some Sea or other; as the Isle of *Britain* with the Ocean, the Isle of *Sicilie* with the Mediterranean: and therefore in *Latine* it is called *Insula*, because it is situate *in Salo* as some derive it.

Touching the Continent I have nothing in general to inlarge, til we come to the particular *Chorography* & description of them. But for Ilands (leaving the disquisition of their being, or not being before

before the Flood) there are four causes to which they may be thought to owe their Originall, 1. An *Earthquake*, which works two waies towards their production: First, when by it one part of a Countrey is forcibly torne away from the other; and so *Eubœa* was divided from the rest of *Attica*: And Secondly, when some vehement wind or vapour being shut up in such parts of the Earth as be under the Sea, raiseth the Earth above the Water; whereunto the Originall of most of those Ilands which are far remote from any part of the Continent is probably to be referred. 2. Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea carry with them abundance of gravell, dirt, and weeds; which, if the Sea be not the more working, will in time settle to an Iland. So the Corn which *Tarquinius* sowed in the *Campus Martius*, being cut down by the people, and cast into *Tiber*, setled together, and made the *Holy Iland*. So the River *Achelous* caused the *Echinades*, as anon we shall more at large declare. 3. The Sea violently beating on some small *Isthmus*, weareth it thorough, and turneth the *Peninsula* into a compleat *Isle*. Thus was *Sicilie* divided from *Italie*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Wight* from the rest of *England*. And 4. sometimes as it eateth and worketh on some places, so it voluntarily leaveth and abandoneth others, which in some time grow to be *Ilands*, and firm land under foot. So it is thought the *Isles* of *Zeland* have been once part of the main Sea: and *Verstegan* proveth it, because that the Husbandmen in tilling and manuring the ground, finde sometimes Anchors here and there fixt, but very often the bones of huge and great fishes, which could by no other accident come thither. To these kinde of Ilands *Pythagoras* in *Ovid* alluding, saith,

——Vidi factas ex æquore terras,
Et procul à pelago conchæ jacuere marinæ,
Et vetus inventa est in montibus anchora summis.

Oft have I seen that earth, which once I knew
Part of the Sea; so that a man might view
Huge shells of fishes in the upland ground;
And on the Mountain tops old Anchors found.

As concerning the situation of Ilands, whether commodious or not, this is my judgement. I find in *Machiavel*, that for a Citie whose people covet no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitfull, because in such seats they are compelled to work and labour, by which they are freed from idleness, and by consequence from riotousness: But for a City whose Inhabitants desire to enlarge their confines, a fertile place was rather to be chosen than a sterill, as being more able to nourish multitudes of people. The like I say of Ilands. If a *Prince* desire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Iland; as being by it self and nature sufficiently defensible. But if a *King* be minded to adde continually to his Empire, an Iland is no fit seat for him; because partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longsomness of the waies, he is not so well able to supply and keep such forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the most puissant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the causes above mentioned, cannot shew any of her winnings on the firm land, though she hath attempted and atchieved as many glorious exploits as any Country in the World.

The Continent and Iland are sub-divided into { *Peninsula.* / *Isthmus.* / *Promontorium.* }

Peninsula, quasi pene Insula, is a tract of land, which being almost encompassed round by water, is joyned to the firm land by some little *Isthmus*; as *Peloponnesus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*.

Isthmus is that little narrow neck of land, which joyneth the *Peninsula* to the *Continent*; as the Streights of *Dariene* in *America*, and *Corinth* in *Greece*.

Promontorium, is a high Mountain which shooteth it self into the Sea, the outmost end of which is called a *Foreland*, or *Cape*; as the *Cape of Good Hope* in *Africk*, *Cape Comari* in *India*, *&c.*

The *Imaginary* parts of the Earth are such which not being at all in the Earth, must yet be supposed to be so, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, answerable to them in Heaven, in name.

These Circles are either the { Greater, / Lesser, } in both which there are 360. Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater than those in the lesser; and every Degree in the greater is 60. miles.

The greater Circles are either { Immutable, as the *Æquator* / Mutable, as the { *Horizon.* / *Meridian.* } }

The

The *Æquator* is a great Circle going round about the Terreſtiall Globe from Eaſt to Weſt. It paſſeth through *Habaſſia*, *Sumatra*, *Guiana*, *&c.* The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Latitude* of any *Town*, *Promontory*, *&c.* Now the *Latitude* is the diſtance of a place South or North from the *Æquator*, or middle of the World; and muſt be meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian.*

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a man liveth; but the chief and firſt *Meridian* paſſeth through the Iſland St. *Michael*, one of the *Azores.* The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Longitude* of any place. Now the *Longitude* of a *Citie*, *Cape*, *&c.* is the diſtance of it Eaſt and Weſt from the firſt *Meridian*, and is uſually meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator.*

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, deſigning ſo great a ſpace of the earth, as a quick ſight can ken in an open field. The uſe of it is to diſcern the divers riſings and ſettings of the Stars.

The leſſer Circles either are { Noted with ſome name, as { Tropicall of { *Cancer.* / *Capricorn.* } / Polar, either { *Artick.* / *Antartick* } } / Noted with no diſtinct name, and are the *Parallels.* }

The *Tropick* of *Cancer* (ſo called of the Cæleſtiall ſign *Cancer*) is diſtant from the *Equinoctiall* 23 Degrees Northward, and paſſeth through *Barbary*, and *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hiſpania.*

The *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, equally diſtant from the *Æquator* Southward, paſſeth through *Ethiopia inferior*, and the midſt of *Peruana.* And this is to be obſerved in theſe *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropick* of *Cancer* our daies are at the longeſt; and when he is gone back to the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, the daies are at the ſhorteſt. The firſt they call the Summer, the laſt they call the Winter *Solſtice*; the firſt hapning on, or about St. *Barnabies* day in *June*, the laſt on, or about St. *Lucies* day in *December.*

The *Artick* Circle (ſo called for that it is correſpondent to the Conſtellation in Heaven called the *Bear*, in Greek *Arctos*) is diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Cancer* 45 Degrees, and paſſeth through *Norway*, *Muſcovy*, *Tartary*, &c.

The *Antartick* Circle (ſo called becauſe oppoſite to the other) is as much diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and paſſeth through *Terra Auſtrialis Incognita.* The uſe of theſe four Circles is to deſcribe the *Zones.*

The *Zones* are ſpaces of earth included betwixt two of the leſſer nominate Circles. They are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Torrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually ſcorched with the preſence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are ſituate between the two *Polar* Circles, and the very *Poles*, continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two *temperate Zones*, are betwixt the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and the *Artick*, and 'twixt the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and the *Antartick* Circles; enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; ſo that the parts next the *Torrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

Theſe five *Zones* are diſpoſed according to the order of the *Zones* in heaven; of which thus *Ovid Metamorph.* 1.

Utque duæ dextra cœlum, totidemque ſiniſtra
Parte ſecant Zonæ, quinta eſt ardentior illis;
Sic onus incluſum numero diſtinxit eodem
Cura dei, totidemque plagæ tellure premuntur.
Quarum quæ media eſt, non eſt habitabilis æſtu;
Nix tegit alta duas; totidem inter utramque locavit
Temperiemque dedit miſta cum Frigore Flamma.

And as two *Zones* do cut the Heavens right-ſide,
And likewiſe other two the left divide,
The midſt in heat excelling all the reſt;
Even ſo it ſeem'd to the Creator beſt,
That this our World ſhou'd ſo divided be,
That with the Heavens in *Zones* it might agree.
The midſt in heat; the outwardmoſt excell
In Snow and Ice, ſcarce fit for men to dwell.
Betwixt theſe two extremes, two more are fixt,
Where heat with cold indifferently is mixt.

Parallels, called alſo *Æquidiſtants*, circle the Earth from Eaſt to Weſt, and are commonly ten Degrees aſunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are ſet down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another ſort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Clime*: Theſe are called *Artificiall Parallels*

all bredth,
hew the *Cli-*

the middle-
and short-
t length of
, till they
increase no
r. So that
own by the
ass, as *Dia*
of *Asci*, as
nt 7 *Climes*
ith them;
n to them,

grow nar-
e them un-
f the Com-
Book, *Of*
ewed what
anon ex-
l the num-
fth the di-
the Town
is manner

ir several
& of their
ition, into

adows are
the Sun is

s are on all

ause their
the South

l, equally
ies in both

ow distant
both alike;

the other,
o degrees,
the year,
ldiculous,
-Bishop of
the *Anti-*
ge name,
by whom
s condem-
etters fell
was not
a Fable,
tione tem-
times of
Lactan-
height,
I could
od cause
World in
these

The Æq
It passeth th
Town, Prom
Æquator,
Meridian.
The Mer
dians, accor
seth throug
of any plac
the first M
The Hor
ken in an o

The lesse

The Trop
23 Degrees
The Tro
thiopia infer
the Sun is i
Tropick of
call the Wi
about St. L
The Art
led the Bear
through No
The Ant
Tropick of
cles is to d
The Zone
number five
The over
presence of
The two
Poles, contin
The two t
Tropick of C
so that the p
colder.
These five
Ovid Met.

Parallels,
Degrees asun
are another s

A Table of the Climates belonging to the three sorts of Inhabitants: Pag. 25.

Inhabitants belonging to several Climats.	Climes	Parallels	The longest summer day. H.	Scr.	Latitude & elevation of Pole. Degr.	Scr.	The breadth of the Climats Deg.	Sc.	The places by which the Climats passe.
Amphiscii.	0	0	12	0	0	0	4	18	The beginning from the Æquator.
		1	12	15	4	18			
	1	2	12	30	8	34	8	25	Sinus Arabicus, or the red sea.
		3	12	45	12	43			
	2	4	13	0	16	43	7	50	Meroe an Iland of Nilus in Egypt.
		5	13	15	20	33			
	3	6	13	30	23	10	7	3	Siene a Citie in Africa.
		7	13	45	27	36			
Heteroscii.	4	8	14	0	30	47	6	9	Alexandria in Egypt.
		9	14	15	33	45			
	5	10	14	30	36	30	5	17	Rhodes and Babylon.
		11	14	45	39	2			
	6	12	15	0	41	22	4	30	Rome and Hellespont.
		13	15	15	43	32			
	7	14	15	30	45	29	3	48	Venice and Millaine.
		15	15	45	47	20			
	8	16	16	0	49	21	3	13	Podalia and the Lesser Tartary.
		17	16	15	50	23			
	9	18	16	30	51	58	2	44	Battavia and Wittenberge.
		19	16	45	53	17			
	10	20	17	0	54	29	2	17	Rostoch.
		21	10	15	55	34			
	11	22	17	30	56	37	2	0	Ireland and Muscovy.
		23	17	45	57	34			
	12	24	18	0	58	26	1	40	Bohuse a Castle in Norwey.
		25	18	15	59	14			
	13	26	18	30	59	59	1	26	Gothland.
		27	18	45	60	40			
	14	28	19	0	61	18	1	13	Bergen in Norwey.
		29	19	15	61	53			
	15	30	19	30	62	25	1	0	Wiburge in Finland.
		31	19	45	62	54			
	16	32	20	0	63	22	0	52	Arotia in Sweden.
		33	20	15	63	46			
	17	34	20	30	64	6	0	44	The mouth of Darecally a river of Sweden.
		35	20	45	64	30			
	18	39	21	0	64	49	0	36	Divers places of Norwey.
		37	21	15	65	6			
	19	38	21	30	65	21	0	29	Suecia, Alba, Russia.
		39	21	45	65	35			
	20	40	22	0	65	47	0	22	With many Ilands
		41	22	15	65	57			
	21	42	22	30	66	6	0	17	Thereunto adjoyning
		43	22	45	66	14			
	22	44	23	0	66	20	0	11	Wanting speciall names
		45	23	15	66	25			
	23	46	23	30	66	28	0	5	And Landmarkes.
		47	23	45	66	30			
	24	48	24	0	66	31	0	0	Island under the Artick circle.

Periscii.	Here the Climats are accounted by the moneths, from 66 Degr. 31. min. where the day is 24 houres, unto the Pole it selfe set at 90. Degrees, where the artificiall day is six	Menses.			These Climats are supposed to passe by Diverse Ilands within the Artick circle, as Groenland, Island, Greenland, wherein, as yet, for the narrownes of these climates conming near together, and the uncertainty of observation, no speciall places have been assigned, as to the other.
		1	67	15	
		2	69	30	
		3	73	20	
		4	78	20	
		5	84	0	
		6	90	0	

, becauſe they ſhew the difference of the *Artificiall* daies; and are of an unequall bredth, we ſhall ſee in the Table following. The uſe of theſe leſſer *Parallels* is to ſhew the *Cli-tes.*

ow a *Clime*, or *Climate*, is a ſpace of the Earth contained betwixt three *Parallels*, the middle-oſt whereof divideth it into two equall parts; ſerving for ſetting out the length and ſhort-ſs of the daies in every Country. For under the *Æquator* the daies are of the juſt length of hours; but afterwards they increaſe the length of half an hour for every *Clime*, till they me to the length of 24 hours, without night at all; which length attained, they increaſe no re by hours, but by weeks and moneths, till they come to the length of half a year. So that are to reckon 24 *Climes* Northward, and as many Southwards: Thoſe Northward known by the oper name of the place or City over which the middle *Parallel* of the *Clime* doth paſs, as *Dia Meroes*, *Dia Syenes*, &c. Thoſe on the South by the ſame names, with the addition of *Anti*, as *Anti-Dia-Syenes*, *Anti-Dia-Meroes*, &c. 'Tis true, the antient *Coſmographers* made but 7 *Climes* all; at the moſt but nine; Nor needed they to adde more, as the caſe ſtood with them; e extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles, not being ſo fully known to them, it is to us.

And here, becauſe thoſe *Climes* are not of equall bredth or extent of Latitude, but grow nar-ower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard it is impoſſible to deſcribe them un-er any Rule; I have thought fit to adde this enſuing Table, partly framed out of the Com-nentaries of *Clavius* on the works of *John de Sacro Boſco*, and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of he uſe of the Globes.* The whole divided into 7 Columns. In the firſt whereof is ſhewed what *limes* are inhabited by the *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, and *Heteroſcii*, which terms we ſhall anon ex-ound; In the ſecond is ſet down the number of the *Climes* themſelves; In the third the num-er of the *Parallels*; In the fourth the length of the daies in Summer; In the fifth the di-ance of every *Clime* and *Parallel* from the *Æquator*; In the ſeventh the name of the Town r place, thorough which the middlemoſt of the three *Parallels* doth paſs; in this manner ollowing.

Here followeth the Table of the Climes.

A ſecond uſe of theſe *Parallels* and other Circles, is for diſtinction of men in their ſeverall wellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geography*) divided in reſpect of their adows into *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, *Heteroſcii*; and in reſpect of their ſite and poſition, into *ntæci*, *Periæci*, and *Antipodes.*

Amphiſcii are ſuch as dwell between the two *Tropicks*: ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are oth wayes: ſometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; ſometimes (when the Sun is outh) to the North.

Periſcii are ſuch as dwell beyond the *Polar* circles: ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are on all ides of them.

Heteroſcii are ſuch as dwell in either of the two temperate *Zones*: ſo called, becauſe their adows reach but one way; *viz.* in our *Zone* to the North onely; as in the other, to the South nely.

Antœci are ſuch as dwell under the ſame *Meridian*, and the ſame *Latitude* or *Parallel*, equally iſtant from the *Æquator*; the one Northward, the other Southward: the daies in both laces being of a length; but the Summer of the one being the others Winter.

Periæci are ſuch as dwell in the ſame *Parallel*, on the ſame ſide of the *Æquator*, how diſtant oever they be Eaſt and Weſt: the ſeaſon of the year, and the length of dayes being to both alike; ut the ones midnight being the others noon.

Antipodes are ſuch as dwell feet to feet, ſo as a right line drawn from the one unto the other, aſſeth from North to South, through the center of the World. Theſe are diſtant 180 degrees, which is half the compaſs of the Earth. They differ in all things, as ſeaſons of the year, ength of daies, riſing and ſetting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned ſo ridiculous, nd impoſſible (if not ſomewhat worſe) in the former times, that *Boniface* Arch-Biſhop of *Mentz* hapning to ſee a Tractate written by *Virgilius* Biſhop of *Saltzburg*, touching the *Anti-odes*, and not knowing what damnable Doctrine might be couched under that ſtrage name, nade complaint firſt to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zacharie*, *An.* 745. by whom he poor Biſhop (unfortunate onely in being learned in ſuch a time of ignorance) was condem-ned of Hereſie. But *Boniface* might the rather be excuſed in regard that many of his betters fell alſo on the ſelf-ſame error. For venerable *Bede*, a man whoſe books Arch-B. *Boniface* was not worthy to carry, eſteemeth the opinion touching the *Antipodes*, to be no better than a Fable, *Neque enim* Antipodarum *ullatenus eſt fabulis accommodandus aſſenſus*, in his Book *de Ratione temporum*, *cap.* 32. And yet the marvell is the leſs, conſidering that he lived in the darker times of he Church, when the ſtate of learning was in its declination; when S. *Auguſtine* and *Lactantius*, and ſome others of the Antient Writers, who lived when learning was at the very height, ondemn this point of the *Antipodes* for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whoſe words I could ut down at large, did I think it neceſſary. So that we of theſe Ages have very good cauſe to uſe the words of the late L. *Verulam*) to congratulate the preſent times, in that the World in

these our dayes, hath *thorough-lights* made in it after a wonderfull manner, whereby we clearly see those things which either were unknown, or but blindly guessed at by the Antients.

But to proceed, the second part of the *Terrestriall Globe* is the *Water*, which making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, first, because it is a body not so heavy: Secondly, it is observed by Saylors that their ships move faster on the shore than from it, whereof no reason can be given but the height of the water above the land. Thirdly, to such as stand on the shore, the Sea seems to swell from the form of a round hill, and it puts a bound upon our sight. Now that the Sea hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not over-whelme it, must be ascribed only to his Power and Providence, who *hath made the Waters to stand on an heap, who hath set them a bound that they shall not pass, nor turn again to cover the Earth.* The other affections and properties of the Sea, as motion, saltnesse, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philosophers, than this present Argument.

The *Sea* or *Water* is divided into { 1. *Oceanus.* 2. *Mare* 3. *Fretum.* / 4. *Sinus.* 5. *Lacus.* 6. *Flumen.*

Of which and other *Waters* thus saith *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*;

Tum Freta diffudit, rapidisq; tumescere ventis
Jussit, & ambitæ circumdare littora terræ.
Addidit & Fontes, & Stagna immensa, Lacusq;
Fluminaque obliquis cuncta decliuia ripis, &c.

Which may be Englished to this purpose:

He spread the *Seas*, which then he did command
To swell with winds, and compass round the land:
To those he adds *Springs*, *Pooles*, and *Lakes* immense,
And *Rivers* which their winding Borders fence.
Of these not few Earth's thirsty jaws devour,
The rest their *streams* into the *Ocean* pour,
When in that liquid Plain with freer Wave,
The foamie Cliffs instead of Banks they have.

to 1

And first *Oceanus* the *Ocean* is that generall Collection of all waters, which encompasseth the Earth on every side. A point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laugh'd at by *Herodotus* in the former times; who counted it a grosse absurdity for any man to write or write that the Earth was round, or encompassed about with the main *Ocean*. But modern Navigations have found that to be true, which he held ridiculous; and which the most learned in those times knew rather by conjecture, than by demonstration. Nor were those Ages so acquainted with those ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all those other Seas and Rivers which have intercourse with it, as the meanest Saylor at the present. The naturall causes of the which seeming so full of difficultie to the best of the Antients, Experience hath taught us to ascribe wholly to the *Moon*, at whose *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever highest, and the Sea most furious. For as soon as the Moon cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to swell, and floweth towards the East, (as it were to wait upon her, or beare her company), till she come unto the height of our *Meridian*: after which either Setting or Western fall, the Sea abateth or decreaseth; which we call the *Ebb*. And when she passeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*, the *Ocean* begins to swell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our *Hemisphere* doth again abate. In brief, from the *New Moon* till the first quarter the Sea decreaseth, from the first quarter to the *full* it is said to *Spring*; from the *full* to the last quarter it is said to *neap*; and from the last quarter to the *new* it Springs again. As for the uncertainty of the Tides, varying every day, it is not so perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof, know well when to look for it, the next days Tide coming for the most part one hour, 10. minutes after the time it hapned on the day fore-going.

2. *Mare*, the *Sea*, is a part of the main *Ocean*, to which we cannot come but through some *Fretum* or *Streight*; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, First, either from the adjacent shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*, *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coast of *Tuscanie*; Or, Secondly, from the first Discoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus* who first found it; Or, Thirdly, from some remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus* the son of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Streight*, is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into some Sea, or out of some Sea into the *Ocean*; as the *Streights* of *Hellespont*, *Gibraltar*, *Fretum Davis*, &c.

4. *Sinus*, a Creek, or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling shore, wherewith it is almost environed; as *Sinus Persicus*, *Corinthiacus*, &c. and this is sometimes called a *Gulf*, as the *Gulf* of *Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great bodie or collection of waters which hath no visible intercourse with

with the Sea, or influx into it, as the *Lake* of *Thraſymene* in *Italie*, the *Lacus Aſphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea* in the Land of *Canaan*. And of this kinde properly is the *Mare Caſpium*, though by reaſon of the greatneſs of it, it is called a *Sea*.

6. *Flumina* or *Fluvius*, is a water-courſe continually running, whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a ſtanding Pool, iſſuing from ſome Spring or Lake, and emptying it ſelf into ſome part of the Sea, or ſome other great River, the mouth or out-let of which is called *Oſtium*, *Tiberinaq; longe Oſtia*, as the Poet hath it. Theſe are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continuall ſuſtenance from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or *Chaſma's* of the Earth, and congealed by the extreme cold of that Element, diſſolves into water (as we ſee the Air in winter-nights to be melted into a pearly dew, ſticking on our glaſs-windows) and being grown to ſome quantity, will (like *Annibal* in the *Alpes*) either finde a way, or make a way, to vent its ſuperfluity. Which beginning is ſeconded by the *Ocean*, which running thorough the hidden paſſages of the Earth, joyneth it ſelf with this aëriall vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it ſelf of a ſalt and brackiſh ſavour, yet) paſſing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleaſantneſs; and by how much the ſpring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by ſo much uſually are their waters affected with a delightfull reliſh. Rivers having thus entred themſelves into a good courſe, are never without the aſſiſtance of neighbouring ſprings and waters, by whoſe addition they augment their ſtreams, till they diſchannell themſelves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble uſe. Firſt, that out of them drink may be afforded to man and beaſt. Secondly, that running thorough the earth, as blood thorough the body, by interlacing it, and ſometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce thoſe fruits which are neceſſary for the life of man. The laſt uſe of Rivers is, eaſineſs and ſpeedineſs of conduct; and hereto are required four conditions. Firſt the *depth*, becauſe deep waters ſuſtain the bigger burdens, and on them navigation is more ſafe. Secondly, *pleaſantneſs*, whereby the paſſage is eaſie both with the ſtream and againſt it: whereas in Rivers of a violent current, or ſuch as fall down by great *locks* or *Cataracts*, the ſayling or rowing up the water is as dangerous, as laborious. Thirdly, the *thickneſs* of the water: for by how much the more ſlimie and groſs a water is, by ſo much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or bredth, is better for navigation, by reaſon of its fatneſs, than the pure and thin waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, the *broadneſs* of the channell, that ſhips and other veſſells may conveniently wind and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philoſophers* reputed this conduct ſo dangerous, that one of them being asked whether he thought the living or the dead were the greater number, would not declare himſelf, becauſe he knew not in which rank to place ſuch as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that men never committed greater folly in their lives, than in venturing to go by water, when they might have gone by land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that ſaid, *Dulciſſima eſt ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram.*

The chief Rivers of *Europe*, are *Danubius*, and the *Rhenus*; of *Africa*, *Nilus*, and *Niger*; of *Aſia*, *Ganges*, and *Euphrates*; of *America*, *Orenoque*, and *Maragnan*. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over theſe particulars both of *Earth* and *Water*, which are conſiderable in *Geographie*, and come within the compaſs of thoſe *Annexaries* of each, which *Ptolomy* calleth τὰ συνημμένα: And having ſo done, may diſcover where the difference lieth between *Geographie* and *Chorographie*, which to ſome men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, ſeem to be the ſame. For howſoever a *Chorographer* doth deſcribe a Countrey by the bounds, rivers, hills, and moſt notable Cities; yet it is ſtill but the deſcription of ſome place or Countrey, and not of the whole *Earth* univerſally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorography* differeth from *Geography* as a part from the whole: that being as *Ptolomy* doth very handſomely expreſs it, like the painting of an eye or an ear, or ſome other member; this, as the picturing of the head or whole body of man. But *Geographie* in its full latitude comprehendeth not *Chorography* only, but *Topographie* and *Hydrographie* alſo. Of theſe the laſt is the delineation of the Sea by its ſeverall names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks and other affections, as alſo of great Lakes and Rivers. Which is moſt neceſſary for the uſe of *Mariners*, and is beſt done by *Petrus de Medina*, *Peter Nonnius in his Regula Artis Navigandi*, and *Johannes Aurigarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*, the chief Writers in the Art of *Pilotiſme*.

2. *Topographie* is the deſcription of ſome particular place or City; of which kinde was the Book of *Stephanus de urbibus*, or *De Vrbibus*, among the Antients, and the *Theatrum Vrbium* written by *Bruinus* in theſe later times; *Stowes* Book of the *Survey of London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and ſuch as theſe. And of this kinde is the deſcription of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and thoſe of the *Elyſian* fields, the gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Heſperedes* in the antient Poets.

3. *Chorographie* (as before was ſaid) is the exact deſcription of ſome Kingdom, Countrey, or particular Province of the ſame; unleſs this laſt may fall more properly under the notion of *Chorographie*. Of this kinde the deſcription of the ſeverall eſtates of *Greece* written by *Pauſanias*, is of moſt uſe and reputation of all the Antients: as that of *Camden Glarentenx* for the Ile of *Britain*, of *Lewis Guicciardine* for the *Low Countreys*, *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongſt the Moderns.

Fourthly, *Geography* finally is an aggregate of all these together, borrowing from *Hydrography* the description of Seas and Waters. From *Topography*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular places: And from *Chorography*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces, and Kingdoms; which brought into a body, make up that Portraiture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every considerable part thereof, in writing, which, according to *Ptolomies* definition before mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geography*. In the advancement of which studies, those which have took most pains, with the greatest benefit to Posteritie, are the said *Ptolomie*, *Plinie*, and *Strabo* for the elder times, *Mercator*, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius* for the later Ages. Of which the two first lived in the times of *Antonius Pius* the Roman Emperour, *Anno Chr.* 141. or hereabours; the other in the reign of *Tiberius Cæsar*, the unworthy Successor of *Augustus*: the three last flourishing in the daies of our Fathers, about some 80 years ago.

Thus have I briefly summed up those generall *Præcognita*, which I conceive are necessary to the knowledge and understanding as well of *History* as of *Geography*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt ariseth that universal Comprehension of *Naturall* and *Civill* story, which by a proper and distinct name may be termed *Cosmography*. And this may well be reckoned amongst mixed stories; for it hath from *Naturall History* or *Geography*, the Regions themselves, together with their Sites, and severall Commodities; from *Civill History*, Habitations, Governments, and Names; and from the *Mathematicks*, the *Climates*, and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coasts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the Utilitie and excellencie of which study I need say no more than what hath been already spoken of the severall parts, whereof this is only the Result.: desiring pardon of the Reader, that I have christened these imperfect and unworthy Papers by so noble a name; which I desire they may deserve, though I fear they will not. However I will give the venture, and make as speedy and as profitable a discovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the most observable things therein, according to the best light which the reading of *Histories* and *Geographicall* discourses hath supplied me with; beseeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him seems best, to bless me in the undertaking; and furnish me with fit Abilities both of strength and judgement to go thorough with it.

Ipse enim est qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere;

as the Scripture hath it: And so on in Gods name.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The First Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE

AND

HISTORIE

OF

ITALIE, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*; with the *ILES* thereof.

BY *PETER HEYLYN.*

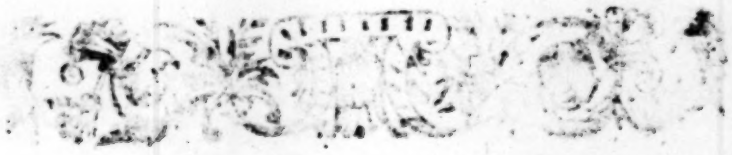
Florus in Procem. l. 1.

Populus Romanus *à Rege* Romulo *ad* Cæsarem Augustum *ita latè per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non* unius Populi, *sed* generis humani *facta discant.*

Velleius Patercul. Hist.

Quemadmodum Urbium Imperiorumque, *ita &* Gentium *nunc floret fortuna, nunc senescit, nunc interit.*

LONDON,
Printed by *W. W.* for *Henry Seile* over against St. *Dunstans Church* in *Fleetstreet.* 1652.



COSMOGRAPHIE

OU

DESCRIPTION DE L'UNIVERS

CONTENANT LES

PLUS BELLES QUESTIONS

DE LA

SPHERE

PART OF GRO EN LAND

THE NORTH OCEAN

THE DEUCALEDONIAN

THE OCEAN

THE WEST OCEAN

THE ATLANTICKE SEA

THE BARBARIE PART OF

The Germaine Ocean

THE

y^e Straights of Gibralta

EUROPÆ
Descriptio Nova
Impensis
HENRICI SEILE
16 Rx Vaughan sculp 52

The Myrmonskoyan Sea
The White Sea
Dwina
RUSSIA
Condora
WAGA
WOLOGDA
Polia
Dodicus Sinus
The Baltick Sea
East Sea
Livonia
Prussia
Polesia
Poland
Silesia
Hungaria
Transylvania
Podolia
Wolodimera
Resani
Moscovia
Volga lake
Aral
Caspian Sea
CRIMEA or TARTARIE PERECOPENSIAN
THE EUXINE SEA
THE LESSER ASIA
Now called NATOLIA
Archipelago
Achaia
Candia et Creta
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Part of Arabia
Egypt
AFRICA
ASIA PART OF

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The First Book,

Containing the *CHOROGRAPIE* and *HISTORIE* of *ITALIE*, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*, with the *ILES* thereof.

OF THE WORLD,

And first of

EUROPE.

OF the *Creation* of the World by Almighty God, and the *Plantations* of the same by the sonnes of Men, sufficient hath been spoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all those parts united into one *Compositum*; called therefore by the *Grecians* Τὰ Πάντα, & Τὸ Ὅλον, because the *Summa totalis*, and generall comprehension of all things existent. In which respect called by the *Latins*, *Universum*, a name of multitude; but of a multitude united, (*Universi qui in uno loco versi*, say the old *Grammarians*.) The great body of the World, like the body of man, though it have many parts and members, is but one body only. A body of so perfect and exact a form, of so compleat a *Symmetrie* in respect of the particular parts, and all those parts so beautified and adorned by the God of Nature, that from the elegancy and beauties of it, it was called Κόσμος by the *Grecians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*; both names declaring the Composure of it to be full of *Ornament*; and all those Ornaments conducting mankind to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Christian Advocate* reasoneth very strongly,) As he which comes into an house, and seeth all things in it ordered in a beautifull and comely order, *utrisque praesse crederet Dominum, &c.* Must needs conceive, both that the house had some wise Lord and Master who had so contrived it, and that such Lord and Master of it was of more worth and excellencie than the house and furniture: So (saith he) whosoever doth observe the most eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, most needs conceive there is some great and more glorious power who did first create it, disposing of all things therein in such excellent manner.

This contemplation, together with the notions of a *Deitie* which naturally are ingrafted in the soul of man, hath trained up all men in the practice of some *Religion*, though few (comparatively) so happy as to be practised in the true. For though the knowledge and worship of the true God, by reason of some accessions in *America* and the *Indies*, be more generally diffused than in former times, yet is the least part of the World possessed by them who make profession of that Worship. For, dividing the whole World into 30 parts, it hath been found by such as have laboured in this search, that 19 of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worship stocks and stones for Gods, even the work of mens hands. Of the 11 parts which are remaining, six are possessed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Saracens*; who though they have the knowledge of God that made them, yet abnegating, or not worshipping the Lord *that bought them*, they have no part nor portion in the true *Religion*. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion; the other three being divided betwixt those of the Church of *Rome*, and such as otherwise differing in some opinions, pass generally

nerally by the name of *Protestant*, or *Reformed* Churches. Which as it sheweth how small a portion of the World is possessed by *Christians*, who only (though not all of them) have reason to pretend to the true *Religion*: So doth it shew (I note this only by the way) how falsly those of *Rome* make Multitude of Professors to be a sign of the True Church; and then conceive themselves to be such a multitude as corresponds unto that sign. Faultie alike both in the *Position* and the *Application*. For if the multitude of Professors be a sign of the Church, the true Church should be found rather amongst the *Heathens* or *Mahumetans*, than amongst the *Christians*; or if they do restrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to those who make profession of the *Christian* faith, those of the *Greek* Communion, possessing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the members of the Church of *Rome*, though possibly of less esteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that Brag of *Bellarmine* (though otherwise more modest than the rest the *Jesuits*) affirming positively and expresly, *Romanam Ecclesiam universum plane orbem possidere*; i. e. That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it self. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more speciall notice of the state of *Religion* in the severall Provinces of the World, to which now I hasten, premising first this scheme of those severall parts into which it doth now stand divided.

THE WORLD is divided into two parts.

- *Unknown*, or not fully discovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Australis*; the last taking up the whole *Southern* Continent; the other lying on the *North* of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we shall say somewhat at the end of this Work.
- *Known* either
  - Antiently, as *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*.
  - Lately, as *America*.

Europe is joyned to *Asia* by that space of earth which is between the heads of *Tanais* and *Duina*; *Asia* is joyned to *Africk* by the *Egyptian Isthmus*; *America* is divided (as most conjecture) from all of them. *Europe* is separated from *Asia* by a line drawn from the Bay of St. *Nicolas*, to the head of *Tanais*, from thence by that River it self all the length of his course; then by *Palus Mœotis*, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Hellespont*, and the *Ægean*. *Asia* is parted from *Africk* by the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: And *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than *Europe*, *Asia* than *Africk*, and *America* than *Asia*.

They which have entertained a fancy of resembling every Countrie to things more obvious to the sight and understanding, have likened *Europe* to a *Dragon*; the head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two wings *Italy* and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiously impertinent, in resembling *France* to a Lozenge or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium*, to a Lyon; *Britain*, to an Ax; *Ireland* to an Egge; *Peloponnesus* to a Plantane leaf; *Spain*, to an Ox hide spread on the grownd; *Italy* (which indeed holdeth best proportion) to a mans Leg; with divers the like *phantasmes* of a capricious brain: these Countries no more resembling them, than pictures made when painting was in her infancy; under which they were fain to write, *this is a Lyon, and this is a Whale*, for fear the spectators might have taken one for a Cock, and the other for a Cat.

EUROPE, though the least (as being in length but 2800, in bredth but 1200 miles) is yet of most renown amongst us. First, because of the *temperature* of the Air, and fertilitie of the soyl. Secondly, from the study of *Arts*, both ingenuous and mechanicall. Thirdly, because of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies. Fourthly, from the puritie and sincerity of the *Christian* Faith. Fiftly, because we dwell in it, and so first place it.

EUROPE is generally said to be so called from *Europa* the daughter of *Agenor* King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the shape of a *Bull*; or as some Histories say, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others, in a Ship whose Beak had the portraiture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Ile of *Crete*, should give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Iland is so inconsiderable and so small a part, I must confess I see no reason. *Goropius Becanus*, who holds the high *Dutch* to be the primitive language which was spoke in *Paradise*, and loves to fetch all names from thence, not thinking it convenient, that *Europe*, being first inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, should be beholding to the *Grecians* for its name; will have it called *Europe*, *quasi Ver-hop*, by the transposition of the two first letters: *Ver* signifying excellent, and *Hop* a multitude (whence we use to say, *as thick as Hops*) because *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent people. And on the other side, *Bochartus* a *French* Writer, loving as much to bring all names from the *Phœnician* or *Punick* tongue, will have it called *Europe*, from *Ur-appa*, which signifieth in that language, a *beautifull countenance*, because the *Europæans* much exceld the *Africans* in whiteness of skin, and clearness of complexion. But in my mind *Herodotus* hath best determined of the controversie, who telleth us plainly, Ὁ δὲ τοῦτο ἔλεξε τοῦτο, ὅτι οὐκ ἦν ὁ λόγιος, &c. That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who first called it so. And yet considering there

is

is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (whereof more hereafter,) why might not the *Asiatick* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay neerest to them, as the *Romans* did the name of *Africk* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof which they first brought under their obedience? Or as the *Europeans* gave the name of *Asia* to the greatest of the three known parts of the World, which properly and originally belonged unto *Asia Minor*, (as it since was called;) or rather to those parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place.

The first Inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been shewn in part already, and shall be shewn more fully in its proper place, were the sonnes of *Japhet*, amongst whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *the Isles of the Gentiles were divided*, *Gen.*10.v.5. which includes all the Continent of *Europe* and the Isles adjoyning. For besides that it is compassed about with the *Cyclades* and other Isles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Ilands of *Candie*, *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, the Isles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent: *Europe* it self was formerly taken for an Iland, as being invironed round with water, saving where it is joyned on the North-East to *Asia* the great, which very few of the Antients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countreys of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the Posterity of *Japhet*, but so many *Peninsula's* or *Demy-Ilands* invironed almost round with one Sea or other? Nor was the name and memory of *Japhet* so much forgotten by the Children which descended of him; but that the *Greeks* who were the first of their *European* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Iapetus*, whom they make to be the sonne of *Cœlum* and *Terra*, and the father of the wise *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *Satus Iapeto*, in the first Book of his *Metamorphosis*. So that we see how punctually the first part of Gods blessing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would *inlarge the borders of Japhet*, *Gen.*9.27. The second part thereof, that he *should dwell in the tents of Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accomplishment, yet it came at last, and that both in the literall and mysticall sense. First in the *literall*, when the posterity of *Japhet* both *Greeks* and *Romans*, made themselves Masters of *Judæa* or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eastern parts, promised to and possessed by the seed of *Sem*: Next in the *mysticall*, when God was pleased to break down the *partition-wall*, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the house of *Japhet* into the body of the *Church*, which for a long time was restrained to the Line of *Sem*.

Europe may be considered as it stands divided into the *Continent* and the *Ilands*: the *Continent* lying altogether; the *Ilands* as they are dispersed in the *Greek*, *Ægean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*; and in the *British* and *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we shall discover them, and discourse of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into 1. *Italy*, 2. the *Alpes*, 3. *France*, 4. *Spain*, 5. *Britain*, 6. *Belgium*, 7. *Germany*, 8. *Denmark*, 9. *Swethland*, 10. *Russia*, 11. *Poland*, 12. *Hungary*, 13. *Sclavonia*, 14. *Dacia*, and 15. *Greece*; and speaking of the severall *Ilands* as they relate to some or other of these greater Countries.

In all which Countries and the Ilands belonging to them, besides the *Latine* Tongue which is the now rather *Scholasticall* than *Nationall*; and besides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spanish*, being but as so many corruptions of the *Latine*; and besides the *English* which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latine* and *French*; there are in all 14. Mother-Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to say, 1. *Irish*, spoken in *Ireland*, and the West of *Scotland*; 2. *British*, or *Welch*, in *Wales*, and some parts of *Cornwall*. 3. *Cantabrian*, or *Basquish*, in *Biscay*, about the *Pyrenean* hills, and neer to the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 4. *Arabick* in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpuxarras*. 5. *Finnish*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*. 6. *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swethland*. 7. *Cauchian*, which the *East Frieslanders* (or *Cauchi*,) speak amongst themselves, though to strangers they speak the Common *Dutch*. 8. *Sclavonish*, in *Sclavonia*, *Poland*, *Hungarie*, and almost all the parts of the *Turkish* Empire. 9. *Illyrian*, on the East side of *Istria*, and the Ile of *Veggia*. 10. *Greek*, in most Provinces and Isles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themselves. 11. *Hungarian*; and 12. *Epirotique*, in the mountainous places of those Countreys. 13. *Jazygian*, on the North side of *Hungarie*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*; and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, and other *European* parts of that barbarous people. And this shall serve for *Europe* in the generall notion. Descend we now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Ilands of it; beginning first of all with *Italie*, contrary to the usage of most *Geographers*, who commonly begin with *Spain* or *Ireland*, as being the furthest Countreys Westward, and consequently neerest to the first *Meridian* from whence the *Longitude* was reckoned. Which we shall do by reason of that great influence which the *Romans* had in most parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World besides, in matters as well *Civill* as *Ecclesiasticall*, which much depended on the power of that Empire formerly, and on the usurpations of that Church in the later days.

Of

OF

ITALIE.

ITALIE, once the Empreſs of the greateſt part of the (then known) World, is compaſſed with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tyrrhenian* Seas, except it be towards *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alpes*; ſo that it is in a manner a *Peninſula*, or *Demy-Iland*. But more particularly, it hath on the Eaſt, the lower part of the *Adriatick*, and the *Ionian* Sea, by which it is divided from *Greece*; on the Weſt the River *Varus*, and ſome part of the *Alpes*, by which it is parted from *France*; on the North, in ſome parts the *Alpes* which divide it from *Germanie*; and on the other parts the *Adriatick*, which divides it from *Dalmatia*; and on the South the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Seas, by which it is ſeparated from the main land of *Africa*.

It containeth in length from *Auguſta Prætoria* (now called *Aoſt*) at the foot of the *Alpes*, unto *Otramo* in the moſt Eaſtern point of the Kingdom of *Naples*, 1020. miles: in bredth from the River *Varo* which parts it from *Province*, to the mouth of the River *Arſia* in *Friuly*, where it is broadeſt, 410. miles; about *Otranti* where it is narroweſt, not above 25. miles; and in the middle parts, from the mouth of *Peſcara* in the *Adriatick* or Upper Sea, to the mouth of *Tiber* in the *Tuſcan* or Lower Sea, 126. miles. The whole compaſs by Sea, reckoning in the windings and turnings of the ſhore, comes to 3038. miles; which added to the 410. miles which it hath by land, make up in all 3448. miles. But if the Coaſt on each ſide be reckoned by a ſtraight Line, then it falls very ſhort of this proportion, amounting in the totall as *Caſtaldo* computes it, to no more then 2550. miles. The whole Countrey lieth under the fifth and ſixth *Climates* of the Northern temperate *Zone*, which it wholly taketh up: ſo that the longeſt day in the moſt Northern parts is 15. hours, and three fifth parts of an hour; the longeſt in the Southern parts falling ſhort a full hour and no more of that length.

But theſe dimenſions muſt be underſtood of *Italy* in the preſent latitude and extent thereof, and not as it was called and counted of in the times of the *Romans*, neither in the growth nor flouriſhing fortunes of that State: The bounds of *Italy* on the Weſt, and North-Weſtern parts being then the River *Rubicon* which runneth into the *Adriatick*, not far from *Ravenna*, and the River *Arno*, which runneth into the *Tyrrhenian* Seas, by the Port of *Ligorn*. All that lay Weſtwards toward the *Alpes*, as it was poſſeſſed by the *Gaules*, ſo had it alſo the name of *Gallia*, and for diſtinctions ſake, of *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina*, and *Togata*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lombardie*. And it continued, (though a Province of the *Roman* Empire) diſtinct from *Italie*, untill the Empire of *Auguſtus*; who dividing *Italie* for the better Government thereof into eleven Provinces or Regions, divided *Gallia-Ciſalpina* into ſeverall parts, (whereof more anon) and reckoned them as Provinces or Members of the Body of *Italie*.

The names hereof ſo bounded as before, are ſaid to have been very many, according to the ſeverall Nations which were antiently of moſt power and authority in it; or to the ſeverall fancies of the Name-giver: whereof ſome being the names onely of particular Provinces, were by a *Metaſemy* taken for and applyed to the whole. Of this laſt ſort, to omit others of leſs note, were *Latium* and *Auſonia*, the *Auſones* being a people dwelling about *Cales*, a town of *Campania*; and *Latium*, that particular Province which lieth on the Eaſt of *Tiber*, ſo called as moſt Writers are of opinion, *à latendo*, from hiding, becauſe *Saturn* being driven from *Crete* by *Jupiter*, *hic latebat abditus*, did here live concealed; ——*Latiumq́*, *vocari*
Maluit, *his quoniam latuiſſet tutus in Oris*, as the Poet hath it.

Nor was this *Virgils* fancy onely, but a *Tradition* generall, followed and allowed of by the greateſt Writers, as by *Eutropius*, and *Herodian*, and by *Minutius Felix* alſo: though *Varro* pretending to more than ordinary knowledge in Antiquity, would have it called *Latium*, *quod lateat inter præcipitia Alpium & Apennini*, as *Servius* in his notes on *Virgil*, becauſe it lieth hidden (as it were) under the præcipices of the *Alpes* and *Apenine* hills, which cannot poſsibly be ſaid of *Italy* properly and antiently ſo called, no part whereof came neer the *Alpes*. The more generall names of the whole Countrey, were, 1. *Heſperia*, from *Heſperus* the ſonne of *Atlas*, as the Poets ſay, or rather as *Macrobius* is of opinion, from *Heſperus* the Evening Star, as being ſeated Weſtward in regard of *Greece*. 2. *Oenotria*, either from the abundance and excellency of the wines, wine being called *Οἶνος* by the *Grecians*; or as moſt think from *Oenotrus* an *Arcadian* King, one of the firſt Planters of the Countrey; And 3. *Italia*, the name at firſt of that part of this Continent which was after called *Calabria*, as ſhall there be evidenced, and by degrees communicated to the reſt of the Countrey: So named from *Italus*, a cheif Commander of ſome Nations that ſetled here. Of theſe three thus the Poet *Virgil*.

Eſt

Est locus, Hesperiam Graii cognomine dicunt,
Terra antiqua, potens armis, atq; ubere glebæ,
Oenotrii coluere viri; nunc fama, minores
Italiam dixisse ducis de nomine, Gentem.

Which may be *Englished* in these words.

That Which the Greeks *Hesperia* call'd, a place
Great both in Arms and Wealth, first planted was
By the *Oenotrians*; since, if Fame not lie,
Was from their Chief-tains name call'd *Italie*.

Who and from whence this *Italus* was, we shall see ere long. Mean-time we will take notice of those honourary Attributes which have been given unto this Country, so denominated from him: by *Mathieu* called *Regina Mundi*, the Queen or Empress of the World. By *Mamertinus* one of the old *Panegyrists*, *Gentium Dominum*, the Mistress of Nations; by others, *Paradisus Mundi*, the terrestriall Paradise. But what need more be cited than is spoken by *Pliny*, who hath adorned *Italie* with this following Panegyrick? *Italia tamquam omnibus alumna, eadem & parens, numinis Deûm electa quæ Cœlum ipsum clarius faceret, sparsa congregare imperia, ritus mollires, tot populorum discordes linguas sermonis commercio ad colloquia domesticaret, & humanitate hominem daret.* *Italy* (saith he) the Parent, and withall the Foster-Child of all other Nations, was elected by the providence of the Gods, to make (if possible) the very Heavens themselves more famous; to gather the scattered Empires of the World into one body, to temper the barbarous Rites of uncivillized people, to unite the disagreeing languages of so many men by the benefit of one common tongue; and in a word, to restore man to his humanity. A very high *Encomion* doubtless, and yet not much more than the place deserves, with reference to the times when the Author lived.

The people anciently, (and to this day they still partake somewhat of those qualities) were wary of behaviour, sparing of expence, and most greedy of glory, according unto that of *Tully*, *Semper appetentes gloriæ graviter serendas nationes fuit Romana*: by which he doth not mean those onely who lived within the walls of the Citie of *Rome*, but also their *Italian* neighbours and associates, *Romans* by privilege and freedom, though not by birth. They have twice given the Law to the fairest, and most opulent parts of the World, once by their *Valour*, when the greatest part of the (then known) World was brought under the obedience of the State of *Rome*, the standing body of whose Armies was principally compounded of *Italian* hands. And Secondly, by their *Wit*, by which they have subdued a great part of *Christendom*, to the obedience of the Pope and Court of *Rome*, the standing body of whose Counsell (though he have Ministers of all tempers and nations) do specially consist of *Italian* Heads. In former times here lived the renowned Captains, *Camillus* the Second, and *Fabius Maximus* the Buckler of *Rome*; the two *Scipios*, one of which subdued *Africk*, and the other *Asia*; *Pompey* the great, who extended the *Roman* Empire Eastwards to the banks of *Euphrates*; *Cæsar*, the greater of the two, enlarging it Westward to the *British*, and the *Belgick* Ocean; besides infinite others of less note in respect of these, though most deserving in themselves. Here flourished also the famous Orators, *Cicero*, *Hortensius*, and *Antonius*; the renowned Historians, *Livie*, *Tacitus*, and *Salustius*; the memorable Poets, *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, and *Propertius*; *Plautus* and *Terence* the Comedians; the Satyrists, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Persius*. So equally were they favoured both by *Mars* and the *Muses*, that it is not easie to determine whether they were most eminent in Arts or Arms. What men of speciall eminence it hath since produced, we shall see hereafter, when we are come to take a view of *Italy* as it stands at present; and to that place we shall defer our Observation of the Rivers, Air, and disposition of the soyl, with such other particulars as have received little or no alteration in the change of times.

Italy was anciently divided, as most Countries else, into *Tribes* and *Nations*, as the *Latines*, *Sabines*, *Tuscans*, *Samnites*, *Campans*, *Picentini*, *Picens*, *Ligures*, *Lucanians*, *Lucani*, and others of inferiour note, whom we shall meet with in the description of those several States into which it doth now stand divided. But all those Nations being severally vanquished by the *Roman* puissance, and made up into one body, whereof *Rome* was the head; it pleased *Augustus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was said, that is to say, *Liguria*, *Hesperia*, *Latium*, *Campania*, *Umbria*, *Samnium*, *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia Transpadana*, *Venetia* and *Histria*. In the time of the Emperor *Antoninus*, the Provinces of *Italy* were increased to fifteen, the bounds of the former Region being some what altered; and the three Iles of *Sicilie*, *Corsica*, and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhetias* first and second added to the number. But being that this distribution received some change in the time of *Constantine* the Great, who altering both the names and bounds of the former Provinces, and adding one more to them, made 17 in all, that is to say, *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, 2 *Picenum Suburbicarium*, 3 *Campania*, 4 *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5 *Valeria*, 6 *Samnium*, 7 *Lucania* and the *Bruttii*, 8 *Sicilie*, 9 *Corsica*, and 10 *Sardinia*, which made up the prefecture of the City of *Rome*, 11 *Flaminia* and *Picenum Annonarium*, 12 *Venetia*, 13 *Æmilia*, 14 *Liguria*, 15 *Alpes Cottie*, 16 *Rhetia prima*, and 17 *Rhetia secunda*, which made up the Dioceſs of *Italy*, properly and especially so called, whereof *Millain* was the first *Metropolitan* Citie, *Aquileia* afterwards.

The

The Language heretofore was divers, according to the ſeveral Provinces and people of it. In *Apulia* they uſed the *Meſapian* tongue, in that which is now called *Calabria*, they ſpake the *Greek*; in *Hetruria* they uſed the *Tuſcan*, and the *Latin* in *Latium*: which laſt ſo altered in ſhort time, by reaſon of the commerce they had with the conquered Nations, that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians* at the expulſion of the *Tarquins*, could not be underſtood (as *Polybius* ſaith) by the beſt Antiquaries of his time. And yet the time between the making of thoſe Articles, and the time of *Polybius*, who was Contemporary with *Scipio Africanus*, there paſſed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* tongue was afterwards at any time ſpoke generally in all parts of the *Roman* Empire, or of *Italy* it ſelf, as I ſee ſome hold, I can by no means be perſwaded; it being by ſpeciall favour granted to the *Cimans* dwelling but an hundred miles from the walls of *Rome*, that they ſhould uſe the *Roman* language; which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if theſe *Italian* people dwelling out of *Latium* had uſed it formerly. And yet this hapned not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and great part of *Spain*. And though the *Latin* tongue in ſucceeding times came to be underſtood in moſt parts of *Italy*, by reaſon of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted amongſt them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continuall reſort to *Rome* on their ſeverall buſineſſes: it being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgment pronounced by the *Prætors* for the ſeverall Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give Audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the ſubject Nations, ſave only in the *Latin* tongue, their own proper language. Yet for all this, it never grew to ſuch extent to be the Language of the whole Empire, no nor of *Italy* it ſelf; no more than the *Engliſh* tongue is naturall or nationall to the *Welch* or *Iriſh*, though it be generally underſtood (for the very ſame reaſons) by all of the better ſort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French* and *Spaniſh*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* tongues occaſioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations. But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impreſſion which the *Latin* tongue had made amongſt them, whilſt they were under the obedience of that puiſſant Empire; and that the *Italian* tongue as it is now ſpoken, could not receive ſo great a change from the barbarous Nations, none of which tarried long amongſt them, but the *Goths* and *Lombards*; nor they ſo long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eaſtern parts) as to be either the occaſions or authors of the alteration. So that the preſent language of *Italy* is a decompound, made up eſpecially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*, ſome notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the *North* and *Weſt*, ſome of the *Gothiſh* in the middeſt, about *Rome* it ſelf; and not a little of the *Greek* in the Eaſt of *Naples*.

And as the Language, ſo the *Religion* of the Countrie hath received ſome change. The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt preached in *Rome* it ſelf, and in *Rome* firſt preached by Saint *Peter*, who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two Apoſtles *Peter* and *Paul*, are generally ſayd by the antient Writers to be the firſt who preached the Goſpel in that City. *A duobus Apoſtolis* Petro & Paulo *Romæ fundata & conſtituta eſt Eccleſia*, ſaith the old Father *Irenæus*. Lib. 4. cap. 3. To one of theſe the firſt preaching of the Goſpel there is to be referred; both being Biſhops of that City: That is to ſay, St. *Peter* of the Churches of the *Circumciſion*, St. *Paul* of thoſe which conſiſted ſpecially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Goſpel was preached there before *Pauls* coming, is evident by his Epiſtle written to the *Romans* at *Cenchreæ* the Port-town of *Corinth*, ſix years at leaſt before his being brought to *Rome*; in which he teſtifieth, that their Faith was famous over all the World, and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as St. *Peter* was the firſt preacher of the Goſpel at *Rome*, ſo ſent he his Diſciples to promulgate it in moſt parts of *Italy*. The *Roman Martyrologies* reckon up eight Biſhops of St. *Peters* making for ſo many of the principall Cities of this Country; that is to ſay, *Ephaphroditus* (not he whom Saint *Paul* ſpeaks of in his Epiſtle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*, of old called *Anxur*, *Hermagoras* for *Aquileia*, *Paulinus* for *Lucca*, *Apollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Arina*, *Proſdocimus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracuſe*, and *Pancratius* for *Tauromenium* in the Iſle of *Sicilie*: But whether St. *Peter* planted it, or St. *Paul* watered it, certain I am that *GOD* onely *gave it the increaſe*. It could not elſe have proſpered under ſuch a tyranny, as many, if not moſt of the *Roman* Emperours, did earneſtly endeavour to ſuppreſs it with. But *ſanguis Martyrum ſemen Eccleſiæ*; the watering of it by the blood of ſo many *Martyrs* made it grow the faſter. And this ſmall grain of Muſtard-ſeed waxed to great a tree, as over-ſhaddowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire, and did not onely ſtand it out againſt all Tempeſts, but in concluſion did ſuppreſs that Superſtition and Idolatry, for whoſe ſake all thoſe Princes till the time of *Conſtantine*, did, more or leſs, labour to deſtroy it. How much it hath receded ſince thoſe times from its primitive puritie, and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the deſign and arts of thoſe who boaſt themſelves to be Succeſſors to that great Apoſtle, ſhall be a little touched at in the ſtory of the *Roman Papacie*. Suffice it in this place to ſay, that all the people of this Country, partly in reverence to the *Pope*, partly for fear of the *Inquiſition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the *Proteſtant* Doctrin (of which they are taught to believe many monſtrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternall life, have either been ſtopped, or elſe cor-

corrupted by the Popes of *Rome*; the Rivers which do water this moſt flouriſhing Garden ſtill preſerve their beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the ſame channels, as before they did. And of theſe *Italy* hath as many as any one Country, but none of any long courſe, by reaſon that all parts of it are ſo neer ſome Sea, moſt of which riſing from the *Alpes*, or the *Apennine* Hills, by melting of the ſnows in Winter, and caſualtie of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often over-flow the Country, and for the moſt part leave an ill Air behind them. Thoſe of chief note are, 1 the River *Po*, or *Padus* (the *Greeks* call it the *Eridanus*) into which *Phaeton* is ſayd to have been drenched when he fell from Heaven. It riſeth in the *Alpes*, runneth thorough *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Ciſpadanam* and *Tranſpadanam*; and having taken in 30 leſſer ſtreams, falls with ſeven mouthes into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Venice*. 2 *Rubicon*, anciently the North-bound of *Italy*; *Hic fluvius quondam Italiæ finis*, as it is in *Plinie*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea at *Rimini*, or *Ariminum*, the Port-town to *Ravenna*. 3 *Arnus*, on whoſe banks ſtands the Citie of *Florence*. 4 *Ticinus*, which gave name to the Citie of *Pavie*, called of old *Ticinum*; it riſeth in the *Alpes*, and emptieth it ſelf into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5 *Liris*, now called *Garigliano*, ſtained with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards* in their quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*; nor no leſs unfortunately memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medices*. 6 *Cuique ſuit rerum promiſſa potentia* Tibris;

And Tiber, *unto which was given*
The power of all things under Heaven.

It riſeth from the *Apennine* Hills, paſſeth by *Rome*, and falleth into the *Tuſcan*, or lower Sea, at *Oſtia*. Here is alſo the Lake of *Thraſymene*, neer which *Annibal* defeated *Flaminius* the Conſul, and his whole Army, opening thereby his paſſage to the gates of *Rome*; and the famous River of 7. *Metaurus*, where the Romans overcame *Aſdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*; and thereby made a way to the ruin of *Carthage*. Others of leſs note ſhall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Country, thoſe of moſt note are the *Alpes*, and the *Apennine*, of which the reſidue in a manner are but ſpurs and branches. Of theſe, the *Alpes* being alſo appertaining to *France* and *Germany*; or rather containing many large and entire Provinces which belong to neither; deſerves a Tractate by it ſelf. The *Apennine*, being proper onely to this Country, but ſo that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, ſhall be ſpoken of here. A ledge of Hils which take beginning neer *Savona*, a Town of *Genoa* ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, and fetching a little compaſs Northwards, extend to the furtheſt parts of *Italy*, dividing it almoſt in the very middeſt; that part thereof which lieth towards the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Sea being called *Ciſapennina*; *Tranſappennina* that which lay towards the *Adriatick*. Paſſing in one entire body as far as *Aſcoli*, in *Apulia*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*; it is there parted into two horns or branches; whereof the one runs out to the Mount of *Gargano*, in the land of *Otranto*; the other ſpreadeth it ſelf as far as *Calabria*; thoſe being the moſt Eaſtern Provinces of this noble Continent. Called the *Apennine*, as ſome ſay, *à Penna*, by which word the *Latins* uſed to ſignifie the top or ſummit of an Hill, by reaſon of the height and ſharp points thereof: as others ſay, *quaſi Alpes Pœnine*, becauſe firſt overcome by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Roman* Writers call by the name of *Pœni*. The Inhabitants hereof, by *Virgil* named *Apenninicolæ*; otherwiſe reducible to ſome of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain moſt of the Hils of *Italy* from *Savona* Eaſtwards, are but the excurſions; which being of leſs note, ſhall be ſpoken of as they lye before us in the way.

To proceed now to ſo much of the Hiſtory of *Italy*, as concerns the generalls; we are to know that the firſt Inhabitants of it (not to ſay any thing of the fiction of Frier *Annius* under the name of *Berоſus*, who will needs have *Noah* himſelf come hither ſhortly after the Flood) were doubtleſs of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth ſonne of *Javan*, one of the ſonnes of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of *Greece*, which was ſince called *Macedon*; and after ſpreading themſelves further as their numbers increaſed, peopled *Ætolia* and the Countries adjoyning to it: From whence, deſirous of a warmer and more fertile ſoyl, they came in tract of time to the Coaſts of *Dalmatia*, and thence to this Country ſince called *Italy*. That they did ſpring originally from the ſeed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim* as the *Greek* pronounce it) wants not very good Authors. For thus *Euſebius*, Ἔθνος ἐξ οὗ Λατῖνοι καὶ οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι; that is to ſay, from the *Kitians*, or children of *Kittim*, deſcended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The ſame occurs alſo in the *Chronicon* of *Alexandria*. So alſo ſaith *Cedrenus* in his *Annals*, but with more punctuality. *Telephus* (ſaith he) the ſonne of *Hercules*, reigned in *Italy*, and after him his ſonne *Latinus*, ἀφ' οὗ Ἕλληνες ἐπωνόμασαν Λατίνους, from whom the *Greeks* were named *Latins*. The ſame in other words ſaith *Suidas*. Nor want there ſome remainders of this name in approved Writers, beſides theſe authorities; there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, mentioned in *Dionyſius Hallicarnaſſeus*; and a River named *Ketus* not far from *Cuma*, whereof *Ariſtotle* ſpeaketh in his book *De Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediately from the *Ætolians*, beſides the other Arguments which *Reineccius* uſeth in this point, the neerneſs, or identitie rather of the names doth ſeem to intimate. For *Ætolia* being written in the *Greek Aitolia*; and the letter *O* being changed into *A* according to the *Æolick* Dialect, which was that uſed by the *Ætolians*; the

alteration of the name from *Aeolia* and *Aeolians*, to *Italia* and *Italians*, will be thought very eaſie, if not naturall; the rather, in regard there is an Iland neer *Italie*, in the *Tuſcan* Sea, peopled originally by theſe very *Aeolians*, which in antient times was called *Aethalia*. And ſo by ſuch an eaſie alteration of one Letter onely, *Italus* may derive its firſt Plantation from the *Aeolians*, as no doubt it may: then may that *Italus*, the Chiefrain of whom *Virgil* ſpeaks, be no other than *Aetolus*, ſome man of principall mark, and eminencie, amongſt that people, who had the conduct of this Colonie when they came for *Italie*. And this I ſhould believe muchmore ther, than that this *Italus* was the name of a King of *Sicilie*; It being more probable, that *Sicilie* ſhould borrow its firſt planters out of *Italie*, than *Italie* ſhould borrow either name or people from ſo ſmall a Kingdom: eſpecially conſidering, that the name of *Aitolus* was famous in theſe parts of *Greece*, ever ſince *Aitolus* the ſonne of a King of *Elis*, was founder of the *Aeolian* Kingdom. The way thus ſhewen, and the paſſages into *Italie* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelaſgi*, another *Greek* Nation, found the way into it; after whom *Saturn* out of *Creta*, and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their ſeverall followers, came and ſetled there. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe ſeverall Colonies, which ſtreaming out of *Peloponneſus*, and the parts of *Achaia*, planted themſelves ſo thick in the Eaſt of *Italie*, now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Graecia*. So that the *Grecians* made the main groſs or body of the *Italian* people; to which the comming of ſome *Tuſcans* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, a Prince of *Lydia* in *Aſia minor*, ſerved but as an *Acceſſary*, and altered nothing the Principall. The laſt that ſetled here, were ſome of the Reliſts of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Æneas*, who flying from their native Country, and enraged Enemies, were firſt caſt upon the coaſts of *Africk*; where having ſtayd a while to refreſh his companies (we ſhall hereafter take occaſion to conſider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he ſet ſail for *Italie*, being the place aſſigned him by the Gods for his ſeat and Empire; whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according to the rate which *Thucydides* alloweth to the veſſels then uſed, to the number of 1200 men. And there he landed, as it proved, in an happy hour: For he was no ſooner arrived, but he was lovingly cheriſhed, and entertained by *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latium*, whoſe chief Citie or Seat Royall was then called *Laurentum*; who much eſteeming of this Stranger as a man whoſe fame had been his Harbinger, thought he could neither manifeſt his love ſufficiently, nor binde him faſt enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia* his only daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Æneas*, and *Turnus* King of the *Rutli*, a former Suter; which being ended in the death of the *Rutilian* Rivall, confirmed *Æneas* and his *Trojans* in a ſure poſſeſſion. For now growing with the *Latins* or *Laurentins*, into a more conſtant bond of Friendſhip, by many Inter-mariages, and mutuall kindneſſes, they built the Town of *Lavinium*, called ſo in honour of their Queen, intending it for the Seat Royall of the Princes of the *Trojan* line. But long it did not hold that ſtate: For *Aſcanius* the ſonne of *Æneas* by his former Wife, to avoyd all occaſions of contention with his Mother-in-Law left her (*Æneas* being dead) in poſſeſſion of *Lavinium*, and built *Longa Alba*; which being ſurrendred by *Julus* the ſonne of *Aſcanius* to his half-brother *Silvius*, became the conſtant habitation of the *Silvian* Kings till the building of *Rome*, and finall ending of the race of the *Latin* Kings. The names of whom (for there occurs little of their actions) we are next to ſhew; taking along with us thoſe few Kings which reigned in thoſe parts of *Italy* before the comming of *Æneas*.

The old Kings of *Italy* of the *Aborigines*.

A. M.

2637. 1 *Janus*, the firſt King of the *Aborigines*, who lived in the ſame time with *Boaz* and *Ruth*. He received *Saturn* flying out of *Creta* from *Jupiter*, and left him his Kingdom at his death. He is ſayd to be the founder of the Citie of *Genua*, and to have given name to the Hill in *Rome* called *Janicula*, on which it was ſuppoſed that he had his dwelling.

2 *Saturn*, who taught the people the uſe of dunging of their lands, and for that cauſe was honoured by them as a God, under the name of *Stercutius*, as St. *Auſtin* hath it. He reigned firſt together with *Janus*, and afterwards by himſelf alone, the whole time of both their reigns was 33 years.

2670. 3 *Picus*, well ſkilled in divination by the flight and chattering of Birds, and therefore feigned by the Poets to be turned into a *Pye*. He entertained *Evander* and his *Arcadians*, giving them the Hill (called after *Aventine*) to build upon. 37.

2707. 4 *Faunus*, the ſonne of *Picus*, and the husband of *Fatua*, in whoſe time *Hercules* came into *Italy*, vanquiſhed the Giants of *Cremona*, and killed the Giant *Cacus* who had fled out of *Spain*. 44.

2751. 5 *Latinus*, the ſonne of *Faunus*, who entertained *Æneas* comming from the wars and deſtruction of *Troy*, and gave him his daughter *Lavinia* to wife, with his Kingdom, after him in Dower. 36.

2787. 6 *Lavinia*, daughter to *Latinus*, and Queen of the *Latins*, maried to *Æneas*, whom ſhe out-lived, he being ſlain in his Wars againſt *Mezentius* the King of *Tuſcany*, the ſonne or ſucceſſor of that *Mezentius* (an ungodly Tyrant) whom *Æneas* had before ſlain in his war with *Turnus* and the *Latins*. 7.

Kings

Kings of the *Latins* of the *Trojan* or *Silvian* race.

A.M.

1787. 1 *Æneas*, the sonne of *Anchises*, and Husband of *Lavinia*, slain in his wars against *Mezentius* King of the *Tuscans* or *Hetrurians*, as before is said. 3.

2790. 2 *Ascanius*, the sonne of *Æneas* by *Creusa* his former Wife, for fear of whom *Lavinia* being great with child, fled into a Wood, and was there delivered of a son called *Silvius*. He removed the Seat Royall from *Lavinium* to *Longa Alba*, a City of his own building. 38.

2828. 3 *Silvius Posthumus*, the sonne of *Æneas* by *Lavinia*, preferred unto the Kingdom by the love of the people before *Iulus* the sonne of *Ascanius* (the founder of the *Julian* family) from whom all the Kings of this Race had the name of *Silvii*; *Iulus* being honoured with the chief Priesthood (an office next in dignity to that of the King) which he translated afterwards unto his Posterity. 29.

2857. 4 *Æneas Silvius*. 31.

2888. 5 *Latinus Silvius*. 50.

2938. 6 *Alba Silvius*, so called because of his beautifying and repairing the City *Alba*, then in some decay. 39.

2977. 7 *Capetus Silvius*. 24.

3001. 8 *Capys Silvius*, said to be the founder of the Citie of *Capua*; which shewes that he extended his dominion further than the Province of *Latium*. 28.

3029. 9 *Capetus Silvius*. 13.

3042. 10 *Tiberinus Silvius*, from whom the River *Tiber* derives that name, being formerly called *Albula*. 8.

3050. 11 *Agrippa Silvius*. 40.

3090. 12 *Alladius Silvius*, who to make himself the more terrible to his subjects, studied a way to imitate the Thunder, but was killed at last by a reall Thunder-clap from Heaven. 19.

3109. 13 *Aventinus Silvius*, who gave name to the Hill *Aventine*. 37.

3146. 14 *Procas Silvius*. 23.

3169. 15 *Amulius Silvius*, the younger sonne of *Procas*, setting aside his Brother *Numitor*, obtained the Kingdom for himself; slain at last by *Romulus*, and *Numitor* setled in the Throne. 42.

3211. 16 *Numitor*, the 21 King from *Janus*, and the last King of the *Latins*, restored by *Romulus* to the Throne; and after the short reign of one year onely, deprived by him both of life and Kingdom. After whose death the *Latins*, or *Albans*, had no more Kings, but kept themselves as a Free-estate till subdued to *Rome*. 1.

Concerning this it is to be understood, that *Amulius* having chased his elder brother *Numitor* out of the Country, and possessed himself of the Throne, caused his brothers daughter *Rhea* (for preventing any issue by her) to be shut up in the Temple of *Vesta*. Where she proving the mother of two sonnes, was according to the Law buried quick, and her children by the cruel Tyrant cast out to be devoured of wild Beasts. They were found by *Faustulus* the Kings Shepheard, nurst by his Wife, for her infamous life called *Lupa* (whence came the Fable, that they were suckled by a Wolf) and being grown to mans estate, slew the Tyrant *Amulius*, placing their Grandfather *Numitor* in the Royall Throne, whom not long after they deprived both of life and kingdom. Of these, the eldest was named *Romulus*. and the younger *Rhemus*, who leaving *Alba* to the short possession of their Grandfather *Numitor*, layd the foundation of the most famous City of *Rome*: which *Romulus* first hanselled with the blood of his Brother *Rhemus*, who had disdainfully leapt over the walls of his new City. This City he made an *Asylum*, or place of Refuge for all commers, of what desperate estate soever, and having ranked them into order, made himself their King. A people of so base a nature, that their neighbours refused to give them any of their daughters in mariage: So they were destitute of Wives, and consequently not like to continue a people long; till on a proclamation made of some plaies and pastimes, many of the *Sabine* women flocked thither to behold the sports; whom the *Romans* seized on, and forced an unwilling consent from them to become their Wives. From such a base and low beginning did this City rise to be the Empress of the World.

The Kings of *Rome*.

A.M.

3253. 1 *Romulus*, the founder of *Rome*; He made peace with *Tatius* King of the *Sabines*, comming against him to revenge the ravishments of their women; incorporating him and his into his new Citie, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory. 37.

3251. 2 *Numa*, the first Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies. 43.
3294. 3 *Tullus Hostilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the conquest of *Alba*, the mother-Citie of the *Latins*, and vanquished the *Fidenates*. 32.
3326. 4 *Ancus Martius*, who built *Ostia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City.
5 *Tarquinius Priscus*, who subdued many of the *Tuscan* Nations, encreased the number of the *Tribes* and *Senators*, and added the *triumphall* ornaments. 38.
3388. 6 *Servius Tullus*, who first caused the people to be *inrolled*, and brought into *cense*. 44.
3432. 7 *Tarquinius Superbus*, sonne to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquished the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Ardea*, *Ocriculum*, and *Suessa Pometia*; but for his own insolent behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatine* by his sonne *Sextus*, he and his whole Race were driven out of the Town, *Anno Mund.* 3457. *V.C.* 268.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, caused two Officers to be chosen out of the *Patricii* or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Consuls*, *à consulendo*, from counselling of, and consulting the good of the Common-wealth, *ut consulere se suis civibus meminerint*, saith the Historian, their name being a *memento* of their charge or duty. And in this office they resolved to have alwaies two, and those but onely for a year, *Ne vel solitudine vel morâ potestas corrumperetur.* And though some had the fortune to be *Consuls* two or three years together; yet every new year they were a-new chosen, and so their Offices reckoned as severall; neither do we find any to have been elected for less than a year, unless upon the death or deposition of a former, untill the Civill wars. But then *cum belli civilis præmia festinari cæperunt*, when the services done in the Civill wars required a quicker turn in requitall, the *Consulship* was given only for some part of the year, and ordinarily for two Moneths: the first *Consuls* being named *Ordinarii*, in whose names the writings made for the whole year were dated; the other *Minores*, or *Honorarii*, which only served to make up a number. For so ambitious were the *Romans* of this honor, that when *Maximus* died in the last day of his Consulship, *Caninius Rebilus* petitioned *Cæsar* for that part of the day that remained: whence that so memorated jest of *Tully*, *O vigilantem Consulem, qui toto consulatûs sui tempore somnum oculis non vidit.* And when *Cecina* was by the Senate degraded from this honour on the day in which he was to have resigned it; one *Roscius Regulus* obtained the office from *Vitellius* for the day remaining: but as the Historian noteth, *magno cum irrisu accipientis, tribuentisq;*. Now as the *Romans* did thus exceed the first number of *Consuls*, so sometimes fell they short of it. The first that was sole *Consul* was *Pompey*, in the beginning of the Civill Wars, *viz.* *A.V.C.* 703. The next, one *Varanes*, *A.C.* 410. This Office, from the first institution to the finall period of it, continued at the least in name (for the Emperors had of long time assumed the Power and Prerogatives appertaining to it) the space of 1084. yeers, though not without many intermissions of the Name and Title, by the severall interposings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Consular Tribunes*, of which more anon. The last Consull was one *Basilius*, in the time of *Justinian*, *A.Ch.* 542. The two first, *Collatinus* the husband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whose instigation the people had took Arms against the house of the *Tarquins*. A man so zealous in defence of the common liberty, so resolutely bent to make good what he had begun, and so extremely opposite to the Royal Race, that he not only caused *Collatine* to resign his Office within the yeer, because he was of the blood of the *Tarquins*; but executed his own sonnes for holding correspondence and *intelligence* with them.

But though the Government were changed, the old design was followed which the Kings had laid for the inlarging of their Empire; but followed with so slow a pace, by reason of their factions and divisions, that it was full 500. yeers before they could be Masters of *Italie*. A matter not unworthy of our consideration, that the *Italians* should hold out so long a time against the puissance of the *Romans*; when in less than half that time ensuing, they did possess themselves of almost all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdomes and Provinces both in *Asia* and *Africk*. So different a thing it was (as is said by *Florus*) *domi caput Italiæ*, to contract the many limbs of *Italie* into one body, and unite them under one head.

But to proceed; after *Italy* was fully conquered by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their neerest Neighbours; whose overthrow, in the end of the first *Punick* War, *A.V.C.* 512. gave them the full possession of *Sicil* (except the State of *Syracusa*,) and the Isle of *Sardinia*. After that being molested in their Trade by the *Illyrian* Pirates, and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War against her, and brought that puissant people to become their Tributaries, *A.V.C.* 525. The second *Carthaginian* war, managed by *Annibal* in the bowells of *Italie*, had almost put a period to the glories of their Common-wealth. But that being also ended to their advantage by the conquest of *Spain*, they quarrelled *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace on their own terms, and after outed his sonne *Perseus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the rest of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a quarrell with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*, made him abandon his possession of the *Lesser Asia*; and finally prevailed so successfully in all their actions, that there was neither King nor Common-wealth that could stand in their way, untill the State being burdened with its too much greatness, began to totter of it self.

Two

Two things there were which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their power and greatneſs, beſides the providence of God which had ſo diſpoſed it; which were the great encouragements which they gave their Souldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they uſed to beſtow upon their *Generals*, when they returned home with honor and victory. For when any of their *Generals* did ſo return, he was permitted to enter ſitting on a glorious Chariot, the ſpoils which he had got in war being carried before, the priſoners he had taken followving bound at the heels of his Chariot; his Souldiers compaſſing him about vvith their ſeverall Crowns, according to the quality of their well-deſervings; and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Prieſts and principall Ladies, going out to meet him. The firſt beginning of vvhich cuſtome is aſcribed to *Romulus*, who in the war which *Acron* King of the *Ceninenſes* made againſt him in revenge of the rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine* women, ſeeing his people give ground, called for help to *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Acron*, to offer up his Armour to him. *Acron* being vanquiſhed, the Conqueror cutteth down a fair young Oak, and hangeth on it all the Armour of the vanquiſhed King; then girding his Gown cloſe unto him, and putting on his head a Garland of Lawrell, he laid the Oak upon his ſhoulders, and marched towards the City; his Army following him, and ſinging an *Epinicion* or ſong of victory. To this we muſt referre the originall and beginning of *Triumphs*. But *nihil eſt inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the ſaying is. *Tarquinius Priſcus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the Purple Robe, and the Triumphant Chariot drawn with four Horſes. The other pomps came afterwards as they grew both in power and pride. Now of theſe *Triumphs* there were two ſorts, the Greater, which vvas properly called a *Triumph*; and the Leſſer, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many Circumſtances. For, 1. The *Triumpher* made his entrance in a Royall Chariot, and was met by the *Senators* in their Robes; but the *Ovator* made his entrance on foot, and vvas met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2. The *Triumpher* had a Lavvrell Crovvn, and entred vvith the noiſe of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovator* had onely a Garland of Fir, with Flutes and *Hautboies* playing before him. 3. The *Triumpher* was attired in a Garment of State, which they called *Veſtis trabeata*; but the *Ovator* in a plain Purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph* the Souldiers cried out, *Io Triumphe*; but in an *Ovation* they ingeminated onely *O, O, O*, from the often doubling of which word, it had (as ſome think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5ly. and laſtly, the *Triumpher* uſed to ſacrifiſe a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovator* a Sheep only; from whence the name is properly to be derived.

Now there were three Caſes in which the Conqueror was to be content with this leſſer Triumph. 1. If the number of the enemies whom he ſlew in battell exceeded not 5000. men; or that he had not ſo much overcome them by force, as perſwaſion or ſubtilty: 2. If the War had been ſlight, curſorie, or not lawfully mannaged; And 3ly. If it were againſt an ignoble Enemy. And of this laſt we have a fair inſtance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the victory in the *Servile* War, (a victory of great importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*; *nè Triumphi dignitatem* Servili *inſcriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumphs* they were indeed very full of magnificence; the pomp whereof, who liſt to ſee, may find it in the Triumph of *Paulus Aemilius* deſcribed by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been ſaid, we may conjecture ſomewhat at the glories of it. And yet this honour was not alwayes vouchſafed to thoſe who had beſt deſerved it, there being many vvays vvhereby it might be forfeited or denied in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatneſs of the Men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it vvas denied a victorious Generall, by the ſtrength of a contrary Faction: and ſo *Pompey* denied *Metellus* the honour of a *Triumph* for the conqueſt of *Crete*. 2. Sometimes the Conqueror himſelf vvas vvilling to decline it for fear of *envy*: And ſo *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his conqueſt of *Sicilie*, having *triumphed* tvvice before, refuſed that honour, his reaſon vvas, [illegible], for fear his third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3. Sometimes the Souldiers having been ill paid, or othervviſe not vvell treated by their Commanders, oppoſed them in their ſute for it: and this vvas the caſe of *Paulus Aemilius*, vvho queſtionleſs had miſſed this honor, for not dividing amongſt them the ſpoils of *Greece*, as he once had promiſed, if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their ovvn caſe, had not ſtickled hard for him vvith the Souldiers. 4. It vvas ſometimes denyed, becauſe the Generall had borne no publick Office in the Common-vvealth. For ſo in *Livie*, vvhen *Lentulus* coming *Proconſul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the Fathers anſvvered, that he had indeed done things vvorthy of that honor, but that they had no preſident for it, *ut qui neq; Conſul, neq; Dictator, neq; Praetor res geſſiſſet*, Triumpharet. 5. Sometimes the *Generals* themſelves omitted it, for the furtherance of ſome of their other purpoſes. And ſo *Caſar* coming towards *Rome*, a Victor, at the ſame time the *Conſuls* were to be choſen, laid aſide his demand of the *Triumph*, to ſue for the Conſulſhip; it being the cuſtome that ſuch as demanded the *Triumph* ſhould abide without the City, and ſuch as ſued for the Conſulſhip muſt of neceſſity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denied, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the *Senate*; in which reſpect the *Triumph* was denied unto *Manlius* on the conqueſt of *Galatia* by him, to the great inlargement of their Empire, *quia cauſam Belli* Senatus *non approbavit*, becauſe he had no Commiſſion from the Senate for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted

if the War had been *Civill*, becauſe in all ſuch Wars whoſoever was Conqueror, the Common-wealth was a loſer by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquiſhed *Sertorius*, and his party in *Spain*, would have it called a Forrain, not a *Civill* War, becauſe they would not loſe their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quàm* Civile *videri voluerunt, ut Triumpharent.* 8. If the victory had not been obtained without great loſs on the *Romans* ſide; in which regard *Valerius* after his conqueſt of the *Galls* was denied this honor; *quia magis dolor civibus amiſſis, quàm gaudium fuſis hoſtibus prevaluit*, ſaith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9ly. and laſtly, The *Triumph* was denied a *Generall*, if the ſervice had not been performed in his own Province: And ſo we find that when *Livius* and *Nero* being Conſulls had vanquiſhed *Aſdrubal*, *Livius* onely had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the man that had won the day, becauſe the field was fought in the Province of *Livius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Acceſſary*, or Aſſiſtant.

And theſe are all, or at the leaſt the principall cauſes of hindering or omitting this great honor, indeed the greateſt that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after when the Common-wealth was changed into a *Monarchie*, it began to be laid aſide for altogether, as too great for Subjects; and was firſt purpoſely neglected by *Vipſanius Agrippa*, the Eſtabliſher of *Auguſtus* in the *Roman* Empire, who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Aſia*, and his quiet ſetling of that Countrey, to give Poſterity an example, refuſed to accept it. And this example being (as it were a rule) to others, occaſioned that this cuſtom was in ſhort time quite layd aſide, and that no man under the degree of an *Emperour* Triumphed ſolemnly; all others from thence forth, content with the *triumphall* Ornaments, *μίτρας τῶν ἐπινικίων τιμῶν*, in the words of *Dion*. And though *Beliſarius* having ſubdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, is ſaid (600 years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph*, yet in propriety of ſpeech, it was nothing but an honourable preſenting of himſelf and his priſoners before the Emperour; and was ſo far from the magnificence of a *Roman Triumph*, that it wanted many of the ſolemnities uſed in an *Ovation*. Nor did the Emperours themſelvs much affect this honour, either becauſe too popular, or too chargeable, or that they thought it was beneath the *Imperiall Majeſty*; the laſt (as I remember) that made uſe thereof to ſet forth his glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his victories over the *Germans*, and the *Blemya*, a people of *Africk*, in or about the year 284 of our Saviours birth.

In the next place look we on the incouragements and rewards of the common Souldiers: beſides the ſetting out of Lands and dwellings for the poorer ſort, in which they might reſt themſelves when they were paſt ſervice; and beſides the large *donatives* which the *Generall* in his *Triumph* did beſtow upon them; they had their *murall Crown*, for him that firſt ſcaled the Walls; a *navall Crown*, for him that firſt borded the Enemies Ships; a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Caſtrenſis*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy; a *Citie Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preſerved the life of a *Roman* Citizen. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe Chains and Bracelets which ſouldiers of inferiour merit were adorned withall. By which encouragements, and the good conduct of their Counſels in the Senate, the *Roman* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, and their Dominions were enlarged ſo immenſly, that never any Common-wealth had ſo large a growth.

And yet the greatneſs of this ſtate is neither totally nor only to be attributed to the *Conſular* Government. For though the walls of this great building were raiſed by the *Conſuls*, yet the foundation of the ſame was layd by the Kings, and the roof thereof layd on by the Emperors. Nay, be it ſpoken to the honour of *Monarchicall* Government, whenſoever any great and imminent danger did ſeem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aſide their confidence in the rule of their *Conſuls*, and betake themſelves to the command of one Soveraign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and the other changes happning in the ſtate of *Rome*, take this ſhort abſtract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "*Urbem* Romam *à principio Reges habuere, &c.* The City "of *Rome* was in the beginning governed by Kings. Liberty and the Conſulſhip *L. Brutus* "brought in. The *Dictators* were choſe but for a time; The *Decemviri* paſſed not two years, "neither had the *Conſular* authority of the *Tribunes* of the Souldiers any long continuance, "nor *Cinnas* nor *Syllas* dominion. *Pompey* and *Craſſus* quickly yeelded to *Ceſars* forces; *Lepidus* "and *Antony* to *Auguſtus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of theſe publick changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were inſtituted only on a particular occaſion for the reforming of the Laws by thoſe of *Athens*, and the *Military Tribunes* of *Conſular Authority* ordained to divert common people from ſeeking after the *Conſulſhip*; I ſhall here ſay nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a Supreme power, and ſuch as made way for the Emperors in the cloſe of all, I ſhall inlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators à Dictando*, becauſe they preſcribed what they pleaſed unto the people, which they were bound to execute and not diſpute. Hence that memorable jeſt of *Julius Ceſar*, who being told that *Sylla* had reſigned his *Dictatorſhip*, though by decree of Senate made *perpetuall* to him, returned this Anſwer, that *Sylla* was an unlearned man, *dictare neſciit*, and therefore knew not how to *dictate*, or to play the *Dictator*. They were alſo called *Populi Magiſtri*, or the peoples Maſters, becauſe from them lay no Appeal unto the people (as did from all the reſt of the *Roman* Magiſtrates) during the whole time of their command, which ordinarily continued for ſix moneths; yet ſo, that if they did

did in the mean time settle the affairs of the Commonwealth, they resigned it sooner; if the necessities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were chosen again. The names of as many of them as I have met withall, I have here sub-joyned, together with the services they did the publick in the time of their Office.

The *Dictators* of *Rome*.

A.V.C.

253. 1 *Titus Largius*, chosen upon occasion of a generall War, made by the *Latins* upon *Rome*; the first that ever had this Office.

257. 2 *Aulus Posthumus*, chosen to pursue that war, which he ended with the slaughter of 30000 of the *Latins*.

295. 3 *L. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, chosen to this office from the Plough, overcame the *Volsci*; chosen again *An. V.C.* 314, to suppress the sedition raised by *Sp. Melius*.

316. 4 *Æmilius Mamercus*, overcame the *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven years called unto this Office.

338. 5 *Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquished the *Fidenates*, and the *Latini*.

354. 6 *Furius Camillus*, who finally destroyed the City of the *Veii*, and being chosen a second time, *A. V. C* 362. preserved his Country from the *Galls*: thrice chosen after this upon new occasions.

375. 7 *Tit. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, chosen in the War against the *Latins*.

385. 8 *L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous Pestilence to find a way for the appeasing of the Gods.

396. 9 *C. Sulpitius*.

418. 10 *Mamius Rutilius* the first *Dictator* chosen out of the *Commons*.

11 *L. Papyrius* subdued the *Samnites*.

438. 12 *Cossus*, by whom the *Samnites* were again vanquished.

13 *Æmilius*, who also overcame the *Samnites*.

14 *Lentulus*, who triumphed also over the *Samnites*.

451. 15 *I. Bubulcus*, who finally subdued the *Æqui* and the *Volsci*.

16 *Corn. Rufinus*.

467. 17 *Q. Hortensius*, chosen for appeasing a difference betwixt the Senate and the Commons, who had fortified themselves in *Janiculum*, one of the Hils whereon *Rome* stood.

505. 18 *Cl. Glicias*, forced to resign his office to

19 *Atilius Calatinus*, the first that exercised his office out of *Italy*; he was chosen in the first *Punick* War.

536. 20 *Fabius Maximus*, chosen in the war against *Annibal*.

537. 21 *M. Junius*, chosen upon the great defeat which the *Roman* Forces had at the battell of *Cannæ*.

545. 23 *L. Manlius Torquatus*, chosen upon the death of *Marcellus*, the Consul slain by *Annibal*.

672. 24 *L. Sylla* (descended from that *Corn. Rufinus*, who had been formerly in this office) having by force of Arms suppressed the faction of *Marius* and *Cinna*, made himself master of the City, and caused himself to be chosen *Perpetuall Dictator*, which office having exercised with a great deal of cruelty, he resigned with as great a confidence.

707. 25 *C. Julius Cæsar*, descended from *Julus* the sonne of *Æneas*, who was the second King of the *Trojan* Race, having conquered *Britain*, and added all *Gaule Transalpine* to the *Roman* Empire, and finding himself unworthily requited by the faction of *Pompey*, passed with his Army after him into *Greece*; and having vanquished him in the fields of *Pharsalia*, and made himself absolutely master of the *Roman* Empire, took to himself the supreme Government thereof under the title of *Dictator*, which having managed for the space of five years, he was murthered in the Senate house by *Brutus* and *Cassius*.

Before the time of these *Perpetuall Dictators*, the *Romans* having some enemies or other that opposed the progress of their fortunes, had not the leisure to contend with one another in a publick way, or if they did, their differences and seditions were soon composed. But being grown so great as to fear no Enemy; and the Estate so vast, that it was grown too mighty for a popular Government; then they began to practise on the peoples patience, and to project the sharing of the Empire among the great ones. Concerning which, take here this short *Epistle*, which I find in *Tacitus*. "*Rebus modicis æqualitas facilè inter bonos erat*, &c. While (saith he) our "Dominions were but small, Equalitie was easily maintained among us. But after we had "subdued the World, and destroyed all Kings and Cities that stood in our way, or might world "our annoyance; when we had leisure to seek after Wealth without perill; there arose hot "contentions betwixt the *Nobilitie* and the *Commons*. Sometimes the factious *Tribunes* carried it away; sometimes the *Consuls* had the better: and in the City and common *Forum*, "some little skirmishes (the beginning of our Civil Wars) were sometimes seen. Afterwards "*C. Marius* one of the meanest of the Commonalty; and *L. Sylla* the most cruel of all the

"Nobi-

" Nobility, by force of Arms overthrowing the *Free-State*, reduced all to an absolute Govern-
" ment. To them succeeded *Cn. Pompeius*, a little closer in his projects, but nothing better mind-
" ed to the Common-wealth : *Et nunquam postea nisi de Principatu quæsitum*, and never after
" that was any other point debated, than who should get the Soveraignty unto himself. So *Tacitus*, and he stateth it rightly. For after *Pompey* had revived the controversie, and had found *Cæsar* a better disputant than himself; *Augustus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus* (on the death of *Cæsar*) made good the Argument; attracting all power unto themselves by the name of *Triumviri*; till *Augustus* having out-witted *Lepidus*, and vanquished *M. Antony* at the battell of *Actium*, became sole Soveraign of the State, by the name of *Prince*; *Et cuncta bellis civilibus fessa, nomine Principis sub imperium accepit*, as that Author hath it.

But touching those great alterations in the State of *Rome*, the contentions for the chief command, and the Reduction of it to a *Monarchy* by *Augustus Cæsar*; I published a Discourse in the year 1631 (but written many years before) under the title of *AUGUSTUS*, or *an* Essay *of those Means and Counsels whereby the Common-wealth of* Rome *was altered, and reduced to a Monarchy*. Which being but short, so pertinent to the present business, and so well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to sub-joyn it here. The Reader may either peruse it, or pretermit it, as his fancy guides him. And here it followeth in these words.

THey which have heretofore written of *Common-wealths*, have divided them into three *Species*. The Government of the *King*; secondly, of the *Nobles*; and thirdly, of the *People*. Either of these is again subdivided into *good* and *evill*: The *evill* form being only the *good* corrupted; the *bad* nothing else but the *good* refined. So is the Government of a *King* divided into a *Monarchy*, and a *Tyranny*; Of the *Nobles*, into an *Aristocraty*, and an *Oligarchy*; Of the *People*, into a *Republick*, and a *Democraty*. All these, as well in generall, as in the severall couplets, have a secret Inclination to change the one into the other; and to make a *Pythagorical* transmigration (as it were) into each others being. I need not stand on many instances. The Common-wealth of *Rome* (into whose stories whosoever looketh, will judge them rather to contain the acts of the whole World, than a particular Nation) will serve for all. *Romulus* at the foundation of his City, reserved unto himself the chief Soveraignty, leaving it entire to his Successors. *Numa*, *Ancus*, *Tullus*, *Tarquin* the Elder, and *Servius*, governed themselves so moderately, and the people so justly, that they affected not *Tyranny*; nor the Commons *Liberty*. They appeared more desirous to fill the *Coffers* of their Subjects, than their own *Treasuries*: And when necessity compelled them to a Tax, they rather seemed to sheer their sheep than fleece them. But *Tarquin* the second, commonly called *Superbus*, a man of insupportable Vices, having by violence enthronized himself in that Chair of State, which (had not his ambitious spirit been impatient of delay) would have been his rightfull Inheritance; made his Government answerable to his entrance, cruel and bloody. How many men, eminent as well by their own vertue, as their Parents Nobilitie, did he cut off? How many did he for no cause promote, to make their fall the more remarkable? What part of the *Senate* was free from slaughter? What corner of the City from lamentations? Yet this was not all. The miserable *Romans* were visited with three Plagues at once; *Pride* in the Father, *Cruelty* in the Mother, and *Lust* exorbitant in their sonne *Sextus*, a true *Copy* of the old *Originals*. Either of these had been more than enough to exercise the peoples patience: But meeting all at one time, it seemed that nothing could now be added to the wretchednes of the one, and the wickednes of the other. *Brutus* (a name fatall to *Tyrants*) did easily perswade the *Commons* to shake off this yoak. For they, as well desirous of *Novelties*, as sensible of *Oppressions*, had long since murmured at the present State; and wanted nothing but a head to break out into actuall Rebellion. So the *People* got the *Freedom*, and the *Kings* lost the *Soveraignty* of the City.

A.V.C.244. 2. *Brutus*, although he wanted no fair title to the *Crown*, yet either perceiving how odious the name of *King* was grown; or perhaps willing to be rather the first *Consul*, than the last *Prince*; instituted a new form of Government: Wherein the sway of all was referred to the *Fathers* of the City; out of whom two were annually chosen as chief of the rest. And herein certainly he dealt very advisedly. For had he sought to confirm himself in the *Kingdom*, what could men judge, but that, not love to his Country was the cause that stirred him to take Arms, but desire of Rule. Again, besides that secure *Privacie* is to be preferred before hazardous *Royalty*; what hope had he to keep the seat long, having by his own example taught the people both the *Theory* and *Practice* of *Rebellion*. Under this new *Aristocraty* the *Roman* affairs succeeded so prosperously, their dominions were inlarged so immensly, that it may well be questioned, whether the *Roman* fortune caused their greatnes, or their valour commanded their fortune. For the Governours not seeking wealth but honour, or not their own wealth but the publick, did so demean themselves both in Peace and War, that there was between all, a vertuous emulation, who should most benefit his Countrey. An happines which was too great to continue long. The people had as yet no written *Laws*: *Custom* bearing most sway; and the rest of the *Law* locked up in the breast of the *Judges*. To avoyd such inconveniencies as might hence ensue, there were some men, conceived to be as sound in judgement, as honest in their actions,

deputed

deputed by a generall Commission to take an abstract of the *Grecian Laws*; according to the tenor whereof, the *people* were to frame their lives, the *Judges* their sentences. Here followed the *Oligarchy* or *Decemvirate State* of *Rome*, but long it lasted not. For these new *Lords* joyning forces together, made themselves rich with the spoil of the *people*, not caring by what unlawfull means they could purchase either profit or pleasure. *Appius Claudius*, one of the *Decemviri*, was the break-neck of this Government. He unmindfull of *Lucretia* and the *Tarquins*, lusted after *Virginia*, a woman though of low condition, yet such a woman in whom beauty and vertue strove for the preheminence. The issue was, that she (to save her honour) was slain by her own Father in an open Assembly of the people; *Appius* forced to make away himself in prison; and the rest of that *Magistracy* abdicating their Offices, the *Consuls* were for a time restored. *A.V.C.* 304.

3. The *people* fleshed with this victory, and calling to mind how their Ancestors had in like manner banished the *Kings*, began to know their own strength, and stomacked it exceedingly, that they on whose shoulders the frame of the State was supported, should be so much under the Command of others; that they who were *Lords* abroad, should be below the condition of *Slaves* at home. Hereupon they raise a tumult under the Conduct of their *Tribune Canuleius*. Nor could they by any perswasions be induced to lay down Arms, till they had obtained a Decree, That from thenceforth, the *Nobles* and the *Commons* might promiscuously be maried. And this was the first step to the *Republique*. The gaining this new *Privilege*, put them in possibility of obtaining greater. They now sue to be capable of the *Consulship*. The *Fathers* consulting of this demand, wisely fore-saw, that to grant their Petition, or to deny it, was alike dangerous. For were it utterly dashed, it was to be feared the *People* would again forsake the City; and yet make their stay more insolent and insupportable, if it were granted. *C. Claudius*, one who by his honourable behaviour, was by both parties had in an equall degree of reverence, quickly proposed a middle course, whereby the fury of the multitude might be appeased, without blemish to the *Consular* dignity. He constituted six Annuall Officers, equally chosen out of the *People* and the *Nobles*, calling them *Tribuni Militum Consularis potestatis*. This Office continued, but not without many *Interstitiums*, the space of 78. yeers. Which time expired, and some experience being had of the peoples Government; the *Lords* of the *Senate* did decree, That one of the *Consuls* should from thenceforth be chosen by, and out of the *Commons*; that they should be capable of all *Magistracies*; yea, even of the *Dictatorship*. So that now Vertue was as speedy a Ladder to climb unto Honors, as *Nobility of Birth*; and a *Good* man as much respected as a *Great*. A rare felicity of the times. *A.V.C.* 308. *A.V.C.* 310. *A.V.C.* 388.

4. The *People* being thus mixt with the *Nobles*, as well in Mariages, as Honors; one would have thought that this *Common-wealth*, being thus equally poysed, had been immortall. But as in the *Naturall Body*, there can be no exact and *Arithmeticall* proportion of the humors and elements, without some *predominancie*: So in the *Body Politique*, can there be no equall mixture of *Plebeians* and *Patritians*, without the supremacy of the one or the other. The *people* had presently after the institution of the *Consuls*, raised a Commotion; and with-drew themselves into *Mount Aventine*. Nor could they be intreated to return into the *City*, till there were granted unto them peculiar Officers called *Tribuni Plebis*, or Protectors of the Commons. These being not long after by the Common Councell pronounced to be *Sacrosancti*, and inviolable, began to heave the *Popular State* too high, and thrust the *Aristocraticall* too low, not regarding to lose the love of the one, so they might get the applause of the other. Insomuch, that matters of judgment were devolved from the *Fathers* to the *Commons*; and the authority of the *Senate* trod under foot by the *people*. Nay, they proceeded so far, that *Marius* being *Tribune*, threatned to send *Cotta* the *Consul* unto Prison. And *Sulpitius* in the same *Office*, made the *Consuls* forsake the *Senate-house*, and slew one of their sonnes, whose heels were not nimble enough to flie away. And now were the *Romans* governed by that form of *rule*, than which there is no lower. So that as well by an inevitable necessity in *Nature*, as the ordinary course of *Policies*, there must be a reverting to the first, and *Monarchicall* Authority. For questionless it fareth many times with a *Common-wealth*, as with the *Sun*, which runneth through all the signs of the *Zodiack*, till it return to the place where its motion first began. And the *Platonick* year of reducing all things to the same beginning, continuance, and period; how false soever in the Books of *Nature*, is in some sort true in the change of Government. *A.V.C.* 26.

5. The way down-hill is ease and ordinary, but to ascend unto the top requireth both wit to frame the steps, and courage to give the attempt: So was it here also with the *Romans*. They had naturally, and almost insensibly fain from a *Monarchy* to a *Popularity*, or *Democracy*: But to ascend from a *Popularity* to a *Monarchy*, required many steps and degrees in many, much industry in all. *Marius* and *Sylla*, well skilled in feeding the humors of the *people*, were the first that attempted, and severally mounted to such a height of command, as never durst any promise to them, nor they hope for themselves. *Marius* was of an hasty and stern nature, equally cruell to the *Enemies* in war, and the *people* in peace; one whose birth the *Romans* might have had just cause to curse, had he not saved them from the *Cimbri*. *Sylla* was one whose carriage none could enough commend before, or sufficiently condemn after his prosperity. A man whose *Peace* was far more bloody than his *Warr*; a better *Subject* than a *Prince*. These two gave way each to other, and both to death. Next these, as well in faction and designs, as blood and

alliance, ſucceeded *Caſar* and *Pompey*: Two men never truly paralleld ſince their own times. *Caſar* had a wit to invent ſo pregnant, a heart to execute ſo ſtout, and to both a Fortune ſo favourable, that he durſt undertake what no man dared; and his performances commonly were anſwerable to his undertakings. *Pompey*, a man greater than his own or his friends wiſhes, had triumphed over all the parts of the known World; and could he but have brooked an Equall, he had never met Superiour. Had theſe two lived in divers Ages, or exerciſed their valour onthe common Enemy, the World had been too little to yeeld them imployments. But turning their forces one againſt the other, *Pompey* overthrownin the *Field*, was baſely murthered in *Egypt*: and *Caſar* victoriouſly Conquerour in *Theſſalie*, was barbarouſly maſſacred in the *Capitoll*. And though none of theſe four Worthies could ſettle the *Monarchy* in himſelf; yet this ſhall be to their eternall memory recorded, that they firſt opened the paſſage to others, and firſt moved the ſtone, which rowling along tumbled the *People* out of the *Government*.

6 After the overthrow of *Pompey*, and death of *Caſar*, the *Common-wealth* might have recovered *Liberty*, if either *Caſar* had left no heir, and *Pompey* no children; or rather, if *Antonius*, a man of an unquiet and turbulent ſpirit, had not begun new troubles. For he, knowing the affection of the *Common people* unto young *Octavius*, *Caſars* heir; and hearing the continuall report of his approach to *Rome* for his Inheritance; did by *Decree* of the *Senate* reſtore *Sextus* the ſonne of *Pompey* to his blood and honours; Hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers hatreds, would like Pellets in a Boys Pot-gun, drive out each other; and ſo he might remain *Lord* of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be ſo fetcht over; and had moreover more deſire to revenge his Fathers death on *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, than turn himſelf upon an enemy, that neither had done, nor could doe him any hurt. At his firſt entrance into *Rome*, he declared himſelf *Caſars* heir; though ſome regarding more his welfare than honour, diſwaded him from it. His retinue at his entrance was but ſmall, his behaviour gentle and courteous: So that all had cauſe to love him, none to fear him. His firſt buſineſs was to *Antonius*, then poſſeſſed of all *Caſars* eſtate. His words as modeſt, as his Petition juſt. *Antonies* anſwer ſomewhat churliſh, forbidding him to meddle in matters of *State*, adding that he was too young to take upon him the *Name* of *Caſar*; and ſo diſmiſſed him unſatisfied, and with diſcontentments. *AUGUSTUS* (for by that name we mean to call him, though he was not yet ſo cal'ed) perceiving that *Antonies* anſwer, though in ſhew but a *delay*, was in effect a *denyall*; inſinuated into the acquaiutance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capitall Enemy of *Antony*; by whoſe means the *Lords* of the *Senate* began to caſt great affection towards him. Next in a ſolemn Oration to the *People*, he let them know, how he intended to have diſtributed his Fathers wealth among them; and how *Antonius* did unjuſtly detain it from them both. Certainly there is not any thing prevaileth ſooner with the ignoble many than hope of gain. No ſooner had he finiſhed his ſpeech, and given away that to them which he thought impoſſible to get for himſelf; but all was in a tumult. None was ſo ſparing of his words, but he had ſome curſe in ſtore for *Antonius*: Every one vowing the deſtruction of that man, whom they ſuppoſed to deprive them of *AUGUSTUS* Donative.

7 In this hurly burly *Antony* quits the Town, and is by the generall voyce of both houſes, declared an Enemy to the State. An Army is given to *Hircius* and *Panſa* then *Conſuls*. *AUGUSTUS*, aged but 18 years, being proclamed *Imperator*, and made head of the League againſt the common Foe. *AUGUSTUS*, as he loved not to be abſent from a neceſſary war; ſo he alwaies uſed to reſerve himſelf from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole enterpriſe unto the *Conſuls*: Well knowing, that though the Officers and Souldiers took moſt pains to get the Victory; yet would the honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas, if any thing fell out to the Army, not well; his being a *Non-agent* in the buſineſs, would bring his honour off without ſtain. The *Conſuls* therefore proceeded in the War againſt *Antony*: who ſeeing little poſſibility of prevailing, reſolved to ſell the loſs of his own liberty, and his Souldiers lives, at a dear rate. And indeed the fortune of the day was ſo equally ſhared, that as the *Conſuls* might boaſt of the vanquiſhment of *Antony*, ſo *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Conſuls*.

AUGUSTUS had now as much as he could deſire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his ſervice. He therefore applies himſelf ſo to them, that giving that among them which he had in preſent; and promiſing them greater favours, according as his fortune and their valour, ſhould advance him, he bound them unto him in an eternall bond of allegiance; and made them the firſt ſtep by which he aſcended the *Royaltie*. The *Lords* of the *Senate* hearing of the young mans fortune, thought it beſt to ſtrangle theſe hopes even in their Cradles; and to that end, Decree the honour of overcomming *Antony*, not to belong to *AUGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whoſe defence (being beſieged by *Antony* in *Mutina*) their Army had been levyed. Nor did they think this froſt of unexpected unkindneſs, ſufficient to nip the bloſſome of his hopes; but they denyed him the *Conſulſhip*. Theſe harſh proceedings compelled *AUGUSTUS* (his honour now lying at ſtake) to enter *Rome* as *Conquerour*; and force the *Fathers* to grant him his deſires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aymed at; he generally ſhewed himſelf gratefull to all, and particularly to ſome of the Souldiers; paying them what was behind by promiſe; and openly proteſting that without their aid he durſt not have

adventured

adventured into the *Capitoll*. So by keeping his day with the *Military men*, and shewing his noble and generous nature in a thankfull commemoration of their service, he added stronger bonds to such as were already his own; and won many daily to his side, which before were either *neutrall* or *adverse*.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was untidie, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puissant Army, he posted thither; and so far prevailed with the Souldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp, where the *Generall* entertained him with all expressions of love and welcome. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, soon perswaded him to lead his forces into *Italie*, promising him no less than the Lordship of the world, if he durst but shew his face to the *Romans*. *AUGUSTUS* having continuall news of this combination, and fearing much the prowesse of *Antony*, now strengthened, conceived no counsell fitting and convenient to his ends, as to joyn friendship, and to enter into confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either, but because being destitute of meanes to resist them, and also to revenge the death of his Father *Julius*, which he much laboured, he might with their forces oppresse *Cassius* and *M. Brutus*, and after as occasion fell out, deal with them being severed. This League was solemnly confirmed by a bloody *Proscription* immediately following. Wherein to be revenged on their *enemies*, they betrayed their *friends*. A lamentable and ruefull time, good and bad, rich and poor, being alike subject to the slaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Cæsars* Government thought to be the Golden Age, and every one began to curse *Brutus* and *Cassius* as the Autors of these present miseries, whom they but lately honoured as the Restorers of the Common liberty. Nay the very *Kings* were deemed tolerable, and such as lived in their days, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the *Tyrant*, but the *Tyrants*. Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us men, that we know not our own happines in the *fruition*, but the *want*. Two of these *Triumviri* glutted themselves with blood, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the *people*. *Augustus* on the contrary, shewed himself much grieved at this barbarous cruelty; so that his consent seemed rather forced than voluntary. But this *Proscription*, though in it self cruell and tyrannicall, produced some good and profitable effects in the *Republick*. For when by this *Proscription*, and the insuing Civill war, the stoutest of the *Nobles* and *Commons* were made away, few being left which durst endeavour to recover the old *Liberty*; *Augustus* did the more easily establish his *Monarchie*, and restore peace to the City. Moreover the prosecution of this cruelty so incensed the people against *Antony* and *Lepidus*; that *Augustus*, whom most held excusable, found them always his fast friends; if not for love to him, yet in spight to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *AUGUSTUS* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joynt-forces march against *Brutus* and *Cassius*, both overthrown by *Antony*; whom *AUGUSTUS* did therefore put upon that service, as well to diminish *Antonies* forces, as to keep his own entire. As for himself, either he in policy suffered himself to be driven out of the field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or else indeed durst not abide the battell. Such end had *Brutus* and *Cassius*, two men whom Fortune seemed to be in love with on the suddain, and did as suddenly forsake them, *Brutus* the more accomplished man; *Cassius* the more expert souldier. I pass over *AUGUSTUS* wars in *Italie*, *Antonies* in *Asia*; the discontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia* sister to the one, and wife to the other *Emperor*. As also how joyning forces together to oppresse *Sextus*, then Lording it over the Sea, and proud with the conquest of *Sicilie*; they received him into the *Confederacy*, and joyned the Iland of *Sardinie* to his other Conquests. To recompence which kindnes, *Sextus* invited the two *Generals* aboord his *Admiral Galley*: and after a bountifull entertainment, return'd them safe to their Camps. I scarce have ever heard of so great an over-sight, among so many able Politicians. And much I marvell with my self, upon what confidence *AUGUSTUS* and *Antony* durst so far trust their persons to a reconciled Enemy: or on what reason *Sextus* having both of them in his power, would let slip so slightly that advantage, greater than which was never offered to a discontented and ambitious person. This I am sure of, that he afterward repented it, and could have wished that he had hearkened to the voice of *Menas* his old servant, who had perswaded him to make his best of that oportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Aragon*, of old enemies made new friends, had the like enterviews at *Savona*: which that notable Historiographer and States-man *Guicciardine*, describeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet in the like case, have many, and as I think, worthily condemned *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy*, the Arch-politicians of those days; in that *Lewis* at *Peronne* put himself into the hands of *Charles* his Enemy, who also after a short restraint, dismissed him.

A.V.C. 711.

10. These solemn expressions of amity between the three *Generalls*, being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*; *AUGUSTUS* then began to contrive his establishment in the *State*, though with the ruin of his *Colleagues*. He beginneth first with *Sextus*, having by gifts and promises drawn *Menas* unto his side; who by reason of his inwardness with his Master, knew most of his designs. By the directions of this *Menas*, and the assistance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sextus*; who flying death in *Europe*, by the hand of *AUGUSTUS*, found it in *Asia*, by the command of *Antony*. After this victory, *AUGUSTUS*, either having or pretending a quarrell against *Lepidus*, entreth into his Camp, seizeth his person, and depriving him

of

of all honors, confineth him to *Rome*. A man that half against his will, stumbling upon the Government, had beyond any desert of his, enjoyed ten yeers continuance of Empire and prosperity. An action of a very high nature, and such as *AUGUSTUS* durst not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italy*. He therefore advisedly removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the same. It hath been ever a chief *Maxim* in *Court-policy*, to remove that man out of the way, under pretence of some honourable charge, whom we intend either to cast from his present honors; or else to make less potent with *Prince* and *People*. For which cause also *AUGUSTUS* perswaded *Antonies* absence from the City, to bring him at the last into discredit and contempt. For well he knew that his dotage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many inconveniencies: neither could his neglecting the *State*, to riot with his *Leman*, be other than distastfull to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his Sister *Octavia* to leave her husband *Antonies* house; yet privately he perswaded her to live there still, and bring up his children; that so the *Romans* seeing her noble demeanor and love to her husband, might the more heartily detest him, who so ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To adde more fuell to this flame of hatred, he readeth *Antonies* will unto the people; in which many of the *Roman* Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra*'s children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewise preferred many Bills against *AUGUSTUS*, as that he had deposed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italy* amongst his own Souldiers only; that he had not restored the ships borrowed to make war against *Sextus*.

11. These discontents seconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both resolute to refer all to the decision of a Battell. *Antony* had a Fleet consisting of 500. ships, high-built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph, than a fight. His Land Forces consisted of 100000. Foot, and 12000. Horse; *AUGUSTUS* had the like number of Horsemen, 80000. Foot, and 250. good *Men of War*, snug and close, built more for use than ostentation. The *Rendezvouz* is *Actium*, a place seeming to be marked out for notable designs: here being fought also in our Fathers days that famous battell, wherein the *Venetians* gave the world to understand, that the *Turks* Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the Offensive side, therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onset by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whose words were *Oracles*, perswaded him to the Sea-fight; not that she thought it more safe, but that if *Antony* lost the day, she might with more facility escape. To this resolution, when most of the Captains had for fear agreed; one of the old Souldiers thus bluntly gain-said it. "What a miserable security art thou possessed with, most noble Emperor? Where is that "antient fore-sight wherewith thou hast formerly prevented all disasters, and turned the Ene-"mies devises on their own heads? Consider with thy self, most noble *General*, what uncertain "friends the *Wind* and *Sea* are? To how fickle an Element thou dost trust thy fortunes? Let "the *Egyptians*, and *Phœnicians*, old *Mermaids* born and nurst up in the Sea, follow this kind of "warfare: But let us thy true *Roman* spirits, try our valour on the firm Land, and there fight "for thy *Empire* and our own *lives*. Perhaps thou dost mistrust our faith, look here *Antony* (with "that he opened his bosome) and thou shalt see many an honourable scar got in thy service. "We are now too old to learn new Treasons: Alter therefore thy resolution, and to please a "woman cast not away so many of thy faithfull Followers. Certainly the unresistable powers of heaven when they decree a mans destruction overthrow those counsells by which he should escape it. *Antony* turneth a deaf ear to this Souldiers wholesome advice; and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three kisses (as if from the fountain of her lips he had derived all his courage) without any more ceremony prepareth himself unto the battell.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other side, seeing a necessity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Vessels were more usefull and better manned, though fewer than his Enemies. that his men to him were faithfull, and by reason of their many Victories, in good heart; From *Antony* there daily revolted some Kings and Captains of note, to the great encouragement of the one side, and disheartning of the other. The whole charge of the war he committed to *M. Vipsanius Agrippa*, who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Galleys whatsoever might be impediments to the valiant, or shelter to the Cowardly; all that was cumbersome to his own men, or advantagious to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the battells ready to joyn, *Augustus Cæsar* standing where he might see and be seen of all, is said to make this or the like Oration. "Fellows and Companions in Arms, I suppose it needless "to hearten you, which never were acquainted with fear; or bid you overcome, which never "yet knew what it was not to vanquish. Conquest hath always sate upon the edges of your "swords, and victory been written in your fore-heads. Be not now backward to add this one "to your other Triumphs. When after the death of my father *Julius*, of famous memory, I "first dealt in matters of War, I rather found, than made you good souldiers. And during "this twelve years service under me, neither have you been wanting in the duty of faithfull "followers; nor (I hope) of a vigilant and gratefull Leader. Sure I am, I expressed my self "as far as I could, and more I would, had I been able. Let not the number, nor the greatness "of the adverse Gallies any ways affright you. The hugeness of their Bulks maketh them unapt "for imployment; and the multitude one clogging and hindring the others, may as much "further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us in multitudes of *Men*, we them in number of "*Souldiers*. The meaning of the word *Piles* is unknown among them. And for their *Mari-*

"*ners*,

"ners, the beſt of them are but *Carters*, *Reapers*, and *Harveſtmen*, raked out of the field; the reſt "the excrement of common priſons, wherewith their Veſſels are loaded, not manned. The *Gene-* "*rall* is indeed a fit *Captain* for ſuch a ſelected company. It is the ſame *Antony* whom you once "drave out of the Field before *Mutina*. I perſwade my ſelf, that neither he dares think of re- "covering, or you of loſing, your former glories. It is the ſame *Antony* who being ſhamefully "chaſed out of *Parthia*, only in that he was not *vanquiſhed*, proclamed himſelf *Victor*. It is the "ſame *Antony* who intendeth to make *Rome* ſubject to the *Egyptians*, and to diſtribute the *Pro-* "*vinces*, purchaſed with the blood and vertue of our Anceſtors, amongſt *Iras* and her fellow "Chamber-maids. Nay indeed, it is not *Antony* at all, but the ſhadow only of that ſubſtance "which now is hid in *Cleopatra's* Cabbin. Courage then brave men of Arms; be, as you have "ſtill been, *Conquerors*. To ſpeak more, were to detain you from Victory. Only this, call to "mind your antient valour. Remember that I am *Caſar*, you *Romans*.

13 This ſpeech animated the new Souldiers, and confirmed the old: So that with a generall acclamation they give the aſſault. Death, wounds, and blows diſhed in divers faſhions, and ſerved in by ſeverall men, were the beſt delicates prepared for theſe uuwelcome viſitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battell, and doubting the ſucceſs, through the thickeſt of *Antonies* Fleet, made away with the 60 Gallies appointed for her Guard. This diſorder made the breach at which the Victory entred. *Antony* ſeeing her flight, left his Squadron alſo; and being taken into her Galley, hoyſed ſail for *Egypt*: Herein playing the part of a cowardly Souldier; whilſt each of his Souldiers executed the office of a couragious *Generall*: For they ſo obſtinately perſiſted in the Fight, that *AUGUSTUS* was fain to offer them mercy ſooner than they would demand it; and divers times before they would accept it. At laſt they all ſware Allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AUGUSTUS* (no loſer of advantages) ſpeedeth into *Egypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a *Province*; making the people pay for fine twenty Millions of Gold. By receiving this mony he ſo weakned them, that they had no ability to raiſe an after-war; and by diſtributing part of it among his Souldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he ſeeing his fortunes deſperate, redeemed the honour loſt in his life, by a noble and heroick death. And *Cleopatra* ended her life alſo not long after; a Woman more wel-favoured than fair; wel-ſpoken, rather than either. *Antonies* Courtiers had ſeen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; men being chained to her by the ears, rather than the eys. A.V.C. 713.

14 I willingly omit *AUGUSTUS* entry into *Rome*; as alſo the ſtate and magnificence of his *Triumph*. His Victory he uſed ſo juſtly, that none felt the fury of the War but ſuch as were ſlain in the *Battell*. To aſſure himſelf of *Antonies* adherents, was his firſt care: to which end he burnt in the *Common Forum*, the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his friends in *Rome* had been incloſed; well knowing, that as long as any thought themſelves ſuſpected adverſaries, they would never ſhew themſelves true friends. To the *Senators* and *Magiſtrates* he made ſumptuous Feaſts; to the *Common people* he exhibited magnificent and pleaſing Stage-plays; and with all variety of pleaſure, baniſhed from both, as well ſorrow for the old *Proſcription*, as fear of a new. But this was only as a preparation to his many deſigns. There were two men moſt dear unto him, and privy to his Counſels, *Mecenas* and *Agrippa*: which in the object of their love differed only in this, *Mecenas* was a lover of *AUGUSTUS*; *Agrippa* of the *Emperour*. *Mecenas* was of the rank of *Knights*, a man of good and bad parts equally compounded. When his buſineſs required care, vigilant and circumſpect; at leiſure time, exceſſively vitious. *Agrippa* was the firſt of his houſe: a man alike fit for Camp and Counſell; one neither careleſs of a good name, nor covetous of a great. For although he on y was the man which vanquiſhed *Sextus* and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the humours of Princes, he gave *Auguſtus* the honour of all his Conqueſts; making the vertue, not the reward, the end of his actions. So by doing nobly, and ſpeaking modeſtly of it, he was without envy, but not without glory. With theſe two *AUGUSTUS* withdrew into a private Cloſet, and then brake unto them in this ſort. He made firſt unto them a long diſcourſe of the Civill Wars, Then added, "That having by his own fortune, and the valour of his Souldiers, put "an end to the troubles; he was unreſolved what to do; Whether to reſign the *Empire* to the "*People*, or retain it ſtill in his own hands. That in a buſineſs of ſuch importance, he durſt "not rely altogether on his own wiſdom; That he had made them his Judges, as men that "could ſpeak ſoundly, and durſt ſpeak freely: That he knew them to have more care of his ho- "nour, than profit; but of the *Common-wealth*, more than both; That his Counſels, which courſe "ſoever he took, would not be by them eliminated: He therefore intreated them to conſider "what was to be done, and to give up their verdicts.

15 *Agrippa* after a ſhort ſilence thus began. "I know, thou canſt not but marvell, O *Caſar*, "that I, who under thine *Empire*, am ſure to be beyond precedent exalted; ſhould perſwade "thee to live private. But I eſteem more thy honour, than my profit; the publick good, than my "particular preferment. And yet perhaps my Counſell ſhall be as profitable, if not as plauſi- "ble as the contrary. I know thee to be no way delighted with lyes and flattery; and will "therefore deal with thee freely and plainly. Thou haſt indeed put a period to the *Civill* "*Wars*; but to what end, unleſs thou doſt reſtore unto the *Common-wealth* the *Liberty* for which "the Wars were raiſed? What benefit can the people reap from thy *Victory*, if thou doſt uſe it "only as an inſtrument for their greater bondage? Doſt thou think that the *Romans* having

"so many hundred years maintained their liberty; will now be willing to forego it? No, *Cæ-*
"*sar*, no: Flatter not thy self with these hopes. *Marius* the younger, and *Sertorius*, were
"quickly cut off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius* thy Father of happy memory,
"did not long live, after his actions seemed to bring the *Common liberty* in hazard. And shall
"we think that there is no true *Roman* spirit surviving; No *Brutus* living to attempt the like
"against thee? Believe me *Cæsar*, believe me, it is far better not to meddle with the *Empire* at
"all, than to be forced to abandon it. But say Divine Providence will so protect thee, that
"thou mayst out-live such practices; and shalt thou also not out-live thy glories? This pre-
"sent age perchance will not censure thine actions, because it dares not: But Posteritie, free
"from all respects of love or hatred, cannot but call them into question, and braud thy enter-
"prise with *Ambition*, and perhaps *Tyranny*. If thy designs prosper, they will judge thee to have
"risen unjustly; if otherwise, to have fallen deservedly. How much better then were it, now
"when thine honour is without blemish, and thy reputation unstained, to resign thy authority?
"Indeed when *Sextus* lorded it over the Sea, and *Antony* over *Ægypt*, it might have been
"thought want of spirit, to have deposed thy self from the Government: But now to doe it,
"when thou art without *Rivall* in the *Empire*; now, when thou art sole *Commander* of the
"Worlds Forces; now when the *People* and *Senate* ly prostrate at the feet of thy mercy; were
"to strike dumb detraction, and to make the World admire thy Temper. Thou art at this
"present the joy and comfort of the World; there is wanting to thee neither Wealth nor Fame.
"Here then fix thy foot: For go but one step beyond this *Non ultra*, and thou wilt run
"into a boundless Ocean of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy life and reputation.

16 "Not so, excellent *Agrippa*, replyed *Mecenas*. I never heard good *Pilot* find fault with
"*Sea-room*; or of more vessels cast away in the *Ocean*, than in the *Streights*, and narrow pas-
"sages. Our *Republick* is a Ship fraught with divers Nations. She hath been long tossed on
"the waves of *Civill dissentions*, long driven up and down with the Wind of ambition; and there
"is now no place so fit for her safety, as the unlimited *Ocean* of one mans power. This *Empire* at
"first rising seemed not to require a *Monarch*; but it is now grown too unwieldy to be without
"one. Take then upon thee, O *Cæsar*, this Empire; or to say better, do not forsake it. I
"should never thus advise thee, did I conceive any possible inconveniences. The *Senate* doth allow
"thee a competent guard of valiant and faithfull Souldiers; whom then shouldest thou fear?
"Nay, ill may I prosper if I see any cause of fear, were thy Guard cashiered. Enemies thou
"hast none: For such as were, are either already slain by thy valour, or made thy fast friends
"by thy bounty and clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will a little touch at thy Father
"*Julius*. He too good a Souldier to be a *Statist*, was too heady and violent in establishing his
"Government. Nor could he cunningly temporize, and suffer the *people* insensibly, and by de-
"grees, to drop into bondage; but oppress them all at once. Again, he committed a great *So-*
"*lœcism* in *State*, when discharging his *Guard*, he sought to retain that *Empire* by fair means,
"which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, O *Cæsar*, to be of a more wary and cunning
"behaviour. Learn also to work out thine own safety, by *Pompeys* misfortunes. He after the
"finishing of the *Pontick War*, at *Brundusium*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited to be
"accounted an honest and moderate man. Certainly, he shewed himself in the course of this
"action, rather vertuous than fortunate or politick: For presently he began to be contemned,
"and by this improvident weakning of himself, made an open passage to his own ruin. I com-
"mend his modesty more than his brain; neither did he himself, on better considerations, ap-
"prove his own doings; and therefore he resolved, had he been Victor in *Pharsalia*, never to
"have committed the like Oversight. So it is, and so it will fall out with thee, O *Cæsar*, if in
"this action thou propose him to be thy pattern. It is not safe, *Agrippa* saith, to take the
"*Empire*: less safe it is to refuse it. A settled and innative vice it is in man, never to
"endure that any man above our own rank should over-top us. *Romes* second founder *Camillus*,
"*Scipio*, that scourge of *Carthage*, were disgraced; and *M. Coriolanus* banished by our Ancestors;
"only because their worth had lifted them above the ordinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou
"hope to fare better than thy Predecessors. Heretofore, perchance, thou mightest have sought
"the *Empire*, to satisfie thy *ambition*. The *Empire* must now be thy refuge and *Asylum*. Credit
"me, the *Lords* of the *Senate*, after so many years *Obedience*, know not how to *Govern*; neither
"canst thou having so long been a *Governour*, learn *Obedience*. True it is, that in matters of
"domestical businesse, a man may stop and desist where he will: But in the getting of an *Empire*,
"there is no mean between the death of an *Enemie*, and the life of a *Prince*. Thou hast already
"gone too far to retire. Now thou must resolve to be *Cæsar* or nothing. To say more were su-
"perfluous. Thine own discretion will suggest unto thee better Arguments. Onely this, I know
"that thou hast in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an *Emperour*.

17 *AUGUSTUS* seemed to incline to this latter opinion; whether moved with *Mecenas*
Oration, especially his instance in *Pompey*; or that he was before resolved to follow that course,
is uncertain. Howsoever, seeming with great attention to observe their speeches, and gather-
ing their severall reasons and motives together, he made this reply. "A most hard thing it is,
"for a divided mind, to make a well-joyn'd Answer. Divided I am, and troubled between
"your two opinions; loath to follow either, fithence in so doing I must offend one. Yet
"fithence there is a necessity of Resolution, I intend, though I like well of thy advice, *Agrippa*, to
"follow thine *Mecenas*. In doing which, I am but an instrument of the *Destinies*; to put their

wills

"will in execution. Often have I heard my Father *Octavius* report, how *Nigidius*, famous for "his skill in *Judiciary Astrologie*, told him once in open *Senate*, That he had gotten an *Empe-*"*ror* for the *Romans*. As also, how *M. Cicero*, so renowned for Wit and Eloquence, dreamed "that he saw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the *Capitoll*, with a Whip in mine hand. Certain-"ly, if the powers of Heaven promise me so great an *Empire*; I will not be wanting to my "self. but will adde by my *industrie* to their *influence*. To further my designs, I do desire you, "nay I conjure you both, that as you have been ever ready in your Counsels, so you would "not now be backward in any necessary assistance. This said, they presently enter into a new conference, how to manage a business of this weight; what *Senators* to acquaint with their intent; how to dispose of the *Army*, not yet cashiered; with what Plummet were best to sound the minds of the common people, and to oblige all sorts unto him. This Consultation ended, *AUGUSTUS* continued his affability to the *People*, and respect to the *Nobles*. An opportunity he had to express himself to both. There was at that time a Famine, which shrewdly raged among the *Commons*. To the poorer sort, he distributed Corn, *gratis*; to others, at a mean price. Riches and honours he communicated to both sorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the antient *freedome*. Such parts of the *City* as were destroyed by casualty of fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civill Wars*; he re-edified. Houses of *Common-assemblies* he repaired; Temples, consecrated to the Gods, he spared no cost to adorn and beautifie. And finally, so freely diffused his bounty, that there was no part or member of the City, which had not some tast of it. Next, he dismissed his Souldiers, assigning them Lands and habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That so the *People* might conceive his *Resignation* to be reall; and yet, if need were, his forces might be quickly reassembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* wanting for their parts, to promote the cause; but carefully acquainted some of the *Senate* with it, who stood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had stood indifferent.

18 The foundation thus layd, and the *Senate* sate, *AUGUSTUS* rose from his seat, and spake to this, or the like effect. "When I consider with my self the infinite extent of the *Ro-*"*man* Empire; I protest I stand at a maze: Marvailing how such, as heretofore have raised com-"bustions in State, durst undertake the sole administration of it. What Nation in the World, "hath not either begged their Peace at our Gates; or felt the fury of our Wars at their own? "What Countries have we not harried with Fire and Sword, making the rising and setting of "the Sun the bounds of our Dominions? It must questionless proceed from an over-weaning "conceit in them, of their own abilities; who thought themselves so fit to undergo that bur-"den, which none but the immortall Gods can carry. Of my self I will not say much; "Onely, I hope I may say with modesty, that I am not inferiour to *Cinna*, nor it may be to *Syl-*"*la*; Yet have I found in my self, by late experience, how unable I was to manage the affairs "of State, even then when I had two *Coadjutators*. There is no *Atlas* of strength sufficient to "bear up this *Heaven*; No *Star* of influence sufficient to animate this *Sphear*; No one form of "vertue sufficient to actuate this matter. Neither indeed is it fit, that the Republique which "ought to be immortall, should depend only on the life and wel-fare of one man. There never "was, since the beginning of time, a City repleniished with greater store of worthy and able "men, either to consult or exercise. Never was there seen so grave and discreet a *Consistory*; "Never so many of both sorts so fit to govern. I have by your Directions, and the Valour of "your Souldiers, put an end to all homebred quarrels. I have been your instrument to reduce "Peace internall and externall, to your City, and desire now no other Guerdon or recompence "for any former services, than a quiet and a private life; free from all such dangers and incon-"veniences, as are inseparably annexed to the Soveraignty. Now therefore, and may my acti-"on be auspitious and fortunate to my Country, doe I resign my authority; committing my "self, and the *Common-wealth*, into the hands of the *Senate* and *People* of *Rome*.

19 This Oration ended, there followed a soft and silent buzzing in the house. Some supposed this speech not to have so much truth, as art and cunning, yet smothered their conceits for fear of after-claps. Others were Creatures of his own making; and they hoping to *rise* in the *fall* of their Country, would not hear of a Resignation. Some few of the wiser sort, thought it not expedient to put the Reigns again into the hands of the *Multitude*. The rest out of a sluggish and phlegmatique Constitution, chose rather the present estate with security; than to strive to recover the old, with danger. All therefore with a joynt-consent proclame him sole *Emperor*; and solemnly entreat him to save the *Common-wealth*, otherwise running to inevitable ruin. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly persisted to desire him. At last, wearied with the clamours of all in generall; and importunity of some in particular; he by little and little yeelded to their requests, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten years, with this Proviso, that if before that time expired, he could fully settle and order the present State, he would give up his charge. This he gave out, not with *A.V.C.725* a purpose of performance; (For at the end of every *Decennium* he renewed his Lease of the Government:) But that the people seeing so nigh a possibility of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practise against him. Whereas, had he for term of life received the supreme Authority, he had no doubt hastened his own overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithite *Perpetuall*, was the destruction of *CÆSAR*: And yet a great respect was to be had also in the choyce of the Title;

The name of *King* he refuſed, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much deſired it, leſt they ſhould ſuppoſe that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the people called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments, deſiring them to diſcharge him of a name ſo hated; and being once called Lord, (*Dominus*) he forbad alſo that Title by publike Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted, well knowing, that the like glorious attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which leaſt loved him, onely to this end, that growing more and more into hatred, he might the ſooner be diſpatched. Nor was he ignorant that the *Common people* led more by appearances, than truth, diſcerned names more plainly than executions; and that the onely courſe to make greatneſs ſtand firmly, was to receive extraordinary power under a Title not offenſive. The name alſo of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been ſomething in him more than mortall) he refuſed not, as a Title expreſſing more dignity and reverence than authority. And having pleaſed himſelf in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the eſtabliſhment of his power, which he thus purſued.

20. When firſt at the hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts* of *Prætorian ſouldiers* for the guard of his perſon; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double wages of a *Legionary* ſouldier, to make them the more vigilant and heedfull in their charge. Over theſe he appointed two Prefects or Governors, (*Captains of the Guard* we may beſt term them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed danger; to more, confuſion. *Agrippina* to ſettle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom ſhe had at her devotion, the ſole Captain, and *Nimphidius*, fallen from his hopes of ſetting *Galba* beſides the quiſhon, deſired the command of the *Guard* as the next ſtep to the Soveraignty. In choice of theſe Captains, he obſerved two Rules. Firſt, he ever choſe them, *Ex ordine Equeſtri*, not *Senatorio*; leſt that ſo high a dignity, joyned to ſo high a birth, might ſtartle their reſolutions to ſome deſigns againſt his quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two ſuch, which were of contrary humors, and ſomewhat at odds, that ſo the ill intents of the one (if they ſhould harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both in a noble emulation ſhould contend to be moſt forward in his ſervice. The next courſe which he took for his own ſecurity, was a law he made to curb the wills and attempts of the *great ones*. For whereas it had been formerly unlawfull to queſtion a *Bondman* in matters concerning the life and death of his *Lord*; *AUGUSTUS* paſſed an Act, that all ſuch *Bondmen* ſhould be firſt ſold to him, or the *Common-wealth*. By means whereof he kept the *Lords*, before preſuming on the ſecreſie of their *ſlaves*, from all cloſe and private Conſpiracies againſt him. Having thus ſtrengthened his perſon, he aſſumed to himſelf the *Imperiall*, *Cenſoriall*, and *Tribunitian* authority, together with the *Sacerdotall* dignity. As *Emperor* and *Generall* of the Men of War, he could preſs Souldiers, raiſe Taxes, proclame Wars, make Peace, yea, and put to death the very beſt and ſtouteſt of the *Senators*; as *Cenſor*, it was in his power, to reform corrupt manners, enquire after mens carriage, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he liſted, to place & diſplace the people from an honorable Tribe, to a leſs honorable. Yet would he not be called *Cenſor*, as a name too inferior; but accepted the *Prerogatives* of it, after the ſurrendry of *Mamitius*, and his aſſociate, two men ſo unfit for that *Magiſtracy*, that they could object no crime to old or young, of which themſelves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian authority* enabled him to hinder any thing attempted againſt his liking: It preſerved his perſon from all contumely and injury; giving him power to puniſh, as an exerable perſon, (yea, and without any formality of the Law,) whoſoever had offended him either in word or deed. As for the *Pontificall Dignity*, it made him a little more reverenced, not more potent. Onely it added to his title the ſtile of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Biſhop*, and made him of authority amongſt the Prieſts, and in ſacred matters, things that concerned *Religion*. The light of Reaſon taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a *Prince*, to have command on all his people; He had been els but half a *Monarch*, ſuch as ſome Princes are with us, who quit their *Clergie* to be governed by a *Forrain Head*.

21. Theſe ſeverall Prerogatives annexed together, ſeemed not yet ſufficient: and therefore he ſo cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a generall Exemption from the *Coactive power* of the Law. Which once obtained, he ſeriouſly bends his thoughts to ſettle the Common-wealth; and ſo to ſettle it, that by uniting all parties, and giving ſatisfaction to all *Intereſſes*, it might not be obnoxious to ſuch frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein, when he had conſulted the antient *Platforms*, he found no ſmall difficulty. The Form deſcribed by *Plato*, ſhewed rather how a Citie ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Ariſtotle*, though bred in the *Free States* of *Greece*, was a friend to *Monarchie*; but his diſcourſes dark, and ſpeculative, and not eaſily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority, the Nobles too little, the King none. The old *Carthaginian Legiſlator* attributed too much to Riches, too little to Vertue. The *Perſian* Law-makers indulged the King too much, to the Subject nothing: And on the other ſide, *Licurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, aſcribed too little to the King, and too much to the Senate. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of ſome particular Laws, than the Framer of a Common-wealth. *Phaleas* and *Hippodamus* as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old *Patterns* did come home to his purpoſe; and withall conſidering with himſelf, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by conſequence ſubject unto change,

he

he resolved to frame his *Common-wealth* out of the perfections of the three good *Forms*, their imperfection being rejected, reserving to himself the Supreme Majesty, to the Senate eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a just and fit proportion. And to say truth, he did so mix the *Soveraignty* of one with the *Liberty* of all, that both the Lords and People, without fear of bondage or sedition, injoyed their accustomed *Freedoms*. The Consulls and Nobles of the City assembled as formerly they used; matters of State they handled by themselves; Ambassadors of Forrain Nations they heard, and dispatched. The *Commons* assembled in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws and elect Magistrates, as in the *free Common-wealth*. Yet so that nothing was done without the consent and privity of the *Prince*, who for the most part, nominated the successive Magistrate, leaving the confirmation of him to that *people*. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the silent approbation of both Estates, as seeming to consist more in the alteration of the *Magistrate*, than of the *Laws*.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the first care he took, was to confirm *Religion* in the same state in which he found it. I mean *Religion* as the *Romans* used the word, for those particular though idolatrous Forms of *Worship*, which to their severall Gods had been used among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or chief Bishop of the *City*; yet very wisely he forbare it. It is not safe for Princes that are setled in a long descent of *Government*, to be too active in such changes: But it is dangerous to attempt it in a *Green State*, and in an *Empire* not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more sensible of the smallest alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raise more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* specially were exceeding tender in this point. The antient *Aediles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no externall, either *Gods* or *Ceremonies*, to be introduced into the City. And by *Æmilius* it was enacted for a Law, *That none should offer sacrifice in any publike place, after a new and Forrain fashion.* Excellent therefore was the counsell which *Mecenas* gave him, when he first undertook the *Empire*; *viz.* "That he "should follow constantly the *Religion* which he found established, and compell others also to "do the like: For Forrain and strange Rites (saith he) will offend the people, work many in- "convenient alterations in the Civil State; yea and most likely wil occasion many both seditions "and conspiracies. Words which he spake not to the air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehensive of the best advice: Nor did *AUGUSTUS* ever shew himself more carefull in any one *Art* of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecenas* noted, we find true in these later Ages; in times more skilfull of obedience, than the most quiet hour of *AUGUSTUS* Government. No one thing more hath caused so frequent and so generall *Rebellions* in the States of *Christendom*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious resolution in a late mighty Monarch: *Better some few corruptions should be suffered in a Church, than still a change.*

23. Religion thus established, in the next place the welfare of the whole *Empire* consisted chiefly in reforming of the *City*; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the *Citie* the corruption was most apparent in the *Senate* it self. With them therefore he beginneth, well knowing that crimes in men of eminent place end not in themselves; but by degrees become diffused among their Clients and Followers. Now in the *Senate* were many and desertless men, who had been taken into it during the Civill Wars; as they could court the People, and humour such as were most potent. Of these he expelled none by his own power; but making a speech to them in the *Senate*, of the antient order and present confusion of the house, he first exhorted them to look back on their former lives, and to judge of their own abilities and merits, for so honourable a room. Then he desired some of them to pick out such among them, as were in disposition *factious*, and in life *faulty*, but loath to conceive so ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that the *great Thief leadeth the less to the Gallows*; and as *Commines* observeth, that after the Battell of *Monliherry* Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on such as ran ten miles beyond them: So remained many in the *Senate* neither less vicious, nor less violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than some others whom they had removed. *AUGUSTUS* therefore joyning to him *Agrippa*, proceedeth to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the setling of his affairs, that none should have a voyce in that famous Councell, but such as were of able judgments, honest repute, and well-affected to his Service and the Common-wealth. An enterprise which he esteemed so dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no *Senator* till he were searched; himself wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the most couragious and best beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kind inexcusable, he discharged from their attendance, electing such in their places, which were either ennobled for their wisdom, of noted moderation, or otherwise strong in their dependants. Yet so that greatness of *Revenue* was esteemed neither a fit *Patronage* for any if they were offensive; nor a just cause to challenge interest in the *house*. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the minde, than those of fortune, he relieved with honourable Pensions; and finally he bestirred himself so resolutely, that all confessed that they had need of such a wise *Physician*, to cure that dull *Consumption*, whereinto the *Common-wealth* was fallen.

24 In other things he seldom did proceed against them as of himself: But when that any of them had conspired his Ruin, he referred them to the judgment of their fellows. And this he did partly to reserve unto the Court the antient Prerogative; partly, not to be Judge and party in his own cause: but principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretchless contempt of his adversaries, used when he was least suspected, under-hand, and by publike Officers to work their destruction. Many also of them whom the *Senate* had condemned, he would freely pardon. Conceiving truly, that the questioning of men of high calling, would produce as much terrour; though it argued not so much rigor as the punishment. Yet if extremity of Law was used towards some few, it was to settle quietness in the whole; and as it were a particular bloud-letting for the generall health. Those who had followed the factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not so only, but by manifesting his words by his deeds, and adding trust and honours to his pardons: he made his Chair of State more setled, and immoveable. So *Cæsar* by erecting the faln and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own statues stand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he brideled the *Nobles*, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travell out of *Italie*. For well he knew that in an Empire unsetled, and Provinces not quieted, the presence and authority of men of that rank, might raise greater troubles, than could be easily suppressed. Examples he wanted not; that especially of *Cato*, who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, stirred such a War against *Cæsar* in *Africk*: that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to imprison them, he licensed them at their pleasure to visit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonoyse*; Provinces close to the continent of *Italie*, altogether unfurnished for Wars; and indeed such, as by reason of the variety of pleasures in them used, were more likely to weaken their minds, than to arm their bodies. Now to give the *Senate* some sweet meat to their sowr sawce; he as much honoured and reverenced that *Order*, as ever it was in the *Free-state*: submitting himself to their Judgements, and appearing of his own accord, at most of their dayes of Session. Out of those he chose 15 alterable every half year, to be of his privy Counsell; but then changing them for others, that so all of them might participate that honour; and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his secrets. At his entrance into the *Senate*, he used courteously to salute the *Lords*; and so likewise at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*; so much to sleight the *Lords* of that *House*, as he always did: never making to them any obeysance, no not then, when they came to tell him what honours were decreed unto him.

25. This Reformation of the *great Ones*, soon made the *lower sort* more carefull; both to observe good order, and to learn obedience. Yet did not *AUGUSTUS* refer all to *President*, but somewhat to *Precept*. The *Roman Knights* he enforced to yeeld an account of their lives; an Ordinance full of health and wisdom: Idleness being the root of all private vices, and publike disorders. To the *Commons* in their *Comitia* and other meetings, he prescribeth Laws and Orders as himself listed. The old authority of the *Tribunes*, dashed in the *Dictatorship* of *Sylla*, he would not restore. He suffred them to intercede for the *People*, but not to prefer or hinder any *Bill* to the advancement or the prejudice of their *Estate*. Without this *Curb*, the *Common sort* would never have suffered him to sit fast in the *Saddle*. For had the people had their *Tribunes*, and had the *Tribunes* had their antient dignity and power, which they had usurped: there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Goverment. So different are the ends of the *Common-people*, especially if nualed in a factious Liberty; from the designs of Soveraign *Princes*.

26 The City thus reformed in the principall errors and defects of it; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleasures: As Shews of Fencers, Stage-plays, Combats of wild beasts, publique Dancings, with variety of other delightfull spectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change, as fearing lest their cogitations, for want of other objects, would fix themselves upon his actions, and the old *freedom*. Horse-races, Tilts, and Tornaments, he gladly cherished; but he permitted them onely to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That so that City being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be stored with good *Horses*, and expert Riders. Such of the *Commons* as were behind hand, he relieved: and when that any of them had made him Heir to their goods; he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any *Prince* but a *Tyrant*, presently restored to the Children of the deceased the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AVGVSTVS*; as true a *Guardian* of *Orphanes*, as a Father of his Country. Such Princes as gape covetously after other mens possessions, seldom enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treasures of Kings are then greatest, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he seemed to leave unto the people, which they thought most pleasing; *Liberty of speech*: Wherein sometimes they were so licentious, that they spared not *Agrippa* himself, so potent with the *Emperor*. But he, good man, never using the Princes favour to the prejudice of any, seemed not to mark their taunts and slanders: whether with greater moderation or wisdom, I cannot tell. Neither did *AVGVSTVS* scape their foolish *Pasquils* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing, that Contumelies of that nature slighted and contemned, soon vanish of themselves; but if repined and stormed at, seem to be acknowledged. A temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of wisdom in both of them. It is the misery of the best *Princes*,

even

even when they do well, to be ill ſpoken of. And therefore many times ſuch follies, are with more politie diſſembled than obſerved, by the greateſt *Kings*.

27 As for this Laviſhneſs of the *tongue*, it is a humour that ſpringeth for the moſt part, rather from a delight in pratling, than any malice of the heart: and they which uſe it are more troubleſome than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the *fat men*, but the *lean* and *ſpare*. And ſo *AVGVSTVS* thought, that not men liberal of ſpeech, but ſilent, cloſe, and ſparing of their words, were moſt likely to raiſe tumults. Moreover, as long as the *Common People* retained *Libertie* of *ſpeech*, they were the leſs ſenſible of the loſs of *Liberty in State*. Whereas in the dayes of *Domitian*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their ſecret ſighs and tears were *regiſtred*; then began they to look back with a ſerious eye on the old and *Common Liberty*. *Neglect* is the beſt remedy for this *Talking vein*. When the humour is ſpent, the *People* will ceaſe on their own accords: till then, no forces can compel them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping by force to hinder the continuall reports of *Veſpatians* revolt; that being the only way to increaſe, not diminiſh the *rumour*. And as much he extolleth (I will not ſay how fitly) the Reign of *Prince Nerva*, wherein it was lawfull for the Subject to think what he would, and ſpeak what he thought.

28 Theſe courſes though he took to rectifie the Senate, and content the people, yet he ſtayed not here. There were too many of both ſorts, dangerous and unquiet ſpirits, who ſtomacked his proceedings; and under pretence of the *antient Liberty*, were apt to any bold attempt, and ſuddain alteration. Theſe as he winked at for the preſent, ſo he employed them (as occaſion ſerved) in his forreign Wars. Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Souldiers had diſpleaſed him, in their *Mutinies* and *Tumults*, would lead them preſently unto ſome deſperate and dangerous ſervice. So weakning both his *Foes* which lay next unto him, and puniſhing thoſe *Souldiers* which had diſobeyed him. For though *AVGVSTVS* had thrice ſhut the Temple of *Janus*, and cheriſhed Peace, no *Emperor* more, of ſo large a Territory: Yet when he ſaw his times, and that mens minds were active, and their thoughts diſquieted; he could find preſently occaſion for ſome new imployment. In this a *Body Politique* may be compared moſt fitly to the *Body naturall*. When we are full of blood, and our ſpirits boyling, there is not any *Phyſick* better than *Phlebotomie*. But if a vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our eſtate commonly is dangerous, and almoſt incurable. So *Princes*, when their people are tumultuous and apt to miſchief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkning after action: do commonly imploy them in ſome ſervice far from home; that there they may both vent their *Anger*, and employ their *Courage*. For let them ſtay at home to confirm their practiſes, and grow at laſt into a Faction: the State will ſuffer in it; if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer inſtance of this truth than the proceeding of our firſt *Henry*, and of the times next following: Whoſe, forein Wars kept us all quiet here at home; waſted thoſe humours; and conſumed thoſe fiery ſpirits: which afterwards, the wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29 But his main work was to content the Souldiers, and to make them ſure. Some of which he diſperſed as before I ſayd, all about *Italy*, in 28 Colonies: as well for the defence of the *Countrey*, as for their more ſpeedy reaſſembly, if need ſhould require. Abroad amongſt the *Provinces*, were maintained upon the common charge 23 Legions with their ayds, beſides 10000 of his Guard, and thoſe which were appointed for the bridling and ſafety of the City. As to all of them he ſhewed an excellent thankfulneſs, for their faithfull ſervices. So in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whoſe name the Hiſtories of that Age have not remembred. This latter had valiantly behaved himſelf at the battell of *Actium*: and being ſummoned to appear before the Lords of the *Senate* in a matter which concerned his life, cryed to *AVGVSTVS* for ſuccour; who aſſigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breaſt, and ſhewing him the marks of many wounds; *Theſe* (quoth he) *have I received* AVGVSTVS, *in thy ſervice, never ſupplying my place by a Deputy*. Which ſayd, the *Emperor* deſcending to the *Bar*, pleaded the Souldiers cauſe, and won it. Never did Soveraign *Prince*, or any that commanded in *Chief*, loſe any thing by being bountifull of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly ſpreading it ſelf over all the *Provinces*, did ſo indear him to the Military men, that they all thought their ſervices well recompenſed, in that his graciouſneſs to that one man. And now were they ſo far given over to him, that the honours conferred on *Agrippa*, could not increaſe their love; well it might their admiration. *Agrippa* was of a mean and common *Parentage*, but ſupplying the defects of his *Birth* with the perfections of his *Mind*; he became very potent with *AVGVSTVS*; who not only made him *Conſul*, but his *companion* in the *Tribunitian authority*, and *Proveſt* of the *City*. So many titles were now heaped on him, that *Maecenas* perſwaded the *Prince*, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife; affirming it impoſſible for *Agrippa* to live ſafe, conſidering how open new Creatures lye to the attempts of Malitious men; unleſs he were ingraffed into the Royall ſtem of the *Ceſars*. On which cauſe queſtionleſs, for the ſtronger eſtabliſhment of his new honours; *Sejanus* afterward attempted, but not with the like ſucceſs, the like match with *Livia*, *Tiberius* Daughter-in-Law.

30 The *Senate*, *People*, and *Men of War*, thus ſeverally reduced to a Mediocrity of power and contents: The next labour is to alter the old, and eſtabliſh a new Government of the *City* it ſelf. To effect which, he daſhed all former Laws, by which the *Allies* and *Confederates* of the

State

State were made free *Denizens* of the *Town*. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole *Empire* into one *City*; and by the monstrous growth and increase of that, to make poor the rest. Therefore this *Privilege* he communicated unto a few only: partly that in the times of dearth, the City might not so much feel the want of sustenance; and partly that so ancient an honour might not be disesteemed; but principally lest *Rome* repleniſhed with so huge a multitude of stirring and unruly spirits, should grow too headstrong to be governed in due order. The greatest and most populous Cities, as they are proneſt unto *faction* and *sedition*; so is the danger greatest, both in it self, and the example, if they should revolt. This provident course notwithstanding, there were in *Rome* men more than enough; and among them not a few malecontents and murmurers at the present state, such as contemned the *Consuls*, and hated the *Prince*. To keep these in compass, *AUGUSTUS* (it being impossible for him to be still resident at *Rome*, and dangerous to be absent) constituted a *Provoſt of the City*, for the most part chosen out of the *Senators*: assigning him a strength of 6000 men, called *Milites Urbani*, or the *City-souldiers*. To him he gave absolute and Royal authority, both in the *Town* and *Territory* near adjoyning, during his own absence, To him were appeals brought from the other *Magistrates*: and finally to his *Tribunall* were referred all causes of importance, not in *Rome* only, but the greatest part of *Italy*. *Meſalla* was the first *Provoſt*, but proof being had of his insufficiency, the charge was committed to *Agrippa*, who did not only setle and confirm the *City*, but did the best he could to free the adjoyning parts of *Italy* from *Theeves* and *Robbers*, and stopped the courses of many other troublers of the present State. And yet he could not with that power either so speedily, or so thorowly reform all those mischiefs which in the late unsetled times were become predominant, as he did desire.

31 It is recorded that in the Civill wars of *Marius* and *Sylla*, one *Pontius Teleſinus* of the *Marian Faction*, told his *Generall*, that he did well to scoure the Country, but *Italy* would never want Wolves, as long as *Rome* was so fit a *Forrest*, and so near to retire unto. The like might have been spoken to *Agrippa*; That he did well to clear the *common Rodes* and *Paſſages*, but *Italie* would never want *Theeves*, whilst *Rome* was so good a place of *Refuge*. For though he did, as far as humane industry could extend, endeavour a generall *Reformation* both within the *City* and without: yet neither could he remedy, nor foresee all mischiefs. Still were there many, and those great disorders, committed in the night season; when as no eye, but that to which no darkness is an obstacle, could discern the *Malefactors*. For in the first *Proscription*, many men used to walk the streets well weaponed; pretending only their own safety; but indeed it was to make their best advantage of such men as they met either in unfrequented lanes and Passages, or travelling as their occasions did direct them in the Night. To repress therfore the foul insolencies of these *Sword-men*, *AVGVSTVS* did ordain a *Watch*, consisting of 7000 *Freemen*: their *Captain* being a *Gentleman* of *Rome*. In the day time, the *Guard* of the *Town* was committed to the *Provoſt* and his *Citie ſouldiers*: These *Vigils* resting in their standing Camps. In the night season, one part took their *stations* in the most suspitious places of the *City*: another, in perpetuall motion traversed the streets; the rest lying in the *Corps du Guarde*, to relieve their companions. By which means, he not only remedied the present disorders; but preserved the *City* from danger of *Fire* also. Yea and secured himself from all Night-tumults, which carried with them (though but small) more terror and affrightment, than greater Commotions in the day. Never till now were the *common people* Masters of their own, both lives and substance. And now was travell in the Night, as safe, though not so pleasant, as at Noon.

32 The *People* and *City* thus setled, his next study is to keep the *Provinces* in a liking of the Change. But little *Rhetorique* needed to win their liking, who had long desired the present form of *Government*: mistrusting the *Peoples* Regiment, by reason of *Noblemens* factions, Covetousness of *Magistrates*, the *Laws* affording no security, being swayed hither and thither by ambition and corruption. These *Provinces* when he first took the *Government*, he thus divided. *Asia*, *Africa*, *Numidia*, *Betica*, *Narbonenſis*, *Sicilia*, *Corſica*, *Sardinia*, all *Greece*, *Creta*, *Cyprus*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, being quiet and peaceable *Provinces*, of known, and faithfull obedience, he assigned unto the *Senate*. But the new conquered *Regions*, such as had not digested their loss of liberty, with whom any Rebellion or War was to be feared, he retained under his own command. Such were *Tarraconenſis*, *Luſitanica*, *Lugdunenſis*, *Germany*, *Belgica*, *Aquitanica*, *Syria*, *Silicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Myſia*, *Pannonia*, *&c.* And this he did, as he gave out, to sustain the danger himself alone, leaving unto the *Senate* all the sweets of ease: but the truth was, to keep them without Arms, himself alwaies strong and in a readiness. The notable effects of which Counsell did not discover themselves only by the establishment of the *Empire* in his own person during life, and the continuance of it in the house of the *Cæsars* (though men of most prodigious Vices) after his decease: but in some of the Ages following also. For when the Family of the *Cæsars* was extinct in *Nero*, the *Imperiall* Provinces being so strong, and perceiving the *Consular* so weak, assumed to themselves the creating, and establishing of the following *Princes*. Thus *Galba* was made Emperour by the *Spaniſh* and *French* Legions, *Vitellius* by the *German*, *Veſpatian* by the *Syrian* and *Panonnian*: The *Conſular Provinces* never stirring, either to prevent their attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could doe, was but to betray the poor old man and all his Family to a *tragick* end.

end. And yet he did not ſo impropriate thoſe Provinces to the *Senate*, but that they alſo (as well as thoſe which he reſerved unto himſelf) were ſpecified particularly in his private Regiſter. In which (the better to manage the affairs of the *Empire*) he had ſet down what *Tributes* every of them payed, what *Preſents* they ſent in, what *Cuſtoms* in theu were levyed. That book alſo comprehended the wealth of the publike *Treaſury*, and neceſſary charge iſſuing out of it: What number of *Citizens* and *Allies* there were in *Arms*; What ſtrength there was by *Sea*, with all other circumſtances concerning the extent, ſtrength, riches, and particulars of his eſtate. *William* of *Normandy* did the like at his firſt entrance into *England*, when he compoſed that *Cenſuall Roll* of all this Kingdom, which we call *Dooms-day Book*, or the *Roll of Winton*; according unto which, *Taxations* were impoſed, and *Aydi* exacted. The greateſt *Princes* have not thought it a diſparagement to be good Husbands, to know the riches of their Crowns, and have an eye to their *Intrado*.

32. *Britain* was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either becauſe from hence there neither was much hope of profit, nor much fear of hurt; or els becauſe being more deſirous to keep than inlarge the *Monarchy*, he thought it moſt expedient to confine it within the bounds appointed by Nature. *Danubius* on the North, Mount *Atlas* on the South, *Euphrates* on the Eaſt, and the main *Ocean* on the Weſt, did both bound his *Empire* and defend it. Some *Kingdoms* have their limits laid out by Nature, and thoſe which have adventured to extend them further, have found it fatall. The *Perſians* ſeldom did attempt to ſtretch their *Territory* beyond *Oxus*, but they miſcarried in the action. And what was that poor *River*, if compared unto the *Ocean*? Many who loved *action*, or expected preferment by the *Wars*, incited him unto the conqueſt and plantation of theſe Countreys. Affirming, "That the barbarous people were naturally bad "Neighbours, and though for the preſent not very ſtrong nor well skilled in Arms, yet might "a weak Enemy in time gather great ſtrength. That he ought to purſue the War for his Fa- "ther *Julius* ſake, who firſt ſhewed that Iland to the *Romans*; that it yeelded both refuge and "ſupply to the Malecontents of *Gaul*, and Enemies in *Germanie*. That he would loſe the bene- "fit of a wealthy *Country*, ſtored with all manner of proviſion, and the command of a valiant "Nation, born (as it were) unto the Wars. That it was an Apoſtacy from honor, to lye ſtill "and add nothing to the conqueſt of his Anceſtors. That he was in all equity bound as far as "in him was, to reduce to *Civility* from *Barbraiſm* ſo many proper and able men. But to theſe motives he replyed, "That he had already refuſed to wage war with the *Parthian*, "a more dangerous neighbour, and far woſe enemy than the *Britains*. That he had waſte and "deſart ground enough in his own *Dominions* for many a large *Plantation*, when he ſaw it "needfull. That he had conſtantly refuſed, though with great facility he might, to conquer "any more of the *barbarous Nations*. That as in the *Natrall body* a ſurfet is more dangerous "than faſting; ſo in the *Body Politike* too much is more troubleſom than a little. That the "*Roman Monarchy* had already exceeded the *Perſian* and *Macedonian*, and to extend it further "was the next way to make it totter and fall by its own weight. That he had learned in the "*Fable* not to loſe the *ſubſtance*, by catching at the *ſhadow*. And finally, that many puiſſant "Nations lay in and about *Britany*, againſt whom *Garriſons* muſt be kept; and he feared the *Re-* "*venue* would not quit the *Coſt*. And ſo the enterprize of *Britain* was quite laid aſide.

33. For the aſſurance of the *Provinces* already conquered, he diſperſed into them 23. *Legi-ons*, with their *Ayds*, whoſe pay onely, beſides proviſion of Corn, and Officers wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our Engliſh pounds, and ſomewhat more, were ſo ſuddenly paid unto the *Armies*, that we read ſeldom in the Hiſtories of that *Empire*, of any *Mutiny* among the *ſouldiers* for want of pay. An happineſs whereof theſe ages have been little guilty. For the amaſſing of this treaſure, and defraying of this charge, *AUGVSTVS* made not uſe onely of his own revenue. *Wars* which are undertaken, and *Souldiers* that are levied for the *Common ſafety*, ought in all reaſon to be maintained on the *Common purſe*. The Grandour and ſecurity of an *Empire*, concerns in all reſpects, as much the *People* as the *Prince*. For which cauſe he erected an *Exchequer* in the *Cutie*, which was called *Ærarium militare*, or the *Souldiers Treaſury*, whereto the twentieth part of every mans eſtate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was eſteemed an heavy burden at the firſt, and indeed it was, but that the people felt the ſweetneſs and effects of it in the Common ſafety. In that reſpect, the intereſt was greater than the *principall*. *Subjects* that have a care either of the common peace or honour, will not repine at payments and taxations, though more than ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that *Princes* either are able or obliged, to maintain the wars without aſſiſtance from their people: or that the treaſures which in theſe reſpects they give the *King*, they do not give unto themſelves. I may perhaps repute him for a cunning *Sophiſter*, but never for a faithfull Subject, which coyns diſtinctions betwixt the welfare of the *King*, and the weal of the *Kingdom*. Theſe *Legions* he imployed as occaſion was, either to curb the *Natives*, or ſecure the *Borders*. The *Roman Empire* ſeldom had ſuch perfect peace, but that there were imployments always for the *Souldiers*. If that they had in any place a ſhort Ceſſation from the wars, yet they were not *idle*. *Idleneſs* doubtleſs is the greateſt enemy to *Martiall Diſcipline*. Therefore he kept them at ſuch times perpetually buſied, either in paving *Bogs*, or in dreaning *Mariſhes*. By means whereof, he made not only many of the *barbarous Countries*, both fruitfull in themſelves

ſelves, and profitable to the *Chequer*: but thereby alſo he ſecured his own affairs, and diſarmed his enemies. For many times the *barbarous people* truſting to ſuch advantages, were apt too often to rebell; and having got themſelves within thoſe *Myres* and *Faſtneſſes*, ſtood on their *Guard*, as in ſome faſhionable or defenſible *Fortreſs*. The ſureſt means to keep a conquered people from all occaſion of revolting, is to lay waſte their *Wood-lands*, and make all parts *paſſable*. The opportunity of a ſafe retreat, makes not more *Theeves* than *Rebells*.

35. Thoſe whom he placed over his *Provinces* and *Armies*, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer ſtay might teach them too much cunning in practiſing on the diſpoſitions of the people, and perhaps prompt them to work into the favour of the Natives, and the Men of War; and ſo at laſt to eſtabliſh in themſelves a *Soveraigny*. *Ceſars* long ſtay in *Gaul*, (a ſecond five years being added unto that which was firſt allowed him) made him ſo potent with the *People*, and gracious with the *Souldiers*, that in the end he brought the *Roman Empire* under his ſubjection. And on the other ſide, to take them from their charges under three years continuance, were to have called them home, before they were well learned in the *Cuſtomes* and the nature of the *Provinces*; ſo making them unable to inſtruct their *Succeſſors*. As for the men whom he imployed in thoſe *Commands*, he culled them always out of the moſt valiant and upright in *Camp* and *Senate*. A *Prince* more willing and deſirous not to imploy men likely to offend, than after the offence to puniſh and chaſtiſe them.

36. Beſides his forces by Land, he alſo maintained at Sea two invincible *Armadoes*: The one lay at Anchor neer *Ravenna*, in the upper *Sea*, to awe and defend *Dalmatia*, *Crete*, *Greece*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, *&c.* The other at *Miſenum* in the lower *Sea*, to protect and keep under *Gaul*, *Spain*, *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* Neither was this the only uſe of two ſuch puiſſant *Fleets*, but in all probability they were to cleanſe the Sea of *Pirates*; to have a care to the conducting of the *Tributes* and *Cuſtomes* into the *Exchequer*; and ſerved alſo for tranſporting *Corn*, and other neceſſary proviſions, for the ſuſtenance and relief of the *Citie*. In the enſuing *Civill Wars*, theſe two Navies proved to be of great importance: The revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one ſide, as a comfort to the other. The principall aſſurance of *Otho* in theſe Wars, was the immovable fidelity of the *Miſenian* Fleet; and the ſiding of the other with *Veſpatian*, brake the hearts of *Vitellins* beſt followers.

37. Now as he thus ſtrengthened the *Provinces* in generall, ſo did he caſt an eſpeciall eye on three particulars, *viz. Italie*, *Gaul*, and *Egypt*; *Italie* rounded *Rome* the *Metropolis* of the *Empire*; and therefore he ought to be well aſſured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant that the *Bellum Sociale* raiſed by the people of that *Countrey* in the *Free State*, more ſhook and indangered the *Empire*, than the Invaſions of *Pyrrhus* or *Annibal*. Therefore as formerly he planted in it two and thirty *Colonies* of old and truſty Souldiers to keep it ſure unto himſelf; ſo now he did divide it into eleven Regions, each having peculiar *Magiſtrates* and *Under-Officers*. This not ſo much to eaſe the *City Prætor*, although he had imployment enough at *Rome*, but becauſe it was thick ſet, and as it were overlaid with *People*, whoſe riſing might indanger the *Common-wealth*. So by his *Colonies* he kept a Garriſon upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt: and by his *Officers* and *Juſticiers* (as I may call them) he ſet ſo ſtrait a Watch about them, that they durſt not *practiſe*.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile Countrey, ſtored with a people, valiant in all attempts, and in many deſperate. A people with which the old *Romans* fought rather to maintain their own liberty, than to increaſe their Dominions, a Tribe or Colonie of which had ſacked the City of *Rome*, and indangered the *Capitol*. A people finally with whom the *Romans* durſt not make war, till they had almoſt all the reſidue of the world in ſubjection. Remembrance of their antient Reputation, and ſtore of money might occaſion many deſperate practices againſt the quiet of the *Empire*. The readieſt way to keep them in obedience, was to keep them poor; for without wealth high *ſtomacks* may well *feed* on the hope of *Liberty*, but digeſt it never. *Licinius* his *freed-man*, was the fitteſt fellow for ſuch an Office, who is preſently made the *Task-maſter* of the *Province*. The *Galls* uſed to pay a Monethly Tribute, which he much inhaunced (beſides private and petty means of prevailing) by making fourteen Moneths in a year. The Solicitors of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AUGUSTUS*. He ſometimes yeelded unto them, ſometimes excuſed his *Freed-man*; ſome things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he diſſembled. *Licinius* to make up his peace, ſent to the Emperor all his *treaſure*, and that huge Maſs of Gold and Silver by thoſe unlawfull means heaped up together; which he not onely willingly received, but his turn being ſerved, and the *French* not a little impoveriſhed, he recalled *Licinius*, and ſent *Tiberius* to ſettle the *Province*. So old and common a thing it is with great *Princes*, to ſuffer their *Vice-Roys*, and *Under-Officers*, to ſuck like *Spunges*, the *Wealth* of the *Subject*, till they are quite full, and then to *ſqueeze* them into their own *Coffers*.

39. But the *Province* whoſe tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt*; not ſo much for the valour and courage of the *Inhabitants*, as the naturall ſtrength and ſituation of the place. *Alexander* of *Macedon* having annexed it to his *Empire*, never committed the entire Government and Jurisdiction thereof to one man, fearing leſt he preſuming on the wealth of the *People*, and ſite of the *Countrey*, would ſettle the poſſeſſion in himſelf. And ſo *AUGUSTUS*

GUSTUS calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconstancy of the natives; that it was very rich in coyn, and the *Roman Granary* (as serving the City four Months yearly with Corn) not only trusted not the rule thereof into the hands of any of the *Senate*, but expresly forbad any of that Order (without his speciall permission) to sojourn there. It is a principle in *State*, never to license men of great houses, and credit among the *people*, to have free access into that *Country*, whose revolt may endanger the whole *Empire*. Wherefore it was a weakness doubtless in the Counsell of King *Henry* the sixt, to suffer *Richard* Duke of *York*, to pass at pleasure into *Ireland*, where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought supply both of *Men* and *Money*. But to return to *Egypt*, *Germanicus* entring once into *Alexandria*, only to see the *Antiquities* of it, and return, stirred such suspitions and distractions in the jealous head of *Tiberius*, that he spared not sharply to rebuke him for it. *Vespasian* also being by the *Syrian Legions* chosen Emperour, first assured himself of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land, with a small power against a strong host easily defended. This place he resolved to make his *Sanctuary*, if his designs succeeded not luckily. And to this place he hastened, after the defeat of the *Vitellian* Army; that so detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by Famine compell the City of *Rome* to stand at his *devotion* The Government of this *Province* was by *AUGUSTUS* alwaies committed to some one of the *Roman* Gentry, as less able, by reason of his low Condition, to work against the *Princes* safety. Neither would he allow his *Deputy* the glorious attributes of *Lieutenant*, *Legatus*, *Proconsul*, or *Prætor*: *Captain* or *President* of *Egypt* was their highest *Title*; there being even in *Titles* no small motives to *Ambition*.

40 *AUGUSTUS* having by these meaus reduced both the *City* and *Provinces* under his absolute command, and being now declining in strength, by reason of a sudden and violent sickness, began to call his wits to Counsell, how to dispose of the *Estate* after his decease. *Male-child* he never had any. His Daughter *Julia*, a woman of immodest carriage, never made further use of her Fathers greatness, than that she satisfied her Lusts with the greater insolence. *Marcellus* his Sisters sonne and *Julias* husband, was a young man of an ingenious disposition, and seemingly capable of the fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, *AUGUSTUS* preferred to the *Pontificall* dignity, and *Edileship*; yet once upon his sickness, he privately determined to choose a Successor in the *Common-wealth*, rather than his own Family; and nor to leave the *Empire* to *Marcellus*, whom he held unable to undergo it, but to his companion in Arms, *Agrippa*, a man daunted neither with adverse, nor altered with prosperous fortunes. This *Marcellus* afterwards so stomacked, that he began to grutch at *Agrippas* greatness, and to bear a vigilant eye on his plots and actions. Contrarily, *Agrippa* unwilling to offend him, under whose future Government he was in all likelyhood to end the rest of his days, with much adoe obtained leave to retire unto *Lesbos*, that so his absence either might allay, or remove the displeasure conceived against him by the young *Prince*. An action full of wisdom, and magnamity. For though *AUGUSTUS* chief end was, to discountenance the popular dependancies of his *sonne*, by the favours heaped on his *servant*: Yet did *Agrippa* know, that a Favorite ought to have so much in him of the *Persian Religion*, as to worship the *Rising Sun* also; and that he should resemble old *Janus* with the two faces, with th'one looking on the *King regnant*, with th'other on the *Prince successive*.

41 *Marcellus* being dead, *Agrippa* returning, married his Widdow, and on her begat two Sonnes, *Caius* and *Lucius*; whose actions afterward afforded such variety for censure, that there was wanting neither much reason to commend, nor little to condemn them. On these two, or at the least one of them, *AUGUSTUS* now grown aged, resolves to settle the Estate, and if they failed, upon such others, as by the liberty of the Laws, he might *Adopt*: *Adoption*, in the estimation of the *Roman Laws*, being indeed *another Nature*. Posterity, whether it be *naturall*, or only *legall*, is the best *supporter* of the *Arms Imperiall*. Such as both fortifies the Prince, and assures the Subject. Yet this he did not without much reluctancy, and a great conflict in his mind. "Sometimes his thoughts suggested to him, that the designed Successors draw to them all the "attendance and respect, from the *Prince* in *possession*; That they have alwaies a lingring desire "to be actually seated in the *Throne*; That they suppose the life of the present *Prince*, too te"dious; not caring by what means it were shortned: That sometime it is pernicious, yea e"ven to the appointed Successor himself also. On the other side, his better thoughts prompted "him to consider in what a miserable distraction he should leave the *Empire*, if sudden death "should take from him an ability to nominate his heir; The fear conceived in the whole *Ci*"*ty*, at his last sickness; That *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, was of all hands condemned, for leaving his "Kingdom to the sharpest *sword*; That the *Common-wealth* falln into dissentions, could not be "setled again without a lamentable War, and a bloudy Victory; That the people seeing "him *childless*, would not only contemn him, but perhaps endeavour to recover the old *li*"*berty*, though with the ruin of the *State*; That it was the custom of *Tyrants*, to desire the e"ternizing of their deaths, by the downfall of their *Countries*. His mind thus distracted and perplexed, at last he brake in this manner. "Thou hast *Octavian* a Wolf by the ears; which "to hold still, or to let go, is alike dangerous. Many inconveniences may ensue, if thou dost "not declare thy Successor; More, if thou dost. The good of the *Republique* consisteth in *know*"*ing* the future *Prince*; Thine own welfare dependeth on the *concealment*. The *Common good*

"is

" is to be preferred before any *private*: Yet ought *Charity to begin at home.* No, *Octavian*, no; " As thou haſt receiv'd, ſo ſhew thy ſelf worthy of the title of *Pater Patriæ.* Yea, and perhaps " this deſignation may ſecure thine own Eſtate. For what will it profit the people to conſult " againſt thee when they ſhall ſee a ſucceſſor at hand, either of thine own body, or thine own " appointment, ready to take thy place, and revenge thy *wrongs.*

40 Thus reſolved, he adopteth *Caius* and *Lucius*; deſiring, though he made ſhew to the contrary, they ſhould be *Conſuls Elect*, and called *Princes of the Youth.* Yet wiſely forecaſting the dangers incident to himſelf if they ſhould make their abode in *Rome*; he ſendeth them with honourable charge into the Provinces abroad; as well to exerciſe them in *feats* of *War*, as to take away all cauſe of faction in the Court, and ſedition in the City. Which *myſtery* of *State* as it was antiently practiſed by moſt *Princes*, ſo at this day by the *Grand Seigneur*; who alwaies ſendeth his eldeſt ſonne unto *Amaſia*, as Governour thereof; from whence till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In theſe journeys dyed the two young *Princes*, a misfortune which *AUGUSTUS* bare nobly; neither baniſhing *grief* with a *Stoicall Apathy*; nor ſpending the time in womaniſh lamentations. Having performed due rights to the dead, he adopted his Wives ſonne *Tiberius*: A man for the conveniency and ripeneſs of his age, not *unfit*, in *feats* of *Arms* not *unexpert*, in *humane learning* not *ignorant*; but withall ſuſpected to be cruelly given, and poſſeſſed with the hereditary pride of the *Claudian* Family. A ſtrange medley of vertuous and vicious qualities. *Tiberius*, ſuch was the will of his Father, to eſtabliſh the ſucceſſion, with more ſtayes than one, adopted *Germanicus*, his Brother *Druſus* ſonne; then commanding over eight Legions in *Germany*; which done, he ſpeedeth to his charge in *Illyricum.* This man *AUGUSTUS* appointed to be his Heir, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the party; but to win honour to himſelf, and to make the *Roman people* again wiſh for him; when they ſhould ſee that infinite diſproportion in all royall and Kingly qualities, between the old and new *Emperors.* A fetch after imitated by *Tiberius*, in the adoption of *Caius Caligula.*

43 The laſt (though not the leaſt) help of the *Empires* eſtabliſhment, was the long life and reign of our *AUGUSTUS*: as having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the *Soveraignty*, by the *Senate* and *People.* All the young men in the *City* were born after the firſt *Decennium* of the *Monarchy.* Moſt of the old men during the Civill Wars. Few had ſeen what was the antient *form* of *Government* in the *Common-wealth*: Many did not deſire it. For at the preſent, enjoying Peace both at home and abroad; and hearing what ſad and tragicall reports their Fathers made of the former troubles and *proſcriptions*, they contented themſelves with the new Government; as more eſteeming a ſecure and happy *ſubjection*, than a dangerous and factious *liberty.* By which long time of *Empire*, and the policies already recited, beſides many others, which I can neither learn by relations, nor gather by preſumptions; did *AUGUSTUS* ſo firmly ſettle the *Roman Monarchy*, that it continued ſome hundred of years without alteration; though all his immediate Succeſſors were in a manner Monſters, incarnate devils, and indeed any thing rather than men. *Tiberius*, *Caius*, *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, both by their own *Tyrannies*, and their Bondmens *Extortions*, would have ruined any *Monarchy* not founded by *AUGUSTUS.*

44 To ſpeak concerning the domeſtical affairs of this *Emperor*, is beyond my *Theme.* As either how far he ſuffered himſelf to be ordered by his Wife *Livia*; or whether he uſed variety of women, not ſo much to ſatisfie a diſordinate appetite, as by ſo many women to fiſh out the ſecret deſigns of many men. He was too exact a Stateſman to be perfect in *Souldiery*; and in all his Wars was proſperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his *Captains* Valour than his own. The *Common-wealth* which he found weak and in *Rubbiſh*, he left *Adamantine*, and invincible. In behaviour he was affable and gracious; in his diſcourſe ſententious; to the good, of a moſt ſweet diſpoſition; to the lewd and diſhoneſt, harſh and unpleaſant. *Friendſhip* he contracted with few, and that ſlowly; but to them, whom he once loved, conſtant and bountifull to the laſt. Finally, ſuch a one he was, of whom I will only ſay what I find ſpoken of *Severus*; It had been an ineffable benefit to the *Common-wealth* of *Rome*, if either he had never *dyed*, or never been *born.*

Thus having drawn the Picture of this puiſſant and prudent *Prince* (though I confeſs with too much ſhadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the *Roman* Emperours: in which I ſhall take notice of ſuch of their Actions only as had relation to the Publick, either in the improvement or decreaſe of their Power and Empire; or point to any ſignall matter which concerns the *Church.*

The *Roman* Emperours.

A.M.

3918. 1 *Julius Cæſar*, the laſt of the *Dictators*, and the firſt of the *Emperours*, in memory of whom the following Emperours were called *Cæſars*, till the time of *Adrian*, when it became the title of the heir apparent, or deſigned Succeſſor; the firſt who had it in that ſenſe being *Ælius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.

3923. 2 *C. Octavianus Cæſar*, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Auguſtus*, who added unto the

the *Roman* Empire the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhætia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdome of *Egypt*. In his time the Lord *CHRIST* was
A.C. born. 56.
17 3 *Tiberius Nero*, the ſonne-in-Law of *Auguſtus*, ſubdued many of the *German* Nations, and added *Galatia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire. In his time *CHRIST* ſuffered. 23.
39. 4 *Caius Caligula*, ſonne of *Germanicus* (ſonne of *Druſus*, the brother of *Tiberius*) and of *Agrippina* Neece to *Auguſtus Ceſar* by his daughter *Julia*. 3.
43. 5 *Claudius Ceſar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, brother of *Germanicus*, and ſonne of *Druſus* by *Antonia* Neece to *Auguſtus* by his Siſter *Octavia*, added *Britain* and *Mauritania* to the *Roman* Empire. 13.
57. 6 *Domitius Nero*, ſon of *Ænobarbus*, and *Agrippina* daughter to *Germanicus* the laſt of the *Ceſars*; he made the *Celtian Alpes* a Province of the Empire; and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the *Roman* Emperours; and was the firſt that raiſed any publick perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 67. 13.
70. 7 *Sergius Galba*, choſen by the *French* and *Spaniſh* Legions.
8 *Salvius Otho*, made Emperour by the *Pretorian* Souldiers.
9 *Aul. Vitellius*, elected by the *German* Legions.
71. 10 *Flavius Veſpaſianus*, choſen by the *Syrian* and *Judaan* Armies, ſubverted utterly the *Common-wealth* of the *Jews*, by the valour and proweſs of his ſonne *Titus*; and brought *Achaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria Comagene*, under the form of *Roman* Provinces. 9.
80. 11 *Titus Veſpaſianus*, the fortunate Conqueror of the *Jews*.
82. 12 *Fl. Domitianus*, who raiſed the ſecond perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 96. 15.
97. 13 *Nerva Cocceius*, a noble Senator, but no *Roman* born, as all the reſt had been before him, but not many after him.
99. 14 *Ulpius Trajanus*, by birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*, he made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire, carried the *Roman* Armies over *Euphrates*, ſubduing *Armenia*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*; and raiſed the third Perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 110. 19.
118. 15 *Ælius Adrianus*, who utterly exterminated the *Jewiſh* Nation, and continued the Perſecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.
138. 16 *Antoninus Pius*, whoſe friendſhip was ſought by the very *Indians*. 24.
162. 17 *Marcus Antoninus*, ſurnamed the Philoſopher, aſſociated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whoſe valour he ſubdued the *Parthians*; he raiſed the fourth Perſecution againſt the Church. *An.* 167. 19.
181. 18 *L. Antoninus Commodus*, ſonne to *Marcus*, the firſt Emperour that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.
194. 19 *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperour againſt his will.
20 *Didius Julianus*, who bought the Empire of the Souldiers.
195. 21 *Septimius Severus*, took *Cteſiphon* from the *Parthians*, ſubdued the Province of *Oſroene*; and raiſed the fifth Perſecution. *An.* 195. 18.
213. 22 *Baſſianus Caracalla*, ſonne to *Severus*.
220. 23 *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperor by the men of War.
221. 24 *Varius Heliogabalus*, the ſuppoſed ſonne of *Caracalla*.
225. 25 *Alexander Severus*, Coſen of *Varius*.
238. 26 *Maximinus*, a fellow of obſcure birth, who being advanced to the Empire, raiſed the ſixt Perſecution. *An.* 237.
241. 27 *Gordian*, elected by the Senate againſt *Maximinus*. 6.
247. 28 *Philip*, an *Arabian*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be a Chriſtian. 5.
252. 29 *Decius*, ſlain in war againſt the *Gothes*; the Author of the ſeventh Perſecution raiſed againſt the Church. *An.* 250. 2.
254. 30 *Gallus Hoſtilianus*. 2.
256. 31 *Æmilianus* the *Moore*.
256. 32 *Valerianus*, the Author of the eighth Perſecution. *An.* 259. He was taken priſoner by *Sapores* King of *Perſia*, and made to ſerve him for a footſtool.
33 *Gallienus*, ſonne to *Valerianus*, in whoſe time the 30 Tyrants ingroſſed unto themſelves ſeverall parts of the Empire.
271. 34 *Claudius* II. who after a ſhort and troubleſome time, left it to
272. 35 *Quintillus* his Brother, who enjoyed the ſame but 17 daies.
273. 36 *Valer. Aurelianus*, reſtored again the antient diſcipline, ſuppreſſed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquiſhed the *Gothes*, but was a great perſecutor of the Church *An.* 278. 6.
279. 37 *Annius Tacitus*, deſcended from *Tacitus* the Hiſtorian.
38 *Florianus*, an Emperour of two moneth, only.
280. 39 *Valerius Probus*. 6.
286. 40 *Aurelius Carus*, together with his two ſonnes *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.
288. 41 *Diocleſian*, firſt aſſociated *Maximianus* by the name of *Emperour*, or *Auguſtus*, and afterwards

wards *Galerius* of *Dacia*, and *Constantinus Chlorus* by the name of *Cæsars*. He had continuall Wars against the *Persians*, and raised the tenth Persecution against the Church, *An.* 295. Which held so long, and was so vehement withall, that as St. *Hierom* writes, there were 5000 slain for every day in the year save the first of *January*. He afterwards resigned the Empire, and lived in private at *Salona*. 20.

308. 41 *Constantinus Chlorus*, a friend to *Christians*. 2.

310. 42 *Constantine* sonne of *Chlorus*, surnamed *Magnus*, or the great; the first *Emperor* that countenanced the Gospel, and embraced it publickly, which he is said to have done on this occasion. At the same time that he was saluted Emperor in *Britain*, *Maxentius* was chosen at *Rome* by the *Pratorian Souldiers*, and *Licinius* named Successor by *Maximinus*, the associate of his Father *Chlorus*: Being pensive and solicitous upon these distractions, he cast his eyes up towards Heaven, where he saw in the Air a lightsome Pillar in the form of a Cross, wherein he read these words, ἐν τούτῳ νίκα, *in hoc vince*; and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Vision, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he should overcome all his Enemyes. This he performed, and was accordingly victorious; from which time he not only favoured the *Christians*, but became a very zealous professor of the Faith and Gospel. I know *Zosimus* an Heathen Historian, partly out of malice to the *Christians* in generall, and partly a particular grudge to the Emperor *Constantine*, reporteth otherwise of the causes of his Conversion: But the authority and consent of all *Christian* Writers, who deliver it as before is told, is far to be preferred before the testimony of one single Heathen had he not been biassed (as he was) by his disaffections.

Before this time it is observed, that few (if at all any) of the *Roman* Emperors died a naturall death, as after they generally did. From *Julius Cæsar* unto *Constantine* there were 40. in all: Of which, *Julius* was openly murdered in the Senate; *Augustus* made away in his wife *Livia*, as *Tiberius* afterwards by *Macro*; *Caligula* was slain by *Cassius Chæreas*; *Claudius* poysoned by his wife *Agrippina*; *Nero* and *Otho* layd violent hands upon themselves; *Galba* and *Vitellius* massacred by the Souldiers; *Domitian* by *Stephanus*, *Commodus* by *Latus* and *Electus*, *Pertinax* and *Julianus* by the Souldiers of their Guard; *Caracalla* by the command of *Macrinus*; *Macrinus*, *Heliogabulus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Maximus*, and *Balbinus*, successively by the men of War; *Gordianus* by *Philip*, *Philip* by the Souldiers; *Hostilianus* by *Gallus* and *Æmilianus*, and they by the Souldiers; *Valerianus* dyed a prisoner in *Parthia*; *Florianus* was the author of his own end; *Aurelianus* murdered by his houshold servants; *Gallienus*, *Quintillus*, *Tacitus*, and *Probus*, by the fury of the military men. And yet I have omitted out of this Accompt such of the Emperors as were tumultuously made by the Army, without the approbation of the *Senate*; as also the *Cæsars*, or designed Successors of the Empire; most of which got nothing by their designation and adoption, but *ut citius interficerentur*. Some of these were cut off for their misdemeanours; some for seeking to revive again the antient Discipline; and some, that others might enjoy their places. The chief cause of these continuall massacres, proceeded originally from the *Senate* and Emperors themselves. For when the *Senators* had once permitted the Souldiers to elect *Galba*, and had confirmed that election; *Evulgato* (saith *Tacitus*) *imperii arcano, principem alibi quàm* Romæ *fieri posse*; more Emperors were made abroad in the field by the *Legions*, than at home by the *Senators*. Secondly, from the *Emperors*, who by an unseasonable love to their *Guard-souldiers*, so strengthened them with privileges, and nussled them in their licencious courses, that on the smallest rebuke, they which were appointed for the safety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their ruin: so truly was it said by *Augustus* in *Dion*, *Metuendum est esse sine custode, sed multò magis à custode metuendum est*. The last cause (be it *causa per accidens*, or *per se*) was the largess which the new Emperors used to give unto the men of service; a custom begun by *Claudius Cæsar*, and continued by all his Successors: insomuch that the Empire became saleable, and many times he which had most had it. As we see in *Dion*, when *Sulpitianus* offering twenty *Sestertiums* to each souldier, was (as if they had been buying of a stock at *Gleek*) out-bidden by *Julianus*, who promised them five and twenty *Sestertiums* a man. So that *Herodian* justly complaineth of this Donative. *Id initium causaq. militibus fuit, ut etiam in posterum turpissimi contumaciss imiq. evaderent, sic ut avaritia indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad sanguinem usq. proveherent*. That is to say; From this occasion and beginning the souldiers every day grew more shameless, and less regardfull of their *Prince*; so that their covetousness increasing, and the contempt they had of their Emperors waxing more and more, ended at last in the frequent shedding of their bloods, in hope to have a better Market of the next Successor: So as the Emperor *Constantine* wanted not good reason, besides their siding against him for *Maxentius*, to cashier these Guards, as grown more dangerous than useful to *Imperial* Majesty. And so accordingly he did levelling their *standing Camp* to the very ground, disbanding the whole company, or putting them under other Officers and to other Services; by means whereof they were not able to create the like disturbances, or dispose of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of these *Guards* which before were two (*Præfecti Pratorio* in the Latine) he increased their number unto four, (one for each quarter of the Empire) giving them a Civil Jurisdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before; and casting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own devising.

A-

As for the extent and latitude of the *Roman* Empire, whilſt it remained one entire Body (as it was before the time of *Conſtantine*, who at his death divided it among his ſonnes) it was in length about three thouſand miles; namely, from the Iriſh Ocean Weſt, to the River *Euphrates* on the Eaſt; and in breadth it reached from the *Danubius* Northward, to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thouſand miles. And though the *Romans* had extended their Dominions ſometimes farther *Eaſt* and *North*, yet could they never quietly ſettle themſelves in thoſe conqueſts. Nature (it ſeemeth) had appointed them theſe bounds, not ſo much to limit their *Empire*, as to defend it. For the enemies found thoſe Rivers, by reaſon of the depth of the Channell, and violent current of the ſtream, as a couple of impregnable Fortreſſes, purpoſely as it were erected to hinder them from harraſing the *Roman* Countries.

The Revenues of it *Lipſius* in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romanâ*, eſteemeth to be about one hundred and fifty millions of Crowns; and that they were no leſs, may be made more than probable by theſe reaſons. 1. It is affirmed by divers, and among others, by *Boterus*, that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount unto one hundred and twenty millions of Crowns, and if this be true (as few queſtion it) we cannot in proportion gueſs the whole Empire of the *Romans* to yeeld leſs than one hundred and fifty millions, eſpecially conſidering what Arts-Maſters the *Romans* were in levying and raiſing their Taxes and cuſtomary Tributes. 2. The *Legionary* Souldiers which were diſperſed over the *Provinces*, received in ordinary pay (beſides proviſion of corn, apparell, and Officers wages) five millions, 516062. pound, and ten pound of our money, which amounteth unto ſixteen millions of Crowns or thereabout. In the City it ſelf there were kept in continuall pay ſeven thouſand ſouldiers of the Watch, four thouſand or ſix thouſand for the defence of the City, and ten thouſand for the Guard of the Emperors perſon. The two firſt had the ſame wages, the laſt the double wages of a *Legionary* Souldier. Add hereto the expences of the Palace, and other means of diſburſalls, and I think nothing of the ſum can be abated. 3. We read that *C. Caligula* ſpent in one yeer two millions, and ſeven hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; how *Nero* moſt laviſhly gave away two millions and one hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; and how *Vitellius* in few moneths was nine hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums* in Arrearages, every *Seſtertium* being valued at ſeven pound ſixteen ſhillings three pence: all of them huge and infinite ſums. 4. When *Veſpaſian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was ſo impoveriſhed, that he profeſſed in open Senate, that he wanted to ſettle the Common-wealth forty millions of *Seſtertiums*, amounting to three hundred and twelve millions of our Engliſh money; which Proteſtation (ſaith *Sueton*) ſeemed probable, *quia & malè partis optimè uſus eſt.* Now unleſs the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have ſpoken, by what means could this extraordinary ſum be raiſed? 5. We may gueſs at the generall Revenue by the moneys iſſuing out of particular Provinces; and it is certain that *Egypt* afforded to the *Ptolomies* twelve thouſand talents yeerly: neither had the *Romans* leſs, they being more perfect in inhancing, than in abating their Intrado. *France* was by *Ceſar* ſeſſed at the yeerly tribute of twenty millions of Crowns. And no doubt the reſt of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6ly. and laſtly, the infinite ſums of money given by the Emperors in way of largeſs, are proofs ſufficient for the greatneſs of the in-come. I will inſtance in *Auguſtus* only, and in him, omitting his Donatives at the victory of *Actium*, and the reſt, I will ſpecifie his Legacy at his death: He bequeathed (by his Teſtament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common ſort, and the reſt of the people, three pound eight ſhillings a man, to every ſouldier of the *Pretorian* bands, ſeven pounds ſixteen ſhillings three pence, and to every *Legionary* ſouldier of the *Roman* Citizens, four pound ten ſhillings ſix pence, which amounted to a mighty maſs of money.

The Arms or Enſign of this Empire when it was up and in the flouriſh, was the Eagle, not born, as now, in colours, and a banner, but in an Image or Portraicture on the top of a Spear, or other long piece of Wood, to be fixed in the earth at pleaſure. This Enſign, Spear and Eagle together, they called the *Labarum*: *Quæ ſigna, quòd quaſi labantia hortis appenderentur*, labara *dixerunt*, ſaith *Lipſius*, *Epiſt. Quæſt. Ep.* 5. The uſe, as of this, ſo of other ſtandards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the ſecond of *Numb.* namely, *ut ad eorum aſpectum, bellatores dividantur & uniantur*, to call together, and diſtribute the ſouldiers according to occaſions. And certainly for this end and purpoſe were thoſe Enſigns firſt invented: Afterwards they were applied to the diſtinguiſhing of *Tribes* and *Families*, and at laſt beſtowed by *Kings* and *Princes* as the honorary marks of well-deſerving: thoſe which had been the Enſigns of War, ſo becoming the Ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in colours, I have not yet read. It is now an Eagle *Saturn*, in a Field *Sol*, which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *moſt rich*. It was firſt born by *Ca. Marius* in his ſecond Conſulſhip, and in his Wars againſt the *Cimbri*, from him conveyed to *J. Ceſar* who was allied to him in deſign and perſon, and ſo derived unto the Emperors, his Succeſſors.

But to proceed, *Conſtantine* having ſetled his affairs in peace, and caſhiered the *Pretorian* Guards, fell to new modelling of the Empire, which he conceived to be too cumberſom and unwieldy to be governed by the former Politie, as indeed it was. And firſt of all he augmented the *Roman* Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts, over every one of which he ordained a particular *Preſident*, that had his reſidence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced theſe Provinces under fourteen *Dioceſes*, (for ſo he called the

greater distributions of his Empire) seven of which were in the *East* parts thereof, that is to say, the *Diocese* of *Egypt*, of the *East*, of *Asia*, of *Pontus*, *Thrace*, *Dacia*, and *Macedon*; and as many also in the *West*, viz. the *Prefecture* of the City of *Rome*, (which I count for one) the *Diocese* of *Italie*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*, of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. Finally instead of the *Prefecti Pretorio* which had the command of the *Pretoriant*, he ordained four for the four quarters of the Empire, that is to say, the *Prefectus Pretorio Italiæ*, under whom were the Dioceses of *Italie*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*; 2. *Prefectus Pretorio Galliarum*, who had under him the *Dioceses* of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*; 3. The *Prefectus Pretorio Orientis*, who had command over the *Dioceses* of *Egypt*, the *Orient*, and the *Asian*, the *Pontick*, and *Thracian* Dioceses; And 4ly. The *Prefectus Pretorio Illyrici*, under whose super-intendence were the *Dioceses* of *Macedon*, and *Dacia* only; each of these *Prefects* having a *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant in the severall *Dioceses* under his authority, who fixed their residence in the head City of the *Diocese*. And this I have the rather noted, because of the Relation which the *Politie* of the *Christian* Church had to this Division: it being so ordered in the best and purest times thereof, that in every City where the Emperors had an Officer, whom they called *Defensor Civitatis*, the *Christians* should have a *Bishop*; in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan*; and over every *Diocese* an *Arch-bishop*, or *Primate*, from whom lay no Appeal unto any other. And so far *Constantine* did well: But he committed divers errors which did more prejudice the Empire, than any thing that had been done by his Predecessors. First in translating the Imperiall Seat from *Rome* to *Byzantium*; by which transplantation the Empire lost much of its naturall vigour: as we see by the experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their naturall growth, lose much of their vertue which was formerly in them. On which reason *Camillus* would not suffer the *Romans* to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Veii*, newly conquered by him: but to prevent them in it set fire on the Town, and so consumed it, *ut nunc* Veios *fuisse laboret Annalium fides*, as my Author hath it. A second fault of this *Constantine*, was the dividing of the Empire amongst others, which only concerned himself. For though it was quickly reunited in the person of *Constantius* (his brethren dying without issue) yet his example being followed by others, the Empire was after torn into many pieces, to the destruction of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperors used sometimes to associate some partner with them; but so that they did manage it as one sole Estate: *Constantine* (if I remember rightly) being the first, which parcelled it into severall Soveraignties, each independent of the other. The third fault of this Emperor was his removing the *Legions* and *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eastern parts of his Dominions, pretending to use them as a Bulwark against the *Persians*, laying thereby those passages open, at which not long after the barbarous Nations entred and subdued the West. For though instead of these *Colonies* he planted Garrisons and Forts in convenient places; yet these being filled with Souldiers, for the most part out of other Countreys, fought not as in defence of their native Soyl, (as the *Colonies* would and must have done) but on the first onset of those *Barbarians* abandoned them to the will of the enemy. So that *Zosimus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he bewraieth much malice) doth call him, not untruly, the first Subverter of that flourishing Monarchy. To these three we may add a fourth, which concerns the Emperors in generall; namely, their stupid negligence and degenerate spirits which shewed it self most visibly in the last of

The *Western* Emperors.

341. 1. *Constans* the sonne of *Constantinus Magnus*, his brother *Constantine* being dead, remainned sole Emperor of the West.
2. *Constantius* the other of *Constantines* sonnes, succeeded *Constans* in his part, after his decease.
3. *Valentinian* Emperor of the West, his brother *Valens* ruling in *Constantinople*, and the Eastern parts.
4. *Valentinian* II. youngest sonne of the former *Valentinian*.

399. 5 *Honorius* the second sonne of *Theodosius* the Emperor, in whose time *Alarick* the *Gothe* invaded *Italie*, sacked *Rome*, and made themselves Masters of the Countrey, which afterwards they left in exchange for *Spain*. 26.

425. 6 *Valentinian* III. during whose time the *Vandals* seized upon *Africk*, as they did on *Italie* and *Rome* also after his decease: Murdered by *Maximus* a *Roman* (whose wife he had trained unto the Court, and ravished) as shall be shewn hereafter on another occasion.

455 7 *Maximus* having slain *Valentinian* the third, succeeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Eudoxia* the wife of *Valentinian* (who had some inkling of the manner of her husbands death) had drawn into *Italie*, he was stoned to death by his own souldiers. 1.

456. 8 *Avitus*, chosen Emperor in a military tumult.

457. 9 *Majoranus*. 4.

461. 10 *Severus*. 6.

467 11 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five years was slain (as were the three before him) by

Recimer

Ricimer (a *Suevian* born) the chief Commander of the Armies; who had an aim to get the Empire for himself, but died as soon as he had vanquished and slain *Anthemius*.

471. 12 *Olybrius*, an Emperor of four moneths only.

472. 13 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As also was

14 *Julius Nipos*, deposed by *Orestes* a noble *Roman*, who gave the Empire to his sonne, called at first *Momillus*, but after his assuming the Imperiall title, he was called, as in contempt, *Augustulus*.

473. 15 *Augustulus*, the last of the Emperours who resided in *Italie*, vanquished by *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* and *Turingians*. An omnious thing, that as *Augustus* raised this Empire, so an *Augustulus* should ruin it.

But though *Augustulus* lost the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not suffered to enjoy it long: *Zeno* the Emperour of the East sending *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes* to expell him thence; and to possess himself of *Italie*, the reward of his valour. And this the Emperor did the rather, partly because the *Gothes* were Christians, and in good terms of correspondency with him: but principally to remove that active Nation somewhat further off, who lay before too neat the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might dismiss them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodorick* a *Patrician* of the *Roman* Empire, an honour first devised by the Emperour *Constantine*, and of so high esteem from the first Institution, that they who were dignified therewith were to have precedency of the *Pretorio Prafecti*, who before took place next to the Emperour himself. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* set upon it any lower estimate, in case he did not adde much unto it; when to the Title of Emperour of the *Romans*, he added that of a *Patrician* in the stile Imperiall. *Theodorick* thus authorized and incouraged, marches toward *Italie*, and having vanquished *Odoacer*, secures himself in his new Conquests by divers politick proceedings; first by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortresses at home. To fortifie himself abroad, he took to Wife *Adelheida*, daughter to *Clodovaus* (or *Clovis*) King of the *French*; marying his sister *Hemmelfride* to *Thorismund* King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; *Amalasunta*, a second daughter to *Eutharicus* a Prince of the *Gothes* in *Spain*; and *Ammelberge* his Neece, to *Hermanfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus backed with these Alliances with his neighbour Princes (all equally concerned in the subverting of the *Roman* Empire) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alpes*, and the shores of the *Adriatick*, to impeach the passage of the Barbarous Nations into *Italie*. His Souldiers and Commanders he dispersed into most parts of the Country; partly to keep under the *Italians*, of whose wavering and unconstant nature he was somewhat doubtfull; partly to unite both people in a mixture of Language, Mariages and Customs; and partly that he might more easily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. *Italie*, which before was made a thorow-fare to the Barbarous Nations, and quite disordered by the frequent inundations of Lust and Rapine, he teduced to such a peaceable and setled Government, that before his death they had quite lost the memory of their former miseries, instead whereof a generall felicity had diffused it self over all the Country. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, strengthned, and beautified. In his Wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of Peace, and in his private carriage discreet and affable. Finally (as *Velleius* saith of *Mor oboduus*) he was *Natione magis quam ratione Barbarus*: And went the most judicious way to establish his dominion in *Italie*, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the *Roman* Provinces; which he left thus confirmed and setled unto his Successors.

The Kings of the *Goths* in *Italie*.

A.C.

495. 1 *Theodorick*, of whom before; who to his conquest of *Italie* added that of *Illyricum*, as also the appendant Ilands to both those Countries; and wrested *Provence* in *France*, from the *Gothes* in *Spain*.

527. 2 *Athanaricus*, Nephew to *Theodorick* by his daughter *Amalasunta*, who in the minority of her sonne managed the affairs of the *Gothes* in *Italie*. Fearing some danger out of *Greece*, she restored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilfull in the Languages of all those Nations which had any commerce with the *Roman* Empire, insomuch, that *pro miraculo fuerit ipsam audire loquentem*, saith *Procopius* of her.

534. 3 *Theodatus*, the sonne of *Hammelfride* the Sister of *Theodorick*, succeeded on the untimely death of *Athanaricus*. Who being in War with the *Romans*, and desiring beforehand to know his success, was willed by a *Jew* to shut up a certain number of Swine, and to give to some of them the names of *Gothes*, and unto others the names of *Romans*. Which done, and going to the styes not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothish* faction all slain, and those of the *Roman* half unbristelled, and thereupon the *Jew* foretold, that the *Gothes* should be discomfited, and the *Romans* lose a great part of their strength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called **Oroquarla**, and hath been prohibited by a Generall Counsill 3.

537. 4 *Vitiges.* 3.
540. 5 *Idobaldus.* 1.
541. 6 *Ardaricus.* 1.
542. 7 *Totilus.* 11.
553. 8 *Teyus*, the laſt King of the *Gothes* in *Italy*, who being vanquiſhed by *Narſes* in the fourth year of his Reign, *An.* 567. ſubmitted himſelf to the *Eaſtern* Emperours; after which time the *Gothes* and the *Italians* mingled in bloud and language became one Nation.

But the miſeries of *Italie*, and thoſe Weſtern parts were not ſo to end. No ſooner had God freed them from the rod of his viſitations which he had layd upon them in the times of *Perſecutions* formerly remembred, and given them peace within their dwellings, but they became divided into *ſchiſms* and *faſtions*; and after wallowed in thoſe ſins which a continuall ſurfeit of proſperity hath commonly attending on it. Inſomuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about theſe times, complains of that high hand of wickedneſs, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the lives of *Chriſtians* being grown ſo deplorably wicked, that they became a ſcandall to the Faith and Goſpel. *In nobis patitur* Chriſtus *opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex* Chriſtiana *maledictum*, ſaith that godly Biſhop. So that their ſins being ripe for vengeance, God ſent the barbarous Nations as his *Executioners*, to execute his divine juſtice on impenitent men; and made them ſenſible, though *Heathens*, that it was Gods work they did, and not their own, in laying ſuch afflictions on theſe Weſtern parts. *Ipſi fatebantur non ſuum eſſe quod facerent, agi enim ſe & perurgeri divino juſſu*, as the ſaid godly Biſhop doth inform us of them. On this impulſion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they firſt waſted *Spain*, and then harried *Africk*: And on the ſame did *Attila* the *Hun* inſert into his Royall Titles the ſtile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*, acknowledging thereby his own apprehenſion of ſome ſpeciall and extraordinary calling to this publick ſervice. Nay as *Jornandes* doth report, ſome of theſe barbarous people did not ſtick to ſay, that they were put on this imployment by ſome Heavenly viſions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In proſecution of the which, in leſs time than the compaſs of 80 years, this very *Italie* (though antiently the ſtrength and ſeat of that Empire) was ſeven times brought almoſt unto deſolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, viz. Firſt by *Alarick* King of the *Gothes*, who ſacked *Rome*, *Naples*, *&c.* 2 By *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, who razed *Florence*, waſted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the ſpoil of *Rome*, by the interceſſion of Pope *Leo.* 3 By *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*, who alſo had the ſackage of *Rome* it ſelf. 4 By *Beorgus* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperor *Maioranus.* 5 By *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli*, who drove *Auguſtus* the laſt Weſtern Emperor out of his eſtate, and twice in thirteen years layd the Country deſolate. 6 By *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, called in by *Zeno* Emperour of *Conſtantinople* to expel *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*: And 7 by *Gundebald* King of the *Burgundians*, who having ranſacked all *Lombardy*, returned home again leaving poſſeſſion to the *Gothes.* As for theſe *Gothes*, being the firſt and laſt of thoſe barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the ſpoil of *Italie*, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the ſpace of 72 years, they were at laſt ſubdued by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, two of the braveſt Souldiers that had ever ſerved the Eaſtern Emperours; and *Italie* united once more to the Empire in the time of *Juſtinian.* But *Narſes* having governed *Italie* about 17 years, and being after ſuch good ſervice moſt deſpightfully uſed by *Sophia* (never the wiſer for her name) the wife of the Emperor *Juſtinus*, abandoned the Country to the *Lombards*: For the Empreſs envying his glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government, but ſent him word, *That ſhe would make the* Eunuch (for ſuch he was) *come home and ſpin among her maids.* To which the diſcontented man returned this Anſwer, *That he would ſpin her ſuch a Web, as neither ſhe nor any of her maids ſhould ever be able to unweave*; and thereupon he opened the paſſages of the Country to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*, who comming into *Italie* with their Wives and Children, poſſeſſed themſelves of all that Country which antiently was inhabited by the *Ciſalpine Galls*, calling it by their own names *Longobardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy.* Nor ſtaid he there, but made himſelf maſter of the Countries lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the borders of *Apulia*; and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedoms, 1 of *Friuli* at the entrance of *Italie*, for the admiſſion of more aids if occaſion were, or the keeping out of new Invaders 2 of *Turlu*, at th foot of the *Alpes* againſt the *French*, 3 of *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, againſt the incurſions of the *Greeks*, then poſſeſſed of *Apulia*, and the other Eaſtern parts of that Kingdom: and 4 of *Spoleto* in the midſt of *Italie* to ſuppreſs the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his Succeſſors.

The *Lombardian* Kings of *Italie.*

A.C.
568. 1 *Albonius.* 6.
574. 2 *Clephes.* 1
Interregnum annorum. 11.
586. 3 *Antharis.* 7.
593. 4 *Agilulfus.* 25.
618. 5 *Adoaldus.* 10.
628. 6 *Arioaldus.* 11.
639. 7 *Richaris*, or *Retharis*:

Radoaldus

635. 8 *Radoaldus*. 5.
660. 9 *Aribertus*. 9.
669. 10 *Gundibertus*. 1.
670. 11 *Grimoaldus*. 9.
679. 12 *Garibaldus mens*. 3.
679. 13 *Partaritbus*. 18.
698. 14 *Cunibertus*. 12.
710. 15 *Luithertus*. 1.
711. 16 *Rainbertus*. 1.
712. 17 *Aribertus* II. 12.
723. 18 *Asprandus mens*. 3.
723. 19 *Luitprandus*. 21.
744. 20 *Hildebrandus m*. 6.
744. 21 *Rachisius*. 6.
750. 22 *Astulphus*. 6.
756. 23 *Desiderius*, the last King of the *Lombards*, of whom more anon. In the mean time we will look into the story of some of the former Kings, in which we find some things deserving our consideration. And first beginning with *Alboinus*, the first of this Catalogue, before his comming into *Italie* he had waged war with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepida*, whom he overthrew, and made a drinking cup of his Skull. *Rosamund* daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that detested Cup; which she so stomacked, that she promised one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her self and the Kingdom of *Lombardy*. This when he had consented to, and performed accordingly, they were both so extremely hated for it, that they were fain to fly to *Ravenna*, and put themselves into the protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a desire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be possessed of that mass of Treasure which she was sayd to bring with her; but principally hoping by her power and party there to raise a beneficiall War against the *Lombards*, perswaded her to dispatch *Helmichilde* out of the way, and take him for her husband; to which she willingly agreed. *Helmichilde* comming out of a Bath called for Beer, and she gives him a strong poyson; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the strange operation of it how the matter went, he compelled her to drink the rest: so both died together. 2 *Clephes* the 2d King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*: but was so tyrannical withall, that after his death, they resolved to admit of no more Kings, distributing the Government among 30 Dukes. Which division, though it held not above 12 years, was the chief cause that the *Lombards* failed of being the absolute Lords of all *Italy*. For the people having once cast off the yoak of obedience, and tasted somewhat of the sweetness of licentious Freedom, were never after so reduced to their former duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in such Atchievements as tended more unto the greatness of the King than the gain of the subject. 3 *Cunibert* the 14 King, was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly requited: For being to encounter with *Alachis* the Duke of *Trent* who rebelled against him, one of the *Clergy* knowing that the Kings life was chiefly aimed at by the *Rebels*, put on the Royal Robe and thrust himself into the head of the Enemy. where he lost his own life, but saved the Kings. 4 *Aripert* the 17. King, gave the *Celtian & Ipes* containing *Piemont*, and some part of the Dutchy of *Millain* to the Church of *Rome*; which is observed to be the first Temporall Estate that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the foundation of that greatnes which they after came to. 5 The 19 King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia*, and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchate*, having first wonne *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchie* thereof. *An*. 741. the last *Exarch* being called *Eutychus*. But the *Lombards* long enjoyed not his Conquests: For *Pepin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen* the third sollicited to come into *Italy*, overthrew *Astulphus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The last King was *Desiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the first, and besieging him in *Rome*, was by *Charles* the great, successor to *Pepin*, besieged in *Pavie*, and himself with all his children taken prisoners, *An*. 774. and so ended the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italie* 206 years. *Lombardy* was then made a Province of the *French*, and after of the *German* Empire: many of whose Emperours used to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Bishops of *Millaine*, with an iron Crown, which was kept at *Modoecum*, now called *Monza*, a small Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Fathers former donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marca Anconitana*, and the Dukedom of *Spoleto*. For these and other kindnesses, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo* the fourth, on *Christmas* day crowned Emperour of the West, *An*. 801, whose Successors shall be reckoned when we come to the story of *Germany*. At this division of the Empire, *Irene* was Empress of the East; to whom and her Successors was no more allotted than the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, and the East parts of the Realm of *Naples*, being then in possession of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperour and his father, almost all the Lands which they possesse at this day, though afterwards extorted from them by the following Emperours, or under colour of their Title; by many severall wayes and means brought again unto them, as shall be shewen hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *sui juris*. The rest of *Italie*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuscanie*, *Friuli*, *Trevigima*, and whatsoever is at this day in the possession of the Dukes of *Millaine*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Montferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piemont*, together with *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*, was reserved by *Charles* unto himself, and in his lifetime given by him to *Pepin* his second sonne, with the stile or title of King of *Italie*. But long it did not rest in the house of *France*, the Princes of the *Lombards* wresting it from the line of *Charles*, and after weakning and dividing it by their severall factions; till in the end, instead of an united Kingdom, there rose up many scattered Principalities, as shall hereafter be declared.

red. But first we must proceed to the Kings of *Italie*, of which we shall endeavour as exact a Catalogue as the confusions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italie*, of the *French*, *Italian*, and *German* Lines.

1 *Pepyn*, sonne of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2 *Barnard*, sonne of *Pepyn*.
3 *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
841. 4 *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldest sonne of *Ludovicus* 15.
856. 5 *Ludovicus* II. Emperor, eldest sonne to *Lotharius* 20.
876. 6 *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the youngest sonne of *Ludovicus Pius*. 2.
7 *Caroloman*, nephew to *Ludovicus Pius* by *Ludovicus* his second sonne surnamed the *Antient*.
8 *Carolus Crassus*, or the Fat, Emperor, brother of *Caroloman*, the last King of *Italie* of the house of *Charles*, he died A°.888.
888. 9 *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuly*, both of the *Longobardian* Race, for the Kingdom of *Italie*, and in fine carrieth it against him.
894. 10 *Lambert*, the sonne of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Formosus*.
11 *Ludovick*, sonne of *Boson* of *Ardennes*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by some Writers called onely Earl of *Provence*, upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italie*, and is made King.
917. 12 *Berengarius*, Duke of *Friuly*, vanquisheth *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italie*, and at last overcome by the *Hungarians*, who having wasted the Countrey returned back again.
13 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*, called into *Italie* against *Berengarius*, resigned it in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Cousen.
926. 14 *Hugh D'Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdom of *Italy* upon this resignation; but after many troubles was at last outed of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France*.
946. 15 *Berengarius* II. sonne of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the son of *Hugh*; besieging *Adelhais* the next heir of *Italie* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken prisoner by the Emperor *Otho*.
16 *Otho*, called into *Italie* by *Adelhais*, daughter to *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italie*, marieth the Lady, and in her right is King of *Italie*.
974. 17 *Otho* II. son of the former *Otho*, marieth *Theophania* neece to *Nicephorus Phocus*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dower. 20.
984. 18 *Otho* III. Emperor, and King of *Italie*, in whose minority the Kingdom was usurped by
19 *Harduicus*, a man of great power in *Italie*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*, till being broken with long wars by *Henry* the succeeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
20 *Henry*, the second Emperor of that name, having thrice vanquished *Harduicus*, got the Kingdom of *Italie*, and left the same unto the Emperors his Successors; the Title of *Italie* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire, and the Countrey governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by such Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time sent thither. But long it staid not in that state: For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Politie to weaken the Imperiall Power in *Italie*, without which their own Grandour could not be maintained, stirred up continuall factions and wars against them; and by that means, and by the Censures of the Church which they denounced according as they saw occasion, did so astonish and distract them, that in the end the Emperors began to lay aside the affairs of *Italie*, by which they reaped more trouble than the profit came to. Insomuch that *Rodolfus Habspurgensis*, a valiant and a politike Prince, finding the ill success which *Henry* the fourth and fifth, and *Frederick* the first and second, Emperors of more puissance than himself, had found in their *Italian* actions and pretensions, resolved to rid his hands of that troublesom and fruitless Province, and to that end made as much money as he could of that commoditie, which he saw he was not like to keep. And yet he sold good penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but six thousand Crowns, the Citizens of *Luca* ten thousand, others as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reason why he went not into *Italie* to look to the affairs thereof, as his Predecessors had done before him, he is said to have returned for answer that conceit of the *Fox* for his not going to attend (as the other beasts did) at the Lyons Den.

——— *Quia me vestigia terrent*
Omnia me adversum spectantia, nulla retrorsum.

That

That is to say,

I dare not go, because no tract I see
Of any beast returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident resolution being followed by too many of his Successors, not onely gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themselves the great disposers of the affairs of *Italie*, but many petit Princes thereby took occasion of getting all they could lay hold on for themselves and others. For by this means the *Scaligers* made themselves Masters of *Verona*; the *Passarines* of *Mantua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Baillons* of *Bononia*, and by the same the *Florentines* got *Pistoia*, and *Ferrara* was possessed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry* the 7th. provoked by these indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities to their former obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron Crown, as were also *Ludovicus Bavarus*, and *Charles* the 4th. two of his Successors; yet found they in conclusion such small benefit by the enterprize, as did not quit the charge and trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italie* was left wholly in a manner to the Popes disposing, who gave away to others what they could not manage, or otherwise confirmed those men in their usurpations, whom they found already possessed of the Emperors Countreys, and bound them by that means the faster to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their estates in fee: the Emperors having nothing left them but the empty Title, nor exercising the Imperiall Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms into Marquisates, Marquisates to Dukedoms, which they often did either for ready money, or reward of Service, or to preserve some shadow of their antient Interest.

And now we are to look on *Italie* as under a new face of things, not only in regard of severall Principalities and forms of Government, but as replenished with new Colonies or sets of people, differing from the old in manners as well as language. And though the Soyl be now as it was before, yet hath that also found some change in the different production of the naturall fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and works of Art. For now besides their Corn and Wine which antiently were the staple Commodities of this Countrey, they supply the rest of Christendom with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffaties, Satans, Grograins, Rash, Fustians, Goldwire, Allom, Armour, Glasses, and such like commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy, who being for the most part Gentlemen of noble houses, not onely lose not the esteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandize (as in other places;) but by reason that they are possessed of estates in land, which they manage by their Baylifs and other Servants, they are become the wealthiest Merchants in all *Christendom*.

Nor do the Gentry come behind them in all manner of affluence, which can be possibly enjoyed in so rich a Soyl. Their Lands they set not at a rent, but at thirds or halfs, according as the Soyl is more or less fruitfull, seldom abiding in the Countrey, but only for a moneth or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themselves with their Musick and Mistresses under the fragrant hedges and shadie bowers, in as much solace and delight as may be desired. The residue of the yeer they spend in Cities, and places of the most resort, for change of company. But on the other side, the Countrey Farmer lives a drudging and laborious life, liable to all the Taxes and Impositions which are laid on the Land; the Land-lords part comming in clearly without any disbursements or defalcation; insomuch that it is proverbially, but most truly said, that *the rich men in* Italie *are the richest, and the poor men the poorest in all the world.*

The people generally are grave, respective, and ingenious. Excellent men (said once an *Hispaniolized Italian*) but for these three things; that is to say, in their lusts they are unnaturall, in their malice unappeasable, in their actions deceitfull. To which might be added, that they will blaspheme rather than swear, and murder a man sooner then slander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of some particulars, it being observed by moderate and impartiall men, that they are obedient to their Superiors, to Inferiors courteous, to their Equalls full of all Civilities, to Strangers affable, and most desirous by all fair and friendly offices to win their loves. In apparell they are said to be very modest, in the furniture of their houses sumptuous, at their Tables neat, sober of speech, enemies of all ill reports of others, and of their own reputation so exceeding tender, that whosoever slandereth any one of them, if it come unto the parties ear, he is sure to die for it. Of mony and expence he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more cost, than he is sure to save by, or receive great thanks for: but otherwise for civill carriage and behaviour, surpassing all the Gentry of the World besides. Onely in strictness to their wives they exceed all reason, of whom they are so extremely jealous, that they shut them up all day from the common view, and permit them liberty of discourse with few or none. The lock used by a Gentleman of *Venice* to be assured of his wives chastity in the time of his absence, is so known a story, that it needs no report. But touching the predominancie of this jealous humor in most Southern Nations, we shall speak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet if that be true, which is proverbially spoken by the women of *Italie*, the husbands have more reason for this strict restraint, than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the most part witty in speech, and modest in the outward appearance as much as any; yet

it

Naples. it is ſaid of them in the way of Proverb, that they are *Magpies at the door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devills in the houſe, Angells in the ſtreets, and Sirens in the windows.*

The language of both Sexes is very Courtly and fluent, all of them ſpeaking the *Courtezan*, or Court language, notwithſtanding the diverſity of Dialects which is amongſt them. For though there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Millaneſe* and the *Roman*, the *Neopolitan* and the *Genoeſe*; yet it is hard to be diſcerned by the tone or pronunciation, what language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is beſt ſpoken in the great Dukes Countrey, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Sienna*, but in *Florence* eſpecially, in which City *Guicciardine* the *Hiſtorian*, *Boccace* the Author of the *Decameron*, and other great Maſters of the *Italian* language, did live and flouriſh in their times.

For other men of note both for Arts and Arms, *Italie* hath afforded many ſince the fall of the Empire, *viz. Aeneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the name of *Pius* the ſecond. 2. *Marſilius Patavinus*, a ſtout defender of the Imperiall Rights. 3. *Petrarch*, a *Roman* born. 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Reſtorer of polite Literature in *Italie*. 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*; and 6[ly]. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians. 7. *Guido Bonatus* a famous Aſtrologer. 8. *Arioſto*, and 9[ly]. *Taſſo*, the moſt renowned Poets of their times, and the later never followed ſince. 10. *Sixtus Senenſis*, one of the beſt Antiquaries of the Nation, and a great Divine. 11. *Bellarmine*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Buttreſſes and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms, 1. *Ludovicus Conius*, the firſt Reſtorer of the honor of the Italian Souldiery. 2. *Forti-Bracchio*, and 3. *Nicolao Picinino*, two of his training up in the feats of Chivalry. 4. 5. *Sforza* the father and the ſonne, of which the ſonne attained by his valor to the Dukedom of *Millain*. 6. *Chriſtopher Columbus*, a *Genoeſe*. 7. *Americus Veſputius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebaſtian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Diſcoverers of *America*. 9. *Andrea D'Oria*, Admirall of the Navie to *Charles* the fift, and 10. *Ambroſe Spinola* (both *Genoeſe*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*: Which laſt being once upbraided by *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, as iſſued from a Race of Merchants (though otherwiſe of a very antient and noble Family) returned this tart and ſudden Anſwer, that *he thought it a greater honour to him, being a* Merchant, *to have the command of ſo many* Princes, *than it could be unto the other, though a* Prince *by birth, to be under the command of ſo many* Merchants.

The uſuall Diviſion of *Italie* is into ſix parts, 1. *Lombardie*, 2. *Tuſcany*, 3. the Land of the *Church*, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviere de Genoa*, and 6. the Land of *Venice*: and of them there is paſſed this Cenſure according to the principall Cities; *i.e. Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Millain* for beauty, *Genoa* for ſtatelineſs, *Florence* for Policie, and *Venice* for riches. But take it as it ſtands at the preſent time, and

Italie is beſt divided into
- The Kingdoms of { *Naples.* *Sicilie,* *Sardinia.*
- The Land or Patrimony of the *Church.*
- The Dukedoms of { *Urbin.* *Florence.*
- The Common-wealths of { *Venice.* *Genoa.* *Luca.*
- The Eſtates of *Lombardie. i.e.* { The Dukedom of { *Millain.* *Mantua.* *Modena.* *Parma.* *Montferrat.*
  The Principality of *Piemont.*

The Kingdom of NAPLES.

THe Kingdom of *NAPLES* is invironed on all ſides with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tuſcan* Seas, excepting where it joyneth on the Weſt to the *Lands of the Church*: from which ſeparated by a line drawn from the mouth of the River *Tronto* (or *Druentus*) falling into the *Adriatick*, to the Spring-head of *Axofenus*. By which accompt it taketh up all the Eaſt of *Italie*, the compaſs of it being reckoned at 1468. miles.

It hath been called ſometimes the Realm of *Poville*, but moſt commonly the Realm of *Sicil*, on this ſide of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Iſle of *Sicil*, lying on the other ſide of the *Phare* or Streit of *Meſſana*. The reaſon of which improper appellation proceeded from *Roger* the firſt King hereof, who being alſo Earl of *Sicil*, and keeping there his fixed and ordinary reſidence, when he obtained the favour to be made a King, deſired (in honour of the place where he moſt reſided) to be created by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and antient name of the Kingdom, the name or Title of King of *Naples* not comming into uſe till the *French* were diſpoſſeſſed of *Sicil* by the *Aragonians*, and nothing left them but this part of the Kindom, of which the City of *Naples* was the Regall Seat, called therefore in the following times the Kingdom of *Naples*, and by ſome of the *Italian* Writers, the *Kingdom* onely.

This

This is esteemed to be the most fertile place in all *Italie*, abounding in all things necessary for the life of man, and in such also as conduce to delight and Physick; *viz.* Many Springs, and Medicinall waters, Bathes of divers vertues, sundry Physicall herbs. It hath also an excellent breed of Horses, which may not be transported but by the leave of the King, or at least the *Vice-Roy*; great store of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choicest Wines, called antiently *Vina Massica*, and *Falerna*, frequently mentioned by the *Poets*. And as for Merchandise, to *Alexandria* they send Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wine, and to *Venice* Oyl. *Naples.*

The Noblemen or Gentrie hereof, live of all men the most careless and contended lives; and like the Tyrant *Polycrates* in the elder stories, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckoned in this Realm in the time of *Ortelius*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marquesses, 90 Earles, and 800 Barons, and those not only Titular, as in other places, but men of great power and revenue in their severall Countries; insomuch that the yearly income of the Prince of *Bisignan* is said to be an hundred thousand Crowns, one year with the other; the Princes of *Salern*, and St. *Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to serve the King in his Wars, which gives them many privileges, and great command over the common subject; whereby as they were made the abler to assist the King upon any foren invasion, so are they in condition also of raising and countenancing such defections as have been made from King to King, and from one Family to another, as sorted best with their ambitious and particular interesses. For not alone the *Nobles*, but in generall as many of the common people as can be spared from Husbandry, are more addicted to the Wars than they are to Merchandise: The *Nobles* in pursuit of honour, and the *Paisant* out of desire of being in action; so that the greatest part of the Forces which serve the *Spaniard* in the *Low Countries*, are sent from hence. To which, the humour which they have from the highest to the lowest, of going bravely in Apparell, serves exceeding fitly: An humour which is so predominant, in both sexes, that though the *Paisant* lives all the rest of the week in as great servility and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity, yet on the *Sundayes* and *Saints-daies*, he will be sure to have a good Suit to his back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his belly. And for the women, she that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be so pranked up on the Sundaies and other Festivals, or when she is to shew her self in some publick place, that one who did not know the humour, might easily mistake her for some noble Lady.

The principall Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1 *Sibaris*, 2 *Basentus*, 3 *Pescara*, 4 *Trontus*, 5 *Salinellus*, 6 *Vomanus*, 7 *Salinus*, and 8 *Gariglian*. On the banks of this last River, many battels have been fought between the *French* and the *Spaniards* for the Kingdom of *Naples*; especially that famous Battell between the Marquess of *Saluzzes*, Generall of the *French*, and *Gonsalvo*, Leader of the *Spaniards*; the loss of which Victory by the *French*, was the absolute confirmation of the Realm of *Naples* to the *Spaniards*. More famous is this River for the death of *Peter de Medices*, who being banished his Country at the comming of King *Charles* the 8. into *Italie*, and having at divers times in vain attempted to be reimpatriate, followed the *French* Army hither; and after the loss of the day, took ship with others, to fly to *Cajeta*, but over-charging the vessel, she sunk and drowned them all. But most famous is it, in that *Marius*, that excellent, though unfortunate Captain, being by *Sylla*'s faction driven out of *Rome*, hid himself stark naked in the dirt and weeds of this river, where he had not layen long, but *Sylla*'s Souldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the *Minturnians*, being not far off. These men, to please *Sylla*, hired a *Cimber* to kill him, which the fellow attempting (such is the vertue of Majesty even in a miserable fortune) run out again, crying, he could not kill *C. Marius*. This river was of old called *Liris*, and towards its influx into the Sea expatiated into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of *Minturni*, from a City of that name adjoyning.

It is divided into the Provinces of 1 *Terra di Lavoro*, 2 *Abruzzo*, 3 *Calabria inferior*, 4 *Calabria superior*, 5 *Terra di Otranto*, 6 *Puglia*, and 7 the Iles of *Naples*. Some of which have some smaller Territories adjoyning to them, which we shall meet withall as they come in our way.

1 *TERRA DI LAVORO* is bounded on the North and East, with the *Apennine* Hils; on the South, with the Sea; and on the West, with St *Peters Patrimonie*; called antiently *Campania Felix*, in regard of the wonderfull fertilitie of it, and that it was the seat or dwelling of the *Campans*; by some modern *Latinists* named *Campania Antiqua*, to difference it from *Latium*, which they now call *Campagna di Roma*, or *Campania Nova*. And for the other name of *Terra di Lavoro*, or *Terra Laboratoris*, it was given to it, from the continuall labour of the Husbandman in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof: but neither the reason, nor the name so new, as some men suppose. But I am sure, as old as *Plinie*, who calleth these parts sometimes by the name of *Laboria*, sometimes of *Campus Laborinus*, and gives this reason of the name, *quod ingens in eo colendo sit labor*, because of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

The Country so exceeding fruitfull in Wines and Wheat, that by *Florus* the Historian, it is called *Cereris & Bacchi certamen*, and deservedly too. For in this noble Region one may see large and beautifull fields overshaded with rich Vines, thick and delightfull Woods, sweet Fountains, and most wholsome Springs of running water, usefull as well for the restoring of mans

Campania mans health, as delight and pleasure ; and in a word, whatsoever a covetous mind can possibly aim at, or a carnall covet.

Towns of note here were many in the elder times. The principall whereof, 1 *Cajeta*, seated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedness whereof it is thought by *Strabo* to have took the name: the word in the *Laconian* language signifying crooked. Others will have it so called from Καιω, *Uro*, with reference to the burning of the Fleet of *Æneas* by the *Troian* Ladies; for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been so extremely tossed in their former voyages. But why that Fact committed on the furthest coasts of *Sicil*, should be so solemnly commemorated here on the shores of *Italie*, I can see no reason. And therefore we may far more probably derive it from *Cajeta*, the Nurse of *Æneas*, in memory of whom, being buried here, or hereabouts, *Æneas* is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, *Æneid. lib.* 7.

Tu quoque Littoribus nostris Æneia nutrix
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, *dedisti*.

That is to say,

Æneas Nurse, *Caieta*, by her death,
Did to these shores an endless fame bequeath.

But on what ground soever it first had this name, it is assuredly a place of great strength and consequence; and of so special importance for the estate of this Kingdom, that (as *Comines* hath observed) if King *Charles* the 8. had but only fortified it, and the Castle of *Naples*, the Realm had never been lost. 2 *Naples*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, a beautifull City, containing seven miles in compass. It was once called *Parthenope*, and falling to ruin, was new built, and called *Neapolis*. Among other things, here is an Hospital, the revenues whereof is 60000 Crowns, wherewith, besides other good deeds, they nourish in divers parts of the Kingdom 2000 poor Infants. In this City the disease called *Morbus Gallicus*, or *Neapolitanus*, was first known in *Christendom*. This City is seated on the Sea-shore, and fortified with 4 strong Castles, *viz.* 1 Castle *Capodua*, where the Kings Palace was. 2 *Ermo*. 3 Castle *del Ovo*, or the Castle of the Egge; and 4 Castle *Novo*, or the new Castle. But nature hath not done much less to her Fortifications than the hand of Art; the Town being for the most part environed by Sea, or Mountains not to be ascended without great difficulty and disadvantages. Which Mountains, as they seem on that side as a bank to the City, so do they furnish the Citizens with most generous Wines; and being once ascended yeeld a gallant prospect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the seat of the *Vice-Roy*, and the continual resort, if not constant residence of most of the great men of the Realm: which makes the private buildings to be very gracefull, and the publick stately. And yet it had increased much more in buildings than it is at present, if the King had not forbidden it by speciall Edict. And this he did, partly at the perswasion of his Noblemen, who feared that if such a restraint were not layd upon them, their vassals would forsake the Country to inhabit here, so to enjoy the privileges and exemptions of the Regall City: but principally upon jealousie and poynt of State, the better to prevent all revolts and mutinies, which in most populous Cities are of greatest danger. 3 *Capua*, once the head of the *Campans*, seated in a delicious and luxurious soyl, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the seat of the Empire; the other two being *Carthage* and *Corinth*. Being distressed by the *Samnites*, they were fain to cast themselves into the Arms of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but suffered them to live according to their own Laws, as a Free Common-wealth; rather like a Confederate than a Subject-State. Which Freedom they enjoyed, till after their revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when being reduced to their obedience by force of arms, they lost all their Liberties, and hardly scaped its fatall and finall ruin. The pleasures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after the great defeat given to *Terentius Varro* at the battell of *Canna*; whence came the saying, *Capuam esse* Cannas *Annibali*. 4 *Cuma*, a City once of great power and beautie, till *Campania* was subdued by the *Romans*, after which it decayed in both. Near hereunto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Sibyls*, called from hence *Cumæa*; and not far off the Lake called *Lacus Avernus*, the stink whereof is said to have poysoned Birds as they flew over it; supposed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally, from this place it was, that *Æneas* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernall Ghosts to talk with his Father. 5 *Nola*, where *Marcellus* discomfited the forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to understand, that he was not invincible. 6 *Puteolis*, a small Town standing on a Creek of the Sea, just opposite to *Baule*, on the other side of it; from which distant about three miles and an half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridge built betwixt them by *Caligula*, composed of sundry vessels joyned together in such sort, that there was not only a fair and large passage over it, but victualling houses on both sides of it: Over which Bridge thus made, he marched and re-marched in triumphall Robes, as not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made subject to him. And he did (as himself afterwards affirmed to some of his friends) to awe the Ocean, and imitate (if not exceed) the like acts of *Xerxes* and *Darius*, mentioned in the antient Writers; as also to terrifie the *Britans* and the *German* Nations, with the report of such a notable exploit; or (as some thought) to fulfill the prophecie of one *Thrasibulus* a Fortune-teller of those times, who had been often heard to say in the life time of *Ti-*

berius

berius (his next immediate Predeceſſor) that it was as impoſſible for *Caius* to ſucceed in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on horſeback from *Baule* to *Puteolus*. 7 Not far hence, on a Semicircular Bay, ſtnads the City of *Baie* (whereof *Baule* before mentioned is a part) ſo called, as the Poets ſay, from *Baius* one of the companions of *Ulyſſes* in his Navigations. A City in the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire of five miles in length, and two in bredth; ſo wonderfully endued by nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the World was thought comrable to it: *Abruzzo.*

Nullus in Orbe locus Baiis *prælucet amœnis.*
Few places in the World there are
With pleaſant *Baie* to compare. As it is in *Horace.*

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitudes of *Baths*, or *Bannidi*, Imperial Palaces, ſtately buildings, and the adjoyning Mannor-houſes of the principall *Romans*, whom the pleaſures of the place invited hither; and was indeed too great and ſenſible a monument of the laſciviouſneſs and luxury of that proſperous people (of which the *Ambubaia* mentioned in the *Satyriſt* is ſufficient proof;) now ſo demoliſhed by War, and devoured by water, that there is nothing of it to be ſeen but ſome ſcattered ruins. 8 *Miſenus*, ſeated near a great hiil or *Promontory* of the ſame name, at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious harbour, where *Auguſtus* keeping one Navy, and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole *Roman* Empire. But theſe were places of renown in the former times, all which, excepting *Naples*, are now only known by what they have been, not by what they are. The principall Cities at this time, are (next to *Naples* it ſelf) *Seſſa*, the *Sinneſſa* or *Suiſſa* of the antients, and now the title of a Dukedom, 2 *Ceano*, 3 *Salvi*, 4 *Averſa*, 5 *Venafre*, and 6 *Caſerte*, with others, to the number of 22, beſides 166 Caſtles or defenſible places. Here is alſo in this Tract the Hils called *Gallicanum*, where *Annibal* that great Maſter in the Art of War, frighted that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the ſtratagem of two thouſand Oxen, carrying fire in their horns, by which device he freed himſelf out of thoſe difficult *Streights* in which he was at that preſent. And in this Country there is alſo the Hill *Veſuvius*, that caſteth out flames of fire, the ſmoak of which ſtifled *Plinie ſenior*, coveting to ſearch the cauſe of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly alſo during the reign of *Titus*, caſting out not only ſuch ſtore of ſmoak, that the very Sun ſeemed to be in the *Eccliplſe*, but alſo huge ſtones, and of aſhes ſuch plenty, that *Rome*, *Africk*, and *Syria*, were even covered, and *Herculanum* and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italy*, were overwhelmed with them. There were heard diſmall noyſes all about the Province; and Gyants of incredible bigneſs ſeen to ſtalk up and down about the top and edges of the mountain; which extraordinary accident, either was a cauſe, or preſage of the future Peſtilence which raged in *Rome* and *Italy* long after.

On the Eaſt ſide of this *Campania*, and properly (as antiently it was eſteemed) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonſo* King of *Naples* cauſed to be called the *Principate*, extending in length 33 miles, and 16 in bredth, and was of old the ſeat of the *Picentini*, a Colony of the *Piceni* dwelling on the *Adriatick*. Principall places of it, 1 *Maſſa*, by the *Italians* called *Marſo*, of more note for the Hils adjoyning, than any great beauty or antiquity it hath in it ſelf. Thoſe hills now called *Monte Marſo*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Montes Maſſici*, of ſpeciall eſtimation for the rich Wines, called *Vina Maſſica*. 2 *Nucéria*, nine miles from the Sea, in a very plentifull and delicious ſoyl. 3 *Rivelli*, a City not long ſince built, which for the elegancy of the buildings hardly yeelds to *Naples*. 4 *Malfi*, or *Amalphi*, an Arch-Biſhops See, in which it is ſuppoſed that the Mariners Compaſs was firſt found out. It is ſituate on the Sea ſide, and giveth name to the coaſt of *Amalfe*, fenced with Hils or Mountains of ſo great an height, that to look down into the Vallies or the Sea adjoyning, makes men ſick and giddy. A Town of great note (were there nothing elſe to commend it to our obſervation) for the finding out of the *Mariners Compaſs*, deviſed and contrived here about the year 1300, by one *Iohn Flavio*, a native or inhabitant of it. 5 *Salern*, about a mile from the Sea, the title of the Prince of *Salern*, and an Univerſitie, but chiefly for the ſtudy of *Phyſick*, the Doctors of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerni*, dedicated to a King of *England*: not to K. *Henry* the 8. as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it written by *Arnoldus Villanovanus*, who lived about the year 1313, muſt needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated either to King *Richard* the firſt, or King *Edward* the firſt, who in their journeys towards the *Holy Land*, might beſtow a viſit on this place, and give ſome honourary incouragement to the Students of it. Through this *Principate*, or this part of *Campania*, runs the River of *Silarus*, croſſing in a manner the very midſt of it. There are ſayd to be in this ſmall Territory, fifteen good Towns, and two hundred and thirteen Caſtles or walled places.

2 *North* of *Campania*, lyeth the Province now called *ABRUZZO*, bounded on the *Eaſt*, with *Puglia* or *Apulia*; on the *Weſt*, with *Marca Anconitana*; on the *North*, with the *Adriatick* Sea; and on the South, with the *Apennine*. It is called *Aprutium* by the *Latins*, the Country heretofore of the antient *Samnites*; a people which held longer wars with the ſtate of *Rome*, than almoſt all *Italy* beſides, as keeping them in continuall action for the ſpace of 70 years together, beſides many after-claps. In which long courſe of Wars, the *Romans* were ſo hardly put to their ſhifts, that they were four times fain to have recourſe to the laſt refuge, which was the chooſing of *Dictators*; and yet came off ſo often with ſucceſs and victory, that it afforded them the honour

Abruzzo of thirty Triumphs. But theſe *Samnites*, as they were a potent, ſo they were alſo a compound Nation; conſiſting of the *Ferentani*, *Caraceni*, *Peligni*, *Præcatini*, *Veſtini*, *Hirpini*, and *Samnites* properly ſo called; into which name the reſt of the inferiour Tribes were after ſwallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Samnium*, whence they had their name; which in the concluſion of the War was ſo defaced by *Papyrius* the *Roman* Conſul, *ut hodie* Samnium *in ipſo* Samnio *requiratur*; that not improperly (ſaith *Florus*) a man might ask where *Samnium* ſtood, even in the middle of the City. How it came by this new name of *Aprutium*, I am yet to learn.

The River of *Peſcara* runneth thorow the midſt of it, and divideth it into two parts, whereof the one containeth 5 Cities, and 150 Caſtles, or walled places; the other, 184 Caſtles, and 4 Cities. The principall Cities of the whole, 1 *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we find in *Pliny*, becauſe the Windes hereabouts were ſo fierce and violent, that men could not ſit upon their horſes; but had at laſt that name of *Beneventum* from the pleaſant Plains and ſpacious Vallies which ly round about it; in like manner as the Country of the old *Allobroges* exchanged the name of *Malvoy* into that of *Salvoy*. It was one of the four Dukedoms which the *Lombards* erected when they firſt came into *Italie*, for the better aſſuring of their Conqueſt; and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo* the ninth to the Church of *Bamberg*, where the ſaid Emperour was born, and is ſtill under the command of the Popes of *Rome*. 2 *Aquila*, built by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Naples*, to aſſure the Realm upon that Quarter. 3 *Lanliano*, four miles from the *Adriatick*, a Town of great Trade, and much reſorted to by Merchants at her Annuall Marts. 4 *Ortona*, the Port-town unto *Lanciano*. 5 *Teranum*, or *Teran* (*Ptolomy* calls it *Inter-amna*) antiently the *Metropolis* of the *Præcatini*. 6 *Citta di Chieti*, ſituate on a Hill ſome ſeven miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. Here is in this Tract 7 *Aquino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas* the great School-man, who firſt brought the ſcattered limbs of Popery into a body. And 8 *Sulmo*, honoured with the birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himſelf teſtifieth.

Sulmo *mihi Patria eſt, gelidis uberrimus undis,*
Millia qui novies diſtat ab Urbe *decem.*

Full of cool ſtreams *Sulmo*, my native land,
From the great City ninety miles doth ſtand.

There belongeth alſo to *Abruzzo* the Country of *Moliſis*, in which are 104 walled places or Caſtles, and four conſiderable Towns; the principall of which is *Boviamum*, or *Boiano*, now a Biſhops See. In this Country alſo (I mean *Abruzzo*) are the ſtreights called *Furcæ Caudinæ*, in which when the *Samnites* and their confederates had ſo incloſed the *Romans*, that there was no poſsibility to eſcape, they ſent to *Herennius*, a man for his Age much honoured, and for his Wiſdom much followed by them, to know what they ſhould do with the captive Enemy. Word was returned, that they ſhould ſend them home ſafe, and without diſhonour. Thinking the old man had not been well informed of the ſtate of the buſineſs, they ſent to him again, and he adviſed, that they ſhould put them all to the ſword. Theſe contrary Anſwers made them judge amiſs of the old mans brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they ſpoyled the *Romans*, and diſarmed them, and deſpightfully uſed them, and ſo ſent them home. Which when *Herennius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of ſo raſh an action; but much more the deſtruction of his Countrey, as a conſequent of it. Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a ſafe and honourable deliverance from the preſent danger, they had made them their friends for many Ages; or had they put unto the ſword ſo many of their Souldiers and chief Commanders, they had diſabled them for long time from purſuing the War: The middle way which they had taken, would be their undoing; and ſo accordingly it proved: For the *Romans* not being made their Friends by ſo odious a benefit, but hatching Revenge for the diſgrace, ſoon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papyrius* ſubdued the Countrey, and handled the poor conquered people with the like deſpight. An excellent preſident unto Princes and thoſe in power, how to proceed towards men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under, which muſt be, *either not to ſtrike at all, or to ſtrike home and to the purpoſe*. *Nic. Machiavil* in his *Florentine* Hiſtory taxeth *Rinaldo* of *Albizi* for committing a great *Soloecism* in point of State, in that hating *Coſmo de Medices*, and deſiring to remove him from the publick managery of affairs, he thought it was ſufficient to procure his Baniſhment: which *Coſmo*, afterwards returning, payd in better coyn. Whereupon he inferreth this notable *Aphoriſm*, that *Great Perſons muſt not at all be touched, or if they be, muſt be made ſure from taking Revenge*. Yet do I not interdict a Prince, or any ſupreme Governours, the uſe of *Mercy*. I know it is the richeſt Jewel which adorns the Crown. Nor dare I take upon me to direct the uſe of that excellent vertue. Only I ſhall obſerve what uſage hath been commonly afforded towards ſuch perſons after their *Delinquencies*; whoſe liberty or life may create danger to the publick. The firſt is preſent Execution; for *Mortui non mordent*, as the ſaying is: a courſe more to be allowed of where it cannot, than commended where it may be ſpared. The ſecond is either cloſe impriſonment under truſty Guards, or elſe confinement to the houſe and cuſtody of ſome truſty Stateſman: in which great caution alſo is to be obſerved: For beſides that nothing

thing is more ordinary than the eſcape of great Priſoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their Keepers. We find in our own Hiſtories, how Dr. *Morton* Biſhop of *Ely*, being committed to the Duke of *Buckingham* by King *Richard* the 3. not onely procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary faction. The laſt, which is in all times the gentleſt, and in ſome caſes the ſafeſt, is not only an abſolute pardon of life, and a grant of liberty, but an endearing of the party *delinquent*, by giving him ſome place of honour, or committing unto his fidelity ſome office of truſt; it being the nature of moſt men, that where they are not truſted, they are never true; and that as long as they ly under ſuſpect and jealouſies, they will be apt to entertain ſome thoughts of their loſt condition. And of this kind of dealing with a perſon *Delinquent*, we have a pregnant inſtance in the Emperor *Otho*, who not only pardoned *Marius Celſus* one of *Galba*'s faction, and a chief one too, but put him in place neareſt to him, and made him one of his principall Leaders in the following War againſt *Vitellius*. His reaſon was, *Ne hoſtis metum Reconciliationis adhiberet*, leſt lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but badly made up. And on the other ſide, *Marius Celſus* proved ſo ſenſible of the obligation, that he continued faithfull to him to the very laſt, and loſt his life in the purſuance of his quarrell; ſhewing thereby, that perſons of a generous and noble diſpoſition, are more obliged by favours, than reſtrained by terrour. But it is now time I ſhould free my ſelf of theſe *Furcæ Caudinæ*, and ſport my ſelf a while in the Plains of *Calabria*. *Naples.*

But I muſt note, before I take my leave hereof, that theſe two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo*, make up the greateſt, richeſt, and beſt peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority both of claim and power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to theſe two for Wealth and Greatneſs; and were aſſigned over to the *Spaniard*, as lying moſt conveniently for the Realm of *Sicilie*.

Of theſe, the firſt are the *CALABRIAS*, ſo called from the *Calabri* an antient people of this tract, which take up totally that *Peninſula*, or Demi-Iland, which lyeth at the South-Eaſt end of *Italie*, near the *Fare* of *Meſſana*. Amongſt ſome of the Antient Writers, the name *Italie* did extend no further than this *Peninſula*, bounded by the two Bayes called *Sinus Scilleticus*, and *Sinus Lameticus*; becauſe firſt peopled out of *Greece*, or otherwiſe firſt known unto the old Writers of that Country. For ſo ſaith *Ariſtotle* in his ſeventh Book of *Politicks*, cap. 10. Τὴν ἀκτὴν ταύτην τῆς Εὐρώπης Ἰταλίαν τόποτε λεχθῆν, &c. That part of *Europe* which is comprehended betwixt the Bay *Scilleticus*, and *Lameticus*, took the name of *Italie*; and this Tradition he received (as he there affirmeth) from the beſt Antiquaries of that Country. The like occurs in *Dionyſius Hallicarnaſſeus* out of *Antiochus Syracuſanus* a more antient Author; the like in *Strabo*, *Lib.* 6. But by what name ſoever it was called at firſt, that of *Calabria* hath held longeſt and moſt conſtantly to it, as being known by that name in the times of the *Romans*, and ſo continuing to this day; *Ennius* the old Poet being a native of this Country, and ſo called by *Ovid* in his 3d *de Arte*.

Ennius emeruit Calabris *in montibus hortos.*
Old *Ennias* his Garden tills
Among the ſteep *Calabrian* hils.

But leaving theſe matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Country as it ſtands at the preſent; and was the title of the eldeſt ſonnes of the Kings of *Naples*, who heretofore were called Dukes of *Calabria*, divided of late times into *inferior*, and *ſuperior*; in which diſtinct capacityes we ſhall look upon it. Premiſing only by the way, that this Country was the Title of the eldeſt ſonnes of the Kings of *Naples*, who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that before it was ſubjected to thoſe Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holofernes* whoſe daughter *Flora* was married unto *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, being King hereof, *An.* 1098. 3 *CALABRIA INFERIOR*, the habitation of the *Brutii*, whom the *Greek* Writers generally call *Bretti*, and their Country *Brettania*: upon which ground ſome of our modern *Criticks* (envying ſo great an honour to the Ile of *Great Britaine*) have transferred to this Province the birth of *Conſtantine*, the firſt Chriſtian Emperour. Theſe *Brutii* being firſt conquered by the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Italie*, after the great defeat of *Canne* took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Annibal*, whom the *Romans* had ſhut up in this corner. It hath on the Eaſt a branch of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the Weſt, that part of *Campania* which is called the *Principate*; on the North, *Calabria ſuperior*; and on the South, the *Tyrrhenian* Seas, and the ſtreight of *Meſſana*. A Country not much ſhort in fruitfulneſs of the reſt of the Kingdom; and having the advantage of ſo much Sea, is the better ſituate for Traffick. At one extremity hereof is the *Promontory* called by *Ptolomy Lenco-Petra*, now *Cabo di Spartimento*; all along which, eſpecially in the moneth of May, are taken yeerly great ſtore of *Tunnies* (a fiſh which much reſembleth mans fleſh) which being barrelled up are ſold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers alſo of a very ſtrange nature: of which the one called *Crathis*, makes a mans hair yellow, and dies ſilk white; the other named *Buſentus*, cauſeth both hair and ſilk to be black and ſwarthy.

The principall Cities of it are, 1. *Conſenſia* an antient Town, comprehending ſeven little

Calabria. hills, and a Castle on the top of one of them, which commandeth both the Towu and the Countrey adjoyning. It is built betwixt the said two Rivers, and is still reasonably rich, though not so wealthy now as in former times. 2. *Rhegium*, or *Rhezo*, on the Sea shore, opposite to *Messana* in the Ile of *Sicilie*, which is supposed to have been broken off from the rest of *Italie*, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the *Greek* word ῥήγνυμι, which signifieth to break off, or to tear asunder. A Town in former times very well traded, but left desolate in a manner since the yeer 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3. *Castravillare*, seated upon the top of a very high Mountain. 4. *Belmont*, and 5. *Altomont*, two very fair Towns, whose names sufficiently express their pleasant and lofty situations. 6. S. *Euphemie*, from whence the Bay which anciently was called *Sinus Lametinus*, or *Lametirius*, is now called *Golfo de S. Euphemie*. 7. *Nicastro*, three miles from the Sea, the same with *Newcastle* in *English*.

On the West side of this *Calabria*, and properly a part thereof standeth that mountainous Countrey, which in the Subdivision of these Provinces by King *Alfonsus*, was called the *BASILICATE*, anciently the Seat of the *Lucani*: A Countrey heretofore very unsafe for Travellers, by reason of the difficult wayes, and assured company of Theeves, but now reduced to better order. It containeth in it ninety three walled places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are *Possidonia*, or *Pest*, a City situate in so clement and benign a Soyl, that Roses grow there thrice a yeer. 2. *Poly Castrie* on the Sea shore, (as the former is) honoured with the Title of a Dukedom. And 3. *Dian*, or *Dianum*, a more midland City, neer which there is a valley twenty miles in length, and four miles in bredth, which for all manner of delights and fruitfulness yeelds to none in *Naples*.

4. *CALABRIA SUPERIOR*, called formerly *Magna Gracia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Grecians*, hath on the East the *Adriatick*; on the West, *Campania*; from which it is divided by the *Apennine* and the River *Crathis*; on the North, *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarento*; and on the South and South-East, *Calabria inferior*, and *Golfo di Chilaci*, of old called *Sinus Scilleticus*. The principall Cities at this time are, 1. *Belcastro*, eight miles from the Sea, where once stood *Petilia*. 2. *Bisignan*, the title of a Prince, fortified with a very strong Castle, and endowed with the best Revenues of any principality or other Nobleman of Title in all the Kingdom. 3. *Matera* an Arch-Bishops See, a rich Town and well peopled. 4. *Rosanum*, three miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and situate in a very fruitfull and pleasant Soyl. 5. *Altavilla*, which gives title also to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*.

As for the chief Cities of the Greeks in the former times, they were *Locris* founded by the *Locrians*, a people of *Achaia*. Here lived the Lawmaker *Zaleucus*, who ordering Adultery to be punished with the loss of both eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Sonne, as the first offendor. Therefore to shew the love of a Father, and the sincerity of a Judge, he put out one of his Sonnes eys, and one of his own. He also provided in his Laws, that no woman should be attended in the street with more than one Maid, but when she was drunk; that she should not go abroad at night, but when she went to play the Harlot; that she should not wear gold or embrordered apparell, but when she meant to set her self to open sale; and that men should not wear rings and tissues, but when they went about the prostituting of some woman; and many others of this mould. By means whereof both men and women were restrained from all extraordinary trains of Attendants, and excess of Apparell; the common consequents of a long and prosperous tranquillity. It was also famous in old times for the victory which *Ennomus* an excellent *Musician*, obtained against *Aristonus* of *Rhegium*, another of the same profession. For though *Aristonus* had made his prayers unto *Apollo* the God of *Musick* for his good success; yet *Ennomus* plainly told him, that Nature was against him in that contention, which had made all the Grashoppers mute on that side of the water. And so accordingly it happened. For when the day appointed came, *Ennomus* had the ill hap to break one of his Harpstrings, even in the middle of his Musick, when presently a *Grashopper* leaped upon his *Harp*, and supplied most melodiously the place of the broken string; and by that means obtained the victory to *Ennomus*. An accident not unworthy of the Muse of *Strada*, in his personating of the Poet *Claudian*. And though I bind not any man to believe this *Tale* (though of *Strabo*'s telling) yet there are very good Authors for thus much thereof, that on the one side of the River *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from *Rhegium*, the Grashoppers do merily sing; but on the other side, which is that towatds *Rhegium*, they are always silent. 2. *Tarentum*, a Town of no less note, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*, first built by the *Spartans*: the people whereof having a great command on the Countrey adjoyning, were one of the last *Italian* Nations taken in by the *Romans*. *Nam quis post* Tarentinos *anderet*. For who durst stir when once the *Tarentines* were vanquished? saith the Historian. In defence of this people did *Pyrrhus* war against the *Romans*; the hopes of getting this place by *Annibal*, was the loss of *Capua*; and finally here lived *Architas* so famous for his flying Dove. 3. *Crotona*, the Inhabitants whereof were once so active, that at one *Olympick* meeting the *Victors* were all of this one Town. Their glory much decayed in a battell against the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thousand of them and their Confederates were vanquished by fifteen thousand of the enemy. 4. *Amycle*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoreans*, who having been often terri-

terrified with a falſe report of the approach of their enemies, publiſhed a Law prohibiting all ſuch reports: by which means their enemies comming unawares, poſſeſſed themſelves of it. Hence grew the Proverb, *Amyclas ſilentium perdidit*; and hence that notable ſaying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be ſilent, returned this anſwer, *Mihi neceſſe eſt loqui, Scio enim* Amyclas *ſilentio periiſſe*. 5. *Sibaris*, a City built by the *Grecians* after the deſtruction of *Troy*, the people whereof were Lords of five and twenty good Towns, and could arm thirty thouſand men. A people ſo effeminate, that they permitted no Smith nor Brazier, no nor ſo much as a Cock, to live amongſt them, becauſe they would not have their ſleeps diſturbed; but the Cookers, and Muſicians were in high requeſt: which advantage the *Crotonians* taking (with whom then in hoſtility) they entred the Town in the habit of *Muſicians*, and ſo maſtered it. Before which accident there had been a Prophecy, that the Town ſhould never be taken, till men were more eſteemed than the Gods themſelves. It hapned that a Slave being grievouſly beaten by his Maſter, and obtaining no pardon for the Gods ſake, upon whom he called, fled to the monument of ſome of his Maſters Anceſtors, and was pardoned by him; which coming to the ears of *Amyris* the Philoſopher, he forſook the Town, moſt men holding him mad, in a time of no danger to leave ſo delicate a Seat: Whence came the Proverb, *Amyris inſanit*, applied to ſuch as under the pretence of madneſs or folly do provide for their ſafety. *Terra di Otranto.*

5. *TERRA DI OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eaſtern part of *Apulia Daunia*, the ſeat and habitation in theſe times of the *Salentini*, the *Japyges*, and the *Meſapians*, and is accordingly entituled in antient Authors by the ſeverall names of *Japygia*, *Meſapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the laſt people of *Italie* which held out againſt *Rome*, and ſunk immediately after the *Tarentini*, upon whoſe fate they did depend. Of theſe three Nations the *Japyges* were of greateſt fame, or of greateſt infamy. *Cretans* originally, ſent in queſt of *Glaucus* the ſonne of *Minos*, whom when they could not finde, and durſt not return without him, they fixt here their dwelling; *Japyx* the ſonne of *Dedalus* being their Captain and Conductor, and from him denominated. Growing into eſtate and power, they became not only ſo luxurious in their courſe of life, and effeminate in their dreſs and habit, that they were a ſcorn and ſcandall to their Neighbour-Nations; but ſo regardleſs of their Gods, that in the end they threw down all their Images, and deſtroyed their Temples. Puniſhed at laſt for theſe high inſolencies by balls of fire falling on them from the heavens, with which the whole ſtock of them were almoſt extirpated. The Promontory called *Japygium* did take name from this people, and from thence the North-Weſt wind (or the Weſt-North-Weſt) which the *Latines* generally call *Caurus*, frequently blowing from this Coaſt, had the name of *Japyx*, occurring by that name in the 8th. of the *Æneids*, and in *Horace*, Carm. l. 1. Ode 4.

But to proceed; This Countrey is invironed on all parts with the *Adriatick*, ſaving where it joyneth with *Apulia* by an *Iſthmus* of about thirty miles in bredth, reaching from *Brundiſium* to *Tarentum*, and is from land to land as you go by water about two hundred miles in compaſs. It hath the name of *Terra di Otranto*, in Latine *Terra Hydruntina* from the Town of *Hydruntum*; the ſoyl thereof is very fruitfull if well manured, abounding in Corn, Oyl, Melons, Citrons, Saffron, and other Commodities of good price, for which they never want the company of the Merchants of *Genoa*. They are many times much indangered by *Graſhoppers*, which commonly devour all whereſoever they come, and would in one night conſume whole fields of ſtanding Corn, if Divine Providence by ſending the birds called *Gaives* amongſt them, did not provide a remedy for ſo great a miſchief. The greateſt defect hereof is the want of water, which notwithſtanding, they have very rich paſtures; the people are conceived to be the ſimpleſt, or moſt void of craft of any in *Italie*, perhaps becauſe they have ſo little commerce with their own Countrey-men, and ſo much with Strangers.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Lecci*, *Aletium* in *Latine*, a rich Town, well built, and very well peopled. 2. *Caſtro*, a Sea Town, but not well fenced by art or nature, which hath made it very often a prey to the *Turks*. 3. *Gallipolis*, a Town built on ſo craggy a Rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4. *Brunduſium*, the head Town of the *Salentini*, once glorying in the moſt capacious Haven in all the World; from whence there was continuall paſſage into *Dalmatia*, *Epyrus*, *Macedon*, and the reſt of *Greece*. Here was it that *Pompey* took ſhip to flie from *Cæſar*, and *Cæſar* took ſhipping alſo to purſue after him, when to incourage the Pilot who was afraid of the ſtorm, he cryed out, *Cæſarum vehis & fortunam ejus*. It was firſt built by the *Ætolians* under the conduct of one *Diomedes*, and called *Bronteſion*, which in the *Meſapian* Tongue ſignifieth the horn or head of a Stag, which it much reſembleth, from whence the *Latines* gave it the name of *Brunduſium*. At this day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being ſo choked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very antient Town, and yet ſtill reaſonably well peopled, having a ſtrong Caſtle upon a Rock for its defence, and a capacious port for Traffick, It is now called *Otranto*, and is ſtill a place of ſuch importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the great, *An.* 1481. put all *Italie* into ſuch a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandoned; not well inhabited again till the expulſion of the *Turks*, in the next year following.

6 *PUGLIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Terra di Otranto*; on the Weſt, with *Abruzzo*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Country called of old *Apulia*, from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians*, and the *Poüille* of the *French* are to be derived.

Apulia. It is divided by *Leander*, into *Apulia Peucetia*, and *Apulia Daunia*, the reason of which names I am unresolved of. That of *Peucetia* some derive from *Peucetius* the Brother of *Oenotrus*, which may be probable enough; this being the first Country at which *Oenotrus* touched, when he brought his people into *Italie*. *Bochartus*, a great Enemy to all Traditions, will have it called Πευκετια ἀπὸ τῶν πεύκων, from that great plenty of Pitch which these Countries yeeld (as that word ignifieth in the *Greek*.) But as for that of *Daunia*, I have yet found no more probable conjecture of it, than that it should be called thus of *Daunus*, the sonne of *Danae* by *Pilumnus*, once the King of this Country; it being reported in the Legends of those elder times, that *Danae* being delivered of *Perseus* whom she had by *Jupiter*, was by her Father the King *Acrisius*, exposed to the mercy of the Seas; by which she was wafted with her young sonne to the coasts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fisher, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became so enamoured of her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Daunus*. But *Daunus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by force or composition he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*, who at the end of the *Trojan* War, wherein he was a principall Actor, hearing of the libidinous courses of his Wife *Ægiale* abhorred the thought of living with her, and so came with his people to this Country, where he fixt his dwelling, and built the City of *Argyripa*, whereof more anon. But as for *Daunus*, though he was not able to keep the possession of this Country, yet he bequeathed his name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with such of his subjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief or head of the *Rutuli*, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief seat at the comming of *Æneas* into *Italie*; betwixt whom, and *Turnus* the sonne of this *Daunus*, grew that deadly fewd, so celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

To proceed now in the description of this Province, in the full latitude thereof it comprehended also the *Salentini*, and other the inhabitants of the land of *Otranto*; for by no other names than those of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, was all the East part of *Italie* held by the *Constantinopolitans*; and by those names was it transferred on *Otho* the third of *Germany*, on his Mariage with *Theophania*, as before is sayd. But take it in the present bounds and acception of it, and it containeth the three Provinces of *Bari*, the *Capitanate*, and *Pouille* the plain, according to the subdivision made by King *Alfonsus*: *Pouille* comprehending the greatest part of *Apulia Daunia*, the rest thereof, which is only the command of the Hill *Garganus*, or the Mount St. *Angelo*, being called the *Capitanate*; and *Bari* comprehending all *Peucetia*. The people both of this Province and the land of *Otranto*, though in other things agreeing with the rest of this Kingdom, have a disease peculiar only to themselves, occasioned by the biting of a little Serpent, whiah they call a *Tarantula*, not curable. There are in the whole, besides the Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Castles or walled places, and 13 Cities. The principall of which are, 1 *Manfredonia*, built and fortified by *Manfred* the bastard King of *Naples* and *Cicilie*, the better to assure these parts of his Kingdom; a stately and magnificent City, and the seat of the Arch-Bishop of *Sipont*; having a very safe harbour for Ships, and an impregnable Citadel for defence thereof. 2 *Barlette*, reckoned one of the 4 most noted Cities of *Italie*; the other three being *Crema* in *Lombardy*, *Prato* in *Tuscany*, and *Fabrianum*, now called *Fabiano*, in *Marca Anconitana*. 3 *Bitontum*, an Arch-Bishops See; one of which was a famous stickler in the Councill of *Trent*. 4 *Asculum*, or *Ascoli*, the Title of a Duke, called by the Antients *Asculum Satrianum*, to difference it from another of the same name in *Anconitana*. 5. *Tranum* an antient City, better built than peopled, for want of a commodious Haven. 6. *Bari*, a fair City, well inhabited, and seated in a very fruitfull soyl, which gives name to one part of the Country, as it is now divided. Here stood in former times the poor Village of *Canna*, *ignobilis Apuliæ vicus*, as it is in *Florus*; *sed quæ magnitudine cladis emersit*, but such a one as afterwards grew famous for the great victory which *Annibal* there got against *Paulus Æmilius*, and *Terentius Varro* the *Romon* Consulls, of whose Army he slew 42700. men upon the place. Which Victory had he husbanded as he should have done, he had utterly subverted the Estate of *Rome*; so that it was most truly (as most tartly) said by *Maherbal*, Generall of his Horse, *Vincere scis* Annibal, *victoria uti nescis*. In this Countrey also stood *Venusia*, whence *Horace* who was there born, is called *Venusinus*; And 2. *Arpinum*, the birth-place of *M. Tullius* that famous Orator.

Here also is Mount *Garganus*, (known by that name in the times of *Virgil*, now called Mount S. *Angelo*) one hundred and twenty miles in compass, defensible both by Art and Nature, insomuch as it is commonly the last place in the Realm of *Naples*, which is given up to the Invader. This evident by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Saracens* for many yeers after the *Normans* had possessed themselves of the rest of the Countrey. Within the Captainship or command of this Fastness, besides many inferiour Towns and Villages, are, 1. The City of *Troia*, the Title of a Duke, and the See of a Bishop. 2. *Luceria*, a rich old City; and 3. *Ascoli* before remembred.

But of most note in this part of *Apulia* was the Town of *Argyripa*, or *Argyroppa*, as some would have it, founded by *Diomedes* in the skirts of this Mountain towards the See, and in that part of it then possessed by the *Japyges* near the land of *Otranto*, as now called. The site thereof so set down by *Virgil* in the 11 of the *Æneid*.

Ille

Ille urbem Argyripam *patria de nomine gentis*
Victor Gargani *condebat* Iapygis *arvis.*
And being *Victor*, he a City builds
Near *Garganus* in th' *Japygian* Fields;
And call'd it *Agyrippa*, by the name
Of ſome known place, in th' land from whence he came.

Iſles of Naples.

By which we alſo may conclude, that it took this name with reference to ſome Town of *Ætolia*, which was the native Country of *Diomedes*. For though I know that many of the antient Writers ſuppoſe it to have been firſt called *Argos Hippium*, with relation unto a famous City of that name in *Peloponneſus*, and after by contraction or corruption to be named *Argyrippam*; yet theſe words of *Patria de nomine Gentis*, do perſwade me otherwiſe: *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Country of *Argolis* where that City ſtood, nor in the whole Demy-Iland of *Peloponneſus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called alſo *Diomedia*, and *Urbs Diomedis*, becauſe of his foundation, and his Royall ſeat, after his fixing in this Country; but at the laſt it came to be called *Arpi*, and by that name was known in the time of the *Roman* greatneſs; now no where to be found but in the ruins of time, and the Records of Antiqnity.

But not to tarry longer on theſe matters of decayed Antiquity, that which is moſt obſervable in this Province for theſe latter times, is that the greateſt riches of it doth conſiſt in the Tribute of Cattell, worth 80000 Ducats yearly in the time of *Guicciardine*, and by him reckoned one of the faireſt Revenews of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which when the *French* could have no part, this Province, after the diviſion which they made with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* (whereof more anon) being fallen to the *Spaniard*, they brake out into open War, and ſeeking thereby to improve their Patrimony, loſt their whole intereſs in this Kingdom.

The *ISLES* of *NAPLES* are either in the *Adriatick* and *Tuſcan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteolis*. In the *Adriatick* Sea, are the Ilands of *Diomedes*, right againſt *Apulia*, where it encountereth with *Abruzzo*, ſo called from *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War (in which he was ſo great a ſtickler) ſettled himſelf in ſome part of *Apulia*; the principall whereof are St. *Maries*, St. *Dominico*, and *Tremitana*. 2 The Iland of *Acates* over againſt the Town of *Gallipolis*. 3 St. *Andrews* in the Bay of *Tarentum*; 4 and finally the two Ilands of *Dioſcoros* and *Galypſo*, over againſt the Cape of *Lacinia* now called *Colonnes* in the upper *Calabria*; of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas, are the Ilands of *Pontia* and *Panditaria* (now called *Palmarde*) as little famous as the other; ſave that the laſt is memorable in the *Roman* Stories for the confinement of *Agrippina* the wife of *Germanicus*, and mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperor *Tiberius Nero*.

Thoſe in the *Gulf* or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note. The principall whereof are 1 *Iſchia*, heretofore called *Oenotris* from its plenty of Wine wherewith it aboundeth to this day, as alſo with Allom, Sulphur, and moſt excellent Fruits. It is in compaſs 18 miles, and ſo begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is acceſſible at one entrance onely, and that too fortified with a ſtrong and impregnable Citadell; and therefore choſen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of refuge, when he was outed of his Kingdom by *Charles* the 8. Here is alſo good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2 *Prochita*, now called *Procita*, about ſix miles in circuit, wherein are very wholſome Bathes, good ſtore of Conies, Hares, and Pheaſants; the ſhore repleniſhed with Fiſh, and the land with Fountains. *John de Prochita*, who plotted the *Cicilian Veſpers*, was once Lord of this place; but afterwards, for a reward of that ſervice, made *Vice-Roy* of *Valentia*, a Kingdom of *Spain*. 3 *Caprea*, a ſmall rocky Iland, having no Haven, nor convenient ſtation for Ships, but of a mild and temperate Air; much beautified by *Auguſtus Caſar*, in regard that an old ſapleſs tree upon his caſual landing here, did bud forth afreſh; and after that it was much honoured by his retirement from affairs of State; and as much diſhonoured by *Tiberius* his next Succeſſor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theatre of his Cruelties and moſt filthy Luſts. It hath a little City of the ſame name, having a ſtrong Fortreſs, and a Biſhops See; and another Town called *Anacapra*, inhabited by Fiſhermen, and Ship-wrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Iland they uſed to confine offendors in former times, and ſometimes alſo at this day. 4 *Ænaria*, a ſmall Iland, given by *Auguſtus* to the *Neapolitans*, in exchange for *Caprea*, whoſe before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun, who have ſuffered under more changes and alterations of State than the inhabitants of this Kingdom. For being at the firſt a mixture of ſeverall Nations, ſome of them preyed upon the others, till they were all ſubdued by the power of *Rome*. In the declining of her fortunes, they followed for the moſt part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*; and he being called home, they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italie* was ſubdued by the *Gothes*, it became ſubject to that people, as *Sicil*, and the reſt of thoſe Ilands did; and when the *Lombards* Lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands except *Apulia* and *Calabria*, which the *Greek* Emperors having conquered from the *Gothes* with the reſt of *Italie*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themſelves. In the diviſion of the Empire betwixt *Carolus Magnus* and *Irene*, theſe two laſt Provinces only were aſſigned to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, the reſt to *Charles* and his Succeſſors: both outed of their ſeverall parts by the prevailing *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Sabba*, and other ſucceſſive Ge-

neralls.

Naples. neralls. Theſe partly diſpoſſeſſed by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt and his *Almain* forces; and they again expelled by the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, joyning together againſt them as a common Enemy, who afterwards held bitter wars againſt one another for the ſole command. During theſe wars it happened that one *Drangot* a Gentleman of *Normandy*, having in the preſence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conqueror) ſlain one *Repoſtel* a Gentleman of like quality, to avoid the juſtice of the Prince, and the practices of *Repoſtels* kindred, fled into this Countrey, attended by ſuch of his followers, as either did depend upon his fortunes, or had been medlers in the Fray. Where being come, the Duke of *Benevent*, Vicegerent to the Eaſtern Emperor, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raiſed withall that the *Greeks* hearkened after men of valour and action, cauſed many private Gentlemen to paſs over the *Alpes*, and there to hew themſelves out a more proſperous fortune than formerly they had injoyed. The fortunate ſucceſs of which laſt Adventurers drew thither alſo *Tancred*, the Lord of *Hauteville*, who with his twelve ſonnes came into *Apulia*, A°. 1068. and in ſhort time not only drove the *Saracens* thence, but the *Grecians* alſo, as men that had broke Covenant with them in the diviſion of the Bootie. For *William* the ſonne of *Tancred* combining with *Melorco*, Governour of *Apulia* for the *Greek* Emperour, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salern*, men of power and honour, for the conqueſt of *Sicil* (which the *Saracens* then wholly held) agreed amongſt themſelves to divide the places conquered by them into four equall parts, one for each Adventurer. But when the *Saracens* were driven out, *Melorco* having new ſupplies ſent him out of *Greece*, ſeized on the poſſeſſion of the whole Iſland in the Emperors name. Which injury *William* cunningly diſſembled till *Melorco*'s Forces were diſperſed, and then he ſuddenly ſet upon him; firſt took the City of *Melfi*, and after by degrees moſt of the other Towns and places which the *Greeks* held in *Italie*: of which both he and his Succeſſors kept poſſeſſion, by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* only. Of theſe (though all of eminent vertue) there were two beſides this *William*, of ſpeciall fame, 1. *Robert Guiſcard* the third ſonne of *Tancred*, the moſt valiant Captain of his time, and chief eſtabliſher of the *Normans* power in *Italie*, to which he added in concluſion the Iſle of *Sicil*, together with the citie of *Naples* it ſelf, and all the Lands which lie betwixt it and *Rome*. 2. *Bohemund* the eldeſt ſonne of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* and others of the Weſtern *Chriſtians* to the *Holy Land*, was for his ſignall merits inveſted with the Kingdom of *Antioch*, inherited by his children after his deceaſe.

But to proceed, this *Guiſcard* at his death, (but not without ſome wrong to the children of his Brother *William*, whom he had diſpoſſeſſed of all by the Popes Authority) gave *Sicil*, with the title of Earl to his ſonne *Rogero*; and his eſtates in *Italy* to his other ſonne *William*: who going to *Conſtantinople* to mary with the Emperors daughter, was outed of his part by his brother *Roger*; made not long after, by the Pope, the firſt King of this Familie.

The Kings of *Naples* of the *Norman* Line.

1125. 1 *Roger*, Earl of *Sicil*, created by Pope *Anacletus* 2d. King of both the *Sicilies* at the Town of *Benevent*; which City, in requitall of ſo great a favour, he reſtored again unto the Church, from which it had been taken (after the firſt Donation of it) by the *German* Emperors. 24.

1149. 2 *William*, the ſonne of *Roger*, who to aſſure himſelf of his Kingdoms, was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian* the 4th. to be holden for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.

1170. 3 *William* II. ſonne of the former *William*, who left a daughter called *Conſtance*, who became a Nun. 26.

1196. 4 *Tancred*, the baſe ſonne of *William* the 2d. excluded his Siſter from the Crown, but was ſententially depoſed by Pope *Celeſtine* the 3d. who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himſelf. But when he ſaw that *Tancred* was too ſtrong for him, out of meer ſpight to be defeated of his purpoſe, he called in the *Germans*, the antient Enemies of his See, and gave the Lady *Conſtance*, then almoſt fifty yeers of age, in mariage unto *Henry* the 6th. 2.

The *German* Line.

1198. 5 *Henry*, the ſixt of that name, Emperor, and Duke of *Schwaben*, ſucceeded on his mariage with the Lady *Conſtance*. 4.

1202. 6 *Frederick*, ſonne of the Emperor *Henry* and Queen *Conſtance*, crowned at the age of three yeers, afterwards Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the 2d. He had to wife the daughter of *John de Brenn*, the titulary King of *Hieruſalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever ſince had the title of Kings, and in the rights of this Kingdom, the Kings of *Spain*.

1250. 7 *Conrade*, the ſonne of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Sicil*, as alſo Emperour and Duke of *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*, poiſoned (as it was conceived) by his baſe brother *Manfred*. 4.

1254.

1254. 8 *Muenfroy*, or *Manfred*, baſe ſonne of *Frederick*, and Duke of *Benevent*, firſt governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine* the ſonne of *Conrade*, but after took it to himſelf againſt the will of Pope *Urban* the 4th. who being weary of the *Germans* called in *Charles* Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, brother to *Lewis* the 10th. of *France*: it being uſuall with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well obſerveth) to call new men into *Italie*, and ſtir up new wars for their own ambition; not ſuffering any to poſſeſs that long which themſelves (through their weakneſs) could not hold, and practiſing the over-throw of thoſe very men, whom themſelves had raiſed to power and greatneſs. *Naples.*

The *French* Line.

1261. 9 *Charles*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after crowned by Pope *Urban* the 4th. who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his Succeſſors ſhould aſſume the Empire; and that they ſhould pay fifty thouſand Crowns *per annum* as a Rent to the Church. This *Charles* did alſo vanquiſh *Conradine* the ſonne of *Conrade*, the laſt of the royall houſe of *Suevia*, whom he cauſed to be beheaded at *Naples*. After which bloody Act, neither he nor any of his poſterity did either quietly or long injoy theſe Kingdoms: For in his own time *Peter* King of *Aragon*, clamed the Kingdom of *Naples* in right of *Conſtance* his wife, the daughter of *Manfred*, betwixt whom and *Charles* a ſingle combat was appointed to be fought in *Bourdeaux*, before King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, to decide the Controverſie. But whileſt *Charles* there expected him, he ſeized on *Sicil*, A°. 1281. This *Charles* reigned three and twenty yeers.

1284. 10 *Charles* II. ſonne of *Charles* the firſt, formerly priſoner in *Sicil* to *Peter* of *Aragon*, was ranſomned by the procurement of King *Edward* above-named for 30000. Marks. By *Marie*, daughter of *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen children: the moſt pertinent of which (to our purpoſe) were *Charles* ſurnamed *Martel*, King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother; *Robert* King of *Naples*, *John* of *Durazzo*, and a daughter (whoſe name I finde not) maried to *Charles*, Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Anjou*. 26.

1310. 11 *Robert*, the ſecond ſonne of *Charles* the 2d. 32.

1342. 12 *Joane*, the Neece of *Robert* by his ſonne *Charles*, firſt maried *Andrew*, the ſecond ſonne of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, whom ſhe hanged at her window for inſufficiency; and for her ſecond husband had *Lewis*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-ſtraining himſelf to ſatisfie her carnall appetite, died. Her third husband was *James*, Prince of *Majorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom ſhe beheaded for lying with another woman. Her fourth, *Otho* of *Brunſwick*, a tough Souldier, who had the good fortune to outlive her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdom by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, brother of *Andrew* her firſt husband: reſtored the firſt time by the power of Pope *Clement* the ſixt; but at the ſecond time taken and hanged at the ſame window where ſhe had hanged her firſt husband. But firſt, out of an hatred to her next heirs of the Houſe of *Hungary*, ſhe adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou* (deſcended from *Charles* Earl of *Valois* ſpoken off before) for her heir and ſucceſſor.

The *Hungarian* Line.

1371. 13 *Charles* III. ſonne to *Lewis*, and nephew of Prince *John* of *Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, and the favour of Pope *Urban* the fift, was made King of *Naples*. He overthrew and killed in battell Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*, his competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis* of *Hungary*, ſucceeded in that Kingdom alſo; but long he had not reigned therein, when poiſoned (as it was ſuppoſed) by the old Queen Mother. 15.

1386. 14 *Ladiſlaus*, ſonne of *Charles* the 3d. having a quarrell with the Pope, made a voyage Royall unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: on which diſpleaſure the Pope called in *Lewis* the 2d. Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladiſlaus* a great overthrow. Inſomuch, as *Ladiſlaus* uſed to ſay, that if *Lewis* had followed his victory the firſt day, he had been Maſter of his Kingdom and Perſon too; if the ſecond, of his Kingdom, but not of his Perſon: but not purſuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flye to *Rome*, and give over the Enterprize. 29.

1415. 15 *Joane* II. Siſter of *Ladiſlaus*, of as much levity, but not altogether of ſo ill a fame as the former *Joane*, obſerving the unproſperous ſucceſſes of the houſe of *Anjou*, ſhe adopted for her heir *Alphonſo* the fift of *Aragon*, who had ſome clame unto the Kingdom as the direct heir of *Pedro*, or *Peter* the 3d. and *Conſtance* the daughter of King *Manfred* ſpoken of before. But finding him to ſtand too much on his own right, and to be too forwards in taking a poſſeſſion of it before her death, ſhe revoked that Adoption

Calabria.

doption, and made a new Grant of the Eſtate to *Lewis* the fourth, Duke of *Anjou*, and after his deceaſe to his Brother *Rene*, or *Renatus*; both vanquiſhed by the *Aragonians*.

The *Aragonian* line.

1434. 16 *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon*, partly by Conqueſt, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdom, left it well ſetled unto *Ferdinand* his Natural ſonne. 24.

17 *Ferdinand* the Baſe ſonne of *Alfonſo* (the lawfull ſonnes inheriting the Realm of *Aragon, Sicil, &c.*) ſucceeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.

1494. 18 *Alfonſo* II. ſonne of *Ferdinand*, in whoſe time the *French* began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his Predeceſſors were of the Order of the Garter.

1494. 19 *Ferdinand* II. Sonne of *Alfonſo* the ſecond, outed of his Eſtate and Kingdom by *Charles* the eighth, ſonne of King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France*, whom *Rene* the laſt Duke of *Anjou* had made the ſole Heir of all his Titles and Poſſeſſion. And though *Charles* upon this Conqueſt was ſolemnly crowned, yet poſting back again into *France* before he had ſetled his affairs in this Kingdom, and having much diſcontented the chief men of *Anjouvin* Faction, he loſt it ſuddenly to the ſame *Ferdinand* from whom he had ſo ſuddenly won it.

1497. 20 *Frederick* II. brother of *Alphonſo* the ſecond, and Uncle of this laſt *Ferdinand*, ſucceeded him in his Eſtates; and was the ſixt King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compaſs of three years, that is to ſay, *Ferdinand* the firſt, *Alfonſo* the ſecond, *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Charles* of *France*, the ſecond *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himſelf betrayed by the *Spaniards*, ſubmitted himſelf to *Lewis* XII, King of *France*, and yeelded up his kingdom to him. And indeed what elſe could the poor Prince do, when he ſaw his own blood, and ſuch as had taken his Realm into their protection, conſpiring againſt him.

For when *Charles* made his paſſage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholique, ſent *Gonſalvo*, (who was afterwards for his valour ſurnamed the *Great Captain*) with ſome Forces to reſiſt the *French* Invaders: But when the *French* were expelled, *Gonſalvo* would not leave the Country, becauſe his Maſter had not as yet ſent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between *Lewis* of *France*, and this *Ferdinand*, that they ſhould joyntly ſet upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: and having won it, the *French* ſhould poſſeſs *Abruzzo* and *Lavoro*; the *Spaniards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabria's*: That the firſt ſhould be entituled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apulia*. This Confederacy was kept ſecret till the *French* Forces were come to *Rome*, and *Gonſalvo* poſſeſſed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvell that they made themſelves Maſters of the Country. An Action in which the *French* dealt very unadviſedly, in bringing into *Italie* where he was before the ſole *Moderator*, another King as great as himſelf, to whom as to his *Rivall*, his Enemies might have recourſe on all occaſions; and the *Spaniard* as unnaturally, in betraying for the moity of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own bloud, under pretence and promiſe of ſuccours. But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnerſhip. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their advantages, ſoon picked a quarrell with the *French*, within two or three years drave them out of all, and to this day keep it; though both this *Lewis*, and his ſucceſſors *Francis* the firſt, and *Henry* the ſecond, have divers times, and with great effuſion of blood, attempted the recovery of it.

The *Spaniſh* or *Caſtilian* Line.

1503. 22 *Ferdinand* III. ſurnamed the *Catholick*, King of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 13.

1516. 23 *Charles* V. Emperor, King of *Spain*, and the IV of that name in *Naples*. 43.

1558. 24 *Philip* the 2d of *Spain*, and th firſt of *Naples*. 40.

1598. 25 *Philip* the 2d of *Naples*, 3d of *Spain*. 22.

1621. 26 *Philip* the 3d of *Naples*, 4. of *Spain*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, *Seme* of *Flower de Lyces*, *Or*, a File of three Labels, *Gules*.

The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-rent; and the reſt ſo exhauſted in maintaining Garriſons upon the Natives, and a ſtrong Navy againſt the *Turks*, that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part *de clare*.

Here are in this Kingdom.
Arch-Biſhops 20. Biſhops 127.

THE

Sicil.

The Kingdom of SICILIA.

BEfore we can come into the Ile of *Sicilie*, we muſt firſt croſs that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Faro*, or Streight of *Meſſana*, where the paſſage is ſo ſtrait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and an halt. In other parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is diſtant from the main land of *Italie* neer 200 miles, that is to ſay, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicilie*, to the City of *Napler*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is ſo called becauſe it interlaceth the middeſt of the earth, extending from the Streights of *Gibraltar* on the Weſt, to the Coaſt of *Paleſtine* on the Eaſt, and ſo dividing *Africk* both from *Europe* and *Aſia Minor*. In the Scriptures, *Joſhua* 1.4. it is called by the name of *Mare magnum*, or the *great Sea*; great in compariſon of the *dead Sea*, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other ſide of the land of *Paleſtine*, but ſmall enough if compared to the *Ocean*, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Beſides which generall name of the *Mediterranean*, it hath alſo many particular names, as the *Adriatick*, *Ægean*, *Ionian*; and *Carpathian* Sea, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Lybicum*, where it runneth by the ſhores of *Africk*: with reference to *Italie* called in ſome places, *Mare Tyrrhenum*, in others *Mare Liguſticum*; in ſome parts *Mare Siculum*, and in others *Mare Sardoum*, *Lybicum*, *&c.* And as the *Chameleon* is ſaid to apply it ſelf to the colour of the neareſt adjacent body; ſo this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the neereſt ſhores. Theſe Seas are alſo called by ſome modern Writers, in imitation of the *French*, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*; becauſe in reſpect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, *&c.* they lie towards the Eaſt; the word *Levant* ſignifying in the *French*, a riſing up after ſleep, and more eſpecially the Sun-riſing. The principall Ilands of this Sea which relate to *Italie* (for of others we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) are thoſe of *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and ſome Iſles adjoyning unto theſe.

SICILIE, environed round with the *lower*, or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, contains ſeven hundred miles in compaſs, and is ſuppoſed to have been joyned to *Italie* in former times, being then a *Peninſula*, or Deny-Iland, ſuch as *Peloponneſus*, and joyned unto the Continent by as narrow an *Iſthmus*.

The ſeparating of it from the main Land of *Italie*, is by the Poets aſcribed to *Neptune*, who with his three-forked Mace or *Tridens* broke it off from the land in favour of *Jocaſtus* the ſonne of *Æolus*, that ſo he might inhabit there with the greater ſafety, being inviroued round with waters. Which though it be a Fable or Poeticall fiction, yet with ſome help from the *Mythologiſts* may be made a ſtory. For if by *Æolus* and *Neptune* we underſtand Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the reſt of *Italie*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of ſome Earthquakes, to which this Iland is ſtill ſubject, which might in time conſume and wear away the Earth. Nor want there very good reaſons for this ſuppoſition; as, 1. The narrowneſs of the Streight, exceeding not a mile and a half, inſomuch as at the taking of *Meſſana* by the *Carthaginians*, many of the people ſaved themſelves by ſwimming over this ſtreight into the oppoſite parts of *Italie*; 2dly. the ſhallowneſs of it, being found upon a diligent ſounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Then 'tis obſerved, that the land on both ſides is very brittle, full of caves and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this ſeparation; and that on the *Italian* coaſt where the ſtreight is narroweſt, there ſtands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which ſignifieth a breach or a cutting off, from the *Greek* word *Ῥήγνυμι*, which ſignifies to break off, or violently to pull aſunder, and is ſuppoſed to be ſo called upon this occaſion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is ſo great and dangerous in this narrow channell, ſo ſubject unto bluſtering winds iſſuing out of the hollow caverns of the earth, that the breaking off of this Iland from the reſt of *Italie* is a thing moſt credible. Which dangerous nature of the paſſage, being alſo full of Rocks, and unſafe by reaſon of the Whirl-pools, occaſioned it to be called by *Florus* the Hiſtorian, *Fabuloſis infame monſtris fretum*, chiefly ſo called with reference to *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, of which ſo many fabulous things are reported by the antient Poets. *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on *Sicily* ſide, which violently attracting all veſſells that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and caſteth up their wrecks at the ſhore of *Tauromeni*, not far from *Catina*. Oppoſite to this in *Italie*, ſtandeth the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks ſhoot out, on which the water ſtrongly beating, make that noiſe which the Poets feign to be the barking of dogs. The paſſage between theſe two being to unskilfull Mariners exceeding perillous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who ſeeks *Charybdis* for to ſhun,
Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made *Sicilie* famous in old times, beſides theſe two, as *viz.* the puniſhment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt againſt the Gods: the frequent burnings of *Ætna* (under which he is fabled to be ſhut up) being ſuppoſed to proceed from his ſulphurous breath. Secondly, the birth of *Ceres* in this Iſle; and Thirdly, the Rape of *Proſerpine*. To theſe two laſt the Iſle was conſecrated in thoſe days; to *Ceres*, in regard ſhe firſt taught the people to ſow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often uſed in the Poets to ſignifie *Bread*, and

other

Sicil.

other necessary provisions for life, as *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*: To *Proserpine*, because bestowed upon her by *Pluto*, to please her after the Ravishment committed on her.

It is situate under the fourth Climate, the longest day being 13 hours and an half. And was once called *Trinacria*, because it shoots forth into the Sea with three *Capes* or *Promontories*: *viz.* 1 *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Faro*, to the North; 2 *Pachinus*, now *Cape Passero*, to the West; and 3 *Lilybæum*, now *Capo Boii*, or *Cabo Coro*, to the South. This last looketh towards *Carthage*, and the shores of *Africk*, from which distant 180 miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a man of a quick and strong sight, getting up into a Watch-tower that stood in this *Cape*, descryed a Fleet setting sayl out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybitanians* their bigness and number. That this is true, I dare not say: for besides the unlikelihood of kenning at so great a distance, we are taught by Philosophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular form, swelleth it self into the fashion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-sight. From these three corners, this Country was (as we have said) called *Trinacris* or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*. *Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in æquor*;

Trinacris *à positu, nomen adepta, loci.*

An Iland with three corners braves the main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The first Inhabitants that we find to have dwelt in this Country, are the huge Gyants so often mentioned in the *Odysses* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Lastrygones* and *Cyclops*; of which last rank was the so much famoused *Polyphemus*, who with so much humanity entertained *Ulysses* and his companions. These were afterward rooted out by the *Sicani*, a people of *Spain*, who called it *Sicania*. As for the name of *Sicilia*, some derive it from *Siculus*, a supposed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Country; but the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Iland: to which, having mastered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the West and the Northern part, to the East and South, they left their name. At their first landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Messana*, together with *Nea*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another *Italian* people named the *Morgetes*, being driven thence by the *Oenotrians*; and sate down in that part of the Iland where stood the City of *Morgentum*, built by them at their first arrivall. The first of all the *Greeks* who set footing in it (not to say any thing of the coming of *Minos* hither in the pursuit of *Dedalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Historical truth) were the *Chalcidians*, a people of the Ile *Eubœa*, now called *Negropont*, who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Archias* of *Corinth* with his fellow Adventurers, by whom *Syracuse* was either first built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* sent some Colonies hither, the first founders of *Gela*, and after of the renowned City of *Agrigentum*: And not long after a new Plantation sent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens of *Megaris*, another state of *Greece*, sent a Colony also, who built *Selinus*. And so did those of *Messene* also, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it so repaired the name of *Messana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians*, being so great undertakers of publick businesses, and very powerfull in shiping, would sit still when so fair a booty did invite their industry; who seising on the *Promontories* of *Pachinus* and *Lilybæum*, and some of the adjoyning Ilands, did fortifie them for the better securing of the Trade which they had in *Sicilie*. But all these severall Adventurers having severall interesses, joyned not together in the work of an absolute Conquest; but planting themselves only on the Sea-shores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither.

The people are ingenious, eloquent, and pleasant, but withall very unconstant, and so full of talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerra Sicula*. They are also said to be of a very envious, suspitious, and distrustfull nature, uncapable of injuries, and vehement in pursuit of revenge, as appears by that great slaughter which they made of the *French*; yet withall courteous enough to strangers, and *Parasyticall* enough to their superiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable inventions, *Aristotle* ascribing to them the Art of *Oratory*, and first making of *Pastorall Eclogues*; *Plinie* of Clocks (or rather of Hour-glasses; for Clocks were but a late invention, and that of the *Flemmings*) and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which last were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Christian Faith was first preached here by some of the Disciples of St. *Peter*, whom he sent hither at his first comming to *Rome*; of which *Pancratius* (whom we call commonly St. *Pancrace*) is sayd to have been the first Bishop of *Tauromenium*, and *Marcianus* of *Syracuse*. They are now generally of the Religion authorised by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek* Church being rather connived at than allowed of, in the Communion whereof here are thought to be ten thousand soules, but looked on by the rest as *schismaticall* people. For the most part they use the *Italian* Language, but very much altered, the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French*, and *Spanish* tongues, to which Nations they have been severally subject since the time of the *Romans*. The totall number of the people is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The soyl is incredibly fruitfull in Wine, Oyl, Honey, Minerals of Gold, Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which last commodity the Natives sell in the Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is refined, and thereby letting strangers go away

away with the best part of their gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize, which they permit to be exported, rather than put themselves to the trouble of Trafficking abroad in Foren Nations; there are also Gems of *Agates*, and *Emeralds*. It yeeldeth also great store of the richest Silks, which grow plentifully about *Messana*; variety of most excellent and delicious fruits, both for taste and colour, with such abundance of all sorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romani populi*, or the Granary of the *Roman* Empire; and doth now furnish some parts of *Italie*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, besides *Malta*, and the adjacent Isles, with that which she can spare of her superfluities. Nay *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and store-house of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but adds, that it was accounted for a well-furnished *Treasury*, as being able of it self without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain, and furnish the greatest Armie, with Leather, Corn, and Apparrell. And if *Diodorus Siculus* may be credited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and some other places, Wheat did grow of it self, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in some parts of the Isle, the soyl is so exceeding Fruitfull, that it yeelds unto the Husbandman an hundred measures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Country must needs yeeld a wonderfull increase, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thousand Crowns yearly for the Custom of Wheat. In this Country is the Hill *Hybla*, so famous for Bees and Honey, near which there was a City of the same name also, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is also the Hill *Ætna*, now called *Mongibal*, which continually sendeth forth flames of Fire, to the astonishment of all beholders. The most famous conflagrations in the former times were presently before the breaking out of the War in *Sicil*, which the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum servile*; not pacified but by the slaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms against *Rome*; and shortly after the death of *Julius Cæsar*, portending those proscriptions and bloody Wars which did after follow. And to this day such extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it self is of that height, that it is ten miles from the top to the bottom, and may be easily discerned by Saylers at an hundred miles distance; the lower parts thereof being very fruitfull, the middle shaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow a great part of the year, notwithstanding the frequent vomiting of flames and cinders. But these eruptions of fire are not now so ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuell to it being wasted by continuall burnings; so that the flames which issue hence are hardly visible but by night, though the smoak shew it self the most part of the day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four years, it falleth in great flakes on the vales adjoyning to the destruction of the Vintage, and great loss of the Country. But that, they say is recompensed by the plenty of the following years; the ashes thereof so batling and enriching the soyl, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongst our selves, that the Turf taken from the ground and burnt to ashes, and so spread on land and ploughed into it, doth yeeld a very great improvement, even to barren soyls. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonshiring* of land, because there first used; but in *Hampshire* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a stranger there) by the name of *burning* and *beaking*. But to return again to *Ætna*. Into this fiery Furnace the Philosopher *Empedocles* cast himself, that he might be reputed a God. *Sicil.*

——— Deus immortalis haberi
Dum cupit Empedocles, ardentem frigidus Ætnam
Insilnit ——— as *Horace* in his Book *de Arte Poetica*.

Empedocles to be a God desires,
And cast himself into th' *Ætnean* fires.

The reason of these fires is the abundance of Sulphure and Brimstone, contained in the bosome of the hill, which is blown by the wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth, as by a pair of bellows. Through these chinks also there is continually more fuell added to the fire, the very water adding to the force of it: as we see that water cast on coales in the Smiths Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reason of this flame is thus set down by *Ovid*:

Ista bitumineæ rapiunt incendia vires,
Luteaq; exiguis ardescunt sulphura flammis.
Atq; ubi terra cibos alimentaq; debita flammæ
Non dabit, absumptis per longum viribus ævum;
Naturaq; suum nutrimen denique edaci;
Non feret Ætna famem, desertaq; deseret ignes.

A rotten mould these fiery flames begin,
And clayie brimstone aids that fire within:
Yet when the slimie soyl consumed, shall
Yeeld no more food to feed the fire withall:
And Nature shall restrain her nourishment,
The flame shall cease, hating all famishment.

Under this Hill some Poets feign the Gyant *Enceladus* to have been buried, as before is sayd, whose hot breath fired the mountain lying on his face. Others suppose it to be the shop of *Vulcan* and the *Cyclops*; and the gross Papists take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike infallible.

Sicil. The principall Rivers hereof, 1. *Taretta*, antiently. called *Terias*. 2. *Himera*, neighboured by Mount *Hybla*, much famed for honey. 3. *Isaurus*. 4. *Hypsa*. 5. *Acasius*, of great note for its precious stones, none of them much observable for length or bredth, but that defect supplied by the commodiousnes of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Iland, and by the benefit of Fountains and fresh-water Lakes. Most memorable amongst these, 1. The Lake called *Palicoro*, (now *Naptbia*) which for three moneths doth cast forth water very hot, but of very ill smell; of which there is mention made in *Plinie* by the name of *Ephimia*. 2. A Fountain neer the foot of *Ætna*, the water whereof is sharp like *Vinegar*, and sometimes boyleth; into which a piece of cloth cast, being before steeped in water mixed with gall, becomes suddenly black. 3. Another Fountain neer *Drepanum*, the water of which assoon as drunk, provoketh loosnes. All which effects proceed from that sulphureous and bituminous matter, of which the whole Iland is exceeding full. 4. *Arethusa*, of greater fame among the Antients than all the rest, especially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having swallowed up one hundred and forty lesser streams, and losing it self under the ground, is thought to empty it self into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both, and seems to be sufficiently proved by the severall instances of a wooden dish or cup lost in the River *Alpheus*, and found rising up in this River, and by the leaves of certain trees growing on the banks of that *Greek* River, and swimming on this in great abundance, there being none of these trees in all *Sicil.* *Dicitur* Alpheus (saith *Mela*) *se non consociare pelago, sed subter maria, terrasq; depressus, huc agere alvenm, atq; hic se rursus extollere.*

This Iland is famous for the worthy Scholars she once produced, *viz.* *Æschylus*, the first *Tragedian* of fame, who being bald through age, once walked in the fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald pate for a white Rock, let a shell-fish fall on it, of that bignes, that it beat out his brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus*, that famous Historian. 3. *Empedocles*, the first Inventer of Rhetorick, and his Fellow *Gorgias*. 4. *Euclide*, the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megaris*. 5. *Archimedes*, a most worthy *Mathematician*, the first Author of the Sphere, of which instrument he made one of that art and bignes, that one standing within, might easily perceive the severall motions of every celestiall orb. He made also divers military engines, which in the siege of *Syracusa* sorely vexed the *Romans*, and was at last slain in his study by a common souldier in the sack of the town, to the great grief of the Generall *Marcellus*. 6. *Epichmus*, the first Inventer of Comedies; and 7. *Theocritus*, the first Author of Pastorall *Eclogues*. In the later times *Nicolas*, Abbot of *Palermo*, a learned *Canonist*, and Cardinall of the Church of *Rome*, commonly called *Panormitanus*, was of greatest fame.

In *Plinies* time there were reckoned in this Iland seventy two Cities, of which only twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three small Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Vall de Noto*, 2. *Mazara*, and 3. *Mona*; to which the Ilses adjoyning may add a fourth.

1. *VALLIS DE NOTO* taketh up the Eastern parts of the Iland. The chief Cities of which are, 1. *Syracusa*, once the Metropolis of the whole *Iland*, and a most flourishing Common-wealth; It was (as *Tully* reports) the greatest and goodliest City of all that were possess'd by the *Greeks*, for situation very strong, and of an excellent prospect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both sides of it, was for the most part invironed with beautifull buildings, and that part of it which was without the City, was on both sides banked up, and sustained with very fair walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodliest City of the *Greeks*, as *Tullie* tells us, but the greatest also of the world, as is said by *Strabo*, by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmost wall thereof (for it was invironed with three walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compass, which of our measure cometh to eighteen miles, it being compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to say, *Insula* (or the Isle) *Acradina*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*, besides the Fort called *Hexapla*, which commanded the rest; the greatness of all which, the ruins and foundations of it do still demonstrate. It standeth North of the Promontory called *Pachinus*, and was built by *Archias* of *Corinth*, about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judah*, who being for an unnaturall rape committed on a young Gentleman, banished his Country, together with his Friend and Companion *Miscellus*, consulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they should dispose of themselves. The *Oracle* demanding whether they most affected wealth or health, *Miscellus* answered health, and *Archias* wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to setle himself at *Cortona* in *Italie*, and the other here. Nor did the *Oracle* deceive him in his expectation, this Town by reason of its beautifull and commodious Port, proving of greatest trade and wealth next to *Carthage* it self in those times of the world. It was the custom of this Town when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive leaf, which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to banishment for five years, and was called *Petalisme*, from the *Greek* word [illegible] signifying a leaf; yet could not this device so much secure them in the possession of their so much desired Freedom, but that this City fell oftener into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the world. That which is now remaining of it, is the work of *Augustus*, who after a second destruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, sent a Colonie hither, and built upon the *Isle* and the parts next to it. But now the whole Isle (*Ortygia* the Antients called it) is taken up with a very strong Castle, the whole Ci-

ty alſo being very well walled, and held by a Garriſon of *Spaniards*. 2. *Noto*, which gives name to this whole Diviſion. A City which heretofore contended with *Syracuſe* in point of greatneſs; ſituate on a very high Rock, unacceſſible on all ſides but by one narrow paſſage; and having under the Cape of *Paſſari* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicil* on that ſide. 3. *Auguſta*, ſituate on the ſhore alſo, and of ſo large a Haven that it could never be fortified. 4. *Caſtro Giovanni*, a Town of about four thouſand Families, ſituate in a wholeſom air, and a fruitfull ſoyl, which they hold to be the very Navell and exact middle of the Iland. It is alſo much prized for mines of moſt excellent Salt. 5. *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whoſe fiſhing is farmed for eighteen thouſand Crowns yeerly. It was antiently called *Leontium*, and ſtood ſomwhat North of *Syracuſa*, with which continually in war, either to preſerve their own Liberties, or get the Soveraignty of the other. 6. *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pluto* is ſaid to have raviſhed *Proſerpine*: In after times the dwelling of that *Syrus Ennus*, who ſtirred up the *Roman* Slaves againſt their Lords, and having broke open the common priſons, and received all ſuch as came unto him, patched up an Army of forty thouſand. This war the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at laſt, but with no ſmall difficulty, by the valour and good fortune of *P. Rupilius*. *Sicil*

2. *MAZARA* containeth all the Weſt parts of the Iland. The chief Cities whereof, 1. *Agrigentum*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the deſtruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*.

——Nec enim lex iuſtior ulla eſt
Quam necis Artifices arte perire ſua.
Moſt juſt it is, a man ſhould be tormented
With that which firſt his cruell wit invented.

It was ſaid antiently of the people of this City, that *they built as if they ſhould never dye, and eat as if they were ſure to live no longer*. 2. *Palermo*, antiently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phœnicians*, now the chief City of *Sicil*, and the ſeat of the *Spaniſh* Vice-Roy. Situate on the Weſt Cape of the Iland looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large ſtreets, delicate buildings, ſtrong walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no naturall Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* ſerving antiently as the Port thereof:) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*; a work of vaſt expence, and worthy of the greatneſs of *Rome*. It is alſo an Arch-biſhops See, and an Univerſity. 3. *Monreal*, commonly called *Motreal*, famous for the Church, the Archbiſhops See. It is called in Latine *Mons Regalis*. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trapani*, ſituate on a Promontory thruſting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybæum*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill neighbourhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on theſe coaſts, and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are ſaid to be the beſt Seamen of *Sicil*. 5. *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, ſituate South of *Lilybæum*, and not far from *Selinus*. 6. *Eryx*, ſituate on a mountain over-looking the Sea, ſaid by the Antients to have took this name from *Eryx* the ſonne of *Venus*, ſlain here by *Hercules*: memorable in thoſe elder times for being the Seat of K. *Aceſtes*, who ſo kindly entertained *Æneas* and his wandring *Trojans*; and a magnificent Temple in which *Venus* was worſhipped, who from hence was called *Erycina*; as *ſive tu mavis Erycina rides*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the laſt Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicil*, on the ſurrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the Father of *Annibal*, at the end of the firſt *Punick* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongſt other things, that the *Carthaginians* ſhould relinquiſh all the clame or title which they had to any part of this Iland: which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracuſa* excepted onely.) Who, whatſoever colour they were pleaſed to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by ambition and covetouſneſs. And therefore in my minde *Florus* ſtates it rightly, who ſaith, that it was undertaken *ſpecie quidem juvandi Socios, re autem ſollicitante præda*; *i.e.* under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themſelves into their protection, but in plain terms to get poſſeſſion of the Iland which lay fit for *Italie*. Now and long ſince a ruin onely, the place on which it ſtood being called *Mount S. Julian*. 7. *Segeſta*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from *Eryx*, neer unto which the *Trojan* Ladies weary of their many long and dangerous voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Æneas*, on which occaſion it was built. Peopled at firſt by ſuch of the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longa voſq; ſenes, & feſſas aquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who choſe rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Æneas* in his queſt of *Italie*. Called then *Aceſta*, in honour of King *Aceſtes* ſpoken of before, part of whoſe Kingdom it was made; afterwards *Egeſta*, from *Ægeſtus* one of *Trojan* race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at laſt *Segeſta*.

3. *MONA* lieth on the North-Eaſt of the Iland, oppoſite unto *Vallis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nicoſia*, in the midland. 2. *Milaſe*, on the Northern Promontory. 3. *Meſſina*, a City of great ſtrength and beauty, juſt oppoſite to *Rhezo* in *Italie*. It was the firſt Town which the *Romans* had in this Iland, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Souldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for defence of the City, who finding themſelves too ſtrong for the *Citizens*, made themſelves Maſters of the place; but being withall too weak to hold it, choſe rather to ſurrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper Owners. Hence

Sicil. the beginning of the first war betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time of the most beautifull building of any in *Sicil*, and peopled by the wealthiest sort both of Merchants and Gentlemen, who live here in great pleasure (if not voluptuousness) as having plenty of all necessary provisions, fruits of all kinds, delicious wines, and snow to moderate and qualifie the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elsewhere in the Countrey. On the West side there stands a strong Citadell highly mounted and well Garrisoned, which commands the Town, and not far off a very high Lanthorn, where lights are kept burning all night long for the direction of such Mariners as are to pass those dangerous Streights, which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare* of *Messana*. The Haven of this Town is the fairest of *Sicil*, whose entrances are so strongly sconced and bulwarked, that the people let their Gates (in derision of the *Turks*) stand alwayes open. It is also an Archbishops See.

4. *Catina*, so often vexed by *Dionysius* the Tyrant of *Syracuse*: more antient than beautifull; seated on the North side of a great (but hollow) Bay, not easily approached by ships, and therefore neither held by any Garrison, nor much Traded by Merchants; the riches of the place consisting principally in the fruitfulness of the Soil, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a small University. It was once a Colonie of the *Naxians*. And so was also *Taurominum*, the first Town of note in this part of the Iland, called sometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*, a ruine onely of what was in the former dayes, a place by nature of great strength, but over-topped by *Syracusa* and *Messana*, betwixt which it standeth. It was in this part of the Countrey that the *Cyclops* dwelt, there being three little rocky Ilands (now not inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopum Scopuli*.

IV. On the West part of *Sicil* lie the *ÆOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Ilands, heretofore onely seven, and all almost of equall bigness, now eleven in number. The first name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them, who being well skilled in divining from what coast the winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the smoke ascending from them) occasioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan*, the God of Fire, by reason of the continuall flames of fire from thence evapourating in those elder dayes. But now the matter of these flames being wasted in long tract of time, there *is* onely one of them which burneth, now called *STROMBOLO*, by some Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundness of it. An Iland of about ten miles compass, but such as seems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof issueth continually a flame like a burning *Beacon*, easily discernable far off, but at nights especially: a place so full of horrour to the neighbouring Ilanders, that they and many others of the *Romish Catholicks* conceive it to be Hell it self; and yet in those parts where the rage of the fire offendeth not, it is of a very fruitfull soyl, and apt for tillage.

2. But the fairest and best peopled of those Ilands, is that of *LIPARA*, some ten miles in circuit, (from whence the rest are called the *Liparean* Isles) so named from *Lipara* the chief Town, said to be built in the time of *Josiah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Bishop, under the Archbishop of *Messina*. The Iland generally fruitfull, well furnished with *Allom*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*, and some hot medicinall Bathes, which are much frequented; and from thence called *Thermessa* by the antient Writers. It was formerly of so great wealth, that falling into the displeasure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuse*) they were able to buy their peace of him at the sum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which sum they had no sooner paid, but the Tyrant for a farewell robbed their very Temples. Unprosperous in his Actions always after that adventure. Nor sped it better with the *Turks*, who in the yeer 1544. laid the Countrey desolate; in which condition it remained till *Charles* the fift replenished it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very strongly against all invasions.

3. Not far off lieth another of these Ilands, now called *FAVOGNANA*, or *Fauciana*, but antiently *Ægusa*, conceived to be the same which *Livie*, and *Florus* call *Ægates*; in which there is a fair and capacious Bay able to receive the greatest Navies, and neer to which *Lutatius Catulus* the Consul gave the *Carthaginians* their last blow at Sea, which drew along with it the surrendry of *Eryx*, and the loss of *Sicil. Dedyme*, *Ericosa*, *Eunymos*, and *Phinirusa*, four other of these Ilands, but of lesser note, I pass over willingly, and make hast to

4. *HIERO*, the 7th. and last of these Ilands of any consideration, and the eigth in tale, called also *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worshipped; said to have first appeared above the water at such time as *Scipio African* died. A barren, stony, and uninhabited place, by reason of the fires which formerly have flamed so hideously (especially in the yeer 1444.) that it made not only the rest of these Ilands but all *Sicilie* tremble. Neer unto this Isle was fought the first Navall fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. Before which time the *Romans* had never used the Seas, as being totally imployed in the conquest of *Italie*; insomuch that when they had built their Gallies they were fain to exercise their men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats neer the water with Oars in their hands. Which notwithstanding, having devised an Engine like a Grapling-hook, they so fastened the Adverse Fleet unto them, that the whole fight seemed a Land-battell fought upon the Sea. The victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duilius* the Consul then commanding in Chief, and was honoured with the first *Navall Triumph* that was ever solemnized at *Rome*.

After

After this Iland was once known to the *Greeks*, they ſent from all their chief Cities ſeverall Colonies, who planted in the Sea-coaſts of the Country, as before we noted. But ſo as they never united themſelves in a body together, but had their ſeverall eſtates and particular ends, whereby they came to be divided into many factions, and at laſt made themſelves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* lording it at *Agrigentum*, *Panetius* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuſe*, *Cleander* at *Gela*; and when one Faction grew too weak to reſiſt the other, they called in ſeverall Forein Nations to abet their quarrel. For on this ground the *Carthaginians* were firſt called into *Sicilie* by the *Meſſenians* againſt the *Agrigentines*, and on the ſame was managed here a great part of the *Peloponneſian* wars; the *Athenians* ſiding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with he *Syracuſans*: in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land, and their two Generals *Nicias* and *Demoſthenes* murdered in priſon. But becauſe *Syracuſe* was a Citie of the greateſt authority, and of greateſt influence over the reſt of *Sicilie*, we ſhall more punctually inſiſt on the State and affairs thereof; the government of which at firſt was popular, as it was in moſt of the *Greek* Colonies, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Ariſtocraticall*, when *Gelon* made himſelf King of it, about 26 years after the expulſion of the *Tarquins* at *Rome*, whom with as many as ſucceeded in the Royal dignity, take along as followeth. *Sicil.*

The Tyrants or Kings of *Syracuſe*.

A. M.

3465. 1 *Gelon*, the Prince or Lord of *Gela*, taking advantage of the quarrels in *Syracuſa* betwixt the Magiſtrates and people, made himſelf Maſter of the Citie, and was choſen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 *Carthaginians* were ſlain in battle for their welcome into *Sicil.* 7.

3472 2 *Hiero*, the brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King alſo, but a rude and covetous man, whereby he loſt the love of his people. 11

3484 3 *Thraſibulus*, brother of *Hiero*, whoſe Government proved ſo cruell and unſupportable, that he held it not above 10 moneths; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracuſans*, the people did a while enjoy their libertie; but withall fell into thoſe Factions, which after 60 years made them loſe it again.

3544 4 *Dionyſius*, that ſo famous Tyrant, from being Generall of the Forces of the *Syracuſans*, made himſelf their King; A man of great vices, but great vertues withall. He brought almoſt all *Sicilie* under his obedience, and the Town of *Rhegium* in *Italy*, reigning in all 38 years.

3582 2 *Dionyſius* II. ſucceeding his Father in his Kingdom and vices, but not in valour or wiſdom, was firſt outed by *Dion* a noble Gentleman of *Syracuſe*, and afterward taken Priſoner by *Timoleon* of *Corinth*; to which Citie he was ſent, and there dyed in exile.

3635 6 *Agathocles*, by trade a Potter, after that a Souldier, 20 years after the death of *Timoleon*, made himſelf King of *Syracuſa*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*, he paſſed over into *Africk* and beſieged *Carthage*, which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune. 29.

3681 7 *Hieron* II. of a Commander of their Armies choſen King of *Syracuſe* by a party which he had made amongſt them. In his time brake out the firſt *Punick* War, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mamertines*, who held *Meſſana* againſt the *Carthaginians*, the Lords at that time of the greateſt part of the Iland. 56.

3737 8 *Hieronymus*, the ſonne of *Hiero*, after whoſe death *Syracuſe* and all *Sicil* became ſubject to *Rome*, by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of theſe eight Kings, the ſix firſt commonly paſs under the name of *Tyrants*, from whence, and from ſome others of like diſpoſition, who Lorded it over the reſt of the Free Cities of *Sicil*, the name of *Siculi Tyranni* grew into a Proverb. But of all, none more hated than the two *Dioniſii*, who were ſo odious, that there were continuall execrations poured on them; only one old woman praying for the life of the later. Who being asked the cauſe, made anſwer, that ſhe knew his Father to have been a monſtrous and wicked Tyrant, on whom when the curſes of the people had prevailed, and obtained his death, this his ſon ſucceeded, worſe by far than he, for whoſe life ſhe was reſolved to pray, leſt after his death the devill himſelf ſhould come amongſt them. But to proceed, after theſe *Tyrants*, as they called them, were rooted out, and the Iland was conquered by *Marcellus*, it alwaies followed the fortune of the *Roman* Empire, till in the partition of that Empire it fell together with *Apulia* and *Calabria* into the power of the *Greeks*. In the declining of whoſe greatneſs, this Iland having been miſerably pilled and ſpoyled by the Emperor *Conſtans*, *An.* 669. became a prey to the *Saracens*; from them recovered again by the help of the *Normans*, who held both this and the Realm of *Naples*, in Fee of the Church, under the title of Kings of both *Sicils*. From that time forwards it ran the fortune of that Kingdom, ſubject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* lines, till the death of *Conrade*, no interruption intervening. After whoſe death when *Mumfroy*, or *Manfrede*, the baſe ſonne of the Emperor *Frederick*, and Brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himſelf King of theſe Countries, it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother to *Henry* the third of *England*; a Prince of ſuch riches, that he was able to diſpend an hundred Marks *per diem*, for ten years together; which according to the Standard of thoſe times was no ſmall ſum. But the condi-

Sicil tions which the Pope ptopoſed were ſo impoſſible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well ſay to his Maſter, *I will give thee the Moon, climb up, catch, and take it.* The Earl refuſing it, it was offered the King for his ſecond ſonne *Edmund*, who was inveſted by the gift of a Ring, and money coyned in his name by the Popes appointment, with the inſcription of *Almundus Rex Siciliæ.* But the King not being able to purſue the buſineſs, becauſe then overburdened by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having ſucked no ſmall ſtore of Treaſure from him; it was in the year 1261, given unto *Charles* Earl of *Provence* and *Anjou*, brother to *Lewis* the 10th. Under him thoſe Countries jointly continued ſubject till the year 1281, in which time his Competitor *Peter* of *Aragon* promiſing him to fight a ſingle combat before our K. *Edward* the firſt at *Burdeaux*; fail'd of his word; and in the mean time ſo contrived it, that at the found of a Bell tolling to prayers, all the *French-men* in *Sicilie* were cruelly Maſſacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Veſperi Siculi*, and was managed by *John de Prochyta*, a Gentleman of the Reaim of *Naples*, whom *Charles* had diſpoſſeſſed of the Ile of *Prochyta*, whereof he had been formerly Lord; and not content to do him ſuch a piece of injuſtice, added a further inſolencie to it, in the forcing of his Wife. Provoked with theſe two injuries, the abuſed Gentleman plots with King *Pedro* of *Aragon*, to make him Maſter of the Ile of *Sicilie*, where he had very good intelligences; and where the *French* by reaſon of their Luſts and Inſolencies had ſo exaſperated the Natives, that they were capable enough of any ſuch impreſſions, as a man ſharing with them in their ſufferings could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* riggeth out his Navy, under pretence of ſome exploit againſt the *Moores*, and anchoreth in the port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out ſo agreeably to his expectation, that in one inſtant as it were, on the ſignall given, the *French* were univerſally murdered in all parts of the Iland; the people being ſo inraged, that they would not ſpare women great with child, if ſuppoſed to have been got by any of that hated nation: And *Pedro* comming in with his Navy as the deed was done, was by the generall conſent of all ſorts of people, crowned King of *Sicilie*. A bloody policy, I confeſs, which as the Actors learned of the *Engliſh Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*, ſo did they teach it to the *French*, who practiſed it on the *Hugonots* of *France* in that horrid Maſſacre of *Paris*, *An.* 1572. An Act which ſo provoked the Pope, that he ſolemnly accurſed the King, and cauſed many of the neighbouring Princes to arm againſt him: But the Fox fared never the worſe for that; who did ſo order his affairs, that he did both clear his own Country of thoſe Enemies which on the Popes curſe had come in againſt him, and ſetled *Sicilie* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Iland hath belonged to the Houſe of *Aragon*, but not alwaies in poſſeſſion of the Kings thereof, being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whoſe ſucceſſion followeth.

Kings of *Sicilie* of the Houſe of *Aragon*.

1 *Pedro*, or *Peter* the 3d. King of *Aragon* by birth, of *Sicilie* in the right of his Wife, the choyce of the people, and the Legacy of *Corradine*, the laſt of the Royal line of *Suevia*, but principally by the power of the ſword.
2 *James*, the ſecond ſonne of *Pedro*, King of *Sicilie*, after the death of his brother *Alfonſus*, ſucceeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Ile of *Sardinia*.
3 *Frederick*, the brother of *James*, on his Brothers taking the Crown of *Aragon*, got poſſeſſion of *Sicilie*.
4 *Peter*, or *Pedro* II. Sonne of *Frederick*.
5 *Frederick* II.
6 *Peter*, or *Pedro* III.
7 *Lewis*, ſonne to *Peter* III.
8 *Frederick* III. in the life of *Lewis*, Duke of *Athens*, after his death ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Sicilie*.
9 *Martin*, ſonne to *Martin* the firſt, King of *Aragon*, ſucceeded in the right of his wife *Blanch*, daughter of *Frederick* the third, and dying without iſſue gave the Kingdom unto *Martin* his Father.
10 *Martin* II. of *Sicilie*, and the firſt of *Aragon*, of which laſt he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his ſonne. After which time the Ile of *Sicilie* being again united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never ſeparated from it, except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his ſon, the better to fit him for the bed of *Iſabel* Princeſs of *Caſtile*, with whom the match was then in treaty; and when the Emperour *Charles* the fift gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip* his eldeſt ſonne, on his Mariage with *Mary* Qu. of *England*, who thereupon was ſtiled King of *Naples*, *Sicilie*, and *Hieruſalem*. But this held onely for a year; his Father dying ſhortly after, and reſigning to him all his Kingdoms, whereby it became joyned to *Spain* again.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are by ſome ſayd to be but 800000, but as others ſay, a Million of Ducats; moſt of which is again diſburſed on the entertainment of the *Vice-Roy*, and the defence of the Iland. The Arms are *Aragon*, 2 Flanches *Argent*, charged with as many Eagles *Sable*, beaked *Gules*.

This Iland for the number of its Nobility compares with *Naples*, as having in the time of *Ortelius*

telius, 80 years ago, 7 Princes, 4 Dukes, 13 Marqueſſes, 14 Earls, 1 Vicount, 48 Barons; men of authority and power in their ſeverall Territories, and therefore not permitted to live much in the Iland, the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in the Court of *Spain*; but more to ſatisfie that King upon reaſon of State, than any affection of their own to ſo long an exile. And for the Government of the Church, *Sardinia.*

Here are

Arch-Biſhops 3. Biſhops 9.

The Kingdom of SARDINIA.

THe Iland and Kingdom of *SARDINIA* lieth Weſt from *Sicilie*, from the neereſt point whereof called Cape *Boii*, or Cape *Coro*, it is diſtant about 200 miles. It is in length 180 miles, 90 in bredth, 560 in the circuit; and is ſituate under the 4th *Climate*, the longeſt day being 14 houres.

In the time of *Ariſtotle* it was called *Ichnuſa*, next *Sandaliotis*, from the reſemblance which it hath to a mans ſhooe or Sandals; and finally *Sardinia* from *Sardus* the ſonne of *Hercules*, who comming out of *Africk* poſſeſſed the ſame. For this there is ſufficient authority amongſt the Antients. Of the firſt names ſaith *Plinie* in as plain terms as may be, that *Timæus* called *Sardinia Sandaliotis*, and *Myrſilus*, *Ichnuſa*, from the ſimilitude which it hath to the Shooe-ſole, or impreſſion of a mans Foot on the ground; *Sardiniam Timeus*, Sandaliotin *appellavit*, *ab effigie ſolea*; *Myrſilus* Ichnuſam *à ſimilitudine veſtigii*. And for the laſt nothing can be more plain than that of *Pauſanias*, who tels us that the firſt who came by ſhipping into *Sardinia*, were certain *Africans* under the conduct of *Sardus* the ſonne of *Maceris*, whom the *Egyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who comming into this Iland then called *Ichnuſa*, τὸ ὄνομα ἀπὸ τῦ Σάρδε τότε μεταβαλεῖν ὁ τῦτο, cauſed it after his own name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the people in the *Latin* tongue are called *Sardi*; the adjoyning Sea, *Mare Sardoum*. And to this name it was ſo conſtant, that no following Plantations from other Countries, were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Attica*, led by *Iolaus*, came and ſetled here, where they built *Olbion* and *Agryllis*, leaving a memory of *Iolaus* their Captain in ſome places, which remained in the time of *Pauſanias*, called *Iolaia*; and taking to themſelves for his ſake, the name of *Iolatenſes*. And after the deſtruction of *Troy*, ſome of that ſcattered Nation came and planted in ſome voyd parts of the Iland, kept to themſelves the name of *Ilienſes*, and by that name are mentioned both by *Plinie* and *Livie*. But neither of theſe Nations did attempt the change of the name, becauſe not of ability to ſuppreſs or out-power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puiſſant Nation than the former were, and ſuch as by the neerneſs of their habitation (*Sardinia* being diſtant but 160 miles from *Africk*) had all advantags to make (as at laſt they did) a full Conqueſt of it; building therein the Cities of *Charmis*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulchi*; and holding it untill it was unjuſtly extorted from them by the *Romans*, at the end of the firſt *Punick* War; at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*, and ſo not able to reſiſt.

But of the name and firſt Plantations of this Iland we have ſaid enough. Let us now look upon the place; in which it is reported that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venomous nor hurtfull Beaſt, but the Fox onely, and a little Creature like a Spider, which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pooles it hath, and thoſe very plentifull of Fiſh, but generally ſo deſtitute of River-water, that they are fain to keep the rain which falls in Winter for their uſe in Summer. By means whereof, and for that there is no paſſage for the Northern Winds, being obſtructed by the high Mountains near Cape *Lugudoni*, the Air is generally unhealthy, if not peſtilentiall: Inſomuch that *Tully* writing to his Brother *Quintus* being then in this Iland, adviſeth him to remember, as in point of health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and ſpeaking of *Tigellius*, a *Sardinian* born, ſaith of him, that he was more peſtilent than the Country which bred him.

The ſoyl is very fertile in reſpect of *Corſica*, but barren if compared with *Sicil*; which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any naturall defect in the ſoyl it ſelf. Well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheeſe and Hides which are ſent hence yearly into *Italy* and other places. The Horſes hereof, hot, head-ſtrong, and hard to be broken, but will laſt long: The Bullocks naturally amble, ſo that the Countrey-man rideth them as familiarly as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Aſſes. Here is alſo the Beaſt called *Muſmons*, or *Muſcrones*, found in *Corſica* alſo, but in no other part of *Europe*, ſomewhat reſembling a Stag, but of ſo ſtrong an hide, that it is uſed by the *Italians* in ſtead of Armour: Of the skins of which carried to *Cordova* in *Spain*, and there dreſſed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is ſayd that he will dye with laughter: Whence came the Proverb, *Riſus Sardonicus*. The truth of which report I ſhall not diſpute, though it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poyſonous nature, cauſeth men to dy with ſuch a Convulſion or attraction of Sinews, that they ſeem to grin, or laugh at the time of their death.

The

Sardinia. The people are ſmall of ſtature, of complexion inclining unto ſwarthineſs, and that either by reaſon of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their *African* extraction, their behaviour much participating of that people alſo. So ſlothfull in the times of the *Romans*, that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compell them to work; but now eſteemed a very painfull and laborious Nation. Much given to hunting, and ſo prone to Rebellion, that the *Spaniard* permitteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable amongſt themſelves, and in ſome meaſure courteous unto Strangers alſo. Their language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their diet on meats common and groſs; their apparell in the Towns (eſpecially that of the women) gorgeous, in the Villages ſordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make moſt ſhew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their neighbourhood to the Pope, and their ſubjection to the *Spaniard*, have impoſed upon them. But in their practiſe of it they are looſe enough, going to *Maſs* on Sundays and Saints days, which done, they fall to dancing in the middeſt of the *Church*, ſinging in the mean times ſongs too immodeſt for an Ale-houſe. Nay, it is thought that their Clergy it ſelf is the moſt rude, ignorant, and illiterate of any people in *Chriſtendom*, ſaying their Maſſes rather by rote, than reaſon, and utterly unable to give any accompt of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, *viz.* Cape *Lugudore*, towards *Corſica*, and Cape *Cagliari*, towards *Africk*: the firſt the leaſt, and withall mountainous and barren; the laſt the larger, levell, and by much more fruitfull. Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Calaris*, firſt built by the *Carthaginians*, and ſituate in that point of the Iland which lieth neereſt to *Africk*; which from hence took the name of Cape *Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of ſuch fame when it was firſt taken by *Gracchus* for the uſe of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs Urbium*, and was deſtroyed by the ſaid *Gracchus*, the better to diſable the Natives from rebelling againſt the Conquerors. Being new built again in more ſetled times, it was a ſecond time deſtroyed by the *Saracens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Piſans*, at ſuch time as they were Maſters of this part of the Iland. Very well fortified by Nature, as ſeated on the top of an hill, and hath under it a ſpacious and goodly Haven much frequented by Merchants. The Town it ſelf adorned with a beautifull Temple, being the See of an Arch-biſhop, many fair Turrets, and the conſtant reſidence of the Vice-Roy, from whoſe authority it is exempt by eſpeciall privilege, as to the legall Government of it, and ordered by a Common Councell of its own Citizens. 2. *Boſſa*, on the Weſt ſide of the Iland, another Arch-epiſcopall See. 3. *S. Reparata* on the North, looking towards *Corſica*. 4. *Aquilaſtro*, on the Weſtern ſhores. 5. *Saſſari*, a Town of conſequence, where they have an *Aqueduct* twelve miles long, reaching from thence unto S. *Gaivius*. 6. *Alghes-Boſa*, a good Town, ſituate in a wholeſome air, and a fertile ſoyl, and having a fair Haven of ſix miles in length, in which the ſhips of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do moſt commonly ride. 7. *Oreſtagne*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reaſon of a bad air which proceeds from the Fens, the Countrey about which gives title to the Marqueſs of *Oreſtagne*. 8. *Turrita*, once a *Roman* Colonie, now little better than a ruin; yet giving title to the third Arch-biſhop of this Iland, who is called in Latine *Turritanus*. Here are alſo in divers parts of this Iland the remainders of ſundry Towers and Forts, which the people call *Noracks*, from *Nora*, one of the ſonnes of *Gerion*, who (as they think) came into this Countrey, and built the firſt dwelling or manſion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath ſo much in it of Hiſtoricall and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nora*; ſomewhat before the expedition of the *Atticks* under *Iolaus*, as *Pauſanias* teſtifieth.

This Iland taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is ſaid, was firſt under the immediate Juriſdiction of the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*: but after by *Juſtinian* was made a Province of his new Dioceſe of *Africk*; and as a part thereof, or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Saracens*, An°. 807. From them recovered by the joynt-forces of the *Piſans* and *Genoeſe*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called Cape *Cagliari*, being alotted to the *Piſans*, and the Northern towards *Corſica*, to thoſe of *Genoa*. But the *Genoeſe* not content with the partage, their portion of the Iland being leſs in quantitie, and worſe in quality, began to quarrell with the *Piſans*, and at the laſt to break into open wars. To part the Fray, Pope *Boniface* the 8th. beſtowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoeſe*, An°. 1324. became Maſter of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend ſome Title to it, in right of the Kingdom of *Sicil* then in his poſſeſſion, to ſome preceding Kings whereof it had once been ſubject: and having backed that Clame by the Popes Donation, who challenged it as a part of S. *Peters* Patrimony, incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Burbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpoſe of performance; that being onely a device to fetch him off from the party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered; and was as ſuddenly laid by, as it had done the feat intended in the Propoſition.

The Government hereof is by a Vice-Roy, who reſides at *Calaris*, and muſt of neceſſitie be a *Spaniard*, under whom are two Deputy Governors *Spaniards* alſo; the one for Cape *Caliari*, the other for Cape *Lugudori*. Inferior Officers of command may be of the Natives. What profits ariſe

hence

hence to the Crown of *Spain*, I have no where found. The *Arms* hereof are said to be *Or*, a Croſs *Gules*, betwixt four *Saracens* heads *Sable*, curled *Argent*. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but firſt taken (as ſome ſay) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occaſion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found ſevered from their Bodies in the battell of *Alcoraz*, An°. 1094. won by *Don Pedro* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*. LAND of the Church.

There are divers ſmall Ilands about *Sardinia*, as, 1. *Iſola Roſſa*, heretofore called *Phintonis*. 2. The Ile of *Hercules*, now called *Aſinaria*. 3. S. *Peters*, antiently *Hieracum*, or *Accipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which, as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Iland,
Arch-biſhops 3. Biſhops 15.

The Land of the CHURCH.

WEſt of the Realm of *Naples* lyeth the *LAND OF THE CHURCH*, extended North and South from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuſcan* Seas: bounded on the North-East with the River *Tronto*, on the South-East with the *Axoſenus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-Weſt by the river *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which ſeparated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-Weſt with the river *Piſtu*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuſcany*, or the State of the *Florentine*. By this Accompt the Popes dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italie*, having in bredth from the one Sea unto the other above one hundred miles, and in the length above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth moſt fitly for the command of all the reſt, it being verie eaſie for the Popes to convey their forces by Sea or Land into what part thereof they pleaſe. And were it not, that the Popes commonly are of ſeverall factions, and that the Succeſſor purſueth not the deſigns of his Predeceſſors, but hath his own ends to himſelf, which for the moſt part are driven on without conſideration of increaſing the publike *Patrimony*, it is not poſſible but that the Pope long before this time had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, conſidering the extraordinary fertility of the ſoyl, able to ſpare proviſions for the greateſt Armies; the multitudes of people which it may afford, in regard they are ſo ſeldom conſumed by warr; and that the men of this Dominion (but chiefly thoſe of *Rome*, and the parts adjoyning) are conceived to be the beſt Souldiers of *Italie*, as retaining ſome ſparks of their Anceſtors valour, together with their gravity, magnificence, and a certain greatneſs of courage, which ſeems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preſerve alſo to this day ſo much of the antient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of life before Trades or Merchandiſe. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dreſſed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry: yet for their *Manufactures* they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both ſides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little coſt might be made very uſefull: yet do they no way improve their fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of *Traffick*; which is the main defect of the *Papall Politie*, and filleth a rich Countrey full of poor and indigent perſons. But to proceed to the deſcription of the Popes eſtate; it containeth the Provinces of 1. *Romandiola*, 2. *Marca Anconitana*, 3. the Territory of *Ferrara*, 4. *Ducato Spoletano*, 5. S. *Peters Patrimony*, and 6. *Campagna di Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the *Rubicon* Eaſt, to the *Venetians* on the Weſt; and from the *Apennine* on the South, to *Padus* and the *Adriatick* on the North. It was called antiently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the *Roman* Conſull, who having won it from the *Galls*, planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he purſued this war againſt the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better paſſage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Cauſey, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Bononia*, (or *Boulogne*) ſeated in a ſpacious plain neer the *Apennine* hills, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building antick, ſeeming for the moſt part to be the work of the *Lombards*; the foundation of the houſes of Free-ſtone, the reſt of Bricks; built with Arched Cloyſters towards the ſtreet, under which one may walk dry in the greateſt rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief Univerſity of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civill Law is much ſtudied here, inſomuch that from hence proceeded the famous Civilians, *Johannes Andreas*, *Azo*, *Bartolus*, and *Bactus*. I believe they have built Caſtles in the air, which aſcribe the founding of this Univerſity to *Theodoſius* the 2d. The Charter of this foundation dated An°. 423. is an idle and fooliſh thing. For there it is ſaid, that at the inſtitution there were preſent *Gualter* Earl of *Poictiers*, Embaſſador for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: when at that time, neither thoſe Earldoms, or thoſe Kingdoms were in *rerum natura*. It is ſituate on the river *Apoſa*, and was by former Writers called *Felſina*. Neer unto this Town in a Demy-Iland called *Forcelli*, was that meeting between

Roman-diola.

between *Auguſtus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*, wherein they agreed on the *Trimvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome*, among themſelves: Which combination was confirmed by the enſuing Proſcription; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Cicero*, *Lepidus* proſcribed his Brother; *Antonius*, his Uncle. 2. *Rimini*, antiently called *Ariminum*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Rubicon*, which in thoſe times divided *Italie* from *Gaule*: upon the bank whereof neer unto this Town, there was an old Marble Pillar having on it a *Latine* Inſcription to this purpoſe, *viz. Leave here thy Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and paſs not with thy Forces beyond the* Rubicon; *whoſoever goeth againſt this command, let him be held an Enemy to the people of* ROME: Which Rule when *Cæſar* had tranſgreſſed, and ſurprized this City, he ſo frighted *Pompey* and his faction, that they abandoned *Italie* and *Rome* it ſelf, and withdrew themſelves into *Epirus*. It is ſaid that *Cæſar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the South-ſayers gathered, that he ſhould be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which dream, and ſeverall prodigies happening at the ſame time with it, did ſo incourage him in his enterprize, that he is ſaid, at the paſſing over *Rubicon*, to have ſaid theſe words, *Eamus, quo nos Divum monita, &c.* Let us go, whether the ſins of our Enemies, and the prodigies of the Gods do call us. In memory of which venturous, but fortunate action, he cauſed a monument to be erected in this City, with his name and Titles. It was antiently a *Roman* Colony, and in the buſtles happening betwixt the Pope and the Emperor, was ſeized on by the *Malateſti*, as *Bononia* was by the *Bentivoli*, two potent Families of theſe parts; who held them in defiance of the Powers of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church by Pope *Julio* the ſecond. 3. *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick* Sea, where there is made ſo much Salt, that they furniſh therewith all their neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardie*: the Pope receiving for his Cuſtomes of this one commoditie, no leſs than 60000. Crowns *per annum*. 4. *Furli*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, ſeated in a very pleaſant air, and a fruitfull ſoyl, betwixt two freſh ſtreams; of which the one is called *Ronchus*, and the other *Montonus*. 5. *Faventia*, now called *Faenza*, on the banks of *Anemus*, a calm gentle River; an antient City, but well peopled; much beneſited by the Flax which groweth in the adjoyning fields, and the Earthen Veſſells which they vend to moſt parts of *Italie*. It was firſt given unto the Popes by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, whom they but ſorrily requited for ſo great a curteſie. 6. *Sarſina*, an old City, ſeated at the foot of the *Apennine*, the birth place of *Plautus* the Comædian. 7. *Imola*, antiently called *Forum Cornelii*; and 8. *Ceſena*, Cities both of them of no ſmall Antiquity; but this laſt the fairer built, the better peopled, and the more ſtrongly fortified. 9. *Ravenna*, once beautified with one of the faireſt Havens in the world, and for that cauſe made the Road of one of the two Navies, which *Auguſtus* kept always manned to command the whole Empire of *Rome*: the other riding at *Miſenus* in *Campania*. This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper Sea, awed and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, *&c.* the other at *Miſenus*, in the lower Sea, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Africk*, *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* The walls of this City are ſaid to have been built or repaired by *Tiberius Ceſar*; the whole Citie to have been much beautified by *Theodoricus* King of the *Gothes*, who built here a moſt ſtately and magnificent Palace, the ruins whereof are ſtill eaſily diſcernable. The private buildings are but mean, the publick ones are of a grave, but ſtately ſtructure. Of which the principall heretofore was the Church of S. *Maries the Round*, whoſe roof was of one entire ſtone, and honoured with the rich Sepulchre of the ſaid King *Theoderick*: which the ſouldiers (in the ſack of this City by the *French*) pulled down, together with the Church it ſelf, onely to get the Jewells and Medalls of it. The principall at the preſent, is the Church of S. *Vitalis*, the pavement whereof is all of Marble, and the walls all covered with preeious ſtones of many ſorts, but unpoliſhed as they were taken out of Mines, which ſheweth as well the magnificence as Antiquity of it. The *Patriarchs* of this City, in regard it was ſo long the Regall and Imperiall Seat, have heretofore contended for precedency with the Popes themſelves: this City having been antiently the *Metropolis* of the Province called *Flaminia*, afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperor *Honorius*, and his ſucceſſors; next of the *Gothiſh* Kings; then of the *Exarchs*; and laſt of its Patriarchs. And it was choſen for this purpoſe, becauſe of the plentifull Territory, ſince covered with water, and the conveniency of the Haven, at this day choaked: though lately by expence of a great deal of treaſure, the Fens about the City have been very much drained, and the Bogs in ſome places turned to fruitfull Fields, to the great benefit hereof both for health and pleaſure.

As for the *Exarchs*, who had their reſidence in this City, they were no other than the *Vice-Roys* or Lieutenants of the Eaſtern Emperors. Concerning which we are to know, that the Kingdom of the *Gothes* in *Italie* was no ſooner deſtroyed by *Narſes*, but the *Lombards* entred. To give a ſtop to whoſe ſucceſſes, and preſerve ſo much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them, it was thought good by *Juſtine* the ſecond, to ſend thither an Imperiall Officer of principall command and note, whom he honoured with the title of *Exarch*. His reſidence ſetled at *Ravenna*, as ſtanding moſt commodiouſly to hinder the incurſions of the barbarous Nations; and withall to receive ſuch aids from the Eaſtern parts, as his occaſions did require. Theſe *Exarchs* having divided *Italie* into many Governments, appointed over each ſome ſupreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes. And even the City of *Rome* it

ſelf

self (so far then was it from being subject to the Pope in *Temporall* matters) had a chief Officer of this kinde (accomptable to the *Exarch*, and subordinate to him) whose Government was called the *Roman* Dukedom. They which they kept unto themselves, as their own *peculiar*, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rhegium*, *Mutina*, *Bononia*, *Classi*, *Furli*, *Forlimpoli*, *Sarcino*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*: which ten Cities with the Territories belonging to them, made up that *District*, which properly was called the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*, much mentioned in the Histories of the middle times, by reason of the continuall wars which they had with the *Lombards*; but newly entred when this Magistracy had its first beginning. The names of these *Exarchs* are as followeth. *Romandiola.*

The *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*.

A.C.			A.C.		
570.	1	*Longinus.* 21.	645.	9	*Theod. Calliopa.* 10.
591.	2	*Smaragdus.* 4.	655.	10	*Olympius.* 2.
595.	3	*Romanus Patricius.*	657.	11	*Theod. Calliopa.* II. 30.
596.	4	*Callinicus.* 13.	687.	12	*Joh. Plotina.* 15.
609.	5	*Smaragdus.* 3.	702.	13	*Theophilactus.* 25.
612.	6	*Joh. Lamigius.* 4.	727.	14	*Paulus.*
616.	7	*Eleutherius.* 5.	728.	15	*Eutipenus.* 12. In the days of this *Exarch*, *Ravenna* was taken from the Empire, by *Luitprandus*
621.	8	*Isaacus Patricius.* 24.			

King of the *Lombards*, An°. 740. but regained by *Charles* the Great, and by him given to the Bishops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*: as a requitall for the Kingdom of *France*, confirmed unto King *Pepin* his Father by the consent and authority of the Popes. The donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarchs*, and partly to make the people obedient to those Prelates, changed the name of the Countrey from *Flaminia* (by which name it was formerly known) to *Romandiola*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithstanding which Donation, or Originall Grant, the Popes injoyed not long the possession of it; the Emperors of *Germanie*, and their Viee-gerents in *Italie*, wresting it by strong hand out of the possession of the Church, and giving it to such as deserved well of them, and were most likely, or most able to uphold their Faction. And so it stood, till the last Popes conspiring with the *French* Kings, *Lewis* the twelfth and *Francis* the first, brought them into *Italie*: and by their aids, and by the censures of the Church, so prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and some other places out of the hands of the *Venetians*, erected many petit Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to S. *Peters* Patrimony; and thereby got possession of all those Territories which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches* of *Ancona*.

2. The *Territory* of *FERRARA* lieth in the very skirts of *Romandiola* towards the *Venetian*, extending one hundred and sixty miles in length, and about fifty in breadth; the soyl thereof exceeding rich, but subject to the overflowings of the River *Po*, which makes the air in many places to be somewhat unwholesome. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes who are now Lords hereof, have been at great charge in raising high Banks and Ramparts to keep in the waters; yet could not this resist the violence of the River, falling from so high a Spring, and seconded with so great Land-floods (as sometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do they what they can. The places of most note herein, are 1. *Graffignan* in the borders of *Tuscany* neer the *Apennine*. 2. *Carpi*, a place of great importance, seated in the midst of this Dukedom; belonging heretofore to the House of the *Pici*, but partly by exchange made with *Marcus Picus*, partly for one hundred thousand Crowns in ready money, given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lords hereof, it was by *Charles* the 5th. incorporated into this estate. 3. *Commachia*, seated in the Marshes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Este*, were at first called only Lords of *Commachio*; a place which yeelded great profit to the former Dukes by the fishing of Eels. 4. *Saxole*, given by Duke *Alphonso* in exchange for *Carpi*. Here is also the Territory and Lordship of the *Polesine*, the cause of so many quarrells and contentions between the antient Dukes of *Ferrara*, and the State of *Venice*. But the chief honor of this Dukedom, is in the Capitall City, that which denominates the whole, *Ferrara*; a City of five miles in compass, so called from the Iron Mines which are about it, commodiously seated on the River *Po*, which by reason of its breadth, depth, and violent swiftness of the current, is a sufficient rampart to it on that side; the other sides being fortified with a strong wall, and a spacious mote. In the middle of the City is a fair and spacious Market-place, into which do open on all sides about twenty streets, all of them half a mile in length, and all so strait and evenly built, that the furthest end of each of them may be easily seen. Neer to this Market-place is a little Iland, in which the former Dukes had a stately Palace, called *Belvidere*, from the fair prospect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North side of the City a large Park for pleasure. The other houses are for the most part built of fair Free-stone, not joyning unto one another as in other Cities, but at a pretty distance with neat Gardens between. *Ariosto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioso*, and *Hieronimo Savanarola* the Prophetical Friar, were both of them Natives of this place: of which the first dieth here entombed, the last for preaching against the Pope was burnt at *Florence*.

In

Ferrara. In the declining of the power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City, together with *Faventza*, was given by *Deſiderius*, their laſt King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by ſo great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperors of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, it was again recovered by the proweſs of the Counteſs *Mathildis*, An°.1107. who took it, with many other Towns in *Italie*, from the Emperor *Henry* the 4th. and at her death conferred the ſame upon the Church. The Popes once more poſſeſſed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the Houſe of *Eſte*, a man of great ſway in the affairs of *Italie*, who valiantly had defended it againſt *Ezelinus* Vicegerent of *Frederick* the 2d. This was the firſt of this Family who had *Ferrara* in *propriety*: His Anceſtors being called before the Marqueſſes of *Eſte*, and ſometimes Marqueſſes of *Ferrara*, (but in title only) as Governors hereof in behalf of the Popes of *Rome*. *Obizo* the Grand-child of this firſt *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolfus* the firſt (who was willing to make what money he could of his lands in *Italie*) the Cities of *Regium* and *Modena*, that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legat of Pope *Benedict* the ninth, with the Popes conſent, An°.1304. Other improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of war, but none of them continued conſtant in their poſſeſſion, but theſe three Cities and the Territories adjoyning to them. As for this Family *de Eſto*, (*Familia Ateſtina* it is called in *Latine*) it took this name from *Eſto*, or *Ateſte*, a ſmall Town in the Signeury of *Venice*, conferred upon the Anceſtors of this *Azo*, by *Charles* the Great. And for the chiefs or Princes of it, they have been men of great authority and power in their ſeverall times, commanding ſometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and ſometimes the Popes; great favourers of learned men, and advancers of learning, inſomuch that the *Renaldo's* and *Rogero's* of *Eſte*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Arioſto* and *Taſſo*, two of the greateſt wits of *Italie*; and finally allied to many of the beſt Houſes of Chriſtendom. The Catalogue of whom ſince they were made the hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here ſubjoyned.

The Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Ferrara*.

1236. 1 *Actius*, or *Azo de Eſte*, the ninth of that name, but firſt hereditary Marqueſs of *Ferrara*, by the Grant of the Pope.

1264. 2 *Obizo*, the ſixt of that name, Grand-ſonne to *Azo* by his ſonne *Rinaldo*, ſecond Marqueſs of *Ferrara*.

1293. 3 *Azo* the tenth of *Eſte*, and II. of *Ferrara*, ſonne to *Obizo*.

1308. 4 *Franciſcd*, brother to *Azo* the 2d. after whoſe death, An°.1312. *Ferrara* for a time was under the command of the Popes.

1312. 5 *Alobrandinus*, brother of *Franciſcus*, who had the Title to, but not the poſſeſſion of *Ferrara*.

1315. 6 *Reinoldo* the 3d. of *Eſte*, and the firſt of *Ferrara*, recovered *Ferrara* from the Pope, and caſt out his Garriſons. 1317.

1335. 7 *Obizo* II. brother of *Reinaldo*.

1352. 8 *Alabrandino* II. ſonne of *Obizo*.

1361. 9 *Nicolao* the 2d. of *Eſte*, and firſt of *Ferrara*, brother of *Alabrandino*, whoſe children being young, he diſpoſſeſſed of the Eſtate.

1388. 10 *Albertus*, brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Ferrara*, An°.1392.

1393. 11 *Nicolas* II. baſe ſonne of *Albertus*.

1441. 12 *Leonellus* the baſe ſonne of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his brother *Hercules*, begot in lawfull Wedlock, invaded the Eſtate, and held it.

1450. 13 *Borſius*, another of the baſe ſonnes of *Nicolas* 2d. ſucceeded *Leonel* in the Eſtate; who being made Duke of *Mutina* by *Frederick* the 3d. was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of *Ferrara* alſo, An°.1470.

1471. 14 *Hercules*, the lawfull ſonne of *Nicolas* the 2d. made Knight of the Garter by King *Edward* 4th.

1505. 15 *Alphonſo*, the ſonne of *Hercules*.

1534. 16 *Hercules* II. ſonne of *Alphonſo*.

1559. 17 *Alphonſo* II. who dying without lawfull iſſue, An°. 1595. Pope *Clement* the 8th. challenged this Eſtate in the right of the Church; and partly by force, partly by compoſition (whereof we ſhall ſay more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yeerly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thouſand Crowns; now not ſo much worth unto the Pope, by reaſon of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Regio*; of which more hereafter.

The Arms of theſe Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illuſtrious Family, and for the ſtrangeneſs of the Coat, I ſhall here put down) were Palewiſe of three pieces, 1. *Parti per Feſſe*, in the chief *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed *Sable*, membred, langued, and crowned *Gules*; and in Baſe *Azure*, three Flowers *de Lys Or*, within a Border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2. *Gules*, two keys in *Saltier*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, charged in *Faſſe* with an Eſchocheon of pretence *Azure*, ſupporting an Eagle of the third, membred and crowned of the ſecond; over all in

in chief a Papall Crown *Or*, garnished with sundry Gems *Azure* and *Purple*. 3 The third as the first, counter-placed Which Coat upon the failing of the house of *Ferrara*, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*.

Anconitana, & *Spoletano*

2 *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bounded on the East with the River of *Trontus* or *Druentus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the West, with the River *Isaurus* (now *Foglio*) which divides it from *Romandiola*; on the South, with the *Apennine* Hills; on the North, with the *Adriatick*. It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, who possessed all these parts on the coast of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the East, to that of *Aufidus* on the West. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their war against *Rome*, they were invaded and subdued by the *Romans*, about five years before the first *Punick* war, under the conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were so great and multitudinous a nation, that they were numbered to amount to 360000, which were then brought under the command and vassalage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italie* was divided into no more than eight Regions, these *Picentes* only made up one; so did they also when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonini*, they made up one of the sixteen Provinces into which *Italie* was divided by those Emperours; and the same repute it held in the time of *Constantine*; *Picenum* being alwayes one: *Asculum caput gentis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the head of their Nation, being the *Metropolis* of the Province. In the declining of the Empire it was first called *Marcha Firmiana*, from *Firmo*, once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of most importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief seat from *Firmo* to *Ancona* in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, besides those named already, which are only borderers, are, 1 *Chientus*, 2 *Sentinus*, and 3 *Potentia*; all rising in the *Apennine*, and passing with a swift course to the *Adriatick*.

The chief Towns, 1 *Ancona*, seated on the Hill *Cimmerius*, shooting into the sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and in her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperor, one of the faireſt in the world, not so much for capacity, as the pleasantness and beauty of it; the descents down unto the water being made of Marble, and very delectable walking on all sides of it. The City it self is begirt with hils, on one of which Pope *Clement* the seventh built a very strong Castle, *An.* 1532. under pretence of defending the Town against the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the people in more full subjection, who till that time did yearly chuse their own Magistrates, and lived according to their own Laws like a Commonwealth. 2 *Recanati* (heretofore *Ælia Recina*) seated upon the banks of the River *Mulsio*, renowned for the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of *Europe* at her Annuall Marts, and a vein of the most excellent Wines. 3 *Firmo*, surnamed the Strong, in former times of most esteem in all the Province, which was hence called *Marca Firmiana*, and to this day a place of great strength, and consequence. 4 *Macerata*, now of most credit, by reason that the Popes *Legate* keeps his residence there, and with him the Chancery for this Marquisate. 5 *Loretto*, called in *Latin*, *Lauretana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified against the *Turkes* and other Pirates who once spoyled the same, and might be easily tempted thither on the like occasions: The Church here being admirably rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their devotions unto our Lady of *Loretto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the removall of whose Chamber hither, in our description of *Palestine*, you shall meet with a very proper Legend. 6 *Ascoli*, surnamed the *Fair*, seated at the influx of the River *Druentus*, and on the furthest side of it towards *Abruzzo*, and so the furthest City Eastwards, of old called *Asculum*, conquer'd by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Sempronius*, A.V.C.685. Nigh unto this City, as *Florus* relateth, was fought the second battell between *C. Fabricius* and the *Romans* on the one side, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirots* on the other; wherein the Victory fell to the King, having slain 6000 of his Enemies, yet with such apparencie of valour and vertue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this acclamation; *O quam facile esset orbem vincere, aut mihi*, Romanis *militibus*; *aut me rege*, Romanis. This Town also was the seat of the War called *Bellum sociale*, raised by the people of *Italie* against the *Romans*; *Popeidius* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They, for a while, sorely shaked the state of *Rome*; but at last were vanquished, and this Town by *Strabo Pompeius* forced and spoyled. 7 *Adria*, now not otherwise famous, than that it gave denomination to the adjoyning Sea, and the Emperor *Adrian*. 8 *Humana*, which last Town, together with *Ancona*, was given to Pope *Zachary*, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The succeeding Popes after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

Having surveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we must next cross the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedom of *SPOLETO* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians* call it.) A Territory taking up the Western part of the Province of *Umbria*, so called, because being situate under the shade of the *Apennine* Hils, it was *Regio umbrosa*. Some give another reason of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, *quasi* Ὄμβροι, as men that had escaped the Deluge; because so antient a people, that no body could tell the originall of them. But whatsoever was the reason of the name, they were a stout and valiant people, and gave the first check to *Annibals* careere, after his great Victory at *Trasymene*, repulsing him with loss and shame from the walls of *Spoleto*. And for

S. Peters Patrimonie.

their Country, which was this Region of *Umbria* (being one of the eleven into which *Italie* was divided by *Auguſtus Ceſar*,) It hath on the Eaſt the River of *Anio*, or *Aniene*, dividing it from the Eaſt parts of *Latium*; on the Weſt the *Tiber* ; on the North, the *Apennine*; on the South, a reach or winding of the *Tiber*, and the main body of *Latium*. A Country it is of a mixt nature, equally compoſed of very rough hils, and yet moſt delectable vallies ; exceeding plentifull of all neceſſaries, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary foecunditie of the women. The Wine hereof is much commended by *Martial*, as the beſt of *Italie*.

De Spoletanis *quæ ſunt carioſa lagenis*
Malueris, quam ſi muſta Falerna *bibas.*

That is to ſay.

If with *Spoleto* bottles once you meet,
Say that *Falerno* Muſt is no ſo ſweet.

Here are ſaid to have been once three hundred good Towns and Cities, all deſtroyed by the *Tuſcans*. The principall of thoſe now extant, are 1 *Spoletum*, built partly on the hill, and partly on the lower ground, the reſidence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Longobardians*, who governed as Vice-Roys or Lord Preſidents of the remoter parts of that Kingdom, from whence the Country round about it was called *Ducato Spoletano*. It is ſtill a Town of good eſteem, populous, and of handſome building, and hath a ſtrong Fortreſs for defence thereof, built upon the ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*, to which men paſs over a great bridge of ſtone, upheld by 24 great pillars, which joyns two Mountains together, having between them a deep Vallie, but narrow and without any water. *Theodorick* the *Goth* built a fair Palace in this Citie, rebuilt by *Narſes*, but ſince ruined. 2 *Eugubium* (now called *Angubio*) ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*, in or near that place where antiently ſtood that City which *Plinie* calls *Iuginium*, *Ptolomie*, *Iſunium*, utterly ſubverted by the *Gothes*. A Town well ſeated in a fruitfull and wealthy ſoyl, and bleſſed with an induſtrious people. 3 *Nuceria*, in *Plinies* time called *Alfatenia*, at the foot alſo of the *Apennine* ; the people of which in former times much traded in their wooden veſſel. 4 *Aſſiſium*, or *Aſſiſe*, deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the Civill Wars of *Italie*, and only famous at this time, in being the birth-place of S. *Francis*, the founder of the *Franciſcans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the *French* call them; but we in *England* the *Gray Friers*. 5 *Citta de Caſtello*, antiently *Tiphernum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6 *Tudertum*, now called *Todi*, ſeated near the *Tiber* on the declivitie of a rich and fruitfull hill.

The reſt of *Umbria* towards the Eaſt, not being within the compaſs of the *Spoletane* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, becauſe the dwelling in times paſt of the antient *Sabines* ; but in the diviſion of *Italie* made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nurſia* ; and in that made by *Conſtantine*, it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*, *Reate* being the *Metropolis*, or head City of both. A Territory of no great circuit, but abundantly Fruitfull in Oyl or Olives, Vines, and Fig-trees ; watered with the River *Farfarus*, which cutteth thorough the very middeſt of it, and with the Lake called antiently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Lago di Pedeluco*) eſteemed to be the Center or Navell of *Italie* by ſome antient Writers ; the waters of which are of ſuch a nature, that in ſhort time they will cloth a peece of wood with a coat of ſtone, and yet yeeldeth excellent Trouts, and other good Fiſh. The Towns and Cities of moſt note, are, 1 *Reate* (now called *Riete*) an antient City, and the *Metropolis* heretofore of all this Tract, as well when it was called *Nurſia*, as when it paſſed under the name of *Valeria*. 2 *Nurſia*, a City no leſs antient, ſeated amongſt the Hils, which for the moſt part are covered with ſnow ; from which Town, being heretofore of more reputation, the Province of *Nurſia*, ſpoken of in the *Itineravie* of *Antoninus*, took denomination. 3 *Magliano*, a pleaſant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principall of this Territory. 4 *Ocriculum*, built amongſt many Fruitfull hils, a mile from *Tiber*. 5 *Narnia*, the Country and Birth-place of the Emperor *Nerva*, the firſt of all the Emperors not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The ſoyl about it is of ſo different and ſtrange a nature, that it is ſaid to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and duſty by Rain ; the City is well-peopled, and a Biſhops See, ſeated upon a very ſteep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards* ; of which the Popes of *Rome* having got poſſeſſion, never left practiſing till they had got into their power all the reſt of the Country. Little is famous elſe in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Weſtern part thereof, is the Lake called *Lacus Vademodius*, neer to *Ameria*, now called *Amelia*, a town of the Dukedom, where *Dolobella* overthrew ſuch of the *Galls* as had eſcaped the ſword of *Camillus* ; *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (ſaith the Hiſtorian) *qui incenſam à ſe* Romam *gloriaretur* ; a former ſlaughter being made by *Camillus* on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eaſtern limits of theſe *Umbri*.

5 S. *PETERS PATRIMONIE*, properly and ſpecially ſo called, is that part of *Tuſcanie*, which appertains unto the Church ; bounded upon the Eaſt with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Compagna di Roma* ; on the Weſt, with the River *Piſco*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario*, and parteth it from the eſtate of the Duke of *Florence* ; on the North, with the *Apennine* ; on the South, with the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name preſently on the donation of the Counteſs *Mathildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, *An.* 110. *Paſchal* the ſecond ſitting in the Chair of *Rome*, to be the *Patrimonie*

trimonie of S. *Peter*, and his ſucceſſors in that See. A Country not inferiour unto any in *Italie*, for the fertility of the ſoyl; but for the moſt part of an unhealthy Air, by reaſon of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and clenſe it. *Compagna di Roma.*

The principall Cities, and places of moſt obſervation, are 1 *Periglia*, formerly called *Perusia*; a famous Town, in which *Auguſtus* beſieged *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*, who when they had in vain attempted to ſeduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this Citie, which alſo at the laſt yeelded to the more fortunate Emperor, who afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, cauſed it to be called *Auguſta*; but it returned not long after to its antient name. It is ſeated very pleaſantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitfull ſoyl, well built both for the publick and private ſtructures; a Biſhops See, and made an Univerſity *An.* 1090. In the diſtractions of *Italie* betwixt the Emperours and the Popes, this City was ſeized on by the *Baillons*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Oddies*, an oppoſite Faction to them, having got together a ſtrong party of Malecontents, ſo ſuddenly entred one night into the City, that the *Baillons* began to fly, nor was there any thing to hinder them from being maſters of the Palace, but the chain which was drawn croſs the gate. One of the ſouldiers going about to cut this chain, and wanting room to wield his arm, cryed aloud, *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well underſtood by thoſe furtheſt off, put them to their heels, and the foremoſt, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was ſaved. 2 *Orvieto*, ſeated on ſo high a Rock, that it is no ſmall terrour to look down from the top of it into the vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightneſs, and yet the windows of the ſame (if we may credit *Adrianus* who reports it) are made of Alabaſter in ſtead of Glaſs. 3 *Viterbo*, famous for the long reſidence of the Popes, at ſuch time as they were affronted by the *Roman* Senators. 4 *Civita Vecchia* (called antiently *Centumcellæ*) the only uſefull Haven that belongeth to *Rome*; which being ruined by the *Saracens*, was rebuilt by the Popes, new named, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle for the defence of their Shipping. 5 *Porto*, ſeated on the mouth of *Tiber*, over againſt *Oſtia*; but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both; a Biſhops See, and one of the ſeven Cardinals which is alwaies aſſiſtant to the Pope. 6 *Farneſe*, the antient ſeat and Patrimony of the *Farneſis*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7 *Bracciano*, which gives the title of a Duke to a branch of the *Urſins*, a well-known Family of thoſe parts. 8 *Bacchano*, neer the laſt in ſound, although not in ſite: compaſſed round about with Hils, in the form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the middeſt, out of which runneth the River *Cremera*, neer which the *Fabii* were ſlain.

Here was in this Country alſo the City of the *Veii*, of great wealth and power, in a War againſt which, managed for the moſt part by the aforeſayd *Fabii*, 306 of them were ſlain in a day; onely one little child of them being left at home, who reſtored the Houſe, and was the Anceſtor of that *Fabius Maximus* who preſerved *Italie* in the Wars with *Annibal*. Of which great ſlaughter, thus ſaith *Ovid*: ——— *Veientibus Arvis*

Ter centum Fabii, *ter cecidere duo.*

On the *Veientine* plain
Three hundred and ſix *Fabii* were ſlain.

This City of the *Veii* was at laſt, after a ten years ſiege, taken by *Furius Camillus*, and by him levelled with the earth, becauſe he found that the common people of *Rome* had a mind to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is alſo that fatall River of *Allia*, nigh unto which *Brennus* and his *Galls*, being drawn into *Italie* by the ſweet taſt of the *Italian* wines, ſlaughtered the *Romans*. The *Roman* Army conſiſted of 40000 Souldiers, moſt of them being raw and unexperienced. The *Galls* were not more in number, but were naturally of a fierce and hardy courage, and withall ſo big-boned, that it ſeemeth they were born to be the terrour of mankind, and the ruin of Cities. Having wonne the day, the *Barbarians* march towards *Rome*, forſaken of its chiefeſt ſtrength; the *Capitoll* only being manned by *Manlius*; which alſo they had maſtered if the geeſe had not been more vigilant than the Watch. When they had failed of this enterprize, they began a treaty with the Fathers of the Town, agreeing with them for a thouſand pound weight of Gold to forſake the City: But before the delivery of this mony, they were aſſaulted and vanquiſhed by *Camillus*; who for this is called *Romes ſecond Founder*. The overthrow at *Allia*, and the vanquiſhmrnt of the *Fabii*, hapned in one day, though in divers years, which was therefore by the old *Romans* put among the unfortunate daies; they never on that day attempting any buſineſs of importance. The like cuſtom, whether on ſuperſtition, or fear of ill luck, is uſed by many *Chriſtians*; and eſpecially on *Childermas* day; wherein *Philip de Comines* telleth us, that *Lewis* the 11. uſed not to debate any matter; but accounted it a ſign of ſome great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his affairs; and would be marvailouſly diſpleaſed with thoſe that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatſoever.

And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thraſymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the neerneſs of it to that City) where *Annibal* ſlew *Flaminius* the Conſul, and 15000 of his *Romans*; which fight continued three houres, with ſo great an eagerneſs, that the Souldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time hapned.

Compagna di Roma. 6 *COMPAGNA DI ROMA*, containeth that part of *Italie* which antiently was called *Latium*, the habitation of the *Latins*, and seat of *Rome*; so called for that it is adjoyning to that Famous City, as the more proper Territory, and precinct thereof. It is sometimes also called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly so called, the seat and dwelling of the *Campans*. It is bounded on the East with the said *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Axofenus*; on the West, with *Tiber*; on the North, with *Umbria*, or the new *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan* sea: and came unto the Popes by no other Title than as they had the soveraignty and possession of the City of *Rome*, to which it alwaies did belong.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat-Royall of the *Latin*, or *Silvian* Kings, ruined by *Tullus Hostilius* the third King of *Rome*; in which war *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the stake, the whole action was committed by the *Romans* to the *Horatii*, to the *Curatii* by the *Albans*, being three Brethren of each side; in which it hapned that two of the *Horatii* were first slain, and the third counterfeiting a flight severed his Enemies, and so slew them; whereby the *Albans* ever after became subject to *Rome*. 2 *Lavinium*, built by *Æneas* in honour of his wife *Lavinia*. 3 *Antium*, honoured many times with the seat and retirement of the Emperours; the Country round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very strong in shipping, till the taking of the Town by *Mævius* a *Roman* Consul, who having broke their Forces at sea, brought with him into *Rome* the Beaks of their ships and other vessels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*) which have generally ever since been called *Rostra*. This was the chief City of the antient *Volsci*, a people very strong in shipping, though without an Haven; afterwards much frequented by the principall *Romans* in their retirements from the City; so that for pompous and stately buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the ruins of this Town long ago destroyed, sprang the new City called *Neptunum*, situate on a rock near unto the sea, the steepness of which gives it naturall strength enough, and yet it is Fortified besides with two strong Castles, surveying the sea, and commanding the shore. 4 *Ardea*, the chief Town of the *Lentuli*, and seat of *Turnus* the Rivall and Competitor of *Æneas*; afterwards taken by *Superbus* the last King of the *Romans*; to which when the *Galls* had taken *Rome*, the miserable Citizens were compelled to fly. 5 *Gabii*, taken also by the same *Superbus*, whose sonne *Sextus* counterfeiting some dislike of his Fathers cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*, by whom improvidently entrusted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6 *Ostia*, antiently the Port-Town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tiber*, by *Ancus Martius*, the 4th King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long since dammed up, to stop the passage of the Enemies ships unto the City. The Bishop of this Town useth to consecrate the Pope. 7 *Præneste*, first conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Cincinnatus* the Dictator. Nothing so much endammaged this City as its naturall and artificiall Fortifications; for when the *Romans* in the times of sedition abandoned the Town, they used to make this place their refuge. Among others, *Marius* the younger made it the seat of war against *L. Sylla*, but perceiving the unsuccessfulness of his affairs, here killed himself; and *Sylla* entring it as Conqueror, put 12000 of the Citizens to the sword. It hath since been so often sacked, that it is very short now of its former lustre; but still it holds the reputation of a Bishops See. 8 *Tibur*, an antient City also, and seated in an healthy Air. It is now called *Trivolis*, where there is a Fountain, which with Artificiall Engines moved with water, representeth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it seemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reporteth it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almost all Civill Nations may pretend a share, so I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*, whose Master-pieces in this kind do far exceed the rest of *Europe*: For in the Kings house at S^t. *Germains*, seven miles from *Paris* (if it be lawfull for me to digress a little on this Argument) one may behold the *Statua* of a Nymph, sitting before a pair of *Organs*, whose fingers by the help of water, are taught to manage the Keys in so due an order, and the instrument to yeeld such a Musick to it, as comes exceeding near the *Organ*, if it be not the same; her head in the mean time jolting from one shoulder to another, like an old Fidlers at a *Wake*; there being also not far off the counterfeits of divers Mils, who very busily plyed their work till the Musick sounded, and then stood still as if inchanted with the noise. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may see two *Tritons* riding on their *Dolphins* in a Sea of water, each of them with a shell in his hand, which enterchangably and in turns served in stead of Trumpets: In a third, the story of *Perseus* and *Andromeda* most lively acted; and in a fourth, *Orpheus in sylvis positus*, *Orpheus* playing on a Violl, the Trees moving, and the wild Beasts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificiall guidance of the waters only; the prettie Birds in every place so chirping out their several and respective notes, that the hearer would conceive himself to be in some pleasant Grove. But it is time to go from *Trivoli* to 9 *Velitri* (called antiently *Velitræ*, and then a City of the *Volsci*) famous for the birth of the Emperor *Augustus*, and the dwelling of the *Octavian* Family; a place most delectably seated amongst the Vines, which yeeld as rich Wines as most in *Italie*. 10 *Anxur*, so called of the Temple which was here dedicated to *Jupiter*, surnamed *Anxurus*, that is, *Beardless*; first built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the severity of *Lycurgus* his Laws, did here seat themselves; after, a Colony of the *Volsci*, and after of the *Romans*. But this town being destroyed by the tyrannie of time, there started up

Tara-

Taracina in the place thereof, ſeated upon a Mountain, but neer the Sea, which it embraceth like a Half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mola*) this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Cajeta* on the other, which is the firſt Port-Town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Country hereabouts hath moſt pleaſant Orchards, of Citrons, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the ſame time both ripe and green Fruits, and repreſents a kind of Summer in the dead of Winter. Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than they are at the preſent, are 1 *Tuſculum*, a village which belonged to *Tullie*, who here compoſed his excellent Book called the *Tuſculan Queſtions*. 2 *Formiæ*, built by the *Laconians*, heretofore the delight and ſolace of the antient *Romans*, now viſible only in its ruins. 3 *Privernum*, once the chief City of the *Volſci*, and the ſeat of *Camilla*, a noble *Amazonian* Lady, who aided *Turnus* the *Rutilian* in his ſharp war againſt *Æneas* and the *Troians*, where ſhe loſt her life. 4 *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now ſtands S. *Felix*) the habitation of *Circe*, that ſo much celebrated *Sorcereſs*, of whom, and her chanting of *Ulyſſes* and his companions, there is ſo much upon record in the antient Poets. Neer to which is the head-land called the *Circæan Promontory*, the repercuſſion of the Waves by whoſe Southern *Baſis*, makes a dreadfull noiſe, and gave occaſion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lyons, howling of Dogs, *&c*, which were heard about that Witches dwelling. *Campagna di Roma.*

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed of *Italie*, was that the famous City of *Rome* was ſeated in it, being built on the Eaſt ſide of *Tiber*, now much inlarged by the increaſe of 42 leſſer ſtreams or Rivers. It is diſtant from the ſea about 15 miles, firſt built, as Fryer *Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma*, Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forſaken and forlorn, by reaſon of the unwholſom air comming from the Fens, was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleaſed with the naturall ſtrength of the ſituation, and therefore like to make a good town of war. And this tradition I ſhould rather ſubſcribe unto, than that it was called *Rome* from *Romulus*; who had he pleaſed to challenge the honour to himſelf, might better have cauſed it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samnites*) than to call it *Roma*. But whatſoever greatneſs it did after come to, it was ſmall enough (God knows) at firſt; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* only, and therefore not a mile in compaſs; the Territory not extending, as *Strabo* witneſſeth, above ſix miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the firſt generall *Muſter* amounting at the moſt to 3300 men. So inconſiderable they were as well in quality as numbers, that their neighbours thought it a diſparagement to beſtow their daughters on them; and therefore they were fain to get themſelves wives by a ſlight of wit; proclaming ſolemn Playes and Paſtimes to be held in *Rome*, and raviſhing the women which came thither to behold the ſports. The Kings ſucceeding much enlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the hill *Janiculum* on the other ſide of the water being walled and added to it by *Ancus Martius*; as *Quirinalis*, *Eſquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullus*; *Capitolinus* and Mount *Cœlius* came not in till afterwards. But at the laſt it was improved to ſuch an height, that in the flouriſhing times of that Commonwealth, the men increaſed to the number of 463000, and the compaſs of the Town unto 50 miles; there being on and about the walls 740 Turrets. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither ſervants, women, nor children, but men able to bear Arms, *Free Denizens*, and ſuch as were inrolled into *Cenſe*, or the Subſidie Books. To which if we ſhould adde their wives, children, and ſervants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and ſo *Lipſius* is of opinion his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*. The moſt memorable buildings of it, were 1 the *Capitol*, founded by *Tarquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the ſpoyles of their conquered Neighbours; ſaved from the fury of the *Gulls* by the cackling of Geeſe. *Tacitus* calleth this houſe, *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, aſpicato à majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civill Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the wars of *Veſpaſian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Veſpaſian* carried the firſt basket of earth, after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the ſervice: and perhaps the cuſtom of laying the firſt ſtone in a building, or driving the firſt nayl in a timber-work, by him whoſe edifice it is, hath from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2 Here was the Temple of *Janus*, open in the time of wars, and ſhut in the time of peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned but thrice: namely, during the reign of *Auguſtus*, after the *Punick* war, and in the time of *Numa*. 3 Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Horatius Cocles* reſiſted the whole Army of King *Porſena*, *Tarquin*, and the *Tuſcans*, till the Citizens behind had broken down the bridge, received him ſwimming to the bank with joyfull acclamations, and ſaved their City from preſent ruin. Here lived the famous Warriers, ſo much renowned in the ſtories of elder times; here flouriſhed the exact Martiall diſcipline ſo memorized by antient Hiſtoriographers; and finally here were layd up the ſpoyles and Tropheys of all *Europe*.

ROME, as now it ſtandeth lower on the bank of *Tyber*, upon *Campus Martius*, where it was built after the inundation of the *Gothes* and *Vandals*, is in compaſs about eleven miles, within which compaſs is not a little waſt ground. The Inhabitants of all ſorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergy-men and Courtiers, that is to ſay, ſuch as have their dependance on the Court of *Rome*, either by holding offices and places of employment under the Popes, or by attending on his perſon, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates

ROME lates who are there abiding; or otherwiſe being of the retinue of ſuch Forein Ambaſſadors as are alwaies commorant in the City to follow the Negotiations of their ſeverall Maſters; all which muſt needs amount to a very great number. It was firſt built on the Eaſt ſide of the River, in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins, and here and there ſome Churches and ſcattered houſes (except it be a little on the North-Eaſt of the River from the Gate called *Del Populo* to the Iland of *Tiber*) the reſt, eſpecially towards the South, being taken up with Paſtures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it ſtands, is on the Weſt ſide of the water, and the *Holy Iland*, conſiſting of three diſtinct parts or members. Of theſe the leaſt is that which they call *La Iſola*, but antiently the *Holy Iland*; firſt made an Iland by the Corn, Straw, and other Goods of the *Tarquins*, which the Senate not vouchſafing to convert to any publick or private uſe, commanded to be flung into the River, where it ſunk and ſetled to an Iland; and after called the *Holy Iland*, from a Temple herein built unto *Eſculapius*, brought hither from *Epidaurus* in the ſhape of a Serpent. This Iland is not above a quarter of a mile in length, and hardly half ſo much in bredth, but full of ſtately Churches and beautifull houſes. Next to this is that which they call *Traſtevere*, or *Tranſ-Tiberina*, but of old *Janiculo*, from the mountain of that name included in it; called alſo *Civitas Ravennatium*, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Souldiers which *Auguſtus* kept at *Ravenna* againſt *Antonius*, and after placed in this out-part of the City, which by reaſon of the unwholſomeneſs of the air, is inhabited onely by Artizans and poor people, yet compaſſed about with walls, except on that ſide next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches, and ſome handſome buildings. But the chief glory of the City conſiſteth in that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North ſide of the other, but diſjoyned from it, compaſſed about with walls by Pope *Leo* the 4. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1 the Church of S. *Peter*, which were it once finiſhed, would be one of the rareſt buildings in all the World. 2 The Caſtle of S. *Angelo*, impregnable unleſs by Famin. 3 The Popes Palace, called *Belvidere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compaſſed about with a very high wall by Pope *Nicolas* the fift, and had this name from the fair proſpect which it hath; in the ſame ſence as *Belvoir* Caſtle here in *England*, the Barony and Manſion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4 The Library of the hill *Vatican*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican* Library: a *Library* was founded by *Sixtus* the 4th. who not only ſtored it with the choiceſt books he could pick out of *Europe*; but allowed alſo a large revenue for the perpetuall augmentation of it, *Bibliothecam* Palatinam *in* Vaticano, *toto terrarum orbe celebrem, advectis ex omni* Europa *libris conſtruxit*; *proventuſque certos, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Burbon* ſacked *Rome*, An. 1527, it was much defaced and ranſacked; but by the ſucceeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame and beauty. *Rome* is now an Univerſity, which was founded by *Urban* the fourth, at whoſe requeſt *Thomas Aquinas* profeſſed here. Pope *Nicholas* the fifth was a ſpeciall Benefactor to the ſame; and after him, *Leo* the tenth, who revived the *Greek* learning and language, which were in theſe parts almoſt forgotten. And finally to this place are brought all the treaſures of thoſe parts of Chriſtendom ſubject to the Popes authority, partly for the expence of ſtrangers, which do there remain on their ſeverall pleaſures or occaſions, and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained for the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhopricks, and *Buls* of Benefices, Indulgences, and other matters of *Court-holy-water*, and partly in the Penſions which are payd there to the Cardinals and other Miniſters of thoſe Kings and Princes which know beſt how to make their ends of the Popes Ambitions. So that it may be truly ſayd, there came not more Tributes into *Old Rome* from the conquered Provinces, than hath been bronght into the *New* from the ſubject Churches, which have ſubmitted to the power of the *Roman* Prelates; and that they have as great command now under the pretence of *Religion*, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it ſayd by *Proſper* of *Aquitane* (if my memory fayl not.)

Roma *caput mundi, quicquid non poſſidit* Armis,
Religione *tenet.*——

That is to ſay.

What *Rome* ſubdu'd not with the Sword,
She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the antient City, the power and naturall courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the ſame againſt the bravery and aſſaults of all Forein Enemies: this City during the time of the antient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Galls*; but ſince *Pontificall*, it hath been made a Prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was beſieged by any that did not take it. In a word, the city of *Rome* as now it ſtandeth, is but the carcaſs of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruins; and the cauſe of them, her ſins.

The Popes much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the authority of S. *Peter*; whoſe being there is indeed conſtantly atteſted by moſt antient Writers, inſomuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet *propter Scriptorum conſenſum*, in regard of the unanimous conſent of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The ſilence of the Scriptures is a *Negative Argument*, and concludes nothing to the contrary, againſt ſo great a *Cloud* of unqueſtioned *Witneſſes*, as ſoberly and poſitively have affirmed the ſame. And yet I would

would not have it thought by the captious *Romanists*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Popes *Supremacy*, becauſe he ſits in *Peters* ſeat; no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the Story) to attain *Tullies* eloquence, or *Cæſars* power, becauſe he maried *Tullies* widow, and bought *Cæſars* chair, though the poor Gentleman did befool himſelf with this opinion, that he ſhould be Maſter of them both. Of which ſee Lib. LVII. And yet the Popes relie ſo much upon this fancy of being the direct heirs of S.*Peter*, and all his preheminences, that all things which they ſay or do, muſt be entituled to S.*Peter*. Their Throne muſt be S.*Peters Chair*, their Church S.*Peters Ship*, their Lands S. *Peters Patrimony*, their Tributes and exactions muſt be called *Peter-pence*, their Excommunications fulminated in S.*Peters* name; and all their Buls and Faculties ſealed *Annulo Piſcatoris*, with S.*Peters* Signet. Nay they went ſo far at the laſt, that Pope *Steven* not being contented to be *Peters* Succeſſor, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter* himſelf. For being diſtreſſed by *Aſtulphus* King of the *Lombards*, he ſends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following ſtile. *Petrus Apoſtolus* JESU CHRISTI, &c. *i.e.* Peter *the Apoſtle of* JESUS CHRIST *to you the moſt illuſtrious King* Pepin, *and to all Biſhops, Abbots, &c. I the Apoſtle* Peter, *whoſe adopted ſonnes you are, admoniſh you that you preſently come and defend this City, &c.* And *doubt you not, but truſt aſſuredly, that I my ſelf, as if I ſtood before you, do thus exhort you, &c.* and *that I* Peter *the* Apoſtle *of God, will at the laſt day yeeld you mutuall kindneſſes, and prepare you* Tabernacles *in the heavens. Baronius* who records this Letter, An°.755. numb.17. was it ſeems, pretty well perſwaded by it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Pareneſes* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon differences with Pope *Paul* the fifth, he ſtileth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus idemq;* Petrus *vicem* Chriſti *agens in terris*, i.e. *Paul*, who is alſo *Peter*, and Chriſts Vicegerent. But leaving theſe imaginary clames and challenges of S.*Peters* privileges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker times, two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power in the more knowing and diſcerning times of *Chriſtianity*. Of which the principall was the Orthodoxie of the Biſhops or Popes of *Rome*; their eminent and ſincere profeſſion of the Faith of *Chriſt*, when almoſt all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schiſm*, or waſted and ſubverted by the fraud of *Hereſie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the *communion* of it much deſired by all true *Chriſtians*; and a repair thither for relief and ſhelter in the times of trouble, made by the *Orthodox* Profeſſors under perſecution. And of theſe times, and this condition of that Church, we are to underſtand ſuch paſſages of the Antient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and ſet it above all the batteries and aſſaults of *Hereſie*. Such is that paſſage of S.*Cyprian*, Romanos *eſſe ad quos perfidia non poteſt habere acceſſum*, lib.1.ep.3. and that of *Hierome*, Romanam *fidem* (*i.e. Romanorum fidem*) *Apoſtolica voce Laudatam, ejuſmodi præſtigias non recipere*; in *Apol.cont. Ruffin.* and many others of that kind. Which paſſages, it were as fooliſh and ridiculous to apply to all following times, the condition of that Church being different from what then it was, as to accommodate all thoſe *Eulogies* and commendations to the preſent Citie of *Rome*, which the Orators and *Panegyriſts* of the elder times have *hyperbolically* aſcribed to old *Rome* in her greateſt glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperiall City, which drawing to it ſuch a multitude of ſuters and attendants from all parts the world, could not but add much to the power and reputation of thoſe Prelates, who had the happineſs and honour to be reſident there: and thereby opportunity to gain more *Diſciples*, to ſolve more doubts of conſcience, and decide more controverſies, than any other could expect. And ſo we are to underſtand that paſſage in S.*Ireneus*, in which he ſaith, *Ad hanc Eccleſiam propter potentiorem* Principalitatem *neceſſe eſt omnem convenire Eccleſiam.* i.e. *eos qui ſunt undiq; Eccleſias.* And ſo they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent *Principality* than other Cities: But when that more potent *Principality* failed to be at *Rome* by the removall of the Imperiall See, firſt to *Conſtantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*, then did the Biſhops of *Conſtantinople* and *Ravenna* diſpute with thoſe of *Rome* for Superiority: the Seat of Religion moſt commonly following the ſeat of the Empire. And in this clame the Patriarch or Biſhop of *Conſtantinople* prevailed ſo far, that with the permiſſion of *Mauritius* the Emperor, he took upon him the title of *Univerſall Patriarch*. *Gregory* the Great (of whom it is ſaid that he was the worſt Biſhop of all that went before him, and the beſt of all that came after him) was at that time Biſhop of *Rome*: Who ſharply inveighed as well againſt the Emperor, as the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, for this Title; and plainly maintained, that whoſoever called himſelf *Univerſall Biſhop*, was the fore-runner of *Antichriſt*. As for himſelf, it is probable that he took the title of *Servus ſervorum Dei*, more in oppoſition to him of *Conſtantinople*, than with an intent to be ſo truly. To which though thoſe of *Rome* reply, that *Gregory* did not abſolutely condemn this Title, but only blamed *John* the *Conſtantinopolitan* Patriarch, for aſſuming to himſelf that attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be. For then we ſhould either in the old Bulls of the former Popes find mention of this Title; or elſe Pope *Gregory* would have aſſumed it to himſelf, that the world might take notice whereto of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but one ſucceeded *Gregory*, having further aims, applied himſelf to *Phocas* that bloody Tyrant: who having murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, his wife and children, and thereby got the generall hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire,

The Papacie.

The Papacy.

pire, the better to assure himself of *Italie*, which he feared was ready to revolt, declared this *Boniface* to be the *Oecumenicall* Bishop, and *Head of the Church*. To such a good beginning, such a gracious Patron, do the Popes stand indebted for that power and Empire, which now they challenge to themselves over all the Church.

Now as the Bishop of *Constantinople* and *Ravenna* did challenge a priority or precedency of the Popes of *Rome*, by reason that they were respectively honoured with the Seat *Imperiall*: so were there divers other Bishops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Millain*, which clamed an *equality* with them, and would by no means yeeld them any superiority. For triall of whose clame, we must look back on somewhat which hath been said before; where it was shewn, that the *Roman Empire* was divided into fourteen *Dioceses*, each *Diocese* being subdivided into severall Provinces, each Province comprehending many severall Cities: then that in every of those Cities, where the *Romans* had their *Defensores*, the *Christians* also had a Bishop; in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the seat of the *Roman President*, the *Christians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principall City of each severall *Diocese*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Diocese* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Christians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous *Maxim* of *Optatus*, *Respublica non est in Ecclesia, sed Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth, and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Councill of *Chalcedon* raised this superstructure, Ἐκκλησιασικῶν τὴν τάξιν, *&c.* that the honours of the Church should be accommodated unto those in the State. So that according to this Platform the *Primates* of the Church were of equall power, each of them limited and restrained to his proper Sphere, out of the which if he presumed once to act, he moved *irregularly*, and in his *Excentricks*. And for those *Primates*, I shall give you once for all this generall Muster, that is to say, the Patriarch or Pope of *Rome*, for the Diocese or Prefecture of that City, the Primate or Arch-bishop of *Millain* for the Diocese of *Italie*, of *Sirmium* for that of *Illyricum*, of *Lyons* for that of *France*, of *York* for *Britain*, of *Toledo* for *Spain*, and of *Carthage* for *Africk*. Then for the East parts of the Empire, there was the Patriach of *Alexandria* for the Diocese of *Egypt*; of *Antioch* for that of the *Orient*; the Primate or Arch-bishop of *Ephesus* for the Diocese of *Asia*; of *Nicomedia* for that of *Pontus*, of *Bizantium* or *Constantinople* for that of *Thrace*, of *Thessalonica* for the Diocese of *Greece*, and of *Justiniana prima* for that of *Dacia*. Amongst all which was a mutuall correspondence and *Co-ordination* for the generall Government of the Church, maintained by Letters of intercourse, which they called *Literas Formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no subordination, and much less subjection, unto one another, as doth appear most evidently by the Canons of the Councill of *Nice*, assigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the custom of the former times. As for the *Diocese* or *Patriarchate* of the Popes of *Rome*, it contained in it those ten Provinces which were immediately subject to the Prefect or *Provost* of that City (an Officer instituted first by *Augustus Cæsar*) that is to say the Provinces of *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, *Picenum Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Samnium*, *Lucania* and the *Brutii*, in the main land of *Italie*; and the three Ilands of *Sicilie*, *Corsica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, I mean as to the immediate Government of those Provinces by the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*, as they are called *Regiones Suburbicariæ* by *Ruffinus* an *Italian* Writer; so antiently the Pope himself was called *Urbicus* or the City-Bishop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zepherinus*, *Zepherinus Urbicus*. But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up daily by a steddy and constant watchfulness upon all occasions, to increase the Grandour of that See, and taking to themselves the honor to be *Vindices Canonum*, the strict and punctuall preservers of the antient Discipline, which took extremely well with all sorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindices Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters, and at last the Rulers, or rather the *Over-rulers* of the *Canons*; and from chief Labourers in the Vineyard, they became the Landlords; which was the honor aimed at, and at last obtained by the foresaid *Boniface*, whom that cruell and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the *Head of the Church*, the sixty sixt Bishop and first Pope of *Rome*: the *Latine* word *Papa* coming from the old *Greek* Πάππας, signifying a Father. A Title at the first common unto other Bishops; as is evident to any one who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this appropriated unto those of *Rome*. Of these Popes, their Succession, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to see, agreeing exactly with another. The reasons whereof, as I conceive, are 1. The frequent *Vacancies*, and 2. the many *Schisms* which have happened in it, and 3. the *Anti-Popes* in them created: the Writers of those times accounting him onely among the *Popes*, to whose faction they were most devoted. This Catalogue ensuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvicus*, *Freigius*, *Bellarmine*, and *Onuphrius*, whose differences I have reconciled as well as possibly I could: premonishing the Reader, that where the number of yeers which every Pope is found to sit in the *Papall Chair*, make not up the full number from his first admission, to the coming in of his Successor, it must be understood of some *Schism* or *Vacancy* hapning in the Intervall, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occur amongst the Antients, in the first Succession, some placing of them thus, *Linus*, *Cletus*, *Clemens*; some *Linus*, *Clemens*, *Cletus*; and finally some others putting the *Clemens* first: I know no better way to compose the same, than to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that S. *Peter* and S. *Paul* were Co-Founders

of

of the Church in *Rome*; S. *Peter* of the Church of the *Circumcision*, and S. *Paul* of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Bishop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succession in this manner following. *The Papacie.*

The Bishops of *Rome*.

A. Ch.			*A. Ch.*		
44	1	S. *Peter*, Bishop of the Churches of the *Circumcision.*	59	1	S. *Paul*, Bishop of the Churches of the *Gentiles.*
70	2	*Cletus*, or *Anacletus*, Succeſſor to S. *Peter* in the Churches of the *Circumcision* 23	70	2	*Linus*, Succeſſor to S. *Paul* in the Church of the *Gentiles* 11.
			81	3	*Clemens*, having ſucceeded *Linus* firſt

in the Church of the *Gentiles*, did after, *An.* 93. ſucceed *Cletus* alſo in the Church of the *Jews*; reckoned by ſome the next Succeſſor to S *Peter*, becauſe the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the *Gentiles* not being founded, or not diſtinguiſhed from the other, till ſome years after *Peters* coming.

103	4	*Anacletus* 9	775	27	*Eutychianus* 8	492	49	*Gelaſius* 4
112	5	*Evariſtus* 9	283	28	*Caius* 13	497	50	*Anaſtaſius* II. 2
121	6	*Alexander* 10 *m.* 5 *d.*	296	29	*Marcellinus* 8	499	51	*Symmachus* 15
131	7	*Sixtus* 10	304	30	*Marcellus* 5	514	52	*Hormiſda* 9
142	8	*Teleſphorus* 12	309	31	*Euſebius* 2	523	53	*Joannes* 2 *m* 9. *d.*
154	9	*Hyginus* 4	311	32	*Miltiades* 3	526	54	*Felix* IV. 4
158	10	*Pius* 9	314	33	*Silveſter* 22	530	55	*Bonifacius* II. 1.
167	11	*Ancetus* 8 *m.* 9	336	34	*Marcus m.* 8	532	56	*Joannes* II. 3
175	12	*Soter* 4	337	35	*Julius* 15 *m.* 5	535	57	*Agapetus* 1
179	13	*Eleutherius* 15	352	36	*Liberius* 15, *cui vivo Felix ſuffectus.*	536	58	*Silverius* 1
194	14	*Victor* 9				537	59	*Vigilius* 18
203	15	*Zepherinus* 18	367	37	*Damaſus* 18	555	60	*Pelagius* 5
221	16	*Caliſtus* 5	385	38	*Syricius* 13	560	61	*Joannes* III. 13
226	17	*Urbanus* 6 *m.* 7 *d.*	398	39	*Anaſtaſius* 4	573	62	*Benedictus* 4
233	18	*Pontianus* 5	402	40	*Innocentius* 15	578	63	*Pelagius* II. 12
238	19	*Antherus* 1	417	41	*Zoſimus* 1 *m.* 4	590	64	*Gregorius Mag.* 14
239	20	*Fabianus* 14	419	42	*Bonifacius* 5	605	65	*Sabinianus* 1, the laſt of the *Roman* Biſhops, not having that arrogant Title of *Univerſall Biſhop*, or *head of the Church.*
253	21	*Cornelius* 2	424	43	*Celeſtinus* 8 *m.* 5			
255	22	*Lucius* 1 *m.* 8	432	44	*Sixtus* III. 8			
256	23	*Stephanus* 3 *m.* 3.	440	45	*Leo magn.* 21			
260	24	*Sixtus*, or *Xiſtus* II. 2	461	46	*Hilarius* 6 *m.* 10			
262	25	*Dionyſius* 10	468	47	*Simplicius* 15 *m.* 5			
272	26	*Felix* 2 *m.* 5 *d.*	483	48	*Felix* III. 9			

The Popes of *Rome* challenging a *Supremacy* over all the Church.

606	1	*Bonifacius* III. 3	752	27	*Stephanus* II. *d.* 4	897	52	*Romanus m.* 4
607	2	*Bonifacius* IV. 8	752	28	*Stephanus* III. 5	897	53	*Theodorus* II. *d.* 20
615	3	*Deus-dedit* 3	757	29	*Paulus* I. 10	897	54	*Joannes* X. 2
618	4	*Bonifacius* V. 5 *m.* 10	767	30	*Conſtans* II. 1	899	55	*Benedictus* IV. 2
624	5	*Honorius* 13	768	31	*Stephanus* IV. 4	903	56	*Leo* V. *d.* 40
637	6	*Severinus* 2	772	32	*Adrianus* I. 23	903	57	*Chriſtophorus m.* 7
639	7	*Joannes* IV. 2	796	33	*Leo* III. 20	903	58	*Sergius* III. 7
641	8	*Theodorus* 7 *m.* 5	816	34	*Stephanus* V. *m.* 7	910	59	*Anaſtaſius.* III. 2
649	9	*Martinus* 6	817	35	*Paſchalis* 7	912	60	*Lando m.* 6.
654	10	*Eugenius* 2. *m.* 9	824	36	*Eugenius* II. 3	912	61	*Joannes* XI. 15
657	11	*Vitalianus* 14	827	37	*Valentinus d.* 4	928	62	*Leo* VI. *m.* 6
671	12	*A-Deo-datus* 5	827	38	*Gregorius* IV. 16	929	63	*Stephanus* VIII. 2
677	13	*Domnus* 1 *m.* 5 *d.*	843	39	*Sergius* II. 3	931	64	*Joannes* XII. 5
679	14	*Agatho* 4	846	40	*Leo* IV. 8	936	65	*Leo* VII. 4
683	15	*Leo* II. *m.* 10	854	41	*Joannes* VIII. *vulgò* Pope Joane 2	940	66	*Stephanus* IX. 3
684	16	*Benedictus* II. 1				943	67	*Martinus* III. 3
685	17	*Joannes* V. 1	856	42	*Benedictus* III. 2	946	68	*Agapetus* II. 9
686	18	*Conon m.* 11	858	43	*Nicolas* 10	956	69	*Joannes* XIII. 8
688	19	*Sergius* 13	868	44	*Adrianus* II. 5	964	70	*Leo* VIII. 1
701	20	*Joannes* VI. 3	873	45	*Joannes* IX. 10	965	71	*Benedictus* V. 1
704	21	*Joannes* VII. 3	883	46	*Martinus* II. 1	966	72	*Joannes* XIV. 7
707	22	*Siſinnius d.* 20	884	47	*Adrianus* III. 1	973	73	*Benedictus* VI. *m.* 9
707	23	*Conſtantinus* 7	885	48	*Stephanus* VI. 6	974	74	*Domnus* II. 1 *m.* 3
714	24	*Gregorius* II. 17	891	49	*Formoſus* 4	975	75	*Bonifacius* VII. 1
731	25	*Greg.* III. 10 *m.* 9	895	50	*Bonifacius* VI. *d.* 15	976	76	*Benedictus* VII. 8
742	26	*Zacharias* 10	896	51	*Stephanus* VII. 1	983	77	*Joannes* XV. 1

985

The Papacie.

985	78 *Joannes* XVI. 10	1159	111 *Alexand.* III. 22	1406	146 *Gregorius* XII. 2
995	79 *Joannes* XVII. *m.* 4	1181	112 *Lucius* III. 4	1409	147 *Alex.* V. *m.* 10
996	80 *Gregorius* V. 3	1185	113 *Urban* III. 2	1410	148 *Joannes* XIII. 5
999	81 *Silvester* II. *dictus Necromanticus* 4	1187	114 *Gregorius* VIII. *m.* 2	1417	149 *Martin* V. 13
		1188	115 *Clemens* III. 3	1431	150 *Eugenius* IV. 16
1003	82 *Joannes* XVIII. *m.* 5	1191	116 *Celestine* III. 6	1447	151 *Nicolaus* V. 8
1003	83 *Joannes* XIX. 6	1198	117 *Innocent* III. 17	1455	152 *Callistus* III. 3
1009	84 *Sergius* IV. 3	1216	118 *Honorius* III. 10	1458	153 *Pius* II. *antè dictus Æneas Silvius* 6
1012	85 *Benedictus* VIII. 12	1227	119 *Gregorius* IX. 14		
1024	86 *Joannes* XX. 8 *m.* 9	1241	120 *Celestin* IV. *d.* 17	1464	154 *Paulus* II. 7
1033	87 *Benedictus* IX. 12	1243	121 *Innocent* IV. 11	1471	155 *Sixtus* IV. 12
1045	88 *Silvester* III. *m.* 1	1254	122 *Alexander* IV. 6	1484	156 *Innocent* VIII. 7
1045	89 *Benodictus* X. *m.* 1	1261	123 *Urbanus* IV. 3	1492	157 *Alexander* VI. 11
1045	90 *Gregorius* VI. 1 *m.* 7	1265	124 *Clemens* IV. 3	1053	158 *Pius* III. *d.* 26
1047	91 *Clemens* II. *m.* 9	1271	125 *Gregorius* X. 14	1503	159 *Julius* II. 10
1047	92 *Damasus* II. *d.* 23	1275	126 *Innocent* V *m.* 5	1513	160 *Leo* X. 9
1049	93 *Leo* IX. 5	1276	127 *Adrian* V. *d.* 19	1522	161 *Adrian* VI. 2
1055	94 *Victor* II. 2	1276	128 *Joannes* XXI. *d.* 8	1524	162 *Clemens* VII. 10
1057	95 *Stephanus* X. 1. *m.* 6	1277	129 *Nicolaus* III. 4	1534	163 *Paulus* III. 15
1059	96 *Nicolaus* II. 2 *m.* 6	1281	130 *Martinus* IV. 4	1550	164 *Julius* III. 5
1062	97 *Alexander* II. 11	1285	131 *Honorius* IV. 4	1555	165 *Marcellus* II. *d.* 22
1073	98 *Gregorius* VII. *dictus Hildebrandus* 12	1288	132 *Nicolaus* IV. 4	1555	166 *Paulus* IV. 5
		1294	133 *Celestin.* V. *m.* 6	1560	167 *Pius* IV. 6
1086	99 *Victor* III. 1	1295	134 *Bonifacius* VIII. 8	1567	168 *Pius* V. 5
1087	100 *Urbanus* II. 12	1303	135 *Benedictus* IX. *m.* 8	1572	169 *Gregorius* XIII. 13
1099	101 *Paschalis* II. 18	1305	136 *Clemens* V. 9	1585	170 *Sixtus* V. 5
1118	102 *Gelasius* II. 1	1316	137 *Joannes* XXII. 18	1590	171 *Urbán* VII. *d.* 12
1119	103 *Calistus* II. 6	1334	138 *Benedict.* X. 7	1590	172 *Gregorius* XIV. *m.* 9
1125	104 *Honorius* II. 5	1342	139 *Clemens* VI. 10	1591	173 *Innocent* IX *m.* 1
1130	105 *Innocens* II. 13	1352	140 *Innocent* VI. 10	1592	174 *Clement* VIII. 13
1143	106 *Celestin* II. *m.* 5	1362	141 *Urban* V. 8	1605	175 *Leo* XI. *d.* 26
1144	107 *Lucius* II. *m.* 11	1371	142 *Gregorius* XI. 7	1605	176 *Paulus* V. 16
1145	108 *Eugenius* III. 8	1378	143 *Urban* VI. 11	1621	177 *Greg.* XV. 2
1153	109 *Anastasius* IV. 1	1389	144 *Boniface* IX. 14	1623	178 *Urban* VIII. 21
1154	110 *Adrian* IV. 4	1404	145 *Innocent* VII. 2	1644	179 *Innocent* X. now

living. To these 179 Popes, adde the 65 Bishops which preceded that arrogant title of *Universall*, and they make up the full number of 244. How many are to come, he must be a cunning man that can determine: And yet such cunning men there have been, who have determined positively, but withall Prophetically of the number of Popes; by name S. *Malachie*, one of the first Apostles of the *Irish* Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Massinghams* collection of the *Irish* Saints, a certain number of *Mottos*, in the *Latin* tongue, agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes successively to one another, according to the order of those severall *Mottos*; and thereunto this Prophecie annexed, that when so many Popes had sate in S. *Peters* Chair, either the World should end, or the Popedom fail. The Book was shewed to me by the Author when I was at *Paris*, and the Popes names in order joyned to every *Motto*, as far as to the time of *Urban*, who last deceased; which I compared, as well as my memory would serve me, and found the *Mottos* and the Popes to be very answerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took most notice of, was *Lilium & Rosæ*: a *Motto* very suitable to the principall Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *English Rose*, and the *French Lilie*, in the Mariage of *Charles* K. of *England*, and Madam *Henrietta Maria* the Princess of *France*, which that Pope earnestly promoted in his speedy and cheerfull granting of the Dispensation. And to take from me all suspition of Imposture, this *Massingham* shewed me an old Book written by one *Wion* a *Flemming*, and printed near 200 years before his Collection; in which the *Mottos* stood as in his they did; and comparing the *Mottos* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban*, and that *Motto* to jump even together. From *Urban* downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottos* more to come; by consequence if this *Malachie* were as true a Prophet as one *Malachie* was, just so many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his *Elects* sake will abridge those dayes, and not permit the superstitions and corruptions of that Church to endure so long; nor so many Assertors and Defenders of those *Roman Heterodoxies* to be added to the former number: Out of the storyes of all which (pretermitting many things of less consideration) I will only select some particular passages, for the better understanding of their state and story.

1 *Pelagius* the first, ordained that *Hereticks* and *Schismaticks* should be punished with temporall death (which severity continueth still;) and that none should be preferred to Ecclesiasticall dignityes by Gifts and Bribes, which pious order is long since antiquated.

2 *Vitalianus*, first brought *Organs* into the divine service of the Church of *Rome*, to be used with

with the ſinging or vocall Muſick formerly in uſe; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes ſucceeding.

3 *Conſtantine*, was ſo generally beloved of all men, that going to *Conſtantinople*, *Juſtinian* the ſecond kiſt his feet in ſign of honour; which ſome of the ambitious Popes in times ſucceeding drew into example, and at laſt brought into a cuſtom, as it ſtill continueth.

4 *Paſcal* the firſt, cauſed the Prieſts of certain pariſhes in *Rome*, by reaſon of their nearneſs to his perſon, their preſence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now mates for Kings, and numbred about 70, but more or fewer at the ſole pleaſure of the Popes.

5 *Eugenius* the ſecond took to himſelf within the Territories of the Church, the Autority of creating Dukes, Earls, and Knights, as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had uſed to do.

6 *Sergius* the ſecond, was the firſt that changed his name. For, thinking his own name *Bocca di Porco*, or *Swineſ-mouth*, not conſonant to his dignity, he cauſed himſelf to be called *Sergius*, which precedent his Succeſſors following, do alſo vary their names. So that if one be a Coward, he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clemens*; if an Atheiſt, *Pius* or *Innocent*; if a Ruſtick, *Urbanus*; and ſo of the reſt.

7 *John* the eighth, is by moſt men confeſſed to be a woman, and is uſually called Pope *Joane*. To avoyd the like diſgrace, the *Porphirie chair* was ordained; *Ubi ab ultimo diacono, &c.* ſo that both in a literall and myſticall ſenſe, this woman may be called, *The Whore of Babylon*. The name of this Female Pope, the *Romiſh Chronologers* have not inſerted into the Catalogue; the reaſon, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & ſexum muliebrem*. And from hence it is, that in the common Catalogues theſe Popes that have called themſelves *Johns*, are ſo ill ordered, ſome making that *John* which ſucceeded *Adrian* the ſecond, An° 872, to be the 8, and others the 9. *Platina* onely of all the *Pontificians* reckoneth Pope *Joane* as the 8 of the *Johns*, and ſo forward: in which particular I have followed his authority. And it is probable enough that God might ſuffer that proud See to fall into ſuch an infamy, the better to humble the enſuing Popes in the times of their greateſt ruff and flouriſh; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succeſſion, they ſo much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the ſtory in matter of Fact) he that liſts to ſee, may ſatisfie himſelf in M. *Cookes* Book of Pope *Joane*, who moſt induſtriouſly hath anſwered all objections which hath been made againſt it by thoſe of *Rome*.

8 *Nicolas* the firſt, the better to faſten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the leſs obnoxious to their naturall Princes; was the firſt who did by Law reſtrain them from mariage, ſaying, that *it was the more honeſt to have to do with many women privately, than openly to keep a wife*; and ſome of his Succeſſors followed it ſo cloſe, that a Prieſt of *Placentia* being accuſed to have wife and children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that ſhe was the wife of another man, and his *Strumpet* only, he was again reſtored unto it.

9 *Adrian* the third ordained, that the Emperour from thenceforth ſhould have no more to do with the Election or Confirmation of the Pope, but that it ſhould be left wholly to the *Roman* Clergy.

10 *Formoſus* was ſo ill beloved, and of ſuch a generall diſeſteem, that Pope *Steven* the ſeventh cauſed his body to be unbnried, all his Acts reverſed, two of his fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled carkaſs to be again interred among the *Luty*. And though theſe Acts of *Steven* were adjudged illegal both by *John* the tenth, and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Succeſſors, and the doings of *Formoſus* juſtified, yet *Sergius* the third cauſed his corrupt and putrified body to be taken once more out of the grave, and his head to be cut off as if ſtill alive. So little did the *infallibility* of St. *Peters* Chair preſerve theſe Popes from falling into groſs and irreconcilable contradictions.

11 *John* the 12th, was the next after *Sergius* the ſecond that changed his name, a very wicked, cruell, and libidinous man; who comming to that place by his Fathers greatneſs, cut off the Noſe of one Cardinall, and the hand of another, for that they had ſignified to the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, what a ſcandall all the Church did ſuffer by his deteſtable life; and finally being taken in Adultery was ſlain by the husband of the woman.

12 *Gregory* the fifth, finding the power of the Emperour, as long as it continued in a way of ſucceſſion, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withall incenſed againſt the *Romans*, who till that time retained ſome ſhadow of an Empire; projected the election of the future Emperors by the Princes of *Germany*, by which the *Germans* were diſtracted into Factions, and the *Romans* weakned, and ſo a door left open to the Popes of *Rome* to make their ends upon them both.

13 *Steven* the tenth brought the Church of *Millaine* to be under the obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an equality with them; as before Pope *Donnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for ſome time had challenged the *precedencie* of them.

14 *Gregorie* the ſeventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet man, who firſt adventured to draw the *premiſes* layd down by ſome of his Predeceſſors into a *concluſion*, Excommunicating the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, for medling with the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhops, and cauſing *Rodulph* Duke of *Suevia* to rebell againſt him. A man much favoured againſt the

Princes

The Papacie.

Princes of her own House by the Countess *Mathildis*, who is sayd to be so much his friend, that for his sake she left the company of her husband, and disherited her right heirs, setling her whole estates in *Italie* on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperour had the better of this Pope, and made him fly out of *Rome*, and dye in exile, yet he was fain at last to submit himself to Pope *Pascal* the second, (who had armed his own sonne against him) to attend bare-foot at his door, and cry *peccavi*.

15 *Sergius* the third ordained the bearing of *Candles* in the Feast of the *Purification* of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemass* day.

16 *Sergius* the fourth was the first that on *Christmass* night with divers Ceremonies did consecrate Swords, Roses, or the like, to be sent as tokens of love and honour to such Princes as deserved best of them, or whom they desired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth sent a consecrated Rose to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxonie*, requesting him to banish *Luther*: and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fift of *Scotland*, to engage him in a war against *Henry* the 8. who had then withdrawn himself and his Kingdom from the Popes commands.

17 *Nicolas* the second took from the *Roman* Clergy the election of Popes, and gave it to the College of *Cardinals*.

18 *Celestine* the second, was the Inventer of that mad manner of *cursing*, or *Anathematizing* by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19 *Alexander* the third, pursuing the desperate course of *Gregory* the seventh, Excommunicated the Emperor *Frederick* the first; and by raising war against him in every place, brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to prostrate himself at his feet: when the Pope treading on his neck, said aloud, *super Aspidem & Basiliscum*, &c. prophanely applying those words to the present occasion. And when the Emperour to put the better colour on his disgrace, meekly replyed, *Non tibi sed Petro*; the Pope not willing to lose his part of so great a glory, subjoyned as angerly, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20 *Innocent* the third held a Councell in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope should have the correction of all *Christian* Princes; and that no Emperor should be acknowledged till he had sworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, who when he hath dined, commands his Trumpeters to sound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may sit down to dinner. He brought in the Doctrin of *Transubstantiation*, and ordained that there should be a Pix made to cover the consecrated (but now *transubstantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is also said to have first imposed *Auricular Confession* upon the people.

21 *Nicolas* the third was the first Pope who practised to enrich his kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuscany*, and to raise the rest to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavil* very well observeth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Popes kinsfolks or posterity; so afterwards they studied no one thing more than to prefer their own blood; insomuch that they have not only laboured to make them Princes, but if it were possible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probabilitie enough: For so dearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they use to call their Bastards) that it was very justly said by Pope *Alexander* the third, *The Laws forbid us to get* Children, *and the Devill hath given us* Nephews *in their stead.*

22 *Boniface* the eighth, of whom it is sayd, *that he entered like a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and dyed like a Dog*, by his generall *Bull* exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and payments unto Temporall Princes. Which being complyed with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward* the first put them out of his protection; and so the Popes Bull left roaring here. He caused the Book of the *Canon* Law called the *Decretals* to be first set out; and instituted the Feast of *Jubilee* to be held in *Rome* every hundredth year; but by *Clement* the sixt it was brought unto the fiftieth year, and since reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourse of people which repaired to *Rome* to observe his new Feast of *Jubilee* (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remission of all his sins) shewed himself one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperour; and caused two Swords to be born before him every day, in sign that all power *Ecclesiasticall* and *Temporall* did belong unto him.

23 *Clement* the fift was the first that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* saleable. For seeing (said he) that one drop of our Saviours blood had been enough to have saved all Mankind, and yet that all his blood was shed, the *over-plus* was left to the Church as a standing Treasure, to be disposed of by S. *Peter* and his Successors. And hereunto, to make his Treasure the more inexhausted, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the insolencies of the people of *Rome*, he removed the Papall See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the space of 70 years.

24 *Clemens* the sixt had an ill time of it: For in his Papacie the Emperour gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church to such as formerly had usurped them, to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which title the *Malatesti* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelaffi* of *Forli*, the *Varani* of *Camerine*, the *Bentivolies* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Estates were never recovered to the Church till the time of Pope *Julio* the second; though conquered

from

from the preſent owners in the time of *Alexander* the ſixth, by *Cæſar Borgias* his ſonne, who had an aim of ſetling them, and perhaps the Papacy it ſelf, on the *Borgian* Family. The Papacie.

25 *Gregory* the eleventh returned the Papall Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveighed himſelf by Sea, in private, for fear of being withheld by the *French*; and being come thither found the chief parts of the City ſo over-grown with briers and buſhes, and the principall buildings of it ſo decayed and ruinous, that a little longer abſence would have made it deſolate.

26 *Paul* the ſecond endeavoured to encreaſe the Majeſty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and exceeded all his Predeceſſours in pomp and ſhew, cauſing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphyrs, Emeralds, and other ſtones of great price; and augmenting the ſplendour of the Cardinals with a ſcarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the 4. had graced with *red Hats* before. He brought the *Jubilee* from 50 to 25.

27 *Sixtus* the fourth ordained a conſtant guard to attend his perſon. He very much beautified and repaired the City of *Rome*, and was the firſt founder of the *Vatican* Library. But on the other ſide, he is ſayd by ſome, to have ſet all offices and preferments to ſale, and to have builded in *Rome* Stewes of both ſexes, and to bring in Beads, and to authorize our *Ladies Pſalter*.

28 *Alexander* the ſixt, ſetting aſide all modeſty, was the firſt that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Baſtards) to be his ſonnes. By one of which, the *Cæſar Borgias* before named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, and many other eſtates from the preſent owners, on a deſign of ſetling them in his own family, as before is ſayd; and to that end called in the *French*, who after made ſuch fowl work in *Italie*.

29 *Julio* the ſecond had more in him of the *Souldier* than the *Prelate*, recovering many Towns unto the Church which had been formerly uſurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cæſar Borgias*; and keeping *Italie* in his time in continuall wars. This is the Pope, who paſſing over the bridge of *Tiber*, brandiſhed his Sword, and threw his Keyes into the River, ſaying, that if *Peters* Keyes would not ſerve his turn, then *Pauls* Sword ſhould do it.

30 *Leo* the tenth was indeed a great Favourer of Learning; but of great prodigalitie and vaſt expence. For maintainance whereof he ſent his ſaleable *Indulgences* into *France*, and *Germany*; which buſineſs being indiſcreetly handled by his *Miniſters*, occaſioned *Luther* in *Germany*, and *Zuinglius* amongſt the *Switzers*, firſt to write againſt them, and afterwards to queſtion many points of Popiſh Doctrin. In purſuance of which quarrell, the Pope of *Rome* burnt *Luthers* Books, whom he declared for an Heretick; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg* with the Popes *Canon Law*, whom he declared to be a Perſecutor, a Tyrant, and the very *Antichriſt*. Which flame increaſed ſo faſt, and inlarged ſo far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papall Monarchy.

31 *Pius* the fourth continued the Councill formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the third, but interrupted and layd aſide from on Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby ſetled and confirmed the *Intereſs* of the Church of *Rome*, cauſed it to be received as *Oecumenicall*, though the *Italian* Biſhops being moſt of them the Popes creatures, did more than double the number of all the reſt, and yet ſome of the reſt alſo were but meerly *Titulars*. He added alſo a new *Creed* conſiſting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apoſtles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. But of the words and actions of theſe Ghoſtly Fathers we have ſaid enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinall, for giving to S. *Peters* picture too much of the *red*, replyed, that he *had made him ſo, as bluſhing at the lives of thoſe who were called his Succeſſours*.

As for the *Temporall* power and greatneſs of the Popes of *Rome*, there is a pretended *Donation* of the Emperor *Conſtantine*, by which the City of *Rome* it ſelf, moſt part of *Italie*, and *Africk*, and all the Ilands of thoſe Seas are conferred upon them; the forgery whereof is very learnedly ſhewn by our learned *Cracanthorp* in his diſcourſe upon that ſubject. But that *Donation* might moſt juſtly be ſuſpected of Fraud and Forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the ſame; conſidering how fearfull the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof diſputed; inſomuch that many leaves are razed out of *Guicciardine* by the *Inquiſition*, where it had been queſtioned. For in that place the Hiſtorian not only denieth the ſayd feigned *Donation*, but affirmes, that divers learned men reported, that *Conſtantine* and *Silveſter* (to whom it is ſayd to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then ſheweth, how baſe and obſcure the Authority of the Pope was in *Rome* it ſelf, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of *Italie*. 2 That in the inſtitution of the *Exarchate*, the Popes had nothing to do with the *Temporall* Sword, but lived as ſubject to the Emperors. 3 They were not very much obeyed in matters *Spirituall*, by reaſon of the corruption of their manners. 4 That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperors now neglecting *Italie*, the *Romans* began to be governed by the advice and power of the Popes. 5 That *Pepin* of *France*, and his ſonne *Charles*, having overthrown the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, gave unto the Popes, the *Exarchate*, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns and Territories about *Rome*. 6 That the Popes in all their Buls and Charters, expreſſed the date of them in theſe formall words; *Such a one, the Lord our Emperour reigning*. 7 That long after the tranſlation of the Empire from *France* to *Germany*, the Popes began to make open proteſtation, that the *Pontificiall* dignity was rather to give Laws to the Emperors,

The Papacie.

than receive any from them. 8. That being thus raiſed to an earthly power, they forgot the ſalvation of ſouls, ſanctity of life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards men: And that to raiſe arms, to make war againſt *Chriſtians*, to invent new devices for getting of money, to prophane ſacred things for their own ends, and to inrich their kindred and children, was their only ſtudy. And this is the ſubſtance of *Guicciardine* in that place: an Author above all exception. He was a man whom the Popes imployed in many buſineſſes of principall importance; ſo that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of *Rome*, ſo unlikely is it to have been given by *Conſtantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charles* his ſonne (though more beholding to the Popes than that Emperor was) could be induced to part with it, *Lewis* ſurnamed *Pius*, is ſaid to have been the firſt *Donor* of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third Book of *Volaterran*, ſubſcribed by the Emperor, his three ſonnes, ten Biſhops, eight *Abbots*, fifteen Earls, and the Popes *Library-Keeper*; yet notwithſtanding, it is thought by many very learned and judicious men, that really there was no ſuch matter; but that all this was forged by *Anaſtaſius* the Popes *Bibliothecarian*, or Library-Keeper, who is cited as a witneſs to the Donation. And yet to put the matter further out of queſtion, let us next hear what that great Politician and Stateſ-man, the Recorder of *Florence*, *Nic. Machiavel* hath obſerved in this caſe. "*Rome* (ſaith he) was al-
"ways ſubject to the Lords of *Italie*, till *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes* removed his Seat to
"*Ravenna*; for thereby the *Romans* were inforced to ſubmit themſelves to the Biſhops, *An.* 430.
"or thereabouts. And talking of the eſtate of the Popedom, *An.* 931. he ſtates it thus. In *Rome*
"were elected yeerly out of the Nobility two *Conſuls*, who according to the antient Cuſtom
"ruled that Citie. Under them was appointed a Judge to miniſter juſtice to the people. There
"was alſo a Counſell of twelve men, which gave Governors unto the Towns ſubject to *Rome*.
"And for the Pope, he had in *Rome* more or leſs Authority, according to the favour which he
"found with the Emperors, or others then moſt mighty; but the leaving of *Italie* by the *Ger-*
"*man* Emperors, ſetled the Pope in a more abſolute Soveraignty over the City. And yet it
"ſeems they were not of ſuch abſolute power, but that the *Romans* tugged hard with them for
"their Liberties. Concerning which he tells us in another place, That the ambition of the peo-
"ple of *Rome* did at that time (*viz. An.* 1010.) make much war with the Popes, and that having
"helped the Pope to drive out the Emperor, and altered the Government of the City as to
"them ſeemed good, ſuddenly they became Enemies to him, and the Popes received more
"injuries at their hands than at any other *Chriſtian* Princes; and that even in thoſe days when
"the Cenſures of the Popes made all the Weſt of the wold to tremble, yet even then did the
"people of *Rome* rebell, and both the Popes and the People ſtudied for nothing ſo much,
"as how one of them might overthrow the Authority and Eſtimation of the other.

But for the method and degrees by which the Popes aſcended to their temporall greatneſs, take here an extract of the Story collected out of the beſt Authors, by the moſt reverend Father in God the late Lord Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuit*. "The Pope (ſaith he) being choſen antiently by the *Clergie* and people of
"*Rome*, uſed always to receive from the Emperors hands a ratification of that choyce: inſo-
"much that about the yeer 579. when all *Italie* was on fire with the *Lombards*, and *Pelagius* the
"ſecond conſtrained through the neceſſity of the times, to enter upon the Popedom without
"the Emperors leave; S. *Gregorie* then a Deacon, was ſhortly after ſent in an *Embaſſie* to ex-
"cuſe it. But when the *Lombards* grew ſo great in *Italie*, and the Empire was ſo infeſted with
"the *Saracens*, and ſuch changes happened in all parts of the world, as that neither for the pre-
"ſent the *Homage* of the Pope was uſefull to the Emperor, nor the *Protection* of the Emperor a-
"vailable for the Pope: by this means was the Biſhop of *Rome* left to play his own game by
"himſelf. A thing which as it pleaſed him well enough, ſo both he and his Succeſſors made
"great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the Emperors,
"and the greatneſs of that City and place of his abode; he then found himſelf the more free,
"the greater the Tempeſt was that beat upon the other. And then firſt he ſet himſelf to alie-
"nate the hearts of the *Italians* from the Emperor; in which he did prevail ſo far, that *Theo-*
"*phylact* the *Exarch* coming into *Italie*, was oppoſed by the Souldiers, who wiſhed better to
"the Pope than to the Emperor; and the Emperors own Governor was fain to be defended
"from his own Souldiers by the power of the Pope, who had gotten intereſt in them againſt
"their own Maſter. Next he oppoſed himſelf againſt him; and about the yeer 710. Pope
"*Conſtantine* the firſt did openly affront *Philippicus* the Emperor, in defence of *Images*, as *Onu-*
"*phrius* telleth us. After him *Gregory* the 2d. and 3d. took up his example, and did the like by
"*Leo Iſaurus*. By this time the *Lombards* began to pinch very cloſe, and to vex on all ſides not
"only *Italie*, but *Rome* too. This drives the Pope to ſeek a new Patron, and very fitly he
"meets with *Charles Martel* in *France*, that famous Warrier againſt the *Saracens*. Him he im-
"ployeth in defence of the Church againſt the *Lombards*, and the Addreſs ſeems very adviſedly
"taken, it proved ſo fortunate to them both. For in ſhort time it diſſolved the Kingdom of the
"*Lombards*, having then ſtood two hundred and four yeers, which was the Popes ſecurity: and
"it brought the Crown of *France* into the Houſe of *Charles*, and ſhortly after the Weſtern Em-
"pire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed. For by the bounty of *Pepyn*, the ſonne of
"*Charles*, that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was given to the Pope; that is to
"ſay,

"ſay, the *Exarchate*, and all that lay betwixt the *Apennine* and the River of *Po*. So that now "he became a Temporall Prince. But when *Charles* the great had ſet up the *Weſtern* Empire, "then he reſumed the Antient and Originall power, to govern the Church, to call Councills, "and to order Papall Elections. And this power continued for a time in his poſterity; for *Gre-* "*gory* the ſeventh was confirmed in the Popedom by the ſame *Henry* the fourth, whom he after- "wards depoſed. And it might have continued longer, if the ſucceeding Emperors had had "*Abilities* enough to ſecure, or vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a ſtrong "Counſell about him, and meeting with ſome weak Princes, and thoſe oft-times diſtracted "with great and dangerous wars, grew ſtronger til he got the better; yet was it carried in ſuccee- "ding times with great changes of fortune, and different ſucceſs; the Emperor ſometimes "plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperor; winning and loſing ground, as "their ſpirits, abilities, aids and opportunities were; till at laſt the Pope ſetled himſelf on "the grounds laid by *Gregory* the ſeventh, in that great power which he now uſeth in and over "theſe parts of the *Chriſtian* World. A power firſt exerciſed (ſaith he in another place) by this "Pope *Gregorie* the ſeventh, and made too good upon the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, as by Pope "*Adrian* the fourth, *Alexander* the third, with ſome others, upon *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. And o- "thers of the Emperors were alike ſerved when they did not ſubmit. And for this I hope his Holineſs was not to be blamed. For if the Emperor kept the Pope under for divers yeers to- gether, againſt all reaſon, the Popes as *Bellarmine* affirms, being never ſubject to the Emperor, and wanting force to ſtand on his own *Prerogative*: I hope the Pope having now got power enough, may keep the Emperors under-foot, and not ſuffer them any more to ſtart before him.

The Papacie.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great power of the Church of *Rome* was firſt obtained, let us next conſider of thoſe Policies by which this *Papall* Monarchy hath been ſo long upheld in eſteem and credit. We may divide them into three heads. 1. Thoſe by which they have inſinuated and ſcrewed themſelves into the affections and affairs of the grea- teſt Princes. 2. Thoſe by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to ſecure their eſtate. And 3ly. thoſe by which they keep the people in obedeence and ignorance.

1. Concerning the firſt. Firſt the Donation of ſeverall Kingdoms to them which have no right nor title, but by theſe Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them faſt to uphold that power, without which they could lay no clame to that which they are poſſeſſed of. Of which ſort was the Confirmation of the Kindom of *France* to the Houſe of *Pepin*; of *Naples* to the Houſe of *Schwaben*, and *Anjou*; of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2. The readineſs of their Mi- niſters to kill ſuch as reſiſt them, cannot but neceſſitate Princes to ſeek their friendſhip, and hold fair with them: eſpecially ſince by a Writ of Excommunication they can arm the Subjects againſt their Soveraign; and without the charge of leavying one ſouldier either deſtroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent wars raiſed by them againſt the Emperors of *Germany*, and that againſt King *John* in *England*, by theſe *Papall fulminations* onely; the poi- ſoning of the ſaid King *John* by a Monk of *Swineſtead*; and of King *Henry* the third of *France* by *Jaques Clement*, are full proofs of this. 3. Then followeth their allowance of Mariages pro- hibited both by God and Nature; the iſſue of which cannot but uphold the Popes Authority, without which their birth would be illegitimate, and conſequently themſelves uncapable of the eſtates they are born unto: And by this means they do more ſtrengthen themſelves by the unlawfull Mariages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawfull Mariage of his own. Nothing more faſtened Queen *Mary* of *England* to the See of *Rome*, than the queſtion that was raiſed about the Mariage of her Mother to King *Henry* the eighth; the lawfulneſs of which depended chiefly on the diſpenſation of Pope *Julio* the ſecond. 4. Then cometh in their diſ- penſing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themſelves induced upon reaſon of State, to flie off from thoſe Leagues, and break off thoſe Treaties, which have been ſolemnly made and ſworn betwix them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, ſuch Princes think themſelves not perjured, becauſe diſpenſed with by the Pope; and commonly get ſomething in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankfull unto the Papacy. Exam- ples of this kind are obvious in all times and ſtories. 5. Next comes the choſing of the young- ger ſonnes of great Princes into the rank of *Cardinalls*, which obligeth the whole Stock or Fa- milie to the Papall Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regall Patrimony. 6. And as by theſe courſes he holds in with all *Chriſtian* Princes generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*: ſo hath he faſtned more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we ſhall ſpeak fur- ther when we come to that Countrey.

2. Concerning the ſecond. So it is that their Eſtate hath the firmeſt foundation of any, as being built on the conſciences of men poſſeſſed with an opinion of their *Infallibilty*, and that undoubted power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but alſo over Hell and Purgatory. 2. Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their diſpoſing, for men of all humours, and affections: as having in their power the diſpoſing of almoſt all the Benefices and Biſhopricks in *Italie*, half of thoſe in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*, which keepeth the *Clergy*, and all ſuch as are that way ſtudied, in a perpetuall dependance upon that See; eſpe-

The Papacie.

cially injoying by it many notable Privileges, which thoſe of the *Temporalty* are not capable of. 3. Conſider next the multitude of *Monks* and *Friers*, whoſe very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every *Monaſtery* and *Convent* being a Garriſon (as it were) to defend the *Papacy*, and train up a *Militia* of *Spirituall Janiſaries*; men moſt affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of theſe it is conceived that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at leaſt may be fit for action; and all maintained at other mens coſt, themſelves not diſburſing a penny towards it. 4. Their *Pardons* and *Indulgences* are a great increaſe to their Revenue: ſome of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the eighth, which was for 82000. yeers to all that could ſay ſuch a Prayer of S. *Auguſtines*; and that for every day, *Toties, quoties*. 5. Their practiſing on *Penitents*, whom they perſwade in the very agony of their ſouls, that there is no ſalvation for them but by giving part of their eſtates unto the Church. 6. Nor have they found any ſmall advantage to their Power and Patrimony, by the invention of *Spirituall Fraternities*, which are Appurtenances (as it were) to the Orders of *Friers*, and may in number perhaps equall them. Into theſe the *Lay-people* of all ſorts, men and women, maried and ſingle, deſire to be inrolled, as hereby injoying the ſpirituall prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more ſpeedy diſpatch out of *Purgatory*.

3. Concerning the third. 1. They deter the people from reading the *Scripture*, alleging unto them the perills they may incur by miſ-interpretation. 2. They *breed an Antipathy* between the *Papiſts* and the *Proteſtants*: inſomuch that a *Papiſt* may not ſay *Amen* unto a *Proteſtants Deo gratias*. 3. They debar them from all *ſound of the Religion*, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers; and hiding their own Treatiſes, in which the Tenent of the *Proteſtants* is recited, only to be confuted; inſomuch that in all *Italie* you ſhall ſeldom meet with *Bellarmines* works, or any of the like nature to be ſold. 4. They have under pain of Excommunication, prohibited the *Italians* from *Travell* and *Traffick* with *Heretical* Countreys, or ſuch places, where thoſe contagious ſounds and ſights (as they term them) might make them return infected. 5. The *Severity*, or *Tyranny* rather, of the *Inquiſition*, (of which we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Spain*) cruſheth not onely the beginnings, but the ſmalleſt ſuſpitions of being this way addicted. And 6ly. The people thus reſtrained from Travell, are taught to believe that the *Proteſtants* are Blaſphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables; the people are grown barbarous, and eat young children; that *Geneva* is a profeſſed Sanctuary of Roguery, and the like. We have yet two later examples of their dealing in this kind. Firſt, the groſs ſlander of the *Apoſtacy* (or as they call it, the Reconciliation) unto their Church, of the Right Reverend Father in God Dr. *King*, not long ſince the Lord Biſhop of *London*, a Prelate of too known a faith and zeal, to give occaſion for ſuch a calumny. The ſecond, a book by them publiſhed, and commonly ſold in *Italie* and *France*, containing a relation of Gods Judgements, ſhown on a ſort of *Proteſtant Hereticks*, by the fall of an houſe in St. *Andrews* Pariſh in *London*, in which they were aſſembled to hear a *Geneva* Lecture, Octob. 26. *A.D.* 1623. By which dealing the ſimple people are made to believe that to be a judgment on us of the *Proteſtant* party, which the Authors of that Pamphlet well know to be a calumnie in regard of us; and a ſad chance (I will not ſay a judgment) which befell their own, by a fall of a Chamber in *Black-Friers*, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one *Drurie*, a *Popiſh* Prieſt, and that too on the fift of *November* in their own accompt, being the 26. of *October* before mentioned.

The Popedom being thus cunningly and ſtrongly founded, it cannot be, if the Popes had been choſen young, or of the ſame Family, (ſo that the Succeſſor had not often croſſed the deſigns of his Predeceſſor) but that this new Monarchie had been greater and better eſtabliſhed, than ever the old *Roman* Empire was in her greateſt glory. And to ſay truth, I have oft wondred with my ſelf that ſome of the more active Popes, eſpecially ſuch as were choſen young, and had the happineſs to deſcend of noble Families, did never ſeek the ſetling of this Eſtate in their own Poſterity; eſpecially conſidering the good *Precedents* which they had before them, both in ſacred and in civill ſtories. The *high Prieſthood* in the Church of *Jewry* went from Father to Sonne, and why ſhould any man think it inconvenient to follow the example of Almighty God in making the *high Prieſthood* in the Church of *Chriſt* to be alſo *hereditary*, not *elective*? The *Saracens*, who were as great Maſters for wit and policy, as any thoſe Ages did produce, purſued that precedent, governed by *Hereditary Caliphs* many yeers together, untill the *Sultans* their *Vicegerents* (ambitiouſly affecting the Supreme Command) rooted out their races. And if the ſame Obligation lie on the *Maſters* of *Religious* or mixt Orders, for preſerving the Rules and Statutes of their foundations, as is upon the Pope by the fundamentall Ordinances of the *Conclave*, as it ſeems to do, why might not the Popes as well diſpence with thoſe *Conſtitutions*, and turn the Popedom into an *Hereditary* Eſtate, as *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, and *Gotardus* of *Denmark*, Maſters of the *Dutch* Knights in *Pruſſia* and *Livonia*, in their times have done? Nor can I ſee, but that ſuch an alteration as I ſpeak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of *Chriſtendom*, as the like change from an unſetled popular Government to an hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that notable Hiſtorian and States-man *Tacitus*, *Neq; Provincia illum rerum ſtatum abnuebant, ſuſpecto* Senatus Populique *imperio ob certamina potentium, & avaritiam Magiſtratuum; invalido Legum auxilio, quæ vi, ambitu, poſtremo pecunia turbabantur.* The Provinces (ſaith he) diſliked

liked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the *Senate* and *People* had been long diſtaſted, by reaſon of the factions of the great ones, and covetouſneſs of their Officers: the Laws affording no ſecurity at all, as being ſwayd up and down by force, ambition and corruption. The *Popedom* ſeeled in one houſe, would prove more conſtant in the preſervation of all Leagues and Treaties; more carefull to preſerve the *intereſt* of their Eſtate, more uſefull to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occaſions, than it is at preſent: where the Popes ſo often change their ſides, and ſhift their factions; the Succeſſor many times eſteeming it his greateſt glory to reſcind all the acts of his Predeceſſor. And poſſible enough it is, that *Caſar Borgia*, the ſonne of *Alexander* the ſixt, might have ſome ſuch ends, when it was covenanted betwixt him and *Lewis* the twelfth of *France*, that being declared Generall of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping-hand to that King in the Conqueſt of *Millain*, he ſhould be aided by him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of *Urbine* and *Camerine*, the Families of the *Malateſti*, *Baillons*, and *Bentivogli*, with divers others of leſs note, did poſſeſs in *Italie*. Which having got into his hands, had not his Fathers ſudden death, and his own dangerous ſickneſs happning at the ſame time, cut off his deſign, it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himſelf abſolute Maſter of *Rome*, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the ſame eſtabliſhed in the *Borgian* Familie. 'Tis true, that ſuch an alteration would be very diſtaſtfull to the ambition of the *Cardinals*, who by the deaths (naturall or violent, it matters not) of the preſent Pope, aſpire by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot ſee how all the wit in the *Conclave* had been able to hinder it, if *Alexander*, on a purpoſe to poyſon ſome of that number whom he had invited to a Supper, by a meer miſtake of his Cup-bearer, had not poyſoned himſelf; (even in the very heat of the buſineſs then almoſt effected) and ſo made fruſtrate the device. *The Papacie.*

But paſſing by this imagination of an *Hereditary* Popedom, let us behold it as *Elective*, and look upon the form and order obſerved in it. Now the Election of the Pope is made moſt commonly in this place and manner. In the Popes Palace on the hill *Vatican*, are among other buildings, five Halls, two Chappells, and a Gallery ſeventy foot long. The *Gallery* is appointed for conference, one *Chappell* for the Maſs, and for the Election; the other with the Halls, are for the *Cardinals* lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purpoſely for the time, made of green or violet cloth. To each *Cardinall* is allowed four ſervants, to lie in his chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unleſs they be ſick, ſtill to continue there; and ſuch as are once out, are no more permitted to go in: leſt by that means, the Cardinals ſhould maintain intelligence with any forrain Princes. To this *Conclave* (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which belongeth four locks, and as many keys. One key is in the keeping of the Cardinalls; one, of the City-Biſhops; one, of the *Roman* Nobility; and one, of the *Maſter of the Ceremonies*: There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at dinners and ſuppers, whereof the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* keepeth a key. At this hole the *Cardinals* ſervants receive their meat; every diſh being firſt diligently ſearched, leſt any Letters ſhould be conveyed in them. As for the lodgings, they have neither holes nor windows to give light; ſo that there they make day of wax-candles: And leſt the Pope ſhould be made by force, both the City and *Conclave* are ſtrongly guarded. When the *Cardinals* are going to Election, the privileges of the *Cardinals* are recited, which every one ſweareth to obſerve, in caſe he be choſen Pope. Then the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* ringing a Bell, calleth them all to Maſs: which ended, there is brought to every *Cardinal* a Chair, and therein a Scroll of all the *Cardinals* names. Before the Altar is ſet a Table, covered with a purple cloth, whereupon is ſet a Chalice, and a Silver Bell, and about it ſix ſtools, on which ſit two Cardinal-Biſhops, two Cardinal-Prieſts, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every *Cardinal* writeth his voyce in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voyce into the Chalice, and departeth to his ſeat. The firſt *Biſhop* taketh out all the papers, and delivereth them to the firſt *Deacon*; who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the *Elector*) the name of the elected: and every *Cardinal* in his particular Scroll, noteth how many voyces every one hath. The accompt being made, the *firſt Prieſt* having the like Scroll, pronounceth who hath moſt voyces: which done, the *Prieſt* ringeth a Silver Bell; at which call the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* bringeth in a pan of coles, and burneth all the little papers, wherein the names of the *elected* were written. He that hath the moſt voyces (ſo that his voyces exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the reſt of the Cardinals: but if they exceed not this number, they muſt begin all anew. If in the ſpace of thirty days the Election be not fully ended, then muſt the *Cardinals* be kept from fire, light, and victualls, till they are fully agreed. The wicket which we before mentioned, is called the *Golden Gate*; at which ſtand an infinite number of poor people; on whom the new Pope, having opened that gate, beſtoweth his Fatherly benediction; and remitteth to them all their ſins. Then ſtriketh he continually on the ſame door with a *golden Mallet*; which whilſt he is doing, workmen without break it open. The chips, ſtones, duſt, and dirt which falleth from the Gate, while it is opening, are gathered and preſerved as choiceſt *Reliques*; and the *Golden Mallet* is uſually given to that Cardinal who is in moſt grace with the new Pope.

The Papacie.

This is the ordinary way of the Popes Election; but subject to much Faction and Division amongst the Cardinals, and that in times of less deceit than the present are. Insomuch as after the death of Pope *Clement* the fourth, the differences amongst them held for two years and more. Which gave occasion to one of them to say in scorn, that *they must uncover the roof of the house, to make way for the* Holy Ghost *to come upon them.* And there is now much more corruption and abuse in it than ever formerly; as buying of Voyces, setting up some for stales, and tearing scrutinies; every Cardinal desiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Princes Faction. So that we find it written of an old *Sicilian* Cardinal, who after long absence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that incessant prayers, as in times of old, should have procured some fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Christ*; that finding nothing but canvasing, promising rewards, and threatning for Voices in the choice; *ad hunc modum* (saith he) *fiunt Pontifices Romanis*, and so returned into his Countrey, and saw *Rome* no more.

The ordinary *Temporall* Revenue of the Papacy arising out of Land-rents, Imposts upon Commodities, and sale of Offices, *Botervs* maketh to be better than two Millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary and *Spirituall* to be far beyond. For it is said of *Pius Quintus*, who sate Pope six years only, that he got from the *Spanish* Clergy 14 Millions. And though he was a very great builder, which spent him a great deal of money, yet he so managed his Estate, that he layd up four millions of Crowns in the Castle of S. *Angelo*. *Sixtus* the fifth took from the Jesuits at one clap 20000 Crowns of yearly rent (because they were too rich for men professing poverty) and having sat but five years, had coffered up five Millions of Gold; four of which his successor *Gregory* the fourteenth spent in less than a year. Out of *France* they receive no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Out of *England* when it was the Popes *Puteus inexhaustus*, they and their followers extracted no less than 60000 Marks *per an.* which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our present money; and was more than the Kings standing Revenue did attain unto; Yet was this in the time of K. *Henry* 3. before their avarice and rapine was at the height. And of late daies, no longer since than the reign of K. *Henry* the 8. besides their *Peter-pence*, which was an Annual rent upon every chimny in the Realm, first granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, An° 730, or thereabouts, and afterwards confirmed by *Ethelwolf* the second Monarch of *England*; besides their first Fruits, Tenths, and all other exactions; it was made evident that in some few years then last past, the Popes had received out of *England* no less than 160000 l sterling, for the Confirmation of Episcopall Elections only. By which we may conjecture what vast sums they drew hence on all other occasions. Let other Countries subject to the Popes authority be accordingly rated, and the totall will amount to a sum incredible. Next adde to this the sums of money they receive from particular persons, for pardons, for dispensations with unlawfull Mariages, the profits arising from Pilgrimages, from the death and funerals of great persons, from the Indulgencies granted to Abbies and Convents, in all which the Popes have a share; and it would puzzel a good *Arithmetician* to state his *Intrade*. So truly was it sayd by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, that *a Pope could never want money as long as he was able to hold a pen in his hand.* Yet notwithstanding, their Treasurie for the most part is but low or empty. For 1. the State they keep, because of that great honour which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence (*for the more worship the more cost*, as the saying is) is very chargeable unto them; their ordinary Guards standing them in no less than 30000 Crowns *per annum*. 2. the large allowances which they are fain to give unto their *Legates*, *Nuncios*, and other Ministers, keep their coffers low; the entertainment of their Ordinary *Nuncios* in the Courts of *Christian* Princes, amounting to no less than 1200 Crowns a moneth to each. And 3. their greedy desire to enrich their Sonnes or Kinsmen with the treasures of the Church (with which humour Pope *Sixtus* the fift, being of poor and obscure birth, was never touched) keeps them alwaies bare. Adde unto these the excessive gorgeousness of the Papall vestments (in which vanitie every one seeketh to excell the other) especially that of their *Triple Crown*; which must needs put them to great charge, and continuall issues of their treasure. And for an evidence of this last, we find that *Clement* the fift, who first transferred his See to *Avignon*, to shew his gallantry to the *French* (probably unacquainted with the like fine sights) had his Crown thick set with *Carbuncles* and precious stones, one of which being lost by a fall from his horse, was valued at 8000 Ducats.

As for the *Forces* of the *Church*, the Pope is able to impress as great a number of Land-souldiers out of his estate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of *Italie*. *Paul* the 3. sent to the aid of *Charles* the fifth in the Wars of *Germany* twelve thousand Foot, and five hundred horse, and yet raised his own Family to the Dukedom of *Parma*. *Pius* the fift sent to the aid of *Charles* the ninth against the *Hugonots* 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horse; which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when Pope *Clement* undertook the War of *Ferrara*, he raised out of his estate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse in less than a moneth, which was more than most Princes in *Europe* could possibly have done. And for the valour of his Souldiers, and ability of his Commanders, they retain so much (as before was said) of their Ancestors vertues, that there are thought to be many Familes in the estate of the Church, able to furnish all the Commonwealths and Princes of Christendom with sufficient Captains. What, and how litle he is able to do by Sea, may be best seen out of the aid which he sent to the *Venetians*

The Papacie.

tians at the famous Battell of *Lepanto*; wherein he furnished them with no more than twelve Gallies; and those too hired of the Duke of *Florence*: The *Venetians* in the *Adriatick*, and the *Florentines* in the *Tuscan* Seas, having all the Trade, and consequently all the power in the seas of *Italie*. 'Tis true the Pope was bound by the capitulation to bear the fift part of the charge of the war, and with the help of the rest of the Princes of *Italie* (who were to march under his colours) to set forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horse; which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by land, as the other is of his weaknes at sea.

Having a purpose in the prosecution of this Work to mention such particular Orders of Knighthood, as most Countries have given beginning to, I will here set down the Orders of such *Popish spirituall Knights* or *Friers*, which his holy benediction hath erected, and fat allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the originall of a *Monasticall life*; and then we will make speciall mention of some of the *Romish* Votaries of both sexes. Know then that under the seventh Persecution raised against the Church by *Decius*, one *Paulus*, born at *Thebes* in *Egypt*, retired to a private cave under the foot of a Rock, An°260. Here he is sayd to have lived one hundred years, and to have been seen of no man but one *Anthony*, who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the first that followed the example of *Paulus*; a man of a noble house, and one that sold all his estate, that he might the more privately injoy himself. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the *Father of the Monks*. To these beginnings, doth *Polydore Virgil* refer the originall of the *Monks*, and religious orders; the name *Monk* comming from the *Greek* μόνος, because of their lonely and solitary lives. Those of the religious orders are called *Fratres*, and in *English Friers*, from the *French* word *Frere*, which signifieth a Brother; and that, either because of their brotherly cohabitation; or else because they are *Fratres in malo*, brethren in mischief and design.

The foundation of *Monasticall* life thus layd by *Paulus*, and *Anthony*, the world increased so fast in *Monks* and *Eremites*, that it seemed necessary to prescribe them orders. Hereupon Saint *Basil* gathered them together, living formerly dispersed; and is said to be the first that built them Monasteries. He is also said to have ordained the three Vows of *Poverty*, *Chastity*, and *Obedience*; to have instructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the service of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this order there are not many in the *Latin* Church, but good plenty of them in the *Greek*. They are bound to abstain from all kind of flesh, and are called *Monks* of S. *Basil*, by the name of that Father; amongst the Writings of which Father, the Rules for these *Monastick*s are set down at large.

2 The next who prescribed Orders was S. *Augustine*, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of age, is said to have obtained a Garden without the walls of *Hippo* for private contemplations. Twelve only he assumed into his society, living with them in all integrity, and wearing a leathern Girdle to distinguish them from *Monks*. Hence came the present *Austin Friers*, or the *Eremites* of S. *Austin*, as others call them. Of such esteem formerly in the Universitie of *Oxford*, that all who took the degree of a Master of Arts, were to submit themselves to their *Oppositions* in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, *in Augustinensibus responderit vel opposuerit*, still retained among them. There house in *London* stood in *Broadstreat*, of which a part of the Church still standeth, converted to a Church for the use of the *Dutch*; the rest demolished, and in the place thereof a stately Mansion erected by Sir *William Pawlet* the first Marquess of *Winchester*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*. These make the first order of the *Friers Mendicants*. The first Monastery of them was erected at *Paris* by *William* Duke of *Guien*, An° 1155; and An° 1200, they began to flourish in *Italie*, by the favour of *John* Lord of *Mantua*. The other branches of this Tree, are 1 the *Monks* of S. *Hierome*, 2 the *Carmelites*, 3 the *Crouched Friers*, and 4 the *Dominicans*.

1 The *Monks* of Saint *Hierom* challenge their originall from the worthy Father of the Church so called. They flourish especially in *Spain*, where there are thirty two Monasteries of them; their chief House being Saint *Bartholomews* of *Lupiena*; and have taken unto themselves the Rule of Saint *Austin*. Their Robe is a white Cassock, under a tawney Cloak.

2 The *Carmelites*, so called from Mount *Carmel* in *Syria*, pretend their original from *Elias*, and *John* the *Baptist*. They onely allowed at first the rule of S. *Basil*; and were confirmed in *Europe* by *Honorius* the third. They are by some called *Jacobines*, from a Church dedicated to Saint *Iames*, where they had their first *Convent*; and by us, the *White Friers*, from the colour of their habit. Their house in *London* stood in *Fleetstreet*, converted since into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, besides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of Saint *Austin*; by *Donna Eroshia* (or *Teresa*) a *Spanish* woman, who made them also certain Constitutions, confirmed by *Pius* the fourth, An° 1565.

3 The *Friers* of S. *Crosse*, *Crossed*, or *Crouched Friers*, were first ordained by *Cyriacus* Bishop of *Hierusalem*, who shewed to *Helena* the place where the Cross was hidden: hence this Order, which being almost decayed, was restored first by *Urban* the second, and afterwards by *Innocent* the third, under the rule of Saint *Austin*. Their Robe is Watchat, and in their hands they carry the figure of the Cross. Their house in *London* near the *Tower*, still retains its name.

4 The *Dominicans*, or *Friers Preachers*, were instituted by Saint *Dominik* a *Spaniard*. He puts

The Papacy.

puts himself in this Order with sixteen of his Disciples under the Rule of Saint *Austin*, An° 1206, and had his device confirmed by *Honorius* the third. Their duty is to preach the Gospell in all places unto the fartheſt parts of the world; which both they did, and their ſucceſſors ſince have done, not at home only, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are call'd by us *Black Friers*, from the colour of their habits, and are the 3. Order of *Friers Mendicans*. Their houſe in *London* ſtood neer *Ludgate*, and took up the whole Precinct which is ſtill called *Black-Friers*, though nothing be remaining of it but the very name.

3 The third that preſcribed Orders was S. *Benedict*, born at *Nurſia*, in the Dutchy of *Spoleto*, An° 472. He gathered the *Monks* of *Italie* together, gave them a Rule in writing, cauſed them to be called *Benedictines*, or *Monks* of Saint *Benedict*; and lived till he had ſeen twelve Monaſteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew ſo populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Arch-Biſhops, 4000 Biſhops, and 50000 Canonized Saints. Their habit is a looſe Gown of black, reaching down to the ground, with a Hood of the ſame; an under-garment of white woollen, and boots on their legs. The other principall ſtreams of this Fountain are, firſt, the *Monks* of *Clugnia*, ſecondly of *Carthuſia*, thirdly of *Ciſteaux*, fourthly the *Celeſtines*.

1 The *Monks* of *Clugnie*, are ſo called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*; the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the firſt that reformed the *Benedictines* then fallen from their former integrity, An° 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperors, that all ſuch Abbies as would come under the compaſs of his Reformations (which were in all about two hundred) ſhould be called the *Congregation* of *Clugni*, and that they might call their Chapiters, *&c.*

2 The *Carthuſians* were firſt inſtituted by one *Bruno* a *German* Doctor of Divinity at the Town of *Carthuſia* in *Daulphine*, An° 1080: His followers, which were at the firſt but ſix, have at this day 93 Monaſteries. They eat no fleſh, live by couples, labour with their hands, watch, pray, and never meet together, but on Sundaies. Their houſe in *London* by corruption and long tract of time, got the name of the *Charter-houſe* (the *Monks* themſelves being corruptly called the *Charter-houſe Monks*) now better known by the name of *Suttons Hoſpitall*; from the Hoſpitall of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of *London*.

3 The *Monks* of *Ciſteaux* were firſt inſtituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Moleſme*, An° 1090 or thereabouts; who together with 21 of the moſt religious of his Covent, retired to *Ciſteaux* in *Burgundy* Dutchy; hence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order, who built and repaired for them 160 Abbies. Their Robe is a white Caſſock, girt with a Girdle of wooll, the reſt black. They were by us called *White Monks*; and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their habits.

4 The *Celeſtines* ow their originall to *Peter de Moron*, a *Samnite*, born An° 1250; who being afterwards for his ſanctity choſe Pope, was called *Celeſtine* the fift. He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory* the 11. There are at this preſent 124 Monaſteries of them.

The 4 and laſt that preſcribed new Orders to the *Monaſticks*, was Saint *Francis* of *Aſſis* in the Dutchy of *Spoleto*. He fell from Merchandize, which was his firſt profeſſion, unto the ſtudy of Religion, going bare-foot, and behaving himſelf very penitently; whereupon, great ſtore of Diſciples following him, he gave them a Rule in writing; by which they are bound to profeſs abſolute beggery, and are not permitted to carry any mony about them, or more victuals than will for the preſent ſerve themſelves and their Brethren. This they obſerve punctually in their own perſons, but give themſelves to have a Boy with them, to do both without ſcruple. S. *Francis* deſired they ſhould be called *Minors*, to ſhew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciſcans* by the name of their Founder: By the *French* called *Cordeliers*, becauſe of the knotty Cord which they wear about them inſtead of a Girdle; by us, the *Gray Friers*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their houſe in *London* ſtood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloyſters, and ſome other the publick Offices do ſtill ſtand entire; the whole converted to an Hoſpitall for poor Children by King *Edward* the ſixt, in the latter end of his reign, now beſt known by the name of *Chriſt Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent* the 3^d^, An° 1212, and is the fourth and laſt of the *Friers mendicants*, or *begging Friers*. The other principall Children of this Father, are 1 the *Minimes*; and 2 the *Capouchins*.

1 The *Friers Minimes*, were firſt founded by *Franciſcus de Pola*, a *Neapolitan*, An° 1450 according to a correſted copy of the rule of S. *Francis* of *Aſſis*. His followers keep alwaies a true Lenten faſt, unleſs in caſe of ſickneſs. Their Robe is a dark tawney, an hood of the ſame hanging to their girdles.

2 The *Capouchins*, (ſo called from their cowle or *capouch*) were ordained by one *Mathew Baſci* of *Ancona*. Frier *Lewis*, his companion, obtained for them of the Pope, the habit and rule of S. *Francis*, An. 1526. In the ſpace 42 years they increaſed to 2240 aſſociates, had 222 Monaſteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to ſpend their time in prayer; and are generally thought to be the devouteſt of all the Orders *Monaſtical*.

I ſhould now ſpeak of the *Jeſuites*, but that I cannot bring them under any rule, as being a people

ple neither simply *Lay* nor *Priests*, nor meerly *secular*, nor *regular*, but all together. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, who being in his youth addicted to the wars, was lamed in one of his legs: after which maim betaking himself to the study of Religion, he framed this order, consisting at the first of ten only. *Paul* the third did confirm it, An. 1540. confining the number within sixty; which he after inlarged *ad infinitum*. They are now the greatest Politicians, soundest Scholars, and chiefest upholders of the *Romish* See: so that the onely way to reestablish the *Romish* Religion in any Land, is to plant a College of *Jesuites* in it. To the three vows of *Poverty*, *Obedience*, and *Chastitie*, common to all other orders, *Ignatius* at the institution of this, added the Vow of *Mission*: whereby his followers are bound to obey their *Generall*, or the Pope, without demanding any reason, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatsoever, whether it be undertaking some tedious voyage, for the propagation of the *Romish* Religion, or the massacring of any Prince whose life is a hindrance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jesuite* being in the midst of his Masse, which they call the sacrifice of the Altar, was sent for by *Ignatius*; to whom leaving off his Mass he went immediately. *Ignatius* having no business wherein to employ him, told him, he only sent for him to trie his obedience; and withall prophanely added, that *Obedience is better than sacrifice*: and this is called the blind obedience of the *Jesuites*. To leave them then as they are, the greatest disturbers of the quiet of *Europe*, I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, say many times, that till the *Jesuites* were taken from the Church of *Rome*, and the peevish *Puritan* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of *Great Britain*, he thought there would never be any peace in Christendom; with what a true presaging spirit, the event hath shewed. The Papacie

Corrivals with the *Jesuites* in power and learning, and almost conætaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Nerio* a *Florentine*, An. 1564, who marking the great sway which the *Jesuites* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run if that Order were not equally ballanced by some other of as much abilitie, first established this, consisting altogether of Priests; that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of practical and morall duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinall *Cæsar Baronius*, *Francis Bourdino*, afterwards Bishop of *Avignon* in *France*, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three first whom he admitted to his Rule: initiated in S. *Hieroms* Church at *Rome* by Pope *Pius* the fourth with great zeal and cheerfulnes; to whom, as to some of his Predecessors, the power and practices of the *Jesuites* were become suspitious. They increased speedily (being countenanced on so good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue: as much esteemed of for their knowledge in *Ecclesiasticall Historie*, and *Practicall Divinitie*, as the others for Philosophy, Tongues, and the study of Controversies; and more accepted of in most places, because not usually intermedling in affairs of State. So evenly looked on by the Popes, that the *Jesuites* could not obtain the *Canonization* of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Nerius* also, which hapned in the short Popedom of *Gregory* the 15. *An.* 1622.

To conclude this discourse of *Monks* and *Friers*, I will say somewhat of the severest kind of *Recluse*, which is the *Anachoret*, or *Ancharet*, so called from ἀναχωρέω, because they use to live retired from company. They are kept in a close place, where they must dig their graves with their nails; badly clad, and worse dieted, not to be pitied, because their restraint of liberty is voluntary; yet to be sorrowed for in this, that after such an earthly *Purgatory*, they shall find instead of an *Euge bone serve*, a *Quis quæsivit de manibus vestris*.

But concerning these Orders of Monks and Friers, certain it is, that at their first institution they were a People much reverenced for their holy life; as men that for Christs sake had abandoned all the Pomps and Vanities of the world. And questionless they were then a People altogether mortified, and who by their very aspects would gain upon the affection of the hardest heart; insomuch that not only mean men, but great personages also did desire to be buried in Friers weeds, as *Francis* the 2d, Marquess of *Mantua*, *Albertus Pius* another Prince of *Italie*, and in late times the great Scholar *Christopher Longolius*. But as *Florus* saith of the Civill Wars between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, *Causa hujus Belli, eadem quæ omnium; nimia felicitas*; we may say also of these Friers, The greatness of their wealth, which many on a superstitious devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them first to a neglect of their former devout and religious carriage; next to a wretchlesness of their credits, and consequently into contempt: so that there was not a people under heaven that was more infamous in themselves, or more scornfully abused by others. Hence the vulgar sayings of the people, that *Friers wear crosses on their breasts, because they have none in their hearts*; and that *when a Frier receiveth the Razor, the Devil entreth into him*, and the like. Nay, Sir *Thomas Moore*, who lost his head in the Popes quarrell, sticks not in his *Utopia* to call them *Errones Maximos*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and sturdy Beggers. Now to shew both the humours of Respect and Contempt used severally to these *Monks* and *Friers*, as men stood affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moore*, Sir *Thomas* his wife, finding by chance a *Friers* Girdle, shewed it to her husband with great joy, saying, *Behold*, Sir Thomas, *a step towards Heaven*: whereunto with a scornfull laugh he returned this answer, that *he feared that step would not bring her a step higher*. And as for their retiredness and solitary course of life, so it is that many Kings, especially of the *Saxons* in the time of their *Heptarchie*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: And

Barclay

The Papacie.

Barclay in his *Argenis*, under the perſon of *Anaroeſtus*, hath defended this in ſuch Princes as have cloyſtered themſelves to injoy the ſolitude of a Convent. Which notwithſtanding, Philoſophers have defined a man to be ζῶον πολιτικὸν, a Creature principally made for civill converſation; the Poets ſay, *Naſcitur indignè per quem non naſcitur alter*, that he dyeth indebted to the world who leaves no poſterity behind him: and the *Jews*, which live in great numbers even in *Rome* it ſelf, abhor this unſociable kind of living, and prefer a civill ſociableneſs much before it; as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable, and conſequently to God more acceptable. And having ſpoken thus much of the *Monks* and *Friers*, deſcend we now unto the *Nuns*.

And indeed I ſhould much wrong the *Friers*, if I ſhould deprive them of the company of their deareſt *Votaries*; and therefore take ſomewhat of them alſo. Called antiently *Moniales* from the *Greek* wórd Μόνος, from their living alone; whence we alſo had the names of *Monks* and *Monaſteries*: in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nonna* an *Ægyptian* word, (for *Ægypt* in old times was not meanly furniſhed with ſuch *Eremites*) which alſo ſignifieth a ſolitary and lonely life. A word in ſome of the barbarous *Latines* very much in uſe. *Scholaſtica* the Siſter of S. *Benedict*, was the firſt who collected them into companies, and preſcribed them Rules. They are ſhaved, as *Monks* are, and vow (as they do) perpetuall poverty and *Virginity*. Which laſt how well they keep, let *Clemangis* teſtifie; who telleth us, that *Puellam velare eadem eſt ac publicè eam ad* ſcortandum *exponere*: to veil a Nun, and proſtitute her for a common Harlot were terms equivalent. And one *Robinſon*, who lived for a time in the *Engliſh* Nunnery at *Liſbon*, hath told us that he found an hole in their Garden-wall covered over with Morter, in which were hidden the bones of many new-born children, which their unnaturall Mothers had murdered and thrown in there. But of theſe I will inſtance only in two Orders, *viz.* that of S. *Clare*, as being the ſtricteſt; and that of S. *Brigit*, which injoyeth moſt liberty.

1. S. *Clare* was a Knights daughter of *Aſſis*, where S. *Francis* was born, with whom ſhe was co-temporary, and with whoſe auſtere life ſhe was ſo affected, that ſhe forſook her Fathers houſe, and followed him. Having learned her *Lirrie* of that *Frier-monger*, ſhe deviſed an Order of Religious women; and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius* the third, An°. 1225. Her followers vow *Poverty* and *Virginity*, as before was ſaid, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more ſtreightned in their courſe of life, than thoſe of any other Order. By their Foundreſs, out of a deſire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of S. *Francis*, they were called *Minorites*, or *Minores*, and gave name to the place neer the Tower-hill in *London*, where they had their houſe, called from them the *Minories*.

2. S. *Brigit* was a Queen of *Swethland*, and coming to *Rome* on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban* the third, An°. 1370. or thereabouts, that *Friers* and *Nuns* might in ſome places live together. For being a Woman and a Widow ſhe knew beſt (as it ſeemeth) what was good for both Sexes, and ſo deviſed ſuch a Rule as contented both. But little needed this cohabitation or living together under the ſhelter of the ſame roof. For they had formerly been joyned in carnall affections, though parted by walls; neither were the *viſitations* of the *Friers* ſo fruitleſs, but that the *Nuns* did fructifie by them. Theſe *Friers* and *Nuns* though they lived under the ſame roof, are prohibited from coming to one another, but on ſpeciall occaſions: the *Foundreſs* ſo ordering it, that the *Nuns* ſhould lie in the upper rooms, and the *Friers* in the lower. The *Confeſſor* alſo is denied acceſs into their chambers, but ſhriveth them though an *Iron-Grate*, by which his lodging is parted from the Lady *Abeſſe's*. And herein lyeth the *Myſtery of Iniquity*. For *Robinſon*, whom before I named, tells us, that at the time of his ſervice in the *Engliſh Nunnery* at *Lisbon*, he was ſhewed a way by which this uncharitable Grate, which ſeemed to keep the *Friers* from the company of their *female friends*, might be, and was on ſuch occaſions uſually removed, and the acceſs made free and open to each others beds. Which if it be truly ſaid of theſe, may be ſuſpected alſo in all the reſt of this Order, and in moſt alſo of the others.

And now I return unto my *Friers*, which beſides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their preſent ſubſiſtence, are kept in a continuall hope and poſſibility of attaining to the higheſt honours which that Church can give, if they continue conſtant in their due obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the *Prior* of his Convent; 2. *Provinciall* of his Order in that Countrey where he liveth; 3. and then the Generall of his Order. Next, none more likely than the Generalls to be choſen *Cardinalls*, and out of the *Cardinalls* one of neceſſity muſt be choſen, and why not he, as well as any of the pack, to be Pope of *Rome*? So firm and ſweet a Companion of man is *Hope*, that being the laſt thing which leaves him, it makes all toyls ſupportable, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedom containeth
Arch-biſhops 3. Biſhops 54.

The Dukedom of URBINE.

ENvironed on all sides with the Lands of the Church, save where it coasteth on the *Adriatick*, lies the Dukedom of *URBINE*, having on the East *Marca Anconitana*; on the West, *Romagna*, or *Romandiola*; on the North, the *Adriatick Sea*; on the South, the *Apennine*. It is in length about sixty miles, and some thirty five miles in the bredth: within which round lie intermixt some Estates of the Church, of which the Duke is a *Fendatary*, and to which he payeth 2240. Crowns for a *quit-rent* yeerly.

The soyl is very fruitfull of Corn, Wine, and Oyl, plentifull of Figs and other fruits of most pleasant taste; and in a word, affording all things necessary for the life of man. But the air is generally unwholesom, especially about *Pesaro* and *Fossombrune*, by reason of the low flats and over-flows of the water. The principal commodities which they vend abroad, are the wines of *Pesaro*, sold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dryed figs which they vend unto *Bologne* and other places.

The most famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Metremo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reason of that great battell fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Asdrubal* the brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Consuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*, in which after a long and hot dispute, the victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000. of the *Carthaginians* slain, (as *Livie* writeth) and 5400. taken prisoners. *Polybius* speaks of a less number both slain and taken; and like enough it is, that *Livie*, to advance the honor of that Family, might inlarge a little. But whatsoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this victory turned the tide of the *Roman* Fortune, which from this time began to flow amain upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to trade and traffick, to follow their affairs, and make contracts and bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do; and that with as secure a confidence as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italie*. This famous River riseth in the *Apennine* hills, and passing by *Fossombrune*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned in this Dukedom seven Towns or Cities, and three hundred Castles: The principall of which are, 1. *Urbine*, one of the most antient Cities of *Italie*, which both *Tacitus* and *Plinie* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Dukes ordinary seat in Summer. It is seated at the foot of the *Apennine* hills, in a very rich and pleasant soyl, built in the fashion of a *Miter*, and therefore called *Urbinas*, *quod urbes binas continere videbatur*. *Francisco Ubaldi* the first Duke built here a very sumptuous Palace, and therein founded a most excellent Library, replenished with a great number of rare Books, covered and garnished with gold, silk, and silver, all scattered and dispersed in the time that *Cesar Borgia* seized on the Estate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the History of *England* which passeth under his name, was a Native here: an History of worth enough as the times then were, except onely in such passages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whose *Peter-pence* he then was in *England*) whose credit and authority he preferreth somtimes before truth it self. 2. *Pisaurum*, now called *Pesara*, the strongest town of all the Dukedom, two miles in compass, and fortified according to the modern art of war: the fortifications of it being first begun by *Francisco Maria*, and perfected by *Guido Ubaldi* his sonne and successor; the ordinary seat of the Duke in winter, well garrisoned, and therefore trusted with the publick Armorie. It is seated neer the shore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Isaurus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handsom buildings, and a very strong wall; the soyl exceeding rich, but the air so bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating of too much fruits, nothing is more frequent here than Funeralls, especially in the moneth of *August*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty yeers old. 3. *Senogaille*, called antiently *Sena Gallica*, a strong and well-fenced City neer the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge consisting of eighty Arches, made of that length, not so much in regard of the breadth of the Channell, as the frequent over-flowings of that turbulent water. 4. *Fossombrune*, called in old Authors *Forum Sempronii*, for air and soyl of the same nature with *Pisaurum*, bought by D. *Frederick* of *Galeazzo Malateste*, for thirteen hundred Florins of gold. 5. *Cabo*, or *Cagli*, on the Sea. 6. S. *Leon*, a good Town, and the chief of the Country of *Montfeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7. *Eugubium*, or *Augubio*, of which nothing famous or remarkable. Of the Castles the principall are, *Marivola*, and the Rock of S. *Leon*, which were the last that held good for Duke *Guidos Baldo* against *Cesar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinoys*, sonne to Pope *Alexander* the sixt, and the first which did return again under his obedience. For which cause when he fled the second time from the said *Borgia*, he dismantled all his other Castles, as being more likely to admit than resist the Invader, and these two last being very well fortified, he left to keep possession of the Countrey for him.

Here is also within the limits of this Estate the Dukedom of *CAMERINE*, an antient and well peopled Town, of a strong naturall situation amongst the hills: an Estate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *di Varena*, till the time of Pope *Paul* the third, when *Julia di Varena* the heir hereof, conveyed it by Mariage unto *Guido Ubaldi* Duke of *Urbin*. But the Pope

pretending

Venice. pretending an Eſcheat for want of heirs males, made himſelf Maſter of it by force of Arms, and gave it to his ſonne *Piero Farneſi*, whom afterwards with the conſent of the College of Cardinalls he made Duke of *Parma*, and ſetled *Camerine* on the Church, as it ſtill continues.

In the time of *Conradin* the laſt Duke of *Schwaben*, *Urbine* was firſt ſubdued by the Earls of *Montfeltre*, whoſe Succeſſors increaſing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Eugubio* to it. And in the buſtles betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor, and Pope *Clement* the ſixt, An°.1345. *Gelaſſo di Montfeltre* held it by no other Title but as the Emperors *Vicegerent*. This Family injoyed it till the yeer 1444. by the Title onely of Earls of *Montfeltro*, and Lords of *Urbine*; when *Frederick Ubaldi*, for his ſingular and ſurpaſſing valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the firſt Duke hereof. A man of ſuch repute for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the ſixt made *Knight of the Garter*; in recompence of which high honour, the *Engliſh* to this day injoy many privileges in theſe Dominions. *Guido Ubaldi* this Dukes ſonne loſt his Eſtate to *Caſar Borgia*; after whoſe death he did recover it again by the power and favour of Pope *Julio* the ſecond; to whom ſucceeded *Franciſco Maria di Rovero*, his ſiſters ſonne, in whoſe Family it ſtill continues, as will appear by this enſuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of *Urbine*.

1444. 1 *Frederick Ubaldi*, of the antient Family *de Montefeltro*, the firſt Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the *Garter*.
2 *Guido Ubaldi*, ſonne of *Frederick*, for a while outed of this Dukedom by *Caſar Borgia*. He was Knight alſo of the *Garter*.
3 *Franciſco Maria de la Rovero*, ſiſters ſonne and next heir to *Guido Ubaldi*, was in his own right Lord of *Senogallia*, and had *Piſauro* from the Pope in reward of his many ſervices done unto the Church, diſſeized for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.
4 *Lawrence de Medices*, Father of *Catharine di Medices* the *French* Queen, and of *Alexander*, the firſt Duke of *Florence*, was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the tenth, (being of that Family) but loſt it ſhortly after to Duke *Franciſco*; who after the death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his Eſtates again, and died poſſeſſed of the Dukedom.
1538. 5 *Guido Ubaldi* II. ſonne of Duke *Franciſco*.
6 *Franciſco Maria* II. ſonne of *Guido* the ſecond.

The Revenues of this Dukedom are ſaid to be 100000, Crowns *per annum*, but might be raiſed to a greater ſum, did not the Duke prefer the love and eaſe of his Subjects before the filling of his own coffers. He is able to raiſe 1200. good Souldiers out of his Eſtate; and more his people would ſupply if he had occaſion. The Arms hereof *Azure*, a Tower *Argent*, environed with Flower de Lyces *Or*.

Here are in this Dukedom
Arch-biſhops 10. Biſhops 3.

The Seigneury of VENICE.

WEſt of the Lands of the Church, from *Romandiola* to the *Alpes*, lie the *Italian* Provinces of the State of *VENICE*; that is to ſay, *Marca Trevigiana*, *Friuli*, *Hiſtria*, and ſome Ilands in the Golf neer the City it ſelf. Beſides which it containeth a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Ilands *Candie*, *Corfu*, *Cephalonia*, *Zant*, *Ithaca*, *Cithera*, and certain others of leſs note. The length of their Dominions both by Sea and Land, extending above a thouſand miles, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The nature of the ſoyl, and the principall Rivers which refreſh it, we ſhall ſee anon in the deſcription of the Provinces before mentioned; according to which Provinces, and the chief Cities of them, the Character of the people is beſt taken: it being ſaid proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themſelves are ſtately, crafty and greedy; the *Veronians* ſtudious and faithfull; the *Paduans* fierce, the *Vincentians* eager on Revenge, thoſe of *Friuli* gratefull and inconſtant; thoſe of *Hiſtria* neither long-livers, nor of very great courage. That in the conduct of a war, thoſe of *Venice* bring ſilver, thoſe of *Treviſo* ſwords; that the *Breſcians* are fit to dig in trenches, thoſe of *Bergomo* to lay Ambuſhes, thoſe of *Padua* to manage Horſes. And of the women it is ſaid, that thoſe of *Crema* are deceitfull, thoſe of *Venice* inſolent, thoſe of *Vincentia* conſtant, thoſe of *Verona* gracious, thoſe of *Treviſo* jealous, thoſe of *Breſcia* diligent, and the *Bergomaſques* crafty.

But not to dally longer in theſe Proverbiall Characters, certain it is that the *Venetians* themſelves do affect a great deal of gravitie in their actions, ſpeak very little at the Table; very ſevere where they have authority, and many times in the exceſs. And yet ſuch is the conſtant temper

temper of their Government, and their impartiality in doing Justice, that they are very wel obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their subiects (notwithstanding the heavy pressures which are layd upon them) is wel in *Italie* as without. Esteemed in former times good souldiers both by Sea and Land, maintaining wars continually with the Turks in *Palestine*; the Emperors of *Constantinople* in *Greece* it self; the *Genoese* by sea; and their neighbours of *Italie* in this Continent. But of late times they have more studied to preserve than inlarge their Dominions; and that too by rather expence of mony, than the loss of blood; and by wit rather than by valour. So fortunate in this last kind of practice, that *Machiavel* observed of them in his time, that *whatsoever they lost by War, they recovered by Treatie.* A pregnant evidence whereof we shall see anon. *Trevigiana.*

To proceed now to the description of such of the Provinces and Estates of this Commonwealth, as pass under the accompt of *Italie*, they are as before was said, 1. *Marca Trevigiana*, 2. *Friuli*, 3. *Histria*, 4. the *Italian* Isles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in order, leaving the rest to be considered in their proper places.

1. *MARCA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South, with the Rivers *Athesis*, and *Po*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the rest of *Romagna*; on the West, with the Rivers *Mincius* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, (now called *Lago de Garda* from a little Town of that name adjoyning) by which parted from the *Dutchie* of *Millaine*; on the East, with *Friuli*, and the *Golf* of *Venice*; and on the North, with the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Tirolis*, a Province of *Germany*.

The principall rivers of this tract are, 1. *Brenta*, called antiently *Meduacus Major*; which rising in the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and watering the fields of *Padua*, passeth into the Sea neer the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malamocco*. 2. *Bachilio*, called antiently *Meduacus Minor*, which riseth also in the *Alpes*, and passing by *Vincenza*, emptieth it self into the *Brenta*; And 3. *Athesis*, now called *Adige*, which springeth also out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many lesser streams into its channel, passeth by *Verona*, and after is divided into two great branches; whereof the one falls into the Sea, the other loseth it self in the middest of the Marishes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Vincentia*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuscans* or *Hetrurians* on this side of the *Apennine*; pleasantly seated on the banks of the River *Bachilio*, and another navigable water called *Retone* (*Erotenus* formerly.) The Territory of the City not more large than fruitfull, abounding with all store of fruits, and yeelding an excellent kind of wine, which from thence is vended unto *Venice*. The buildings of it for the most part of polished stone, whereof the fields adjoyning afford speciall Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an industrious people, making great quantitie of Silks, with which they do adorn themselves, and supply their Neighbours. 2. *Trevisо*, seated on the banks of the River *Silus*, which runneth thorough the middest of it, in the middle of a large and spacious plain, abounding even to admiration, with most excellent wheat, and all other necessaries. A City of no antient name, not mentioned by *Ptolomie*, or others of the old *Geographers*: but of sufficient note in the later times for being the residence or seat of those Provinciall Governors (*Marquesses* they are sometimes called) which the *Lombardian* Kings sent hither to defend their borders. Hence it gave name to all the Countrey, in *Latine* called *Marca Trevisiana*, or *Tarvisana* as some call it: taken by the *Venetians*, and lost again divers times; but was finally conquered A°. 1380. or thereabout, *Antonio Venieri* being Duke of *Venice*. 3. *Padua*, formerly called *Patavium*, built by *Antenor*, whose Tomb is still here to be shown. The University was established An°. 1220. famous for Physicians, who have here a Garden of *Simples*; and for the birth of *Livy* the Historian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Co-temporary, *L. Arruntius Stella*, and *C. Valerius Flaccus* two famous Poets celebrated by *Martial*: and in the later times of *Marsilius Patavinus* a *Minorite* Frier, who wrote so learnedly in behalf of the Emperor against the Pope, *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savanorola* the Physician, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the humanity of the men, and chastity of the women; which last so eminent and famous, that as *chast as one of Padua*, grew into a Proverb. Hereunto alludeth *Martial*, speaking of his lascivious writings.

Tu quoq; nequitias nostri lusus; libelli,
Uda puella leges, sis Patavina licet.
Young maids my wanton lines will long to see,
And read them o're, though *Patavines* they bee.

The City, after much vicissitude of fortune, fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compass one hundred and eighty miles, An°. 1400. *Michael Steno* then Duke; *Vicenza* being won about the same time also. 4. *Brescia*, the second City for bigness and beauty in all *Lombardy*. It is also the seat of an Arch-bishop, who is an Earl, a Marquess, and a Duke. Her Territories are in length one hundred, in bredth fifty miles, which the Citizens, together with their freedom, bought of *Otho* the *German* Emperor, but lost it to *Philip Maria Visconti*, Duke of *Millaine*, An°. 1421. to whom they yeelded upon certain conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they yeelded themselves unto the *Seigneury* of *Venice*, An°. 1434. *Francis Foscari* being then Duke; under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the air sound and good, the soyl exceeding plentifull of corn, wine and

Friuli. fruits; and having in it Mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great inriching of the people. It was antiently the chief of the *Cenomani*, who coming out of *Gaule*, drove the *Tuscans* hence, and seated themselves in their habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*. It is situate on a little River called *Garcia*, which runneth thorough the middle of it; and is said to contain at this time 50000. Inhabitants. 5. *Verona*, so called (as some conceit it) *quasi vera una*; or as others, *quasi Brenona*, because built by *Brennus*; both false and frivolous alike. It is situate on the banks of the River *Athesis*, and is counted the first City of the second rank of the Cities of *Italie*: proud in the birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet, and in an *Amphitheatre* (a remainder of the *Roman* greatness) able to contain 30000. persons. The Territories hereof are sixty five miles in length, forty miles in bredth; enriched with many *medicinall* herbs, (especially on Mount *Baldus*, an hill therein) where the Physicians go a Simpling. 6. *Bebriacum*, or *Bedriacum*, as some Writers call it, two dayes march from *Verona*, now a small Burrough named *Labinia*, and never of any great note when it was at the best. Remarkable in the *Roman* stories for the defeat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho*'s Army; and after by *Vespasians* forces unto those of *Vitellius*. By *Tacitus* called in that regard *duabus* Romanis *cladibus notum & infaustus Vicus*. 7. *Crema*, a Town of no great Antiquity, but situate in a wealthy soyl, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices: so strongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the Signeury of *Venice*, against the *Millanese*, on the borders of which State it standeth. First built about the year 970. by some remnants of the *Anthropomorphites*, who on the destruction of *Pernassius* (a Town of *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their heresie, and were permitted to build here. Honored in succeeding times with a See Episcopall; either the birth-place or preferment of *John Cremensis*, a *Roman* Cardinall, who being by Pope *Honorius* sent into *England*, An°. 1225. to diswade the Clergie-men from Mariage, and having in a *Convocation* of the Clergie called for that purpose, highly advanced the honour of the single life, and shewed the inconvenience and unfitness of Mariage in men preferred unto *Holy Orders*, was the night following (to the great discredit both of his cause and person) taken in Adulterie. 8. *Bergomo*, a right antient Town, but very well built, seated upon the side of an hill, and having a very large and beautifull Suburb, the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggy Mountains, the Spurs and excursions of the *Alpes*, but withall many rich and delightfull valleys intermingled with them. The people of this City and Countrey are said to speak the courcest language of any in *Italie*, but so have as fine wits as the best. Places of more inferiour note are, 1. *Este*, (*Ateste* in most *Latine* Writers) whence came the Family *D'Este*, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2. *Limacum*, a strong Garrison on the borders of *Mantua*; as 3. *Castel-France* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4. *Soravall*, of most remarkableness for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5. *Feltria*, which still preserves its old name of *Feltria*.

This Province being antiently a part of the *Cisalpine Gaule*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punick* war: and being conquered by the *Romans* did continue theirs, till first the *Gothes*, and afterwards the *Lombards* became Masters of it. Afterwards, in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardie*, it fell first unto the *French*, and after to the *German* Empire; from which by many mean conveyances, it came at last to *Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*, who bought the same of *Ulricus* the last Duke of *Carinthia*. Upon a reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarus* and *Rodolfus* of *Habspurg* (then Emperor of *Germany*) it was added (together with *Austria* it self) unto the Patrimony of that Family, sold by Duke *Leopold* the ninth, to the *Carraras*, then Lords of *Padua*; in the ruin of whose Estate and Family it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who still hold the same.

2. F R I U L I hath on the East the River *Formio*, which parteth it from *Histria*; on the West, *Marca Trevisana*, and a branch of the *Alpes*; on the North, the main body of the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the South, the *Adriatick* Sea, or Golf of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine*, (of which that of *Friuli* is derived) from *Julius Cæsar*, who conducting his Armies this way, built the Town so named; and from that march of his, the *Alpes* adjoyning, as 'tis thought, had the name of *Julia*. By some Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquilegiensis*, as appertaining for the most part, by the gift of the Emperors *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; and by the common people of *Venice* for the most part *Patria*, or the Countrey, because from these parts they derive their first Originall.

The Countrey is in a manner square, each side fifty miles, watred with the Rivers of 1. *Hydra*, heretofore of no small fame for the silver Mines. 2. *Tilaventum*, rising from the *Alpes*, and navigable towards the later end of its course. 3. *Natisco*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4. *Timavus*, mentioned in the first of the *Æneids*; which rising out of the *Alpes*, and running under ground for the space of 330. furlongs, breaketh out again; and being branched into nine Channells, falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieste*. By *Niger* it is now called *Lureina*; but by *Leander* named *Timavo*. The Soyl sufficiently fruitfull, except towards the *Alpes*, and yeelding a very pleasant Wine, which *Plinie* did prefer before any in *Italie*.

Towns herein of most note and consequence, 1 *Aquileia*, or *Aquilegia*, as some call it, made the

the *Metropolis* first of the Province of *Histria* and *Venetia*, by the Emperor *Antoninus*; as afterwards of the whole Dioceſe of *Italie* by the Weſtern Emperors. Honoured in that regard with the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, and of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant; tranſlated from *Millaine* to this Citie, as the Gate of *Italie*, by which the Barbarous Nations uſed to make their entrance: never ſo like to be ſhut out as by the power and preſence of ſo great an Officer. After his time, and on this occaſion, the Biſhop hereof had the title of Patriarch: And here the Patriachall See continued till the City was deſtroyed by *Attila* that furious *Hun*, and then removed to *Venice*, as the ſafer place, and ſetled in the Iſle of *Grada*; yet ſo, that the ſucceeding Biſhops of *Aquileia* (for they ſtaied at *Venice* onely till the times were quiet, &c.) do ſtill retain the dignity, and name of *Patriarchs*, as well as thoſe of *Venice* do, and with better reaſon. For beſides the honour which it had in being made the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, it had been formerly more honoured with the reſidence of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here kept his Court, whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a *ſecond Rome*; and of *Tiberius*, who here lived with *Julia* the daughter of the ſaid *Auguſtus*, before his comming to the Empire. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſituate on the River *Natiſco*, but not well inhabited at the preſent; partly becauſe of the ill Air, but principally by the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it ſelf. Moſt memorable in old ſtory for enduring that famous ſiege againſt *Maximinus* for the ſafety of the Empire of *Rome*, and her Emperours *Maximus* and *Balbinus*. In whoſe cauſe the Citizens hereof were ſo reſolutely faithfull, that they bereaved the women (willing to loſe that invaluable ornament of their ſex for the common good) of the hair of their heads, to make Bow-ſtrings withall. Nor did this pious conſtancie of theirs want an happy iſſue. For they beheld the Tyrant headleſs under their walls (ſlain by the hands of his own Souldiers) and ſaw the *Metropolis* of the World preſerved by their loyalty. And yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant; the Souldiers and people laying hands on his children alſo, and putting all unto the ſword. Of which crueltie being asked the reaſon, they returned this Anſwer, *that not a whelp was to be ſpared of ſo ill a litter*; none of the brood of ſuch a Cur; or in the language of the Author, *Peſſimi Canis, Catulus non eſt relinquendus.* 2 *Trieſte*, of old called *Tergeſtum*, from whence a ſpacious Bay adjoyning had antiently the name of *Sinus Tergeſtinus*, and is now called *Golfo di Trieſte*. The Bay repleniſhed principally with the water of the River *Timavus*, which with many ſtreams doth fall into it, and is therefore by the inhabitants of that Golf or Bay, called *Fons maris*, as *Polybius* in *Strabo* telleth us. The town of no greater Antiquitie than obſervation, mentioned by *Plinie* and ſome others of the Antient Writers, but not elſe conſiderable. 3 *Montfalcon*, famous for its medicinall Herbs. 4 *Porto Gruate*, an Haven-town, as the name importeth. 5 *Concordia*, in former times of no ſmall eſteem; but ſo demoliſhed by *Attila* the *Hunn*, that it is now nothing but a ruin. 6 *Utina*, or *Uden*, the faireſt and largeſt at this time of all the Province, containing about five miles in compaſs, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Honoured for a time with the Patriarchall See, removed hither from *Aquilegia*, at ſome ſiege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is ſtill the ordinary ſeat of the *Procurator* or Provinciall Governour, ſent from *Venice* hither. 7 *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer ſince than the year 1583, but held to be the beſt fortified of any in *Italie*. 8 *Cividad de Auſtria*, firſt built by *Julius Cæſar*, in ſome of his marches towards *Gaule*, by whom it was called *Julium*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Diſtrictus Forojulienſis*, as the *Latins* call it) came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by ſome Princes of the *Auſtrian* Family (on the borders of whoſe Eſtate it ſtandeth) it got this new name of *Cividad de Auſtria*. *Hiſtria.*

This Province antiently was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards* when they conquered *Italie*; the other three being *Turin*, *Benevent*, and *Spoleto*. The Family of the *Berengarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of ſpeciall fame, and two of them Competitors for the Kingdom of *Italie*. But this Family being ſuppreſſed by the Emperour *Otho*, he have a great part of the Country to the Church of *Aquileia*, to which almoſt all the reſt was added by the Emperour *Conrade*; yet ſo that there were divers petit Lords who had good eſtates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto ſome of the antient race. One of which named *Luitprandus*, envying to the *Venetians* their increaſe of Dominion, made war againſt them; which ended in the loſs of his Country, An° 1020, or thereabouts, ever ſince ſubject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquileia* (whoſe authority in this Country began to decline, in the riſing of the States of *Venice*) ſurrendring all his intereſs alſo to that powerfull *Signeurie*, as better able to defend it againſt all Pretenders.

HISTRIA is environed on the Eaſt, Weſt, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-Iland, or *Peninſula*, ſave where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North is parted from *Carinthia* with the *Alpes* of *Germany*. The Country very woody, and full of Quarries, affording materials to *Venice* both for ſhips and houſes; not comparable for fertility to the reſt of *Italie*; and of air ſo ſickly and unwholſome, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large immu nities. It is two hundred miles in compaſs, watered with the Rivers of *Formio*, which they now call *Riſano*; 2 *Nauportus*, called at this day *Quietus*; and 3 *Arſia*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Quevero*, called antiently *Sinus Flanaticus*.

The Adriatick Isles of Venice.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Cape de Istria*, called in *Plinies* time *Ægida*, and being afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Justine*, was called *Justinopolis*. But being taken and destroyed by the *Genoese*, and re-built again, it took the name of *Caput Histriæ*, or *Cape d' Istria*, became the principall of the Province, and a Bishops See. Of this See was *Vergerius* Bishop, about the time of *Luthers* first preaching in *Germany*; who with *Antonio de Dominis* Arch-Bishop of *Spalato*, were of most note of any of these parts of the world that fell off from the Church of *Rome* to the *Protestant* partie; and therefore shall be spoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place, and *Vergerius* here. Being a man of great industry and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany* against *Luther*. In which negotiation he behaved himself with such dexterity, and gave such content unto the Pope; that *Paul* the third, An. 1541 intended to have made him *Cardinal*, had not some who envyed him that honour, accused him of *Lutheranism*; to purge himself he began to write a Book, entituled, *Against the Apostata's of Germany*; in the pursute whereof, pondering *Luthers* reasons, he became of his opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Justinople*. He submitted himself and his cause to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the D. of *Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no-where finding protection, he retired unto the *Grisons*; and there preached, till *Christopher* Duke of *Wittenberg*, An. 1548, placed him in his University of *Tubing*, and there allowed him a sufficiency of maintenance. It was built by *Justinus* (as before) the Nephew of *Justinian* the Emperor, as a fortress against the incursions of the barbarous people. 2 *Pola*, built by the *Colchians* at their first comming hither; the name in their language importing as much as the place of banishment. It was after made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Pictas Julia*; but being first destroied by *Attila*, after by the *Genoese*, it recovered the old name again, and still continueth with the title of a See Episcopall. It abutteth upon *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Golf of *Quevero*. 3 *Pazenze*. 4 *Pluun*, 5 *Cita Nova*, all of them seated in the Midlands, and not much observable. 7 *Rovigno*, in a little Iland, and mounted on an high hill, not unfruitfull in Olives; beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended also by a very strong Castle. The Town but poor, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which distant not above twenty miles, inhabited for the most part by Mariners, and skilfull Pilots, hired by such ships as are bound for *Venice* to conduct them safely over the Bars of *Malamocco*. The adjoyning mountainous and somewhat wild; but those mountains covered on the outside with *Physicall* Simples, and yeelding many Quarries of most excellent Marble, which so adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

It is recorded that the *Histrians* were a people of *Colchis*, who being sent by King *Ætas* to pursue *Jason* and the *Argonants*, were driven up this Gulf; and either for fear of the Kings anger, or not daring to venture their weak vessel to so long a voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came, stayed in this Country. It was after that time called *Japidia*, from *Japis* an *Ætolian* who first planted here; and took the name of *Istria* from the *Istri*, a people on the banks of *Ister*, or *Danubius*, who made up a considerable part of this plantation. Siding with the *Ætolians* in their Wars against the *Romans*, and making many inrodes and excursions on them, they were invaded first by *Manlius*, without leave of the Senate; and him they charged with such a fury, that they beat him out of his Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all store of Provisions, they fell roundly to it; till *Manlius* having rallied his men again, charged them in their Cups, and killed 8000 in the place; their miserable King being so hotly pursued by the Victors, that he was fain to kill himself for fear of Captivity. This was in An° V. C. 575. *Cl. Pulcher* the next Consul perfected the conquest. *Sempronius* long time after that, An° sc. V.C. 625. reduced it to the form of a Province. So it continued till the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who joyning it to that of *Venice* (or *Venetia*) made out of both the eleventh and last Region of *Italie*. Under the *Romans* they continued whilst that Empire stood, and after the decay thereof regained their liberties, which they enjoyed till by Piracie molesting the *Venetians*, they lost many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Candiano*, An. 938; and the whole Country was made Tributary by the valour of the Duke *Henry Dondolo*, about the year 1190. After which many times rebelling, they were still re-conquered.

4 The fourth member of this estate with respect to *Italie*, are some *ILANDS* in the *Adriatick*, which being principally under the command of this Commonwealth, is commonly called the *Gulf of Venice*; a Golf extending in length 700 miles, in bredth 140 miles, in some places less; so called of *Adria* once a famous Haven-town (as before was sayd) at the mouth of *Eridanus* or *Po*. Concerning which we are to know, that though this Golf or Bay of the *Adriatick*, extended no farther than the Eastern parts of *Dalmatia*, where the sea beginneth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* sea was of greater length. Extended by the Antients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-West-ward till it meeteth with the *Tuscan* Seas, and South-wards till it come to the coast of *Africk*; insomuch as *Mare Lybicum*, or the sea of *Africk*, is by *Orosius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For speaking of the Province of *Tripolis* a Province of *Africk*, properly and especially so called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*, as he doth the Isle of *Crete* on the South side of it, with the *Libyan* Sea, *quod & Adriaticum vocant*, which they also call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are. The like might also be made evident out of other Authors both *Greek* and *Latin*: Which I note here,

because

becauſe Saint *Paul* being toſſed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is ſayd *Acts* 27. 27. and being after caſt on ſhore in the Iſle of *Malta*; occaſioned ſome to think this *Melite* or *Malta*, to be that Iland of *Dalmatia* which is now called *Melidar*; becauſe ſeated in the Bay or Golf of *Adria*: whereas the Text ſpeaks plainly of that Iſle of *Malta* which lyeth in the furtheſt parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the coaſts of *Africk*. But to return to this Golf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempeſtuous and unſafe, as appeareth by *Improbo iracundior Adria*, in *Horace*; the *Manix Adriaticum* in *Catullus*, and the *Ventoſi tumor Adriæ*, in *Seneca's Thyeſtes*. But when the Empreſs *Helena* had found the Croſs on which *CHRIST* ſuffered, ſhe cauſed one of the three Nails with which his body was faſtened to it, to be thrown of purpoſe into this Sea; ſince which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the life of Pope *Silveſter* (and cites Saint *Ambroſe* for his Author) it hath been very calm and quiet; the ſecond nail being made into a Bridle for her ſonne *Conſtantines* horſe, and a Creſt for his Helmet of the third. But not to truſt too much to the truth of this miracle, certain it is that the *Venetiane* are Lords of it, by reaſon of their Navall power, and that it is every year eſpouſed to the Duke of *Venice*, by the ſolemn caſting in of a Wedding-Ring; and every year Baptiſed on *Epiphany* day, by the Biſhop of *Zant*. When this laſt ceremony took beginning, I am yet to ſeek. But for the firſt, which is performed with a great deal of ſtate, every *Holy-Thurſday*, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos* being rowed in the *Bucentaure* (which is a rich and ſtately Gallie made for ſuch ſolemnities, and capable of 200 perſons, whence it had the name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the third, who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, fled unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook, *Sebaſtian Cyani* being then Duke: in proſecution of whoſe quarrell, the *Venetians* encountered *Otho* the Emperours ſonne, vanquiſhed him, and reſtored the Pope. The Duke returning back in triumph with his Royall priſoner, was thus ſaluted by the Pope. *Cyani, take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremonie which on this day* (the Aſcenſion day) *ſhall be yearly obſerved, both by thee and thy ſucceſſors, that ſo poſteritie may know that you have purchaſed the dominion thereof by your valour, and made it ſubject to you, as a Wife to her Husband.*

The Adriatick Iſles of Venice.

The principall Ilands of this Sea, lie on the other ſide thereof, on the coaſt of *Dalmatia*. Some few there are upon this ſide (but thoſe, as well as theſe under the command of this *Signeurie*) neither great nor famous. Of theſe the chief are, 1 *MALAMOCCO*, in Latin *Methaucum*, now only conſiderable for the Haven which is large and deep; made by the influx of *Medacus* before mentioned; in which the greater ſhips do ride till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to croſs the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Dukes Palace, and an Epiſcopall See; but the Dukes Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Epiſcopall See to the Iland of *Chioggia*, it is now inhabited for the moſt part by none but Sea-men. 2 *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the ſame name, honoured with a Biſhops See; but by reaſon of the ill air not very well peopled. 3 *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three miles in compaſs, and but one from *Venice*, of a ſound air, and very well inhabited, the people whereof make the beſt *Venice* Glaſſes, ſo much uſed in all parts. 4 *CHIOGGIA*, called in Latin *Foſſa Clodia*; diſtant from *Venice* 25 miles; to which it ſerveth inſtead of a Bul wark. There is a town in it of the ſame name, to which the Biſhops See was removed from *Malamocco*, An. 1103, and near to which are many Salt-pits which yeeld great gain unto the people, and as much unto the Commonwealth. Near to this Iland the *Genoeſe* ſo diſcomfited the *Venetians* in a fight at ſea, that they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoeſe* being grown too inſolent on their good ſucceſs, made the City deſperate; who putting all to hazard fell again upon them, beat them, purſued them home, and there utterly cruſhed them, as we ſhall tell you more at large, when we come to *Genoa*.

Betwixt theſe Ilands and the main land of *Friuli*, lieth a ſhoal of little Iſlets; in and amongſt which ſtandeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Commonwealth, and the glory of *Italie*. theſe Iſlets 72 in number, but joyned together by many Bridges; of which here are ſayd to be 4000 at leaſt, beſides 10000 boats for paſſage from one Iſle to the other. The compaſs of the whole aggregate body ſayd to be eight miles, the buildings fair, and generally adorned with glas windows; an Ornament not common in *Italie*, where the windows for the moſt part are made with paper to let in the light, and that paper oyled all over to keep out the wet. The number of the Inhabitants eſtimated at 300000 thouſand. By the ſituation one would think that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old *Latin* ſignifieth the ſeething or frothing of the ſea. *VENETIA maris exæſtuatio eſt quæ ad Littus veniat*, ſaith the old *Gloſſarie* upon *Iſidore*, out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was ſo called from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*, who to avoyd the fury of the barbarous *Hunnes* then threatning *Italie*, abandoned the main land, and built this City in the bogs and mariſhes of the ſea adjoyning. And that it might afford them the greater afetle; they not onely built in the moſt inward part of the *Adriatick* ſea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*, but in the midſt of many Lakes of ſalt-water, extending thirty miles in compaſs; and having on the Eaſt the ſaid *Adriatick* ſea for the length of 550 miles; betwixt which and the ſayd Lakes there is a bank or cauſey which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by nature to defend the Ilands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the ſea. A Cauſey of 35 miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in ſeven places only, which ſerve as well to keep the lakes always full of water, as for the

Venice. passage of Ships and Barks of ſmaller burden; the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor on the South ſide of the City, near to a place called *Malamocco*, and the Caſtles of *Lio*, which are very well fortified; and there muſt remain till they are brought in by skilfull Pilots, who know the paſſages, which, by reaſon of the ſhifting of the ſands, change very often. On the Weſt and North ſides it is compaſſed with very deep *Mariſhes*, about five miles diſtant from the land; and on the South with many Ilands, in which are ſeverall Churches and Monaſteries, like ſo many Forts which lie between it and thoſe parts of *Italie* which are not under the obedience of the Commonwealth. So that it is impoſſible to be taken but by an Army which can ſtretch 150 miles in compaſs. It is built, as before is ſayd, on 72 Ilands, the principall of which are, 1 *Heraclea*, the firſt ſeat of the Duke of *Venice*, from thence removed to *Malamocco*, and at laſt to *Rialto*; more famous at this time for being a Biſhops See, than the number of Citizens. 2 *Grado*, to which the Patriarchall See of *Aquileia* was removed by *Pelagius* the ſecond, about the year 580, making it thereby the Metropolitan of *Friuli*, or the Country of *Venice*; but from thence it hath been ſince removed to another of theſe Ilands called *Caſtello Olindo*. 3 *Rialto*, which is of moſt eſteem and reputation, ſo called *quaſi Rivo alto*, becauſe the Mariſhes are there deeper than in other places; or *quaſi Ripa alta*, becauſe it lay higher above the waters, than the other Ilands. For which reaſons that Iland getting reputation above the reſt, moſt of the Gentlemen ſetled their dwellings in the ſame, and drew thither in the end the Dukes Palace alſo; inſomuch that in ſome antient writings the whole City hath been called *Rialto*; many of the old *Records* being dated in ſuch and ſuch a year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increaſe in numbers, ſo were they fain to ſpread themſelves from one Iſle to another, till in the end they built on all the Ilands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joyned by Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the paſſage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 paces, and ſome fortie in bredth; adorned on both ſides with ſtately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with an incredible number of Boats called *Gondolos*, very neatly built, and veiled over with cloth, ſo that the Paſſengers may go unſeen and unknown, without the moleſtation of ſun, wind, or rain. For publique buildings it hath in it 70 Pariſh Churches, to each of which belongeth a Market-place and a Well; 31 Cloyſters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, beſides Chappels and Almeſ-houſes.

The principall Church of this City is that of S. *Mark*, the Patron of their Commonwealth, whoſe body they report to have been brought hither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed herein. Affirmed by ſome to be the richeſt and goodlieſt Church in all the World. The building of *Moſaick* work, of which work they boaſt themſelves to have been the Authors. A kind of work by the *Grecians* called Λιθόστρωτα, and by the *Latin* Writers *Muſiva*, *Muſica*, and *Muſaica*; wrought out of ſtones or metals of divers colours, unto the ſhape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beaſts, and other fancies of the Workman, yet done with ſuch exactneſs of skill and judgement, that it ſeemeth to be all one ſtone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable work both within and without, compacted of moſt rare peeces of Marble, Porphyrie, and a rich ſtone which the *Lapidaries* called *Ophitis*, becauſe it is ſpeckled like a ſnake; adorned on the outſide with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyrie near the door; beſides 600 Marble pillars of a leſſer ſize, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magiſtrates and others of the principall Citizens, behold ſuch Shews as are preſented in the Market place adjoyning to it. The Church in length not above 200 foot of *Venice* meaſure, nor above 50 in bredth; the roof thereof being of an *Orbicular* form, lieth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no windows in all the Church; as commonly the Churches in *Italie* are exceeding dark, either to ſtrike in the ſpectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles ſhew the better. And for the inſide of the Church, the riches of it are ſo great, the Images ſo glorious, the furniture of the Altars ſo above compariſon, that all the treaſures of the State may ſeem to be amaſſed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is ſtill unfiniſhed, and as ſome think, is kept unfiniſhed on purpoſe, partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the work, the benefit of whoſe liberality may be employed unto the uſe of the publick Treaſury; and partly leſt the Revenues which are given already ſhould be reſumed by the Heirs of the deceaſed, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the ſumptuouſneſs and beauty of the Church it ſelf.

Of other of the publick buildings, the Counſell-houſe, the Ducall Palace, Monaſteries, Churches, and the like, though ſtately and magnificent ſtructures, I forbear to ſpeak. Nor ſhall I here ſay any thing of their private houſes, ſo large and beautified, that here are ſaid to be no fewer than 200 (moſt of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the beſt King in Chriſtendom. All I ſhall adde, and ſo leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Arſenall*, and publick *Magazine*. In the firſt of which they have in readineſs 200 Gallies, with rooms for Cables, Maſts, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunition of all ſorts; able thereby to ſet out an Navy to the Sea on the ſhorteſt warning. And in the other it is ſaid, that they have Arms ſufficient for 100000 Souldiers of all ſorts; amongſt which are affirmed to be a thouſand Coats of plate, garniſhed with gold, and covered with velvet, fit for the uſe and wearing of the greateſt Princes. But of their power and forces both by Sea and Land, we ſhall ſpeak more ſhortly.

Proceed we now unto their ſtory. And if we look upon them in their firſt originall, we ſhall find them to have been a people of *Paphlagonia* (a Province of *Aſia* the *leſſer*) called the *Heneti*; who

who aiding *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his ten years wars againſt the *Greeks*, where they loſt their King called *Philamenes* (or *Pterilamenes*, as ſome call him) choſe rather to ſeek out new dwellings than return with ſhame unto their old. Upon this reſolution they joyn themſelves to *Antenor*, who with ſome remnant of the *Trojans* had the ſame deſign; and ſayling as the wind and ſea conducted them, arrived at laſt in thoſe parts of *Italie* now called *Friuli*. So witneſſeth the Poet, ſaying, *Venice.*

Antenor *potuit, mediis illapſus* Achivis
Illyricos *penetrare Sinus*, atque intima tutus
Regna Liburnorum, *& fontes ſuperare* Timavi.
Antenor through the *Greeks* could force his way,
And ſafely piercing the *Illyrian* Bay,
Croſs the *Liburnian* Realms, and conquer all
From fierce *Timavos* Fountain to his fall.

Here landing they ſubdued the *Euganei* (who before inhabited this tract) and poſſeſſed their dwellings: the name of *Heneti* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till ſubdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Ciſalpina*; agreeably to the name of the *Veneti*, an old *Gallick* Nation, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Britain*. When thoſe *Galls* were vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, the name and nation of theſe *Veneti* was ſo conſiderable, that their Territory had the name of *Venetia*; and together with *Hiſtria*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and ſafety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible noiſe of the coming of *Attila* and the *Hunnes*, occaſioned many of the principall men, with their ſeverall Retinues, to betake themſelves to the Ilands, and inacceſſible Mariſhes of the *Adriatick*; where they built this City, and called it *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation, An° 454. Not much inceaſed in power or greatneſs at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom; though ſo conſiderable at that time, that in the diviſion of *Italie* made by *Charles* the Great, betwixt himſelf, the Popes, and the Eaſtern Emperors; the *Venetians* were left at liberty as a Free-Eſtate. After which, making uſe of their ſituation, they grew not only rich in trade, but ſtrong in ſhipping; and thereby did good ſervice to the Weſtern Princes, in their wars againſt the Turks in the *Holy Land*. And they ſerved themſelves well by it too: getting in one Expedition onely (that namely in which the Empire of *Conſtantinople* was made a prey unto the *Latines*, An°. 1200.) all the Ilands which they have at the preſent, in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, many in thoſe Seas which they have loſt, and not a few good Towns in *Peloponneſus*, ſince conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoeſe* for the Soveraignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received ſo great a blow at the navall battell near *Chioggia*, (ſpoken of before) that they had utterly loſt all, if the Enemy could have uſed his fortune with moderation. But being recovered of that blow, after many various ſucceſſes and events of War, they got the better of them, and made them quiet; by means whereof, being Lords *Paramont* at Sea, they next caſt their eyes on the main land of *Italie*, which now they were at more leiſure to look after, than they had been formerly. The *Hiſtrians* had before infeſted them with Piracy, and were puniſhed for it in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loſs of many of their Towns; but in the year 1390, the whole Country is brought under the command of this Commonwealth. *Padua* with a great part of *Trevigiana* then appendant on it, they extorted from the noble family of the *Carrari*, *An.* 1400. The City of *Vincentia* they poſſeſſed themſelves of in the ſame year alſo; and not long after fully perfected their Conqueſt of *Hiſtria*, with the revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they moſt improved their eſtate was by a conſtant watching of their opportunities, taking advantage of the factions and fractions amongſt their neighbours, and working their own greatneſs out of others ruins. By means whereof they came poſſeſſed of many places of right belonging to the Empire and Church of *Rome*, as alſo of ſome Townes pertaining to the Dutchy of *Millaine*, and four of the beſt Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving ayd to any of their diſtreſſed neighbours without the mortgage or direct ſale of ſome peece or other. Which ſordid kind of merchandizing drew all the Princes of thoſe parts to make war upon them; every one to recover by ſtrong hand what the *Venetian* had extorted from them in their neceſſity. And the confederates thrived ſo well, that *Maximilian* the Emperor recovered to the Empire the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vincentia*, *Verona*, *Trieſt*, *Friuli*, and whatſoever elſe he layd clame unto; the Popes in right of the Church regained *Ravenna*, *Remini* (or *Ariminum*) and *Faventia*; *Lewis* the 12 of *France*, in right of the Dutchy of *Millaine*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Cremona*, *Brixia*: the King of *Spain* in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Trano*, *Barlette*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Rovigo*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the town of *Aſula*. So that the *Venetians* being (like the Jay) ſtripped of all their feathers, were fain to quit the firm land, and betake themſelves unto the Iſles and Mariſhes of their City; having not one foot of all their whole Dominion left them but their Seas and Ilands. And yet in very little time, partly by working on the Pope, to whom they quitted all their intereſt in the Towns aforeſayd, and partly by dividing the reſt of the confederates from one another, they recovered all that they had loſt in a little time, except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The

Venice. The Government is *Ariſtocraticall*, managed only by the principall men of all the City, both for birth and breeding: the common-people having no authority in affairs of State. Their chief Officers at the firſt were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that confuſion which a multitude of Governors carrieth for the moſt part with it, in the year 709. they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their Duke. Under theſe Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now injoy: The authority of which *Dukes* was at firſt more abſolute, but by degrees reſtrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beholdeth him in his Robes, his gravity and outward parts, and the reſpect given him by the people, would think no Prince could be more abſolute and ſupreme. But look upon him in the exerciſe and powers of Government, and he is nothing in the wold but an empty Title. For notwithſtanding that he injoyeth ſo great a dignity, yet hath he a full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the preſence of his *Counſellors* (being ſix in number) who always ſit with him, and diſpatch affairs both publick and private; as namely, giving audience to Ambaſſadors from Forrain States, receiving Letters from their own Miniſters, granting of Privileges, and the like; in which the *Duke* can do juſt nothing, if four (at leaſt) of theſe *Counſellors* be not preſent with him. And yet theſe *Counſellors* without him may conclude of any thing. Nay he is ſo reſtrained in all things to the power of the *Senate*, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their conſent; and by them is preſcribed an Order in his own Apparell. So that he is but little better than a Priſoner, when within the City, and a Traytor if he ſtir abroad: at the beſt but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treaſury, no more than 40000. *Ducats* a yeer towards his expence and entertainment. As for the *Soveraignty* of the State, that reſides wholly in the *Senate*; but repreſentatively in the *Duke*, the ſix *Counſellers*, and the three Heads or Preſidents of the Forty; which are thoſe Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The *Senate* or *Great Counſell*, conſiſts of all the Gentlemen of *Venice* above five and twenty years of age, which may amount unto the number of 2500. though ſeldom half that number do aſſemble at once, by reaſon of their ſeverall imployments in affairs of the Common-wealth in other places: who uſually do meet together every Sunday morning, and on the mornings of other *Feſtivalls*, where they chooſe Magiſtrates, and diſtribute Governments, and order matters of the State. But becauſe ſuch great Bodies move but ſlowly, and are not very capable of truſt and ſecrecie, they parcell this great Counſell into leſſer Members, whereof the principall are the *Pregadi*, and the *Counſell of Ten*. That of the *Pregadi* conſiſteth of 120. in which they treat of, and determine matters of the greateſt importance, and therein conclude commonly of ſuch principall points as formerly have been propoſed and treated of in the great Aſſembly: And in this Counſell, beſides the 120. before mentioned, the *Duke*, the ſix Counſellors, and the Counſell of Ten, and all ſuch as have born any publick Office, have their voyce or ſuffrage. This is that Counſell which properly and more ſpecially is called the *Senate*; in which nothing is to be concluded or paſſed into Acts, except four of the ſix *Counſellors* be preſent at them, and that ſixty at the leaſt of the whole number give their ſuffrage to it. Then for the *Counſell of Ten*, their power is univerſall, over all affairs, ſuch as the other Counſels may not meddle with, as to conclude of war, or peace, to put in execution what they think moſt neceſſary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment: which if they were firſt treated of in the Generall Counſell or Aſſembly, and after in that of the *Pregadi*, as they ought to be in common courſe, could not be poſſibly managed with ſuch ſpeed and ſecrecie, as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Counſell, with the *Prince*, and his ſix Aſſiſtants, the *Supreme Majeſty* of the State doth reſide eſpecially. Some other Officers there are, and thoſe of great authority and reputation, as the *Procurators* of S. *Mark*, which have the charge of the publick Treaſures; and the *Avogadori*, or *Tribunes* (as one might call them) of the people, being three in all, one of which muſt be always preſent in all conſultations, leſt any thing ſhould paſs to the prejudice and infringement of the Privileges of the common-people.

For the whole body of the City conſiſteth either of the *Gentlemen*, or of Artificers and Commons. Theſe laſt are the deſcendants and progeny of ſuch as came to ſettle here when the State was fixed, invited to dwell here, and to follow their occupations, by ſeverall Privileges and Immunities which were offered to them, and theſe they neither admit into any of their Counſells, nor into any of the Offices of Truſt and Power, except it be two; that namely of the Chancellor, and the principall Secretaries, which pertain only to the people. The other are the iſſue or deſcendants of thoſe who firſt laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth: and theſe they have in ſuch reſpect, and ſo high eſteem, that to make any Stranger (how great and eminent ſoever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greateſt honour they can beſtow, and not beſtowed but upon the beſt deſerver. *Henry* the 3d. of *France* taking this City in his way out of *Poland*, thought himſelf graced with this attribute, which they are very dainty and ſparing of, it being the higheſt honour which they vouchſafe to impart to ſuch Commanders of their own, and Ambaſſadors of other Princes, as have well deſerved it. And that this *honour* may be kept up to the very height, and their *Nobility* not grow too cheap, by being too numerous, neither the younger ſonnes of theſe *Gentlemen* within the City, or of the *Noblemen* in

in the Countrey, are permitted to marry. But otherwiſe they ſuffer them to ſatisfie their luſts with too much impunity, and for their ſakes allow of *Stews*, as an evill not to be voided on the former grounds. *Venice.*

Now as *Otho* in *Tacitus* ſaid to the *Pretorian* Souldiers, *Princeps è Senatu oritur, Senatus è vobis*: ſo out of theſe Gentlemen are choſen the Senators, out of them the *Duke*. His election by *Contarenus* is deſcribed in this manner. In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty years of age are aſſembled. So many as meet, caſt their names into a pot; and in another, are juſt ſo many balls; of which thirty only are gilt. Then a child draweth for each, till the thirty gilt ones be drawn; for which thirty the child draweth again the ſecond time out of another pot that hath only nine gilt balls. The nine ſo drawn, nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again ſelected by the ſame kind of lot. Theſe twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by lot ſet apart. Theſe nine nominate five and forty, who are by lot again reduced unto eleven. Theſe eleven chooſe forty one of the beſt and chiefeſt of the *Senators*, who after an oath taken ſeverally, to chooſe whom they judge worthieſt, write in a ſcroll every one whom he beſt liketh. The ſcrolls are mingled together, and then drawn; the fitneſs of the perſons then drawn is diſcuſſed, and he that hath moſt voyces above five and twenty, is the man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudg with due ſolemnities to be created their *Duke*. By the like kind of Lottery do they chooſe Gentlemen into the Senate, and make publick Officers, inſomuch that *Contarenus*, who hath committed unto writing theſe publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not ſay how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato*'s Platform.

But whether this be ſo or not, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus conſtituted, and modelled, as before is ſaid, hath laſted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the World either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it onely preſerved it ſelf in the ſame condition, but may moſt juſtly be accompted one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks of *Chriſtendom* againſt the incroachments of the *Turks*: the wars whereof hath procured peace, and the peace thereof procured plenty, to the reſt of *Europe*. Inſomuch, that it may well be ſaid, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italie* the Face of *Europe*; ſo *Venice* is the Eye of *Italie*; the faireſt, ſtrongeſt, and moſt active part in that powerfull Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome* by ſome *Pythagoricall* tranſmigration had paſſed into the body of this powerfull State, and animated it with all the vertues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and conſtant temper. From ſo baſe and abject a beginning is this City grown to be one of the beſt *Supporter* of the *Arms* of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this State, they tolerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themſelves profeſs no other than that of the Church of *Rome*, yet with ſuch caution and reſpect to their own authority, that they ſuffer not the Clergie to injoy thoſe privileges, which they poſſeſs in other Countreys to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the quarrell betwixt them and Pope *Paul* the fift, in which the Signeury ſtood ſtiffly to their antient Rights, and cauſed Maſs to be duly ſaid, notwithſtanding all their Churches were under the Interdict; baniſhed the *Jeſuits* for ever out of their Dominions, for ſtickling too buſily in behalf of the Pope; and in the end prevailed ſo far by their conſtant courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the cauſe, and reconcile them to the Church without any *ſubmiſſion*. A notable example to all Chriſtian Princes, how to behave themſelves towards thoſe of *Rome*, who are not to be gained upon, but by ſuch reſiſtances. So eaſie a thing it is for men of conſtancy and courage to ſhake off that yoak, which Papall Tyranny and Superſtition hath impoſed upon them.

In managing their wars they antiently obſerved two Rules, which much conduced to the inlargement and ſecurity of their Common-wealth. The firſt was the exempting of their own *Citizens* from the wars (not out of jealouſie, but care of their preſervation) unleſs compelled to the contrary by extreme neceſſity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the *Provinciall* Subject, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof, they did not only keep their City in the ſame condition, able at any time, and at all times, to give Law to the reſt of their Dominions: but waſted the hot and boyling ſpirit of their Subjects in the Wars abroad, which otherwiſe might have made too much work at home. The other was, the entertaining of ſome neighbouring Prince to be the Generall of their forces, whom in the concluſion of the ſervice they diſmiſſed with honor and reward: And by this courſe they avoided faction, and prevented ſervitude: Either, or both of which might have hapned by imploying any of their own great ones in the chief command; who (after the example of *Julius Cæſar* in the ſtate of *Rome*) having a ſtrong party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himſelf their Prince. But this was only in the Conduct of their wars in *Italie*, and in ſuch times when the State was not ſo well ballanced, as it hath been ſince.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea or Land. Their Land-forces which they have in continuall pay for defence of their Dominion conſiſt of 28000. Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers inrolled and paid; and beſides thoſe they have a choyce band of 4000. Muſquetiers: for exerciſing of which they keep yeerly Muſters, as well to improve them in experience, as to proportion them ſome gratuities, according to their well-deſervings. And as for *Horſe*, they maintain conſtantly 6000. men at Arms, well appointed and paid, the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italie*. And yet beſides this conſtant

and

Venice. and ordinary eſtabliſhment, they are able to bring great Forces into the field, as appeareth by their Army againſt *Lewis* the twelfth, in which, without diſfurniſhing any of their Forts and Garriſons, they had 2000. men of Arms, 3000. light Horſe, 30000. Foot, moſt of their own naturall Subjects, ſaving that they were interlined with ſome bands of *Switzers*, to which people they give yeerly penſions, to be aſſured of their aid upon all occaſions. Then for the *Sea-forces*, beſides that they keep fifty Galleys in continuall action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no leſs then 200. more laid up in the *Arſevall*, with all manner of tackling and ammunition appertaining to them, they have 10000. men inrolled to ſerve at the *Oar*, and may raiſe as many as they pleaſe for thoſe kind of ſervices, out of thoſe parts of *Sclavonia*, which are ſubject to them. But the great evidence of the power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet ſet out againſt the *Grand Signeur* for the War of *Cyprus*, An. 1570. in which they manned out one great Gallioun, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall Ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of leſſer burden, being in all one hundred and eighty ſeven ſail, fit for preſent ſervice. To give the totall ſum in brief, they held a war by Sea and Land for ſeven yeers together againſt all the Princes of *Chriſtendome* (excepting *England*) in all which time they neither wanted men nor money; and in the end were the leaſt loſers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture alſo at the greatneſs of the publick Treaſurie, and of the yeerly income which ſupplies the ſame. For though it be conceived that their ordinary ſtanding Revenue be but four millions of *Ducats* yeerly (which yet is more than any Chriſtian Prince can boaſt of, except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other ways to advance their Treaſury, by laying new Impoſts on Commodities, as they ſee occaſion; Which needs muſt riſe to vaſt and moſt conſiderable ſums in a City of the greateſt Traffick of any in *Europe*, and perhaps in all the world beſides. And yet beſides ſuch Cuſtoms and Impoſts as they lay on Merchandize, there is nothing which the people do eat or drink, for which they pay not ſomething to the publick Treaſury: over and above which, the pooreſt Labourer in the whole *Signeury* payeth his *Poll-money alſo*. Inſomuch, that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Chriſtians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venetians*. Without ſuch helps, (though heavy and burdenſom to the Subject) they could not poſſibly have ſpent twelve millions in the war againſt *Selimus* the ſecond, and as many a little before that, in the enterprize of *Ferrara*, and the war raiſed againſt them by the League of *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembred.

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Soveraign Princes*, nor ſuch as do ſucceed each other in the right of inheritance: yet being they are always men of moſt eminent note, and that in their names all the buſineſs of State is acted, and all writings dated; I will ſubjoyn a Catalogue of them to this preſent time; to the end that meeting with their names in the courſe of *Hiſtorie*, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The Dukes of *Venice*.

697	1	*Paulus Anafeſtus*	20	1003	28	*Otho Urſeola*	
718	2	*Marcel Tegalian*	10	1020	29	*Petro Barbolani*	
727	3	*Hippateus Urſus*	11	1021	30	*Dominico Flabenico*	
		An Interregnum of ſix yeers.		1031	31	*Dominico Contareni*	
742	4	*Theodatus Hippateus.*		1059	32	*Dominico Silvie.*	
755	5	*Galla of Malamocco.*		1072	33	*Vitalis Falerius*	
756	6	*Dominico Monegarta.*		1084	34	*Vitalis Michaeli*	
760	7	*Maurice Galbata.*		1090	35	*Ordelaſius Falerius*	
783	8	*John Galbata.*		1105	36	*Dominico Michaeli*	
799	9	*Obelerius.*		1118	37	*Petrus Polanus*	
804	10	*Angelus Partitiatius*		1136	38	*Dominico Moroſini*	
822	11	*Juſtinian Partitiatius*		1143	39	*Vitalis Michaeli* II.	
824	12	*John Partitiarius*		1160	40	*Sebaſtian Ziani*	
832	13	*Petro Tradonico*		1165	41	*Auria Maripiere*	
859	14	*Urſus Partitiarius*		1179	42	*Henrico Dondolo*	
876	15	*John Partitiarius*		1193	43	*Petro Ziani*	
881	16	*Petro Candiano*		1216	44	*Jacobo Tepuli*	
	17	*Dominico Tribuno*		1236	45	*Marino Moroſini*	
	18	*Petro Tribuno*		1240	46	*Renieri Zeno*	
905	19	*Urſus Badoarius*		1256	47	*Lorenzo Tepuli*	
925	20	*Petro Candiano* II.		1263	48	*Jacobo Contareni*	
932	21	*Petro Badoario.*		1267	49	*Dondolo*	
935	22	*Petro Candiano* III.		1276	50	*Petro Gradenico.*	
950	23	*Petro Candiano* IV.		1298	51	*Marino Georgio*	
970	24	*Petro Urſeola*		1299	52	*John Sourance*	
972	35	*Vital. Candiano*		1315	53	*Franciſco Dandolo*	
973	26	*Tribuno Meme.*		1326	54	*Barthol. Gradonico*	
985	27	*Petro Urſeola* II.		1330	55	*Andrea Dandolo*	
1342	56	*Marinus Falerius*					
	57	*John Gradonico*					
1343	58	*John Dauphin*					
1348	59	*Lorenzo Celſo*					
1352	60	*Marco Cornaro*					
1355	61	*Andrea Contarene*					
1371	62	*Michael Moroſini*					
	63	*Antonio Venieri*					
1389	64	*Michael Steno*					
1402	65	*Thomazo Mocenico*					
1412	66	*Franciſco Foſcari*					
1447	67	*Paſchal Malipiere*					
1452	68	*Chriſtophoro Moro*					
1461	69	*Nicolao Troni*					
1463	70	*Nicolao Marcelli*					
1464	71	*Petro Mocenico*					
1465	72	*Andrea Vendramine*					
1467	73	*John Mocenico*					
1474	74	*Marco Barbadico*					
	75	*Auguſtino Barbadico*					
1489	76	*Leonardo Loredani*					
1509	77	*Antonio Grimani*					
1511	78	*Andrea Gritti*					
1527	79	*Petro Lande*					
1533	80	*Franciſco Donati*					
1540	81	*Antonio Treviſani*					
1541	82	*Franciſco Vivieri*					
1543	83	*Lorenzo Prioli*					

1547	84	*Hierome Prioli*	1586	89	*Paschal Cicogne*	
1555	85	*Petro Loredani*	1596	90	*Marino Grimani*	
1560	86	*Lewis Mocenico*	1606	91	*Leonardo Donati*	
1567	87	*Sebastian Venieri*	1612	92	*Antonio Memmo*	
1578	88	*Nicola da Ponte*	1615	93	*Giovanni Bembo*	
1618	94	*Nicolao Donato*				
1618	95	*Antonio Priuli*				
1623	96	*Francisco Contareno*				
	97	*Giovanni Correlio*				
	98	*Francisco Erizzo* now living *An.* 1648.				

The principall Orders of *Knighthood* in this *Republick* are, 1. Of S. *Mark*, who is the Patron of this City, instituted in the yeer 1330. and renewed again (being grown somewhat out of use) An. 1562. The honor is commonly bestowed on the person present, sometimes by Letters Patents on a party absent, as lately upon *Daniel Heinsius*, one of great eminence for learning in the *Netherlands*. The person chosen is to be of noble blood, at the least a Gentleman, the Wrod or Motto of the Order, is *Pax tibi Marce*.

2. *Of the glorious Virgin*, first instituted by *Bartholmew* of *Vincentia*, An°. 1222. Their charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italie*. It was allowed of by Pope *Urban* the fourth, An°. 1262. The Arms of this Order, are a purple Cross between certain Stars. The habite a white Surcote over a Russet Cloke, and seems to be as well a Religious, as a Military Institution, like to the *Spanish* Orders, and that of *Malta*.

The Armes of the Republick are *Gules*, two Keys in *Saltire Or*, stringed *Azure*: which seem to have been given them for some notable service done unto the Church.

There are in the Provinces of this Common-wealth, before described,
Patriarchs 2. Bishops 16.

The Dukedom of FLORENCE,
OR OF
TUSCANIE.

HAving thus run along the Coast of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church unto the *Alpes*, which divide *Italie* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuscan* or *Lower Sea*, from the said *Lands of the Church*, to that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italie* from *France*. And in the first place we meet with the Dukedom of *Florence*, or the Estate of the *great Duke of Tuscany*; divided on the East from S. *Peters Patrimony*, by the River *Pisco*; on the West, from the Common-wealth of *Genua*, by the River *Macra*, and the strong Fort of *Sarezana*; on the North, from *Rannadiola* and *Marca Anconitana*, by the *Apennine* hills; and on the South side it is bounded with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

It taketh up the greatest and goodliest part of all that which antiently was called *Tuscany*, from the *Greek* word θύειν, which signifieth to sacrifise; of which act of Religious Worship, or rather of some superstitious Ceremonies appertaining to it, they are conceived to be the Authors. And to say truth, they were much given to *Soth-sayings*, and Divinations, and such like vanities of *Gentilism*: *Tages*, that *Merlin* of the old World first appearing here, from whom they learned the greatest part of their Superstitions. So that thisname was adventitious and accidentall. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenia*, from *Tyrrhenus* the sonne of *Atys* King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in these parts about the time that *Gedeon* judged the Tribes of *Israel*. But these names signified the same both Country and people, though in divers Langues, and with respect to different Originations; the name of *Tyrrheni* and *Tyrrhenia*, being most used by the *Greeks*, as that of *Tusci* and *Tuscia*, by their neighbours of *Rome*, who also called the people *Hetrusci*, and the Country *Hetruria*, from a particular Province of it which was so entituled. Antiently it extended as far Eastward as the banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the present; and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation, who not content to be restrained within the *Apennine* and the *Tiber*, wasted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation; and built twelve Cities on the other side of the Mountains; that is to say, *Adria*, *Verona*, *Vincentia*, *Treno*, *Bergamo*, *Mantua*, *Como*, *Vercellæ*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*; all of eteem and reputation to this very day. They were the first Nation that carried an *Offensive* War to the gates of *Rome*, when they gave ayd to the *Tarquins* under King *Porsenna*; and held it out on the *Defensive* as long as any: No people in all *Italie* standing more stiffly in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Falisci*, and *Veientes*, two *Hetrurian* Tribes. But nothing could withstand the fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations of them were brought under by *Tarquinius Priscus*, who from hence

Tuſcanie. hence brought to *Rome* the *Faſces* and Triumphall Ornaments, and other embelliſhments of State: the *Veii* and *Faliſci*, by the Sword of *Camillus*; the Conqueſt perfected by the conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Fulv. Centumalus* A. V. C. 455. So the *Tuſcans* were ſubdued at laſt, after they had been governed by their own Kings 1132 yeares; that is to ſay, from *Tarchon Priſcus* their firſt King, *An. M.* 2550. to *Tarquinius Ceſo* their laſt King, *A M.* 3668.

The chief Towns of it in thoſe times were 1 *Veii*, and 2 *Perufia*, ſpoken of before. 3 *Feſula*, then of very great fame, now a poor village hard by *Florence*. 4 *Agyllina*, ſituate not far from the Lake of *Thraſymene*, which from hence was called *Vadum Agyllinum*. The cheif Town of the *Tuſcans* at the comming of *Æneas* into *Italie*, and the Seat Royall of *Mezentius* that noted Tyrant, ſo often mentioned by *Virgil*. Firſt built by the *Pelaſgi*, a *Greek* people, and by them thus named; afterwards by miſtake called *Cære*: by like miſtake as *Peru*, *Jucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces got their preſent names, as ſhall there be ſhewn. For the *Tuſcans*, or the *Romans* as others ſay, demanding in their language of a Country fellow, the name of the place, was anſwered in his language, χαῖρε, that is to ſay, God ſave you, or God ſpeed you: which word they taking for the name of the Town, did ever after call it *Cære*. Memorable in old time for the Bathes adjoyning, from hence called *Balnea Caretana*; more for the preſervation of the *Veſtal* Fire, and the other holy things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*. Rewarded hereupon with all the privileges of *Rome*, except right of Suffrage: from whence the Tables in which the *Roman Cenſors* uſed to inroll the names of thoſe whom they deprived of their Votes in Senate, or any other publick Councill, were called *Cærites Tabulæ*. 5 *Phaleria*, on the ſeaſide, the principall town of the *Faliſci*, of which there is ſome remainder extant in the village called *Falaria*. 6 *Cluſium*, the Seat-Royall of King *Porſena*, for ayding which againſt the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themſelves the fury of that turbulent people. *Piſa*, *Aretium*, and ſuch others as are ſtill in being, we ſhall ſpeak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the ſoyl do remain as formerly, though the firſt altered in their names; the principall of which are, 1 *Arnus*, ſpoken of before in the generall ſurvey of *Italie*. 2 *Sercius*, by *Ptolomie* called *Boaſtus*, a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes ſome amends unto the people for its violent Land-floods. 3 *Palia*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not ſo profitable, which falleth into *Tiber* near *Orvietto*. 4 *Martha*, by *Ptolomie* called *Oſa*. Here is alſo the Lake *Volſinius*, which is twenty four miles in compaſs; and that called antiently *Sabatinus*, but now *Lago Braciani*, from which water was conveighed to *Rome*. By reaſon of theſe and other Lakes, and the frequent overflowings of the Rivers, the Country in former times was full of bogs, which made the air unhealthy, and the wayes unpaſſable, it being in the Flats and Mariſhes of *Hetruria*, that *Annibal* was ſo turmoiled, loſing herein the greateſt part of his Elephants, and one of his eyes. But ſince thoſe times, partly by the induſtry of the people, and the great providence of the Princes, the Fens in moſt places are well drained, and the Bogs converted to firm land, whereby the air is rectified, and the waies made pleaſant: care being alſo taken by great banks and ramparts to keep the Rivers for the moſt part within their channels. So that the Country is now full of very ſpacious fields, and fruitfull vallies, ſwelled here and there with pleaſant mountains, little inferior in fertility to the richeſt vales; abundantly well ſtored with delicious wines, and plentifull in a word of all the bleſſings of nature, ſave that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is ſupplied from the fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themſelves and their neighbours, though no ſuch ſuperfluity as to ſpare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the ſtory, *Tuſcanie* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the ſecond of thoſe eleven Regions into which *Italie* was divided by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. In the diviſion of it made by *Antonius*, and in that of *Conſtantine*, it made with *Umbria* one of the ten Provinces which was immediately ſubject to the *Prefect* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards in the declination of the *Roman* Empire it became a member of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German* Empire: during which times it was governed by an Officer of truſt and power, whom I find ſometimes called the *Marqueſs*, ſometimes *Duke* of *Tuſcanie*, who had here more or leſs authoritie, as they could work on the neceſſities of their ſeverall Princes. *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards* had been Duke of *Tuſcanie*, and ſo was *Albericus* in the time of the *Berengarii*, and *Guido* is called Marqueſs of it, under the reign of *Henricus Auceps* the *German* Emperour. Afterwards, as the Popes grew in power and greatneſs, ſo they made bold to intermeddle in the affairs of this Province; giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*, another while to the Dukes of *Anjou*, making ſome challenge to that Kingdom. In which diſtractions the *Florentines* firſt bought their own libertie, of the Emperor *Rodolfus Habſpurgenſis*; and after purchaſed the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*; that of *Arezzo* for 40000 *Florens* of Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*. After this time they husbanded their affairs ſo well, that they became one of the moſt conſiderable Eſtates in *Italie*; and at the laſt by taking in *Piſa* and *Sienna*, they got the abſolute dominion of the beſt and largeſt part of *Tuſcanie*, which now is under the command of the *great Duke*, and may be branched moſt fitly into theſe four parts, that is to ſay, the Cities and Territories of 1 *Florence*, 2 *Piſa*, 3 *Sienna*, and 4 the *Ilands* ſituate in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* ſeas.

1. And firſt the Territory or Eſtate of *Florence*, taketh up the North part of this great Duke-

dom,

dom, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Eſtates of *Piſa* and *Sienna* on the South. So called from the City of *FLORENCE*, ſituate nigh unto the conflux of the Rivers *Arnus* and *Chianus*, the former paſſing thorough the middeſt of the City, which is joyned together with four Bridges of ſtone; environed with mountains, which do ſerve as a Fortreſs againſt Invaſions, and for defence againſt the Winds; firſt built by *L. Sylla* that bloody *Dictator*; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumviri*, *Auguſtus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*; from the flouriſhing ſituation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards* upon ſome diſpleaſure razed it to the ground; but it was re-built by *Charlemagne*, to whom and whoſe Succeſſors they continued faithfull, as long as they had any thing to do with the ſtate of *Italie*; but after, they betook themſelves to the *Papall* faction, and were as rigid *Guelfes* as any. On this foundation it now ſtands, and is indeed a very fair and flouriſhing City, agreeable unto the name; the ſtreets being very ſtrait and large, paved with ſquare ſtone, and alwaies kept exceeding clean: the ordinary buildings beautifull above any in *Italie*, beſides many fair and ſtately Palaces adorned with *Statua's*. The principall of the Palaces is that of the *Great Duke*, taking up the room of 50 houſes which were wont to ſtand there; capable of a great retinue; and for the largeneſs of the building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as alſo for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Acceſſaries, equalling, if not ſurpaſſing the goodlieſt Palaces in all *Europe*. The like may alſo be affirmed of the *Cathedrall*, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanſhip, but that eſpecially of the Steeple, which both for ſtuff and ſtructure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*, and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence*; in which City there are beſides, ſo many excellent peeces and curious rarities, that the Arch-Duke *Charles* was wont to ſay, that it was *a Citie not to be ſeen but on Holy-daies*. As for the Inhabitants of this City and the parts adjoyning, they are a very induſtrious people, and generally ſaid to be of a very great wit, ſubtile heads, and of much inſight into buſineſs: and yet Count *Imbalt*, a *French* Gentleman, was uſed to ſay, *Non ſapeve dove conſiſteſſe l'ingegne tanto celebrate di Fiorentini*, that he could never find where that great Wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guicciardine* the Hiſtorian, was without doubt a notable Stateſ-man; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a man of as ſhrewd a brain as any; and ſo were the two *Coſmo's* of the houſe of the *Medices*; but whether all the *Florentines*, or the *major* part of them, be of ſuch extraordinary wits as they ſay they are, I am not very well reſolved of; nor is it much materiall to enquire into it. *Florence.*

The other Cities and chief places of this firſt diviſion, are 1 *Feſula*, once a *Roman* Colony, now a ſmall village called *Fieſoli*, ſituate in the ſtreights of the *Apennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have riſen chiefly from the ruins of it: moſt memorable for the great defeat here given by *Stilico* to the great Army of the *Gothes* conducted into *Italie* under *Rhadagaſius*. 2 *Pizoria*, or *Piſtoia*, ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*, but ruinated with its own diſtentions; of which the greateſt and moſt laſting, were thoſe betwixt the *Neri* and *Bianchi* (or the black men and the white) which divided *Florence*; and that between the *Guelfs* and *Gibellines* which here took begiuning, and for a long time exerciſed the peace of *Chriſtendom*. This laſt began (as ſome ſay) upon the quarrell of two Brothers, of which the one named *Guelfo* ſtood for the Pope, the other named *Gibellino* declared for the Emperor. The quarrell ſpreading into parties, called the *Guelfs* and the *Gibellines*, became at laſt the wonder and amazement of all good people: inſomuch as ſome are of opinion, that the fiction of the *Elfs* and *Goblins*, wherewith we uſe to fright young children, was derived from hence. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſeated in a fair and goodly plain, compaſſed with mountains; and the ſtreets paved with free-ſtone, and the Church (which is Cathedrall) with Marble; it was firſt walled by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province; but for all that was forced to ſubmit it ſelf to the power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was ſubdued An° 1150. when as yet themſelves were not the abſolute maſters of their own City. 3 *Volterra* built among the mountains, the Birth-place of *Linus*, ſucceſſor to St. *Peter* in the See of *Rome*. It ſtandeth on the top of an hill, the walls thereof made of ſquare ſtone about ſix foot long, which are very neatly joyned together without any Mortar: and in thoſe Walls five Gates for entrance, each Gate having neer unto it a very fair Fonntain. The Marble Statues, and ſome Epitaphes in *Tuſcan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very antient. In this Town was born *Rodolphus Volterranus*, one of the greateſt Reſtorers of Learning in the Weſt parts of the World. 4 *Monte Pulciano*, in *Latin* called *Mons Politianus*, a well-fortified Citie, and the birth-place of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the *Latin* or *Roman* Elegancies 5 *Crato*, another ſtrong peece of this part alſo, neighboured by a retiring-place of the Great Dukes, called *Pratoline*, a right pleaſant Village, beautified with a magnificent Palace, in which beſides many other ſingularities are moſt curious Water-works, equall, if not ſuperiour unto thoſe of *Tivoli*. 6 *Cortona*, an antient City of the *Tuſcans*, ſituate at the foot of the *Apennine*, ſold to the *Florentines* by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*. 7 *Aretium* or *Arezzo*, one of the antient Cities of the *Tuſcans* alſo, and ſold to the *Florentines* as the other was; this being bought for 40000 *Florins* of *Lewis* of *Anjou*, then the Popes *Vicegerent* in this Country. 8 *Borgo San Sepulcro*, ſeated on the *Tiber*, near, or within the *Spoletan* Dukedom, added to this *Signeurie* by *Coſmo de Medices* the firſt of that name, by whom bought of Pope *Eugenius* the fourth for the ſum of 25000 *Florins*,

Pisa, and *Sienna*.

rins, and layd unto the Patrimony of this Commonwealth, to which it serveth for a Bulwark on that side of this Country.

To this Division also we may best refer the small, but rich Signeurie of *Massa*, situate on the borders of the state of *Genoa*. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Massa* it self, which gives the title of a Marques to the Lord hereof, of the family of the *Malespines*. 2 *Carara*, three miles off from *Massa*, and more neer the Sea, and of great fame for its Quarries of whitest Marble (much used in the time of the *Roman* greatness) and a breed of the fairest Women in *Italie*. The Prince hereof a Feudatary to the Duke of *Florence*, but amongst his own vassals absolute enough.

2 The second member of this estate is the City and Territory of *PISA*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoese* on the West, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the East. The City first built by the *Pisa*, a people of *Elis* in *Greece*, who following old *Nestor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the Wind driven upon this coast; and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serchius*, did erect this Town. In the distractions of the Empire it stood up for it self, and grew so potent, that at one time they waged war both with the *Venetians* and *Genoese*. They were once Masters of *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, and the *Baleares*; but finally being discomfited by the *Genoese* neer the Isle of *Giglio*, by whom it was made free, An° 1369, they submitted themselves to the protection of *Charles* the fourth. Not long after, it was taken by *John Galeaze* the first Duke of *Millain*, An° 1404, by *John Maria* his sonne and successor sold unto the *Florentines*; from whose command they freed themselves by a popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this besieged them, and brought them to such extremity of hunger, that they were ready to be starved. Yet such was the humanity of the Besiegers, that when they entred the Town every man carryed victuals in his hand instead of weapons, to beget, as it were, new life in that rebellious people. This victory the *Florentines* got by the valor and conduct of Sir *John Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Aguto*; who being first a Taylor in *Essex*, afterwards served *Edward* the third in his *French* Wars, where he was knighted. And when upon the peace concluded after the battell of *Poictiers*, he wanted employment, he entered with his Regiment into *Italie*, and put himself into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in war with this City: who for his valor have honoured him with a fair Tomb and Monument. When *Charles* the 8th went into *Italie*, the *Pisans* again revolted, and were, not without much labour and great charges, reduced to their former obedience. As for the City it self, it is almost as big as *Florence*, this being five miles in compass, and that but six; but very short of it in the numbers of people, *Florence* being sayd to contain 90000 souls, *Pisa* not a third part of that proportion; yet it hath very good advantages to make it populous, that is to say, the publick *Arsenal* for Shipping, an University for Students, and the See of an Archbishop: the Cathedrall Church of which is a very beautifull peece of work, the Gates thereof are brass, and the Steepl of it of such artificiall and exquisite building, that it sheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholsomness of the Air over-ballanceth all these fair advantages.

The next place of importance within the Territory of this City is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn* (*Livornum* it is called in *Latin*) seated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified against the *Genoese*, by whom the Works were once slighted, An° 1297. Upon a reconciliation made between those States, it returned again to its old Masters. And when the *Pisans* were sold over to the *Florentines* by the Duke of *Millain*, *Thomas Fregosa* Duke of *Genoa*, seized upon this place, and sold it also to the same Chapmen for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Cosmo* and his two sonnes it is much improved in strength and beautie, and so well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the strongest Cities in *Christendom*; Cities I say, and not Castles, the Castles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain* being held to be the strongest Forts in the World. After this comes in 3 *Petra Sancta*, on the West side of the *Arnus*, a place of great consequence and strength; one of the best peeces of the *Pisans* when a Free-estate, against their old enemies the *Genoese*, towards whom it standeth. 4 *Terraciola*, Eastward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5 *Castellona*, an Episcopall See, and 6 *Porto Berrato*, bordering on the Signeury of *Siena*, now nothing but a station for ships (nor much used for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the best Cities of the *Tuscans*, called *Populonia*.

3 The third Member of this Dukedom is the City and Territory of *SIENA*, lying betwixt the Estate of *Pisa*, and the land of the Church. The City sayd to be built by *Bremus*, who did there put his old sickly men to sojourn, and called it *Sena*: the Birth-place of *Æneas Sylvius*, called afterwards Pope *Pius* the second; of *Francis Picolomini*, after Pope *Pius* the third; and of *Sixtus* (hence surnamed) *Senensis*, the greatest Scholar of the three, if not of all the age he lived in. By *Antonine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Sena Julia*, to difference it perhaps from another of that name near the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built neer the Spring or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Treisa*; but built (which makes the situation of it exceeding pleasant) upon an high hill, on which there is a Castle that commands the Town: the streets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and spacious Market-place; near to which is a very fair Palace used for a Senate-house in the Free-Commonwealth: and on the South side near the walls, the Cathedrall Church, reputed to be one of the fairest in *Italie*, having only one door into it, to which there is an ascent by fair Marble stairs,

of

of which the Pavement is made alſo. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperiall faction, it bought its liberty at an eaſie rate of the Emperour *Rodolphus* the firſt. After it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*, and finally was made over to *Coſmo de Medices* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, An° 1558, in conſideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French*, and other ſervices expected for the time to come. *Coſmo* being thus inveſted in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the firſt Prince who had the abſolute command of it, after the conſtitution of their Commonwealth: neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but onely as called in by their ſeverall factions, and ſuffered to have Garriſons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their party. And to ſay truth, it ſtood with good reaſon of State, that the *Florentine* ſhould uſe all his wit to get this City; and having got it, uſe all meanes to aſſure it to him. For beſides that great acceſſion which it made unto his Eſtate; by adding thereunto the yearly income of a hundred and fifty thouſand Ducats, above all expences; it was alſo to be carefully looked on as a Rivall which had long time ſtood in competition with it, for the ſoveraign command of *Tuſcanie*. Beſides, there had been mighty animoſities between the Cities, the *Florentine* being always of the *Guelfes*, and the *Siennoys* of the *Gibelline* faction. A faction at laſt ſo generally diſtated in all *Italie*, and ſo abhominable to the Popes, that on an *Aſh-wedneſday* when the Pope being to caſt Aſhes on the heads of the Cardinals, was to have ſayd, *Memento O homo quod cinis es, & in cinerem converteris*; according to the uſage of the Church of *Rome*; ſeeing a *Gibelline* amongſt them, he forgot himſelf, and ſayd thus unto him, *Memento O homo quod* Gibellinus *es, & cum* Gibellinis *morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1 *Montalcino* (*Mons Alcinus* in *Latin*) a place of great ſtrength both by induſtry and ſituation. 2 *Caſtro-Cartaldo*, ſeated upon a lofty Hill, moſt memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccace*, one of the beſt wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declareth: buried here with a ſorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of tranſcribing. 3 *Soana*, an Epiſcopall City; as alſo are 4 *Pienza*, 5 *Croſetto*, and 6 *Chinſi*; this laſt the *Cluſium* of the antient *Tuſcans*, ſpoken of before. Beſides theſe there are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs.

The Tuſcan Ilands.

There belonged alſo unto this Commonwealth when a State diſtinct, ſome Ports and Peeces on the Sea, which when it was conſigned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniard*; partly thereby to keep thoſe Princes at his devotion; but principally that by holding ſo many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keys of *Italie*, and become Lord Paramont of thoſe Seas. Of thoſe the principall, if not all, 1 *Piombino*, in Latin called *Plumbinum* from ſome Mines of Lead, adorned with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a plentifull Territorie: the Caſtle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in poſſeſſion of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole rents of the Eſtate. 2 *Port Telamon*, Eaſtward of *Piombino*, ſo called of old from *Telamon* an adjoyning Promontorie, and known by this name in *Plutarch* in the life of *Marius*. 3 *Orbitello*, drawing more towards the Eaſt, the *Coſſa* of the antient Writers. 4 *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontorie or *Peninſula*, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea, over againſt *Orbitello*; by the *Latines* called *Mons Argentarius*; and thought by ſome, who have obſerved the ſituation, ſtrength, and extent thereof, to be the fitteſt place for a Royall City to be built in, to command thoſe Seas. 5 *Port Hercule*, which ſtill retains its antient name, imparted to it from ſome Temple of *Hercules* which was founded in it; ſituate neer the Eaſtern *Iſthmus* of the ſaid *Peninſula*. 6 *Porto-Longone*, a peece of ſpeciall conſequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cauſe of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the conqueſt of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now poſſeſs it.

The fourth and laſt member of this Eſtate are the *Ilands* in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principall whereof is 1 *Ilva*, not above ten miles from *Plombino*; called antiently *Æthalia*, by the vulgar *Elba*. *Plinie* affirmed it to contain in compaſs a hundred miles, but it proves upon a juſt ameaſurement to be but fifty, not very well furniſhed with Corn, and leſs with fruits; but plentifull in Mines of Iron, as formerly for Steel and Copper; for which, eſpecially for Steel, of great eſteem in the time of *Virgil*, as appeareth by that paſſage in the 10th of the *Æneids*, where it is called

Inſula inexhauſtis Chalybum generoſa metallis.

A noble Iſle, and known full well
For unexhauſted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is ſupplyed by Iron, which Iron is of ſo ſtrange a nature, that every 25 years it renueth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilſt it is in the Iland, but muſt be carried ſomewhere elſe. It affordeth alſo Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty, and in ſome parts Loadſtone alſo. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Plombino*, who not being able to defend it againſt the Turks, if they ſhould at any time invade it, reſigned it, by the Counſell of *Charles* the fift, unto *Coſmo di Medices* the Duke of *Florence*; reſerving to themſelves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns and Villages therein, except thoſe that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair

Tuscan Ilands.

Haven called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that should come thither; and therefore if the *Turks* or *Moores* had been Masters of it, they might easily have commanded all the coasts adjoyuing, as well in *Provence*, as *Italie*. For the defence hereof there are two strong Castles, situate on two little Mountains, on each side one; so fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable; having also good store of Cannon, and all sorts of Warlike Ammunition. And not far off stands a strong Town built by the same Duke *Cosmo*, and by him called *Cosmopolis*; well fortified, and made the seat of his new Order of St. *Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The second Iland of note is *Giglio*, called *Iglium* antiently, just opposite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having some 25 miles in compass; neerunto which the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Pisans* in a Fight at sea, that they were never able to recover their former puissance. 3 *Capraria*, not far from *Ligorn*, so called from its abundance of Goats; and for the same reason *Ægilora*, by the *Greek* Geographers; as 4 *Gallinaria* not far off took name from abundance of Hens. Of the rest nothing memorable, but that some of them do occur in the antient Writers: of which sort are *Meloria*, heretofore *Lanellum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2 *Lanusi*, formerly *Artemisia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3 *Gorgona*. 4 *Troia*, and 5 the small Ilands which are called *Formicæ*. 6 To these we may adde also the Isle of *Planasia*, more memorable than the rest, for the banishment and death of *Agrippa Posthumus*, the Nephew of *Augustus Cæsar* by his daughter *Julia*, here murdered by the command of *Tiberius* to prevent all future competition to the State Imperiall; situate somewhat nearer unto *Corsica* than the rest of these Ilands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whose Posterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the *Free-state* (as *Machiavil* informs us in his *Florentine* History) accounted in the chief rank of the Popular Nobility: those being such of the antient Nobles, as to be capable of the Magistracie, and publick Offices (then wholly shared among the Commons) had as it were degraded themselves, and became part of the Commonalty. About the year 1410, *John de Medices* (the first great raiser of this house) stoutly maintaining the Liberties of the people against the great ones, was by them so honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great party, but almost a Soveraignty in the City. To him succeeded his sonne *Cosmo*, one of the greatest Statesmen of those times, who did not only much reform the civill Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Casentino*, *Burgo St. Sepulchro*, and some other peeces. Dying in the year 1464, he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medices* his sonne, whose whole time was consumed in suppressing such Factions as had at home been raised against him; and at his death left all his power, and the great wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater measure of his Fathers vertues) to *Lawrence* and *Julian* his two sonnes. The people after his decease, either desirous of Novelties, as most people are, or fearing to be made hereditary to this powerfull Family, seemed to incline to one of the *Soderini*, a man of plausible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciously considering, that new houses as they are easily honoured, so are they as soon abandoned by the fickle multitude, conferred all the dependances which were cast upon him, on these two young men of the *Medices*: as being descended from a Family which had long governed the Citie. Against these two, the *Pazzi*, a potent house in *Florence*, conspired, and at Mass they slew *Julian*; but *Lorenzo* escaped: the blows which were struck at him, being received by one of his servants, whom two days before he had delivered out of prison. For this fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Archbishop of *Pisa*, who had been of the conspiracie. To revenge the death of this Bishop, Pope *Paul* the 2d Excommunicated the *Florentines*; and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo* to divert this mischief, went in person to *Naples*; where he grew so much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetuall League made between them. After his death, An. 1492, his sonne *Peter* having very improvidently delivered *Pisa* and *Ligorn*, with other peeces, to the *French* King; was, together with his whole Family, banished. *John di Medices* the sonne of *Lawrence*, and Brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the name of *Leo* the 10th, restored again his Family; who not long after his death, were again exil'd. This disgrace *Julio di Medices*, sonne to the above-named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement* the 7th, not enduring, procured *Charles* the fift to besiege it: which request was granted, and the City, after two years resistance, yeelded. The Emperour then gave it to *Alexander Medices* (Grand-child to *Peter*, by his sonne *Lawrence*) An. 1531: And he to restrain the insolencies of the people, built a strong Citadell in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of good parts enough, had he not been too much addicted to Lust and Wantonness; which being observed by *Lawrence de Medicis* his own Cousen, he trained him to a secret place, under colour of bringing him to the bed of a beautifull Lady; and there basely murdered him. Which done, instead of calling the people to take Arms for recovery of their lost Liberty, as he first intended, he fearfully left the City, and fled towards *Venice*. So that before the people had notice of the Accident, the heads of the *Medices* consulted together, and sent for *Cosmo di Medices* dwelling in the Countrey with his Mother (and then about 18 years of age) to be their Prince: as being the next Heir-male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperor. This *Cosmo* proving an excellent Statesman, and a fortunate Commander, so swayed the affairs of *Italie*,

that

that *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain* to be aſſured of his friendſhip gave him the Signeurie of *Sienna* out of which he had lately driven the *French*; and *Pius* the 4th had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuſcany*. But *Philip* of *Spain* (though otherwiſe his ſpeciall friend) thwarted that intent, as loath to have in *Italie* any more Kings than himſelf. After in the year 1570, *Pius* the fifth crowned the ſaid *Coſmo* in the Court of *Rome*, with the title of *Great Duke of Tuſcany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Dukes Coronet he cauſed to be engraven theſe words, *Pius quintus Pont. max. ob eximiam dilectionem, & religionis catholica zelum, præcipuumque juſtitiæ ſtudium donavit.* Thus forward were theſe Popes to honour this family; but their ſucceſſors have been otherwiſe affected to it: For when one of Duke *Coſmo's* ſucceſſors did ſince intreat a ſucceeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuſcany*; the Pope not liking ſo Lordly a title, anſwered; that he was content, *He ſhould be a King in Tuſcany, but not King of Tuſcany*: A Scholar-like diſtinction, but not ſo ſatisfactory to the point propoſed.

The Princes of the houſe of *Medices* in the *Free-eſtate*.

1410 1 *John di Medices*, the firſt advancer of the Family to publick greatneſs.
1433 2 *Coſmo di Medices*, the ſonne of *John*, called the Father of the Commonwealth.
1464 3 *Peter*, the ſonne of *Coſmo*.
1472 4 *Lawrence di Medices*, ſonne of *Peter*, the great Advancer of Learning in *Italie*.
1492 5 *Peter di Medices* II. exiled upon the comming in of *Charles* the 8.
6 *Lawrence di Medices* II. ſonne of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father, made Duke of *Urbin* by Pope *Leo* the 10.

The Dukes of *Florence*, and *Great Dukes* of *Tuſcanie*.

1531 1 *Alexander di Medices*, the ſonne of *Lawrence*, the firſt Duke of *Florence*.
1537 2 *Coſmo* II. the next heir of *Alexander*, deſcended from *Lawrence*, a brother of the firſt *Coſmo*, the wiſeſt Stateſman of his time.
1574 3 *Francis di Medices*, ſonne of *Coſmo* the II. Father of *Mary* the *French* Queen.
1587 4 *Ferdinand di Medices*, the brother of *Francis*.
1609 5 *Coſmo* the III. ſonne of *Ferdinand*.
1621 6 *Ferdinand* II. ſonne of *Coſmo di Medices*, the twelf of this family, the ſixt Duke of *Florence*, and the firſt of *Tuſcany*.

The length of this Eſtate is 260 miles, the bredth in ſome places not much inferior, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which tract, the *Great Duke* hath but one conſiderable Port on the main land, which is that of *Ligorn*; ſo that his ſtrength in ſhipping is not very great; and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Trafick, and not ſuffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Country) and carryed thence in forein veſſels. For otherwiſe being an induſtrious people, and well trained in Manufactures; their power at Sea muſt needs be greater than it is; the *Great Dukes* Fleet conſiſting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliaſſes. And for his power by Land, he hath in readineſs ſixteen thouſand Foot of his own ſubjects, well trained and muſtered under experienced Commanders, to ſerve him upon all occaſions; and a hundred men at Arms, and 400 Light-horſmen, well payd, as well in times of Peace, as in time of War. And beſides theſe, he keeps ſo many Forts and Towns in continuall Garriſon, that his Eſtate is ſayd to *be made of Iron*.

The only Order of *Knighthood* in this Eſtate, is that of S. *Stephen*, inſtituted by *Coſmo di Medices* An. 1561. and dedicated to S. *Stephen*, becauſe upon the Feſtivall of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the 6. of *Auguſt*, he won the famous battell of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius* the fourth confirmed it the ſame yeer, and granted them all the privileges which they of *Malta* enjoy: conditioned that thoſe of this Order ſhould make a vow of Charity, and conjugall Chaſtity and Obedience. They are to be nobly born, and in lawfull Wedlock of the *Romiſh* Church, and without note of infamy. Their Robe is of white *Chamlet*, with a red Croſs on their left ſide, as well upon their Military Garments, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally againſt the *Turks* and *Moores*, for which cauſe ſetled firſt at *Piſa*, being neer the Sea; but after at *Coſmopolis* in the Iſle of *Ilva*. The number of them is uncertain, the *great Duke* the Supreme Maſter of it. Other Orders are commonly ſimple, but this mixt, being partly religious, partly honourary.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the *Free Eſtate*, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifeſt, in that having in thoſe five yeers wherein they waged war againſt the Duke of *Millain*, ſpent three millions and an half of *Florens*, their Treaſurie was ſo far from being exhauſted, that the next yeer they beſieged and indangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Common-wealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of the Territory and City of *Sienna*, the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a million and an half of *Ducats* yearly. Of which 600000. Crowns are raiſed yearly out of the Dominion of the Citie of *Florence*;

Luca.

150000. more out of that of *Siena*; the customs arising out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yeerly to 130000. Ducats, the toll of Milstones onely unto 160000. that of Salt, Mines, and Iron, falls not short of that: in all, a million and 200000. *Ducats*. Then hath the Duke his stock going amongst the Bankers, and trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countreys he loseth the privileges of a Nobleman, that betakes himself to Trade and Merchandize. He useth also to buy up almost all the Corn which is brought into the Countrey out of other parts, and sell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be sold till all his be vended. The rest is made up by *Excize* upon all Commodities, even unto very herbs and Sallads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor especially: insomuch, that it was tartly said, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui sub* Medicis *vivit, miserè vivit*; applying an old Rule in a new sense.

The Arms are *Or*, five Torteaux *Gules*, two, two, and one, and one in chief *Azure*, charged with three Flower de Lyces of the first.

Here are in this Estate
Arch-bishops 3. Bishops 26.

The State of LUCA.

IN the West part of *Tuscany*, betwixt the Estate of the *Great Duke*, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *LUCA*, so called from *Luca* a King of the *Tuscans*, who is said to have built it: situate on the River *Serchius*, not far from the mountains of *Luna*, whence the Countrey is at this day called *Lunagiana*. It is about three miles in compass, and contains about 24000. Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modest people, men of good judgement, and discreet, and by their wisdoms have preserved themselves a free Common-wealth, notwithstanding the attempts of more powerfull Neighbours: and they are very industrious also, and well seen in *Manufactures*, especially in weaving silks and cloath of gold, which they taught the *Florentines*. The City seated in a plain, compassed with Mountains on all sides, except towards *Pistoia*: so strongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the Isle of *Candie*, and the Town of *Ligorn*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was less known) to be the four strongest Towns in the *Christian* World. The streets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad free-stone, and most easie to walk on: the buildings very fair, built of free-stone also, and beautified with pleasant gardens. On the North-West stands a very strong Castle, neer which lieth the Cathedrall, stately paved with Marble, but very dark, as most of the *Popish* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the three great Captains, *Cæsar*, *Pompey*, and *Crassus*, so pernicious to the *Roman* Republick. For *Pompey* desirous to maintain his authority, *Cæsar* to get honour, and *Crassus* to increase his wealth, here united their Counsels: *Pompey*'s authority to be upheld by *Cæsar*'s Arms, and *Crassus* his riches; *Cæsar*'s continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey*'s power, and *Crassus* his money; and *Crassus* his estate to be secured by *Pompey*'s greatness, and *Cæsars* military reputation. This done, they made a partition of the *Roman* Provinces among themselves, assigning *Gaule* to *Cæsar*, *Spain* to *Pompey*, aod to *Crassus Syria*: which strong confederacy was the cause of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Crassus* being slain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cæsar* wanting a third man to poize the ballance, fell first to discontents, then to Civill wars, which at last made *Cæsar* Lord of *Rome*. Upon which meeting, and the breach which succeeded afterwards, was grounded that so memorated speech of *Cicero*, that is to say, *Utinam* Pompeius *cum* Cæsare *societatem aut nunquam iniisset, aut nunquam dirimisset.*

But to return again to the Affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire, it became possessed by the *Gothes*, from them recovered by *Narses* with the rest of *Italie*. After this, it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface*, the Father of that notable *Virago*, the Countess *Mathildis*: who being deceased without issue, and the Emperors pretending to it as to an Escheat, the Citizens made a common purse, and bought their Liberty of the Emperor *Rodolphus* for 10000. Crowns. Some say the money was disbursed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithstanding this purchase, and their title by it, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* seized upon it again, under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Castruccio*, who had made himself absolute Master of it. By a *German* Garrison there left, it was sold to the *Genoese*; and having passed through many hands, the Emperor *Charles* the fourth got it once again, of whom they once more purchased their desired Liberties for 25000 *Florens* of Gold, and to secure themselves thereof demolished the Castle built by *Castruccio*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper strength, they have put themselves under the protection of their potent Neighbors, changing their Patrons as conduced most to their preservation: and finding no security from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they severally tried, they put themselves at last

into

into the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain*. *Genoa.*

The Territories of this City extend in compass eighty miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* it self, being that of *Luna*, a Bishops See; all the rest ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good air, and very well peopled: which yeeld a Revenue to the publick Treasury of 800co. Crowns *per annum*, and out of which the State is able to raise (if there be occasion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. A great strength for so small a *Signeury*, but all too weak to save them from the *Great Dukes* clutches, if he did seriously attempt to force it, and would venture on the displeasure of the *Catholick* King: besides that it is thought, that he receives more profit thence in gifts and presents, by letting it stand as it is, than it would yeeld (considering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principall Magistrate is called the *Gonfalonere*, changeable every second moneth, assisted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every sixt moneth also; during which time they live together in the Palace, or Common-hall. Other inferiour Officers I insist not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Bishops only, which acknowledge the Arch-bishop of *Florence* for their *Metropolitan*.

The Common-wealth of GENOA.

DIrectly West of *Tuscany*, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lyeth the Countrey antiently called *Liguria*, now *Riviere di Genoa*, the coast of *Genoa*, because it lieth all along the Sea of *Genoa*, and by some *Il Genovosate*, from *Genoa*, the *Metropolis* of this Countrey and Commonwealth. A Common-wealth once of a larger reputation and authority, than it is at the present; commanding heretofore the Ilands of *Corsica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares* in the *Mediterranean*, *Lesbos* and *Chio*, with some others in the *Greekish* Seas; the Town of *Capha* or *Theodosia* in the *Taurican Chersones*, and *Pera*, on the other side of *Constantinople*, and a good part of *Tuscany*.

It was also then so strong both in men and shipping, that they sent seven severall Armies to the wars of the *Holy Land*: and in the space of three days only armed once upon occasion of present service, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Pamphyli* (being vessells of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and sixty Oars apiece;) and at another time one hundred and sixty five Gallies at a sudden pinch. By the advantage of this strength they beat the *Pisans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, and the *Baleares*, compelling them to pay 135000. Crowns for their peace; they got a good share in the division of the Empire of *Constantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latines*; and held a very strong hand over the *Venetians*. These last they had once in so great an exigence, having vanquished their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Iland of *Chioggia*, not far from *Venice*, that the Senate sent them a blank Charter, bidding them write down what conditions they pleased, which should be readily condescended to. But *Peter Doria*, Admirall of the *Genoan* Fleet, unseasonably proud of his advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own dispossall. Whereupon the *Venetians* now made desperate, assault the secure *Genoese*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they always had the worst, losing their Ilands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capha* and *Pera*, with their Ilands in the *Greek* Seas to the great *Turk*; most of their holds in *Tuscany* to the *Florentines*: their power at the last being so broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to set out a Navy fit for any enterprize. But these misfortunes were occasioned principally by their own divisions, the City being miserably torn in pieces by continuall factions: first betwixt the *Doris* and *Spinoli*, on the one side, the *Flisci* and *Grimaldi* on the other, An. 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri*, and *Mollani*, against the *Salvatici* and *Embriaci*, An. 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spinoli* and *Dorii* themselves, An. 1336. And fourthly, between the Nobility and the Commons, An. 1339. Which Factions did so weaken them both at home and abroad, that having lost the greatest part of their Estate, they were fain to put themselves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the rest; having now nothing left them but *Liguria*, and the Isle of *Corsica*.

1 *LIGURIA* hath on the East the River *Varus*, rising about the edge of *Provence*; on the West, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tuscany*; on the North, the *Apennine* hils; and on the South, the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. It is in length a hundred and forty miles, that is to say from the Port of *Luna* in the East, to that of *Monaco* in the West, which lyeth near to *Provence*; but the bredth not answerable to the length: and is divided generally into two parts or Provinces, the East and the West, both centring upon *Genoa* the principall City.

The old *Ligurians* were a stout and warlike Nation, light, and swift of body, well practised in laying Ambushes, and not discouraged by any overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the nature of their Country served them very well, being rough, mountainous, and woody, and full of streight and dangerous passages; and in this tract few open Towns, but many wel-fortified Castles, so that without much labour they could not be taken neither besieged.

And

Liguria. And if at any time they were vanquiſhed in the open field, they had recourſe unto theſe Caſtles, and other Faſtneſſes hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains, in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principall of their Tribes were the *Decentis*, *Oxilii*, *Eubariades* and *Inganni*; all at laſt vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, after the ſecond *Punick* war; but not without much labour and pains, by reaſon of the Woods, Mariſhes, and Mountains within and behind which they retired and ſaved themſelves: Inſomueh that it was held a matter of more difficulty to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quam vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times after this, much moleſt the *Romans*, till at laſt *Poſthumius* ſo diſweaponed them, that he ſcarce left them inſtruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Maſters. In the diviſion of whoſe large Territories by *Auguſtus Ceſar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italie*; as it was alſo one of the ſeventeen Provinces into which *Italie* was divided by the Emperor *Conſtantine*: *Millaine* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kind of men they were in the breaking of the Weſtern Empire, may be known by their actions both by Sea and Land, ſpoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandize than war, but moſt of all to uſury. A vice which the Chriſtians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equall, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the ſaying of a merry fellow, that in *Chriſtendom* there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough: And when anſwer was made, that of all theſe there was rather too great a plenty, than any ſcarcity; he replyed, that if there were *Scholars* enough, ſo many would not be double or treble beneficed; if Gentlemen enough, ſo many Peaſants would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jews* enough, ſo many *Chriſtians* would not profeſs *Uſurie*. The women are very fair and comely, wearing for the moſt part their hair in treſſes, which they caſt over their backs: they wear no upper garments but of cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under-garments of the pureſt ſtuf. The women here are privileged above all in *Italie*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publickly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at ſuch time as the *French* were Maſters of this Eſtate, who do allow their wives ſuch exceſs of liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Curtezan*. And though it cannot be affirmed that the women of the Countrey or the City it ſelf do abuſe this Liberty; yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humor, reckon them to be paſt all ſhame; as they eſteem the *German* Merchants, (who make little reckoning of their promiſes, if not bound by writing) to be men without faith. Of which, and other things concerning this Eſtate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne ſenza legni*, &c. that is to ſay *Mountains without wood, Seas without fiſh, men without faith, and women without ſhame.*

The Country, as before is ſaid, is very mountainous in the in-lands, and ful of craggy rocks towards the Sea: ſo that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidſt thoſe hils are vallies of as rich a vein as moſt others in *Italie*, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, Oranges, and the like fruits; with ſuch variety of Flowers at all times of the yeer, that the Markets are ſeldom unfurniſhed of them in the moneth of *December*. It yeeldeth alſo great plenty of moſt pleaſant wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermozza*, and another which they call *Le lagrime di Chriſto*, or *Lacryma Chriſti*: this laſt ſo pleaſing to the taſt, that it is ſaid, a *Dutchman* taſting of it as he travelled in theſe parts, fetch't a great ſigh, and brake out into this expreſſion, How happy had it been with us, *ſi Chriſtus lachrymatus eſſet in noſtris* Regionibus, if *CHRIST* had ſhed ſome of his tears in their Country of *Germany*. Their greateſt want is that of Corn, and therewith do ſupply themſelves out of other places.

The principall Towns and Cities of it in the Eaſtern part, are 1. *Sarezana*, a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Florentines*, and one of the beſt pieces of this Republick. 2. *Pontremuli* (*Pons Remuli*, as the *Latines* call it) of as great conſequence as that, but poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*. 3. *Lerigi*, an Haven in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. 4. *Seſtri*, a reaſonable good place, remarkable for as white bread, and as pleaſant wine, as any in *Italie*. 5. *Fino*, an Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, antiently called *Portus Delfinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatneſs; but they are ſet ſo thick, and intermingled with ſo many goodly houſes both on the hills and the vallies, that for the ſpace of twenty miles, the whole Countrey ſeems to be one continuall building.

In the Weſt part the Towns of moſt importance are, 1. *Monaco*, of old called *Monoecus*, and *Portus Herculis*, beautified with a commodious Haven: belonging not long ſince to the *Spaniard*, who bought it for 100000. Crowns of its proper Owner; but of late gotten by the *French* under colour of a later Contract. 2. *Ventamiglio*, a good Town, and ſweetly ſeated. 3. *Savona*, taken by the *Genoeſe*, An. 1250. before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the *Interview* betwixt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, and *Lewis* the 12th. of *France*, An. 1507. Who having been deadly enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniard*, met at this town, and here moſt ſtrangely relied upon one another. *Lewis* firſt boording *Ferdinands* Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers days feaſting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his poſſeſſion, as Protector of the Eſtate of *Genoa*. Which kind of *Interviews* (I note this only by the way) as they chance but ſeldom; ſo when they do, they prove for the moſt part dangerous unto one of the parties: great enmities not being eaſily forgot by perſons of a publick *Intereſs*. Nay, that notable Stateſman *Philip de Comines* utterly diſliketh all ſuch meet-

tings,

tings of Princes, though in Amity and good correſpondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, and *Henry* of *Caſtile*; who meeting purpoſely An° 1463, to change ſome friendly words together, took ſuch diſlike at each others perſon and behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an interview betwixt *Edward* the fourth of *England*, and the ſame King *Lewis*; and betwixt *Frederick* the Emperor, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; with divers others. His reaſons I purpoſely omit, as not pertinent to my preſent undertaking, and make haſt again unto the Town, which is about a mile and an half in circuit, and hath many ſtately buildings in it. It was called antiently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords, being taken from the *Genoeſe* by the *Viſconti*, and the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Millain*, from them by the *French*, and at laſt recovered again by thoſe of *Genoa*. Further note, that this one Town hath yeelded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, *viz. Gregory* the 7th, *Julio* the 2d. and *Sixtus* the 4th, which is as much as *Genoa* it ſelf can brag of. 4 *Nola*, upon the Seaſide, a commodius Haven. 5 *Finali*, a goodly Port-Town alſo, and very well fortified, honoured of a long time with the title of a Marquiſate, one of the ſeven founded by the Emperor *Otho* (of which more hereafter) but taken from the laſt Marqueſs by the Count of *Fuentes*, then Governour of *Millain* for the King of *Spain*, and garriſoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*; the poor Marqueſs being put off with an Annual penſion, An° 1602. 6 *Mileſimo*, a ſmall Town adjoyning, poſſeſſed upon the ſame right by the *Spaniard* alſo; who by theſe peeces hath a ſtrong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7 But the great Ornament of thoſe parts of *Italie* is the City of *Genoa*, firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Janus* the ſonne of *Saturn*; as others ſay, by *Janus, Gegnus Priſcus*, an *Italian* or *Tuſcan* King. But by whomſoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miſerably deſtroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Annibal*, repaired by *Lucretius Surius* at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whoſe cauſe and quarrel it was ruined: once again ſpoyled and waſted by *Rotaris* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, An° 660 or thereabouts, but built more beautifull than before by *Charles* the Great. On his foundation it now ſtands, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Ligurſtick* or *Ligurian* Seas, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an hill full of ſtately Palaces, it giveth a moſt pleaſant and magnificent proſpect. It is in compaſs ſix miles, of an Orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art, towards the Land by Art and Nature, there being but one way to come to it by land, and that over ſteep and craggy Rocks. The ſtreets are narrow, paved with Flint, and moſt of them on the ſides of the hill; which is the reaſon that they uſe Horſe-litters here inſteed of Coaches, and moſt of the better ſort are carried on mens ſhoulders in Sedans or Chairs; which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada Nueva*, or the *New ſtreet*, reaching from the Weſt to North-Eaſt, is of a very fair bredth: each houſe thereof is built with ſuch Kingly magnificence, that it is thought to be the faireſt ſtreet in the World. In all the reſt, the buildings for the height of two ſtories are made of Marble, curiouſly wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be uſed any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, ſafe from the violence of Tempeſts, and well fortified: ſo that the *Spaniards* uſe to ſay, that were the Catholique King abſolute Lord of *Marſeilles* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in *Italie*, he might command the whole World. After the reedifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the people here continued ſubject to his ſucceſſors, till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of *Italie*, made them free, *An.* 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318, when being ſhrewdly weaken in their Eſtate they were fain to give themſelves to Pope *John* the 22; after to *Robert* King of *Naples*. But being ſoon weary of a forein Government, the people in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Boccanegra*, to be their Duke, *An.* 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Guelfian* Faction, in the reign of *Charles* the 7; under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many inſolencies, they put themſelves under the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, *An.* 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of thoſe Princes in great tranquillity, who never carryed towards them any rigorous hand, ſave that once D. *Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great maſs of money. But, as the tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the houſe of a *Genoeſe*, and walking in a Garden with him, was ſhewed an herb growing there, called *Baſil*; which ſtroaking gently, he ſmelt thence a moſt pleaſing ſavour, but a ſunfavory a ſmell when he ſtrained it hard. The *Genoeſe* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently ſtroak the hand of his puiſſance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by obedience; but may chance to prove rebellious if he do oppreſs it. But *Lodowick* being taken priſoner by King *Lewis* the 12, they firſt came under the command of the *French*, and then of the *Spaniard*, according as thoſe Nations had poſſeſſion of the State of *Millain*: and after many changes and alterations, obtained again their freedom of King *Francis* the firſt; which being not able to preſerve by their proper ſtrength, they finally put themſelves under the ſhelter of the *Spaniard*, who is now their Protector, and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, *An.* 1609. a Million and a half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Popes authority; that ſo the King might be indebted to that See: for moſt of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-maſters of this City. The ſame courſe of non-payment, the King took with the reſt of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the reſt; inſomuch that it was commonly ſaid in *Italie*, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange

Genoa.

Corſica. change in one day, than *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter, had ever made good in all his life. And thus you ſee this great City which commanded the *Ocean*, the Lady of ſo many Ilands, and a great Moderator of the Affairs of *Italie*, fain to put her ſelf into the protection of a forein Prince; and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treaſure; which he continually raiſeth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a ſorry Pay-maſter. And if the Wars he had with *England* did ſo drain their Purſes (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him ſo indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no queſtion but the revolt of *Catalogne*, and the laſting Wars made againſt him by the *French*, in ſo many places, have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithſtanding, this people do ſo thrive under his protection, and draw ſo great commodity from their Trade with *Spain*, that it is thought their private men were never richer, the publick Treaſurie never fuller, than it is at the preſent.

CORSICA is an Iland in the *Liguſtick* or *Ligurian* Sea, oppoſite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is diſtant about ſixty miles, and lying juſt North of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, from which it is diſtant ſeven miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty miles, ſeventy in bredth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fift Climate, the longeſt day being almoſt fifteen hours.

The people are ſtubborn, poor, unlearned; ſuppoſed to be more cruell than other Nations, and ſo affirmed to be by *Cæſar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as ſome ſay, of the 52 daughters of *Theſpius*, who being all got with child in one night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea, by which they were brought unto this Iland, after peopled by them. From one of theſe ſonnes named *Cyrnus*, the Iland had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurreth in ſome old *Greek* Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annius* his Authors. And that of *Euſtathius*, a far more credible Writer is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corſica* from a woman ſo named dwelling in the coaſt of *Liguria*, who following her Bull hither was the firſt that diſcovered it. But theſe Orignalls I look on, the firſt eſpecially, as the worſt kind of *Romances*: the name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Punick Keranoth*, which ſignifies a horn or corner, by reaſon of the many Promontories with which it ſhoots into the Sea. *Corſica inſula multis Promontoriis anguloſa eſt*, as it is in *Iſidore*, Lib. 14. cap. 6. And for the name of *Corſica*, I ſhould derive it rather from the *Corſi* (by which name the inhabitants hereof are called in moſt *Latin* Writers) one of the two Nations of moſt note in the neighbouring Iland of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi in ea populorum Balari & Corſi*, as we find in *Pline*. Which *Corſi*, or ſome of them, being overborn by ſome new Invaders (which the Iland of *Sardinia* was ſeldom free of) were fain to ſhift their ſeat, and came over hither.

This Countrey yeeldeth excellent Dogs for game, good Horſes, fierce Maſtifs; and a beaſt called *Mufoli*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Iland, and *Sardinia* only, but there called *Mufrones*, or *Muſriones* (for I conceive they are the ſame under divers names) ſayd to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; which skin is of ſuch an incredible hardneſs, that the Beaſt being caſt headlong againſt a Rock receives no hurt, but nimbly flyes from his Enemy to his den.

The ſoyl by reaſon of the mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitfull, producing Corn in leſs plenty, but the beſt Wines, and ſuch as the old *Romans* well reliſhed in good meaſure. It produceth alſo Oyl, Figs, Raiſons, and Honey: the firſt three in a mediocrity of goodneſs, the laſt ſomewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholſome. It aboundeth alſo with Allom, Box-tree, Iron-mines; and the tree called *Taxus*, whoſe poyſonous Berries though in taſt pleaſing, are much fed on by Bees; and therfore thought to be the cauſe of the bitterneſs of the Honey. In ſome few places where the Rivers have their currents, eſpecially towards *Liguria*, it recompenſeth, by its fertility in bearing all manner of grain, the barrenneſs of the mountains. Which mountains cutting thorough the midſt of it, divide the whole Iland into *Ciſmontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and *Tranſmontanum*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet ſo that the people on each ſide call themſelves the *Ciſmontanes*, and the other the *Tramontane*. Both of them ſpeak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spaniſh*.

For Rivers there are none of note, the principall of thoſe which the Iland yeelds, being called *Gelo* and *Travignano*. And as for Cityes, ſome of the Antients reckoned 33, which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Caſtles only; there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies, the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Aleria*, a place of ſome Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Biſhops See. But now the place of moſt importance, is the Town of *Baſtia*, ſeated in the North-Eaſt part of the Iland, oppoſite almoſt unto *Aleria*, with a commodious Haven to it, and a ſtrong Garriſon to defend it, as being the ordinary ſeat of the Governour ſent hither from *Genoa*, and of the Biſhop of *Aleria*, who makes there his reſidence. 2 *Ajazze*, a reaſonable ſtrong Town, and a Biſhops See; and ſo is alſo 3 *Nebbio*, called *Cherſonum* by *Ptolomie*. Then there is 4 *Porto Urechio*, built not long ſince in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony ſent from *Genoa*. 5 S. *Florence*, a Port-town in the Northern part, in the middeſt betwixt *Nebbio* and *Mariana*; and 6 S. *Bonface*, called by *Ptolomie Portus Syracuſanus*, juſt oppoſite unto it

in

in the South corner of the Isle; both of them places of good safety, and capable of the greatest vessels that frequent those Seas. *Genoa.*

Who were the first Inhabitants is not easily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had some footing here, is manifest by that of *Calimachus* an old *Greek* Poet, who calleth it Φοινικα Κύρνον, the *Phœnician Cyrnus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which questionless he mistook for *Tyrii*) cast the *Phocenses* out of this Iland. But whether these *Phocenses* did first inhabit it, or onely had a Colony in some part thereof, is not demonstrable from those Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a conquest of it, and held it till the time of the first *Punick War*, when they were driven thence by the valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally subdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province till some time after, when it was fully conquered by *C. Papyrius*, A.V.C. 541. This Iland and *Sardinia* at the first being joyned together, and governed by one *Prætor* onely, but afterwards made two distinct Provinces, immediately subject to the *Prefect* of the City of *Rome*, and consequently members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire it became a prey unto the *Vandals*, who used to send their condemned persons out of *Africk* hither, to fell Timber for shipping; the Countrey even till then being very much over-grown with Woods. Afterwards with the rest of the Ilands of the *Mediterranean*, it was under the power of the *Saracens*, against whom *Ademar* the Count or Governour of *Genoa* armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquished them in a fight at Sea, but lost his life in the action; which notwithstanding the *Genoese* followed their good fortune, seised on the Iland, and carried thence 13 of the Enemies Ships. The *Pisans* after this got possession of it, but being vanquished by the *Genoese* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that it hath alwaies followed the fortune of *Genoa*, save that it remained somewhat longer than that City did in the hand of the *French*, who in the year 1554, seized on it by the ayd of the *Turks*, whom (to the great dishonour of Christianity) they entertained in their Wars against *Charles* the fift, but in the end restored it to the Commonwealth, upon the peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, An° 1559. And for securing of this Iland to the State of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handsome project; imploying none but naturall *Genoese* to serve in the Garrisons of the Iland, the better to keep under this untractable people; and filling all their Garrisons upon the *Continent* with naturall *Corsicans*, whereby the Iland is unfurnished of its ablest men, who also serve for *hostages* of the *publick Faith*.

Having thus took a brief view of the severall parts and members of this *Common-wealth*, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. First for the *Government*, the principall of their Magistrates hath the name of Duke; as *tiouler* as the Duke of *Venice*, but of less esteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called most properly the *Mayore* of *Genoa*. For those two years he dwels in the publick Palace, an hath 500 *Germans* for the guard of his person; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth some resemblance of a *Negative voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his house as a private person, but so that during life he hath the office of a *Procurator* in the Commonwealth. To him there are assistant eight principall Officers, who sit upon the same form with him, and continue in their office for two years also; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeurie*: but he and they, in matters of most weight and moment subordinate to the *Generall Counsell*, consisting of 400 persons, all of them Gentlemen of the Citie, who with the nine before remembered do constitute the body of the Commonwealth. Under this form they have continued, ever since by the power and goodness of *Andreas Doria* (who might have made himself their Prince) they were discharged of their subjection to the *French*, *An.* 1528, never in danger of relapsing to their former servitude, but in the treasonable practice of the *Flischi*, a remarkable Family of the City, who hoping to possess themselves of the *Principalitie* under protection of the *French*, had so laid their plot, that *Augustine di Flischi*, who was designed to be their Duke, had in the night time seised on the Navy, and slain *John Dunia* who had the command thereof: but leaping from one Gallie to another to make sure of all, stumbled and fell into the sea; where he and his ambitious treasons were both drowned together.

As for their *Forces*, there are within the *Signeurie* 10000 men ready to arm at any time, as they see occasion; 25 Gallies alwayes ready in the publick *Arsenall*, and four continually at Sea for defence of their Trading. Sufficient strength to save them from a petit force, though not to guard them from the power of a strong Invader. But the chief strength which they rely on is the King of *Spain*; whose protection though it costs them dear, is worth their money; and they have prospered so well by it, that notwithstanding all the losses which they have sustained, it is supposed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth (besides the Treasury of S. *George*, which is very rich, and managed as a distinct body from the publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no less than 430000 Crowns *per An.*

As for the *Treasurie* of S. *George*, though it contain no part of the publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State distinct: yet is it of such ready use, so able at all times to furnish the Republick with vast sums of money, that the security and preservation of this Commonwealth depends much upon it. The Institution and Administration whereof, together with

Lombardy.

with the benefit which from hence redoundeth unto this Eſtate, I cannot better repreſent to the Readers view, than in the words of *Machiavel* the greateſt Politick of his times; who in his Hiſtory of *Florence* hath expreſſed it thus. "*Poſt diuturnum illud bellum quod* Genoenſes *mul-*
"*tis ab hinc annis cum* Venetis *geſſere, &c.* After that tedious war between the *Genoeſe* and *Vene-*
"*tians* was ended in the yeer 1381. and that the *Genoeſe* found themſelves unable to repay thoſe
"moneys which they had taken up of their private Citizens in purſuit thereof, they thought
"it beſt to aſſign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that ſo in tract of time the whole debt
"might be ſatisfied; and for that end allotted them a Common-hall, there to deliberate and
"determine of their affairs. Theſe men thus made the Maſters of the publick Taxes, elect
"among themſelves a Common-Counſell of an Hundred; and over them eight Officers of
"eſpeciall power to order and direct the reſt, and to diſpoſe of the *Intrado*: which Corporati-
"on ſo eſtabliſhed, they entituled S. *Georges Bank*. It happened afterwards, that the *Republick*
"wanting more moneys was glad to have recourſe unto S. *George*; who growing wealthy by
"the orderly managing of his ſtock, was beſt able to relieve them in their neceſſities: and as
"before they aſſigned their Taxes over to him, ſo now, *ditionem ſuam oppignorabant*, they *Mort-*
"*gaged* alſo their Demain. So that S. *George* continually waxing richer, and the State poorer,
"this Corporation became poſſeſſed at laſt of almoſt all the Towns and Territories of the Com-
"mon-wealth: all which they govern by their own Magiſtrates, choſen by common ſuffrage
"from among themſelves. It followed hereupon, that the common people bearing leſs reſpect
"unto the publick applyed themſelves unto S. *George*: this being always orderly and prudent-
"ly governed, that many times inclining to Tyranny; this never changing Officers, or form
"of Government, that ſubject to the proud and ambitious luſts of each Uſurper, whether
"Domeſticall or Forein. Inſomuch that when the two potent Families of the *Fregoſi* and *Ador-*
"*ni*, contended for the Soveraignty in this Eſtate, moſt of the People look upon it as a Quarrell
"which concerned them not: S. *George* not medling more in it than to take an Oath of the
"prevailing Faction to preſerve his Liberties. *Rariſſimo ſane exemplo, &c.* A moſt excellent
"and rare thing (ſaith he) never found out by any of the old *Philoſophers* in their *Imaginarie*
"Forms of a Common-wealth: that in the ſame State, and the ſame People, one may ſee at
"the ſame time, both Tyranny and Liberty, Juſtice and Oppreſſion, Civilitie and Miſgovern-
"ments: This only Corporation preſerving in the Common-wealth its antient luſtre. So that
"in caſe S. *George* ſhould in the end become poſſeſſed of the remainder of the Patrimony and
"Eſtate thereof, as it is poſſible it may, the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with
"that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpoſe, that great Maſter of
State-craft; a man of leſs impiety, and more regular life, than ſome of thoſe who have tra-
duced him for an Atheiſt.

Here are within this Common-wealth,
Arch-biſhops 1. Biſhops 14.

THE ESTATES OF LOMBARDY.

LOMBARDY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Romandiola*, and the Eſtate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the Weſt, with that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italie* from *France*; on the North (reckoning *Marca Trevigiana* within the bounds hereof) with that part of the *Alpes* which lyeth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called antiently *Gallia Ciſalpina*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more anon, and took this new name from the *Lombards*, or *Longobardi*, a people of *Germany* (of whom we have already ſpoken, but ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Hungarie*;) who coming out of *Pannonia* poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of *Italie*, but left their name to this Tract only. A tract of ground of which it may be truly ſaid, that as *Italie* is the garden of *Europe*, ſo *Lombardie* is the garden of *Italie*, or the faireſt flower in all that garden. A countrey of ſo rich a mixture, that ſuch another peece of ground for beautifull Cities, goodly Rivers, for fields and paſtures ſhaded with ſuch excellent fruits, for plenty of fowl, fiſh, corn, wine, cannot be found again in our Weſtern World. So that it is no wonder that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain*, have ſtrived ſo eagerly and with ſuch effuſion of Chriſtian blood for the Duchie of *Millain*, a part only (though the richeſt part) of this goodly Country, and but a ſpot of earth, compared to their own Dominions.

Antiently it was of more extent than now it is, containing beſides the principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth

growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the name of *Gallia Ciſalpina*. It was called *Gallia* from the *Galls*, who being drawn into *Italie* by the ſweet taſt of their wines, ſubdued the Natives, and poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Countrey from the *Apennine* to the *Adriatick*, and from the *Alpes* to the River of *Rubicon*, on the North-East, and the River of *Arnus* on the South-East. This happened in the Reign of *Bellovaſus* King of the *Celtæ*, and of *Tarquinius Priſcus*, King of *Rome*. *Ciſalpina* it was called becauſe it lay on that ſide of the *Alpes* which was next to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the further ſide, which had the name of *Tranſalpina*. It had the name alſo of *Gallia togata*, becauſe when civilized they applied themſelves to the *Roman* habit; the other being called *Braccata*, becauſe they kept themſelves to their former Trouzes, which by the *Latines* were termed *Braccæ*. Theſe *Ciſalpines* were they who ſacked *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*: from whence being beaten by *Camillus*, they were ſo ſlaughtered by the ſaid *Camillus* neer the River *Aniene*, and by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Vadimonius*, that not one of them eſcaped to brag of the burning of *Rome*. Yet durſt not the *Romans* ſet upon them in their own Countrey, till a little before the comming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italie*, when the *Senones*, who had before ſacked *Rome*, beſieging *Arretium*, a Town of *Tuſcany*, were not only forced to raiſe their ſiege, but were beaten home by *Manius Curius* the Conſull: who followed his blow ſo well, that he drave them quite out of their Countrey. After this the *Romans* ſuffered the reſt of them to remain in quiet, till the end of the firſt *Punick* war, when being grown of more ſtrength, and at very good leiſure, they took the reſt of their Countrey from them, under the conduct of *Flaminius* the *Roman* Conſull, *A.V.C.*530. who preſently cauſed *Roman* Colonies to be planted in it, as the beſt way to aſſure his Conqueſt: their totall ſubjugation following in the year next after, under the Conſulſhip of *Marcellus* and *Corn. Scipio* And yet it was accounted as a Province diſtinct from *Italie* untill the ſetling of the Empire in *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who dividing *Italie* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Ciſalpina*, that is to ſay, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Tranſpadana*: as afterwards it made up four of the ſeven Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of *Italie*, according to the diſtribution of it which was made by *Conſtantine*. How it came with the reſt of *Italie* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the reſt of that Kingdom, hath been ſhewen already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*, it did ſo far preſerve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperors were ſometimes crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, as at *Aken* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a ſilver Crown for the Realm of *Germany*, and with a golden Crown at *Rome* for the ſacred Empire. But the Empire being weakned by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it, and parcelled in the concluſion amongſt many Princes, as it ſtill continueth. *Mil lain.*

The *Lombards* being maſters of it, and having given it their own name, divided it by the River *Po*, into *Longobardia Ciſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po*, and the *Apennine* Mountains; and *Tranſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alpes*: the firſt of which the old *Romans* called *Æmilia*, from *Æmilius Lepidus*, the founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconſul of it. In the diviſion of *Italie* by *Aug. Cæſar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the name of *Italia Tranſpadana*, by which name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*, and by him called, *Florentiſsimum Italiæ latus*, the moſt flouriſhing part of all *Italie*. But this diviſion being long ſince worn out of uſe, and the whole Country being cantonned into many Eſtates, as before was ſayd, we will conſider it at the preſent as it ſtands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Trevigiana*, deſcribed already, make up *Tranſpadana*: and thoſe of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Montferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Ciſpadana*.

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THe Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the Eaſt, the Eſtates of *Mantua* and *Parma* on the Weſt, *Piemont*, and ſome part of *Switzerland* one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North, *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria* or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the Country of the *Inſubres*, one of the greateſt Tribes of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, from whence it hath the name of *Inſubrium Ducatus* in ſome of the neater Modern Writers, but commonly called *Ducatus Mediolanenſis*, from *Mediolanum*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principall Rivers of it, 1 *Padus*, 2 *Addua*, 3 *Ollius*, and 4 *Ticinus*; of which ſomewhat hath been ſayd already; and beſides thoſe it hath alſo in it the Lake called antiently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Come* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 miles in length.

The chief Cities and places of note are, 1 *Modoecum*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatneſs, the fame thereof ariſing from the Iron Crown (kept in a Monaſtery here) wherewith ſome of the Emperors have been crowned by the Arch-biſhops of *Millain*. A cuſtom taken up from the Kings of the *Oſtrogothes*, who are ſayd to have firſt uſed the ſame, in teſtimony that they had won their Eſtates by *Iron*. 2 *Pavie*, or *Papia*, ſeated on the Flood *Ticinus*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeaze*, the firſt Duke therof; made an Univerſity by *Charles* the fourth, An. 1361. and famous for the Battell in which *Francis* the firſt of *France* was taken priſoner by *Charles* the

Millain. fift, An. 1525. It is ſeated, as before was ſayd, on the Flood *Ticinus*, about fourr miles from the *Po* or *Padus*, the River carrying at this City ſo great a breadth, that the bridge over it is no leſs than 200 walking Pates long, built of Free-ſtone, and covered over head with a roof ſupported all along with pillars. From this River the City it ſelf was antiently called *Ticinum*, and took the name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Patria piorum* (the two firſt ſyllables of thoſe words being joyned together) by reaſon of the many godly men it did produce. It lyeth in length from East to West, a new fair ſtreet dividing it in the very middeſt, on the Weſt ſide whereof are two handſom Market-places, and a ſtrong Caſtle built by *Galeaze* the firſt Duke of *Millain*; whoſe Tomb together with that of *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, are here ſtill remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being ſo pleaſed with the ſituation of the place, that they made it the Seat-royall of their Kingdom. The Cathedrall here is one of the beſt indowed in *Italy*, if not in *Europe*, the Revenues of it amounting to 200000 Crowns *per annum*. 2 *Como*, the Birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handſom Town, ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the name of *Lago di Como*; into which Lake, and thorough it, runs the *Addua*, and yet the waters do not mingle, that of the River paſſing over thoſe of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair houſes, and handſom villages, which do much beautifie the place; and in the middeſt thereof an Iland called *Comacina*, in which there was a ſtrong Fortreſs in former times, wherein the *Longobardian* Kings did preſerve their treaſurie. 3 *Lodi*, or *Landa* in the *Latin*, ſeated in a proſperous ſoyl, and bleſſed with a painfull and induſtrious people. 4 *Novara*, ſituate upon an high hill, in which live many antient and noble Familyes: of right belonging to the *Spaniard*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Magimus* wrote, conſigned over upon ſome conditions to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town, though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is ſituate within the Dukedom of *Montferrat*; and ſo is 5 *Alexandria* alſo, once a poor ſmall village, known by the name of *Roboretum*, from a Grove of Oakes adjoyning to it: afterwards being raiſed to its preſent greatneſs by the joynt purſes of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*, in honour of the Emperor it was called *Caſarea*. But in ſhort time theſe people ſiding with the Popes, drew on themſelves the anger of the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who having in a manner deſolated the City of *Millain*, the people thereof at the deſtruction of the City retired to this Town, calling it in honour of Pope *Alexander* the third, whoſe part they then took againſt the Emperor, by the name of *Alexandria*, which it ſtill retaineth. It is now the ſtrongeſt Out-work of the vvhole Duchy, well fortified againſt all aſſaults and batteries which may come from *France*. 6 *Marignan*, ſituate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers* by King *Francis* the firſt; and now the title of a Marqueſs. 7 *Cremona*, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthy ſoyl; an antient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautifull City to this day; and of ſuch fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the name of *Cremona* the faithfull. It was built in the firſt year of the ſecond *Punick* War, and burnt to the ground by *Veſpaſians* ſouldiers, after the defeat of *Vitellius* his forces; which defeat was given under the walls of this Town. For when *Antonius*, *Veſpaſians* Generall, firſt after his victory entered into it, he went into a Bath to waſh away the ſweat and blood from his body, where finding the water ſomewhat too cold, he ſayd by chance, that it ſhould anon be made hotter. Which words the ſouldiers applying to their greedy deſires, ſet fire on the Town, and ſpent four days in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Veſpaſian* it was again re-edified, and is now famous for the high Tower, from which grew the by-word, *Una turris in Cremona, unus Petrus in Roma, unus Portus in Ancona*. 8 *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Dioceſe of *Italy* (called therefore *Μητρόπολις τῆς Ἰταλίας*, by S. *Athanaſius*) At this time the faireſt and the biggeſt of all *Lombardy*, having a Caſtle ſo ſtrongly fortified, with naturall and artificiall Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable. A City very populous, containing 200000 perſons: and of great Trade, here being private ſhops equalling the publike ſtore-houſes of other places; and the people are ſo rich, that the wife of every Mechanick will flaunt it in her ſilks and taffatyes. This City is ſayd to have been built by the *Galls*, 359 years before Chriſt. It is ſeven miles in circuit, and honoured with an Univerſity, wherein flouriſhed *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Celius Rhodiginus*, and *Cardanus*: ſeated it is in as commodious a ſoyl as any in *Italy*, environed with water by two great channels, the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Teſis* or *Atheſis*, which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in ſo great abundance, that things there are at very cheap rates; and adde much alſo to the induſtry of the inhabitants in the vending and diſperſing of their Manufactures, which are of great eſteem in moſt parts of the World. The buildings of the City generally are fair and ſtately, but three eſpecially commended for their magnificence, that is to ſay, the Caſtle, the Hoſpital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth uſe to glory that *Barnabas* the Apoſtle was its firſt Biſhop, and St. *Ambroſe* one of his Succeſſors; that formerly their Biſhop ſtood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much privileged as that; and that ſince thoſe times they have given unto the world four Popes, that is to ſay, *Alexander* the 2, *Urban* the 3, *Celeſtine* the 5, and of late, *Gregory* the 14.

As for the fortunes of it, it continued in the power of the *French*, and the Kings of *Italy* of that Nation, from the deſtruction of the *Lombards* till the Kingdom of *Italy* fell from the houſe of *Charles* the Great, and came at laſt into the hands of the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued

tinued till the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, from whoſe obedience it revolted An° 1161, in behalf of Pope *Alexander* the third, the Emperor divers times defacing the City, and the people ſtil miniſtring freſh occaſions of diſlike and quarrel. *Beatrix* the wife of *Frederick* comming to ſee the City, without any ill intentions to it, was by the irreverent people firſt impriſon'd, and then moſt barbarouſly uſed. For ſetting her upon a Mule, they turned her face towards the tail, which they made her hold inſtead of a bridle; and having thus ſhewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible affront, the Emperor beſieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the people to dye without mercy, but ſuch as would undergo this ranſom. Between the buttocks of a skittiſh and kicking Mule there was faſtned a bunch of figs, one or more of which, ſuch as deſired to live muſt ſnatch out with their teeth, their hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing thorow the ſtreets. A condition which moſt of them accepted: and thereupon gave occaſion to the cuſtom uſed among the *Italians*, who when they intend to ſcof or diſgrace a man, are wont to put their thumb betwixt two of their fingers, ſaying *Ecco la Fico*; a diſgrace anſwerable to that of making horns (in *England*) to him that is ſuſpected to be a Cuckold. The City after this rebelling, and again taken by the Emperor, he levelled it unto the ground, pulled down the walls, and cauſed the whole ground on which it ſtood to be ploughed up, and ſowed with ſalt; ſeeming to threaten by that *Emblem*, that it ſhould never be re-edified. Which notwithſtanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope with the help of theſe *Millaneſe*, and the *Venetians*, had at laſt the better of the Emperor, whom he enjoyned, after a vile ſubmiſſion, to undertake a journey to the *Holy-land*. Freed from the Emperor, they began to live after the form of *Republick*, in which condition they continued about 56 years, when *Otho*, ſurnamed *Viſconti* (*quaſi bis Comes*) becauſe he was Lord of *Millain* and *Angerona*, aſſumed the title to himſelf, and ſetled it upon that Family after his deceaſe; but ſo, that for the moſt part they were under the command of the *German* Emperors, and to them accomptable. *Galeaz* the firſt, ſo called (as ſome write) becauſe the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his birth, added to the Eſtate hereof the Cities of *Crema* and *Cremona*. In the perſon of *John Galeazo* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready money; which *John* increaſed ſo mightily in wealth and power, that he had 29 Cities under his command; and dyed as he was going to *Florence* to be crowned King of *Tuſcany*. To him ſucceeded *John Maria*, and after him his brother *Philip*; who in his life had maried his only daughter (but illegitimate) to *Franciſco Sforza*, the beſt Commander of his times, and at his death appointed *Alfonſo* of *Aragon* King of *Naples* for his heir and ſucceſſor. Before *Alfonſo* could take any benefit of this deſignation, *Sforza* was quietly poſſeſſed both of the City and the loves of the people. This *Francis Sforze* (I muſt needs crave leave to tell this ſtory) was the ſonne of *James Altendnto*, a plain Country man, who going to his labour with his Ax in his hand, whilſt a great Army was paſſing by him, compared the miſery and unpleaſingneſs of his preſent condition, with thoſe fair poſſibilities which a martiall life did preſent uuto him. And being in a great diſpute within himſelf what were beſt to do, he preſently fell upon a reſolution of putting the queſtion to the determination of the *Heavenly Providence*; by caſting his Ax unto the top of the tree next to him: conditioning with himſelf, that if the Ax came down again, he would contentedly apply himſelf to his wonted labour; but if it hung upon the boughs, he would betake himſelf unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in paſſage. He did ſo, the Ax hung upon the boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived ſo well in that imployment, that he became one of the beſt Captains of his time, ſurnamed *de Cotonioglа* from the place of his dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatneſs of his noble courage. By *Antonia* the daughter of *Francis di Caſalis* the Lord of *Cortona*, he was the father of this *Francis Sforze* whom now we ſpeak of; who was ſo fortunate a Commander in the wars of *Italy*, that to oblige him to his party, *Philip* the Duke of *Millain* beſtowed his daughter upon him, and thereby a fair title to this great Eſtate, which he ſucceſſively obtained againſt all pretenders. In his line it continued till the coming of *Lewis* the 12 of *France*, the ſonne of *Charles*, and nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentine* the ſole daughter of *John Galeaze* the firſt Duke: who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforze*, betrayed by the *Switzers* into his hands, carryed him priſoner into *France*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the eſtate. Outed not long after by the confederate Princes of *Italy*, who were jealous of ſo great a neighbor; he left the cauſe and quarrel unto *Francis* the firſt, his next ſucceſſor in that Kingdom: in purſuance whereof it is ſayd by *Bellay* a *French* Writer, that the uſe of Muskets was firſt known. But *Francis* being in concluſion taken at the battell of *Pavie*, and carryed priſoner into *Spain*; for his releaſe was forced to releaſe all claim unto this eſtate. A releaſe long before endeavouced by ſome *French* Politicians, becauſe the pretenſions hereunto had brought ſuch damage to that Crown: and no leſs eagerly oppoſed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the ſame reaſon that *Scipio Naſica* did oppoſe the deſtruction of *Carthage*, that is to ſay) becauſe it did not only keep the *French* Nation in continual diſcipline of War, but ſerved for a purgation of idle and ſuperfluous people: yet notwithſtanding this releaſe, *Francis* renewed the War again, and laid ſiege to *Millain*, then under the command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a *Spaniſh* Garriſon: during vvhich vvar, the vvretched *Millaneſe* endured the vvorſt of miſeries. For firſt the Governour, under colour of providing pay for his ſouldiers, got all the victuals of the town into the Caſtle, to be ſold again at his ovvn price: vvhich many of the poorer ſort not able to pay, periſhed of famin in the ſtreets. And on the other ſide, his ſouldiers which were quartered in moſt parts of the City

Millain.

Mantua. uſed when they wanted mony, to chain up their Hoſts, and then to put them to a ranſom. Such as upon this barbarous uſuage fled out of the City, had their Goods confiſcate: on which there followed ſuch a diſconſolate deſolation, that the chief ſtreets were over-grown with netles and brambles. In this miſerable eſtate it continued till *Charles* the Emperor having totally driven out the *French*, reſtored it to *Francis Sforze*, brother to the laſt Duke *Maximilian*, and ſonne of that *Ludowick*, who to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, had moſt improvidently taught the *French* the way into *Italy*. But this *Francis* dying without iſſue, and the houſe of the *Sforze* failing in him, the Emperor entred on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the ſame to his ſucceſſors in the Realm of *Spain*. This ſaid, we will ſum up the whole ſtory of this Eſtate, in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

1277 1 *Otho*, Arch-biſhop of *Millain*.
1295 2 *Matthew*, Brothers ſonne to *Otho*, confirmed in his command of *Millain*, by *Albertus* the Emperor.
1322 3 *Galeaze Viſconti*, ſonne of *Matthew*, diſſeized of his command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperor.
1329 4 *Actio Viſconti*, ſonne of *Galeazo*, confirmed in his Fathers power by the ſame *Lewis* the Emperor.
1339 5 *Luchino Viſconti*, brother to *Galeaze*.
1349 6 *John Viſconti*, the brother of *Luchino*.
1354 7 *Galeaze* II. ſonne of *Stephen* the brother of *John*.
1378 8 *John Galeaze*, ſonne of the firſt *Galeaze*, created by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *An.* 1395.
1402 9 *John Maria*, ſonne of *John Galeaze*, ſlain by the people for his horrible tyrannies.
1412 10 *Philip Maria*, the laſt of the *Viſconti*, which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great power in ſwaying the affairs of *Italie*. He died An° 1446; the *Millaneſe* for ſome years reſuming their former liberty.
1446 11 *Francis Sforze*, in right of his wife *Blanch* the baſe daughter of *Philip*, ſeconded by the power of the ſword, admitted Duke by the generall conſent of the people of *Millain*; one of the Knights of the noble Order of the *Garter*.
1461 12 *Galeaze Sforze*, a valiant, but libidinous Prince, cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
1477 13 *John Galeaze Sforze*, privately made away (as it was ſuppoſed) by his Uncle *Lodowick*.
1494 14 *Lodowick Sforze*, who to ſecure himſelf of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the *French* into *Italie*.
1501 15 *Lewis* the 12 of *France*, ſonne unto *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, and *Valentina* daughter to the firſt Duke of *Millaine*, vanquiſhed *Ludowick*, carried him priſoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himſelf.
1513 16 *Maximilian Sforze*, the ſonne of *Ludowick*, reſtored to the Dukedom by the power of the *Switzers* and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis* the firſt, Sonne-in-law, and Succeſſor to King *Lewis* the 12 in the Kingdom of *France*.
1529 17 *Francis Sforze*, brother of *Maximilian*, reſtored to the Eſtate, and the *French* expelled by the puiſſance of *Charles* the 5th, who after the death of this Duke *Francis* (the laſt of the *Sforzes*) An° 1535, united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of ſuch great extent and power as in former times: there being but nine Cities remaining of thoſe 29, which were once under the command of the Dukes hereof; the reſt being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*, the Dukes of *Mantua* and *Parma*. And yet is this accompted the prime Dukedom of *Chriſtendom* (as *Flanders* was accompted the prime Earldom of it) affording the Annuall Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue might it come clear unto his Coffers. But what with the diſcharge of his Garriſon-Souldiers, the defraying of his Vice-Roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Miniſters; it is conceived that he ſpends more on it than he getteth.

The Armes hereof are *Argent*, a Serpent *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; in his Gorge an Infant *Gules*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Saracen*, vanquiſhed by *Otho* the firſt of the *Viſconti*, in the *Holy-land*.

There are in this Dukedom
Arch-biſhop 1. Biſhops 6.

The Dukedom of MANTUA.

THe Dukedom of *MANTUA*, is bounded on the Weſt, with *Millain*; on the Eaſt, with *Romandiola*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Country about *Mantua* is reaſonably good, and yeelds all ſorts of Fruits being well manured

manured; plentifull in Corn and Paſtures; the very High-wayes by the fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow intermingled in every place, as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be ſo civill and well-bred as the reſt of *Italie*, childiſh in their apparrell, without manly gravity, poor in the entertainment of their friends, and exacting all they can from ſtrangers. *Mantua.*

The places in it of moſt note are, 1 *Mercaria*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2 *Bozilia*, a ſmall, but pleaſant habitation, belonging to ſome Princes of the Ducall family; built with fair Cloyſters towards the ſtreet, in which paſſengers may walk dry in the greateſt rain. 3 *Petula*, a ſmall Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born; generally ſayd to be born in *Mantua* (*Mantua* Virgilio *gaudet*, as the old Verſe is) becauſe this Village is ſo near the City of *Mantua* (being but two miles diſtant) that his birth might very well be aſcribed unto it. 4 *Mantua*, ſeated on the River *Mincius*, now called *Sarca*, which comming out of *Lago di Garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a paſſage unto *Venice*. By nature ſtrong, environed on three ſides with a running water, half a mile in bredth, and on the fourth ſide with a Wall. The Dukes to take their pleaſure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucentaure*, five ſtoryes high, and capable of two hundred perſons (whence it had the name) furniſhed very richly both for ſtate and pleaſure. *Ocnus* the ſonne of *Manto* the Propheteſs, the daughter of *Tireſias*, is ſaid to have been the founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mothers name; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil* a Native of thoſe parts do report it ſo; this City being one of thoſe which the *Tuſcans* built beyond the *Apennine*, as the ſoundeſt Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whomſoever built at firſt) in the declining times of Chriſtian purity, for a Councill holden in it, *An.* 1061, wherein it was decreed, that the chooſing of the Pope ſhould from thenceforth belong unto the *Cardinals*. A Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was firſt by *Conſtantine* the third ſurnamed *Pogonatus*, given to the Clergy and people of *Rome* in the time of Pope *Benedict* the ſecond, *An.* 684. reſumed by *Charles* the Great when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the College of *Cardinals*. But to return unto the Town; on the Eaſt-ſide of a bridge of about 500 paces long, covered over head, and borne up with Arches, ſtands the Dukes Palace for the City, and not far thence the *Domo*, or Cathedrall Church of S. *Peter*. The Palace very fair and ſtately, but far ſhort for the pleaſures and delights thereof of his Palace at *Marmarollo*, five miles from the City, which though it be of a low roof (after the manner of antient buildings) yet it is very richly furniſhed, and adorned with very beautifull Gardens, able to lodge and give content to the beſt Prince in Chriſtendom. Here are alſo many other Towns, as 5 *Caprana*, and 6 *Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be obſerved that *Mantua* followed for long time the fortunes of the *Weſtern* Empire, till given by *Otho* the ſecond to *Theobald* Earl of *Canoſſe* for the many good ſervices he had done him. *Boniface* who ſucceeded him had to Wife *Beatrix* the ſiſter of *Henry* the ſecond, and by her was Father of *Mathildis* that famous Warrioureſs, who carried ſo great a ſtroak in the ſtate of *Italie*. Being diſpoſſeſſed of her Eſtate by *Henry* the third, ſhe joyned in faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and diſmembred from the Empire many goodly Territorys; which at her death (having had three husbands but no iſſue) ſhe gave it in fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, *An.* 1115. After her death *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that protection failing, then by little and little it was brought under by the family of the *Bonacelſi*, who Lording it over a Free-people with too great ſeverity, contracted ſuch a generall hatred, that *Paſſavino* the laſt of them was ſlain in the Market-place by the people, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman, who preſently with great applauſe took to himſelf the Government of the Eſtate, *An.* 1328, which hath continued in his honſe to this very day with a great deal of luſtre, whoſe ſucceſſors take here as followeth, under the ſeverall titles of

A. Ch. The Lords, Marqueſſes, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

1328 1 *Lewis Gonzaga*, the firſt of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.
1366 2 *Guido*, ſonne of *Lewis*.
1369 3 *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* II. ſonne of *Guido*.
1382 4 *Francis Gonzaga*, ſonne of *Lewis* 2d highly extolled by *Poggie* the *Florentine* for his Wiſdom and Learning, who valiantly repulſed the attempts made againſt his Eſtate by *John Galeaze* then firſt Duke of *Millain*.
1407 5 *John Franciſco Gonzaga*, created the firſt Marqueſs of *Mantua*, by the Emperor *Sigiſmund*.
1444 6 *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* III. ſonne of *John Franciſco*, who entertained the Emperor *Frederick* and the King of *Denemark* with great magnificence.
1478 7 *Frederick*, ſonne of *Lewis* the third.
1484 8 *Francis* II. ſonne of *Frederick*.
1519 9 *Frederick* II. Commander of the Armies of the Pope and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles* the fift with great ſolemnity, by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua*, 1530, and declared Marqueſs of *Monſferras* in right of his wife.

Iodena. 1540 10 *Francis* III. ſonne of *Frederick* the ſecond, Duke of *Mantua*, and Marqueſs of *Montferrat*.

1550 11 *William*, the brother of *Francis* the third, created the firſt Duke of *Montferrat*.

1587 12 *Vincent*, ſonne of *William*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*.

13 *Francis* IV. ſonne of *Vincent*, had to wife *Margaret* the daughter of *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a daughter named *Mary*; in whoſe behalf the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the war againſt her Uncle for *Montferrat*.

1613 14 *Ferdinand*, the brother of *Francis* the fourth, ſucceeded him in both Eſtates, notwithſtanding the oppoſition of the Duke of *Savoy*.

15 *Vincent* the II. the brother of *Ferdinand* and *Francis* the 4th.

1628 16 *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers* in *France*, by his Mothers line, and of *Mantua* and *Montferrat* by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Sonne of *Frederick* the firſt Duke of *Mantua*, ſucceeded not without great oppoſition of the *Spaniſh* Faction, who ſacked *Mantua*, diſtreſſed *Caſal*, and much impoveriſhed both Eſtates. But the buſineſs was at laſt compoſed by the power of the *French*, and the inveſtiture conferred upon him by the hands of the Emperor.

The chief order of Knighthood in theſe Dukedoms, is, of the *The blood of our Lord* JESUS *Chriſt*, inſtituted *An.* 1608. The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Mariage was ſolemnized between his ſonne *Francis* and the Lady *Margaret* daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It conſiſteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan* Dukes are ſoveraigns, and was allowed by Pope *Paul* the fifth. The Collar hath threads of Gold layd on fire, and inter-woven with theſe words, *Domine probaſti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, ſupporting three drops of blood, and circumſcribed with, *Nihil iſto triſte recepto*. It took this name, becauſe in Saint *Andrews* Church in *Mantua*, are ſayd to be kept as a moſt precious Relique, certain drops of our *Saviours blood* (thou canſt not, O Reader, but beleeve it) with a peece of the *ſponge*.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* alſo) are in circuit nigh unto thoſe of *Florence*, but his Revenues fall ſhort; which amount to about 500000 *Ducats* only, but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burdenſom to his ſubjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all ſides land-locked from navigation and traffick.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Croſs *Patee Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, membred of the ſecond: under an Eſcocheon in *Feſſe* charged Quarterly with *Gules* a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Barres *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom
Arch-Biſhops 1. Biſhops 4.

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THe Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoyning to them: both of them ſituate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Ciſpadana*; and conſequently partake of the pleaſures and commodities of it.

The people of this Dukedom are ſayd to be better-natured than moſt of *Italie*: thoſe of *Modena* being quick in their reſolutions; eaſie to be pacified when wronged; and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of preſent wits, and fit for any thing they can be imployed in: the women in both Towns of a mild diſpoſition, neither too courtlie, nor too froward, as in other places.

The firſt and principall City is that of *Modena*, antiently better known by the name of *Mutina*, and famous in thoſe times for the firſt battell betwixt *Antonie* and *Auguſtus Ceſar*; this latter being then not above eighteen years of age, and yet made head of a new League againſt *Antonius*, whom the Senate and people looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the war was left to *Hirtius* and *Panſa* then Conſuls; the fortune of the day ſo equall, that *Antony* left the field, and the Conſuls their lives; leaving *Auguſtus* the abſolute command of a powerfull Army, into whoſe favours he ſo cunningly did work himſelf, that he made them the foundation of his future greatneſs. It was at that time a *Roman* Colony, but being ruined by the fury of the *Gothes* and *Lombards*, was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, ſituate near the *Apennine* in a very good ſoyl, and of indifferent fair buildings. In the diſtractions of *Italie* betwixt the Emperors and the Popes, *Guido* the Popes Legat, and then Biſhop thereof, conſigned it over to *Azo* of the houſe of *Eſte*, Lord of *Ferrara*, Ao. 1302, the Pope himſelf conſenting to it, upon the payment of a yearly tribute of 10000 Crowns: ſince which time it hath been for the moſt part in the power of that houſe. *Borſius* the Marqueſs of *Ferrara* being by *Frederick* the third made Duke of *Mutina*. 2 *Reggio*, the ſecond Town of note, hath taſted much of the ſame fortune; at firſt a *Roman* Colony called *Regium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Gothes* when they came firſt into *Italie*; repaired and compaſſed with a Wall by its own inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canoſſe*. But being wearie of that yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in thoſe buſtling times, they gave themſelves unto *Obizo* the Father of *Azo*, An° 1292, and after that in the year 1326

to

to the See of *Rome*. Passing through many other hands, it was at last sold for 60000 *Ducats* to the *Visconti*, Lords of *Millain*, An. 1370, and in the end recovered by the house of *Este*, An° 1409, and gave the title of a Duke to the aforesaid *Borsius*, whom *Frederick* the third made Duke of *Modena* and *Reggio* 1452 *Parma.*

The successors of this *Borsius* are before layd down in the succession of *Ferrara*, who held the whole estate together till the death of *Alphonso* the first Duke. He dying without lawfull issue, An° 1595, left his estate to *Cæsar de Este*, his Nephew by a base sonne, called *Alphonso* also; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement* the 8. a war was threatned for the whole, but at last compremised upon these conditions, that the Church of *Rome* should have *Ferrara*, with all the lands and territories appertaining to it, as an Estate antiently holden of that See; and that *Modena* and *Reggio* being *Imperiall Feifes* should remain to *Cæsar*, but to be held in fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cæsar* to have leave to carry away all his moveable goods, to sell such of his lands as were not of the antient domain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordnance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erected State, distinct, and independent of any other: each City being well fortified and garrisoned, and furnished with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yeeld unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raise out of his Estates, I cannot positively determine: But by the Tribute formerly payd unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of *Ferrara*, I conceive they cannot yeeld less than 100000 Crowns of yearly in-come. The Armes of this Duke the same with those of *Ferrara* before blazoned.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THe *Dukedom* of *PARMA* hath on the North the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*; on the South, the *Apennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the East, the Country of *Modena*; on the West, *Montferrat*: situate, as *Modena* is in *Lombardia Cispadana*, and much of the same nature both for soyl, and air, and other the commodities of those parts of *Italie*.

The principall Cities of it are, 1 *Parma*, an antient City, and made a Colony of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punick* War, as *Mutina* and *Aquileia* at the same time were. It is seated on a small River of the same name, which runneth almost thorough the middest of it; beautified with very handsome buildings, and peopled by a race of ingenious men, whether they do betake themselves unto Arts or Arms. The grounds about this City are of excellent pasturage, and yeeld great plenty of the Cheese which is called *Parmesan*. 2 *Placentia*, seated on the *Po*, one of the first Colonies which the *Romans* planted amongst the *Cisalpine Galls*, and famous for the resistance which it made both to *Annibal* and *Asdrubal*, who severally in vain besieged it: made afterwards the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Æmilia*; yet nothing the less beautifull for so great an age. The fields adjoyning have the same commendation with those of *Parma*, for most excellent Cheese; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth. 3 *Mirandula*, a proper Town, built in the time of *Constans*, the sonne of *Constantine* the Great: the Patrimony of the noble Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picus de Mirandula* that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudataries to the Dukes of *Parma*. 4 *Briscello*, called antiently *Brixellum*, not far from the chief City *Parma*; of no great note at the present time, but memorable in the *Roman* story for the death of the Emperor *Otho*, who here killed himself. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by *Valens* and *Cecina* Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellius*, then his Competitor for the Empire, he rather chose to fall by his own sword, than that the *Romans* should be forced for his sake to renew the war. And this he did with so much honour to himself, that many of his souldiers slew themselves at his *Funerall Pile*, not out of consciousness of crime, or for fear of punishment, but to testifie their affections to him, and to follow such a brave example as was layd before them. So as we may truly say of him, as he is sayd by *Tacitus* to have sayd of himself, *viz. Alii diutius imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit.* 5 *Monticella*, in the middle way almost between *Parma* and *Placentia*, and opposite unto *Cremona*, a chief Town of the Dutchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

These Towns (as others in these parts) have been partakers of the diversities of fortune, as being (after the declining of the Western Empire) sometimes under the *Venetians*, most times under the *Millanois*, and at last conquered by the Popes in the confusions and distractions of the Dukedom of *Millain*, under the two last Princes of the house of *Sforza*. By *Paul* the 3d, being of the house of the *Farnesis*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* with their *Appendixes*, were given unto his son *Petro Aloisi* (or *Petrus Aloysius*, as the *Latins* call him) with the title of Duke, An° 1549. The Signeurie of *Camerino*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbin*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a man of most vicious life, had amongst other villanies committed an unspeakable violence on the person of *Cosmus Chirius* the Bishop of *Jenum*; and soon after poysoned him. For which most detestable fact he received no other chastisement of his Father than this, *Hac vitia me non edocuisse didicit*, that he was sure he had not learnt those vices by his example

But

Montſerrat. But going on in theſe wicked courſes, he was ſlain at laſt by Count *John Aguzzola*, and *Placentia*, after a ſhort ſiege, yeelded to *Ferdinand Gonzaga* (*Vice-Roy* in *Millain* for the Emperor *Charles* the fifth) conceived to be privy to the murder. *Octavian* the ſonne of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had hapned, fortified himſelf in *Parma* as well as he could; but being hated by the new Pope, and diſtruſtfull, not without good cauſe, of the Emperors purpoſes, he had quite loſt it if *Henry* the ſecond of *France* had not taken him into his protection. For the Emperor *Charles* fully determined (notwithſtanding that *Octavian* had maried his baſe daughter) to have made himſelf Lord of the Town: and the *French* King was loth to ſee ſo great a ſtrength added to the Emperors poſſeſſions in *Italie*. When the war had now laſted four years, *Philip* the ſecond which ſucceeded *Charles*, conſidering how neceſſary it was for his affairs in *Italie*, to have this *Octavian* his friend, reſtored unto him again this *Plaiſance* or *Placentia*; and ſo withdrew him from the *French* faction, An. 1557. Yet becauſe he would be ſure to keep his houſe in a perpetuall dependance on *Spain*, he reſtored it not abſolutely at the preſent, but held the Citadell thereof with a *Spaniſh* Garriſon till the year 1583; when in regard of the good ſervices which *Alexander* Prince of *Parma* had done him in his Wars againſt the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces, he cauſed it to be ſurrendred into the hands of his Father *Octavian*. By which, and by his ſetling upon this houſe the Town and Territory of *Novara* in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other perſonall favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it, the Kings of *Spain* ſeem to have given ſome ſatisfaction to this houſe for ſtepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*, to which they might have made ſuch a probable title as would have troubled his Eſtate, had they ſtood upon it

The Dukes of *Parma*.

1549 1 *Petro Luigi Farneſis*, ſonne to *Paul* the third, made by the Pope his Father the firſt Duke of *Parma*.

1550 2 *Octavian Farneſis*, ſonne to *Petro Lewis*, maryed *Margaret* baſe daughter to *Charles* the fift; afterwards Governeſs of the *Netherlands*.

3 *Alexander*, ſonne of *Octavian* and *Margaret* of *Auſtria*, one of the moſt renowned Souldiers of his time, Governour of the *Netherlands* for King *Philip* the 2d.

1592 4 *Rainutio Farneſis*, ſonne of *Alexander* and *Mary* of *Portugal*, eldeſt daughter of *Edward* ſonne to King *Emanuel*; one of the competitors for that Crown.

5 *Edoardo Farneſis*, ſonne of *Rainutio*.

Of the *Revennes* and *Forces* of theſe Princes I have little to ſay, but think them to be of good conſideration in both reſpects: their Territories lying in the beſt and richeſt part of *Italie*, and their Eſtates, environed by more puiſſant neighbours; which both neceſſitate and inable them to defend their own.

The Duke of MONTFERRAT.

THe Dukedom of *MONTFERRAT*, is ſituate betwixt *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, or the Rivers of *Tenarus* and *Po*, on the Eaſt and Weſt; extended North and South in a line or branch from the *Alpes* to the borders of *Liguria*, of which laſt it was ſometimes counted part, and called *Liguria Ciſapemina* for diſtinction ſake.

It took this name either *à Monte ferrato*, from ſome mountain of it ſtored with Iron; or elſe *à monte feraci*, as ſome rather think, from the fertilitie of the Mountains. And to ſay truth, though the whole Country ſeem to be nothing elſe than a continuall heap of Mountains, yet are they Mountains of ſuch wonderfull fruitfulneſs, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in *Europe*.

The principall River of it is the *Tenarus*, above mentioned, which ſpringing out of the hils about *Barcois*, a Town of the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principall Cities of it are, 1 *Alba*, called by *Plinie Alba Pomera*, ſituate on the banks of the ſayd River, in a rich and fertile ſoyl, but a very bad air: near to which in a poor village called *Zobia*, the Emperor *Pertinax* was born. Who being of mean and obſcure Parents, after the death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conſpirators to the *Roman* Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the ſouldiers, he was by the *Prætorian* Guards (hating their Princes for their vertues as much as formerly for their vices) moſt cruelly murdered; and the Imperiall dignity ſold to *Julianus* for 25 *Seſtertiums* a man. 2 *Caſal*, vulgarly called Saint *Vas*, from the Church there dedicated to St. *Evaſius* (or Saint *Vas*, as they ſpeak it commonly) the ſtrongeſt Town in all this Country; well built, and peopled with many antient and noble Families, of which the family of St. *George* is one of the principall, and made a Biſhops See by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, Anno 1474. t was in former times the chief ſeat of the houſe of *Montferrat*, and for that cauſe compaſſed with a ſtrong wall, and a fair Caſtle: but of late fortified after the modern

modern manner of Fortifications, and ſtrengthned with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, as the ſureſt Key of his eſtate; in which new Citadell the Governour of the Province holds his uſuall reſidence. 3 *Aique*, in Latin *Aquenſis*, famous for its Bathes or Fountains of hot and medicinall waters. 4 *Saint Saviours*, where there is a very ſtrong Fortreſs, as there is alſo in 5 *Ponſture*, or *Pont di Stura*, ſo called of the River *Stura*. 6 *Oſoniano*, antiently *Occimianum*, the old ſeat of the firſt Marqueſſes of this *Montferrat*. 7 *Villa nova*. 8 *Balzale*. 9 *Liburn*, and many others of leſs note. *Montferrat.*

Here are alſo within the limits of this Dukedom, the Towns of *Aſt*, *Cherian*, and *Chivaſco*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the deſcription of whoſe Country we may ſpeak more of them; together with *Novara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have ſpoken of already. And hereunto alſo I refer the ſtrong (and in thoſe times) impregnable Fortreſs, by the *Latin* Hiſtorians called *Fraxinetum*, from ſome Grove of Aſhes near unto it; ſituate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the ſea; by conſequence better able to defend it ſelf and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens*, at ſuch time as they had footing in theſe parts of *Italie*. Firſt took and fortified by them in the year 891, recovered afterwards by the prowes and good fortune of *Otho* the Emperor, deſervedly ſurnamed the Great, about 60 years after. Of great note in the ſtories of thoſe middle times. By *Luitprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*; by *Blondus* and *Leander* near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvii*; and finally by *Sigonius* in the *Coltian Alpes*: and ſo moſt fit to be referred unto this Country, though now ſo deſolated that there is no remainder of the ruins of it.

This Country was made a Marquiſate by *Otho* the 2d, An. 985. one of the ſeven by him erected and given to the 7 ſons of *Waleran* of *Saxonie*, who had maryed his daughter *Adelheide*. A Military Family, conſpicuouſly eminent in the Wars of *Greece* and the *Holy-land*; where they did many acts of ſingular merit: inſomuch as *Baldwin* and *Comrade*, iſſuing from a ſecond branch hereof, were made Kings of *Hieruſalem*; and *Boniface* one of the Marqueſſes got the Kingdom of *Theſſaly*, and many fair Eſtates in *Greece*. But the Male-iſſue fayling in Marqueſs *John*, the Eſtate fell to *Theodorus Palæologus*, of the Imperiall family of *Conſtantinople*, who had maryed the Heir-generall of the houſe; continuing in his name till the year 1534, when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the perſon of Duke *William Gonzaga* raiſed to the honour of a Dukedom, as it ſtill continueth: the beſt and richeſt part of that Dukes Eſtate, and the faireſt flower in all his Garden. The reſidue of the ſtory may be beſt collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marqueſſes of *Montferrat*.

A.C.

985 1 *William*, one of the ſonnes of *Waleran* and *Adelheide*, made the firſt Marqueſs of *Montferrat*.
2 *Boniface*, the ſonne of *William*.
3 *William* II. who accompanied the Emperor *Conrade* the 3. and 5 *Lewis* of *France* to the *Holy-land*.
1183 4 *Boniface* II. ſonne of *William* the ſecond, his younger brother *William* being deſigned King of *Hieruſalem*, and *Reyner* another of them made Prince of *Theſſaly*, ſucceeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aydiug his Nephew *Baldwin* the ſonne of *William* in recovering the Kingdom of *Hieruſalem*, he was took priſoner by *Guy* of *Luſignan*, Competitor with him for that title.
5 *William* III. ſonne of *Boniface*, poyſoned in the *Holy-land*, where he endeavoured the reſtoring of his Brother *Conrade* to that languiſhing Kingdom.
6 *Boniface* III. ſonne of *William* the third, for his valour in taking of *Conſtantinople*, made King of *Theſſalie*.
1254 7 *Boniface* IV. ſonne of *Boniface* the third, added *Vercelli* and *Eporedium* unto his Eſtate.
8 *John*, ſurnamed the *Juſt*, the laſt of this houſe.
9 *Theodore Palæologus*, ſonne of the Emperor *Andronicus Palæologus* the elder, and *Yoland* his wife, daughter of *Boniface* the fourth.
10 *John Palæologus*, ſonne of *Theodore*.
11 *Theodorus* II. ſonne of *John*, a great builder and endower of Religious houſes.
12 *Jacobus Johannes*, ſonne of *Theodore* the ſecond.
13 *John* III. eldeſt ſonne of *Jacobus Johannes*.
1464 14 *William* IV. brother of *John* the third, founder of the City and Monaſtery of *Caſal*
1487 15 *Boniface* V. brother of *John* and *William*, the two laſt Marqueſſes, inveſted by *Frederick* the fourth, *Blanca Maria* the daughter of *William* ſurrendring her Eſtate unto him.
16 *William* V. ſonne of *Boniface* the fift.
1518 17 *Boniface* VI. ſonne of *William* the fift.
1530 18 *John George*, brother of *William* the fift, ſucceeded his Nephew in the Eſtate; which he held but four years. After whoſe death, An° 1534, this Marquiſate was adjudged to *Frederick*

Montferrat. rick the first Duke of *Mantua*, who had maryed *Margaret* daugher of *William* the fift, and next heir to *George*. Whose succeſſors may be ſeen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Eſtate.

Arch-Biſhops 0 Biſhops 4.

And now according to my method, I ſhould proceed to the deſcription and ſtory of the *Principality* of *Piemont*, the laſt and moſt Weſtern part of *Italy*. But being it lyeth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was antiently a part of the Province called *Alpes Coltiæ*, and is now part of the Eſtate of the Duke of *Savoy*: we will defer it till we come to thoſe *Alpine Provinces* which are next to followv. And ſo much ſhall ſuffice for *Italie*, in which there are, beſides thoſe of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.
Arch-B. 35. Biſhops 292.
Univerſities 17.
viz.

In the Land of the Church.
Rome.
Bononia.
Ferrara.
Peruſia.
In *Sicil.*
Palermo.
Catana.

In the Signeury of *Venice.*
Venice.
Padua.
Verona.
In the Dukedom of *Tuſcanie.*
Florence.
Piſa.
Sienna.

In *Naples.*
Naples.
Salern.
In *Lombardie.*
Millain.
Pavie.
Mantua.

And ſo much for *Italie.*

OF

OF THE ALPES.

BEfore we can come out of *Italie* into *France* we muſt croſs the *Alpes*, a ridge of hills wherewith (as with a ſtrong and defenſible Rampart) *Italie* is aſſured againſt *France* and *Germany*. They are ſaid to be five days journey high, covered continually with ſnow, from the whiteneſs whereof they took this name: that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latine* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Liguſtick* Seas, and croſſing all along the borders of *France* and *Germany* extend as far as to the Gulf of *Carnaro*, in the Province of *Iſtria*; and are in ſeverall parts, which we will muſter up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to the *Adriatick*. And firſt thoſe which lie neereſt to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cauſe called *Maritimæ*; from their neerneſs to *Liguria*, called by ſome *Liguſticæ*. 2. Then follow thoſe called *Cottiæ*, from *Cottius*, a King of the *Allobroges*; and 3. thoſe named *Graiæ*, from the paſſage of *Hercules*, and his *Grecian* followers; of which both amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians there is very good evidence. 4. After we come to the *Pœninæ*, ſo named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latine* Writers call by the name of *Pœni*, or from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, worſhipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5. Next come we to the *Lepontiæ*, ſo named from the *Lepontii*, who did there inhabite; as 6. the *Rhaticæ*, which lie next to them, from the *Rhati* once a powerfull people of that mountainous tract. 7. Then follow thoſe called *Julie*, from the paſſage of *Julius Cæſar* over them, in his march towards *Gaule*: and ſo at laſt we come unto thoſe called *Carnicæ*, extending to the ſhores of the *Adriatick*, denominated from the *Carni* who did here inhabite, and who gave name alſo to *Carniola*, an adjoyning Province.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe mountainous Countreys, beſides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Lepontii*, *Rhati*, and *Carni*, ſpoken of before, were the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valenſes*, *Vaconii*, and divers others of leſs note and eſtimation: all vanquiſhed by the indefatigable induſtry of the *Romans*. After whoſe ſubjugation, and the ſettlement of the *Roman* Empire, theſe mountains, and ſome part of the vales adjoyning, made five ſeverall Provinces, *viz.* the Province of the *Cottian Alpes*, containing *Walliſland* and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rhatia Prima*, comprehending the *Griſons*, and part of the Dukedom of *Millaine*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Switzers*; both which were members of the *Dioceſe* of *Italie*. Thirdly, of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, now part of *Daulphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, of the *Graiæ* and *Pœninæ Alpes*, and the greateſt part of *Maximæ Sequanorum*, including ſome part of *Savoy*, and moſt part of *Switzerland*; both which were members of the *Dioceſe* of *Gaule*: and fifthly, of *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts neer hand, which were members of the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The people antiently, as now, by reaſon of their drinking ſnow-water, diſſolving from the tops of the hills, and ſometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nilus* are ſaid to do, were generally troubled with a ſwelling in the throat, which the *Latines* call *Struma*, being the ſame with that which we call the *Kings Evill*, becauſe by ſpeciall privilege curable by the Kings of *France* and *England*. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of theſe vaſt hills, the loweſt are the *Carnicæ* and *Maritimæ*, lying neareſt to the ſeverall Seas before remembred. The *Cottiæ* and the *Graiæ* not ſo high, but that the paſſages lye open for the moſt part of the year. The reſt, by reaſon of their deep and dreadfull *precipices*, their tedious and ſteep aſcents, narrow ways, dangerous craggie Rocks, fierce whirlwinds, and huge balls of ſnow tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the mountains, are hardly paſſable by horſe, not at all by waggon. And yet amongſt theſe dreadfull hills there are obſerved to be ſome vallies of great fertilitie, not giving ground for fruitfulneſs to the beſt in *Europe*: and for the ſweetneſs of the temperature going much beyond them. With ſuch an equall hand doth the heavenly Providence diſpence the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation, that plenty bordereth upon want, and pain on pleaſure.

And yet for all the difficulty and danger of theſe *Alpine* paſſages, covetouſneſs, or curioſity, or deſire of conqueſt, have found a way to make them paſſable in many places, and that not only for private and particular paſſengers, but for vaſt multitudes and numerous Armies, ſuch as thoſe led by *Annibal* and *Julius Cæſar*. But ſpecially the barbarous people found out five wayes to

break

break into *Italie*, which have been ſince much travelled by divers Nations; of which three be out of *France*, and two out of *Germanie*. The firſt from *France* is thorough *Provence*, and ſo cloſe to the *Liguſtick Seas*; eaſieſt for private Paſſengers, but too ſtrait and narrow for great Armies; there being many paſſages in the Countrey of *Nizza* ſo narrow, that ten men may make head againſt ten thouſand, as in that called the *Pace* of the *Scaglia*, for one. The ſecond is over the hills called *Geneure*, into the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, and ſo to the other parts of *Lombardie*: which was the way that *Charles* the eighth marched towards *Naples*; and by the *Italians* is called commonly *Strada Romana*, becauſe the ordinary paſſage betwixt *France* and *Rome*. The third way is over the greater *Cenis* (which ſome call the leſſer S. *Bernard*, ſo to *Aoſt*, or *Turin*; which (if we may believe Antiquity) was firſt opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*, who found the paſſages ſo cloſed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with fire and vinegar: whence that ſo memorable ſaying, *Viam* Annibal *aut inveniet aut faciet*; and from the paſſage of thoſe Worthies, this tract, and that adjoyning, were called *Alpes, Craiæ*, and *Pœninæ*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is moſt certain that he took in his march; then theſe *Pœninæ* muſt take name from the paſſage of *Aſdrubal*, or of ſome part of *Annibals* Army, which probably was too great to go all one way, or elſe from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, as before was ſaid.

The firſt way out of *Germany* into *Italie*, is thorough the Countrey of the *Griſons*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniard* ſeized into his hands. So that by the keeping of the *Veltlyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuentes*, which he alſo erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this paſſage: not onely to the diſcontent of the Natives, but to the diſtaſt of his neighbours the *Savoyards* and *Venetians*. The other way out of *Germany* into *Italie*, is thorough the Countrey of *Tirolis*, by the Towns of *Inſpruch* and *Trent*. This paſſage is commanded by the Caſtle and Fort of *Eresberg*, ſeated on the confines of this Countrey towards *Suevia*, and from *Inſpruch*, is two days journey diſtant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Proteſtant* Princes made againſt *Charles* the fifth, was ſurprized by Captain *Scherteline*, ſo to hinder the comming of the Popes Forces into *Germany*: for which the Emperor ſo hated him, that when all the reſt of that faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proſcript*, his head being valued at 4000. Crowns. The taking alſo of this Fort, and the Caſtle adjoyning, by D. *Maurice* of *Saxony*, made the ſaid *Charles* then being in *Inſpruch*, to fly out of *Germany*, and ſhortly after to reſign his Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of theſe Mountains riſe the ſprings of many of the moſt renowned Rivers in theſe Weſt parts of the world; as, 1. The *Rheine*, which ſpringeth from two ſeverall Fountains, the one which they call the *Neerer Rhyne*, out of the *Lepontia*; and the other which they term the *Vorder*, or further *Rhyne*, out of the *Rhetica*; which meet together about a *Dutch* mile from *Chur*, the chief Town of the *Griſons*, and ſo go on by *Conſtance* to *Germany*. 2. *Rhoſne*, which riſeth in that part of the *Lepontia*, which is called *Die Furchen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the head of the *Neerer* or *Hinder Rhyne*, and ſo thorough *Walliſland* into *France*. 3. *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Coltian* or *Cottian Alpes*, heretofore called *Mons Veſulus*, and ſo thorough *Piemont* into *Italie*. Out of them alſo ſpring the Rivers of *Ruſſe*, *Durance*, and *Atheſis*, the firſt a *Dutch*, the ſecond a *French*, and the third an *Italian* River alſo; not to ſay any thing of others of inferiour note. The great Lakes which are found in this monntainous tract, we ſhall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countreys and Eſtates here ſituate, which bordering upon *Italie*, *France*, and *Germanie*, and partaking ſomewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themſelves to be free and abſolute Eſtates, Supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of theſe *Alpine* Countreys, which are under the command of the *German* Princes, as ſome parts of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the reſt which belong to *Auſtria*, ſhall be conſidered in the Hiſtory of thoſe States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the reſt, which as they lie intire together without intermixture, ſo they are abſolute in themſelves, and owe nor ſute nor ſervice unto any other; we will conſider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* then, or the *Alpine Provinces*, call them which you will, are bounded on the Eaſt with *Tirol* in *Germany*, and the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italie*; on the Weſt, with *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and *La Breſſe*, parts of the Continent of *France*; on the North, with the County of *Burgundy* in *France*, and *Suevia* or *Schwaben* in High *Germany*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea. Called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Tranſmarina*, becauſe it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jour*: A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Baſil*, and not far from the *Rhene*, paſſeth South-Weſtward by the Lakes of *Bieler-Zee*, *Nuwenburger-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almoſt unto the *Rhoſne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland* and *Savoy* from the County of *Burgundy*.

It lyeth under the ſixt Climate, and ſome part of the ſeventh: ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is fifteen hours, and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soyl and People; which will beſt ſhew it ſelf in the Survey of the ſeverall Provinces into which divided; that is to ſay, 1. the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2. the Signeury of *Geneva*, 3. the Reſorts of *Walliſland*,

4. the

4 the *Cantons* of the *Switzers*, and 5 the Leagues or the *Griſons*. Which ſeverall States, though they be reckoned to belong to the *German* Empire, and that the Biſhops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Baſil*, are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diets*, nor are ſubject to the publick Taxes, nor comprehended within any of thoſe ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein ſpoken, partakes ſomewhat of all three, as before was ſayd: the *French* being wholly ſpoke in *Savoy*, the lower *Walliſland*, and generally by the *Switzers* bordering on the Lake *Lemane*; the *Dutch* being common to the greateſt part of the *Switzers*, the *Griſons* about *Chur*, and the upper *Walliſland*; and finally the *Italian*, uſed by the generality of the *Griſons*, the Præfectures appertaining unto them and the *Switzers* both, in *Piemont*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

The principall Souldiers of theſe mountainous Provinces, 1 *Rodolph* Earl of *Habſpurg*, the Founder of the preſent *Auſtrian* Family 2 *Thomas*, and 3 *Peter*, Earles of *Savoy*, this laſt ſurnamed *Charlemain* the ſecond. 4 *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes hereof, Commander of the Armies of the King of *Spain*. 5 *John Tzerclai*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, Generall of the Imperiall Armies in the War of *Germany*. For Scholars of more ſpeciall note for which we are beholding to theſe Countryes, we have 1 *Philip Theophraſtus Bombaſtus à Boenham*, commonly called *Paracelſus*, the Author, or *Inſtaurator* of *Chymicall* Phyſick; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he ſaith himſelf: a man of moſt prodigious parts, and of no mean vices. 2 *Zuinglius*, one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3 *Muſculus*, and 4 *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his ſeconds. 5 *Henry Bullinger*, one of the ſame profeſſion alſo. 6 *Sebaſtian Caſtalio*, of as much Learning as the beſt of them, though of different judgement. 7 *Dan. Toſſanus* the *Hebrician*. To which we may adde 8 *Calvin* alſo, who though he had his birth in *France*, had his being here; and never grew to any eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was ſetled in *Geneva*.

For matter of *Religion*, it is of a very mixt condition alſo in all theſe Countries: that of the *Romiſh* onely have publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but ſo that the Reformed is tolerated in ſome parts thereof, eſpecially in the parts next *Dauphine*; to which the neighborhood of *Geneva* gives a great increaſe. In *Switzerland* there are four *Cantons* which are wholly for the *Reformation*, *viz. Zurich*, *Bern*, *Baſil*, and *Schaffhauſen*: Seven that ſtand wholly for the Doctrin of the Church of *Rome*, i. e. *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburg*, and *Solothurn*: in *Apenzel* and *Glaris*, they allow of both. The *Griſons* are confuſedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the *Italian* Præfectures admit no other but the *Romiſh*. The cauſe of which diviſion came upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*, a *Canon* of the Church of *Zurich*, who being animated with *Luthers* good ſucceſs in *Germany*, began about the year 1519 to preach againſt the *Maſs*, and *Images*, and other the corruptions of the Church of *Rome*. In which his party ſo increaſed, that on a publick Diſputation which was held at *Zurich*, the *Maſs* was abrogated in that *Canton* by the authority of the Senate, *Anno* 1526, and *Images* deſtroyed at *Bern*, 1528. After which proſperous beginnings, the *Reformation* began to ſpread it ſelf amongſt the *Confederates*; and had prevailed further both in *France* and *Germanie*, but for a difference which aroſe betwixt him and *Luther* about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which *Luther* did not only maintain a *Reall preſence*, but a *Conſubſtantiation* alſo in the ſacred Elements; which *Zuinglius* maintained to be only a bare ſign and repreſentation of Chriſts bleſſed body. For reconciling of this difference, wherein the enemies of both did extremely triumph, a conference was held between them at *Marpurg* a town of *Haſſia*, by the procurement of that *Lantgrave*, but without ſucceſs: *Luther* profeſſing that he durſt not agree in that point with *Zuinglius*, *ne Principes ſuos interpretatione tantopere* Pontificiis *exoſa*, *magis inviſos redderet*, for fear of drawing too great hatred on the Princes of his own profeſſion. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally caſt upon one another; to the great hindrance of the cauſe which they had in hand: yet ſo that the *Lutheran* opinions got ground in *Germany*, the *Zuinglians* amongſt theſe Mountains and in *France* it ſelf, and finally prevailed by the meanes of *Calvin* in many parts of *Germany* alſo. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the ſtory of thoſe Countries, before they were divided into ſo many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered ſeverally by the *Romans*: as ſhall be ſhewen in the deſcription of the ſeverall Provinces. Won from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*, in the time of *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor, they became a member of their Kingdom, except the Country of the *Griſons*, and ſome parts of *Switzerland*, which fell under the *Almans*: united afterwards in the new Kingdom of *Burgundy* of the *French* erection, when ſubdued by that Nation. But *Charles* the *Bald*, the laſt of the *French* Kings of *Burgundie*, having united it to the Kingdom of *France*, divided it into three Eſtates; that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Burgundie* on this ſide of the *Soſne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, and the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. This laſt containing the greateſt part of all theſe *Alpine* Provinces (except *Piemont* onely) was by the ſayd *Charles* given to *Conrade* a *Saxon* Prince, the ſonne of *Witikind* the third, and younger brother of *Ro-*

Savoy. bert, the first Earl of *Anion*, by the name of Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane*, or *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. *Rodolph* his sonne and successor, by *Endes* the King of *France*, his Cousin *German*, was honoured with the title of King: to make him equall at the least with *Boso* Earl of *Burgundie* beyond the *Soasne*, whom *Charles* the *Grosse*, about the same time had made King of *Arles*. But *Rodolph* finding it offensive to the *German* Emperor, abandoned it on the death of *Endes*, and took to himself the title of Duke. The residue of the story we shall have in the following Catalogue of

The Earles, Dukes, and Kings of *Burgundie Transjurane*.

1 *Conrade*, the first Earl of *Burgundie Transjurane*.
890 2 *Rodolph*, Earl, King, and Duke of *Burgundie Transjurane*.
912 3 *Rodolph* II. elected King of *Italie* against *Berengarius*; which title he exchanged with *Hugh de Arles*, who was chosen by another Faction, for the possession of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundie*, on the assuming of which Crown he resigned this Dukedom to his Brother.
4 *Boso*, the brother of *Rodolph* the second, succeeded his brother in the Dukedom of *Burgundie* beyond the *Jour*; as afterwards he succeeded *Rodolph* his Brothers sonne in the kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundie*.
965 5 *Conrade*, sonne of *Boso*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundie*, and Duke of *Burgundie Transjurane*.
990 6 *Rodolph* III. sonne of *Conrade*, who dying without issue left his estates to *Henry* surnamed the *Black*, the sonne of his sister *Gisela*, by *Conrade* the second, Emperor and King of *Germanie*: united so unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of some following Emperors, it was cantonned into many parts; of which more anon. It is now time to lay aside this discourse as to the generall condition and affairs of these *Alpine* Provinces; and to look over the particulars: beginning first with the estate of the Duke of *Savoy*, situate wholly in these Mountains, and lying next to *Italie*, where before we left.

THE DVKEDOM OF SAVOY.

THe Dukedom of *SAVOY* is bounded on the East, with *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italy*; on the West, with *Dauphine* in *France*; on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; and on the South, with *Provence*, and the *Mediterranean*. The Country of so different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one character: and therefore we must look upon it in the severall parts into which divided; that is to say, 1 the *Principalitie* of *Piemont*, and 2 *Savoy*, specially so called.

1 *PIEMONT*, in *Latin* called *Regio Pedemontana*, because situate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both languages imports) is bounded on the East, with *Millain* and *Montferrat*; on the West, with *Savoy*; on the North, with the *Switzers*; and on the South, it runneth in a narrow valley to the *Mediterranean*, having *Montferrat* on the one side, *Provence* and a part of the *Alpes* upon the other. The Country wonderfully fertile compared with *Switzerland* and *Savoy*, which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferior to the rest of *Italie*. It containeth, besides Baronies and Lordships, 15 Marquisates, 52 Earldoms, 160 Castles or walled places: and is so populous withall, that once a *Piemontese* being demanded the extent of his Country, made answer, that it was *a City of* 300 *miles compass*.

The principall Cities of it are, 1 *Turin*, called of old *Augusta Taurinorum*, because the head City of the *Taurini*, once the inhabitants of this Tract: from which *Taurini* it deriveth the name of *Turin*, and not as some conceive from the River *Duria*, on whose banks it standeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of *Savoy* (who is the Lord of this Country) the See of an Archbishop, and an Universitie, in which the renowned Scholar *Erasmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is situate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of *Italie*, for which cause the *Romans* sent a Colony hither, and the *Lombards* made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoyning to it is a Park of the Dukes of *Savoy*, watered with the *Duria*, *Sture*, and *Po*, six miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleasant Fountains, which make it one of the sweetest situations in *Europe*. 2 *Mondeni*, seated on the swelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it, in one of which the Dukes of *Savoy* built a Church and Chappell to the blessed Virgin: intended for the buriall-place of the Ducall Family. It is the best peopled Town, for the bigness of it, of any in *Italie*. 3 *Augusta Iratoria*, now called

ed *Aoſt*, ſituate in the furtheſt corner of *Italy* to the North and Weſt. 4 *Vercelli*, a ſtrong Tovvn bordering upon *Millain*, to which it formerly belonged, and was given firſt in Dower with *Blanch* the daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, to *Amadee* the third, Duke of *Savoy*, antiently the chief Town of the *Libyci*, who together with the *Salaſſi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Countrey. 5 *Inurea*, called by *Ptolomie Eporedia*, ſituate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Epiſcopall Citie. 6 *Nicaa*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from *Provence*, beautified with a Cathedrall Church, the Biſhops Palace, a Monaſtery of Nuns, and an impregnable Cittadel. A place ſo naturally ſtrong, that when as yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it reſiſted the whole Forces of *Barbaroſſa* the *Turkiſh* Admiral, An. 1543, lying before it with a Navy of two hundred ſayl, and battering it continually with incredible fury. Firſt fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occaſion of ſome words of the Duke of *Burbon*, who paſſing this way with his Army, *Behold*, ſaith he, *a ſituation of which they know not the importance:* the Citadell being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and garriſoned for the moſt part with 400 ſouldiers. 7 *Suſe*, ſeated in the ordinary thorough-fare betwixt *France* and *Italy*, called of old *Segovio*, and honoused in thoſe times with a ſtately Sepulchre of K. *Cottius* King of the *Allobroges*: one of the ſeven Marquiſates in the middle times erected by the Emperor *Otho*. 8 *Pignarolle*, fortified with a Caſtle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoyning vallies. 9 *Quiers*, adorned vvith many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10 *Ville Franche*, a place of great ſtrength, more towards the ſea. 11 *Savillan*, ſeated in ſo pleaſant a Country, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpoſe to ſettle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Eſtate. 12 *Buſque*, a Marquiſate, another of the ſeven erected for the ſonnes of *Waleran*. 13 Hereunto we may adde the City of *Aſt* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) antiently a Colony of the *Romans*, and now to be compared, for the greatneſs and beauty of her Palaces, to the moſt ſtately Cities of *Lombardy*, ſituate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarus*, very rich, and populous. *Piemont.*

Here is alſo in this Country the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes* (of the ſame erection as the former, but a greater Eſtate) the cauſe of ſo many differences betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The principall Town whereof is called alſo *Saluzze* (from the *Salaſſi* queſtionleſs who dwelt hereabouts,) ſeated about the ſpring of the River *Po*, reaſonably big, and fortified with a very large Caſtle, fitted with rooms for all uſes, and for every ſeaſon. 2 *Carmanlogla*, which gave name to that famous Captain who carried ſo great a ſway in the Wars of *Italie*. A Town ſo fortified and ſtored with all ſorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3 *Ravelle*, a well-fortified place. 4 *Doglian*, the thorow-fare for the greateſt part of the trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont* and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms hereof *Argent*, a Chief *Gules*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Salaſſi*, *Libyci*, and *Taurini*, as before is ſaid, all vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, and their Country made a Province of that Empire, by the name of the Province of *Alpes Coltia*, in the time of *Nero*, of which *Genoa* was the *Metropolis* or principall City. The preſent are deſcended for the moſt part of the *Heruli*, who under the conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italie*, whereof he was proclamed King by the *Romans* themſelves: but *Odoacer* being vanquiſhed near *Verona*, by *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, the *Heruli* had this Country allotted to them by the Conqueror, for their habitation. They had not held it long, when ſubdued by the *Lombards*, of whoſe Kingdom it remained a part, till given by *Aripert* the ſeventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of *Rome*: affirmed by ſome to be the firſt *temporall* eſtate that ever the Popes of *Rome* had poſſeſſion of. But lying far off, aud the donation not confirmed by the Kings ſucceeding, the Popes got little by the gift: ſo that in the ſubverting of the kingdom of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of *Italie*, of the houſe of *Charles* the Great, and afterwards of his ſucceſſors in the Empire, by whom diſtracted into ſeverall Eſtates and Principalities. *Thomas* and *Peter* Earls of *Savoy* made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt part of it by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210, the later in the year 1256. Since that time the firſt ſonne of *Savoy* is ſtiled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, containing almoſt all the reſt, was added by the mariage of a daughter of this Marquiſate with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, An. 1481. Of which mariage though there was no iſſue, yet the *Savoyard* alwayes held it as their own; till the *French* upon as good a title poſſeſſed themſelves of it: Recovered by the *Savoyard* An. 1588, the Civill Wars then hot in *France*. But finding that he was not able to hold it againſt *Henry* the fourth (who looked upon it as a door to let his forces into *Italie*) he compounded with him, An. 1600. the Country of *Breſſe* being given in exchange for this Marquiſate: Of which, together with the reſidue of *Piemont*, and ſome peeces of importance in the Dukedom of *Montferrat*, that noble Family of *Savoy* doth now ſtand poſſeſſed.

The Armes of this Principality are *Gules*, a Croſs *Argent*, charged with a Label of three points *Azure*.

2 *SAVOY*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, is bouuded on the Eaſt, with *Walliſland*, and part of *Piemont*; on the Weſt, with *Daulphine* and *La Breſſe*; on the South, with ſome parts of *Daulphine* only; and on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Country is for the moſt part hilly and mountainous, overſpread with the branches of the *Alpes*; healthy enough, as commonly all Hill-countries are, but not very fruitfull, except ſome

Savoy. of the vallies which lie neareſt to the Weſtern Sun, and the plain traſt about the *Lemanian* Lake, lying towards *Geneva*. By reaſon of the difficult and narrow waies, and thoſe full of theeves, it was once called *Malvoy*: but the paſſages being opened by the coſt and induſtry of the people, and purged of theeves by good Laws and exemplary juſtice, it gained the name of *Savoy* or *Salvoy*, *quaſi ſalva via*; as *Maleventum*, a town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like conſiderations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latins* of theſe later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the antient writers, who knew it by no other name than that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The Common people are naturally very dull and ſimple, ſo groſs of underſtanding for all their continuall converſe with other Nations, who take this Country in their way to *Italie*, that they beleeve the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greateſt Prince in the World: and ſo unwarlike, that a few men of another Nation well trained and diſciplined, will make a great number of them fly. But on the other ſide, the Gentry are of a very pleaſing converſation, civill, ingenious, and affecting all good exerciſe: ſo as there may be dayly ſeen in *Chamberie* as much good company, and as well-appointed and behaved, as in many of the beſt Towns of *France* or *Italie*. The number of both ſorts, taking in *Piemont* (who are not intereſſed in the firſt part of this character) are thought to be 800000.

The chief Cities are, 1 *Chamberie*, ſituate on the banks of the River *L' Arch* in a very pleaſant valley, compaſſed round with Mountains, the principal of the Dukedom on that ſide of the *Alpes*, honoured with the Dukes Court when he reſideth in this Countrey, the ordinary ſeat of Juſtice, and many neat houſes which belong to the Gentry: fortified of late with a ſtrong Caſtle and ſufficient Out-works, but not recovered of the damage it received An° 1600, when it was forced by King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2 *Tarentuiſe*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate in the middeſt of the Mountains; heretofore the *Metropolis* of the Province of the *Alpes Graia*, and *Pœnina*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the *Centrones* who inhabited about this tract. 3 *Lunebourg*, in the Country of the old *Medulli*, betwixt which and *Suſe*, a town of *Piemont*, lyeth the moſt ordinary road betwixt *France* and *Italie*. 4 *Aque belle*, ſituate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5 *Ripaille*, in a ſweet and fruitfull ſituation, on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signeury of *Foſſignie*: where *Amadee* the firſt Duke of *Savoy* having given over his Eſtate, lived a Monaſtick life, and was thence choſen Pope by the Fathers of *Baſil*, An° 1440. 6 *Nun* or *Nevidum* (by ſome of the old *Latins* called *Noviodunum*) an antient City, layd deſolate, in, or before the time of *Julius Ceſar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Veſpaſian*; the ſeat of late times of the Biſhops of *Geneva*, ſince their expulſion out of that Citie. 7 *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhoſne*. 8 *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9 *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwiſe of ſmall importance. 10 *Annunciada*, not much obſervable, but for being the ſeat or place of Solemnities, for an order of Knights called by that name. 11 *Maurienne*, or St. *John de Maurienne*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate in a valley of the *Alpes* ſo called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt hereabouts; from whence the Princes of this houſe were firſt entituled Earles of *Maurienne* only. 12 *Charboneers*, a well-fortified place. Here is alſo the ſtrong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four moneths againſt *Henry* the fourth, and many thouſand ſhot of *French* Cannon, An° 1600: and the impregnable Fortreſs of St. *Catharines*, which yet ſubmitted to that King; the Government whereof being denied to the Duke of *Byron*, plunged him in diſcontent and treaſon to the loſs of his head.

The many Tribes in and about this mountainous Country, of which we have mentioned ſome before, paſs generally in moſt antient Writers by the name of the *Allobroges*, becauſe the moſt powerfull of them all. Of whom the firſt mention which we find in ſtory, is the Attonement made by *Annibal* in his paſſage this way, between *Brancus* and his brother, about the ſucceſſion of the Kingdom. Afterwards ſiding with the *Salii* a *Gallick* Nation in a War againſt *Marſeilles*, then a confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their backs, by whom they were in fine ſubdued, with the loſs of no leſs than 120000 *Galls*, under the ſeverall conducts of *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*: by which laſt, *Bituitus*, or *Bitultus* King of the *Auverni*, one of the confederates, was led in triumph unto *Rome*. The Country and people at that time were much alike, *Cœlum atrox, pervicaci ingenio*, a ſharp air, and a ſtubborn people, as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages for diſcovering *Catilines* conſpiracy, by which the whole *Roman* ſtate was in danger of ruin. After which we find *Coctius* one of the Kings of theſe *Allobroges*, to have been in ſpeciall favour with *Auguſtus Ceſar*, affirmed to be the founder of 12 Cities in this mountainous tract, whence it had the name of *Alpes Cottiæ*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province by the Emperor *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and paſſed with other rights of that falling Kingdom to the Emperors of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the laſt King. To them it did continue ſubject till the year 999, in which *Berald* of *Saxony*, brother to *Otho* the third, for killing *Mary* the laſcivious Wife of his Uncle, fled from *Germany*, and ſetled himſelf here in *France*. His ſonne *Humbert* (ſurnamed *Blanchmains*, that is *White-hand*) was by the ſpeciall favour of the Emperor *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*, which is a town of this Country,

Country, An° 1027. And by this mariage with *Adela* the daughter and heir of the Marques of *Suse*, added that noble Marquisate (one of the seven erected by *Otho* the second, and given amongst the sonnes of *Waleran*) unto his estate. *Humbert* the second gained by conquest the Town and Territory of *Tarentaise*; as *Ame*, or *Amadee* the third did the Counties of *Vaulx* and *Chablais*, An° 1240, or thereabouts. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the fourth, by the Mariage of *Sibille* daughter and sole heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Bresse*, added that Earldom to his house: as *Ame*, or *Amadee* the ninth, did the Town and Territory of *Vercelli*, upon the contract betwixt *Philibert* his sonne and successor with *Blanch* the base daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, who afterwards was maryed unto *Francis Sforza*. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the second Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, invested with the title of Earl of *Savoy*; and *Amadee* the eighth created the first Duke by the Emperor *Sigismund*, An° 1397. But the main improvement of the power and patrimony of this House, came by the valour and good success of the two Earles, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210, and *Peter* one of his sonnes and successors (for his manifold Conquests, surnamed *Charlemaine* the *Junior*) An° 1256, by conquest got a great part of *Peidmont*, to which the Marquisate of *Saluzzes* containing almost all the rest, was united by a Mariage of the daughter of the Marquisate, to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*; and though he dyed without issue by her, An° 1489, yet his successors still kept the possession of it, till *Francis* the first, pretending some title to it in the right of his Mother (a daughter of the house of *Savoy*) layd it unto the Crown of *France*: from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the *French* Civill Wars, An° 1588, and now is peaceably possessed: The Countrey of *Bresse* being given to the *French* for their pretension to the Marquisate, An° 1600. These Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the faction of *Spain*, especially since the *French* Kings took in the lesser states bordering on them, as *Burgundie*, *Bretagne*, *&c.* *Charles* the third sided so constantly with the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, that denying *Francis* the first a passage for his Army thorough the Country into *Italy*, he was by the sayd King dispoyled of his Estates, An° 1536. The Emperor to recover it left nothing undone; but in vain: for the *French* encountring his force in the open field, vanquished them, with the slaughter of fifteen thousand of his men. In the year 1558, peace being made between *Henry* and *Philip*, successors to those great Princes, *Emanuel Philibert*, sonne to Duke *Charles*, was restored to all his Rights. His sonne and successor, having maryed *Catharine* the daughter of King *Philip* the second, depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithstanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them, his sonnes receiving thence many great pensions and preferments: For at the same time Prince *Amadee Victorio* the second sonne, during the life of *Philip* his elder brother, was chief Commander of that Kings Gallies, and had in pension a hundred thousand Crowns *per annum*; *Philibert* the third sonne was Vice-Roy of *Sicil*; *Maurice* the fourth, a Cardinal, had a moity of the Revenues of the Archbishoprick of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomazo*, though then young, had his pensions also. But *Amadee Victorio*, who succeeded him, marying Madam *Christian*, a daughter of King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, changed his dependances, and held more close to *France* than any of his predecessors; but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Estates future times will shew. For leaving his heir a *Minor*, in the hands of his mother, the *French* upon pretence of preserving the Country for him against the incroachments of the *Spaniard*, have made themselves masters of the greatest parts of it, which when they will restore to the proper owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the *Savoy.*

Earles and Dukes of *Savoy*.

999	1	*Beral* of *Saxony*.
1027	2	*Humbert*, the first Earl of *Maurienne*.
1048	3	*Ame*, or *Amadee* I.
1076	4	*Humbert* II.
1109	5	*Ame*, or *Amadee* II. the first Earl of *Savoy*.
1154	6	*Humbert* III.
1201	7	*Thomas*, sonne of *Humbert*.
1234	8	*Ame*, or *Amadee* III.
1246	9	*Boniface*, sonne of *Ame* III.
1256	10	*Peter*, a younger sonne of Earl *Thomas*, called *Charlemagne* the *less*, won *Turin*, *Vaulx*, &c.
1268	11	*Philip*, brother of *Peter*.
1285	12	*Ame*, or *Amadee* IV. Nephew of *Thomas* the 7th Earl, by a sonne named *Thomas*.
1323	13	*Edward*, sonne of *Ame* IV.
1329	14	*Ame*, or *Amadee* V. the brother of *Edward*.
1342	15	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VI.
1385	16	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VII.
1397	17	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VIII, the first Duke of *Savoy*.
1434	18	*Lewis*, sonne of *Ame* VIII.

Savoy.

1461	19	*Ame*, or *Amadee* IX.
1475	20	*Philibert*, ſonne of *Ame* 9th.
1481	21	*Charles*, brother of *Philibert*.
1489	22	*Charles* II.
1495	23	*Philip* II. ſonne of *Lewis*, the ſecond Duke.
1496	24	*Philibert* II.
1504	25	*Charles* III. the brother of *Philibert*, outed of his Eſtate by King *Francis* the firſt.
1559	26	*Emanuel Philibert*, reſtored upon his Mariage with *Margaret* the daughter of King *Francis* the firſt, made Knight of the Garter by Qu. *Mary*.
1580	27	*Charles Emanuel*.
	28	*Ame* X. called alſo *Amadee Victorio*, ſonne of *Charles Emanuel*, maryed *Chriſtiane* the daughter of King *Henry* the fourth.
1637	29	*Charles Emanuel* II. ſonne of *Amadee Victor*, or *Ame* the 10. at the age of three yeares ſucceeded his Father.

The *Forces* of this Duke conſiſt eſpecially in his Forts and Garriſons, vvhereof he hath good ſtore in *France*, *Savoy*, and *Piemont*, well fortified, and plentifully furniſhed with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him ſo to have, conſidering what dangerous neighbours he hath near him, and that his Country is a continnall thorow-fare for the Armies both of *France* and *Spain* upon all occaſions. Nor doth it leſs conduce to his preſervation, that he hath ſo many retreats of naturall ſtrength, as are not eaſily acceſſible by a conquering Army; of this laſt ſort is, amongſt many others, the valley of *Aoſt* (which ſome reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and ſome of *Piemont*) ſo ſtrong by reaſon of the narrow entries, the uneaſie paſſages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it, that thoſe who have made themſelves maſters of the reſt of the Country, durſt never attempt it. And of the firſt, beſides thoſe formerly deſcribed, is the Town of *Nizze*, ſo fortified and flanked upon all acceſſes, that it ſeems rather to be an aſſembly of Forts, than a ſingle Fortreſs. Out of which Garriſons the Duke is able to draw great Forces for preſent ſervice; beſides the readyneſs of the *Piemonteſe* upon all occaſions, vvhich are for the moſt part given to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedom (taking *Piemont* in) are ſayd to be above a Million of Crovvns *per Annum*. But his extraordinary is ſo great, that Duke *Charles Emanuel*, during his Wars with *Henry* the fourth, in a very few years drew out of *Piemont* onely eleven Millions of Crowns, beſides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Souldiers. By which it may appear that the Dukes are not like to want money to ſerve their turns, when they ſhall deſire it of the Subject, and yet not charge them more than they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes Eſtate is that of the *Annunciada*, which ordained by *Amade* the firſt Duke, at vvhat time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, *An.* 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen links, to ſhew the fifteen myſteries of the Virgin: at the end, is the portraiture of our Lady, with the hiſtory of the *Annunciation*. Inſtead of a Motto, theſe letters, *F. E. R. T. id eſt, Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are engraven in every plate or link of the Collar: each link being inter-woven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights is fourteen, beſides the Duke, who is the Soveraign of the *Order*: the ſolemnitie is held annually on our *Lady-day*, in the Caſtle of Saint *Peter* in *Turin*. So from this victory (for every repulſe of the beſieger, is a victory to the beſieged) there aroſe a double effect: firſt, the inſtitution of this order; ſecondly, the aſſumption of the preſent Arms of this Dutchy, which are *G.* a Croſs *A.* This being the croſs of Saint *John of Hieruſalem*, whoſe Knights at that time vvere owners of the *Rhodes*. Whereas before, the Arms vvere *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, *Sable*, armed *Gules*, ſupporting in *feſſe*, an eſcotchion of *Saxony*, that is Barrewiſe ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*. A coat belonging to the Emperors of the houſe of *Saxony*, from whom the firſt Earles of *Savoy* did derive themſelves.

Geneva.

3. THE SIGNEURIE OF

GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, formerly ſubject to its own Biſhops, acknowledging the Dukes of *Savoy* for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-Eſtate*, bordering cloſe upon the *Switzers*, and with them confederate; and ſo more properly within the courſe and compaſs of theſe *Alpine* Provinces. It is ſituate on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemane*, oppoſite to the City of *Lozanne* in the *Canton* of *Bern*, from which it is diſtant ſix *Dutch* miles: the River *Rhoſne* (having paſſed thorow the Lake with ſo clear a colour, that it ſeemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) running thorow the lower part thereof, over which there is a paſſage by two fair bridges. This lower part is ſeated on a flat or levell, the reſt on the aſcent of an hill: the buildings fair, and of free-ſtone; well fortified on both ſides both by Art and Nature, in regard of the pretenſions of the Duke of *Savoy* (whom they ſuffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealouſies of State. The compaſs of the whole City is about two miles, in which there are ſuppoſed to be about ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand ſoules. One of their bridges is more antient and better fortified than the other, belonging antiently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians* the old inhabitants of that tract) but broken down by *Julius Cæſar* to hinder them from paſſing that way into *France*.

The people of the town are generally of good wits in the managery of publick buſineſs, but not very courteous towards ſtrangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modeſt and thrifty in apparell, and ſpeak for the moſt part the *Savoyard*, or worſt kind of *French*. So that the great reſort of young Gentlemen thither, is not ſo much to learn that Language (which is no where worſe taught) as out of an opinion which their parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where ſo purely practiſed and profeſſed as there. By means whereof the *frie* or *ſeminarie* of our Gentry being ſeaſoned in their youth with *Genevan* principles, have many times proved diſaffected to the forms of Government (as well *Monarchicall* as *Epiſcopall*) which they found eſtabliſhed here at home: to the great inbroilment of the ſtate in matters of moſt near concernment. The women are ſayd to be more chaſt (or at leaſt more reſerved) than in any other place in the World: which poſſibly may be aſcribed to that ſeverity with which they puniſh all offendors in that kind: Dancing by no means tolerated in publick or private; *Adulterie* expiated by no leſs than death; *Fornication*, for the firſt offence with nine dayes faſting upon bread and water in priſon, for the ſecond with whipping, for the third with baniſhment. But notwithſtanding this ſeverity, they make love in ſecret, and are as amorous in their daliances as in other places.

The Territories of it are very ſmall, extending not above two Leagues and an half from any part of the Town: but the ſoyl, if well manured, bringeth Grain of all ſorts, and great ſtore of Wine. There is likewiſe plenty of paſture and feeding grounds, which furniſh the City with fleſh-meats, butter and cheeſe at very reaſonable rates; the nearneſs of the Lake affording them both Fiſh and Wild-fowl in good meaſure; and amongſt others (as ſome ſay) the beſt *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main improvement of this State is by the induſtry of the people, and the convenient ſituation of the City it ſelf; the City being ſituated very well for the trade of Merchandiſe, in regard it is the ordinary paſſage for tranſporting Commodities out of *Germany* to the Marts at *Lions*, and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Italy*. And for the induſtry of the people, it is diſcernable in that great ſtore of Armor and Apparell, and other neceſſaries, brought from hence yearly by thoſe of *Bern*; and their Mannfactures in Satten, Velvet, Taffata, and ſome quantities of Cloth (fine, but not durable) tranſported hence yearly into other places.

The Soveraignty of this City was antiently in the Earls hereof, at firſt *Imperiall Officers* only, but at laſt the hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt theſe and the Biſhops (Suffragans to the *Metropolitan* of *Vienna* in *Daulphine*) grew many quarrels for the abſolute command hereof. In fine, the Biſhops did obtain of the Emperor *Frederick* the firſt, that they and their ſucceſſors ſhould be the ſole Princes of *Geneva*, free from all Taxes, and not accomptable to any but the Emperor. Which notwithſtanding, the Earls continuing ſtill to moleſt the Biſhops, they were fain to call unto their ayd the Earl of *Savoy*; who took upon him firſt as Protector onely, but after by degrees as the *Lord* in *chief*. For when the rights of the Earls of *Geneva*, by the Mariage of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy* with *Beatrix* a daughter of theſe Earls, fell into that houſe; then *Ame*, or *Amadee* the ſixt of that name, obtained of the Emperor *Charles* the fourth, to be *Vicar-generall* of the Empire in his own Country, and in that right ſuperior to the Biſhop in all *Temporall* matters: and *Ame*, or *Amadee* the firſt Duke, got from Pope *Martin* (to the

Geneva. the great prejudice of the Bishops) a grant of all the *Temporal* jurisdiction of it. After which time the Bishops were constrained to do homage to the Dukes of *Savoy*, and acknowledge them for their Soveraign Lords; the Autority of the Dukes being grown so great (notwithstanding that the people were immediately subject to their Bishop onely) that the Money in *Geneva* was stamped with the Dukes name and figure; Capitall offenders were pardoned by him; no sentence of Law executed till his Officers were first made acquainted; nor League contracted by the people of any validity, without his privity and allowance; and finally the Keyes of the Town presented to him as often as he pleased to lodge there, as once (for instance) to Duke *Charles* the third, comming thither with *Beatrix* his Wife, a daughter of *Portugall*. And in this state it stood, till the year 1528, the Bishop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alias civilis jurisdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himself confesseth in an Epistle to Cardinal *Sadolet*. But in that year, *Religion* being then altered in the *Canton* of *Bern*, near adjoyning to them, *Viret* and *Farellus* did endeavour it in *Geneva* also. But finding that the Bishop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they screwed themselves into the people, and by their ayd in a popular tumult, compelled the Bishop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Bishop made them many fair overtures, out of an hope to be restored to his Estate; yet would they never hearken to him, nor admit of him any more, being once thrust out. Nor did they only in that tumult alter the Doctrin and Orders of the Church before established, but changed the Government of the State also: disclaming all allegiance both to Duke and Bishop, and standing on their own Liberty as a *Free-Commonwealth*. And though all this was done by *Viret* and *Farellus* before *Calvins* comming to that City, which was not till the year 1536, yet being come, *suffragio meo comprobavi*, as he saith himself, no man was forwarder than he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongst them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he first negotiated with them to abjure the *Papacie*, and never more admit their Bishop; to which he found a cheerful and unanimous consent in all the people. Then finding that no *Ecclesiasticall discipline* was in use amongst them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own composing; which at last he obtained also, but with very great difficulty, and got it ratified by the Senate *July* the 20th. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this new yoke, and he and his Colleagues (*Farellus* and *Coraldus*) as resolute to hold them to it; they were all three banished the Town in a popular humor; and with like levitie sued to, to return again: to which he would by no means yeeld, except they would oblige themselves by a solemn Oath to admit of such a form of Discipline as he, with the advice of the other Ministers, should prescribe unto them. This being condescended to by that fickle multitude, he returns in triumph to *Geneva*, *September* the thirteenth, 1541: and got his new Discipline established on the twentieth of *November* following. The sum of the device was this: All *Ministers* to be equall amongst themselves; two *Lay-men* to be super-added unto every Minister; the Minister to continue for term of life, the *Lay-Elders* to be annually chosen; these being met together to be called the *Presbyterie*; and to have power of *Ordination*, *Censures*, *Absolution*, and whatsoever else was acted by the Bishop formerly. Hitherto it related to *Geneva* only, which being but one City, and a small one too, was not capable of more than one *Presbyterie*. The names and notions of *Classicall*, *Provinciall*, and *Nationall* Assemblies came not in till afterwards; as it got ground in Kingdoms and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpose framed to content the people; yet since the *Lay-officers* were to be but annuall, and after subject to the lash like other *Mortals*, it gave but sorry satisfaction unto wiser men. And being built withall on a false foundation, was for a long time hardly able to stand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a support from *Zurich*, and others of the *Protestant Cantons*, whom *Calvin* earnestly sollicited to allow his project, against which one *Perinus*, and some principall Citizens had begun to spurn. And so we have the true beginning of the *Genevian* Discipline, begotten in Rebellion, born in Sedition, and nursed up by Faction.

Being born into the World by the means aforesayd, some other helps it had to make it acceptable and approved of in other Churches. As first, the *great content* it gave to the *common people*, to see themselves intrusted with the weightiest matters of *Religion*, and thereby an *equalitie* with, if not (by reason of their number, being two for one) a *superiority* above their *Ministers*: Next, the *great reputation* which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching had attained unto, made all his *Dictates* as authentick amongst some Divines, as ever the Popes *Ipse dixit* in the Church of *Rome*. Whereby it came to pass, in a little time, that only those Churches which embraced the Doctrines and Discipline authorised by *Calvin*, were called the *Reformed Churches*: those in high *Germany* and elsewhere which adhered to *Luther*, being generally called by no other name than the *Lutherans*, or the *Lutheran* Churches, as not *reformed* enough from the dregs of *Rome*. Then comes in his *endeavours* to promote that Platform in all other Churches, which he had calculated for the *Meridian* of *Geneva* only: commending it to *Gasper Olevianus* Minister of the Church of *Triers*, as appeareth by his Letters dated *April* the twelf 1560, congratulating the reception of it in the Churches of *Poland*, as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the last help, comes in *Beza*, who not content to recommend it as convenient for the use of the Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) imposed it as a matter necessary upon all

the

the Churches: ſo neceſſary, *ut ab ea recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipſius* Religionis *placitis*; that it was utterly as unlawfull to recede from this, as from the moſt materiall points of the *Chriſtian Faith*. So he Epiſt. 83. By means whereof their followers in moſt of the *Reformed* Churches drove on ſo furiouſly, that rather than their *Diſcipline* ſhould not be admitted, and the *Epiſcopall Government* deſtroied in all the Churches of *CHRIST*, they were reſolved to depoſe Kings, ruin Kingdoms, and to ſubvert the fundamentall conſtitutions of all civill States. And hereunto their *own Ambition* gave them ſpur enough, affecting the *ſupremacy* in their ſeverall *Pariſhes*, that they themſelves might *Lord* it over Gods inheritance, under pretence of ſetting *CHRIST* upon his Throne. Upon which love to the preheminence, they did not only *prate* againſt the Biſhops, *with malitious words* (as *Diotrephes* for the ſame reaſon did againſt the Apoſtles) but not therewith content, *neither would they themſelves receive them, nor permit them that would, caſting them out of the Church*, with reproach and infamy. Which proud ambition in the ordinary *Parochiall* Miniſter, was cunningly fomented by ſome great perſons, and many *Lay-Patrons* in all places, who underhand aimed at a further end: the one to raiſe themſelves great fortunes out of Biſhops Lands; the other to keep thoſe Tythes themſelves, to which by the Law they only were to nominate ſome deſerving Perſon. Such were the helps by which this new device of *Calvin* was diſperſed and propagated. *Geneva.*

But to return unto *Geneva*, though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetuall *Moderator*, and *Beza* too, untill *Daneus* ſet him beſides the Cuſhion: yet after that the power of the *Presbyterie* was ſhrewdly leſſened in *Geneva*, and the good *Members* ſo reſtrained in the exerciſe of it, that they have no power to convent any man before them, but by the autority of a *Syndick* or *Civill* Magiſtrate. And as for maintaince, they hold their Miniſters ſo ſtrictly to a ſorry pittance, as would be ſure to keep them from preſuming too much on their power in *Conſiſtory*. *Tithes* of all ſorts, were to be taken up for the uſe of the State, and layd up in the publick Treaſury; and ſtipends iſſued out to maintain the *Miniſterie*: but thoſe ſo mean, that *Bezaes* ſtipend whilſt he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pound *per annum*, the reſidue of the *City-Miniſters* not to ſixty pound, thoſe of the Villages adjoyning, having hardly forty pound, enough to keep them always poor, and miſerably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizen. And that they may not *ſteal the Gooſe, and not ſtick up a feather*, the State doth uſe to make ſome poor allowance to the wives and daughters of their deceaſed *Miniſters*, if they dye poor, or leave their children unprovided; or otherwiſe have deſerved well in the time of their lives. In reſpect hereof though the *Miniſters* are very ſtrict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts againſt it; yet to give ſome content to the common people (who have not leaſure to attend it at other times) they allow all Man-like Exerciſes on the *Lords-day*, as ſhooting in peeces, long-bows, croſs-bows, and the like, and that too in the morning both before and after the *Sermon*; ſo it be no impediment to them from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the *Government* of the State, it is directed principally by the *Civill* or *Imperiall* Laws; the Judge whereof is called the *Leiutenant-criminall*, before whom all cauſes are tryed, and from whom there lyeth no *Appeal*, unleſs it be unto the Counſell of two hundred, whom they call the *Great Counſell*, in which the ſupreme power of the State reſideth. Out of this *Counſell* of two hundred, there is choſen another *leſſer Counſell* of five and twenty, and out of them four principall Officers whom they call the *Syndiques*, who have the ſole managing of the Commonwealth, except it be in ſome great matter, as making Peace or War, *offenſive* or *defenſive* Leagues, hearing Appeales, and ſuch like generall concernments; which the great Counſell of two hundred muſt determine of. They have a cuſtom ſuperadded to the *Civill Law*, that if any Malefactor from another place fly to them for refuge, they puniſh him after the cuſtom of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwiſe, their Town being on the borders of divers Provinces, would never be free from *Vagabonds*. Examples hereof I will aſſign two: the firſt of certain *Monks*, who robbing their *Convents* of certain plate, and hoping for their wicked pranks at home to be the welcomer hither, were at their firſt acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The ſecond is of a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, who having fled his Country for clipping and counterfeiting the Kings Gold, came to this town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alleged, that he underſtood their City being free, gave admiſſion to all Offenders; *true* (ſaid they) *but with an intent to puniſh them that offended*: a diſtinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary *Revenue*, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to ſixty thouſand pound *per annum*, which they raiſe upon the *demain* of the Biſhop, and the *Tithes* of the Church, and on ſuch *impoſitions* as are layd upon fleſh and Merchandiſe. But they are able to raiſe greater ſums if there be occaſion, as appears plainly by the ſending of 45000 Crowns to King *Henry* the third, before they had been long ſetled in their own eſtates.

And as for *Military forces*, they are able to impreſs two thouſand men, and have Arms of all ſorts for ſo many in the publick *Arſenall*: as alſo twelve or fourteen peeces of Ordnance, with all manner of Ammunition appertaining to them; and on the Lake ſome Gallies in continuall readineſs againſt the dangers threatned them from the Dukes of *Savoy*. And for the

Wallis-land.

the greater ſafety of their Eſtate, and the preſervation of their *Religion*, they joyned themſelves in a conſtant and perpetuall League with the *Canton* of *Bern*, An. 1528, communicating to each other the Freedom of their ſeverall Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a member of the Commonwealth of the *Switzers*, which is no ſmall ſecurity to their affairs. But their chief ſtrength, as I conceive, is that the neighbor Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke, or any other Potentate of more ſtrength than he. Inſomuch that vvhen that Duke beſieged it, An. 1589, they were ayded from *Venice* with four and twenty thouſand, and from *England* with thirteen thouſand Crowns, from *Florence* with Intelligence of the Enemies purpoſes. Another time, when the Pope, the *French* King, the *Spaniard*, and *Savoyard* had deſigns upon it; the Emperor offered them aſſiſtance both of Men and Money: yea and ſometimes the Dukes of *Savoy* have aſſiſted them againſt the others, as being more deſirous that the Town ſhould remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for ſuch petit States, to be more ſafe by the intereſs of their jealous neighbors, than any forces of their ovvn.

The Arms of *Geneva*, when under the command of the Earls thereof, vvere *Or*, a Croſs *Azure*.

4. *WALLISLAND.*

EAſtward from *Savoy* in a long and deep bottom of the *Alpes Pœninæ*, lyeth the Country of *WALLISLAND*, ſo called either *quaſi Wallenſland*, or the land of the *Valenſes*, once the Inhabitants of the Country about *Martinacht*, a chief Town hereof; or *quaſi Vallis-land*, or the *Land of Vallies*, of which it totally conſiſts. It reacheth from the Mountain *de Furcken* to the Town of Saint *Maurice*, where again the hills do cloſe, and ſhut up the valley; which is ſo narrow in that place, that a bridge layd from one hill to another (under which the River *Rhoſne* doth paſs) is capable of no more than one Arch onely, and that defended with a Caſtle and two ſtrong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continuall wall of ſteep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a cruſt of Ice, not paſſable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by ſingle paſſengers; ſo that having but that one entrance to it, which before we ſpake of, no Citadell can be made ſo ſtrong by Art, as this whole Country is by Nature. But in the bottom of thoſe craggy and impaſſable Rocks lies a pleaſant Valley, fruitfull in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and moſt delicate fruits, and happily enriched with Meadows, and moſt excellent Paſtures, which yeeld a notable increaſe of Cheeſe and Butter: And in the Countrey about *Sion* they diſcovered in the year 1544 a Fountain of Salt; and have alſo many hot *Bathes* and medicinall waters very wholſom. Of Springs and River-water they are very deſtitute, having ſcarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhoſne* vvith a great deal both of charge and trouble (the common people uſing ſnow-water for the moſt part for domeſtick uſes) which made one pleaſantly obſerve, that they *pay there dearer for their water than they do for their Wine.* Cattell they have ſufficient to ſerve their turn, and amongſt others, a wild *Buck*, equall to a *Stag* in bigneſs, footed like a *Goat*, and horned like a fallow Deer, leaping with vvonderfull agility from one precipice to another, and ſo not eaſily caught but in Summer time; for then the heat of that ſeaſon makes him blind.

It is divided into the *Upper* and the *Lower Walliſland*; the *Upper* lying towards the Mountain *de Furcken*, in the very bottom of the Valley; and the *Lower* ſtretching out to the Town of Saint *Maurice*, which is at the opening of the ſame: the length of both ſaid to be five ordinary daies journey, but the bredth not anſwerable. The *Upper Walliſland* containeth the ſeven *Reſorts* of 1 *Sion*, or *Sedune*, 2 *Leuck*, 3 *Brig*, 4 *Nies*, 5 *Rawren*, 6 *Sider*, 7 *Gombes*; in which are reckoned thirty Pariſhes: the *Lower* comprehending the ſix *Reſorts* of 1 *Gurdis*, 2 *Ardoa*, 3 *Sallien*, 4 *Martinacht*, 5 *Jutremont*, and 6 Saint *Maurice*; in which are 24 Pariſhes. The people in both parts ſaid to be courteous towards ſtrangers, but very rough and churliſh towards one another.

The ſeverall *Reſorts* before mentioned are named according to the names of their principall Towns; which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1 *Sedunum*, *Sittim* or *Sion*; a Biſhops See, ſuffragan to the *Metropolitan* of *Tarentuiſe*; the chief of all this little Country: of no great beauty in it ſelf, but neat and gallant in reſpect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhoſne*, under a Mountain of tvvo tops; on the one of which, being the lower, is ſeated the Cathedrall Church, and the Canons houſes; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadfull precipice, a very ſtrong Caſtle, the dwelling place of the Biſhop in the heats of Summer: which being built upon an hill of ſo great an height, and of ſo hazardous an aſcent, is impoſſible almoſt to be took by force; the ſharpneſs of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of aſſaults, and the highneſs of the hill from the reach of Gun-ſhot. 2 *Marchinacht*, by *Cæſar* called *Octodurus*, and *Civitas Valenſium* by *Antoninus*, remarkable for its antiquity only. 3 Saint *Maurice*, or Saint *Morits*, antiently *Augaunum*, the Key of the whole Country, but in Winter eſpecially, vvhen all

all the other passages are so frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town: which for that cause is very well manned and fortified to avoyd surprisall; and therefore also chosen for the seat of the Governour of the *Lower Wallisland*. *Switzerland.*

This Country now called *Wallisland*, is in most *Latin* Writers called by the name of *Valesia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Vulensia*, as the *Dutch* or *English* name for *Wallinsland*: which name I should conceive it took from the *Valenses*, the old inhabitants of this valley, of whom *Octodurus* (now called *Marchinacht*) is by *Antoninus* made to be the *Metropolis* or principall City. It was made subject to the *Romans* by *Julius Cæsar*, at such time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Western parts of the *Roman* Empire unto *Charles* the *great*, was by him given to *Theodulus* Bishop of *Sion*, An. 805. Under his successors they continue to this very day; but so, as that the Deputies of the *seven Resorts* have not only voyces with the *Canons* in his Election, but being chosen and invested into the place, they joyn with him also in the *Diets* for chooſing Magistrates, redressing grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Wallisland* obeyeth the upper, made subject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no sway at all in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governours agree of. The same *Religion* is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintainance whereof they combined themselves with the seven Popish *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, An. 1572, or thereabouts: as also for their mutuall defence and preservation against Forein Enemies, and keeping amitie and concord amongst one another.

5. *SWITZERLAND*

NExt unto *Wallisland* lyeth the Country of the *SWITZERS*, having on the East, the *Grisons*, and some part of *Tirol*, in *Germany*; on the West, the Mountain *Jour*, and the Lake of *Geneve*, which parts it from *Savoy* and *Burgundy*; on the North, *Suevia* or *Sewaben*, another Province also of the upper *Germany*; and on the South, *Wallisland* and the *Alpes*, which border on the Dukedom of *Millain*.

The whole Country heretofore divided into three parts onely, that is to say, 1 *Azgow*, so called from the River *Aar*, whose chief Town was *Lucern*. 2 *Wislispurgergow*, so called from *Wislispurg* an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*. And 3 *Zurichgow*, so named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this present the Town of most note in all this Tract; but since the falling off of these Countries from the house of *Austria*, divided into many *Cantons* and other members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner over-grown with craggy Mountains, but such as for the most part have grassie tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nourishing pastures, which breed them a great stock of Cattell, their greatest wealth. And in some places yeelds plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increase of Corn also, if care and industry be not wanting on the Husband-mans part, but neither in so great abundance as to serve all necessary uses, which want they doe supply from their neighbouring Countries. And though it stand upon as high ground as any in *Christendom*, yet is no place more stored with Rivers, and capacious *Lakes*, which doe not onely yeeld them great aboundance of Fish, but serve the people very well in the way of Traffick to disperse their severall Commodities from one *Canton* to another. Of which the principall are, *Bodensee*, and the Lake of *Cell*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genser see*, or the Lake of *Geneve*, by the *Rhosne*; *Walldstet see*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Russe*; *Namonburger* and *Bieter sees*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurich see*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty miles, an hundred and eighty in bredth: conceived to be the highest Countrey in *Europe* (as before is sayd) the Rivers which do issue from it running thorow all quarters of the same, as *Rhene* thorough *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Po*, thorough *Italie* to the South; *Rhodanus*, thorough part of *France* to the Western Ocean; and the *Inn*, which fallling into the *Danubius* passeth thorow *Germany* and *Hungary* into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Country is, such are the Inhabitants, of rude and rugged dispositions, more fit for Arms than any civill occupations, capable of toyl and labour, which the necessities of their Country doth inure them to, not able otherwise to afford them an hungry livelyhood: the poverty whereof makes them seek for service, which they shift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their superfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to spare greater multitudes to a Forein War, than a man would easily imagine. In a word, the people are naturally honest, frugall, and industrious, impartiall in the administration of Justice, and great lovers of Liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of such a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles* of *Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himself able to take the field, or stand his own ground

Switzerland.

ground in defence of his Dominions; if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italie* about the Dutchy of *Millain*, ſerved exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Country, they could be hired better cheap by the *French* or *Spaniard* than any Army could be brought out of *France* or *Spain*. And having had ſome good ſucceſſes to increaſe their fame, they grew ſo terrible at laſt, that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guyen* were more affraid of one band of *Suiſſe*, than of all the reſt of the *French* Army. But being found withall to be falſe and treacherous, and eaſily bought off by the better purſe (which they moſt evidently diſcovered in betraying Duke *Lodowick Sforze*, who had put himſelf and his eſtate into their hands) and thoſe *Italian* Wars growing unto an end, they did decay ſo faſt in their reputation, that firſt the neighbouring Princes could doe well without them, and at laſt uſed them not at all, or at leaſt very ſparingly. And now it is their honour that they are choſen of the Gaurd to the *French* King, and the Popes of *Rome*, and the Dukes of *Genoa*; and that the greateſt Princes of *Europe* give them yearly penſions. Which penſions were given heretofore to be aſſured of their ayd upon all occaſions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other ſide.

For matter of *Religion*, it is proportionably mixt, ſome of the *Cantons* being wholly *Popiſh*, ſome wholly *Proteſtant*; in others both Religions uſed promiſcuouſly. At firſt the differences were ſo eagerly purſued on both ſides, that notwithſtanding the mediation of ſome potent neighbours, it broke out into a *Civil* War; the *Cantons* of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug* (which the *Latin* Writers of this ſtory call the *Quinquepagici*) arming againſt *Urich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius*. In the beginning of which War, the *Proteſtant* party was diſcomfited, *Zuinglius* himſelf ſlain in the head of the battell, and his body burnt: his heart remaining in the middeſt of the fire, whole and untouched (as Arch-biſhop *Cranmers* alſo did) when all the reſt of his body was conſumed to aſhes. But thoſe of the *Reformed* party would not ſo give over: Another field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverſe party. Wearied at laſt with theſe reciprocall defeats, they agreed the buſineſs, indulging each to other the free exerciſe of their own *Religions*. So it continueth at this day, diverſitie of opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick *intereſſe*, nor giving any interruption to that bond of peace which was ſo firmly knit amongſt them in their firſt *confederacies*.

Now for the body of their State, it conſiſts of three diſtinct parts, or members, which are to be conſidered in this diſcourſe; *viz.* the *Swiſſe* themſelves, the *Prafectures* which are ſubject to them, and the States that are confederate with them. The *Swiſſe* are ſubdivided into thirteen *Cantons*, that is to ſay *Swits*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Baſil*, *Friburg*, *Soloturn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris*, and *Schaffhauſen*. Theſe properly make the body of that Commonwealth; enjoying many rights privileges and preheminences which the others do not, as power to determine of war and peace, to diſpoſe of the *Prafectures*, and divide amongſt themſelves the ſpoyl of the Enemy. The firſt confederacy was made betwixt the *Cantons* of *Switz*, and *Underwald*, An. 1315. Of which the *Switz* being the moſt potent, the moſt exaſperated, and that which did moſt hotly proſecute the combination, gave to the reſt the name of *Switzers*. *Lucern* was added to the three, An. 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the confederacy till the year 1351; nor *Bern* untill the year next after. *Friburg* and *Soloturn* came in An. 1481. *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen* united with them in the year 1501. and *Apenzel*, which vvas the laſt which was admitted into their *confederacie*, An. 1511. So that there paſſed within little of two hundred years from the firſt beginning of theſe *Leagues* to the finiſhing of them.

The ſecond Member of this body are the Towns and *States Confederates* with them for the preſervation of their common Liberties, *viz.* the Town and Abbot of Saint *Gall*, the Towns of *Rotwell*, *Mulhaſen*, *Nuwenberg*, and *Biel*, ſituate on the Lake thence named; of which the firſt belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in *France*, the latter to the Biſhops of *Baſil*; with the City and Signeury of *Geneva*: And of theſe, *Rotwell* and *Mulhaſen* are confederate with all the *Cantons*, the reſt with ſome particulars only. The Abbot of Saint *Gall* firſt entered into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and *Glaris*, for the preſervation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, and *Glaris*, the better to preſerve themſelves from the power of their *Abbot*, who was before their naturall and immediate Lord. This was in *Anno* 1452. *Rotwell* and *Mulhauſen* two Imperiall Towns in the Province of *Schawben* confederated in a perpetuall League withall the *Cantons*, the firſt An. 1515. the other An. 1519, *Nuwenberg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern* only.

As for the *Trafectures* of the *Switzers*, they are ſuch leſſer parcels and addiments as have accrewed to their Eſtate, and are ſubject unto their authority, either by gift, purchaſe, or the chance of war: ſome lying in *Switzerland* it ſelf, ſome amongſt other parts of the *Alpes*, and ſome in *Italie*. Theſe are the Towns and Countries of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Millingen*, *Rappenſwyll*, *Wagenthall*, interpoſed here and there amongſt the *Switzers*: the Town and Country of *Sargans*, lying amongſt the *Rhætian Alpes*, not far from the *Griſons*; and *Rhineck*, lying in a valley of the *Alpes* on the left ſhore of the *Rhene*, near the Lake of *Conſtans*; and finally

nally the vallies of *Locarno*, *Magia*, and *Lugano*, *Mendrisio*, and *Belinzano*, situate in and amongst the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Millain*, to vvhich they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of *Baden* and *Mellingen* appertain to the eight first *Cantons*: *Wagenthall*, the *Sargans*, and *Rheineck* to the seven first *Cantons*: *Rappenswill* to *Uren*., *Swits*, *Underwald*, *Glaris*, and *Turgow*, unto the ten first Cantons; *Belinzano* to the three first only, and all the rest of the *Italian* Præfectures to the Cantons generally, excepting *Apenzell*, which was entred into the confederacy when these Præfectures were given unto the *Switzers* by *Maximilian Sforza* Duke of *Millain*, which was in An. 1513, some moneths before the taking in of *Apenzel* to the rest of the *Cantons*. *Switzerland.*

Such is the number of the *Cantons*, *Prafectures*, and *States confederate*, amongst all vvhich there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Town in the Cantons of *Swits*, *Uren*, *Underwalden*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States confederate situate amongst the *Switzers*, but Saint *Gall* onely; nor in any of the *Prafectures* but that of *Baden*. So that the places worthy of consideration are not like to be many. Of those that are, the principall are, 1 *Zurich*, a large City, and a renowned University, situate on both sides of the River *Limat*, where it issueth out of the Lake called *Zurich-See*. It had antiently two Monasteries in it, in one of which *Huldericus Zuinglius* was a *Canon*, slain near this Town in the battell spoken of before, An. 1531. now giving name to the most honourable of the *Cantons*, to which belongeth the autority of summoning the generall *Diets*, as of those also of the *Protestants*, the Legates thereof presiding in both Assemblies. 2 *Friburg*, situate on the River *Sana*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky hill, founded by *Bertold* the fourth Duke of *Zuringen*. 3 *Solothurn*, (the *Solothurum* of *Antoninus*) on the River of *Aar*, famous for the Martyrdom of S. *Ursus*, and his 66 *Theban* Souldiers, in the time of the Emperour *Diocletian*. A Town of great Antiquity, but not so old by far as the people make it; who would have it to be built in the time of *Abraham*. 4 *Basil*, so called either of a *Basilisk* slain at the building of the City, or of the *German* word *Pasel*, signifying a path; or of Βασιλεὺς signifying Kingly. It was built An. 382, and is famous for an University founded by *Pius* the second, Anno 1459. It was made a *Canton* An. 1501; and is honoured with the Sepulchers of *Oecolampadius*, *Erasmus*, *Pontanus*, *Glarienus*, and *Hottoman*, the famous Civilian. In this City, An. 1431. vvas held that notable Councill, wherein though the *Papall* authority was then at the height, it was decreed that a *generall Councill was above the Pope*. What was then enacted, was immediately put in practise; the Councill deposing Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, and placing in his room *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy*, afterward called *Felix* the fourth, who having held the See nine years in a time of *Schism*, did willingly, in order to the peace of *Christendom*, resign the Popedom to *Nicolas* to sift, who had before been chosen by the opposite Faction. The City is great, rich, and populous, sometimes a Town *Imperiall*, still a Bishops See, the Bishop being subject to the Arch-Bishop of *Besanson*, in the County of *Burgundie*: seated upon the River *Rhene* (where it receiveth *Weis* and *Byrsa*, two lesser brooks) by which it is divided into the *greater Basil* lying towards *France*, and the *lesser* lying towards *Germany*. 5 *Lucern*, situate on both sides of the *Russe*, where it issueth out of the Lake of *Lucern*, so called from *Lucerna*, *i.e.* the *Lantern*, which was placed here on an high Tower, to give light to Water-men in the night. A City well traded, and frequented by strangers, because the ordinary road from *Germany* into *Italie*, passing from hence thorow the Country of the *Grisons*; and in regard that the *Diets* for the *Popish Cantons*, which heretofore were held at *Uren*, are removed hither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called *Pilates hill*, of *Pontius Pilate*, whose ghost (as the common people are made to beleeve) doth walk once a year on the banks of this Lake, in his Judges Robes. And to be sure the fiction shall not be confuted, they adde, that whosoever seeth him shall die that year. 6 *Bern*, compassed almost round with the River *Aar*, and taking up the whole extent of a little mountain: the houses of free-stone, neatly and uniformly built. A Town which gives name to the largest and most potent of all the *Cantons*, and one of the first which did embrace the *Reformation*, and the first of all which purged it self of Images, those excellent Instruments of Superstition and Idolatry, defaced here in a popular tumult, An. 1548. 7 *Lausanna* in the Canton of *Bern*, a Bishops See, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Besanson*, seated on the banks of the Lake of *Lemane*, and compassed with mountains alwaies covered with snow, which open themselves on the East side onely, which is towards *Italie*. 8 *Schaffhausen*, the only Town of all the *Cantons*, which lyeth on the other side of the *Rhene*, of right belonging unto *Suevia*, or *Seawben*, a Province of *Germany*, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this *Confederacy*.

Next for the *Prafectures*, and *confederate* States, they have not many Towns of note (excepting *Rotwell*, and *Mulhusen* two *Imperiall* Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of those which be the principall amongst the *Confederates*, lying within the bounds of this Country, is the Town of *Saint Gall* (*Sengall* as they corruptly call it) an *Imperiall* City, situate amongst the Mountains near the *Boden-Zee*: A rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking name from the Monastery of S. *Gall*, a famous *Scot*, and the Apostle of those parts, An. 630, or thereabouts; the *Abbat* of which having great possessions in this tract (before *Apenzell*, and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptists* were once very prevalent here, insomuch that one of them cut off his brothers head in the presence

Switzerland.

of his Father and Mother, and ſayd (according to the humor of that ſect, who boaſt much of dreams, viſions, and *Enthuſiaſms*) that *God commanded him ſo to doe.* The principal amongſt the *Prafectures* is the Town of *Baden*, or (to difference it from *Baden* a Marquiſate in *Germany*) the *Upper Baden*, ſeated on a little Mountain near the River *Limat*, almoſt in the middle of the Countrey; and for that cauſe the place of meeting for the Councell of *Eſtate* of all the *Confederates*. It taketh name from the Bathes here being, two of which onely are publick, the reſt in private houſes: conſcious, as it is thought, to much laſciviouſneſs. For whereas it is ſaid of *Adrian*, that *Lavacra pro ſexibus ſeparavit*; here men and women promiſcuouſly Bath together; and which is worſt, in private: where, as *Munſter* telleth us, *Cernunt viri uxores tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem ſolam cum ſolo*; and yet are not any of them diſturbed with jealouſie. Theſe *Bathes* are much frequented, yet not ſo much for health as pleaſure. Their chiefeſt vertue is the *quickning* power they have upon *barren* women. But as the *Friers* uſe to ſend men whoſe wives are fruitleſs, in pilgrimage to Saint *Joyce*, the Patroneſs of fruitfulneſs, and in the mean time to lye with their wives: ſo it may be with good reaſon thought, that in a place of ſuch Liberty as this is, the luſty and young gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation on barren women, than the waters of the Bath it ſelf. No other Town of eminent note amongſt the *Prafectures* of the *Swiſſes*, except *Rheineck* it ſelf, the ſeat of the Governour for the *Switzers*, ſituate near the Lake of *Conſtance*: and none of any note at all amongſt the *Italian Prafectures*, except *Belinzana*, and *Locarno*, neither of them containing 400 Houſes, and thoſe none of the handſomeſt.

Within the limits of this Country, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons* of *Uren*, *Swits*, *Underwald*, *Glarona*, and *Lucern*; with ſome of the adjoyning parts of *Germany*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*; did ſometimes ſtand the famous and renowned Caſtle of *Habſpurg*, from the Lords whereof the houſe of *Auſtria*, and moſt of the Kings and Princes of the Chriſtian World doe derive themſelves. Firſt founded, as ſome ſay, by *Ottopert* the third Prince of this line, at or before the year 700, as others ſay by *Rapato* the ſonne of *Betzeline*, about the year 1020. Situate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latins* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now ſo decaied, that there is no tracing of the ruins. Preſerved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, deſcended in a direct line from *Sigebert* the eldeſt ſonne of *Theodebert* King of *Mets* or *Auſtraſia*; firſt ſetled in theſe parts by *Clotaire* the ſecond King of the *French*, with the title, as ſome ſay, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is novv called *Suevia* or *Sohwaben*, an adjoyning Province of *Germany*.) Being ſoon weary of that empty, but invidious title, they were ſometimes called Earls of *Habſpurg*, by the name of this Caſtle; ſometimes Earls of *Altemburg*, another Caſtle not far off, of their own foundation. And after cloſing in with the Kings of *Burgundie Transjurane*, and the *German* Emperors, they received of them a great part of the Country of *Argow*, from which ſome of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known diſtinctly by the title of Earls of *Habſpurg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned, when thoſe of *Altemburg* and *Argow* became diſcontinued. Howſoever, we will here lay down the whole ſucceſſion of this famous Family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of.

The Earls of *Habſpurg*.

635 1 *Sigibert*, ſonne of *Theodebert* King of *Mets*, by *Clotaire* the ſecond of that name, *French* King, diſpoſſeſſed of the kingdom of his Father, and afterwards by him indowed with a great part of thoſe Countries which are now called *Switzerland*; with the title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.

2 *Sigibert* II. ſonne of *Sigibert* the firſt, Duke of *Upper Almain*.

3 *Ottopert*, or *Otbert*, the ſonne of *Sigibert* the ſecond, the founder, as ſome ſay, of the Caſtles of *Altemburg*, and *Habſpurg*, of which promiſcuouſly called Earl.

4 *Bebo*, the ſonne of *Ottopert*, the laſt Duke of *Upper Almain*, which title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habſpurg*.

5 *Robert*, or *Rother*, as ſome call him, the ſonne of *Bebo*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

766 6 *Hertopert*, the ſonne of *Robert*, who added unto his Eſtate that part of *Scwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Briſgow*.

7 *Rampert*, the ſonne of *Hertopert*, who flouriſhed An. 814, at what time he procured the Canonization of S. *Trutpertus*.

8 *Guntram*, the ſonne of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

9 *Luithard*, the ſonne of *Guntram*.

999 10 *Luitfride*, the ſonne of *Luithard*.

929 11 *Hunifride*, the ſonne of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Eſtates the Territory now called *Sungow*, bordering on *Alſatia*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his deceaſe by the Dukes of *Scwaben*.

950 12 *Guntram* II. ſonne of *Hunifride*, the firſt who took unto himſelf the title of Earl of *Argow*: from whoſe ſecond ſonne named *Berthild*, deſcended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow*, and good part of *Switzerland*.

13 *Betzo*

13 *Betzo*, or *Betzeline*, ſonne of *Guntram* the ſecond, Earl of *Argow*.
14 *Rapato*, ſonne of *Betzeline*, the founder or repairer of the Caſtle of *Habſpurg*, from whence both he and his ſucceſſors were conſtantly called Earls of *Habſpurg*. Great Grand-father, by *Theoderick* his youngeſt ſonne, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Rhinefelden*, and Duke of *Schawben*, elected Emperor (at the inſtigation of the Pope) againſt *Henry* the fourth. *Switzerland.*
15 *Warner*, by ſome called *Berengar*, or *Berengarius*, the ſonne of *Rapato*.
1096 16 *Otho*, the ſonne of *Warner* or *Berengar*.
1108 17 *Warner* II. ſonne of *Otho*, enriched by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, with ſome fair Eſtates belonging to the Dukes of *Schawben*.
18 *Albert*, the ſonne of *Warner* the ſecond, ſurnamed the *Rich*.
19 *Albert* II. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, ſonne of *Albert* the firſt, added to his Eſtates all the *Upper Alſatia*, which he had by the right of *Hedwigis* his wife, daughter and heir of *Simon*, the laſt Earl thereof.
1238 20 *Rodolph*, the fortunate ſonne of *Albert* the ſecond, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, An. 1273. Of which he made ſo good advantage, that he added unto his Eſtates the great Dukedom of *Auſtria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and layd the firſt foundation of the *Auſtrian* greatneſs; of which more in *Germany*.

Having on the occaſion of theſe Earles of *Habſpurg*, beheld ſo much of the affairs of this Country, as related to that puiſſant and illuſtrious Family, let us go forward to the reſt: firſt taking in our way the antient Eſtate hereof in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous tract, containing many ſeverall Nations (ſome of them ſpoken of before) vvas comprehended under the generall name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greateſt and moſt populous of all the reſt: ſo called, as *Verſtegan* will have it, *quaſi Hil-Vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of the *Cimbrick Cherſonneſe*, which is now called *Jutland*. Grown by long peace, and want of opportunity by traffick into forein parts, to ſo great a multitude, that the Country, barren of it ſelf, was no longer able to maintain them, they ſet fire on their Towns and Houſes, and with a generall reſolution went to ſeek new dwellings. The totall number of men, women and children, which went upon this deſperate action, are ſayd to have amounted to the number of 3680000, whereof 900000 were fighting men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Caſſius* a *Roman* Conſul, ſlain the Conſul himſelf, and ſold his Souldiers for Bond-ſlaves: upon the apprehenſion of which good ſucceſs, they thought no body able to withſtand them: But they found *Ceſar* of a ſtronger metall than *L. Caſſius*. Who having ſtopped their paſſage by hewing down the bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown ſtrong enough to bid them battell, ſo waſted them in ſeverall skirmiſhes and defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild thoſe Towns and Villages which they had deſtroyed before this enterpriſe; which he upon deliverie of Hoſtages did vouchſafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the leaſt two Millions of them periſhed in this journey, not ſo much by the ſword (though that ſpared them not) as for want of neceſſaries. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian* the third, by the *Burgundians* and *Almans*, betwixt whom divided, the River *Ruſs* parting their dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundie*; ſome parts firſt taken out, and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habſpurg*, as before was noted. Given with the reſt of that Kingdom to the Emperor *Conrade* the ſecond, by *Rodolph* the laſt King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperors (as their cuſtom was) into divers States; moſt of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schawben*, the Earls of *Habſpurg*, and the Dukes of *Zezingen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as heirs to the other, by the Dukes of *Auſtria*. But being at laſt over-burdened by the tyrannie of thoſe Governors, whom the Dukes of *Auſtria* ſent among them; ſeeing withall the Empire by the Popes Fulminations diſtracted into many Factions, and the *Auſtrian* Family weakned by a ſub-diviſion of that great Eſtate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offenſive* and *Defenſive* League amongſt themſelves for defeuce of their Liberty, into which firſt entred thoſe of *Switz*, *Uren*, and *Underwalden*, An° 1316. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1511, as before was noted. At their firſt beginning to take Arms, *Frederick*, one of the many Dukes of *Auſtria* (to whoſe ſhare they fell) ſent his ſonne *Leopald* againſt them with a puiſſant Army; which they encountred with near *Sempuch*, a village of the now Canton of *Lucern*, and there overthrevv him: but more by the convenience of thoſe narrow paſſages, thorough which his Army vvas to march, than by any valour: In which it was no ſmall help to them, that the waies were all ſo filled with Ice, that he was able to do no ſervice with his Horſe; and his ſouldiers ſo amazed at the preſent difficulties, that the *Confederates* only caſting ſtones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoyning.

Having thus cleared themſelves of the Houſes of *Auſtria*, they continued in a Free-Eſtate, but never came to any reputation by their valour, till the War which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* made againſt them, whom they diſcomfited in three ſet battels. A War begun on very ſmall

Switzerland.

occasions, and less hopes: the Countrey being so barren, and the people so poor, that their Ambassador to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) protested, that if all their Countrey-men were taken, they would not be able to pay a ransom, to the value of the spurs and bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were so poor, that they knew not what riches was; for having won the first battell at *Granson* (the other two were those of *Morat* and *Nancie*) one of the goodliest *Pavillions* in the World was by them torn into peeces, and turned into breeches and side-coats: divers silver plates and dishes they sold for a *French Sous* (each *Sous* a little more than an *English* penny) supposing them to be but pewter; and a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodliest Jewell in *Christendom*, was sold to a Priest, for a *Guilder*; and by him again to some of the Lords of the Country, for three *Franks*. After their valour shewed in these battels, *Lewis* the 11. took them into pension, giving them yearly forty thousand Crowns, *viz.* twenty thousand to the Cities, and twenty thousand to particular persons; and bowed so much beneath the Majesty of the most *Christian* King, as to term himself one of the *Bourgesses* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them should be held for their first *Allie*. By these arts, and the nearness of their Forces for those occasions, he wrested *Burgundie* out of the hands of *Mary* the daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis* the twelfth won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforze*, whom they perfidiously betrayed, as was said before. Upon the merit of these services, they required an Augmentation of their pensions; which when this *Lewis* the twelfth denied, they withdrew themselves from the Amity of the *French*, and entred into the service of Pope *Julio* the second, who therefore stiled them the *Defenders of the Church*, An. 1510. The fruits of which entertainment was the defeat of the whole forces of King *Lewis*, and the loss of *Millain*, into which *Maximilian Sforze*, the sonne of *Ludowick* was solemnly re-instated by the Confederates: who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them those Towns and Vallies in the *Alpes* of *Italy* (formerly members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*, reckoned amongst the *Prafectures* of their Commonwealth. *Francis* the first, in pursuance of his claim to *Millain*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the battell of *Marignan*; yet afterwards considering what damage his Realm had sustained by the revolt of these Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the *Confederation* with them, on condition that he should restore the antient pension of forty thousand Crowns; secondly, that he should pay unto them at certain terms, six hundred thousand Crowns; thirdly, that he should entertain four thousand of them in his pay continually; fourthly, that for the restoring of such places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he should give unto them thirty thousand Crowns; fiftly, that he should give them three moneths pay before-hand; sixtly and lastly, that *Maximilian Sforze*, whom they had estated in *Millain*, and were now going to dispossess, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemours*, endowed with twelve thousand *Frankes* of yearly revenue, and maried to a daughter of the blood royall. On these conditions, as honourable to them as burdensom to the King, was the League renewed An. 1522: since which time, they have obtained, that six hundred of their Country are to be of the *French* Kings Guard: five hundred of which wait without at the gates of the Court; the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the *French* Kings did not so ingross the Market though they raised the price of the commodity, but that all other Princes might have them also for their money: the Kings of *Spain* and others bidding fair for them, but never going so high as the *French* had done. At last, upon the differences which grew amongst themselves in point of *Religion*, they grew to be divided also in point of *Pension*: the *Popish Cantons* taking pensions of the Pope and the King of *Spain*, the *Protestants* of the *French*, the *mixt* of both, and all of the *Venetians*. By which means, being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be trusted of none. Which sudden sinking of that fame and reputation which they had attained to, together with the reasons of it, that notable Statesman and Historian *Guicciardine* doth describe, as followeth: "The name (saith he) of this wild and uncivill Nation "hath got great honour by their concord, and glory by Arms. For being fierce by nature, in- "ured to War, and exact keepers of Military discipline, they have not onely defended their "own Country, but have won much praise in forein parts, which doubtless had been greater, "if they had sought to inlarge their own Empire, and not for wages to inlarge the Empire of "others; and if nobly they had propounded unto themselves any other ends than the gain of "mony, by the love whereof being made abject, they have lost the opportunity of becomming "fearfull to *Italy*. For since they never came out of their confines but as *mercenarie* men, they "have had no publick fruit of their Victories: but by their covetousness have become intolle- "rable in their exactions where they overcame, and in their demands with other men; yea, "at home froward and obstinate in their conclusions, as well as in following their commands "under whose pay they serve in War. Their chief men have pensions of severall Princes to "favour them in their publick meetings: and so private profit being preferred before the "good of the publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and fall at discord amongst them- "selves, with great lessening of the reputation which they had gotten amongst strangers. So he, relating the affairs of the year 1511, which the following issue of affairs hath fully verified.

As for the *Government* of this State, it is meerly *popular*, and that not only in the particular Cantons,

Cantons, but the aggregate body of their Counſell : the *Gentry* and *Nobility* being either rooted up in thoſe long Wars which were betwixt them and their *Vaſſals*, juſtly provoked by thoſe intollerable preſſures and exactions which they layd upon them ; or elſe worn out of memory and obſervation, for want of ſway and ſuffrage in the Counſels of the *Common-wealth*. Only in *Schaffehauſen*, *Baſil*, and *Zuvich*, are ſome *Gentry* left, not capable of any place or *ſuffrage* in the *Senate* of the ſaid *Cantons* (from which they are excluded by the common people, becauſe they joyned not with them in their firſt revolt) unleſs they waive their *Gentry*, and be enrolled amongſt the number of *Plebeians*. The reſt they have (it ſeemeth) in ſo poor eſteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meaneſt Trades, in all occaſions of War are numbred with, and amongſt theſe *Gentlemen*, making up one ſociety onely, and joyning with them in electing the *Maſter of their company*, who is one of the Senate. But becauſe that every *Canton* hath its proper Magiſtrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatneſs, or in the number of its ſeverall *Reſorts*, or ſub-diviſions ; it will not be amiſs to ſhew what number of *Reſorts* are in every *Canton* ; that is to ſay, in *Underwalden* only two, in *Switz* ſix, in *Uren* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Apenzel* ſix, in *Lucern* ſeven, in *Solothurn* no more than one, in *Friburg* ninteen, in *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen* but one a peece (the Cantons there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themſelves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern* ; in all, one hundred forty and eight. Of theſe conſiſts the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular *Canton* hath its proper Magiſtrate, choſen by the commonalty of that *Canton* (whom they call the *Wuaman*) together with a ſtanding Counſell aſſiſtant to him, choſen out of the people, for the directing and diſpoſing of their lovvn affairs ; which meet and ſit in the chief Town or Village of that *Diſtrict*. But if the cauſe concern the *Publick*, then every *Canton* ſendeth one or more Commiſſioners to the generall *Diets*, where they determine of the buſineſs which they meet about, according to the major part of the *Votes* : the Commiſſioners of every *Canton* having one Vote only, though many may be ſent from each, to adde the greater weight to their conſultations. The place of meeting is moſt commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in reſpect of the commodity of the Inns and houſes, the pleaſant ſituation, and famous *Medicinall Bathes* ; and becauſe it is ſeated in the very center of *Switzerland*, and ſubject to the eight firſt Cantons. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues ; of making Laws ; of ſending, receiving, and anſwering Ambaſſadors ; of Governments, and diſtributing the publick Offices ; and finally of difficult cauſes, and Appeales referred unto the judgement of the *great Counſell*. In which the City of *Zurich*, chief of the *Cantons*, hath the firſt place, not by antiquity, but dignity, and of old cuſtom hath the greateſt authority of calling together this *Great Counſell*, ſignifying by Letters to each *Canton*, the cauſe, time, and place of meeting ; yet ſo, that if any *Canton* think it for the publick good to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commiſſioners, they write to them of *Zurich* to appoint the ſame. That which the greater number do reſolve upon, is without delay put in execution. *Switzerland.*

The *Forces* of theſe *Suiſſe* conſiſt altogether of Foot, Horſe being found unſerviceable in theſe Mountainous Countries. And of theſe Foot, *Boterus* reckoneth that they are able to raiſe ſixſcore thouſand. Which poſſibly may be true enough, if it be underſtood of all that be able to bear Arms. For otherwiſe *de facto*, the greateſt Army that ever they brought into the field, conſiſted but of one and thirty thouſand men, which was that wherewith they aided the confederate States of *Italie* againſt the *French*, and reſtored *Maximilian Sforze* to the Dukedom of *Millain*. Their ordinary ſtanding Forces are conceived to be ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand, which they may bring into the field, leaving their Towns and Forts well furniſhed. And for their *Revenue*, it is not like to be very great, conſidering the poverty of their Country, and their want of traffick with other Nations. That which is *ordinary* and in common, ariſeth out of the Annuall penſions which they receive from Forein States, the profits ariſing out of their *Dutch* and *Italian* Præfectures, the Impoſt layd on Wines ſold in Taverns, and Corn uſed by Bakers, and the rents of a diſſolved Monaſterie called *Kings field* (or *Conings field*) becauſe many Kings and Queens have been cloyſtered there, amounting to forty thouſand Guldens yearly. Which Monaſtery was built in the year 1380, in memory and honour of the Emperor *Albertus* ſlain by his Nephew at *Santback*, not far from *Baſil*. Their *extraordinary* doth conſiſt of ſpoyles that be gotten in the War ; which if it be managed in common, are divided in common ; but if by two or three of the *Cantons* onely, the reſt can claim no ſhare in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Switzers* themſelves. For otherwiſe taking in the *Confederate* States, as well without, as within the bounds of that Country, they are able to raiſe fifty or threeſcore thouſand men : that is to ſay, the *Switzers* themſelves ſeventeen thouſand, the *Griſons* ten thouſand, thoſe of *Walliſland* ſix thouſand, the Abbot and Town of S. *Gall* four thouſand, the City of *Geneva* two thouſand, beſides what *Rotwel* and *Mulhuſen*, two *Imperial* Cities, are able to contribute towards it ; the Dukes of *Savoy* being bound by their antient Leagues to ayd them with ſix hundred Horſes at his own charges ; beſides two thouſand ſix hundred Crowns in Annuall penſions. But the *Revenue* of thoſe States is ordered by it ſelf a part, and never comes within the computation of the publick ; unleſs it be on the repulſing of a com-

mon

Grisons. mon Enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which case, and others of a generall *interesse*, they communicate both heads and purses: the Delegates and Commissioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to consult of the common cause, which meeting they entitle the *Greatest Counsell*. But this is very seldom held, publick affairs being generally ordered by the Commissioners of the *Switzers* only: though they themselves disclaim that name of *Switzers* as too mean and narrow, and call themselves *Eidgenossen*, that is to say, *Partakers of the sworn Leagues*. More of this Common-wealth he that lists to see, may satisfie himself in *Simler*, who purposely and punctually hath described the same.

6. THE LEAGUES OF THE GRISONS.

THE Country of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lyeth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Athesis*, and *Adua*: being bounded on the East, with the Country of *Tirol*; on the West, with *Switzerland*; on the North, with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more mountainous than any of this *Alpine* tract, and having less naturall commodities to boast it self of, more than the Fountains of those Rivers before mentioned.

The people of it by most *Latin* Writers of these times are called by the name of *Rheti*, the Country *Rhetia*; and so far properly enough, as that the antient *Rhati* did inhabit all the lands possessed by the *Grisons*, though the *Grisons* do not inhabit a fourth part of those lands, which were possessed heretofore by the antient *Rhati*: For antiently the *Rhati* did extend their dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of *Italie* to the River of *Danow*; comprehending besides this of the *Grisons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and so much also of the *Switzers* as was not in possession of the old *Helvetii*. Within which tract there were not only many rich vallies and fruitfull fields; but a most pleasant race of Wines called *Vina Rhetica*; much drank of by *Augustus Cæsar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no man can conceive to grow in this barren Country. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, mountainous fields, which the continuall snow made look of an *hoary* hew: and by allusion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the present by the name of *Graunpuntner*, that is to say, the hoary or *gray Confederates*.

As for the *Rhati*, take them in the former latitude, they were subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius* the sonnes-in-law, and adopted children, of *Augustus Cæsar*, A. V. C. 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, viz. *Rhetia prima*, and *Rhetia secunda*, both of them appertaining by *Constantines* new model to the *Diocese* of *Italie*. A Nation in the first original, of *Italian* race, and so more properly to be assigned to that *Diocese*: but had inhabited this tract, from the time that *Bellovesus* the *Gall* seized on part of *Tuscany*, expelling thence the antient inhabitants thereof: who under the conduct of *Rhætus*, a great man amongst them, possessed themselves of these mountains, and afterwards of the vales adjoyning, which they called *Rhetia*, by the name of their Captain Generall. This hapned in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, in the first cradle as it were of the *Roman* Empire: in the declining age whereof, during the reign of *Valentinian* the third, and *Anastasius*, those parts which lay neerest unto *Germany*, and were worth the conquering, were subdved by the *Almains* and *Boiarians*, by them incorporated with the rest of their severall States. The residue of this mountainous tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a member of the Empire, till given by *Charles* the Great to the Bishop of *Chur*, whose successors, being several waies molested by their potent neighbors, confederated with the *Switzers* for their mutuall ayd and preservation, An. 1497. By whose ayd they so valiantly made good their ground against the *Austrians*, that at the last, after the loss of 20000 men on both sides, the points in difference were accorded, and a peace concluded.

This is the substance of this story, as to former times; to which there cannot much be added in the way of *History*, little or no alteration hapning in their affairs, but a more perfect setling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we must observe that this whole Tract is cast into three *Divisions*, that is to say, the *Upper League* or *Liga Grisa*. 2 *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the League of the house of God. 3 The *Lower League*, called also *Liga dattare*, or the League of the ten Commonalties. The eight *Italian Prafectures* will make a fourth. Their buildings generally in the three first being cold and mountainous, are of free-stone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with snow; the windows thereof glazed and large, of which, for the said three parts of the year they only open a little quarrie of glass, and presently shut it close again; the outside of the windows having leaves of wood, to keep the heat

heat of their ſtoves from going out, or any cold from comming in. And as for travelling, the waies are for the moſt part unſafe and dangerous, by reaſon of the ſtreight paſſages, dreadfull precipices, and thoſe almoſt continuall bridges which hang over the terrible falls, and *Cataracts* of the River *Rhene*, deſcending with great violence from the higheſt mountains: huge hils of ſnow tumbling into the vallies, with a noiſe as hideous as if it were a clap of thunder. *Griſons.*

For the particulars, the *Upper League* lyeth in the higheſt and moſt mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of *Italie*, having therein thoſe vaſt mountains of *Lecknannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of vvhich the two ſtreams of the *Rhene* have their firſt originall. By the *French* it is called *Liga Griſe*, or the *Gray League* (the word *Gris*, or *Griſe*, in that language, being *Gray* in ours) in the ſame ſenſe as the *Dutch* call it *Grawpuntner*, that is, *Confederati cani*, which vve may render properly the *Confederate Griſle-pates*: either becauſe the mountains are continually covered with a perriwig of *hoary Iſicles*, or from the heads of this people, *Gray* before their time. It conſiſteth of nineteen *Reſorts* or Commonalties, according to the number of their Vales and Villages; of which four only ſpeak the *Dutch*, all the reſt a corrupt *Italian*: and was the firſt which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the name of *Griſons* came unto the reſt, who after joyned with them in the ſame confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of note. The principall of thoſe that be, are 1 *Ilanter*, the place ſometimes of the *Generall Diets* for theſe *Leagues*. 2 *Diſentis*, where is a very rich Monaſtery. 3 Saint *Bernardine*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4 *Maſox*, ſometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley of *Maſoxer-tal*. 5 *Galanckter*, whence the vale ſo named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6 *Ruffla*, ſituate on the River *Mueſa*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of *Italie*.

2 The ſecond *League*, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League of the houſe of God*, ſo called becauſe it was the proper *Patrimony* of the Biſhop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the *middle League*, as being ſituate between the *Upper League* on the Weſt, and the *Lower League* upon the Eaſt. It is the greateſt of the three, containing twenty one *Reſorts* or Commonalties: of which nine lie on this ſide the tops of the Mountains towards *Germany*, the reſt towvards *Italie*, and yet two onely ſpeak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of moſt note are, 1 *Tintzen*, the *Tinnetio* of *Antoninus*, ſeated amongſt high and inacceſſible Mountains, betvvixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2 *Mur* (called *Murus* by the ſame *Antoninus*) in the valley of *Bergel*, a Valley extending from the head of the River *Maira*, towvards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian* Prælectures. 3 *Stalla*, called *Bevio* by the *Italians*, becauſe the vvay doth in that place divide it ſelf. 4 S. *Jacomo* (in the valley of *Compoltſchin*) called *Travaſeda* by *Antoninus*. 5 *Sinada*, in the valley of *Engadin*. And 6 *Chur*, by ſome *Coira*, but more truly *Curia*, ſo called from the long ſtay that *Conſtantine* the *great* made here vvith his Court and Army, in a War intended againſt the *Germans*; built afterwards by ſome part of his forces vvhich continued here, An. 357, about half a *Dutch* mile from the meeting of the two ſtreams of the *Rhene*: in form triangular; the buildings indifferent in themſelves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill, in one corner of it, ſtandeth the *Cloſe*, and therein the Cathedrall Church; a ſtately Edifice, but more in accompt of the Natives who have ſeen no fairer, than it is with ſtrangers; and near the Church, the Biſhops Palace, and the houſes of the *Canons*, all well built, and handſomly adorned. The Biſhop of this City, and of all the Country of theſe *Leagues* (for they received their *Biſhop* and the *Faith* together, An. 489.) acknowledgeth the Arch-biſhop of *Mentz* for their *Metropolitan*, is reckoned for a *Prince of the Empire*, and the rightfull Lord both of this City and the whole League; but on the introduction of the *Reformed Religion*, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themſelves from their obedience to the Biſhop, and govern the City in the manner of a *Free-ſtate*. So far conformable to him, for their own preſervation, that as the Biſhop and his Canons, vvith the reſt of this *League*, upon occaſion of the wrongs done them by the houſe of *Auſtria*, Lords of the neighbouring *Tirol*, joyned in confederacy with the ſeven firſt *Cantons* of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498) So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themſelves from the command of their Biſhops, concur with them at laſt in that mutuall *League*.

3 The third *League* of theſe *Griſons*, is the *Lower League*, called alſo *Liga Dittare*, or the *League of the ten Jurisdictions*: ſituate cloſe upon *Tirol*, in the North-Eaſt part of the whole Country. Of all the ten, two only, vvhich are thoſe of *Malans* and *Meienfeld*, obey the joynt commands of the three Leagues of the *Griſons*: the other eight being ſubject to the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, under whom they are ſuffered to enjoy their antient privileges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common League, An. 1436: conditioning their mutuall defence againſt all Enemies, preſervation of their peace, and maintainance of their privileges; reſerving notwithſtanding their obedience to their naturall Lords. In which reſpect, and by reaſon of the intereſs and ſociety which they have with the reſt of the *Griſons*, they are in friendſhip with the *Swiſſe*, but in no confederacy. City or Walled-town they have none. The chief of thoſe they have, are 1 *Caſtels*, the ſeat of the Governour for the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*. 2 *Malans*, and 3 *Meienfeld*, both bordering upon the *Rhene*. 4 *Tanaw*, giving name to the firſt and greateſt of the ten

Grisons. ten Jurisdictions, the chief Town of this *League*, in which are held the *Generall Diets* for the same; and vvhere are kept the Miniments and Records which concern their Privileges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhatico-mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Prettigower-berg*, because it is at the end of the valley vvhich the *Dutch* call *Prettigow*.

4 As for the *Italian Prefectures*, they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Grisons* by *Maximilian Sforze* Duke of *Millain*, An. 1513. at such time as he gave the like present to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*. Of these the first is called *Plurs*, so called from the chief Tovvn of the same name, in Latin *Plura*, once seated in a plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of sundry villages lying in the same bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomless Gulf. For on the 26 of *August* 1617, an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinckling of an eye 1500 people, and left no sign or ruin of a Town there standing; but in the place thereof a great Lake of some two miles length. 2 *Chiarama*, situate in a pleasant vallie so called, neer the River *Mara*, and ten *Italian* miles from the Lake of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the Dutch *Clevener-tal*, or the valley of *Cleven*, more near unto the antient name. 3 The *Valtoline*, *Vallis Telina* in the *Latine*, a pleasant Valley, extending threescore miles in length, from the head of the River *Aada*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*: the Wines whereof are much commended, and frequently transported on this side the *Alpes*. It is divided into six Præfectures, according to the names of the principall Towns. The chief whereof are 1 *Bormio*, seated near the head of the River *Aada*. 2 *Teio*, the chief Fortress of the whole Valley. 3 *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the seat of the Governour, or Leiuetenant Generall of the whole Country. This Valley lying opportunely for the passage of the King of *Spains* Forces out of *Millain* into *Germany*, by the practices and treasons of *Rodolfus Planta*, one of the natives of it, and of the *Romish* Religion, was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Millain*, An. 1622, the whole Country brought under the obedience of that King, *Chur* it self forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* setled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joynt Forces of the *French*, *Venetians*, and *Savoyard*, the vvhole Valley was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Grisons* re-estated in their just possessions, An. 1630, save that the *Spaniard* still holds the Fort of *Fuentes*, for the safer passage of his Forces, if occasion be.

Such is the state of the *three Leagues*, considered severally and a part from one another. In reference to the vvhole, they make up one Government, or Commonwealth; for ordering vvhereof they hold a *generall Diet*, once in every year, consisting of threescore and three Commissioners, that is to say, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the house of God*, and 14 from the *League of the ten Jurisdictions*. These have authority to determine of *Appeales* from the common Præfectures, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Ambassies, and Lavvs, vvhich concern the publick: yet so, that in a point of *Judicature*, is is lawfull to Appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have autority, if need be, to reverse the sentence: the causes being severally propoſed, and passed by the major part of voyces. The Government of each Lague, *popular*, as amongst the *Switzers*.

There are in these *Alpine* Provinces
Arch-Bishops 2. Bishops 13.
Universities 4. *i. e.*
1 *Turin.* 2 *Geneva.* 3 *Basil.* 4 *Zurich.*

OF

OF FRANCE.

HAving thus croſſed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently diſpoſe our ſelves for *France* or *Germany*. But we will follow the courſe and fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which firſt paſſed into *France* before it medled with the *Germans*; and had brought *Spain* and *Britain* under the form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a greater diſtance.

FRANCE then according to the preſent dimenſions of it, is bounded on the Eaſt with a branch of the *Alpes* which divide *Daulphine* from *Piemont*; as alſo with the Countries of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Germany*; on the Weſt with the *Aquitain Ocean*, and a branch of the *Pyrenean* Mountains which divide it from *Spain*; on the North with the *Engliſh* Ocean and ſome parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the reſt of the *Pyrenean* Mountains and the *Mediterranean*.

The Figure of it is almoſt ſquare, each ſide of the *Quadrature* being reckoned 600 miles in length. But they that goe more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be 660 *Italian* miles, the bredth 570 onely, the whole *Circumference* to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern temperate Zone between the middle *Parallell* of the fift *Clime*, where the longeſt day is 15 hours, and the middle *Parallell* of the eighth *Clime*, where the longeſt day is 16 hours and an half.

It hath this preſent name of *France* from the *Franci* or *Frankes*, a people of *Germany*, who ſeized upon thoſe parts of it which lay neereſt to the *Rhene*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third; and having afterwards ſubdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-Royall of their growing Empire, they cauſed the Countrie thereabouts to be called *France*. Which name, as they enlarged their borders, they impoſed on, or communicated rather to the reſt of this Countrey; and to thoſe parts of *Germany* alſo which were conquered by them. At which time, for diſtinction ſake, they called the Eaſt parts of their whole Empire by the name of *Ooſten-reich* or *Auſtraſia*, (lying now wholly out of *France*, in *Germany*, and that part of *Belgium* which is ſubject to the King of *Spain*:) and for the Weſt parts thereof, they had the name of *Weſten-reich*, or *Weſtraſia* (in the barbarous *Latin* of that Age) *Weſt France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which the name of *France* was at laſt appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Antiently it was called *Gallia*, and the people *Galli*, and by that name occurs moſt commonly in the writers of the *Roman* ſtorie; and *Gallia Tranſalpina*, becauſe ſituate on the further ſide of the *Alpes* from *Italy*, to difference it from the Countrie of thoſe *Gauls*, which being planted in thoſe parts which we now call *Lombardie*, was called *Ciſalpina*. Sometimes it was called *Galatia* alſo; by that name known amongſt the *Greeks*; by *Ptolomie* called *Celto-Galatia*, or the *Galatia* of the *Celta*, a potent nation of old *Gaul*; to diſtinguiſh it from *Galatia*, one of the Provinces of *Aſia minor*, denominated from the *Galatians* or *Gauls* of this Countrie. Whence it became ſo named is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia*, from the *Greek* word Γάλα, (*Gala*) ſignifying milk, *quia Lacteos*, i. e. *albos homines producebat*, for the milkie and white complexion of the people. compared unto the *Greeks* and *Romans* who firſt impoſed it. Others, and amongſt them *Diodorus Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a ſonne of *Hercules*; to which that of *Galatia* comes as neer as may be. That *Hercules* was ſometimes in this Countrie is affirmed alſo by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who further addes, That after he had ſuppreſſed thoſe Tyrants which oppreſſed the People, he begat many Children on the principall Women; *Et eos, partes quibus imperitabant nominibus ſuis appellaſſe. Lib. XL.* Who gave their own names to thoſe parts over which they ruled. But in another place acknowledging that the *Grecians* call this People *Galatæ* (*ita enim* Gallos *ſermo* Græcus *appellat*) he telleth us from *Timogenes* an Antient Author, one very diligent in the ſearch of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines* or firſt Inhabitants hereof, called themſelves *Celtæ*, by the name of one of their Kings whom they highly honoured, *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galatas*, and *Galatæ* from the name of his Mother *Galata*: who probably enough might be a daughter of *Hercules*, miſtook by *Diodorus* for one of his ſonnes.

Of the Originall of this People more anon. In the mean time we may take ſo much notice of the antient *Gaul*, as to affirm him (out of *Cæſar* and other Authors) to be quick-witted, of a ſudden and nimble apprehenſion, but withall very raſh and hare-braind, (*ut ſunt ſubita* Gallorum *ingenia*, is a note ſet upon them by the pen of *Cæſar*:) ſo full of Law-ſutes and contentions, that their Lawyers never wanted work. *Gallia Cauſidicos*, &c. as the Poet hath it: of vehement affections, and precipitate in all their actions, as well Military as Civill; falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and preſently going off in Smoke. *Primus impetus major quam virorum, ſecundus minor quam fœminarum*, was a part alſo of their Character in the time of *Florus* the Hiſtorian. And though the preſent *French* be generally of another Originall; yet there is ſo much of the old *Gaul* ſtill left among them, either by the Impreſſion of the Heavenly Bodies, or by inter-mariages with the *Gauls*, as they overcame them, that all theſe qualities are ſtill predominant in the *French*, not differing from the antient *Gaul* but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Compariſon, homely I muſt confeſs, but to the life expreſſing the nature of the *French*, compared with the *Dutch* and *Spaniſh* in matters of War. The *French* is ſaid to be like a *Flea*, quickly skipping into a Countrie, and ſoon leaping out of it, as was the Expedition of *Charles* the 8th into *Italie*. The *Dutch* is ſaid to be like a *Louſe*, ſlowly maſtering a place, and as ſlowly (yet at laſt) driven out of their hold, as was their taking and loſing of *Oſtend* and *Gulick*. The *Spaniard* is ſaid to be like a *Crabb* or *Pediculus inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is ſo rooted there, that nothing but the extre-

mity of violence can fetch him out again. In which I think I need not inſtance, it being generally obſerved, that the *Spaniards* will endure all poſſible hardſhip before they will part with any thing that they are poſſeſſed of. It is uſed alſo for a By-word, *that the* Italian *is wiſe b fore-hand*, *the* Dutch *in the time of action*, *and the* French *after it is done*; a wiſdom much like that of the antient *Gauls*. Nor are they leſs Litigious than the old *Gauls* were: Inſomuch as it is thought that there are more Law-ſutes tryed among them in ſeven years, than have been in *England* from the Conqueſt till the time of King *James*. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of *Religion*, as appeareth by the ſtory of a *Gentleman* lying ſick on his death-bead; who when the Prieſt had perſwaded him, that the *Sacrament of the Altar* was the very Body and Blood of CHRIST, refuſed to *eat thereof becauſe it was Friday*. Nor can I forget another in the ſame extremity, who ſeeing the *Hoſt* (for ſo they call the Conſecrated Elements) brought unto him by a lubberly Prieſt, ſaid that CHRIST *came to him, as he entred into* Hieruſalem, *riding upon an Aſſe*. As for the Women, they are ſayd to be wittie, but Apiſh, Wanton, and Incontinent: where a man at his firſt entrance may find acquaintance, and at his firſt acquaintance may find an entrance. So *Dallington* in his *View of France* deſcribeth them. But I have ſince heard this *Cenſure* condemned of ſome uncharitableneſs, and the *French* Gentlewomen highly magnified for all thoſe graces which may beautifie and adorn that Sex. And it is poſſible enough that it may be ſo in ſome particulars, though it be more than any man would gueſs at that cometh amongſt them. For generally at the firſt ſight you ſhall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle; and are ſo full of Chat and Tattle, even with thoſe they know not, as if they were reſolved ſooner to want breath than words; and never to be ſilent but in the Grave.

As to the perſons of this People, they are commonly of a middle ſtature, and for the moſt part of a ſlight making; their complexion being generally hot and moiſt, which makes them very ſubject to the heats of luſt, and eaſily inclinable unto thoſe diſeaſes which are concomitants thereof: their Conſtitution ſomewhat tender, if not delicate, which rendreth them impatient of Toil and labour, and is in part the cauſe of thoſe ill ſucceſſes which have hapned to them in the Warres, in which they have loſt as much for want of conſtancy, and perſeverance in their enterpriſes, as they have gained by their Courage in the undertaking. And for the *Women*, they are for the moſt part very perſonable, of ſtraight bodies, ſlender waſts, and a fit *Symetrie* of proportion in all the reſt; their hands white, long, and ſlender, and eaſily diſcernable to be ſo; for either they wear no *Gloves* at all, or elſe ſo ſhort, as if they were cut off at the hand-wriſt. To theſe the *Complexion* of their faces, and the colour of their hair, too much inclining to the black, holds no true *Decorum*. Tis true the Poets commend *Leda* for her black hair, and not unworthily, *Leda fuit* nigris *conſpicienda comis*, as it is in *Ovid*. But this was ſpecially, becauſe it ſet off with the greater luſtre the amiable ſweetneſs of her *Complexion*: For in that caſe the Hair doth ſet forth the Face, as *ſhadows* commonly do a Picture; and the Face ſo becommeth the Hair, as a *Field Argent* doth a *Sable bearing*, which kind of Coat our *Critical Heralds* call the *moſt fair*. But when a Black hair meets with a Brown or ſwarth Complexion, it falls much ſhort of that attractiveneſs of beauty, which *Ovid* being ſo great a *Crafts-Maſter* in the *Art of Love* did commend in *Leda*.

The chief exerciſes they uſe, are, 1. *Tennis*; every Village having a Tennis-Court, *Orleans* 60. *Paris* many hundreds. 2. *Dancing*, a ſport to which they are ſo generally affected, that were it not ſo much enveighed againſt by their ſtrait-laced *Miniſters*, it is thought that many more of the *French Catholiques* had been of the *Reformed Religion*. For ſo extremely are they bent upon this diſport, that neither Age nor Sickneſs, no nor poverty it ſelf, can make them keep their heels ſtill, when they hear the Muſick. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches, or go as if they were troubled all day with a *Sciatica*, and perchance have their rags hang ſo looſe about them, that one would think a ſwift *Galliard* might ſhake them into their nakedneſs, will to the *Dancing Green* howſoever, and be there as eager at the ſport, as if they had left their ſeverall infirmities and wants behind them. What makes their *Miniſters* (and indeed all that follow the *Genevian Diſcipline*) enveigh ſo bitterly againſt *Dancing*, and puniſh it with ſuch ſeverity where they find it uſed, I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this diſcourſe. But being it is a *Recreation* which this people are ſo given unto, and ſuch a one as cannot be followed but in a great deal of Company, and before many witneſſes and ſpectators of their carriage in it; I muſt needs think the *Miniſters* of the *French* Church more nice than wiſe, if they chooſe rather to deter men from their *Congregations* by ſo ſtrict a *Stoicism*, than indulge any thing unto the jollitie and natural *Gaiety* of this people, in matters not *offenſive*, but by *accident* only.

The Language of this People is very voluble and pleaſant, but rather *Elegant* than *Copious*, and therefore much troubled for want of words to find out *Periphraſes*; beſides that very much of it is expreſſed in the action; the head and ſholders move as *significantly* toward it, as the lips and tongue; and he that hopeth to ſpeak with any good grace, muſt have ſomewhat in him of the *Mimick*. A Language enriched with great plenty of *Proverbs*, conſequently a great help to the *French* humour of Scoffing: and ſo naturally diſpoſed for Courtſhip, as makes all the people complementall; the pooreſt Cobler in the Pariſh hath his *Court-Cringes*, and his *Eau beniſte de Cour*, his *Court-holy-water* (as they call it) as perfectly as the beſt *Gentleman-Huiſher* in *Paris*. Compared with that of other Nations, the *Language of the* Spaniards *is ſaid to be Manly*, *the* Italian *Courtly*, *and the* French *Amorous*. A ſweet language it is without queſtion, the People leaving out in their pronunciation

runciation many of their *Conſonants*, and thereby giving occaſion to this By-word, that *the Frenchman pronounceth not as he writes, ſingeth not as he pricketh, nor ſpeaks as he thinketh.* In the Original thereof it is a Compound of the old *Gallick*, *German*, and *Latin* Tongues: the old *Gallick* being queſtionleſs the ſame with the *Welch* or *Britiſh*, as appeareth clearly by theſe reaſons. 1. The *Latin* words are known to have been received from the *Romans*, and the *Germans*, at the coming in of the *Frankes* and *Burgundians*; but of the *Welch* words which they have, we can give no reaſon, but that they are the remainder of the antient Language; of which *Welch* words which ſtill continue in that Language *Camden* in his *Britannia* reckoneth not a few. 2. It is ſaid by *Tacitus*, that the *Britans* were the Deſcendants of the *Gauls*, and this he proveth as by other Arguments, ſo from the identitie or neer reſemblance of the Language which both Nations ſpeak. *Utriuſque ſermo haud multum diverſus*, as his own words are. And 3. It is ſaid by *Cæſar*, That the *Gauls* uſed to paſs into *Britain* to be inſtructed in the Rites and learning of the *Druides*; which ſheweth that both People ſpake but own common tongue, there being in thoſe times no one learned Language, which other nations ſtudied beſides their own.

The Soil is extraordinary fruitfull, and hath three Loadſtones to draw riches out of other Countries, Corn, Wine, and Salt, in exchange for which there is yearly brought into *France* 1200000 li. *Sterling*, the cuſtome of Salt only to the King being eſtimated at 700000 Crowns *per Annum*. And indeed the benefit ariſing on this one commodity is almoſt incredible, it being conſtituted by the Kings Edict (which is all in all) that no man ſhall have any Salt for Domeſtick uſes (except by ſpecial privilege, and that dearly paid for) but what he muſt buy of the Kings Officers, and that upon ſuch prices too as they pleaſe to ſell it. Nor can it but be very well ſtored with *Fiſh*; for beſides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the *Clergie* only are ſaid to be 13500. Their other Merchandizes are Beeves, Hogs, Nuts, Woad, Skinnes, vaſt quantities of all ſorts of Linnen. And to ſay truth, there are not many Countries in the Chriſtian World to which Nature hath been ſo prodigall of her choiceſt bleſſings as ſhe hath to this, the fields thereof being large and open, and thoſe ſo intermingled with *Corn* and *Vines*, and every hedge-row ſo beſet with choice of fruits, that never any covetous or curious eye had a fairer object. And yet ſo miſerable is the condition of the common Paiſant, partly by reaſon of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the *King*, and partly by thoſe great, but uncertain Rents which are ſet upon him by his *Landlord* (for the poor husbandman is *Tenant* only at the *will of his Lord*) that there is many one amongſt them, who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, or eats good Bread, from one end of the year unto the other.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was planted firſt amongſt the *Gauls*, by ſome of St. *Peters* Diſciples, ſent hither by him at his firſt coming to *Rome*: *Xyſtus*, *Fronto*, and *Iulianus*, the firſt Biſhops of *Rhemes*, *Perigort* and *Mants* (*Cenomanenſium* in the *Latine*) being ſaid to be of his ordaining in the *Martyrologies*. The like may be affirmed (but on ſurer grounds) of *Trophimus* the firſt Biſhop of *Arles*. For on a Controverſie betwixt the Arch-Biſhops of *Vienna* and *Arles* for the dignity of *Metropolitan*, in the time of Pope *Leo* the firſt, it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Biſhop of *Arles*, *quod prima inter Gallias*, *&c.* That *Arles* of all the Cities of *Gaul*, did firſt obtain the happineſs of having *Trophimus* ordained Biſhop thereof by the hands of St. *Peter*. Nor is St. *Paul* to be denied the honour of ſending ſome of his Diſciples thither alſo to preach the Goſpell: *Creſcens* ſent by him as he telleth us 2 *Tim.* 4. into *Galatia*, being the firſt Biſhop of *Vienna*, ſpoken of before, as not the *Martyrologies* only, but *Ado Viennenſis*, an antient Writer of that Church, doth expreſly ſay. And that it was into this Country, that he ſent that *Creſcens* at that time, and not unto *Galatia* in *Aſia minor*, the teſtimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret* which affirm the ſame, and that which hath been ſaid before of this name of *Galatia*, may confirm ſufficiently. But *Chriſtianity* being deſtroyed by the *French* at their firſt coming hither, was again planted by the induſtry of S. *Remigius* the firſt Biſhop of *Rhemes*; *Clovis* or *Clodiveus* the fifth King of the *French* giving way unto it for his Wives ſake who was zealous in it, and after taking on himſelf that holy calling, on a great victory which he wonne againſt the *Almains*; By whom being over-laid in the day of battell, he made his prayers to CHRIST whom his Wife *Crotilda* worſhiped, vowing to be of that *Religion* if he gat the victory; which vow he had no ſooner made (as the ſtory telleth us) but *Alemannos invaſit timor*, a ſudden fear fell upon the *Almains*, and the *French* were Conquerours.

At this time they are divided in *Religion*, as in other places; ſome following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, and others that of thoſe *Reformed Churches* which adhere to *Calvin*. But this diviſion is more antient than *Calvins* days, the ſame opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the *Romiſh* Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenſes*, the *Waldenſes*, or *Panperes de Lugduno* (the *Vaudoys* as the *French* Writers call them) of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, that the doctrine of the *Reformed Churches* was not new in *France*, when *Zuinglius* firſt preached againſt the ſuperſtitions of the Maſs, and the worſhip of Images, and *Calvin* travelled in advancing the *Reformation*; though much ſuppreſſed as to the outward profeſſion of it. But being revived by their Endeavours it ſprung out again, and ſpread it ſelf ſo ſpeedily in this Kingdom, that there were reckoned in the year 1560. above 2150. Churches of them, which cannot in ſuch a long time but be wonderfully augmented, though ſcarce any of them have eſcaped ſome *maſſacre* or other. Of theſe *maſſacres*, two are moſt memorable, *viz.* that of *Merindell* and *Chabriers*, as being the firſt, and the maſſacre at *Paris*, as being the greateſt. That

of *Merindoll* hapned in the year 1545. The inſtrument of it, being *Minier*, the Preſident of the Councill of *Aix*. For having condemned this poor people of *hereſie*, he muſtred a ſmall Army; and ſet fire on the Villages. They of *Merindoll*, ſeeing the flame, with their wives and children fled into the woods; but were there butchered, or ſent to the Gallies. One boy they took, placed him againſt a tree, and ſhot him with Calivers; 25 which had hid themſelves in a Cave, were in part ſtifled, in part burned. In *Chabriers* they ſo inhumanely dealt with the young wives and maids, that moſt of them died immediatly after. The men and women were put to the ſword; the children were *rebaptized*: 800 men were murdered in a Cave, and 40 women put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea ſuch was the cruelty of theſe Souldiers to theſe poor women, that when ſome of them had clambred to the top of the houſe, with an intent to leap down; the Souldiers beat them back again with their pikes. The *Maſſacre* of *Paris* was more cunningly plotted. A Peace was made with the *Proteſtants*; for the aſſurance whereof, a marriage was ſolemnized, between *Henry* of *Navarre*, chief of the *Proteſtant* party; and the Lady *Marguerite* the Kings ſiſter: At this Wedding there aſſembled the Prince of *Conde*, the Admirall *Coligni*, and divers others of chief note: but there was not ſo much Wine drank as Bloud ſhed at it. At Midnight the Watch-bell rung, the King of *Navarre*, and the Prince of *Conde* are taken Priſoners, the Admirall murdered in his Bed; and 30000 at the leaſt of the greateſt and moſt potent Men of the Religion, ſent by the way of this *Red Sea* to find the neereſt paſſage to the Land of *Canaan*. Anno 1572. Yet notwithſtanding theſe *Maſſacres*, and the long and frequent Wars which were made againſt them by their Kings, they grew ſo numerons, and got unto ſo great a power, that partly by *Capitulations* with the *French* Kings at the End of every *Civil War*, but principally by the connivence of K. *Henry* the fourth, who was ſometimes the *Head* of their partie, they had gotten above an hundred walled Towns and Garriſons: and were abſolute Maſters in effect of all thoſe Provinces which lie along the *Aquitain* ſhore and the *Pyrenees*, from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River of *Loyre*. But being grown too inſolent by reaſon of ſo great a ſtrength, and ſtanding upon terms with the King as a *Free Eſtate* (the *Commonwealth of Rochell*, as King *Henry* the fourth was uſed to call it) they drew upon themſelves the jealouſie and furie of King *Lewis* the thirteenth. Who ſeeing that he could not otherwiſe diſſolve the knot of their combination than by the ſword, drew it out at laſt: And was ſo fortunate in the ſucceſs of his Vndertakings, that in two years, (viz. Anno 1621. 1622.) he ſtripped them of all their walled Towns, except *Montalban* and *Rochell* onely; and thoſe too he reduced not long after by the power of his Arms: Leaving them nothing to relie on for their future-ſecurity, but the grace and clemencie of their King, promerited by their obedience and integritie. And it hath ſped ſo well with them ſince that time, that they never had the exerciſe of their *Religion* with ſo much freedom, as they have hitherto enjoyed ſince the reducing of their Forts and Garriſons to the Kings obedience.

The other Party in *Religion*, having the Countenance of the *State*, and the preſcription and poſſeſſion of ſo many yeers to confirm the ſame, is in as proſperous a condition both for *power* and *patrimonie*, as any that acknowledgeth the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*. In point of *Patrimonie*, the Author of the *Cabinet* computes the Tythes and Temporall Revenues of the *Clergie*, beſides proviſions of all ſorts, to 80 millions of Crownes; but this Accompt is diſallowed by all knowing men. *Bodin* reporteth from the mouth of *Monſieur Alemant*, one of the *Preſidents* of *Accompts* in *Paris*, that they amonnt to 12 millions, and 300000 of their *Livres*, which is 1200000 l. of our *Engliſh* money; and he himſelf conceiveth that they poſſeſs ſeven parts of twelve of the whole *Revenues* of that Kingdom. The Book entituled *Comment d'Eſt* gives a lower eſtimate: and reckoning that there are in *France* 200 millions of *Arpens* (which is a Meaſure ſomewhat bigger than our *Acre*) aſſigneth 47 millions, which is neer a fourth part of the whole, to the *Gallicane Clergy*. And then it is reſolved by all, That the *Baiſonam* (as they call it) which conſiſts of Offerings, Churchings, Burials *Diriges*, and ſuch like Caſualties, amounteth to as much *per annum*, as their ſtanding Rents: Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computeth their *Revenue* at 6 millions yeerly. And to ſay truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintein their numbers; there being reckoned in this Kingdom, 13 Arch-Biſhops, 104 Biſhops, 1450 Abbies, 540 Arch-Priories, 12320 Priories, 567 Nunneries, 700 Convents of Friers, 259 *Commanderies* of *Malta*; beſides the Colleges of the *Jeſuits*, which being of a late foundation are not here accompted. And for the *Pariſh-Prieſts*, they are reckoned at 130000 of all ſorts, taking in *Deacons*, *Subdeacons*, and all thoſe of inferiour Orders, which have ſome Miniſtery in their Churches: the number of which was reckoned in the time of King *Lewis* the 11th, to be little leſſe than 100000. But then 'tis like that *Chanteries* and *Free Chappels* went in that Accompt; or elſe the *Hugenots* in the Wars have deſtroyed more Churches, than they are like to build in haſt; there being found in *France* on a juſt Accompt, no more than 27400 Pariſh Churches, beſides *Oratories* and *Chappels of Eaſe* appertaining to them. In which, there are ſuppoſed to live 15 millions of people, whereof the *Clergy* and the Miniſters depending on them doe make up 3 millions, which is a fift part of the whole. And for their *power*, the *Gallican Clergy* ſtand's more ſtoutly to their naturall rights againſt the uſurpations and encroachments of the See of *Rome*, than any other that live under the Popes Autoritie: which they acknowledge ſo far only as is conſiſtent with their own privileges, and the rights of their Soveraign. For neither did they in long time ſubmit to the Decrees of the Councill of *Trent*; nor have they yet admitted of the *Inquiſition*; nor yeeld ſuch ſtore of Griſt to the Popes Mill, as probably might redound to him from ſo rich a Clergie. And for his *Temporal power* over Kings and Princes, it is a doctrine ſo averſe from the Poſitions and Principles of the *Gallican Church*, that in the year 1610. the Di-

vines

vines of *Paris* publiſhed a *Declaration*, in which it was affirmed, That the doctrine of the *Popes Supremacy* was an Erroneous doctrine, and the ground of that helliſh poſition of depoſing and killing Kings. And this indeed hath conſtantly been the doctrine of the *Gallican Church* ſince the time of *Gerſon*, mainteining the Autoritie of a Councill above that of the Pope.

But to proceed. The men moſt eminent for learning of either ſide have been (beſides thoſe mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his Eloquence by the pen of *Balſac*; *Fr. Junius* a moderate and grave Divine, *Chamier* the Controverſer, and *Philip de Morney Lord of Pleſſis*. Of the other party *Claudius Eſpencæus* a *Sorbon* Doctor, the famous Cardinall of *Peron*, *Genebrard* the Hiſtorian, *Petavius* a learned *Ieſuite*, &c. In the middle times S. *Bernard* Abbot of *Clarevalle*, *Pet. Lombard* Biſhop of *Paris*, *John Gerſon* Chancellor of that Univerſity. More antiently *Proſper* of *Aquitain*, *Caſſianus* the Hermit, *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lyons* (though not here a Native.) And as to Men of other Studies, *Auſonius* the Poet, *Hotoman* and *Gotfredus* the Civilians, *Duarenus* the Canoniſt, *Barn. Briſſonius* the great Antiquarie, *Iſaac Caſaubon* that renowned Philologer, *Budæus* that great Maſter of the *Greek* Language, *Thuanus* the Hiſtorian *Laurentius*, the Anatomiſt, &c. And as for Militarie men, it hath been famous for the valour of *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*, *Charles Martell* that ſtout Champion of the Church againſt the *Saracens*; and *Charles* the great, the Founder of the Weſtern Empire: In the middle times for *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, one of the Nine Worthies (as they call them, the ſonne of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogn* in *Picardie*; and in theſe later dayes for King *Henry* the 4th. *Francis* and *Henry* Dukes of *Guiſe*, *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdom are either *Temporary*, and alterable at pleaſure; or *Fundamentall*, which neither King nor Parliament (as they ſay) can alter. Of this laſt ſort the principall are the *Salique* Law and the Law of *Apennages*. By that of the *Apennage* the younger Sonnes of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdome with their Elder-Brother; which Law was made by *Charles* the Great, before whoſe time we find the Children of the Kings eſtated in their ſeverall Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them into many Kingdoms. But by this Law they are to be entituled to ſome Dutchie or County (though they are content ſometimes with Annual penſions) with all the rights and profits thereunto belonging, all matters of Regality (as Levying Taxes, Coynage, and the like) excepted onely; which upon the fayling of the maſculine line doe return again unto the Crown. The name thereof derived from *Abannage* a *German* word, ſignifying a portion.

But the main Law they ſtand on is the *Salique Law*, by which the Crown of *France* may not deſcend unto the Females, or fall *from the Lance to the Diſtaff*, as their ſaying is: Which Law one undertaking to make good out of holy Writ, urged that Text of St. *Matthew*, where it is ſaid, *Mark the Lillies* (which are the Arms of *France*) *and ſee how they neither Labour nor Spin*. This they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond* the firſt King of the *French*, and that the words *Si aliqua* ſo often uſed in it, gave it the Name of the *Salique Law*. But *Haillan* one of their beſt Writers affirms, That it was never heard of in *France* till the time of *Philip* the *Long*, Anno 1315. and that it could not poſſibly be made by *Pharamond*, who though he was the firſt King of the *French*, had not one foot of Land in *France*, their third King *Merovei* being the firſt of thoſe Kings which paſſed over the *Rhene*. Others ſay it was made by *Charles* the Great, after the Conqueſt of *Germany*: where the incontinent lives of the Women living about the River *Sala* (in the modern *Miſnia*) gave both the occaſion and the name. *De terra verò* Salica, *nulla portio hæreditatis* mulieri *veniat*, *ſed ad* virilem *Sexum tota terræ hæreditas perveniat*; are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the learned *Selden* in his *Titles of Honour*, Engliſheth *Knights Fee*, or Land that is holden by *Knights Service*, as our Lawyers call it; and proveth his Interpretation by a Record of the Parliament of *Bourdeaux* cited by *Bodinus*; where an old Will or Teſtament being once produced, in which the *Teſtator* had bequeathed unto his Sonne all his *Salique* Land, it was reſolved by the Court, that thereby was meant his Land holden in *Knights Service*. And then the ſenſe thereof muſt be, that in Lands holden of the King by *Knights Service*, or the like militarie tenure, the Male Children ſhould inherit onely: becauſe the Females could not perform thoſe ſervices for which thoſe Lands were given, and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reaſon; though in *England* we deal not ſo unkindly with the Female Sex, but permit them, after the Age of 15 yeares to enjoy ſuch Lands; becauſe they may then take ſuch Husbands as are able to doe the King thoſe ſervices which the Law requireth. But this Interpretation (how good and genuine ſoever indeed it be) cannot ſtand with the *French* Gloſs: For then the Crown being held of none but God, and ſo not properly to be called a *Fee* or *Feife*, could not be brought within the Compaſs of the *Salique* Law, becauſe not to be counted for *Salique* Land. Give them therefore their own Gloſs, their own Etymologie, and Originall; and let us ſee by what right their Kings Daughters are excluded from their ſucceſſion to the Diadem. For firſt, ſuppoſing that to be the *Salique* Land which lyeth about the River *Sala*, in the modern *Miſnia*: I would fain know how it could reach unto the Kings Daughters in *France*, ſo far diſtant from it; or with what honeſty they can lay on them the like brand of incontinencie, as was ſuppoſed to have been found in thoſe Women of *Germanie*. And next, ſuppoſing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applied to the Crown of *France*, to which *Pharamond* had then no title, nor ſo much as one foot of Land on that ſide of the *Rhene*. And finally, ſuppoſing that the Law was made in ſuch generall terms, as to extend to all the Countries which the *French* in time to come ſhould conquer, and conſequently un-

to *France* when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all ſubordinate Eſtates which were holden of it. If unto all Eſtates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give ſentence in behalf of *Charles* of *Blais*, againſt *John de Montfort*, in the ſucceſſion to the Dukedom of *Bretagne*: *Charles* of *Blais* clayming by his Mother, the Neece of *Arthur* the ſecond, by his ſecond Sonne *Guy*; Whereas *John de Montfort* was the third Sonne (and the next Heir-male) of the ſaid Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of *France*, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true Heirs of *Anne* the Dutcheſs: whoſe Daughter and Heir the Lady *Claude*, being maried unto *Francis* the firſt, had iſſue *Henry* the ſecond, and other Children. Which *Henry*, beſides *Francis* the ſecond, *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* the third, and *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, all dying without iſſue, had a Daughter named *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth* maried to *Philip* the ſecond King of *Spain*, by whom ſhe was made the Mother of *Iſabella*, the late Archdutcheſs, and of *Katharine* the Wife of *Charls Emanuel* the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to ſay any thing of the pretenſions of the houſe of *Lorrein*, deſcending from the Lady *Claude*, the ſecond Daughter of King *Henry* the ſecond, and Siſter of *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth* Queen of *Spain*. Nor doe we find that the *French* ſo ſtand upon this Law, as not to think that a Succeſſion by and from the Females, is in ſome caſes their beſt Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thruſt his Maſter *Childerick* into a Monaſtery, to make good his Title to the Crown (or ſome colour for it) derived his Pedigree from *Plythylda*, one of the Daughters of *Clotaire* the firſt, maried to *Anſpert* the Grandfather of that *Arnulphus*, who was the firſt *Mayer* of the Palace of *Pepins* Family. As alſo how *Hugh Capet*, putting aſide *Charles* of *Lorrein* the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his Lawleſs Action the more ſeemingly Lawfull, drew his deſcent from ſome of the heirs Generall of *Charles* the Great; his Mother *Adeltheid*, being the Daughter of the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, ſurnamed the *Fowler*; who was the Sonne of *Otho* Duke of *Saxonie* by *Luitgardis* the Daughter of the Emperour *Arnulph*, the laſt Emperour of the *Romans* (or *Germans*) of the houſe of *Charles*. And it is ſaid of *Lewis* the ninth, ſo renowned for Sanctitie amongſt them, that he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet Conſcience, till it was proved unto him that by his Grandmother, the Lady *Iſabel* of *Hainalt*, he was deſcended from *Hermingrade* the Daughter of *Charles* of *Lorrein*. Adde here, that this ſuppoſed *Salique Law* not onely croſſeth the received Laws of all Nations elſe, which admit of Women to the ſucceſſion in their Kingdoms, where the Crown deſcends in a Succeſſion; and have a great reſpect both unto their perſons and poſterities in ſuch Kingdoms alſo, where the Kings are ſaid to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*; but that even *France* it ſelf hath ſubmitted to the imperious command of two Women of the *Medices*, and at the preſent to the Government of a *Spaniſh* Princeſs. So that it is evident, that this Law, by whomſoever made, and how far ſoever it extended, is of no ſuch force, but that the *Labells* of it may be eaſily cut in peeces by an *Engliſh* ſword well whetted; if there were no other bar to the title of *England*, than the authoritie and antiquity of the *Salique Law*.

But for my part (if it be lawfull for me to diſpute this point) I am not ſatisfied in the right of the *Engliſh* title; ſuppoſing the *Salique Law* to be of no ſuch force as the *French* pretended, and meaſuring the ſucceſſion in the Crown of *France*, to be according to ſucceſſions in the Realm of *England*, on which King *Edward* the third ſeemed to ground his claim. For if there were no *Salique Law* to exclude ſucceſſion by the *Females*, as the *Engliſh* did pretend there was not: yet could not *Edward* comming from a Siſter of the 3 laſt Kings, which reigned ſucceſſively before *Philip* of *Valois*, againſt whom he claimed, be ſerved in courſe, before the *Daughters* of thoſe Kings (or the *Males* at leaſt deſcending of them) had had their turns in the ſucceſſion of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren, two left iſſue, viz. *Lewis* and *Philip*. *Lewis* ſurnamed *Hutin* Sonne of *Philip* the fair, and *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, maried to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which mariage iſſued all the ſucceding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Burbon*. *Philip*, the ſecond Brother, ſurnamed the *Long*, by *Joan* the Daughter of *Othelin* Earl of *Burgundie*, had a Daughter named *Marguerite*, maried to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, from whom deſcended thoſe great Princes of the race of *Burgundie*, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Spain*. If then there were no *Salique Law* to exclude the Women and their Sonnes, *Charles* King of *Navarre* the Sonne of Queen *Joan* and of *Philip de Eureux*, deſcended from *Lewis Hutin* the Elder Brother: and *Lewis de Malaine* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundie*, the Sonne of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the Daughter of *Philip* the *Long* the Second Brother; muſt have precedency of title before King *Edward* the third of *England*, deſcended from a Siſter of the ſaid two Kings; their iſſue, ſeverally and reſpectively, before any claiming or deſcending from the ſaid King *Edward*. So that K. *Edward* the third had ſome other claim than what is commonly alleged for him in our *Engliſh* Hiſtories; or elſe he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive ſo wiſe a King, would not have ventured on a buſineſs of ſo great conſequence, without ſome colourable Title; though what this title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore that he went upon ſome other grounds, than that of *ordinary ſucceſſion* by the Law of *England*, and claimed that Crown, as the *Eldeſt heir-male* and neereſt Kinſman to the laſt King. For being Siſters ſonne to the King deceaſed, he was a degree neerer to him than either the King of *Navarre*, or the Earl of *Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in reſpect of age, had a fair Title before either, to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on theſe grounds King *Edward* might the rather goe, becauſe he found it a *ruled Caſe* in the diſpute about the ſucceſſion in the Kingdom of *Scotland*.

For

For though King *Edward* the first measuring the order of succession by the Laws of *England*, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who should hold it of him, gave sentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grand-Child of the Eldest Daughter of the Earl of *Huntingdon*: yet was this Sentence disavowed, and protested against by the other *Competitors*. *Robert Bruce* Sonne of the Second Daughter of the said Earl of *Huntingdon*, as a degree neerer to the last King, though descended from the Younger Sister, not only thought himself wronged in it, but had the whole *Scotish* Nation for him to assert his right: by whose unanimous consent his Sonne was called to the Government of the Realm of *Scotland*, during the life of *Baliol* and his Patron both. *Proximitie* in blood to the King deceased, was measured by neerness of degrees, not descent of Birth; and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of *England*, as *Bruce* had formerly possessed himself of the Crown of *Scotland*; so on the same, though different from the Laws of *Castile*, did *Philip* the second ground his claim to the Crown of *Portugal*. For being Eldest Sonne of *Mary*, the Sister of *Henry* the last King (and this was just King *Edwards* Case to the Crown of *France*) he thought himself to be preferred before the Prince of *Parma*, and the Duke of *Bragance* descended from the Daughters of *Edward* the said Kings Brother; because the Eldest Male of the Royal blood, and neerer to the said King *Henry* by one degree. In the pursuance of which title, as *Philip* openly avowed, that the Laws of *Portugall* were more favourable to him than the Laws of *Castile*: so in like case, the Laws of *France* might be more favourable to King *Edward* than the Lawes of *England*. In claims to Crowns, the Rules if *Regall Succession* differ in many Countries; and in few Countries are the same with that of the Succession into mean Estates: as may be proved by many particulars in the Realm of *England*, in which the *Law of the Crown* differeth very much from the *Law of the Land*, as in the Case of *Parceners*, the *whole blood* (as our Lawyers call it) the *Tenure by courtesie* and some others; were this a time and place fit for it. But to return again to *France*; whether the *Salique Law* were in force or not, it made not much unto the prejudice of King *Edward* the third; though it served *Philip* the *Long* to exclude the Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*; and *Charles* the *fair* to do the Like with the Daughter of *Philip*; as it did *Philip* of *Valoys*, to dispoless the whole Linage of King *Philip Le Bel*.

Machiavel accounteth this *Salique* Law to be a great happiness to the *French* Nation, not so much in relation to the unfitness of Women to Govern (for therein some of them have gon beyond most men) but because thereby the Crown of *France* is not indangered to fall into the hands of strangers. Such men consider not how great Dominions may by this means be incorporate to the Crown. They remember not how *Maud* the Empress being maried to *Geofrie* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourain*, and *Mayenne*, conveyed those Countries to the Diadem of *England*; nor what rich and fertile Provinces were added to *Spain*, by the match of the Lady *Ioan*, to Arch-duke *Philip*: Neither do they see those great advantages of power and strength, which *England* now enjoyeth by the conjunction of *Scotland*, proceeding from a like mariage. Yet there is a saying in *Spain*, that as a man should desire to live in *Italy*, because of the civility and ingenious natures of the People; and to dye in *Spain*, because there the *Catholique Religion* is so sincerely professed: so he should wish to be born in *France*, because of the Nobleness of that Nation, which never had any King but of their own Country.

The chief enemies to the *French* have been the *English*, and *Spaniards*. The former had here great possessions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdom; but being called home by civill dissentions, lost all. At their departure, the *French* scoffingly asked an *English* Captain, When they would return? Who feelingly answered, *When your sins be greater than ours*. The *Spaniards* began but of late with them, yet have they taken from them *Navarre*, *Naples*, and *Millain*: they displanted them in *Florida*; poisoned the *Dolphin* of *Viennois* (as it was generally conceived;) murdered their Souldiers in cold blood, being taken Prisoners in the Isles of *Tercera*, and by their Faction, raised even in *France* it self, drave *Henry* the third out of *Paris*, and most of his other Cities, and at last caused him to be murdered by *Iaques Clement* a *Dominican Frier*. The like they intended to his Successour King *Henry* the fourth, whose coming to the Crown they opposed to their utmost power, and held a tedious War against him. Concerning which last War, when they sided with the Duke of *Mayenne*, and the rest of those Rebels, which called themselves the *Holy Leagne* (of which the Duke of *Guise* was the Author) against the two Kings *Henry* the third and fourth, a *French* Gentleman made this excellent *allusion*. For being asked the cause of these *civill broiles*, he replyed they were *Spania* and *Mania*, seeming by this answer to signifie Σπανια, penury, and Μανια, furie, which are indeed the causes of all intestine tumults: but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*. In former times, as we read in *Comineus*, there were no Nations more friendly than these two, the Kings of *Castile* and *France* being the neerest confederated Princes in Christendome. For their league was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and subject; which they were all bound under great curses to keep inviolable. But of late times, especially since the beginning of the wars between *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the first, for the Dukedom of *Millain*, there have not been greater *animosities*, nor more implacable enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*; which seconded by the mutuall jealousies they have of each other, and the diversitie of Constellations under which they live, hath produced such dissimilitude betwixt them in all their wayes, that there is not greater contrariety of temper, carriage and affections, betwixt any two Nations in the world, than is between these Neighbours, parted no otherwise from one another than by passable Hils. First

in

in the *Actions* of the *Soul*; the one *Active* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*; the one ſociable and diſcourſive, the other reſerved and full of thought; the one ſo *open*, that you cannot hire him to keep a ſecret, the other ſo *cloſe*, that all the *Rhetorick* in the world cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Faſhion* and Apparrell, the *French* weares his hair long, the *Spaniard* ſhort; the *French* goes thin and open to the very ſhirt, as if there were continuall Summer, the *Spaniard* ſo wrapt up and cloſe, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upwards; the laſt alwayes conſtant to his Faſhion, the firſt intent ſo much on nothing as on new Fancies of Apparrel. Then for their *Gate*, the *French* walk faſt, as if purſued on an *Arreſt*, the *Spaniard* ſlowly, as if newly come out of a *Quartane Ague*; the *French* goe up and dowu in cluſters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the moſt; the *French Lacqueys* march in the *Rere*, and the *Spaniſh* alwayes in the *Van*; the *French* ſings and danceth as he walks the ſtreets, the *Spaniards* in a grave and ſolemn poſture, as if he were going a *Proceſſion*. The like might be obſerved of their tune, their ſpeech, and almoſt every paſſage in the life of Man: For which I rather chooſe to refer the Reader to the ingenious *James Howels* book of *Inſtructions for Travell*, than inſiſt longer on it here. Onely I adde, that of the two ſo different humours, that of the *Spaniard* ſeemes to be the more approvable. Inſomuch as the *Neapolitans*, *Millanois*, and *Sicilians*, who have had triall of both Nations, chooſe rather to ſubmit themſelves to the proud and ſevere yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the luſts and inſolencies of the *French*, not ſufferable by men of even and wel-balanced ſpirits. And poſſible enough it is, that ſuch of the *Netherlands* as have of late been wonne to the Crown of *France*, will finde ſo little comfort in the change of their Maſters, as may confirm the reſidue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Countrey, next to the *Pyrenees* which part *France* from *Spain*; the *Jour* or *Jura* which ſeparates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*; and the *Vange* or *Vogeſius* which divides it from *Lorrein*; are thoſe which *Cæſar* calleth *Gebenna*, *Ptolomie Cimmeni*; being the ſame which ſeparate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*, called therefore the Mountains of *Auvergn*; the onely ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the moſt part is plain and champian the others before mentioned being common unto this with the bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully ſtored with rivers, the chief whereof, 1 *Sequana* or *Seine*, which ariſing in *Burgundy*, watring the Cities of *Paris* and *Roane*, and receiving into it nine navigable ſtreames, disburdeneth it ſelf into the *Britiſh* Ocean. 2 *Some*, upon which ſtandeth *Amiens*. It hath it's head about S. *Quintins*, divideth *Picardie* from *Artoys*, and having received eight leſſer ſtreams, loſeth it ſelf into the ſame Sea. 3 *Ligeris*, or *Loyre*, on which are ſeated *Nantes* and *Orleance*. It riſeth about the mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greateſt in *France*:) and having runne 600 miles, and augmented his channell with the entertainment of 72 leſſer rivulets, mingleth his ſweet waters with the brackiſh *Aquitane* Ocean. 4. *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhoſne*, which ſpringing from the *Alpes*, three Dutch miles from the head of the *Rhene*, paſſeth by *Lions* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen leſſer Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5 The *Soaſne*, by the old *Latines* called *Araris*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Vogeſus* or *Vauge*, in the borders of *Lorrein* and *Alſatia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other; and falleth into the *Rhoſne* at the City of *Lions*. 6 *Garumna*, or the *Garond*, which iſſuing out of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, paſſing by *Tholouſe* and *Burdeaux*, and having ſwallowed up ſixteen leſſer Rivers (of which the *Dordonne* is the chief) disburdeneth it ſelf into the *Aquitane* Ocean, neer the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean and the influx of the river *Dordonne*, being called the *Garonne*. Of theſe it is ſaid Proverbially, that the *Seine* is the richeſt, the *Rhoſne* the ſwifteſt, the *Garond* the greateſt, and the *Loyre* the ſweeteſt. And by theſe and many other Rivers this Kingdom is inriched with 34 excellent Havens, having all the Properties of a good Harbour, that is to ſay, 1 Room, 2 Safety, 3 Eaſineſs of Defence, 4 Reſort of Merchants.

As for ſo much of the ſtory hereof as concerneth the whole, it was firſt peopled, if we may give credit to *Annius*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samothes* the ſixth Sonne of *Iaphet* (affirmed by them, and ſuch as adhere unto them, to be that Sonne of his, who in the Scripture is called *Meſech*) in the year of the world, 1806. But thoſe which are better converſant in the courſe of Hiſtory, have utterly laid aſide this deviſe of *Annius*. Even *Functius*, though a great *Beroſian*, doth confeſs ingenuouſly, *Quis hic* Samothes *fuerit incertũ eſt*, that it is unreſolved who this *Samothes* was. And *Vignier* a *French* Antiquarie doth confeſs with *Functius*, *Mais un ne ſcayt qui il eſtoit*, that no body can tell us who he was. They who have better ſtudied this point than *Annius*, derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Iaphets* Eldeſt Sonne, whoſe off-ſpring were firſt called *Gomerians*, afterwards *Cimmerians*, at laſt *Cimbri*; firſt planted (as before was ſaid) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long preſerved his memorie, and after changing that unfruitfull and unpleaſant dwelling for the plains of *Phrygia*, wherein the City *Cimmeris* did retain ſomewhat of his name in the times of *Plinie*. Afterwards his poſterity proceeded further in the *leſſer Aſia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany*, and *Gaul*, and *Britain* with his numerous iſſues: the *Gauls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the ſame Originall, though known amongſt the *Romans* by two different names. From whence they had the names of *Gauls*, and *Celtes*, and *Galatie*, hath been ſhewn before. It ſhall ſuffice us now to adde, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having ſomewhat in them of the blood of *Hercules*, they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whoſe love no King could ſecure himſelf from imminent dangers. They were very ſparing in their diet, and uſed to fine any one that outgrew his girdle. With theſe men

the

the *Romans* at the firſt fought, rather for their own preſervation, than in any hope by a conqueſt of them, to enlarge their dominions. For theſe were they, who under the conduct of *Belloreſus*, paſſing over the *Alpes*, conquered the neereſt parts of *Italie*, called afterwards *Gallia Ciſ-alpina*; and under that of *Segoveſus*, overrun all *Germanie*; and following their ſucceſſes as far as *Scythia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Scythia*. Theſe were the men, whoſe iſſue under the command of *Brennus*, diſcomfited the *Romans*, at the river *Allia*; ſacked the City, and beſieged the Capitoll. Ann. M. 3577. V. C. 365. In which action they ſo terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulſion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a law made, that the *Prieſts*, though at all other times exempted, from military employments ſhould be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And Finally theſe were the men, who under the command of *Belgius* and another *Brennus*, ranſaked *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they ſpoyled and ranſackt the Temple of *Delphos*, for which ſacrilege they were viſited with the Peſtilence. Such as ſurvived this plague, went into *Aſia*, and there gave name to that Country now called *Galatia*; of whom thus *Du Bartas*:

The ancient *Gaul* in roving every way
As far as *Phœbus* darts his golden ray;
Seiz'd *Italy*; the worlds proud Miſtreſs ſackt,
Which rather *Mars* than *Romulus* compact.
Then ſpoyles *Piſidia*, *Myſia* doth inthrall;
And mid'ſt of *Aſia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at the laſt the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almoſt all the reſidue of the (then known) World. And though the War was managed then by the ableſt Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to; yet was it not more eaſily vanquiſhed, by the valour and fortune of the *Romans*, than by want of good intelligence and correſpondence among themſelves. Nor did they ſell their liberty ſo good cheap, as thoſe other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal; *Ceſar* himſelf affirming, that he had ſlain 1192000 of them, before they would ſubmit to the *Roman* yoak. But at the laſt they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Country was divided into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1. *Narbonenſis* called ſo from the City of *Narbon*, then a *Roman* Colonie, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and ſome part of *Savoy*; and it was alſo called *Comata*, from the long hair of the people, ſubdued by *Fabius Maximus*, and *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, in their War againſt the *Allobroges* and their confederates before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming of *Julius Ceſar*. 2. *Aquitanica*, ſo called, from the City of *Aquæ Auguſtæ* (now *D' Acqs in Guienne*) lying upon the *Pyrenees*, and the wide Ocean; which comprehended the Provinces of *Gaſcoyn*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoigne*, *Limoſin*, *Quercu*, *Perigort*, *Berry*, *Bourbonoys*, and *Auvergne*; extending from the *Pyrenees*, to the River of *Loyre*, and conſequently ſtretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3. *Celtica*, ſo named from the valiant Nation of the *Celtæ*, called alſo *Lugdunenſis*, from the City of *Lyons*, and *Braccat*, from the *Tronzes* worn amongſt this people: extending from the *Loyre* to the *Britiſh* Ocean, and comprehending the Provinces of *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourain*, *Main*, *La Beauſſe*, the Iſle of *France*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedome of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Lyonnoys*. 4. *Belgica*, from the *Belgæ*, a potent Nation of that tract, taking up all the Eaſt parts of *Gaul*, *viz.* *Picardy*, the reſt of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with ſo much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lieth on this ſide of the *Rhene*, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the *great*, *Gaul* was appointed for the ſeat of one of the four *Præfecti Pratorio*, appointed for the four quarters of it. His title *Præfectus Pratorio Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Dioceſes of *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Britain*: this Dioceſe of *Gaul* being caſt into ſeventeen Provinces, that is to ſay, *Lugdunenſis Prima*, 2 *Secunda*, 3 *Tertia*, 4 *Quarta*, 5 *Belgica Prima*, 6 *Secunda*, 7 *Germania Prima*, 8 *Secunda*, 9 *Narboncnſis Prima*, 10 *Secunda*, 11 *Aquitania Prima*, 12 *Secunda*, 13 *Novempopulonia*, 14 *Viennenſis*, 15 *Maxima Sequanorum*, 16 *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, 17 *Alpes Maritimæ*. Of theſe ſeventeen *Germania Prima & Secunda*, all *Belgica Prima*, and a great part of *Secunda*, all that of the *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, and ſo much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lieth in *Switzerland*, are now diſmembred from the name and accompt of *France*. What principall Nations of the *Gauls*, and what Provinces of the preſent *France*, the reſt contained, ſhall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it ſtood not in this ſtate. For within ſixty years after the death of *Conſtantine*, during the reigns of *Honorius* and *Theodoſius*, the *Burgundians*, a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Silico* Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour, to keep the borders of the Empire againſt the *French*, then ready with ſome other of the barbarous Nations to invade the ſame. The *Gothes* not long after by agreement with the ſame *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were veſted in *Gaule Narbonoys*, by the gift of that Emperour, with a good part of *Tarraconenſis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added in regard of ſome ſervices they had done the Empire. And in the reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long hovered on the banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the diſtractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; firſt made themſelves Maſters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after ſpread themſelves over all the reſt of the Provinces which had not been ſubdued by the *Gothes* and *Burgundians*: excepting a ſmall corner of *Armorica* then poſſeſſed by the *Britons*. So that the *Romans* being outed of all the Country, it was divided (though

The Isle of France.

(though not equally) betwixt the Nations above-mentioned: the *Britons* holding their own, now *Bretagne*; the *Goths* posſeſſing *Aquitain*, and *Gaul-Narbonoys*; the *Burgundians* all the *Alpine Provinces*, with thoſe of *Daulphine*, *Breſſe*, *Lionoys*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them ſo denominated. The reſt was planted by the *French*, who in ſhort time diſpoſſeſſed the *Goths* (then buſie in the conqueſt of *Spain*) of all their hold in *Gaul*, except *Languedoc* onely, by the valour of *Clovis* the great, the fifth King of the *Frenchmen*, before they could chalenge a proſcription of 60 years. In which regard, and in reſpect that we have ſpoke already of them in another place, and ſhall ſay more of them hereafter, the *Gothiſh* Provinces in *Gaul*, ſhall paſs in the Accompt of the *French* part of this Countrie; and the *Burgundians* by themſelves, when we come to that Kingdom, ſubverted finally by the conquering and prevailing *French*: Of whom, and the ſucceſſion of their Kings, we will ſpeak hereafter, when we have brought all the chief parts and Provinces of this flouriſhing Countrey into their poſſeſſion. The principall Provinces are 1 *France*, properly ſo called, 2 *Champagne*, 3 *Picardie*, 4 *Normandie*, 5 *Bretagne*, 6 The Dukedom of *Anjou*, with its members, 7 *La Beauſſe*, 8 *Berry*, 9 The Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependant on it, being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the firſt acqueſts of the *French*. Then follow the chief Provinces of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom, that is to ſay, 10 *Poictou*, 11 *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*, 12 *Aquitain*, with the members of it, 13 *Languedoc*, 14 *Provence*: and laſt of all the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Counties of 15 *Daulphine*, 16 *La Breſſe*, 17 *Lionnois*, 18 the *Dutchie*, and 19 the *Countie* of *Burgundy*, 20 The Iſlands in the *Aquitain* and *Gallick* Ocean, in the cloſe of all. Of ſome of which *La Nove* a *French* Author hath paſſed this cenſure; The men of *Berry* are Leachers, they of *Lourein* Theeves, they of *Languedoc* Traytors, they of *Provence* Atheiſts, they of *Rhemes* (or *Champagne*) ſuperſtitious, they of *Normandie* inſolent, they of *Picardie* proud, *& ſic de cæteris*. But here we are to underſtand, that all theſe Provinces (though paſsing by the Name and Accompt of *France*) are not under the command of the *French* King; the Iſles of *Jarſey* and *Guernzey* being poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*; the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Charolois* by the King of *Spain*; the Dutchie of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*; the Principalitie of *Orange* to the houſe of *Naſſaw*, and *Avignon* to the Popes of *Rome*. And on the other ſide, the *French* Kings are poſſeſſed of ſome Towns and Cities, not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperiall Cities of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; and the Port of *Monaco* in *Liguria*; *Baſe Navarre* in *Spain*: not to ſay any thing of their late acqueſts in *Spain* and *Flanders*, which I look not on as parts of the *French* Dominions.

1 *FRANCE*, Properly ſo called.

THe firſt place which the *Franks* or *French* had for their fixt habitation, was by that people honoured with the name of *FRANCE*; the firſt *green turf* of *Gallick* ground, by which they took *livery* and *ſeiſin* of all the reſt A Province now bounded on the Eaſt with *Champagne*, on the North with *Normandie*, on the Weſt and South with *La Beauſſe*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called *the Iſle of France*; as being circled almoſt round with ſeverall Rivers, that is to ſay the *Oiſe* on the North, the *Eure* on the Weſt, the *Velle* on the Eaſt, and a vein-Riveret of the *Seine* towards the South. A Countrie not ſo large as many of the *French* Provinces, but ſuch as hath given name unto all the reſt, it being the fate of many ſmall, but puiſſant Provinces, to give their name to others which are greater than they, if conquered and brought under by them. For thus we ſee the little Province of *Poland* to have maſtred and given name to the *Mazovij*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, as that of *Moſco* to the Provinces of *Aſiatica*. And thus have thoſe of *Sweden* conquered and denominated almoſt all the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the ſmalleſt Provinces. And thus this Iſland, being the ſeat Royall of the *French* in *Gallia*, gave name to all the reſidue of it, as they made it theirs. A Countrey generally ſo fruitfull and delectable, (except in *Gaſtinois*) that the very hills thereof are equall to the vallies in moſt places of *Europe*; but the Vale of *Montmorencie* (wherein *Paris* ſtandeth) ſcarce to be fellowed in the Word. An Argument whereof may be, that when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundie*, and their Confederates, beſieged that City with an Armie of 100000 men; neither the Aſſailants without, nor the Citizens within, found any ſcarcitie of victuals; and yet the Citizens, beſides Souldiers, were reckoned at 500000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, and *Lugdunenſis quarta*, the chief Inhabitants thereof being the *Pariſii*, the *Bellovaci*, and the *Silvanectes*: and is now divided into four parts, that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Valois*, 2 *Gaſtinois*, 3 *Heurepoix*, and that which is properly called the *Iſle of France*, by ſome the *Prevoſte*, or *County of Paris*.

VALOIS. 1 The Dukedom or Countie of *VALOIS*, lieth towards *Picardie*, the principall Cities of it called *Senlis*, (in Latin *Silvanectum*) a Biſhops See, 2 *Compeigne* (*Compendium*) ſeated on the River *Oiſe*, a retyring place of the *French* Kings, for hunting, and other Countrey pleaſures. 3 *Beauvois*, the chief City of the *Bellovaci*, by *Ptolomie* called *Cæſaromagus*, a fair, large, well-traded Town, and a See Epiſcopall; the Biſhop whereof is one of the twelve Peers of *France*. *Philip* one of the Biſhops here in times foregoing, a militarie man, and one that had much damnified the *Engliſh* Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard* the firſt; The Pope being made acquainted with his Impriſonment, but not the cauſe of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an *Eccleſiaſticall* perſon, and one of his *beloved Sonnes*; The King returned unto the Pope the Armour which the Biſhop was taken in, and theſe words engraven on the ſame, *Vide an hæc ſit tunica filii tui, vel non*, being the words

words which *Jacobs* children ſpake unto him when they preſented him with the Coat of their brother *Joſeph*; Which the Pope viewing, ſwore, That it was rather the Coat of a Sonne of *Mars*, than a Sonne of the *Church*, and ſo left him wholly to the Kings pleaſure. 4 *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the Countie *Beauvoiſin*, memorable for giving the title of Earl of *Clermont* to *Robert* the fifth Sonne of the King St. *Lewis*, before his mariage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*; and afterwards to the Eldeſt Sonnes of that Princely Familie. 5 *Luzarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Soiſſons*. 6 *Brenonville*. 7. St. *Loup*, on the Confines of *Picardie*, ſo called from a Monaſtery dedicated to S. *Lupus*, Biſhop of *Troys* in *Champagne*, ſent into *Britain* with *Germanus* to ſuppreſs the *Pelagian* Hereſies, which then were beginning. But of this part of *France* nothing more obſervable, than that it gave denomination to the Royall Familie of the *French* Kings (13 in number) from hence entituled *de Valois*: beginning in *Philip de Valois*, Anno 1328. and ending in *Henry* the third, Anno 1589. As for the Earls hereof (from whom that Adjunct or denomination had it's firſt Original) the firſt who had the title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the ſecond Sonne of *Philip* the third, in right of his Wife Earl of *Anjou* alſo; After whoſe death it deſcended upon *Philip de Valois* his Eldeſt Sonne, who carried the Crown of *France* from our *Edward* the third: On whoſe aſſuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his ſecond Brother; and he deceaſing without iſſue, Anno 1391. to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* Sonne of *Charles* the fifth; amongſt the titles of which houſe it lay *dormant*, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis* the twelfth, and lately given unto a Sonne of the now Duke of *Orleans*, Vncle to King *Lewis* the fourteenth, at this preſent reigning. I onely adde, that *Charles* the firſt Earl of this Family, as he was the Sonne of *Philip* the third, Brother of *Philip* the fourth, ſurnamed the *Fair*; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: So was he Vncle to *Lewis Hutin*, *Philip* the *Long*, and *Charles* the *Fair*, all in their order Kings of *France*. In which regard it was ſaid of him, that he was Sonne, Brother, Father, and Vncle of Kings, yet no King himſelf. *The Iſle of France.*

2 The ſecond part of this Province is called *HEVREPOIX*, beginning at the little bridge of *Paris* on the River of *Sein*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verine*, which divides it from *Gaſtinois*. The chief Towns of it are 1. *Charenton*, three miles from *Paris*, where the *French Proteſtants* of that City have their Church for *Religious* exerciſes; it being not permitted them to hold their Aſſemblies in any walled Cities or Garriſon Towns, for fear of any ſudden ſurprize, which ſo great a multitude might eaſily make. Which Church (or Temple as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Pariſians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mayennes* death, ſlain at the ſiege of *Montalban* Anno 1622. was preſently reedified by the Command of the Duke of *Mom-bazon*, then Governour of the Iſle of *France*, at the charge of the State: to let thoſe of the *Reformed* party underſtand, that it was their diſobedience, and not their *Religion* which cauſed the King to arm againſt them. 2. *Corbeil*, ſeated on the Confluence of *Sein*, and *Eſſons*, 3. *Moret*, which gives the Title of an Earl to one of the naturall Sonnes of *Henry* the fourth, begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4. *Melun*, by *Cæſar* called *Melodunum*, the principal of this *Heurepoix*, and the ſeat of the *Baylif* for this Tract. Here is alſo in this part the Royall Palace of *Fountain-bel-eau*, ſo called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongſt which it ſtandeth; but otherwiſe ſeated in a ſolitary and woodie Country, fit for hunting only, and for that cauſe much viſited by the *French* Kings in their times of leiſure; and beautified with ſo much coſt by King *Henry* the fourth, that it is abſolutely the ſtatelieſt and moſt magnificent pile of building in all *France*. HEUREPOIX.

3 *GASTINOYS*, the moſt drie and baren part of this Province, but rich enough if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris* and the Countrie of *Orleanoys*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Eſtampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it towards *La Beauſſe*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a College of *Chanoins*, with the ruines of an antient Caſtle: which together with the Walls and demoliſhed Fortifications of it, ſhew it to have been of great importance in the former times: Given with the title of an Earl by *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, then Lord hereof, to *Richard*, the third Sonne of *John* of *Montfort*, Duke of *Bretagne*, in mariage with his Siſter the Lady *Marguerite*; from which mariage iſſued *Francis* Earl of *Eſtampes*, the laſt Duke of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montleherry*, Famous for the battle betwixt King *Lewis* the eleventh and *Charles* Earl of *Chavolois* (after Duke of *Burgundie*) in which both ſides ran out of the field, and each proclamed it ſelf the Victor. It ſtandeth in the road betwixt *Paris* and *Eſtampes*. And ſo doth 3 *Caſtres*, of the bigneſs of an ordinary Market Town, not to be mentioned in this place, but for a *Chamber* or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here ſetled by King *Henry* the 4th for the uſe and benefit of his Subjects of the *Reformed Religion*; in *Latin* called *Camera-Caſtrenſis*. 4. *Nemours* upon the River of *Loing*, the chief of *Gaſtinoys* in name, but not in beauty (wherein inferiour to *Eſtampes*) a Town which hath given the title of Duke to many eminent perſons of *France*. Here is alſo in this part the County of *Rochfort*, and the Towns of *Milly*, 2 *Montargis*, &c. More there occurreth not worth the noting, in this part of the Country, but that being part of the poſſeſſions of *Hugh* the Great Conſtable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, it was given by him, together with the Earldome of *Anjou*, to *Geofrie* ſurnamed *Chryſogonelle*, a right Noble Warrier, and a great ſtickler in behalf of the houſe of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it ſelf, which at laſt they carried: Continued in his line till the time of *Fulk* the ſecond (the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip* the firſt, that by his help he might poſſeſs himſelf of the Earldome of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his Elder GASTINOYS.

der Brother. Never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France* in Fact or Title.

The Iſle of France.

4 But the great glorie of this Province, is, that which is more properly called the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, and ſometimes κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Iſle*, cauſed by the Circlings and embracements of the Rivers of *Sein* and *Marn*, the abſtract of the whole beauties, and glories of *France*, which in this rich and pleaſant Vallie are ſummed up together. Chief places in it, St. *Germans*, ſeated on the aſcent of an hill, ſeven miles from *Paris* down the water, a pretty neat and handſom Town: honoured with one of the faireſt Palaces of the *French* Kings; which being built (like *Windſor*) on the top of a fine mountainet on the Rivers ſide, affordeth an excellent proſpect over all the Countrie. The excellent water-works herein have been deſcribed on occaſion of thoſe of *Tivoli*, ſo much extolled by the *Italians*. It was firſt built by *Charles* the fifth, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*; beautified by the *Engliſh* when they were poſſeſſed of this Countrie; but finally re-edified and enlarged by King *Henry* the fourth, who brought it into that magnificence in which now we ſee it. It took name from S. *German* Biſhop of *Auxerre*, companion with S. *Lupus* before mentioned, in the *Britiſh* journey againſt *Pelagius*. 2. *Poiſſie* upon the ſame River, not far from S. *Germans*, a Bayliwick belonging to the *Provoſt* of *Paris*, and one of his ſeven daughters, as they uſe to call them. 3. *Chantilly*, the chief ſeat of the Dukes of *Montmorencie*, the antienteſt and moſt noble family of *Chriſtendome*: whoſe Anceſtors were the *firſt fruits of the Goſpell* in this part of *Gaul*, and uſed to ſtile themſelves *Les premiers Chreſtiens et plus Veilles Barons de la France*, i. e. The firſt *Chriſtians* and moſt antient Barons of *France*. A Familie that hath yeelded unto *France* more *Admirals*, *Conſtables*, *Marſhalls*, and other like Officers of power, than any three in all the Kingdom: now moſt unhappily extinct in the perſon of *Henry* the laſt Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinall of *Richelieu*, for ſiding with the *Mounſeiur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) againſt King *Lewis* the thirteenth, his Brother. The Arms of which illuſtrious and moſt noble Familie (for I cannot let it paſs without this honour) were *Or*, a Croſs *Gules*, cantonned with ſixteen *Allerions Azure*, four in every *Canton*. What theſe *Allerions* are we ſhall ſee in *Lorrein*; take we notice now, that from the great poſſeſſions which this noble Familie had in all this tract, it was, and is ſtill called the Vale of *Montmorencie*. 4. S. *Denis*, ſome three miles from *Paris*, ſo called of a Monaſtery built here by *Dagobert* King of *France*, about the year 640. in memorie of S. *Denis* or *Dionyſe*, the firſt Biſhop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mont-martyr* an hill adjoyning) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the *French* Kings, becauſe it lay ſo neer to *Paris*, beſtowed a wall upon the Town, now not defenſible: nor otherwiſe of any conſideration, but for a very fair Abbie of *Benedictines*, and therein the Sepulchres of many of the *French* Kings and Princes; neither for workmanſhip nor coſt able to hold compariſon with thoſe at *Weſtminſter*. 5. St. *Cloud* (or the Town of St. *Claudus*) unfortunately memorable for the murder of King *Henry* the third: who lying here at the ſiege of *Paris*, from whence he was compelled to flie by the *Guiſian* Faction, was wretchedly aſſaſſinated by *Jaques Clement* a Monk, employed in that ſervice by the heads of the *Holy League*. 6. *PARIS* the chief Citie not of this Iſle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By *Caeſar*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Civitas Pariſiorum*, from the *Pariſians*, a Nation of *Gaul-Celtick*, whoſe chief Citie it was: by *Strabo* called *Lutetia*, *Lucotetia* by *Ptolomie*, *quaſi in Luto ſita*, as ſome conjecture, from the dirtineſs of the ſoyl in which it ſtandeth: A Soyl ſo dirtie (as commonly all rich Countries are) that though the ſtreets hereof are paved (which they affirm to be the work of King *Philip Auguſtus*) yet every little daſh of rain makes them very ſlipperie: and worſe than ſo, yeelds an ill ſavour to the noſe. The Proverb is, *Il deſtaint comme la fauge de Paris*, it ſtaineth like the dirt of *Paris*: but the Author of the *Proverb* might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il peut*, &c. *It ſtinks like the dirt of Paris*; no ſtink being more offenſive than thoſe ſtreets in Summer. It is in compaſs about eight miles, of an Orbicular form, pleaſantly ſeated on the diviſions of the *Sein*: a fair, large, and capacious Citie, but far ſhort of the braggs which the *French* make of it. It was thought in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh to contein 500000 peopl: of all ſorts and Ages; which muſt be the leaſt: the ſame King at the entertainment of the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſadours, ſhewing 14000 of this City in Arms, all in a Liverie of red Caſſocks with white Croſſes: A gallant ſight, though poſſibly the one half of them were not fit for ſervice. Theſe multitudes, which ſince the time of that King muſt needs be very much increaſed, are the chief ſtrength of the Town, the fortifications being weak and of ill aſſurance: Inſomuch, that when once a *Pariſian* bragged that their Town was never took by force; an *Engliſh* man returned this Anſwer, That it was, *becauſe on the leaſt diſtreſs it did uſe to capitulate*. It is ſeated (as before was ſaid) on the River *Sein*, which ſerveth it with Boats and Barges (as the *Thames* Weſtward doth *London*) the River ebbing and flowing no nigher than *Pont del' Arche* 75 miles diſtant from the Citie.

We may divide it into four parts, the Town, the Citie, the Univerſitie, and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is ſituate on the North ſide of the River, the biggeſt, but pooreſt part of the four, inhabited by Artizans and Tradeſmen of the meaner ſort. In this part are the *Hoſtell de Ville*, or the *Guild-hall* for the uſe of the Citizens; the *Arſenall* or Armory for the uſe of the King, and that magnificent building called the *Place Royall*, new built and beautified at the charges of King *Henry* the fourth for Tilts and Turraments, and ſuch ſolemnities of State. And in this alſo, neer the banks of the River, ſtands the Kings Palace of the *Louvre*, a place of more fame than beauty, and nothing anſwerable to the report which goes commonly of it. A building of no elegance or uniformitie, nor otherwiſe remarkable but for the vaſt Gallerie begun by King *Henry* the fourth, and the fine Gardens of the *Tuilleries* adjoyning to it.

The

The City is that part of it which takes up the circumference of a little Iland, made by the embracements of the *Seine*; joyned to the other parts on both sides, by several Bridges. The *Paris* or *Lutetia* of the old Gauls was no more than this: the *Town* on the one side, and the *Vniversity* on the other, being added since. This is the richest part, and best built of the whole *Compositum*. And herein stand the *Palace*, or *Courts* of *Parliament*; the *Chappel* of the *Holy Ghost*, and the Church of *Nostre-dame*, being the Cathedral, of antient times a Bishops See, but of late raised unto the dignity of a *Metropolitan*. On the South side of the River lyeth that part which is called the *Vniversitie*, from an Vniversity here founded by *Charles* the *Great*, Anno 792. at the perswasion of *Alcuinus* an *Englishman*, the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the first Professor of *Divinity* here. It consisteth of 52 *Colleges* or places for study, whereof 40. are of little use; and in the rest the Students live at their own charges, as in the *Halls* at *Oxon*, or *Inns* of *Court* or *Chancery* at *London*; there being no endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the College of *Navarre*. Which possiblie may be the reason why the *Scholars* here are generally so debauched and insolent: a ruder rabble than the which are hardly to be found in the *Christian* World. Sensible of this mischief, and the cause thereof, *Francis* the first, whom the *French* call the *Father of the Muses*, at the perswasion of *Renchline* and *Budeus*, those great restorers of the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a College for 600 Students, and therein to have placed *Professours* for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yeerly Revenue, for their constant maintenance. But it went no further than the purpose; prevented by the inevitable stroak of death from pursuance of it. In bigness this is little inferiour to the *Town* or *Ville*, and not superiour to it for wealth or beauty; few men of any wealth and credit affecting to inhabit in a place of so little Government. The 4th and last part is the *Suburbs*, (or the *Faux-bourgs* as the *French* call them) the principal whereof is that of S. *Germans* (so called from an antient Abbie of that name:) the best part of the whole body of *Paris*, for large Streets, sweet Air, choyce of the best Companie, magnificent Houses, pleasant Gardens, and finally all those contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of most populous Cities. *Champagne*

Here are also in this *Isle* the Royal house of *Madrit*, a retiring place of the Kings, built by King *Francis* the first at his return from his imprisonment in *Spain*. 2 *Ruall*, a sweet Countrie house of the late Queen Mothers: and 3 *Boys de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry* the fifth. I add this only and so end, That this *Isle* hath alwayes followed the fortune of the *Crown* of *France*; never dismembred from the Soveraigntie of the same, though sometimes out of the possession of the *French* Kings; as when the *English* kept it against *Charles* the 7th, and the *Leagners* against *Henry* the 4th. A thing which hardly can be said of any other of the Provinces of this flourishing Countrie: the *French* Kings of the race of *Merovee* and *Charles* the great, alienating from the Crown many goodly Territories, contented only with a bare and titularie *Homage* from them. By meanes whereof more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was shared first amongst the great Princes of the *French*: which afterwards by inter-mariages and other Titles fell into the hands of strangers, most of them enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandour and power thereof. Which kept the *French* Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiscations, Mariages, and such other meanes, they reduced all these *Riverets* to their first and original *Channel*; as shall be shewen in the pursuance of this work.

CHAMPAGNE.

CHAMPAGNE is bounded on the North with *Picardie*; on the South with the Dukedom of *Burgundie*, and some part of the Countie; on the East with *Lorrein*; on the West with *France* specially so called.

The Countrie for the most part very plain and pleasant (whence it had the name) adorned with shadie Woods, and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat in elder times of the *Trieasses*, *Catelauni*, *Rhemi*, the *Lingones*, and *Senones*, (of which last Tribe or Nation were those *Cisalpine Gaules* who sacked *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*:) part of them *Celts*, and part *Belgians*, and so accordingly disposed of: the *Belgians* into the Province of *Belgica Secunda*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Rhemes*; the *Celts* into *Lugdunensis quarta*, of which the Metropolis was *Sens*; both Cities seated in this Countrie. The chief Rivers of it *Bloise*, *Marne*, and *Yonne*

Chief places of the whole are, 1 *Chalon* on the River *Marne*, an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Rhemes*; called antiently *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2 *Join Ville* situate on the same River, belonging to the house of *Guise*: the eldest Sonne of which Familie is called *Prince* of *Joinville*, in the Castle whereof, seated upon an high and inaccessible Hill, is to be seen the Tomb of *Claude* the first Duke of *Guise*, the richest Monument of that kind, in all *France*. A Baronie which hath belonged to the house of *Lorrein*, ever since the yeer 1119. when *Thierry* the Sonne of *William Baron* of *Joinville*, succeeded his two Vncles *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* in that Dukedom. 3 *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Caste of so great strength, that in the civil Wars of *France* A. 1614. it endured 1100 shot of Cannon, and yet was not taken, 4 *Vassey*, upon the River *Bloise*, a Town of as sweet a situation as most in *France*. These three last scituate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*: so named as I conceive, from the River *Vaste*. 5 *Vitrey*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* and *Marne*, the chief Town and Balliage of that part which is named *Parthois* (*Ager Pertensis* in the *Latine*, so called of 6 *Perte* another Town thereof, but now not so eminent. 7 *Chaumont* upon the

Marne

Champagne

Marne, the chief Town of *Bassigni*; and strengthned with a Castle mounted on a craggie Rock. 8 *Dedior*, or St. *Defier* (*Fanum Sancti Desiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, Anno 1544. 9 *Rhemes* (*Durocortorum Rhemorum*) an Arch-Bishops See, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, situate on the River of *Vaste*. At this City the Kings of *France* are most commonly crowned, that so they may enjoy the Vnction of a sacred Oil, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof, which, as they say, came down from Heaven, & never decreaseth. How true this is may be easily seen, in that *Gregorie* of *Tours*, who is so prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it: but specially (for *Argumentum ab autoritate negativè parum valet*) since the *Legend* informeth us that this holy *Oil* was sent from Heaven at the annointing of *Clovis* the first *Christian* King of the *French*. Whereas *Du. Haillan*, one of their most judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the great, to have been their first annointed King; and that there was none *de la primiere lignee oinct, ny Sacre à* Rhemes, *ny alleiurs*, none of the first or *Merovignian* line of Kings, had been annointed at *Rhemes* or elsewhere. But sure it is (let it be true or false no matter) that the *French* do wonderfully reverence this (their sacred) *Oil*, and fetch it with great solemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, sitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent: the Arch-Bishop hereof (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and such Bishops as are present, going to the Church-dores, to meet it, and leaving for it with the *Prior*, some competent pawn: and on the other side, the King when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himself before it with great humility. But to return unto the Town; it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of these parts, whose chief City it was; and now an University of no small esteem: in which among other Colleges there is one appointed for the education of young *English* Fugitives. The first Seminarie for which purpose (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Doway*, An. 1568 A second at *Rome* by *Pope Gregory* the 13. A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain*, by K. *Phylip* the second. A fourth in *Lovaine* a Town of *Brabant*; and a fifth, here (so much do they affect the gaining of the *English* to the *Romish* Church) by the Dukes of *Guise*. 10 *Ligni*, upon the River *Sault*. All these in *Belgica Secunda* or the Province of *Rhemes*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunensis quarta*, the places of chief note are, 1 *Sens*, *Civitas Senonum* in *Antoninus*, antiently the *Metropolis* of that Province, by consequence the See of an *Arch-Bishop* also. 2 *Langres*, or *Civitas Lingonum*, (by *Ptolomie*, called *Audomaturum*) situate in the Confines of *Burgundie*, not far from the Fountain or Spring-head of the *Seine*: the See of a Bishop, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*. 3 *Troys*, *Civitas Tricassium*, seated on the *Seine*, a fair, strong, and well traded-City, honoured with the title of the Daughter of *Paris*; a See Episcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne* next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our *French* and *English* Histories, for the meeting of *Charles* the sixth, and *Henry* the fift, Kings of *France* and *England*, in which it was agreed, That the said King *Henry* espousing *Catharine* Daughter of that King, should be proclamed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of *France*, into which he should succeed on the said Kings death, and be the *Regent* of the Realm for the time of his life: with divers other Articles best suiting with the will and honour of the Conquerour. 4 *Provins* (by *Cæsar* called *Agendicum*) seated upon the *Seine*, in a pleasant Countrie, abounding in all fragrant flowers; but specially with the sweetest Roses; which being transplanted into other Countries are called *Provins Roses*. 5 *Meaux*, seated on the River *Marne*, antiently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Plinie* and others of the old Writers mention in this tract: now honoured with a Bishops See, and neighboured by 6 *Monceaux*, beautified with a magnificent Palace built by *Catharine de Medices*, Queen Mother of the three last Kings of the house of *Valois*. 7 *Montereau*, a strong Town on the confluence of the *Seine* and the *Yonne*. 8 *Chastean-Thierri*, (*Castrum Theodorisi*, as the *Latines* call it) situate on the River *Marn*. These five last situate in that part of *Champagne* which lieth next to *France* specially so called, known of long time by the name of *Brie*: which being the first or chief possession of the Earls of *Champagne*, occasioned them to be sometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and sometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here, 9 *Auxerre*, in former time a Citie of the Dukedom of *Burgundie*, but now part of *Champagne*, of which more hereafter: And 10 *Fontenay*, a small Town in *Auxerrois* in the very Borders of this Province, but memorable for the great Battel fought neer unto it, An. 841. between the Sons & Nephews of *Ludovicus Pius* for their Fathers Kingdoms: in which so many thousands were slain on both sides, that the forces of the *French* Empire were extremely weakned; and had been utterly destroyed in pursuit of this unnatural War, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a peace between them; alotting unto each some part of that vast estate, dismembred by that meanes into the Kingdoms of *Italie*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorrein*, & *Burgundie*; never since brought into one hand, as they were before.

Within the bounds of *Champagne* also where it lookes towards *Lorrein*, is situate the Countrie and Dutchy of *BAR*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of *France*. The Countrie commonly called *BARROIS*, environed with the two streames of the River *Marn*; of which the one rising in the edge of *Burgundie*, and the other in the Borders of *Lorein*, do meet together at *Chalons* a City of *Champagne*. Places of most importance in it, 1 *Bar le Duc*, so called to distinguish it from *Bar*, on the River *Seine*. and *Bar*, upon the River *Albi*; a well fortified Town. 2 *La Motte*. 3 *Ligni*. 4 *Arqu*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. A Dukedom which came first to the house of *Lorreine*, by the guift of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titularie King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, *&c.* who succeeded in it in the right of *Yolard* or *Violant* his Mother, Daughter of *Don Pedro* King of *Aragon*, and of *Yolard* or *Violant* the Heir of *Bar*: and dying gave the same, together with the Towns of *Lambesque* and

Orgon,

Orgon, to *Rene Duke* of *Lorrein* his *Nephew*, by the Lady *Violant* his *Daughter*: From this *Rene*, it was taken by *Lewis* the 11th. who having put a Garriſon into *Bar*, repaired the Walls, and cauſed the Arms of *France* to be ſet on the Gates thereof. Reſtored again by *Charles* the 8th, at his going to the Conqueſt of *Naples*: ſince which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorrein*, till the year 1633. when ſeized on by *Lewis* the 13th, upon a Iudgement and Arreſt of the Court of *Parliament* in *Paris*, in regard the preſent Duke had not done his Homage to the King, as he ought to have done.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, two Barbels back to back, *Or*; *Seme* of Croſſe Croſſets *Fitche*, of the ſecond.

But to return again to *Champagne*, it pleaſed *Hugh Capet* at his coming to the Crown of *France*, to give the ſame to *Eudes* or *Odon*, Earl of *Blais*, whoſe Daughter he had maried in his private fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom, with all the rights and privileges of a Countie Palatine. Which *Eudes* or *Odon* was the Sonne of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon* a Noble *Dane*, to whom *Charles* the ſimple gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 940. and not long after the time that he conferred the Countrie of *Neuſtria* upon *Rollo* the *Norman*. In the perſon of *Theobald* the 3d, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, deſcended on him in right of the Ladie *Blanch* his Mother, Siſter and Heir of King *Sancho* the 8th. Anno 1234. By the Mariage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre* and Counteſs of *Champagne* to *Philip* the 4th of *France*, ſurnamed the *Fair*, both theſe Eſtates were added to the Crown of *France*: enjoyed by him and his three Sonnes one after another, though not without ſome prejudice to the Ladie *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three Brethren being dead, and *Philip* of *Valois* ſucceeding in the Crown of *France*, he reſtored the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the ſaid Ladie *Joan*: and for the Countie of *Champagne* which lay too neer the Citie of *Paris* to be truſted in a forrein hand, he gave unto her and her poſterity, as in the way of exchange, ſome certain Towns and Lands in other places, though not of equal value to ſo rich a Patrimonie.

Count *Palatines* of *Champagne*.

999. 1 *Odo*, Earl of *Champagne*, *Brie*, *Blais*, and *Toureine*, Sonne of *Theebald* the elder, Earl of *Blais*.

1032. 2 *Stephen*, Earl of *Campagne* and *Blais*, Father of *Stephen* Earl of *Blais*, and King of *England*.

1101. 3 *Theebald* eldeſt Sonne of *Stephen*.

1151. 4 *Henry*, Sonne of *Theobald*, a great Adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.

1181. 5 *Henry* II. an Aſſociate of the Kings of *France* and *England* in the *Holy Wars*; King of *Hieruſalem* in right of *Iſabel* his Wife.

1196. 6 *Theobald* II. Brother of *Henry*, added unto his houſe the hopes of the kingdom of *Navarre* by his Mariage with the Ladie *Blanche*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the 8th.

1201. 7 *Theobald* III. Earl of *Campagne*, Sonne of *Theobald* the 2d, and the Ladie *Blanche*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Navarre*, Anno 1234.

1269. 8 *Theobald* IV. Sonne of *Theobald* the 3d, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne* and *Brie*.

1271. 9 *Henry*, Sonne of *Theobald* the 4th, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.

1284. 10 *Philip* IV. King of *France*, in right of *Ioane* his Wife King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Campagne*.

1313. 11 *Lewis Hutin*, Sonne of *Philip*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.

1315. 12 *Philip* the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.

1320. 13 *Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, and the laſt Earl of *Champagne*, united after his deceaſe by *Philip de Valois* to the Crown of *France*: the Earldom of *March* neer *Angoleſme* being given for it in exchange to the Ladie *Ioane*, Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*, and Queen of *Navarre*, maried to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, in her right honoured with that Crown, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France* and *Navarre* of the Houſe of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of theſe *Palatines* of *Champagne*, were *Azure*, two Bends cotized, potencee and counterpotencee of three peeces.

3. PICARDIE.

PICARDIE hath on the *Eaſt* the Dukedoms of *Luxembourg* and *Lorrein*; on the *Weſt*, ſome part of *Normandie*, and the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the *North*, the Counties of *Artois* and *Hainalt*; and on the *South*, *Champagne*, and *France* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called. A Countrie ſo well ſtored with Corn, that it is accounted the *Granarie* or Store houſe of *Paris*; but the few Wines which it produceth are but harſh, and of no good reliſh, eſpecially in the *Northern* and colder parts of it.

The antient Inhabitants of it were the *Sneſſiones*, *Ambiani*, and *Veromandui*, conſiderable Nations of the *Belgæ*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica Secunda*: but why they had the name of *Picards* I am yet to ſeek. Omitting therefore the conjectures of other men, ſome of the

Picardie which are groundleſs, and the reſt ridiculous; I onely ſay, as *Robert* Biſhop of *Auranches* hath affirmed before me, *Quos itaque ætas noſtra Picardos appellat, verè Belgæ dicendi ſunt, qui poſtmodum in Picardorum nomen tranſmigrarunt.*

The whole Countrie as it lieth from *Calais* to the Borders of *Lorrein*, is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* ſubdivided into *Sainterre*, *Pontheiu*, *Boulognois*, and *Guiſnes*; the *Higher* into the *Vidamate* of *Amiens*, *Veromandois*, *Rethelois*, and *Tieraſche*, in every of which there are ſome places of importance and conſideration.

In *LOWER PICARDIE* and the Countie of *GVISNES*, the chief Towns, 1. *Calais*, by *Cæſar* called *Portus Iccius* (as the adjoyning *Promontorie*, *Promontorium Itium*, by *Ptolomie*) a ſtrong Town cloſe upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the *Engliſh* Channel: taken by *Edward* the 3d after the ſiedge of 11 moneths, An. 1347. and loſt again by Queen *Mary* in leſſe than a fortnight, An. 1557. So that had *Monſieur de Cordes* then lived, he had had his wiſh; who uſed to ſay, that *he would be content to lie ſeven years in* Hell, *on condition that* Calais *were taken from the* Engliſh. The loſs of which Town was a great blow to our Eſtate, for till that time we had the *Keyes* of *France* at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Q. *Mary*, who ſickning preſently upon it, ſaid to thoſe which attended her, that *if ſhe were opened, they ſhould find* Calais *next her heart*. 2. *Hamme*, a ſtrong peece, one of the beſt Out-works of *Calais*. 3. *Ardres*, more towards the Borders of *Boulognois*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the 8th, and *Francis* the firſt; and many meetings of the *Engliſh* & *French* Commiſſioners. 4 *Guiſnes*, which gives name to this Diviſion called the County of *Guiſnes*, of which the Land of *Oye* whereon *Calice* ſtood (by the *French* called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was eſteemed a part.

2. In *BOVLOGNOIS*, neighbouring on the Countie of *Gniſnes* the places of moſt note, 1 *Blackneſs*, a ſtrong Fort on the Sea ſide, betwixt *Calice* and *Boulogne*. 2 *Chaſtillon*, oppoſite to *Boulogne* on the other ſide of the water. 3 *Boullenberg*, more within the Land, an Out-work to *Boulogne*. 4 *Boulogne*, by *Plinie* called *Portus Geſſoriacus*, part of the Countrie of the *Morini*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*, divided into the *Baſe* or *Low Town* lying on the ſhore ſide, well built, and much frequented by Paſſengers, going to, or coming out of *England*; and the *High Town*, ſtanding on the riſe of an Hill, well garriſoned for defence of the *Port* beneath it, and honoured with a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither from *Tarney* when that City was taken by the *Engliſh*. The Town and Countrie purchaſed of *Bernard de la Tour*, the true *Proprietarie* of it, by King *Lewis* the 13. who as the new Lord did homage for it to the *Virgin Mary* in the chief Church thereof called *Noſtre Dame*, bare headed, and upon his knees, without Girdle or Spurrs, and offered to her Image a maſſie Heart of gold, of 2200. Ounces: capitulating, that from thenceforth he and his ſucceſſours ſhould hold that Earldom of her only in perpetual *Homage*, and at the change of every *Vaſſall*, preſent her with a golden Heart of the ſame weight. After this it was taken by King *Henry* the 8th, An. 1544. but yielded not long after by King *Edward* the 6th.

I add, before I leave this Town, that at ſuch time as it was an abſolute Eſtate, it gave one King unto *Hieruſalem*, and another to *England*: the King of *Hieruſalem* being that famous *Godfrey* ſurnamed of *Bouillon*, Earl of this *Boulogne*, as Sonne of *Euſtace* Earl hereof, and Duke of *Lorrein* and *Bouillon*, as the Sonne of the ſaid *Euſtace* and the Ladie *Ida*, the true Inheretrix of thoſe *Duchies*. The ſecond King which had the Title and Eſtate of Earl of *Boulogne*, was *Stephen* King of *England*, who held it in right of *Maud* his Wife, the Daughter and Heir of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne*, the Brother of that famous *Godfrey*. But his iſſue failing not long after, and the Eſtate being fallen amongſt his Heires general, it came at laſt to the *De la Tours* of *Auvergne* (the Anceſters of the now Dukes of *Bouillon*) and ſo unto the Crown, as before is ſaid. The Arms of which Family are a Tower embattled *Sables*; but the colour of the *Feild* I find not.

3. *PONTHEIU*, ſo called from the Bridges, built for conveniencie of paſſage over the mooriſh Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the *Engliſh*; To whom it came by the Mariage of *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, by *Joane* the Daughter and Heir of *Simon* the laſt Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the firſt. Towns of moſt note in it, 1 *Abbeville*, ſeated on the *Some*, well fortifyed, and as ſtrongly garriſoned, as a Frontier Town upon *Artois*: on one ſide unaſſaultable by reaſon of a deep mooriſh Fen which comes up cloſe to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatis Villa*, in the *Latine*) and the See of a Biſhop. 2 *Monſtreuille*, a well fortified Town in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and *Amiens*; and a ſtrong out-work unto *Paris*. 3 *Crecie*, where King *Edward* the 3d defeated the great Armie of *Philip de Valois*, in the firſt onſets for that Kingdom. And 4. *Treport*, a ſmall Haven on the Eaſt of St. *Valeries*. Some place the Earldom of St. *Paul* in this Countrie of *Pontheiu*; others more rightly in *Artoys*, where we mean to meet with it. The Arms hereof were *Or*, 3 Bends *Azure*. 4 And as for *SAINTERRE*, which is the fourth part of the *Lower Picardie*, the chief Tows of it are 1 *Peronne*, upon the River *Some*, where *Lewis* the 11th, the greateſt Maſter of State-craft for the times he lived in, put himſelf moſt improvidently into the hands of *Charles* of *Burgundie*, who as improvidenly diſmiſſed him. 2. *Roy*, and 3. *Montdidier*, (*Mons Deſiderij* in *Latine*) both of them ſtrong Towns upon the Frontire; but otherwiſe of little fame in former Stories.

In *Higher Picardie* and the *Vidamate* of *AMIENS*, the places of moſt note are, 1 *Corbis*, a Garriſon on the Frontire, towards the *Netherlands*. 2 *Piquigni*, on the River *Some*, more famous for the enterview of *Edward* the 4th of *England*, and *Lewis* the 13th, than for giving the name of *Picardie* to all the Province, which *Mercator* only of all Writers doth aſcribe unto it. And 3dly

Amiens

Amiens it ſelf, ſeated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many Streams for the uſe and ſervice of the Town; well built, with very ſtrong walls, and deep ditches: the loſs whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, much hazarded the affairs and reputation of King *Henry* the 4th; and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadell. But the chief glorie of this Citie is in the *Cathedrall*, the faireſt and moſt lovely ſtructure in the Weſt of *Europe*: ſo beautified within, and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Coſt and Architecture ſeem to be met together in the compoſition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glaſs in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the coſtly Imagerie, and arched Buttreſſes in the Chappell at *Weſtminſter* (before the late defacements of thoſe *Cathedralls*) might ſerve as helps to ſet forth the full beauties of it. *Picardie.*

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, paſs we on next to *VEROMANDOIS*, the ancient habitation of the *Veromandui*: the faireſt and largeſt part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferior to the beſt of *France*, in the number of neat and populous Cities. The principall whereof are, 1 *Soiſſons*, called antiently *Auguſta Sueſſionum*, the chief Citie of the *Sueſſones* or *Sueſſiones*: and the laſt Hold which the *Romans* had in all *Gaul*, loſt by *Siagrius* Governor for the Weſtern Emperor, to *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*. In the diviſion of his Kingdom, made the Seat Royall of *Clotair* the ſonne of this *Clovis*, and of *Arispert*, and *Chilperick*, the ſonnes of *Clotair*, from hence entituled Kings of *Soiſſons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica Secunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardie*, and *Champagne*, as we call them now. But *Soiſſons* having long ſince loſt the honour of a Regall Seat; hath of late times been made the honourarie Title of the Counts of *Soiſſons*, a branch of the Royall ſtock of *Bourbon*; and a Biſhops See, ſituate on the River of *Aiſne*. 2 *Laon*, a Biſhops See alſo, the Biſhop whereof is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, and Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latine*, *Laodunum*. 3 *Noyon*, in *Latine*, *Noviodunum*, an Epiſcopall See alſo. 4 *Chapelle*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt outworks of *Paris* againſt the *Netherlands*. 5 *D'Ourlans*, and 6 *La Fere*, places of great ſtrength alſo, but more neer the Frontires. And 7 S. *Quintin*, antiently the chief Citie of the *Veromandui*, then called *Auguſta Veromanduorum*: called afterwards S. *Quintin* from that Saint, here worſhipped, as the *Patron* and *Deus tutelaris* of it. A place of great importance for the Realm of *France*; and ſo eſteemed in the opinion of the Earl of *Charolois*, after Duke of *Burgundie*, and King *Lewis* the 11th; the firſt of which never digeſted the reſtoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no leſs than 400000 Crowns; the later never would forgive the Earl of S. *Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his ſervice. A Town of greater note in ſucceeding times for the famous battle of St. *Quintins*, Anno 1557. wherein King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, with the help of the *Engliſh* under command of the Earl of *Pembroke*, overthrew the whole Forces of the *French*, made themſelves Maſters of the Town, and thereby grew ſo formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guiſe* was in Poſt haſt ſent for out of *Italie*, (where his affairs began to proſper) to look unto the ſafety of *France* it ſelf.

III. More towards *Hainalt* and *Lorrein* lieth the Countrie of *RETHELOIS*, ſo called of *Rethel* the chief Town: well fortified as the reſt of the Frontire places; but of moſt note amongſt the *French*, in that the eldeſt ſonnes of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have uſually been entituled Earls and Dukes of *Rethel*; united to that Familie by the mariage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the Daughter and Heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*, Anno 1312, or thereabouts. 2 St. *Monhaud*, a Town of conſequence and ſtrength. 3 *Sygni*, a ſtrong peece belonging to the Marqueſs of *Vieu-Ville*. 4 *Chaſteau-Portian*, of more beautie, but of like importance.

IV. Finally in the Dutchie of *TIERASCHE*, the laſt part of the *higher Picardie*, we have the Town of *Guiſe*, of ſome note for the Caſtle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducall Familie of *Lorrein*, from hence entituled Dukes of *Guiſe*. A Familie which within a little compaſs of time produced two *Cardinals*, the one entituled of *Guiſe*, the other of *Lorrein*; ſix Dukes, that is to ſay, the Duke of *Guiſe*, *Mayenne*, *Aumal*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguillon*, and *Chevreuſe*; the Earl of *Sammarive*; and beſides many Daughters maried into the beſt houſes in *France*, one maried to *James* the 5th King of the *Scots*. The firſt, and he that gave the riſe unto all the reſt of this potent Family, was *Claud*, ſonne to *Rene* the ſecond, Duke of *Lorrein*, and husband to *Antoniette* Daughter to the Duke of *Vendoſme*; in reſpect of which alliance, he was honoured with this title. The ſecond was *Francis*, who endangered the Realm of *Naples*, reſiſted the ſiedge of the Emperor *Charles* at *Mets*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calice* from Q. *Mary*, and was at laſt treacherouſly ſlain at the ſiedge of *Orleans*, Anno 1563. The third was *Henry* that great enemy of the *Proteſtants*, who contrived the great *Maſſacre* at *Paris*, and almoſt diſpoſſeſſed *Henry* the third, of all *France*. He began the holy league, and was finally ſlain at *Bloys*, by the command of King *Henry* the 3d. But we muſt know that this Town did antiently belong to the Dukes of *Lorrein*; and had given the title of *Guiſe* to *Frederick* the ſecond ſonne of *John*, and *Charles* the third ſonne of *Rene*, both the firſt of thoſe names, before *Claud* of *Lorrein* was advanced to the title of Duke. Of moſt note next to *Guiſe* it ſelf, is 2 *Ripemont* on the South of *Guiſe*. 3 *Chaſtelet* upon the border towards *Luxembourg*, a ſtrong Town, and one of the beſt outworks of *France*. 4 *Mazieres*, upon the *Maes* or *Meuſe*, a place of great ſtrength and like importance.

As for the ſtate of this whole Province I doe not finde that it was ever paſſed over by the *French* Kings unto any one hand; as almoſt all the reſt of *France* had been, at ſome time or other, but diſtracted into divers Lordſhips. Some of which fell to the Crown of *France* by confiſcations, and

Normandie.

others by conqueſt: Some held of *England*; ſome, of the Earls of *Artois*; and others of *Flanders*, and laſtly of the Dukes of *Burgundie*, as Lords of thoſe Provinces: thoſe which depended upon *England* being ſeized on by *Charles* the 7th, on the loſs of *Normandie* by the *Engliſh*; as thoſe which held of *Burgundie*, were by *Lewis* his ſonne, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* at the battel of *Nancie*, Anno 1476.

NORMANDIE.

NORMANDIE is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Some* which parteth it from *Picardie*; on the Weſt with *Bretagne*, and ſome part of the Ocean; on the North with the *Engliſh* Channel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South with *France* ſpecially ſo called, and the County of *Maine*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunenſis Secunda*, in the time of the *Romans*; the Metropolis whereof was *Roven*: and in the greatneſs of the *French* Empire had the name of *Neuſtria*, corruptly ſo called for *Weſtria*; the name of *Weſtria* or *Weſtenrich*, being given by ſome to this part of the Realm of *Weſt-France*, as that of *Auſtria* or *Oſtenrich* to a part of *Eaſt-France*. Afterwards being beſtowed upon the *Normans* by *Charles* the *Simple*, it was called *Normandie*.

In this Countrie is the little Signeurie of IVIDOT, heretofore ſaid to be a free and abſolute Kingdom; advanced to that high dignitie by *Clotaire*, the ſeventh King of the *French*: who having abuſed the wife of one *Gautier de Ividot* (ſo called becauſe of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent revenge) killed the man himſelf; to make ſome ſatisfaction to his Familie for ſo great an injury, erected the Lordſhip of *Ividot* to the eſtate of a Kingdom, and gave unto the heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walter*) all the prerogative of a free and abſolute Monarch, as to make Laws, coyn money, and the like. From hence the *French* call a man that hath but ſmall demaines to maintain a great title, a *Roy d' Ividot*. At laſt, but at what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordſhip, and belongeth now to the houſe of *Bellay* in *Bretagne*.

But to proceed from the poor Kingdom of *Ividot*, to the rich Dukedom of *Normandie*, for largeneſs of Extent, multitudes of People, number and ſtatelineſs of Cities, fertilitie of Soyl, and the commodiouſneſs of the Seas, it may worthily be accompted the chief Province of *France*. Well watered with the River *Seine* which runneth quite thorough it; as do alſo 2 the *Orne*, and 3 the *Aven*: not to ſay any thing of 4 *Robee*, 5 *Ante*, and 6 *Reinelle*, and many others of leſs note. In length it reacheth 170 miles, and about 60 in bredth where it is narroweſt: containing in that round the largeſt and faireſt Corn-fields that are to be ſeen in all *France*. Of all other naturall commodities it is extreme plentifull, excepting Wines, which the Northern coldneſs of the *Climate* admits not of; or ſparingly at the beſt, and of no perfection. The people of it formerly renowned for feats of Arms, the Conquerours of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Kingdom of *Antioch* in the Eaſt: at this time thought to be of a more ſharp and ſubtill wit than the reſt of the *French*, *Scavans au poſſible en proceces & plaideries* (ſaith *Ortelius* of them) eſpecially in the quillets and quirks of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*, the *Lower* containing the Sea coaſts, and the *Higher* the more Inland parts. Principall Cities of the whole, 1 *Conſtance*, a Biſhops See, the Spire or Steeple of whoſe *Cathedrall*, is eaſily diſcernable afar off, both by Sea and Land, and ſerveth Saylers for a Landmark. From hence the Country hereabouts hath the name of *Conſtantin*. 2 *Auranches*, ſituate on a rock with a fair proſpect over the *Engliſh* Channell, but more neer to *Bretagne* than the other, the chief Citie of the *Abrincantes*, called *Ingena* by *Ptolomie*, now a Biſhops See. 3 *Caen*, (*Cadomum* in *Latine*) an Epiſcopall See, as the other; Strong, populous, and well built, ſeated upon the River *Orne*, ſecond in Reputation of the whole Province: but more eſpecially famous, for the Sepulchre of *William* the *Conquerour*, the Vniverſitie founded here by King *Henry* the 5th, and for the long reſiſtance which it made againſt him, in his Conqueſt of *Normandie*. 4. *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baiocaſſium* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Countrie round about hath the name of *Beſſin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Epiſcopal. One of the Biſhops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William* the *Conquerour*, by the Mothers ſide, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards on ſome juſt diſpleaſure committed Priſoner. For which, when quarreled by the *Pope*, (the Clergie being then exempted from the Secular Powers,) he returned this anſwer, that he had committed the Earl of *Kent*, not the Biſhop of *Bayeux*: By which diſtinction he avoided the *Popes* diſpleaſure. 5. *Roven*, of old *Rothomagum*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Seine*, and watered with the two little Riverets of *Robec* and *Reinelle*, which keep it very ſweet and clean. The Citie for the moſt part well built, of large circuit, and great trading, the ſecond for bigneſs, wealth, and beauty in all *France*: antiently the *Metropolis* of this Province, and an Arch-Biſhops See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the twelfth, *Anno* 1501. In the Cathedrall Church hereof (a Reverend but no beautifull fabrick) is to be ſeen the Sepulchre of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the ſixt: which when an envious Courtier perſwaded *Charles* the eighth to deface; *God forbid* (ſaith he) *that I ſhould wrong him being dead*, whom living *all the power of* France *was not able to withſtand*; adding withall, that he deſerved a better Monument than the *Engliſh* had beſtowed upon him. And to ſay truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, ſhort of the merits of the man, and carrying no proportion to ſo

great

great a vertue. 6 *Falaiſe*, upon the River *Ante*, once of ſtrength and note; the dwelling place of *Arlette*, a Skinners Daughter, and the Mother of *William* the Conquerour: whom Duke *Robert*, paſſing through the Town took ſuch notice of (as he beheld her in a dance amongſt other Damoſells) that he ſent for her to accompany him that night in bed, and begot on her *William* the Baſtard, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immodeſty that night ſaid to be ſo great, that either in regard thereof, or in ſpite to her Sonne, the *Engliſh* called all Strumpets by the name of *Harlots*, the word continuing to this day. 7 *Vernaville* (*Vernolium* in *Latine*) in former times accompted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandie* againſt the *French*. Of which it is reported, that when news was brought to *Richard* the firſt, that *Philip* ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, the *French* King, had laid ſiedge unto it, he ſhould ſay theſe words; *I will never turn my back till I have confronted thoſe cowardly Frenchmen*. For performance of which Princely word, he cauſed a paſſage to be broken thorough the Palace of *Weſtminſter*, and came ſo unexpected upon his Enemies, that they raiſed their ſiedge, and haſtned homewards. 8 *Alanſon*, of moſt note for giving the title of Earl and Duke to many Princes of the Royal Familie of *Valois*, beginning in *Charles de Valois*, the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and continuing for eight ſucceſſions till the death of *Charles* the fourth Duke of this line, conferred occaſionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Familie. 9. *Lyſieux*, on the *North-Eaſt* of *Alanſon*, a Biſhops See, the chief Town of the *Lexobii*; as 10 *Caux*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cæſar* in theſe parts. 11. *Eureux*, an Epiſcopal See alſo, by *Ptolomie* called *Mediolanium*, the chief Citie antiently of the *Eburones*, and ſtill a rich and flouriſhing Town; the third in eſtimation of all this Province. 12. *Giſors*, a ſtrong frontire Town towards *France*, whilſt *Normandie* was in the hands of the *Engliſh*, or under its own *Dukes* and *Princes*; notable for the many repulſes given unto the *French*; And 13. *Pontoyſe*, another frontier upon *France*, ſo called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyſe*, which divides *France* from *Normandie*, on which the Town is ſituate, and by which well fortified on that ſide, but taken at the ſecond coming of *Charles* the 7th, after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noyſe only of the coming of the Duke of *York*, commander at that time of the Province, and the *Engliſh* Forces. 14. *Albemarl*, contractedly *Aumerl*, moſt memorable for giving the title of Earl to the Noble Familie *De Fortibus*, Lords of *Holderneſs* in *England*; and of *Duke* to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after Duke of *York*. More towards the Sea 15. S. *Valeries*, ſeated on a ſmall but ſecure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-Haven*. 16. *Dieppe*, at the mouth of a little River ſo named, opening into a large and capacious Bay; a Town of Trade, eſpecially for the *Newfound-Land*: remarkable for its fidelity to *Henry* the 4th in the midſt of his troubles; When the Confederates of the *Guiſian* faction called the *Holy League*, had outed him of almoſt all the reſt of his Cities, compelled him to betake himſelf hither, (from whence he might more eaſily hoiſe Sail for *England*) and called him in deriſion the *King* of *Dieppe*. 17. *New-Haven*, the Port Town to *Roven* and *Paris*, ſituate at the mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence by great Ships navigable as far as *Roven*; by leſſer unto *Pont de l'Arch*, 70 miles from *Paris*: the Bridge of *Roven* formerly broken down by the *Engliſh*, to ſecure the Town, lying unrepaired to this day by means of the *Pariſians*, for the better trading of their City. By the *French* it is called *Havre de Grace*, and *Franciſcopolis* by the *Latines*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the *Engliſh*) by King *Francis* the firſt, and from thence ſo named. Delivered by the Prince of *Conde* and his faction into the hands of Q. *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of *caution*, for the landing of ſuch forces as ſhe was to ſend to their relief, in the firſt civil War of *France* about Religion: and by the help of the ſame faction taken from her again, as ſoon as their differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weakned for the preſent, but made uncapable of any ſuccours out of *England* for the time to come: and the next year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18. *Harflew* (or *Honflew* as ſome call it) of little notice at the preſent, becauſe not capable of any great ſhipping, nor uſeful in the way of Trade: but famous notwithſtanding in our *Engliſh* Stories, as the firſt Town which that victorious Prince K. *Henry* the 5. attempted and took in in *France*. 19. *Cherburg* (the *Latines* call it *Cæſaris Burgum*, on the Sea ſide alſo, the laſt Town which the *Engliſh* held in the Dukedom of *Normandie*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Eureux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; but being garriſoned by the *Engliſh* for King *Henry* the 6th, it held out a ſiedge of ſeven moneths againſt the forces of *France*. Here are alſo in this Dukedom, the Towns of 20 *Tankerville*, and 21 *Ewe*, which have given the title of Earles to the Noble Families of the *Greyes* and *Bourchiers* in *England*: as alſo thoſe of 22 *Harcourt*, 23 *Longueville*, and 24 *Aumal*, which have given the title of Duke and Earl, to ſome of the beſt Houſes in *France*.

Normandie.

There belonged alſo to this Dukedom, but rather as ſubject to the Dukes of *Normandie*, than part of *Normandie* it ſelf, the Countie of PERCH; ſituate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beauſſe*, of which now reckoned for a part. It gave the title of *Counteſs* to *Eufemia*, the baſe Daughter of King *Henry* the firſt: and was divided into the higher and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Negent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch Govet*, or the lower *Perch*. 2. *Mortaigne*, or *Moriton*, of moſt note in the higher *Perch*, eſpecially for giving the title of an Earl; to *John*, the youngeſt Sonne of King *Henry* the 2d, after King of *England*; as in the times ſucceeding to the Lord *Edmund Beaufort*, after Duke of *Somerſet*.

But to return again to the Countrie of *Normandie*, the antient Inhabitants thereof were the *Caletes*, *Eburones*, *Lexobii*, *Abrincantes*, ſpoken of before; the *Bello caſſi*, or *Venelo caſſi* about *Rover*; the *Salares* and *Baiocenſes* about *Sees* and *Bayeux*: all conquered by the *Romans*, afterwards by the

Normandie.

the *French*, and the *French* by the *Normans*. Theſe laſt a people of the *North*, inhabiting thoſe Countries which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Swethland*, and *Norwey*: united in the name of *Normans*, in regard of their *Northernly* ſituation; as in our Hiſtorie and deſcription of thoſe Kingdoms we ſhall ſhew more fully. Out of thoſe parts they made their firſt irruptions about the year 700. when they ſo ranſacked and plagued the *maritime Towns* of *France*, that it was inſerted in the Letany, *From Plague, Peſtilence, and the furie of the Normans, good Lord, &c.* To quiet theſe people, and to ſecure himſelf, *Charles* the *Simple*, gave them, together with the Soveraigntie of the Earldom of *Bretagne*, a part of *Neuſtria* (by them ſince called *Normannia*.) Their firſt *Duke* was *Rollo*, An. 900. from whom in a direct line, the 6th was *William* the Baſtard, Conquerour, and King of *England*, An. 1067. After this, *Normandie* continued *Engliſh* till the dayes of King *John*: when *Philip Auguſtus* ſeized on all his Eſtates in *France*, as forfeitures, An. 1202. The *Engliſh* then poſſeſſing the Dukedoms of *Normandie* and *Aquitaine*; the Earldoms of *Anjou*, *Tourcine*, *Maine*, *Poicton*, and *Limoſin*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Country, than the Kings of *France* themſelves poſſeſſed. The *Engliſh* after this recovered this Dukedom by the valour of King *Henry* the 5th, and having held it 30. years, loſt it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the ſixt: the *Engliſh* then diſtracted with domeſtick factions. After which double Conqueſt of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* diſtruſting the affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withall a ſtubborn and untractable people, have miſerably oppreſſed them with tolls and taxes, keeping them alwaies poor and in low condition: inſomuch, as it may be ſaid of the generalitie of them, that they are the moſt *beggerly* people that ever had the luck to live in ſo rich a Countrie. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of *Normandie*.

912. 1 *Rollo* of *Norwey*, made the firſt *Duke* of *Normandie* by *Charles* the *Simple*; by whoſe perſwaſion baptized, and called *Robert*.
917. 2 *William* ſurnamed *Longeſpee*, from the length of his Sword.
942. 3 *Richard* the Sonne of *Longeſpee*.
980. 4 *Richard* the II. Sonne of the former.
1026. 5 *Richard* the III. Sonne of *Richard* the 2d.
1028. 6 *Robert* the Brother of *Richard* the 3d.
1035. 7 *William* the baſe Sonne of *Robert*, ſubdued the Realm of *England*; from thence called the *Conquerour*.
1093. 8 *Robert* II. eldeſt Sonne of *William* the *Conquerour*, put by the Kingdom of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refuſed the Crown of *Hieruſalem*, then newly conquered by the forces of the *Chriſtian* Princes of the Weſt. Outed at laſt, impriſoned and deprived of ſight by his Brother *Henry*, he lived a miſerable life in the Caſtle of *Cardiff*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Gloceſter*.
1102. 9 *Henry* the firſt King of *England*.
1135. 10 *Stephen* King of *England*, and *D.* of *Normandie*.
11 *Hen:* *Plantagenet* *D.* of *Normandie*, and after King of *England*, of that name the ſecond.
1161. 12 *Hen:* the III. ſurnamed *Court-mantle*, Sonne of *Hen:* the 2d. made *D.* of *Normandie* by his Father.
1189. 13 *Rich:* IV. ſurnamed *Cure de Lyon*, King of *England*, and *D.* of *Normandie*, Sonne of *Henry* the ſecond.
1199. 14 *John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of *England*, and *D.* of *Normandie*, outed of his eſtates in *France* by King *Philip Auguſtus*, An. 1202. before whom he was accuſed of the murder of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the ditches of the Caſtle of *Rowen*, where he was impriſoned; but ſentenced *cauſa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this, *Normandie* ſtill remained united to the Crown of *France* (the title only being borne by *John de Valoys*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the 5th (during the life time of his Father) til the conqueſt of it by the valour of K. *Hen:* the 5th, A. 1420. which was 218 years after it had been ſeized on by King *Philip Auguſtus*, and having been holden by the *Engliſh* but 30 years, was loſt again An. 1450 in the unfortunat Reign of King *Henry* the ſixt. Never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, ſaving that *Lewis* the 11th, the better to content the confederate Princes, conferred it in *Appennage* on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, An. 1465. but within two Moneths after took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, which lay further off from his Aſſociates.

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times, I can hardly ſay. That they were very fair and great appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who ſaith, that he had ſeen raiſed in *Normandie* 95000 li. Sterling money, which was a vaſt ſum of money in thoſe times. As alſo by this teſtimonie of the *D.* of *Burgundie*, who held King *Lewis* the 11th to be weakned a whole third part in his eſtate, by giving *Normandie* in portion to the *D.* of *Berry*. Now they amount unto as much as the Kings *Treaſurers* and *Toll-maſters* are pleaſed to draw out of it,

The Arms of *Normandie* were *Gules*, two *Leopards Or*, which with the ſingle *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Dutchie* of *Aquitaine*, make the Arms of *England*.

BRETAGNE.

Bretagne.

BRETAGNE is bounded on the East with *Normandie* and the Countie of *Maine*; on the South with *Anjou* and *Poictou*; on all other parts with the *English* or *Gallick* Ocean. Watered upon the South side with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but so as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lieth on the South side of that River, betwixt it and *Poictou*.

It was first called *Armorica* from its situation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new name, is not well agreed on. The generall opinion is, that it took this name from the neighbouring *Britans* brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling against the Emperour *Gratian*, Anno 385. by whom this Province was subdued, and from them named *Britannia Minor*, Little *Britain*: An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of this People hath still no small affinitie with the *Welch* or *British*; there being a tradition also, that the *Britans* who first came over hither and maried the Women of this Countrie, cut out their tongues for fear they should corrupt the Language of their posterity. And to this Conquest by the *Britans* these old Verses give some further Countenance,

Vicit Aremoricas *animosa* Britannia *Gentes*,
Et dedit imposito nomina prisca jugo.
That is to say,
Gaul-Armorick, *the* Britans *overcame*,
And to the conquered Province gave their name.

Which notwithstanding, the most probable opinion seemeth to be that it took this name from the *Britanni*, an old *Gallick* People, mentioned by *Plinie* in *Gaul-Belgick*, retiring hither on the invasions and incursions of the barbarous Nations: though possibly those *Britanni* of *Gallia-Belgica* might be aswell some Colonie of the *Iland-Britans*, as the *Belgæ* a great Nation in the Isle of *Britain*, are said to have been a People of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reason is, because there was no Author before *Geofrie* of *Monmouth* who takes notice of this transporting of the *Insular-Britans* by the Tyrant *Maximus*: no antient Author *Greek* or *Latine* making mention of it. And for the *Welch* or *British* words which are still remaining in the language, they are conceived to be no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* tongue; which was originally the same with the antient *British*, as is elswhere proved.

The Province is in compass 200 *French* Leagues: Pleasant and fruitfull, beautified with many shadie woods, and spacious Downs; sufficiently well stored with all manner of grain, but destitute of Wine and the choicer fruites by reason of the Northerly situation of it. Divided commonly into *Hault* or *High Bretagne*, and *Basse* or *Low Bretagne*: the first containing the more Eastern, and the last the Western parts hereof. Neither of the two much furnished with navigable or notable Rivers, the defect of which the neighbourhood of the Sea supplieth, affording more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens, those of most note in the *Higher Bretagne*, are 1 *S. Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every high-water it is incompassed. A Bishops See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French* and *Spanish*, who use here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes spoyled by the *English* in their Wars with *France*, especially since the time of King *Henry* the seventh. 2 *Blavet*, a safe but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the same name also. 3 *S. Briene*, (by the *Latines* called *Fanum Sancti Brioci*) a Bishops See, and a well-traded Port, seated upon the *English* Channel. 4 *Vannes*, a Bishops See also, situate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Vilain*; the chief Town of the *Veneti*, whom *Cæsar* placeth in this tract, and makes them to be the mightiest People of all the *Armoricans*, strongest in Shipping, and best seen in Affairs at Sea. 5 *Croissie*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the onely Haven of this Part on the *Gallick* Ocean. Then in *Low Bretagne*, or the more Western parts hereof, there is 6 *Brest*, seated upon a spacious Bay of the Western Ocean, the Key and Bulwark of this Countrie, and the goodliest Harbour of all *France*. 7 *Morlais*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8 *S. Pol de Leon*, and 9 *Treguer*, both Bishops Sees, both situate on the Sea-shore, and both the chief Towns of the *Ossismi*, whom *Ptolomie* and *Strabo* place upon this Coast: the first of them neighboured by the *Promontorie* which they call *Le Four*, the *Govæum* of *Ptolomie*. 10 *Kemper Corentin*, a Bishops See also, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cournovaille*, situate not far from the *Foreland* which they call *Penmarch*, opposite to *Le Four* spoken of before. A Sea Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can find. 11 *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not far from *Brest*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1 *Nantes*, the principall Citie of the *Nannetes*, (by *Ptolomie* called *Condivincinum*) a large, fair, strong, and populous Citie, seated upon the *Loir*, a Bishops See, and the *Metropolis* of *Bretagne*. 2 *Rennes*, antiently the chief Town of the *Rhedones* (called *Condate* by *Ptolomie*) now a Bishops See, and the Parliament Citie for this Countie, established here Anno 1553. which maketh it very populous, and of great Resort, though not fully two miles in compass. 3 *Dol*, an Episcopall Citie also, but unwholesomely seated amongst Marishes. 4 *Dinan*, a rich and pleasant Town on the River *Rance*. 5 *L'Amballe*, the chief Town of the *L'Ambiliates*, spoken

of

Bretagne. of by *Cæsar*. 6 *Rohan*, the title and inheritance of the Dukes of *Rohan*, descended from a branch of the Ducall Familie of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the second Daughter of Duke *Francis* the first, and Wife of *John* then Viscount of *Rohan*. 7 *Ansenis*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendosme*, and the head of his Estates in *Bretagne*. Of which possessed in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of the Duke of *Mercoeur* by the Heir of *Martignes*, another of the branches of this Ducall Familie. 8 *Chasteau-Briant*, a strong Peece on the borders of *Normandie*. 9 *Clisson*, the chief Town of the Dutchie of *Raiz*, being that part of *Bretagne* which lieth on the South-side of the *Loir*, a strong Town, and fortified with a very good Castle.

The *Britans*, whosoever they were in their first Originall, were questionless one of the first Nations that possessed any part of *Gaul*, after the Conquest of the *Romans*. Governed at first by their own Kings, the most considerable of which was that *Aldroenus* or *Auldran*, the Sonne of *Solomon*, who at the time of the *Insular-Britans*, then distressed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, (as *Geoffrie* of *Monmouth* telleth the storie) sent over *Constantine* his Brother with a complete Army to their aid; who having valiantly repulsed the Enemy, was made King of *Britain*, Anno 433. Of whose posterity more there. Those of *Armorica* being broken by the puissance of *Charles* the *Great*, abandoned the name of Kings, and satisfied themselves with the title of Earls, assumed first by *Alain le Rebre*, Anno 874. but as some say, Anno 859. which was somewhat sooner. By *Peter* of *Dreux* the 16th Earl, chalenging his Estate in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Sister of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Constance*, by *Guy* of *Thouars* her 3d Husband, the better to secure his title, this Earldom was made subject to the Vassallage of the Crown of *France*, in the time of *Lewis* the 9th, by whom *John* called the *Red*, the Sonne of this *Peter*, was created the first Duke of *Bretagne*. Yet notwithstanding this subjection to the Kings of *France*, the Dukes hereof reserved unto themselves the Sovereign powers, as to write themselves *By the Grace of God*, the privilege of coyning Gold, &c. and stood so high upon their termes, that *Francis* the last Duke, denyed to do his Homage to *Charles* the 7th, either upon his Knees, or without his Sword, according to the former custome. For which being quarrelled by *Lewis* the eleventh, the Sonne of *Charles*, who was at better leisure to pursue the business than his Father was, he joyned himself with *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundie* in a War against him; and thereby drew upon himself that ruine, which he indeavoured to avoid. For in Conclusion, *Charles* of *Berry*, as it was thought, was poysoned; *Charles* of *Burgundie* lost his life at the Battle of *Nancie*, 1476. and a great part of his Estate was conquered by the *French* King. And *Francis* this Duke having embarked himself in the same troublous Ocean, must needs suffer shipwrack with his Copartners. The *French* King invadeth *Bretagne*; The Duke overcharged with melancholy, dies, 1488. leaving *Anne*, his Daughter and Heir, in the power of *Charles* the 8th, the Sonne and Successour of that *Lewis*: who contracts a mariage with the Orphan, and uniteth *Bretagne* to *France*. There were many impediments which might have hindred this mariage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. First, *Charles* himself had been formerly contracted to the Archduke *Maximilians* Daughter: but this he held void, because the young Lady was not of age at the time of the Contract. 2 *Anne* the Dutchess was also contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held unvalid also, because that being his Homager, she could not bestow her self without his consent. 3 *Maximilian* had by proxie maried her, which mariage he consummated by a Ceremonie in those dayes unusuall. For his Ambassadour attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the same within the Sheets of the Dutchess, taking possession thereby of her Bed and Bodie. But *Charles* consulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Consummation was rather an invention of Court, than any way firm by the Lawes of the Church, and therefore of no power to hinder his pursute of this mariage, so advantagions to his Crown. What else remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of *France*, we shall see anon: having first looked over the Succession of those Princes, who under severall Titles have governed the Estate thereof, according to the best light we can get from Stories.

Kings of the *Britans* of *Gaul-Armorick*.

385. 1 *Conan* placed here by *Maximus*.
2 *Grallon*, Sonne of *Conan*.
3 *Solomon*, Sonne of *Grallon*.
4 *Auldran*, or *Aldroenus*, the Sonne of *Solomon*.
5 *Bodis*, Sonne of *Auldran*.
6 *Hoel*, Sonne of *Bodis*.
7 *Hoel* II. Sonne of *Hoel* the first.
8 *Alain*, Sonne of *Hoel* the second.
9 *Hoel* III. Sonne of *Alain*.
10 *Solomon* II. Sonne of *Hoel* the third.
11 *Alain* II. Grandchild to *Solomon* the second, the last King of *Bretagne* of the race of *Conan*: who dying without Issue, left his Kingdom unto many *Competitors*, by whom distracted into many petit Tyrannies, and at last subdued by *Charles* the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, who next succeeded: yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Insomuch, as after the murther of two or three Usurpers of the Royall title, *Alain*, surnamed *Le Rebre*, laid aside that invidious name of King, and would be called only Earl of *Bretagne*. His Successours follow.

Earls

Earles and Dukes of *Bretagne*. *Anjon.*

874 1 *Alain le Rebre.*
2 *Indicael & Colodeck*, the Sonnes of *Alain.*
3 *Mathrudon*, Sonne in Law of *Alain le Rebre.*
4 *Alain* II. Sonne of *Mathrudon.*
5 *Conan*, descended from King *Solomon* the 3d.
6 *Geofrie*, Sonne of *Conan.*
7 *Alain* III. Sonne of *Geofrie.*
8 *Conan* II. Sonne of *Alain.*
9 *Hoel*, Sisters Sonne of *Conan* the 2d.
10 *Alain* IV. called *Fergent*, Sonne of *Hoel.*
11 *Conan* III. Sonne of *Alain:*
12 *Eudon*, Husband of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Conan.*
1131. 13 *Conan* IV. Sonne of *Eudon.*
1172. 14 *Geofrie* II. Sonne of *Henry* the 2d, King of *England*, Husband of *Constance*, Daughter and Heir of *Conan* the 4th.
1186. 15 *Arthur*, Sonne of *Geofry.*
1202. 16 *Peter* of *Brenx.*
1250. 17 *John*, the first Duke of *Bretagne.*
1287. 18 *John* II. Sonne of *John.*
1305. 19 *Arthur* II. Sonne of *John* the 2d.
1312. 20 *John* III. Sonne of *Arthur* 2d.
1341. 21 *John*, Earl of *Montfort*, Brothers Sonne of *Arthur.*
1399. 22 *John* V. Sonne of *John* of *Montfort.*
1442. 23 *Francis*, the Sonne of *John* the fift.
1450. 24 *Peter*, the Brother of Duke *Francis.*
1457. 25 *Arthur* III. second Sonne of *John* Earl of *Montfort.*
1458. 26 *Francis* II. Sonne of *Richard* Earl of *Estampes*, the Brother of Duke *Arthur* the 3d. the last Duke of *Bretagne*, of whom sufficiently before.
1484. 27 *Charles* the 8th, *French* King, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Francis* the 2d.
1498. 28 *Lewis* the 12th, *French* King, succeeded on the death of *Charles*, in the right of the said *Anne*, whom he took to Wife: and to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himself from the Ladie *Ioane* his former Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the 11th.
1515. 29 *Francis* the III. of *Bretagne*, and the first of *France*, succeeded in the Dukedom in right of *Claude* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Lewis* the 12th, and *Anne* of *Bretagne*: by whom being made the Father of so many Children, that he had little cause to fear that the Crown would be separated from his House, in the year 1532 being the 17th of his reign and Government, caused an Act to pass, with the consent of the States of *Bretagne*, for the inseparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of *France*, and by that meanes divested his Posteritie of it. For his male issue failing in King *Henry* the 3d, the rights hereof descended on the Heires generall: that is to say, on *Isabel*, Daughter of *Philip* the 2d of *Spain*, and the Ladie *Isabel* or *Elizabeth* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Henry* the 2d, and neece to the said *Francis* the first; and after her decease (dying without issue) on the Lady *Catharine* her Sister, maried to *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*. For whom when *Philip* of *Spain* claimed this Estate, the *French* pretended a Law against it of their own devising, *viz.* That no Estate being incorporated to that Crown, could be alienedfrom it. A proper Law, and cousin *German* to the *Salique*; but such as served their turn by the help of the *English*, who desired not to have the *Spaniards* so neer Neighbours to them.

Most of our former Earles of *Richmond* were Earles and Dukes of this House. Their Arms were *Ermins.*

THE DVKEDOM OF ANIOV.

THe *DVKEDOM* of *ANJOV*, taking it in the full latitude and extent thereof, is bounded on the East with *La Beausse*; on the West with *Bretagne*; on the North with *Normandie*; and on the South with part of *Berry* and *Poicton*. In which circumference are comprehended the three small Provinces of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; the antient Inhabitants whereof, in the times of the *Romans*, were the *Andes* as *Cesar*, (or the *Andegavii* as *Plinie*) calls them, the *Turones*, and the *Cenomani*, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of *Lugdunensis Tertia.*

The Countrey for the most part is very fruitful and pleasant, especially in *Tourein*; as is the whole tract upon the *Loir*. *Anjou* is somewhat the more hilly, but otherwise little inferiour to *Tourein*, affording plenty of white wines, the best in *France*; and yielding from those Hills above 40 Riverets, falling into the *Loire* from thence, the chief whereof are *Mayenne*, 2 *Vienne*, 3 *Dive*, and 4 *Sartre.*

1 *ANJOV* called *Andegavia* by the *Latines*, is situate in the middest betwixt *Maine* and *Tourein*; so called from the *Andegavi*, the Inhabitants of these parts. Principal Cities are, 1 *Angers*, (by *Ptolomie* called *Iuliomagus*) of a large Circuit, and well built, the See of a Bishop, reckoning in it 15 Parishes besides the Cathedral. It is seated on the River *Sartre* in a very good air, and therefore chosen for the seat of an *Vniversitie* founded here by *Lewis* the 2d *Duke* of *Anjou*, the Sonne of King *John*, Anno 1288. 2 *Beaufort*, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Lancaster*, in which *John* of *Gaunt* so much delighted, that he caused all the Children that he had by *Catharine Swinford*, his third Wife, to be called *Beauforts*: which *Beauforts* were afterward Dukes of *Somerset* and *Exeter*, and Earls of *Dorset*. This Town came to the house of *Lancaster*, by the mariage of *Blanch* of *Artoys*, unto *Edmund* surnamed *Crouchback*, second Son to our *Henry* the 3d, created by

his

Anjou. his Father, the first Earl of *Lancaster*. Memorable in these later times for giving the Title of a Dutchess to Madam *Catharine*, the beloved Mistress of King *Henry* the 4th, by whom she was mother of *Cæsar* now Duke of *Vendosme*, and *Alexander*, not long since the *Grand Prior* of *France*. With reference to which, the second Sonne of the Duke of *Vendosme* is honoured at this present with the title of Duke of *Beaufort*: as the eldest with relation to his Mother was made Duke of *Mercoeur*. 3 *Baugie*, neer which was fought that memorable Battle betwixt the *English* and the *French*, wherein the *English* lost the day, and *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, Brother to *Henry* the fifth, was there unfortunately slain. Anno 1422. 4 *Saumur*, pleasantly situate on the *Loire*, and for long time one of the Cautionarie Towns in the hands of those of the *Reformed* Religion: of whom it is the onely entire Universitie of this Kingdome; especially famous for the learned *Philip du Morney*, Lord of *Plessis*, sometimes the Governour hereof. 5 *Loches*, seated on the River *Indre*, the Castle whereof being mounted on a steep high Rock, is thought to be one of the strongest peeces of all *France*. 6 *La Flesche*, of speciall name at the present for a College of *Jesuits*, one of the faireſt in this Kingdom. The word in the *French* tongue signifieth an Arrow (whence those who make Bowes and Arrowes have the name of *Fleschers*.) At *Nola* in the Realm of *Naples*, there is another College of them, called *D'Arque*, the Bow: On which one wittilie composed this ensuing *distich*;

Arcum Nola dedit, dedit illis alma Sagittam
Gallia: quis Funem, quem meruere, dabit?

That is to say,
Nola *the* Bow, *and* France *the* Shaft *did bring*:
But who shall help them to the Hempen-string.

2 On the South-east of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Berry*, lieth the Countrie of *TOUREIN*, the ancient Seat of the *Turones*: which, for the wholesomnes of the Air, the pleasantnes of the Countrie, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by some called *The Garden of France*. Principall Cities in it, 1 *Amboise*, pleasantly seated on the *Loire*, and beautified with one of the faireſt Castles in *France*, both for the gallantrie of the Building, and beautifulnes of the Prospect. 2 *Tours*, by *Ptolomie* called *Cæsarodunum*, and the *Turonum Civitas* of *Antoninus*; the Metropolis of *Lugdunensis tertia*, and an Archbishops See: a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, situate on the banks of the *Loire*, in a most sweet and pleasing Countrie. Famous in that those of the *Reformed Religion*, from the Gate of S. *Hugo*, at which they used to issue out to their Assemblies in the Fields, had the name of *Hugonots*. Given to them, as some others think, as the Disciples of the night-walking Spirit (or *Robin Goodfellow*) which they call S. *Hugo*, in regard they had their first meetings, for the most part, in the nights; as had the Primitive *Christians* in the times of their Persecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculously) derive the name from the first words of an Apologie which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were *Huc nos venimus*: fancying, that as the *Protestants* did derive that Appellation from the words *Protestantes* and *Protestamur*, so often used by them in their *Apologie* to *Charles* the fifth; so from those words *Huc nos*, came the name of *Hugonots*, or *Huonots*: But more assuredly famous for the great Battle fought neer it by *Charles Martell*, *Mayre* of the Palace, and Father of *Pepin* King of *France*, against an Armie of 400000 *Moors*, led by *Abderamen*, Leiutenant Generall in *Spain*, for *Evelid* or *Iscam* the great *Caliph*: of which 370000 lost their lives in the place, Anno 734. 3 *Laudun*. 4 *Richelieu*, pleasantly seated in a rich and flouriſhing Soil, as the name importeth. Of no great note till the time of the late great Cardinall of *Richelieu*, who took name from hence; by whom it was made one of the neateſt Towns in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the titles of a Dukedom and *Pairrie* of *France*.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for of *Anjou* we shall speak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietarie Earls of the house of *Blais*, conferred by *Hugh Capet* upon *Odon* Earl of *Blais* and *Champagne*, and by him given, together with the Earldom of *Blais*, to *Theobald* or *Thibald* his Eldest Sonne, (his second Sonne named *Stephen* succeeding in *Champagne*) who in the year 1043. was vanquished and slain by *Charles Martell* Earl of *Anjou*, and this Province seized on by the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours* his ordinarie Seat and Residence. Part of which Earldom it continued, till the seizure of *Anjou*, and all the reſt of the *English* Provinces in *France*, on the sentence passed upon King *John*. After which time dismembred from it, it was conferred on *John*, the fourth Sonne of King *Charles* the sixth, with the stile and title of Duke of *Tourein*: and he deceasing without Issue, it was bestowed with the same title on *Charles* the eldest Sonne of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* (in the life of his Father:) the same who afterwards suceeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken Prisoner by the *English* at the Battle of *Agincourt*, kept Prisoner 25 years in *England*, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis* the 12th.

3 On the North side of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandie*, lieth the Province of *MAINE*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1 *Mans*, *Cenomanensium Civitas* in *Antoninus*, by *Ptolomie* called *Vindinum*; seated on the meeting of *Huine*, and *Sartre*; the principall of the Province, and a Bishops See: most memorable in the elder times for giving the title of an Earl to that famous *Rowland*, the Sisters Sonne of *Charlemaigne*, one of the *Twelve Peers* of *France*; (the Subject of many notable Poems under the name of *Orlando Inamorato*, *Orlando Furioso*, besides many of the old *Romances*)

who

who was Earl of *Mans*. 2 *Mayenne*, on the banks of a river of the ſame name, (*Meduana* in *Latine*) the title of the ſecond branch of the Houſe of *Guiſe*, famous for *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, who held out for the *League* againſt *Henry* the 4th; A Prince not to be equalled in the Art of War, onely unfortunate in employing it in ſo ill a cauſe. 3 *Vitrin*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4 *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*: of note for giving both name and title to the Earls of *Laval*, an antient Familie, allied unto the houſes of *Vendoſme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and others of the beſt of *France*. Few elſe of any note in this Countie, which once ſubſiſting of its ſelf under its own naturall Lords and Princes, was at laſt united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the mariage of the Lady *Guiburge*, Daughter and Heir of *Helie* the laſt Earl hereof, to *Foulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, Anno 1083. or thereabouts: the Fortunes of which great Eſtate it hath alwayes followed. Anjou.

But as for *Anjou* it ſelf, the principall part of this goodly Patrimonie, it was by *Charles* the *Bald* conferred on *Robert* a *Saxon* Prince, for his valour ſhewn againſt the *Normans*, Anno 870. Which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of *France*, *Richard* Duke of *Burgundie*, and *Robert* who ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*: Competitor with *Charles* the *Simple* for the Crown it ſelf, as the next Heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the purſute of this great quarrell, he left this Earldom, with the title of Earl of *Paris*, and his pretenſions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his Sonne, ſurnamed the *Great*: who to make good his claim to the Crown, againſt *Lewis* the 4th, Sonne of *Charles* the *Simple*, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the Countrie of *Gaſtinois*, on *Geofrie* ſurnamed *Ghryſogonelle*, a renowned Warriour, and a great ſtickler in his cauſe, in whoſe race it continued neer 300 years. How the two Counties of *Main* and *Touraine* were joyned to it, hath been ſhewn before: *Geofrie* the Sonne of *Foulk* the 3d, maried *Maude*, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt of *England*, and Widow of *Henry* the 4th Emperour: from whom proceeded *Henry* the ſecond, King of *England*, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *Iohn* his Sonne, forfeiting his Eſtates in *France* (as the *French* pretended) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown: and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis* the 9th, on his Brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrix* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*, and by Pope *Urban* the 4th was made King of *Naples* and *Sicilie*. Afterwards it was made a Dukedom by King *Charles* the fifth, in the perſon of *Lewis* of *France* his ſecond Brother, to whom this fair Eſtate was given, as ſecond Sonne of King *Iohn* of *France*, the Sonne of *Philip de Valois*, and conſequently the next Heir to *Charles de Valois* the laſt Earl hereof (the King his Brother yeelding up all his right unto him.) Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis* the 11th. The Earls and Dukes hereof having been veſted with the Diadems of ſeverall Countries, follow in this Order.

The Earls of *Anjou* of the Line of *Saxonie*.

870. 1 *Robert* of *Saxonie*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*.

875. 2 *Robert* II. Competitour for the Crown of *France* with *Charles* the *Simple*, as Brother of *Eudes* the laſt King.

922. 3 *Hugh* the *great*, Lord of *Gaſtinois*, Earl of *Paris*, Conſtable of *France*, and Father of *Hugh Capet*.

926. 4 *Geofrie Ghryſogonelle*, by the Donation of *Hugh* the *great*, whoſe partie he had followed in the War of *France*, with great fidelitie and courage.

938. 5 *Foulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, the Sonne of *Geofrie*.

987. 6 *Geofrie* II. ſurnamed *Martell*, for his great valour.

1047. 7 *Geofrie* III. Nephew of *Geofrie* 2. by one of his Siſters.

1075. 8 *Foulk* II. Brother of *Geofrie* 3. gave *Gaſtinois*, (which was his proper inheritance) to King *Philip* the firſt; that by his help he might recover the Earldom of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his Brother *Geofrie*.

1080. 9 *Geofrie* IV. Sonne of *Foulk* 2.

1083. 10 *Foulk* III. Brother of *Geofrie*; King of *Hieruſalem* in the right of *Meliſend* his Wife.

1143. 11 *Geofris* V. ſurnamed *Plantagenet*.

1150. 12 *Henry* the II. King of *England*, Sonne of Earl *Geofrie* and *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of King *Henry* the firſt.

1162 13 *Geofrie* VI. third Son of King *Henry* the 2d, made Earl of *Anjou* on his mariage with *Conſtance* the Heir of *Bretagne*.

1186. 14 *Arthur* Sonne of *Geofrie* and *Conſtance*.

1202. 15 *Iohn*, King of *England*, ſucceeded on the death of *Arthur*, diſpoſſed of his Eſtates in *France* by *Philip Auguſtus*, immediatly on the death of *Arthur*.

La Beausse.

Earls and Dukes of *Anjou*, of the Line of *France*.

1262. 1 *Charles*, Brother of King *Lewis* the 9th. Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, King of *Naples* and *Sicilia*, &c.

1315. 2 *Charles* of *Valois*, Sonne of *Philip* the 3d, Earl of *Anjou* in right of his Wife, Neece of the former *Charles*, by his Sonne and Heir of the same name; the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King.

1318. 3 *Lewis* of *Valois*, the second Sonne of *Charles*, died without Issue, Anno 1325.

1376. 4 *Lewis* of *France*, the 2d Sonne of King *Iohn*, the Sonne of *Philip de Valois*, created the first Duke of *Anjou* by King *Charles* his Brother; and adopted by Queen *Ioan* of *Naples*, King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hierusalem*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1385. 5 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, and *Maine*, titularie King of *Sicil*, *Naples*, and *Hierusalem*.

1416. 6 *Lewis* IV. fiue-sour to his Father in Estate and Titles.

1430 7 *Renè*, the Brother of *Lewis*, by the adoption of Qu. *Ioan* the 2d, was for a while possessed of *Naples*, but presently outed by *Alfonso of Aragon*, and died the titularie K. of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hierusalem*; the Father of Queen *Margarite*, Wife of *Henry* the sixt, Duke of *Bar* in right of *Violant* his Mother.

1480. 8 *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, Nephew to *Renè* by his 3d Brother *Charles*, at his decease left *Anjou*, and all the rest of his Estates, to King *Lewis* the 11th. Anno 1481. Since which never otherwise aliened, than as an honourarie title of the third Sonne of *France*.

It is to be observed here (according to our method in other places) that *Renè* King of *Sicil*, &c. and Duke of *Anjou*, instituted an Order of *Knighthood*, called of the *Croissant*; the Knights whereof carried a *Crescent*, or Half-Moon, on their right Armes, with this motto, *L'Os en Croissant*, encouraging them thereby to seek the increase of valour and reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedom were *Fraunce*, a Border *Gules*.

7 LA BEAUSSE.

LA BEAUSSE is bounded on the East with *France* specially and ordinarily so called, and part of *Champagne*; on the West, with *Anjou*, *Maine*, *Tourein*, and some part of *Berry*; on the North, with *Normandie*; and on the South, with *Bourbonois*, and the rest of *Berry*. It is called *Belsia* in Latine Writers; both names derived from the pleasantnes and beauties of it.

The Principall Nations of the whole in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greatest part, and the *Samnite* neer the *Loire*; part of *Gallia Celtica*, and cast into the Province of *Lugdunensis quarta* by the Emperour *Constantine*. Divided by the *French* into the *Higher*, the *Lower*, and the *Intermediate*.

1 The *HIGHER BEAUSSE* is that part which lieth next to *Normandie*, of which the principall Towns are, 1 *Drenx*, seated upon the River *Eureux*, supposed to be the Seat of the antient *Druides*, who held here their *Parliaments* or *Sessions* for administration of Justice. The title and inheritance of that *Peter* of *Drenx*, who succeeded *Arthur*, the Sonne of *Geofrie Plantagenet*, in the Earldom of *Bretagne*. 2 *Montfort*, an Earldom, the title and estate of *Iohn* Earl of *Montfort*, surnamed the *Valiant*, who succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, by the Aid of the *English*, Anno 1341. 3 *Chartres*, called anciently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by *Ptolomie*, *Autricum*) seated upon the *Eureux* also, from whence the Countrey hereabouts was called *Le Pais Chartrain*; A Bishops See, and one of the *Vidamates* of *France*. Which honour as it is peculiar to the *French* onely; so *Milles* in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue of Honour*, will have but four at all in *France*, viz: those of *Amiens*, *Chalons*, *Gerberoy*, and this of *Chartres*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them, as at *Rhemes*, *Mans*, &c. and formerly as many as it had Bishops: the *Vicedominus* or *Vidame* being to the Bishop in his *Temporals*, as the *Chancellour* in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice Comites* (*Viscounts*) were antiently to the *Provinciall Earls* in their Courts of Judicature.

2 The *LOWER BEAUSSE* is that which lieth towards *Bourbonois*; and is subdivided into *Sologne*, and *Orleanois*. In *SOLOGNE*, which lieth close to *Burbon*, the chief places of note, are, 1 *Remorantin*, seated on the *Souldre*, the chief Town of this Tract. 2 *Mallenzay*. 3 *La Ferte*, or *La Ferte S. Bernard*, of which nothing memorable. In *ORLEANOYS*, which lieth more Northwards upon the River of *Loire*, are, 1 *Iargeau*, a Town once of very great strength, and one of the out-works of *Orleans*. 2 *Cleri*, called also *Cleri* of *Nostre-dame*, from the Church there built unto *our Ladie*. 3 *Tury*; and 4 *Angerville*, both in the ordinary Road betwixt *Paris* and 5 *Orleans*, the principall Citie of all *Beausse*, called *Genabum* in the time of *Cesar*; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperour *Aurelius*, Anno 276; from thence named *Aurelia*, the Countrey round about it *Aurelianensis*, now *Orleans*, and *Orleanoys*. The Countrie generally very fruitfull, and yeelding a most excellent and delicious Wine; Which, for the strength, and intoxicating power thereof

thereof, is baniſhed the *French* Kings Cellar by eſpecial *Edict*. The City very pleaſantly ſeated on the River *Loyre*, well built, ſituate in a ſweet Air, and planted with a civil and ingenious People, who are ſaid to ſpeak the beſt language of any in *France*. For a time it was the chief Seat of a diſtinct Kingdom, (according to the unprovident humour of the *Merovigxians*) the lot of *Clodomire* Sonne of *Clovis* the *Great*, and *Guntram* Sonne of *Clotaire*, both Kings of *Orleans*, as alſo was *Theodorick*, the ſecond Sonne of *Childebert* King of *Mets*, on the death of *Gunthram*. But *Sigibert* his Sonne being vanquiſhed by *Clotaire* the ſecond, this Kingdom, extending to the ſhores of the *Aquitaine* Ocean, was added unto that of *France*. *Orleans* ſince that time content with a lower title, hath of late often times with greater prudence, been made the honorarie title of the ſecond Sonnes of *France* called Dukes hereof. It is a See Epiſcopal, a Baillywick, or *Seige Præſidial*, and an Vniverſitie. The *See Epiſcopal* founded in the Church of St. *Croſſe*, miſerably ruined by the *Hugonots* in the civil Warrs, out of meer hatred to the name. The *Seige Preſidical* ſetled here by King *Henry* the 2d, 1551. for the eaſe of his Subjects of theſe parts, in ſutes not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The Vniverſitie erected by King *Philip le Bel*, An. 1312 though to ſpeak properly it be an *Hall* only for the reading of the *Civil Lawes*, the only learning there profeſſed, and for that conſiderable. A Town now not of ſo great ſtrength as in former times, when for ſome moneths it held out againſt the whole power of the *Engliſh*, reſcued from them at laſt by the valour of *Ioan* the *Virgin*, whoſe *Statua*, (like a man of Arms) is ſtill preſerved on the Bridge-gate of this Citie; neer which great *Montacute* E. of *Salisburie* had his fatal blow. *Bury.*

The *MIDDLE* or intermediate *BEAVSSE* lieth betwixt the former, in which the places of chief note are, 1 *Blois*, ſeated alſo on the *Loire*, in a ſound air, and fruitful Countrie: the Nurſerie for the moſt part of the Kings Children, for that cauſe much reſorted to by the Nobilitie, and honoured ſometimes with the reſidence of the Kings themſelves: it being in the Councel-Chamber of the Kings houſe here, that *Henry* of *Lorrein*, Duke of *Guiſe*, the chief contriver of the terrible *Maſſacre* at *Paris*, and Authour of the *holy League*, was ſlain by the command of King *Henry* the 3d, Anno 1589. 2 *Chaſteau-Dun*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunois*, (the honour and eſtate of *Iohn* Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Baſtard* of *Orleans*, one of the beſt Souldiers of his time, and ſo approved by his exploits againſt the *Engliſh*) mounted upon the top of an high hill, at the confluence of the *Loire*, and *Aigre*, 3 *Vendoſme* (*Vindocinum* in *Latine*) the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendoſme*; not otherwiſe of note than for the Earles and Dukes which have born this Title: of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now regnant, I have thought fit to adde the enſuing Catalogue:

Earles and Dukes of *Vendoſme*.

1386. 1 *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Grandchild of *Lewis* the firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, the firſt Earl of *Vendoſme* of this Familie.

1432. 2 *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, a Confederate with *Ioan* the *Virgin* in her actions againſt the *Engliſh*.

1446. 3 *Iohn* of *Bourbon* the II. from whom deſcended the Princes of *Roch-ſur-yon*, and the Dukes of *Montpenſier*.

1472. 4 *Francis* of *Bourbon*.

1495. 5 *Charles* of *Bourbon*, the firſt Duke of *Vendoſme*, from whoſe youngeſt Son called *Lodowick*, or *Lewis*, deſcend the now Princes of *Conde*, and Earls of *Soiſſons*.

1537. 6 *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and King of *Navarre*.

1562. 7 *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and King of *Navarre*, afterwards King of *France* alſo by the name of *Henry* the 4th:

8 *Cæſar de Vendoſme*, one of the Sonnes of *Henry* the 4th, by the Ducheſs of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendoſme*, and once deſigned his Succeſſour in the Crown of *France*: Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, maried to the Daughter and Heir of *Philibert Emanuel*, D. of *Mercoeur*, (a younger branch of the houſe of *Lorrein*) poſſeſſed of a fair and goodly eſtate in the Dukedom of *Bretagne* in the right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the houſe of *Martignes* (a branch of the Familie of thoſe Dukes.) By means whereof the Duke of *Vendoſme* hath not only a large inheritance, but great autoritie in that Countrie.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendoſme*, were and are, *Azure*, ſix Flower de Lyces *Or*, 3. 2. 1.

8 *BERRY*.

BERRY is bounded on the North, with *La Beauſſe*; on the South, with *Limoſin*; on the Eaſt, with *Heurepoix*, (part of *France* ſpecially ſo called) and ſome part of *Bourbonnois*; on the Weſt, with *Poictou*, and *Toureine* in the Dukedom of *Anjou*. In *Latine* called *Biturigum Regio*, from the *Bituriges*, the old Inhabitants of this tract; by *Plinie*, *Strabo* and ſome others, called the *Bituriges Cubi*, to difference them from the *Bituriges Vbiſci* dwelling about *Bourdeaux*.

The Countrie watred in the Eaſt with the River *Faye*; in the South with the *Covre*; in the North with the *Cher*, and in the inland parts with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Eure*: and others which we ſhall meet withall anon, of no great note, but ſuch as much conduce to the fruitfulneſs of it; affording it the benefit of fat paſtures, and flouriſhing Meadowes; which breed great multitudes of Cattel,

Berry.

tell. and ſuch flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a man for lying in exceſs of numbers, they uſe to ſay, *Phy Sir, there are not ſo many Sheep in* Berry.

It containeth in it 33 walled Towns, the chief whereof are, 1 *Bourges*, a Town of great ſtrength by nature, and as well fortified by Art; ſituate in a low Flat, amongſt deep impaſſable Bogs and Mariſhes, cauſed by the over-flowings of the *Auron*, *Yeure*, *Molon*, and *Aurette*; ſmall Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together. By means whereof it may be eaſily drowned at the approach of an enemy: for that cauſe made the faſtneſs and retreat of *Charles* the 7th, in his long Wars againſt the *Engliſh*, poſſeſſed at that time of *Paris* and the greateſt part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time fain to feaſt it here with a Rump of Mutton and a Chick, and that but upon high daies neither: from his conſtant abode here, and that withall he had been Duke of this Countrie, in the life of his three elder Brethren, by the *Engliſh* in deriſion called King of *Berry*. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Arch-Biſhop, a Seige Preſidial, and one of the beſt Univerſities in *France*, eſpecially for the ſtudie of the Civil Lawes; firſt founded by K. *Lewis* the 9th, and afterwards reſtored or perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, the Brother of King *Lewis* the 11th. Some fabulous founders, and as ridiculous originations have been thought of for it; as that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grand-child of *Noah*, by whom called *Bytogyges*, which in the corruption of the following times, came (forſooth) unto *Bituriges*: which Etymologie were it as dear bought, as it is farre-fetched, might be good for Ladies, and then it would be good for ſomewhat. Others no leſs abſurdly, will have it called *Bituris*, *quaſi Bi-Turris*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here; one of the two, in part ſtill ſtanding: and unto this, they ſay, alludeth an old *Grammarian*, thus,

Turribus à binis inde vocor Bituris.
From two Towers which were builded here
The name of *Bituris* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges* (the *Biturigum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that name in the diviſion of old *Gaul* by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania Prima*, of which this Countrie was a part. 2 *Viarron*, or *Viarzon*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Woods, Vines and Rivers; the Rivers *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Cher*, and *Yeure*, meeting hereabouts. Built in or neer the place of the old *Avaricum*, a town of great note and ſtrength in the time of *Caſar*: the Revolt whereof gave ſuch a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to ſtretch his wits and valour on the verie tenter-hooks, before it was again recovered. 3 *Concreſſant* on the River *Sonldre*, beautified with a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle. 4 *Chaſteau Roux* on the River *Indre*; of which little memorable. 5 *Iſſaudun*, on the River *Theo*, the Bailliage for that part of the Countrie. 6 *Montfalcon*, an antient Baronie. 7 *Argenton*, on the River *Creuſe*, the title and eſtate of *Philip de Comines*, hence called *Seigneur de Argenton*, who writ the Hiſtorie of *France* under *Lewis* the 11th, in which he dived ſo farre into, and writ ſo plainly of the greateſt affaires of State, that Queen *Catharine de Medices* uſed to ſay, that he had made as many *Hereticks* in *State-Policie*, as *Luther* had done in *Religion*. 8 *Sancerre*, ſeated on an high hill neer the River *Loire*, by ſome Latine Writers called *Xantodorum*, but moſt generally ſaid to be ſo called, quaſi *Sacrum Cereris*, from the Godeſs *Ceres* herein worſhipped. A Town of great conſequence and ſtrength, and as ſuch aſſigned over to the *Hugonots* Anno 1579. as a Town of Caution for their ſecuritie, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon: famous not long after for enduring a moſt deſperate and tedious Siege under *Charles* the 9th, by whom thoſe Articles were almoſt no ſooner made than broken.

Here is alſo in this Province the Town and Signeurie of *Aubignie*, adorned with many privileges, an ample territorie, and a beautiful Caſtle. Beſtowed by *Charles* the ſixt on *Robert*, the ſecond Sonne of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in *Scotland*, for his many Signal Services againſt the Engliſh; and is ſtill the honourarie title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond Branch of that noble and illuſtrious Familie.

But as for *Berry* it ſelf, and the fortunes of it, we may pleaſe to know, that in the time of *Hugh Capet* one *Godfrey* was Governour of this Province, whoſe Poſteritie enjoyed that Office under the Kings of *France*, till the daies of King *Henry* the firſt; of whom the Inheritance and Eſtate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the Deſcendants of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as *Proprietarie*, in his own right, when deſirous to make one in the *Holy Wars*, he ſold it back again to King *Philip* the firſt (the better to furniſh himſelf for that expedition) Anno 1096. to be united to the Crown after his deceaſe. Since which time the Soveraigntie of it hath been alwayes in the Crown of *France*, but the poſſeſſion and Revenue ſometimes given with the title of Duke, for a portion to ſome of the Kings younger Sonnes, to be holden of them in *Appennage*, under the Soveraigntie and command of the *Donor* and his Succeſſors: the laſt which ſo enjoyed it being *Charles* the Brother of *Lewis* the 11th; after whoſe death it was united to the Crown, never ſince ſeparated from it, ſave that it gave the title of *Ducheſſe* to the Ladie *Margaret*, ſiſter of *Francis* the firſt, maried after to the Duke of *Savoy*.

THE

9 The Dukedom of BOVRBON.

THE *Dukedom* of *BOVRBON*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonois*, *Forreſt*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Auvergne*, all now reverted to the Crown.

1 *BOVRBONOIS* hath on the Eaſt the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the Weſt, *Berry*; on the North, *La Beauſſe*, and a corner of *Gaſtinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*. The Countrie very well wooded, and of excellent paſturage, which makes the people more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loire*, *Yonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted navigable; beſides *Aron*, *Acolin*, *Lixentes*, *Lanbois*, and ſome leſſer ſtreames.

The antient Inhabitants were the *Hedui*, who being waſted in their Wars againſt the *Romans*, a great part of their Countrie was by *Julius Ceſar* conferred on the *Boii*, a *German* Nation; who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaule*, and unwilling upon their defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this tract.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*. In the *Higher* which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note than that of *Montaigne*, ſituate in the Countie of *Combraille*, the *Signencie* as I take it of that *Michael de Montaigne*, the Authour of the Book of *Eſſaies*. But in the *Lower Bourbonois* are, 1 *Molins*, eſteemed the Center of all *France*, ſituate on the *Allier*, *Bailliage*, and the chief Town of this Countrie: the River yielding great plenty of Fiſh, but of Salmons ſpecially; the Town adorned with a fair Caſtle, and that beautified with one of the fineſt Gardens in *France*, in which are many Trees of Limmons and Oranges. 2 *Bourbon Archenbaud*, and 3 *Bourbon Ancie*; the former of the two ſeated upon the *Loire*, and giving name to the whole Province, of great reſort by reaſon of its *medicinal* waters. 4 *S. Porcin*, and 5 *Varennes Ganat*, upon the frontiers of *Auvergn*, 6 *Chancelle*, 7 *Charroux*, 8 *Paliſſe*, 9 *Souvigni*, 10 *St. Amand*, &c.

In the North part of *Bourbonois*, but not accounted any part or member of it, lieth the Town of *Nevers*, (in *Latine Nivernium*) from whence the Countrie round about is called *NIVERNOIS*. A Town of good eſteem, but not very great; the reputation which it hath proceeding partly from ſome mines of Iron, interſperſed with ſilver which are found therein; and partly for the Earls and Dukes from hence denominated. The firſt whereof was *Landri* of the houſe of *Bourgogne*, Anno 1001. Paſſing through many Families, it came at laſt again to the houſe of *Bourgogne*, and from that unto the Earles of *Flanders*, by the mariage of *Yoland* of *Bourgogne* to *Robert* of *Bethune*, Earl of *Flanders*, Anno 1312 whoſe Sonne named *Lewis* maried the Heir of *Rethel*. Together with the reſt of the rights of *Flanders*, it came again by mariage to the Dukes of *Burgundie*; conveied by *Elizabeth* Daughter and Heir of *Iohn* of *Bourgogne* Earl of *Nevers*, ſecond Sonne of *Philip* the good Duke of *Burgundie*, to *Adolph* Duke of *Cleves* her Husband, Anno 1484, and by *Henrietta*, Siſter and Heir of *Francis de Cleves*, the ſecond Duke of *Never*, and the laſt of that Familie, to her Husband *Lewis de Gonzaga*, third Sonne of *Frederick* Duke of *Mantua*, Anno 1563. whoſe Sonne *Charles*, ſucceeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*, and *Vincent* of *Gonzaga* his Couſen german, in the Dukedom of *Mantua*.

The Armes of theſe Dukes, *Azure*, within a Border Compone *Gules* and *Argent*, 3 Flower de Lyces, *Or*.

2 *FORREST*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Beau-jolois*; on the Weſt with *Auvergne*; on the North with *Bourbonois*; and on the South with a part of *Languedock*. The Countrie populous and large, but not very fruitful; hillie and mountainous, much of the nature of the Wood-Lands. The Air a little of the coldeſt to afford good Wines, but that ſufficiently recompenſed by abundance of pitcoal, by which they have good fires at a very cheap rate. The people are conceived to be none of the wiſeſt, but withall very greedy and covetous of gain.

The chief Towns in it are, 1 *Mont-Briſon*, ſeated on the *Loyre*. 2 *Feurs*, ſeated on the ſame River, called antiently *Forum Seguſianorum*, the chief Citie of the *Seguſiani*, or *Seruſiani*, whom *Ceſar* and others mention in this part of *Gaule*. 3 St. *Stephen* (or *Eſtienne*) in *Feurian*, neer the head of that River. 4 St. *Germans*. 5 St. *Rimbert*. 6 St. *Bennet le Chaſtean*. 7 St. *Guermier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Countrie of *Forreſt* was anciently a part of the Earldome of *Lyons*, diſmembred from it at or about the ſame time with *Beau-jolois*, and was held by a long ſucceſſion of Earls *Proprietaries* of it, as a ſtate diſtinct: till *Reynaud* Lord of *Forreſt*, the Sonne of Earl *Guy*, by the mariage of *Iſabel* Daughter and heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jeu*, joyned them both together, which was about the year 1265, parted again after his deceaſe Anno 1280. *Guy* being his eldeſt Sonne ſucceeding in *Forreſt*; and *Lewis* his ſecond in *Beau-jeu*. How they became united in the houſe of *Burbon*, we ſhall ſee anon.

3 *BEAV-JOLOIS*, ſo called from *Beau-jeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the tract of ground betwixt the *Loire* and the *Soaſne*, and betwixt *Lionois* and *Forreſt*. A Countrie of no great extent, but verie remarkeable for the Lords and Princes of it: who have been men of great eminence in their ſeverall times. The chief Town of it is *Beau-jeu*, beautified with a goodly Caſtle, pleaſantly ſeated on the brow of a riſing Mountain, from whence perhaps it took the name, as the great *Keep* in *Farnham* Caſtle, was in the ſame ſenſe, and for the ſame pleaſant ſituation, called *Joyeux Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du Lake* whoſe that Caſtle was. Which appears fur-

Auvergn. ther by a Tower built at *Constantinople* by *Guischard* the third of that name Lord hereof (being then Ambassadour to the Emperour from King *Philip Augustus*) with this inscription, *Turris Belli-jocensis*, which there continued to be seen a long time after. 2 *Belle-ville*, where is an Abbie founded by *Humbert* the second, Anno 1158. 3 *Ville Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert* the fourth, whose Sonne *Guischard* the third above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciscans*, called to this day *Minorette*. 4 *Noironde*. 5 St. *Maurice*. 6 *Vlsie*. 7 *Obches*, concerning which there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forrest* and these Lords of *Beaujeu*.

This Countrie, as that other of *Forrest*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lions*; in the partage of which Estate it fell to *Omphroy* one of the Brothers of Earl *Artand*, Anno 989. whose Successors had no other title than Lords of *Beaujeu*. They were most of them men of great piety, founders of many *Collegiate* and conventuall Churches; some of them of action also: *Humbert* the second and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; *Vichard* the second, in those against the *English*; *Guischard* the fourth, made *Constable* of *France*, by King *Lewis* the ninth. But the house failing in this *Guischard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forrest* as before is said, in the person of *Regnand* Earl thereof: whose Sonne and Successour called *Lewis*, was also Constable of *France*, as *Edward* the Grand-child of this *Lewis* a *Marshall* of it. But at the last it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward* the second: who being imprisoned at *Paris* for his great offences, and overlaid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*, made a donation or free gift of all his *Signeuries* to *Lewis* Duke of *Bourbon*, surnamed the *good*, and direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the eldest Sonne of *Regnaud* Earl of *Forrest* and Lord of *Beau-jeu* above mentioned, and consequently of next kin to him, Anno 1400.

4 AUVERGNE hath on the East *Forrest*, and *Lyonois*; on the West *Limosin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercy*; on the South part of *Languedoc*; and on the North *Berry*, and *Bourbonnois*. It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitfull in a very eminent degree; the *Higher* mountainous and baren. In this last the Towns of chief note are, 1 St. *Flour*, a Bishops See, of an impregnable situation. 2 *Ovillac*, on the River *Iourdain*, defended with a strong Castle on the top of a Rock. 3 *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4 *Carlat*. 5 *Murat*. 6 *Pillon*, of which little observable in antient stories. In the *Lower* called *Limaigne*, from a River of that name, which falls into the *Ailier*; there is, 1 *Clermont*, a Bishops See, fair and pleasing for the situation, and Fountains descending from the hills of the higher *Auvergn*, the chief Citie of the whole Province. Most memorable in these later Ages for the Councill here called by Pope *Vrban* the second, Anno 1067. in which, by the artifice of the Pope, the Christian Princes of the West, ingaged themselves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes to enlarge both their Territories and their power. It was first raised out of the ruines of *Gergovia*, the head Citie of the *Auverni*, in the time of *Sesar*, and the seat Royall of *Vercingetorex* King of that Nation, who so long put him to his trumps with an Army of 138000 men; now a small Village Called *Gergeau*. 2 *Rion*, in which resides the Seneschall or chief Governour of the *Lower Auvergn*. 3 *Montpensier*, of great note for the Princes of the house of *Bourbon*, once Dukes hereof: beginning in *Lewis* the first Earl, Sonne of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, Anno 1415. and ending in *Henry* the last Duke, whose Daughter and Heir was maried to the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Lewis* the thirteenth. 4 *Montferant*. 5 *Yssoire*. 6 *Brionde*. 7 *Aigueperse*. 8 *Turenne*, the antient Seat and Patrimony of the *De La Tours*, now Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon*, to whom it hath for some ages since given the title of Viscount. A family descended from the Heirs generall of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorreine*.

The Country first inhabited in the times of the *Romans* by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*, whose King *Bituitus* was taken prisoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War against the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and others of their Confederates: Not fully conquered till *Cesar* had subdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*, retaining in the often changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergn*; heretofore part of the great Dutchie of *Aquitaine*, remaining subject to those Dukes till *William* the eighth Duke, and the fourth of that name, gave it in Portion with one of his Daughters: in whose line it continued under the title of the *Dauphins* of *Auvergn*, till *Berault* the last Earl or *Dauphin* of it. Who having maried the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the Sonne of *Regnaud* above mentioned, had by her a Daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Estates, maried to *Lewis* the *good*, the third Duke of *Bourbon*: to whom *Edward* the last Lord of *Beau-jeu* made a Donation or surrendry of that *Signeurie* also: uniting in his person the distinct Estates of *Bourbon*, *Beau-jeu*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Burbonnois* it self, in the distractions of the *French* Empire by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, who most improvidently *cantoned* it into many great Estates, and petit Signeuries: it fell unto the share of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, descended from the antient house of *Bourgogne*, who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis* the ninth for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in *Beauveisin*) his fift Son: maried him to *Beatrix* Daughter and Heir of *Archenbald Dampierre* the last of that house. *Lewis* the Sonne of this *Robert* was the first Duke of this Line; whose successours and their atchievements follow in this Catalogue of

The

Poicton.

The Lords and Dukes of *Bourbon.*

1308. 1 *Robert*, Sonne of King *Lewis* the 9th. Earl of *Clermont*, the first Lord of *Bourbon* of the house of *France.*

1317. 2 *Lewis*, the first Duke of *Bourbon*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France.*

1341. 3 *Peter*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, slain in the Battle of *Poictiers.* Anno 1356.

1356. 4 *Lewis* II. called the *Good*, in whose person all these Estates were first united; *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*; and Governour of King *Charles* the sixth.

1410. 5 *John*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, taken Prisoner at the Battle of *Agincourt*, and died in *England*; the root of the Familie of *Montpensier.*

1434. 6 *Charles*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, Generall of the Army against the *English* in the Ile of *France.*

1456. 7 *John* II. *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Constable of *France.*

1487. 8 *Peter* II. Brother of *John*, *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Regent of *France*, in the absence of *Charles* the 8th.

1503. 9 *Charles* Earl of *Montpensier*, Duke of *Bourbon* in the right of *Susan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the second, Duke of *Bourbon.* After whose death, being slain at the sack of *Rome*, Anno 1527. without Issue, his Estate fell unto the Crown, and so continued, till by the Sentence or *Arrest* of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergne*, *Forrest*, and *Beau-jeau* were adjudged to Madam *Lovise*, Mother of *Lewis* the first Duke of *Montpensier*, and Daughter and Heir of *Gilbert de Bourbon* Earl of *Montpensier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of *Bourbon* (the first of that name) of which house she was the only surviving Heir: from whence descended *Henry* the last Duke of that Familie spoken of before. And for the title of *Auvergne*, it was used customarily by the eldest Sonnes of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpensier*; till given to *Charles*, naturall Sonne of King *Charles* the ninth, called from hence the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*: who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604. made Prisoner by King *Henry* the fourth, released by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, Anno 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angolesme*, in whose posterity it remaineth.

The Arms of these Dukes were 1 *France*, a Baston *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon.* 2 *Or*, a Daulphin *Palme*, *Azure*, for the Countie of *Auvergne.* 3 *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, armed *Gules* under a Labell of fine peeces of the same, for the Signeurie of *Beau-jeu*. The Arms of the Earldom of *Forrest* I am yet to seek.

POICTOU.

HAving thus taken a survey of those severall Provinces, which, (except *Bretagne*) were the first purchases of the *French* in the modern *France*; let us next look on those which were possessed by the *Gothes.* And first we will begin with *POICTOU*, their most Northern Province, bounded on the North with *Bretagne* and *Anjou*, on the South with *Xantoigne*, a member of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; on the East with *Tourein*, *Limosin*, and *Berry*; and on the West with the *Aquitain* Seas.

It is called in *Latine*, *Pictavia*, from the *Pictones*, as *Ptolomie*, *Cæsar*, and some others, or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof; and is a countrey so great and plentifull, that there are numbred in it 1200 Parishes, and three Bishopricks. A strong Argument of the populousnes and largenes of it. Besides the goodnes of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to say, a large Sea coast, some capacious Harbours, not a few navigable Rivers, emptying themselves into the Sea; besides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin*, or *Clavius*, the *Crevise*, and *Vienne*, three Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which also glides along on the North hereof.

The principall Towns and Cities of it are, 1 *Poictiers*, in *Latine*, *Pictavis*, seated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavius*, by *Ptolomie* called *Angustoritum*: the largest Citie for compass of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it self; but conteining in that circuit Meadows, Corn-fields, and other waste grounds. It is an *Universitie*, especially for the studie of the *Civill Lawes*, and a *See Episcopall*: one of the Bishops hereof being S. *Hilarie*, surnamed *Pictavensis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a stout Champion of the *Catholick* Faith against the *Arians*, though countenanced in their Heresie by the Emperour *Constantius.* 2 *Souri*, upon the River *Charente*, neer the edge of *Xantoigne.* 3 *Talmont*, upon the shores of the Ocean. 4 *Beaumoir*, a Sea Town also, and a reasonable good Port, neer the confines of *Bretagne.* 5 *Roch-sur-yon*, which gave the title of Prince to one of the branches of the Royall race of *Bourbon.* 6 *Lusignan*, on the River *Ion*, denominating the Noble Family of *Lusignan*, sometimes Kings of *Hierusalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus*, which last they had in exchange for the first, by the donation of King *Rich.* the first of *England.* 7 *Lucon*, or *Lusson*, seated upon a navigable arm of the Sea: sufficiently famous in being the Episcopall See of the renowned Cardinal of *Richelieu*, who so long managed the affairs of *France* for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8 *Mailleseais* a Bishops See also. 9 *Thouars*, which gives the title

Limosin. title of Duke to the antient Familie of *Tremoville*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themselves, from the time that *Constance* the Daughter and Heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geofrie Plantagenet* her first Husband, had *Guy* of *Thouars* for her second. To *Chastell-Heraula* (or *Castrum Heraldi*,) on the River *Vienne*, of which *James Hamilton*, Earl of *Arran* in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry* the second of *France*, the better to assure him to the *French* Faction there, against the *English*, had the title of Duke.

In the *Vine-Fields* of this Countrey, within two Leagues of *Poictiers*, was fought that memorable Battell, between *John* of *France*, and *Edward* the Sonne of King *Edward* the third, surnamed the *Black Prince*. Who being distressed by the number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honorable terms; which the *French* not accepting, instead of conquest, found a fatall overthrow. For they presuming on their own strength, to their own disadvantage, bereft the enemy of all opportunity of retiring: whereas ordinary policie would instruct the Leader of an Army, to make his enemie, if he would flie, a bridge of gold; as Count *Petillan* used to say. Hereupon *Themistocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the bridge made over the *Hellespont* by *Xerxes*; lest the *Persians* should be compelled to fight, and so happen to recover their former losses; and *Charles* the sixth lost his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth in his march to *Calice*. For where all way of flight or retreat is stopt, the basest Souldier will rather die with glorie in the front of his battell, than flye and be killed with ignominie. So true a Mistress of hardy resolutions is Despair: and no less true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devill.* On the contrary, it hath been the use of divers politick Captains, to make their own Souldiers fight more resolutely, by taking from them all hope of safety, but by battell. So did *William* the Conquerour; who at his arrivall into *England*, burnt the ships which transported his Armie: thereby giving his Souldiers to wit, that their lives lay in the strength of their arms, and courage of their hearts, not in the nimblenes of their heels. *Tariff*, the leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, burnt likewise all his Navy, one onely *Pinnace* excepted; which he reserved to carry tydings of his success.

When *Charles Martell* encountred that infinite host of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the people of *Tours* to open the gates onely to the Victors. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the bankes thereof certain troupes of horsemen, to kill all such as fled out of the field; Hereby informing his men, that there was to them no more *France* than what they fought on: unless they were Conquerours. In like manner, the same *Themistocles*, cunningly working the *Persians* to enclose the *Greek* Navy on every side: inflamed the *Grecians* with such courage, by a necessity of fight, that they gave their enemies the most memorable defeat that ever hapned on those seas.

But to proceed, the People of this *Province* have more in them of the old *Gall*, than any in *France*, as lying so betwixt the borders of the *Gothes*, and *French*, that it was never throughly planted or possessed by either. An Arguument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, subtile, craftie, and contentious than the rest of their Countrie men; and have a *Dialect* by themselves much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it (questionless some remainders of the antient *Gallick*) which the naturall *French* man understands not. In the division of *Gaule* by the Emperour *Constantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania secunda*: and as a part thereof, wonne from the *Romans*, with *Limosin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*, by *Euricus* King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*. Of whose Kingdom it continued part, till those *Gothes* were dispossessed of their hold in *France*, by *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*, surnamed the Great. After which it belonged to the Kings of that People; by the Posterity of *Charles* the Great, assigned to some Provincial Governours with the title of Earls. One of which being named *Ebles* (of the old *Gothish* race, if I guess aright) by the last Will and Testament of *William* the *Debonair* Duke of *Aquitain* and Earl of *Auvergne*, succeeded in that fair Estate. *Poicton* by this means made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, came with it at the last to the Kings of *England*; as shall there be shewn: and being theirs, was given with the title of Earl by King *Henry* the second, to *Richard* surnamed *Cuer de Lyon*, who was after King: seized upon by the *French* in the unfortunate reign of King *John*, with the rest of the *English* Provinces, Anno 1202. *Alphonso*, brother to *Lewis* the 9th is made Earl of *Poicton*: and being again recovered by King *Henry* the third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the *Barons Wars*, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the affairs of *Germanie*, of which by some of the *Electors* he was chosen Emperour: it was fully conquered by the *French*, and never since dismembred from that Crown, for ought I can find. For though in the more active times of King *Edward* the third, some of the best Towns and peeces of it were possessed by the *English*: yet were they lost again soon after, according to the various successes and events of War.

11 *LIMOSIN*, 12 *PERIGORT*, 13 *QUERCU*.

THese Provinces I have joyned together, because for the most part they have followed the same fortune; being sometimes *French*, and sometimes *English*, according to the successes of either Nation.

1 *LIMOSIN*, the largest of the three, hath on the East, *Bourbonnois*; on the West *Perigort*; and on the North, and North-west, *Poicton* and *Berry*; on the South, *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limosin*; and the *Lower*, commonly called *La Marche*: both parts

parts, but ſpecially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous, and not very fruitfull; but of a free and open Air, inhabited by a people of a more ſtaid and ſober nature than the reſt of the *French*; frugall in expence, and moderate in diet; only ſo great devourers of bread, that they are grown into a *By-word*. *Perigort, & Quercu,*

The chief Towns in *La March*, or the *Lower Limoſin*, are, 1 *Tulles*, ſeated in a rough and hilly Countrie, a Biſhops See. 2 *Uzarche*, ſeated amongſt the mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent current: with which ſo fortified on all ſides, that it is thought to be a very ſtrong and ſecure dwelling. 3 *Treinac*. 4 *Douſenac*. 5 *Belmont*. 6 *Meiſſac*. 7 *Brive la Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limoſin* the chief Towns are 1 *Limoges*, a Biſhops See, the principall of the *Lemovices*, from whom denominated; by *Ptolomie* called *Ratiaſtum*. A neat, but no large City, rich, populous, and inhabited by a people of ſo great an induſtrie, that they compell every one to work, and is therefore by the *French* called the *Priſon of Beggars*. Seated on the *Vienne*. At the taking of it, when revolted, *Edward* the *Black Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the diſtreſſed Citizens, till purſuing his enemies, he ſaw three *French* Gentlemen make head againſt his Armie; the conſideration of whoſe magnanimity drew him to pity, where before he had vowed revenge. 2 *Chaluz*, at the beſieging of which, our *Richard* the firſt was ſlain by a ſhot from an *Arbaliſt*; the uſe of which warlike engine, he firſt ſhewed unto the *French*. Whereupon a *French* Poet made theſe verſes, in the perſon of *Atropos*.

Hoc volo, non aliâ Richardum *morte perire,*
Ut qui Francigenis *Baliſta primitùs uſum*
Tradidit, ipſe ſui rem primitùs experiatur:
Quamq; aliis docuit, in ſe vim ſentiat artis.

It is decreed, thus muſt great *Richard* die,
As he that firſt did teach the *French* to dart
An *Arbaliſt*; 'tis juſt he firſt ſhould trie
The ſtrength, and taſte the fruits of his own Art.

The man that ſhot him was called *Bertram de Gurdon*, who being brought before the King (for the King neglecting his wounds, never gave over the Aſſault till he gained the place) boldly juſtified his Action, as done in the ſervice of his Countrie, and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had cauſed to be ſlain. Which heard, the King not only cauſed him to be ſet at liberty, but gave him an hundred ſhillings ſterling in reward of his gallantrie. 3 *Soubſterrein*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4 *Confaulat*. 5 *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*. 6 *Boiſſon*. 7 *Birat*, of which nothing memorable.

2 *PERIGORT*, hath on the Eaſt *Auvergn* and *Quercu*; on the Weſt *Xantoigne*; on the North *Limoſin*; and on the South ſome part of *Gaſcoine*. The Countrie and people are much of the ſame condition with that of *Limoſin*, ſaving that *Perigort* is the more woodie; and thoſe woods plentifull of *Cheſnuts*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Perigeux*, the principall Citie of the *Petrogorii*, by *Ptolomie* called *Veſſina*, now a Biſhops See, ſome foot-ſteps of which name remain in a part of *Perigeux*, (for the Town is divided into two parts) which to this day is called *Veſune*, in which ſtandeth the Cathedrall Church, and the Biſhops Palace. The whole Citie ſeated in a very pleaſant Vallie, environed with *Downes* affording a moſt excellent Wine; and having in it, as a mark of the *Roman* greatneſs, the ruines of a large and ſpacious *Amphitheatre*. 2 *Bergerac*, ſeated on the great River of *Dordonne*. 3 *Sarlat*, a Biſhops See. 4 *Nomron*, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 5 *Miramont*. 6 *La Roche*. 7 *Marſee*, where is a Well which ebbeth and floweth according to the pulſe of the River of *Bourdeaux*. And 8 *Angoleſme*, in the North-weſt, towards *Xantoigne*, the ſeat of the *Engoliſmenſes* in the time of the *Romans*, now a Biſhops See: ſeated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almoſt encompaſſed; the other ſide being defended by a ſteep and rocky mountain. A Town of great importance, when poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*, being one of their beſt out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*: one of the Gates hereof being to this day called *Chande*, ſeems to have been the work of Sir *John Chandos* Banneret, one of the firſt *Founders* of the moſt noble Order of the *Garter*, then Governour hereof for King *Edward* the third. Being recovered from the *Engliſh* by *Charles* the fifth, it was beſtowed on *John*, the third Sonne of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grandfather of King *Francis* the firſt, with the title of an Earldom onely, Anno 1408. Afterwards made a Dukedom in the perſon of the ſaid King *Francis*, before his comming to the Crown. And for the greater honour of it, as much of the adjoyning Countrie was laid unto it, as maketh up a Territorie of about 24 *French* Leagues in length, and 15 in bredth: Within which circuit are the Towns of *Chaſteau-neef*, and *Coignac*, on the River of *Charente*. 3 *Roche Faulcon*, 4 *Chabannes*. 5 *Meriville*. 6 *Villebois*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the title of Duke to *Charles* Earl of *Auvergne*, Anno 1618. The Baſe Sonne of *Charles* the ninth, conſequently extracted from the houſe of *Angoleſme*.

3 *QUERCU*, is encompaſſed about with *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, *Languedoc*, and *Auvergne*. A populous Countrie for the bigneſs (being one of the leaſt in all *France*) and very fruitfull withall, though ſomewhat mountainous. The principall places in it, 1 *Cahors*, the chief Citie of the *Cadurci* in the times of the *Romans*; ſtill a great, ſtrong, and well traded Town, and the See of

Aquitain. a Biſhop, who is alſo the *Temporall* Lord of it; ſeated upon the River *Loch*. From hence deſcended and took name the noble Family of *Chaworth*, *De Cadurcis* in *Latine*: out of which, by a Daughter of *Patrick de Cadurcis*, Lord of *Ogmore* and *Kidwelly* in the Marches of *Wales*, maried to *Henry* the third Earl of *Lancaſter*, come the Kings of *England*, and moſt of the Royall houſes in *Europe*. 2 *Montalban*, a Biſhops See alſo, built on the top of an high mountain, and ſo well fortified by all advantages of Art, that it is thought to be the moſt defenſible of any in *France*: of which it gave ſufficient proof in that notable reſiſtance which it made to King *Lewis* the thirteenth, in his Wars againſt thoſe of the *Religion*, Anno 1622. 3 *Soulac*, upon the River *Dordonne*. 4 *Nigrepelliſſe*, another of the Towns poſſeſſed by the *Proteſtant* party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the thirteenth, Anno 1621. but in *Novemb.* following, they murdered the Kings Garriſon, and the next yeer denied admiſſion to the King. Taken at laſt, Anno 1622. by the King in perſon; the puniſhment did exceed the Crime. For the men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deſerved; but many of the women alſo: ſome of them having their ſecret parts rammed with Gun-powder, and ſo torn in peeces by the unpattern'd Barbariſm of the mercileſs and revengefull Souldiers. 5 *Chaſteau-Saraſin*, a ſtrong Town on the *Garond*. 6 *Nazaret*. 7 *Burette*, &c.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe 3 Provinces, were the *Lemovices*, the *Petrocorii*, and the *Cadurci* before-mentioned: of which the *Lemovices* and *Cadurci*, were caſt into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*, the *Petrocorii* and *Engoliſmenſes* into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, ſeized on by the *Gothes*, but from them ſpeedily extorted by the conquering *French*. Afterwards when King *Henry* the third of *England* releaſed his right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Poictou*, *Anjou*, *Tourein* and *Maine*; *Lewis* the ninth, to whom this releaſe was made, gave him in ſatisfaction of all former intereſſes, 300000 l. of *Anjovin* money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the Countie of *Xaintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charent*, with the Province of *Limoſin*. And on the Capitulations made betwixt *Edward* the third of *England*, and *John* of *France*, then Priſoner to him, *Perigort* and *Quercu* (amongſt other conditions) were conſigned over to the *Engliſh*, diſcharged of all *Reſort* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*, After which times reſpectively they remained all three in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, untill their finall expulſion by King *Charles* the ſeventh, never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown thereof.

14 AQUITAIN.

THe *Dukedom* of *AQUITAIN*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of all *France*, contained the Provinces of *Xaintogne*, 2 *Guienne*, 3 *Gaſcoigne*; with the Iſles of *Oleron* and *Rees*, and other Iſlands in the *Aquitainick* or Weſtern Ocean.

1 *XAINTOIGNE* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Limoſin* and *Perigort*; on the Weſt, with the *Aquitanick* Ocean; on the North, with *Poictou*; and on the South, with *Guienne*: So called from *Sainctes* one of the Principall Cities of it: as that from the *Santones*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whoſe chief Citie it was. The River of *Charente* running thorow the middle of it, and ſo on the North border of it emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean, juſt oppoſite to the Iſle of *Oleron*; having firſt taken in the *Seugne* and the *Boutonne*, two leſſer Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Sainctes*, by *Ptolomie* called *Mediolanum*, by *Antonine*, *Civitas Santonum*, ſeated upon the *Charente*, a Biſhops See, and the *Seneſchalſie* for the Countrie. 2 S. *John d' Angelie*, ſituate on the *Boutonne*, a Town impregnably fortified; whereof it hath given ſufficient teſtimonie in the *Civill Wars* of *France* about *Religion*. 3 *Marans*, a little port, but in a mariſhy and inconvenient ſituation. 4 *Bourg ſur la mer*, upon the *Dordonne*, which for the wideneſs of it is here called a Sea. 5 *Retraicte*, ſeated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*. 6 *Blaye*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Countrie, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a good Garriſon for ſecuring the paſſage unto *Bourdeaux*; this Town being ſeated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 7 *Rochelle*, *Rupella* in the preſent *Latine*, but antiently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santones*, a well noted Port, in the moſt northern part of *Xaintoigne*; from whence the Countrie hereabouts is called *ROCHELOIS*. The Town ſeated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay; the entrance of which is well aſſured by two very ſtrong Forts, betwixt which there is no more ſpace, than for the paſſage of a good ſhip; every night cloſed up with a maſſie Chain: and the whole Town either environed with deep mariſhes, or fortified with ſuch Bulwarks, trenches, and other works of modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the ſafeſt retreat for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion* in the time of their troubles; as may be ſeen by the ſtorie of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the ſecond *Civill Wars*, Anno 1568. Many Towns conſidering how ill the former Peace had been obſerved, refuſed to take in any of the Kings Garriſons, or permit any of the Papiſts to bear Arms amongſt them; of which *Rochell* was one: which alſo, contrary to the Kings command, maintained a Navy for their ſafety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of *Navarre* and her Sonne retired, as to a place of ſafety. Anno 1570. *Rochell* alone, of all the *French* Towns held good for the *Proteſtants*, and is by *Monſieur Joinville* on all ſides blocked up: but the ſiege ſoon raiſed, and *Rochell*, *Montalban*, *Sancerre*, with others, made cautionarie for the peace enſuing. Anno 1575. beſieged by *Biron* the elder, with an Army of 50000 men, and 60 peeces of Artillerie; *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, the D. of *Aumal*, &c. being alſo preſent at the ſervice. It held out from the beginning of *March*,

till

till the 7th of *June*, and was then freed: the Citie having in one moneth endured 13000 shot; and the King lost 20000 men, amongst them the Duke of *Anmal* for one, Anno 75, & 78. it was attempted by *Lindereau*, the Isle of *Ree* taken, but soon recovered: the King of *Navarre*, and Prince of *Conde*, after that defeat, being received in, in triumph. Anno 1577. besieged to Sea-ward by *Lanfac*: who being also beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionarie Towns more added to their former strength. In the troubles of 85, and 88. the Princes abovenamed made it their Retreat; and from thence issued to divert the purposes of the Duke of *Mericeur*. The next yeer, *Henry* the third being slain, and the King of *Navarre* seated in the Throne, the *Protestant* partie increased exceedingly in power and number; and taking advantage of the minoritie of *Lewis* the thirteenth, governed themselves apart as a *Free Estate*, *Rochell* being made the head of their Commonwealth; fortified to that end with 12 Royall *Bastions* of Free stone, with double ditches, deep and broad in the bottom; abundantly furnished with Powder and Ammunition, 150 pieces of *Cannon*, besides Culverins and smaller pieces, with victuals, and all other necessaries to endure a Siege: and grown unto so great wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or sixscore Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns a peece. This drew upon them the great War, in the yeeres 1621, and 1622. Which ended in the loss of all their Garrisons, except *Rochell*, and *Montalban*: those to remain in pledge with the *Protestant* Partie, but for 3 yeers only. Which time expired, the *Rochellers* were again besieged both by Sea and Land, the Isle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, & the mouth of their Haven so barred up with Ships chained together, and sunk into it, and other works of stupendious greatnes in the very Ocean, that no forrein succours out of *England*, (however really intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their relief. In the end, having endured all the extremities of a tedious Siege, they yeelded themselves to the Kings mercy, Anno 1628. *Montalban*, *Nismes*, and other places newly fortified, submitting at the same time also. *Guienne.*

II. *GVIENNE*, the second Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted by the River of *Dordonne*; on the South, with *Gascoigne*; on the East, with *Perigart*; and on the West with the *Aquitanick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* hills to the River of *Bourdeaux*. The reason of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old name, *Aquitaine*; but not very probably. The Countrie generally plentifull of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into *Spain*, and the other into *England*. The people, as those of *Xaintoigne* also, tall of stature, of able bodies, haters of servitude and baseness, and well practised in arms: which qualities of the minde, and constitution of bodie, (being therein so different from the rest of *France*) it is possible enough they might have from the *English*, who for 300 yeers were possessed of the Countrie, and have left many tracts of their language in it.

The principall Rivers of this Province, are, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*, meeting together at *Retraicte*, a Town of *Xaintoigne*; and thence in one Channell falling into the Ocean: the Countrie betwixt these two Rivers being called *Le Pais entre les deux mers*, or, The Countrie betwixt the two Seas; the Rivers hereabouts resembling a small Sea in wideness. Of lesser note are, 1 *Jearne*, 2 *Baize*, 3 *Lot*, and 4 *Lisle*, falling into the *Garond* in their severall places.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Bourdeaux*, seated on the South bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongst the marishes. The chief Citie of the *Bituriges*, who possessed this tract; and for distinctions sake, were called *Bituriges Vbisci*, those of *Bourges* being called *Bituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdegala*, and *Civitas Burdegalensium*; the *Metropolis* at that time of *Aquitania Secunda*: consequently an Archbishops See, as it still continueth. A fair, rich, and populous Citie, beautified with many goodly buildings, an Universitie founded here by King *Lewis* the 11h, and a large Cathedrall. It was made *Parliamentary* for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoyning, by King *Charles* the 7th. Anno 1453. not long after the expulsion of the *English* thence: and is one of the most noted *Empories* in all the Kingdom; frequented very much by the *Dutch* and *English* for *Gascoigne* wines: over which last, the *French* are so jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladen all their *Ordnance* at the Port of *Blaye*. The Countrie hereabouts is, from this Town, called *Bourdelois*. 2 *Fronsac*, lying in the Countrie betwixt the two Seas (as they call it,) which gives the title of a Duke to the noble Familie of the Earls of S. *Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronsac*, and to the Countrie round about, the name of *Fronsadaze*. 3 *Libourn*, at the confluence of the two great Rivers, opposite to *Retraicte* in *Xaintoigne*. 4 *Soulac*, at the influx of the *Garond*, in the *Peninsula*, or demi-Island, called the Countrie of *Medoc*. 5 *Baionne*, a Sea Town, and Episcopall See, frontiring on the coast of *Spain*. 6 St. *John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* mountains, all about which, the people speak the *Basquish*, or old *Gascoigne* language, being the same with that of *Biscay*. 7 *D'Acqs*, an Episcopall See, by *Ptolomie* called *Aquæ Augustæ*, (*Civitas Aquensium*, by *Antoninus*) from whence this part of *Gaule* had the name of *Aquitaine*. These three last being all of them Frontire Towns, are strongly fortified. 8 *Bazas*, (called *Cossium* by *Ptolomie*) the chief Citie of the *Vasates*, whom *Antoninus* placeth in this tract, now a Bishops See, situate on the borders of *Gascoigne*, in the Countrie from hence called *Bazadois*. Towns of less note, 1 *Esparrez*. 2 St. *Basil*. 3 *Reule*. 4 *Chasteau-Moron*. 5 *Mousteguer*. 6 *Sainlterre*, &c. Here is also in this Province the Countrie of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-coast from *Baionne* to *Medoc*: a barren, poor, and wretched Countrie, the worst peece of *France*; onely remarkable for the Lords or owners of it, formerly of the house of *Foix*: one of which, was that *John de Foix*, created Earl of *Kendall*, and Knight of the *Garter*, by King *Henry* the sixth; but better known in *English* stories by

the

Gascoigne, the name of *Capitall*, or *Capdau de Buche*, the Lords hereof having no higher title than that of *Captain*.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largest part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the East, *Languedoc*, from which parted by the River *Garond*; on the West, the *Pyrenean* mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, *Perigort*, *Quercy*, and some part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main tract of the *Pyrenees*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Countrie generally fruitfull, but of Wines especially, brought hence to *Bourdeaux* as the Staple for that commodity, and thence transported into *England* in great abundance.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Auscii*, *Lastorates*, *Convenares*, *Conserani*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulonia*: united in this name of *Gascoigne* on the conquest of it by the *Vascones*, a *Spanish* Nation, who fell in here, during the reign of *Dagobert* the 11th King of the *French*. And though subdued by *Clovis* the second, Sonne of *Dagobert*, yet they left their name unto the Countrie; divided afterwards according to the chief *Signeuries* and Estates thereof, into 1 the Principalitie of *Bearn*, 2 the Earldoms of *Foix*, 3 *Commings*, 4 *Bigorre*, 5 *Armaignac*, 6 *Albret*, and 7 the Countrie of *Agenois*.

1 The *Principalitie* of *BEARN*, is situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, where they joyn to *Languedoc*; so called from *Benearnum*, a principall Citie of this tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the antient Writers. The Countrie of good pasturage, though amongst the mountains, affording plenty of Cattell, butter and cheese; and in some places wines also, little inferiour in taste and colour to the best of *France*; and many *medicinall* springs issuing from the hills adjoyning.

The *Religion* here, as generally in all *Gascoigne*, is that of the *Reformed Churches*; introduced about the year 1560; or rather then confirmed by publick autority of the King and Queen of *Navarre*: at what time the *Mass*, *Tithes*, Church-lands, and the *Prelates* Votes in Parliament (according to the *Genevian* way of *Reformation*) were condemned together. And so it stood untill the yeer 1620, when by the power and autority of *Lewis* the 13th. King of *France* and *Navarre*, the *Prelates* were restored to their *Votes* and Lands, the Clergie to their *Tithes*, and *Mass* caused also to be said in some of their Churches: yet so, that those of the *Reformed* were left unto the free exercise of their own *Religion*, as in former times.

The principall Towns hereof are, 1 *Orthes*, the same which antiently was called *Benearnum*. 2 *Lescar*, a Bishops See, the antient seat and habitation of the Princes of *Bearn*. 3 *Oleron*, a Bishops See also, mounted upon an high hill, in the more mountainous parts of the Countrie. 4 *Sainc-terre*, well garrisoned since the reduction of this Countrie to the Kings obedience. 5 *Pau*, the principall of all the Province, honoured with a *Parliament* or Court of *Iudicature* for all the Countrie; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry* of *Albret*, King of *Navarre*, and Lord of *Bearn*; and the Seat of him and his Successors, till the comming of King *Henry* the 4th to the Crown of *France*. 6 *Grenade*, upon the Frontire towards *Begorre*.

This Countrie for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the generall dismembring of the *French* Empire, had its own *Proprietaries*, who were the absolute Lords of it, acknowledging no Superiour for ought I can find. Increased with the Earldom of *Begorre*, by the mariage of *Gaston*, Prince of *Bearn*, with the Heir of that House: united to the Earldom of *Foix*, by the mariage of *Roger Bernard* Earl of *Foix*, with *Margaret*, Daughter of that *Gaston*, and Heir of *Bearn*, Anno 1262; afterwards added to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the mariage of *Gaston* Earl of *Foix*, and Sovereign of *Bearn*, with *Eleanor* the Heir of that Kingdom, Anno 1481. descending with that Crown upon *Henry* of *Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France*, by the name of *Henry* the fourth: but governed by him alwayes as a *State distinct*, without relation or resort to the Crown of *France*. But *Lewis* the 13 his Sonne, finding some inconvenience in that distinction, incorporated it for ever to the rest of his Dominions, An. 1620, though not without some opposition from the Subjects of *Bearn*, which he was fain to over-bear by his personall presence, and the advantage of such Forces as he carried with him. Since reckoned as a part of that Kingdom; awed, as the rest of *France*, by Forts and Garrisons; and governed in Civil matters by the Parliament established at *Pau*; the Judges and Counsellors thereof at the Kings appointing.

2 The Earldom of *FOIX*, is situate on the West of *Languedoc*, *Commingeois* interposing betwixt it and *Bearn*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Maseros*, on the *Garond*, a Bishops See. 2 *Pamieres*, a Bishops See also, seated on the River *Lagiere*. 3 *Foix*, on the same River, called in *Latine*, *Fuxium*, and the Earls hereof *Comites Fuxienses*, the chief seat of the *Flussates* in the times of the *Romans*, now giving name to all the Countrie. 4 *Mirande* in the Countie of *Esterac*, and the chief thereof; but otherwise of no great Accompt. 5 *Savardun*, and 6 *Monthault*, two strong peeces. 7 *Mirepoix* (*oppidum Mirapense*) a Bishops See also, but of no note otherwise. The old Inhabitants of this tract, besides the *Flussates* abovementioned, were called *Vaccai*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine bred in the pastures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of *Foix* have for their Arms, 3 Cowes passant *Gules*, horned and hoofed *Azure*, in a Feild *Or*.

The first of these Earls was *Bernard* of *Carcassone*, advanced to this honour by *Raimond* Earl of *Tholouse*, who had then the Soveraigntie hereof, Anno 1062. *Roger Bernard*, the ninth Earl, united *Bearn* to his Estate, as before is said, whose Grand-child *Isabel* (the male issue failing) conveyed the whole Estate to *Archembald*, Lord or Captain of *Buche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *Gaston*, the Nephew of this *Archembald* by his Eldest Sonne *John*, was for his many good services to

Charles

Charles the 7th, made a Peer of *France*: and by his mariage with *Eleanor* or *Leanora* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, united that Kingdom to his houſe, though he enjoyed it not in his own perſon. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of Eſtate, this Familie grew to ſo great power and reputation, that there were four Queens at one time deſcended from it: viz. *Catharine* Queen of *Navarre*, *Germain* Queen of *Caſtile*, *Anne* Queen of *France*, and *Anne* Queen of *Hungarie* and *Boheme*. Before which time (I mean the addition of *Navarre* to their other Eſtates) the Earles of *Foix* were in ſo high eſteem in the Court of *France*, that in all publick Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendoſme*, though extracted from the Royall bloud, and lived in a condition equall to moſt Kings in Chriſtendom. *Gaſcoigne.*

3 The Earldom of *BEGORRE* is ſituate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* mountains: ſo called from the *Bigerrones*, the old inhabitants hereof in the time of *Caſar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoyning Principalitie of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious people, of noyſome breaths, deformed bodies, and ghaſtly viſages: in which regard, not ſuffered to have any commerce with other people, nor to inherit any lands; but only to applie themſelves to drudgerie, and the baſeſt of mechanick trades. From their great miſhapen heads called *Capets* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Baigneres*, famous for *medicinall* Bathes. 2 *Lourde*, of which nothing memorable. 3 *Tarbe*, (by *Antonine* called *Turſambica*) ſeated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a ſtrong Caſtle, an Epiſcopall See, and the Seneſchalſie for all the Countrie of *Begorre*. Which Countrie having for long time its own *Proprietarie* Earls, was at the laſt, by the mariage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Eſquibal* the laſt Earl, to *Boſon* Vicount of *Marſan* and *Gabardan*, added to that houſe. Whoſe Daughter *Matthee*, marying to *Gaſton* Prince of *Bearn* increaſed that *Principalitie* with thoſe goodly peeces of *Marſan*, *Gabardan* and *Begorre*, all brought unto the houſe of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaſton*, maried to *Roger Bernard*, as before is ſaid.

The Armes hereof were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*. By *Inigo Ariſta* the Sonne of *Simon*, Earl of this Countrie, called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Arms of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Arms thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Croſs in chief, *Gules*. Which Arms are ſaid to have been took by *Garcia Nimines* the firſt King of *Navarre*, from ſuch a ſigne appearing to him in the Skie, before his firſt battell with the *Moores*.

4 The *Earldom* of *COMMINGES* lyeth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eaſtward on *Begorre*. Divided into the *Higher*, and more mountainous part, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*; and the *Lower*, which hath ſomewhat more of the vallie in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Convenæ*, and *Conſerani*. The principall places at preſent in the *Lower Comminges* are, 1 *Lombes*, a Biſhops See, but of late erection. 2 *Moret*, upon the River *Garonne*. 3 *Samatban*. 4 *Liſle en Dodon*. And in the *Higher*, there is, 1 *Conſerans*, once the chief Town of the *Conſerani*, now a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenean* hills. 2 S. *Bernaud*, of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Biſhops See alſo, and the chief Citie of this Earldome. 3. St. *Beat*, 4 St. *Fregon*, 5 *Monregeau*, or *Mons Regius*, 6 *Silliers*, &c.

Of the eſtate of this Earldom I have little to ſay, but that it was allied to the houſe of *Foix*, by the mariage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl hereof, to *Gaſton* the ſecond of that name, and 11th Earl: and afterwards unto that of *Armaignac*: *John* of *Leſcon*, a Baſtard of the Earl of *Armaignac* being Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the *Marſhals* of *France* in the time of King *Lewis* the 11th. The Arms of which Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltier, *Argent*.

5 The Earldom of *ARMAIGNAC*, the greateſt of all theſe Eſtates conſidered ſeverally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and ſo extendeth it ſelf to the banks of the River *Garond*. Principall Towns are, 1 *Aux*, upon the River *Gez*, antiently called *Auguſta Auſciorum*; the Metropolis or head Citie of the *Novempopulonia*; by conſequence an Archbiſhops See: The Revenues whereof are ſaid to be the greateſt of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no leſs than 40000 l. *per Annum*. 2 *Lectoure*, a Biſhops See, called of old *Leſtoracium*, in our modern *Latine*, *Lectodurum*. A Town ſo well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a ſiege of 3 months againſt the forces of *France*: but ſince it came into the hands of the *French* Kings, ſo ſtrengthned and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the ſtrongeſt Bulwark of the Kingdom on this ſide, and their ſureſt Fortreſs againſt *Spain*. 3 *Liſle de Iourdain*, which hath the title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of *Iohn* Duke of *Bourbon*, by *Iohn* the 4th Earl of *Armaignac*, Anno 1421. 4 *Auvillar*. 5 *Auzan*. 6 *Chaſtel-neau*. 7 *Malbourquet*, 8 *Neſtes*, &c.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*: *Saucho* the great, having ſubdued ſome Lands in *Gaſcoigne*, which he conferred on *Garſias* a younger Sonne of his, with the title of Earl of *Armaignac*, Anno 1014. On which foundation it increaſed ſo faſt, both in power and honour, that *Barnard* the fourth Earl hereof, came to be Conſtable of *France*. And ſo did *Iohn* the 4th of that name, by the favour of King *Charles* the 7th: who alſo writ himſelf, *By the Grace of God* Earl of *Armaignac*; according to the ſtile of Soveraign Princes. A man of ſo conſiderable power in theſe parts of *France*; that the mariage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the ſixt, was thought the beſt means for eſtabliſhing his Eſtate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, That by breaking off this alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cauſe of the loſs of the Kings peeces in *France*. This greatneſs, made him ſubject to the jealouſie of King *Lewis* the 11th, who worried him out of his Eſtate and his life together. *Charles*, Brother of

Aquitaine. this *Iohn*, ſucceeded by the favour of King *Charles* the 8th. After whoſe death this fair Eſtate was ſeized on to the uſe of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the firſt to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon*, (whoſe grand-father had maried with a Siſter of the ſaid Earl *Iohn*) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the ſaid Kings Siſter: who, after the deceaſe of the Duke of *Alanſon*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albret*, and King of *Navarre*, her ſecond Husband; returning ſo to the *Original* from whence firſt it came.

The Arms of theſe great Princes, were Quarterly 1 *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*; 2 *Gules*, a Leopard Lyon *Or*. The 3d, &c.

6 The Earldom of *ALBRET* is ſituate on the North-weſt of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is, 1 *Nerac*, ſeated on the River of *Baize*; the only place of ſtrength and moment in all this eſtate. 2 *Chaſtell-Ialone*, well ſeated to diſturb the Trade betwixt *Bourdeaux* and *Gaſcoigne*, but not able to endure a ſiege. 3 *Mont de Marſan*, and 4 *Tartas*, both ſeated on the River *Ladour*: and all four formerly Towns of Caution for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*; of which this Countrey is ſo full, that the *Popiſh Religion* had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the ſmalleſt of the ſix, and of leaſt Antiquitie, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the reſt into it. For *Iohn*, the Sonne of *Alan* Earl of *Albret*, by his mariage with *Catharine*, Daughter and ſole Heir of *Gaſton*, Sonne of *Gaſton* Earl of *Foix*, and of *Leanora* Princeſs of *Navarre*, added to his Eſtate the Signeuries of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albret* his Sonne, by marying the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of King *Francis* the firſt, united to it thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Commminges*. By *Ieau* the Daughter of this *Henry*, the whole Eſtate was brought to *Antonie* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and Father to King *Henry* the 4th, becoming ſo united to the Crown of *Frauce*, from which it was at firſt diſmembred.

The Arms of theſe Earles, were Quarterly 1 *France*; 2 *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg:* The 3d, &c.

7 As for the Countrie of *AGENOIS*, the laſt part of *Gaſcoigne*, it never had other Lords (after it left off to be *French*) than the Dukes of *Aquitaine*. The principall Cities of it, 1 *Agen*, a rich, populous, and well-traded Town, ſeated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitfull Countrie: A Biſhops See, a Seneſchalſie, and held to be the faireſt in *Gaſcoigne*. 2 *Condon*, a Biſhops See alſo, from which the parts adjoyning are called *Condonnois*. 3 *Villeneufne*, 4 *Claerac*, 5 *Marmand*, 6 *Foy*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of thoſe ſeverall members which made up the great bodie of the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*; let us next look on the Eſtate of the whole thus brought together: which in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, was given unto the *Gothes*, before poſſeſſed of all *Gallia Narbonenſis*, by *Valentinian* the 3d, as a reward for their ſervice in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Gothes* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clovis*, the fifth King of the *French*, continuing under his Succeſſors, till *Ludovicus Pius* made it a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngeſt Sonne. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Sonnes of this *Pepin*, being diſpoſſeſſed by *Charles* the *Bald*; it was by him conferred on *Arnulph*, of the houſe of *Burgundie*, for his many good ſervices againſt the *Normans*, Anno 844. Whoſe Succeſſors take here in this order following.

The Dukes of *Aquitaine*:

844.	1 *Ranulph* of *Burgundy*, firſt Duke of *Aquitaine*.	1086.	9 *William* V. Sonne of *William* the fourth.
875	2 *William*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Nephew of *Ranulph*.	1156.	10 *Lewis* the ſeventh of *France*, in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, ſole Heir of *William* the fifth.
902.	3 *Ebles*, Earl of *Poictou*, ſucceeded in *Aquitaine* and *Auvergne*, by the Will and Teſtament of Duke *William*.	1152	11 *Henry*, Duke of *Normandie*, and Earl of *Anjou*, &c. in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, divorced from *Lewis* on pretence of ſome conſanguinity; after King of *England*.
911.	4 *Ebles* II. Sonne of *Ebles* the firſt.	1169.	12 *Richard*, King of *England*, the Sonne of *Henry*.
935.	5 *William* II. the Sonne of *Ebles* the ſecond.	1199.	13 *Iohn*, King of *England*, the Brother of *Richard*; who forfeiting his eſtates in *France*, on a judiciall ſentence pronounced againſt him for the (ſuppoſed) murther of his Nephew *Arthur*, Duke of *Bretagne*; *Aquitaine* and the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces were ſeized on by the *French*, Anno 1202.
970.	6 *William* III. Sonne of *William* the ſecond.		
1019.	7 *Guy*, the Sonne of *William* the third.		
1021.	8 *William* IV. Sonne of *Guy*.		

But notwithſtanding this *Arreſt*, the *Engliſh* ſtill continued their pretenſions to it, till at the laſt it was agreed betwixt King *Lewis* the 9th of *France*, and *Henry* the 3d of *England*, Anno 1259. That the *Engliſh* ſhould reſt ſatisfied with *Guienne*, the bounds whereof were to be the *Pyrenees* on the South, and the River of *Charente* on the North, comprehending therein alſo the Countrie of *Limoſin*; and that on his inveſtiture into this eſtate, he ſhould relinquiſh all his rights in *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Maine*, &c: In conſideration whereof, he ſhould have 150000 Crowns in readie money.

On

On this accord the Kings of *England* became Homagers to the Crown of *France*, which sometimes they omitted, sometimes did it by Proxie, but never in person, till *Philip de Valois* required it of K. *Edw.* the third: and because such duties are not personally done by Soveraign Princes, *Du Serres* shall describe the formality of it. The place designed for this exploit was the Church of *Amiens*, "to which *Edward* came (saith he) with such a Train, as was entended rather to the honour of "himself than the *French* King. Royally attired he was, with a long Robe of Crimson Velvet, "powdred with *Leopards* of Gold; his Crown upon his head, his Sword by his side, and Golden "spurres upon his heels. *Philip*, attended by the chief Officers of the Realm, sat upon his Throne, "apparelled in a long robe of purple Velvet, powdred with *Flower de Lyces* of Gold; his Crown "upon his head, and the Scepter in his hand. Vicount *Melun*, the great *Chamberlain* of *France*, com- "manded *Edward* to take off his Crown, sword, and spurres, and to kneel down: which he did "accordingly. Then taking both his hands, and joyning them together, he said unto him; *Yea* "*become a* Liege man *to the King my Master, who is here present, as Duke of* Guienne, *and Peer of* "France, *and promise to be faithfull and loyall to him*; *say yea*: *and* Edward *said yea, and arose.* But the Historian notes withall, that *Philip* paid dearly for this *Pageant*, the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made *France* a field of blood. And here it is to be observed, that though the Kings of *England* by this new investiture, were entituled Dukes of *Guienne* onely, yet they had all the power and privileges of Dukes of *Aquitaine*, excepting the homage of the great Lords and Earls of *Gascoigne*, which formerly belonged unto them. Insomuch as *Richard* the second, though Duke of *Guienne* onely in stile and title, invested his Vncle *John* of *Gaunt* in that brave estate, under the stile and title of Duke of *Aquitaine*, summoned to Parliament by that name by the said King *Richard*. From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the *English* had possession of the Dukedom of *Guienne*, according to the order of their Successions, from the 40th of King *Henry* the third, Anno 1259, to the 29th of King *Henry* the sixth, Anno 1452 (the intercalation of *John* of *Gaunt* excepted onely:) when outed of all their old rights in *France*, rather by the good fortune, than by the valour of *Charles* the seventh, the *English* then divided in Domestick Factions, and not at leisure to look after the affairs of *France*. Nor doe I find, that *Guienne* beeing thus recovered, was ever dismembred from that Crown, but when King *Lewis* the 11th assigned it over to his Brother the Duke of *Berry*, to take him off from joyning with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Burgundie* in a new confederacy, who held it but two years, and died the last Duke of *Guienne*.

The Arms of this Dukedom were *Gules*, a Leopard or Lyon *Or*; which joyned to the two Lyons of *Normandy*, make the Arms of *England*.

13 *LANGUEDOC.*

Languedoc.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the *Pyrenean* hils, the Land of *Rousillon*, and the *Mediterranean*, on the South; on the North, with *Forrest*, *Quercn*, and *Auvergn*; on the East, with *Provence* and *Daulphine*; on the West, with *Gascoigne*. Whereas the other *Frenchmen* in an affirmation say *Ouy*, these of this Country say *Oc*; and therefore *Ortelius* conjectures, it was called *Languedoc*. But the truth is, it took denomination from the *Gothes*, who reigning long in this Country, left behind them a smack of their Language, and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now, *Euphoniæ gratiâ*, termed *Languedotia*, or *Langnedoc*, that is, the *Goths* Language.

The Countrie on those parts which lie next to *Auvergn*, is like the *higher* parts thereof, mountainous and not very fruitfull; in all the rest, as rich and pleasant as the best Provinces in *France*, and having the advantages of Olives, Raisins, Figs, Orenges, and other fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring *Provence*. In that participating the commodities both of *France* and *Spain*. The people have somewhat in them of the antient *Gothes*, and draw neerer to the temper of the *Spaniards*, than any other of the *French*, as being accounted very devout, great vaunters of themselves, affecting bravery above their condition and estates; not caring how they pinch it on the working days, or at home in private, so they may flaunt it in the street, and be fine on *holydays*. The humour also of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principall Rivers of this *Province*, are 1 *Aurance*, 2 *Lieran*, and 3 *Orbe*, emptying themselves into the *Rhosne*, and *Alby*, which disburdeneth it self into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Nismes* (in *Latin Nemausus*) antiently a Colonie of the *Romans*, now a Bishops See; where there remain some marks of the *Roman* greatnes, especially the ruines of a spacious Palace built by the Emperour *Adrian*. 2 *Mont-pelier* (in *Latin Mons Pessulanus*) situate on an high mountain, as the name imports, some twelve miles distant from the Sea; an Vniversitie for the study of *Physick*, & for that very happily seated, the Countrie round about affording great variety of *medicinall* herbs. A *Viscountie* in former times, conveied by *Marie* Daughter of *William* the last Lord *Viscount* hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her husband; next, made a Member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and by *James* King of *Majorca*, sold to King *Philip* of *Valois*. Of late one of the strongest holds which those of the *Reformed* Religion had in this Countrie, and memorable for the notable resistance which it made against the whole forces of *Lewis* the 13th. in the last *Civill* Wars about *Religion*. 3 *Aleth*. and 4 *Carcassonne*, both Bishops Sees, both seated on the River *Ande*; the people of both speaking a corrupt *French*, with an intermixture of some *Spanish*. 5 *Alby*

on

Languedoc. on the River ſo called, the *Civitas Albigentium* of *Antoninus*, the chief of this part of *Languedoc*, called from hence *La Paix Albigeois*; remarkeable in *Church-hiſtorie* for thoſe great oppoſites to the corruptions and errours of the Church of *Rome*, called the *Albigenſes*. 6 *Beziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, a *Roman* Colonie of old, now a Biſhops See. 7 *Agde*, called *Agatha* by antient writers, remarkeable for a Councill held there in the year 450, and for a well-frequented Port, at the mouth of the River *Egband*. 8 *Narbon*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the Seat of the *Phocenſes*, and the firſt *Roman* Colonie (next after *Carthage*) out of *Italy*. In *Italy* it ſelf (to obſerve ſo much by the way) were no leſs than 150 Colonies; 57 in *Africk*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, in *England* 4 only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countries ſome, but very few in reſpect of the largneſs of the Territories. Theſe *Colonies* were inſtituted partly to repreſs Rebellions in the Conquered Countries; partly to reſiſt a forrain enemy, partly to reward the antient Souldiers, partly to relieve the poorer ſort, and partly to purge and empty the Citie of the ſuperfluity and redundance of her people. Now if the queſtion be asked, whether a *Colony* or a *Fortreſs* be more behoovefull, I anſwer with *Boterus* in his *Raggio d ſtato*, that a *Fortreſs* is more fit for ſudden uſe, and a *Colony* for Continuance: the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as ſoon loſt; the other require ſome time of ſetling, and are after of a good ſufficiency to defend themſelves. As we ſee in our times, the *Spaniſh* Colonies of *Ceuta* and *Tanger* in *Africk*; and our own of *Calais*, which was the laſt Town we loſt on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the infancie of the *Roman* Empire, the moſt populous and greateſt Town of all *France*: inſomuch, as from it all this part of *France* was called *Gallia Narbonenſis*. A Province of which *Pliny* delivered us this cenſure: Narbonenſis Gallia *agrorum cultu, morum virorumque dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli provinciarum poſtponenda*; *breviterque* Italia *potiùs quàm provincia*, It was alſo called *Gallia Braccata*, from the garments that the Inhabitants did wear, which were much like to the *Trouzes*, which are worn by the *Iriſh* footmen, and are called in *Latine Bracca*. 9 *La Puy*, the See of a Biſhop, who in *Latin* is called *Podienſis*, the chief of that part of *Languedoc*, which is named *Velay*, the antient ſeat of the *Velauni*. 10 *Viviers*, on the River *Rhoſne*, (by *Plinie* named *Alba Helviorum*) from whence the Country adjoyning hath the name of *Vivaretz*. 11 *Rhodes* or *Rutena*, the principall Citie of the *Ruteni*, now a Biſhops See; from whence the Countrie round about hath the name of *Rouvergn*; though ſome account this *Rouvergn*, a diſtinct Province, and no part of *Languedoc*. 12 *Tholouſe*, ſeated on the *Garonne*, antiently the principall Citie of the *Tectoſages*, and the *Toloſates*, placed by old Writers in this tract, now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greateſt in all *France*. The ſeat of an Arch-Biſhop, and an Vniverſity: So antient, that ſome report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Iſrael*. Here was a *Parliamentary* Court erected, for the adminiſtration of Iuſtice in theſe parts, 1302. As for the Story of *Tholouſe*, it was obſerved, that certain Souldiers having ſtole ſacrilegiouſly ſome Gold out of the Temples of *Tholouſe*, (when it was ſackt by *Cepio* a *Roman* Conſull) came all to miſerable and unfortunate ends: hence grew that Adage, *Aurum habet Tholoſanum*, applyed to unhappy men.

But that which deſerves moſt note in the Hiſtory of it, are the large and ſpacious Fields about it, called by the Writers of theſe times by the name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100. in breadth 70 *French* Leagues. In which fields was fought that terrible Battle between *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, and *Ætius* the *Roman* Lieutenant in *France*, *Ætius* was ſtrengthned by the *Gothes*, *Franks*, *Burgundians*, and *Germans*. *Attila's* Army conſiſted of *Hunnes*, *Eruli*, *Scythes*, *Sarmatians*, and *Suevians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that day loſt their lives: *Attila* himſelf being driven to that deſperate plunge, that making a funerall pile of *Horſe Sadales*, he would have burned himſelf. But his enemies weary of wel-doing, or *Ætius* politickly fearing, that if *Attila* were quite deſtroyed, the *Gothes*, *Franks*, and others of the *Barbarians* then confederate with him would become too inſolent, gave him leave to retire home through *Italy*, which he haraſſed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, ſo that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. *Ætius*, notwithſtanding this good ſervice, was by *Valentinian* the Emperour of the *Weſt*, rewarded with the loſs of his head. By which act, the Emperour (as one truly told him) *had cut off his right hand with his left*. And indeed ſo it happened. For not long after, he himſelf was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of *Rome* irrecoverably deſtroyed. Now that theſe Fields lay here abouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champaigne* (as ſome learned and induſtrious men have been of opinion) I am aſſured by theſe three reaſons. Firſt the improbabilitie that *Ætius* having got the victory, ſhould ſuffer ſuch a vaſt and numerous Army to paſs through the whole length of *France*, from one end to the other, and having waſted all the Countrie, to break into *Italy*: and ſecondly the teſtimony of *Jornandes* an antient writer, who telleth us, firſt, that before this fight, *Attila* had beſiedged and diſtreſſed the City of *Orleans*, and therefore was not vanquiſhed in the fields of *Chalons*; and then, that immediately upon the Victory, *Toriſmund* the King of the *Gothes*, (his Father *Theodoric* being ſlain) *in Campis Catalaunicis ubi & pugnaverat, Regia Majeſtate ſubvectus*, Toloſam *ingreditur*; being proclamed King in thoſe very fields, entred with great State and Triumph into *Tholouſe*, The Regall Citie at that time of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Which plainly proves the place of battle to be neer this City: though poſſible by the name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof conſidered) we are to underſtand the whole Country of *Languedoc*.

The

The old Inhabitants of this Countrie beſides the *Helvii*, the *Vellanni*, the *Tectosages*, and *Albigenſes*, formerly remembred, were the *Agatenſes*, *Beterenſes*, *Gabales*, *Volcæ*, and the *Arecomici*, all which, together with ſome others of leſſer note, made the Province of *Narbonenſis Prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire aſſigned with the reſt of *Narbonenſis*, & ſome part of *Spain*, to *Athaulfus* King of the *Gothes*, whom *Honorius* by this gift bought out of *Italie*. The *Gothes* having got ſo good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their bounds, by taking in the moſt part of *Aquitain*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergn*: but forced to quit them to the *French*, who Conquered that from them, which they got from the *Romans*; and ſhut them up within the limits of their firſt Donation: after this they declined as faſt in *France*, as they thrived in *Spain*; loſing *Provence* to *Theodoric* King of the *Oſtro-Gothes*, or *Gothes of Itali*: Whoſe ſucceſſour *Amalaſunta*, fearing a War from *Greece*, reſigned her intereſs in *Provence* to *Theodobert* the *French* King of *Mets*. Nothing now left unto the *Gothes* of their *Gallick* purchaſes, but this *Languedock* only; and this they held as long as they had any thing to do in *Europe*; but loſt it finally to the *Moors*, with all *Spain* it ſelf. Recovered from the *Moors* by *Charles Martel*, and added to the reſt of the *French* Empire, it was by *Charles* the great given to one *Thurſin*, of the race of the antient Kings, with the title of the Earl of *Tholouſe*, on condition that he would be *Chriſtned*. How long it continued in his Race, it is hard to ſay, the ſtory and ſucceſſion of theſe Earls being very imperfect; not ſetled in a way of Lineall Deſcent, till the time of *Raimond* the eighth Earl, Brother to another *Raimond* Earl of St. *Giles* (a Town of *Guienne*) whoſe Grand-child *Hugh*, being an adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and wanting money to provide himſelf for that expedition, ſold his Eſtate herein to his Vncle *Raimond*, the Earl of St. *Giles* before mentioned. From this time forward we find theſe Earls to be as often called the Earls of St. *Giles*, as the Earls of *Tholouſe*; and by that name frequently remembred in the *Eaſtern ſtories*, but not without ſome mark of infidelity, as if not ſound and throughpaced to the Cauſe on foot. A puniſhment whereof the ſhort continuance of this houſe is ſuppoſed to be. For *Raimond* the *Great*, Earl of *Tholouſe*, St. *Giles*, and *Tripoli* (in the *Holy-Land*) had three Sonnes all of them ſucceeding; the firſt two iſſueleſs, the third the Father of *Raimond*, the Father of another *Raimond*, who proved a great maintainer of the *Albigenſes*, and in purſuance of that Cauſe murdered the Legat of the Pope ſent to Excommunicate him, & ſtrangled his own Brother *Baldwin*, becauſe he found him not inclinable to his opinions. For this cauſe Warred upon, and Vanquiſhed by *Simon de Monfort*, Father of *Simon de Monfort*, the great Earl of *Leiceſter*; and after many troubles, and continuall Wars, left his eſtate and quarrell to his Sonne named alſo *Raimond*, the laſt Earl of this Houſe; Who proving alſo a ſtrong Patron of theſe *Albigenſes*, was condemned for a *Heretick*, curſed by the Pope, and perſecuted by the *French* Kings, *Philip* the ſecond, *Lewis* the 8th, and St. *Lewis*. This laſt, willing to make a peaceable compoſition, maried his Brother *Alfonſo*, to *Jane* daughter and heir to Count *Raimond*, with this clauſe, That if it ſhould happen theſe two to die without iſſue, then *Languedoc* ſhould be incorporated to the Crown. *Raimond* agreed, the mariage was ſolemnized, Anno 1249. They both died without iſſue, 1270, and *Languedoc* returned to the Crown in the dayes of *Philip* the third. Languedoc

The names and Succeſion of theſe Earls, in regard they were *Peers* of *France*, great Princes, and for the moſt part men of action, take in order thus.

A. Ch. The Earls of *Tholouze*.

779. 1 *Turſin*, the firſt Earl of *Tholouze*.
803. 2 *William*, made Earl by *Charlemaigne*, Peer of *France* at the firſt foundation of that Order.
828. 3 *Iſauret Thurſin*, Sonne of *Thurſin* the firſt Earl.
841 4 *Bertrand*, Sonne of *Iſauret Thurſin*.
894. 5 *William* II. of ſome other houſe.
919. 6 *Ponce*, a great *Juſticiar*, but of unknown race.
963. 7 *Almaric*, of as obſcure parentage as *Ponce*:
1003. 8 *Raymond*, the Brother of *Raymond* Earl of S. *Giles*, advanced by *Robert* King of *France*.
1052. 9 *William* III. Duke of *Aquitaine*, ſucceeded in right of his Wife, the Daughter of *Raymond*.
1086. 10 *Hugh* [illegible], Sonne of *William* the 3d, ſold his Eſtate and Earldom to his Uncle *Raymond*.
1096. 11 *Raymond* II. Earl of S. *Giles*, *Tholouze*, and *Tripoli*; of great note in the Warre of the *Holy-Land*.
12 *Bertrand*, Sonne of *Raymond* the *Great*.
13 *William* IV. Brother of *Bertrand*.
1101. 14 *Alfonſo*, Brother of *William* the fourth.
1146. 15 *Raymond* III. Sonne of *Alfonſo*.
1185. 16 *Raymond* IV. Sonne of *Raymond* the 3d, the Great Patron of the *Albigenſes*.
1222. 17 *Raymond* V. Sonne of *Raymond* the 4th, vanquiſhed, and compounded with, by King *Lewis* the Saint.
1249. 18 *Alfonſo* II. Brother of St. *Lewis*, and Husband of *Ioan*, daughter and heir of the laſt *Raymond*: after whoſe death, and the deceaſe of *Ioan* the Counteſs, Anno 1270. this Earldom was united to the Crown of *France*; according to the Capitulations before mentioned.

The Arms of this Earldom were *Gules*, a Croſs *Pommelè*, of 12 points, *Or*.

Provence.

14 PROVENCE.

PROVENCE is environed with *Languedoc* on the West; *Daulphine* on the North; the *Mediterranean* on the South; and on the East with the *Alpes*, and the River *Varus*; which divide it from *Piemont*, the neereſt of the *Alpine* Provinces.

It took this name from the *Romans*, who being called in by the *Marſilians*, to revenge a private wrong, wholly poſſeſſed themſelves of this countrey, calling it κατ' ἐξοχὴν, The *Province*. Under their Empire it continued, making up the whole Province of *Narbonenſis Secunda*, and part of *Alpes Maritimæ*. How it was given unto the *Viſigothes*, or *Gothes* of *Spain*, and from them taken by the *Oſtrogothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italie*, hath been ſhewn in *Languedoc*. Being reſigned unto the *French*, it became a part of the new Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. By *Hugh de Arles* upon his reſignation of that Kingdom to *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundie* beyond the *Iour*, given unto *William* his Sonne, with the ſtile and title of Earl of *Provence*; confirmed therein by the Emperour *Conrade* the ſecond, on whom the rights of that Kingdom had been transferred, to be held of him, and his Succeſſours in the Empire. In his poſteritie it continued, till conveyed to the Earls of *Barcelone*, by the mariage of the Lady *Doulce* with Earl *Raymond Arnold*, Anno 1082. Carried, together with that Earldom, to the Crown of *Aragon*; and finally, by *Beatrix*, heir generall of this Familie, to *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, Anno 1262, whom *Vrban* the 4th not long after crowned King of *Naples*. By *Joan* the firſt, the fourth from *Charles*, driven out of *Naples* by *Lewis* of *Hungaria*, and reſtored again by the power of Pope *Clement* the fift, the City and Territorie of *Avignion* (where the Pope reſided at that time) is diſmembred from the Earldom of *Provence*, and given in Fee for ever to the Church of *Rome*: partly to recompence that favour, and partly for diſcharge of ſome old Arrears of Rent or Tribute, pretended to be due to the See of *Rome* for the Realm of *Naples*. A Citie which had formerly been under the Protection, and by that title in the Actuall poſſeſſion of many of the Popes of *Rome*; ever ſince the conviction of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, to whom it formerly belonged, but held by them in Fee of the Earls of *Provence*. Not long after this Donation, the ſaid *Joan* adopted for her Heir and Succeſſour, *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* the fift of *France*, deſcended lineally from *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*: poſſeſſed by this Adoption of the Earldom of *Provence*, and a title to the Realm of *Naples*. *Rene*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, having no iſſue-male ſurviving, made *Lewis* of *Chalons*, Prince of *Orange* (another Signeurie in this Countrie) and gave him therewithall full power to make Lawes, coin money, and pardon all Crimes; to write himſelf *Prince of Orange by the Grace of God*, with all the other Prerogatives of an abſolute Prince. This was in the yeer 1415. So that now the Countrie ſtands divided betwixt the *French* King, the Pope, and the Prince of *Orange*; each of them abſolute and independent in his own Eſtate: as long at leaſt as the *French* King is pleaſed to give way unto it. The whole, much of the ſame nature with *Languedoc*, before deſcribed,

In that part of it which belongs to the King, the Towns of ſpeciall note, are, 1 *Aix*, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*, the Metropolis of *Narbonenſis ſecunda*, and at that time called *Aquæ Sextiæ*, from *Sextius* it's founder, and the hot Bathes here. Now, and of long time, an Archbiſhops See, and the chief Citie of this Province, and for that reaſon made the Seat of a Court of Parliament for this Country, Anno 1501. Moſt memorable in old ſtorie for the great diſcomfiture of the *Cimbri*, by *C. Marius*. Who not willing to venture on the enemy united (for they were no fewer than 300000 fighting men, and lately fleſhed in the overthrow of *Manlius* and *Cepio*, (two *Roman* Conſuls) permitted them quietly to paſs by his Camp: The *Barbarians* who imputed it to fear or cowardize, ſcornfully asking his Souldiers, what ſervice they would command them to *Rome*. But when, for their eaſier paſſage over the *Alpes*, they had divided themſelves into 3 Companies; *Marius* ſeverally ſetting on them all, put them all to the Sword. *Ea victoria viſus meruiſſe ne ejus nati Reipub. pœniteret*, by this Victory, and this onely, giving cauſe to the *Romans* (as *Velleius* hath it) not to be ſorry for his Birth. 2 *Arles*, in *Latine*, *Arelatum*, by *Auſonius* called the *Rome* of *France*, and in thoſe times ſo highly prized, that *Conſtantinus Flavius* being choſen Emperour by the *Britiſh* Legions, in the declining times of the Weſtern Empire, intended to have made it the Imperiall Seat. And not leſs memorable in Church-ſtorie for a Councill here held in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, Anno 313, in which was preſent *Reſtitutus* the Biſhop of *London*, and certain other Biſhops of the *Britiſh* Church. It was antiently a *Roman* Colonie, and now the See of an Archbiſhop; ſituate on the River *Rhoſne*, in a low and mariſhie ſituation: which naturall ſtrength ſeconded by the new works of King *Henry* the 4th, have made it one of the beſt Bulwarks of *France*, on that ſide of the Kingdom. Selected for the Seat Royall of the *French* Kings of *Burgundie*, who from hence were called Kings of *Arles*; as the Kings of *Auſtraſia* (or *Eaſt France*) were called Kings of *Metz*, becauſe they had made choice of that Citie for the Regall Seat. Between this Citie and the Sea, but on the other ſide of the River, runneth a deep Channel, cut with infinite charge and induſtrie by *C. Marius*, for conveyance of victuals into his Camp, in his War againſt the *Cimbri* beforenamed: by *Ptolomie* called *Foſſa Marianæ*, by the *French*, *Camargue*, a corrupt word made of *Caius Marius*, the Countrey about which, called alſo by the ſame name for the ſpace of 24 miles, is of excellent paſturage, and breedeth great abundance of horſes; the chief Town of which is called 3 St. *Gillis*. 4 *Marſeilles*, a known Port on the *Mediterranean*, firſt built by the *Phocenſes*, a *Greek* Nation of *Aſia Minor*, who being baniſhed their Countrie, came and planted here,

about

about the reigne of *Tarquinius Superbus*, the laſt King of *Rome*. It was firſt onely a Confederate Citie of the *Romans*, for whoſe ſake, being moleſted by the *Salii*, and others of the neighbouring Nations, the *Roman Legions* firſt entred *Gaul*: afterwards, ſiding with *Pompey* in the *Civill* Wars, or at leaſt deſirous to ſtand neutrall, it was forced by *Caeſar*, and made a Colonie. In the proſperity hereof it drave a great trade on the *Mediterranean*, and was the mother of many fair and flouriſhing Colonies, *Emporia*, *Forum Julium*, *Nicaea*, *Olbia*, diſperſed in the adjoyning ſhores of *France*, *Spain*, and *Italie*. 5 *Glandeves*, antiently called *Glanum*, a Biſhops See, ſeated upon the *Maritim Alps*. 6 *Taulon*, by *Ptolomie* called *Tauroentium*, and by ſome *Tholone*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, well ſtored with Oil, great quantitie of Salt bronght hither from the Iſle of *Eres*, about three Leagues off, and a kind of *Almonds* called *Provence Almonds*; made by this means one of the moſt frequented Ports of the *Mediterranean*. 7 *Antibi* (in *Latin Antipolis*) a Sea-coaſt Town neer the River *Varo*, one of the fartheſt of this Country towards *Italy*. 8 *Feriols* (the *Forum Julium* of the antients) on the *Mediterranean*, founded by the *Maſſilians* as before was ſaid; after a Colonie of the *Romans*. 9. *La Grace*, a Biſhops See, more within the Continent. 10 *Ciſteron*, on the Borders of *Daulphine*. 11 *Brignols*, 12 *Merindol*, and *Chabriers*, two little Towns amongſt the Mountains, towards *Daulphine*, not otherwiſe of note but for the horrid Maſſacre of the *Proteſtants*, before deſcribed. *Orange.*

II. The *Principalitie* of *Orange* lieth on the North-Weſt of this Province, watered with the Rivers of 1 *Durance*, 2 *Seile*, 3 *Meine*, and 4 *Ecque*; all helping to augment the *Rhoſne*. The chief places of it are, 1 *Aurange*, ſeated on the *Meine*, an Epiſcopall See, famous for many rare and wonderfull Antiquities, demonſtrating the *Roman* Greatneſs, of whom once a Colonie; but of moſt note in Church ſtory for a Councill held here againſt the *Semi-Pelagians*, in the year 444. called *Arauſicanum*, the *Latin* name of this Citie being antiently *Arauſia*, in ſome Writers *Aurlacus*, and of late *Aurangia*. 2 *Eſtang*. 3 *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly St. *Paul de Vences*, being the *Civitas Vencienſium* of *Antoninus*, but not otherwiſe memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were antiently of the Noble Family of the *Bauſſii*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold* the laſt of this Family, it was conveyed im mariage to *John de Chalons*, one of the moſt noble houſes of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis* the Sonne of this *John* obteined of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou* and Earl of *Provence*, the Soveraignty hereof, as before was ſaid. By *Claude* the Heir generall of this houſe, beſtowed in mariage by King *Francis* the firſt on Count *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Ambaſſadour from *Maximilian* Emperour of *Germany*, Anno 1514. it was tranſlated to that Family where it ſtill remaineth.

The Princes of *Orange*.

1475. 1 *Lewis* of *Chalons*, firſt abſolute Prince of *Orange*.

2 *William de Chalons*, who ſubmitted his Eſtate to the Parliament of *Daulphine*, to ſatisfie King *Lewis* 11th. by whom reſtored again to his former Soveraignty.

3 *John de Chalons*, a bitter enemy to King *Lewis*, in defence of the rights of *Mary* Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*

1500. 4 *Philibert de Chalons*, ſlain at the ſiedge of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces for *Charles* the fift.

1530. 5 *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, in right of *Claude* his Wife, Siſter and Heir of *Philibert*.

1536. 6 *Rene* of *Naſſaw*, Sonne of *Henry* and *Claude*, ſlain at the ſiedge of *Lindrecie* in the *Netherlands*.

1544. 7 *William* of *Naſſaw*, Couzen German and next Heir of *Rene*, the great Patron and Aſſertor of the *Belgick Liberties* againſt the *Spaniard*, ſlain by a Partiſan of *Spain*, 1584.

1584. 8 *Philip* of *Naſſaw*, kept, as an Hoſtage all his life, by the King of *Spain*.

9 *Maurice* of *Naſſaw*, Brother of *Philip*, Commander of the Forces of the *United Provinces*

1625. 10 *Hen.* of *Naſſaw* II. Succeſſor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Eſtates, and Honours.

1648. 11 *William* of *Naſſaw* II. the Sonne and Succeſſor of *Henry*, maried the Princeſs *Mary* eldeſt Daughter of *Charles* King of great *Britain*, &c. on *May day*, 1641.

The Revenues of this principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend *Or*, 2 *Or*, a Hunters Horn *Azure* ſtringed *Gules*; the third as, &c. Over all an Eſcocheon of Pretence Chequie, *Or* and *Azure*. More briefly thus, Quarterly *Chalons* and *Aurange*, under an Eſcocheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Aurange* lieth the County of *VENAISCINE*, as the *French* call it, *Comitatus Veneſſinus* in the *Latin*, ſo called from *Avenio* (now *Avignon*) the chief Citie of it. Formerly it belonged to the Earls of *Tholouſe*, but held by them as *Homagers* (for this eſtate) of the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Hereſie, brought under the protection and patronage of the Popes of *Rome*: the more abſolute Soveraignty hereof and of the Citie *Avignon*, being ſetled on them by Queen *Joane*, as before is ſaid. The principall Cities of this tract, are, 1 *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Plinie*, and *Mela*, a very fair and flouriſhing

Provence. flouriſhing Citie, pleaſantly ſeated on both ſides of the River of *Rhoſne*: famous for being the reſidence of the Popes for 70 yeers, which time the *Romans* remember till this day by the name of the *Babylonian captivity*; adminiſtring ever ſince an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The firſt Pope that removed hither was *Clement* the 5th, Anno 1303, when as yet, the Popes had no more right in it than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome* by *Gregory* the 11th, Anno 1377. In this Citie are ſaid to be 7 Palaces, 7 Pariſh Churches, 7 Monaſteries, 7 Nunneries, 7 Innes, and 7 Gates. So that if there be any *myſterie* in the number of *ſeven*, or any credit to be given to ſuch *Pythagorean divinity*; the Archbiſhop of this Citie may as well be entituled *Antichriſt*, as the Pope of *Rome*; if there be nothing but the *myſterie* of this number to affix it to him. It was made an Vniverſity at the time of the Popes firſt ſetling here, and ſo ſtill continueth; *Alciate* the great *Emblematiſt* being here Profeſſour. 2 *Carpentras*, by *Ptolomie* called *Carpentoractte*, a Biſhops See; as is alſo 3 *Cavaillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a *Roman* Colonie, on the River *Durance*; and 4 *Taraſcon*, on the *Rhoſne*, oppoſite to *Beaucaire* in *Languedoc*: for the Popes dwelling here ſo long, could not be otherwiſe attended than by mitred Prelates. 5 *Vaſon*, *Civitas Vaſion-enſium*, of *Antoninus*.

The *Revenues* of the Pope here are not very great, and thoſe expended all in keeping of Forts and Garriſons, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Proteſtants* of *Orange*. So that it is ſuppoſed that it is rather a charge, than a profit to him: which maketh the people like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more money to them than he gathereth from them.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Countrie, were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Maſſilienſes*, *Vaſionenſes*, and *Vencienſes*, before mentioned; beſides the *Deceates* about *Antibe*, the *Senitii*, and *Sigeſtorii* about *Ciſteron*: all conquered by the *Romans*, in their firſt war in *Gaule*, called in to aid thoſe of *Marſeilles* againſt the *Salii*. The fortune of it ſince, hath been ſhewn before. Nothing remains now, but the Catalogue of

The Earls of *Provence*.

1 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Sonne of *Lotharius*, King of *Auſtraſia*, and *Waldrada* his Concubine, made the firſt Earl of *Provence* by *Boſon* the firſt, King of *Burgundie*. He was after King of *Burgundie*, and *Italie* alſo.

2 *William a Arles*, the Sonne of *Hugh*.

3 *Gilbert*, Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Doulce*.

1082. 4 *Raymond Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelone*, the Husband of the Ladie *Doulce* of *Provence*.

1131. 5 *Berengar Raymond*, the 2d Sonne of *Raymond Arnold*, and the Ladie *Doulce*.

6 *Raymond* II. Sonne of *Berengar Raymond*.

1173. 7 *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon*, and E. of *Barcelone*, the Sonne and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, eldeſt Sonne unto *Raymond Arnold*, and the Ladie *Doulce*.

1196. 8 *Alfonſo* II. ſecond ſonne of *Alfonſo* the firſt, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Provence*, his elder Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, and the Earldom of *Barcelone*.

1261. 9 *Raymond* III. Sonne of *Alfonſo*, the laſt Earl of *Provence* of this Line.

10 *Charles* of *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*, and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the 3d, Earl of *Provence*. He was alſo King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c.

1282. 11 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1310. 12 *Robert*, King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1342. 13 *Ioan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Counteſs of *Provence*.

1371. 14 *Lewis*, Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Sonne of Queen *Ioan*, Earl of *Provence*, and titularie King of *Naples*, &c. (Of whoſe deſcent from *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, wee have ſpoke elſewhere.)

1385. 15 *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1416. 16 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1430. 17 *Renè*, Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.

1480. 18 *Charles*, Earl of *Maine*, Sonne of *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, the Brother of *Renè*, ſucceded in all the eſtates and titles of his Vncle; and at his death gave *Provence* to King *Lewis* the 11th, his Couſin *German*, as being the Sonne of *Charles* the 7th, and *Mary* Daughter of *Lewis* the 2d, Duke of *Anjou*, Siſter of *Lewis* the 3d and *Renè*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the laſt Earl of *Provence*: Immediately on whoſe deceaſe, *December*. 19th. Anno 1481. the King ſent a Commiſſion to *Palamede de Forban*, Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take poſſeſſion of the Countrey in his name, and command therein as Leiutenant Generall. Since which time *Provence* never was diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, ſo much as in the way of *Apennage*, or any honourarie title amongſt the Kings Children.

What the *Revenues* of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to ſay, having no good autoritie

to

to proceed upon. Onely I find, that beſides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other cuſtomary and caſuall Taxes, there was a Tax called the *Rostingsilver*, being ſixteen *Florens* levied upon every fire: which reckoning 3500 fires, (for ſuch the eſtimate of them was,) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florens*. Now it is ſubject to the rigour and uncertainty of the Kings Taxations, as well as all the reſt of *France*. And ſo much of thoſe Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the *French* and *Gothes*; let us next look on thoſe which at the ſame time were ſubdued by the *Burgundians*; whoſe Hiſtory, Kingdom, and Eſtate, are to be conſidered, before we come to the deſcription of their ſeverall Provinces. *Burgundians.*

The Kingdom of *BURGUNDY.*

THe Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS* at their firſt ſettlement in *Gaul*, contained all thoſe Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, then called the *Alpes Graiæ* and *Pœninæ*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunenſis Prima*, and *Viennenſis*, now paſſing under the new names of the *Dukedom* and *County* of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Griſons*, *Walliſland*, *Savoy*, *La Breſſe*, *Dauphine*, *Lionois*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of ground, able at once to tempt and ſatisfie an ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaule* of their own accord; though of their own accord they drew ſomewhat neer it. In their Originall they were a people bordering neer the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sept of them, and dwelling in thoſe parts in which are now the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Druſus* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they were utterly barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own language called *burgs*, gave them the name of *Burgundians* amongſt the *Romans*; in the ſame ſenſe as the wild *Arabs* had the name of *Scenitæ* amongſt the *Greeks*, from the like kinde of living. In the yeer 416. at the inſtigation of the *Vandals* they left their own ſeats, and planted themſelves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, and Electors of the *Rhene*. About which time they received the Chriſtian Faith, being then miſerably oppreſſed by the *Hunnes* breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themſelves of that Enemie, they betook themſelves to the God of the *Chriſtians*, and were univerſally baptized. After which, falling on the *Hunnes*, they ſlew no leſs than 30000 of them in one battell: from that time forwards never troubled with that barbarous Nation. *Chriſtians* then they were, and *Orthodox* in their profeſſion, before their coming into *Gaule*: and for that reaſon called in by *Stilico* to oppoſe the *French*, then threatning an invaſion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this invitation they paſſed over the River with an Armie of 800 0 fighting men, poſſeſſing themſelves of all which lay from the fartheſt ſhore of the *Rhoſne*, to the *Alpes* of *Italy*; and from the mountain *Vauge*, to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* onely excepted: about the ſame time planted by the *Gothes*. Their Government was under Kings; Many, according to their tribes, when they lived in *Germany*; *Monarchicall*, when ſetled in the Realm of *France*; where they had theſe five.

Kings of the *Burgundians.*

A. Ch.

408. 1 *Tibiça*, who firſt brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaule*.
2 *Gundioch*.
3 *Gundebault*, Vncle to *Clotilda*, Wife to *Clovis*, the fift King of the *French*, by her perſwaſion made inclinable to the *Chriſtian* Faith.
4 *Sigiſmund*.
5 *Gundomar*, the Sonne of *Sigiſmund*, firſt ſet upon by *Clodomire*, the Sonne of *Clovis*, King of *Orleans*, whom he ſlew in battel neer *Auſtun*, but afterward outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clotair*, Kings of *Paris* and *Soiſſons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother *Clodomire*. And ſo the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 yeers: *Guntram*, the Sonne of *Clotaire*, and *Clovis*, one of the Sonnes of *Dagobert* the firſt, being in their times honoured with the titles of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the firſt time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* ſetled amongſt the *French* in the way of ſucceſſion, was in the partage of that vaſt Empire of *Charlewaigne*, amongſt the Children and poſterity of *Ludovicus Pius*: In conſtituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this anſwerable to the other parts of that broken *monarchie*. The firſt of theſe *French* Kings was *Charles*, the youngeſt Sonne of *Lotharius*, Emperour, and King of *Italy*, eldeſt Sonne of the ſaid *Lewis* the *Godly*. The ſucceſſion in this order following.

The *French* Kings of *Burgundy*.

A. Ch.

855. 1 *Charles*, yonngeſt Sonne of the Emperour *Lotharius*; died without Iſſue.
858. 2 *Lotharius*, the 2d King of *Mets*, and *Lewis* the 2d Emperour, Brethren of *Charles*, ſucceeded in *Burgundie*; the mountain *Jour* dividing and bounding their Eſtates.
876. 3 *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperour, Unkle to the three former Kings, all dying without iſſue, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate: which he again divided into three Governments or Members: that is to ſay, *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Souſne*, cor-

Daulphine.

containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lions* and *Maſcon*. 2 *Burgundy* beyond the *Iour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Walliſland*, and the Eſtates of the *Griſons*; and 3ly *Burgundy* on the other ſide of the *Soaſne*, lying betwixt the other two; containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Breſſe*, and *Daulphine*. This laſt conferred, with the title of Earl, on *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, by *Charles* the *Bald*, who had maried his Siſter *Judith*; and not long after in the perſon of the ſaid Earl *Boſon*, raiſed unto a Kingdom by *Charles* the *Groſs*, by the name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings, theſe that follow.

4 *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, Husband of *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the 2d, Emperour, and King of *Burgundy*, was firſt by *Charles* the *Bald* made Earl of *Burgundie*, beyond the *Soaſne*; and afterwards by *Charles* the *Groſs* created the firſt King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Succeſſours, of the *German* Emperours.

5 *Lewis* II. Sonne of *Boſon* and *Hermingrade*; choſen King of *Italy*, but outed by the Faction of *Berengarius*.

917. 6 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Sonne of *Lotharius* the 2d, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; ſucceeded by the gift of *Lewis*; and was choſen by his Faction there, King of *Italy* alſo. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he reſigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction to that broken Title.

926. 7 *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Iour*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Hugh de Arles*.

937. 8 *Rodolph* II. Sonne of *Rodolph*; a Prince of ſo ſhort a reign, or ſo little note, that he is by ſome left out of the catalogue of theſe Kings.

9 *Boſon* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the firſt, by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Iour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.

965. 10 *Conrade*, Sonne to *Boſon* the ſecond.

990. 11 *Rodolph* III. Sonne to *Conrade*, who having no iſſue of his Body, gave his Eſtate to *Conrade* the 2d, Emperour of *Germany*, and his Sonne *Henry* ſurnamed the *Black*, whom he had by *Giſela*, the Siſter of this *Rodolph*; by whom it was united to the *German* Empire, Anno 1032. In the diſtractions whereof, following not long after his deceaſe, the Provinciall Earls or Governours for the *Germane* Emperonrs, made themſelves Maſters and *Proprietaries* of their ſeverall Provinces (the *Dukedom* of *Burgundy* excepted, ſetled long before) out of which roſe the great Eſtates of the Dukes of *Savoy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* and *Provence*, the *Daulphins* of *Viennoys*, and Lords of *Breſſe*, together with the Commonwealths of the *Switzers* and *Griſons*: every poor Bird ſnatching alſo ſome feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithſtanding the diſmembring and *cantoning* of this fair Eſtate, the ſucceeding Emperonrs of *Germany*, claimed not only a ſuperintendence over, but a diſpoſall of all the Countries that ever were under the command of a King of *Burgundy*: Inſomuch that the Emperour *Henry* the ſixt, receiving no ſmall part of the money which our *Richard* the firſt payed to the Duke of *Auſtria* for his ranſome, gave unto the ſaid *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Soveraignty of *Provence*, *Viennoys*, *Marſeilles*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lyons*, together with the homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digion*, and S. *Giles*. A royall gift, if either the Emperour had had any dominion over thoſe countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his anointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are ſaid to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Arg*, armed *Gules*. Which being ſaid, we will proceed to the deſcription of thoſe Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lie within the bounds of *France*; the reſt which lie beyond the *Jour*, having been ſpoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries; which made up the whole continent of the *Tranſ-jouran Burgundie*.

15 DAVLPHINE.

NOrth of the Countrie of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAVLPHINE*, having on the Eaſt, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alpes*; on the Weſt, *Lionoys*, and ſome part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhoſne*; and on the North, *La Breſſe*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lie towards *Piemont*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; that mountainous, ſtonie, and unfruitfull, of the ſame nature with the *Alpes*, with whoſe branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the reſt of *France*. The people of the *Higher*, and more mountainous parts, are generally groſs and rude; not capable of learning, but well enough inclined to Armes and traffick, and have a cuſtome, that on the coming on of Winter they ſend abroad all thoſe which are fit for Travell, (whom they call *Bics*, or *Biſonards*) who ſeldome return back till *Eaſter*: none ſtaying at home, but old men, children and impotent perſons, which cannot go abroad to get their livings. Thoſe in the *Lower*, are more civill, but not more given to labour than the Mountainers are; nor very covetous of gain, ſo they may live at eaſe, without want or pennrie. In both parts generally good Souldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The

The *Lower Daulphine*, together with that part of *Provence* which lies next the *Rhosne*, and the adjoyning parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennensis*, from *Vienna* the *Metropolis* of it, situate on the *Rhosne*, honoured with the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; still the chief City of this Country, an Archbishops See, and a Seige *Præsidiall*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennoys*, and was the title of the first *Proprietaries* of this Countrie, entituled *Daulphins* of *Viennoys*. To this Town *Archelaus*, the Sonne of *Herod*, was banished by *Augustus Cæsar*. 2 *Valence*, the chief Citie heretofore of the *Valentini*, then a *Roman* Colonie; now a Bishops See, and a Vniversity for the *Civill Law*; a rich, strong, and well-traded Town, seated on the *Rhosne*. The Countrie hereabouts from hence called *Valentinois*; and hath given honourarie title to two persons of more Fame than Honour: the first of which was *Cæsar Borgia*, the Sonne of Pope *Alexander* the sixt, who casting off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinois* by *Charles* the 8th; the other Madam *Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of King *Henry* the 2d, under whom she much swayed the affaires of *France*, and honoured with the title of Dutchess of it. 3 *Grenoble*, (in *Latine*, *Gratianopolis*,) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Accusiani*, the most populous and best built of all this Province, and much resorted to by the Lords and Nobless, by reason of the Court of *Parliament* here erected, Anno 1453 About this lyeth the Countrie called *Grisinaudan*, 4 *Terray*, 5 *Rossillon*, 6 *La Roche*, 7 *Montelimar*, all along the *Rhosne*; 8 *Romons*, upon the confluence of the *Rhosne*, and the River *Isere*. 9 *Cremieu*, 10 St. *Marcelin*, 11 St. *Andre*, 12 *Beaurepaire*, more within the Countrie. La Bresse.

The *Higher Daulphine*, together with those parts of *Provence* which lie next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimæ*; the *Metropolis* whereof, was, 1 *Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Archbishops See, and Seige *Præsidiall*; seated on an high rock, in the middest of a pleasant vallie surrounded with mountains, under which runnes the River *Durance*. The hilly Countrie hereabouts, is the highest of *France*. 2 *Brianson*, neer the head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantio*, by *Antoninus*. 3 *Gappe*, now a Bishops See, formerly the chief Citie of the *Apencenses*; the tract of whom is still found in the name of the adjoyning Territorie, called *Le Pais Gapençois*: Memorable for a Synod or Assembly of the *French Protestants* here holden, Anno in which it was determined, as, and for an Article of the Faith, that the *Pope was Antichrist*. 4 *Tricassin*, so called of the *Tricassini*, the old Inhabitants of these parts. 5 *Die*, the *Dia Vocontiorum* of *Antoninus*, a Bishops See, situate on the River *Drosne*: from whence come those small, but good stomack-wines, which we call *Vin Die*. 6 *Chorges*, 7 *Mombrun*, 8 *Essiles*, of which little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, besides the *Tricassini*, *Apencenses*, *Vacontii*, and *Accusiani* before mentioned, and the *Allobroges*, spoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were the *Segalauni* about *Valence*, the *Decenses* about *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. First conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at last by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the surrender of the same to the *German* Emperours. Vnder them it continued, till the yeer 1100. when *Guigne*, surnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Grisinaudan*, seeing the Emperour *Henry* the 4th over-born by the Popes, and not able to assert their own rights, seized upon this Province, under the title of Earl of *Viennoys*; to which *Guigne* the 2d, his Sonne and Successor, gave the name of *Daulphine*, either from his Wife so called, as some, or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others say. In this Family it continued, till the yeer 1349. when *Humbert* the last *Dolphin* of *Viennois* (for so they were called,) being surcharged with warres by *Ame*, (or *Awade*) Earl of *Savoy*, entred into the Order of *Dominican* Friers at *Lyons*, selling his Countrie at a small rate to *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, upon condition, that the eldest Sonne of *France* should be entituled alwayes *Dolphin of Viennois*; and quarter the Arms of *Daulphine* with those of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted, and *Charles*, the Sonne of K. *John*, the Sonne of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the title and estate in the very yeer of the surrendrie. Since this time, the eldest Sonne of *France* is called generally the *Daulphin* of *France*, sometimes the *Daulphin* onely, by way of Eminencie; and many times the *Prince-Daulphin*, to difference him from the *Daulphin* (or *Comte-Daulphin*) of *Auvergne*, and perhaps some others. A Title so annexed unto them, that it is usually laid by on the accession of a greater or superior dignitie: insomuch as *Francis* the eldest Sonne of *Henry* the 2d, (whom he succeeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots* in the right of *Mary* his wife, was by the *French* called commonly *Le Roy Daulphine*, or the *King Daulphin*. Nor have they the bare title of this Countrie only, but the command, profits, and possession of it; sending their own *Governours* thereunto; who by an antient indulgence, have the greatest privileges (conferring all Offices within the Province) of any Governours in *France*.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Dolphin hauriant, *Or*.

16 *LA BRESSE.*

LA BRESSE is bounded on the East, with *Savoy*; on the West, with *Lionois*; on the North, with *Charolois* in the Dutchie or *Burgundie*, and some part of the *Franche Comtie*; and on the South, with *Daulphine*; the reason of the name I finde not. The Countrie is very fruitfull and pleasant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of *Saone* and *Rhosne*, with which very well watred. Chief Towns herein are, 1 *Bellay*, a Bishops See. 2 *Bourg*, (for distinctions sake called *Bourg en Bresse*,) a Town

Lionois

Town ſo well fenced, and fortified with ſo ſtrong a Citadel for command of the Countrie, that it was thought little inferiour to the two impregnable Fortreſſes of St. *Katherines* and *Montmelian*, in *Savoy*. The Government of which Town aud Citadel, was earneſtly laboured for by the Duke of *Biron*, then Governour of *Burgundie*, after a repulſe on the like ſute for that of St. *Katherine*: but being ſuſpected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoy*, at that time on ill terms with King *Henry* the 4th, it was alſo denied him; which drew him into diſcontent, and thereby to his fatall ruine. Afterwards, during the minority of *Lewis* the 13th demoliſhed, by eſpeciall Order of the Counſell of *France*, for fear of being ſurprized by the Duke of *Savoy* during thoſe confuſions. It was of old time called *Forum Secuſianorum*, from the *Secuſiani*, the antient Inhabitants of this tract. 3 *Caſtillon*, 4 *Mont-Reall*, 5 *Bugey*, 6 *Veromen*, of which, nothing obſervable.

This little Province, being antiently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundie*, had it's own Earls, *Proprietarie* Lords hereof: who held it till the yeer 1285; at what time *Sibill*, the Daughter and Heir of *Ulric*, Earl of *Breſſe* and *Baugie*, (or *Baſgee*, as ſome Writers call it) conveyed the Eſtate in mariage to *Ame* or *Amadee*, the 4th of that name, Earl of *Savoy*. In which Houſe it continued till the yeer 1600, and then ſurrendred by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to King *Henry* the 4th, to ſilence the pretences which that King had made unto the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, and put an end unto the war then begun about it; the politick Duke chooſing rather to part with an Eſtate on this ſide of the Mountains, than to give that active King occaſion to look into *Italie*; to which *Savoy* muſt have been a Thorow-fare, *Piemont* an ordinary Paſs; and where no end could be expected, but the loſs of all. Surrendred then it was on good reaſon of State, and upon that ſurrender united and incorporated with the Crown of *France*, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digion*, as it ſtill continueth.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermines*, armed and Langued, *Or*.

17 *LIONOIS.*

THe Countrie of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Breſſe*; on the Weſt, with *Beaujolois*, *Forreſt* and *Auvergn*; on the North, with *Burgundie* Dutchie; and on the South, with *Daulphine*, and a part of *Languedoc*. So called from *Lyons* the chief Citie, and under that title made an Earldom by *Charles* the *Groſſe*, in the *cantoning* and diſmembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundie*: The Earldom containing at that time, not only *Lionois* it ſelf, but alſo *Forreſt* and *Beaujolois*, before deſcribed. The Earls hereof were at firſt onely *Provinciall* Governours, but under the diſtractions of the *German* Empire they ſhifted for themſelves, and became *hereditarie*; but long it held not in one hand. For firſt, the Earldom of *Forreſt*, and the Lordſhip or Signeurie of *Beaujeu* being taken out of it, about the year 990. the reſt of the Eſtate fell in ſome tract of time to the Biſhops and Church of *Lions*, but under the Soveraignty of the *French* Kings, as *Lords Paramount* of it.

The places in it of moſt note are, 1 *Maſcon*, (*Matiſconum*) a Biſhops See, ſituate on the *Soaſne*, antiently a diſtinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundie* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*: purchaſed of *William* the laſt Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Lewis* the 9th; and afterwards ſubjected to the Juriſdiction and Court of *Lions*, as it ſtill continueth. 2 *Eſchalas*, on the *Rhoſne*, on the South of *Lions*, oppoſite to *Vienne*, the chief Citie of the Lower *Daulphine*. 3 *Dandilli*, 4 *Francheville*, 5 *Chaumont*, and 6 *Labrelle*, all ſomewhat Weſtward of that River, but not much obſervable. 7. *Lions* it ſelf, pleaſantly ſeated on the confluence of the *Soaſne* and the *Rhoſne*, antiently a *Roman* Colonie, (teſtified by many old Inſcriptions) and honoured with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of *France* to *Auguſtus Ceſar*: now the moſt famous Mart of *France*, and an Vniverſitie; by our *Latine* Writers called *Lugdunum*. Theſe Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11th, for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Iulio* the 2d had excommunicated *Lewis* the 12th, he commanded by his Apoſtolicall autoritie that they ſhould be returned to *Geneva* again; but therein his pleaſure was never obeyed: the Marts continuing ſtill at *LIONS*, as a place more convenient and capacious of that great reſort of *French*, *Dutch*, and *Italian* Merchants, which frequent the ſame. As for the *Vniverſitie*, queſtionleſs it is very antient; being a ſeat of learning in the time of *Caius Caligula*. For in thoſe times, before an Altar conſecrated to *Auguſtus Ceſar* in the Temple ſpoken of before, this *Caligula* did inſtitute ſome exerciſes of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence: the *Victor* to be honoured according to his merit; the *vanquiſhed* either to be *ferulaed*, or with their own tongues to blot and expunge their writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoyning. Hence that of *Juvenal*, *Vt Lugdunenſem* Rhetor *dicturus ad Aram*, applied to dangerous undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* firſt comming into *Gaule*, it was the chief Citie of the *Hedui* and *Secuſiani*; afterwards the *Metropolis* of *Lugdunenſis Prima*. The Archbiſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *France*; and was ſo in the time of S. *Irenæus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Biſhop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperour of *Germanie*, who being a devout and conſcientious man, ſenſible of the many errours and corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, diſtributed the greateſt part of his riches amongſt the poor, and betook himſelf to meditation and ſtudying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnall eating of *CHRISTS* body, the ſubſtraction of the Cup in the bleſſed Sacrament, in matter of *Purgatorie*, the

the Supremacie, adoration of Images, Invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment; he held opinions contrary unto thoſe of *Rome*; and little different from thoſe of the preſent *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongſt ſome good Wheat there were many *Tares*; which gave the juſter colour to their Adverſaries to exclame againſt them. Being much followed, in regard of his pietie and charitie, he got unto himſelf and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the *Poor men of Lions*, given in deriſion and contempt. Afterwards, they were called *Waldenſes*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name oppoſed, and writ againſt by Frier *Thomas* of *Walden*. The *French*, according to their manner of Pronunciation, drowning the L. and changing the W. into V. call them commonly *Vaudois*; by which name they occurre in the ſtories of that State, and Language. But *Lyons* proving no ſafe place for them, they retired into the more deſart parts of *Languedoc*; and ſpreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the name of *Albigenſes*, as before was ſaid. Supported by the two laſt Earls of *Tholouſe*, they became very maſterfull and inſolent: Inſomuch, that they murdered *Trincanell* their *Viſcount* in *Beziers*, and daſhed out the teeth of their Biſhop, having taken Sanctuarie in S. *Magdalens* Church, one of the Churches of that Citie. Forty yeers after which high outrage, the divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Creiſadas*, under the conduct of the *French* Kings, and many other noble Adventurers; who ſacrificed them in the ſelf-ſame Church, wherein they had ſpoyled the blood of others. About the yeer 1250, after a long and bloodie War, they were almoſt rooted out of that Countrie alſo. The remnants of them being bettered by this affliction, betook themſelves unto the mountains lying betwixt *Daulphine*, *Provence*, *Piemont*, and *Savoy*; where they lived a godly and laborious life; painfully tilling the ground, re-building villages, which formerly had been deſtroyed by Warre; teaching the very Rocks to yeeld good paſturage to their Cattel: inſomuch, as places which before their comming thither ſcarce yeelded four Crowns yeerely, were made worth 350 Crowns a yeer, by their care and induſtrie. *Laſciviouſneſs* in ſpeech they uſed not; *Blaſphemie* they abhorred; nor was the name of the *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongſt them; as their very enemies could not but confeſs, when they were afterward in troubles. The Crimes alleged againſt them were, That when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no addreſs unto the *Saints*; nor bowed before ſuch *Croſſes* as were erected in the high-wayes, and ſtreets of Towns. Great crimes aſſuredly, when greater could not be produced. And ſo they lived, neither embracing the *Popes doctrines*, nor ſubmitting unto his *Supremacie*, for the ſpace of 300 yeers, uutouched, unqueſtioned; even till the latter end of the reign of King *Francis* the firſt. But then the Perſecution raging againſt the *Lutherans*, they were accuſed, condemned, and barbarouſly murdered, in the *Maſſacres* of *Merindol* and *Chabriers* before mentioned. After which time, joyning themſelves with the reſt of the *Proteſtant* partie, they loſt the name of *Vaudois*, by which called before: and paſs in the Accompt of the *Reformed* Churches of *France*, enjoying the ſame privileges and freedom of Conſcience, as others of the *Reformed* doe. And though I look not on theſe men and their Congregations, as founders of the *Proteſtant* Church, or of the ſame Church with them, as I ſee ſome doe: yet I behold them as *Aſſertors* of ſome doctrinall truthes, and profeſſed Enemies of the errours and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predeceſſours of the preſent *Proteſtants*.

Burgundie Dukedom.

18 The *Dukedom* of *BURGUNDIE*.

THe *Dukedom* of *BURGUNDIE* hath on the Eaſt, the *Frenche Countie*, and ſome part of *Savoy*; on the Weſt, *Bourbonois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Breſſe*, *Lionois*, and ſome part of *Beau-jeulois*. A Province ſo well watred with pleaſant and profitable Rivers, that as Qu. *Catharine de Medices* uſed to ſay of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers than all *Europe*; ſo we may ſay of this Countrie, That it hath more fine Riverets than all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1 *Armacan*, 2 *Serum*, 3 *Curi*, 4 *Torney*, 5 *Valence*, 6 *Dove*, 7 *Brune*, 8 *Seen* 9 *Lonche*, and 10 *Soaſne*, (the *Araxis* of the antient Writers) this laſt dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet, notwithſtanding this great plentie of waters, the Country generally is leſs fruitfull than the reſt of *France*: hardly yeelding ſufficient for its own inhabitants, except wines onely.

Chief Cities in it are, 1 *Dijon*, the birth-place of S. *Bernard*, ſeated upon the *Soaſne* and *L'ouche*, in a champian Countrie; the Town large, populous, and of great reſort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and *Parliamentary* for the Province; a *Parliament* being here erected, Anno 147[illegible]. Well fortified on all parts, but ſpecially defended by a ſtrong Caſtle called *Talente*, ſituate on an hill adjoyning. It is called *Divio* in the *Latine*, the Biſhop hereof *Divionenſis*. 2 *Chalons*, (in *Latin*, *Caballinum*,) called for diſtinctions ſake, *Chalons* upon *Soaſne*, to difference it from *Chalons* upon *Marn*, in *Champagne*: a Biſhops See alſo, as the other is; and gives name to that noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four antient Families of *Burgundie*; the other three, *Vienne*, *Neufchatell*, and *Vergie*. 3 *Autun*, by *Ptolomie* called *Auguſtodunum*, the chief Citie of the *Hedui*, now a Biſhops See; heretofore the chief of all the Countrie, ſome marks of the old ſplendour being ſtill to be ſeen; now very ordinarie and mean, beautified only with ſome fair Churches, which the ruines of time have not yet demoliſhed. 4 *Beaulne*, ſeated on the *Burſeize*, in the beſt and richeſt ſoyl of all *Burgundie*, and yielding the beſt

Burgundie Dukedom.

Wines in *France*: remarkable for an Hospitall of so fair a building, that it is thought equall to any Princes Palace in *Europe*; and an impregnable Castle built by King *Lewis* the 12th. 5 *Alize*, now a small Village, but of great name and power in the time of *Cæsar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortress of *Vercingetorix*, besieged herein by the said *Cæsar*; but so besieged, that he had 70000 men in the Town for defence of the place, and an Army of 300000 *Galls* at the back of *Cæsar*, to relieve their fellows. So that he was fain to fortifie his Camp with two Walls, the one against them within the Citie, and the other against them without: which done, he kept such diligent watch and ward on both sides, that the besieged heard sooner of the discomfiture of their Friends, than they did of their comming. Which fatall news being brought unto them, the Town was yeelded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cæsar*, then sitting in his Chair of State, disarmed himself, took off his Horses caparisons, and laying all upon the ground, sate down at *Cæsars* feet, and became his Prisoner. 5 *Tournus*, encompassed with the *Soasne*. 7 *Semur*, consisting of three parts, each of them severally walled, and strongly fortified. 8 *Verdun*. 9 *Nayz*. 10 St. *Ligier*, famous for medicinall Bathes. 11 *Noyers*, on the Borders towards *Champagne*. 12 *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Autisiodorum*; Of most note for the Councill held here, Anno 627, the Countrie about which is called *Auxerrois*, and was an Earldom of it self, till sold by *John* of *Chalons*, great Grandchild of *Joh.* the 7th, Earl of *Burgundie*, to *Charles* the fifth of *France*, Anno 1370; by whom united to the Crown, subjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is also within this Countrie the great and famous Monastery of *Cisteaux*, the mother of so many *Religious* houses, dispersed up and down in *Europe*, from hence denominated, and subject to the discipline and Rules hereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom (on the South parts of it) stands the Earldom of *CHAROLOIS*, heretofore the title of the eldest Sonne of the Dukes of *Burgundie*, so called from *Charolles*, the chief Town hereof, situate in the borders of it, towards *La Bresse*: seized upon, with the rest of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* the 11th, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the *Warlike*; restored again to *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the second, of *France*, on the peace made at *Cambray*; and subjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Estate: So that neither the *Governour* of the Dukedom for the *French* King, nor the *Parliament* of *Digion*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lyon passant regardant *Or*, armed *Azure*.

The antient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the most potent Nations in all *Gaule*: who calling in the *Romans* to aid them in their quarrels against the *Sequani* and *Arverni*, made them all subject unto *Rome*. In the prosperity whereof they made up the Province of *Lugdunensis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the *Metropolis* or principall Citie. Afterwards, in the division of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundie* by *Charles* the *Bald*, this part thereof, being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soasne*, was *cantoned* into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Autun*, *Lions*, and *Mascon*, whereof the three first laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the minoritie of *Charles* the *Simple*, given unto his Brother *Richard* (both Sonnes of *Robert*, Earl of *Anjou*,) under the stile and title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The issue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Sonne of *Hugh Capet* King of *France*, and the male issue failing of that Line also, it was given by *Charles* the *Wise* to his Brother *Philip*, (more worthily surnamed the *Hardie*) together with the mariage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An Argument of no great wisdom, as was judiciously observed by King *Lewis* the 11th. For by this means, those great Estates being united in one person, and afterwards these estates improved by as prosperous mariages, this house of *Burgundy*, grew formidable to the Kings themselves; who never left practising against it, till they had brought it to ruine, and once again united this Dukedom to their own Estate, from which at first it was dismembred.

The Dukes of *Burgundy*.

897.	1 *Richard* of *Saxonie*, the second Sonne of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph* Kings of *France*.
938.	2 *Gilbert*, the second Sonne of *Richard*.
964.	3 *Otho*, Sonne of *Hugh* Earl of *Paris*, surnamed the *Great*, and Brother of *Hugh Capet* King of *France*, was Duke of *Burgundy* in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.
976.	4 *Henry*, the Brother of *Otho*.
1001.	5 *Robert*, King of *France*, Sonne of *Hugh Capet*, succeeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle *Henry*.
1004.	6 *Robert* II. Sonne of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.
1075.	7 *Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert* by his Sonne *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.
1097.	8 *Odo*, or *Otho* II. Brother of *Hugh*.
1102.	9 *Hugh* II. Sonne of *Otho* the 2d.
1124.	10 *Odes*, or *Otho* III. Sonne of *Hugh* the 2d.
1165.	11 *Hugh* III. the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the first, in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*.

1192. 12 *Odes*

1192. 12 *Odes* or *Otho* IV. Sonne of *Hugh* the 3d.
1218. 13 *Hugh* IV. an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the 9th. in the *Holy-Land*.
1273. 14 *Robert* III. Sonne of *Hugh* the 4th. which *Robert* was the Father of *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the *Hardie*, after, Duke of *Burgundy*.
1308. 15 *Hugh* V. Sonne of *Robert* the 3d.
1315. 16 *Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundie* also in right of his Wife.
1349. 17 *Philip*, the Grand-child of *Eudes* by his only Sonne *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie* by descent, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois* in right of his Wife; the last Duke of this Line.
1363. 18 *Philip* II. surnamed the *Hardie*, Sonne of *John* King of *France*, Sonne of *Philip de Valois*, and *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the 3d. by *Charls* the 5th. his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom did then remain) was made Duke of *Burgundy*, and maried to the Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundy*.
1404. 19 *John*, surnamed the *Proud*, Sonne of *Philip* the 2d. Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.
1419. 20 *Philip* III. surnamed the *Good*, who added most of the *Netherlands* unto his Estate.
1467. 21 *Charls* the *Warlike*, Earl of *Charolois*, Sonne of *Philip* the *Good*. After whose death, slain by the *Switzers*, at the battell of *Nancie*, *Lewis* the 11th. seized upon this Dukedom, Anno 1476. pretending an Escheat thereof, for want of *Heires males*; uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*.

Burgundie County.

Of the great wealth and potency of these last Dukes of *Burgundie*, we shall speak further when we come to the description of *Belgium*: the accession whereof to their Estates made them equall to most Kings in *Christendom*. But for their *Arms*, which properly belonged to them as *Dukes* of *Burgundie*, they were *Bendwise* of *Or* and *Azure*, a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is usually marshalled in the Scutchions of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their possession. The reasons of which are probably (for I go but by gues) partly because this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of his Title to the *Dukedom* it self, in right of which he holdeth such a great Estate.

19 The County of *BVRGVNDIE*.

THe County of *BVRGVNDIE* hath on the East the Mountain *Iour*, which parts it from *Switzerland*; on the West, the *Dutchie* of *Burgundie*, from which divided by the *Soasne*; on the North a branch of the Mountain *Vauge*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorreine*; on the the South, *La Bresse*. It is reckoned to be 90 miles in length, about 60 in bredth; and with the provinces of *Daulphine*, *La Bresse*, and *Provence*, made up the Dukedom of *Burgundie* beyond the *Soasne*; on the Eastern side of which it is wholly situate. This part thereof, now generally called the *Frenche Comtè*, or the *Free County*, because not under the command of the *French* Kings, but living in a more free Estate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The Country in some parts very Mountainous, but those Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards, and having in recompence of a little barrenness an intermixture of most pleasing and fruitfull vallies: swelling with plenty of all naturall commodities usefull unto the life of man; and for variety of fresh streams, and delightful Riverets, inferiour only to the *Dutchie*.

The principall Towns and Cities of it, are, 1 *Besanson*, called by *Cæsar*, *Vesontio*, then the chief Citie of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the *Metropolis* of the Province entituled *Maxima Sequanorum*; by consequence an Archbishops See. Seated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almost encompassed; such artificiall Fortifications being added to it, as make it very strong both by art and nature. But this is an imperiall City, not subject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundie*; honoured with a small Universitie founded here, Anno 1540. by Pope *Iulio* the 2d. and *Charles* the fifth. 2 *Dole*, seated on the same River *Doux*, for riches, strength, and beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County, of which it is the Parliament City, and consequently of most resort for dispatch of business. Antiently it was an University for the study of the *Civill Lawes*; but now the University is devoured by a *College* of *Iesuites*: who fearing lest the Doctrine of the *Reformed* Churches might creep in amongst the people, not only have debarred them the use of the *Protestants* Books, but have expresly forbid them to talk of GOD, either in a good sort or in a bad. 3 *Salins*, so called from its salt fountains out of which came the greatest part of the Earls *Revenue*; honoured for a while with the seat of the *Parliament*, removed hither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the 11th. at such time as he held this Country; beholding to him (being a wise and politick Prince) for many wholsome Ordinances still observed amongst them. 4 *Poligni*, the *Bailliage* of the *Lower*; as 5 *Vesoal* is of the *Higher Burgundy*. 6 *Arbois*, noted for the best Wines; and 7. *Laxoal* for medicinable Bathes. 8 *Nazareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very strong Castle, the ordinary seat and retreat from business of the first Princes of *Orange*, of the house of *Chalons*, who had great possessions in this Country. 9 *Gray*, and 10 *Chastel-Chalon*, 11 *Quingey*, 12 *Orgelet*. Here is also the great and famous Abbie of *Clugny*, neer the Town of *Beaune*, out of which so many Monasteries in the Western Church had their first Originall.

The old Inhabitants of this Countie were the *Sequani*, a potent name, contending with the *Hedui* and *Arverni* for the Soveraignty of *Gaul*; till the ſtrife was ended by the *Romans*, under whom it made together with *Switzerland* the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire it fell to the *Burgundians*, and by *Rodolph* the laſt King of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundy* was given to *Conrade* the 2d Emperour of *Germanie*. After that reckoned as a part of the *German* Empire, governed by ſuch Earls or *Provinciall* Officers, as thoſe Emperours ſent hither. *Otho* of *Flanders*, Sonne to a Siſter of the Emperour *Conrade*, was the firſt that held it as *Proprietarie*: the other three whom *Paradine* ſets before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundy*, being meerly *Officiall*. It was firſt united to the *Dutchy* by the mariage of *D. Eudes* with *Ioan* the Counteſs. But no iſſue coming of this bed, it fell into the houſe of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders* unto *Philip* the *Hardie*, the firſt Duke hereof of the Royall Race of *Valois*, Anno 1369. *Philip* the Grand-child of this *Philip*, united moſt of the *Belgick* Provinces unto his Eſtate: after whoſe death, and the death of *Charles* his Sonne at the battell of *Nancie*, the *Dutchie* was ſurprized by King *Lewis* the 11th, as holden of the Crown of *France*, eſcheated to him for want of Heirs males. But the *Countie*, holden of the *Empire*, though ſubdued alſo by this *Lewis*, was reſtored again to *Mary* the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*; continuing hitherto in her iſſue, as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

The Earls of *Burgundie*.

1001. 1 *Otho Guillaume*, the firſt Earl of *Burgundy*, by the power and aid of *Robert* King of *France*.

1118. 2 *Reinald*, Couſin and Heir of *Otho*.

1157 3 *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperour in right of *Beatrix* his wife, Daughter of Earl *Reynald*.

1183. 4 *Otho* the youngeſt Sonne of *Frederick*.

1200 5 *Otho* II. *Duke* of *Meranis*, and Earl of *Burgundie* in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the firſt.

1208 6 *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalons*, next Heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, Daughter of *Otho* the firſt.

1204 7 *John*, the Sonne of *Stephen de Chalons*.

1269 8 *Hugh*, the Sonne of *John*.

270 9 *Othelin*, the Sonne of *Hugh*, Earl of *Artoys* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artoys*.

1315 10 *Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*, in right of *Ioan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Othelin*.

1331 11 *Eudes* Duke of *Burgundie*; Husband of *Ioan* of *France*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Philip* the *Long*, and *Ioan* the Counteſs.

1349 12 *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*, Grand-child of *Eudes*, and *Ioan* his Wife, by their Sonne *Philip*.

1361. 13 *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and ſecond Daughter of *Philip* the *Long*, and *Ioan* the Counteſs, was Counteſs of *Burgundie* and *Artois*, after the death of her Coſin *Philip*.

14 *Lewis de Malain* Earl of *Flanders* by his Father, and of *Burgundie* and *Artois* by his Mother.

1369. 15 *Philip* the *Hardie*, Duke of *Burgundie* by the gift of his Brother *Charles* the 5th, and Earl of *Burgundie*, *Flanders* and *Artois*, in right of *Margaret* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*.

1404. 16 *Antony* the *Proud*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*.

1419. 17 *Philip* the *Good*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*.

1467. 18 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*.

1475. 19 *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*, maried to *Maximilian*, of *Auſtria*, Sonne of *Frederick* the 3d, Emperour of *Germany*, in which honour he ſucceeded his Father.

1482 20 *Philip* the IV. Sonne of *Mary* and *Maximilian*; King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon* in right of his Wife *Ioan*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel* Kings of *Caſtile*, &c.

1506 21 *Charles* the Sonne of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of *Germany*, by the name of *Charles* the firſt.

1558. 22 *Philip* the II. of *Spain*, and V. of *Burgundie*.

23 *Philip* the III of *Spaine*, and VI. of *Burgundie*.

23 *Philip* the IV. of *Spaine*, and VII. of *Burgundie*, in whom reſteth the poſſeſſion of the Countie of *Burgundie*, and the Earldom of *Charolois*: herein not troubled by the *French*, for fear of giving offence to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland* upon whom it bordereth; jealous enough already of the greatneſs and power of *France*, and ſo not likely to admit ſuch a porent Neighbour.

The Armes of this Earldom are *Azure*, a Lyon rampant *Or*, Seme of Billets *Argent*.

20 The ILANDS in the AQUITAINE and GALLICK OCEAN.

French Ilands.

HAving thus took a view of the ſeverall Provinces within the *Continent* of *France*, let us next look upon the *ILANDS* which belong unto it; diſperſed in the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the Weſtern Ocean. Thoſe in the *Mediterranean* Sea, are of little note, as the Iſles of *Eres*, and 2 *Pomegues*, lying againſt *Provence*; 3 *Maguelone*, lying againſt *Languedoc*; and 4 *L'Anguillade*, betwixt both, at the mouth of the *Rhoſne*; of which there is nothing to be ſaid, but that thoſe of *Eres* are thought to be the *Stoechades* of *Ptolomie*, and his *Blaſcon*, to be *Anguillade*. And of as little note in the *Weſtern Ocean*, are *Belle-Iſle*, againſt *Vannes* in *Bretagne*, the *Iſle de Deiu* having in it two or three good Villages; *Marmoſtier*, plentifull in Salt, and beautified with a Monaſtery called the *White Abbie*. Thoſe of moſt note are, 1 *Oleron*, and 2 *Ree*, on the coaſt of *Aquitaine*; and thoſe of 3 *Jarſey*, 4 *Gernſey*, 5 *Sark*, and 6 *Alderney*, on the ſhores of *Normandy*: Of which, the four laſt are under the Kings of *England*, the reſt poſſeſſed by the *French*.

1 *OLERON*, is an Iland ſituate over againſt the Province of *Xaintoigne*, and South unto the Iſle of *Ree*, from which little diſtant. It is the biggeſt of the two, and makes yeerly very great quantitie of Salt, wherewith moſt of the Provinces on the *Weſtern Ocean* uſe to be furniſhed. But it is eaſie of acceſs, and not very defenſible, which makes it of leſſe note both in antient and modern ſtories. The principall Town of it is called *Oleron*, by the name of the Iland. One thing there is, for which indeed this Iland is of ſpeciall fame, and that is, that the *Marine* Lawes, which for neer 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Chriſtian World, which frequent the Ocean, (the *Rhodian* Lawes being antiquated and worn out of uſe) for regulating of Sea affairs, and deciding of Maritime Controverſies, were declared and eſtabliſhed here, and from hence called the *Lawes of Oleron*. And here they were declared and eſtabliſhed by King *Rich.* the firſt of *England*, as Lord Paramount of the Seas, immediately on his return from the *Holy Land*: this Iland being then in his poſſeſſion, as a Member of his Dukedom of *Aquitaine*; *Quæ quidem Leges & Statuta per Dominum* Richardum *quondam Regem* Angliæ *in redditu ſuo à* Terra Sancta, *correcta fuerunt, interpretata, declarata, et in Inſula de* Oleron *publicata, et nominata in* Gallica *Lingua* La Loy d' Oleron, &c. ſaith an old Record, which I find cited in a M. S. Diſcourſe of my late learned Friend Sir *Iohn Burroughs*, (once Keeper of the Records in the Tower of *London*, but afterwards Principall King of Arms, by the name of *Garter*) entituled, The Soveraignty of the *Britiſh* Seas. So powerfull were the Kings of *England* in the former times, as to give Lawes to all that traded on the Ocean.

2 The Iſle of *RE*, is ſituate over againſt *Rochell*; to which it ſerved for an Out-work, on that ſide thereof. It is in length ten *Engliſh* miles, and about half as much in bredth, well fortified with deep mariſhes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits every where intermingled, adde a very great ſtrength. Chief places in it, are, 1 *La Butte du Mont*. 2 St. *John de Mons*, 3 St. *Hilarie*, 4 St. *Martins*, the largeſt and ſtrongeſt of them all, from whence the whole Iſland hath ſometimes been called St. *Martins*. After the taking of this Town by *Lewis* the 13th, Anno 1622. (The Duke of *Soubize* then commanding in it for thoſe of *Rochell*) it was very well fortified; and ſince made unfortunately famous for the defeat of the *Engliſh* Forces under the command of *George* Duke of *Buckingham*, ſent thither to recover the Town and Iſland, on the inſtigation of *Soubize*, who before had loſt it. Anno 1627.

3 *IARSEY*, by *Antonine* called *Cæſarea*, is ſituate about ten miles from the Coaſt of *Normandie*, within the view and proſpect of the Church of *Conſtance*, part of which *Dioceſe* it was: in length conteining 11 miles, 6 in bredth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitfull of Corn, whereof they have not onely enough for themſelves, but ſome over-plus to barter at St. *Malos* with the *Spaniſh* Merchants: and of an Air not very much diſpoſed to diſeaſes, unleſs it be an Ague in the end of Harveſt, which they call *Les Settembers*. The Countrie ſtands much upon incloſures, the hedges of the grounds well ſtored with Apples, and thoſe Apples making ſtore of *Sider*, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleaſant rivulets, and good ſtore of Fiſh-ponds, yeelding a Carp for taſt and largeneſs inferiour unto none in *Europe*, except thoſe of *Gernſey*, which generally are ſomewhat bigger, but not better reliſhed. The people for the moſt part more inclinable to husbandrie, than to trades or merchandiſe, and therein differing very much from thoſe of *Gernſey*, who are more for *merchandize* than *tillage*. It containeth in it 12 Pariſhes, or Villages, having Churches in them, beſides the Manſions of the *Seigneurs*, and chief men of the Countrie. The principall is St. *Hilaries*, where is the *Cohu*, or *Court of Iuſtice* for all the Iland. It is about the bigneſs of an ordinary market Town in *England*; ſituate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one ſide with a ſmall Block-houſe called *Mount St. Aubin*; but on that ſide which is next the Town with a very ſtrong Caſtle called Fort *Elizabeth*, ſituate upon craggie Rocks, and encompaſſed with two arms of the Sea; ſo named from Qu. *Elizabeth*, who built it to aſſure the Iſland againſt the *French*, and furniſhed it with 30 peece of Ordnance, and all other neceſſaries. There is alſo on the Eaſt ſide, oppoſite to the Citie of *Conſtance*, high mounted on ſteep and craggie Rocks, the ſtrong Caſtle of *Mont-Orgueil*; of great Antiquity, repaired by King *Henry* the fifth, now furniſhed with 40 peece of Cannon, and made the ordinarie reſidence of the Governours for the Kings of *England*.

4 On the North-weſt of *Iarſey*, lieth the Iland of *GERNSEY*, called *Sarnia* by *Antoninus*.

French Ilands.

in form *Triangular*, each ſide of nine miles in length. The Countrie of as rich a ſoyl as the other of *Iarſey*, but not ſo well cultivated and manured: the poorer people here being more given to *manufactures*, (eſpecially to the knitting of Stockins and Waſt-coats) and the rich to *merchandize*; many of which are Maſters of good ſtout Barks, with which, they traffick into *England* and other places. The whole Iſland conteining ten Villages with Churches; the Principall of which St. *Peters Port*, a very neat and well-built Town, with a ſafe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the ſecuring of the Haven, capable of handſom Barks; a Market Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Plaiderie* or *Court of Iuſtice*. Oppoſite whereto, in a little Iſlet ſtandeth the Caſtle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimenſions of it: environed on all ſides with the Sea; having one entrance onely, and that very narrow: well fortified with works of Art, and furniſhed with no leſs than 80 peeces of Ordnance for defence of the Iſland, but chiefly to command the adjoyning Harbour, capable of 500 as good ſhips as any ſail on the Ocean. A peece of great importance to the Realm of *England*, and might prove utterly deſtructive of the trade hereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were ſtrong in ſhipping. For that cauſe made the Ordinarie Seat of the *Engliſh* Governours; though of late times not ſo much honoured with the preſence of thoſe Governours, as a place of that Conſequence ought to be. Pertaining unto *Gernſey* are two little Iſlets, the one called *Iet-how*, the Governours Park, wherein are ſome few Fallow Deer, and good plentie of Conies; the other named *Arme*, ſome three miles in compaſs, a dwelling heretofore of *Franciſcan Friers*, now not inhabited but by *Pheſants*, of which, amongſt the ſhrubs and buſhes there is very good ſtore.

5 *ALDERNEY*, by *Antonine* called *Arica*, by the *French*, *Aurigni*, and *Aurney*, is ſituate over againſt the Cape of the *Lexobii* in the Dukedom of *Normandie*, which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: diſtant from which but ſix miles onely. Beſides many dwelling houſes ſcattered up and down, there is one pretty Town or Village of the ſame name with the Iland, conſiſting of about an hundred Families; and having not far off an Harbour, made in the faſhion of a *Semi-Circle*, which they call *La Crabbie*. The whole about 8 miles in compaſs, of very difficult acceſs, by reaſon of the high rocks and precipices, which encompaſs it on every ſide, and with a ſmall force eaſily defenſible, if thought worth attempting.

6 And ſo is alſo *SARK*, the adjoyning Iland, being in compaſs ſix miles; not known by any ſpeciall name unto the Antients; and to ſay truth not peopled till the fift year of Queen *Elizabeth*; who then granted it in Fee-farm to *Helier de Carteret*, the *Seigneur* of St. *Oen* in the Iſle of *Iarſey*, who from thence planted it, and made Eſtates out of it to ſeverall *Occupants*: ſo that it may contain now about 50 Houſholds. Before which time it ſerved only for a Common, or Beaſts-paſture to thoſe of *Gernſey*, ſave that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chappel, for the uſe of ſuch as the ſolitarineſs of the place invited to thoſe retirements.

Theſe two laſt Ilands, are ſubject to the Governour of *Gernſey*, all four to the Crown of *England*, holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandie*, to which they antiently belonged, and of which now the ſole remainders in the power of the *Engliſh*. Attempted often by the *French* (the two firſt I mean) ſince they ſeized on *Normandie*, but alwayes with repulſe and loſs: the people being very affectionate to the *Engliſh* Government, under which they enjoy very ample Privileges; which from the *French* they could not hope for. Their Language is the *Norman-French* (though the better ſort of them ſpeak the *Engliſh* alſo) their Law, the *Grand Cuſtomaire* of *Normandie*, attempered and applied to the uſe of this people in their ſutes and buſineſs, by the *Bailifs*, and *Chief Juſticiers* of the two chief Ilands. Their *Religion* for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*: the Government in *Iarſey* by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Biſhop of *Conſtance*, now to the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*; in *Gernſey*, by a mixt *Conſiſtory* of *Clergie and Lay-Elders*, according to the *new Modell* of *Geneva*, introduced in both Ilands, Anno 1565. being the eighth yeer of Queen *Elizabeth*, and aboliſhed again in *Iarſey*, Anno 1619. being the 17th of King *James*.

But to return again to the ſtorie of *France*, thorow which we have now made our Progreſs both by Sea and Land: It took this name from the *Frankes* or *French*, a *German* People, who in the War of the *Roman Empire* poſſeſſed themſelves of it: not mentioned by that name by *Ceſar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolomie*, or any of the more antient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appeareth, till an hundred years after the death of *Ptolomie*: the firſt expreſs mention of them occurring in the reign of *Gallienus*, then ranſacking the coaſts of *Gaul*, and joyning with *Poſthumus* the Rebell, againſt that Emperour. Afterwards often ſpoken of in the courſe of the *Roman* ſtories, under the Empire of *Claudius*, *Probus*, *Dioclesian*, and the Sonnes of *Conſtantine*: though only in the way of pillage and depredation. Their habitation in thoſe times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moenus*, not far from *Frankford*, where they confined upon the *Almans*, to the *German* Ocean: conteining the particular Nations of the *Bructeri*, *Sicambri*, *Salii*, *Cheruſci*, *Friſii*, and *Teucteri*, beſides ſome others of leſs note: and taking up the Countries of *Weſtphalen*, *Bergen*, *Marck*, and ſo much of *Cleve*, as lieth on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, the Lantgravedom of *Haſſia* the Dutchie of *Gueldres*, the Provinces of *Zutphen*, *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſell*, both *Frieſlands*, and ſo much of *Holland* as lieth on the ſame ſide of the *Rhene*. United in the name of *Frankes*, to ſhew that Libertie or Freedom from the yoke of ſervitude which the *Romans* had endeavoured to impoſe upon them, and wherewith all the Nations on the other ſide of the River were ſuppoſed to ſuffer: Governed by *Dukes*, till the yeer 420. when *Pharamond* firſt took upon himſelf the name

of

of King. *Merovens* their third King having diſpoſſeſſed the Sonns of *Clodion*, the Sonne and Succeſſor of *Pharamond*, was the firſt that ſet foot in *Gaul*: when ſeeing the *Romans* on the one ſide put to the worſt by *Theodorick* and the *Gothes*; and on the other ſide by the *Burgundians*; they paſſed over the *Rhene*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the *French* ſide of that *River*, together with the *Diſtrict* of *Colen*, *Gulick*, and the reſt of *Cleve*, then paſſing in the accompt of *Gaul*. His victories and fortunes were inherited by *Chilperick* his Sonne & Succeſſour, who added *Picardy*, *Champaine*, and the Iſle of *France* to the former conqueſt; took *Paris*, & made it the ſeat of his Kingdom Afterwards when they had fully ſeated themſelves here, and thereby opened a free paſſage to the reſt of the Country, they quickly made themſelvs Maſters of al that which formerly had been poſſeſſed by the *Romans*; whom they outed of their laſt hold in *Soiſſons*, under *Clovis* their fift King; who alſo took *Aquitain* and the parts adjoyning from the *Viſi-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Spain*: for theſe and many ſignal victories againſt the *Almains*, deſervedly ſurnamed the *Great*, but greater in ſubmitting to the Faith of CHRIST, and receiving *Baptiſm*, than by all his Victories. *Childebert*, and *Clotaire*, the Sonnes of this *Clovis*, vanquiſhed the *Burgundians*, adding that Kingdom to their own: as *Theodebert* his Grandchild, King of *Mets*, or *Auſtraſia*, did the Country of *Provence*, reſigned unto him by *Amilaſunta*, Queen of the *Oſtro Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*, by whom it had been wreſted from the *Gothes* of *Spain*. In the perſon of *Clotaire* the ſecond, the Realm of *France* improvidently diſmembred into many Kingdoms amongſt the Children of *Clovis* the firſt, that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Soiſſons*, *Orleans*, and *Auſtraſia*, (of which *Orleans* and *Auſtraſia* were of long continuance) were again united: Whoſe Succeſſor *Dagobert* the firſt, was the laſt conſiderable Prince of the *Merovignians*. After this time the reputation of the *French* Kings of this line began to diminiſh, ſcarce doing any thing that might ennoble and commend them to ſucceeding Ages; or leaving any monument behind them but their empty Names: which I ſhall repreſent in the following catalogue according to their ſeverall times, firſt taking notice, that though the Kings of this firſt race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was ſaid, yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but thoſe that had their Royall ſeat in the City of *Paris*: the reſt being called only Kings of *Soiſſons*, *Mets*, or *Orleans*, according to the Name of their Principall Cities. And therefore leaving thoſe to their proper places, we will here only take a Survey of thoſe, who paſſed in common eſtimate for the Kings of *France*.

The Kings of *France* of the *French* or *Merovignian* Line.

449 1 *Meroveus*, Maſter of the horſe to *Clodion* the Sonne of *Pharamond*, from whom this Line of Kings were called *Merovignians*. 10.

459. 2 *Chilperic*, the Sonne of *Merove*. 26.

485. 3 *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*. 30.

515. 4. *Childebert*, eldeſt Sonne of *Clovis*, his other Brethren Reigning in their ſeverall places. 45.

560. 5 *Clotaire*, Brother of *Childebert*, firſt King of the *Soiſſons*, afterwards ſole King of the *French*.

565. 6 *Cherebert*, Sonne of *Clotaire*.

574. 7 *Chilperic* II. King of *Soiſſons*, and Brother of *Cherebert*, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom. 14.

588. 8 *Clotaire* II. Sonne of *Chilperic* the ſecond. 44.

632. 9 *Dagobert*, Sonne of *Clotaire* the ſecond. 14.

645. 10 *Clovis* II. Sonne of *Dagobert*. 17.

663. 11 *Clotaire* III. Sonne of *Clotaire* the ſecond. 4.

667 12 *Chilperic* III. Sonne of *Clotaire* the third.

680 13 *Theodorick* Brother of *Chilperic*. 14.

694 14 *Clovis* III. Sonne to *Theodorick*. 5.

698. 15 *Childebert* II. Brother to *Clovis*. 18.

716. 16 *Dagobert* II. Sonne of *Childebert*, the ſecond.

722. 17 *Chilperic* IV. oppoſed by *Charls Martel* in behalf of *Clotaire* the fourth. 5.

727 17 *Theodoric* II. Sonne of *Dagobert* the ſecond.

742 19 *Chilperic* V. Sonne of *Theodoric* the laſt of the *Merovignian* Family, Depoſed by *Pepin*, Sonne to *Charles Martel*; the Pope giving approbation to his proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel* were *Mayres* of the Palace to the former Kings: which *Mayres* were originally *Controllers* of the Kings Houſe, and had nothing to do with the affairs of State. But *Clotaire* the third, to eaſe himſelf and his ſucceſſours of a burden ſo weighty, made the *Mayres*, Vicars generall of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their pleaſures, ſhewing themſelves only on May-day: and then being ſeated in a Chariot, adorned with Flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayre*, he openeth packets, heareth and diſpatcheth forrein Ambaſſadours, giveth remedy to the complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws & repealeth them: An authority ſomewhat like that of the *Prafecti Pratorio*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire, or that of the Sultans under the *Mahometan Caliphs*, and the Vice-Roys of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*. An office which had been born by the Anceſtors of this *Martel*, ever ſince the reign of *Clotaire* the ſecond, in whoſe time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphus*, deſcended lineally from *Vitilo* the ſecond Sonne of *Adalgerio*, the firſt King of the *Boiarians*,

ans or *Bavarians*. Which *Vtilo* being a military Prince, and having done good service to *Theodorick* the first King of *Austrasia*, or *Mets*, against the *Danes* then grievously infesting the Coasts of the *Lower-Germany*; was by him made Warden of those Marches, and honoured with the mariage of his Daughter *Clotilde*, and liberally endowed with fair possessions in this tract. The fourth from *Vtilo* was this *Arnulph*, the first *Mayre* of this house; which Office having long enjoyed, he resigned it to *Ansegisus* his eldest Sonne (the first who drew unto himself the Managery of the whole Estate) and bidding farewell to the affairs of the World, became a Priest, and dyed a Bishop of *Mets*, Anno 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Ansegisus* dying in the year 679. left his authority and Office to his Nephew *Martin*, Sonne of *Ferdulphus* his younger Brother. But he being slain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who a while enjoyed it, *Pepin* surnamed the *Fat*, Sonne of *Ansegisus*, revenging his Cozins death upon *Ebronius*, and crushing all the opposite factions which were raised against him, obtained that honour for himself. And having much advanced the affairs of *France* by the conquest of the *Sueves* and *Frisons*, died in the year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office after his decease (for *Grimold* his only lawfull Sonne, and *Theobalaus* the Sonne of *Grimold*, whom he had successively substituted in the same, died not long before him) by *Charles* his natural Son, begotten on *Albieda* his Concubine; from his *martiall* prowess called *Martel*. Who in his time, did to the Kings of *France* great service, especially in routing that vast Army of the *Moores* and *Saracens*, in the battel of *Tours* before mentioned, thereby not only freeing *France* from the present danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in possession of the *Gothes* and *Moores*; for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*, yet would he not usurp the Kingdom, or the title of King, though both at his dispossall wholly: it being his ordinary Saying, that *he had rather Rule a King, than be one.*

To him succeeded *Carloman* his eldest Sonne, Anno 741. who held the office but a year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*: Who being of less moderation than his Father was, made such use of his power, that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an election, confirmed by Pope *Zacharie* the first, he took the Kingdom to himself: and the unfortunate King *Chilperick* had his powle shaven, and was thrust into a Monasterie. For this investiture both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good services for the *Popes*, destroying on their quarrel the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them most of the Lands which formerly belonged unto the *Exrchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other side the Popes to requite these curtesies confirm'd the former in this Kingdom by their Papal Power (which then began to bear some sway in the Christian World) and gave the last (besides the opportunity of attaining the Western Empire) the Title of *Most Christian King*, continued ever since unto his Successors: And to say truth, he well deserved those honours, and had they been farr greater, by many victories obtained against the Enemies of the Gospel; the several Heathens by his means converted to the Faith of *Christ*; the great abilities he had of estate and judgement, inabling him to support the Majestie of the *Roman* Empire: For he not only was sole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times succeeding, into several petit Kingdoms and Principalities; but had added thereunto by his own proper vertue the greatest part of *Italie*, the best part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonia's*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vast Empier falling into weak hands which were not able enough to manage it, decaied in as little time as it was in raising: partly by the unnaturall Ambition of the Sonnes of King *Lewis* the Godly, the next Successor of this *Charles*, who to make themselves all Kings, first deposed their Father, and then divided his Estate amongst them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*: four of which falling at last into the hands of strangers, ceased to be *French*, and passed into such Famlies as proved the greatest enemies of the Crown of *France*: partly by alienating the best and goodliest Provinces of *France* it self; never again united till these later dayes, which made the *French* Kings less considerable both at home and abroad, which we have touched upon before: and partly by the weakness and unworthiness of the Kings of this race; there being no question to be made but *Lewis* the *Stammering*, *Charles* the *Bald*, the *Gross*, and the *Simple*, would have found better *Attributes* if they had deserved them. For by this means the issue of this brave Prince grew so despicable in the eys of their Subjects, that first *Eudes* the Sonne of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*, and after *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Vncle of *Eudes*, (both of the race of *Witikindus* the last Prince of the *Saxons*, and consequently both Aliens to the Houle of *Charles*) possessed themselves severally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depressed and overborn by their opposite factions, yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on. Who being Sonne of *Hugh the Great*, Constable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Sonne of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*, younger Brother of *Eudes*, and neer kinsman of *Rodolphe*, never left practising his party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got possession of the Regall Diadem, wherewith two Princes of his house had been invested formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this second Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjust grounds of an usurpation, they are these that follow.

The

The second race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Carolovinian* or *Boiarian* Line.

A. Ch.

151. 1 *Pepin*, the Sonne of *Charles Martel*, succeeded in the Office of *Mayre*, Anno 742, and having got the Regal Crown, vanquished the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* tributarie, and crushed the *Saxons*, 18.

769. 2 *Charles*, surnamed the Great, the Sonne of *Pepin*, subdued the Kingdoms of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*, conquered the *Boiarians* and *Avares*, and vanquished the *Saracens* of *Spain*; Crowned Emperour of the West upon *Christmas* day by Pope *Leo* the third, Anno 800, 46.

815. 3 *Lewis* the *Godly*, Sonne of *Charles* King of *France* and Emperour, the last sole Monarch of the *French*, deposed by his ambitious and unnaturall Sonnes: the Empire of the *French* after his decease, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italie*, *Burgundie*, *Germanie*, *France*, and *Lorrein*; and *France* it self distracted into many Soveraign Estates and Principalities, 26.

841. 4 *Charles* II. surnamed *Calvus*, or the *Bald*, youngest Sonne of *Lewis*, King of *France* and Emperour, vanquished by *Charles* the *Grosse*, in the War of *Italie*, 38.

879. 5 *Lewis* II. surnamed *Balbus*, or the *Stammering*, Sonne of *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperour.

881. 6 *Lewis* III. with *Caroloman* his Brother, the base Sonnes of *Lewis* the *Stammering*; Usurpers of the Throne in the infancy of *Charles* the *Simple*.

886. 7 *Charles* III. surnamed *Crassus*, or the *Grosse*, King of *Germany* and Emperour: called into *France*, and elected King during the Minority of *Charles* the *Simple*, 5.

891. 8 *Odo* or *Eudes*, Sonne of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, of the race of *Witikindus* the last King of the *Saxons*, elected by an opposite Faction, outed *Charles* the *Grosse*, 9.

900. 9 *Charles* IV. surnamed *Simplex*, or the *Simple*, the *Posthumus* Sonne of *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, restored unto the Throne of his Fathers, which, after many troubles raised against him by *Robert* the 2d, Earl of *Anjou* (whom he slew in battel) he was forced to resigne, 27.

927. 10 *Rodolph* of *Burgundie*, Sonne of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundie* the Brother of *Eudes*, succeeded on the resignation of *Charles* the *Simple*, 2.

929. 11 *Lewis* IV. surnamed *Transmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers Troubles he had lived in *England*; restored unto the Regal Throne on the death of *Rodolph*: opposed therein by *Hugh* Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of King *Eudes* by his Brother *Robert* before mentioned.

958. 12 *Lotharius*, Sonne of *Lewis* the 4th, disturbed in his possession by *Hugh Capet*, the eldest Sonne of the said *Hugh*, on the pretensions of that house, by which at last he got the Kingdom.

987. 13 *Lewis* V. Sonne of *Lotharius*, the last King of the House of *Charles* the Great. After whose death (being King onely for a yeer) the Crown was seized on by *Hugh Capet*: *Charles* Duke of *Lorreine*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the fift, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the present race of the Kings of *France*, founded in *Hugh Capet*, so called from the greatness of his head, Sonne of *Hugh* the great, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the second Earl of *Anjou*: Which *Robert* was the Brother of *Eudes*, and Cousin German of *Rodolph* Kings of *France*. Who partly by his own wits, but chiefly by the weakness of the mungrel Issue of *Charles* the Great, having got the Diadem, transmitted it unto his Posterity; the Crown descending in a direct line from Father to Sonne, till the death of *Lewis* the 10th, surnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to understand, that the Realm of *France* was at that time shut up within narrower bounds than it is at the present: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandie*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poictou*, *Languedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*, besides those Provinces which constituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundie*, being alienated and dismembred from it. How they became reduced to the Crown again, will be discerned in the ensuing History and Succession of

The third Race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Capetine* or *Saxon* Line.

988. 1 *Hugh Capet*, of whom sufficiently before, 9.

997. 2. *Robert*, the Sonne of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundie* also, 34.

1031. 3 *Henry*, the eldest Sonne of *Robert*; his younger Brother *Robert* being setled in the Dukedom of *Burgundie*, 39.

1061. 4 *Philip*, the Sonne of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown, 49.

1110. 5 *Lewis*, VI. Sonne of *Philip*, surnamed the *Grosse*, 28.

1138. 6 *Lewis* VII. Sonne of *Lewis* the sixt, an Adventurer in the War of the *Holy Land*: as also did his Sonne and successour

7 *Philip*

1181. 7 *Philip* II. ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, & *Anjou*, with their ſeverall *Appendixes*, were taken from King *Iohn* of *England*. 43.

1224. 8 *Lewis* VIII. Sonne of *Philip Auguſtus*. 3.

1227. 9 *Lewis* IX. ſurnamed the *Saint*, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt*, and the *Holy-Land*. He reſtored *Guienne* to the *Engliſh*, and added the Earldoms of *Tholouſe* and *Maſcon* to the Crown of *France*. 44.

1271. 10 *Philip* III. Sonne of *Lewis*. 15.

1286. 11 *Philip* IV. ſurnamed the *Fair*, King alſo of *Navarre* in the right of the Lady *Ioan* his Wife. 28.

1314. 12 *Lewis* X. ſurnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre* in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, Anno 1305. After whoſe death the Kingdom of *France* was to have deſcended on *Ioan* his Daughter. 2.

1315. 13 *Philip* V. called the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by threats, promiſes, and other practices, cauſed a Law to paſs (to which he gave the name of the *Sal que Law*) for diſabling Women from the ſucceſſion to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brothers Daughter, ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf by his Brother *Charles*, who following his example, excluded, on the ſame pretence, his Neeces *Joan* and *Margares*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.

1320. 14 *Charles* IV. but in true accompt the fifth of that name, moſt commonly called *Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis* the two laſt Kings. After whoſe death began the Wars of the *Engliſh* for the Crown of *France*, challenged by King *Edward* the 3d. as Sonne and Heir of *Iſabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip* the *Fair*, and Siſter to the 3 laſt Kings. 7.

1328. 15 *Philip* VI. ſurnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Valois*, the ſecond Sonne of King *Philip* the third, and Vncle to the three laſt Kings, ſucceeded under colour of the *Salique* Law: of which *Charles* it is ſaid that he was Sonne to a King, Brother to a King, Vncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himſelf was no King. In this Kings dayes was fought the famous Battle of *Crecie*, Anno 1343. in which the *French* Army conſiſted of about 70000 Souldiers; the *Engliſh* of 11800 only; yet the victory fell unto the *Engliſh*: by whoſe valour fell that day *Iohn* King of *Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Souldiers. He added unto his Eſtates, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the Country of *Daulphine*, and the Citie and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.

1350 16 *Iohn*, the Sonne of *Philip de Valois*, in whoſe reign was fought the battel of *Poictiers*, wherein *Edward* the black prince, (ſo called for his black acts upon the *French*) with an handfull of wearied Souldiers (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French* army conſiſting of 40000 men: of which they ſlew beſides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Souldiers, and took priſoners King *John* himſelf and *Philip* his Sonne, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen, 14.

1364. 17 *Charles* V. the Sonne of *Iohn*, recovered all thoſe peeces (except only *Calice*) which the *Engliſh* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles* the *Wiſe*, but *Lewis* the 11th. would by no means allow him that attribute: affirming that it was but a fooliſh part to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withall the Heir of *Flanders* to wife. And ſo it proved in the Event.

18 *Charles* VI. a weak and diſtracted Prince, in whoſe reign *Henry* the fifth of *England*, called in by the faction of *Burgundy* againſt that of *Orleans*, maried the Lady *Catharine* Daughter of this King, and was thereupon made Regent of *France* during the Kings life, and Heir apparent of the Kingdom. But he had firſt won the great battel of *Agincourt*, in which the *Engliſh* having an Army but of 15000 vanquiſhed an Army of the *French* conſiſting of 52000 men, of which were ſlain 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons, the *Engliſh* loſing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Souldiers. This unfortunate Prince loſt what his predeceſſor *Philip* the 2d. had taken from King *Iohn* of *England*, and had not been reſtored by King *Lewis* the ninth.

1413. 19 *Charles* VII. Sonne of *Charles* the ſixt, after a long and bloodie War, recovered from the *Engliſh* (then divided by domeſtick diſſentions) all their Lands and Signiories in *France*, except *Calice* only.

1461. 20 *Lewis* XI. Sonne of *Charls* the ſeventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundie*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithall a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicil*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of ſo great wants, or ſuch ſordid parſimony, that there is found a Reckoning in the Chamber of Accompts in *Paris* of two ſhillings for new ſleeves to his old doublet, and three half pence for liquor to greaſe his Boots

21 *Charles* VIII. Sonne of *Lewis* the 11th. who quickly won, and as ſoon loſt the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the right of the houſe of *Anjou*. By the mariage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.

1498. 22 *Lewis*

1498. 22 *Lewis* XII. Sonne of *Charles*, and Grand-sonne of *Lewis* Dukes of *Orleans*, which *Lewis* was a younger Sonne of *Charles* the fifth; succeeded as the next Heir-male of the house of *Valois*. He dispossessed *Ludowick Sforza* of the Dutchie of *Millaine*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; but held neither long. By his mariage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predecessour, he confirmed that Dukedom to his House; and united it unto the Realm by an Act of State. After his death the *English*, to prevent the growing greatness of *Spaine*, began to close in with the *French*, and grew into great correspondencies with them; insomuch that all the following Kings, untill *Lewis* the 13th (except *Francis* the 2d, a King of one yeer and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.

1515. 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angolesme*, Grand-sonne of *John* of *Angolesme*, one of the younger Sonnes of the said *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, succeeded on the death of *Lewis* the 12th, without issue male. Took Prisoner at the battel of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the fifth, with whom he held perpetual wars; he being as unwilling to indure a superiour, as the Emperour was to admit an equall. 32.

1547. 24 *Henry* II. Sonne of *Francis*, recovered *Calice* from the *English*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germanie*, and took from him *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three *Imperial* Cities, ever since Members of this Kingdom. 12.

1559. 25 *Francis* II. Sonne of *Henry* the 2d, King of the *Scots* also, in the right of *Mary* his Wife.

1560. 26 *Charles* IX. Brother of *Francis* the 2d, the Author of the Massacre at *Paris*, 14.

1574. 27 *Henry* III. elected King of *Poland* in the life of his Brother, whom he succeeded at his death. The last King of the House of *Valois*, stripped of his Life and Kingdom by the *Guisian* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.

1589. 28 *Henry* IV. King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendosme*, succeeded as the next Heir-male to *Henry* the 3d, in the right of the House of *Bourbon*, descended from *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a youuger Sonne of *Lewis* the 9th. He ruined the *Holy League*, cleered *France* of the *Spaniards*, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid *La Bresse* unto the Crown, together with the Estates of *Bearn*, and *Base Navarre*; and after a ten years time of peace, was villainously murdered by *Ravillac*, in the streets of *Paris*. 21.

1610. 29 *Lewis* XIII. Sonne of *Henry* the 4th, the most absolute King of *France* since the death of *Charles* the Great. For to the reduction of the scattered and dismembred Provinces (the work of his many Predecessors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garrisons held by the *Hugonots* in that Kingdom; seized on the Dukedom of *Bar*, and surprized that of *Lorreine*, both which he held untill his death. 32.

1642. 30 *Lewis* XIV. Sonne of *Lewis* the 13th, and of the Lady *Anne*, eldest Daughter of *Philip* the third of *Spaine*, succeeded at the age of four years under the Government of his Mother, the 30th King of the Line of *Capet*, the 43 from *Charles* the Great, and the 64 King of *France* (or rather of the *French*) now living.

As for the *Government* of these Kings, it is meerly *Regal*, or, to give it the true name, *Despoticall*; such as that of a Master over his Servants: the Kings will going for a Law, and his *Edicts* as valid as a Sentence of the Court of *Parliament*. *Quod Principi placuerit* Legis *habet vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the *Roman* Emperours, as *Justinian* tells us in his *Institutes*: and the *French* Kings, descending from *Charles* the Great, claim it as their own. The *Kings Edicts* alwayes ending with these binding words, *Car tel est nostre Plaisir*, for such is our pleasure. And though he sometimes send his *Edicts* to be *verified* or approved in the *Parliament* of *Paris*; and his *Grants* and *Patents* to be ratified in the *Chamber* of *Accompts* there holden: yet this is nothing but a meer *formalitie*, and point of circumstance, those *Courts* not daring to refuse what the King proposeth. It is *Car tel est nostre plaisir* which there goeth for *Law*. And by this intimation of his Royall pleasure, doth he require such *Taxes*, as the necessity of his Affairs, the greedines of his Officers, or the importunity of Suters doe suggest unto him: The *Patrimonie* of the Crown being so exhausted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garrisons, reward such as deserve well of him, and support those that depend upon him; but only by laying what he pleaseth on the backs of his Subjects, against which there is no dispute by the *common People*: though many times the *Great Princes* have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them also instrumentall to the *publick slavery*, the Kings are willing to admit them to some part of the spoyl, to give them some *exemptions* from those common burdens; and to connive at their oppressing of their Tenants, against all good conscience, that being so *privileged* themselves, they may not interrupt the King in his *Regal Courses*.

The *power* of the *French* King over his Subjects being so *transcendent*, it cannot be, but that his *Forces* must be very great; and would be greater than they are, but that they dare not trust the common People with the use of Arms, for fear they should refuse to pay the accustomed Taxes, or forsake their Trades or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords. But for an *Essay* of what a *French* King is able to doe in this kind, It is said, that *Charles* the 9th, in Garrisons and severall Armies in the field, had 15000 Horse, and 100000 Foot of his own Nation, besides 50000 Horse

and

and Foot of *Swiſſes*, *Germans*, and others. And for his ſtanding *Forces*, it is ſaid by others, that he is able to bring into the field for a ſudden ſervice no leſs than 60 Companies of *Men of Arms*, 20 Cornets of *Light-Horſe*, and five Companies of *Harquibuſiers* on horſe-back, which amount to 10000 in the totall: together with 20 Enſignes of *French* Foot, and 40 of *Swiſſes*, and yet leave his *Garriſons* well manned, and his *Forts* and *Frontires* well and ſufficiently defended.

What the *Revenues* are in a State ſo ſubject to the will and pleaſure of the King, it is hard to ſay; being alſo more or leſſe, as the times and their occaſions vary; according unto which the *Revenues* of this Crown have much altered. *Lewis* the 11th, gathered one *Million* and a half of Crowns; *Francis* the firſt, brought them to 3 *Millions*; his ſucceſſor *Henry* the 2d, to ſix; *Charles* the 9th, to ſeven; *Henry* the 3d, to ten; afterward they were inhanced to fifteen. And in the time of *Henry* the 4th, the Treaſurer of the Duke of *Mayenne* did not ſhame to ſay, That his Maſter had more improved the Revenue of *France*, than any King had done before him, advancing it from two, to five Millions *Sterling*. A fair *Intrado*, but far ſhort of thoſe infinite ſums which are extorted from the People, whereof a tenth part comes not cleerly to the Kings *Exchequer*. But what need more be ſaid than that of *Lewis* the 11th, who uſed to ſay, that *France* was a Medow which he mowed every year, and as often as he liſted: and indeed their Impoſitions cannot but be great, ſince there are no leſs than 30000 under-officers imployed to gather them. Hence I beleeve ſprung that wiſh of *Maximilian* the Emperour, which was, that *he* (if it were poſſible) *might be a God*; and *that having two Sons, the eldeſt might be a God after him; and the ſecond King of* France. And this was alſo the cauſe, that in the Wars between *Charles* the fift, and *Francis* the firſt, when the Emperours Herald had bid defiance to the King, from *Charles* Emperour of *Germany*, King of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Aragon*, and *Naples*, Arch-duke of *Auſtria*, &c. with the reſt of his titles: The King commanded the Heralds to return the challenge from *Francis* King of *France*, commanding them to repeat *France* as many times, as the other had petty Earldoms in his ſtile. And to ſay truth, conſidering the compactedneſs thereof within it ſelf, the admirable fertility of the ſoyl, the incredible multitudes of People, and the conveniency of ſituation betwixt *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*, the name of *France* might ballance all the others titles.

The chief *Orders* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, were firſt of the *Gennet*, founded by *Charles Martel*, *Mayr* of the *French Palace*; and ſo called, either from *Jane* his Wife, as *Haillan* would have it; or from the *Gennets* of *Spaine*, over whom he triumphed at the battell of *Tours*, as *Bellay* writeth. It ended in the dayes of S. *Lewis*. The Knights of the order wore a Ring, wherein was engraven the form of a *Gennet*.

2 Of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers, ſo called, *quaſi pares inter ſe*, ſaid to be inſtituted by *Charles* the Great in his Wars againſt the *Saracens*. Six of theſe were of the *Clergy*. 1 The Archbiſhop and Duke of *Rhemes*, 2 the Biſhop and Duke of *Laon*, 3 the Biſhop and Duke of *Langres*, 4 the Biſhop and Earl of *Beavois*, 5 the Biſhop and Earl of *Nayon*, and 6 the Biſhop and Earl of *Chaulons*; and ſix others of the temporalitie. 1 The Duke of *Burgundy*, 2 Duke of *Normandy*, 3 Duke of *Guienne*, 4 Earl of *Tholouſe*, 5 Earl of *Champagne*, 6 Earl of *Flanders*. Theſe are they ſo much memoriz'd in the Legends of the old *French* Writers, but falſly, and on no good ground; it being impoſſible that thoſe ſhould be of the foundation of *Charles* the Great, in whoſe time there were none of thoſe Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of *Tholouſe* onely. Therefore with better reaſon it may be thus concluded on, that the *twelve Peers* were inſtituted by *Charles* the Great, though that honour not by him appropriated unto any particular Eſtates and Titles; but left at large to be diſpoſed of according to the perſonal merit of the beſt deſervers: it being moſt ſure, that neither *Rowland*, nor *Oliver*, nor Duke *Naimes*, nor *Ogier* the *Dane*, had any of the titles abovementioned. But for the fixing of this dignitie in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is ſaid by ſome to have been done by *Hugh Capet*, others referre it to *Lewis* the 7th, in whoſe times all thoſe Dukes and Earls were in *Rerum natura*. But by whomſoever firſt ordained, the *Temporall Pairries* are extinct; and others, of no definite number, created by the Kings, as they ſee occaſion to gratifie a well deſerver. Onely at *Coronations*, and ſuch publick *Triumphs*, the cuſtom is, to chooſe ſome principall perſons out of the Nobility to repreſent thoſe *Temporall Peers*; as at the *Coronation* of *Lewis* the 13th, the places of the *Temporall Peers* were ſupplied by the Princes of *Conde* and *Conty*, the Earl of *Soiſſons*, the Dukes of *Nevers*, *Elbeuf*, and *Eſpernon*: the *Eccleſiaſticall Peers* remaining as at firſt they were. So that though *Charles* the Great might deviſe this Order, and inſtitute the firſt *twelve Peers*, as is commonly ſaid: yet was not that high honour fixed in any of thoſe *Temporall* Princes, till the times ſucceeding; but given to men of ſeverall houſes, according to the Kings pleaſure, and their well deſervings.

3 Of the *Star*, begun by *John* King of *France*, Anno 1352. They wore about their necks a collar of gold, at the which hanged a *Star*: the word *Monſtrant Regibus aſtra viam*. This Order was disgraced by his Sonne *Charles*, in communicating it to his *Guard*; and ſo it ended.

4 Of S. *Michael*, inſtituted by King *Lewis* the eleventh, Anno 1469: It conſiſted firſt of 36 Knights, which afterward were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask down to the ground, with a border interwoven with *Cockle-ſhells* of gold, interlaced and furred with *Ermines*, with an hood of crimſon Velvet, and a long tippet. About their necks they wore a collar woven with Cockle-ſhels: the word, *Immenſi tremor Oceani*. It took the name from the picture of Saint *Michael* conquering the Devill, which was annex'd to the collar.

Some

Some think, that the invocation of S. *Michael*, was in alluſion unto the tenth of *Daniel*. Others ſay, he took S. *Michael*, in regard of an apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the ſeventh, on *Orleans* Bridge, in his wars againſt the *Engliſh*. The Seat thereof was firſt at S. *Michaels Mount* in *Normandy*, a place which had held longeſt for the *French* Kings againſt the *Engliſh*; but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. S. *Michaels* day, the time of the Solemnity; and *Mount S. Michael* the name of the *Herald* which did attend upon the Order, which in moſt things was preſidented by that of the *Garter*.

5 Of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, ordained by *Henry* the 3d, Anno 1579. to rectifie the abuſes which had crept into that of S. *Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy perſons: to reduce which to its firſt eſteem, he ordered, that the Collar of S. *Michael* ſhould be given to none who had not firſt been dignified with this of the *Holy-Ghoſt*; into which none to be admitted, but ſuch as can prove their Nobility by three deſcents. Their Oath is to maintain the *Romiſh-Catholick* Religion, and perſecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe a black Velvet Mantle, powdred with Lillies and Flames of Gold: the Collar of *Flower de Lyces* and Flames of Gold, with a Croſs and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the name of the *Holy Ghoſt*, becauſe this *Henry* was on a *Whitſunday* choſen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit orders, as thoſe of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorencie*; of the *Porcupine*, by them of *Orleans*; and of the *Thiſtle*, by them of *Burbon*.

The Arms of the *French* Kings in the dayes of *Pharamond* and his three firſt Succeſſors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, *Or*. *Clovis* the *Great* altered them to *Azure*, Seme of Flower de Lyces, *Or*: and *Charles* the ſixt to *Azure*, 3 Flower de Lyces, *Or*. In which laſt changes they were followed by the Kings of *England*, varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did: and by the *Princes of the blood*, who bear the Arms of *France*, with ſome difference onely for the diſtinction of their Houſes.

There are in *France*,
Archbiſhops, 17. Biſhops, 107.
And Vniverſities 15.
Viz.

1 *Paris*,	6 *Caen*,	11 *Montpelier*,
2 *Orleans*,	7 *Rhemes*,	12 *Avignon*,
3 *Bourges*,	8 *Bourdeaux*,	13 *Lyons*,
4 *Poictiers*,	9 *Tholouſe*,	14 *Beſancon*,
5 *Angiers*,	10 *Niſmes*.	15 *Dole*.

And ſo much for *France*.

THE PYRENEAN HILLS.

BEtwixt *France* and *Spain* are the Mountains called *Pyrenæi*, the reaſon of which name is very differently reported. Some fetch the Original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebrix*, ſaid by old Fablers to have been here raviſhed by *Hercules*: others conceive they were ſo called, becauſe much ſtricken with Lightnings, thoſe *Celeſtial Flames*. But being the name doth moſt undoubtedly proceed from a *Greek* word which ſignifieth *Fire*; the more probable opinion is, that they took this name from being fired once by Shepherds, (theſe Hills being then extremely overgrown with woods:) the Flame whereof raged ſo extremely, that the Mines of Gold & Silver being melted by the heat thereof, ran ſtreaming down the Mountains many dayes together: the fame of which invited many Forrein Nations to invade the Countrie. Which Accident they place 880 yeers before the Birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old *Greek* Writer, addes no ſmall authoritie, who ſpeaking of this conflagration (as *Ariſtotle*, and *Strabo* alſo do,) addeth withall, τὰ μὲν ὄρη διὰ τὸ συμβεβηκὸς κληθῆναι Πυρηναῖα ἀπὸ τῆς πυρὸς συχνὰ ἡμέρας συνεχῶς ἐμφερόντος, that is to ſay, theſe Mountains had the name of *Pyrenees*, from the fire, which many dayes together ſo extremely raged. And this tradition backed by ſo good autoritie, I ſhould rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochartus* doth) from *Purani*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying dark or ſhadie; though true it is, that theſe Mountains antiently were very much overgrown with woods, as before was noted.

But whatſoever was the reaſon why they had this name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the naturall bound betwixt the great and puiſſant Monarch of *France* and *Spaine*, terminating (as it were) their deſires and purpoſes againſt each other, as well as their Dominions: if any thing could put a bound to the deſignes of ambitious Princes. Yet not more ſeparated by theſe Mountains, than by thoſe jealouſies and fears, which they have long ſince harboured of one another, each of them manifeſtly affecting the ſupreme command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Hiſtorian doth of others, on the like occaſion, *Aut montibus aut mutuo metu ſeparantur*. Theſe mountains alſo make that *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land, which conjoyn *Spain* to the reſt of *Europe*: the *Cantabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-Weſt, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently waſhing the South-Eaſt thereof. Their beginning at the Promontorie now called *Oiarco*, (the *Oceſo* of *Ptolomie*) not far from the Citie of *Baionne* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Cantabrick*: From thence continued South-Eaſt-wards betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux*, (by the antients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Citie of *Rhoda*, now *Roſas*, one of the Port Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be 80 *Spaniſh* leagues, at three miles to a league. The higheſt part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Canigo*, and by the *Latines* named *Canus*: from which (as it is ſaid by ſome) there is a Proſpect in a cleer day into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt, the higheſt part of all theſe Mountains, and took this name from the whiteneſs or hoarineſs thereof, as having on its top or ſummit a Cap of ſnow for moſt part of the year, In which reſpect, as the *Alpes* took their name *ab albo*, that in the *Sabine Dialect*, being termed *Alpum*, which by the *Latines* was called *Album*, as before we noted: ſo did Mount *Lebanon* in *Syria* take its name from *Leban*, which in the *Phœnician* Language ſignifieth white, and *Lebanah* whiteneſs. Such people as inhabit in this mountainous tract, have been and ſhall be mentioned in their proper places. I only adde, and ſo go forwards towards *Spain*, that the barbarous people of theſe Mountains compelled *Sertorius* in his haſty paſſage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla's* Faction, to pay them *tribute* for his paſs: at which when ſome of his Souldiers murmured, as thinking it diſhonourable to a *Proconſul* of *Rome* to pay tribute to the barbarous nations; the prudent Generall replyed, that he *bought only time*; a Commoditie, which they that deal in haughty Enterpriſes muſt needs take up at any rate.

OF

OF SPAIN.

HAving thus crossed the *Pyrenees* we are come to *Spain*, the most Western part of all the Continent of *Europe*, environed on all sides with the Sea, except towards *France*, from which separated by the said Mountains: but more particularly bounded upon the North with the *Cantabrian*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South, with the Streits of *Gibraltar*; on the East, with the *Mediterranean*; and on the North-East with those *Pyrenees*. The Figure of it compared by *Strabo* to an Oxes Hide spread upon the ground; the neck thereof being that *Isthmus* which unites it to *France*.

This Countrie hath in divers Ages been as diversly named. 1. *Hesperia*, either from *Hesperus* a supposed King hereof; or from *Hesperus* the Evening Star, under which it was supposed to be situate, as being the furtheſt Countrie West-ward; to difference it from *Italy*, which many of the *Greek* Authors termed *Hesperia* also, named *Hesperia Minor*. 2. It was called *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*; or from the *Iberi*, inhabiting that Countrie of *Asia* which we now call *Georgia*; as *Celtiberia* from the mixture of those *Asian Iberi*, and the *Celts* of *Gaul*; by which name it occurreth often in *Appian* of *Alexandria*, and sometimes in *Strabo*. 3 *Hispania*, as the soundest judgements agree, from *Panus* the *Iberian* Captain. For the *Grecians* call it Σπανία *Spania*, as may be proved in many places, that especially of the 15 to the *Romans* verse 28. ἀπαντῶμαι δὲ ὑμῖν εἰς τὴν Σπανίαν, *I willcome by you into Spain*. No doubt but from the *Grecians* the old *Romans* borrowed the name of *Spania*, which they often used: to which the *Spaniards* according to their custom adding E, (as in *Escola*, *Escuda*, &c.) made it *Espania*, and now *Hispania*. In like manner as the famous Citie of *Sevill*, called at first *Spalis*, according whereunto the Bishop hereof in the Councill of *Eliberis* subscribed himself (by the name of *Sabinus Spalensis*) in tract of time was called *Hispalis*. And yet I must not pretermit the fancie of *Bochartus*, who fetching the names of most places from the *Punick* Language, will have it to be called *Spanija*, or *Sphanija*, by the *Carthaginians* or *Phœnicians*, at their first discovery, from *Saphan*, which in the *Punick* tongue signifies a *Conie*, with which that Country much abounded in the former times; the *Romans* being hence furnished with them. Let the Reader like it as he list.

The greatest length hereof is reckoned at 800 miles, the breadth where it is broadest, at 560; the whole circumference 2480 *Italian* miles: But *Mariana* measuring the compass of it by the bendings of the *Pyrenees*, and the creeks and windings of the Sea, makes the full circuit of it to be 2816 miles of *Italian measure*. And though according to the smallest computation, it be above 400 miles in compass more than *France*, yet is it farr short thereof in numbers of people; *France* being thought to contain in it 15 millions of living souls; whereas *Spain* is reckoned to contain but 8 millions only, which is little more than half the number of the *French*. The reasons of which disproportion are, 1 The *continuall wars* which they had for 900 years together against the *Moores*, in their own Countrie, by which they were consumed in the very growth. 2. The *Expulsion* of so many thousand Families of *Jewes* and *Moores*, 124000 Families of the one in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; and 110000. of the other by King *Philip* the 3d; which was as the lopping off of a main limb from the body *Politick*, though without any loss to the *Ecclesiasticall*. 3. The *unnecessary* wars maintained against all the rest of Christendom, ever since the time of *Charles* the fifth, out of meer ambition; before they were well cured of their former wounds. 4. The *infinite Plantations* made by them in the *East* and *Western Indies*, and all along the Sea-Coasts of *Africa*, and those great Garrisons maintain'd in *Milan*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, the *Low-countries*, and their Towns in *Africk*, consisting for the most part of natural *Spaniards*, 5. The *barrenness* of the Countrie in many places, unable to sustain great multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of men to labour and manure the Land: And 6. and last of all, the *Impotencie of both Sexes* for Generation; the men being generally more hot upon their lusts, than able for Generation; and the women for the most part beginning to be Mothers so extremely young, that nature is decay'd, and spent in them, before they have run half their course. And tis a most true and undoubted Maxime, that the greatness of Cities, and populousness of Kingdoms and Common wealths doe much depend on the *generative vertue* of the men, and the *nutritive vertue* of the soyl in which they live.

It is situate in the more Southernly part of the Northern temperate *Zone*, and almost in the middest of the fourth and sixth *Climates*, the longest day being fifteen hours and a quarter in length, in the most Northern parts hereof; but in the extreme South neer to *Gibraltar*, not above fourteen. Which situation of this Countrie rendreth the Air here very cleer and calm, seldom obscured with mists and vapours, and not so much subiect to diseases as more Northern Regions.

They are a mixt People, descending from the *Gothes*, *Moores*, *Jewes*, and the antient *Spaniards*. From the *Iewes* they borrow superstition, from the *Moores*, Melancholy, Pride from the *Gothes*, and from the old *Spaniards* the desire of Liberty. The *Jewes* first planted here by the Emperour *Adrian*, who having totally banished them their Native Countrie, sent them hither to dwell: the total number of which Plantation is said to amount to 500000. men, women, and children: and yet their numbers much increased in the time of *Vlidor Vlet* the Great *Caliph*

of the *Sarazens*, who having made a Conqueſt of *Spain*, ſent hither 50000 Families of *Moores* and *Iewes*, the better to aſſure it to him. And ſo we have the coming in of the *Moores* and *Iewes*; the Conqueſt of it by the *Gothes*, and their ſetling here, ſhall be ſhewn hereafter: which ſeverall Nations by long time, and intermariages together, were at laſt incorporated into one. For their conditions it is ſaid that they are highly conceited of themſelves, great Braggards, and extremely proud, even in the loweſt ebb of Fortune. Which laſt appeareth by the tale of the poor Cobler on his death-bed, who (as *Barklay* in his *Icon Animorum* reporteth the ſtorie) commanded his eldeſt Sonne, coming to him for his laſt bleſſing, *to endeavour to retain the majeſty worthy ſo great a Family*; *Memineris* (ſaid he) *in majeſtatem aſſurgere familiæ tuæ dignam.* The ſame *Author* relateth another ſtory to the like purpoſe. A woman of this Country, attended on by three of her brats, went a begging from dore to dore. Some *French* Merchants travelling that way, and pittying her caſe, offered her to take into their ſervice the bigger of her boyes. But ſhe, proud though poor, ſcorning, as ſhe ſaid, that any of her linage ſhould endure a Prentiſhip, returned them this anſwer: *Quî aut tu, aut ego, ſciamus, in quæ fata ſit genitus? For ought that ſhe or any knew, her Sonne* (ſimple as he ſtood there) *might live to be King of Spain.* Not much unlike to theſe is that tale of a Spaniſh *Cavaleiro*, who being for ſome faults by him committed, whipped thorough the principal ſtreets of *Paris*, and keeping a ſober pace, was adviſed by a friend to make more haſte, that he might the ſooner be out of his pain: but he half in choler replyed, *That he would not loſe the leaſt ſtep of his pace for all the whipping in Paris.* For indeed their gate is Gennet-Wiſe, very ſtately and majeſtical.

Of temperature they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to women, and yet not very able for *Generation*. And this ſtrong inclination unto women which they find in themſelves, makes them ſo jealous of their *Wives*, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church; and then too veiled and ſo hooded, one can hardly ſee them; and not that neither, but attended with their Damoſels, and ſome truſty ſhe-friend, that is to give an Accompt of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, an Ambaſſadour from *Spain*, in *Queen Elizabeths* time, uſed to find fault with the promiſcuous ſitting of men and women in the *Church*, uſed here in *England*, accounting it to be a great *incentive* unto *laſciviouſneſs*: To whom Doctor *Dale* one of *the Maſters of the Requeſts* is ſaid to have replied, that indeed in *Spain*, where the people even in the time of *Divine Service* could not abſtain from impure thoughts, and unclean geſtures, that mingled kind of ſitting was not ſo allowable; but the *Engliſh* were of another temper, and did not find any inconvenience in it. And it is poſſible, this humour of jealouſie might be derived on them from the *Moores*, who in the ſtrict guarding of their women, were the *Spaniards* Tutors; it being death in *Barbarie* to this very day for any man to ſee one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they ſee a man, though but thorow a caſement, they doe not preſently cry out. A frenzie which much rageth in moſt *Southern* people; but not predominant in the *Northern*; who doe not only ſuffer their Wives to ſit with other men in the Church, but even in the open and common Bathes alſo: two things which a true *Spaniard* would rather die an hundred deaths, than give conſent to. But though the *women* are not permitted to ſtirre abroad, the men take liberty enough; and are as good ſmel-feaſts as in any Country: it being obſerved of them by a very good Writer, that howſoever in their own houſes they are temperate and content with little, yet when they go unto a Feaſt, they are as gluttonous, daintie, and deſirous to make good cheer, as any people whatſoever.

But not to conceal their vertues, and make our ſelves merry at their follies, (wherein all other Nations have a ſhare with them) they are queſtionleſs a people very grave in their cariages, in offices of Pietie very devout, and to their King very obedient, whoſe greatneſs they affect more cordially than any ſubjects in the world; exact in doing juſtice upon all Offenders, which commonly they adminiſter without partiality; indulgent unto one another, and of their duties to their betters not unmindfull. But that which deſerveth the greateſt commendation in them, is an unwearied patience in ſuffering adverſities, accompanied with a reſolution to over-come them. A noble quality, of the which in their *Indian* Diſcoveries they ſhewed excellent proofes, and received as glorious rewards. In reference to the *French*, it is ſaid *that the French are wiſer than they ſeem*, and the Spaniards *ſeem wiſer than they are*: wherein they agree with many particular men of other Nations, who according to that of the Philoſopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non eſſe, quam eſſe & non videri.* In matters of war the *Spaniards* are obſerved to be generally too heavie, ſlow, and dull; the *French* too headie and precipitate; the one loſing as many fair occaſions by delayes, as the other overthroweth by too much haſte: but between them both they make one good ſouldier; who according to the preſent opportunities, is to make uſe of the ſpurre of courage, or the bit of reſpect.

The Women are ſober, loving their husbands or friends; wonderfull delicate, curious in painting or perfuming: and though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old *Engliſh* Proverb, that *none are worſe ſhod than the ſhoomakers wife*. Herein in worſe condition than the Women of *France*, who though they are reſtrained from Wine before their mariage; yet after that they take what liberty they liſt, and are no more reſtrained from it than the other ſex. But this is the leaſt liberty which the *French Women* have above the *Spaniſh*: theſe being ſo watched and overlooked, that it is hardly poſſible for them to hold ſpeech with any man, in buſineſs of moſt importance, and much leſs in matters of *civilities* only;

ly; thoſe having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the preſence of their husbands, without any diſtruſt or interruption. Heretofore they were wonderous ſtrong, and beyond belief patient of the throwes of Childbed; *Strabo* relating how one of theſe women being hired for harveſt work, and finding her travel come upon her, becauſe ſhe would not loſe her dayes wages, withdrew herſelf into a buſh: where being eaſed of her burden, ſhe returned from one labour to another. And many of them at this day uſe not to keep their Chambers above three dayes after their delivery, and then apply themſelves to their houſehold buſineſs without either danger or delay.

The language is not the ſame in all places, though all called the *Spaniſh*. In *Portugall*, *Catalogne*, and ſome parts of *Valentia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*, who in theſe parts have had much trade and negotiation. In *Granada*, and ſome parts of *Andaluzia*, it partakes much of the *Moore*, and in the mountains of *Alpuxarras*, the *Arabick* or *Mooriſh* language ſtill remains in uſe. The Countries bordering on the *Pyrenees* and *Cantabrian* Ocean (but *Biſcay* ſpecially) have much in them of the Language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made ſubject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all is the vulgar *Spaniſh* or *Caſtilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latin*; *Breerwood* in his *Enquiries* reporting that he hath ſeen a letter, every word whereof was both good *Latin* and good *Spaniſh*. *Merula* Shewes a Copy of the like, *pag.* 300. By reaſon of which conſonancy with the *Latin*, the *Spaniards* call their language *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue are generally the *Gotiſh*, *Arabick*, and old *Spaniſh*, and in ſome places the *French* alſo, as before is ſaid; thoſe people having made great conqueſts, and having had great negotiations in this Country. It is ſaid to be a very lofty ſwelling ſpeech, as if it were faſhioned to command.

The Soil hereof, where it is fertile and productive of the fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for delight, pleaſures, and commodities, which here appear in greater ripeneſs and perfection than in other places. But for the moſt part it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbred with wild and rockie Mountains, or of ſo hot a nature, and ſo ſandy withall, that it is not very fit for tillage; and ſo deficient in Water, as not good for Paſturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremie*, where it is *good*, no Countrie *better*; where *bad* and barren, few ſo inconvenient, and not any *worſe*. But this defect of outward beautie and Commodities is recompenſed by thoſe within, affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and ſome Mines of Silver: of which laſt ſo abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations; and it is ſaid of *Annibal*, that out of one Mine onely in the Conntrie of the *Turdetani* (now part of *Andaluzia*) he received 3000 pound weight daily, for long time together. The principall Commodities which they vend in other Countries, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Liquoras, a fine ſort of Wooll, Cork, Roſin, Limmons, Raiſins, Orenges, and fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the ſtaff of life, they are ſo defective, that they receive the greateſt part of what they ſpend, from *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *France*. Their Cattle neither fair nor many, the Countrie not being able to breed them: ſo that their Diet is on Salads, and fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what Fleſh he ſhall buy for himſelf and his Familie: which if he ſend for to the Butcher, or the Poulterer, by the ſmalleſt child, able to doe the Errand for him, he is ſure not to be defrauded in price or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant fare, as if they ſurfeited with the plenty of all proviſions: handſomly checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Soldier Sir *Roger Williams*. Of whom it is ſaid, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus fooliſhly bragging of his Country ſalads, he gave him this anſwer, *You have indeed good* ſawce *in* Spain, *but we have dainty* Beefs, Veals, *and* Muttons *to eat with that* ſawce; *and as God made* beaſts *to live upon the* graſs *of the earth, ſo he made* men *to live upon them*. And it is obſerv'd, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good diſh to his ſupper, you ſhall find all the feathers ſcattered before his door by the next morning.

And as it is in private houſes, ſo for travelling alſo, the Innes and *Vents* of this Countrey are very ill provided; inſomuch, that moſt men that would not go ſupperleſs to ſleep, carry their proviſion at their ſaddle bowes, and men of worth their bedding alſo. So poor and mean is the entertainment in theſe places.

Here lived in antient times the Gyants *Geryon* and *Cacus*, which were quell'd by *Hercules*: and in the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Empire. *Seneca* the *Tragedian*, and the *Philoſopher* of the ſame name; a man of that happy memory, that he could repeat 2000 names in the ſame order that they were rehearſed; as alſo *Quintilian* the Oratour, *Lucan*, and *Martial*, excellent in their kindes, and *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer. In the middle times, *Fulgentius*, and *Iſidore* Biſhop of *Seville*: and in our Fathers dayes, *Arias Montanus*, famous for his Edition of the holy Bible; *Maſius* a learned Commentator; *Oſorius*, well ſeen in the *Latine* elegancies; and before all, as well in induſtrie as time, *Toſtatus* Biſhop of *Avila*, a man ſo copious and induſtrious in his writings, that it is thought he writ more ſheets than he lived dayes. But of late times we find but few of their Works which have paſſed the Mountains, the *Latine* which they write being very coarſe, and ſavouring too much of the *School-man* (wherein their excellency conſiſts) and therefore they ſet out their Works moſt commonly in their own tongue onely. The Chief for *Soldiery* amongſt them, were formerly *Viriathus*, who held out ſo long againſt the *Romans*; *Trajan*, and *Theodoſius*, both *Roman* Emperours; *Theodorick* the ſecond, King of the *Gothes*, the victorious Conquerour of the *Suevians*; *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their atchievements againſt the

Moors; and in late times, *Gonſalvo* the *Great Captain*; who ſubdued *Naples*; *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugall*, &c.

The *Chriſtian* Faith, if we may beleeve the old *Spaniſh* Tradition, was firſt here planted by S. *James* the Apoſtle, within four yeers after the death of our Redeemer. To which tradition, though they held very conſtant a long time together, yet of late dayes, *Baronius*, and other learned men of the Church of *Rome*, doe moſt deſervedly reject it. That St. *Paul* had a purpoſe of coming hither, is evident in his 15th Chapter to the *Romans*: and that he did come hither accordingly, is poſitively affirmed by S. *Chryſoſtom*, *Theodoret*, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in Anno 61, as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did St. *Peter* want his part in this great ſervice, but joyned with St. *Paul*, though not in the journey, yet in the ſending of *Biſhops* and other *Preſbyters*, to ſecond the beginnings made by that Apoſtle. For it is ſaid expreſly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Cteſiphon*, *Torquatus*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Judaletius*, *Heſychius*, and *Euphraſius*, being at *Rome* ordained *Biſhops* by the two *Apoſtles*, *ad prædicandum verbum Dei in* Hiſpanias *directi*, were diſpatched into *Spain* to preach the Goſpell. Biſhops, moſt likely, of thoſe Cities where they ſuffered death, the names of which occurre in the *Martyrologie*. Vnder the Empire of the *Gothes*, the faith of *CHRIST*, which at their coming hither they found right and *Orthodox*, was defiled with *Arianiſm*: not ejurated till the year 588. when that whole Nation did ſubmit to more *Catholique* tendries. Since that, they have been punctuall followers of the Church of *Rome*, and that too in the very errours and corruptions of it; taking up their Religion on the Popes autority: and therein ſo tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth ſuffer none to live in his Dominions, which profeſs not the *Roman-Catholique* Religion; of which they have been, ſince the times of *Luther*, ſuch avowed *Patrons*, that one of the late Popes being ſick, and hearing divers men to moan his approching end, uttered ſome words to this effect. *My life* (ſaid he) *can nothing benefit the* Church, *but pray for the proſperity of the King* of Spain, *as its chief Supporter*. And though he ſpoke theſe words of King *Philip* the 2d, yet they hold good in his Succeſſors ever ſince, being eſteemed the greateſt Patrons and Protectors of the *Catholick Cauſe*. Which is indeed the proper intereſs of this King. For ſeeing that they have framed to themſelves an hope of the *Weſtern Monarchy*: and finding no fitter means of inlarging their own *Temporall*, than by concurring with the Pope in upholding his Spirituall Empire, they have linked themſelves moſt faſt to that See. To which end they have taken upon them to be the Executioners of the Popes *Excommunications*; by which Office *Ferdinand* the *Catholique* ſurprized *Navarre*: not without hope of working the like effect, in ſome courſe of time, on the reſt of the interdicted Eſtates of *Europe*; as may be ſeen, by the eager following of the *French* War againſt *Henry* the 4th, till he had reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*; and the like War managed for many years together againſt Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*. And the purſute of this *Spaniſh* Monarchy is ſo hotly followed by the *Jeſuits*, who in all their perſwaſions ſpeak not more of one God, or of one Pope, than they doe of one King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and ſubdue that great Enemy of *Religion*, the *Turk*. Nor is this onely a Conjecture, or a project of the *Jeſuits* onely, but a *deſign* avowed and declared in Print, that all the World may take notice of it: and that too in a Book not only licenced by the *Provincial* of the *Dominicans*, and the *ſupreme Councell* of the *Inquiſition*; but by Order from the *Lords* of the *Counſell*, with the *Kings Privilege* and Commendation prefixt before it, The Book entituled, *La conveniencia de los dos Monarquias Catolicas*, *&c.* The Agreement of the two *Catholick Monarchies* of *Rome* and *Spaine*, ſet out in the year 1612. by one *John de Pnente*. In the *Frontiſpice* whereof are ſet two *Scutcheons*, the one bearing the *Croſſe-Keys* of *Rome*, the other the *Arms* of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; *in Vinculo pacis* for the *motto*. On the one ſide of this there is a Pourtraiture repreſenting *Rome*, with the *Sun* ſhining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keys, with this Inſcription. *Luminare majus ut præſit Orbi et Urbi*, the Greater light to govern the Citie and the World. On the other ſide another Image deſigning *Spaine*, with the *Moon* ſhining over that, and darting her Raies on the *Spaniſh* Scutcheon, with this Impreſs, *Luminare minus ut ſubdatur Urbi et dominetur Orbi*, i. e. The leſſer light made to be ſubject to the Citie (underſtand of *Rome*,) but to govern all the World beſides. Over all in the top of the *Front* or *Title-page*, in *Capitall* Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole Book being an indifferent large *Folio*, is but a Comment on this Text; which for ſubſtance is conteined wholly in the *Frontiſpice*, but more at large diſcourſed of in the *Volume* it ſelf, and plainly ſhewes what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhaps the *Pope* and the *Jeſuits* both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation, and if the project take effect, the *Spaniard* will then write himſelf *Luminare majus*, and make the Pope content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the ſpoyl, and glad to borrow all his light from the *Sun* of *Spain*. For though the Kingdom of *Spain*, and Popedom of *Rome* be thus ſtraitly combined, yet herein the Popes have overſhot themſelves; in that leaning ſo much to the *Spaniard*, and ſo immoderatly increaſing his dominion, they doe in a manner ſtand at his devotion; and may peradventure in the end be forced to caſt themſelves into his arms as their good Lord and Maſter. For certain it is, that the *Spaniſh Agents* have openly braved the *Cardinals*, and told them, That they hoped to ſee the day, wherein the King ſhould offer to the Pope half a dozen to be made *Cardinals*, and he not dare to refuſe any; and that they themſelves ſhould chooſe no *Pope*, but one of their *Maſters* naming. So great an inconvenience it is more than poſſible it may be to the *Popes*, in making this Prince the one and onely ſtring to their bow; and faſtning the dependencies of his *Roman Catholiques*

tholiques, upon him alone, excluding *France* and all other Kings in Christendom, of the *Romish* party, from the honour of it. And yet so firm they are to their *Spanish* principles, that no *favours* either granted to their persons or *Religion* are of value with them, or thought worthy of their acceptation, if it come from any other *Fountain of Grace* than the *Court* of *Spain*. Insomuch as I have heard from a great Minister of State, that when some favours were obtained for the *English Papists* on the treaty of the Match with *Spain*; they were ready with great greedines to embrace the same. But when the same *favours* were obtained for them on the Treaty with *France*, not a man of them would accept them. For which some of their Chiefs being asked the reason, returned this Answer, That *by applying themselves to the* French, *they might lose the* Spaniard, *and it were great improvidence in them, to change an old and constant* Friend *who had never failed them for one of whose affections they had no assurance; and such a one, as by tolerating* Hereticks *in his own Dominions, shewed that he was no fit Patron for the Catholicks to relie upon.*

The chief Rivers are, 1 *Tagus*, celebrated for his golden Sands, of which the Scepter of the old Kings of *Portugal* is affirmed by some Writers to be made, but I have not faith enough to believe the same. The head of it is in the Mountain *Seira Molina*, neer to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the Citie *Toledo*, and then smoothly gliding by the Wals of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Western Ocean. 2 *Ana* (now *Guadiana*) which arising about the same place, runneth afterward under the ground the space of 15 miles: and hence the *Spaniards* use to brag, that they have a bridge whereon 10000 cattle daily feed. An accident common to many other rivers, as to *Mole*, a small river in *Surrey*; *Erasinus*, in *Greece*; and *Lycus*, in *Anatolia*; of which last thus *Ovid*:

Sic ubi terreno Lycus *est epotus hiatu,*
Existit procul hinc, alioque renascitur ore.

So *Lycus*, swallowed by the gaping ground,
At a new mouth, far off, is rising found.

But having gotten up again, loseth it self without recovery in the Western Ocean, on the South of *Portugal*, which it separateth from *Extremadura*. 3. *Betis*, now called *Guadalquivir* (which in the *Arabick* Language signifieth a great River) ariseth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and passing by *Corduba* and *Sevil*, disburdeneth it self into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of S. *Lucars de Barameda*. 4. *Iberus*, which having its head amongst the Mountains of *Biscay*, passeth on Eastwards by *Saragossa* and *Tortosa*, into the Mediterranean: the whole course thereof being 460 miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of such note in the time of the *Romans*, that it divided this whole Countrie into *Citeriorem*, and *Ulteriorem*; of which more anon. 5. *Duerus*, which rising in the same Mountains passeth thorow *Portugal*, and so unto the Western or *Atlantick* Ocean. 6. *Minius*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains next unto the *Pyrenees* spoken of before, 1. The *Cantabrian* Mountains, called by *Plinie Juga Asturum*, which rising out of a spurr or branch of the *Pyrenees*, overspread the Provinces of *Biscay*, *Asturia*, and *Gallicia* (coasting along the shores of the *Cantabrian* Ocean) where at last they end. 2. *Idubeda*, *Iubalda*, or *Aurantius Saltus*, so called by *Ptolomie*, and others of the ancient Writers; which beginning not far from the head of the River *Iberus*, followeth the course of that River by the Citie of *Burgos*, and endeth not far from the influx of it into the *Mediterranean*. 3. *Sierra Morena*, by *Cæsar* called *Saltus Castulonensis*, and *Mons Marianus* by *Ptolomie*, which beginning about the Town of *Alcoraz*, coasteth along the right-hand shores of the River *Betis* to the Southern Seas. 4. *Sierra Nevada*, by *Ptolomie* called *Mons Illipulus*, and *Orospeda* by *Strabo*, but by the *Moores* the Mountains of *Alpuxaras*. A chain of hils which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada* from East to West; and amongst which the people to this day speak the *Arabick* tongue.

The Countrie is said to have been first inhabited by *Tubal*, the Sonne of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Berosus* of Frier *Annius*, and by such Chronologers as he hath imposed on by the name of that Author, that in the twelf year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Flood, he seated himself in the *Asturias* a part of *Spain*, and there built the Town of S. *Vval*. A Device so fooliſh and absurd, that it is not to be honoured with a confutation: For either *Tubal*, must come hither by Sea or by Land: If by Land, then must he in the compass of a year or two, travell not less than 4000 miles (for so far it is at least from *Biscay* to the vallie of *Shinaar*) with woemen and children, thorough most unpassible Woods and Mountains; which no understanding man can give belief to. If by Sea, besides the short time he had to provide shipping for so great a Company, and so long a voyage, nothing is more improbable to a sober man, than that he should leave *Italy* and *Africk* upon either hand; or pretermit the opportunitie of possessing *Valentia*, *Andulazia*, *Portugal*, being fruitfull Countries, to fix himself in the most mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent; yet most of our *Berosians* are so confident in it, that they make him the first King of *Spain*, from whom to *Gargaris*, *Melicola*, they numbred 25 Kings more, who lasted 988 years: the chief of which are said to be, 1 *Hesperus*, who subduing also *Italy*, named both Countries *Hesperia*: but so, that *Italy* was called *Hesperia* the greater, and *Spain*, *Hesperia* the less. 2 *Hispanus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hispania* to be derived. 3 *Tagus*, 4 *Betus*, and 5 *Anus*, whence the three famous Rivers in *Spain* so called, must by all means be derived. 6 *Idubeda*, *God-father* no doubt, to the great Mountain so named. 7 *Sicilus*, from whom the Isle of *Sicily* is said to take denomination. 8 *Hispalis*,

who is reported to have built the Citie *Sevill*, or *Hiſpalis*. 9. *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flavia-Briga*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10 *Luſus*, who gave name to *Luſitania* or *Portugall*. The Catalogue of which Kings I deſire no man to beleeve farther, than that of our own State from *Brutus* to *Caſſibeline*. A Catalogue ſo ill contrived, that whereas *Juſtin* ſpeaks of *Habis*, and *Herodotus* of *Arganthonius*; *Macrobius* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilis*; all Kings of *Spain*, none of all theſe are mentioned in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in perſon) hither, is a ſilly vanitie, though we deny not but the *Spaniards*, or ſome nations of them, may derive their Pedegree from *Tubal*, as being the deſcendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Joſephus* ſaith to have been antiently called *Thobelos*: a name in which are all the *Radicall* Letters of *Tubal*, and which differeth not much from it in ſound. For ſomewhat before the ſuppoſed time of *Gargarus Melicola*, the *Iberians* are ſaid to come in under *Panus*: divided after his deceaſe amongſt many petit Kings and Princes, for the ſpace of 900 and odd years, even till the firſt Attempts which the *Carthaginians* made upon it; who found here no ſuch Vniverſal or Supreme Monarch, as the *Beroſian* Fablers dream of. During which time, we find nothing more obſervable and certain in the *ſtorie* of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-coaſts by divers Nations, according to the Cuſtom of thoſe elder times. Of which ſort were the Towns of *Emporia*, and *Dianium*, founded by the *Maſſilians*; *Saguntum*, by the *Zacynthi*, or people of *Zant*; *Rhodope*, by the *Rhodians*, as ſome think; the Citie and Iſle of *Gades* planted by the *Tyrians*, who after ſpread themſelves over all the Coaſts of *Andaluzia*. The firſt that came in bodies hither, in the way of Conqueſt, were the *Celtæ*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*, who mixing themſelves with the *Iberi*, cauſed the whole Countrie to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it, is very uncertain. Of the invaſion of it by the *Carthaginians* there is greater certainty: Who being beaten out of *Sicil* by the conquering *Romans*, Anno V.C. 512. and not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the Weſt, and paſſing thorough the ſtreights of *Gibraltar*, by the Iſle of *Gades* (their own long before) landed in *Spain*, under the Conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loſs of *Sicilie*. In leſs than 20 years following, *Amilcar*, *Aſdrubal* his Sonne-in-Law, and *Annibal* the Sonne of *Amilcar*, had made almoſt all *Spain* ſubject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Weſtern Ocean to the *Pyrenees*; deſtroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and ſtrook ſo great a terrour into all the Countrie, that had not *Annibals* deſign caried him to *Italy*, the State of *Carthage* had been abſolute Maſters of it without further oppoſition or reſiſtance. But *Annibal* having taken all his old Souldiers with him; and thoſe that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts ſufficient to goe thorough with it; they loſt it peece-meal to the *Romans*, but in leſs time than they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*; the valour and good fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The laſt that here commanded for the State of *Carthage* was *Aſarubal* the Sonne of *Gilgo*, who being beaten by *Scipio* into the Iland of *Gades*, left that alſo to the keeping of *Mago*, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deſerted, it forthwith yeelded to the *Romans*; the *Carthaginians* after this never poſſeſſing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The *Romans* thus becoming Maſters of a great part of it, divided it into *Vlteriorem*, lying from the River *Iberus* Weſtward, becauſe the furtheſt off from them; and *Citeriorem*, between the ſaid River and the *Pyrenees*. But having totally ſubdued it, they divided it into three main parts, 1. *Tarraconenſem*, ſo called of *Tarragon* the chief Citie of it, conteining *Arragon*, *Navarre*, *Biſcay*, *Gallicia*, &c. 2 *Baticam*, ſo named of the River *Bætis*, which runneth thorow it, comprehending the now Countries of *Granada*, *Andaluzia*, and part of *Extremadura*. 3. *Luſitanicam*, denominated from the *Luſitani*, the moſt potent People of that part, differing in extent from the preſent *Portugal*, (though this called *Luſitania* by our modern *Latiniſts*.) For the old *Luſitania* comprehended part of *Extremadura*, and ſome part of the two *Caſtiles*; and no more of the preſent *Portugal*, than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, *Ana* and *Duero*: that on the South of *Ana* being laid to *Batica*, and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Tarraconenſis*. Of theſe three parts, *Batica* was in moſt eſteem under the *Romans*; inſomuch, that it contained 8 *Roman* Colonies, 8 *Municipal* Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the rights and privileges of the *Latine*. The reaſon thereof was, that the people of this Countrie having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the reſt, for a long time, reſiſted the entrie and Empire of that prevailing Citie. But to proceed to the affairs of *Rome* in *Spain*, *Scipio Africanus* laid the firſt foundation of the *Roman* Government in this Countrey: which building, though undertaken by many excellent work-men, was not throughly finiſhed till the dayes of *Auguſtus*, being almoſt 200 years ſince the firſt attempt. He rooſed it, ſtrengthened it, and made it a principal building in his *Monarchical* Citie. For the old *Incolæ* were exceeding valiant and reſolute, ſometimes diſgracing, ſometimes endangering the *Roman* reputation; inſomuch that there were more Commanders loſt in thoſe wars, than any other. At firſt the *Romans* fought not with the *Spaniards*, but with the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*: then periſhed both the *Scipio's*, viz. the Father and the Vncle of *Africanus*. *Viriathus* held war for 20 years, *Numantia* held out 15, the *Aſtures* remained unconquered till the time of *Auguſtus*; and all reſolutely maintained their particular liberties, *ut dijudicari non poterat* (ſaith *Paterculus*) Hiſpanis *an* Romanis *plus eſſet in armis Roboris, & uter populus alteri pariturus foret.* Such manner of men were the antient *Spaniards* under *Rome* and *Carthage*; the firſt people of the

the Continent of *Europe* (excepting *Italy*) on which the *Romans* did begin to enlarge their Empire; and the laſt that wholly were ſubdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at thelaſt, and brought under the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, it was governed by their *Proconſuls*, *Prætors*, and other Magiſtrates, according to the diviſion before-mentioned. But *Conſtantine* the *Great* in his new modelling of the Empire, laying ſome part of *Africk* to it, made it a *Dioceſe* of the Empire, made ſubject to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Gaul*, by whoſe *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into theſe ſeven Provinces, viz. 1 *Betica*, 2 *Luſitania*, bounded as before; 3 *Gallicia*, containing the modern *Gallicia*, *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the greateſt part of the *Old Caſtile*, and ſo much of *Portugal* as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*. 4 *Carthaginenſis*, ſo called from the Citie of *New Carthage*, comprehending *New Caſtile*, *Murcia*, and *Valentia*, with part of the *Old Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Andaluſia*. 5 *Taraconenſis*, embracing all *Biſcay*, *Navarre*, and *Catalogne*, with the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Aragon*. 6 *Tingitana*, ſo called from *Tingis* (now *Tangier*,) a Town of *Africk*, on the oppoſite Coaſt, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*: And 7 the *Province of the Ilands*, containing *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuſa*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which ſeven Provinces, the three firſt were *Conſulariæ*, governed by *Proconſuls*; the other four from their being under *Preſidents* were called *Preſidiariæ*. Being thus ſetled, it continued a *Roman* Dioceſe till about the yeer 400, when it was ſubdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*: of which People, their beginning, atchievements, and finall Period, we will ſpeak more when we come to *Africk*, where they fixed themſelves: invited thereunto, partly to eſchew the ill neighbourhood of the *Gothes*, who began to grow too potent for them, and partly to ſatisfie the deſires of *Boniface*, Governour of that Province for the Emperour *Valentinian* the 3d, againſt whom he had then rebelled, and wanted ſuch ſupport to make good his action. Theſe being gon, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entred with them, could not long ſubſiſt, but were finally broken by the *Gothes*, and afterwards diſpoſſeſſed of their Kingdoms alſo, (though ſuffered to remain in the Country ſtill) as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Gothes* (of whom we ſhall ſpeak more in *Sweden*, and have alreadie made ſome mention when we were in *Gaule*,) having ſacked *Rome*, and waſted *Italy*, under the conduct of *Alaric*, they were bought out of that Country by the gift of *Narbonenſis* in *Gaule*, and ſo much of *Tarraconenſis* in *Spain* as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the Compoſition being ratified by the mariage of *Athaulfus*, the Succeſſour of *Alaric*, with *Placidia* Siſter to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour. *Vallia*, or *Wallia*, the Succeſſor of *Athaulfus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania* and *Carthaginenſis*, added thoſe Provinces alſo unto his Eſtates, and confined the *Vandals* within *Betica*, was the firſt of the *Gothes* which entituled himſelf King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*. By their Agreement with the *Romans*, they were to keep thoſe Provinces for the uſe of the Empire which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations: but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement, having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania*, by the proweſs of *Vallia*, and the *Suevi* out of *Betica*, under the conduct of *Theodoric* the Brother of *Toriſmund*; they fell upon the *Romans* themſelves, whom *Euricus* and his Succeſſors, by little and little, diſpoſſeſſed of all *Spaine* on this ſide of the Streights. *Tingitana* held out longeſt, as furtheſt off, unfortunately attempted by *Theudes* the 9th King of the *Gothes*, whoſe Souldiers being ſet upon by the *Romans* on the Lords day, or Sunday, refuſed to fight in their own defence, and were ſo miſerably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superſtition of a *Lords day Sabbath* prevail upon this melancholick and devout people. But what this *Theudes* could not doe, was performed by *Sintilla*, who in the ſhort time of his reign, Anno 642. made the Conqueſt abſolute.

Let us next look upon the *Gothes* as Lords of *Spain*, and we ſhall find them to have been *Chriſtians* in Religion, and ſomewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and converſation with the *Grecians*, before they turned their Forces into the Weſt. Their company more deſired in this reſpect, than that of the *Vandals*, who were not only Pagans, but far more barbarous. But theſe *Gothes* being for long time of the *Arian* Faction, did grievouſly afflict and perſecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this errour till the death of *Leonigild* (or *Leutigildus* as ſome call him) the laſt Patron and Aſſertor of it. Their Government *Monarchicall*, but the Kings *Elective*, (though for the moſt part they kept themſelves to the Regall Family:) an Excommunication being laid on ſuch, by the firſt Councill of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that eſtabliſhed courſe. Their Rule of Government was *Cuſtome*, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written Laws being firſt made by King *Euricus*, which the enſuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What elſe concerneth them we ſhall find in the cloſe of this Catalogue of

The Kings of the *Gothes* in *Spain*.

A.C.			A.C.		
421.	1	*Vallia*. 22.	515.	8	*Amalaric*. 11.
443.	2	*Theodoric*. 13.	526.	9	*Theudes*. 18.
456.	3	*Thoriſmund*. 3.	543.	10	*Theodogiſdus*. 3.
459.	4	*Theodoric* II. 14.	546.	11	*Agila*. 5.
473.	5	*Henry* or *Euricus*. 18.	551.	12	*Athanagildus*. 14.
491.	6	*Alaricus*. 21.	565.	13	*Luiba*. 3.
512.	7	*Genſalaric*. 3.	568.	14	*Leonigild*. 18.

586.

586. 15 *Richared.* 15.
601. 16 *Luiba* II. 2.
603. 17 *Victoricus.* 7.
610. 18 *Gundemaris.* 20.
630. 19 *Sisebulus.* 9.
639. 20 *Richared* II. 2.
641. 21 *Suintilla.* 3.
644. 22 *Siseranda.* 7.
651. 23 *Suintilla* II. 4.
655. 24 *Tulgas.* 2.
657. 25 *Vidisuindus.* 10.
667. 26 *Recesuind.* 13.
680. 27 *Bamba.* 9.
689. 28 *Ering.* 7.
696. 29 *Egypea.* 7.
703. 30 *Vitiza.* 13.
716. 31 *Roderick* the last King of the *Goths* in *Spain*, elected to the prejudice of the Sonnes of *Vitiza*, which after proved the ruine and overthrow of the Kingdom. For though the Kingdom went for the most part by Election, yet had they respect to the next of blood, (as at this time in *Poland* and *Bohemia* :) very few *interlopers* being here admitted; yet some there were who either by their merit or some opportunity got the possession of the Kingdom, though not at all relating to the *Royall* family. Of which kind were *Theudis*, an *Ostro-Goth*, sometimes the Governour hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes* in *Italy*, Protectour of this Kingdom in the minority of *Amalaric*, and *Theudegisolus*, Nephew to *Totilas* one of the successors to *Theodoric*. The rest of principall note were 1 *Theodoric* the first, slain in the battell neer *Tholouze* against *Attila* the *Hunn*, in defence of his own Countries and the *Roman* Empire. 2 *Theodoric* the second, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Batica*; and 3 *Leonigild* or *Lemigilde*, who deprived them of *Galicia* also. 4 *Reccaredus* the first, who first embraced the *Catholick* doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arianisme*; and for that cause first honoured with the title of the *Catholick* King; afterwards resumed by *Alfonsus* the first King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fift. 5 *Euricus*, or *Henricus* as some call him, as remarkeable for *Civill Politie*, as *Reccaredus* for piety: as being the *Licurgus* or *Legislator* of this people, not governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain customes, or at the pleasure of such Officers as the Kings set over them. 5 *Suintilla*, Sonne of *Reccaredus* the second, who having in the short time of his reign expelled the *Roman* forces out of *Tingitana* Anno 642. was the first Monarch of all *Spain*, whereof *Tingitana* (though on the other side of the Sea)had been made a Province by the Emperour *Constantine*, as before was said. And of this Province was *Iulianus* Governour in the time of *Rhoderick*, who being of the faction of the Sonnes of *Vitiza*, stomacked his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the Kings displeasure. Who sending him upon an Embassie to the *Moores* of *Africa*, in the mean time defloured his Daughter *Cava*: which the Father took in such indignation, that he procured the *Moores* (amongst whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into *Spain*. This request they performed under the conduct of *Musa* and *Tariffe*: and having made a full conquest, subjected it to the great *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperours. It is recorded in a MS. History of the *Saracens*, that at the first coming of *Tariffe* into *Spain*, a poor woman of the Country being willingly taken prisoner, fell down at his feet, kissed them, and told him, that she had heard her Father (who was lettered) say, that *Spain* should be conquered by a people, whose Generall should have a Mole on his right shoulder, and in whom one of his hands should be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers against the next encounter, uncloathed himself, and shewed the marke, which so encouraged them that they now doubted not the victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 foot, and 35000 horse. *Tariff* had 30000 horse, and 180000 foot. The battell continued seven days together from morning to night: at last the *Moores* were victorious. What became of King *Roderick* was never known; his Souldiers took one arrayed in their Kings apparell, whom, upon examination, they found to be a Sheepheard; with whom the King, after the discomfiture, had changed cloathes. It is written also in *Rodericus Toletanus*, that before the coming of those *Saracens*, King *Roderick*, upon hope of some treasure, did open a part of the Palace of long time forbidden to be touched; but found nothing but Pictures which resembled the *Moores*; with a Prophecie, that whensoever the Palace was there opened, the people there resembled should overcome *Spain*: and so it hapned Anno 724.

The *Moores*, now Lords of *Spain* by the treason of *Iulian*, (who having seen the miserable death of his wife and children, was starved in prison by the *Africans*) permitted the free use of *Religion* to the old Inhabitants. lest they seeking new dwellings for the liberty of Conscience, should leave their native soyl desolate. The *Moores* finished their conquest in five years, say some, others in two, and some again in eight Moneths. To keep the new conquered Country in subjection, no way was so convenient as to plant Colonies: but the *Morisco* women would not abandon their old seates. Hereupon *Musa* and *Tariffe*, by gifts, pardons, and perswasions, drew many *Christian* women to forsake their *Religion*, whom they maried to the Souldiers. Not long after *Vlidor Vlit*, the great *Caliph*, sent over about 50000 Families of *Moores* and *Iewes*; assigning them a convenient portion of lands, to be held with great immunities, & upon small rents. These Politick courses notwithstanding, the *Moores* long enjoyed not the sole Soveraignty herein for the *Christians* having now recovered breath, chose themselves Kings; and the Authority of the *Caliphs* declining, gave the *Moores* liberty to erect divers petit royalties; so that at last *Spain* fell into a thirteenfold division, into the Kingdoms and proprietary estates of 1 *Navarre*, 2 *Biscay*, and 3 *Guipuscoa*, 4 *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5 *Gallicia*, 6 *Corduba*, 7 *Granada*, 8 *Murcia*,

8 *Murcia*, 9 *Toledo*, 10 *Caſtile*, 11 *Portugall* and the Members of it, 12 *Valentia*, 13 *Catalonia*, 14 the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and 15 that of *Aragon*, not to ſay any thing of the petit Kingdoms of *Iaen*, *Algozire*, and *Sevill*, beſides others of like nature to them, erected by the factious and divided *Moores*, but of ſhort continuance all of them, and of little note; All now reduced at this day under the three governments of *Caſtile*, *Portugal*, and *Aragon*, the Kingdoms and Eſtates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biſcay*, *Murcia* and *Toledo*, being under *Caſtile*; *Portugall* with *Algarve*, and the Iſles of *Azores*, an entire government of it ſelf; *Valentia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorca*, under that of *Aragon*. Navarre.

1. NAVARRE.

NAVARRE, the firſt Kingdom for antiquitie in *Spain*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Principality of *Bearn*, in the Kingdom of *France*; on the Weſt, firſt with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, and after with a little River falling into it neer *Calahorra*, by which divided from *Caſtile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuſcoa*, and on the South, with the River *Aragon* (or *Arga*) by which divided from that Kingdom.

It was called at firſt the Kingdom of *Sobrarbre*, from a Town of that name, ſituate in the moſt inacceſſible part of the *Pyrenees*, and therefore choſe by *Garcia Ximines* the firſt King hereof, for the ſeat of his Kingdom, as moſt defenſible againſt the fury of the *Moores*: Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Navois*, ſignifying a plain and champagn Countrie, firſt uſed by *Inigo Ariſta* the ſixth King, who having taken *Pampelune*, abandoned the hill Countries and betook himſelf unto the *Plains*; or from *Navarriere*, the chief of the three parts into which that Citie was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Countrie though environed on all ſides with mighty Mountains, yet of it ſelf is ſaid to be reaſonably fruitfull, well watered, and for the moſt part plain, and level, as before is ſaid. It taketh up ſome parts of both ſides of the *Pyrenees*: the *Spaniſh* ſide being fertile, and adorned with trees; the *French* ſide generally very bare and naked. That on the *Spaniſh* ſide, and on the ſummits of the Mountains, now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, is called *High Navarre*; that on the *French* ſide, now called *Baſe*, or *Low Navarre*, eſtimated at a ſixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the *French*; incorporated by King *Lewis* the 13. to the Realm of *France*, Anno, 1620.

Places of moſt importance in *Baſe Navarre*, 1. *S. Palais*, formerly the place of Iudicature for this part of the Kingdom: but in the year 1620. removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bearn*: both *Bearn* and *Baſe Navarre*, which had before been governed as diſtinct Eſtates from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2. *Navarreux*, a Town of great importance, ſeven Leagues from *Pau*; well fortified, and as well munitioned: King *Lewis* the 13. finding in it at his coming thither, Anno 1620. no fewer then 45 Cannons all mounted, beſides 40 Culverins and ſmaler Peeces, with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals anſwerable thereunto. 3. *Pied de Port*, or *S. Iohn de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of *France*, againſt which formerly a Peece of eſpeciall ſtrength, 4. *Roncevallis* or *Roncevaux*, ſituate in the moſt pleaſant Countrie of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a ſmall but delightfull Valley, famous for the great battel fought neer unto it, in the ſtreights or entrances of the Mountains leading to this Valley, betwixt the *French* under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moores* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which battel, by the treachery of *Gavelon*, 40000 of the *French* were ſlain, and amongſt them, *Rowland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the *Peers* of *France*, of whom ſo many Fables are reported in the old *Romances*, the firſt Author of which Fables paſſeth under the name of Archb. *Turpin*, ſaid to be one of thoſe twelve *Peers*, who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the *Great*, hath interlaced his Storie with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof the noble Acts of that puiſſant Emperour, and his gallant Followers, are much obſcured and blemiſhed by thoſe very pens, which in the times ſucceeding did employ themſelves to advance the ſame.

Of ſpecial note in *High Navarre*, 1. *Victoria*, firſt built or rather reedified by *Sancho* the 4th, King of *Navarre*, Anno 1180. by whom thus named in memory of ſome victory obtained thereabouts againſt the *Caſtilians*; as in like caſe, there had been many Towns built by the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the Citie of *Victorie*, which we ſhall meet withall hereafter. Situate in the place of the antient *Vellica*, but graced with the privileges, and name of a Citie by *Iohn* the 2d of *Caſtile*, after it came under the command of that Crown, Anno 1432. A Town belonging properly to the little Province of *Olava*, and the chief thereof: which Province being wholly in and amongſt the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*, but being extorted from it Anno 1200, by *Alphonſo* the 2d of *Caſtile*, it was in the year 1332. incorporated into that Crown as a part thereof, as were ſome other Towns and members of this Kingdom alſo, won by the *Caſtilians*. 2 *Viane*, the title of the eldeſt Sonne of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced unto this honour by King *Charles* the 3d, Anno 1421. in imitation of the like cuſtom in *Caſtile*, where the eldeſt Sonne was called Prince of the *Aſturias*: but not leſs memorable for the death of *Caſar Borgia*, ſlain neer unto it in an ambuſh, after all his wanderings, and interchangeableneſs of fortunes. For being ſonne of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquiſhing that Title, by *Charles*

the

Navarre. the eighth of *France* created Duke of *Valeatinois* in the Province of *Daulphine*: during his Fathers life he had reduced under his obedience divers of the Eſtates which antiently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*: but after his deceaſe impriſoned by Pope *Iulio* the ſecond who was jealous (not without good cauſe) of his plots and practices. From *Rome* he ſtole unto *Gonſalvo*, then Vice-Roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinando* the *Catholique*; who notwithſtanding his ſafe conduct, ſent him priſoner to *Spain*: but breaking priſon (deſperarely ſliding down a window) he came at laſt into this kingdom, and was here ſlain in an *Ambuſcado*, as before was ſaid. So many times was *Machiavels* great Politician over-reached by Bookmen and Souldiers. 3 *Sobrarbre*, in the moſt inacceſſible parts of the *Pyrenees*, for that cauſe made the firſt ſeat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entituled from thence the Kings of *Subrarbre*. Made afterwards a diſtinct Kingdom from *Navarre* by *Sancho* the great, who gave it to *Gonſales* his youngeſt Sonne: after whoſe death (not having iſſue) it was ſeized on by *Don Raymir* the firſt King of *Aragon*, and made a Member of that Crown. 4 *Sangueſſa*, a Town of a large territorie and juriſdiction, privileged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Eſtates, and a ſtrong Fortreſs on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cauſe formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it ſometimes in their hands. 5 *Pampelun* in the *Champagn* Country, on the banks of the River *Arga*, the *Metropolis* of this Kingdom, and the ſeat Royall of its Kings ſince the Conqueſt of it from the *Moores* by *Inigo Ariſta* the ſixt King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts, that is to ſay *Bourg*, *Peuplement*, and *Navarriere*; each having ſeverall Officers and Iuriſdictions (the cauſe of many quarrels and much blood amongſt them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magiſtrate, by King *Charles* the third. An antient Town, firſt built by *Pompey* at the end of his wars againſt *Sertorius*: in memory of whom called *Pompeiopolis*, by our modern *Latiniſts*; but *Pampelon*, more neer unto the preſent name, by *Ptolomie* and *Antoninus*, now an *Epiſcopall* See, the ſeat of the Vice Roy, and one of the beſt fortified Towns of all *Spain*. 6 *Moia*, not far from the borders of *France*, where it joyneth on *Guipuſcoa*, a place of principall importance: the Caſtle whereof was one of the laſt peeces on this of ſide the Mountains which held out for King *Iohn* of *Albret* againſt *Ferdinand* the *Catholique* in his ſurprizall of this Kingdom. 7 *Montreal*, 8 *Olite*, and 9 *Taſalla*; all yielded with the reſt of this Kingdom, to *Frederick* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*. Who had the happineſs to ſubdue this Realm to the Crown of *Caſtile*, as his Sonne *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugall*. 10 *Tudele*, on the Eaſtern bank of the River *Ebro*, honoured with a little Univerſity there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, on his ſurprizall of that Kingdom. 11 *Calahorra*, ſituate on the weſtern banks of the *Iberus* or *Ibre*, by *Ptolomie* called *Calagorina*, by *Strubo*, *Calagurris*, now a Biſhops See; taken from *Raimir* the 2d. King of *Navarre*, by *Aiſonſo* the 2d. of *Caſtile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom. As alſo was 12 *Logrogno*, on the ſame banks of the River alſo. 13 *Eſtella* bordering on *Caſtile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eaſtern ſide of the River) by *Lewis* the 11th. of *France*; made Vmpire for the attonement of ſome differences betwixt *Henry* King of *Caſtile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

The old inhabitants thereof were the *Vaſcones*, poſſeſſed not only of this tract, but of *Biſcay* and *Guipuſcoa* alſo, from them denominated: who paſſing over the *Pyrenees*, made themſelves maſters of that Province which is now called *Gaſcoigne* by the *French*, and *Vaſcovia* in *Latin*. Wonne from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *Moores*; it began to be a Kingdom under *Garcia Ximines*, a noble man of the *Gothiſh* blood, who with 600 men only began to make head againſt the *Saracens*, Anno 716. firſt under the title of the Kingdom of *Sobrarbre*, and after that of *Navarre*; for the Reaſons formerly delivered. The ſixt from *Garcia Ximines* was *Inigo* ſurnamed *Ariſta*, (ſo named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Sonne of *Simon* Earl of *Bigorre* in *Gaſcoigne*, elected to this Kingdom, on the death of *Ximines* the fift King, Anno 840 or thereabouts, as the next Heir (but in the collaterall Line) of *Don Garcia Ximines* the firſt King of *Sobrarbre*. To him the taking of *Pampelune* is aſcribed moſt generally, though *Turquet* in his Hiſtory referre the ſame to *Garcia* the ſecond King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moores* till forced from them by the proweſs of *Charlemagne*, by them again recovered after the defeat of *Roncevals*, and held till the time of this King, who poſſeſſed himſelf of it. To this King alſo is aſcribed the firſt beginning of the ceremony of Crowning and Anointing after the manner uſed by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provinciall* cited in the *titles of honour* acknowledgeth no ſuch honour to theſe petit Kings, communicated only, in that time, to the Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt, the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Scicil*. And therefore probable it is, that the cuſtome came into *Navarre* with the houſe of *Champagne*. Other Kings of moſt note in the courſe of Story were, 3 *Fortun.* the ſecond Nephew of *Inigo Ariſta*, by his Sonne *Garcia* the third, who added unto his Eſtate the Earldom of *Aragon*, deſcended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Aſnarius*, or *Aznario*, the laſt Earl thereof. 4 *Sancho* the fourth, ſurnamed the *Great*, who firſt aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Spain*: his predeceſſors uſing no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbre* or *Navarre*; his Co-temperaries calling themſelves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Corduba*, according to the names of their ſeverall Kingdoms; the *Gothes*, Kings of the *Gothes* in *Spain*; and ſo the *Vandalls* and the *Suevi*. Onely the Earls of *Barcelone*, at their firſt Erection by the *French*, entituled themſelves the Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Spain*, as if all were theirs; with bragg and vanitie enough. But this Prince had ſome good ground for it, as being by inheritance poſſeſſed

of

of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; of *Caſtile* in the right of his Wife *Donna Nugna*, or *Elvira*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the laſt Earl thereof; and by conqueſt of a great part of the Realm of *Leon*: ſo that almoſt all *Spain*, not poſſeſſed by the *Moores*, was become his own. Had theſe Eſtates remained entire to his Succeſſors, the *Moores* no doubt had ſooner loſt their hold in *Spain*: and the whole Continent been brought under the obedience of one ſole Monarch. But this King either loving all his Sonnes alike; or elſe offended with the eldeſt, who moſt unnaturally had accuſed his own innocent mother of the crime of Adultery: divided his Eſtates amongſt them: giving to *Garcia* his eldeſt Sonne, the Realm of *Navarre*, with that part of *Leon* which he held by conqueſt; to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Sonne, *Caſtile*; and *Aragon* to his baſe Sonne *Raymir*; both which he erected into Kingdoms: and finally, to *Gonſales* his third Sonne, the Realm of *Sobrarbre*, then firſt diſmembred from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitick courſe, his Sonnes being all of equall title and Eſtates, inſtead of oppoſing the common foe, quarrelled with each other, and left the quarrell as a Legacie to their ſeverall Succeſſours: which miſchief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings; or left the reſt as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5 *Sancho* the fift, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his Sonne *Garcia de Nagera*, unnaturally and traiterouſly ſlain by his Brother *Raymir*. After whoſe death, and the ſhort interpoſition of his Murtherer, this Kingdom was ſeized on by the Kings of *Aragon*: three of which, viz. *Sancho Raymires*, *Pedro*, & *Alfonſo*, did ſeverally and ſucceſſively enjoy the ſame. 6 *Alfonſo* the laſt of the three Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*, ſurnamed the *Warriour*, who for a time was King of *Caſtile* alſo in right of *Urraca* his Wife: in which reſpect he took unto himſelf the title of *Emperour* of *Spain*, though not acknowledged ſo by others. But finally, dying without iſſue, and his Brother *Raymir*, or *Raymond* called the *Monk*, ſucceeding in *Aragon*; the Kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir* Lord of *Monſon*, the direct heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir* Lord of *Calahorra* his younger Sonne. 7 *Sancho* the 8th, the Nephew of this *Garcias Raymir*, by his Sonne *Sancho* the 7th ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, the laſt King of the maſculine and direct line of the Kings of *Navarre*: the Kingdom after his deceaſe paſſing by the Females, or Heirs generall, to the Earls of *Champague*, and ſo unto the Kings of *France*, the Houſes of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albret*, and *Vendoſme*; but never holding above 3 deſcents in any one Family. By meanes whereof, theſe Kings being barred from gaining any thing on the *Moores*, by the interpoſition of the Kings of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions by any undertakings and Adventures at Sea, as the *Portugals* did; incorporated to their Crown as fair and large poſſeſſions in the Realm of *France*, as any of the others did in the *Spaniſh* Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Foix* and *Begorre*, united in the perſon of *Gaſton* of *Foix*; as thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Albret* in the perſon of *John* Earl of *Albret*, all lying together on the other ſide of the *Pyrenees*, all added to this Crown by mariage with the Heirs hereof, made up a fairer and wealthier Eſtate than *Navarre* it ſelf; inferiour to few Provinces in the Realms of *Spain*. Not to ſay any thing of the acceſſion of the Countie Palatine of *Champagne*; exchanged afterwards for ſome Lands in the Countie of *La March* in *Limoſin*; or of the Earldoms of *Eureux*, and the Dutchie of *Vendoſme*; as lying further off, and of leſſe importance. Nor of the great Kingdom of *France* now herewith incorporate, as to the perſon of the K. though not in the poſſeſſion of this Kingdom alſo. With ſo much judgement and ſucceſs did the enſuing Kings (not otherwiſe able to enlarge their territories) beſtow their daughters; that the *Diſtaff* proved as happy to this little Kingdom, as the *Sword* to others. 8 *Charles*, the ſecond of that name, and the 30th King of *Navarre*, whom I mention not for any glorious Actions atchieved in his life, (for that was full enough of ignominy,) but for the ſtrangeneſs and hideouſneſs of his death. He was a Prince much given to *voluptuouſneſs* and ſenſuall pleaſures, which ſo waſted his ſpirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *Lethargie*. To comfort his benummed joynts, he was bound and ſewed up *naked* in a ſheet ſteeped in boyling *Aqua-vitæ*. The *Chirurgion* having made an end of ſewing the ſheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the threed, took a wax candle that ſtood lighted by him: but the flame running down by the threed, caught hold on the ſheet; which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vitæ*) burned with that vehemency, that the miſerable King ended his dayes in the fire. 9 *John* of *Aragon*, the ſecond Sonne of *Ferdinand* the firſt, in the life of his Brother *Alphonſo* was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the 3d, and on the death of his Brother, King of *Aragon* alſo: And though his Queen died long before him, in whoſe right he reigned, yet he kept poſſeſſion of the Kingdom, till his death, (reigning 54 years in all) notwithſtanding the oppoſition made againſt him by *Charles* Prince of *Viana*, his onely Sonne by that mariage, and Heir apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquiſhed, impriſoned, and at laſt poyſoned. 10 *John*, Earl of *Albret* in *Gaſcoigne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Katharine* his Wife: in whoſe reign the Kingdom of *Navarre* was ſeized on by *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, Sonne of the ſaid *John* King of *Aragon*, and *Navarre*; by a ſecond Wife. The manner of it we ſhall relate with more particulars, when we have ſummed up the whole Succeſſion of

Navarre.

The Kings of *Navarre*.

A. Ch.			
716.	1 *Garcia Ximines.* 42.	822.	3 *Fortunio.* 13.
758.	2 *Garcia* II. Sonne of *Garc. Ximines.*	815.	4 *Sancho Garcia.* 17.
		832.	5 *Ximines Garcia*, the laſt of the direct

Navarre.

rect Line of *Garcia Ximines*.

An *Interregnum* of 4 years.

844. 6 *Inigo*, ſurnamed *Ariſta*, Earl of *Begorre*, the next Heir Male of the houſe of *Garcia Ximines*. 23.
867. 7 *Garcia* III. ſurnamed *Inigo*. 18.
885. 8 *Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*. 16.
901. 9 *Sancho* II. called *Abarca*, Brother of *Fortunio* the 2d. 19.
920. 10 *Garcia* IV. 49.
969. 11 *Sancho* III. 24.
993. 12 *Garcia* V. ſurnamed the *Trembler*.
1000. 13 *Sancho* IV. ſurnamed the *Great*, of whom ſufficiently before.
1034. 14 *Garcias* VI. called *de Nagera*, eldeſt Sonne of *Sancho*. 20.
1054. 15 *Sancho* V. ſlain by
1074. 16 *Raymir*, the Brother of *Sancho* the fift, diſpoſſeſſed by
1076. 17 *Sancho* VI. ſurnamed *Ramires*, King of *Aragon*. 18.
1094. 18 *Pedro*, King of *Aragon*.
1104. 19 *Alfonſo*, called the *Warriour*, the laſt of the Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*.
1134. 20 *Garcia* VII. Nephew of *Garcia de Nagera*. 16.
1150. 21 *Sancho* VII. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*.
1194. 22 *Sancho* VIII. the laſt of the Male iſſue of *Garcia Ximines*. 40.
1234. 23 *Theobald*, Earl of *Champagne*, Sonne of the Lady *Blanch*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the 8th. 19.
1253. 24 *Theobald* II. Earl of *Campagne*. 18.
1271. 25 *Henry*, Sonne of *Theobald* the 2d. 3.
1274. 26 *Joane*, the Daughter of *Henry*, maried to *Philip* the *Fair* of *France*. 31.
1305. 27 *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France*. 10.
1315. 28 *Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*. 5.
1320. 29 *Charles* the *Fair*, King of *France*. 8.
1328. 30 *Joane* II. Qu. of *Navarre*, the Daughter of *Lewis Hutin*. *Philip* II. Earl of *Eureux*.
1349. 31 *Charles* II. Sonne of *Ioane* and *Philip* of *Eureux*. 37.
1386. 32 *Charles* III. Earl of *Eureux*. 39.
1425. 33 *Iohn*, Prince of *Aragon*, after the death of his elder Brother, King of *Aragon* alſo; the Husband of *Blanch*, the Daugher of *Charles* the 3d. 54.
1479. 34 *Leonora*, Daughter of *Iohn* and *Blanch*, the Widow of *Gaſton* Earl of *Foix*; a Queen of 15 dayes onely.
1479. 35 *Francis Phœbus*, Grandchild of *Leonora* and *Gaſton* of *Foix*, by their Sonne *Gaſton*, Prince of *Viane*.
1483. 36 *Catharine*, Siſter of *Francis*. *Iohn*, Earl of *Albret*.
1517. 37 *Henry* II. Earl of *Albret*, Sonne of *Iohn* and *Catharine*.
1556. 38 *Ioane* III. Daughter of *Henry* of *Albret*. *Antonie* of *Burbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme* in *France*.
1572. 39. *Henry* III. the Sonne of *Antonie* and *Ioane*, after the death of *Henry* the 3d of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Realm, by the name of *Henry* the 4th.
1610. 40 *Lewis* II. of *Navarre*, and XIII. of *France*.
41 *Lewis* III. of *Navarre*, and XIV. of *France*, now living, with

whom remain the rights, but not the poſſeſſion of this Kingdom. For in the reign of *Catharine* and *Iohn* of *Albret*, *Ferdinand* gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the *Moores*, and ſurprized this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and deſtitute of means to make the ſmalleſt reſiſtance, Anno 1512. The pretended reaſon of this ſurpizall, was an *Excommunication* laid on theſe Princes by the *Pope*, of which this King took upon him to be the *Executioner*: but the true cauſe was an antient deſire which this King had to poſſeſs this frontire kingdom; it being a ſtrong Bulwark againſt *France*. It hapned then that *Lewis* the 12th having incurred the diſpleaſure of Pope *Iulio* the ſecond, was together with all his adherents, excommunicated; and his, and their eſtates, given to ſuch as could or would ſubdue them. The King and Queen of *Navarre* were at this time both *French* ſubjects: he in reſpect of *Albret*, his paternall inheritance, and ſhe of her eſtates of *Foix* and *Bearn*, and therefore fided with the *French* King. *Ferdinand* having (as we ſaid) levied an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moores*, turneth upon the *French* King; and demanded of theſe Princes, not only a free paſſage thorough their countrey, but alſo to have certain places of ſtrength put into his hands, for his better aſſurance. Theſe unjuſt demands the *Navarrois* denied. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the kingdom, the greateſt part of which he took without a blow given, the *French* King being as backward in affording due aſſiſtance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The *French* netled with this loſs, divers times attempted the recovery of it, but in vain: for the *Spaniard* ſtill keepeth thoſe parts of it which lie on that ſide of the *Pyrenees*; leaving the reſt, which lieth on the *French* ſide of thoſe Mountains (being about a ſixt part of the whole) to the Deſcendants of thoſe Princes whom he had diſſeized.

The Arms of *Navarre* are *Gules*, a Carbuncle nowed *Or*. Which Carbuncle having a reſemblance unto chaines of Gold, is ſaid to have been firſt taken by *Sancho* the 8th, in memorie that he and his Forces had firſt broken the Fortification made with chaines, about the Pavilion of *Makomet Enaſer*,

ſer the *Meramomolin* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*: before which time the Armes of this Kingdom had been *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*. *Leon.*

The chief order of Knighthood was of the *Lilly*, begun by *Garcia* the ſixth; their Blazen a pot of *Lillies* with the Portraiture of our Lady ingraved upon it; their duty to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain *Ave-Maries*.

4. *LEON* and *OVIEDO*.

THe Kingdom of *LEON* and *OVIEDO* hath on the Eaſt the Countrie of *Biſcay*; on the North, the main *Cantabrian* Ocean; on the South, *Caſtile*; on the Weſt, *Gallicia*. So called from *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and firſt ſeat of their Kings; the antienteſt Kingdom in all *Spain*. By a more antient name it was called *Aſturia*, from the *Aſtures*, who poſſeſſed it in the time of the *Romans*; divided into the two generall names of *Auguſtani* and *Tranſmontani*, but comprehending the particular Tribes or Nations of the *Peſici*, *Gigari*, *Zoela*, and *Lancienſes*.

The Countrey mountainous and woodie, but formerly of ſome eſteem for thoſe ſmall, though ſwift Horſes which the *Romans* (from hence) called *Aſturcones*; we may read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Gueldings: *Aſturco Macedonicus* being uſed for a *Macedonian Nag*, by *Petronius Arbiter*.

It is divided commonly into two parts, that is to ſay, *Aſturia de Oviedo*, bordering on *Gallicia*, towards the Weſt, and 2 *Aſturia Santillana*, confining on *Biſcay*, towards the Eaſt. From which diviſion of the Countrey the eldeſt Son of *Caſtile* is called Prince of the *Aſturias*, in the plural number, which Title ſome ſuppoſe to be given unto them, becauſe it was the firſt Countrey which held up againſt the *Moores*. But indeed the true Original hereof is referred by the beſt *Spaniſh* Writers, to the time of the mariage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *Iohn* of *Gaunt*, and in right of her Mother *Conſtance*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*, unto *Henry* Sonne of *Iohn* the firſt, then in poſſeſſion of that Kingdom. For to this new maried Couple it was granted, ſaith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir Apparant is called *Prince of Wales*, they ſhould be called Princes of the *Aſturias*. In times ſucceeding the Towns of *Iaen*, *Vbeda*, *Biatia*, and *Anduiar* were added to this Principate, and ſo continued to this day.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Avales*, on the Sea ſide, not far from the Promontorie, called of old *Promontorium Scythicum*; but now *Cabo de Pinas*, 2. *Sublanco*, now a ſmall vllage, but once a Town of ſo great ſtrength that it was deſtroyed by the command of the Emperour *Nerva*, leſt it might animate theſe Mountainers unto a revolt. 3. *LEON*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the place of the old *Sublancia* (as it was then called:) The town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Biſhop whereof acknowledgeth no *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the *Moores*, Anno 722. Afterwards made the *Regal* Seat of the Kings of *Leon*; by ſome called *Legio*, becauſe the 7th *Legion* was here lodged; by *Ptolomie* called *Legio Germanica*, and by others *Gemina*. 4. S. *Andera*, ſo named from a Church there built to the honour of S. *Andrew*; by *Ptolomie* called *Flavionavie*; now a wel-traded Port on the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 5. *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eaſtern part of *Aſturia*. 6. *Llanes*, where the two *Aſturias* meet together. 7. *Civdad Real* in the Weſtern part of *Aſturia*, called *Aſturia de Oviedo*. 8. *Villa Vicioſa*, the only noted Port in this part of the Countrie. 9. *OVIEDO*, called for a time the Citie of Biſhops, becauſe many of the Biſhops of *Spain*, diſpoſſeſſed of their Churches by the *Moores*, had retired thither, and there preſerved the line of Epiſcopal Succeſſion, till their Sees were filled again with Biſhops in more happy times. Antiently it was called *Lucus Aſturum*, and was of old a Biſhops See; reedified by King *Froila* the firſt, in the yeer 757. Famous enough in giving the title of a Kingdom to the firſt *Chriſtian* Princes after the Conqueſt by the *Moores*, called from hence Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, Anno, 896. they began to be ſtiled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*; and at laſt Kings of *Leon* only; *Oviedo* being quite left out of the *Regal* ſtile by *Raymir* the 2d, Anno 904. More toward the Inlands of this Kingdom (now reckoned part of *old Caſtile*) are 10. *Palenza*, the *Pallantia* of *Ptolomie* and *Antoninus*, ſeated on the River *Carrion*; once a ſmall Vniverſitie, till the tranſlation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town firſt felt the furie of the *Snevians*, when they maſtered theſe parts of *Spain*. 11. *Aſtorga*, antiently called *Auguſta Aſturica*, whence the *Aſtures* of this tract were called *Auguſtani*, a Biſhops See frontiring on *Gallicia*; happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the luſtfull King *Vitiza*; who to ſecure himſelf in his unlawfull pleaſures, and to weaken his ſubjects, if they ſhould attempt any thing againſt him, diſmantelled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Aſtorga*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Countrie hath been ſhewn already. When conquered by *Auguſtus Cæſar* they were under part of the *Province* of *Tarragonenſis*; part afterwards of the *Province* of *Gallicia* by the Emp: *Conſtant*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, & from them by the *Moores*, though long they did not lye under their command. For as the luſt of *Roderick* the laſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*, occaſioned the coming in of the *Moores*; ſo the luſt of *Magnutza*, a *Mooriſh* Vice-Roy, occaſioned (though in long courſe of time) their expulſion thence. For *Magnutza* having employed *Pelagius* a young Prince of the *Aſturias* on an Embaſsy to *Muſa*, the Leiutenant Genetal of the *Moores*, then reſiding at *Corduba*; in his abſence raviſhed his Siſter, and at his return died by the edge of his ſword. Diſpairing of pardon for this Act, he was fain to ſtand upon his guard, and fortifie

Leon.

ſelf in the mountainous places of this Countrie: to which many of the old Inhabitants reſorted, put themſelves under his command, and elected him to be their King: firſt by the name of King of the *Aſturias*, and after by the Title of King of *Leon*, when he had got that Citie into his hands, as being the Citie of moſt note, and the ſtrongeſt hold that he was poſſeſſed of. The Kingdom at the firſt beginning contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Aſturias*, enlarged a little further South on the taking of *Leon* by this firſt *Pelagius*. Afterwards by the valour of *Ordogno* the 2d, it extended over both *Aſturias*, *Gallicia*, and the *old Caſtile*: divided from the *Moores* by the Mountains of *Avila* and *Segovia*, but more defended by the valour of the people, and gallantry of their Princes, than it was by thoſe Mountains. Kings of moſt note, beſides the two before remembred, were 1. *Mauregate*, the baſe Sonne of *Alfonſo* the firſt, who having by the help of *Abderamen*, King of the *Moores*, obtained the Kingdom, came to a baſe agreement with them, in which he bound himſelf to pay them as an yeerly tribute 50 *Virgins* of noble Families, and as many of inferiour birth; for which he died hated and deteſted of all men. 2 *Raymir* the firſt, who ſo diſcomfited the *Moores* at the battel of *Clavigio*, Anno 826. that from that time the power and reputation of the Kings of *Corduba* began to languiſh. 3 *Alfonſo* the 3d, who refuſed to pay unto the *Moores* the ſaid tribute of *Virgins*; and for his many victories againſt the *Moores*, was ſurnamed the *Great*; who being outed of his Kingdom by his Sonne *Garcia*, not only patiently digeſted ſo great a wrong, but willingly became his Sonnes *Leiutenant* againſt the *Moores*. 4 *Veramund* the 2d, choſen King in the minoritie of *Raymir* the 3d, in whoſe time the *Moores* took *Leon*, and ſpoyled the Church of S. *Iames* in *Gallicia*; but were after beaten to their homes, with the loſs of many of their own places. 5 *Veramund* the 3d, who making war againſt *Ferdinand* the firſt King of *Caſtile*, was by him ſlain in battel; the Conquerour ſeizing on his Kingdom, in right of *Sancha* his Wife, the Siſter of *Veramund*; the three Kings next ſucceeding being Kings of both: 6 *Ferdinand* the 3d, Sonne of *Alfonſo* the 9th, and of *Berengaria* the younger Siſter of *Henry* King of *Caſtile*, by the power and policie of his Mother, ſeized on the *Caſtiles*, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Siſter, Wife of *Lewis* Sonne to *Philip* the 2d, King of *France*, and after the death of his Father ſucceeded in *Leon*. Of whom we ſhall hear more when we come to *Caſtile*. After this time theſe Kingdoms never were divided; but incorporate into one Eſtate, called for long time the Kingdom of *Caſtile* and *Leon*: though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regal ſtile, and only that of *Caſtile* mentioned, except in *Legal* inſtruments, *Letters Patents*, and *Inſtruments* of Negotiation with forrain Frinces. The whole ſucceſſion of theſe Kings, the Hiſtories of *Spain* thus preſent unto us.

The Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*.

A. Ch.			A. Ch.		
716.	1	*Pelagius*, of whom ſufficiently be-before. 20.	898.	16	*Alfonſo* IV. Sonne of *Ordogno*. 6.
735.	2	*Faſila*, the Sonne of *Pelagius*. 2.	904.	17	*Raymir* II. Brother of *Alfonſo*. 19
737.	3	*Alfonſo*, for his Pietie ſurnamed the *Catholick*, the Sonne-in-law of *Pelagius* by his Daughter *Ormiſinde*.	924.	18	*Ordogno* III. Sonne of *Raymir*. 5.
			929.	19	*Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Groſs*, Brother of *Ordogno* the 3d. 12.
756.	4	*Phrouilla*, the Sonne of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, the Founder or Repairer rather of *Oviedo*.	941.	20	*Raymir* III. Sonne of *Sancho*. 24.
			965.	21	*Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancho*. 17.
768.	5	*Aurelius*, the Brother of *Phrouilla*. 6.	982.	22	*Alfonſo* V. Sonne of *Veramund*. 46.
			1028.	23	*Veramund* III. Sonne of *Alfonſo*. 9.
774.	6	*Sillo*, the Sonne-in-law of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, by his Daughter *Odeſinde*. 9.	1037.	24	*Sanctia*, Siſter of *Veramund*, *Ferdinand* King of *Caſtile*. 30.
783.	7	*Mauregate*, an Vſurper, the baſtard Sonne of *Alfonſo*. 6.	1067.	25	*Alfonſo* VI. the youngeſt Sonne of *Ferdinand* and *Sanctia*, firſt King of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sanctius* his elder Brother, he ſucceeded alſo in *Caſtile*. 41.
789	8	*Veramund*, Sonne to *Froilla*. 6.			
795.	9	*Alfonſo* II. ſurnamed the Chaſt, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.	1108.	26	*Vrraca*, the Daughter of *Alphonſo*. *Alfonſo* VII. King of *Arag.* and *Navarre*. 13
825	10	*Raymir*, the Sonne of *Veramund*. 6.	1122.	27	*Alfonſo* VIII. the Sonne of *Vraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundie*, ſucceeded in *Leon* and *Caſtile*. 35.
831.	11	*Ordogno*, Sonne to *Raymir*. 10.			
841.	12	*Alfonſo* III. ſurnamed the *Great*, the Sonne of *Ordogno*. 46.	1157.	28	*Ferdinand* II. younger Sonne of *Alfonſo*, King of *Leon* only. 31.
886.	13	*Garcia*, Sonne to *Alfonſo* the 3d. 3.	1188.	29	*Alfonſo* IX. Sonne of *Ferdinand*. 42.
889.	14	*Ordogno* II. King of *Gallicia*, the Brother of *Garcia*.	1230.	30	*Ferdinand* III. Sonne of *Alfonſo*, by *Berengaria* or *Berenguela*,
897.	15	*Phroilla* II. Brother of *Ordogno*. 1			

Siſter of *Henry* of *Caſtile*, by the power and practices of his Mother ſucceeded in the Realm of *Caſtile*, whileſt his Father lived, Anno 1217. to the prejudice of *Blanch* her elder Siſter, maried to *Lewis* the 8th of *France*, by whom ſhe had *Lewis* the 9th, and other Children.

The

The Kingdoms never ſince that time diſ-joyned, as they had been once before ſince the firſt uniting. *Biſcay & Guipuſcoa.*

The Armes of this Kingdom are *Argent*, a Lyon *Paſſant*, crowned *Or*, which Armes when it was joyned to the Kingdom of *Caſtile* were quartered with the Coat thereof: that being the firſt time, (as *Camden* notes) that ever Armes were born Quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the 3d of *England*, who not only took unto himſelf the Title of King of *France*, but (to ſhew his right unto that Crown) quartered the *Flower de Lices*, with his *Engliſh* Lions.

3 *BISCAY*, and 4 *GVIPVSCOA*.

OF theſe two we ſhall ſpeak together, becauſe of the ſimilitude and reſemblances which are between them, both in the Countrey and the people; the names being alſo forged from the ſame Originall: Bounded upon the Weſt with the Kingdom of *Leon*; on the Eaſt, with the *Pyrenees*, and *Guienne* in the Realm of *France*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre* and old *Caſtile*. Thus named from the *Vaſcones*, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdom of *Navarre* in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people in the year 640. or thereabouts, paſſed over unto the farther ſide of the *Pirenees*, where they took up thoſe parts of *France*, ſince from them called *Gaſcoigne*. The reſt continuing in their old ſeats, or ſpreading more into the Weſt towards the *Cantabrians*, gave to thoſe parts the name of *Guipuſcoa* and *Viſcaia*, (for ſo the *Spaniarde* write and ſpeak it) now by us called *Biſcay*: their language alſo (which is much different from the reſt of *Spain*) being called the *Baſquiſh*, more neer in ſound to that of *Vaſcons* the Originall name.

The whole Country is very Mountainous and woodie, yielding but little ſtore of Corn, and leſs of Wine: the defect of the firſt being ſupplied from other Countries, of the laſt by *Sider*, for which end they plant Apples here in great abundance. But from thoſe Woods they draw continually great ſtore of Timber for the building of ſhips: and from thoſe hills there do not only iſſue pleaſant Rivers (ſome ſay 150. in number) of which *Iberus* and *Duero* are ſaid to be two; but ſuch infinite ſtore of *Iron* and *Steel*, that no Country yieldeth better or in greater plenty, called and accounted for this cauſe the *Armorie of Spain*; and giving occaſion unto *Plinie* to report that there was in this Country, a whole Mountain of Iron, *In Maritima Cantabriæ parte Mons prærupte altus (incredibile dictu) totus ex ea materia eſt*, lib. 34. cap. 45. Nor do they only furniſh all *Spain* with Iron, which they make into inſtruments of War, and others for domeſtick uſes; but with Timber alſo for their ſhipping: with which ſo ſtored that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Eaſtern bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and the Realm of *France*, which is called *GVYPVSCOA*, and the Weſtern bordering on the Kingdom of *Leon*, which properly is called *BISCAY*: the Town of *Montrico* ſtanding in the confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the ſame Originall, though by ſeverall means united to the Crown of *Caſtile*; both ſpeak the ſame *Cantabrian* language now called the *Baſquiſh*, the people of both being more rude and ſimple than the reſt of *Spain*, but ſtanding much upon their Gentry, according to the cuſtome of moſt Mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that thoſe of *Guipuſcoa* by reaſon of their trafick and commerce with other Countries, ſavour a little more of *Chriſtianity* than the others do: in which the common *Biſcaines* are ſo far to ſeek, that though they have ſome generall notions of God and *CHRIST*, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable meaſure. And review being taken of thoſe general notions in which both Countries are concerned; let us next look upon them in their ſeveral and diſtinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And firſt for *GVIPVSCOA*. The places of chiefeſt note in it are, 1 *S. Sebaſtians* (Don *Baſtia* as the Vulgar call it) a noted and well-traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Garvine*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two ſtrong Caſtles founded upon the oppoſite Rocks, and honoured with an *Epiſcopall* See. 2 *Toloſa* (commonly called *Toloſette*) at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria* and *Duarzo*. 3 *Placenza*, on the River *Denia*, inhabited by none but *Blackſmiths*, who do attend their Hammers with ſuch endleſs diligence, that *Vulcans* forge may ſeem to be tranſlated hither from the Iſle of *Lemnos*. 4. *Fonterabia* at the mouth of the River *Vidoſa*, which divides this Country from *Guyenne* in *France*; for that cauſe very well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned. 5 *Renteria*, ſituate neer a Brook abounding with moſt excellent Salmons. 6 *Montrico*, at the mouth of the River *Denia*, the fartheſt Town hereof on the edge of *Biſcay*. Moſt of which ſtands upon or neer the Sea; there being but few Towns of note within the land (though ſtore enough of ſcatered Villages, as in *Biſcay* alſo) becauſe of the roughneſs of the Mountains.

As for the Fortunes and affairs of this part of the Country after the ſubverſion of the Kingdom of the *Gothes* in *Spain* (for till that time they followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of this Countrie) it was at firſt a Member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wreſted from King *Sancho* the ſixt, by *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Caſtile*, Anno 109. by whom committed to the Government of *Lopes Diaz de Haro* Lord of *Biſcay*. Reſtored again to the Kings of *Navarre* upon ſome following Capitulations, it ſo continued till the year 1200. when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Caſtile*, they offered themſelves to the

Biſcay. ſubject on of *Alphonſo* the third, who without ſo much as one blow ſtrook, became Maſter of all the Country; and left it ſetled and confirmed unto his ſucceſſors, as it hath ever ſince remained.

2 For *BISCAY* next, the Principall Towns thereof are, 1 *Larrabecua*, the chief Town of this Province in elder times, in the Chief Church whereof the Kings of *Spain*, as Lords of *Biſcay*, uſe to be ſolemnly inaugurated; here making Oath to maintain the liberties of the Country, and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the people of it. 2 *Berneo*, an old Town alſo, and amply privileged, the franchiſes whereof the Kings are ſolemnly ſworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the honour of *S. Euphemia*. 3 *Guernica*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of theſe Countries. Then of a later date we have 4 *Bilbo*, or *Bilbao*, ſituate ſome two leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep *Creek* thereof, on the other ſide ſurrounded with Mountains; built out of the ruines of the old *Flaviobriga*, by *Diego de Haro* Lord of *Biſcay*, Anno 1300. and ſituate the beſt of any Town in this Country for plenty of Victuals, eſpecially for fleſh and moſt excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all ſorts of weapons (their chiefeſt manufacture) the *Bilbo* Blades in ſuch requeſt being brought from hence. Beſides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal alſo in wool, by the vent of which commodities they are grown ſo wealthy, that here are many private Merchants which build yearly three or four good ſhips for their own trade only. 5 *Laredo*, a Sea Town alſo with a capable port. 6 *Portugaletre*, commodiouſly ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houſes, and ſerveth them exceeding fitly for the lading and unlading of their commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this tract before the coming in of the *Vaſcones*, were the *Cantabri*; theſe ſubdivided into the ſeverall Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Cariſti*, the *Antrigones*, the *Varduli*, and the *Cantabri* properly ſo called. From theſe deſcend the modern *Biſcaines*. An Argument whereof may be their Language different from the reſt of *Spain*, and ſaid by ſome to have continued in this Country ever ſince the Confuſion at *Babel*. And though they over-ſhoot themſelves that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedigree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the antient language of *Spain*, is more than probable, becauſe this people have ever continued without any mixture of forrein Nations, as being never throughly ſubdued either by *Romans*, *Carthaginians*, *Gothes*, or *Moores*: and ſo they remained, as in their liberties not Maſtered, ſo in their language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continueth uncorrupt in the hilly parts of *Granada*; the Tongue of the old *Britans* in our *Wales*; and the antient *Epirotick*, in the high, woodie, and more Mountainous parts of that Country. And though thoſe of *Guipuſcoa* ſpeak the ſame language alſo, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words (by reaſon of their neighbourhood with *France*, and commerce with ſtrangers) than it is in *Biſcay*: where the old naturall language, whatſoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biſcaines* differ from the reſt of *Spain* in *language* only but in *Cuſtomes* alſo, four of which I will here ſet down as a light to the reſt. Firſt they account themſelves free from taxes and contributions to the Kings of *Spain*, yielding them obedience with their *Bodies*, but not with their *Purſes*. And when any of the *Spaniſh* Kings in their *Progreſſes* come to the *Frontires* of this Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entreth into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him ſome few ſmall Braſs pieces (*Maravidis* they call them, whereof 600 go to a *Crown*) in a leathern bag, hanged at the end of a Lance; but withall they tell him, that he muſt not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey. Secondly, They admit no Biſhops to come amongſt them; and when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* came in *Progreſs* hither, accompanied, amongſt others, by the Biſhop of *Pampelune*, the people aroſe in Arms, drave back the *Biſhop*, and gathering all the duſt on which they thought he had troden, caſt it into the Sea. Which averſneſs unto Biſhops, as they firſt took up in all probability, on ſome hard uſage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and ſtill retain it out of a ſtubbornneſs of Nature, moſt peculiar to them: ſo poſſible enough it is, that the want of Biſhops, and of Epiſcopall *Viſitations* amongſt the *Biſcaines*, is not the leaſt cauſe of that ignorance and rudeneſs (ſpoken of before) which is found amongſt them. Thirdly, they allow not any Prieſts to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Concubine* with him: conceiving it impoſſible for to keep their Wives unto themſelves, if the *Curate* hath not a woman of his own. Fourthly, The Women at all meetings do firſt taſt of the Cup, and ſo diſpoſe of it to the men; which Cuſtom they have had amongſt them ever ſince *Ogne*, the Counteſs of *Caſtile*, attempted to have poyſoned her Sonne *Sancho* in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of that Countrey againſt the *Romans*, when the reſidue of *Spain* was ſubdued, and were at laſt, not without great effuſion of blood, and manifeſt tokens of manly reſolution, and heroick ſpirits on their parts, vanquiſhed by the darling of Fortune, *Auguſtus*. Such hilly and mountainous people are alwaies the laſt that are conquered, and the firſt that ſtand on their own guard: as beſides theſe *Biſcaines*, the *Navarrois* and *Aſturians* here in *Spain*, in reſpect of the *Moores*; and our *Britans*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a ſharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occaſion good and able men; or that the Forts of Natures own building are not ſo eaſily wonne, as defended; or that the unpleaſantneſs of the Country, and unfruitfulneſs of the ſoyl, yeeld no occaſion to ſtrangers, to deſire and adventure for, I take not on me to determine.

But

But being overcome at last, they were first cast into the Province of *Tarraconensis*; and so continued after the new modelling of *Spain* by the Emperour *Constantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued till that Empire fell: and then not conquered by the *Goths*, but resigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the rest of that Province. Nor lost they any thing of their antient and naturall courage by the intermixture of the *Vascons*: continuing still good Souldiers both for Sea and Land; a stubborn, fierce, and couragious people; impatient of servitude, and not easie to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The last of all the *Spaniards* that submitted to the furie of the *Moores* (excepting those of the *Asturia's* never conquered by them) and one of the first Provinces which shook off that yoak, animated and conducted in that undertakingby *Soria*, descended of the blood Royall of *Scotland*, Anno 87. made upon that good service the first Lord of *Biscay*. After this they continued a free and distinct estate, under their own *Proprietarie* Lords and Princes of the noble Family of *Haro*, till that *Nero* of *Spain*, *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*, violently took it from *Donna Ieanne*, the right heir of it, Anno 1358. From which *Donna Ieanne*, the eldest Daughter, maried to *Ferdinand* the younger Sonne of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right Heir of *Castile*, issued the Lady *Ieanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the second, and Mother of *John* the first, both Kings of *Castile*: by which last this Countrey was united to that Crown for ever, Anno 1379. The names of the Proprietary Lords of this Estate, we have in this following Catalogue of *Galicia.*

The Lords of *Biscay*.

870. 1 *Soria*, the Sonne of *Lope* of *Biscay*, but Nephew by the Mothers side to a King of *Scotland*, the first Lord of *Biscay*.
2 *Manso Lopes*, the Sonne of *Soria*.
3 *Inigo* the Deaf, Sonne of *Manso Lopes*.
4 *Lopes Diaz*, the Sonne of *Inigo*.
5 *Sancho Lopes*, the Sonne of *Lopes Diaz*.
6 *Inigo* II. the base Sonne of *Lopes Diaz*, the two Sonnes of *Sancho Lopes* by reason of their tender years being set aside.
7 *Lopes Diaz* II. Sonne of *Inigo* the 2d.
8 *Diego Lopes*, surnamed the *White*, Sonne of *Lopes Diaz* the 2d.
9 *Lopes Diaz* III. Sonne of *Diego Lopes*, the first who took unto himself the surname of *Haro*, from a Town of that name of his Foundation.
10 *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*, the Sonne of *Lopes Diaz* the 3d.
11 *Lopes Diaz* IV. Sonne of *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*.
1257. 12 *Diego Lopes Diaz* II. assisted *Sancho* the second Sonne of King *Alfonso* of *Castile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Ferdinand* his elder Brother, by which *Sancho* he was after slain.
1289. 13 *Diego Lopes de Haro*, the Sonne of *Diego*.
1290. 14 *Diego Lopes* III. the Brother of *Diego Lopes Diaz* the 2d, the Founder of the Town of *Bilbo*.
1309. 15 *Iohn* of *Castile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Lopes* the 2d.
1319. 16 *Iohn* the Blinde, so called because he had lost an eye, Sonne of *Iohn* of *Castile*, and *Mary Diaz of Haro*, slain by King *Alfonso*.
1329. 17 *Iohn Nugnes of Lara*, in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Iohn* the Blind (whose name I find not) succeeded after the decease of *Donna Maria Diaz*.
1350. 18 *Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two yeers old, succeeded *Iohn Nugnes* of *Lara* his Father.
1351. 19 *Ieane* and *Isabel*, the Sisters and Heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, seized upon by *Don Pedro* and the whole Signeurie of *Biscay* subjected by strong hand to the Crown of *Castile*, with many other fair Estates which depended on it.

The Arms of these Lords of *Biscay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the second.

5 GALLICIA.

GALICIA, or GALLÆCIA, is bounded on the East, with the *Asturias*, from which parted by the River *Mouro*; on the South, with *Portugall*, from which divided by the River *Minio*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian*; and on the West, with the *Atlantick* Oceans. The antient Inhabitants of it were the *Gallaici*, (whence it had the name) distinguished into the severall Tribes of the *Bedyi*, *Seuri*, *Celini*, *Capori*, and *Lemavi*, spoken of by *Ptolomie*.

The Countrie like that of the *Asturias*, mountainous, and almost inaccessible, overspread with the *Cantabrian* hils; and so the fitter to hold out against forrein invasions. in defence of *Libertie* and *Religion*; in that regard chosen for a retiring place by the distressed and vanquished *Christians*, in their first Wars against the *Moores*. Not well inhabited to this day, not so much for the hilliness of the Countrie, as for want of Water; which defect makes the people generally draw more towards

Gallicia. towards the Sea, where they improve their fortunes by trade, and fiſhing. The barrenneſs of the Countrie recompenced heretofore by the rich mines of Gold and Silver; which in this Countrie, and the *Aſtures*, and ſome part of *Luſitania*, afforded yeerly 20000 pound weight of Gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millions of Crowns; but now no mines found in it of any value. Inſtead of which, it yeeldeth the beſt mines for *Iron*, of any Provinc̃e of *Spain*, for which their Waters are ſo proper, that they are ſaid to fortifie and improve the *metal*.

Places of principall importance are, 1 *Compoſtella*, an Vniverſity, and Archbiſhops See, vulgarly called St. *Iago*, in honour of S. *Iames*, the ſonne of *Zebedee*, whom they pretend to be buried here; and of whom there is denominated an *Order* of Knights: his *Relicks* ſaid to be kept in the chief Church of it, worſhipped by the *Romaniſts* with great devotion, and drawing to this place a wonderfull concourſe of people comming thither on pilgrimage. 2 *Baiona*, not far from the mouth of the River *Minio*. 3 *Coruuna*, by *Ptolomie* called *Flavium Brigantium*, by us *Engliſh*, the *Groyn*; often mentioned in the ſtorie of our Wars with the *Spaniard*, in Qu. *Elizabeths* time; then taken by the *Engliſh*, but ſince very well fortified to avoid the like ſurprizall. Divided then as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low*: ſituate on the *Cantabrian* Sea betwixt the Promontorie *Trilencum*, now *Cabo Ortegal*, lying towards the Eaſt, and that of old called *Nerium*, now *Cabo Finis terre*, as being the moſt Weſtern end of the then known World: 4 *Oreus*, upon the *Minio*, a Biſhops See, by *Ptolomie* called *Aquæ Calidæ* from the *Bathes* here being; now much commended for the beſt Wines. 5 *Tui*, on the ſame River, frontiring upon *Portugall*; a Biſhops See, in antient Writers called *Tudæ*. 6 *Ponte-vedre*, 7 *Ribadeo*, both upon the ſea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The antient Inhabitants hereof, as before is ſaid, were the *Gallaici*, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the power of the *Romans*: by whom firſt made a part of *Tarraconenſis*, after a Province of it ſelf, by the name of *Gallicia*, the *Aſturias*, and ſome part of the *Old Caſtile* and *Portugall*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi*, a potent Nation of *Germanie*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their *tranſmigrations*, invaded *Spain*, and firſt poſſeſſed themſelves of this Countrey. But not content with their Eſtate, they warred on the *Silinges* (a *Vandal*-tribe) then poſſeſſing *Bætica*; whom they vanquiſhed, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Rechila* their ſecond King. They added ſhortly after, *Luſitania*, to their former conqueſts: ſtopped in their careere, by *Theodorick* the 2d, King of the *Gothes*, by whom vanquiſhed, and confined again within *Gallicia*, which they enjoyed, till the finall ruine of their kingdom by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, Anno 858. reduced then to a Province of the *Gothiſh* kingdom. Their habitation before their comming into *Spain*, was in the Eaſtern part of *Germanie* beyond the *Elb*. Their *Religion* at the firſt under *Recciarius* their third King, was very *Orthodox* and ſound. But vanquiſhed by the *Gothes*, and obliged unto them for the reſtoring of their kingdom, they fell off to *Arianiſm*: perſiſting in that *Hereſie* for the ſpace of an hundred years; and then again returning to the *Catholick* Faith, under *Theodomire* their King, therein continuing conſtant till their finall overthrow. The Kings hereof (as many as are upon record) are theſe that follow.

Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1 *Hermenericus*, who firſt brought the *Suevians* into *Spain*, and poſſeſſed *Gallicia*. *Arcadius* and *Honorius* then Emperours of the Eaſt and Weſt.
2 *Rechila*, who conquered the *Silinges*, and ſubdued *Batica*.
3 *Recciarius*, the firſt Chriſtian King, who won *Luſitania*; afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, the *Suevians* for a time becomming ſubject to that King.
4 *Maſdras*, reſtored unto the kingdom by *Theodorick*.
5 *Frumarius*, the Sonne of *Maſdras*.
6 *Remiſmundus*, Brother of *Frumarius*, recovered ſome part of *Luſitania*, and fell off to *Ariaviſm*.
7 *Theodomirus*, the Reſtorer of the *Catholick* Faith amongſt the *Suevians*.
8 *Ariamirus*, Sonne to *Theodomire*.
9 *Eboricus*, the Sonne of *Ariamirus*, depoſed, and ſhorn *Monk* by *Andeca*.
10 *Andeca*, the laſt King of the *Suevii* in *Gallicia*, or rather the *Vſurper* of the *Regall* title, ſerved in the ſame kind by *Leutigildis* King of the *Gothes*, as he had ſerved *Eboricus* his Lord and Maſter. After which time *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothiſh* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevians* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times enſuing it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, erected to a Kingdom by *Alfonſo* the Great, King of *Oviedo* and *Leon*, and given unto his Sonne *Ordogno*, Anno 886. And though *Ordogno* came after to ſucceed in his Fathers Throne, his elder Brother *Garcias* dying without iſſue; yet did *Gallicia* continue as a State diſtinct till wreſted from the Owners of it by *Alfonſo* the ſixt of *Leon*, and the third of *Caſtile*; by whom incorporate with this Kingdom, never ſince diſ-joyned: the *Caſtilians* being too good Stateſmen to diſmember Kingdoms.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, ſeme of Croſſets *Fitchee*; a Chalice covered, *Or*.

6. The Kingdom of *CORDVBA*. *Corduba.*

HAving thus surveied those Provinces under the Government of *Castile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and on the shores of the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean; we will next look on those which lye more toward the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*: And so come round at last to *Castile* it self. And first we will begin with the Kingdom of *CORDVBA*, which at the first erection of it, contained all those parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moores*, and not again recovered by the Kings of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrower bounds when subdued by the King of *Castile*, at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andalusia*, *Extemadura*, *Granada*, and the Isle of *Gades*. We will consider it notwithstanding in both capacities; in the first and largest notion, as unto the storie and affairs thereof, till distracted by the *Moores* into many Kingdoms: in the last and strictest, as to the *Chorographie*, and Description of it.

The Kingdom of *CORDVBA*, as it stood when subdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the East with *Murcia* and the *Mediterranean*; on the West, with *Portugal* and the Ocean; on the North, with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Castile*; and on the South, with the Ocean, the streights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland Seas; so called from *Corduba* the chief Citie of it and the Seat Royal of their Kings.

It contained as before was said, the Provinces of 1 *Andalusia*. 2 *Gades*. 3 *Extremadura*, and 4 *Granada*. But because *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the rest were conquered, we will consider it by it self: and here proceed to the description of the other three.

1 *ANDALVSIA* is bounded on the East with *Granada*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and *Algarve*, in *Portugal*; on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extremadura*; on the South, with the Ocean, the Streights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Plinie* it is called *Conventus Cordubensis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief Citie of it; and after, *Andalusia*, *quasi Vandalusia* from the *Vandals*, who having won it from the *Romans*, had for some time, and till their expulsion into *Africa*, possessed themselves of it.

This is the most rich and fertile Countrie of all *Spain*, watered with the Rivers 1 *Anas*, 2 *Odier*, 3 *Batis*, and 4 *Tenos*, which makes it flouriſh with a continuall greenness of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hils, though watred only with the dew of Heaven, doe partake also in some measure. The *Air* hereof, by reason of its Southernly situation, is exceeding hot, in so much that their Corn there is ripe in *Aprill*: but those excessive heats much moderated by those constant refreshings, which the cool winds breathing from the North doe bestow upon it. In which respect King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* did use to say, that it was *best living in the Summer at Sevill*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reason of these cool refreshings; and in *the Winter times at Burgos in old Castile*, which though situate more Northernly, in a very sharp air, had yet many notable defences against the cold.

The Principall Cities and Towns hereof are, 1 *Corduba*, seated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left shore of *Guadalquivir*, over-looking towards the South, a spacious and fruitfull Plain; the first Colonie planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the chief Citie of *Betica*. For a long time the seat of the *Mooriſh* Vice-Royes, Leiutenants to the Great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; after of its own kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace a magnificent Castle; Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, it was restored unto the honour of an Episcopal See, which antiently it had, and doth now enjoy; A Citie of great Circuit, but of very few houses, by reason of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca's*.

> *Duosque* Senecas, *unicumque Lucanum*
> *Fœcunda loquitur Corduba*: saith *Martial*.
> *Corduba* glorying in her fruitfull field,
> One *Lucan*, and two *Seneca's* did yeed.

It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence commeth our true *Cordovan* leather, made of the skin of a *Sardinian* beast. Neer unto this Citie is a Wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but *Olive* trees. 2 *Iaen*, a Bishops See, remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever since the first Recoverie of it, have stiled themselves Kings of *Iaen*, and use it to this day amongst the rest of their Titles, it having been before that time, the seat and title of some petit King amongst the *Moores*. Not far hence stood the famous Town of *Illiturgis*, (by *Ptolomie Illurgis*) mentioned so often in the wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3 *Ossuna*, of most note for the Dukes hereof, and a small Vniversity founded here, Anno 1549. 4. *Eccia*, on the River *Genil*, of more esteem formerly than at the present; by *Ptolomie* and *Antoninus* called *Astygi*, by *Plinie*, *Augusta Firma*, a *Roman* Colonie, and one of the four *Iuridicall Reserts* of *Betica*. 5 *Marchena*, situate on an Hill, where is said to be the best breed of *Gennets* (a swift race of Horses) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*; the River *Batis* (as it was thought) conveying some secret vertue into them. Of this race was the Horse which *Cæsar* so loved, that he erected his statue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the antient *Lusitani* thought they were begotten by the wind. 6 *Xeres*, situate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*,

Corduba, nada, and therefore called *Xeres de la Frontera*, (the *Asta* of *Ptolomie* and *Antoninus*) famous for plenty of that wine, which we call *Xeres* Sack; but more for that great and fatall battel fought neer unto it, betwixt K. *Roderick* and the *Moores*, the loss of which drew along with it the loss of *Spain*. 7 *Medina Sidonia* (so called to distinguish it from a Town of *Castile*, called *Medina Cœli*;) the Duke whereof was *General* of all the Forces, both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conquest of *England*, Anno 1588. The Town called antiently *Asinda*, and *Asido Cæsariana*: the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greatest Prince for Revenue in all *Spain*, his Intrado being estimated at 130000 Crowns *per Annum*. 7 *Algezire*, on the Sea side, A Town of such strength and consequence, that it held out a Siege of 19 moneths for the *Moores* of *Africk*, against *Alfonso* the 5 of *Castile*, to whom surrendred at the last upon Composition, Anno 1343. Since which the Kings of *Castile* have stiled themselves Kings of *Algezire*; not yet discontinued. 8 *Const*, a Town on the sea-coast beyond the Isle of *Gades*, part of the Patrimonie of the D. of *Medina Sidonia*. 9 *Gibraltar*, a strong Town seated at the mouth of the Streights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the mountain of *Calpe*, supposed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars; the furthest point Southwards of all *Europe*. 10 S. *Lucar de Barameda*, the Port-Town to *Sevill*, situate at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, or *Guadalquivir*: where the Ships of that rich Citie ride, either for a Wind to put to Sea; or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*. 11 *Tariffa*, seated at the end of the Promontory which looks toward *Africk*, and so called, because *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moores* into *Spain*, here landed. Not far from these last Towns in a little Iland made by two branches of the *Bætis* where it falleth into the Sea, stood the famous 11 *Tartessus*, celebrated in most antient Writers for the abundance of Silver which the mines of it did produce. Which was so great, that (as we read in *Aristotle's* Book *de Mirabilibus*) when the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians* first came thither, ὥστε μηκέτι ἔχειν δυνάσθαι, μήτε ἐπιδεῖξασθαι τὸ ἄργυρον, that their ships were neither able to contain it, or transport it thence: insomuch that they were fain to make their *Anchors* and other *Utensils* of Silver. The like commodity the *Grecians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Herodotus* maketh mention *Lib.* IV. Hereupon some have been perswaded that the ships which *Solomon* built to go for *Tarshish* (whereof we read 1 Kings 10. v. 22.) were bound no further than this place. But we will not enter at this time upon that dispute. As for the situation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as some, or *Carteia*, as others doe conjecture; (though where *Carteia* was be a like uncertain, if not the same with *Tariff*) but in a small Iland at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, as before is said, doth appear by *Strabo*. Who telleth us that *Bætis* falls into the Sea with two mouths or channels, πόλιν ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ χώρῳ κατοικεῖσθαι, ἣν καλεῖσθαι Ταρτησσὸν, &c. and that in the middest thereof there is a Citie called *Tartessus*, of the same name with the River (for *Bætis* antiently was so named) from whence the whole Countrey thereabouts is called *Tartessis*. The like *Pausanius* saith expresly in his *Eliaca*. Which situation of this Town in an Iland, at the mouth of *Bætis*, occasioned *Plinie* and some others of the antient Writers, to give the name of *Tartessus* to the Isle of *Gades*; whereof more anon. In the mean time go we on to 12 *Sevill*, (in *Latine*, *Hispalis*,) the fairest Citie, not only of *Andaluzia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compass 6 miles, environed with beautifull walls, and adorned with many magnificent and stately buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monasteries: amongst which, that of the *Gertosins* is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly revenue. It is also the See of an Archbishop, under whose Jurisdiction are said to be 20000 Villages; & a most flourishing Vniversity, wherein studied *Avicen* the *Moore*, that excellent and learned scholar; Pope *Sylvester* the second, and *Leander*. Famous also it is for two Provinciall Councills holden here, the first Anno 584, the last An. 636. and also that here are continually maintained 30000 *Gennets* for the service of the King. The River *Bætis* divideth it into two parts, both joyned together by a stately and beautifull Bridge. From this Town come our *Sevill Orenges*; from hence the *Castilians* set forwards towards *America*, and here they doe discharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagua*, and the Emeralds of St. *Martha*, the Cochineile of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hispaniola*; and in a word, the whole treasure of the *New-found-World*. Here is the publick Emporie of all *Spain* for her Wines and Oyls; sent from hence in so great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the People use to say in the way of a *By-word*, That *if there enter not into* Sevill 4000 *Pipes of Wine every day in the yeer, the* Farmer *of the Customes is sure to break*: insomuch as the Revenue coming out of this Citie onely, are worth a very good Realm to the *Catholick* King; *Maginus* reckoning it at no less than a Million of Crowns yeerly. Lastly, here resteth the body of *Christopher Columbus*, the fortunate Discoverer of the *New-World*, with this Epitaph upon his Tomb; but short (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man.

Christophorus *genuit quem* Geno *clara* Columbus,
(*Numine perculsus quo nescio*) *primus in alium*
Descendens pelagus, *Solem versusq; cadentem*
Directo cursu; *nostro hactenus abdita Mundo*
Littora detexi, Hispano *paritura* Philippo:
Audenda hinc aliis plura & majora relinquens.

I *Christopher Columbus*, whom the Land
Of *Genoa* first brought forth, first took in hand

(I

(I know not by what Deitie incited) Cales.
To ſcull the Weſtern waves; and was delighted,
To find ſuch coaſts as were unknown before.
Th' event was good, for I deſcri'd the ſhore
Of the *New World*, that it might learn t' obey
Philip, which o're the *Spaniſh* ſhould bear ſway.
And yet I greater matters left behind
For men of more means, and a braver mind.

The Archbiſhop of this Citie is of great both riches and autority: inſomuch that his Revenues are reckoned at 100000 Crowns *per Annum*, as having in his whole Dioceſe 2000 Benefices, beſides Frieries, Nunneries, and Hoſpitals; and that he is next in degree to him of *Toledo*; and is accompted the Metropolitan of *Andaluſia*, and the *Fortunate Ilands*. *Iſidore* ſo much renowned for his profoundneſs in learning, was Biſhop here, which is uſually called *Iſidorus Hiſpalenſis*, to diſtinguiſh him from another of that name in *Egypt*, called *Peluſiota*. As for the fortunes of the Town in civil matters, in the declining of the *Moores*, when their Eſtate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became kingdō a of it ſelf, continuing in that dignity till the year 1248. when taken and ſubdued by *Ferdinand* the 2d of *Caſtile*, and made a part of his Eſtates; but ſo, that it remaineth a Realm diſtinct in the Regall ſtile, in which the Kings of *Spain* are called Kings of *Sevill*. 2 South of *Andaluſia*, at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, ſtands the *Iſle* of *GADES*, diſtant from the main land 700 paces, and joyned unto it with a Bridge called *Puento de Suaco*. It is in length 13 miles, of a very fruitfull ſoyl, beſides the riches which it gets by Fiſhing, and making of Salt: Firſt peopled by the *Tyrians* 562 yeers before the Birth of *CHRIST*; ſubdued by the *Carthaginians*, Anno V. C. 236. being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defenſive War againſt the *Spaniards*; and was the laſt hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*, out of which beaten by the valour and good fottune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here ſtood in antient times a Temple conſecrated to the honour of *Hercules*, in which all Seafaring men (at their being here) uſed to pay their vows, and offer ſacrifice, as being arived at the furtheſt parts of all the World.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1 *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town of *Cadiz*, and the main Land of *Andaluſia*. 2 *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North. 3 *Cadis*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Iland, and giving name unto the whole. Situate in the Weſtern part of the whole Iſle, on a large Bay ſerving as a Road for the *Indian* Fleet, by the reſort and trade whereof it is much enriched. Firſt founded the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal* Citie by the *Romans*, and one of the *Juridicall Reſorts* for the Province of *Batica*: in whoſe times it was held to be the nobleſt and richeſt in all *Spain*, not yielding to any in the Empire for greatneſs, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality: Inſomuch that here lived at one time 500 *Roman* Knights, which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* onely: beſides the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great reſort, occaſioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to adde a new Town to the old; the whole circumference of both being 20 furlongs. By the *Moores*, at their conqueſt of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined, but ſince repaired, and well fortified, and made the *Magazin* for the Ammunition of the *Spaniſh* Navyes. Taken notwithſtanding in one day by the *Engliſh*, under the conduct of *Charles* Lord *Effingham*, *Robert* Earl of *Eſſex*, and Sir *Walter Ralegh*: in which they burned the *Indian* Fleet, conſiſting of 40 ſhips, whoſe lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the *Spaniſh* Navy, conſiſting of 57 Men of War; took the St. *Michael*, and the St. *Andrew*, two great *Galleons*, with their luggage; ſpoyled and carried away more martiall furniture, than could be ſupplyed in many yeers; and forced the Town, in which they ſlew and took Priſoners 4000 Foot and 600 horſe, and brought thence a very great bootie in the ſackage of it, Anno 1596. The fortunacie of which enterpriſe gave occaſion to one of the *Wits* then living to frame this excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Eſſex*, (who was looked on as the greateſt *Adventurer* in it) viz. *Devereux*, *Verè dux*. Which he afterwards caſt into this *Diſtich*.

Verè dux *Devereux*, et verior *Hercule*; *GADES*,
Nam ſemel his vidit, vicit at ille ſimul.

Alcides yeelds to *Devereux*; he did ſee
Thy Beauties (*Cales*) but *Devereux* conquer'd thee.

Neer to this *Iſle*, is that ſo celebrated Streight called by ſome *Fretum Gaditanum*, from the neerneſs of it to this Iland; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not becauſe *Hercules* did there break out a paſſage to let the *Ocean* into the *Mediterranean*, as the *Poets* Fabled; but becauſe of the two Pillars which he cauſed to be erected on each ſide of it, with the Inſcription of *Nil Ultra*, this being ſuppoſed to be the furtheſt Countrie Weſtward. But when that ſuppoſition was proved untrue by the diſcovery of *America*, *Charles* the fift being in thoſe parts, cauſed two new Pillars to be placed where the old ones ſtood, or rather where he thought they ſtood, and *Plus ultra* to be written on them. As for thoſe Pillars ſo much memorized in the antient Writers, ſome place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Iland; others on the Promontorie of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Abila* in *Africk*; and ſome again in two little Ilands neer thoſe Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtfull and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the *Streight*; called

Extremadura.

led now the *Streight of Gibraltar*, from the Town and Caſtle of *Gibraltar*, ſituate on the brink hereof; the *Streight* being in length fifteen miles, and in breadth, where it is narroweſt, ſeven.

EXTREMADVRA hath on the Eaſt and North *Caſtile*; on the Weſt, *Portugal*; and on the South, *Andalzia*. It was firſt called *Baturia*, from the River *Batis*, which runneth thorow it; and for diſtinction ſake *Baturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then the Inhabitants of this Tract, to difference it from *Baturia Turdulorum*, containing thoſe parts of *Granada*, and *Andaluzia*, which lye neereſt unto *Tarraconenſis*. And when firſt it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds at that time of the Kingdom of the *Moriſcos*; ſo called by the *Chriſtians*, as lying on the *extremities*, or furtheſt ſide of that River.

Principall places in it, are, 1 *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, ſituate neer the ruins of *Norba Caſarea*, deſtroyed by *Petronius* and *Afranius*, two of *Pompey's* Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Caſar*: now of moſt note for an *Order* of *Knights* here ſeated, and from hence denominated, whereof more hereafter. 2 *Guadalcanal*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3 *Merida*, ſituate alſo on the *Tagus*, firſt called *Auguſta Emerita*, founded and made a Colonie by *Auguſtus Caſar*, who placed herein his old Souldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief Citie after that of *Luſitania*, and by *Anſonius* preferred before any in *Spain*; now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatneſs. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*, and *Atace* King of the *Alani* and *Silinges* (this laſt a people of the *Vandals*) the victory whereof falling to the *Gothes*, cauſed the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*. 4 *Medelino*, neer which the River *Guadiana* hideth it ſelf under the ground, for the ſpace of 10 Leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Diſcoverer and Conquerour of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5 *Badaios*, a Biſhops See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6 *Guadalupe*, on a River of the ſame name, renowned amongſt thoſe of the Church of *Rome*, for the miracles and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*, as much reſorted to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* is in *Italy*. 7 *Placenza*, a Biſhops See, neer the Hils of *Caſtile*, not far from which in a retired and ſolitarie place ſtandeth the Monaſterie of S. *Juſtus*, remarkable for a greater Miracle, than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boaſt of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, that moſt puiſſant Monarch, having reſigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the reſt of his Dominions to his Son *Philip* the 2d, did here bid farewell unto the World, ſpending the reſidue of his time in prayers of devout Meditations. The greateſt Monument and example of *Self-deniall* which theſe later Ages have afforded, far beyond any abnegation of the World by our cloyſtered Monks; or any quitting of their Crowns by ſome Kings and Emperours in the darker Ages of the Church, who living in the time of Ignorance and Superſtition, ſaw not ſo cleerly what they did (or did it out of weakneſs, and want of ſpirit) as this Maſculine and Heroick Emperour.

The old Inhabitants of theſe Countries, were the *Turduli*, the *Baſtuli*. and the *Turditani*, of *Andaluſia*, and *Granada*; the *Celtici*, and ſome part of the *Luſitani*, in *Extremadura*; all vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, during the ſecond *Punick* war, under the fortunate command of *Scipio African*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*, who paſſing over into *Africk* left it to the *Suevians*; loſt by them to *Theodorik* the 4th King of the *Gothes*, who hereby added all *Batica* to his other Dominions. Vnder the *Gothes* it remained ſubject till their fatall over-throw by the *Moores*, who having made almoſt an entire Conqueſt of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at firſt ſubject to the *Great Caliphs* (Lords of the *Saracenical* Empire) governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Vlidor Vbit*, under whom they firſt made this Conqueſt, Anno 714, to *Abdalla* of the Houſe of *Alaveci*, Anno 757. At what time *Abderamen*, of the Line of *Mahomet* the *Impoſtor*, and firſt *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humeia* (of which Race this *Abderamen* was) had been diſpoſſeſſed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spaniſh Moores*, cordially affected to his Houſe; whoſe Government he took upon him, diſcharged of all ſubjection and ſubordination to the *Caliphs*, or *Mahometum* Emperours, and making it an abſolute Kingdom of it ſelf. In his Race it continued without any fractions or ſubdiviſions, till the time of *Hizen* the 2d, the tenth King of theſe *Spaniſh Moores*; after whoſe death diſtracted amongſt many petit Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moores* of *Africk*; of which more anon. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of the Kings of theſe *Moores* of *Spain*, called commonly from *Corduba* their Royal Seat.

The Kings of *Corduba*.

A. C.			A. C.		
757.	1	*Abderamen*. 30.	876.	7	*Abdalla*. 13.
787.	2	*Hizen*. 7.	889.	8	*Abderamen*. III. 50.
794.	3	*Hali-Hatan*. 25.	939.	9	*Hali-Hatan*. 17.
819.	4	*Abderamen*. II. 20.	956.	10	*Hizen*. II. 33.
839.	5	*Mahomet*. 35.	989.	11	*Zulcimen*. 4.
874.	6	*Almudix*. 2.	993.	12	*Mahomet*. II. 8.

1001 31 *Ha-*

1001. 13 *Hali.2.*
1003. 14 *Cacin.4.*
1007. 15 *Hiaia.*
1007. 16 *Abderamen.IV.1.*
1008. 17 *Mahomet III.1.*
1010. 18 *Hizen III.1.*
1011. 19 *Ioar.3.*
1014. 20 *Mahomet IV.* the laſt King of the *Moores* in *Corduba*, before the ſecond Conqueſt of theſe parts of *Spain* by the *Moores* of *Africa*. Concerning which we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at *Clavigio*, againſt *Abderamen* the 2d, by *Ramir* King of *Leon*, Anno 826. the power and reputation of the *Spaniſh Moores* began to decline: brought utterly to nothing, by the ſloath and negligence of *Hizen* the 2d; after a long and unprofitable Reign, depoſed by *Zulcimen*, who ſucceeded. But the *Moores* not eaſily brooking the command of a new *Vſurper*, fell into many Fractions, and Diviſions amongſt themſelves: every great man ſeizing on ſome part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himſelf with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*, a third of *Cordova*; the names of which laſt only doe occurre in the former Catalogue. And 'twas a ſign the Kingdom was in the expiring, when ſo many Kings ſucceeded in ſo few yeers, after one another; there paſſing from the depoſing of *Hizen* the 2d, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the 4th, not above 34 yeers in all; during which time we find no fewer than ten Kiugs. The often change of Princes, and ſhort lives of Kings are the apparent ſigns of a ruinous ſtate, approaching very neer to its expiration; as may be ſeen by the ſhort lives and Reigns of the laſt *Weſtern* Emperours, nine of them hardly Reigning 20 yeers; as alſo of the Kings of the *Gothes* in *Italy*, of which the ſix laſt held the Throne no longer, than the nine *Weſtern* Emperours had done before them. But to proceed, *Mahomet* the laſt King of this firſt Rank, having left the ſtage, we find no good *Conſtat* of his Succeſſors in the kingdom of *Corduba*, made inconſiderable by the withdrawing ſo many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and inſolencie of which Roytelets and petit Tyrants, forced them at laſt to call unto their aid the Kings or *Miramomolines* of *Morocco*; by whom themſelves and all the reſt of their Corrivals were in fine ſubdued. Vnder ſeven Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spaniſh Moores* continued ſubject about 120 yeers, that is to ſay, from the firſt coming in of *Ioſeph Telephin* the *Miramamoline*, Anno 1091, unto the going out of *Mahomet*, ſurnamed the *Green*, Anno 1214, during which time the affairs of the *Moores* in *Spain* were ſo well conducted, that they loſt nothing to the *Chriſtians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alfonſo* the 2d in the accompt of *Caſtile*, the 7th in the accompt of *Leon*, Anno 1147, and the Citie of *Lisbon* taken from them in the ſame yeer alſo by *Alfonſo*, the firſt King of *Portugal*. But *Nahomet* the *Green* being vanquiſhed in the great fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joynt Forces of the confederated *Chriſtians*, left off all further care of the *Moores* in *Spain*; after his going thence diſtracted once again into many Kingdoms, all of them ſwallowed up in a little time by the Kings of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongſt them the kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to ſtand long on this new Foundation, was ruinated and brought under the command of the *Caſtilians*, by their King *Ferdinand* the 2d, Anno 1236. Since that time there is no more mention of the kingdom of *Corduba*.

Granada.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Lyon *Gules*, armed and crowned of the firſt, a Border *Azure* charged with 8 Towers *Argent*.

7 GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the Weſt with *Andaluſia*; on the Eaſt, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New Caſtile*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief Citie and Seat Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compaſs. The North part of the Countrey plain, the South parts over-ſpread with the *Alpuxarras*, and other ſpurres and branches of the *Oroſpeda*. In the time of the *Moores* wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all ſorts of commodities; the Hils planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Vallies ſwelling with Corn and Gardens: ſince their expulſion, neither much peopled nor very fruitfull, for want of men to dreſs and manure the Land. The principal Cities of it, are 1 *Granada*, ſituate on two Hils, divided by a Valley, thorow which runneth the River *Darien*; conſiſting of four ſeverall parts, called *Alhambre*, *Sierre de ſol*, *Granada*, and *Antequerula*; the two firſt ſtanding on the Hils, the two laſt in the Valley: the whole containing in the time of the *Mooriſh* kingdom about 200000 of ſouls. Fenced with ſtrong wals, fortified with 130 Turrets, and repleniſhed with abundance of wholſome and pleaſant Springs; the whole Circuit being about ſeven miles. The Merchants and Gentry of the beſt ſort doe dwell in that part which is called *Granada*; the houſes of which are for the moſt part built of free ſtone, with delicate and artificiall Maſonrie, ſhewing great magnificence. Herein ſtandeth the *Cathedral* Church, a work of admirable ſtructure, of Figure round, as having ſometimes been a *Mahumetane Moſquit*. Here is alſo the place which they call *Alcazar*, repreſenting a little Town, the which are ten Gates. In the *Alhambre* is the *Palace* of the *Mooriſh* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Moiſaical* work; and which by reaſon of the ſtructure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongſt the *Wonders* of the World; having withall a goodly proſpect over all the Town, lying under it upon the Eaſt, a ſpacious Champian towards the North, and the ſnowie tops of *Sierra Nevade* towards the South. This Citie is the ordinarie *Parliament*, and Court of Iuſtice for all the Southern

Granada. thern parts of *Spain*, as *Valladolit* is for the Northern; *Madrid*, which is the higheſt Court, having jurisdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town firſt railed out of the ruines of *Illiberis*, ſituate not far off on the Hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the ſtories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer ſort. 2 *Alhama*, ſeated amongſt ſteep and craggie rocks, out of which iſſue *Medicinall* Waters, occaſioning a great reſort of the *Spaniſh* Gentrie. 3 *Guacir*, an Epiſcopall See, about nine leagues from *Granada*, 4 *Veles Malaga*, (by *Ptolomie* called *Sex*, by *Antoninus*, *Sexicanum*) ſituate at the Foot of the Mountains called *Alpuxarras*, a large branch of the *Oroſpeda*, overſpreading a great part of this Countrie, heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moores*, who choſe to dwell there for the ſtrength and ſafety of the ſituation; ſince their expulſion, deſolate and unfrequented, nothing remaining of them now but the *Arabick* Language, which is ſtill ſpoke by thoſe few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this tract ſo high, that from the topps hereof a man may eaſily diſcern the whole courſe of the *Streight of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Seuta* and *Tangier* in *Africk*. 5 *Ronda*, at the foot of another branch of the *Oroſpeda*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*. Not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very ſmall Village, was fought that memorable battell betwixt *Ceſar* and the Sonnes of *Pompey*: the honour of which fell to *Ceſar*, who then made an end of the *Civill* Wars, which that very day four yeares before were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* ſlain, and his Forces broken: *Ceſar* himſelf being ſo put to it, that ſeeing his Soldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *remember, that at* Munda *they forſook their Generall.* The ſhame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onſet, which was honoured with a ſignall and remarkable Victory: this being the laſt fight that *Ceſar* was in, murdered not long after in the Senate-houſe. And of this Fight he uſed to ſay, *That in all other places he fought for his Honour, but in this for his life.* 6 *Antiquera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering cloſe upon *Caſtile*. 7 *Maxacra*, on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, ſuppoſed to be the *Margis* of *Ptolomie*. 8 *Vera*, on the ſame ſhore, the furtheſt Town of *Betica*, and of this Countrie towards *Murcia*. 9 *Malaga*, or *Malaca*, ſituate at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, once ſacked by *Craſſus* the rich *Roman*; Who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the furie of *Marius* and *Cinna*, who had ſlain his Father and Uncle, hid himſelf and his Companions in a Cave hereabouts for eight moneths together: but after hearing of their deaths, iſſued out, and ranſacked, amongſt many other Cities, this *Malaga*. A Town of great traffick, and much reſort, eſpecially for Raiſins, Almonds, *Malaga Sacks*: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and to the great prejudice of the *Moors* taken by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, Anno 1487. the conqueſt of the whole kingdom of *Granada* following not long after. It was ſince made a Biſhops See, or reſtored rather to that dignity which it had of old. 10 *Almeria*, a noted haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Abdera* of *Mela*, a Colonie of the *Carthaginians*, and antiently a Biſhops See.

As for the fortunes of this Countrie, after the Conqueſt of it by the *Moores* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the kingdom of *Cerduba*, and ſo continued till that kingdom was ſubdued by the *Spaniards*: But the *Moores* were too ſtout to yeeld all at once. Having yet ground enough both to ſecure themſelves in, and endow their King: they are reſolved, though they had loſt one kingdom, to erect another. And therefore *Cerduba* being taken, and that kingdom ruinated, the *Moores*, with *Mahomet Aben Alhamar* their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themſelves unto *Granada*, and there renew their ſtrength and kingdom, which laſted 256 yeers, under 20 Kings, whoſe names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of *Granada*.

1236.	1 *Mahomet Alcamir*, the laſt King of *Cerduba*, and the firſt King of *Granada*. 36.	1379.	10 *Mahomet Guadix*. 13.
		1392.	11 *Ioſeph* II. 4.
		1396.	12 *Mahomet Aben Balva*. 11.
1272.	2 *Mahomet Mir Almir*. 30.	1407.	13 *Ioſeph* III. 16.
1302.	3 *Mahomet Aben Ezar*. 7.	1423.	14 *Mahomet Aben Azar*. 4.
1309.	4 *Mahomet Aben Evar*. 10.	1427.	15 *Mahomet* the little. 5.
1319.	5 *Iſmael*. 3.	1432.	16 *Ioſeph Aben Almud*. 13.
1322.	6 *Mahomet*. 12.	1445.	17 17 *Mahomet Oſmen*. 8.
1334.	7 *Joſeph Aben Amet*. 20.	1453.	18 *Iſmael* II. 9.
1354.	8 *Mahomet Lagus*. 23.	1462.	19 *Muley Alboacen*. 16.
1377.	9 *Mahomet Vermeil*. 2.	1478.	20 *Mahomet Boabdelin*,

The laſt King of the *Moores* in *Spain*. Of all which there is little left upon Record, their whole time being ſpent in defending their borders againſt the encroachments of *Caſtile*; or elſe in *Civil* Wars and diſcords amongſt themſelves; in which they were ſo frequent, and ſometimes ſo violent, as if they had no Enemie neer them. *Mahomet Aben Ezar* the 4th King, depoſed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*, and he again thruſt out by *Iſmael* the Sonne of *Ferrachen*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treaſon. *Mahomet*, Sonne of *Iſmael*, murdered by his Subjects; *Toſeph*, the Sonne of *Mahomet* ſlain by *Mahomet Lagus*; and he again depoſed by *Mahomet Vermeil*, who in the end was miſerably ſlain by *Pedro* the *Cruell* of *Caſtile*, to whom he had fled for help and ſuc-

ſuccour. After this time they ruined and depoſed one another, till the end of their king- Granada.
dom, the Succeſſor never ſtaying for the death of his Predeceſſor, but violently making way for himſelf to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdelin* the laſt King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but ſetting him beſides the Throne, and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces, to the ſubduing of them both. Such was the fortune of this kingdom, that as it began under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile*: ſo it ended under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile* alſo. In the tenth yeer then of this mans Reign, did the war begin, and about the yeer 1492, the Empire of the *Moores* ended in *Spain*; by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick, and *Iſabel* his Wife; after their firſt entrance into it, more than 760 yeers.

Such of them, as after the decay of their kingdom had a deſire to ſtay in *Spain*, which had for ſo long time been their native Countrey, were ſuffered ſo to doe by the prudent *Victors*, (fearing a deſolation of the Countrie, if they ſhould abandon it) conditioned that they would be *Chriſtned*. And that they might be known to be as they profeſſed, the *Inquiſition* was ordained, conſiſting of a certain number of *Dominican* Friers; who finding any counterfeit, or Apoſtate *Chriſtians*, were firſt gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict ſome puniſhment upon them. This cuſtom in it ſelf, was wondrous tolerable and laudable: but from the *Moores* it was after turned on the *Proteſtants*, and that with ſuch violence and extremity of torture, that it is counted the greateſt tyrannie, and ſevereſt kind of perſecution under Heaven. Inſomuch, that many *Papiſts* who would willingly die for their *Religion*, abhor the very name and mention of it; and to the death, withſtand the bringing in of this ſlavery among them. This is it that made the people of *Aragon*, and *Naples* rebel, Countries where the people are all of the *Papal* ſide: and this was it which cauſed the irremediable revolt of the *Low-countries*; the greateſt part of that Nation at the time of their taking Arms, being *Romiſh Catholicks*. Yet is it planted and eſtabliſhed in *Spain*, and all *Italy*, (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the moſt zealous, fierie, and rigorous *Friers* in the whole pack. The *leaſt ſuſpition* of *hereſie*, affinitie, or commerce with *Hereticks*, *reproving* the lives of the Clergy, keeping any books or Editions of books prohibited, or diſcourſing in matters of *Religion*, are offences ſufficient. Nay they will charge mens conſciences under pain of damnation, to detect their neareſt and deareſt friends, if they doe but ſuſpect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great ſecrecie and ſecurity: for 1. the parties accuſed, ſhall never know their Accuſer, but ſhall be conſtrained to reveal their own thoughts and affections. 2. If they be but convinced of any errour in any of their opinions, or be gainſayed by two witneſſes, they are immediatly condemned. 3. If nothing can be proved againſt them, yet ſhall they with infinit tortures and miſeries be kept in the houſe divers yeers, for a terrour to others: and 4. If they eſcape the firſt brunt with many torments, and much anguiſh, yet the ſecond queſtioning or ſuſpition brings death remedileſs. And as for torments and kinds of death, *Phalaris* and his Fellow-tyrants come far ſhort of theſe-blood-hounds.

The Adminiſtration of this Office, for the more orderly Reglement and diſpatch thereof, diſtributed into twelve Courts, or Supreme *Tribunals*, for the ſeverall Provinces of *Spain*; no one depending on another; in which thoſe of the *Secular Clergy* ſit as Iudges; the *Friers* being only uſed as *Promoters* to inform the Court, and bring more Griſt unto the Mill. Of thoſe *Inquiſitors* every one hath the Title of *Lord*, and are a great terrour to the neighbouring Peaſants. There goeth a Tale how one of their Lordſhips deſirous to eat of the Pears which grew in a poor mans Orchard not far off, ſent for the man to come unto him; which put the poor ſoul into ſuch a fright, that he fell ſick upon it, and kept his bed. Being afterwards informed, that all his Lordſhips buſines with him, was to requeſt a Diſh of his Pears, he pulled the tree up by the roots, and carried it unto him with the Fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reaſon of that raſh and improvident action, he returned this Anſwer, that *he would never keep that thing in his houſe, which ſhould give any of their* Lordſhips *cauſe to ſend further after him.* Certain it is, that by this means the people of this kingdom are ſo kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other *Religion*, than what their *Prieſts* and *Friers* ſhall be pleaſed to teach them, or entertain the truth if it come amongſt them, or call in queſtion any of thoſe palpable and groſs *Impoſtures*, which every day are put upon them.

But to return unto the *Moores*, moſt of which by the terrour of this *Inquiſition*, profeſſed in ſhew the *Chriſtian* Faith. But being *Chriſtians* only in the outward ſhew, and practiſing on all occaſions againſt the State, the Kings of *Spain* reſolved long agoe on their *Extermination*; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the yeer 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a peace with *England*, and a truce with *Holland*; and finding the *Moores* of *Africk* to embroyled in wars, that they were not able to diſturb him; put that extreme rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their conſultations, 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Countrie, and provide new dwellings, under colour that they went about to free themſelves from the *Inquiſition*, and to recover their old Liberty loſt ſo long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada* in the times of their greateſt power were able to raiſe, were far beyond the Ameaſurement and extent of their kingdom, not above 700 miles in compaſs, as before is ſaid: but ſo exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of neceſſaries, that within two dayes ſpace, the King hereof was able to draw together

Murcia, & Toledo.

50000 Horſe, and 200000 Foot, for defence of the Kingdom. The Armes whereof were *Or*, a Pomgranat (or Apple of *Granada*) ſlipped, *Vert*.

8 *MVRCIA.*

MVRCIA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Granada*; on the Eaſt, with *Valentia*; on the North, with *Valentia*; and a part of *Granada*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Seas, ſo called from *Murcia* the chief Citie. In former times eſteemed a rich and wealthy Countrey, ſtored with all ſorts of fruits, and ſo abounding in *Silver* Mines, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually 400 men at work, and received 2500 *Drachmas* of daily profit: now for the moſt part barren, and but ill inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in ſo ſmall a Countrey. The principal, 1 *Murcia*, by *Ptolomie* called *Menralia*, ſeated upon the River *Segura*, a Biſhops See, ſituate in a pleaſant and delightfull Plain, planted with Pomgranats, and other excellent fruits: From this the Countrey had the name of the Kingdom of *Murcia*. 2 *Carthagena*, or *Nova Carthago*, firſt built by *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*, the Brother of *Annibal*, for the better receiving of ſuch aids, both of men and money, as ſhould come from *Africa*. Situate in a Demi-Iland, in the very jawes of the *Mediterranean*; by which, and by a deep Mariſh on the Weſt ſide of it, ſo impregnably fortified, that if *Scipio*, afterwards called *Africanus*, who then lay at the ſiege thereof, had not been ſhewed a way over that *Mariſh*, at a dead low Water, by ſome poor Fiſher-men of *Tarragon*, who knew the ſecret, he had there loſt both his time and Honour. Nothing more memorable, in the ſackage and ſpoyl thereof, (though there was found abundance of Armes and Treaſure) than the vertue of *Scipio*, who finding there many *Spaniſh* Ladies of great birth, and beauties, left there as Hoſtages for the *Spaniards* with the *Carthaginians*, would not permit any of them to be brought before him; for fear it ſhould betray him to ſome inconvenience. Being reedified it was made a *Roman* Colonie, and one of the ſeven Iuridicall Reſorts of *Tarraconenſis*: by *Conſtantine* made a chief Citie of the new Province of *Carthaginenſis*, which was hence denominated: Afterwards twice ſacked by the *Gothes* and *Vandals*, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruins. And though again new built and peopled, it is ſtill but ſmal; containing at the moſt but 600 Houſholds: and would be utterly abandoned, but for the ſafety of the place, and the ſtrength thereof, garriſon'd, and fortified very ſtrongly by King *Philip* the 2d, for fear of ſurpriſall by the *Turks*; and the ſecurity of the Haven (which is withall very large and capacious) coming from a little Iland, lying at the mouth thereof; by which aſſured from tempeſtuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occaſion of that Saying of *Andreas Doria*, Admiral unto *Charles* the fifth, that *there were but three ſafe Ports in the Mediterranean*; that is to ſay, *Auguſt*, *Iuly*, and the *Carthagena*: meaning as I conceive, that thoſe two moneths being commonly free from tempeſtuous weather, were of as great ſafety to the Mariners, as this famous Port. 3. *Lorca*, another Port Town, ſituate on a Creek more within the Land. 4 *Almanca*, 5 *Sarazal*, two ſtrong Towns bordering on *Valentia*; well fortified, when *Murcia* and *Valentia* were in ſeverall hands. 6 *Cervillan*. 7 *Alhama*. 8 *Rus*, &c.

This Countrey being part of the Province of *Carthaginenſis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans*, at their firſt entrance into *Spain*; from them recovered by *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Gothes* in this part of *Europe*. Together with the reſt of *Spain*, it was ſubdued by the *Moors* of *Africk*; in the diſtractions of whoſe Empire after the going hence of the *Moores* of *Africk*, it was made a diſtinct Kingdom by *Aben-Hut*, of the race of the Kings of *Saragoſſa*, who had ſeized upon it, Anno 1228, and for a time was the moſt puiſſant King of the *Moores* in *Spain*, commanding over this Countrey *Granada*, and a great part of *Andaluzia*. Invited to a Feaſt, made drunk, and then baſely murdered by *Aben Arramin* a falſe ſervant of his, Anno 1236, one *Aben Hudiel* ſeized on the Realm of *Murcia*, diſturbed in his poſſeſſion by *Alboaquis*, the laſt King hereof. But he not able to defend himſelf againſt his Competitor, ſurrendred it to *Ferdinand* the 2d of *Caſtile*, whom he put into poſſeſſion of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned, that *Alboaquis* ſhould enjoy the title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived under the Soveraignty of *Caſtile*; and that *Ferdinand* ſhould enjoy one half of the profits of it, this was in the yeer, 1241, after it had continued in the ſtate of a Kingdom, but 12. yeers only, united to *Caſtile* without blood or trouble, and ſo remains ever ſince.

9. The Kingdom of *TOLEDO.*

THe Kingdom of *TOLEDO*, ſo called from *Toledo* the chief Citie of it, contained once the greateſt part of that Countrey which is now called *New-Caſtile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or Member. The Countrey lying next unto it was antiently the Seat of the *Carpentani*; the nature of the ſoyl we ſhall find elſe-where.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom, 1. *Toledo*, of great Antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius* a *Roman Prætor*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a Citie of good note. Pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many Peeces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with 30 Towers ſtanding on the wals. By reaſon of the ſituation of it in the very middeſt almoſt of *Spain*, it is paſſing well inhabited, as well by the Nobility, who reſide there for pleaſure, and by Scholars, who abide in it for their ſtudies; as by Merchants, who reſort thither for their profit; beſides, ſuch Souldiers and their Officers, who are continually garriſoned in it for defence thereof,

thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean, and ordinary; though by farre more handſome in the inſide than the outſide promiſeth: moſt of them being furniſhed with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed into them by the admirable inventions of one *Iames*, a native of *Cremona* in the Dukedom of *Millain*. The Streets narrow, cloſe, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troubleſome to walk or go upon, eſpecially in ſlippery or dirty weather, by reaſon of its ſteep and uneven ſituation on the ſide of a Rockie hill: by which, and by the River which almoſt ſurrounds it, it is naturally very ſtrong, and well helped by Art. For that cauſe made the ſeat of the *Gothiſh* Kings: by one of which called *Bamba*, ſo repaired and beautified (beſides the addition of a ſtrong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by ſome accounted for the founder of it. For ſo we find it in theſe old verſes. *Caſtile.*

Erexit (fautore Deo) Rex inclytus Vrbem
Bamba, *ſua celebrem portendens Gentis honorem.*

That is to ſay,

King *Bamba* (God aſſiſting) rais'd this Town,
Extending ſo the antient *Gothes* renown.

When the *Gothes* fell, it was in chief eſtimation amongſt the *Moores*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both (as it continueth to this day) the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and Preſident for the moſt part of the *Inquiſition*. His revenue anſwerable to his place; the greateſt of any *Clergyman* in the *Chriſtian* World, next to the Popes of *Rome*, as being eſtimated at 300000 Crowns *per Annum*. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 Nationall Councills, here holden in the time of the *Gothes*, and is now a famous Univerſity for the ſtudy of the *Civill* and *Canon* Lawes, and hath to this day the temporall Juriſdiction over 17 walled Towns, beſides Villages. 2 *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is ſituate on the River *Ava*, of moſt fame in theſe latter times for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Caſtile*. Neighboured by the ruines of the ſtrong and Famous City *Caſtulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyreſoeny*, a people that dwelt on the other ſide of the River, ſuddenly entred, and taken. But *Sertorius* following after them by the ſame Gate, put them all to Sword: and cauſing his men to apparrell themſelves in the cloathes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyreſoeni*; who ſuppoſing them to be their own party, opened their Gates, and were all either ſlain or ſold for ſlaves. More of this Town anon when we come to *Caſtile*; to which belonging now. 3 *Talbora*, commonly called *Talvera de la Reyna*, or the Queens *Talvera*: and called ſo occaſion of an execrable murder committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widdow of *Alfonſo* the ſixt, on the Lady *Leonore de Guzman* her husbands Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*; ſuppoſed to be the *Libora* of *Ptolomie*; and now belonging to the Archbiſhop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof.

As for *Toledo* it ſelf, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*, after that the ſeat Royall of the *Gothiſh* Kings; removed hither from *Tholouſe* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moores* at their firſt entrance into *Spain* Anno 716. more prudently aiming at the head, than the *Gothes* poſſibly expected from ſuch *Barbarians*. In the Confuſions of that Kingdom betwixt the beginning of the reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the ſecond coming in of the *Moores* of *Africk*, made a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, continuing in that eſtate, till taken from *Haia Alcadudhir* the laſt King hereof, by *Alfonſo* the firſt, King of *Caſtile*, Anno 1083. This *Alfonſo* being the younger Sonne of *Ferdinand*, the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that by his Brother *Sanctio* King of *Caſtile*, he lived in Exile with the *Moores*, kindly received and entertained by this *Hyaia* King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which coming to the Crowns of *Caſtile* and *Leon* Anno 1073. he picked a quarrell with his Hoſt, and beſiedged *Toledo*, his long abode there making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his deſigns: which notwithſtanding held him a ſiedge of five years, before he could make himſelf Maſter of it: by him incorporated preſently on the taking of it, with the reſt of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New Caſtile*.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Crown Mitral Imperiall *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry precious Gems *Proper*.

10 *CASTILE.*

CASTILE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and part of *Valentia*; on the Weſt with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biſcay*, *Guipuſcoa*, and the *Aſturias*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andeluzia*, and *Granada*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

This was the moſt prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent, to which the reſt are all united either by Mariages or Conqueſt. Divided commonly into the *New* and the *Old*, parted from one another by the hills of *Segovia*: the one being called the *Old Caſtile*, becauſe it was the antient Patrimony of the firſt Earles hereof; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the firſt inheritance, by the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Toledo* and other peeces from the *Moores*. The *Old Caſtile* is the leſs fruitfull of the two, more fit for Paſturage than

Castile.

than Corn; but better ſtored with that, and all ſorts of fruits, than the Neighbouring Countries, which lie betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champain, better ſtored with fruits, and furniſhed with ſufficient plenty of Corn and other proviſions neceſſary for the life of man. The *Old Caſtile* watered with the Rivers of 1 *Relaunos*, riſing not far from *Burgos*; 2 *Tormes*, paſſing by *Salamanca*; 3 *Duero*, the Receptacle of the others: The *New* with 4 *Xaruma*, honoured with the Neighbourhood of *Madrid*; 5 *Tavina*, and 6 *Tagus*, the moſt famous River of all *Spain*.

The *Old Caſtile* is ſituate on the North of the *New*, and hath for the chief Cities of it 1 *Soria*, of great note in the antient Storie, by the name of *Numantia*, which for the ſpace of fourteen years withſtood the whole forces of *Rome*: During which time they valiantly repulſed their Enemies, and forced them to diſhonourable Compoſitions. But finding at the laſt no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money, and goods, laid them in an heap, then ſet fire unto them, and finally burnt themſelves in the midſt of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numantia* to adorn his triumph. 2 *Avila*, ſituate under the great Mountains which are call'd from hence the Mountains of *Avila*. Known antiently by the name of *Abule*, and by that name giving the title of *Abulenſis* to the renowned *Toſtatus*, who was Biſhop of it. A Man, who in his time was Preſident to the Counſell to *Iohn*, King of *Aragon*, yet could find leiſure enough not only to attend his Epiſcopal charge, but to compile thoſe learned and painful Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which, and his other abilities (beſides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Eulogie* which *Caſaubon* hath given him, in his Book againſt *Baronius*, ſaying, *Laudo acumen viri, ſi in meliora incidiſſet Tempora Longè maximi.* 3 *Valadolid*, a fine neat Town, and one of the antienteſt Vniverſities of *Spain*; diſcontinued for a time by Students, and then reſtored again by King *Philip* the 2d, whoſe birth-place it was, and who erected here a College (among others) for the education onely of yong *Engliſh* Fugitives. Seated upon the River *Piſuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the Kings Court here reſiding in the Summer times, it became in little ſpace, a fair, large, populous Citie, and of great reſort; not yeelding unto any in *Spain*, except *Liſbone* and *Sevill*. It is called in *Latine*, *Vallis oletum*, and *Vallis Oletana*, from the abundance of Olives growing neer it; but by *Ptolomie*, *Pintia*. 3 *Segovia*, a Biſhops See, of great trade in clothing, ſituate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence the hils of *Segovia*. 4 *Burgos*, neer the head of the River *Relaunos*, or *Relanzon*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d' Oca*, part of the *Idubeda*: built out of certain Villages lying hereabouts by *Nugno Bellides*, a *German*, Sonne-in-law unto one of the firſt Earls of *Caſtile*: for long time the ſeat of thoſe Kings, ſince of the Archbiſhops hereof, the Cathedrall being one of the faireſt in *Spain*, built with ſuch Art, that Maſs may be ſung aloud in five ſeverall Chappels, without diſturbing one another. This Citie doth contend from Primacie and Precedencie (in *Civil* maters) with that of *Toledo*; of which it hath the firſt place or vote, in all Parliaments or Aſſemblies of the States of *Caſtile*. But yet to ſatisfie *Toledo*, the Controverſie is ſtill undecided, and was once finely taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, ſaying, that *Burgos ſhould firſt ſpeak for it ſelf, and then that he would ſpeak for Toledo.* Without the walls of this Citie is a famous Nunnerie, called *De las Huelgas*, conſiſting of 150 Religious women, all of noble Houſes. 5 *Cividad Rodrigo*, a Biſhops See, on the River *Gada*. 6 *Zamora*, a ſtrong and well-built Citie, and a Biſhops See, the *Sentica* of *Ptolomie*; ſituate on the River *Duero*, and now famous for the beſt Bag-pipes. 7 *Tordeſillas*, the *Segiſana* of the Antients. 8 *Salamanca*, the moſt famous Univerſitie of *Spain*, eſpecially for the ſtudie of the *Civill* and *Canon* Lawes: firſt inſtituted by *Ferdinand* the 2d of *Caſtile*, Anno 1240. and by an Order of the Popes, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bononia* in *Italie*, created a *Generale Studium*, wherein there were to be Profeſſors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, and *Arabick* Tongues, beſides thoſe of the Arts. It was of old called *Salmantica*, is now a Biſhops See, ſituate on the River *Tormes*, as before was ſaid.

Not far from this Citie, about the times of our Grandfathers, was diſcovered in a Valley ſituate amongſt high and impaſſable Mountains, a kind of *Patoecos* or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before. The occaſion this. An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva's* which he very much valued, flew over thoſe Mountains: and his men not being able to find her at firſt, they were ſent back by the Duke to ſeek her. Clambring from one hill to another, they hapned at laſt upon a large and pleaſant Valley, where they ſpyed a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongſt many craggie Rocks. The *Salvages* gazing a while upon them ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the beſt houſes they had: Which being obſerved by the *Falconers*, they returned again unto their Lord, telling him, that inſtead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New World* in the midſt of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they ſaid, they obtained belief. And the Duke ſhortly after went with a Company of Musketeers, and ſubdued them eaſily, they having no offenſive Weapons but only Slings. They worſhipped the *Sun* and *Moon*, fed upon nothing that had Life; but had good ſtore of excellent fruits, roots, and ſprings of water, wherewith Nature was very well contented. And though their language was not altogether underſtood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Biſquiſh*. Reduced on this diſcovery unto *Chriſtianity*; but eaſily diſcernible from all other *Spaniards*, by their tawnie complexions, occaſioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beames from thoſe rockie Mountains, wherewith on all ſides they are encompaſſed. The truth hereof,

beſides

beſides the Credit of *Iames Howell* in his *Inſtructions for Forrein Travell*, I have, upon enquirie, found to be atteſted by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*, employed there in affaires of publick intereſs. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly ſatisfied in the men. Whom I conceive to be ſome remnant of the antient *Spaniards*, who hid themſelves amongſt theſe Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their language and Idolatry ſpeak them to be ſuch. For had they either fled from the *Gothes* or *Moores*, there had been found ſome *Croſs* or other Monument of *Chriſtianitie*, as in other places; or ſome ſuch mixture in their ſpeech, as would have ſavored ſomewhat of the *Gothes* or *Romans*. But it is time I ſhould proceed. *Caſtile*.

NEW CASTILE is ſituate on the South of the old. The chief Cities there, 1 *Signenca*, a Citie heretofore of the *Celtiberi*, now a Biſhops See, beautified with a fair Cathedrall; ſuppoſed to be the *Condabora* of *Ptolomie*. 2 *Madrid*, upon the *Guadarama*, now the ſeat of the Kings; whoſe reſidence there, though the Countrie be neither rich nor pleaſant, hath made it of a Village the moſt populous City in all *Spain*. It is a cuſtom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their houſes do belong to the King, except ſome Compoſition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do uſe to brag to Strangers, that they have a *Citie walled with Fire*; and then make good the boaſt by ſaying, That it is ſituate in the middeſt of Quarries of Flint. 3 *Alcala de Henares* (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an Univerſity of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, by *Franciſco de Ximines*, Cardinall and Archbiſhop of *Toledo*. 4 *Alcaraz*, amongſt the mountainous tracts of *Oroſpeda*, called *Sierra de Alcaraz*; memorable for a great diſcomfiture given unto the *Moores*, Anno 1094. 5 *Molina*, in the ſame mountainous tract, hence called *Monte de Molina*; remarkable for giving the title of Lord to the Kings of *Caſtile*, who in the Regall ſtile are called Lords of *Molina*: the Signeurie hereof accrewing to that Crown by the mariage of *Sancho* the 3d with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonſo* the laſt Lord Proprietarie. The Territorie large, and the Town of ſtrength: well fortified in the times fore-going, both by art and nature. 6 *Cuenca*, ſeated at the ſpring head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of the *Tagus* alſo, amongſt the Mountains of *Oroſpeda*, built by the *Moores* on the top of thoſe craggie hils, whom it ſerved for an impregnable Fortreſs againſt the *Chriſtians*, till taken by *Sancho* the 2d of *Caſtile*, Anno 1177.

Here alſo is the *Eſcuriall* or *Monaſtery* of S. *Laurence*, built by King *Philip* the 2d. A place (ſaith *Quade*, who ſpendeth 13 pages in its deſcription) of that magnificence, that no building in times paſt, or this preſent, is comparable to it. The front toward the Weſt is adorned with three ſtately gates, the middlemoſt whereof leadeth into a moſt magnificent Temple; a Monaſtery in which are 150 Monkes of the order of S. *Ierome*; and a College: that on the right hand openeth into divers offices, belonging to the *Monaſtery*; that on the left, unto *Schooles* and out-houſes, belonging to the College. At the four corners there are four turrets of excellent workmanſhip; and for height, majeſticall. Towards the North, is the Kings Palace; on the South part, divers beautifull and ſumptuous Galleries; and on the Eaſt ſide, ſundry gardens and walks, very pleaſing and delectable. It containeth in all 11 ſeverall quadrangles, every one incloyſtred; and is indeed ſo brave a ſtructure, that a voyage into *Spain* were well imployed, were it only to ſee it, and return. Here is alſo in this Tract the old Town of *Caſtulo* (the *Caſtaun* of *Strabo*) then the chief Citie of the *Carpentani*, and the birth-place of *Himilce* the Wife of *Annibal*, from whence this whole Tract had the name of *Saltus Caſtulonenſis*; and ſo called by *Caeſar*: now a poor Village, known by the name of *Caſtona la Veia*; in which is ſomewhat to be found of the antient ruines. But of this more already, when we were in the kingdom of *Toledo*; to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of theſe *Caſtiles* were the *Vaccai*, *Ventones*, *Arevacæ*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Dittani*, &c. From none of which the name of *Caſtile* can be deduced; ſo that we muſt fetch it either from the *Caſtellani*, once a People of *Catalogne*; or from ſome ſtrong fortified Caſtles erected in the frontires againſt the *Moores*. (This laſt conjecture may ſeem probable, becauſe the Arms of this Kingdom are *Gules*, a *Caſtle* triple-towred, *Or*. Neither is it any way ſtrange for Provinces, eſpecially ſmaller ones, ſuch as at firſt this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Caſtle. For (to go no farther) even with us, *Richmondſhire* was ſo called from the Caſtle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alan* Earl of *Bretagne*; and *Flintſhire* took denomination from a Caſtle built of *Flint*-ſtones, by *Henry* the 2d. We may ſee hereby how much *Celius Secundus Curio* was deceived, who writeth that *Alphonſo* the third having overthrown *Mahomet Enaſir* King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the ſword; aſſumed theſe Arms, that thus named this Kingdom, which was before called the kingdom of the *Baſtitanes*; becauſe that victory, like a ſtrong Caſtle, had confirmed his eſtates unto him. Whereas, in caſe there were no other Error in his ſuppoſition; the *Baſtitanes* were no Inhabitants of *Caſtile*, but of *Valentia*, and *Murcia*: Provinces far enough off from the *Old Caſtile*, at the firſt taking of that name. And for the former Etymologie, it appeareth moſt evidently, in that the people are by the *Latines* called *Caſtellani*, the Countrey *Caſtella*; the ſame name with thoſe elder *Caſtellani*, which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to ſtand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants hereof having been conquer'd by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire, fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Gothes*, as hath been ſhewn already on ſome other occaſion. From them extorted by the *Moores* with the reſt of *Spain*, recovered foot after foot by the Kings of *Leon*: governed, under them, at firſt by *Provinciall* Earls, commanders of ſo many Caſtles in the Countrie of the *Vaccæi*, fortified and defended againſt the

Moores

Caſtile.

Moores. *Ordogno* the 2d harbouring ſome ſuſpitions againſt theſe Earles, cauſed them all to be cruelly murthered. The people upon this revolted from the Crown of *Leon*, governed firſt by Judges, then by Earls again, as an abſolute and free Eſtate. *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt that re-aſſumed the title of Earl of *Caſtile*, coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave retinue, ſold to King *Sancho* an Hawk, and an Horſe, of excellent kinds, for a ſum of money; conditioned, that if the money were not paid at the time agreed on, it ſhonld be doubled and redoubled, till the debt were ſatisfied. This money by the negligence of the Kings Officers, who looked upon the contract as a matter of jeſt, became ſo great a ſumme, that the King, to ſatisfie *Gonſales*, made him the firſt *Proprietarie* Earl of *Caſtile*, Anno 939. releaſing that Eſtate from all acknowledgement to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, as ſome call her, Siſter and Heir of *Garcias* the fourth Earl hereof, brought this Eſtate by mariage to *Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, Anno 1028. by whom it was erected into a kingdom, & given by him to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Sonne. An. 1034. Kings of moſt note and obſervation in the courſe of their ſtorie, are, 1 *Ferdinand* their firſt King, who added *Leon* to his kingdom in right of *Sancha* his Wife, Siſter and Heir of *Veramund* the laſt King thereof, of the race of *Pelagius*. 2 *Alphonſo* the firſt, who ſubdued the Kingdom of *Toledo*, adding it by the name of *New Caſtile*, unto his Eſtate. 3 *Alfonſo* the third, who conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatſoever lay on the *Caſtilian* ſide of the River *Iberus*; and grew ſo great, that he cauſed himſelf to be ſolemnly Crowned Emperour of *Spain*, in the Cathedrall Church of *Leon*, by the Archbiſhop of *Toledo*; and gave his Sonne *Sancho* the title of King of *Caſtile* in his own life time. 4 *Alphonſo* the 3d, the chief of the Confederates againſt *Mahomet Enaſer*, the Miramomoline of *Morocco*, whom he vanquiſhed in the famous battell of *Muradal*, or *Sierra Morena*, Anno 1214. and added *Alava* and *Guipuſcoa* to his other Eſtates. 5 *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Caſtile* into one Eſtate, and added the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Corduba* and *Sevil*, taken from the *Moores*, unto his Dominions. 6 *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperour of the *Germans*, but more famous for his eminence in *Aſtronomie*; the Author of the *Alfonſine Tables*. 7 *Pedro* the *Cruel*, driven out of his Kingdom by *Henry* of *Tranſtamare* his Brother; reſtored again for a time by the valour of *Edward* the *Black Prince*, Sonne of *Edward* the third. 8 *Iohn*, Sonne of *Henry* of *Tranſtamare*, who maried his Sonne *Henry* to *Catharine* Daughter of *Iohn* of *Gaunt*, by *Conſtance* one of the Daughters of *Don Petro* the *Cruel*, ſo uniting both titles into one. The times in which theſe Princes and the reſt did reign, appeareth in theſe Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Caſtile*, which are theſe that follow.

The Earls of *Caſtile*.

A. Ch.

910. 1 *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt Proprietary Earl.
932. 2 *Garcias*, Sonne of *Ferdinand*.
980. 3 *Sancho*, or *Sanctias*, Sonne of *Garcias*.
1018. 4 *Garcias* II. Sonne of *Sancho*, ſlain by Treaſon, without iſſue.
1028 5 *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, the Siſter of *Garcias* the ſecond, maried to *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, Father of *Ferdinand*, made by him the firſt King of *Caſtile*.

The Kings of *Caſtile*.

1036. 1 *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* by the gift of his Father, and of *Leon* in right of his Wife. 33.
1067. 2 *Sancho*, Sonne of *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* only, his younger Brother *Alfonſo* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 6.
1073. 3 *Alfonſo*, the Brother of *Sancho*, King of *Leon*, and afterwards of *Caſtile* alſo.
1108. 4 { *Viraca*, Queen of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. / *Alfonſo* II. King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*. } 15.
1122. 5 *Alfonſo* III. King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, the Sonne of *Viraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy* her former Husband.
1157. 6 *Sancho* II. the elder Sonne of *Alfonſo* the third, his younger Brother *Ferdinand* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 2.
1159. 7 *Alfonſo* IV. Sonne of *Sancho* the ſecond.
1214. 8 *Henry*, Sonne of *Alphonſo* the fourth.
1217. 9 *Ferdinand* II. Sonne of *Alphonſo* the ninth of *Leon*, and of *Berenguela* the Siſter of *Henry*, ſucceeded his Father in *Leon* alſo, Anno 1230. the Kingdoms never ſince diſ-joyned, though the title of *Leon* in ſhort time became diſcontinued.
1252. 10 *Alfonſo* V. Sonne of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; and Emperour Elect. 32.
1283. 11 *Sancho* III. the 2d Sonne of *Alfonſo* the fift, the children of *Ferdinand de la Cerda*, his elder Brother, being ſet beſides. 12.
1295. 12 *Ferdinand* III. of *Caſtile*, and IV. of *Leon*, Sonne of *Sancho* the third. 28.
1312. 13 *Alfonſo* VI. Sonne of *Ferdinand*. 38.
1350 14 *Pedro*, the Sonne of *Alfonſo*, for his infinite Tyrannies ſurnamed the *Cruel*. 18.

1368. 15 *Henry*,

1368. 15 *Henry* II. the Baſtard Sonne of *Alfonſo* the ſixt Earl of *Tranſtamare*. 11.

1379. 16 *John*, the Sonne of *Henry* the ſecond. 11.

1390. 17 *Henry* III. Sonne of *Iohn*, and huſband of *Catharine* the Daughter of *Iohn* of *Gaunt* and the Ladie *Conſtance*, one of the Daughters of King *Pedro*. 17.

1406. 18 *Iohn* II. Sonne of *Henry* and *Catharine*. 48.

1454. 19 *Henry* IV. Sonne of *Iohn* the ſecond. 21.

1475. 20 *Iſabel*, Siſter of *Henry* the fourth, maried to *Ferdinand* V. Sonne of *John* King of *Aragon*. Of whoſe Acts and iſſue we will make more ample mention when we ſhall come to ſpeak of the *Monarchy* of *Spain*, which began in them, and hath been ſince continued in their Poſterity.

The chief Orders of Knighthood within theſe Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, long ſince united into one, were three in all; partly Religious, partly Military; and one Order of Religious preſons, not known in any Country but *Spain* alone.

This of the laſt ſort is called the Order of *Mercie*, or *de la merced*; the practice and profeſſion of it to gather Alms amongſt the People, wherewith to redeem ſuch *Chriſtian* Captives as either by *Pyracie*, the chance of War, or by ſome other meanes are enthralled to the *Turks* and *Moores*: ſending their Agents yearly to *Algeers* and *Feſſe*, to inform them of the ſtate, age, and quality of each ſeverall Captive; and after on Inſtruction from the Brethren of this Society, to deal in the redemption of them. A buſineſs which they manage with great care and faithfulneſs, and are accordingly truſted with great ſummes of money given and collected to that end; few men here dying, who give not ſome legacie or other to this pious uſe. Nor are the Kings behind hand in ſo good a work, promoting it with a liberall purſe, and giving as much ordinarily out of his Eſtate as the brethren have collected in all *Spain* beſides. And to ſay truth, it doth concern him more than others, becauſe they are his Subjects chiefly for whoſe Redemption the whole ſumme is given and gathered: *Religious perſons* ranſomed firſt, and then the *Laitie*; the young and ſerviceable men before old and impotent: if after the *Redemption* of the *Spaniſh* Captives they have any ſtock left, they keep it not till another yeer, but therewith ranſome Captives of ſome other Nations. So that this ſeemeth to ſucceed in the place of the now antiquated and uſeleſs *Orders* of *Knighthood*, which were heretofore of great autority and power, that is to ſay,

1 Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the kingdom of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, to whom the defence thereof belonged, on the approach of the *Moores*; made good by *Raymond* the Abbot of *Piſaria*, and the Monkes of *Ciſteaux*. Anno 1157. For the future preſervation and defence whereof, they ordained this *Order*, which in proceſs of time grew to ſuch eſtate, that beſides 8 fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no leſs than 61 Towns and Caſtles. The Knights hereof doe wear for their Habit, a *White Robe* with a *Red Croſs* upon their breſts, confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the 3d. Anno 1164. under the diſcipline of *Ciſteaux*. Their reſidence is at *Caſtle-Novo*, bound by their Order to ſerve in the Warres againſt the Infidels; upon which ſervices they have been ſometimes ſeen in the field with 300 great Horſe.

2 Of S. *Jago*, inſtituted by the Canons of *Eloy*, and certain Gentlemen of *Caſtile*, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*, for the ſecurity and entertainment of *Chriſtian Pilgrims* travelling to the Shrine of S. *Iago*, confirmed by the ſaid Pope *Alexander* the 3d, Anno 1175. under the Rule of St. *Auguſtine*. Their habit is a *White Robe*, with a *Red Croſs* like a Sword: the companions of it according to the firſt founders being part *Eccleſiaſticall* and part *Secular*; whereof theſe laſt are onely tied unto the vow of conjugall Chaſtitie. They grew in little time unto ſuch eſteem, that beſides two Colleges or *Seminaries* in *Salamanca*, and a College in *Sevill*, they had four *Hermitages* in the Mountains, and five *Hoſpitals* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers, together with 90 Towns & Caſtles in ſeverall parts of the Kingdom. The whole number of Gentlemen, beſides *Friers* ſerving in their Cures, and other Miniſters, is above 600. Their firſt Reſidence, at the Hoſpitall of S. *Mark* in the Suburbs of *Leon*; on a diſlike with *Ferdinand* the ſecond King of *Leon* removed to *Uceles* in *Caſtile*, beſtowed upon them by *Alfonſo* the 4th. Vpon this occaſion being divided, they have ſince two Maſters, or *Commendadors*, the one called the *Commendador* of *Leon*, who reſides at S. *Marks*, the other the *Commendador* of *Caſtile*, who reſides at *Uceles*.

3 Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon* againſt the *Moores*, where he framed this Order, confirmed by Pope *Lucio*, Anno 1183. Others aſcribe it to *Alfonſo*, the Suceſſor of that *Ferdinand*, Anno 1217. by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians* in the Realm of *Leon*; but acknowledging the Superiority thereof, and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. Their device at firſt was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in a Field *Or*; to which hanged a pair of *Shackles* as a ſigne of their Subjection to them of *Calatrava*; Changed Anno 1411. to a *White Robe*, and a *Green Croſs* on their Breſts.

I omit the Order of the *Dove* and *Reaſon*, inſtituted by K. *Iohn* of *Caſtile*, becauſe of ſmall eſteem, and but ſhort continuance. And ſo much for *Caſtile*, the firſt of thoſe three greater Kingdomes of *Spain*, under which all the reſt are now reduced, conteining in this Continent all the Provinces and Eſtates before deſcribed, amounting to two third parts of the whole; and many large eſtates elſewhere, as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter in its proper place. Paſs we on next to *Portugall*, the

Portugal, the second in repute of the said three kingdoms, not so much for the largeness of the Territories, which it had on the Continent, as for its great *Appendixes* in all other parts of the *World*.

11 The Kingdom of *PORTVGAL*.

THe Kingdom of *PORTVGAL* containeth 1 *Portugal* it self; 2 *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbiorum*; and 3 the *Terceras* or Isles of *Azores*: these last not reckoned parts of *Spain* by any of our Writers either old or new; but made by us a part hereof, because situate over against *Portugal*, one of the first additions which was made unto it on the Ocean; and finally, because I know not under what other head to reduce them better.

And first for *PORTVGAL* it self, it is bounded on the North, with the Rivers *Minio* and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with *Algarve*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; and on the East, with the two *Castiles* and *Extremadura*; from which divided by a line drawn from *Ribadavia*, standing on the *Avia*, to *Badaios*, on the *Anas* or *Guadiana*. Extended on the Sea-coast from North to South 400 miles; the bredth of it in the broadest place (not taking in the Ilands into this Accompt) 100 miles, in the narrowest 80, the whole circumference 879 miles, and in that compass 1460 Parishes.

It was first called *Lusitania* from the *Lusitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof, and took the name of *Portugal*, either from the Haven or *Port* of *Cale*, now called *Caia*, sometimes a very rich and flourishing *Emporie*, or rather from the Haven Town of *Porto*, at the mouth of *Duerus*, where the *Galls* (or the *French* rather) used to *land* their Merchandise, which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*, and which Town was given in Dower with *Teresa*, the Daughter of *Alfonso* the sixth, to *Henry* of *Lorain*, with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. Whose Successors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all those Countries which they got from the *Moores*, as it continueth at this day.

The Air is very healthy, the Conntrey for the most part hilly and bare of Corn, supplied from *France* and other parts of the North; that which they have being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The soyl and people in all places not rich alike. For where the *soyl* is *richest*, as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*, there the *People* are *poorest*, in regard of the great distance thereof from *Lisbon*, and so not benefited by the trading of that wealthy Citie. And where the *soyl* is poorest, there the *People* be *richest*, helping themselves by trade and *manufactures*, especially by making of Silks, and Salt, sufficient for themselves, and for other Countries. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is othervvise sufficiently recompensed vvith abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Allom, Fruits, Fish, Salt, white Marble, and some Mines of Silver, &c.

The people are of a more plain and simple behaviour than the rest of *Spain*; and (if we beleeve the old *Proverb*) none of the wisest: For whereas the *Spaniards* are said to seem wise, and yet to be Fools; the *French* to seem Fools, and yet to be wise; the *Italians* both to seem wise and to be so; the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wise indeed, nor so much as to seem so. But little different from which is the *Spanish* by-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*, few and foolish; which others varie with the addition of another part of their *Character*; saying that they are *Pocos, Sotos, y Devotos*, few and foolish, but withall devout. They have great animosities (if it be not grown to an *Antipathie*) against the *Castilians*, for bereaving them of their Kingdom and Liberty, though both of late recovered by them: but when *most Fools*, were counted for good *Sea-faring* men, and happy in the discoverie of forrain Nations.

Rivers it hath of all sorts, both great and small, almost 200. Those of most note, 1 *Minius*, full of red Lead, (from hence called *Minium* by the *Latines*) navigable with small Vessels 100 miles. 2 *Lethes*, now *Lavada*. 3 *Muliadas*, now *Mondego*. 4 *Tagus*. 5 *Duerus*, and 6 *Anas*; these three last common also to the rest of *Spain*: *Anas*, or *Guadiana* passing by *Portugal* but for 7 Leagues only, *Tagus* for 18, and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long space by ships of burden; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally swift of course, restrained within narrow Channels, banked on both sides with very steep Rocks, which make them incommodious for Navigation: Insomuch that it is reckoned for a great Prerogative of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great ships, 15 or 20 miles within the Continent. But here that want is somewhat tolerably supplied with 3 excellent Havens. 1 That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*, and 2 *Porto* on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*, of which more anon; 3 of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, situate on a Golf of 20 miles in length, and three in bredth; a place of principal importance to those parts of the Realm Rivers however of great fame, according to whose course the whole Countrey was divided by the *Romans* into *Vlteriorem*, lying beyond *Duero* North-wards; 2 *Citeriorem*, on the South of *Tagus*; and 3 *Interamnem*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1 *Lisbon*, seated upon *Tagus*, a famous Citie for traffick, the *Portugals* in all their Navigations setting sayl from hence. By the *Latines* called *Olysippo*, and *Vlyssippo*, because as some say *Vlysses* built it, coming hither in the course of his ten yeers travel: a thing meerly fabulous, it being no where found, that *Vlysses* did ever see the Ocean. But like enough it is, that this Town being seated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by Sea-faring men, might at the first be consecrated to the memory of so great a Traveller; as *Athens* being a place of *Learning* was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athene*. It is in compass

seven

seven miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Parishes, and in them 20000 houses, all of neat and elegant building, Turrets, and Towers it numbreth upon the wals about 76. Gates towards the Sea-shore 22. And towards the Continent, situate upon five small Hils, betw xt which is a valley which runs down to the River: on the highest Hill an ancient Castle, not strong, but by reason of the situation, serving now only for a Prison for men of quality; the entry of the River, being defended by the Castle of *Cascais*, and neerer to the Citie by the Fort of S. *Iulians*, and the Rock of *Belem* munitioned with 20. Peeces of Ordinance. This Citie heretofore was honoured with the Seat of the Kings, since of the Vice-Roys; an Arch-bishops See, the Staple of commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm besides: said by some *French* Writers to be the best peopled Citie in Christendom, next unto *Paris*; aud by *Botero* an *Italian*, made to be the 4th Mart Town of *Europe*; the other three being *Constantinople*, *Paris*, *Mosco*: in which they doe great wrong to *London*, as populous and well-traded as the best them all. 2 *Santarex*, on the *Tagus*, so called from S. *Irene*, a Nun of *Tomar*, (a Monasterie, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did use to be crowned) here martyred by the *Moores*; by *Ptolomie* called *Scabaliscus*, then a *Roman* Colonie. 3 *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of the huge Mountains, called *Montes Lunæ*; whither by reason of the cool refreshings from the Sea, and pleasure of the Woods adjoyning, the Kings of *Portugal* used to retire in the heats of Summer. 4 *Conimbre*, on both sides the River *Mondego*, pleasantly seated amongst Vineyards and Woods of Olives; a Bishops See, and an Vniversity; the *Masters* whereof made the Commentarie on most part of *Aristotle*, called from hence *Schola Conimbricensis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, are 5. *Braga*, by *Ptolomie* called *Bracaria Augusta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*; the Royal Seat when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Archbishop, contending for the Primacie with him of *Toledo*. 6 *Porto*, the Haven of the *Galls*, on the mouth of *Duero*. 7 *Miranda*, a Bishops See on the same River. 8 *Braganze*, the Duke whereof is so great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the people of *Portugal* are his Vassals, and live on his Lands; the later Dukes, since the time of King *Emannel* being withall of the Royal blood: two steps of main advantage to the Regal Throne, lately ascended and obtained by *Iohn*, Duke of *Braganze*, now called *John* the 4th. And finally on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdom of *Algarba*, there is 9 *Ebora*, in the middest of a large and spacious Plain, an Arch-bishops See, and an Vniversitie, this last of the foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinall. 10 *Portalegre* a Bishops See. 11 *Olivenca* on the *Guadiana*. 12 *Beia*, by *Plinie* called *Pax Iulia*.

2 The Kingdom of *ALGARVE*, lieth on the South of *Portugal*, from which divided by a line drawn from *Ascorin* on the western Sea, to *Odechere* a Castle on the *Guadiana*; on the East bounded by *Andaluzia*, on the West and South by the Main *Atlantick*. This the most wild and desart part of all this Kingdom; barren and drie; peopled with few Towns, nor those very populous; hilly and Mountainous withall, but yielding by the benefit of the Sea a great trade of fishing, of *Tunny* specially, whereof more caught upon this coast than in all the Kingdom.

The name it took from the Western situation of it, for so the word *Algarve* signifieth in the *Arabick* tongue. The utmost end of it called anciently *Promontorium Sacrum*, now the Cape of S. *Vincent*, because the Bones of S. *Vincent* religiously preserved by the Christians, were here burnt and scatered about by the *Moores*. Places of most importance it in, 1 *Silvis* an Episcopall See, seated in the in-land parts. 2 *Villanova*, situate beyond the Cape. 3 *Tavila*, the *Balsa*, and 4 *Faro*, the *Ossonoba* of *Ptolomie*; both noted Ports on the *Atlantick*. 5 *Lagos*, an other Haven Town also.

This Country conquered by the *Moores* with the rest of *Spain*, and from them again recovered by the Kings of *Leon*, remained a Member of that Crown: till by *Alfonso* the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fift in *Castile*, it was given in dowrie with *Beatrix* his Daughter, to *Alfonso* the third of *Portugal*. From which mariage issued *Dionysius* or *Denys* King of *Portugal*, the first that ever used the title of *Rex Algarbiorum*, Anno 1274.

3 THE *AZORES*, are certain Islands lying in the *Atlantick* Ocean, opposite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which distant but 250 Leagues. Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of the Northern *Latitude*, and one of them in the first *Longitude*, which is commonly reckoned from these Islands; as being the most Western part of the *World*, before the discoverie of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Gos-hawkes* which were found there in the begining (the word *Azor* in the *Spanish* tongue signifying a *Gos-hawke*) though at this time there are none of them to be found. Called allso the *Flemish Islands*, because first discovered by the *Flemings*, and the great numbers of them in the Isle of *Faial* (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet some Families which resemble the *Flemings* both in their complexion and habit; and not far from the place of their abode a Torrent, which the *Spaniards* call *Riberados Flamengos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are also called the *Terceras* from *Tercera* the chief Isle among them.

The Air of those Islands is generally good and subject unto few diseases, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*, being an impostumation of the blood breaking out at the Eys or other parts of the Body. Some other inconveniences they are subject to, proceeding from the humidity of the

AZORES.

AZORES. the place, the great winds and ſtormes, of ſuch a violent and ſtrange kind of working, that barres of Iron as big as a mans arm, have in ſix years been worn as little as a Straw. All of them well ſtored with Fleſh, Fiſh, and other things neceſſary, except Salt and Oyl, with which they are furniſhed out of *Portugal*. Wines they have alſo for their own uſe, but not to be tranſported far, becauſe of their weakneſs: for which cauſe alſo, the richer men provide themſelves of *Canarie* Wines, or thoſe of the Iland of *Madera*. Of like nature is their Wheat, and other fruits, which hold not good above a year. All of them ſubject unto Earthquakes, and ſome to breathings out of fire; which continually ſendeth forth fuming vapours. The chief commodities which they tranſport unto other Countries, are *Canarie* birds for Ladies, Oad for the Diers, Ioyners-work which they ſell to the *Spaniards*, and Beeves for the victualling of ſuch Ships as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally Laborious, excellent husbands on their grounds, inſomuch as they make Vines to grow out of Rocks; much given to *Ioynery*, by which they make many prettie fancies, much eſteemed by the *Spaniards*; but not ſo expert at it as thoſe of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to teach their Cattell underſtanding; the Oxen being taught to know when their Maſter calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their cuſtomes and apparell; but with ſome ſmattering of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Iſlands nine in number, and diſtinguiſhed by the ſeverall names of, 1 *Tercera*, 2 S. *Michael*, 3 *Fayal*, 4 *Gratioſa*, 5 S. *George*, 6. *Pico*, 7 *Corvo*, 8 *Flores*, and 9 S. *Maries*, of which S. *Michaels* and St. *Maries* lie next to *Spain*; *Tercera* on the North-Weſt of thoſe; (by conſequence the third in order, whence it had the name;) S. *Georges*, *Gratioſa*, *Pico*, *Fayal*, on the Weſt of that; and finally thoſe of *Corvo* and *Flores*, neereſt to *America*.

1 *TERCERA*, the chief of all the reſt, 18 miles in compaſs, well ſtored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oringes: and for the Kitchin, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-herbs, and as good *Batato-rootes* (which are the beſt food the people have) as any be in the World, but more eſteemed in *Portugal* than they be in this Iland, by reaſon of their great abundance. Here is alſo great quantity of the beſt kind of Woad, (which from hence is called *Iland-Woad*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man, which beares no Fruit, but hath a Root as profitable as thoſe that doe: out of which the People draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their *matreſſes* inſtead of Feathers. Fowl enough for the uſe of man, and yet none of prey. No Port of any ſafety in it but that of *Angra*; and that made ſafe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which ſtick out like a pointed Diamond, able to pierce the feet of any who ſhall venture over them. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Praye*, on the Sea ſide, well-walled, but not very well peopled. 2 S. *Barbara*, 3 S. *Sebaſtians*, 4 *Gualne*, and 5 *Villa nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6 *Angra*, the chief not of this Iland only, but of all the nine; the Reſidence of the Governour, and an Archbiſhops See, who hath in it his Cathedrall Church. Seated on a convenient Bay made in the form of a *Creſcent*, with two Promontories on each ſide (like the two horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle for defence of the Haven, the Town it ſelf alſo well-walled about, and environed with ſharp Rocks on all ſides. Both Town and Caſtles well garriſoned, and no leſs diligently guarded. This in regard of its great ſtrength, and commodious Haven, is eſteeemed the principall of theſe Ilands, and communicates it's name unto all the reſt; though neither neereſt unto *Spain*, nor the greateſt in compaſs.

2 S. *MARIES*, ſo called from the Saint (as S. *Georges* and S. *Michaels* are) unto which it is dedicated; is the moſt Southern of theſe Iſles, and the next to *Spain*: twelve miles in circuit, inhabited by *Spaniards* onely, and thoſe much given unto the making of Earthen veſſels. So naturally fenced with Rocks, that it is, and may be eaſily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garriſon. The chief Town of it hath the name of St. *Maries* alſo, which it either giveth unto the Iland, or borroweth from it.

3 S. *MICHAELS*, directly North of S. *Maries*, from which little diſtant, the biggeſt in the whole pack, as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not anſwerable: much ſubject unto Earth-quakes and fiery vapours. Of moſt note amongſt our modern *Geographers*, who have removed hither the firſt *Meridian* (by which they divide the World into Eaſt and Weſt) from the *Canaries* or *Fortunate Ilands*, were it was fixed in the time of *Ptolomie*, and others of the antient Writers.

And this remove ſeems countenanced even by Nature it ſelf, it being obſerved that the *Compaſs* when it commeth under the *Meridian* drawn through this Iſle, hath little or no *Variation* at all, but pointeth almoſt directly towards the North; whereas in all other places or leſs *Meridians*, Eaſt, and Weſt, it pointeth not ſo directly North, but more or leſs to the *North-eaſt*, or the *North-weſt*, which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the *North-eaſting* and the *North-weſting* of the Compaſs. And yet it is obſerved of late, that there is ſome more ſenſible variation of it in this Iſle of S. *Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*: which therefore is conceived more fit for this firſt *Meridian*.

The chief Town hereof, beſides many Burroughs and leſſer Hamlets, *Punta del Gada*, ſeated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port, yet more frequented by Strangers than the Port of *Angra*, becauſe here they may goe in and out as they pleaſe, but not ſo in the other.

4 *FAYALL*, 17 or 18 miles in length, plentifully provided with all things neceſſary for the life

life of man, and well furniſhed with Woad, for which commoditie much frequented by the Mer- *AZORES.*
chants of *England*. The chief Town of it *Dorta*, defended with a Caſtle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*; both Town and Iland taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1597. This Action was called the *Iland-Voyage*, undertaken as well to divert the War which the *Spaniards* threatned to bring to our own doors; as by ſeizing ſome of theſe Ilands to intercept the *Spaniſh* Fleets in their return, and to hinder them in their ſetting out: by which means, wanting their *Indian* gold, they might be brought to better terms with their neighbour Nations. And though the *Engliſh* were not able to hold it long, yet it was ſaid, that the bootie got in this Expedition, amounted to 400000 Crowns, beſides the honour of beating the *Spaniard* upon his own ground. It took this name from its abundance of *Beeches*.

5 *GRATIOSA*, not above five or ſix Leagues in compaſs; but ſo well furniſhed with fruits, that they ſend much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* onely, but ſo poor, that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garriſon. The chief Town of it called *La Plaia*.

6 S. *GEORGES*, twelve miles long, about three in bredth, mountainous and full of *Foreſts*, but thoſe *Foreſts* ſo well ſtored with *Cedars*, that they uſe them many times for ſhipping, and ſometimes for Fewell. The chief Town of it called S. *Georges*, as the Iland is.

7 *PICO*, lyeth on the South of the Iſle of S. *George*, and took this name from an high Hill in the form of a *Pyramid*, which the *Portugals* generally call a *Pike*, or *Pico*. Repleniſhed with fruits, ſome *Cedars*, and a Tree called *Teixo*, of great bulk, and as much beauty: the wood thereof exceeding hard, red within and waved; ſo admirably beautifull that it is allowed onely to the Kings Officers, the other Subjects being interdicted the uſe of it (but on ſpeciall licence) by a publick Edict. In bigneſs it is ſecond onely unto that of S. *Michael*, if not equall to it; hardly ſo much in length, but of greater bredth. The chief Towns of it, 1 S. *Sebaſtians*, 2 *Callota de Neſquin*, both upon the Sea, and in the Eaſt parts of the Iland.

8 *FLORES*, directly Eaſt from *Fayall*, ſo called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratioſa* from the like flouriſhing Verdure of it) is in compaſs not above 8 miles, but plentifully furniſhed with Cattel and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it, *Santa Crux*. The Iſle (though ſmall,) yet twice as big as the Iſle of 9 *CORVO*, ſo called from it's abundance of Crowes, ſituate on the North hereof, and but little diſtant: both very unſafe, and both moſt miſerably poor, by reaſon of the many Pyrates which lie betwixt them, to intercept ſuch ſhips as trade towards *America*. But this, though much ſmaller than the others, may in time be of more eſteem than any of them: in regard it is conceived to be the moſt naturall place for the firſt *Meridian*; as before was noted: the *Needle* here pointing directly to the North, without *Variation*. Which whether it proceed from ſome ſecret inclination of the *Loadſtone* to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being ſituate betwixt the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, by the *magneticall* vertue of the Earth it ſelf: I leave to be diſputed by more able judgements.

Theſe Ilands were firſt diſcovered and ſubdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince *Henry*, Sonne of *John* the firſt, who firſt made the *Portugals* in love with the Seas. And they were alſo the laſt members of the Crown of *Portugal* which held out for *Don Antonio* the Baſtard, againſt *Philip* the ſecond of *Caſtile*; againſt whom the Iland of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel de Silva*, with the help of the *French*; but taken at the laſt by the Marqueſs of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after promiſe of life, cruelly murdered in cold blood. After which, garriſoned at the firſt by none but *Portugals*. But upon ſome commotion hapning in that Kingdom, it was thought fit, on ſome reaſon of State, to make ſure of the beſt Ilands by *Spaniſh* Garriſons; which accordingly were put into the Caſtles of *Angra*, in *Tercera*; and the Towns of *Punta del Gada*, in S. *Michaels*; and *Dorta*, in *Fayall*. And to ſay truth, the *Spaniards* had good reaſon to be carefull of them, theſe Ilands being of ſuch importance as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Æthiopia*, *Braſil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continued: becauſe the *Fleets* which come from thoſe Countries to *Liſbon* or *Sevill*, muſt in a manner of neceſſity touch upon ſome of them, as well in following their courſe if they come from the Weſt, as in recovering ſuch winds as are uſefull to them, if they come from the Eaſt.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*; know, that the antient Inhabitants of it were the *Luſitani*, dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Duerus*, the old *Luſitania* being bounded within thoſe Rivers; the *Celtici* and *Turditani*, who took up alſo ſome part of *Betica*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*; and the *Gallaici Bracarii* (ſo called to difference them from the *Gallaici Lucenſes* who poſſeſſed *Gallicia*) on the North of *Duerus*. Subjected firſt unto the *Romans*, by whom accompted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining of their Empire conquered by the *Alani*, and from them taken by the *Suevians*, who for a time made the Citie of *Braga* the Royall ſeat of their Kings. The *Suevians* loſt it to the *Gothes*, and the *Gothes* to the *Moores*, as hath been ſhewn already in their ſeverall ſtories. Recovered in part by the Kings of *Leon*; to whom that part continued ſubject, till given by *Alphonſo* the ſixt of *Leon* in dowrie with his Baſe Daughter *Teraſa*, to *Henry* of *Loreine*, whoſe vertue and good ſervice merited no leſs reward, Anno 1099. who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl for the ſpace of 12 years, left his Sonne *Alfonſo*, Heir both to his Fortunes and Vertues, honoured with the title of King of *Portugal* by the *Soveraignes* of *Leon*, for his moſt gallant demeanor ſhewn in the battell of *Obrique*, An. 1139. He had before the *Aſſumption* of the Regal Stile ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour; and he reigned here

Portugal. with no leſs, 45 years after that *Aſſumption*, reverenced by his Friends, and feared by his Enemies. So that the whole time of his ſitting in the Chair of State was 72 years: a longer enjoying of Soveraignty than any Prince, ſince the firſt beginning of the *Roman* Monarchie. His Succeſſors we ſhall have in order in the following Catalogue. But we muſt firſt tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of moſt note in the whole ſucceſſion, are, 1 *Henry* of *Loreine* (whom ſome make a *Burgundian* of the Citie of *Beſancon*) who coming into *Spain* to the *Holy Wars*, and deſerving nobly in the ſame, was honoured by *Alfonſo* the ſixth, with his Daughter *Teraſa* and the Town of *Portio* for her Dower, given to him with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Eſtate as far as *Coimbre* on the South of the River *Duero*; that River being before that time the utmoſt bound of it that way. 2. *Alfonſo* the firſt King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moores*, Anno 1247 and made it the Seat of his Kingdom, which he extended South-ward as far as *Algarve*. 3. *Alfonſo* the 3d, who partly by Conqueſt, and partly by Mariage, added *Algarve* to his Eſtate, getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. 4 *Alfonſo* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the ſame name in *Caſtile* againſt *Alboacen* the *Miramomolin* of *Africk*, at the fight neer the River *Salado*, not far from *Tariffe*; where they diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Moores*, conſiſting of 470000 Horſe and Foot. 5 *Iohn* the firſt, the baſe Sonne of *Pedro* the firſt, ſetting aſide the Lady *Beatrix*, Queen of *Caſtile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the firſt, and the lawfull Children of his Father, being many in number: by force and colour of Election obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his mariage with the Lady *Philip*, Daughter of *Iohn* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*; a ſtrong Competitor at that time for the Crown of *Caſtile*: on which Relation, this King, the four Kings next ſucceeding, and two of this Kings younger Sonnes, were made Knights of the *Garter*. 6 *Henry*, Duke of *Viſeo* (*Viſontium* the *Latines* call it) the ſecond Sonne of *Iohn* the firſt, created Knight of the *Garter* by King *Henry* the ſixth, Anno 1444. By whoſe incouragement and example the *Portugueze* began to be affected to forrain Voyages: diſcovering in his time, (and for the moſt part under his Conduct alſo) the Ilands of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Holy-Port*, thoſe of *Cape Verde*, and a great part of the Coaſt of *Africk*, as far as *Guinea*. He died An. 1463. 7 *Alfonſo* the fifth, who warring on the *Moores* in *Africk*, took from them the ſtrong Towns of *Tanger*, *Alcaſer*, & *Arzilla*. 8 *Iohn* the 2d, under whoſe reign the *Portugals* fully ſettled themſelves in *Guinea* and the Realms of *Congo*, diſcovering all the Coaſts and Iſles of *Africk*, (not before diſcovered) as far as to the *Cape of Good-hope*, Anno 1487 planting, and fortifying as they paſſed: the whole Diſcoverie of *Africk*, the *Eaſt-Indies*, and *Braſil*, being perfected in the Reign of King *Emanuel*; under whom alſo they diſcomfited great Armies of the *Turks*, and *Sultans* of *Egypt*, bringing by Sea the riches of the *Eaſt* into the *Weſt*. 9 *Sebaſtian*, the Grand-child of King *Iohn*, Sonne of *Emanuel*, imbarking himſelf unadviſedly in the wars of *Africk*, loſt his life (as it is generally ſuppoſed) at the battel of *Alcaſar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion that he was not killed, but that for ſhame and ſorrow he returned not home, wandring from one place to another, and at the laſt was found and avowed at *Venice*; thence carried to *Naples*, where he was kept three days in a dark Dungeon without any ſuſtenance but a knife and halter, brought into *Spain* by the Kings command, where at laſt he died. A man in whom ſo many circumſtances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* uſed to ſay, that either he was the true *Sebaſtian*, or elſe the Devil in his likeneſs. But whether true or not is not now materiall, death having put an end to that diſputation; though the controverſie which enſued upon his death for the Crown of *Portugal*, be not yet decided. For though King *Philip* the 2d of *Spain* ſucceeded next after *Henry* the *Cardinal King* (who only came upon the Stage that the Competitors might have time to declare their Titles) and claimed the Crown as eldeſt Heir male, and neereſt Kinſman to King *Henry*: yet all the World was not well ſatisfied in the Iuſtice and Equity of his demands. In the carrying on of which affairs he ſeemed to deal very candidly to the eyes of men, not biaſſed by their proper *Intereſs*; offering to ſubmit his Title to a Diſputation, profeſſing that the Lawes of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Caſtile*; and openly acknowledging, that if he ſhould chance to die before the ſaid *Henry*, his eldeſt Sonne, as being a degree further off, would come behind ſome others of the *Pretendants* to it, of whom himſelf had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make ſure work after his deceaſe, (*Antonio* the Baſtard having got poſſeſſion of *Lisbon*, and taking on himſelf as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raiſed an Army under the command of *Ferdinand de Toledo* Duke of *Alva*, and ſubdued all that ſtood againſt him, *Catharine* the Dutcheſs of *Braganze*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, ſurrendring alſo all her intereſs and pretenſions to him: So entring by a mixt Title of deſcent and Arms, Anno 1580. Threeſcore yeers it was peaceably enjoyed by the Kings of *Spain*, when ſuddenly diſpoſſeſſed by a potent faction appearing for *Iohn* Duke of *Braganze*, deſcended from the youngeſt Sonne of King *Emanuel*: which brought ſo cunningly and ſucceſſefully in his behalf, that the K. of *Spain* was ſooner diſſeized of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practice ſet on foot againſt him, Anno 1639. In which it is to be obſerved, that as King *Philip* the 2d, for the better obtaining of this Crown, had embroyled the *French*, ingaging that King in a bloody war againſt the *Proteſtants* of that Kingdom, to make him ſure enough from troubling him in his preſent Enterprize: ſo the *French* Miniſters had cauſed a Revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was buſied in reducing that *Province*, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themſelves from the power of the *Spaniards*, whom the *Antipathie* betwixt the

Nations

Nations made leſs pleaſing to them. Nor was it a partiall defection onely, or the loſs of *Portugal* and no more; but a generall falling off of the whole eſtate, in *Africk*, *Aſia*, *America*, in the *Iſles* and Continents; the *Acceſſories*, (excepting only the Town of *Ceuta* in *Barbarie*) going the ſame way as the *Principall* did. And here methinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be juſtly taxed for committing a greater *Solœciſm* in point of State, than ever people did before them: in that having got the full and peaceable poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it, they continued all the Garriſons and ſtrong holds of the whole Eſtate in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it ſelf fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any hæſitancie: which, had ſome of the chief peeces in every Province, Factorie, and Plantation, been brought by little and litle (if not all at once) into the power of the *Caſtilians*, might have been eaſily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniard* hitherto attempted any thing materiall for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever ſince ſo over-laid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Navarre*, *Biſcay*, *Flanders*, *Artoys*, and *Italy*, that he hath not had much leizure to attend that buſineſs. But leaving him and them to their own affairs; it is now time to repreſent you with a Catalogue of *Portugal.*

The Kings of *Portugal.*

1139. 1 *Alfonſo*, the ſecond Earl, and firſt King of *Portugal*. 45.
1184. 2 *Sancho*, the Sonne of *Alfonſo*. 28.
1212. 3 *Alfonſo* II. Sonne of *Sancho*. 11.
1223. 4 *Sancho* II. Sonne of *Alfonſo* the 2d. 34.
1257. 5 *Alfonſo* III. Brother of *Sancho* the 2d. 22.
1279. 6 *Denys*, the Sonne of *Alfonſo* the 3d. 48.
1325. 7 *Alfonſo* IV. the Sonne of *Denys*. 32.
1357. 8 *Pedro*, the Sonne of *Alfonſo* the 4th. 10.
1367. 9 *Ferdinand*, the Sonne of *Pedro*, the laſt King of the Lawfull iſſue of *Henry* of *Loreine*. 18.
1385. 10 *John*, the baſe Sonne of *Pedro*, of whom ſufficiently before. 48.
1433. 11 *Edward*, the Sonne of *John*, and of the Lady *Philip* of *Lancaſter*. 5.
1428. 12 *Alfonſo* V. the Sonne of *Edw.* 43.
1481. 13 *John* II. the Sonne of *Alfonſo* the the fift. 14.
1495. 14 *Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Edward*, by his Sonne *Ferdinand* D. of *Viſeo*. 26.
1521. 15 *Iohn* III. Sonne of *Emanuel*. 38.
1557. 16 *Sebaſtian* the Nephew of *Iohn* the 3d, by his Sonne *Don Iohn*; unfortunately ſlain in the fields of *Africk*. 21.
1578. 17 *Henry* the Cardinall, Sonne of King *Emanuel* 2. the laſt of the male iſſue of *Henry* of *Loreine*.
1580. 18 *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, Sonne of *Charles* King of *Caſtile* and Emperour, and of the Lady *Marie* his Wife, daughter of *Emanuel*. 18.
1598. 19 *Philip* II. of *Portugal*, and III. of *Spain*. 23.
1621. 20 *Philip* III. of *Portugal*, and IV. of *Spain*. During his reign the *Portugueze* wearie of the *Spaniſh* Government, choſe for their King,
1636. 21 *Iohn*, Duke of *Bragance*, the IV. of that name, a Prince of great poſſeſſions, and of Royall race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.

Now that we may the better ſee by what title both the Kings of *Spain* and the Dukes of *Bragance* claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other Pretenders there were to it on the death of *Sebaſtian*: and what right as well *Antonio* the Baſtard (but alleging a ſentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the Houſe of *Savoy* did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following *Scheme*.

Emanuel had theſe Children
- 1 *Iohn*, King of *Portugal* — *Iohn* Prince of *Portugal* — *Sebaſtian*, King of *Portugal*.
- 2 *Henry* the Cardinall, King of *Portugal*.
- 3 *Lewis* — *Don Antonio* a Baſtard. — *Chriſtopher* and others.
- 4 *Edward*
  - 1 *Mary*, wedded to *Alexander* Duke of *Parma*. — *Rainuccio Farneſis*.
  - 2 *Catharine*, maried to *Iohn* Duke of *Bragance*.
- 5 *Mary*, maried to *Charles* the fifth, King of *Caſtile*. — *Philip* the II. King of *Spain*.
- 6 *Beatrix* maried to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*.

By this it may appear how the claims are grounded; but whether title will prevail cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royall line of *Portugal* did begin in an *Henry*, ſo it ended in an *Henry* alſo: the male line failing in the perſon of the Cardinall-King, and the Crown falling (on whomſoever it ſhall faſten) on the Heirs of the Females.

Valentia. The principall Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom are, 1 Of *Avis*, ſo called from a Town of that name in *Portugal*, the ſeat thereof; founded by *Sanctius* or *Sancho* the firſt, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whoſe *Green Croſs* they wear, but equall to it neither in power nor riches.

2 Of *CHRIST*, inſtituted by *Denys* King of *Portugal*, who conferred on them all the Lands and Poſſeſſions of the exautorated *Templars*, confirmed by Pope *Iohn* the 22th, Anno 1321. Their Robe is a *Black Caſſock* under a *White Surcoat*, over which a *Red Croſs* ſtroked in the midſt with a a white line: their duty to expell the *Moores* out of *Betica*, the next neighbour to *Portugal*; to which Crown they have added many gallant Countries in *Aſia*, *Africk*, and *Braſil*, and ſo improved their own Eſtates, that all the *Iſles* in the *Atlantick* doe belong to them; beſides the rents of the *Mine* of S. *George* in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Armes are *Argent*, on five Eſcocheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Saltier* of the firſt, pointed *Sable*, within a Border *Gules*, charged with ſeven Towers, *Or*. Which five Eſcocheons were given in memorie of the five Kings whom *Alfonſo* the firſt King ſlew at the battell of *Obrique*, An. 1139. And ſo proceed we on to thoſe Provinces which are under the government of *Aragon*, the third great bodie of this State.

12 *VALENTIA.*

VALENTIA hath on the Eaſt, the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, parts of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*; on the North, *Catalogne*; and *Murcia* upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers 1 *Xucar*, called of old *Sucron* and *Surus*. 2 *Guadalander*, ſignifying a River of pure water; and 3 *Millar*.

This Countrie ſtandeth in the moſt temperate and pleaſing Air of all *Spain*, full of Gardens, and places of wonderfull delight, where groweth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn, and Fruit; garniſhed all the yeer long with ſweet-ſmelling flowers, and miraculouſly fruitfull of Pomgranats, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath alſo mines of Silver at *Buriol*, of Gold at *Lodar*, of Iron at *Finiſtrat*, of Alabaſter at *Piacent*, and of Allom, Lime, and Plaiſter in many places. From thence alſo come the beſt Silks in the World, Cotton of *Murcia*, Crimſon, Scarlet, and other precious colours, and rich perfumes. Finally, all the ſenſes of man may be delighted and refreſhed with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality and ſweetnes much like that of *Naples*. The delicacie and great pleaſures whereof have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought leſs warlike than the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Countrie alſo bear the fineſt Fleeces of any in *Spain*; firſt ſtocked with *Cotſwold* ſheep from *England*, at the requeſt of *Iohn* King of *Aragon*, An. 1465. by the imprudent curteſie of K. *Edward* the 4th.

Places of moſt note in it are. 1 *Alicante*, a noted Port on the *Mediterranean*, whence come our true *Alicant* Wines, made of the juyce of Mulberies; by *Ptolomie* called *Illicias*, by *Mela*, *Ilice*; from whence the Bay adjoyning is called *Sinus Ilicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicante*. 2 *Orivela*, a Biſhops See, on the River *Segura*, which divides this Province from *Murcia*. 3 *Sergorvo*, a Biſhops See, by *Ptolomie* named *Segobriga*, the chief Citie in old times of the *Celtiberi*. 4 *Xelva*, ſuppoſed to be the *Incibilis* of *Livie*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5 *Valentia*, a fair, pleaſant, and well-traded Citie, the See of an Archbiſhop, and giveth name to the whole Province: in its firſt glorie, one of the chief *Roman* Colonies in theſe parts of *Spain*; in its laſt, the Royall ſeat of the *Mooriſh* Kings of this Countrie. Situate three miles from the *Mediterranean*, not far from the mouth of the River *Dureas*, now called *Guadalander*: and is by ſome ſaid to have been heretofore named *Roma*, which ſignifieth ſtrength. But when the *Romans* maſtred it, to diſtinguiſh it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valentia*: which in the *Latine* tongue, is of the the ſame ſignification, with the *Greek* Πωμη. Here is an Univerſity in which S. *Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, ſtudyed. 6 *Laurigi*, now a ſmall village, once a Town of great ſtrength, called *Lauron*, which *Sertorius* beſieged, took and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whoſe confederates the *Lauronites* were, ſtood with his whole Army nigh enough unto the flame to warm his hands; and yet durſt not ſuccour it. 7 *Cullera*, a Sea Town ſtanding at the mouth of the River *Xucar*. It was formerly named *Sueron*, after the name of the River; and is famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Sertorius* here got of *Pompey*, *Pompey's* Army being not only overthrown, but himſelf with life hardly eſcaping. 8 *Morvedre*, ſituate in or neer the place of the old *Saguntum*: the People whereof when beſieged by *Annibal*, continued ſo obſtinate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they choſe rather to burn themſelves, than yield up the Town: the occaſion of the ſecond War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. Firſt Founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this deſtruction of it, repaired, or re-edified by the *Romans*, (they could not poſſibly do leſs) by whom made a *Colonie*. 9 *Gandia*, which gives the title of a Duke to the houſe of *Borgia*, and was the ſtile of the eldeſt Sonne of Pope *Alex.* the ſixt (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine* by the name of the Duke of *Gandia*: 10 *Denia*, ſeated on the brink of the *Mediterranean*, over which it hath a goodly Proſpect; the Marquiſate of the Duke of *Lerma*: firſt Founded by the *Maſſilians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which is the Promonterie *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*, the Refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars againſt *Pompey* and *Metellus*, both of great renown: the one aged, and of much experience; the other young, and of high reſolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himſelf more troubled with the old mans gravitie, than the young

man

mans gallantrie: insomuch as he was used to say, That *he'd not been for the Old Woman* Metellus, *he would have whipped the boy* Pompey *home with Rods.* For he had twice overcome this *Great Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joyned in the Action with him: the first time dangerously wounding, and the second time driving him out of the Field. But fighting against both he was over-matched; and yet seemed rather to retire than flie before them: the *Spaniards* behaving themselves very valiantly in the time of these Wars under him, to which *Florus* alludeth, saying, *Nec unquam magis apparuit* Hispani *militis Vigor, quam* Romano *duce.* At the last when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* faction, he was traiterously murdered by *Perpenna* one of his *Associates*; for which *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a *Triumph* at *Rome.* So high an estimate did they set upon the casuall death of this poor *Proscript.* *Catalonia.*

The Antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Bastitani*, the *Edetani*, *Contestani*, and some part of the *Celtiberi*: originally of the Province of *Tarraconensis*, afterwards (in the sub-dividing of that Province by *Constantine*) of *Carthaginensis.* In the declining of the Empire first subdued by the *Alani*, who were scarce warm in their new dwellings, when disseized by the *Gothes.* From the *Gothes* taken by the *Moores*, of whom reckoned as a Province, till the fatall overthrow given to *Mahomet Enasir* at the battell of *Sierra Morena*, and the departure of the *Moores* of *Morocco* to their own County, which followed presently upon it. By *Zeit Aben-Zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self, Anno 1214. but taken from him by one *Zaen* a Prince of the *Moores* of *Spain*, under colour that he had a purpose of turning Christian, and making his Kingdom subject to the Crown of *Aragon* (as indeed he did) Anno 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the sweets of a new raised Kingdom, by *James* King of *Aragon*, Anno 1238. Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never dismembred from the bodie of it since the first uniting. But still so overgrown with *Moores* (not to be blamed for loving such an excellent seat) that at the final expulsion of that people be King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer than 22000 Families of them in this little Countrie.

The Armes hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embattelled *Argent*, pursled (or pennond) *Sable.*

12 CATALONIA.

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-East, with the Land of *Rousillon* and the *Pyrenees*; on the East, with the *Mediterranean*; on the South, with *Valentia*; and on the North and North-West, with *Aragon.* The Country somewhat Mountainous and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: beholding more in that respect for Corn, Fruites, and other necessary provisions unto the *Courtesie* of the *Sea* which serves them out of other Countries, than to the *Goodness* of the *Land.* And yet it is as well watered as most parts of *Spain*, having in it besides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Cinia*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valentia*; the Rivers of, 1 *Lardera*, 2 *Lobregat*, 3 *Segre*, 4 *Francolino*, 5 *Besors*, and 6 *Orbar.*

The name of *Catalonia* some derive from the *Castellani*, who formerly inhabited some part hereof: others will have it called *Catalonia* corruptly for *Gothalania*, from the mixture of the *Gothes* and *Alani*, successively the Masters of it; and some more improbably from one *Carthalot*, a Noble Man of this Countrie, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalauni*, an old *French* people of *Languedoc*, the adjoyning Province, from whom the fields called *Campi Catalaunici* neer unto *Tholouse* took denomination. But from what root soever they came, certain it is that they are generally a perverse and obstinate people, little observant of the pleasure or profit of their *naturall Princes*, but on the other side so Zealous in defence of their own *Privileges*, that they have created more trouble to their Kings under that pretence, than all the rest of the subjects of *Spain.* Of which we need no other instance than their late revolt unto the *French*, Anno 1638. which drew after it the loss of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the rest of the *Netherlands.*

Principall places in it are, 1 *Barcelone*, situate on the *Mediterranean*, neer the River *Lobregat*, accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the *Spanish* Souldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italy.* The Town adorned with large streets, handsome buildings, strong Walls, and a very pleasant situation: called *Barcino* by the ancient writers, in whose time it was a *Roman* Colonie, now honoured with a Bishops See, and the seat of the *Vice-Roy.* 2 *Tarragone*, seated also on the *Mediterranean*, East of the River *Francolino*: built, fortified, and peopled by the two *Scipios*, the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthagena* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*; afterwards made the *Metropolis* of *Tarraconensis*, hence denominated; stript of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two miles in compass, and containing not above 700 Families. Yet still it holdeth the reputation of an Archbishops See, contending with *Toledo* for the Primacie of all *Spain* (as *Braga* also doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*) the controversie being undecided to this very day. 3 *Ampurias*, on the same sea also, once of great esteem, founded by the *Massilians*, a *Roman* Colonie, and a well traded Town, as the name doth signifie, this being the *Emporia* spoken

Majorca. ſpoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolomie*; now not obſerveable for any thing but a ſafe Road for Ships. 4 *Blanos*, 5 *Palamos*, and 6 *Roſas*, all Ports on the ſame Sea, but ſubject unto divers Winds, and not very ſpacious. More in the Land are 7 *Girone*, a ſmall, but handſomely built, and a well traded Town, a Biſhops See, and the title of the eldeſt Sonne of *Aragon*, called Prince of *Girone*. Which title was firſt given to *Iohn* the eldeſt Sonne of King *Pedro* the fourth immediately upon his birth, Anno 1351. and hath ſince continued. 8 *Tortoſa*, on the River *Ebro*, in the moſt rich and pleaſant part of all the Country. A goodly Town, and of great importance; garriſoned by the *French*, ſince the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of *Spain*, and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whileſt it continueth in their power, or the poſſeſſion of their party. 9 *Vrgel*, a Earls honour, and a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10 *Momblane*, which heretofore gave the title of Duke to the ſecond Sonnes of the Kings of *Aragon*. Here is alſo on the Eaſt part where it joyneth with the land of *Ronſillon*, the Promontary called of old *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Cenx*: and not far from *Barcelone* the Mountain called *Montſerrato*, on the ſides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchorets* cells; and having towards the ſummit of it a Chappell dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, much famed and reſorted to by *Pilgrims* from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image which is there enſhrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province were the *Caſtellani*, *Auxitani*, *Indigites*, *Coſetani*, with part of the *Ilercones* & *Iaccetani*; all of them part of *Tarraconenſis*. In the declining of the *Empire* ſeized on by the *Alani*, and they ſoon after vanquiſed if not diſpoſſeſſed by the power of the *Gothes*. Loſt to the *Moores* in the general ruine of the whole; from them recovered by the puiſſance of *Charles* the great; who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, Anno 801. gave it to one *Bernard* a *Frenchman*, with the title of Earl, who Governed the Country for that Emperor; as *Wifredus*, or *Godfredus* his ſucceſſor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus* Sonne to this *Godfrede*, by the gift of *Charles* the *Groſs*, was the firſt Proprietary; united unto *Aragon*, by the mariage of Earl *Raymond* with the Heir of that Kingdom.

The Earls of *Barcelone*.

A.Ch.
884. 1 *Godfredus*, ſurnamed the *Hairie*, Sonne of *Wifrede*, the *Provinciall* Governour for the Emperour *Ludovicus Pius*.
914. 2 *Miron*, Sonne of *Godfredus*.
933. 3 *Godfredus* II. Sonne of *Miron*, by ſome called *Seniofrid*.
971. 4 *Borellus*, Brother of *Miron*, and Vncle of *Godfred* the ſecond.
993. 5 *Raymond*, Sonne of *Borellus*.
1017. 6 *Berengarius*, ſurnamed *Borellus*, Sonne of *Raymond*.
1035. 7 *Raymond* II. Sonne of *Berengarius Borellus*.
1076. 8 *Raymond* III. Sonne of *Raymond* the ſecond.
1082. 9 *Raymond* IV. Sonne of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence* alſo, in right of *Doulce* his wife.
1131. 10 *Raymond* V. Sonne of *Raymond* the fourth, and *Doulce* Counteſs of *Provence*, maried *Petronilla* Daughter of *Raymir*, or *Raymond* the ſecond, King of *Aragon*, whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, Anno 1134. Uniting theſe Eſtates together, never ſince diſ-joyned.

The Arms hereof were four Pallets *Gules*, in a field *Or*; now the Arms of *Aragon*. Which Arms were given to *Geofrie*, ſurnamed the *Hairie*, the firſt Earl hereof, by *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Emperor and King of *France*, to whoſe aid he came againſt the *Normans* with a Troop of horſe, and being bloody in the fight, deſired of the Emperour to give him ſome Coat of Arms, which he and his Poſterity might from thenceforth uſe. Who dipping his four fingers in the blood of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield (which was only of Plain *Gold*, without any Deviſe) ſaying, *This ſhall be your Arms hereafter.*

11 The Kingdom of *MAIORCA*.

THe Kingdom of *MAIORCA* contained the Ilands of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuiſa*, and *Frumentaria*, in the *Mediterranean*, the Land of *Ronſillon*, *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*, in the Continent of *Spain*, and the Earldom of *Montpelier* in *France*.

The Land of *ROVSILLON*, which is the firſt Member of this Kingdom, is ſituate betwixt two Branches of the *Pyrenees*; bounded on the South with the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, with *Catalogne*; on the North, with the ſaid *Pyrenees*; on the Eaſt, with *Languedoc* in *France*. Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Helna*, a Biſhops See on the River *Techo*. 2. *Collibre*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a ſafe and commodious Harbour; but formerly the great and famous Citie of *Illiberis*, ſo often mentioned in the wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Perpignan* (in *Latine*, *Perpinianum*) built in the yeer 1068. by *Guinard* Earl of *Rouſilion*, in a pleaſant Plain on the River *Thelis*: now a rich Town, well traded, and as ſtrongly fortified againſt the *French*, to whoſe fury in the time of war it is ſtill expoſed. Beſieged by *Henry*, Sonne to King *Francis* the firſt, with a puiſſant Army, Anno 1542 Partly to be revenged

ged upon *Charles* the fifth, who had before attempted *Marſeilles* in *Provence*, partly to get into his hands a chief door of *Spain*, by which he might at all times enter into that Kingdom. But he found here ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, that he was fain to raiſe his ſiege, with as little honour, as *Charles* had gotten by the Expedition which he made into *Provence*. 4. *Salſus* (the *Salſulæ* of *Strabo*) a ſtrong place on the Frontire of *Languedock*; fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks againſt the *French*. 5. *Rouſillon*, a Caſtle of more honour and antiquity, than ſtrength or beauty, by *Plinie*, and other Antients, called *Ruſcino*, the Countrey *Comitatus Ruſcinonenſis*, now *Rouſillon*, and the Land of *Rouſillon*; accounted heretofore a part of *Gaule Narbonenſis*, and added unto *Spain* in the time of the *Gothes*. On the death of *Gerard*, the laſt *Proprietarie* Earl, it was added to the Crown of *Aragon* by *Alfonſo* the 2d; by *Iames* the firſt laid to the Kingdom of *Majorca*; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the 4th; after that ſold (or rather pawned) by King *Iohn* the 2d to *Lewis* the 11th of *France* for the ſumme of 300000 Crowns, Anno 1462. and freely returned back again to *Ferdinand* the ſecond (after called the *Catholick*) by King *Charles* the 8th, Anno 1493, conditioned that he ſhould not hinder him in the Conqueſt of *Naples*. Ioyning hereto as part of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, was the Countrey of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdague*, the habitation of the *Cerretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of *Aragon*. The chief Town of thoſe *Cerretani*, called *Iulia Libyca*; the principall now being hath the name of *Cardona* (or *Sardona*, as the *Spaniards* commonly pronounce it) retaining ſome reſemblance to the name of the Nation. The Countrey lying in the Vallies of the *Pyrenees*, and conſequently in a corner ſomewhat out of the way, was thought fit to be added to the Land of *Rouſillon* (for the better endowment of this Kingdom) the fortunes of which it hath ſince followed, as appendant on it; pawned when that was unto the *French*, and with that reſtored. *Majorca*,

2. The Earldom of *MONTPELIER* is ſituate in the Province of *Languedoc*, adjoyning to the Land of *Rouſillon*; ſo called from *Montpelier*, the chief Citie: for the deſcription whereof, we muſt ſend the Reader back to *France*, having ſpoken of it there already. All I ſhall here repeat is this, that *Mary* the Daughter of *William* the laſt Earl thereof, brought it in mariage to her Husband *Peter* the 2d, King of *Aragon*: and that it was ſold to *Philip de Valoys* the *French* King, by *Iames* King of *Majorca*, of that name the third.

3 The Iland of *MAIORCA* is ſituate in the *Mediterranean*, juſt over againſt *Valentia*; from which diſtant about 60 miles, about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth ſomewhat under; the number of Inhabitants reckoned at 30000. The Land on all ſides towards the Sea is ſomewhat mountainous, and barren withall: the In-lands more champian and fruitfull, yeelding ſufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the uſe of its people. The whole Iland is divided into 30 parts, (as ſo many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which are reckoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtfull Creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and thoſe not hurtfull but by accident; of which more anon.

Places of chief note in the former times were. 1. *Palma*, and 2. *Pallentia*, which had the rights of *Roman* Citizens. 3. *Civium*, and 4. *Cunici*, which enjoyed the rights of the *Latines*; and 5. *Bochri* (or *Bochorum*) which was in the condition of a Town *confederate*; beſides divers others not ſo priviledged. Of theſe none left at this day but *Palma* only, vulgarly called *Majorca*, by the name of the Iland, a Biſhops See, the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for theſe Iſles, and an *Vniverſity*, the birth-place of *Raymundus Lullius*, a man of great wit, and profound judgement, the Author of ſome Books in the Art of *Chymiſtrie*; whoſe Works are read and ſtudied in that Vniverſitie, as *Ariſtotles* are in others. This is the *greater* of the two Ilands called *Baleares*, whence it had the name. Ajoyning hereunto two others of inferiour note, called *Dragonera*, and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4 *MINORCA*, ſo called becauſe it is the *leſſer* of the *Baleares*, is ſituate Eaſt-ward of *Majorca*, from which diſtant neer 100 miles; of about 60 miles in length, and 150 miles in Circuit. More fruitfull than the other, though leſs in quantitie; of a rich ſoyl, which breedeth them great herds of Cattell, and Mules of the largeſt ſize of any in *Spain*: accommodated alſo with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Farneſſus*. Other conſiderable places are, 1 *Minorca*, now ſo called, by the name of the Iland, but antiently known by the name of *Mago*, ſituate in the Eaſt part thereof, firſt Founded by the *Carthaginians* as the name imports. And ſo was alſo 2 *Iamno*, ſeated in the Weſt (*Duo parva Oppida quibus à* Pœnis *indita nomina*, ſaith *Severus*, Biſhop of theſe Iſles, An. 420, or thereabouts.) It is now called *Citadella*, or the little Citie. Here was alſo in the mid-land a third Town called *Saniſera* by *Plinie*, of which I finde now no tract remaining.

5 *EBVSA*, now called *YVICA*, lyeth between the main Land and the *Baleares*, oppoſite to the Promontorie of *Ferraria* in the Realm of *Valentia*, from which diſtant about 50 miles, and neer an hundred miles in compaſs. The Countrey plentifull of Corn, and all manner of Fruits; breeding no hurtful Creature, except Conies onely; which many times deſtroy their Harveſt. The chief Town here, is *Yvica*, (of old called *Ebuſus*) the Inhabitants of which make yearly great ſtore of Salt, wherewith they doe not only furniſh *Spain*, but ſome parts of *Italie*.

6 *FRVMENTERA*, ſo called from the plenty of Corn, is diſtant ten miles from *Yvica*, and about 60 miles from the main Land of *Spain*; in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited by

reaſon

Majorca. reason of the multitude of Serpents, for which cause called by the *Grecians Ophiusa*, and *Colubraria* by the *Latines*. Both Ilands antiently known by the name of *Pityusa*, and *Pityodes*, from the abundance of *Pines* there growing.

About these Ilands are three others of little worth, called 1. *Vedra*, 2 *Conirello*, and 3 *Dragonego*; 4 Another called *Moncolibre*, betwixt *Majorca*, and the influx of the River *Iberus*. 5 *Alfaques*, lying in the very mouth of that River; and 6 *Scombraria*, (antiently called the Iland of *Hercules*) over against *Carthagena*; so named from a kind of *Tunny* (in *Latine* named *Scombri*;) of which great shoales use to lye about it. All these, together with the *Baleares*, make up the Province of the Ilands the 7th Province of *Spain*.

But the chief glory of these Ilands were the *BALEARES*, so called (as the generall conceit is, from the *Greek* word βαλλειν, which signifieth to throw; because the people were so expert in *throwing* their Slings or Darts; but as *Bochartus* will needs have it (to the same effect) from *Bual-jare*, a *Punick* or *Phœnician* word, signifying a *master in the Art of slinging*. An Art so naturall and innative to them, that Parents used to give no meat unto their Children, after some fit age, but what they could hit down with their *Slings* from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity at this weapon there is much mention made in the Antient Writers, as well Historians as Poets. And from this *exercise* they had the name also of *Insulæ Gymnesiæ*; or else because the people of it used to goe *naked* to the wars (and possibly enough in those first Ages of the World, and at other times also) from the *Greek* word γυμνος, the same with *Nudus* in the *Latine*. Nor were they good at *Slinging* only, but at *Swiming* too, an exercise not ordinarily performed but by *naked* People; at which the very women are at this day expert; *Biddulph* reporting, in the relation of his travels, that being becalmed about these Ilands, there came a Woman swiming from one of them with a Basket of fruit to sell. But that which made them most talked of in former times, was the harm done them by their Conies, which here and in the neighbouring Continent increased so wonderfully, that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in *Spain* undermined by them; and *Strabo*, that they did not only destroy their Plants, but rooted up many of their trees. Insomuch that the Inhabitants did request the *Romans* to give them some new seats to inhabit in; ἐκβάλλειδ γὰρ αὐτὸ ὑπὸ τῶν ζώων τούτων, being ejected by those creatures out of their possessions, whose multitudes they were not able to resist. And when that could not be obtained, they moved *Augustus Cæsar* (as *Plinie* telleth us) for some aid against them; who insteed of *Souldiers* sent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers were diminished in a little time.

These Islands were first planted by the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities; one of which in the Isle of *Ebusus* had the name of *Phœnissa*. From them also they derived the Art of Slinging. Made subject to the *Carthaginians*, under the Conduct of *Hanno* and *Himilco*, Anno M. 5500. or thereabouts, at what time the *Decemviri* Governed *Rome*. Under that State they remained subject till the end of the second *Punick* war: when *Carthage* was no longer able to protect them, made a State of themselves, till conquered by *Metellus*, the Brother of him who subdued *Creet*. The people were much given to Piracy, and seeing the *Roman* Navy sayling by their Coasts, supposed them to be Merchant Men, assaulted them, and at first prevailed. But the *Romans* getting betwixt them and the shore discovered from whence they came, and forced them to an unwilling submission; for which *Metellus* was rewarded with the honour of a *Triumph*. Being once made a Province of *Spain*, they alwaies after that followed the fortunes thereof. In the distraction of the Empire of the *Moores* in *Spain*, they were united into one Kingdom, by the name of the Kingdom of *Majorca*; won from the *Moores* by *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, with the help of the *Genoese*, 1102. By the *Genoese* delivered to the *Moores* again, and from them reconquered by *Iames* King of *Aragon*, descended from that *Raymond*, Anno 1208.

Of these Estates consisted the Kingdom of *Majorca*, erected by King *Iames* the first, immediatly on his recovery of these Ilands from the hands of the *Moores*; and by him given unto *Iames* his second Sonne: who fearing the displeasure of his Brother King *Peter* the 3d, submitted his new Kingdom to the *Vassalage* of the Crown of *Aragon*, yet could not this so satisfie the ambition or jealousies of those mightier Kings, as to preserve his Successors in possession of it. By *Pedro* the 4th extorted from King *Iames*, the fourth and last King thereof, under colour of denying his accustomed *Homage*. So ended

The Kings of *Majorca*, of the House of *Aragon*.

1. *Iames* the first, Sonne to *Iames* the first, King of *Aragon*.
2. *Iames* II. Sonne of *Iames* the first.
3. *Ferainand*, Brother of *James* the 2d.
4. *Iames* III. Sonne of *Ferdinand*, over-come and slain in battel by *Pedro* the 4th King of *Aragon*. *Majorca* and other Members of this little Kingdom, remaining ever since united unto that Crown, except *Montpelier*, sold by this *Iames* unto the *French*.

13 ARAGON. Aragon.

ARAGON, hath on the East, the Land of *Rousillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the West, the two *Castiles*; on the North, *Navarre*; on the South, and South-East, *Catalonia*, and some part of *Valentia*: so called from the River *Aragon*, by which it is divided from the Realm of *Navarre*; where the first Princes of this house, having won certain Towns from the hands of the Infidels, commanded as Lords *Marchers* under the Kings of that Realm, and called themselves for that reason the Earls of *Aragon*, spreading the name as they enlarged their bounds by ensuing conquests.

The Countrie lieth on both sides of the River *Iberus*, and hath also severall Riverets, as *Gallego*, *Senga*, *Xalon*, and *Cagedo*, running like so many veines thorough the bodie of it, yet it is generally so destitute of waters, and so ill-inhabited, especially towards the Mountains of the *Pyrenees*; that one may travell many dayes, and find neither Town, nor house, nor people. But where the Rivers have their course the Case is different; the Valleys yeelding plenty both of Corn and Fruits, especially about *Calataiub*, where the air is good, and the soyl fruitfull.

The antient Inhabitants were the *Celtiberi*, who took up a great part of *Tarraconensis*; divided into lesser Tribes, not here considerable. These sprung originally from the *Celtæ*, (as before is said) the greatest and most potent Nation of all *Gallia*: who being too populous for their Countrey, or willing to employ themselves upon new Adventures, passed the *Pyrenees*, and mingled themselves with the *Iberi*. From thence the name of *Celtiberi*, and *Celtiberia*, according unto this of *Lucan*.

——————— *profugique à gente vetusta*
Gallorum, Celtæ *miscentes nomen* Iberi.

Who being chas'd from *Gaule*, their home, did frame,
Of *Celtæ* and *Iberi* mixt, one name.

Others of less consideration were the *Jaccetani*, and *Lacetani*, with parts of the *Edetani* and *Illergetes*.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1 *Jacca*, the chief Citie heretofore of the *Iaccetani*, seated amongst the *Pyrenees*, and for that cause chosen for the chief seat and residence of the first Kings of *Aragon*, continued there till the taking of *Saragossa* by *Alfonso* the first. 2 *Calataiub*, seated on *Xalon* in the best Countrey of *Aragon*; so called from *Aiub* a *Moorish* Prince, the first Founder of it. Not far from which upon an hill, stood the old Town *Bilbilis*, a *Municipium* of the *Romans*, and the birth-place of *Martiall*. 3 *Venasque*, amongst the *Pyrenees*. 4 *Balbastro*, on the *Senga*, formerly called *Burtua*, now a Bishops See. 5 *Lerida*, on the River *Segre*, as some say, but others place it on the *Senga*; which rising in the *Pyrenees*, divideth *Catalonia* from *Aragon*, and so passeth into *Iberus*. Now an Universitie, called formerly *Ilerda*, and famous for the Incounter happing nigh unto it betwixt *Herculeius* Treasurer or *Quæstor* to *Sertorius*, and *Manilius* Proconsul of *Gallia*: wherein *Manilius* was so discomfited, and his Army consisting of 3 Legions of Foot, and 1500 Horse so routed, that he almost alone was scarce able to recover this Citie, few of his souldiers surviving the overthow. 6 *Moson*, famous for entertaining the King of *Spain* every third year: At which time the people of *Aragon*, *Valence*, and *Catalogne*, present the King 600000 crowns, *viz.* 300000 for *Catalogne*, 200000 for *Aragon*, and 100000 for *Valentia*. And well may they thus doe, for at other times they sit *Rent-Free* as it were: only they acknowledge the King of *Spain* to be the head of their *Common-wealth*. This revenue is proportionably 200000 Crowns a year, all which, if not more, the King again expends, in maintaining his *Vice-Royes* in their severall Provinces. 7 *Huesca*, (called of old *Osca*) somewhat South of *Iaca*, an Universitie, a place long since dedicated to learning. For hither *Sertorius* caused all the Noblemens Sonnes of *Spain* to be brought, and provided them of School-masters for the *Greek* and *Latine* tongues, bearing their Parents in hand, that he did it onely to make them fit to undergoe charge in the Common-wealth; but indeed to have them as hostages for their Fathers Faith and Loyalty towards him. 8 *Saragossa*, on the River *Iberus*, called at first *Salduba*, by reason of the Saltpits there: but being afterwards re-edified by *Cæsar Augustus*, it had the name of *Cæsarea Augusta* (whence that of *Saragossa* hath its origination) by whom first made a Colonie of the *Romans*, and afterwards a *Municipium* or *Free-Burrough*; suffered to live according to the Lawes of the Countrey. Vnder the *Romans* it was one of the seven *Iuridicall Resorts* of *Tarraconensis*; under the *Moores* a peculiar Kingdom of it self; and now a Bishops See, and an Vniversity. Amongst the Kings of it, when it was a kingdom, two are chiefly famous; *viz.* 1 *Marsilius*, who joyned with the confederate *Moores* and *Christians* against *Charles* the Great, in the battell of *Rancevaux*. 2ly *Aigoland*, of whom there goeth a tale in Archbishop *Turpine*, that being by the said *Charles* perswaded to become a *Christian*, he came unto the Emperours Court very well accompanyed, according to the time apointed. Where finding many *Lazars* and poor People before the Gates, attending for their usuall Alms from the Emperours Table; he asked what and who they were, and was answered, that they were the poor Servants of God: upon which words he speedily returned again, Protesting that *he would never serve that God, who could keep his* Servants *no better*. Took from the *Moores* by *Alfonso* King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, An. 1118. it was made the seat Roy-

all

Aragon. all of the Kings of *Aragon*, removed hither from *Iacca*: and of late times hath been the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for the Kings of *Spain*, which together with the being an Arch-bishops See, and an Vniversity, have so enriched it, that it is one of the faireſt Cities in all *Spain*, for handsomneis of Streets, and sumptuousneis of Palaces, and publick Buildings, containing 17 Parish Churches, and fourteen Monasteries, besides divers Chappels, erected in most parts of it to the Virgin *Mary*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Tract, hath been shewn before; tossed from the *Carthaginians* unto the *Romans*; from them to the *Gothes*; and finally unto the *Moores*. Recovered from the *Moores* about the first beginning of the Kingdom of *Leon* and *Sobrarbre*; at which time one *Aznar*, a man of great puissance and action, possessed himself of some Lands on the Banks of the River *Aragon*, to be holden by him and his Successors of the Kings of *Sobrarbre* or *Navarre*, Anno 775, the Title of Earl being given unto him and them for their greater honour. The sixth of which from *Aznar* was *Fortunio Ximines*, whose Daughter *Vrraca* being maried to *Don Garcia Inigo* King of *Navarre*, Anno 867, conveied this Earldom to that Crown: of which it continued a Member till *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, erected it into a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Raymir* his naturail Sonne, Anno 1034. The whole succession I shall borrow from the *Spanish* Histories; first taking (as in other places) some short notes of the Princes most observable in the course of the Storie. Of which the principall were, 1 *Aznarius* the first Earl, his Estate then containing some few Towns on the River of *Aragon*: not much enlarged when made a Kingdom by *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, surnamed the *Great*, descended from *Fortune* the 2d of *Navarre*, and *Vrraca* the Sister and Heir of *Fortunius Ximenes*, the last Earl of *Aragon*. 2 *Raymir* the first King, base Sonne to *Sancho* the *Great*, advanced to this honour to the prejudice of *Garcia*, eldest Sonne of *Sancho*, for standing so generously in defence of *Donna Elvira*, the Wife of his Father, wrongfully and unnaturally accused of Adulterie, by the said *Garcia* her own Son, against whom he undertook to maintain her honour in a single Combat. 3 *Raymund*, Earl of *Barcelona*, who by mariage with *Petronilla* the Heir of *Aragon*, united *Catalonia* unto that kingdom. 4 *Peter* the 2d, who on a superstitious zeal first made his kingdom tributarie to the See of *Rome*, Anno 1214. But presently repenting of it, sided against the Pope with the *Albigenses*, slain in their cause by *Simon de Montfort*, and the rest of his Associates in that war. 5 *Iames* the first, who conquered the kingdoms of *Valentia*, and *Majorca*; and was the first that enlarged his Dominions upon the Seas; being shut up from making any further impression on the *Moores*, by the interjection of *Castile* betwixe him and them. 6 *Peter* the 3d, pretending a Title unto *Sicil*, in right of *Constantia* his Wife, the Daughter of *Manfred* King thereof, and by the last Will of *Corradine*, rightfull King both of that and *Naples*, extorted that Iland from the *French*, massacred by him at the fatall *Sicilian Vespers*. 7 *Iames* the 2d, by whom the Isle of *Sardinia* was added to the Crown of *Aragon*. 8 *Martin* the last of the *masculine* race of the House of *Barcelone*; to whom succeeded, 9 *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, Sonne of *Iohn* King of *Castile*, and *Leonora* the Daughter of *Peter* the 4th of *Aragon*. 10 *Alfonso* Sonne of *Ferdinand*, adopted by Queen *Ioan* the 2d, got the kingdom of *Naples*. Of *Ferdinand* the second, surnamed the *Catholick*, we shall speak more anon in the close of all.

The Earls of *Aragon*.

1 *Aznarius*, the first Earl, cotemporarie with *Garcia* the 2d King of *Navarre*, under whom he held.

775. 2 *Aznarius* II. Sonne of *Aznario* the first.
3 *Galindo*, Sonne of *Aznario* the 2d.
4 *Ximines Aznario*, Sonne of *Galindo*, slain in the battel of *Roncevall* against *Charles* the Great.

803 5 *Ximines Garcia*, Brother to *Galindo*.
6 *Fortunio Ximines*, Sonne of *Ximines Garcias*, the last of the male issue of *Aznarius*.
7 *Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon* in right from his Mother *Vrraca*, the Sister and Heir of *Fortunio Ximines*, the last Earl of the House of *Aznarius*.

901. 8 *Sancho*, surnamed *Abarca*, K. of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*.

920. 9 *Garcia*, Sonne of *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, &c.

969. 10 *Sancho* II. of *Aragon*, and III. of *Navarre*.

993. 11 *Garcias*, surnamed the *Trembler*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, Sonne to *Sancho* the 3d.

1000. 12 *Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon* in his own right, and of *Castile* in the right of *Elvira* his Wife, Monarch of all *Spain*, then in the hands of the *Christians*, (except the Kingdom of *Leon* only) erected the Earldom of *Aragon* into a Kingdom, and gave it for the reason before specified to his Sonne *Raymir*.

The

The Kings of *Aragon*.

1034. 1 *Raymir*. 42.
1076. 2 *Sancho*, Sonne of *Raymir*. 18.
1094. 3 *Pedro*. 14.
1108. 4 *Alfonſo*, Brother of *Pedro*. 26.
1134. 5 *Raymir* II. the Brother of *Alfonſo*.
1137. 6 *Petronilla*, Daughter of *Raymir* the 2d. *Raymund*, Earl of *Barcelone*.
1162. 7 *Alfonſo* II. Sonne of *Raymund* and *Petronilla*. 34.
1196. 8 *Pedro* II. Sonne of *Alfonſo*.
1213. 9 *Iames*, Sonne of *Pedro* the 2d. 43.
127 . 10 *Pedro* III. Sonne of *Iames*. 9.
1285. 11 *Alfonſo* III. Sonne of *Pedro* the the 3d. 6.
1291. 12 *Iames* II. Brother of *Alfonſo* the 3d. 36.
1328. 13 *Alfonſo* IV. Son of *Iames* the 2d 8.
1336. 14 *Pedro* IV. Sonne of *Alfonſo* the 4th. 51.
1387. 15 *Iohn*, Sonne of *Pedro* the 4th. 8.
1395. 16 *Martin*, the Brother of *Iohn*. 17.
1412. 17 *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, the Nephew of *Pedro* the 4th. 4.
1416. 18 *Alfonſo* V. 42.
1458. 19 *Iohn* II. Sonne of *Ferdinand*, and Brother of *Alfonſo*, King of *Navarre* alſo in right of *Blanch* his Wife. 20.
1478. 20 *Ferdinand* II. of that name of *Aragon*, Sonne of *Iohn* the 2d, King of *Aragon* and *Navarre* by a ſecond Wife; and the V. of that name of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, which kingdoms he obtained by the mariage of *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth*, Siſter and Heir of *Henry* the 4th, uniting thereby the great Eſtates of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, and all Appendixes of either. In which regard he may well challenge the firſt place in the Catalogue of the *Monarchs* of *Spain*, to be preſented in due ſeaſon.

In the mean time to draw to a concluſion of the Affairs and Eſtate of *Aragon*, we are to underſtand, that of all the kingdoms which belong to the *Spaniard*, it is the moſt privileged, and free from the abſolute command of the Kings of *Spain*, having in it ſuch a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereof to be well-nigh *titular*, of little more autority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the firſt erecting of this Eſtate, the better to incourage the people to defend themſelves againſt the *Moores*, they had many *Privileges* indulged them; and amongſt others the creating of a *Iuſtitiar* of *popular Magiſtrate*, which like the *Ephori* of *Sparta*, had in ſome caſes ſuperioritie over their Kings, reverſing their judgements, cancelling their Grants, and ſometimes cenſuring their Proceedings. And though King *Philip* the 2d in the buſines of *Antonio de Perez* had made a Conqueſt of that kingdom, and annulled their *Privileges*; yet after of his own meer goodneſs he reſtored them (in part) again, as they continue at this day.

Chief *Orders* of *Knight-hood* in this kingdom are, 1 Of *S. Saviour*, inſtituted by *Alfonſo* the firſt, Anno 1118. to animate the Members of it againſt the *Moores*. Of the habit and cuſtoms of this Order I have met with nothing.

2 Of *Monteſa*, inſtituted by *Iames* the firſt King of *Aragon*, Anno 1270, or thereabouts; endowed with all the Lands of the *Templars*, (before diſſolved) lying in *Valentia*, together with the Town and Caſtle of *Monteſa*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the name. Subject at firſt unto the Maſter of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Benedict* the 13th, they quitted themſelves of that ſubjection, and in ſign thereof changed the Habit of *Calatrava* which before they uſed, to a *Red Croſs* upon their Breſts; now the badge of the Order.

The Arms of *Aragon* ſince poſſeſſed by the Earls of *Barcelone*, are *Or*, four Pallets *Gules*: before which they were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*.

THE MONARCHIE OF SPAIN.

THus having ſpoke of *Spain*, and the Eſtate thereof, when broken and divided into many kingdoms; let us next look upon it as united into one main body: effected for the moſt part by *Ferdinand* the laſt King of *Aragon*, before mentioned. Before which time *Spain* being parcelled into many kingdoms was little famous, and leſs feared, the Kings thereof as the Author of the *Politick Diſpute*, &c. hath well obſerved, being only *Kings of Figs and Orenges*. Their whole puiſſance was then turned againſt one another; and ſmall Achievements had they out of that Continent, except thoſe of the Houſe of *Aragon* upon *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*. *Thuanus*, a diligent Writer of the Hiſtorie of his own times, (if in ſome things he favour not more of the *Partie*, than the *Hiſtorian*) telleth us, that before this Kings Reign, the name and glory of the *Spaniards* was like their Countrey, hemmed in by the Seas on ſome ſides, and the Hils on the other: *Potiuſq; patuiſſe exteris invadentibus, quam quicquam memorabile extra ſuos fines geſſiſſe*. Tis true, that *Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, aſſumed unto himſelf the Title of King of *Spain*, and that *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Caſtile*, and the ſixt of *Leon*, cauſed himſelf to be

crowned

crowned Emperour of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*; Titles ambitiously affected upon no good ground, and such as ended with their Persons. But this Prince worthily named the *Great*, seized on the Kingdom of *Navarre*, conquered *Granada* from the *Moores*, subdued the Kingdom of *Naples*, united *Aragon* to *Castile*, banished 124000 Families of the *Jewes*, began by the Conduct of *Columbus*, the discoverie of the *Western Indies*: and finally, by marying his Daughter *Ioan* to *Philip*, Sonne of the Emperour *Maximilian*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the greatest part of the *Netherlands*, laid the Foundation of the present *Austrian* greatness. Continued since by so many intermariages betwixt the *Spanish* and *Imperiall* Branches of that potent Family, that *Philip* the second might have called the Archduke *Albertus*, Brother, Cousin, Nephew, and Sonne. A strange Medley of Relations. Thus by the puissance of this Prince, the *Spaniards* became first considerable in the eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the neighbouring Nations. *Nomen* Hispanicum *obscurum antea et Vicinis pene incognitum*, (saith the same *Thuanus*) *tum primùm emersit, tractuq; temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formidolosum ex eo, & terribile toti terrarum Orbi esse cœperit.* And he saith true, with reference to the *French* and *Italian* Nations, to whom the *Spaniards* have administred no small matter of fear and terrour: though unto others they appear no such dreadfull *Bugg-Bears*. But sure it is, and we may warrantably speak it without any such impressions of fear and terror, that this Kingdom since that time is wonderfully both enlarged and strengthned: strongly compacted in it self with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over all the parts of the World; his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the rising and setting of the Sun; which before the *Spaniard* no Monarch could ever say. A greater change than any man can possibly imagine to have been effected in so short a time, as was between the first yeer of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, to the last yeer of *Charles* the fift.

Concerning the title of the *most Catholick King*, re-attributed to this *Ferdinand*, I find that *Alfonso* the first of *Oviedo* was so named for his *sanctity*: with whom it died, and was revived in *Alfonso the Great*, the twelfth King of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, by the grant of *Pope Iohn* the 8th. After it lay dead till the dayes of this Prince, who re-obtained this title from Pope *Alexander* the sixt: either because he compelled the *Moores* to be baptized, banished the *Iewes*, and in part converted the *Americans* unto *Christianity*; or because, having united *Castile* to his Dominions, surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*, and subdued that of *Granada*; he was in a manner the *Catholique*, or generall King of all *Spain*. The last reason seemeth to sway most in the restauration of this attribute; in that when it was granted or confirmed on *Ferdinand* by Pope *Alexander* the sixt; the King of *Portugal* exceedingly stomached at it; *quando* Ferdinandus *imperio* universam Hispaniam (saith *Mariana*) *non obtineret, ejus tum non exigua parte penes* Reges *alios*. It seems *Emanuel* could not think himself a King of *Portugal*, if the title of the *Catholick* King did belong to *Ferdinand*. Wherein he was of the same mind as was *Gregory* the *Great*, who when *Iohn* of *Constantinople* had assumed to himself the title of the *Oecumenicall* or *Catholique* Bishop, advised all Bishops of the World to oppose that *arrogancie*: and that upon the self-same reason, *Nam si ille est* Catholicus, *vos non estis Episcopi*, for if *Iohn* were the *Catholick* Bishop, they were none at all. But upon what consideration soever it was first re-granted, it hath been ever since assumed by his Posterity: to whose Crown as *hereditarie* and in common use, as the most *Christian* King to *France*, the *Defendor of the Faith* to *England*.

And yet there was some further reason why the *Spaniard* might affect the title of *Catholick* King, his Empire being *Catholick* in regard of extent (though not of *Orthodoxie* of doctrines) as reaching not over all *Spain* onely, but over a very great part of the World besides. For in right of the Crown of *Castile* he possesseth the Towns of *Mellila* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Masalquivir*, the Rock of *Velez*, and the *Canarie* Ilands in *Africk*; the Continent and Ilands of all *America* except *Brasil*, and some plantations in the North, of the *English*, *Hollanders*, and a few poor *French*. In the rights of the Kingdom of *Aragon*, he enjoyeth the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Sardinia*, with many Ilands interspersed in the *Mediterranean*; and in right of the house of *Burgundie*, the Counties of *Burgundie* and *Charolois*, the greatest part of *Belgium*, with a title unto all the rest: besides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon* and *Plombino*, and many other peeces of importance in *Italie*, held by investiture from the Empire. To which if those Estates be added which accrewed to *Philip* the second by the Crown of *Portugal*, we have the Towns of *Ceuta*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbarie*, the Fortresses of *Arguen* and S. *George* in *Guinea*, the Ilands of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Cape Verd*, S. *Thomas*, *Del Principe* on this side of the *Cape*, and of *Mesambique* on the other: in *Asia* all the Sea-coast almost from the Gulf of *Persia* unto *China*, and many strong holds in the *Moluccoes*, *Bantan*, *Zeilan*, and other Ilands; and finally in *America* the large Country of *Brasil*, extending in length 1500 miles. An Empire of extent enough to appropriate to these Monarchs the stile of *Catholick*.

The

The Monarchs of *Spain*.

A. Ch.

1478. 1 *Ferdinand*, K. of *Aragon*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, *Valentia*, Earl of *Catalogne*, surpriſed *Navarre*, and conquered the Realm of *Naples*.
1478. 1 *Iſabel*, Q. of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Gallicia*, *Toledo*, *Murcia*, Lady of *Biſcay*, conquered *Granada*, and diſcovered *America*.

1504. 2 *Joane*, Princeſs of *Caſtile*, *Granada*, *Leon*, &c. and of *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Sicily*, &c.
1504. 2 *Philip*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Lord of *Belgium*.

1516. 3 *Charles*, King of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, *Naples*, &c. Archduke of *Auſtria*, Duke of *Millain*, *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, &c. Earl of *Catalogne*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, &c, Lord of *Biſcay*, *Friezland*, *Utreicht*, &c. and Emperour of the *Germans*. He added the Realms of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Dukedoms of *Gelderland* and *Millain*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Signeuries of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſell*, and *Groning*, unto his Eſtates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puiſſance, that had not *Francis* the firſt in time oppoſed him, he had even ſwallowed all *Europe*. He was alſo for a time of great ſtrength and reputation in *Tunis* and other parts of *Africa*, diſpoſing Kingdomes at his pleaſure: but the Turk broke his power there, and being hunted alſo out of *Germany*, he reſigned all his kingdoms, and died private. 42.

1558. 4 *Philip* II. of more ambition, but leſs proſperity than his Father; fortunate onely in his attempt on the kingdom of *Portugal*, but that ſufficiently balanced by his ill ſucceſſes in the *Netherlands*, and againſt the *Engliſh*. For the *Hollanders* and their Confederates drove him out of eight of his *Belgic* Provinces: the *Engliſh* overthrew his *Invincible Armada*, intercepted his *Plate-Fleets*, and by awing the Ocean had almoſt impoveriſhed him. And though he held for a time an hard hand upon *France*, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the *Leaguers*: yet upon caſting up his Accompts, he found that himſelf was the greateſt Loſer by that undertaking. So zealous in the cauſe of the *Romiſh* Church, that it was thought that his eldeſt Sonne *Charles* was put to death with his conſent in the *Inquiſition*-houſe, for ſeeming favourably inclined to the *Low-Country-Hereticks*, as the *Spaniards* called them. Theſe four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed.

1598. 5 *Philip* III. Finding his Eſtate almoſt deſtroyed by his Fathers long and chargeable Warres, firſt made peace with *England*, and then concluded a Truce for twelve years with the States of the *Netherlands*: which done, he totally baniſhed all the *Moores* out of *Spain*, and was a great ſtickler in the Warres of *Germany*.

1621. 6 *Philip* IV. Sonne of *Philip* the 3d, got into his power all the *Lower Palatinate*; but loſt the whole Realm of *Portugal*, and the Province of *Catalonia*, with many of his beſt Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Brabant*, and ſome Ports in *Italy*, not yet recovered to that Crown from the power of the *French*.

This Empire conſiſting of ſo many ſeverall Kingdoms united into one Body, may ſeem to be invincible. Yet had Queen *Elizabeth* followed the counſell of her men of Warre, ſhe might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 men, ſhe might have taken away his *Indies* from him: without whoſe gold, the *Low-Country* Army (which is his very beſt,) could not be paid, and by conſequence muſt needs have been diſſolved. Nay Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in the Epilogue of his moſt excellent *Hiſtory of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the charge of 200000 l, continued but for two years or three at the moſt, the *Spaniards* might not only have been perſwaded to live in peace, but that all their ſwelling and overflowing ſtreams, might be brought back to their naturall channels, and old banks. Their own proverb ſaith, the Lion is not ſo fierce as he is painted; yet the *Americans* tremble at his name, it's true: and it is well obſerved by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that *things which ſeem to be, and are not, are more feared farre off, than neer at hand.* Nor is this judgement built upon weak conjectures but ſuch as ſhew the power of *Spain* not to be ſo formidable as it's commonly ſuppoſed: which I find marſhalled to my hand in this manner following. 1 The *diſjointedneſs* of his Realms and other Eſtates, ſevered by infinite diſtances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2 The *ſlowneſs of his Preparations* in *offenſive* or *defenſive* Wars, his Forces of neceſſity being long a gathering in places ſo remote from the *Royall* Seat; and being gathered, no leſs ſubject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for action. 3 The danger and uncertaintie which the moſt part of his *Forinſique Revenues* are ſubject to, many times intercepted by *Pirates* and open Enemies; ſometimes ſo long delayed by croſs Winds and Seas, that they come too late to ſerve the turn. 4 The *different tempers* and affections of a great part of his Subjects, not eaſily concurring in the ſame ends, or travelling the ſame way unto them. 5 The *diſcontentedneſs* of the *Aragonians*, *Portugueze*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular reaſons, unto the *Caſtilians*; apt to be wrought on by the *Miniſters* of neighbouring Princes; whom *jealouſies of State* keep watchfull upon all advantages, for the depreſſing of his power. 6 And laſt of all, the *want of people* of his own naturall Subjects, whom he may beſt relie on for the in-

creaſe and grandour of his Eſtates; exhauſted and diminiſhed by thoſe waies and means which have been touched upon before; without any politique or provident courſe to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greateſt and moſt ſenſible Error in the *Spaniſh* Government: therein directly contrary to the antient *Romans*. Who finding that nothing was more neceſſary for great and important enterprizes than multitudes of Men, employed all their ſtudies to increaſe their numbers by Mariages, Colonies, and ſuch helps, making their Conquered Enemies free *Denizens* of their Common-wealth; by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became ſo great (all being equally interreſſed in the preſervation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibals* judgement) by any forces but her own. But on the other ſide the *Spaniards* employ none in their Plantations but their own *native Subjects*, and ſo many of them alſo in all their enterprizes both by Sea and Land, that ſo many thouſands going forth every year, in the flower of their age, not one of ten returning home, and thoſe few which return, either lame or old, the countrey is not only deprived of the Men themſelves, but alſo of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be, that *John* the firſt of *Portugal*, who reigned before the ſeverall Voyages and Plantations of that people, was able to raiſe 40000 Men for the War of *Africk*: whereas *Emanuel*, who lived after thoſe undertakings, had much a do to raiſe 20000 foot and 3000 horſe on the ſame occaſion, and *Sebaſtian* after that found as great a difficulty to raiſe an Army of 12000.

As for the forces which the King of *Spain* is able to make out of all his Eſtates, they may be beſt ſeen by his preparations for the Conqueſt of *England*, *France*, and *Flanders*. In his deſign for *England*, Anno 1588. he had a Fleet conſiſting of 150 ſail of Ships, whereof 66 were great *Galleons*, 4 *Galleaſſes* of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the reſt ſmaller Veſſels: fraughted with 20000 Souldiers for land ſervice, 9000 Saylers, 800 Gunners, 400 Pioneers, 2650 peeces of Ordinance, not Reckoning into this accompt the Commanders and Voluntaries, of which laſt there were very great numbers, who went upon that ſervice for *Spoil*, *Merit*, or *Honour*. In the deſign of *Charles* the fift for the Conqueſt of *Provence*, he had no leſſe than 50000 in the field; and in that of *Philip* the ſecond for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his firſt ſetting forward out of *Italie*, conſiſting of 8800 *Spaniſh* foot, and 1200 horſe, all of them old experienced Souldiers, drawn out of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Dutchie of *Millain*, 3600 *German* foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Harcubuſiers on horſeback of the County of *Burgundy*, all old Souldiers alſo, beſides many Voluntiers of great ranck and quality, very well attended, and his old ſtanding Army in the *Belgick* Provinces, a ſtrength ſufficient to have Conquered a far greater Countrie.

Of ſtanding forces in this Countrie he maintaineth in theſe Realms of *Spain*, but three thouſand horſe, and in his Forts and Garriſons no more than 8000 Foot, his Garriſons being very few, and thoſe upon the Frontires only, and in Maritime Towns; his Galies being ſerved with Slaves out of *Turkie* and *Barbarie*. And yet he is able on occaſion to raiſe very great forces, partly becauſe the ordinary Subjects are ſo well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence: and partly in regard there is ſo great a number of *Fendataries* and Noblemen, who are by *Tenure* to ſerve perſonally at their own charges for defence of the Realm. And certainly it muſt be a conſiderable force which the Noblemen of *Spain* are able to raiſe, conſidering the greatneſs of their Revenue, and the number of Vaſſalls which live under them: it being ſuppoſed that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my authour lived) were able one with another to diſpend yearly from 50000 Ducats to a 100000, ſome going very much above that proportion; and that of 36 Marqueſſes and 50 Earls, the pooreſt had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent, and ſo aſcending unto 50 and 60000. The Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and others of the greater *Clergie*, being all endowed with fairer *Temporall* eſtates, than in moſt places of *Europe*, are alſo bound to ſerve (though not perſonally) on the like occaſions. And to theſe ſervices the Noblemen are for two reaſons more forwards than the other *Fendataries*. 1 Becauſe their honours deſcend not *de jure* from the Father to the Sonne, unleſs confirmed to the Sonne by the Kings acknowledgment and compellation: which makes them more obſervant of him than in *France* or *England*, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2 Becauſe out of the groſs body of theſe Noblemen, the King doth uſe to honour ſome with the title of *Grandees*, privileged to ſtand covered before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the higheſt honour which that State can yield, keeps thoſe great perſons in a readineſs to obey his pleaſure, in hope to come unto an honour of ſo high eſteem.

For the *Revenues* of this King, which ordinarily ariſe out of his Eſtates (taking *Portugal* into the accompt) they are computed at 11 millions of Crowns yearly, that is to ſay 4 from his *Dominions* in *Italie*, 2 from *Portugal* and the *Appertinents* thereof, 3 from the *Weſt-Indies*, and the other 2 remaining from his Kingdoms in *Spain*. Beſides this he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Maſterſhips of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, not without good Policie and reaſon of State: the Maſters (or *Commendadors* as they call them) of thoſe ſeverall Orders drawing after them ſuch troopes of the Nobility, Gentry, and other dependants, that their power began to be ſuſpected by the Kings themſelves. By which addition there accreweth to the Crown (beſides the opportunity of preferring ſervants of the greateſt merit) above 150000 l. of yearly Rents. As for his Caſualties and extraordinary waies of raiſing money, they are very great: reckoned by the Author of the *Generall Hiſtory of*

Spain

Spain to amount (according to divers opinions) to 14. 18. and 23 millions of Crowns. For making up which ſum he puts in the *Firſt Fruits*, and ſome part of the *Tenthes* of Rectories, and other Church preferments, amounting to 3 millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Diſpute*, &c. affirmeth the *Pardons* ſent to the *Indies*, given him by the Pope, to be worth half a million of pounds yearly. Adde hereunto the ſall and diſpoſall of all *Offices*, which make up a good round ſum; and the free Gifts and Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good *Revenue*. For the Kingdom of *Naples* preſents him every third year with a million & 20000 Crowns; and *Caſtile* only at one time granted a Contribution of four millions to be paid in four years: his Subjects generally being ſo well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reaſon of them which they are not ready to grant: the King of *Spain* being called in that regard by the Emperor *Maximilian*, the *King of Men*. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in treaſure, his expences being very great. Firſt, In keeping Forts and Garriſons in many parts of his Eſtates againſt the revolt of the Natives; Secondly, Maintaining ſo many Frontire places, againſt forein Invaſions; Thirdly, In the continuall pay of an *Armada* for Conducting his *Plate-Fleets* from *America*; And laſt of all the many and unprofitable Wars of King *Philip* the ſecond, ſo plunged the Crown in the Gulfes of Bankers and Money-Changers, that much of the *Revennes* of it ſtand ingaged for payment to this very day.

There are in *Spain*
Arch-Biſhops 11. Biſhops 52.
Vniverſities 18.
i. e.

1 *Seville*,	7 *Salamanca*,	13 *Valentia*,
2 *Granada*,	8 *Alcala de Henares*,	14 *Lerida*,
3 *S. Iago*,	9 *Signenca*,	15 *Hueſca*,
4 *Toledo*,	10 *Ebora*,	16 *Saragoſſa*,
5 *Valladolit*,	11 *Lisbon*,	17 *Tudela*,
6 *Majorca*,	12 *Conimbre*,	18 *Oſſuna*.

And ſo much for *Spain*.

OF THE OCEAN AND ISLES OF *BRITAIN*:

BEfore we can arive in *Britain*, the laſt Weſtern *Dioceſe*, we muſt croſs the OCEAN, that *ingens* and *infinitum pelagus*, as *Mela* calleth it; in compariſon of which, the Seas before-mentioned are but as *Ponds* or *Gullets*: a Sea in former times known more by fame than tryall, and rather wondred at on the ſhore ſide, than any more remote place of it. The *Romans* ventured not on it with their Veſſels, unleſs in the paſſage from *France* to *Britain*: and much famed is *Alexander* for his hazardous voyage on this unruly Sea, he having ſayled in all but 400 Furlongs from the ſhore. The name and pedegree take here both from the *Poëts* and *Etymologiſts*. The *Poëts* make *Oceanus* to be the Sonne of *Cœlum* and *Veſta*, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the father of all things, as, *Oceanumq; patrem rerum*, in *Virgil*, becauſe moiſture was neceſſarily required to the conſtitution of all bodies: and uſually painted him with a Buls head on his ſhoulders, (whence *Euripides* called him Ωκεανὸς Ταυρόκερως, *Oceanus Tauriceps*) from the *bellowing* and furie of the Winds; which from it come to the ſhore, and to which it is ſubject. As for the *Children* attributed unto him, they are doubtleſs nothing but the *clouds* and *vapours* hence ariſing. The name of ὠκεανὸς *Oceanus*, ſome derive from ὠκὺς, *celer*, becauſe of its *ſwiftneſs*; ſome from κέω, *fundo*, *divido*, becauſe it *cleaveth* and interlaceth the earth: and others make it ὠκεανὸς, *quaſi* ὠκυρανὸς παρὰ τὸ ἄκρως ῥεῖν, *à celeriter fluendo*, which agreeth in meaning with the firſt. Particular names it hath divers, according to the name of the ſhore by which it paſſeth, as *Cantabricus*, *Gallicus*, *Britannicus*, &c. The chief Iſles of it, appertaining to *Europe*, beſides thoſe called the *Azores* or *Iſles of Tercera*, which we have ſpoken of when we were in *Portugal*; thoſe of the *Aquitain* Ocean, deſcribed in our Hiſtorie of *France*; thoſe of the *Netherlands* and the *Northern* Seas, which are to be deſcribed hereafter in their proper places, are the *Britiſh* Ilands, by many of the moſt antient and approved Writers called ſimply *BRITAIN*, becauſe united all in that common notion; though afterwards diſtinguiſhed into the particular Appellations of *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, and the reſt. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt *Spain* and *Germany*; or rather, as the next *Dioceſe* of the Empire to *France* and *Spain*, under the *Prætorio Præfectus of Italy*, I am next to ſpeak.

OF *BRITAIN*:

BRITAIN, according to the largeſt latitude of that name and notion, comprehendeth all thoſe Ilands, both great and leſs, which lie in compaſs about *Albion*, or *Britain* properly ſo called: by *Ptolomie* called *Britanniæ*, in the plurall number. For ſpeaking of *France* he thus ſubjoyneth, *Ex adverſo hujus* Britannia *Inſula*, Albion *ipſi nomen fuit, cum* Britanniæ *omnes vocarentur*. i. e. Oppoſite hereunto lieth the Iland of *Britain*, which formerly by a more proper name was called *Albion*, the name of *Britain* comprehending all the Iles adjoyning. And in this *Latitude* and extent we now take the word, the whole dominion of theſe Ilands, diſtinguiſhed into ſeverall names, being united in the perſon and under the command of the King of *Great Britain*, that name including all the reſt, as appendants of it, with reference to this called the *Iſles* of *Britain*, or the *Britiſh Ilands*. Thus *Ariſtotle* in his Book *De Mundo* (if the Book be his) *Quo in mari duæ Inſulæ* Britannicæ *ſitæ ſunt, quarum maximæ* Albion *&* Ierna; i. e. In which Sea there are ſituate two *Britiſh* Ilands of great note and compaſs, *Albion* (or *Britain* properly ſo called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolomie* goeth to work more punctually, and he ſtates it thus. *Complectitur prima hæc* Europæ *tabula duas* Britannicas *inſulas, quas Dionyſius* Bretanides *vocat*, Hiberniam *nempe &* Albionem, *cum minoribus aliquot adjacentibus inſulis, ut ſunt* Orcades, Ebudæ, Thyle, Mona, *et reliquæ ſuis nominibus expreſſæ*: that is to ſay, This firſt Table of *Europe* comprehendeth the two Ilands of *Britain*, which *Dionyſius* calls the *Bretanides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with ſome leſſer Ilands joyning to it, as the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Angleſey*, (or *Man*) and others called by diſtinct names. By which we ſee, firſt that the generall name of *Britain* or the *Britiſh* Ilands, comprehendeth all thoſe which are ſituate in the *Britiſh* Ocean: and ſecondly, that the greateſt and moſt famous of them, more ſpecially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was antiently called *Albion*, by its proper name. And it was called *Albion*, as my Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Bergion*, the Sonne of *Neptune*, mentioned by *Aeſchilus*, *Dionyſius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Plinie*, and others; it being not improper that the greateſt Iland of the *Ocean* ſhould be denominated from a Sonne of the greateſt Sea-god: or from the old word Ἀλφὸν, ſignifying *White* amongſt

mongſt the *Greeks*, (from whence the *Latines* had their *Album*,) by reaſon of the white chalkie cliffs, ſeen by the Mariners a farre off as they ſailed thoſe Seas.

But to return again to *Britain* in the generall notion, and to the ſeverall Ilands which that name includeth, we may diſtinguiſh them into the *Greater* and the *Leſſer*; the *Greater* ſubdivided into 1 *Great Britain*, or *Britain* ſpecially ſo called, and 2 *Ireland*; the *Leſſer* into 1 the *Orcades*, 2 the *Hebrides*, 3 *Man*, 4 *Angleſey*, 5 The Ilands of the *Severn* Sea, 6 the *Sorlinges*, or Iſles of *Silly*, 7 *Wight*, 8 *Thanet*, 9 *Sunderland*, and 10 *Holy Iland*.

GREAT BRITAIN.

TO ſpeak much of *GREAT BRITAIN*, or *BRITAIN* ſpecially and properly ſo called, I hold ſomewhat ſuperfluous, it being our home, and we therefore no Strangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once ſaid of *Italie*, *De* Italia, *magis quia ordo exigit, quam quia monſtrari egeat, pauca dicentur, nota ſunt omnia*, ſo ſay I of *Britain*. It is ſo obvious to the eye of every Reader, that he needs not the ſpectacles of Letters. Yet ſomething muſt be ſaid, though for methods ſake, rather than neceſſity. Firſt then, we will begin with laying out the bounds thereof (as in other places) which are, on the Eaſt, the *German* Ocean, dividing it from *Belgium*, *Germanie*, and *Danemark*; on the Weſt, S. *Georges* Channel, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Vergivian* or Weſtern Ocean, of which the Antients knew no ſhore; on the North, with the *Hyperborean* or *Deucaledonian* Ocean, as *Ptolomie* calls it, extending out to *Iſeland*, *Freezeland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *Engliſh* Channel, which divides it from *France*.

The length hereof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 *Italian* mlles; the greateſt bredth from Eaſt to Weſt, meaſured in a right line no more than 250 of the ſame miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-coaſt, comes to 320 miles: the whole circumference accompted 1836 miles. The greateſt Iland in the World, except *Java*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madagaſcar*; and therefore by *Solinus* and ſome other Antients (to whom thoſe Ilands were not known) called the *other World*: by others of late times the *Ladie and Miſtreſs of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th *Climes*: ſo that the longeſt day at the *Lizard* point in *Cornwall* (being the moſt Southernly part hereof) containeth 16 hours and a quarter; at *Barwick*, which is the Border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 hours 3 quarters, and one hour more at *Straithby head*, in the North of *Scotland*: where ſome obſerve that there is ſcarce any night at all, in the ſummer *Solſtice*, but a darker Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, ſaying, *Et minima contentos nocte Britannos*: and the *Panegyriſt* in the time of *Conſtantine*, amongſt other commendations which he gives to *Britain*, ſaith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any ſcorching heats in Summer; and that which is moſt comfortable, *long dayes, and very lightſome nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyriſt* tell us onely of the temperateneſs of the Air, or the length of the dayes; but of the fruitfulneſs of the "ſoyl: affirming *Britain* to be bleſſed with all the commodities of Heaven and Earth; ſuch an a-"bundant plenty of Corn, as might ſuffice both for Bread and Wine; the woods thereof without "wild Beaſts, the Fields without noyſome Serpents, infinite numbers of milch-Beaſts, and Sheep "weighed down with their own Fleeces. Whereto adde that of *Alfred* of *Beverley*, a Poet of the middle times, ſaying thus of *Britain*.

Inſula prædives qua toto vix eget orbe,
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope.
Inſula prædives, cujus miretur et op'et
Delicias SOLOMON, Octavianus *opes*.

A wealthy Iland, which no help deſires,
Yet all the World ſupply from her requires:
Able to glut King *SOLOMON* with pleaſures,
And ſurfet great *Auguſtus* with her treaſures.

Proceed we next to the name of *Britain*, of which I find many *Etymologies*, ſome forced, ſome fabulous and fooliſh, and but few of weight. That which hath paſſed for currant in former times (when almoſt all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan* race) was that it took this name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Sonne of *Silvius*, who was the Grandchild of *Æneas*, and the 3d King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan* Blood. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his friends and followers, after a long voyage, and many wandrings, is ſaid to have fallen upon this Iland, to have conquered here a race of Giants; and having given unto it the name of *Britain*, to leave the Soveraignty thereof unto his poſterity, who quietly enjoyed the ſame till ſubdued by the *Romans*. This is the ſumme of the Tradition concerning *Brute*: Which though received in the darker times of ignorance, and too much credulity; in theſe more learned dayes hath been laid aſide, as falſe and fabulous. And it is proved that there was no ſuch man as *Brutus*, 1 From the newneſs of his Birth, *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, who lived in the reign of K. *Henry* the ſecond, being the firſt Author which makes mention of him: for which immediately queſtioned by *Newbrigenſis*, another Writer of that *Age*. 2ly, By the ſilence of all *Roman* Hiſtorians, in whom it had been an unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident ſo remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Sonne (eſpecially when they wanted matter to fill up the times) and the

England. erecting of a new *Trojan* Empire in ſo great an Iland: 3ly. By the Arguments which *Cæſar* uſeth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Galls*, as Speech, Lawes, Cuſtomes, Diſpoſition, Making, and the like. 4ly. And leſt it might be ſaid, that though the *Britans* in *Cæſars* time were of *Gallick* race, yet there had been a former and more antient people, who had their Originall from the *Trojans*: *Tacitus* putteth off that diſpute with an *Ignoramus*, *Qui mortales initio coluerint parum & compertum eſt*, ſaith that knowing writer. And 5ly. By the Teſtimony of all *Roman* Hiſtories, who tell us that *Cæſar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, and never under the command of one ſole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa Belli adminiſtrandi communi conſenſu commiſſa eſt* Caſſivellauno, as it is in *Cæſar*: *Dum ſinguli pugnabant, univerſi vincebantur*, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etymons* as unlikely, but of leſs authority: the name of *Britain* is moſt probably derived from *Brit*, which in the antient *Britiſh* ſignifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain*, ſignifying a Nation: agreeable unto the cuſtome of the antient *Britains*, who uſed to diſcolour and paint their bodies, that they might ſeem more terrible in the Eys of their enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted men; ſuch as the *Romans* called *Picts* in the times enſuing. Which I prefer before the *Etymologie* of *Bocartus*, a right learned man, but one that wreſteth all originations to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* language: by whom this Iland is called *Britaine* or *Bretannica*, from *Barat-anac*, ſignifying in that language a Land of *Tynne*, wherewith the Weſtern parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the Iſle of *Britain*, ſhall be obſerved in the deſcription of thoſe parts into which it now doth ſtand divided, that is to ſay, 1 *England*, 2 *Wales*, and 3 *Scotland*.

ENGLAND.

ENGLAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *German*; on the Weſt, with the *Iriſh*; on the South, with the *Britiſh* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*; by which parted from *Scotland*: Environed with turbulent Seas, guarded by inacceſſible Rocks; and where thoſe want, preſerved againſt all forein invaſions by ſtrong Forts, and a puiſſant Navy.

In former time the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edenburgh Fryth* on the Eaſt, and the *Fryth* of *Dunbriton* on the Weſt, (for ſo far not only the *Roman* Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervenient ſpace being ſhut up with a Wall of Turfes by *Lollius Vrbicus*, in the time of *Antoninus Pius*. But afterwards, the *Romans* being beaten back by the Barbarous people, the Province was contracted within narrower bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperor *Severus*, extending from *Carlile* to the River *Tine*, the tract whereof may eaſily be diſcerned to this very day. A Wall ſo made, that at every miles end there is ſaid to have been a Caſtle, between every Caſtle many Watch-Towers, and betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Braſs, conveying the leaſt noiſe unto one another without interruption: ſo that the news of any approaching enemy was quickly over all the Borders, and reſiſtance accordingly provided. In following times the ſtrong Towns of *Barwick* and *Carlile* have been the chief Barres by which we kept the backdoor ſhut: and as for other Forts we had ſcarce any on the Frontires, or Sea Coaſts of the Kingdom, though in the midland parts too many. Which being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occaſioned many to Rebell, and did create great trouble to the *Norman* Kings: till in the latter end of the reign of King *Stephen* 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and thoſe few which remained diſmantled and made unſerviceable. The Maritime parts were thought ſufficiently aſſured by thoſe Rocks and Cliffs, which compaſs the Iland in moſt parts: and hardly any Caſtle all along the ſhore except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French* as the Key of *England*. But in the year 1538. King *Henry* the eighth, conſidering how he had offended the Emperor *Charles* the fift, by his divorce from Queen *Catharine*, and incurred the diſpleaſure of the Pope by his falling off from that See; as alſo that the *French* King had not only maried his Sonne to a Neece of the Pope, but a Daughter to the King of *Scots*, thought fit to provide for his own ſafety, by building in all places where the ſhore was moſt plain and open, Caſtles, Platformes, and Blockhouſes, many of which in the long time of peace enſuing were much neglected, and in part ruined.

His Daughter Queen *Elizabeth* of happy memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom. For ſhe not only fortified *Portſmouth*, and placed in it a ſtrong Gariſon, but walled the Kingdom round with a moſt ſtately, royall, and invincible Navy: with which ſhe alwaies commanded the Seas, and vanquiſhed the mightieſt Monarch of *Europe*; whereas her predeceſſors in their Sea ſervice, for the moſt part, hired their men of Warre, from the *Hanſmen*, and *Geneſe*. Yet did neither of theſe erect any Caſtles in the inward part of the Realm: herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the head and the feet only; not the middle of Beaſts; or ſome Captain of a *Fort*, who plants all his Ordnances on the Walls, Bulwarks, and Out-works, leaving the reſt as by theſe ſufficiently guarded.

The whole Iland was firſt called *Albion*, as before is ſaid, either from the Gyant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards *France*. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which name being firſt found in *Athenæus*, amongſt the *Grecians*, and in *Lucretius* and *Cæſar* amongſt the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Plinie*, and all other antient writers, except *Ptolomie* onely, by whom called

called *Albion* as at first; continued till the time of *Egbert* the first *Saxon Monarch*, who called the Southern parts of the Iland *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it. *England.*

It is in length 320 miles, enjoying a soyl equally participating of ground fit for tillage and pasture: yet to pasture more than tillage are our people addicted, as a course of life not requiring so many helpers, which must be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn way-beaters: whereof Sir *Thomas Moore in his Utopia* complaineth, saying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only men, but whole houses and Towns. *Oves* (saith he) *quæ tam mites esse, tamq; exiguo solent ali; nunc tam edaces, et indomitæ esse cœperant, ut homines devorent ipsos, agros, domos, oppida vastent, ac depopulentur.* To prevent this mischief, there was a Statute made in the 4th yeer of *Henry* the 7th, against the converting of Arable Land into Pasture ground: by which course Husbandry was again revived, and the soyl made so abounding in Corn, that a dear year is seldome heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and seldome come to maturity; and are more used for the pleasantness of the shade, than for the hopes of wine. Most of her other plenties and Ornaments, are expressed in this old verse following.

Anglia, 1 *Mons*, 2 *Pons*, 3 *Fons*, 4 *Ecclesia*, 5 *Fœmina*, 6 *Lana*.

That is to say,

For 1 Mountains, 2 Bridges, 3 Rivers, 4 Churches fair,
5 Women, and 6 Wooll, *England* is past compare.

1 First for the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty heads, and giving a gallant prospect to the Lower Grounds; the principall are those of *Mendip* in *Somerset*, *Malvern* hils in *Worcestershire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamshire*, *Cotswold* in *Gloucestershire*, the *Peak* of *Darbyshire*, *York Wolds*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact description of which, would require more time than I can spend upon that Subject. Proceed we therefore to

2 The *Bridges*, which are in number 857. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rochester*, over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Bristoll*, over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London*, over *Thames*. This last standing upon 19 Arches of wonderfull strength and largeness; supporteth continuall ranges of buildings, seeming rather a street than a Bridge; and is not to be parallelled with any Bridge of *Europe*, though of late by some defacements made by fire, Anno 1632. the buildings are not so contiguous as they were before.

The *Rivers* of this Countrey are in number 325. The chief is *Thamisis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the latter beyond *Cyrencester* in *Glocestershire*, meet together about *Dorcester* in *Oxfordshire*: the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamisis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surrey*, *Kent*, and *Essex*; and so weddeth himself to the Kentish *Medway*, in the very jawes of the Ocean. This glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a day more than 60 miles: about whose banks are so many fair Townes, and Princely Palaces, that a *German* Poet thus truly spoke.

Tot campos, sylvas, tot regia tecta, tot hortos,
Artifici exculios dextra, tot vidimus arces;
Ut nunc Ausonio, Thamisis, *cum* Tibride *certet.*

We saw so many Woods and Princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and stately Towers:
So many gardens, dress'd with curious care,
That *Thames* with Royall *Tiber* may compare.

The second River of note, is, *Sabrina* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon* hill in *Montgomeryshire*, and his end about seven miles from *Bristoll*: washing in the mean space the wals of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester*, and *Gloucester*. 3 *Trent*, so called, for that 30 kind of Fishes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 lesser Rivers: who having his Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Isle. This *Humber* is not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a spring head of his own, but rather the mouth or *Æstuarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely, *Ouse*, *Darwent*, and especially *Ouse* and *Trent*. And as the *Danow*, having received into its Channell the Rivers *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiscus*, and divers others, changeth his name into *Ister*: So also the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the waters above named, changeth his name into this of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4 *Medway*, a *Kentish* River, famous for harbouring the Royall Navy. 5 *Tweed*, the North-East Bound of *England*, on whose Northern bank is seated the strong and impregnable Town of *Barwick*. 6 *Tine*, famous for *Newcastle* and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These, and the rest of Principall note are thus comprehended in one of M. *Draytons* Sonnets.

Our

England.

Our Flouds Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd,
And ſtately *Severn* for her ſhore is prais'd,
The Chriſtall *Trent* for Fords and Fiſh renown'd,
The *Avons* fame to *Albions* cliffes is rais'd,
Carlegion Cheſter vants her holy *Dee*,
York many Wonders of her *Ouſe* can tell,
The *Peak* her *Dove*, whoſe banks ſo fertile be,
And *Kent* will ſay her *Medway* doth excell.
Cotſwoll commends her *Iſis* to the *Tame*,
Our Northern borders boaſt of *Tweeds* fair floud;
Our Weſtern parts extoll their *Willies* Fame,
And the old *Lea* braggs of the *Daniſh* blood.

4 The *Churches*, before the generall ſuppreſſion of Abbies, and ſpoyling the Church ornaments, were moſt exquiſite, the chief remaining, are 1 the Church of S. *Paul* founded by *Ethelbert* K. of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple conſecrated to *Diana*: A Fabrick of the largeſt dimenſions of that kind of any in the Chriſtian World; For whereas the ſo much celebrated Temple of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople* hath but 260 foot in length, and 75 in bredth; this of S. *Paul* is 690 foot long, and 130 foot broad, the main body being 102 foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 foot more: Which Steeple being made with Timber, and covered with Lead was by the careleſſeneſs of the Sexton in the 5th yeer of the reigne of Q. *Elizabeth* conſumed with fire; which hapning in a thundring and tempeſtuous day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by lightning, and was ſo generally beleeved till honeſt Death: but not many years ſince to diſ-abuſe the world, he confeſt the truth of it; on which diſcovery the burning of St. *Paul's* Steeple by lightning was left out of our common Almanacks, where formerly it ſtood amongſt the ordinary *Epoches*, or accounts of time. A Church of ſuch a gallant proſpect, and ſo large dimenſions, that had not the late reparation of it been diſcontinued, it would have been the ſtatelieſt and moſt majeſticall Fabrick in the Chriſtian World. 2ly, the Collegiate Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, (wherein I have the honour to be a *Prabendary*) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombes whereof are the moſt ſumptuous, and the Chappell the moſt accurate piece of building in *Europe*. 3ly, the Cathedrall Church at *Lincoln*. 4ly, For a private Pariſh Church, that of *Radcliffe* in *Briſtoll*. 5ly, For a private Chappell, that of *Kings College* in *Cambridge*. 6ly, For the curious workmanſhip of the glaſs, that of *Chriſt-Church* in *Canterbury*. 7ly, For the exquiſite beauty of thoſe Fronts, thoſe of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8ly, For a pleaſant lightſome Church, the Abbey Church at *Bath*. 9ly, For an antient and reverend Fabrick, the Minſter of *York*. And 10ly, to comprehend the reſt in one, our *Lady-Church* in *Salliſbury*, of which take theſe Verſes.

Mira canam, ſoles quot continet annus in unâ,
Tam numeroſa, ferunt, ade, feneſtra micat.
Marmoreaſq; tenet fuſas tot ab arte columnas,
Comprenſas horas quot vagus annus habet.
Totq; patent portæ, quot menſibus annus abundat:
Res mira, at verâ res celebrata fide.

How many dayes in one whole yeer there be,
So many Windows in one Church we ſee.
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are hours throughout the fleeting yeer.
So many gates as Moons one yeer do view,
Strange tale to tell, yet not ſo ſtrange as true.

5 The Women generally are more handſome than in other places, ſufficiently endowed with naturall beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophiſtications. In an abſolute Woman, ſay the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch-Woman*, from the girdle downwards; of a *French-Woman*, from the girdle to the ſhoulders; over which muſt be placed an *Engliſh* face. As their beauties, ſo alſo are their Prerogatives the greateſt of any Nation: neither ſo ſervilely ſubmiſſive as the *French*, nor ſo jealouſly guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping ſo true a *decorum*, that as *England* is termed the Purgatorie of Servants, and the Hell of *Horſes*; ſo it is acknowledged the *Paradiſe* of *Women*. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if *there were a Bridge built over the Narrow Seas, all the Women of* Europe *would run into ENGLAND*. For here they have the upper hand in the ſtreets, the upper place at the Table, the thirds of their Husbands Eſtates, and there equall ſhare in all Lands, yea even ſuch as are holden in *Knights ſervice*: priviledges wherewith other Women are not acquainted. Of high eſteem in former times amongſt forrein Nations, for the modeſtie and gravitie of their converſation; but of late times ſo much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have loſt much of their antient honour and reputation amongſt knowing and more ſober men of forrein Countries, who before admired them.

6 The Wooll of *England*, is of exceeding fineneſs, eſpecially that of *Cotſwold*, in *Gloceſterſhire*; that

that of *Lemſter*, in *Herefordſhire*; and of the Iſle of *Wight*. Of this Wooll are made excellent broad-clothes, diſperſed all over the world, eſpecially *High Germany*, *Muſcovy*, *Turkie*, and *Perſia*, to the great benefit of the Realm: as well in return of ſo much money which is made of them, as in ſetting to work ſo many poor people, who from it receive ſuſtenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the 3d, *Engliſh* men had not the art, or neglected the uſe of making cloth: till whoſe time our Wooll was tranſported unwrought. And as his Succeſſors have laid Impoſitions on every cloth ſold out of the Realm; ſo his Predeceſſors had, as their occaſions required, ſome certain Cuſtomes granted on every ſack of Wooll. In the beginning of this *Edwards* Warres with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders*, being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and ayded him in his Warres againſt that King. And he for his part by the compoſition then made, was to give them 140000 l. ready money, to ayd them by Sea and Land, if need required, and to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart Towns of *Chriſtendome*, the *Staple* for his Woolls. Here the Staple continued 15 yeers, at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the King; and he having by experience ſeen what the benefit of theſe Staples were; removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the eaſe as well of his Subjects in bringing their Woolls unto the Ports, as of ſuch Forrein Merchants as came to buy; he placed his Staples at *Exceſter*, *Briſtoll*, *Wincheſter*, *Weſtminſter*, *Chicheſter*, *Canterbury*, *Norwich*, *Lincoln*, *York*, and *Newcaſtle*, for *England*; at *Caermarden* for *Walet*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork*, and *Tredah*, for *Ireland*. He further Enacted, that no *Engliſh*, *Iriſh*, or *Welch* men ſhould tranſport this Stapled commodity, no not by Licenſe (if any ſuch ſhould be granted) on pain of Confiſcation, and Impriſonment during the Kings pleaſure. Laſtly, he allured over hither divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of clothes, (who are now grown the beſt Cloth-workers in the World:) and to encourage men in that Art, it was by a Statute of the 27th of *Edward* the 3d, enacted to be Felony, to carry any Woolls unwrought. When *England* had ſome ſhort time enjoyed the benefit of theſe *Staples*, the King removed them to *Callice*, which he had Conquered, and deſired to make wealthy. From hence they were at ſeverall times and occaſions tranſlated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium*: and ſtill happy was that Town, in what Country ſoever, where the *Engliſh* kept a houſe for this Traffick; the confluence of all people thither to buy, infinitely inriching it. *Antwerp* in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *Engliſh* Merchants, till upon ſome diſcontents between King *Henry* the 7th, and *Maximilian*, Archduke, and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with ſolemn Proceſſion, Princely Triumph, ſumptuous Feaſts, rare Banquettings, and expreſſions of much Love, but more Ioy. And the giving of ſome *Cotſwold* Sheep by *Edward* the 4th, to *Henry* of *Caſtile*, and *John* of *Aragon*, Anno 1465. is counted one of the greateſt prejudices that ever hapned to this Kingdom, *England.*

The Wooll tranſported bringeth into the Kingdom no leſs than 1500000 l. and the Lead half the ſumme, ſo that *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that before the Warres of the Low-Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *Engliſh* bartered wares yeerly for 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next commodity to the *Wooll*, though not mentioned in the verſe fore-going, are the rich and inexhauſtible *Mines* of *Cole*, *Lead*, and *Tinne*: to ſay nothing of the *Mines* of *Iron*, as bringing more damage to the publick by the ſpoil of Woods, than profit to particular perſons in the increaſe of their Eſtates. The mines of *Cole* chiefly enrich *Newcaſtle* in *Northumberland*, and by that the great City of *London*, and many other good Towns beſides: which could not poſſibly ſubſiſt in this generall decay of *Woods*, and neglect of planting, but by this commoditie. The Mines of *Lead* are moſt conſiderable in the *Peak* of *Darbiſhire*; thoſe of *Tinne* in *Cornwall*, where they digge *Tinne* not much inferior to Silver in fineneſs. A commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in former times, the art of making it not being elſewhere known in *Europe*: till one of the Tinne-workers, flying out of *England* for a murder, paſſed into *Germany*, Anno 1240. and there diſcovered ſome Tinne Mines in *Miſnia*, not known before, and ſet on Foot that trade amongſt them, to the great prejudice (ſaith my Author) of the *Earls* of *Cornwall*, who had before the ſole *Monopolie* of that uſefull metall.

To theſe particulars being matters of profit and neceſſity, If I would add ſuch things as are for delight and pleaſure; I might ſubjoyn the *Bells*, and *Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent among forein Nations, as for any of thoſe mentioned in the ſaid old Verſe. The *Bells* ſo many, tunable, and of ſuch excellent Melody to a Muſicall eare (brought more to the command of the skilfull ringer than in former times) that it is thought there are more good Rings of *Bells* in this part of the Iland than in half Chriſtendom beſides. *Parkes* more in *England* than in all *Europe*. The firſt of which kind for the incloſing of Veniſon, being that of *Woodſtock*, made by King *Henry* the firſt; whoſe example being followed by his Succeſſors, and the Lords and great men of the Realm; the number ſo increaſed in a little time, that at the laſt, beſides 55 *Forreſts*, and 300 *Chaſes*, there were reckoned 745 *Parkes* in *England*, all well repleniſhed either with Red or Fallow Deere.

And that the Deere might graze with pleaſure, and the Sheep with ſafety, great care was taken by our progenitors for the deſtruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old Writers, that *England* never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not ſo: here being ſtore of them, till *Edgar* King of *England* commuted the 20 l. of Gold, 300 l. of Silver, and 300 head of Cattell impoſed as an yearly tribute by

King

England. King *Athelſtane* upon *Idwallo Prince of Wales*, for the like yearly tribute of 300 *Wolves*, by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the Welch proteſting at the laſt they could find no more.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, neither ſo hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, becauſe of its northerly ſituation, nor ſo cold in the Winter, becauſe the air of this Kingdom being groſs, cannot ſo ſoon penetrate as the thin air of *France* and *Spain*. For to ſay truth, the air in the Winter time is thick and foggie, cloudy, and much diſpoſed to miſts, eſpecially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: inſomuch that many times the Sun is not ſeen to ſhine out clearly for ſome weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a Tale, that the great Conſtable of *Caſtile* being Ambaſſador to King *James* in the firſt Winter of his reign, and tarying here about a month, is ſaid not to have ſeen the Sun all the time of his ſtay: which occaſioned him at his going on ſhip board, to deſire ſuch Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to *preſent his humble ſervice to the King their Maſter, and to the* bleſſed Sun of Heaven *when they chanced to ſee him.* And ſomething alſo touching the temperature of the Air, may be aſcribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they paſs unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be ſaid, that we were come from Gods bleſſing, into the warm Sun: but it is not ſo. For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of fiſh than ours. Our Oyſters were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficiall unto the *Netherlands*, to whom, the *Engliſhmen*, reſerving to themſelves a kind of *Royalty*, (for the *Dutch* by cuſtom demand liberty to fiſh of *Scarborough Caſtle in Yorkſhire*) have yielded up the commodity by which thoſe States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoveriſhed, and condemned for lazineſs and ſloth. Beſides the loſs of imployment for many men, who uſing this trade might be a ſeminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and diſcoveries; cannot but be very prejudiciall to the ſtrength and flouriſhing of the Common-wealth and Empire.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I ſhall extract ſome paſſages out of a M. S. diſcourſe of the late learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principall King of Arms by the name of *Garter*, entituled, *The Sovereignty of the Britiſh Seas.* By which it doth appear, that there is fiſhing in thoſe Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fiſh, at all times of the year: and that too in ſo plentifull a manner, that not long ſince neer *Minnegal* on the Coaſts of *Devonſhire*, 500 Tonne of Fiſh were taken in one day, and 3000. pound-ſworth in another neer S. *Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20. laſts of Herrings. 2ly. That almoſt all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlanders*, and thoſe of the *Hanſe*, do mightily improve themſelves both in power and wealth, by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Fiſhing; inſomuch as 10000. Sail of forein Veſſels (of which 1400. from the Town of *Emden* in *Eaſt-Friſeland* only) are thought to be maintained by this trade alone. 3ly. That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yeerly 8000 Veſſels of all ſorts for this trade of *Fiſhing* on our Coaſts, whereby they have a Seminarie of 150000 Saylers and Mariners, readie for any publick ſervice: all which maintain trebble that number of Men, Women and Children, of ſeverall trades upon the Land. 4ly. That for the holding up of this trade, the ſaid *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not ſo big as many of our Shires, doe build 1000 ſail of Ships yeerly; and thereby furniſh all the parts of the World (even as far as *Braſil*) with our commodities, returning home thoſe of other Countries in exchange thereof; which they ſell to us many times at their own prices. 5ly. That the ſaid *Hollanders* (as appeared upon computation) made in one yeer of the *Herrings* onely, caught upon theſe Coaſts, the ſumme of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Cuſtomes, and tenth Fiſh, advancing to the publick Treaſurie no leſs than 800000 l. Sterling: it being thought, that the *Herrings* caught by thoſe of the *Hanſe* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a ſumme as that. 6ly. And finally, that by erecting onely 250 *Buſſes*, (Veſſels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not ſwift of ſail) for the *Herring-Fiſhing*, (which is not a ſixt part of thoſe which are employed yeerly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or by private Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated; there would be found imployment yeerly for 1000 ſhips, and at leaſt 20000 Mariners and Fiſhers at Sea, and conſequently for as many Tradeſmen and Labourers at Land: by means whereof, beſides the vindication of our credit now at ſuch a loſs, there would ariſe in Cuſtomes, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Impoſts, no leſs than 300000 l. *per Annum* to the publick Treaſurie. The proſecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once deſigned by Mr. Atturney *Noy*, my much honoured Friend: ſo do I heartily commend it to the care of the State, and to his Succeſſors in that Office, as the fitteſt *Remembrancers* to advance it; there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithſtanding theſe advantages of Fiſh, the Diet of *England* is, for the moſt part, Fleſh. In *London* only there are no fewer than 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep ſlain, and uttered in a yeer, beſides Calves, Lambs, Hogs-fleſh, and Poulterers ware. To prove this, Suppoſe there be in *London* 60 Butchers *Free* of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Oxe a day, for ſo at leaſt they doe. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Foreiners in the Suburbs and Villages ſell four for their one. Laſtly, count for every Oxe ten ſheep,

(for

(for this is alſo certainly known) to be killed and ſold, and you have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Gondamor*, once the *Spaniſh Leiger* here, having in ſome ſeverall Market dayes ſeen the ſeverall Shambles of this great Citie, ſaid to them who made the diſcovery with him, That there was more Fleſh eaten in a moneth in that Town, than in all *Spain* in a yeer. Now had I his skill who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole body, I might by this Proviſion of Fleſh conſumed in the head, gueſs at the Quantity of that which is ſpent in the body of the Realm. But this I leave to be determined by an abler hand. The uſuall and naturall drink of the Country is *Beer*, ſo called from the *French* word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is ſaid) Which, without controverſie, is a moſt wholeſome and nourſhing beverage; and being tranſported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea is ſo purged, that it is amongſt them in higheſt eſtimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Beere d' Angle Terre*. And as for the old drink of *England*, *Ale*, which commeth from the *Daniſh* word *Oela*, it is queſtionleſs in it ſelf, (and without that commixture which ſome are accuſed to uſe with it) a very wholeſome drink; howſoever it pleaſed a Poet in the time of *Henry* the 3d, thus to deſcant on it: *England.*

Neſcio quid monſtrum Stygiæ *conforme paludi,*
Cerviſiam *pleriq; vocant, nil ſpiſſius illa*
Dum bibitur, nil clarius eſt dum mingitur, ergo
Conſtat quod multas fæces *in ventre relinquit.*

In *Engliſh* thus,

Of this ſtrange drink ſo like the *Stygian* lake,
Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
Folk drink it thick, and piſs it very thin;
Therefore much *Dregs* muſt needs remain within.

Now to conclude this generall diſcourſe concerning *England*, there goes a tale, that *Henry* the 7th, (whoſe breeding had been low and private) being once preſſed by ſome of his Counſell, to purſue his title unto *France*; returned this Anſwer: that France *indeed was a flourriſhing and gallant Kingdom*; *but* England *in his mind was as fine a Seat for a* Countrey Gentleman, *as any could be found in* Europe.

Having ſtaid thus long in taking a Survey of the Countrie it ſelf, together with the chief commodities and pleaſures of it; and amongſt them, of the *Women* alſo, (as the method of the old Verſe led me on:) it is now time that we ſhould look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the moſt part gray-ey'd, pleaſant, beautifull, bountifull, courteous, and much reſembling the *Italians* in habit, and pronunciation. In matters of war, (as we have already proved) they are both able to endure, and reſolute to undertake the hardeſt enterpriſes: in peace quiet, and not quarrelſome; in advice or counſell, ſound and ſpeedy. Finally, they are active, hearty, and chearfull. And yet I have met with ſome Gentlemen, who upon the ſtrength of a little travell in *France*, have grown ſo *un-Engliſhed*, and ſo affected or beſotted rather on the *French* Nation, that they affirm the *Engliſh*, in reſpect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* People, of no diſpatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger: Perhaps in vilifying their own Nation they had conſulted with *Iulius Scaliger*, who in the 16 chap. of his 3d Book *De re Poetica*, giveth of the two moſt noble Nations, *Engliſh*, and *Scotiſh*, this baſe and unmanly Character, *Gothi bellua*; Scoti *non minùs*; Angli *perfidi, inflati, feri, contemptores, ſtolidi, amentes, inertes, inhoſpitales, immanes*. His bolt (you ſee) is ſoon ſhot, and ſo you may happily gueſs at the Quality of the Archer. A man indeed of an able learning, but of his own worth ſo highly conceited, that if his too much learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *Nationall* diſgrace on a *Perſonall*, is an ignoble victory. Beſides *Socrates* reſolution in the like kind, in my opinion was very judicious, εἰ ἀπὸ ὄνος ἐλακτίσθη, δικὴν οὐκ ἔστιν ἐπ' ὄνῳ λαγχάνειν, If an Aſs kick us, we muſt not put him in the Court. To confute his cenſure in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too a great labour; it being a task, which of it ſelf would require a Volume. The beſt is, many ſhoulders make the burthen light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrell againſt that proud Man, as ours: for ſo maliciouſly hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *Engliſh*, and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought moſt given to their bellies, do agree and differ in this point, the ſame *Scaliger* hath thus ſhewed in one of his Epigrams.

Tres ſunt Conviva, Germanus, Flander, *et* Anglus,
Dic quis edat melius, quis meliuſve bibat.
Non comedis Germane, *bibis*; *tu non bibis* Angle,
Sed comedis; comedis Flandre, *bibiſq; bene.*

Dutch, *Flemmings*, *Engliſh*, are your only gueſts,
Say which of all doth eat, or drink it beſt,
Th' *Engliſh* love moſt to eat, the *Dutch* to ſwill,
Onely the *Flemming* eates and drinks his fill.

Thus

England. Thus was it in his time with the *English* Nation; though since, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more than needs of the *Flemming* also.

The Nobility of this Countrie is not of so much unlimited Power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes*, *Earls*, and *Marquesses* being meerly titular; whereas in other places they have some, absolute, some, mixt government; so that upon any little distaste, they will stand on their own gnard, and slight the Power of their *Soveraign*. And on the other side, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Privileges above all other Nations, being most free from Taxes, and burdenous Impositions, but what they take upon themselves by their own consent. They have twice in a yeer a laudable custome (no where else to be seen) justice administred even at their own doores, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order first instituted by King *Henry* the 2d. They dwell together with Gentlemen, in Villages and Townes, which makes them savour of civility and good manners; and live in farre greater reputation, than the *Yeomen* in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, or *Germany*; being able to entertain a stranger honestly; diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The *Clergy* was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King *Henry* the 5th, against the temporall revenues of the Church, in which it was suggested, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Alms-houses, and yet the King might cleerly put up 20000 l. *per Annum* into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot say. But after this King *Henry* the 8th took his Opportunities to pare away the excrescencies of it, demolishing the Monasteries, and Religious Houses, and paring off the superfluities of Bishopricks and Cathedrall Churches: in which he found not a few followers amongst the Ministers and great Officers of State and Court in the time of King *Edward* the 6th, and Queen *Elizabeth*. Yet left they not the *Clergie* so poor and naked, or destitute of the encouragements and rewards of learning, but that they have been still the objects of a covetous envy (that which the former *Harpies* left them being thought too much) though for abilities of learning (I dare boldly say it) not to be parallelled in the word. For besides 5439 *Paro-Benefices*, being no *Impropriations*; and besides the *Vicarages*, most of which exceed the competency beyond Seas, there were left in *England* at the time of the *Reformation* under Queen *Elizabeth* 21 *Bishopricks*, (taking those of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Deaneries*, 60 *Archdeaconries*, and 544 Dignities and *Prebends*; most of which, places of fair revenue. And as for the maintenance of Priests, Monks, and Friers, before the *Reformation* there were reckoned 90 Colleges, besides those in the Universities, 110 Hospitalls, 3374 Chanteries and free Chappels, and 645 Abbeys and Monasteries: more than half of which had above the yeerly income of 200 l. in old rents, many above 1000, and some 4000 almost. So studious were our *Ancestors* both in those times of blindness, and these of a clearer sight, to encourage men to learning, and then reward it.

The Soldierie of *England* is either for the *Land*, or for the *Sea*. Our Victories by *Land* are most apparent, over the *Irish*, *Scots*, *Cyprists*, *Turks*, and especially *French*, whose kingdom hath been sore shaken by the *English* many times, especially twice by King *Edward* the 3d, and *Henry* the 5th: this latter making so absolute a conquest, that *Charles* the 7th like a poor *Roy d' Ividot*, confined himself to *Bourges*, where (having cashiered his retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper with a napkin laid before him, a rump of mutton, and two chickens. And so redoubted even after our expulsion from *France*, (our *civil dissentions* rather causing that expulsion, than the *French* valour) was the *English* name in that *Countrey*, that in the Wars between K. *Charles* the 8th, and the Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke, to strike a terrour into his Enemies, apparelled 1500 of his own Subjects, in the arms and Cross of *England*. But as the Ass, when he had on the Lyons skinne, was for all that but an Ass and no Lyon: so these *Britons*, by the weak resistance they made against their Enemies, shewd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *English* men. *Spain* also tasted the valour of our Land-Soldiers, when *John* of *Gaunt* pursued his title to *Spain*, was sent home with 8 Waggons laden with gold, and an annuall pension of 10000 marks; as also when the *Black Prince* re-established K. *Peter* in his Throne. And then also did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puissance of the *English*, when *Ferdinand* the *Catholique* surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuse*, *English* Foot, who lay there to joyn with this *Ferdinand*, in an expedition against *France*. Concerning which *Guicciardine* giveth this *item*, That *the Kingdom of* Navarre *was yeelded rather for the fear and reputation of the* English *Forces that were at hand, than by any puissance of the King of* Aragon. Since those times the *Spaniard* much esteemed us, as appeareth by this Speech of theirs to our Soldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*. *You are all tall Soldiers, and therefore when you come down to the Trenches, we double our guards, and look for blowes; but as for those base and cowardly* French, *when they come, we make account we have nothing to doe, but play, or sleep on our Ramparts* The like the *Netherlanders* can testifie. onely this is the grief of it, The *English* are like *Pyrrhus* King of *Epyrus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate in keeping them. Not to say any thing of the late but great experience, which the *English* Soldiery hath gotten by the *Civill* broiles among themselves. At which my heart so aketh, and my hand so trembleth, that I shall only adde in the words of *Lucan*,

Heu quantum potuit cœli pelagiq; parari
Hoc, quem Civiles *ſuſerunt ſanguine dextræ.* England.

That is to ſay,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
By that dear blood, which *Civill Wars* have drain'd.

As for their valour at Sea, it may moſt evidently be perceived in the battel of *Scluſe*, wherein King *Edward the* 3*d*, with 200 Ships, overcame the *French* Fleet conſiſting of 500. Sail of which he ſunk 200, and ſlew 30000. Souldiers. Secondly, at the battel in 88. wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquiſhed the *invincible Armado* of the *King of Spain*, conſiſting of 134. *great Galleons*, and Ships of extraordinary bigneſs. Sir *Francis Drake* with 4 Ships, took from the *Spaniard* one million, and 189200 Duckats in one Voyage, Anno 1587. And again with 25 Ships, he awed the Ocean, ſacked S. *Iago*, S. *Dominico*, and *Cartagena*; carrying away with him, beſides Treaſure, 240 Peeces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this *Drake* and *Candiſh*; the voyage to *Cales*, as alſo how one of the Queens Ships named the Revenge, in which Sir *Richard Greenvile* was Captain, with 180 Souldiers (whereof 90 were ſick on the ballaſt) maintained a Sea-fight for 24 hours againſt above 50 of the *Spaniſh* Galleons. And though at laſt, after her Powder was ſpent to the laſt barrel, ſhe yeelded upon honourable terms: yet ſhe was never brought into *Spain*, having killed in that fight more than 1000. of their Souldiers, and ſunk 4 of their greateſt Veſſels. I omit alſo the Diſcovery of the Northern paſſages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Frobiſher*; concluding with that of *Kekerman*, *Hoc certum eſt, omnibus hodie gentibus navigandi induſtria & peritia ſuperiores eſſe Anglos; & poſt Anglos, Hollandos*: Though now I acknowledge not by what neglect and diſcontinuance of thoſe honourable imployments, the *Hollanders* begin to bereave us of our antient Glories, and would fain account themſelves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been ſo indeed, had not His Majeſty by the timely reinforcing of his Navall Power, Anno 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it.

The *Engliſh* Language is a De-compound of *Dutch*, *French* and *Latine*, which I conceive rather to adde to its perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; ſince out of every Language we have culled the moſt ſignificant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected: For it is neither ſo boyſtrous as the *Dutch*, nor ſo effeminate as the *French*: yet as ſignificant as the *Latine*; and in the happy conjunction of two words into one, little inferior to the *Greek*.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here planted as ſome ſay, by S. *Peter* and *Paul*, more probably (as others ſay) by *Ioſeph* of *Arimathea*, whoſe body they find to have been interred in the Iſle of *Avalo*, where the Abbie of *Glaſtenbury* after ſtood. But that of his plantation being almoſt rooted out by long Perſecutions, and no ſupply of Preachers ſent from other places, *Lucius*, a King of *Britaine* (and the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Europe*, Anno 180. or thereabouts, ſent his Ambaſſadours to *Eleutherius* the then Pope of *Rome* to be furniſhed with a new ſupply of *Paſtors*, if not to plant, yet at the leaſt to water, and confirm the *Goſpel* planted here before, but almoſt rooted out again by prevailing *Gentiliſm*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himſelf, but by the piety of his example, and the diligence of the firſt Preachers ſent from *Rome* (being both of them naturall *Britans*) it ſpread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in ſome tract of time over all the Iland. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of *Chriſt*, was forthwith furniſhed with *Biſhops* and *Metropolitans*, according to the number of the Provinces and principall Cities (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as *Chriſtianity* it ſelf. For not to truſt herein to the autority of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, we find three Biſhops of this Iſle ſubſcribing to the Councill of *Arles*, Anno 314. *Eborius* Biſhop of *York*, *Reſtitutus* Biſhop of *London*, and *Adelfius* Biſhop of *Colcheſter*, there called *Colonia Londinenſium*; and ſome of them alſo preſent in the Councill of *Sardica*, Anno 358. concurring with the reſt in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Hereſies; and the ſame or others the next yeer in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the *Britans* were expulſed their native Countrie, or ſhut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordovices*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*, they caried *Chriſtianity* and *Biſhops* along with them: *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, finding no fewer than ſeven Biſhops in the *Britiſh* Church, when he was ſent by *Gregory* the Great to convert the *Engliſh*. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as ſome men ſuppoſe) to ſay that *Auguſtine* the Monk firſt preached the Goſpel in this Countrie, becauſe it muſt be underſtood in that ſaying, not with Relation to the *Britans*, but the *Engliſh Saxons*; from whom theſe parts of the Iſle had the name of *England*; and from whom both the *Britans* and the Faith it ſelf were driven into the Mountains of *Wales* and *Cornwall*, and Heatheniſm introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleaſed God, that *Gregory* the Great (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of *Rome*) ſeeing ſome handſom youths to be ſold in the open Market, demanded what and whence they were; to whom it was anſwered they were *Angli*: and well may they be ſo called (ſaith he) for they ſeem as *Angels*. Asking again of what Province they were amongſt the *Angli*; and anſwer being made, of the Province of *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (ſaid he) *de ira Dei ſunt liberandi*. And laſtly, underſtanding that the King of their Nation was named *Alle*; how fitly (ſaid he) may he ſing *Alleluiahs* to the moſt High God. After which time he ſeriouſly endeavoured the Converſion of the

England. *Brglish* Nation; which being Pope he happily effected, by the travell and diligence of *Augustine* the Monk, the first Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*. And so well did the work prosper after this beginning, that not only all the *Saxons* did receive the Gospel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Hassians*, *Franconians*, and *Turingians* being converted by *Winifred*; the *Frisons* or *Hollanders* by *Wittikind* the first Bishop of *Vtrecht*; the *Saxons* of *Westphalen*, by *Willdrode*, the first Bishop of *Breme*; all of them being *English Saxons*, as we find in *Beda* and some others.

Now as these parts of *Britain* were the first which generally entertained the Gospel; so were they the first also in these later times which universally submitted to the Reformation of such corruptions as had been brought upon them by the power and tyrannie of the Church of *Rome*. Endeavoured first in *France*, by the *Albigenses*, and *Waldenses*, as was said before: Who being suppressed and ruinated by the sword of the Kings of *France*, sheltred themselves in the mountainous parts of *Gascoigne* and *Guienne*, then in possession of the *English*; who by that means became acquainted with their *Tenets*, maintained here publickly by *Wiclef*, and spreading under-hand amongst the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther*, and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in most other Countries received tumultuously by the power of the People, was here admitted upon mature deliberation by the autority and consent of the Prince and Prelates the *Architects* in this great work, without respect unto the Dictats of *Luther* or *Calvin*, but looking only on Gods Word, and the Primitive Patterns; abolishing such things as were repugnant unto either, but still retaining such *Ceremonies* in Gods publick worship, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did observe a greater measure of Christian prudence and moderation, than their neighbour Churches, which in a meer detestation of the See of *Rome*, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in use amongst them, because defiled with *Popish* Errors and abuses: and thereby utterly averting those of the *Papal* party from joyning with them in the work, or coming over to them when the work was done. Whereas had they continued an allowable correspondencie in these extrinsecals of Religion with the Church of *Rome*, their partie in the World had been far greater, and not so much stomacked as it is. And so it was conceived by the Marquesse *de Rhosne*, after Duke of *Sally*, and Lord High-Treasurer of *France*, and one of the chief men of that partie there: when being sent Ambassadour to King *Iames*, from King *Henry* 4d. he had observed the Majesty and Decency of Gods publick Service, in some *Cathedrals* of this Kingdom; he said, Religion would be soon defaced, and trod under foot; if not preserved and fenced about with the hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church since the last *Conversion*, as by the piety and example of *Lucius* there were founded three *Arch-Bishopricks*, and 25. Bishopricks, according to the number of the *Archi Flamines* and *Flamines* (whose great Revenues were converted to more sacred uses) in the times of *Idolatry*: So by the like pious care of Pope *Gregory* the Great, by whose means this last Conversion hapned; Arch-Bishopricks, and Bishopricks were designed to convenient places. The number 26 in all, to each Province twelve, besides the two *Archbishops* and *Metropolitans*: wherein he had the happiness to have his desires fulfilled, though the number was not made compleat till these later dayes, nor with such equall distribution as he did intend. For in the Province of *York* laid wast and desolate by the *Danes*, and not so soon converted as the other was, the number of the Suffragan Bishops came not up to his purpose, but did as much exceed in the Province of *Canterbury*: especially when King *Henry* the 8th had incorporated *Wales* with *England*, and founded five Episcopall Sees out of the ruines and Revenues of some principall Monasteries, of which none but the Bishoprick of *Chester* (and that of the Isle of *Man*, which maketh up the 27th) were laid unto the Province of *York*. And so it stood, notwithstanding the alterations of *Religion*, without any dispute, till *Calvin* having hammered out his new *Presbyterie*, and recommended it to the use of all the *Christian* Churches (the History whereof we had succinctly in the *Alpine* Provinces) found many apt Scholars in most places to decry this Order, though consonant to the word of God, and most pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not so much the Autority of *Calvin*, or the malignant zeal of *Beza*, or the impetuous clamours of their Disciples, which caused the *Episcopall* Order to grow out of credit: as the *Avarice* of some great persons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their Possessions. It had been else a miracle that *Calvins* Plat-form, made only for the use of a private Citie, and not proportioned, no nor intended at the first, to the estate of other Churches, especially where the Bishops had been instrumentall in the Reformation, should be so headily received in some Kingdoms, and so importunately and clamorously desired in others.

The most valorous Souldiers of this Countrey, when possessed by the *Britains*, were 1 *Cassibelane*, who twice repulsed the *Roman* Legions, though conducted by *Cæsar*; and had not a party here at home been formed against him; he had for ever done the like. 2 *Pratusagus*, King of the *Iceni*. 3 *Constantine* the Great. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds *nine Worthies*. In the times of the *Saxons*, 5 *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*, and 6 King *Edmund Ironside*; and 7 *Canutus* the *Dane*. Vnder the *Normans*, of most note have been; 1 *William*, surnamed the Conquerour, 2 *Richard*, and 3 *Edward*, both the first of those names, so renowned in the wars of the Holy-Land; 4 *Edward* the 3d, and 5 *Edward* the Black Prince, his Sonne, *Duo fulmina belli*, as famous in the warres of *France*; 6 *Henry* the fift, and 7 *John* Duke

of

of *Bedford* his Brother, of equall gallantry with the other. 8 *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*. 9 S. *John Faſtolf*, and 10 S. *John Hawkwood*, of great eſteem for valour in *France* and *Italy*: not to deſcend to later times. And for Sea Captains, thoſe of moſt note, have been *Hawkins*, *Willoughby*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinſon*, *Drake*, *Frobiſher*, *Cavendiſh* and *Greenvile*; of ſome of which we have ſpoke already, and of the reſt may have an opportunity to ſay more hereafter. England.

Scholars of moſt renown amongſt us. 1 *Alcuinus*, one of the Founders of the Vniverſity of *Paris*. 2 *Beda*, who for his Pietie and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of *Venerabilis*. Concerning which the *Legends* tels us, that being blind, his Boy had knaviſhly conducted him to preach to an head of ſtones; and that when he had ended his Sermon with the *Gloria Patri*, the very Stones concluded, ſaying *Amen*, *Amen Venerabilis Beda*. But other of the Monkiſh writers do aſſign this reaſon, and both true alike, that at his death ſome unlearned Prieſt intending to honour him with an *Epitaph*, had thus farre blundered on a verſe, viz. *Hic ſunt in foſſa* Bedæ *oſſa*: but becauſe the verſe was yet imperfect, he went to bed to conſider of it, leaving a ſpace betwixt the two laſt words thereof, which in the morning he found filled up in a ſtrange Character, with the word *Venerabilis*; and ſo he made his Verſe, and *Beda* (pardon this diverſion) obtained that Attribute. 3 *Anſelm*, and 4 *Bradwardin*, Arch-biſhops of *Canterbury*, men famous for the times they lived in. 5 *Alexander* of *Hales*, Tutor to *Thomas Aquinas*, and *Bonaventure*. 6 *Thomas* of *Walden*, the profeſſed enemy of *Wiclef*, againſt whom he writ. 7 *Iohn Wiclef* parſon of *Lutterworth*, in the County of *Leiceſter*, who ſo valiantly oppoſed the power and Errors of the Church of *Rome*, though he vented many of his own. Then ſince the times of the *Reformation*, 1 *Iohn Iewel*, Biſhop of *Salisbury*, to whoſe learned and induſtrious labours, in defence of the Religion here by law eſtabliſhed, we are ſtill beholding. 2 Dr. *Iohn Reynolds*, and 3 Mr. *Richard Hooker*, both of *Corpus Chriſti* Colledg in *Oxon*; the firſt, a man of infinite reading, the ſecond of as ſtrong a judgment. 4 Dr. *Whitakers* of *Cambridge*, the *Antagoniſt* of the famous *Bellarmine*. 5 Dr. *Thomas Bilſon*, and 6 Dr. *Lancelot Andrews*, both Biſhops of *Winchester*, the Ornaments of their ſeverall times. 7 Biſhop *Montagne* of *Norwich*, a great Philologer and Divine. 8 Dr. *Iohn Woltguſt*, and 9 Dr. *William Laud*, Arch-Biſhops of *Canterbury*. Of which laſt, and his diſcourſe againſt *Fiſher* the *Ieſuite*, Sir *Edward Dering*, his profeſſed enemy, hath given this Character, that in that Book of his he had *muzled* the Ieſuits, *and ſhould ſtrike the* Papiſts *under the fift rib*, *when he was dead and gone*: *and that being dead*, *whereſoever his grave ſhould be*, *PAVLS* (whoſe reparation he endeavoured, and had almoſt finiſhed) *would be his perpetuall Monument*, *and his own Book his laſting Epitaph*. And as for thoſe who have ſtood up in maintenance of the Church of *Rome*, thoſe of moſt note were, 1 Dr. *Harding*, the Antagoniſt of Biſhop *Iewel*. 2 *Nic. Sanders*, and 3 Dr. *Tho. Stapleton*, to whoſe writings the great Cardinal *Bellarmine* doth ſtand much indebted. 4 *Champian*, and 5 *Parſons*, both *Ieſuites*, 6 and *William Rainolds* a *Seminary* Prieſt, and the Brother of Dr. *Iohn Rainolds* ſpoken of before. Of which two Brothers (by the way) it is very obſerveable, that *William* was at firſt a *Proteſtant* of the Church of *England*, and *Iohn* trained up in *Popery* beyond the Seas. *William* out of an honeſt zeal to reduce his Brother to this Church, made a journey to him: where on a conference betwixt them it ſo fell out, that *Iohn* being overcome by his brothers Arguments returned into *England*, where he became one of the more ſtrict or rigid ſort of the *Engliſh* Proteſtants; and *William* being convinced by the reaſons of his Brother *Iohn*, ſtaid beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent *Papiſt*. Of which ſtrange accident Dr. *Alabaſter*, who had made triall of both Religions, and amongſt many notable whimſees had ſome fine abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the excellency thereof, and the rareneſs of the argument, I ſhall here ſubjoin.

Bella inter geminos pluſquam Civilia Fratres,
Traxerat ambiguus Religionis apex.
Ille Reformatæ *Fidei pro partibus inſtat*;
Iſte reformandum *denegat eſſe fidem.*
Propoſitis cauſæ rationibus, alterutrinque;
Concurrere pares, & cecidere pares.
Quod fuit in votis, Fatrem *capit alter-uterque*;
Quod fuit in fatis, perdit uterque fidem.
Captivi gemini ſine captivante fuerant,
Et Victor victi tranſuga caſtra petit.
Quod genus hoc pugnæ eſt, ubi victus gaudet uterque;
Et tamen alter-uter ſe ſuperaſſe dolet.

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great diſadvantage to the *Latine* Originall, I have thus tranſlated.

In points of Faith ſome undetermin'd jars,
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civill wars.
One for the Churches *Reformation* ſtood;
The other thought no *Reformation* good.
The points propoſed, they traverſed the field
With equall skill, and both together yield.

England

As they desired, his Brother each subdue's;
Yet such their Fate, that each his Faith did loose.
Both Captive's, none the prisoners thence to guide;
The *Victor* flying to the Vanquisht side.
Both joy'd in being Conquer'd (strange to say)
And yet both mourn'd because both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1 *Lindwood* the Canonist, 2 *Cosins*, and 3 *Cowel*, eminent in the studies of the *Civill Lawes*; 4 *Bracton*, and 5 *Briton*, of old times; 6 *Dier*, and 7 *Cook* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the Lawes of *England*. 8 *Iohannes de Sacro Bosco*, the Author of the Book of the *Spher*, and 9 *Roger Bacon*, a noted *Mathematician* in the darker times. 10 Sir *Francis Bacon* the learned Viscount of S. *Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11 Sr. *Tho. More*, Lord Chancellor, one of the Restorers of Learning to the Isle of great Britain. 12 Sr. *Henry Savil* of *Eaton*, the reviver of *Chrysostom*, 13 Sir *Henry Spelman*, a right learned antiquary, and a religious assertor of the Churches rights. 14 *Camden*, *Clarentieux*, the *Pausanias* of the *British* Ilands. 15 *Matthew Paris*, 16 *Roger Hoveden*, 17 *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, 18 *William* of *Malmesbury*, 19 *Matthew* of *Westminster*, and 20 *Thomas* of *Walsingham*; all known Historians. And finally for Poetrie, 1 *Gower*, 2 *Lidgate*, a Monk of *Burie*, 3 the famous *Geofrie Chawcer*, Brother in Law to *Iohn* of *Gaunt* the great Duke of *Lancaster*; of which last Sir *Philip Sidney* used to say, that *he marvelled how in those mistie times he could see so cleerly, and others in so cleer times go so blindly after him.* 4 Sir *Philip Sidney* himself, of whom and his *Arcadia*, more when we come to *Greece*. 5 The renowned *Spencer*, of whom and his *Faerie Queen* in another place. 6 *Sam. Daniel*, the *Lucan*, 7 with *Michael Draiton*, the *Ovid* of the *English* Nation. 8 *Beaumont*, and 9 *Fletcher*, not inferiour unto *Terence* and *Plautus*; with 10 My friend *Ben. Johnson*, equall to any of the antients for the exactness of his Pen, and the decorum which he kept in *Dramatick* Poems, never before observed on the *English* Theatre. Others there are as eminent both for Arts and Arms, as those here specified: of whom as being still alive I forbear to speak: according to that caution of the Historian, saying, *Vivorum ut magna admiratio, ita* Censura *est difficilis.*

But from the men to return again unto the Countrie, we find it to be subject (according to the severall respects of Church and State) to a treble division: *viz.* 1 into 6 *Circuits* destinated to the *Itinerary Judges*. Secondly, into 22 *Episcopal Dioceses*. Thirdly, into 40 Shires. The Realm was first divided into *Circuits* by King *Henry* the second, who appointed twice in the year, two of the most grave and learned Judges of the Land, should in each *Circuit* administer Iustice in the chief or head Towns of every Country. Of these Iudges one sitteth on matters *Criminal*, concerning the life and death of Malefactors; the other in actions *Personall*, concerning title of Land, Debts, or the like, between party and party. The first *Circuit* (for we will begin at the West) comprehendeth the Counties of *Wilts*, *Somerset*, *Devon*, *Cornwall*, *Dorset*, and *Southampton*; The second containeth the Counties of *Oxford*, *Berks*, *Gloceſter*, *Monmouth*, *Hereford*, *Worceſter*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*; The third hath in it the Counties of *Surrey*, *Sussex*, *Kent*, *Essex*, and *Hartford*; The fourth consisteth of the Shires of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Cambridge*, *Norfolke*, *and Suffolke*; The fift of the shires of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincolne*, *Nottingham*, *Derby*, *Leiceſter*, and *Warwick*; And the sixt and last, of the Shires of *York*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Westmoreland*, and *Lancaster*. So that in these six *Circuits* are numbred 38 Shires. The two remaining are *Middlesex* and *Cheshire*: whereof the first is exempted, because of its vincinity to *London*, and the second, as being a *County Palatine*, and having peculiar Iudges and Counsellours to it self.

The second division, but more antient far in point of time, is that of *Dioceses*, 22 in all, proportioned according to the number of *Episcopall* Sees: each Diocese having in it one or more *Arch-Deaconries*, for dispatch of *Ecclesiasticall* business, and every *Arch-Deaconrie* subdivided into *Rurall Deanries*, fewer or more, according to the bigness and extent thereof. Of these there are but four in the Province of *York*, that is to say, the Dioceses of *York*, *Chester*, *Durham*, and *Carlile*: the other 18 (together with the 4 of *Wales*) being reckoned into that of *Canterbury*. In respect of which great authority and jurisdiction, the Arch-Bishops of *Canterbury* had antiently the titles of *Primates* and *Metropolitans* of all *England*; for some ages before the Reformation, used to take place in all General Councils, at the Popes right foot. Which custom took beginning at the Council of *Laterane*, when *Vrban* the second called *Anselm* the Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury* from amongst the other Prelates then assembled, and placed him at his right foot, saying, *includamus hunc in Orbe nostro tanquam alterius Orbis Papam*, this hapned Anno 1079. They were antiently also *Legati nati*; which honourable title was first given to Arch-Bishop *Theobald* by *Innocent* the second, and continued unto his successors. And both to honour their calling in the course of their Government, and to have the benefit of their Council being men of learning, both the Arch-Bishops and the Bishops, were antiently privileged to have their place and suffrage in the High Court of Parliament (ever since any Parliaments were first held in *England*) as Peeres of the Realm; and that too in a double respect: first in relation had to their sacred Office, and secondly to those temporall estates and Barronies which they held

held of the King, yet did they not enjoy in the times of their greateſt power and flouriſh all the Prerogatives and Privileges of the Temporal Barons: as neither being tryed by their *Peers* in Criminal cauſes, but left to an Ordinary *Jury*; nor ſuffered in examinations to make a *Proteſtation* upon their honour, to the truth of a fact, it put unto their Oathes like others of the lower Clergy. As for their *Eccleſiaſticall* Courts, it was antient Ordered alſo, that beſides ſuch as appertained to the Arch-Biſhops themſelves, beſides thoſe holden by the *Chancellours* and *Arch-Deacons* of every Biſhop in their ſeverall *Dioceſes*, and ſome in many private pariſhes which they called *Peculiars*; and finally beſides the Court of *Viſitation*, held every third year by the Biſhop himſelf in perſon, or his lawfull Deputy; there ſhould be alſo *Synods* or *Convocations*, which are the Parliaments of the Clergy, aſſembled primarily for the Reforming of the Church in *Doctrin* and *Diſcipline*, and ſecundarily for granting tenths and Subſidies to the King, and naturally conſiſting of all the Right Reverend Fathers, the Arch-biſhops, Biſhops, the Deans, Arch-deacons, and one Prebend out of each Cathedrall, and a certain number of the Clergy, (two for every Dioceſs) elected by the reſt to ſerve for them in that great Aſſembly; the Clergy not being bound antiently by any Act, to which they had not given conſent by thoſe their *Proxies*. England.

The third and laſt Diviſion, though the ſecond in courſe of time, is that of *Shires*, made by King *Alfride*, both for the eaſier Adminiſtration of juſtice, and to prevent ſuch Outrages and Robberies, as after the example of the *Danes*, the naturall Inhabitants of the Realm began in all places to commit. For over every one of theſe *Shires* or Counties, he appointed an *High-Sheriff* and divers *Officers*, to ſee into the behaviour of private men, and to puniſh ſuch as were *delinquent*: and in times of warre either already begun, or intended, he inſtituted a *Prefect* or *Lieutenant*; to whom he gave authority to ſee their muſters, their proviſion of armes, and if occaſion ſerved, to puniſh ſuch as rebelled or mutinied. This wiſe King ordained alſo, that his Subjects ſhould be divided into tens or *tithings*, every of which ſeverally ſhould give bond for the good abearing of each other; and he who was of that diſſolute behaviour, that he could not be admitted to theſe *tithings*, was forthwith conveyed to the houſe of correction. By this courſe every man was not carefull only of his own actions, but had an eye to all the nine for whom he ſtood bound; as the nine had over him: inſomuch that a poor girl might travell ſafely with a bagge of gold in her hand, and none durſt meddle with her. The antienteſt of theſe ten men, were called κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Tithingmen*. Ten of the higheſt or neighbouring *tithings*, made the leſſer Diviſion which we call *hundreds*; which name cannot be derived from the like number of villages, for none of our *hundreds* are ſo large; and one of them there is in *Berk-ſhire*, which containeth five hamlets onely. We have then a diviſion of the Realm into 40 Shires; of the Shires into divers *hundreds*; and of the *hundreds* into ten *tithings*. And this diviſion made by *Alfride* ſtill remains in force: as alſo doth the *High Sheriff*, and the reſt of the ſubordinate Officers: the office of the *High Sheriff* conſiſting eſpecially at this time, in executing Arreſts, aſſiſting the *Itinerary Judges*, gathering the Kings Fines and Amerciaments, and raiſing the *Poſſe Comitatus*, if occaſion be. But for the *Civill* part of government in the ſeverall Counties, it is moſt in the hands of ſuch as we call *Juſtices of the Peaces*, authoriſed by Commiſſion under the Great Seal of *England*: appointed firſt by that prudent Prince King *Edward* the firſt, by the name of *Cuſtodes Pacis*, Guardians of the Peace, and firſt called *Juſtices of the Peace* in the 36. of King *Edward* the 3d, *Cap.* 11. A form of Government ſo much conducing to the proſperity of the Countrie, and the ſecuritie of the People, that King *James*, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*, eſtabliſhed it by Law in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. Then for the Courts, which are ſtill kept in every Shire, they are either the *County Court* holden every moneth, wherein the *Sher ff* or his ſufficient *Deputy* commonly preſideth; or the *Aſſizes* and Court of *Gaol-delivery* held twice a yeer by the *Judges Itinerant*, aſſiſted by the *Juſtices of the Peace*, and others in Commiſſion with them. There are alſo two *Officers* in every *hundred* choſen out of the *Yeomanrie*, whom we call the *Conſtables* of the *hundred*: who receiving the *Precepts* or Warrants of the *Sheriff*, or *Juſtices* diſpatcheth them to the *Tithingman* or Petit Conſtable of each town and village in their ſeverall Diviſions. And in each *hundred*, a Court kept once in three Weeks, by the Steward of the *hundred*, or his Deputy, capable of Pleas or Actions under the value of 40 s. though in ſome few of theſe Courts alſo (as in that of *Slaughter-hundred* in *Glocester*) the value of the Action by ſome ſpeciall Charter be left unlimited. The like Courts alſo holden in ſome antient Burroughs. And beſides theſe in every Village are two ſeverall Courts, and theſe two holden twice a yeer, if occaſion be, held by the Steward of the Manour: in the one of which called the *Court Leet*, there is Enquirie made into Treaſons, Felonies, Murders, and other Caſes falling between the King and the Subject; and in the other, which we call by the name of *Court Baron*, ſuch onely as concern the Lord and Tenants, and theſe laſt ſummoned for the moſt part at the will of the Lord: So that *Comines* had (we ſee) good reaſon for this Affirmation, that *of all the Signeuries in the World that ever he knew, the Realm of* England *was the Countrie in which the* Commonwealth *was beſt governed.*

To return again unto the Shires, ſome of them take their names from the old Inhabitants, as *Cumberland* from the *Cymri* or antient *Britans*; *Eſſex*, and *Suſſex*, from the Eaſt and South *Saxons*: ſome from the ſituation of them, as *Northumberland*, *Norfolk*, *Suthfolk*, *Devonſhire*; this laſt ſo called from *Devinam*, a *Welch* or *Britiſh* word, ſignifying Low Vallies, of which it very much conſiſteth: Some from the form or figure of them, as *Cornwall*, from the reſemblance which

England it hath to an horn; and *Kent*, (in Latine, *Cantium*) becauſe it lieth in a *Canton* or Corner of the Iland: Some from Accidents therein, as *Berk ſhire* or *Berock ſhire* from the abundance of *Boxe*, which the *Saxons* call by the name of *Beroc*: the moſt part from the principall Town of all the Countie, as *Gloceſter*, *Oxford*, and the like. Of theſe Shires the biggeſt beyond all compare is the County of *York*, out of which 70000 men may be raiſed for preſent ſervice, if need ſo require. And in them all comprehended 8769 Pariſhes (beſides thoſe of *Wales*) not reckoning in ſuch Chappels as we call *Chappels of Eaſe*, in greatneſs not inferiour to many Pariſhes; 22 Cities, and 585 Market Towns which are no Cities: and in the Towns and Villages to the number of 145 Caſtles, or ruines of Caſtles; few of them places of importance, and ſuch as are, belonging generally to the King, who ſuffer not any of their Subjects to neſt themſelves in Strong Holds and Caſtles.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *London*, ſeated on the *Thames*, by which divided into two parts, conjoyned together by a ſtately and magnificent Bridge, ſpoken of before. The River capable in this place of the greateſt Ships, by means whereof it hath been reckoned a long time for one of the moſt famous Mart-Towns in Chriſtendom: and not long ſince had ſo much got precedencie of all the reſt, that the greateſt part of the wealth of *Europe* was driven up that River. A Citie of great note in the time of the *Roman* conqueſt: to whom it was firſt known by the name of *Londinum*, a Town at that time of great trade and riches; and by them honoured with the title of *Auguſta*. Increaſed of late very much in buildings, contiguous to ſome Towns & Villages, from which in former times diſjoyned by ſome diſtant *intervalls*. So that the Circuit may contain 8 miles at leaſt; in which ſpace are 132 Pariſh Churches; the Palace of the King, the houſes of the Nobility, Colleges for the ſtudy of the Laws, I mean not the *Civill Law*, which is *Ius Gentium*, but (as we call it) the *Common Law*, appropriate only to this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing well nigh 600000 people, which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare *London* with *Paris* thus: *London* is the richer, the more populous, and more antient; *Paris* the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I doe not think that *London* is the more populous; ſo neither can I grant that *Paris* is the greater Citie, except we meaſure them by the Walls. For taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that paſſeth in Accompt by the name of *London*: and I conceive, that if *London* were caſt into the ſame orbicular figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of *Paris*. For uniformity of building *Paris* indeed doth goe beyond it; but may in that be equalled alſo in ſome tract of time, if the deſign begun in King *Iames* his reign, tending to the advancement of ſuch *uniformitie*, be not interrupted. For other things, certain it is that *London* is the antienter Citie, as being an Archbiſhops See in the time of the *Britans*, when the name of *Paris* was ſcarce heard of; a Biſhops See at the firſt converſion of the *Saxons*: increaſed ſo much in wealth and honour from one Age to another, that it is grown at laſt too big for the Kingdom: which whether it may be profitable for the State, or not, may be made a queſtion. And great Towns in the bodie of a State, are like the *Spleen* or *Melt* in the bodie naturall: the monſtrous growth of which impoveriſheth all the reſt of the Members, by drawing to it all the *animal* and *vital* ſpirits, which ſhould give nouriſhment unto them; And in the end cracked or ſurcharged by its own fulneſs, not only ſends unwholeſome fumes and *vapours* unto the *head*, and heavy *pangs* unto the *heart*, but drawes a *conſumption* on it ſelf. And certainly the over-growth of great Cities is of dangerous conſequence, not only in regard of Famine, ſuch multitudes of mouthes not being eaſie to be fed; but in reſpect of the irreparable danger of *Inſurrections*, if once thoſe multitudes, ſenſible of their own ſtrength, oppreſſed with want, or otherwiſe diſtempered with faction or diſcontent, ſhould gather to an head and break out into action. Yet thus much may be ſaid to the honour of *London*, though grown by much too bigg now for the kingdom, that it is generally ſo well governed, and in ſo good peace, that thoſe Murders, Robberies, and outrages ſo frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas, are here ſeldom heard of. 2 *York*, in the Weſt-riding of that Countie, the ſecond Citie of *England*, as the old Verſe hath it.

Londinum *caput eſt & Regni urbs prima Britanni*,
Eboracum *à primâ jure ſecunda venit.*

That is to ſay,
In *England*, *London* is the chiefeſt Town;
The ſecond place *York* claimeth as its own.

And ſo it may, being indeed the ſecond Citie of the Kingdom, both for fame and greatneſs. A pleaſant, large, and ſtately Citie, well fortified and beautifully adorned, as well with private as publick Edifices; and rich, and populous withall. Seated upon the River *Ouſe*, or *Vre*, which divides it in twain, both parts being joyned together with a fair ſtone Bridge, conſiſting of high and mighty Arches. A Citie of great eſtimation in the time of the *Romans*, the *Metropolis* of the whole Province or *Diocеſe* of *Britain*; remarkable for the death and buriall of the Emperour *Severus*, and the birth of *Conſtantine* the *Great*: by conſequence the Seat of the Primate of the *Britiſh* Church, as long as *Chriſtianity* did remain amongſt them. Nor ſtooped it lower when the *Saxons* had received the *Faith*: and notwithſtanding thoſe mutations which befell this Kingdom, under the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, it ſtill preſerved its antient luſtre; and increaſed it too. Adorned with a ſtately and magnificent *Cathedrall*, inferiour to few in *Europe*; and with a Palace o. the Kings, (called the Manour-houſe) the dwelling in theſe later dayes of the Lord

Pre-

Preſident of the Court or Councell here eſtabliſhed by King *Henry* 8th, for the benefit of his Northern Subjects, after the manner of the *French Parliaments*, or *Preſed all Seiges*. 3 *Briſtol*, the third in rank of the Cities of *England*, ſituate on the meeting of the *Frome* and *Avon*, not far from the influx of the *Severn* into the *Ocean*: in that regard commodiouſly ſeated for trade and traffick: the Ships with full ſayl coming into the Citie, and the Citizens with as full purſes trading into moſt parts of the World with good Faith and Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being *Sewers* made under ground, for the conveyance of all filth and naſtineſs, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number 18 or 20, reckoning in the Cathedrall, and that of *Ratcliff*. The *Cathedrall* firſt built by *Rob. Fitz. Harding*, Sonne to a King of *Denemark*, once a *Burger* here, and by him ſtored with Canons *Regular*, Anno 1248. but made a Biſhops See by King *Henry* 8th, Anno 1542. The principall building next the Church, an antient Caſtle, a piece of ſuch ſtrength, that *Maud* the Empreſs having took King *Steven* Priſoner, thought it the ſafeſt place to ſecure him in. 4 *Norwich*, the 4th Citie of the firſt rank, of which more hereafter. 5 *Oxford*, the firſt of the ſecond rank of *Engliſh* Cities, ſeated upon the *Ouſe* or *Iſis*: but whether ſo called as *Vadum Iſidos*, Ouſeford, or the *Ford* of *Ouſe*, or *Vada boum* (as the *Greeks* had their *Boſphori* in former times) I determine not. An antient Town, and antiently made a ſeat of Learning, coevall unto that of *Paris*, if not before it; the Vniverſity hereof being reſtored rather than firſt founded by King *Alured*, Anno 806. after it had been overborn awhile by the *Daniſh* Furies; but hereof as an Vniverſity, more anon. This only now, that for the ſtatelineſſe of the Schooles and publick Library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colleges, all built of fair and poliſhed ſtone, the liberall endowment of thoſe houſes, and notable encouragements of Induſtry and Learning in the ſalarie of the Profeſſors in moſt Arts and Sciences, it is not to be parallelled in the *Chriſtian* World. The Citie of it ſelf well built, and as pleaſantly ſeated, formed in the Figure of a Croſſe, two long Streets thwarting one another, each of them neer a mile in length; containing in that compaſſe 13 Pariſh Churches, and a See Epiſcopall founded here by King *Henry* 8th, Anno 1541. The honourary Title of 20 of the noble Family of the *Veres* now Earls of *Oxon*. 6 *Salisbury*, firſt ſeated on the Hill, where now ſtands *old Salisbury*, the *Sorbioduunum* of the Antients. But the *Cathedrall* being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very ſuddenly into great Renown, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Avon* (a name common to many *Engliſh* Rivers) which watereth every ſtreet thereof; and for the populouſneſs of the place, plenty of Proviſions, number of Churches, a ſpacious Market-place, and a fair Town-Hall, eſteemed the ſecond Citie of all the Weſt. 7 *Gloceſter*, by *Antonine* called *Glevum*, by the *Britains*, *Caer Glowy*, whence the preſent name; the *Saxons* adding *Ceſter*, as in other places. A fine neat Citie, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, with a large Key or Wharf on the banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandiſe and trade of the place; well built, conſiſting of fair large Streets, beautified with a magnificent *Cathedrall*, and ſituate in ſo rich a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the uſe of man, except onely Wine, which life or luxury may require. 8 *Cheſter*, upon the River *Dee*, built in the manner of a quadrate, incloſed with a wall, which takes up more than two miles in compaſſe, containing in that compaſſe 12 Pariſh Churches, and an old *Cathedrall* dedicated antiently to S. *Wereburg*, Daughter of *Wolfere* K. the *Mercians*, and Viſitreſs of all the Monaſteries of *England*; but a Biſhops See by King *Henry* the 8th. The buildings generally fair, the Streets wide and open, with Galleries before every door, under which a man may walk dry from one end to the other. The reſt of chief note ſhall be ſpecified on another occaſion, with this advertiſment, that the ordinary Cities of *England* are not to be compared with thoſe of *France* and *Italy*: Firſt becauſe the Nobles and Gentry of thoſe Countries live for the moſt part in the Cities, ours in Country-Villages: And ſecondly, becauſe the *Londoners* ſo ingroſs all trading, that they draw thither all the Wealth and treaſure of the Kingdom. By means whereof, that every day increaſeth in wealth and beauty; the reſt (except *Briſtol* only) doe decay as ſenſibly: that Citie being like the *Spleen* in the body naturall, the monſtrous growth whereof ſtarveth all the reſt of the Members. *Liene excreſcente, reliquum corpus contabeſcit*, as the *Doctors* have it. *England.*

There are in *England* but two *Vniverſities*, which may equall ſix, nay ten of all other Countries, (ſo that *Paris* be not in the number) moſt of them being no better than our Colleges of *Weſtminſter*, *Eaton*, or *Winchester*, and none ſo liberally endowed, as ſome one of theſe in the Vniverſities: Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, ſome of them called only by the name of *Halls*, but theſe endowed with Lands and Fellowſhips as the others are. In *Oxford* there 18 Colleges endowed with Lands, beſides ſix *Halls*, where Students live at their own charges in both of them. Profeſſors of the Arts and Sciences, as alſo of Divinity, Law, Phyſick, and the Learned Languages, with liberall Salaries: and in each to the number of 3000 Students, ſo regular in their lives and converſations, as are not to be found in the World beſides. The fairer and more antient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honoured with the Title of *Generale ſtudium* For that the Vniverſity of *Cambridge*, (though giving upper hand to her Siſter of *Oxford*, ſhe may take place of all the Vniverſities in the World beſides) is not of ſo long ſtanding, as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the teſtimony of *Robertus de Remington*, cited by Maſter *Camden*, viz. *Regnante* Edwardo *primo*, (It ſhould rather be read *ſecundo*) *de ſtudio* Grantbridge *facta eſt Academia, ſicut Oxonium*: where the word *ſicut* doth not import an idenity of the time; but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the pattern.

We

England. We see this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope *John* the 21, the contemporary of our *Edward* 2d, as I find in the work of that great Searcher of *Academicell* Antiquities, Mr. *Brian Twine*: *Apostolica authoritate statuimus* (saith the Bull) *quod Collegium magistrorum & scholarium ejusdem studij* (speaking of *Cambridge*) *Vniversitas sit censenda*, &c. But what need more than Resolution of the *Commons* of the first Parliament, holden under King *James*. For when the Clerk of that House had put the name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*; they, taking disdainfully that *Hysteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Vniversities to be searched, and after search made gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed, the Vniversity of *Cambridge* as it was much of a later Foundation, so was it long before it grew into esteem: insomuch that when *William* of *Wainflete* Bishop of *Winchester*, and Founder of *Magdalen* College in *Oxon* (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perswaded King *Henry* the sixth to erect a College in *Oxford*, as some of the Kings his Predecessors had done before him: *immo potius* Cantabrigiæ (replyed the King) *Vt duas si fieri possit in Anglia Academias habeam.* No said the King, in *Cambridge* rather, that so if possible I may have two *Vniversities* in my Realm of *England*.

As for the Storie of this Country, that it was first peopled out of *Gaul* is affirmed by *Cæsar*, & proved by many strong and concluding Arguments, as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Customs, and the neerness of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are said to have reigned here successively before the coming of the *Romans*; Certain it is, that *Cæsar* found the Countrey cantoned into many Kingdoms (four in *Kent* alone) and the people to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had was locked up in the brests of the *Druides*, who committed nothing unto writing, and by that means kept the People in continuall ignorance; communicating what they knew to none but those of their own Order, and therein being sought to by the *Druides* or Priests of *Gaul*, who came over into this Island to them, and did from them receive the knowledge of their sacred Mysteries. Being conquered or discovered rather by *Iulius Cæsar*, it was not so much as looked after by the two next Emperours: *Augustus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of Wisdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean. *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durst not follow it. But *Claudius*, his Successor, undertook the Enterprise, sollicited thereunto by *Bericus* a noble *Briton*, who for sedition and some practices against the publick, was expelled the Countrey. Hereupon *Aulus Plautius* is sent over with some *Roman* Forces, by whom and *Publius Ostorius Scapula* his Successor, *Togodumnus* and *Caractacus*, two Kings of the *Britains* were severally overcome in battel, a *Roman* Colonie planted at *Camalodunum*, and the Southern parts thereof reduced to the form of a *Province*. After this time by little and little the whole was conquered, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Dunbarten* and *Edenburgh*: *Agricola* in the time of *Domitian*, having the happiness and good fortune to goe beyond the furthest of his Predecessors; and so much moderation not to venture further, where there was nothing to be got but blowes, cold, and hunger.

At the first entrance of the *Romans*, the Iland was divided into severall Nations, each governed by its own Kings and particular Princes, different in their ends and counsels, and so more easily subdued by united Forces. The principall of which (for it is needless to make mention of inferiour *Clans*) were 1 the *Danmonij*, containing *Devonshire* and *Cornwall*, whose chief Cities were *Isca*, now *Exeter*, and *Volcha* neer the Town of *Falmouth* in *Cornwall*. 2 the *Durotrigæ*, inhabiting only in the County of *Dorset*; whose chief Citie was *Danium* or *Durnovaria*, which we now call *Dorchester*. 3 the *Belgæ*, planted in the Counties of *Somerset*, *Southampton*, and *Wilts*, whose chief Cities were *Aquæ calidæ*, now *Bath*, *Ventu Belgarum*, now *Winchester*, and *Sorbiodunum*, the seat of *old Salisbury*. 4 the *Attrebatij*, confined within *Barkshire* only, the chief Citie of whom was *Gualleva*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5 the *Regni*, possessed of *Sussex* and *Surrey*, whose chief Cities were *Vindelis*, now *Winchelsey*, and *Neomagus*, situate some ten miles from *London*. 6 the *Cantiani*, or the *Kentish*, having *Durovernum* now *Canterbury*, *Dubris*, now *Dover*, and *Rhutupiæ*, now called *Rishborough* for their principall Cities. 7 the *Trinobantes* of *Midlesex* and *Essex*, where *London* called afterwards *Augusta Trinobantum*, and *Camaladunum* the first *Roman* Colonie, now called *Maldon*; the Seat Royall of *Cunabelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes* in the time of the *Romans*. 8 The *Catieuchlani*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford* and *Hartford*, whose Towns of most importance were *Magivintum*, now called *Dunstable*, and *Verulamium*, (neer S. *Albans*) the strongest Hold the *Britains* had in their wars with *Cæsar*. 9 The *Iceni*, living in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*; their principall Cities being *Villa Faustini*, now S. *Edmundsbury*, *Sito magus*, now *Thetford*, *Durolis*, now *Godmanchester*, and *Camboritum*, or *Cambridge*. 10 *Coritani*, who took up the whole Counties of *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *Northampton*, and *Darby*; principall Towns of which were *Lindum*, now *Lincoln*, *Rhegno*, where now is *Leicester*, *Guusenna* not far from *Stamford*, now called *Bridge-Casterton*; *Agelocis*, now *Litleborough*, a small Village neer *Newark* upon *Trent*. *Tripontium* now *Torcester*, not far from *Northampton*. 11 the *Brigantes*, the greatest Nation of the Iland, filling all *Yorkeshire*, the Bishoprick of *Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Westmerland*, and the Countie Palatine of *Lancaster*, in a word all the North of *England* (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the 12 *Oltadini*, whose chief Town was *Bremenium*, thought now to be *Riechester* in *Ruddisdale*.) Principall places of which large and potent Nation, were *Isaurium*, now *Aldborrow* in the North Riding, *Eboracum*, or *York* in the West Riding, and *Petuaria* thought:

thought to be *Beverley* in the East Riding of *Yorkshire*; *Vinovium*, where now is *Binchester*, in the Bishoprick; *Epiacum* now *Pap-Castle* in *Cumberland*; *Calatum*, now *Wealix-Castle* in *Westmorland*; and *Rhigodunum*, now *Ribble-Chester* in the County Palatine of *Lancaster*. 13 The *Cornavii*, seated in the Counties of *Chester*, *Salop*, *Worcester*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whose principall Towns were, *Deuvania*, or *Legio vicesima Victrix*, now *West-Chester*; *Uriconium*, now *Wroxeter*, an ignoble village; *Pennocrucium*, now *Penkridge*, not far from *Stafford*; *Brannogenium*, now *Worcester*; *Manduessedum*, now *Manchester*, on the River *Anker*. 14 And last of all, the *Dobuni* of *Oxford* and *Gloucestershires*; principall places of the which were, *Dorcinia*, now *Dorchester*, seven miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinium*, or *Cyrencester*, neer the head of the *Thames*. Such Nations as are comprehended under the name of *Wales*, and *Scotland*, shall be remembred when we come to speak of those Countries. England.

These, and the rest of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the *Romans* did proceed) being once subdued; *Britain* became a Member of the *Roman* Empire, yet so that many of the *Tribes* had their own Kings, and were suffered to govern by their own Lawes: it being a known custome amongst the *Romans*, as we find in *Tacitus*, *habere servitutis instrumenta & Reges*, to permit Kings sometimes in the conquered Countries, making them instrumentall to the peoples bondage. And it is said of *Lucius Verus* the *Roman* Emperour, that having put an end to the *Parthian* war, *Regna* Regibus, *Provincias* Comitibus *suis regendas dedisse*: he gave those Kingdoms he had conquered to be ruled by Kings; the Provinces to be governed by Provinciall Earles. Kings of which kind were *Codigunus* and *Pratusagus*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; *Lucius*, before-mentioned, the first Christian King, and *Coilus* the Father of *Helena*, Mother of *Constantine* the great. But as afterward in the *Heptarchie* of the *Saxons* that King who over-ruled the rest, and was of most power and estimation, was called the Monarch of the *English*: so probable enough it is, that he amongst the *British* Kings, who was in most credit with the *Romans*, or of most power amongst his neighbours, might be permitted to assume the Title of King of *Britain*. The Catalogue of whom from *Cassibelane* to *Constantine*, I have here subjoyned, according to the tenor of the *British* Historie,

The Kings of *Britain* after the coming in of the *Romans*.

A. Ch.

1 *Cassibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the *Britans* in the war against *Julius Cesar*.
2 *Theomantius*.
3 *Cymbeline*.
4 *Guiderius*.
45. 5 *Arviragus*, by *Hector Boetius* called *Pratusagus*, in whose times *Britain* was subdued by *Aulus Plautius*, sent hither from the Emperour *Claudius*.
73. 6 *Marius*.
125. 7 *Coilus*, the supposed Founder of *Colchester*.
180. 8 *LUCIUS*, the first *Christian* King of *Britain*, and of all the World; who dying without issue, left the *Roman* Emperour his Heir.
207. 9 *Severus*, Emperour of *Rome*, and King of *Britain*.
211. 10 *Bassianus Caracalla*, Sonne of *Severus*, Emperour of *Rome* after his Father; who lost the Kingdom of *Britain* to
218. 11 *Carausius*, a Native of the Iland, who rebelling against *Caracalla*, obtained the Kingdom for himself.
225. 12 *Alectus*.
232. 13 *Aesclepiodorus*.
260. 14 *Coilus* II. the Father of *Helena*.
289. 15 *Constantius*, Emperour of *Rome*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, succeeded on the death of *Coilus* the 2d.
16 *Constantine* the great, the Sonne of *Helena* and *Constantius*, who added his Estates in *Britain* to the *Roman* Monarchie.

But to proceed, *Britain* being thus made a Member of the *Roman* Empire, it was at first divided into three Provinces onely, that is to say, *Britannia prima*, (so called because first subdued) containing all the Countries on the South side of the *Thames*, and those inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Iceni*, *Catieuchlani*, whose *Metropolis* or chief City was *London*. 2 *Britannia Secunda*, comprising all the Nations on the further side of the *Severn*, whose chief City was *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, in the County of *Monmouth*; and 3 *Maxima Cesariensis*, including all the rest to the Northern border, whereof the *Metropolis* was *York*: each Province having severall Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Plat-form of the Civill State, there were appointed for the Government hereof eight and twenty Bishops, residing in those severall Cities; three of the which residing in the principall Cities, were honoured with the Title of *Metropolitans*, and a superiority over all the Bishops of their severall and respective Provinces. And in this state it stood till the time of *Constantine*, who in his new moulding of the Empire, altered the bounds, and enlarged the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, conteining all the Country from the *Frith* of *Solway*, and the *Picts wall* on the South, to the *Friths* of *Edenburgh* and

Dun-

England. *Dunbritton* North; and *Flavia Cæsariensis*, comprehending all between *Thames* and *Humber*: the rest betwixt the *Humber* and the bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old name of *Maxima Cæsariensis*, though now made less than any of the other four: The number of the Provinces being thus enlarged, he making the whole a full and complete *Diocese* of the *Roman* Empire, (whereas *Spain* had *Tingitana* added to it, as before was shewn) subordinate, as *Spain* was also, to the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, and governed by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant Generall. By which division or rather subdivision of the *Roman* Provinces, there was no other alteration made in the *Ecclesiasticall* government, but that the *British* Church became more absolute and independent than it was before, and had a *Primate* of its own (as each *Diocese* had) residing in the same Citie with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant Generall (which was then at *York*) of as great power and jurisdiction in the Isle of *Britain*, as any Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*, in their severall *Patriarchates*. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being ordered by a Canon of the Councill of *Chalcedon*, that their number should not be augmented by any alteration made of the *Roman* Provinces. As for the Forces which the *Romans* kept here in continuall pay, as well to keep their Coasts and Frontires against the Enemy, as for retayning of the Natives in their due obedience, they came in all (if *Panciroll* be not mistaken in his reckoning) to 23000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: three *Legions* keeping here their constant and continuall Residence, that is to say, the sixt Legion, surnamed *Victrix*, at *York*; the 20th Legion surnamed also *Victrix*, at *West-Chester*; and the second Legion sometimes at *Isca Dannoniorum*, which we now call *Exeter*, sometimes at *Isca Silurum*, which is now *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*. Which *Legions* with their *Aides* and *Cohorts*, may well make up the number spoken of before. Of so high estimation was this Iland in the State of *Rome*.

Yet could not all these Forces so preserve the Countrie from forrein Enemies, but that in the declining of the *Roman* Empire, the *Saxons* made great spoyles on the coasts thereof; as did the *Scots* and *Picts* on the Northern borders: against all which the *Romans* held out well enough, and made good their ground, till the recalling of the *Legions* out of *Britain* for defence of *Italy* it self, then wasted and destroyed by the barbarous nations. Which hapned in or about the yeer of Christ 407, and some 470 yeers from the first invasion; *Honorius* being at that time the *Roman* Emperour, and *Victorinus* the last Governour for the Empire, in the Isle of *Britain*. For though the noble *Ætius*, on the Petition and complaint of the slaughtered people, unmercifully butchered by the *Scots* and *Picts*, sent some small forces to assist them against those Enemies: yet were they presently called back for defence of *Gaul*, against the *Hunnes* breaking in upon it out of *Italie*. And then the wretched *Britains* hopeless of all help from *Rome*, and being unable, by their own strength to repell the Enemy, by reason of their long ease and disuse of Arms; applied themselves to *Aldroenus*, King of *Armorica* in *France*, (called *Little Britain*) a Prince extracted from the same stock, for relief and succour: whose Brother *Constantine* (according to the *British* storie) passing over with a competent Army, and having valiantly repulsed the barbarous people, was crowned King of *Britain*: the first of a new race of Kings, which swayed the Scepter, with much trouble and continual conflicts, either against the *Scots* or *Saxons*, till they were finally subdued and shut up in *Wales*. Those of most observation in the course of storie, were, 1 *Constantine* the first King, and the restorer of the Countrie to Peace and quiet, traiterously murdered by a *Pict*. 2 *Vortiger*, E. of the *Gevilles*, (now *Cornwall*) Protector of *Constantius*, the Sonne of *Constantine*, taken out of a Monastery; after whose death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himself: but being unable to defend it against the Enemy, and make his title also good against the other children of *Constantine*, first called in the *Saxons*. 3 *Vortimer*, eldest Sonne of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the *Saxons* in many battels; but in the midst of his successes was poysoned by *Rowena* a *Saxon* Lady, second Wife of *Vortiger*. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkish* writers and other *Legendaries* report so many idle and impossible actions. Doubtless he was a Prince of most perfect vertue, a great Preserver of his Countrie from approaching ruine, and worthy of the pen of an able *Panegyrist*: by whom his brave atchievements might have come entire unto us, without the intermixture of those feats of *Chivalry*, affabulated to him and his Knights of the *Round-table*. For by the overstraining of some *Monkish* Writers, *Geofry* of *Monmouth* and the rest, they have given too just occasion to posterity to suspect that vertue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the story, as admiration of the persons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur* and his Nobles onely; *Charlemagne* and the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, men of great vertue and renown, suffering as deeply in the same kind, by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the custome of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the twelve dayes following, with such pastimes and sports as are (or have been used of late) by the *Lords of Misrule* in some Gentlemens houses: an Institution which the *Scotish* Writers of those times much blame, perhaps not unjustly; it being a time more fit for our devotions than such rude disports. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying, left the Crown to 5 *Constantine*, the Sonne of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall*, his neerest kinsman, slain by *Aurelius Conanus*, his own Nephew, who succeeded after him: which fraction did so weaken the distressed *Britans*, that they were forced to withdraw themselves beyond the *Severn*: as 6 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joynt forces of the *Saxons*, to charge the plain Countries beyond the *Severn*, for the safer, but more fruitless Mountains. Of the rest, till *Cadwallader*, there is little left of any certainty but their names only; which are thus ranked in the second race of

The

The Kings of *Britain* after the withdrawing of the *Romans*.

A. C.

433. 1 *Conſtantine*. 10.
443. 2 *Conſtantius*. 3.
446. 3 *Vortiger*. 18.
464. 4 *Vortimer*, his Sonne. 7.
471. 5 *Vortiger* (again) 10.
481. 6 *Aurelius Ambroſius*. 19.
500. 7 *Uter Pendragon*. 6.
506. 8 *Arthur*. 36.
542. 9 *Conſtantine* II. 4.
546. 10 *Aurel. Conanus*. 30.
576. 11 *Vortipor*. 4.
580. 12 *Malgo*. 6.
586. 13 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*. 27.
613. 14 *Cadwan*. 22.
635. 15 *Cadwallan*. 43.
687. 16 *Cadwallader*, the laſt King of the *Britans*, who on a ſuperſtitious zeal travelled in pilgrimage to *Rome*, there to receive the habit of a *Religious* Order from the hands of Pope *Sergius*; where he died not long after, Anno 689. After whoſe death, his Succeſſors were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but Kings or Princes of *Wales*. And there we ſhall be ſure to find them.

And ſo the *Britans* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongſt the *Germans*, but greater by the aggregation of many people, under their name and ſervice, than in themſelves: the *Jutes* and *Angles* joyning with them, and paſſing in Accompt as the ſame one Nation. Their Countries different as their names, untill this Conjunction; but neighbouring neer enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the firſt in that part of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe*, which we now call *Sleſwick*, where ſtill the Town called *Angoleu* doth preſerve their memory; the *Jnites* upon the North of them, where there is ſtill a Province called by the name of *Jniteland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, ſituate in the very neck of that *Cherſoneſe* where it joyneth with *Germany*. Joyning their powers they ſpread themſelves with good ſucceſs to the South and Weſt; of which more hereafter. And growing Maſters of the Seas infeſted with continuall Pyracies the Coaſts of *Britain*; occaſioning herein an Officer of great truſt and power, appointed to defend and ſcour thoſe Seas, in the *Notitia* called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongſt the *Britans*, they were called in by *Vortiger* to aid him againſt the *Scots* and *Picts*, whom they overcame in a pitched field neer *Stamford*, in the County of *Lincoln*: for ſo far had the barbarous people marched without any reſiſtance. Rewarded for this victorie with the Iſle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole Countie of *Kent*, they began to quarrell with their hoſts: whom by degrees they diſpoſſeſſed of all the Countrey on this ſide of *Severn*; parcelling it into ſeven Kingdomes, called the *Saxon Heptarchie*, that is to ſay, 1 Of *Kent*, 2 of the *South-Saxons*, 3 of the *Weſt-Saxons*, 4 of the *Eaſt-Saxons*, 5 of the *Eaſt-Angles*, 6 of the *North-Humbers*, and 7 of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period, and Kings of which ſeverall Kingdomes, and the uniting of them into one Monarchie, we are next to ſhew.

1 The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that Countie onely, was begun by *Hengiſt*, who with his Brother *Horſus* had the leading of the *Saxon* forces, at their firſt entrie into *Britain*, Anno 455. being the ſixt yeer after their firſt coming in, who reſtoring *Paganiſm* to this Countrie, when the reſt of the Iſle was *Chriſtian*, occaſioned the diſtinction of *Kent* and *Chriſtendom*. The *Kentiſh*, afterwards the firſt of the *Saxons* who received the Goſpell by the preaching of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the Apoſtle of the *Engliſh Saxons*. Principall Cities of this Kingdom, were 1 *Canterbury*, once the Regall ſeat of the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his converſion, to *Auguſtine* the firſt Archbiſhop thereof, and his Suceſſors: afterwards the See of thoſe Archbiſhops, who had here their Palace and Cathedrall, the Kings removing to *Reculver*. Seated in the Eaſt part of the Countrie, about ſeven or eight miles from the Sea, a little Brook ſerving it thence with ſome commodities. A Citie of more Antiquity and fame, than beautie; being now ruinous and decayed, and having nothing in it worth obſervation, but the Cathedral Church, firſt founded by *Ethelbert* before-mentioned, but afterwards new-built upon his foundation, in the form it now ſtands by Archbiſhop *Lanfrank*, *Will: Corboyle*, and ſome other of their Succeſſors in the ſaid See. The Archiepiſcopall Palace is a goodly building, and the ruines of S. *Auguſtines* Monaſtery ſhew what once it was. 2 *Dover*, antiently called *Dubris*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhore, where the paſſage is ſhorteſt into *France*; for that cauſe fortified with a ſtrong and (in thoſe dayes accounted an) impregnable Caſtle, eſteemed one of the keys of *England*, and the chief of the *Cinque-Ports*, now giving the title of an Earl to the houſe of *Hunſdon*, chief of the Familie of the *Caries*, neerly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of famous memorie. 3 *Rocheſter*, ſeated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chatham* (the ſtation of the Royall Navie) an antient Citie, but of no greatneſs; in former times called *Durobrivis*, after that *Roffa*, thence the name of *Roff-cheſter*, a Biſhops See, the ſecond for Antiquity in all the Iland. 4 *Maidſton*, upon the *Medway* alſo neer the head thereof, the largeſt and moſt beautifull in all this Countrey, and moſt commodiouſly ſeated for publick buſineſs.

The

SAXONS.

The Kings of *Kent*.

A. Ch.
455. 1 *Hengiſt*, the firſt King.
488. 2 *Eſk*, or *Oſca*.
512. 3 *Octa*.
532. 4 *Insmerick*.
561. 5 *Ethelbert*, the firſt Chriſtian King of this Countrie.
617. 6 *Edbald*,
641. 7 *Ercombert*.
665. 8 *Egbert*.
673. 9 *Lotharius*.
686. 10 *Edrick*.
693. 11 *Wightred*.
726. 12 *Egbert* II.
749. 13 *Ethelbert* II.
759. 14 *Alricus*.
794. 15 *Ethelbert* III.
797. 16 *Cuthred*.
805. 17 *Barldred*, the laſt King of *Kent*, who loſt both life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *Weſt-Sex*, or the *Weſt-Saxons*, An. 824. The progenie of *Hengiſt* having been before extinguiſhed in the perſon of *Alricus*, overthrown and ſlain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*:

II. The Kingdom of SOUTH-SEX, or of the SOU-SAXONS, was began by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that people, An. 488. It conteined only the two Counties of *Suſſex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated: the firſt ſo called *quaſi South Sex*, the Countrie of the *South-Saxons*, the ſecond *quaſi South-Rey*, as lying on the South-ſide of the River *Thames*, in the ſame ſenſe as S. *Maries* Church on the other ſide of that River (in reſpect of *London*) is called S. *Maria Over-Rey*. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as in other places, was reſtored again in the time of King *Edilwalch*, by the preaching of S. *Wilfride*, Archbiſhop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of moſt importance in it, were, 1 *Chicheſter*, built by *Ciſſa* the 2d King hereof, and called *Ciſſan-ceſter*, encompaſſed almoſt round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Suſſex*, and a Biſhops See, removed hither from *Sealſey*, a Demy-Iland, in the time of the *Norman* Conquerour, where it was firſt planted by Archbiſhop *Wilfride*. 2 *Haſtings*, one of the *Cinque*-ports, in *Suſſex* alſo; the landing-place of the *Normans*, and famous for the over-throw of King *Harold* in the fields adjoyning. 3 *Guildford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well-built, and having in it two Pariſh Churches. 4 *Arundell*, in a *Dale* or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence ſo named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Teſtament of King *Alfride* unto *Anthelm*, his Brothers Sonne. Of great note for a beautifull and capacious Caſtle; but more for giving the title of Earl to the noble Families of the *Albeneys*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*: this laſt of ſuch a large and diffuſed Nobilitie, that in the yeer 1641. there were no fewer than eight *Howards* in the houſe of *Peers*. 5 *Kingſton* upon the *Thames*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Kingſton* upon *Hull* in *Yorkſhire*: heretofore famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *Engliſh Saxons*, whence it had the name of *Kingſton*, or the Kings Town. This Kingdom had only 3 Kings, cruſhed in the infancy thereof by more potent neighbours.

The Kings of the *South-Saxons*.

A. Ch.
488. 1 *Ella*, the firſt King.
514. 2 *Ciſſa*, the Sonne of *Ella*, who loſt his life and Kingdome to *Cerdic* King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
590. 3 *Cheulin*, King of *Weſt-Sex*, called himſelf King of the *South-Saxons*.
4 *Edelwach*, or *Ethelwolf*, the firſt Chriſtian King, overcome and ſlain in battel by *Ceadwill*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, An. 687. After whoſe death *Berthan* and *Authun*, two Brethren, took on themſelves the Government, with the title of *Dukes* or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withſtand the puiſſance of the *Weſt-Saxons*, this Kingdom was ſubdued by *Ina*, the Succeſſor of *Ceadwall*, by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of WEST-SEX, or of the WEST-SAXONS, the third in order, and that which did in fine prevail over all the reſt, conteined the Counties of *Cornwall*, *Devon*, *Somerſet*, *Dorſet*, *Wilts*, *Southampton* and *Berks*: begun by *Cerdic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons* ariving with new Forces out of *Germany*, Anno 495. who having overcome the *Britans* of this Weſtern tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entituled himſelf King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, Anno 522. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as elſwhere, was reſtored again in the time of *Kingils*, their firſt Chriſtian King, by the preaching of S. *Birinus*, Biſhop of *Dorcheſter* neer *Oxford*, then a great City of no fewer than ten Pariſhes, now reduced to one. Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1 *Exeter*, a fair and goodly Citie, and a Biſhops See, removed hither from *Cridington* or *Kirton*, by *Leofricus*, Anno 1049. Seated upon the bank of the River *Ex*, whence the name of *Ex-ceaſter*; environed with deep ditches, and very ſtrong wals, in compaſs about a mile and half beſides the Suburbs, in which are contained in all 15 Pariſh Churches, beſides the Minſter, a beautifull and ſtately Fabrick. 2 *Bath*, ſo called from the *Bathes* there being, the chief Citie of *Somerſet*; by the *Latives* called *Aqua Solis*, by the *Greeks* Ὕδατα θερμαὶ, for the ſelf ſame reaſon. Situate in a low Vallie, environed about with Hils very ſteep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and freſh Springs, to the great commodity of the people. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monaſterie, partner with *Wels*, the Biſhops See

See, in the ſtile Epiſcopall; and gives the Title of an Earl to the noble Family of the *Bouchiers*. SAXONS.
3 *Falemouth*, in *Cornwall*, ſeated upon a large and capacious Bay, ſo full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the beſt Ships, that it is ſaid an hundred ſayl of Ships may be lodged therein with ſuch convenience, that from the top of the one, the Maſt of another is not to be ſeen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater ſafety with two very ſtrong Caſtles built by *Henry* the 8th, that of S. *Mandits* on the Eaſt, and that of *Pendinnis* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the Weſt. 4 *Dorcheſter*, the chief Town of *Dorſetſhire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principall at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and conſequently of no great trading: not ſo much famous for ought elſe as giving the Title of a Marqueſs to *Henry* Earl of *Kingſton*, of the noble Family of the *Pierrepoints*. 5 *Wilton*, the head Town, in thoſe times, of *Wiltſhire*, and a Biſhops See, honoured with the reſidence of nine ſeverall Biſhops. But by tranſlating of the See to *Sarum*, (or *Sarisbury*,) as the fitter place, and carrying thither therewithall the thorow-fare which before was here, it fell by little and little into decay, and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market-Town. 6 *Winchester*, called *Venta* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons Vent-ceaſter*, ſituate on the banks of a pleaſant River, the ſeat Royal of the *Weſt Saxon* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wolves-eye*, ſo named from the Kings of the *Wolphian* Family, and the ſituation of it in the circlings of the fore-ſaid River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *Wool-Staple* here kept, as ſome, much leſs from Cardinal *Wolſey*, as others moſt abſurdly think. The houſe given after to the Biſhops, and made their Palace. The Town in compaſs two miles, beſides the Suburbs, commodiouſly ſeated in a low place, between very ſteep Hils, by which it is defended both from cold and wind: afflicted very much ſince thoſe times both by war and fire, half of the ground within the Town being fields and gardens; but ſtill adorned with a magnificent Cathedrall, and a gallant (but no great) Caſtle, bravely mounted upon an hill for defence and proſpect; beſides a *College*, and an *Hoſpital* added ſince thoſe dayes. 7 *Southampton*, conveniently ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richeſt Towns in thoſe parts of *England*. Well built of fair large ſtreets, beautified with 5 Pariſh Churches, and fortified with high walls, a double ditch, and a right ſtrong Caſtle: but the Caſtle now decayed and ruined. 8 *Reading*, on the Banks of the River *Kennet*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great trade for clothing, well-built, and of three Pariſh Churches; heretofore beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle and a goodly Monaſterie, but both now decayed. 9 *Windſor*, called *Windleſhores* in the old *Saxon*, ſituate neer the Banks of the *Thames* on a riſing ground, which gives it a fair proſpect over all the Countrey, adorned in ſucceeding times with a Palace Royall of the Kings of *England*, and the ſeat of the Order of the *Garter*. 10 *Wallingford*, the *Gualleua* of the Antients, and then the chief Town of the *Attrebatii*, as it was afterwards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the Countie of *Berks*: a mile in compaſs at that time, within the walls, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, and adorned with twelve Pariſh Churches. So deſolated by a Plague, Anno 1348. that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep that in repair; and nothing of the wals left (as not much of the Caſtle) but the tract and ruins.

The Kings of the *Weſt Saxons*.

A.Ch.			
522.	1 *Cerdic*, the firſt King. 17.	687.	11 *Ceadwall*.
539.	2 *Kenric*. 29.	690.	12 *Ina*, who firſt gave the *Peterpence* to the Church of *Rome*:
565.	3 *Celingus*, or *Cheuline*. 10.	725.	13 *Ethelard*. 14.
595.	4 *Celric*. 5.	739.	14 *Cuthbert*. 16.
600.	5 *Ceolwolf*. 14	755.	15 *Sigebert* II. 1.
614.	6 *Kingil*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.	756.	16 *Kinulph*. 31.
646.	7 *Kenewalchin* 31.	787.	17 *Bithric*. 13.
677.	8 *Sigebert*. 1.	800	18 *Egbert*, the moſt puiſſant King of the *Weſt Saxons*, who united all the
678.	9 *Eſewin*. 2.		
680.	10 *Centwin*. 7.		

Heptarchie into one Eſtate, of whom ſee more amongſt the Monarchs of the *Saxons*, and the Kings of *England*

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the yeer 527, by *Erchenwin*, deſcended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*, from whom we have the name of *Wedneſday*, or *Wodenſday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middleſex*, *Eſſex*, and ſo much of *Hartfordſhire* as is in the *Dioceſe* of *London*. The *Chriſtian* Faith expulſed here as in other places, was reſtored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the Abby Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, by the preaching of *Mellitus* the firſt Biſhop of *London* after the entrance of the *Saxons*; ſuppreſſed again by *Seward* and *Sigebert* the Sonnes of *Sebert*; but ſetled ſtronger than before by *Cedda*, the next Biſhop there. Principall Cities of this Kingdom, beſides *London*, ſpoken of already, were 1 *Weſtminſter*, ſituate in thoſe times, a mile from *London*, now adjoyning to it. The See of the Archbiſhop of *London* in the time of the *Britains*: afterwards by the *Saxons* called *Thorn-eye*, or the Thorny Iland, till the new *Minſter* built by *Sebert* as before is ſaid, and the *weſtern* ſituation of it in regard of S. *Pauls*, built at the ſame time by *Ethelbert* the King of *Kent*, gained it this new name. A Citie honoured with the

Saxons. ſeat of the Kings of *Eaſt-Sex*, and ſince thoſe times with that of the Kings of *England*; the names of the *old Palace* of the one, and the *new Palace* of the other, ſtill remaining there; beautified upon that occaſion with more ſtately and magnificent houſes, belonging to the King, Biſhops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom, having of late a new Town added to it in the *Convent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the Monks of *Weſtminſter*) for uniformity of building, and handſome ſtreets, inferiour to no Citie of *France* or *Italy*. 2 *Colcheſter*, the chief Town of *Eſt-ſex*, ſituate neer the Sea, on the River *Coln*, a Colonie of the *Londoners* in former times thence called *Colonia Londinenſium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Biſhops See, from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Ceaſter*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colcheſter*. A fair and well built Town, and of good reſort, fortified with an old *Roman* wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3 *Ithanceſter* in *Dengey* Hundred, where S. *Ceadda* the ſecond Biſhop of *London* baptized the relapſed *Eaſt-Saxons*. 4 *Hartford*, the chief Town of the Countie ſo called; by *Beda* named *Herudford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Chriſtianity among the *Saxons*, in which S. *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Apoſtle of that People, had a conference or conſultation with the Britiſh Biſhops; more memorable in the following times, for giving the title of an Earl to the illuſtrious Family, furnamed *De Clare*, the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimonie to *John* of *Gaunt*, D. of *Lancaſter*; and at this time the title of Earl and Marqueſs to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the *Eaſt-Saxons*.

A.Ch.		A.Ch.	
527.	1 *Erchenwin*, the firſt King.	664.	8 *Sighere*.
587.	2 *Sledda*.	664.	9 S. *Sebba*.
596.	3 S. *Sebert*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.	694.	10 *Sigheard*.
	4 *Sward* and *Sigebert*.		11 *Seofride*.
623.	5 *Sigebert* II. or the Litle.	701	12 *Offa*.
	6 *Sigebert* III.	709.	13 *Selred*.
661.	7 *Swithelme*.	774.	14 *Suthred*, the laſt King of the *Eaſt-Saxons*, ſubdued by *Egbert* the great and potent King of *Weſt-Sex*, Anno 828. and his Kingdom made a Member of that riſing Monarchy.

V. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, ſo called from the *Angli* or *Engliſh*, which poſſeſſed theſe parts, and the *Eaſtern* ſituation of it; begun by *Uffa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, Anno 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridge-ſhire*, and the Iſle of *Ely*. The *Chriſtian* Faith firſt planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Miniſterie of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the firſt Biſhop of the *Eaſt-Angles*, the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of moſt importance in it, were 1 *Dunwich*, on the Sea-ſhore, the firſt Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles*, for the Countie of *Suffolk*, then a Town capable of that Dignity, now ruinous, decayed, and for the greateſt part worn into the Sea. 2 *Ipſwich* in the ſame Countie of *Suffolk*, and the chief of the Countrie, a rich, populous, and well traded Emporie, conſiſting of no fewer than 5 Pariſh Churches. 3 *Norwich*, the head Citie of *Norfolke*, ſituate on the River *Yare*, which runs thence to *Yaremouth*; lying out in length a mile and an half, half as much in breadth, and in that Circuit comprehending about 30 Pariſhes; well walled about with many a Turret, and 12 Gates for entrance; but hath within it much waſt ground, the Citie ſuffering great loſs both in wealth and buildings by *Kets* Rebellion, in the time of K. *Edward* the ſixth; recovered of the firſt blow by the *Dutch Manufactures*, of the laſt ſtill languiſhing; yet ſtill it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedrall, the three Palaces of the Biſhops, the Dukes of *Norfolke*, and the Earls of *Surrey*; and the ruins of an antient Caſtle of the *Saxons* building. 4 *North Elmham*, the Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles* for thoſe parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this, and that of *Dunwich* ruinated in the *Daniſh* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 yeers, and here continuing (both Sees united) unto one, till removed to 5 *Thetford*, another Town of this Countie, ſituate on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the leſſer *Ouſe*, a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at laſt removed to *Norwich*. 6 *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that Countie, by *Antonine* called *Camboritum*, whence the modern name: unleſs we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for ſome call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reaſon of the Vniverſity, ſaid to be founded by *Sigebert*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda* that he Founded a School for the education of Children in the wayes of good Learning; but he ſpeaketh neither of *Vniverſitie*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7 *Ely*, ſituate in the Iſle ſo named, occaſioned by the divided ſtreams of *Ner* and *Ouſe*, with the over-flotes of other Rivers turning a great part of this tract into Fens and Mariſhes the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girvii*. A place of no great beauty or reputation, as ſituate in a foggy and unhealthfull ayr, but only for a Fair Monaſtery, built by S. *Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northumbers*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and repleniſhed with Monks by *Ethelwold* B. of *Wincheſter*, Anno 970. or thereabouts; finally made a Biſhops See in the time of King *Henry* the firſt, Anno 1109.

The

The Kings of the *East-Angles.*

A.	Ch.	
575.	1	*Uffa*, the first King.
582.	2	*Titullus.*
593.	3	*Redwall*, the first Christian King.
624.	4	*Erpenwald.*
636.	5	S. *Sigebert*,
638.	6	*Egric.*
642.	7	*Anna.*
654.	8	*Ethelbert.*
656.	9	*Edelwald.*
664.	10	*Aldulfe.*
683.	11	*Elfwolph.*
714.	12	*Beorn.*
714.	13	S. *Ethelred.*
749.	14	*Ethelbert* II. treacherously murdered by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, to whose Court he came an invited Guest, Anno 793. after whose death this Kingdom became subject to the *Mercians*, and then to *Egbert* the *West-Saxon*, governed by Tributarie Kings of their own Nation, of whom we have no constat till the time of
870.	15	S. *Edmund*, descended from *Anna*, the 7th King hereof, Martyred by the *Danes* for his stout and constant perseverance in the Faith of *CHRIST*; from whence the fair Town of S. *Edmunds burie*, in the County of *Suffolk* took denomination. After whose death the Kingdom was possessed by the *Danes*, till vanquished by King *Edward* the Elder, by whom it was united unto the rest of *England.*

VI. The Kingdom of *NORTHVMBERLAND*, so called from the situation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *York*, *Lancaster*, *Durham*, *Westmorland*, *Cumberland*, and *Northumberland* properly so called, and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbritton*, formerly reckoned of as Members of the *Roman* Empire. Extorted from the *Britans* by *Octa*, the Sonne, and *Ebusa*, the Brother of *Hengist*, Conducters of new Forces hither, (all of the nation of the *Angli*) by the leave of *Vortiger*, under pretence of guarding these Countries from the in-roads of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber* to the River of *Tweda*; the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Tweda* to the two *Frythes* before-mentioned: both Governed a long while by Dukes, under the Soveraigntie and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the yeer 547. Duke *Ida* takes unto himself the title of King of *Bernicia*, and Anno 559 Duke *Ella* doth the like in *Deira*. Towns of most notice in this last (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) besides *York*, spoken of before, were 1 *Loncaster*, the chief Town of that County, situate on the River *Lon*, which with the addition of *Ceaster* much used by the *Saxons*, made the name thereof; called for the same reason *Longovicus* by the Emperour *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled, nor much frequented, but of sufficient fame in our *English* Annals for those noble persons, which have successively born the titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greatest Princes for revenue, of any Subjects in *Christendom*. 2 *Kendall*, or *Candale*, situate in a dale on the River *Can*, whence it had the name; the chief Town of *Westmorland*: built in the manner of a Cross, two long and broad streets thwarting one another. A rich, populous, and well-trafied Town, especially for the making of fine woollen cloth; but of more fame for giving the title of an Earl to *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*, and *John de Foix*, created Earl hereof by *Henry* the sixt. 3 *Carlile*, upon the River *Eden*, a frontire Town betwixt the *Romans* and the *Scots*, as now between the *Scots* and *English*: consumed to Ashes in the time of the *Danish* Furies, afterwards re-built by *William Rufus*, made an Episcopall See in the reign of King *Henry* the first, and beautified with a Cathedrall foundedat the perswasion of *Athelwolfus*, the first Bishop thereof. 4 *Monk-chester*, on the Northern banks of the River *Tine*, which maketh there a safe and capacious Haven. Of no great note, till the *Norman* conquest, when from a Castle built by *Robert* Sonne of *William* the Conqueror, it was called *New-Castle*: growing from that time forwards to such wealth and trading by the neighbourhood of the Cole-mines there, that it is now the goodliest Town in all the North; fortified with strong walls, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the L. *Will. Cavendish* Viscount *Mansfield*, the honourarie titles of Earl and Marquess. 5 *Hagnestade*, or *Hextold*, by the *Romans* called *Axelodunum*, by the *Normans*, *Hexham*, a Bishops See, in the first times of *Christianity* amongst these *Northumbers*, specially so called, converted to the faith in the time of *Oswald* their tenth King, by the Ministery of *Aidan* the first Bishop of *Lindisfarn*. *Eata* the fift Bishop, erecting here an Episcopall See, for the better propagation of the Gospell amongst this people; after a succession of ten Bishops ruinated and suppressed by the *Danish* Furies. 6 *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, situate on an hill as the name importeth, a Bishops See, translated hither with the body of S. *Cutbert*, Anno 990, or thereabouts, from *Lindisfarn* a small Iland on the coast of *Northumberland*, where it was first erected by S. *Aidanus*, the first Bishop thereof: planted in *Lindisfarn*, because of the solitude of the place; translated hither to avoid the Furie of the *Danes*, who then raged extremely in these Quarters. And being setled here, was fortified with such ample Privileges and possessions by the *Saxon* Kings, that the Bishops were reputed for *Countie Palatines* at and before the *Norman* Conquest. 7 *Halifax*, in the *West-riding* of *Yorkshire*, of great wealth by making of cloth. 8 *Rippon*, in the same, adorned with a fair Cathedrall or Collegiate Church, subordinate to that at *York*. 9 *Godman-ham*, (by *Beda* called *Gotmandin Gaham*) famous in those dayes for a Temple of the *Saxon-Idols*, burnt down and utterly destroyed by *Coifi*, the chief Priest thereof, converted to *Christianity* by *Paulinus* the first Archbishop of *York*, and the Apostle of the *Northhumbers* in these parts. The Cata-

SAXONS. logue of the Kings of which mighty Nation, by reason of the division of it into two Kingdoms, as before is said, is very intricate and confused; the Kingdomes being sometimes united, and sometimes dis-joyned But in regard that the most prevalent King of either was called King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* onely, I shall accordingly subjoyn them in this order following.

The Kings of *Northumberland*.

A. Ch.			A. Ch.	
547.	1	*Ida*, the first King.	686.	10 S. *Alfride*.
560.	2	*Ella*, King of *Deira*.	705.	11 *Osred*.
589.	3	*Ethelrick*, Sonne of *Ida* King of *Bernicia*.	716.	12 *Kenred*.
			718.	13 *Osrick* II.
593.	4	*Ethelfride*.	729.	14 *Ceolwulph*.
617.	5	*Edwin*, Sonne of *Ella*, the first *Christian* King.	738.	15 *Ogbert*.
			758.	16 *Eswulph*.
633.	6	*Osrick*.	759.	17 *Edilwald*.
634.	7	S. *Oswald*.	765.	18 *Alured*.
645.	8	*Oswy*, who having subdu'd and slain *Oswin* King of *Deira*, was the first absolute King of all *Northumberland*, no more divided after that.	774.	19 *Ethelred*.
			778.	20 *Alswald*.
			789.	21 *Osred* II.
			794.	22 *Ethelred* II. After whose death, slain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his
671.	9	*Egfride*.		

Predecessors had been before) the Kingdom became distracted into parts and factions; invaded by the *Danes* on the one side, the *Scots* and *Picts* on the other, who during these distractions had possessed themselves of all the Countries on the other side of the *Twede*. At the last Anno 827. they yeelded themselves to *Egbert* the most potent King of the *West-Saxons*, ruled by his Deputies for a while, then subdued by the *Danes*, and finally recovered to the Crown of *England* by *Athelstan* and *Edred*, Anno 950, or thereabouts. Content since that to give the Title of an Earl to some eminent persons, both of *English* and *Normans* races: as it hath done since the first yeer of King *Richard* the 2d to the noble Family of the *Percies*, descended by *Joceline* of *Brabant*, Brother of *Adelize* the second Wife of King *Henry* the first, from *Charles* the *Great*, Emperor, and King of *France*.

VII. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, was begun by *Cridda*, or *Creodda*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *English* Nation; who setling in the heart of *Britain*, where the people were least used to Armes, made themselves masters of the Counties of *Glocester*, *Worcester*, *Hereford*, *Salop*, *Chester*, *Stafford*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leicester*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, *Warwick*, *Oxon*, *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and the rest of *Hartfordshire*: which bounded in a manner by all the rest of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Meare*, which signifieth a bound or limit. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as in other Kingdoms of the *Saxons*, was restored again in the reignes of *Penda*, *Peada*, and *Wolfhere*, by the Preaching of *S. Chad*, the first Bishop of *Lichfield*. Places of mostobservation in it, 1 *Hereford*, seated on the banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of most flourishing meadows, and no less plentifull Corn-fields; raised out of the ruines of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine*, the tract of which name it doth still retain. A Bishops See in the time of the *Britans*, restored to that dignity by the *Saxons*, Anno 680. the honourary title of the *Bohuns*, once Earls hereof; and afterwards of *Henry* of *Bullingbrook*, Duke of *Hereford*. 2 *Worcester*, pleasantly seated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Bishops See, Anno 679. beautified with a fair Cathedrall, and every way considerable for situation, number of Churches, neat buildings, the industrie of the Inhabitants, and giving the title of an Earl to the noble familie of the *Somersets*, extracted by the *Beauforts* from *John* of *Gaunt*. 3 *Lichfield*, the first Bishops See amongst the *Mercians*, founded there Anno 656. by *Oswy* King of the *Northumbers*, but fixed and setled by S. *Chad* in the reign of *Wulfhere*, King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very infancy with such fair possessions, that in the yeer 793 *Aduluus*, the Bishop hereof, was made Archbishop of the *Mercians*. But it proved onely a personall honour, and died with him. 4 *Coventry*, so called from an old *Covent* or Religious house, which gave name unto it. Situate in *Warwick-shire*, and now the principall of that County, though esteemed a County of it self. Beautified with a goodly wall two fair Parish Churches, large streets, and very handsom houses. A City of great trade and riches though destitute of all advantages which a navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great fame for a stately monastery, to which the See Episcopall was for a while removed from *Lichfield*; now a ruine onely. 5 *Leicester*, once a Bishops See, the *Diocese* taken out of *Lichfield*, Anno 733, removed to *Dorchester* neer *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in those dayes with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abbie, and a strong Castle; all decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of these later times: the Town remaining in as good plight both for trade and buildings, as most Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of most fame for the Earls thereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble *Saxons*, *Simon de Montfort* the *Catiline* and great *Incendiary* of this Kingdom; the Princes of the house of *Lancaster*, who bore this title; with some others since. 6 *Darby*, upon the River

ver *Derwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good resort; adorned with five Churches a goodly stone-bridge, and a large Market-place; the honourarie title of the noble Familie of the *Stanleys*, created Earls hereof by King *Henr*, the 7th. 7 *Nottingham*, seated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an hill which over-looks it: For buildings, fair streets, and a spacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of most fame for a Royall and magnificent Castle, which for strength, statelinesse and prospect, may justly challenge the precedencie of most in *England*. 8 *Lincoln*, a Town in those dayes of great strength and note, one of the best peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchie*, and of great merchandise and traffick both by Sea and Land: insomuch that *Remigius*, then Bishop of *Dorchester*, thought fit to translate hither the Episcopall See. Now much decayed, and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln was, London is*, &c. The chief fame which it now hath is for the *Minster*, one of the stateliest Piles in *England*, and perhaps in *Christendom*; high seated on an hill, and from thence discerned over all the Countrie. 9 *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great sport the *Hunters* found in the neighbouring *Forest*, commodiously seated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouse*, rising unto the North with a soft ascent, consisting of four parish Churches, and shews the ruines of a Castle built by *Edward* the Elder, Anno 917. 10 *Peterburgh*, seated in a Nook or *Angle* of *Northamptonshire*, where formerly had been a gulf or whirl-pool of exceeding depth: but made firm ground by *Wolfere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the foundations of the Monastery, Anno 633. dedicated to S. *Peter*, whence it had this name, before then called *Medanshede*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great esteem, as standing out of the way for trade, and in no plausible place for health or pleasure: yet shewing two handsom streets, a large Market-place, and a fair Parish Church (besides the Abbie) made an Episcopall See by King *Henry* the 8th. 11 *Northampton*, built on the Northern bank of the River *Antona*, (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very strong Castle, and seated in so good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpose to remove their Vniversity hither. The noble Family of the *Comptons* are now Earls hereof. 12 *Bedford*, so called from *Beds* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both sides thereof, for the use of Travellers; growing in time to so great bignes as to contain in it five Parish Churches: famous in former times for the great battell fought in the adjoyning fields, Anno 572, in which *Cuthwulf* the *Saxon* vanquished the *Britans*, and became Master of the Countrey. But more famous for giving the title of Duke to *John* of *Lancaster*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the sixt, and *Jasper* of *Hatfield*, Vncle to King *Henry* the 7th. 13 *S. Albans*, so called from a famous Monastery here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of S. *Alban*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, neer adjoyning to it: out of the ruines whereof, decayed by Age, and destroyed by War, arose the present greatnes of S. *Albans*, the fairest and best-traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 14 *Buckingham*, the chief Town of the County so called, situate on the River *Ouse*: fortified by King *Edward* the Elder against the *Danes*, Anno 915. otherwise not much observable, but for those many noble personages which have had the title of Dukes hereof.

SAXONS

The Kings of *Mercia*.

A. Ch.

582. 1 *Criedda*, the first King.
593. 2 *Webba*.
614. 3 *Cheorl*.
626. 4 *Penda*.
656. 5 *Peada*, the first *Christian* King.
659. 6 *Wulfhere*.
675. 7 *Etheldred*.
704. 8 *Kenred*.
709. 9 *Chelred*.
716. 10 *Ethelbald*, overcome by *Cuthert*, K. of the *West-Saxons*, at a fight neer *Burford* in the Countie of *Oxon*, the place still called *Battelage* hill.
758. 11 *Offa* the great.
796. 12 *Egfride*.
797. 13 *Kenwulf*.
819. 14 *Kenelm*.
820. 15 *Ceolwulf*.
821. 16 *Bernulf*.
824. 17 *Ludecan*.
826. 18 *Withlaf*, overcome in fight (as were his two Predecessors) by *Egbert* King of *West-Sex*, became his tributary.
839. 19 *Berthulf*.
852. 20 *Burdred*, a Substituted King of the *West-Saxons*, and the last King of the *Mercians* (the short reign of his six Predecessors portending that fatall period to be neer at hand.) After whose death, Anno 886, this Kingdome for some few yeers tyrannized over by the *Danes*, was united by King *Alured*, to the *English* Monarchie.

Such was the Order and Succession of the *Saxon* Kings during the *Heptarchie*, or division of it into seven Kingdoms, continuing separate & distinct till the prevailing fortune of the *West-Saxons*, brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But so, that they were subject for the most part unto one alone, who was entituled *Rex Gentis Anglorum*: those which were stronger than the rest giving the Law unto them in their severall turnes; and are these that follow.

England.

The *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh-Saxons* in the time of the *Heptarchie*.

A. Ch.

455. 1 *Hengiſt*, King of *Kent*, who firſt brought the *Saxons* into *Britain*.
481. 2 *Ella*, the firſt King of the *South-Saxons*.
495. 3 *Cerdic*, the firſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
534. 4 *Kenrick*, King of the *VVeſt-Saxons*.
561. 5 *Cheulme*, or *Celingus*, King of the *VVeſt-Saxons*.
562. 6 *Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *Saxons*.
616. 7 *Redwald*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*.
617. 8 *Edwin*, King of *Northumberland*.
634. 9 *Oſwald*, King of *Northumberland*.
643. 10 *Oſwy*, King of *Northumberland*.
659. 11 *Wulfhere*, King of *Mercia*.
675. 12 *Etheldred*, King of *Mercia*.
704. 13 *Kenred*, K. of *Mercia*.
709. 14 *Chelred*, K. of *Mercia*.
716. 15 *Ethelbald*, K. of *Mercia*.
758. 16 *Offa* the Great K. of the *Mercians*.
794. 17 *Egfride*, K. of *Mercia*.
796. 18 *Kenwolf*, K. of *Mercia*.
800. 19 *Egbert*, the Sonne of *Alcmond*, K. of the *Weſt Saxons*, vvho having vanquiſhed all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kings, and added moſt of their Eſtates unto his own, cauſed the whole united Body to be called *Engel-lond*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Counſell held at *Wincheſter*, Anno 819, being the 19th yeer of his Reign over the *Weſt-Saxons*; and by that name was then crowned in the preſence of his Nobles, and the reſt of his Subjects, leaving it unto the reſt of his Succeſſors.

But before we come to the recitall of their names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next conſiderable *Actors* on the Stage of *England*, vvho in the time of this *Egbert* firſt invaded the Countrey, and after exerciſed the patience of his Poſterity, till in fine they got the kingdom to themſelves. Of the Originall and firſt Succeſſes of this people, vve ſhall ſpeak more at large vvhen we come to *Denmark*. Suffice it here to knovv, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Iuites* and *Engliſh* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, they thought it not amiſs to followv them into *Britain* alſo, making a Diſcovery of ſome part of the Coaſts thereof vvith three Ships only, Anno, 787, being the firſt yeer of *Bithric* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the *Weſt-Saxons*. Which having done, and prepared themſelves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert* they invaded *Northumberland*, the Iſle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coaſts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings ſucceeding, having vanquiſhed the *Northumbrians*, *Eaſt-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*, they erected in thoſe kingdoms many petit Tyrannies: By *Alfred* firſt ſtopped in their Career; by *Edward* the *Elder* outed of the *Eaſt-Angles*, and by *Athelſtan* of *Northumberland* alſo; the *Danes* for ſome time after being ſubject to the *Engliſh* Government, mixing in mariages and alliance, and incorporate with them. By the valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the perſon of *Canutus* obtained the kingdom: who having impolitickly ſent back his *Danes* into their Countries (as if a kingdom got by force could be held by favour) opened a way to their execluſion from the Crown, which hapned within ſeven yeers after his deceaſe. Which ſaid, we come to the Succeſſions of

The Kings of *England* of the *Saxon* Race.

819. 1 *Egbert*, the laſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the firſt of *England*. 18.
837. 2 *Ethelwolf*, the Eldeſt Sonne of *Egbert*. 20.
857. 3 *Ethelbald*, the Eldeſt Sonne of *Ethelwolf*. 1.
858. 4 *Ethelbert*, the Brother of *Ethelbald*. 5.
863. 5 *Ethefred*, the Brother of the two former Kings, the third Sonne of *Ethelwolf*, and as much moleſted by the *Danes*, as his Brethren were. 10.
873. 6 *Alfride*, the fourth Sonne of *Ethelwolf*, who totally united the *Saxon Heptarchie* into one Eſtate; vanquiſhed the *Danes*, whom he made ſubject to his commands though he could not expell them; he divided *England* into ſhires, and reſtored the Vniverſity of *Oxon*.
900. 7 *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Elder*, the Sonne of *Alfride*, who recovered the *Eaſt-Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he ſhut up in *Northumberland*. 24.
924. 8 *Athelſtan*, the Sonne of *Edward*, who ſubdued the *Britans* of *Cumberland*, and *Cornwall*; and compelled the *Danes* to ſubmit themſelves to the *Engliſh* Government. In his time lived S. *Guy* of *Warwick*. 16.
940. 9 *Edmund*, the Brother of *Athelſtan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under

under obedience; and the kingdom of the *Britans* in *Cumberland* utterly ſubverted. *England.*

946. 10 *Edred*, the Brother of *Edmund* and *Athelſtan*, ſo fortunate againſt the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be chriſtned. 9.

955. 11 *Edwy*, the Sonne of *Edmund*.

959. 12 *Edgar*, the Brother of *Edwy*, ſurnamed the *Peaceable*, the moſt abſolute *Monarch* of *England* ſince the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the tribute of money impoſed by *Athelſtan* on the *Welch* was exchanged into a tribute of Wolves. 16.

975. 13 *Edward* II. Sonne of *Edgar*, treacherouſly murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her Sonne, hence ſurnamed the *Martyr*. 3.

978. 14 *Ethelred*, the younger Sonne of *Edgar*, and half Brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unquietly which he got unjuſtly. Oppreſſed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yeerly tribute of 10000 pounds, inhanced to 48000 pounds within ſhort time after; which monies were raiſed upon the ſubjects, by the name of *Dunegelt*. Weary of theſe exactions, he plotted warily with his Subjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they ſlept in their beds; which accordingly was put in execution on S. *Brices* night, Novemb. 12. Anno 1012. To revenge this out-rage and diſhonour, *Swaine* King of *Denmark*, with a fayl of 350 ſhips, came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuiſſant Prince, to fly into *Normandy*, leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Daniſh* Tyrant; who miſerably plagued them till his death. To whom ſucceeded his Sonne *Cnute* (*Canutus*) a more temperate Prince, who maugre *Ethelred* now returned, or his Sonne *Edmund Ironſide*, a moſt valiant King, did in the end poſſeſs himſelf of the whole Kingdom.

1016 15 *Edmund* II. ſurnamed *Ironſide*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom; at laſt divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherouſly and baſely murdered by Edward, ſurnamed the *Out-Law*, his Eldeſt Sonne; he was Grand-father of *Edgar Athelings*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third King of the *Scots*.

The *Daniſh* Kings.

1017. 1 *Canutus*, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, after the death of *Edmund* the 2d, ſole King of *England*. 20.

1037. 2 *Harald*, the baſe Sonne of *Canutus*.

3 *Hardy-Cnute*, the lawfull Sonne of *Canutus*, by *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred* the 2d, and Mother of *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Confeſſor*; the laſt King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whoſe death, that People having tyrannized in *England* for the ſpace of 255 yeers (of which they had Reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Countrey, or paſſed in the Accompt of *Engliſh*; *Edward* the Confeſſor, the youngeſt Sonne of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the abſence of the Children of *Edmund Ironſide* his Elder Brother.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence, as they did, I obſerve three cuſtoms yet in uſe amongſt us. Firſt, each Engliſh houſe maintained one *Dane*, who living idly like the *Drone* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we ſee an idle Fellow, we call him a *Lordane*. 2 The *Danes* uſed when the *Engliſh* drank, to ſtab them, or cut their throats: to avoid which villany, the party then drinking, requeſted ſome of the next unto him, to be his ſurety or *pledge*, whilſt he paid nature her due: and hence have we our uſuall Cuſtom of *pledging* one another. 3 The old *Romans* at the expulſion of their Kings annually ſolemnized the *Fugalia*: according to which pattern the joyfull *Engliſh* having cleared the Countrey of the *Danes*, inſtituted the annuall ſports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *ſcorning* or triumphing. This *ſolemnity* conſiſteth in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in thoſe dayes, during which the *Feſtivall* laſted, and was celebrated by the younger ſort of both ſexes, with all manner of exerciſes, and paſtimes in the ſtreets, even as *Shrovetide* yet is. But now time hath ſo corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no ſign of the firſt Inſtitution.

The *Saxons* reinthroned.

A. Ch.

1046. 16 *Edward* III. ſurnamed the Confeſſor, half Brother both to *Edmund Ironſide*, and *Hardy-Cnute* the *Dane*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Daniſh*, *Saxon*, and *Mercian* Laws, one univerſall and generall Law; whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its Original: which may be true of the *written* Laws, not of the *cuſtomary* and unwritten Laws; theſe being certainly more antient. He was in his life of that Holineſs, that he received power from above to cure many Diſeaſes; amongſt others the ſwelling of the throat, called by us the *Kings Evill*: a Prerogative that continueth *Hereditary* to his Succeſſors of *England*. Finally, after his death, he was Canonized for a *Saint*; and dyed having Reigned 24 yeers.

1066 17 *Harald*, a Sonne to Earl *Godwin*, was choſen King in the nonage of *Edgar Atheling*, Grand-child to *Edmund Ironſide*, the true Heir of the kingdom. But *William* Duke

of

England. of *Normandy*, (of which people we have ſpoke already when we were in *France*, and ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the laſt *Actors* on the *Theatre* or Stage of *England*: This *William* I ſay) pretending a Donation from *Edward* the *Confeſſor* invaded *England*, ſlew *Harald*, and with him 66654 of his *Engliſh* Souldiers; poſſeſſed himſelf of the kingdom; uſing ſuch Policie in his new Conqueſt, that he utterly diſheartned the *Engliſh* from hopes of better Fortune. From him beginneth the new Accompt of the Kings of *England*, thoſe of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the firſt, ſecond, or third, &c.

The *Norman* Kings.

1067. 1 *William*, ſurnamed the *Conqueror*, after the vanquiſhment and death of *Harald*, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the antient Lawes of *England*, and eſtabliſhed thoſe of *Normandy* in place thereof; governing the people abſolutely by the povver of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followvers, and ſuch as vvere ingaged in the Action vvith him, from vvhom moſt of our antient *Families* doe derive themſelves; thoſe Lands to be holden in *Knights-ſervice*, vvhich drevv along vvith it the *Wardſhip* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.

1089. 2 *William* II. ſurnamed *Rufus*, ſecond Sonne to the Conqueror, ſucceded by the appointment of his Father, and was crowned King; ſlain afterwards in the *New Foreſt*, by an Arrow levelled at a *Deer*.

1102. 3 *Henry*, for his learning ſurnamed *Beau-clerk*, in the abſence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy-Land* Wars) entred on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him alſo the Dukedom of *Normandie*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-iſſue, he left one only Daughter whoſe name was *Maud*, firſt maried to the Emperour *Henry* the fift, and after to *Geofrie Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*. 34.

1136. 4 *Stephen*, ſecond Sonne of *Stephen* Earl of *Champagne* and *Blais*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the *Conqueror*, ſucceeded; who to purchaſe the peoples love, releaſed the tribute called *Dane-gelt*: he ſpent moſt of his reign in War againſt *Maud* the Empreſs. 19.

The *Saxon* blood reſtored.

1155. 5 *Henry* II. Sonne to *Maud* the Empreſs, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret*, Siſter to *Edgar Atheling*; reſtored the *Saxon* blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geofrie* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *Engliſh* Empire, as alſo the Dutchie of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poiſtou*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by conqueſt. Happy in all things, the unnaturall rebellions of his Sonnes excepted. 34.

1189. 6 *Richard*, the Sonne of *Henry*, ſurnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy-Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almoſt driven out of *Syria*; took the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy atchievments, returning homewards to defend *Normandy* and *Aquitain* againſt the *French*, was by Tempeſt caſt upon *Dalmatia*, and travelling thorough the Dominions of the Duke of *Auſtria* was taken Priſoner, put to a grievous ranſom, and after his return ſlain at the ſiege of *Chaluz* in the Province of *Limoſin*. 12.

1201. 7 *Iohn*, Brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better, as being an unnaturall Sonne to his Father, and an undutifull Subject to his Brother. Diſtreſſed for a great part of his reign by Wars with his Barons, outed of all *Normandie*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the *French*; to whom alſo he was likely to have loſt the Realm of *England*. Finally, after a baſe ſubmiſſion of himſelf and his kingdom to the Popes Legat, he is ſaid to have been poyſoned at *Swinſtede* Abbey. 17.

1218. 8 *Henry* III. Sonne of *Iohn*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a Compoſition with King *Lewis* the 9th, was reſtored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Succeſſors till the reign of K. *Henry* the ſixt. Exhauſted by the Pope, and oppreſſed a long time by his factious and unruly Barons: but at laſt victorious. 56.

1274. 9 *Edward*, the Sonne of *Henry*, awed *France*, ſubdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into ſubjection; of whoſe King and Nobility he received homage. 34.

1308. 10 *Edward* II. Sonne of *Edward* the firſt, a diſſolute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the vulgar for his immeaſurable love to *Pierce Gaveſton*, and the *Spencers*, was twice ſhamefully beaten by the *Scots*; and being depoſed by a ſtrong Faction raiſed againſt him by his Queen, and *Roger* Lord *Mortimer*, was barbarouſly murdered in *Barkley* Caſtle. 19.

1327. 11 *Ed-*

1327. 11 *Edward* III. Sonne of *Edward* the 2d, a moſt vertuous and valorous Prince, brought the *Scots* to obedience, overthrew the *French* in two great Battails, took the Town of *Callice*, and many fair Poſſeſſions in that Kingdom. 50. *England.*

1377. 12 *Richard* II. another of our unfortunate Kings, loſt many of his Peeces in *France*, and at laſt being over-awed by his two great Vncles of *Lancaſter* and *Gloceſter*, and taken Priſoner by his Coſin, the Duke of *Hereford*, he was forced to reſign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Pomfret* Caſtle.

The *Lancaſtrian* Line.

1399. 13 *Henry* IV. Sonne to *Iohn* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, the fourth Sonne to *Edward* the 3d, was by the power of the Sword, but with the conſent of the people, ſetled in the Throne, and ſpent his whole Reign in ſuppreſſing home-bred Rebellions. 15.

1414. 14. *Henry* V. the mirrour of Magnificence, and Pattern of true vertue, purſued the Title of *France*, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the *French* Crown, but lived not to poſſeſſe it. 9.

1423. 15 *Henry* VI. a pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned K. of *France* in *Paris*; which he held during the life of his *Vncle Iohn* of *Bedford*, and *Humphrey* of *Gloceſter*, after whoſe deaths, he not only loſt *France* to the *French*, but *England* and his life, to the *Yorkiſh* Faction. 38.

The *Yorkiſh* Line.

1461. 16 *Edward* IV. Sonne of *Richard* Duke of *York*, the Sonne of *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, and Grand-Sonne of *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *York*, the fift Sonne of King *Edward* the third, challenged the Crown in right of the Lady *Anne* his Grandmother, Daughter of *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, the Sonne of *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, and of *Philippa* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, the third Sonne of the ſaid King *Edward*, and Elder Brother of *Iohn* of *Gaunt*. The claim firſt ſet on foot by his Father, the Duke of *York*, who loſt his life in purſuance of it at the Battail of *Wakefeild*; with better fortune and ſucceſs purſued by King *Edward* himſelf, who finally after 9 bloody Battails fought between the Houſes (eſpecially that of *Towton*, in which were ſlain 36000 *Engliſh*) was quickly ſeated in the poſſeſſion of *England* and *Ireland*. 23.

1484. 17 *Edward* V. his Sonne, was before his Coronation murdered by his Vncle *Richard*, in the Tower of *London*.

1484. 18 *Richard* III. Brother of *Edward* the 4th, a moſt wicked and tyrannicall Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King *Henry* the 6th, and Prince *Edward* his Sonne, 3. *George* Duke of *Clarence*, his Brother, 4 *Haſtings*, a faithfull ſervant to King *Edward*, 5 *Rivers*, *Vaughan*, and *Grey*, the Queens kindred, 6 *Edward* the 5th his Soveraign, with his young Couſin *Richard*, 7 *Henry* Duke of *Buckingham* his dear Friend, and greateſt Coadjutor in theſe his ungodly Practices, and his Wife *Anne*; ſo to make way to an inceſtuous mariage with his Neece *Elizabeth*, the Eldeſt Daughter of *Edward* the 4th, but before the ſolemnity he was ſlain at *Boſworth*. 3.

The Vnion of the *Families*.

1487 19 *Henry* VII. Earl of *Richmund*, Heir to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, (as Sonne of *Margaret*, Daughter of *Iohn* Duke of *Somerſet*, Sonne of *Iohn* Earl of *Somerſet*, Sonne of *Iohn* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*) after the overthrow of *Richard*, maried *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir to *Edward* 4th, uniting by that mariage the divided *Families*. He was alſo extracted from the *Britiſh* and *French* Royall blood, as being Sonne to *Edmund Tudor* Earl of *Richmund*, Sonne to *Owen Tudor* (deſcended from *Cadwalladar*, the laſt of the *Britans*) and *Katharine* of *France*, Widdow of *Henry* the 5th. His whole wars was againſt home-bred Rebels; the chief being *Lambert*, and the Followers and Fautors of *Perken Warbeck*. 23.

1509. 20 *Henry* VIII. Heir to both *Families*, between which were fought for the Diadem, 17 pitched Feilds; in which periſhed 8 Kings and Princes 40 Dukes, Marqueſſes, and Earls, 200000 of the common people, beſides Barons, and Gentlemen. This King baniſhed the uſurped *Supremacie* of the *Popes*, and began the *Reformation* of Religion; though formerly he had writ a Book againſt *Luther*, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*, afterwards made Hereditarie by Act of Parliament to his Heirs, and Succeſſors. A Prince of great vices, but of greater vertues. 38.

1547. 21 *Edward* VI. the Sonne of *Henry* the 8th by *Iane Seymour* his 3d Wife; out of whoſe womb he was fain to be cut, to come into the World, as *Caſar* was: but he had neither *Caſars* Fortune, nor length of life; dying very young, and his affairs conducted by

divided

England. divided Counſels; though otherwiſe of great hopes, and of a pregnancie of judgement above his yeers. 6.

1553. 22 *Mary*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th by *Katharine* of *Spain*, the Widow of his Brother *Arthur*, reſtored the Popes Supremacy baniſhed by her Father, with the whole maſs of Popery aboliſhed in her Brothers Reign. To which Religion ſo addicted, that in the ſhort time of her Reign there was more blood ſhed, than in the whole 44 yeers of her Siſter *Elizabeth*. In the laſt yeer of her Reign ſhe loſt *Calice* to the *French*, which proved the loſs of her life alſo, as it was ſuppoſed. 5.

1558. 23 *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th by the Ladie *Anne Bullein* his ſecond Wife, a moſt gracious and Heroick Princeſs, was by the divine providence of God preſerved from the practices of her Enemies in her Siſters reign, to ſway the Scepter of the kingdom. She purſued the Reformation of Religion begun in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt coin brought in by her Father; furniſhed the Royall Navy with all kind of warlike Ammunitions; encreaſed the Revenue of the Univerſities by the Statute of *Proviſions*; ſuccoured the *Scots* againſt the *French*, the *French* Proteſtants againſt the Papiſts, and both againſt the *Spaniard*: defended the *Netherlands* againſt the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entred League with the *Moſcovite*; and was famous for her prudence and government amongſt the *Turks*, *Perſians* and *Tartars*, yea her very Enemies. Finally ſhe died in the 45 yeer of her reign, and the 70th of her life, on the 24th of *March*, Anno 1602. according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the new yeer with the Feaſt of the *Annunciation*. To whom ſucceeded *IAMES* the ſixt, King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all men, as the next undoubted heir of the Crown. Of whom we ſhall ſay more when we come to ſpeak of the *Monarchs* of *Britain*; of which he was the firſt ſince the fall of the *Roman* Empire, and ſuch more properly than the greateſt of all thoſe Emperors had been before; None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* it ſelf, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the Iſles adjoyning, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State diſtinct, we will conſider it and the Kings thereof with reference to *Reputation* abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Armes*, and *Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And firſt for *Reputation*, when all Chriſtendom in the Councill of *Conſtance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana Natio* was one of the Principall, and not *Subaltern*; and had its vote of equall balance with the Nations of *Franco* or *Italy*, in all affairs concerning the doctrine, diſcipline, and peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in thoſe *Generall Councils*, and the rank they held among other *Chriſtian* Princes; I find that the Emperor of *Germany* was accounted *Major filius Eccleſiæ*; the King of *France*, *Minor filius*; and the King of *England*, *Filius tertius, & adoptivus*. The King of *France* in *Generall Councils*, had place next the Emperor, on his right hand; the King of *England* on his left hand; and the King of *Scotland*, next before *Caſtile*. Now indeed the King of *Spain* being ſo much improved, is the *dearly beloved Sonne of the Church*; and arrogateth to himſelf the place above all other Princes: but in the time of Pope *Iulius*, the controverſie ariſing between the Ambaſſadors of the two Princes for precedencie; the Pope adjudged it to belong of right unto *England*. And Pope *Pius* the fourth, upon the like controverſie, ariſing between the Ambaſſadors of *France* and *Spain*, adjudged the precedencie to the *French*.

Touching the *Souldierie* of *England*, and their moſt notable atchievements, both by Sea and Land, ſufficient hath been ſaid already. What *Forces* the Kings hereof have been able to raiſe, and may command for preſent ſervice, will beſt be ſeen by the action of King *Henry* the 8th at *Fuſen*, the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88. and the numbers of the trained Bands of the ſeverall Counties. Firſt, for the Action of King *Henry* the 8th, he had in his *Avantguard* 12000. Foot, and 500 Light Horſe in *new Jackets* with red Guards; in the *Rere-ward* a like number both of Hore and Foot; and in the main Battail 20000 Foot and 2000 Horſe, all in *Red Jackets* and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe. They drew after them 100 great Peeces, beſides ſmall ones; and for conveyance of their *Ordinance*, Baggage, and other neceſſaries, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horſes, beſides other cariages. In the next place, for 88. the Queen diſperſed in ſeverall places on the Southern Coaſts of the Kingdom, to hinder the landing of the Enemy 25000 Souldiers of both ſorts; at *Tilbury* for the defence of the Citie of *London*, under the command of the Earl of *Leiceſter*, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horſe; and for the Guard of her own perſon under the Lord *Hunſdon* 34000 Foot, & 2000 Horſe: in all, the number of 84000 men, beſides thoſe goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did preſent her with at their own proper charges. And as for the trained Bands, the number of both ſorts diſciplined and muſtered to be ready upon all occaſions, in the 8th yeer of King *James*, (for I have ſince ſeen no Muſter-Roll of them) amounted, to 96150 able men, 144300 Armed men, 935 Demilances, 677 Light-Horſe, and 16545 Pioneers; beſides what was required of *Peers* and *Prelates*, ſuppoſed to amount to 20000 Armed men, and 4000 Light Horſe. And for their ſtrength at Sea, beſides the *Navy Royall* conſiſting of about 30 gallant Ships, beſides the leſſer Veſſels; the beſt and braveſt that any Prince in *Chriſtendom* can boaſt of, as his own propriety: there are ſuch ſtore of *Colliers* and *Merchants* ſhips, fit for any ſervice, that in the yeer 88 aforeſaid, the Queen had 100 Sayl of good Ships to oppoſe the *Spaniard*, and 20 more to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*: And in the yeer 1597 ſhe ſet out for the Iland Voyage no fewer than 120 Sayl of all ſorts, of which 60 were men of war.

As

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of King *Henry* the 7th, to be no more than 400000 Crowns *per Annum*; but grants, that afterward they were improved to a million more by King *Henry* the 8th, the diſſolution of Monaſteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of *Wards*, making that improvement. And to ſay truth, the Vniverſall diſſolution of Religious Houſes of all ſorts, did for the time ſo mightily increaſe his annuall Income, that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveyours*) for the better managing of the ſame. But theſe Additions being waſted by his own exorbitant expences, and the ſeverall Alienations made by King *Edward* the ſixth; thoſe Courts of new Erection were diſſolved again; and the Revenue fell ſo ſhort of its former height, that in the 12 yeer of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (beſides the Court of *Wards*, and the *Dutchie* of *Lancaſter*) came to no more than to 188197.l. 4s. Of which 110612.l. 13.s. went out that yeer upon the Navie charge of Houſhold, and other neceſſary Aſſignments: Since which time the great increaſe of trading both at home and abroad, and the great glut of money in all parts of the World, hath added very much to the *Intrada*: The certaintie whereof as I doe not know, ſo neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hear-ſay. *England.*

The Arms of the Realm of *England*, are *Mars*, 3 Lions *paſſant Gardant*, *Sol.* The reaſon why theſe Arms quartered with the *French*, took the ſecond place, are 1 becauſe that *France* at the time of the firſt quartering of them, was the larger and more famous kingdom. 2 That the *French* ſeeing the honour done to their Arms, might more eaſily be induced to have acknowledged the *Enbliſh Title*. 3 Becauſe the *Engliſh* Arms were compounded of the Lion of *Aquitaine*, and the two Lions of *Normandy*, being both *French* Dutchies.

The principall Orders of *Knight-hood* are, and were, 1 of the *Round Table*, inſtituted by *Arthur* King of the *Britans*, and one of the Worlds *nine Worthies*. It conſiſted of 150 Knights, whoſe names are recorded in the Hiſtory of King *Arthur*, there where Sir *Vre*, a wounded Knight, came to be cured of his hurts: it being his Fate, that only the beſt Knight of the Order ſhould be his *Chirurgion*. The Arms of moſt of theſe, with their ſeveral *Blazons* (I know not on how good autoritie) we find in *Bara* the *French* Herald: The principall of them were Sir *Lancelot*, Sir *Triſtrum*, Sir *Lamorock*, Sir *Gawin*, &c. all placed at one *Round Table*, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The Round Table hanging in the great Hall at *Wincheſter*, is falſely called *Arthurs Round-Table*, it being not of ſufficient Antiquity, and containing but 24 Seats. Of theſe Knights there are reported many fabulous Stories. They ended with their *Founder*, and are feigned by that *Lucian* of *France*, *Rablaes*, to be the Ferry-men of Hell; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy bread, and a phillop on the noſe.

2 Of S. *George*, called commonly the *Garter*, inſtituted by King *Edward* the third, to increaſe vertue and valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or, as ſome will, in honour of the Counteſs of *Salisburies* Garter, of which Lady, the King formerly had been inamoured. But this I take to be a vain and idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the *Founder* and the *Order*; firſt publiſhed by *Polidore Virgil* a ſtranger to the Affairs of *England*, and by him taken up on no better ground than *fama vulgi*, the tradition of the common people, too trifling a Foundation for ſo great a building, Common bruit, being ſo infamous an Hiſtorian, that wiſe men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it: But for this fame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elſewhere canvaſſed. Suffice it to obſerve in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto this *Order*, in teſtimony of that Bond of Love and Affection wherewith the *Knights* or *Fellowes* of it were to be bound ſeverally unto one another, and all of them joyntly to the King as the *Soveraign* of it. So ſaith the *Regiſter* of the Order, (in which occurreth not one word of the Ladies *Garter*) affirming that King *Edward* did ſo fit the habit into that deſign, *Vt omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*: But to return unto the *Order*, there are of it 26. Knights, of which the Kings of *England* are *Soveraignes*: and is ſo much deſired for its excellencie, that 8 Emperors, 21 forein Kings, 22 forein Dukes and Princes, beſides divers Noble-men of other Countries have been *Fellowes* of it. The Enſign is a blew Garter, buckled on the left leg, on which theſe words are imbroydered, viz. *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe*. About their necks they wear a *blew Ribband*, at the end of which hangeth the Image of S. *George*; upon whoſe day the *Inſtallations* of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3 Of the *Bath*, brought firſt into *England* 1399, by *Henry* the fourth. They are created at the *Coronation* of Kings and Queens, and the *Inſtallation* of the Princes of *Wales*: their duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the Kings Rights. The Knights hereof diſtinguiſhed by a *Red Ribband*, which they wear ordinarily about their necks, to difference them from Knights *Batchelors*, of whom they have in all places the Precedencie; unleſs they be alſo the Sonnes of Noble-men, to whom their birth gives it before all *Orders*.

4 Of *Baronets*, an Order inſtituted by King *Iames* in the 9th yeer of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Vlſter*. They have Precedency of the *Knights* of the *Bath*, but not of thoſe of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sonnes of the Nobility. But this being *Hereditarie* not *perſonall*, and rather *civill* than *militarie*, is not ſo properly to be rancked amongſt *Orders* of Knight-hood.

There were in *England*, at, and ſince the time of the Reformation,
Arch-Biſhops 2. Biſhops 20.

WALES.

WALES is bounded on all ſides with the Sea, except towards *England*, on the Eaſt; from which ſeparated by the River *Dee*, and a Line drawn to the River *Wie*. Antiently it extended Eaſtwards to the River *Severn*, till by the puiſſance of *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, the *Welch* or *Britans* were driven out the plain Countries beyond that River, and forced to betake themſelves to the Mountains: where he cauſed them to be ſhut up and divided from *England* by an huge Dich, called in *Welch*, *Clawdh Offa*, i. e. *Offa's Dike*: which beginning at the influx of the *Wie* into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepſtow*, extendeth 84 miles in length, even as far as *Cheſter*, where the *Dee* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by *Harald*, That if any *Welchman* was found with a Weapon on this ſide of it, he ſhould have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

The name of *Wales* ſome derive from *Idwallo*, the Sonne of *Cadwallader*, who with the ſmall remainder of his *Britiſh* Subjects, made good the faſtneſſes of this Countrie, and was the firſt who had the title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive that the name of *Welch* and *Wales* was given them by the *Saxons*: who having poſſeſſed themſelves of all the reſt of the Countrie, called the *Britans* who lived here by the name of *Walſh*, which in their Language ſignifieth as much as *Aliens*, becauſe they differed from them both in Lawes and Language; which is the generall Opinion. Moſt probable it is, that as the *Britans* derive their Pedigree from the *Galls*, (as before was proved) ſo they might ſtill retain the name, and were called *Walliſh* by the *Saxons*, inſtead of *Galliſh*: the *Saxons* uſing in moſt words W. for G. as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather, becauſe the *Frenchmen* to this day, call the Countrey *Galles*; and the Eldeſt Sonne of *England*, *Le Prince de Galles*: as alſo that the *Dutch* or *Germans* (of whom the *Saxons* are a part) doe call ſuch Nations as inhabit on the skirts of *France* by the name of *Wallons*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, before it had the name of *Wales*, were the *Silures*, poſſeſſing the Counties of *Hereford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth* and *Glamorgan*, all *Gloceſterſhire* beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Worceſterſhire* on the ſame ſide alſo; their chief Towns *Ariconium*, now *Hereford* (not reckoned ſince the time of *Offa* as a part of *Wales*;) *Balleum*, now *Buelth* in *Brecknock*; *Gobannium*, now *Abergevenny* in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor* in the Countie ſo named; and *Bovium*, now *Boverton* in *Glamorgan*. 2 The *Dimetæ*, poſſeſſing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*, and *Pembrokeſhires*, whoſe chief Towns were, *Loventium*, now *New Caſtle* in *Caermarthen*; *Maridunum*, or *Caermarthen* it ſelf, and *Octopitæ*, where now ſtands S. *Davids*, by the *Welch* called *Menew*, whence that Biſhop hath the name of *Menevenſis* in *Latine*. 3 The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Angleſey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of *Worceſterſhire* beyond the *Severn*, and all *Shropſhire*, on the ſame ſide of the River. Their chief Towns were, *Segontium*, now *Caer Seont* in *Carnarvonſhire*; *Conovium*, now *Conwey* in the ſame County; *Bonium*, where after ſtood the famous Monaſtery of *Banchor* in *Flintſhire*; and *Mediolanium*, now *Llanvillin* in the County of *Montgomerie*. By theſe three Nations was all that tract poſſeſſed which lyeth on the other ſide of the *Severn*, a very ſtout and hardie people, and ſo impatient of the yoke, that two of the three *Legions* which the *Romans* kept conſtantly in *Britain*, as before is ſaid, were planted in and neer theſe people, the better to contein them in due obedience: that is to ſay, the ſecond Legion at *Caer Leon* upon *Uſk*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Deuvana*, where now ſtands *Weſt-Cheſter*. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation ſubject to the power of *Rome*; and no leſs difficult to bring them under the command of the *Saxons*: whom they withſtood, when all the reſt of *Britain* had been conquered by them; and lived to ſee their *Victors* overcome by the *Normans*, before themſelves had yielded to a forrain yoke.

The *Chriſtian* Faith planted amongſt the *Britans* in the time of *Lucius*, they ſtill retained, when all the reſidue of the Iland had relapſed to *Paganiſm*: and they retained it not in ſecret, as afraid to own it, but in a well-conſtituted Church. Inſomuch that *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, when he firſt preached the Goſpell to the *Engliſh Saxons*, found here no fewer than ſeven Biſhops, that is to ſay, *Herefordenſis*, *Tavenſis*, *Paternenſis*, *Banchorenſis*, *Elwienſis*, *Wiccienſis*, and *Morganenſis* (or rather *Menevenſis*:) all which, excepting onely *Paternenſis*, doe ſtill remain amongſt us, though in other names, *Hereford* and *Worceſter* (*Wiccienſis*) reckoned now in *England*; S. *Davids* or *Menevenſis*, *Tavenſis* or *Landaff*, *Bangor*, and *Elwyenſis* or S. *Aſaph*, in *Wales*, according to the preſent boundaries and limits of it. And as they did retain the *Faith*, ſo they retained it after the *tradition* of their Predeceſſors, neither ſubmitting unto *Auguſtine*, as Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, nor to the Pope from whom he came, as *Oecumenicall*, or chief Paſtor of the Church of *Chriſt*; nor receiving any new doctrines or traditions from them; but ſtanding on thoſe principles of *Liberty* and *Religion* which they were poſſeſſed of, till all the world almoſt had yeelded to that powerfull See. Not manumitted from the vaſſalage and thraldom to it, till they embraced the Reformation

on of the Church of *England*, in Doctrine, Diſcipline, and Worſhip: the Liturgie whereof was by the command of Queen *Elizabeth* tranſlated into the *Welch* or *Britiſh*; as the Bible alſo was by vertue of an Act of Parliament in the fift of that Queen; the care thereof committed to the Biſhop of *Hereford*, and the four Biſhops of *Wales*. But becauſe the Bible then ſet forth was onely in the large Church volume; it was in the beginning of the Reign of King *Charles* reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the coſt and charge of my Couſin Mr. *Rowland Heylyn*, one of the Aldermen of *London*, who alſo cauſed the book called *The Practice of Pietie* to be printed in that Language for the inſtruction of the People; and a *Welch* or *Britiſh* Dictionarie to be made and publiſhed for the underſtanding of the Language. *Wales.*

But to return unto the Church, and affairs thereof, for the better ordering of the ſame, it hath been long agoe divided into four Dioceſes (beſides that of *Hereford*) for the exerciſe of *Eccleſiaſtick Diſcipline*, thoſe Dioceſes ſubdivided into 9 *Archdeaconries*, as before in *England*: all ſubject heretofore to their own *Primate* or Archbiſhop, reſiding in the City of *Iſca Silurum*, the *Metropolis* of the *Province* of *Britannia Secunda*; called by the *VVelch* or *Britans*, *Caer-Leon*, or the Citie of the *Legion*, from the *ſecond Legion* fixt there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon upon Uſk*, becauſe ſituate on the River ſo named. But this City being too much expoſed to the fury of the *Saxons*, the Archiepiſcopall See was tranſlated to *Menew*, ſtanding on a Promontorie in the extreme Angle of *Pembrokeſhire*, by *David* then Archbiſhop thereof, and neer of kin to *Arthur* that renowned King of the *Britans*: from whom, in tract of time, the name of *Menew* being left off, the See and Citie came to be called S. *Davids*. From *David* unto *Samſon*, the 26 Archbiſhop of the *VVelch*, (being above 400 yeers) did they hold this dignity: but then the *Peſtilence* extremely raging in theſe parts, Archbiſh. *Samſon* carried with him the Epiſcopall *Pall*, and therewith the dignity it ſelf, to *Dole* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no *Archbiſhops* in *Wales* in name and title, though the power proper thereunto ſtill remained amongſt them: the *VVelch* Biſhops acknowledging no other *Primate*, nor receiving *conſecration* from any other hands than their own Biſhop of S. *Davids*, till Biſhop *Bernard* was compelled to ſubmit himſelf to the power and juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, in the time of King *Henry* the firſt.

But its time to look upon the face of the Country as it ſtands at the preſent, which we find mountainous and barren; not able to maintain its people but by helps elſewhere. To make amends for which defect there were ſome Silver mines diſcovered in it not long ſince, by Sir *Hugh Middleton*, Knight and Baronet, not onely to the great honour of his own Countrie, but to the profit and renown of the whole Iland of *Great Britain*. Their chief commodities are courſe Clothes, entituled commonly by the name of *Welch Freeze*, and Cottons, which Merchandiſe was heretofore brought to *Oſweſtre* (the furtheſt Town of *Shropſhire*) as the common *Emporie*; and there bought by the Merchants of *Shrewſbury*. But the *Welch* coveting to draw the Staple more into their own Countrey, occaſioned the Merchant to hold off from buying their commodities: till in the end the Merchant got the better of them, and inforced them to ſettle the whole trade at *Shrewſbury*, where it ſtill continueth.

To ſpeak of Mountains in a Country which is wholly mountainous, were a thing unneceſſary: yet of moſt note are thoſe of 1 *Snowdon*, 2 *Brecheu*, 3 *Rarduvaure*, and 4 *Plinlimmon*. Not much obſervable but for their vaſt height, and thoſe many notable Rivers which iſſue from them. The principall whereof are, 1 *Dee*, in *Latine* called *Deva*, ariſing out of *Rarduvaure* hils in *Merionethſhire*, and running into the Sea not far from *Cheſter*. Over this River *Edgar* King of *England* was rowed triumphantly in his Barge, by eight inferiour Kings, Vaſſals and Tributaries to him, that is to ſay, *Kenneth* King of the *Scots*, *Malcolm* King of *Cumberland*, *Mac-cuis* King of the Iſles, *Duſwall*, *Gryffith*, *Howel*, *Iago*, and *Indethel*, Princes or Kings of *Wales*: uſing theſe words to ſuch as attended on him, that *then his Succeſſors might call themſelves Kings of* England, *when they did the like*. This was in the yeer 973, and the laſt of his reigne. 2 *Wie*, in *Latine* called *Vaga*, ariſing from *Plinlimmon* hils, and emptying it ſelf into the *Severn* at *Chepſtow*. More in the heart of the Countrie (for theſe are but borderers for the greateſt part of their courſe) 3 *Conwy*, which riſing in *Merionethſhire*, and dividing the Counties of *Denbigh* and *Carnarvon*, mingleth with the Sea at *Abur Conwey*. 4 *Tyvie*, which riſing in *Montgomeryſhire*, and paſſing between the Counties of *Cardigan*, *Pembroke*, and *Carmarthen*, runneth into the Sea a little below *Cardigan*. 5 *Chedlaydy*, which running quite thorow *Pembrokeſhire*, emptieth it ſelf into *Milford* Haven, one of the moſt capacious and ſafeſt havens, not of *England* onely, but of all the world.

The men are of a faithfull carriage towards all men, eſpecially towards one another in a ſtrange Countrie, and towards ſtrangers in their own. Of a temper queſtionleſs much inclining to choler, as being ſubject to the paſsion by *Ariſtotle* called Ακροχολια, by which men are quickly moved to anger, and as ſoon appeaſed: of all angers the beſt and nobleſt. Their Language (the old *Britiſh*) hath the leaſt commixture of forein words of any in *Europe*, and by reaſon of its many Conſonants and gutturall Letters, is not ſo pleaſing as ſome others in the Pronunciation. A Language not much ſtudied by thoſe of other Nations, in regard that ſuch of the Inhabitants who have addicted themſelves to learning, have rather choſe to expreſs themſelves in the *Latine* or *Engliſh* tongues, than that of their own Native Countrie: The principall of which (not to ſay any thing of *Merlin* (the *Tages* of the *Welch* or *Britiſh*) were 1 *Gildas*, for his great knowledge ſurnamed *Sapiens*; 2 *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, and 3 *Giraldus Cambrenſis* the Hiſtorians; and of later times, 4 *William Morgan*, the Tranſlator of the Bible into *Welch*, for which performance moſt

 deſer-

Wales, deservedly made Bishop of *Landaff*. 5 Sir *John Price* the Antiquary. 6 *Owen* the Epigrammatist, &c.

The whole Countrey (not taking the Counties of *Shropshire* and *Monmouth* into the reckoning) containing in it 12 Shires onely: of which, seven were set out by King *Edward* the first, that is to say *Glamorgan*, *Pembroke*, *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, *Merioneth*, *Anglesey*, and *Carnarvon*. The other five, viz the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Montgomery*, *Radnor* and *Brecknock*, were after added out of the *Marchlands* by King *Henry* the 8th. These 12 Shires are again contracted or subdivided into 4 *Circuits*, for the administration of Iustice. Of which the first containeth the Counties of *Montgomery*, *Flint*, and *Denbigh*; the second those of *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, and *Merioneth*; the third those of *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Pembroke*; and the fourth those of *Glamorgan*, *Brecknock*, and *Radnor*.

In these 12 Shires are reckoned one Chase, 13 Forests, 36 Parks, 230 Rivers, and an hundred Bridges. They contain also 1016 Parishes, amongst which, four Cities, 55 Market-Towns, and 41 Castles of the old erection. The Cities small, poor, and inconsiderable. The Market Towns, those specially on the *Marches* and outparts of the Countrie, very fair and strong: as being not only built for commerce and trade, but fortified with Walls and Castles to keep in the *Welch*: and so employed, till the incorporating *Wales* with *England* took away all occasion of the old hostilities. And for the Castles in the In-lands, partly by the iniquity of time, which is *Edax rerum*, but chiefly by the policie of the Kings of *England*, who would not suffer any places of strength to remain in a Countrie almost inaccessible, and amongst men apt to take the advantage offered; the very ruines of them are now brought to ruine.

But to proceed more particularly, the four Cities (or Episcopall Sees) are 1 S. *Davids*, formerly the *Metropolitan* of *Wales*, situate on the Promontorie in *Pembrokeshire*, by the Antients called *Octopitæ*; in a safe place, and far enough from the *Saxons*, whom the *Welch* most feared; but incommodious enough for all the rest of the *Clergie* to repair unto it: and not so safe neither unto the Inhabitants of it, in respect of sundry other nations who have often spoyled and defaced it. For standing neer the Sea, it hath been frequently visited and spoyled, by the *Danes*, *Norwegians*, and other *Pirats*, insomuch that the Bishops were inforced to remove their dwelling to *Caermarthen*; which brought the City, (small enough before, when it was at the biggest) to the condition of a Village. 2 *LLandaffe*, upon the River *Taffe*, whence it took the name, *LLan* in the *Welch* or *British* signifying a Church; *LLandaffe* the Church upon the *Taffe*: the Bishops whereof derive their Lineall succession from those of *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, though the Primacie or Archbishops See were removed to *Menew*: A small Town now it is God wot, nothing to rank it for a City, but the Cathedrall Church and the Prebends houses. 3 *St. Asaph*, a small Town in *Flintshire*, so called from S. *Asaph*, the second Bishop hereof, left here by *Kentigern* a *Scot*, by whom the Cathedrall Church was founded about the year 560. Situate on the banks of the River *Elwy*, thence called *LLan-Elwy* by the *Welch*, the Bishop *Elwyensis* in some *Latine* Writers. 4 *Bangor*, upon the *Menai*, a branch of the *Irish* Sea, of no more beauty and renown than the other three, but onely for the *Cathedrall* founded here by the first Bishops, defaced by *Owen Glendower*, and afterwards reedified by *Henry Dean*, Bishop hereof, An. 1496.

Towns of chief note, (for these Cities have not much in them which is worth the noting) are, 1 *Shrewsbury*, counted now in *England*, but heretofore the seat of the Princes of *Powysland*, who had here their Palace: which being burnt in some of their broyls with *England*, is now converted into Gardens for the use of the Townsmen. The Town well traded and frequented by the *Welch* and *English*, the common Emporie of both; well built, and strongly situate on a rising ground, almost encompassed with the *Severn*, that part thereof which is not fenced with the River, being fortified with a very strong Castle, the work of *Roger de Montgomery* the first Earl hereof, An. 1067. Over the River for convenience of passage, it hath two Bridges, and but two, the one towards *England*, and the other called the *Welch-bridge*, which is towards *Wales*, built by *Leoline*, or *LLewellen* the first, one of the Princes of *North-Wales*: whose they conceive to be that *Statua* which is there standing on the Gate. Remarkable since the times of King *Henry* the sixt, for giving the title of Earl to the Noble Family of the *Talbots*: a Family of great honour, and as great an Estate, till the parcelling of the Lands betwixt the Daughters and Co-heirs of *Gilbert Talbot*, late Earl hereof; according to the ill custom of *England*, where many times the Estate goes to the Females, and the Honour (with nothing to mainiain it) to the next Heir Male. 2 *Banchor*, by *Beda* called *Bancornaburg*, a famous Monastery of the *Britans*; conteining above 2000 *Monks*, attending their devotions at the times appointed, at other times labouring for their livelihood; most cruelly and unmercifully slaughtered by the *Saxons*, at the instigation of *Austin* the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*, offended that they would not yeeld unto his autoritie. 3 *Carnarvon*, on the *Menai* beforementioned, not far from *Bangor* (the Monastery of *Banchor* being in *Flintshire*,) well walled, and fortified with a strong Castle, by King *Edward* the first, after his conquest of the Countrie; formerly much resorted to for the *Chancery* and *Exchequer* of the Princes of *North-Wales*. 4 *Denbigh*, well seated on the banks of the River *Istrad*, which from thence runnes into the *Clwyd*, the faireſt River of all those parts. A Town well traded and frequented, especially since it was made by King *Henry* the 8th the head-Town of a Countie: before which time of great resort, as being the head-Town of the Baronie of *Denbigh*, conceived to be one of the goodliest territories in *England*, having more Gentlemen holding of it than any other. 5 *Mathravall*, not far from *Montgomery*.

gomery, heretofore a fair and capacious Town, honoured with the Palace, and made the chief Seat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, thence called *Kings* of *Matravall*; now a poor village. 6 *Caermarthen*, *Maridunum* antiently, whence the modern name, the *Britans* adding *Caer* unto it: not called so from *Caer-Merlin*, or the Citie of *Merlin*, inchanted by the *Lady of the Lake*, in a deep Cave hereabouts, as old Fablers and *Romances* tels us. A fair large Town, beautified with a Collegiate Church, to which there was a purpose in the time of King *Edward* the 6th, of removing the Episcopall See from S. *Davids*. Not far off, on the top of an Hill, stands *Dinevour* Castle, the chief Seat of the Princes of *South-Wales*, thence called Kings of *Dinevour*; who had their *Chancery* and *Exchequer* in the Town of *Caermarthen*. 7 *Haverford West*, situate in the *Chersonese* or Demy-Iland of *Pembroke-shire*, by the *Welch* called *Ross*, by the *English*, *Little England beyond Wales*, by reason of the *English* tongue there spoken; a Town the best traded and frequented of all *South Wales*. 8 *Milford*, in the same County of *Pembroke*, famous for giving name to the most safe and capacious Haven in all the Iland, consisting of sundry Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships, which makes it capable of entertaining the greatest Navie; the landing place of *Henry* the 7th when he came for *England*. 9 *Monmouth*, situate at the mouth or influx of the River *Munow* (where it falleth into the *Wie*) whence it had the name. A Town belonging antiently to the House of *Lancaster*, the birth place of King *Henry* the fift, called *Henry* of *Monmouth*. That one particular enough to renown the place, and therefore we shall add no more. 10 *Ludlow*, a Town of great resort by reason of the *Court* and *Councell of the Marches*, kept here for the most part ever since the incorporating of *Wales* with *England*, for the ease of the *Welch*, and bordering Subjects, in their sutes at Law. Situate on the confluence of the *Temd*, and *Corve*, and beautified with a very strong Castle, the Palace heretofore of some of the Princes of *Wales* of the blood Royal of *England*, at such times as they resided in this Countrey (of which more anon;) and of late times the ordinary Seat of the Lord *President of Wales*: now reckoned, as all *Shrop-shire* on that side the *Severn*, as a part of *England*. Of *Anglesey* and the Towns thereof, we shall speak hereafter, now taking notice only of *Aberfraw*, the Royall Seat sometimes of the Princes of *North-wales*, called thence *Kings of Aberfraw*. *Wales.*

The Storie of the *Britans* till the time of *Cadwallader* their last King we have had before. After whose retirement unto *Rome*, the whole name and Nation became divided into three bodies; that is to say, the *Cornish-Britans*, the *Britans* of *Cumberland*, and the *Britans* of *Wales*. The *Cornish-Britans* governed by their own Dukes, till the time of *Egbert* the first Monarch of *England*, by whom subdued, Anno 809, and made a Province of that kingdom. The *Britans* of *Cumberland* had their own Kings also (some of whose names occur in Storie) till the yeer 946. when conquered by *Edmund* K. of *England*, the Son of *Athelstan*. But the main body of them getting into the mountainous parts beyond the *Severn*, did there preserve the name and reputation of their Countrey; although their Princes were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but of the *Welsh-men* or *Welch*; and much adoe they had to make good that Title: all the plain Countrey beyond *Severn* being taken from them by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, and themselves made Tributaries for the rest by *Egbert* before mentioned, by *Athelstan* afterwards. Which last imposed a tribute on them of 20 pounds of Gold, 300 pounds of Silver, and 200 head of Cattel yeerly, exchanged in following times for a tribute of Wolves. But howsoever they continued for a time the Title of Kings, whose names are thus set down by *Glover* in his *Catalogue of Honour* published by *Millet*.

The Kings of *Wales*.

A. Ch.

690. 1 *Idwallo*, Sonne of *Cadwallader*.
720. 2 *Rodorick*. 25.
755. 3 *Conan*. 63.
818. 4 *Mervin*. 25.
843. 5 *Rodorick* II. surnamed the Great, who divided his Kingdom small enough before amongst his Sonnes: giving *Guinedh*, or *North-Wales*, to *Amarawdh* his eldest Sonne; to *Cadel* his second Sonne *Deheubarth* or *South-Wales*. and *Powis-land* to his youngest Sonne *Mervin*, conditioned that the two younger Sonnes and their Successors should hold their Estates in Fee of the Kings of *North-Wales*, and acknowledge the Soveraignty thereof, as *Leigemen* and *Homagers*. According unto which appointment it was ordained in the Constitutions of *Howell Dha*, the *Legislator* of *Wales*, that as the Kings to *Aberfraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in way of tribute to the Kings of *London*; so the Kings of *Dynevour* and *Matravall* should pay in way of tribute the like summe to the Kings of *Aberfraw*. But notwithstanding the Reservation of the *Soveraignty* to the Kings of *North-Wales*, *Roderick* committed a great *Solœcism* in point of State by this dismembring of his Kingdom; especially at a time when all the kingdoms of the *Saxons* were brought into one, and that one apt enough upon all occasions to work upon the weakness of the neighbouring *Welch*: which had they been continued under one sole Prince, might have preserved their Liberty, and themselves a Kingdom, as well as those of *Scotland*, for so long a time against the power and puissance of the Kings of *England*: Yet was not this the worst of the mischief neither; his Successors subdividing (by his example) their small Estates into many, insomuch that of the eight tributary Kings which rowed King *Eagar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *Wales*. But *Roderick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we must follow

Wales. in our Storie according to the Division of the Countrey made by him into three Estates, of *North-Wales*, *South-Wales*, and *Powys-land*.

1. *NORTH-WALES*, or *Guinedth*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Carnarvon*, the Isle of *Anglesey*, and the greatest parts of *Denbigh* and *Flint-shires*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Denbigh*, *Carnarvon*, *Aberfraw*, spoken of before, and some in *Anglesey* whereof we shall speak more hereafter. The Countrey (*Anglesey* excepted) the most barren and unfruitfull part of all *Wales*; but withall the safest, and furthest from the danger of the incroaching *English*; which possibly might be the reason why it was set out for the portion of the Eldest Sonne, in whom the Soveraignty of the *Welch* was to be preserved, by the Kings or

A.Ch.	Princes of *North-wales*.		
877.	1 *Amarawd.36.*	1120.	7 *Owen Guinedth.*
913.	2 *Idwallo.*	1178.	8 *David ap Owen.*
	3 *Merick.*	1194.	9 *LLewellen ap Iarweth.*
	4 *Iames* or *Iago.*	1240.	10 *David ap Llewellen.*
1067.	5 *Conan*, Sonne of *Iames.*	1246.	11 *LLewellen* II. Sonne of *Gryffith*, the Brother of
1099.	6 *Gryffith ap Conan.*		*David ap LLewellen*, the last Prince of *Wales* of

the *British* Race. Of whom it is said, that once consulting with a *Witch*, he was told by her that it was his destiny to be caried in triumph thorow *London* with a Crown on his head. Hereupon making some excursions on the *English* Borders, he drew upon himself the whole power of King *Edward* the first, which not being able to withstand, and the King as willing on the other side not to fight with Mountains; Commissioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert* Lord *Tiptoff*, and some others for the King of *England*; and for the *Welch* Prince, *Grono ap Heylyn*, a great man of that Countrey, descended from *Brockwell Skythrac*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land* (from whom, if *Camden* (*Iurenticux* be of any credit, the Author of these Papers doth derive his Pedegree) under whom that Family had the Office of *Hereditarie Cup-Bearer*, and from thence their name; (*Heylyn*, *Promus*, *sive à poculis*, *quæ vox in proprium nomen abiit*, saith the *Welch* Dictionarie) By those Commissioners it was concluded and agreed on, that *LLewellen* should enjoy a part of the Countrey with the Title of *Prince* during his life: the rest in present, and the whole after his decease, to be surrendred over to the King of *England*. But *David* the Brother of *LLewellen* finding himself excluded by this Agreement, from the hope of succession, incensed his Brother and the *Welch* to a new Revolt: the issue whereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of justice; and the death of *LLewellen*, slain in Battail, neer the *Buelth* in *Brecknockshire*. Whose head being pitched upon a stake and adorned with a *Paper-Crown*, was by a Horseman caried triumphantly thorow *London*, Anno 1282. And so the *Propheeie* was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-Wales*, after they had for the space of 405 yeers resisted not only the private undertakers and *Adventurers* of *England*, but the Forces of many puissant Monarchs: whose attempts they alwayes made frustrate by retiring into the heart of their Countrey, and leaving nothing for the *English* to encounter with but their Woods and Mountains. But now the fatall period of the *British* Liberty being come, they were constrained to yeeld to the stronger. What followed after this we shall see anon.

The Arms of these Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions Passant gardant, counterchanged.

2 *POWISLAND* contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery* and *Radnor*, all *Shropshire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the rest of *Denbigh* and *Flintshires*; comprehending by the estimate of those times, 15 *Cantreds* or *hundreds* of Villages, the word *Cant* signifying an hundred, and *Tret* a Village. The principall Cities or Towns of it, were S. *Asaph*, *Shrewsbury*, *Matravall*, spoken of before. A Countrey more partaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*, but alwayes lying in harms way, by reason of the Neighbourhood of the more potent *English*; and therefore given by *Roderick*, to *Mervyn*, his youngest Sonne, partly because he was the youngest, but chiefly because he was a man of approved valour, and so more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and dismembred by the Earles of *Chester* and *Shrewsbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint* and *Denbigh*, and *Shropshire*; and by the Princes of *North-Wales*, who cast many a greedy eye upon it. Of the Successors of Prince *Mervyn*, I find no good *Constat*, more than of *Brockwell Skythrac* before remembred. The last that held it all entire was *Meredyth ap Blethyn*, who following the ill example of *Roderick Mawr*, divided it betwixt *Madoc* and *Gryffith*, his two Sonnes. Of which *Madoc* died at *Winchester*, Anno 1160, in the time of King *Henry* the 2d, his part hereof depending after his decease on the Fortunes of *Guinedth*: and *Gryffith* was by *Henry* the first made Lord of *Powys* (the stile of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his Race it continued till the time of King *Edward* the first, to whom at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith* the fifth from *Gryffith ap Meredith* before mentioned surrendred his place and Title, and received them of the King again to be holden in *Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the Custom of *England*. *Avis*, or *Hawis*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was maried unto *John Charleton Valett* (or *Gentleman of the Privie Chamber*) to King *Edward* the 2d, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powis*, *Edward*, the fift also of this Line of the *Charletons*,

was

was the laſt of that Houſe; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Eſtate and Title to the Houſe of the *Greyes*: and of them alſo five enjoyed it, the laſt Lord *Powis* of the Line or Race of *Mervyn*, being *Edward Grey*, who died in the dayes of our Grand-Fathers. And ſo the title lay extinct, untill revived again in the perſon of Sir *William Herbert* of *Red-caſtle*, deſcend from the *Herberts*, Earls of *Pembroke*, created Lord *Powys* by K. *Charles* the firſt, Anno 1629. *Wales.*

The Arms of the Princes of *Powyſland*, were *Or*, a Lyon Rampant *Gules*.

2 SOUTH-WALES, or *Dehenbarth*, conteined the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Brecknock*; the greateſt and moſt fruitfull part of all *Wales*, but more expoſed to the invaſion of forrain Nations, *Engliſh*, *Danes*, *Flemmings*, and *Norwegians*, by whom the Sea-Coaſts were from time to time moſt grievouſly plagued; Inſomuch that the Kings and Princes hereof were inforced to remove their ſeat from *Caermarthen*, where it was fixt at firſt, unto *Dynevour* Caſtle, as a place of greater ſtrength and ſafety; where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence Kings of *Dynevour*, as before is ſaid. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarthen*, *Monmouth*, *Landaffe*, S. *Davids*, ſpoken of alreadie. The Kings and Princes, as farre I can find upon any certainty, are theſe that follow.

The Princes of *South-Wales.*

A. Ch.

877. 1 *Cadel.*
2 *Howel.*
907. 3 *Howel Dha.*
948. 4 *Owen.*
5 *Aeneas.*
6 *Theodore* the great.
1077. 7 *Rheſe ap Theodore.*
1093. 8 *Gryffith ap Rheſe.*
9 *Rheſe* II. *ap Gryffith.*
10 *Gryffith ap Rheſe*, the laſt Prince

of *South-Wales* of the Line of *Cadel*, after they had with great ſtrugling maintained their liberty for the ſpace of 300 years and upwards: but ſo, that though they ſtill preſerved the title of *Princes*, they loſt a great part of their Countrie to the *Norman-Engliſh*. For in the reign of *William Ruſus*. *Bernard de Newmark* a noble *Norman*, ſeized upon thoſe parts which now make the Countie of *Brecknock*, being then a fair and goodly Lordſhip; and *Robert Fitz-Haymon*, with ſome other noble adventurers, made themſelves maſters of *Glamorgan*; in which the poſteritie of ſome of them are ſtill remaining. Incouraged by their good ſucceſs, *Arnulp* of *Montgomery*, in the time of King *Henry* the firſt, won from the *Welch* a great part of *Dyvet*, which we now call *Pembrokeſhire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Mortimer*, about the ſame times, did prevail exceedingly in the conqueſt of *Cardigan* and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no one Countrie left entire but *Caermarthen* onely; too little to maintain them in ſo high a title. And though this laſt *Gryffith*, in the time of the Warres in *England*, betwixt *Maud* the Empreſs and King *Stephen*, had recovered a great part of this loſt Eſtate: yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long; himſelf deceaſing ſhortly after, and his two Sonnes, *Cynnerick* and *Meredith* being taken by King *Henry* the ſecond, who moſt cruelly put out their eyes: yet did the *Welch*, as well as poſſibly they could, endeavour to preſerve the liberty which their Fathers left them, till the felicitie and wiſdome of King *Edward* the firſt put an end unto the warre of *Wales*, and ſetled them in ſome degree of peace and quiet.

But before we come to ſpeak of this, we are to ſhew another Catalogue of the Kings and Princes of *Wales*, different from the ſucceſſion of them before laid down; and made according to the Hiſtory of *Wales* writ by *Humfrey LLoyd*: this Catalogue conteining the Succeſſion of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Guynedh*, *Dehenbarth*, or *Powyſland*; ſuch as gave law unto the reſt, and had the honour to be called Kings of *Wales*, though Princes onely of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh Saxons*, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon Heptarchie*. Onely we ſhall find ſome in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expreſſed in the former Tables; but ſuch as by ſtrong hand had intruded into thoſe Eſtates, to the prejudice of the right heirs, over-powred by them.

The Kings and Princes of *Wales*, according to the *Welch* Hiſtory.

A. Ch.

688. 1 *Ivor.*
690. 2 *Idwallo*, or *Edwall*, Sonne of *Cadwallader*.
720. 3 *Roderick Molwinnoc.*
755. 4 *Conan Tendaethwy.*
820. 5 *Mervin Vrich.*
843. 6 *Roderick Mawre*, who divided *Wales* into 3 Eſtates.
877. 7 *Amarawdh*, Prince of *Guynedth.*
913. 8 *Edwall Voel*, Prince of *Guynedh.*
940. 9 *Howel Dha* (or the Good) Prince of *Dehenbarth.*
948. 10. *Ievaf*, and *Iago*, Sonnes of *Edwall Voel*, to whom King *Edgar* did releaſe the tribute paid in money for a tribute of *Wolves.*

Wales.

982. 11. *Howel*, the Sonne of *Ievaf*, ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his Father being ſtill alive, and of right Prince of *Guinedh*.
984. 12 *Cadwallan*, the brother of *Howell*.
986. 13 *Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Debenbarth*.
992. 14 *Edwall*, Sonne of *Merick*, the Eldeſt Sonne of *Edwall Voel*, which *Merick* had been pretermitted, as unfit for Government.
1003. 15 *Aedan ap Blethored*, an Vſurper.
1015. 16 *LLewellen ap Sitſylht*, deſcended from the houſe of *Debenbarth*.
1021. 17 *Iago ap Edwall*, Prince of *Guinedh*.
1037. 18 *Gryffith ap LLewellen*.
1061. 19 *Blethyn* and *Rhywallon*, Sonnes of *Angharad* the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen* Prince of *Debenbarth*, by a ſecond Husband.
1073. 20 *Trahaern ap Caradoc*, Couſin to *Blethyn*.
1078. 21 *Gryffith* Prince of *Guinedh*, Sonne of *Conan*, the Sonne of *Iago ap Edwall*, one of the Princes of the ſame, did Homage to *William* the Conquerour, and was the laſt that had the title of King of *Wales*.
1137. 22 *Owen Guinedh*, Prince of *Guinedh*, and Soveraign Prince of *Wales*.
1169. 23 *David ap Owen* Prince of *Guinedh*.
1194. 24 *LLewellen*, Sonne of *Iorweth*, Eldeſt Sonne of *Owen Guinedh*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.
1240. 25 *David ap LLewellen*, Prince of *Guinedh*.
1246. 26 *LLewellen*, Sonne of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David*, the laſt Soveraign Prince of *Wales*, of the race of *Cadwallader*, overcome and ſlain in battell by King *Edward* the firſt, An. 1282. as before is ſaid: by means whereof the *Principalitie* of *Wales* was added to the Crown of *England*.

When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great buſineſs, he gave unto his *Engliſh* Barons and other Gentlemen of note, many fair Signeuries and Eſtates; as well to reward them for their ſervice in the conqueſt, as to engage ſo many able men, both in purſe and power, for the perpetuall defence and ſubjugation of it. As for the Lordſhip of *Flint*, and the Towns and Eſtates lying on the ſea-coaſts, he held them into own hands, both to keep himſelf ſtrong, and to curb the *Welch*: and (wherein he dealt like the politick Emperour Emperour *Auguſtus*) pretending the eaſe of ſuch as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and men of employment under himſelf onely.

This done, he divided *Wales* into ſeven Shires, viz. 1 *Glamorgan*, 2 *Carmarden*, 3 *Pembroke*, 4 *Cardigan*, 5 *Merioneth*, 6 *Carnarvon*, and 7 *Angleſey*, after the manner of *England*. Over each of theſe, as he placed a particular *Engliſh* Lieutenant, ſo he was very deſirous to have one generall *Engliſh* Vicegerent, over the whole body of the *Welch*. But this when they mainly withſtood, he ſent for his wife, then great with child, to *Carnarvon*: where ſhe was delivered of a Sonne. Upon the newes whereof, the King aſſembled the *Britiſh* Lords, and offered to name them a Governour born in *Wales*, which could ſpeak not one word of *Engliſh*, and whoſe life no man could tax. Such a one when they had all ſworn to obey, he named his young Sonne *Edward*; ſince which time our Kings Eldeſt Sonnes are called *Princes of Wales*. Their *Inveſtiture* is performed by the impoſition of a cap of eſtate, and a *Coronet* on his head that is inveſted, as a token of his *Principality*; by delivering into his hand a *verge*, being the Emblem of government; by putting a *ring* of gold on his finger, to ſhew him how now he is a *Huſband* to the Countrey, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a patent, *to hold the ſaid Principality, to him and his heirs Kings of* England. By which words, the ſeparation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themſelves ſo exceſſent an occaſion of obliging unto them their eldeſt Sonne, when they pleaſe. In imitation of this cuſtom, *more ex* Anglia *tranſlato* (ſaith *Mariana*) *Iohn* the firſt of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, made his Sonne *Henry* Prince of the *Aſturia's*; which is a countrey ſo craggie and and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Wales of Spain*. And all the *Spaniſh* Princes even to theſe times are honoured with this title of *Prince of the Aſturia's*.

Notwithſtanding this provident care of *Edward* the firſt, in eſtabliſhing his Empire here, and the extreme rigor of Law here uſed by *Henry* the 4th, in reducing them to obedience, after the rebellion of *Owen Glendower*: yet till the time of *Henry* the 8th, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welch* blood) they ſeldom or never contained themſelves within the bounds of true Allegeance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by Act of Parliament) one Nation with the *Engliſh*, ſubject to the ſame Laws, capable of the ſame preferments, and privileged with the ſame immunities: He added 6 Shires to the former number, out of thoſe Countries which were before reputed, as the Borders and *Marches* of *Wales*; and enabled them to ſend Knights and Burgeſſes unto the *Engliſh* Parliaments; ſo that the name and language only excepted, there is now no difference between the *Engliſh* and *Welch*; an happy Vnion.

The ſame King *Henry* eſtabliſhed for the eaſe of his *Welch* Subjects, a Court at *Ludlow*, like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*: wherein the Laws are miniſtred according to the faſhion of the Kings Courts of *Weſtminſter*. The Court conſiſteth of one *Preſident*, who is, for the moſt part, of the Nobility, and is generally called, the *Lord Preſident of Wales*; of as many Counſellors

as it ſhall pleaſe the King to appoint; one Attourney, one Sollicitor, one Secretary, and the 4 Iuſtices of the Counties of *Wales*: The Town it ſelf (for this muſt not be omitted) adorned with a very fair Caſtle which hath been the Palace of ſuch Princes of *Wales*, of the *Engliſh* blood, as have come into this Countrie, to ſolace themſelves among their people. Here was young *Edward* the 5th, at the death of his Father, and here dyed Prince *Arthur*, Eldeſt Sonne to *Henry* the 7th, both being ſent hither by their Fathers to the ſame end, *viz.* by their preſence to ſatisfie and keep in Order the unquiet *Welchmen*. And certainly, as the preſence of the *Prince* was then a terror to the rebellious, ſo would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable people. The Borders.

What the *Revennes* of this *Principality* are, I cannot ſay: yet we may boldly affirm that they are not very ſmall, by theſe reaſons following, viz. 1 By the Compoſition which *Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the firſt: who being Prince of *North-Wales* onely, and diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of that, was fain to redeem the reſt, of the ſaid King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 100000 pounds of our preſent mony) to be paid down in ready Coin, and for the reſidue to pay 1000 l. *per Annum*. And 2dly, by thoſe two circumſtances, in the mariage of the Lady *Katharine* of *Spain*, to the above named Prince *Arthur*. For firſt, her Father *Ferdinando* being one of the warieſt Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats, required for her Ioynture, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Cheſter*. And ſecondly, After the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the Realm perſwaded Prince *Henry* to take her to Wife; that ſo great a Treaſure as the yeerly *Revenue* of her Ionyture, might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of *Wales* differ from thoſe of *England*, only by the addition of a *Label* of three points. But the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the *Princes Arms*, is a Coronet beautified with thee *Oſtrich* Feathers, and inſeimbed round with *ICH DIEN*, that is, I ſerve: alluding to that of the Apoſtle, *The Heir while he is a Child differeth not from a Servant*. This *Coronet* was won by that valiant Prince, *Edward* the black Prince, at the battell of *Creſſie*, from *Iohn* King of *Bohemia*; who there wore it, and whom he there ſlew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now ſhut up my diſcourſe of *Wales* with that teſtimony of the people, which *Henry* the 2d uſed in a Letter to *Emanuel* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*: *The Welch Nation is ſo adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed men; ready to ſpend their blood for their Countrey, and pawn their life for praiſe*: and adding onely this, that ſince their incorporating with the *Engliſh*, they have ſhewed themſelves moſt loyall, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State: cordially devoted to their King; and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties, and Religion, as well as any of the beſt of their fellow-ſubjects, whereof they have given good proof in theſe later times.

There are in *Wales*
Arch-Biſhops 0. Biſhops 4.

THE BORDERS.

BEfore we come into *Scotland*, we muſt of neceſſity paſſe thorough that Battable ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms, called THE BORDERS, the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of military men, ſubtile, nimble, and by reaſon of their often skirmiſhes, well experienced, and adventurous. Once the *Engliſh* Border extended as far as unto the *Fryth*, or Strait of *Edenburgh* on the Eaſt, and that of *Dumbritton* on the Weſt (the firſt *Fryth*, by the Latines called *Bodotria*, and the later *Glotta*:) betwixt which, where now ſtandeth the Town of *Sterling*, was an atient Bridge built over the River which falleth into the *Fryth* of *Edenburgh*, on a Croſs ſtanding whereupon, was writ this *Paſport*.

I am *Free march* as paſſengers may kenne,
To *Scots*, to *Britans*, and to *Engliſh-men*.

But when *England* groaned under the burden of the *Daniſh* oppreſſion, the *Scots* well husbanded that advantage, and not onely enlarged their Borders to the *Tweed*, but alſo took into their hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Weſtmorland*. The *Norman* Kings again recovered theſe Provinces, making the *Borders* of both Kingdomes to be *Tweed*, Eaſt; the *Solway*, Weſt; and the *Cheviot* hills in the midſt. Of any great wars made on theſe *Borders*, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of *Edward* the firſt, who taking advantage of the *Scots* diſagreements, about the ſucceſſor of *Alexander* the 3d, hoped to bring the Countrie under the obedience of *England*. This Quarrell betwixt the two Nations he began

Scotland

began, but could not end; the Wars ſurviving the Author; ſo that what *Velleius* ſaith of the *Romans*, and *Carthaginians*, I may as well ſay of the *Scots* and *Engliſh*: for almoſt 300 yeers together, *aut bellum inter eos populos, aut belli præparatio, aut infida pax fuit.* In moſt of theſe conflicts the *Scots* had the worſt. So that *Daniel* in his Hiſtory ſeemeth to marvail how this Corner of the Iſle could breed ſo many, had it bred nothing but men, as were ſlain in theſe wars. Yet in the Reign of *Edward* the 2d, the *Scots* (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became ſo terrible to the *Engliſh Borderers*, that an huudred of them would fly from three *Scots*. It is a cuſtom among the *Turks* not to beleeve a *Chriſtian* or a *Iew* complayning againſt a *Turk*, except their accuſation be confirmed by the Teſtimony of ſome *Turk* alſo; which ſeldom hapning, is not the leaſt cauſe why ſo little Iuſtice is there done the *Chriſtians*. In like manner it is the Law of theſe *Borderers*, never to beleeve any *Scots* complaining againſt an *Engliſh-man*, unleſs ſome other *Engliſh-man* will witneſs for him; and ſo on the other ſide; *Ex jure quodam inter limitaneos rato* (ſaith *Camden in his Elizab.*) *nullus niſi Scotus in Scotum, nullus niſi Anglus in Anglum, teſtis admittitur.* This Cuſtom making void in this Faſhion all kinds of accuſations, was one of the greateſt cauſes of the Inſolencies of both ſides committed. Beſides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but ſometimes were *Scots*, ſometimes *Engliſh*, as their preſent crimes and neceſsities required protection or pardon. To keep in this people, and ſecure the *Borders*, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Wardens of the Marches*: one being placed over the Eaſt, the other over the Weſt, the third over the middle *Borders*. In *England*, the *Warden* of the Eaſt *Marches* had his Seat at *Barwick* (a Town of great ſtrength, and which for the conveniencie of its ſituation, was the firſt thing which the *Engliſh* took care to defend, and the *Scots* to ſupriſe) of which he was alſo Governor. The *Warden* of the Weſt Marches, had his Seat in *Carlile*, which *Henry* the 8th for that cauſe well fortified. The *Warden* of the middle Marches had no ſet place of reſidence, but was ſometimes in one place, ſometimes in another, according as occaſion required; the Office being executed for the moſt part, by the Wardens of the Eaſtern or Weſtern Marches. But *Imperii medium eſt, terminus ante fuit*, by the bleſſed mariage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; theſe Officers, and the cauſe of them, the wars, are quite extinguiſhed.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of *Britain*, ſeparated from *England* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the *Cheviot* Hils, extending from the one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgil*) 480 miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place diſtant from the Sea above 60 miles, and the Countrey ending like the ſharp point of a Wedge. And for the length aſſigned unto it by *Polydore*, it muſt be made up by meaſuring the crooks and windings of the ſhores, every where thruſting out with very large *Promontories*, and cutting deep *Indentures* into the Land. For meaſuring in a ſtrait Line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Frith* to the *Straitby-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten Italian miles; and from *Barwick* unto *Straitby-head* is a great deal ſhorter. So that there is no ſuch over-ſight in the Maps of *Britain*, nor ſuch neceſsity to correct them, as was ſometimes thought.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii* a chief People of it: ſometimes *Albania*, from *Albanie* or *Braid Albin*, a principall Province in the North. But the moſt uſuall name is *Scotia*, or *Scotland*; though the reaſon of the name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Ægyptian Pharaoh*; of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reaſon (though that none of the beſt) from the *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *German*, or *Sarmatian* people of noted fame; whom they will have to ſeize firſt on ſome parts of *Spain*, from thence to tranſplant themſelves into *Ireland*, and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Ilands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable opinion is, that they were no other than mere *Iriſh*, (whoſe language, habit, and the moſt barbarous of their cuſtoms, the *Highlanders* or naturall *Scots* doe ſtill retain) united in the name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman* Empire: the word *Scot* ſignifying in their Language, a body aggregated into one, out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the *Dutch*. *Scot illud dicitur*, (ſaith *Camden* out of *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*) *quod ex diverſis rebus in unum acervum aggregatur.* Firſt mentioned by this name in ſome fragments of *Porphyrie* (who lived about the time of the Emperour *Aurelian*) as they are cited by S. *Hierome*: after the death of *Conſtantine* much ſpoken of in approved Authors, as the confederates of the *Picts* in haraſſing the *Roman* Province.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands* and the *Lowlands*. The *Highlanders* or *Iriſh Scots*, inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the Weſt parts of the Continent adjoyning to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Iriſh* at this day: not to be civiliz'd (as King *JAMES* obſerved in his moſt excellent *Baſilicon Doron*) *but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly Scots* among them. The *Lowlanders*, or *Engliſh Scots* (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this ſide the two *Frythes* of *Dunbritton* and *Edenburgh*, and the plainer Countries all along the *Germane* Ocean, are the more civill of the two, as being of the ſame *Saxon* race with the *Engliſh*. This is evident, firſt, by their Language, being only a broad Northern *Engliſh*, a *Dialect* onely of that tongue; ſecondly, by the teſtimony

Scotland.

ſtimony of the *Highlanders* themſelves who are the true *Scots*, and ſpeak the old *Iriſh* language, by whom the *Lowlanders* and the *Engliſh* are called by the ſame name of *Saxons*: 3ly, by the generall conſent of all Hiſtorians, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northumbers* or *Eaſtſaxons* beyond *Humber* extended as far Northwards as the two *Friths* before-mentioned; and there continued for the ſpace of 300 yeers: and 4ly, by the confeſſion of ſome ingenuous Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, that the *Saxons* and the *Scots* invading *Britain* much about the ſame time; the *Saxons* might extort the Eaſtern ſhore, lying next their Countrie, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Weſtern parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides* or *Weſtern Iſlands*, from whence they firſt paſſed into *Britain*.

The Countrey, for the moſt part, eſpecially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*, is very barren and unfruitfull, not able to afford ſuſtenance for the *Natives* of it, were they not a people patient of want and hunger, temperate in diet, and not accuſtomed unto that riot and exceſs, uſed commonly in richer and more plentifull Countries. Fruit they have very little, and not many trees either for building or for fewell: the people holding, as in *France*, at the *Will of the Lord*, and therefore not induſtrious to build, or plant. Their chief Commodities are courſe cloth, Fiſh in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two laſt their mountains do afford ſome rich undecaying Mines.

The People have been noted by their beſt Writers, for ſome barbarous cuſtoms entertained amongſt them. One of which was, if any two were diſpleaſed, they expected no law; but bang'd it out bravely, one and his kindred, againſt the other and his: and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word ſo barbarous, that were it to be expreſſed in *Latine*, or *French*, it muſt be by *circumlocution*. Theſe deadly *Feides*, King *Iames* in his moſt excellent *Baſilicon Doron* adviſeth his Sonne to redreſs with all care poſſible; but it pleaſed God to give him ſo long a life as to ſee it in his own dayes remedied: wherein he got a greater victory over that ſtubborn people, than ever did any forein Prince, or any of his Predeceſſors could doe before him; an act indeed truly royall, and worthy himſelf. Another cuſtom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongſt the Heathen, and much leſs in *Chriſtendom*, which took beginning as the *Scotiſh* Hiſtorians affirm, in the reign of *Ewen* the 3d, who is the fifteenth King in the Catalogue, after the firſt *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto laſciviouſneſs, made a Law, that himſelf and his ſucceſſors ſhould have the *maidenhead*, or firſt nights lodging with every woman, whoſe husband held land immediately from the Crown: and the *Lords* and Gentlemen of all thoſe, whoſe husbands were their tenants or *homagers*. This was, it ſeems, the *Knights ſervice* which men held their ſtates by; and continued till the dayes of *Malcolm Comnor*, who at the requeſt of his wife *Margaret*, (ſhe was the ſiſter of *Edgar Atheling*) aboliſhed this Law; and ordained, that the *tenants* by way of commutation, ſhould pay unto their Lords a mark in money; which tribute the *Hiſtorians* ſay is ſtill in force. It was called *Marcheta mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a horſe in the old *Galligne*, (implying the obſcene ſignification of *Equitare*) as Mr. *Selden* thinks; or from *Marca*, the ſumme of money by which it was afterward redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am that this laſt cuſtom was of ſuch a barbarous and brutiſh nature, that the cuſtom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramines* the firſt nights lodging with their Brides, and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in proſtituting their Wives and Daughters to the Luſts and pleaſure of their *Gueſts*, have not more *unchriſtianity* in them, than this of thoſe *Scotiſh* Chriſtians, if I may ſo call them.

Theſe Cuſtoms ſhew the antient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civilitie of the Neighbouring Nations, nor are they ſo broken of the former, but that they are obſerved by a *modern Writer* to be ſtill greedy of revenge where they find means to take it; as alſo to be a ſubtile and politick people, inclined to Factions and Seditions amongſt themſelves, which he that reads their Stories cannot chooſe but ſee. A people as King *Iames* obſerveth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, ever weary of the preſent ſtate, and deſirous of novelties; accuſtomed to judge and ſpeak raſhly of their Kings and Princes, towards whom they have alwayes caried themſelves with ſuch untractableneſs, that more Kings have been betrayed, murdered, and depoſed by the *Scots*, than by all the Nations in the World. But take them in themſelves without theſe relations, and they are ſaid to be an induſtrious people, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well verſed in *Grammaticall* Learning, of which moſt of their *Gentry* have a ſmattering. And of moſt note in point of Learning, have been 1 *Marianus* (ſurnamed) *Scotus*, and 2 *Hector Boetius*, the Hiſtorians, 3 *Iohn Major*, a well known School-man, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4 *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unſound *Stateſ-man*, whoſe Hiſtorie, and Dialogue *de jure Regni*, have wrought more miſchief in the World, than all *Marchiavels* Works. Not to have been remembred here, but becauſe he was Pædagogue to 5 King *Iames*, of moſt famous memory; whoſe printed Works declare his large abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6 *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchiſton*. 7 8 *Barclay*, the Father and the Sonne. 9 *Iohn Skene*, the beſt Antiquary of this Nation. 10 Doctor *Iohn Maxwel*, the late learned Biſhop of *Roſs*, and my very good Friend, beſides ſome others of leſs note.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was here planted by divers men, according to the ſeverall Nations who did here inhabit; amongſt the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan*, the firſt Biſhop of *Lindisfarn*, or *Holy Iland*; amongſt the *Picts* inhabiting the South-Eaſtern parts, by *Ninias*, Biſhop

of

Scotland. of *Candida Casa*, or *Whit-herne*, in *Galloway*, amongst the *Northern-Picts*, Anno 555. and finally amongst the *Scots*, by *Palladius* a Deacon of *Rome*, sent to them hither for that purpose by Pope *Celestine*, Anno 435, or thereabouts. And for the *Reformation* of *Religion* over grown with the rust and rubbish of the *Romish* Church (degenerated from it self in the later dayes) it was here made by a strong hand, according to judgement of *Knox* and others: not taking counsell with the *Prelates*, nor staying the leisure of the Prince as they did in *England*, but turning Prince and *Prelates* out of all autority; made by that means more naturally subject unto alterations than it had been otherwise; or only to be made good by the same violence, which first introduced it. Tis true, that for a while, being in danger of the *Freneh*, and of necesity to support themselves by the power and favour of the *English*, they bound themselves by a solemn Subscription to adhere only to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to observe that form of Worship, which was there established. *Religionis cultui, & Ritibus cum Anglis communibus subscripserunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan* their own State-Historian. But no sooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leisure to effect their end; and have endeavoured ever since by practices, and correspondencies with that party here, and finally by Force of Arms, to thrust their Constitutions and Form of Worship on the Church of *England*.

As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Bishops, (as in all parts else) but so as they exercised their Functions and Iurisdictions in all places, equally, whereseoever they came; The Kingdom not being divided into *Dioceses*, till the time of *Malcolm* the 3d, Anno 1070, or thereabouts. Nor had they any Arch-Bishops till the yeer 1478. The Arch-Bishop of *York* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the Metropolitan of *Scotland*. But being once setled in an orderly & constant *Hierarchie*, they held the same untill the *Reformation* began by *Knoxe*, when he and his Associats approving the *Genevian* plat-form, took the advantage of the Minoritie of K. *James* the sixth to introduce *Presbyterian* Discipline, and suppress the Bishops, forbidding them by their own sole autority to intermedle any more in matters which concerned the *Church*, *cantoning* the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own assigning, and that the King might not be able to oppose their doings they kept him under by strong hand, imprisoned him at *Sterlin*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*, removed from him all his faithfull servants, and seized upon his principall Fortresses; and in a word so bafled and affronted him upon all occasions, that he was minded many times to have left the kingdom, and retire to *Venice*. Which doubtless he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by some of great place and power) had not the hopes of coming at the last to the Crown of *England*, made him stay it out: So that his *Maxim* of no *Bishops no King*, was not made at Random, but founded on the sad experience of his own condition. And though upon the sense of those inconveniences which that alteration brought upon him, he did afterwards with great both Policie and Prudence restore again the *Episcopall* Order, and setled it both by *Synodicall* Acts, and by Acts of Parliament; yet the same restless spirit breaking out again in the Reign of his Sons, Anno 1638. did violently eject the Bishops, and suppress the calling, and set up their Presbyteries thorowout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Countrey, are, 1 the Lake of *Mirton*, part of whose waters doe congeal in Winter, and part of them not. 2 That in the Lake of *Lennox*, being 24 miles in compass, the Fish are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. 3 That when there is no wind stirring, the waters of the said Lake are so tempestuous, that no Mariner dares venture on it. 4 That there is a stone called the *Deaf-stone*, a foot high and 33 Cubits thick, of this rare quality, that a Musket shot off on the one side, cannot be heard by a man standing on the other. If it be otherwise (as he must have a strong Faith who beleeves these wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot* Hills upon the *Borders*, and Mount *Grampius* spoken of by *Tacitus*, the safest shelter of the *Picts*, or Northern *Britans* against the *Romans*, and of the *Scots* against the *English*; now called the hills of *Albanie*, or the mountainous Regions of *Braid-Albin*. Out of these springeth the 1 *Tay* or *Taus*, the faireſt River of *Scotland*, falling into the Sea about *Dundee*, in the East side; and 2 the *Cluyd*, emptying it self into *Dunbritton Frith*, on the West side of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of most note, are, the 3 *Banoc*, emptying it self into the *Frith* of *Edenburgh*; on the banks whereof was fought that fatall battell of *Banocks-bourn*, of which more anon. 4 *Spey*, 5 *Dee*, the *Ocasa* of *Ptolomie*: none of them of any long course, by reason that the Countrey Northward is but very narrow.

In reference to *Ecclesiasticall* affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 Dioceses, to which the Diocese of *Edenburgh* (taken out of that of S. *Andrews*,) hath been lately added: and in relation to the *Civil*, into divers *Seneschalsies* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the most part hereditary, are no small hinderance to the due execution of Justice. So that the readiest way to redress the mischief (as King *James* advised) is to dispose of them as they fall or Escheat to the Crown, according to the laudable custom (in that case) in *England*.

The greatest *Friends* of the *Scots*, were the *French*, to whom the *Scots* shewed themselves so faithfull, that the *French* King committed the defence of his Person to a selected number of *Scotish* Gentlemen: and so valiant, that they have much hindered the *English* Victories in *France*. And certainly the *French*, feeling the smart of the *English* puissance alone, have continually heartned the *Scots* in their attempts against *England*, and hindred all means of making union betwixt them: as appeared, when they broke the match agreed on, between our *Edward* the sixth, and *Mary* the

young

young Queen of *Scots*. Their greateſt enemy was the *Engliſh*, who overcame them in many battels, ſeized once upon the Kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the mountainous and inacceſſible woods had not been more advantagious to the *Scots*, than their power: for ſo much King *Iames* ſeemeth to intimate in his Speech at *Whitehall*, 1607. *And though* (ſaith he) *the* Scots *had the honour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the* defenſible *ſide; and may in part thank their hills and inacceſſible paſſages, that ſaved them from an utter overthrow at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them.* But *Scotland.*

Jam cuncti gens una ſumus, ſic ſimus in ævum:

One onely Nation now are we,
And let us ſo for ever be.

The chief Cities are, *Edenburgh*, of old called *Caſtrum Alatum* in *Lothien*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Court of Juſtice. It conſiſteth chiefly of one ſtreet, extending in length one mile, into which runne many pretty lanes; ſo that the whole compaſs may be nigh three miles: extending from Eaſt to Weſt on a riſing ground: at the Summit or Weſt end whereof ſtandeth a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep and precipitious Rock, which commandeth the Town; ſuppoſed to be the *Caſtrum Alatum*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomie*. Under the command or rather the protection of which Caſtle, and thorough the neighbourhood of *Leith*, ſtanding on the *Fryth*, and ſerving as a Port unto it; and finally by the advantage of the Courts of Juſtice, and the Court Royall called *Holy-Rood-Houſe*, it ſoon became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withall factious and ſeditious, conteſting with their Kings, or ſiding againſt them upon all occaſions. No way to humble them, and keep them in obedience to their Soveraign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it the privileges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royall and the Courts of Judicature; which they more fear than all the Plagnes that can befall them. It belonged in former times to the *Engliſh-Saxons*, (as all the reſt of the Countrey from the *Fryth* to *Barwick*) from whom, oppreſſed by the tyranny of the *Danes*, it was taken by the *Scots* and *Picts*, Anno 800. or thereabouts. 2 *Sterling*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom ſo called, a ſtrong Town, and beautified withall with a very fair Caſtle, the birth-place of King *Iames* the ſixt, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*. Neer to which Town, on the banks of the River *Bannock*, hapned the moſt memorable diſcomfiture that the *Scots* ever gave the *Engliſh*: who beſides many Lords and 700 Knights and men of note, loſt in this Fight (as the *Scotiſh* Writers do report) 50000 of the common Soldiers (our *Engliſh* Hiſtories confeſs 10000, and too many of that) the King himſelf (*Edward* the 2d) being compelled to flie for his life and ſafety. Some of the *Scotiſh* Writers tell us, that the purer ſort of Silver, which we call *Sterling* money, did take name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our Silver *Bullion* comes from *Bouillon* in *Luxembourgh*, or from the Port of *Boulogne* in *France*: the truth being, that it took that name from the *Eaſterlings*, or Merchants of *Eaſt Germany*, drawn into *England* by King *Iohn* to refine our Coin. 3 *Glaſco*, in *Clydsdale*, honoured with an Archbiſhops See, and a publick School (to which ſome give the name of an Univerſity) founded here by Archbiſhop *Turnbal*, Anno 1554. 4 S. *Andrews*, the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archiepiſcopall See, and an Vniverſity; by the *Latines* called *Fanum Reguli*, which, and the *Engliſh* name, it took from the bones of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, tranſlated firſt from *Patras* in *Peloponneſus* where he ſuffered death, unto *Conſtantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Albatus Regulus*, in the yeer 378, (if they be not miſtaken in the time who made the ſtorie.) Over which *Relicks* he is ſaid to have built a Monaſtery, which after grew to be a City: called from the Founder *Fanum Reguli*; in honour of the Saint, S. *Andrews*. The Biſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *Scotland*; the City ſeated on the Ocean, neer the fall of the *Ethan*, overlooked with a ſtrong and goodly Caſtle the Archbiſhops ſeat. 5 *Falkland*, in the ſame Province of *Fife*, beautified with a retiring houſe of the Kings, reſorting often thither on *receſs* from buſineſs, or for the commodity and pleaſure of hunting which the place affords. 6 *Dundee*, in *Latine*, *Taodunum*, a rich and noted port at the mouth of the *Tay*, the chief Town of *Anguis*. 7 *Aber-don*, at the mouth of the River *Done*, whence it hath the name, (the word *Aber* in the *Britiſh* ſignifying the mouth or influx of a River) an Vniverſity and Biſhops See. 8 *Perth*, or S. *Iohns Town*, ſeated on the *Tay*, but in the middle of the kingdom; walled, and repleniſhed with an induſtrious people; the chief Town of the Sheriffdom of *Perth*. 9 *Scone*, on the further ſide of the *Tay*, adorned heretofore with a famous *Monaſtery*, the uſuall place for the Inauguration of the *Scotiſh* Kings: the fatall ſtone, on which they did receive their Crown, (the *Palladium* of the *Scotiſh* Kingdom,) here kept, till the removall of it unto *Weſtminſter*, by King *Edward* the firſt. Vpon which ſtone there were of old ingraven theſe Verſes.

Ni fallat fatum, Scoti *quocunque locatum*
Invenient lapidem regnare tenentur ibidem.

Tranſlated in old Meeter thus,

The *Scots* ſhall brook that Realm as natif ground,
If *Weirds* fail not, whaire ere this *Stane* is found.

Moſt happily accompliſhed in the Succeſſion of King *James* the ſixt to the Crown of *England*.

10 *Dun-*

Scotland. 10. *Dunbritton* (*Britannodunum* in the *Latine*) ſeated in a graſſie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Cluyd*, upon two ſteep and precipicious Rocks, flanked on the Weſt with the ſaid two Rivers, and on the Eaſt with a myerie Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the ſtrongeſt Hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable but by Famine or Treaſon; and the chief Town of the Weſt ſide of *Scotland*; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoyning.

The Antient Inhabitants of this Countrie dwelling within the limits of the *Roman* Province, were the *Gadeni*, poſſeſſing *Tevidale*, *Twedale*, *Merch*, and *Lothien*, whoſe chief Citie was *Caſtra Alata*, now *Edenburgh*. 2 the *Damnii*, dwelling in *Cluydsdale*, *Lennox*, *Sterling*, and *Menteith*, whoſe chief Citie was *Vanduara*, now *Renfraw*; *Lindum*, now *Linlithquo*. 3 the *Selgovæ*, inhabiting in *Liddſdale*, *Euſedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, and *Niddiſdale*, whoſe chief place was *Carbantorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*: and 4 the *Novantes*, conteining *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle* and *Cunningham*; principall places of the which were, *Leucopibia*, now *Whit-herne*, and *Rerigonium*, now *Bargenie*. Without the *Province*, amongſt the *Picts* or *barbarous Britans*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Meatæ*, the Nations of moſt note were, 5 the *Caledonii* properly ſo called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Perth*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6 the *Verminet* of *Mernis* and *Mar*. 7 the *Talzali* of *Buquhan*. 8 the *Vacomagi* of *Loghuabre* and *Murray*. 9 the *Cantæ* of *Roſs* and *Sutherland*. 10 the *Cantini* of *Cathneſs*; and 11 the *Cornubii* of *Strathnavern*, the furtheſt Countrey Northward of all the Iland. Chief Towns of which were, *Tamia*, *Banatia*, *Orea*, *Devana*, and *Tueſis*; which we know not where to find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this people, as they related to the *Romans* hath been ſhewn before: On the withdrawing of whoſe Forces, ſo much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was poſſeſſed by the *Saxons*, the reſidue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*: ſave that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held, made themſelves maſters alſo of the plain Countries, lying on the *German* Ocean, to which the paſſage out of *Germany* was both ſhort and eaſie. By which accompt, beſides thoſe places in the Eaſt, they were poſſeſſed of the Counties or Sheriffdoms of *Teſidale*, *Tweedale*, *March*, *Lothien*, *Liddiſdale*, *Euſedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, *Nidiſdale*, *Cluydsdale*, *Galloway*, *Carick*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lennox*, and *Sterling*, being the richeſt, and moſt flouriſhing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots*, for their part, had the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorn*, *Loquhabre*, and *Strathnavern*, lying on the Weſt and North: the other Northern moyite (excepting ſome parts neer the coaſt of the *German* Ocean poſſeſſed by the *Saxons*) conteining the now Counties of *Catneſs*, *Sutherland*, *Roſs*, *Murray*, *Buquhan*, *Marre*, *Mern*, *Anguis*, *Athol*, *Perth*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into theſe parts, hath been ſhewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of thoſe who will have them to deſcend from the *Agathyrſi*, a People of *Scythia*) they were no other than ſuch of the naturall *Britans* as never were brought under the *Roman* Empire, but ſtill preſerved their Countrie in its former Libertie; called therefore by *Tertullian*, *inacceſſa* Romanis *loca*, as indeed they were: and uſing ſtill their antient cuſtom of painting their bodies, after the reſt of their Countriemen had conformed themſelves to more civill courſes, were by the *Romans* called *Picts*, and by that name firſt mentioned in the *Panegyrick* of *Eunomius*, in the time of *Conſtantine* the *Great*. They long poſſeſſed theſe parts without any *In-mate*, even till the yeer 424. when the *Iriſh-Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly poſſeſſed themſelves of the Weſtern Iſles firſt ſet foot in *Britain*: with whom they had continuall Warre, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Weſtern parts, and withdraw themſelves into the Eaſtern. Afterwards growing into better terms with one another, and willing to enlarge their borders towards the more flouriſhing *South*, they contracted an *Offenſive* and *Defenſive* League againſt the *Britans*: whom on all ſides they moſt miſerably tortured, till vanquiſhed and beat back by the conquering *Saxons*, againſt whom they contracted a new *Confederacy*. Taking the advantage of the death of *Etheldred*, King of the *Northumbers*, and the invaſion of the *Danes* on the reſt of *England*; they got into their hands all *Bernicia*, or ſo much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Twede*, and *Solway*; reckoned from that time forwards as a part of their Dominions. But this good neighbourhood held not long betwixt theſe two Nations. It hapned at the laſt, that *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, maried *Ferguſia*, Siſter unto *Hunguſt* King of the *Picts*, and had by her a Sonne called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hunguſt*, dying without iſſue, and having none of a neerer kindred, was in the judgement of the *Scots* to ſucceed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alleging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, choſe one *Ferreth* of their own Nation to be their King: with whom *Alpine* contended in a long Warre, victorious for the moſt part, in concluſion ſlain. The quarrell notwithſtanding did remain betwixt the unfriendly Nations, till at the laſt, after many bloody battels, and mutuall overthrows (the *Scots* being for the moſt part on the loſing ſide) *Kenneth*, the ſecond of that name, vanquiſhed *Donsken*, the laſt King of the *Picts*, with ſo great a ſlaughter of his People, that he extinguiſhed not their Kingdom only, but their very name; paſſing from that time forwards under that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Piciſh* Nation: unleſs perhaps we will believe that ſome of them paſſed into *France*, and there, forſooth, ſubdued that Countrie which we now call *Picardy*.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I ſhall begin the ſame with *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name in the Accompt of their Hiſtorians: leaving out that rabble of 38 Kings (half

(half of them at the leaſt before *Chriſts* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector Boetius*, *Buchanan*, and others of their *Claſſick* Authors. Neither ſhall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more judicious and underſtanding men of the *Scotiſh* Nation, (and for others I take little care) ſince I deal no more unkindly with their firſt *Fergus*, and his Succeſſors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his. The firſt *Scotiſh* King that ſetled himſelf in the North of *Britain*, is, according to the above-named *Hector Boetius*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Coyle* governed the *Britans*, came (forſooth) into theſe parts out of *Ireland*. From him, unto *Eugenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued ſucceſſion: which *Eugenius*, together with his whole Nation, is ſaid to have been expelled the Iland, by a joynt confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britans*, and *Picts*. Twenty and ſeven years after the death of this *Eugenius*, they were reduced again into their poſſeſsion here, by the valour and conduct of another *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scotiſh* Kingdom in *Britain*, holding the ſtories of the former 39 Kings, to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this aſſertion, this expedition of *Fergus* into *Britain*, being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*, at what time the beſt Writers of the *Roman* ſtorie for thoſe times, report the *Scots* to have firſt ſeated themſelves in this Iland. *Scotland.*

The Kings of chief note in the courſe of the whole Succeſſion are, 1 *Achaius*, who died in the yeer 809. and in his life contracted the offenſive & defenſive league with *Charles* the Great, between the Kngdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The conditions whereof were, 1 Let this league between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2 Let the enemies unto one, be reputed and handled as the enemies of the other; 3 If the *Saxons* or *English-men* invade *France*, the *Scots* ſhall ſend thither ſuch numbers of Souldiers as ſhall be deſired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4 If the *Engliſh* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* ſhall at his own charges ſend competent aſsiſtance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any league, which was either more faithfully obſerved, or longer continued, than this between theſe two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occaſions ſo readily aſsiſting the *French*, that it grew to a proverb, or by word, *He that will* France *win*, *muſt with* Scotland *firſt begin*. 2 *Kenneth* the ſecond, who having utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extended his Dominions over all the preſent *Scotland*, deſervedly to be accompted the firſt *Monarch* of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or ſo few in number, that they paſſed afterwards in the name and accompt of *Scots*) from that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3 *Malcolm* the firſt, who added *Weſtmorland* and *Cumberland* unto his Dominions, given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the Sonne of *Athelſtane*, to have his aid againſt the *Danes*, or to keep him neutrall. After which time, thoſe Counties were ſometimes *Scotiſh*, and ſometimes *Engliſh*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the 2d, and united to the Crown of *England*; never ſince diſ-joyned. 4 *Kenneth* the 3d. who by conſent of the Eſtates of his Realm, made the Kingdom *hereditary*, to deſcend from the Father to his Eldeſt Sonne; before which time (keeping within the compaſs of the Royall Family) the *Uncle* was ſometimes preferred before the *Nephew*, the eldeſt in yeers, though further off before the younger Kinſman, though the neerer in blood. After which time (the oppoſition and interruption made by *Conſtantine* the 3d, and *Donald* the 4th, excepted only) the Eldeſt Sonnes of the Kings, or the next in birth, have ſucceeded ordinarily in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of thoſe Tributary and *Vaſſal-Kings*, which rowed K. *Edgar* over the *Dee*, neer *Cheſter*, in ſuch pomp and majeſtie. 5 *Macbbeth*, of whom there goeth a famous ſtory, which ſhall be told at large anon. 6 *Malcolm* the 3d, the Sonne of *Duncane*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Macbbeths* tyranny, and thence brought into *Scotland* at his return not only ſome *Civilities* of the *Engliſh* garb, but the honourarie titles of *Earls* and *Barons*, not here before uſed. At the perſwaſion of the Lady *Margaret* his wife, (Siſter of *Edgar*, ſurnamed *Atheling*, and after his deceaſe the right Heir of the Crown of *England*,) he aboliſhed the barbarous cuſtom ſpoken of before. He did *homage* to *William* the *Conqueror* for the Crown of *Scotland*, but afterwards ſiding againſt him with the *Engliſh*, was ſlain at *Alnwick*. 7 *David*, the youngeſt Sonne of *Malcolm* the third, ſucceeded his two Brothers, *Edgar* and *Alexander* (dying without iſſue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter and Heir of *Edgar Atheling*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldeſt Sonne of *Edmund* the 2d, ſurnamed *Ironſide*, K. of *England*, had the beſt Title to that Kingdom alſo: but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the *Norman Conquerors*; with whom, by reaſon of the great puiſſance of thoſe Kings, and the little love which the *Engliſh* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to diſpute their Title by force of Arms; From *Maud* the Siſter of this *David*, maried to *Henry* the firſt of *England*, deſcended all the Kings of *England* (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeths* death: from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *Iames* the ſixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeth* ſucceeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his Deſcent from another *Margaret*, the Eldeſt Daughter of King *Henry* the 7th. So that in his perſon there was not an union of the Kingdoms only, under the Title of *Great Britain*, but a reſtoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate Heir,) to the Crown of *England*; the poſſeſſion whereof had for ſo long time continued in the Poſterity of the *Norman* Conqueror. And upon this deſcent it followeth moſt undeniably, that though the *Norman* Conqueror got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund* the 2d, ſurnamed *Ironſide*; and that his Succeſſors had enjoyed it by no other Title till Queen *Elizabeths* death: yet *Iames*, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*, ſucceeded by a right deſcent from the *Saxon* Line, without relation to the Conqueſt of

Scotland

the *Norman* Baſtard. 8 *William*, the Brother of *Malcolm* the 4th, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Sonne Prince *Henry* (who died in the life of his Father) being taken Priſoner at the Battail of *Alnwick*, did *Homage* to King *Henry* the 2d for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon reſtored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the ſucceeding Kings, when their Affairs with *England* and the World abroad became more conſiderable, we ſhall ſee anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the Storie of *Machbeth*, than which for variety of Action, and ſtrangeneſs of events, I never met with any more pleaſing. The Storie in brief is thus. *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principall men, whom he employed in all matters of importance; *Machbeth*, and *Banquho*. Theſe two travelling together through a Forreſt, were met by three *Fairies*, Witches (Weirds the *Scots* call them) whereof the firſt making obeyſance unto *Machbeth*, ſaluted him *Thane* (a Title unto which that of *Earl* afterward ſucceeded) of *Glammis*; the ſecond, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*. This is unequall dealing, ſaith *Banquho*, to give my Friend all the Honours, and none unto me; to whom one of the *Weirds* made anſwer, That he indeed ſhould not be King, but out of his loyns ſhould come a Race of Kings, that ſhould for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus ſaid, they all ſuddenly vaniſhed. Vpon their arrivall to the Court, *Machbeth* was immediatly created *Thane* of *Glammis*: & not long after, ſome new ſervice of his requiring new recompence, he was honoured with the title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the two former; he reſolved not to be wanting to himſelf in fulfilling the third: and therefore firſt he killed the King, and after, by reaſon of his command among the Souldiers and common people, he ſucceeded in his Throne. Being ſcarce warm in his ſeat, he called to mind the prediction given to his Companion *Banquho*: whom hereupon ſuſpecting as his ſupplanter, he cauſed him to be killed, together with his whole Poſterity, *Fleance* one of his Sonnes, eſcaping only with no ſmall difficulty into *Wales*. Freed, as he thought, from all fear of *Banquho* and his iſſue, he built *Dunſinan* Caſtle, and made it his ordinary ſeat: and afterwards on ſome new fears, conſulting with certain of his *Wizards* about his future Eſtate, was told by one of them, that he ſhould never be overcome till *Bernane* Wood (being ſome miles diſtant) came to *Dunſinan* Caſtle; and by another, that he ſhould never be ſlain by any man which was born of a woman. Secure then, as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the ſpace of 18 yeers, for ſo long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the meaſure of his Iniquities, *Mac-duffe*, the Governor of *Fife*, aſſociating to himſelf ſome few *Patriots*, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyrannie, privily met one Evening at *Bernane* Wood, and taking every one of them a Bough in his hand (the better to keep them from Diſcovery) marched early in the morning towards *Dunſinan* Caſtle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Macbeth* eſcaping was purſued by *Mac-duffe*, who having overtaken him urged him to the combat: to whom the Tyrant, half in ſcorn, returned this Anſwer; That he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his *deſtinie* never to be ſlain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then ſaid *Mac-duffe* is thy fatall end drawing faſt upon thee, for I was never born of Woman, but violently cut out of my Mothers belly: which words ſo daunted the cruell Tyrant, though otherwiſe a valiant man and of great performances, that he was very eaſily ſlain; and *Malcolm Conmor*, the true Heir of the Crown, ſeated in the Throne. In the mean time *Fleance* ſo proſpered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Countrey; and on her begat a Sonne called *Walter*; who flying out of *Wales* returned into *Scotland*, and his deſcent once known, he was not only reſtored to the Honours, and Eſtates of his Anceſtors, but preferred to be *Steward* of the Houſe of *Edgar*, the Sonne of *Malcolm* the third, ſurnamed *Conmor*, the name of *Stewart* growing hence hereditary unto his Poſterity. From this *Walter* deſcended that *Robert Stewart*, who ſucceeded *David Bruce* in the kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have Reigned ſucceſſively in that kingdom. But it is now time to leave off particulars, and look into the generall Succeſſion of

The Kings of the *Scots* before the Conqueſt of the *Picts*,

424.	1st *Fergus.*	604	11 *Kenneth.*		21 *Mordac.*
	2 *Eugenius.*		12 *Eugenius* III.	730	22 *Etſinus.*
449.	3 *Dongal.*	622	13 *Ferchard.*		23 *Eugenius* VII.
	4 *Conſtantine.*		14 *Donald.*		24 *Fergus* II.
	5 *Congall.*		15 *Ferchard* II.		25 *Solvathius.*
	6 *Goran.*		16 *Maldwine.*		26 *Aehains.*
	7 *Eugenius* II.		17 *Eugenius* IV.	809	27 *Congall* III.
	8 *Congall* II.		18 *Eugenius* V.		28 *Dongall* II.
	9 *Kinnatel.*		19 *Amberkeleth.*		29 *Alpine*, ſlain in a
	10 *Aidan.*		20 *Eugenius* VI.		Battail by the *Picts*, in purſuit

of his quarrell for that kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in Right of his Mother, Siſter and Heir of *Hungus* the laſt King thereof.

30 *Kenneth* II. Sonne of *Alpine*; who utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby

extending thereby the *Scotiſh* Kingdom, from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern *Scotland*; of which deſervedly accounted the firſt *Monarch*; the Founder of the new Succeſſion of *Scotland.*

The Kings of the *Scots* after the Conqueſt of the *Picts.*

A.Ch.

839. 1 *Kenneth* II. the firſt ſole King of all *Scotland.* 17.

856. 2 *Donald* II. Brother of *Kenneth* the 2d.

862. 3 *Conſtantin* II. Sonne of *Kenneth* the 2d.

875. 4 *Ethus*, Brother of *Conſtantin* the 2d.

890. 5 *Donald* III. Sonne of *Conſtantin* the 2d.

903. 6 *Conſtantin* III. 30.

933. 7 *Malcolm*, Sonne of *Donald* the 3d.

949. 8 *Ingulph*, an Intrnder. 12.

961. 9 *Duffe*, Sonne of *Malcolm.* 1.

961. 10 *Kenneth* III. Brother of *Duffe.*

994. 11 *Conſtantin* IV. an Intruder, againſt the Law, and Line of *Kenneth* the 3d.

1004. 12 *Malcolm* II. Sonne of *Kenneth* the 3d, oppoſed by *Grime*, the Nephew of *Duffe.*

1035. 13 *Duncan*, Sonne of *Grime*, ſucceeded *Malcolm* the 2d, dying without iſſue.

1040. 14 *Macbeth*, the Tyrant and Vſurper.

1057. 15 *Malcolm* III. Sonne of *Duncan.*

2096. 16 *Donald* IV. ſurnamed *Ban*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 3d.

1098. 17 *Edgar*, Sonne of *Malcolm* the 3d.

1107. 18 *Alexander*, Brother of *Edgar.*

1124. 19 *David*, Brother of *Alexander.*

1133. 20 *Malcolm* Sonne of *David.*

1166. 21 *William*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 4th.

1213. 22 *Alexander* II. Sonne of *William.*

1250. 23 *Alexander* III. Sonne of *Alexander* the 2d. after whoſe death, dying without any iſſue, An. 1285. began that tedious and bloody Quarrell about the ſucceſſion of this Kingdom, occaſioned by ſundry Titles and Pretendants to it: the principall whereof were *Bruce* and *Baliol* deſcended from the Daughters of *David*, Earl of *Huntingdon*, younger Sonne of *William*, and Great Vncle of *Alexander* the 3d, the laſt of the Male iſſue of *Kenneth* the 3d, thoſe of neerer Kindred being quite extinct. And when the *Scots* could not compoſe the difference among themſelves, it was taken into conſideration by King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, as the Lord Paramount of that Kingdom; who ſelecting 12 *Engliſh*, and as many of the *Scots* to adviſe about it, with the conſent of all adjudged it to *Iohn Baliol* Lord of *Galloway*, Sonne of *Iohn Baliol* and *Dervorguilla* his Wife, Daughter of *Alan* Lord of *Galloway*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, the Eldeſt Daughter of the ſaid *David*; who having done his homage to the ſaid King *Edward*, was admitted King.

1300. 24 *Iohn Baliol*, an *Engliſh-man*, but forgetfull both of *Engliſh* birth, and *Engliſh* Favours, invaded the Realm of *England* in Hoſtile manner, and was taken Priſoner by *King Edward.* Who following his blow, made himſelf Maſter of all *Scotland*, which he held during the reſt of his life, and had here his *Chancery* and other Courts. 6.

1306. 25 *Robert Bruce*, Sonne of *Robert Bruce* Lord of *Annandale* (Competitor with *Baliol* for the Crown of *Scotland* in Right of *Iſabel* his Mother, the ſecond Daughter of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, and conſequently a degree neerer to the King deceaſed than *Baliol* was, though deſcended from the Elder Siſter) was crowned King in the life-time of King *Edward* the firſt, but not fully poſſeſſed thereof untill after his death: confirmed therein by the great defeat given to *Edward* the 2d, at the fight of *Banocksbourn*, not far from *Sterling*, ſpoken of before. But he being dead, Anno 1332. *Edward* the 3d confirmed the Kingdom on.

1332. 26 *Edward Baliol*, Sonne of *Iohn Baliol*, rejected by the *Scots* for adhering ſo firmly to the *Engliſh*; who thereupon harried *Scotland* with fire and Sword. 10.

27 *David Bruce*, the Sonne of *Robert*, reſtored unto his Fathers throne by the power of the *Scots*, and a great enemy to the *Engliſh*. Invading *England* when King *Edward* was at the ſiege of *Calice*, he was taken Priſoner by Qu. *Philip*, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windſor*; where he was Priſoner, for a while, with King *Iohn* of *France.* Releaſed at laſt on ſuch conditions as beſt pleaſed the Conquerour. 29.

1371. 28 *Robert* II. ſurnamed *Stewart*, King of the *Scots* by deſcent from the eldeſt Siſter of *David Bruce*, was extracted alſo from the antient Princes of *Wales* (as was ſaid before) reſtoring thereby the *Britiſh* blood to the throne of *Scotland.*

1390. 29 *Robert* III. Sonne of *Robert* the 2d, called *Iohn* before he came to the Crown; in which much over-awed by his own brother the Duke of *Albanie*, who had an aim at it for himſelf. 16.

1406. 30 *Iames*, Sonne of *Robert* the 3d taken priſoner by King *Henry* the 4th of *England*, as he was croſſing the Seas for *France*, to avoid the practices of his Vncle. Reſtored unto his Country by King *Henry* the 5th, after 18 years abſence, he was at laſt moſt miſerably murdered by the Earl of *Athol*, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.

Ireland.

1448. 31 *James* II. ſlain by the *Engliſh* at the Siege of *Roxborough* Caſtle. 24.

1462. 32 *James* III. ſlain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.

1491. 33 *James* IV. maried *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Henry* the 7th, but at the ſoliciting of the *French*, (againſt the Peace between the Nations) he invaded *England* (in the abſence of King *Henry* the 8th) with 100000 men: but was met with by the Earl of *Surrey* (having 26000 men in his Army) nigh unto *Flodden*; where he was ſlain, together with two Biſhops, twelve Earles, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.

1514. 34 *James* V. Sonne of *James* the 4th, and the Lady *Margaret*, kept for a time ſo good correſpondencie with the *Engliſh*, that in the year 1536. he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred againſt them, he invaded their Borders in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord *Wharton*, then Warden of the *Weſt Marches*. The battells being ready to joyn, one S. *Oliver Sincleer* the Kings favorite, though otherwiſe of no great parentage, was by the Kings directions proclamed *Generall*: which the *Scotiſh* Nobility took with ſuch indignation, that they threw down their weapons, and ſuffered themſelves to be taken priſoners, there being not one man ſlain one either ſide. The principall priſoners were the Earls of *Glencarn*, and *Caſſiles*; the Barons *Maxwell*, *Oliphant*, *Somerwell*, *Flemming*, with divers others: beſides many of the principall Gentry. 28.

1542. 35 *Mary*, the Daughter and onely Lawfully-begotten Child of *James* the fift, ſucceeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promiſed in mariage to King *Edward* the ſixt of *England*; but by the power of the *Hamiltons* carried into *France*, where maried to *Francis*, then *Dolphin*, afterwards King of the *French*, of that name the 2d. After whoſe death, ſhe maried *Henry* Lord *Darnly*, eldeſt Sonne of *Matthew* Earl of *Lennox*. Outed of her Dominions by a potent Faction, ſhe was compelled to flie into *England*; where after a tedious impriſonment ſhe was put to death in *Fotheringhay* Caſtle in *Northamptonſhire*, and interred at *Peterburg*, Anno 1586.

1567. 36 *JAMES* VI. the Sonne of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, and of *Henry* Lord *Darnly*, was crowned King in his Cradle alſo. He maried *Anne*, the Daughter of *Chriſtiern* the 3d, King of *Denmark*; was choſe of the Order of the Garter, Anno 1590. and ſucceeded Queen *Elizabeth* in the Realm of *England*, March 24, Anno 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent foreſight of King *Henry* the 7th, who having two Daughters, beſtowed the Eldeſt (contrary to the mind of his Counſell) on the King of *Scots*, and the Younger on the King of the *French*: that ſo, if his own Iſſue male ſhould fail, and that a Prince of another Nation muſt inherit *England*; then *Scotland* as the leſſer Kingdom would depend upon *England*, and not *England* wait on *France*, as upon the greater. In which ſucceſſion of the *Scots* to the Crown of *England*, the Prophecie of the fatall *Stone*, ſpoken of before, did receive accompliſhment. And ſo perhaps might that aſcribed in the *Polychronicon* to an holy *Anchoret* living in King *Egelreds* time, which is this Engliſhmen, *for that they wonneth them to* drunkenneſs, *to* treaſon, *and to* rechleſſneſs *of Gods houſe*, *firſt by* Danes, *and then by* Normans, *and the third time by* Scots, *whom they holden leaſt worth of all*, *they ſhall be overcome. Then the World ſhall be unſtable, and ſo diverſe and variable, that the unſtableneſs of thoughts ſhall be betokned by many manner* diverſitie *of Clothing*. For on this union of the kingdoms, this prediction ſeems to have been accompliſhed; the Circumſtances mentioned in the ſame ſo patly agreeing, and the *Scots* never ſubduing *England*, but by this bleſſed Victory: unleſs perhaps the Accompliſhment thereof be ſtill to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great defeat at *Banocks-bourn*, in which were ſlain 50000 *Engliſh*, as the *Scotiſh* Writers doe report, and the name of *Scot* growing ſo terrible for a time, that an hundred of the *Engliſh* would flie from three *Scots*, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* eſtimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 ſterling: and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being no commodity in this Kingdom to allure ſtrangers to traffick; the Domain or Patrimonie of the Crown but mean; the country in moſt places barren; and many of the Subjects, thoſe ſpecially of the Out-Iſles, and the Weſtern parts, ſo extremely barbarous, that they adde very ſmall improvement to the publick Treaſurie.

And anſwerable to the ſhortneſs of their ſtanding Revenue, were their Forces alſo. For though the Country be very populous, and the men generally patient both of cold and hunger, and inured to hardſhip; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces ſeldom held together above 40 dayes, and then, if not a great deal ſooner, did disband themſelves. For the Nobility and Gentrie being bound by the Tenure of their Lands to ſerve the King in his Warres, and to bring with them ſuch and ſo many of their *Vaſſals* as the preſent ſervice did require; uſed to provide for themſelves and their followers, Tents, money, victuals, proviſion of all ſorts, and all other neceſſaries; the King ſupplying them with nothing. Which being ſpent, they uſually disbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reaſon, why the *Scots* in the time of hoſtilitie betwixt the Nations, made only ſudden and tumultuary incurſions into *England*; without performing any thing of ſpeciall moment: and that they have not acted any thing elſewhere in the way of conqueſt; but onely as Mercinaries to the *French* and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the

Army

Army of King *Iames* the 4th when he invaded *England* in the time of King *Henry* the 8th (being then in *France*) consisted of 100000 fighting men; yet this I look on only as an Argument of their populositie: few of those men being armed, or trained up to service; and therefore easily discomfited by a far leis Army. 'Tis true, that in the year 1643 the *Scotish Covenanters* raised an Armie consisting of 18000 Foot, 2000 Horse, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery and Ammunion correspondent to it: which was the gallanteſt Army, and the beſt appointed, that ever that Nation did set out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withall, that this Army was maintained and payed by the two Houses of the Parliament of *England*, at the rate of 30000 *per mensem*, and an advance of 100000l. before hand, the better to invite them to embrace the action, and prepare necessaries for it; without any charge unto themselves. And though the Army which they sent into *England* about five yeers after, under *Iames* Duke *Hamilton* of *Arran*, was little inferiour unto this in number, but far superiour to it both in Horse and Arms, and other necessary appointments: yet it is well known, that the *Scots* brought nothing but their own bodies to compound that Army; the Horse and Arms being such as they had gotten out of *England* in the former war. *Scotland*

In point of reputation amongst forrein Princes, the Kings of the *Scots*, and their Ambassadours and Agents, had place in all Generall Councils, and Ecclesiasticall Assemblies, before those of *Castile*: and by the *Statists* of late times. have been reckoned (with the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*) for absolute Monarchs. But I conceive this was onely since the first years of King *Edward* the 3d, when they had quitted their subjection and vassalage to the Crown of *England*. For that antiently the *Scots* were Homagers to the Kings of *England*, may be apparently demonstrated by these following Arguments. 1 By the Homages, and other services and duties done by the Kings of the *Scots* unto those of *England*: *Malcolm* the 3d doing Homage unto *William* the Conquerour; as *William* one of his Successors, did to King *Henry* the 2d, and that not onely for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of *Huntingdon*, (as by some pretended) but for the very Crown it self; *Kenneth* the 3d being one of those eight Tributary or Vassal Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interposing of King *Edw.* the first, and the submission of the *Scots* to that interposing, in determining the controversie of succession betwixt *Bruce* and *Baliol*: as in like case, *Philip* the *Fair* adjudged the title of *Artoys*, which was holden of the Crown of *France*, and then in question betwixt the Lady *Maud* and her Nephew *Robert*; or as King *Edward* the 3d, in the right of the said Crown of *France*, determined of the controversie betwixt *Iohn* Earl of *Montford*, and *Charles* of *Blais*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*. 3ly, By the confession and acknowledgment of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Estates of *Scotland*, subscribed by all their hands and seals in the Roll of *Ragman*; wherein they did acknowledge the superiority of the Kings of *England*, not only in regard of such advantages as the Sword had given him, but as of his originall and undoubted right. Which Roll was treacherously delivered into the hands of the *Scots* by *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, in the beginning of the reign of King *Edward* the 3d. 4ly, By the tacit Concession of the Kings themselves, who in their Coins, Commissions, and publick Instruments, assume not to themselves the title of Kings of *Scotland*, but of *Reges Scotorum*, or the Kings of the *Scots*; and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is some superiour Lord (King Paramount as we may call him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5ly, By the Iudgements and Arrests of the Courts of *England*, not onely in the times of King *Edward* the first, but in some times since. For when *William Wallis* a *Scotishman* by Birth, and the best Soldier of that Countrie, was taken Prisoner and brought to *London*, he was adjudged to suffer death as a Traytor: which had been an illegall and unrighteous judgement, had he been a Prisoner of Warre, and not looked on by the Iudges as a Subject to the Crown of *England*. The like done in the Case of *Simon Frezill*, another of that Kingdom, in the same Kings reign. In like manner, in the time of King *Edward* the 3d it was resolved by the Court in the Lord *Beaumonts* Case, when it was objected against one of the Witnesses that he was a *Scot*, and therefore as an *Alien* not to give his evidence; that his testimony was to be allowed of, because the *Scots* in the Law of *England* did not goe for *Aliens*. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13th of Queen *Elizabeths* reign, desired a *Medietatem linguæ*, because he was a *Scotishman*, and so an *Alien*; it was denied him by the Court, *because the* Scots *were not reputed here as* Aliens, *but as* Subjects *rather*. So also, when *Robert Umframville*, Lord of *Kyme*, was summoned to the Parliament of *England* in the reign of King *Edward* the 3d, by the name of *Robert* Earl of *Angus*, (which is a dignity in *Scotland*) and after in a Writ against him was called onely by his own name of *Umframville*, without the addition of that honour; the Writ was judged to abate: which I conceive the learned Iudges had not done, if *Scotland* had not been reputed to be under the Vassallage of the Kings of *England*. 6ly, and lastly, By a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my custodie) granted by King *Edward* the first in the last yeer of his reign, to *Peter Dodge* of *Shorworth* in the County of *Chester*, one of the Ancestors of my Mother: in which it is expressed, that the said Lands & Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent services, *ex contra son grand Enemy et Rebel*, Baliol, *Roy d'Escosse et Vassal de* Angleterre, that is to say, against his great Enemy and Rebel *Baliol* K: of *Scotland*, and Vassal of *England*. A thing so cleer, that if King *Iames* had not been extremely tender of the honour of his native Countrey, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a *New Invention*, in hammering the Case of the *Post-nati* for him, to make the *Scots* inheritable unto Lands in *England*. The acknowledgement and *Reviver* of their

Ireland. *old Subjection* would have ſerved his turn. But of this Argument enough, and perhaps too much: I onely adde, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable perſon of that Kingdom of *Scotland*, employed unto the Court in a buſineſs of no mean conſequence to the peace and quiet of his Countrie. I found him ſo ſenſible of the inconveniences of their preſent Government, by reaſon of the Kings abſence, and the frequent diviſions and partialities of his Counſell there: that he confeſſed that Nation could be never rich or happie, till they were made a Province of the *Engliſh* Empire, and governed by a *Vice-Roy*, as *Ireland* was.

The principall Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom, was that of S. *Andrew*, inſtituted by *Hungus*, King of the *Picts*, to incourage his Subjects in the warre againſt King *Athelſtane* of *England*. The Knights did wear about their necke a Collar, interlaced with Thiſtles, with the Picture of S. *Andrew* appendant to it: The Motto, *Nemo me impunè laceſſit*. It took this name becauſe after the battel, *Hungus* and his Souldiers went all bare-foot to S. *Andrews*, and there vowed that they and their Poſterity would thenceforth uſe his Croſs as their Enſign (which is a Saltire *Argent* in a Field *Azure*) whenſoever they took in hand any warlike enterprize.

2 But this Order being expired many Ages ſince, there is now no Order of Knighthood in it, (except *Knights Bachelers*) but that of *Nova Scotia*; ordained by King *James* Anno 1622. for the planting of that Countrie by *Scotiſh* Colonies; in imitation of the order of Baronets in *England*, for the plantation of *Ulſter*. Hereditary, as that alſo is, but the Knights hereof diſtinguiſhed by a Ribband of *Orange-Tawnie*.

The Arms are *Sol*, a Lion Rampant *Mars*, within a double Treſſure *counter-flowred*: Which Treſſure *counter-flowred* was added to the Lion by *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, at what time he contracted the League with *France*: ſignifying (ſaith *Hector Boetius* one of their Hiſtorians) *Francorum opibus Leonem exinde muniendum*; that the *Scotch* Lion ſhould be guarded by the riches of *France*.

Reckoned in *Scotland*, with
the Iſles of it.
Arch-Biſhops 2. Biſhops 12.
Vniverſities two
S. *Andrews*. *Aberdeen*.

IRELAND.

IRELAND is invironed on all ſides with the Ocean: parted from *Britain* by a violent and unruly Sea called S. *Georges* Chanell. Situate on the Weſt of *Britain*, next unto which it is the biggeſt Iland of *Europe*, containing in length 300, and in bredth 120 miles: and is ſeated under the 8th and 10th *Climates*; the longeſt day being 16 hours and an halfin the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts.

It was once called *Scotia*, from the *Scots* who did there inhabit: and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from *Scotland* in the Iſle of *Britain*. But the generall name hereof is *Ireland*; by the *Latines* called *Hibernia*, by the *Greeks*, *Iernia*. And though ſome frame a wreſted *Etymologie* from *Iberus*, a *Spaniſh* Captain; and ſome from *Irnaulph*, once a ſuppoſed Duke hereof; as others *ab Hyberno aere*, the Winter-like and inclement Air: yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which ſignifyeth in their own language a Weſtern land. And yet I muſt not pretermit the *Etymon* given us by *Bochartus*, (more neer the name than moſt of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Iberna*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying the furtheſt Habitation: there being no Countrie known amongſt the Antients which lay Weſt of *Ireland*.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Ceſarea*, *Noahs* Neece, inhabited here before the Flood; and how 300 years after the Flood, it was ſubdued by *Bartholanus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Gyants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delus* a *Grecian*, came hither: and laſt of all *Gaothel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* daughters, who muſt needs name this Iland *Scotia*. But not to honour ſuch *fopperies* with a confutation, doubtleſsly the firſt inhabitants of this Iland came out of *Britain*. For *Britain* is the nigheſt Countrey unto it, and ſo had a more ſpeedy waſtage hither; Secondly, the antient Writers call this Iland a *Britiſh Iland*; and Thirdly, *Tacitus* giveth us of this Countrey this verdict: *Solum, cœlumque cultus & ingenia hominum, haud multum à Britannia differunt*, the habits and diſpoſition of the people were not much unlike the *Britans*. For further evidence whereof it was obſerved, at the reduction of *Wales* to the Crown of *England* by King *Edward* the firſt, that many of

their

their Lawes and Cuſtoms were like thoſe of the *Iriſh*: which ſhews that they did both deſcend from the ſame originall. But then we muſt obſerve withall, that they were counted far more barbarous and ſavage by moſt antient Writers, than thoſe of *Britain* are deciphered at the firſt diſcovery: ſaid by *Strabo* to be man-eaters; accuſtomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the blood of thoſe whom they ſlew in fight. Nor were the Women, though the ſofter and more tender Sex, free from ſuch wilde and ſavage cuſtoms; it being a conſtant courſe amongſt them, when they were delivered of a man-childe, to put ſome meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a ſword; wiſhing therewith it might not die but in the middeſt of Arms, and the heat of battell. Both Sexes uſed to trim themſelves with the Teeth of Fiſhes, white as the driven Snow, or the poliſhed Ivorie; and therein placed the greateſt part of their pride and bravery. *Ireland.*

Nor are the modern *Iriſh* much abhorrent from ſuch barbarous cuſtoms, as plainly ſhew from what Originall they deſcend; altered but little by converſe with more civill Nations. Of naturall conſtitution generally ſtrong and nimble of body, haughty of heart, careleſs of their lives, patient in cold and hunger, implacable in enmity, conſtant in love, light of belief, greedy of glory; and in a word, if *they be bad, you ſhall no-where find worſe*; if *they be good, you ſhall haraly meet with better.* The Diet, eſpecially of the *meer Iriſh*, is for the moſt part, on herbs, roots, butter mingled with oat-flower, milk, and beef-broth: eating fleſh many times without bread, which they diſgeſt with *Vſquebaugh*; and give their bread-corn to their horſes inſtead of *Provender.* But more particularly thoſe of the richer ſort in all parts, and of all ſorts thoſe which inhabit within the *Pale* (as they themſelves call it) and in ſuch places where the *Engliſh* Diſcipline hath been entertained, conformable to civility, both in behaviour and apparrell: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the *wild Iriſh* of the poorer and inferiour ſort) moſt extremely barbarous; not behaving themſelves like *Chriſtians*, ſcarcely like men. All of them ſo tenacious of their antient cuſtoms, that neither power, nor reaſon, nor the ſenſe of the inconveniencies which they ſuffer by it, can wean them to deſert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their uſe of *Ploughing*, not with ſuch geares or harneſs, as in other places, but by tying the hindmoſt horſes head to the tayl of the former: which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unſerviceable by the ſoon loſing of their tayls; and withall is a courſe of ſo ſlow a diſpatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a week, as a good Teem well harneſſed would perform in a day; yet no perſwaſion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtfull and ridiculous cuſtom. And when the Earl of *Strafford*, the late Lord *Deputy*, had damned it by *Act* of *Parliament*, and laid a penalty on ſuch as ſhould after uſe it: the people thought it ſuch a grievance, and ſo injurious to the Nation, that among other things demanded towards a *Paciſication* of the preſent troubles, their *Agents* and *Commiſſioners* inſiſted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of *Husbandry*, we ſhall hereafter meet with in another place. Neer of kin to which, is a lazie cuſtom that they have of burning their ſtraw (rather than put themſelves to the pains to threſh it) by that means to part it from the corn. From which no reaſon can diſſwade them, nor perſwaſions winne them. They have among them other cuſtoms as abſurd, though leſs inconvenient, as placing a green buſh, on *May-day*, before their doores, to make their kine yeeld the more milk; kneeling down to the *New Moon* as ſoon as they ſee it, deſiring her to leave them in as good health as ſhee found them, and many others of like nature.

They uſe a Language of their own, but ſpoken alſo in the Weſt of *Scotland*, and the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſlands: which though originally *Britiſh*, or a Dialect of it, by reaſon of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Eaſterlings* or *Ooſt-mans*, and *Engliſh-Saxons*, hath no Affinitie with the *Welch*, for ought I can learn.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached among them by S. *Patrick*, affirmed to be the Nephew of S. *Martin* of *Tours*, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civill parts, and the *Engliſh* Colonies, according to the platform of the Church of *England*: but the *Kernes*, or naturall wild *Iriſh*, (and many of the better ſort of the Nation alſo) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own ſuperſtitious fancies, as in former times. And to ſay truth, it is no wonder that they ſhould; there being no care taken to inſtruct them in the Proteſtant Religion: either by tranſlating the Bible, or the *Engliſh Liturgie*, into their own Language, as was done in *Wales*; but forcing them to come to Church to the *Engliſh* Service, which the people underſtand no more than they do the Maſs. By means whereof, the *Iriſh* are not onely kept in continuall ignorance, as to the doctrine and devotions of the Church of *England*, and others of the *Proteſtant* Churches: but thoſe of *Rome* are furniſhed with an excellent Argument for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers doe not underſtand. And therefore I doe heartily commend it to the care of the State (when theſe diſtempers are compoſed) to provide, that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of *Chriſtian* Inſtruction, in their naturall tongue.

The Soil of it ſelf is abundantly fruitfull, but naturally fitter for graſs and paſturage, than it is for tillage: as may be ſeen in ſuch places where the induſtrie of man is aiding to the naturall goodneſs of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Country is either over-grown with Woods, or encombred with vaſt Boggs and unwholeſom Mariſhes, yeelding neither profit nor pleaſure unto the Inhabitants. In ſome places, as in the County of *Armagh*, ſo rank and fertill, that the laying of any ſoil or compoſt on it, doth abate its fruitfulneſs, and proves the worſt Husbandry that can be.

It

Ireland: It hath been antiently very famous for the Piety and Religious lives of the Monks. Amongſt whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apothegm* : when offered many fair preferments to leave his Country, he returned this Anſwer, *It becomes not them to imbrace other mens goods, who for* Chriſts *ſake had forſaken their own.* Of no leſs pietie, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Rafe*, Arch-Biſhop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flouriſhed about the yeer 1350. A declared Enemie of the Errors and corruptions of the Church of *Rome.*

It is affirmed of this Iland, that (amongſt other Privileges which it hath above other Ilands) it foſtereth no venomous Serpent, and that no ſuch will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her ſelf we find her ſpeaking in the Poet.

Illa ego ſum Graiis, *Glacialis* Hibernia *dicta;*
Cui Deus, & melior rerum naſcentium Origo,
Jus commune dedit cum Creta *altrice* Tonantis,
Angues ne noſtris diffundant ſibila in oris.

I am that Iland which in times of old
The *Greeks* did call *Hibernia*, ycie-cold:
Secur'd by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Joves* Mother dear;
That poiſonous Snake ſhould never here be bred,
Or dare to hiſs, or hurtfull venom ſpred.

The other miracles of this Iland, are, 1 That there is a Lake in the Countie of *Armagh*, into which if one thruſt a peece of Wood, he ſhall find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned into Iron; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whet-Stone: richly deſerved by him, if the tale be falſe, who did firſt report it. 2ly, That the Kine will yield no Milk, if their Calves be not by them; or at leaſt their Calves skinnes ſtuffed with ſtraw or Hay. It is ſaid alſo, that all the breed of this Countrie are of leſs ſize than they be in *England*, except Women and Greybounds, and thoſe much bigger than with us,

As for the *Clergie* of this Countrie, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons* in former times: ſome of their Biſhops being ſo poor, that they had no other Revenues than the Paſture of two Milch-Beaſts. And ſo far had the Monaſteries and Religious houſes invaded by *Appropriations*, the Churches rights, that of late times in the whole Province of *Connaught* the whole Stipend of the *Incumbent* was not above 40 ſhillings, in ſome places not above 16. So that the poor *Iriſh* muſt needs be better fed than taught: for *ad tenuitatem* Beneficiorum *neceſſario ſequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum*; Poor Benefices will be fitted with ignorant Prieſts, ſaid *Panormitan* rightly. But this was remedied in part by his Sacred Majeſty King *CHARLES*, the ſecond Monarch of *Great Britain*, who liberally (at the ſuit of the late Lord Arch-B. of *Canterbury*) reſtored unto this Church all the *Impropriations* and Portions of *Tithes*, which had been veſted in the Crown. An action of moſt ſingular pietie, and Princely bountie.

Principall Rivers of this Countrie, are, 1 the *Shannon* (the *Senus* of *Ptolomie*) which ariſing in the Mountains of *Letrim* in the County of *Connaught*, and making many fair Lakes as it paſſeth forwards; loſeth it ſelf, after a courſe of 200 miles (of which 60 navigable) in the Weſtern Ocean. 2 The *Liff*, by *Ptolomie* called *Libnius*, neighboured by the City of *Dublin*. 3 *Awiduffe*, or *Blackwater*, as the *Engliſh* call it. 4 *Sione*, ſuppoſed to be the *Medona* of the antient Writers. 5 The *Showre*. 6 The *Slanie*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue, out of the Canto of the mariage of the *Thames* and *Medway* in the *Faierie Queen.*

There was the *Liffie* rowing down the lea,
The ſandie *Slane*, the ſtonie *Aubrian*,
The ſpacious *Shenin* ſpreading like a ſea,
The pleaſant *Boyne*, the fiſhie-fruitfull *Banne*,
Swift *Awiduffe*, which of the *Engliſhman*
Is call'd *Blackwater*; and the *Liffar* deep,
Sad *Trowis* that once his people over-ran,
Strong *Allo* tumbling from *Slewlogheer* ſteep,
And *Mallo* mine, whoſe waves I wilom taught to weep.

There alſo was the wide-embayed *Mayre*,
The pleaſant *Bandon* crown'd with many wood;
The ſpreading *Lee*, that like an Iland fair
Incloſeth *Cork* with his divided flood;
And balefull *Oure*, late ſtain'd with *Engliſh* blood,
With many more, *&c.* So the renowned *Spencer* in his *Canto* of the mariage of *Thames* and *Medway.*

But beſides theſe Rivers, this Iland is in moſt places well-ſtored with Lakes, yeelding great plenty of Fiſh to the parts adjoyning. The principall of which, 1 *Lough-Erne*, containing 15 miles in bredth, and 30 miles in length; ſhaded with woods, and ſo repleniſhed with fiſh, that the Fiſhermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their nets. It hath alſo in

it

it many Ilands, one moſt remarkable for the ſtrange and horrid noiſes which are therein heard; called therefore by the Vulgar S. *Patricks Purgatorie*. Almoſt as big as this is 2 the Lake of *Corbes*, which loſeth it ſelf in the Sea not far from *Galloway*. A Lake of 26 miles in length, and four in bredth; ſaid to have in it 30 Ilets, abounding with Pine-trees. 3 *Lough-Foyle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Logia* of *Ptolomie*. 4 *Lough-Eaugh*, out of which the River *Banne*, abundantly well-ſtored with Salmons, hath its firſt Originall: And beſides theſe and many others of leſs note, there are ſaid to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meth*, not far aſunder, and having an entercourſe of waters: but of ſo different a temper, that the Fiſh which are proper to the one (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar ſorts) will not live in the other: but either dieth, or by ſome ſecret conveyances find a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought. *Ireland.*

It was divided antiently into five Provinces, each one a Kingdom of it ſelf; that is to ſay, 1 *Leinſter*, 2 *Meth*, 3 *Ulſter*, 4 *Connaught*, and 5 *Monſter*: but of late time the Province of *Meth* is reckoned for a Member or part of *Leinſter*.

1 LEINSTER, by the *Latines* called *Lagenia*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Channel, (commonly called S. *Georges* Channel) by which parted from the Iſle of *Great Britain*; on the Weſt, the River *Newrie*, (*Neorus* as the *Latines* call it) which divides it from *Mounſter*; on the North, the Province of *Meth*; and the main Ocean on the South. The Soil more fruitfull generally than the reſt of *Ireland*, becauſe better cultivated and manured, as having been longeſt in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*: from whom a great part of the Inhabitants doe derive themſelves, and for that reaſon more conformable to the civilities and habit of the *Engliſh* Nation. Well watred, beſides a large Sea-coaſt, with many fair and pleaſant Rivers; the principall whereof, 1 the *Barrow*, called in *Latine Birgus*; 2 the *Newrie*, 3 the *Showre*, and 4 the *Liffie*, (the *Libnius* of *Ptolomie*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief City.

It containeth the Counties of 1 *Dublin*, 2 *Kilkenny*, 3 *Caterlough*, 4 *Kildare*, 5 *Leaſe*, or Queens County, 6 *Ophalie*, or Kings County and 7 *Weiſhford*: in which are comprehended 34 Towns of note, and 88 Caſtles, well-fortified, and able to make good reſiſtance againſt an Enemy; the *Engliſh* being forced to fortifie themſelves in their Plantations with ſtrong holds and fortreſſes, againſt the incurſions of the Natives.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Dublin*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eblana* of *Ptolomie*; by the *Iriſh* called *Balacleigh*, becauſe being ſeated in a fennie and mooriſh Soil, it was built on piles, as the word doth ſignifie in that language. Situate at or neer the mouth of the Rive *Liffie*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are many times encumbred with heaps of Sand. The Citie very rich and populous, as being the *Metropolis* of all the Iland, the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbiſhops See, and an Vniverſity, beſides the benefit redounding from the Courts of Juſtice. In thoſe reſpects well-fortified againſt all emergencies; and adorned with many goodly buildings, both private and publique. The principall of which, are the Caſtle, wherein the Lord Deputy reſideth, built by *Henry Loandres* once Archbiſhop here; a College founded by Queen *Elizabeth*, to the honour, and by the name of the bleſſed *Trinity*; the Cathedrall Church dedicated to S. *Patrick*, the Apoſtle of the *Iriſh* Nation; a fair Collegiate Church called *Chriſt-Church*, beſides thirteen others deſtinated to Parochial meetings. Being deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the *Daniſh Wars*, it was re-edified by *Harald* ſurnamed *Harfager*, King of the *Norwegians*, then Maſters of moſt parts of the Iland; and after the ſubjection of it to the Crown of *England*, was peopled with a Colonie of *Briſtol* men. 2 *Weiſhford* or *Wexford*, the *Menapia* of *Ptolomie*, ſituate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, ſuppoſed to be the *Modona* of the ſame Author: the firſt of all the Towns in *Ireland* which received a Colonie of *Engliſh*. 3 *Kilkenny*, on the River *Newre*, the chief Seat of the Biſhop of *Oſſerie*, and the faireſt Town of all the In-lands: ſo called, *quaſi Cella Canici*, the Cell or Monaſtery of *Canicus*, a man of great renown for pietie in theſe parts of the Countrie. 4 *Kildare*, an In-land Town alſo, and a Biſhops See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earl to the antient Family of the *Fitz-Geralds*, of long time honoured with this title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the 8th, as a man of ſo unquiet and turbulent a nature, that his Adverſaries cloſed their charge againſt him with this expreſſion; *Finally*, *all* Ireland *cannot rule this Earl*; the King replyed, that *then this Earl ſhould rule all* Ireland: and ſo for his leſts ſake made him *Lord Deputy* of the Kingdom. 5 *Roſſe*, once populous, well-traded, and of large Circumference, now a ruine onely; nothing remaining but the Walls, which were built by *Isabell*, the Daughter of *Richard Strongbow* Earl of *Pembroke*, the fortunate Conquerour of this Iland for King *Henry* the 2d. 6 *Philips Town*, the principall of the County of *Ophalie*, or Kings Countie; ſo called in honour of King *Philip*; as 7 *Marieburg*, the chief of *Leaſe*, or the Queens County, was in honour of Queen *Mary*. 8 *Leighlin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified againſt the incurſion of the *Iriſh*, by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9 *Caterlogh*, commonly, but corruptly *Carlough*, a Town of great ſtrength, and the chief of that County. 10 *Rheban*, not otherwiſe of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rheba* of *Ptolomie*.

2 METH, by the *Latines* called *Media*, by *Giraldus*, *Midia*; becauſe ſituate in the middeſt of the Iland, hath on the South, *Leinſter*; on the Weſt, *Connaught*; on the North, *Ulſter*; on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Sea, or S. *Georges* Channel. A ſmall, but rich and pleaſant Province: well ſtocked with people, and ſtored with all things neceſſary for their ſuſtentation; and for a ſweet and wholeſom Air, not inferiour to any. Divided into three Counties onely, that is to ſay, 1 *Eaſt-Meth*,

Ireland. *Meth*, 2 *West-Meth*, and 3 *Longford*; containing 13 Towns of note, and 14 Castles of good esteem. By reason of which strength it is called by some writers the *Chamber of Ireland.*

Townes of most consequence herein, 1 *Trim*, the chief Town of the County of *East-Meth*, the antient Baronie of the *Lacies*, possessed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and Lords of the greatest parts of *Vlster*. 2 *Tredah*, more properly *Droghedah*, situate on the River *Boine* on the edge of *Ulster*, to which Province belongs so much of the Town as lieth on the North side of that River: a very fair and populous City, as well by art as Nature very strongly fortified, and furnished with a large and commodious Haven. It took the name of *Drogheda* from the Bridge there built upon the River, for the Conveniency of passage (as the word signifieth in that Language)and therefore called *Pontana* by some *Latine* writers. 3 *Mulinga*, the chief Town of *West-Meth*. 4 *Delvin*, in the same County also, the Baronie of the *Nagents*, an antient Familie in this tract. 5 *Longford*, of most note in the Countty so named, but not else observable.

As for the fortunes of this Province (for *Leinster* since the first Conquest of it, hath been inseparably annexed to the Crown of *England*) it was first granted in Fee Farm by King *Henry* the 2d, to *Hugh Lacy*, a Man of great merit and imployment in the Conquest of *Ireland*; who left it unto *Walter* his younger Sonne. By *Margaret*, and *Matilda*, the Neeces of this *Walter* by his Sonne *Gilbert*, one moyety hereof came to the *Mortimers* Earls of *March*, and in their right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the fourth: and the other moyety to the *Verduns*, by whom dispersed and scatered into divers Families. Accompted for one County only till the time of King *Henry* the 8th. in whose reign it was divided into *East-Meth* and *West-Meth*, to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3 VLSTER, by the *Latines* called *Vltonia*, is the largest Province of all *Ireland*; bounded on the South, with *Meth* and *Connaught*; on the West, with the vast Irish Ocean; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean to which *Ptolomie* gives the name of *Hiperborean*; and on the East, with S. *Georges* Channel. A Country fruitfull of it self, but in most places formerly over-grown with Woods, and drowned in Marishes and great bogs, by the naturall slothfulness of the people: made more responsall to the husbandman both for corn and pasturage since the late Plantation of the *British*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1 *Louth*, 2 *Cavan*, 3 *Fermanath*, 4 *Down*, 5 *Monaghan*, 6 *Armagh*, 7 *Colrane*, 8 *Tirconnel*, 9 *Tir-Oen*, and 10 *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and Traffick, and 30 Castles for defence of the Countrie, and keeping under the wild *Irish*, wilder and more untractable in these Northern parts, than the rest of *Ireland*. The whole well watered with a large and spacious Sea on three sides thereof; many great Lakes in the body of it, besides the Rivers of 1 *Boyne*, called in *Latine Branda*, which divides it from *Meth*, 2 the *Bann*, 3 *Moandus*, and 4 the *Eyn*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Armagh*, on or neer the River *Kalin*, the chief Town of the County so called, and the See of an Arch-Bishop, who is the Primate of all *Ireland*. An antient City, but so miserably defaced by fire in *Tir-Oens* Rebellion, that it can scarce preserve the reputation of a Market Town. 2 *Carlingford*, and 3 *Dundalk*, both situate on the Sea side, and both within the County of *Louth*. 4 *Knock-Fergus*, the chief of *Antrim*, more properly *Rock-Fergus* (and in that sense called *Carig-Fergus* by the *Irish*) so called from *Fergus* one of the Kings of the *Irish Scots* who there suffered Shipwrack. Seated upon a large and capacious Bay (the *Vindertus* of *Ptolomie*)which giveth it both a safe and commodious Port; as well by naturall situation, as the works of Art very strongly fortified; by reason of the neighbourhood of the *Scots* in *Cantire*, from which little distant. 5 *London-Derry*, a Colonie of the *Londoners*, best built of any Town in the North of *Ireland*. 6 *Dungannon*, the principall seat and residence in former times of the great *Oneales*. 7 *Dungall*, the principall of *Tir-Connell*. 8 *Robogh*, a small Village at present, but antiently a Bishops See, fit to be mentioned in this place in regard it still preserveth some footsteps of the old *Robogdii*, an *Irish* Tribe, and placed by *Ptolomie* in this tract, where they gave name unto the promontory by him called *Robogdium*, now the *Faire-Fore-land*; as is probably conceived by the learned *Camden*.

This, as it is the largest Province of all this Kingdom, so was it with most difficulty subjected to the Crown of *England*, and reduced to good order and civility. First conquered by *Iohn Curcie* a valiant *Englishman*, in the reign of King *Henry* the 2d. by whom created Earl of *Vlster*. But being maligned for his eminent vertues, and after proscribed by King *Iohn*, this Title and Estate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lucie*, the Lord and Conquerour of *Meth*, whom before we spake of. By an Heir Generall of the *Lacies*, it came unto the *Burghs* then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the mariage of *Elizabeth* Daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the last Earl of that Family, it came to *Leonel* Duke of *Clarence*, the second Sonne (then living) of King *Edward* the 3d: as by his Daughter *Philip* to the Earls of *March*, from them by the like mariage to the house of *York*, and in the person of King *Edward* the 4th. to the Crown again. But being neglected by the *English*, in the whole course of their Government, especially in the Wars betwixt *York* and *Lancaster*, it was cantonned into many estates and Principalities by the great Lords of the naturall *Irish*, (who had born too great sway here in the former times) and so estranged from the civilities of *England*, and their Allegiance to that Crown, as if it had never been in subjection

to

to it. In which eſtate it did continue (the Kings of *England* having here no more power or profit, than the great ones of the Countrey were pleaſed to give them) till the Rebellion firſt, and afterwards the Vanquiſhment of *Hugh Oneal*, the then Earl of *Tir-Oen*, brought it in full ſubjection to the *Engliſh*-government, of which more hereafter. *Ireland.*

4 CONNAVGHT, in *Latine* called *Connacia*, by the *Iriſh*, *Connaght*, is bounded on the North, with *Vlſter*; on the Weſt, with the Main Ocean; on the South, with *Munſter*, from which parted by the River *Shanon*; and on the Eaſt, with *Meth* and ſome part of *Leinſter*. So called from the *Nagnata*, an old *Iriſh* Nation, or from *Nagnata* a Port-Town, both placed by *Ptolomie* in this tract. The Soil of the ſame temper with that of *Vlſter*, as woodie and as full of bogs till theſe later times, in which indifferently well cleered of both inconveniences.

It hath been alſo called by our *Engliſh* Writers, the Countie of *Clare*, from *Thomas de Clare*, one of the younger Sonnes of *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloceſter*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward* the firſt: and is divided at the preſent into theſe five Shires, that is to ſay, 1 *Letrim*, 2 *Koſcommon*, 3 *Maio*, 4 *Slego*, and 5 *Galloway* and *Twomond*. In which are comprehended but ſix Towns of any conſequence for commerce and traffick, (an Argument of the imperfect plantation of it by the *Engliſh* Conquerors) and about 24 Caſtles, for defence of the Countrie, of old erection, beſides ſuch Fortreſſes as have been raiſed occaſionally in theſe later troubles.

Places of moſt note and obſervation, 1 *Toam*, an Archbiſhops See. 2 *Athenry*, an antient Town, but decaied and ruinous; of moſt renown for being the Baronie of *John de Bermingham*, a noble *Engliſhman*, who had great poſſeſſions in this tract. 3 *Letrim*, the chief Town of the Countie ſo named, neighboured by the *Curlew*-Mountains, unfortunately memorable for the great defeat there given the *Engliſh*, in *Tir-Oens* rebellion; and by the Spring or Fountain of the River *Shemin* or *Shanon*, whoſe courſe we have before deſcribed. 4 *Slego*, and 5 *Koſcommon*, the chief Towns of their ſeverall Counties. 6 *Athlone*, a Peece of great ſtrength, and the Key of *Connaught*. 7 *Twomond*, not otherwiſe much obſervable, but for giving the title of an Earl to the noble Family of *O-Brian*, (deſcended from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that honour by King *Henry* the 8th. 8 *Galloway*, the principall of this Province, a Biſhops See, and the third Citie of the Kingdom for beautie and bigneſs. Situate neer the fall of the great Lake or River of *Corbes*, in the Weſtern Ocean; A noted Emporie, and lately of ſo great fame with forein Merchants, that an out-landiſh Merchant meeting with an *Iriſhman*, demanded *in what part of* Galloway, Ireland *ſtood*; as if *Galloway* had been the name of the Iland, and *Ireland* onely the name of ſome Town.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, as the reſt of thoſe Provinces; the laſt King whereof was *Rodorick*, ſurnamed the Great, who having a great hand over the reſt of the Roytelets, entituled himſelf ſole Monarch or King of *Ireland*. But being forced to ſubmit himſelf to King *Henry* the 2d, his Countrey at the laſt was brought into ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, by the valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare*, Earl of *Gloceſter*, *William de Bermingham*, and other noble Adventurers of the *Engliſh* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their labours; yet the greateſt part of the ſpoil, together with the title of Lords of *Connaught*, fell to the Family of the *Burghs*; from them to *Lionel* D. of *Clarence*, and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was ſhewn. Cantonned again amongſt the *Iriſh* and degenerate *Engliſh*, as *Vlſter* was, by the ſupine neglect of the Kings of *England*: till the Rebellion of *Tir-Oen*, involving all the Chiefs of the *Iriſh* Nation in the ſame cauſe with him, involved them alſo conſequently in the ſame deſtruction.

5 MOVNSTER, by the *Latines* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North, with *Connaught*; on the Eaſt, with *Leinſter*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* or Weſtern Ocean; and on the South, with the *Vergivian*. By the naturall *Iriſh* it is called *Mown*, whence the *Engliſh* had the name of *Mounſter*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertilitie of the Soil, yeelds not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into ſix Counties, viz. 1 *Limerick*, 2 *Waterford*, 3 *Cork*, 4 *Deſmond*, 5 *Kerry*, and 6 *Tipperarie*; which two laſt antiently enjoyed all the rights of a Countie Palatine: And in theſe Shires are comprehended (beſides many ſafe Stations and Rodes for Shipping) 24 Towns of note and trading, and 66 Caſtles of old erection.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1 *Caſſiles*, in the Countie of *Limerick*, an Archbiſhops See, advanced unto that honour by Pope *Eugenius* the third, about the year 1150. 2 *Limerick*, the principall of that Countie, and the fourth in eſtimation of all the Kingdom: Situate in an Iland compaſſed round about with the River *Shanon*, by which means well fortified: a well-frequented Emporie, and a Biſhops See; Diſtant from the main Ocean about 60 miles, but ſo accomodated by the River, that ſhips of burden come up cloſe to the very wals. The Caſtle and the Bridge, peeces of great both ſtrength and beautie, were of the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with the ſituation. 3 *Clonmel*, in the Countie of *Tipperarie*, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 4 *Holy Croſs*, in the ſame County alſo, once flouriſhing, by reaſon of the great reſort of Pilgrims to ſee & worſhip there a peece of the holy Croſs as it was ſuppoſed: which ſuppoſition as it drew much wealth unto the Town, ſo it obtained the rights of a County *Palatine* for the County alſo. 5 *Thurles*, in the ſame Countie, which gives the title of a Vicount to the Earls of *Ormond*, but not elſe obſervable. 6 *Waterford*, on the River *Showre*, a well-traded Port, a Biſhops See, and the ſecond Citie of the Kingdom: Of great fidelity to the *Engliſh* ſince the conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for

that

Ireland. that cauſe endowed with many ample privileges. Firſt built by ſome *Norwegian* Pirates, who though they fixed it in one of the moſt barren parts and moſt foggie air of all the Country, yet they made choice of ſuch a ſafe and commodious ſite for the uſe of ſhipping, that of a neſt of Pirats it was eftſoons made a Receipt for Merchants, and ſuddenly grew up to great wealth and power. 6 *Cork*, (by the *Latines* called *Corcagia*) the principall of that Countie, and a Biſhops See: well walled, and fitted with a very commodious Haven; conſiſting chiefly of one Street reaching out in length; inhabited by a civill, wealthy, and induſtrious people. 7 *Dunk-Eran*, an old Epiſcopall See, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Ivernis* of *Ptolomie*, but not elſe obſervable. 8 *Kinſale*, upon the mouth of the River *Bany*, a commodious Port, oppoſite to the Coaſts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tir-Oens* Rebellion by a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, under the command of *Don Iohn de Aquilar*, but ſoon recovered (after the defeat of that Grand Rebel neer the Walls hereof) by the valour and indefatigable induſtrie of *Charles* Lord *Mountjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom. 9 *Baltimore*, 10 *Youghall*, and 11 *Bere-haven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of ſafe Roads or convenient Havens. 12 *Liſmore*, of old a Biſhops See, now annexed to *Waterford*, in which ſhire it ſtandeth. Nothing in point of ſtorie ſingular which concerns this Province; but that it was ſo carefully looked to by the Kings of *England*, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer (in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to the *Deputie* himſelf) called the *Lord Preſident* of *Mounſter*: by whoſe vigilancie there have hapned fewer Rebellions here than in any Province of this Iland.

The antient Inhabitants of this Iland, being originally *Britans* (as before is ſaid) were in the time of *Ptolomie* diſtinguiſhed into the Nations of the *Rhobogdii*, *Darni*, *Voluntii*, *Venicnii*, and *Erdini*, poſſeſſing the Northern parts, now *Vlſter*: the *Auteri*, *Gangani*, and *Nagnata*, inhabiting *Connaught*: the *Velibori*, *Vterni*, *Vodii*, and *Coriondi*, in the South, now *Mounſter*; and the *Menapii*, *Cauci*, *Blanii*, *Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meth* and *Leinſter*. Principall Cities of the which, were, *Eblana*, now *Dublin*; *Menapia*, now *Waterford*; *Nagnata*, which *Ptolomie* honoureth with the title of *Vrbs inſignis*; *Rhigia*, *Rheba*, *Macolicum*, *Laberus*, *Ivernis*, &c. not eaſily diſcernable by what names we may call them now: this Countrie never being ſo happy as to come under the power of the *Romans*, the great Maſters of *Civilitie* and good Letters in the Weſt of *Europe*; and by that means the Actions and affairs thereof buried in ignorance and ſilence. Towards the falling of which Empire we find the Nation of the *Scots* to be ſeated here, and from hence firſt to take poſſeſſion of the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſles, next of the Weſtern part of *Britain* on the the North of *Solway*. Afterwards ſome of the *Saxon* Monarchs caſt their eyes upon it and made themſelves maſters of *Dublin*, and ſome other places; but being encumbred with the *Danes* could not hold them long; being hardly able to defend their own againſt that people. The next that undertook the conqueſt were the Northern Nations, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Normans*, all paſſing in the Chronicles of that time under the name of *Norwegians*: who firſt onely ſcowred along the Coaſts in the way of Piracie. But after finding the weakneſs of the Iland, divided amongſt many petit and inconſiderable Princes, they made an abſolute conqueſt of it under the conduct of *Turgeſius*, whom they elected for their King: ſoon rooted out by the Policie of the King of *Meth*, the only *Iriſh* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petit King, by name *Omo-Caghlen*, had a Daughter of renowned beautie, whom *Turgeſius* demanded of her Father to ſerve his luſts: and he ſeeming willing to condeſcend to the motion, as if honoured by it, made anſwer, That beſides his Daughter, he had at his diſpoſing many others of more exquiſite beauties, which ſhould all be readie at command. *Turgeſius* ſwallowing this bait, deſired him with all ſpeed to effect this meeting. But the King of *Meth* attiring in the habits of Women, a company of young Gentlemen, who durſt for the common liberty adventure their ſeverall lives, conducted them to the Tyrants Bed-chamber. And they according to the directions given them, (when for that little modeſty ſake he had in him, he had commanded all his attendants to avoid the room) aſſaulted him, now ready for, and expecting more kind embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Methian* King had by this time acquainted divers of the better ſort with his plot; all which upon a ſigne given, ruſh into the Palace, and put to death all the *Norwegians*, and other attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Roytelets* enjoyed their former Dominions till the yeer 1172, in which *Dermot Mac Morogh* King of *Leinſter*, having forced the Wife of *Maurice O Rork* King of *Meth*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom, came to the Court of *England* for ſuccour. To this Petition, *Henry* the ſecond then King, condeſcended; ſending him ayd under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, ſurnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*; who reſtored King *Dermot*, and brought a great part of the Iland under the *Engliſh* ſubjection. *John*, King of *England*, was the firſt who was entituled *Lord of Ireland*; which ſtile was granted him by Pope *Urban* the 3d; who for the ornament of his royaltie, ſent him a plume of *Peacock* Feathers: and when *Tir-Oen* ſtiled himſelf *Defender of the Iriſh Libertie*, he was by *Clement* the 8 honored with a like plume. But here we are to underſtand, that though the Kings of *England* uſed no other title than *Lords of Ireland*; yet were they Kings thereof in effect and power, *Lords Paramount*, as we uſe to ſay. And though themſelves retained only the name of *Lords*, yet one of them gave to one of his *Engliſh* Subjects, the honourable, but invidious title of *Duke of Ireland*. And they retained this title of *Lords*, till the yeer 1542; in which *Henry* the 8th, in an *Iriſh Parliament*, was declared K. of *Ireland*, as a name more ſacred, and repleat with Majeſtie, than that of *Lord*: at which time alſo he was declared to be the *Supreme Head* under God, of the Church of *Ireland*; and the pre-

tended

tended jurisdiction of all forein Powers, especially the usurped Autoritie of the Pope of *Rome* renownced by Law, though still acknowledged by too many of this superstitious and untractable People. *Ireland.*

The Government of this Country, since the first Conquest by the *English*, hath been most commonly by one Supreme Officer, who is sometimes called the *Lord Lieutenant*, most generally the *Lord Deputy* of *Ireland*; than whom no *Vice-Roy* in all *Europe* hath greater power, or comes nearer the Majesty of a King in his Train and State. For his assistance he hath a Privie Councell attending on him, though resident for the most part at *Dublin*: and in emergencies, or cases of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the standing Rule of all civill Government, they owe their being and original to the *English* Parliaments. For in the reign of King *Henry* the 7th. Sir *Edward Poynings* then, *Lord Deputy* caused an Act to pass in the *Irish* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in *England* before that time, were to be entertained and Hand in force as the Laws of *Ireland*. On which foundation they have raised many *Superstructures* both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, summoned by the *Lord Deputy* at the Kings appointment: in which, by an other Statute made in the time of the said *Poynings*, the people are inabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were first transmitted to the Court of *England* to be considered of by the King, before they were *Voted* to in either of the houses of the Irish Parliaments. Which Laws commmonly called *Poynings Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongst them; though the last much stomaked and repined at; not only as a badge of their Subjection to the Crown of *England*, but as a Curb or Martingall to hold them in.

Yet notwithstabding these good *Laws*, and the ample power of their Commission, the Lord Deputies could never absolutely subdue the Iland, or bring the People to any civill course of life, the Fathers inflicting a heavy curse on all their posterity, if ever they should sow Corn, build houses, or Learn the *English* tongue. To this indisposition of the *Irish* themselves, let us adde the defects of the Kings of *England*, and *Irish* Deputies, in matters of civill policie, as I find them particularized by Sir *John Davies*, in his worthy and pithy discourse of this Subject. I will only glean a few of them. First then saith he, a *barbarous* Country is like a field overgrown with weeds, which must first be well broken with the *Plough*, and then immediately *Sown* with good and profitable seed: so must a wild and uncivill people, be first broken and Ploughed up by War, and then presently *Sown* with the seed of *good Laws* and discipline; lest the weeds revive in the one, and ill manners in the other. Here then was the first defect in our *English* Kings, not to tame and take down the Stomacks and pride of this people, though either civill or forrein wars perhaps occasioned this neglect: and also the *Irish* Deputies, who at such times as the people upon a small discomfiture, were crest-faln, neglected the so keeping of them by severity of discipline. The second oversight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave such large possessions and *regalities* unto the first Conquerours, that the people knew no Authority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. Thirdly, the Laws of *England* were not indifferently communicated to all the *Irishrie*, but to some particular Families and Provinces only: insomuch as there were but five great Lords of the Naturall *Irish*, who had the benefit and protection of the Laws of *England*, that is to say *O Neale* in *Ulster*, *O Connohor* in *Connaught*, *Mac Morrough* in *Lemster*, *O Malaghlin* in *Meth*, *O Brian* in *Twomond*; known by the name of *Quinque Sanguines* in some old Records. By means whereof the rest of the people being in the condition of *Out-laws*, or at the best of *Aliens*, had no incouragement either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themselves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the *Deputies* or Lords *Lieutenants*, who having made good and wholsome Laws against the barbarous customes of the Common people, and the mercilesse oppressions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for terror, not for reformation. Fiftly, Adde unto these (which Sir *John Davies* hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken by the Kings of *England* in the choice of their *Deputies*: sometimes conferring that high Office as a Court-preferment, without Relation unto the merits of the person; and sometimes sending men of weak or broken fortunes, who attended more their own profit than their Masters service, and were more bent to fleece than to feed this Flock. Sixthly, And yet besides these Errours of the Kings and Deputies in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the *Planters* themselves: who building all their Forts and Castles in the open Countries, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Fastnesses to the naturall *Irish*; the strength whereof not only animated them to Rebell upon all occasions; but served too fitly to continue them in their antient *Barbarism*.

In these terms of wildnes and non-subjection stood *Ireland*, till the latter end of Queen *Elizabeths* reign; at what time the Rebellion of *Hugh O Neal* Earl of *Tir Oen* had ingaged almost all the *Irishrie* in that desperate Action: which ending in the overthrow of that ingratefull Rebel, and all his partizans, not only crushed the overmuch powerablenesse of the *Irish* Nobility; but made the finall and full conquest of the whole Nation. So true it is, that *Every Rebellion when it is suppresst, doth make the Prince stronger, and the Subjects weaker.* *Ireland* thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a victor over all her enemies. and left

Ireland. the *Sowing* of it unto her ſucceſſor King *Iames*, who omitted no part of a skilfull *Seedſman*. 1 Then there was an *Amneſia* or *Act* of *Oblivion* made, whereby all the offences againſt the Crown were remitted, if by ſuch a limited day the people would ſue out their *Pardons*, and by the ſame Act, all the *Irishrie* were manumitted from the ſervitude of their Lords, and received into the Kings immediat *protection*. 2ly, The whole kingdom was divided into *Shires*, and *Judges itinerant* appointed to circuit them: whereby it hath followed, that the exactions of the Lords are laid aſide, the behaviour of the people is narrowly looked into, the paſſages before unknown unto our Souldiers, are laid open by our *Vnder-Sheriffes* and Bayliffs; and the common people ſeeing the benefit and ſecurity they enjoy by the *Engliſh* Laws, and loth to plead alwayes by an *Interpreter*, begin to ſet their children to School, for the learning of the *Engliſh* tongue. 3ly, The *Iriſh* were not rooted out, as in the firſt plantation in *Lemſter*, and the *Engliſh* onely eſtated in their rooms; but were onely removed from the woods, bogs, and mountains, into the plain and open countrey; that being like *wild trees* tranſplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better fruit. And 4ly, whereas there was before but one *Freeholder* in a whole Country, which was the Lord himſelf, the reſt holding in villenage, and being ſubject to the Lords immeaſurable taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to build or plant: Now the *Lords eſtate* was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himſelf, which was ſtill left unto him; and that which was in the hands of his *Tenant*, who had eſtates made in their poſſeſſions, according to the Common-Law of *England* paying in ſtead of uncertain *Iriſh* taxations, certain *Engliſh* rents: whereby the people have ſince ſet their minds upon repairing their houſes, and manuring their lands, to the great increaſe of the private and publick *revenue*.

But that which moſt advanced the reduction of *Ireland* to a ſetled and civil Government, and rooted it in a ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of *Tyrone*, & *Tirconnel*, Sir *John Odaughertie*, and other great men of the North, poſſeſſed of large territories and great juriſdictions. Who being both uncapable of Loyaltie, and impatient of ſeeing the Kings *Iudges*, *Iuſtices*, and other Miniſters of State, to hold their *Seſſions*, and execute their Commiſſions of *Oyer* and *Terminer*, within the parts where they commanded: without more provocation, or the fear of any danger but a guilty Conſcience, forſook the Countrie, and left their whole Eſtates to the Kings diſpoſing. By whoſe directions, their Lands were ſeized upon and ſold to ſeverall Purchaſers, the Citie of *London* infeoffed in a great part of them, a great plantation made in *Vlſter* of *Engliſh*, *Welch*, and *Scots*, by the united name of a *Britiſh Plantation*; and a new Order of Knights *Baronets* erected in the Kingdom of *England* for raiſing money to advance and indear the Work. Which had it been as cordially affected by the *Engliſh*, as it was by the *Scots*; if more of this Nation had gone thither, and not abandoned ſo great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the *Scots*, being factious for another did not eaſily brook) and the uniting of both people in the bonds of Amitie: the *Iriſh* looking on the *Scot* as a meer *Intruder*, but on the *Engliſh* as his old Maſter, or his *Fellow-Subject*. Howſoever, ſo great a part of the Countrey (and that which heretofore was the neſt of the *Rebels*) being thus diſpoſed of, it came to paſs, that *Ireland*, which before ſerved only as a *grave* to *bury* our beſt men, and a *gulf* to ſwallow our greateſt treaſures; being governed neither as a country *Free*, nor conquer'd: was brought in ſome hope, by the prudence and policie of her laſt Kings, and late *Lord Deputies*, to prove an Orderly *Common-wealth*; civill in it ſelf, profitable to the Prince, and a good ſtrength to the *Britiſh* Empire. For to ſuch Order it was reduced, in a little time, that the *wayfaring* men might travell without danger, the *ploughman* walk without fear, the laws adminiſtred in every place alike, the men drawn unto villages, the woods and faſtneſses left to beaſts; and all reduced to that civility, as our fathers never ſaw, nor could we well ſample out of antient hiſtories.

The *revenues* of this kingdome are ſaid by *Walſingham*, in the time of *Edward* the third, to have been yeerly 40000 pounds; but his ſucceſſors, till of late, have ſcarce got ſo much as the keeping of it coſt them: King *Richard* the 2d being by the ſame *Walſingham* reported to have ſpent 30000 marks out of his own purſe, over and above the money which he received thence. Whether this Countrey were ſo profitable to *Edward* the third, or no, I determine not, though I find good reaſons to perſwade me, that *Walſingham* was not well acquainted with the ſtate of that *Exchequer*. But ſure I am that the Revenues of the Crown are more than double what they were in the ſaid Kings reign, and more duely paid into the *Exchequer* of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the profits of the *Cuſtomehouſe* amounting to 30000 *per Annum*, in the laſt yeer of King *Iames* his reign. Not to ſay any thing of the great Improvements which were made by the Earl of *Strafford*, in the time of his Government, becauſe they fell together with him.

The ſtrength of this Kingdom conſiſteth partly in the ſituation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Caſtles firſt built and fortified by the *Engliſh* Planters; and partly in a ſtanding Armie continually kept up by the Kings of *England* for defence of their hold and intereſts againſt the Rebellions of the Natives. What Forces it is able to raiſe both of Horſe and Foot, could never be conjectured at till now of late. For formerly the Kings of *England* being actually poſſeſſed onely of thoſe four Counties which they called the *Pale*, that is to ſay, the Counties of *Dublin*, *Louth*, *Kildare*, and *Meth* (which laſt hath ſince the time of King *Henry* the 8th been ſubdived into three:) were not able to raiſe any great power out of that Eſtate, but were forced to

ſend

ſend Soldiers out of *England* (as occaſion was) to preſerve their Soveraignty in *Ireland*. The greateſt Levie which I read of, was that of 1500 *Iriſh*, led by the Prior of *Kilmainham* to King *Henry* the fifth, then being at the ſiege of *Harfleu* in *Normandie*. And on the other ſide, the great Lords of the naturall *Iriſh*, and degenerate *Engliſh*, being divided into factions amongſt themſelves, and never joyned in any one principle of common interels, were more inconſiderable than the weak but united forces of the Kings of *England*. And though moſt of them at the laſt were drawn into a conſederacy with the Earl of *Tir-Oen*, to make good his rebellion: yet find I not that their Armie did exceed at any time the number of 8000 men; and thoſe not well-appointed neither. So that the beſt eſtimate which can be made of the forces of *Ireland*, muſt be meaſured by the Armies raiſed in the late Rebellion: when the *Iriſhrie* had both time and leizure to get themſelves ſome reputation in the world, and make proviſion for a War. In proſecution of which, he who conſiders the many Armies they have raiſed ſince their firſt muſtering under the command of Sir *Phelim O Neal*, the many deſeats which have been given them, and thoſe as many new recruits after each defeat, all of them raiſed out of the bodies of their own People, without ſupplie from other Countries; (beſides ſuch as have ſerved againſt them for the King,) muſt needs conclude that they want not men enough for ſervice; nor skill nor courage to attempt the moſt difficult enterpriſes. *Orcades*, & *Schetland*.

The Arms of *Ireland* are *Azure*, an Harpe *Or*, ſtringed *Argent*. Which Coat, King *James*, (to ſhew himſelf the firſt abſolute King of *Irelana*) firſt cauſed to be marſhalled with the Royall Arms of *Great Britain*.

Reckoned in *Ireland* at, and ſince
the *Reformation*,
Arch-Biſhops 4. Biſhops 19.
One Vniverſitie, *Viz.*
Dublin.

THE LESSER ILANDS.

AND now we come at laſt to the *LESSER ILANDS*, diſperſed in ſeverall parts of the *Britiſh* Ocean. The chief whereof are, 1 The *Orcades*, 2 *Schetland*, 3 The *Hebrides*, 4 *Man*, 5 *Angleſey*, 6 The Ilands of the *Severn* Sea, 7 The *Sorlinges* or Iſles of *Silly*, 8 *Wight*, 9 *Thanet*, 10 *Sunderland*, 11 *Holy Iland*.

I. The ORCADES or Iſles of *Orkney* are in number 32, ſituate over againſt *Cathneſs*, the moſt Northern Countrey of all *Scotland*, and ſeparate from one another by ſome narrow Streights. The Soil indifferently fruitfull, exceedingly well ſtored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattell; plentifull in Hares and Conies, as of Cranes and Swans; but deſtitute of wheat, and unfurniſhed both of woods and trees. But their chief commoditie is their Fiſh, which the inhabitants catch upon the coaſts in great abundance. Thoſe of moſt note in all the cluſter, are, 1 *Heth*, conceived to be the *Ocetis* of *Ptolomie*: as 2 *Fair Iſle*, on good reaſon thought to be the *Dumna* of *Plinie*; the chief Town of it being ſtill called by the name of *Dumo*. 3 *Hey*, taken or miſtaken for the *Dumna* of *Plinie*, but not elſe obſervable. 4 *Pomonia*, the chief of all, in length about 26 miles, in bredth, where it is broadeſt, ſix. The chief Town of it, *Kirkwall*, honoured with a Biſhops See, and ſtrengthned with two Caſtles. This Iland is well ſtored with Tinne and Lead, and is at this day by the inhabitants called *Mainland*.

The people of theſe Iſles (according to *Maginus*) are great drinkers, but no drunkards; *bibaciſſimi ſunt incolæ, nunquam tamen inebriantur*: they uſe the *Gothiſh* Language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whoſe poſſeſſion they once were; and of whoſe qualities they ſtill retain ſome ſmack. The Iſles themſelves in the time of *Solinus* were not inhabited, being then overgrown with ruſhes; (now in a meaſure, populous and fertile, as before was ſaid) and were firſt diſcovered by *Julius Agricola*, the firſt that ever ſailed about *Britain*. In later times they were poſſeſſed by the *Normans* or *Norwegians*, who held them till the yeer 1266; when *Magnus* K. of *Norwey* ſurrendred them up to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, which ſurrendry ſome of the ſucceeding Kings did afterwards ratifie: the claim hereto being finally relinquiſhed by *Chriſtiern* the firſt King of *Denemark* and *Norwey*, on the mariage of his Daughter *Margaret* with King *James* the third, An. 1474. ſome money being added to make good the contract, without which the *Danes* would not forgoe their pretenſions to them.

II. Two dayes ſayling North of theſe *Orcades*, lyeth SCHETLAND, an Iland belonging to the

Hebrides, & Man.

Crown of *Scotland*: and is by many learned men, upon very good reasons, supposed to be the *Thule* of the Antients. For first, it standeth in the 63 degree of *latitude*, in which *Ptolomie* placed *Thule*. 2ly, It lieth opposite to *Bergen* in *Norwey*; against which *Pomponius Mela* hath seated it: & 3ly, *Cesper Peucerus* hath observed, that this *Schetland* is by Mariners called *Thylensell*; a name in which that of *Thule* is apparently couched. That *Ise-land* was not *Thule* (as most say) we shal shew you when we come to *Norwey*, & the Northern Ilands. Here we adde only, that the Antients did report many strange things of it, and some of them beyond all belief. *Plinie* affirming that they had no day here for all the winter (*nulli per brumam dies*, as his own words are) with whom agree *Solinus* and many others, as to that particular. *Isidore* addes (*Origin.* lib. 14. c. 6.) *nullum ultra eam diem esse*, that beyond this Isle there was no day in any place; as if here had been the end of the world and nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polybius* goes beyond them all, reporting that in this Isle there was no distinction of Earth, Air, and Water: ἀλλα σύγκριμά τι κ τέτων, but a confused mixture of all together, like the primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. The reason of which strange reports was the audaciousness of those who had seen the Iland and thought that what lover they said of it would not be disproved, because of the remoteness of it from more civil Countries. So truly and judiciously spoken was that of *Synesius*, a right learned Prelat, Ἡ Θύλη δίδωσι τοῖς διαπλέουσιν αὐτὴν ἀδεῶς ψεύδεσθαι. *Thule* (saith he) gave those who had sailed unto it, the opportunity of lying without controll. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers have made too much use of in these last times also.

III. The HEBRIDES, HEBUDAE, or *Western Ilands*, situate on the West of *Scotland*, are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1 *Ila*, 24 miles long, and 16 in bredth, plentifull in Wheat, Cattle, and herds of Deer. 2 *Iona*, famous for the Sepulchres of the old *Scotish* Kings; whose chief Town is *Sodore*, once a Bishops See, called hence *Sodorensis*; his jurisdiction comprehending these Ilands with the Isle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope *Gregory* the 4th, Anno 840, or thereabouts. His dwelling for the most part in the Isle of *Man*, as the wealthier and more pleasant part of his *Diocese*; till the conquest of it by the *English*: at what time those of the *Western Ilands*, withdrew themselves from his obedience, and had a Bishop of their own: both of them for a long time called *Sodorenses*, but at last this took the name of *Insulanus*, Bishop of the Isles, which he still retains. 3 *Mala*, by *Ptolomie* called *Maleos* (that of *Ila* before-mentioned being his *Epidia*) mountainous and hillie, but affording good mines of Lead and Copper; 25 miles more in compass than that of *Ila*. 4 *Leuves*, or *Levissa*, the largest of all the *Hebrides*, said to be 60 miles in length, and 30 in bredth, the more Western of the two *Ebudae* spoken of by *Ptolomie*: the other being now called 5 *Skye*, famous for multitude of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6 *Racline*, the *Recina* of *Ptolomie*, the smallest of the *Hebrides*, and most neer to *Ireland*. The rest of less note, not known, or not inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, and not very well peopled at the present, I forbear to name: some of them rather Rocks than Ilands, others scarce having grass enough to hide their bareness. The people of them all as well in language as behaviour resemble the *wild-Irish*, and are called *Redshanks*: a people, as King *James* affirmeth in his *Basilicon Doron*, utterly rude, and without all shew of Civilitie; such as endure not to be governed by Laws, or kept under by Discipline. *Legum severitate, & judiciorum metu, se allegari non patiuntur*, saith judicious *Camden*. Such as they are, they came unto the Crown of *Scotland* by a contract betwixt *Magnus* King of *Norwey*, and King *Alexander* the third: the *Orcades* being bargained for at the same time also.

South of the *Hebrides*, in the Bay of *Dunbritton Frith*, lieth the Isle of *Rothsay* (now called *Buthe*) which gives the title of a Duke to the *Prince* of *Scotland*; and the Isle of *Arran*, which gives the title of an Earl to the chief of the *Hamiltons*.

IV. MAN is situate just over against the Southern part of *Cumberland*, and from which it is distant 25 miles; and was judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*, because it fostered venemous Serpents brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Ptolomie* it is called *Monoeda*, or the further *Mona*, to differenee it from that which we now call *Anglesey*; by *Plinie*, *Blonabia*; *Menavia*, by *Orosius* and *Beda*; *Eubonia*, by *Gildas* an old *British* Writer. The *Welch* at this day call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Manaing*, and the *English*, *Man*. It is in length 30 miles, in bredth 15, and 8 in some places. The people hate theft, and begging; and use a Language mixt of the *Norwegian* and *Irish* tongues. The soyl is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oates, Barley, and Wheat, with which they use to supply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the *Continent* it self, yet questionless the *Western Iles*, which are a Member of it. For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God, *John Merieke* late Bishop of this Iland, in a letter to Mr. *Camden*, at such time as he was composing his most excellent *Britannia*. *Our Iland* (saith he) *for cattell, for fish, and for corn, hath not only sufficient for it self, but sendeth also good store into other Countries*: now what Countries should need this supply (*England* and *Ireland* being aforehand with such provision) except *Scotland*, or some members thereof, I see not. *Venerable Bede* numbred in it 300 Families, and now it is furnished with 17 Parish Churches. The chief Towns are. 1 *Balacuri*, and 2 *Russin*, or *Castle-Town*, the seat of a Bishop, who though he be under the Archbishop of *York*, yet never had any voice in the *English* Parliament. In this Iland is the hill *Sceafull*, where on a clear day one may see *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, here also are bred the *Soland* Geese, of rotten wood falling into the water. This Iland was taken from the *Britans* by the *Scots*, and from them regained by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*: Afterwards the *Norwegians* seized on it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings hereof ruling over the *Hebrides*,

and

and some part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander* the 3d of *Scotland*, by a mixt title of Arms and purchase: after which time it was sometimes *English*, sometimes *Scotish*, as their fortunes varied, till in the end, and about the year 1340. *William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, descended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and sold it to the Lord *Scrope*: who being condemned of Treason, *Henry* the fourth gave it to *Henry Piercy* Earl of *Northumberland*; but he also proving false to his Soveraign, it was given to the *Stanleys*, now Earls of *Darby*. *Man*, & *Anglesey*.

The Kings of *Man* of the *Danish* or *Norwegian* Race.

1065. 1 *Godred*, the Sonne of *Syrric*.
1066. 2 *Fingall*, Sonne of *Godred*.
1066. 3 *Godred* II. Sonne of *Harald*.
1082. 4 *Lagnan*, Eldest Sonne of *Godred* the 2d.
1089. 5 *Donnald*, Sonne of *Tado*.
1098. 6 *Magnus*, King of *Norwey*.
1102. 7 *Olave*, the 3d Sonne of *Godred*.
1144. 8 *Godred* III. Sonne of *Olave*.
1187. 9 *Reginald*, base Sonne of *Godred* the 3d.
1226. 10 *Olave*, the lawfull Sonne of *Godred* the 3d.
1237. 11 *Harald*, Sonne of *Olave*.
1243. 12 *Reginald* II. Brother of *Harald*.
1252. 13 *Magnus* II. Brother of *Reginald*.
1266. 14 *Magnus* III. King of *Norway*; the last King of *Man* of the *Danish* or *Norwegian* Race.

The Kings and Lords of *Man* of the *English* Blood.

1340. 1 *William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, King of *Man*.
1395. 2 *William* Lord *Scrope*, King of *Man*.
1399. 3 *Henry*, Earl of *Northumberland*, King of *Man*.
1403. 4 *William* Lord *Stanley*, Lord of the Isle of *Man*.
5 *John* Lord *Stanley*.
6 *Thomas* Lord *Stanley*.
7 *Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1503. 8 *Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1521. 9 *Edward* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1572. 10 *Henry* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1593. 11 *Ferdinando* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
12 *William* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
13 *James* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*, Lord of the Isle of *Man*, now living Anno 1648. King in effect, though but Lord in title, as having here all kind of *Civill* power and jurisdiction over the Inhabitants, under the *Feife* and *Sovereignty* of the Crown of *England*; together with the nomination of the *Bishop*, whom he presents unto the *King* for his *Royall assent*, then to the Arch-Bishop of *York* for his consecration, And this I take to be the reason why the Bishop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honour, but such as held immediately of the King himself; nor was it reason that they should.

V. ANGLESEY, is an Iland situate in the *Irish* Sea, over against *Carnarvonshire* in *North-Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow streight, which they call the *Menai*. By the *Britans* themselves, as by the *Welch* at this day, it was called *Mon*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Mona*: but being Conquered by the *English* it obtained the name of *Anglesey*, as one would say, the Iland of the *English* Men, (*eye* in the *Saxon* language signifying an *Iland*) A place of such a fair Revenue to the Princes of it, that *LLewellen* the last Prince of *Wales* being stripped of almost all the rest of his Estates by King *Edward* the first, paid to that King a tribute of 1000 per An. for this Iland only.

And to say truth, the Iland is exceeding fruitfull both in Corn and Cattle; from whence the *Welch* are liberally stored with both: and therefore it is said proverbially *Mon Mam Cymri*, that *Anglesey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from East to West about 20 miles, and 17 in bredth. Containing in that Compasse 74 Parishes, divided into six hundreds, and hath in it only two Market Towns: that is to say, 1 *Beaumaris*, seated on a flat or marish grownd, neer the *Menai*, built by King *Edward* the first to secure his Conquest: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2 *Newburg*, a Town of no great antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welch* called *Rossur*: in former times it had an Haven of some good receipt, but now choaked

Isles: with ſand. The other places of moſt note are 3 *Aberfraw*, a ſmall village now, but heretofore the Royall ſeat of the Kings of *Wales*: and 4ly. *Holy-head*, ſeated on an head-land or *Promontory* thruſting into the Sea, made *holy* (or thought ſo at leaſt) by the religious retirement of Saint *Kuby*, or *Kibius*, one of the Diſciples of St. *Hilarie* of *Poictiers*; from whence by the *Welchmen* called *Caer-Cuby*: of moſt note for the ordinary paſſage betwixt *Wales* and *Ireland*. Anciently this Iland was the ſeat of the *Druides*, and brought with no ſmall difficulty under the power of the *Romans* by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the People fighting in other parts of *Britain* for their liberty only; but here *pro Aris & focis* too, for their *Religion*, *Liberty*, and their Gods to boot. Being deſerted by the *Romans* with the reſt of *Britain*, it remained in the poſſeſſion of its own natural Princes, till the fatal period of that State; when added to the Crown of *England* by the puiſſance of King *Edward* the firſt, by whom made one of the ſhires of *Wales*, as it ſtill continues.

Not far from *Angleſey*, ſome what inclining to the South, is the Iſle of *Bardſey*, by *Ptolomie* called *Edri*, by *Plinie Adros*, by the *Welch Enlhy*, extending towards the Eaſt with a rockie *Promontory*, but rich and fruitfull towards the Weſt: the retiring place of many godly and devout *Hermits* in the former times. Southwards from hence, and over againſt St. *Davids*, are two other Ilands, the one called *Selame*, plentifull of wild honey; the other named by the *Welch Lymen*; by the *Engliſh*, *Ramſey*; thought to be the *Limni* of *Ptolomie*, the *Silimnum* of *Plinie*, but not elſe remarkeable.

VI THE ILANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA are four in number; of no great note, but I muſt take them in my paſſage to the Iſles of *Silly*. Of thoſe the firſt is *Flat-Holm*; from the flat and levell: the 2d *Stepholm*, from the ſteep and craggie diſpoſition of it: both by the *Welch* called *Echni*, and both ſituate over againſt the County of *Somerſet*. More towards the opening of the *Channel*, lieth the Iſle of 3 *Chaldey*, called by the *Welchmen Inis Pir*, of as ſmall note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Iſle of 4 *Lundey*, over againſt *Devonſhire*, the principall Iland of this Sea: extending two miles every way; of excellent paſturage, well ſtored with *Conies*, and great plenty of *Pigeons*. Situate a good diſtance from any part of the land, in the middeſt of the Salt and Brackiſh Ocean, and yet yieldeth many Springs of *Freſh-Water* for the uſe of the people, inhabiting for the moſt part in a Town of the ſame name with the Iland. A place of very great ſtrength and ſafety; begirt about with dangerous unapproachable Rocks; and having but one way of acceſs into it, and that ſo narrow that two men cannot go a breſt.

VII The Iſles of SILLY, in number 145, are ſituate over againſt the moſt Weſtern *Promontorie* of *Cornwall*, from which diſtant 24 miles; and lie round together in the manner of a ring or *Circle*. Diſcovered firſt by the *Silures*, a *Phœnician* Colonie in *Spain*, oppoſite againſt which they lie; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*; much traded and reſorted to by the ſaid *Phœnicians* from the Iſle of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhauſtible Mines of *Tinne* which they found amongſt them. A Trade ſo great and gainfull to them, that they held it a great point of State, κρύπτειν ἅπασι τὸν πόρον, to keep it as a ſecret from all the World, as we find in *Strabo*, who addes the ſtory of a *Carthaginian* or *Phœnician* Merchant, incountred in his voyage hither by ſome *Roman* Veſſels; and ſplitting his ſhip on the next ſhore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him) rather than let them know to what place he was bound; Rewarded for his honeſt care, and recompenced for the loſs of his ſhip and goods, out of the publick Treaſurie. From this abundance of *Tinne*, the *Gracians* when they came to know them called them, *Caſſiterides*: (*Caſſiteros* in that language ſignifying *Tynne*) accordingly *Herodotus* ὑπὲρ τούτων τῶν νήσων τῶν Κασσιτερίδων ἐούσας ἐν τῷ βαρβάρῳ ἡμεῖς φοιτᾶ, affirming that he knew not thoſe Ilands called *Caſſiterides*, from whence *Tynne* was brought. The richneſs of this Commodity, the pleaſures of the place, and the Weſtern Situation of them, make many of the *Grecians* call them the *Heſperides*; miſtaking them for the *Fortunate Ilands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*. as before is ſaid, *Sigdeles* in the corrupt Copies of *Antoninus*; *inſula Silline*, by *Severus Sulpitius*, from whence we have the name of the *Iſles* of *Silly*. The *Flemings*, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitfull in Corn and Herbage. beſides the treaſures hid within: well ſtored with Conies, Cranes, Swans, and moſt ſorts of Wild Fowl. Ten of them more eſteemed than the reſt are called by the names of 1 *Armath*, 2 *Agnes*, 3 *Sampſon*, 4 *Silly*, 5 *Breſar*, 6 *Ruſco*, 7 S. *Helens*, 8 *Arthur*, 9 S. *Maurice*, and 10 St. *Maries*: Of which the moſt famous in the accompt of former times was that of *Silly*, as giving name unto the reſt; but in the preſent eſtimate St. *Maries* is accompted the chief of all: 8 miles in compaſs, fruitfull of all neceſſaries, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle built by Queen *Elizabeth*, well manned and *Garriſoned* for defence of a large and goodly Harbour made amongſt theſe Ilands, capable of the greateſt Navies.

Theſe Ilands firſt diſcovered by *Himilco* a *Carthaginian*, ſent by that State to ſearch into the Weſt Coaſts of *Europe*, became of great fame afterwards both in *Greece* and *Italy*; by reaſon of the Mines of *Tynne* ſpoken of before. So beneficiall to the *Romans*, that they uſed to ſend hither their condemned Priſoners to work in the Mines; as the beſt ſervice to be done by their forfeited lives. And hither, amongſt others, *Inſtantius*, a fierce *Priſcilli-*

cillianist, for his factious and seditious cariage, was sent by *Maximus*; *ad Silvanam insulam ultra Britanniam deportatus*, as *Sulpitius* hath it. After the *Romans* had forsaken their hold in *Britain*, they returned again into the power and possession of the *Natives*; from whom subdued, and added unto the *English* Crown by *Athelstan* the eighth King of *England*; now ordered for *Civill* matters as a part of *Cornwall*; for military, by their own Captain, subordinate to the Lord *Lieutenant* of that Countie; and for the *Tin-trade*, by the Lord *Warden* and Court of *Stanneries*. An Officer and Court erected for the benefit and regulating of the *Tinners* of *Cornwall*, who by reason of their employment in these *Mines* have many privileges and exemptions more than other Subjects, but of late limited and restrained by Act of Parliament. *Wight, & Thanet.*

VIII. The Isle of WIGHT lieth over against *Hampshire*, from which it seemeth to have been divided; the passage betwixt it and *Hurst-Castle* on the opposite shore being very narrow; and the name of it intimating some such division. For by the *Britans* it was antiently called *Guith*, which signifieth a breach or separation, from whence the *English* have their *Wight*, the turning of *Gu.* to *W.* being familiar with the *Saxons*, and all other *Dutch* people: and from the same Root probably the *Romans* had the name of *Vectis*; *Vecht*, *Wight*, and *Guith*, being words of such neer resemblance, that we need not travell further for an *Etymologie*. The Iland of an *Ovall* form, 20 miles in length, and 12 miles broad about the middest, from thence growing narrower towards each end, to the North and South. Naturally fenced about on all sides, on the South especially, where it looks towards *France*, on which side inaccessible by reason of the steep and craggie Rocks, the whole length thereof; and not much less safe on the North-west, where the remainder of the Rocks (which they call the *Shingles*, and the *Needles*) not worn away either at or since the first *separation* from the other shore, make the passage dangerous, except to single ships, and those not unacquainted with the course of the Channell: Towards the North-East more flat and levell, and therefore fortified with the two Castles of the *Cowes* and *Sandham*. There is also the Castle of *Yarmouth* in the West parts of the Iland, and that of *Garesbrook* in the middest (but more towards the North) in which last there is said to be Armour for 5000 men; and in each Village (of which here are 33, besides many Market Towns) a peece of Ordnance. Yet do not all these Arms and Castles adde so much to the strength of it, as the naturall courage of the People, warlike and stout, and trained unto the postures of Warre from their very Childhood.

The Soil hereof abundantly answereth the pains of the Husbandman, so plentifull of Corn, and all the fruits of a good *pasturage*, that they have not only enough for themselves, but furnish the markets of *Southampton* and *Portsmouth*, (but the last especially) with the greatest part of the Wheat, Flesh, Cheese, and Butter which is spent amongst them. Insomuch as the Soldiers of *Portsmouth* presuming on the strength of the Town have been used to say, That if *they had the Isle of WIGHT to their friend, and the Seas open, they cared not for all the World besides.* Their Sheep here of so fine a fleece, that the Wooll hereof hath the second place of esteem next to that of *Lemster* (in the Countie of *Hereford*) and precedencie of that of *Cotswald*.

Their chief Towns, 1 *Yarmouth*, on the North-west of the Iland, seated on a convenient Haven, which is said to have some resemblance to that of *Rochell*, and that Haven defended with a Castle. 2 *Brading*, another Market-Town. 3 *Newton*, an antient *Burrough*, and privileged with sending Burgesses to the *English Parliament*. 4 *Guersbrook*, a large Town, and neighboured with an Antient Castle. 5 *Newport*, now the chief of all the Isle, called in times past *Medina*, afterwards *Novus Burgus de Medena*, at last *Newport*; Seated upon an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of lesser burden to the very key; and by that means populous, well traded, and inhabited by a civill and wealthy People.

The Iland first subdued to the *Romans* by the valour of *Vespasian*, (afterwards Emperour of *Rome*) in the time of *Claudius*. Extorted from the *Britans* by *Cerdick*, King of the *West-Saxons*, and by him given to *Stuffa* and *Whitgar*, two of that Nation, who had almost rooted out the old Inhabitants. It was the last Countrey of the *Saxons* which received the Gospell, and then upon compulsion too; forced to it by the power as well as the perswasion of *Cedwalla*, the *West-Saxon* King. Took from the *English* in the time of the *Norman* Conquerour, by *William Fitz-Osborn* Earl of *Hereford*, who thereupon was made the first Lord thereof. From whose Family, by the gift of *Henry* the second, it passed to that of *Redvars*, or *Rivers*, (*de Ripariis*) then Earles of *Devonshire*: and on the failing of that House returned to the Crown in the reign of *Edward* the first. Never so much ennobled as by *Henry* the sixth, who bearing a great affection to *Henry Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, in the 23 of his reign crowned him *King* of *Wight*, Anno 1445. Which title ended with his life about two yeers after.

IX. THANET, is a little Iland in the North-East of *Kent*, not far from *Sandwich*, environed on three parts with the Sea; into which it shooteth with a large Promontorie called the *North-Fore-land*; the *Cantium* of the antient Writers: & towards the West

severed

Sunderland & Holy Iland.

ſevered from the Main-land of *Kent* by the River *Stoure*, which is here called *Yenlade*. Called by *Solinus*, *Athanatos*, in ſome Copies *Thanatos*, from whence the *Saxons* had their *Thanet*. Famous, as in other things, ſo in theſe particulars, that it was the place which the *Saxons* landed at when they firſt came into *Britain*; the firſt *Liveries* and *Seizen*, which they had of the whole Kingdom, conferred upon them by the improvident bountie of *Vortiger*, to whoſe aid called in; and the landing place of *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, when he brought the Goſpell to the *Saxons*. The whole about 8 miles in length, and four in bredth, was reckoned to contein in thoſe times 600 Families; now very populous for the bigneſs, and plentifull of all commodities neceſſary, but of corn eſpecially. The People generally are a kind of *Amphibii*, able to get their livings both by *Sea* and *Land*; well skilled, as well in ſteering of a ſhip at Sea, as in holding the Plough upon Land; and in both induſtrious. Of moſt note in it, 1 *Stonar*, a Port-Town, the uſuall landing place of the *Saxons*; more memorable for the Sepulchre of *Vortimer*, King of the *Britans*, who having vanquiſhed the *Saxons* in many battels, and finally driven them out of the Iland, deſired to be here interred: on a conceit that his dead Corps would fright them from Landing any more upon theſe Coaſts: And this perhaps he did in imitation of *Scipio African*, who having had a fortunate hand againſt thoſe of *Carthage*, gave order to have his Tomb placed towards *Africk*, to fright the *Carthaginians* from the Coaſts of *Italie*.

X. SUNDERLAND is an Iland onely at an high-water, when environed on all ſides with the Sea; at other times joyned unto the Land, or of an eaſie paſſage from the one to the other: pulled by ſome tempeſt, or by the working of the Sea from the reſt of the Land; whence the name of *Sunderland*. Situate in the North-Eaſt part of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, over againſt the influx of the River *Were*. Rich in its inexhauſtible mines of *Coal*, and for that cauſe ſeldom without the company of forein Merchants: yet not to have been here remembred, but that it hath been thought worthy by our Soveraign Lord King *Charles*, the ſecond Monarch of *Great Britain*, to conferre the title of Earl to the two Noble Families of the *Scropes* and *Spencers*: the firſt in the 3d yeer of his reign, Anno 1627, the ſecond in the 18th, Anno 1642.

XI. THE HOLY ILAND lieth upon the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, not far from *Barwick*; ſtretched out in length from Eaſt to Weſt, with a narrow point unto the Land, from thence growing broader like a wedge: fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and of great ſafety, but more famous for what it hath been, than for what it is. In the dawning of *Chriſtianity* amongſt the *Northumbers* made a Biſhops See, by S. *Aidanus*, one of the firſt *Apoſtles* of that potent Nation. Selected for this dignitie by that Godly man, for the *Solitude* and privacie of it, which made it thought more fit and proper for *Devotion*. The name then *Lindisfarn*; but the *Religious lives* of ſo many pious Biſhops, Monks, and others of the Clergy as did there inhabit, gained it the name of *Holy-Iland*. The See continued there 353 years, that is to ſay, from the yeer 637, to 990, under 22 Biſhops, hence called Biſhops of *Lindisfarn*; then removed to *Durham*: the inſolencies of the *Danes* (who then raged terribly on thoſe coaſts) compelling them to abandon that *religious ſolitude*.

Thus have we taken a ſurvey of the *Britiſh Ilands*, and ſhewn by what meanes *Ireland* and all the *leſſer Ilands* became united either to the Crowns of *England* or *Scotland*; and thoſe two Kingdoms to each other joyned in the perſon of the ſame King, and the participation of his favours, though different ſtill in Lawes, and ſome forms of Government; as moſt of the Eſtates of *Spain*, at the preſent time. Vnited alſo in one name, the different Appellations of *England* and *Scotland* being ſwallowed up, or incorporated rather in that of *GREAT BRITAIN*, which it pleaſed King *James* to own for his Stile *Imperiall*. And for a memorie thereof, to cauſe a peece of Gold to be coyned of 20 s. (ſince raiſed to 22 s.) which he called the *Vnitie*, ſtamped on the one ſide with his picture, and this *Inſcription*, *IACOBVS D. GR. MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ, FR. ET HIBERNIÆ REX*, and on the other ſide with his Arms, crowned with this *Motto*, *FACIAM EOS IN GENIEM VNAM*. All we have now to doe is to lay down the names of thoſe puiſſant Princes whom God hath raiſed to be

The Monarchs of *Britain*.

1602. 1 *James*, the ſixth of that name, King of the *Scots*, Sonne of *Mary* Qu. of *Scots*, Daughter of *James* the 5th, the Sonne of *James* the 4th, and of the Lady *Margaret*, eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the 7th of *England*: which *Margaret* being after maried to *Archembald Douglaſs* Earl of *Angus*, had a Daughter named *Margaret* alſo (the only Child of her Parents) maried to *Matthew Stewart* Earl of *Lennox*, by whom ſhe was made the mother of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, the Father of King *Iames* the ſixth, by the ſaid *Mary* Queen of *Scots*. So that King *Iames* deſcending from the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the 7th, both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry* the 8th, in the perſon of Q. *Elizabeth* of famous memorie, was the next heir to the Crown of

of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyfull acclamations proclamed and acknowledged King in the Citie of *London*, March 24. Anno 1602. (according to the Accompt of the Church of *England*) A learned and Religious Prince, a true *Defender of the Faith*, a *Nursing Father of the Church*, and a lover of learning. He died at *Theobalds*, March 27. 1625. having reigned 23 yeers, and four dayes over.

1625. 2 *Charles*, second Sonne of King *James*, and *Anne* of *Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before,) the 63d King in descent from *Cerdick*, King of the *West-Saxons*, the 45th King of *England* in descent from *Egbert*, the 24th from the *Norman* Conqueror; the 64th Monarch of the *English*, and the second Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his reign, he maried the Princess *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter to *Henry* the 4th, and Sister to *Lewis* the 13th, *French* Kings; by whom blest with a *Royall Issue* of Sonnes and Daughters.

As for the *Forces* and *Revenues* of these *British* Monarchs, we cannot put the estimate of them in a better way, than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each severall part, out of which *Items*, the *summa totalis* of the whole both in *power* and *treasure*, will be easily gathered. For though these Monarchs never had any occasion to muster and unite the *Forces* of their severall Kingdoms upon any one Action: yet by considering what they have been able to doe divided; we may conclude of what they may doe, if need be, being now united. And so we are to do in marshalling the Arms of the *British* Monarchie, which are 1 Quarterly *France* and *England*, 2 *Scotland*, 3 *Ireland*, the fourth as the first. I shut up this discourse of the *British* Empire with those words of *Scripture*, (the Motto of another of King *James* his Coins) *QVÆ DEVS CONJVNXIT NEMO SEPARET.*

And so much for *Britain*.

A TABLE

Of the Longitude and Latitude of the chief Cities mentioned in this first Book.

	Lon.	Lat.
A.		
Aberdene,	22. 20.	57. 20.
Alcala de Henares,	23. 0.	40. 30.
Alicante,	28. 40.	39. 0.
Almodine,	34. 0.	33. 40.
Ancona,	43. 10.	43. 50.
S. Andrewes.	22. 10.	56. 20.
Angolesme,	27. 0.	46. 0.
Angiers,	18. 10.	47. 25.
Aquilegia,	42. 50.	46. 40.
Armagh,	14. 50.	54. 9.
Avero,	17. 30.	41. 10.
Avignon,	23. 40.	43. 50.
Aux,	22. 40.	43. 40.
St. Anderes,	22. 20.	43.
Aix,	22. 20.	42. 10.
Arles,	22. 45.	43. 20.
Amboise.	20. 35.	47. 35.
B.		
Badaios,	19. 40.	38. 30.
Baione,	24. 20.	42. 10.
Basil,	28. 10.	48. 30.
Besanson,	26. 30.	47. 30.
Bilbao,	23. 30.	43. 10.
Baden in Switzerl.	31.	48. 44.
Blavet,	21. 15.	47. 50.
Bononia,	35. 50.	43. 33.
Brest,	20.	48. 50.
Bath,	20. 56.	51. 20.
Braganee,	6.	45.
Barwick,	22. 43.	55. 48.
Barcelone,	17. 15.	41. 36.
Burdeaux,	18.	45. 10.
Burges.	24. 10.	48. 20.
C.		
Cambridge,	23. 25.	52. 11.
Calice,	26. 2.	52.
Canterburie,	24. 50.	51. 16.
Cartagena,	28. 20.	38. 20.
Caue,	21.	50.
Carlile,	21. 31.	54. 57.
Chester,	20. 23.	53. 11.
Chichester,	26. 10.	51.
Clermont,	30. 15.	45. 50.
Chur,	32.	42.
Corck,	15. 40.	41. 40.
Corduba,	9. 4.	37. 50.
Conimbre,	5. 45.	40. 19.
Compostella,	17. 15.	44. 18.
Coventrie.	25. 52.	52. 23.
D.		
Dieppe,	28. 40.	49. 30.
Digion,	25. 45.	47.
Dole,	28. 3.	49. 5.
Dover,	26. 10.	51.
Dublin,	16. 40.	54. 27.
Dun-Britton,	19. 24.	57. 10.
Durham.	22.	54. 55.
E.		
Edenburgh,	22.	55. 50.
Embrun,	28.	44.
Elie,	25. 20.	52. 40.
Exeter.	22. 10.	51.
F.		
Florence,	41. 10.	43. 40.
Ferrara.	44.	36.
Fayall.		48. 40.
G.		
Geneva,	33. 40.	46. 20.
Galway,	13. 17.	54. 6.
Glocester,	19.	53.
Gades,	15. 10.	37.
Granada,	11.	37. 50.
Groine,	16. 50.	43. 20.
Genoa,	37. 50.	45. 0.
Grenoble.	27.	45. 30.
H.		
S. Hilarie in Guernzey,	22. 20.	49. 40.
Hull.	25. 20.	53. 40.
L.		
Leon,	21. 10.	42. 15.
Lisbon,	9. 10.	38. 38.
Lions,	23. 15.	45. 10.
Lincoln,	22. 52.	53. 12.
London,	23. 25.	5. 34.
Luca,	42. 10.	40.
Ligorn.	40. 20.	43. 30.
M.		
Majorca,	39. 50.	33.
Malaga,	23. 50.	37. 22.
Marseilles,	24. 30.	43. 10.
S. Malo,	19.	49.
Medina Celi,	23. 30.	41. 10.
Millaine,	38. 30.	46. 10.
Modena,	41. 50.	35. 40.
Montpelier,	25. 30.	44. 10.
Montalban,	23.	45.
Messana,	45. 50.	37. 50.
Minorca.	34. 30.	40. 0.
N.		
Naples,	46.	39. 30.
Nantes,	24. 10.	47. 10.
Narbon.	30. 20.	43. 20.

Nevers,

	Lon.	Lat.
Nevers,	25.	47.
Newcaſtle,	22. 30.	54. 57.
Niſmes,	26.	44. 2.
Norwich.	24. 55.	52. 40.
O.		
Oleron,	24. 30.	45. 30.
Orleans,	28. 30.	48. 0.
Orange,	26. 20.	43. 20.
Oxford,	22.	51. 50.
Otranto.	49. 30.	40. 20.
P.		
Pampelun,	24. 30.	43. 3.
Paris,	23. 30.	48. 40.
Pavie,	44. 1.	33. 5.
Padua,	44. 45.	36. 20.
Parma,	39. 20.	45. 10.
Peſcara,	43. 0.	30. 10.
Palermo,		
Peragia,	42. 20.	43. 10.
Peter-port in Iarſey,	23. 0.	49. 20.
Piſa,	40. 30.	43. 40.
Placentia,	20. 40.	40. 0.
Poictiers.	26. 30.	47.
R.		
Ravenna,	41. 20.	44. 20.
Rhemes,	25. 25.	48. 30.
Renes,	19.	48.
Rochel,	18. 15.	45. 50.
Rome,	42. 30.	42.
Roven,	23. 40.	48. 50.
Rhezo:	47. 0.	38. 20.
S.		
Saliſbury,	18. 3.	51. 10.
Salamanca,	8. 5.	40. 15.
Saragoſſa,	24. 15.	41. 45.
Sevill,	7. 15.	37.
Sion, or *Sittia*	29.	45.
Sterling,	20. 10.	56. 20.
Siena,	42. 20.	36. 16.
Siguenca,	18. 2.	
Syracuſe,	40. 30.	37. 30.
T.		
Tarantaiſe,	29.	45.
Tarragon,	78. 30.	38. 20.
Tholouſe,	28. 40.	43. 10.
Toledo,	16. 20.	39. 40.
Trieſte,	44. 10.	46. 10.
Tredagh,	16. 34.	54. 10.
Turin,	31. 30.	43. 45.
Tarentum.	48. 0.	40. 30.
V.		
Valladolid;	16. 10.	42. 5.
Valentia,	19. 20.	39. 4.
Venice,	41. 40.	45. 50.
Verona,	40. 40.	45. 50.
Viterbo,	41. 50.	42. 4.
Weymouth,	23. 50.	51. 0.
Winchester,	22.	52.
Wexford.	16. 44.	53.
Y.		
Yarmouth,	27. 30.	53. 0.
York.	22. 25.	54. 10.
Z.		
Zurick.	30. 20.	47.

The End of the firſt BOOK.

An Advertiſement to the Reader touching the Errata *of this part, Conteining* Italy, *and the* Alpes, *with the Preface.*

THe Reader is to be advertiſed, that the Work being committed to five ſeveral Printers for the more ſpeedy diſpatch thereof, it is thought fit that every houſe ſhall bear the burden of its own *Errata*. But I muſt firſt crave pardon for an *Erratum* of mine own, in making the Dukedom of *Urbine* a diſtinct Eſtate from that of the *Papacie*: whereas I have been informed from Signior *Almerico* the *Florentine* Agent, that it was not long ſince ſwallowed up in the Popedom, as the Dukedom of *Ferrara* had been before. Howſoever, being the diſcourſe thereof doth follow ſo immediatly upon that of the Popedom, the Reader may conſider it as an Appendant on it, though not among the Provinces or Members incorporate with it. But for the *Errours* of the Preſs, together with their ſeveral Corrections, they are theſe that follow.

Fol. 5. lin. 7. for *Microſm*, r. *Microcoſm*, lin. 32. for *there*, r. *then*, 8. 33. for *Ellan*, r. *Elam*, 13. 55. for *or*, read *an*, 14. 23. for *thoſe*, r. *the*, fol. 16. 61. for 18. r. 8, fol. 17. 24. for *Thracia*, r. *Threſia*, 18. 46. for *communicably*, r. *incommunicably*, 19. 12 for *Cauſidorum*, r. *Cauſidicorum*, 22. 6. for 3357. r. 3368 fol 23. 64. for *Chorographie*, r. *Topographie*, ibid. 65. for *Glarenteux*, r. *Clarentieux*, 35. 67. for *the firſt*, r. *firſt the*, 40. for *different*, r. *difficult*, In Auguſt. num. 14. l. 9. for *many* r. *maine*, 14. for *vicious*, r. *rioteous*, num. 16. 49. for *any men* r. *any not*, num. 33. 13. for *ſuddenly*, r. *ſo duly*, num 38. for. *prevailing*. r. *prowling*, Fol. 45. 13. and ſo in many places elſe, which I note in this place once for all, for *Coltian*, r. *Cottian*, 47. 19. for *ten pounds*, r. *ten ſhillings*, ibid. 50. for *bonis*, r. *baſtis*, 48. 10. to ſuperintendencie, adde *beſides* Illyricum *it ſelf*, ib. 28. for *amongſt others*, r. *amongſt his Sonnes*, then adde, *allotting to* Conſtantius, Greece, Thrace, *and all the Provinces of the Eaſt*; *to* Conſtans, Italy, Africk, *and* Illyricum; *to* Conſtantine, *all beyond the* Alpes: *and this is that*. 49. 6. for *Orietes*, r. *Oreſtes*, 50. 54 for *Auguſtus*, r. *Auguſtulus*, 51. 22. for *Beer*, r. *Drink*. 56. 31. for *ſeem*, r. *ſerve*. 58. 21. for *Lauliano*, r. *Lanciano*, 63. 31. for *not curable*, r. *not curable but by Muſick onely*, 59. 44. dele *and was the Title of the eldeſt Sonnes of the Kings of* Naples, *who were hence called Dukes of* Calabria, 67. 16. dele *Libycum*, 68. 62. for *the*, r. *by the*, 79. 3. for *they*, r. *that*, ib. 17. for *Antiponus*, r. *Eutychus*, 80. 12. for *no*, r. *not*, ib. l. ult. for 110, r. 1001. fol. 83. 5. for *Periglia*, r. *Perugia*, 84. 27. for *Lentuli*. r. *Rutuli*. ib. 43. for *Trivolis*, r. *Tivoli*, 87. 51. for *Seat*, r. *chief Seat*, 95. 59. for *Guidus Baldo*, r. *Guido Ubaldi*, 99 for *ArchB*. 10. r. *ArchB*. 1. fol. 98. 6. for *Timianus*, r. *Timaus*, 99. 9. dele *&c.* ib. 31. dele *no*, 101. 55. dele *thouſand*, 104.

8 for

8 for parts, r. part, 109. 56. for Crato, r. Frato, 110. 17. dele *by whom it was made free*, and adde the same words lin. 18. after *Charles* the 4th, 113, 29. for *first*, r. *fifth*, 114. l. 18. for *Luca*, r. *Lucumo*. 116. 31. for *German*, r. *Geneau*, 121. 23. for *Liugria*, r. *Liguria*, 123. 9. for *Attenduto*, r. *Attendulo*, 127. 6. for *first*, r. *last*, 128. 56. for *Alba Pomeia*, r. *Alba Pompeia*, 129. 38. for 5. r. *Saint*, 131. 10. to severall parts, adde, *called by severall names*, 136. 65. for *in*, r. *neer*, 138. 17. dele *France*, 141. 27. for Argow, r. Argow. Besides these, there are some *Mis-nomers*, as our Lawyers phrase it, as *Bithynia*, for *Bithynia*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*; *Rutili*, and *Rutilius*, for *Rutuli*, and *Rutulian*; *Thyras*, for *Thiras*; *Silicia*, for *Cilicia*; *Cicilia*, for *Sicilia*; *Syclopum*, for *Cyclopum*, and divers others of this kind in the course of this work, which I hope the charitable Reader wil not put upon my Accompt. The rest which do not alter, or perplex the sense, may be easily amended by the Reader, and as easily pardoned.

An Advertisement to the Reader touching the Errata *of this Part, Conteining* France, Spain, *and* Britain.

IN the former part of the *Errata*, I charged my self with a Sin of Ignorance, and in this I am to charge my self with a Sin of Omission: which is, the leaving out of the Catalogue of the *Daulphins* of *Vienna*, before the incorporating of that Province with the Realm of *France*. For being absolute Princes, they deserve place here, as well as the Dukes of *Anjou*, or the Earls of *Champaene*, or any of the rest, under the degree and rank of Kings, whose successions are herein laid down: and here they follow in this Catalogue of

The *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.

A. Ch.

1110. 1 *Guigne*, surnamed the Fat, Earl of *Albon* and *Grisivaudan*, at the time of the dissolution of the Kingdom of *Burgundie*.

1135. 2 *Guigne* II. the first Proprietary and absolute Prince hereof, by the name of the *Daulphin* of *Viennois*.

1146. 3 *Guigne* III. Sonne of *Guigne* the 2d.

1151. 4 *Beatrix*, Daughter of *Guigne* the 3d. first married to *Raymond* the 3d, Earl of *Tholouse*; next, to *Hugh* the 3d, D. of *Burgundie*, and finally, to *Guigne* of S. *Albons*, of the Collaterall line of the former Earls: all in her right entituled *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.

1208. 5. *Andrew*, the Sonne of *Beatrix*, and of *Guigne* the 4th.

1242. 6 *Guigne* V. Sonne of *Andrew*.

1283. 7 *Humbert*, the first of that name, in the right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Guigne* the fift.

1305. 8 *John*, the Sonne of *Anne* and *Humbert*, exercised in continuall wars, as his Father was, with the Earls of *Savoy*.

1322. 9 *Guigne* VI. Sonne of *John*, taken Prisoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoy*, Anno 1329. and at last slain, Anno 1324.

1342. 10 *Humbert* II. the second Sonne of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the sixt, the last *Daulphin* of this Line: Of whose surrendrie, and the reasons which induced him to it, we have spoke at large, fol. 191. and thither I remit the Reader.

Then for the Errors of the Press, with their emendations, and corrections, Fol. 147. l. 5. for *Germans*, r. *German words*, 148. 46. for *Bosomon*, r. *Baisemain*, 151. 32. for *Mayenne*, r. *Maine*, 152. 60. for *Galatia*, r. *Galatæ*, 153. for *Celto-Scythia*, r. *Celto-Scythes*, 155. 63. for *Chrysogonelle*, r. *Grisogonelle*, 156. 49. for 14000, r. 140000. Fol. 159. 54. for *Azure*, r. *Argent*, 164. 66. for 13th, r. 11th. 165. 47. for *Brien*, r. *Brieux*, 170. 46. for *Antecum*, r. *Autricum*, 173. 32. for *Philip the Good*, r. *Philip, the third Sonne of Philip the Hardy*, 174. 37. for *Ovillac*, r. *Aurillac*, 181. 28. for *Nimines*, r. *Ximines*. 191. 3. for *the Præfectus*, r. the *Seat of the Præfectus*. ib. 52. for *usually*, r. *not usually*, 193. 51. for *Araxis*, r. *Araris*, 194. for *given*, r. *were given*, 198. 12. for *war*, r. *wave*, 199. *ult.* for *first*, r. *last*, 201. 67. for *did*, r. *was*, 211. 10. for *first*, r. *second*, 221. for *Review*, r. *thus a View*, ib. 46. for *Garvins*, r. *Gurvinea*, ib. 63. for *Countrie*, r. *Continent*, 244. 37. for *Surgorvo*, r. *Segorve*. 248. 4. for *three*, r. *five*, 252. 48. *to the North*, adde *and some few of the neglected Ilands*, 260. 22. for *honest death*, r. *the hour of his death*, ib. 33. for *those Fronts*, r. *the Fronts*, 264. 26. for *Paro-Benefices*, r. *Parochiall Benefices*. ib. 48. for *pursued*, r. *pursuing*, ib. 52. for *Guipuse*, r. *Guipuscoa* 6000, Fol. 265. 22. for *acknowledge*, r. *know*, ib. 34. for *Avala*, r. *Avalonia*, 266. 32. dele *he said*, 269. 4. for *it*, r. *but*, ib. 5. for *antient*, r. *antiently*, 274. 4. for *making*, r. *made*, ib. 32. dele *out of Italie*, 278. 40. for 5. r. 15 fol. 263. 25. for *as we have already proved*, r. *as we are ready to prove*, 265. 57. dele *in that saying*, 250. l. 4. for *containing*, r. *containeth*, 292. 63. for *Place*, r. *State*, 298. 43. for *a Foot*, r. *twelve Foot*, 303. 66. for *Henry 5.* r. *Henry 6.* 312. 40. for *Oma Caghlon*, r. *Oma Maghlin*, 319. 19. for *North* & *South*, r. *East* and *West*. ibid. 63. for 13, r. 23.

A

COSMOGRAPHIE:

THE SECOND BOOKE:

CONTAINING

THE

CHOROGRAPHIE

AND

HISTORY

OF

BELGIUM, GERMANIE, DENMARK, SWETHLAND, RUSSIA, POLAND, HUNGARIE, SCLAVONIA, DACIA, and *GREECE,*

With the ISLES thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

TACIT. HIST. l. 4.

Humanarum rerum poſſeſſionem Trans-Alpinis *gentibus portendi,* Druidæ *canebant.*

SENEC. de Conſolat. ad ALBINUM.

Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; Nova Urbium *fundamenta jaciuntur, nova* Gentium *nomina, extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.*

LONDON,

Printed for HENRY SEILE. *M. DC. LII.*

COSMOGRAPHIE:

THE SECOND BOOK,

CONTAINING

THE

CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY

OF

Belgium, Germanie, Denmark, Swethland, Muſcovie, Poland, Hungarie, Dalmatia, Dacia, Greece; with the Iſles thereof.

Of *BELGIUM.*

HAving purſued the fortunes of the *Roman* Empire through the 4 *Weſtern Dioceſes* or Diviſions of it, wholly ſubdued to the command of that conquering State; let us next look on thoſe Countries which lay further North, and either never felt the force of the *Romane* Armies, or were but conquered in part; or els were reckoned as the members of ſome great Province. Of this laſt ſort was all that tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the land of *Triers*, Provinces of the *Higher Germanie*; on the Weſt with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North with the River *Ems*, which parts it from *Eaſt-Friſeland*; on the South, with *Picardie* and *Champagne*, two *French* Provinces; upon the South-eaſt with the Dukedome of *Lorrain*.

By the *Latins* (eſpecially of theſe laſt times) it is called *Belgium* from the *Belgæ* the moſt potent people of all theſe parts; and ſometimes alſo *Germania inferior*, or the *Lower Germanie*, (in the ſame ſenſe as by the *Engliſh* it is called the *Low Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low ſituation, and the conformity which they have with the other *Germans* in Laws, Language, Cuſtomes and Manners. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which though but one of the 17 Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*, the people of which were once generally called by the name of *Flemmings*; and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others, or by reaſon of the great trade and traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or Marts of *Bruges* (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all parts of *Europe*, or in reſpect that lying neerer then the reſt to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy* and *England*, that name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Countrey was under the command of many Princes, of which the Earls of *Flanders* wtre eſteemed moſt potent. And though this name continued alſo after the incorporating of moſt of theſe Provinces in the houſe of *Burgundie*, at which time they were called the *Eſtates* of *Flandrs*: yet ſince the falling off of *Holland*, and the reſt of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath loſt this honor; the name of *Flanders* being now reſtrained within narrower bounds.

And for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name moſt currant amongſt the *Latines* of this age, yet I ſee little reaſon for it. For firſt, the Provinces of *Flanders*, *Hainault*, *Namurce*, *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, *Brabant*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Utrecht* and *Gelderland* with their Appendixes were never reckoned of as parts of old *Belgium*, or *Gallia Belgica*: And ſecondly, old *Belgium*,

Flanders. or *Gallia Belgica*, contained many large estates which are not now within the reckoning of these 17. Provinces, that is to say, *Alsatia*, and a great part of the lower *Palatinate*, the Dukedomes of *Lorraine*, *Cleve*, and *Juliers*; the Bishopricks of *Colen*, *Mentz*, and *Triers*; and so much of *France* as containeth the Privince of *Picardie*, and part of *Champaigne*.

As for the *Belgæ* from whence we have the names of *Belgium*, and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans* who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themselves within the *Rhene*: esteemed by *Cæsar* to be the valianteſt of the *Gallick* nations for these three reasons; First, they were the farthest from *Provence* where the *Roman* civilities, and more affable course of life, was embraced. Secondly, they dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and so wanted those allurements to effeminate which are in Countries of traffique. And thirdly, they bordered on the *Germans*, a warlike nation, with whom they were continually in armes. This people seeing the prosperous succesſe of *Cæsars* victories in *Gaul* joyned together in a common League, and muſtered an army of 269000. fighting men againſt him. But seeing they could not draw him out of his *Fortresses* they retired again, and that in such disorder, that three *Legions*, (for no more was *Cæsars* Army) put them to an infinite slaughter. After this *Cæsar* fighting againſt them severally, overcame them all, and made their Country, and the Countrey of the bordering *Germans*, whom he also vanquished, subject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Constantine* the Great made part of the *Dioceſe* of *Gaul*, and by him cast into four Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedome of *Lorraine* and the land of *Triers*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Triers*; 2. *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardie*, and the Countrey of *Chambray*, with parts of *Campagne* and *France Speciall*; of which the *Metropolis* was *Rhemes*; 3. *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alsatia*, part of the *Palatinate* and the Bishoprick of *Mentz*, the *Metropolitan* City of that Province; and 4. *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Guelderland*, *Vtrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainalt*, *Namurce*, *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg*, and the land of *Colen*; which last was honoured with the title of the *Metropolitan*. In the declining of the Empire, they were invaded and possessed by the *French*; under whom they made the Kingdome of *Metz* or *Qstenrick* united to the rest of *France* by *Childerick* the third, and made a Member of that Kingdome, of which they continued a especiall part, till the time of *Lewis* the godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. By whom, and *Charles* the *Bald*, and others of that line both in *France* and *Germanie*, they were parcelled into many petite estates, and principalities; so many of them became united in the house of *Burgundie*, passing under the accompt of *Belgium*; under which name and notion we do now consider it.

And taking it according to this name and notion, it is in compasse 1000. *Italian*, or 250. *German* miles: and is situated in the northern Temperate Zone, under the 7. 8. & 9. *Climates*, the longest day in the midst of the 7. *Climate* where it doth begin, being 16. hours; and the beginning of the 9. *Climate* increased to 16. hours three quarters, or near 17. hours. The Aire in these later dayes grown more wholesome then formerly; partly by the wonderfull increase of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible industry of the people, who by draining the Marishes, and converting the standing waters into running streams, have purged the aire of many grosse and unhealthy Vapours, which did thence usually arise in times foregoing.

The Countrey is very populous, containing welnigh three millions of souls, the men being for the most part well proportioned, great lovers of our *English* Beer, unmindfull both of good turns and injuries: of good wit for inventing, and of a most indefatigable industry for perfecting the rarest Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as also for *Arras-hangings*, *Dornix*, Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the *Mariners* Compasse. They restored *Musick*, and found out divers *Musicall* Instruments, being naturally good *Musicians*, and generally so given unto it, and so perfect in it, that heretofore (till the Art of Musick grew more common) there were not many great mens houses, which had them not to teach their Children. To them belongeth also the invention of Chariots, the laying on of colours with oyle, the working of Pictures in glasse, and the making of Worsteds, Saies, and Tapestries: the making of which and other Stuffes, being driven out of their Countrey by the Duke of *Alva*, they first taught the *English*. The women generally are of a good complexion, well proportioned, especially in the leg and foot; honourers of vertue, active, and familiar. Both within doors and without, they govern all; which considering the naturall desire of women to bear rule, maketh them too imperious and burdensome.

They use for the most part the *Germane* or *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoyning to *France*, that is to say, *Luxembourg*, *Namurce*, *Artois*, *Hainalt*, and some parts of *Flanders*, and *Brabant* they use the *French*; but speak the same very corruptly and imperfectly by reason of that mixture which it hath of the *Dutch* or *Germen*, yet so, that one may easily discern those people to be *French* originally; or some remainder of the old *Gaules* mastered by the *French*, but not rooted out: from their language or first originall called to this day by the name of *Wallons*, the *Germans* usually changing G into W, as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and in the like case *Wales* for *Galles*. I know there is another *Etymologie* of the name of *Wallons*, some making them to be of the *Burgundian* race, who at their first passing over the *Rhene* enquired their way of the Countrey people in these words, *Ou allons*, *i.e. Whither go we*; which being oft repeated by them, occasioned them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtlesse, but of no solidity, nor to be further honoured with a confutation.

The Countrey in those parts which lye towards *Germanie*, especially on the South-east bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorraine*, is somewhat swelled with hils, and overshaded with woods; the re-

liques

liques of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof. But towards the Weſt and North, where it joyns to the Sea, it is plain and levell, full of flats and mariſhes, affording very litle corne, but abounding in paſturage, which yeeld a great increaſe of butter and cheeſe, good ſtore of beeves and horſes of more then ordinary bigneſſe. By reaſon of which low and levell ſituation, and the ill neighbourhood of a troubleſome and unruly ſea, it hath been formerly much ſubject to inundations, inſomuch as in the time of King *Henry* 2. *Flanders* was ſo overflown, that many thouſands of people, whoſe dwellings the ſea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new ſeats; and were by that King firſt placed in *Yorkeſhire*, and then removed to *Pembrookeſhire*. Since that, it hath in *Zeland* ſwallowed eight of the Iſlands, and in them 300. Towns and Villages: many of whoſe Churches and ſtrong buildings are at a dead low water to be ſeen. And as once *Ovid* ſaid of *Helice*, and *Buris*, cities of *Achaia*, ſo may we of theſe, *Flanders.*

Invenies ſub aquis, & adhuc oſtendere nautæ,
Inclinata ſolent cum mœnibus oppida verſis.

That is to ſay,

The waters hide them, and the Saylers ſhow
The ruined wals and ſteeples as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into other Countries, are Linnen, Scarlets, Worſted, Saies, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffes; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheeſe, &c. Of which, excepting Cheeſe and Butter, there is nothing of the naturall growth of the Countrey: the reſt being *Manufactures*, which they make out of ſuch materials as they fetch out of forein Regions. But the Commodity which yeeldeth them moſt benefit is that of Fiſh, not caught upon their own coaſt neither, but either in the northern ſeas, or the coaſt of *England*: the very *Herrings* which they catch on the ſhores of *England* (to the no ſmall diſhonour of the *Engliſh* nation) bringing them a revenue (beſides what is purſed up by the Adventurers) of 440000. pounds *per annum*; and that of *Codfiſh* which they catch on the coaſts of *Frizeland*, amounting to 150000 *l.* ſterling yearly.

Captains of note and eminence it hath bred but few, the People living till of late in perpetuall peace. The chief of thoſe whoſe names have been tranſmitted to us, 1. *Civilis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for ſubtilty of wit compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*, of which in his long war againſt the *Romans* in the time of *Veſpaſian*, he gave very good proof. In the middle times, 2. *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperour of *Germanie*, 3. *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*. 4. *Philip* the good, and 5. *Charles* the Warlike, Dukes of *Burgundie*, 6. *Charles* the fift, Emperour and King of *Spain*: and of late times the Princes of the houſe of *Naſſaw* and *Orange*, tranſplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian*, out of higher *Germany*. And to ſay truth, their *Genius* doth not lie ſo much, for land ſervice, as it doth for the ſeas; in which they have been very famous, and not leſſe fortunate. For of this nation was *Oliver de Noort*, the fourth that compaſſed the world; *Jacob le Maire*, the firſt diſcoverer of the Straight, or *Fretum*, which now beareth his name; beſides divers others. And generally the people are ſo expert in Navigation, (eſpecially thoſe bordering on or near the coaſts) that they ſeem born for and to the ſeas: many of which being born on ſhip-board and bred up at ſea, know no other Countrey; and brook the land as ill as a fiſh doth the dry ground. Which naturall inclination to it, and the neceſſity they have of employing themſelves that way, (the Countrey not being otherwiſe able to provide ſuſtenance for thoſe multitudes of men which it doth abound with) hath ſo exceedingly increaſed their ſhipping, that it is thought that they are maſters of more veſſels of all ſorts, taking one with another, then almoſt all the reſt of *Europe*.

Scholars of note it hath bred many. 1. *Eraſmus*, the great Reſtorer of learning in theſe parts of the World. 2. *Juſtus Lipſius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latine* Elegancies. 3. *Joſeph Scaliger*, the ſon of *Julius*, ὁ τῶν πανταχοῦ πεπαιδευμένων, a man not to be followed in all parts of learning; but of equall arrogance. 4. *Rodolphus Agricola*. 5. *Levinus Lemnius*. 6. 7. *Janus Douza*, the Father and the Son. 8. *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9. *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 10. *Geo. Caſſander*, 11. Dr. *James Harmin*, 12. *Gerard Voſſius*, eminent Divines, and 13. *Hugo Grotius*, of as great parts (but ſeaſoned with more modeſty and moderation) as the famous *Scaliger*. 14. *Janſenius*, and 15. *Pamelius* two right learned men, but of the *Pontifician* party.

The *Chriſtian* Religion was planted in ſeverall Provinces, by ſeverall men: in *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friſeland*, by *Willibrode* an *Engliſhman*, the firſt Biſhop of *Vtrecht*; whence by degrees it gained on the reſt of the Countrey: theſe being the firſt people of the *Frankes* or *Germans* converted totally to the Goſpell. In tract of time it fell from the primitive purity, participating of the Errours and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they deſired to reclaim themſelves, they were therein oppoſed by the King of *Spain* and his Miniſters. Hence the beginning of the troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of *civill rights*, invaded and infringed by the *Spaniard*, affecting a more abſolute Dominion over them, then their Laws admitted. At this time as the country doth ſtand divided betwixt the *States* & the *Spaniard*; ſo ſtands it with *Religion* alſo: the *Spaniard* permitting only the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, within the Provinces & Eſtates under his command; and the *States General* indulging the free uſe of all Religions (even the very *Jewes*) but countenancing only that of the *Reformed Churches*, according to the Platform laid down by *Calvin*.

Flanders. Chief *Foreſts* of this Countrey are 1. that of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cæſar* extended from the banks of the *Rhene* as far as *Tournay* one way, and *Champagne* another way; and was in compaſſe 500. miles, in the leaſt accompt. At this time, though the greateſt of all *Gaule Belgick* it reacheth but from *Leige* to *Theonville*, 20. leagues in length: and yet not all that *Woodlands* neither, though within the *Vierge* of the *Foreſt*; there being much tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground; the principall of which is the town of S. *Hubert*, ſituate almoſt in the midſt of it. 2. *Niepe*, and 3. *Numen*, in the Earldome of *Flanders*: the firſt extending to the banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up cloſe to *Ypris*. 4. *Pondsberg* in the Confines of *Hainalt* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mount Gerrard*: all of them parts of this great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, which once overſhadowed all this Countrey. 5. *Normault* in *Hainalt*, in which is much Char-coal made; ſuppoſed for that reaſon to be a part of that Foreſt, which the old *French* called *La Charbonniere*. 6. *Echterwald* in *Guelderland* near *Arnhem*, &c.

The chief Rivers are 1. *Rhene*, which ariſeth out of two ſprings in the *Lepontian Alpes* amongſt the *Griſons*, united into one ſtream near *Clur*: thence paſſing by the Cities of *Conſtance*, *Baſil*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*, is again divided about the confines of *Guelderland* into four branches or channels. Of which the firſt is called the *Wael*, which running through *Guelderland* by *Nimmegen*, and *Bomel*, loſeth it ſelf in the *Maes*: the ſecond, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, paſſeth by *Arnhem*, from thence in a contracted channell to *Vtrecht*, and ſo through *Holland* unto *Leiden*: the third called the *Lecle*, taketh his courſe through the Provinces of *Vtrecht* and *Holland*, and ſo into the ſea betwixt *Dort* and *Roterdam*; and the fourth called the *Yſel* which paſſing by the towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer*, betwixt *Guelderland*, and *Over-yſſel*, emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean near *Amſterdam*. And of theſe branches I have given the exacter reckoning, partly becauſe the courſe of that famous River is otherwiſe not eaſie to be obſerved; and partly becauſe the knowledge of a great part of theſe Provinces dependeth on the knowledge of the courſe of this River. A River of ſuch reputation in the ancient times, that into it the old *Belgæ* uſed to caſt the children which they ſuſpected to be *Illegitimate*: for were they born of lawfull bed, they floated on the waters; if of an unlawfull, they ſank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian* alluding ſaith, *naſcentes explorat gurgite Rhenus*. But the great ſearcher of Antiquities, *Verſtegan* is of opinion, that they thereby only inured their children to hardneſſe, and made tryall of their ſtrength, *adultery* being rarely found among them, and ſo theſe kindes of experiments needleſſe. 2. *Moſa*, or the *Maes*, or the *Meuſe*, which riſing in *France* not far from the ſprings of the *Seine* and the *Marne* paſſeth through *Loraine*, *Luxemburg*, *Namur*; ſtom thence by *Ruremond*, and *Venlo*: where turning toward the Weſt, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and falleth into the ſea not far from *Bril*, with ſo great a violence, that the waters of it for a long ſpace do continue freſh. 3. *Ems*, in *Latine* called *Amiſus*, dividing the two *Friſelands*. 4. *Scaldis*, which ariſing in *Picardie*, and running through *Artois* and between *Hainalt* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the ſea a little above *Antwerpe*: and 5. *Lis* or *Ley*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Beſides which Rivers and others of inferiour note (which we ſhall meet withall in their proper places) here are great ſtore of lakes, pools, and mariſhes, which do both fortifie the Countrey, and provide it of fiſh: beſides many navigable channels, made by the hand of man from one River to another for the convenience of paſſage, and the more eaſie tranſport of their commodities.

The ſhore of this countrey hath been much worn out by the Sea, eſpecially that of the Iſlands of *Zeland*, and ſuch as lye ſcattered about *Holland*, where they are defended with banks and ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. Theſe banks are about ten ells in height and twenty five in breadth at the bottom: They are made of the hardeſt clay that may be gotten; in the inſide ſtuffed with wood and ſtone, on the outſide, covered with mats ſtrong and thick made.

The former inhabitants were divers, as ſhall be ſhewed particularly in their proper dwellings. They are at this preſent divided into ſeventeen Provinces; beſides the two great Biſhopricks of *Leige* and *Cambray*, which being alwaies under the protection of the *Belgicke* Princes, partakers of their fortunes either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their eſtates, ſhall have their turn in the deſcription of theſe Countries, divided generally

into
- 2 Biſhopricks: 1 *Leige* or *Luick*. 2 *Cambray*.
- 4 Dukedomes: 1 *Limburg*. 2 *Luxenburg*. 3 *Gelderland*. 4 *Brabant*.
- 1 Marquiſate; viz. of *the holy Empire*.
- 7 Earldomes: 1 *Flanders*. 2 *Artoys*. 3 *Hainault*. 4 *Namur*. 5 *Zutphen*. 6 *Holland*. 7 *Zeland*.
- 5 Baronies: 1 *Weſt-Friſeland*. 2 *Utretcht*. 3 *Over-yſſell*. 4 *Machlin*. 5 *Groyning*.

Of theſe nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Soveraignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders* and *Artoys*: the Earls whereof were *Homagers* unto that Crown; but ſeldome did deſcend ſo low as to do their *Homage*, quitted at laſt to *Philip* the ſecond King of *Spain* and his Succeſſours, by

K. *Henry*

K. *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, in the treaty at *Cambray*, *Anno* 1558. The reſt were held originally of the *German* Empire, and by *Maximilian* Emperour of *Germanie*, and Regent of thoſe Countries for his ſon *Philip*, (who had a purpoſe to ſubject them to the Empire again) were made the tenth *Circle* of the Empire, called the *Circle of Burgundie*. But neither ſince, nor before that time, would the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundie* acknowledge any ſuch ſubjection, but governed theſe Eſtates as *abſolute Princes*, without relation to the Empire, or ſubordination to the Emperor, or Imperiall Officers: never appearing at the *Diets*, nor contributing to any *Taxes* there impoſed, nor holding themſelves bound by any *Conſtitutions* which were made therein. So that theſe ſeverall Relations being out of uſe, we muſt behold it at this time as it ſtands divided betwixt the *Spaniard* and the *States*: beginning firſt with thoſe Provinces which belong to the *Spaniard*; the true Proprietary of the whole; and therein firſt with *Flanders* as of moſt eſteem. *Flanders.*

1. *FLANDERS*, and 2. *ARTOIS*.

THeſe two I have thought fit to joyn together, becauſe at firſt but one Eſtate; and though divided for a time, yet after five or ſix deſcents were again united, and have ſo continued ever ſince.

1. *FLANDERS* ſo called (as ſome ſay) *a Flando*, becauſe it lyeth open to the winds, is bound on the Eaſt with *Hainalt* and *Brabant*; on the Weſt with the *Engliſh* or *German* Ocean, on the North with the Seas of *Zealand*, and a branch of the *Scheld*; and on the South with part of *Picardie* in *France*, interpoſing betwixt *Calice* and *Graveling*.

The Soyle indifferently fruitfull in corn and paſtures; the aire healthfull, temperate and pleaſant. The whole Countrey not in length above 90. miles, and in breadth but ſixty: and yet containing in that compaſſe above thirty Cities, (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) 1154. Villages; which ſtand ſo thick, (as needs they muſt in ſo narrow a compaſſe) that the *Spaniards* at their firſt comming in with King *Philip* the ſecond, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into *Imperialem*, 2. *Gallicam*, and 3. *Teutonicam*: or *Flanders Imperiall*, 2. *Flanders Gallicant*, and 3. *Flanders Flammengant*.

1. *FLANDERS FLAMMENGANT*, which is the greateſt of the three, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Imperiall Flanders*, and the River *Scheld*; on the weſt with the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the North with the ſeas of *Zealand*; and on the South with *Artois* and *Flanders Gallicant*: The chief Towns of it, 1. *Gaunt*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, ſeven miles in compaſſe; but taking in the *Suburbs* which are great and large, the whole circuit is ten miles at leaſt. One of the greateſt Cities of *Europe* for extent of ground: but not ſo populous as many of a leſſe capacity; there being made waſte ground even within the wals. Commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Scheld* and the *Ley*, both which run thorow it, and make in it 26. Ilands, joyned together with 98. Bridges: and had not her many ſeditions ruinated her beauties, ſhe might have been the Queen of *Europe*. In this Town were born *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, commonly called *John* of *Gaunt*, and *Charles* the fift Emperor and King of *Spain*: which laſt to reſtrain the People from their old ſeditions, which had been very troubleſome to his predeceſſors (the *Gauntois* taking on them many times to rule and over-rule their Princes) built a ſtrong Citadell in the place where ſtood the Abbie of S. *Bavons*. For Churches, Monaſteries, and other places of devotion there were numbred in it 55, all of them anſwerable to the grandeur and renown of the City, the private buildings being alſo very ſtately, if not majeſticall. But now it is much fallen from its former glories, the often ſeditions of this people drawing upon themſelves the vengeance of their angred Prince; and their wealth much empaired by the long wars and the diverſion of their trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the ſeas. 2. *Bruges* or *Brug*, more within the land; a town that hath neither Port nor River, yet formerly of ſuch wealth, and the people in thoſe times ſo willing to ſhew it, that Queen *Joan* the wife of *Philip* the *fair*, having been there and marked the pomp of the women, complained, that *She was not Queen alone*. The town of four miles circuit within the wals, wonderfully well peopled, the buildings fair and ſumptuous, (amongſt which 60. Churches and Religious houſes) the ſtreets large and ſtreight, and a ſpacious market-place, from which the ſix principall ſtreets of the City do paſſe directly on to as many Gates, which is very pleaſant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port nor River as before was ſaid, yet was it anciently of ſo great trading, that it was accounted one of the four Mart-towns of *Chriſtendome*, flouriſhing chiefly by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Cloth, and ſenſibly decaying when the *Engliſh* traffick was removed hence to *Antwerpe*. It was walled by Earl *Baldwin*, *Anno* 890. is diſtant three leagues from the ſea: and ſeated on a fair and deep channell made by art, and filled with the waters of all the adjoyning Fountains and Rivulets: which artificiall channels are in theſe Countries very frequent, to the great enriching of the whole State. 3. *Ypres* a town ſeated very ſtrongly, and almoſt impregnable, on a ſmall river ſo named, a reaſonable rich Town, and well built, though moſt of the houſes be of timber: very well ſerved with water, conveyed into every houſe almoſt in leaden pipes; of which there is ſo great a number, that the foundations of it ſeem to be laid in lead. 4. *Bourbourg*, a fine ſtrong town, but little; pertaining to the *French* King in the rights of the Houſe of *Burbon*. 5. *Comines*, on the River *Lis* or *Ley*, beautified with a ſtrong caſtle and an excellent Library, but more in being the birthplace of *Philip de Comines* that notable States-man and Hiſtorian. 6. *Courtray* on the ſame River of *Ley*, one of the ancienteſt towns in *Flanders*, yet ſtill continueth well built; and of very great ſtrength both by art and nature, famous for a great overthrow given the *French*, *Anno* 1301. for which the town was called of long time the *Sepulchre* of

the

Flanders. the *Frenchmen*. 7. *Winocksberg* ſo called of a goodly Abby built upon an hill in the honour of S *Winock* an *Engliſh* man of an holy life: ſacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1538. but ſince reedified and made more beautifull then it was before. 8. *Graveling* on the ſea ſide, which ſince the taking of *Calice* by the *French*, hath been made the ſtrongeſt town in the Low-countries. 9. *Oudenard* ſeated on the *Scheld*, a fair ſtrong town, and of very great traffique, eſpecially for Tapeſtry, and the fineſt Linnens, which are herein made: the birth-place of *Margaret*, *Dutcheſſe* of *Parma*, and Mother to *Alexander*, Prince of *Parma* that renowned ſouldier.

The principall Ports of *Flanders* being four in number, are all of them ſeated in this part, *viz.* 1. *Dunkerke*, a ſmall but ſafe Port belonging to the *French* King (as doth *Graveling* alſo) in the right of the houſe of *Vendoſme*, both taken lately by the *French*, and ſo returned *ex poſt liminio* to the proper owner. Moſt memorable in theſe dayes, in that the people of it in the times of war, ſo infeſted the ſeas. 2. *Scluſe*, ſeated at the mouth of the Channell of *Bruges*; beautified with a very fair Haven, able to contain 500 good Ships, and is now ſubject to the *States*; with whoſe ſafety it could not well ſtand to let the *Spaniards* enjoy any ſafe and large harbour ſo near unto them. Over againſt it lyeth the Iſle of *Caſſandt*, (famous for the birth of *George Caſſander*, a moderate and learned Papiſt:) Formerly as big again as it is at the preſent, having then a fair town in it, and many rich villages; of which there is but one remaining, (of the ſame name with the Iland) the reſt all ſwallowed by the ſea. 3. *Newport*, a pretty Town, with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built on a well frequented Haven, but not very ſafe, and therefore not much uſed by the men of war, nor made rich by Piracies, as *Dunkerke*. Near to this town, *Anno* 1603. was fought the field-battell betwixt Arch-duke *Albert*, and the *States*; the victory next under God, being gotten for the *States* by the valour of the *Engliſh*, and the excellent conduct of the *Veres*. 4. *Oſtend*, not walled till the Low-countrey wars, and then but with a mud-wall only, and that not finiſhed till the Arch-duke ſate down before it; inſomuch as the Arch-dutcheſſe *Iſabell* is ſaid to have ſworn that ſhe would not ſhift her ſmock till the town were taken: who had ſhe kept that raſh oath, had been very lowſie, the town (then garriſoned with *Engliſh*) holding out againſt the ſaid Arch-duke a ſiege of three years and as many moneths.

2. *IMPERIALL FLANDERS*, ſo called, becauſe it was long under the obedience of the *Emperors*, is ſevered from *Brabant* by the River *Dender*, and from the *Gallick Flanders*, by the River *Scheld* about *Oudenard*. It was ſometimes called *Bracant*, of a Caſtle of that name deſtroyed by *Baldwin le Debonaire* Earl of *Flanders*: and is now called the County of *Aloſt*, from the chief town thereof ſo named; the juriſdiction whereof containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the wals of *Gaunt*, and the Gates of *Oudenard*. The town ſtrong and indifferently fair, ſituate on the River *Dender*, moſt famous in theſe times for a Fair of Hops which is kept there yearly. 2. *Hulſt*, a walled town, and the chief of the four towns in the County of *Waes*; the other three being 3. *Axele*, 4. *Mouchont*, 5. *Aſſeneds*, of which little memorable; but that they were all taken from the Empire by the ſaid *Baldwin le Debonaire* in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the fourth. 6. *Dendremond*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Dender* where it entreth into the *Scheld*; a ſtrong town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making *Fuſtians*, and a weekly market of Flax. A diſtinct *Signeurie* of it ſelf, with many rich villages belonging to it, incorporated into the Earldome of *Flanders* by the marriage of Earl *Lewis de Malaine* with the Lady *Margaret* of *Brabant*, to which houſe it formerly appertained. 7. *Rupelmond*, on the mouth of the River *Rupel*, where it falleth into the *Scheld*, famous in former times for an ancient Caſtle in which were kept the Muniments and Records of the Earls of *Flanders*: more in late times, for being the birth-place of *Mercator*, that renowned *Coſmographer*. 8. *Mont Gerhard*, called by the *French Grandmont*, a fine and pleaſant town ſeated on the *Dender*. Which three laſt towns, together with *Bornhen* a fair large village, having ſome juriſdiction on the parts adjoyning, made up that eſtate, which was called the *Propro*, or *Donaire* of *Flanders*, becauſe not holden of the *Empire*; or the Kings of *France*, but in the ſoveraignty alone of the Earls hereof.

3. *FLANDERS GALLICANT*, ſo called from the *French* language there ſpoken, lyeth on the ſouth of *Flanders Flammengant*, having *Hainault* on the Eaſt, *Artois* on the Weſt, and the Country of *Cambray* on the South. The chief towns of it, are 1. *Liſtle*, in *Latine*, *Inſula*, ſo called from its Iland-like ſituation, amongſt ponds, pools, and mariſhes, dryed up and made firm land by Earl *Baldwin le Barbum*, who built the town *Anno* 1007. which afterwards was walled by *Baldwin de Liſle*, his ſon, (born in this town, and hence ſo named) *Anno* 1066. The town made rich by manufactures, and reſort of Merchants; accompted the beſt town of traffick next *Amſterdam*, and *Antwerp*, in all the *Netherlands*. Not far from which are to be ſeen the ruines of an ancient Caſtle called *Brug*, the Seat or Manour houſe of the ancient *Forreſters*, who had the government of this Countrey for the Kings of *France*. 2. *Doway* (*Duacum* in *Latine*) a fair and ſtrong town ſeated on the *Scharpe*, having many fountains, good buildings, and a great number of Churches; made an Univerſity by King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, who built therein a Seminary or Colledge for *Engliſh* Fugitives. 3. *Orchies*, a pleaſant town and well traded for the making of *Serges*, which with the other two make up the three Eſtates of this part of *Flanders*. 4. *Armentiers*, an unwalled town, but of very great trading; here being yearly 25000. pieces of Cloth ſent hence to *Italie*, and thence to *Conſtantinople*. 5. *Tournay*, (or *Dornick*, as the *Dutch* call it) a great, rich, mighty, and ſtrong town, ſeated on the *Scheld*, well built and full of ſtately and magnificent Churches and religious Houſes; and anciently honoured with a See Epiſcopall. A town of great importance and much contended for betwixt the *Flemmings* and the *French*; but finally fell unto the *French*, as the more puiſſant Prince: taken from them by *Henry* the eighth of *England*, *Anno* 1513. to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Duckets for their preſent ranſome; reſtored by him unto the *French*,

Anno

Artois.

Anno 1518. for the ſum of 600000. Crowns; and finally from them recovered by *Charles* the fift, who reſtored it to the body of *Flanders* from which it had been long diſmembred, but ſo that it is governed as a State apart, and is called the *Signeury* of *Tourneſis*, having a goodly juriſdiction over the Countrey round about it. 6. S. *Amand*, in the Countrey of *Tourneſis*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Scharpe*; in which is one of the richeſt Abbies in all *Flanders*; the Abbat thereof having the *temporall* and *ſpirituall* juriſdiction over it, and the parts about it. And ſo much for the *Chorographie* of the Earldome of *Flanders*; inhabited by the *Nervi*, and *Morini*, in the time of *Cæſar*.

11. *ARTOIS*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Flanders Gallicant*, and the Countrey of *Cambray*; on the South and Weſt with *Picardie*; on the North with *Flanders Flammegant* and the River *Lis*. The aire exceeding temperate, and the ſoyle ſo fruitfull that it ſerveth as a *Granarie* to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

On the Weſt part hereof towards *France*, lyeth the Earldome of S. *Paul*, ſo called from the chief town thereof, a goodly *Signeurie*, and of great juriſdiction and revenue: containing beſides many Villages, the good town of *Berne*, a walled town, and of great importance. The Earls hereof were of the noble family of the Earls of *Luxembourg*, the laſt of which was *Lewis* of *Luxembourg*, made Conſtable of *France* by K. *Lewis* the 11. With whom, as alſo with *Edward* the 4. of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundie*, he plaid ſo many croſſe tricks, that having long deluded them all and kept them in a continuall jealouſie of one another, he was at laſt by Duke *Charles* taken and beheaded. After whoſe death, this goodly *Signeurie* fell to the houſe of *Vendoſme* in *France*, by the marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendoſme* with *Mary* the daughter of this *Lewis*: to whom it was adjudged by the power and favour of the *French*-Kings; the Heirs Males being made uncapable of ſucceſſion in it by the Attaindure and Confiſcation of the ſaid laſt Earl. By means whereof the houſe of *Vendoſme* were entituled to many fair Eſtates in *Artois* and *Flanders*, and much good lands in *France* which they were poſſeſſed of.

The Armes of theſe Earls were *Argent*, a Lyon *Gules* armed and Crowned *Or*, his tail forked of the ſecond.

As for the reſidue of *Artois*, the towns of moſt importance in it, are *Arras*, in *Latine Attrebatum Civitas*, the chief City of the *Attrebates*, the old inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*; and ſtill the chief City of this Province, a large, populous, and well fortified City, anciently honoured with a See Epiſcopall, and ſtocked with an induſtrious people; the firſt makers of the Cloth of *Arras*, which took name from hence. Divided into two diſtinct towns, both of them walled, and called by two ſeverall names: the leſſer called *La Cite*, ſubject to the Biſhop, beautified with a fair and ſtately *Cathedrall* Church, and a *Library* containing many excellent *Manuſcripts*, the leſſer called *La Ville*, ſubject to the Prince, having large ſtreets, and a rich Monaſtery of the yearly revenue of 20000. crowns. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Regiacum*, ſeated within a bow-ſhoot of the River *Scharp*: and heretofore the *Metropolitan* town of *Flanders*, till *Artois* was diſmembred from it; ſince which time the chief City of this Province, as before is ſaid. 2. S. *Omer* a fair town, and well peopled, ſeated upon the River *Aa*, ſome 8 *Dutch* miles from the *Ocean*, ſo called from S. *Omer*, or *Audomarus*, Biſhop of the *Morini*, who built a Monaſtery in this place, from which grew the town, the ſecond of eſteem and rank in all the countrey. Near to it is a goodly lake of freſh water, in which are many little Ilands affording good paſturage for Cattell: of which *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that by faſtning a cord unto the buſhes which grow in them, a man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great numbers of fiſhes, who bed themſelves there for ſhelter againſt the Weather. 3. *Betune*, a ſtrong town, and ſeated amongſt extellent paſtures, of which the people make great plenty of the beſt Cheeſe: which, with the territory hereof, fell to *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders* in right of *Maud* his wife, daughter and heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this town. 4. *Aire*, on the *Lys*, a ſtrong town with a Caſtle of great antiquitie. 5. *Bapaulme*, a little, but well fortified town; and yet more ſtrong becauſe it cannot be beſieged for want of freſh water, which is not to be had within three leagues of it. 6. *Renty*, an unwalled town, but fenced with a very ſtrong Caſtle, beſieged by the *French* *Anno* 1554. but being overcome in a ſet-field by *Charles* the fift, they were fain to raiſe the ſiege and go home again. 7. *Hedinfert*, on the confluence of two little Rivulets, *Blangis* and *Canche*, a frontier town on the edge of *France*, one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt defenſible places of all the *Netherlands*, built by *Charles* the fift out of the ruines of old *Heſdin*, which having taken from the *French*, he commanded it to be razed as no longer ſerviceable, and raiſed this town inſtead thereof, ſomewhat near *France*. 8. *Terwin*, or *Theroven*, the *Tervanna* of *Ptolemy*, and *Civitas Morinum* of *Antoninus*, a frontire town, held for a long time by the *French*, by whom thought impregnable, till taken by King *Henry* the 8. *Anno* 1513. they changed their opinion. A ſiege not only memorable for the iſſue of it, but for two other matters of great moment: the one that the Emp. *Maximilian* came and ſerved in perſon under the colours of S. *George*, with the *Engliſh* croſſe upon his breaſt; the other, that the *French* intending to victuall the town had ſo great an overthrow, that had the *Engliſh* followed their fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themſelves maſters of all *France*; the *French* King being ſo aſtonilhed on the newes hereof, that he prepared to flie into *Britain*. But the *Engliſh* more minded the ſpoyles and riches of *Terwyn* then the ſequell of an abſolute victory; *Et fruì malùerunt victoriâ, quàm uti*, as the Hiſtorian ſaid of *Hannibal*. It is now after many changes of fortunes in the hands of the *French*; and by ſome reckoned and accompted of as a part of *Picardie*. There are beſides theſe four walled towns more, that is to ſay, *Lilliers*, *Pern*, *Lens*, and *La Baſſei*, of which little memorable; and to the number of 854. Villages.

Theſe

Flanders and Artois.

These Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois*, were anciently part of the great Forrest of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continuall waste of Woods and Deserts, till the Conquest of it by the *French*: the Sea coasts being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent *Piracies* did much vex those shores, and the inland countries meanly planted, for want of corn and other necessaries for the life of man. By *Dagobert* K. of *France*, *anno* 621. this wild country extending then as farre as the River *Some*, and comprehending besides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardie*, was given unto one *Lideric le Bucq*, with the title of *Forrester*, to be holden under the Soveraignty of that Crown. In whose posterity it continued with the title of *Forresters* till the time of *Baldwin* the first, the son of *Odoacer*, the seventh of the *Forresters*, whose names occurre upon record, there being a long intermission of their names and memories, during the ravagements and depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having first ravished, and afterwards married *Judith*, sister to *Charls* the Bald *King of France* and Emperour, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Soveraignty thereof reserved as before it was; in whose issue it remained entire, till *Philip* the first Earl of that name, gave unto *Philip Augustus* K. of *France*, the country of *Artois*, with *Boulognois*, and *Verumanduois*, now parts of *Picardie*, in marriage with *Isabel* his Neece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt*. By *Lewis* the 8. son and successour of *Philip Augustus*, *Artois* was given in portion to his youngest son *Robert*, made the first Earl of *Artois* by K. *Lewis* the 9. *anno* 1234. And by the marriage of *Lewis* the first of *Flanders*, with *Margaret* the heir of *Artois*, and the Earldom of *Burgundie*, both those Estates were added unto this of *Flanders*, now made farre mightier then before. And yet before this great accession of estate, it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millain* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: these Earls being priviledged to write themselves *Dei gratia*, all others *Dei clementia* only; and *Flanders* being grown abroad to so great esteem that it was generally used for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the marriage of *Margaret* daughter of *Lewis de Malain* Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the *Hardie* Duke of *Burgundie*, this great estate became united to that house, and afterwards was conveyed unto that of *Austria*, as shall be shewn hereafter in due time and place. In the mean season let us take a brief survey of

The Earls of *FLANDERS* and *ARTOIS*.

The Earls of *FLANDERS*.

864 1 *Baldwin* the first Earl of *Flanders*.
879 2 *Baldwin* II.
918 3 *Arnulph*, son of *Baldwin* the 2.
960 4 *Baldwin* III. son of *Arnulph*.
964 5 *Arnulph* II. son of *Baldwin* 3.
988 6 *Baldwin* IV. son of *Arnulph*.
1029 7 *Baldwin* V.
1067 8 *Baldwin* VI. Earl of *Hainalt*.
1070 9 *Arnulph* III. Earl of *Hainalt*.
1071 10 *Robert* son of *Baldwin* the 5. and brother of *Baldwin* the 6.
1093 11 *Robert* II. son of *Robert* the 1.
1111 12 *Baldwin* VII.
1118 13 *Charls* son of *Canutus* K. of *Denmark*, and *Adelize* the daughter of *Robert* the 1.
1127 14 *William*, son of *Robert* the son of *William* the bastard Duke of *Normandie*, and *Maude* his wife, daughter of *Baldwin* the 5.
1132 15 *Theodorick* of *Elsas*, Nephew of *Robert* the first, by his daughter *Heltrude*.
1169 16 *Philip* of *Elsas*.
1191 17 *Baldwin* VIII. Earl of *Hainalt* in right of *Margaret* his wife, daughter of *Theodorick*, and sister of *Philip*.
1199 18 *Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainalt*, and Emperour of *Constantinople*.
1205 19 *Ferdinand*, son of *Sancho* K. of *Portugal*, in right of *Joan* his wife, daughter of the Emperour *Baldwin*.
1244 20 *William* II. of *Dampiere*, son of *Margaret* the sister of *Joan*.
1255 21 *Guy*, brother of *William* the 2.
1304 22 *Robert* III. surnamed of *Betune* the son of *Guy*.

The Earls of *ARTOIS*.

1234 1 *Robert* of *France*, grandson of *Philip Augustus*, and *Isabel* the daughter of *Baldwin* the 8. made the first Earl by *Lewis* the 9.
1245 2 *Robert* II. son of *Robert*.
1302 3 *Otheline*, Earl of *Burgundie*, succeeded in right of *Maud* his wife, the daughter of *Robert* the 2.
1315 4 *Philip* the *Long* K. of *France*, Earl of *Burgundie* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his wife, the daughter and heir of *Maud*, and *Otho*, or *Otheline*.

1323 23 *Lewis*

1323 23 *Lewis*, grandson of *Robert* the 3. in right of his mother Earl of *Rethel*, and in the right of his Grandmother Earl of *Nevers*, and of *Artois* in right of his wife. — 1361 5 *Margaret* daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and *Joan*, Countesse of *Artois* and *Burgundie*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, &c. *Hainalt.*

1347 24 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Nevers*, and *Rethel*, in right of his father, and of *Artois* and *Burgundie* in right of his mother; whose daughter *Margaret* conveyed this great estate to *Philip* the *Hardie* Duke of *Burgundie*: Of whom and his Successors in a place more proper.

The Arms of *Flanders* were *Or*, a *Lyon* sable, langued and armed *Gules*. Those of *Artois* being *Seme* of Flower de Lyces *Or*, in a field *Azure*, a file of three Labels *Gules*, charged with as many Castles of the first.

HAINALT.

HAINALT is bounded on the East with *Namur*, on the West with *Flanders*, on the North with *Brabant*, on the South with *Picardie*, and *Champagne* in *France*. It was antiently called *Sal-tus Carbonatius:* by some writers of the middle times, the *lower Picardie:* and is supposed to have taken this new name from the River *Hain*, or *Hania* which passeth through it.

The length thereof is 60 miles, 48 the breadth, comprehending in that compasse 950 Villages, and 24 towns; in and amongst which there is reckoned one principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms, or *Pairries*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeys, one Lord Marshall, besides other Officers of the Prince, descending by inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The air hereof is very good, and the soil fruitfull by reason the country is watered with so many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and severall lesser streams, besides divers lakes, marishes, ponds, and pools, which do much enrich it: the country abounding in most places with fresh Meddows and sweet Pastures, good fruits and profitable trees, but especially with great plenty of corn. Here are also in some parts of it notable *Mines* of iron and lead; and excellent *quarries* of the best stone, fit for all kind of buildings.

The principall of the Towns are 1. *Monts*, situate at the confluence of the *Haine*, and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good naturall strength unto it, fortified besides with a very strong wall, three large deep ditches, and an antient Castle. The Town, great, beautifull, and rich, adorned with sumptuous buildings both private and publick, and replenished with wealthy Merchants, and men of trade: the principall of all the Province erected into an Earldom by *Charls* the Great, and sometimes used for the stile of the Earls of *Hainalt*. In this town is the noble Nunnerie of S. *Valdrude*, once a Dutchesse of *Lorrain*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of noble families, in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns; in the afternoons according to their birth and qualities, who when they please may leave the Cloister and be marryed. The Abbesse hath both *jurisdictions* in the town and country about it; and antiently did put the Earls of *Hainalt* into possession of the state. Another Nunnerie like this (but not of such large Revenues) there is at 2 *Maubuige* on the *Sambre*, a good town of Merchandise. 3. *Valenciennes* seated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Rouelle*, which make not only in it many pleasant Isles, but passe almost under every mans house, to the great benefit and delight of the place and people. The site hereof so strong by nature, (besides the fortifications of Art) that on the one side it may be easily made unapproachable by water; and on the other sides so defended by hils, that it can hardly be besieged but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large and beautifull town, especially for publick buildings, the chief whereof are the Church of *our Lady*, built after the antient manner of *Architecture*, with sumptuous arches goodly Pillars of *Marble* and *Porphyrie*; the Earls Palace and the Town-hal, buildings of great magnificence, and excellent workmanship: the birth-place of *Henry* the 7. Emperour of *Germanie*, of *Mary* daughter of *Charls* the *Warlike*, and *Froissart* the great *French Historian*. Finally a town, which for the eminence thereof, is governed as a *State* apart by it self, having under the jurisdiction of it, 3 Towns and 132 Villages, which on occasions of *appeal* resort not to the Provinciall Councell at *Mons*, but the great Councell at *Machlyn*. 4. *Chimay* upon the River *Blanche* near a pleasant Forrest, which gives the title of a Prince to the eldest son of the Duke of *Arschot*, one of the principall Lords of *Brabant*, who have here a very goodly Palace. 5. *Halle*, seated on the *Seine*, which runs through it, a place of great credit amongst the Papists, by reason of an Image of the blessed Virgin, famed for many miracles. Of which, see *Lipsius* on that Subject. 6. *Beauvais* an old town, at a pillar whereof begin all the wayes leading into *France*, made of paved stones by *Brunhault* the wife of *Sigebert* King of *Mets*, or *Austrasia*, who with *Fridegond* the wife of *Chilperick*, and *Katherine Medices* the wife of *Henry* the 2. are said to be the three *Furies* of *France*. 7. *Landrecie* on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable resistance which it made to *Charls* the 5, 1543. 8. *Mariemburg*, built by *Marie* Queen of *Hungarie*, Governesse here for the said *Charls*, *anno* 1524. to serve as a Bulwark against *France*, on which it frontireth. 9. *Philippe Ville*, built and well fortified for the same reason by King *Philip* the 2. 10. *Bouchant*, upon the *Scheld*, in the county of *Ostrinand*, which countie is the title of the first son of *Hainalt*, and by that name *William* the eldest son of *Albert* Earl of *Hainalt* and *Holland*,

wat

Hainelt. was admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the 2. 11. *Conde* a good little town ſeated on the *Scheld*, the moitie whereof belonged heretofore to the houſe of *Montpenſier* in *France*; as 12. *Anghien* a town of great trade for *tapeſtrie* to the houſe of *Vendoſme*: from whence the Princes of *Conde*, and Dukes of *Enghien* do derive their titles. 13. *Beaumont* upon the knap of a goodly hill, whence it hath the name, belonging at the preſent to the Dukes of *Arſchot*, but antiently the *partage* of the ſecond ſon of the Earls of *Hainalt*. 14. *Bins*, or *Binche*, on a branch of the River *Huin*, one of the jointure-towns of the Counteſſes of *Hainalt*, much beautified and made a place of pleaſures by *Marie* Queen of *Hungarie*, to whom it was given by *Charls* the 5. (commonly called the *Queens Paradiſe*) but burnt and utterly deſtroyed by the *French*, *anno* 1554. 15. *Ath*, ſeated on both ſides of the *Dender*, a little, but a pleaſant and wealthie town; here being held the *ſtaple* of Linnen for all this country, the cloth here ſold amounting to 200000 crowns *per annum*.

As for the Hiſtory of *Hainalt*, the antient Inhabitants thereof were the *Nervii*, the moſt valiant people of the *Gaules*, dwelling within this part of the Forreſt of *Ardenne*; which in the beginning of the Kingdome of the *French*, gave the title of Earl to many great and puiſſant Princes. Growing too great, and truſting too much to that greatneſſe, they drew upon themſelves the jealouſies of thoſe mightier Princes, by whom at laſt *Brunulph* Earl of *Ardenne* was ſlain in battle, and his eſtate parcelled out amongſt his children: *Alberic*, ſurnamed the *Orphelin*, one of his younger ſons, being by *Sigebert* King of *Mets* or *Auſtraſia*, enfeoffed of this country, by the name and title of Earl of *Hainalt*, (*Hannuvia* the *Latines* call it.) Twice this Eſtate was added or united to that of *Flanders*. 1 In the perſon of *Baldwin* the 5. Earl of *Flanders*, ſucceeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his wife, daughter of *Regnier* the 3. 2 By the marriage of *Baldwin* the 6. of *Hainalt*, with *Margaret* Counteſſe of *Flanders*, ſiſter and heir of *Philip* of *Elſas*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the firſt time by the uſurpation of *Flanders*, wreſted from *Arnulph* the 3. by his Uncle *Robert*, and the ſecond time by the intruſion of *John de Aveſnes*, naturall ſon of *Margaret* the ſecond daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, into the Eſtate and Earldom of *Hainalt*; it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the marriage of *John de Aveſnes* to *Adelize*, or *Aleide*, daughter, (and at the laſt) heir of *Florence* the 4. Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, &c. from which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundie*.

The EARLS of *HAINALT*.

1 *Alberic*, one of the younger ſons of *Brunulph*, Earl of *Ardenne*.
2 *Waultier*, ſon of *Alberic*.
3 *Waultier* II. ſon of *Waultier* the firſt.
4 *Waultier* III. ſon of *Waltier* the ſecond.
5 *Albon*, in right of his wife, eldeſt daughter of *Walter* the third.
6 *Albon* II. ſon of the ſaid *Albon* by that wife.
7 *Manaſſier* ſon of *Albon* the ſecond.
8 *Regnier*, ſon of *Manaſſier*.
9 *Regnier* II. ſon of *Regnier* the firſt.
10 *Regnier* III. ſon of *Regnier* the ſecond.
11 *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, in right of *Richild* his wife, the ſole daughter to *Regnier* the third, was Earl of *Hainalt*.
1070 12 *Arnulph*, ſon of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, deſpoiled of his eſtate and life by his Uncle *Robert*, who ſeiſed on the Earldom of *Flanders*.
1071 13 *Baldwin* II. brother of *Arnulph*, ſucceeded in *Hainalt*.
14 *Baldwin* III. ſon of *Baldwin* the ſecond.
15 *Baldwin* IV. ſon of *Baldwin* the third.
16 *Baldwin* V. ſon of *Baldwin* the fourth.
17 *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainalt*, and VIII. of *Flanders*, in right of *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter and heir of *Philip* of *Elſas*, Earl of *Flanders*.
1199 18 *Baldwin* VIII. of *Hainalt* and IX of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*.
1295 19 *Joan* Counteſſe of *Hainalt* and *Flanders*, firſt married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.
1244 20 *Margaret* the younger ſiſter of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bourbon* Lord of *Dampierre*, by whom ſhe had *William* and *Guy* both Earls of *Flanders*.
21 *John de Aveſnes*, baſe ſon of *Margaret*, begot before her marriage by *Buſchart* her Guardian, the *Porter* of S. *Peters* in *L'Iſle*, by force and fraud extorted *Hainalt* from his Brethren born in lawfull wedlock; and married *Aleide* daughter and heir of *Florence* the 4. Earl of *Holland*: whoſe ſucceſſours in both Eſtates we ſhall meet with there, and amongſt them, with *William* the 2. father of Queen *Philippa*, wife of *Edward* the 3. one of the moſt conſiderable of all the number.

The Arms hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.

Cambray: & Namur.

4. The *Biſhoprick* of *CAMBRAY.*

Southward with *Hainalt* lieth the *Biſhoprick* of *CAMBRAY*, containing a goodly Town and territory, reckoned of anciently as a part of *Hainalt*, now a ſtate diſtinct; rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, then ſubject to them.

The Principall City hereof is *Cambray* (called in *Latine*, *Cameracum*) ſeated on both ſides of the River *Scheld*; a fair, goodly and mighty City, full of people, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them induſtrious, eſpecially in making that fine linnen Cloth, from hence called *Camerac*, or *Cambrick*. The private buildings very fair, but the publick much fairer, eſpecially the Monaſteries and other Churches, of which the moſt remarkable is that of *our Ladie*, an ancient and ſumptuous fabrick, and the See Epiſcopall. From whence the countrey and territory hereunto adjoyning, is called *Cambreſis*, in which are divers Villages and places of importance; the chief of which is *Chaſteau Cambreſis*, ſix leagues from the City, remarkable for the treaty held there betwixt *France* and *Spain anno* 1559. in which a peace was happily ſetled amongſt all the chief Princes of *Chriſtendome*. 2. *Aveſnes le ſec* (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Aveſnes* in *Hainalt*) near which are digged excellent white ſtones for building, little inferiour unto *Marble*.

This *Biſhoprick* was founded in the perſon of S. *Diogenes*, a *Grecian* born, *Anno* 390. or thereabouts. Whoſe Succeſſours in tract of time became ſo potent, that at the laſt the Biſhop hereof became both the Lord *ſpirituall* and *temporall* of the Town and territory, honoured with the title of a Duke, and *Prince* of the Empire, and in the end made an Arch-biſhop by Pope *Paul* the 4. *anno* 1562.

The City of *Cambray* made *Imperiall* by the *Germane* Emperours, was firſt by *Henry* the fift given in protection to *Robert* of *Hieruſalem* Earl of *Flanders*; afterwards ſetled and confirmed on all his Succeſſours by the Emperour *Frederick*, *anno* 1164. Which notwithſtanding, the *French* finding it convenient for them, divers times poſſeſſed it: but governing with too great inſolence, they were driven out by the people, in the time of *Lewis* the 11. and the town yeelded voluntarily unto *Maximilian*, governour of theſe countries for his ſon *Philip*. *Charles* the 5. in the year 1543. built a ſtrong *Citadell* in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the Town againſt the *French*; but indeed to keep it for himſelf. After this it was taken by the Duke of *Alenſon*, (brother of *Henry* the 3. of *France*) then Governour of the *Netherlands*, *anno* 1582. but regained not long after by the *Spaniards*, the Inhabitants giving up the Town for want of victuals. Since that continually poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; but ſo, that the people ſtill enjoy their ancient priviledges, and are governed by their own lawes and Biſhops.

5. *NAMVR.*

The Earldome of *NAMVR* hath on the Eaſt *Hainalt*, on the Weſt the Biſhoprick of *Leige*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South *Luxenbourg*. The countrey very ſmall, containing only 182. Villages and four walled Towns; but plentifull of all commodities, and repleniſhed with a loyall and induſtrious people. Particularly the aire hereof is very wholeſome; the countrey watered with many rivers and pleaſant brooks, (amongſt which the *Sambre*, and the *Maes*) which beſides the benefit of portage, yeeld great plenty of fiſh. The hils, whereof it hath not many, clothed with woods, abounding with all kinde of fowle and veniſon; the vallies eminently fruitfull of all ſorts of grain, rich mines of Lead, quarries of Marble of all colours, as alſo of *Porphyrie* or *Jaſper*, and great plenty of *Coal*; but in mines of Iron ſo abounding and that continually hammered by a painfull people, that *Vulcans* forge may ſeem to be reſtored to the world again, and ſeated here; which as it makes the people wealthy, ſo it keeps them from idleneſſe. And as for the Nobility, they are generally valiant, given to all military exerciſes fit for their degrees, and very affectionate to their *Prince*; the greateſt vertue of a ſubject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was ſaid, that is to ſay, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where reſideth the *Councell* for the countrey, from which lyeth no appeal but to *Macblyn* only. Seated between two hils on both ſides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuſe*. The City rich, inhabited for the moſt part by the Nobility, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and beautified with a fair Cathedrall, founded here in the Church of S. *Albin anno* 1559. Not farre off in the Villages of *Ardenne* and *Munſtier*, are two Nunneries of Ladies, like thoſe of *Montz* and *Maubuige*, ſpoken of in *Hainalt*. 2. *Bovines* upon the *Meuſe*, ſacked by the *French anno* 1554. ſince repaired, and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a ſmall Town, but of moſt exact fortifications, built by *Charles* the 5. *anno* 1555. to oppoſe the *French*, who had then poſſeſſed themſelves of *Mariemburg*, a Town of *Hainalt*. 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but ſtanding in a goodly and fruitfull countrey. Of the Villages the chief is *Doue*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and honoured with the title of a *Viſcountie*; 2. *Florent*, 3. *Vaſcie*, and 4. *Saufin*, of much beauty and greatneſſe.

The ancient Inhabitants of this countrey were a part of the *Nervii*; firſt made an Earldome by ſome of the deſcendents of the ſons of *Clodius* the ſecond King of the *French*, who being diſpoſſeſſed of their Fathers kingdome by *Meroveus*, the Maſter of his horſe (to whom he had committed the guardianſhip or tuition of them,) were forced to betake themſelves to the moſt defenſible

Luxenbourg.

parts of the great forreſt of *Ardenne*, and the parts adjoyning: where they founded the great Earldome of *Ardenne*: divided in ſucceeding times into many parcels, of which this was one. By what and by how many Earls poſſeſſed, I am yet to learn; but ſold it was by *John* the laſt Earl unto *Philip* the *Good*; continuing ever ſince in the houſe of *Burgundie*, or in their right in thoſe of *Auſtria* and *Spain*.

The Armes hereof are *Or*, a Lyon *Sable*, debruiſed with a Bend *Gules*.

6. LVXENBOVRG.

LVXENBOVRG is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Moſelle*, and the land of *Triers*; on the Weſt with the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, and a branch of the forreſt of *Ardenne*; on the North with *Luyck-land*, *Namur*, and a part of *Hainalt*; and on the South with the Dutchie of *Lorrain*. Divided into two parts, the Eaſtern part being called *Fanenne*, fruitfull of corn, and yeelding withall ſome wines, ſome mines, and many excellent quarries of goodly ſtone; the Weſtern called the *Ardenne*, a remainder of that ſpacious Forreſt which ſometimes overſhadowed all this countrey, barren of corn, but very plentifull of Veniſon, and of Fowle good ſtore. The people of this country are not all of one language, thoſe nearer *Germanie*, as in *Luxenbourg*, *Arlune*, *Rodemark*, *Theonville*, and the reſt on that ſide, ſpeaking the *Dutch*; as thoſe of *Ivois*, *Mommedi*, *Morvill*, and *Damvilliers*, with the reſt bordering on *France*, do a corrupt or broken *French*. In which regard the pleadings held before the *Councell* reſiding in *Luxenbourg*, are made in both Languages, that ſo they may be underſtood by all that have buſineſſe there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province then in any other of the ſeventeen) ſpeak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of men full of vertue, curteſie, and hoſpitality towards one another, and of great truth and faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worſt *Landlords* in all theſe countries, governing their Subjects and Tenants like the *Peſants* of *France*, contrary to the uſe and liberties of the reſt of the *Netherlands*. Both ſorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both *Law* and *Lawyers*; and for the moſt part end their controverſies amongſt themſelves, without any *proceſſe*.

The whole countrey containeth in compaſſe about 70. leagues, or 200. *Italian* miles, in which are comprehended 23. walled Towns, and 1168. Burroughs and Villages. The principall of which are 1. *Luxembourg*, built in the place where anciently ſtood the *Auguſta Veromanduorum* of *Ptolemie*; and took this new name *quaſi Lucis burgum*, from the image of the *Sun* there worſhipped, ſeated on the *Alſnutius*, or *Alze*, which runneth through it; large and of a ſtrong ſituation, but not very well built; nor yet recovered of the ſpoils which the long wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniard* brought upon it, before the treaty of *Cambray*. However it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the reſidence of the *Councell* hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* K. of *Bohemia*, ſlain in the battell of *Crecie* againſt the *Engliſh*, *anno* 1348. 2. *Arlune*, on the top of an high hill, ſo called *quaſi Ara lunæ*, from an Altar conſecrated to the *Moon* in the times of *Paganiſme*. 3. *Theonville*, on the *Moſelle*, over which it hath a goodly bridge; a frontier Town near *Metz*, and the border of *Lorrain*; and for that cauſe made marvellous ſtrong, but taken by the *French anno* 1558. and reſtored the next year by the peace of *Cambray*. 4. *Boſtonack*, a fair Town, and very well traded; commonly called the *Paris* of *Ardenne*, in which part it ſtandeth. 5. *Mommedi*, on an high hill at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. 6. *Damvilliers*, once a very ſtrong place alſo; both taken and ranſacked by the *French anno* 1552. 7. *Morville* upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belongeth to the Duke of *Lorrain*, the other to the King of *Spain*, as Duke of *Luxenbourg*; for which cauſe called *La ville commune*. 8. *Rock di March*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle. 9. *Ivoys*, a place once of great importance, ſacked by the *French anno* 1552. and reſtored by the treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it ſhould never more be walled. 10. *La Ferte* on the *Chiers*, a Town of the ſame condition.

In the skirts of this countrey towards *France* ſtandeth the Dukedome of *Bovillon*, and the principality of *Sedan*; diſtinct Eſtates, and in the hands of ſeverall Owners; yet ſo that the Soveraign of *Sedan* is ſtiled Duke of *Bovillon*. Towns of moſt note, 1. *Bovillon* the chief Town, built on the ſide of an hill near the River *Semoy*; a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Caſtle on the top of an hill; ſo ſtrong as well by Art as Nature, that before the uſe of great Ordnance it was held impregnable; but ſince it hath been often taken, ſometimes by the Emperours, and finally *anno* 1552. by the *French* King. It hath command over a fair and goodly Territory, honoured with the title of a Dutchy, and is now in the hands of the Biſhops of *Leige*; to one of whoſe Predeceſſors named *Obert*, it was ſold by *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* Duke of *Lorrain*, at his going to the *Holy-land*. 2. *Sedan* or *Eſdain*, ſituate on the banks of the *Maes* or *Moſa*, the uſuall reſidence of the Prince, a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80. braſſe Pieces of Ordnance: honoured alſo with a ſeat of Learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar Schoole and an Univerſity, is in the *Criticiſme* of theſe times, called a *Schola illuſtris*, to which men may ſend their children to learn good letters, though they can take in them no *Degrees*, that being a priviledge reſerved only to the Univerſities. So that theſe Schooles may be ſomewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Weſtminſter*, *Wincheſter*, and *Eaton*: but that the younger Students in theſe laſt named, are more reſtrained to *Rhetorick* and *Grammar*, then in the other; though theſe more liberally indowed for the incouragement and reward of learning, then all the *Scholæ illuſtres* of either *Germanie*. 3. *Loni*. 4. *Mouſon*, (*Muſonium* it is called in *Latine*) a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence on the River *Maes*, upon ſome jealouſies of State, garriſon'd by

by the *French* (as ſome other good Peers of this Dukedome are.) 5. *Sauſi*, and 6. *Florenge*, which two laſt came unto the Princes of *Sedan* by the Lady *Jone* the wife of *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and mother of that *Robert* Earl of *Mark* who firſt of all this houſe was honoured with the title of Duke of *Bovillon*. All taken and levelled with the ground by *Charles* the 5. in his war againſt *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Duke of *Bovillon*; but afterwards repaired on the peace enſuing. 7. *Jamais*, a Town of great importance on the edge of *Lorrain*; by the Duke whereof in the year 1589. it was taken after a long ſiege from the Lady *Charlotte*, the laſt Heire: Generall of this Houſe; and laid unto that Dukedome as a part thereof. *Bovillon.*

As for the Dukedome of *Bovillon* it was anciently a part of the great Earldome of *Ardenne*: by *Geofrey* of *Ardenne* Duke of *Bovillon*, united to the Dukedome of *Lorrain*, at his inveſtiture in that eſtate, *anno* 1004. By *Geofrey* the 2. of that name, and fift Duke of *Lorrain*, it was given in Dower to his Siſter *Ida*, at her marriage with *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardie*; to whom he brought the famous *Godfrey* (ſurnamed of *Bovillon*, becauſe Duke thereof, before he did ſucceed into that of *Lorrain*) renowned for the conqueſt of *Hieruſalem*, and the *Holy-land*. Who afterwards ſucceeding in the Dukedome of *Lorrain*, ſold his Eſtates of *Bovillon* unto *Obert* Biſhop of *Leige*, as before was ſaid: by whom and his Succeſſors both the Eſtate and Title of Duke of *Bovillon*, was peaceably enjoyed, till the year 1530. or thereabouts: when *Eberhard* of *Mark*, Biſhop and Cardinall of *Leige*, ſold it to *Robert* Earl of *Mark* his brother, deſcended from *Engelbert* Earl of *Mark*, and a daughter of the houſe of *Aremberg*, who brought with her *Sedan*, *Jamais*, and others of the Towns ſpoken of before. But *Robert* being worſted by *Charles* the 5. (for whom he was too weak an enemy) the Town of *Bovillon* being taken by the conquering Emperour, was afterwards reſtored to the Biſhops, and nothing but the title of Dukes of *bovillon* left to the Princes of *Sedan*. And that he might be able to hold *Sedan*, this *Robert* was fain to return again to the protection of the *French* (as his Anceſtors had done before) and died *anno* 1535. leaving his titles and eſtate unto *Robert* his ſon, one of the *Marſhals* of *France*: whoſe grandſon, called alſo *Robert*, being a dear friend and companion of *Henry* of *Bourbon* K. of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France* alſo, dying without iſſue at *Geneva*, *anno* 1588. committed to him the diſpoſall of his eſtates and of the Lady *Charlotte* his only Siſter. And he ſo well diſcharged his truſt, that (having ſetled his own affairs) he gave the Lady in marriage to *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turene* in *France*, one who had done him very good ſervice in the courſe of his long war againſt the Leaguers, and with her the poſſeſſion of *Sedan*, and the title of *Bovillon*; whoſe poſterity do ſtill enjoy it. As for the Town of *Bovillon* it ſelf, being taken from Duke *Robert* by *Charles* the 5. and from the *Imperialiſts* by the *French*, *anno* 1552. as before was ſaid, it was at laſt reſtored unto the Biſhop of *Leige* by the treaty of *Cambray*, *anno* 1559. but without prejudice to the title of the Prince of *Sedan*. So that at this time there are no fewer then three which write themſelves *Dukes of Bovillon*, *viz.* the Biſhop of *Leige* who hath poſſeſſion of the Town; the houſe of *de la Tour*, who is inveſted in *Sedan* and ſome other pieces; and finally the Heirs Males of the collaterall line of the houſe of *Mark*, who hold ſome other parts and places of this eſtate.

But to return again to the *Dutchy* of *Luxembourg*, it was at firſt a part of the great Earldome of *Ardenne*; diſmembred from it in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, by *Sigefride* the ſon of *Ricuinus* Prince thereof; who in the diviſion of that eſtate amongſt his Brethren had this for his portion, with the title of Earl, denominated from the Caſtle (now the town) of *Luxembourg*, ſelected by him for the ſeat of his principality. Of his Succeſſours there is little to be found upon good record, untill the time of *Henry* the 1. father of *Henry* the 7. Emperour of *Germany*, and of a Royall progeny of Kings and Princes, two of the which are moſt conſiderable, though all of them of eminent quality in their ſeverall times, *viz.* 1. *Henry* elected and crowned Emperour, by the name of *Henry* the 7. ſaid to be poiſoned by a Frier in the Holy Chalice, to prevent ſome deſigns he had againſt the Pope, in aſſerting the Imperiall power in *Italie*: 2. *John* the ſon of this *Henry*, choſen King of *Bohemia*, in regard of his marriage with *Elizabeth* daughter of *Wenceſlaus*, King thereof; the poſſeſſion of which Realm he left unto his Poſterity advanced unto a Dukedome by *Charles* the 4. the eldeſt ſon of this *John*, in the perſon of *Wenceſlaus* his younger brother. What elſe concerns it, we ſhall finde in this following Catalogue of

EARLS and DUKES of *LUXEMBOURG.*

1 *Sigifride*, the ſon of *Ricuine*, Prince of *Ardenne*.

2 *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg*, ſlain in the quarrell of *Rainold* Earl of *Gueldres*, contending with *John* Duke of *Brabant* for the Dutchie of *Limbourg*.

3 *Henry* II. by means of his brother *Baldwin* Elector of *Triers*, choſen Emperour of the *Germans*, the 7. of that name, *anno* 1308. firſt crowned at *Aken*, and afterwards at *Rome*; one of the laſt Emperours that medled in the affairs of *Italy*.

1313 4 *John*, ſon of *Henry* II. Earl of *Luxembourg*, married *Elizabeth* daughter of *Winceſlaus* the elder, King of *Bohemia*; of which he was upon that marriage elected and crowned King, *anno* 1311. in the life of his father, ſlain by the *Engliſh* in the battell of *Crecie*, *anno* 1346.

1346 5 *Wenceſlaus* the younger ſon of *John*, created Duke of *Luxembourg* by his elder brother *Charles* the 4. Emperour and King of *Bohemia*.

Limbourg. 1383 6 *Wenceſlaus* II. eldeſt ſon of the ſaid *Charles* the 4. Emperour and King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceeded his Uncle in the Dukedome.

1419 7 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, ſucceeded *Wenceſlaus* in all his eſtates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungarie* by the marriage of *Mary* daughter of King *Lewis* the firſt.

8 *Elizabeth*, daughter of *John* Duke of *Garlitz*, (a Town of *Luſatia*) the brother of *Sigiſmund*, by the gift of *Sigiſmund* her Uncle, being then alive; the better to fit her for the bed of *Anthony* of *Bourgogn* Duke of *Brabant*; after whoſe deceaſe ſhe married *John* the 3. Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. But having no iſſue by either of them, ſhe ſold her intereſt in this Dukedome to *Philip* the *Good* in purſuance of the contract and agreement made at her firſt marriage, for ſetling this eſtate in the houſe of *Burgundie*.

The Armes are *B.* ſix Barrulets *A*, ſupporting a Lyon, *G*, crowned and armed, *Or*.

7. *LIMBOVRG.*

The greateſt of the Eſtates of *Belgium* for extent of territory at the time of their incorporating in the houſe of *Burgundie*, was that of *Brabant*, comprehending 5. of the 17. Provinces, that is to ſay, the Dukedome of *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, the Marquiſate of the *holy Empire*, the Earldome of *Namurce*, and the Seigneury of *Machlyn*.

1. *LIMBOVRG*, hath on the Eaſt the Dukedome of *Gulick* in *High Germany*; on the Weſt the Biſhoprick of *Leige*; on the North, *Brabant*; and on the South, the Dukedome of *Luxembourg*. The Soyle fruitfull of all neceſſary commodities, excepting wines, the want whereof is recompenſed with moſt excellent wheat, great ſtore of fewell, and plenty of the beſt iron mines in all theſe countries: all which commodities it hath of ſo great excellency in their ſeverall kinds, that it is ſaid of them proverbially, that *their Bread is better then bread, their Fire hotter then fire*, and *their Iron harder then iron*. It is alſo well ſtored with medicinable ſimples, and enriched with a mine of *Copperas*, (by *Plinie* called *Lapis æroſus*, *lib.* 34. *c.* 10.) which being incorporated with braſſe makes *Lattin*, and increaſeth the braſſe by one third part. *Lapis æroſus multum æris habet, & ex eo fuſo fit æs*, as that Author hath it.

It is one of the leaſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125. Villages, and no more then five walled Towns or Cities, *viz.* 1. *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole Eſtate, pleaſantly ſeated on an hill amongſt ſhady woods, under which runneth the River *Weſdo*, which having watered the whole countrey emptieth it ſelf into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep *Precipice*, of no eaſie acceſſe. 2. *Walkenbourg*, called by the *French Fauquemont*, a reaſonable fair Town, with a large territory, two *Dutch* miles from *Maeſtricht*; conquered from *Reynold* Lord hereof by *John* the 3. Duke of *Brabant*. 3. *Dalem* a little Town with a Caſtle, the territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*; conquered by *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, of that name the ſecond. 4. *Rhode le Duck*, a little old Town with as old a Caſtle, half a league from *Walkenbourg*. 5. *Carpen*, ſituate between *Gulick* and *Colen*, beautified with a Collegiate Church, and a ſtrong Caſtle, in which there is a Governour with a good Garriſon for defence of the place. Each of theſe Towns hath juriſdiction on the parts adjoyning; but with appeal unto the *Chancery* of *Brabant*.

The ancient inhabitants of this tract, and the Biſhoprick of *Leige* adjoyning, were the *Eburones*. When it was firſt made an Earldome, I am yet to ſeek: but of an Earldome it was made a Dukedome by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *anno* 1172. *Henry* one of the Dukes hereof, marryed his daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the 3. Duke of *Brabant*, which gave that houſe ſome colour to pretend unto it: backed with a better title on the death of another *Henry*, the laſt Duke of *Limbourg*, whoſe next heir *Adolph* ſold it to *John* Duke of *Brabant*, pretending to it in the right of the former marriage, *anno* 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Gueldres*, thinking himſelf to have a better title then *Adolph*, in right of *Ermingrade* his wife the daughter of *Herman*, a late Duke hereof, put in his plea, and challenged it by force of Armes: but being vanquiſhed and taken priſoner by the ſaid Duke *John* in the battell of *Worancan*, was fain for his releaſe, to releaſe all his claim and title to the Dukedome of *Limbourg*; after that quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they fell both together to the houſe of *Burgundie*.

The Armes hereof are *Argent*, a Lyon Barrie of ten pieces, *Or*, and *Gules*.

8. *LVICK-LAND*, OR The *Biſhoprick* of *LEIGE*.

Weſtward of *Limbourg*, but a far mightier eſtate then it, lieth *LVICK-LAND*, as the Dutch, or the *Biſhoprick* of *LEIGE*, (*Leodienſis*) as the *Latine* and *French* writers call it: anciently under the protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundie*, as Lords of that countrey. By ſome accompted of, and deſcribed as a part of *Germany*; but for the reaſons

reaſons before mentioned I ſhal place it here: environed on all ſides with the *Belgick* Provinces that is to ſay, with the Dukedome of *Limbourg* on the Eaſt, with *Brabant* on the North and Weſt; on the South with *Luxembourg*. *Leige.*

The Aire hereof is very wholeſome, and the Earth as fruitfull, abounding with all kinde of grain and fruits, ſome ſtore of wine; and as for fleſh, fiſh, fowle, and veniſon, it hath very great plenty, and that too of an excellent taſte. But the chief riches of this Countrey is under ground, conſiſting in mines of Lead, and Iron, and ſome few of Gold; quarries of *Alabaſter* mingled with all ſorts of *Marble*; rich veins of *Brimſtone*, and unexhauſtible pits of Coal, which laſt it hath in ſuch abundance, that there is digged within the compaſſe of one league of the City of *Leige*, not only ſufficient for that great City, but ſo much overplus as being ſold at mean prices about the countrey amounts unto 100000. duckets of yearly value. The Coal much ſweeter then elſewhere, and of a nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with water, and quenched with oyle: and the ſtrong fervour of it taken off by caſting ſalt on it.

The whole countrey containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800. Villages, the principall of which are 1 *Leige* or *Luick*, (in *Latine Leodium*) ſituate in a pleaſant valley environed with hils, the *Meuſe* entring it in two branches, accompanied with four leſſer Riverets, which make in it many delightfull Ilands. The compaſſe of it about four miles, the ordinary buildings very fair, all built of ſtone; the Biſhops palace a magnificent and ſumptuous piece: the Churches in number forty, of which eight are *Collegiate*, 32. *Parochiall*; all of them for their riches and bounty excelling all in any City of *France* or *Germanie*. Beſides theſe, there are ſo many *Convents*, *Monaſteries*, and religious houſes about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an hundred: all of them of ſuch fair revenues, ſo well endowed, and the Religious perſons there of ſo great authority, that it is cailed the *Paradiſe of Prieſts*, and that deſervedly. It is alſo an Univerſity of good Antiquity, wherein were Students at one time, 9. Kings ſons, 24. Dukes ſons, 29. Earls ſons, beſides Barons and Gentlemen; the greateſt part of which were *Canons* of the Church of S. *Lambert*, which is the *Cathedrall* of the City. Yet notwithſtanding it hath taſted of the malice of fortune as well as others, being firſt deſtroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken and once deſtroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundie*, *anno* 1468. Subject it is unto the Biſhop as Lord *temporall* of it; from whom (being long ſince made an *Imperiall* City) there lyeth an *Appeal* to the Chamber of *Spires*. 2. *Dinand* upon the *Meuſe*, near *Namur*, of very great traffick till deſtroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundie*, in the ſame year with *Leige*: hardly recovered of which wounds, it was again ſacked by K. *Henry* the 2. of *France*, *anno* 1854. 3. *Maeſeck*, upon the *Meuſe* or *Maes* alſo, a league from whence is the fair *Nunnery* of *Thuren*, of the ſame nature with that of *Mentz*, and others ſpoken of before: the like to which there is near 4. *Bilſen*, another Town of this Biſhoprick; the *Abbeſſes* of each having the priviledge of coyning both gold and ſilver. 5. *Lootz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borclom*, in the county of *Dioſtein*; made a county in the time of *Charles* the *Great*, the title and poſſeſſion of *Vgier* the *Dane*, ſo famous in the Hiſtory of *Gallen* of *France*, and others of the old *Romances*. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the title to a Marqueſſe of the Biſhop of *Leige*. 7. *Centron* or S. *Truden*, a fair Town, ſo called of the Abbie, dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Huy* or *Hoey*, ſo called of a violent River, which there runs into the *Meuſe*. 9. *Tungres*, the chief City of the *Tongri*, (which together with the *Eburones* were) once the Inhabitants of this tract in which are ſtill the ruines of a Temple conſecrated to *Hercules*. Anciently an Epiſcopall See, tranſlated hence to *Maeſtreicht*, and at laſt to *Leige*: and in thoſe times ſo great, and of ſuch renown, that *Attila* the *Hun* deſtroyed in it 100. Churches: now but a very ſmall Town, and not worth the mentioning but for theſe Antiquities. Eight leagues from hence, amongſt the ſhady thickets of the Forreſt of *Ardenne*, is that ſo celebrated 10. Villages, and thoſe famous hot Baths, frequented from all the places of *Europe*, called the *Spa*: not ſo pleaſant, as wholeſome; not ſo wholſome, as famous. Yet are they good for ſundry diſeaſes, as the *Tertian Ague*, and *Dropſie*, the *Stone*, the exulceration of the Lungs, the *Sciatique*, &c. They are of moſt virtue in *July*, becauſe they are then hotteſt, and to ſuch as taſte them. they reliſh much of iron, from ſome iron mines, it ſeemeth, through which the waters run, which feed them. Theſe Baths of great fame in the time of *Plinie*, who doth thus deſcribe them. *Tungri Civitas fontem habet inſignem, plurimis bullis ſtillantem, ferruginei ſaporis, quod ipſum non niſi in fine potus intelligitur. Purgat hic corpora, febres tertianas diſcutit, calculorumq; vitia.* So he, *lib.* 31. *cap.* 2. agreeably to the nature of them at this preſent time.

As for the Biſhoprick of *Leige*, it was firſt founded at *Tungres*, as before was ſaid; after the ſackage of which City by *Attila*, removed *anno* 498. by S. *Servatius* unto *Maeſtricht*. But the people of *Maeſtricht* having Martyred S. *Lambert*, then Biſhop, *anno* 710. by *Hubert* his deſigned Succeſſour, with the leave of Pope *Conſtantine*, it was tranſlated to this place, and a Cathedrall Church here founded by the name of S. *Lambert*. His Succeſſours did ſo well husband their advantages, that they did not only buy the Dukedome of *Bovillon*, but the City and territory of *Leige*, ſold unto *Speutus* and *Obertus* ſucceſſively Biſhops of it, by *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, Duke of *Lorrain* (of which Dukedome it was formerly a part or member) at his departure hence to the *Holy-land*: not much increaſed ſince that in lands, though he be in titles, the Biſhop being ſtiled a *Prince* of the *Empire*, Duke of *Bovillon*, Marqueſſe of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Leotz* and *Hasbain*. Yet are not his ordinary Revenues above 30000. duckets yearly, his ſubjects living very well under him, at eaſie rents, and growing for the moſt part unto good eſtates: An argument whereof may be, that when the *Leigeois* had rebelled againſt *Philip* the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundie*, (under whoſe *Clientele* they were, as Duke of *Brabant*) they bought their peace of him at the price of 600000 *Florens* of the *Rhene*, to be paid in ſix years. After which time

Brabant. again rebelling againſt *Charles* the *warlike* (as they have been obſerved to be the moſt rebellious City in *Europe* excepting *Gaunt*) they were able to wage 30000 men, but not being able to withſtand the forces of their Lord *Protectour*, they fell into that miſerable deſtruction ſpoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*: but counted *neutrall* in the quarrells betwixt the King of *Spain*, and the *States confederate*, as formerly between the *Spaniard* and the *French*, though many times they ſuffer in the conteſtations.

9. BRABANT. 10. The MARQUISATE, And 11. MACHLIN.

THeſe I have joyned together, though diſtinct eſtates, becauſe they have a long time followed the ſame fortune, and that the two laſt doe no otherwiſe differ from the firſt, then the parts from the whole: the *Marquiſate*, and *Machlin*, being reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

9. BRABANT is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Luickland*, or the Biſhoprick of *Leige*; on the Weſt, with the River *Scheld*, and a part of *Flanders*; on the North, with the *Maes*, which ſevereth it from *Holland*, and *Guelderland*; and on the South, with *Hainalt*, *Namur*, and part of *Luickland*.

The Air hereof is generally very wholeſome, and good, and the Soil naturally fruitfull, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts hereof lying towards the North, which being barren of it ſelf, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattell, Soiling the ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The people live in moſt freedome, and are the beſt priviledged of any in *Belgium*; A thing for which they are more beholding to the Princes goodneſſe, then their own great wits; being noted to be none of the wiſeſt, eſpecially as they grow in age, when moſt men learn wiſdome. *Brabanti quo magis ſeneſcunt, eo magis ſtulteſcunt*, as *Eraſmus* telleth us.

The length hereof, from S. *Gertrudenberg* to *Genblaurs*, North and South, is 22 *Dutch*, or *German* miles; from *Helmont* to *Berghen ap Some*, Eaſt and Weſt, 20 of the ſame miles; the whole compaſſe 80. Within which circuit are conteined 26 walled Townes; and Villages with Pariſh Churches 718. of which, the odde 18 called *Franks*, or Market-townes, enjoy the priviledges of walled Townes, or Cities, though unwalled themſelves.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Shertogen Boſch*, or the *Boſch*, as the *Dutch*; *Bois le Duc*, or *Bolduc*, as the *French*; and *Silva Ducis*, or *Boſcum Ducis*, as the *Latines* call it: each name derived according to the ſeverall languages, from a pleaſant wood belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now ſtands, ſituate on a litle River called *Deeſe*, ſome two leagues from the *Maes*, neer the borders of *Guelderland*: a large and well built Town, very ſtrongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yeerly, in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine* 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crownes to the Clother or *Draper*; made an *Epiſcopall* See *anno* 1559. the Cathedrall, which is fixed in the Church of S. *John*, being fair and large, and beautified with one of the goodlieſt *Dials* in the *Chriſtian* world. This is the principall town of *Brabant* (properly and diſtinctly ſo called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Maesland*, *Peeland*, and *Oſterwick*; and was taken by the *Confederate Eſtates* from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable ſiege, *Anno* 1628. 2. *Tilmont*, on the little River *Geet*, once the chief of *Brabant*, but long ſince decayed. *Arſchot* on the litle River *Demere*, which gives the title of a Duke to them of the Noble houſe of *Croy*; the Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the Fift) being men of greateſt Revenue and Authority of any in *Belgium*. 4. *Bergen ap Zome*, ſo called from the River *Zome*, upon which it is ſituate, about half a league from the influx of it into the *Scheld*, and not far from the Sea, which gives it a reaſonable good Haven. A town of great ſtrength by nature, but more ſtrongly fortified: Famous for being made a *Marquiſate* by *Charles* the Fift, *anno* 1553. more for the notable reſiſtance which it made to the Marquis *Spinola*, *anno* 1622. 5. *Breda*, upon the river *Merck*, a Town pleaſantly ſeated, well fortified, and of great Revenue, having under it the Town and Territorie of *Steenberg*, the franchiſe of *Roſindale*, and the Seigneury of *Oſterhout*: the reſidence, Baronie, and chief town of the Princes of *Orange*, from whom being taken by the *Spaniard* in the beginning of thoſe wars, it was again recovered by ſome venturous Gentlemen, who hiding themſelves in a Boat covered over with Turf, were conveyed into the Caſtle, which they eaſily maſtered, and made the Prince Lord of it again. After re-taken by the *Spaniard*, *anno* 1625. but now in the poſſeſſion of its naturall owners. 6. *Dieſt*, on the River *Demere*, a good town, and of a large territory and juriſdiction, belonging to the Prince of *Orange*, who had it in exchange for ſome other lands of the Duke of *Cleve*; and in right hereof is *Burgrave* of the City of *Antwerp*. 7. *Grinbergen*, an ancient Baronie, with a large juriſdiction, deſcendible on the youngeſt ſonne onely, after the manner of *Burgh Engliſh*, as our *Lawyers* call it. 8. *Gertrudenberg*, ſtanding on the *Douge*, not far from the influx of it into the *Maes*, the furtheſt town in the North of *Brabant*, where it joyns to *Holland*: which makes it a matter of diſpute betwixt thoſe Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A town of great trade for fiſhing, plenty of *Salmons*, and *Sturgeons* being taken here; but of *Shads* eſpecially, whereof 18000 are ſometimes caught in a day, ſalted, and ſent abroad into forain parts: It acknowledgeth the Prince of *Orange* for the Lord thereof; as doth alſo 9. *Grave*, a good

town

town upon the *Maes*, bought by these Princes of the King of *Spain* with consent of the *States*; without whose approbation, no part of the *Domain* is to be dismembred. 10. *Maestreicht* (in *Latine*, *Trajectum ad Mosam*) so called of a ferry over the *Maes* in former times, supplyed now with a goodly Stone bridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly town, beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one of which the Dukes of *Brabant* were alwayes *Canons*, subject in part to the Bishop of *Leige*, and partly to the Duke of *Brabant*: The children are subject to that Prince to whom the Mother was subject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father, according to that *Maxime* of the Civill Law, *Ingenuus sequitur ventrem*: And if a stranger come to live there, he must declare to which of the two he will be subject, yet is the Duke of *Brabant* the chief Soveraign of it, he onely having the power of Coynage, and of granting pardon to Offenders: and as a town of this Dukedome, besieged and taken by the confederate *States*, Anno 1632. The *Marquisate*.

Here is also within the limits of this Dukedome, the town and *Signeurie* of *Ravestein*, situate on the banks of the *Maes*, held by the Dukes of *Cleve*, of the Duke of *Brabant*; but no otherwise subject; and on the same River, the Town and County of *Horn*, a *Fief Imperiall*, beautified with a strong Castle, and a goodly Territory, in which is *Wiert*, the residence of the Earls of *Horne* descended of the ancient house of *Montmorencie* in *France*.

2. *THE MARQUISATE OF THE EMPIRE*, so called, because the fartherest bounds and *Marches* of the *German* Empire frontizing on *Flanders*, which appertained unto the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*, comprehendeth four of the best Towns in *Brabant*, with very large and spacious Territories adjoyning to them, *viz.* 1. *Lovain*, on the River *Dyle*, about four *English* miles in compasse, but in that compasse much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadowes, and pleasant Fields, which make the situation far more delightfull, then if all built, and peopled. It was the Mother town of *Brabant*, and sometimes gave the title of an Earl to the Dukes hereof: afterwards made an University by Duke *John* the 4. *anno* 1426, wherein are contained about 20 Colledges, such as they be; much priviledged, and inriched with pensions for publick Readers, by King *Philip* the 2. 2. *Brussels* (*Bruxella*) the seat of the ancient Dukes of *Brabant*, and of the Dukes of *Burgundie* also, after they came to be Lords of these Countries, seated upon the *Sinne*, and other sweet springs and Riverets, which make it one of the sweetest situations in all *Europe*: having withall, a goodly channell made by Art from *Brussels*, to the River *Dele*, and from thence to the *Scheld*; the charge whereof amounted to 900000 Crowns. It is of the same compasse with *Lovain*, the buildings sumptuous, and the town very rich; not only in regard that it is the ordinary seat of the Prince, or his *Regent*, and of the *Chancery* for all *Brabant*, and the Dutchy of *Limbourg*; but in regard of the rich *Manufactures* of Armour and Cloth of *Arras*, of Silk, Gold, and Silver, which are there industriously pursued. 3. *Nivelle*, on the borders of *Hainalt*, in a very rich and fruitfull soil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linnen, which is therein made, but most of all for a very rich *Nunnery* (or rather *Nurserie*) of noble Ladies; of the same nature with those of *Mentz*, and others before described. 4. *Antwerp*, situate in a goodly plain on the River *Scheld*, above 17 leagues from the Sea, but furnished with eight Channels cut out of the River for the transport of Commodities, one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships, the private buildings very handsome, but the publick sumptuous; the chief whereof were reckoned the Church of *Nostre Dame*, the *Bourse*, the *Town-house*, and the house of the *Easterlings*, or Eastern Merchants, well peopled, and of so great Trade in the former times, that it was held to be the richest *Empory* of the Christian world: the commodities here bought and sold, amounting to more in one moneth, then that of *Venice* in two years. The causes of which sudden growth and increase of Trading, are said to be these, 1. The two *Marts* holden here every year, either of them during six weeks, in which time no mans person could be arrested, or his goods distrained. 2. The King of *Portugall* having in the yeer 1503. diverted the course of Merchandise from *Alexandria* and *Venice* to the City of *Lisbon*, kept here his *Factories*, and sent hither his Spices, and other *Indian* Commodities; for which cause the Merchants, in the yeer 1516. forsook *Bruges* in *Flanders*, and setled here. 3. And 3. many of the Nobility and Gentry during the long and bloudy wars betwixt *France* and *Spain*, forsook their Country houses, and repaired hither; by means whereof *Antwerp*, in a very little time grew bigger by 3000 houses, then it had been formerly. But as the growth hereof was sudden, so the fall was sensibler occasioned through the yoking of it with a *Citadell* by the Duke of *Alva*, which made Merchants afraid to resort any longer thither, as a place of little freedome, and lesse security: but chiefly by blocking up the Haven, and intercepting the trade at Sea, by the more powerfull *Hollanders*, which hath removed this great traffick to *Amsterdam*, and other towns of their Country. So that now the chief support of it is the reputation which it hath of being an *Imperiall City*, the place of receipt for the Kings Revenues, and a Bishops See founded here in the yeer 1559. which draweth hither some resort of Lawyers and Church-men.

3. The *Signeurie* of *MACHLIN*, consisteth only of that City, and a small Territorie of nine Villages adjoining to it. The Citie seated on both sides of the River *Dele*, which ebbeth and floweth to the town and a league above it: and running through the very midst, maketh in it a number of small Islands, to the great ornament and commoditie of it. A goodly town, containing seven Parish Churches besides the Cathedrall, being the See of an Archbishop founded here in the year 1559. strong in regard it may be easily drowned on all sides: and of great wealth by reason of the many *manufactures* of linnen, great Artillery of Brasse and Iron, Bels, painted works and others of like use and ornament. And being situate in a manner in the Center of *Brabant*, distant four Leagues from

Antwerp,

Machlyn. *Antwerp*, *Lovain*, and *Bruxels*, was made by *Charls* the *Warlike* (who loved the place) the ordinary ſeat of the great *Councell* of State, to which *appeals* are made from the other Provinces. But yet more beautifull in former times then it is at the preſent, the City being much defaced by firing 200 barrels of powder, *anno* 1546. and by the ſackage of of the *Spaniard*, by whom it was taken by force, *anno* 1572. moſt memorable at this time for a famous *Numerie* like to that of *Nivelle*, wherein are ſometimes 1600 Nuns, who when they pleaſe may leave their Cloiſter and be married. A town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State diſtinct: for which cauſe many women at the time of their childbirth, uſe to lay downe their bellies in ſome Village of *Brabant*, that their children may be capable of the priviledges and immunities of that country. The principall of the Villages is named *Leeſt*, or *Heyſt*, pleaſantly ſeated on an hill, the reſidue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages the patrimonie heretofore of the noble family of the *Bertholds*: which failing in the perſon of *Gualter*, ſlain in the battle of *Worancan* by *John* Duke of *Brabant*; it fell the one half to the Biſhop of *Leige*, who ſold his moitie to *John* the ſecond Duke of *Brabant*, the other to the Earl of *Gueldres*, who in the year 1333. ſold his part unto *Lewis* of *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*. But hee ſold nothing but the title, *John* the third Duke of *Brabant* having ſeiſed upon it, and added it to his eſtate: the occaſion of ſome quarrels between thoſe Princes, compoſed by the marriage of that *Lewis* with the heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it ſelf, the antient inhabitants hereof, were the *Aduatici*, and ſome part of the *Tungri*: accompted by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania ſecunda*; and by the *French* a Province of the Kingdom of *Eaſt-France*, or *Auſtraſia*, when it was a Kingdom; as after of the great Dukedom of *Lorrain*, conteining then the modern Dukedoms of *Lorrain*, *Gulick*, and *Brabant*, with the lands of *Luick*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Baſſe* (or *Low*) *Lorrain*, and as a memory thereof, there is a Court for *criminall* and *civill* cauſes held at *Genappe* (one of the *Franks* or Market towns of *Brabant*) called *La Court de Lorrain* to this day. A Dukedom firſt erected by the Emperour *Otho* the 2. who gave it to *Charles* of *France* ſon of *Gerburg* his Aunt, by *Lewis* ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, King of *France*; reſerving out of it as a Dower for his ſaid Aunt *Gerburg*, the towns and territories of *Lovain*, *Bruxels*, *Nivelle*, and *Antwerp*, lying in the *Marches* of his Dominions towards *France*, which he honoured with the title of the *Marquiſat* of the holy Empire, *anno* 981. *Gerburg* the ſiſter, and after the death of her brother *Otho*, the heir of *Charls*, diſſeiſed of *Lorrain* and the right of that fair inheritance by the Emperour *Henry* (who gave it to *Geofrey* of *Ardenne*) ſucceeded her Grandmother the firſt *Gerburg* in the towns and territories of *Lovain*, *Nivelle*, and *Bruxels*, which ſhe conveyed in marriage to *Lambert*, one of the ſons of *Reyner* of *Hainalt*, with the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Henry* his ſon having made himſelf Maſter of *Antwerp* alſo, was by that means poſſeſſed of the whole *Marquiſate*, but ſtill retained the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Godfrey* the 6. Earl, having enlarged the bounds of his Dominions, was by the Emperour *Henry* the 5. *anno* 1108. created the firſt Duke of *Brabant*: whether ſo named from the old *Bratuſpantium*, which *Ceſar* placeth in this tract, or that it was ſo called *quaſi Brachland*, that is to ſay, a barren ſoil, is not yet determined. *John* the firſt Duke of that name, added hereunto the Dutchie of *Limburg*, and *John* the third, the *Signeurie* of *Malines* or *Machlin*. How it became united to the houſe of *Burgundie*, is to be ſeen by the enſuing Catalogue of the

The EARLS of *LOVAIN*, and DUKES of *BRABANT*.

1041 1 *Lambert*, one of the ſons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainalt*, made the firſt Earl of *Lovain* in right of *Gerburg* his wife.

1015 2 *Henry* the ſon of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the *Marquiſate* of the *holy Empire*.

1046 3 *Lambert* II. ſon of *Henry*.

1054 4 *Henry* II. ſon of *Lambert* the ſecond.

1068 5 *Henry* III. ſon of *Henry* the ſecond.

6 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third.

1096 7 *Godfrey* ſurnamed *Barbatus*, brother of *Henry* the fourth, created the firſt Duke of *Brabant* by the Emperour *Henry* the fifth, *anno* 1108. father of *Adelize*, the ſecond wife of our *Henry* the firſt.

1140 8 *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* II. ſon of *Godfrey*.

1143 9 *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* III. ſon of *Godfrey* the ſecond.

1183 10 *Henry* V. ſon of *Godfrey* the third.

1230 11 *Henry* VI. ſurnamed the *Good*, ſon of *Henry* the fift.

1247 12 *Henry* VII. ſurnamed the *Magnanimous*, by whoſe marriage with *Sophia* daughter of *Lewis* the ſixt, Lantgrave of *Turingia*, the Lantgravedome of *Haſſia* came into this houſe, inveſted on it in the perſon of *Henry* his ſon, by the ſaid *Sophia*.

1260 13 *John*, ſon of *Henry* the ſeventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and deſtroyed the potent Familie of the *Bertholds*: his younger brother *Henry*, by another *venter*, ſucceeding in *Haſſia*.

14 *John* II. ſon of *John* the firſt, bought of the Biſhop of *Leige* the moitie, or one halfe of *Machlyn*.

1312 15 *John*

1312 15 *John* III. ſon of *John* the ſecond, added the whole eſtate of *Machlyn* to the Dukedome of *Brabant*. *Holland.*

1355 16 *Joane*, eldeſt daughter of *John* the third, married to *Wenceſlaus* the firſt Duke of *Luxembourg*, but dyed without iſſue.

1406 17 *Anthony* of Burgogne, ſon of *Philip* the *Hardie*, and the Lady *Margaret* his wife, daughter of *Lewis de Malain* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Margaret* the ſiſter and heir of *Joane*; after the death of the ſaid *Wenceſlaus* and *Joane* his wife, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, his elder brother *John* giving way unto it.

1415 18 *John* IV. ſonne of *Anthony* by his firſt wife *Joane* daughter of *Waleran* Earl of Saint *Paul*.

1426 19 *Philip*, the ſecond ſon of *Anthony*, and brother of *John* the fourth.

1430 20 *Philip* II. called the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundie*, ſon and heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundie*, elder brother of *Anthony*; on the death of his two Couſin Germans *John* and *Philip*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, as the direct heir of the Lady *Margaret*, wife of *Lewis de Malain*, and daughter of *John* the third, the laſt Duke of *Brabant* of the houſe of *Lovain*.

The Arms hereof are *Sable*, a Lyon *Or*.

12. *HOLLAND*, 13. *ZELAND*, 14. *WESTFRISELAND*.

Having thus ſpoken of thoſe Provinces which ſtil continue in ſubjection to the King of *Spain* (except ſome few towns in *Flanders* and *Brabant* before mentioned;) let us next look on thoſe which have withdrawn their obedience from him, beginning firſt with *Holland*, and its Appendixes, as of more power and conſideration then all the reſt. Which though diſtinct Provinces and acting in their ſeverall capacities at the preſent time: yet having been alwayes under the command of the ſame Princes, they muſt be joined together in the Storie of them, but ſhall be ſeverally handled as to the *Chorographie*.

HOLLAND, ſo called *quaſi Holt-land*, that is to ſay, a woodie country, as *Ortelius* hath it, but rather *quaſi Hollow-land*, from the bogs and mariſhes, and unſound footing on the ſame: hath on the Eaſt the *Zuider See*, *Utrecht*, and ſome part of *Guelderland*, on the Weſt and North the *German* Ocean, on the South, the Iſlands of *Zeland*, and ſome part of *Brabant*.

The country for the moſt part lyeth very low, in ſo much that they are fain to fence it with Banks and *Ramparts* to keep out the Sea, and to reſtrain the Rivers within their bounds, ſo that in many places one may ſee the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulſed with thoſe Banks: and is withall ſo fenny and full of mariſhes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable dikes and channels to make it firm land, and fit for dwelling: yet not ſo firm as to bear either trees or much graine. But ſuch is the induſtry of the people and the trade they drive, that having little or no *corn* of their own growth, they do provide themſelves elſewhere not only ſufficient for their own ſpending, but wherewith to ſupply their neighbours: having no timber of their own, they ſpend more timber in building ſhips, and fencing their water-courſes, then any country in the world; having no *wine*, they drink more then the people of the country where it groweth naturally; and finally having neither *Flax* nor *Wool*, they make more cloth of both ſorts, then all the countries in the world, except *France* and *England*.

The preſent inhabitants are generally given to Sea-faring lives, ſo that it is thought that in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Weſt-Friſeland*, there are 2500. ſhips of war and burden. The women for the moſt part laborious in making ſtuffes. Nay you ſhall hardly ſee a child of four years of age, that is not kept to work, and made to earn its own living, to the great commendation of their government. The greateſt of their natural Commodities is Butter and Cheeſe, of which, beſides that infinite plenty which they ſpend in their own houſes, and amongſt their Garriſons, they ſell as much unto other Countries, as comes to 100000 Crowns *per annum*. By which means, and by the greatneſſe of their fiſh-trade ſpoken of before, they are grown ſo wealthy on the land, and ſo powerfull at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*, ſo now *Holland* is taken generally for all the *Provinces confederated* in a league againſt the *Spaniard*.

The whole compaſſe of it is no more then 180 miles, no part thereof being diſtant from the Sea, above three houres journey: and yet within that narrow circuit, there are contained no fewer then 23 walled Towns, and 400 Villages: ſome ſituate in the North, and others in *South-Holland*, as it ſtands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part hereof which lyeth next to *Zeland* and the middle channell of the *Rhene* paſſing from *Utrecht* unto *Leiden*,) the principall Towns are, 1. *Dort* (in *Latine Dordrectum*) formerly the Staple for *Rheniſh* wines, a large, rich, and well-peopled town: anciently joined to the firm land, but in the year 142, rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Iland of great command upon the traffique of the *Maes* and the *Wael*, upon whoſe confluence it ſtands; but of moſt note for an *Aſſembly of Divines* out of divers Countries following *Calvins* doctrine, for condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Univerſall Grace and Predeſtination,

Holland. deſtination, *anno* 1618. 2. *Roterdam*, ſeated on a dike or channell called the *Rotter*, not farre from which at a place named *Kempen*, the *Leck*, one of the three main branches of the *Rhene*, falleth into the *Maes*: a ſtrong, fair, and well traded Port, the birth-place of the learned *Eraſmus*. 3. *Schoon-hoven*, ſituate on the *Leck*, a fair town having a commodious haven. 4. *Gorichom* upon the *VVael*, where it meeteth with the *Linges*, from the Church whereof one may diſcerne 22 walled townes. 5. *Gouds*, one of the ſix principall towns of *Holland*, rich and well fortified; ſeated on a Dike called *Yſſel*, drawn from the middle channell of *Rhene*; as is alſo, 6. *Over-water*, and 7. *Yſſel-ſtein*, this laſt belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the firſt of great trade for making cables and cords for ſhipping. 8. *Leiden*, or *Lugdunum Batavorum*, an Univerſity founded *anno* 1564. The town conſiſteth of 41 Iſlands, to which they paſſe partly by boats, partly by bridges, whereof there are 144; and of them 104 builded with ſtone. Here is in this town a caſtle ſaid to have been built by *Hengiſt* the *Saxon*, at his return out of *England*. And not far off ſtood the famous *Nunnerie* of *Rainsburg* of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mentz* and *Nivelle* before deſcribed; ſo liberally endowed, that 2000 perſons did there dayly receive relief. 9. *Vianen* on the *Leck*, a Seigneurie diſtinct from *Holland*, pertaining antiently to the Lords of *Brederode*. 10. *Delfe*, a town of great trade for cloathing, large and well built, beautified with ſpacious ſtreets, and goodly Churches; the birth-place of that monſtrous Heretick *David George*, who called himſelf *King* and *Chriſt Immortall*. He fled with his wife and children, *anno* 1544, to *Baſil*; there he ſet up his Doctrine: the points whereof were, 1. That the Law and the Goſpell were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to ſave ſuch as receive it. 2. That he was the true *Chriſt* and *Meſſias*. 3. That he had been till that preſent, kept in a place unknown to all the Saints: and 4. that he was not to reſtore the houſe of *Iſrael* by *death* or *tribulation*, but by *love* and *grace* of the Spirit. He dyed in the yeare 1556. and three dayes after his Doctrine was by them of *Baſil* condemned, his goods confiſcate, and his bones taken up and burned. Hee bound his Diſciples to three things: 1. to conceal his name: 2. not to reveale of what condition hee had been: and 3. not to diſcover the *articles* of his Doctrine to any man in *Baſil*.

In that part thereof which is called *North-Holland*, lying betwixt the middle channel of the *Rhene*, and the *Zuider-See*, the towns or Cities of moſt importance are 1. *Alamar*, encompaſſed with deep fens and mariſhes, a rich town in regard of the great plenty of butter and cheeſe, which is made about it more then in any place in *Holland*, and famous for the defeat which the Duke of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the *Low-countrey* troubles, having with the loſſe of 20000 of his own men forced *Harlem*, laid his ſiege round about this town. Had he left any way for the ſouldiers to have fled thence, the town had been abandoned: but having environed them round, he put them to ſuch a reſolution or deſperation, (chooſe you whether) that manfully they reſiſted three of his aſſaults; and in the end made him depart with great loſſe as well of his ſouldiers, as his reputation. 2. *Amſterdam*, a very fair Haven Town, where divers times at one tide 1000 ſhips of all ſorts have been ſeen to goe out and in: So truly ſaid a modern Poet,

> *Quod* Tagus, *atq;* Hermus *vehit, &* Pactolus, *in unum*
> *Vere hunc congeſtum dixeris eſſe locum.*
>
> What *Tagus*, *Hermus*, and *Pactolus* beare;
> One would conjecture to be heap'd up here.

The people thereby made ſo rich, that if a fleet of 300 ſail ſhould come into the Port fraught with all kinde of commodities, in five or ſix dayes they would be ready to buy all the lading. Situate it is on the Gulph called the *Tie*, and the dike or channell called *Amſtell*, whence it hath the name of *Amſteldam*, in Latine *Amſtelodunum*: built upon piles like *Venice*, and reſembling it in ſo many points, that it may be juſtly called the *Northern Venice*. Firſt fortified with Towers and ramparts by *Giſelbert* of *Amſtell* about 300 yeares agone. But being burnt through the envy of its neighbours, it began to be walled *anno* 1482. Grown to this wealth ſince the diverting of the trade from *Antwerp* hither, and for that cauſe inhabited by men of all Nations, and of all *Religions*, and thoſe not onely *tolerated* and *connived* at in private, but openly and freely *exerciſed* without any diſlike. A greater Confuſion (in my minde) then that of *Babel*; this being of *Religions*, that of *Languages* only. 3. *Harlem* on the Lake called *Harlem-meere*, the greateſt Town of all *Holland*, and the ſecond for dignity; well built, and very pleaſantly ſituated amongſt many goodly meadowes, near a delightfull forreſt, and round about environed with wealthy Villages: famous for the invention of printing; invented here, but perfected at *Mentz* in *higher Germany*; the firſt book which was ever printed being *Tullies Offices*. 4. *Naerden* on the *Zuider-See*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, held of the Earles of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, to whom it antiently belonged. 5. *Enchuiſen*, on the very point of the Gulph of *Zuider-See* oppoſed to *Friſeland*, from which not diſtant above two leagues. A town of great conſequence to the prince of *Orange* in the firſt revolting of theſe Countries from the King of *Spain*. For ſiding with him in that war, and ſtanding conveniently to obſtruct the paſſages by Sea unto *Amſterdam*: it compelled that City in ſhort time, by ſtopping all ſupply of victuals and other neceſſaries, to yeeld it ſelfe unto the Prince. 6. *Hoorn* on the ſame Gulf alſo, a rich town with a very good Haven, and of ſo great ſtrength by reaſon of the multitude of Dikes and channels which are round about it, that it ſeemes impregnable. 7. *Edam* upon the ſame Gulfe (or

(or *Zuider-See*) remarkable for the great number of ships which are built yeerly in it; and an incredible number of the best *Holland Cheeses* made in the Countrey round about it. 8. *Medemblick* on the Ocean, seated in the best Countrey of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattell; unwalled, but enjoying all the priviledges which a walled town hath; and fortified with a right strong Castell. *Zeland.*

The chief of the *Holland* Villages is the *Hague* or *Graven Hogue*, in Latine *Hoga Comitis*, because formerly the Court and residence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautifull Palace, founded by Earl *William* King of the *Romans*, and therein a chief and excellent Library gathered together by *John Harie* a *Canon Regular* of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the fift. In former time the residence of the *Council* for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commissioners or *Delegates* of the *confederate Provinces*, called by the name of the *States-Generall*. Now much increased in buildings, of what it was; and yet so great in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine* that it then contained 2000 housholds. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as desiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Europe*, then the second City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Brederode*, 4. *Wassenar*, which anciently gave name to three Noble families: of which none but that of *Brederode* now left for ought I can learn. Neer to the last stood the famous Fortresse called *Arx Britannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great battel upon this Shore. For making shew of a voyage into *Britain* to subdue that Island, he borded his Galley, embattelled his souldiers, caused his Trumpets to sound, gave them them the Signall, and then commanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortresse was at the fall of the *Roman* Empire overwhelmed by the Sea, the ruins whereof at a dead low water are still to be seen.

Besides these places on the firm land or *Continent*, there are some Islands which pertain to the State of *Holland*, called by the generall name of *Voorn*, because situate directly against *Holland*, *Voorn* signifying as much as *before*, or in old *English Bevorne*: but known by their distinct and more proper names of *Somersdike*, 2. *Gaurode*, 3. *Rierschille*, so called of their principall townes: and 4. *Voorn*, specially so named, the chief of them all, being of a fat and fruitfull soil, plentifull of most sorts of grain. The principall townes whereof are 1. *Briel* (which we call the *Brill*) a strong town, and the first which revolted against the *Spaniard*, *An.* 1572. *Cautionarie* to the *English* with the town of *Flusbing*; chosen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the passage to *Gertrudenberg* and the rest of *Brabant*, 2. *Gerulit*, a small town, but having a jurisdiction over many villages. There are also on the North side of *Holland* the Isles *Wyerengeh* and *Texel*; of which little memorable.

One speciall accident concerning *Holland*, I cannot over passe in silence, namely how *Margaret* Countesse of *Hennenberg*, and sister to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 years, was delivered at one birth of 365 children, the one half males, the other females, the odde one an *hermaphrodite*, christened at the Church of *Lesdune* not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, in two Basins, still to be seen the said Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utrecht*: all which immediately after dyed, and with them the mother.

The Armes of *Holland* of it self, as a State distinct, are *Or*, a Lyon *Gules*.

ZELAND, so called as some think *quasi Sea* and *Land*, consisteth of seven Islands, the remainder of 18 which the Sea hath swallowed; and in them 300 inhabited Townes. Severed from *Flanders* with the left branch or arm of the *Schelde*, which they called *Houte*, and on the East from *Brabant* with the right branch of the said River, which still keeps his name on the North from *Holland*, with the Gulph called the *Flack*; and on the West with the main Ocean from the Kingdom of *England*.

The Countrey generally more fruitfull then the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent corn, plenty of *Coriander*, and aboundance of *Meder*, used in dying: the soil also very rich in pasture, but low and marishy, which makes the air to bee very unhealthy, and the whole destitute both of fresh water and wood; the want of which last is supplyed with coal out of *England* and *Scotland*, or by *Turf* digged amongst themselves, but very sparingly for fear of weakning the Sea banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns and 100 Villages. The Islands which remain, being divided into the Western and the Eastern, are 1. *Walcheren*, (*Valachria* in *Latine*) lying to the South-west of *Sluys* in *Flanders*, the richest and most populous of all this Province, in compasse 10 *Dutch* or 40 *Italian* miles. The principall towns of which are 1. *Middleburg*, seated upon a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the streets spacious, the houses and Churches well built; inhabited by wealthy Merchants and industrious tradesmen, and of late times (since the removing of the *English* trade from *Antwerp*) a most flourishing *Emporie*. So called, because built in the midst of the Islands; or because built (as saith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named, in honour of his Grandfather *Metellus*, and by him called *Metelli Burgum*. 2. *Flusbing*, of great note for its good Port and invincible strength. One of the first Townes which the *Low-Countreymen* took from the *Spaniards*, by the diligence of *Veerst* a Seaman, and *Monsieur de Berland*, then the Bayliffe thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the *English*, as a Town of Caution: the first Governour of it being the renowned *Philip Sidney*. A poore Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the *Netherlands*, without whose licence no ship can passe either to or from the City of *Antwerp*, insomuch that if the Duke of *Alva* in the beginning of his Government had bestowed that paines in fortifying this and others of the Maritime Townes, as he did in the strengthening

Antwerp,

Zeland. *Antwerp*, and ſome mid-land Cities; he had in all probability hindred the remedileſſe revolt of theſe flouriſhing Countries. Not far off ſtandeth the Fort called the *Rammikins*, once cautionary to the *Engliſh* alſo, together with the *Brill*, the chief Town in the Iſle of *Voorn*, (an Iſle of *Holland*) all three being taken from the *Spaniard*, *An.* 1572. made Cautionary to Queene *Elizabeth* *An.* 1585. and finally ſurrendered by King *James*, to the *States* united *An.* 1616. *Robert* Lord *Liſle* (afterwards created Earl of *Leiceſter*) the brother of Sir *Philip Sidney* being then Governour of *Fluſhing*. 3. *Kamne*, or *Armyden*, an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodlieſt and moſt frequented Havens in all the World: out of which one may ſometimes ſee 500 ſail of ſhips, of great burden, ſet forwards on their voiages to ſeverall parts. 4. *Vere* or *Camfere*, ſeated in the North part of the Iſland; which once gave title to a Marqueſſe, and from the which the noble Families of the *Veres* (now and of long time Earls of *Oxford*) took demomination. So as it is no marvell that ſo many of that family have ventured their Eſtates and lives in the wars of this Countrey being their Grandmother in a manner, or their Primitive Parent, from whence tranſplanted into *England*.

2. *SOVTH-BEVERLAND*, ſituate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brrbant*, the greateſt of the Iſles of *Zeland*, heretofore 20 *Dutch* miles in compaſſe, but now much diminiſhed by the rage and fury of the Sea; by which the Town and Signeury of *Borſule*, with all the Countries round about it, was ſwallowed up, *An.* 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods and pleaſant Thickets, full of Fowl and wilde Beaſts for hawking and hunting. Chief Towns here are 1. *Romerſwall* ſeated on the Eaſt towards *Bergen op Some*, ſevered at the ſame time from the reſt of the Iſland, and made an Iſland of it ſelf; defended with continuall charge from following the ſad fate of the Town of *Borſule*. 2. *Goes*, or *Tergoes* on the Northern Coaſt, a ſtrong Town, well priviledged, and the only walled Town in all the Iſland.

3. *NORTH-BEVERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Iſle of *Showen*, in former times eſteemed the Paradiſe of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town called *Chort-Cheen*; but ſo deſtroyed by the great Sea-breach ſpoken of before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WALFERSDIKE*, lying between the two *Beverlands*, the ſmalleſt of the *Weſtern* Iſlands, as having in it no more then two Villages, but repleniſhed with good ſtore of Paſture.

And theſe are all which fall in the diviſion of the *Weſtern* Iſlands, ſo called becauſe they lie Weſtward of the River *Schelds*; as thoſe which they call the *Eaſtern* Iſlands, on the Eaſt thereof. Of which laſt there are three in number.

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the Northweſt of *Holland*, ſo neer unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitans could talk together from one ſhore to the other: but now the Sea hath ſet them at a greater diſtance. It containeth in compaſſe ſix *Dutch* miles; chief Towns wherein are 1. *Siriczee*, the antienteſt Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with beach; yet ſtill reputed for the ſecond Town of all the Province; the whole trade thereof conſiſting in Salt and *Mader*, of which it yeelds good plenty: moſt famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius* that renowned Philoſopher and Phyſitian. 2. *Brewers-Haven*, inhabited onely by Fiſhermen, not elſe remarkable.

2. *DUVELAND*, ſo named from the multitudes of *Doves* or Pigeons, ſituate between *Schouwen* and *Tolen*, in compaſſe about 4 *Dutch* miles; hath no good Town in it, but onely Countrey Villages and Gentlemens Farms. Surrounded by the Sea *An.* 1530. but by the induſtry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Bugundy* and Lord of *Soferes* in *Flanders*, recovered again; and at the exceſſive charge of the people hitherto preſerved.

3. *TOLEN*, ſo called from the chief Town of the Iſland, where the Earles *toll* was wont to be paid, whence it had the name; is ſituate over againſt the Northweſt of *Brabant*, from which disjoined by a narrow Creeke or Arm of the Sea: the ſecond Town of note being called S. *Martins Dike*, walled, but not otherwiſe conſiderable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Countrey of *Zeland*, are the Arms thereof; being *Or*, a Lyon *Gules*, riſing out of a Sea, wavie, *Argent*, & *Azure*.

WEST-FRISELAND hath on the Eaſt, *Groyning-land*, and a part of *Weſtphalen* in *High-Germany*; on the South *Over-yſſell* and the *Zuider-See*; on the North and Weſt, the main Ocean. The Countrey generally mooriſh and full of fennes, unapt for corn, but yeelding great ſtore of paſturage: which mooriſhneſſe of the ground makes the air very foggie and unhealthy; nor have they any fewell wherewith to rectifie it (except in that part of it which they call *Seven-wolden*) but turf and Cow-dung, which addes but little to the ſweetneſſe of an unſound air. Nor are they better ſtored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Countrey but that of *Leuwers*, the want of which is ſupplyed by great channels in moſt places, which doe not onely drain the Mariſhes, but ſupply them with water. Which notwithſtanding, their paſtures doe afford them a good breed of horſes fit for ſervice; plenty of Beeves both great and ſweet, the beſt in *Europe* next theſe of *England*: and thoſe in ſuch a large increaſe, that their Kine commonly bring two Calves, and their Ewes three lambs at a time.

The Countrey divided into three parts. In the firſt part called *WESTERGOE*, lying towards *Holland*, the principall towns are 1. *Harlingen*, an Haven town upon the Ocean, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Hindeloppen* on the ſame Coaſt alſo; 3. *Staveren* an *Hanſe Town*, oppoſite to *Enchuiſen*,

Enchuiſen in *Holland*; the town decayed, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle which ſecures the Haven. 4. *Francker*, a new Univerſity, or *Schola illuſtris*, as they call it. 5. *Sneck* in a low and inconvenient ſituation, but both for largeneſſe and beauty the beſt in this part of the Province, and the ſecond in eſteem of all the countrey. In *Ooſtergoe*, or the Eaſt parts lying towards *Groiningland*, the townes of moſt note are 6. *Leuwarden*, ſituate on the hinder *Leuwars*, the prime town of *Weſt-Friſeland*, and honoured with the ſupreme Court and *Chancery* hereof, from which there lyeth no *appeal*: a rich town, well built, and ſtrongly fortified. 7. *Doccum*, bordering upon *Groyning*, the birth place of *Gemma Friſius*. In *SEVEN-VVOLDEN*, or the Countrey of the Seven Forreſts, ſo called from ſo many ſmall Forreſts joining neer together, is no town of note; being long time a Woodland Countrey, and not well inhabited till of late. The number of the walled Townes is 11 in all; of the Villages or Burroughs 345. *Holland*.

To this Province belongeth the Iſle of *Schelinke*, the ſhores whereof are plentifully ſtored with *Dog-fiſh*, took by the Inhabitants in this manner. The men of the Iland attire themſelves with beaſts skins, and then fall to dancing; with which ſport the fiſh being much delighted, make out of the waters towards them; nets being pitched preſently betwixt them and the water. Which done, the men put off their diſguiſes, and the frighted fiſh haſtning towards the ſea, are caught in the toyles.

Touching the *Friſons*, heretofore poſſeſſed of this countrey, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Eaſt-Friſeland*, poſſeſſed alſo by them, and ſtill continuing in the quality of a *free Eſtate*, governed by its own Lawes and Princes: here only taking notice that the Armes of this *Friſeland* are *Azure*, ſemy of Billets *Argent*, two Lyons *Or*.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces, were the *Batavi*, and *Caninefates*, inhabiting the Iſland of the *Rhene* ſituate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *Wael*, which now containeth *South-Holland*, *Vtrecht*, and ſome part of *Gueldres*; the *Friſii* dwelling in *Weſt-Friſeland* and the North of *Holland*; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Iſles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the *Bald*, theſe countries being almoſt unpeopled by the *Norman* Piracies, were given to *Thierrie*, ſon of *Sigebert* a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the title of Earl: his Succeſſours acknowledging the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*, till the time of *Arnulph* the 4. Earl, who atturned *Homager* to the Empire. In *John* the 2. they became united to the houſe of *Hainalt*; and in *William* the 3. to that of *Bavaria*: added to the eſtates of the Dukes of *Burgundie* in the perſon of Duke *Philip* the *Good*, as appeareth by this ſucceſſion of

The EARLS of *HOLLAND*, *ZELAND*, and LORDS of *WEST-FRISELAND*.

863 1 *Thierrie* or *Theodorick* of *Aquitain*, the firſt Earl, &c.
903 2 *Thierrie* II. ſon of *Thierrie* the 1.
3 *Thierrie* the III. the ſon of *Theodorick* the 2.
988 4 *Arnulph*, who firſt made this Eſtate to be held of the Empire; ſlain in a war againſt the *Friſons*.
993 5 *Thierrie* IV. ſon of *Arnulph*.
1039 6 *Thierrie* V. ſon of *Theodorick* the 4.
1048 7 *Florence*, brother of *Thierrie* the 5.
1062 8 *Thierrie* VI. ſon of *Florence*, in whoſe minority the Eſtate of *Holland* was uſurped by *Godfrey le Boſſu* Duke of *Lorrein*, by ſome accompted of as an Earl hereof.
1092 9 *Florence* II. ſurnamed the Fat, ſon of *Thierrie* the 6.
1123 10 *Thierrie* VII. who tanned the ſtomachs of the *Friſons*.
1163 11 *Florence* III. a companion of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, in the wars of the *Holy-Land*.
1190 12 *Thierrie* VIII. ſon to *Florence* the 3.
1203 13 *William*, the brother of *Thierrie*, and Earl of *Eaſt-Friſeland*, which countrey he had before ſubdued, ſupplanted his Neece *Ada* his Brothers daughter; but after her deceaſe, dying without iſſue, ſucceeded in his owne right unto the Eſtate.
1223 14 *Florence* IV. ſon of *William*.
1235 15 *William* II. ſon of *Florence* the 4. elected and crowned King of the *Romans*; ſlain in a war againſt the *Friſons*.
1255 16 *Florence* the V. the firſt, as ſome write, who called himſelf Earl of *Zeland*: the title to thoſe Ilands formerly queſtioned by the *Flemmings*, being relinquiſhed to him on his marriage with *Beatrix* the daughter of *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*.
1296 17 *John*, the ſon of *Florence* the 5. ſubdued the rebellious *Friſons*; the laſt of the male-iſſue of *Thierrie* of *Aquitaine*.

Vtrecht and *Over-Yſſel.*

EARLS of *HAINALT, HOLLAND, &c.*

1300 18 *John* of *Aveſnes* Earl of *Hainalt*, ſon of *John* of *Aveſnes* Earl of *Hainalt* and of the Ladie *Aleide*, ſiſter of *William* the 2. and daughter of *Florence* the 4. ſucceeded as next heir in the Earldome of *Holland*, &c.

1305 19 *William* III. ſurnamed the *Good*, Father of the Lady *Philippa* wife of one *Edward* the 3.

1337 20 *William* IV. of *Holland*, and the II. of *Hainalt*, ſlain in a war againſt the *Friſons*.

1346 21 *Margaret*, ſiſter and heir of *William* the 4. and eldeſt daughter of *William* the 3. married to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Emperour of the *Germans*: forced to relinquiſh *Holland* unto *William* her ſecond ſon, and to content her ſelf with *Hainalt*.

1351 22 *William* V. ſecond ſon of *Lewis* and *Margaret*, (his elder Brother *Steven* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*) in right of *Maud* his wife, daughter and coheir of *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*, ſucceeded in the Earldome of *Leiceſter*.

1377 23 *Albert* the younger Brother of *William* the fift, fortunate in his warres againſt the *Friſons*.

1404 24 *William* VI. Earl of *Oſternant*, and by that name admitted Knight of the *Garter* by King *Richard* the 2. eldeſt ſon of *Albert*.

1417 25 *Jaqueline* only daughter of Earl *William* the ſixt, firſt marryed to *John* the 4. Duke of *Brebant*, the ſon of *Anthony* of *Burgogne*, from whom divorced under colour of Conſanguinity, ſhe was marryed after to *Humfrey* Duke of *Gloceſter*, and then to *Frank* of *Borſelles*, a private Gentleman; being unworthily handled by Duke *John* of *Burgundie*, ſurrendred her eſtates to Duke *Philip* the *Good*.

26 *Philip* the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundie*, ſon of *John* Duke of *Burgundie*, and of the Lady *Margaret* ſiſter of Earl *William* the ſixt, and daughter of *Albert*, Earls of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. ſucceeded on the reſignation of the Lady *Jaqueline*, his Couſin Germain: tranſporting theſe Eſtates to the houſe of *Burgundie*.

15. *VTRECHT.* 16. *OVER-YSSELL.*

The Biſhoprick of *VTRECT*, I mean the temporall juriſdiction and eſtate thereof, contained once all that tract of ground which now makes up the Provinces of *Vtrecht*, *Over-Yſſell*, and *Groining*. But *Groining* was long ſince diſmembred. *Vtrecht* and *Over-Yſſell* remaining parts thereof till the year 1528. when added to the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, by *Charles* the fift.

VTRECHT hath on the Eaſt *Guelderland*; on the Weſt, North, and South environed with *Holland*. The Countrey very fruitfull, much dryer then *Holland*, and ſo fitter for all ſorts of grain. It containeth 70. villages and five walled Towns, that is to ſay, 1. *Wick* at *Duerſteed*, ſituate on the middle Channell of the *Rhene* where it diverteth into the *Leck*; well built, and fortified anciently with a good Caſtle; ſuppoſed to be the *Batavoducun* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, the manſion at that time of the ſecond *Legion*. 2. *Rhenen*, upon the ſame branch or Channell, whence it hath the name, about which is digged abundance of turfe for fewell. 3. *Amesfort* on the River *Ems*, (called in *Latine Amiſia*) a fair Town and well peopled. 4. *Montfort*, upon the *Yſſell*, pleaſantly ſeated and of great ſtrength, as being anciently a frontier Town againſt the *Hollanders*. 5. *Vtrecht*, ſituate on the middle Channell of the *Rhene*, firſt called *Antonina*, from one of the *Antonines* of *Rome*; but *Dagobert* King of *France* gave it the name of *Trajectum* (or *Vltrajectum*) we now call it *Vtrecht*, becauſe there was at that time the common Ferry over the River. The town large, beautifull, and very ſumptuouſly built, having in it many goodly Churches, of which five were anciently *Collegiate*, beſides two famous Monaſteries of noble women, ſuch as thoſe ſpoken of elſewhere: the private houſes well contrived, moſt of them having goodly cellars, vaulted with wonderfull art and skill, to which the people may reſort in all times of danger. Sometimes the Seat-Royall of *Radbold* King of the *Friſons*, then of the Biſhops; honoured of old with a *Juridicall reſort* for the parts adjoyning, and now the principall of this Province. A city ſo miraculouſly ſeated amongſt walled Towns, that a man may go from hence in one day to any one of 50. walled Towns or Cities, thence equally diſtant; or to any one of 26. Towns to dinner, and come home to bed.

OVER-YSSELL, in *Latine*, *Tranſiſulana*, ſo named from its ſituation beyond the *Yſſell*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt with the *Zuider-Zee*; on the North with *Weſt-Friſeland*, on the South with *Guelderland*. The countrey very plain, and without hils, but wet, and mooriſh; affording excellent good paſturage, and not defective in corn. Divided into three parts, that is to ſay, *Tuent*, confining upon *Weſtphalen*; *Yſſelland* on the River *Yſſell*, and *Drent* beyond the River *Vecht*; in all which are contained 11. Towns and 100. Villages. The principall of which are, 1. *Deventer*, on the River *Yſſell*, ſtrong and well fortified, and withall beautifull and well peopled; an *Hanſe town*, and the chief of all this Province: firſt taken for the States by the Earl of *Leiceſter*; then

then Governour of thoſe countries for Queen *Elizabeth*, *anno* 1586. treacherouſly reyeelded to the *Spaniard* by Sir *William Stanley*; but in the year 1590. again recovered by the States. 2. *Swoll*, ſtanding on a little River which runs into the *Vidre*, anciently fortified with a double ditch and very ſtrong ramparts; an *Hanſe town*, as is alſo 3. *Campen*, ſituate on the left ſhore and fall of the *Yſſell* into the *Zuider-zee*; a fair and large town, and of very great ſtrength by reaſon of thoſe inacceſſible mariſhes amongſt which it is ſituate. Theſe three are in that part hereof which is called *Yſſelland*, and by ſome *Saland*, by whom (erroneouſly) ſuppoſed to be the countrey of the ancient *Salii*. In that part hereof which is called *Tuent*, we have the Towns of 4. *Oldenſel*, 5 *Enſchede*, 6. *Delden*, 7. *Almeloo*; of which little memorable. And in that of *Drent*, the Town and Caſtle of *Vallenhoven*, ſtanding upon the *Zuider-zee*, well ſerved with all ſorts of victuals: for which cauſe made the ordinary reſidence of the *Governour* and ſupreme Councell for the whole Province. *Guelderland.*

The ancient inhabitants of theſe two Provinces, were ſome parts of the *Batavi* and *Friſii minores* for that of *Vtrecht*; the *Bructeri*, and (as ſome ſay) the *Salii*, in *Over-yſſell*: both Provinces belonging anciently to the Epiſcopall See of *Vtrecht*, founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, who endowed it with great lands and territories; the firſt Biſhop being *Willibald* an *Engliſhman*, who converted theſe parts to *Chriſtianity*. His Succeſſours grew to ſo great power, that they were able to bring 40000. men into the field: and with great courage did maintain their eſtate and patrimony againſt the incroaching Earls of *Holland*. But at the laſt, having continued for the ſpace of 900. years, *Henry* of *Bavaria* Biſhop hereof, being extremely diſtreſſed with war by the Duke of *Gueldres*; and driven out of the City of *Vtrecht* by his own ſubjects (perhaps upon ſome humour of *Reformation*) alienated all the *temporalties* of his Biſhoprick to *Charles* the fift, *anno* 1527. And the next year, the *Imperialiſts* by one of the factions were let into *Vtrecht*; at what time both the *Eſtates* of the Countrey, and Pope *Clement* the 7. confirmed the *Alienation* made by the Biſhop. After which ſolemne Acts of theirs, the Emperour cauſed himſelf to be inveſted in this eſtate by the *States* of the Empire (for *Vtrecht* was of old an *Imperiall Fief*;) and for the better Government and adminiſtration of it, divided it into two Provinces, as it ſtill coutinueth. But what this Biſhop loſt in power, his Succeſſours not long after gained in title: the Biſhop of *Vtrecht* being made an Archbiſhop or *Metropolitane*, *anno* 1561. but by reaſon of the change of *Religion* which was then working, and the falling off of theſe Countries which ſoon after followed, he had but little joy in his new preferment.

17. *GVELDERLAND.* 18. *ZUTPHEN*, and 19. *GROINING.*

The *Dukedome* of *Guelderland*, at ſuch time as it was firſt taken in by *Charles* the fift contained under it, the Dutchy of *Guelders* properly and ſpecially ſo called, the Earldome of *Zutphen*, and the Town and *Seigneurie* of *Groining*: held by diſtinct titles, and governed ever ſince their union with the *Belgick* Provinces, as diſtinct Eſtates.

GVELDERLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with *Cleveland*, and the Earldome of *Zutphen*; on the Weſt with *Holland* and *Vtrecht*; on the North with *Over-yſſell*, and the *Zuider-Zee*; and on the South with *Brabant* and the land of *Gulick*. The countrie flat, having few hils in it, but many pleaſant and commodious woods, eſpecially that called *Echterwalt*; of corne and cattell very fruitfull.

The whole Countrey is generally divided into two parts. 1. The *Veluwe*, contained within the *Zuider-Zee*, the *Rhene*, and the *Yſſell*, the barrener of the two and the worſe inhabited, the people hereof preferring wealth before health as in other places; but affording a more pure aire and a pleaſanter dwelling then the other, the woods and forreſts well repleniſhed with moſt kinds of game. 2. The *Betuwe* (ſo called of the *Batavi* who poſſeſſed theſe parts) intercepted betwixt the middle *Rhene* and the *Wael*, exceedingly fruitfull in corn, and of ſo excellent a paſturage for the feeding of Cattell, that in the year 1570. there was a *Guelderland* Bull ſold in *Antwerp* which weighed 3200. pounds.

In both diviſions (not reckoning in the county of *Zutphen*) are contained 300. villages, and 16. walled Towns, beſides ſome fortified of late ſince the wars began. The chief whereof are 1. *Nimmegent* (in *Latine*, *Noviomagus*) an *Imperial City*, ordained by *Charles* the great to be one of the three *Seiges* of the Empire for theſe outer parts, the other two being *Theonville* in *Luxembourg*, & *Aix* or *Aken* in the land of *Gulick*. And as a Town *Imperiall* it had anciently the priviledge of *coyning* money: for which and other freedomes of immunities indulged unto it, the people did no other ſervice to the Emperours, then once a year to ſend a man to *Aix* or *Aquiſgrane*, with a Glove full of Pepper. But the town being ſold to the *Gueldrois* by *William* Earl of *Holland* and King of the *Romans* for 21000. marks of ſilver, *anno* 1248. the power of *coynage* fell to thoſe Princes; and yet the Town was brought to do better ſervice, then formerly it had done at *Aken*. The Town high mounted on the top of an hill, the *Wael* which is there large and deep running at the foot of it: rich, great, and populous, having beſides the modern fortifications an ancient Caſtle with ſo goodly a proſpect, that from thence one may behold the beſt part of the countrey; built, as ſome ſay, by *Julius Ceſar* to command thoſe parts. Under the juriſdiction of it are 2. *Tiel*, and 3. *Bomel*, two walled Towns, both ſituated on the *Wael*, both ſtrong, and having many rich villages under their command; and 4. *Gheut*, on the

Zutphen. *Wael* alſo, an unwalled Town, but having all the priviledges which the walled Towns have. Not far off, at the firſt meeting of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, ſtands the ſtrong Fort of S. *Andrews*, raiſed by the Archduke *Albert* to command the paſſage of thoſe Rivers; but in the year 1600. taken in by *Maurice* Count of *Naſſaw* (after Prince of *Orange*) and ever ſince garriſoned by the *States* to ſecure that paſſage. 5. *Riuermond*, ſeated on the mouth of the *Ruer*, where it falleth into the *Maes*; a beautifull and well peopled City, ſtrong by Art and Nature, and ſeated in a fruitfull countrey: heretofore of the Diocele of *Leige* (as *Nimmegen* anciently of *Colen*) but made a See Epiſcopall by King *Philip* the 2; *anno* 1559. This is the ſecond *Capitall* City of *Guelderland*, and hath under the juriſdiction of it, 6. *Venlo*, a ſtrong Town on the *Maes*, on which the Duke of *Cleve* yeelded himſelf to *Charles* the fift, *anno* 1543. 7. *Gueldres*, heretofore of ſuch reputation that it gave name to all the countrey; and well it doth deſerve to do ſo ſtill, being the only Town in all this Dukedome which neither firſt nor laſt hath been won by the *Hollanders*; but ſtill preſerved themſelves in their obedience to their natural Princes. 8. *Strael*, or *Straelen*, a well fortified piece, but which, according to the chances of War, hath oft changed its maſters. 9. *Arnhem*, the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*, and in thoſe times the manſion of the 10 *Legion*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, not above a mile from the great Channell, which *Druſus* to keep his ſouldiers from idleneſſe cauſed them to dig, to let the waters of the *Rhene* into thoſe of the *Yſſell*; called therefore by the Ancients *Foſſa Druſiana*, by the moderns *Yſſell-Dort*. The Town large and well-built; the ordinary reſidence heretofore of the Dukes of *Guelderland*, who had here their Chancery, and other ſupreme Courts of juſtice. This is the third Capitall City of *Gueldres* (anciently of the Dioceſe of *Vtrecht*) and hath under the juriſdiction of it, beſides divers Villages, 10. *Wagheninghen* on the *Rhene*, the ſame which *Tacitus* cals *Vada*. 11. *Harderwick* on the *Zuider-See*, burnt to the ground *anno* 1503. but ſince reedified, and now more ſtrong and beautfull then ever formerly. 12. *Hattem* upon the *Yſſell*, a good town of war, but not elſe obſervable.

Within the limits of this Dukedome ſtands the Town and County of *Culemberg*, erected into a County by King *Philip* the ſecond, by reaſon of the fair territory which belonged unto it, formerly held in Fee of the Dukes of *Guelderland*, but otherwiſe not reckoned as a Member of it. 2. The Town and Earldome of *Buren*, ſituate on the River *Liughe*, having a ſtrong Caſtle anciently, and a goodly territory; holden immediately of the Empire as a *Fief Imperiall*. The patrimony of the valiant *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, who died *anno* 1549. after whoſe death it fell to *Philip* of *Naſſaw* eldeſt ſonne of *William* Prince of *Orange*, and *Anne* the daughter of the ſaid *Maximilian*.

ZVTPHEN, accompted formerly for the 4. *Capitall* City of *Guelderland*, now a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt with that part of *Guelderland* which is called the *Veluwe*; on the North with *Over-yſſell*; on the South with *Cleveland*. It containeth 8. walled Towns beſides many Villages; that is to ſay, 1. *Doetecum*, ſtanding on the old *Yſſell*, riſing out of *Weſtphalen*. 2. *Doesburg*, where the old *Yſſell* falleth into the new *Yſſell*, or the trench called *Foſſa Druſiana*, communicating thereunto its name. 3. *Brookhurſt*, a County of it ſelf, which anciently had its particular Governour. 4. *Lochen* upon the River *Berkell*. 5. *Yſheerenbergue*, a Town and County. 6. *Groll* taken by the Prince of *Orange* for the States Confederate, *anno* 1627. 7. *Brederword*, a town of war, and ſubject to the change of Maſters, as ſuch places are. 8. *Zutphen*, or *Zuidſen*, ſo called of the Southern ſituation of it amongſt the Fennes, on the right ſhore of the *Yſſell*, where it receiveth in it the River *Berkel*, which runs through the Town. A Town indifferently well built, as well for private as publick edifices; a diſtinct ſtate in *Civill* matters, but in ſpirituall ſubject (in former times) to the Biſhop of *Munſter*: a thing obſervable, and not to be paralleld elſewhere, that the four chief Towns and quarters of one Province only, ſhould appertain (as here in *Guelderland*) to four ſeverall *Dioceſes*. Of which there may ſome reaſon be aſſigned for *Zutphen*, in regard it is a State more ancient then that of *Guelderland* it ſelf; and not depending anciently on the fortunes of it: united to it by the marriage of *Otho* of *Naſſaw*, the firſt Earl of *Guelderland*, with *Sophia* daughter and heir of *Wickman* the laſt Earl of *Zutphen*. So as this Earldome ended when that firſt began. After this it continued ſubject to the Earls and Dukes of *Gueldres*, till the revolt of *Holland* and the other Provinces from the King of *Spain*, at what time it was beſieged for the *States* by the Earl of *Leiceſter*; at the ſiege whereof fell that gallant Gentleman Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom our *Britiſh Epigrammatiſt* thus verſifieth.

Digna legi ſcribis, facis & digniſſima ſcribi;
Scripta probant doctum te tua, facta probum.

Thou writ'ſt things worthy *reading*, and didſt doe
Things worthy *writing* too.
Thy Acts thy valour ſhow
And by thy works we do thy learning know.

And though upon the loſſe of that gallant man (nephew and heir unto that Earl) the ſiege was raiſed at the preſent; yet was it re-enforced again *anno* 1190. and the Town then taken; continuing ever ſince in the confederacy of the *States united*.

GROI-

Groining-land.

GROINING-LAND, hath on the east *East-Friseland*, on the west *West-Friseland*, on the North the main Ocean, on the South *Over-yssell*; so wedged in as it were betwixt both *Frislands*, that some hold it to be but a part of the West. It containeth under it the Country called the *Ommel nds*, (corruptly for the *Emmelands*, as I conjecture, because lying along the River *Ems*) and therein 145 Burroughs and Villages: the chief whereof are 1. *Dam*, near the *Ems*, bordering on *East-Friseland*: 2 *Keykirk*: 3. *Old-Haven*, standing on the Sea. As for the town of *Groyning* it self, it is rich, great, and very well built, situate amongst divers small streames which run through it; and having also divers Channels for conveyance of waters, which addes much to the safety and strength thereof. A town of great jurisdiction, both within, and without, judging absolutely without *appeals* in causes, both Civill, and Criminall; in *Spirituall*, subject heretofore to the Bishop of *Munster*, till made one of the new Bishopricks by King *Philip* the second, *anno* 1559. And though the Prince in *Civill* causes had his officer or Lieutenant there; yet in *Criminall* the town was *Soveraign*, and granted pardons as *Soveraign* of the whole estate, paying to the Prince for all duties yeerly, but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country anciently belonged to the Bishops of *Utrecht*, by whose negligence in defending them, they submitted their estate to the Dukes of *Guelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxonie* laying some claim to it, disturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Ezardus* the Earl of *East-Friseland* possessed himself of it; but not able to make good his unjust possession, sold his estate therein to *Gueldres*, *anno* 1514. to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the yeer 1536. they put themselves under the command of *Charles* the fift, but with the reservation of all their priviledges, and ancient Liberties: for preservation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the *Spaniard*, they confederated with the rest of the *united States*, *anno* 1594. and so still continue.

The antient inhabitants of these Countries were the *Menapii* and *Sicambri*, very valiant people possessing *Guelderland*, and the *Majores Frisii*, which were planted in *Groyning*, and the rest of *Friseland*. Of these the *Sicambri* were accompted the most valiant people, uniting with other nations in the name of *French*, and by that name, possessing with the rest of those Nations, the mighty Empire of the West. In the division whereof, by the posterity of *Charles* the *Great*, these Countries were first part of the Kingdome of *Austrasia*, or *East-France*, afterwards of the *Germane* Empire: governed at the first by *Guardians*, or Protectours, created by the people in the reign of *Charles* the *Bald*: the two first being *Wickard*, and *Lupold* (or *Leopold*) two Brethren; who fixing their chief Seat in the Castle of *Gueldres*, occasioned the whole Country to be called *Guelderland*. But they, and their successours, by what name or title soever called, were in effect but *Provinciall Officers*, accomptable to the Emperours for their administration; the first *free Prince* hereof being *Otho* of *Nassaw*, who having to his first wife, the Lady *Aleide*, daughter of *Wickard*, the last *Guardian*; was by the Emperour *Henry* the third made first Earl of *Guelderland*: adding thereto the State of *Zutphen*, by a second marriage, as is said before. In *Reinold* the ninth Earl it was made a *Dukedome* by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *anno* 1339. sold by Duke *Arnold* (justly incensed at his ungracious son *Adolp*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, for 92000 *Florens* of ready money, and an Annuall pension, *anno* 1472. But notwithstanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charles*) possessed himself of it, and left it unto *Charles* his son; who finally surrendred it unto *Charles* the fift, *anno* 1547.

EARLS and DUKES of *GVELDERLAND*.

1079 1 *Otho* of *Nassaw* the first Earl.
2 *Gerard*, the son of *Oth*, by his first wife *Aleide*.
1131 3 *Henry*, the son of *Gerard*.
1162 4 *Gerard* II. son of *Henry*.
1180 5 *Otho* II. brother of *Gerard*.
1202 6 *Gerard* III. son of *Otho* the second.
1229 7 *Otho* III. son of *Gerard*, who walled the towes of *Ruermond*, *Arnhem*, *Bonel*, *Goch*, *Wagenitgen*, and *Harderwick*.
1271 8 *Reinold*, son of *Otho* the third, taken and imprisoned till his death, by
1326 9 *Rainold* II. his own son, created the first Duke of *Gueldres*, by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, at *Francfort*, Anno 1339. liberall to the poor, and a great Patron of the *Muses*.
1343 10 *Rainold* III. son of *Rainold* the 2d, molested with continuall wars with his brother *Edward*, by whom taken, and imprisoned till his dying day.
1371 11 *Edward*, the son of *Rainold* the second, by *Eleanor* the daughter of *Edward* the third of *England*, his second wife, dyed the same yeer with his brother; the last of the male issue of *Otho* of *Nassaw*.
1371 12 *Mary*, (by some called *Joan*) Sister of *Edward*, by the same venter, and wife of *William* Earl of *Gulick*.
13 *William*, son of *William* Duke of *Gulick*, and *Mary* of *Gueldres*, admitted Knight of the *Garter* by King *Richard* the second.
14 *Rainold* IV. the brother of *William*.
15 *Arnold* of *Egmond*, son of *John* Lord of *Egmond*, and *Mary* his wife, daughter of *Joan*, the sister of *Rainold*, and *William*, the two last Dukes, succeeded in the estate of *Gueldres*; taken, imprisoned

Guelderland.

imprisoned, and most barbarously handled by his own son *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke of *Burgundie*, he sold to him his estates of *Gueldres*, and *Zutphen*, to be injoyed by him after his decease, *anno* 1472.

1473 16 *Adolph*, the wicked son of *Arnold*, dispossessed of his estate by the said agreement which Duke *Charles* enjoyed for his life; after the death of the said *Charles* was restored to liberty by the *Gauntois*, *anno* 1467. and made the Generall of their forces against *Lewis* the eleventh.

1477 17 *Charles*, son of *Arnold*, after long wars with the Princes of the houses of *Burgundy* and *Austria*, pretending the sale and legacy of Duke *Arnold*, to *Charles* the *Warlike*; surrendred his estates unto *Charles* the fift, to be enjoyed by him after his decease, if he left no issue. According to which contract, the Emperor *Charles* succeeded him in *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*, *anno* 1538. being the year of his decease: after that time accompted in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Armes hereof were Quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lyon *Or*, crowned *Gules*; for the Dukedome of *Guelderland*; 2. *Azure*, a Lyon *Gules*, for the Earldome of *Zutphen*.

Thus have we seen a Country, which at the first erecting of these Estates, was nothing in a manner but *bogs* and *marishes*; and at the best, but a continuall Wilderness of woods and forrests: by the great *providence* of the Princes, and extreme industry of the People, made the most populous, best planted, and the wealthiest Estate (for the bigness of it) in the whole habitable world. And we have seen those severall Estates and *Principalities*, by Marriages, and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the house of *Burgundy*: under the Princes of which great and illustrious Family, inferiour to no Kings of *Christendome* for Power and Riches, especially Duke *Philip* the *Good*; the subjects hereof did so abound in wealth and plenty, that *Philip de Comines* who then lived, affirmeth that this Country seemed like the *land of Promise*. Some thought there was a purpose in this Duke *Philip*, of erecting these estates into a Kingdome; diverted from it by the difference and variety of Lawes and Priviledges, which those people severally lived under; not to be brought without great difficulty and distaste, to one forme of Government: yet might have done it, if he would, as himself openly affirmed to the Embassadours of King *Lewis* the 11. But *Charles* his son being more bent on the designe, negotiated to that end with the Emperour *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, *anno* 1473, and doubtlesse had obtained his purpose, upon the marriage of his daughter with *Maximilian*, *Fredericks* son (which was then propounded) had not his rash ingagement against the *Swissers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the course of his projects; which projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had but for that engagement, he had extended his dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both sides of it, from the *Alpes* unto the *German* Ocean; and been the most considerable Prince at that time in *Christendome*: all *Elsats* in high *Germany*, being sold, or mortgaged to him by the Duke of *Austria*, the Dukedome of *Lorrain* at his mercy; besides, the hopes he had of the Earldome of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reny*, which would have opened him a way to the *Mediterranean*: he being dead, the Government continued, as before it was; each Province having its *distinct Lawes* and living according to their ancient *Priviledges*, till the attempt of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*; most resolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown, to cancell all their priviledges, and new mould the Estate, according to his own will and pleasure: occasioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country; and the setting up of a new Estate, opposite unto him, and destructive of his interesse in it. But before we come unto this change, we will first look upon the Princes Power, Revenue, and other things considerable touching this Estate whilest it stood entire under the Princes of the house of *Burgundie*, and

LORDS *of* BELGIVM.

1369 1 *Philip* the *Hardie*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the first great raiser of this House.

1404 2 *John* the *Proud*, Duke of *Burgundie*, &c.

1419 3 *Philip* the *Good*, added to his estate the Dukedomes of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the *Marquisat*, and *Machlin*, by the death of his cousin *Philip*; the Earldomes of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and the Lordship of *West-Friseland*, by the resignation and death of the Countesse *Jaqueline*, whose next Heir he was; the Dukedome of *Luxemburg*, and the Earldome of *Namur*, which he bought for money.

1467 4 *Charles* the *Warlike*, who bought the Estates of *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*; and held them peaceably all his life.

1476 5 *Mary*, the daughter and Heir of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian*, son of the Emperour *Frederick*; from whom King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* took the Dukedome of *Burgundie*, and the greatest parts of the Counties of *Burgundie*, and *Artois*; unfortunately killed with a fall from her horse, and an unseasonable modesty in not suffering the *Chirurgians* to dresse her wound; the hurt which she had taken being in her thigh.

1482 6 *Philip* III. sonne of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, to whom *Charles* the eight of *France* restored all the places in *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundie* taken by his Father: married *Joane* daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, Kings of *Spain*. 1506

1506 7 *Charles* II. Arch-Duke of *Austria*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of that name the fift; added to his Eſtate in theſe Countries, the Dukedome of *Guelderland*, the Earldome of *Zutphen*, the Lordſhips of *Utrecht*, *Over-yſſell*, and *Groyning*. *Guelderland.*

1558 8 *Philip* IV. of *Belgium*, and the II of *Spain*, invading theſe Countries againſt their priviledges, was by a great part of them rejected from being their Prince, *anno* 1581. which made him after a long and a bloody war, to ſurrender all his intereſſe in them to

1599 9 *Iſabella Clara Eugenia* his daughter, and *Albert* Archduke of *Auſtria*, whom he married to her: during whoſe Government, a truce for 12 years was made, and in the preface to that Truce the *Confederate Eſtates* declared to be treated with as a *Free Eſtate*, to whom the Kings of *Spain* could pretend no title.

16 10 *Philip* V. of *Belgium*, and the IV. of *Spaine* on the decreaſe of the Arch-Ducheſſe *Iſabella* his Aunt, ſucceeded in the poſſeſſion of ſome, and the title unto all the *Belgick* Provinces.

The ordinary *Revenue* of theſe Countries to the Dukes of *Burgundie*, and after to the Kings of *Spain*, before the breach, were eſtimated at three millions of Crowns yearly, which was more then any King in Chriſtendome at thoſe times received; the *French* onely excepted: the very meaſuring of corn in the City of *Antwerp*, being farmed yearly for 100000 Crowns in ready mony; But the *extraordinary* was far greater: the *Eſtates* of theſe Countries in the year 1550 granting to *Charles* the fift an Aide, which they call the *Noventale*, amounting to 150000 crowns a moneth; and yet the Provinces of *Luxenbourg*, *Limbourg*, *Gueldres*, and *Groyning*, were not rated to it: And it is ſaid, that *Philip* the ſecond at his firſt coming to the *Eſtate*, was preſented with a grant of 40 millions of *Florens*, to be paid in few years. So that theſe Countries were the true *Cofrelative* of both his *Indies*: the loſſe of which, before the making of the truce, *anno* 1609. coſt him above 100 millions of Crownes, and the loſſe of 400000 men.

The *Forces* of theſe Princes by Land, may beſt be ſeen in the expedition of *Charles* (then Earl of *Charolois*) againſt *Lewis* the eleventh, whom Duke *Philip* the *Good* his father furniſhed to that enterpriſe with 9000 Archers, and 1400 men of Armes, every one of which had five or ſix great horſes attending on him: and at his ſetting forward, was told by his Father, (never accompted for a *Braggart*) that if he fell into any danger, he ſhould not be abandoned for the want of 100000 fighting men. The ſaid Duke having thus ſent away his ſon, and being provoked by the indignities of thoſe of *Leige*, and *Dinand*, who revolted from him: ſuddenly raiſed an Army of 28000 horſe, and a proportionable number of foot, for the chaſtiſement of that proud and rebellious people. And *Charles* himſelf, ſucceeding on the death of his Father in his unproſperous attempt upon the *Switzers*, had no leſſe then 80000 men at the ſiege of *Morat*. As for their power at Sea, I find not that they kept any ſtanding Navy, nor needed they ſo to doe, as the caſe ſtood with them, conſidering that when they had occaſion of any ſuch ſervice, they uſed to take up all the Ships which they found in their harbours (of which there never wanted good ſtore) employing as many as they pleaſed, and diſmiſſing the reſt.

The principall order of *Knighthood* ordained by theſe Princes, was that of the *Golden Fleece*, firſt inſtituted by Duke *Philip* the *Good* (in imitation of the Order of S. *George* in *England*) *anno* 1430. The name and fancy borrowed, as ſome conceive, from *Gedeons Fleece*; from *Jaſons Fleece*, as others think; but more probably from the *Golden Fleeces* of *England*, which brought him in ſo much gold and treaſure in the way of cuſtome. Their Habit is a Collar of Gold interlaced with irons ſeeming to ſtrike fire out of a Flint, (*ex ferro flammam* being the word:) at the end whereof hung the *Toiſon d'Or*, or *Fleece of Gold*. Their number at the firſt was but 25. (which is the number of Knights of the *Engliſh Garter*) increaſed afterwards by the ſame Duke *Philip* unto thirty one. *Charles* the firſt raiſed them to fifty one: And now the King of *Spain* hath aſſumed a liberty of making as many as he pleaſeth: this being the onely *Military*, or *Civill* Order of which thoſe Kings have the beſtowing; the orders of *Alcantara*, *Calatrava*, and the reſt of *Spaniſh* inſtitution, being rather *Religious*, and *Monaſticall*, at the beſt but mixt. Saint *Andrewes* day, the day of the Inſtallation.

In this great Pomp and Glory did theſe Princes live, as long as they continued in good termes with the ſubject Provinces being maſters of more goodly *Jewels*, magnificent furniture for their houſes, & coſtly moveables then any 3 of the greateſt Princes in all *Europe*. And on the other ſide, the ſubjects whilſt they lived in duty under ſo great Princes, attained unto the height of all worldly happineſſe: in their *Apparell* exceſſively gorgeous, in their Feaſts and Banquets over-ſumptuous, in their *Manners* diſſolute, vices which uſually accompany that kind of felicity. An happineſſe too great to continue long. By the ambition and violence of *Charles* the *Warlike*, they were firſt plunged into a war againſt *Lewis* the eleventh, of which they did not only feel the preſent miſeries, but loſt all the Towns and Holds which they had in *Picardy*, with the whole Dutchy of *Burgundy*. And by a like, but better grounded Ambition of *Charles* the fift, they were exerciſed in continuall wars againſt the *French*, who miſerably harrowed, and ranſacked the Countries of *Luxemburg*, *Hainelt*, and *Artois*, bordering next unto them. *Charles* at his death commended them to the eſpeciall care of *Philip* his ſon, adviſing him to uſe them kindly, as thoſe that were the chief ſupporters of his State and Glory: adding, that if he ſhould deal otherwiſe with them, it would prove the ruine of his Fortunes. And on the other ſide, the People, to obtain his favour, preſented him at his firſt entrance on the Government,

vernment, with a grant of 40 millions of *Florens*, as before was ſaid. But he tranſported with ambition, and a *Catholick* zeal, not onely forgot their love, but his fathers counſell; and had no ſooner concluded on a peace with *France*, effected by the treaty of *Cambray*, *anno* 1559. but preſently he caſt his thoughts on the ſubjection of this people to his will and pleaſure. For they were ſo fortified with Priviledges, which their former Princes had granted, and the latter had been ſworn to obſerve, that he wanted much of that abſolute and uncontrollable command, which he ſtrongly aimed at. Some of which Priviledges were, that the Prince could place no ſtranger amongſt them, with juriſdiction over their Eſtates and perſons, in Offices of war or juſtice. 2. The Prince could give nothing to the *Clergy*: nor 3 leavy any *ſubſidies*, without the *States* of the Country. But the main *Prerogative* was, that if the Prince by violence or wrong, did infringe any of the ſaid *Charters* and *Franchiſes*, the people after the declaration thereof made might goe to election of a new Prince. This not a little grieved the *Spaniards*, that ſuch baſe and unworthy people (for ſo they eſteemed them) ſhould in ſuch liberty poſſeſſe ſo brave and rich a Country; their King bearing no title of Majeſty, or abſolute command over them. Beſides, the *Reformation* of *Religion*, which then began to grow to ſome ſtrength, moved the King to reduce them back to the Church of *Rome*, by the power and terrour of the *Inquiſition*; and by the erecting of ſome new *Epiſcopall* Sees amongſt them (for before there were but three in all) to ſettle ſome more conſtant courſe of *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline*: Againſt both which, when the people violently oppoſed, he then reſolved of bringing them by *Spaniſh* Rhetorick (that is, by the Sword and the Cannon) to their old obedience. To theſe ends he ſent the Duke of *Alva*, an old and expert Captain (as having 60 years been a Souldier) with a puiſſant Army to be his *Vice-Roy* among them. He alſo gave him a Commiſſion of that large extent, that he might place and diſplace whom he would, and execute all ſuch as he could finde oppoſite to his deſignes. At that time the two chief men among them were the Prince of *Orenge*, and Count *Egmont*: the firſt more potent with the people, the latter, with the Souldiers. Had theſe two joyned together, they might eaſily have prevented D. *Alva's* entrance; but *Egmont* was ſo ſoothed up with Letters from *Spain*, that he believed not the Intelligence which the Prince had concerning the Dukes Commiſſion. The Earl exhorted the Prince to ſubmit himſelf to the pleaſure of the King, and ſo to prevent the ruine of his houſe: The Prince deſired the Earl to maintain the Liberty of the Country; as for himſelf, *He had rather be a Prince without an Houſe, then a Count without an Head.* Being thus reſolved, the Prince retires to his friends of *Naſſaw*, in high *Germany*; the Earl ſtayeth to congratulate the entrance of the new Governour: who had no ſooner ſetled himſelf, but he intrapped the Counts of *Horne* and *Egmond*, and beheaded them, *anno* 1567. Being thus rid of theſe two, with diverſe others of good quality, who living would have much hindred his proceedings; he quartered his *Spaniards* in the Townes and Provinces, ſpoiled the people, not of their *Priviledges* onely, but their *Liberty*. Among the *Reformed* he brought in the bloudy *Inquiſition*; and indeed ſo tyrannically did he behave himſelf, that the people were forced to a *defenſive war*, as well for their lives, as ſubſtance. This was a war of *State*, not *Religion*; the moſt part of the *Hollanders* being Papiſts, at the time of their taking Armes. During theſe troubles, the Prince of *Orenge* was not idle; but he in one place, and Count *Lodewick* his brother, in another, kept Duke *Alva* imployed; though divers times not with ſuch fortunate ſucceſſe as they did expect. In the year 1572, *Fluſhing* was ſurpriſed by *Voorſt*, and *Berland*, as we have before ſaid. So alſo was the *Brill* in *Voorne*, an Iſland of *Holland*, by the *Count de la March*, and not long after, all *Holland*, except *Amſterdam*, followed the fortune and ſide of the Prince, together with all the towns of *Zeland*, *Midleburg* excepted, *Anno* 1573. Duke *Alva* being recalled, *Don Lewis de Requiſens* was appointed Governour; during whoſe rule many of the *Belgians* abandoned their Country: ſome flying into *Germany*, others into *France*, moſt into *England*. After his death, and before the arrivall of *Don John*, the Priuce and his party recovered ſtrength and courage again, till the coming of the Prince of *Parma*, who brought them into worſe caſe then ever. Yet *anno* 1581. they declare by their writings directed to all people, that *Philip* of *Spain* was fallen from the *Government*: and take a new oath of the People, which bound them never to return to the *Spaniſh* obedience. This done, they elect *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, heir apparent to the *French* King, and then in no ſmall hopes of marrying Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, to be their Lord. But he intending rather to ſettle a Tyranny in himſelf, then to drive it from the *Spaniard*, attempted *Antwerp*, put his men into the town, but was by the valour of the *Burgers* ſhamefully repulſt. Shame of this ignoble enterpriſe, eſpecially grief for its ill ſucceſſe, took him out of the world. About which time, the eſtate of theſe Countries was thus by this *Hieroglyphick* expreſſed. A Cow repreſented the body of *Belgium*: there ſtood the King of *Spain* ſpurring her, the Queen of *England* feeding her, the Prince of *Orenge* milking her, and Duke *Francis* plucking her back by the tail, but ſhe foul'd his fingers. During his unfortunate Government, *Parma* prevailed in all places, eſpecially after the death of *William* Prince of *Orenge*, treacherouſly ſlain with a Piſtoll, *anno* 1584. Now were the poor *Hollanders* truly miſerable; deſperate of pardon from their Prince, and having none to lead them, none to protect them, but ſuch as were likely to regard their own profit more then theirs. *England* was the only ſanctuary they had now left: to which they ſue, offering the Queen thereof the ſoveraignty of their Provinces, who had, if not a true, yet a plauſible title to them: As being generally deſcended from *Edward* the third, and *Philip* his Wife, who was ſiſter, and (as ſome ſay) Heir to *William* Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, *&c.* If *Margaret*, from whom the right of *Spain* is derived, were daughter to Earl *William*, then was our Queen to ſucceed after *Philip*, who was rejected: if that *Margaret* were (as many write) his younger ſiſter, then was

our

our Queen the undoubted Heir: her predeceſſour *Philippa* being Earl *Williams* eldeſt ſiſter. But that Heroick Queen not diſputing the right of the title, nor intending to herſelf any thing, ſave the honour of relieving her diſtreſſed neighbours; and providing for her own eſtate, by this diverſion; took them into her protection. Under which the *Belgian* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly (I will not now ſtand upon the particulars) that before they would hearken to any treaty of peace, they forced the King of *Spain* to this concluſion, that he treated with them as with a free Eſtate, abſtracted from all right and title, which he might pretend unto the places which they were poſſeſſed of. This peace was concluded *anno* 1609. ſince which time, they have kept Garriſons well diſciplined, and as well paid: ſo that theſe Countries have in theſe late dayes been the *Campus Martius*, or School of defence for all Chriſtendome, to which the youth of all Nations repair to ſee the manner of Fortifications, and learn the art of war. Thus did they for 40 years hold the ſtaffe againſt a moſt puiſſant Monarch, and in the end capitulated with great advantage; that it is obſerved, that whereas all other Nations grow poor by war, theſe only grow rich. Whereupon it is remarkable to conſider into what follies and extremities Princes run, by uſing their people to the warre. The Kings of *France* place moſt of their hopes in their *Cavalrie*, becauſe in policie they would not that the Vulgar ſhould be exerciſed in arms. *Lycurgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedemonians*, that they ſhould never fight often with one enemie: the breaking whereof, made the *Thebans* a ſmall Common-wealth, to be their equals in power. The Turks won the vaſt Empire they now poſſeſſe, by making many and ſpeedy wars. But now that *policy* being worn out of faſhion, we ſee that (to omit *Perſia*) the little and diſtracted Kingdom of *Hungarie*, hath for 200 years reſiſted their Forces. So was it between the Dukes of *Auſtria* and the *Switzers*; and ſo it is betwixt the *Spaniard* and *Low-country* men, who formerly being accounted a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the wars; by their continuall combating with the *Spaniard*, are become ingenious, full of action, and great managers of cauſes appertaining to fights either by Sea or Land. We may hereby alſo perceive what advantage a ſmall *State* gaineth by *fortifying* places and paſſages; there being nothing which ſooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince, then to *beleaguer* a well fortified town: for that herein he conſumeth his time, and commonly loſeth his men, credit, and money, as the *Romans* before *Numantia*; the great *Turk* in *Malta*, and *Charls* of *Burgundie* before *Nancie*. For where war is drawn out of the field unto the wals, the *Mattock* and *Spade* being more neceſſary then the *Sword* and *Spear*, there the valour of the aſſailant is little available, becauſe it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought theſe ſeverall *Eſtates* and Provinces into one hand; ſo now we have broke them into two, the one part continuing in obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themſelves as a *State* apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, (ſome few towns excepted) the *Marquiſate* of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Artois* and *Flanders* (except only S. *Ivjs*) and the Lorſhip or *Signeurie* of *Machlyn*; with many places of importance in the Dutchie of *Gueldres*, to countervail the towns with-held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Countrie, and more fruitfull in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing; but as much inferiour to the other in power and riches by reaſon of their ſtrength in ſhipping, by which they have the command at Sea, and thereby draw the whole trade of Chriſtendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amſterdam*, and other towns of their confederacie.

For the government of theſe Provinces, there is a *Regent* ſent from the Court of *Spain*, whoſe authoritie is generally as great as that of the Kings, ſave that all matters of moment paſſe under the Kings name, and that all Officers of any great truſt and moment are appointed by him: and that all laws, decrees, ſentences and negotiations are diſpatched in his name. For the aſſiſtance of the *Regent* there is a *Privy Councell*, a *Councell of State*, and a *Councell of Finances*, by whom all things are ordered which concern the publick, the *Regents* authoritie cooperating and concurring with them: without which, though they may conſult, they can execute nothing. And for the governance and well ordering of the ſeverall *Provinces*, there is in every one of them a Lieutenant, or Provinciall Governour, ſubordinate to the *Regent* and accomptable to him: and in each Province a particular Councell held in the Kings name, conſiſting of more or leſſe Counſellors (as the bigneſſe of the Province is) for the moſt part *Doctors* or Licentiates of the *Civill-Laws*, with a Preſident as the head thereof: which in ſome places they call the *Parliament* after the manner of the *French*, and in ſome the *Chancerie*. To theſe Courts all the Subjects do reſort for juſtice in cauſes both *Criminall* and *Civill*: to theſe are brought *appeals* from inferiour *Judicatures*, ſuch as the Courts of great Towns, and particular *Franchiſes*: and from theſe lieth an *appeal* to the great Councel at *Machlyn*, ſupreme and ſuperintendent unto all the reſt.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwiſe is of publick moment, the Regent ſendeth out letters in the Kings name to command the *Eſtates*, that is to ſay, the *Clergy*, the *Nobility*, and the principall *Towns* of every Province (except thoſe of *Luxembourg*, *Guelders*, *Weſt-Friſeland* and *Over-yſſel*, who by ſpeciall priviledge cannot be called out of their own countries) to come before him. The place of their Aſſembly is for the moſt part at *Bruxels*, the Court and reſidence of the *Regent*, becauſe the *Brabanters* are alſo priviledged not to be ſummoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the *States* aſſemble not all together, but thoſe of one Province at a time, ſo one after another: to whom the Preſident or ſome one of the Councell of *State* propoſeth in the Princes name, that which he demandeth: to which if any town oppoſe, then all which the reſt have done is of no effect; nothing being granted by the Deputies or *States* of

any

any Province, but with this condition, that all the reſt of the *Eſtates* do agree unto it. Without this punctuall conſent of all parties intereſſed, the Prince can impoſe nothing, by their Laws, upon the Subject, nor alter any thing at all in the publick government.

And as the people are thus priviledged in regard of the Prince, ſo are the Princes and Prelates priviledged in regard of the Pope: it being agreed upon between them,

1. That the Prince is to give *Clergie-Benefices*, and the Pope to confirm them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-perſon may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to ſend his Delegates or Commiſſioners into the Countrie.
3. The Pope not to give a *Benefice* nor grant a Pardon, nor ſend a *Bul* into the Country without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no *Clergie man* can buy lands or other immoveables without the Princes conſent. And
5. That the Prince hath power to viſit the *Clergie*, to ſee if they be well governed or not, and if they be not, to reform the abuſes.

Great priviledges, if conſidered rightly, greater then which few Proteſtant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the *Revenue* raiſed by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Eſtate, it is not eaſie to be gueſſed at: and of that which is, there comes but little to his Coffers. The expences of his Court there, is as great as ever under any of the former *Regents*, and his charge of entertaining Souldiers for his towns and garriſons, greater then before. Nor doth it now ſtand with reaſon of *State* to lay any arbitrarie taxes upon the people, leſt he exaſperate them to a ſecond *Rebellion*, or ſtartle them to ſome new *Confederacies* againſt his quiet.

Under the government of the *Confederate Eſtates*, are the Dukedome of *Guelderland*, excepting ſome few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniard*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Zutphen*, the *Seigneuries* of *Weſt-Friſeland*, *Utrecht*, *Over-Iſſell*, *Groining*, the town of *Sluyes*, with the Iſle of *Caſſandt* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchie of *Brabant*. This is the leſſer part by far, and far inferiour to the other in regard of the ſoil, but the more populous of the two, and by the induſtry and great trading of the people, the more rich and powerfull. Governed after their own old Laws, by the *particular Eſtates* of every Province not yet united into one entire body of a Comonwealth: ſaving that for the better preſervation of their *confederacie*, the Commiſſioners of the ſeverall Provinces doe conſult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States Generall*.

The *Eſtates* of the *particular Provinces*, elected out of the principall towns and places of moſt importance, doe order the affairs thereof according to their ancient *priviledges*, rights, and cuſtoms, as well by themſelves as by their Colleagues and Officers whom they doe appoint, and that as well for matters of *State*, as in point of *Juſtice*. For adminiſtration of the which, the *Governour*, *Preſident*, and *Counſellors* of the *Provinciall* Courts, have the cognizance of all caſes both *civill* and *criminal*; and in all cauſes of *appeal* from inferiour Courts, in each of which they do proceed without *appeal*, making their Acts and Commiſſions in the name of the ſaid *Governour*, *Preſident*, and *Councell*; but pronouncing ſentence and executing judgment in the right of the *Soveraigntie* of the ſaid Province. And theſe *Provinciall States* are choſen generally out of the *Plebeians* or common people, and the *Burgers* (at the beſt) of the greater Townſhips: the Nobilitie and Gentry being ſo worn out, that in all *Holland*, and *Zeland*, there are not left above 3 families of Gentlemen; and thoſe compelled to live after the *Plebeian* faſhion for fear of envie, and to avoid the inſolencie of the ſaucie *Clowns*, who out of rudeneſſe and the deſire of equality, hate nothing more among them then the name of a Gentleman.

Out of theſe *Provinciall States* which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleaſure of the *communitie* for which they ſerve, are choſen one or more for each ſeverall Province, according to the condition and capacitie of thoſe which are choſen, to reſide at the *Hague*, there to conſult of the affairs which concern the publick: but ſo, that be they more or leſſe out of every Province, they make amongſt them but one *ſuffrage* when any thing is to be put unto the Vote. And theſe they call the *States Generall*, firſt becauſe a collected body out of all the Provinces, and ſecondly, becauſe they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular concernment, which are determinable abſolutely by the *States Provinciall*, but only in ſuch things as concern the *generall* good of the whole Eſtate; as treating with Ambaſſadours, making war and peace, &c. For their aſſiſtance in the which, there is a *Councel of State* made up of the Governours and ſome eminent men of every Province (in which the Ambaſſadour of *England*, as long as we held *Fluſhing* and the other Cautionarie Towns, had his voice or *ſuffrage:*) by whoſe advice they diſpoſe of all things which concern the publick. But ſo, that if any difficultie do appear in the buſineſſe they conclude nothing till they have the approbation and conſent of the particular *Cities* and *Provinces* for which they are choſen, to whom they are *accomptable* for their adminiſtration, and by whom *revocable* whenſoever they pleaſe.

The *Revenue* of this *Eſtate* doubtleſſe is exceeding great, the Armie which they keep in continuall entertainment, conſiſting of no leſſe then 30000 men, which they can draw into the field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided: yet ſo well paid, that we never read of any mutinie amongſt them for want thereof. The whole charge, with the entertainment of Captains and ſuperiour Officers, is ſaid to amount to 500000 *l. per annum*, raiſed on the people by *Exciſe* laid upon all commodities, and many *taxes* of like nature ſo inſupportable in themſelves and amongſt men which would be thought to live in a free *State*, that ſhould the *Spaniard*, or any Prince in *Chriſtendome* lay but half ſo much upon their Subjects, it would occaſion a *Revolt*. So that whereas one of the firſt cauſes of their falling

falling off from the King of *Spain*, was to free themſelves from taxes and impoſitions, illegally (as they ſaid) inforced upon them, they have drawn upon themſelves more arbitrarie and illegall payments then any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the change of government. Touching their power at Sea, we have ſpoke alreadie. All I ſhall now adde to it, is by way of inſtance, which is, that in the year 1587. the King of *Denmark* on pretence of ſome diſpleaſure, arreſted 608 ſhips of theirs, of all ſorts at one time, in the *Sound*; and that the next year after they ſet out upon very ſhort warning, an hundred good men of war to join with *England* againſt the invincible *Armada* which then threatned both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to theſe Countries, wherewith the God of all bleſſings doth enrich a Nation, but a *gracious Prince*, *unitie of Religion*, and *a quiet Government*: which if it pleaſed the Almighty to confer upon them, they would ſurpaſſe all neighbouring States in treaſure, potencie, content, and all worldly happineſſe.

There are in theſe Countries,

Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 15.

Univerſities 7.

Viz.

Lovain, *Leige*, *Harderwick*, *Groyning*,
Doway, *Leyden*, *Franeker*.

And thus much of *Belgium*.

OF

OF GERMANIE.

GERMANIE is bounded on the East with *Prussia*, *Poland*, and *Hungarie*; on the West with *France*, *Switzerland*, and *Belgium*; on the North with the *Baltick* Seas, and some part of *Denmark*; on the South with the *Alps*, which part it from *Italy*. By which accompt the modern *Germanie* much differeth from that described by *Tacitus*, and others of the *Roman* writers: that comprehending the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, with so much of the Kingdom of *Poland* as lieth on this side of the River *Vistula*; but bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, and on the South with the *Danow*: the modern *Germanie* containing on the further banks of those Rivers, 5 whole *Roman* Provinces, that is to say, *Noricum*, *Ripense*, and *Mediterraneum*, *Rhætia secunda*, *Belgica*, and *Germania prima*, with some parts of *Rhætia prima*, and *Germania secunda*, but terminated with the *Danes*, and the *Baltick* Sea.

It was first called thus by the *Romans* (as some conceive) who seeing the people both in customs, speech, and course of life, so like those of *Gallia*, called them the *Germanes* to the *Gaules*: the word *Germanus* in the *Latine*, signifying a Brother of the whole bloud, (as our Lawyers phrase it) that is to say, a brother both by father and mother: those which have the same mother but divers fathers, being called *Fratres uterini*. And of this minde is *Strabo*, who speaking of the great resemblance which was betwixt these Nations, in manners, speech, customs, and way of life, concludes it thus, that the *Romans* did with very good reason call them *Germans*, *cum fratres eos Gallorum hoc nomine vellent ostendere*; intending to signifie by that name that they were the brethren of the *Gaules*. But this is to be understood of those people only which dwelt next to *Gaule*, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vaste Continent, according to the ancient extent thereof: it being very well observed by *Tacitus*, that *Germanie* was at first *Nationis non Gentis nomen*, the name of some of the Nations only, not of all the Country: the name in processe of time spreading over all that large tract of ground, and those scattered Nations which were either conquered by them, or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be meerly Dutch, deriving it from *Ger*, which signifieth all, and the word *man*, signifying in that language as in ours; whence also they derive the name of *Almans*; by which they would imply that the *Almans* or *Germans* are a very warlike Nation, a people that have in them *nihil nisi virile*, nothing not worthie of a *man*. *Bocartus* somewhat near to this, telling us that *Ger* in the antient *Gallick* did signifie as much as *Guerre* in the modern *French*, would have them at their first coming over the *Rhene* to be called *Germans* by the *Gaules*, that is to say, *men of war*, (or *Gens d' Armes* in the present *French*) by reason of the great and many victories obtained by them.

The like diversity I find for the name of *Almans*: For though some gave them the name of *Almans* from the same originall from whence they fetch the name of *Germans*, as was said before: yet others as probably conjecture, that they had that name because they consisted of so many severall Nations coming out of the North and North-east hither, that they seemed to be an Hotch-poth of all sorts of men, kneaded into one name and Nation, which is the conceit of *Asinius Quadratus*. But for my part I doe conceive (supposing the name of *Almans* to be *Dutch* originally) that the whole Country was

not

not called *Almain*, till ſuch time as the Princes of the Dukedome of *Almain* (ſince called *Suevia* or *Schwaben*) did poſſeſſe the Empire: which continuing in that potent familie near 100 years, might very well occaſion them to be called the Emperours of *Almain*, or the *Almain* race, and ſo impart that name to the Empire alſo. And for the *Almains* naturally and properly ſo called, (of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Suevia*) I ſee no *Etymologie* more agreeable to true Antiquitie, then to derive the name from *Mannus* the ſon of *Tuiſco*, one of their Gods and a principall Founder of this Nation, (*Tuiſconem Deum & Filium Mannum, originem gentis conditoreſque*,) as is ſaid by *Tacitus*, the people being called *Alemanni* (with a double *n*) in all antient writers, as men that did derive themſelves from this *Mannus* the ſon of *Tuiſco*. In like ſort as I think the *Marco-manni* inhabiting the countries of *Moravia*, were ſo called, as the *Manni of the Marches* or out-borders of *Germanie*, and not the *Mark-mans*, as if they were *men of mark*, the only men of fame and honour of all thoſe Nations: which might as well be preſſed from the *Dutch* originall, as that of *All-man*, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this opinion I am ſwayed the rather, becauſe I find the Dutch Nation generally ſo much inclined to derive their Originall from *Tuiſco*, (from whom the *Teutones* inhabiting about *Brandenbourg* may well fetch their Pedegree) the name of *Dutch-land*, or *Dutch-men*, coming near in ſound to *Tuiſc-land*, and *Tuiſc-men*: In which I ſhall ſubſcribe to *Verſtegans* opinion, though for the moſt part I look upon him but as the ſecond part of *Goropius Becanus*.

But being the *Etymologies* of the names of moſt antient Nations are very uncertain, and for the moſt part founded on conjectures only, let us leave the name a while, and ſurvey the Country: the length whereof (according to the trueſt and exacteſt meaſurement) from Eaſt to Weſt, that is to ſay, from the *Viſtula*, or *Wixell* to the *Rhene*, is eſtimated at 840 *Italian* miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to ſay, from the Ocean to the Towne of *Brixen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the ſame miles. So that the figure of it being near a ſquare it may take up 3160 miles in compaſſe, or thereabouts. Situate in the northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle Parallels of the ſixth and tenth *Climates*, the longeſt day in the moſt Southern parts, being 15 hours and an half, and in the moſt Northern, 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compaſſe and extent of ground are ſuppoſed to live 10 millions of people. The men of the poorer ſort laborious, painfull, and of a ſincere and honeſt carriage; the Nobles for the moſt part either Scholars or Souldiers, and true lovers of honour, though *Tacitus* hath otherwiſe reſolved it, affirming that the *Gaules* fight for liberty, the *Belgians* for honour, and the *Germans* for gain. Which yet is true enough of the common ſouldiers, who if they fail of pay, fail in courage preſently. Of both ſorts they are generally tall and big, of great bones, much fleſh, and large ſinews: but commonly of ſuch a phlegmatick conſtitution, that they have not ſpirit enough to manage ſuch a maſſe of fleſh as they bear about them. Which want of naturall heat to concoct that humour, makes them for the moſt part to be men of a bright, or light-brown hair, and fair complexions. They are little addicted to *Venus*, and very much to *Bacchus*; whence the Proverb, *Vivere Germanorum eſt bibere*; and the old Verſes,

Germani poſſunt cunctos tolerare labores,
O utinam poſſent tam bene ferre ſitim.

The *Dutch* themſelves to labour well inure;
O would they thirſt could halt ſo well indure.

This love unto their liquor, together with their naturall temper, maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon Pope *Julio* the ſecond, ſtiling the *Spaniards* birds of the air, becauſe of their ambition; the *Venetians* and *Genoeſes*, fiſhes of the ſea, becauſe ſo much accuſtomed to Navigation: called the *Germans* by the name of the Beaſts of the field. And when *Auguſtus* was reſolved to take unto himſelf the Supream government of *Rome*, he was adviſed by *Agrippa* to chooſe a guard of *Germans* to attend upon him. The reaſon was (as *Dion* giveth it) becauſe in thoſe great bodies there was little *malice* hidden, and leſſe *ſubtlety*; and that they were a people that took more pleaſure to be commanded, then to command. In matters of war this people have been formerly in a meaſure famous; yet not ſo much by the valour or conduct of their *Captains* (for they have had but few ſuch) as by their own hardineſſe. They withſtood the *Romans* 210 years, afflicting and troubling them more in that ſpace, than either the *Carthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Parthians*; and even at the laſt (ſaith *Tacitus*) *Triumphati magis ſunt quam victi*. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lanſknights* of *Germany*, (for ſo they call their horſe and foot) have been much imployed: but more by reaſon of their numbers, eaſily raiſed out of ſo large a Country, then any opinion of their valour; being ſlow of motion, dull of apprehenſion, fearfull of putting any thing to the chance of war. By reaſon of which fearfulneſſe as they are very cruell upon all advantages, not ſparing either age or ſex when they get the victorie: ſo are they apt to run upon any *Alarm*, not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any perſwaſions. Inſomuch as *Charls* Count of *Mansfield*, General of an Armie of 50000 fighting men, but moſt of this Nation, was forced to ſuffer a ſmall Armie of 10000 *Turks* to paſſe by his trenches, being then ſtrongly encamped before *Strigonium*, (now *Gran*) a Town of *Hungarie*, and to victuall the town before his face: not daring to ſet upon them or diſturb their purpoſe, for fear leſt being luſtily charged, his *Germans* would give back and indanger all. And yet beſides theſe weakneſſes they have ſome great faults. One of which is a cuſtome, if their wages be not duly paid, (though it be in the very midſt

of a battell) to cry *Guelt, Guelt*, throw down their weapons, and ſuffer themſelves to bee cut in peeces by the Enemie. And ſo they ſerved *Frederick* the Electour *Palatine* at the battell of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of ſpoil and *plunder*: on which they are ſo bent whereſoever they come, that ſuch as entertain them have juſt cauſe to ſay that they receive more damage by them then they doe by their enemies. Two undeceiveable notes of mercenarie valour.

The women are of a good complexion, but by reaſon of their intemperance in eating and drinking much given to corpulency: women of a good carriage (as the ſaying is) good Bearers, and as fruitfull breeders. Servilely *obſequious* to their *husbands*, whom many of good rank ſerve at the table with *trenchers* and other neceſſaries, and take away when he hath done, eating the reſidue apart with and amongſt their maides: ſcarſe ſitting down with him once a week, and then too at the lower end, or at ſome ſuch diſtance. And though the women by their lawes have a *property* in the goods which they bring with them at their marriage, or are given them after, (ſo as the *husband* hath but the uſe of them onely) and may diſpoſe of them by their *laſt will* at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better: the husband being no leſſe churliſh and imperious then hee would be otherwiſe. Which made *Caracalla* to ſay often, that only that *Nation knew how to rule their Wives, which added the feminine article to the Sun, and the maſculine to the Moon*, as the *Germans* doe. Moſt of them as well *VVives* as *Virgins* (except perſons of honour) uſe to goe bare footed within doors, and ſeldome put on ſhoes or ſtockins but when they are to goe abroad upon their occaſions. A thing that ſeems the more ſtrange in regard of the extreme coldneſſe of the Countrey, which is ſo fierce, that generally they lodge between two Feather beds both in ſummer and winter: and in moſt houſes have their *ſtoves*, of which the doores and windowes are kept very cloſe, as well to retain the heat as to keep out the cold. Which though they may be uſefull and inoffenſive in Gentlemens houſes; yet in the *common Innes* where all ſorts of people are neceſſitated to throng together, the ill ſmels, never purged by admitting any freſh air, are ready to ſtifle and choak up the ſpirits of raw Travellers not accuſtomed to them.

The diet of *Germany France* and *Italy*, is by a Traveller thus cenſured: the *Germans* have much meat, but ſluttiſhly dreſſed; the *French* little, but neatly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other. And to ſay truth, the *Germans* have meat enough: the people being generally of good ſtomachs, and either by nature or ill cuſtome, exceſſive both in eating and drinking, ſeldome riſing from the table till they have conſumed all which was ſet before them. Inſomuch as in ſome places it is provided by Law, that in their feaſts they ſhall not ſit above five houres at the table. During which time if by intemperance either in eating or drinking, a man diſgorge his foul ſtomach in his fellows lap, or piſſe under the table, it is no diſgrace to him, nor at any time taken notice of to his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and exceſſive drinking, is not onely cheriſhed among the Vulgar, but even amongſt their greateſt Princes, who beſides what they doe in this kinde themſelves, have their *drinking champions*, as well to anſwer all challenges, as to challenge all comers: contending with each other, as a point of State, whoſe cellar ſhall afford the greateſt and moſt capable Veſſels.

The title of the Fathers deſcend to all the children; every ſon of a Duke being a Duke; and every daughter, a Dutcheſſe: a thing which the *Italians* hold ſo ridiculous, that they put it in the forefront of this facetious *Satyre*. The *Dukes* and *Earles* of *Germany*, the *Dons* of *Spain*, the *Monſieurs* of *France*, the Biſhops of *Italy*, the Nobility of *Hungary*, the *Lairds* of *Scotland*, the Knights of *Naples*, and the younger brethren of *England*, make a poore company. For by this common aſſuming of the Fathers honour, and parting his lands among all the brethren; the *Nobility* is beyond reaſon multiplyed, and no leſſe impoveriſhed: there being not long ſince 17 Princes of *Anhalt*, and 27 Counts of *Mansfields*; to moſt of which, their Armes have been the beſt part of their riches; *& nihil niſi arma & manus, & in his omnia*; as *Tacitus* once ſaid of the ancient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poore *Nobility* that will vouchſafe to marry with the daughter of the *wealthieſt Merchant*; or ſuffer any of their ſiſters to be married to any under the degree of a Nobleman: nor any juſter cauſe of diſheriting their children, then *ignoble marriages*, never permitting the iſſue of ſuch a Bed to ſucceed in any of their *Fees*, Eſtates, or titles, by means whereof though they debar themſelves of ſuch acceſſions of wealth as matches of that kinde might bring them: yet to the great honour of their generoſity in this particular, they preſerve the *pure ſtream* of their bloud from running into *muddie channels*, and keep the *ſpirits* of brave men though they want the *fortunes*.

The *Languages* here ſpoken are the *French* in *Lorrain*, and ſome towns of the Biſhop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the higheſt parts of *Tyrol*, which lie next to the Commonwealth of *Venice*; the *Sclavonian* ſpoken in *Bohemia, Moravia*, and ſome parts of *Luſatia*: and the *high Dutch*, the generall Language of the Country. A language very antient doubtleſs (though I am not ſo much a *Goropian* as to think it ſpoke in *Paradiſe*, or before the *Flood*) and ſuch as by reaſon of the little or no impreſſion which the *Roman* Armies made upon this contrary hath leſſe commixture with the *Latine*, then any which is uſed in theſe Weſtern parts, (the *VVelch* excepted) and is very harſh by reaſon of its many Conſonants.

This Country was eſteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Forreſts, unprofitable Heaths, and unhealthy Pools. *Germaniam informem terris, aſperam cœlo, triſtem cultu aſpectuque*, as he further addeth. And ſuch no doubt it was in thoſe times wherein *Tacitus* lived: the people not being civilized, nor the Countrey cultivated, nor any means found out to rectifie the ſharpneſſe of that Northern air. But he who doth obſerve it now cannot but confeſſe that there is no Countrey in the World either better planted, or repleniſhed with more goodly and gallant Cities: being alſo in moſt parts both pleaſant, healthy and profitable, abounding with mines of ſilver, and

inferiour

interiour metals plentifull in corn and wines, with which they supply the defect of other Nations; as also with Flesh, Fish, Linnen, Quickſilver, Allom, Saffron, Armour and other iron-workes. The Arable lands so spacious in the Eastern parts, that the husband man going forward with his Plough in the morning, turned not back again till noon; so making but two furrows for his whole days work. For this *Verstegan* is my Authour, and if it be not credible let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of most eminencie in the Elder times, were 1. *Arminius* the Prince of the *Cheruſci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus* and the *Roman* Legions, 2. *VVitikind* the last King of the *Saxons*: for the middle ages, 3. *Otho* the first, 4. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, 5. *Rodulph* of *Habsburg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*, 6. *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*. 5. And in the last Centurie of years, 6. *Frederick* the second Electour *Palatine*, who made good *Vienna* against the *Turks*; 7. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter. 8. *Earnest* Earl of *Mansfeild*, 9. *John George* of *Jagerndorf*, 10. *Albert VVallenstein* Duke of *Fridland*, and divers other of late dayes.

Scholars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; learning being here so rare in the middle of the eighth Centurie, that *Vigilius* Bishop of *Saltzburg* was condemned of heresie, for holding that there were some *Antipodes*. In the next age there flourished *Rhabanus Maurus*, *Haimo of Halberstade*, *VValafrians Strabus*, men learned for the times they lived in. And in the following times, *Ockam* a stout defender of the rights of the Empire against the encroachments of the Pope; *Otho Frisingensis* the Historian, *Albertus Magnus*, the Philosopher, of which last it is said that he made the *Statua* of a man, which with the help of artificiall Engines could speak articulately; and was the work of 50 yeares. Then in the dayes of our Grandfathers, we have 1. *Martin Luther*, that great instrument of the reformation; 2. *Philip Melanchthon* his Coadjutor in that worke, but of more excellent parts, and farre better temper: thence called the *Phenix* of that Age. 3. *Joachim Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*; 4. *Martin Chemnitius*, a solid and laborious writer; 5. *Flacius Illyricus* the chiefe Authour of the *Magdeburgian* Centuries and Father of the *Rigid Lutherans*; 6. *Sebastian Munster*, an industrious Cosmographer, and a learned Linguist; 7. *Silburgius*, and 8. *Buxdorfius*, as great *Linguists* as hee: not to descend to further instances in those, who have so filled the Marts of *Francfort* in these later times.

But the greatest excellency of this people lyeth in the *Mechanicall* part of learning, as being eminent for many *Mathematicall* experiments, strange water-workes, *medicinall* extractions, *Chymistry*, and the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no lesse benefit then Admiration of the World. Amongst which I cannot choose but instance in that work of *Regiomantanus*, an excellent *Mathematician* and a cunning Artizan, spoken of by *Keckerman*, who at the coming of the Emperour *Maximilian* to the City of *Nuremberg*, made a *wooden Eagle*, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meete him, and being come to the place where hee was, returned back of its owne accord, and so accompanyed him to his lodging. A thing if true (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuse the World with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that *Miracle* of a *flying Dove*, for which *Archytas* is so famed amongst the Antients exceeded oenly by himselfe in a like invention, which was that of an Iron flye, (the greater Miracle of Art, because lesse in quantity) which at a Feast, to which hee had invited some of his especiall friends, flew from his hand about the room, and returned againe; as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*. Expressed thus by Divine *Du Bartas*,

Once as this *Artist* more with mirth then meat
Feasted some friends, whom he esteemed great,
From his learn'd hand an *Iron flie* flew out,
And having flown a perfect Round, about,
With wearyed wings return'd unto her Master,
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
O divine wit that in the narrow Womb
Of a small flie could find sufficient room
For all those Springs, Wheels, Counterpoise, and chains,
Which stood in stead of life, and spur, and reins.

And amongst these I reckon *Bertholdus Swart* a *Franciscan* Fryer, the inventer (though by accident) of the fatall instrument, the Gun. Studious in *Chymistrie*, he made mingled dryed earth, sulphur, and some other ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar, covered with a stone: and striking fire to light a candle, as the night came on, a spark by chance fell into the mortar, and catching hold of the *Sulphur* and other minerals with great violence blew up the stone wherewith it was covered. Amazed at which he made triall severally of these ingredients to find out which of them it was which produced that effect, which having discovered he caused an iron pipe to be made, crammed it with *Sulphur*, *Saltpetre* and stones; and putting fire to it, saw with what violent noise and fury it discharged it self. This invention hee is said to have first communicated to the *Venetians*, *anno* 1330, or thereabouts: who having been often vanquished by the *Genoys*, and driven almost to a necessity of yeelding to them, by the help of their *Guns*, (*Bombards* they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable discomfiture. And this was the first battell that ever those warlike pieces had a part in: which not long after, put to silence all the *engines* and devices, wherewith the Antients were wont to make their batteries. The next that made use of this *instrument*, were the inhabitants of the *Baltick*

Sea; and not long after them, the *Engliſh*, at the ſiege of *Calice*, *anno* 1347. about which time, they began alſo to be uſed in *Spain*. The *French*, it ſeemeth, learned the uſe of them from the *Engliſh*: and the firſt benefit received by them, was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*; who at the ſiege of *Orleance* was ſlain with a great ſhot, *anno* 1425. The *Turks* are beholding for them, to the wars they had with the *Venetians*; beholding I ſay, for notwithſtanding the harm received by them at firſt, yet afterwards growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Uſſan Caſſanes*, and *Hyſmael*, two of the moſt mighty Emperours of *Perſia*, two memorable overthrows, by the help of their great *Ordnance* only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Perſians*: for as *Solyman* the *Turkiſh* Emperour objected againſt them, they not only aided *Tamas* the *Sophi*, with certain *Harcubuciers*, but alſo ſent him workmen to ſhew him the uſe and making of *Artillery*. Theſe great pieces at the firſt invention were rude, unwieldy, and charged with ſtone bullets only: but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall and the hand, which they now have. Whether now *Archery* or *Gunning* be to be preferred, I ſtand not here to determine; only this I am ſure of, that victories have been of late purchaſed with leſſe expence of bloud, and life, then ever formerly. But of this Theame more perhaps hereafter, when we ſhall come to take the *Parthian* Archery into conſideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not eaſie to name, conſidering ſo many are here allowed; *Jewes* being intermixt with *Chriſtians*; and theſe divided into *Papiſts* and *Proteſtants*; the latter alſo ſubdivided into *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, &c. The *Chriſtian* faith firſt planted here, if *Dorotheus* Biſhop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by S. *Thomas* ſurnamed *Didymus* one of the twelve. But being there is little truſt unto his *Relations*, the beſt way were to ſay with the *Magdeburgians* and the *Martyrologies*, that the *Germans* had not all the ſame *Apoſtle*: that the *Goſpell* was firſt preached amongſt the *Rhætians* and *Vindelici*, by S. *Lucius* of *Cyrene*; amongſt thoſe of *Noricum* by S. *Mark*; by S. *Creſcens* at *Mentz*, S. *Clemens* at *Mets* in *Lorrain*; all of them *Apoſtolicall* men, and of the number of the 70. after that by S. *Maternus* at *Colen*, and by S. *Eucherius* at *Triers*. That the faith was planted very early in theſe countries, *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lyons*, *anno* 170. is ſufficient evidence; who takes notice of it: and that it proſpered very well and took very good root, appeareth by the Biſhop of *Ments*, *Triers*, *Wormes*, *Spires*, *Baſil*, and *Strasbourg*, ſubſcribing to the Councell of *Colen* in the reign of *Conſtantius* the ſon of *Conſtantine* the Great, *anno* 347. But the light hereof being extinguiſhed for a time by thoſe barbarous nations who fell upon theſe out-parts of the *Roman* Empire; began to ſhine again, on the converſion of the *French*, in all parts of this countrey: the Conqueſts and example of this puiſſant Nation giving great incouragement thereunto. In which as thoſe of other Countries doe not want their honour, ſo the greateſt part thereof belongs to the *Engliſh Saxons*: *Willibrod* the firſt Biſhop of *Vtrecht*, *Willibald* of *Aichſtat*, *Swibert* of *Virden*, *Willibald* of *Breme*, and ſpecially *Boniface* the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, being moſt gloriouſly fortunate in that ſacred ſervice. The *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, and others farther off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the faith, they began to ſuck in the corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; diſcerned and oppoſed by *John Huſſe*, and *Hierome* of *Prague*, *Bohemian* Divines: who by reaſon of the marriage of King *Richard* the ſecond of *England*, with the daughter of *Wenceſlaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the preachings of *Wiclef*, the points of whoſe Doctrine they approved and propagated. But theſe two being burnt at *Conſtance* by the decree of that Councell, their followers in *Bohemia* would not ſo give over: but after many ſufferings and much bloudſhed obtained at laſt a toleration of the Emperour *Sigiſmund* their King: more able to make good his word in his own dominions, then he had been to ſave the two *Martyrs* from the fire at *Conſtance*, to whom he had granted his ſafe conduct for their comming and going. In this condition they remained, under the name of thoſe of the *Sub utraq*; or *Caliſtini*, becauſe of their Adminiſtring the Sacrament *in both kindes*, till the riſing of *Luther*: who juſtly offended at the impious and unwarrantable Aſſertions of Frier *Tekel*, and others of the Popes *Pardon-mungers*; firſt oppoſed their doings, and after queſtioned that authority by which they acted: falling from one point to another, till he had ſhaken the foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the ſucceſſe of his undertaking we ſhall ſpeak more punctually in the Dukedome of *Saxony*, the place of his birth, the *Scene* of this great Action, and the proper *Sphere* of his *Activity*. Suffice it now to ſay, that his doctrine was ſo well approved of, that the Dukes of *Saxonie*, *Brunſwick*, *Lunenbourg*, *Wirtenberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomerania*; the Marqueſſe of *Branderbourg*, the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, and moſt of the *Free* and *Imperial Cities* did adhere unto it, who from their *Proteſtation* made at *Spires* (the *Imperiall Chamber*) to that effect, *anno* 1529. had the name of *Proteſtants*. The next year following they delivered in the *Confeſſion* of their faith at *Auſpurg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confeſſio Auguſtana*; authorized, or tolerated at the leaſt, after a long war with variable ſucceſſe on both ſides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fift at the *Pacification* made at *Paſſaw*, *anno* 1552. and afterwards more fully at *Ausbourg*, (where their Confeſſion had firſt been tendred) *anno* 1555.

In the mean time aroſe up *Zuinglius* amongſt the *Switzers*, of whoſe both Doctrine and ſucceſſe we have ſpoken there. Theſe not communicating Councels went two ſeverall waies, eſpecially in the points of *Conſubſtantiation* and the *Reall preſence*, not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongſt their followers. For *Calvin*, riſing into the eſteem and place of *Zuinglius* added, ſome *Tenets* of his own to the former doctrines, touching *Predeſtination*, *Free-will*, *Univerſall Grace*, *Finall perſeverance* (points fitter for the *Schooles* then a popular Auditory) by which the differences were widened, and the breach made irreparable: the cauſe being followed on both ſides with great impatience, as if they did not ſtrive ſo much for *truth*, as *victory*. And of the two thoſe of the *Lutheran* party

ty seemed more violent (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not choose but stomach it to see themselves undermined and blown by a new form of doctrine, not tolerated in the Empire but under colour of conformity to the *Confession* of *Ausburg*. For *Zuinglianisme* being entertained amongst the *French*, a busie and active people, spread it self further in few years then it was propagated by the *Switzers* (men of the same temper with the *Dutch*) in all times before. Insomuch as it did not only prevail in *France*, but by the reputation of *Calvin*, and the diligence of his followers, was wholly entertained in the Kingdome of *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, and even in *Germanie* it self; in which it got footing in all the territories of the Counts *Palatines* of the *Rhene*, in some of the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, in the Imperiall City of *Strasburg*, many of the *Hanse-towns*, and amongst other Princes and Free Cities of inferiour note. The rest of *Germanie* containing the Patrimoniall Estates of the house of *Austria*, the Dukedomes of *Bavaria* and *Lorrain*, the territories of the three *Spirituall Electours*, and of all the other Bishopricks in the hands of the Clergie, some of the Marquesses of *Baden*, part of the subjects of *Cleve*, and but three of the Imperiall Cities (and those small ones too) that is to say, *Gmund*, *Uberlinque*, and *Dinekell-Spuell* (unlesse some more be added by the late great successes of the house of *Austria*) remain in their obedience to the See of *Rome*: yet so that there be many *Protestants* in *Bohemia*, *Austria*, and in other the Estates of the *Popish* Princes; as there be *Papists* in the *Free Cities* of *Frankford*, *Nurenberg*, *Ulm*, *Aken*, and some other places, besides the late increase of them in both *Palatinates*.

As for the Government of their Churches those that continue in obedience of the See of *Rome*, are under the old form of Archbishops and Bishops: co-evall in all *Germanie* (as in most places else) with the faith it self. The *Calvinists* (by which name the *Zuinglianist* now also passeth, if not eaten out) submit themselves for doctrine, discipline, and formes of worship, to *Calvins* Modell, whereof we have spoke more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the *Episcopall* function from the *Revenues*; giving those last to some of their younger Princes, with the title of *Administrators* of such a Bishoprick; the function or jurisdiction to some of the more eminent Clergie, with the title of a *Superintendent*, assigning to them a priority both of place and power before other Ministers; which they enjoy for term of life, together with some liberall maintenance in proportion to it. In other things, as *habit* and *title of dignitie*, they differ not at all from the other *Ministers*: and over them in place of Archbishops they have their *generall Superintendents*; all of them of each sort accomptable to the supreme *Ecclesiastical Consistory* (as formerly to the *Provinciall* or *Nationall* Synod) made up of Counsellors of State, and the heads of the *Clergie*: so that the form is much the same as in elder times, the greatest Alteration being in the names; and that no other in a manner then by changing the old *Greek* word *Episcopus*, into the new *Latine* word *Superintendens*: both signifying an *Overseer* though in different languages. And so *ex Græcis bonis, Latinas fecere non bonas*, in the Poets words: which is in brief the totall of the *Innovation*. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of government, so do they also come up to them in their formes of worship, retaining still a setled and prescribed *Liturgie* for all their Churches, most of the *holy dayes* observed in the former Ages, the *Crosse* in Baptisme, *kneeling* at the Communion, and many other innocent and *significant* Ceremonies, commended to the Church by most pure Antiquitie. In point of maintenance as defective as the *Calvinists* are, few of their *Ministers* having *Tithes*, most of them *pensions* or stipends, and those small ones also, seldome exceeding two or 300. *Guldens*, besides wood for fewell, corn and some other necessaries.

Now because mention hath been made of the *Hanse-towns* and *Imperiall Cities*, we are to understand that the Cities of this Countrey are of three sorts. 1. Such as are holden in possession by some of the Princes in way of inheritance, part of their patrimony and estates, as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munchen*, *Wittenberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it self, which are called *Free Cities* for their great *Prerogatives* of coyning money, and governing themselves by their *locall* Ordinances; *Imperiall* in regard they know no Lord or protectour but the Emperour only, to whom they pay two third parts of such contributions as are assessed in the Assemblies or generall *Diets*, and 1500. *Florens* yearly for themselves and their territories. They are in number about 60. many of which are of a fair and large estate, such as are *Nurenberg*, *Ausburg*, *Ingolstade*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, &c. Of which thus *Guicciardine*. Those (saith he) are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate tribute the authority of the Empire, do notwithstanding in all other things govern themselves after their own laws, not seeking to amplifie their *territories*, but defend their *Liberties*. 3. The third sort is of those which are called *Hanse-towns*, or *Hansteden*, that is, (say some) *Anzeesteden*, Towns upon the Sea; such as those were who first entred into this *confederacy*, but at this time the name extends to many inland Cities, and of no great trading, joyned with them in a league for their common defence and preservation. A league made first against the *Danes*, and the Earls of *Holst* by some of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them, that is to say, *Lubeck*, *Hambourg*, *Rostock*, *Wismar*, *Stralesund*, and *Luneburg*: but afterwards many other of the *Imperiall Cities* and Towns of trade, associated with them in an *offensive* and *defensive* league against all enemies whatsoever. In number about 72. those of *Livonia* and *Prussia* being taken into the reckoning, many of which are able to put to sea 150. good sayle of ships: such as lie more within the land contributing in money or otherwise to the common charge. First hanselled by *Waldomar* the 3. of *Denmark*, whom they vanquished in a navall battell. After that growing into credit, and driving a great trade in most parts of *Christendome*, they enjoyed many large and ample priviledges, whersoever they came: called amongst us sometime by the name of *Easterlings* from their *Easterly* dwellings; and Merchants of the *Steel-yard* from the

place where they ſtowed their commodities; and *Guilda Teutonicorum* in regard of their nation, for the moſt part *Dutch*. But the *Engliſh* learning ſo much wit at the laſt as to make uſe of their own ſhipping, they began here by little and little to decay; and are now almoſt worn out of memory with us, though ſtill of good eſteem and credit in other Countries.

The principall Rivers hereof are 1. *Danubius*, or the *Danow*, which riſing out of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Schwartzen Wald* as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* called *Don Eſchingen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the ſhores of the *Rhene*, paſſeth through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regenſperg*, *Paſſaw*, *Vienna*, *Rab*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*, beyond which it beginneth to be called *Iſter*, by which name moſt generally known amongſt the *Grecians*: and receiving into its channell, from the long tracts of the *Alpes*, the *Sarmatian* and *Carpathian* mountains, about 60. navigable Rivers, beſides leſſer Brooks, diſgorgeth his full ſtomach by ſeven ſeverall mouths (the names whereof we ſhall finde in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine ſea*; the whole length of his courſe 1500 miles. Inſomuch as we may ſay with a modern Poet,

Cedere Danubius ſe tibi Nile negat.

O ſeven-mouth'd *Nile*, I plainly ſee,
Danow will ſcarce give way to thee.

2. *Rhene*, of whoſe originall and courſe we have ſpoke more fully when we were in *Belgium*; which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a courſe of 800. miles, emptieth it ſelf into the *German Ocean*. The like doth alſo the 4. *Elb* (*Albis*) after a journey of more then 400 miles; ariſing about the lower skirts of *Bohemia*, and paſſing by *Magdeburg* and *Brunſwick*, and ſo betwixt the Dukedome of *Holſtein* (now part of *Denmark*) and the reſt of *Germany*. 4. *Odera*, which hath its fountain in the hithermoſt parts of *Moravia*, and after it hath run its courſe through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, of ſome 300. miles in length falleth at laſt into the *Baltick* ſea. 5. *Viſurgis* or the *Weſer*, which iſſuing out of the hils of *Turingia* runneth through *Haſſia* and *Weſtphalen*, to the City of *Breme*, not far from which it fals into the *German* Ocean. 6. *Viſtula*, or the *Wixel*, which riſing out of the *Carpathian* mountains betwixt *Poland* and *Hungarie*, firſt paſſeth by *Cracovia* the chief City of *Pole*, then betwixt *Pomeren* and *Pruſſia*, and ſo into the *Baltick* ſea: the ancient boundary of this Countrey dividing it from *Sarmatia Europæa*. 7. *Mænus*, or the *Maine*, which hath its ſpring in the mountains of *Bohemia*, and paſſing by the Cities of *Bamberg*, and *Weirtzberg*, is received into the *Rhene* beneath *Francford*. 8. *Amaſus* or the *Ems*, which hath its fountain near *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*, and paſſing between the two *Friſelands* falleth into the *German* Ocean not far from *Emden*.

Chief mountains of this mighty Countrey, beſides the *Alps* ſpoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are 1. *Abnoba*, now called *Schwartze wald*, (the preſent name both of this Mountain and the Forreſt of *Martiana* which doth overſhadow it) out of which riſe the ſprings of *Danow*, and the *Neccar*, two principall Rivers of this Country. 2. The *Sudetæ*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the woods called anciently *Gabreta* and *Luna*, now called the Wolds of *Paſſaw* and *Behaimer* from the places adjoyning. 3. *Cretius* in *Auſtria*, now called *Culemberg*, the ancient bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two *Roman* Provinces. 4. *Vogeſus*, commonly called *Vauge*, and by ſome *French* writers *Le Mont de Faucities*, which encircling *Lorrain* divideth it on the Eaſt and South from *Elſats* and the County of *Burgundie*. As for the *Forreſts* of this Countrey, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, that of moſt note was the Forreſt of *Hercinia* (of which all the reſt were but limbs or branches) the beginning whereof was about the borders of *Switzerland* and *Alſatia*, from thence running Eaſtward along the courſe of the *Danow* unto *Tranſilvania*, and thence declining on the left hand through the vaſt Countries of the *Lituanians*, *Moſcovites*, and *Ruſſes*, in which laſt there are ſtill many vaſt deſerts of it; the greateſt part thereof in *Germanie* being long ſince conſumed; in place whereof are many goodly cornfields and wel-built Cities. A wood ſo formidable to the *Romans* that they durſt never venture to ſearch the end of it: the length thereof after the end of ſixty daies journey being undiſcoverable, and the further ſearch into it quite laid aſide.

Theſe *Boundaries* and *Landmarks* being thus deſcribed, we ſhall the better follow the *Chorographie* of this great continent, according to the ſeverall *Principalities* and Eſtates therein: having firſt taken a ſurvey of the ancient condition of it, with ſo much of the ſtory as concerns the whole, before it came to be divided into ſo many hands. The Countrey firſt planted by the poſterity of *Gomer*, who deſcending from the Mountains of *Albania*, their firſt ſeat, in memory thereof firſt called *Gomerini*, after *Cimmerini*, by which name known to *Pliny*, *Ptolemy* and others of the ancient writers: removed into the more fruitfull plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris* which *Pliny* ſpeaks of. But that ſmall Province proving of too narow a compaſſe to contain his Off-ſpring, and the adjoyning Countries being taken up in the former *Plantations*, they removed unto the Northweſt of the *Euxine ſea*, where we finde a City of their building called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*; and the adjoyning ſtraight or *Fretum*, called by the name of *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, by the *Greeks* and *Latins*. Driven from theſe dwellings by the more powerfull *Scythians*, they ſpread themſelves into the Weſt, where they began to be called *Cimbri*: and by that name, and under thoſe of the *Ambrones*, and *Teutones*, ſeverall branches of them, intended an invaſion and conqueſt both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *niſi iſti ſecum Marius certaſſet*, had not *Marius* happned to have lived in that Age; by whom diſcomfitted and deſtroyed. That theſe *Gomerians* or

Cimbri,

Cimbri, were the first inhabitants of *Gaul*, *Germany*, and all the nations of the North and West of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the learned; divided into severall nations, and those also subdivided into lesser tribes, and more obscure families: amongst which those of *Teutones*, or *Tuiscones*, from which the *Dutch* do so affect to derive themselves, might be some of the principall there setled, and not well pleased with that desert dwelling, such of them as dwelt nearest to the *Rhene* passed over that River; and beating the *Gauls* further up into the Countrey, possessed themselves of their dwellings: enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Cæsar*) without any Rivall. But *Cæsar*, moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the insolencies of *Arioviſtus* a king of the *Germans* (for by that name for the Reasons aforesaid the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being so affraid of this dreadfull Enemy, *ut testamenta passim in principiis scriberentur*, (saith the Historian) that many of them made their *testaments* at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquished by *Cæsar*, and *Arioviſtus* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans* by command of their Generall made a bridge over the River, and rather terrified then conquered the neighbouring *Germans*; more fully brought into subjection by *Drusus* the adopted son of *Augustus Cæsar*, from thence called *Germanicus*; by whom the *Rhæti* and *Norici*, then lying out of the bounds of *Germany*, (now included in it) were subdued also. So that the whole conquests of the *Romans* upon this Countrey, as it is now bound, contained no more then the Provinces of *Germania* and *Belgica prima*, with part of *Germania Secunda*, belonging unto the *Dioceſe* of *Gaule*, the greatest part of the two *Rhætia's*, being under the *Dioceſe* of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum* and *Ripense*, with some part of *Pannonia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum*: none of them lying within the bounds of the ancient *Germanie*. For the *Germans* did not endure the yoke so long, as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the lust and insolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who succeeded *Drusus* in that charge, they set upon him under the conduct of *Arminius*, a chief Prince amongst them; kill him and utterly cut off three Legions. After which defeat *Augustus* laid aside the affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Drusus* had extended to the banks of the *Ocean*. *Hac clade factum, ut imperium quod in littore* Oceani *non steterat, in ripa* Rheni *fluminis staret*, saith the Historian. Nor did the *Romans* only forbear to revenge this losse, by making a new war upon them; but seemed more carefull to defend themselves against their invasions, then to incurre the hazard of a new defeat: quartering eight *Legions* with their severall wings and Aides on the shores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the Banks of the *Danow*; to keep these people from incroaching on the *Romans* Provinces. But the fatall period of that Empire, drawing on apace, the *French*, *Burgundians*, *Almans* and other *Dutch* nations break through those Guards, dispossesse the *Romans* of all *Gaul*, *Rhætia*, and *Noricum*, which they share amongst them: till in the end, the *French* prevailing over the rest, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germanie*; chiefly performed by the valour of *Charles* the *Great*, created *Emperour* of the West by the people of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperiall Crown by Pope *Leo* the 4. on *Christmasse-day*, *anno* 801. So that now the old Prophecie of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the West, came to be accomplished; though *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle prediction. For when *Civilis* raised a Rebellion amongst the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoyning) against *Vespasian*, then newly made Emperour: *possessionem rerum humanarum*, Transalpinis *gentibus portendi*, Druidæ *canebant*; the *Druides* prophecied of the translation of the Empire to the *Transalpine* nations. Accomplished, as before is said, in the person of *Charles* the *Great*, King of *France* and *Germany*, by whom divided, (for the better ordering or Governance of it, into *West-France*, or *West-reiks*, in the barbarous *Latine* of those times called *Westrasia*; containing the modern *France*, and so much of the *Netherlands* as lyeth on the *French* side of the River *Maes*, and *Osten-rich* (*i. e.* the Eastern Kingdome) in the *Latine* of those times *Austrasia*, containing so much of the modern *Germany* and *Pannonia*, as was possessed by the *French*, with the rest of the *Netherlands*: this after subdivided into the Kingdomes of *Lorrain* and *Germany*, whereof the first contained all *Germany* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before described, the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois* excepted only; the Kingdome of *Germany* taking up the rest. For by *Ludovicus Pius* the son of *Charles* the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many members, as *Italie*, *France*, *Burgundie*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*; distributed amongst his sons and nephews with the title of Kings: By means whereof the Kingdomes of *Germany* and *Lorrain* united in the person of *Lewis* the *Ancient*, in little time were alien'd from the house of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*; possessed by the great Princes of *Lorrain*, *Saxonie*, *Schwaben*, and *Bavaria*; by whom dismembred into many principalities and inferiour states, all passing under the accompt and name of the *Dutch* or *Germans*. The Kings and Emperours of which here follow.

The KINGS and EMPEROURS of *GERMANIE*.

Anno Chr.		
801	1	*Charles* the *Great* Emp. K. of *France* and *Germanie*.
815	2	*Ludovicus Pius*, King of *France*, *Germanie*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.
841	3	*Lewis* surnamed the *Ancient*, second son of *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *Germanie*, to which *anno* 876. he united that of *Lorrain* also.
	4	*Charles* the *Grosse*, son of *Lewis* the *Ancient*, reigned joyntly with *Caroloman* and *Lewis* his elder Brethren, after their deaths sole King of *Germany*. *Anno* 880. he succeeded *Ludo-*

vicus

vicus Balbus in the title of Emperour, continued unto his Succeſſours; and during the minoritie of *Charls* the *Simple*, by a faction of the *French* Nobility, was choſen King of *France*: the whole eſtate of *Charls* the *Great* becoming once again united in the perſon of one Soveraign Prince.

891 5 *Arnulph*, the naturall ſon of *Caroloman*, the brother of *Charls*, King of *Germanie*, and Emp.

903 6 *Lewis*, or *Ludovicus* IV. (*Lewis* the brother of *Charls* and *Caroloman* being reckoned for one) King of *Germanie* and Emperour.

913 7 *Connade* the ſon of *Conrade*, the brother of *Lewis* the 4. the laſt Prince of the iſſue of *Charls* the Great. After whoſe death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, ſeeing *Charls* the *Simple*, King of *France*, overlaid by the *Normans*, took that advantage to transferre the Empire to themſelves, and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperour. A worthy Prince, by whom ſome Nations of the *Sclaves*, the *Hungarians*, and part of *Lorrain* were ſubdued, or added to the Empire.

920 6 *Henricus*, ſurnamed *Auceps*, or the *Fowler*, Duke of *Saxonie*. 12.

938 9 *Otho*, ſurnamed the *Great*, the ſon of *Henry* Emperour and King of *Italie*. 36.

974 10 *Otho*, II. ſon of *Otho* the firſt Emperour and King of *Italie*. 10.

984 11 *Otho* III. ſon of *Otho* the 2. Duke of *Saxonie* (and the laſt of that houſe which had the title of Emperour and King of *Italie*.) After whoſe death, all right of ſucceſſion being diſclaimed, the Emperours became *Elective*, but for the moſt part wholly ingroſſed or Monopolized (ſince the Failer of the houſe of *Saxonie*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Auſtria*, notwithſtanding the libertie or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The buſineſſe firſt projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours leſſe powerfull, and diſtract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into ſides and factions: confirmed by a decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Country. The Electors only ſix in number, that is to ſay,

1. The Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, Chancellour of the Empire.
2. The Archbiſhop of *Colen*, Chancellour of *Italie*.
3. The Archbiſhop of *Triers*, Chancellour of *France*.
4. The Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer.
5. The Duke of *Saxonie*, Lord Marſhall; And
6. The Marqueſſe of *Brandenburg*, Lord Chamberlain.

Upon equalitie of voices, the Duke (but now King) of *Bohemia*, was to come in for the 7. who by Office was to be Cup-bearer at the Coronation. For upon Coronation dayes, or dayes of like ſolemnitie, theſe Offices are performed only, and then performed in this manner. Before the Palace gate ſtandeth an heap of Oats ſo high that it reacheth to the breſt of the horſe on which the Duke of *Saxonie* rideth, bearing in his hand a ſilver wand and a ſilver meaſure, both which together weigh 200 marks: then ſitting ſtill upon his horſe he filleth up the meaſure with oates, ſticketh his wand in the Remainder, delivereth the meaſure of Oats to ſome of his ſervants which ſtand next him, and ſo attendeth the Emperour into the Court. The Emperour being entred and ſate down at the Table, the three ſpirituall Electors ſtanding orderly together, *ſay Grace* before him. Then cometh the Marqueſſe of *Brandenburg* on horſe-back alſo, with a ſilver baſin in his hand, full of water (the baſin of the weight of 12 marks of ſilver) and a fine clean towell on his arm, which alighting down he holdeth forth unto the Emperour. Then comes the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, mounted on his horſe, with four ſilver Platters full of meat) every one of the weight of three marks) which alighting alſo, he carrieth and ſetteth down upon the table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, on horſe-back (as the others were) with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered cup of the weight of 12 marks, entreth the Great-hall, alighteth from his horſe, and giveth the cup unto the Emperour to drink. But we muſt know that theſe ſervices are ſeldome or never (eſpecially of late times) performed by the Electours in perſon. It is enough if they ſend their Embaſſadours to do it, or ſubſtitute ſome one or other of the Emperours Court to perform it for them.

The election is uſually holden at *Francfort* on *Menus*, whither the Electours or their deputies come, upon the day appointed by the Biſhop of *Ments*, whoſe office it is to aſſemble the Princes. In their paſſage into *Francfort*, they are guarded by every Prince, through whoſe territories they paſſe. Their attendants muſt not exceed the number of 200 horſe-men, whereof 50 only muſt be armed. When they are all met, they goe to S. *Bartholomews* Church; where after Maſſe ſaid, the *ſpiritual* Electors laying their hands on their breaſt, and the *temporall* on the book, ſhal ſwear to chooſe a fit *temporall* head for the people of *Chriſtendom*. If in the ſpace of 30 days they have not agreed, then muſt they eat nothing but bread and water, nor by any means go out of the citie, til the greater part have agreed on a man, who ſhall forthwith be acknowledged *King of the Romans*. The Election being finiſhed, & the partie choſen, the inauguration was anciently holden, 1. at *Aken* in *Gulick*, where the new elected Emperor received the ſilver crown for *Germany*, 2. at *Millain*, where he received his iron crown for *Lombardie*; 3. at *Rome*, where he received the golden crown for the Empire. But thoſe journeys unto *Rome* and *Millain* have been long laid by, the Emperours holding their Election to be ſtrong enough

enough to make good their Title to that honour, being meerly titular. The form of which *Election*, the priviledges of the Princes *Electours*, and other fundamentall constitutions of the *German* Empire; we find summed up in the *golden Bul* of *Charls* the 4. by whom first promulgated *anno* 1359.

1002 10 *Henry* II. surnamed the *Saint*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the first Emperour elected according to the constitution of *Gregory* the fift.

1025 13 *Conrade* II. Duke of *Franconia*, surnamed *Salicus*.

1040 14 *Henry* III. surnamed *Niger*, the son of *Conrade*.

1056 15 *Henry* IV. son of *Henry* the third, in whose dayes the Popes began to usurpe authority over the Emperours: insomuch as *Leo* the ninth having received the Popedom at the Emperours hands, repented himself of it, put off his Papall vestments, went to *Rome* as a private person, and was there new chosen by the Clergie. This done by the perswasion of a Monke called *Heldebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7. excommunicated this *Henry*, the first Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*: from which time till the year 1254. there were continual wars and thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours; some of them being *excommunicated*, some forced to put their necks under the feet of the Pope; others to quit the care of the Common-wealth, and betake themselves unto the wars of the *Holy-Land*, leaving the Pope to doe what he list in *Germanie*.

1106 16 *Henry* V. son of *Henry* the 4. armed by the Pope against his father, whom he had no sooner succeeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too stiffe in the busines of *investitures*, and raised up the *Saxons* against him: by whom vanquished, and otherwise afflicted by the Popes practises, he was forced to submit unto his commands; and was the last Emperour of the house of *Franconia*.

1125 17 *Lotharius* Duke of *Saxonie*, seised on the Empire without any *election*, reconciled unto the *German* Princes by the means of S. *Bernard*. He settled the affairs of *Italie* in two journies thither, 13.

1136 18 *Conrade* III. son of *Frederick*, the first hereditary Duke of *Sweve*, or *Schwaben*, and fifteen son unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquished *Henry* surnamed the *Proud*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*; and going to the *holy wars* with *Lewis* King of *France* discomfited the *Turks* near the Banks of *Meander*. 15.

1153 19 *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Sueve*, crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3. to whom he was fain at last to submit himself, the Pope insolently treading on his neck. He went after to the *Holy Land*, (where he dyed) having discomfited the *Turks* in three great battels, 39.

1190 20 *Henry* VI. son of *Frederick* King of *Sicil*, in right of *Constance* his wife, crowned by Pope *Celestine*, who employed him in the wars of the *Holy Land*; in his journey towards which, he dyed at *Messina*. 8.

1198 21 *Philip* Duke of *Sueve*, brother of *Henry* the 6. excommunicated by the Pope (who loved not this Familie) by whose means *Otho* the son of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxonie*, was set up against him. The occasion of great wars among the *Germans*, reconciled by marriage of *Otho* with a daughter of *Philip*. 9.

1207 22 *Otho* IV. son of *Henry* surnamed the *Lyon*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3. by whom not long after excommunicated, for taking into his hands some towns of *Italie* which belonged to the Empire: vanquished in *Brabant* by the faction raised up against him, he relinquished the Empire to his Competitor.

1212 23 *Frederick* II. King of *Sicil* and *Naples*, son of *Henry* the 6. having settled *Germanie* disposed himself for the wars of the *Holy Land*, where he recovered the possession of the Realm of *Jerusalem*; excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italie*, not long after poisoned.

1250 24 *Conrade* IV. son of *Frederick*, the last Emperour of the house of *Schwaben*. After whose death, the Empire being distracted by the Popes practises into many factions, each faction chose an Emperor or King of the *Romans*: so that at one time there were elected, *Henry* Earl of *Turingia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Alfonso* King of *Castile*, the renowned author of the *Alfonsive* Tables, and

1254 25 *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, brother of *Henry* the 3. of *England*, the best-monyed man of all his time, supposed therewith to buy the suffrages of the Archbishop of *Colen*, and Electour *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, *anno* 1254. and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he dyed. During these battels, and the times since *Henry* the fourth, the Popes had in a manner forced the Emperours to abandon *Italie*, so that *Rodolphus* who succeeded, sold all his rights in *Italie* to the fairest chapman. Nor did the craft of the Popes rest there, but extended into *Germanie* also: where by arming the Princes against the Emperours, and raising the Prelates to the dignitie and estate of Princes, he made the Empire of small power and consideration. Made smaller yet by the unworthinesse and

and weakneſſe of ſome of the Emperours, who to get that honour for themſelves, or to leave it after them to their ſons, diſmembred from the ſame many towns and fair poſſeſſions, given by them to the *Electors* for their votes and ſuffrages: by means whereof the Princes grew in time ſo ſtrong, that there were few of them who durſt not undertake a warre againſt their Emperors. And this appeareth by the Example of *Charls* the fifth, who though the moſt mighty and moſt puiſſant Emperour which had been in *Germanie* ſince the death of *Charls* the Great, yet found himſelf ſo over-matched by theſe ruffling Princes, that he was willing to reſign the Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*. But to proceed; after an *interregnum* of 12 years from the *Exit* of *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, the title was at laſt accepted by

1273 26 *Rodolph* Earl of *Habsburg*, a petite Prince, (others of greater Eſtates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raiſer of the preſent *Auſtrian* Familie.

1292 27 *Adolph* Earl of *Naſſaw*, who ſerved in perſon under King *Edward* the firſt of *England* againſt the *French*; for which diſreliſhed by the *Germans*, he was encountred and ſlain near the Citie of *Spires*.

1298 28 *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Rodolphus* the Emperour, to whom Pope *Boniface* the 8. gave the Realm of *France*, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the *Fair*. But *Albert* would not meddle out of *Germanie*, and did nothing in it.

1308 29 *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg* made a journey into *Italie* to recover the rights of the Empire (where an Emperour had not been ſeen in 60 years) ſuppoſed to be poiſoned in the Chalice by a Frier at *Benevent* a town of the Popes. 6.

1314 30 *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner, oppoſed by *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, choſe by another Faction, and crowned at *Bonna*, a town of the Archbiſhop of *Coleno*, but being defeated, *Lewis* remained ſole Emperour, excommunicated by Pope *John* 22. 33.

1346 31 *Charls* IV. ſon of *John* King of *Bohemia*, and grandſon of *Henry* the 7. crowned with the iron Crown at *Millain*, 1354. the framer of the *Golden Bull*. 32.

1378 32 *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, deformed and vicious, depoſed by the *German* Princes. 22.

1400 33 *Rupertus* Elector *Palatine* paſſed into *Italie* for the recovery of the Dukedome of *Millain*, ſold by *Wenceſlaus*; but was well beat by *John Galeazes*, and ſo returned. 10.

1410 34 *Jodocus Barbatus*, Marqueſſe of *Moravia*, uncle to *Wenceſlaus*.

1411 35 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, crowned at *Rome* on Whitſunday, 1432. travelled exceedingly for eſtabliſhing the peace of Chriſtendom, diſtracted at that time with three Popes at once, a great promoter of the Councell of *Conſtance*.

1439 36 *Albert* II. Duke of *Auſtria*, ſon in law of *Sigiſmund*, whom he ſucceeded in all his eſtates and titles excepting *Luxembourg*. 1.

1440 37 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Auſtria*, the ſon of *Erneſt* of *Auſtria*, and next heir of *Albert* the 2. procured the calling of the Councell of *Baſil* for the peace of *Chriſtendome*; travelling for that cauſe to *Rome*, where declared Emperour, *anno* 1442. 54.

1494 38 *Maximilian*, ſon of *Frederick*, Duke of *Auſtria*, who firſt united the Eſtates of *Burgundie* to the houſe of *Auſtria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went thorough with none. 25.

1519 39 *Charls* V. King of *Spain*, ſon of *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundie*. A puiſſant Prince who had priſoners at the ſame time the *French* King, and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruined the League made by the *Proteſtants* at *Smalcade*, took priſoners the Electour of *Saxony*, and the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, drave the great Turk from *Vienna*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and in the end reſigned all his Eſtates and dyed in a Monaſterie. 39.

1558 40 *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, the brother of *Charls*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charls*, *anno* 1531. Upon whoſe reſignation he was choſen Emperour, *anno* 1558. 7.

1565 41 *Maximilian* the ſon of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, *anno* 1562. ſucceeding in the Empire after his deceaſe.

1577 42 *Rodolphus*, the eldeſt ſon of *Maximilian*, had great wars againſt the *Turk*, with whom in the year 1600 he concluded a peace; but being undermined by his brother *Matthias*, was forced to ſurrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, and to content himſelf with *Auſtria* and the Empire only. Theſe eight laſt Emperours were all of the order of the Garter. 36.

1612 43 *Matthias* brother of *Rodolphus* K. of *Hungarie*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*; in whoſe time were ſown the ſeeds of that terrible war, which had almoſt deſtroyed the Empire. Having no children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gratz*, to be declared Succeſſor into his Eſtates.

1619 44 *Ferdinand* of *Gratz*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Charls* of *Gratz*, one of the younger ſons of *Maximilian* the 2. ſucceeded *Matthias* in all his Eſtates and titles. A Prince more zealouſly affected to the See of *Rome* then any of his Predeceſſors, and a great enemy

of

of the Proteſtant Religion; occaſioning thereby that long and bloudy war in the Empire of *Germanie*, not yet fully ended.

1637 45 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2. broke the great power of the *Swedes*, (called in for the ſupport of the *German* liberty, & againſt the violent reſolutions of his Father) at the battle of *Norlingen*, the 12. Emperour of the houſe of *Habsburg*, and the 9. of the houſe of *Auſtria* without intermiſſion. The cauſe of which is to be attributed to *Charls* the fift, who procured in his life time that his brother might be choſen *Rex Romanorum*, as his ſucceſſour. Now *Rex Romanorum* is defined to be one, who is already ſo farre eſtated in the Empire, that on the death, depoſition, or reſignation of the preſent Emperour, he is immediately to ſucceed. This definition may paſſe, though there be no neceſſity of the ſucceeding of the *Rex Romanorum* into the Empire. For *Charls* the fift, though he made his brother King of the *Romans*, had no ſmall hopes to have left his ſon *Philip* his ſucceſſour in the Empire: for fear of which, it was thought by many that his brother lent D. *Maurice* a helping hand to drive him out of *Germany*. The reaſon why *Charls* did inſtitute this *Rex Romanorum*, was (queſtionleſſe a deſire to perpetuate the *Soveraignty* in his own houſe: but his pretences were, 1. Becauſe he having the command of many Nations, he could not alwayes be preſent in *Germany*. 2. The troubled State of *Chriſtendome*, by reaſon of *Luthers* preaching, eſpecially there. 3. The violent power of the *Turks*, who now began to be nigh neighbours unto them. 4. The late *Rurall war* raiſed by the *Boores*, and ſcarce yet thoroughly extinct. And 5. The imminent diſobedience in every part of the Empire, ſeemed to require a Prince both of power and title to aſſiſt him in the Government of it. By theſe ſuggeſtions he effected his deſign therein; but hereby changed in a manner, the *Imperiall* ſtile. For whereas the firſt Emperours of the houſe of *Charls* the Great, were Emperours of the *Romans* and Kings of *Germanie*: the later Emperours of the houſe of *Charls* the fift, may not improperly be called Emperours of *Germanie* and Kings of the *Romans*. Tis true indeed, that the underſtanding and wiſe D. of *Saxonie* through all theſe fair pretences truly ſaw the main plot; which was to take *Germanie* (as *Galba*, in his excellent Oration to *Piſo*, ſaid of the *Roman* Empire) *unius quaſi familiæ hæreditatem*, and therefore he firſt flatly denyed to yeild to any ſuch *election*. Then he motioned that there might be an act made to prohibit the continuance of the *Imperial* authority, longer in one family, then for 3 ſucceſſions. But prevailing in neither, he left the *Electors*, by whom *Ferdinand* was choſen, and not long after crowned at *Aken* or *Aquiſgrane* in *Cleveland*, the 16 of *January*, *anno* 1531. This policie hath been ever ſince continued by his ſucceſſours; and the *Germans* are the more willing to hearken to it, becauſe the *Auſtrian* Princes are Natives of this Countrey, and able to back out the Empire in its compleat Majeſtie.

And to ſay truth, it is but need that ſome great Prince or other be *elected* to it, who by the power and reputation of his own eſtate may preſerve the honour of the *Empire*; confined in a manner within *Germany*, and there ſo weakened by the alienating of whole Countries from it (ſome titulary acknowledgement excepted onely, that it is nothing in effect, but *magni nominis umbra*, the ſhadow of a mighty body, a meere empty title. For if we looke upon the preſent ſtate and condition of it, we ſhall finde it otherwiſe too weak to ſupport the great and ſwelling title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire it ſelf it hath ſome Countries reputed as parts of it, which yet acknowledge no ſubjection, as *Belgium*, *Switzerland*, and *Denmark*: Some doe acknowledge a kind of ſubjection, but the Princes of them come not to the *Imperiall Diets*, as the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Lorrain*, and ſome of the *Italian* Potentates. Finally, ſome both confeſſe the Emperour to be their Soveraign, and that they owe ſervice to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of *Germany* onely; but thoſe ſo priviledged, ſo exempted from his commands, ſo abſolute and incontrollable in their own eſtates, that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his perſon: of which we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter, when we come unto the form of the publick Government. In the mean time if we would know by what occaſions the Empire became ſo infeebled; it may be ſaid, that the reaſons and occaſions of it have been very many. As the firſt, the weakneſſe and improvidence of the *Caroline* race, diſmembring from it many powerfull and wealthy Provinces, reſerving onely a bare *Homage*, and ſome ſlight acknowledgement. 2ly, The cunning of the Popes, who knowing that they could not wax ſtrong in *Italy*, if they did not weaken the Emperours eſtate in *Germany*, firſt wreſted out of their hands the *Inveſtiture* of the *Biſhops*, *Abbots*, and other *Eccleſiaſticall preferments*: who being now made their owne creatures, were ſo increaſed both in revenue and power by little and little, and fortified with ſo many immunities, that ſome of them grew in time to be *Free Eſtates*, all of them *Princes* of the *Empire*. 3ly, But fearing that this might not bring the Emperours low enough, they baited them with continuall factions and perpetuall broils; which put them to a neceſſity of making what friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them: and taking up what moneys they could of the wealthier Cities; paying them in *exemptions* and Royall *priviledges*, when they could not otherwiſe cancel or diſcharge the debt. 4ly, And unto this, the making the Empire *Elective* gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire but as *Tenants* of it for *term of life*; and therefore were more likely to diſcharge ſuch debts by impairing the Publick *Patrimonie*, which they had no hold in, then to diminiſh any thing of their own eſtates.

Cleveland. eſtates. 5ly, But being the title of Emperour was the greateſt honour, which any of that Nation could be capable of, and ſuch as by good husbandry might be made beneficiall unto their poſterity, (as we ſee what good uſes have been made of it by the *Auſtrian* family ever ſince the time of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*): who would not part with ſome of the *Imperiall* rights to advance his owne houſe to an equall greatneſſe. 6ly, A thing which the *Electours* underſtood ſufficiently, and therefore were reſolved to make the beſt of the market, knowing that the commodity could be bought of none but themſelves: as in the *Election* of *Wenceſlaus* ſonne of *Charles* the 4th, of whom it was but *aſk and have*, what they had a minde to.

By theſe and every of theſe meanes the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Eſtates, and thoſe Eſtates to be made abſolute and *independent* as before is ſaid. The principall whereof, which being deſcribed will make up the *Chorographie* of this great Continent, are thoſe of 1. *Cleveland*, 2. of the Eſtates of the three ſpirituall Electors, 3. the Palatinate of the *Rhene*, 4. *Alſatia*, 5. *Lorrain*, 6. *Suevia* or *Schwallen*, 7. *Bavaria*, 8. *Auſtria* and its *appendixes*, 9. The confederation of *Wederaw*, 10. *Franconia*, 11. *Wittenberg*, and 12. *Baden*, 13. the Palatinate of *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, 14. *Bohemia*, and the incorporate Provinces, 15. *Pomerania*, 16. *Mecklenberg*, 17. the Marquiſate of *Brandenberg*, 18. *Saxonie* and the Members of it, 19. the Dukedomes of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, 20. the Lantgravedom of *Haſſia*, 21. *VVeſtphalen*, 22. *Eaſtfriſeland*. Such leſſer States as being abſolute and free, are of leſſer moment, ſhall be reduced (together with the *Imperiall* Cities) to thoſe ſeverall Provinces, in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Holſtein* or *Holſatia*, though it be *Imperiall*, and in which reſpect by ſome accounted as a Province of *Germany*: yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that Kingdom; I ſhall there ſpeak of it. Some of theſe are thus cenſured by *Aubanus* a late writer. They of *Suevia* (ſaith hee) are whores; they of *Franconia* Raviſhers and Buggers; they of *Bohemia* Heretiques; thoſe of *Bavaria* Theeves, they of *Saxony* Drunkards; they of *Friſeland* and *Weſtphalia* Swearers; and they of the *Palatinate*, Gluttons. But I hope more charitably of them all then ſo. I know there is another diviſion of this Countrey, made by the Emperour *Maximilian* at the Diet of *Colen*, *anno* 1522. who for the better raiſing both of men and money for all Publick ſervices, cauſed it to be divided into the ten Circles of 1. *Lower Saxony*, 2. *Upper Saxony*, 3. *VVeſtphalia*, 4. of the *Rhene*, 5. of the *four Electours* of that part, 6. *Franconia*, 7. *Suevia*, 8. *Bavaria*, 9. *Auſtria*, and 10. *Burgundie*. But that before propoſed being the more particular I ſhall follow that, according to the order before laid down, beginning firſt with thoſe which together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the Dukedome of *Lorrain*, contained antiently the Provinces of *Belgica* and *Germania prima*; and ſome part of *Germania ſecunda*; and made up the Kingdome of *Auſtraſia* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called.

CLEVELAND.

CLEVELAND, or the Eſtates of the Duke of *Cleve*, before diſmembred and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedome on the death of the laſt Duke hereof, *anno* 1609. contained the Dukedomes of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and Berg, and the Earldome of *Mark* or *March*, all lying in a ring together. And though theſe two laſt lye on the other ſide of the *Rhene*, and ſo not properly within the old precincts of the Kingdome of *Lorrain*, or any of the *Roman* Provinces before named: yet being they belonged all to the ſame Prince, not parted by the interpoſition of other Countries, they ſhall be handled here together as the ſame Eſtate.

1. The Dukedome of CLEVE, properly and diſtinctly ſo called, hath on the Eaſt the Countries of *Mark* and Berg, with ſome part of *VVeſtphalen*; on the Weſt *Guelderland*, and ſome part of *Limbourg*: on the North the Earldome of *Zutphen*, and the land of *Overyſſell*; and on the South *Gulick* and the land of *Colen*. So called from *Cleve* the chief town of it.

The Countrey very fruitfull both for Corn and paſturage, well ſtocked with Cattell of all ſorts, for neceſſarie uſe and pleaſure; good ſtore of *Fowle*, both tame and wilde: bleſſed alſo with an healthy air, and in a word, with all things needfull for the life of man: well watered with the *Rhene*, the *Roer*, the *Duſſell*, the *Ezſat*, and the *Nirſt*, common to this and the reſt of the *incorporate* Provinces.

Places of moſt importance in it are firſt *Cleve* (in Latine *Clivia*) ſo called becauſe built on the ſides of three little hils (which the *Latines* call *Clivi*), gently deſcending towards the Banks of the *Rhene*, which not far off divides it ſelf into ſeverall channels. An antient town, and of great note in former times, as appeares by many old foundations, and other monuments of Antiquity, continually digged up in the fields adjoining, but chiefly by an old foreſquare Tower, built on the higheſt of the three hils, of great height and ſtate; founded by *Julius Cæſar* as a bulwork againſt the *Germans* inhabiting the further ſide of the River. For proof of which beſides the old tradition conſtantly maintained, there is an *Inſcription* on the Gates of the Dukes Palace, neer adjoining to it, which ſaith *anno ab Urbe* DCXCIIX. C. Julius Dictator, *his partibus ſubactis, hanc Arcem fundavit. i.e.* that in the yeare 698 from the building of *Rome*, *Julius Cæſar* the *Dictator*, having ſubdued thoſe parts of the Countrey, cauſed this *Tower* to be built. 2. *Santen*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, a town of great antiquity, as the ruines of it doe declare; ſuppoſed by *Pighius* to bee the *Trajan* a *Colonia* of the Antients. 3. *VVeſel* (in *Latine Veſalia*) a fair and rich town, ſeated on the confluence of the *Rhene* with the river of *Lippe*, which riſing in *VVeſtphalia* doth here loſe it ſelfe: of great

Gulick.

great note for a Colledge of ſecular Canons, built here by *Eberard* the ninth Earl, *anno* 840 or thereabouts, and an hoſpitall liberally endowed for old impotent perſons, founded by *Henry de Baers* the Dukes *Chancellour*. A town not ſubject to theſe Dukes though within the Dukedome, being reckoned an *Imperiall City* and one of the *Hanſe Towns*; now neither ſo *Imperiall* nor ſo *Free*, as formerly: poſſeſſed firſt by the *Spaniard* with a Garriſon of 3000 men, (at the beginning of the war of *Cleve*) by D. *Lewis Velaſco*; and from them taken by the *States* of the *United Provinces*, *anno* 1628. 4. *Burich*, on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, over againſt *Weſel*, amongſt goodly corn fields and pleaſant paſtures. 5 *Duisberg*, or *Tuitebberg*, in *Latine* called *Teuto-burgum*, a town of the antient *Germans*, (as the name importeth) ſituate on the *Rhene*, betwixt the *Angra* and the *Ruer*, two noted Rivers. A town formerly of great treding, and notably well built, *Imperiall*, and one of the *Hanſe*, but ceaſed to be *Imperiall* when ſold by *Rodulph* of *Habſpurg* to *Theodorick* the ninth of that name Earl of *Cleve*, and together with 6 *Cravenburg*, another town of this Dukedome, but of leſſer note. 7 *Emmerick* on the *Rhene*, a well frequented town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8 *Rees*, 9 *Griet*, and 10 *Grietbuſen*, all upon the *Rhene*. 11 *Calcar*, a town more within the land, but not far from the River, grown wealthy by the trade of cloathing, and the beſt *beere* or *ale* in all theſe parts, ſold thence aboundantly into the Countrey round about. Not far from whence, at a place called *Auf de Baern*, it is ſuppoſed that *Cæſar Germanicus* built his bridge over the *Rhene*, when he went from *Vetera Caſtra* againſt the *Marſi*, a nation of *Germany*. 12 *Gennep* upon the *Niers* or *Nirſi*, not far from its influx into the *Maes*, which together with *Duiſſeck* and *Riexwald* were bought of *Sigiſmund* the Emperour by *Adolph* the firſt Duke of *Cleve* for a great ſum of money.

South of the land of *Cleve*, betwixt it and *Colen*, lyeth the County of *MUERS*, extended all along on the bankes of the *RHENE*, a diſtinct State, the Earle of which is ſubject to no other Prince, but the Emperor only: ſo called from *Muers* the chief town of it, ſituate on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene* over againſt *Duyſburgh*. Next Towns to which are 2. *Orſay*, 3. *Angut*; of which little memorable. A ſmall territory, but in a very fruitfull ſoil. The neighbourhood whereof to the land of *Colen* (to which it ſerveth as an Outwork upon that ſide) preſerving it in former times from the Dukes of *Cleve*; who otherwiſe, no doubt, either by Arms or marriage had been maſters of it; as they were of the adjoyning Provinces on both ſides of the River.

2. *GULICK-LAND*, or the Dukedome of *Gulick*, hath on the Eaſt the County of *Muers*, and the land of *Colen*; on the Weſt *Guelderland* and *Limbourg*; on the North *Cleve*, and on the South the reſt of the land of *Colen*. The Aire and Soil much of the ſame nature as in *Cleve*; ſave that here is a greater plenty of Woad for dying, and a better breed of Horſes then in the other.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Gulick*, in *Latine Juliacum*, (whence the *French* call it *Juliers*) known by that name in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*; ſufficient proof for the Antiquity thereof, but not otherwiſe famous. Seated upon the River *Roer*; the chief ſeat heretofore of the Dukes of *Gulick*, before the uniting hereof with *Cleve*: and ſince the diſſolution of that Eſtate poſſeſſed ſometimes by the States of the *United Provinces*, and ſometimes by the *Spaniards*; called in by the Competitors to aſſert their Titles. 2 *Duerin*, on the ſame River, the *Marcoduram* of the old writers; and of late memorable for the long ſiege which it held againſt *Charles* the fift, in his wars againſt *William* Duke of *Cleve* and *Gulick* for the Dukedom of *Guelders*. 3. *Munſter Eyphels* (in *Latine*, *Monaſterium Eyphalie*) ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Munſter* of *Weſtphalen*, pleaſantly ſeated in a valley begirt with mountaines not far from the ſpring or fountaine of the river *Erfat*. 4 *Caſter* ſo called of a ſtately and magnificent *Caſtle* built for defence of this part of the Countrey. 5 *Berken* on the river *Erp*. 6 *Meroden* beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which gives name to an honourable and antient family. 7 *Enskereh*. 8 *Berklen*, &c.

There is alſo within the limits of this Dukedome, the famous town of *Aix*, as the *French*, or *Aken*, as the *Germans* call it: famous of old times for the *hot Bathes* both within and without the town; whence it had the name of *Aixt* or *Aquen*, (in *Latine*, *Aquiſgranum*) ſituate on the edge of *Limbourg*, in a fruitfull ſoil; but the buildings nothing anſwerable to the fame of the place, inhabited for the moſt part by *Smiths* and *Braſiers*, who drive the greateſt trade herein: working continually on iron and other metals, with which they are ſupplyed aboundantly out of *Liege* and *Limbourg*. The town *Imperiall*, but under the protection of the Dukes of *Cleve*: at the expiration of which family, under colour of ſome quarrels about *Religion*, it was ſeiſed on, and garriſoned by Marquis *Spinola*, for the King of *Spain*. Of great fame formerly for the death and ſepulture of *Charles the great*, by whom made one of the three *Seates* of the Weſtern Empire, and deſigned by him to be the place in which the *King of the Romans* ſhould receive his Crowne for the Kingdome of *Germany*, at the hands of the Archbiſhop of *Colen*. The town ſuppoſed to be formerly that wintring Campe of the *Romans*, called in *Tacitus Vetera*, which was taken by *Civilis* in the beginning of his rebellion againſt *Veſpaſian*; during which warres it is often mentioned by the Writers of thoſe times. They were built and ſtrengthened by *Auguſtus*, the better to keep under the *Germans*: *quippe illis hybernis obſideri premique* Germanias Auguſtus *credideraat*; as *Tacitus*. At this day this Towne and *Iriers* are reputed famous for holy reliques: here being ſaid to be among others the *bearing cloth* wherein our Saviour was wrapt, when he was in his ſwadling clouts; which the Emperour ſolemnly worſhippeth at his *inauguration*. Concerning the ambition which the Papiſts have to bee thought poſſeſſours of theſe *reilques*: See I beſeech

Berg.

ſeech you how pitifully they have mangled the head of S. *John Baptiſt*. They of *Amiens* brag that they have his face, and ſo do they of S. *John D'Angeli*. The reſt of his head is at *Malta*, yet is the hinder part of his ſcull at *Namur*, and his brain at *Novum Roſtovienſe*. Another part of it is at *Maurienna*, another piece at *Paris*, his jaw at *Weſel*, his ear at S. *Flowres*, his fore-head and hair at S. *Salvadores* in *Venice*, another piece of his head is at *Noyon*, and another at *Luca*, yet is his whole head intire and unmaimed in S. *Sylveſters* Church at *Rome*: and ſo no doubt is this bearing-cloth at more places then one.

But to return again to *Gulick*; firſt made an *Earldom* in the perſon of *Euſtace* brother of *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* Duke of *Lorrain*, who ſeiſed upon it, as his part of the Eſtate, on the death of *Godfrey*, his elder brother being abſent in the *Holy-Land*. In the perſon of *William* the 4. of that name, it was made a Marquiſate, advanced unto that honour by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *anno* 1329. created not long after Duke of *Gulick*, by *Charls* the 4. *anno* 1356. His two ſons, *William* and *Reynold*, both Dukes ſucceſſively, dying without iſſue: the Eſtate fell to *Adolphus* Duke of *Berg*, or *Mont*, as the next heir male, *anno* 1423. and finally together with that of *Berg*, was added to the Dukedome of *Cleve* by the marriage of *Mary* heir hereof, with *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve*, with which conjoined till the expiration of that noble familie; whereof more anon.

As for the Eſtates of *Berg* and *March*, they had one originall, begun by two Brothers, the ſons of *Theodorick* Lord of *Teiſterbant*, of the houſe of *Cleve*; out of which houſe as they deſcended, ſo into that they finally were again reſolved as their firſt materials. Of theſe two brothers *Adolphus* being the Elder, was by the Emperour *Henry* ſurnamed the *Fowler*, made Earl of *Altena*, *anno* 930. or thereabouts: and *Eberard* the younger by the ſame Emperour made Earl of *Berg*. But *Eberard* entring a Monaſterie of his own Foundation, left his eſtate and Earldome of *Berg* to the elder brother. United thus into one eſtate, they became again divided betwixt the ſons of *Adolph* the 3. of that name, and fourth Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*. *Engelbert* the younger ſon enjoying the eſtate of *Berg*, and *Eberard* the elder ſucceeding his father in that of *Altena*. How they became united to the houſe of *Cleve*, wee ſhall ſee hereafter, having firſt looked over the *Chorographie* or *Deſcription* of them.

3. The Dukedom of *BERG*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, and the Countrie of *March*; on the Weſt with the *Rhene* from *Weſel* up as high as *Colen*, by which parted from the Dukedome of *Cleve*; on the North with the River *Lippe*, which ſeparates it from the reſt of *Cleve*; and on the South with the Land of *Colen*. So called from the hillineſſe of the Countrie, *Berg* in Dutch ſignifying an hill, (as *Bourg* doth a Town or Burrough) from whence the Earls and Dukes hereof are called *Montenſes* in *Latine*, and *Les Contes*, and *Ducs de Mont* in *French*. The Countrie for the moſt part, in the Vales eſpecially, yeelds a great ſtore of the beſt wheat, and conſequently of the pureſt bread; and in the hill Countries rich mines of Coale, wherewith they doe ſupply their neighbours.

Chief places in it are, 1 *Duſſeldorp*, ſo called of the River *Duſſel*, upon which it is ſituate, the River not far off falling into the *Rhene*. 2 *Adenbourg* built by *Eberard* the firſt Earl of *Berg*, the ſeat of him and his ſucceſſours, till removed to *Duſſeldorp*. 3 *Keiſerſwerd*, ſituate on the Rhene, belonging anciently to the Empire, but bought for a great ſum of mony of *Charls* the 4. by *John* Earl of *Cleve*. 4 *Mulheim*, on the *Rhene* alſo, juſt againſt *Colen* on the other ſide of the water, fortified in the year 1614. and made the Receptacle of the Proteſtants of that Biſhoprick, prohibited the free exerciſe of Religion in their own dwellings; but razed not long after by Marquis *Spinola* on complaint made by thoſe of *Colen* to the Emperour *Matthias*. 5. *Stelt*, or *Steltium*, on the *Roer*, amongſt the Coale mines. 6. *Angermond*, on the mouth of the River *Angra*, as the name imports. 7. *Eſſen* or *Eſſendia*, on the borders of the Countie of *March*, once an *Imperiall*, but under the protection of the Earls of *Berg*. Of moſt note for a Monaſterie here built by *Alfride* the 4. Biſhop of *Hildeſheim* for 52 Nuns and 20 Canons, liberally endowed, and having great command on the *Dorps* adjoining.

How *Berg* at firſt was made an Earldom, how joined unto *Altena*, and disjoined again, hath been ſhewed before. No ſooner made a State diſtinct, but it was added to the patrimonie of the Earls of *Gulick* by the marriage of Earl *William* with the daughter and heir of *Berg*. Parted again betwixt *William* and *Adolphus* ſons of *Gerrard* the 2. *anno* 1247. the firſt ſucceeding in the Earldom of *Gulick*, and the laſt in *Berg*. During this partage made a Dukedom in the perſon of *William* the firſt of that name, by *Wenceſlaus* the Emperour, *anno* 1389. whoſe ſon *Adolphus* as next heir ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Gulick*, *anno* 1423. How both were added unto *Cleve*, hath been ſaid alreadie.

Gulick and Berg.

The DUKES and EARLS of BERG. GULICK.

A.Ch.			A.Ch.		
	1	*Engelbert* the first Earl of *Berg*, distinct from *March*.	1129	1	*Eustace* the first Earl of *Gulick* distinct from *Lorrain*.
	2	*Adolphus* son of *Engelbert*.		2	son of *Eustace*.
	3	*N.* the sister of *Adolphus*		3	*William* Earl of *Gulick*.
		4 *Gerrard* Earl of *Gulick* and *Berg*.			
		5 *William* II. son of *Gerrard*.			
		6 *Gerrard* II. son of *William* the 2.			
1247	7	*Adolphus* II. younger son of *Gerrard* the 2.	1247	7	*William* III. eldest son of *Gerrard* the 2,
1296	8	*William* III. son of *Adolphus*.		8	*Gerrard* III. son of *William*.
1337	9	*Gerrard* III.		9	*Gerrard* IV. son of *Gerrard* the 2.
	10	*William* IV. created the first Duke of *Berg*, *anno* 1389. outed of the greatest part of his Estate by his son *Adolphus*.	1325	10	*William* IV. created first Marquesse, after Duke of *Gulick*.
				11	*William* V. Duke of *Gulick* and *Gueldres*.
				12	*Rainold* Duke of *Gulick* and *Gueldres*.

A.Ch.		
	11	*Adolphus* III. the son of *William* the first Duke of *Berg*, succeeded also unto *Rainold* the last Duke of *Gulick*, dying without issue, 1423.
1434	12	*Gerrard* IV. of *Berg*, and V. of *Gulick*, son of *William*, and brother of *Adolphus*.
1475	13	*William* V. of *Berg*, and VI. of *Gulick*, son of *Gerrard*.
1511	14	*Marie* daughter and heir of *William* Dutchesse of *Gulick* and *Berg*, conveyed the whole Estate in marriage to *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, continuing in that Familie till the expiration of it in the person of *John William* the last Prince hereof, *anno* 1610.

4 The Earldom of *MARCH* or *MARK*, hath on the East and North *Westphalia*, on the West the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the South that of *Berg* or *Mont*. So called as being seated in the *Marches* of *Westphalen*, out of which it was taken. The Countrie for the most part like the rest of *Westphalen*, more fit for pasturage then corn; woodie and yeelding store of *pawnage* to those heards of swine, with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1 *Werden* upon the River *Ruer*, on the edge of *Westphalia*, the people whereof get great wealth by grazing of Cattle. 2 *Soest* (in *Latine*, *Sustatum*) for wealth and greatnesse not inferiour to any in *Westphalen*, (except *Munster* only) consisting of ten parishes, and lording it over many rich and pleasant Villages. Anciently it belonged to the Bishops of *Colen*, but in the year 1444. did voluntarily yeild it self to the Duke of *Cleve*, (being then Earl of *March* also) and by Duke *John* the 4. courageously defended against those Prelates. 3 *Arusberg*, a fine and pleasant site, used for a retiring place by the Electours of *Colen*, unto whom it belongs. 4 *Dortmond*, (in *Latine*, *Tremonia*) a Countie anciently of it self, and held immediately of the Empire, possessed by the *Trotmanni*, a tribe of the *Suevians*, from whence first called *Trotmania*, and at last *Tremonia*. 5 *Blancostein*, built commodiously by *Adolphus* the fift of that name, and first Earl of *March*, as was also 6 *Ham* or *Hammone*. 7 *Unna*, of which nothing memorable. 8 *Altena*, the first title of the Earls of this house, before they assumed that of the Earls of *March*, assumed first by *Adolphus* the 4. on the Conquest of some Lands in the *Marches* of *Westphalen*, continuing in that Familie till united with *Cleve*.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of *CLEVE*, out of which it was taken, and to which the rest of those estates did in time accrew; it was one of the most ancient Estates or Principalities in these parts of the world: continuing in a direct line for the space of 900 years held by them of the Kings of *France*, and afterwards of the Kings of *Lorrain*, till the incorporating of that Kingdom with the *German* Empire. Begun first by *Elias Grullius*, companion to *Charls Martel*, in his wars against the *Frisons*, *Saxons*, and *Bavarians*, whose son *Theodorick* added hereto by marriage the Countie of *Teisterbant*, containing

Cleve, & Mark.

containing the Towns and *Seigneuries* of *Altena*, in *Weſtphalen*, as alſo of *Bomel*, *Heuſden*, *Buren*, *Culemberg*, in the *Belgick* Provinces. By *Baldwin* the ſixt Earl was added the territory of *Twentzen*, (in *Latine*, *Regio Tuentana*) given him by *Ludovicus Pius*; by *Theodorick* the fift, the town and *Seigneurie* of *Duiſlake*, ſetled upon him on his marriage with *Mathilda*, the heir thereof: by *Theodorick* the 9. the County of *Hulkenrade*, near *Nuys*, in the land of *Colen*: together with the towns of *Duysburg*, and *Culembourg*, bought of *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*: by *John* his ſon the town and territory of *Keiſarſwerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4. By *Adolph* the 29. Earl, the Earldome of *March*, formerly taken out of it, was again united: by *Adolph* his ſucceſſour, (made the firſt Duke hereof by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, *anno* 1417.) the Lordſhips of *Gennep*. *Duiffels*, and *Reixwald*, bought of the ſaid Emperour; together with the County of *Ravenſtein*, the Towns of *Leoburg*, *Limers*, and *Hatteren*, for the ranſome of *William* Duke of Berg, and other noble perſons taken priſoners by him *anno* 1397. by *John* the firſt Duke of that name, the Town and territory of *Soeſt*; and finally by *John* the 3. the Dukedomes of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as heir thereof by his mother *Mary*, ſole daughter and heir of *William* the fift and ſixt, the laſt Duke thereof. To which great height this ancient and noble family had not long attained, and thereby made themſelves and their ſons and daughters fit matches for the greateſt Princes: but it pleaſed God to bring it to its fatall end, and by that means to diſſipate this brave eſtate in the hands of ſtrangers: as ſhall be ſhewed in the Concluſion of this Catalogue of

The EARLES and DUKES of *CLEVE*.

A. Ch.		
717	1	*Elias Grallius* companion in the wars of *Charles Martell*.
732	2	*Theodorick* Earl of *Cleve*, and Lord of *Teiſterbant*.
755	3	*Rainold* ſon of *Theodorick* Earl of *Cleve* and *Teiſterbant*.
767	4	*Conon*, of great fame in Armes, under *Charles* the great.
778	5	*John*, ſon of *Conon*, marryed the daughter of *Michael Curopalates* Emperour of *Conſtaminople*.
790	6	*Robert*, the eldeſt ſon of *John*.
798	7	*Baldwin*, the brother of Earl *Robert*. After whoſe death *anno* 830. the Earldone of *Teiſterbant* was taken out of it, and made the portion of *Robert* a younger ſon; from whom deſcended the two houſes of *March* and *Berg*.
830	8	*Ludowick*, ſon of *Baldwin*.
834	9	*Eberard*, brother of *Ludovick*; who gave *Teiſterbant* to his brother *Robert*.
843	10	*Luithardus*, Earl of *Cleve*.
878	11	*Baldwin* II.
928	12	*Arnold*.
968	13	*Wignan*, ſon of *Arnold*.
1004	14	*Conrade* made an Earl of the Empire, in the life of his father.
1045	15	*Theodorick* II.
1088	16	*Theodorick* III. companion of *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* in the *holy Land*.
1114	17	*Arnold* II. brother of *Theodorick* the 3.
1161	18	*Theodorick* IV.
	19	*Arnold* III.
1205	20	*Arnold* IV.
1218	21	*Theodorick* V.
1229	22	*Theodorick* VI.
1247	23	*Theodorick* VII.
1255	24	*Theodorick* VIII.
1271	25	*Theodorick* IX.
	26	*Otho* ſon of *Theodorick*.
1309	27	*Theodorick* X. brother of *Otho* II.
2325	28	*John* brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the laſt of the maſculine iſſue of *Elias Grallius*.
	29	*Adolphus*, the VII. of *March*, ſon of *Adolph* the 6. of *March*, and *Mary* of *Cleve*, firſt Archbiſhop of *Colen* (as ſix of this houſe of *March* had been (almoſt) ſucceſſively before

EARLES of *ALTENA* and *MARCH*.

A. Ch.		
834	1	*Robert*, ſon of *Baldwin*, to whom the County of *Teiſterbant* was given by *Eberard*.
	2	*Theodorick* ſon of *Robert*, the firſt Lord of *Altena*.
	3	*Adolphus* I. Earl of *Altena*.
	4	*Adolphus* II. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
	5	*Conrade* Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
	4	*Adolph* III. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
	5	*Eberhard* Earl of *Altena*; his younger brother *Engelbert* ſucceeding in *Berg*.
	6	*Frederick*, Earl of *Altena*.
	7	*Adolphus* IV. created the firſt Earl of *March*.
1249	7	*Engelbert*, Earl of *March* and *Altena*.
	8	*Adolphus* V. ſon of *Engelbert*.
	9	*Engelbert* II. from whom by a ſecond wife the daughter and heir of *Aremberg*, deſcended that branch of the houſe of *March*, which till of late, were Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bovillon*.
	10	*Adolph* VI. husband of *Mary* (or *Margaret*) daughter and heir of *Theodorick* the 9. Earl of *Cleve*.

him ſucceeded on the death of his Uncle *John* to the Earldome of *Cleve*; inaugurated thereunto by *Charles* the 4. *Cleve.*

1389 30 *Adolph* II. of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the firſt Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperour *Sigiſmund* at the Councell of *Conſtance*, *anno* 1417.

1443 31 *John* III. ſon of *Adolph*, Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravenſtein*.

1481 32 *John* II. of the rank of Dukes, and the IV of the Earls.

1521 33 *John* III. Duke of *Cleve* and Earl of *March*, &c. by deſcent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in right of his wife, daughter and heir of *William* the laſt Duke thereof.

1539 34 *William* ſon of *John* the 3. and *Mary* his wife, daughter and ſole heir of *William* the laſt Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*: father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the wives of *Henry* the 8. of *England*. He contended very ſtrongly againſt *Charles* the fift for the Dukedome of *Gueldres*, but being too weak for ſo great an Adverſary, made his ſubmiſſion to him at *Venlo*, and ſo ſaved his eſtates.

1584 35 *John William*, ſon of the former *William*, during the life of *Charles Frederick* his elder brother, was Biſhop of *Munſter*; on whoſe death, *anno* 1575. he reſigned that dignity, and in the end ſucceeded his Father in his whole eſtates; which he managed with great piety and prudence tilll the year 1610. and then died iſſueleſſe. The laſt of that ancient and noble family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whoſe death, much quarrell and contention grew about the ſucceſſion, betwixt the ſeverall competitors and pretenders to it: of which the principall were 1. *Leopold* Archduke of *Auſtria*, pretending an inveſtiture from the Emperour *Rodolphus*, to whom for want of heirs males, the eſtate was ſaid to be eſcheated. 2. *John George*, Duke of *Saxonie*, deſcended from *Sibyll*, daughter of Duke *John* the third: at whoſe marriage with *John Frederick* the Electour of *Saxonie an.* 1535, it was ſaid to have been ſolemnly agreed upon, that on the failing of the heirs males of *Cleve*, the iſſue of that marriage ſhould ſucceed therein. 3. *John Sigiſmund* the Electour of *Brandenburg*, in behalf of his ſon, *George William*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, by the Lady *Anne* his wife, eldeſt daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenburg* Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Maria Leonora*, the eldeſt ſiſter and next heir of the Duke deceaſed. 4. *Wolfgangus Guliehnus* Palatine of *Newburg*, ſon of *Magdalen* the younger ſiſter of that *Mary*, who claimed the eſtate as neareſt kinſman one degree to the ſaid laſt Duke. And though the right ſeemed moſt apparently on the ſide of *Brandenbourg*; the *Eſtate* in *tayle* pretended by the Duke of *Saxonie*, being formerly cut off by *Imperiall* authority: and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg*, not of force in *Germanie*; yet being that *Leopold* was in Armes, and had already forced a poſſeſſion of moſt part of the Countrey; the two Princes of *Brandenbourg* and *Newburg* ſoon agreed the controverſie, and by the help of the *Proteſtant* Princes their *Confederates*, recovered the greateſt part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg* not content with his partage, firſt married with a daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*; called in the *Spaniſh* Armes under the command of Marquiſſe *Spinola*, to abet his quarrell: which made *George William*, ſon of the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the *Forces* of the *States*, under the command of *Maurice* Earl of *Naſſaw* after Prince of *Orange*. The iſſue of which war was this, that *Spinola* poſſeſſed himſelf of *Weſel*, *Aken*, *Mullheim*, *Puſſeldorp*, and moſt other places of importance in *Berg*, and *Gulick*; and the States got into their power the Towns of *Gulick*, with *Rees* and *Emmerick*, in the Dukedome of *Cleve*; and almoſt the whole County of *Mark*. And though they both pretend to keep them for the uſe of thoſe Princes in whoſe cauſe they ſtand: yet when ſuch ſtrong parties keep the *Stakes*, it is moſt eaſie to determine who will win the *game*: ſuch alterations as have hapned in the chance of war, by the reciprocall winning and loſing of ſome Towns on both ſides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightfull Princes.

2. *The Eſtates of the three* ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

Adjoyning to the Eſtates of *Cleve* are thoſe of the *Spirituall Electors* of the Empire of *Germanie*, *Colen*, *Ments*, and *Triers*; not ſo contiguous and conterminous as thoſe of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out ſeverally by their metes and boundaries: And firſt for

1. *COLEN-LAND*, or the Eſtate of the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Colen*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Dukedome of *Berg*, from which divided by the *Rhene*; on the Weſt with *Gulick*; on the North with *Cleve* it ſelf and the County of *Muers*; and on the South extending to the land of *Triers*. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Vbii*, in former times poſſeſſed of the Countreys of *Berg*, and *March*; but being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the Clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lievtenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the borders of the *Roman* Empire, as for their own ſecurity againſt that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the reign and under the conduct of *Childerick*, *anno* 412. or thereabouts; and from the *French* by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, *anno* 949.

Colen.
Mentz.

Since that time, the City of *Colen* hath remained *Imperiall*, and of late times incorporated amongſt the *Hanſe-towns*: but the territory near unto it, and a great part of *Weſtphalen*, ſubject immediately to the Biſhop, much of the lands which formerly belonged to the Kingdome of *Lorrain*, being conferred upon this See by the Emperour *Otho* the ſecond at ſuch time as the Dukedome of *Lorrain* was erected by him. The Biſhops See firſt founded here by S. *Maternus*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Peter*; as hath been conſtantly affirmed by old tradition: but howſoever an Epiſcopall See without all queſtion in the time of *Conſtantine*: *Maternus*, Biſhop hereof, ſubſcribing amongſt others to the Councell of *Arles anno* 326. And being *Colen* was in thoſe times the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Germania Secunda* the Biſhop had the power of a *Metropolitan*, according to the rule and obſervation ſo often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made *Elective*, theſe Biſhops, with their brethren of *Mentz* and *Triers*, were made three of the ſeven, which were to nominate and *elect* the ſucceeding Emperour: after which time it is no wonder that they grew both in power and Patrimony.

Places of moſt importance within this *Electorate*, are 1. *Bonn*, ſituate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the moſt pleaſant and fruitfull place of all the Countrey; the ordinary reſidence of the Archbiſhop, whoſe houſe or *Palace* here, is ſaid to be one of the faireſt in all *Germanie*. By *Tacitus* called *Bonna*, and ſometimes *Caſtra Bonnenſia*, the wintering Camp in his times, of the ſixt Legion. 2. *Nuys*, by the ſame writer called *Noveſium*, (*Niveſia* by *Antoninus*) ſeated on the *Erp*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the glories of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundie*: who being reſolved to get this town into his hands, as a convenient paſſe in to *Germanie*, lay ſo long before it, that he loſt the opportunity of joyning with King *Edward* the 4. of *England*, whom he had purpoſely invited to the war of *France*; and yet was fain to go without it. By means whereof he grew ſo low in reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Lorrainer*, forſook by the *Engliſh*, baffled by the *Switzers*, and at laſt overthrown and ſlain by that beggerly nation. 3. *Ernace*, or *Andernach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Antenacum*, one of the ten Garriſons erected by the *Romans* on the banks of the *Rhene*, to ſecure their Province from the *Germans*: the other nine, being *Confluenz*, *Boppart*, *Wormes*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Selts*, *Strasburg*, and *Waſſenberg*. 4. *Lintz*, ſeated on the ſame River alſo. 5. *Sontina*, a town of good repute. 6. *Zulp*, now a village of no eſteem but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* called *Tolbiacum*; moſt memorable for the great victory which *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French* (upon a vow made in the heat of the fight to embrace the Goſpell) obtained againſt the whole power of the *Almans*, never preſuming after that to invade his territories. 7. *Rhineburg*, commonly called *Berck*, the moſt northern town of all the Biſhoprick, ſituate on the *Rhene* (as the name imports) there where the lands of this Biſhop, as alſo of the Dukes of *Cleve*, and the Earls of *Muers*, meet upon a point. A Town which for theſe 60. years hath been of little uſe or profit to the right owner, poſſeſſed ſometimes by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes by the confederate *States*; for each commodiouſly ſeated, as opening a paſſage up the River, and receiving great cuſtomes on all kinde of Merchandiſe paſſing to and fro. But having finally been poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard* from the year 1606, till 1633, it was then regained for the *States* by *Henry* of *Naſſaw* Prince of *Orange*; with the loſſe of no more then 60. men: there being found in the Town 30. Braſſe peeces of Ordnance, 70. barrels of powder, with victuals and ammunition of all ſorts thereunto proportionable. 8. *Colen*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, firſt built by the *Ubii* before mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Ubiorum*: afterwards in honour of *Agrippina* (daughter of *Germanicus*, and wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a *Roman* Colonie, and called *Colonia Agrippina*; and ſometimes by way of eminency *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous, and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compaſſe; in which are numbred 19 Hoſpitals, 37 Monaſteries of both Sexes, 30 Chappels of our Lady, 9 pariſhes, and 10 Collegiate Churches, beſides the Cathedrall, being a Church of vaſt greatneſſe, but of little beauty, and not yet finiſhed: the *Metropolitan* whereof is Chancellour of *Italy*, the ſecond of the three Electors; and writes himſelf Duke of *Weſtphalen* and *Angrivaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Ceſar* with incredible expedition make a bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous enemy, then the reports of his valour: ſo powerful is laborious induſtry, that it overcometh all dyſaſters, and maketh the moſt unpaſſable waters yeeld to Heroick reſolutions.

In this Town alſo are ſaid to lie the bodies of the *three wiſemen*, which came from the *Eaſt* to worſhip our Saviour; vulgarly called the *three Kings* of *Colen*. The whole ſtory is at large written in *tables*, which are faſtned unto their Tombes. The pith whereof is this. The firſt of them called *Melchior*, an old man with a large beard; offered *Gold* as unto a *King*; the ſecond called *Gaſper*, a beardleſſe young man, offered *Frankincenſe* as unto God: The third called *Balthaſar*, a *Blackmoor* with a ſpreading beard, offered *Myrrhe* as unto a *Man* ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the tale ſaith, is probable; firſt, becauſe they came from the Eaſt, and ſo is *Arabia* in reſpect of *Hieruſalem*: and 2. becauſe it is ſaid in the 72 *Pſalme*, *The Kings of* Arabia *ſhall bring gifts*. As for their bodies, they are there ſaid to have been tranſlated by *Helena*, the mother of *Conſtantine*, unto *Conſtantinople*; from thence by *Euſtorgius*, Biſhop of *Millain*, removed unto *Millain*; and finally brought hither by *Rainoldus*, Biſhop hereof, *anno* 1164. This is the ſubſtance of the hiſtory; which for my part I reckon among the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their comming from ſome part of *Arabia*) but have no leiſure in this place to refell the Fable.

2 Next to the Biſhoprick of *Colen* lieth the land of *TRIERS*, extended all along the courſe of the *Moſelle*, from the Dukedome of *Lorrain* on the South, to the influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of *Confluentz*, where it bordereth on the Land of *Colen*: and being bounded on the Eaſt with *Luxemburg*, as on the Weſt with ſome part of *Francovia*. The Coun-

trey

trey towards *Lorrain*, and *Luxembourg*, somewhat wilde and barren; more fruitfull about *Triers* it ſelf, and the bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleaſant then profitable, the greateſt riches of it lying in woods and *Minerals*. The Biſhops See here firſt erected by *Eucherius*, a Diſciple and follower of S. *Peter*. The reality whereof, not only teſtified by the *Martyrologies*, but by *Methodius* a writer of approved credit; who addes *Valerius* and *Materntus* for his next ſucceſſours; the line Epiſcopall continuing till the Councell of *Arles anno* 326, *Agritius* Biſhop of *Triers* ſubſcribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards and before the Biſhop had the reputation and authority of a *Metropolitan*, the City of *Triers* being anciently the *Metropolis* of *Belgica prima*, within which it ſtands: increaſed exceedingly by being made one of the three *Electors* of the *Spiritualty*, though the laſt in order, and *Chancellour* to the Emperour for the Realm of *France*; the fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wreſted from it, with the reſt of the Kingdome of *Lorrain*, by the *German* Emperours. *Triers.*

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Confluents*, now *Cobolentz*, the *Confluentes* of *Antoninus*, ſo called becauſe ſeated on the *confluence* or meeting of the *Rhene* and the *Moſelle*; the ſtation anciently of the firſt *Legion*. A populous and well-built town; and ſeated in a pleaſant and fertill Countrey. 2. *Embretſtein*, over againſt *Cobolentz*, on the other ſide of the *Rhene*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle of the Biſhops, mounted upon a lofty hill, which not only gives a gallant proſpect to the eye, but commands both the Town and River. 3. *Boppart*, ſeated on the *Rhene*, and called ſo *quaſi Bonport*, from the commodiouſneſſe of the Creek (upon which it ſtandeth) for the uſe of ſhipping: one of the forts (as *Confluents* before mentioned was) erected by the *Romans* on the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* againſt the *Germans*; occaſioning in time both Towns. It was once miſerably waſted by *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall* and King of the *Romans*, becauſe the Biſhop of *Triers* agreed not unto his *Election*; but ſoon recovered of thoſe hurts. The ancient name hereof in the *Itinerarie* of *Antoninus*, is ſuppoſed to be *Bodobrica*: pawned to the Biſhops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7. and not yet redeemed. 4. *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorrain* (by *Antoninus* called *Pons Sarvix*) ſeated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it had the name) at the fall thereof into the *Moſelle*, poſſeſſed at the preſent by a branch of the houſe of *Naſſaw* (but *Homagers* of this *Electour*) entituled hence according to the *Dutch* faſhion, Counts of *Naſſaw* in *Sarbruck*. 5. *Veldents*, and 6. *Belſtern* on the *Moſelle*; of which nothing memorable. 7. *Treves*, or *Triers*, in *Latine Treveris*, the principall City of the *Treveri*, who poſſeſſed this tract: ſeated upon the *Moſelle* alſo; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Belgica Prima*, and honoured with the reſidence of the *Vicar* or Lieutenant Generall, for the whole Dioceſe of *Gaul*: by conſequence the ſeat of a *Metropolitan* when it ſubmitted to the *Goſpell*. Of ſuch antiquity, that it is ſaid to have been founded 150. years before the City of *Rome*: of no great beauty of it ſelf, and as little trading: the River not being capable of ſhips of burden; and the air generally ſo cloudy and inclined to rain, that it is by ſome called merrily *Cloaca Planetarum*. It paſſed ſometimes among the number of *Imperiall cities*, but now acknowledgeth the *Elector* for the Lord thereof; by whom made an *Univerſity*, one of the ancienteſt in all *Germanie*, and of as much reſort for the ſtudy of good Arts and Sciences, as the beſt amongſt them. 8. *Obert-Weſel*, or *Veſalia Superior*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Weſel* in the Dukedome of *Cleve*, which is *Veſalia inferior*, or the *Vnder-weſel*: the furtheſt place of this diſtrict, ſeated on the *Rhene*, not far from *Baccharach*, a Town of the *Palatinate*, of no great note, but that it is accompted for a Town *Imperiall*.

3. The Biſhoprick of *MENTZ*, is not laid out by bounds and limits as the other; becauſe the Patrimony and eſtate thereof doth not lie together: diſperſed for the moſt part about *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands and Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Biſhops of *Wormes*, *Spires*, and others. So that the *temporall* Eſtate of this Electour is every way inferiour unto thoſe of *Triers* and *Colen*; ſuperiour unto both in place and dignity: he being the firſt in rank of the whole *Electorall Colledge*, *Chancellour* for the Empire, and in all meetings ſitteth at the right hand of the Emperour. The Biſhops See firſt placed here, as ſome report, by S. *Creſcens*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Paul*, of whoſe being ſent by him into *Gallia* (for ſo the Ancient writers underſtand *Galatia*) the Apoſtle ſpeaketh 2 *Tim.* 4. Though others with more probability ſeat him at *Vienna* in *Daulphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is that anciently this City was a See Epiſcopall, *Martin* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Councell of *Colen anno* 347. And if a Biſhop, certainly a *Metropolitan* Biſhop, this City being in thoſe times the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Chriſtianity being worn out of theſe parts of *Germanie*, by the conqueſts of the *French*, *Alemans*, and other infidels; was again reſtored in this tract by *Boniface*, an Engliſhman, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Mentz* of this new plantation, (in and about the time of *Pepin*, ſurnamed the *Groſſe*, *Maire* of the Palace to the *French* Kings, and father of *Martell*) who for the *Orthodoxie* of his doctrine, and the number of Churches planted by him, hath been deſervedly honoured with the title of the *Apoſtle of Germanie*.

Towns of moſt note belonging to the Biſhops hereof are 1. *Mentz* it ſelf, the *Mogumiacum* of the Antients, ſo called from the River of *Maine* formerly *Mogus* and *Moganus* in the *Latine*; now better known by the name of *Manus*) oppoſite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old, ſo having the command of both Rivers: for that cauſe made the ſeat of a *Roman* officer, commonly called the Duke of *Mentz*, who had a charge of the *Frontiers*, and eſpecially of thoſe ten Garriſons planted on the banks of the *Rhene*, ſpoken of before. Stretched out in great length on the River ſide, but not of anſwerable breadth: well built and populous towards the water, in other parts not ſo well inhabited. The publick buildings generally very large and beautifull, the houſes built according

to

Palatinate of Rhene.

to the old *Roman* modell; the moſt magnificent whereof is the Biſhops Palace, who is the immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both ſides of the *Rhene*, fruitfull in all naturall commodities, and abounding with moſt excellent wines. Of good note alſo for an Univerſity here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the *Electours*: but eſpecially for the Art of Printing which was here invented, or perfected at the leaſt, and made fit for uſe. 2. *Bing* ſeated on the *Rhene*, another of the Garriſon towns erected by the *Romans* on the banks of that River. In a ſmall Iſland of which, not far from this town, is a Tower, or Caſtlelet, called the *Mouſeturn*, *i. e.* the tower of Mice: built by one *Halto*, (or *Hanno*) Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *anno* 900, or thereabouts. Who in a yeer of great ſcarcity pretending to relieve the poor people oppreſſed with Famine, cauſed them to be gathered together into an old barn, where he burnt them all; ſaying they were the *Rats and Mice* which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was ſo perſecuted by thoſe *Vermin*, that to avoid them, he was fain to build a Palace in the midſt of the *Rhene*; whither the *Rats* and *Mice* followed him, and at laſt devoured him. 3. *Lauſteine*. 4. *Hatford*. 5. *Oxenford*. 6. *Alderburg*. 7. *Middleburg*. 8. *Carloſtadt*, the birth-place of *Caroloſtadius*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9. *Biſchoffſtein*. 10. *Koningsberg*, (*mons Regius* in *Latine*) the birth-place of *Johannes de Monte Regio*, a famous *Mathematician*, as appeareth by his Comment upon *Ptolemies Almageſt*, moſt of theſe in *Frankenland*, but of this Electorate.

3. The *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE*.

The *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE* is ſituate wholly in *Franconia*; bounded upon the Eaſt with the Dukedome of *Wirtenberg*, and ſome part of *Franconie*; with the reſidue thereof, and the River *Main* upon the North; on the South with *Elſats*, or *Alſatia*; and on the Weſt, with the land of *Triers*: extended in length from *Coub* to *Gemerſheime*, north and ſouth 72 miles; and in breadth from *Sweibrucken* to *Lauden*, eaſt and weſt 90 miles.

It is called alſo the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper*: the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, becauſe lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is ſaid to be the moſt pleaſant part of all *Germany*, ſtored with all ſorts of fruits and metals, abounding with thoſe cool wines, which growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rheniſh*, adorned with many goodly Towns both for ſtrength, populouſneſſe, and beauty; and finally, watered with the famous Rivers of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Moſpach*, a pretty neat town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a *Prefecture*, not far from the borders of *Wirtenberg*; 2. *Ladenberg*, neer the influx of the ſame River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Rupertus* Emperour and *Palatine*, of the Earls of *Hohenloe*, *anno* 1371. the other moiety belonging to the Biſhop of *Wormes*. 3. *Winheime*, a ſmall town not far from *Ladeberg*, belonging once to the Arch-biſhop of *Mentz*, but on ſome controverſie ariſing about the title, adjudged unto the ſaid *Rupertus*, and his heires for ever. 4. *Scrieſſen* in the ſame tract, well ſeated, but not very large, ſold with the Caſtle of *Straluberg* to the ſaid *Rupertus*, by *Sifride* (or *Sigifride*) of *Straluberg*, the right heir thereof, *anno* 1347. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right ſhore of the *Neccar* (going down the water) compaſſed on three ſides with Mountains, and lying open onely towards the Weſt, which makes the air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief beauty of it lyeth in one long ſtreet, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt: on the South-eaſt ſide whereof is a fair and pleaſant Market-place; and not far off a very high mountain called *Koningſtall* (that is to ſay, the *Kingly Seat*) upon the middle aſcent whereof is the *Caſtle*, where the Princes *Electours* uſe to keep their Courts; and on the very *ſummit* or top thereof, the ruines of an old Tower blown up with gun-powder. A town of no great bigneſſe, nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was uſed in the time of my Author for Prayer and Preaching: the reſt being either ruined, or imployed unto other uſes, if not repaired again ſince the *Spaniards* became maſters of it, for more frequent Maſſes. Howſoever it hath the reputation of being the chief City of this *Palatinate*: not long ſince furniſhed with a great and gallant Library, which for choice, and number of Books (eſpecially *Manuſcripts*) was thought not to be fellowed in all *Europe*, (till matched, if not over-matched by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*:) moſt of them to the great prejudice of the *Proteſtant* cauſe, being carryed to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the town was taken by the *Spaniards*, *anno* 1620. Finally for the town it ſelf, it was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Biſhop of *Wormes*; from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*; it is now famous, for being the ſeat of the *Palſgraves*, the ſepulchre of *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for an Univerſity founded by the Emperour, and Palatine *Rupertus*, *anno* 1346. 6. *Bacchurach*, on the banks of *Rhene*, ſo called *quaſi Bacchi ara*, for the excellent wines. 7. *Coub* on the other ſide of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Caſtle called *Pfalts*, from whence the name *Pfaltſ-grave*, or *Palſgrave*, ſeemeth to ſome to have been derived. 8. *Openheim*, a ſtrong town, which together with *Keiſers*, *Lauterne* and *Ingelheim*, were given to the *Palatines* by *Wenceſlaus*: and after ſetled on them, by *Rupertus* the Emperour and *Palatine*, for 100000 Florens, *anno* 1402. 9. *Cruintznacke*, called antiently *Staurone ſus*. 10. *Frankendale*; lately a Monaſtery onely, but being peopled by ſuch of the *Netherlands*, which to avoid the fury of Duke *Alva*, fled hither; is now a town of principall ſtrength. 11. *Germerſheim*, and 12. *Manheim*, a well fortified town, ſeated on the confluence of *Rhene* and *Neccar*.

On

On the Eaſtern part of the Country ſtandeth 13 *Laden*, ſituate on the little River *Tiberus*, the furtheſt bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-eaſt, there adjoyning to the reſt of *Frankenland*. And on the weſt ſide the Townes of 14 *Newſtat*, 15 *Keiſars Lautern*, in *Latine* called *Cæſarea Lutra*, once a town Imperiall, from which, and from its ſituation on the River *Luter*, it received this name. 16. *Sweibrucken*, the title of a younger houſe of the *Paltsgraves*, whom the Latine writers call *Principes Bipontani*: the *French*, the Princes of *Deuxponts*. 17. *Simmeren* on the north-weſt point of it, where it meets with the Diſtrict of *Triers*; the title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Dukes of *Simmeren*. In all there are contained within this *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince: moſt of which they have added to their eſtate within little more then 400 yeers. Such excellent managers have they been of their own eſtates, ſo potent in ordering the affaires of the Empire both in war and peace; and ſo ingraffed themſelves into the moſt noble Families of *Germany*, that I may well ſay with *Irenicus*, *Non eſt alia Germaniæ familia, cui plus debeat nobilitas*. *Palatinate, of Rhene.*

Within the limits of this Country, and intermingled with the lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Biſhopricks of *Spires* and *Wormes*; both ancient, and of great *Revenue*, but *feudataries* for a great part of their eſtates to theſe *Electors*. Of theſe more towards the head of the *Rhene*, ſtands the City of *Spires*, by *Ptolomy* called *Neomagus*, from the newneſſe of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemetum*, from the *Nemetes*, who poſſeſſed this tract; and ſometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth ſtill continue. A town *Imperiall*, and antiently a Biſhops See; *Teſſis* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Councell of *Colen*, *anno* 347. A neat Town, and very delectably ſeated. Of great reſort by reaſon of the *Imperiall Chamber*, the ſoveraign Court of *Judicature* of all the Empire; capable of *Appeals* from the Tribunals of all the Princes, and free States thereof. A Court which firſt followed the Emperour in all his Removes (as antiently the *Kings Bench in England*) by *Maximilian* the Emperour firſt made *Sedentary*, and fixt at *Frankfort*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charles* the fift. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Proteſtants* was here taken up, given to the Princes, and free Cities following the *Reformed Religion*, upon their legall *Proteſtation* here exhibited. More down the water in the ſame ſhore thereof, ſtands the City of *Wormes*, one of thoſe built upon the *Rhene*, for defence of *Gaul* againſt the *Germans*; by *Ptolomy* called *Borbegomagus*; by *Antonine*, *Civitas Wormenſis*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones* the old inhabitants of thoſe parts, whoſe chief City it was. A town *Imperiall* as the former, and a See Epiſcopall as that is, and as ancient too; *Victor* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Councel of *Colen* before mentioned. A town to be obſerved for the firſt appearance which *Luther* made before *Charles* the fift, (the *Imperiall* Chamber then being holden in this City) who being diſſwaded from that journey by ſome of his friends, returned this reſolute anſwer to them, That *goe he would, though there were as many devills in the town, as there were tiles on the houſes*. Chief towns belonging to theſe Biſhops, are 1 *Udenheim*, a town belonging to the Biſhop of *Spires*, whoſe reſidence it ſometimes is: conveniently ſeated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon ſome deſigne which was then in hand, fortified ſtrongly by the Biſhop. But this new *Fortification* being begun in a time of peace, gave great occaſion of diſtruſt to the neighbouring Princes; who interpoſed with *Frederick* the fift, then Prince *Elector* (of whom held in chief) to cauſe the Biſhop to deſiſt from the finiſhing of it. Which when he refuſed to doe, pleading a *Placard* from the Emperour *Matthias* to compleat the work; the Prince *Electour*, with the reſt of the *Confederates*, beat it down by force: for this contempt, cited to *Spires* the *Imperiall* Chamber, in which it was alſo reſolved to proceed ſuddenly, and ſeverely to their condemnation. One of the chief motives which occaſioned that unfortunate Prince, to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*; and conſequently a chief cauſe of the *German* wars. In managing whereof this town was thought ſo commodious, that Marquis *Spinola* cauſed the works to be raiſed again, made it the ſtrongeſt hold in all thoſe Countries, and cauſed it to be called by the name of *Philipsberg*. 3. *Rotenberg* originally belonging to the Biſhops of *Spires*, but of late times poſſeſſed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of leſſer note I forbear to mention.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, were the *Nemetes*, and *Vangiones* ſpoken of before; on the other ſide, the *Intuergi*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*, and from them conquered by the *French*; of whoſe Empire it remained a part, till diſmembred from it at the erection of the Kingdome of *Lorrain*, in the fall whereof it was annexed to the Empire of *Germany*. By little and little got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperours houſhold (ſuch as the *Maires of the Palace* to the *French* Kings at the firſt inſtitution) had firſt the honour of Counts *Palatine* beſtowed upon them; and afterwards the place of an *Electour* in the choice of the Emperour. But where their Eſtate then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what provinces or people they had ſubject to them, *a nullo inveni ſcriptum*, I could never find any good Record to build on, ſaith the learned *Munſter*: their habitation and poſſeſſion in and of theſe parts, (acquired for the moſt part by Armes and Money) not being above 450 years ſtanding at the utmoſt. Likely it is, they had their reſidence for the moſt part in the Emperours *Palace*, living upon their rents, (as other great officers of Court in theſe later times) the dignity and authority of ſo great a place ſeeming ſufficient to content them: but called *Count Palatines* of the *Rhene*, becauſe their *Juriſdiction* and Authority lay moſt eſpecially in thoſe parts of the Empire which were towards that River: Afterwards on the marriage of *Otho*, the ſecond of that name Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gertrude*, the daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*; this office with the *Electorall* dignity fell into

that

Palatinate of Rhene.

that houſe, poſſeſſed at that time of thoſe parts of *Francon'a*, which not long after on the dividing of that eſtate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the ſon of *Ludovick* the 2. *Electour Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which ſuddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperour and *Electour Palatine*; partly by the weakneſſe and ambition of *Wenceſlaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*; and partly by the valour of *Frederick*, the Prince Electour. Of theſe the firſt bought in the townes of *Winheim*, *Ladeberg*, and *Scrieſſen*, with the Caſtle of *Stralnberg*, with their lands and territories. The ſecond gave unto the *Palatines* for their voices in his election, three ſtrong towns of the Empire, *viz.* *Keiſars Lauterne*, *Ingelheim*, and *Openkeim*: and the laſt took in battle, *anno* 1452. the Earl of *Wirtenberg*, the Marqueſſe of *Baden*, the Biſhop of *Spires*, and the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and ranſomed them on what condition he pleaſed. More particularly the Earl of *Wirtenberg* (for it was not yet erected into a Dukedome) payed for his ranſome 100000 *Florens*; the Biſhop of *Mentz* redeemed himſelf for 450000 *Florens*. The Biſhop of *Spires* gave for his liberty, the towns of *Rottenberg* and *Werſaw*: and the Marqueſſe of *Baden* yeelded up in lieu of his freedome, the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Cruitznack* is a part; the towns of *Beſiken*, and *Binheim*; the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a town over againſt *Gemerſheim*; and his royalties between this *Gemerſheim* and *Selts* a town of *Alſatia*, in fiſhing and hunting. So having brought theſe Princes unto their Eſtate; let us next take a view of thoſe who have ſucceſſively enjoyed both the State and Title, as far as we can goe by the light of Story.

ELECTORS *Palatine* of the *RHENE*.

A. Ch.

1. *Henry* Count of *Palatine* in the time of *Otho* the third, by whom ordained to be one of the ſix *Electors*.
2. *Sigefride*, the ſonne of *Adelheild*, wife of this *Henry* the Electour, by a former huſband.
3. *Ezeline* and *Conrade*, ſonnes of *Sigefride*.
4. *Ludolfus*, ſon to *Ezeline*.
5. *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fift.
6. *Frederick*, ſonne to *Frederick* Duke of *Schawben*, Nephew to the Emperour *Conrade* the third.
7. *Henry* II. ſurnamed the *Lyon*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*.

1195 8. *Henry* III. ſonne of *Henry* the *Lyon*, and husband of *Clementia*, daughter of *Conrade* Duke of *Schawben*, and Elector *Palatine*.

9. *Henry* IV. ſonne of *Henry* the third, in the life of his Father; the laſt Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperour, the dignity from hence forwards becoming *hereditary*.

10. *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria* of that name the ſecond, *Electour Palatine* of the *Rhene*, in right of *Gertrude* his wife, ſiſter and next heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he ſucceeded in the *Electorall* dignity, confirmed therein by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond.

1269 11. *Ludovicus* Electour *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, the ſon of *Otho*.

1294 12. *Rodolphus* the eldeſt ſon of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, ſucceeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and *Electorall* dignity: *Northgoia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the ſcale; his younger brother *Ludovicus* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*.

1315 13. *Adolphus*, ſurnamed the Simple, reſigned the *Electorall* dignity to his brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter man to undertake it.

1327 14. *Rodolphus* II. on the reſignation of *Adolphus*.

1337 15. *Rupertus*, the brother of *Rodolphus* the ſecond, founder of the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*, anno 1346.

1385 16. *Rupertus* II. ſonne of *Adolfus* the *Simple*.

1398 17. *Rupertus* III. elected Emperour in the place of *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, *anno* 1406, made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the fourth.

1410 18. *Ludovicus* II. ſurnamed *Cæcus*, and *Barbatus*, married *Blanch*, daughter to King *Henry* the fourth of *England*.

1439 19. *Ludovicus* III. ſon of *Lewis* the ſecond.

1451 20. *Frederick*, brother of *Ludovicus*, during the minority of *Philip* his ſaid brothers ſonne, ſucceeded in the *Electorall* dignity; and added much to that Eſtate by his perſonall vertue.

1478 21. *Philip*, the ſonne of *Lewis* the third, pretended to the Dukedome of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his wife; but after a long, and bloudy war forced to go without it.

1508 22. *Ludovicus* IV. ſon of *Philip*.

1544 23. *Frederick* II. brother of *Lewis* the ſift, who firſt introduced the *Reformed Religion* into the *Palatinate*.

1556

1556 24 *Otho-Henry*, ſon of *Rupertus* the Brother of *Frederick*, and *Lewis* the laſt of the direct line of this houſe of *Bavaria*. *Palatinate.*

1559 25 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, deſcended from *Stephen* Palatine of *Zweybruck* or *Bipont*, younger ſon of the Emperour *Rupert*, ſucceeded on the deceaſe of *Otho-Henry* without iſſue.

1576 26 *Ludovicus* V. ſon of *Frederick* the third, a munificent benefactour to the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*.

1483 27 *Frederick* IV. ſon of *Lewis* the fift, married *Ludovica*, or *Loiſe*, daughter of *William*, and ſiſter of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*.

1610 28 *Frederick* V. married the Princeſſe *Elizabeth* daughter of *James*, King of *Great Britain*. In danger of being proſcribed for demoliſhing the works of *Udenheim* he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*, but worſted at the battle of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he loſt both that, and his own native Eſtates and Dignities; of which deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperour: the *Lower Palatinate* being aſſigned over to the King of *Spain*, the *Vpper Palatinate* with the *Electorall* dignity to the Duke of *Bavaria*. Reſtored to the poſſeſſion of the moſt part of his Country, by the power of the *Swedes*, he dyed at *Mentz*, November 19. 1632.

1632 29 *Charles Ludovick*, the heir both of his Fathers Eſtates, and misfortunes too, not yet admitted to his honours (contrary to the *fundamentall conſtitutions* of the Empire, by which the ſons of the *Electours* and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Fathers offences) but in fair hopes to be reſtored thereto in part, by the *Facifications* made at *Munſter* this preſent year, 1648. which I pray God to proſper for the peace of afflicted *Chriſtendome*.

The *Religion* of this Country hath much varied ſince the firſt Reformation, eſtabliſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond, according to the forme and doctrine of the *Confeſſion of Auſpurg*: the doctrine and diſcipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third; the *Lutherans* formes reſtored again by *Lewis*, or *Ludovick* the fift; after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*; as more conducing to the ends of ſome needy *Statiſts*, who could not otherwiſe raiſe their fortunes then by invading the *Tithes* and *Glebe*, and other poor remainders of the Churches *Patrimony*. Of which the *Clergie* being univerſally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miſerable ſhort ſtipends by the name of a *Competency*, became ſo contemptible, and neglected by all ſorts of men, that at the laſt the Church of the *Palatinate* was in the ſame condition with the Church of *Iſrael* under the reign of *Ieroboam*; when *Prieſts were made out of the meaneſt of the people*. And for the Government of their Churches, though moulded to the *Genevian* plat-form, as neer as might be; yet were thoſe Princes loath to leave too much power in the hands of the *Elderſhips*; and therefore did appoint ſome ſuperiour officers to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inſpectores & Præpoſitos*, their power being much the ſame with that of the *partieular Superintendent* amongſt the *Lutherans*; and over them a ſtanding *Conſiſtory* conſiſting of three Miniſters, and as many *Counſellers of State*, of the Princes nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A *temperament* for which they were beholding to *Eraſtus*, a Doctour of *Phyſick* in the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*, who made this *Pill* to purge *Presbytery* of ſome *Popiſh* humours, which ſecretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole modell is now changed, and the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome* reſtored in moſt parts of the Country, ſince the conqueſt of it by the *Spaniard*, none being publickly authorized and allowed but that.

But to return again to the *Civill State*, and the Concernments of theſe Princes, The *Palſgrave* hath many prerogatives above the *Electours* of either ſort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxony*, and Marqueſſe of *Brandenburg*; becauſe *Henry* the *Palatine*, was deſcended of *Charles* the great: for which cauſe he is alſo in the vacancy of the Empire, *Governour* of the Weſtern parts of *Germany*; in which office he had power to alienate, or give offices, to take *fealty* and *homage* of the ſubjects; and which is moſt, to ſit in the *Imperiall Courts*, and give judgment of the Emperour himſelf. And look whatſoever ſhall in the vacancy of the Empire, be by the *Palatines* enacted, that the new Emperours are bound by Oath to confirme, and ratifie.

The *Revenues* of theſe Princes were conceived to be about 100000 *l. per annum*: nor could they be ſuppoſed at leſſe; the ſilver Mines about *Amberg* onely in the *upper Palatinate*, yeelding 60000 Crownes a yeer, and the paſſage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more; beſides the demeaſne Lands, and the Lands of the Church incorporated (ſince the *Reformation*) into their Eſtate.

The Armes hereof are *Diamond*, a Lyon *Topace*, Armed and Crowned *Ruby*.

Elſats.

4. ALSATIA.

ALSATIA or *ELSATS*, as the *Dutch* call it, is bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the *Marquiſate* of *Baden*, and ſome part of *Schwaben*; on the West with the Mountain *Vauge*, or *Vogeſus*, which ſeparateth it from *Lorrain*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South (where it groweth very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Country for the pleaſantneſſe and fertilitie of it, inferiour to none in *Germanie*; called therefore *Elſats*, (as ſome think) *quaſi Edelſats*; that is to ſay, a *noble Seat*: derived more probably by others from the river *Ill*, the only River of note in all this tract, and called ſo, *quaſi Ill-ſats*, the *ſeat* or ſituation on the River *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower* and *higher*, to which the Countrie called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The *LOWER ALSATIA* is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, ſo called becauſe further off from the Mountains, and down the water in reſpect of the courſe of the *Rhene*. A Countrie ſo aboundantly fruitfull in wine and corn, (with which it furniſheth ſome parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour Countries) that it is generally called *Germanie nutrix*, or the nurſe of *Germanie*; by *Wimphelegius* the *Epitome* or Abſtract of it. Chief towns therein are 1 *Straſburg*, ſo called from the multitude of *Streets* (the *Dutch* call them *Strats*) anciently *Argentoratum*, and then *Argentina*, from the *Roman Exchequer*, or Receipt here kept in the time of their greatneſſe; or from ſome Mines of ſilver which were found about it. A ſtately, rich, and populous Citie, well ſtored with publick garners and cellars of wine, againſt times of dearth: Situate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Bruſch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*; by which and by the helps of Art very ſtrongly fortified: deſigned from the firſt foundation for a Town of war, this being another of the towns which the *Romans* built to defend the *Rhene* againſt the *Germans*. Now an Imperiall Citie, and a *See* Epiſcopal, the Biſhop whereof is Lord of the *Lower Alſatia*; the Church Cathedral, one of the faireſt in all *Germanie*: much famed for a *Clock* of moſt admirable workmanſhip, and a *Steeple* of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 foot in height, the higheſt of any in Chriſtendome, higher by 40 foot then the Steeple of S. *Pauls* in *London*, before the firing of it. Of this thus ſaith the Poet in *Adrianus*.

Urbs præclara ſitu, ripis conterminа Rheni,
Maxima cui celſæ metiuntur mœnia turris.

Strasburg on *Rhenes* inamell'd banks doth lie,
Whoſe Tower even bids defiance to the skie.

2 *Zabern*, or *Elſatz Savern*, the *Taberna* of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old *Roman* Garriſons, deſtroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the *Apoſtata* then Emperour. Now the chief place of Reſidence for the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Juſtice kept by his Officers in this Citie for the *Lower Alſatia*. 3 *Altrip*, ſo called from *Alta ripa*, from the high banks of the river on which it is ſeated; another of the Towns or Forts which the *Romans* like politick conquerours built on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the incurſions of the barbarous Nations, as was alſo 4 *Selts*, ſeated on the *Rhene* betwixt *Strasburg* and *Zabern*; and 5 *Weiſſenberg*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a town *Imperiall*, but ſeated on the river *Lutra* not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompaſſed with little hils and delightfull groves, the River gently waſhing the walks thereof, and adding much to it both of ſtrength and beautie. 6 *Hagenaw*, between *Selts* and *Strasburg*, but not ſo neer unto the *Rhene* as either of them, firſt walled by *Frederick Barbaroſſa anno* 1164. and ſince that time of great importance for command of the Countrie: but ſeated in a landie and unfruitfull ſoil, frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elſats* for the commodities of hunting. More from the *Rhene*, 7 *Stechfield*, corruptly ſo called for *Steffansfield*, from the Monaſterie of S. *Stephen* there founded. 8 *Haſle* on the *Bruſch*, *&c.*

Places of moſt importance in the *HIGHER ALSATIA*, are 1 *Rufach* on the river *Ombach*, belonging to the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, of old called *Rubeacum*, from the red colour of the earth, well built, invironed with a double Suburb; in ancient times of great reſort by the *Roman* Nobilitie, much taken with the fruitfulneſſe and pleaſures of it: and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Countrie round about it, by reaſon of their vigorous proceedings againſt Theeves; from whence the *Germans* have a *Proverb*, that the *old gallows at Ruffach is made of oak*. 2 *Enſheim* or *Enſiſheim*, on the river *Ill*, anciently the ſtation of the tenth *Legion*, and then called *Aruncis*; now of moſt note for the ſupreme *Court* of juſtice there held for *Briſgow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alſatia*, by the Archdukes of *Auſtria*, the chief Lords thereof. 3 *Colmar*, an *Imperiall* Citie, raiſed out of the ruines of old *Argentaria*, deſtroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*: well built and ſituate almoſt in the very Navell of *Alſatia*, not above an hours journey from the foot of the Mountains, but in a fruitfull and rich ſoil both for corn and paſturage, the Countrie hereabouts being very well watred with the *Louch*, *Duro*, *Fecht*, and *Ill*. 4 *Schleſtad*, in the modern *Latine*, *Seleſtadium*, but by the ancients called *Elcebus*, the ſtation at that time of the 19. *Legion*, afterwards of great fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis* Dutcheſſe of *Schwaben*, *anno* 1044. according to the pattern of the Temple of *Hieruſalem*: which in tract of time became the richeſt *Monaſterie* in all theſe parts. Situate in a very fertile and delightfull ſoil,

having

having the *Rhene* on the one ſide, and ſome ſpurs of the Mountaine *Vauge* ſhadowed with Groves of Cheſnuts upon the other: walled in the time of *Frederick* the 2. about the year 1216. and on the Eaſt defended with impaſſible fenns. 5 *Gebwiſer*, and 6 *Watweil*, both ſeated near the aforeſaid Mountains, and both ſubject to the Abbat of *Murbach*. 7 *Keiſersberg*, 8 *Turchein*, two *Imperiall* towns, but not otherwiſe memorable; as neither are many of the reſt, but for name and number; there being reckoned within this ſmall Province of *Elſats*, (not including *Sungew*) 46 Cities and Townes begirt with walls, beſides Caſtles, Forts and Villages, almoſt innumerable; and amongſt them more *Free* and *Imperiall* Cities, then in any one Province of the Empire.

The Southern part of *Elſats* bordering on the *Canton* of *Baſil*, is commonly called by the name of *Sungow*, in Latine, *Sungovia*, and *Sungeia*: but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirts*, from *Pfirt* the chief town of it, and the Dukes ſeat: the Countrie very plentifull in corn and wine (as the reſt of *Elſats*) affording good ſtore of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Townes hereof, are 1 *Mulhauſen* on the river *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, as were alſo *Keiſersberg*, and *Colmar*, but being taken in by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurgh*, after his advancement to the Empire it was made *Imperiall*, and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2 *Beſort*, remarkable for a Colleglate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lye buried 13 Earls, and as many Counteſſes. 3 *Malz-munſter*, ſo called from a *Monaſterie* of *Nuns* there founded by *Malo* a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4 *Thann*, a neat Town beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Engleberg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty hill. 5 *Morſ-munſter*, ſo named of an ancient Monaſterie there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, moſt of them great builders of Religious houſes. 6 *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the river *Ill*. 7 *Pfirt* it ſelf, ſeated on the *Ill* not far from *Altkirk*, in a countrie heretofore over-grown with *Woods* and *Ferreſts*, whence it had the name; called by the *French* *le Pais de Ferrette* (corruptly for *le Pois de Forreſt*) by the *Dutch* moulded into *Pfirt*: by which name (of the Countie of *Ferretts*) it is called by *Philip de Comines*, and other *French* writers, and by that name was pawned by *Sigiſmund* the Archduke, to *Charls* Duke of *Burgundie*, made by that means too near a neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Weſtward hereof, betwixt it and the Countie of *Burgundie*, lyeth the Towne and Earldome of *Montbelgard* (*Mont is belligardium* in the Latine) united by the marriage of *Henrica*, daughter and heir of *Henry* the firſt Earl hereof *anno* 1396. to the houſe of *Wirtenberg*. Chief Townes whereof, are 1 *Clorewang*, 2 *Paſſewang*, 3 *Grans*, all antiently beautified with Caſtles; and 4 *Montbelgard*, a Town of great ſtrength, proud of a Caſtle Royall on the top of a fair and lofty *Mountain*, whence it took that name; once the ſeat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the houſe of *Wirtenberg*: but now both Town and Caſtle in the power of the *French*, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, cauſed a good Garriſon of their own to be put into them, *anno* 1633. under pretence of keeping them for the Children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtenbergs*, to whom the inheritance belonged.

The antient Inhabitants of this tract were the *Triboohi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then ſubdued by the *Almains*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdome of *Lorrain*: in the full of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German* Empire. Governed for the Emperours by *Provinciall* Earls, in the Dutch language called *Landgraves*, at firſt *officiarie* only, and accomptable to the Emperours under whom they ſerved; in the end made *hereditarie* and ſucceſſionall unto their poſteritias. The firſt *hereditarie* Landgrave ſaid to be *Theodorick*, in the reign of *Otho* the third; after whoſe death the Empire being made *elective*, gave the *Provinciall* Governours ſome opportunities to provide for themſelves. In his male-iſſue it continued till the reign of *Frederick* the 2. who began his Empire *anno* 1212, and dyed *anno* 1250. during which intervall this Eſtate was conveyed by daughters to *Albert* the 2. Earl of *Habſpurg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Ottingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* ſon of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperour of the *Germans*, marrying with *Anne* the daughter of the Earl of *Hohenlhe*, became poſſeſſed alſo of his part of the Countrie: which added to his own, made up the whole *Upper Elſats*, continued ſince that time in poſſeſſion of the houſe of *Auſtria* deſcended from him. The third part comprehending all the *Lower Alſatia*, was not long after ſold by the Earl of *Ottingen* to the Biſhop of *Strasburg*, whoſe Succeſſours hold it to this day, aſſuming to themſelves the title of the *Landgraves of Elſats*. But as for *Sungow* or the Countie of *Pfirt*, that belonged anciently to the Princes of the houſe of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illuſtrious Familie, by the death of *Conradine* the laſt Duke, *anno* 1268. that great eſtate being ſcattered into many hands, it was made a diſtinct Earldom of it ſelf. And ſo continued till the year 1324. when *Ulrick* the laſt Earl dying without iſſue male, left his eſtate betwixt two daughters, whereof the one named *Anne*, conveyed her part in marriage to *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſurnamed the *Short*, Grandchild of *Rodolphus* the Emperor before mentioned; the other named *Urſula*, ſold her moietie to the ſaid *Albert* for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been alwayes in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes of *Auſtria*, (ſave only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alſatia*, to the Duke of *Burgundie*) governed in *Civill* matters and points of Judicature, by the Parliament, or Court of *Enſheim* in the *Upper Elſats*.

Lorrain.

5. LORRAIN.

The Dukedom of *LORRAIN*, is bounded on the East with *Elſats*; on the West with the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Dukes hereof, and the reſt of *Champagne*; on the North with *Luxembourg*, and the land of *Triers*; and on the South with the County of *Burgundy*: from which and from the Province of *Elſats* parted by the *Vogeſus* or *Vauge*, wherewith incompaſſed on thoſe ſides. Aſſigned unto *Lotharius*, eldeſt ſon of *Lewis* the *Godly*, with the ſtile of a *Kingdome*: from thence called *Lot-reich* by the *Dutch*, *Lot-regne* by the *French*, from which the modern name of *Lorrain*, and the *Latine*, *Lotharingia*, are to fetch their Pedegree.

The Countrey is in length about four dayes journey, almoſt three in breadth: much overgrown with Forreſts, and ſwelled with Mountains; the ſpurs and branches of *Vogeſus*, and the once vaſt Wilderneſſe of *Ardenne*; yet ſo ſufficiently ſtored with all manner of neceſſaries, that it needeth no ſupply out of other places. Some lakes it hath which yeeld great quantity of fiſh; one more eſpecially 14 miles in compaſſe, the fiſh whereof yeelds to the Dukes coffers 20000 *l.* yeerly, it affordeth alſo divers metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in ſome places Pearls: *Calcidonians* alſo of ſuch bigneſſe that whole drinking cups are made of them; and a matter of which they make the pureſt glaſſes not to be paralleld in *Europe*. They have alſo a goodly breed of Horſes, equall to thoſe of *Barbary*, or the courſer of *Naples*.

The people by reaſon of their neighbourhood to, and commerce with *France*, ſtrive much to imitate the *French* in garb and faſhion; but one may eaſily ſee that it is not naturall; and have much in them alſo of the *Dutch* humour of drinking, but far more moderately then the *Dutch* themſelves: Generally they are a politick and an hardy Nation; not otherwiſe able to have held their eſtate ſo long againſt the *French* Kings and the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppreſſed with *taxes*; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince; and uſefull unto one another. Their language for the moſt part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxembourg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times: not ſo refined and elegant as is ſpoke in *France*; nor ſo corrupt and courſe as that of *Montbelgard*, and the the County of *Burgundy*.

The rivers of chief note, are 1. *Marta*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and paſſing with a ſwift ſtream by the wals of *Nancie*, glides along fairely for a good ſpace within ſight of the *Moſelle*, into which at laſt it fals near *Conde*. 2 *Moſa*, the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, whoſe ſpring and courſe hath been already deſcribed in *Belgium*. 3 *Moſelle*, famous for the deſigne which *Lucius Verus* Governour for the Emperour *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariſeth in the mountain *Vauge*, not far from the head of the river *Soaſne*, and disburdeneth it ſelf into the *Rhene* at *Confluence*: he intended to have cut a deep channell from the head of this unto the other; ſo to have made a paſſage from the Ocean to the *Mediterranean*: the *Soaſne* emptying it ſelf into the *Rhoſne* (a chief River of *France*) as the *Moſelle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4 *Selle*, which mingleth waters with the *Moſelle* not farre from *Mets*. 5 *Sora*. 6 *Martane*. 7 *Voloy*, others of leſſe note; all of them plentifull of *Salmons*, *Perches*, *Tenches*, and the beſt ſorts of fiſh: as in their Lakes great ſtore of *Carps*, ſome of them three foot long and of excellene taſt.

Principall Cities are in it are 1 *Mets*, by *Ptolemie* called *Divodurum*; *Metis*, & *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrices* who poſſeſſed this tract. Seated in the pleaſant plain at the confluence of the *Sore* and *Moſelle*: the Royall Sea, in former times, of the *French* Kings of *Auſtraſia*, hence called Kings of *Mets*; long before that a Biſhops See, as it ſtill continueth. 2 *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Ptolemie*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, ſo called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it, and the tract about it: pleaſantly ſeated on the *Moſelle*, and antiently honoured with a See Epiſcopall. 3 *Verdun*, an antient Epiſcopall See alſo, the *Civitas Verodonenſium* of *Antoninus*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*: the Biſhop whereof, as alſo thoſe of *Mets* and *Toul* (being the onely ones of this Countrey of *Lorrain*) acknowledge the Archbiſhops of *Triers* for their *Metropolitan*. All of them in the number (heretofore) of *Imperiall Cities*, poſſeſſed of large and goodly territories, and of great revenue: but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the ſecond, *anno* 1552. during the wars between *Charles* the fift and the *Proteſtant* Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them againſt the Emperour. And though *Charles* tryed all wayes to recover them to the Empire againe, and to that end maintained a long and deſperate ſiege againſt the City of *Mets*: yet was the Town ſo gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guiſe*, that he was fain to raiſe his ſiege, and goe off with diſhonour. Since that, they have been alwayes under the ſubjection of *France*; a Parliament being erected at *Mets* for the eaſe of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdome.

Of ſuch Towns as immediately belonged to the Duke of *Lorrain*, the principall are *Nancey*, not great, but of a pleaſant and commodious ſite: well watered by the river *Meurte* or *Marta*; and fortified better then before, in the year 1587. on occaſion of a great Army of the *Germans* paſſing into *France* to aid the *Proteſtants*: moſt commonly the Dukes ſeat, and famous for the diſcomfiture which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* here ſuffered with the loſſe of his life. 2. *St Nicolas*, a town ſo populous, well ſeated, and neatly built; that were it walled, it would hardly yeeld

precedency

preceedency to *Nancie*. It took name from the body of Saint *Nicolas*, here buryed, whose *reliques* have purchased no small reputation and riches to this town. 5 *Vaucoleur*, the birth-place of *Joane* the *Virgin*, to whose miracles and valour, the *French* attribute the delivery of their countrey from the power of the *English*: but being at last taken prisoner, she was by the Duke of *Bedford* then Regent of *France*, condemned and burned for a Witch. Of which crime I for my part doe conceive her free. Nor can I otherwise conceive of her and her brave exploits, then of a lusty lasse of *Lorrain*, tutored and trained up by the practise of the Earl of *Dunois* commonly called the *Bastard* of *Orleans*; and so presented to *Charles* the seventh, *French* King, as if sent immediately from Heaven. A project carryed on of purpose (as the most intelligent of the *French* writers say) *pour fair revenir la courage aux Francois*, to revive the drooping spirits of the beaten *French*, not to bee raised againe but by help of a miracle. Upon the sight of her *Statua* on the bridge of *Orleans*, a friend of mine did adventure on a copy of verses in her commendation, too long to be inserted here; but they ended thus.

She di'd a *Virgin*; 'Twas because the earth
Bred not a man whose valour and whose birth
Might merit such a *blessing*. But above
The Gods provided her an equall *Love*,
And gave her to Saint *Denys*. She with him
Protects the *Lilies*, and their Diadem.
You then about whose *Armies* she doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her *match*.
And when in field your *standards* you advance,
Cry loud, *Saint Denys* and *Saint Joan* for *France*.

Townes of lesse note are 4 *Pont a Moson*, so called from a bridge on the River *Moson* with a small Universitty. 5 *Vandemont* which gave a title of an Earl to a younger branch of the house of *Lorrain*. 6 *Neauf-Chatteau*, on the edge of the Countrey towards *Barrois*. 7 *Amance*, seven leagues on the South of *Mets*, sometimes the Chancery of *Lorrain*. 8 *Riche Court*, neer the Lake called *Garde-lake*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Meurte*. 9 *La Mothe*, seated on a River which fals presently into the *Moselle*. 10 *Charmes*, the place of treaty between the Duke of *Lorrain* and the Cardinall of *Richelieu*, the result whereof was the surrender of the town of *Nancie*, and by consequence of all the Dukedome into the hands of the *French*, *Septemb.* 1633. Of lesse note there are 1 Saint *Die*, 2 Saint *Hippolit*, 3 *Bouquenon*, and 4 *Saverden*; the first towns of this Dukedome taken by the *Swedes*, *anno* 1633. in the warre against *Lorrain*. 5 Saint *Miel*, 6 *Oden-Chasteau*, 7, *Mirecour*; all taken the same yeere by the *French*, in the prosecution of that war, before the treaty at *Charmes*. 8 *Romberville*, 9 *Espinul*, 10 *Gerbreviller*, &c.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey were the *Mediomatrices*, and the *Leuci* spoken of before, together with the *Vindonenses*, all of them conquered by the *Romans*, under whom this Countrey and the *District* of *Triers* made up the whole Province of *Belgica Prima*. From them being taken by the *French* with the rest of *Gaule*, it was made a Kingdome, the Provinces of *Germania Prima & Secunda*, (containing all the parts of *Germany* before described, and so much of the *Netherlands*, as lye on the Westside of the *Rhene*) being added to it, called first from the Eastern situation by the name of *Austenreic* or *Austrasia* the portion of *Theodorick* the fourth sonne of *Clovis* the first Christian King of the *French*, from the chief City of his Kingdome called the King of *Mets*, whose successours follow in this order.

The KINGS of *AVSTRASIA* or *METS*.

514 1 *Theodorick* the base sonne of *Clovis* the Great vanquished the *Turingians*, and extended his Kingdome as far as *Hassia* and *Turingia*, as we call them now,

537 2 *Theodebert* the sonne of *Theodorick*, repulsed the *Danes* infesting the coasts of the Lower *Germany*; and added *Provence* (taken from the *Gothes* of *Italy*) unto his Estates.

548 3 *Theobaldus* the sonne of *Theodebert*, subdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Countrey to his own Dominions.

555 4 *Clotaire* King of *Soissons* the youngest sonne of *Clovis* the *Great*, succeeded *Theobald* in this Kingdome, as afterwards his brother *Childebert* in the Realm of *France*, *anno* 560. uniting in his person the whole *French* Dominion.

565 5 *Sigebert* the sonne of *Clotaire*, vanquished the *Hunnes*, then falling into his Estates: killed in his Tent by the practises of *Fredegond*, the wife of *Chilperick* King of *France*.

577 6 *Childebert* the sonne of *Sigebert*, successour to his Uncle *Guntrum* in the Realm of *Orleans*.

598 7 *Theodebert* the II. the sonne of *Childebert*, vanquished and outed of his Kingdome by *Clotaire* the second of *France*: from whose eldest sonne *Sigebert* descended the illustrious family of the Earls of *Habsburg*.

Lorrain.

617 8 *Clotaire* the II. King of *France*, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Auſtraſia*, and his brother *Theodorick* King of *Orleans*, the ſole King of the *French*.

9 *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Mets* or *Auſtraſia*, whom he ſucceeded, at his death, in the Realm of *France*.

645 10 *Sigebert* II. the eldeſt ſon of *Dagobert*, made choiſe of this kingdome, for his part of the whole *French* Empire; therein preferring it to *Weſt-France*, or *France* it ſelf, which he left to *Clovis* the 2. his younger Brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience and ſubdued the *Sclaves*.

656 11 *Childebert* II. ſon of *Grimoaldus*, Mayre of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Mets*; *Dagobert* the ſon of *Sigebert* being ſhorn a Monk, and ſent into *Scotland*.

12 *Clovis* the 2. King of the *French*, having vanquiſhed and beheaded *Grimoald*, diſpoſſeſſed *Childebert* of the Kingdome, which he took himſelf.

662 13 *Childerick* the 2. ſon of *Clovis*, after the death of *Clotaire* his elder Brother, ſucceeding in the Kingdome of *France* united all the *French* Dominions into one Eſtate. In which condition it remained (but with ſome inlargement of the bounds) till the partition made by and amongſt the Children of *Lewis* the *Godly*; the name of *Auſtraſia* or *Eaſt-France*, being extended by *Charles* the Great, over all *Pannonia*, and ſo much of *Germanie* as was under the command of the *French*. In which diviſion, *Lewis* the 2. ſonne, ſurnamed the *Ancient*, being inveſted in the Kingdome of *Germanie*, or ſo much of *Eaſt-France* or *Auſtraſia* as lay on the Eaſt ſide of the *Rhene*: *Lotharius* the eldeſt ſonne had for his ſhare the title of Emperour, and therewith *Italy*, *Provence*, *Burgundie*, and ſo much of *Auſtraſia* or *Eaſt-France*, as lay on the *French* ſide of the River. Afterwards ſubdivided into three Eſtates; *Italie* with the title of *Roman* Emperour, being given to *Lewis* the eldeſt ſon, to *Charles* the youngeſt *Provence*, with the Kingdome of *Burgundie*; and to *Lothaire* the ſecond ſon *Auſtraſia* on this ſide of the *Rhene*, from hence called *Lot-reich*, *Lot-regne*, and *Lotharingia*, as before was ſaid. But *Lothaire* dying without iſſue, the Kingdome of *Lorrain* containing all the *Netherlands* (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of *Germanie* before deſcribed, became divided betwixt the Kings of *France*, and the *German* Emperours: each taking to themſelves the title of Kings of *Lorrain*, the River *Meuſe* or *Moſa* parting their poſſeſſions. But in the end, after much viciſſitude and interchangeableneſſe of affairs; both Princes laid aſide the title of Kings; incorporating ſo much as they held hereof into the reſt of their Eſtates: *Otho* the third of *Germanie*, and *Lewis* the fift of *France*, being the laſt that pleaſed themſelves with that broken title. In the mean time, this Countrey of *Lorrain* it ſelf, together with ſome part of the Land of *Triers*, *Bovillon*, *Gulick*, *Luickland*, and *Brabant*, being taken out of the reſt, were by *Otho* the ſecond made a Dukedome, *anno* 981. and by him given with the title of Duke of *Lorrain*, to *Charles* of *France*, ſon of *Gerberge* his Aunt by *Lewis* the 4. ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, ſon of *Charles* the *Simple*. *Charles* thus advanced by his Uncle, and finding himſelfe wholly neglected by *Lothaire* the *French* King, his brother, ſhewed himſelf ſo alienated from the *French*, and wedded to the *Germans*, that the *French* after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the fift (whoſe next Heire he was) rejected him, and choſe *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Otho* the ſon of this *Charles*, dying without iſſue, left his eſtate to *Geofrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bovillon*, and *Verdun*, (his near kinſman by the mothers ſide) from whom the Dukes of *Lorrain* doe derive themſelves. From *Hermingrade* the daughter of *Charles* deſcended the Lady *Iſabel* of *Hainalt*, wife of *Philip* the 2. King of *France*, thereby uniting the bloud of *Pepin* and *Hugh Capet*, to the great content of *Lewis* the 9. her Nephew: of whom it is ſaid that being a man of a tender conſcience he never joyed in the Crown of *France*, till it was proved that he was deſcended by his Grand-mother, from *Charles* of *Lorrain*, whom *Hugh Capet* had unjuſtly diſpoſſeſſed. But to return again to the Dukes of *Lorrain*, I find not any great improvement made of the Eſtate by any of them, more then the adding of the Dutchy of *Barr* in *France* by *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titularie King of *Naples*; but on the contrary a great weakning and diſtraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luickland* and the Dukedome of *Bovillon* being ſold unto the Biſhop of *Leige*, by *Godfrey*, ſurnamed of *Bovillon*, after King of *Hieruſalem*: *Brabant* torn from it by *Geofrey* Earl of *Lovain* in the time of *Baldwin* brother of *Godfrey*, and *Gulick-land*, by *Euſtace* the brother of *Baldwin*; the Biſhops of *Triers* not being negligent all this while, of the opportunity: ſo that we have no more to do, but to preſent the Reader with the Catalogue of

The DUKES of LORRAIN.

A.Ch.		
851	1	*Charles* of *France*, took priſoner by *Hugh Capet*, in which ſtate he died.
1001	2	*Otho*, ſon of *Charles*.
1004	3	*Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, couſin of *Otho* by his mother, a daughter of the houſe of *Ardenne*: confirmed herein by the power of the Emperour *Henry* the firſt.
1119	4	*Gozelo* of *Bovillon*, the brother of *Godfrey*.
1044	5	*Godfrey* II. ſon of *Gozelo*.
1070	6	*Godfrey* III.
1078	7	*Godfrey* IV. of *Bovillon*, ſonne of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardie*, and of *Ida* the daughter of *Godfrey* the 2. created King of *Hieruſalem*, *anno* 1099.
1180	8	*Baldwin* brother of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Hieruſalem*.
1119	9	*Thierrie* ſon of *William* the brother of *Baldwin*.
1128	10	*Simon* ſon of *Thierrie*.
1141	11	*Matthew* ſon of *Simon*.
1176	12	*Simon* II. ſon of *Matthew*.
1207	13	*Frederick* brother of *Simon*.
1213	14	*Theobald*, ſon of *Frederick*.
1219	15	*Matthew* II. ſon of *Theobald*, no great friend of the Popes.
1259	16	*Frederick* II. ſon of *Matthew*.
1303	17	*Theobald* II. ſon of *Frederick*.
1311	18	*Frederick* III. ſon of *Theobald*.
1329	19	*Rodolph* ſon of *Frederick*.
1346	20	*John* ſon of *Rodolph*.
1382	21	*Charles* ſon of *John*.
1430	22	*Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*, &c. in right of *Iſabel* his wife the daughter of *Charles*.
1452	23	*John* II. ſon of *Rene* and *Iſabel*, ſucceeded on the death of his mother.
1470	24	*Nicolas* ſon of *John*.
1473	25	*Rene* II. ſon of *Frederick* Earl of *Vandemont*, and of *Violant* or *Yoland* daughter of *Iſabel* and *Rene* the firſt; the Vanquiſher of *Charles* of *Burgundie* at the battell of *Nancy*.
1508	26	*Anthony* ſon of *Rene* the 2.
1544	27	*Francis* ſon of *Anthony*.
1545	28	*Charles* the II. ſon of *Francis*.
	29	*Henry* ſon of *Charles* married *Katharine*, ſiſter to *Henry* the 4. of *France*.
1624	30	*Francis* brother of *Henry*.
1630	31	*Charles* Nephew to *Francis* by his brother the Earl of *Vandemont*, and ſon-in-law to him by the marriage of his daughter and heir ſucceeded by a mixt title of deſcent and marriage. Being reſolved to hold it in his own right, he put away his wife and daughter of *Francis*, and took another to his bed which he better fanſied: puniſhed not long after by the loſſe of his whole eſtate, for immediately he ingaged himſelf in the wars of *Germanie*, in behalf of *Ferdinand* the 2. But being beaten by the *Swedes* at the battell of *Pfaffenhofen* in the County of *Hanaw*, he loſt a great part of his Countrey to the *Victors*, who purſued him home. And on the other ſide *Lewis* the 13. of *France*, picking a quarrell with him for receiving the *Monſieur* his brother, and the marriage of the *Monſieur* with the Lady *Margaret* the Dukes ſiſter, deprived him of the Dutchy of *Bar*: and falling into *Lorrain* with a puiſſant Army, at ſuch time as the *Swedes* were there, compelled him to put into his hands the City of *Nancie*, and by conſequence all the reſt of his Eſtates, *Septemb.* 1633. ſince which time the Duke hath never been reſtored thereto (for ought I can hear) nor hath any thing left him in it but the Town of *La Mothe* (if that) together with a good cauſe, many hearts, and an invincible courage.

The Armes of *Lorrain* are *Or*, a Bend *Gules*, charged with 3 Larks *Argent*. But herein I finde *Bara* an old *Herald*, to differ from *Paradine* the moſt exact *Genealogiſt* of the *French* nation. For *Bara* chargeth the Bend not with 3 *Allovettes* Larks, as *Paradine* doth, but with 3 *Allerions*: which are in Blazon ſmall Birds wanting beaks, feet and legs. Of this laſt opinion, is the moſt worthy Antiquary *Camden Clatencieux*: who withall telleth us, that when *Godfrey* of *Bullogne* was at the ſiege of *Hieruſalem*, ſhooting at S. *Davids* tower there; he broached three feetleſſe birds, called *Allerions* upon his arrow, and thereupon aſſumed this armes.

The revenues of the Prince are 700000 Crowns: whereof 200000 ariſe from the cuſtomes of the ſalt made in his Countrey; and the other 500000, from his Coronet lands. He is an *abſolute Prince*, and giveth for his device, an armed hand comming as it were from Heaven, and graſping a naked ſword: to ſhew that he holdeth his eſtate by no other tenure, then God and his ſword: the only hope, at this time, of the preſent Duke. For though he be accompted a *Prince of the Empire*, and his Dukedome reckoned for a part of the fift *Circle* thereof, which is called the *Circle of the Rhene*; yet he neither comes unto the *Diets*, nor holds himſelf bound by any of the *orders and decrees* which are made therein, as the reſt of the great Princes of *Germanie*: his neighbourhood to the *French* formerly ſecuring his eſtate againſt any force the Empire durſt bring againſt him for thoſe neglects.

Sueuia.

6. SVEVIA or SCHWABEN.

The Dukedome of *SVEVIA* or *SCHWABEN*, according to the ancient limits and extent thereof, was bounded on the North with *Frankenland*, and the *Lower Palatinate*; on the South with the *Switzerland*, and the *Alpes* of *Tirol*; on the East with the River *Lech*, parting it from *Bavaria*; and on the West with the *Rhene*, dividing it from *Sungow* and both *Alsatia's*. But now the Dukedome of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquisate of *Baden*, and other lesser estates being taken out of it; it is contracted and restrained within narrower bounds: having on the East *Bavaria*, on the West the Dukedome of *Wirtenberg*, and so much of the *Rhene*, as serveth to divide it from *Sungow* and the *Upper Elsats*; on the North *Franconia* or *Frankenland*; and on the South a little of the *Rhene*, with some part of the *Switzers*.

The Countrey for the most part mountainous and hilly, overspred with some spurs of the *Alpes*, and the Woods of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Swartzenwald*; recompensed notwithstanding with great plenty of springs and Rivers, (and amongst them the *Neccar* and the renowned *Danubius*) which do issue from them: which makes the Vales hereof to be very fruitfull, sufficiently stored with all necessary provisions. Nor are the woods and mountains so unprofitable, but that besides the great plenty of fewell, and the pleasures of hunting, they doe afford some *Mines* of iron, and other metals.

The people in regard of their mountainous situation, more fierce and warlike then the rest of the *Germans*; and so accompted of by *Plutarch* in former times: industrious in severall Trades and *Manufactures*, especially in the weaving of linnen Cloth, which is made here in great abundance: and who, by reason they have so much in them of the South, are *supra modum in* Venerem *proni*, as *Aubanus* tels me, at least more given to *Venus* then the other of the *Germans* are; the women also being said to be very forwards in this kinde; as tractable and easie as the men could wish them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow* lying next to the lake of *Constance*; the *Algow* extending to *Bavaria*; *Brisgow* upon the West of the River *Rhene*; and *North-Schwaben* on the northern side of *Danubius*. Principall Cities in the *HEGOW*, are 1. *Lindaw*, situate like an Iland in the Lake of *Constance*, encompassed almost with the waters thereof, but joyned to it with a Causey of 290 paces long: one of the *Free* or *Imperiall* Cities; made so for money, by the Emperour *Frederick Barberossa*, *anno* 1166. 2. *Buchorn*, and 3. *Vberlingen*, on the same lake, both *Imperiall* also: 4. *Scaff-haussen*, seated on both sides of the *Rhene*, not farre from the efflux thereof out of the lake *Cell*, (so called from a town of that name belonging to the Archdukes of *Austria*: but anciently by the name of *Lacus Venetus*:) and near those dreadfull fals or *Cataracts* of that River no lesse then 50 cubits downwards with great noyse and violence. For which cause all vessels that go down the *Rhene*, are fain to unlade themselves, and by Carts to carry their goods to this Town, where they imbark them again. Which as it yeeldeth great benefit unto the Town by tols, and imposts, so doth it alwayes keep it stored with abundance of Barks and other vessels; whence it hath the name of *Scaff-haussen*, that is to say, the *house* of *Skiffes*, or the Town of *Ship-boats*. The Town conveniently seated amongst rich pastures, and sweet groves on both sides of the River, not without some pleasant hils, and those well planted with vines, near adjoyning to it: *Imperiall*, but now a *Canton* of the *Switzers*, as hath there been shewn. 5. *Arbon*, upon the lake it self (the *Arbor Felix* of *Strabo*) belonging to the Bishop of *Constance*. 6. *Mersburg*, the ordinary seat and residence of the Bishop of *Constance*, Lord of the most part of this Tract, on the same lake also. 7. *Constance* it self, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, where it issueth out of the lake, called from hence the *Lake* of *Constance*; but by the *Dutch*, *Boden-zee*, from the Castle of *Bodmin*; by *Plinie* and other Ancients *Lacus Acronius*, and *Brigantinus*, made by the confluence of the *Rhene* and some other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town *Imperiall*, an *Episcopall* See, and a flourishing *Emporie*. Famous for the Councell here holden *anno* 1414. of great renown as well for the multitude and quality of the people which were there assembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled: The people of most note there assembled were *Sigismund* the Emperour, 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbats and Doctors, 10000 secular Princes and noble men, 450 Common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Minstrels and Jesters. The businesse there handled was first the pacifying of a *Schisme* in the Church, there being at that time three Popes, (or rather *Anti-Popes*) *Gregory* the 12. resident at *Rome*, *John* the 23. at *Bononia*, and *Bennet* the 13. in *Spain*; all three deposed by the Councell, and *Martin* the 5. made sole Pope, by the unanimous consent of the *Councell*; declaring both by matter of fact, and by a publick *Constitution* here made and ratified, that a *Councell is above the Pope*. The other main businesse was the proceeding against *John Hus*, and *Hierome* of *Prague*, (spoken of before) both which notwithstanding the Emperours *safe conduct*, were here condemned of *Heresie*, degraded, and burnt. Now the manner of *degrading* a priest is this. (I hope to be excused for this *digression*.) The party to be *degraded* is attired in his priestly Vestments; holding in the one hand a *Chalice* full of wine and water, and in the other a guilt plate (or *Paten* as they call it) with a *Wafer*. Then kneeling down, the Bishops Deputy first taking from him all those things, commands him to say no more *Masses* for the quick and dead. 2 Scraping his fingers ends with a piece of glasse, he commandeth him from that time forth not to *hallow* any thing: and 3 stripping him of his priestly habit, he is clothed in a *lay* attire, and so

delivered

delivered over to the *Secular* Magiſtrate. But to return again to the City of *Conſtance*, being proſcribed by *Charles* the fift for refuſing the *Interim*, and not able to withſtand ſuch forces as were raiſed againſt them, they put themſelves under the *Protection* of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the *Frying-pan into the fire*, as the ſaying is. For *Ferdinand* being poſſeſſed of the Town, ſeiſed on the common Treaſury, and upon all *Records* and writings which belonged unto them; ſet out an Edict that all the *Miniſters* within eight daies ſhould depart the City, and that no Citizen from thenceforth ſhould wear any weapon. And ſo inſtead of a *Protectour* he became their *Maſter*.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria*, which is called the *ALGOW*, are 1. *Buchaw*, on the lake called *Feder-zee*, a Town *Imperiall*. 2. *Ravenſpurg*, a *Free City* ſeated amongſt mountains, whereof one hangeth over it, the River *Ach* running by it in a bed ſo narrow, that not able to receive the waters which fall down from the hils, it much endamageth all the Countrey by frequent *Landfloods*. 3. *Woongen* (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) *Imperiall* alſo. 4. *Kempten*, the *Campodunum* of *Strabo*; and 5. *Mimmegen*, the *Druſomagus* of *Ptolemy*, both *Imperiall* Cities, the laſt about three miles in circuit, populous, rich and very well traded. 6. *Pfullendorf*, 7. *Zeukirk*, 8. *Bibrach*; all three *Imperiall*; the laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Bragodurum* of the Ancients. 9. *Auſburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, firſt made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and by him called *Auguſta Vindelicorum*. The principall City in thoſe times of the *Vindelici*, a potent people of this tract. A City of great wealth and ſtate, containing about nine miles in circuit; and very ſtrongly fortified, by nature on the Eaſt and North where the ground lies low, and under water, and on the Weſt and South by Art. The buildings for three parts of it are of clay and timber, but on the Weſt part ſeated on an hill built of *Free-ſtone* ſix or ſeven ſtories high; in which are many fair houſes of the principall Citizens, and many ſtately Palaces which belong to the *Fuggars* a family of very great (almoſt Princely) Revenues, poſſeſſed of many goodly dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoyning territories: who though they have of late obtained the honour of Barons in regard of their wealth, ſtill keep themſelves (contrary to the cuſtome of *Germanie*, where traffick is counted a diſgrace to a *Noble man*) to the trade of *Merchandiſe*. The publick Edifices of it very decent, eſpecially the *Cathedrall* Church, a majeſtick building; the other Churches, ten in number, and the *Religious* houſes correſpondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worſhipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulneſſe of the ſoile) the City gives a *ſheaf of corn* for the Armes thereof: ſince their converſion unto *Chriſtianity* made a Biſhops See. Deſtroyed by *Attila* and his *Hunnes*, it was after built more beatifully then it had been formerly; at laſt made *Imperiall*, and the Miſtreſſe of as large a territory as moſt Cities of *Germany*. Famous for the *confeſſion of faith*, exhibited in this place to *Charles* the 5, by the *Proteſtant* Princes, hence called *Confeſſio Auguſtana*, *anno* 1530. 2 For the *Interim* or mixt forme of Doctrine, containing ſome points of *Proteſtantiſme*, but moſt of *Popery*, here tendred to both parties by the ſaid Emperour (but received by neither) to be ſubſcribed to and obſerved till the differences could be ſetled by a *Generall Councell*; And 3 for the publick allowance here given by *Decree* of all the States of the Empire to the *Proteſtant* party, to profeſſe openly their *Religion* without any impeachment; *anno* 1555. a Limitation only laid on the *Eccleſiaſticks*, that if they changed their *Religion* they ſhould loſe their preferments, which were to be beſtowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*.

In the third part hereof called *BRISGOW*, lying on the Eaſt of the River *Rhene*, and the Weſt of *Wirtenberg*, places of moſt importance are 1 *Friburg*, upon the *Trieſſe* and other ſtreams deſcending from the mountains of *Swartzen-wald* under which it lyeth: founded by *Berchthold* Earl or Duke of *Zeringen* (the Caſtle of *Zeringen* once the chief ſeat of thoſe Princes, being then near adjoyning to it) in the reign of *Henry* the 5 Emperour *anno* 1112 or thereabouts: Famous in thoſe daies for ſilver-mines, now for an Univerſity here eſtabliſhed, *anno* 1459. and being in preſent eſtimation the chief of the Countrey. 2 *Offenbach*, 3 *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kintrich*, and both Towns *Imperiall*; the firſt ſo named from *Offa* an *Engliſh Saxon*, the *Apoſtle* of theſe parts of *Germanie*. 4 *Hachberg*, which gives the title of a Marqueſſe to the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5 *Zel*, once Imperiall, but of late times belonging, as doth alſo 6 *Badenwille*, to the Marqueſſe of *Baden*. 7 *Waldſhut* upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold, and mountainous Countrey, but well ſtored with woods. 8. *Briſach*, by *Antonine* called *Mons Briſiacus*, a garriſon in his time againſt the incroaching *Almains*; and ſituate at that time on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*; the courſe of the River being ſince turned on the other ſide, where now it runneth. Built Caſtle-wiſe on the top of a round hill, in which there is alſo a ſtrong Tower or Fortreſſe, raiſed by *Berchthold* the third, for defence of the place, otherwiſe ſtrong enough by its own naturall ſituation, and might be made impregnable but for want of water, which is all drawn from one deep well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene*, which runs underneath it. The Town fair, populous, and well built; once of moſt note in all the Countrey, from hence called *Briſac-gow*, or *Briſe-gow*; but after the building of *Friburg* by *Berchthold* the 4, it grew by little and little to be leſſe frequented, the other being ſeated more conveniently for trade and buſineſſe.

Finally in the fourth and laſt part hereof called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, becauſe on the North ſide of the *Danow*, the places moſt obſervable are 1 *Gmand*, on the *Rheems*; 2 *Dinkel-Spuell* on the *Warnitz*, two *Imperiall* Towns; which with *Vberlinque* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in building, territory or eſtimation) ſpoken of before, are the only three *Imperiall* Cities in all *Germanie*, which totally adhered unto the doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3 *Boptingen* on the *Egra*, an *Imperiall* City; 4 *Norlingen* on the ſame River but in a low and mooriſh ground, yet of great reſort, populous,

and

Suevia.

and well traded. Moſt memorable for the great defeat here given the *Swedes* by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperour, at his firſt entrance on the Government: in which *Bannier*, one of the principall commanders of that nation, was ſlain on the place, *Guſtavus Horn*, another of as great eminence, taken Priſoner, their whole forces routed: and thereupon ſo ſtrange an alteration of the affairs of *Germanie* which they had almoſt wholly conquered (though not for themſelves) that the *Palatinate*, not long before reſtored to its proper owner, was again poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankenland* by the *Imperialiſts*; and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their holds on the *Baltick* ſeas, *anno* 1637. 6 *Rotweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an *Imperiall* City, and a Confederate of the *Switzers*. 7 *Donawerdt*, ſeated on the confluence of the *Donaw* and the *Werdt*, whence it had the name; moſt commonly called only *Werdt*, an *Imperiall* Town: the habitation of *John de Werdt*, once a *Brewer* herein, but afterward a chief Commander of the forces of the Duke of *Bavaria* in the late *German* wars. 8 *Villengen*, on the *Bregen* a ſmall river falling into the *Danow*; a Town belonging to the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*. Not far from which ſtands 9 *Furſtenberg*, an ancient Caſtle, the Earls hereof are *Princes* of the *Empire*, and Lords of a great part of the Countrey; in a Village of whoſe called *Don-Eſchingen* is the head of *Danubius*. 10 *Ulme*, an *Imperiall* City, ſituate on the meeting of the *Blave*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*: the principall City of *North-Schwaben*, about 6 miles in compaſſe, rich, populous, well fortified, and ſtored with an Armory, for Ordnance and all manner of Ammunition not inferiour to any in *Germanie*. The Town but new, taking its firſt riſe from a Monaſtery here founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulme* from the *Elmes* about it. At firſt it belonged unto the *Monkes*, of whom having bought their freedome in the time of *Frederick* the third it became *Imperiall*. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having ſo violent a ſtream that the Boats which go down the water uſe to be ſold at the place where they land; it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence on the banks of the *Danow* lye the *Suevian Alpes*, and amongſt them the old Caſtle of *Hohenberg*, the Lord whereof, on the ruine of the houſe of *Schwaben*, became poſſeſſed of a great eſtate here, and in *upper Elſats*, ſold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, the founder of the now *Auſtrian* Family.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brixantes*, *Suantes*, *Ruguſci*, and *Calucones*, who together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other tribes of the *Rhæti*, (of whom ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in the *Alpine* Provinces) poſſeſſed themſelves of that Countrey which lyeth betwixt the River *Inn* and the head of the *Rhene* Eaſt and Weſt, *Danubius* and the *Alps* of *Italy* North and South. Within which compaſſe are the greateſt part of the *Griſons*, the Dukedomes of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, on this ſide the *Danow*; and part of the County of *Tirol*; and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Druſus* and *Tiberius Nero*, ſons-in-law of *Auguſtus*, it was made a province of the *Romans*; divided into *Rhætia Prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck* or *Lycus*; and *Rhætia Secunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck* and the River *Inn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which accompt all *Schwaben* on the South ſide of the *Danow* was part of the Province of *Rhætia Prima*, continuing ſo till vanquiſhed and ſubdued by the *Almans*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperour of the Weſtern parts. As for the *Almans* who ſucceeded in poſſeſſion hereof, they were originally ſome tribes and families of the *Suevi*, the moſt warlike nation of the *Germans*, inhabiting upon the banks of the River of *Albis*: who jealous of *Cæſars* great ſucceſſes, brought againſt him 430000 fighting men, of which 80000 were ſlain, and many drowned. They uſed to ſtay at home, and go to the war by turnes, they which ſtayed at home, tilling the land; to whom the reſt returning, brought the ſpoil of the Enemies. But after which blow, we hear little of them till the time of *Caracalla*, the ſon of *Severus*; during whoſe reign, deſcending towards the banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other nations as they paſſed along; they aſſumed firſt the name of *Almans*, either from that promiſcuous mixture of all ſorts of men; or (as I rather think) from *Mannus*, the ſon of *Tuiſco* one of the great and National Gods of the *Germans*. And though well beaten by him at their firſt comming down, near the River *Mœnus*; and afterwards more broken by *Diocletian*, who ſlew at leaſt 60000 of them at one time, in *Gaul*: yet never left they to infeſt the Provinces of the Empire which lay neareſt to them; till in the end following the tract of the *Hunns* who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garriſons which were in their way, they made themſelves Maſters of *Rhætia Prima*, *Germania Prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing beſides the Countries ſpoken of before, *Alſatia*, and ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lies on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the *French* their next neighbours (of whoſe growth and greatneſſe they began to be very ſenſible) they were firſt vanquiſhed by *Clovis* the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *French*, in that great and memorable fight at *Zulph*, near *Colen*: and afterwards made wholly ſubject to the Conquerour; by whom oppreſſed with an heavy and laſting ſervitude. About this ſame they returned again to their old name of *Suevians*: their eſtate being erected into a *Dukedome*, called many times the *Dukedome* of *Almain*; and when ſo called, divided into the *upper Almain*, comprehending the Countrey of the *Griſons*, with ſome parts of *Switzerland*, and *Tirol*; and the *Lower* or the *Proper Almain*, which contained the reſt of the Eſtates of the ancient *Almans*, called for the moſt part by the name of the Dukedome of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and finally tranſmitting that name to this Province only, the beſt part thereof. Theſe Dukes at firſt officiary only, removable at the will of the Emperour, and accomptable to him: not ſeldome many at one time, eſpecially whileſt under the command of the *French*: ſome of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower *Almain*. So that there is no great certainty of their ſucceſſion, nor much care to be taken in ſear-

ching

ching after it; though otherwiſe men of great Authority and Command in their ſeverall times. The moſt remarkable amongſt them was *Rudolph*, Earl of *Reinfelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, (deſcended from the Earls of *Habsburg*) in the reign of *Henry* the fourth, againſt whom he was choſen Emperour by the practiſe and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*: but overcome and wounded at the battell of *Eyſter*, he died not long after of his wounds, with great repentance for rebelling againſt his Soveraign. After his death, ſome Provinces being diſmembred from it, and other leſſer eſtates firſt erected out of it: it was made *Hereditary* in the perſon of *Frederick*, Baron of *Hohenſtauffen*, ſurnamed the *Antient*, by the munificence and bounty of the ſaid *Henry* the fourth, whoſe daughter *Agnes* he had married. His ſucceſſours follow in this order. *Suevia.*

The DUKES of *SCHWABEN.*

1 *Frederick* the ancient, the firſt *Hereditary* Duke of *Schwaben*.
2 *Frederick* with the one eye, ſon of *Frederick* the Ancient.
3 *Frederick* III. ſurnamed *Barbaroſſa*, ſon of *Frederick* with the one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperour, he ſucceeded the Emperour *Henry* the fift, in the Dukedome of *Franconia*; and left the ſame unto his ſucceſſours.

1190 4 *Frederick* IV. ſecond ſon of *Barbaroſſa*, his elder brother *Henry* ſucceeding in the Empire, by the name of *Henry* the ſixt.
5 *Conrade*, brother of *Frederick* the fourth.
6 *Philip*, brother of *Conrade*, after the death of *Henry* the ſixt, elected Emperour.

1207 7 *Frederick* V. ſon of *Henry* the ſixt, elected Emperour by the name of *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Naples* and *Sicil* alſo in right of his mother.

1250 8 *Conrade* II. ſon of *Frederick* the fift, King of both *Sicils*, and Emperour of *Germany*, after the death of his Father, poiſoned as was ſuppoſed by his baſe brother *Manfred*, who ſucceeded in his Kingdom of *Sicil*.

1254 9 *Conradine*, the ſon of *Conrade*, purſuing his right unto the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicil*, was overcome and taken priſoner by *Charles* of *Anjou* ſucceſſour unto *Manfrede* in thoſe eſtates; and by his command beheaded at *Naples*, *anno* 1268. After whoſe death (being the laſt of that powerfull and imperiall Family) this vaſt Eſtate was brought unto a ſecond diſmembring, and divided amongſt the Biſhops, Princes, and *Free Cities* hereof: of which laſt there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedome, then in all *Germany* beſides. So that beholding it in the firſt and ſecond dilapidation, we finde many goodly Patrimonies and fair Eſtates (beſides what belongeth to the Cities and Epiſcopall Sees) to have been raiſed out of the ruines of this great Dukedome: that is to ſay, the Dukedomes of *Zeringen* and *Wirtemberg*, with the Marquiſate of *Baden*, diſmembred from it, when conferred on *Frederick* of *Hohenſtauffen*; the Earldomes of *Pfirt*, *Hohenberg*, and *Friburg*, (beſides a great improvement of the Earldome of *Hapsburg*) advanced out of the ſecond ruine. How *Pfirt* and *Hohenberg* were united to the houſe of *Auſtria*, hath been ſhewn already: and what becomes of *Wirtenberg*, and *Baden*, ſhall be ſhewn hereafter. Here it is onely to be noted, that the Family of *Zeringen* poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow*, and great part of *Switzerland*, owe their Originall to *Berthilo*, or *Berthold*, a younger ſon of *Guntram* the firſt Earl of *Hapsburg*. Which being extinguiſhed in the perſon of *Berthold* the fift, (who dyed the ſame day in which the Emperour *Rodolph* of *Hapſburg* was born) *anno* 1218. the rights hereof deſcended on the Earls of *Friburg*, the principall City of that Country. *Eggow*, the laſt Earl of which houſe being overlaid by his undutifull and rebellious Subjects, ſold his eſtate therein ſo 12000 Ducats to *Albert* and *Leopold*, Dukes of *Auſtria*, ſons of *Albert* the *Short*, whoſe ſucceſſours enjoy all *Briſgow* to this very day.

The Armes of *Schawben* were *Argent*, 3 Leopards *Sable*.

7. *BAVARIA.*

BAVARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Auſtria*, on the Weſt with the river *Leck*, or *Lycus*, which parts it from *Schawben*; on the North with *Northgoia*, or the *Vpper Palatinate*, and on the South, with the Earldome of *Tirol*, and *Carinthia*. It containeth the whole Province of *Rhætia Secunda*, and ſo much of *Noricum Mediterraneum*, as now makes up the Biſhoprick of *Saltsburg*: and by a diſtinct name was called *Vindelicia*, as being the ancient habitation of the *Vindelici*, ſo named from the two Rivers

aria. Rivers of *Vindis* and *Lycus* (now the *Werd* and the *Leck*) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus verſified by a *German* Poet.

Reſpicit & late fluvios Vindimque, Lycumque,
Miſcentes undas, & nomina Littoris; unde
Antiquam Gentem, populumque, Urbemque *vocarunt*
Vindelicam.———

In *Engliſh* thus:

Vindis and *Lycus*, floods of noted Fame,
He next beholds, mingling their ſtreames and name,
To which the old *Vindelici* doe own,
The name both of their Nation, and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Auguſta Vindelycorum*, their *Metropolis* or Capitall City. But after ſuch time as the *Boii* or *Boiarians* had driven out the *Romans*, and got poſſeſſion of this Country, the name of *Vindelicia*, and *Rhætia ſecunda*, grew into diſuſe: that of *Boiaria* ſucceeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into *Bavaria* the preſent name of the Country amongſt the *Latines*; but by the *Dutch* called *Bayeren*, by the *French Bavier*.

The whole divided into three parts; the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alpes* of *Tyrol*; the *Lower*, extending all along the banks of the *Danow* and the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg*, ſituate betwixt the *Inn* and the Dukedome of *Auſtria*: all three much over-ſpread with woods and forreſts, remainders of the *Hercinian forreſt* deſcribed before. But more particularly the *Higher* lying towards the *Alpes* is cold and barren, affording no wines, and but little corn: the *Lower* being more fruitfull, and better planted, for ſome parts (eſpecially about *Regensberg*, and *Landſhut*, inferiour unto none in *Germany*, for the richneſſe and pleaſantneſſe of the ſituation. Of the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg* we ſhall ſpeak by it ſelf; becauſe by ſome not reckoned as a part hereof. In all, great quantity of *fenell* for the fire, and of *Timber* for building; no leſſe of *Swine* fatted in the woods, and ſent away by numerous herds into other Countries.

The *Chriſtian* Faith firſt preached here amongſt the *Boiarians*, by *Rupertus* Biſhop of *Wormes*, driven from his See by *Childebert*, King of the *French*, *anno* 540. or thereabout, and here made the firſt Biſhop of *Saltzburg*: corrupted at this time with the *Leaven* of the Church of *Rome*, to which this Country (ſetting aſide the *Imperiall Cities*) is more intirely devoted, then any other in *Germany*.

Principall Cities in the *Higher*, are 1 *Munchen*, (in *Latine Monachium*) the Dukes ſeat; ſeated on the *Iſer*, or *Iſarus*, in a very ſweet and delightly ſoil, among ponds and groves, daintily interlaced with pretty Riverets, and inriched with many excellent Gardens: that of the Duke being hardly to be paralleld in all this Continent. Firſt founded by *Henry* Duke hereof in the time of *Otho* the firſt, *anno* 972. now grown a large and populous City: the publick buildings, as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate-houſe or *Guild-hall*, and common Market-place, of ſuch excellent Structure, that they ſerve not onely for uſe and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongſt them none more eminent then the *Library* in the Ducal Palace, wherein is conceived to be 11000 Volumes, the moſt part of them *Manuſcripts*. A town made choice of by *Maximilian* the now Duke of *Bavaria* to be the receptacle of the ſpoiles got by him in the wars of *Germany*: here being found (at ſuch time as the town was taken by the King of *Sweden*) 140 braſſe Peeces (beſides other great Guns) hid under the ground; one of the which was charged, inſtead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2 *Landsberg*, upon the *Leck*, or *Lycus*, neer the *Alpes* of *Tirol*, once of great ſtrength, becauſe a Frontire towards *Schwaben*; but proving a dangerous neighbour to the *Swediſh* Garriſon planted in theſe parts during that war againſt the Duke of *Bavaria*, was by them taken and diſmantled; and is now an open Village onely. 3 *Martenwald*, now a place of note or beauty, heretofore the *Inutrium* of *Ptolomy* ſeated near the *Alpes*. 4 *Fridberg*, well fortified by Duke *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* the ſecond, for a bulwark againſt thoſe of *Ausburg*.

In the *LOWER Bavaria*, there firſt offers it ſelf to conſideration, the town of 1 *Rain*, ſeated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*: memorable for the skirmiſh neer to it betwixt the *Swedes* and *Bavarians*, at the firſt paſſing of the *Swediſh* forces over that River: in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, ſo famous for his long and fortunate conduct, received his deaths wound, of which he died at *Ingolſtad* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg* upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the firſt town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes*, after the ſaid defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolſtad*, ſaid to be built by a Tribe, or Nation of the *Sueves*, called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angeloſtadium*, or *Angleſtade*: firſt made a City by *Ludovick* of *Bavaria*, Duke and Emperour; and in the yeer 1410 made an Univerſity, much priviledged by Duke *Lewis*, or *Ludovick* the fift, and Pope *Pius* the ſecond. A town ſo ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it ſeemes impregnable: and indeed proved ſo to *Guſtavus* the late King of *Sweden*: who here found the firſt check to his proſperous fortunes, being forced to raiſe his ſiege without endangering it, and finde work elſewhere. 4 *Regensberg* (in *Latine Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* alſo, where it receives the River *Regen*, when it hath its name: built

in

in the place of *Tiberiva* or *Auguſta Tiberii*, ſo called of a Colonie brought hither by *Tiberius Cæſar*, about the time of our Saviours paſſion: afterwards called *Rhætopolis*, or the Citie of the *Rhætians*, the chief of *Rhætia ſecunda*. At this time a fair, rich, and populous Citie, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houſes; anciently an Epiſcopall See: and of late made the ordinarie place for the *generall diets* of the Empire. In former times the ſeat of the Kings and firſt Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made *Imperiall*; and now mixt, or both. For being ſtill *Imperiall*, at the leaſt in name, it was ſeiſed on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*, when the *Swedes* firſt got footing within his Dominions, held by him with a very ſtrong Garriſon, after the loſſe of *Munchen* his chief place of reſidence, till at laſt won from him by the *Swedes*, *anno* 1633. 5 *Paſſaw*, by the modern *Latiniſts*, *Patavia*; but by ſome thought to be the *Boiodurum* of *Ptolomie*, then a Roman Garriſon. Seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn*, and the *Ils*: by which divided into three towns, *Paſſaw*, *Innſtade*, and *Ilſtade*: the whole *Compoſitum* being a rich Fair, and well-traded Citie. A See Epiſcopall and ſubject immediately to the Biſhop, as chief Lord hereof, who hath his dwelling in the Caſtle of *Oberhuſen*, adjoining to that part hereof which is called *Ilſtade*. A place remarkable for many meetings and conſultations of the *German* Princes: eſpecially for that of the year 1552, in which all former quarrels being laid aſide, the *Proteſtants* were firſt permitted the *free Exerciſe* of their Religion, by the conſent and edict of *Charls* the fift, who had moſt laboured to ſuppreſſe it. More in the land is 6 *Friſing*, on the ſwelling of a fine round hill neer the River *Ambra* which runs beneath it; called anciently *Fraxinum*: conceived to be built by ſome of the Preſidents or Lieutenants for the *Roman* Emperours: honoured with an Epiſcopall See about the year 710. one of the Biſhops whereof commonly called *Otho Friſengenſis*, was the beſt Hiſtorian of his time. 7 *Landſhut*, upon the river of *Iſar*, in the richeſt and moſt pleaſant countrie of all *Bavaria*; a beautifull and well-built Citie, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof in the year 1208. adorned with a Church of moſt curious building for the ſervice of God, and a magnificent Palace for the uſe of the Duke. 8 *Freiſtet*, the only *Imperiall* town, (except *Regensburg*) in all this Dukedom. The whole number of Cities and great towns in both *Bavaria's* is ſuppoſed to be 80; that is to ſay, 34 Cities, 46 great towns: of which theſe the principall.

The *Biſhoprick* or *Diſtrict* of *Saltsburg* being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria* (according to our former diviſion of it) extendeth from the *Inn*, or *Oenus*, towards the confines of *Auſtria*. The ſoil hereof rockie, drie, and barren, excepting ſome few valleys only, as ſeated in the midſtſt of the *Julian Alps*: the habitation heretofore of the *Norici Mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principall town hereof is *Saltzburg*, ſeated upon the river *Saltzach*, whence it had the name: raiſed out of the ruines of *Juvania* placed hereabouts by *Antoninus*, the ſtation of a cohort of *Roman* Souldiers belonging to the firſt *Legion*. An *Alpine* citie ſtrongly ſituate amongſt the Mountains, but no leſſe beautifull then many of the lower grounds. The *Royall* ſeat of ſome of the *Bavarian* Kings, after of the Archbiſhops hereof, the moſt powerfull Prelates for Revenue and juriſdiction of any in *Germanie*: the See firſt fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Ruthertus* the firſt *Apoſtle* of theſe parts ſpoken of before; whoſe image or impreſſe is ſtamped to this day on the coins of this Biſhoprick. At the time when *Luther* firſt endeavoured a Reformation, Cardinall *Matthæus Langius* was Biſhop here, who did ingenuouſly confeſſe that the Maſſe did not want its faults, that the Court of *Rome* were much corrupted, and the lives of Prieſts and Friers fit to be reformed: *Sed quod miſellus Monachus omnia reformet, id non eſſe tolerabile*: but that ſuch a ſorrie fellow as *Luther* ſhould attempt the work, that by no means to be indured. 2 *Newkirch*, on the ſame River, near the head thereof. 3 *Rotenbourg*, on the Eaſt ſide of the *Inn* bordering on *Bavaria*. 4 *Traunſhaim*, upon the river *Traun*, riſing out of the Lakes. 5 *Wildeſmet*, one of the fartheſt Northwards; and 6 *Biſhops-ſtoffe*, one of the moſt Southern in all this tract.

The firſt Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the *Diſtrict* of *Saltsburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforeſaid: a people ſo reſolvedly bent to maintain their freedome againſt the incroachments of the *Romans*, that when *Druſus* the ſon-in-law of *Auguſtus*, and father of *Germanicus Cæſar*, made war upon them, the very women thereof took the alarm, *& deficientibus telis, infantes in ora militum adverſa miſerunt*; and when their darts were ſpent, threw their young infants (ſaith the Hiſtorian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them in the declining of the Empire, ſucceeded the *Bojarians*, ſome of the many tribes of the *Boji*, the moſt diffuſed and the multitudinous Nation of *Gaul* and *Germanie*. Originally of *Gaul*, inhabiting in the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, from whence ſome of them paſſed with the *Senones* and others of the *Gauls*, to the further ſide of the *Alps*, (in reſpect of them) where they tooke up the Countrie near the head of the *Po*. Wearied with long wars againſt the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country; ſome of them paſſed into *Germanie*, and mingled themſelves with the *Tauriſci*, then dwelling in thoſe parts which we now call *Stiermark*: others advancing further, thruſt themſelves into the *Norici*, (of whom more anon) and ſome retired themſelves into the ſhelters and faſt places of the *Hircinian* Forreſt. Driven from this laſt by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the countries of the *Hermanduri* and *Noriſci*, (now the *Upper Palatinate*) who mingling into one Nation with them, took the name of *Bojarians*; and by that name firſt known in the time of *Clovis*, the fift King of the *French*: by whoſe perſwaſion, in the 17 year of *Anaſtaſius* Emperor of the Eaſt, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Vindelicia*, or the ſecond *Rhætia*, with ſome part of *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Bojaria*, as before was ſignified. Governed firſt by Kings (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigerius* (and he the laſt of that race) ſlain, fighting on the ſide of the *Almans* againſt the *French*, at the great battell of *Zulp*, near *Colen*: after which made ſubject to the Conquerours, as their neighbours and confederates the *Almans* were; but ſuffered to live under the command

Bavaria.

command and government of their own Princes by the name of *Dukes*. Of these from *Theudo* the son of *Aldigerius*, to *Tassilo* the last Duke, outed of his estate and honours by *Charls* the Great, for conspiring with the *Lombards* against him, are reckoned fifteen Dukes in all: whose names (for there remaineth little of them but the emptie names) we shall subjoine in the ensuing Catalogue of the

DUKES of the *BOJARIANS*.

493	1	*Theodo* son of *Adalgerius* the last King; from whose younger brother *Utilo*, descended *Pepin* the Father of *Charls* the Great.
511	2	*Theodo* II. surnamed the Great.
537	3	*Theodebert*.
	4	*Theodo* III. the first *Christian* Prince of the *Bojarians*.
565	5	*Tassilo*, son of *Theodebert*.
598	6	*Garibaldus*.
612	7	*Theodo* IV.
630	8	*Tassilo* II.
650	9	*Theodo* V.
	10	*Theodebert* II.
	11	*Theodo* VI. son of *Grimoldus* the brother of *Theodebert* the second.
708	12	*Grimold*.
	13	*Hugobert*, brother of *Grimold*.
735	14	*Utilo*.
765	15	*Tassilo* III. the last Duke of the *Bojarians*. Of whom more anon.

Amongst these few of any note, but 1 *Theodo* the first, son of *Adalgerius*, who abandoning the name of King, because lesse pleasing to the *French* who had newly conquered them, assumed that of Duke: and passing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhætia secunda*, with part of *Noricum*, from the *Romans*, *anno* 508. or thereabouts. 2 *Theodo* the second, named the *Great*, for his great and many victories against the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum* and *Vindelicia*; and whatsoever they held on the *Dutch* side of the *Alps*. 3 *Theodo* the 3. of that name, and the 4. in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Christian Faith, by the preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, *anno* 580. 4 *Tassilo* the 3. of that name, and the last of their Dukes of the race of *Adalgerius*, or of the old *Bojarian* bloud: who being deposed by *Charls* the Great, the whole countrie became immediately subject to the *French*, governed at first by their *Lieutenants*. Dismembred from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the *Godly*, it was made a Kingdom (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom conferred on *Lotharius* his eldest son, who was afterwards Emperour of the *Romans*: after his death possessed by the Kings of *Germanie*, but as a distinct Kingdom both in name and title, till the decease of *Lewis* the son of *Arnulph* the last, of the direct line of *Charls* the Great. He being dead and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a subject Province to the Kingdome of *Germanie*, one *Arnulph* of the issue of the said *Charls*, with the generall liking of the *Bojarians*, took upon himself the title of King: but being opposed therein by *Conrade* the brother of *Lewis*, Emperour and King of *Germanie*, as also by *Henry* the first who succeeded: he changed the title of King into that of Duke; the Founder of the present house of

The DUKES of *BAVARIA*.

1 *Arnulph* of the house of *Charls* the *Great*, first Duke of *Bavaria*.
2 *Eberhard* son of *Arnulph*, deposed by *Otho* the 1.
3 *Berchthold*, the brother of *Arnulph*, confirmed in the estate by the said Emperour *Otho*. After his death this Dukedome was transferred for 17 successions from one great Familie to another, according to the power and pleasure of the present Emperour; in manner following.
4 *Henry* brother of *Otho* the 1.
5 *Henry* II. son of the former *Henry*.
6 *Henry* III. surnamed the *Saint*, son of *Henry* the 2. the first Emperour who came in by *election*, according to the *Order* made by Pope *Gregory* the 5.
7 *Henry* IV. surnamed *Hezzel*, brother to *Cunegund* the renowned wife of *Henry* the *Saint*; by whom preferred to this Dukedom, and by him deposed.
8 *Henry Guelph* son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorfe* in *Schwaben* (of the strange Originall of which Familie we shall speak in *Saxonie*) made Duke by the Emperour *Conrade* the 2.
9 *Guelpho*, son of *Henry Guelph*, or *Henry* the 5.

10 *Ernest*

10 *Erneſt*, created Duke hereof by the ſame *Conrade* the 2. by whom depoſed again for conſpiring againſt him.
11 *Henry* VI.
12 *Cuno*, accuſed of conſpiracie, and diſplaced by *Henry* the 3. to make room for
13 *Henry* VII. ſon of the ſaid Emperour *Henry* the 3. whom he ſucceeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4.
14 *Agnes*, the mother of the ſaid *Henry* the 4. by the gift of her ſon.
15 *Otho* by the gift of the Empereſſe *Agnes*, depoſed not long after by *Henry* the 4.
16 *Welpho* III. ſon of *Coniza* the daughter of *Guelph* the 2 by *Azon* an *Italian* Marqueſſe, made Duke hereof by the ſaid Emperour *Henry* the 4.
17 *Welpho* IV. ſon to *Welpho* the 3.
18 *Henry* VIII. ſurnamed the *Proud*, brother of *Guelpho* the 4. by the marriage of *Gertrude* daughter of *Lotharius* the 2. Duke of *Saxonie* alſo. Deprived of both by the Emperour *Conrade* the 3.
19 *Leopold*, ſon to *Leepold* the 4. Marqueſſe of *Auſtria*, made Duke by the ſaid *Conrade* the 3.
20 *Henry* IX. brother of *Leopold*, after Marqueſſe, and at laſt Duke of *Auſtria*.
21 *Henry* X. ſurnamed the *Lyon*, ſon of *Henry* the *Proud*, reſtored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* (the Duke of *Auſtria* being otherwiſe ſatisfied) by whom not long after proſcribed and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this eſtate became fixed and ſettled, in the perſon and poſteritie of
1180 22 *Otho* of *Wittlesbach*, lineally deſcended from *Arnulph* the firſt Duke, advanced unto this honour by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, ſenſible of the too great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this eſtate being reduced by this time to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Northgoia*.
1183 23 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* ſon of *Otho*.
1231 24 *Otho* II. ſon of *Lewis*, who by marrying *Gertrude* the ſole daughter of *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, brought the Electorall dignitie into the houſe of *Bavaria*.
1290 25 *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, the ſonne of *Otho* the 2.
1812 26 *Ludovick* or *Lewis* II. brother of *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria*, and Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.
1294 27 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* III. ſecond ſon of *Lewis* the 2. ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Bavaria*; *Rodolph* the eldeſt ſon, ſucceeding in both *Palatinates*, and the Electoral dignitie. He was afterwards elected and crowned Emperour, known commonly by the name of *Ludovicus Bavarus*.
1347 28 *Stephen* the eldeſt ſon of *Ludovick* the Emperour; *William* and *Albert* his two brethren ſucceſſively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their mother.
1375 29 *Stephen* II. ſon of *Stephen* the 1. his brothers *Frederick* and *John* ſharing with him parts the eſtate.
1413 30 *Ludovick* II. ſurnamed *Barbatus*, depoſed and impriſoned by his own ſon *Ludowick*, who yet died before him without iſſue.
1147 31 *Henry* II, ſon of *Frederick* the ſecond brother of *Stephen* the 2. ſucceeded on the death of *Ludovicus Barbatus*.
1450 32 *Ludovick* V. ſurnamed the *Rich*, who baniſhed the Jews out of his eſtates, and ſeiſed their goods; the ſon of *Henry* the 2.
1479 33 *George* ſurnamed the *Rich* alſo, the Founder of the Univerſitie of *Ingolſtade*! whoſe ſole daughter and heir was married to *Rupertus* Prince *Electour Palatine*: with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dower. But *Maximilian* the Emperour not liking ſo much greatneſſe in the *German* Princes, confirmed the ſame on
1503 34 *Albert* III. ſon of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John* of *Munchen*, by his ſon *Erneſtus*: which *John* was youngeſt brother to *Stephen* the 2. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperour, ſucceeded unto *George* the *Rich*: the cauſe of a long and unhappy war betwixt the *Electors* of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*: the worſt whereof, beſides the loſſe of this Eſtate, fell upon the *Palatines*, proſcribed and outed of their Country upon this quarrell; but upon their ſubmiſſion reſtored again.
1508 35 *William* the ſon of *Albert* the 3.
1577 36 *Albert* IV. a great Champion of the *Doctrines* and *Traditions* of the Church of *Rome*, and ſo extreamly affected unto the *Jeſuites*, that he built Colledges for them at *Landsberg*, *Ingolſtade*, and *Munchen*, his three principall towns.
1579 37 *William* II. ſon of *Albert* the 4. as zealous as his Father in the cauſe of the Church of *Rome*: in which exceeded very much by
38 *Maximilian*, eldeſt ſon of *William* the 2. who chiefly out of the ſame zeal ſided with *Ferdinand* the 2. in the wars of *Germanie*, *anno* 1620. and took upon him the conduct of the Armies of the ſaid Emperour againſt *Frederick* Count and Electour *Palatine*, choſen

Austria.

King of *Bohemia*. In which having done great ſervice to the *Imperiall* and *Romiſh* intereſſe, he was by the ſaid *Ferdinand* inveſted in the *Upper Palatinate*, called anciently (but not more properly then now) the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*: together with the *Electorall* dignitie: this laſt conferred at firſt upon him but for term of life in the Diet at *Regensberg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Saxonie*, and *Brandenbourg*, proteſting againſt it; but afterwards in the Diet at *Prague anno* 1628. conferred upon him and his heirs for ever, to the great prejudice of the Princes of the *Palatine* Familie, who by reaſon of their *ſimultaneous inveſtiture* with the firſt of their houſe, are not to be deprived of their eſtates and dignities for the offence of their Fathers: the puniſhment not being to extend beyond the perſon of the offender. But notwithſtanding their pretentions and allegations, the Duke is ſtill poſſeſſed of the title and dignitie, confirmed therein by the concluſions of the Treatie of *Munſter*: a new Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes.

The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 peeces in *Bend*, *Argent*, and *Azure*.

The ARCHDUKEDOME of AUSTRIA.

The *Archdukedome* of *AUSTRIA* reckoning in the incorporate Provinces and Members of it, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Hungarie* and a part of *Sclavonia*; on the Weſt with *Bavaria*, and ſome parts of the *Switzers* and the *Griſons*; on the North with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; and on the South with *Hiſtria*, and ſome part of *Friuly* in *Italie*. Within which circuit are contained the ſeverall Provinces of *Auſtria*, properly ſo called, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tirol*: the qualitie of the whole will be beſt diſcerned by the Survey of particulars.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole were the *Norici*, of the *Romans*, parted into the leſſer Tribes of *Sevates*, *Alauni*, *Ambiſontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidrauni*: ſubdued by *Druſus*, ſon in law to *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Conſtantine* the Great, divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and ſome parts of *Tirol*, with the Biſhoprick or Diſtrict of *Saltsburg*; of which *Solyun* was the *Metropolis* or Capitall Citie: and *Noricum Ripenſe* containing only *Auſtria* and thoſe parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eaſtward of the River *Inn*, extended all along on the banks of the *Danow*. Known by no other names while poſſeſſed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avares* and other Nations; it gained thoſe ſeverall names and appellations ſpecified before.

1 *AUSTRIA*, properly ſo called, hath on the Eaſt the Kingdome of *Hungarie*, from which parted by the River *Rab*; on the Weſt, *Bavaria*; on the North the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the Weſt, and on the other ſide the *Teya*, which ſeparates it from *Moravia*; on the South, *Stiria*, or *Stiermarck*, called by the *Dutch*, *Oſtenreich*, and contractedly *Ooſtrich*, that is to ſay, the Eaſtern Kingdom (a part aſſuming to it ſelf the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *Eaſt-France*, or the Eaſtern Kingdom of the *French*: in the barbarous Latine of thoſe times called by the name of *Auſtraſia*, whence the modern *Auſtria*.

The air is generally very healthie, and the earth as fruitfull; yeilding a plentifull increaſe without help of *compoſt*, or other ſoiling; and of ſo eaſie a tillage to the husbandman, that on the North ſide of the *Danow* it is ploughed and managed by one horſe only. Exceeding plentifull of grain, and abundant in wine, with which laſt it ſupplyeth the defects of *Bavaria*: great ſtore of *Saffron*, ſome proviſion of ſalt: and at the foot of the Mountains not far from *Haimbourg*, ſome *Ginger* alſo. Nor wants it Mines of *ſilver*, in a large proportion. Divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lower* and the *Higher*: that lying on the North ſide of the River, towards *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, this on the South ſide towards *Stiermark*.

Places of moſt importance in the *HIGHER AUSTRIA*, are 1 *Gmund*, ſeated on a Lake called *Gemunder See*, bordering on *Bavaria* at the efflux of the river *Draun*, which ariſeth out of it. 2 *Lints*, ſeated on the confluence of the ſaid *Draun*, with the famous *Danow*, the *Aredate* of *Ptolemie*: A town before the late wars almoſt wholly *Proteſtant*, but then being put into the hands of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other ſide. 3 *Walkenſtein* on the *Ens* or *Aniſus*, near the borders of *Stiermark*. 4 *Ens*, on the fall of that river into the *Danow*; raiſed out of the ruines of *Laureacum*, ſometimes the *Metropolis* of the *Noricum Ripenſe*, the Station at that time of the ſecond Legion: afterwards an Archbiſhops See, made ſuch in the firſt planting of *Chriſtianity* amongſt this people by S. *Severine*, *anno* 464. On the reviver whereof, ſuppreſſed by the *Hunnes*, *Bojarians*, and others of the barbarous Nations, by the diligence and preaching of S. *Rupertus*, the Metropolitan dignitie was fixt at *Saltzburg*. 5 *Waidhoven*, near the head of the river *Ips*. 6 *Ips*, ſeated at the influx of that river, and from thence denominated, the *Geſodunum* of *Ptolemie* and other ancients. 7 *Newſull*, on a great Lake ſo named. 8 *Wels*, on the main ſtream of the *Danubius*. 9 *Haimburg*, on the confluence thereof, and the river *Marckh*: Near to which at the foot of the Mountains now called *Haimburgerberg* (from the town adjoining) but anciently named *Mons Cognamus*, is ſome ſtore of *Ginger*: a wonderfull great raritie

for

for these colder Countries. 10 *Newstat*, first called so from the newnesse of it, being built of late. 11 *Vienna*, by the Dutch *Wien*, the principall of all these parts by *Ptolemie* called *Juliobona*, *Vindebona* by *Antonine*; the station in their times of the tenth *Romen Legion*, of whose being setled here there are many Monuments both within the City and without. Seated it is on the bankes of *Danubius*, well built both in regard of private and publike edifices: each private house having such store of cellarage for all occasions, that as much of the Citie seems to be under the ground, as is above it. The *streets* for the most part spacious, and all paved with stone, which makes them very clean and sweet in the midst of winter: fenced with a mighty wall, deep and precipitious ditches on all parts of it; and many Bulwarkes, Towers, and Ramparts, in all needfull places: the wals hereof first raised with some part of the money paid unto *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, for the ransome of King *Richard* the first of *England*, taken prisoner by him as he passed homewards through this Countrey from the *Holy Land*. Esteemed at this day the strongest hold of *Christendom* against the *Turkes*, and proved experimentally so to be in that most notable and famous repulse here given them, *an.* 1526. At what time 200000 of them under the conduct of *Solyman* the *Magnificent* besieged this City; but by the valour of *Frederick* the second, Electour *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and other *German* Princes gallantly resisted and compelled to retire, with the losse of 80000 souldiers. Nor doth the strength hereof so diminish the beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodliest townes in all the *Empire*, the residence for these last ages of the Emperours: made an *University* by the Emperour *Frederick* the second, revived, and much advanced by *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, *anno* 1356. Adorned with an Episcopall See, many magnificent Temples and stately Monasteries; but above all with a most sumptuous and Princely Palace, wherein the Archdukes and Emperours use to keep their Courts; built by *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, during the little time he was Duke of *Austria*. In the middle ages, as appeares by *Otho Frisingensis*, it was called *Fabiana*: but being ruined by the *Hunnes*, and again reedified, was first called *Biana*, (the first syllable omitted by mistake or negligence) from whence the *Dutch Wien*, and the *Latine Vienna*.

We should now take a view of the townes and Cities in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*, if there were any in it which were worth the looking after. The Countrey having never beene in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no town of any great *antiquity*, nor many new ones built or beautified by the *Austrian* Princes, since it came into their possession: the onely one of note being *Crems* or *Cremia*, on the left hand shoar of *Danubius*, going downe the water. 2. *Kets*, on the River *Tega* bordering on *Moravia*; ; and 3. *Freistat*, at the foot of the Mountaines on the skirts of *Bohemia*. The old Inhabitants of this tract are supposed to be the *Quadi*, in that part which lyeth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni* in those parts which are next *Moravia*: who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Bojarians*, wonne from the *Romans* the whole Province of the *Second Rhætia*, and so much of *Noricum*, as lyeth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*: leaving the rest to the *Avares*, who possessed that and the two *Pannonia's*, extorted also from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty Empire.

But these *Bojarians* being conquered by *Clovis* the *Great*, and the *Avares* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Charlemagne*; both Provinces became members of the *French* Empire, till the subduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*. To oppose whom, and keep in peace and safety these remoter parts, some *Guardians* or *Lords Marchers* were appointed by the Kings and Emperours of *Germany*, with the title of *Marquesses* of *Ostreich*. At first *Officiary* onely, but at last *hereditarie*, made so by the Emperour *Henry* the first, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, surnamed the *Illustrious*, the sonne of *Henry* Earle of *Bamberg*, of the house of *Schwaben*; and there withall the title of *Marquesse*, *anno* 980. This *Marquisate* was by *Frederick Barbarossa* raised to a *Dukedome*, 1158. *Henry* being the first Duke, whose brother *Leopold* took *Richard* the first of *England*, prisoner, in his returne from *Palestine*: for whose ransome hee had so much money, that with it he bought *Stiermark* together with the Counties of *Neobourgh*, and *Lintz*; and walled *Vienna*. His sonne *Fredericus Leopoldus*, was made King of *Austria*, by the Emperour *Frederick* the second, *anno* 1225. Eleven yeares he coutinued in this dignity, at the end of which hee was spoiled of his royall ornaments by the same hand, for denying his appearance at the Emperours summons, unto whom for some outrages, he had been complained of. Finally he died in the yeare 1246. leaving two daughters. His sister named *Margaret* was marryed unto *Ottocar*, sonne to *Primislaus* King of *Bohemia*: his eldest daughter, *Gertrude*, to the Marquesse of *Baden*; and *Agnes*, the second unto *Henry* Duke of *Carinthia*. *Ottocar* pretending the right of his wife, tooke to him the Dukedome of *Austria*, which hee kept after the death of his wife, till the year 1228. in which he was vanquished and slaine by *Rodolphus* the Emperour. *Rodolphus* then gave it to *Albertus* his sonne, whose wife *Elizabeth*, was daughter to *Meinhard* Earl of *Tirol* sonne of Duke *Henry* of *Carinthia*, and of *Agnes* daughter of *Frederick Leopold*: *Margaret*, the sister; and *Gertrude*, the other daughter of this *Frederick*, dying issueless. By this marriage *Albert* had the Dukedome of *Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Carinthia*, with the Earledomes of *Tirol* and *Carniola*. By whom it was first raised to the title of *Arch-Duke*, is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg*, at the investiture of his son *Albert* into these Estates, *anno* 1298. Others to *Charles* the fourth, advancing to that honour *Rodolph* the *Ingenious*; *anno* 1360. Some make it to be first given to *Albert* Duke hereof in the year 1430. and others post it lower to the marriage of *Philip* sonne of *Maximilian* of *Austria* and the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princesse of *Spain*. But by whom soever given at first, it is now the constant and hereditary title of all this Family: the successive Princes whereof, from the first investiture, follow in the ensuing Catalogue of

Austria.

The MARQESSES, DUKES, KINGS, and ARCH-DUKES of AUSTRIA.

928	1	*Leopold* of *Bamberg* the firſt Marqueſſe.
988	2	*Henry* ſonne of *Leopold*.
1014	3	*Albert* ſonne of *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Victorious*.
1056	4	*Erneſtus* ſonne of *Albert*.
1075	5	*Leopold* II. ſonne of *Erneſt*, a companion of *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*.
1096	6	*Leopold* III. ſonne of the ſecond founder of the Abbey of *Neubourg*.
1136	7	*Leopold* IV. ſonne of the third, by his halfe brother *Conrade* the third, the Emperour of the *Germans* made Duke of *Bavaria*.
1141	8	*Henry* II. brother of *Leopold*, Marqueſſe of *Auſtria*, and Duke of *Bavaria*; made the firſt Duke of *Auſtria* by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *anno* 1158. the whole countrey betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, being added by the ſaid Emperour unto his eſtate, on his relinquiſhing of *Bavaria* to the Duke of *Saxony*.
1177	9	*Ludovick* ſonne of *Henry*, built *Ens* and *Newſtat*; of great note in the warres of the *Holy land*.
1193	10	*Leopold* V. ſonne of *Ludovick*, the irreconcileable enemie of our *Richard* the third, taken priſoner by him, in his paſſage homewards, and put unto a grievous ranſome.
1230	11	*Frederick* the *warlike*, ſonne of *Leopold* the fift, made King of *Auſtria* by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond, the laſt of the male iſſue of the houſe of *Bamberg*.
1246	12	*Ottocar* ſon to *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending the right of *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter of *Frederick*, poſſeſſed himſelfe of this Eſtate: adding thereto the Countries of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, which he bought of *Ulrick* the laſt Prinees thereof, but diſpoſſeſſed of all by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*.
1283	13	*Albert* II. ſonne of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* by his father made Duke of *Auſtria*, in right of *Elizabeth* his wife the lineall and direct heir of *Agnes*, daughter and heir of *Frederick* King and Duke of *Auſtria*, after his fathers death choſen Emperour alſo.
1308	14	*Rodolph* the *Ingenuous*, his other brothers ſharing with him in the eſtate.
1135	15	*Albert* ſurnamed the *Short*, the youngeſt and ſurviving brother of *Rodolph*, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate; a great advancer of his houſe.
1358	16	*Albert* IV. ſonne of *Albert* the *Short*.
1395	17	*Albert* V. ſonne of *Albert* the fourth.
1404	18	*Albert* VI. ſonne of *Albert* the fift, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in right of *Elizabeth* his wife, daughter and heir of *Sigiſmund* the King thereof.
1439	19	*Ladiſlaus* ſonne of *Albert* and *Elizabeth*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Auſtria*.
1457	20	*Frederick* II. on the death of *Ladiſlaus* without iſſue ſucceeded into the Dukedome of *Auſtria*, as the direct heir of *Leopold* the ninth, one of the younger ſonnes of *Albert* the *Short*: choſen alſo Emperour.
1493	21	*Maximilian* ſonne of *Frederick* enriched his houſe with the marriage of the heire of *Burgundy*.
1519	22	*Ferdinand* Grandchilde to *Maximilian* by his ſonne *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*; ſucceeded his Grandfather in this Dukedome; King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Emperour of *Germany*.
1565	23	*Maximilian* II. ſonne of *Ferdinand*.
1577	24	*Rodolphus* III. ſonne of *Maximilian* the ſecond.
1612	25	*Matthias* brother of *Rodolphus*.
1619	26	*Ferdinand* II. ſurnamed of *Gratz*, ſonne of *Charles* Duke of *Auſtria* and *Carinthia*, the youngeſt ſonne of *Ferdinand* the firſt the numerous Off-ſpring of *Maximilian* the ſecond being all dead without iſſue; ſucceeded in the Eſtates of *Auſtria*, choſen Emperour alſo, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, &c.
	27	*Ferdinand* III. ſonne of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, now living *anno* 1648. Archduke of *Auſtria*, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, and Emperour of the *Germans*: Of whoſe eſtate and the *Concomitants* thereof, we ſhall ſay more, when we have took a view of the reſt of the Provinces.

2. *STIRIA*, or *STIERMARK*, is bounded on the North with *Auſtria*, on the South with *Carinthia*; on the Eaſt with *Hungary*, and on the Weſt with *Carniola*. Extended in length 110 miles, but in breadth not above 60, or thereabouts. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1 *Gratz*, ſeated upon the River *Mur*, and the chief of the Province, from which the third branch of the houſe of *Auſtria* (ſince the time of *Ferdinand* the firſt) was called *De Gratz*, and had the Government of the Countrey for their part of that Patrimonie. A town once full of *Proteſtants*, and thoſe ſo ſtrong, that they could neither be forced out, nor hindered from

from the free exercise of their Religion, till the year 1598, in which *Margaret* the late Queen of *Spain*, sister to the Archduke *Ferdinand du Gratz*, was by the Citizens solemnly entertained; with whom entered so many souldiers that the City was taken, and 14 Ministers of the Reformed Religion presently banished. 2 *Racbelspurg*, and 3 *Pruck*, both situate also on the *Mur*. 4 *Stechaw*, an Episcopall See seated on the *Dra*, or *Dravus*, a well known River, not far from the fall of the *Mur* into it. 5 *Petaw*, the *Petovio* of *Antoninus*, seated somewhat higher upon the *Dravus*. 6 *Lamboch* the *Ovilabis* of *Antoninus*, on the *Dravus* also. 7 *Voitesperg*, upon the River *Kainach*. 8 *Cely*, the *Celeia* of *Pliny*, not else observable. 9 *Canisia*, a well fortified place, and the strongest Bulwark of these parts against the *Turk*.

The whole Countrey mountainous and hilly, generally overspread with the spurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alpes*, and rich only in *minerals*; was antiently the habitation of the *Taurisci* (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Steirmark*: the *Germans* calling that a *Steir*, which the *Latines* call *Taurisc*us, or a little Bullock. By which account *Steir-mark*, is nothing but the borders or *Marches* of the *Taurisci*, the utmost bounds of their possessions, as indeed it was: laid to *Pannonia* in the distribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honor of *Valeria* the daughter of *Diocletian*. But once dismembred from the Empire, it fell upon the name of *Steir-mark*, with reference to the *Taurisci*, spoken of before. First made an Earldom in the person of one *Ottocarus* advanced unto that honour by the Emperor *Conrade* the second. *Leopold* the fourth from this *Ottocarus*, (two other *Ottocars* intervening) was made Marquesse of *Stier-mark*, and his sonne *Ottocar* the fourth was made Duke, by the Emperour *Frederick Earbarossa*. But being without hope of issue, and infected with the uncurable disease of the *Leprosie*, he sold this Countrey to *Leopold* the fist of *Austria*; bought with some part of that vast summe of money which he extorted for the ransome of King *Richard* the first, continued ever since in the possession of this potent Family: but so that it hath many times beene assigned over for the portion of the younger brethrens: as namely to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger sonnes of *Albert* the *short*; *Ernest* the youngest sonne of that *Leopold*; and lastly to *Charles* the youngest sonne of *Maximilian* the second, called *Charles* of *Gratz*, father of *Ferdinand* the second, successour to *Matthias* in *Austria* it self, and all the rest of the Estates *incorporate* with it: not like to be so impolitickly dismembred from the chiefe of the house, as in former times.

2 *CARINTHIA*, by the Dutch called *Karnten*, is bounded on the East with *Steir-mark* and the River *Levandt*; on the West with the *District* of *Saltzburg* and the River *Saltzach*; on the North with *Austria* it selfe; and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravus*, which having its originall in the skirrs hereof passeth through these *Austrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at last into the *Danow*. The Countrey being situate in in the worst part of the *Alpes*, is generally poore and barren, except onely in *minerals*: extending all along the *Dravus*, for the length of 100 *English* miles, and 47 in breadth betwixt that River and the *Mur* by the which it is bounded.

Places of principall note in it are 1. St. *Veit*, or *Sancti Viti*, the chief town of the Countrey, situate at the meeting of the *Glan* and the *Wunics*, two small Rivers, adorned with a spacious market place, and a beautifull Conduit. 2 *Vittach*, seated on the *Dravus* in a pleasant valley, encompassed about with rocks; the houses hereof adorned on the outside with painted stories, very delightfull to behold. 3 *Gurch*, a small Town, but an Episcopall See. 4 *Clagnfoot*, on the Lake called *Werd-Zee*; a well fenced place, called antiently by the name of *Claudia*. 5. *Wolsperg* upon the *Lavands*, so neer to *Steir-mark* that it is by some reckoned for a Town thereof. 6 *Lavamundt* on the same border, an Episcopall See; situate at the influx of that River into the *Dravus*. 7 *Freisach*, a town of much antiquity, seated on the *Oleza*. 8 *Spittall*, *&c*.

The strange and observable *ceremonies*, with which the Archdukes of *Austria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carinthia*; take here out of *Munster*. In the meadowes adjoining to the Town of S. *Veit*, a certain countrey-man to whom that office of *inheritance* belongeth, sitteth on a *Marble* stone there being, holding in his right hand, a cow with a black calf; and in his left hand, a mare as lean as a rake. Then cometh the new *Duke*, attired in a plain rustick *habit*, his Courtiers attending him in their richest apparell: at whose approach, the Country-man above mentioned, demandeth, *What hee is that so* majestically *cometh thitherward*: and the people answer, that *it is the future Duke*. Hee againe asketh, *whether he be a* just Judge, *and one that will maintaine the liberty of the countrey, and sincerity of the Religion*: the people answer, *he will*: then he asketh, *by what right he will displace him of his marble seat*: to whom the *Steward* of the new Dukes house replyeth, *hee shall give thee 60 pence in silver, the cattell now standing by thee, the cloathes which he hath at this time on, and thy house shall ever be free from taxe and tribute*. This fellow upon this, taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle *cuffe* on the eare, setting him on the *marble* stone, and taking away the cattell, departeth. This done, the new Duke goeth to Saint *Vites* Church; and having done his devotions, putteth off his *rustick* weedes, and dresseth himself in clothes befitting a Prince: for such after their *ceremonies* he is acknowledged.

4. *CARNIOLA*, by the *Dutch* called *Krain*, is environed with *Sclavonia*, East: *Friulo*, West; *Carinthia*, North; and *Istria*, South. The chief Towns are, 1 *Newmarckt*, 2 *Esling*, 3 *Marsperg*, *Pogmocke*, and 5 *Saxenfelt*, all upon the *Savus*; which arising in this Countrey, runneth through the very middle of it, and after falleth into the *Danow*. 6 *Laibach*, seated on a small River of the same name, by *Ptolemie* called *Pamportum*, but by *Pliny Nauportus*: famous in old *Mythologie* for the transport

Carniola. port of the ſhip called *Argo*, wherein *Jaſon* and his *Comrades* brought the *Golden Fleece*; who coming out of *Pontus* on the *Euxine* Sea, took their courſe up the *Danow*, ſo into the *Savus*, then into this town, hence carryed over land into the *Adriatick*, from thence ſayling into *Greece*, where they firſt began the undertaking. 7 *Goritz* called antiently *Noreja*, or ſeated in the place where *Noreja* ſtood, is ſituate on the River *Liſontio*, an *Italian* water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A town of ſo much note, that antiently it was an Earldome, and in the diviſion of the Eſtate of *Meinard* Earl of *Tirol* (to whom it formerly belonged) it was given to *Albert* his ſecond ſonne, with the ſtyle and title of Earl of *Goritz* continuing in his houſe till the yeare 1500, when on the death of *Leonard* the laſt Earle hereof, it deſcended upon *Maximilian* the firſt, as next heire unto it.

The firſt Inhabitants of both theſe Provinces of *Kruin*, and *Karnten*, were the *Carni*, of *Pliny* and other Antients, who make them part of *Venetia*, the tenth Region of *Italy*: but afterwards in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces caſt into *Noricum*, and made a member of the *Dioceſe* of the *Weſtern Illyricum*, but ſubject or ſubordinate rather to the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*. From them not onely the *Alpes* adjoining had the name of *Carnicæ*; but theſe two Countries had the names by which now they goe. United of long time in the perſons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the firſt mentioned upon good record was *Henry* ſonne to *Berchthold* a Noble man of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the third; by whom advanced unto this honour and eſtate; diſpoſed of in ſucceeding times at the will of the Emperours, and given from one family unto another as their fancies ſerved them. Not fixed in any houſe, till it came to *Henry* the ſonne of *Engelbert*, Preſident or *Prefect of Hiſtria*: in which family it continued under this *Henry* and his brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the firſt, *Henry* the ſecond, *Herman* and *Ulrick* the ſecond, the laſt Prince hereof: who being old and without children ſold his eſtate herein to *Oſtocar* King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Auſtria*: by whom theſe Countries were ſurrendred unto *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the concluſion of the peace which was made between them. And though *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tirol*, (in right of whoſe daughter *Elizabeth*, *Albert* the ſonne of *Rodolph* was poſſeſſed of *Auſtria*) on the death of *Henry* the ſonne of *Mainard* without iſſue male, it fell (according to the contract) unto *Albert* the *Short* eldeſt ſonne of *Albert* and Grandchild of *Rodolphus*: continuing ever ſince in that family, though not alwayes in the chief houſe of the Dukes of *Auſtria*.

TIROLIS is bounded on the Eaſt with *Friuly* and *Marca Trevigiana*; on the Weſt with the *Griſons*, and ſome part of *Switzerland*; on the North with *Bavaria*; and the South with *Lombardie*. Extended over the greateſt part of the *Alpes Rhæticæ*, and ſome part of the *Juliæ*: yet intermixt with many rich and fruitfull valleys, thoſe ſpecially which lye on the bankes of the *Inn* and the River of *Adiſe*. Nor are the hils ſo void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good ſtore of metals digged out of them; eſpecially of *Braſſe* and *Silver*, which laſt have yeelded to the Archduke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of moſt note 1 *Oeniputs*, or *Inſpruch*, ſeated on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Auſtria*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the ſecond ſonne of the Emperour *Ferdinand*: the houſe of *Gratz* iſſuing from *Charles* the third ſonne of that Emperour. Moſt memorable for the haſty flight of *Charles* the fift, upon the news that Duke *Maurice* whom he had lately made Electour of *Saxonie*, was coming againſt him with his Forces: which ſo terrified him, that he fled away by *torch-light*, with ſome few of his followers, the reſidue of his Court (moſt of which were perſons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the *Black Guard* and the Skullerie: the Town being many times the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Auſtria*, who have here a very Royall and magnificent Palace. And to ſay truth, the town deſerveth to be ſo honoured; amongſt pleaſant Meadows, ſpacious cornfields, and ſhady mountaines ſweetly ſeated: the houſes fairly built of ſtone, enriched by the Courts of *Judicature* here ſetled for all the Countrey, and provided of a gallant *Armorie*. 2 *Trent* (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latine*) ſituate in the confines of *Germany* and *Italy*; for which cauſe the Inhabitants ſpeak both languages. Built on the bankes of the River *Atheſis* or *Adice*; honoured with an Epiſcopall See, but made more famous by the Councell which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, *anno* 1545. againſt the *Lutherans*: For 22 yeares together before their meeting, daſhed by one Pope and intimated by another, advanced by *Charles* the fift upon worldly *Policies*, and for as worldly policies retarded by the Court of *Rome* for 18 years after this firſt Convention of it, at ſundry times, aſſembled, ſuſpended, and diſſolved. And finally when fixed here ſeriouſly by Pope *Pius* the fourth, *anno* 1562. managed with ſo much art and cunning by the *Papall* partie, that nothing was determined among the *Prelates*, but what had formerly been reſolved on, in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by eſpeciall Poſts: occaſioning that moſt bitter jeſt of one of the *Hungarians* Biſhops who was preſent at it, that the *Holy Ghoſt was ſent unto them in a Cloak-bag from Rome*. The effects of which Councell, ſo artificially carryed on by the ſtrength of wit, I cannot better deſcribe then in the words of the Hiſtory of it, which are as followeth. This Councell, deſired and procured by godly men to re-unite the "Church which began to be divided, hath ſo eſtabliſhed the Schiſm, and made the parties ſo "obſtinate, that the diſcords are irreconcileable. And being managed by Princes for Reforma-"tion of *Eccleſiaſticall Diſcipline*, hath cauſed the greateſt *deformation* that ever was ſince *Chriſtianity* did "begin: and hoped for by the *Biſhops* themſelves to regain the *Epiſcopall* Authority, for the moſt "part uſurped by the *Pope*, hath made them loſe it altogether, bringing them into greater "ſervitude. On the contrary, feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as a potent meanes to "moderate the exorbitant power thereof, mounted from ſmall beginnings by divers degrees, to

an

" an unlimitted exceſſe; it hath ſo eſtabliſhed and confirmed the ſame over that part which remai-
" ned ſubject unto it, that it was never ſo great, nor ſoundly rooted. So far the words of the Hiſtory. The next of note is, 3 *Falkenſtein*, remarkable for mines of *Braſſe*; as 4 *Hal* upon the *Inn* for *Salt-witches*; and 5 *Schwas* for the richer mines of *Silver*. 6. *Malk*, near the head of the River *Athеſis*. 7 *Follen*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people whereof called *Folgiano*, and *Bolſano*. 8 *Tirol*, an ancient Caſtle, the firſt ſeat of the Earls or Governours hereof, and giving name for that reaſon, to the Country adjoyning.

The Earls hereof, were at the firſt no other then *Provinciall* Officers; when made *Proprietaries*, I am yet to ſeek. The firſt of whom we have any certainty was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tirol* and *Goritz*, who dyed in the yeer 1258, leaving his Earldomes to that *Mainard*, who by *Rodolfus Habſpurgenſis* was enfeoffed with the Dukedome of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the ſonne of this laſt *Mainard*, dying without iſſue male, his daughter *Margaret*, by the conſent of all her people, ſetled her eſtate therein on the ſonnes of *Albert*, called the *Short*: continuing ever ſince in the houſe of *Auſtria*, though ſometimes made the portion and inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the firſt, it was given in *Appennage* to his 2d ſon *Ferdinand* ſurnamed of *Inſpruch* for that reaſon: who by marrying with *Philippina* a *Burgers* daughter of *Augsburg*, ſo diſpleaſed his Brethren, that to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her, it was finally agreed upon amongſt them all, that *Tirol* ſhould not deſcend upon his Children of that *venter*. In purſuance whereof, after his deceaſe, *Tirol* fell to the houſe of *Gratz*: his eldeſt ſon *Charles* being made Marqueſſe of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngeſt Cardinall of *Brixia*.

The Armes of theſe Earls when diſtinct from the houſe of *Auſtria*, were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable*, membred *Or*. Thoſe of *Carinthia*, united for a time unto them (as before was noted) being *Argent*, three *Lions* Leopards *Sable*.

Thus have we ſeen by what means all theſe Provinces belonging unto ſeverall Lords, became united and incorporated into one eſtate. Beſides which, there was added to it by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, all the *Vpper Elſats*, the Caſtle and Territory of *Hapſpurg* it ſelf, with many fair Eſtates amongſt the *Switzers*, by *Albert* the *Short*, the Country of *Sungow*, and by his ſonnes the *Advocateſhip* of *Friberg*, or the Country of *Briſgow*. So that theſe Princes are undoubtedly the greateſt for power and patrimony of any in *Germany*; and would be of a great revenue, if the ill neighbour-hood of the *Turkes* did not put them to continuall charges, and make the borders of the Country to be thinly planted, and not very thorowly manured. Howſoever, it is thought that they may yeild yeerly two millions of Crowns and upwards to the Arch-dukes Coffers.

The Armes of theſe Princes are *Gules*, a Feſſe *Argent*, aſſumed by Marqueſſe *Leopold* at the ſiege of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy land*; becauſe his holy Armour being covered with blood, his *Belt* onely remained *white*. The Armes thereof in former times having been ſix larkes *Or*, in a field *Azure*, ſuppoſed to have been taken by the firſt Marqueſſes, becauſe they poſſeſſed thoſe ſix Provinces, for defence of which the tenth *Legion* called *Alauda*, had been fixed at *Vienna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we ſhall meet withall no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the north ſide of *Danubius*, and the Eaſt ſide of the *Rhene*, being almoſt aſſoone abandoned, as conquered by them. So that in our ſurvey of theſe northern Countries, we are not like to finde ſuch matter of *Antiquity* as we had before, but muſt content our ſelves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a leſſe continuance. In which we ſhall begin with thoſe Countries which lie on the other ſide of *Rhene*, bordering on the Eſtates of *Cleveland* and the *Biſhop-electors*; and ſo proceed on Eaſtward till we come to the furtheſt parts of *Germany*, and the confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North till we meet with *Denmark*, which is the next of all to be conſidered.

9 *VETERAVIA.*

VETERAVIA, or *WETERAW*, is bounded on the Weſt with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*, on the Eaſt with *Frankenland*; on the North with *Haſſia*, and *Weſtphalen*, and on the South with the *Lower Palatinate*. It containeth a combination of many ſmall Eſtates, which being joyned in a common league for defence of each other, for the preſervation of their *Lawes*, *Liberties*, and *Religion*, are called the *Confederation of Weteraw*. The Principall of the States which are thus confederated, are the Earls of 1 *Naſſaw*; 2 *Hanaw*; and 3 *Stolms*; 4 the Lord of *Lichteberg*; and the *Imperiall* Cities of 5 *Friberg*; and 6 *Wetzelaer*.

The County of *Naſſaw* lyeth at the foot of the Mountains which divide *Haſſia* from *Engern* and *Weſtphalen*, anciently called *Melibocus*, a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Townes hereof, are 1 *Naſſaw*, ſituate on the ſouth ſide of the River *Lou*, not farre from the fall of it into the *Rhene*; the firſt ſeat, and honourary Title of this famous family, and ſtill in the poſſeſſion of the Princes of *Orange*, the firſt branch hereof. 2 *Dillingbourg*, the uſuall ſeat of the Earls of *Naſſaw*, before their ſetling in the *Low Countries*; hence named the Earls of *Naſſaw* of the houſe of *Dillingberg*, to difference them from others of the ſame Family. 2 *Catrezelbogen*, in *Latine*, *Catti Meliboci*, which ſhewes the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently poſſeſſed of theſe parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The poſſeſſion of this town much controverted between the Earls of *Naſſaw*, and

the

Carniola. port of the ſhip called *Argo*, wherein *Jaſon* and his *Comrades* brought the *Golden Fleece*; who coming out of *Pontus* on the *Euxine* Sea, took their courſe up the *Danow*, ſo into the *Savus*, then into this town, hence carryed over land into the *Adriatick*, from thence ſayling into *Greece*, where they firſt began the undertaking. 7 *Goritz* called antiently *Noreja*, or ſeated in the place where *Noreja* ſtood, is ſituate on the River *Liſontio*, an *Italian* water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A town of ſo much note, that antiently it was an Earldome, and in the diviſion of the Eſtate of *Meinard* Earl of *Tirol* (to whom it formerly belonged) it was given to *Albert* his ſecond ſonne, with the ſtyle and title of Earl of *Goritz* continuing in his houſe till the yeare 1500, when on the death of *Leonard* the laſt Earle hereof, it deſcended upon *Maximilian* the firſt, as next heire unto it.

The firſt Inhabitants of both theſe Provinces of *Kruin*, and *Karnten*, were the *Carni*, of *Pliny* and other Antients, who make them part of *Venetia*, the tenth Region of *Italy*: but afterwards in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces caſt into *Noricum*, and made a member of the *Dioceſe* of the *Weſtern Illyricum*, but ſubject or ſubordinate rather to the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*. From them not onely the *Alpes* adjoining had the name of *Carnicæ*; but theſe two Countries had the names by which now they goe. United of long time in the perſons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the firſt mentioned upon good record was *Henry* ſonne to *Berchthold* a Noble man of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the third; by whom advanced unto this honour and eſtate; diſpoſed of in ſucceeding times at the will of the Emperours, and given from one family unto another as their fancies ſerved them. Not fixed in any houſe, till it came to *Henry* the ſonne of *Engelbert*, Preſident or *Preſect of Hiſtria*: in which family it continued under this *Henry* and his brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the firſt, *Henry* the ſecond, *Herman* and *Ulrick* the ſecond, the laſt Prince hereof: who being old and without children ſold his eſtate herein to *Oſtocar* King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Auſtria*: by whom theſe Countries were ſurrendred unto *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the concluſion of the peace which was made between them. And though *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tirol*, (in right of whoſe daughter *Elizabeth*, *Albert* the ſonne of *Rodolph* was poſſeſſed of *Auſtria*) on the death of *Henry* the ſonne of *Mainard* without iſſue male, it fell (according to the contract) unto *Albert* the *Short* eldeſt ſonne of *Albert* and Grandchild of *Rodolphus*: continuing ever ſince in that family, though not alwayes in the chief houſe of the Dukes of *Auſtria*.

TIROLIS is bounded on the Eaſt with *Friuly* and *Marca Trevigiana*; on the Weſt with the *Griſons*, and ſome part of *Switzerland*; on the North with *Bavaria*; and the South with *Lombardie*. Extended over the greateſt part of the *Alpes Rhæticæ*, and ſome part of the *Juliæ*: yet intermixt with many rich and fruitfull valleys, thoſe ſpecially which lye on the bankes of the *Iun* and the River of *Adiſe*. Nor are the hils ſo void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good ſtore of metals digged out of them; eſpecially of *Braſſe* and *Silver*, which laſt have yeelded to the Archduke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of moſt note 1 *Oenipus*, or *Inſpruch*, ſeated on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Auſtria*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the ſecond ſonne of the Emperour *Ferdinand*: the houſe of *Gratz* iſſuing from *Charles* the third ſonne of that Emperour. Moſt memorable for the haſty flight of *Charles* the fift, upon the news that Duke *Maurice* whom he had lately made Electour of *Saxonie*, was coming againſt him with his Forces: which ſo terrified him, that he fled away by *torch-light*, with ſome few of his followers, the reſidue of his Court (moſt of which were perſons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the *Black Guard* and the Skullerie: the Town being many times the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Auſtria*, who have here a very Royall and magnificent Palace. And to ſay truth, the town deſerveth to be ſo honoured; amongſt pleaſant Meadows, ſpacious cornfields, and ſhady mountaines ſweetly ſeated: the houſes fairly built of ſtone, enriched by the Courts of *Judicature* here ſetled for all the Countrey, and provided of a gallant *Armorie*. 2 *Trent* (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latine*) ſituate in the confines of *Germany* and *Italy*; for which cauſe the Inhabitants ſpeak both languages. Built on the bankes of the River *Atheſis* or *Adice*; honoured with an Epiſcopall See, but made more famous by the Councell which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, *anno* 1545. againſt the *Lutherans*: For 22 yeares together before their meeting, daſhed by one Pope and intimated by another, advanced by *Charles* the fift upon worldly *Policies*, and for as worldly policies retarded by the Court of *Rome* for 18 years after this firſt Convention of it, at ſundry times, aſſembled, ſuſpended, and diſſolved. And finally when fixed here ſeriouſly by Pope *Pius* the fourth, *anno* 1562. managed with ſo much art and cunning by the *Papall* partie, that nothing was determined among the *Prelates*, but what had formerly been reſolved on, in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by eſpeciall Poſts: occaſioning that moſt bitter jeſt of one of the *Hungarians* Biſhops who was preſent at it, that the *Holy Ghoſt was ſent unto them in a Cloak-bag from Rome*. The effects of which Councell, ſo artificially carryed on by the ſtrength of wit, I cannot better deſcribe then in the words of the Hiſtory of it, which are as followeth. This Councell, deſired and procured by godly men to re-unite the "Church which began to be divided, hath ſo eſtabliſhed the Schiſm, and made the parties ſo "obſtinate, that the diſcords are irreconcileable. And being managed by Princes for Reforma-"tion of *Eccleſiaſticall Diſcipline*, hath cauſed the greateſt *deformation* that ever was ſince *Chriſtianity* did "begin: and hoped for by the *Biſhops* themſelves to regain the *Epiſcopall* Authority, for the moſt "part uſurped by the *Pope*, hath made them loſe it altogether, bringing them into greater "ſervitude. On the contrary, feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as a potent meanes to "moderate the exorbitant power thereof, mounted from ſmall beginnings by divers degrees, to

an

"an unlimitted exceſſe; it hath ſo eſtabliſhed and confirmed the ſame over that part which remai-
"ned ſubject unto it, that it was never ſo great, nor ſoundly rooted. So far the words of the Hiſtory. The next of note is, 3 *Falkenſtein*, remarkable for mines of *Braſſe*; as 4 *Hal* upon the *Inn* for *Salt-witches*; and 5 *Schwas* for the richer mines of *Silver*. 6. *Malk*, near the head of the River *Athesis*. 7 *Follen*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people whereof called *Folgiano*, and *Bolſano*. 8 *Tirol*, an ancient Caſtle, the firſt ſeat of the Earls or Governours hereof, and giving name for that reaſon, to the Country adjoyning.

The Earls hereof, were at the firſt no other then *Provinciall* Officers; when made *Proprietaries*, I am yet to ſeek. The firſt of whom we have any certainty was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tirol* and *Goritz*, who dyed in the yeer 1258, leaving his Earldomes to that *Mainard*, who by *Rodolfus Habſpurgenſis* was enfeoffed with the Dukedome of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the ſonne of this laſt *Mainard*, dying without iſſue male, his daughter *Margaret*, by the conſent of all her people, ſetled her eſtate therein on the ſonnes of *Albert*, called the *Short*: continuing ever ſince in the houſe of *Auſtria*, though ſometimes made the portion and inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the firſt, it was given in *Apennage* to his 2d ſon *Ferdinand* ſurnamed of *Inſpruch* for that reaſon: who by marrying with *Philippina* a *Burgers* daughter of *Augsburg*, ſo diſpleaſed his Brethren, that to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her, it was finally agreed upon amongſt them all, that *Tirol* ſhould not deſcend upon his Children of that *venter*. In purſuance whereof, after his deceaſe, *Tirol* fell to the houſe of *Gratz*: his eldeſt ſon *Charles* being made Marqueſſe of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngeſt Cardinall of *Brixia*.

The Armes of theſe Earls when diſtinct from the houſe of *Auſtria*, were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable*, membred *Or*. Thoſe of *Carinthia*, united for a time unto them (as before was noted) being *Argent*, three *Lions* Leopards *Sable*.

Thus have we ſeen by what means all theſe Provinces belonging unto ſeverall Lords, became united and incorporated into one eſtate. Beſides which, there was added to it by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, all the *Vpper Elſats*, the Caſtle and Territory of *Hapſpurg* it ſelf, with many fair Eſtates amongſt the *Switzers*, by *Albert* the *Short*, the Country of *Sungow*, and by his ſonnes the *Advocateſhip* of *Friberg*, or the Country of *Briſgow*. So that theſe Princes are undoubtedly the greateſt for power and patrimony of any in *Germany*; and would be of a great revenue, if the ill neighbour-hood of the *Turkes* did not put them to continuall charges, and make the borders of the Country to be thinly planted, and not very thorowly manured. Howſoever, it is thought that they may yeild yeerly two millions of Crowns and upwards to the Arch-dukes Coffers.

The Armes of theſe Princes are *Gules*, a Feſſe *Argent*, aſſumed by Marqueſſe *Leopold* at the ſiege of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy land*; becauſe his holy Armour being covered with blood, his *Belt* onely remained *white*. The Armes thereof in former times having been ſix larkes *Or*, in a field *Azure*, ſuppoſed to have been taken by the firſt Marqueſſes, becauſe they poſſeſſed thoſe ſix Provinces, for defence of which the tenth *Legion* called *Alauda*, had been fixed at *Vienna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we ſhall meet withall no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the north ſide of *Danubius*, and the Eaſt ſide of the *Rhene*, being almoſt aſſoone abandoned, as conquered by them. So that in our ſurvey of theſe northern Countries, we are not like to finde ſuch matter of *Antiquity* as we had before, but muſt content our ſelves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a leſſe continuance. In which we ſhall begin with thoſe Countries which lie on the other ſide of *Rhene*, bordering on the Eſtates of *Cleveland* and the *Biſhop-electors*; and ſo proceed on Eaſtward till we come to the furtheſt parts of *Germany*, and the confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North till we meet with *Denmark*, which is the next of all to be conſidered.

9 VETERAVIA.

VETERAVIA, or *WETERAW*, is bounded on the Weſt with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*, on the Eaſt with *Frankenland*; on the North with *Haſſia*, and *Weſtphalen*, and on the South with the *Lower Palatinate*. It containeth a combination of many ſmall Eſtates, which being joyned in a common league for defence of each other, for the preſervation of their *Lawes*, *Liberties*, and *Religion*, are called the *Confederation of Weteraw*. The Principall of the States which are thus confederated, are the Earls of 1 *Naſſaw*; 2 *Hanaw*; and 3 *Stolms*; 4 the Lord of *Lichteberg*; and the *Imperiall* Cities of 5 *Friberg*; and 6 *Wetzelaer*.

The County of *Naſſaw* lyeth at the foot of the Mountains which divide *Haſſia* from *Engern* and *Weſtphalen*, anciently called *Melibocus*, a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Townes hereof, are 1 *Naſſaw*, ſituate on the ſouth ſide of the River *Lou*, not farre from the fall of it into the *Rhene*; the firſt ſeat, and honourary Title of this famous family, and ſtill in the poſſeſſion of the Princes of *Orange*, the firſt branch hereof. 2 *Dillingbourg*, the uſuall ſeat of the Earls of *Naſſaw*, before their ſetling in the *Low Countries*; hence named the Earls of *Naſſaw* of the houſe of *Dillingberg*, to difference them from others of the ſame Family. 2 *Catrezelbogen*, in *Latine*, *Catti Meliboci*, which ſhewes the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently poſſeſſed of theſe parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The poſſeſſion of this town much controverted between the Earls of *Naſſaw*, and

the

Wederaw. the Lantgraves of *Heſſen*. But finally, ſurrendred by Count *William* of *Naſſaw* (father of *William* Prince of *Orange*) unto *Philip* the Lantgrave, in the time of *Charles* the fift, for the ſumme 600000 Crowns: the houſe of *Naſſaw* notwithſtanding retaining it amongſt their Titles. 3. *Herborn*, a ſmall Univerſity or *Schola Illuſtris*, founded of late by the Earls of *Naſſaw*: in which *Piſcator* was Divinity Reader, and *Alſtedius* (both famous in their times) proteſſour for the Arts and Sciences. 4 *Idſtein*, lying ſouth to *Catzenelbogen*; and 5. *Wisbad*, directly ſouth of *Idſtein*, betwixt that and the *Meine*; theſe have the title and poſſeſſions of the ſecond branch of this Family. 6. *Weilborough* on the *Lou*, not far from *Wetzelver*, which gives Title to the third branch of this houſe, called the Earls of *Naſſaw* in *Sarbruck* and *Weilborough*.

As for the Princes of the houſe of *Naſſaw*, they are very ancient: *Otho* of *Naſſaw* being made Earl of *Guelderland* in the yeer 1079. Another *Otho* of this houſe, but proceeding from a different branch of it, dying *anno* 1190. the founder of the preſent Family of the Princes of *Orange*; and of the houſe of *Wisbad* and *Idſtein*, out of which deſcended *Adolphus* Earl of *Naſſaw* choſen Emperour, in the yeer 1292. By the marriage of *Engelbert* the ſixt Earl of this houſe of *Dillingberg*, with *Mary* daughter of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*; they came firſt to be poſſeſſed of Eſtates in the *Netherlands*: and by the marriage of *Henry*, great Grand-child of this *Engelbert*, with *Claude* of *Chalons*, they got the *Principality* of *Orange* in *France*. A family as much honoured for the *perſonall merit* of the Princes of it, as any other in *Europe*: of whom we have already given a Catalogue, in the deſcription and ſtory of *Provence*.

Bordering on *Franconia*, or *Frankenland*, lyeth the County of *HANAW*, ſo called from the Chief town of it: in which the places of moſt note, are 1 *Hanaw* it ſelf, in *Latine* called *Hanovia*, honoured with a *Schola illuſtris* alſo; and much inriched by the trade of *Printing*, with which they uſe to furniſh annually the *Marts* of *Frankefort*, diſtant from hence about ten *Dutch* miles. 2. *Pfaffenhoſen*, of no note formerly, but like to be remembred in the ſtories of ſucceeding times for the great defeat there given to the Duke of *Lorrain*, July 31. 1633. who loſt his whole Forces, all his Ordinance, Ammunition, and baggage; and which was worſt of all, his Country, taken in part from him by the Conquering *Swedes*, who followed him cloſe into his home; but wholly by the *French* King upon that advantage. 3 *Lichteberg*, which gives title to a ſecond branch of the houſe of *Hanaw*, called the Lord of *Lichteberg*. A family of good eſteeme, ſince the time that *Otho* of *Hanaw* was ennobled with the title of Earl thereof, which was about the yeer 1392. before that *Princes of the Empire*; and after that advanced unto greater fortunes, by the addition of the *Barony* of *Minzeberg*, in the perſon of *Philip* the firſt Earl of the County of *Rheineck*, in the perſon of another *Philip* the third of that name, great Grand-child of the former *Philip*; and finally, of the Lordſhip and eſtate of *Lichteberg*, accrewing to this houſe by the marriage of a third *Philip*, the youngeſt ſonne of *Reynard* the third Earl hereof, with *Anne* the daughter and heir of *Ludovick*, Lord of *Lichteberg*; the title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Hanaw*, called Lords of *Lichteberg*, and *Hocſenſtein*, and Earls of *Bitſch*; this laſt being an eſtate in *Lorrain*, accrewing to them by the marriage of a fourth *Philip*, (the fift in name and order of the houſe of *Lichteberg*) with *Margaret*, ſole daughter and heir of *Ludovick* the laſt Earl thereof.

Betwixt the Counties of *Naſſaw*, and *Hanaw*, on both ſides of the River *Lou*, lies the Earldome of *SOLMS*, the firſt Earl whereof (of whom there is any good *Conſtat*) was *Henry*, honoured with this title, *anno* 1220. But being I finde them in the Catalogue of the *Counts Imperiall* made before that time, I muſt conclude them to be ancienter then the date aforeſaid; though that ſufficient to ennoble a far greater Family. By the marriage of *Conrade* the ninth from *Henry* firſt with *Elizabeth* one of the daughters of *William* of *Naſſaw* Prince of *Orange*, and after with the widow of the Earl of *Egmond*, they came to be of ſuch Authority amongſt the *Netherlands*, as to be priviledged with a place and ſuffrage in the *Councell* of the *States Generall*: there ſettled at the preſent in their greateſt honour, eſpecially ſince the marriage of *Henry* of *Naſſaw* Prince of *Orange* with a daughter of Earl *Conrade* by his ſecond wife; the mother of *William* of *Naſſaw*, now Prince of *Orange*, and husband to the Princeſſe *Mary*, the eldeſt daughter of *Great Britain*. But beſides their Eſtates there, they are poſſeſſed in this tract of 1 *Branufels*, which gives title to the firſt branch of the houſe of *Solms*. 2 *Croneberg*, the poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of this Family; and 3 *Solms*, on the north ſide of the *Lou*, the root of both.

Of the *Imperiall Cities* in this *Confederation*, the firſt is *Friberg*, called for diſtinction ſake, *Friberg in Wederaw*, to difference it from another Town of that name in *Briſgow*: ſituate in the midle of delicious and moſt fruitfull elds: and memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to *Adolphus* of *Naſſaw*, at that time Emperour: who when he could not get it by force, or famine, obtained it by fraud; and put to death no leſſe then 40 of chief Nobility, whom he found in the Caſtle. So hated for that bloody fact, that he was ſhortly after deprived of the Empire, and ſlain in fight by *Albert* of *Auſtria* his *Competitor*. The ſecond of the two is *Wetzelaer*, ſeated on the *Lou*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which riſing neer *Dillengberg*, a town of the Earl of *Naſſawes*, doth here loſe its name into the greater. A town *Imperiall*, confederate with *Frideberg*, and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common liberties, and the *Religion* publickly profeſſed amongſt them, being that of the *Reformed Churches* of *Calvins* Platform.

Franconia

10. FRANCONIA.

FRANCONIA or *FRANKENLAND*, is bounded on the East with the *Vpper Palatinate*, and part of *Voitland*; on the West with the *Confederates* of *Wederaw*, and part of the *Rhene*; on the north with *Haſſia*, and *Thuringia*, and on the ſouth with the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, and ſome part of *Schwaben*, ſo called from the *French*, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whoſe poſſeſſion it was, when they were firſt known unto the *Romans*; the Reſidence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province, appropriating the name unto it. Called alſo *Francia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of *France*, which lay more towards the Weſt.

The Country on the out-parts overgrown wholly in a manner with woods and forreſts, and environed almoſt with Mountains, parts of the old *Hercinian Wolds*; is within, pleaſant, plain, and fruitfull; ſufficiently plentifull both of corn and wines, but abundantly well ſtored with *Rape*, and *Licoras*, and yeilding good paſture for Cattell: ſo that we may compare it to a fine piece of *Cloth*, wrought about with a courſe *liſt*; or an excellent fine piece of *Lawn*, with a canvaſſe *Selvage*.

Chief Rivers of it, are 1 The *Main*, or *Mænus*, which running thorow the midſt of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Frankfort*: 2 The *Sala*, whence the adjoyning *French* had the name of *Salii*; and *Conrade*, Emperour of the *Germans*, the ſurname of *Salicus*. 3 *Radiantis*; 4 *Sinna*; 5 *Tubero*; 6 *Æſtus*, *&c.*

The People of it are ingenious, patient of labour, ſtrong of body, and very induſtrious, not ſuffering any to be idle that can earn his living of what ſort ſoever. The off-ſpring of the ancient *French*, who having over-maſtered *Gaul*, and the parts adjoyning, left here the ſeminary of their ſtrength, and a ſtock of their antient Princes: *Marcomir*, brother of *Pharamond* the firſt King of the *French*, governing in theſe parts as Duke, and leaving the eſtate and title unto his poſterity. The catalogue of which Princes, take in order thus:

The PRINCES of the *FRANKES*, and DUKES of *FRANCONIA*, of the old *FRENCH* Race.

A.	*Ch.*	
326	1	*Genebaldus*, the ſon of *Dagobert*, deſcended from the old Regal ſtock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Dutch* nations about 60 or 70 yeers before in the name of *Frankes*, having ſubdued thoſe parts which lay towards the River *Mœnus*: became the firſt Prince of the Eaſtern *Frankes*, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.
356	2	*Dagobert*, the ſonne of *Genebaldus*, who added the Diſtrict of *Triers* unto his Eſtates.
377	3	*Clodoveus*, or *Ludovicus*, the ſonne of *Dagobert*.
398	4	*Marcomir*, the ſonne of *Clodoveus*, who extended his Dominion Eaſtwards towards *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*.
402	5	*Pharamund*, or *Waramund*, the ſonne of *Marcomir*, the firſt of this line which took unto himſelf the title of King of the *French*: on the aſſuming whereof, (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia* or *Eaſt-France*, with the Title of Duke to his brother *Marcomir*.
419	6	*Marcomir*, the brother of *Pharamund*.
423	7	*Prummeſſer*, by ſome called *Priamus*, the ſon of *Marcomir*.
435	8	*Genebaldus* II. the ſon of *Prummeſſer*.
455	9	*Sunno*, the ſon of *Genebald* the ſecond.
478	10	*Clodomirus*, or *Luitomarus*, the ſon of *Sunno*.
515	11	*Hygobaldus*, the ſon of *Clodomir*, who became a *Chriſtian*, and added *Wormes* and *Mentz* unto his Eſtates.
541	12	*Helenus*, by ſome called *Hermericus*, a *Chriſtian* alſo, who paſſing over the *Rhene*, ſubdued that tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorrain*, which the *Dutch* call *Weſterich*.
571	13	*Gotofridus*, the ſon of *Helenus*, a *Chriſtian* alſo, but not able to perſwade his people to the ſame belief.
595	14	*Genebaldus* III. the ſon of *Gotofrede*.
615	15	*Clodomir* II. the ſon of *Genebald* the third.
638	16	*Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the ſecond.
668	17	*Clodoveus*, or *Clovis* II. the Couſin-german of *Heribert*.
680	18	*Gosbertus*, the ſon of *Clovis* the ſecond.
706	19	*Gosbertus* II. the ſon of *Gosbert* the firſt.
720	20	*Hetavus*, the ſon of *Gosbert* the ſecond, the laſt Duke of *Franconia* of this line. Who dying without

Franconia.

without iſſue male, *anno* 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charles* the great; according to a former contract made between thoſe Princes: and *Charles* no ſooner had it in his poſſeſſion, but he beſtowed the greateſt part of it on *Burchard* the firſt Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, anno 752. made Biſhop of that City by *Boniface*, Arch-biſhop of *Mentz* (the firſt Apoſtle of this People) but a yeer before. The Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* by this grant were poſſeſſed hereof, as long as any of the houſe of *Charls* the Great did poſſeſſe the Empire. But his poſterity failing in the perſon of *Conrade*, anno 910. *Otho* the firſt (who next but one ſucceeded *Conrade*) inveſted *Conrade*, husband to *Luitgardis* his daughter, with this Country, giving him withall the title of Duke of *Francony*. Four Princes of this houſe poſſeſſed it: that is to ſay, this *Conrade* ſurnamed *Salicus*, and after him three *Henries*, father, ſon and nephew, ſucceſſively enjoying the Imperiall dignity, by the name of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fift. This *Henry*, the laſt Prince of the male line of *Conrade*, dying without iſſue, *Franconia* fell to *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next heir to *Henry* by the Lady *Agnes* his Siſter, married to *Frederick* the *Antient* Duke of *Schwaben*, the grand-father of *Barbaroſſa*: But that houſe being alſo extinct in the perſon of *Conradine*, *anno* 1268. and no one heir pretending to the rights thereof; the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former grant: content to let ſome great ones have a part of the ſpoil, that he and his ſucceſſours might enjoy the reſt. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Electour *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, (for antiently the *Palatinate* and the Biſhoprick of *Mentz* were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marqueſſe of *Onolsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenberg*, *Henneberg*, and *Hohenloe*, and as many of the *Free* or *Imperiall* Cities, as are ſeated in it. Thus every one did gather ſticks when the great Oak fell: the title of Duke of *Francony* remaining notwithſtanding to the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg*.

1. *WVRTZBVRG*, the *Metropolis* of *Franconia*, the ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop who is *Titulary* Duke hereof, is ſituate on the *Mein*, or *Mœnus*, in a pleaſant plain environed with Meadowes, gardens, and fruitfull mountains; and very well fenced with walls, trenches, bulwarks, and other Arts of modern fortification: well peopled, and for the moſt part handſomely and neatly built. Paſſing over the Bridge built of free ſtone on many large and ſpacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though ancient) Caſtle; the ordinary dwelling of the Biſhop: and yet ſo ſtrong that the many vain attempts of the *Boores* and *Citizens*, apt to pick quarrells with their *Prince*, made it thought impreguable; to which the ſituation of it on the top of an hill, added ſome advantage. but it proved otherwiſe when beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, *anno* 1631. who after a ſhort, but ſtout reſiſtance, took it by aſſault. Other townes of moſt note which belong to the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg*, are 2 *Forchein*, where it is ſaid that *Pontius Pilate* was born. 3 *Gemand*, at the meeting of the *Meine*, and the *Sal*, or *Sala*; 4 *Chronac*; 5 *Staphelſtein*; 6 *Hockſtad*, of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Biſhop as chief Lord of all; he is called in the refined *Latine* of theſe times, *Herbipolitanus*, but commonly *Wurtziburgenſis*; differing in ſound, but not in ſenſe: For *Wurtzburg* is no other then a *town* of *Worts*, ſituate amongſt plants and gardens, as before is ſaid; and *Herbipolis*, made up out of ſeverall languages, doth ſignifie no more then a *City* of *Herbs*. By whom the Epiſcopall See was here firſt erected, and how the Biſhops hereof came to be intituled unto their Eſtates, hath been ſhewn already. The manner how the new Biſhop is admitted, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the deceaſe of the former Biſhop, the *Lord Elect* attended with a great train of horſe is to make his entrance. Aſſoone as coming within the Gates, he alights off his horſe, and putteth off his robes, and being attired in a poor and deſpicable habit, begirt about with a rope, bare-headed alſo, & bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Cuſtel*, *Wortheim*, and *Reineck*, to S. *Saviours* Church, being his Cathedrall. The *Dean* and *Canons* there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modeſtly replyeth, that though unworthy, he is come to diſcharge the office unto which he is called. Then the *Dean* thus, *I admit thee in the name of this whole* Chapter, *committing to thy care this Church of Saint* Saviours, *and the Dukedome thereunto belonging, in the name of the* Father, *Son, and holy Ghoſt*. Which done, he putteth on his *Epiſcopall* habi . yeth *Maſſe*, and from thence paſſeth to his Caſtle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The *living* Biſhop thus inveſted, proceed we next unto the buriall of the *dead*, whoſe body being embowelled, is kept in the Chappell of the Caſtle, his heart preſerved in a veſſell of glaſſe. The next day he is carried to the Monaſtery of Saint *James*, holding a *Crozier Staffe* in his right hand, and a *ſword* in his left; buried with which the next day after, in the Church of S. *Saviour*. As for the *Revenues* of the Biſhop, they muſt needs be great; the Biſhop hereof, in the time of *Charles* the fift, compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, at the price of 220000 Crownes in ready money, and entring into bond to pay all his debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more: by which we may partly gueſs at the richneſſe of his *Exchequer*, and partly at the greatneſs of his *Intrada*.

2. The ſecond great Lord of *Franconie* is the Biſhop of *BAMBERG*, a City ſeated on the *Mein*, not far from *Wurtzburg*: the little River *Regnite* falling there into it; ſuppoſed by *Mercator* to be the *Granionarium* of *Ptolemy*, and to have took this new name from the hill *Baba* (ſo called from *Baba*, daughter

daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxon*, and wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof) upon which it is situate: the right name being *Babemberg* (remember that *Berg* in *Dutch* signifieth an *Hill*) and contractedly *Bamberg*. A City delectably seated amongst mountaines and pleasant gardens, and in a soil exceeding fruitfull of all necessaries, and yeelding *Liquorice* in great plenty: the birth-place of *Joachimus Camerarius*, one of the great lights of *Germany*, and a See Episcopall, the Bishop of which is exempt from the power of his Metropolitan, subject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair towns and territories in this Countrey; but much diminished since the time of *Charles* the fift; the Bishop thereof then being, giving to Marquesse *Albert* above mentioned for a cessation from arms, *anno* 1530. no lesse then 60 of his Lordships (most of which fall unto the share of the Marquesse of *Onaldsbach*) besides the *tutelage* or *Guardianship* of his *Wards* and *Clients*. Of those which are remaining in the hands of the Bishops, the principall are 1 *Gragingliac*, 2 *Schleistat*. Franconia

3. The third great Lord to be considered is the Marquesse of *Onaldsbach* or *Ansbach*, who is Master of no small part of this Countrey; but his Estate (as those of the other *German* Princes) confused and intermixt with his neighbours. His chief Townes, 1 *Onaldsbach* or *Ansbach*, the usuall residence of these Marquesses, and the birth-place of most of their children. 2 *Hailbrun*, on the edge of *Wirtenberg*; walled in about in the yeare 1085. and honoured with some publick Schools there founded by Marquesse *George Frederick*, *anno* 1582. 3 *Pleinfelt*, not far from *Nuremberg*. Such places as they hold in *Voiteland*, we shall meet with them there.

These Marquesses are of the puissant family of *Brandenbourg*, by whom this fair estate was wrested from the Female heirs of *Wolframius*, the last Lord hereof: the first who did enjoy this Estate and Title being Marquesse *George Frederick* the sonne of *Albert* Marquesse and Elector of *Brandenbourg* called the *Achilles* of *Germany*; the Father of *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, and of *George*, the first Marquesse of *Jagendorf*; and Grandfather of that Marquesse *Albert*, who in the dayes of *Charles* the Fift so harassed this Countrey. But his male-issue by *Casimir* his eldest sonne failing in that *Albert*, *anno* 1557. it returned to the Electorall house, and by *Sigismund*, a late *Elector* was given to *Joachim Ernestus*, one of his younger brethren; who by the *Princes of the Vnion* for defence of the *Palatinate* was made chief Commander of their Forces, *anno* 1620. A charge in which it was supposed that he carryed himself neither so faithfully nor so valiantly, as he should have done, being much condemned for suffering *Spinola* with his Army to passe by unfought with, when hee had all advantages that could be wished for, to impede his march: the greatest part of the *Palatinate* being lost immediately upon that neglect: and by degrees the rest of the *Vnited Provinces*, either taken off from their engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a constancie. To him succeeded his son *Christian* now possessed hereof.

As for the other secular Princes which have any considerable estates in this Countrey, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenloe*, *Rheineck*, *Castell*, *Wortheim*, *Horpach*, and *Swartzenbourg*, together with the Lords of *Lemburg*, and *Rheichisberg*; all of them named so from the chiefe town of their Estates, and all those townes enriched with some suitable territorie. Of these the Earles of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, Castell, and *Wortheim*, are *Homagers* to the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to doe him service at his Inthronization: the Earldome of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hanow*, as was shewn before; and that of *Henneberg* most famous in that one of the Earles hereof was Father of that incredible increase of children (as many as there be dayes in the yeares) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his wife, sister of *William* Earle of *Holland* and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as most in *Germany*, fetching their Pedegree as high as to *Charles* the *Great*, without help of the *Heralds*. But they of greatest power and parentage amongst them, are the Earls of *SCHWARTZENBVRG*, deriving themselves from one *Witikindus*, of the house of *Saxony*: who fighting for his Countrey against the *French*, *anno* 779. was taken prisoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized at the perswasion of *Lewis* the *Godly*, sonne of *Charles* the *Great*, *Witikindus* his sonne and successour, being baptized at the same time also by the name of *Charles*, was the first Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Castle of his owne building on the edge of *Turingia*, *anno* 796. whose posterity doe still hold the same, but much improved in their Estates by marriages and other accrewments. A race of Princes which have yeelded many of great influence in the affairs of *Germany*: amongst them *Guntber* Earl of *Schwartzenburg*, elected Emperour of the *Romans* against *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovick* Marquesse of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbishop of *Mentz*. By which last solemnly inaugurated at *Aken* (or *Aquisgrane*) *anno* 1349. But being unworthily poysoned by his Competitour, though he dyed not of it, yet he was made so weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to surrender his pretentions to his mortall enemy, receiving in compensation for his charges 22000 marks in *silver*, and some towns in *Turingia*.

Of the *Imperiall Cities*, which share amongst them the remainders of *Frankenlandt*, the principall are 1 *Frankford* on the *Meine*, so called from its situation on the River *Meine*, to difference it from *Frankford* in the Countrey of *Brandenburg*; Divided by the River into two parts, joined together by a bridge of stone, the lesser part, situate on the right hand shore of the River, being called *Saxen-hausen*, the greater part, properly called *Frank-ford*, seated on the other; both under one Magistrate, and both together making up a fair, rich, populous, and well traded town; of great both riches and repute, by reason of the famous *Marts* here held in the midst of *Lent* and *September* yearly; and the *Election* of the Emperour or King of the *Romans* as occasion is. The City of a round form, compassed with a double wall, beautified with some walkes without the town on the banks

Franconia. bankes of the River amongſt Vineyards, meadowes and ſweet groves: called thus, as ſome ſay, from *Francus* the ſonne of *Marcomir*, ſuppoſed to be the founder of it; or *a Francorum vado*, as the *Ford* of the *Francks*, before the building of the bridge. 2 *Schweinfort*, on the *Meine* alſo, in a fruitfull ſoil. 3 *Rotenburg* on the River *Tuber*. 4 *Winsheim*. Here is alſo the town of 5 *Koburg*, which belongeth to the houſe of *Saxony*, and gives title unto ſome of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxen-koburg*. And hereto may be added 6 the fair City of *Nurenburg*, conceived by moſt to be within the *Vpper Palatinate*: but by the Emperor *Maximilian* made a member of the *Circle* of *Franconie*, in regard moſt of the Eſtates and poſſeſſions of it lie within this Countrey. Of which indeed they have ſo plentifull a ſhare, that when *Maurice* Electour of *Saxony*, and his confederates had driven *Charles* the fift out of *Germany*, Marqueſſe *Albert* before mentioned (whoſe ſword was his beſt Revenue) picking a quarrell with this City, burnt no leſſe then an hundred Villages belonging to it, 70 Manours and Farmhouſes appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Woods: and after all this havock made of their eſtate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Crownes in Money, and ſix peeces of Ordinance. But being the City it ſelfe ſeems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, wee ſhall there meet with it.

Amongſt theſe *Prelates*, *Princes* and *Imperiall* Cities is the great Dukedome of *Franconia*, at this time divided; the title ſtill remaining in the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, and ſome part of the Countrey: but both the Countrey and the title of Duke of *Francony*, not long ſince otherwiſe diſpoſed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg anno* 1631. as before is ſaid, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them, conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxon-Weymer*, with the ſtyle and title of Duke of *Franconia*. Inaugurated therein in the Cathedrall Church of *Wurtzburg*, *July* 19. 1633. the *Nobility* and Gentry of the Countrey doing *homage* to him, and all the *Magiſtrates* and Officers of the ſeverall Cities taking the *oaths* of *Allegiance*: the new Duke alſo making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their rights and *Priviledges*. In the ſolemnities of which day, the firſt great Gun diſcharged in the way of triumph, broke in the going off without any hurt done but the wounding of one ſouldier onely. An *omen* that all this ſolemn *Act* would prove but a *Pageant*, and break in pieces at the firſt giving fire unto it. And ſo accordingly it did: the victory at *Norlingen*, which followed not long after this, putting the *Biſhops* once more into their poſſeſſions, and leaving nothing to the new Duke but an hungry title. And therefore leaving both the old and new Titular Dukes, wee will here adde the Catalogue of thoſe who were Dukes indeed, and had together with the title the full poſſeſſion of the Countrey.

DVKES of *FRANCONIA* of the *DVTCH* or *GERMAN* RACE.

974	1	*Conradus* ſurnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the firſt, whoſe daughter *Luitgardis* he had marryed: after the death of *Henry* the ſecond, elected Emperour by the name of *Conrade* the ſecond, *anno* 1025.
1040	2	*Henry* the ſonne of *Conrade*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperour by the name of *Henry* the third.
1056	3	*Henry* II. of *Franconia*, and IV. of the Empire.
1106	4	*Henry* III. of *Franconia*, and the V. of the Empire.
1125	5	*Frederick* (ſurnamed) *Barbaroſſa* Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the *Antient*, Duke of *Swevia*, and of *Agnes* his wife, the ſiſter and next heir of *Henry*; ſucceeded in the Empire after the death of *Conrade* the third his Uncle, *anno* 1153.
1190	6	*Frederick* the ſecond ſonne of *Barbaroſſa* II. Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.
	7	*Conrade* II. brother of *Frederick* the ſecond, ſucceeded in both Eſtates.
	8	*Philip* the younger brother of *Conrade*, ſucceeded in both Dukedomes after his deceaſe; and on the death of *Henry* the ſixt his eldeſt brother, was elected Emperour, *anno* 1198.
1207	9	*Frederick* III. of *Franconia*, and the V. of *Suevia*, ſonne of the Emperour *Henry* the ſixt, whom hee ſucceeded in the Kingdome of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, *anno* 1202. and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, *anno* 1212. was elected Emperour, of that name the ſecond.
1250	10	*Conrade* III. of *Franconie*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV. of the Empire, the ſon of *Frederick* the third, whom he ſucceeded in al his Titles and Eſtates.
1254	11	*Conradine* ſonne of *Conrade* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*; diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicil* by *Manfred*, the Baſe Brother of his Father; and finally beheaded by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who ſucceeded *Manfred* in thoſe Kingdomes, *anno* 1268. After whoſe death this royall houſe being quite extinguiſhed; the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* did again reſume the title of Dukes of *Franconia*; content to let ſome of the greater Lords and Prelates which lived neer unto him, to ſhare in the poſſeſſion of it, as before was noted.

11. WIRTENBERG,

and

12. BADEN.

These I have joined together though distinct Estates, because both of them taken out of the great Dukedome of *Schwaben*, erected both about one time, and lying very close in a round together: bounded upon the East and South with the *Schwaben* properly so called; on the North with the *lower Palatinate*; on the West with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schawben* which is called *Brisgow* parted asunder by the Mountainous ridge of hils called *Schwartzwall*; *Wirtenberg* lying on the East side thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*.

And first for *WIRTENBERG*, the air thereof is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the soil thereof near *Swartzenwald* lying on the West, and the *Alps* of *Swevia*, on the South, of it self barren and unprofitable; but in some places by the industrie of the *Ploughman*, made to yeild good corn. But in the middle parts thereof which lye towards the *Neccar*, little inferiour for fruitfulnesse both of corn and wine, unto any in *Germanie*; besides some *silver* mines near *Wiltberg*, and about *Puellach*, a small Town, such abundance of *brasse*, that the Foundation of the houses seem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Castle of *Wirtenberg*, the first seat of the Princes of it, as that did from the *Intuergi*, inhabiting the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*; or the *Virthungi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh mentioned by *Trebellius Gellio* in the life of *Aurelianus*, to which the word *Berg* being added for a termination, made it first *Tuergin-berg*, or *Virthung-berg*, and after *Wirtenberg*.

Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Stutgard*, the Dukes seat, a fair, rich, and populous town, and the chief of the Dukedome; seated in a pleasant and fruitfull Plaine not farre from the *Neccar*, yeilding a quantity of wine almost incredible. 2 *Tubingen*, on both sides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair stone Bridge. A Town well built, situate in a very rich soil, and finally adorned with an Universitie here founded by *Eberhard* the first Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *anno* 1477. in which *Leonardus Fuchsius* that great *Herbarist* and *Restaurator* of *Physick*, was once a Professour of that Facultie. 3 *Constat*, upon the *Neccar* also, not far from which on the top of an hill, stands the old Castle of *Wirtenberg* before mentioned. 4 *Wietberg*, of great esteem for its Mines of silver. 5 *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by *Jews*. 6 *Schorndorf* upon the *Reems*, much resorted to by reason of the *hot baths* there; as is also 7 *Newnburg*, on the *Entz*. 8 *Heidenheim*, 9 *Grieningen*, 10 *Marbach*, of which little memorable. There are also within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns *Imperiall*, as 1 *Wimpsen*, and 2 *Haibrum*, on the *Neccar*. 3 *Gepping*, upon the river *Vils*. 4 *Weil*, 5 *Reutling*, on the *Neccar* also, made *Imperiall* by *Frederick* the 2. *anno* 1240. otherwise of no great note but for the Paper mils. 6 *Esling*.

The first Inhabitants hereof, were the *Charitni* of *Ptolemie*, and part of the *Intuergi* spoken of before, made subject with the rest of these parts to the *Almains*, after to the *French*, and finally a member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which dismembred in the time of *Henry* 4. after the dangerous war raised against him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practise of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne *Imperiall*; it came to have Princes of its own: the first Earl being *Conrade* in the year 1100, by the grace and favour of the said Emp. *Henry*. Increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Montbelguard* and many other accrewments it was made a Dukedom in the person of *Eberhard* the 6. by *Maximilian* the 1. *anno* 1495. The Earls and Dukes whereof follow thus in order:

The EARLS and DUKES of *WIRTENBERG*.

	1	*Conrade* the first Earl	
	2	*Ulrick*, son of *Conrade*.	
	3	*John* son of *Ulrick*.	
	4	*Lewis* son of *John*.	
	5	*Henry* son of *Lewis*.	
	6	*Eberhard* son of *Henry*.	
	7	*Ulrick* II. son of *Eberhard*.	
	8	*Eberhard* II. son of *Ulrick*.	
1325	9	*Ulrick* III. son of *Eberhard*.	
1344	10	*Eberhard* III. son of *Ulric*.	
1392	11	*Ulric* IV. son of *Eberhard*.	
	12	*Eberhard* IV. son of *Ulric*.	
1417	13	*Eberhard* V. son of *Eberhard* the 4. by his marriage with *Henrica*, or *Henriette*, daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Montbelguard*, added that Earldom to his house.	
1419	14	*Lewis* or *Ludovick* II. son of *Eberhard* the 5.	
1456	15	*Eberhard* VI. son of *Lewis*, Founder of the Universitie of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the 1. the first Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *anno* 1495. He deceased without issue, *anno* 1496.	

Wirtenberg

1496	16	*Eberhard* VII. ſon of *Ulric*, the younger brother of *Lewis* the 2. ſucceeded on the death of *Eberhard* his Couſin German.
1504	17	*Henry* the brother of *Eberhard* the 7.
1519	18	*Ulric* V. ſon of *Henry* the 2. expulſed out of his Dukedom by *Charls* the 5. for the ſack of *Reutling* an *Imperiall* Citie; and his Eſtate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, the brother of *Charls*; but after 15 years exile, reſtored to his Dukedom by *Philip* Lantgrave of *Haſſia*. He reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the Univerſitie of *Tubingen*.
1550	19	*Chriſtopher* the ſon of *Ulric* the 5. a follower of his Fathers ſteps in Reformation of the Church, and Advancement of Learning.
1568	20	*Ludivick* or *Lewis* III. ſon of *Chriſtopher*.
	21	*Frederick* ſon of *George* Earl of *Montbelgard* the brother of *Ulric* the 5. made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth*, *anno* 1597.
	22	*John-Frederick* ſon of *Frederick* the 1.
	23	*John-Eberard*, eldeſt ſon of the former Duke, *anno* 1649.

The *Revenues* of this Duke are ſuppoſed to be equall unto thoſe of the *Electors Palatine*, ſpoken of before; and were it not for the *ſilver* mines in *Saxonie*, little inferiour to thoſe of that Duke. But for proviſions of war, (excepting *Powder* only) he is meanly furniſhed. A main defect conſidering the ill terms he ſtands in with the *Imperiall* Cities, betwixt whom and the houſe of *Wirtenberg*, there have been alwayes open wars, or ſecret jealouſies.

His Arms are *Or*, 3 Attires of a Stag born Palie-barrie, *Sable*.

As for the Marquiſate of *BADEN*, lying on the Weſt ſide of *Schwartzenwald*, betwixt it & the *Rhene*, it is for the moſt part, except towards thoſe *Wolds*, a very pleaſant and fruitfull Countrie; and much of the ſame nature, with the reſt of *Wirtenberg*, ſo called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marqueſſe keeps his ſeat in Winter: ſo named from the hot Baths there, as is alſo *Baden* (called for diſtinction ſake, the *Vpper Baden*) amongſt the *Switzers*: in which reſpect the Citie of *Bath* in *Somerſetſhire*, had antiently the name of *Caer-Baden* alſo. Of theſe *Baths* it is ſuppoſed that there are in this Citie at the leaſt 300. profitable for many diſeaſes and exulcerate ſores, drawing a great reſort of people from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquiſate, from whence the Princes have the Title of Marqueſſes of *Baden*. The next to this is 2 *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives title to a ſecond branch of this houſe, called ſometimes Marqueſſes of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marqueſſes of *Baden-Durlach*. 3 *Liebenzel*, amongſt the hils of *Schwartzenwald*, famous for hot *medicinall* Springs. 4 *Lichtall*, remarkable for a Monaſterie, the buriall place of the firſt Marqueſſes. 5 *Gerſpach*, in the very heart of that Mountainous tract. 6 *Pfortheim*, adjoyning to the Wood *Hagenſchein*, a branch of *Schwartzenwald*. 7 *Rötelen*, 8 *Badenwile*, and 9 *Suſenburg*, all ſeated in the *Vpper-Baden*, being that part hereof which lies next to *Briſgow*. 10 *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, the uſuall retiring place of theſe Princes in the heats of Summer.

This *Marquiſate* being alſo taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben* was founded in the perſon of *Herman*, of *Verona* in *Italie*, who deſerving well of the Emperour *Henry* the 5. was by him ſettled in ſome Lands about theſe parts, *anno* 1120. and after marrying with the daughter of an Earl of *Baden* was by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa* created the firſt Marqueſſe of *Baden*, *anno* 1155. The Eſtate was after much increaſed by the addition of the Earldome of *Hochberg*, and the Appendixes thereof, in *Schwaben*; into which *Chriſtopher* the 13. Marqueſſe hereof, ſucceeded on the death of his Couſin *Philip* the laſt Earl of *Hochberg*; both Princes deſcending originally from two brothers: of which the eldeſt in right of the Lady *Judith* his wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the ſecond by the favour of the ſaid *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, was made Marqueſſe of *Baden*. They were Maſters alſo of many fair Eſtates in the *Lower Palatinate*, which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there ſaid) are ſince poſſeſſed of. Other particulars ſhall be ſhewn (if occaſion be) in the enſuing Catalogue of

The MARQUESSES of *BADEN*.

1253	1	*Herman* the firſt Marqueſſe.
	2	*Herman* II.
	3	*Herman* III.
	4	*Herman* IV.
1281	5	*Rodulph*, ſon of *Herman* 4.
1295	6	*Herman* V. ſon of *Rodolph*.
	7	*Rodolph* II. ſon of *Herman* the 5.
1356	8	*Frederick*, ſon of *Rodolph* the 2.
	9	*Rodolph* III. ſon of *Frederick*.
1372	10	*Barnard*, ſon of *Rodolph*.
1431	11	*James* ſon of *Barnard*.
1453	12	*Charls* ſon of *James*; the firſt of theſe Marqueſſes which was poſſeſſed of the Countie of *Spanheim* in the *Lower Palatinate*, deſcending on this houſe by *Matild* wife of *Rodolp* the 2.
1475	13	*Chriſtopher* ſon of *Charls*, who after the death of *Philip* the laſt Marqueſſe of *Hochberg*, ſucceeded alſo in that eſtate.
1515	14	*Barnard* ſon of *Chriſtopher*, his brother *Erneſt* ſucceeding in that of *Hochberg*.
	15	*Chriſtopher*

15 *Chriſtopher* II. ſon of *Barnard*, his elder brother *Philibert*, and *Philip* ſon of *Philebert* dying in the life of *Barnard*. *Northgoia.*

16 *Edward* ſon of *Chriſtopher*, intending the ſale of his Eſtates to pay his debts, was forcibly deprived of all by

17 *Erneſt* Marqueſſe of *Hochberg*, nephew of *Erneſt* above mentioned; who by that means not only preſerved the Marquiſate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it; and removed his ordinarie ſeat to *Durlach*.

18 *George*, brother of *Erneſt*, Marqueſſe of *Baden* and *Hochberg*.

19 *Frederick*, the ſon of *George* born in the year 1594. ſucceeded his Father in both Eſtates; and (if living) hath a ſonne called alſo *Frederick*, to enjoy them after him.

NORTHGOIA,

OR

The *UPPER PALATINATE*.

The Countrie of *NORTHGOIA*, ſo called from the *Northern* ſituation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is ſometimes alſo called the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, becauſe anciently belonging to that Eſtate; but generally *Ober Pfalts*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Lower*. It is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, on the Weſt with *Franconia*, and part of *Schwaben*; on the North with *Voiteland*; and on the South with *Bavaria*. The Countrie for the moſt part ſomewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in mines of iron, which it yeeldeth in moſt places, and ſome of ſilver about *Amberg*, extended from *Haimbourg* to the edge of *Bohemia* 80 miles, and from the hill *Felchtelberg* in the edge of *Voiteland* to *Weiſenberg* near the banks of the *Danow* 68 miles.

Obſervable things touching this Province, are chiefly two. Firſt that out of the Mountain *Felchtelberg* before mentioned, ariſe 4 Rivers running to the four quarters of the world; that is to ſay, the *Eger* towards the Eaſt, the *Mein* or *Mœnus* towards the Weſt, the *Sala* or *Saltza* to the North, and the *Nab* *Nabus* to the South, ſo that it may be probably thought to be the higheſt hill in all *Germanie*. 2 That in the Southweſt corner of it are two little Rivers, the one called *Almul* which falleth into the *Danow*, and the other *Rednitz* which runs into the *Mein*, and finally into the *Rhene*: between the heads whereof, being not much diſtant, *Charls* the *Great* once began to dig a Channel for making a paſſage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thouſand men: but partly by exceſſe of rain, and partly by ſome ſtrange *affrightments* (all which they did in the day being undone in the night) he was fain to deſiſt. Some parts of the intended water-courſe are to be ſeen near *Waſſenburg*, ſpoken of before, which ſtandeth in the middle way betwixt both Rivers.

Chief places of this Country which belong to the *Electorall* Familie, are 1 *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commoditie of iron digged out of the neighbouring hils, and here faſhioned into all ſorts of *Utenſils*, and thence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoining: but prouder of its mines of *ſilver* then thoſe veins of *iron*, affording to the Princes Coffers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2 *Monheim*, in the midſt of a fruitfull valley, near a wood of *Juniper*. 3 *Newburg*, upon the River *Swartzach*, which gives title to the ſecond branch of the *Palatine* houſe, called the Count *Palatines* of *Newburg*; competitours with the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg* for the Dukedom of *Cleveland*. 4 *Kelhaim*, at thee meeting of the *Danow*, with the river *Almul*. 5 *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the river *Regen*, which paſſing thence falleth into the *Danow* near the Citie of *Regenſberg*. 6 *Caſtell*, where the *Electors* for the moſt part hold their *Reſidence*, when they are in this Country. 7 *Awerbach*, 8 *Saltsbach*, 9 *Weiden*, 10 *Newmarckt*.

There are alſo in this Country ſome towns belonging to the *Lantgraves* of *Luchtenberg*, one of the four old *Lantgraves* of the Empire: the other three being *Duringen*, *Haſſia*, and *Alſatia*: ſo called from *Luchtenberg* an old Caſtle, ſituate on a loftie hill not far from *Pfriemd*, the chief town and ordinary ſeat of theſe *Lantgraves*, ſeated on the river *Nab*, 2 *Gronſfelden*, 3 *Schonhuffen*, an ordinary paſſe and baiting-place in the way from *Prague* to *Nurenberg*.

But the chief Citie of this Country, and perhaps of *Germanie*, is *Nurenberg* it ſelf, *Norimbega* in the modern, but *Noricum* in the ancient *Latine*. So called from an ancient Caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, the ruines of which are ſtill remaining encompaſſed with a deep but drie ditch, now of no uſe nor ornament to the Citie at all; but reverenced for its antiquity as the mother of *Nurenberg*. The Caſtle ſaid by ſome to be built in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*; more probably by ſome of the *Norici*, who terrified with the Invaſion of *Attila*, in the decline and waine of the *Roman* Empire, relinquiſhed *Bavaria*, where before they dwelt, and paſſed over the *Danow*, there to provide themſelves of a ſafer dwelling. Conquered by the *Bavarians*, it became together with their Conquerours, ſubject to the *French*: in the time of *Lewis* the 3. it became *Imperiall*, and was walled and fortified during the reign of *Charls* the 4. From that time it encreaſed ſo faſt both in wealth and beauty, that it is counted the greateſt and wealthieſt City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it 11 ſtone bridges for paſſage over the river *Pegnits*, which runneth through it; 12 Conduits of freſh water, 13 common Baths, 116 publick Wels, and 128 Streets. Of figure ſquare, environed with a triple wall of 8 miles

Bohemia.

in circuit, and plentifully ſtored with all ſorts of *Ammunition*. The Marqueſſes of *Brandenburg* in former times were the *Burgraves* of it, an office of great power and juriſdiction; but ſold for a good ſum of mony by *Frederick* the 3. *anno* 1414. *Albert*, his ſon attempting to recover the old office again, beſieged the town, having no leſſe then 17 Princes on his ſide, and yet could not force it. That for an Argument of its ſtrength. A proof and evidence of the wealth of it we have ſeen before, in that great havock made of their Towns and Villages, and the great ranſome they were put to by another *Albert*, ſpoken of in *Franconia*. And it adds much unto the commendation of the people, that this great wealth is gotten by their indefatigable *induſtrie*: the town being ſituate on a barren and ſandie ſoil, and deſtitute of thoſe helps which commonly a *navigable* River brings into a City: thoſe great poſſeſſions which belong to the State hereof, being gotten out of the fire, as the ſaying is, by their continuall working of iron and other manufactures; occaſioning a reſort hither of Merchants from all parts of *Germanie*. Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate*, are 1 *Altorf*, where the *Nurenbergers* Founded an Univerſity for the ſtudy of all Arts and Sciences, *anno* 1575. 2 *Erſpruck*, a great Town and well ſeated, belonging to the State of *Nurenberg* alſo. 3 *Eiſted* (*Aichſtadium* in the *Latine*) an Epiſcopall See, ſituate on the River *Almul*. 4 *Waſſenburg*, an *Imperiall* City on the borders of *Schwaben*. Here was alſo in this Province (if not ſtill remaining) the town of *Winsberg*, memorable for the piety and gallantry of the women of it. For the Town being beſieged and diſtreſſed by the Emperour *Conrade* the 3. for ſiding againſt him with the *Guelfs* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the ſurrendrie of it, but that the women might have leave to depart in ſafety, and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained they took their husbands on their backs, and ſo left the Town: and by that noble act ſo moved the affections and compaſſion of the angry Prince, that he ſpared the Town, and gave them all a generall pardon. It is ſaid by ſome, that the odious names of *Guelfs* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of *Chriſtendome* was ſo long diſtracted) took their beginning at this ſiege: the firſt ſo called from *Guelfo*, brother of *Henry* the *Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whoſe cauſe they fought; the other from *Veibling*, (the *French* and *Italians* ſpeak it *Gueibling*) a Town of *Frankenland*, in which that Emperour was born. Another originall hereof we had in our deſcription of the State of *Florence*: but I take this to be the more probable of the two, though neither certain.

The ancient inhabitants here were the *Nariſci* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards ſome of the *Norici* fearfull or grown impatient of the *Roman* yoak, came over the *Danubius* to them, and built that famous Caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, where now ſtands *Nurenberg*. Overpowered by the *Boji*, and uniting with them in the name of *Bojarians* they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339. when *Ludovick* the Emperour and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the eſtate betwixt him and *Rodolphus* his elder brother, relinquiſhed it for ever to the houſe of the *Palatines*. Returned for the preſent to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom conferred together with the *Electorall* dignity by the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. in recompenſe of the great ſervice don him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof, in the war of *Bohemia*, and the great charge he had been at in the reduction of that Kingdome to the houſe of *Auſtria*. How long it will continue thus is known only to God the diſpoſer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly, nor the *Palatines* ſince have been ſo fully Maſters of it, but that the Landgrave of *Luchtenberg* and the Citie of *Nurenberg* have put in for a ſhare.

The Arms of which great and puiſſant Citie are *Azure*, an *Harpie* diſplayed, crowned, crined, and armed, *Or*.

13. The KINGDOM of *BOHEMIA*.

The *Kingdom* of *BOHEMIA*, containing *Bohemia* it ſelf with the incorporate *Provinces*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Poland* and *Hungarie*; on the Weſt with the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voiteland*, and *Miſnia*; on the North with the Marquiſate of *Brandenberg*, and ſome part of *Miſnia*; and on the South with *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*. It comprehends in it beſides *Bohemia* it ſelf, the Marquiſate of *Moravia*, with the Dukedoms of *Sileſia* and *Luſatia*.

1 *BOHEMIA*, encompaſſed about with woodie Mountains, part of the *Hercynian*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Moravia*, on the Weſt with the *Vpper Palatinate*, and *Voiteland*; on the North with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, and ſome part of *Sileſia*; on the South with parts of *Bavaria* and *Auſtria*. It took this name from the *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof, of whom more anon: and containing in compaſſe about 550 *Engliſh* miles.

The ſoil is indifferently fruitfull, and enriched with mines of all ſorts, except of *gold*. *Tinne* they have here in good plenty, the mines whereof were firſt found out by a *Corniſh* man, baniſhed out of *England*, *anno* 1240. which diſcovery of *Tinne* in theſe parts, was, as ſaith my Author, *in magnam jacturam Richardi Comitis Cornubiæ*, (he meaneth that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*:) and no marvail, for in thoſe times there was no *Tinne* in all *Europe*, but in *England*. Wood they have here good ſtore; and in ſome of their Forreſts a Beaſt called *Lonie*, which hath hanging under its neck a bladder full of ſcalding water; with which, when ſhe is hunted, ſhe ſo tortureth the Dogs, that ſhe eaſily eſcapeth them. Of corn they have ſufficient for their own uſe, and ſometimes alſo an increaſe above their ſpending, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours of the *Upper Palatinate*:

but

but they want wine, the Air here being too ſharp and piercing to produce a good *Vintage*. And it yeelds alſo ſtore of *Saffron* no where to be bettered; with plenty of *medicinable* drugs. *Bohemia*

The principall Rivers hereof, are 1 the *Elb*, or *Albis*, having here its ſpring; of whoſe courſe we have ſpoken elſewhere, 2 *Egra*, 3 the *Muldaw* or *Muldavius*, and 4 the *Warts*; all three exonerating themſelves into the *Elb*, which runneth through the midſt of the Country.

The Kingdome is not (as others) divided into Counties and Provinces; but into the Territories and poſſeſſions of ſeverall Lords; who have great authority and command over their Vaſſalls. The figure of the whole in a manner, *Circular*, the *Diameter* whereof reacheth every way ſome 200 miles: containing in that compaſſe 700 Cities, walled Townes and Caſtles; and (as ſome ſay) 30000 Villages. Inhabited by a people given to drink and gluttony; and yet valiant, and with ſenſe of honour: this laſt belonging to the Nobility and Gentry; the former to the common people; but more moderately then moſt others of the *German* Nations. All of them, Princes or Plebeians, rich, poor, noble and baſe, uſe the *Sclavonian* language, as their mother tongue.

The chief *Bohemian* Captain that ever I read of, was *Ziſca*; who in eleven battels fought in the defence of the *Huſſites*, againſt the Pope and his confederates; prevailed and went away victorious: inſomuch, that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flea him, and make a drumme of his skin; perſwading himſelf, if they ſo did, they could never be overcome. A fancie like to that of *Scipio African*, and *Vortimer*, King of *Britain*, ſpoken of before. Scholars of moſt note, *John* of *Hus*, and *Hierome* of *Prague*, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt here preached by one *Borſinous*, anno 900, or thereabouts: *Borzivoius*, the 8 Duke from *Crocus* was the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince; and next to him *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond. This laſt moſt cruelly murdered by *Boleſlaus*, his brother, at the inſtigation of *Drahomira*, an obſtinate Heathen, mother to them both: who having cauſed the Miniſters of the Lord to be butchered, and their bodies to lie unburied for two years together, was ſwallowed, coach and all, in that very place where their bodies lay. Confirmed by this prodigy, they continued conſtant in the Faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of ſome notable vanity. For one *Picardus* coming out of the *Low-countries*, drew a great ſort of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the ſame ſtate of perfection, that *Adam* was in before his fall; from whence they were called *Picards*, and *Adamites*. They had no reſpect unto marriage; yet could they not accompany any woman, untill the man coming to *Adam*, ſaid unto him; *Father* Adam, *I am inflamed towards this woman*: and *Adam* made anſwer, *Increaſe and multiply*. They lived in an Iſland which they called *Paradiſe*, and went ſtark naked; but they continued not long: for *Ziſca* hearing of them, entred their *fooles Paradiſe*, and put them all to the ſword, *anno* 1416. But to make amends for this folly, they were exceeding zealous of the *Reformation*. For much about the ſame time the works of *Wickliffe* were brought into *Bohemia*, by a certain ſcholar who had been Student in the Univerſity of *Oxford*; which hapning into the hands of *John Huſſe*, and *Hierome* of *Prague*, two men whereof the Country may worthily boaſt, wrought in their hearts a deſire to reforme the Church: A buſineſſe which they proſecuted ſo earneſtly, that being ſummoned to the Councell of *Conſtance*, they were there condemned for *Hereticks*, and burned, *anno* 1414. yet had their doctrine ſuch deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be deſtroyed by the Tyrannies of war or perſecutions (though both were uſed) to this very day, (multitudes of the Profeſſours of it living in this Kingdome under the names of *Caliſtini*, and *Sub utraque*, as before is ſaid) though perfected by the writings of *Luther*, *Melanchthon*, *Calvin*, and ſuch other of the *Proteſtant* Doctors as travelled in the work of *Reformation*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof, of whom there is any good record, were the *Benni*, whom *Pomponius Mela* placeth in this tract, with the addition of *Gens Magna*: By *Tacitus* they are called *Boiemi*, who makes them the deſcendents of thoſe *Boii* (a *Gallick* nation) who, to avoid the ſervitude which they feared from *Rome*, put themſelves into theſe *Hercynian* deſerts; which from them was called *Boiohemum*, and by which name it occurs in *Velleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* firſt, and the *Sclaves* and *Croatians* afterwards became maſters of it; theſe laſt continuing their poſſeſſion to this very day: yet it retaineth ſtill the name of *Bohemia*, amongſt the *Latines*; as that of *Bohemerland* amongſt the *Dutch*.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Budweis*, (conceived to be the *Marobodurum* of *Ptolemy*) a town towards *Auſtria*. 2 *Auguſt*, neer the head of the *Elb*. 3 *Tabor*, a ſtrong Town built by *Ziſca*, to be a retreat for the *Huſſites*. 4 *Jaromir*; and 5 *Molmuck*, both upon the *Elb*. 6. *Littomiſſell*, an Epiſcopall See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7 *Pilſen*, the laſt town of this Kingdome which yeilded to the prevailing *Imperialiſts*, in the late long war about that Crown: and then alſo betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a ſome of money, by ſome of the Souldiers of Count *Mansfield*, who was then abſent, and had ſo long defended it againſt the Enemy. 8 *Elbogen*, much eſteemed for the hot *medicinable* Bathes, ſituate on the River *Egra*. 9 *Egra*, ſo called of the ſame River, on which (neer to the borders of the *Upper Palatinate*) it is ſtrongly ſituate: a large fair City, containing three miles in compaſſe; *Imperiall* once, but ſold by the Emperour *Ludovicus Bavarus* to *John*, King of *Bohemia* for 400000 marks of Silver: in compaſſe leſſe, for ſweetneſſe of the place, elegancy of the buildings, pleaſantneſſe of ſite, and richneſſe of ſoil, ſuperiour far to *Prague* it ſelf. 10 *Prague*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdome, ſituate in the middeſt thereof, on the River *Muldaw*: conſiſting of four ſeverall Townes, each of which hath its ſeverall Cuſtomes, Lawes, and Magiſtrates. The principall is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly buildings; a ſpacious Market-place, and a ſtate-

Bohemia.

ly Counſell-houſe: the ſecond called the *New Town*, ſeparated from the *Old*, by a Ditch of great depth, and wideneſſe. The third, called the *Little Town*, is divided from the *Old*, by the River *Muldaw*, joyned to it by a beautifull Bridge conſiſting of 24 Arches: and in this part thereof is the hill *Rachine*; on the ſides of which are many fair and ſtately houſes belonging to the Nobility, over-looked by the ſtrong Caſtle of S. *Wenceſlaus* (ſituate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian* Kings, and the later Emperours have kept their Reſidence. The fourth town is that of the *Jewes*, who have here five *Synagogues*, and live according to their own Law. The whole City rather large then fair, the ſtreets being in winter very dirty, of ill ſmell in the ſummer; the buildings for the moſt part of clay and timber, clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though incompaſſed with walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open town (ſo poor and weak are the defences) inſomuch that whoſoever is maſter of the Field, will be maſter of the City alſo. And yet beſides the honour of being the *Royall* Seat; it hath alſo of long time been an Archbiſhops See, and by *Charles* the fourth Emperour, and King of *Bohemia* made an Univerſity. Neer unto this town was fought that memorable battell, between the Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count *Bucquoy*, Lieutenant for the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond, with 50000 men on the one ſide; and *Frederick* newly elected King of *Bohemia*, with the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Thurne*, and 30000 men on the other ſide. It was fought on the eight of *November*, *ſtylo novo*, wherein (ſuch was the unſearchable will of God) the victory fell unto the Imperials: the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Thurne*, and *Saxon Weimar*, with divers others, being taken priſoner; the *Bohemian* Ordinance all ſurpriſed, *Prague* forced to yeeld unto the enemy, and King *Frederick* with the Queen, compelled to flie unto *Sileſia*; a moſt lamentable and unfortunate loſſe, not to this people onely, but to the whole cauſe of *Reformed Religion*: yet is it not unworthy of our obſervation that this great battell was fought upon a Sunday, the 8 of *November*, about the time of the morning Prayer: in the Goſpell appointed for which day (being the 23 after Trinity Sunday) is that famous paſſage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ ſunt CÆSARIS, i.e.* Render unto *Ceſar*, the things which are *Ceſars*; which ſeemed to judge the quarrell on the Emperours ſide.

But whether of the two Pretendents had the juſter Cauſe, may beſt be ſeen by convaſſing the Records of that State and Nation (for the ſucceſſe of *War* is no ſtanding Rule for meaſuring the equity, and juſtice of the cauſes of it: by which it will be clearly ſeen, that ſince the erecting of this Kingdome by the *Sclaves* or *Croatians*, it hath been evermore diſpoſed at the will of the Emperour, or by *election* of the States and People. But I intend not at the preſent to diſpute that point, but only to lay down the ſtory of the Kings and People, as in other places; ſince the firſt coming of the *Sclavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Juſtinian*; at what time they inhabited on the banks of the *Iſter*, but on the further ſide thereof, oppoſite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, imperiall Provinces. Grown famous by their good ſucceſſes againſt that Empire, their name was taken up by the reſt of the *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; who either wanting room, or not liking of their colder Countries, paſſed on more Weſtwards: and by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Germany*, which formerly had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Burgundians*, and *Boiarians*; but were then either quite forſaken, or but ill inhabited by the drawing down of thoſe people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they beeter liked. Divided at, or after their coming thus far weſt, into four main bodies; that is to ſay, the *Winithi*, poſſeſſed of the (now) Marquiſates of *Brandenbourg*, *Miſnia*, and *Luſatia*, as alſo of the Dukedomes of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the *Lower Auſtria*, and the *Upper Hungary*; the *Poles*, poſſeſſed of *Poland*, and the Dukedome of *Sileſia*; and finally the *Bohemian Sclaves*, confined within the limits of that Kingdome onely. Under what forme of Government they lived at their firſt coming hither, is not certainly known: but being ſetled in theſe Countries of *Poland* and *Bohemia*: it was not long before they were erected into ſeverall Kingdomes, occaſioned by the coming of a new body of *Sclaves*, *Croatians*, and others of thoſe ſcattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechius*, a great Prince amongſt them, who about the yeer 640. together with his brother *Leches* was baniſhed *Croatia* for a murther. And being very acceptable to the *Sclaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own Original extraction, one of the ſame Language, Lawes or Cuſtomes that themſelves were of, they admitted him to be their *Chief*, or ſupreme Governour, by what ſoever name he was called at firſt: in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own language doe call themſelves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapſed again into a confuſed *Anarchie*, till the yeer 670. at what time not reſpecting the Progeny of *Zechius*, the founder of their Common-wealth and firſt eſtate, they faſtned upon *Crocus*, a man of good eſteem amongſt them, and elected him to be their Duke. *Crocus vir juſtus, & magnæ apud* Bohemos *opinionis Princeps electus eſt*, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Crocus* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libuſſa*, his youngeſt daughter; and of her government ſoon wearied, they made choice of *Primiſlaus* for their Prince, and made him husband to *Libuſſa*. A man taken from the *Plough* (as their ſtories tell us) to eſpouſe the Princeſſe: it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suiters, that he (whoſoever he was) before whom an horſe purpoſely let looſe, did firſt make a ſtand, ſhould be the Husband of the Lady, and have the government of the State. The Horſe firſt makes a ſtand before *Primiſlaus*, being then at *plough* (having perhaps ſome Mare in his Teeme;) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. Theſe with the other Dukes from the time of *Crocus* the firſt *Legiſlator* of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus.

The

Bohemia.

The DUKES of *BOHEMIA.*

1 *Crocus*, the Law-giver or *Lycurgus* of *Bohemia*.
2 *Libuſſa*, youngeſt daughter to *Crocus*, with *Primiſlaus* her husband (a ſecond *Quintius*) Founder of *Prague*.
3 *Neramiſlaus*, ſonne of *Primiſlaus* and *Libuſſa*.
4 *Mnatha*, one of the ſonnes of *Neramiſlaus*, Cotemporary with *Charls* the Great.
5 *Veritius*, ſonne of *Mnatha*.
6 *Wenceſlaus*.
7 *Bela*.
8 *Naſtricius* ſonne of *Bela*.
9 *Bozzivoius*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Bohemians*: Cotemporarie with the Emperour *Arnulph*.
10 *Sbitignæus*, ſonne to *Bozzivoius*.
11 *Vladiſlaus*, brother to *Sbitignæus*.
12 *Wenceſlaus* II. ſurnamed the *Saint*, ſlaine by his brother *Boleſlaus*.
13 *Boleſlaus*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
14 *Boleſlaus* II. ſonne of the former, a great advancer of Chriſtianty amongſt his people.
15 *Boleſlaus* III. one of the ſonnes of *Boleſlaus* the ſecond.
16 *Jaromir*, ſonne to *Boleſlaus* the third.
17 *Vdalricus*, brother of *Boleſlaus* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir*.
18 *Prediſlaus*, ſonne to *Vdalricus*.
19 *Sbitignæus* II. ſonne to *Prediſlaus*.
1061 20 *Vratiſlaus*, brother of *Sbitignæus*, whom for his manifold deſerts, the Emperour *Henry* the 4. created the firſt King of *Bohemia*, *anno* 1608. whoſe Succeſſors take thus out of *Bertholdus* and *Dubravius*.

The KINGS and DUKES of *BOHEMIA.*

A. Ch.

1086 1 *Vratiſlaus*, the brother of *Spitigneus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the 4. at *Metz* created King.
2 *Conrade*, brother to *Vratislaus*, notwithſtanding that his brother had 3 ſons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia*.
3 *Brecislaus*, ſon to *Vratislaus*, the two ſons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* choſen Duke.
1100 4 *Boriworius* the 4. ſon of *Brecislaus*, is choſen by the *Bohemians*, his eldeſt brothers then all living.
1109 5 *Sutopulcus*, Couſin german to *Boriworius*, by the conſent and favour of the people, depoſed *Boriworius*, and cauſed himſelf to be elected in his place.
6 *Vladislaus* II. brother to *Boriworius*, preferred by the people to the throne, before *Otho* the brother, and *Henry* the ſon of *Sutopulcus*, the laſt Prince.
7 *Sobeslaus*, brother to *Vladislaus*, promoted to the State before the ſonne of *Vladislaus*.
1159 8 *Vladislaus* III. ſon to *Vladislaus* the 2. (the four ſons of *Sobeslaus* omitted) is choſen and crowned the ſecond King of *Bohemia* by *Frederick* the Emperour, but depoſed by the States, becauſe he was not by them formerly elected, according to their *priviledges* and cuſtoms.
9 *Vldericus* the third ſon of *Sobeslaus*, his elder brethren yet living, was by the people elected in the room of *Vladislaus* and his ſon *Frederick*: whom the Emperour *Frederick* had by force eſtabliſhed in the throne.
10 *Sobeslaus* II. ſecond ſon to *Sobeslaus*, was by *Frederick* above named expelled; and he alſo by the *Bohemians*.
11 *Conrade*, Grandchild to *Otho* the brother of *Sutopulcus*, elected by the *Bohemians* in place of *Frederick*: between which two Princes there was continuall war.
12 *Wenceslaus*, Uncle unto *Conrade*, and ſon of *Otho* aforeſaid, was preferred before many nearer the ſucceſſion. Him *Primislaus* expelled; but fearing his return, quitted *Prague*.
13 *Henry* Biſhop of *Prague*, a ſtranger to the bloud, was by a generall conſent elected Duke.
14 *Vladislaus* IV. brother to *Primislaus* the ſon of *Wenceslaus*, being put by, ſucceeded *Henry*, and ſoon after reſigned.

1199 15

Bohemia.

1199 15 *Primiſlaus*, elected by the *Bohemians*, and by the Emperour *Philip*, crowned the 3. King of *Bohemia* at *Mentz*, was brother to *Uladiſlaus* the 4.

1248 16 *Ottocarus*, notwithſtanding that *Wenceſlaus* his elder brother had been crowned in his Fathers life time, was *acknowledged* King. He was ſlain in battle by *Rodolphus* the Emperour.

1278 17 *Wenceſlaus* II. ſon to *Ottocarus*.

1284 18 *Wenceſlaus* III. ſonne to *Wenceſlaus* the laſt of the *Bohemian* Princes of the maſculine race.

1304 19 *Rodolphus*, ſon to the Emperour *Albertus*, is by the potencie of his Father, and the election of the *States* ſeated on the Throne, being otherwiſe a ſtranger to the bloud-royall of *Bohemia*.

1305 20 *Henry* Duke of *Carinthia*, husband to *Anne* the ſecond daughter of *Wenceſlaus* the 2. is choſen by the *Bohemians*: but being weary of his Government, they elect *John* Earl of *Luxenbourg*. Finally, *Henry* was murdered by one of his Nephews.

1311 21 *John* Earl of *Luxenbourg*, ſonne to *Henry* the 7. Emperour and husband to *Elizabeth* youngeſt daughter to *Wenceſlaus* the 2. is elected, the Lady *Anne* yet living.

1346 22 *Charls* ſonne to *John*, and Emperour of that name the 4. the Author of the Golden Bull.

1362 23 *Wenceſlaus* IV. Emperour, alſo in whoſe time the troubles of the *Huſſites*, and the valour of *Ziſca* was famous.

1418 24 *Sigiſmund*, brother to *Wenceſlaus*, maketh himſelf King by force, and at his death commendeth *Albertus* Duke of *Auſtria*, the huband of his daughter *Elizabeth*, unto the *States* of the Kingdom.

1437 25 *Albertus* Duke of *Auſtria* elected upon the commendation of *Sigiſmund* by the *Bohemian* Lords.

1440 26 *Ladiſlaus*, ſon to *Albert*, who being the brother of two ſiſters, commended yet one *George Pogibrachius* unto the *States* as fitteſt to ſucceed him.

1458 27 *George Pogibrachius*, neither by affinity or conſanguinity of the bloud, ſucceeded. And he though he had three ſons, yet for the benefit of his Country, he adviſed the Nobles after his death to elect their King from *Poland*.

1471 28 *Ladiſlaus* II. ſon to *Caſimire* King of *Polond*, and to *Elizabeth*, the younger daughter of *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, the iſſue of *Anne* the elder ſiſter ſtill living; elected King of *Bohemia*.

1516 29 *Ludovicus* ſon to *Ladiſlaus*, elected and crowned by the means of his Father, then living, King of *Hungary* alſo.

1526 30 *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, brother to *Charls* the 5. and husband to *Anne* ſiſter to *Ludovicus*, by his *letters reverſall*, acknowledged that he was choſen King of *Bohemia* not of any right, but of meer free-will, according to the liberties of that Kingdome.

1565 31 *Maximilian* eldeſt ſon of *Ferdinand*, was in his Fathers life time, and at his ſuit, elected King, *anno* 1540. into which he actually ſucceeded on his Fathers death.

1575 32 *Rodolphus* Emperour of *Germanie*, and eldeſt ſon to *Maximilian*, elected King.

1608 33 *Matthias* brother to *Rodolphus*, was at the joint ſuit of them both, nominated and appointed King of *Bohemia* by the generall conſent of the *States*, during his brothers life time, *anno viz.* 1608. which denomination they both proteſt in their *letters reverſall*, ſhould not be to the prejudice of the liberties and ancient cuſtoms of that kingdom.

1618 34 *Ferdinand* II. Archduke of *Auſtria*, of the houſe of *Grats*, was by *Matthias* adopted for his ſon, and declared Succeſſour to the Crown of *Bohemia*, but never formally and legally elected: for which cauſe amongſt others, he was by the *States* rejected in like caſe as *Uladiſlaus* the 3. had formerly been.

1619 35 *Frederick* Electour *Palatine*, the ſtrongeſt *German* Prince of the *Calviniſts*, and moſt potent by his great alliances; was elected King of *Bohemia*, and crowned at *Prague*, together with his wife, on the 5 day of *November*. This Prince derived his deſcent from the Lady *Sophia*, ſiſter to *Ladiſlaus* the 2. King of *Poland* and *Bohemia*; and married *Elizabeth*, daughter to *James* King of Great *Britain*, and *Anne* of *Denmark*, which *Anne* deſcended from the Lady *Anne* daughter of *Albertus* of *Auſtria*, and elder ſiſter to *Elizabeth*, mother to *Ladiſlaus* the 2. above named; from whom the claim of *Auſtria* is derived.

1621 35 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2. elected King of *Bohemia* during the life both of his Father and of *Frederick*, the Prince *Electour* alſo; after whoſe death he ſucceeded in this kingdome both in right and fact; King of *Hungarie* alſo, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Emperour of *Germanie*, now living, *anno* 1648. more moderate in his Counſels then his Father *Ferdinand*, and more inclinable to peace; (though honoured with a more ſignall victorie againſt the *Swedes* in the battell of *Norlingen*, then his Father

Father was in all his life;) which the Concluſions made at *Munſter* are ſufficient proof of. *Moravia.*

Of the *Revenues*, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdom, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we have took a view of the reſt of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2 *MORAVIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Hungarie*, on the Weſt with *Bohemia*, on the North with *Sileſia*, and on the South with the *lower Auſtria*, and the river *Teia*: fenced on the Weſt by the Woods and Mountains of *Bohemia*, parts of the *Hircynian* Forreſt; on the North by ſome ſpurs or branches of it called *Aſciburgius* by *Ptolemie*, on the two other ſides open like an half moon, or ſemi-circle. The moſt fruitfull place of corn in all *Germanie*, and hath no ſmall ſtore of *Frankincenſe*, which contrarie to the nature of it, groweth not on a tree, but out of the earth: and that too (which addes much to the miracle, if *Dubravius* do report it rightly) in the ſhape and figure of thoſe parts which men and women do moſt endevour to conceal.

The former inhabitants of this Province were the *Marcomanni*, and part of the *Quadi*, againſt whom, when *M. Antonius* the Emperour made war, he had unawares run himſelf into ſuch a ſtraight that his army was environed with Mountains one way, and enemies the other. To this (as calamities ſeldom go alone) was added the extraordinary heat and drought then being. To the Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the *Captain* of his *Guard*, telling him that he had in his army a *legion* of *Chriſtians* (*Melitens* he calleth them) which by prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperour ſendeth for them, deſiring them to make *ſupplication* for the Army; which they did, and God almighty that never turneth a deaf ear to the prayers of his ſervants, when they are either for his glory, the Churches, or their own good, ſcattered and vanquiſhed the *Quadi* with *thunderſhot* and *artillery* from heaven, and refreſhed the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleaſing ſhowre. This miracle purchaſed to that *legion* the ſurname of κεραυνοβόλος, *i. e.* the *thunderer*; and induced the Emperour to honour men of that holy profeſſion, and to make an end of the fourth perſecution, A. Ch. 174. Thus *Xiphilinus* hath it in his *Dion*; which coming from the pen of an Heathen, as his Author was, is of more credit in a matter of ſuch concernment unto *Chriſtianity* then if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other *Eccleſiaſticall* Writer.

Places of moſt note herein, are 1 *Olmuntz*, on the River *Marck* (or *Mora*) the chief town of the Countrie, and a ſmall Univerſitie, near which out of the hill *Odenberg* bordering on *Sileſia*, ſpringeth the great river of *Odera*, whoſe courſe we have before deſcribed. 2 *Brinn*, on the river *Schwats*, the ſeat of the ancient Marqueſſes. 3 *Radiſch*, and 4 *Cremſer*, both upon the *Marck* or *Mora*. 5 *Zwaim* on the *Teia*; 6 *Niclasberg* (*Mons Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the *Lower Auſtria*. 7 *Iglaw*, 8 *Newberg*, 9 *Weiskorchem*, 10 *Boſerlitz*, of which little memorable. 11 *Gradiſco*, near to which (and to this place onely) the *Frankincenſe* is found to grow in the ſhape and forme before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is ſaid) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*; after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who from their habitation on the river *Mora*, called themſelves *Moraviani*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia* (the *Dutch* call it *Merheren.*) Extended at that time over all the *Lower Auſtria*, to the banks of the *Danow* on the South, and as far as to the river *Tibiſcus i* (overſpreading a great part of the *Vpper Hungarie*) towards the Eaſt. Governed at the firſt by their own Kings, the firſt, whoſe name occurs, being *Raſtai*, in the time of the Emperour *Lewis* the *Godly*, by whom taken Priſoner, and his Realm made *Tributarie* to the Empire. After him ſucceeded *Harmodurus*, and then *Suantopulcus*, in whoſe time the *Moravians* and other Nations of the *Sclaves*, received the Goſpel, by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius* two *Grecian* Doctours: officiating all divine ſervices in the *Sclavonian* or vulgar Language. For which being after called in queſtion by one of the Popes, they returned no other anſwer then this (and enough in that) *Omnis Spiritus laudet Dominum.* It is written that *every thing which hath breath ſhould praiſe the Lord.* *Suantobegius* ſon to *Suantopuleus*, ſucceeded next, depoſed or rather beaten out of his Countrie by the Emperour *Arnulph*, for denying the accuſtomed *tribute*. A Prince of great ſpirit, and of as great command, having at one time under him, not *Moravia* only, according to the largeſt limits, but *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* alſo. *Arnulph* not able otherwiſe to effect his purpoſe, called in the *Hungarians* (though at that time *Pagans*) by whoſe help the *Moravian* was ſubdued, and his Kingdom ſhattered into pieces; ſeiſed on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations: and finally reduced to the preſent limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquiſate, (but by whom we finde not) one of the Marqueſſes hereof being *Jodocus Barbatus*, elected Emperour *anno* 1410. After whoſe death *Sigiſmund* his next heir, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his ſon-in-law *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, *anno* 1417. who in the end ſucceeded him in all his Eſtates, ſince which time it hath alwayes gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it, were *Azure*, an Eagle chequered *Or* and *Gules*, membred and langued of the ſame.

2 *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESI*, as the *Dutch* call it, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Poland*, on the Weſt with *Luſatia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Moravia*. Wholly encompaſſed with Mountaines, except towards the North; which lets in a ſharp aire upon them

Luſatia.

them: the midland parts being full of Woods, but withall of Mineralls.

Chief Cities are *Jagendorſe*, or *Jegerndorſe*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius* of the family of *Brandenbourg*, commonly called the Marqueſſe of *Jagendorſe*. The lands and Eſtates in his poſſeſſion, firſt given by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, to *George* ſurnamed *Pius*, one of the ſonnes of *Frederick* of *Brandenbourg*, the firſt Marqueſſe of *Auſpach* of this houſe, for the many good ſervices hee had done him. But his poſterity being extinct, they fell to the ſaid *John Georgius*, brother to *Sigiſmund* the Electour: proſcribed by *Ferdinand* the ſecond, for adhering to the partie of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine: A Prince of great note and activeneſſe, in the beginning of the late *German* & *Bohemian* wars. 2 *Munſterberg*, which gives the title of Duke to the poſterity of *George Pogebraccio*, once King of *Bohemia* advanced by him unto this honor and a fair Eſtate. 3 *Glatz* or *Gletz*, the laſt Town of *Bohemia*, which held out for *Frederick* the Electour againſt that Emperour. 4 *Glogaw*, a ſtrong Town on the River *Odera*. 5 *Nieſs*, on a River ſo named, an Epiſcopall See. 6 *Breſlaw*, in *Latine Vratiſlavia*, ſo called from *Vratiſlaus*, the founder of it, once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whoſe procurement it was made an Epiſcopall See, *anno* 970, or thereabouts. It is ſituate on the River *Odera*, all the water wherein could not ſave it from being burnt down to the ground, *anno* 1341. but it was preſently reedified with fair Free ſtrone, and is now one of the prettieſt Cities (for the bigneſſe of it) in all *Germany*: fair, populous, and well contrived with open and even ſtreets; the chief of the Countrey. 7 *Oppolen*, on the *Odera* alſo, well fortified both by Art and nature, barricadoed by the River on the Weſt, and on the Eaſt with good out-workes, ſtrong walls, and a fair Caſtle. 8 *Straten*, 9 *Reichenbach*, both made Townes of war, ſince the beginning of the *Bohemian* troubles.

There are alſo within this Province the two *Seigneuries* of *Prignitz*, and *Croſſen*, ſo called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the *Electour* of *Brandenbourg*: the two Dukedomes of *Oſwitz* and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*: as alſo the Dukedome of *Lignitz*, and *Sueinits*, all of them bearing the names of their principall Towns; of which two laſt, *Sueinits* is in the immediate poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*, and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an *Homager* and *Tributary* of that King.

The firſt two Inhabitants hereof were the *Marſigni*, *Burii*, *Gothini*, and ſome part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eaſtern parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, laid unto the Dukedome or Kingdome of *Poland*; continuing part thereof till the time of *Vladiſlaus* the ſecond, who being driven out of his Kingdome by his brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, eſtated in this Countrey, to be held under the Soveraignty of the Kings of *Poland*. Divided betwixt his three ſons, and afterwards ſubdivided amongſt their poſterities according to the ill cuſtome of *Germany*, it became broke at laſt into fourteen Dukedomes, of 1 *Breſlaw*, 2 *Oppolen*, 3 *Ratibor*, 4 *Ceſſin*, 5 *Bethom*, 6 *Glogaw*, 7 *Segan*, 8 *Olents*, 9 *Steinaw*, 10 *Falkenbourg*, 11 *Sweinits*, 12 *Lignitz*, 13 *Oſwits*, and 14 *Zator*. Of all which onely the two laſt doe remain to *Poland*; the five firſt being made ſubject to the Kings of *Bohemia*, by *Wenceslaus* the ſecond, the five next by King *John* of *Luxenbourg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the poſſeſſion of a *Proprietary* Duke (as before was ſaid) and *Sweinits* given to *Charles* the fourth Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, by the will and Teſtament of *Boleſlaus* the laſt Duke: all *Schleſi* by this means, (except the two Dukedomes of *Oſwitz* and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of *Bohemia*: of which it is rather an incorporate then a ſubject Province.

4. *LUSATIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Lauſnitz* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Sileſia*, on the Weſt with *Miſnia*, on the North with *Brandenbourg*, and on the South with *Bohemia*. The countrey rough and full of Woods, yet plentifull enough of corn, and of ſuch fruits as naturally ariſe out of the earth: So populous and thick ſet with people, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arme 20000 Foot, as good as any in *Germany*. Moſt commonly it is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; the firſt confining on *Bohemia*, the laſt on *Brandenburg*.

Places of moſt note in the higher *Lauſnitz*, are 1 *Bautſen*, (*Badiſſinum* the *Latines* call it) the firſt Town attempted and taken in by the Duke of *Saxony*, when he took upon him the execution of the Emperors *Bann*, againſt *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, then newly choſen King of *Bohemia*: The poor Prince in the mean time in an ill condition, the *Saxon* being the head of the *Lutheran*; and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Popiſh* partie, arming both againſt him: So jealous are both ſides of the active and reſtleſſe *Calvinian* ſpirit; as to leave no means unaſſaied for the ſuppreſſing of it. Seated it is upon the *Spre*, and for the moſt part is the ſeat of the *Governour* for the King of *Bohemia*. 2 *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Niſſe*, which gave the title of Duke to *John* brother of *Sigiſmund* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, and Father of *Elizabeth* the laſt Dutcheſſe of *Luxembourg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundie*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and ſtrongly fortified: founded about the yeare 1231. and not long after ſo conſumed by a mercileſſe fire, *anno* 1301. *ut ne unica domus remanſerit*, as my Authour hath it, that there was not one houſe left of the old foundation. But it was preſently rebuilt in a more beautifull form, and more ſtrong materialls, then before it was: both publick and private buildings very neat and elegant. 3 *Zittaw*, on the ſame River bordering on *Bohemia*. 4 *Lauben*, 5 *Lubben*, 6 *Camitz*, of which little memorable, but that together with the former they make up thoſe ſix townes which are *confederate* together in a ſtricter league, for their mutuall defence and preſervation, but under the protection, and with the approbation of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *LOWER Luſatia* there is 7 *Sprenberg*, ſo named from its ſituation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Countrie, and in antient times was called *Sueve*, ſuppoſed by ſome (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from

from them; that potent Nation, inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elb.* 6 *Trabelt* upon the *Niſſe*. *Gottbuſe* upon the *Spre*, or *Suevus*, which together with ſome part of the *Lower Luſatia* belongs unto the Marqueſſes of *Brandenbourg*. *Brandenbourg.*

The firſt Inhabitants hereof are by ſome ſuppoſed (and but ſuppoſed) to be the *Semnones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of theſe parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, made ſubject to the *Winithi*, or *Venedi*, the greateſt and moſt ſpreading Nation of all theſe People. When, and by whom firſt made a *Marquiſate*, I am not able to ſay for certain; but ſure I am it hath beene very much given to the change of Maſters. It had firſt a Marqueſſe of its own. *Conrade* the Marqueſſe hereof, who dyed in the yeare 1156. being by the Emperour *Henry* the fift made Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*, added it unto that Eſtate: remaining for ſome time united to it. After, being ſeized on by the *Poles*, it was ſold by *Frederick* the ſecond, Marqueſſe and *Electour* of *Brandenbourg*: who keeping *Cotthouſe* and ſome other Townes bordering next upon him, in his own poſſeſſion, ſurrendered the reſt on compoſition to *George* King of *Bohemia*: claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the fourth to *Vratiſlaus* the firſt *Bohemian* King, *anno* 1087. A grant on which no poſſeſſion followed, unleſſe it were the *Homage* and acknowledgement of the Princes of it, holding it afterwards of that *Crown*, as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought theſe four Provinces into the power and Poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*: remaining ſtill diſtinct in their Laws and Governments (as ſeverall limbs of the great body of the *Sclaves*, made up into one Eſtate) though joined together in the perſon of one ſupreme Governour: who is ſeverally admitted and acknowledged by each Province diſtinctly, for it ſelfe; and not by any one of them in the name of the reſt. Out of all which ſo laid together, there may be raiſed the ſumme of three millions of Crowns yearly, for the Kings *Revenues*, towards the detrayment of all charges.

The Armes of this Kingdom are *Mars*, a Lyon with a forked tail, *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which *Arms* were firſt given by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* to *Vladiſlaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good ſervice hee had done him at the ſiege of *Millan*. And though *Vladiſlaus* was depoſed by the States of that Kingdome, becauſe never formally and legally *elected* by them: yet his ſucceſſours keep thoſe Armes to this very day.

14. *BRANDENBOVR.*

The *Marquiſate* of *BRANDENBOURG*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Kingdome of *Poland*; on the Weſt with *Mecklenbourg* and the Dukedome of *Luneburg*; on the North with *Pomerania*, and on the South with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, and *Sileſia*; ſo called from *Brandenbourg* the chief Town of it, and becauſe once the *Marches* of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*, divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *Middle Marches*, according as they were extended further towards *Poland* by little and little, as the Emperours were able to get ground of thoſe potent people.

The Countrey containeth in length from Eaſt to Weſt 60 *Dutch* or 240 *Italian* miles, and is of correſpondent breadth; the whole compaſſe making up 540 miles of the laſt accompt. Within which tract are comprehended 55 Cities or walled Townes, 80 Townes of trade, *Mark-ſtecken*, or Market Townes, as they commonly call them; 38 Caſtles or Manſion-houſes of Noblemen, 17 Monaſteries, and 10 Parkes well ſtored with beaſts of game: the Countrey otherwiſe (conſidering the extent thereof) but thinly inhabited, nor well provided of neceſſaries, excepting corn, of which theſe North-Eaſt Countreys afford very great plenty.

1 *ALTEMARK*, or the *OLD MARCK*, ſo called becauſe the antient *Marches* of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*, lyeth betwixt *Lawenbourg* and the *Elb*, with which it is bounded on the Eaſt. Chief Townes thereof, 1 *Tangermond*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tanegra*, or *Augra*, honoured ſometimes with the *Reſidence* of *Charles* the fourth. 2 *Stendall*, the chief of theſe *Old Marches*. 3 *Soltwedel*, divided into two Townes, the old and the new. 4 *Gardeleben*, fortified with the ſtrong Caſtle of *Elſbimpe*. 5 *Oſterberg*. 6 *Senhunten*, ſaid by ſome but falſely to be ſo called from the *Senones*, whom they would make the old Inhabitants of this Country (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation.) 7 *Werb*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE-MARCHES* or *VPPER MARCH*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Odera*; the Towns of moſt note are 1 *Butzaw*, a *Commendatarie* of the *Templars* in former times. 2 *Spandaw* upon the *Spre*, a well fortified peece. 3 *Oderburg*, called ſo from that River, on which it is ſituate: remarkable for a ſtrong Caſtle built by *Marqueſſe Albert* the ſecond, at which all paſſengers by water, are to pay their Toll. 4 *Brandenbourg* on the River *Havel*, a Biſhops See, the Seat of the Lords Marchers in former times, taking name from hence. By ſome ſaid to be built by *Brennus* Captain of the *Gaules*; more truely by one *Brando* a Prince of the *Frantonians*, *anno Ch.* 140. 5 *Frankefort* (for diſtinction ſake named) *ad Oderam*, on which River ſituate; the ſoil about it being ſo plentifully ſtored with Corn and Wines, that it is not eaſie to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* bee moſt enamoured of it. It was made an *Univerſitie* by Marqueſſe *Joachim*, *anno* 1506. and is alſo a flouriſhing and famous *Emporie*, though not comparable to that of the other *Frankefort* ſeated on the *Meine*. 6 *Berlin*, the ordinary Reſidence of the Marqueſſe ſituate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevus*) which riſing in *Luſatia* falleth into the *Albis*. 7 *Havelbourg* on the River *Havel*, a Biſhops See, who acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Magdebourg* for his Metropolitan.

3. In

Brandenbourg.

3. In the *NEWMARCK*, extending from *Odera* to the borders of *Poland*; and called so, because last conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire, there is *Custrine*, a very strong and defensible town, seated on the two Rivers *Warta* and *Odera*; fortified with great charge by *John*, sonne of Marquesse *Joachim*, and by him intended for his seat. 2 *Sunnerberg*; and 3 *Landsberg*, both upon the *Wart*. 4 *Soldin*, in former times the chief of this *Marck*. 5 *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6 *Falkenberg*, a strong town, and fortified with as strong a Castle towards *Pomerania*.

The first inhabitants of this Country, were the *Varini* and *Naithones*, part of the great nation of the *Suevians*: and after them, the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greatest nation of the *Sclaves*, who possessed themselves of it. But *Brandenbourg* being wonne from them by the Emperour *Henry* the first, *anno* 920. (at what time the Gospell was first preached amongst them) the Country hereabouts was given by him to *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim*, (eldest sonne of *Theodorick* the second Earl of *Oldenburg*) a valiant Gentleman, with the title of *Marquesse*, or *Lord Marcher*, anno 927. conditioned that he should defend those *Marches* (the *old Marck*, as they now call it) against the *Sclaves*. These Marquesses at the first *Officiary*, and at the appointment of the Emperour, and to him accomptable. *Sigard* the fourth from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the first *Electour* of these *Marquesses*; and *Eudo* the second of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the last that held this honour at the Emperours pleasure: that dignity after his decease being made *Hereditary* in the person of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, surnamed *Ursus*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, which *Albert* having very much enlarged his border by the conquest and extermination of the *Sclaves*, caused their unpeopled Country to be planted with new *Dutch* Colonies out of *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Flanders*, and those parts of the *Netherlands*. The house of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, it was given by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, to *Lewis* his sonne; by *Otho*, the brother of that *Lewis*, sold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth, by *Sigismund*, the son of *Charles* to *Iodocus*, Marquesse of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the said *Sigismund* conferred on *Frederick Burgrave* of *Nurenberg*, in recompense of his faithfull service in the wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his posterity it remaineth, but much increased in power and patrimony, by the additions of the Dukedome of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Marquisates of *Auspach* and *Iagendorfe*; the Earldome of *Marck* in *Westphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*; the Lordships of *Prignits* and *Crossen* in *Silesia*, the towns of *Hoff*, and *Colmebach* in *Voiteland*, with the County of *Rapin*, and the town and territory of *Cothus* in the *Lower Lusatia*. Insomuch that this is now the most powerfull Family in all *Germany*. The Marquesses hereof from *Albert*, the son of *Urse*, follow in this order.

The MARQUESSES of *BRANDENBVRG*.

A. Ch.

927 1 *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim*, made the first Marquesse of this border, by the Emperour *Henry* the first.
2 *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the first.
3 *Bruno*, Earl of *Within*, created Marquesse hereof by the same Emperour.
4 *Hugh*, the son of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.
5 *Sigard*, the brother of *Hugh*, made by the same Emperour, the first Marquesse Elector.
6 *Theodorick*, the son of *Sigard*, outed of his command by *Mistivoius*, one of the Princes of the *Sclaves*, named *Obotriti*.
7 *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel* (the *Sclaves* being beaten and expulsed) created Marquesse and Elector by *Conrade* the second.
8 *Udo* II. son of *Udo* the first, proscribed by *Henry* the fourth for joyning with *Rodulph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the war against him.
9 *Primislaus*, King of the *Obotriti* (the Ancestour of the Dukes of *Mecklinbourg*) advanced unto these honours by the said *Henry* the fourth, and by him held unto his death. After which, made hereditary by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, in the person of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the son of *Vrsus*.
1152 10 *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the first *Hereditary* Marquesse; father of *Barnard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry* surnamed the *Lyon*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*.
11 *Otho*, son of *Albert*.
12 *Otho* II. son of *Otho* the first.
13 *Albert* II. brother of *Otho* the second.
14 *John*, son of *Albert* the second.
15 *John* II. son of *John* the first.
16 *Conrade*, brother of *John* the second.
17 *John* III. son of *Conrade*.
18 *Waldemar*, brother of *John* the third.
19 *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the first by his brother *Henry*.
20 *John* IV. brother of *Waldemar* the second, the last Marquesse of the house of *Anhalt*; the Marquisate escheating to the Empire for want of heires.

21 *Lewis*

21 *Lewis* of *Bavaria* created Marqueſſe and *Elector* of *Brandenburg* by his father the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the ſaid eſcheat. *Brandenbourg.*

22 *Lewis* II. ſurnamed the *Roman*, on the reſignation of his brother ſucceeds in the Marquiſate and *Electorall* dignity.

23 *Otho*, brother to *Lewis* the firſt and ſecond, who ſold the Marquiſate, and *Electorall* dignity to *Charles* the fourth.

24 *Wenceſlaus*, ſon of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.

25 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, Emperour of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxenbourg*; who ſold this Marquiſate to *Iodocus*, Marqueſſe of *Moravia*; and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the ſame on

1417 26 *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nurenberg*, ſolemnly inveſted herein at the Councell of *Conſtance*, *anno* 1414. for which inveſtiture he paid unto the Emperour the ſumme of 400000 Crownes.

1440 27 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Frederick* the firſt, to whom the Emperour *Frederick* the third gave the Dukedome of *Pomeren*.

1470 28 *Albert*, brother of *Frederick* the ſecond, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, relinquiſhed to *Bugeſlaus* the 10th. the poſſeſſion of *Pomeren*, but his ſucceſſours ever ſince have retained the Title, and kept on foot their pretentions to it. From *Frederick* his ſecond ſon, deſcended *Albert*, the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Frederick* the firſt Marqueſſe of *Auſpach*, *George* the firſt Marqueſſe of *Jagendorfe*, and *Albert* called the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, who ſo haraſſed *Franconia* in the dayes of *Charles* the fift.

1486 29 *John*, ſon of *Albert*.

1499 30 *Joachim*, ſon of *John*, who founded the Univerſity of *Frankford*, anno 1506. and authorized the *Reformation* of Religion in his time begun.

1535 31 *Joachim* II. ſon of *Joachim* the firſt.

1571 32 *John-George*, ſon of *Jocahim* the ſecond.

33 *Joachim-Frederick*, ſon of *John-George*.

34 *John Sigiſmund*, ſon of *Joachim Frederick*, who had to wife the Lady *Anne*, daughter of *Albert-Frederick*, the ſecond Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Mary Eleanor* his wife, eldeſt daughter of *William* the firſt, Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, &c.

1620 35 *George-William*, ſonne of *John Sigiſmund*, and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right, the Dukedomes of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Earldomes of *Marck*, and *Ravenſpurg*, and the ſeigneury of *Ravenſtein*; which he poſſeſſed a while, divided with his couſin *Volfgangus* Palatine of *Newberg*, ſon of *Magdalen* the younger ſiſter of *Mary Eleanor*. But falling out about their *partage*, the Palatine of *Newberg* called in the *Spaniard*; and this Marqueſſe the *Confederate States* of the *Netherlands*; who have hitherto ſhared the moſt part betwixt them. After the death of *Bugeſlaus* the laſt Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have ſucceeded alſo in that eſtate, then poſſeſſed by the *Swedes*. Of the agreement made between them, and the great accrewment thereby following to the houſe of *Brandenburg*, we ſhall ſpeak more there.

36 *Frederick-William*, ſon of *George-William*, now *Elector* of *Brandenbourg*.

The *Religion* of this Country, is for the moſt part according to the form and doctrine of *Luther*: firſt introduced and authoriſed by Marqueſſe *Joachim* the firſt. In which eſtate it continued till the breach betwixt the preſent *Elector*, and the *Palatine* of *Newberg*. At which time the *Palatine* having married a daughter of *Bavaria*, the moſt potent Prince of the *Popiſh* party, reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, the better to aſſure himſelf of the aid of *Spain*: and this Elector having married a ſiſter of *Frederick* the fift, *Elector Palatine*, the moſt potent Prince of the *Calviniants*, declared himſelf to be of that party and opinion, the better to aſſure himſelf of the aids of *Holland*, anno 1614. But when, on the perſwaſions of his wife, he ſet out an *edict* for ſuppreſſing the *Lutheran* formes, and authoriſing the *Calvinian* onely throughout his dominions, (which was the yeer 1615) the people of this *Marquiſate* roſe in Armes againſt him: the difference being thus compoſed, that the *Lutheran* formes onely ſhould be uſed in the *Churches* of *Brandenburg*, for the contentation of the people: and the Marqueſſe have the exerciſe of his new *Religion*, for himſelf, his Lady, and thoſe of their opinion, in his private Chappells.

The Territories of this Family, are the greateſt as before is ſaid, of any in *Germany*; but a great part of it is very barren, and his ſubjects in thoſe parts as poor as the Country: much of his new acceſſions yeilding little but the titles onely. So that neither in *Revenue* or *Power* he is able to keep rank with the Duke of *Saxony*: his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmoſt to 200000l. *per annum*, which is but half of the receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Armes hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membred and beaked *Or*.

Pomerania.

15 POMERANIA.

POMERANIA is bounded on the East with *Prussia*, from which parted by the River *Wesel* or *Vistula*; on the west with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Bartze*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coast hereof for the space of 200 *English* miles, and on the South with the Marquisate of *Brandenbourg*, so named from the *Pomortzi*, or *Pomerani*, a nation of the *Sclaves*, to whose share it fell; or from the situation of it on the Sea shore, as the word in the *Sclavonian* doth seeme to import.

The Country is for the most part plain, abundantly fruitfull in Corn, carried hence to *Dantzig*, and transported thence to all parts of *Christendome*, in their times of scarcity, yeilding also good store of pasturage, and great heards of Cattell; with plenty of butter, cheese, honey, and some reasonable quantities of flax. Populous, and those people of strong constitution, as living under a sharp, and piercing air. The whole divided into the Continent, and the Ilands; the Continent into the *Upper Pomeren*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Bartze*, to the River *Odera*; the *Lower* reaching from the *Odera*, to the borders of *Prussia*.

Chief places in the UPPER, are 1 *Barth*, at the mouth of the River *Bartze*, taking name from thence, a well traded town, and many times the seat of the Dukes of this hithermost *Pomeren*. 2 *Wolgast*, upon the *Baltick* sea, over against the Isle of *Vsedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomeren*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomeren-Wolgast*: the first town taken in by *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, in his famous war for relief of *Germany*, anno 1630. 3 *Straelsund*, a town of great trading, and much resort, seated upon the same sea also, opposite to the Isle of *Rugen*; a town of great name in the course of the *German* Warres. 4 *Grisphwald*, on the same sea, betwixt *Wolgast* and *Straelsund*, made an Universitty, *anno* 1456. 5 *Anclaw*, upon the River *Pone*. 6 *Tribsca*, situate on a lake out of which the said River hath its course.

Then in the LOWER *Pomeren*, there is *Camin*, an Episcopall See, situate on the *Baltick* shore, over against the Isle of *Wollin*. 8 *Colberg*, a strong town on the same shore also, at the fall of the *Persant* into the Sea. 9 *Costin*, the last Sea-town of this tract, lying towards *Prussia*. 10 *Stargard*, on the *Ina*, more within the land; as is also 11 *Griffenberg* upon the *Rega*; and 12 *Stetin*, on the *Odera*, once a poor fisher-town, now the *Metropolis* of this part of the Country, rising to this greatnesse (after the embracing of *Christianity*) by the fall of *Wineta*, formerly the chief Mart-town of all these parts. The ordinary seat of the Dukes of the *Lower Pomerania*, the Dukes of *Pomeren* of *Stetin*, as for distinction sake they are used to call them.

The *Ilands* hereunto pertaining, are those of *Rugen*, *Wallin*, *Vsidom*, touched upon before; but now more punctually to be handled. That of most note is *RUGEN*, over against *Straelsund*, from which divided onely by a narrow street. In length seven *Dutch* miles, and as much in breadth; so that the compasse of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 *German*, or an hundred *Italian* miles: and yet once bigger then it is, but in the year 1309, by the force of an outrageous tempest, a great part of it lying towards the South-east, as far as to the Ile of *Buden* (then conjunct hereto) was torne away, and sunk so deep into the bottome of the Sea, that now the greatest ships that be sail over it. The Iland plentifull of Corn, the *Granary* of *Straelsund*, as they call it commonly; and reasonably well stored with Cattell: full of Bayes, Creeks, and winding shores, with many and vast Promentories thrusting into the Sea; which gives them great increase of fishing. Antiently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third to *Bugislaus* and *Barnimus*, Dukes of *Pomeren*; continuing ever since part of that estate. The chief town of it is called *Berga*, situate in the midst of the Iland, but not containing above 400 Families; others of lesse note and estimation, being 2 *Sugart*, 3 *Vick*, 4 *Bingst*, *&c.* small towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the best they have. And yet so populous is the Iland, that they are able to arme 7000 good fighting men, if there be occasion.

The second of the three, in repute and bignesse is that of *Wollin*, situate over against *Camin*, so called from *Wollin* the chief town (*Julinum* it is called in *Latine*) made an Episcopall See by *Wartislaus*, the first *Christian* Prince of this nation, upon the sackage of this City he removed to *Camin*. A town which once so flourished in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Constantinople*; the *Russians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandals*, *&c.* having here their particular streets. But being miserably sacked by *Waldemar*, King of *Denemark*, anno 1170. most of the trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, since which time it never could come neer its former glories. The last in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, seated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgast*; so called from *Usedom*, the chief town in it, of which little observable. All three the habitation of the antient *Rugii*, who under *Odoacer*, King of the *Heruli*, subverted the Western Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themselves masters of it, till subdued by the *Gothes*. Those which remained in these Ilands became after subject to the *Sclaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the first whose name occurs in story, being *Crito*, the son of *Ratze*, a puissant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Holst*, *Ditmarsh*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built; about the year 1100, afterwards beautified and inlarged by *Adolph* the second Earl of *Holst*; by some esteemed the Founder of it. But his issue male failing in the yeer 1326, it fell by compact made between them, to the Dukes of *Pomeren*, to whom these Islands ever since have continued subject.

And

And as for *Pomeren* it ſelf the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Rugii* before mentioned, the *Reudigni*, *Longi-nani*, and *Longi-Diduni*, with parts of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians*: into whoſe void roomes the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, (the moſt potent Nation of the *Sclaves*) did in fine ſucceed; extending their Dominion to the bankes of the *Viſtula*, which to difference it from *Pomeren*, was called *Pomerella*. But that part of it being given by *Meſtovinus* the laſt Prince thereof dying without iſſue, *anno* 1295. to *Primiſlaus* Duke of *Poland*: the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania*, became confined within the bounds before laid downe. The firſt Prince of it whom we meet with on good record, was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* family, *anno* 933. whoſe Grandſon *Suantiborus*, commanded over all this tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his ſonnes, *Bugiſlaus* who had *Pomerella*, retained the language and old cuſtoms of the *Sclavonians*, *Wartiſlaus*, who poſſeſſed the reſidue, conformed himſelf to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*; the Countrey by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*: added unto the Empire and accompt thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, by whom *Bugiſlaus* and *Caſimir*, ſonnes of *Wartiſlaus* were made *Princes* of the *Empire*, and Dukes of *Pomeren*. The Eſtate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugiſlaus* and *Otho*, ſonnes of *Barnimus* the firſt, and the houſe of *Otho* failing in the perſon of *Otho* the third; that part hereof was given by the Emperour *Frederick* the third, to *Frederick* the ſecond, Marqueſſe and *Electour* of *Brandenburg*: the cauſe of much contention amongſt theſe Marqueſſes and the other houſe of the Dukes of *Pomeren*; but thus agreed upon at laſt, that both Princes ſhould continue the *Armes* and title, the poſſeſſion of it to be yeelded to the Duke of *Pomeren*, on the failing of whoſe iſſue male, it ſhould deſcend upon the heirs of the houſe of *Brandenburg*. The ſucceſſion of theſe Princes followeth in this order. *Pomerania.*

The DVKES of *POMERANIA.*

1 *Wartiſlaus* the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of the *Pomeranians*, baptized by *Otho* Biſhop of *Bamberg*, *anno* 1124.

1118 2 *Bugiſlaus* ſonne of *Wartiſlaus* created by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, the firſt Duke of *Pomeren*.

1188 3 *Bugiſlaus* II. ſonne of *Bugiſlaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomeren* with *Saxon* Colonies.

1282 4 *Barnimus* ſonne of *Bogeſlaus* the ſecond, after whoſe death *Pomeren* was divided into two Principalities.

DUKES of *Wolgaſt.*

1277 5 *Bugiſlaus* II. ſonne of *Barnimus*.
1319 6 *VVartiſlaus* ſonne to *Bugiſlaus*.
1326 7 *Barnimus* II.
1365 8 *VVartiſlaus* II.
1394 9 *Barnimus* III.
1405 10 *VVartiſlaus* III.
1456 11 *Ericus* ſonne of *VVartiſlaus*.

DUKES of *Stetin.*

1277 1 *Otho* Duke of *Pomeren Stetin*.
1345 2 *Caſimir* ſonne of *Otho*.
1368 3 *Caſimir* II. ſonne of *Caſimir*.
1374 4 *Suartiborus* brother of *Caſimir*.
1413 5 *Caſimir* III. ſonne of *Suantiborus*,
1433 6 *Joachim* ſonne of *Caſimir*.
1451 7 *Otho* III. ſon of *Joachim*, dyed without iſſue, *anno* 1464.

12 *Bugiſlaus* III. commonly called the tenth, the younger Princes of both houſes making up the tale, ſucceeded *Otho* the third in that part of *Pomeren*, uniting ſo the whole into one eſtate.

1523 13 *George* ſonne of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth.

1531 14 *Philip* ſonne of *George*, in whoſe time the *Reformation* made by *Luther* was admitted into *Pomerania*.

1583 15 *Bugiſlaus* IV. but the 13. in the *Dutch* accompt, ſonne of *Philip* his younger brother, *Erneſtus Ludovicus* having that of *Stetin* for his ſhare.

16 *Bugiſlaus* V. and 14 ſonne of *Bugiſlaus* the fourth born in the year 1580. ſucceeded in *Pomeren* of *VVolgaſt*, as *Philip Julius* ſon of *Erneſtus Ludovicus* did in that of *Stetin*. After whoſe death *Bogiſlaus* became Lord of all *Pomerania*, in a fair way to have loſt all to the prevailing *Imperialiſts*, had not the timely coming in of the King of *Sweden* ſtopped their violent Progreſſe. But *Bogiſlaus* dying without iſſue in the time of the war, and in him the male iſſue of the houſe of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth being quite extinguiſhed *George VVilliam* Marqueſſe and *Electour* of *Brandenbourg* put in his claime for the Eſtate, according to the compact and agreement ſpoken of before. Betwixt whom and the *Swedes* (who under colour of aiding the laſt Duke had poſſeſſed themſelves of all the ſtrong places in the Countrey) it was accorded and concluded at the *Treaty* of *Munſter* that all the *Higher Pomerania*, with the Iſles of *Rugen* and *VVollin*, and the town of *Stetin*, ſhould from thencefourth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*,

Mecklenb.

the *Lower Pomeren* to be enjoyed by the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, ſo long as the male iſſue laſteth; on default whereof that alſo to be added unto that *Crown*; the Armes and Titles to be uſed by both promiſcuouſly. And in regard the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg* was to part with the *Upper Pomeren* for the contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm peace could be made in *Germany*) it was alſo there agreed upon, that the *temporall* eſtates of the Biſhopricks of *Halberſtade*, *Minden*, and *Camine*, together with that of *Magdeburg* (after the deceaſe of the preſent Biſhop) ſhould be for ever added to the poſſeſſions of that houſe; the Marqueſſes and *Electors* of it to bee thenceforth entituled Dukes of *Magdeburg*, Princes of *Halberſtad* and *Minden*. But what will be the iſſue of theſe concluſions futures time muſt ſhew.

The Armes of *Pomeran*, are A *Gryphon*.

16. *MECKLENBOVRG.*

The *Dukedome* of *MECKLENBVRG*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pomerania*, on the Weſt with *Holſtein*, a Province of the Kingdome of *Denemark*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South with *Brandenbourg*, and *Saxen-lawenburg*. So called from *Mecklenburg*, or *Megalopolis*, (both names in ſeverall languages of the *Dutch* and *Greeks* ſignifying a great City) a great town of that name here being in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals* (the old Inhabitants of theſe parts) whoſe chief City it was, but on their leaving of this Countrey, decayed to nothing. The Countrey of the ſame nature as *Pomerania*, and was rich in corn.

Places of moſt importance in it are 1 *VViſmar*, a noted Port on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick* Sea; raiſed out of the ruines of old *Mecklenburg* before mentioned, about the year 1240. the Haven hereof capable of the greateſt veſſels, to which it gives a ſafe and aſſured *Station*, whence the name of *VViſmar*; the word ſignifying in the *Sclavonian* language *idem ac certum mare* (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or ſafe Sea. Now one of the *Hanſe Towns*, and being it lies conveniently for the uſe of the *Swedes*, alloted to that Crown by the treaty of *Munſter*, the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompenſe thereof to have the temporaries of the Biſhopricks of *Swerin*, and *Ratzenburg*. 2 *Swerin*, ſeated upon the South ſide of the Lake ſo named, an Epiſcopall See, and honoured with giving the title of a Baronie to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. 3 *Malcaw*, firſt walled by *Niclot*, Prince of the *Vandals*, *anno* 1270. 4 *Ratzenburg*, an Epiſcopall See, ſpoken of before. 5 *Roſtoch*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanſe* towns, to *Lubeck* and *Dantſick*. Large, rich, and much frequented by all ſorts of Merchants, in compaſſe almoſt ſix *Engliſh* miles, ſituate on the River *VVarn* neer the fall thereof into the *Baltick*. Honoured with an Univerſity here founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, *an.* 1419. the firſt Profeſſors in it being brought from *Erdford* in *Saxony*. 6 *Stargard*, which once gave the title of Duke to the younger Princes of this houſe. 7 *Sarentine*, memorable for a Nunnery there founded by Duke *Magnus* the ſecond. 8 *Lau*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry* the ſecond, as an out-work to *Roſtock*, which he had lately bought of *Chriſtopher* then King of *Denmark*. 9 *Sternberg*, of which little memorable. 10 *Fridland*, on the edge of *Pomeren* not far from *Stargard*, which gave the title of Duke to *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, after that called Duke of *Fridland*, that eminent and proſperous Commander of the *Imperiall* Forces, in the late war of *Germany*: but miſerably murdered after all his ſerviees by command of the Emperour. 11 *Fitebtell*, both pleaſantly and ſtrongly ſeated on the edge of a Lake. 12 *Damin*, a ſtrong Town on the *Marches* of *Brandenburg*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the reſt of the *Heruli*, and *Burgundians*. But the *Burgundians* being reckoned as a part of the *Vandals* were not much took notice of (till their irruptions on the borders of the *Roman* Empire made them more conſiderable) the Princes of theſe Nations uſing no other title then Kings of the *Heruli* and *Vandals*. Of theſe the firſt is ſaid to be one *Anthyrius* ſonne of an *Amazonian* Lady, who learned his firſt rudiments of warfare under *Alexander* the *Great*. Out of his loins deſcended a long race of Kings, amongſt whom *Rhadaguiſe*, who together with *Alarick* the *Goth*, invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick* the ſeventeenth of theſe Kings, weary of ſo cold a dwelling, paſſed towards the South, and having haraſſed *Gaul* and *Spain*, ſhipped himſelf over the Straits of *Gibralter*, and erected the Kingdome of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; whoſe ſucceſſors we ſhall meet with there. By *Vitalaus* the youngeſt ſonne of *Genſericus* the ſonne of *Gunderick*, the line of theſe Princes is continued, who after mingling with the *Obotriti*, and other of the *Sclaves*, ſucceeding into the void places of the *Vandals*, left off the title of *Kings of the Vandals*, and called themſelves Kings of the *Heruli* and *Obotriti*: continuing it to *Pribiſlaus* or *Primiſlaus* the ſecond, who wrote himſelf *Pribiſlaus Dei gratia Herulorum, Wagriorum, Circipanorum, Palumborum, Obotritorum, Kiſſinorum, Vandalorumque Rex.* Making herein a generall muſter of thoſe tribes of the *Sclaves* and *Heruli*, which remained under his command. But he being vanquiſhed by *Henry* ſurnamed the *Lyon*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the title of King was laid aſide; his ſucceſſours contenting themſelves with that of *Princes*. Divided betwixt *Henry* and *Niclot*, the Nephews of *Pribiſlaus* by his ſonne *Henry* into two Eſtates, *Henry* aſſuming to himſelfe the title of Prince of the *Obotriti*, and *Niclot*, that of Prince of the *Vandals*. But the poſterity of *Niclot* failing in *VVilliam* the laſt of that line, *anno* 1430. his title with the lands thereunto belonging, fel to *Henry* the fat, the fourth Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, to which honour *Albert* and *John* the ſonnes of *Henry* the fourth,

deſcended

descended from the elder house, had beene advanced by the Emperour *Charles* the fourth at Prague, *Anno* 1348. The succession of which family from *Pribislaus* take in order thus. *Mecklenb.*

The PRINCES of the *HERVLI*, and DUKES of *MECKLENBVRG*.

1158	1	*Pribislaus* the last King, and first Prince of the *Heruli*, after their subjection to the *Saxons*; restored to this title and his former estate by the bountifull conquerrers, to be held under the right and *homage* of the house of *Saxony*.
1179	2	*Henry* sonne of *Pribislaus*, baptized with all his people in his fathers life time, by the perswasion of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; by whom restored to their Estates.
	3	*Henry* II. sonne of the former *Henry*; dividing the estate with his brother *Niclot*.
1228	4	*John* surnamed the *Divine*, so called because created *Doctor* of *Divinity* in the University of *Paris*, whither he was sent by his Father to learn good Arts.
1260	5	*Henry* III. surnamed of *Hierusalem*, because of his expedition thither against the *Saracens*.
1302	6	*Henry* IV. surnamed the *Lyon*, for his valour and undaunted constancie.
1319	7	*Albert* and *John* the sonnes of *Henry* going to *Prague* with a Princely train, to attend on the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, were by him created *Princes* of the *Empire*, and *Dukes* of *Mecklenberg*, *anno* 1348.
1380	8	*Magnus* sonne of *Albert*.
1384	9	*John* sonne of *Magnus*, the founder of the University of *Rostock*, *anno* 1419.
1423	10	*Henry* V. surnamed the *Fat*, who on the death of *William* the last Prince of the *Vandals*, succeeded into his Estate.
1447	11	*Magnus* II. sonne of *Henry*, founder of the Cathedrall Church of *Rostock*.
1503	12	*Albert* II. sonne of *Magnus* the second.
1547	13	*John-Albert* sonne of *Albert* the second, endowed the University of *Rostock* with the lands of some dissolved *Monasteries* and authorised in his Estates, the *Reformation* of Religion begun by *Luther*.
1578	14	*John* III. sonne of *John-Albert*.
1592	15	*Adolph-Frederick*, and *John-Albert*, sonnes of *John* the third, dispossessed hereof by the Emperour *Fernand* the second, *anno* 1528. their Estates with the title of Duke of *Mecklenberg*, being conferred on *Albert* of *Wallenstein* Duke of *Fridland*. Who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, the *Asserter* of the liberties of *Germany*, restored it to the proper owners. The heirs to whose Estates is *Gustavus Adolphus*, the onely sonne and heir of *John-Albert*, the other of these two being without issue.

17. The DUKEDOME of *SAXONIE*.

The Dukedome of *SAXONIE* reckoning in the Estates and Provinces united to it, and now in possession of those Dukes, is bounded on the East with a part of *Bohemia*, *Lusatia*, and some part of *Brandenbourg*, on the West with *Hassia*, on the North with the Dukedome of *Brunswick*, and on the South with *Franconia*, and some parts of *Bohemia*. So called because the Patrimony and possession of the Dukes of *Saxonie*, who since the proscription and deprivation of Duke *Henry* surnamed the *Lyon*, *anno* 1180. in some or other of these Countries have had their fixed seat and habitation. It containeth the distinct Provinces of 1 *Turingia*, 2 *Misnia*, 3 *Voiteland*, and 4 *Saxony* properly and specially so called.

1 *TVRINGIA*, is bounded on the East with *Misnia*, and a part of the River *Saltza*; on the West with *Hassia*; on the North with the Wood *Hartz*, and *Saxony* specially so called; on the South with the mountainous Forrest of *Duringer-Wald*, by which parted from *Frankenland*. So called from the *Turingians*, the antient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Countrey environed round about with woody mountaines, but within those mountains plain and pleasant, fruitfull in Corn, and very plentifull of *Woods*, which yeelds great profit to the people; not without some Mines of Gold and Silver, and rich pits of Salt: able to furnish out a feast, but for wine onely, which is the greatest want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth not more. Yet is so populous and well planted, that there are said to be in it 12 Earldomes, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many market Towns, 150 Castles, and 2000 Villages.

The principall of these are 1. *Jene*, on the River *Saltza*, bordering upon *Misnia*, an University chiefly of Physitians, founded in the year 1555. by the sonnes of *John-Frederick* the *Elector*, taken prisoner and deprived by *Charles* the fift. 2 *Erdford* on the River *Gers*, out of which are cut so many

Misnia. *Channels*, that every ſtreet hath almoſt the benefit of it. A rich, populous, and well built City, accounted amongſt the beſt of *Germany*; and made an Univerſity in the time of the Emperour *Wenceſlaus*, *anno* 1392. Many times burnt, but ſtill reviving like the Phœnix out of the aſhes into greater glory. At firſt immediately ſubject to the Archbiſhop and *Electour* of *Mentz*, but having freed themſelves from him, they have ſince governed themſelves as a *free Eſtate*, and one of the *Hanſetowns*; not ſubject to the Duke of *Saxony* as their Lord, but their *Patron* and good neighbour onely. 3. *Mulhuiſen*, and 4 *Noorthuiſen*, two *Imperiall* Cities, but not elſe obſervable. 5 *Smalcald*, famous for the league here made, *anno* 1530. between all the Princes and Cities, which maintained the doctrine of *Luther*: into which firſt entred *John Frederick* the Duke of *Saxon*, and his ſonne; *Erneſt*, and *Francis*, Dukes of *Luneburg*; *Philip* the Lantgrave, *George* Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, the Cities of *Straſburg*, *Nurenberg*, *Heilbrune*, *Kuteling*, *Ulmes*, *Lindaw*, *Conſtance*, *Mening*, and *Campedune*. Afterward *anno* 1535. there entred into it *Barnimus*, and *Philip*, Princes of *Pomeren*, *Ulrick* Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Robert* Prince of *Bipont*, *William* Earl of *Naſſaw*, *George*, and *Joachim*, Earls of *Anhalt*; the Cities of *Franckford*, *Hamborough*, *Auſpurg*, *Hannolder*; and not long after the *Palſgrave*, and the King of *Denemark*. By which famous confederacy, *Luther* not onely kept his head on his ſhoulders; but the *Religion* by him *reformed*, grew to that ſtrength, that no force or policy could ever root it up. 2 *Kole* or *Hale*, where *Philip* the *Lantgrave* was treacherouſly taken priſoner, as you ſhall hear anon. 3 *Wiemar*, a town which together with the Caſtle of *Gotha*, were aſſigned for the eſtate and maintenance of that religious, though unfortunate Prince, *John Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, after this diſcomfiture and impriſonment by *Charles* the fift: The ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of *Saxon-Weimar*, who live here in a ſtately and magnificent Caſtle made of poliſhed ſtone: moſt artificially contrived, and beautified with Orchards, Gardens, and other pleaſures, but made more pleaſant by the watering of the River *Ilma*, upon which it ſtandeth. 6 *Gotha*, upon the River *Lonn*, ſaid by *Rithaimerus* to bee built by the *Gothes*, and by them thus named. A place not long ſince of great importance, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle called *Grimmenſten*, which being made the retiring place of one *Grunbachius*, and other ſeditious perſons under the protection of *John Frederick* one of the ſonnes of the deprived *Elector*; was taken after a long ſiege by *Auguſtus* the *Elector* of *Saxony*, (to whom the ſtrength of this peece being in the hands of the injured family, was a very great eye-ſore) and by command of the *Eſtates* of the Empire in the Diet at *Regensberg*, *anno* 1567. demoliſhed and levelled with the ground.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chaſnari* of *Tacitus*, and after them the *Turingi*, who with the *Heruli*, under the conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italy*; called by ſome *Turcilingi*, by others ſuppoſed to be the *Tyrangetæ* of *Ptolemie*. Not heard of in this Countrey till the reign of *Childerick* the fourth King of the *French*; then taking up the whole Provinces of *Haſſia* and *Turingia* under one *Biſſinus* their King. Their Armes at that time, and long after, *Azure*, a Lion Barrie *Argent* and *Gules*, armed and Crowned *Or*. Being overtome at the great battell of *Zulph* neere *Colen*, where they joined with the *Almans* they became ſubject to the *French*; afterwards added to the Empire by *Henry* the firſt. *William* the ſonne of the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, being Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, by the permiſſion of his Father held the City of *Erdford* and all the reſt of *Turingia*, which hee left unto his ſucceſſours in that See: governed by their *Vidames*, and *Provinciall* Officers till the time of *Conradus Salicus*, when *Ludovicus Barbatus* one of theſe *Vidames*, (or *Vicedomini*) made himſelfe the *Proprietarie* of it, and left the ſame unto his children after his deceaſe. But in the time of *Conrade* the ſecond, the iſſue of this *Ludovicus* either failing or diſpoſſeſſed, it was by that Emperour conferred upon *Lewis* of *Orleans*, ſonne to a ſiſter of his Empereſſe: the title of *Lantgrave* being given to them of this family, for their greater honour. Under eight Princes of this line, whereof five ſucceſſively had the name of *Lewis*, this Eſtate continued next, falling to *Herman* a brother of the fift *Lewis*, then to a ſixt *Lewis*, and laſt of all to *Henry* the brother of that *Lewis*, whom the male iſſue failed: having continued for the ſpace of 252 years. To pleaſe all parties intereſſed in the ſucceſſion, the Eſtate before entire was divided into two parts or Provinces. Of which this now called *Duringen* or *Turingia* was alloted to *Henry* Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*, ſonne of *Judith* the daughter of *Herman*: the Weſtern part hereof, with the title of the Lantgravedome of *Heſſen*, adjudged to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant* in right of *Sophia* his wife daughter of *Lewis* the *ſixth*. In the deſcription of which Countries we ſhall hear more of them.

2 *MISNIA* or *Meiſſen* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Luſatia*, on the Weſt with *Duringen*, on the North with *Saxonie*, ſpecially ſo called, and ſome part of *Brandenburg*; on the South with *Voitland* and ſome part of *Bohemia*. The Countrey once overſpread with woods and full of bogs, rendring the air unwholeſome, and the ſoyl unprofitable: both rectified by the care and induſtry of the people; now yeelding ſome mines of ſilver, and great plenty both of corn and paſturage: well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Pliſſes*, *Elſter*, and *Muſda*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, are 1 *Dreſden*, ſeated on the *Albis*, having continually on her wals and Bulwarkes, 150 Pieces of Ordinance; a ſtable of the Dukes, in which are 128 horſes of ſervice; and a Magazin, out of which 30000 Horſe and Foot, may be armed at a dayes warning.

The Town it ſelf ſituate on both ſides of the River, by which divided into the old Towne and the new, joined into one by a bridge of 800 paces in length: the Countrey round about it very rich and pleaſant; able to ſuſtain great multitudes, for that cauſe made the ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of *Saxony*, who have here a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle. 2 *Naumburg*, 3 *Mersburg*, two Epiſcopall Sees.

4 *Lipſique*,

4 *Lipſique*, as famous an Univerſity for *Philoſophers*, as *Jene* is for *Phyſitians*. It ſeemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not ſuffer their *Beer* to periſh, of which here is ſo much drunk and exported, that the very cuſtome of it due unto the Duke, amounts to 20000 pounds yearly; yet is this town of no more then two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the moſt part of fair free ſtone; honoured with the Courts of Juſtice for all the Countrey. Though ſeated on the meeting of *Pleiſs*, *Parde*, *Elſter*, three Rivers, which lie almoſt on all ſides of it; yet it is not ſtrong: having been thrice taken by the *Imperialiſts* in leſſe then two yeares, during the late *German* wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing elſe) for the great battell fought neere it betwixt the late King of *Sweden* and the Count of *Tilly*: the honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons* (with the death of 15000 of both ſides, and all the loſſe of all the baggage, Armes and Ammunition of the *Imperialls*) freed all theſe parts of *Germany* from that civill and ſpirituall bondage, which was intended by the Emperour to be put upon them. 5 *Mulsberg* on the *Elb*, where *John Frederick* the Electour, was diſcomfited by *Charles* the fift. 6 *Meiſſen*, on the weſt ſide of the ſame River in a hilly and uneven ground, built by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt for defence of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*: a Biſhops See, and the firſt ſeat of the Marqueſſes of the Countrey; both which together with the *Burgrave* of the Town had their Palaces or Manſion-houſes ſtanding cloſe together on the top of an hill, overlooking both the Town and Countrey. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meiſſen*. 7 *Friberg*, neere the Mountaines of *Bohemia*, rich in mines of Silver. 8 *Roclite*, not far from which are rich Mines of tinne, diſcovered firſt in theſe parts by a *Corniſh-man* ſpoken of before.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermanduri* and *Suardones*, ſubdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Sclaves* ſurnamed *Winithi*: firſt conquered by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, who built the ſtrong Town of *Meiſſen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Sclaves* from any incroachments on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of *Germany*, it was a while governed by ſuch Officers as by the Emperours were appointed to guard theſe *Marches*: the firſt *Proprietarie* Marqueſſe being one *Echard*, ſonne of the Earl of *Ooſtland*, (deſcended from a younger ſonne of *Witikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Otho* the third, not made *hereditary* till the time of *Henry* the fift, who gave it in Fee to *Conrade*, Marqueſſe of *Landſberg* and *Luſatia*: whoſe Nephew *Theodorick*, by his ſonne *Otho* ſurnamed the *Rich*, marryed *Judith* daughter of *Herman* Lantgrave of *Duringen*, by which match *Duringen* accrewed to the houſe of *Meiſſen*, *Henry* their ſonne ſucceeding in both Eſtates. To this *Henry* ſucceeded *Albert* his ſonne, and after him ſucceſſively foure *Fredericks*, the laſt whereof by the Emperour *Sigiſmund* was created *Electour* and Duke of *Saxony*, in whoſe poſterity theſe honours and Eſtates doe as yet continue.

VOITELAND is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, on the Weſt with *Frankenland*; on the North with *Miſnia* or *Meiſſen*, on the South with the *Upper Palatinate*. So called, as ſome, from the *Inites* or *Vites* (ſome of that people who together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquered *Britaine*) of whom it had the name of *Viteland*, that is to ſay, the land or Countrey of the *Vites*. But being I finde not that the *Saxons* did ſpread ſo far Eaſtward, I rather think that this name was given it by the *Sclaves*, who finding it deſerted, or but thinly peopled at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voidland*; from which the Alteration unto *Voitland* is both plaine and obvious. It is the ſmalleſt Province of all *Germany*, and never of ſuch repute as to have any particular Prince as moſt others had, but alwayes reckoned as an acceſſory to ſome greater Eſtate. Nor hath it any Town or Cities, of great eſtimation: the chief of thoſe which are, being 1 *Olnitz*, 2 *Werda*, 3 *Cornab*, 4 *Schneberg*, neer the mountaines called *Studetæ* by *Ptolemie*, famed for ſilver mines. 5 *Gotzberg*, 6 *Culmbach*, 7 *Hoffe*, not much remarkable but onely for the Princes of it of the houſe of *Brandenburg*, called formerly *Curia Pegniana*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Nertereates* and *Danduti*, ſucceeded to by the *French* and *Sclaves*, as they ſeverally deſcended ſouthwards into warmer Countries. Poſſeſſed and planted by the *Sclaves* it obtained this name. But being a ſmall Nation, and a ſmall Eſtate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince; but did moſt probably belong to the Lords of *Meiſſen*, upon which it bordereth, and now in their right to the Dukes of *Saxony*. But ſo that the Duke of *Saxony* is not the ſole Lord hereof: the Marqueſſes of *Anſbach* of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, poſſeſſing the towns of *Hoffe* and *Colmbach*, and ſome other parts of it; the Patrimony at the preſent of *Chriſtian*, ſonne of *Joachim Erneſt* the late Marqueſſe of *Anſbach*, who now enjoyeth them with the title of the Marqueſſe of *Colmbach*.

SAXONIE ſpecially ſo called, and ſometime for diſtinction ſake *OBER SACHSEN*, or the *Upper Saxonie*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Marquiſate of *Brandenbourg*; on the Weſt with *Haſſia*; on the North with the Dukedome of *Brunſwick*; on the South with *Miſnia*. The air hereof ſomewhat ſharp, but healthy: the ſoil in the Southweſt parts hilly and uneven, chiefly rich in *Minerals*; elſewhere ſufficiently fruitfull. Divided into four Eſtates, that is to ſay, the Earldome of 1 *Mansfield*, 2 the Principate of *Anhalt*, 3 Biſhoprick of *Magdeburg*, and 4 *Saxonie* it ſelfe: this laſt onely ſubject immediately to the Duke; the reſt acknowledging his ſuperiority, have their proper Lords.

1 Moſt Weſtwards towards *Duringen* and *Haſſia*, lyeth the Earldome of *MANSFEILD*, ſo called from *Mansfeild*, once the the chief Town of it on the River *Wieper*. The other towns of note in it are 2 *Iſleben*, betwixt the Rivers *Sala* and *Wieper*, ſuppoſed to be ſo called from the Goddeſſe

Iſis

Saxonie. *Iſis*, who after the death of her husband (as is ſaid by *Tacitus*) viſited theſe parts: now the *Metropolis* of the Earldome, and the ſeat of Juſtice for the whole, ſetled here by Earl *Voldradus*, anno 1448. famous to all poſterity for the birth and death of *Martin Luther*, born here in the yeer 1483. and here deceaſing in the houſe of the Earl of *Mansfield*, anno 1546. Of whom, and the ſucceſſe of his *Reformation*, as we have ſpoken much already, ſo we ſhall ſpeak more, as occaſion is, in the courſe of this work. 3 *Wieper*, (or *Wypra*) ſo called of the River on which it ſtandeth. 4 *Quernfurt*, 5 *Retenburg*, 6 *Alſtad*, 7 *Helderung*, bought of the Earls of *Houſtein*. Some who delineate the Pedegree of theſe Earls of *Mansfield*, fetch it as high as from one of King *Arthurs* Knights of the *Round Table*, born at *Mansfield* in *Nottinghamſhire*; who ſetling himſelf in *Germany*, gave that name to his houſe: a *Military* Originall, and very ſuitable to ſuch an *active* and *warlike* Family. But thoſe which doe not ſoar ſo high fetch them no further then from *Burchard* the fift, Earl of *Quernfort*, and *Burgrave* of *Magdeburg*, who following *Frederick Barbaroſſa* into the *Holy Land* deceaſed at *Antioch*, anno 1189. His Nephew *Burchard*, by a ſonne of the ſame name, was the firſt of this Family that had the title of Earl of *Mansfield*, about the yeer 1250. continued ever ſince unto his Poſterity (but under ſome acknowledgments to the *Electors* of *Saxony*.) Of theſe the moſt eminent, were *Voldradus*, one of the Councell of Eſtate to the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, anno 1411. a great improver of the Patrimony of the Earls hereof; 2 *John-George*, Lord Deputy or Lieutenant of *Saxony* under Duke *Auguſtus*. 3 *Peter-Erneſt*, Governour of *Luxembourg* under *Charles* the fift, and *Philip* the ſecond, by whom much exerciſed and employed in their wars with *France*. 4 *Albert*, a conſtant friend of *Luthers*, and a faithfull follower of *John-Frederick* the deprived *Electour*, in whoſe quarrell being outed of his eſtate, he retired to *Magdeberg*, which he moſt gallantly defended againſt the Emperour. And 5 *Erneſtus*, Nephew of that *Albert* by his ſon *John*, ſo famous for the war which he maintained in moſt parts of *Germany* againſt *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in behalf of *Frederick* Prince Elector *Palatine*, and the States of *Bohemia*, with ſo great conſtancy and courage.

Eaſt of the Earldome of *Mansfield* lyeth the Principate of *ANHALT*, much ſhaded, if not too much overgrown with woods; parts of the old *Hercinian* forreſt, whence it had the name; *Hol* in *Dutch*, ſignifying a wood or forreſt; and the Princes of this houſe created to this dignity by the ſtile of *Principes Harciniæ in Anhalt*: Chief townes of it are, 1 *Bernberg*, the *Dynaſtie* and uſuall title of this houſe, before they were created Princes of *Anhalt*. 2 *Ballenſtede*, part of the antient Patrimony of the firſt Princes hereof. 3 *Deſſaw*, the birth-place of ſome, and the buriall-place of others of this Family, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle built by Prince *Albert* the ſecond, *anno* 1341. 4 *Serveſt*, the uſuall place of the Princes reſidence. 5 *Coeten*, a well fortified place, in vain beſieged by the joynt forces of the Arch-biſhop of *Magdeburg*, and the Earl of *Schwartzenwold*.

We went as high as the *Round Table* for the Earls of *Mansfield*, but we muſt goe as high as the Ark for the Princes of *Anhalt*; ſome fetching them from *Askenaz*, the ſon of *Gomer*, and nephew of *Japhet*, from whom, and no other this *Aſcanian* Family (for by that name it is called) are to fetch their Pedegree. But to content our ſelves with more ſober thoughts, certain it is, that this Family is of the old *Saxon* race, ſetled in theſe parts by *Theodorik*, King of *Mets*, or *Auſtraſia*, who gave the Towns of *Aſcandt* and *Ballenſtede*, with the lands adjoyning, to one *Bernwald*, or *Bernthobald*, a noble *Saxon*, anno 524. From which town and Caſtle of *Aſcandt*, afterwards raſed to the ground by *Pepin*, King of the *French*, anno 747. moſt probable it is that they took their name. From this *Bernwald*, or *Bernthobald*, by a long line of Princes, deſcended *Albert* the ſeventh of *Anhalt*, ſurnamed *Urſus*, created Marqueſſe of *Brandenburg* by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, anno 1152. the Father of that *Barnard*, who by the Munificence and bounty of the ſame Emperour was created Duke of *Saxony*, in the roome of Duke *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, anno 1180. becoming ſo the Stemme of the two greateſt Princes in all the Empire. *Henry* the ſecond, ſon of this *Barnard*, was by the ſame Emperour, not long after, made Prince of *Anhalt*, the firſt of all this ancient and illuſtrious Family which had been honoured with that title, continuing in his race to this very day; the two Electorates of *Saxony* and *Brandenbourg*, being mean while tranſlated unto other Families. The moſt conſiderable of which Princes, though all men of Eminence, were 1 *Rodolph*, Generall of the forces of the Emperour *Maximilian* the firſt againſt the *Venetians*, whom he twice overcame in battell. 2 *George* the *Divine*, a great *Reformer* of the Church by his diligent preaching; whoſe Sermons and other Tractates (learned for the times he lived in) are ſtill extant. 3 *Chriſtian*, born in the yeer 1568. Commander of the Forces of *Frederick*, Prince Elector *Palatine*, in the wars of *Bohemia*.

North of the Principality of *Anhalt*, lyeth the Biſhoprick of *MAGDEBURG*, ſo called of *Magdeburg* the chief City; by ſome called *Meydburg*, and *Meydenburg*; whence by a *Greek* name *Parthenopolis*, and *Virginopolis*, by a mungrell word made of *Greek* and *Latine*. A City ſeated on the *Elb*, divided into three parts, but all ſtrongly fortified; begirt with high walls, deep ditches, and almoſt unconquerable Bulwarks: yet very beautifull withall (before the laſt deſolation of it) of elegant buildings, fair ſtreets, and magnificent Temples: Built in the form of a *Creſcent*, by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, the founder of it, who having tranſlated hither the *Archiepiſcopall* See, for the greater honour of the place, built the Cathedrall of Saint *Maurice*, where his wife lies buried, *anno* 948. teſtified by the inſcription to be daughter of *Edmund*, King of *England*. A town which hath long flouriſhed in a great deal of glory, and taſted of as much affliction as any other in *Germany*. For refuſing to receive the *Interim*, it was out-lawed by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, and given to him that could firſt take it. It was firſt hereupon attempted by the Duke of *Meglenberg*; but he was in

a

a *Camisado* taken Prisoner, his Army routed, his Nobles made captive, and 260 horse brought into the City. Next, it was besieged by Duke *Maurice* of *Saxonie*, who, on honourable termes, was after a long siege received into it, *anno* 1550. when it had stood on his own guard the space of three yeers. Which long opposition of one town, taught the *German* Princes what constancy could doe; it held up the coals of Rebellion in *Germany*, and indeed proved to be the fire which burned the Emperours *Trophies*. For here Duke *Maurice* coming acquainted with Baron *Hedeck*, hatched that confederacy, by which not long after this great Emperour was driven out of *Germany*. At last it yeilded to Duke *Maurice*, under the protection of whose successours it hath since enjoyed a long course of felicity, till the yeer 1631. in which most miserably burnt and sacked by the Earl of *Tilly*: of whom it is observed, that after that fact he never prospered, being shortly after totally routed at the battell of *Leipsick*, and wounded to the death not long after that, neer the River *Leck*. Other places of note in this *Bishoprick*, are, 2 *Warnsted*, beautified with a fair Castle, not far from *Magdeburg*, the ordinary seat, or retiring place of the Bishop. 3. *Grabetz*, upon the River *Struma*, 4 *Mockern*, on the same River. 5 *Barleben*, beneath *Meydberg* on the *Elb*. 6 *Lunburg*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Struma*; not much observable.

The *Archiepiscopall* See being translated hither from *Valersleve* and *Vrese*, (places too obscure for so great a dignity) by *Otho* the first; and by him endowed with great *Revenues*, and a goodly territory round about it: the Arch-bishop hereof was also by his procurement made the *Primate* of *Germany*; acknowledged so by all but the Bishop of *Saltzburg*, and the three *Spirituall Electors*. For the Administration of Justice in matters *Criminall* and *Civill*, the said *Otho* did ordain an Officer whom they called the *Burgrave*, conferring that office first on *Gero*, Marquesse of *Lusatia*. Through many hands it came at last to *Burchard*, Lord of *Querntort*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*; many of which enjoyed this honour: setled at last by the Emperour *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg*, on the Dukes of *Saxony*, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Estate. The *Archbishops* notwithstanding continued Lords of it, and the whole territory or district adjoyning to it, till the *Reformation* of *Religion*: when the *Revenues* separated from the jurisdiction were given to *Lay Princes* (for the most part of the house of *Brandenbourg*) with the title of Administrator. Finally, by the *Pacification* made at *Munster*, this fair estate is to be setled for ever on the *Electors* of that house to be possessed by them, and their Heires and Successours, by the title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*; the better to content them for the concession which they made to the Crown of *Sweden*, of a great part of their right and title to the Dukedome of *Pameren*.

SAXONIE most specially so called, the fourth and last part of this *Division*, stretcheth it self along the *Elb* betwixt *Magdeburg* and *Meissen*; of the same nature, in regard both of soil and air, as is said before. Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Torge*, or *Torgow*, by some placed in *Misnia*, but by *Mercator* in this Province. Built on the west side of the *Elb*, in form *Orbicular*, and falling every way from the sides of a mountain, beautified with a stately and pleasant Castle, belonging to the *Elector* of *Saxony*, who is Lord hereof, built by *John-Frederick* the Elector, *anno* 1535. Near to the City, is a *Lake* of a mile in compasse; for which the Citizens pay yeerly to the Duke 500 *Guldens*. 2 *Warlitz* upon the *Elb*, once a *Commandery* of the *Templars*. 3 *Weisenberck*, lying towards *Brunswick*. 4 *Kemberg*, on the west side of the *Elb*. 5 *Bitterfelt*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Mulda*; and 6 *Wittenberg*, on the *Elb*, in an open plain, but strongly fenced with walls, ramparts, and deep ditches. The chief beauty of it lyeth in one fair street, extending the whole length of the City; in the midst whereof is the Cathedrall Church, a large Market-place, and the common Councell-house. In former times the seats of the *Dukes Electors*, till the *Electorall* dignity was conferred on the house of *Meissen*, who liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dresden*: But so, that *Wittenberg* is still acknowledged for the head City of the *Electorate*; and was made an University for *Divines* by Duke *Frederick*, anno 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as some conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of *Saxony*, when the extent thereof was greatest: famous for the sepulchres of *Luther* and *Melanchthon*, but chiefly for that here were the walls of Popery broken down, and the reformation of the Church begun, by the zeal and diligence of *Martin Luther*; the story of which reformation so by him begun, I shall here sub-joyn: This *Luther*, as before is said, was born at *Isleben*, in the Country of *Mansfield*, and student first at *Magdeburg*, but at the establishing of the University of *Wittenberg*, chosen to be one of the Professours of Divinity there. It happened in the yeer 1516, that Pope *Leo* having need of money, sent about his *Jubilees* and *Pardons*, against the abuses of which, *Luther* inveighed both privately and publickly, by word and writing. This spark grew at last to so great a coal, that it fired the Papall Monarchy. Of the success of his endevours we have spoke already. We shall look here upon the difficulties which the *Cause* passed through, before it could be blessed with a publick settlement. Concerning which, we are to know, that the Princes of *Germany*, and many of the *Free Cities* had embraced his doctrine, and in the Imperiall Chamber at *Spires*, solemnly professed they would defend it to the death: hence were they first called *Protestants*. Nor stayed they there, but made a solemn *League* and Combination at *Smalcald*, spoken of before, for defence thereof, and of each other in the exercise and profession of it. Yet was not this *Reformation* so easily established. *Christ* had foretold, that Fathers should be against their Sonnes, and Brothers against Brothers for the truths sake; neither doe we ever finde in any story, that the true *Religion* was introduced, or *Religion corrupted* about to be amended, without warre and bloud-shed. *Charles* the *Emperour* whetted on by the Popes of *Rome* had long born a grudge against the *Reformation*; but especi-

ally

Saxony. ally againſt the confederacy of *Smalcald*. After long heart burning on either ſide, they broke out into open warre, which at firſt ſucceeded luckily with the Princes. But there being an equality of command between *John Frederick* the *Elector* of *Saxony*, and *Philip* the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, one ſometimes not approving; other whiles thwarting the others projects; the end proved not anſwerable. Beſides, the politick Emperour alwayes eſchewed all occaſions of battell, and by this delay wearied out this Army of the Princes; which without performing any notable exploit, disbanded it ſelf: every man haſtning home to defend his own. The Duke of *Saxony* had moſt cauſe to haſten homeward. For in his abſence, his couſin *Maurice* forgetting the education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him, and eſtated him in the Province of *Miſnia*; combined himſelf with the Emperour, and invaded his unckles County. But the Duke *Electour*, not onely recovered his own, but ſubdued all the Eſtates, in which he had formerly placed his ungratefull and ambitious kinſman. The Emperour all this while was not idle, but waited advantage to encounter the Duke, which at laſt he found nigh unto *Mulberg*, where the Duke was hearing a Sermon. The *Emperour* giveth the Alarum; the Duke ſtartling from his religious exerciſe, ſeeketh to order his men but in vain. For they ſuppoſing the *Emperour* to be nearer with all his forces, then indeed he was, adde the wings of fear to the feet of cowardiſe, and flie away: yet did the Duke with a few reſolute Gentlemen, as well as they could, make head againſt the enemy, till moſt of them were ſlain, and the Duke himſelf taken Priſoner. The morrow after this overthrow, he was condemned to loſe his Head; but pardoned at laſt on condition that he ſhould ranſomleſſe ſet free Marqueſſe *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, renounce his dignity of the *Electorſhip*, reſigne up all his inheritance, with the like harſh Articles. It was alſo urged, that he ſhould alter his *Religion*: but that he ſo conſtantly denyed, that it was omitted. For his after maintenance, there were rendred back unto him, the towns of *Weymar*, and *Goth*, from the former of which, his Poſterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*: After this Victory the Emperour fraudulently intrapped the *Lantgrave*: then marched he againſt the *Cities*, in all which he prevailed, reſtored the *Maſſe*, and drave them to hard compoſition for their liberties. It was thought, that in this war the Emperour got 1600000 Crowns, and 500 peeces of Ordinance. The Impriſonment of the *Lantgrave*, contrary to the Emperours promiſe, was the chief thing which overthrew his good fortune. For Duke *Maurice* having pawned his word, and given unto the *Lantgraves* children his Bond, for the ſafe return of their Father; found himſelf much wronged and grieved: therefore conſulting with Baron *Hedeck*, he entred league with the *French* King, aſſociated himſelf with Marqueſſe *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, ſuddenly ſurpriſed *Auſpurg*; and by the terrour which his haſte brought with it, forced the Emperour to flie from *Inſpruch*; and the Fathers to break up the Councell of *Trent*. The Emperour now brought low, eaſily hearkned to an honourable *Compoſition*, which not long after was concluded: the *Cities* recovering their Priviledges, free paſſage being given to the Reformation, and all things elſe reduced to the ſame ſtate they were in before the wars; the reſtoring of *John-Frederick* to his Dukedom and *Electorſhip* excepted only. So did this Duke *Maurice* both overthrow the liberty of his Country, and reſtore it: ſo was the work of *Reformation* by his means depreſſed, by the ſame again revived and eſtabliſhed ſtronger then ever. Thus we ſee that of the Poet verified:

——Vel nemo, vel qui mihi vulnera fecit,
Solus Achillæo tollere more poteſt.

None but the man which did his Country wound,
Achilles-like, could heal and make it ſound.

It is obſerved by ſome, that the deprivation of *John Frederick*, and the advancement of *Maurice* fell out very happily for the confirming of the *Reformation* then contended for. Firſt, in regard of *John Frederick*, whoſe *Chriſtian* patience and *Magnanimity* during the whole time of his impriſonment, added great reputation to the cauſe for which he he ſuffered: 2 In reſpect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work, and every way as zealous in purſuance of it as the other was: And 3 In relation to the children of the deprived *Duke*, men not to be relied on in a matter of ſuch weight and moment: inſomuch, as it was ſaid of him after his deceaſe, *Quod filios reliquerit ſui diſſimillimos*. But to return unto my ſtory. The doctrine of *Luther* thus ſetled in *Germany*, and being ſo agreeable to the Word of God, was quickly propagated over all *Chriſtendome*: the reaſons of which, next unto the Almighty power of the moſt High, may be principally ſix: 1 The diligence and aſſiduity of preaching in City, and Village; 2 The publiſhing of books of Piety, and *Chriſtian Religian*; 3 The *tranſlations* of the *Scriptures*, into the *vulgar* languages, whereby the ſimple might diſcern good from bad, the muddy doctrine of *Rome*, from the clear water of life, 4 The *education* of youth, eſpecially in *Catechiſmes*, which contained the whole body of *Chriſtian* religion; which once well planted in their mindes, was irradicable; 5 The continuall *offers* of *diſputations* with the adverſe party, in a publick audience; which being denyed, gave aſſurance of the truth, and ſoundneſſe of the one ſide, as of the falſhood and weakneſſe of the other; 6 Their compiling of *Martyrologies*, and *Hiſtories* of the Church; which cannot but work an admirable confirmation of Faith, and conſtancy in the hearers and readers. There is one only *policy* wanting, namely, the calling of a generall *Synod*, to compoſe the differences of the *reformed Church*, about the Sacrament, and *Predeſtination*; which would certainly ſtrengthen their own cauſe, and weaken the enemies,

whoſe

whoſe chief hopes are, that the preſent diſagreements will arme party againſt party, to their own deſtruction. But God grant that their hopes may be fruſtrated, and we will ſay with the Poet, *Saxony.*

——*Hæ manus Trojam erigent?*
Parvas habet ſpes Troja, ſi tales habet.

Shall theſe ſmall jarres reſtore the ruin'd Pope?
Small hope he hath, if this be all his hope.

But it is time we ſhould proceed to the ſtory of *Saxony*; the ancient inhabitants of which tract were the *Longobardi*, or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*; and part of the *Cheruſci* about *Manſfeld*, and *Wirtenberg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater then now it is: containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhene* and the River *Eydore*, in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſſe*; and from the River *Saltza* to the *German* and *Baltick* Oceans. Theſe, ſaid by ſome to be a People of *Aſia*, and there called the *Sacæ*; who finding that ſmall territory (now a part of *Perſia*) too narrow for them, forſook their Country, and at laſt fixed themſelves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſſe*; where they firſt took the names of *Paſacaſons* (or *Sac-ſons*) that is to ſay, the ſons of the *Sacæ*. The improbality of this we have there diſputed. Omitting therefore that and the like *Originations* of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be naturall *Germans*; ſome tribe of that moſt populous and potent people of the *Suevi*; but for the reaſon of the name, let every man enjoy the pleaſure of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolemies* time they were poſſeſſed of thoſe parts beyond the *Elb*, & thence extended to the *Eydore*, part of which tract is now known by the name of *Holſtein*; and were accounted in that time to be no new-comers. Afterwards as they grew in number, they inlarged their quarters, and paſſing over the *Elb* in the time of the latter *Roman* Emperours, poſſeſſed themſelves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then buſied in the conqueſt of more fruitfull Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in fine, they took up the now Dukedomes of *Holſtein*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Brunſwick*, the Biſhopricks of *Bremen*, *Verda*, *Hilderſheim*, *Halberſtad*, and *Magdeburg*; the old *Marches* of *Brandenbourg*, the Earldome of *Mansfield*, *Weſtphalen*, both *Friſelands*, *Overyſſell*, with as much of *Guelderland* and *Holland*, as lay on that ſide of the *Rhene*. By which account the preſent *Electorall* Family hath not one foot of the *old Saxony* in their poſſeſſion: the ſeat and Patrimony of the *Electors* being removed into other Countries, upon the alterations and changes which have hapned in that eſtate: the name and title of *Saxony* being given to the Country about *Wittenberg* for no other reaſon, but becauſe it was the chief ſeat of the Duke *Electors*. But to proceed, a ſtout and valiant Nation queſtionleſs they were, the Conquerors of the Iſle of *Britain*; & the laſt people of the *Germans*, which yeilded up their Country unto *Charles* the great; by whoſe means gained unto the Goſpell, *anno* 785. Their laſt King was called *Wittichindus*, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France*, ſince the time of *Hugh Capet*; the regent Kings of *Denmark*, of the houſe of *Old nberg*; the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*; the Marqueſſes of *Montferrat*; beſides many other noble and illuſtrious Families, though of leſſer note: The male iſſue of *Wittikinde* (whom *Charles* the great created, taking the firſt Duke of *Saxony*) determining in the perſon of *Otho* the third, Emperour of *Germany*, it was by him conferred on *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenburg* (but the preciſe time thereof I finde not:) and on the forfeiture incurred by his poſterity, in the perſon of Duke *Henry* the Proud, beſtowed by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* upon *Barnard* of *Anhalt*, anno 1180. whoſe iſſue in the right line failing, it was finally eſtated by the Emperour *Sigiſmund* on *Frederick Landgrave* of *Turingia*, and Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*, anno 1423. In his Family it hath ſince continued, but not without a manifeſt breach in the courſe of the ſucceſſion: which hapned when *John-Frederick* being deprived of the Electorall dignity and eſtate; his couſin Duke *Maurice* was inveſted in them by *Charles* the fift. And becauſe theſe *tranſlations* of States be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the Ceremonies thereat uſed, as I have collected them out of *Sleiden*. There were at *Wittenberg* ſcaffolds erected, on which ſate the Emperour, and the *Princes Electors* in their Robes. On the back ſide of the State were placed the Trumpeters; right againſt it ſtandeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of horſmen. The firſt in a full careere run their horſes up to the pavilion: out of the ſecond iſſued *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick*, *Wolfang* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavier*. Theſe when they had in like manner courſed their horſes about, alighted, aſcended to the Throne, and humbly requeſted the Emperour, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the *Electorſhip*. He conſulted with the *Electors*, made anſwer by the Biſhop of *Mentz*, that he was content; ſo Duke *Maurice* would in perſon come and deſire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice*, with the whole troup; before him were born *ten enſignes* bearing the *Armes* of as many *Regions*, wherein he deſired to be inveſted. When he came before the throne, he kneeled down on his knees, and humbly defired the Emperor to beſtow on him the *Electorſhip* of *Saxony*, and all the lands of *John-Frederick*, late *Elector*. His Petition was granted. Then the Biſhop of *Mentz* read unto him the Oath by which the *Electors* are bound unto the Empire: which Oath, when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperour delivered unto him a *Sword*, which was a ſigne of his perfect *inveſtiture*. Duke *Maurice*, now the *Elector* of *Saxony*, aroſe, gave the Emperour thanks, promiſed his *fidelity*, made obeyſance, and took his place amongſt the *Electors*. This ſolemnity was on the 24 day of *Feb.* anno 1548. This ſaid, it is high time that we ſhould proceed unto the Catalogue of

The

Saxony.

The DVKES of SAXONIE.

785	1	*Witikind* the laſt King of the *Saxons* vanquiſhed and created the firſt *Duke* by *Charles* the *Great*.
825	2	*Bruno* the brother of *Witikind*.
843	3	*Luitulphus* ſonne of *Bruno*.
855	4	*Bruno* II. ſonne of *Luitulphus*.
876	5	*Otho* brother of *Bruno* the ſecond.
916	6	*Henry* ſurnamed the *Fowler*, ſonne of *Otho*; Emperour of the *Romans* and King of *Germany*.
938	7	*Otho* II. Duke of *Saxonie* and Emperour called *Otho* I.
974	8	*Otho* III. Duke of *Saxonie* and Emperour called *Otho* II.
984	9	*Otho* IV. Duke of *Saxonie* and Emperour called *Otho* III.
	10	*Barnard* Lord of *Lunenburg* created Duke of *Saxonie*, and the firſt *Electour* by *Otho* the third, who was the laſt Duke of the race of *Witikind*.
1021	11	*Barnard* II ſonne of *Barnard* the firſt.
1063	12	*Ordulphus* ſonne of *Barnard* the ſecond.
1073	13	*Magnus* ſonne of *Ordulphus*, who taking part with *Rodulphus* of *Schwaben* againſt *Henry* the fourth, was taken priſoner and deprived.
	14	*Lotharius* Earl of *Querdfort*, created Duke of *Saxonie* by *Henry* the fourth. He was alſo Emperour of the *Romans*.
1125	15	*Henry Guelph*, ſurnamed the *Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the husband of *Gertrude* daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom created Duke *Electour*.
1139	16	*Henry* II. ſurnamed the *Lyon*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*, ſon of *Henry* the *Proud* by his firſt wife *Walfildis* the daughter of *Magnus*, proſcribed and outed of his Eſtates by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. After which this great Eſtate being parcelled and divided into many parts, the title of the Duke *Electour* of *Saxonie*, was given by the ſaid Emperour to
1180	17	*Barnard* of *Anhalt* ſonne of *Albert* Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, and grandchilde of *Elica*, the daughter of Duke *Magnus*, to whom for his ſeat and habitation the Emperour *Conrade* the third gave the City of *Wittenberg*; the head, ſince that time, of this *Electorate*.
1212	18	*Albert* ſonne of *Barnard*; from whom the Dukes of *Lawenburg* doe derive their Pedegree.
1273	19	*Albert* II. ſonne of *Albert* the firſt.
1327	20	*Rodolph* ſonne of *Albert* the ſecond.
1356	21	*Rodolph* II. ſonne of *Rodolph* the firſt.
1373	22	*Wenceſlaus* ſonne of *Rodolph* the ſecond.
1389	23	*Rodolph* III. ſonne of *Wenceslaus*.
1419	24	*Albert* III. brother of *Rodolph* the third, the laſt *Electour* of *Saxonie* of the houſe of *Anhalt*.
1423	25	*Frederick* Lantgrave of *Duringen*, and Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*, (on the failing of the houſe of *Anhalt*, *anno* 1422) created Duke of *Saxonie* by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, the houſe of *Lawenburg* pretermitted, for want of putting in their claim.
1428	26	*Frederick* II. ſonne of *Frederick* the firſt.
1464	27	*Erneſt* ſonne of *Frederick* the ſecond.
1486	28	*Frederick* III. ſonne of *Erneſt*.
1525	29	*John* brother to *Frederick* the third.
1532	30	*John-Frederick* ſonne of *John* the firſt; a great advancer of the *Reformation* of *Religion*, impriſoned, and deprived of his *Electorſhip* by *Charles* the fift.
1547	31	*Maurice* deſcended from *Albert* the brother of *Erneſt*, created Duke *Elector* by *Charles* the fift, whom afterwards he drave out of *Germany*; and was ſlain in the battell of *Sifridhuſe*, againſt Marqueſſe *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*.
1553	32	*Auguſtus* brother of *Maurice*.
1586	33	*Chriſtian* ſonne of *Auguſtus*.
	34	*Chriſtian* II. ſonne of *Chriſtian* the firſt.
	35	*John-George* brother of *Chriſtian* the ſecond, who firſt ſided with the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond againſt the Elector *Palatine*, and after with the King of *Sweden* againſt the Emperour.

The *Revenues* of this Duke are thought to be the greateſt of any one Prince of *Germanie* (the *Imperial* familie excepted) amounting at the leaſt to 400000 *l. per annum*, though in multitude of Vaſſals, and greatneſſe of territorie, he come ſhort of ſome of them. And to make up this ſum (or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariſeth to him out of *ſilver mines*, is no leſſe then 130000 yearly; the *impoſt* laid on *Beer* in *Leipſich* onely, a City but of two Pariſh Churches (by which con-

conjecture at the reſt) being farmed at 20000 *l. per annum*. Then hath he the *tenthes* of all ſorts of encreaſe, as of corn, wine, &c. the *Salt-houſes* at *Hall*, and ſome other places, very fair lands belonging unto his domain; and beſides a ſtanding and perpetuall tax laid upon the Subject, towards the maintenance of the war againſt the *Turke*: granted at firſt in times of danger and hoſtility; but gathered ever ſince in the time of peace (as to that Enemie) under colour of being ready and prepared againſt him. According to the quantity of his *Intrado* ſo he keeps his State, well ſerved and better attended, then any other of the *Electors*: there being at one time in the Court of *Chriſtian*, the Father of the preſent Duke, three Dukes, three Earles, and five Barons of other Nations (beſides the Nobility of his own) all Penſioners and Servants to him: one of the Princes of *Anhalt*, and one of the Earls of *Mansfeild*, both Homagers unto the *Saxon*, being two of the number. *Brunſwick*

The Armes of *Saxonie* are Barre-wiſe of ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, when he confirmed *Barnard* of *Anhalt* in his Dukedom. For *Barnard* deſiring of the Emperor to have ſome difference added to the Ducal coat (being before onely Barry *Sable* and *Or*) to diſtinguiſh him and his ſucceſſours from thoſe of the former houſe: the Emperour tooke a Chaplet of *Rue*, which hee had then upon his head, and threw it croſſe his Buckler or *Eſcheocheon* of Armes, which was preſently painted on the ſame.

18 *BRUNSWICK*, and 19 *LVNENBVRG*.

The Dukedome of *BRVNSWICK* and *LVNENBOVRG*, being both originally taken out of the great Dukedome of *Saxonie*, extracted both from the ſame root, and many times united in the perſon of the ſame one Prince, ſhall bee joined together in the ſtory, though ſevered in the *Chorographie* or Deſcription of them: bounded on the Eaſt with *Magdeburg* and *Brandenburg*; on the Weſt with *Weſtphalia*; on the North with *Denmark*, on the South with *Duringen* and *Haſſia*. The Air in all parts hereof very cold and comfortleſſe, but ſound and healthfull: the ſoil towards the old *Marches* of *Brandenburg* but meanly fertile, towards *Duringen* and *Haſſia* mountainous and woodie; in other parts very plentifull of corn, and well provided alſo of ſuch other commodities, as uſually doe grow in thoſe colder climates.

But to take the *Chorographie* of them ſeverally, *BRVNSWICK* is bounded on the Eaſt with the Dioceſe of *Magdeburg* and the Earldom of *Mansfeild*, on the Weſt with *Weſtphalen*; on the North with *Lunenburg*, on the South with *Haſſia* and *Turingia*. So called from *Brunſwick* the chief City, and the head of this Dukedome.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Goslar*, upon the River *Goſe*, whence it had the name; Of a poore Village made a City by *Henry* the firſt, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who founded here two Churches and a ſtately Palace. Now one of the *Imperiall* Cities. 2 *Helmſtat* in the middle way betwixt *Brunſwick* and *Magdeburg*, firſt fortified by *Charles*, ſonne of *Charles* the *Great*, for a bridle to the neighbouring *Sclaves*: and being after given to the *Abbats* of *Werda*, was by them ſold to *William* the Duke of *Brunſwick*. *Quedelnberg* built alſo by *Henry* the firſt, much increaſed ſince by the neighbourhood of a very rich *Nunnerie*, the *Abbeſſe* whereof had formerly the priviledges of a *Prince* of the *Empire*. 4 *Hildeſheim*, an antient City, honoured with an *Epiſcopall* See by *Charles* the *Great*, at the firſt converſion of the *Saxons*. 5 *Grubenhagen*, which gave title to a younger branch of the houſe of *Brunſwick*; a *principality* and a member of the Empire. 6 *Hannover*, on the River *Leine*, well built, very ſtrongly fortified, and not meanly traded. 7 *Brunſwick* upon the River *Onacker* which paſſeth through it, paſſed over by many handſome bridges, the *Metropolis* of the antient *Saxonie*, and at this time the chief of this Dukedome; though of it ſelf *Imperiall*, and one of the *Hanſe*. The City of a *Quadrangular* form, ſeated in the midſt of a plain very fruitfull of corn; in compaſſe about two *Dutch*, or eight *Engliſh* miles; ſomewhat larger then *Nurenberg*, and leſſe then *Erdford*; containing in that compaſſe not above twelve Churches, whereof two have ſteeples covered with lead, a third with braſſe, all the reſt with tile. Rich, populous, and ſtrongly fortified, on ſome ſides with a double, on others with a treble wall; within which wals are five Cities, diſtinguiſhed by *priviledges*, but united by *Laws*. The whole firſt built by *Bruno* ſonne to *Ludolphus* Duke of *Saxonie*, and Uncle to the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, about the year 861. from whence it had the name of *Brunſwick*, or *Brunonis Vicus*, by the more elegant *Latiniſts*, *Brunopolis*. 8 *Hamelen*, on the Eaſt ſide of the *Weſer* or *Viſurgis*, encompaſſed with a deep moat, (occaſioned by a ſtream cut out of the River) round about which are divers fortifications and placed with Ordinance. Nigh unto this town is the mountain called alſo *Hamelen*, unto which the *Peed-piper* (as they call him) led the children of *Halberſtade*, where they all ſunk, and were never more ſeen; but of this ſtory more hereafter, when we come to *Tranſylvania*. 2 *Wolfenbaiten*, or *Wolfenbuttell*, where the Duke doth keep his Court: For though *Brunſwick* giveth him his title, yet will it not yeeld him any obedience, but reputeth herſelfe among the *Hanſetownes*; for which cauſe there have been great warres between the Dukes, and the Citizens. 3 *Halberſtade*, a Biſhops See; the late Biſhop (or *Adminiſtratour* of the Biſhoprick) being *Chriſtian* Duke of *Brunſwick*, that noble young ſouldier, who had vowed his life and fortune to the ſervice of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the *Garter*. A Biſhoprick of great revenew, and a very large territorie, ſince the alteration of *Religion*, given with the title of *Adminiſtrator* to the ſonnes of *Brunſwick*, but now by the concluſions

Lunenbourg

at *Munſter* aſſigned over to the Electour of *Brandenburg*, with the title of Prince of *Halberſtade*, the familie of *Brunſwick* being to be recompenſed with an alternate ſucceſſion in the Biſhoprick of *Oſnaburg*, and ſome other additionals.

The Dukedome of *LUNENBOVRG* hath on the Eaſt the *Old Marches* of *Brandenbourg*, on the Weſt the Dioceſe of *Bremen*, a part of *Weſtphalia*; on the North the *Elb*, and on the South the Dukedome of *Brunſwick*. So called from *Lunenbourg* the chiefe City, once the ſeat of the Dukes.

Places of moſt obſervation in it are 1 *Lunenbourg* it ſelf, ſituate on the River *Elvenaw*, an *Imperiall* City and one of the principall of the *Hanſe*; ſo called from the *Moon* here worſhipped in the times of *Idolatry*. Of a round form, and ſeated in a pleaſant valley; but with mountains near it; on one of which called *Calberg* is a very ſtrong Caſtle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens, who without this Fort could not be maſter of their *Liberties*. The wals about it are of earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep; the buildings generally fair (for the moſt part of brick) the chief whereof is the *Common-Councell* houſe; the ſtreets broad and long with two ſpacious Market-places, but of no very pleaſing ſmell: the whole about a mile and an halfe in length, half a mile in breadth; containing ſix Pariſh Churches. But the thing moſt conſiderable in it is the *Fountaine* of *Salt*, (the greateſt riches of this City) and the *houſe* in which the *Salt* is boiled, containing 52 rooms, and in each room 8 leaden pans in which are boiled dayly 8 tuns of ſalt, every tun being ſold for 8 *Flemmiſh* ſhillings bought by the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants, ſome part of the profits of it belonging to the Duke, ſome to the City, the reſt to the *Adventurers* who employ their ſtocks on it. 2 *Cella* the ſeat of the Duke of *Lunenburg*. 3 *Gethern* of no great bigneſſe or eſtimation, but for a ſtrong Caſtle of the Dukes. 4 *Oldendorp*, ſituate betwixt the *Venaw* and the River *Eſca*, memorable for the great battell fought neer it, *anno* 1633. betwixt the *Imperialiſts* and the *Swedes*; the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemie, beſides ſuch as were found dead in the fields and high wayes, all covered over with dead bodies; took 1500 of them priſoners, and got into their hands 13 pieces of Ordinance, good ſtore of Ammunition, and three mules laden with ſilver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this victory drawing in *Hammelen*, and other places of importance which ſtood out before. 5 *Verda*, an *Epiſcopall* See, but made a *Lay-fee* as moſt other *Biſhopricks* amongſt the *Lutherans*; the profits thereof being received commonly by a ſonne of *Danemark* with the title of *Adminiſtrator*, and laſtly by the treaty of *Munſter*, appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*; the Kings whereof to be entituled Dukes of *Verden*. 6 *Rotenburg*, the chief ſeat of the Biſhops of *Verda*.

Northweſt of *Lunenburg*, on both ſides of the *Elb*, lyeth the Countrey and *Seigneurie* of *LAWENBVRG*; ſo called from *Lawenburg*, (*Lawburgum*) a Town and Caſtle built on the further ſide of the *Albis*, by *Barnard* of *Anhalt*, the firſt Duke of *Saxonie* of that family: which being razed by Duke *Henry* the *Lyon*, was again reedified and given by *Albert* the ſonne of *Barnard* to his ſecond ſon *John*, from whom the Dukes of *Saxonie* commonly called Dukes of *Saxen-Lawenburg* doe derive themſelves: Who being pretermitted by the Emperour *Sigiſmund* at the death of *Albert* the third, the laſt of the direct line of *Barnard*, have ſince contented themſelves with their antient Patrimonie. Other towns obſervable in this *Signeurie*, next unto *Lawenburg* it ſelf, are 2 *Erdenburg*, a well fortified peece, oppoſite to *Lawenburg*, on the hither ſide of the *Elb*. 3 *Raceburg*, the ſepulture of this noble family. 4 *Moeln*, the cauſe of much contention betwixt the Lords hereof and the town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a title thereunto.

But to return again to *Brunſwick* and *Lunenbourg*; the antient Inhabitants of theſe Dukedomes were the *Duglubini* of *Tacitus*, with ſome parts of the *Chauci* and *Cheruſci*: theſe laſt of moſt fame for the blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in *Germanie* after *Druſus* for *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who behaving himſelfe with great inſolency towards the *Natives*, was ſet upon by theſe *Cheruſci* and their confederates, under the conduct of *Arminius* a great Prince amongſt them; himſelfe ſlain, and his whole Army conſiſting of three Legions, miſerably cut off, and deſpightfully uſed: which loſſe, and the ſhame thereof ſo diſtracted the Emperour (not formerly accuſtomed to the like misfortunes) that he was many times obſerved to tear his beard, knock his head againſt the poſts, and cry out in the bitterneſſe of his paſſion, *Redde mihi* legiones *Quintili Varo*. Having long time after this maintained their liberty (for the *Romans* kept themſelves from that time forwards on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*) they were at laſt ſubdued by the *Saxons*, continuing part of that great Dukedom till the proſcription of *Henry* ſurnamed the *Lyon*, ſpoken of before; whoſe reconciliation being made, by meanes of *Henry* the ſecond of *England*, whoſe daughter *Maud* hee had formerly married; the Emperor *Barbaroſſa* reſtored to him again the Cities of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg* with their ſeverall Territories: of which his two ſons *Henry* and *William* were firſt created Earles, then Dukes, the one of *Brunſwick*, and the other of *Lunenbourg*, by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond. Which honours and Eſtates doe ſtill remain unto their Poſterities. Before I come to the ſucceſſions of which Princes, I ſhall crave leave to ſpeak of the Originall of the *Guelfian* Familie, Dukes at the ſame time of *Bavaria* and *Saxonie*; of which they are at this time the ſole remainder. A Family derived from one *Guelphus* (whence it had the name) the ſon of *Iſenberdus* Earl of *Altorf* in *Schwaben*: whoſe wife called *Jermintrudis*, having accuſed a poor woman of Adultery, and cauſed her to be grievouſly puniſhed, for having 12 children at a birth; was afterwards delivered of the like number, & all of them ſons. Her husband being abſent at the time of her delivery, ſhe commanded the *Nurſe* to kill 11 of them; fearing (it ſeems) the like ſhame and puniſhment, as by her inſtigation was inflicted on the other woman. The *Nurſe* going to perform this ungodly command, was met by the old Earl then returning homewards: who asked her what ſhe had in her Apron, ſhe made anſwer *Whelps*; he deſired to ſee them,

ſhee

Hassia.

ſhee denyed him. Angrie at this refuſall he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his owne ſonnes, pretty ſweet babes, and of moſt promiſing countenances. Examining the matter he found out the truth, and enjoyning the *old Trot* to be ſecret in it, he put the children out to Nurſe; ſix years expired, the Earl invited to a Feaſt moſt of his own and his Ladies kindred, and attiring the young boyes all alike, preſented them unto their Mother. Who ſuſpecting by the number of them, what the matter was, confeſſed her offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her children: Whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelpes*, alluding to the *Whelpes* or Puppies, which the Nurſe told him ſhe had in her Apron. From the eldeſt of theſe *Guelphs* or *Guelpes* ſucceeded that *Henry Guelph* ſonne of *Robert* Earl of *Altorf*, whom *Conrade* the ſecond made Duke of *Bavaria*; many of whoſe poſterity enjoyed that Dukedome: increaſed at laſt by the addition of the Dukedome of *Saxonie* in the perſon of Duke *Henry* ſurnamed the *Proud*, Father of *Henry* called the *Lyon*, and Grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the firſt Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, whoſe ſucceſſion followeth in this Order.

The DVKES of *BRUNSWICK* and *LVNENBVRG*.

1 *Henry* ſurnamed the *Lyon*, the laſt Duke of *Saxony*, and the firſt of this Title.

		Brunſwick			*Lunenburg.*
1195	2	*Henry* firſt Earl after Duke of *Brunſwick*.	1195	2	*William* firſt Earl, after Duke of *Lunenburg*.
1213	3	*Otho* ſonne of *William* Duke of *Lunenburg*; after the death of *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick* alſo.			
1252	4	*Albert* ſonne of *Otho*.	1252	4	*John* ſonne of *Otho*.
1279	5	*Albert* II. ſonne of *Albert*.	1261	5	*Otho* II. ſonne of *John*.
1318	6	*Otho* II. ſonne of *Albert* the ſecond.	1330	6	*Otho* III. ſonne of *Otho* the ſecond.
1334	7	*Magnus* ſonne of *Albert* II. on the failing of the other houſe, enjoyed both Eſtates.			
1368	8	*Magnus* II. ſon of *Magnus* the firſt.			
1373	9	*Henry* II. ſonne of *Magnus* the ſecond.			
1416	10	*William* ſon of *Henry*.		10	*Barnard* brother of *Magnus* the ſecond.
1482	11	*William* II. ſon of *William*.			
1503	12	*Henry* II. ſon of *Will.* the ſecond.	1434	11	*Frederick* II. ſon of *Barnard*
1514	13	*Henry* III. ſon of *Henry* the ſecond.	1478	12	*Otho* III. ſon of *Frederick*.
1568	14	*Julius* ſon of *Henry* the third.	1514	13	*Henry* III. ſon of *Otho* the third.
1589	15	*Henry* IV. ſon of *Julius*, who married the Lady *Elizabeth*, ſiſter to *Anne* Queen of *England*.	1532	14	*Otho* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third.
				15	*Erneſt* the brother of *Otho* ſucceeded in his brothers life time; ſurrendring his Eſtate for an Annuall penſion.
	16	*Frederick Ulric* ſon of *Elizabeth* of *Denemark* and *Henry Julius*.	1546	16	*Henry* IV. ſon of *Erneſt*.
1634	17	*Auguſtus*, ſon of *Henry* Duke of *Lunenbourg*, ſucceeded on the death of *Fredenick Ulrick*, and the failer of the houſe of *Brunſwick* in him, in this Dukedome.	1590	17	*Erneſt* II. ſon of *Henry* the fourth.
				18	*Wolfgangus*, the brother of *Henry* the fourth, and Uncle of *Ernestus* the ſecond, now Duke of *Lunenbourg*, *anno* 1648.

The Armes of theſe Dukedomes were firſt the ſame, that is to ſay, *Gules*, two Lyons *Or*; Armed *Azure*, which Arms they tooke by reaſon of their extraction from the Kings of *England*, then Dukes of *Normandie*; retained to this day by the Dukes of *Brunſwick* without any Addition. But thoſe of *Lunenbourg* have added three Coates more unto it: the whole bearing being quarterly 1 *Gules*, two Lyons *Or*, Armed *Azure*; 2 *Azure*, Seme of Hearts *Gules*, a Lyon *Azure*, Armed, and Crowned *Or*, 3 *Azure*, a Lyon *Argent*, Crowned *Gules*, and 4 *Gules*, within a Border Componie *Or*, and *Azure*; a Lyon of the *ſecond*, Armed of the *third*.

HASSIA.

HASSIA, is bounded on the North with *Brunſwick*, on the South with *Veteravia*, or the State of *Wideraw*; on the Eaſt with *Saxonie*; on the Weſt with *Weſtphalia*. So called from the *Heſſi*, who having vanquiſhed the *Chatti*, the old Inhabitants of this Countrey, poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached here by *Boniface* or *Winifred*, an *Engliſh* Saxon, (afterwards Archbiſhop of *Mentz*) *anno* 730 or thereabouts. Of whom I find this memorable Apophthegm, *that in old times there were Golden Prelates and wooden Chalices, but in his time wooden Prelates and Golden Chalices.* Not much unlike to which I have read another, but of later date, *viz.* that *once the* Chriſtians *had blinde Churches and lightſome hearts*, but now they have lightſome Churches *and blinde hearts*.

The Countrey is very fruitfull of corn, and affordeth good *paſturage* for the feeding of Cattell,

Haſſia.

of which they have great droves and heards in many places; with great abundance of Stags, and other Deer for the pleaſures of hunting harboured in the woods hereof, with which in many parts of it it is very much ſhaded. It breedeth alſo on the *Downes* good ſtore of ſheep, enriched with the fineſt fleece of any in *Germany*; the Staple commodity of this Country: and in the mountainous parts hereof there want not rich *Mines* of braſſe, lead, and other metals, which yeild great profit to the people.

Chief towns herein, are 1 *Allendorf* on the *VVeſer*, (or *Viſnegis*) of much eſteeme for the ſprings or fountaines of *Salt* which are thereabouts. 2 *Friſlar*, upon the *Eder*, well walled, and ſituate in a fruitfull and pleaſant ſoil; belonging to the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Mentz*, but in regard of the convenient ſituation of it, much aimed at, many times attempted, and ſometimes forcibly poſſeſſed, both by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, and Dukes of *Saxony*. 3 *Fuld*, on a River of that name, remarkable for the *Monaſtery* there founded by *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, by the name of Saint *Saviours*, the *Abbot*, which is a *Prince* of the *Empire*, *Chancellour* of the *Empereſſe*, and Lord of a goodly territory in this Country, called from hence *Stift Fuld*. 4 *Frankenberg*, on the *Eder* alſo, ſo called from the *French*, who incamped there in their wars againſt the *Saxons*; firſt founded by *Theodorick* the *French* King, *anno* 520. but much enlarged by *Charles* the *Great*, about the yeer 804. 5 *Eſchewege*, on the brow of an hill neer the River *VVert*, of great trading for the *woad*, of which the fields adjoyning yeild a rich increaſe. Being deſtroyed by the *Hungarians*, it was re-edified and enlarged by the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond: and having ſuffered much miſery in the long war between *Adolph*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, it fell at laſt into the poſſeſſion of the *Lantgrave*, anno 1387. 6 *Melſingen*, on the River *Fuld*. 7 *Darmſtad*, lately, if not at the preſent, the ſeat and inheritance of Count *Ludovick* of the younger houſe of the *Lantgraves*, taken Priſoner by Count *Mansfield*, anno 1622. and his whole Country expoſed unto ſpoil and rapine; becauſe (beſides many other ill offices) he was the chief perſwader of the *Princes of the Union* to disband their forces, provided for defence of themſelves and the *Palatinate*, and to reconcile themſelves to the Emperour. 8 *Marpurg*, the ſeat of the ſecond houſe of the *Lantgraves*, deſcending from that *Philip*, who was *Lantgrave* in the time of *Charles* the fift, whom he ſo valiantly withſtood: pleaſantly ſeated on the *Lon*, amongſt Viny downes, and ſhady Mountains; honoured with an Univerſity founded here by *Lewis*, Biſhop of *Munſter*, anno 1426. and beautified with a magnificent Caſtle (the ordinary dwelling of thoſe Princes) ſituate on an high hill ſomewhat out of the Town: which gives it a very gallant proſpect over the Town and Country. 9 *Geiſen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*, and a ſmall Univerſity alſo. 10 *Dietz*, upon the River *Lon*, belonging alſo to the houſe of *Caſſels*. 11 *Caſſels*, the chief town and ordinary reſidence of the Lantgraves of the elder houſe, who are hence ſometimes called the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*: commodiouſly ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoil, and well fortified with ſtrong earthen walls, and deep ditches; but the houſes in it of no great beauty, being compoſed for the moſt part of wood, thatch and clay.

Within the limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, not ſubject to the *Lantgraves* of *Haſſia*, though included within the limits of it before laid down, taking up the Weſtern parts thereof where it meets with *Weſtphalia*; in figure very neer a ſquare, each ſide of which is of the length of ſix ordinary *Dutch*, or 24 *Engliſh* miles. The ſoil much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *Haſſia*, ſave that it hath ſome veines of Quick-ſilver, and inexhauſtible mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; theſe laſt in greateſt plenty about *Veldung*, and the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſenburg*, two of the beſt townes and places of it. Others of chief note, 3 *Waldeck* it ſelf on the River *Eder*, the firſt ſeat of the Earls hereof, who have here an ancient Caſtle, from whence the whole Country takes its name. 4 *Mengerhuſe*, in a fair Caſtle whereof live the preſent Earls. 5 *Witterberg*, in a pleaſant and fruitfull Soil, betwixt the Rivers *Twiſt* and *Ahra*. 6 *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Albertus Magnus* for its golden Mines, yeilding great profit to theſe Earls. The Pedegree of whom is fetched from one *Witichinde* Earl of *Snalenberg*, whom *Charles* the Great made Advocate or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*, being an Office in theſe times of great juriſdiction. By *Witichind* the ſecond one of his Succeſſours, this *office* was ſurrendred into the hands of the Chapter, for the ſumme of 300 marks in ſilver; and to cut off all further claimes, *Henry*, the nephew of this *Witichind*, by his ſon *Otho*, was by the Chapter gratified with the town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the firſt Earl: whoſe nephew *Henry* ſurnamed *Ferreus*, ſubdued *Corbach*, anno 1366. and added it to his Eſtate. By a third *Henry*, grandchild of this *Ferreus*, or man of Iron, this Earldom formerly held in fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was firſt put under the patronage and protection of the *Lantgraves* of *Haſſia*, anno 1428. as it continueth to this day; the Earls hereof content with their own eſtates, and more addicted to the Book, then unto the Sword, have acted little in the wars to improve their fortunes.

The antient inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the reſt of *Haſſia*, and alſo of the County of *Naſſaw* in *Veteravia*, neer unto adjoyning, were the *Catti*, or *Chatti* mentioned by the Antients: firſt conquered (after the withdrawing of the *Roman* forces) by the *Heſſi*; and both ſubdued not long after by the *Thuringians*. Subject unto the *Lantgraves* of *Duringen* till the death of *Henry*, the laſt of the male iſſue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the diviſion of whoſe eſtate the Weſtern moiety of *Duringen* fell to the ſhare of *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, one of the Competitours, who leaving the title of *Lantgrave* of *Duringen* to the Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*; took to himſelf the title of the *Lantgrave* of *Heſſen*, in memory of the *Heſſi*, ſpoken of before. Of his ſucceſſours the moſt puiſſant was that *Philip*, who

in

in the time of *Charles* the fift much ſwayed the affaires of *Germany*, anno 1529. he diſcomfited King *Ferdinand*, and reſtored *Ulrick* to the Dukedome of *Wirtenberg*, anno 1530. he united all the *Proteſtant* Princes, and Cities of *Germany* in a *common league* at *Smalcald*; for the defence of the Proteſtant *Religion*, anno 1545. he undertook the cauſe of *Goſlaria* againſt the Duke of *Brunſwick*, whom in a ſet battell he took priſoner, together with his ſon, and poſſeſſed his Country, *anno* 1548. he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany*, in an *offenſive* and a *defenſive* league againſt *Charles* the fifth, but that war ſucceeded not proſperouſly. For the Duke of *Saxony* his perpetuall *Confederate*, being taken priſoner, he ſubmitted himſelf to the Emperour at *Kale* or *Hale* in *Duringen*: his ſons-in-law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, and *Wolfang* Prince of *Deuxponts*, having given their bonds for his return. The conditions of his pardon were, firſt, that he ſhould diſmantle all his townes, except *Caſſell*; 2 That he ſhould yeeld up unto the Emperour all his munition; 3 That he ſhould pay unto the Emperour 150000 Crownes. The ſame night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to ſupper, his ſons-in-law of *Saxony* and *Brandenbourg* accompanying him. After ſupper he was contrary to the Lawes of *Hoſpitality*, and the Emperours exact promiſe, detained priſoner. The fallacy ſtood thus. In the Emperours compact with the three Princes, the words were, that the *Lantgrave* ſhould be kept, *Nicht in einig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in any priſon*: which the Emperours Secretary by a ſmall daſh of his pen, turned into, *Nicht in ewig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in everlaſting priſon*. Well, in priſon he ſtaid five years, which being expired, he was again ſet at large by Duke *Maurice*, the overthrower and reſtorer of the *German* liberty. The reſidue of theſe *Lantgraves* in their ſeverall times, occur in the enſuing Catalogue of

The LANTGRAVES of *HASSIA.*

1263 1 *Henry* of *Brabant*, ſon of *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, and *Sophia* his wife, daughter of *Lewis* the ſixt, *Lantgrave* of *Thuringia*, after a nine years warre betwixt him and the Marqueſſe of *Miſnia* divided the eſtate, and took unto himſelf the title of *Lantgrave* of *Heſſen.*

1308 2 *Otho* and *John*, ſons of *Henry.*

1323 3 *Henry* II. and *Lewis*, ſons of *Otho.*

1376 4 *Herman*, the ſon of *Lewis.*

1414 5 *Lewis* II. ſon of *Herman*, ſurnamed the *Milde.*

1458 6 *Lewis* III. ſon of *Lewis* the *Milde.*

7 *William*, the eldeſt ſon of *Lewis* the third, diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by

8 *William* II. his youngeſt brother.

1509 9 *Philip*, the famous Lantgrave ſpoken of before, ſon of *William* the ſecond.

1567 10 *William* III. eldeſt ſon of *Philip*, ſucceeded in one moiety of the eſtate and reſided at *Caſſiles*: the other moiety being divided betwixt his brethren *Ludowick* of *Marpurg*, and *George* of *Darmſtad*, father of *Ludowick* of *Darmſtad* before mentioned.

1590 11 *Maurice*, eldeſt ſon of *William* the third.

12 *William* IV. ſon of *Maurice*, now living, 1648.

The Armes of theſe Lantgraves are *Azure*, a Lyon Barry of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Gules*, Crowned *Or.*

WESTPHALIA.

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and part of *Lunenberg*: on the Weſt with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*, *Cleveland*, *Overyſſell*, *Weſt* and *Eaſt-Friſeland*, and the *German* Ocean; on the North with the *Elb*, and the Dukedome of *Holſtein*; and on the South with *Weteravia*, and ſome part of *Haſſia*.

It was thus called of the *Weſtphali*, a tribe or diviſion of the *Saxons*, diſtinguiſhed heretofore into the *Tranſalbinos*, inhabiting in the County of *Holſtein*, now a part of *Denemark*; the *Joſtphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the Ocean, with the River of *Saltza*, and the *Weſer*; taking up the Biſhopricks of *Breme*, *Verden*, *Hildeſheim*, *Halberſtat* and *Mydburg*, with the Dukedomes of *Lunenburg* and *Brunſwick*; the *Angrivarians*, taking up the north-weſt part of the modern *Weſtphalen*, betwixt the Biſhoprick of *Breme*, and the Earldome of *Colen*: and finally, the *Weſtphali*, or *Weſtern-Saxons*, inhabiting the reſt of the modern *Weſtphalen* with the Earldomes of *Mark*, *Berg*, *Zulphen*, the ſeigneury of *Over-yſſell*, and ſome parts of *Guelderland* and *Holland*: But the *Saxons* being ſubjugated by the power of the *French*, and ſeverall new eſtates erected out of that old ſtock: the remnant of the *Weſtphali* and *Angrivarians*, the Biſhoprick of *Breme* being added unto the accompt, were comprehended and united in the name of *WESTPHALEN.*

The ſoil, according to the ſeverall parts of it, is of different natures, the parts adjoyning to the *Weſer* being deſert, and barren, thoſe towards the Earldomes of *Mark* and *Bergen*, mountainous and full of woods; the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry ſands, heaths, and unfruitfull thickets, like the wilde parts of *Windſor Forreſt* betwixt *Staines* and *Fernham*. In other parts exceeding plentifull of corn, and of excellent *paſturage*, ſtored with great plenty of wilde fruits, and

Weſtphalen (by reaſon of the many woods) abundance of *Akorns*: with infinite herds of ſwine (which they breed up with thoſe naturall helps) of ſo good a reliſh, that a *Gammon* of *Weſtphalian Bacon*, is reckoned for a principall diſh at a great mans Table.

The old inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Majores* about *Bremen*, the *Chanani*, *Angrivarii*, and *Bructeri* inhabiting about *Munſter*, *Oſnaburg*, and ſo towards the land of *Colen*; and part of the *Cheruſci* (before ſpoken of) taking up thoſe parts which lie neareſt unto *Brunſwick* and *Lunenbourg*. All of them vanquiſhed by *Druſus*, the ſon-in-law of *Auguſtus*, but ſoon reſtored to their former liberty, by the great overthrow given by the *Cheruſci* and their aſſociates to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards uniting into one name with the *French*, they expulſed the *Romans* out of *Gaul*: leaving their forſaken, and ill-inhabited ſeats to be taken up by the *Saxons*; with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themſelves both in name and nation. Of that great body it continued a conſiderable Member (both when a Kingdome and a Dukedome) till the proſcription and deprivation of Duke *Henry* the *Lyon*, at what time the parts beyond the *Weſer* were uſurped by *Barnard*, Biſhop of *Paderborn*; thoſe betwixt the *Weſer*, and the *Rhene* by *Philip*, Archbiſhop of *Colen*, whoſe ſucceſſours ſtill hold the title of Dukes of *Weſtphalen*: the Biſhopricks of *Bremen*, *Munſter*, *Paderborn*, and *Mindaw*, having been formerly endowed with goodly territories, had ſome accrewments alſo out of this Eſtate: every one catching hold of that which lay neareſt to him. But not to make too many ſubdiviſions of it, we will divide it onely into theſe two parts, *VVeſtphalen* ſpecially ſo called, and 2 the *Biſhoprick* of *Bremen*.

In *VVESTPHALEN* ſpecially ſo called, which is that part hereof which lyeth next to *Cleveland*, the places of moſt obſervation are, 1 *Geſeke*, a town of good repute; 2 *Brala*, a village of great beauty; 3 *Arusberg*; and 4 *Fredeborch*, honoured with the title of *Prefectures*; 5 *VVadenborch*; 6 *Homberg*, lording it over fair and ſpacious territories. All which, with two Lordſhips, and eight *Prefectures* more, diſperſed in the Dukedome of *Engern*, and County of *Surland*, belong unto the Biſhop of *Colen*, the titulary Duke of *VVeſtphalen*, and *Angrivaria*, (*Engern*) as he ſtiles himſelf. 7 *Mountabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) ſeated in that part hereof, which is called *VVeſterwald*; a town of conſequence belonging to the *Elector* of *Triers*. 8 *Rhenen*; 9 *Schamlat*; and 10 *Beekem*, reaſonable good towns, all of the Biſhoprick of *Munſter*. 11 *Munſter* it ſelf, famous for the Treaty, and concluſions made upon that treaty, for the peace of *Germany*, ſeated upon the River *Ems*, and ſo called from a *Monaſtery*, here founded by *Charles* the great, which gave beginning to the Town; ſuppoſed to be that *Mediolanium*, which *Ptolemy* placeth in this tract, a beautifull, and well fortified City, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the *Temporall* Lord of it. Famous for the wofull Tragedies here acted by a lawleſſe crew of *Anabaptiſts*, who choſe themſelves a King (that famous Taylor, *John* of *Leiden*) whom they called King of *Sion*, as they named the City *New Jeruſalem*; proclaimed a community both of goods and women, cut off the heads of all that oppoſed their doings: and after many fanatick and deſperate actions by the care and induſtry of the Biſhop and his confederates brought to condigne puniſhment. The Story is to be ſeen at large in *Sleidan*, and ſome modern pamphlets, wherein as in a Mirrour, we may plainly ſee the face of the preſent times. 12 *Oſnaburg*, firſt built, as ſome ſay, by *Julius Cæſar*; as others by the Earls of *Engern*; but neither ſo ancient as the one, nor of ſo late a ſtanding as the others make it; here being an Epiſcopall See founded by *Charles* the *Great*, who gave it all the priviledges of an *Univerſity*. Liberally endowed at the firſt erection of the ſame, and ſince ſo well improved, both in Power, and Patrimony, that an *alternate* ſucceſſion in it by the Dukes of *Brunſwick* hath been concluded on in the Treaty of *Munſter*, as a fit compenſation for the Biſhoprick of *Halberſtad* (otherwiſe diſpoſed of by that Treaty) of late enjoyed wholly by that Family. 13 *Quakenberg*, on the River *Haſe*, 14 *VVarendorp*; and 15 *VVildſhuſen*, towns of that Biſhoprick. 16 *Paderborn*, an Epiſcopall See alſo, founded by *Charles* the *Great*, at the firſt converſion of the *Saxons*; more ancient then ſtrong, yet more ſtrong then beautifull. 17 *Ringelenſtein*; and 18 *Oſſendorf*, belonging to the Biſhop of *Paderborn*. 19 *Minden*, upon the *VVeſer*, another of the Epiſcopall Sees founded by *Charles* the *Great*, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony: converted to *lay-uſes* ſince the *Reformation*, under colour of *Adminiſtration* of the goods of the Biſhoprick; and now by the concluſions at *Munſter* ſetled for ever on the *Electors* of *Brandenbourg*, with the title of *Prince* of *Minden*. 20 *Rintelin*, a ſtrong town, conveniently ſeated on the *Weſer*, not far from *Minden*, to the Biſhop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that *Weſtphalen* had formerly been a part of Saint *Peters Patrimony* belonging wholly to the *Clergy*; but there are ſome Free Cities, and ſecular Princes which have ſhares therein, as 1 *VVarburg*, a neat town, but ſeated on an uneven piece of ground neer the River *Dimula*, a town which tradeth much in *good Ale*, brewed here, and ſold in all parts of the Country: heretofore a County of it ſelf under the Earls hereof, now governed in the nature of a *Free Eſtate*, and reckoned an *Imperiall* City. 2 *Brakel*, accompted of as *Imperiall* alſo. 3 *Herworden*, a town of good ſtrength and note, governed by its own Lawes and Magiſtrates, under the protection of *Colen*. 4 *Lemgow*, belonging heretofore to the Earls of *Lippe*, but by them ſo well priviledged and enfranchiſed, that now it governeth it ſelf as a *Free Eſtate*. Here is alſo 5 The town and County of *Ravensburg*, belonging anciently to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and now in the rights of that houſe to the Elector of *Brandenbourg*: As alſo 6 the Town and County of *Lippe*, lying on the weſt ſide of the *VVeſer*; the Pedegree of the Earls whereof ſome fetch from that *Sp. Manlius*, who de-

fended

fended the *Roman Capitol* against the *Gauls*, (they might as well derive it from the Geese which preserved that *Capitol*:) others with greater modestie look no higher for it then to the times of *Charls* the *Great*, one of the noble Families of the antient *Saxons*. Some other Lords and Earls here are; but these most considerable: all of them *Homagers* of the Empire, but their acknowledgments hereof little more then titular; though not long since in danger of performing more reall services: the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. after the surprize of *Holstein*, and some part of *Denemark*, *anno* 1627. gaining so far upon this Countrie, that had not the King of *Sweden* come in so seasonably he had made himself absolute master of it; and by the opportunity of the situation of it on the back of the *Netherlands* forced the *United States* to some great extremities. As for the title of Duke of *Westphalen* and *Engern*, it hath been long used (as before was said) by the Bishops of *Colen*: as also (but with better right) by the house of *Lawenburg*, descended from the antient *Electorall* Familie, writing themselves in that regard Dukes of *Saxonie*, *Westphalen*, and *Angrivaria* or *Engern*.

Bremen.

2 The *Bishoprick* of *BREME* lyeth on the other side of the *Weser*, extending as far as to the *Elb*, and the *German* Ocean. So called of 1 *Breme* the principall Citie seated on the *Weser*, there broad and navigable; the Citie by that means well traded, populous, and rich, beautified with fair and even streets, and very strongly fortified against all Invasions both by Art and Nature; the town being so seated amongst *Fenns*, occasioned by the overflowings of the River, that it may be easily drowned on all sides to keep off an Enemie: adorned with a spacious Market-place, a fair Counsell-house, and a large Cathedrall, the See of the Arch-bishop, who is the *temporall* Lord of the town and territorie. Other Towns of especiall note are 2 *Osenbridge*, not far from *Breme*, from whence great quantitie of linnen is brought yearly to *England* and other places. 3 *Arusten* on the *Weser* also. 4 *Oterenberg*, on the river *Bolla*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Ocean*. 5 *Buxtertrude*, on the *Elb*, not far from *Hamburg*, but on the hither side of the water. 6 *Stode*, *Stadt*, or *Stadium*, seated on the River *Zuinghe*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*, accompted the antienteſt town in all *Saxonie*, and one of the first which was enrolled amongst the *Hanse*, and by especiall priviledge had the pre-emption of all the *Rhenish* wine that passed by them, and the right also of coining money. But being over-topped by the power and trade of *Hamburg*, (5 *Dutch* miles from it) it grew at length so poor, and in such decay, that their yearly *Revenues* came but to 90*l. per annum*, so that they were fain to sell their priviledges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themselves under the protection of the Bishops of *Breme*: Revived again upon the comming thither of the *English* Merchants, who finding some hard measure from the *Hamburgers* fixed their *Staple* here: by means whereof the Citizens in short time grew exceeding wealthy: the buildings fair and beautifull, the town strongly fortified. Situate in a place so easily overwhelmed with water, that the people in ostentation of their strength and securitie used to have Ordinance of *stone* planted over their Gates. But the late *German* wars have made them sensible of their folly: when notwithstanding their new works and an *English* Garrison under Sir *Charls Morgan*, they were compelled to submit themselves to the Earl of *Tilly*, *anno* 1627. recovered after by the *Swedes* in the course of their victories.

As for the *Bishoprick* of *Bremen* it was first founded by *Charls* the *Great* in the person of *Willibode* an *English Saxon*, one of the first Preachers of the Gospel in these parts of this Country. The town before that time a poor Village only, being made an *Archiepiscopall* See, and the *Metropolitan* of all the Churches of the *North*, quickly grew up into esteem, as the Bishops did in power and *Patrimonie*, till they became Lords of all this tract. Governed since the *Reformation* of *Religion*, by *Lay-Bishops* or *Administrators* of the Rents of the Bishoprick, which under that title they inverted to their proper use. And now of late by the *Conclusions* made at *Munster* setled as an inheritance on the Crown of *Sweden* to be enjoyed together with the Bishoprick of *Verda*, by the Kings thereof with the title of Dukes of *Breme* and *Verden*: the antient liberties of those Cities formerly granted by their Bishops, being still preserved.

EAST-FRISELAND.

EAST-FRISELAND is bounded on the East with the River *Weser*, by which parted from *Westphalen*; on the West with the River *Ems* which parteth it from *Groyningen* and the rest of *West-Friseland*; on the North with the *German* Ocean, and on the South with the Earldom of *Mark*, a part of *Cleveland*. So called from the *Frisii*, who casting out the old inhabitants possessed themselves of it, and called it by their own name *Friseland*: divided by the *Ems* or *Amisus*, into the Western spoken of amongst the *Netherlands*, and the Eastern or *East-Friseland* in which now we are.

The nature of the soil we shall see anon when we come to the subdivisions of it. Chief Rivers, besides those of *Ems*, and 2 *Weser*, spoken of elsewhere, 3 *Juda*, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence *Die Jadie*. 4 *Dalliart*, on which standeth the Citie of *Emden*; 5 *Delm*, and 6 *Honta*, neighboured by *Delmenhorst* and *Oldenborch*, towns of this Countrie. The whole divided into 1 the Countie of *Emden*, or *East-Friseland* properly so called, and 2 the Earldom of *Oldenburg*.

1 *EAST-FRISELAND* specially so called, hath on the West the River *Ems*, on the North the Ocean, on the East and South the Earldom of *Oldenburg*; called also the Countie of

EMDEN

East Friseland.

EMDEN, from the fair Town of *Emden*, the chief Citie of it. The soil hereof is very fruitfull both in corn and pasturage, sending great store of Oxen, Horses, Wool, Swine, Butter, Cheese, and all sorts of Grain into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not easily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatsoever. Chief towns herein are 1 *Emden*, so called from the *Ems*, on which it is situate: *Dollaert* a smal River falling here into it: a noted and wel traded town, beautified with a Haven so deep & large, that the greatest ships with ful sail are admitted into it. The people rich, affirmed to have 60 ships of 100 tuns apeece, and 600 lesser Barks of their own, besides 700 Busses and Fisher boats, maintained for the most part, by their Herring-fishing on the Coast of *England*. The buildings generally fair, both private and publick, especially the Church, the Town-Hall, and Earls Palace. This last a strong and stately Castle, situate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all sides compassed by the Sea, and yet not strong enough to preserve the Townsmen in their due obedience: who about 50 years agoe, taking advantage of the absence of their Earl, kept him out of their Town, because he seemed not to approve the *Calvinian* humor; and have since governed in the nature of a *Common-wealth* confederate with the *States* of the *United Provinces*, for their better establishment and support. So easily is *Religion* made a mask to disguise *Rebellion*. 2 *Aurich*, by some called *Anseling*, seated in the *Inlands*, rich, and well walled, of great resort by reason of the pleasure of Hunting, afforded very liberally in the *Forrests* and Woods adjoining; drawing hither the Nobilitie and Gentrie in great abundance. 3 *Esen*, on the Sea shore, which gives the title of an Earl to the Lord thereof, as doth also 4 *Jevere*, situate on the West of the River *Jada*, but both Earls subject to the Earl of *East-Friseland*. 5 *Vredeburg* (that is to say, the *Free Village*) so called from some Immunities granted by the Earls, possessed a while by those of *Brunswick*, who fenced and garrisoned it for themselves; but in the end recovered by *Ezard* the 2. Earl. 6 *Broick*, the seat and proper Government of the Ancestors of these Earls: from whence the parts adjoining are called *Broickmerland*. 7 *Norden*, another *Præfecture* or Captain-ship of the said Ancestors. 8 *Dunort*, a strong Castle and retiring place of the Earls. 9 *Linghen*, upon the *Ems*, a strong town well fortified and as well garrisoned, belonging to the King of *Spain* as Vicar to the Empire over all *Friseland*, even to *Ditmersh* and the confines of *Danemark*. A dignitie procured by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charls* the 5. of the Emperour *Frederick* the 3. in right whereof, the King of *Spain* as heir of the House of *Burgundie*, hath some preheminence over *Emden*, of little use to him since the falling off of the *Belgick* Provinces. More towns of note I find not in it, but of Castles, stately dwelling houses, and well built Villages, an incredible number, standing so thick that in many places they join together: some of them being withall so large, so well peopled, and of streets so spacious that they may compare with many Cities in *Germanie*, of the which the most City-like is named *Leere*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Minores*, described by *Plinie* to be so barbarous a people, and so destitute of all necessarie provision for the life of man, that they had no drinke but rain water, preserved in great troughs before the doors of their Cottages. These outed or subdued by the *Frisons*, a neighbouring people possessing *North-Holland*, the *District* of *Vtrecht*, with the Countries of *Groyning* and *West-Friseland*: who having once passed over the *Ems*, extended their Dominions as far as *Danemark*. Governed by Kings, but intermingled with and overpowered by the *Saxons*, till the time of *Charls* the Great, by whom the last King *Roboald* overcome in fight was perswaded to receive the Sacrament of holy Baptisme. But being told that his friends and kinsfolks were in hell, because no Christians: Neither will I (said he) be of that profession, *for I love to be amongst my kindred*. After this *Friseland* was a Member of the *French* kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charls* the Bald, *anno* 893. at which time all *Friseland* on the West side of the *Ems* was conferred upon him: possessed, but not without much war and bloudshed, by his Successours; the *Frisons* ever and anon rebelling against them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Those parts of it on the other side of the *Ems*, remained unto the *German* Empire, governed by *Deputies*, Lieutenants, and *Provinciall* Earls, accomptable to the Emperours for their Administration, till the year 1453. in which *Vlrick* Governor hereof for the Emperor *Frederick*, having got the Town of *Emden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of *East-Friseland*, transmitting the Estate and title unto his posterity.

EARLS of *EAST-FRISELAND*.

1453	1	*Vlricus* son of *Enno*, the son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governours for the Empire in *Broick* and *Norden*, made the first Earl of *East-Friseland* by the Emperour *Frederick*.
1466	2	*Ezard* the son of *Vlrick*, who got *Vreburg* from the Citizens of *Brunswick*.
1528	3	*Enno* the son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greetzil*, formerly usurped by the Dukes of *Guelders*.
1540	4	*Ezard* II. sonne of *Enno*, who married *Katharine* daughter to *Gustavus* the first of *Sweden*.
	5	*Enno* II. son of *Ezard* the 2. and the Lady *Katharine*.
1586	6	*Rudolphus Christianus* son of *Enno* the 2. who being well affected to the *Lutheran* formes, (first introduced in the time of *Enno* the 1.) was by a *Calvinian* partie grown up in *Emden*, dispossessed of that Citie, *anno* 1592.
1608	7	*Enno Ludovicus*, son of *Rudolphus Christianus*, succeeded in this Earldom on the death of his Father, and is still living for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of the Earls of *East-Friseland*, are *Azure*, Semi of Billets *Argent*, 2 Lyons *Or*.

2 The

2. The Earldom of *OLDENBOVRG*, containeth that part of this Country which lyeth on the West side of the *Weser*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Munster* and *East-Friseland*, specially so called; and so extending Northwards to the *German* Ocean. So called from *Oldenburg* the chief Citie of it, and the head of this Earldom. *Oldenburg.*

The soil hereof exceeding rich but in pastures specially, which breed them in time Herds of Cattel; and furnish not this Country only, but some of their *German* neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley, and Oats, plenty of fruits and trees of all sorts. Large woods, and those well stored with *Venison*, which yeeld unto the Gentry the delights of hunting. But the air cold and foggie in some extremitie, especially in Winter, and near the Sea.

Chief towns hereof are, 1 *Oldenborch* on the River *Hunta*, repaired if not built by *Otho* the *Great*, who founded the Church of S. *John Baptist*: A town of no great state or beautie, the houses generally of clay, but the Castle (the dwelling place of the Earls) of well hewn stones; of an *orbicular* form with deep ditches of water, the Town and Castle both being strongly fortified. 2 *Delmenhorst*, on the river *Delm*, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247. by *Otho* brother of Earl *Christian* the 2. and having been 65 years in possession of the Bishops of *Munster*, was suddenly surprised on *Palm Sunday* morning by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, *anno* 1547. continuing ever since part of this estate. 3 *Beck-husen*, on a River which falleth not far off into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea, which is called *Die Jade*. 4 *Eqnarten*, 5 *Ovelgard*, both seated in a long *Langnet* or *Demy-Iland*, betwixt the said *Die Jade*, and the River *Weser*, called *Butiada*, both taken, and the last well fortified by *John* Earl of *Oldenborch*, *anno* 1520. belonging formerly to the Prefecture of *East Friseland*, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6 *Westerberg*, the chief town, of a spatious territorie. 7 *Urieiade*, a strong piece, on the river *Jade*, built by Earl *Christiern*, one of the younger branches of the house of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8 *Mellum*, 9 *Jadele*, places of principall importance, the one on the river *Jade*, the other near the *Ocean*. Here is also within this Earldom the Province of *Amerlander*, supposed by some to have been the seat of the *Ambrones*, who accompanyed the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* in their expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces, and were slain by *Marius*.

As for the Earls of *Oldenburg*, they derive themselves from *Walpert* one of the Nephews of *Witikindus*, the last King and first Duke of the *Saxons*, who having built a strong Castle on the borders of *Bremen* in honour of his wife *Alteburg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Alteburgum*, so called by the *Latinists* to this day, by the *Germans Oldenborch*, about the year 850. But his male issue failing in *Frederick* the 7. Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* bloud, who had married *Richsa*, the daughter of *John*, the fift Earl of this Familie. From him in a direct line descended *Christian* or *Christiern*, eldest son of *Theodorick*, who being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Denemark*, *anno* 1448. left his estate in this Earldome (but reserving the title, according to the fashion of *Germanie*) to his brother *Gerrard*; the better to take him off from his pretentions to the Dukedom of *Slesvick*, and the Earldom of *Holst*, in which he did pretend a share. The Patrimonie of it much improved by the addition of the Countries of *Rustingen*, *Oystingen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea, bequeathed by the last will and testament of the Lady *Marie* Countesse of *Jevere* in *East Friseland*, to *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The Succession of these Earls, in regard the Royall line of *Denemark*, and by consequence of *Great Britain* is descended from them, I have here subjoined, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The EARLS of *OLDENBOVRG*.

850	1	*Walpert*, of the race of *Witikind*, the first Earl of *Oldenburg*.
856	2	*Theodorik*, the son of *Walpert*.
	3	*Theodorick* II. son of *Theodorick* the 1.
	4	*Otho* son of *Theodorick* the 2.
	5	*John*, the son of *Otho*, accompanied the Emperour *Henry* the 2. in his wars against the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, *anno* 1007.
	6	*Huno* surnamed the *Glorious*, son of *John*.
	7	*Frederick*, son of *Huno*, fortunate in his wars against the *Frisians*, the last of the male line of this house.
	8	*Elimarus*, the son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* bloud, and of *Richsa* his wife, the daughter of *John* the fift *Earl*.
1120	9	*Elimarus* II. the son of *Elimar* the 1.
	10	*Christianus*, son of *Elimar* the 2. surnamed the *Courageous*, or the *Warlike*, a professed enemy of *Henry* the *Lyon* Duke of *Saxonie*, from whom he tooke the Citie of *Breme*.
	11	*Maurice*, the son of *Christian*, an associate of *Arnulph* Earl of *Holstein*, in his wars with *Denemark*.
	12	*Christian* II. son of *Maurice*.
	13	*John* II. son of *Christian* the 2.
	14	*John* III. son of *John* the 2.

15 *Conrade*,

Oldenbourg

15 *Courade*, the ſon of *John* the 3.

16 *Chriſtian* III. ſon of *Conrade*, a ſtudent in *Colen*, where initiated into *holy Orders*, which he relinquiſhed much againſt the will of his brother *Maurice*, on the death of his Father.

17 *Theodorick*, ſon of *Chriſtian* the 3. the firſt Farl of *Delmenhorſt* of this line, which fell to him by the death of *Nicholas* Archbiſhop of *Breme*, deſcended from a younger ſon of *John* the 2.

1440 18 *Chriſtian* IV. ſon of *Theodorick*, and of *Heduigis* ſiſter and heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus* Dukes of *Sleſwick* and Earls of *Holſtein*, elected on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus* to the Crown of *Danemark*, *anno* 1448.

1448 19 *Gerrard* the brother of *Chriſtian* the 4. a Prince of an unquiet ſpirit, alwayes in wars, and alwayes worſted; he loſt the Town of *Delmenhorſt* to the Biſhop of *Munſter*.

1500 20 *John* IV. ſon of *Gerrard*, repaired the ruines of his Eſtate, and ſetled the diſtractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Butiada*.

1526 21 *Antonie*, the ſon of *John* the 4. by a ſudden ſurpriſe recovered *Delmenhorſt* from the Biſhop of *Munſter*, *anno* 1547. which he ſtrongly fortified.

1573 22 *John* V. ſon of *Antonie*, enlarged this Earldome with the Provinces of *Fuſtingen*, *Oyſtingen*, and *Wangerland*, bequeathed to him by the laſt will of the Counteſſe of *Jevere* in *Eaſt Friſeland*.

23 *Anthonie* II. brother of *John* the 5. in whoſe life time he was Earl of *Delmenhorſt*, and after his death of *Oldenburg* alſo: ſtill living, *anno* 1649. for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And thus we ſee the preſent eſtate of *Germanie*, diſtracted and divided amongſt many *Princes*, *Prelates* and *Incorporate Towns*, the chief of which are herein mentioned and deſcribed. But beſides theſe there are many others of leſſe note, and ſmaller Territories, which yet are *abſolute* and *free*: inſomuch, that in one dayes riding, a *Traveller* may twice or thrice meet with divers lawes, and divers coins; every *free Prince* and *free Citie* (whoſe *laws* the Emperours are ſworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what lawes, and coin what money they will. And hence in the cenſure of Kingdoms, the King of *Spain* is ſaid to be *Rex hominum*, becauſe of his Subjects reaſonable obedience; the King of *France*, *Rex Aſinorum*, becauſe of their infinite taxes and impoſitions; the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, becauſe of his Subjects often inſurrections againſt, and depoſitions of their Princes: but the Emperour of *Germanie*, is called *Rex Regum*, becauſe there is ſuch a number of *Reguli*, or *Free Princes* which live under his command; or rather at their owne command, (for they do even what they liſt) as the Emperour *Maximilian* the firſt, well noted.

And to ſay truth, the publick Government hereof is nothing leſſe then *Monarchi call*: the Emperour being accompted amongſt the Princes but as the chief Officer of the Empire, not reckoned of by *Bodin* and others of our great *Statiſts* and *Civilians*, as an abſolute *Monarch*; ſuch as the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*, are confeſſed to be. For the priviledges of the *Free Cities* being made perpetuall, the great Eſtates *hereditarie*, and the Empire *eligible*: the *Emperours* were brought at laſt to ſuch low condition, as to be made accomptable to the *States* of the Empire: who if they be perſwaded in their conſciences, or but think they be ſo, that he is likely by his *mal-adminiſtration* to deſtroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good adviſe, *ab Electorum Collegio Cæſarea majeſtate privari poteſt* (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the *Electors*, and a more fit and able man choſen into the place: and that too as the Emperour *Jodocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his *Conſtitutions*, *anno* 1410. *ſine infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of treaſon or diſloyaltie. So that the ſupreme *power* and majeſtie of the Empire ſeems to reſide eſpecially and contractedly in the *Electorall* Colledge; diffuſedly in the *Imperial Diets*, by way of execution in the *Chamber of Spires*, and other the ſupreme Courts of the ſeverall Circles. But that which makes that *body* which they call the Empire, is the Aſſembly of the Prelates, Princes and Commiſſioners of the Free Cities in their Diets or *Parliaments*, the Emperour preſiding in them: whom he that ſaw adorned in his royall Robes with the *Imperiall* Crown and Scepter, with the titles of *Cæſar* and *Auguſtus* given at every word, would think that the whole action did take life from him. Whereas indeed he hath not ſo much priviledge as a *negative* voice, but is to put in execution ſuch *Decrees* and *Sanctions* as theſe *Eſtates* aſſembled have thought fit to make; not able to doe any Act by his own authority, which may ſpeak him *Emperour*. But on the other ſide the *Princes* take power unto themſelves, of making laws for, and impoſing taxes on their ſubjects: of raiſing war upon one another or againſt a third, and doing many other Acts of *ſupreme* authoritie which in the Emperour would be counted matters of *mal-adminiſtration*. Such points as theſe, together with the appointing of *Judges* and the like chief *Magiſtrates* (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of but in *generall Diets*, which may be ſummoned by or without the Emperour, as occaſion ſerveth. And to this weakning of the majeſtie and power *Imperiall*, the neighbouring Princes have afforded their beſt aſſiſtance; jealous of their own intereſſe and decreaſe of power, if that vaſt body ſo well limbed ſhould be ſtrongly jointed, and all the ſeverall Members of it united under the command of one *Supreme* head. Clear proof whereof we have in thoſe ſolemn leagues and confederations made in their ſeverall

verall times againſt *Charls* the 5. and the late Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. as ſoon as they began to be in ſome poſſibilitie of ſetling the *Imperiall* majeſtie in its proper ſplendour, and bringing down the Princes to a lower pitch.

As for the Forces of the Empire, for by that name we are to meaſure the abilities and power of *Germanie*, we may diſcern them by thoſe *Levies* which have been raiſed upon particular occaſions, or by the joint conſent of the *Free Eſtates* aſſembled in the *Imperiall Diets*. Firſt for particular *Levies* made by private perſons, we find 12000 Foot and 8000 Horſe raiſed by the Prince *Palatine* of *Zweybruck* for aid of the *French Hugonots* againſt their King; and on the other ſide no fewer then 7000 Horſe under the conduct of the Duke of *Aumal*, and the Earl of *Mansfield* for the ſervice of that King againſt the *Hugonots*. And as for *Levies* made by conſent of the *States*, we find that *Charls* the 5. had under his Enſigns at *Vienna*, 90000 Foot and 35000 Horſe; *Maximilian* the 2. at *Javerin* in *Hungarie*, 34000 Horſe, and full 100000 Foot; and finally that in the war betwixt *Charls* the 5. and the Proteſtant Princes, there were no leſſe then 150000 men on both ſides; which numbers no one Countrie in *Europe* is able to equall. In a word, it is generally conceived that the Empire is able to raiſe 200000 Horſe and Foot, with Arms, Canon and Ammunition of all ſorts, proportionable; which the inſtances before brought do moſt plainly evidence.

Touching the *Revenue* of the Empire, I find them eſtimated by *Boterus*, and ſome others ſince at ſeven millions of Crowns yearly. Which may be true enough, taking the Kingdoms of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, with the hereditary Eſtates of *Auſtria* into the accompt. But ſince they are not ſo united unto the *Empire*, but they may at ſome time or other be disjoined again, no reaſon they ſhould come into the reckoning, unleſſe it be as the *Revenue* of the Emperour, though not of the Empire. But as for the *Revenue* of the Empire it ſelf, taken abſtractedly from the perſonall and *patrimoniall* Eſtate of the Emperour, whoſoever he be; it can amount to no ſuch ſum: the *tribute* paid by the *Free* or *Imperiall* Cities (at leaſt 60 in number) amounting to no more *per annum* then 15000 *Florens* or 1500*l. Engliſh*; and what is that but like a *Pepper corn* for a *quit-rent* in that mighty Continent. By this we may conjecture what the reſt may come to. And though in the way of ſaving charges (which may be reckoned as a part of his income alſo) the *Princes* and *Free Cities* be bound to aid him in the time of war againſt the *Turk* with 3842 Horſe and 16200 Foot, which he may challenge without troubling the *Diets* for it; yet war is ſuch a great devourer, that if the *Diets* doe not grant him greater helps, he is like to be but a ſorry gainer by the undertaking; beſides the ſmalneſſe of thoſe forces conſidered with the numbers they are able to raiſe, and the puiſſance of the enemie whom they are to encounter.

Finally for the *Arms* of the Empire, they are *Sol*, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, *Saturn*, armed and crowned *Mars*: the two heads ſignifying (as ſome think) the Eaſtern and the Weſtern Empires. *Cuſpinian* a learned *German* conceives rather that theſe Arms are two Eagles conjoined, and not one Eagle with two heads: and that they were taken up by the *German* Nation in memorie of the three *Legions* of *Quintilius Varus* diſcomfited by them; at what time they ſeiſed on two of the *Roman Eagles* (the Militarie Enſign of that people) the third being caſt into the *Fennes* by the *Standard bearer*. But whether it be one or two, certain it is that the one head is quite pulled off; and the whole bodie quite ſtripped of all its Feathers, the *Imperiall* dignitie being little more then *titular*, diſpoiled and ſtript of all Authority appertaining to it.

There are in *Germanie*
Archbiſhops 6. Biſhops 34.
Univerſities 21.

Viz.

1 *Colen.*	7 *Vienna.*	13 *Prague.*	19 *Lipſique.*
2 *Triers.*	8 *Herborn.*	14 *Olmunts.*	20 *Wittenberg.*
3 *Ments.*	9 *Hanaw.*	15 *Frankford.*	21 *Marpurg.*
4 *Heidelberg.*	10 *Wirtenberg.*	16 *Roſtock.*	
5 *Tubingen.*	11 *Friberg.*	17 *Gripſwald.*	
6 *Ingolſtade.*	12 *Altorf.*	18 *Jene.*	

And ſo much for *GERMANIE.*

OF

OF
DENMARK.

THE Kingdome of *DENMARK* or *DANEMARK*, reckoning in the additions of the Dukedom of *Holſtein* and the great continent of *Norway* with the Iſles thereof, now all united and incorporated into one Eſtate; is bounded on the East with the *Baltick* Sea, and ſome part of *Sweden*; on the Weſt with the main *Weſtern* Ocean; on the North-east with a part of *Sweden*; full North with the main *Frozen* Seas; and on the South with *Germanie*, from which divided on the South-weſt by the River *Albis*; and on the South-east by the *Trave*; a little *Iſthmus* or neck of Land uniting it to that Continent.

It tooke this name from the *Danes*, of long times the Inhabitants and Poſſeſſours of it; ſo called *quaſi Danorum tractus ſive Regio*, (as *Mercator* hath it,) becauſe the Countrie of that people: but rather *quaſi Danorum limes*, the bounds or *marches* of the *Danes*, bordering cloſe upon the *Dutch*, from whom it had the name of *Danemarch*.

As for the ſituation of it in regard of the Heavens, it lieth partly in the Northern temperate *Zone*, and partly within the *Artick* Circle, extending from the middle Parallel of the tenth *Clime*, or 55. degree of Latitude, where it joineth with *Germanie*, as far as the 71 degree, where it hath no other bound but the *Frozen* Ocean. By which accompt the longeſt day in the moſt Southern parts hereof is 17 hours and a quarter, but in the parts extremely North, they have no night for two whole months, three weeks, one day, and ſome ſeven hours over, as on the other ſide no day for the like quantitie of time, when the Sun is moſt remote from them in the other *Tropick*. The air hereof by conſequence muſt be ſharp and bitter, even in the very warmeſt places: Of which and of the nature of the ſoile wee ſhall ſpeak more punctually in the Deſcription and Survey of the ſeverall parts.

The Inhabitants generally are of good ſtature, clear of complexion, well coloured, for the moſt part healthfull and long-lived: for though they eat and drink beyond meaſure, they have good digeſtions. In manners very ſevere, craftie and provident in the managing of their Affairs; but proud withall, and (as the *Hiſtorian* ſaid of another perſon) *omnium quæ dixerant fecerantve oſtentatores*, great Vaunters of whatſoever they do or ſay, highly opinionated of their own actions, and peremptorie in maintaining their own opinions: Religious obſervers of their words and contracts, and ſtrict in executing juſtice, eſpecially in puniſhing of *Theeves* and *Pirats*: Such of them as do follow the wars prove reaſonable good Souldiers both by Sea and Land; but fitter for the Sea then field-ſervice: the Magiſtrate wiſe rather by experience then ſtudie: though they love learning, and eaſily attain all languages which they give their minds to: the old men covetous, the young men thriftie, and the Merchant ambitious: the Nobilitie and Gentrie are generally of as antient families as moſt in Chriſtendom, here being ſome of thoſe houſes ſtill remaining, which were preſent at the pacification made betwixt *Charls* the *Great*, and *Hemingus* King of the *Danes*: and which addes much unto their honour, they keep their bloud unmixt from marriages with the Vulgar ſort, and reckon it for an high diſgrace to change their Arms, or make any addition thereunto. The *women* are fair, diſcreet and cour-

teous,

teous, and know well how to govern their houſholds; exceeding fruitfull in bearing Children, but delivered of them with great difficultie. Both Sexes ſpeake the *Dutch* or *German*, common (but with ſome difference in the pronunciation) to all the Northern Nations in *Norwey* and *Swethland*. *The Cimbrick Cherſoneſe.*

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached to thoſe of *Holſtein* (the next neighbouring Countrey unto *Germany*) by S. *Angarius* Biſhop of *Bremen*, the generall *Apoſtle* of thoſe Northern parts, in the yeare 826. *Lewis* the *Godly* then being Emperour of the Weſt. In whoſe time *Harald* King of *Denmark* being expulſed his Kingdomes by the ſonnes of *Godfrey* or *Gottricus*, was baptized at *Mentz* with a great number of that people which attended on him, by the hands of *Ebbo* Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*, employed by the Emperour in that ſervice: the converſion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, aſſiſted by the Miniſtery of one *Poppo* the firſt Biſhop of *Arthuſen*, *Sueno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongſt the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the reign of *Olaus* the third, *anno* 1055 or thereabouts: the *Engliſh* aſſiſting in the work, and the good King ſo zealous in it, that hee was canonized a Saint, after his deceaſe. Relapſing for the moſt part to their antient *Gentiliſme*, they were finally regained unto *Chriſtianity*, by the means of Pope *Adrian* the fourth, an *Engliſh man*, about the yeare 1156. before his aſſuming of the Popedom called *Nicolaus Breakſpeare*. But by whomſoever firſt converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend ſome power and juriſdiction over them, which when they began to exerciſe with too much authority, *Waldemar* the third is ſaid to have returned this anſwer, *Naturam habemus a deo, Regnum a ſubditis, Divitias a parentibus, Religionem a* Romana *Eccleſia, quam ſi nobis invides renunciamus per præſentes*, that is to ſay, We hold our life from God, our Crown from our ſubjects, our Riches from our Anceſtors, our *Religion* from the Church of *Rome*; which if we envy us, we do here remit it by theſe preſents. But this *renunciation* though then threatened, was not made till afterwards: when the whole maſſe of *Popery* was aboliſhed by King *Frederick* the firſt, uſing therein the Miniſtery of *John Bugenhage* a *Divine* of *Pomeren*; by whom *reformed* according to the doctrine of the *Lutheran* Churches.

As for the *Government* of the *Church* ſince that *Reformation*, it continueth as before it was, by *Archbiſhops* and *Biſhops* in number as before, but much abridged of their *Revenues*, and a great part of their power. For *Frederick*, though he found it neceſſary to remove the old *Biſhops*, (not one of which would be perſwaded to the change of *Religion*) yet he ſubſtituted others in their places: allowing them a convenient maintenance, with a power of *Preſidence* in all *Church-Aſſemblies*, where they are to take the advice of other *Presbyters* along with them; and out of ſuch *Aſſemblies* to receive complaints, to provide remedie againſt ſcandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar *Inſpectors*, which concerne the Church. So that in all the Kings Dominions there are two Archbiſhops, and thirteen Biſhops: that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Londen*, the Biſhops of *Roſebilt*, *Odenſee*, *Ripen*, *Wiborch*, *Arthuſen*, *Bleſwitk*, and *Hadderſtene*, for the Kingdome of *Denmark*; the Archbiſhop of *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Stuffanger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norwey*; and the Biſhops of *Holar* and *Schalbolt*, for the Iſle of *Iſeland*: the Churches of *Holſtein*, (formerly under the Biſhops of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by *Super-intendents* as the reſt of the *Lutherans*.

The whole body of the eſtate (as appears by this) conſiſteth chiefly of three members; *viz.* 1 the Dukedome of *Holſtein*, containing *Wagerland*, *Ditmarſh*, *Stormaria* and *Holſtein* ſpecially ſo called: 2 the Kingdome of *Denmark* comprehending both *Jutlands*, part of *Scandia*, and the *Hemodes* or *Baltick* Iſlands: and 3 the Kingdom of *Norwey*, conſiſting of *Norwey* it ſelf, and the Iſlands of the *Northern Ocean*. Which parts we ſhall ſurvey in order, as before laid downe, premiſing firſt a word or two of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, in which the Dukedome of *Holſtein*, and the two *Jutlands* are contained.

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE.*

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE*, hath on the East the *Baltick* Sea, on the Weſt the main *German* Ocean, on the North the narrow Streit or *Fretum* which they call the *Sunde*, on the South-weſt the great river of *Albis*, on the South-eaſt the ſmall River of *Trave*; betwixt which is the neck or *Iſthmus* which unites it to *Germanie*. I know that ſome contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South with the river *Eydore*: but I have drawn it down to the *Elve* and the *Trave*, which give it more reſemblance to the *Cherſoneſe* or *Deny-Iſland* then the other doth: differting in this point from the common opinion. It had the name of *Cherſoneſus* ἀπὸ τῆς χερσὸς ἢ νήσου, *a terra & inſula*, it being the ſame with a *Peninſula* in the *Latine*: of which name there were five moſt famous, that is to ſay, 1 *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, which is now called *Morea*; 2 *Thracia Cherſoneſus* in *Thrace*, neer the Sea *Propontis*; 3 *Taurica Cherſoneſus* in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartarie*; 4 *Aurea Cherſoneſus* in *India*, which we now call *Malacca*; of all which we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) and 5 *Cimbrica Cherſoneſus*, where now we are. This laſt ſo called from the *Cimbri*, the firſt inhabitants hereof, originally deſcended from *Gomer* the ſonne of *Japhet*, thence called *Gomerii*, and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbri*. Leaving the plains of *Phrygia*, as too narrow for them, they ſought out new dwellings, and are ſaid to have firſt dwelt in the banks of *Palus Mæotis*, where they gave name to *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, there being. Being overcome by the *Scythians*, they removed their ſeats more Northward into a Countrey bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great *Ocean*, on the one ſide; and the forreſt of *Hercynia*, on the other; within

Wagerland. in which bounds is the *Peninsula* or countrey where we now are. They were a people of extraordinary big stature, having blew and red eyes, and lived most upon theft: so that for their sakes, Κλεβρους ὑπονομάζειν Γέρμανοι τὰς λῃστὰς, the *Germans* called all theeves *Cimbers*. It hapned that the *Ocean* overflowing a great part of their Countrey, compelled them to seek new seats: whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then lording over a great part of the World, for some place to settle in. This request being denyed, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their swords, what their Petitions could not obtain. *Manlius*, *Sillanus*, and *Cepio*, all *Roman* Consuls perished by them; so that now (saith *Florus*) *Actium esset de* Imperio Romano *nisi illi seculo* Marius *contigisset*: for he, as we have elsewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitans hereof were the *Saxons*, *Iuites*, and *Angles*, upon whose removall into *Brittaine* the greatest part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who still possesse it.

It containeth in length about 100 *Italian* miles, and 80 of the same miles in the breadth; and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of grownd, 30 walled townes, 6 Episcopall Sees, (besides those of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, which are under the Archbishop of *Bremen*) and 20 Royall Castles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and great men of the Countrey, as the private retirements of the King. The soil naturally more fit for pasturage then tillage; feeding such multitudes of Oxen, that from hence no fewer then 50000 are sent yearly to *Germanie*. Divided at the present into the Dukedome of *Holstein*, and the Province of *Iuitland*.

1. *HOLSTEIN.*

The Dukedome of *HOLSTEIN* taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Chersonese* where it joins to *Germanie*, extending as far North, as the River *Eydore*, which divides it from *Iuitland*. So called from the *Dutch* word *Holt*, which signifies a Wood or Forrest, according to the nature of it; the Countrey being low, marishie and full of *Woods*, as it continueth to this day. It contains in it these foure Provinces, 1 *Wagerland*, 2 *Stormarsh*, 3 *Ditmarsh*, and 4 *Holst*, or *Holstein* specially so called.

1 *WAGERLAND* is that part of *Holstein* which lies on the South East of this *Chersonese*, bounded on the East with *Mecklenbourg* and the *Baltick* sea; on the West with *Holstein* specially so called; on the North with the Sea *Baltick* also; on the South with some part of *Mecklenbourg*. So called from the *Wagrii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves* who possessed this tract; from whence the name of *Wagria* in our *Latine* writers.

Chief townes hereof are 1 *Lubeck*, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billow*, neer the fall thereof into the *Baltick* from which distant five *Italian* miles. The River capable of ships of a thousand Tun, which commonly they unlade at *Tremuren*, the Port Towne to the City, seated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it, it was first built by *Adolph* the second Earl of *Holstein*, *anno* 1143. but so well priviledged by him and his next successours, that in short time it bid defiance to its founders, (the cause of many differences betwixt it and those Princes) and was made a *Dukedome* of it selfe. By *Frederick* the first it was united to the *Empire*, after whose death they chose themselves another Duke, who having governed them five years was subdued by the *Danes*, and the City made subject to that Kingdome; remaining so till delivered by the Emperour *Frederick* the second. By whom being once again infranchised, it became *Imperiall*: afterwards listed amongst the *Hansetownes*, and the first in estimation of all the company, having above 600 ships of all sorts (some of a thousand Tun and and upwards) which belong unto it. But being their Trade is for the most part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from *Pirats*, they are most of them built for burden, and are slow of sail, and little serviceable, if at all, for a fight at Sea. But to return unto the City, it is built upon all the sides of a rising hill, on the top whereof standeth the Church of Saint *Marie*, (once the *Cathedrall* of the City, for it was *Episcopall*) whence is a descent to all the gates of the City, affording to the Eye a most pleasing prospect. The buildings very beautifull, and all of brick, the streets streight and even; the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorned with excellent imagerie, and much admired even by skilfull workmen: and unto every private house a pipe of water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the pattern whereof it hath been observed that the Conduits were first made in *London*, and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany*, or the more Northern Countries, which can equallize it either for the beauty and uniformity of the houses, the pleasant gardens, fair streets, delightfull walks without the wals, or for the Citizens themselves, who are much commended for their civilitie to strangers, and strict execution of justice without partiality. The whole in compasse about six miles, fortified with a double wall, deep ditches, and unfordable Rivers. 2 *Segeberg* on the River *Trave*, four *Dutch* miles from *Lubeck*, and neer the head of that River. 3 *Oldesso* on the same River, in the midst betwixt both. 4 *Gronneberg*, and 5 *Newkirk* on the *Baltick* shore: and 6 *Stendorp* more within the land, neer the edge of a *lake* out of which runs the River *Swentin*.

Southwest of *Wagerland* lieth *STORMARSH*, betwixt the *Elb* and two lesse Rivers called the *Billen* and the *Store*; from which last and the marishnesse of the situation, or from that River and the *Marsi*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Stormarsh*. Places of most importance are

1 *Crempe*

1 *Crempe*, on a little River ſo named, which falls not far off into the *Store*, and both together not much further into the *Elb*. A town well fortified by *Chriſtian* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keies of the Kingdom; as well appears by the reſiſtance which it made to the Duke of *Friuland*, againſt whom it held out 13 months, and yeelded at the laſt upon good conditions, *anno* 1628. 2 *Tychenberg*, (*Tychopolis* my Author cals it) a *Dutch* mile from *Crempe*, but on the very bank of the river *Elb*, where it receives the *Rbin*, a ſmall River upon which it is ſeated: firſt built and after very well fortified by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, of purpoſe to command the *Elb*, and put a ſtronger bridle in the mouths of the *Hamburgers*, *anno* 1603. now held to be the ſtrongeſt peece of all his Dominions; the onely Town of all this Dukedome, which yeelded not to the prevailing *Imperialiſts* in their late wars againſt the *Danes*, *anno* 1628. 3 *Bredenberg* a ſtrong town, belonging to the *Rantzoves*, one of the beſt pieces of the Kingdome; remarkable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to *Wallenſtein*, (Duke of *Fridland*) in the war aforeſaid: who at laſt taking it by aſſault put all the ſouldiers to the ſword. 4 *Pippenberg*, another ſtrong place, and of very great conſequence. 5 *Jetzeba*, on the River *Store*. 6 *Gluck-Stude*, upon a Creek or Bay of the *German* Ocean, repaired and fortified by the ſaid *Chriſtiern* the fourth (who much delighted in the place) to command the paſſage up the *Elb*. 7 *Store*. 8 *Hamburg* upon the *Billen*, where it falls into the *Elb*; an antient City built in the time of the *Saxons*, repaired by *Charles* the *Great*, and walled by the Emperour *Henry* the fourth. Accounted ſince that time an *Imperiall* City, and made one of the *Hanſe* on the firſt incorporating of thoſe Towns. Which notwithſtanding, on a controverſie ariſing about that time, betwixt the Earl of *Holſtein* and the people hereof, it was adjudged to belong to the Earles of *Holſt*, and that determination ratified by *Charles* the fourth, *anno* 1374. In purſuance whereof the *Hamburgers* took the *Oath of Allegeance* to *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of *Denmark* of that houſe, as Earl of *Holſt*; acknowledging him and his ſucceſſours for their lawfull Lords: though ſince they have endeavoured to ſhake off that yoak, preſuming very much on their power at Sea, and the aſſiſtance which they are aſſured of upon all occaſions from the reſt of the *Hanſetownes*. As for the Town it ſelfe, it is ſeated in a large plain, with fat and rich paſtures round about it: well fortified by art and nature: the *Haven* being ſhut up with a ſtrong iron chain. The buildings for the moſt part of brick, but more beautifull then well contrived, and the ſtreets ſomewhat of the narroweſt. The publick ſtructures very fair, eſpecially the Counſell houſe adorned with the *Statua's* of the *nine Worthies* carved with very great Art; the *Exchange* or meeting place for Merchants, and nine large Churches. The Citizens generally rich, maſters of many as great ſhips as ſail on the Ocean, ſome of them 1200 tun in burden; which bring in great profit beſides the great reſort of Merchants and their *Factors* from moſt places elſe: ſometimes the *Staple town* for the *Cloth* of *England*, removed on ſome diſcontents to *Stode*, and from thence to *Holland*. It is obſerved that there was in this town at one time 177 *Brewers*, and but 40 *Bakers*, nor more then one *Lawyer* and one *Phyſitian*. The reaſon of which diſproportion was, that a Cup of *Nimis* was their only *Phyſick*; their differences ſooner ended over a *Can* then by order of *Law*; and *Bread* being accounted but a *binder*, and ſo not to be uſed but in caſe of neceſſity. *Stormarſh.*

Betwixt the Rivers *Store* and *Eydore*, coaſting along the *German* Ocean lies the Province of *DITMARSH*, moſt properly called *Tuitſchmarſh*, from the mariſhneſſe of the ground and the *Dutch* Inhabitants, or from a mixture of thoſe people with the *Marſi* ſpoken of before. The people being naturally of the *Saxon* race, retain much of the ſtomach and animoſity of the Antient *Saxons*: never brought under the command of the Earles of *Holſt* (as *Wagerland* and *Storemarſh* were) till *Holſt* it ſelfe was joined to the Crown of *Denmark*. And though it was aliened from the Empire by *Frederick* the third, and given in Fee to *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of that houſe, *anno* 1474. yet would they not ſubmit unto his authority; but held it out againſt him and ſome of his ſucceſſours, whom in the year 1500 they vanquiſhed in the open field; till broken and made ſubject by the valour and good fortune of King *Frederick* the ſecond, *anno* 1559. Chief places in it are 1 *Meldorp* upon the Ocean, the chief Town of the Province; the Inhabitants of which are ſo wealthy, that many of them cover their houſes with copper. 2 *Londen*, oppoſite to a *Peninſula* or *Demi-Iſland* called *Elderſtede*, on the Weſt ſide whereof it ſtandeth. 3 *Heininckſte*, and 4 *Tellinckſte*; of which nothing memorable.

And as for *HOLSTEIN* it ſelfe, the fourth and laſt member of this Eſtate, though the firſt in power and reputation, it taketh up the *Inland* parts betwixt *Storemarſh* and *Juitland*, ſave that it hath an outlet into the *Baltick*, on the Northweſt of *Wagerland*. Chiefe places in the which are 1 *Kyel* (*Chilonium* in *Latine*) ſeated upon a navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedome of *Sleſwick*: a Town well traded, and having a capacious haven, ſeldome without good ſtore of ſhipping from *Germany*, *Lifeland*, *Sweden*, and the reſt of *Denmark*. 2 *Rendesberg*, the beſt fortified peece in all this Province. 3 *Niemunſter*, on the Northweſt of the *Sore*, not farre from the head of it. 4 *Wilſtre*, on a ſmall River ſo called. 5 *Bramſtede*, 6 *Borſholm*, not much obſervable: but for a *Monaſtery* in which *Henry* one of the Earles hereof (of a younger houſe) turned Monk and dyed, *anno* 1241.

The antient Inhabitants of this and the other three, were the *Saxons*, *Sigalones*, and *Subalingii*, placed here by *Ptolemie*; whom I conceive to be no other then ſome Tribes of the *Cimbri*, of whom this *Cherſoneſe* took name. The two laſt paſſing into the name of the firſt, and in the declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and ſpreading all along the Coaſts of the *German* Ocean, moleſted with their piracies and depredations, the ſhores of *Britain*. Known by that means unto the

Holstein. Britains, they were invited to assist them against the *Scots*: which action with the aid of the *Jutes* and *Angli*, (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*) they performed so honestly, as to make themselves masters of the best part of the Island. Such as remained behinde not being able to defend their owne against the *Sclaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Meeklenburg*: which being peopled by the *Wagrii*, tooke the name of *VVagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquished by *Charles* the *Great*, these on the North side of the *Elb*, became a part of the great Dukedome of *Saxonie*; and so continued till dismembred by *Lotharius* both Duke and Emperour: who gave the proper *Holst* (or *Holstein* specially so called) with the Province of *Storemarsh* to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deserved well of him in his wars, with the title of Earl of *Holstein*, *anno* 1114. By *Adolph* the second his successour, who having made a full conquest of it, caused it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *Germans*, from *Holland*, *VVestphalen*, and *Friseland*; by which meanes the name of *Sclaves* was at last worn out. By *Gerrard* the fift the Dukedome of *Slesvick*, was also conferred upon him by the bountie of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whose wars he served. *Adolph* the last Earle of this house dying without issue, the whole Estate fell on *Christiern*, sonne of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg* and *Heduigis* his wife, sister and heir to *Adolph* before-mentioned: who being called to the Crown of *Denmark*, compounded with his brother *Gerrard* for the summe of 50000 Markes; and having gotten *Ditmarsh* also of the Emperour *Frederick* the third, prevailed so farre as to have the whole Estate erected into a *Dukedome*, *Anno* 1474. to bee held by him and his successours of the *sacred Empire*. Which said, we will next adde the Catalogue of

The EARLES and DUKES of *HOLSTEIN*.

1114	1	*Adolph* of *Schomberg*, by *Lotharius* Emperour and Duke of *Saxonie* made the first Earle of *Holstein*.
1137	2	*Adolph* II. sonne of *Adolph* the first.
1164	3	*Adolph* III. sonne of *Adolph* the second, vanquished by *Canutus* King of the *Danes*, lost himself and his Countrey.
1232	4	*Adolph* IV. in his fathers life time recovered his estate from *Waldemar* the successour of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well-fought field, *anno* 1226. his father then prisoner to the *Danes*.
1261	5	*Gerrard* the second sonne of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland*, succeeded in *Holstein*.
1281	6	*Henry* the sonne of *Gerrard*, the first that set up a custome-house at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his *tols* and *taxes*.
1310	7	*Gerrard* II. sonne of *Henry*, slain treacherously by the *Danes*.
1339	8	*Henry* II. sonne of *Gerrard* the second.
1381	9	*Gerrard* III. sonne of *Henry* the second created the first Duke of *Slesvick* by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.
1404	10	*Henry* III. sonne of *Gerrard* the third.
1427	11	*Adolphus* V. commonly called the XII. (those of the younger houses being reckoned in) the last Earl of this house.
1459	12	*Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, sonne of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg* and his wife *Heduigis*, sister of *Henry*, and *Adolphus* the two last Earls,

succeeded in the Earldome of *Holstein*, inlarged with the addition of *Ditmarsh*, and erected into a Dukedome by the Emperor *Frederick* the third, *anno* 1474. But seeing that *Otho* Earle of *Schomberg*, pretended a right unto the whole as the next heir male, according to the constitutions of the *Empire* of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the brother of *Christiern* put in for his share, according to the ill custome of *Germanie*, of which it was then counted part, he was faine to buy his peace of both: giving to *Otho* 43000 *Florens* in ready money, with the Townes of *Pinnenberg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bramstede*, the antient possessions of the Earles of *Schomberg*, and 50000 markes to his brother *Gerrard*, besides his whole interest in the Earldome of *Oldenbourg*, as before was said. By this meanes *Holstein* was united to the Crown of *Denmark*, the Kings whereof as Dukes of *Holst*, being counted *Princes* of the Empire; but neither send unto the *Diets*, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick *taxes*, nor acknowledge any kinde of subjection to it, more then meerly *titularie*. Onely it was ordained at the request of the subjects, when first they were incorporated into that Kingdom, that in case of any grievance or unjust sentence in the *ordinary courts* of *justice*, wherein they found no remedie in the *supreme councell* of the *Province*, it might be lawfull for them to *appeale* to the *Imperiall Chamber*, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the present time, on sufficient caution, so hath it seldome or never been put in practise: the very grant or *priviledge* (if such it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But since this uniting of the two Estates, the title of Duke of *Holstein*, and a good part of the Countrey, was given unto *Adolphus*, brother of *Christiern* the third (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the *Garter anno* 1560) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their severall turns: after whose death, and the death of all his children dying without issue male, the title of it was conferred on *Ulrick* son of *Frederick* the second, and brother of *Christiern* the fourth, created Knight of the Garter by King *James*, *anno* 1605.

IVIT-

Iuitland.

IVITLAND.

IVITLAND, containeth all the reſt of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holſt* by the River *Eydore*, the antient boundarie betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*: but principally by a long trench and wall from one Sea to the other, of ſuch breadth that a chariot or two horſemen a breaſt might ride upon it. Firſt built in imitation of the *Picts wall* in *England*, by *Godfrey* King of *Danemark* in the time of *Charles* the *Great*: either to hinder the dayly incurſions of the *Saxons*, as ſome; or to ſtop the current of the victories of the ſaid *Charles*, as others thinke. The tract whereof, ſtill very eaſie to be ſeene, is called *Dennewerck*, (or the *Danes work*) to this very day.

It was ſo called from the *Juites*, who together with the *Angli*, and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a conqueſt of the beſt part of *Britain*. The Countrey ſo abounding in Cattell, that it ſendeth yeerly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, beſides great ſtore of Butter, Cheeſe, Tallow, Hides and Horſes; divided commonly into *North-Juitland*, dnd *South-Juitland*, or *Juitland* ſpecially ſo called, and the Dukedome of *Sleſwick*.

SOUTH-IVITLAND, or the Dukedome of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* which lies next to *Holſtein*: called *South-Juitland* from the *Southern* ſituation of it, and *Sleſwick* from the chief Town of it, and the head of this Dukedome. The Countrey for the moſt part plaine, little ſwelled with mountaines: the fields whereof doe interchangeably yeeld both fiſh and corn. For during one three years they ſow it conſtantly, and reap the fruits of it: and for the next three, let the *Pooles* overflow the land, to the end the fiſh may eat up the graſſe (whom they catch as often as they pleaſe) and the mudde which is left behinde inricheth the ſoil. But beſides their *Pooles*, they have alſo on the *Baltick* ſhores many goodly Bayes not onely commodious for Merchants, but well ſtored with fiſh, and with Salmons ſpecially.

Chief Townes herein are 1 *Flensburg*, ſeated amongſt very high Mountains on the ſhore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port ſo deep, ſo ſafe, and ſo commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their ſhips cloſe to their houſes. 2 *Huſem*, upon the *German* Ocean, nor farre from the mouth of the River *Edore*. 3 *Hadersleve*, a Biſhop See, if not rather ſome towne or manour of the Biſhops of *Sleſwick*, ſituate on a Navigable inlet of the *Baltick* Sea, wherewith it is almoſt incompaſſed; beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Hansburg*, begun by *John* the eldeſt ſon of king *Chriſtiern* the firſt, then Duke of *Holſt*, but finiſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond King of *Denmark*. 4 *Londenberg* in the *Peninſula* called *Elderſteds*, over againſt *De Soraats*, an Iſland of the *German* Ocean. 5 *Sternberg*, the ordinary reſidence of the Governor for the King of *Denmark*. 6 *Gottorp* a ſtrong Fort or Caſtle of the Duke of *Sleſwicks*, at the end of a large Bay or Inlet of the *Baltick* alſo: remarkable for the *Toll-booth*, or cuſtom-houſe there erected, at which there is *Toll* paid one yeare with another for 50000 Oxen, ſent out of *North-Juitland* into *Germanie*. 7 *Sleſwick* originally by the *Danes* called *Heydebui*, built as they ſay by *Hetbe* a Queen of that Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleſwick*, as the town upon the River *Slea*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Towne a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an *Epiſcopall* See, and being made the head of the Dukedome, ſo giving name unto the whole. A Dukedome firſt erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar* great Grandchilde of *Abel* a former King, *an.* 1280. to be held by him under the right & *ſoveraignty* of the Kings thereof. But the male-iſſue failing it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, conferred on *Gerrard* Earl of *Holſtein*, as before was ſaid, *anno* 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, ſhee extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; again recovered by the valour and good fortune of his ſonne *Adolphus*. After whoſe death, it fell together with *Holſtein* upon *Chriſtiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denemark*, as before related: by whom incorporated with that Crown: never ſince alienedd, but aſſigned ſometimes in portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the ſonnes of *Alexander*, ſurnamed of *Sunderburg*, (the place of his Nativity) ſon of *John*, one of the younger ſonnes of King *Chriſtiern* the third.

NORTH-IVITLAND, the moſt Northern part of all the *Cherſoneſe*, hath on the South the Dukedome of *Sleſwick*, but on all other parts the Sea. Divided commonly according to the number of the *Biſhopricks* into four *Dioceſes*, or *Diſtricts*, that is to ſay,

1 The Dioceſe of *RIP* or *Ripen*, bordering next to *Sleſwick*, and containeth 30 *Prefectures* or *Herets* (as they uſe to call them) ſeven Cities or walled Townes, and ten Caſtles. The Chief of which are 1 *Ripen* the Epiſcopall See, ſituate neer the *German* Ocean. 2 *Koldins* on a Creek of the *Baltick* Sea, where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Chriſtiern* the third, built a publick School, (one of my Authors calls it an Univerſity).

2 The *Dioceſe* of *ARTHUSEN* lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 32 *Herets* or *Prefectures*, ſeven Cities or walled Townes, and five Caſtles. The chief whereof are 1 *Arthuſen* the Epiſcopall See, ſeated on the *Baltick*, enjoying a commodious Port, and well frequented, the firſt Biſhop hereof being that *Coppo*, who converted this nation; *Chriſtianitie* and *Epiſcoparie* going for the moſt part hand in hand together. *Schunderburg*, on the South of *Arthuſen*.

Juitland.

3 *Kalloe*, a ſtrong Caſtle of the Kings ſeated in the inmoſt part of a large Bay occaſioned by the *Promontorie*, or Cape of *Hillenis*, extending hence two *Dutch* miles to the high hill of *Ellemanberg*. Oppoſite whereunto, and pertaining to this Juriſdiction, lie the Ilands of 1 *Samſoe*, 2 *Hiolm*, 3 *Tuen*, 4 *Hiarnce* (perhaps *Gerno*) 5 *Hilgenes*, and others.

3 The *Diocese* of *WIBORCH*, on the north of *Arthuſen*, containeth ſixteen *Herets*, the Ilands of 1 *Jegen*, 2 *Hanſholm*, 3 *Oſtholm*, 4 *Ciſland*, 5 *Egholm*, and 6 *Bodum:* three Cities, or walled Townes, and as many Caſtles: the principall of which are 1. *Wiborch*, the Epiſcopall See, an Inland City, but ſituate on a water which runneth into the Bay of *Limford*. The ordinary ſeat of *Judicature*, for both the *Juitlands*; for all Cauſes as well *Criminall*, or *Civill*: the Court continually ſitting from one day to another, unleſſe perhaps the *Judges* doe ſometimes adjourne it for their own refreſhments.

4. The *Diocese* of *BURGLAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying furtheſt north, is commonly ſubdivided into four parts or members; that is to ſay, 1. *Thyland*, lying ſouth of the Bay of *Limford*, on the *Baltick* ſide, whoſe chief town is 1 *Alborch*, the ordinary ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times ſtiled *Alburgenſis*, ſituate on the Bay aforeſaid, which opening into the *Baltick* Sea extendeth thorow the main land Weſtwards, almoſt as far as the *German* Ocean. 2 *Morſee*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three *Prefectures*, or *Herets*, the town of *Nicopen*, the Caſtle of *Lunſtod*, and the Iſle of *Agerse*. 3 *Hanheret*, on the northweſt of the Bay of *Limford*, containing four *Herets*, the town of *Thyſtad*, where *Chriſtiern* the third founded a publick School, or ſuch another Univerſity as that of *Kolding*; the Caſtle of *Orumne*, and the Ilands of *Oland* and *Oxeholm*. There is in this part alſo, the high Rock called *Skaringclint*, a noted Sea-mark; fitly ſerving to give notice to the Sayler of the *Quicksands* which lie underneath it, and about this Coaſt. 4 *Venſyſſell*, *Venſilia*, or *Wenſlie*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Vandalorum ſedes*, the ſeat of the *Vandals*, taketh up all the reſt of the north of *Juitland*, containing ſix *Prefectures*, the Ilands of *Greyſholm*, 2 *Hartzholm*, and 3 *Tydſholm*; three towns, and one Caſtle, the moſt remarkable of which is *Schagen*, with the moſt northerly point of all this *Cherſoneſe*. In this part is a very high mountain called Mount *Alberg*, in which are found ſome marks and remainders of the ancient Gyants, as the inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Juitlands* in the time of *Ptolemy*, and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phunduſii*, *Charudes*, and in the moſt northern tracts the *Cimbri*, of whom the four firſt were but *Tribes* or Nations. Theſe moving towards the South in that great expedition againſt *Spain* made by the neighbouring *Vandals* on the *Roman* Empire, occaſioned the *Juites* and *Angli* to inlarge or ſhift their dwellings: each taking up the parts which lay neareſt to them. The *Juites*, or *Gutæ*, being a people of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Ptolemy*, took up the nothern parts hereof from them, named *Juitland*: the other being a people of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the ſouth of the *Elb*, poſſeſſed them of thoſe parts which lay next the *Saxons* their old friends and confederates, (their chief town being *Sleſwick*) where *Angelen*, now an obſcure village, once of greater note, doth preſerve their memory. But theſe uniting with the *Saxons*, in the conqueſt of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep poſſeſſion of the Country againſt new *Invaders*, gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them. By whom theſe Countries being conquered, as far as to the River *Eydore*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdome: of whom we ſhall ſay more in the cloſe of all: firſt, taking a ſurvey of the *Baltick* Ilands, and ſuch Provinces on the main land of *Scandia*, as properly make up the Kingdome of *Denmark*.

2 The *BALTICK* ILANDS.

The *BALTICK ILANDS* are in number 35. and are ſo called, becauſe they lie diſperſed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *Germans* *De Ooſt zee*; antiently by ſome, *Mare Suevicum*; by *Pomponius Mela*, *Sinus Codanus*; by *Strabo*, *Sinus Venedicus*; but generally, *Mare Balticum*: becauſe the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by ſome Writers of the middle and darker times, called *Balthia*. It beginneth at the narrow paſſage called *the Sound*; and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia*, and *Lituania*. The reaſons why this ſea being ſo large, doth not *ebbe* and *flow*, are 1 the *narrowneſſe* of the ſtrait, by which the *Ocean* is let into it; and 2 the Northern ſituation of it, whereby the *Celeſtiall* Influences have leſſe power upon it. The principall of this great ſhole of Ilands, are 1 *Seland*, 2 *Fuinen*, or *Fionia*. 3 *Langeland*, 4 *Lawland*, 5 *Falſtre*, 6 *Axze*, 7 *Alen*, 8 *Toſinge*, 9 *Wheen*, 10 *Fimera*, and 11 *Bornholm*. Some others of leſſe note we ſhall onely name, and ſo paſſe them over.

1 *SELAND*, the greateſt Iland of the *Baltick* Seas, is ſituate neer the main land of *Scandia*, from which parted by a narrow *Strait* or *Fretum*, not above a *Dutch* mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sundt*, or *Sound*. A *Straight* thorow which all ſhips that have any trading to, or from the *Baltick*, muſt of neceſſity take their courſe; all other paſſages being barred up with impaſſable Rocks; or otherwiſe prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon forfeiture of all their goods. So that being the onely ſafe paſſage which theſe Seas afford, one may ſometimes ſee two

or

or three hundred Ships in a day paſſe thorow it: all which pay a *toll*, or *impoſition* to the King, according to their bils of lading. And to ſecure this *paſſage*, and command all *Paſſengers*, there are two ſtrong Caſtles: the one in *Scandia* called *Helſinbourg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Iland which is called *Croneberg*. But before we come unto this *Caſtle*, we muſt view the other parts of the Iland, being in length two dayes journey, and almoſt as much in breadth: the ſoil ſo fertile, that without any manuring or charge at all, it yeildeth plenty of all neceſſaries for the life of man. It was anciently called *Codonania*, and containeth in it 15 Cities or walled Townes, and 12 Royall Caſtles. The principall whereof, are 1 *Haffen*, or *Hafnia*, the *Metropolis* of the Ilands; by the Dutch called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven* of *Merchants*, ſituate near the Sea, with an handſome Port: the Iſle of *Amager* which lyeth on the Eaſt-ſide of the Town, making a very ſafe road for all kindes of ſhipping. The town of an *orbicular* forme, and reaſonably well fortified; but the buildings mean, for the moſt part of clay and timber, onely to be commended for a ſpacious *Market-place*. Yet herein as the chief town of all the Kingdome, and ſituate in the heart of theſe dominions, is the *Palace Royall*, built of Free ſtone, in form of a *Quadrangle*, but of no great beauty or magnificence. Moſt memorable for the *Univerſity* here founded by *Henry* or *Ericus* the ninth, but perfected by King *Chriſtiern* the firſt, by whom, and the ſucceeding Princes liberally endowed. 2 *Frederickſburg*, amongſt woods of Beech, built for a place of pleaſure by *Frederick* the ſecond, where the King hath a fine Houſe, and a little Park, in which (amongſt other foreiN Beaſts are) ſome fallow Deer tranſported hither out of *England* in the 24 year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3 *Roſchild*, not walled, but counted for a City, as a *See Epiſcopall*, the Biſhops whereof have anciently had the honour of *Crowning*, and inaugurating the Kings of *Danemark*. In the *Cathedrall* Church whereof are to be ſeen the Tombs of many of the *Daniſh* Kings; ſome of them very fair and ſumptuous, the moſt mean, and ordinary. 4 *Sore*, of old times beautified with a goodly *Monaſtery*, the *Revenues* whereof at the alteration of *Religion*, were converted to the maintenance of a *Free-Schoole*, built here by *Frederick* the firſt. But in the yeer 1623 *Chriſtiern* the fourth, adding hereunto the Revenues of two other *diſſolved Monaſteries*, the one in the Ile of *Lawland*, and the other in *Juitland*, founded here a new *Univerſity*, for the greater ſupply of learned Miniſters for the Churches of *Denmark* and *Norway* (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*) and furniſhed it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences, for its firſt *Profeſſours*. 5 *Elſinore*, or *Helſingore*, a village onely, but much frequented by Sea-faring men, as their ſhips paſſe by the *Sound*, upon which it is. Near unto which is 6, the ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle of *Croneberg*, built with incredible charge and paines by King *Frederick* the ſecond, the foundation of it being laid on huge ſtones ſunk into the Sea, and ſo faſtned together, that no ſtorme or tempeſt, how violent ſoever, is able to ſhake it. Well fortified as well as founded, and mixt of a Palace, and a Fort, being ſince the firſt building of it the moſt conſtant reſidence of the Kings of *Danemark*: who from hence may eaſily diſcern each ſhip which ſailes thorow the *Sundt*, each of which addeth more or leſſe unto his *Revenues*. A profitable and pleaſing proſpect. By the Commodity of this, and the oppoſite Caſtle, the King doth not onely ſecure his *Cuſtomes*, but very much ſtrengthen his Eſtate: the *Caſtles* being ſo near, and the *Strait* ſo narrow, that by the addition of ſome few Ships, he may keep the greateſt *Navy* that is from paſſing by him.

Unto the Government and Juriſdiction of this Iland belong many others, the principall whereof are 1 *Amigria*, or *Amagger*, which helpes to make up the *Port*, or *Road* of *Copenhagen*, ſpoken of before, planted with *Hollanders* brought hither by the procurement of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond. 2 *Mund*, or *Moem-land*, the chief town whereof is called *Stegoe*. 3 *Huene*, or *WHEEN*, a little South of *Croneberg* Caſtle; a *Dutch* mile in length, but not quite ſo broad: remarkable onely for the ſtudies of that famous Aſtronomer *Tycho Brahe*, to whom *Frederick* the ſecond gave this Iland, that living in a private and ſolitary place, removed from all company but his own Family onely, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day moſt obſervable for the Caſtle of *Uranopolis*, or *Urenbourg*, in which the greateſt part of his *Mathematicall* inſtruments are preſerved in ſafety.

III. *FIONIA*, or *FUINEN*, the ſecond Iland of accompt in all the *Baltick*, is ſituate betwixt *Seland*, and *Juitland*; from which laſt parted by a *Strait* called *Middelfar Sundt*, ſo narrow, and of ſo ſmall a Sea, that the Iland and the *Cherſoneſe* ſeemed joyned together. A Country of a pleaſant and delightfull ſituation, and as fruitfull withall; containing twelve *Dutch* miles in length, and four in breadth, and therein 24 *Herets* or *Prefectures*, 16 Townes, and ſix Royall Caſtles, beſides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemens houſes. The chief whereof are 1 *Odenſee*, or *Othenſche* (called in *Latine Othonia*) an Epiſcopall See founded here at the firſt converſion of this people, by *Otho* the *great*, whence it had the name. The town not large, but beautified with two fair Churches, the one dedicated to Saint *Canut*, the other to Saint *Francis*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iland, from which the reſidue of the Towns are almoſt equally diſtant, and ſo commodiouſly ſeated for trade and Merchandiſe, as they doe not onely traffick in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Ruſſia*, *Flanders*, and *Germany*. 2 *Nibourch*, 3 *Faborch*, 4 *Sniborck*, 5 *Middelfar*, whence the ſtreet ſo named: 6 *Bogeris*, and 7 *Kertominde*; all ſeated on ſome *Haven*, or convenient *Creek*: the principall of the Caſtles being 1 *Newbourg*, 2 *Hagenſchow*, 3 *Eſchebourg*, 4 *Hinſgagell*; 5 the Court of *Rugard*. In this Iland not far from the Caſtle of *Hagenſchow* is the mountain *Ochenberg*, where *John Ranzovius*, anno 1530. diſcomfited the great Army of *Chriſtopher*, the Brother of *Anthony*, Earl of

Baltick-Ilands.

of *Oldenburg*, coming in thoſe unſetled times to invade the Kingdome, under colour of reſtoring *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, formerly depoſed: in which fight the Earls of *Hoye* and *Teckleburg* were both ſlain in the place, and the Kingdome after that in quiet from the like pretenders.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are about 90 leſſer Ilands, moſt of them inhabited; the chief of which are

IV. *LANGELAND*, ſeven *Dutch* miles in length, in which, beſides many Villages and Gentlemens houſes, we have the town of *Raidkeping*, and the Caſtle of *Franeker*.

V. *LALAND* disjoyned from *Selandt*, by a little narrow ſtrait called *Groneſundt*; ſo plentifull of corn and Cheſnuts, that ſhips full fraighted with them, are ſent yeerly hence. An Iland, which beſides many Caſtles, Villages, and Manſion houſes of the Gentry, hath five good Towns, *viz.* 1 *Nyſtadt*, 2 *Naſco*, 3 *Togrop*, 4 *Richus*, and 5 *Mariboane*, in which laſt antiently was a very rich *Monaſtery*, the *Revenues* whereof are now employed for the endowment of the new *Univerſity* of *Sora*, founded by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, as before was noted.

VI. *FALSTRE*, four *German* miles in length, affording plenty of corn yearly to ſome neighbouring Ilands; chief towns wherein are, 1 *Nicopen*, which for the elegancy of the place, and pleaſantneſſe of the ſituation, is called the *Naples* of *Denmark*. 2 *Stabecopen*, from whence there is the ordinary paſſage into *Germany*, ſeven *Dutch* miles hence.

VII. *TUSINGE*, not far from *Suiborch*, or *Swineburg* a town of *Fionia*, a Dutch mile in length, ſituate in a dangerous and troubleſome ſea; from whence is no ſafe paſſage either to *Selandt*, *Fuinen*, or *Juitland*, though much diſtant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1 *Aſcens*, towards *Juitland*, 2 *Niburg*, towards *Selandt*, and 3 the *Court* of *Keltorp*, belonging to the noble Family of *Reſencrantz*.

VIII. *FIMERA*, or *FEMEREN*, a fruitfull and well-peopled Iland, having in it the townes of 1 *Derborch*, 2 *Stabul*, and 3 *Piettersborn*: A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not ſo much in danger of being made ſubject to the *Imperialiſts* by the taking of *Holſtein*, and both *Juitlands*; as by planting a ſtrong Garriſon in this ſmall Iland: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again, and better fortified then before againſt all invaſions, *anno* 1628. Of the remaining Ilands which pertain unto *Fionia*, we finde the names of 1 *Aroe*, 2 *Romſo*, 3 *Endelo*, 4 *Ebelo*, 5 *Boko*, 6 *Brando*, 7 *Zoroe*, 8 *Agernis*, 9 *Hellenis*, 10 *Jerdo*, 11 *Birkolm*; of which nothing memorable.

Amongſt theſe Ilands, but not ſubordinate to *Fionia*, are

IX. *ARIA*, belonging to the Dukedome of *Sleſwick*, conſiſting of three pariſhes, ſome Gentlemens houſes, and the Town and Caſtle of *Koping*, ſuppoſed to be the habitation of the *Arii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, but a Colony rather of them, as I ſuppoſe. And not far off,

X. *ALSEN*, another little Iland, but of more repute, called in *Latine*, *Elyſia*; oppoſite to the Gulf, or Bay of *Flensburg*, in the Dukedome of *Sleſwick*, to which it alſo appertaineth. Well ſtored with Beaſts for profit, and Game for pleaſure; ſo populous, that ſome thouſands of men may be eaſily and ſuddenly raiſed in it, conſiſting of 13 Pariſhes, and four Townes, that is to ſay, 1 *Gammelgard*, 2 *Oſterholm*, 3 *Norborch*, and 4 the good town and Caſtle of *Sunderburg*, one of the ordinary reſidences of the Dukes of *Sleſwick*, and honoured with the birth of many of the Princes of the *Royall Family*. Some think it was the habitation antiently of the *Elyſii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*. But being the *Angli* in thoſe times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, that when ſome Colonies of the *Angli* ſeated themſelves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, as before was ſaid; ſome of the *Arii* and *Elyſii* might goe along for company, and plant themſelves neer them in theſe *Ilands*.

XI. *BORNHOLM*, the laſt of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is ſituate more Eaſtward, oppoſite to that part of *Scandia*, which is called *Blecking*, betwixt it and *Pomeren*. An Iſle of excellent paſturage, breeding plenty of Cattell, wherewith as alſo with butter, cheeſe, wool, hides, and ſome ſtore of fruits, they ſupply the want of ſome of their neighbours; beſides good quantities of powdered Beef, and Mutton, which they barrell up, and ſell to Mariners. It containeth many good Towne, and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Iland. Both Town and Iland pawned by ſome former Kings unto thoſe of *Lubeck*; from whom redeemed by King *Frederick* the ſecond, for a great ſumme of money, after it had been in their poſſeſſion about 50 years.

Theſe Ilands in the time of *Pomponius Mela*, were by one general name called the *Hemodes*, in number reckoned to be ſeven; the reſidue either not inhabited, or not taken notice of, are no where mentioned in the Ancients. Of theſe ſeven, the greateſt and beſt peopled, was called *Codonania* (ſuppoſed to be *Selandt*) in which the ſaid Author placeth the *Teutoni*. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Scandia Minor*, with reference to the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, ſuppoſed by him to be an Iland. From this, or

from

from the ſea adjoyning, called *Sinus Codanus*, the people of theſe Ilands, and the next Eaſtern Continent took the name of *Danes*: ſpreading their name afterwards, as they did their Conqueſts, of which more anon. In the mean time we muſt croſſe over the *Sound*, and take notice of ſuch other parts of this Kingdome, as lie on the other ſide thereof in the vaſt Continent, or *Demi-Iland* (which you will) of *Scandia*: of which ſomewhat muſt be firſt premiſed, in regard, not onely ſome parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Kingdome of *Norway* (the northern Ilands excepted) are contained in it. *Scandia.*

SCANDIA.

SCANDIA, by *Plinie* and *Solinus* called *Scandivania*, by *Jornandes Scanzia*, hath on the Eaſt that Bay or branch of the *Baltick*, which is called the *Finniſch* and *Bodner* Seas, on the North and Weſt the main *Ocean*, on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick*, or *Ooſt-Zee*, as the *Dutch* call it: joyned to the main Continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Iſthmus*, or neck of land, at the bottome of the *Bodner See*, not far from *Wardhuys*. In regard of ſo great Seas on all parts thereof, it was generally by the Antients thought to be an Iland, but *incompertæ magnitudinis*, of an unknown greatneſſe, as both *Pytheas*, and *Xenophon Lampſacenus* doe affirme it in *Pliny*: by one of which it is called *Baſilia*, by the other *Baltia*, from whence the name of *Baltick* to the Sea adjoyning. But later *Navigations*, and experience have confuted that opinion, by which it is found to be no Iland, but a part of the *Continent*, and a great one too, containing the whole Kingdome of *Norway*, the greateſt part of the Kingdome of *Sweden*, and ſome part of *Denmark*: that part hereof which belongs to *Denmark*, ſituate in the South-eaſt of this great *Peninſula*, and divided into the three Provinces, of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Bleſcida*; and in them 23 *Herets* or *Prefectures*, and fifteene Cities.

I. *HALLANDIA* or *HALLANDT*, hath on the Eaſt the wilde woods which part it from *Gothland*, in the Weſt the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Juitland*, on the North *Sweden* properly and ſpecially ſo called, on the South *Scauia*, or *Schonen*. A Country which for the healthfulneſſe of the Air, pliantneſſe of the ſoil, commodiouſneſſe of Havens, plenty of fiſh, pleaſure of hunting, for inexhauſtible mines of Braſſe and Lead, (with ſome veines of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Townes and Villages, and civility of the Inhabitants, not inferiour to any. Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Laholm*, 2 *Halmſtad*, 3 *Falkendorch*, all of them on the Sea, at the mouth of navigable ſtreams, whoſe names I finde not: 4 *Warburg*, upon the Sea ſide alſo, but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an hill. Taken and garriſoned by the *Swedes*, anno 1569, and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again, *anno* 1569.

II. *SCANIA*, or *SCHONEN*, hath on the Eaſt, *Bleſcida*, or *Blecking*; on the Weſt, the *Sound*, running along the ſhore hereof for the ſpace of twenty *German* miles; on the North, *Hallandt*; on the South, the *Baltick*, or *Ooſt Zee*. The Country of the ſame nature with *Hallandt*, as before deſcribed; the Character of that pertaining to all the three: this having over and above, as peculiar to it, that the Sea ſhores are ſtored with ſuch ſholes of *Herrings*, that ſometimes Ships are ſcarce able with winde and oar to break through them, and row off the Harbour. It is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief towns, in which are 1 *Lunden*, an Archbiſhops See, the *Metropolitan* of *Denmark* & *Norway*, advanced unto that honor by the means and mediation of *Ericus* the firſt, who purpoſely made a journey to *Rome* to effect that buſineſſe: the Church of *Denmark* being before that time ſubject to the Archbiſhops of *Breme*. This was about the yeer 1100. It is ſituate ſomewhat within the land; but the *Cathedrall* eaſily diſcernible by Mariners as they ſail along. The City mean, and were it not for the *Cathedrall* of no beauty at all. But that indeed affirmed to be a work of much magnificence and Art, eſpecially for the *Clock*, the *Diall*, and ſome outward adjuncts. For in the *Diall* courioufly ſet out with divers colours, are to be ſeen diſtinctly, the year, moneth, week-day, and hour of every day throughout the year; with the Feaſts, both *moveable* and *fixed*, together with the motion of the Sun and Moon, and their paſſage through each degree of the *Zodiack*. Then for the *Clock*, it is ſo framed by *Artificiall* Engines, that whenſoever it is to ſtrike, two horſe-men encounter one another, giving as many blowes apiece, as the Bell ſounds hours: and on the opening of a dore, there appears a *Theatre*, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne with *Chriſt* in her armes, and the three Kings or *Magi* (with their ſeverall trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and preſenting ſeverally their gifts; two *Trumpeters* ſounding all the while to adorne the Pompe of that proceſſion. 2 *Malmoge*, or *Elbogen*, (called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, juſt oppoſite to *Coppenhagen* in *Seland*, a well traded Port: the birth-place of *Gaſpar Bartholinus*, otherwiſe called *Malmogius Danus*, that great *Mathematician*; ſuppoſed to the be Author of the *Clock* and *Dial*, before deſcribed. 3 *Trelleberg*, on the north of *Elbogen*. 4 *Landiſcron*, on the Sea-ſide, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 5 *Helſemburg*, a mean town, but fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, juſt oppoſite to *Helſinare*, and *Croneberg* in *Selandt*, the other of the two keyes which openeth into the *Sound*. 6 *Radneby*, a frontire town bordering on *Verendia*, a Province of *Swetbland*. 7 *Chriſtiania*, or *Chriſtendorp*, a ſtrong piece built by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, *anno* 1604. compaſſed by the Sea, and fortified by Fens and Marſhes, thought to be impregnable.

III. BLE-

Scandia. III. *BLESCIA* or *BLECKING*, is bounded on the East and South with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with *Verendia* a Province of *Swethland*; on the West with *Scania* or *Sconen*: more mountainous and barren then either, but yet partaking somewhat of the former *character*, which we had of *Halland*. Chief Townes hereof are 1 *Usted*, on the mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2 *Christenberg*, in *Latine Christianopolis*, on the borders of *Swetbland*, raised out of the ground by *Christiern* the fourth, to defend his kingdome on that side, *anno* 1604. not long after by a warlike stratagem surprised by the *Swedes*, in the late war betwixt those kingdomes, in the year 1611. destroyed and dispeopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleasing object, but since repaired and replenished. 3 *Abuys*, upon the River which divides the Kingdomes, not far from *Christenberg*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Gutæ* and *Dauciones*, taking up the South parts of this great *Peninsula*. *Meridionalia tenent Gutæ & Dauciones*, as we finde in *Ptolemie Geogr.* l. 2. c. 11. which in all probability must be meant of these three Provinces. Of these the *Gutes* passing over into the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, possessed themselves of the North parts of it, since from them called *Jutland*. The rest uniting with the people of those many Islands which lye together in the Bay or Gulph *Codanus* (now the *Baltick* Sea) took the name of *Danes*: and not from *Dan*, I know not what King thereof above a thousand years before the birth of our Saviour. First taken notice of by that name in *Jornandes de Rebus Geticis*, who lived about the time of *Justinian* the first, about which time, or not long after it is conceived that they made themselves masters of so much of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, as had been formerly possessed by the *Jutes* and *Angli*, whose forsaken or ill-peopled seats they possessed themselves of. After this we hear little of them till the time of *Charles* the *Great*, living in a confused estate, sometimes made subject to the *Norwegians*, sometimes to the *Swedes*, but alwayes without Law and order, till by their King *Godfrey* or *Gotricus* they were regulated by *Laws*, and reduced to an orderly kinde of life, *anno* 797. About this time they first began to infest the Coasts of *England*, invaded *Friseland* with a Fleet of 200 sayl, and had much weakened and indangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unseasonable death of *Godfrey*, and the quarrels which arose about the succession after his decease, had not kept them off. Their affaires at home being againe well setled, they employed their whole Forces against *England*, as the weaker Enemy, over which they tyrannised 250 yeares, and reigned 28, under three Kings of that Nation. Outed of that, and the terrour of their name being over, they have been most busied with their neighbours of *Sweden* and *Germanie*: improving their estate, but rather by marriages and civill contracts then by force of Armes, with the addition of the kingdome of *Norwey*, and the Dukedome of *Holstein*; their pretentions to, and for a time the possession of the Crown of *Sweden*, getting them nothing in conclusion but blows and losses. So that we have no more to doe then to summe up a catalogue of the kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; leaving the rest that follow to another place.

The KINGS of *DENMARK*.

A. Ch.		
797	1	*Gotricus* the first *Legislator* of the *Danes*, and the establisher of their Kingdome, a prudent and valiant Prince.
	2	*Olaus* son of *Gotricus* or *Godfrey*.
	3	*Henningus* son of *Olaus*.
873	4	*Siward* son to a daughter of *Godfrey* by the King of *Norwey*.
	5	*Regnier* son of *Siward*.
	6	*Siward* II.
	7	*Ericus* or *Henricus* baptized at *Mentz*, at the same time with his brother *Harald*, recovered the kingdom to his house (of which they had been outed by the race of *Godfrey*.)
	8	*Canutus* the son of *Ericus* the heathenish son of a *Christian* and pious Father.
880	9	*Froto* the son of *Canutus*, a professed *Christian*.
886	10	*Gormo* (our *English* writers call him *Gormund*) son of *Froto*.
889	11	*Harald* the son of *Gormo*, or *Gormond*.
900	12	*Gormo* II. son of *Harald*, an enemie of the *Christian Faith*.
927	13	*Harald* II. son of *Gormo* the second, a good *Christian*.
975	14	*Sueno* or *Swain*, son of *Harald*, at first a great Enemy of the *Gospell*, an Usurper of the throne in his Fathers life time, and a great scourge unto the *English*. Outed of his Estate by *Ericus* of *Swethland*, he received the *Gospell*, regained his Kingdome, and established *Christianity* in this kingdome, his war on *England* still continuing.
1010	15	*Olaus* the eldest son of *Swaine*, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*.
1020	16	*Canutus* brother of *Olaus*, the first King of *England* of the *Danes*, succeeded his brother in the kingdomes of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, to which hee added also the Crowne of *Sweden*.
1037	17	*Canutus* III. sonne of *Canutus* the second, the last king of *England*, of the race of the *Danes*.
	18	*Magnus* son of *Olaus* King of *Norwey*.

1051

1051	19	*Sueno* II. ſiſters ſon of *Canutus* the ſecond, by *Ulfo* an *Engliſh* Duke.
1074	20	*Harald* III. baſe ſon of *Sueno* the ſecond.
	21	*Canutus* IV. another of the baſe ſons of *Sueno*, murdered at the Altar in the Church of *Ottenſee* in the Iſle of *Fionia*; afterwards *canonized* a Saint.
1088	22	*Olaus* II. another of the baſe ſons of *Swain*.
1096	23	*Ericus* II. another of the baſe ſons of *Swain*, the founder of the Archiepiſcopall See of *Lunden*.
1102	24	*Harald* IV. baſe ſon of *Henry* or *Ericus* the ſecond.
1133	25	*Nicolas* another of the baſe ſons of *Swain*.
1135	26	*Ericus* III. another of the baſe ſons of *Ericus* the ſecond.
1140	27	*Ericus* IV. commonly called the fifth (ſome of the younger houſes being reckoned in) nephew of *Ericus* the ſecond.
1150	28	*Sueno* III. ſon of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grandchild of *Nicolas*, both kings: the firſt raigning in *Scandia*, the other in *Juitland*: both dead without iſſue, *Canutus* being ſlain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.
1157	29	*Waldemar* ſon of *Canutus*, the lawfull ſon of *Ericus* the ſecond, after the interpoſition of ſo many *Baſtards*, ſucceded at the laſt in the throne of his Fathers. By his means the *Rugians* and *Vandals* imbraced the *Gospell*.
1185	30	*Canutus* V. ſonne of *Waldemar*.
1203	31	*Waldemar* II. brother of *Canutus* and Duke of *Sleſwick*.
1243	32	*Ericus* V. called the VII. ſon of *Waldemar* the ſecond, ſlain by the practiſes and treaſon of his brother *Abel*.
1251	33	*Abel* brother of *Ericus*, ſlain by the Paiſants of *Friſeland*.
1252	34	*Chriſtopher* brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.
1260	35	*Ericus* VI. (VIII) ſon of *Chriſtopher*.
1287	36	*Ericus* VII. (IX) younger ſon of *Ericus*, ſupplanted his elder brother *Chriſtopher*.
1327	37	*Chriſtopher* II. eldeſt ſon of *Ericus*, firſt diſpoſſeſſed of his birth-right by his brother *Ericus*; after whoſe death, he ſucceeded in the Crown, by the help of his halfe Brother the Earl of *Holſt*.
1334	38	*Waldemar* III. ſon of *Chriſtopher* the ſecond, againſt whom and his eucrochments, the Sea towns, commonly called the *Hanſe*, did firſt confederate, and vanquiſhed him in many battels.
1376	39	*Margaret* daughter and heir of *Waldemar* the third, marryed with *Aquin* king of *Norwey*, ſo uniting the Kingdoms: of whom and their ſucceſſours we ſhall ſpeak hereafter; when we have tooke a view alſo of the kingdome of *Norwey* and the *Appendixes* thereof.

Norwey.

NORWEY.

NORWEY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Swethland*, from which parted by a perpetuall ridge of rough and wilde mountaines, called the *Dofrine* hills; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to ſay, by that *frozen Sea* upon the North, the *German Norwegian* Ocean upon the Weſt; and on the South with the *Daniſh* Sea, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*; in breadth from *Schagen* the moſt northern point of *Juitland* to *Congell*, the moſt Southerly town of *Norwey*, no leſſe then 250 miles.

It is called *Norwey*, *quaſi tractus ſeu via Septentrionalis*, from the *Northern* ſituation of it; containing in length 1300 miles, in breadth not above halfe ſo much: inhabited by a people given to hoſpitality, plain dealing, and abhorring theft. Antiently they were great warriers, and became terrible to all the more Southerne Nations; by whom called *Normans*, (that is to ſay *Homines Boreales* or *Northmen*, as *Willielmus Gemiticenſis* rightly hath it): being at that time a mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the *Norwegians* and *Swethlanders* a part from the *Danes* whoſe ſteps they followed in their frequent or rather continuall *Piracies*, on the Coaſts of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*. By *Helmoldus* in the ſame ſenſe they are called *Nordluidi*, a name made into *Latine*, out of the *Dutch* word *Nord*, and the *French* word *leiu*, ſignifying men of a Northern place or Nation.

Of the poſition of it in regard of the Heavens we have ſpoke already; but more particularly it reacheth from the firſt *Parallel* of the twelfth *Clime*, where the *Pole* is elevated 58 degrees 26 minutes, as far as to the 71 degree of *latitude*. By which accompt the longeſt day in the Southern point is but 18 houres; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being ſituate furtheſt North of all this Countrey, they have no night for almoſt three whole moneths together.

The Countrey for the moſt part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vaſt woods, extreme cold, and but ill inhabited. In the beſt parts thereof it affords little corn; and in the moſt northern none at all: in ſo much that the common ſort of people are fain to uſe dryed fiſh (that which we commonly call *ſtock-fiſh* in ſtead of bread. But the better (that is, the richer ſort) buy corn of ſuch Merchants as come to traffick with them. Their chief commodities are *ſtock fiſh*, rich furres, train-oyle, pitch, and tackling for ſhips, as maſts, cables, deal-bords and the like; which the inhabitants exchange for

Norwey. for corn, wine, fruits, beer, and other neceſſaries for mans life. The Countrey is exceedingly troubled with certain little beaſts, which they call *Lemmers*. They are about the bigneſſe of a *field mouſe*, and are by the inhabitants ſaid to drop out of the clouds in tempeſtuous weather. They devoure like the *Locuſts*, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time dye all in heaps (as it were) together: and with their ſtench ſo poiſon the air, that the poor people are long after troubled with the *Jaundies*, and with a giddineſſe in the head. But theſe beaſts come not ſo often to infect the land, as the *Whales* doe to terrifie and moleſt the ſhores, the Weſtern Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for thoſe great *Leviathans*: againſt whoſe violence and furie, the Mariners and people of the Seacoaſt have found a *Remedie*, which is by caſting out ſome water intermixed with the oyl of *Caſtor*, the ſmell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this helpe there were no fiſhing on theſe Coaſts, which is the greateſt *Staple* commodity (beſides materials for ſhipping) which the Countrey yeeldeth.

The Towns here, are exceeding thin, and in them the houſes for the moſt part very poore and miſerable, commonly patched up of durt and hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage houſes in the *Fen*-Countreys. Diſtributed into five *Prefectures* or Governments, according to the number of the Caſtles which command the ſame. Of theſe,

1 The firſt moſt towards the South is the Caſtle of *BOHUS*, to which are ſubject the townes of 1 *Marſtraud*, ſeated in a *Demi Iſland* begirt with Rocks, of moſt note for the infinite quantity of *herings* caught hereabouts. 2 *Congel*, upon the Sea, a town of Merchandiſe, oppoſite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*. 3 *Oddewald*.

2 *AGGERHUIS*, the ſecond of the five *Royall Caſtles*, hath under its command the townes of 1 *Anſlo*, or *Aſloia*, on a Bay or Gullet oppoſite to *Juitland*, an Epiſcopall See, and of moſt eſteeme of all the Countrey, by reaſon of the *Courts* of *Judicature* which are therein held. 2 *Tonsberg* or *Koningsberg*, that is to ſay, the *Kings* or the *Kingly Mountain*, formerly a retiring place of the Kings of *Norwey*. 3 *Fredrichſtrad*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Denemark*. 4 *Schin* or *Schon*, remarkable for its Mines of iron and copper. 5 *Saltzburg*, 6 *Hammar* the greater, and 7 *Hammar* the leſſe, divided by the interpoſing of the Bay called *Sinus Mæſianus*, in former times the See of a Biſhop, ſince removed to *Aſloia*, or rather thereunto united in theſe later times, as many poore Biſhopricks bee in *Ireland*.

3 *BEGGER-HUSE* is the third Caſtle of command herein. Subordinate whereunto are 1 *Bergen*, the principall Town of the countrey, an *Epiſcopall* See, and the ordinary reſidence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*; ſituate amongſt high mountaines at the bottome of a deep Creek or arm of the Ocean called *Carmeſunt*; a noted Port, and much reſorted to by Merchants of moſt foraine Nations; bringing in corn, meat, bread, beer, wine, and *Aqua vitæ*, to ſupply the naturall wants and defects hereof; and in exchange tranſporting hence fiſh, furres, cordage, and other materials for ſhipping. In which regard accounted formerly one of the four chief *ſtaple* Townes of the *Dutch* Merchants of the *Hanſe*: the other three being *London* in *England*, *Novagrod* in *Muſcovie*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time this *Bergen* hath loſt moſt of its trade, removed hence to *Wardhuis*, neerer unto *Muſcovie*: as the great town of *Novogrod*, by reaſon of the change of navigation through the *Baltick* into the Northern paſſage, hath given way to S. *Nicolas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amſterdam*. For the *Hollanders*, by blocking up the haven, but eſpecially by keeping *Bergen op Zome*, have ſuch a command over the river, that no veſſell can paſſe or repaſſe without their licence. 2 *Staffanger*; an Epiſcopall See alſo, but not elſe obſervable.

4 The Caſtle of *TRUND-HEIM*, is the fourth, ſituate in the Town of *Trondheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latine*, *Nidroſia*, the See of an Archbiſhop who is the *Metropolitan* of *Norwey*. A beautifull City heretofore, but ſince the ſubjection of this Countrey unto the *Danes*, reduced to a Burrough: ſo called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is ſeated, and *Roſa* the name then of the principall Church; which in time gave place to the Cathedrall, for greatneſſe and neatneſſe of the fabrick all of poliſhed ſtone, not giving place to any in *Europe*; about the year 1530 much defaced with fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it being eſtimated at 7000 Crowns. A great ſumme of money in thoſe times, and ſo poore a countrey. So that by caſting up our reckoning, wee finde in *Norwey* one Archbiſhop and four Biſhops, that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Trundheim* of *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Staffanger* and *Hammar*: Of the ſame power, juriſdiction, and revenue, ſince the *Reformation*, as thoſe of *Denmark*: whereof, and of the firſt converſion of this people to the *Chriſtian* Faith, we have ſpoke already.

5 The fifth and laſt Caſtle which commands this countrey is that of *WARDHUYS*, ſo called of the town of *Wardhuys*, as that is from the Iſle *Ward*, in which it is ſeated. A ſmall Caſtle, and the town in former times but mean and poore, ſituate in the extreme North point of all this Kingdom: but in thoſe times accounted (as it eaſily might) for the chief of this *Prefecture*, and honored in the ſummer time with the ſeat and reſidence of the *Governour*, retiring more Southwards in the winter, at what time by reaſon of the extremity of the cold, and long abſence of the Sun for

months

months together (the Town lying within the *Artick Circle*) it is hardly habitable. But of late times it is much improved both in wealth and building; by reason of the removall of the *English* trading from *Novogrod*, near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of St. *Nicolas* not far hence, drawing by that means the trade of *Muscovie* and *Norwey* more neere together. So that now it is not onely useful unto the *Danes*, in regard that it somewhat aweth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives; for that cause fortified very strongly by King *Frederick* the second, but made very profitable to him also by the resort of *Dutch* and *English*, who must of necessity touch at it (if they make no stay here) in their way to *Muscovie*. Other Townes in these two last Prefectures are not worth looking after. *Iceland.*

And so much for the *Continent* or mainland of *Norwey*; let us next look upon the *Islands* in the *Northern* Ocean, which belong unto it.

The ISLANDS in the *NORTHERN* OCEAN.

The NORTHERN SEA so named from its northern situation, is by some called *Mare Scythicum*, because it coasted along the shores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal*; called *Oceanus glacialis*, becau se often frozen: by *Pliny* in the same sense *Mare Amalchium*, the word in the *Scythick* Language signifying frozen, or congealed; by the *Russes* or *Moscovites*, *Myrmanskoy More*; by the *Cimbrians* in their tongue, *Mori moruja*, that is to say, the *dead* Sea, because of the slowness of its motion, often clogged with ice; and in the same sense, *mare pigrum* by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth best describe it, from whom take it thus. *Trans* Suenes *Mare aliud pigrum & prope immotum, &c.* Beyond the *Swedes*, there is another Sea, so slow and almost immoveable, that many think it to be the bounds which compasse the whole world. Some are perswaded that the sound of the Sun is heard, as he ariseth out of this sea; and that many shapes of gods are seen, and the beams of his head, *Illuc usque (& fama vera) tantum natura*, At this sea (the report is credible) is the end of nature and the world. The *English* were the first of all civill people, who adventured to open and discover the passages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancellour*, arriving by this way in *Russia*, *anno* 1553. and tracing out the way with others of that Nation, together with the *Flemings*, *Hollanders*, and some townes of the *Hanse* have since followed. Of which more in *Muscovie*. The principal Islands dispersed in it are *Groenland*, 2 *Iseland*, 3 *Freezland*, belonging to the Crown of *Norwey*, to be surveyed at the present; *Nova Zemla*, and Sir Hugh *Willoughbies* Island, appertaining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muscovie*: of which more hereafter.

I. *ISELAND*, is situate under the *Artick Circle*, in length 144 *German* miles, 65 in breadth. So called from the aboundance of ice in it and about it, frozen continually for the space of 8 months, and so vehemently chilled with *Northern* windes, that it yeeldeth neither corn nor trees except *Juniper* onely: yet there is grasse in such aboundance, that the people are of opinion, that if they doe not sometimes keep their Cattell from feeding, they are in danger to surfeit and dye with fulnesse. Beasts for labour here are both Horses and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without hornes, but the sheep not so: and they have also here a fine breed of little dogges, knowne amongst us by the name of *Iseland dogges*, the *delight* of *Ladies*; as also white Faulcons, and white Ravens, Eagles with white tailes, with Hares and Beares of the same colour. By reason of their want of corn the people eat *stock-fish* (as in *Norwey*) in stead of bread, yet notwithstanding by reason of the benefit of the sea and accesse of strangers, they have all things necessary brought unto them, (even to wood and timber) of which the richer sort make use: giving the Merchant in return, sometimes the flesh of Beeves and Mutton, but ordinarily butter, skinnes, horses, hawkes, brimstone, but fish especially, the *staple* commodity of the countrey. Of which they have such plenty and of so good condition, that a peice of *Iseland Ling* is counted with us as a fit dish for a *Noblemans* table.

The people for the most part are of a plain and simple nature, living (as in the *Golden Age*) on that which nature gives them without help of Art; more then that of making cheese and butter: the mountaines serving them for Townes, and the Rivers for drink, and lodging all under one roof with their horses and oxen. They use neither *Physick* nor *Physitians*, yet live so long (and probably the longer for it) that many of them attain to the age of 150 yeares and more. The women are exceeding faire, but they know not how to attire themselves; nor is there any difference in apparrell betwixt the *Sexes*, so that it is not easie to know one from another. Few of them but have some *familiar Spirit* to doe them service: and notwithstanding the endeavour of their *Ministers* to purge them from this *impietie*, yet it is so graffed in them that they cannot leave it.

It is observable that notwithstanding the cold condition of this Island, yet in many places it is full of heats and fire under the ground: which by the *Antiperistasis* of the cold air, stopping the pores of the earth, and taking from it the liberty of evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: insomuch that here are three high mountaines, whose tops are alwayes covered with snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecle*, *Helge*, and *La-Croix*, but the first the principall; by some called *Heclefort*, which sometimes casts out fire, sometimes flaming water, then black ashes, and *pumice* stones in so great aboundance; that it darkeneth the Sun, and makes the countrey for six miles round about to bee uninhabited. Stranger things are not spoken of *Aetna*, then of these three mountaines: and here the superstitious people have the same opinion which they have in *Sicil*: that

Freezland. underneath muſt needs be hell, and the habitations of the damned. But to judicious men the naturall reaſon of theſe flames is plain and obvious, occaſioned by thoſe veins of *Brimſtone* (great quantity whereof they ſend into foraine parts) on which the foundation of the hils is laid: here being many *Bathes* and fountaines of hot water, which have *Sulphure* ſwimming at the toppe.

At the firſt planting of this Iſland, the people did not trouble themſelves with building *Towns*, but every one ſeated himſelfe where he thought convenient; dwelling in *cels* and *cavernes* digged in the bottome of the rocks. By meanes whereof the inland parts have not many houſes: but the ſea coaſts ſince the coming of ſo many ſtrangers to them, begin to be built in many places; the buildings for the moſt part being of timber rooted with flags, with an hole on the ſides of the roofe to let in the light. So that we are not to expect many fine townes or Cities: the principall of them which are, being 1 *Halar* in the North, and 2 *Schalholt* in the ſouthern part; both *Biſhops* Sees, having petty *Schooles*, conſiſting of 24 ſcholars a peece, to whom the *Latine* tongue is taught at the charge of the Biſhops. 3 *Haffenfordt*, an Haven town, where under Tents the *Dutch* Merchants barter their commodities: and 4 *Bedſtede*, a Caſtle, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived that this Iſland is that *Thule*, which the Poets ſo often ſpeak of; as, *Tibi ſerviat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec ſit terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca* the *Tragedian*: nor did there want ſome reaſon to perſwade them to this opinion; this being indeed the furtheſt part of the old known world. But greater reaſons are againſt it. For when *Solinus* ſaith, *multæ ſunt circa* Britannicum *inſulæ, e quibus* Thule *ultima*; I hope *Thule* muſt be one of the *Britiſh* Iſles. And when *Tacitus* ſaith of *Agricola*, *inſulas quas* Orcadas *vocant domuit, deſpecta eſt & Thule*; I am ſure that *Iſeland* is ſo far from being kenned at any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at leaſt eight degrees diſtant. So that *Thule* muſt be ſought for in another place, and where that is hath beene ſhewed already. And as for *Iſeland* it was ſo farre from being known unto the Antients, that it was hardly known unto thoſe of *Norwey*, till the yeare 874. when ſome of the *Norwegians* driven out of their countrey by *Harald* the firſt, who firſt ſuppreſſing the many Petite Kings of the *Norwegians*, made many of them ſeeke new dwellings, of which ſome few arrived here: where finding roome enough to plant in, and no great loſſe (if any) by the change of their dwelling, they invited many of their friends and countreymen to come unto them. *Anno* 1070 they were converted to the *Goſpell*, by ſome Preachers ſent hither from *Adelbert* the Archbiſhop of *Breme*. By whoſe perſwaſion and procurement they founded two *Epiſcopall* Sees; adding thereto in tract of time eight *Religious* houſes: that is to ſay, the Monaſteries of *Pingore*, *Remſtede*, *Modur*, and *Monkeniere*, under the Government and juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Hallar*; and thoſe of *Vedey*, *Pernebar*, *Kirckebar*, and *Skirde*, under the Biſhop of *Schalholt*. In the year 1260. it was firſt brought under the Crown of *Norwey*, following ſince that the fortunes of it in all changes both of Church and State: made ſubject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*: together with it *reformed* in matters of *Religion*, according to the confeſſion of *Ausbourg*: retaining ſtill their *Biſhops* with a limited power, and turning the *Revenues* of their *Monaſteries* unto other uſes, as there they did, according to the will and pleaſure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

II. Southweſt of *Iſeland* lies another, and as cold an Iſle, commonly called by the name of *FREEZELAND*, from the continuall *Froſts* unto which it is ſubject. By the *Latines* it is called *Frizlandia*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Friſia* or *Friſeland* in *Germany*. Situate under the North *frigid zone*, but not ſo much within the *Arctick* as *Iſeland* is: the longeſt day here in the height of ſummer not exceeding 20 houres: and yet the ſoyl ſo cold and barren, that it beareth neither corn, nor frunit; the Inhabitants living moſt on fiſh, which as it is their onely food, ſo is it alſo their chief commoditie wherewith to entertain or invite the *Merchant*. And hereof there is ſuch aboundance caught upon their coaſts, that they are never without the company of *Hanſemen*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes*, and *Engliſh*; by which laſt ſo frequented in theſe later times, that it hath beene called by ſome the *Weſtern England*. For quantity it is ſomewhat bigger then *Iſeland*, but by reaſon of the bitter air, and the defects above mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freezeland*, by the name of the Iſland; ſituate on the Eaſtern ſhore of it. Beſides which there are ſome others ſet down in the maps, as 2 *Samescot*, 3 *Andefort*, 4 *Sorund*; but not much obſervable. Weſtward hereof, as *Zieglerus* (and out of him *Maginus*) telleth us, is a leſſe Iſland called *Icaria*, giving the name of *Mare Icarium* to the Sea adjoining: ſo called (by his miſtake or tranſlation of the Fable) from *Icarus* the ſon of *Dedalus* a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over theſe Iſlands.

III. *GROENLAND*, ſo called, as ſome ſay, from the *greenneſſe* of it in the Summer; as others ſay, by *Antiphraſis*, becauſe never *greene* by reaſon of the ſharpneſſe of winter. But the former *Etymologie* is more agreeable to the ſtate of the Countrey. For though it be continually covered with ſnow, except in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, (inſomuch that though the people bee alwayes clad with *Furres* and *skinnes*, yet they feel no heat) yet in thoſe months it is exceeding freſh and *green*, and affords good paſturage. It is ſituate for the greateſt part within the *Arctick*, between the 65 and 77 degrees of Northern Latitude: ſo that the longeſt day in the ſouthern part is 21 houres and an halfe; and in the moſt northern they have no night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirmed to be 600 miles, and may be much longer then ſo for ought that any body knowes

knows there being no perfect discovery made of it hitherto, though much frequented by the *English*, and *Hollanders* (two great Sea-faring Nations) for the benefit of *Whale-fishing*, much there in use. Their chief commodities are Fish, white Bears, wilde Deer, and some store of Cattell there bred upon their pastures, but housed for the most part all the Winter: the greatest part of the people dwelling in Caves, and delighting in *Negromancy*, to which more wilfully addicted then those in *Iseland*, because lesse acquainted with the Gospell. *Groenland.*

Places of most importance in it are 1 Saint *Thomas*, (in which there is a Monastery of *Dominican Friers*) seated in the north-east part of the Iland; concerning which *Mercator* speaks of one thing which is very observable: relating, that it is not farre from a *flaming*, or burning mountain, seated upon hot *scalding springs*, conveyed by pipes of stone into the *Monastery*, and serving both as a *stove* to warm them, and for a *fire* to boyle their Victuals. The walls of the Monastery built of *Pumice* stones cast out of that Mountain, which being tempered with the water of those burning springs, doth make a glutinous substance serving in stead of *Lime*, and as long durable. The Gardens of the *Convent*, in regard of this heat, flourish all the yeer with hearbs, and sweet-smelling flowers: and the adjoyning Sea for the same reason being never-frozen, affords good plenty of Fish and Fowl the whole year about, not onely for the *Monkes*, but the neighbouring Ilanders: so farre, and to this purpose he. The second Towne of note, is *Ilva*, not farre from this *Monastery*: And 3 *Munderpre*, on the South-east point. Others, as in a Country not well discovered, we have little notice of; though it be neer 300 yeeres since *Nicolas Zeni*, a *Venetian*, cast by tempest on the coast of *Freize-land*, and by the King thereof employed upon new discoveries, *anno* 1380. first made it known to us of *Europe*; immediately on that discovery possessed by the *NORWEGIANS*, and made a Member of that Crown.

As for the *NORWEGIANS* themselves, now their fellow-subjects, they were first known in the time of *Ptolemy*, by the name of *Chedini*, possessing then the western parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swethlanders*, they became better known in the flourishing times of the *French* Empire, by the name of *Normans*, first called so by *Egithartus* in his History of the life of *Charles* the *Great*, infesting then the Sea-coasts of *France*, and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell so heavily on the *French*, especially in the times of *Charles* the *Simple*; that they extorted from him that goodly Country, since of them called *Normandy*; conferred on *Rollo*, first Duke thereof, *anno* 912. whose successours much increased their glory by the conquest of *England*, as some private adventurers of them did by the conquest of the Kingdomes of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards setling on their own bottome, every one of these northern nations acting by it self, they were called *Norwegians*: sometimes, as formerly commanding over all three Kingdomes, subject successively to each; but most an end governed by their own Kings, till their finall subjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting solely, and by it self, they subdued *Ireland*, under the conduct of *Turgesius*, who tyrannized there for a time; as also all the *Orcades*, and the Ile of *Man*, sold, or surrendred by them, upon good conditions to the *English* and *Scots*, who by those titles still possesse them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all those of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute*, and the first *Scottish Fergus*) as meerly fabulous, we will begin with King *Suibdagerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdomes; and at his death divided them again amongst his three sons; whose successours *Munster* thus reckoned.

The KINGS of *NORWAY*.

1 *Suibdagerus*.
2 *Haddingus*.
3 *Hetharius*.
4 *Collerus*.
5 *Frogerus*.
6 *Gotarus*.
7 *Rotherus*.
8 *Helga*.
9 *Hasmunus*.
10 *Reginaldus*.
11 *Gumaraus*.
12 *Osmundus*.
13 *Olaus*.
14 *Osmundus* II. not long after whose time, *anno scil.* 800. the *Normans* began their Irruptions.
15 *Aquinus*.
16 *Haraldus*.
17 *Olaus* II.
18 *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth, and of *Norway* by Conquest.
19 *Olaus* III. son of *Swaine*, or *Sueno*, succeeded in the Realmes of *Denmark* and *Norway*; *Canutus* his younger brother being King of *England*. In this Kings time the *Norwegians* first received the Gospell.
20 *Canutus*, King of *England*, succeeded his brother *Olaus* in the Kingdomes of *Denmark* and *Norway*, to which he also added the Crown of *Sweden*.

21 *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdome was reſtored to the *Norwegians*.
22 *Canutus* II.
23 *Magnus*.
24 *Harald* II.
25 *Magnus* II. King of *Sweden*, and *Norway*.

1326 26 *Magnus* III. King of *Sweden*, and *Norway*, intending the Crown of *Sweden* for *Ericus* his eldeſt ſonne, conferred that of *Norway* on *Haquin*, or *Aquinus* his ſecond ſonne.

1359 27 *Aquinus*, King of *Norway*, younger ſonne of *Magnus* the third, married with *Margaret*, eldeſt daughter of *Waldemar* the third, King of *Denmark*; ſo uniting the Kingdomes. And though *Olaus* the onely ſon of this bed died young, without any iſſue; yet the *Danes* having once got footing in *Norway*, ſo aſſured themſelves of it, that they have ever ſince poſſeſſed it as a ſubject Kingdome: keeping the *Natives* ſo poor and low, that they are not able to aſſert their former liberties; and not permitting them to uſe any ſhipping, ſo much as for tranſporting their own commodities, for fear they ſhould grow wealthy and ſtrong at Sea. Beſides, the ſtrong Garriſons maintained in moſt parts of the Country, keep it in ſuch an abſolute awe, that they dare not ſtir againſt the *Danes*, if their ſtomachs ſerved them. So that now *Norway* being made ſubject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made fellow-ſubjects to the ſame King: we muſt next look upon theſe Kings, not as Kings of each, diſtinct and ſeparate from the other; but as they are in fact and title.

The KINGS of *DENMARK*, and *NORWAY*.

1376 1 *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark*, and *Norway*; of this laſt by deſcent, of the other by marriage.

1380 2 *Olaus*, ſon of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*.

1383 3 *Margaret*, wife of *Aquinus*, mother of *Olaus*, and daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her ſonne, (in whoſe time ſhe governed as his *Guardian*) took upon her the Kingdome in her own right; not onely keeping *Norway* in the ſtate ſhe found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the vanquiſhment of *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*.

1411 4 *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeren*, and Knight of the Garter, ſonne of the Lady *Mary*, Dutcheſſe of *Pomeren*, daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the ſiſter of *Margaret*; by whom adopted for her Heir; ſucceeded after her deceaſe in all the three Kingdomes; outed of all before his death, by a ſtrong Faction made againſt him, and his eſtates conferred on

1439 5 *Chriſtopher*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, (but in title onely) the ſonne of *Margaret*, ſiſter of *Ericus*, choſen by the joynt conſent of all the States of theſe Kingdomes. After whoſe death, (without iſſue) the *Danes* conſidering the great advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norway*; pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleſwick*, and Earl of *Holſt*, for the next ſucceſſour; that they might get in thoſe Eſtates to their Kingdome alſo. Who excuſing himſelf, by reaſon of his Age, and want of Children, commended to them *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, his kinſman, and next heir, who was choſe according.

1448 6 *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolfus*, choſen King of *Danemark*, and *Norway*, ſucceeded his ſaid Uncle in the Eſtates of *Holſt*, and *Sleſwick*, continuing ſince united unto that Crown; and added alſo thereunto by conqueſt, the Kingdome of *Sweden*.

1482 7 *John*, ſon of *Chriſtiern*, ſucceeded in all three Kingdomes; Knight of the Order of the Garter.

1514 8 *Chriſtiern* II. ſon of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, which laſt he held under with great cruelty; hated, by reaſon of his Tyranny towards all ſorts of people, and outed of his Kingdomes by his Uncle *Frederick*, anno 1522. by whom at laſt taken, and kept in priſon till he dyed, *anno* 1559.

1523 9 *Frederick*, brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, choſen King of *Denmark*, and *Norway*, on the abdication of his Nephew, reformed *Religion* in both Kingdomes, according to the *Confeſſion* of *Ausbourg*.

1535 10 *Chriſtiern* III. ſuppreſſed with great trouble the party formed againſt him in behalf of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, perfected the *Reformation* begun in the time of his Father, and was a great *Benefactour* to the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*.

1559 11 *Frederick* II. ſonne of *Chriſtiern* the third, ſubdued *Ditmarſh*, before unconquered by the *Danes*,

Danes, or the Earls of *Holst*, and added it unto that Dukedome, both being united to that Crown, though held of the *Empire*; Knight of the Garter.

1588 12 *Christiern* IV. sonne of *Frederick* the second, brother of *Anne* Queen of *Great Britain*, and Knight of the *Garter*; engaging in a warre against the Emperour *Ferdinand* the second for the liberty of *Germany*, was suddenly beat out of all the *Cimbrick Chersonese* by the prevailing *Imperialists*; but compounded the businesse upon very good termes, and was restored to all his own; Knight of the Garter.

1648 13 *Frederick*, son of *Christiern* the fourth, his elder brethren being all dead without issue, succeeded in the Crowns of *Denmark*, and *Norway*.

Having thus mustered up the Kings of these severall Kingdomes, taken distinctly, and conjunct, we must next look upon the way of their coming to their Regall throne, their forme of Government, together with the powerablenesse and revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their *coming* to the *Regall Throne*, the *Danes* pretend the Kingdome to be *Elective*, and not *Hereditary*: yet so as they have alwayes set the eldest sonne on the throne of his Father; unlesse some extraordinary occasion have disposed it otherwise. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times can see no such matter: the Kingdome going generally in the way of *Succession*, unlesse by Faction, or some popular and powerfull Pretender hath interloped, as oftentimes hath hapned in such other Estates, as are *hereditary*, meerly without claim, or colour of *Election*. 'Tis true, that the male issue failing in *Olaus*, the son of *Margaret*, and the Princes which pretended by the Females after her decease, not being of sufficient power to assert their titles: the Kingdome was transferred to the house of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground then by that of *election*. Which being an extraordinary case, is to make no Precedent, though seconded by the outing of King *Christiern* the second, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Estate: being acts of violence and force, and justified onely by the false *Topick* of successe. But whosoever lost by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon such conditions as have made him and his successours little more then *Titulary*. For he was fain to swear at his *Coronation*, that he would put none of the Nobility to death, or banishment, but by the judgement of the Senate; that the great men should have power of *Life* and *Death* over their *Tenants*, or *Vassals*; that no *Appeal* should lie from them to the Kings *Tribunall*, nor the King be partaker of the Confiscations; nor finally, advance any to Commands and Honours, but by consent of his *Great Councell*. Which Oath being also taken by his Successours, made *Bodinus* say, *Non tam re ipsa quam appellatione Reges esse*; that they were onely Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the *Nobility* (so they call their *Gentry*) have but small Estates, none of them above the degree of Knights, (except onely the Princes of the Blood) and that degree conferred by the King alone, it is not often found that they have dared to crosse, or oppose their King, but when some of the *Royall Family* (out of private ends) have concurred with them in it: as in the case of *Christiern* the second deposed by the people, but those people headed, and set on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an eye upon the Crown.

As for the *Senate*, or *Great Councell* spoken of before, it consists wholly of men chosen out of the *Nobility*, (who are to prove their *Gentry* by a long descent) seldome exceeding the number of 28. to each of which, there is allowed a convenient *Salary*, with some fair Castle in the Country for his retirements during his being of that bodie: his whole estate being freed also for that time from all publick payments. Without their *counsell* and advice, the King is neither to determine of *Peace* or *War*, or to enter into any new Leagues, or Confederacies, nor impose any Tax upon the Subject: and unto them, and the King joyntly, is the last *Appeal*: such being the constitution of this Estate, that all *Causes* and Controversies are first decided in the *Prefecture* or *Heret* (184 in number) where they first arise; from whence it is lawfull to *appeal* to the *Judge* of the *Province*, from him to the *Chancellour* of the Kingdome, and finally to the *King* and *Councell*. By the Lawes of *Waldemar* the first who first reduced the Lawes into set form, and writing, the *Bishops* were to sit with this *Councell* in all causes of moment: discharged from that employment by King *Christiern* the third, by whom it also was ordained, that the *Clergy* should not sell any of the Church-lands without leave of the *King*.

The *Forces* which this King or Kingdome are to raise, may best be seen by some of their particular undertakings: those specially of *Christiern* the second, who at the request of *Henry* the second of *France*, sent a Navy of an hundred sail into *Scotland* against the *English*, and therein no fewer then 10000 Souldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holst*, who in his war against this *Christiern*, (whose removall from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 men into the field, to make good his quarrell. And questionlesse, considering the many *Ports* and Ilands that this Crown is Master of both within the *Baltick*, and without, it cannot be but he may suddenly raise a strong power at Sea: And then considering that each of the *Nobility* which are here numerous enough, is bound to finde a certain number of Horse upon all occasions; as are those also who hold lands of the Kings which the *Danes* call *Verlehninge*; it will accordingly be concluded that they are able to make good *Levies* for a sudden service, especially in defence of their own dominions.

The *Revenue* of this King consisteth principally in the great *impost*, laid upon all ships which passe through the *Sound*: the greatnesse whereof may easily be conjectured at by the multitude of ships which of necessity must passe by it in the trade of the *Baltick*, though of late somwhat lessened of what it was, since the *English* found out, and frequented the *Northern* passage into *Muscovia*. There are

alſo ſome *Crown-lands*; and a great yearly *Tell* made of the Catell, which paſſe into *Germany*; as alſo of the *fiſh* tranſported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived that the Treaſures of this *King* are not very great, partly becauſe there is no other important commodity, but fiſh, to draw Merchants thither: and partly that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realmes for the entertaining of commerce.

The chief Order of *Knighthood* in it, is that of the *Elephant*, inſtituted by *Frederick* the ſecond, Their badge, a *Collar* powdred with *Elephants* towred, ſupporting the Kings Armes, and having at the end the picture of the Virgin *Mary*.

The Armes hereof are Quarterly, 1 *Or*, three Lyons paſſant *Vert*, crowned of the firſt, for the Kingdome of *Denmark*: and ſecondly *Gules*, a Lyon Rampant *Or*, Crowned and Armed of the firſt, in his pawes a *Danſk* hatchet *Argent*, for the Kingdome of *Norway*. What Armes belong to him as Duke of *Holſt*, and *Sleſwick*, I am yet to ſeek.

There are in *Denmark*
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.
Univerſities 2.

Viz.

Copenhagen. *Sore.*

And ſo much for the Kingdome of *DENMARK*.

OF

OF

SWETHLAND.

SWETHLAND is bounded on the East with *Muscovie*, on the West with the *Dofrine* hils which divide it from *Norway*; on the North with the great *Frozen* Ocean, spoken of before; on the South with *Denmark*, *Liefland*, and the *Baltick* Sea. So called from the *Sueci*, *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, and the word *Land* added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length from *Stockholm* unto the borders of *Lapland*, above a 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner Sea*, to the borders of *Denmark*, about twenty good dayes journey on horse-back: insomuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it on this side of *Lapland* and the *Gulf*, accounts it little lesse then all *Italy* and *France* together: but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the *Gulf*, bigger then both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The situation of it in regard of the heavenly bodies, is the same with *Norway*, under the same *Parallels* and *Degrees*; but of so different a temper, both for soil and air, as if disposed of under severall and long distant *Climes*. For the Aire here is very pure, but not so sharp, and insupportable, as it is in *Norway*: though in some places where the *Moores* and *Waters* setle for want of care to open and cleanse the *water-courses*, they have great *fogges* and mists which doe somewhat putrefie it: And for the soil, it is more fertile then any of the other *Northern* Provinces: so that besides those necessaries which they keep for themselves, they usually transport into other Countries store of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Brasse, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and costly furres. They have also some *Mines* of *Silver* not mixt with any other metall; plenty of fish in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of *Pine-trees*, Firre, Oaks, both for ships and houses; yeilding besides, among the woods, good store of *Tarre*, and Honey, and some other necessaries. But hereof we shall speak more punctually in the severall Provinces.

The principall mountains of this Country are the *Dofrine* hils, a vast and continuall ridge of mountaines which divide it from *Norway*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uses; yet partly by reason of their great frosts and flakes of Ice, partly by reason of the falling of trees which lie crosse their *Channels*; they have not many *Navigable*, or of any great fame. The principall of such as be, are 1 *Meler*, at the mouth whereof stands the City of *Stockholm*: 2 *Lusen*, 3 *Dalecarlie*, giving name to the Province so called, or as denominated from it. And of the *Lakes*, whereof here are exceeding many, that of most note is the lake of *Werett* which receiving it into 24 Rivers disburdneth it self at one mouth into the *Baltick*, with such noise and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devils head*.

The people are naturally strong and active, provident, patient, and industrious; *hospitable* towards strangers, whom they entertain with great humanity: so *healthy*, that if they doe not shorten their dayes by excesse and riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age; and so laborious, that a *Begger* is not seen amongst them: exceeding apt to learn as well Tongues and Scientes, as the *Arts Mechanicall*:

every

Gothland.

every man in a manner being his own *Artificer*, without imploying Smith, Maſon, Carpenter, or any of other *manuall* trades: very valiant both on foot and horſe back, which their long wars againſt the *Danes*, and their late wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their women are diſcreet and modeſt, free from that intemperance which theſe Northern parts are ſubject to. Both ſexes uſe a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northerne kingdoms: except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other ſide of the *Bodner* ſea, where they partake ſomewhat of the *Muſcovite* or *Ruſſian* language.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was firſt planted amongſt them by the care and diligence of *Anſgarius* Archbiſhop of *Breme*, the *Apoſtle* general of the *North*; corrupt with *Popiſh* ſuperſtitions, it was *reformed*, according to the *Auguſtane Confeſſion*, in the time of *Guſtavus Ericus*, the firſt of the preſent Royall familie; ſollicited thereunto by one *Petre Nevicius* a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Lawrence* the *Archdeacon* of *Strengnes*; but chiefly moved (as others ſay) by a deſire to appropriate to himſelfe the *goods* of the *Church*. And this appeares to have had ſome ſtrong *influence* upon him in it, in that he preſently ſeiſed upon what he pleaſed; and made a *Law* that *Biſhops* ſhould enjoy no more then the King thought fit: yet having pretty well leſſened their *Revenues*, he was content they ſhould remain as formerly both in *power* and *number*, reſerving to himſelfe and his ſucceſſours the *nomination* of the perſons; but ſo as the *approbation* of the *Clergy* (in a kinde of *election*) doth uſually goe along with the Kings appointment.

The *Biſhops* are in number ſeven, that is to ſay, 1 of *Lincopen*, containing in his Dioceſe 226 Pariſhes; 2 of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3 of *Scara*, ruling over the ſame number of Churches; 4 of *Strengnes*, under whom are an hundred onely; 5 of *Aboe*, the greateſt for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Pariſhes; 6 of *Wiburg*, and 7 of *Habſay*, whoſe *Dioceſes* for the moſt part lye out of the bounds of *Sweden*, in *Muſcovie*, *Livonia*, and ſome other of the out parts of *Poland*: all of them under the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, as their *Metropolitan*, whoſe *Dioceſe* extending into *Lapland* and *Finmarch*, containeth 171 Pariſh Churches. By which accompt there are in all the kingdome of *Swethland*, but 1417 Pariſhes; but many of them of a thouſand or eight hundred families: the people being diſperſed in *Forreſts* and other places, where they have ſtore of *timber* to build them houſes, and ſtore of *paſturage* for their Cattell; which is the reaſon why they have not ſo many great townes, nor ſo well inhabited, as is uſuall in far leſſer Countries: As for the *Authority* of theſe *Biſhops*, they ſtill retaine their *voice* in *Parliament*, and with them ſo many of the *inferiour Clergie*, as are from every *Socken*, (a certain number of Pariſhes like our *Rurall Deaneries*) deputed to appeare there in the name of the Church: the affaires whereof the *Biſhops* do direct and order aſwell in as out of publick meetings, according to the *Eccleſiaſticall Conſtitutions* formerly eſtabliſhed; and if any great occaſion be, they may either adviſe with their *Conſiſtorials*, or call a *Dioceſan Synod*, (as they thinke moſt fit) and therein make ſuch *Lawes* and *Canons*, as they conceive to be moſt proper for their owne edification.

The whole kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the Eaſt, the other on the Weſt ſide of the *Bay* or Gulf or *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodicus* in *Latine*, being a large and ſpacious branch of the *Baltick Sea* extending from the moſt ſouthernly point of *Gothland* as farre as to *Lapland* on the north. According to which diviſion we have the Provinces of 1 *Gothland* and 2 *Sweden*, lying on the Weſt ſide of the Gulfe; 3 *Lapland*, ſhutting it up upon the North, 4 *Bodia* or *Bodden*, and 5 *Finland*, on the Eaſt ſide thereof; and 6 the *Swediſh Iſlands*, where it mingleth with the reſt of the *Baltick*.

1. GOTHLAND.

GOTHLAND, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Bodner* Sea, on the Weſt with the Mountains which divide it from *Norwey*, and ſo much of *Denmark* as lies in the ſame continent with it; on the North with *Sweden*; on the ſouth with the ſea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Gothes*, whoſe originall Countrey it is commonly affirmed to be; or *quaſi goot landt*, from the goodneſſe and fertility of the ſoyl (*Goot landia, quæ Germanice* Terra bona *ſonat* (as *Maginus* out of *Munſter* hath it) the ſoyle being very fruitfull for corne and cattell, affording plenty of *Mines*, with great ſtore of *fiſh*, and generally a better conditioned Countrey then any of the reſt of theſe Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Oſtrogoth*, or *Eaſt Gothland*; *Weſtergoth*, divided from the former by the great lake of *Weret* ſpoken of before; and *South Gothland*, ſubdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiſcia*, and *Verendia*. Chief townes whereof in *Oſtrogoth*, are 1 *Lincopen*, a *Biſhops* See; 2 *Loduſe*, adorned with a very fair Haven: in *Weſtergoth*, 3 *Scara* on the lake *Weret*, a *Biſhops* See alſo; 4 *Elſeburg* on the Weſtern ſea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norwey*; a place of conſequence; and flankerd with two very ſtrong Caſtles in the parts adjoining, the one called *Croneberg*, and the other *Goldberg*. 5 *Traguatle*, remarkable for iron workes, occaſioned by the *mines* adjoining. And finally in *South Gothland*, there is 6 *Vexim*, or *Vexio*, another of the *Epiſcopall* Sees: 7 *Walburg*, a reaſonable fair Town, with a ſtrong Caſtle. 8 *Rottenby*, and 9 *Elcholm* in *Verendia*, neer the confines of *Denmark*, 10 *Colmar*, a noted and well traded Port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Caſtle not inferiour to that of *Millain*; and ſo well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Chriſtiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, *anno* 1611. there were found mounted on the Workes 108 braſſe peeces of Ordinance, ſix

men

men of war to guard the Haven, with all manner of *Ammunition* in proportion to them.

Gothes.

The first Inhabitants of these south parts of *Scandia*, are commonly affirmed to have beene the *GOTHES*, whom *Jornandes* in his Book *de Rebus Geticis*, makes to have issued out of this countrey, and to plant themselves on the north bankes of the *Ister*, nere the *Euxine* sea, some time before the *Trojan* war: ascribing to them whatsoever is reported in old writers of the antient *Scythians*, as their encounter with *Vexoris* or *Sesostris* the King of *Egypt*, the Act and acheivements of the *Amazons*, their congresse with *Alexander* the *Great* in his *Persian* war, and the like to these. In which *Jornandes* being himself a *Goth*, is no more to be credited, then *Geofrie* of *Monmouth* a *Welchman*, in the storie of *Brute* and his successours, to whom he doth ascribe the taking and sack of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to be the brother of *Belinus* a King of *Britain*. Most probable it is that they were originally a *Dutch* or *German* people, part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the land of *Prussia*. Who finding their own countrey too narrow for them might passe over the *Baltick* into the next adjoining Regions: and not well liking that cold clime might afterwards in some good numbers goe to seek new dwellings, and at lest seat themselves on the bankes of *Ister*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, besides the generall name of the *Gothones* or *Gothes*, and those of *Ostrogothes*, and *Wisigothes*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alaric*, *Theodorick*, *Riccared*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) seem to me to evidence. That they were once seated in this Countrie doth appeare as plainly 1 by the name of *Gothland* here still remaining; 2 by the title of *Rex Gotborum*, which the Kings of *Swethland* keep in the *Royall style*; and 3 by some inscriptions in antient unknown *Characters* engraven on the rocks neere *Scara* in the Continent, and *Wisby* in the Isle of *Gothland*, supposed by learned men to be some monument of that people. And finally that their fixt dwellings, when first known by this name amongst the *Romans*, was on the north side of the *Ister*; is evident by the testimony of all antient Writers, from the time of *Antoninus Caracalla*, with whom they had some *tumultuarie* skirmishes in his way towards *Persia*; till their violent irruption into *Italie* and the Western Provinces: most famous in this *intervall* for a great fight with *Decius* the *Roman* Emperour, whom they overcame and slew in battell, *anno* 253. In the time of *Valens* and *Valentinian* the *Roman* Emperours a quarrell being grown amongst them, managed by *Phritigernes* and *Athanaricus* the leaders of the opposite factions, *Phritigernes* over throwne in fight did recourse to *Valens*, from whom he received such succours, that giving his adversary another day it, he obtained the victory. Whereupon *Phritigernes* and his partie received the Gospell, but intermixt and corrupt with the *leaven* of *Arianism*, by the practise of *Valens*, who sent them none but *Arian* teachers, to whom and their faction in the Church, he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Ister* by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out parts of *Thrace* for an habitation, on condition they should serve under the pay of the Emperour, and become *Christians*: the cause that *Arianism* overspread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one partie onely. *Ulphilas* a devout and learned man, was their first Bishop; who for their better edification in the way of *godlinesse*, invented the *Gothick Characters*, and *translated* the *Scriptures* into that language: in the studie whereof they so well profited, that many of them in the time of their first *conversion*, suffered death for it at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted *Martyrs*. Burdned by *Valens*, and denyed their accustomed pay, they harasse and depopulate the rest of *Thrace*, marching towards *Constantinople*: encountred in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame, and killed, after all his favours. Vanquished by *Theodosius* the succeeding Emperour in many battels, they became good neighbours, inlarging their bounds with his leave and license as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into such estimation with him that *Richmir* and *Frauita*, two of that Nation, did obtaine the *Consulship*: not to say any thing of that exorbitant power and favour which *Gainas* had attained unto in the Court it selfe. Made insolent by so great honours, and apt to pick quarrels with their *Patrons*, they invaded *Italy* in two great bodies, consisting of no fewer then 200000 fighting men: the first whereof under the conduct of *Rhadaguisus*, was discomfited and cut in pieces by *Stilico* Lieutenant to *Honorius* the *Western* Emperour, at *Fesula* in the straits of the *Appennine*: the other by his treachery permitted to passe, sacked *Rome*, and subdued the most part of *Italy*, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediately after this great victory, left the fruits of it to his son *Athaulfus*, who marrying with *Galla Placidia*, the Emperours sister, relinquished *Italy*, and had all *Gaul Narbonnoise*, and a great part of *Hispania Tarraconensis* assigned unto him: where he erected the kingdome of the *Wisi-Gothes*, or *Western Gothes*, possessed of *Spain* and *Tingitana*, for the space of 300 years, and upward, when they lost that kingdome to the *Moores*, as hath there been said. In the meane time the *Gothes* which were left in their owne countries, distinguished from these by the name of *Ostro-Gothes* by reason of their more *Eastern* situation, kept themselves in quiet, first subdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Wilamer*, freed from that subjection, not intermedling or attempting any thing against the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperour of *Constantinople* into *Italie*, against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, who had then subdued it. Which action they managed with so much prudence and good fortune by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquished *Odoacer*, possessed *Italie*, and held it above 60 yeares, when broken in many set battels by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, Lieutenants for the Emperour *Justinian*, their Kingdome and name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Gothes*, we have a succession of them in *Jornandes*, from *Berig*, who first conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the East, till the going of *Theodorick* into *Italie*: but made

up

Gothes. up with so little probalitie, that I dare give no more credit to it then to the stories of *Brute*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota Pharaohs* daughter. Such of whom there is any certaine knowledge and succession are these few that follow.

The KINGS of the *GOTHES.*

344	1	*Athanaricus* king of the *Gothes*, in the time of *Constantius* and *Constans* the sons of *Constantine* the *Great*.
357	2	*Alaricus*, the first of that name in the time of *Constantius*.
	3	*Phritigernes* King of the *Gothes* in the time of *Valens*, the first *Christian* Prince among the *Gothes*.
370	4	*Athanaricus* II. in the time of the Emperours *Valens*, *Gratian* and *Valentinian* the second, under whom the *Gothes* were first setled on this side of the *Ister*.
379	5	*Rhadaguisus*, who in the time of *Honorius*, first led the *Gothes* into *Italie*, slain at the battell of *Fesulæ*.
410	6	*Alaricus* II. who pursuing the war of *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, subdued *Naples*, and the most of *Italy*.
412	7	*Athaulfus* the son of *Alarick* the second, who first erected the Kingdom of the *Wisigothes* in *Gaul* and *Spain*, continuing there for the space of 300 yeares and upwards: the present Kings of *Spain* coming from this stock.
417	8	*Athalaricus* King of the *Gothes* remaining in the East, at the departure of *Rhadaguise* and *Alaricus* distinguished from their plantations by the name of *Ostrogothes*: vanquished by *Attila*, they became subject to the *Huns*, in the time of *Theodosius* the second, and *Valentinian* the third, Emperour of the East and West.
	9	*Wilamir*, one of the bloud Royall of the *Gothes*, taking advantage of some quarrels amongst the sons of *Attila*, shooke off that yoke, and recovered the kingdom of the *Gothes*; in the time of the Emperour *Marcianus*.
	10	*Theodemir* son of *Winithar*, and brother of *Wilamir* in the time of *Leo* Emperour of *Constantinople*.
	11	*Theodorick* son of *Theodemir*, kept at *Constantinople* in his youth as a Pledge or *Hostage* for his Father, where he was instructed in all the *Greeke* and *Roman* learning, and made the adopted son (as is said by *Scaliger*) of the Emperour *Zeno*: by whom hee was sent into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli* erecting there the kingdome of the *Ostrogothes*, which continued till the reign of *Justinian*, when destroyed by *Belisarius* and *Narses* as before is said; the name of *Gothes* in *Italy* being thus extinct, but their bloud intermixt with the best *Italian*. The summe of their whole story, for varieties sake take thus out of *Du Bartas*.

The warlike *Goth* which whilom issued forth
From the cold *frozen* Islands of the North,
Incamp'd by *Vistula*, but th' Air almost
Being there as cold as in the *Baltick* coast,
He with victorious Armes *Sclavonia* gaines,
The *Transilvanian* and *Valachian* plaines.
Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greeke*,
Greedy of spoile, foure times he bravely seeks
To pluck from *Rome*, then *Mars* his Minion,
The plumes which she from all the world had won:
Guided by *Rhadaguise*, and *Alarick*,
Bold *Vindimarus* and *Theodorick*.
Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulst, his Legions
Rest ever since upon the *Spanish* Regions.

The Armes of these Kings are said to have been *Or*, three Ravens with displayed wings *Purple*, membred *Gules*. And let this suffice for the Originall, successes, and finall period of the *Gothes*; reserved by me unto this place, because most commonly conceived to be their originall countrey; at least the place out of which they issued, when they first moved towards the East to seeke new dwellings.

SWEDEN.

SWEDEN is bounded on the East with the *Bodner* Sea, on the West with the *Dofrine* hils, which part it from *Norwey*; on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gotland*. So called from the *Suethans* or *Suethids*, the old Inhabitants hereof, of whom more anon. A countrey sufficiently fruitfull, but for the goodnesse of the soil inferiour to *Gothland*, and not so well planted or inhabited as that is, by reason of the vast Woods which they will not suffer to be destroyed, and the greatnesse

greatneſſe of ſome *mariſhes* hitherto undrained: but might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would, as appeareth by that plenty of corn growing amongſt the Woods, though much hindered by their ſhade and thickneſſe both from Sunne and raine. But for the *character* of this Countrey we had it formerly, when we ſpake of *Swethland* in the generall; relating ſpecially to this as the principall part. *Lapland.*

And as the largeſt and principall part of this great body it containes in it many Provinces, and ſubdiviſions, as namely 1 *Upland*, 2 *Suderman*, 3 *Noricia*, 4 *Weſtman*, 5 *Dalecarle*, 6 *Wermelund*, 7 *Copperdale*, 8 *Geſtricia*, 9 *Helſingen*, 10 *Middelphat*, 11 *Angerman*, bordering on *Lapland*, the furtheſt of theſe Provinces towards the North. Many of which have no Townes or Cities of any greatneſſe or beauty, the people living thin, and ſcattered, where they have *wood* for building, *paſturage* for their Beaſts, and elbow roome enough for themſelves and their Cattell. Of theſe the principall are 1 *Upſal*, an *Archbiſhops* See, and an *Univerſitie*, ſituate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*: beautified with a large *Cathedrall*, wherein many of the ancient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Countrey hereabouts is ſtyled *Archiepiſcopatus Upſalenſis*. 2 *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Ruſſians Stecolne*, the Royall ſeat of the Kings, a noted and well traded Port, and the chief of the kingdome: exceeding ſtrong both by Art and Nature, as being ſituate in the *Mariſhes* like *Venice*, at the mouth of the *Lake*, or River of *Meler*, the paſſage to it out of the *Bay*, being very narrow and by conſequence eaſily defended, and yet ſo deep withall, that the greateſt ſhips of burden may ſaile up to the City: the Port within the Strait being ſo ſafe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 ſail, which uſually ride there without any *Anchour*. The Caſtle of this City is conceived to be one of the ſtrongeſt Holds in the world, fortified for the more aſſurance of it with 400 braſſe peeces, many of which are double *Canons*. 3 *Nicopen*, a Sea town on the ſame *Bay* alſo. Theſe three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4 *Strengnes*, an *Epiſcopall* See; and 5 *Telge*, on the lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Suderman*; the title and eſtate of *Charles* father of *Guſtavus Adolphus* late King of *Sweden*, before his getting of the Crown called Duke of *Suderman*. Next in the Province of *Weſtman*, there are 6 *Arbogen*, on the Weſt ſide of the ſaid *Lake* of *Meler*; and 7 *Aroſe*, rich in *ſilver mines*; out of which are made the beſt *Dollars* of *Sweden*: the mines here being ſo rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of *ſilver*, the workmen draw a pound weight of *gold*. 8 *Helſinge*, upon the Bay of *Bodner* in the Province of *Helſingen*, taking name from hence. 9 *Ozebo*, or *Ourbou*, a ſtrong piece in *Nerikia*; and 10 *Leſinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the furtheſt North of *Sweden*, diſtinctly and ſpecially ſo called.

LAPLAND.

LAPLAND, the moſt Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the Eaſt *Ruſſia*, on the Weſt the Province or *Prefecture* of *Wardhuys*, in the kingdome of *Norwey*; on the North the main *frozen* Ocean, and on the South *Bodia* or *Bodden* on both ſides of the *Bay* ſo called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it; as they are from their blockiſh behaviour; the word *Lappon* ſignifying the ſame with *ineptus* or *inſulſus* in *Latine*, for ſuch they are: rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of *Arts* or *Letters*, as alſo without corn and houſes, or any certain habitations, (except onely in *Finmarch*) feeding for the moſt part on fiſh, and the fleſh of wild beaſts, with the skins whereof ſowed together they hide their nakedneſſe. Generally they are meer *Idolaters*, giving divine honour all day following to that living creature whatſoever it be, which they ſee at their firſt ſetting out in the morning: great *Sorcerers*, and abhorring the ſight of ſtrangers, whom till of late they uſed to flee from, at their firſt approach; but within few yeares paſt beginning to be more ſociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true deſcendants of the Antient *Finni* (poſſeſſed in old times of all that tract which lyeth betweene the Bay of *Finland* and the *Frozen* Ocean) whoſe naturall rudeneſſe and barbaritie, unmixt with the conditions of more civill people, they doe ſtill retain.

It is divided into the *Eaſtern* and the *Weſtern Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez* or *Great Duke* of *Muſcovie*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Dikiloppi*, or the *wild Lappians*; is ſubdivided into *Biarmia* and *Corelia*, of which if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, wee ſhall there ſpeake more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, ſubdivided into 2 parts alſo, that is to ſay, *Finmarch*, and 2 *Scricfinnia*.

1 *FINMARCH*, being that part hereof which lyeth next to *Norwey*, is the more populous of the two, the people for the moſt part *idolatrous*, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and reſort of ſtrangers unto *Wardhuys*, and the parts adjoining, ſomewhat *civilized*; and in the borders of both kingdoms ſavouring of *Religion*, poſſeſſed of *ſheds* or ſorry houſes, & thoſe houſes reduced to pariſhes, under the juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, the chiefe of which, (if there be any chief amongſt them) are named 1 *Samman*, and 2 *Hielſo*. Called *Finmarch*, as the antient bounds and *Marches* of the *Finni* (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneouſly by *Maginus* made a part of the kingdom of *Norwey*.

2 *SCRICFINNIA* lyeth between *Finmarch* and *Ruſſia*, the name derived from the *Finni*, a great people of *Scandia*, and *Scriken* a *Dutch* word ſignifying *leaping*, *ſliding* or bounding, for ſuch is their gate. An *etymologie* not much improbable, in that the *wooden-ſoled ſhoes* with ſharp bottomes, which they

Finland. they uſed for their more ſpeedy *ſliding* over the yce, of which this countrey is full, are by the *Germans* (who alſo uſe them) called *Scrikeſkoenen*, or ſliding-ſhoes. The ancient Writers call this people *Scrictofinni*.

Theſe are indeed the naturall and proper *Laplanders*; and unto theſe the former *character* doth of right belong. Of ſtature very low, little more then *Pigmeys*, but ſtrong and active, well skilled in *Archerie*, and patient of cold and labour. Much given to hunting of wild beaſts whom they kill with their bowes, devoure the fleſh, and cloath themſelves with their skins, which they tie at the top of their heads, and leave no place open but for the ſight, giving thereby occaſion unto ſome to write, that they are *hairie* all over like kine or horſes. Such *Deere* (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkilled, they make to draw in little *carts*, as they ſhift their *Quarters*. But having ſerved them for a while they are killed at laſt, though perhaps for nothing but their skinnes; a certaine number of which they pay yeerly to the King of *Sweden* in the way of *tribute*. Three companies of theſe *Laplanders*, ſo clad and armed as aforeſaid, came into *Germanie* in the year 1630 to ſerve *Guſtavus* in thoſe wars; looked on with admiration by all *ſpectators*.

Townes we muſt look for none here, where no houſes be: and yet there are ſome *ſheds* and *cabbins* on the Sea ſhore; which *Mariners* having made for their refreſhment when they came on land, have beſtowed ſome names on, and poſſibly in time may become good townes, now not worth the naming.

BODIA.

BODIA, *BODEN*, or *BODNEK*, is ſituate on the South of *Scricfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or *Gulfe* hence named; extending ſouthwards on the Weſt ſide of it till it joines to *Sweden*, and on the Eaſt ſide till it meet with the Province of *Finland*. Hence the diviſion of this countrey, into the *Eaſtern*, *Northern*, and *Weſtern Bodden*; with reference to the ſituation of it on the Bay aforeſaid. The countrey not very plentifull of grain or fruites, but full of great variety of wilde beaſts, whoſe *rich skins* yeeld great profit unto the Inhabitants; and by reaſon of the commodious ſituation on all ſides of the *Bay*, well ſtored with Fiſh. Antiently it was part of the poſſeſſions of the *Finni*, but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whence ſoever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the *Gulfe* adjoining, is called *Sinus Bodicus*, *Bodner Zee*, by the *Dutch* or *Germans*.

Chief Townes here in are 1 *Barkara*, in *Weſt Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable lake; 2 *Gernia*, a well traded *Emporie* at the very bottom of the Bay in *North Bodden*; 3 *Helſingeliac*, more North then that, towards the borders of *Lapland*, and 4 *Kerldby*, in *Eaſt Bodden*, on the bank of the Gulfe, conveniently ſeated for a town of Trade.

3. FINLAND.

FINLAND hath on the North, *Bodia*; on the South, the *Baltick* Sea, or *Mare Suevicum*: on the Eaſt, *Sinus Finnicus*; on the Weſt, *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Munſter* thought to be called *Finland*, *quaſi* fine land; *quod pulchrior & amœnior ſit Suecia*, becauſe it is a more *fine* and pleaſing countrey than *Sweden* it ſelfe. But indeed it is ſo called from the *Finni*, or *Fenni*; a potent Nation who have here dwelt; whoſe character is thus framed by *Tacitus*: Finnis *mira feritas*, *fœda paupertas*, *non arma*, *non equi*, *non penates*, *victui herbæ*, *veſtitui pelles*, *cubile humus*, *ſola in ſagittis ſpes*. The *Finnes*, ſaith he, are wonderfully barbarous, miſerably poore, without Armes, Horſe, or Houſehold Goods: Herbs their food, the ground their bed, and the skins of beaſts their beſt apparell, armed onely with their Arrowes, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our preſent *Finlanders*, eſpecially thoſe of *Scricfinnia*, and ſome parts of *Finmarchia*, who are not ſo well reclaimed to *civility*, as the other are; but very different from that which *Jornandes* gives them, who living within 400 yeares after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) entercourſe with forein Nations, telleth us of them that they were *Scanziæ Cultoribus omnibus mitiores*, more tractable and civill then any of the Inhabitans of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suethidi* themſelves. If ſo, they did deſerve to live in ſo good a Countrey, more plentifull and plaine then *Sweden*, and neither ſo hilly nor ſo mooriſh.

The principall places in it are 1. *Abo*, an *Archbiſhops* See, ſituate on the moſt Southern point of it, ſhooting into the *Baltick*. 2 *Wiburg*, a *Biſhops* See alſo, whoſe juriſdiction for the moſt part is without this Province, on ſome part of *Ruſſia*; all *Finland* being in the *Dioceſe* of the Biſhop of *Abo*. A town conveniently ſeated at the bottome of the Bay or Gulfe of *Finland* (called *Sinus Finnicus* in *Latine*) which divides this Countrey from *Livonia*: well fortified as the chief Bulwarke of this Kingdome againſt the *Moſcovite*; and ſo well garriſoned withall, that the keeping of this town, and *Rivallia* in the borders of *Liefland*, doe coſt the king of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a point or *Promontorie* of the ſame *Gulfe* oppoſite to *Narve*, another Garriſon of this king, in *Liefland*. 4 *Verma* upon the *Bodner Zee*, 5 *Cronaburg*, more within the land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Puente*, 6 *Deckala*, on the banks of the great Lake called *Hoela*. 7 *Varta*, more northwards towards *Lapland*: of which laſt four I finde not any thing obſervable in the way of ſtory.

6 The

6 The SWEDISH ISLANDS.

And now at laſt I come to the *Swediſh Iſlands*, here and there interſperſed in the *Baltick* Seas, betwixt the Iſle of *Bornholm* which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Lieſland* or *Livonia*, appertaining to the King of *Poland*; the principall of which are 1 *Gothia*, or the Iſle of *Gothland*, and 2 *Inſula Vlandæ*, or the Iſles of *Oeland*.

1. *GOTHIA*, or the Iſle of *GOTHLAND*, is ſituate over againſt *Colmar*, a ſtrong town in the Continent of *Gothland*; in length 18 *Dutch* miles, and five in breadth. Of a rich ſoile, but more fit for paſturage then tillage, yeelding great heards of Cattell, ſtore of game for hunting, plenty of fiſh, excellent marble, and aboundance of pitch, which it ſends forth to other Countreys. There are in it 18 large and wealthy Villages; beſides the Haven town of *Wisbich*, heretofore rich, and of very great trading, as much frequented by the *Merchant* as moſt in *Europe*, but now much decayed, and neither ſo well peopled, nor ſo rich as formerly. The trade removed hither from *Wollin* of *Pomerania* (deſtroyed by *Waldemar* the firſt of *Denmark*, *anno* 1170) made it flouriſh mightily: the greateſt traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here: but after that by reaſon of the long and continuall wars betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the poſſeſſion of this Iſle, it became unſafe; the *Factorie* was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently ſeated to annoy the *Swedes*, the *Danes* have much contended for it, and ſometimes poſſeſſed it; but at the preſent is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By ſome conceived to be the *Eningia* ſpoken of by *Pliny*.

2 *OELAND*, or the Iſles of *Vlande*, ſo called in the plurall number becauſe there are many of them, of which this the principall, is ſituate over againſt *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiouſly ſeated to invade or annoy this kingdome; and therefore very well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned: here being the good towns of 1 *Viburg*, 2 *Vames*, and 3 the ſtrong Caſtle of *Caſtrolm*.

Beſides which Countreys here deſcribed, the King of *Sweden* is poſſeſſed of the ſtrong townes of *Narve* and *Rivallia*, and *Pernow* in *Lieſland*; of *Kexholm* or *Hexholm* in *Corelia*, a Province of *Ruſſia*; with very fair and ample territories appertaining to them: ſubdued and added to this Crown by *John* the ſecond, *anno* 1581. except *Rivallia*, which voluntarily ſubmitted to *Ericus* the ſecond King of this preſent Race, *anno* 1561. But being theſe Townes and Territories are not within the bounds of *Swethland*; we ſhall deferre all further diſcourſe thereof, to a place more proper.

The firſt Inhabitants of this kingdome, beſides the *Gothes* and *Finni*, ſpoken of already, were the *Sitones*, and *Suiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phavone*, the *Phireſi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we finde in *Ptolemie*, placed by him in the Eaſt and middle of this great *Peninſula*. Which being the generall names of ſome mighty Nations, are by *Jornandes* branched into leſſer tribes, of the *Suethans*, *Teutiad*, *Vagoth*, *Bergio*, *Hallin*, *Liothida*, *Athelnil*, *Gaurigoth*, *Raumarica*, *Rauragnicii*, *Grannii*, *Aganzie*, *Daxe*, *Arochitamii*, *Enagere*, *Othingi*, and divers others by him named. But from what root the name of *Sweden*, *Swedes*, or *Swethland*, by which the chief Province of it, the people generally, and the whole kingdome is now called, is not yet agreed on, nor ſpoken of at all by *Munſter* or *Crantzius*, which two, (but ſpecially the laſt) have written purpoſely of this people. *Gaſpar Peucerus* deriveth them from the *Sueui*, who antiently inhabited in the North parts of *Germanie* beyond the *Albis*; from whom the *Baltick* ſea was called *Mare Sueuicum*: which people hee conceiveth to have beene driven by the *Gothes* and *Daci* into this countrey, and by the change of one letter onely to be called *Sueci*. But this hath no good ground to ſtand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left thoſe colder countreys, they fell into theſe parts which are ſtill called *Suevia* (the *Schwaben* of the modern *Dutch*) where we finde them in the time of *Cæſar*. And after, *in fatali illa gentium commigratione*, when almoſt all the Northern Nations did ſhift their ſeats, we finde ſuch of them as had ſtaid behinde, to have accompanied the *Vandals* in their on-fals into *Gaul* and *Spain*. Of any expedition of theirs croſſe the *Baltick* ſeas, *ne gry quidem*, nothing to be found in more antient Authors. We muſt therefore reſerve the originall of this people either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, or perhaps to both: both being antiently ſetled in theſe Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* wee read in the booke of *Tacitus* inſcribed *De Moribus Germanorum*; by whom reported to be ſtrong in men, armour, and ſhipping: and that they were inhabitants of *Scandia*, appeares by two circumſtances in that Authour. 1 That the people were not permitted to weare weapons, *quia ſubitos hoſtium incurſus prohibet Oceanus*, becauſe the Ocean was to them a ſufficient Rampart; which could not be affirmed of the antient *Suevians*, but agreeth very well with the ſituation of this preſent Countrey, defended by the *Baltick*, and vaſt Northern Ocean, from the ſudden aſſaults of any enemy. 2. Becauſe the Sea which hemmed in that people was conceived to be the utmoſt bound of the World; *trans* Suiones *mare aliud, quo cingi claudique terrarum orbis fines*, as his words there are: which wee know to hold good of this Countrey. Adde unto theſe this paſſage of the old Annals of the Emperour *Lewis* the ſecond, where it is told us of the *Danes*, *relicta patria apud* Suiones *exulabant*, that they were baniſhed into the countrey of the *Suiones*, which cannot ſo well be underſtood of any place as of this *Sweden*; being next neighbour unto *Denmark*. And 4 that this people both by *Munſter* and *Crantzius*, are as well called *Suiones* as *Sueci* or *Sueoi*: which ſheweth what they conceived of their true Originall. Then for

the *Suethans* or the *Suethidi*, whom *Jornandes* speaks of in his book *De rebus Geticis*, they are by him placed in the Isle of *Scandia* (for such this great *Peninsula* was esteemed to be by most antient writers.) Now that these *Suethidi* are no other then the present *Swethlanders* appeareth 1. by the propinquity of the names; 2 In that he maketh the *Finni* and *Finnaithæ*, the next neighbours to them; and 3 in that they are affirmed by the same Authour, to have furnished the *Romans* with rich Furs, and the skins of wilde Beasts, with which commodities this countrey is aboundantly well stored. Now to which of these two Nations, either the *Suiones* or the *Suethidi*, those of *Sweden* are most endebted for their originall, will (I conceive) be no great controversie: the *Suethans*, and *Suethidi* of *Jornandes*, being no other then a tribe of the *Suiones*, though the greatest and most powerfull of all those *tribes*: placed therefore in the front to command the rest, and so most like to give the name unto the whole.

Their government was antiently under Kings, affirmed so to be by *Tacitus*, who telleth us also that they were absolute and free, *nullis exceptionibus, non precario jure regnandi*, not bound in *Covenant* with their people, nor holding their Estates at the will of the Subject. But their *Historians* have gone for *Antiquity* hereof beyond the story of *Brute* or the *Trojan* warre, (beyond which very few of that strain have dared to pretend) as high as unto *Magog* the son of *Japhet*; reigning here within 90 years after the flood. But letting passe these dreams and dotages of the *Monkish* times, certain it is, that sometimes they were under the *Danes*, sometimes under the *Norwegians*, sometimes had distinct Kings of their owne, and finally sometimes were comprehended with the *Danes* and *Norwegians*, under the generall name of *Normans*, conducted by one King or Captain upon forain actions. Omitting therefore the succession of their former kings, of whose very being there is cause to make great question; we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Jermanicus*, who entertained *Harald* King of *Denmark*, and his brother *Regenfride*, driven out of that kingdome by *Gottricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemagne*, of whose successours *Munster* giveth us more certainty.

The KINGS of *SWEDEN*.

1	*Jermanicus.*	10	*Ericus* II.	1150	18	*Sherco* 13.
2	*Frotho.*	11	*Olaus.*	1160	19	*Carolus* 8.
3	*Herotus.*	12	*Edmundus.*	1168	20	*Canutus* 54.
4	*Sorlus.*	13	*Stinkalia.*	1222	21	*Ericus* III. 27.
5	*Biornus.*	14	*Halstenus.*	1249	22	*Bingerius* 2.
6	*Wicbsertus.*	15	*Animander.*	1251	23	*Waldemarus* 26.
7	*Ericus.*	16	*Aquinus.*	1277	24	*Magnus* II. 13.
8	*Ostenus.*	17	*Magnus.*	1290	25	*Birgerius* II. 23.
9	*Sturbiornus.*					

1313 26 *Magnus* III. son to *Ericus*: the brother of *Birgerius* was also chosen King of *Norwey*.

1326 27 *Magnus* IV. King of *Sweden* and *Norwey*, which last he gave in his life time to *Haydin* or *Aquinus* his second son, and after the death of *Ericus* his eldest son (his designed successour in this Crown) was outed of this kingdome by the practise of

1463 28 *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, son of *Euphemia* the sister of *Magnus* the fourth; to the prejudice of *Aquinus* king of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, made King of *Sweden*, on that quarrell vanquished by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, widow of *Aquinus*, *anno* 1387. to whom desirous of liberty he resigned his Kingdom, and dyed in his own countrey, *anno* 1407.

1387 29 *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three Kingdomes under her command, caused an Act of State to be passed in *Colmar*, a chiefe town of *Swethland*, for the perpetuation of this union unto her successours; the Lawes and Priviledges of each Kingdome continuing as before they were.

1411 30 *Ericus* IV. Duke of *Pomeren*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whose sister *Ingelburgis* he was descended, was in her life time chosen King of the three Kingdomes, into which he succeeds actually after her decease; but outed of them all by a strong faction raised against him, *anno* 1439. he dyed in a private estate in *Pomeren*, *anno* 1559.

1439 31 *Christopher* Count *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavier* (in title only) son of the Lady *Margaret* sister of *Ericus* succeeded in all three Kingdomes. After whose death the *Swethlanders* being weary of the *Danish* Government, broke the agreement made at *Colmar* for the uniting of the three Kingdomes under one Prince, and chose one *Carolus Canutus* to be their King, *anno* 1448.

1448 32 *Carolus Canutus*, one of the meanest of the Nobility, and not long pleasing to the great ones: whose displeasure when he had incurred and feared the consequents thereof, hee gathereth together all the treasure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his dayes.

1455 33 *Christiern* King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, called in by a party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but outed againe under colour that he had not kept conditions with them: the kingdome governed after that (for a time) by Marshals.

1458

1458 34 *John* King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, the ſonne of *Chriſtiern*, received king by the *Swedes*, then overpowered by the *Muſcovite*: but their turne being ſerved they expelled him againe; returning to their former government under Marſhals. (Of which Marſhals (deſcended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Canutus* by his Mothers ſide) there were three in number; *viz.* *Steno*, 2 *Suanto*, and 3 *Steno Stur* the ſecond, of which the two firſt dyed naturall deaths, and the laſt being by *Chriſtiern* the ſecond ſlaine in battell, this kingdom was again poſſeſſed by the *Danes*.

1519 35 *Chriſtiern* II. King of all three kingdome, uſed his victory ſo cruelly here, and his ſubjects ſo inſolently at home; that here he was outed by *Guſtavus Ericus*, and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Frederick*.

1523 36 *Guſtavus Ericus* deſcended from the antient race of the kings of *Sweden*, having vanquiſhed and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of that action choſen king of *Swethland*; which ſtill continueth in his houſe.

1561 37 *Ericus* V. ſonne to *Guſtavus* 8.

1569 38 *John* II. brother of *Ericus*, marryed *Catharine* the ſiſter of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, king of *Poland*.

1593 39 *Sigiſmund* the ſonne of *John* the ſecond, in the life time of his Father choſen king of *Poland*, *anno* 1586. but was diſpoſſeſſed of the Crown of *Sweden*, (after a long warre) by his Unele *Charles*.

1607 40 *Charles* II. Duke of *Suderman*, the youngeſt ſon of *Guſtavus Ericus*, and brother of *John* and *Eric*, the two former Kings, firſt governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigiſmund*; but having an aime upon the Crowne (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) hee raiſed up a *Calvinian* partie within that *Realm*, according to whoſe *principles* he began firſt to with draw his obedience from his naturall Prince, and afterwards to aſſume the Government to himſelfe: ſpeeding ſo well in his deſigne, that after a long war he forced his Nephew to deſiſt from all further enterpriſes, and made himſelf king, *anno* 1607.

1611 41 *Guſtavus Adolphus* ſonne of *Charles* having ſetled his affaires in *Sweden*, and made peace with the king of *Denmarke*, with whom his father was in warre at the time of his death; fell firſt upon his Couſin *Sigiſmund* the King of *Poland*, from whom hee tooke many places of importance in *Pruſſia* and *Livonia*, and in purſuance of that warre was made Knight of the Garter. Afterwards having ſetled a truce with him, hee paſſed into *Germanie*, then in great danger of being abſolutely inthralled to the houſe of *Auſtria*. In which hee proſpered ſo beyond all expectation, that in one yeare hee paſſed over the *Elb*, the *Rhene*, and the *Danow* (which no Conquerour ever did before): and having twice vanquiſhed the *Imperialiſts* led by *Tilly*, and reſtored many of the *German* Princes unto their eſtates; was in the current of his victories ſlaine in the battell of *Lutzen*, *Novemb.* 1632. his body royally conveyed to *Swethland* and there interred.

1632 42 *Chriſtina* ſole daughter of *Guſtavus*, of the age of ſeven yeares, acknowledged Queen of *Sweden*; the eſtate governed by the Counſails of the Nobility. After a long warre with variable ſucceſſe in *Germanie*, they came at laſt to this Accord in the treaty of *Munſter*, that ſhee and her ſucceſſours Kings and Queens of *Swethland*, ſhould peaceably enjoy all the *Higher Pomeren*, with the Iſles of *Rugia*, *Wollin*, and the Towne of *Stetin* in *Lower Pomerland*; the Towne and Port of *Wiſmar* in the Dukedome of *Mecklenburg*; and the whole Biſhoprick of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and the *Prefecture* of the Towne of *Wilchuſen*; with the title of Dukes of *Bremen*, *Pomeren*, and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords of *Wiſmar*; and by thoſe titles have a place, as *Princes* of the Empire, in all *Diets* and Aſſemblies which concerne the publick. By which agreement (if it hold) the *Swedes* have not onely got a good footing in *Germanie*, a ſtrong influence upon all the Counſels of the *Empire*, a dore open for more forces (if occaſion bee) and a free paſſage into the *Weſtern Ocean*, which before they wanted: but may in time prove abſolute Maſters of the *Baltick* ſea, and make the *Hamburgers*, thoſe of *Lubeck*, and poſſibly the Kings of *Denmark* and the Empire it ſelfe, be at their devotion.

But leaving theſe things to the doubtfull iſſue of *contingencie*, let us next looke upon the *forces* and *Revenues* of the Crowne of *Sweden*, before the time of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, or as hee found it at his ſucceſſion to that Crowne. For though the *Swedes* pretend their Kingdome to be *elective*, eſpecially ſince the failing of the Royall line in *Magnus* the fourth and *Albert* of *Mecklenbourg*; yet ſtill the eldeſt ſon, or next heir ſucceedeth, unleſſe put by, by faction and ſtrong hand, as in the caſe of *Sigiſmund*, and his Uncle *Charles*. Which *Charles* ſo ordered his affaires that having engaged the kingdome in a warre againſt his *Nephew*, hee was ſollicited at the laſt to accept of the Crowne: to which he would by no meanes yeeld till a Law was made for the entailing of the ſame for ever unto his poſterity, whether male or female, as an *Hereditary* Crown. But whether *Hereditary* or *Elective*, the King once ſetled in the Throne is an *abſolute Monarch*; having not onely power to *levie taxes* on his ſubjects, as hee ſeeth occaſion, as five, ſix, ſeven, eight *dollars*, or more yearely, upon every houſholder, according to the *Proportion* of his eſtate;

but alſo to *grant* a certaine number of *Paiſants* unto ſuch as hee meanes to favour, to bee as *ſubjects* and *vaſſals* to him, according to his well deſerving. And whereas in the *conſtitution* of this Govervment every *Pariſh* hath a *Landſman* or *Conſul* to decide the controverſies of the ſame; as every *Territorie* hath its *Vicount*, and each *Province* his *Lamen*: there lyeth an *Appeal* from the *Landſman* unto the *Vicount*, and from the *Vicount* to the *Lamen*; who if they bee ſuppoſed not to judge uprightly, then the *Appeale* lies unto the *Counſell*, and from the *Counſell* of *Eſtate* to the *King* himſelfe, (in whom is fixed the *Soveraignty* and *DERNIER RESORT*) and not unto the *King* and *Counſell*, as before in *Denmark*.

The *Forces* of this King are either by Sea, or Land. By Sea, hee is Commander wholly of *Bodner*, and hath a great power in all the reſt of the *Baltick*: being able to ſet out 70 good *Men of Warre*; as *John* the ſecond did in the yeare 1578. ſeven of which were good *Gallions*; and all the reſt did carry above 50 caſt peeces of all ſorts; beſides many other good Veſſels fit for ſervice. And if a *Navie* of this ſize will not ſerve the turne, hee is not onely furniſhed with timber, cordage, and all other neceſſaries for the building of Ships, and with good ſtore of *Ordinance* and Ammunition for preſent uſe; but is able to raiſe upon a ſudden 6000 Mariners, and upon little warning as many more: all which hee entertaineth at no other charges in a manner then to finde them victuals, inſomuch as *John* the ſecond before mentioned did uſe to ſay, that that *which coſt the King of* Spaine *a Million of Crownes, coſt not him* 100000 *Dollars*.

For his *Land-forces*, they may beſt be eſtimated by the *Trained Bands*, (as wee may call them) in every Province: there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Enſignes) of Foot conſtantly trained and muſtered in the ſeverall Provinces; each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the totall to 20000 Foot, all in a manner *Muſketiers*, ready to march whenſoever the Kings occaſion ſhall ſo require. And then for *Horſe* there are eleven *Cornets* in continuall readineſſe, for *Sweden*, and *Gothland*, and two for *Finland*, maintained at the charges of thoſe Countries, to which the King may adde at his owne charges, as many more as hee pleaſeth. And for an inſtance of what this King is able to doe, without putting his eſtates in hazard by drayning them too drye of men to make good his kingdome; wee finde that *John* the ſecond in his Navie of 70 Ships ſpoken of before, had above 18000 *Land-ſouldiers*, beſides Mariners: And in the Army which *Guſtavus Adolphus* the late King brought into *Germanie*, there were muſtered no fewer at one time then 12000 *Horſe*, and 34000 Foot, all *Finnes*, and *Swethlanders*. For the accommodating of which Armies with *Artillerie*, and the like Engines of war, it is thought that the kings hereof are maſters of 8000 great peeces, for the moſt part braſſe, with *Mortar* peeces and *Granadoes* in proportion to them.

But that which makes his *Land forces* moſt conſiderable is their hardneſſe in enduring the extremities of winde and weather, inſomuch that it is uſuall with them to ſtand *Centinell* a whole Winters night of 18 houres long without being *relieved*: their exact Diſcipline, and obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable induſtry in making their owne ſhoes, Apparrels, ſtockes for Muskets, and all other neceſſaries. Which doth not onely make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the warres; but keepes them from idleneſſe, and the pride of Mutinies, the ordinary effect in great Armies of ſloth and eaſe. Nor doe they want incouragement on the Kings part neither; who firſt, gives to every ſouldier victuals, which hee accompts not in their pay, and that according to his obedience and deſert; 2. If a ſouldier be taken Priſoner, him the King doth uſually redeem at his owne charges: and 3 if a ſouldiers horſe be ſlain under him, the King ſupplyeth him with another: which makes the ſouldiers (very ſenſible of ſuch obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his commands, how dangerous ſoever they may ſeem to be.

Finally as for his *Revenues* they muſt needes bee great, there being foure wayes allowed him to amaſſe his treaſures. Firſt the *Revenues* of the Church, conſiſting before the *Reformation* of ſeven Biſhopricks and ſixty Monaſteries, which enjoyed very great poſſeſſions; all ſeized on by *Guſtavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the Crowne; excepting onely what is given back to maintaine the Biſhops. 2 *Mines*, which are here of all metalls in very great plenty, except of *Gold* and *Silver*, which they have more ſparingly; the *tenth* whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yeelds him ſuch a fair *Intrade*, that in the yeare 1578. the Kings part out of two or three *Mixes* of *Copper* onely amounted to 30000 *Dollars*. 3 *Tenths*, out of all increaſe, as Rie, Wheat, Barley, Fiſh, Oxen, Skinnes, and the like commodities; the ſumme whereof though not certainly knowne (becauſe the increaſe is ſo uncertaine) yet it was once computed that the *tenth* of the Oxen onely came in one yeare to 18000 *Dollars*, beſides proviſion for his houſhold. 4 And laſtly, *Cuſtomes* impoſed on *Merchandiſe*, and paid in all his Haven Townes for all commodities *imported*, or *exported* of what ſort ſoever. Beſides all which hee hath his *Contributions* in all times of warre, power of impoſing taxes (though moderately uſed) as his neceſſities require: and on the *marriage* of a *daughter*, the kingdome is to provide her portion, which of late times hath beene fixed at the certaine ſumme of 100000 *Dollars*, beſides Plate and *Moveables*. Out of which ſeverall *Items* to ſumme up the *totall*, it was obſerved that in the yeare 1578. King *John* the ſecond, (all charges ordinary and extraordinary being firſt deducted) did lay up in his Treaſurie no leſſe then 700000 *Dollars*: which was a vaſt ſumme for thoſe times, conſidering eſpecially the great charge which the King had beene at that yeare, in furniſhing

niſhing a Navie of 70 ſayle, and raiſing 18000 *Land-ſouldiers*, (beſides Horſe) for defence of his Realme againſt the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by ſome knowing men that his *Revenues* would be much greater then they are, if hee did employ ſtrangers to worke the *mines*, which the Natives doe not husband to the beſt advantage; and yet are fearfull to diſcover them to other Nations, upon ſome *jealouſies* which they are naturally addicted to: or if hee would turne *Merchant*, and in his owne ſhips ſend out *Corn* and *Cordage* with Maſts and Timber fit for building, and in them bring back ſalt and other neceſſaries, which his kingdome wants, ſetting them at a farre leſſe price then now they goe at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Armes of this Kingdome are *Azure*, three Crownes, *Or*.

There are in *Swethland*
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 8.
Univerſities but one,
viz. *Upſal.*

And thus much for *SWETHLAND*.

OF RUSSIA.

RUSSIA is bounded on the East by *Tartarie*, on the West with *Livonia*, and *Finland*, from which divided by great Mountains, and the River *Poln*; on the North by the *Frozen* Ocean, and some part of *Lapland*; and on the South by *Lituania*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the *Grim Tartars* inhabiting on the Banks of *Palus Mæotis* and the *Euxine Sea*. It standeth partly in *Europe* and partly in *Asia*, the River *Tanais* or *Don* running through it: the common boundarie of those great and noted parts of the world.

It was thus called from the *Rossi* or *Russi*, a people of Mount *Taurus* or *Taurica Chersonesus* (if not both) who in the declining times of the *Greek* Empire, possessed themselves of some parts of it, and being the prevailing people imposed their name on all the rest. Called also *Russia Alba*, to distinguish it from *Russia Nigra* a Province of *Poland*, *quod incolæ omnium gentium ipsius imperio subjectarum* (as one observes discoursing of the affairs hereof) *vestibus albis & Pileis plerunque utantur*: becaus the Inhabitants use to wear white caps and vestments. And why not thus; sithence the people of *Margiana* and *Sogdiana* in *Asia* have the name of *Jeselbasse*, only becaus they wear *green turbants*, as the word importeth? Finally it is called *Moscovie*, from *Moscovie* the chief Province of it, as that denominated from the *Moschi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the heavenly bodies it is said by some to be situate betwixt the 8. and 20. *Climates*, the longest day in the Southern parts being but 16 hours and an half, and almost 22 hours and an half in the Northern parts. But this is to be understood only of the Province of *Moscovie*, properly and specially so called, and not of the whole Empire of the *Moscovite*, according to the bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it, as *East Lapland*, *Candora*, and *Petzora*, lying within the *Arctick Circle*, the longest day in Summer wil be ful 6 months (for so long do those Countries see no night at all:) which is a mighty disproportion from the length of the longest day in the most Southern parts, being but 16 houres and an half, as before is said. And by this rule we are to take the dimensions also. For though some make the length hereof from North to South, that is to say, from *Cala* in the North to *Astrachan* near the *Caspian* Sea, to be no more then 2260 *Verstis*, or 3690 *Italian* miles: yet they confess that reckoning forwards from *Tromschua* the furthest point of *Petzora*, the full length thereof will be nigh so much more. And for the breadth, reckoning from *Narve* on the Bay of *Finland* (now in possession of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Severia* in the East, it amounteth to 4400 *Verstis*, or 3300 *Italian* miles; each *Verst* being estimated at three quarters of an *English* mile. Which mighty Territorie, if it were peopled answerably to some other parts of the world, would either make it too great for one Prince to hold, or make that Prince too great and puissant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty and deceitful in all their bargains, false-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their promises, and studying nothing more then wayes to evade their Contracts. Vices so generally known and noted in them, that when they are to deal with strangers, they dissemble their Countrie, and pretend to be

be of other Nations: for fear leſt no bodie ſhould truſt them. Deſtitute of humane affections, and ſo *unnaturall* that the father inſults on the ſon, and he again over his father and mother: So *malicious* one towards another, that you ſhall have a man hide ſome of his own goods in the houſe of ſome man whom he hateth, and then accuſe him for the ſtealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, inſomuch that all heady and intoxicating drinks are by Law prohibited: and two or three dayes only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the moſt part they are ſtrong of body, ſwift of foot, of a ſquare proportion, broad, ſhort, and thick; grey-eyed, broad-bearded, and generally furniſhed with prominent paunches. The *Commons* live in miſerable ſubjection to the *Nobles*; and they again in as great ſlavery to the *Duke* or *Emperour*; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his grievances: nay the mean *Lords* and Officers are ſqueamiſh in this kinde, and but on great ſubmiſſion, will not commend unto the *Duke* a poor mans cauſe. They are altogether *unlearned*, even the *Prieſts* meanly indoctrinated; it being cautionated by the great *Duke* that there be no *Schools*, leſt there ſhould be any *Scholars* but himſelf: ſo that the people uſe to work commonly on the Lords day, holding it fit only to be kept by Gentlemen; and to ſay in a difficult queſtion, *God and our Great* Duke *know all this*: and in other talk, *All we enjoy* health *and* life, *all from our Great* Duke. According to whoſe pleaſure every man is preſcribed what habit he ſhall wear, both for matter and faſhion ſuitable unto their condition. In the time of my Author, their habit was a long Garment without plaits, which hung down to their heels, commonly of white or blew, with very ſtrait ſleeves: on their legs wearing *buskins* up as high as the calf, for the moſt part red, high at the heels, and beſet with nails of iron. The ſtuffe and trimming of this dreſſe is the only difference betwixt the *Noble* and the *Paiſant*. The women are attired alſo much after this manner, but if great and Noble, ſuffered to ſet forth themſelves with ſtore of pearls and precious ſtones, which hang ſo thick about their ears, that they do almoſt pul their ears from their heads. A ſecond marriage is conceived no blemiſh in point of *chaſtitie*, but the third condemns them of *incontinence*: naturally ſubject enough to the luſts of the fleſh, but private and fearful to offend; if once laſcivious, then moſt intolerably wanton. It is the faſhion of theſe *women* to love that *husband* beſt which beateth them moſt; and to think themſelves neither loved nor regarded, unleſſe they be two or three times a day well favouredly ſwadled. The Author of the *Treaſurie of times*, telleth a ſtory of a *German* Shoomaker, who travelling into this Country, and here marrying a widow, uſed her with all kindneſſe that a woman could (as he thought) deſire; yet did not ſhe ſeem contented. At laſt learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her, was the cauſe of her *peeviſhneſſe*; he took ſuch a vein in cudgelling her ſides, that in the end, the *Hangman* was fain to break his neck for his labour.

They uſe the *Sclavonian* language, but ſo corrupt and mixt with other languages that they and the *Sclavonians* underſtand not one anothers meaning, but by circumſtance only: yet in *Jugeria* (out of which the *Hungarians* are thought to have iſſued) they ſpeak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Perzota* and the Countrie of the *Czarcaſſians*, they have a language to themſelves diſtinct from others.

They firſt received the *Chriſtian* Faith in the year 987. or as ſome ſay, *anno* 942. by the preaching and miniſterie of the *Greeks*, ſent hither by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: of which Church they are conſtant followers both for rites and doctrine, but not without ſome ſuperſtitions of their own ſuperadded to them, *viz.* not coming near a *Croſſe*, Church, or Monaſterie, but they kneel down, and make the ſign of the *Croſſe*, ſaying, *Miluy Hiſpodi*, i.e. *Lord have mercy upon us*; not entring into any *Church* untill waſhed and bathe. They bear a deadly hatred to the Jews, whom they ſuffer not to live amongſt them; and ſo great friendſhip unto a Calfe, that they hold it a great offence to kil one, or to eat his fleſh. Their Church is governed by 18 Biſhops, and 2 Metropolitans, al of them ſubordinate to their Archbiſhop or *Patriarch*, as he in former times to the *Conſtantinopolitan*; by whom he uſed to be *confirmed*. But about an hundred years agoe they withdrew themſelves from that ſubjection; the *Patriarch* being nominated by the Great *Duke*, and conſecrated by two or three of his own *Suffragans*. Without the counſell and advice of this *Patriarch*, the *Emperour* or *Great Duke* doth nothing of any moment. The Biſhops are all choſen out of the *Monaſtick* or *Regular* Clergy; which makes the Monks, (being all of the Order of S. *Baſil*) to live very religiouſly in hope to be advanced to the *Epiſcopall* dignity. And for the *Secular* Clergy, or *Parochiall* Prieſts, there is not much required of them but to ſay their Maſſes (which being in their own language they may eaſily do,) and to read now and then one of S. *Chryſoſtoms* Homilies, tranſlated heretofore for the uſe of thoſe Churches: after the death of their firſt wives not permitted to marry, in other things little differing from the reſt of the people. Once in the year it is lawfull and uſuall with them to hold a *Synod*, at which the *Patriarch* hath his *Crozier* or *Paſtorall* ſtaffe carried before him, as the Popes *Legate* hath the *Croſſe*; where they make *Conſtitutions* for the publick government, and the regulating of Divine matters, moſt punctually and carefully obſerved by the Prince himſelf.

As followers of the *Greek* Church (but ſo as to be counted a *Church* diſtinct) they differ much both from the *Romiſh* and *Reformed*: 1 Denying the *Holy Ghoſt* to proceed from the Father and the Son. 2 Denying *Purgatory*, but praying for the dead. 3 Beleeving that holy men enjoy not the preſence of God before the reſurrection. 4 Communicating in *both kinds*; but uſing leavened bread, and mingling warm water with wine, which both together they diſtribute with a ſpoon. 5 Receiving children of 7 years old to the *Sacrament* of the Euchariſt, becauſe then they begin to ſin. 6 Forbidding extream *unction*, *confirmation*, and fourth marriages. 7 Admitting none to Orders but ſuch as are *married*, and yet prohibiting marriage to them that are actually in Orders. 8 Rejecting carved *Images*, but admitting the painted. 9 Obſerving 4 Lents in the year. 10 Reputing it unlawfull to faſt on Saturday,

Saturday; or to *eat blood* or any thing that hath been *ſtrangled* according to the firſt Councell holden at *Hieruſalem*. 11 And finally diſſolving marriage by divorcement, upon every ſlight occaſion or conceived pleaſure. Which diverſitie betwixt the *Romaniſts* and this people in point of Religion, hath bred ſuch a difference betwixt them in point of Affection, and made them ſo ill conceited of one another: that if a *Moſcovite* be known or but ſuſpected to have converſed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted perſon, and muſt be ſolemnly purged and purified before he be admitted to partake of the bleſſed Sacrament.

In matters of war the people are indifferent able, as being almoſt in continuall broils with their Neighbours: and have a cuſtome that when they goe to the Wars every Souldier giveth to the Emperour or Great Duke a piece of money, which at the end of the war he receiveth again; and by that means the number of the ſlain is exactly known. At their funerals they uſe to put a penny into the mouth of the partie deceaſed, a pair of ſhoes on his feet, and a Letter in his hand, directed (ſuch is their ſuperſtition) to S. *Nicholas*, whom they deem to be the *Porter* of Heaven: an opinion doubtleſſe very prejudiciall to the *Popes* and S. *Peters prerogatives*.

This Country is not ſo populous as ſpatious. The *Eaſtern* parts are vexed with the *Tartars*; who like *Eſops* dog, will neither dwell there themſelves, nor ſuffer the *Muſcovites* to plant Colonies in them: the *Weſtern* parts are almoſt as much moleſted by the *Sweden* and *Polonian* Kings; the *Southern* by the *Turks* and *Precopenſes*; and the *Northern* by the coldneſſe of the air, which is of ſuch vehemencie, that water thrown up into the air, will turn to ice before it fall to the ground. The better to reſiſt the extremity of this cold, not only the clothes of this people, but their very houſes are lined with thick *Furs*. Every Gentleman or man of note hath in his dwelling-houſe a *ſtove* or *hot-houſe*, in which they keep, as it were, to thaw themſelves. Such as travell on the way, uſe often to rub their noſe or ears with ſnow or ice, to ſettle and recall the motive *ſpirits* into thoſe parts, which otherwiſe they would be in danger to loſe: the ignorance of which preventing *Chirurgery*, was not the leaſt cauſe that in the year 1598, of 70000 *Turks*, which made an inrode into *Muſcovie*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reaſon of theſe extremities of froſts and cold, it is the cuſtome of this people, to lay the bodies of their dead all the winter long on heaps in the *Belfrees* of their Churches; where they lie without *putrefying* or any ill ſavour, till the end of *March*; at what time the air beginning to wax warm and the earth to be fit for digging, each familie looks out their dead bodies, and takes care to bury them. This exceſſe of cold in the air, gave occaſion to *Caſtilian* in his *Aulicus*, wittily and not incongruouſly to faign, that if two men being ſomewhat diſtant, talk together in the *winter*, their words will be ſo frozen that they cannot be heard: but if the parties in the *ſpring* return to the ſame place, their words will melt in the ſame order that they were frozen and ſpoken, and be plainly underſtood. Such is their *winter*, neither is their *ſummer* leſſe miraculous. For the huge Seas of ice, which in a manner covered the whole ſurface of the Country, are at the firſt approach of the Sun ſuddainly diſſolved, the waters quickly dryed up, and the earth dreſſed in her *holy-day* apparell: ſuch a mature growth of fruits, ſuch flouriſhing of hearbs, ſuch chirping of birds, as if here were a perpetuall *ſpring*. The reaſon of which ſtrange and ſuddain alteration is conceived to be the long lying of the ſnow on the face of the earth, keeping it from the rigour of the winter froſts: which being diſſolved by the Sun in the beginning of the ſpring, doth ſo throughly drench and ſoke the ground (being of a light and ſandie mold) and conſequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun, ſhining hotly on it; that it forceth in a manner the *Herbs* and *Plants* to ſhoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a ſhorter time then can be imagined.

The whole Countrie generally is very much over-ſpread with *Woods*, parts of the great *Hercynian* Forreſt, heretofore over-running all the North, and ſtill more viſible here then in other places: either by reaſon of the idleneſſe of the people, naturally given to ſloath and eaſe; or for that the Country is not populous enough to overcome them; or that there is already ground enough for tillage to ſupply their neceſſary uſes. For here do grow the goodlieſt and talleſt trees of the world, through which by reaſon of their thickneſſe, the brightneſſe of the Sun-beams can hardly pierce: affording ſhelter to great multitudes of Cattle, but of wild beaſts eſpecially, whoſe skins are better then their bodies; as *Bears*, *Marterns*, *Zibellines*, *Wolves*, *black Foxes*, whoſe skins are of very great eſtimation. Of the timber of theſe trees are ſquared all neceſſaries both for Forts and Houſes; the Fortifications in this Countrie being made of huge Beams faſtened together, (the chinks filled with earth) not eaſily ſhaken by batterie, though much ſubject to fire. And out of them iſſueth an unſpeakable quantitie of *Pitch* and *Rozin*, which are hence diſtilled: beſides an everlaſting fountain of wax and hony; the *Bees*, without the Midwifrie of the Art of men, building their Hives or houſes in the hollow trees. Concerning this there goeth a ſtory (reported and beleeved for a certain truth) of a Countryman, who accidentally had ſlipped down into a great hollow tree, where he ſtood up to the breſt in honey, continuing there two dayes without other ſuſtenance: at the end whereof a *Bear* coming to partake of the bootie, he laid hold of his legs and ſo terrified him with his cries, that he made him leap out with the man at his heels. The Countrie yeildeth alſo great ſtore of *Flax* and *Hemp*, which is tranſported yearly into other Countries; and would make them very excellent *cordage*, if the people had any skill in *manufactures* or *Mechanicall* Arts: and in ſome places rich paſtures, and ſuch ſtore of Corn, that therewith they do furniſh *Lapland*, and the North parts of *Sweden*. *Fiſh* they have alſo in good plentie, which they ſalt and drie, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in ſtore for their Forts and Families. By which accompt it will appear that the principall commodities which they ſend abroad, are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales greaſe, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Rozin,

Nuts,

Nuts, Filberds, and the like: which either the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* buy of them at the Port of S. *Nicholas*, or the *Armenians* at *Aſtrachan* near the *Caſpian* Sea: giving them in return, Cloth, Silks, Tapeſtry, and ſome other Merchandiſe, tranſported to the value of 500000 Rubbles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 *poad* (every *poad* containing 40 *Engliſh* pounds) of tallow 100000 *poad*, 100000 *hides*, 100 ſhips laden with Flax and Hemp; the reſt of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author: ſince whoſe time the trade hereof hath been much increaſed.

This Country not improperly may be called (as by ſome it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are 1 the *Don*, called *Tanais* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundarie betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*; the Northern parts of this Country being then unknown. It disburtheneth it ſelf into *Palus Mæotis*, and hath its fountain not out of the *Ripheam* Mountains, as was thought of old, but out of a great Lake called *Iwanowreſero* in the Forreſt of *Okonitzkilies*, or *Jephapinolies*, ſome 20 *Engliſh* miles from the Citie of *Tulla*, and having run a great way Eaſtward turneth back again, and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Mæotis*, as was ſaid before. 2 *Boryſthenes*, now called *Nieper*, whoſe ſpring was unknown unto *Herodotus*, but now diſcovered to be near *Dnieperk*, a Village of *Moſcovie* (ſpecially ſo called) in the Forreſt of *Wolkonskie*. Whence paſſing South, and running by the Town of *Smolensko*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongſt them that of *Doſna*, (by the ancient Writers called *Hipani*) notwithſtanding whoſe muddy waters, it ſtill retains its naturall clearneſſe, and ſo falls into the *Euxine* Sea. 3 *Tarunus* (ſo called by *Ptolemie*) or *Duina* the leſſe (to difference it from *Duina* the greater) which riſing not far from the head of *Boryſthenes*, out of the Lake of *Duina*, and waſhing the wals of *Riga* the chief Town of *Livonia*, loſeth it ſelf in the *Baltick* Sea. 4 *Dfina*, or *Dwine* (commonly called *Duina* the greater) ſo called from the meeting of two rivers, the *Juch* and the *Sachan* (whereof more hereafter) of which that of the longeſt courſe, not known unto the ancients, hath its head in the Province of *Permia*, and its fall into the *Frozen* or Northern Ocean, at the Port of S. *Nicholas*. 5 *Occa*, or *Ocyne*, riſing in the Territorie of *Miſceneck*, and making all the Countrie fruitfull through which it paſſeth, emptieth it ſelf into the *Volga*. 6 *Volga*, by *Ptolemie* called *Rha*, by the *Tartars*, *Edill*; which riſeth 25 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco* towards *Lituania*, and fetching a great compaſſe in and out, after it hath ſwallowed up many leſſer Rivers, diſchargeth it ſelf with 70 mouths into the *Caſpian* Sea, now called *Mer di Bachu*: Here are beſides theſe Rivers many notable Lakes, as thoſe of *Duina* and *Volga*, out of which the ſaid two Rivers iſſue; that called *Ilmen*, not far from *Novogrod* the Great, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſſe; that of *Ladoga* 100 *Dutch* miles in length and 60 in bredth, in which are many pleaſant Iſlands; and that called *Bideloyeſero* (*Lacus Albus* in *Latine*) about 12 *German* miles long, and as many broad, into which 360 Rivers are ſaid to diſcharge their ſtreams; in the midſt whereof is a very ſtrong Caſtle, ſaid to be impregnable: in which the *Great Duke* keeps the moſt part of his treaſure, and into which he doth withdraw in the times of danger and ſedition.

As for the Mountains of this Country, here are the *Montes Amadoci*, *Riphæi*, and *Hyperborei*, ſo much talked of, and ſo little known among the Ancients. A continuall and craggie chain of hils runing croſſe *Sarmatia Europæa*, South and North, and thence Eaſtwards into *Aſiatica*. Beginning not far from the fall of *Boryſthenes* into the *Euxine*, they extend directly towards the North, and are there called *Montes Amadoci*. Afterwards bending for a long ſpace towards the North-eaſt, they are called *Riphæi*; and then paſſing on directly Eaſt, by reaſon of their Northernly ſituation, called *Hyperborei*. And though Sir *Walter Raleigh* ſay, I know not on what authority, that there are no *Riphean* Mountains in *Rerum natura*: yet *Mercator* placeth them in this tract, and telleth us that in regard of their being alwayes covered with ice and ſnow, they are hardly paſſable, calling theſe and the ſaid *Hyperborei* (in his *Europa*) by the name of *Cingulum terræ*, or the *Girdle* of the *Earth*, a great part whereof (though known in divers places by different names) they do ſeem to compaſſe.

It is divided for the better Government hereof into four parts (by them termed *Chetfords*) and thoſe governed by four Lieutenants not reſident upon their charges, but attending on the Emperors perſon whereſoever he goeth, and there holding their Courts, but ſpecially at *Moſco*, the prime ſeat of the Empire: where from their *Under-Deputies* they receive the complaints of their Provinces, and inform the Emperours Counſell of the buſineſſe, and from them again receive inſtructions for *Reformation*. But as to the *Chorographie* of it, it is divided into the Provinces of *Moſcovie* ſpecially ſo called, 2 *Novogrod* the *Great*, 3 *Smolensko*, 4 *Moſaiskie*, 5 *Pleſcow*, 6 *Corelia*, 7 *Biarmia*, 8 *Petzora*, 9 *Condora*, 10 *Obdora*, 11 *Jugra*, 12 *Severia*, 13 *Permia*, 14 *Rhezan*, 15 *Wiathka*, 16 *Caſan*, 17 *Aſtrachan*, 18 *Novogordia inferior*, 19 the *Mordwits*, 20 *Worotine*, 21 *Tuvir*, 22 *Wolodomir*, 23 *Dwina*, and 24 the *Ruſſian Iſlands*. Others of leſſe note (of which there is no want) are reduced to theſe. In my Deſcriptions whereof I ſhall not be ſo exact and punctuall as I have been hitherto: the Countrie not being much travelled by Strangers, nor any of the Natives ſuffered to goe into forein Nations, or permitted (out of *jealouſies* of State) to hold diſcourſe with the *Ambaſſadours* of neighbouring Princes, but only in the Emperours hearing. By means whereof the *Chorographie* of this vaſt Empire is come but lamely to our hands, though the *Power*, *Politie*, and *Revenues* of it, being points diſcernible by the *Miniſters* of other Princes, and by the courſe and conduct of their affairs, are as well known as thoſe of leſſe diſtance. Which ſaid, we will firſt begin with *Moſcovie*, the prevailing Province, that which gives name to this whole Empire; with reference to which the ſituation and poſition of the reſt of the Provinces is ſet forth unto us in our Authors.

Muſcovie.

1. MVSCOVIE.

1 *MVSCOVIE*, ſpecially ſo called, is ſeated in the very center of this Eſtate, and ſo more fit to order the affaires thereof: the largeſt Province of the whole, extending from Eaſt to Weſt 600 *Dutch* or 2400 *Engliſh* miles: ſo populous with all, that beſides 30000 *Boiares'*, or Gentlemen bound to ſerve on Horſeback at their owne charges (like the *Turkes Timariots*) the *Great Duke* is able to raiſe 70000 Foot (which is a great matter for a Countrey ſo little cultivated).

The ſoyle hereof is ſtiffe and clammie, but might be made more profitable then it is, were it well manured; or ploughed and ordered as it is in all other Countries. For here, and in moſt parts elſe of this large Dominion, the people are accuſtomed to ſow no more of their land then what they digge with the ſpade, or can break up with a ſtick very ſharply pointed, whereof they carry great numbers into the field, that when one breaks they may uſe another.

Chief places in this Province are 1 *Moſco*, the *Imperiall* ſeat and the See of the *Patriarch*, ſo called of the River *Moſco* upon which it is ſituate. Exceedingly improved both in ſtate and beauty, ſince the time that *Daniel* the fourth Lord of *Moſcovie*, removed the ſeat Royall hither, from *Volodomire*, where before it was: inſomuch that it was once growne to nine miles in compaſſe; containing then 41500 families; but being fired by the *Tartar*, *anno* 1571. (at what time there were burnt 800000 perſons) it is reduced to five miles only, the houſes for the moſt part of wood and durt, the ſtreets very miry; without either Ditch, Wall, or Rampart to defend it againſt an Enemy. In ſteed whereof there are two Caſtles, in the out parts of it, the one called *Kitagorod*, the other *Bolſigorod*, environed with the River *Moſco*, and another water called *Neglinna*, which here fals into it. It containes 16 Churches, moſt of them of the ſame *materials* as the houſes are: and the *Palace* of the great Duke ſituate in the midſt hereof (which for the greatneſſe of it may be thought a little City) fortified with 17 Towns, 3 Bulwarks, and a continuall Garriſon (if the great Duke be there) of 25000 men for the guard of his perſon. 2 *Sloboda*, a Biſhops See, North-eaſt to *Moſco*, on the banks of one of the greateſt Rivers which fall into the *Volga*. 3 *Ruſchow*, the title of a Dukedome, fortified with a Caſtle of wood (of which ſtuffe moſt of the fortreſſes of this countrey are made) ſituate 23 leagues from *Moſco* towards the weſt, on the banks of the *Volga*; which hath its fountain in the territorie and precincts hereof. 4 *Jaroſlave*, on the *Volga* alſo, a town and Caſtle; diſtant about 46 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*; formerly the Eſtate and patrimony of the ſecond ſons of the *Great Duke*, but united to the Royall Domaine, by *John Waſiliwick*, and by him added alſo to the ſtyle Imperiall. It is alſo one of the Sees *Epiſcopall*. 5 *Ruſtow*, the See of one of the two *Metropolitans* ſituate in a fruitfull ſoyl, well ſtored with fiſh, and yeelding good plenty of ſalt. One of the antienteſt *Principalities* of all this Empire, and held accuſtomably by the ſecond ſonne of the *Great Duke*, as a ſtate diſtinct: but conquered by *John Vaſiliwick*, *anno* 1565. and added to the ſtyle and Patrimony of the *Great Duke* himſelfe, the younger ſons being from thence forth put off with penſions. 6 *Vologda*, a Biſhops See, ſituate in a fenny and woodie Countrey, very ſtrong by nature, and beautified with one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles of all this *Eſtate*, where the *Great Duke* doth ſometimes lay a part of his treaſure: that part eſpecially which is raiſed of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchandiſe, wich being landed at the Port of St. *Nicolas*, is firſt brought hither, where having paida new toll or cuſtome, it goeth on to *Moſco*. Betwixt this City and that of *Yaroſlave* before mentioned, for the ſpace of an hundred *Engliſh* miles, where ſtood in former times 50 goodly Villages, (ſome of them of a mile in length) the Countrey in a manner is left wholly deſolate, and without Inhabitants; abandoned by the people by reaſon of the inſupportable preſſures which were laid upon them.

2 SMOLENSKO. 3 MOSAISKI. 4 PLESCOW.

The Dukedome of *SMOLENSKO*, is ſituate on the courſe of the River *Nieper*, or *Boryſthenes*, full of many thick Forreſts, from whence they carry a great number of rich skins yeerly. Places of moſt obſervation in it, are 1 *Smolensko* ſituate on the *Nieper*, a Biſhops See, about 80 *Polonian* miles from *Moſco*, begirt on every ſide with mountaines and ſpacious Woods. A large town and of great eſteem in theſe parts of the Empire; and giving name unto this Province; which heretofore was governed in a free condition under the patronage and protection of the Kings of *Poland* in the time of *Alexander* a late king thereof by *Baſilius* the *Great Duke* conquered, and added unto this Eſtate. Taken by the *Polanders*, in the yeare 1610. after a long ſiege of two yeares, with the ſlaughter of 200000 *Muſcovites*, and the loſſe of many of the beſiegers; but reſtored again to *Michael Fedrovitius* the *Great Duke*, on the making of the peace between them. 2 *Biela*, a principality of it ſelfe, having the honour of a Caſtle, and reckoned in the uſuall ſtyle of the *Knez* or Emperour.

3 *MOSAISKI*, hath in length 350 *Italian* miles, and as much in breadth ſo called from *Moſaiſke*, the chief town hereof, and a Biſhops See, taken together with the territory or Province appertaining to it, from *Alexander* King of *Poland*, by *John* the *Great Duke*, father of *Baſilius* before mentioned.

4 *PLSCOW* or *PSKOW*, containes in length 350 *Italian* miles, in breadth 230 or thereabouts, ſo called from *Pleſcow* or *Pskow*, the chief City of it, and a Biſhops See; great, powerfull, and well walled

walled about, the onely walled City of all this Empire. So large within the wals, that when it was be- *Novogrod.*
ſieged by *Stephen* king of *POLAND*, there were in it for defence thereof 70000 Foot, and 7000 Horſe, beſides the naturall Inhabitants of it; which in all ordinary computation muſt be many more. It belonged formerly to the *Poles*, in right of the Dukedome of *Lituania*; taken from them by *Baſilius* the *Great Duke* of *Muſcovie*, *anno* 1509; by whom and his ſucceſſours uſed in the Royall ſtyle.

5 *NOVOGORD.*

5 *NOVOGORD* or *NOVOGROD* is one of the largeſt Provinces or Dukedomes in all *Ruſſia*; bordering on *Livonia*, towards *Sinus Finnicus*, or the Gulfe of *Finland*: a colder Countrey and leſſe fruitfull then that of *Muſcovie*, becauſe ſituate ſomewhat further North: the longeſt ſummer day in *Moſco* not being above 18 houres, whereas in *Novogrod* the chief City hereof, it is very neer 20. By conſequence the winter nights being of that length, muſt make the air exceeding cold, and the ſoile as comfortleſſe. Here is in this Province the great lake *Ilmen*, ſpoken of before, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſſe; as alſo that called *Ladoga*, before alſo mentioned.

Townes of moſt eſtimation in it are 1 *Novogrod* it ſelfe, the wealthieſt and goodlieſt City of all the North, affirmed to be in greatneſſe not inferiour to *Rome*, called therefore *Novogrod* the *great* (to difference it from another of the ſame name near unto *Valodomir*:) an Archbiſhops See, and one of the foure *Mart-townes* of the *Hanſe-Merchants*, reſorted to from all parts for the trade of *Muſcovie*, brought thither by land, and thence tranſported through the *Baltick* to moſt parts of *Chriſtendome*. So confident in thoſe times of their power and ſtrength, that they uſed to ſay, that *men could doe nothing againſt God and them*: but found the contrary when taken from the Crown of *Poland* by the *Great Duke* of *Muſcovie*. The trade thereof ſince much decayed, by the finding out of the North-East paſſage to the Port of St. *Nicolas*, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants barter with the *Muſcovite*. Yet ſtill it keeps the reputation of the principall City, ſituate on the River *Naf*, which the *Dutch* call *Ny*; the buildings for the moſt part of wood and clay: diſtant from *Moſco* 120 *Dutch* miles, and about 200 from the main body of the *Baltick*, betwixt which and this City lyeth the whole Bay of *Finland*, the entrances whereof upon the *Dwina*, which leads toward *Novogrod* are fortified with the ſtrong townes and Garriſons of *Narve*, and *Rivallia*, both in the hands of the king of *Sweden*, which is another great hinderance to the trade of this town. 2 *Narve*, on the North banke of *Dwina*, where it falls into the Bay of *Finland*, or *Sinus Finnicus*, in the Province or Territorie of *Wichidaw*, heretofore reckoned of as a part of *Livonia*, but being taken by *Baſilius* the *Great Duke*, with the reſt of this Countrey, and the towne of *Novogrod* it ſelfe, *anno* 1477. it was impregnably fortified by the care of his ſonne *Vaſaliwich*, who for a reward unto the *Architect* being a *Polonian*, put out both his eies, to diſable him from building the like againe. But having left all the *natives* in their own habitations, without abating either their ſtrength or number, the Towne and Caſtle not long after was betrayed to the king of *Sweden*, who ſtill holds it. 3 *Pozow* or *Pozovia*, and 4 *Volocoluc*, two ſtrong peeces, ſituate in the borders againſt the *Polanders*. 5 *Vobſco*, beſieged by *Stephen* king of *Poland*, with an Army of 100000 men, forced to retire without taking it, with the loſſe of many of his beſt Captaines and common ſouldiers. It is diſtant from *Novogrod* 28 *Dutch* miles, the countrey about it called *Volsk*, where they ſay for certaine that all Cattell which are brought thither of what haire or colour ſoever they be, upon a little ſtay there become all *white*. The people of this tract have a language (or ſome *Dialect* rather) peculiar onely to themſelves. 6 *Juvanogrod*, a ſtrong Caſtle not far from *Vobſco*, 40 miles from *Novogrod*; a frontire Caſtle againſt the *Swedes* garriſoned in *Narve*, to repulſe whoſe inrodes it was built.

In this Countrey and not far from the Town of *Novogrod*, was fought that memorable battell betwixt the *Sarmatians*, and their *Slaves*. For when the *Aſiatick Scythians* went to plant themſelves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining; ſome of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this tract, went along for company. Their long ſtay, cauſed their wives, deſpairing of their return, to comfort themſelves with their *ſlaves*, both at bed and board, to whom they brought a luſtie increaſe of youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joined together againſt them: the *ſlaves* to retain that wealth and freedome which they were poſſeſſed of; the *women* for fear of the diſpleaſure of their husbands, and the *young men* for defence of their Fathers and Mothers. With joint forces they goe out to meet them, before their entrie into the Countrey; neither are the *Maſters* ſlow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the firſt ſight of each other. The *Maſters* ſcorning to defile their ſwords on ſo ignoble an Enemy, aſſault them with *whips*, and by the terrour thereof got a ſignall victory. In memory of which battell the people of that City have ever ſince ſtamped their money with the figure of an *Horſeman* ſhaking a *whip* in his hands: And it is the cuſtome over all *Muſcovie*, that the *maids* in the time of wooing, ſend ſuch a *whip*, curiouſly wrought by her own hands, to that *Suiter* whom ſhe reſolves on for her husband, in token of her future ſubjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6 CORELIA. 7 BIARMIA.

6. Sixty *Dutch* miles from *Novogrod* lyeth the Province called *Corelia*, extending Northwards as far as to a branch of the *Frozen* Sea, where the longeſt day is 20 houres and an halfe: the nights proportionable in the winter make it cold and barren. It bordereth on the Eaſt of *Finland* from which parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountaines. By reaſon of which ſituation betwixt two great Princes, the people are inforced to pay tribute to both; though properly the ſubjects of the *Great Duke* of *Moſcovie*. Chief townes whereof are *Kexholm*, or *Hexolm*, in the hands of the *Swedes*; and 2 *Corelnberg*, the chief town of the Province, belonging with the reſt of the Countrey unto the *Moſcovite*. By ſome this Province is made a part of the *Eaſtern Lapland*; but I think erroneouſly: the people having ſome good Towns; and ſavouring of ſome *humanity*, neither of which are known or heard of amongſt the *Laplanders*. 3 *Nordenberg* on the mouth of a lake, which by the River called *Warfuga*, emptyeth it ſelfe into the Bay of S. *Nicolas*.

On the North ſide of that branch or Arme of the *Frozen* Ocean, which bounds *Corelia*, lyeth the Weſterne part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMIA*, the countrey of the *Dikiloppi* or *wilde Lappians*, as the *Moſcouites* call them, to whoſe Duke or Emperour they are ſubject. We had their *Character* before when we were in *Swethland*; nor ſhall we need to repeat it here: as barbarous and rude as the worſt ſort of thoſe mentioned in *Scricfinnia*, and as *idolatrous* as they: but more (if more may be) inclined to luſtfulneſſe then the others. In the winter *Solſtice*, when the Sun entreth into *Capricorn*, they have night for three whole months together: during which time lurking in their Caves, they have leiſure to conſult with the *Prince* of *Darkneſſe*, being very great *Sorcerers*, able (as ſome affirm) to raiſe Windes, Clouds, Tempeſts, and doe many ſtrange things. Towns here are none. Some ſheds and Cabbins on the Sea coſts, patched up by *Saylers*, for their reception and refreſhment as they came on land, and named according to their fancies; but not here conſiderable.

8 PETZORA. 9 IVGRIA. 10 OBDORA. 11 CONDORA.

Oppoſite to *Biarmia*, or *Eaſt-Lapland*, on the other ſide of the *Bay* leading towards the Port of S. *Nicolas*, lyeth a large *Promontorie* or *Headland* ſtretching out farre into the North, beyond the *Arctick*; comprehending in it foure Provinces of the *Ruſſian* Empire: that is to ſay, *Petzora*, *Jugria*, *Obdora*, and *Condora*; belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but wonne from them of late years by the *Ruſſian* Emperors, extending by that means their territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in *power* or *patrimonie*. Howſoever ſomewhat muſt be ſaid of them, becauſe parts of this great body which we are to diſſect.

1 *PETZORA*, ſo called from a River of that name, is fenced on every ſide by mountaines and unpaſſable rocks; extending Northwards to the Sea, and croſſed with a vaſt chain of hils, part of the *Hyperborei* ſpoken of before: ſo high, that a certain man having travelled in the aſcent of them 17 dayes together, is ſaid to have returned back again, deſpairing to attaine the top of them, covered in the winter time with perpetuall *ſnowes*, in the ſummer with as ſcorching heats, by the continuall lying of the Sun on all parts thereof. The people are of a plain and ſimple nature, and received the *Ruſſian faith* and Empire at one time together, *anno* 1518. The chief town of it 1 *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea; a ſmall town, but having three Churches in it: the people whereof though otherwiſe ſufficiently ſimple, as before is ſaid, do in the ſummer time catch Partrich, Ducks, Swans, Geeſe, and other fowle, which they ſalt and lay by till the winter, and then live upon them. So good a *Tutor* is the *Belly*, that the Poet did not unfitly give it the titles of *Artis Magiſter*, and *Ingenii largitor venter*; whereof this may ſerve for one example.

7 *CONDORA* lyeth on the North of *Petzora*, more neere the *Pole*, by conſequence a colder Countrey, and of worſe condition, in one half of the Countrey being continuall day, and the other halfe as long a night. The people univerſally *Idolaters*, worſhipping ſome *Images* (or *Idols*) in the ſhape of a man, others in that of Beares, Wolves, &c. which they adorn with the richeſt furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for feare of the *Ruſſes*: who if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt thoſe parts for *Sables*, *Foxes*, and *Bevers*, take away their *furres*, and beſtow greater heat upon them in fires. The chief Town hereof is *Puſtozrea* over againſt *Nova Zemla*, on or neer the great lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; ſituate in the 68 Degree of *Northern Latitude*, 50 minutes over.

10 *Obdora*, ſo called from the River *Ob*, on both ſides of whoſe bankes it lyeth, is the moſt North-Eaſtern Province of all theſe Dominions: wonne to the obedience of the *Ruſſes* in the reign of *Theodore* the ſonne of *John* Great Duke of *Muſcovie*. At what time the people had no Cities, lived in *Hoords* or *Companies*, eat the Beaſts they tooke, knew no corn nor bread. They were then very good *Archers*, ſharp-

sharpening their Arrows with fish Bones; with which bones and the sinews of the Beasts they sowed *Furs* together for their *Clothing*, which they wear inward in the winter, outward in the summer, covering their houses with *Elke-skinnes*. By this *Theodore* were some Castles built on the Rivers side, to which he sent condemned persons, and brought it into the form of a petit kingdome. But his sonne *Boris* built *Tooma* the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both sides of the water, not worth naming here. But notwithstanding this subjection to the *Moscovite* they continue still in their *Idolatry*, worshipping an antient Idol, in form of an old woman, holding in each Arm a *Childe*, and a third at her feet, called by them *Zlatu Babu*, or the *Golden old wife*, to which they offer pretious *Furs*, sacrifice Harts, and therewith doe consult touching things to come. But some accompt this for a Fable, or a meere mistake. *Severia, &c.*

11 *JUGRIA* or *JUHAR*, lyeth also on the Northern Seas, but more south then either of the other; betwixt *Petzore* or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Dwina*: the longest day in summer being not above 21 houres, or not fully that. The people for the most part *Idolaters*, and worship the same Images as doe those of *Obdora*: affirmed by some to be the Progenitors of the present *Hungarians*, who coming out of this Countrey over-ran all *Pannonia*, and there fixed their dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they speak the old *Hungarian* language; not used but in this countrey, and the North parts of *Hungarie* betwixt *Danubius*, and *Tibiscus*. Which more learned men affirm to be the *Iazygian*, the language of the *Iazyges* who antiently possessed that countrey in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this dispute to another place, certaine it is that they are subject to the *Moscovite*, but so poore and miserable a people, that they have few townes and not many houses; and so bare of money, that in stead thereof they pay *Furs* for tribute to their Emperour.

12 *SEVERIA*. 13 *PERMIA*. 14 *RHEZAN*.

12 *SEVERIA*, or *SIBIOR* as the *Moscovites* called it, lieth in a long tract on the bankes of the River *Ob* or *Oby*, south of *Obdoza*, and the rest of the foure last Provinces. The Countrey very fruitfull, and abounding with all things necessary, notwithstanding that there be great Deserts, and some Forrests also; but those Forrests well stored with *black Foxes*, *Ermines*, *Sables*, and the like wilde beasts, which yeeld more profit by their *rich Furs*, then any more fertile Countrey doth by its Corn and fruites. In somuch that in the yeare 1589. there were collected out of this Province only in the way of tribute for the Emperour, 466 timber of *Sables*, (every *Timber* containing 40 skins) five *Timber* of *Martrons*, 180 *Cases* of *Black Foxes*, (every *Case* containing 40 skins) besides other commodities. The woods also doe afford good plenty of *Hony*, and the plaines of *Herbage*; well watered with the River *Sem*, which falleth into the *Desna*, and both together into that of the *Nieper* or *Borysthenes*. There are in it many Townes and Castles, the principall whereof are 1 *Sibier*, on the West side of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province; 2 *Branki*; not far from the great Forrest from hence named. 3 *Starodus*, 4 *Potuvole*, and 5 *Czeznigo*.

The people hereof by reason of their continuall skirmishes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the most warlike Nation of all the *Russes*: heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their owne, who at the first acknowledged no Superiour; but afterwards was severally and successively *Tributary* to the *Lituanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Moscovite*, and finally the last Duke being falsly accused of treason, was outed of his estate by *Basilius* the Great Duke, who addded it to the rest of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever since.

13 *PERMIA* is situate on the South-west of *Sibior* or *Severia*, a large Province, distant 250 *Dutch* miles from *Mosco*, so called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chiefe towne hereof, situate on the River *Vischore* or *Vistorna*: the second Town of note is called *Sicwiarskey*. The people (as also those of *Sibior*) are of the *Moscovite* Religion, and live most by hunting wilde beasts, whose *flesh* they eat, and make good merchandise of their *skins*, many of which they pay yearly to the great Duke in way of tribute, who makes a good commodity of them, selling them to the Merchant at excessive rates. They have no corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elsewhere; but in stead of bread eat the flesh of *Stags* dryed and prepared in the Sun: speaking a language of their own, different from the rest of the *Russes*; and in stead of Horses and Oxen make use of great *dogs* and *stags*, whom they train up to draw their *sleds* from one place to another. There is good store of woods amongst them; but they want *Cedars*; and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vasiliwich* meaning to pick a quarrell with them, sent to them for certain loads of *Cedar wood*, whereof he knew there grew none in their Countrey; and upon word returned that they had no such wood, hee fined them at 12060 *Rubbles*.

14 *RHEZAN*, a great and goodly Province, is situate betwixt the River *Tanais*, and that of *Occa*: the most fruitfull Countrey of all *Russia*, and (if report be true) of the whole world also: it being credibly affirmed that one graine of corn doth bring forth six eares; the stalks hereof growing so thick, that an horse can hardly passe through them, or a *Quaile* flie out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is also great plenty of fruits, better then are to be found elsewhere in *Russia*, together with good store of *Honey*, fish, fowl, and other commodities; besides *Ermins*, Bevers and the

Wiathka, &c.

like, common in these Countries. Chief Towns hereof are 1 *Tulla*, famous for the fountain or spring-head of the River *Tanais*, which ariseth near it. 2 *Colluga*, well garrisoned for fear of the *Crim Tartar*. 3 *Corsira*, a Bishops See, as is also 4 *Rhezan*, the principall of the Province which it giveth name to, seated upon the banks of the River *Occue*. A Country populous and well-planted, affording to the Great *Duke* 15000 *Boyares*, or Gentlemen which serve on horseback, and betwixt 30 and 40000 foot.

15 *WIATHKA*, 16 *CASAN*, 17 *ASTRACHAN*.

15 Southeast of *Rhezan* beyond the banks of the River *Kamme*, and about 150 *Dutch* miles from *Mosco*, lyeth the Province called *WIATHKA*, fennie and barren, but well stored with fish and honey, and wild beasts good plenty. Heretofore subject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive servants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expulsed, it was made subject by *Basilius* to the Dukes of *Moscovie*. I do not read of any Towns which should be here, which makes me think that they do stil retain so much of the *Tartar* with them, as to live in *Hoords* and *Companies* without any fixt dwellings: or at the best, in scattered houses, not hitherto united into Towns and Villages: except it be the Town of *Wiatbka* it self, built since the subjection of it to the *Moscovite*, and made a Garrison to defend these out-parts of this Empire against the incursions of the *Tartars*.

16 *CASAN*, a kingdome formerly of *Tartaria Deserta*, lyeth on the Southeast of *Wiatbka*; the most Civill people of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that civilitie to their conversation with the *Moscovites*, (though none of the civillest themselves) tilling their lands and building houses where they may with safety. For although the soil hereof be tolerably fruitfull, and fit for habitation, yet the Countrie for the most part is desolate and ill inhabited, partly by reason of some vast deserts lying betwixt the Cities of *Casan* and *Astrachan*; but principally in regard of the *Crim Tartar*, who will not suffer the *Moscovite* to plant it with Colonies of his own people, nor the *Natives* to live there in quiet, except only in the Western parts, where protected by Garrisons. Chief Towns hereof are 1 *Casan* upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the Kingdom; since the subjection of this people to the great Duke, and their conversion to the faith, made a Bishops See. 2 *Surick* upon the River *Sure*, in the middle of the vast deserts betwixt *Casan* and *Astrachan*; built by *Basilius* the Great *Duke* for a stage or resting place for Merchants and Travellers, that there they might repose themselves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people hereof had once a King of their own, as before was said, the last of which named *Chelealcesk*, submitted himself unto *Basilius* the Great Duke and became tributarie: but afterwards revolting, he was vanquished by *John Vasiliwich*, *anno* 1553. and this kingdom thereupon united to the Empire of *Russia*; the Emperours since that time writing themselves *Czar Kasanski*, or King of *Casan*: And possible enough it is that *Basilius* who first made it tributarie, might from hence take the name of *Basilius Casan*, according to the custome of the ancient *Romans*.

Under the Government hereof are the *Czeremissi*, a people that live in great Forrests without any houses, living for the most part of honey and the flesh of wild beasts, with the skins of which they are apparelled. Their language different from the rest, swift of foot, and very good *Archers*, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and practising their children so timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after such an age) untill they can hit a white which is set before them.

17 *ASTRACHAN* lyeth also South-east of *Casan*, more near unto the *Caspian* Seas; parted from *Casan* by those deserts spoken of before, but situate on the same branch of the River *Volga*: which having run a course of 2000 *Italian* miles, dischargeth it self into this Sea with no lesse then 70 mouths or channels. It took this name from *Astrachan* the chief town hereof, situate about 20 *Italian* miles from the fall of one of those 70 mouths or channels into the *Caspian*: by the commodiousnesse whereof it is one of the best towns of trade in all these dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming hither, and bartering their silks and *manufactures* for the *furs* and other naturall commodities of the *Russes* or *Moscovites*. A Kingdome formerly, but a kingdome of lesse esteem then that of *Casan*; conquered (together with it) by *Basilius* the Great Duke, *anno* 1494, and by him made Christian. But afterwards revolting they were more absolutely subdued by *John Vasiliwich*, who brought into the field against them no fewer then 120000 horse, and 20000 foot, (enough to over-run a farre greater Countrie) and yet had hardly got the better but for the terrour of his great Ordnance, which the others wanted. Upon that victorie it was made a Member of the Empire of *Russia*; the Emperour whereof hath since styled himself the King of *Astrachan*.

Novogrod Inferior.

18 NOVOGORDIA INFERIOR,

19 The MORDWITS.

But it is now time we return towards *Europe*, out of which we have wandred up and down in the skirts of *Asia*, in tracing out the severall Provinces of this Empire, since our first crossing over the Bay of *Grandvic*, or Saint *Nicolas*, into the Countrie of *Petzora*. But in our way we must first take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogrod* the *Lower*, so called to difference it from *Novogred* (surnamed the *Great*) spoken of before: situate almost in the midst betwixt *Casan* and *Mosco*, distant from the last 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the borders of the other; every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Countrie generally very rich both for tillage and pasturage; inferiour unto none in all this estate but *Rhezan* and *Wolodomir* only. So called from *Novogrod* the chief town, situate at the confluence of the *Ock* and *Volga*; besides which it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which storeth it plentifully with fish. A Citie of great esteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of houses in which not easily equalled by any other, partly for an impregnable Castle, cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges in the time of *Basilius* the Great Duke; but principally for a stately and magnificent Temple, built above 1600 years agoe, in imitation (or emulation, as some say) of the famous Church of S. *Sophia* in *Constantinople*. To this Town the story of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* slaves ought in my minde to be ascribed, though commonly reported of the other *Novegrod* in the West parts of this Empire. My reason is, because it is not likely that the *Sarmatians* dwelling on the borders of the *Baltick* Sea, should crosse all this Country to join with the *Asiatick Scythians* so remote from them in a needlesse war: which those of this tract might well do, as near neighbours to them, if not of the same Nation or extraction with them.

Subject to the Estate hereof are the *Mordwit Tartars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga* and the *Don* or *Tanais* where it beginneth to return Westwards towards the *Euxine*. A people much of the same nature with the *Czeremissois*, but that they have some Villages, & scattered houses, which the others either want or else care not for. *Idolaters* for the most part (and the rest *Mahometans*) carrying their *Idols* in their *Carts* whersoever they goe: *worshipping* that beast all day, which they first see in the morning, and swearing by it for that day, as their chiefest *deitie*.

20 WOROTINE, 21 TUVER,

22 WOLODOMIR.

And now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almost as many Titles as Towns with Territorie: four of them (besides some before) either situate in the Province of *Moscovie*, or else so intermingled with the Towns thereof, that they may easily be taken (or mistaken) for members of it. The principall are,

20 *WOROTIN*, seated on the West side of the River *Ocque*, a distinct Dukedom of it self, so called from *Worotin* the chief Citie of it, built upon that River, about 3 *Dutch* miles from *Colluga* in the Province of *Rhezan*, lying on the further bank thereof; beautified with a strong Castle, and a pleasant soil. The 2 *Miscenecks*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the head of the River *Ocque*, which ariseth in the fields thereof.

21 *TUVER* or *OTUVER*, as some call it, is a large and goodly Country lying along the banks of the River *Volga*: so populous that it is said to contain 40000 *Boiares*, or Gentlemen fit to serve on horseback, and double that number of the common or inferiour sort. It gives the title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and is so called from *Twerde* the chief Town thereof, and a Bishops See; affirmed to be a fairer and more stately Citie then *Mosco* it self, from which distant 36 *Dutch* miles.

22 *WOLODOMIR* is one of the most fruitfull Countries in all *Russia*, not paralleld by many Countries in the world; the soil here (if all be true, which is said of it) yeilding such an increase that many times the husbandman hath twenty and sometimes twenty five for one. It gives the title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and hath precedencie before *Moscovie* in the style Imperiall. So called from *Wolodomir* the chief Citie of it, and a Bishops See, and that so named from the Founder, who probably was the same *Valadomir* (one of the first Kings of the *Russes*) who married *Helena* the daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperour of *Constantinople*. The Citie situate 36 *Polonian* miles on the East of *Mosco*, anciently the chief seat and residence of the Great *Duke*; and so continued till the time of *John* the son of *Daniel*, who first translated it to *Mosco*, that from thence he might more easily confront and oppose the *Tartars*, with whose irruptions and invasions both he and his predecessours had long been troubled. Under the government hereof is the City of *Susdali*, of great esteem and very well peopled as long as the Royall seat remained at *Wolodomir*, betwixt which and *Rostow* it is seated.

After it fell into decay, and being once destroyed by the *Tartars*, could never since recover its ancient lustre; having now little to uphold its reputation, but a Bishops *See*.

23 DWINA.

23 *DWINA*, so called from the chief Town, situate on the confluence of two Rivers *Juch*, and *Sukano*, whence it hath the name: *Dwine* in the language of that Countrie signifying two, (as *twain* doth with us amongst Countrie-people.) A Countrie of a great extent, but exceeding barren, which makes the Villages hereof to stand very thin; the Towns (considering the great compasse of it) to be very few; and the Inhabitants for the most part to live upon dried fish and the flesh of wild beasts, which they have no want of. The chief commoditie is in salt, with which they use to furnish the neighbouring Provinces, and provide such necessaries for themselves as they stand in need of. Chief Towns hereof are 1 *Dwine*, spoken of before, situate in the midst of the Province, on the meeting of the said two Rivers, which here united into one stream, take the name of *Dwine*, or *Duina* the greater, known by that name untill its fall into the Northern Ocean, in the Bay of *Granduic*. 2 *Sagan*, so called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwine*) upon which it is seated. 3 *Colmagro*, 4 *Pinnegue*, two strong Castles.

Unto this Province (because I know not else how to dispose of them) I must reduce these four Towns following; that is to say, 1 *Ustiug*, a Bishops *See*, situate on the western side of the River, over against the Town of *Dwine*, and in a Country so ill furnished with necessaries, that the people eat dryed fish in stead of bread; but have salt enough to season it from those of *Dwine*. 2 *Gargapoll*, a Bishops See also, on the same side of the River that *Dwina* is of. 3 S. *Nicolas*, a well known Port, and a Bishops See; situate at the influxe of *Duina*, into the Gulfe of *Granvicus*, or the *Bay* of S. *Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much traded since the discovery of the North-east passage by the *English*, and the removal of theirs and the *Dutch* traffique from *Novogrod* hither; from hence dispersed with more ease and speed into all the parts of this vast Empire. 4 S. *Michael*, on the Sea side, commonly called *Archangell*, a Town of great trade, by the *English* specially, who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great enriching of the Place: by reason whereof the *English* Merchants have not onely great priviledges and immunities (as the Authors of so great a benefit unto this Estate) not granted to others: but the whole Nation have found better and more noble entertainment from them then any others have received. The cause of which was primarily the great opinion which their Emperours had of Queen *Elizabeth*, who held very good correspondence with them; continued ever since by mutuall *Ambassies* on both sides; and secondly the conformable behaviour of the *English* themselves, so acceptable to those *Barbarians* (both Prince and People) that when *John Vasiliwich* nailed the hat of another forein *Embassador* to his head for his too much perverseneſſe, he used our Sir *Thomas Smith* with all kindneſſe imaginable. Another time when the *Jesuite Possevine* began to perswade with him to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*: upon the information of the *English* Embassadour that the Pope was a proud *Prelate*, and would make Princes kisse his feet; he grew into such a rage that the *Jesuite* was afraid he would have beat out his brains. But to return again to the Port of S. *Nicolas*, it is so called from an Abbie there built unto that Saint, the *tutelarie Saint* and *locall Patron* of the Nation. Which said, I will set sail from this Port to the *Russian Islands*; and see what may be said of them to our present purpose.

24 The *RUSSIAN* Islands.

The *RUSSIAN ISLANDS* are but two; both of them in the Northern or *Frozen* Ocean, on the Coasts of this Country; that is to say, 1 Sir *Hugh Willoughbies* Island, and *Nova Zemla*; both subject (if to any) to the *Knez* or great Duke of *Moscovie*.

1 *WILLOUGHBIES ISLAND* was so called from Sir *Hugh Willoughbie*, because he first discovered it, *anno* 1553. and was hereabouts found *frozen* to death the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the 6. to find out a new way to *Moscovie*, *Cathaie*, and *China*; he proceeded so far as to this Island (situate almost opposite to the Bay of S. *Nicolas*:) where the weather proved so extreme, and the Frosts so vehement; that his ship was set fast in the ice, and all his people, with himself, *frozen* to death; in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact description of their voyage and fortunes. Notwithstanding which disastrous beginning, the enterprise was pursued by some noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinson*, *Burroughs*, *Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *English* Nation: who opened the way as far as to the River *Ob*, (the East boundar of *Russia*) but by reason of the length of the way, the vast floting Islands of Ice, and perpetuall nights, for many months together in winter, could advance no further.

2 *NOVA ZEMLA*, situate on the East of *Willoughbies* Island opposite to *Pustozera* in *Condora* beforementioned, was first discovered by such *Adventurers* as followed *Willoughbies* design. Famous for nothing but a race of short-statured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pygmies*:

mies: not yet ſo far diſcovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Ruſſes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither *Religion* nor *Civilitie*, nor the preſcripts of any *Law*; but that they worſhiped the *Sun*, *Moon*, and Northern *Star*, to which they offer an yearly Sacrifice of their *Deer*: that the Iſland is woodie, deſert, and not eaſie for travell, having in it neither green bough nor graſſe; yet harbouring great ſtore of Bears and ſuch ravenous and dangerous beaſts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrentſon* and his Aſſociates, employed by the *Hollanders* for this diſcoverie, *anno* 1594. and 1596. in which laſt year, after many dreadfull combats with huge flakes of ice, they were forced to winter in this Iſland, where they built an houſe as well to preſerve themſelves from being buried in ſnow, as from being devoured by the Bears (ſome of them 13 foot in length:) which with the loſſe of two of their company devoured by thoſe Savage creatures, they at laſt effected; ſome of them coming home in ſafety the *October* following. And though they ſeemed to give ſome hope that a way might be found unto *Cathaie* on the North of this Iſland, (themſelves having gone as far North as the 81 degree of Latitude, within 9 of the *Pole*:) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the ſucceſſe impoſſible.

And ſo I leave it to return to the ſtorie of *Ruſſia*, called anciently by the name of *Sarmatia Europæa*, but known no further Northwards then the head of *Tanais*. And for *Sarmatia Europæa*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolemie*, by the *Baltick* Sea, and ſome *Terra Incognita*, on the North; the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ* (now *Tranſilvania* and the *Upper Hungarie*) upon the South: the River *Viſtula* or *Wexel* (which divided it from *Germanie*) upon the Weſt; and the *Tanais* upon the Eaſt. Beyond that all along the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, to the *Mare Caſpium*, and as far North as any Conqueror had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Aſiatica*: the Countries further Eaſtward being then called *Scythia*. By which accompt as *Ruſſia* containeth not all *Sarmatia Europæa*, of which *Pruſſia*, and the reſt of the incorporate Provinces of *Poland*, paſſeth for a part; ſo neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanais* into *Aſiatica*. The ancient Inhabitants called by a generall name *Sarmatæ*, by the *Greeks*, *Sauromatæ*; were ſubdivided (for ſo much of this part of it as was then made known) into the *Agathyrſi*, *Rutheni*, *Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Oſſi*, *Alauni*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongſt many other barbarous Nations, theſe were ſome of the principall. And from theſe *Roxolani*, as the principall of all the reſt, *Matthias a Michou*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the originall of the *Roſſes* (which we now call *Ruſſians*:) ſeconded herein by the more learned *Bochartus*, who proveth out of ancient Authors that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, (from which the paſſage into this Countrie is both ſhort and eaſie) have been formerly called *Rhos*. Ταύρους τοὺς Ῥῶς καλεῖσθαι, *Tauros vocari gentes Rhos*, as he ſaith from *Tſetzes*. Which *Rhos*, or *Rhoſſi* firſt mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* people, might get the name of *Roxolani*; and afterwards poſſeſſing the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Roſſi* of Mount *Taurus* (from whom thoſe of *Taurica* deſcended) in their enterpriſes on *Conſtantinople* and the parts adjoining; return to their old name of *Roſſi*. The *Rhoſſi*, or *Ruſſians*, were then the firſt Lords of this Country generally; the *Moſcovites* poſſeſſours of a Province only: ſo called from the *Moſchi* ſpoken of by *Lucan* in his *Pharſalia*; and placed by *Plinie* near the head of the River *Phaſis*, which riſing from the *Armenian* Mountains, fals into the *Euxine*. Derived no doubt from *Meſech* (or *Moſoch* as the Ancients called him) the ſon of *Japhet* planted originally in the North and North-eaſt of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Cholcis* and *Armenia*, where *Plinie* as before is ſaid, hath fixed the *Moſchi*, and where there is a long chain of hils, which moſt of the old Writers call *Montes Moſchici*. But to return unto the *Roſſi*, we hear not of them by this name till the time of *Michael* the third Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, in whoſe reign they infeſted the *Euxine* Sea, and had the boldneſſe to attempt the Imperiall Citie, *anno* 864. ſaid by *Cedrenus* and ſome others of the Eaſtern Writers to be a people of Mount *Taurus*, (next neighbours to *Meſech* or the *Moſchi*.) Failing in their attempt upon *Conſtantinople*, and not willing to goe home again, they ſpread themſelves with their confederates and aſſociates in this expedition, upon the North-weſt banks of the *Euxine* Seas, enlarging their bounds Northwards with leſſe oppoſition, then they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Conſtantinople* being once again in vain attempted in the reigns of *Conſtantine* the 7. and *Henricus Auceps*. Converted to the *Chriſtian Faith*, or growing into better termes with the Eaſtern *Emperours*, *Helena* daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Valadomirus* one of their Kings; from that time forwards turning their forces on the *Polanders* and their weak neighbours; ſave that, provoked by the death of one of their Countrie, ſlain accidently at *Conſtantinople* in a private quarrell, they made another fruitleſſe journey againſt that Citie, in the time of *Michael Calaphates*. Enlarging their eſtate to the Weſt and South, they became maſters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europæa*, *Lituania*, *Podolia*, *Nigra Ruſſia*, and other Provinces now ſubject to the Crown of *Poland*; being then parts of their Eſtate. *Anno* 1240. the Tartars, under the conduct of *Bathu*, or *Baydo*, ſon of *Occata Chan*, broke in upon them and ſubdued them: the Countrie before this entire, under one ſole King, being broken afterwards into divers petit and inferiour Governments, according to the will and pleaſure of the inſolent *Victors*. The principall of theſe (deſcended from the former Kings) were Lords of *Wolodomir*, *Moſco*, and ſome other Cities; held by them with no other Title then Lords of *Moſcovie*; and for that Tributarie to the *Tartars*, as were all the reſt. Under this thraldome they long groaned, till the *Tartariant* being divided amongſt themſelves, and grown leſſe terrible to their neighbours, were outed of their power and command here, by the valour of *John*, ſon of *Baſilius* the 2. who thereupon changed the Title of Lord into that of Duke, and after into that of *Great* Duke, as his fortunes thrived. Yet not ſo *great*, but that he was contented to be an *Homager* of the *Tartars*: it being finally

agreed on at the end of their wars, that the *Tartars* should relinquish all their *Holds* in the Country; and on the other side, that once every year within the Castle of *Mosco*, the Great *Duke* standing on foot should feed the horse of the *Crim Tartar* with oats out of his own cap. This *Homage* was by *Basilius* changed to a *Tribute* of *Furres*, which being also denyed by his Successours (as they grew in power) occasioned the long warres betwixt the Nations: the *Tartars* alwayes pressing on them by sudden inroades, sometimes by Armies of no lesse then 200000 fighting men. But notwithstanding all their power, and the friendship of the *Turk* to boot, the *Moscovite* is not onely able to assert his *Soveraignty*, but hath also wrested from them many goodly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country I shall not trouble my self (as I see some doe) in tracing a Succession of them as farre as from the times of *Augustus Cæsar*: when neither the *Rossi*, nor the *Moschi* had here any footing. We will therefore goe no higher then the time of *George*, whose daughter *Anne* I finde to have been marryed to *Henry* the first of *France*. From whom in a direct line descended another *George*, with whom we doe intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the last King of the *Russes* before the coming of the *Tartars*: Who wisely yeelding to the storme, waved the title of King, contented only with the title of Lord of *Mascovie*, the first seat of that power and *Soveraigntie*, which he transmitted afterwards to his posteritie: affecting for that cause the title of *Dukes* of *Moscovie*, (though all the conquered Townes and Territories have their place also in his style) as much as that of Emperour of *Russia*. Which some of them have assumed also, since the time of *Basilius*, who styled himself *Basilius* by the Grace of God Emperour and Lord of *Russia*, Great Duke of *Volodomir*, *Moscovie*, *Novogrod* the great, *Plescow*, *Smolensko*, *Tuver*, *Jugar*, *Wiatbka*, *Bulgar*, &c. Lord and great Prince of the *Lower Novogrod*, *Czernigow*, *Rhezan*, *Wologda*, *Rsow*, *Biele*, *Rostow*, *Taroslane*, *Poloskie*, *Bielloziere*, *Udore*, *Obdora*, *Condora*, &c. King of *Cusan* and *Astrachan*. But leaving them unto their swelling and *voluminous* title, (little inferiour unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the succession from the time aforesaid, of

The LORDS of *MOSCOVIE*.

A. Ch.

1 *George*, the last King of the *Russes* and first Lord of *Mosco*.
2 *Iaceslaus*.
3 *Alexander*.
4 *Daniel*.
5 *John*
6 *John* II.
7 *Basilius*.
8 *Demetrius*.
9 *Georgius* II.
10 *Basilius* II.

The Great DUKES.

1 *John* the first *Great Duke*, who strooke off the *Tartarian* bondage.
2 *Basilius Casan* wonne the Provinces of *Severia*, *Roscovia*, and *Smolensko*.
3 *John Basilius* conquered *Livonia*, and *Lituania*; both which his successour
1548 4 *Johannes Basiliades*, or *Wasiliwich*, lost in his age: though in his youth he had subdued the *Noybacensian Tartars* to his Empire; and vanquished *Selim*, Emperour of the *Turks*, *anno* 1569. With this King the *English* first began to confederate.
583 5 *Theodorus Johannides*, the last of the old Royall line of *Moscovie*.
598 6 *Boris Theodorus*, brother to the wife of the last *Great Duke*, partly by the last will of his Predecessour, partly by practising with the people, obtained the Empire; but being an unmercifull Tyrant was dispossessed by the *Polanders*, coming in favour of one
1605 7 *Demetrius* pretending himself to be the son of *John Vasiliwich*, (and generally believed to be so) preserved in a Monasterie from the tyrannie of *Boris*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*, by whose aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Familie, and was with great joy crowned Emperour in the Citie of *Mosco*. But the *Russian* Lords disdaining to have a Prince imposed on them from *Poland*, rose in arms against him, and at last vanquished and slew him in the open field, his wife a noble *Polonian* Ladie, sent poorly home, and the *Polanders* beaten out of the Country.
1606 8 *Basil Juanniwich*, surnamed *Sniskius*, the chief of the Conspiratours, was by the rest of his faction chosen *Cnez*, or Emperour; and held the State with great trouble, till the year 1610. when
1610 9 *Demetrius* II. another pretender to the State, as the son of *John Vasiliwich* also, in opposition unto *Sniskius* set up by a stronger faction, gave occasion to the *Polander* to work upon this distemper; by whom *Sniskius* was taken prisoner, *Demetrius* slain, *Smolensko* and other great Towns subdued; and *Vladislaus* Prince of *Poland* recommended to the *Russians* to be chosen Emperour. But the *Russes* loth to fall under

under the power of the *Polander*, and wearie of their own Confusions, made choice at last, of

1615 10 *Michael Fedrowitz*, son of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Mosco*, who at last setled this vast Empire, and managed it in a more constant way of peace with the *Turk*, *Tartar*, *Polonian*, and *Swethlander*, then any of his Predecessours had done before him.

1646 11 *Alexius Michoilywitz* (or the son of *Michael*) succeeded his Father in the Empire, troubled at first with some distempers in the State (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly setled, *anno* 1648.

The Formalities with which these great Emperours are invested or setled in the Throne, are not many nor stately: such as they be, I here afford you out of the history of the life of *Johannes Basilides*, written in *Latine* by *Paulus Oderbornius*. On the 2. of June, *anno* 1583. *Theodorus Johannides* went towards the Temple of S. *Michael*, being the principall Church in all *Mosco*: the streets all covered with flowers, the doores of the Citizens crowned with Garlands; the air echoing with the noise of *Flutes* and *Trumpets*, and the people so crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked swords forced a passage through them, it had been impossible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church door, the Lords of the Countrie (*Cneses* they there call them) went out to meet him: and the Archbishop of *Mosco* clad in his *pontificalibus*, when he was come into the Church, imbraced him. The pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapestry, and the walls adorned with costly hangings. The *Great Duke* sate down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of silk, buttoned down with golden buttons: on his head he wore a purple cap, spangled with rich jewels, and on his fingers abundance of rings. Being thus seated, the Patriarch made a prayer to God, to bless him, his people and his government; which was seconded by the joyfull shouts and acclamations of his Subjects: amongst whom no small store of silver mony was flung by the Treasurer, and so they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Countrie is meerly Tyrannicall, the Emperour being absolute Lord of the *lives*, *lands* and *goods* of all his Subjects: all of them, the noble as well as the base, subscribing themselves in their *Petitions* to him, by the name of *Keloptery*, that is, *Slaves*. Whereupon *Mahomet* a *Turkish Bashaw* was used to say, that his Master and the *Moscovite* were the two most absolute Princes in all the world. First, for their *goods*, when any Embassadour returns home, the *Great Duke* takes from him all the presents which he hath received, giving him perhaps some small reward, perhaps none at all: and as for *lands* they passe not from father to son but as he confirms it. But more particularly (besides the case of *Permia* spoken of before) *John Vasiliwich* sent a command to *Mosco* to provide a Coal-pack of *live Fleas* for a medicine; and when the Citizens returned answer that it was impossible, he fined them at 700 *Rubbles* for their disobedience. Another time he laid a mulct of 300000 *Rubbles* upon his Nobilitie, because he had no good sport in his hunting; which they again extorted from the common people: and under colour of want, commanded from some *Bishops* and *Monasteries* the sum of 100000 *Rubbles*, from some 50000, more or lesse from others, according unto their *revenues*. And it is usuall with the best of them to cause the *Boiares* (or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back) to pretend themselves robbed, that he may send unto the Citie to find out the Felon; and on a *non est inventus*, fine them at discretion, sometimes 8000, sometimes 10000, and sometimes 20000 *Rubbles*. Then for their *lives*, there is a storie, that *Vasiliwich* having found that one of his *Secretaries* had received a Goose stuffed full of silver for a Bribe, caused him to be brought into the Market-place of *Mosco*: where without any *legall triall* he commanded the *Executioner* first to cut off his legs about the shins, and then his arms about the elbows (still asking the miserable man how he liked *Goose-flesh*) and in the end to cut off his head in similitude of a *Goose* ready for the spit. And that they may the better preserve this *power*, the *Great Dukes* seldome shew themselves unto the people, but in apparell of inestimable value, joining the ornaments of a *Bishop* unto the majestie of a *King*, by wearing a *Mitre* on their heads shining with *Diamonds* and rich stones: and when they wear it not on their heads, they place it before the *chair of state*, (over which are the images of *Christ* and the *blessed Virgin*) holding in his hands a most rich *Crozier staffe*, and all their fingers full of rings. And upon solemn festivals and entertainments, the *Great Chamber* is beset with Cubboards of plate of infinite value, filled with men cloathed with cloth of gold to the very foot; all of them seeming to be men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other then the gravest and portliest Citizens of *Mosco* richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperours *Wardrobe*; which to such as do not understand the fraud, look like so many *Princes*, and causeth no small wonder at his magnificence. So that the people seeing him in such *royall state*, and knowing no more then what they are taught at home, reverence him as *slaves*, not *subjects*, and look upon him rather as a *God* then a *King*.

Having so absolute a command on their *lives* and *goods*, it will be easily supposed that he may raise what *forces*, and amasse what *treasures* he hath a minde to. First, for his *Forces*, it is said that he is able to raise 300000 Horse, if occasion be: and that he may come near that number it is more then probable, in that *John Vasiliwich* in his war against those of *Astrachan*, had actually 120000 Horse; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiares*, bound by their *Tenure* to serve with horse whensoever he pleaseth. And that there are 110 men chosen by the Emperour, and by him enfeoffed with lands (during pleasure only,) which for these lands they are to find 65000 horse with all things necessary for the wars; and those in a continuall readinesse, fit for present action. Then for such horse as he himself doth keep in continuall pay, there is not fewer then 25000 which attend him

him as a *Guard* to his perſon; all of them well experienced men, and fit for ſervice: which added to the 65000 ſpoken of before, makes up a ſtanding bodie of 90000. Had he *foot* anſwerable unto this proportion of *horſe*, there were no dealing with him; but therein his *Militia* is defective: *Vaſſiliwich* to his great Armie of 120000 horſe having but 20000 foot; the *foot-men* which he hath in continuall pay, amounting to 12000 only; farre ſhort of ſuch a ſtanding bodie of horſe, as before we ſpake of. And this defect hath been the reaſon why the *Polanders* with far leſſe armies have prevailed againſt them: the *Great Duke* not being able with all his power to hinder King *Stephen* of *Poland* from taking *Villocolne* or beſieging *Pleſcow* (though his Armie was not above 60000 both in horſe and foot) for want of ſtanding bonds of *foot* to make good his ground. Generally both *horſe* and *foot* are very obedient to their Captains and ſuperiour Officers, patiently enduring all diſcommodities of cold, rain, and hunger; (in that regard fitter to keep a *Fortreſſe* then ſerve in field;) and ſo regardleſſe of their lives in the day of battle, that they will rather loſe them then either yeeld themſelves *Priſoners*, or demand *Quarter*.

For his *revenues*, they may be what he will himſelf, conſidering (beſides his extraordinary power of oppreſſing his ſubjects before mentioned) the many ordinary wayes he hath of amaſſing *treaſure*, as *viz.* the *foreſtalling* of homebred commodities, and *ingroſſing* the forein; ſelling them at what price he liſt, and hindering all men elſe from trade, till his owne be ſold; proviſion of rent-corn, and victuall, raiſed in ſome years to 200000 *Rubbles*, rent-wood, and Hay to 30000; *pol-money* to 400000, cuſtoms on Merchandiſe to 800000. By which and other means of collecting moneys, and the *Domain* of his Crown, though he raiſe vaſt ſums; yet it is thought, that his houſhold charges being deducted, there remaineth not towards all other expences, three millions of *Rubbles*, every *Rubble* being as much as an *Engliſh* Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portall open of two leaves and as many Degrees, *Or*.

There are in *RUSSIA*

Patriarch	1.	Archbiſhops	2.
Biſhops	18.		

And ſo much for *RUSSIA*.

OF

OF POLAND.

POLAND is bounded on the East with *Russia*, and the *Crim Tartar*, from whom parted by the River *Boryſthenes*; on the West with *Germanie*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and ſome part of *Ruſſia*; on the South with the *Carpathian* Mountaines, which divide it from *Hungarie* and *Walachia*.

It is an Aggregate body, conſiſting of many diſtinct Provinces united into one Eſtate; of which *Poland* being the predominant hath given name to the reſt called all together the Realm of *POLAND*: and that ſo named from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* language (the common language of the Countrey) ſignifieth *plaine*, becauſe but little ſwelled with hills. Of figure round, in compaſſe 2600 miles; ſituate under the eight and twelfth *Climates*; ſo that the longeſt day in the ſouthern parts is but 16 houres, and about 18 houres in the parts moſt North.

The Countrey *plaine*, but full of woods, which ſerve to rectifie the Aire, being naturally ſo cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes: in ſtead whereof they uſe that kinde of drink called *Ale*; in former times the uſuall Beverage of *England*, and this Countrey onely. Barley they have, and Pulſe in ſuch aboundant meaſure, that no ſmall quantities of each are tranſported yearly: nor yeeld they any thing at all to *Denmarke* or *Hungarie* for their plenty of Cattell. But of this more in our deſcription of the ſeverall Provinces.

The people are very induſtrious, and ſtudious of all Languages, eſpecially of the *Latine* to which they are ſo devoted, that there is ſcarſe a mean man, who is not able in ſome meaſure to expreſſe himſelfe in it. According to their abilities rather prodigall then truely liberall; and good ſouldiers generally. The Peaſants live in miſerable ſervitude unto their Lords; the Lords in ſuch equality of eſtate amongſt themſelves, that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 *Ducats* of yearly rent. Proud in their garb, coſtly in their Apparell, impatient in their humours, and delicate in diet: theſe laſt conditions common to the women alſo, who are for the moſt part indifferently fair, and rather wittie then well ſpoken. But this being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly ſo called, is not perhaps communicable to the people of the reſt of the Provinces, whom we ſhall ſpeak of ſeverally in their proper places.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt planted in this Kingdome at ſeverall times, and by ſeverall perſons, according to the different parts of which it conſiſteth: in *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, in the time of their Prince *Mieciſlaus* ſonne of *Nemomiſlus*, *anno* 963. in *Livonia*, by the Preaching of one *Meinardus*, *anno* 1200. or thereabouts; in *Lituania* not untill the yeare 1386. at the admiſſion of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as ſome ſay) by *Thomas* of *Walden*, (or *Waldenſis*) an *Engliſh* Frier. In *Samogitia* and *Volhinia*, at the ſame time with *Lituania*. In the reſt at other times, and on other occaſions, yet ſo that in many places of it, *Idolatry* was never totally rooted out, the ſeeds and practiſe whereof in many points ſtill remaine amongſt them. Corrupted by the *ſuperſtitions* of the Church of *Rome*, a *Reformation* was endevoured at ſuch time as *John* of *Hus* flouriſhed in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring kingdome: but by the rigour of *Ladiſlaus* the ſixth, then King thereof, aſſiſted by his

Biſhops,

Biſhops and *Noblemen*, at that time hindered. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, ſome who had ſtudied at *Liſſique* and *Wittenberg*, (Univerſities of *Saxonie*) brought his opinions home with them into the Province of *Poland*; as ſome *Dutch* Merchants (with the reſt of their Commodities) did into *Dantzick*, the chief Towne of *Pruſſia*, *anno* 1525. from whence it ſpread it ſelfe over moſt part of that Country. According as it was favoured or diſliked, by the *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and other great men of the Realm; ſo was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Grecians* in the mean time taking opportunity, to winne ſome parts of it to their ſide; and confirm others in it, who being originally members of the Church of *Greece*, becauſe originally converted by the Biſhops thereof, did ſtill continue in conformitie and obedience to it. In the end by reaſon of the over great *liberty* of the Nobility and people, and *want* of *power* in the King to controul their doings, every man took up what *Religion* he beſt liked; ſome following the *Auguſtane Confeſſion*, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering as tenaciouſly to the Church of *Rome*; and ſome inclining to new *Sects*, or rather to old *Hereſies* under new diſguiſes, have brought in ſuch a *miſcellanie* or *Babel* of *Religions* into this eſtate, (*Jeſuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, *Socinians*, *Arians*, *Anabaptiſts*, and indeed what not, being here all tolerated) that at laſt it grew into a By-word, that *if any man had loſt his* Religion *hee might finde it in* Poland, *or elſe beleive it to be vaniſhed.* A By-word afterwards applyed unto *Amſterdam*; communicable ſince unto other places: *Libertas Prophetandi*, or the *Libertie of Prophecying* being now as much allowed of in ſome parts of *Chriſtendome*, as *Libertas opinandi*, was in *Rome* under *Nervas* Government; *ubi & ſentire quæ velis, & quæ ſentias loqui liceat*, when as a man might thinke as hee liſted of the publick, and ſpeake what he thought. But whether this be ſuch a *Rara temporum felicitas*, ſuch a *felicitie* of theſe our times, as *Tacitus* conceived the other to be of thoſe; future times will ſhew.

But to return againe to *Poland*, notwithſtanding this mixture of *Religions*, yet that moſt publickly allowed and countenanced is the *Religion* authoriſed by the Church of *Rome*: aſſerted here by the *zeal* of the *Kings* unto that cauſe, and the great *power* of the *Biſhops*, who ſeeing how thoſe of their *Order* have ſped in *Germanie* and other places, under colour of *Reformation* of ſome things amiſſe, have hitherto upheld the *Eccleſiaſticall* Eſtate in the ſame forme they found it. The Government of the Church as formerly, by 3 *Archbiſhops*, and 19 *Biſhops*: who challenge a juriſdiction over all the kingdome, but exercile it upon thoſe onely who ſubmit unto them: thoſe who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther* or *Calvin*, following the *formes* of *Government* by them eſtabliſhed, as others doe ſome *new ones* of their owne deviſing. And for thoſe Provinces and people which lie towards *Greece*, or were parts heretofore of the *Ruſſian Empire*, and ſtill hold a *Communion* with thoſe Churches; they have Archbiſhops and Biſhops of their owne *Religion*; that is to ſay, the Archbiſhops of *Vilne* and *Lemburg*, the Biſhops of *Polozko*, *Luzko*, *Pinsko*, *Volodomire*, *Preſmil*, and *Kiovia*. Yet amongſt all theſe different Churches and formes of Government there is this *conformitie*, that whenſoever the *Goſpell* is read openly in the Congregation, the *Nobility* and Gentrie uſe to *draw their ſwords* (according to an antient cuſtom which they had among them) ſignifying their *readineſſe* to defend it againſt all oppoſers. Which reaſon doubtleſſe gave beginning to the ſtanding up at the *Creed* and *Goſpell*, in the primitive times; retained ſtill in the Church of *England*: whereby we doe declare how prepared and reſolute we are to defend the ſame; though ſome of late, holding it for a *Relick* of *Popery*, with greater nicety then wiſdome, have refuſed to doe it.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdome are 1 *Viſtula* or *Wixel*, the antient Boundary betwixt *Germany* and *Sarmatia Europea*, which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountaines, paſſeth by *Cracovia* the chief City of *Poland*, and dividing *Pruſſia* from *Pomerella* falleth into the *Baltick* ſea not far from *Dantzick*; and is navigable for the ſpace of 400 miles, of old called *Vandalis*. 2 *Warta*, which runneth through the leſſer *Poland*; 3 *Duina* the *leſſe*, watering *Livonia*: and 4 *Boryſthenes* or *Nieper* paſſing through *Podolia*, both ſpoken of before when we were in *Ruſſia*. 5 *Nieſter* by *Ptolemie* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, having firſt parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6 *Jugra*, by ſome called the *leſſer Tanais*, ariſing in *Lituania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais*, which is now called *Don*. Of leſſe note there are, 1 *Reuben* or *Reuhon*, 2 *Chronus* now called *Pregel*, 3 *Bogh*, ſaid by ſome to bee the *Hipanis* of the Antients. 4 *Minnael*, 5 *Niemen*, the *Meander* of theſe Northern parts. 9 *Winde*, a *Livonian* river falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countreys for the moſt part being *plain* and *Champain*: and thoſe which be are rather boundaries betwixt this and ſome other Kingdome, then proper unto this alone. The chief of which are thoſe called *Sarmatici*, dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europea*, by *Solinus* named *Sevo*, by *Ptolemie* the *Carpathian* Mountains; the boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*.

The common *metes* and *Land-markes* being thus laid down, we will next take a view of thoſe ſeverall Provinces of which this kingdome doth conſiſt, being ten in number: that is to ſay, 1 *Livonia*, 2 *Samogitia*, 3 *Lituania*, 4 *Pruſſia*, 5 *Poland*, ſpecially ſo called, 6 *Maſſovia*, 7 *Podlaſſia*, 8 *Ruſſia Nigra*, 9 *Voltinia*, and 10 *Podolia*: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europea*.

1 *LIVONIA.*

1 *LIVONIA* or *LIEFLAND* is bounded on the Eaſt with the Empire of *Ruſſia*, on the Weſt with the *Baltick* Sea; on the North with the *Gulf* or Bay of *Finland*, on the South with *Samogitia*, and *Lituania*. Extended in length along the ſhore of the *Baltick* for the ſpace of 125 *Dutch* or 500 *Italian* miles, & 40

Dutch

Dutch or 160 *Italian* miles in breadth: and called thus perhaps from the *Lenovi*, a people of *Germany*, inhabiting not far from the River *Viſtula*.

The countrey for the moſt part plaine, without any mountaines, furniſhed with corn and fruits in ſo great aboundance, that they ſend part thereof into other countries: and yet there is much ground untilled in it, by reaſon of the bogs and mariſhes which are very frequent. Here is alſo ſtore of wax, *honey*, and pitch, but they have neither oyl nor wine; the want of which laſt is ſupplyed by *Meth*. Of tame beaſts fit for mans ſervice they are well provided; as alſo of ſuch whoſe *skins* are of more value with the Merchant, then their *fleſh* at the market; as *Ermins*, *Sables*, *Caſtors*, others of that kinde; beſides good ſtore of game for hunting, the countrey having in it many large woods, parts of the *Hercynian*. And as for Rivers there are few countries which have more, watered by the *Winde*, the *Beck*, the *Dwine*, the *Ruho*; all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chiefe is that of *Beybus*, 45 miles long, and full of fiſh.

The people are much given to *gluttonie* and *drunkenneſſe*, eſpecially in rich mens houſes where it is to be had: for the *paiſant* lives in want enough, meere *ſlaves* to their tyrannicall Landlords, who ſpend in riot and exceſſe, what theſe get by drudgerie. And when at any time the poore wretch leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with ſome other, the *Lord* if he can overtake him will cut off his foot, to make ſure of him for the future. They are a mixture of many Nations, as the *Eſtones*, which are the naturall Inhabitants, (derived from the *Eſtii*, a *Dutch* people, ſpoken of by *Ptolemie*) of which Nation are almoſt all the Paiſants; the *Moſcovites*, *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Dutch*, and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, comming in upon ſeverall conqueſts, and planting themſelves in the beſt parts of it, in which they ſtill *Lord* it over the *Native*, but the *Dutch* eſpecially for long time *Maſters* of the whole.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt here planted by *Meinardus* of *Lubeck* employed herein (in the time of *Frederick* the firſt) at the perſwaſion of ſome *Dutch* Merchants who traded hither, by the Archbiſhop of *Breme*, by whom made the firſt Biſhop of the *Livonians*. The Church hereof at this time governed by the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, the Biſhops of *Derpt*, *Aſilia*, *Oeſel*, *Curland*, and *Rivallia*, in thoſe parts which remaine ſubject to the *Polander*, where the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome* is onely countenanced. Such parts of it that are under the *Swedes* or *Danes* are for the moſt part of the *Lutheran* profeſſion; planted with colonies of that people. But the *Eſtones*, or *originall* Inhabitants, as they have a language: ſo they have a *Religion* by themſelves alſo; mixt of the *Chriſtian* and the *Pagan*: extremely well affected unto their Prieſts, to whom they preſent ſalt, candles, and fruites, when they come to them for their *bleſſings*; great lovers of *Confeſſion*, eſteemers of holy water, and diligent frequenters of their *Churches*: but ſo extremely ignorant in all points of *Religion*, that there is hardly one in a village that can ſay his *Pater-noſter*. When they bury any of their dead, every one drinketh an health to him, and powreth his part upon him when his turne comes to drink, putting into the grave with him an hatchet, wine, meat, and a little money for his voyage. And in ſome places they are wholly *idolatrous* (if not converted very lately by the care of the *Jeſuites*) ſome of them worſhipping the Sun, other ſtocks and ſtones, and ſome Serpents alſo. The language of the Countrey is for the moſt part the *High Dutch* (being the language of thoſe Nations who firſt lorded over them) the *Eſtones* having generally a peculiar language, which none of the others underſtand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Curland*, *Eaſtland*, *Semigall*, *Virland*, *Harland*, and *Letteland*; but theſe ſix, ſince the conqueſt of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three: *Harland*, and *Virland*, being united unto *Eſtland*, and *Semigallia* unto *Curland*.

Chief places in *Eſtland* are 1 *Rivalle*, a Biſhops See, and well traded Port, ſituate on the Gulf of *Finland*; a town belonging to the *Swede*, the keeping whereof and of *Viburg*, on the borders of *Moſcovie* ſtand him yearly in 100000 Dollars. 2 *Habſey*, or *Habſes*, (*Aſilia* in *Latine*) a Biſhops See, and 3 *Pernow*, a well fortified place, belonging to the *Swethlander* alſo, ever ſince the conqueſt of theſe parts of the countrey by *John* the ſecond. Places of great importance to the Crowne of *Sweden*; as all other pieces of this nature are, which ſtanding in an Enemies Countrey not onely do defend our own, but offend our adverſaries. For they are not onely *dores* to open a further paſſage into their *territories*, whenſoever we ſhall ſee occaſion; but whileſt the Enemie is beſieging thereof, or otherwiſe buſyed in recovering them into his power, our owne ſtate is preſerved in quiet, and time may yeeld fit opportunity to relieve them, if they be diſtreſſed, without waſting any part of our proper countreys. Of which nature was *Calais* when it was in the hands of the *Engliſh*; the Garriſons which the *Spaniards* and *Portugueze* have in *Afrik* and *India*: the charge of keeping them being ſufficiently defrayed (if the charge prove greater then the income, as ſometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them. 4 *Velin*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, betrayed by the *Dutch* Garriſon, at that time in it, together with *William of Furſtenberg* the great Maſter, into the hands of *John Baſilius* the great Duke of *Moſcovie*: who ſtill holds it. 5 *Derpt* or *Derbren*, (in Latine *Tupatum*) a Biſhops See; ſituate on the *Beck*, or *Embeck* betwixt two *Lakes*, in the midſt of the Province; and taken at the ſame time by the *Moſcovite*; who tranſporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted theſe parts with Colonies of his own people. 6 *Terneſt*, a Caſtle of great ſtrength, taken then alſo by the *Ruſſes*: but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with *Gun-powder*, that it might no more come into the hands of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Countrey which belongs to the *Polanders*; theſe that follow doe, that is to ſay 7 *Borcholm*, the ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop of *Rivalle*, ſince the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8 *Weiſenberg*, Incommodiouſly ſeated betwixt

two

Livonia. two ill neighbours, *Narve*, and *Rivalle*, but ſerving very well to prohibit the incurſions of thoſe Garriſons further into the Countrey. 9 *Werneber*, in that part of *Eſtland*, which is called *Odinpen*, and *Wittenſtein* in that part thereof which is named *Jervia*.

In *LETTENLAND*, lying in the midſt betwixt *Eſtland* and *Curland*, the places of moſt note are 1 *Rica*, (the people call it *Rig*) ſeated on the mouth of the River *Dwina*, falling there into the *Baltick*; firſt built, and planted at the charges of the Merchants of *Breme*; after that the Archbiſhops See, the ordinary reſidence of the great Maſter, and the chiefe City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A town well fortified according to modern Rules of fortification, with a ſtrong wall, large Bulwarks, double ditches, *Paliſadoes*; and well provided of all manner of *Ammunition*: a famous *Emporie*, of great reſort by forein Merchants, who carry hence Pitch, Wax, Hempe, Flax, and ſuch other commodities. Governed (notwithſtanding their ſubjection to the King of *Poland*) by their own *Laws*; and ſuch ſtout defenders of their liberties, that they will by no means admit of any foreiner to have command of the City; obedient in all other things to the will of that King. 2 *Dunamund*, an impregnable fortreſſe, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well garriſoned by *Polanders*, who here take *toll* of all forein Merchants. 3 *Blokaws*, a Garriſon of the Kings betwixt *Riga* and *Dunamund*, where the Merchants are *tolled* over again. 4 *Winden*, more within the land, on the River ſo called. 5 *Wolmar*, upon the River *Treiden*. 6 *Kokenhan*, a ſtrong Towne on the banks of the *Dwina*. This Countrey belongs wholly to the King of *Poland*, and ſtood firm for him in the war made by *Charles* Duke of *Suderman*, againſt his Nephew *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* and *Sweden*, when almoſt all *Eaſtland* had ſubmitted to him.

CURLAND, the third and laſt member of this diviſion, containing *Semigallia* alſo, lieth ſouth of *Lettenland*, and north of *Samogitia* and *Lituania*: an entire Dukedome of it ſelfe, but holden under the *Soveraignty* and homage of the kings of *Poland*. Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Canden*, 2 *Goldingen*, 3 *Kies*, (the *Dutch* call it *Wenden*) the ſeat of the *Great Maſter* of the *Teutonick* order in times paſt; now moſt frequented as the place of *Parliament* or Generall Aſſemblie for affaires which concern the publick. 4 *Dubin*, 5 *Grubin*, on the Sea ſide, but of no trade at all. 6 *Halenpot*. And then in *Semigall*, 7 *Mitow*, the Court and reſidence of the Dukes of *Curland*, 8 *Selborch*, 9 *Baſſembourg*, 10 *Debelin*. No town in all this Dukedome of any trading, though lying for a great ſpace all along the *Baltick*; becauſe none of them furniſhed with commodious Havens. A Dukedome firſt begun in the perſon of *Gothardus Ketler*, (of one of the noble families of *Denemark*) the laſt *Great Maſter* of the *Dutch Knights* in this Countrey: who in the year 1562 ſurrendering his order and the whole poſſeſſion of *Livonia* to *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, received back again for him and his heirs for ever, the Dukedome of *Curland* and *Semigall*, to be held by them of that Crown: the Nobility of theſe Countreys doing then preſently their *homage* and allegiance to him, as their *Hereditary* Prince. Since which time the Princes of this houſe have continued *Feudataries* unto *Poland*, but not reckoned as parts or members of the body thereof; not coming to the Diets, nor liable to the publick charges, nor having any thing to doe in the Kings Election: in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the Kings of *Poland*, then ſubjects to them. The preſent Duke like to be much increaſed in eſtate and power, if the now Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg* (whoſe ſiſter is his mother) ſhould depart without iſſue: For by that means there will be added to this houſe the great Dukedome of *Pruſſia*, thoſe of *Cleve* and *Gulick*, together with ſuch other Countries poſſeſſed now by that Marqueſſe, as he holds by deſcent from the Heires Generall of thoſe Dukedomes: which makes him caſt an eye already upon thoſe Eſtates.

There belong alſo to *Livonia* ſome few Iſlands ſituate in the *Baltick* Sea, that is to ſay, 1 *Oſilia*, 2 *Dogeden*, 3 *Mona*, 4 *Wormſe*, 5 *Wrangen*, and 6 *Kien*. Of which the foure laſt doe belong to the King of *Polands Dacuden*, *Dogeden* King of *Swethland*; and *Oſilia* or *Oeſel* to the *Dane*. This laſt the chiefe of all the ſix, diſtant from the maine land of *Livonia* 12 *Dutch* miles, 14 of the ſame miles in length, halfe as much in breadth: the chiefe Towns thereof being *Oſel*, a Biſhops See, which gives name to the Iſland, 2 *Sunberg*. The Iſland made ſubject to the *Danes* by *Magnus*, brother of *Frederick* the ſecond king of *Denmark*, who being choſen Adminiſtratour of the Biſhoprick of *Derpt*, in *Eſtland*, made himſelf maſter of this *Iſland*, and ſome other peeces; which, dying without iſſue, he bequeathed to the King his brother, *anno* 1580.

As for *Livonia* it ſelfe, it was firſt under the *Levoni* and *Eſtii* two *German* Nations, from whom the Countrey had the name of *Livonia*, the people of *Eſtlanders* or *Eſtones*. Diſtracted into many petit principalities, it was made acquainted with the *Chriſtian* Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was ſaid. *Meinard* their firſt Biſhop being dead, and *Bertold* his ſucceſſour ſlaine by ſuch of the people as had not yet received the *Goſpell*: the knights of the *Port-glaive*, and the *ſword* were ſent hither to defend the Preachers and their Doctrine by force of Arms. Finding themſelves too weak to effect the buſineſſe, they united with the *order* of *Dutch Knights* in *Pruſſia*, to whom from that time forwards they became ſubordinate; the *Great Maſter* of *Livonia*, acknowledging him of *Pruſſia* for his *Superiour*. Theſe Knights continued *Maſters* of it, without contradiction till the year 1557. (embracing in the meane time the opinions of *Luther*, *anno* 1528) when quarrelling with the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, becauſe he would not adhere unto their opinions; who to ſecure his own eſtate was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterwards being overlaid by the *Moſcovite*, who had taken from them almoſt all their Countrey, they

were

were faine to put themſelves under the protection of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of Poland, *anno* 1559 But *William* of *Furſtenburg* the *Great Maſter* being betrayed by his own *Mercenaries* into the hands of the *Moſcovite*: *Gothardus* his ſucceſſour (following the example of *Albert* the *Great Maſter* of *Pruſſia*) tranſacted with the ſaid *Sigiſmund* for the whole eſtate: which he ſurrendered to his uſe in the Caſtle of *Riga*, *March* 5. *anno* 1562. together with his *Croſſe* the *ſeale* of the Order, the *Charters* and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperours which concerned the ſame; as alſo the *Keies* of the City and Caſtle of *Riga*, the Office of *great Maſter*, the rights of *coynage*, and all the powers and priviledges appertaining to it: receiving back again from *Ratzevill* the Kings *Commiſſioner*, the Dukedom of *Curland*, to him and to his Heirs for ever as before is ſaid. By this *tranſaction* the Kings of Pole became maſters of *Liefland*, more abſolutely ſetled in it after a long war betwixt *Steven* King of Poland, and *John Vaſiliwick* the *Great Duke* of *Moſcovie*, who in the end ſurrendered all his claim therein to the ſaid *Steven* and his ſucceſſours, *anno* 1582. reſerving onely ſome few Townes on the Eaſterne borders: the *Danes* and *Swethlanders* taking occaſion by theſe troubles to impatronize themſelves of *Narve*, *Rivallia*, *Oſel*, and ſome other pieces. *Samogitia.*

2 SAMOGITIA.

2 *SAMOGITIA* is a ſmall Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia* and *Lituania*, having *Livonia* on the North, *Lituania* on the Eaſt and South, and the *Baltick* Sea upon the Weſt: in length extending 50 miles from Eaſt to Weſt, but not of anſwerable breadth. It is ſo called from the lowneſſe of the ſituation (the word *Samogits* in the language of the Inhabitants ſignifying *terram inferiorem* or the *Lowlands*) by the *Moſcovite* in the ſame ſenſe called *Samotzkaſemla*. This lowneſſe of the ſituation makes it very watery and almoſt continually *frozen*; but withall it hath many *forreſts* which yeeld unto the people aboundance of honey, better, more pleaſing to the taſt, and leſſe mixt with wax then in other places.

The people are ſuppoſed to be of the *Saxon* race, of good ſtature, well-ſet, bold and apt for war; but withall, boyſterous, rude and barbarous: *Chriſtians* in generall, but many who doe ſtill retaine their old *Idolatries*: nouriſhing amongſt them a kinde of foure-footed *Serpents*, about three handfuls in length, which they *worſhip* as their *Houſehold gods*, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their repaſt; and if any miſchance happen to any of the *familie*, it is imputed preſently to ſome want of due obſervation of theſe ugly creatures. Naturally inclined to *Divinations*, *Charmes*, and *Sorceries*, and frequently abuſed (as for the moſt part ſuch people are) by *diabolicall* illuſions. Nay they which profeſſe the name of *CHRIST* are ſo ill inſtructed, that they uſe to marry many wives, without conſideration of *bloud* or *parentage*: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his brothers widow, & not unuſuall to marry the *Relict* of their fathers, (a *fornication* not ſo much as heard of in St. *Pauls* time, amongſt the *Gentiles*). They have ſome cuſtomes alſo, as *unprofitable*, as theſe are *heatheniſh*; breaking up their land, as they doe in *Moſcovie*, with ſpades or ſticks. And when one of their Governors obſerving the husbandrie of other Nations, had brought them to the uſe of the *plough*, it fortuned that for two or three yeares, either by the indiſpoſition of the weather or ſome other *accident*, they had not ſo much corn as they uſed to have. Which want the people attributing to the uſe of the *plough*, *nec quicquam aliud in cauſa eſſe putantes*, and not beleeving that there was any other cauſe of it, grew ſo much incenſed, that the Governour fearing ſome ſedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which before they went. An humour like that of the preſent *Iriſh* in ploughing with their *Horſes tayles*, ſpoken of before. So pertinacious for the moſt part are ignorant and ſuperſtitious people in ſtanding to their antient cuſtomes, though abſurd and hurtfull.

Townes they have few, their houſes for the generality being poore and low, covered with ſtraw or durt, with an hole open in the roofe to let in the light. The principall of thoſe they have, (but rather Villages then Towns) are 1 *Bigla* near the head of the River *Swiete*, 2 *Linkaw*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath alwayes followed the fortunes of *Lituania*; ſubject, when that was ſo, to the kings of *Ruſſia*; converted when that was, to the *Chriſtian* Faith; and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

3 LITVANIA.

LITVANIA hath on the Eaſt the Empire of *Ruſſia*, on the Weſt *Pruſſia*, *Maſſovia*, and *Poland*; on the North, *Livonia*, and *Samogitia*, and on the South *Volhinia* and *Podolia*. So called from *Lituus* the *ceremoniall ſtaffe*, uſed antiently by the *Augures* in their *divinations*: to which the Inhabitants hereof being very much addicted before their receiving of the *Goſpell*, were called *Lituani*. But this is but conjecturall onely. Yet rather thus then that it ſhould be peopled by ſome baniſhed *Italians*, firſt named *Italia*, then *Litalia*, and after by a moſt unlikely corruption come to *Lituania*, as *Matthias a Michou* would fain have it.

The Countrey for the moſt part full of *Moores*, Forreſts, ſome great *Lakes*, like a Sea for bigneſſe, and many navigable Rivers: which *frozen* over in the Winter make the wayes more travellable at

Lituania.

that time of the yeare, then they are in ſummer. The air in moſt places exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have ſome aboundance) to be ſeldome ripe; and other fruites of the Earth to come ſlowly forward. Their forreſts yeeld them *Bugles*, *Ermins*, *Sables*, Deere, wilde Horſes, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch; but their breed of cattell is leſſe here, and of ſmaller ſtature then it is in *Germany*. Theſe Forreſts alſo are the ſtorehouſe out of which the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* furniſh themſelves with timber both for ſhips and building; returning to them in exchange ſalt, wine, and other neceſſaries which are wanting here.

The people antiently had Fire and Serpents for their Gods, nouriſhing the laſt in their houſes, and keeping the other continually burning: the *Prieſts* and Miniſters of the Temples alwayes adding fewell, that it might not faile. The *Veſtall fire* not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater ceremonie. To this God whom they called *Diſhpan*, or the *Lord of the Smoke*, they uſed to ſacrifice young pullets; to the other their Cocks: the ſeed of this *Idolatrie* is implanted in them, that it is ſaid, that in a Village of the kings called *Lovaniski*, not foure miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they doe to this day worſhip *Serpents*. Converted with their Prince *Jagello* to the *Chriſtian* faith, *an.* 1386. they yet retained ſuch cuſtomes as are inconſiſtent with *Chriſtianity*: marying and unmarying when and as often as they pleaſe; no *bond* being ſo ſoone cancelled as that of *Matrimony*. For a maried man to uſe the body of an harlot is accounted (as indeed it is) an opprobrious crime; but for the wife to have her *Stallions* and *Adulterers* is a thing ſo ordinary and unblameable, that the husbands call them their *Co-adjutors*, and prize them far above the reſt of their Acquaintance. The common people in a miſerable ſervitude unto their Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occaſion; yet muſt not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a crime deſerving death, he muſt hang himſelf aſſoon as the ſentence is ſignified to him, or elſe is beaten and tormented in ſo cruell manner, that death at laſt is looked on as a better life.

The countrey is divided into ten parts or Provinces, ſubject unto the juriſdiction of ſo many *Palatines*, that is to ſay, the *Palatine* of 1 *Vilna*, 2 *Trock*, 3 *Minsko*, 4 *Novogrod*, 5 *Breſtia*, 6 *Volhinia*, 7 *Kiovia*, 8 *Mieſlaw*, 9 *Vitebſco*, 10 *Polotzkie*. But *Novogrod* and *Polotskie* being conquered by the *Great Duke* of *Moſcovie*, and added unto that eſtate; and *Volhinia* reckoned (of late times) for a diſtinct Province of it ſelfe, not depending of it: the remaining number is but ſeven; moſt of them taking names from their principall Townes. The chief of thoſe, and others which deſerve place here, are 1 *Vilna* a Biſhops See, equall in bigneſſe to *Cracow*, the chief City of *Poland*; ſo called of the River *Vil* and *Viln*, upon which it is ſeated; built there in the year 1305 by one *Godemin*, a great Prince of theſe parts: well-walled, but the gates thereof open night and day; large, rich, and well frequented by forein Merchants; eſpecially by thoſe that drive the trade of *Moſcovie*, who have here their *Hall*; one of the chief ornaments of the City. They have in it alſo ſome Churches built of ſtone (but the moſt of wood) the principall whereof is the Monaſtery of S. *Bernard*, which is a very comely ſtructure. The *Natives* call this Town *Vilenski*; the *Dutch*, *Die Wilde*. Situate in the very heart of the countrey, the longeſt day in ſummer being here 16 houres and halfe a quarter; whereas in the moſt ſouthern parts of the countrey it is but 16, and in the moſt northern not fully 18. 2 *Kiovia*, or *Kiof*, ſituate on the *Nieper* or *Boryſthenes*, where the River *Deſna* fals into it: heretofore a beautifull and moſt ſtately City, having in it above 300 faire Churches, of which ſome remain unto this day; the ruines of the reſt to be traced out amongſt ſhrubs and buſhes, the receptacles of wilde beaſts. The ſeat at that time of the *Metropolitan* of the *Ruſſian* Empire, containing alſo under his juriſdiction the countries of *Walachia* in *Dacia*, and *Nigra Ruſsia* in *Poland*. But being deſtroyed by *Bathu* or *Boydo* the *Tartarian*, in the conqueſt of theſe parts by that people; it never could come neer its former luſtre; yet ſtill it holds the reputation of a Biſhops See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Moſco* for his *Metropolitan*; and conſequently of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*. 3 *Grodna*, on the River *Chronus*, the chiefe Town of the Palatinate of *Trock*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* King of *Poland*. 4 *Grunwald*, more memorable for the great defeat given neer it by *Jagello* the Duke of *Lituania* and King of *Poland* to the numerous Army of the *Dutch* Knights invading this Province: ſo confident of their ſucceſſe in the undertaking, that they brought with them aboundance of *chains* and *torches*; with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a *Chriſtian*, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained ſouldiers ſo tamed their pride, that he ſlew 40000 of them; never recovered of that blow whileſt their *Order* ſtood. 5 *Ponsko*, in the Palatinate of *Breſt*; 6 *Klow*, reckoned a countrey of it ſelfe; and 7 *Striſun* fortified with a Caſtle, both under the Palatine of *Mieſlaw*. The reſt of the chief Towns may be known by the *Palatinates*, which they give their names to; but not elſe obſervable.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aorſi*, *Pagarini*, *Savari*, tribes of the *Sarmatæ Europæi*. United into this name of *Lituanians*, they became ſubject to the Kings of *Ruſſia*; till the breaking of that kingdome by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdizvill* then their Prince, (but an *Homager* and *Tributary* to the *Ruſſians*) with drew himſelfe from their command: as did alſo many others of the conquered Provinces. Afterwards *Mindoch*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a *Chriſtian*, was by Pope *Innocent* the third honoured with the title of a King, but returning againe unto his vomit, he loſt that title. In the end *anno* 1386. *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania*, marying with *Heduigis* Queen of *Poland*, was upon three conditions choſen King of that Realm. 1 That he ſhould immediately receive the *Chriſtian* faith. 2 That he ſhould draw all his ſubjects to the ſame *beliefe*; and 3 that hee ſhould unite this Dukedome to the Crown of *Poland*. Of theſe the two firſt were performed without

out any delay; though the ſecond not without ſome difficulty; the people being obſtinate in their old *Idolatry*, eſpecially in the religious conceit they had of *high trees*; which to cut down was held both unſafe and impious. Not to be weaned from this conceit till by the authority of the King their *loſtieſt trees* were felled, and their Woods grubbed up: which when they ſaw done without any danger to the Prince, or any of thoſe whom he employed in that ſervice, *Regis mandato & autoritati cedere cœperunt*, they then began to hearken unto his commands, and generally received the Goſpell, and were *Baptized*. In the laſt point there was a longer time of deliberation. For the Princes of the houſe of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themſelves of their *Patrimoniall* eſtate, which was *hereditary* unto their poſterity; and to ſubject it to the election of the *Polanders*, in which it was poſſible the Princes of their family might be pretermitted: deferred the accompliſhment hereof from one day to another; under colour that the *Lituanians* would revolt, if they went about it. But *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, in whoſe perſon the male iſſue of *Jagello* failed, foreſeeing what diviſions might enſue after his deceaſe, and fearing that the *Moſcovites* would renew their old pretentions; united it unto the Crown: ordaining that the *Biſhops*, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chaſtellans* by him eſtabliſhed, ſhould have their place and ſuffrage in the *great Councell* of *Poland*: power in the chooſing of the King, and all other *priviledges* which the naturall *Polonians* have. Since that accounted a chief Member of that *Body Politicke*: ſubject to thoſe corruptions, changes, and innovations in matters of *Religion*, which have been predominant in the other; excepting thoſe parts onely which relate to the Church of *Greece* or *Moſco*, adhering pertenaciouſly to the rites thereof. *Volhinia.*

4 *VOLHINIA.*

VOLHINIA, by ſome accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lituania*; (as once it was) but by others a diſtinct Province of it ſelfe, is bounded on the North and Eaſt with *Lituania*, on the South with *Podolia*, and on the Weſt with *Ruſſia Nigra*, and *Podlaſſia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgari*, who dwelling on the banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this countrey calling it *Volgaria*, whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at laſt to *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable and of no good grounds.

The countrey yeelds good plenty both of grain and fruits, *Pooles* which abound with very good fiſh, Forreſts which doe afford them ſtore of game and honey; and much good paſturage for their cattell. The people of the ſame nature with the *Lituanians*, but more ſtrong, and warlike, and better weaned from their old ſuperſtitions and *heatheniſh* cuſtomes, then the others are. Of the ſame language and *Religion* with thoſe of *Ruſſia*, to which, together with the reſt of *Lituania*, it did once belong: It is divided commonly into three parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principall Cities of it; that is to ſay, 1 *Luzke*, in *Latine* called *Luceozia*, a towne of above 1000 families, where 127 onely, in the time of my Authour were of the *Romiſh* Religion; the reſidue being *Ruſſians*, *Grecians*, and ſome *Armenians*; the ſeat & reſidence of two Biſhops, of which one being of the *Communion* of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbiſhop of *Lemburg* in *Ruſſia Nigra*: but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, have alſo a Biſhop of their owne, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Moſco* for his *Metropolitan*. 2 *Valodomir*, a Biſhop See alſo, of the ſame condition. 3 *Keromenze*, which (as the reſt) hath under it many fair Towns and Caſtles, beſides large Villages. The whole once part of *Lituania*, as before was ſaid; but of late diſmembred from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a State diſtinct. But ſo, that the greateſt part of it is immediately ſubject to the Duke of *Oſtrogoye*, who is ſaid to have 4000 *Feudataries* in this Countrey, the greateſt Prince of thoſe who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece*, in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5 *PODOLIA.*

PODOLIA hath on the North *Volhinia*, part of *Lituania*, and the great Empire of *Ruſſia*, on the South *Moldavia*, from which parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Nieſter*: on the Weſt *Ruſſia Nigra*; extending Eaſtward through vaſt uninhabited countries, as far as to the *Euxine* Sea. The reaſon of the name I finde no where gueſſed at, the people for the moſt part of the ſame nature with the *Ruſſians*, to whoſe Empire it formerly belonged.

The Country generally ſo fertile, that the husbandman is accuſtomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one ploughing for three years together: the countreyman being put to no further trouble, then at the end of the firſt and ſecond yeares, to ſhake the corn a little, as he reaps or loads it, that which ſo falls ſerving as ſeed for the next yeare following. The meadow grounds ſo ſtrangely rich, and luxuriant, and the graſs ſo high, that a man can hardly ſee the heads or horns of his Cattell: of ſo ſwift a growth, that in three days it will cover a rod which is throwne into it, and in few more ſo hide a *plough*, that it is not an eaſie work to finde it. If theſe things ſeeme beyond beleife, let *Maginus* who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof: though better take it on his word then goe ſo far to diſprove him. And yet which addes much unto the *miracle*, the ground in moſt places ſo hard and ſtony, that there need ſix yoke of Oxen to break it up, to the great toyle both of the Cattell and the men. It is alſo ſaid that in this countrey there are great flocks of ſheep, many-

Ruſsia Nigra.

heards of Oxen, abundance of wild beasts, and great store of honey. And yet for all this plenty and abundance of all things necessarie, the Country for the most part, especially towards the East, is but meanly inhabited; by reason of the frequent incursions of the *Tartars* bordering next unto it. Who have so wasted it in times past, and thereby so discouraged the people from building, planting, and all other works of peace and husbandrie, that in so large and rich a Countrie, there is nothing to be seen but some scattered houses, few Villages, and not above from Towns of note, *viz.* 1 *Oreczakow*, at the influx of the *Borysthenes* or *Nieper* into the *Euxine* sea. 2 *Vaszow*, at the fall of the River *Bog* into that of *Nieper*. 3 *Braclaw*, more high upon the *Bog*. 4 *Camienecz*, on the borders of *Russia nigra*, built by some divine hand as it were amongst the precipices of high and inaccessible Rocks; and so well fortified withall, that it is impregnable; as is apparent by the many and great repulses, which the *Turks*, *Tartarians*, and *Valachians*, have received before it, with much shame and losse. 2 *Lemburg*, remarkable for the sawces or salt-meats, which they send thence into other Countries.

6 RUSSIA NIGRA.

RUSSIA NIGRA hath on the East *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and *Moldavia*; on the West *Mazovia* and *Poland*, specially so called; on the North *Lituania*, and *Podlassia*; and on the South the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains. It is called also *Roxolania* from the *Roxolani*, a chief people of *Sarmatia Europæa*, and by some *Ruthenia*: but generally *Russia*, from the *Rossi* spoken of before, in the Empire of *Russia*, who spread themselves over all these parts. Some hold that it was first called *Rosseia* which signifieth in the *Sclavonian* language a *scattered Nation*, or a Nation disseminated, and dispersed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that spake the *Sclavonian* tongue, and followed the *religion* and rites of the Church of *Greece*: extended from the *frozen* Seas to the *Adriatique*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This and a greater tract of ground I grant to have been heretofore possessed by divers Nations under the name of *Sclavonians*; a very considerable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Russia*, given at first to all the *Russian* Empire, distinguished now into *Russia Alba*, and *Russia Nigra*, I *adhere* unto my *former Vote:* conceiving that it came from the *Rossi*, an *Armenian* people, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864 or thereabouts, attempted the taking of *Constantinople*, and after placed themselves on the Northern banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Sclavonians* to the North and East, till they had made themselves masters of all *Russia Alba*, *Lituania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and this *Russia Nigra*. Distinguished from the former by the *adjunct* of *Nigra*, after the destruction of that great *Empire* by the coming in of the *Tartars*, either from the colour of their garments, or their black and more southernly complexion. In which regard called also *Russia Meridionalis*, or the Southern *Russia*.

The Country is generally fruitfull, abounding in Horses, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: such store of Bees that they breed not only in *Hives* and *hollow trees*, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watred both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of fish; more naturally spawning here then in other places, insomuch that if a Pond be digged, and spring accordingly, the fish will breed therein of their own accord without being brought from other waters. The greatest want hereof is wine, either supplyed with *Mede*, or from other places. And it is said, that in the Territorie of *Chelme* the branches of the *Pine trees* left upon the ground for three years together, will be converted into stone.

The people are generally valiant, and so strong of bodie, that they use Bows of 12 foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they doe but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the Kings of *Poland* to send Colonies of naturall *Polonians* into most parts of the Countrie, insomuch as most of the Knights and *Gentrie* of it are of that extraction, and follow the religion of the Church of *Rome*: the *Paisants* and originall inhabitants of it being more generally affected to the Rites and doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1 *Chelme*, in the Territorie whereof it is affirmed, that the branches of Pine trees left upon the ground for three years together, are converted to stone. 2 *Premisien*, 3 *Halitz*, 4 *Belzo*, 5 *Grodeck*, and 6 *Leopolis*, by the Natives called *Lemburg*, built by one *Leo* a *Moscovite*, a Town of great traffique, and an Archbishops See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the Patriarch of *Mosco* hath here also an Archbishop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the Citie it self, and all *Russia* generally (as before was said) which are of the communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are also in this Citie some *Armenian* Merchants who have a Church, a Bishop, and some Priests of their own *religion*.

Of the affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Russian* Empire, hath been said already. Dismembred from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or *Provinciall* Governours, subject and tributarie unto those Barbarians: as had also *Podolia*, its next neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by strong hand, and the power of *Garrisons*. But being upon all occasions apt to revolt, by reason of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom treated rather like *slaves* then *subjects*) they were assured unto the State by giving them the same *liberties* and *immunities* both for the Nobilitie and the Commons, which the naturall *Polonians* had; and by that means made fellow-members of that Common-wealth. The Act of *Ladislaus* the 6. the son of *Jagello*, imitating therein the ancient *Romans*, who much augmented their forces, and assured their Estate, by communicating the *freedome* of *Rome*, and the priviledges of *Latium* to many of the

the conquered Provinces: and was herein imitated by *Sigiſmund* the 1. *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, and *Ste-phen*, his ſucceſſours, in their incorporating of *Pruſſia*, *Lituania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

7 MASSOVIA.

MASSOVIA is bounded on the East with *Lituania*, on the West with *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, on the North with *Pruſſia* and *Podlaſſia*, on the South with *Ruſſia Nigra* or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Maſſo*, one of the Dukes hereof; who in the year 1045. being vanquiſhed by *Caſimire* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Pruſſia* and there unfortunately dyed.

The Countrie large, and for the moſt part full of woods, where they finde ſtore of *Bugles* and wild Buls. The people ſtrong, valiant, and couragious in war: differing little from the *Polonians* in ſpeech, manners, or apparell; ſave that they uſe a kinde of whiſtling, which the others do not. The principall Towns of it, are 1 *Marſchow*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the reſidence of the Duke or Prince, remarkable for the beſt *Mede* or *Metheglin*. 2 *Egrod Czirko*, 3 *Poltowoski*, 4 *Gadziek*, 5 *Lozara*, 6 *Droic*, the ſeat of a *Palatine*, but not elſe obſervable.

This Province was once ſubject to Princes of its own, not ſubject or ſubordinate unto any *Superiour*. Of which number that *Maſſo* was one, from whom named *Maſſovia*. In the years 1246. and 1260. being ſtrangely waſted and diſtreſſed by *Mindoy* Duke of *Lituania*; they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Polander*: by whom made the portion of the ſecond ſon of that Kingdom. But *John* and *Staniſlaus* the two laſt Dukes hereof, dying without iſſue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*, by whom incorporate to that Crown, and priviledged in the election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, *anno* 1526.

8 PODLASSIA.

Podlaſſia is bounded on the East with *Volhinia*, on the Weſt with *Pruſſia*, on the North with *Lituania*, and on the South with *Maſſovia*, and *Ruſſia nigra*. The reaſon of the name I know not. The Countrie not much differing from thoſe before, the people a mixt generation of *Ruſſes*, *Moſcovites*, and *Polonians*; partake a little of the manners and garbe of thoſe ſeverall Nations from which they lineally are deſcended.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Bielsko*, 2 *Brunsko*, 3 *Suras*, all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4 *Tykdiskin*, ſtrongly fortified and well garriſoned, as being the place where the Kings Treaſures are kept. 5 *Knyſſin*, beautified with a royall Palace and a pleaſant Park, wherein are ſtore of wilde beaſts for hunting, and fiſh-ponds very well repleniſhed. 6 *Narew*, 7 *Vaſilkow*, and 8 *Auguſtow*, a very ſtrong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, and by him thus named, *anno* 1569. at what time he diſmembred this Province from *Lituania*, to which before it appertained; uniting it forever to the Crown of *Poland*.

9 PRUSSIA.

PRUSSIA is bounded on the East with *Lituania*, and *Podlaſſia*; on the weſt with *Pomerania*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the South with *Poland* and *Maſſovia*. Called firſt *Boruſſia* from the *Boruſſi*, who ſubdued it (of whom more anon) which by an eaſie alteration was changed into *Pruſſia*, by which name ſtill called.

The Countrie is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the Citie of *Dantzick* in the weſt, to *Labian* on the mouth of the *Maillank* East, for the ſpace of 50 *Poliſh* miles; and from *Torune* bordering on *Maſſovia*, to *Memel* in the confines of *Lituania*, 58 miles of the ſame meaſure. The air thereof very mild and temperate, the ſoil both profitable and pleaſant; full of *Lakes* and *Rivers* ſtored with fiſh, plentifull of corn and other neceſſaries, and well clad with Forreſts which yeeld them game for hunting, rich skins for profit, and abundance of honey. Of which laſt they make *Mede* for their own uſe (their ordinarie drinke where there is no wine) and ſell the reſt unto the Merchant. But the commoditie wherein they doe excell their neighbours, is their plentie of *Amber*, which is the juice of a ſtone which groweth like a *Corall* in a Mountain of theſe *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water, and ſhunned by Mariners 3 leagues off for fear of Shipwrack: the Mountaine reaſonable large, about 50 yards high of *Engliſh* meaſure. And when any tempeſt riſeth in theſe Northern Seas, eſpecially in *September* and *December*, the *liquor* by violence thereof is rent from the rock, and caſt into divers Havens and on divers Coaſts of this Countrie, and ſometimes upon thoſe of *Sweden* and *Pomerania*: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth moſt, whence they take up firſt ſome ſtore of weeds, after that this *Liquor*; which being taken out of the water hardneth like to *Corall*. Beſides the beauty hereof and the quality it hath of attracting ſtraws and iron, as the *Adamant* doth, burning like pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for ſtopping bloud, all kinde of Agues, falling-ſickneſſe, dropſies, ſtone, colick, weakneſſe of ſtomach, head-ach, and the yellow jaundiſe.

Prussia. The people, especially the Gentrie, descend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature: having more art and industry then the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their ancient customes. Idolaters for long time together, converted first unto the Faith, in the time of the Emperor *Frederick* the 2. by whose setting on they were subdued by the order of the *Dutch Knights*, *anno* 1215. and either wonne or forced to the *Christian* Faith. As *Christians*, governed since the first plantation of the Gospell by the Bishops of *Culm*, *Warme*, *Sambia*, and *Pomesan*, suffragans to the Archbishop of *Guesna*: under whom those parts of it doe still continue, which have not yet forsaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other separate Congregations distinct from them, having their own *forms* both of doctrine and discipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered then this is, both for *Lakes* and *Rivers*: some of the Lakes 7 *Dutch* miles in compasse, and well stored with fish; the Rivers 12 in number, that is to say, 1 The *Vistula*, 2 *Chronus*, 3 *Nogat*, 4 *Elbing*, 5 *Vasera*, 6 *Passaria*, 7 *Alla*, 8 *Pregel*, 9 *Ossa*, 10 *Drebnicz*, 11 *Lica*, and 12 *Lavia*, all plentifully stored with fish; besides a large Sea coast both for trade and fishing, no small commoditie to the Natives.

The Country formerly divided into twelve Dukedomes, (so they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the industrie of the *Dutch Knights* so adorned and beautified (after they had once brought it under their obedience) that there were no fewer then 72 Castles and 62 good Towns of their foundation. Which number being much increased in these later times, hath made it the most flourishing part of the whole kingdom of *Poland*. But the *Order* of these Knights being suppressed in this Countrie by an agreement betwixt *Sigismund* the first King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenbourg* the last *great Master* of the *Order*; both Towns and Countrie are divided between the successours of the said *Albert* as Dukes of *Prussia*, and of the said *Sigismund* as Kings of *Pole*; the Dukedoms or divisions of *Hogerland*, *Warme*, *Galindia*, *Micklow*, *Calmigeria*, with the Citie of *Mariemberg*, the Soveraignty of *Dantzick*, and *Melvin*, with the whole Countrie of *Pomerella* lying on the West side of the *Vistula*, being allotted to the King; the residue containing the divisions of *Schalavonia*, *Sambia*, *Natangia*, *Nadravia*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomesania*, (except the City and Territorie of *Mariemberg*) to the Dukes of *Prussia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke, are 1 *Mimel*, a well frequented Port, the Mart town for the commodities of *Lituania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the forein Merchant: part of this Province interposing betwixt *Lituania* and the *Baltick*. 2 *Coningsberg*, as the *Dutch*; *Regimont*, as the *French*; and *Mons Regius*, as the *Latines* call it, situate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottome of a Gulfe or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea, built by the *Dutch Knights* in the year 1260, and made an Universitie by *Albert* the first Duke hereof, 1525. the seat and principall residence of his successours: as also of the Bishops of *Sambia*, in Latine called *Sambienses*, by the name of the Province. 3 *Mulmeburg*, founded by the *Dutch Knights*, *anno* 1279. 4 *Brandenburg*, on the South side of that bay, but more near the Sea; built, as I guesse, by some of the *great Masters* of that familie. 5 *Ragnitz*, the furthest town of note towards *Lituania*. 6 *Angersburg*, in *Sclavonia*, as was also *Ragnitz*. 7 *Nordenburg* in *Bartonia*. 8 *Ottelburg* in *Galindia*, of which little memorable. 9 *Marienwerder*, the furthest of the Dukes estate towards the *Vistula*, and the ordinary residence of the Bishop of *Pomesan*. Besides which there are reckoned in this division, 80 good towns more, and about 54 Castles, though not of much observation in the course of storie.

Chief towns pertaining to the King are 1 *Braunsberg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, which they call *Frisch Haffe*; a town of good trade by reason of the commodious Haven; and the ordinarie residence of the Bishop of *Warmia*. 2 *Frawenburg*, on the same Bay, not far from *Braunsburg*. 3 *Elbing*, on the same Bay, not far from a fair and fishfull Lake, well traded, rich, and full of very wealthie Merchants. 4 *Ressel*, the chief town of the Diocese and Dukedome of *Warmie*. 5 *Strasburg*, in *Micklow*, confining on *Poland* specially so called; at the siege whereof by *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, *anno* 1628. *Elias Tripe*, one of the *Engineers* of that King, found out the use of *Leather Ordinance*, which afterwards did that King great service in his wars of *Germany*. 6 *Culm*, on the River *Vistula*, a Bishops See. 7 *Mariemburg*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch Knights*, *anno* 1302. and made the seat of the *Great Masters* of their Order, translated first from *Ptolemais* or *Acon* in *Syria*, to the citie of *Venice*; from thence to *Marpurg*, and at last to this place by *Sifride* the twelfth *Great Master* of it: whose constant residence in this town, occasioned the Bishop of *Culm* to remove thither also. A very fair and well-built citie, the chief of those which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by whom so well garrisoned and furnished with such store of victualls, ammunition, and all other necessaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a six years siege. But it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in lesse space then so many months; on the setling of a peace betwixt the Crowns rendred again unto the King of *Poland*. Beneath this town down towards the *Baltick* is a pleasant Island made by the *Nagot* and the *Wixell*, for the fertilitie of the soil, and the great number of houses, villages, and people, not equalled (for the muchnesse of it) in all this Countrie. 8 *Newburg*, on the west side of the *Vistula* or *Wixel*, in the Countrie called *Pomerella*, once part of *Pomerania*, but given by *Swantibore* Duke of *Pomeren*, *anno* 1107. to *Bugeslaus* his second son; whose posterity enjoyed it till the year 1295. when *Mestevin* the 2. dying without issue male, gave it to *Primislaus* Duke of the *Polonians*, whose successours have ever since enjoyed it by that donation. 9 *Dirschaw* or *Darsaw*, (in *Latine*, *Darsovia*) a well fortified Town and of great importance, on the same side of the River, and the same Countrie of *Pomerella*. 10 *Dantzick*, in *Latine* called *Dantiscum*, and sometimes *Gedanum*, situate on the same side of the *River* also, a fair and well-built Citie, the houses for the most

part

part of brick, and the reſt of ſtone; raiſed with great beauty and magnificence ſix or ſeven floores high: beautified with a fair Councell-houſe for affairs of State, and many publick gardens for diſport and exerciſe. It conſiſteth of three Cities governed by as many *Senates*; the one called *Furſtat* or the fore-Citie, the ſecond *Altſtat* or the old Citie, and the third *Reichſtat* or the Emperours Citie: but all encompaſſed with one wall, and governed by one chief *Senate* or Common-Councel choſen out of all three. A Biſhops See, and the ſecond in eſteem and rank of all the *Hanſe towns*; of ſo great trade and ſuch a noted *Granarie* of all ſorts of corn iſſued from hence to ſupply the wants of all other Countries, that 1000 meaſures of wheat (beſides other commodities in proportion) are here dayly ſold. Heretofore it was reckoned as *Imperiall*, but now eſteemed a *Free-Eſtate*, acknowledging the Kings of *Poland* for their *Protectours*; to whom they allow many *cuſtomes* upon their merchandiſe, and permit his Officers to abide there for receiving of them. The firſt town in the Kingdome of *Poland*, which gave entrance to the doctrines of *Luther*, *anno* 1525. but in ſo tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his opinions, depoſed the old *Common-Councell-men* and created new ones of their own, prophaned the Churches, robbed them of their ornaments, and ſhamefully abuſed the *Prieſts*, and *Religious* perſons, aboliſhed the *Maſſe*, and altered all things at their pleaſure. But by the coming of the King they grew ſomewhat quieter: Having one Convent of *Black Friers*, and two of *Nuns*, who ſtill enjoy the exerciſe of their *Religion*. 11 *Melvin*, a noted Port Town and of great reſort, eſpecially by the *Engliſh* Merchants, who had here their *Staple* for the *Baltick*. A ſmall, but fair and well-built Citie, and fortified with a very good wall: governed like *Dantzk*, after the manner of a *Free Eſtate* or *Common-wealth*, under the patronage and protection of the Kings of *Poland*.

The ancient inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the moſt potent Nation of this tract, extended all along the coaſt of the *Baltick*, from them by *Ptolemie* called *Sinus Venedicus*, containing under them the *Gythones*, *Phinni*, *Sulanes*, *Phrungudiones*, *Avarini*; and more within the land, the *Sudini*, and *Galindæ*, whoſe name the Dukedome or Province of *Galindia*, doth ſtill retaine. But great and potent though they were, they were ſubdued by the *Boruſſi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphean* Mountaines; who weary of their own cold and barren dwellings, removed into the Weſtern parts, and vanquiſhing the *Venedi* and thoſe other Nations, poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country, which they called *Boruſſia*; now by us named *Pruſſia*. By *Venedus* one of their Princes, having 12 ſons in all, it was divided into 12 Provinces or Dukedomes, one for every ſon, continuing by that means diſtracted into divers petit principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch Knights*, ſent hither by *Frederick* the 2. *anno* 1215. by whom the Provinces or Dukedomes of *Sudavia*, *Michlow*, and the greateſt part of *Nadravia*, were laid waſte and deſolate, the reſt ſubmitted to their power and received the Goſpel. After this it continued ſubject to this Order of *Knights* till the year 1419. when wearie of their extortion, and the continuall change of *Maſters*, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their obedience: ſeconded by the yeelding up of *Mariemberg*, with many other Towns and Caſtles ſold to King *Caſimir* by the Garriſon Souldiers, *anno* 1457. for 476000 *Florens*. But the *Knights* diſdaining to be ſo dealt withall, and refuſing to ſwear allegiance to the Kings of *Poland*, they brake out into open war; managed with variable ſucceſſe on both ſides; *Ludovicus* the then *Great Maſter*, being ſo ſucceſſefull at the firſt that he once beat the King out of the field, routed his whole Armie, ſlew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobilitie: not vanquiſhed at laſt but by the treachery and rebellion of his own people. In the end wearied and worn out on both ſides by continuall wars, *Albert* of *Brandenbourg* then *Great Maſter*, having for 14 years together couragiouſly maintained the honour of his *Order*, and for the 4 laſt years importuned in vain the aſſiſtance of the Emperour and Princes of *Germanie*, began to think of ſome expedient to compound the buſineſſe. Being inclined to *Luthers* doctrines, and willing to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, he ſecretly practiſed with *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, to end the war to the advantage of both parties. By whom at laſt it was agreed that *Albert* ſhould relinquiſh his *Order*, and ſurrender all *Pruſſia* into the hands of the King; that the King poſſeſſing the Weſtern parts with the town of *Mariemberg*, and the ſoveraignty of *Dantzk* and *Melvin*, ſhould inveſt *Albert* with the title of Duke of *Pruſſia*, eſtating on him and the heirs of his bodie, the whole *Eaſtern Moietie*, containing the Provinces or Dukedoms before ſpecified; and finally, that *Albert* and his heirs ſhould hold the ſaid Eſtate as *Homagers* to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all *Aſſemblies* at the Kings right hand. According to this agreement, *anno* 1525. *Albert*, attired in the compleat Habit of *Maſter* of the *Dutch Order*, preſents himſelf humbly on his knees before King *Sigiſmund* at *Cracow*, the King then ſitting on his Throne. The King raiſing him from the ground, cauſed him to put off thoſe robes and attire himſelf in a *Ducall Habit*; which done an inſtrument was read and publiſhed, whereby the King conferred upon him and the heirs of his body the Dukedome of *Pruſſia*, to be held of him and his ſucceſſours Kings of *Poland*. An act at which the whole *Order* were extremely incenſed, but they could not help it; and thereupon retired into *Germanie*, where there were ſome good lands left to maintain ſuch of them as had no mind to quit that *militarie honour*: leaving their old Eſtates in *Pruſſia* to the King, and the Duke; whoſe ſucceſſors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it with the Title of

DUKES

Poland.

DUKES of PRUSSIA.

1525 1 *Albert Brandenbourg*, ſon of *Frederick* Marqueſſe of *Onalsbach*, or *Ansbach*, created *Maſter* of the *Order* by the Emperour *Maximilian*, *anno* 1511. and the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia* by *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, *anno* 1525. founded the Univerſitie of *Coningsberg*, *anno* 1544.

1568 2 *Albert Frederick*, ſon of *Albert* the firſt Duke, marryed *Mary Eleanor* daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, *&c.*

3 *Anne*, Eldeſt daughter of Duke *Albert Frederick* Dutcheſſe of *Pruſſia*, brought the Eſtate in marriage to

4 *John Sigiſmund*, Marqueſſe and Elector of *Brandenburg* confirmed therein by *Sigiſmund* the 3. of *Poland*, pretending an *Eſcheat* thereof for want of heirs males of the bodie of *Albert* the firſt Duke.

5 *George William*, Marqueſſe and Elector of *Brandenburg*, and Duke of *Pruſſia* in right of the Lady *Anne* his mother; and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by deſcent from *Mary Eleanor* his Grandmother.

6 *Frederick William*, ſon of *George William*, Marqueſſe and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*; of whoſe inveſtiture in the Dukedome of *Pomeren*, and other large and goodly Signeuries, we have ſpoke elſewhere.

As for the Government of this Province, ſtanding thus divided, that of the Duke is more *Monarchicall* then that of the King; the one being *abſolute* and uncontrollable in his Eſtates, the other ſubject to the great *Councell* of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, *Delegates* appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to doe equall juſtice, either at *Mariemberg* or *Elbing*, do compound the buſineſſe: who together with ſome others of the Dukes nomination, receive all *Appeals*, in which the *Duke* is intereſſed as one of the parties.

The *Revenues* of this Dukedome are thought to be 120000 *Ducats* yearly.

The Armes thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Vert*, Membred and Crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

POLAND properly and ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Maſſovia*, *Podlaſſia*, and *Lituania*; on the Weſt with *Sileſia*, and the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*; on the North with *Pruſſia*, and on the South with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungarie*. It is in length 480 *Italian* miles, 300 of the ſame miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is ſaid) from the word *Pole*, ſignifying as much as *plain*; the Countrie being *plain* and levell, little ſwelled with hils.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but ſharp and cold; the Countrie *plain*, ſhaded with thick dark woods, parts of the *Hercynian*, full of wild beaſts for hunting, and of Bees for honey, which they have here in great abundance: together with ſuch plenty of grain, but of *Rie* eſpecially, by reaſon of the continuall breaking up of new grounds gained out of the *Forreſts*, that it may be called the *Granarie* or Store-houſe of the *Weſtern* parts of *Europe*; ſent down the *Wixel* unto *Dantzick*, and thence tranſported by the Merchant into other Countries, according to their ſeverall wants.

The Character of the people we have had before; adding now only that in matters of war they are ſtout and reſolute; ſo forwards in giving the charge and purſuit of the enemie, that *John Vaſilwich* the *Great Duke* of *Moſcovie*, comparing them with the Souldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to ſay, that the *Moſcovites wanted a ſpur to drive them forwards*; *and the Polanders had need of a bridle to hold them back*. Their language is the *Sclavonian* tongue; moſt generally ſpoken alſo in the reſt of the Provinces, but with ſome difference in the *dialect*, or pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the *Greater* and the *Leſſer Poland*. The *Greater* lying wholly on the Weſtern ſide of the *Wixel*, and ſo accounted anciently as a part of *Germanie*, contains 9 diviſions, under the juriſdiction of the 9 *Palatines* of 1 *Poſna*, 2 *Kalisch*, 3 *Siradia*, 4 *Lancitia*, 5 *Vratiſlaw*, 6 *Breſtus*, 7 *Rava*, 8 *Ploczko*, and 9 *Dobrzin*: each of them ſo called from ſome Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the reſt contained in them, are 1 *Poſna*, a Biſhops See, and the principall of the *Greater Poland*, ſeated amongſt hills on the River *Warta*; built of free-ſtone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River: but much ſubject unto inundations, which adde much ſtrength unto the place: of great reſort by reaſon of the *Marts* or *Fairs* holden twice a year. 2 *Koſcien*, ſituate amongſt *Mariſhes* and fortified with a double wall. 3 *Oſtreſow*, bordering on *Sileſia*, begirt with woods. 4 *Gueſna*, the antienteſt town of *Poland*, founded by *Lechus* their firſt Prince, the ſeat of him and his ſucceſſours till removed to *Cracow*, ſituate in *Kalisch*, and by old preſcription, the firſt place for the inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*: in regard that here Prince *Boleſlaus* the firſt King received the *Regall Diadem*

at

at the hands of *Otho* the third. The town well-walled, and the See of the Archbiſhop, who is the *Primate* of the kingdome, by antient priviledge the *Popes Legat* for all *Sarmatia Europæa*, and in the abſence of the King or *interregnums* the *Vicar Generall* of the kingdome, having power to ſummon the *Diets*, to conclude and publiſh their Decrees. 5 *Petrocow*, a walled Town, in the *Palatinate* or diviſion of *Siradia*, ſituate in a *mooriſh* ſoyle; the place in former times of the *Generall Diets*, ſince removed to *Warſaw*. 6 *Uladiſlaw* on the *Wixel* or *Viſtula*, a Biſhops See. 7 *Bedgoſt*, a walled Town on the *Bard*, a navigable River, conveying the Merchandiſe of theſe parts into the *Viſtula*. 8 *Kruſwick* in *Breſty*, built of wood, ſtanding on a great Lake named *Gopla* in the Caſtle whereof *Popielus* the ſecond Duke of *Poland*, was after a ſtrange manner devoured with Rats, ſwarming out of the Lake. 9 *Ploczko*, upon the *Viſtula*, a walled Town, and a Biſhops See, with a Caſtle to it; and 10 *Mlawa*, bordering on the Dukedome of *Pruſſia*.

The *LESSER Poland* lying on the South of the *Greater*, and divided by the River *Wixel*, comprehendeth onely three diviſions, under the Government of the *Palatines* of *Cracow*, 2 *Sendomir*, and *Lublin*. Principall Cities of the which are 1 *Cracow*, upon the *Wixel*, (called in *Latine Cracovia*) a Biſhops See, the chief of all the kingdome, and the ſeat of the Prince, and the Sepulture of the former Kings. By *Ptolemie* called *Carodunum*; fortified with a double wall (of the old faſhion) a deep ditch, the Caſtle of *Vanel* ſituate on the top of an high rock; and beautified with an Univerſity, or generall ſtudy of good Arts and Sciences. The buildings are more faire then elſewhere in *Poland*, of free ſtone, and foure ſtories high, but for the moſt part covered with *Shingles*, or tiles of wood: in the midſt a large *market-place* of form quadrangular; and in the middle of that the *Common-councell* houſe, about which are many ſhops of Merchants. On one ſide of it ſtandeth the *Cathedrall* Church; and on the Eaſt-ſide of the City, the *Palace Royall*, high ſeated on an hill overlooking both the Town and Countrey, fair and well built, of form ſomewhat neere a *Quadrangle*; but lying open to the South without any buildings above the wall; affording thereby to the *Gallery*, being on the North ſide of the Caſtle the more excellent proſpect. 2 *Lelow*, a walled towne with a Caſtle, on the River *Bialo*. 3 *Sendomir*, a walled town with a Caſtle alſo, ſeated on a hill, under which the *Viſtula* or *Wixel*. 4 *Wiſliczа*, a walled town amongſt Mariſhes, encompaſſed with the River *Nid*. 5 *Lublin*, a walled town, but more ſtrongly fortified by the *mariſhes* and waters, with which environed: remarkable for three yearly *Marts*, drawing hither Merchants from moſt parts adjoining, as alſo *Moſcovites*, *Armenians*, *Turkes*, and *Grecians*: the *Jews*, inhabiting the greateſt part of the ſuburbs, have here their *Synagogue*; making the Town, eſpecially at time of thoſe *Marts*, a *medley* of all Nations and Religions. 6 *Caſimir*, on the *Wixel*, ſo named from the founder of it, a King of *Poland*.

The old Inhabitants of this countrey, were the *Arii*, *Helverone*, *Elyſii*, and the *Nahervali*, parts of the *Suevi Lygii* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; all of them lying on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Wixel*, by conſequence, within the bounds of the antient *Germanie*: the people of all the reſt of the Provinces before deſcribed, being of the *Sarmatian* race, next neighbours to the *Germans*, and not much unlike them in perſons, cuſtomes, or conditions. But theſe diſperſed and ſcattered Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, being united in the common name of *Sclaves*, part of them ſetled in that part which we now call *Poland*, at that time reckoned and accompted of as a part of *Germanie*. The time of their firſt comming hither, and the manner of their government when firſt ſetled here, is not very well known. But for the firſt it is moſt certain, that it was ſome time, and that not long after the death of *Mauritius* the Eaſtern Emperour: and for the next it is as certain, that on the coming of *Lechus*, a *Croatian*, who fled his countrey for a murder, with his brother *Zechius*, they ſetled into a more conſtant form of *Government*, then before they did. For *Lechus* ſeeing his brothers good ſucceſſe in *Bohemia*, where the *Sclaves* received him for their Prince; paſſed into *Poland*, the next Province, and was as cheerfully received by the *Sclaves* thereof: who looked upon him as a Prince of their own *extraction*, and without quarrell or competition ſubmitted themſelves to his commands, *anno* 650. or thereabouts. Of this there is good *conſtat* amongſt our Authours. But neither the names or number of his ſucceſſours doe occur in ſtory, till the time of *Crocus*, the founder of *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and the *Legiſlator* of this people. After this the ſucceſſion of their Princes and the ſucceſſe of their affairs, becomes more certain: the Eſtate hereof being much improved, by the conqueſt of many *Sarmatian* countreys, all which together conſtitute and make up the kingdome of *Poland*, ſo called from this predominating and prevailing Province. The ſumme of their affaires is this. The poſterity of *Crocus* failing in *Popielus* the ſecond, *Piaſtus* is elected Duke, the Princes from that time forwards, becoming *Elective*, but alwayes with reſpect to the next of bloud. In the time of *Mieciſlaus* ſon of *Nemomyſtus* they received the *Goſpell*, *anno* 963. *Boleſlaus* the ſon of *Mieciſlaus*, was the firſt who had the title of *King* conferred upon him by the Emperour *Otho* the third, about the yeare 1001. relinquiſhed by *Uladiſlaus* the firſt, and not reſumed againe till the time of *Primiſlaus*, Duke of *Poſna*, *anno* 1300. after which perpetuall. In the perſon of this *Primiſlaus*, *Pomerella* is united to the ſtate of *Poland*, *anno* 1295. in that of *Jagello*, or *Uladiſlaus* the fifth, the great Dukedome of *Lituania* incorporated into this body as a Member of it, in the time of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*. By *Uladiſlaus* the ſixt, ſon of *Jagello*, *Podolia* and *Ruſſia Nigra*, are alſo added; by *Sigiſmund* the firſt *Pruſſia*, and *Maſſovia*; *Podlaſſia* by *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, who alſo tooke *Volhinia* out of *Lituania*: by *Stephen*, the actuall poſſeſſion of the greateſt part of *Livonia*; by *Sigiſmund* the third a title to the Crown of *Sweden*. The Princes follow in this Order.

DUKES

DUKES and KINGS of POLAND.

A. Ch.		
649	1	*Lechus* of *Croatia* the first Duke; whose posterity failing, twelve *Palatines* were chosen to direct affairs, and the state became *Aristocraticall*.
	2	*Crocus*, the *Legislator* of *Poland*.
	3	*Lechus* II. son of *Crocus*.
	4	*Venda* the daughter of *Crocus*, and sister of *Lechius* the second.
	5	*Lescus* the first.
	6	*Lescus* II.
	7	*Lescus* III. Contemporarie with *Charles* the great.
	8	*Popielus* son of *Lescus* the third.
	9	*Popielus* II. devoured in most horrid manner by *rats* and *mice*, together with his wife and children, the last of the posterity or house of *Crocus*.
800	10	*Piastus* the first Duke *elected*.
	11	*Zemovitus* son of *Piastus*.
	12	*Lescus* IV. son of *Zemovitus*.
	13	*Nemomyslus* son of *Lescus* the fourth.
	14	*Miecislaus* son of *Nemomyslus*, the first *Christian* Prince of the *Polonians*, founded the Bishopricks of *Cracow* and *Guesna*.
1000	15	*Boleslaus* son of *Miecislaus* the first, who had the title of King conferred on him by *Otho* the third.
1025	16	*Miecislaus* II. sonne of *Boleslaus*.
1041	17	*Casimir* son of *Miecislaus*.
1059	18	*Boleslaus* II. son of *Casimir*, deposed and died an Exile in *Hungary*.
1082	19	*Vladislaus* brother of *Boleslaus*, the second, abandoned the title of King only and used that of *Prince* or *Duke*.
1003	20	*Boleslaus* III. son of *Vladislaus*.
1140	21	*Vladislaus* II. son of *Boleslaus* the third, outed by his Brethren, and at last estated in *Silesia*; united formerly to *Poland* from the time of *Lechus*.
1146	22	*Boleslaus* IV. brother of *Vladislaus* the second.
1174	23	*Miecislaus* III. brother of *Boleslaus* and *Vladislaus*, deposed by his brother *Casimir*.
1178	24	*Casimir* II. brother of the three last Princes.
1195	25	*Lescus* V. son of *Casimir* the second deposed by *Miecislaus* the third.
1203	26	*Vladislaus* III. son of *Miecislaus* the third deposed by *Lescus* the fift; who again seised on the Estate.
1243	27	*Boleslaus* V. surnamed *Pudicus*.
1280	28	*Lescus* VI. surnamed *Niger*, the adopted son of *Boleslaus* and his *Cousen German* once removed; after whose death, *anno* 1289. the estate being distracted into many factions, was for some time without a Prince: setled at last on
1295	29	*Primislaus* surnamed *Posthumus*, who againe assumed the name of *King*, continued ever since by his successours.
1296	30	*Vladislaus* surnamed *Locticus*, brother of *Lescus Niger*, outed by *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, *anno* 1300. after whose death, *anno* 1306. he resumed the estate.
1333	31	*Casimir* III. surnamed the *Great*, son of *Vladislaus* the fourth, the first establisher of the kingdom, after all those troubles, dyed without issue.
1371	32	*Lewis* king of *Hungary* son of *Charles* King of *Hungary* by *Elizabeth* the sister of *Casimir*.
1383	33	*Heduigis* the youngest daughter of *Lewis*, her elder sister *Mary* succeeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, chosen Queen of *Poland*, marryed to *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania*, Christened and called *Vladislaus* the fist.
1386	34	*Vladislaus* V. Duke of *Lituania*, elected King upon his marriage with Queene *Heduigis*.
1435	35	*Vladislaus* VI. son of *Jagello*, or *Vladislaus* the fift, by *Sophia* daughter of the Duke of *Kiovia*. He was King of *Hungary* also, slaine at the battell of *Varna* by *Amurath* the second King of the *Turkes* without issue.
1447	36	*Casimir* IV. brother of *Vladislaus*, first brought the Knights of *Prussia*, under his command; Knight of the order of Garter.
1493	37	*John Albert* the second sonne of *Casimir*, his elder Brother *Vladislaus* being pretermitted on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*.
1502	38	*Alexander* the third son of *Casimir*.
1507	39	*Sigismund* the fourth sonne of *Casimir* his elder Brethren dying without issue; suppressed the Order of the *Dutch Knights* in *Prussia*; and added part thereof unto his estate.
1548	40	*Sigismund* II. surnamed *Augustus* the last of the male issue of *Jagello*.
1574	41	*Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, son of *Henry* the second *French* King, chosen on the death of *Sigismund*

mund Auguſtus, the onely Stranger to the bloud in all this Catalogue. On the death of his brother *Charles* the ninth, he departed ſecretly into *France*, where he ſucceeded by the name of *Henry* the third.

1579 42 *Stephen Bathor* Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, having marryed *Anne* ſiſter of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, is *elected* King; he united *Livonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Moſcovite*.

1587 43 *Sigiſmund* III. ſon of *John* King of *Swethland* and *Catharine* his wife another of the ſiſters of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond King of *Poland* and *Sweden*. He valiantly oppoſed *Oſman* the *Great Turke* invading his Dominions with an Army 300000.

1633 44 *Vladiſlaus* VII. eldeſt ſon of *Sigiſmund* the third; after whoſe death the kingdom was extremely embroyled by factions, eſpecially by the mutinous and ſeditious *Coſaques*; not fully ſetled by the election of

1648 45 *Caſimir* V. Brother of *Vladiſlaus* the ſeventh now king of *Poland*, *anno* 1648.

The Government of this kingdome is nothing leſſe then *Monarchicall*. For though the firſt Dukes hereof were *abſolute* Princes, and ruled after a *Deſpoticall* manner; having power not onely of the eſtates of their ſubjects, but of life and death, without *formalities* of Law: yet when they once became *elective*, they loſt much of that power, which decayed ſo by little and little, that at the laſt the King is counted little better then a *Royall ſhadow*: *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poets language. A diminution which began firſt in the times of *Lewis* of *Hungarie*, and *Jagello* of *Lituania*, who to gaine the ſucceſſion to the kingdome contrary to Law, the one for his daughter, the other for his ſonne, departed with many of their *Royalties* and *Prerogatives* to buy the voices of the Nobility. Since which time the *Nobilitie* in all their *elections* have ſo limited and reſtrained the Kings authority, and enlarged their own: that without their conſent in Counſell, he may neither make war nor treat of peace, nor impoſe taxes, nor alienate any of his Demeanes: nor do any thing of importance which concernes the Publick: in ſo much as *Boterus* a great *Stateſman* doth expreſſely ſay, that the Government of *Poland* doth rather ſeem an *Ariſtocratie* then a *Monarchie*, a Common-wealth rather then a Kingdome. Beſides the King not onely takes a ſolemn Oath at his Coronation to confirme all the rights and Priviledges, which have been granted to the Subject by his Predeceſſours: but addes this clauſe, *quod ſi Sacramentum meum violavero, incolæ Regni nullam mihi obedientiam præſtare tenebuntur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects ſhall not be obliged to yeeld him any obedience. Which as *Bodinus* well obſerveth, doth rather ſavour of the condition of a *Prince of the Senate*, then of the Majeſtie of a King; reſpected accordingly by the great ones, who looke not on him as their *King*, but their *elder Brother*, (or perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three dayes laſting. Which notwithſtanding the King once choſen and inthroned, hath ſole power in many things, without conſulting with the *Senate*, as *viz.* in aſſembling *Diets*, chooſing the ſecular Counſellers, diſpoſing abſolutely of his *Vaſſals*, and the Revenues of the Crown to what uſe he pleaſeth; being *ſole Judge* of the Nobility in *Criminall* cauſes; which is a ſtrong bridle to raine them in with. By which, and either uniting himſelf unto the *Clergy*, or the well-forming of his party amongſt the *Nobility*, hee may doe many things not allowable in ſtrictneſſe of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government, being proportionable to the ſtrength of his wit and Brain.

And here it is to be obſerved, that none but the *Clergie* and *Nobilitie* have any ſuffrage in the *election* of the King: that is to ſay, the 26 *Palatines*, and 60 *Chaſtellans*, with the four *Marſhals*, and ſome others of the principall Officers of State, in behalfe of the *Nobility*; and the Archbiſhops and Biſhops in the name of the *Clergie*: but of the Commons none at all. Whith is the reaſon why there is ſo much care taken to preſerve the priviledges of the two firſt Orders; without obtaining any immunties for reliefe of the third: moſt miſerably oppreſſed on all ſides, rather as *Bondmen* then *Tenants* in reſpect of their Lords, and not ſo much ſubjects, as plain *ſlaves* in regard of the King: whereof ſomewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the *common people* excluded onely out of theſe *elections*, but have no *place* nor *vote* in the Counſell of State, or in any of the *Generall Diets*: the firſt conſiſting onely of the *Prelates*, *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and principall Officers, ſpoken of before, the nominating of which pertaineth to the King alone, the other aggregated of all perſons of thoſe ſeverall Orders, and the *Delegates* of each Province and principall City ſent thither for the reſt of the *Nobility*, whom they repreſent. Yet notwithſtanding this excluſion of the *Commons* from this *Common-Counſell*, they there concludes of all matters of publick intereſſe, not properly determinable by the *great Counſell* or *Counſell* of *State*; in which perhaps (eſpecially in the caſe of taxes) the *Commons* may be more concerned then any other.

The *Forces* of this Kingdome or Common-wealth relate unto *Land-ſervice* onely. For though they have a large Sea coaſt upon the *Baltick*; yet the *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Hanſe-townes*, having got the ſtart of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for *Land-forces* they conſiſt of Horſe eſpecially, whereof they are able to raiſe eightſcore thouſand, (that is to ſay, 100000 out of *Poland*, and 60 or 70000 out of *Lituania*: of which one halfe at leaſt are thought to be fit for action. And this ſeemes probable enough in regard of thoſe great bodies of Horſe, which *Stephen* and *Sigiſmund* the third had againſt the *Moſcovite*; whereof the one had 40000 and the other 30000 (beſides draught horſes, very well appointed. But for their *Foot*, they are not at ſo good a paſſe, their *Infanterie* being for the moſt part *Germans* or *Hungarians*; whom they hire for money; of which two Nations

king

King *Stephen*, in his enterprise upon *Livonia*, had no lesse then 16000 to convey his Ordinance. Upon confidence of this great number of Horse, and their readinesse to serve upon all occasions, the *Polanders* bear themselves so high, that they neither fear the power of a forein Enemie, nor regard the fortifying of their Towns, or the building of *Fortresses* on their *Frontires:* boasting that they are able to defend their countrey, without such helps, against any Nation whatsoever, and trusting more to a *Castle of bones*, (as was courageously said by *Savage* an *English* Gentleman) then to a *Castle of stones*. And for the raising of these Horse, the Gentlemen of the Countrey are bound by their tenure, (like the *Turkes Timariots*) not onely to serve in person for defence of the Realm, but to maintaine a certain number of Horse in continuall readinesse; especially in those parts which lie next the *Tartar*, where their numbers are exceeding great, and with whom many times they join to afflict and harasse their own countrey, though in pay against them. Of these some serve in the manner of our *men of armes*, some like unto our *light horse*, others like the *Tartars*. And these they call commonly by the name of *Cosacques* (or *Adventurers*): a race of men trained up to steal, wast and depopulate, wheresoever they come; having litte but their *swords* to live by; a murderous and wicked people, chiefly in their drunkennesse, and that not onely towards strangers, but their naturall Countreymen. The cause of that sedition which for some yeares past, hath more depopulated and distracted that flourishing kingdome, then all the Armies of the *Turkes*.

As for the *Revenues* of this king, they are computed at 600000 Crowns *per annum*, drawn chiefly out of Salt and some Mines of Silver: the profits arising from the *Demeasnes* of the Crown, being for the most part given away in pensions and gratuities, to the *Palatines*, *Chastellans*, and other great men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his desires. Most of which sum is put up yearly in his Coffers, or expended in the purchase of estates for his younger sons; his daughters being marryed at the publick charge, and the expenses of his household defrayed by the *Lituanians* and most part of *Poland*, for the time that he remains amongst them. Nor doe the wars at any time exhaust his *Treasure*, in which case by decree of the *Diets* he is inabled to lay impositions and taxes upon the people, levied in the way of *Excise*, or upon their lands, which doe amount to such a sum, that by means hereof king *Stephen* maintained war three yeares against the *Moscovite*, without expending any thing of his own *Revenue*.

Chief *Orders* of *Knighthood* in this kingdome, are

1 The *Marian* or *Dutch Knights*, instituted under the wals of *Acon* or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy land*; in a Church whereof dedicated to the blessed *Virgin*, their Order was first allowed; from thence called *Equites Mariani*. The institution was in the year 1190. The first *great Master*, *Henry Walpot*. The *Christians* being beaten out of *Syria*, they first removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Marpurg* in *Hassia*, where and in some other parts of *Germanie*, they were endowed with fair *Revenues*, from which named *Equites Teutonici*, or the *Dutch Knights* sent into *Prussia* by the Emperour *Frederick* the second, *anno* 1239. or called, in as some say, by the *Moscovite* against the *Prussians*; they fixed their seat at *Mariemberg*, under *Sigefride*, the second *Great Master*, *anno* 1340. or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus* the 18 *Great Master* they were forced to submit to *Casimir* the fourth of *Poland*, *anno* 1450. the occasion of the long war betwixt them and the *Polanders*, continuing all the time of *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, the 24 and last *Great Master* in this Countrey, who surrendered his order (as before said) to *Sigismund* the first by whom he was created the first *Duke* of *Prussia*. Such of the *Knights* as disrelished this action, retired into *Germanie*, where they chose one *Walter Croneberg* master of the Order: the title afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian* one of the younger sons of *Maxmilian* the second; but the *Order* sensibly decaying, and all this time of little estimation in the world.

2 Of the *Portylaine*, or *Sword-bearers* (*Ensiferi* in *Latine*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third, by whom sent into *Livonia* to defend the Preachers of the *Gospell* against the *Infidels*, at the first conversion of that countrey. Being too weak to effect that businesse, they united themselves with the *Dutch Knights* by the Popes authority; and in stead of *Knights* of the *sword*, were called *Knights* of the *Crosse*. Separated from it in the time of *Univus* their *Great Master*, *anno* 1541. the *Dutch Knights* being then dispossessed of *Prussia*, and these inclining wholly to the opinions of *Luther*, they a while subsisted of themselves; what became of them afterwards, and how the *Order* was extinguished, hath been shewen already in *Livonia*.

The Armes of this kingdome are quarterly, 1 *Gules*, an Eagle *Argent*, crowned and Armed, *Or*, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2 *Gules*, a Chevalier armed *Cap a pea*, advancing his sword *Argent*, mounted on a barbed Courser of the *second* for the Dukedome of *Lituania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

Of the *Romish* Church	Archbishops 3.	Bishops 19.
Of the *Greek* Church	Archbishops 2.	Bishops 6.

Universities 4.

viz.

Cracow	*Dantzick*.
Vilna	*Regimont*.

And so much for *POLAND*.

OF

THE CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS.

IN our way from *Poland* unto *Hungarie* (whither now we goe) wee muſt of neceſſity paſſe over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the ancient boundarie of *Sarmatia Europæa*, from the reſt of *Europe*. A long and craggie ledge of hils, which beginning near the Citie of *Presburg*, and the borders of *Auſtria*, paſſe on in a continuall courſe till they come to the very *Euxine* Sea, and by that means not only divide *Hungary* from *Poland* ſpecially ſo called; but parting *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia* two *Dacian* Regions, from *Ruſſia Nigra*, and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian* Kingdom. By *Ptolemie* in his ſecond Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici* (*Sarmaticæ Rupes* by *Solinus*) becauſe diſterminating the *Sarmatian* Nations (who poſſeſſed the moſt part of it) from *Germanie*, and the more Southern parts of *Europe*: and in his third booke, by one name *Carpates*, or *Mons Carpatus*, ſo called (as ſome think from) the Greek word Καρπὸς, ſignifying *Fruit*, from the fruitfulneſſe of it, compared with other Mountaines in thoſe Northerne Countries. At the preſent known by divers names, according to the Provinces and people which it paſſeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten*, (or a Garden of Herbs) which alludeth to the name of *Carpatus*: by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzall*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria* where it is at the higheſt, it is *called* in the *Sclavonian* tongue, by the name of *Tatri*; in the *German Schneberg*: where it parteth *Tranſylvania* from *Ruſſia Nigra*, the *Roſſes* call it *Bieſcid*; and the *Dutch* men, *Crapack*. A chaine of hils of more length then fame: not much obſervable in ſtorie but for the ſhutting up the *Hungari*, *Sclaves*, and others of thoſe Northern Nations, which afterward invaded the *Roman* Provinces; nor of much notice at the preſent, but for giving an Originall to many of the principall Rivers, which water the Countries lying on both ſides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will paſſe them over, and deſcend into the Plains of *Hungarie*.

OF

HUNGARIE.

HUNGARIE is bounded on the East with *Transylvania*, and *Walachia*; on the West with *Stiria*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*; on the North with the *Carpathian* Mountains which divide it from *Poland*; and on the South with *Sclavonia*, and some part of *Dacia*. Extended in length from *Presburg* along the *Danow*, to the borders of *Transylvania*, for the space of 300 *English* miles, and 190 of the same miles in breadth. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It lyeth in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle *Parallels* of the 7. and 9. *Climates*, so that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, is but 15 houres and an half, and not above 16 houres in the parts most North: taking up all that tract of ground on the North side of *Danubius* possessed by the *Iazyges Metanastæ*, a *Sarmatian* people, and part also of *Panonnia Superior*, and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it passeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know that the *Romans* having made themselves Masters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the Diocese of *Illyricum Occidentale*: that is to say, *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Noricum*, and containing part of the *Higher Austria*, and the most Western parts of the present *Hungarie*, on the South side of the *Danow*. 2 *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eastern parts of *Hungarie* on the same side of the River. 3 *Valeria*, anciently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Stiria* or *Stiermark* in the Archdukedome of *Austria*. And 4 *Savia*, so called of the River *Savus*, anciently part of *Pannonia Inferior*, now called *Windesh-land*, one of the Provinces or Subdivisions of *Sclavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling with the *Roman* Empire, and this Countrie being fallen into the hands of other Masters, it took a new name from the Nations who possessed themselves of it, and was called *Hungaria*, *quasi Hunni-Avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Hunni* and *Avares*, two *Scythian* Nations, who either successively or conjunctly were possessed thereof; or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians*, mentioned by *Jornandes* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Countrie by the Emperour *Arnulph* to aid him in his war against *Suantobogius* King of the *Moravians*. This last I look on as most probable; the first as more probable then that of *Aventine* and others of our later Writers; who finding a poor Province in the most North-east point of the *Russian* Empire called *Jugra*; (and by them *Jugaria*) would have the name of *Hungarie* to be thence derived.

The people are strong of body, and rude of behaviour, respecting neither the *liberall Arts*, nor *mechanick* Trades. The greatest aspersion is the name of a *coward*, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of a *Turk*; after which they are priviledged to wear a feather, and by the number of their feathers to shew how many *Turks* they have slain in battell. They desire wars, and like no trade better, being naturally slothfull (like the *Irish*) and therefore best approve of that course of life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens labour, then take pains for their *living*. Extremely covetous; yet having rather desire then art to enrich themselves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingrosse all their trading, and manage such commodities as the Country yeeldeth: which is the cause (seconded by

by the oppreſſions of the *Turk* and the *Auſtrian* Princes under whom they are) that none of them riſe to any conſiderable wealth. And for ſuch as have eſtates in land they grow every day more poor then others. For though the *Females* be excluded from inheriting their fathers poſſeſſions (to whom they give no portion but new Cloaths on the wedding day) yet being the ſons do equally inherit the Eſtate (as ſuch who hold in *Gavelkinde* do here in *England*) it muſt needs be that by ſo many diviſions and ſubdiviſions, the greateſt patrimonie that is, will be brought to nothing. Both Sexes in the way of their education are inured to hardneſſe, not ſuffered to lie in beds till the night of their marriage.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt planted here in the time of *Stephen*, ſurnamed the *Saint*, the firſt King of this Country, invited thereunto by the ſpeciall means and procurement of the Emperour *Henry* the 2. giving him upon that condition his ſiſter *Giſla* in marriage; and through the preaching and induſtrie of *Albert* Archbiſhop of *Prague*, *anno* 1016. or thereabouts. Since which time *Chriſtianitie* hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and couragiouſly againſt the *Turks*) but broken into fractions and ſubdiviſions among themſelves, ſome pertinaciouſly adhering to the Church of *Rome*, ſome following the doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin*; and ſome, new fancies and opinions diſavowed by all the reſt: yet all theſe different parties doe agree in this to puniſh *adulterie* and *fornication* with no leſſe a puniſhment then death: the father forcing his daughter, the husband his wife, and the brother his ſiſters to the place of their *Execution*.

The language generally here ſpoken of is a kinde of *Sclavonian*, differing in *dialect* from the *Poles*: but in the parts adjoyning to *Germanie*, the *Dutch* is ſpoken; as the old *Iazygian* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*, the ancient ſeat of the *Iazyges Metanaſtæ*.

The ſoil is wonderfull fruitfull, yeelding corn and fruits in great abundance; the graſſe in ſome places (as in the Iſle of *Comara*) exceeding the height of a man: which doth breed ſuch a number of cattle, that this Country alone, is thought to be able to feed all *Europe* with fleſh. They yearly ſend into *Germany* and *Sclavonia*, 80000 Oxen: they have Deere, Partridge, Pheaſant in ſuch ſuperfluitie that any man that will may kill them; which in other places is utterly prohibited, theſe creatures being reſerved as game for *Gentlemen*. For at that great inſurrection of the *Boores* in *Germany* (before the end of which, 50000 of them were ſlain in fight) their chief demands were, that they might chooſe their own *Miniſters*. 2 That they might pay no *tythes* but of corn. 3 That they might be free from the power of *Magiſtrates*. 4 That wood, timber, and fewell might be common. 5 And eſpecially, That they might hunt and hauk in all times and places. The other commodities of the Countrie are Gold, Silver, (whereof they have ſome very rich *veins*; as alſo of Tin, Lead, Iron,) good ſtore of Fiſh, Copper, Wine, this laſt as good as that of *Candie*.

The worthieſt Scholar that ever this Kingdome produced, was S. *Hierome*, a worthy Father of the *Latine* Church. born in *Stridon*. The moſt worthy of all their Souldiers, were *Johannes Huniades*, who ſo valiantly reſiſted the incurſions of the *Turks*, and ſlew of them 50000 at the battle at *Maxon*. And 2. *Matthias Corvinus*, his ſonne, afterward King of *Hungary*, of whom thus *Adrian* out of a Poet:

——*Patriæ decus, unica ſtirpis*
Gloria, Pannonicæ *cædis fortiſſimus ultor*.

His Countries pride, the glory of his race,
Revenger of th' *Hungarians* late diſgrace.

The principall Rivers are 1 *Danubius*, ſpoken of before, when we were in *Germanie*. 2 *Savus*; which riſing in *Carniola*; 3 *Dravus*, which riſing in *Carinthia*; and 4 *Tibiſcus*, which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountains, pay their tribute to *Danubius*: of which *Tibiſcus* the *Hungarians* uſe to ſay, that two parts are *water* and the third *fiſh*. Beſides which and ſome others of inferiour note, there is the famous *Lake* called *Balaton* (by the *Dutch Platſe*) 40 *Italian* miles in length, but of breadth unequall: in ſome places being ten miles broad, and in ſome but three. There be alſo many *medicinall* waters, and more hot *Baths* then any one Country hath in *Europe*: ſome waters alſo of a ſtrange Nature; whereof ſome falling on the ground is turned to ſtone; others (about the Town of *Smolnice*) which falling into Ditches make a kinde of mud, out of which tried and melted they make very good Copper; and ſome again which flow in winter, and freeze in Summer; and near unto *Biſtrice* or *Menſol*, a ſpring or fountain out of which cometh a green water, whereof they make Solder for their Gold.

Principall Mountains of this Countrie are 1 *Carpatus*, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains ſpoken of before. 2 *Matzan*, near the Citie *Agria*, covered with rich vines. 3 *Erdol*, *omnium ampliſſimus*, the largeſt of the three, ſaith the *Atlas minor*. Which words if true, muſt needs be underſtood of the height of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without queſtion it comes ſhort of *Carpatus*.

The Country is commonly divided into the *Upper Hungarie*, and the *Lower*; the *Upper* lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the bounds and territories of the *Roman* Empire: the *Lower* lying on the South of that River, and comprehending all *Pannonia Inferior*, and part of *Superior*, two *Roman* Provinces. The *Upper* again ſubdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Counties or *Juridicall reſorts*, that is to ſay, 24 on the Weſt ſide of *Tibiſcus* (or the *Tiſſe*) and 8 on the Eaſt ſide

of it: the *Lower* (at the ſame time) into 18 onely: of which 10 were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*: and the other ſix betwixt the *Danow* and the *Savus*. But this *Diviſion* and the *Subdiviſions* depending on it, being ſince the coming in of the *Turkes* almoſt out of uſe; we will now look upon it as it ſtand divided at the preſent betwixt the Emperour as King of *Hungarie*, by a mixt title of *deſcent* and *election*; and the *Great Turk* as Lord of the moſt part of it by *Arms* and *conqueſt*, two parts of three at leaſt being forced into his poſſeſſion.

Chief places in the Emperours part, are 1 *Sabaria*, antiently the *Metropolis* of *Pannonia Superior*; the birth-place of St. *Martin* Biſhop of *Tours*; now of leſſe accompt; by the *Hungarians* called *Kimarorubath*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnits*. 2 *Stridon*, the *Sidron* of *Ptolemie*, in the confines of *Hungary* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A town of good repute till deſtroyed by the *Gothes*, but after made of more eſteem by the birth of St. *Hierom*, one of the foure chief Fathers of the *Latine* Church; and for all parts of humane learning, nothing inferiour to the beſt of the *Grecian* Sages. 3 *Agria*, a Biſhops See; 4 *Nitri*, a Biſhops See alſo on the River *Boch*; 5 *Sopran* (*Sopronium* in *Latine*) on the borders of *Auſtria*. 6 *Komara*, a ſtrong peece in an Iſland of the ſame name, made by the *Circling* of the *Danow*: oft-times attempted by the *Turk*, but in vaine at all times. 7 *Presburg*, on the edge of *Auſtria* alſo, but on the North ſide of the river, the *Carnuntum* of *Antoninus*: but by the moderne *Latines* called *Poſonium*: ſeated in a pleaſant healthfull countrey on the River *Lyet*, whoſe waters the *Danow* there receiveth, in the ſuburbs whereof on the top of an high Mountaine ſtandeth a goodly Caſtle, the ordinary reſidence of the Emperours as Kings of *Hungary*. For though it be a little City, and not very beautifull, yet being ſafe by the neighbourhood of *Auſtria*, it hath been made the *Metropolis* of this kingdome, ſince the loſſe of *Buda*. Before the wals hereof dyed Count *Dampierri*, one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in the wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. 8 *Gran*, by the *Latines* called *Strigonium*, took by the *Turks*, *anno* 1534. and loſt again, *anno* 1595. at what time Sir *Thomas Arundell* of *Wardour Caſtle* in *Wiltſhire*, carryed himſelfe ſo gallantly by forcing the Water-tower, and taking thence with his owne hands the *Turkiſh* Banner, that the Emperour *Rodulphus* created him a *Count of the Empire*, and King *James* afterwards made him Lord *Arundell* of *Wardour*. It is ſeated on the *Danow*, but oppoſite to the mouth of the *Gran*, which ariſing in the *Upper Hungary* doth there end its courſes, hence the name of *Gran*: honoured alſo, of long time, with the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the *Primate* of the kingdome. 9 *Kab*, on the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Kab*, coming out of the *Lower Hungary*, whence the modern *Dutch* name; by *Antonine* called *Arabon*, by the *French Jovarine*, by our preſent *Latiniſts Jaurinum*. Memorable heretofore for being the boundarie of the two *Pannonia's*, *Inferior*, and *Superior*, hereabouts divided: of late moſt principally for a ſtrong fortreſſe againſt the *Turkes*, by whom once taken *anno* 1594. but not long after againe recovered by the induſtrie of *Monſieur de Vandre-Court* a *French* Gentleman. 10. *Newſol*, or *Newhenſel*, a ſtrong town in the *higher Hungary*, not far from the ſpring head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621. proved fatall to that great Commander the Count of *Bucquoy*, who at the ſiege hereof (the Towne being then in rebellion againſt *Ferdinand* the ſecond Emperour and King of *Hungary*) loſt his life. For going privately to view ſome places of advantage for a generall aſſault, hee fell into an Ambuſh of *Hungarians*, who ſuddenly ſet upon him, diſcomfitted his ſmall party, killed firſt his horſe under him, and at laſt himſelfe, having in that skirmiſh received ſixteen wounds. Slain with him at the ſame time alſo *Torquato* an *Italian* Prince, Count *Verdugo* a *Spaniſh* Earl, and one of the *Gouragas* of the houſe of *Mantua*. 11 *Altenbourg*, 12 *Tockay*, both of them very ſtrong by nature, as 13 *Caſtell-Novo* is by the helps of Art.

Places of moſt importance in the *Turkes* poſſeſſion, are 1 *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Hoffen*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Curta* of *Ptolemie*, by others the *Abrincum* of *Antoninus*; and to have tooke the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the brother of *Attila*, ſaid to be the refounder of it; or from the *Budini* a *Scythian* people mentioned in *Herodotus*. Unevenly ſeated amongſt hils, on the ſouthern ſhore of the *Danow*, but in the moſt fruitfull part of all the Countrey; exceedingly well fortified, adorned with many buildings, both private and publick; and furniſhed with ſome *medicinall Bathes*, which owe much of their pomp and ſumptuouſneſſe to their new Maſters the *Turkes*, who tooke it from the *Chriſtians Auguſt* 20. *anno* 1526. *Solyman* the *Magnificent* then preſent at the taking of it. Before that time the *Seat Royall* of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief City of the Kingdome; as now the ſeat of the chief *Baſſa* or Lord Lievtenant for the *Grand Signeur*. 2 *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Stul-Weiſenburg*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Dravus*, ſtrongly but unwholeſomely ſeated in the midſt of an inacceſſible *mariſh* joined to the firm land by three broad *Cauſeys* blocked up at the ends with three great *Bulwarkes*; but for all the ſtrong ſituation of it taken by the *Turkes*, *an.* 1543. before that time, the uſuall place both for the *Coronation* and *interment* of the Kings of *Hungary*. 3 *Volve*, on the *Danow*, taken in the ſame year alſo. 4 *Fiefe-kirken*, in *Latine* called *Quinque Eccleſiæ*, from five Churches in it; a Biſhops See, conceived to be the *Tentiburgium* of *Antoninus*; tooke by the *Turkes*, *anno* 1566. and giving them a great command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is ſeated. 5 *Sirmiſch*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Saw*, or *Savus*, now noted for a vein of the beſt wines, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation at the preſent, though heretofore of moſt accompt in all this Province, the *Metropolis* (as I conceive) of *Pannonia inferior*; the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici*, before the diviſion of the Empire, honoured with the perſonall reſidence of many of the Emperours, and made in thoſe reſpects, the Stage of many great and memorable actions. For here *Vetranio*, or *Bretanio* as others call him, tooke on himſelfe the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperour

perour by the *Illyrian* ſouldiers, lying here in Garriſon; here being deſerted by his own ſouldiers, he ſubmitted himſelfe unto *Conſtantius* the ſon of *Conſtantine* the *Great*; here *Gratian* the Emperour ſonne of *Valentinian* the firſt was born: and finally here was held a Councell againſt *Photinus*, Biſhop of this City, who held that *CHRIST* had no exiſtence of God the Father, till he was conceived and born of the Virgin; which Tenent being contrary as well to that of the *Arian* as the *Orthodox* Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the ſaid *Conſtantius* (who was there in perſon) *an.* 356. 6 *Zigoth*, a ſtrong towne, ſituate in a mariſh ground on the North ſide of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *anno* 1566. who there ended his dayes, 7 *Kereſture*, nigh unto which *anno* 1596. *Mahomet* the third gave the *Chriſtians* ſo great an overthrow, that if hee had purſued his victory, it is thought that hee had finiſhed the conqueſt of *Hungarie*. 8 *Murſa*, upon the confluence of the *Dra* and the *Danow*, as remarkable in the ſtories of elder times; as 9 *Belgrade* on the confluence of the *Saw* and the *Danow*, hath been in the later. This laſt a town of divers names, firſt called *Taurunum*, or *Taurunum*, after *Alba Græca*, by the *Dutch* accordingly *Greichs Weſſenburg*, by the *French* and modern *Latiniſts*, *Belgrade* and *Belgradum*, from the beautifull ſituation of it, hemmed in upon the North with the *Danow*, on the Eaſt with the *Saw*; on the other ſides defended with ſtrong wals, deep ditches, and impregnable Ramparts; belonging antiently to the *Deſpots* of *Servia*, by whom conſigned over to *Sigiſmund* King of *Hungary*, as beſt able to keep it, the *Deſpots* being ſatisfied with lands and territories of a better value. The *Bulwark* heretofore of *Chriſtendome* againſt the *Turkes*, who received before it many great and notable repulſes, (of which the moſt memorable were thoſe of *Amurath* the ſecond and *Mahomet* ſurnamed the *Great*) taken at laſt to the great loſſe and ſhame of the *Chriſtian* world, not ſuccouring the defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *anno* 1520. Then on the North ſide of the River in the *upper Hungary*, there is 10 *Peſth*, over againſt *Buda*, on the River *Danow*. 11 *Vaccia*, on the ſame River, a Biſhops See. 12 *Colocza*, an Archbiſhops See, on the ſame River alſo. 13 *Zegedin*, on the Weſt ſide of the River *Tibiſcus*. 14 *Temeſwar*, on the Eaſt of that River towards *Tranſilvania*, the ordinary reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*. 15 *Gyula*, a ſtrong Town on the borders of *Tranſilvania*, betrayed by *Nicolas Keresken* Governour hereof in the laſt yeare of *Solyman*, on promiſe of ſome great reward. But *Selimus* the ſon of *Solyman* cauſed him to be put into a barrell ſtuck full of nailes, with the points turned inwards, and ſo to be tumbled up and down till hee (moſt miſerably) dyed: there being on the barrell this inſcription written; *viz. Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and treaſon*, Gyula *thou ſoldeſt for gold; if thou be not faithfull to Maximilian thy naturall* Lord, *neither wilt thou be true to me.* 16 *Singidon*, on the South of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the fields of *Maron*, memorable for the ſlaughter of 50000 *Turkes* ſlaine here in battell, under the fortunate conduct of *John Huniades*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this countrey on the North ſide of the *Danow*, and the Weſt of the *Tiſſe*, or *Tibiſcus*, were the *Iazyges Metanaſtæ*; and on the Eaſt ſide of the *Tiſe*, the *Daci*; known, but not conquered by the *Romans*: on the South of the *Danow* the *Pannones* (by ſome called the *Pæones*) ſubdivided into the *Azuli*, *Latovici*, *Werciani*, *Jaſſii*, *Oſeriates*, and ſome others inhabiting the Weſt parts thereof, or *Pannonia Superior*; and the *Ercuneales*, *Breuci*, *Araziſci*, and *Scordiſci* dwelling in the *Eaſtern* parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*: *anno V.C.* 719. L. *Corniſicius*, and *Sext. Pompeius*, being *Conſuls*; but many times rebelling and not fully ſubdued, till 40 yeares after, the inſurrection of *Bato* being then cruſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and there by the whole Province ſetled in obedience: divided firſt into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Savia* and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued till ſubdued by the *Hunnes*, a people not heard of in the time of the *Roman* greatneſſe, unleſſe we take them as ſome doe for the *Chuni* of *Ptolemie*. But being thoſe *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Baſtarnæ* and the *Roxolani*, on the Southweſt of *Boryſthenes*, I ſee not how to fit that dwelling unto the *Huns*: who were ſhut up within the *Fenns* of *Palus Mæotis*: and by all the writers of thoſe times accompted for a Nation not ſo much as heard of when they firſt ſet footing into *Europe*. Letting that paſſe therefore as an improbable and ill-grounded conjecture, certain it is that from the *Fenn-Countreys* of *Aſia* on the other ſide of the *Tanais*, they came firſt into *Europe*: living in their owne countrey a poore and miſerable life, till God thought fit to make uſe of them as a ſcourge to chaſtiſe the *Chriſtians* of the Weſt, then grown *luxurious* and almoſt *incorrigible* by too much felicity; and to that end miraculouſly opened them a paſſage, never found before. For having neither minde nor meaning to invade the *Roman* Empire, which poſſibly they had not heard of; nor knowing how to clear themſelves of that uncomfortable countrey in which they dwelt: it pleaſed the great diſpoſer of all things, by following an *Hart* or *Stagge* which they had in chaſe to ſhew them a ſafe paſſage into *Europe*, through the *Fenns* of *Mæotis*; which before they thought to be unpaſſable. The report made by thoſe Hunters at their coming back of the rich and pleaſant land which they had ſo fortunately diſcovered, invited the *chief* heads of their *Clans*, with all the ſeverall *Raſcalities* depending on them, to flock into *Europe*: into which they fell ſo ſuddenly and unexpectedly, that they forced the *Gothes*, then dwelling on the North ſide of the *Iſter*, to flie over that River, and ſupplicate to the Emperour *Valens* for new habitations. This hapened in the year 373. *Athanaricus* the ſecond, or *Ermanaricus* (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Gothes*, and *Balamir* Captain of *Huns*. Fleſhed with this victory *Balamir* or *Balhember* (as *Sigibert* cals him) takes the name of *King*, *anno* 386. or thereabouts: and following the courſe of the *Iſter* towards this *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at; found a great Armie raiſed on the other ſide of the

River, of purpoſe to encounter with him: commanded by *Detricus* Generall for the *Roman* Empire, and *Macrinus* (or *Matrinus*) commander in chief of the *Pannonians*. Both Generals, preſuming too much on the depth and wideneſſe of the River, and knowing well that the *Hunns* had neither boat nor ſhip to paſſe them over, betooke themſelves unto their reſt, with too much ſecurity. But the *Hunns* to the number of 100000 having croſſed the River upon *bladders*, fell on the *Quarters* of the *Romans*, whom they ſlew like ſheep. *Macrinus* after this fought two battels with them, in the firſt whereof he was victorious, there being loſt on both ſides about 30000 men, but in the ſecond being ſlaine, and his Army routed, the *Hunnes* poſſeſſed themſelves of both *Pannonias*; buying this victory with the loſſe of 40000 men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Bleda* and *Attila* his ſonnes ſucceeded, *anno* 436. and *Bleda* dying alſo in the yeare 450. left *Attila* ſole king of the *Hunnes*, that great *ſcourge* of the *Chriſtian* world: who having firſt waſted *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperour *Theodoſius* the ſecond, to buy his peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of gold, and an yeerly tribute. Invited afterwards by *Genſericus* king of the *Vandals* in *Afric* to war upon the *Gothes* of *Spain*, (out of which Countrey they had driven him) he forced his way through all the Nations betwixt him and *Gaul*; and beating down all the Towns and Fortreſſes on the River *Rhene* that ſide of the *Roman* Empire, entered that Province in the reign of the third *Valentinian*: divided at that time betwixt the *Romans*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Gothes* of *Spain*, diſcomfited by *Aetius*, and the kings of thoſe Nations then in league againſt him, in that famous battell nere *Tholouſe* ſpoken of before (with the loſſe of 180000 of his men) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where hee ſacked *Aquileia*, *Millaine*, *Vincentia*, *Pavie*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the ſpoil of *Rome*, by the interceſſion of Pope *Leo*: committing in all places ſuch unſpeakable cruelties, that he was alwayes after called (as he ſtyled himſelfe) *Malleus orbis* & *Flagellum dei*. Returning home he picked a quarrell with *Marcianus* the Eaſtern Emperour, as if the tribute promiſed him by *Theodoſius* had not been well paid. But being pacified for the preſent, and mindefull of his former project upon the *Gothes*, he reſolved once againe to try his fortune with that people, and was againe defeated by them under the conduct of *Thoriſmund*, the third King of the *Viſigothes*, or *Gothes* of *Spain*, and ſo returned ingloriouſly to his countrey, Choaked after with his own bloud, violently breaking out at his noſethrils, on his wedding night; he left *Pannonia* to his ſons named *Hernac*, *Aladurius*, and *Chaba*: who diſagreeing amongſt themſelves about the kingdome, gave an advantage to the *Gothes*, then poſſeſſed of *Dacia*; to make themſelves maſters of this alſo, ſcarce thorough warm in their new eſtates, when ſent by *Zeno* the Emperour into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer* where they finally ſetled. After this time we hear no more of the *Gothes* in *Pannonia*; or any where of the *Hunnes* at all, unleſſe acting under the *Avares*, or joining with them in the name of *Hunn-Avaria*, as ſome think they did.

The Countrey being thus left to the next *Invader*, was preſently poſſeſſed by the *Longobards*, ſaid to be originally of *Scandia*, and there called *Winnili*, (and of the *Winniloth* in *Scandia*, *Jornandes* ſpeaketh) afterwards *ob longas barbas*, *Longobardi*. But concerning this laſt name, take along with you this *old wives tale* recited, but not approved of by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals* warring upon the *Winnili*, went unto *Goddan* (he ſhould rather have ſaid *Woden*) to ſue for the victory: which the *Winnili* hearing, wrought by countermine; and ſent *Gambata* the mother of their King *Aiou*, on the like buſineſſe to *Frea Goddans* wife. So it was, that *Goddan* had promiſed the *Vandals*, that they ſhould be victorious, whom he ſaw firſt in the morning: whereupon *Frea* willing to pleaſe *Gambata*, and not loving, as it ſeemeth, the ſight of men, gave order, that all the women of the *Winnili*, parting their hair, bringing one halfe over one cheek, the other over the other, and tying both under their chin, ſhould appear betimes before the window the next morning. This they did, and ſhe ſhewing them to her husband, he demanded of her, *Qui ſunt iſti Longobardi?* Hence the occaſion of the name. And like enough they might be called ſo from the length of their beards; though otherwiſe the whole tale be vain and fooliſh. Compelled by ſcarcity of victuals to ſeek new habitations, they ſeiſed firſt on the Iſland *Rugia*, and the adjacent Countries; ſetled about the time of *Cornelius Tacitus* in thoſe parts of *Germany*, which now make up the Biſhopricks of *Meydburg* and *Halberſtat*. Afterwards finding that countrey too narrow for them, they left their dwellings there, and fel next upon ſome parts of *Poland*; next on this *Pannonia*: and at laſt having tarryed in *Pannonia* 42 years or thereabouts, at the ſolicitation of *Narſes* (provoked by many indignities from the Empreſſe *Sophia* the wife of *Juſtinus* the ſecond) *anno* 568. under the leading of their King *Alboinus*, they went into *Italy*, and there fixt their kingdom, at the end of 200 yeares overthrown by the power of *Charles* the Great, the moſt mighty Monarch of the Weſt. Of their kings before their coming into this countrey, I ſhall only make mention of *Lamiſſus*, their third king, and of him this ſtory. *Agilmund* the ſecond King of the *Lombards*, one morning went a hunting. As he was riding by a fiſh-pond, he ſpyed ſeven children ſprawling for life, which one, as ſaith *Paulus Diaconus*, (it may be many harlots) had been delivered of, and moſt barbarouſly thrown into the water. The King amazed at this *ſpectacle*, put his *bore-ſpeare* or hunting-pole among them. One of the children hand-faſted the ſpear, and the King ſoftly drawing back his hand, wafted the child to the ſhore. This boy he named *Lamiſſus*, from *Lama*, which in their language ſignifieth a *fiſh-pond*. He was in the Kings Court carefully brought up, where there appeared in him ſuch tokens of vertue and courage, that after the death of *Agilmond*, he was by the *Lombards* choſen to ſucceed him. This *Lamiſſus* together with his predeceſſours, and ſucceſſours, we finde thus recorded.

The

The *LONGOBARDIAN* KINGS.

A.C.			A.C.			A.C.		
383	1	*Aiou*, 10	473	6	*Godehoc*, 12	525	11	*Adoinus*, who first brought the *Longobards* into *Hungarie*, anno 1526.
393	2	*Agilmond*, 33	485	7	*Dophon*, vel, *Claffo*, 5			
426	3	*Lamiſſus*, 3	490	8	*Thamus*, 10			
429	4	*Labe*, vel, *Lethe*, 40	500	9	*Vacon*, 18			
469	5	*Hildehoc*, 4	518	10	*Valcharius*, 7	543	12	*Alboinus*, who in the year 568. by the

ſolicitation of *Narſes* went into *Italy*, and erected there the *Longobardian* Kingdome; which 206 years after was deſtroyed by the puiſſance of *Charles* the Great.

The *Hiſtory* of this people is epitomized by *Du Bartas* thus:

The *Lombard* ſtrong who was in *Scowland* nurſt,
On *Rugeland* and *Livonia* ſeiſed firſt.
Then having well reveng'd on the *Bulgarian*
The death of *Agilmond*; the bold *Barbarian*
Surpriſed *Poland*: thence anon he preſſes
In *Danows* ſtreams to rinſe his amber treſſes.
When he ſtraight after had ſurrendred
The double-named *Iſters* flowry bed,
To ſcarre-fac'd *Hunnes*: he hunteth furiouſly
The reſt of *Gaules* from wealthy *Inſubrie*.
There reigns 200 years, triumphing ſo,
That Royall *Teſin* might compare with *Po*:
Which after fell in *Frenchmens* hands again,
Wonne by the ſword of worthy *Charlemain*.

The *Longobards* having thus left the Stage the *Avares* entred. Some ſay the *Avarini* of *Ptolemie*, a *Sarmatian* people, but moſt probably, (as *Nicetas*) a people of *Scythia*, inhabiting about *Palus Mæotis*. They firſt began to ſtirre in the reign of *Tiberius* the 2. (driven by the *Turks* their next neighbours to paſſe further Weſtwards) and gave that Emperours forces a great overthrow at the mouth of *Danubius*. *Tiberius* notwithſtanding did ſomewhat quiet them: but he being dead they took heart again, and with great courage warred upon *Mauritius*, his next ſucceſſour. Their King at that time called *Caganus*, we may Engliſh it *Cham*; as not being the proper name of any one, but the common *Attribute* of all their *Chiefs*. This *Caganus* made his firſt wars upon the *Turks*, which people were about that time firſt made known to the Inhabitants of *Europe*; and with the help of the remainder of the *Hunnes*, invaded and poſſeſſed *Pannonia*, vanquiſhing both the Emperours Forces and the *Gothes* and *Gepidæ*, who had ſtill kept ſome footing in it, and on the departure of the *Lombards* were of no ſmall power; the name of *Gothes* being ſwallowed up in that of the *Gepidæ*, though not quite extinct. After this blow, *Mauritius* raiſed a ſecond war, but more with an intent to revenge himſelf on his own ſouldiers, which had formerly offended him, then with hope of prevailing againſt the enemy; *Comentiolus*, according to the Emperours directions, betrayeth his Army, 12000 of them were ſlain, and the reſt taken. *Caganus* an heroick and mercifull Conquerour, offers to ranſome them for 8*s*. 6*d*. a peece, (for ſo much was that *nummus*, or νόμισμα which he demanded for them.) When the Emperour, as much loving his gold as hating his Souldiers, had denyed that condition, he offered them all for one *nummus*, and after for half a one; but being alſo here unſatisfied, he put them all to the ſword. For this cauſe the reſt of his Souldiers not long after made *Phocas* one of the *Centurions* Emperour; and he moſt barbarouſly ſtewed the *Emperour* in his own broath, putting him, his wife, friends, and children to the ſword. After this we find mention of them in the time of *Phocas* and *Heraclius*, forraging *Thrace* to the very walls of *Conſtantinople*; afterwards ſetled in *Pannonia*, and part of *Noricum*, containing now the *Upper Hungarie*, and ſome part of *Auſtria*, divided from the *Boiarians* by the River *Ems*. Poſſeſſed hereof till the time of *Charls* the *Great*, by whom after a war of eight years, they were utterly ſubdued and driven out of theſe parts, their Countrie being peopled with new *Dutch* Colonies, the remainders of them forced to betake themſelves into *Tranſylvania*, or that part of *Hungarie* which lyeth beyond the river *Tibiſcus*, where ſubject for a time to *Suantobogius* King of the *Moraviants*, in whoſe overthrow by the *Hungarians* they were ſo broken, that their name was never after heard of.

And ſo we come to the *Hungarians*, the laſt and principall *Actors* on the *Stage* of this Kingdome, the givers of the preſent name: before whoſe coming into this Countrie, it had no other name then that of *Pannonia*, for ought I can finde, in any Authors of thoſe times. A *Scythian* people, as the *Huns*, and *Avares* were, by *Jornandes* called the *Hungari*; firſt known in *Europe* by their acts in the time of the Emperour *Arnulphus*, when wandring in *Sarmatia Europæa* without any certain abode, they were by

by him called into this Countrie againſt *Suantobogius* King of the *Moravians* before mentioned, from whom they took *Tranſylvania*, and ſo much of the *modern Hungarie* as lyeth on both ſides of *Tibiſcus*, inhabited at that time by the *Sclaves*, and ſome ſcattered remnants of the *Avares*, whom they killed up or forced to ſeek new *habitations*, planting themſelves in thoſe places which they took from them; now the *Upper Hungarie*. In the right of *Lewis* the 4. ſucceſſour to *Arnulphus*, they paſſed over the *Danow* and ſubdued *Pannonia*, diſmembring it from the Empire and name of *Germanie*: after that ranging with unmercifull cruelty over all *Germanie*, *Italie*, *Greece*, *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*: ſtill broken by the forces of the *Dutch* Emperours, and mollified by the ſoftneſſe of the *Chriſtian* Religion, they became more quiet. Their Government at the firſt was under Dukes; *Stephen* the 4. Duke on his receiving of the Goſpell, being honoured with the title of King; enjoyed by his ſucceſſours to this very day. In the time of *Ladiſlaus* ſurnamed the *Saint*, *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* were added to the Crown of *Hungarie*, bequeathed to him by his ſiſter *Zelomira*, the widow of the laſt King. In that of *Bela* the 4. the *Tartarians* to the number of 500000 fighting men brake into this Country, and like a violent whirlwinde carryed all before them; *anno* 1248. tyrannizing here for 3 years ſpace, committing mercileſſe maſſacres, and making horrible ſpoils whereſoever they came. In that of *Stephen* the 4. *Myſia*, and *Bulgaria* were made tributarie. By the daughters of *Bela* and *Stephen*, both the 4. of thoſe names, the houſes of *Naples* and *Bohemia* came to claim the Kingdome of *Hungarie*; as *Lewis* the 1. by *Elizabeth* his mother, ſiſter of *Caſimir* the 2. did the Kingdome of *Poland*. The reſt of their affairs ſhall be briefly touched at in the following Catalogue of

The DUKES and KINGS of *HUNGARIE.*

A.Ch.		
	1	*Cuſala*, the firſt Duke (or Captain) of the *Hungari*, ſubdued *Tranſylvania*, and the *Upper Hungarie*, and paſſed over the *Danow*, ſlain in his wars againſt the *Dutch* then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*.
	2	*Toxus*, ſubdued *Pannonia*, or the *Lower Hungarie*.
	3	*Geiſa*, ſon of *Toxus*.
1000	4	*Stephen* the fourth Duke and firſt King of *Hungarie*.
1039	5	*Peter*, ſurnamed the *Alman*, nephew of *Stephen*, depoſed by *Andrew* and *Bela*, ſons of *Ladiſlaus* ſon of *Geiſa* the 1. and brother of *Stephen* the firſt King.
1047	6	*Andrew* eldeſt ſon of that *Ladiſlaus*.
1059	7	*Bela*, the brother of *Andrew*.
1062	8	*Solomon*, the ſon of *Andrew*, expelled his Kingdome by
1075	9	*Geiſa* II. ſon of *Bela*.
1078	10	*Ladiſlaus*, ſurnamed the *Saint*, brother of *Geiſa* the 2.
1096	11	*Coloman*, ſon of *Geiſa* the 2.
1114	12	*Stephen* II. ſon of *Coloman*.
1132	13	*Bela* II. nephew of *Geiſa* the 2. by his ſon *Almus*.
1142	14	*Geiſa* III. ſon of *Bela* the 2.
1162	15	*Stephen* III. ſon of *Geiſa* the 3.
1172	16	*Bela* III. brother of *Stephen* the 3.
1191	17	*Emericus* ſon of *Bela* the 3.
1201	18	*Ladiſlaus* II. ſon of *Emericus*, reigned but 6 months, being ſlain by treaſon, very young, and without iſſue.
1201	19	*Andrew* II. ſon of *Bela* the 3. and brother of *Emericus*.
1236	20	*Bela* IV. ſon of *Andrew* the 2.
1271	21	*Stephen* IV. ſon of *Bela* the 4.
1273	22	*Ladiſlaus* III. ſon of *Stephen* the 4.
1290	23	*Andrew* III. nephew to *Bela* the 4. by his brother *Stephen*.
1302	24	*Charles*, ſurnamed *Martel*, ſon of *Charles* King of *Naples* by *Marie* daughter to *Stephen* the 4. againſt whom was choſen *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, ſon of King *Wenceſlaus* the 2. and *Anne* his wife, daughter of *Bela* the 4. and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, deſcended from *Elizabeth*, another of the daughters of *Bela* the 4. choſen alſo by a faction againſt *Wenceſlaus*: but *Wenceſlaus* ſurrendring his claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after forced to renounce his title; *Charles Martell* remained King of the whole.
1343	25	*Ludovicus*, nephew to *Charles Martell* by his ſon *Carlcobert*, ſucceeded King of *Poland* alſo, in right of *Elizabeth* his mother, ſiſter of *Caſimir* the 2.
1383	26	*Charls* II. King of *Naples*, deſcended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Marie* daughter of *Stephen* the 4. before mentioned; by their ſon *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger brothers of *Charles Martell*, poiſoned after a ſhort reign by the Widow of the former King to make way for her daughter to the Crown.
1387	27	*Sigiſmund* Emperour, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Luxembourg*; in right of *Marie* his wife, eldeſt

eldeſt daughter of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, her younger ſiſter *Eduigis* being Queen of *Poland*.

1438 28 *Albert* of *Auſtria*, Emperour and King of *Hungarie*, and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his wife the daughter of *Sigiſmund*.

1440 29 *Ladiſlaus*, or *Vladiſlaus* ſon of *Jagello* King of *Poland* in the minoritie of *Ladiſlaus* the ſon of *Albert*, choſen King of *Hungarie*, unfortunately ſlain at the battle of *Varna*, with 30000 of his people: and perhaps his perjury might deſerve it. For having made and ſworne a truce with the *Turke*; the Popes *Legate* upon a ſeeming advantage, abſolved him of his oath, and drew him into the field. At the beginning the *Chriſtians* had the better. But at the laſt *Amurath* the 2. againſt whom they fought, lifting up his eyes to heaven, and deſiring *Chriſt* to look upon the *perfidious dealing wherewith his followers had diſhonoured him*: re-encouraged his men, and ſo got the victorie.

1444 30 *Ladiſlaus* V. King of *Bohemia*, the ſon of *Albert* by *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Sigiſmund* and *Mary*.

1458 31 *Matthias Corvinus*, ſon of the famous *Huniades*, after the death of *Ladiſlaus* the 5. choſen King of *Hungarie*.

1491 32 *Vladiſlaus* II. or *Ladiſlaus* VI. ſon of *Caſimir* the 4. of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the daughter of *Albert*, ſucceeded in the Kingdoms of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, his 3 younger brothers ſucceſſively in that of *Poland*.

1517 33 *Ludovicus* II. King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, both born and dead before the ordinary courſe of nature: in the 21 year of his age, and the 10. of his reign, unfortunately drawn into the field to encounter *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, one of the hardieſt Captains in his time. The battle was fought at a Village called *Mogachz* or *Mugace*, juſt betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*: in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were ſlain, and the young King drowned in the flight. A moſt lamentable diſcomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Sepuſio Vaivod*, or Governour of *Tranſylvania*, was by the States choſen King of of *Hungarie*. But *Ferdinand* Archduke of *Auſtria*, and brother unto *Charles* the 5. challenged the Kingdome in right of *Anne* his wife, daughter and ſiſter to *Vladiſlaus* and *Lewis* King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*. On this pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his competitour, who to recover his right, called *Solyman* the *Magnificent* into the Country, who took ſo faſt footing in it, that his ſucceſſours could never ſince be removed.

1527 34 *John de Sepuſio*, Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, choſen King upon the death of *Ludovicus* II. outed by *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, reſtored by *Solyman* the great *Turk*, died *anno* 1540.

1540 35 *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, elected King of *Bohemia* in reſpect to the Lady *Anne* his wife, ſiſter of *Ludovicus* the 2. *anno* 1527. did in the ſame right lay claim to the Crown of *Hungarie*; choſen to which by a partie prepared for him: he was alwayes in contention with *John de Sepuſio*; each of them acknowledged King by their ſeverall factions: but by both ſides received on the death of *John*.

1562 36 *Maximilian* Emperour, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Anſtria*, ſon of *Ferdinand*.

1572 37 *Rodolphus* Emperour, &c. ſon of *Maximilian*.

1608 38 *Matthias*, brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperour.

1618 39 *Ferdinand* II. of *Gratz*, next heir unto *Matthias* of the houſe of *Auſtria*, afterwards Emperour &c. againſt whom a partie of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Tranſylvania*, whom they elected for their King, intending (as they ſaid) to crown him alſo. But the affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperours ſide, *Gabor* relinquiſhed his pretentions and hearkned to a peace betwixt them.

1625 40 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2. choſen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627. King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceeding after him in the Empire and now living, *anno* 1648.

This Kingdome doth pretend it ſelf to be *Elective*, and to have ſpeciall *priviledges* indulged them by their former Princes; and anciently indeed it was ſo in both reſpects, the laſt eſpecially: King *Andrew* giving authoritie to his *Prelates*, *Peers*, and other people, *Ut ſine nota alicujus infidelitatis*, &c. that without any imputation of diſloyaltie, they might contradict, oppoſe, and reſiſt their King if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and ſanctions. But both their libertie of *Elections*, and pretence of *Priviledges* have been ſo ſhaken and reſtrained by their Kings of the houſe of *Auſtria*, that the *Elections* are become a matter of formalitie only, their *Priviledges* depending wholly on the Princes pleaſure: now grown too potent for them to contend withall, unleſs they ſhould betray their Country into the hands of the *Turk*. To which ſome of them have expreſſed ſome ſtrong inclinations, the oppreſſions laid upon them by the *Auſtrian* familie, being deemed unſufferable.

The forces of this Kingdome when it was entire, may beſt be ſeen by thoſe great Armies which they have brought into the field againſt the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being ſince ſubdued, that which remains muſt not be thought able to anſwer the proportion of former times; though they have done more then could reaſonably be expected from it. For at the battell of *Kereſture*, *anno* 1596.

ther:

there were 6000 *Hungarian* horſe, and 10000 foot, of this Nation only; beſides thoſe of *Germanie* and *Tranſylvania*: and the next year, notwithſtanding the diſcomfiture of that Armie, they raiſed no leſſe then 20000 horſe and foot, on the noiſe of ſome preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true; their *foot* are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince then unto the people: who can but bring their bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their *horſe*, (whom they call *Heiducks*) maintained in continuall readineſſe at the charge of the Nobilitie and principall Gentrie; they are next Couſins to the *Coſacques*, almoſt as miſchievous as they, and hold as ſtrict intelligence with the *Turks* as thoſe doe with the *Tartars*.

The chief *Revenues* of this Kingdome come from the *ſilver mines*, out of which is yearly raiſed about a million and an halfe of *Guldens*. *Maximilian* the 2. made it up two millions by ſeizing on the lands of *Cathedrall* and *Collegiate* Churches, and aſſigning annuall penſions to the Biſhops, Canons, and other Religious perſons. Moſt of which ſumme comes clearly to the Emperours *Cofers*, the *Preſidiary* Souldiers being paid with *Contribution* money raiſed upon the Countrie: and the Lieutenant Generall, whoſe entertainment comes to 30000 *Dollars* yearly, detrayed upon their purſes alſo.

The chief *Order* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdome was that of the *Dragon*, inſtituted by *Sigiſmund* Emperour and King hereof, at ſuch time as by the Councell of *Conſtance*, againſt *John* of *Hus* and *Hierome* of *Prague*, and by the ſharpneſſe of his ſword proved upon their followers, he had caſt down (as he conceived) the *Dragon* of *Hereſie* and *Schiſme*. But the device proved of no long continuance, expiring almoſt with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the *Hunn*, once the King of this Countrie by the name of *Pannonia*, are ſaid to have been *Gules*, a Falcon diſplayed *Or*, membred and crowned *Argent*. But the Arms of the Kingdome at this time, are Barre-wiſe of 8 pieces *Gules* and *Argent*.

There are in *HUNGARIE*

Archbiſhops 2 Biſhops 13.

And ſo much for *HUNGARIE*.

OF

OF SCLAVONIA.

SCLAVONIA is bounded on the East with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*, from which parted by the River *Drinus*, and a line drawne from thence unto the *Adriatick*; on the West with *Carniola* in *Germanie* and *Histria*, in the *Signeurie* of *Venice*, from which last divided by the River *Arsia*; on the North with *Hungarie*, on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Sclaves* or *Sclavi* a *Dalmatian* people, of whom more anon.

It containes in length from *Arsia*, to the River *Drinus*, according to *Plinies* computation 800 *Italian* miles; the greatest breadth being 325 of the same miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more then 480 miles, who may be reconciled with *Plinie*, by supposing this, that these last measure in a strait and direct line from River to River; and that *Pliny* coasted by the Creekes and reaches of the *Adriatick*. Situate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle *Parallels* of the sixth and seventh *Climates*: so that the longest day in summer is about 15 houres and an halfe.

The Countrie is generally fruitfull of all those commodities, which are found in *Italy*, to which little inferiour: yeelding not onely *wine* and oyle in very good plenty, but good store of Cattell, and of wilde beasts of pleasure no want at all; some rich veins also of *gold* and *silver*. The northern parts are mountainous, cold, for the most part lying under snowes, not capable of *wine*, or any the like productions which require much heat. But even these mountainous parts afford very good pasturage, and breed a wealthy race of sheep which bring forth young twice a yeare and are shorn four times. Nor doth the Sea coasts come behinde in advancing the profit of the people, not onely yeelding store of fish, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The people are courageous, proud, stubborn and untractable, of strong bodies, and able constitutions, fit for workes of drudgerie, and so employed by the *Venetians*, when first brought under their command: who using them in all servile offices both at home and abroad, occasioned the neighbouring Nations to call their *Villaines* or *Bond-servants*, as they of *Venice* did, by the name of *Sclaves*; that being originally as to this people, the name not of their condition, but of their Ancestors and Countrey.

The *Christian* faith was first here planted, I mean in reference to this people, who doe now inhabit it, about the time of *Charles* the *Bald*, Emperour of the West, *anno* 877. *Sueropilus* being the first of their Kings who embraced the Gospell. But lying in the mid way of *Greece* and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the *Greeke* Church are both allowed of: that of the *Greeke* being as prevalent in the East parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Western: The *Turkish* and *Mahometan* prevailing in those Towns and Territories under their obedience. But though they bee not of one *Religion*, they are all of one *Language*; which is the old *Sarmatian* (or *Sclavonian*) tongue, generally spoken in the Empire of *Russia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, some part of *Hungary*, *Histria*, *Sclavonia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, (both in *Asia*) and by

all

Windiſch-land.

all the Captaines, Officers, and other ſouldiers of the *Turkiſh* Empire: the language generally ſpreading over all thoſe Countreys, which either were *Sarmatian* in their firſt originall, or made theirs by conqueſt under the united name of *Sclaves*, or otherwiſe intermixt with them by the neceſſity of commerce and trade, or diſpatch of their common buſineſſes. Inſomuch as taking in the ſubdiviſions of the Provinces and Countreys before ſpecified, it is affirmed by *Geſner* a right learned man that there are no fewer then 60 Nations which have the *Sclavonian* tongue for their *Vulgar* language.

Chief Mountaines in this Countrey are thoſe called *Scardonici* (from *Scardona*, one of the beſt towns of *Illyria*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the midſt, and extending along the Coaſts therof; by *Ptolemie* called *Ardium*. Of Rivers thoſe of ſpecial note amongſt the Antients, were 1 *Titius*, now *Varietha*, ſeparating *Illyria* from *Dalmatia*; 2 *Arſia*, now *Arſa*, the utmoſt bound upon the Weſt; which as 3 *Drinus* is upon the Eaſt: of which the firſt falleth into that Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Golfo di Quevero*, (*Sinus Flanaticus* by the Antients) the other into the *Saw* or *Savus*, ſomewhat weſt of *Belgrade*. 4 *Narſo*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurus*.

The Boundaries and *Landmarkes* being thus ſet out, I ſhould proceed to the diviſion of the countrey as now it ſtandeth. But I muſt firſt look on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*: in whoſe time that part of the whole Province which lay from the whole River *Arſia* to the *Titius*, was named *Liburnia*, and *Illyris*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinus* was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Illyrians* being the ſtouter and more warlike people, and ſuch as created greateſt troubles to the *Romans*; it pleaſed the Conquerours when they had fully ſubdued both Nations, to call the whole countrey by the name of *Illyricum*: and not ſo onely, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* excepted) which lay between the *Alpes* and the *Euxine* Sea; the *Adriatick* and the *Danow*: for ſo farre the Juriſdiction of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Illyricum*, did at firſt extend. *Huic Præfecto* (ſaith *Zoſimus*) Conſtantinus *ejus inſtitutor Macedones attribuit, Theſſalos, Cretenſes, Græciam, & circumjacentes inſulas, Epirum utranque, Illyricos, Dacos, Triballos*, & *Pannonios, Valeriam uſque & Myſiam ſuperiorem*. And that all theſe did then paſſe by the name of *Illyricum*, appeareth as well by that of *Pollio* in the life of *Claudius* the ſecond, expreſſely ſaying *Illyricum, Thracas, Myſos, Dacos, Dalmatias & Pannonias continebat*; as by that of *Socrates* the Hiſtorian, who *lib.* 32. *cap.* 20. calleth *Sirmium* the chief town of *Pannonia Inferior*, & lib. 5. cap. 6. *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Macedon, urbes Illyricas*, or *Illyrian* Cities. By which accompt *Illyricum* in the largeſt extent of that name contained no leſſe then 18 Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; that is to ſay, 1 *Noricum Mediterraneum*, 2 *Noricum Ripenſe*, 3 *Pannonia Superior*, 4 *Pannonia Inferior*, 5 *Valeria*, 6 *Savia*, 7 *Dalmatia*, 8 *Mœſia ſuperior*, 9 *Dardania*, 10 *Dacia Mediterranea*, 11 *Dacia, Ripenſis*, 12 *Macedonia*, 13 *Theſſaly*, 14 *Achaia*, 15 *Crete*, 16 *Epirus Vetus*, 17 *Epirus Nova*, and 18 *Prevelitana*. Theſe 18 Provinces being caſt or made up into three *Dioceſes, viz.* the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum*, ſpecially ſo called, containing the ſeven firſt; 2 the *Dioceſe* of *Macedon*, containing the ſeven laſt; and 3 the *Dioceſe* of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four: were governed by the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, who had firſt his chief ſeat and reſidence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the diviſion of the Empire betwixt the ſonnes of *Theodoſius* the *Great*, into the *Eaſtern* and the *Weſtern*: the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum* ſpecially ſo called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the *Weſtern* Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*, and thereupon the ſeat or reſidence of the *Prætorio Præfectus* for *Illyricum*, removed from *Sirmium* unto *Theſſalonica*. So that now we are to looke upon *Illyricum* in a ſtricter notion, as a *Dioceſe* of the *Weſtern* Empirre, containing the ſeven Provinces before ſpecified, whereof both *Noricums*, both *Pannonias*, and *Valeria* (if at leaſt *Stiermarch* be that *Valeria*, as ſome ſay it is) have been deſcribed already in their proper places. There now remaine onely *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be ſpoken of: the firſt containing all thoſe parts of this countrey lying on both ſides of the *Savus* (whence it had the names); the laſt, thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the *Sea*, known by the antient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyris* properly ſo called, being added to it. But as *new Lords* give *new Laws*, ſo they give *new names*. The countrey being divided by the *Sclavi* into two Kingdomes, *viz.* of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*: of which the firſt contained the Province of *Savia*, the laſt took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia* bounded as before, but keeping the name of *Sclavonia* to it ſelfe alone, being indeed the onely Province in which the name and memory of the *Sclavi*, is retained amongſt us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at laſt it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*: we finde it ſubdivided into theſe ſix parts; that is to ſay 1 *Windiſchland*, 2 *Croatia*, 3 *Boſnia*, 4 *Dalmatia*, 5 *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6 the *Sclavonian Iſlands*.

1 *WINDISCHLAND.*

WINDISCHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with part of the *Lower Hungary*, from which ſeparated by a line drawne from St. *Nicolas* near the River *Dravus* to the town of *Polega*, ſtanding on a little River which fals into the *Savus* on the Weſt with *Carniola*, or *Krain*, a Province of the Archdukedome of *Auſtria*: on the North with the River *Dravus*, on the South with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch* as the *Land* or Countrie of the *Winithi*, or *Vendi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, whom generally they call by the name of *Windiſch*: and antiently for ſo much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus* accounted part of *Pannonia Inferior*, as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*, till conquered by the *Sclaves*, and laid unto their poſſeſſions; from whom named *Windiſchland*, as before.

Places

Places of moſt importance in it are 1 *Windiſch-gretts*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, the *Vinundria* and *Vindemana* of the Antients. 2 *Sagona*, neere unto the *Savus*. 3 *Gradiska* on the South, and 4 *Zagabria*, on the North of the ſame River: from which laſt a great part of this Countrey is called *Comitatus Zagabrienſis*. 5 *Novigrod*, on the *Savus* alſo, but more neere to *Germany*. 6 *Petrowya*, ſituate at the foot of the mountaines, which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*, and divide *Hungary* from *Sclavonia*. 7 *Siſſeg*, or *Siſſakhen*, (the *Siſſia* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus*) ſituate on the *Saw*, over againſt *Zagabria*, where it receiveth the river *Zulp*, famous for the notable reſiſtance which the *Turks* there found, *anno* 1593. Who hoping by the conqueſt of this Province to open a free paſſage into *Germany*, entred it with a puiſſant Army, (having in their way taken the Caſtle of *Oſtrowits* and the ſtrong Town of *Wihits* in *Croatia*) and ſate down very ſtrongly intrenched before this Town. But the town held it out moſt gallantly againſt all their batteries and aſſaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to ſuccour them; by whom 8000 of the *Turkes* were ſlaine in the place, and moſt of the reſt drowned in the River *Savus*, as they fled haſtily, and (through that great haſt) blindely from the ſword of the Conquerour. *Croatia.*

This Province for the moſt part is under the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged; thoſe parts of it which lie next to *Hungary*, on the North and Eaſt, groaning under the tyranny and bondage of the *Turkiſh* Garriſons.

2 CROATIA.

CROATIA is bounded on the North with *Windiſchland*, from which parted by the River *Una*, or *Wana*; on the Eaſt with *Boſnia*; on the South with *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*; on the Weſt with *Carniola*. The reaſon of the name I finde not amongſt my Authours; but onely that it was impoſed by the *Sclaves* at their firſt coming hither: who comprehended under this name all the Inland parts of *Sclavonia*, from the mountain *Ardium* to *Pannonia*, including *Boſnia* and *Windiſchland*, though diſtinguiſhed afterwards.

The Countrey for the moſt part cold, mountainous and hilly, overſpread by the branches of the Mountaines *Bebii* ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*; yet reaſonably fruitfull, ſtored with all neceſſarie proviſions for the life of man: and would yeeld more increaſe and profit both to Lord and Tenant, were it not for the ill neighbourhood of the *Turk*, to whoſe tyranny and oppreſſions it hath been, and is ſtill expoſed. The people for the generall are held to be good ſouldiers, mentioned in our modern ſtories by the name of *Crabats*.

Chief Townes in it are 1 *Maſch* or *Moſth*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Aleta* of the Antients. 2 *Oſtrowits*, a ſtrong Fort on the ſame Frontire; 3 *Wihits*, by the *Dutch* called *Bighen*, by the Antients *Funium*, the *Metropolis* or chief Town of the Countrey, encompaſſed like an Iſland by the River *Una*, and fortified with ſtrong works by the help of Art: but taken by the *Turk* *anno* 1592. and all the ſouldiers in it cruelly murdered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the ſurrendrie. 4 *Zeng*, 5 *Wackat*, 6 *Tarnow*, 7 *Modriſch*, of which little memorable.

This Countrey with the reſt included antiently under this name, was one of the two kingdomes of *Sclavonia*, the Princes whereof were uſually entituled Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*. In the yeare 1007. the *Venetians* having before poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Townes on the Sea ſide, firſt ſet footing there. How the whole Countrey of *Sclavonia* came to the Crown of *Hungary*, ſhall be ſhewn anon. Held, part of it in the right thereof, by the houſe of *Auſtria*; part of it by the *Turkes* in the way of conqueſt: the *Venetians* having now no ſhare in it, for ought I can finde.

4 BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Servia* a Province of *Dacia*: on the Weſt with *Croatia*; on the North with the River *Savus*, and the Eaſt parts with the *Lower Hungary*; on the South with *Dalmatia*. So called as ſome think from the River *Boſna*, which runneth through it; as others, from the *Beſſi* a people of *Dacia*, driven out of their Countrey by the *Bulgari*, and removing hither, by the change of a Vowell called *Boſſi*, whence the Country *Boſnia*.

Places of moſt importance are in it 1 *Iaitza*, by the *Latines* called *Iazyga*, ſituate on the top of an high hil, at the bottom whereof almoſt encompaſſed with two rivers, which there uniting paſſe from thence unto the *Savus*. The Town by reaſon of the rocky præcipices of the Hil, the unfordableneſſe of the River, and an inacceſſible Caſtle, held to be impregnable: the *Metropolis* in former times of this petit kingdome, and the ordinary ſepulture of the kings thereof. 2 *Warboſoni*, at this time the chief Town of the Countrey, but not walled about. 3 *Cazach*, the uſuall reſidence or retiring place of the *Boſnian* Kings. 4 *Schwanica*, not much obſervable. 5 *Dorobiza*, the firſt town taken by *Mahomet* the *great* in his conqueſt of this Kingdome, as 6 *Clyſſa* was the laſt; the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken in it.

This Countrey antiently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*; under the *Patronage* and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdome: but the preciſe time when, I finde not. Some ſay, about the year 1420. If ſo, a Kingdome of late date, and a ſhort continuance. For in the yeare 1464. *Mahomet* the *Great*, firſt Emperour of the *Turkes*, having

Dalmatia. having taken *Constantinople*, and almost all the rest of *Greece*, cast his eye upon it, suddenly surprised it: and having taken *Stephen* the last King hereof, most barbarously commanded him to be flead alive. After whose death this Kingdome was converted to a *Province* of the *Turkish* Empire, and governed by one of the *Bassas* of it; as it still continueth.

4 DALMATIA.

DALMATIA is bounded on the East with *Albania* from which parted by the River *Driso*, on the East with the *Titius* (now *Variecha*) which divides it from *Liburnia*, on the North with *Bosnia*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Sclavonia*, retaineth its ancient name and bounds. So called from *Dalminium* the chief town hereof in the time of the *Romans*, from which the people were called *Dalmatæ*, and the Countrie *Dalmatia*.

The Countrie in the time of the *Romans* was full of woods, and those woods of *Robbers*, who from thence issued out to make spoil and bootie. *Dalmatæ sub sylvis agunt, inde ad latrocinia promptissimi*, saith the Historian. And by the advantage of these woods, they intercepted and discomfited *Gabinius*, one of *Cæsars* Captaines, marching through their Countrie with 1000 *horse* and 15 Companies of *foot* towards *Macedonia*, to the aid of his Generall against *Pompey*. But their woods being destroyed they became more peaceable; and in stead of *Robberies* by Land, began to exercise themselves at Sea in the way of Merchandizing, to which their large Sea-coasts and commodious Havens served exceeding fitly.

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Sebenic* on the Sea side, not far from the influx of *Titius* or *Variecha*: by *Ptolemie* called *Sicum*, in whose time a Colonie of *Roman* Souldiers, sent hither by the Emperour *Claudius*. 2 *Salona*, a *Roman* Colonie also, one of the *Juridicall Resorts* for these parts of the Province, and the ordinarie *Arsenall* for their Navies. Renowned in ancient stories for the retreat of *Diocletian*, a Native of this Countrie, who having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much felicity, but a great deal of crueltie, deposed himself, and retired to this Citie, where he followed the trade of a *Gardener*, working with his own hands and observing with great content the productions of nature. Insomuch that when *Maximianus Herculius* his associate (who at his perswasion had done the like) invited him to resume the Empire, he returned this answer, *Utinam posses tis visere olera nostris manibus plantata, &c.* that if he would come unto *Salona* and see how well the *Worts* which he had planted with his own hands, did thrive and prosper, he would never trouble his head with Crowns, nor his hands with Scepters: a rare expression of a settled and contented minde. The name, and some of the ruines doe still remain to preserve the memorie of so remarkable a place. 3 *Spalato*, East of *Sebenic*, a Sea town, and an Archbishops See, who writes himself *Primate* of *Dalmatia*. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more then for *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, who seeming to loath the *Romish* superstition, came for refuge in *England*, *anno* 1616. and having here both by preaching and writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what projects, he declared himself to be of another mind, *anno* 1622. and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may say of him, as *Socrates* in his Ecclesiasticall Historie saith of *Ecebolius*, who under *Constantius*, was a Christian; under *Julian* a Pagan; and a *Christian* again under *Jovinian*: ποικίλος μὲν ἦν κἀκ νέας ἡλικίας Ἐκεβόλιος μεταπεσεῖν τὴν γνώμην. *So wavering and unconstant a turn-coat was* Ecebolius, *from his beginning to his end.* But *Ecebolius* sped better then *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his repentance, but this infatuated man imprisoned in the Castle of *Angelo*, and his dead bodie burnt to Ashes. A just reward for so great levity, and so grosse *Apostasie*, as he had shewed unto the world in his going hence. 4 *Almissa*, the *Piguritium* of *Ptolemie*, mounted on an high rock, and defended with an impregnable Castle. 5 *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and spatious *Chersonese*, not far from which the River *Naron* (or *Narento*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6 *Castle Novo*, a strong Fortresse within the Gulfe of *Catharo*, now in possession of the *Turks*. 7 *Antibari*, on the further or Eastern side of the Bay, an Archbishops See; but that and the Sees of his *Suffragan* Bishops, being 7 in number, now in possession of the *Turks*. 8 *Catharo*, on the same side of the Bay, by *Ptolemie* called *Aseruvium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a strong hold for the *Venetians* against the *Turks*, and giving name unto the *Gulfe*, which formerly called *Sinus Rhizoniscus*, from *Rhizana* (now *Rhizins*) situate at the bottome of it, is at this time called from this Town *Golfo de Catharo*. 9 *Dolcigno*, by *Ptolemie* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians*. 10 *Scutari*, more within the land, (the *Scodra* of *Ptolemie* and *Antoninus*) strongly seated on a steep Rock, memorable for the stout resistance which it made for a whole year, against the whole puissance of *Mahomet* the 2. battered for the most part of that time with 70 pieces of *Ordinance* of wondrous bignesse, especially that called the *Princes piece*, which carried a stone or bullet of 1200 *l.* weight; and taken at the last, *anno* 1578. Not far from this Town is the great Lake, called by *Strabo*, *Labeates*; now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compasse, and environed on all sides with Mountains, except towards the North, out of which issueth the *Drinus*, now called *Driana*, which parting *Sclavonia* from *Macedon* and *Servia*, passeth into the *Savus*. 11 *Alesio*, the *Lissus* of *Ptolemie*, the furthest town of all *Dalmatia*, towards *Greece*: memorable for the Grave of *Scanderbeg*, who was buried here, whereof more hereafter. 12 *Medon*, raised out of the ruines of *Dioclea*, an ancient and famous Citie, the birth-place of the Great Emperour *Diocletian*, spoken of before. 13 *Dalminium*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province, situate on the River *Drinus*, first sacked by *Marcius Figulus* a *Roman* Consul, *ann.*

V. C.

V.C. 689. and after, on a new revolt by one *Naſica*, ſpoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two ſuch ruines to revive againe; nothing being now left of it, but the name and memorie. *Liburnia.*

Betwixt the *Cherſoneſe* of *Stagno* and the *Gulfe* of *Catharo*, ſtands the town and territorie of *Raguſi*; not ſubject as all the reſt are either to the *Turk* or to the *Venetians*, but governing themſelves by their own Lawes and Magiſtrates as a *Free-Commonwealth*; paying only to the *Turk* 14000 *Zechins* yearly in way of tribute, and as much in Preſents: diſcharged in that regard of *Cuſtomes* and *Impoſitions*, in all his Dominions. It was anciently called *Epidaurus* (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponneſus*) but that town being razed by the *Gothes*, the Inhabitants (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themſelves, built this in the place of it, at the foot of a ſteep Mountaine, enjoying a pleaſant ſituation near the Sea with a little, but commodious Port, forced out of the water by the art and induſtrie of work-men. The town well built, fortified with wals and a well furniſhed Caſtle; now an Archbiſhops See, and a noted *Emporie*, rich, and ſtrong in ſhipping, commanding over a ſmall and barren territorie within the land, and ſome pleaſant *Iſlands* in the Sea. So that the riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues riſing out of the *Earth*, but by the benefit of their trafique upon the *Waters*, ſecured therein by the protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other ſide preſerved by the State of *Venice*, from being a prey to their *Protectours*. Of more wealth heretofore then they are at the preſent. At what time they traded to moſt parts of this Weſtern world in thoſe great Veſſells which from hence were called *Raguſes*, but corruptly *Argoſies*: the laſt of which (their number leſſening with their trade) they lent unto the King of *Spain* for the war of *England*, *anno* 1588. in which action it was loſt and wracked on the Coaſt of *Ireland*.

5 CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the Countrie of *Zara*, called anciently *Liburnia*, and *Illyris* ſpecially ſo named, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Dalmatia*, on the Weſt with *Hiſtria*, on the North with *Croatia*, and on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Golfe of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long diſcontinued) from *Zara* the chief town thereof the *Jadera* of *Ptolemie* and the ancients, a *Roman* Colonie at that time, now an Archbiſhops See, enjoying a ſafe and large Port, ſituate on a low *Cherſoneſe* thruſting out like a *Promontorie* into the *Adriatick*; belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom well fenced and fortified againſt forein invaſions. For the poſſeſſion and command of this town, there have been great wars betwixt the *Hungarians* and the *Venetians*; to whom it ſeemeth to be of ſuch importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns, of *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*, pretending againſt *Sigiſmund* of *Luxembourg* to the Crown of *Hungarie*. In this town is the Church of S. *John de Malvatia*, which was built by a company of *Saylors*; who being in a tempeſt, made a vow, that if they eſcaped, they would conſecrate a Temple to S. *John de Malvatia*, whoſe morter ſhould be tempered with *Malmſey*; and accordingly they paid their vowes. Far leſſe did another Maſter of a ſhip intend to perform his promiſe, though he ſpoke bigger; who in a like extremity of danger, promiſed our *Lady* to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main maſt of his ſhip. For when one of his *mates* jogging him, told him he had promiſed an impoſſibilitie: Tuſh fool (replyed the Maſter) we muſt ſpeak her fair in time of need; *but if ever I come a ſhore, I will make her be content with a candle of eight to the pound.* And in a like fit of devotion was he, who on the ſame occaſion plainly told God, that he was no common begger, he never troubled him with prayers before; and if he would hear him that time, he would never trouble him again.

Other towns herein conſiderable, are 1 *Albona*, retaining ſtill the old name (the *Alvona* of *Ptolemie*) ſituate near the River *Arſia*, the divider of this Province from *Hiſtria*. 2 *Flavona*, or *Flanona*, ſituate againſt the Gulfe of *Quernero*, of old called *Sinus Flanaticus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongſt Saylors for frequent tempeſts raiſed on every winde. 3 *Zegna*, by *Ptolemie* and *Plinie* called *Senia*, ſituate on a flat or levell. 4 *Nona*, of old called *Aenona*, compaſſed with the Sea. 5 *Scrifia*, now a poor Village in the place where ſtood the *Argyrutum* of *Plinie*. 6 *Scardona*, now a mean Village alſo, heretofore of great note, and the *Juridicall Reſort* for the whole Province: from whence the neighbouring Mountaines had the name of *Scardonici*: the bounds of this Country and *Croatia*.

The ancient name of this Country was *Liburnia*, as before is ſaid, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium*, or *Scardonici*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividentia* of the whole *Illyricum*. The people hereof called by one generall name *Liburni*, were much given to *Piracies*; and for their better ſpeed therein, the Authors and Inventers of thoſe ſwift veſſels which were called *Liburnicæ*, and *Liburnæ*. Of which thus *Horace*:

Liburnia.

Ibis Liburnis *inter alta navium*
Amice propugnacula.

That is to ſay:

In a *Liburnian* ſhalt thou be
Amongſt the ſtouteſt ſhips at Sea.

In imitation of which Veſſels being ſwift and light, the *Romans* in the time of their wealth and pride invented a kinde of *Chair* or *Litter*, (ſuch as thoſe which we call *Sedans*) wherein they were carried on mens ſhoulders with ſuch eaſe and pleaſure, that they could not only ſleep or read, but write in them alſo: the Porters or Bearers of them of this Nation commonly; from whence, or from the faſhion of the Veſſel which they did reſemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of theſe thus *Juvenal* in his third Satyre:

Si vocat officium, turba cedente vehetur
Dives, & ingenti curret ſuper ora Liburno,
Atque obiter leget, *aut* ſcribet, *vel* dormiet *intus*,
Namque facit ſomnum *clauſa lectica feneſtra.*

Thus *Engliſhed* by my honoured friend Sir *Robert Stapleton*, in his excellent tranſlation of that harſh *Satyriſt*.

When buſineſſe cals, a crowd the rich man ſhuns,
And o're mens heads in's huge *Sedan* he runs,
Reads, *writes*, and *ſleeps* within it as he goes,
For *ſleep* will come if he the curtains cloſe.

Beſides which office of *Chair-carriers* or *Sedan-men*, as we call them now, this people being, when once conquered, a ſervile Nation, furniſhed the *Romans* with thoſe *Beadels*, whom they employed in calling the Citizens from the fields to their publick buſineſſes, to which the ſame Poet alludeth, in the next *Satyre*, ſaying, *Clamante* Liburno, *Currite, jam ſedit, &c.* But to proceed, the nearneſſe of this Countrie to the *Adriatick*, occaſioned the Bay of *Quernero* commonly called *Sinus Flanaticus*, to be ſometimes named *Sinus Liburnicus*, the parts of *Italie* on the other ſide of it, to be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and gave the name of *Liburnades* to a ſhole of Iſlands lying on the coaſt hereof, 60 at leaſt in number, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. To which and other Iſlands of the *Adriatick*, we are now to haſten, leaving the ſtorie of *Illyricum* to the cloſe of all.

6 The *SCLAVONIAN* ISLANDS.

Along the Coaſts of *Sclavonia*, lie a cluſter of ISLANDS to the number of a thouſand as is ſaid by *Plinie*: moſt of which (if indeed ſo many) are but rocks, not Iſlands, or not inhabited at all, or of any note. The principall whereof, and ſuch as deſerve place here, are 1 the *Liburnades* before mentioned. 2 The *Abſyrtides*. 3 The Iſles of *Raguſi*. 4 *Arbe*. 5 *Curzola*. 6 *Zara*. 7 *Liſſa* and *Brazzia*: the reſt not worth the looking after, as to our deſigne: the whole number of the Inhabitants reckoned in the totall to no more then 40000 perſons.

1 The *LIBURNADES* ſaid by *Strabo* to be 60 in number, lie all along the Coaſt of *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zaro*: the chief whereof are 1 *ISSA*, now called *Pago*, containing 100 miles in compaſſe, having a town of the ſame name; but in all that tract of ground not above 1500 inhabitants in the time of my Author, by reaſon of the ſharp air, and great want of fewell. The Salt-pits here yeeld great commoditie, not only to the people themſelves, but alſo to the State of *Venice*, ſupreme Lord hereof. 2 *Tragurium*, now *Tran* and *Trahu*, ſo called from the chief town hereof, built by thoſe of *Iſſa*: ſo near the Continent that it ſeems to be a part thereof. By *Mela* it is named *Tagurium*, with ſome little difference. 3 *Pharus*, ſo called from the *Pharii*, or *Parii*, of whom once a Colonie, long ſince come to ruine. It is now called *Lezina*, the greateſt of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150 miles in compaſſe, and very fruitfull for the bigneſſe. It hath a town of the ſame name, which enjoying a ſafe and ſpatious Harbour; unwalled and of no great beautie, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle which commandeth both the Harbour and the ſhipping in it. The birth-place of *Demetrius Pharius*, ſo often mentioned in the ſtories of *Greece* and *Rome*.

2 The

2 The *ABSYRTIDES* are in number many, ſo called from the River *Abſyrtus*, which thereabout falls into the *Adriatick*, according unto that of *Lucan*:

Ei cadit Adriacas *ſpumans* Abſyrtus *in undas.*

Abſyrtus foaming with his haſt
Into the *Adria* falls at laſt.

But whether that river were ſo called by the *Colchians* at their landing there, in memorie of *Abſyrtus* the ſon of *Aetas* King of *Colchis*, whom they went to ſeek; or for ſome other reaſon, I determine not. Certain I am, it could not be ſo named from the ſcattering of his limbs hereabouts, by *Medea* his unnaturall ſiſter, as is ſaid by *Plinie*: that cruell fact being done on the ſhores of the *Euxine*: the place called *Tomos* afterwards upon that occaſion. But for theſe Iſlands being in number many, as before was ſaid, two only are of ſpeciall note, that is to ſay, 1 *Vegia*, or *Viglio*, not far from *Zegna* on the firm land, containing in compaſſe betwixt 80 and 100 miles, and about 10000 Inhabitants, the moſt populous of all theſe Seas. It hath a town of the ſame name, with a very fair harbour: the Iſland by *Plinie* called *Curieta*, the chief towns of it in his time being *Pſulfinium*, and *Curicum*. 2 *Abſorus* as *Ptolemie*, *Abſyrtium* as *Plinie* calls it: in whoſe time it was one Iſland only, but now divided into two, by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the one of them is called *Cherſo*, the other *Oſero*: both joyned together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both together making up 140 miles in compaſſe; each of them having one town only, and that of the ſame name with the Iſland, the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 5000 perſons. Stored with ſufficiencie of corn, plentie of wine, and abundance of wood, great quantities whereof are ſent yearly to *Venice*. They have alſo goodly heards of Cattle, and great flocks of ſheep, affording by their fleſh, wool, cheeſe, and butter, a good increaſe of profit to the owners of them.

3 The *Iſlands* of *Raguſi*, (for ſo I call them which belong to that Common-wealth) are but three in number: 1 *Gravoſa*, a very pleaſant place, full of Gardens of Oranges, Lemmons, and Pomegranates. 2 *Languſte*, environed about with very high Mountains, in which are the *Raguſians* Farms, made rich by the great charge and induſtrie of the ſeverall *Occupants*, ſo as to yeeld them wine, oil, and moſt excellent fruits; which they receive more plentifully from a goodly Plain ſituate in the midſt hereof, and naturally more fruitfull then the other parts. Near to this laſt Iſland is good fiſhing for *Sprats*: and in both an Art of making their trees to bring forth *Oyſters*, by bending down their boughes, and ſtaying them under the water with ſtones; ſo as in two years there are ſo many *Oyſters* faſtned unto them, as is ſtrange to ſee, and in the third year they are very good meat. 3 *Melida*, lying betwixt *Raguſi* and the Iſle of *Curzola*, by *Plinie* called *Melita*, and on that ground ſuppoſed by ſome to be that Iſland on which S. *Paul* did ſuffer ſhipwrack, *Acts* 29. But the name of *Barbarous* which the Text joynes to the Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Iſland betwixt *Greece* and *Italie*, in the times of S. *Paul*, and his landing there in *Syracuſa*, an Haven of *Sicil*, ſo far from this, ſo near unto the other *Melita*, which is now called *Malta*; ſufficiently refell this fancie, though otherwiſe not improbably grounded.

4 Of thoſe which are known only by one ſingle name, the chief are *ARBE*, ſo called in the time of *Plinie* from the beſt town of it; but by *Ptolemie* it is named *Scardona*. A pleaſant Iſland, in compaſſe about 30 miles, and containing ſome 3000 Inhabitants, the only Haven-leſſe Iſle of all the *Adriatick*; but that defect abundantly recompenſed by the naturall ſweetneſſe of the place. Which ſo enticed certaine diſſolute Rovers of *Auſtria*, that they ſeiſed upon it, *anno* 1618. and had like to have occaſioned an heavy war betwixt *Ferdinand* Archduke of the Houſe of *Gratz* (not long after choſen King of the *Romans*) and the State of *Venice*, if *Philip* the 3. of *Spain* had not made up the breach.

5 *CURZOLA*, by *Ptolemie* and *Strabo* called *Corcyra*, or *Melæna*, more rightly *Corcyra Melæna*, or *Corcyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, in the Sea *Ionian*: the chief town of it being of the ſame name with the Iſland, was founded by the *Gnidians* of the Iſle of *Crete*; ſufficiently fruitfull, but of wine eſpecially, 40 miles long, in compaſſe 90. and very populous for the bigneſſe; notwithſtanding that the people being Sea-faring men, do much uſe the Seas and build many ſhips. In the year 1571. a little after the taking of *Cyprus*, and before the battel of *Lepanto*, it was invaded by *Uluz Aly*, Generall of the *Turkiſh* Fleet, with a Navie of 60 Gallies: for fear of whom *Contarenus* the *Venetian* Governour, together with the Townſmen and Garriſon Souldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief town hereof. The ſilly women thus forſaken, and preferring death before diſhonour, defended the walls; and with fire, ſtones, and ſuch other weapons as they had, they beat off the enemie: till at the laſt a violent tempeſt forced the *Turkiſh* Generall to remove his Gallies further off to a place of ſafetie.

6 *ZARA*, *LISSA*, *BRAZZIA*, three ſmall Iſles, not otherwiſe memorable but for their misfortunes, ſpoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from *Curzola*, who carryed thence 1600 *Chriſtians* into cruell bondage. The reſt I purpoſely omit, rather Rocks then Iſlands, barren and ſtonie for the moſt part, and not much inhabited.

Illyricum. The ancient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent of it, comprehending *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*, were the *Japodes* bordering on *Italy*, the *Sintones* or *Scirtari* confining upon *Macedon*; the *Mazæi*, in the midst about *Salona*; the *Peirustæ* lying towards *Pannonia*, the *Derrii*, *Ceraunii*, *Daursii*, *Vardæ*, *Siculotæ*, *Sardiotæ*, and others of inferiour note: all making up the great and potent Nations of the *Liburni* and the *Dalmatæ*; and comprehended generally in the name of *Illyrians*. Of these the *Liburnian Illyrians*, (*Illyrici seu Liburni* as they are indifferently called by *Florus*) were the first who felt the Forces of *Rome*: which growing State they had provoked by their frequent *Piracies*, but more by murdering the *Ambassadours* which were sent unto them to require satisfaction: *Teuta* their Queen, a proud and Imperious Dame, commanding execution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans* for so many injuries, under the conduct of *Centimalus* one of the *Consuls*, they were overthrown (as having more of the *Pirate* then the souldier in them) some of their chief Nobility executed in revenge of the wrong done to the *Ambassadours*; an yearly tribute imposed on them, and the Queen deprived of the greatest part of her Kingdome, conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharius*, one of their *Confederats*. But he proving unfaithfull to them in their war with *Hannibal*, and *Gentius* their last King who commanded over *Illyricum*, siding against them with *Perseus* King of *Macedonia*: *Anicius* the *Prætor* is sent with a sufficient Army to make an end of that work. Who used such diligence therein, that *Scordra* the chief town of the Kingdome, was taken, and the King himselfe together with his wife and children made Prisoners; by consequence the whole war ended, *antequam geri* Romæ *nunciaretur*, before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburnians* after this became quiet subjects, the whole Countrey on taking of the *Gentius* being made a *Province* of the *Romans*, *anno V.C.* 586. employed at *Rome* in many servile offices, as before was said: but them the *Dalmatians* began to cast off the yoke. But *Dalminium* their chiefe City being first sacked by *Martius Figulus*, and after by *Nasica* before mentioned; they continued quiet and obedient till the time of *Augustus Cæsar*: when they againe rebelled at the instigation of one *Batto*, a man very potent with the people; who having ten years together maintained the liberty of his countrey, at last broken and wearied by the forces of *Germanicus* and *Tiberius* he submitted himselfe unto the two *Generals*: who asking the reason of his revolt, were answered, because the *Romans* sent not *shepheards to keep, but* wolves *to devoure their flockes*. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman* Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy*, who brought it under his command; as the *Gothes* also did having vanquished him, and thereby made themselves Masters of *Italy*, and the rest of his purchases: But the kingdome of the *Gothes*, being brought to an end by the good fortune of *Justinian*, and the valour of *Belisarius* and *Narses*, two of his Commanders (but very ill requited by him) *Illyricum* became a part of the *Eastern* Empire: continuing under the power of the *Grecian* Emperours till the time of *Phocas* that bloudy Tyrant: when made a prey unto the *Sclaves*.

Of these though we have spoken before in severall places, as their fortunes and affaires have led us: yet being this is the onely countrey which preserves their name, we will here speake more exactly of them, then we have done hitherto; especially as to their manners, name and first *Originall*; and finally of their successes in this countrey. And first for their *Originall*, I take it for a thing past question that they were no other then naturall *Sarmatians*, inhabiting on the North of the River *Ister*, uniting themselves under this name, in their undertakings and attempts on the Eastern Empire; as the many Nations of *Germany* tooke the name of *Frankes*, and *Almans*, in their actions and achievements against the *Western*. But why they took this name rather then another, is not yet agreed on. Some fetch the originall of it from *Slowo*, which in the *Sclavonian* tongue signifieth a *Speech* or *word*, because they were all of one common language: others from *Slawa*, signifying in that language *Fame* or *Glory*, in regard of that great fame and honour which they had achieved by their successes on the Empire. But when I finde a potent Nation of the *Winithi*, *Winuli*, or *Vendi*, a *Sarmatian* people called *Sclavini* by *Jornandes*, possessed in his time of the further shores of the River *Ister*, opposite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*; and by that name wasting and forraging these Provinces, and other parts of that Empire in the time of *Justinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they did: I see no reason why wee should looke further for the name of *Sclaves* then from these *Sclavini*. For having in the time of *Phocas* subdued this Countrey, and called it *Sclavinia*, or *Sclavonia*, after their own name: by that and other fortunate successes on the *Eastern* Empire, and the honour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce the rest of the scattered tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite together with them both in name and action, and try their fortunes in the conquest of the *West* of *Europe*, as these had done already on the *East* parts of it. In which designe they sped so well that they became Masters of almost all those countreys which lie betwixt the River *Vistula*, and the *Euxine* Sea; the *Adriatick* and the *Baltick*: communicating their language unto all the Provinces and Nations conquered by them; and to most their manners, rites, and customs. Their Government at first by Kings; but so that the succession seldom held in a Race or Family; and those that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For having a Law amongst themselves, that hee who killed a Tyrant should succeed in his place: they had few Kings whom some or other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and then dispatch him out of the way that a greater Tyrant then himselfe (as it commonly happeneth in such cases) might possesse the Power. Insomuch that they had a new king almost every year, none of them for the space of an hundred yeares dying naturall deaths; and all that while the People (as it needs must be) most miserably torn in peeces by intestine wars. Not cured of this distemper, till the severall Tribes and Nations of them, (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, these here, and those of other Countries) had their severall Princes, succeeding one another in a Regular way. Their Religion *Gentilism* at the first,

firſt, for being originally Heathens, they worſhipped ſuch Gods as others of the Gentiles did; *Jeſſan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzim* for *Mars*, *Zievane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had alſo a Goddeſſe called *Pagode*, to whom they prayed for fair weather, and a temperate Air. To their children they uſed to give no name, till they began to grow great, and then conducted them to the Temple of their Gods, where they cut off their firſt hair, and offered it as a pledge of their future ſervice: at which ſolemnity they called together their friends and kinſfolk to make merry, with banketts, dancing, ſinging, and all kinds of ſports: offering in ſacrifice an Hog, and wine mixed with honey, ſomewhat like *Metheglin*.

But to returne unto the ſtory, the *Sclaves* that ſeiſed in this countrey (ſince called *Sclavonia*) continued abſolute Maſters of it under the Title of Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, till the yeare 970. when growing unſufferable by their frequent Piracies, and having raviſhed or ſurprized a company of *Venetian* Ladies; they forced that State (as the *Liburnians* did the *Romans*) to make warre upon them: Which ended in the loſſe of *Lezina* and *Curzola*, two of their beſt Iſlands, and almoſt all the Sea townes on the Coaſt of the *Adriatick*; poſſeſſed for the moſt part ſince that time by the State of *Venice*: a tribute alſo of 100 Barrels of Wine, and a preſent to the Duke of 3000 Coney-skins, being laid upon them: *Petro Urſeola* being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcomir*, king of the *Sclavonians*. Afterwards *Zelamirus* the laſt king dying without iſſue, bequeathed the kingdome to his wife: and ſhe as freely to her brother *Ladiſlaus* king of *Hungarie*, ſurnamed the *Saint*: the right hereof accrewing by this means to the kings of *Hungary*; but the poſſeſſion of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*: the cauſe of much war and bloud ſhed betwixt theſe Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the fray, and got the greateſt part for himſelf, by their diſagreements. Betwixt theſe three, *Sclavonia* at this time doth ſtand thus divided: the *Venetians* poſſeſſing the greateſt part of the *Iſlands* and all the Sea Coaſts from the River *Arſia* to the Bay of *Catharo*, (the City and Commonwealth of *Raguſi*, excepted onely); the houſe of *Auſtria* in the right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who firſt ſet footing here in the reign of *Mahomet* the ſecond) the whole kingdome of *Boſna*, the Patronage of *Raguſi*, ſome towns in *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*, and all the reſidue of *Dalmatia* from the Bay of *Catharo* to *Albania*.

The Armes of *Sclavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinalls Hat, the ſtrings pendant, and platted in a true Loves knot, meeting in the Baſe, *Gules*.

There are in *Sclavonia*
Archbiſhops 4. Biſhops 26.

And thus much for *SCLAVONIA*.

OF

OF
DACIA.

DACIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea, and ſome part of *Thrace*; on the Weſt with *Hungarie*, and *Sclavonia*; on the North with *Podolia* and ſome other Members of the Realm of *Poland*; on the South with the reſt of *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here firſt inhabited; in *Strabo*, better known by the name of the *Davi*, who proving, when firſt known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themſelves to ſervice in hope of gain, occaſioned the *Romans* in their *Comœdies* and common Speech, to call a *Sycophant* or *Servant* by the name of *Davus*.

It lyeth on both ſides of the *Danow*, frontiring all along the *Upper* and the *Lower Hungarie* and ſome part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the 7. *Climate* to the 10. ſo that the longeſt Summers day in the moſt Northern parts thereof is near 17 hours; and in the moſt Southern 15 hours 3 quarters.

By this accompt with reference to the other limits beforelaid down, it differeth much in ſituation and dimenſions from the ancient *Dacia* deſcribed by *Ptolemie*: that lying wholly on the North ſide of the *Danow*, but taking in ſo much of the *Upper Hungarie* as lyeth on the Eaſt ſide of *Tibiſcus*: this comprehending all the reſt of the ancient *Dacia*, with both the *Myſias*, and *Dardania*; and in a word, the whole *Dacian* Dioceſe in the largeſt extent thereof, the Province of *Prevalitana* excepted only: which though a Member of this Dioceſe, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer underſtanding whereof we may pleaſe to know, that *Dacia* properly ſo called was ſituate on the Northſide of *Danubius*, as before was ſaid, extending as far Weſtward as the River *Tibiſcus*, where it frontired on the *Iazyges Metanaſtæ*, inhabited by a militarie and valiant people, who many times, eſpecially when the froſt did favour them, paſſed over the River, and infeſted the *Roman* Provinces. And though repreſſed and made tributarie by *Julius Cæſar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Auguſtus*, who ſending *Lentulus* againſt them with a puiſſant Armie, compelled them to retire on the other ſide of the River, planting the Southern banks thereof with ſtrong towns and garriſons to reſtrain them from the like incurſions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si* Dacia *tunc non victa, ſummota atque dilata eſt*, ſaith the Hiſtorian; though *Dacia* was not overcome, yet it was removed ſomewhat further off, and the Provinces thereby ſecured from the attempts of that people. After this from the time of *Cotiſo*, with whom *Auguſtus* had to deal, we find little of them till the reign of *Decebalus* their laſt King, a man both ready in advice and quick in execution. Againſt him, *Domitian* made warre by *Julianus* his Lieutenant; who gave *Decebalus* a great overthrow; and had then utterly vanquiſhed him, if his wit had not better befriended him then his ſword. For, fearing that the *Romans* making uſe of their victory, would enter and take poſſeſſion of his Country: he pitched in the way a great number of ſtakes in battell aray, putting on them the old Corſlets of his Souldiers; which looking like ſo many men of Arms, frighted the enemy from approaching the Country. *Trajane* was the next that made war againſt him, and brought him to that exigent, that having with

with much losse endured some few skirmishes, he yeelded himself, and is acknowledged a friend to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But being one of a high spirit, and born in a *free air*, he once again fell off from the *Romans*, but to his own destruction: for seeing by the valour of *Trajane*, his kingdome conquered and his Palace taken and destroyed, he fell upon his own sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Lost in the time of *Galienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*, who finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, transplanted the *Roman* Colonies and the more civill sort of the *Natives*, on the other side of the River, placing them betwixt the two *Mysias*, (in some part of each) and calling the Countrie given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*; leaving the *Old* unto the *Gothes* and others of the barbarous Nations, whose *thorough-fare* it was in all their enterprises and designs on the *Roman* Empire. Divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripensis*: this lying on the banks of the *Danow*, the other more within the land; which with the Provinces of *Mœsia superior*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia salutaris*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia* in the times succeeding. Subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, and consequently appertaining (after the division) to the Eastern Empire. And it continued in this state till the time of *Justinian*, who being a Native of this Countrie, subdued it from the command of that *Præfect*, and instituted both a *Præfectus Prætorio* for this Diocese only in Civill matters, and a *Primate* for the affairs of the Church; both setled in the Citie of *Justiniana*, of his own foundation: enlarging the *jurisdiction* of the first by the addition of some part of *Macedonia Secunda*, and *Pannonia Secunda*; and giving to the other all those preheminences which had been anciently enjoyed by the greater *Patriarchs*. But this new Institution was of no continuance. For first the *Sclaves*, and afterwards the *Russians*, *Hungars*, and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, dismembred it peece-meal from the Empire, and divided it under new names amongst themselves. Of which together with the nature of the soil and people, I shall speak anon: having first took a view of the Rivers, Hils, and other Land-marks, which are to be my chief guides in the *Chorographie* or description of them. *Transylvania.*

The Rivers then of most note are 1 The *Danow*, which here at *Axium* or *Axiopolis* a town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Ister*, continuing it from thence to its *Æstuarium*, where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, with 7 mouths or channels: that is to say, 1 *Peuce*, 2 *Naracustoma*, 3 *Calostoma*, 4 *Plendostoma*, 5 *Spireustoma*, 6 *Boreostoma*: the name of the last I find not amongst my Authors, *quia languidissimum nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolemie*. 2 *Marulius*, now called *Marisch*, 3 *Temes*, 4 *Alluta*, keeping its old name, 5 *Hierasus*, all of old *Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *Ister*; as do also *Ciabrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Servia*; and 6 *Sucoma* of *Bulgaria*, or the *Lower Mysia*. Chief Mountains of it, are 1 The *Carpathian*, 2 *Scardus*, 3 *Ozbelus*, whereof the first parteth it from *Sarmatia Europæa*, the second from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This said we will proceed to the description of the severall Provinces, which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*, that is to say, 1 *Transylvania*, 2 *Moldavia*, 3 *Walachia*, 4 *Rascia*, 5 *Servia*, 6 *Bulgaria*; the first four in *Old Dacia*, on the North side of the *Danow*; the two last in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1 TRANSYLVANIA.

TRANSYLVANIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, on the West with the *Upper Hungarie*, on the North with *Russia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which parted by the *Carpathian* Mountains; on the South with *Rascia*, and *Walachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungarie*, the name in Latine signifying the Countrie beyond the woods. By the *Dutch* it is called *Seben Burgen*, from seven Castles or strong holds anciently built in it, to defend the Frontiers: *Septemcastrensis* in some *Latine* Authors, upon that occasion. But by the more elegant *Latinists*, it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*, or made subject to them.

The soil doth naturally abound with wine, corne, and fruit, of which it was so plentifull in the times of the *Romans* that the Emperour *Trajan* caused a piece of money to be coined, having the figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu-copia*, and in the other a plain *Tablet* with this inscription, *Abundantia Daciæ*. Particularly besides great plenty of wheat and most excellent wines, it yeeldeth great store of Cherries, Damascens, Malacotoons, Musk-melons, not inferiour to those of *Italie*; as also *Centaurie* good store, and many other *Medicinall* plants; some mines of Gold and Silver, many of Iron, Brasse, and Copper; and not a few veins of Salt and Sulphur. Of Cattle such abundance, that many times large Oxen, are sold for a *Floren* or halfe a Crown a peece; and a most notable breed of Horses: not to say any thing of that varietie of wild beasts which they have in their Woods and Forrests, and of all sorts of Fowl both for food and pleasure.

The people are much of the same nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time subject, but somewhat more stubborn and untractable, speak the same language that they do, with some difference in the *Dialect* only: converted at the same time to the *Christian* Faith, and under the same formes of *Ecclesiasticall* government. In former times they used to read, as the Jews doe, from the right hand to the left; but of late herein conform to the Western Nations, from whom they are generally descended.

For that the people of this Country are the progenie of the *Saxons*, is evident by the *Saxon* lan-

guage

Transylvania.

guage yet in part retained. 2 We finde that *Charls* the Great, like a *politique Conquercur*, placed many of that Nation here; weakning ſo their ſtrength at home, and fortifying the bounds of his Empire. And 3 by a ſtorie recited by *Verſtegan*, which we touched in our deſcription of *Brunſwick*; the whole narration is this. *Halberſtade* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a *Muſician* whom they called the *Peed piper*, undertaking for a great maſſe of money to deſtroy; they agree: hereupon he tuned his pipes, and all the Rats in the town dancing after them, are drowned in the next River. This done he asketh his pay, but is denyed; whereupon he ſtriketh up a new fit of mirth: all the children male and female of the town follow him into the hill *Hamelen*, which preſently cloſed again. The parents miſſe their children, and could never hear news of them; now of late ſome have found them in this Country, where I alſo leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is ſaid to happen the 22 of *July* 1376. ſince which time it is ſaid that the people of *Halberſtade* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other Inſtrument to be ſounded in that ſtreet: and eſtabliſhed a Decree, that in all writings of *Contract* or *Bargain*, after the date of our *Saviours Nativity*, the date alſo of this their childrens *tranſmigration* ſhould be added *in rei memoriam*. But though the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main bodie of them, yet being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies; and in the Northern parts there remain ſtill ſome of the old *Scythians* planted there by *Attila*. Out of thoſe Members is the bodie of this State compoſed, ſo ſtrong and populous that it is conceived to be able to raiſe an Armie of 90000 men; and actually did arme 6000 horſe and 12000 foot for the battell of *Kereſture*, *anno* 1596. being more by 2000 then the whole Realm of *Hungarie* ſent unto that ſervice.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons*, are 1 *Hermanſted*, in *Latine*, *Hermanopolis* (of old called *Cibinium* from the River *Cibin* on which it was ſituate) ſo named of one *Herman* the Founder of it; little inferior to *Vienna* for ſtrength or greatneſſe; well fortified both by Art and Nature. 2 *Cronſtad*, in *Latine* called *Corona*, by ſome *Braſſovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*, this laſt name given it by *Stephen* King of *Hungarie*, who repaired and beautified it. Situate on the borders of *Walachia*, amongſt fruitfull Mountains, remarkable for a fair Librarie, a kinde of *Academie*, and the moſt noted *Emporie* or *Mart-town* of all this Countrie: of great reſort, eſpecially in the time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Polanders*, *Walachians*, and other Nations. 3 *Biſtricium* (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) ſo called from the River *Biſtrice*, which runneth through it: ſo pleaſant and ſo ſweet a town, that there is no durt or mire to be ſeen at any time; or if there be, the people preſently ſwell up the River and ſo cleanſe the ſtreets. 4 *Medieſus* (by the *Dutch*, *Meduiſh*) ſo called, *quaſi Medius Conſeſſus*, becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Countrie; a town almoſt as neat as *Biſtrice*. 5 *Segoſwaria*, or *Schesburg*, on the declivitie of an hill. 6 *Zabeſus* or *Luiz*, once the chief town of the *Saxons*, but now much decayed; ſituate in a very deep Vallie, well fenced with waters, and thoſe waters well ſtored with fiſh. 7 *Clauſenbourg*, the *Zeugma* of *Ptolemie*, in *Latine* called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the ſecond Emperour, by whom reedified: at firſt a Colonie of the *Saxons* or *Dutch* only: but of late times the *Hungarians* coming in as ſtrangers, were at laſt priviledged as Citizens, and inhabit it together with them. The town well ſeated in the middle of a pleaſant Plain, encompaſſed with an handſome wall, and beautified with elegant buildings. 8 *Alba Julia*, now *Weiſenberg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolemie*, ſituate on a ſmall brook then called *Apnus*, (but now *Oratas*) whence it had the name. Built on the ſide of an Hill near the River *Maruch* (or *Moruſus*,) over-looking a large and fruitfull Plain: heretofore a Biſhops See, and the ordinary reſidence of the Prince or *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania*; but now a Garriſon of *Hungarian* Souldiers, holding it for the Emperour as King of *Hungarie*.

Chief towns belonging to the *Hungarians*, and by them inhabited, are 1 *Varadin*, much mentioned in the ſtories of theſe later times, ſince the Invaſions of the *Turks*, ſituate on the borders of *Hungarie*. 2 *Thorda*, built in or near the place where ſtood the *Salinæ* of *Ptolemie*, ſo called from the abundance of *Salt-pits* which were then about it. 3 *Enguedine*, by the *Romans* called *Annium*, from a *Cauſey* leading to it, raiſed by one *Anuius*, and from him ſo named; ſome fragments whereof are ſtill remaining 4 *Deva*, remarkable for a vein of the beſt Wines. 5 *Fenuſchium*, affording very pleaſant wines alſo, not inferior to thoſe of *Vonuſium* in *Italie*. 6 *Zilahi*, 7 *Gela*, of which little memorable. 8 *Milleubach*, not far from which betwixt it and the Town of *Bros*, is a very ſtrong fortreſſe, commanding a ſtrait and narrow paſſage leading into this Countrie out of *Hungarie*.

In the North part hereof lyeth the Province called *ZACULEIA*, inhabited by the *Scyculi*, or old brood of *Scythians*, brought hither by *Attila*, on his firſt conqueſt of this Countrie, and here ſtill continuing. A people which have much in them of the ancient *Hunn*, and had heretofore a peculiar language to themſelves: but now they ſpeak the *Hungarian* generally, differing in the *Dialect* only. But though, by the neceſſity of commerce and co-habitation, they are brought into the ſame language; they ſtill retain their ancient cuſtoms, governed by their own Laws, and living after the ſame manner as the *Switzers* doe; each of their *Cantons* (ſeven in number) being abſolute in and of it ſelf, but all united with the *Tranſylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Country againſt the ſeverall pretentions of the *German* and *Turkiſh* Emperours. And though they doe acknowledge ſome ſubjection to the Emperour as King of *Hungarie*, yet it is but what they liſt themſelves: being anciently priviledged from all taxes, more then the paying of a *Bull* for every houſhold at the *Coronation* of the new King, when and how oft ſoever it may chance to happen. Their *Cantons*, (*Seds* they call them,) are 1 *Sepſi*, 2 *Orbay*, 3 *Kiſdy*, 4 *Czyk*, 5 *Gyrgio*, or *Uduarheli*, 6 *Marous Zeek*, and 7 *Aranias Zeek*; ſo called from the chief town in each diviſion. In former times no *Noble-*

man

man, nor any one of better means and greater eminence then others, was known amongst them: but now of late that *parity* (or confusion rather) is grown out of credit, and some begin to over-top the rest both in power and title, as in other places. *Transylva-nia.*

The first Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anarti*, *Tauriſci*, *Rhatacenſii*, *Cancoenſii*, the *Burredenſii*, and *Biephi*, *&c.* first conquered by *Lyſimachus*, the great and mightie King of *Thrace*, one of the renowned Captains of *Alexander* the *Great*, in token whereof, innumerable *medals* in the age of our *Grand-fathers* were found in this Countrie, having his Image on the one side, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards subdued by the Emperour *Trajan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been shewn already. Being forsaken by the *Romans* it was won by the *Goths*, their constant dwelling, till forced over the *Danow* by the *Hunns*, the next possessours of this Countrie, the road or *thorow-fare* from that time of those barbarous Nations, which out of *Asia* made their inroads on the *Europæans*. Having been successively subdued by the *Sclaves* and *Rosses*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen* the first King of *Hungarie*, surnamed the *Saint*, by whose perswasion and inducements, they received the Gospell. Governed after this time, as a member of that Kingdome, by a Deputie whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* signifying as much as *Præfectus Militiæ*, or a *Lord Lieutenant*;) a man by reason of the greatnesse of his place and power of most authoritie in that Kingdome. The names and succession of these *Vaivods* till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that more clear and constant in this order following.

The VAIVODS and PRINCES of TRANSYLVANIA.

1 *John*, surnamed *Huniades*, made *Vaivod* hereof by *Uladislaus* the 4. A man of great valour and renown, the great *Defender* of his Country against the *Turks*, whom he overthrew in many battels, especially in that of *Marous*, where he slew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.

2 *Stephen*, of the noble familie of *Battori*, Vaivod in the time of *Matthias* King of *Hungarie*, the son of *Huniades*.

3 *John* II. surnamed *de Sepusio*, after the death of *Lewis* the 2. chosen King of *Hungarie*, of whom before.

1526 4 *Americus*, Bishop of *Veradium*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepusio*, on his taking of the Crowne of *Hungarie*: treacherously murdered for not complying with the *Turks*, *anno* 1534.

1540 5 *Stephen Mayſat*, a noble *Hungarian* but extremely ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* usurped the Vaivodship, was in the year 1540 confirmed in that dignitie.

1541 6 *Stephen* III. son of *John de Sepusio* the late King of *Hungarie*, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* made Vaivod of *Transylvania*, being then an Infant, by whom deprived of his Kingdome of *Hungarie* not long before.

7 *Stephen* IV. surnamed *Battori*, made Vaivod by the *Turk*; and afterwards on the commendation of *Amurath* the 3. chosen King of *Poland*.

1575 8 *Christopher Battori* brother of *Stephen*, on whose election unto *Poland* he succeeded here, and was the first who leaving the title of *Vaivod*, took that of *Prince* of *Transylvania*.

9 *Sigismund* son of *Christopher*, shook off the *Turkish* bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and slew some of their *Bassas* (the *Scanderberg* of the times he lived in.) But not being able to hold out against so potent an adversarie, he resigned his estate to *Rodolphus* the Emperour; having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor* in *Silesia*, and an annuall pension of 50000 *Joachims*. But finding his pension ill paid, he made a new resignation of it to

1599 10 *Andrew Battori*, cousin of *Sigismund*, slain within the year by the Vaivod of *Valachia*. After whose death

1601 11 *Rodolphus* Emperour and King of *Hungarie*, is admitted Prince of *Transylvania*, on the second resignation of *Sigismund*: But his Souldiers behaving themselves with too great insolence, *Sigismund* was called back again, but never well setled.

1604 12 *Justine Battori*, surnamed *Botscay*, succeeded on the death of *Sigismund*, by the power of the *Turkes*, by whose help he cleared the Country of the *German* Souldiers.

1608 13 *Gabriel Battori*, of the familie of the former Princes, succeeded by the favour of *Achmet* the *Great Turk*: after whose death so welcome to his neighbours and subjects.

1613 14 *Bethlem Gabour*, by the same *Achmet*, was made Prince of *Transylvania*, a professed enemie of the house of *Austria*, but one that with a great deal of noise did them little hurt.

1630 15 *Ste-*

Moldavia. 1630 15 *Stephen Kagotzi*, on the death of *Bethlem Gabour*, ſucceeded Prince by the power and favour of the *Turks*; under whoſe *Clitentele* and protection he doth ſtill enjoy it, (as his predeceſſours did before him) againſt all pretentions of the Empire: as on the other ſide, defended by the *Emperour* and Crown of *Poland* from being made thrall unto the *Turkes*.

2 MOLDAVIA.

MOLDAVIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the Sea, on the Weſt with *Tranſylvania*; on the North with the River *Nieſter*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolemie* and the Antients, by which parted from *Podolia* a Province of *POLAND*; and on the South with *Walachia*.

It is ſo called, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Mœtavia* from its neerneſſe to the fens of *Mœotis*, or rather from the *Hunnes* and other people of thoſe fennes, who poſſeſſed the ſame. Others conceive that it was at firſt called *Maurdavia*, i. e. *nigrorum Davorum Regio*, the countrey of the *black Davi*, (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we finde in *Strabo* and ſome others:) ſo named from their complexion or the colour of their *Caps* and other garments; as *Nigra Ruſſia*, a neere neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occaſion. But the more probable opinion (as I take it) is, that it tooke this name from the River *Moldava* which runneth through it; as the *Moravians* had that name from the River *Morava*.

The countrey is very fruitfull in corn, wine, graſſe, and wood, but more uſed for *paſturage* then *tillage*, by reaſon of the great want of people to manure the land: by meanes whereof it affordeth great plenty of *Beefe* and *Mutton*, whereby they ſupply ſome parts of *Poland*, and the populous City of *Conſtantinople*. And theſe they iſſue out in ſo great a number, that the *tenth penny* exacted by the Prince or *Vaivod*, in the way of *Cuſtome*, amounteth to 150000 Crownes *per annum*: and yet the *Clergy* and the *Gentry* are diſcharged of this *impoſt*. But the maine trade of this Countrey is not driven by the *Natives*, the Port-townes being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Raguzian* Merchants, who foreſtall the *Markets*, and barter all their corn and wine into *Ruſſia* and *Poland*; their skins, wax, honey, powdered beefe, Pulſe, and butter into *Conſtantinople*.

The countrey is in a manner round, the *Diameter* each way being neere upon 300 *Engliſh* miles: but ſo ill-inhabited by reaſon of the neighbourhood of the *Turkes*, *Tartars*, and *Polonian Coſacks*, that certain *Engliſh* Gentlemen having in the yeare 1609. travelled at leaſt 240 miles in the countrey, could meet in all the way but nine townes and villages; and for an hundred miles together, the graſſe ſo high that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattell to eat it, and of men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities, or townes of note: though it afford two Archbiſhops, and two Biſhops Sees, followers (as all the reſt of the people are) of the traditions and doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The principall of thoſe which be are 1 *Occazoma*, or *Zucconia*, the *Vaivods* ſeat, 2 *Fucciania*, 3 *Fazeling*, of which little memorable: 4 *Kotjim*, a place of great ſtrength on the borders of *Poland*: by ſome called *Cocbina*, the ordinary *magazeen* of the countrey: 5 *Iaſſy* commonly called *Yas*, the chief Town for wealth and trade in all this Province: 6 *Bender*, *Nieſter*; on the *Euxine* Sea. 7 *Polada* neer the *Danow*, 8 *Biaolograd* or *Bologrove* ſituate on or neer the river *Tyras*, now called a ſtrong town againſt the *Tartars* and *Polonians*. 9 *Kele*, antiently called *Achilleia*, ſituate on the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the moſt part compaſſed round with the waters of it; and therefore ſaid by *Ptolemie* to be an Iſland. 10 *Ac Germen*, of old called *Aſprocaſtron*, & *Moncaſtrum*, a very ſtrong Town in the ſame coaſt alſo: both taken by *Baiazet* the ſecond Emperour of the *Turkes*, *anno* 1485. But theſe three Towns are not ſo properly in *Moldavia*, at leaſt not in *Moldavia* properly ſo called, as in a little Province called *Beſſarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*, formerly counted part thereof, till conquerred by the *Turkes* in the year aforeſaid, it became a member of that Empire. A tract inhabited by the *Beſſi* in the times of *Ptolemie*, who being drive out of their countrey by the *Bulgarians*, ſetled themſelves (as ſome ſay) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Boſnia*.

The whole Countrey following the fortune of *Tranſylvania*, and the reſt of *Dacia* till the coming of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, was for a while accompted part of the *Ruſſian* Empire; till the diſmembring of that Empire by the *Tartars*. After which time it was ſometimes *Homager* to the *Polanders*, ſometimes to the *Hungarians*, according as the *Vaivods* or Princes of it could finde beſt conditions. By *Mahomet* the Great it was made *tributary* to the *Turkes*; but the *tribute* at the firſt very light and eaſie, not above 2000 Crownes, *per annum*: that mighty Emperour, who aimed at more profitable conqueſts, being loth to ſpend his Forces on ſo poore a purchaſe, as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Baiazet* his ſon, finding how fit it lay for the more abſolute command of the *Euxine* Sea, tooke in that part hereof, which is called *Beſſarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkiſh* Province, *anno* 1485. as before was ſaid, impoſing on the reſt an increaſe of the former *tribute*, and ſo left it unto the diſpoſall of its naturall Princes. After which time the *Vaivods* fearing to be made Vaſſals to the *Turkes*, did many times riſe in Armes againſt them; aided therein ſometimes by the *Hungarians*, and ſometimes by the *Polander*; which laſt pretended to the Soveraignty and *chiefage* of it. *Bogdanus* Vaivod hereof in the time of *Selimus* the ſecond uniting himſelfe more cloſely with the *Polonians*; became thereby ſuſpected by the *Turkiſh* Tyrant, who with a great power chaſed him out of his countrey: and gave the ſame unto one *John* a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the

the moſt part in the *Turkiſh* Court (where he renounced his faith, and was circumciſed) under the yeerly tribute of 60000 Crownes. But *John* the new made *Vaivod* was no ſooner ſetled, but he returned again to his firſt *Religion*, and for that cauſe grew leſſe affected by the *Turkes*: Which being obſerved by the then Vaivod of *Valachia*, he practiſed to obtain that dignity for his brother *Peter*, offering to double the ſaid *tribute*; and to aſſiſt in ſubjugation of the Coûntrey. The *Turk* accepting of theſe offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Valachians*, 30000 *Turkes*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fall into *Moldavia*: and were ſo gallantly received by the noble *Vaivod*, that few of them eſcaped the ſlaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old friend *Czarnieviche*; and againſt faith given barbarouſly murdered by the *Turkiſh Baſſa*: *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turkes*, and was united to that Empire, *an.* 1574. the *Vaivods* from that time forwards, being nominated by the *Turkiſh* Emperours, and governing as *ſubſtitutes* and Lievtenants for and under them. And though *Aaron* one of the ſucceeding *Vaivods* did ſhake off this yoke, and confederated himſelf with *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania*, and *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, for defence of themſelves and their *Eſtates* againſt that Enemy; yet being afterwards ſupplanted by *Roſwan* one of his own ambitious ſubjects, and that confederacie diſjointed; it became ſubject firſt unto the *Polonians* by the power and practiſe of *Zamoyskie*, Chancellour of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus* Emperour of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turke*, as before it was. And though the *Polanders* have ſince made uſe of ſome opportunities in impoſing *Vaivods* on this countrey, in deſpite of the *Turkes*; yet was it commonly to their owne loſſe, little or no benefit to the *Moldavians*: and in the end drew the whole power of the *Turkes* upon themſelves in the reign of *Oſman*: never ſince intermedling in the affaires of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the *Turkes* diſpoſing; who receive hence ſome yearly tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire poſſeſſion of it, ſo long ſince aimed at by thoſe Tyrants. *Valachia.*

3 *VALACHIA.*

VALACHIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Moldavia* and a branch of the *Iſter*, or *Danubius* bending towards the North; on the Weſt with *Raſcia*; on the North with *Tranſylvania*, and ſome part of *Moldavia*, and on the South with the *Danubius* wholly, by which parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. Firſt called *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus*, a Noble *Roman*, who on the conqueſt hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought hither an *Italian* Colonie; afterwards by corruption *Vlachia*, and at laſt *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Vlachia*, was at firſt of a more large extent, then it is at preſent; comprehending all *Moldavia* alſo: divided in thoſe times by a ridge of Mountaines, into *Ciſalpina*, and *Tranſalpinaa*; the name of *Moldavia*, being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and ſpecially ſo called) unto the other. The people of both in token of their firſt extraction, ſpeak a corrupt *Latine* or *Italian* language: but in matters of *Religion* follow the dictates of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; under whom all *Eccleſiaſticall* affairs are governed by one *Archbiſhop* and two *Biſhops*. In other things they partake generally of the rudeneſſe and barbarity of thoſe Nations which have ſince ſubdued them; being a rough hewn people, hardly civilized, ignorant for the moſt part of *letters* and all *liberall ſciences*: not weaned perfectly (in ſo long time of their poſſeſſion of *Chriſtianity*) from the ſuperſtitions of the *Gentiles*; ſwearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marying, and unmarying at their pleaſures; much given to *magicall* charms, and incantations; and burying with their dead both clothes and victuals, for their relief in that long journey to the other world.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 miles: the countrey for the moſt part plain, and very fertile; affording ſtore of Cattell, a breed of excellent Horſes, *iron-mines*, ſalt-pits, and all proviſions neceſſarie to the life of man. Some *vines* they alſo have, and not few *mines* of gold and ſilver, more then for feare of the *Turkes* and other ill neighbours they dare diſcover: begirt about with woodie mountaines, which afford them fewell; and very well watered with the Rivers of *Pruth*, called antiently 1 *Hieraſus*, 2 *Stertius*, 3 *Fulmina*, 4 *Teln*, 5 *Alluta*, all of them falling into 6 the *Danow*; which in this Province, at the influx of *Fulmina* takes the name of *Iſter*: yet is it not (at the preſent) very populous, the ſpaciouſneſſe and fertilitie hereof conſidered; by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Coſſackes*: their late long wars againſt thoſe Nations and the *Dutch*, having much decreaſed their former numbers: with which they ſo abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this countrey in the year 1473. was able upon little warning to bring 70000 men into the field for a preſent ſervice.

Places of moſt note herein are 1 *Galatz* on the influx of the River *Pruth* or *Hieraſus* into the *Danubius*, the waters of which River are ſo unwholeſome, that it cauſeth the body to ſwell. 2 *Treſcortum*, not far from which they dig a bituminous earth, ſo refined and pure, that uſually they make Candles of it inſtead of wax. 3 *Prailaba*, by ſome called *Brailovia*, the town of moſt trade in all this countrey; ſituate on the *Danow*, and defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle fortified by Art, and Nature, and furniſhed with a ſtrong garriſon of *Turkes*, as the key of this Province, opening the dore unto the reſt. The town moſt cruelly deſtroyed and razed to the ground, with an incredible ſlaughter of the Inhabitants of all ſexes, ages, for the ſpaces of four dayes together: by *John* the *Vaivod* of *Moldavia* ſpoken of before, at his firſt revolting from the *Turkes*: but the Caſtle in regard of the great ſtrength of it, ſcarce attempted by him. 4 *Teina*, a Fortreſſe of great ſtrength, but in the hands of the *Turkes* alſo. 5 *Zorza*, corruptly for *San-Georgio*, ſeated on the *Danow*, with an arm whereof the

Valachia.

Caſtle of it is encompaſſed, garriſoned by the *Turkes*, and by them held to be ſo ſtrong and ſo ſafe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigiſmund* the Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *an.* 1596. there were found in it 39 great peeces of Ordinance with ſuch ſtore of *Armes* and *Ammunition* as might well have ſerved for a whole kingdome. 6 *Tergoviſta*, ſometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Vaivod*, till the taking of it by the *Turkes*: once beautified with a fair and famous Monaſtery, by the *Turkes* converted into a fortreſſe, environed with deep trenches, ſtrong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great ſtore of Ordinance: but many times loſt and got againe according to the changes and chance of war. 7 *Bucareſta*, about a dayes journey from *Tergoviſta*, ſeated on the *Danow*, remarkable for two bridges built neer unto it: the one of Boats, (the laying whereof took up no leſſe then an whole moneths time) for the tranſporting of the Army of *Sinan Baſſa*, againſt *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania* before mentioned: and broken down by the ſaid *Baſſa* in his flight, having bern worſted in all places by the *Tranſylvanian*. The other work of the Emperour *Trajan* in his warre againſt *Decebalus* King of *Dacia*, built all of ſtone, and laid on piles and Arches of a wonderfull greatneſſe; 24 piles or pillars whereof are yet remaining to the great admiration of all beholders. 8 *Cebium*, of old called *Lycoſtomos*, in vain beſieged by the forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in perſon to ſubdue this petit Province. 9 *Zarmizegethuſa*, the ſeat Royall of *Decebalus* king of *Dacia*, taken and deſtroyed by *Trajan* in his war againſt him: who cauſing it to be repaired and beautified more then formerly, gave it the priviledges of *Rome*, and the name of *Ulpia Trajana*; which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Now a ſmall village called *Vetzel*. Some ſtones have been digged hereabouts up with this inſcription, *COLONIA ULPIA TRAJANA, AUG. DACIE. ZARMIS*: which cleerly ſhew as well the dignity and eſteem, as the antiquity of the place before *Trajans* time.

This Province, as the reſt of *Dacia*, on that ſide of the *Danow*, after the coming in of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, was under Princes of their own, whom they called (as thoſe of *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings they lived long in peace, till ſenſible of the approaching danger which the conqueſt of moſt part of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* by the *Turkes*, was like to bring them: the *Vaivod* of it in the time of *Baiazet* the firſt paſſed over the *Danow* with his Forces, and having done great ſpoil on the *Turkiſh* Territories, returned againe into his countrey. Rather provoked then weakened with which invaſion, *Baiazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the *Vaivod* in a pitched field, compelling him to ſue for peace, and to pay him *tribute*. But *Baiazet* being not long after taken Priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and the ſucceſſion controverted amongſt his ſonnes, the impoſed *tribute* was with-held; till *Mahomet* the fift King of the *Turkes*, having ſetled the affaires of that tottering State, *anno* 1417. enforced them to a new compoſition, and the payment of all former reckonings. The fortunate ſucceſſes of *Huniades* in ſeverall battels induced them once more to change their *Maſters*, and to put themſelves under the protection of the *Hungarians*, as they had been formerly, but they paid deere for it: their countrey being made the *Thorow-fare* of the *Turkiſh* forces in their attempts upon that Kingdome. But the *Hungarians* being vanquiſhed at the battell of, *Caſſova* by *Amurath* the ſecond, the accuſtomed tribute was brought in, and the *Turkes* ſatisfied for the preſent, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderbeg*. Not long after in the yeare 1462. *Mahomet* the Great undertooke the conqueſt of this Countrey, upon advertiſement that *Wladus* the then *Vaivod* of it intended to joine with the *Hungarians* in ſome war againſt him: and finding how unprofitably he had ſpent his Forces in fighting againſt woods, mountaines, and a waſted countrey, he ſet up *Dracala* the younger brother of *Wladus*, to claim the Government, who making a party amongſt the people, and having the *Turk* for his aſſiſtance and ſupport, poſſeſſed himſelfe of the eſtate, to be holden of him as a *Vaſſall* to the *Turkiſh* Empire. And it continued in this ſtate, the *Vaivods* being after this at the *Turkes* appointment, and paying all exactions impoſed upon them, till the revolt of *Sigiſmund* the Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *anno* 1595. at what time *Michael* the then *Vaivod* hereof, taking that opportunity to ſhake off this yoak, confederated with him and the *Moldavian* for their common ſafety. And though he held out longer againſt *Turk* and *German* then either of the other did; diſcomfited the *Turkes* by his own proper Forces at the battell of *Nicopolis*, vanquiſhed the *Tranſylvanians*, and added that Province for a while unto this Eſtate, yet being at laſt outed of his countrey by the *Polanders*, and an other put into his place, he was ſhamefully ſlain in his own Tent by the privitie and conſent of *Baſta*, Lievtenant of *Rodolphus* Emperour, and King of *Hungary*. After whoſe death the countrey miſerably diſtracted betwixt two *Vaivods*, the one placed by the Emperour *Rodolph*, and the other by *Mahomet* the *Grand Signieur*; endured all the ſpoil and wrack which ſo calamitous a competition could bring upon it: till in the end the fortune of the *Turkes* prevailing, the *Valachians* were conſtrained to ſubmit unto their diſpoſall, and receive their *Vaivods* from that Court as they had done formerly; performing their accuſtomed duties, and paying ſuch yearly *tribute* is as laid upon them. Which notwithſtanding partly by their owne naturall unquietneſſe, and partly by the ambition of ſuch perſons as contend for that dignity; they have ſince been many times embroyled in wars; never ſo quietly compoſed, but that a new hope, or the artifices of the *Turkiſh* Miniſters ſtarts them into action. By meanes whereof when they have tired and ſpent themſelves in their own combuſtions, they may in fine be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the *Turkiſh* Monarchie.

4 RASCIA.

RASCIA is bounded on the East with *Valachia*, on the West with *Hungary*; on the North with *Transilvania*, and on the South with the River *Danow*: encompassed on three sides with that River, and another now called *Temes*, by the *Latines*, *Samus*; and on the East divided from *Valachia* by the River *Alluta*: Called *Rascia* from the *Rasciani*, a *Sclavonian* people, whom *Ortelius* placeth in this tract; and from him *Maginus*.

Places of most importance in it are 1 *Chrysonicum*, an old town almost wholly ruinated, till fortified by the *Turkes*, *anno* 1449. who marking the convenient situation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, opposite to the influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiously it stood to command and annoy the Countrey; made it their first work to possesse themselves of it. 2 *Bodon*, upon the *Danow* also, a town of trade, memorable for the *Marts* or Fairs which are here held annually. 3 *Zarnovia*, 4 *Covin*, 5 *Novebarde*, 6 *Severin*, not far from which, betwixt it and *Bucaresta* a Town of *Valachia*, are the remainders of *Trajans* bridge before mentioned. 7 *Colambes*, 8 *Columbella*.

These *Rascians*, as before is said, were a tribe of *Sclaves*, setled in this countrey at the time of their first spreading in the East, and here continuing ever since in possession of it. Governed at first by their own Princes, whom by a name borrowed from the *Grecians*, they called their *Despots*: that being once the title of the heir apparent or designed successour of the *Eastern* Empire, as *Cæsar* had been formerly in the Empire of *Rome*. But as the following Emperours did affect new titles, so that of *Despot* fell from one step to another, till given at last unto the *Governours* of *Provinces*, as the *Despot* of *Epirus*, *Peloponnesus*, &c. and in the end assumed by the severall Princes of *Rascia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. How this estate became united unto *Servia*, I am yet to seek: but sure I am it was united in the person of *George*, *Despot* of *Servia*, and as a part of his estate surprized by *Amurath* the second, who boasted his successe therein (in a speech made unto his souldiers at the siege of *Belgrade*) notwithstanding that he had to strive with *hunger*, *thirst*, *labour*, and *desperation*. So that depending as it did, on the fortune of *Servia*, we shall there hear more of it: here adding onely by the way, that at the time when *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* had wonne so many noble victories against the *Turkes*, 10000 of these *Rascians* casting off that yoke, offered themselves unto his service: the onely memorable action which is told us of them since their subjection to the *Turke*; though that was onely the attempt of some private *Adventurers*, the whole Nation still continuing in obedience, as before they did.

And thus we see by whom the whole Province of *old Dacia* became in part possessed, and in part made *tributary* to the *Turkes*: the whole being so at their disposing, that before the *Revolt* of the three Provinces so often mentioned, it yeelded one way with another into the *Treasury* of the *Grand Signeur* no lesse then a million of *Ducats* yearly. *Knolles* in his *Turkish* History doth report it so. And his *Continuatour* doth affirm, that *Moldavia* onely before the said revolt, did yearly yeeld unto the *Turk* a whole *tun* of gold, 2000 horses for service, 10000 great measures of wheat, with as much barley, and a wonderfull proportion of butter, honey, and other victuals, adding withall that the other two Provinces paid as much or more for their yearly *tribute*. After which rate the estimate made by *Knolles* may hold very good. But since the reduction of these Countries to their former obedience, the *Turkes* have been more moderate in their *exactions* then they were before, for feare of startling them to some new engagement, whom they have brought to this obedience and conformity with such a vast expence both of bloud and treasure, as would have purchased the best Kingdome of *Christendom* in the open market. In somuch that the ordinary tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 *Chequins*, that for *Valachia* but 24000 of the same coyne: besides 1000 horses yearly sent from both. Such bribes and presents as are given by the *Vaivods* hereof, either to get or hold their places being Merchantable ware, and wholly at the *Turkes* disposing, not being part of this Accompt. Which said we will passe over the *Danow*, and looke upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia nova* or *New Dacia*, containing after our accompt foure Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, that is to say, both *Mysias*, *Scythia*, and *Dardania*, besides the two *Dacias*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripensis*, interjected betwixt the two *Mysias* as before is said: all now reduced onely unto two of the *Turkish* Provinces, namely the Countries of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*.

5 SERVIA.

SERVIA is bounded on the East with *Bulgaria*, on the West with *Bosnia*, and some part of the *Lower Hungary*; on the North with the *Danubius*, by which parted from *Rascia*; on the South with *Albania*, and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Mysia superior*, and a great part of *Dardania*; and tooke this new name from the *Servii*, or *Serabi*, a *Sclavonian* people, of whom more hereafter.

Servia. The Countrey very rich and fruitfull, brfore the conquest of it by the *Turkes*; well stored with *mines* of gold, and silver, especially about *Zerbenic*, a strong town hereof. The people rude and grosse, and much given to wine; false of their promises and that upon slight occasions, so that there is but little trust to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey are *Colubra*, and 2 *Lim*, falling into the *Savus*, 3 *Ibar* falling into 4 *Morava*, as that into the *Danow* over against *Chrysonicum*, or *Cruscveccia*, a strong town of *Rascia*. Principall towns hereof 1 *Nissa*, the *Nessum* as I take it of *Ptolemie*; by whom said to be a City of the *Dardanians*, now the *Metropolis* of this countrey, and the key thereof; besieged and taken by *Amurath* the third King of the *Turks*, *anno* 1367. 2 *Vidina*, by the *Turkes* called *Kiratow*, taken by *Feris Beg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the first; and ever since the seat of a Turkish *Sanziack* under the *Beglerbeg* or Bassa of *Temeswar*. 3 *Cratova*, and 4 *Zerbenic*, rich in silver mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Countrey. 5 *Simandria*, or *Senderovia*, by some called *Spenderobe*; by the *Hungarians Zendrem*, by the *Turkes Semunder*; situate on the *Danow* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amurath* the second, *anno* 1438. since governed by a Turkish *Sanziack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. 6 *Novegrad* in the borders hereof, fortified with an impregnable Castle. 7 *Stonibourg* (in *Latine Stonibrigadun*) the ordinary seat of the antient *Despots*. 8 *Prisden*, said by *Mercator* to be the birth-place of the Emperour *Justinian*; most like to be *Tauresium*, a City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the birth-place of that Emperour, by whom repaired and fortified with four great Turrets, thence called *Tetrapyrgon*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Labrida*, a town of *Bulgaria*; of which more hereafter. 9 *Scopi*, by *Ptolemie* called *Scipi*, and 10 *Ulpianum*, first built by *Trajan*, whose forename was *Ulpius*, afterwards re-edified by the said *Justinian*, and called *Secunda Justiniana*, (*Justiniana Prima* being in *Bulgaria*) now a poore Village called *Pirethy* as *Lazius*; or *Czanadre* as *Martin Niger* is of opinion. 11 *Rhæiaria*, by *Ptolemie* for distinction sake, called *Rhætiaria Mysorum*, then the chief City of the *Mysians*; of which now no ruines are remaining. 12 *Ravenitzen*, the *Vendenis* of *Ptolemie*, but not else observable

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, such as are most considerable in the story of it, were the *Bastarnæ*, the *Dardani*, and the *Mæsi*: the *Triterneſii*, and *Picenſii*, spoken of by *Ptolemie*, being either branches of the *Mæsi*, or else an obscure people not worth the looking after. Of these the *Dardanians* were most antient, inhabiting neere Mount *Hæmus*, on the borders of *Macedon*; a barbarous people, and perpetuall Enemies of that Crown, most mischievous in their attempts and designes against it, in the declining state thereof, making great and frequent inrodes into that wealthy Countrey, with the spoiles whereof they inriched themselves. Insomuch that *Philip* the Father of *Perseus* finding no other likely means to be rid of that trouble, negotiated with the *Bastarne* a strong and hardie Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their owne dwellings, and come to him with their wives and children, promising to assist them in rooting out the *Dardanians*, and give them possession of their Countrey. But *Philip* dying as the *Bastarne* were in their march through *Thrace*, and no care taken by his sonne to pursue the businesse, they returned all home againe except 30000, which pierced into *Dardonia*, and made their own fortunes as they could. This practise as it gave matter of quarrell to the *Romans*, against the *Macedonian*, so it occasioned *Perseus* the sonne of *Philip*, to make use of these *Bastarnæ* against the *Romans*, at whose request 10000 horse and as many foot passed over the *Danow* under the conduct of *Claudicus*, a King amongst them. But finding that *Perseus* was too strait-laced to part with money for their pay, they returned againe; forraging the Countrey as they passed: but whether they passed over that River, or mingled themselves with the rest of their Nation, who upon *Philips* invitation had before come over, that I doe not find. However, coming by this means acquainted with the sweets of this Countrey, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardanians*, or bordering neer them; insomuch as *Tacitus* for the most part joins them both together, either as the same, or a neighbouring Nation, first vanquished and added to the *Roman* Empire by *Cn. Curio Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the *civil* wars, raised by *Spartacus* & the *Fencers*, or *Gladiatores*: the *Mysians* or the *Mæsi* being broken at the same time also, *an. V. C.* 681. As for the *Mæsi* being the last and greatest of these Nations, they were most probably a Colonie of the *Mysians* of the *lesser Asia*, antiently called *Mysi*, and the Country *Mysia*, as those *Asians* were; and as those *Europeans* are by the *Greek* writers generally, and by *Florus* and some others amongst the *Latines*: though after for distinction sake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally most *Latine* Authours give them the name of *Mæsi*. A fierce and savage people they were held to be, *Barbari barbarorum*, as my Authour calleth them; more *barbarous* then commonly the *Barbarians* were: but for all that, subdued by M. *Licinius Crassus* in the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who overcame them in two battels, and after vanquished the *Bastarnæ* and their King *Deldo* whom hee killed in fight; the Countrey reckoned after that as a *Roman* Province. Continuing in this estate, till the fall of the Eastern Empire, it was subjected by the *Sclavi* or *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; and in the division of the spoile fell unto the *Sorabi* a *Sclavonian* people; contractedly called *Sorbi*, and at last *Serbi*, *Servi*, and the Countrey *Servia*. Reduced againe to the obedience of the Eastern Emperours by *Basilius Porphyrogenitus*, *an. Ch.* 1000. or thereabouts; more absolutely conquered by *John* and *Manuel Comnenus*, two of his successours: but so as they were suffered to live under their owne *Princes*, whom they called *Despots*, Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. First set on by the *Turkes* in the time of *Lazarus* the *Despot*, from whom *Amurath* the first tooke the towne of *Nissa*, being the chief of all this Countrey: provoked thereto by the great forces which the *Servians* and *Bulgarians* had raised against him, for the siege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus* terrified

fied with this losse, made his peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out againe into open war, in which he was overcome and slaine in the plaines of *Cossova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* succeeded *Stephen* who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turkes* being in the mean time embroyled in warre amongst themselves by the sonnes of *Baiazet*. But that difference being once composed, and *Mahomet* absolutely setled in his Fathers throne; the *Turks* begun again to pursue this quarrell: which *George* the son of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the second, son of *Mahomet*, paying the *Turk* an yearly *tribute*, and giving him his daughter *Mary* for a wife or Concubine. But this alliance did not so well unite their affections, (though *George* did many ill Offices in regard thereof to his *Christian* neighbours) nor so well settle his estate; but that *Amurath* in fine dispossessed him first of *Rascia*, and afterwards of *Servia* also, for letting *Huniades* escape whom hee had in his power. And though *Amurath* was necessitated to restore *Servia* again, upon the peace made with *Vladislaus* the King of *Hungary*; yet *Mahomet the Great*, on the death of *George*, soone possessed himselfe of it. For *Lazarus* the youngest of *Georges* sonnes having deprived *Stephen* and *George* his elder Brethren (whose eyes *Amurath* had before put out to make them uncapable of the Government) of the principality; compelled them to seek to *Mahomet* for aid. But dying whilest these matters were in agitation, his widow put her selfe and her three sonnes *Peter*, *John*, and *Martin*, under the protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that meanes, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blinde Brethren still soliciting the *Turkes* against her) held the State a while: till the people finding no assurance in that kinde of government, and weary of the dayly harmes they received from the *Turkes*, yeelded themselves absolutely to the power of *Mahomet*, about the yeare 1460, continuing ever since a Province of the *Turkish* Empire.

Bulgaria.

6 BULGARIA.

BULGARIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine Sea*; on the West with *Servia*, on the North with the River *Danow*, which is here called *Ister*; on the South with *Thrace*. Called formerly by the name of *Mysia inferior*, as lying lower then the other on the course of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the water was called *Mysia superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Cesars* in the Empire of *Diocletian*; born in this countrey neere the borders of *Thrace*; not far from the City of *Sardica*, who therefore in the Martyrologies of the middle times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* people, who in the yeare 566. possessed themselves of it.

The Countrey for the most part full of sharp and rugged hills, branches of the great Mountaine *Hamus*, which divides it from *Thrace*, and spred themselves over all this Province, in somuch that even the midlands of it are rough and stony; and though the lower parts have some plains and valleys, yet are they generally full of Woods and Deserts; the most unpleasant, and least peopled part of both the *Dacias*. The Inhabitants hereof in some conformity to the countrey, are patient of all toil and labour, and not easily tired; but nothing is more troublesome then their conversation: more full of courage, then of valour, their courage not proceeding by the rules of reason, but issuing onely out of brutishnesse, or a naturall fiercenesse.

Places of most note in it, are 1 *Axium*, or *Axiopolis*, on the bankes of *Danubius*, which from this town begins to take the name of *Ister*. It is now called *Colonamich*, of no great fame otherwise. 2 *Dinogetia*, by *Antonine* called *Dinigutia*, now *Drimago*, situate also on the *Ister*, opposite to the influxe of *Hierasus*, and the town of *Galatz*. 3 *Mesembria*, situate on the *Euxine*, and still retaining the old name; in *Strabo*, by some errour of the *Transcribers* called *Menebria*. 4 *Marcianopolis*, on the *Ister* or *Danubius* also, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his sister, whence it had the name: in vain besieged by the *Gothes*, at their first irruptions on this countrey; and afterwards much mentioned in the stories of that warlike people; for many bickerings, and some great battels they had neere it with the Emperour *Claudius*, in one of which overthrowne by him wich a mighty slaughter. 5 *Nicopolis* (by the *Turkes* called *Nigebol*) built by the same *Trajan* on the *Danow*, at the fall of the River *Iatre*, at his returne from the conquest of *Dacia*, whence the occasion of the name; the word *Nicopolis* signifying the *City of Victorie*: sufficiently memorable for the founder of it, more for the many great battels fought neer unto it; whereof two the principall. The first, that of *Sigismund* the Emperour and King of *Hungary*, besieging it with an Army of 130000 *Christians*, in the time of *Baiazet* the first (whose Father *Amurath* had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*) the issue of which siege was this, that *Baiazet* coming to raise the siege, obtained the victory with the loss of 60000 *Turks*: the army of the *Christians* being wholly routed, 20000 slain, all the rest almost taken prisoners; and the young Emperor forced to flie by Sea to *Thrace*, thence unto *Constantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*; and at last after 18 months absence to his Realm of *Hungary*: the other (as it were in revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the *Vaivod* got a remarkable victory, and as the fruits thereof sacked the City it self, carrying thence great spoil and booty, and infinite multitudes of people, with some whereof he made up his Army, sending the rest to inhabit and manure the void and desert places of his own Dominions. 6 *Sophia*, called *Tibiscum* in the time of *Ptolemie*, repaired by the Emperour *Justinian*, who gave it this name from a famous and magnificent Temple, founded and dedicated by him unto St. *Sophia*. The ordinary *Residence* for these late times of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, who hath the chiefe command of *Europe* under the grand *Signieur*: once taken by *Huniades*, and by him at the command of *Vladislaus* King of *Hungary*, burnt unto the ground; but afterwards repaired and more strongly fortified, then it had beene formerly. 7 *Varna*, antiently called *Dionysiopolis*, situate

Bulgaria. ſituate on the *Euxine* Sea, neer the borderes of *Thrace*: remarkable for the great defeat ſthere given the *Chriſtians*; the firſt flight of *Huniades* from the face of the *Turkes*, and the death of *Uladiſlaus* King of *Hungary*, ſpoken of before. 8 *Sumium*, 9 *Pezechium*, 10 *Calacrium*, 11 *Galata*, and 12 *Macropolis*; all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Varna*, and loſt againe upon the iſſue of that battell. 13 *Siliſtria*, at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary abode of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*: delivered to *Amurath* the firſt, by *Saſmenos*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vaine hope to ſave thereby the reſt of his countrey. 14 *Paraſtlaba*, or *Perſtlaba*, the antient ſeat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*; till the taking of it by *John Zimiſces* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, by whom cauſed to be called *Johannopolis*: but it ſoon loſt that new name, and is now an ordinary village called *Peretalaw*. 15 *Ternova*, the uſuall ſeat or *reſidence* of the later Princes of this countrey, at the conqueſt of it by the *Turkes*. 16 *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this countrey; but being taken by *Huniades* in the courſe of his victories, it was by him burnt downe to the ground, as having been the cauſe of much warre to the *Chriſtians* there: ſuppoſed to be built in or neer the place, where once ſtood the old City of *Oeſcus*, the principall town of the *Triballi*, called therefore *Oeſcus Triballorum*; though ſome will have that City to be now called *Blida*. 17 *Venuzina*, a towne of great ſtrength, and one of the firſt peeces taken by the *Turkes*. 18 *Coſſova*, fatall to the *Chriſtians*, who in the plaines hereof had two main defeates: the firſt by *Amurath* the firſt, who here diſcomfited *Lazarus* the *Deſpot* of *Servia*, and the greateſt Army that the *Chriſtians* ever raiſed againſt the *Turkes*: *Lazarus* himſelfe being ſlain in the fight, and *Amurath* himſelfe ſhortly after the battell ſtabbed in the belly by one *Miles Cobelitz*, a wounded and halfe dead ſouldier, as he was taking a view of the dead bodies which lay there in heaps. The laſt by *Amurath* the ſecond to the famous *Huniades*, whom he here diſcomfited after a cruell fight continuing three dayes together; in which were ſlain 17000 *Chriſtians*, and amongſt them the greateſt part of the *Hungarian* Nobility, *Huniades* put againe to flight, and forced to ſome extremities to preſerve his life, the *Turkes* buying this great victory with the loſſe of 40000 men, as themſelves confeſſed. The place in which theſe fields were fought, called the *Plaines of Coſſova*, extendeth 20 miles in length, and 5 miles in breadth, incompaſſed round with pleaſant mountaines in the form of a *Theater*; as if it were deſigned by Nature for a *ſtage* of action. 19 *Doroſtorum*, by ſome of the Antients called *Rhodoſtolon*, the ſeat in *Ptolemies* time of the firſt *Legion* called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief townes which the *Roſſes* and *Ruſſians* had in this countrey: from whom taken by *John Zimiſces* the *Eaſtern* Emperour, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinate. 20 *Achrida*, the birth-place of *Juſtinian*, by whom beautified and enlarged, and called *Juſtiniana Prima*: who raiſing the *Dioceſe* of *Dacia* into a Præfecture placed here a *Primate* for the affaires of the Church, (which honour it doth ſtill retaine, the Biſhop hereof being the *Primate* of all *Dacia*,) and a *Præfectus Prætorio*, for affaires of State. But he being dead, the town returned to its old name, now called *L' Ochrida*, contracted by *William* of Tyre to *Acre*; by the *Turkes* called *Giuſtandill*; a diſtinct *Principate* of it ſelfe in the time of *Amurath* the firſt, and by him made *tributary* at his firſt warre upon this countrey.

And here it is to be obſerved that theſe parts of this countrey which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea, had antiently the name of *Pontus*; as had ſome parts of *Aſia Minor* which bordered on the ſame Sea alſo: and that the City of *Tone* as *Ptolemie*, or *Tomos* as *Pliny* calls it, to which *Ovid* was baniſhed by *Auguſtus Ceſar*, was a City of this *European Pontus*, and not of the *Perſian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomi* is by *Ptolemie* placed amongſt the Cities of *Mœſia inferior*, and by *Ovid* on the Weſt or left ſide of the *Euxine*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by theſe lines of his.

Cum maris Euxini *poſitos ad læva* Tomitas
Quærere me læſi Principis *ira jubet.*

that is to ſay,

My wronged Princes wrath commands me bide
At Tomos *on the Euxines Weſtern ſide.*

The place at this day called *Tomiſwar*, according to *Caelius Calcagninus*; but others would have it to be the ſame which is now named *Kievia*, in the ſame tract alſo; not farre from which is ſaid to be a Lake called to this day *Owidow Jezcocoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cauſe hither baniſhed is not yet agreed on. Some ſay it was for the unlawfull pleaſures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperours daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorum* under the borrowed name of *Corinna*. Others imagine that he had ſeen *Auguſtus* himſelfe unnaturally uſing the company of the ſame *Julia*, his daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his book *de Triſtibus*, ſaying, *Cur aliquid vidi, cur noxia lumina feci, &c.* A Crime, of which I dare not thinke that noble Emperor to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatſoever was the true reaſon of it, that which was openly pretended was the writing of thoſe laſcivious and inflammatory Books *de Arte amandi*, tending to the debauchment of youth, and corruption of manners: which he in divers places of his workes acknowledgeth for the cauſe thereof.

But to return unto the buſineſs of this country, the antient Inhabitants hereof were towards the Eaſt the *Troglodyta* dwelling neer the mouth or fall of the river *Peuce* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Peucini* inhabiting on the very mouth of it, and in a little Iſland oppoſite thereunto called alſo *Peuce*, now *Pixina*,

Pizina, the *Cribizi*, *Piarenſii*, and *Dimenſii*: the Weſtern parts being wholly taken up by the *Triballi*, the moſt potent Nation of them all: who onely had the happineſſe to vanquiſh *Philip* King of the *Macedonians*. For *Philip* having or pretending a quarrell againſt *Mateas* a King of the *Sarmatians*, entred his countrey, overthrew him in a ſet fight, carried with him great booties, and among other things 20000 *Mares*, for breed, which hee took in the battell: it being the cuſtome of the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians*, to uſe *Mares* onely in the warres, becauſe their not ſtopping in the midſt of a race to piſſe, could be no impediment to them in their flight. In his return homeward, theſe *Triballi* deny him paſſage through their countrey, unleſſe they might partake of the ſpoiles. This being denyed, they fall from words to blowes, and next to a pitched field. In which fight *Philip* was wounded with an Arrow, which paſſing through his thigh nailed him to his ſaddle: his horſe being galled with the wound falling down to the ground. Which the frighted *Macedonians* ſeeing, and ſuppoſing him dead, fled out of the field, leaving all their ſpoiles to the *Triballi*, as if they had been ſent out only to be their Receivers. So true an obſervation is it, that the *very life-bloud of an* Army *runnes chiefly in the veins of the Generall*, or ſupreme Commander. Overtopped after this by the *Mæſi* or mingled with them, they were firſt broken by the *Romans* under the conduct of *Cn. Curio Scribonius*, ſpoken of before, the abſolute Conqueſt of them and the reſt of the *Mæſians* being reſerved for the times of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. By him or his ſucceſſours the whole countrey of the *Mæſians* being caſt into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Mæſia inferior*, that lying Weſtward up the water being called *Mæſia ſuperior*, for diſtinctions ſake. By the Emperour *Aurelianus* the *Dacians* being forced from the other ſide of the *Danow* by the barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their furie were planted here betwixt both the *Myſias*, divided afterwards into two Provinces, taken out of the other, *Mediterranea*, and *Ripenſis*: which with the help of the higher *Myſia*, *Dardania*, *Prevalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole *Dioceſe* of *Dacia*, as before was ſaid. The reſidue hereof now paſſing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces alſo, another Province being taken out of the Eaſt parts of the *Lower Mœſia*, lying betwixt the River *Phaniſſus*, and the moſt northern branch of the *Iſter*, which they called *Scythia*, becauſe the *Aroteres* a *Scythian* people did once poſſeſs it: the *Romans* ambitiouſly affecting to be thought the Conquerrours of that unconquerable Nation. Succeſſively by the *Gothes* and *Hunnes* was this countrey taken from the *Romans*; recovered againe in or before the time of *Juſtinian* who had here his Officers, ſubordinate to the *Vicar* or *Lieutenant* of *Thrace*, to which *Dioceſe* they properly belonged. But long they held not in that State; the *Sclavonians* firſt, and after the *Bulgarians* being maſters of them. Of the firſt of theſe enough hath beene ſaid elſewhere. Theſe latter being a *Scythian* people inhabiting on the banks of the River *Volga*, were at firſt called *Volgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: and though ſome conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar* the chief town of their Nation; but both uncertaine. In the time of the Emperour *Anaſtaſius* they made their firſt ſally into the *Provinces* of the Empire, forraging *Illyricum* and *Thrace*: afterwards in the reign of *Heraclius* hired by *Coſrhoes* the *Perſian* (with many other barbarous Nations) to beſiege *Conſtantinople*. In the reign of *Conſtantine* ſurnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or caſting out the *Sclaves*, they planted themſelves in theſe Countries: compelling the Emperour to compound with them for a ſumme of money, from making any further inroad upon his Dominions. From this time forwards we finde their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*; the firſt of which after their ſetling in theſe parts was *Trebellius* or *Trebellis*, as ſome call him: the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of the *Bulgarians*; by whom *Juſtinian* the ſecond was firſt reſtored unto the Empire, of which he had been outed by *Abſimarus*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to flie unto *Conſtantinople* on ſome breach between them. Growing into good termes with the Eaſtern Emperours, they aided them againſt the *Saracens* then beſieging the *Imperiall* City; of whom they ſlew 22000 as they were forraging the countrey; and in the time of *Leo* the fourth, called *Porphyrogenitus*, they became *Homagers* to the Empire, by whoſe perſwaſion *Telerichus* King of the *Bulgarians* received the Sacrament of *Baptiſme*, and thereupon was honoured by him with a wife of the *Imperiall* family, and the honourable title of a *Patrician*. After this time, the Kings hereof had many priviledges indulged them by the *Conſtantinopolitans*, not uſually communicated unto other Princes, *viz.* their *Crown* of gold, their *tier* or *cap* of ſilke, and their *red ſhoes* for their *Regall*; which were alſo the *Imperiall* ornaments. To theſe Kings alſo, and to theſe onely, did the *Greek* Emperours allow the title of Βασιλεὺς, as being meerly *Imperiall*. Other Kings they called Ρηγὲς, from the *Latine* word *Reges*. Inſomuch that when *Baſilius Macedo* had received letters from Pope *Adrian* the ſecond, wherein *Lewis* the ſecond the Weſtern Emperour was called *Baſileus*; he raſed out that *Imperiall* attribute, and diſpatched an embaſſie to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it as his owne peculiar *Epithite*. Some quarrells after falling out, *Crunus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus* ſucceſſour to the Empereſſe *Irene*, invadeth *Thrace*, taketh the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperour in his tent, and worſteth *Michael* (who ſucceeded) in the open field; *Meſembria*, a principall City of this Countrey being taken and ranſacked by him. But *Bogor* of another temper, not onely did receive the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*, which many of his Predeceſſors had intermitted: but brought his ſubjects (who rebelled on the change of *Religion*, and thereupon were fought with and vanquiſhed by him) to the ſame *faith* alſo: gratified for that cauſe by *Theodora* the Empereſſe, with ſome large acceſſion unto his eſtate. After long warres betwixt the *Bulgarians*, and the following Emperours, the fortune of the *Conſtantinopolitan* did at laſt prevaile: *Samuel* King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 15000 of his ſouldiers taken and deprived of ſight; and the countrey conquer-

Bulgaria.

red

Bulgaria. red by Basilius the second, surnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, *anno* 1015. from that time *tributary* to the *Empire*: to which they did good service in the time of *Constantinus Ducas*, using their help against the *Uzi*, a new swarm of *Scythians* passing over the *Ister* with an Army of 60000 fighting men, and wasting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *John* another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* against *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a very great slaughter; *Baldwin* the Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople* being taken prisoner, sent in bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly murdered, *an.* 1206. Nor were they wanting to assist them against the *Turkes*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the recovery whereof, they raised a great and puissant Army, unfortunately discomfited by the Forces of *Amurath* the first, *an.* 1366. Provoked with which invasion, *Amurath* having setled his affaires in *Asia*, with an Army of 30000 falleth into *Bulgaria*, takes divers places of importance, and prevailed so far, that *Sasmenos* the last Prince hereof, wrapping his *winding sheet* about him, to shew that he had deserved death, prostrates himselfe most abjectly at the tyrants feet, offering to put *Silistria* (his strongest City) into his possession. For not performance of which offer, his countrey is againe invaded, most of it taken from him; permitted to enjoy the rest upon hard conditions, as *vassall* and *tributary* to the *Turk*. But *Bajazet*, *Amurathes* successour not content herewith picked a quarrell with him, and made an absolute conquest of *Bulgaria*, converting it unto a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, *anno* 1396. In which state it hath ever since continued, governed by three *Turkish Sanziacks* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*: the *Sanziacks* residing at *Nicopolis*, *Silistria*, and *Sophia*, in which last the *Beglerbeg* himselfe doth sometimes reside.

There are in *DACIA*.

Archbishops. Bishops.

And so much for *DACIA*.

MOVNT

MOUNT HÆMUS.

BEfore we enter into *Greece* we muſt croſſe *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a ridge of hils extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatick*; and ~~thereby ſeparating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*.~~ ~~So high and~~ ſubject to the weather, that *Stratonicus* an old *Grecian* did uſe to ſay, that *for eight moneths of the yeare it was alwayes cold: for the other foure, winter.* It was affirmed by ſome of the antient writers, that from one of the higheſt heads hereof, as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been diſcerned: the truth of which report upon very good reaſon hath beene called in queſtion. But out of doubt from ſome one top or *Summit* of it, there is ſo full a proſpect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perſeus* taking a ſurvey of the ſite of theſe countreys; *poſitis per abrupta Caſtris, &c.* as the ſtory hath it, was able to make choice of the fitteſt places for Forts and Caſtles, whereby to lock up all the paſſages againſt his enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* ſo rough and craggy, that it is not to be paſſed but at two places onely. Whereof one was made by the Emperour *Trajan*, where is yet to be ſeen a mighty ſtrong gate built of great ſquare ſtone; by which the paſſage that way was either opened or ſhut at the pleaſure of them, who had the keeping of the ſame; with a ſmall force exceeding eaſily defended againſt puiſſant Armies. The other being ſituate neer a little River by the *Bulgarians* called *Saltiza*, not altogether ſo ſtrait and narrow as the other, but riſing high, and full of broken rockes and dangerous precipices, is alike impaſſable, defenſible at eaſe, and without any great danger: as was experimentally found by famous *Huniades*, when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his forces this way, for the ſiege of *Adrianople*. Thoſe parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though ſomewhat opener, are not much eaſier of *aſcent*: the paſſages through the broken rocks and precipices being very difficult; and not eaſily maſtered: inſomuch that when *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon* had fortified the ſtraights hereof againſt the *Romans*; *non reliquiſſe aditum niſi* è cœlo *venientibus videbatur*, it was conceived (ſaith *Florus*) that there was no paſſage left for any forces, unleſſe they fell immediately from the heavens themſelves.

This great and rocky chaine of hils, as they were vehemently expoſed to winde and weather, ſo were they deſtitute of thoſe commodities, which were either comfortable or indeed meerly neceſſarie to the life of man: which made the paſſage over them in a manner impoſſible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of cold and hunger. Yet were they not left deſolate and void of people, ~~eſpecially in thoſe ſides hereof which lay next~~ to *Greece*; but moſt eſpecially in thoſe parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace:* where the ſpurres and branches of the hils ſpreading farre and wide, and taking up a great part of the countrey; occaſioned the *Romans* in the diviſion of the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* into ſeverall Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mœſia*, by the name of *Hæmimontum*, or *Hæmimontana*, the principall Townes whereof were *Adrianople*, *Uſcudoma*, and *Anchialar*; the principall Governour hereof a *Roman Preſident*. Where, by the way we take notice of an Errour in the common impreſſions of the *Code*, *Lib.* VII. *Tit.* 62. *leg.* 23. where we finde *Hæmi montem*, for *Hæmimontum*: the firſt being the name onely of the mountain; and the latter (which is there meant) of the *Roman* Province.

But

But to return unto the *Mountain*, there is another of this name in *Theſſalie*, mentioned (or miſtook for this) by *Servius* in his notes on the firſt book of the *Georgicks*; in the top whereof was ſaid to be the habitation of *Mars*, on the bottome the moſt pleaſant valley of *Tempe*: ſo called from *Hæmus*, the ſon of *Boreas* and *Orithya* amongſt the Poets. And poſſiblie to diſtinguiſh this from that of *Theſſalie*, *Ptolemie*, and others call it *Æmus*, without the *Aſpirat*, though it may well be, that there are others of this name, as that this is called in divers places, or in divers Authors, by other names: one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Ariſtotle*, an other *Scominus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Lavicus* the whole called *Traſelus*. The like may be obſerved at the preſent alſo, *Pinetus* calling it by the name of *Catena Mundi*, a great part whereof it links together: *Cuſpinianus*, *Caſtegnazzo*; *Iazius*, *Krivizne*: the *Italians*, *Mont Argentorato*; the *French*, *Monte de Ceſtegnao*; the *Sclavonians*, *Cumaniza*: and the *Turks*, *Balkan*. Which I have therefore here obſerved for the Readers ſake, that meeting any of theſe names in the ſtories either of the ancient or modern times, he may know what hils or mountains are intended by them. Which ſaid I now paſſe on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

OF

OF
GREECE.

GREECE in the preſent latitude and extent thereof, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Propontick*, *Helleſpont*, and *Ægean* Seas; on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*; on the North with *Mount Hæmus*, which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, and ſome part of *Illyricum*; and on the South with the Sea *Ionian*: So that it is in a manner a *Peninſula* or *Demy-Iſland*, environed on three ſides by the Sea; on the fourth only united to the reſt of *Europe*.

But this is only in relation to the preſent extent hereof, the name being anciently reſtrained within narrower bounds. Confined at firſt to *Attica* and the parts adjoining; *ab Iſthmi anguſtiis Hellas incipit*, as it is in *Plinie*: and took the name of *Hellas* from *Hellen* the ſon of *Deucalion*; as that of *Greece* or *Græcia*, from *Græcus* the ſon of *Cecrops* the firſt King of *Athens*. Communicated afterwards to *Peloponneſus*, then to *Theſſalie* alſo: and finally when the *Macedonian* Empire had inlarged it ſelfe over the petit Common-wealths and Eſtates hereof, it came to be communicated to that Countrie alſo. The people for this cauſe known by divers names, by ſome *Achivi*, by others *Myrmidones*; ſometimes *Pelaſgi*, *Danai*, *Argivi*, *&c.* But the name whereby they are beſt known in *ſacred Writers*, is that of Ἕλληνες, ſo called from *Hellas* the more proper and genuine name of *Greece*, in the ſtricteſt notion and acception. A name uſed frequently and familiarly in the Book of God, both *abſolutely* to denote this Nation, as where it is ſaid, σοφίαν Ἕλληνες ζητοῦσι, that the Greeks ſeek wiſdome; 1 *Cor.* 1. 22. and *relatively* as in oppoſition to the *Jews*, the *Barbarians*, and the *Helleniſts*, or *Græcizing Jews*. Firſt with *relation* to the *Jews*, and then it ſignifieth the whole bodie of the *Gentiles* generally, of which the *Grecians* were the moſt eminent and famous people; as Ἰουδαίῳ τε πρῶτον καὶ Ἕλληνι, to *the Jew firſt, and alſo to the Gentile*, *Rom.* 11.9,10. *Give none offence*, καὶ Ἰουδαίοις καὶ Ἕλλησι, *neither to the Jews nor to the Gentiles*, 1 *Cor.* 10.32. and elſewhere frequently. In which and all other places of that kinde where the *Antitheſis* lyeth between the *Jews* and other Nations, we are to underſtand the *Gentiles*, the whole body of them; though many times our *Tranſlators*, I know not why, render it *literally* the *Greeks*; as *Rom.* 1.16. 10.12. *&c.* Secondly with reference to all other Nations not ſo well verſed in the learning and *civilities* of that Age as the *Grecians* were, whom by a common name of ſcorn they called *Barbarians*: according unto that of *Strabo*, Barbaræ *ſunt omnes Nationes præter* Græcos; the *Romans* themſelves though then the great Lords of the World, being included in the reckoning. And ſo the word is taken, *Rom.* 1.14. *I am a debtour* ſaith S. *Paul*, Ἕλλησι καὶ βαρβάροις, *both to the Greeks and the Barbarians, to the wiſe and unwiſe*: in which as well the *Romans* as thoſe of other Nations, have the name of *Barbarians*. Laſt of all for the *Græcizing Jews*, whom the *Vulgar Latine* calleth *Græcos*, and our Engliſh *Grecians*; they were ſuch of the *Jews* who living diſperſed amongſt the *Gentiles*, uſed the tranſlation of the *Septuagint*, making that the *Canon* both for life and doctrine. Which difference betwixt them and the *Jews* inhabiting in *Judæa*, who kept themſelves unto the Scriptures in their *mother-tongue*, and uſed the *Hebrew* only in all ſacred actions: occaſioned many jars amongſt them, which ſometimes brake out into

to open violence, insomuch as *R. Eliezer* brake into the Synagogue of the *Alexandrians* at *Hierusalem*, and therein committed many outrages. Of this unfriendlineſſe between them, mention is made *Act* 6. 1. where it is ſaid, that there *aroſe a murmuring of the* Grecians *againſt the* Hebrews, &c. In which place, though the *Engliſh* and *Vulgar Latine* uſe the name of *Grecians*, yet ought they more properly to be rendred *Helleniſts*, or *Græcizing Jews*, as in all other places, *viz. Acts* 9. 29. 11. 20. &c. where they are called Ἑλληνισταὶ and not Ἕλληνες, in the *Greek* Originals.

But to proceed to our deſcription of the Country, we finde it ſituate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, under the fift and ſixt *Climats*; the longeſt day being 15 hours: inhabited by a people which were once brave men of war, ſound Scholars, addicted to the love of vertue and civill behaviour. A Nation once ſo *excellent* that their *precepts* and *examples* do ſtill remain, as approved rules, and *Tutors* to inſtruct and direct the man that endeavoureth to be vertuous; famous for government, affectors of freedome, every way noble. For which vertues in themſelves, and want of them in other, all their neighbours and remote Nations were by them ſcornfully called *Barbarians*: a name now moſt fit for the *Grecians* themſelves, being an unconſtant people, deſtitute of all *learning*, and the means to obtain it, *Univerſities*; uncivill, riotous, and ſo lazie, that for the moſt part, they endeavour their profit no further then their belly compels them, and ſo perfidious withall in all their dealings, eſpecially towards the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, that it is grown into a Proverb amongſt the *Italians*, *Chi fida in Grego, ſara in trigo*, *i. e.* He that truſts to a *Greek* is ſure to be couſened. When they meet at feaſts or banquets, they drink ſmall draughts at the beginning, which by degrees they increaſe, till they come to the height of intemperancie: at which point when they are arrived, they keep no rule or order; whereas before to drink out of ones turn is accounted a point of incivility. Hence as I beleeve, ſprung our by-word, *As merry as a Greek*, and the *Latine* word *Græcari*.

The women for the moſt part are brown-complexioned, exceedingly well favoured, and exceſſively amorous. Painting they uſe very much to keep themſelves in grace with their husbands; for when they once grow wrinckled, they are put to all the drudgeries of the houſe. Both ſexes generally in their habit and outward garb, apply themſelves to the State under which they live: ſuch as are ſubject to the *Turk*, conforming unto the dreſſe and faſhions of the *Turks*, as thoſe who live under the *Venetians*, do to that of *Venice*.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt here planted by S. *Paul*, invited by the Spirit to come over into *Macedonia*, *Acts* 16. 12. paſſing from thence to *Theſſalonica*, the chief Citie of *Mygdonia*, *ch.* 17. 1. from thence to *Athens* in *Achaia*, *v.* 16. then unto *Corinth* the *Metropolis* of *Peloponneſus*, *ch.* 18. 1. watering the greateſt part of *Greece* with the dew of heaven; and planting Biſhops in moſt Churches where he preached the Goſpell, as *Dionyſius* (the Areopagite) at *Athens*, *Ariſtarchus* at *Theſſalonica*, *Epaphroditus* at *Philippi*, *Silas* at *Corinth*, and *Titus* in the Iſle of *Crete*. The like he did in many other Countries alſo, accounted members of the *Greek* Church, though not of *Greece*: the name of the *Greek* Church extending over all the Provinces of the Eaſtern Empire, governed by the 4 Patriarchs, 1 Of *Alexandria*, who preſided over *Egypt* and *Arabia*. 2 Of *Hieruſalem*, whoſe Patriarchate (erected only in regard of our Saviours paſſion in that Citie, and the great opinion, which by that means accrewed unto it) confined within the bounds of *Paleſtine*. 3 Of *Antioch*, whoſe juriſdiction contained all *Syria*, *Armenia*, *Cilicia*, and the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and whatſoever elſe was within the Dioceſe of the *Orient*. And 4 of *Conſtantinople*, to whoſe charge were committed all the other Provinces of the *Greek* Church, as *Greece*, *Ruſſia*, *Dacia*, *Sclavonia*, part of *Poland*, and all the Iſlands in the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Ægean* Seas; together with all *Aſia Minor*, and the Iſles thereof, (except only the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*) and the Countries lying on both ſides of *Pontus Euxinus*, and *Palus Mæotis*. The reaſons of the large increaſe of whoſe *Juriſdiction*, confined at firſt within the Dioceſe of *Thrace*, were 1 The reputation of being ſeated in the Imperiall Citie, which drew after it (by a Decree of the Councell of *Chalcedon*) all the Provinces of *Aſia Minor*, (*Cilicia* and *Iſauria* excepted only.) 2 The voluntary ſubmiſſion of the *Grecians* upon their ſeparation of the Church of *Rome*, by which all *Greece*, *Macedon*, *Epirus*, the Iſle of *Crete*, and all the Iſlands in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, which formerly had no ſuperior but their own *Primate*, the Archbiſhop of *Theſſalonica*; became ſubject unto them. 3 The diligence of the Patriarchs hereof, in converting by his *Suffragan* Biſhops and other Miniſters, the *Ruſſians*, *Bulgarians*, and *Sclavonians* to the faith of Chriſt, which made thoſe people to look upon *Conſtantinople* as their Mother-Church. And 4 the pietie and care of the later Patriarchs, in ſupplying with new *Paſtors* and *Miniſters*, thoſe parts and Provinces of the Weſt, which being conquered by the *Turk*, had been forſaken by their old *Clergie*, and left like ſheep without a ſhepheard.

And yet this Church though thus extended and enlarged in the outward members, is very much ſtraitned and impaired at home: the Country being thinly peopled, and many of thoſe people trained up from their infancie in the *Mahometan* Law. So that it is a greater wonder that there ſhould be any remainders of Chriſtianitie left amongſt them, then that the open Profeſſors of it ſhould be ſo few: the tyrannie of the *Turks* on the one ſide, and the *temptations* of *preferment* upon the other, being rightly pondered. For who could look to find 20 Churches of Chriſtians in *Conſtantinople*, the ſeat and ordinarie reſidence of the *Turkiſh* Emperours; or that in *Salonichi*, or *Theſſalonica*, there ſhould be 30 Chriſtian Churches, and but three *Turkiſh Moſquits*; that the Primate of this *Salonichi* ſhould have under him 10 ſuffragan Biſhops, whereof he of *Philippi* hath no fewer then 150 Churches under his *Juriſdiction*; or finally that under the *Metropolitans* of *Athens* or *Corinth*, there ſhould be as many. So mercifull hath God dealt with this luxurious and perfidious people as not to take away their Candleſtick, though he hath darkened and obſcured the light hereof.

As

As for the Fathers of this Church, anciently and at this preſent held in moſt eſteem, they were no other then ſuch as had been *Biſhops* of the greater Sees: that is to ſay, 1 S. *Chryſoſtome*, firſt a Reader of *Antioch*, afterwards Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. 2 *Baſil*, and the two *Gregories*, 3 *Nyſſen*, and 4 *Nazianzen*, all in *Aſia Minor*, this laſt of *Conſtantinople* alſo. 5, 6 The two *Cyrils*, the one Patriarch of *Alexandria*, the other of *Hieruſalem*. 7 *Epiphanius*, Biſhop of *Salamis* in the Iſle of *Cyprus*. 8 *Theodoret* Biſhop of *Cyrus*, &c. men of renown and precious memorie amongſt them to this very day. From whoſe writings if they deviate in any materiall point of doctrine, it is in that of the *Proceſſion* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, which they grant to be *per Filium*, but not *a Filio*. And though *Clichthoræus*, *Lombard*, and other moderate men of the Church of *Rome*, doe grant the difference to be rather, *in modo explicandi, quam in ipſa re*; and that the Clauſe *a Filioque*, was added by the *Romaniſts* to the ancient Creeds, the *Grecians* not being privie nor conſenting to it: yet ſo uncharitable is that Church towards theſe poore men languiſhing under the tyrannie of *Turkiſh* thraldome, as to perſecute them with reproach and ſcorn, brand them for *Schiſmaticks* and *Apoſtates*, and ſolemnly to *anathematize* them, in *Bulla Cœnæ*, every *Maundie Thurſday*. And it is a very hard meaſure *to adde and anathematize too*, as is right well obſerved by the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, in his notable diſcourſe againſt the *Jeſuite*. Other particular Tenets in which the *Greek* Church differeth from the *Romiſh* and *Reformed* (as in ſome points it doth from both) have been already ſpecified in our Deſcription of *Ruſſia*, the Churches of the *Greeks* and *Moſcovites* differing in no materiall points, but 1 the manner of diſtributing the Sacrament; 2 the exacting of marriage by the *Moſcovite* in the partie admitted unto Orders; 3 the frequent admiting of divorces upon light occaſions; and 4 finally in being leſſe ſtrict in obſerving the *Lent* before Eaſter then in any of the other three. For whereas the *Grecians* account it a damnable ſin to eat fleſh or fiſh which hath bloud in it, in any of their other *Lents* or times of abſtinence, (they have in both Churches four in all) in that before *Eaſter*, which of all reaſon ought to be kept moſt punctually, the *Laitie* eat all ſorts of fiſh without any exception; the bloud of ſome of which, as the *Cuttle* by name, is held to be a delicate food, and in great requeſt.

The Language they ſpake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects, *viz.* 1 the *Attick*, 2 the *Dorick*, 3 the *Æolick*, 4 the *Ionick*: beſides the common phraſe of ſpeech moſt in uſe among them. A language of great fame for the liberall Arts, but more for ſo great a part of the holy Scripture, firſt delivered in it: and for the lofty ſound, ſignificant expreſſions, genuine ſuavitie, and happie compoſition of words, ſo excelling all others, that even in the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Empire, it ſo much overtopped the *Latine*, that the Hiſtories of *Rome* it ſelf (as of *Polybius*, *Appian*, *Dion Caſſius*) were written in it. It was once alſo the generall language of *Anatolia*, ſome parts of *Italie*, *Provence* in *France*, and almoſt all the Iſlands of the *Mediterranean*. But now partly by the mutilation of ſome words, and contraction of others; partly by confuſion of the true ſound of Vowels, Diphthongs, and Conſonants, and the tranſlating of the Accents; and finally, by the admixture of forein Nations, it is not only fallen from its naturall elegancie, but from its largeneſſe of extent. For it is now ſhut up within the limits of *Greece*, and the Sea-coaſts of the leſſer *Aſia*, oppoſite unto it; and there not only much corrupted but almoſt quite devoured by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* tongues: but ſpecially by that which they call *Franco*, a *Mungrel* language, compoſed of *Italian*, *French*, and ſome *Spaniſh* words, uſed as the ordinarie ſpeech for commerce and intercourſe betwixt *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, *Turks*, and the *Greeks* themſelves, who doe not underſtand, and much leſſe ſpeak the true genuine *Greek*. So that although they ſtill retain for ordinarie dayes S. *Chryſoſtoms* Liturgie, and that of S. *Baſil* for the *Feſtivals*: yet being both written in the ancient and learned *Greek*, they are no more underſtood by the Vulgar *Grecian*, then the *Latine* Service by the common and illiterate *Papiſt*.

The ſoil queſtionleſſe is very fruitfull, and would yeeld great profit to the *husbandman*, if they would take pains in the tilling: but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things ſubject to the *Grand Signieur* and his ſouldiers; neglect the tillage of their lands on the ſame grounds with thoſe who ſaid in the Poets *Eclogues*:

Impius hæc tam culta novalia miles habebit?
Barbarus *has ſegetes? en queis conſevimus arva!*

Shall misbeleeving *Turks* theſe acres ſpoil,
Which I manur'd with ſo much coſt and toil?
Shall they enjoy my care? See neighbours, ſee,
For whom theſe goodly corn-fields tilled be!

The more naturall and certain commodities which they tranſport into other parts, are Wines, which in memory of the water which our Saviour turned into wine; and on the ſixt day of *January* being that day whereon this miracle was wrought, they uſe to baptize: for which cauſe the *Jews* will drinke none of them. They ſend alſo into other parts of the world, Oil, Copper, Vitrioll, ſome Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turque Grograms, &c.

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, *Miltiades*, *Ariſtides*, and *Themiſtocles* of *Athens*, *Liſander* and *Ageſilaus* of *Sparta*, *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas* of *Thebes*, *Aratus* and *Philopœmen* of *Achaia*, *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, *Philip* of *Macedon* the ſubverter of the *Grecian* liberty, and *Alexander* his ſon (to omit infinite others) the ſubverter of the *Perſian* Monarchy. For the

Peloponnesus.

divine Philosophers *Plato*, *Socrates*, *Aristotle*, and *Theophrastus*; for the most eminent Lawgivers, *Solon*, and *Lycurgus*; for the most exquisite Poets, *Hesiodus*, *Homer*, *Sophocles*, and *Aristophanes*; for the famous Historiographers, *Xenophon* the condiscipl of *Plato*, *Thucydides*, *Plutarch*, and *Herodotus*; the eloquent Oratours, *Æschines*, *Demosthenes*, and *Isocrates*; and lastly, for the authors and establishers of all humane learning whatsoever, only the *Mathematiques* excepted.

The chief Rivers are 1 *Cephisus*, which arising in the Frontires of *Epirus*, disburtheneth it self into the *Ægean* Sea. 2 *Erigon*, and 3 *Alaicmon*, which beginning their course in the more Northern parts of *Macedon*, end it in *Thirmaicus Sinus*. 4 *Strymon* in *Mygdonia*. 5 *Athicus* and *Nisus* in *Thrace*. 6 *Stymphalus*, where *Hercules* killed the *Stymphalian* birds. And 7 *Ladon* in *Arcadia*. 8 *Inachus*, whose daughter *Io* turned into a Heifer, was worshiped by the *Egyptians* under the name of *Isis*. 9 *Achelous* in *Epirus*, much celebrated by the ancient Poets, especially by *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*. As is also 10 *Peneus*, the chief River of *Thessalie*, and there arising from Mount *Pindus*, and increased with the waters of many Rivers. *Daphne* the Nymph, whom *Apollo* is fabled to have loved, and turned into a Bay tree, lived near or on the banks of this River *Peneus*, and is therefore said to be his daughter. Of lesse note

Populifer [11] *Sperchius, & irrequietus* [12] *Enipeus*
[13] *Apidanusque senex, lenisque* [14] *Amphrysus, &* [15] *Æas.*

That is to say:

Cool *Sperchie*, *Enipeus* that troubled ran,
Smooth *Amphryse*, *Æas*, and old *Apidan*.

The rest of lesse note, and the most eminent Mountains in each part hereof, shall be remembred in their places as we see occasion.

Thus much of the whole Countrie in grosse. And as for the division of it with reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Dioceses, *viz.* *Thrace* and *Macedon*: the first under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, the latter (together with that of *Dacia*) under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*. Of these the Diocese of *Macedon* lying wholly within the bounds of the modern *Greece*, contained the Provinces of *Macedonia Prima*. 2 *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, (now as in former times, called *Albania*.) 3 *Epirus Nova*, taking up the Countries of *Phocis*, *Locris*, and so much of the *Old Epirus* as was on that side of the River *Achelous*. 4 *Old Epirus*, comprehending all the rest of that Countrie. 5 *Thessalie*, 6 *Achaia*, containing all *Achaia* and *Peloponnesus*, the Countries of *Locris* and *Phocis* excepted only. And 7 *Crete* or *Candie*, with the Isles adjoining. And for the Diocese of *Thrace*, it was divided into the Provinces of 1 *Thrace*, specially so called. 2 *Europa*, 3 *Rhodope*, 4 *Hæmi-montum*, 5 *Mœsia Inferior*, and 6 *Scythia*: of which the four first make up the bodie of *Thrace*, and shall there be spoken of: the two last being comprehended in the modern *Dacia*, have been described already in their proper places. But not to binde my self precisely unto this division, (though I shall look on this as occasion serveth) I shall consider *Greece* in the severall Provinces of 1 *Peloponnesus*, 2 *Achaia*, 3 *Epirus*, 4 *Albania*, 5 *Macedon*, 6 *Thrace*, 7 The Islands of the *Propontick*, 8 *Ægean*, and 9 the *Ionian* Seas, and 10 finally the Isle of *Crete*.

1 PELOPONNESUS.

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the East with the *Cretan*, on the West the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Seas; on the North-east with *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*; on the North-west with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now *Golfo di Patras* or *Lepanto*; and on the South with the *Mediterranean*. So that it is almost an Island, properly called a *Peninsula*, rounded with the Sea, except where it is tyed to the main land of *Greece*, by an *Isthmus* six miles in breadth, which the *Grecians* and *Venetians* fortified with a great wall and five Castles. This was called anciently *Hexamilium*, and was overthrown by *Amurath* the 2. who harassed and spoiled all the Country. It was afterwards in the year 1453. upon the rumour of a war, built up again by the *Venetians* (who then had the greatest part of this country) in 15 dayes; there being for that time 30000 men imployed in the work. This wall extended from one Sea unto the other, which had it been as gallantly guarded as it was hastily made up, or as it was well fortified, had it been as well manned, might easily have resisted the *Turks*, untill more means had been thought on to defend it. Not lesse observable, but more fruitlesse was the design of some in the elder times to cut thorow this *Isthmus* and make a perfect Island of it. Attempted by *Demetrius* King of *Macedon*, *Julius Cæsar*, and *Caius Caligula*, by none more eagerly pursued then the Emperour *Nero*, who to hearten on his souldiers, loath to attempt so fruitlesse an enterprise, took a spade in hand, and busily began the work. Yet at last the souldiers, being frighted with the bloud which abundantly broke forth; with the *groans* and *roarings* which they continually heard, and with the *Hobgoblins* and *Furies*, which were alway in their sight; perswaded the Emperour, now half out of the humour, to leave this and enjoin them some more profitable service: given over by the former Princes on the like discouragements. It is in compasse 600 miles, and was called at the first *Ægialia*, from *Ægialus* the first King of *Sicyon*; next *Apia* from *Apis* the fourth King; after that *Sicyonia* from

from *Sicyon* the nineteenth King thereof; and finally *Peloponnesus* from *Pelops* the son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and Νῆσος, *Insula*; the word signifying as much as the Isle of *Pelops*. But it is now of late called *Morea*; and that, *a Maurorum incursionibus*, from the incursions of the *Moores*, as *Mercator* thinketh. *Achaia propria.*

It is conceived to be the most pleasant Countrie of all *Greece*, abounding in all things necessarie for the life of man, and in such also as do serve for delicacie and contentment only: adorned with many goodly Plains, swelled with fruitfull Hils, well stored with Ports and Havens on all sides thereof. And though no Country in the world for the bigneſse of it, hath suffered in the ruine of so many brave and stately Cities, yet is it still the most populous and best inhabited of all the Continent of *Greece*. Near the middle of it in *Laconia* is the Mount *Taygetus*, from the top whereof there was no Citie of note in all this *Peninsula*, but what might easily be seen. A most gallant prospect. The whole divided commonly into these 7 Provinces, 1 *Achaia propria*, 2 *Elis*, 3 *Messene*, 4 *Arcadia*, 5 *Laconia*, 6 *Argolis*, and 7 *Corinthia*.

1 *ACHAIA PROPRIA* is bounded on the East with *Argolis* and *Corinthia*, on the West with the *Ionian* Sea; on the North with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, or the *Golfe* of *Lepanto*; on the South with *Elis*. So called from the *Achæi*, the Inhabitants of it; the adjunct *propria*, being added to difference it from *Achaia* in the Continent or main land of *Greece*.

Places of most consideration in it, are 1 *Dyme*, situate in the most Western point of it, on or neat the *Promontorie* called *Araxum*, the town now called *Chiarenza*, and the *Promontorie Cabo di Chiarenza*. Not far from which is another *Promontorie* or head-land, of old called *Antirrhium*, because opposite to another In *Ætolia*, that was called *Rhium*, divided by a very narrow strait or *fretum*, which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; fortified on each side with a Castle for defence thereof, commonly called *Dardanelli*, and sometimes *Castelli di Lepanto*. 2 *Ægium*, where *Jupiter* is said to have been nursed by a *Goat*, whence it had the name: Αἴξ in *Greek* signifying a she *Goat*: once a strong town, now ruined and destroyed by the *Turks*, called at this day *Vostiza*, or *Bostizan*. 3 *Ægira*, once the chief Citie of all this tract, situate on a steep and inaccessible hill; now a small Village, called *Xilocastro*. 4 *Olenus*, so named from *Olenus* the son of *Jupiter*, and *Anaxithea*, now called *Chaminisa*. 5 *Patræ*, situate at the very mouth of the *Golfe* opposite to *Lepanto*, first called *Aroe*, but being by one *Patreus* enlarged and walled, took the name of *Patræ*, which name it holdeth to this day, being still called *Patras*: the town of most note on the Bay of *Corinth*, called from hence *Golfo di Patras*. A town of good trade, and much frequented not long since by the *English* Merchants, who had here their *Consul*, called the Consul of *Morea*: but formerly more memorable for the death of S. *Andrew* the Apostle, who here suffered Martyrdom. 6 *Pellene*, distant from the Sea about 60 furlongs: the people whereof being constant to their old fashions of apparell, occasioned the Proverb of *Pellenæa vestis*, applyed to old cloaths out of fashion. Here were once also the two Cities of 7 *Helice*, and 8 *Buris*, sunk by the violence of a tempest into the bottome of the Sea, about the time of the battle of *Leuctres*. Not to say any thing of 9 *Tritæa* and 10 *Phera*, two other towns hereof, of note, in the former times; so little now remaining of them, as if they had been sunk at the same time also.

But the chief town of all this Province, (if not a Province of it self) is that of *Sicyon*, situate not far from the *Isthmus*, in the most Eastern parts hereof, and giving to the territorie or adjoyning Country (as once unto the whole *Peninsula*) the name of *Sicyonia*. The territorie rich, especially in Olives and works of *Iron*; the Citie the most ancient of all *Greece*, built within little time of the generall flood and restauration of mankind: first called *Ægialia*, after *Sicyonia*, by the names of the first and nineteenth Kings hereof: by whom and their successours much adorned and beautified with Temples, Altars, Statues, and Images of their severall Gods: the ancientest Kingdome in the world, the *Assyrian*, and *Ægyptian* excepted only, and perhaps not those. It took beginning in the person of *Ægialeus*, within 150 years after the deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Noah*, continuing in a race of Princes who swayed the affairs of *Peloponnesus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reason of the undoubted antiquitie of this Kingdome, I shall here subjoin, in the ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of *SICYON*.

A.M.			A.M.			A.M.		
1860	1	*Ægialeus*	2234	10	*Feratus.*	2601	19	*Sicyon*
1910	2	*Europs*,	2280	11	*Plemnæus*,	2646	20	*Polybus*,
1950	3	*Telchin*,	2328	12	*Orthoulis*,	2686	21	*Lanischus*,
1980	4	*Apis*,	2391	13	*Marathon*,	2728	22	*Phestius*,
2004	5	*Telxion*,	2421	14	*Marathus*,	2736	23	*Adrastus*,
2055	6	*Ægyras*,	2441	15	*Echyreus*,	2740	24	*Polyphides*,
2089	7	*Eurymachus*,	2496	16	*Corax*,	2771	25	*Pelasgus*,
2134	8	*Leucidpus*,	2526	17	*Epopeus*,	2791	26	*Xeuxippus*, the last
2187	9	*Mesapus*,	2561	18	*Lamedon*,			King of *Sicyon*; after

whose death *A.M.* 2812. the estate hereof was governed by the Priests of *Apollo*, seven

Elis.

of them ſucceſſively one after another: the firſt five only years a piece; *Amphictyon*, who was the ſixt, continuing 9 years in the *Regencie*, and *Charidemus* the laſt of them, ruling 18 years. After whoſe death, or departure, I know not which, *A. M.* 2844. the *Heraclidæ*, who about that time returned into *Peloponneſus*, made themſelves Maſters of this Country; there being no Kings of *Sicyonia* from this time forwards.

Of theſe Kings the moſt memorable were *Ægialeus*, and *Apis*, the firſt and fourth, from whom this *Peninſula* had the names of *Apia*, and *Ægialia*. *Ægirus* the 6. giving name and being to the Citie *Ægira*, ſpoken of before: *Marathon* the 13. of whom perhaps the famous fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination: *Epopeus* the 17. who founded a Temple to *Minerva*, and therein placed his own Monument or Tropheys: *Sicyon* the 19. the Founder of the Citie of *Sicyon*, or at leaſt the repairer and enlarger of it: *Pelaſgus* the 25. from whom perhaps the *Grecians* might be called *Pelaſgi*, if not known formerly by that name. After this time, I finde no man of note who bare ſway in *Sicyon* till the time of *Aratus*, the ſpeciall ornament of this town (of which a Native) and one of the principall eſtabliſhers of the *Achæan* Common-wealth againſt the *Spartans* and *Macedonians*; of which more hereafter in the generall Hiſtory of *Peloponneſus*.

2 The Country of *ELIS* hath on the Eaſt *Arcadia*; on the Weſt the *Ionian* Sea; on the North *Achaia propria*; on the South *Meſſenia*. The chief Cities are, 1 *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Eliſa* the ſon of *Javan*, and grand-child of *Japhet*, who fixt himſelf in theſe parts of this Countrie, where he built this Citie, calling it by his own name; as his poſteritie in honour of him did the Iſles adjoynig; mentioned in the Propher *Ezekiel*, by the name of the Iſles of *Eliſha Ch.* 27. *v.* 7. Nigh to this Citie runneth the River *Alpheus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Sicilia*: and in this Citie reigned the King *Augeas*, the cleanſing of whoſe Stable is accompted one of the wonders or twelve labours performed by *Hercules*. 2 *Olympia*, famous for the Statue of *Jupiter Olympicus*, one of the 7 wonders, being in height 60 cubits; compoſed by that excellent workman *Phidias*, of gold and ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick* games inſtituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this Citie, *A M.* 2757. The exerciſes in them were for the moſt part bodily, as running in Chariots, running on foot, wraſtling, fighting with the whorlbats, and the like. But ſo that there repaired thither alſo *Orators*, *Poets*, and *Muſicians*, and all that thought themſelves excellent in any laudable qualitie, to make triall of their ſeverall abilities: the very *Cryers* who proclaimed the *Victories*, contending which ſhould cry loudeſt, and beſt play his part. The rewards given to the *Victor* were only *Garlands* of *Palm*, or ſuch ſlight remembrances; and yet the *Greeks* no leſſe eſteem'd that ſmall ſign of conqueſt and honour, then the *Romans* did their moſt magnificent triumphs: thoſe which were *Conquerors* herein being met by all the principall men of the Citie, in which, or under which they lived, and a paſſage broken in the main wals thereof for their reception; as if the ordinarie *Gates* were not capable of ſo high an honour, or able to afford them entrance. Inſomuch that when *Diagoras* had ſeen his three ſons crowned for their ſeverall victories, a friend of his came to him with this gratulation, *Morere* Diagoras, *nunquam enim in Cœlum aſcenſurus es*, that is to ſay, Die now *Diagoras*, for thou ſhalt never goe to Heaven: as if no greater happineſſe could befall the man either in this life or that to come, then that which he enjoyed already. The *Judges* and *Preſidents* of theſe Games, were ſome of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputed to it; highly commended for their juſtice and integrity in pronouncing who beſt deſerved, without partialitie. Of theſe thus *Horace* in his *Odes*:

Sunt quos Curriculo *pulverem* Olympicum
Collegiſſe juvat; metaque *fervidis*
Evitata rotis, Palmaque *nobilis*
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.
Quos Elea *domum reducit*
Palma *cœleſtes.*

That is to ſay:

Some in *Olympick* duſt take pride
Their *Chariots* and themſelves to hide;
Whom the ſhunn'd mark, and *Palm* ſo priz'd,
Like to the *Gods* hath eterniz'd.
Such as like heavenly wights do come
With an *Elean Garland* home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules*, theſe games were diſcontinued for 430 years: at which time one *Iphitus*, warned ſo to doe by the *Oracle* of *Apollo*, renewed them; cauſing them to be ſolemnly exerciſed every fourth year: from which cuſtom *Olympias* is ſometimes taken for the ſpace of 4 years; as *quinque annorum Olympiades*, for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the floud to be *obſcure*; thoſe betore the *Olympiads*, and after the floud to be *fabulous*; but thoſe that followed theſe *Olympiads* to be *Hiſtoricall*. Theſe *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the reſtauration of them by *Iphitus* untill the

the reign of the Emperour *Theodosius* 3 the *Grecian Epoche*, by which they reckoned their *accompt*: the first of them being placed in the year of the world, 3174. before the building of *Rome* 24 years; the last in the 440 year after Christs nativity. According to which reckoning this accompt continued for the space of 1214 years; the memorie of which remains, though the name of *Olympia* be not found in *Peloponnesus*: the town at this day called by the name of *Scanri*. 3 *Pisa*, whose people followed *Nestor* to the wars of *Troy*, and in their return were by tempest driven to the coasts of *Italie*, where they built the Citie *Pisa* in *Tuscanie*. 4 *Torneſe*, a new Town, or the new name of some ancient City, from whence the adjoyning *Promontorie* of old called *Chelonites*, is now called *Cabo di Torneſe*. *Messenia.*

3 *MESSENIA* hath on the East *Arcadia*; on the North *Elis*; on the South and West, the Sea. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Messene* situate on *Sinus Messeniacus*, now called *Golfo di Conro*. 2 *Pylos*, where *Nestor* was King, now called *Novarino*, a desolate and poor village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* speaking in the name of *Penelope*,

Nos Pylon, *antiqui* Neleia Nestoris *arva*,
Misimus, incerta est reddita fama Pylo.

To *Pylon*, aged *Nestors* seat, we sent;
But could not hear from thence how matters went.

3 *Modon*, or *Methone*, seated in the most southern part of this *Peninsula*, from whence unto the *Isthmus* which joineth it to the rest of *Greece*, are reckoned 175 *Italian* miles; the ordinarie residence of the *Turkish Zanziack*, who hath the government of this whole Province of *Morea* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*. 4 *Corone* or *Coron*, the chief town on the Bay of *Messene*, called from hence *Golfo di Coron*, and the last which held out against the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea-coasts of *Peloponnesus*. 5 *Cyparissi*, now called *Arcadia* from whence the Bay adjoyning hath the name of *Golfo di Arcadia*. Here is also the Promontorie called of old *Coryphasium*, now *Cato Zanchio*.

The people of this small Province had once a great sway in the whole *Peninsula*. At first confederate with the *Spartans* in so strict a league, that they mutually sent young Virgins to one another for their publick sacrifices: but afterwards *Corrivals* with them for the Supreme power. The *Spartans* at the last getting the upper hand of them, oppressed them with a miserable servitude. The occasion this. In the confines of this Countrie stood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Messenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that some *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Messenians* here *ravished*; which abuse the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their warre: the true reason indeed being their covetousnesse of the sole Empire. This warre broke out three severall times. The first continued 20 years, in which space the *Lacedæmonians* fearing their absence would hinder the supply of young children in the Citie, sent a company of their ablest young men home to accompany their wives. Their *off-spring* were called, *Parthenii*, who coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, sailed into *Italie*, and there built *Tarentum*. The second being of 23 years continuance, was raised and maintained by *Aristomenes*, one of the chief men of the *Messenians*; in which they prospered til *Aristocrates* King of *Arcadia*, one of their confederates, revolted, to side with *Lacedæmon*. Then began they to decline, and *Aristomenes* was thrice taken prisoner, still miraculously escaping. His last imprisonment was in a *Dungeon*, where by chance espying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her tail. The Fox running away, guided *Aristomenes* after, till the straitnesse of the hole by which he went out, made him leave his hold, and fall to scraping with his nails, which exercise he never left, till he had made the hole passable, and so escaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, dyed in *Rhodes*. The third warre was like drops after a tempest. In which the *Messenians* being finally subdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become slaves unto the *Spartans* who put them to all drudgeries and servile works, as they did the *Helots*, whom they accounted as their *bondmen*: and to this life some of them did apply themselves with such obsequiousnesse, that at last it grew into a Proverb, *Messena servilior*, that such a one was more servile, or more slavishly used then these poore *Messenians*. But the greatest part of them not brooking that heavy yoke, passed into *Sicil*, and there built the Citie of *Messana*. Others were planted in *Naupactum*, by the State of *Athens*; the rest dispersed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Countrie, till *Epaminondas* having vanquished the *Lacedæmonians* at the battell of *Leuctres*, restored them to their ancient possessions.

4 *ARCADIA*, hath on the East *Laconia*; on the West *Elis* and *Messene*; on the North *Achaia propria*; and on the South the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcas*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Calisto*; but was formerly called *Pelasgia*: the people whereof thought themselves more ancient then the Moon.

Laconia.

Orta prius Luna, *de se si creditur ipsi,*
A magno tellus Arcade *nomen habet.*

The land of which great *Areas* took its name,
Was ere the *Moon*, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are 1 *Mantinea*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, consisting of 30000 foot, and 3000 horse, routed the Army of the *Spartans*, and *Athenians*, consisting of 25000 foot, and 2000 horse. In this battell *Epaminondas* that famous Leader, received his deaths wounds, and not long after dyed. At his last gasp one of his friends bemoaning his untimely death; *Alas*, said he, *thou dieſt* Epaminondas, *and leaveſt behinde thee no children*: Nay, replyed he, two daughters will I leave behind me, the victory of *Leuctra*, and this other at *Mantinea*. It was afterwards called *Antigonia* in honour of *Antigonus* Tutor or Protector of *Philip* the father of *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperour *Adrian* restored to its old name again, and is now called *Mantegna*. 2 *Megalopolis*, the birth-place of *Polybius* that excellent Historian. The one half of it had sometimes the name of *Oreſtia*, from the lodging of *Oreſtes* in it; the whole now called *Leontari*, on what cause I know not. 3 *Phialia*, towards the Sea. 4 *Pſophis*, so called from *Pſophis* one of the sons of *Lycaon*, once King of this Countrie, slain by *Jupiter*. 5 *Stymphalus*, situate near a Lake and River of the same name, where *Hercules* slew the *Stymphalian* birds; so great in number and in body that they darkened the sun-beams, and terribly infested this little Province, till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was also in this town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Stymphalida*. 6 *Tegea*, famous for the Temple of *Pan*, here worshipped, and from hence called *Tegæus*: more for the war made upon the *Tegeates*, or people hereof by the *Lacedæmonians*: who thinking themselves assured of victorie, brought with them store of *chains* and *fetters*, wherewith to lead captive their conquered Enemies, but being overcome in battell, were themselves bound with them, and forced as slaves, to till the grounds of these *Tegeates*. Here is also in this Countrie the River *Styx*, whose water for the poisonous taste was called the water of Hell: by which Poets fain, that the Gods used to swear, as may be every where observed: and that what God soever swore by *Styx* falsly, he was banished from heaven; and prohibited *Nectar* for a 1000 years.

This Country for the fitnesse of it for pasturage and grazing hath made it the subject of many worthy and witty discourses, especially that of Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honourable mention: a book which besides its excellent language, rare contrivances, and delectable stories, hath in it all the strains of *Poesie*, comprehendeth the universall art of speaking; and to them which can discern and will observe, affordeth notable rules for demeanour, both private and publick. Which noble Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the *English Heliodore*, so the Ingenious Author of the History of *Melintus* and *Ariana*, may as deservedly be called the *French Sidney*.

5 *LACONIA* is bounded on the West with *Arcadia*, on the East and South with the Sea, on the North with *Argolis*. Called first *Lelegia*, from the *Leleges*, by *Strabo* said to be the first Inhabitants of it, afterwards *Oebalia*, from *Oebalus* a King of *Lacedæmon*; and finally *Laconia*, of the *Lacones*, who succeeded the *Leleges* in the possession hereof on their removall into the Islands of the lesser *Asia*. It is by some Writers also called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The soil hereof exceeding rich, and the fields very spatious, yet for the most part not well tilled, in regard of the many hils and Mountainets which overthwart it. Well watered with the River *Eurotas*, and memorable for many fair *Bayes* and *Promontories*: of which the principall are the Promontories of *Malea*, and *Tenaria*, now called *Cabo Malio*, and *Cabo Matapan*: and of the Bayes, that called *Golfo di Colochina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the ancients; into which the River *Eurotas*, (now better known by the name of *Vaſilo Potamo*, or the Kingly River) poures his gentle streams. The nature of the people we shall finde in *Sparta*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Leuctres* situate on the Sea-side, near the Bay of *Messeni*; of which name were two others in *Greece*, the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*, but this last most memorable. 2 *Amyclæ*, so called from *Amyclas* the third King of *Sparta*, by whom first founded; renowned afterwards for the birth of *Castor* and *Pollux*, the sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the foundresse of the Citie of *Amycle* in *Calabria Superior*, at first a Colonie of this. 3 *Thulana*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* slew the Monster *Hydra*: and not far off Mount *Tenarus* neer the Promontorie *Tenaria*, in which the Natives shew a Cave, beleeved in former times to be the descent into Hell, out of which the Poets fain that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4 *Salassia*, where *Antigonus* vanquished *Cleomenes*, the last King of *Sparta*. 5 *Epidaurus* (seated on the *Bay* named *Golfo di Napoli*) now called *Malvaſia*; a town well built and very well peopled; remarkable for the sweet Wines called *Malveſey*, or *Malmeſey*, sent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. 6 *Sparta*, so called from *Sparta*, the son or brother of *Phoroneus* the 2. King of *Argos*, the Founder of it: but afterwards beautified and inlarged by *Lacedæmon* the second King of this Countrie, it took that name also; promiscuously known by both in the best Authors. One of the *Eyes* of *Greece*, and a most famous Commonwealth, but at first governed by Kings, as most of the *Greek* Cities in ancient times. *Tyndarus*, the father of *Castor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof, after whose death and the death of the said famous brethren, *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta* or *Lacedæmon*, in right of

Helena

Helena his wife, their ſiſter. And though *Nicoſtratus* and *Magapenthes*, ſons of *Menelaus* by another *venter*, ſucceeded after his deceaſe; yet the *Spartans* ſoon rejected them and received *Oreſtes* the ſon of *Agamemnon* to be their King, marrying him to *Hermione* the daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and conſequently the neece of *Tyndarus*. *Tiſamenes* the ſon of *Oreſtes* and *Hermione*, ſucceeded next, in whoſe time the *Heraclidæ* or poſteritie of *Hercules* returned into *Greece*, under the conduct of *Temenus*, *Cteſiphon*, and *Ariſtodemus*, ſons of *Ariſtomachus*: whereof the firſt poſſeſſed himſelfe by force of Arms of the Citie of *Argos*, the ſecond of *Meſſene*, and the third conquered the Citie and State of *Sparta*: which dying very ſhortly after, he left unto his two ſons, *Euryſthenes* and *Procles*; the roots of the two Royall families, which jointly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*: firſt abſolutely as *Soveraign Princes*, without any controll, afterwards at the direction of the *Senate*, and finally under the command and check of thoſe popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But becauſe theſe *Spartan* Kings in each ſeverall period, were for the moſt part men of action, and often mentioned in the Hiſtories of the elder times: I will firſt make a Catalogue of them, and then ſubjoin ſuch obſervations and remembrances, as I think moſt pertinent. *Laconia.*

The KINGS of *SPARTA*

of the firſt Familie.

A.M.		
	1	*Eurotas* the firſt King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
	2	*Lacedæmon* brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the Citie of *Sparta* was called *Lacedæmon*.
	3	*Amyclas* ſon of *Lacedæmon*, the founder of *Amyclæ* a *Laconian* Citie.
	4	*Argalus* ſon of *Amyclas*.
	5	*Cynorta* ſon of *Argalus*.
	6	*Oebalus* ſonne of *Cynorta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
	7	*Hippocoon* ſon of *Oebalus*.
2700	8	*Tyndarus* brother of *Hippocoon*, in whoſe life he was King of *Oebalia* only.
	9	*Caſtor* and *Pollux*, ſons of *Tyndarus*, famous among the *Argonautes*.
2740	10	*Menelaus* and *Helena* his wife the daughter of *Tyndarus*, whoſe Rape occaſioned the deſtruction of *Troy*.
2770	11	*Nicoſtratus* and *Megapenthes* ſons of *Menelaus* by a former wife.
	12	*Oreſtes* and *Hermione* his wife, daughter of *Helena* and *Menelaus*.
	13	*Tiſamenes* ſon of *Oreſtes* and *Hermione*, who being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heraclidæ*, reigned in *Achaia*, and left his Kingdom there, unto his poſteritie.

The KINGS of *SPARTA*

of the race of HERACLIDÆ.

1 *Ariſtodemus*, the firſt King of the Race of *Hercules*; left the Kingdom jointly to his two ſons,

A.M.			A.M.		
2848	1	*Euryſthenes*	2848	1	*Procles*
2890	2	*Agis* from whom this line were called *Agidæ*.		2	*Euripon*, from whom this line were called *Eurypontidæ*.
2891	3	*Echeſtratus*		3	*Prytanis*
2926	4	*Labetas*.		4	*Eunomus*
2963	5	*Dryſſus*		5	*Polydectes*
2992	6	*Ageſilaus*	3076	6	*Charilaus*
3046	7	*Archelaus*	3140	7	*Nicandrus*
3096	8	*Teleclus*	3176	8	*Theopompus*
3136	9	*Alcamenes*		9	*Archidamus*
3173	10	*Polydorus*		10	*Zeuxidamus*
	11	*Eurycrates*		11	*Anaxidamus*
	12	*Anaxandrus*		12	*Archidamus* II.
	13	*Eurycrates* II.		13	*Agaſicles*
	14	*Leonidas*		14	*Ariſton*
	15	*Anaxandrides*		15	*Demaratus*
	16	*Cleomenes*	3447	16	*Leotychides*
	17	*Leonidas* II.	3478	17	*Archidamus*

3470 18 *Pli-*

Laconia.

3470	18	*Pliſtarchus*
3471	19	*Pliſtonax*
3539	20	*Pauſanias*
3553	21	*Ageſipolis*
3567	22	*Cleombrotus*
3576	23	*Ageſipolis* II.
3577	24	*Cleomenes* II.
3611	25	*Arius*
3655	26	*Acrotatus*
	27	*Arius* II.
	28	*Leonidas* III.
	29	*Celombrotus* II.
3714	30	*Cleomenes* III. the laſt of the line of the *Agidæ*; who having
3520	18	*Agis*
3547	19	*Ageſilaus*
3588	20	*Archidamus* IV.
3611	21	*Agis* II.
	22	*Eudamidas*
	23	*Archidamus* V.
	24	*Eudamidas* II.
3700	25	*Agis* III.
	26	*Eurydamidas* the laſt King of the line of the *Eurypontidæ*, ſlain by *Cleomenes*, the laſt of the other line alſo.

ſlain *Eurydamidas* the ſon of *Agis* the 3. ſubſtituted his own brother *Epiclides* in his place. But being himſelf ſhortly after vanquiſhed by *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and forced to flie his Country with his wife and children: the Government of the *Heraclidæ* ended after it had continued here for the ſpace of 900 years or thereabouts.

Under theſe Kings the Government at firſt was ἄγαν Μοναρχικὸν, as *Plutarch* termeth it, ſufficiently *Monarchicall*, if it were not more. Under *Eunomus* the fourth King of the ſecond houſe, the people finding the reins of Government let looſe, began to mutinie and grow too head-ſtrong. To bridle whom, and to reſtrain the Kings withall, (ſhould they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus* the Protector of *Charilaus* the ſixth King of that houſe, did ordain the *Senate*, committing to them the *ſupreme power* in matters civill, and leaving to the Kings the ordering of all *militarie* and *ſacred* buſineſſe. To curb the inſolencies of this *Senate*, who quickly found their own ſtrength, *Theopompus* the eighth King of that houſe, with the conſent of *Polydorus* the tenth King of the other, inſtituted a new *Magiſtracie* choſen out of the *Common-People*, whom they called the *Ephori*, which grew in fine to ſuch an height of pride and tyrannie, as not only to controll the *Senators*, but to cenſure, fine, impriſon, depoſe, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the ſpirit of ſedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedæmon* was at firſt a *Monarchie* under Kings; then an *Ariſtocratie* under the command of the Senate; next a *Democratie* under the *Ephori*; and finally by thoſe *popular Officers* made ſo plain a Tyrannie, that *Ariſtotle* and *Plato*, two great Common-wealths-men who died before they had embrued their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms πυρανίδα & τὸ τυραννικὸν, a moſt abſolute tyrannie. What think you would theſe men have called it, had they lived to ſee *Leonidas* the 3. depoſed, and *Agis* the third of that name alſo moſt barbarouſly murdered by theſe *popular Villains*.

But being the foundation of this Common-wealth was firſt laid, and the good Laws and *politique* Conſtitutions by which it did ſo long ſubſiſt in great power and ſplendour, eſtabliſhed by the wit and power of *Lycurgus*, as before was ſaid: we are to know concerning him, that he was the ſon of *Eunomus* the fourth King of the ſecond houſe, ſlain in a popular tumult by the common people. Who finding by this Eſſay that the people were become too head-ſtrong for the Kings to govern, unleſſe reduced to extreme bondage by their Kings, which he wiſhed not neither: took the advantage of the minoritie of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government: and what he could not doe by fair means to effect by Arms; forcing this *Charilaus*, though his Nephew, when he came to age, to flie for ſanctuarie to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleaſed, and ſetled ſuch a form of government as himſelf beſt fancied: the better to decline the envie of ſo great a change, he got leave to travail; binding the people by an oath to obſerve all his laws untill his return: and being gone, commanded at his death, that his aſhes ſhould be caſt into the Sea, leſt being carryed back to *Sparta*, the people might conceive themſelves releaſed from their oath. By means whereof his Laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Common-wealth did flouriſh in all proſperity: the particulars of which Inſtitutions he that liſts to ſee may finde them ſpecified at large by *Plutarch* in the life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Diſcipline was ſo ſharp and ſtrict, that many went into the wars for no other reaſon then on an hope to rid themſelves from ſo hard a life: and that *Diogenes* returning hence to the Citie of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from *men to women*, ἐκ τῶν Ανδρῶν εἰς τὰς Γυναικᾶς. And being asked in what part of *Greece* he had met with the compleateſt men; made anſwer that he could no where meet with men, but that he had found ſome boyes amongſt the *Spartans*. A *Cynicall* and rugged anſwer, but ſuch as carryed a great deal of judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more ſtout and reſolute in all their actions, and leſſe effeminate in their lives then the reſt of the *Grecians*. But beſides the ſtrictneſſe of the *diſcipline* under which they lived, there was another thing which made them wiſh for wars abroad: namely, the little or no power which either the Kings or People had in civil matters and affairs of State, entirely left to the diſpoſing of the *Senate* and the power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings having by the laws the command of their armies, were willing to engage in war upon all occaſion; and the common people as deſirous to attend them in ſuch employments, as the Kings could wiſh. Upon theſe grounds the *war* is made a *trade* amongſt them; beginning with the *Helots* a neighbouring people; then with the reſt of the *Laconians*; afterwards quarrelling the *Meſſenians* their old Confederates: all which they ſeve-

rally

rally ſubdued and made ſubject to them. In the warre which *Xerxes* made againſt the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the firſt, of the elder houſe, went forth to aid them: ſlain at the ſtraights of *Thermopyle*, courageouſly fighting for the liberty of *Greece*: and when it was thought fit to ſet upon the *Perſian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admirall did command in chief. In purſuit of the this war againſt the *Perſians*, *Pauſanias* and *Ageſilaus* were of moſt renown: the firſt in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*; the other in making war upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Perſians* they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their *Rivals* in point of *Soveraignty* and glory. Hence the long warre betwixt theſe Cities called *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, managed for the moſt part in *Peloponneſus*, from thence transferred into *Sicil*, and at laſt ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an *Ariſtocratie*, under 30 *Magiſtrates* of their own appointment, commonly called the *thirty tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate ſucceſſe their next quarrell was with the *Bœotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and the *Perſians* openly aſſiſting the enemy. Here their proſperity began to leave them. For beſides many ſmall defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* ſo diſcomfited them, at the overthrowes of *Leuctres* and *Mantinea*; that *Sparta* it ſelfe was in danger of utter ruine. Not long after happened the *Holy warre* chiefly undertooke againſt the *Phocians*, wherein alſo they made a party: but this warre being ended by King *Philip*, they ſcarce breathed more freedome, than he gave air to. But when *Alexanders* Captains fought for the Empire of their Maſter, all theſe flouriſhing Republiques were either totally ſwallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdome of *Macedon*. The *Lacedæmonians* held the chief ſtrength of a Town to conſiſt in the valour of the people, and therefore would never ſuffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediately following the death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not thoſe fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Doſon* King of *Macedon*, who having vanquiſhed *Cleomenes* King of *Sparta*, entred the Town, and was the firſt man that ever was received into it as Conqueror: So much different were the preſent *Spartans* from the valour and courage of their anceſtours. *Cleomenes* being forced to forſake his countrey, and the race of the *Heraclidæ* failing in him, they became a prey to *Machanidus* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants: from whom they were no ſooner freed, but they were made ſubject (in a manner) to the power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town ſo weak and inconſiderable, that it was not able to reſiſt the pooreſt enemy; now a ſmall Burrough called *Miſithra*. And ſo I leave them to the thoughts of their former glories, having now nothing elſe to boaſt of, but the fame and memory of their *actions* in former times.

Argolis.

ARGOLIS, ſo called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South with *Laconia*, on the Weſt with *Corinthia*, and *Achaia Propria*; on the Eaſt and North with the Sea. A territorie remarkable for a moſt excellent breed of *Horſes*, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Argos*, founded by *Argus* the fourth King of this countrey, and the chief of this Kingdome. Memorable as for other things, ſo 1 for the death of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who having forced his entry into it, was here ignobly ſlaine after all his victories, by the hands of an old woman, throwing a Tyle at him from the top of an houſe. 2 For the long race of the Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the cotemporary of our Father *Abraham*, *anno* 2003. unto *Acriſius* their laſt King. Whoſe daughter *Danae* being ſhut up in a Tower of Braſſe, was deflowred by *Jupiter*, to whom ſhe bare the renowned *Perſeus*, ſo memoriſed in antient Poets. But *Perſeus* having by misfortune ſlain his Grandfather the old King *Acriſius*, quitted the City of *Argos* as unlucky to him, and transferred the Kingdome to *Mycenæ*, a City of his own foundation, and ſo better fancied: by means hereof, the ſecond City of eſteem in this little Province. Growing in ſmall time unto ſo great riches, that it got the name of *dites Mycenæ*; as appeareth by *Horace*, in whom the Horſes of *Argos*, and the wealth of *Mycene* are placed in one verſe together;

Aptum dicis equis Argos, *diteſque* Mycenas.

For horſes Argos is of fame,
For wealth *Mycenæ* hath the name.

3 *Trœzen*, ſituate on the *Sinus* Argolicus, now called *Golfo di Engia*, the Royall ſeat of *Pytheus* the father of *Theſeus* who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath ſometime the name of *Pytheia Trœzen*, and *Theſeus* many times is called *Trœzenius Heros*: as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthius Heros*, from 4 *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was nurſed. 5 *Nemea*, where *Hercules* ſlew the dreadfull Lyon which annoied this countrey. In honour of which noble Act were inſtituted in time following the *Nemean Games*, which continued of great fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exerciſes were running with ſwift horſes, whorlebats, running on foot, quoiting, wraſtling, darting, ſhooting. Some have referred the originall of theſe Games to one *Opheltes* a *Lacedemonian*; and in whoſe honour they conceive them inſtituted: and others fetch it higher from the war of *Thebes*. But this I take to be the more allowable opinion. 6 *Epidaurus* on the Sea ſide famous for the Temple of *Æſculapius*; and the cure of all ſorts of diſeaſes there, ſo called from *Epidaurus* the ſonne of *Argus* the founder of it. Of the ſame name, but of a different ſituation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*: this being ſeated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Meliſſa*, and *Æmera*, at that time an Iſland; but by an Earthquake laid unto the continent: now called *Pigiala*. 7 *Nauplia*, ſo called of *Nauplius* King of *Eubœa*, and father of *Palamedes*, to whom

Argolis. whom it antiently belonged. A ſtation then, as now, for ſhipping, in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Neapolis*, the richeſt and beſt traded in all this tract, giving name unto a large and capacious Bay now called *Golfo di Napoli*, of old *Sinus Argolicus*; into which the famous River *Inachus*, having paſſed through the City of Argos doth diſgorge it ſelfe; ſo called from *Inachus*, the Father of *Io*, and the originall and *Progenitor* of

The KINGS of *ARGOS* and *MYCENÆ*.

A.M.		
2093	1	*Inachus* the ſuppoſed father of *Io*, from whom the *Grecians* are ſometimes called by the name of *Inachii*.
2143	2	*Phoroneus* the ſon of *Inachus* and *Meliſſa*, from whom the ſaid *Io* hath the name of *Phoronis* in the Poet.
2223	3	*Apis* the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Niobe*, the daughter of *Phoroneus*, who leaving *Greece* went into *Egypt*, where he taught the people *tillage*, and was there worſhipped afterwards in the form of an *Oxe*.
2238	4	*Argus* the ſon of *Apis*, and the founder of *Argos*, in whoſe time *Agriculture* was taken up amongſt the *Grecians*; from him called *Argivi*.
2308	5	*Criaſus*, by ſome *Peiraſus* the ſon of *Argus*.
2363	6	*Phorbas* the ſonne of *Criaſus*, in whoſe time *Atlas* and *Prometheus* are ſaid to flouriſh.
2397	7	*Triopas* the ſonne of *Phorbas*, and the brother of another *Pherbas*, who planted himſelfe in the Iſle of *Rhodes*.
2443	8	*Crotopus*.
2464	9	*Sthenelus* outed of the Kingdom by
2475	10	*Danaus* the brother of *Egyptus*, by whom driven out of *Egypt* he was made King of *Argos*, by conſent of the people: the Father of thoſe many daughters got with child by *Hercules*. From him the *Grecians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.
2525	11	*Lynceus* ſon of *Egyptus* the brother of *Danaus*.
2556	12	*Abas* the ſon of *Lynceus* and *Hypermneſtra* the daughter of *Danaus*.
2566	13	*Pretus* the ſon of *Abas*.
2606	14	*Acriſius* the brother of *Pretus* and the father of *Danae*, foretold by Oracle that hee ſhould be ſlaine by a ſon of that daughter, ſhut her up in a brazen tower. But *Jupiter* having corrupted the Guards with *Gold*, got the Ladies conſent, by whom he had *Perſeus* ſo renowned amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians of thoſe elder times.
2637	15	*Perſeus* the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Danae* expoſed by his Grandfather to the Seas, miraculouſly preſerved, and grown into great fame by his brave exploits; reſtored *Acriſius* to his throne from which he had been depoſed by his brother *Pretus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately ſlain the ſaid *Acriſius*, he removed his ſeat unto *Mycenæ*; where he reigned together with his ſon *Sthenelus*.
1645	16	*Euryſtheus* the ſon of *Sthenelus*, much ſpoken of for the difficult taskes which at the inſtigation of *Juno* he impoſed on *Hercules*, his foſter-child, and the ſuppoſed ſon of *Amphytryon* his Couſen German.
2688	17	*Atreus* and *Thyeſtes*, ſons of *Pelops*, on the failing of the line of *Perſeus*, ſucceeded in *Argos* and *Mycenæ*: infamous for their murders and adultery; *Thyeſtes* abuſing the bed of *Atreus*, and *Atreus* feaſting him with the body of his own ſon; whence Θυεστεῖα δεῖπνα in the *Proverb*.
2753	18	*Agamemnon* the ſon of *Atreus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the war of *Troy*, in which action there ingaged 69 Kings of the *Grecians*, waſted over with a Navy of 1224 ſhips, killed at his coming home by *Ægiſthus*, his Couſen German.
2768	19	*Ægiſthus* the ſon of *Thyeſtes*, having defiled *Clitemneſtra* the wife of *Agamemnon* in the time of his abſence, by her procurement murdered him at his coming home, and uſurped the Kingdome.
2775	20	*Oreſtes* ſon of *Agamemnon* revenged his fathers death on *Ægiſthus* and *Clitemneſtra*, his owne Mother. After which falling mad, and reſtored againe unto his wits, hee married *Hermione* daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the kingdome of *Sparta* alſo.
2803	21	*Penthilus* the ſon of *Oreſtes*, and the laſt King of this line, outed of his eſtate by the *Dores* and *Heraclidæ*; who made themſelves Maſters of all *Peloponneſus*, which they poſſeſſed untill the conqueſt of it by the *Macedonians*.

7 *CORINTHIA* is a little Region, lying towards the *Iſthmus* or neck of land, which joineth *Peloponneſus* to the reſt of *Greece*; betwixt *Argolis* and *Achaia Propria*. It containeth onely the territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitfull of thoſe commodities which the reſt of this *Peninſula* doth abound withall: as being mountainous and hilly, and by reaſon of the neerneſſe of the Sea, full of craggy rocks. The chief and indeed the onely Cities of note in it, 1 *Cenchrea*, the navell-

navall Road or ſtation of ſhips for *Corinth*, mentioned *Act.* 19. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. In both Texts reckoned a diſtinct town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was. 2 *Corinth* it ſelfe, is commodiouſly ſituate for the command of all *Greece*, (had not the Inhabitants been more given to *Merchandiſe* then unto the warres) as being ſeated on the bottom of the neck or *Iſthmus*, the *Ionian* Sea upon the Weſt, and the *Ægean* on the Weſt, waſhing the wals thereof, and giving it on each ſide a capacious Haven, in which regard called by *Horace bimaris Corinthus*. In compaſſe about eleven miles, for ſtrength impregnable, for command as powerfull; maſtering both Seas on which it ſtood, and cutting off all paſſage from one halfe of *Greece* to the other: to which laſt end the Caſtle called *Acrocorinthus*, looking into both Seas, ſerved exceeding fitly, and was therefore called one of the *Fetters of Greece*. The City, rich, well traded, and neatly built, moſt houſes beautified with handſome pillars from thence called *Corinthian*: more memorable for the wealth of the people, and the conveniency of the ſituation, then for any notable exploits performed by them, or any great influence which they had on the States of *Greece*. But in regard of the wealth, greatneſſe, and ſituation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthage* and *Capua* being the other two. In this City lived the famous or infamous whore, *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachmas* for a ſingle nights lodging: which made *Demoſthenes* cry out, *Non emam tanti pœnitere*, and occaſioned the old *By-word*, *Corinthia.*

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum,

'Tis not for every mans availe,
Unto *Corinth* for to ſayle.

Neer hereunto ſtood the *Acrocorinthian* mountaines, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Caſtle called hence *Acrocorinthus* were ſeated; out of which flowed the famous fountaine named *Pyrene*, of old conſecrated to the *Muſes*; by *Perſius* called *Fons Caballinus*, becauſe faigned by the antient *Poets* to have been made by the horſe *Pegaſus*, daſhing his foot againſt the rock. And on the other ſide hereof, in the very *Iſthmus* were celebrated yearly the *Iſthmian* games, ordained by *Theſeus* in the honour of *Neptune*, in imitation of the *Olympick* deviſed by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The exerciſes much the ſame, and the reward no other then a Garland of *Oaken boughes*; yet drawing yearly a great reſort of people to them: partly to exerciſe themſelves, and behold the ſpeats, and partly to ſacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard by a famous Temple.

As for the fortunes of this City, it was at firſt called *Ephyra*, at that time a ſmall and obſcure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus* the ſon of *Pelops*, tooke the name of *Corinth*, Governed by him and his poſteritie till the coming of the *Heraclidæ* into *Peloponneſus*: at what time one *Aletes* of the race of *Hercules*, poſſeſſed himſelf hereof, with the name of King, *A. M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of his line enjoyed it for the ſpace of 220 yeares and upwards: when the houſe fayling in the perſon of *Automanes*, they were governed by temporary officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athens*. Continuing under this Government 124 years, the City was ſeiſed on by one *Cypſelus*, *A. M.* 3294. who left it to his ſonne *Periander*, one of the *ſeven wiſemen* of *Greece*; counted a *Tyrant* in thoſe times for no other reaſon, then that he had ſuppreſſed the *popular government*; after whoſe death, *an.* 3364. the City did recover its former liberty. In the buſtles betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedæmon*, and other the eſtates of *Greece*, for the *ſuperiority*, it did little meddle: the aim of this people being wealth, not honour; not intereſſed in any action of renown in all thoſe times; but in the ſending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracuſans*, againſt the *Tyrant Dionyſius*, who did lord it over them. Subdued together with the reſt by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the reſt reſtored to liberty by the power of *Rome*. Under whom growing ſtill more rich, and withall more inſolent, they abuſed certain *Roman* Ambaſſadours. But *iraſci populo* Romano *nemo ſapienter poteſt*, as is ſaid in *Livie*: which the *Corinthians* found too true; the City being beſieged, ſacked, and burnt unto the ground by *Lucius Mummius*, a *Roman* Conſul, *an. V. C.* 607. In the burning whereof there were conſumed ſo many goodly *Statuas* of gold, ſilver, braſſe, and other metals, that being melted into a Lump, they made up by that fatal chance, the ſo much eſtimated metal, called *Æs Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* then Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great eſteem in the time of the Emperours, converted by S. *Paul* to the *Chriſtian* Faith; and having flouriſhed a long time in pride and pleaſures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a ſmall Burrough called *Crato*.

Having thus ſpoken of the ſeverall Eſtates of *Peloponneſus*, it reſteth that we ſpeak ſomewhat of the eſtate of the whole, varied according to the fortunes of thoſe particulars, which had moſt influence on the ſame. The affaires hereof a long while ſwayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, reſtrained afterwards to the territories of that City onely. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleaſures; from *Apis* the third king whereof (if not rather from *Apis* the fourth King of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of ſome Writers, it was named *Apia*. But *Pelops* the ſon of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia* coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia* daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the moſt powerfull Prince of all this *Peninſula*, taking from him the name of *Peloponneſus*. The Kingdome of *Mycenæ* growing into power and credit, had the next turn in ſwaying the affaires hereof for a certain ſeaſon: as after that the *Dores*, and the *Heraclidæ*, poſſeſſed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Meſſene*. The *Spartans* getting the preheminence over all the reſt, were the next who governed the affaires of it, and they held it long; having firſt

gone

Achaia. conquered *Laconia*, and ſubverted the eſtate of *Meſſene*; by means whereof, and by their fortunate ſucceſſe againſt the *Perſians*, they became almoſt abſolute in their commands, without any *Competitor*. But their power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas* in the *Theban* war, the *petit States* hereof began to take heart again; & ſtand upon their own legs, as they did a while, till the Kings of *Macedon* ſucceeding *Alexander* the *Great*, brought them once more under, and made them fellow-ſervants with their *Spartan Maſters*. In the confuſions which enſued in *Macedon*, amongſt the *Competitors* for that Kingdome, *Patræ* and *Dime*, two Cities of *Achaia Propria*, firſt united themſelves in a ſtrong league of amity, at ſuch time as *Pyrrhus* firſt went into *Italy*: into which *confederacie* the Cities of *Tritæa* and *Phera* ſhortly after came, and not long after that, *Ægira* and the reſt of *Achaia Propria*: their affaires firſt governed by two *Prætors*, with advice of the *Senate*, as afterwards by one alone with the like advice, of which *Marcus Carinenſis* was the firſt, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the ſecond. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this *new Commonwealth* increaſing by the vertue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Trœzenians*, *Argives*, and *Megarians* became members of it: maintaining gallantly the liberties of *Peloponneſus*; till finally maſtered by the *Romans*: the diviſion of whoſe Empire it fell with all the reſt of *Greece*, to the *Conſtantinopolitans*: and in the declining of their fortunes, when the *Latines* got poſſeſſion of the *Imperiall* City, moſt of the Sea-coaſts of it were alotted to the State of *Venice*: the inland parts formerly parcelled out amongſt many Princes whom they called *Deſpots*, continuing as before they were; till all together made a prey to the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, *Mahomet* the *Great*, and *Bajazet* the ſecond, by whom wholly conquered. For howſoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Conſtantinople*; and were received and obeyed by thoſe *Petit Princes*: yet being unable to hold out againſt the *Conquerour*, they became his *tributaries*. But falling out amongſt themſelves, and neglecting then to ſend in the *tribute* agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the *Great* occaſion to invade the Countrey, and under colour of aiding one brother againſt the other, to deſtroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carryed Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*, and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponneſus*, and flee to *Italie*, *anno* 3457. Such towns hereof as belonged unto the State of *Venice* followed the ſame fortune alſo in the time of *Bajazet*; by whom all taken at the laſt, and the whole Countrie brought under his obedience, *anno* 1500 or thereabouts. Governed ever ſince that time by a *Turkiſh Zanziack*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his reſidence at *Macedon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horſe to ſecure the Countrie, and 700000 *Aſpers* (that is to ſay, 14000 Crowns) a year for his entertainment.

2 ACHAIA.

ACHAIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt with *Epirus*; on the North with *Theſſalie*, and on the South with *Peloponneſus*, and the Seas thereof. Called antiently *Hellas* from *Helles* the ſonne of *Deucalion*: but whence it had the name of *Achaia* is not yet agreed on, though ſure I am, that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achivi*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Grecians*) to difference them from the *Achæi* of *Achaia Propria*.

The countrey famous in the Authours of elder times more for the gallantry of the men, then any great goodneſſe of their countrey: yet that ſufficiently memorable for the hill *Hymettus*, ſwarming with Bees, plentifull of the ſweeteſt honey; and rich in mines of excellent marble; as alſo for the River *Cephiſus*, which runneth almoſt through the whole length hereof; divided into two main ſtreams, of which the one is called *Aſopus*, the other retaineth its firſt name. Upon the banks hereof ſtood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Deucalion* did repair to be directed in the reſtauration of mankinde, as the Poets fable.

It was divided antiently into theſe ſeven parts, *viz.* 1 *Attica*, 2 *Megaris*, 3 *Bœotia*, 4 *Phocis*, 5 *Locris*, 6 *Doris*, and 7 *Ætolia*. A diviſion now as much diſuſed as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turkes* into that of *Levadia*; of which more anon.

1 *ATTICA* hath on the Weſt *Megaris*, and ſome part of *Bœotia*; on all other parts compaſſed with the Sea: ſo called from *Athens* the chief City. The ſoile for the moſt part very barren and craggy, yet by the armes and induſtry of the people made both rich, and famous: inſomuch as the yearly revenues of the State of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The money currant in this countrey was commonly ſtamped with an Oxe, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applyed to ſuch *Lawyers* as were bribed to ſay nothing in their *Clients* cauſe: Not much unlike to which was the Proverb riſing from the coin of *Ægina* (an Iſle adjoining) ſtamped with the figure of a *Snail*, viz. *Virtutem & ſapientiam vincunt* Teſtudines.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Phile*, a ſtrong Fortreſſe on the Borders of *Bœotia*, ſurprized by *Thraſibulus* and others of the baniſhed *Athenians*, during the Government of the 30 Tyrants: the taking whereof was the firſt ſtep towards their own and their countries libertie; which ſoone after followed. 2 *Eleuſis*, on the borders of *Megaris*; almoſt impregnably fortified by the 30 *Tyrants* when they had the command of *Athens*, by whom deſigned for their retreat in all times of danger. But having withdrawn hither on the the taking of *Phile* and *Piræus*, by the *Thraſybulians*, they found ſtrong wals a weak defence for ſo much wickedneſſe; being trained out as to a parlie, and ſo deprived of the place and their power together. It was firſt built by one *Eleuſius*, who entertained *Ceres* as ſhe was in queſt of her daughter *Proſerpine*: who to reward him taught him the uſe of Agri-

culture

culture; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleusina*, and her sacrifices *sacra Eleusinia*; and sometimes the City also, *Cerealis Eleusis*, so called by *Ovid*, in the 7 book of the *Metamorphosis*. 3 *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Asopus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiaraus*, and the *Statua* of the Goddesse *Nemesis*, hence called *Rhamnusia* in the Poets: this *Nemesis* or *Rhamnusia*, being the Goddesse of *indignation*, punishing those who made themselves unworthy of their present fortunes. 4 *Trichoritum*, of more Antiquity, then fame. 5 *Marathon*, on the southside of the River *Asopus*, opposite to *Rhamnus*; of great note for the discomfiture given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian* to the numerous Army of *Darius*, consisting of 200000 Foot, and 10000 Horse: the Emulation of which noble victory startled such brave resolves in the brest of *Themistocles*. As memorable in the Poets of those elder times for the *Marathonian* Bull there slain by *Theseus*. 6 *Pyræus*, the Port-Town to *Athens*, and the ordinary Station for their shipping; the Haven hereof being capable of 400 saile: distant from the City about two miles, but joined unto it by two long wals reaching from the one to the other, for securing the conveyance of their Merchandise to and from the Sea. The Port it self impregnably fortified by the advice of *Themistocles*. But as these long walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them: so were the fortifications of *Pyræus* it self demolished by the command of *Sylla*, in his war against *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. 7 *Panormus*, a Seat-Town also, and of very good trade, but not of such importance as the other was. 8 *ATHENS*, one of the eyes of *Greece*, and the chiefe of *Attica*, situate from the Sea two miles, as before was said: the Haven of *Pyræus* serving it with all commodities, which came from other parts by shipping. First built by *Cecrops* the first King of it, by whom called *Cecropia*, *A. M.* 2409. repaired afterwards by *Theseus*, and furnished with good Lawes by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Minerva* (whom the *Greekes* call *Athene*) to whom then dedicated, and in whose honour there were yearly kept some solemn Games called *Panathenæa*. A City heretofore adorned with all those excellencies of strength and beauty, which Art or cost could adde unto it. Renowned, as for many things, so for three especially. 1 For the inviolable faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and most firm affection to their friends: so that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an *Adage*. 2 For the famous scholars which here taught and flourished: this being so happy a Nursery of the choicest wits, and so fitly seated for the *Muses*, that the very *Natives* being in other countries could sensibly perceive some want of that naturall vigour, which at home was reliant in their spirits. *Ita ut* corpora *istius gentis separata sint in alias Regiones*, ingenia *vero solis* Athenienſium *muris clausa esse existimes*, as *Velleius* hath it. Yea and to say the truth, it was a most famous University, from whose great Cistern, the Conduit-pipes of learning were dispersed over all the World. Yet did not learning so effeminate or soften the hearts of the People, but that 3 this one City yeelded more famous Captaines, then any in the World besides, not excepting *Rome*, *Miltiades*, *Aristides*, *Themistocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and enlarged this Common-wealth: yet were the people so ungratefull to them, or they so unfortunate in the end, that they either dyed abroad in banishment, or by some violent death at home. *Themistocles* the Champion of *Greece*, died an exile in *Persia*, *Phocion* was slaine by the people; *Demosthenes* made himself away by poison; *Pericles* many times indangered; *Theseus* their Founder first deposed, and then despitefully imprisoned: *Aristides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. banished for ten years by *Ostracism*: A form of punishment so called, because the name of the partie banished was writ on an *Oyster-shell*, and onely used toward such, who either began to grow too *popular*, or potent among the men of service. Which device, allowable in a *Democratie*, where the overmuch powerableness of one might hazard the liberty of all, was exercised in spight oftner, then desert. A Countrey-fellow meeting by chance with *Aristides*, desired him to write *Aristides* in his shell; and being asked, whether the man whose banishment he desired, had ever wronged him, replyed, *No, he was onely sorry to heare folke call him a good man.* We finde the like unfortunate end to most of the *Romans*, so redoubted in warre. *Coriolanus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murdered, with divers others: onely because their virtue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was disgraced by *Antony*, *Agricola* poysoned, with the privity of *Domitian*; *Corbulo*, murdered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an age, wherein it was not lawfull to be valiant. In later times it so hapned to *Gonsalvo* the *Great Captain*, who having conquered the kingdome of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the mountains, and brought all the *Italian* Potentates to stand at the *Spaniards* devotion; was by his Master called home, where hee lived obscurely, though honoured after his decease with a solemne Funerall. Worse fared the *Guise*, and *Biron* in *France*; worse *Essex* and *Dudley* of *Northumberland* with us in *England*. Neither will I omit *William* Duke of *Suffolk*, who having served 34 yeares in our warres with *France*, and for 17 yeares together never coming home, at his return was quarrelled and basely murdered. It were almost an impiety to be silent of *Joab*, the bravest souldier and most fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lords battells; and yet he died at the hornes of the Altar. Whether it be that such men be born under an unhappy Planet; or that Courtiers, and such as have best opportunity to indeere men of warre unto their Soveraignes, know not the way of commending their great deserts; or that Envy the common Foe to vertue, be an hinderance to it; I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are distrustfull of men of Action; and are not willing to make them greater, whose name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the souldiers themselves by an unseasonable overvaluing of their own performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cause of the death of *Silius*, in the time of *Tiberius*, concerning which

Athens. *Tacitus* giveth us this good note, that over-merit in great Subjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets hate in ſtead of favours. *Beneficia eo uſque læta ſunt dum videntur exolvi poſſe; Ubi multum antevertere unt, pro gratia odium redditur*, ſaith that wiſe Hiſtorian.

But to look back againe on *Athens*, it was firſt built by *Cecrops*, the firſt King thereof; governed by him and his poſterity with no lower title, for 400 yeares, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The KINGS of *ATHENS.*

A.	*M.*	
2394	1	*Cecrops*, who firſt made *Jupiter* a God, and ordained ſacrifices to be offered to him, as *Pauſanias* writeth.
2444	2	*Cranaus*, outed of his Kingdome by
2453	3	*Amphictyon* the ſon of *Deucalion*, and Uncle to that *Amphictyon*, who firſt inſtituted the ſupreme Court of the *Amphictyones*, or *Common-Councell* of all *Greece*.
2463	4	*Ericthonius* the ſon of *Vulcan*.
2513	5	*Pandion* the Father of *Progne* and *Philomela*, ſo famous in the old Poets, of whom more hereafter.
2553	6	*Erichtheus* whoſe daughter *Orithya* was raviſhed by *Boreas* King of *Thrace*.
2603	7	*Cecrops* II. brother of *Erichtheus*.
2643	8	*Pandion* II. ſon of *Erichtheus*.
2668	9	*Ægeus* ſon of *Pandion* the ſecond, of whom the *Ægean* ſea took name.
2706	10	*Theſeus* the ſon of *Ægeus* and Companion of *Hercules*, vanquiſhed the *Minotaure* in *Crete*, collected the people of *Attica* into a body, and incorporated them into the City of *Athens*, which he had beautified and enlarged.
2746	11	*Meneſtheus* the ſon of *Peteus* Grandchild of *Erichtheus*, ſerved with the other *Greeke* Princes at the war of *Troy*.
2769	12	*Demophoon* the ſon of *Theſeus*, reſtored unto his Fathers throne on the death of *Meneſtheus*.
2802	13	*Oxyntes* ſon or brother of *Demophoon*.
2814	14	*Aphydas* ſon of *Oxyntes* ſlaine by his brother.
2815	15	*Thymades* the laſt of the line of *Erichtheus*.
2823	16	*Melanthius* of *Meſſene* driven out of his own Kingdome by the *Heraclidæ*, obtained that of *Athens*.
2860	17	*Codrus* the ſon of *Melanthius*, the laſt King of *Athens*; who in the warres againſt the *Peloponneſians* having Intelligence by an *Oracle*, that his Enemies ſhould have the victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King; attired himſelfe like a common Begger, entred the *Peloponneſian* Camp, and there played ſuch prancks, that at the laſt they were fain to kill him. Which when the Enemy underſtood, they thought themſelves by this meanes deprived of all hopes of ſucceſſe, and ſo broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the people of *Athens* did ſo honour his memory, that they thought no man worthy to ſucceed, as King; and therefore committed the managing of the Eſtate to Governours for term of life, whom they called *Archontes*: the firſt *Archon* being *Medon* the ſon of *Codrus*; not differing from the former Kings in point of power, but only in the manner of their *admiſſion*: the former kings claiming the government by *ſucceſſion* in right of bloud; and theſe *Archontes* holding by *election* onely: whoſe names here follow in this liſt of

The perpetuall *ARCHONTES* in the STATE of *ATHENS.*

A.	*M.*				
2882	1	*Medon* the ſon of *Codrus*.	3059	7	*Diogenetus* the ſon of *Megacles*.
2902	2	*Acaſtus* the ſon of *Medon*.	3087	8	*Phereclus* the ſon of *Diogenetus*.
2938	3	*Archippus* the ſon of *Acaſtus*.	3106	9	*Aritthon* the ſon of *Phereclus*.
2957	4	*Therſippus* the ſon of *Archippus*.	3126	10	*Theſpieus*, in whoſe time began the Kingdom of *Macedon*.
2998	5	*Phorbas* the ſon of *Therſippus*.	3153	11	*Agameſtor*.
3029	6	*Megacles* the ſon of *Phorbas*.	3173	12	*Æſchilus* the ſon of *Agameſtor*.

After whoſe death, *an. mun.* 3195. the *Athenians* weary of theſe *Governours* for *term of life*, as being leſſe obnoxious to the check and cenſure of the *people*, choſe themſelves Officers or *Archontes* for ten years onely; at the end of which time they were to yeeld up their places, and make roome for others. But being a people greedy of *Noveltie*s, and deſirous of change, they had onely ſeven of thoſe *Decenniall Archontes*: their Officers from that time forwards being choſen *annually*: which Officers being nine in number, we may call moſt properly the *Provoſt*, the *Chief Biſhop*, the *Marſhall*, and the ſix *Chief Juſtices*, all choſen out of the *Nobility*: And ſo it held for the ſpace of 170 yeares, till the time of *Solon*: who was the firſt which put the *Supreme authority* into the hands of the *People*; and gave the firſt hint unto that *Democratie*: which afterwards prevailed in *Athens*, by the helpe of

of *Pericles*, who being one of the great Councell of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their power in deciding Controverſies and ſuites in Law, putting them over to the judgement of the common People. A Government ſo dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the Cities which they conquered or reſtored to *liberty*, or wonne to their partie from the *Spartans*, they cauſed it to be admitted: as on the other ſide the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed the *Ariſtocratie* (their own loved Government) in all the places where they proſpered. As for the *Court* of the *Areopagites* of much fame in *Athens*, it conſiſted from the firſt beginning ἐκ τῶν κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν Ἀρχόντων, of ſuch as had born ſome of the nine chief Offices; who being once admitted, held for term of life. Firſt inſtituted in the time of *Demophoon*, the ſon of *Theſeus*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their Court in the *ſtreet of Mars*, ἐν Ἀρείῳ πάγῳ, mentioned, *Act.* 17. 22. or becauſe *Mars* being accuſed for a Murder, did firſt plead before them. A Court which held in eſtimation under all theſe changes, and ſo continued till the time of the *Roman* Empire. *Athens.*

But to return againe to the ſtory of *Athens*, in or about the later end of the life of *Solon*, *Piſiſtratus* altered the *Free State* and made himſelfe the abſolute Maſter of the City: but he once dead, the People regained their libertie, driving thence *Hippias* the ſonne of *Piſiſtratus*; who hereupon fled for ſuccour to *Darius* the *Perſian* Monarch, occaſioning by that meanes the firſt coming of the *Perſians* into *Greece*. What ſucceſſe the *Perſians* had in *Greece*, theſe Hiſtories of the times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquiſhed by *Miltiades*, at *Marathon*; and *Xerxes* by *Themiſtocles*, at *Salamis*; yet did not *Athens* ſcape ſo cleare, but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed firſt abandoned, and voluntarily diſmantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Perſians* were retired homewards, the people of *Athens* reedified their towne, and ſtrongly fortified it with high and defenſible wals: which done, they put their Fleet to Sea, and ſpoiled the coaſts of *Perſia* in all quarters; inriching their City with the ſpoiles, and enlarging their power and Dominion by the addition of many Iſlands and Sea townes. Hereby they grew unto that wealth and potency, that they were ſuſpected by their weaker neighbours, and envied by their ſtronger, the *Lacedæmonians* eſpecially: who fearing to loſe their antient priority over *Greece*, but pretending the ſurpriſall of *Potidea* a City of *Thrace* from the *Corinthians*, and ſome hard meaſure, by them ſhewed upon the *Megarenſes*; made warre upon them. In the beginning of this warre, the *Athenians* not onely reſiſted the whole power of all *Greece*, confederate againſt them; but ſo exceedingly proſpered, that the *Spartans*, ſued for peace, and could not get it. But the ſcales of fortune turned. For after they had held out 28 yeares they were compelled to pluck down the Walls of their City, and ſubmit themſelves to the will and pleaſure of the *Spartans*, now by the puiſſance and good fortune of *Lyſander*, become their Maſters: by whom the Government was changed, and an *Ariſtocratie*, (or rather *Oligarchie*) eſtabliſhed under 30 Magiſtrates, known commonly by the name of the 30 Tyrants; expelled not long after by the valour of *Thraſibulus*, and his Aſſociates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this warre, which the Hiſtorians call *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, the *Perſians* ſeeing how the *Spartans*, not having now the State of *Athens* to oppoſe them, began to work upon their Empire: furniſhed *Conon* a Noble *Athenian* Gentleman with a Navy ſo well provided, that they overcame the *Lacedemonians* in a fight at Sea; and thereby put his Countrey-men into ſo good heart, that they once more reedified and repaired their Walls. Which work they had no ſooner ended, but they made a partie in the warre called *Bellum Sacrum*; compoſed at the laſt by *Philip* of *Macedon*: who brought not onely the *Thebans* whom he came to aid, but the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, and the reſt of the adverſe partie under his command. A ſervitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon*, as the reſt became fellow-ſervants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then loſt her power in point of *Armes*, yet ſhe ſtill kept her credit, as an Univerſity in point of *Arts*, *Origen*, *Chryſoſtom*, *Baſil*, and *Gregory Nyſſen*, men of renown and eminence in the Primitive times, are ſaid to have ſtudied at *Athens*: the like affirmed of Pope *Joane*, if the Tale be true, for the middle ages. And ſo it held as I conjecture, though not ſo eminently as before, till the year 1440. when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondred much (as my Authour telleth) at the extreme beauty of the Caſtle, and the ſtrength of the walls, not having loſt in ſo long time, their former excellencies. Since that it ſenſibly decayed, and is now an ordinary Burrough (by the *Turkes* called *Selines*) but ſtill preſerved the Reputation of an Epiſcopall See, the Biſhop of it holding up the title of *Athenienſis*.

2 *MEGARIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Attica*; on the Weſt with the Bay of *Corinth*, on the North with *Bœotia*, and on the South with the *Iſthmus*, and the *Golf* of *Engia*. So called from *Megaris*, the chief City.

This the leaſt Province of all *Greece*, and not very fruitfull; the Countrey for the moſt part being hard and rocky. Not beautified with many Cities; the principall of thoſe which were 1 *Pegæ*, or *Pagei*, ſituate on the Bay of *Corinth*, and ſpoken of both by *Pliny* and *Ptolemie*; but not otherwiſe memorable. 2 *Megaris* (now *Megra*) firſt built by *Megareus* the ſonne of *Apollo*; and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philoſophers, called from hence *Secta Megarica*, founded by one *Euclide* a Diſciple of *Socrates*; of whom ſee *Laertius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Niſus*, once the King of this little Territorie: on whoſe head there is ſaid to have grown a Purple Haire, on which the preſervation of his life and Kingdome did depend. Which Jewell his daughter *Scylla* is ſaid to have delivered unto King *Minos* her Fathers Enemy; on whom then beſieging this City, upon the ſight of him from an high Turret, ſhee became inamoured. But he rejecting her, and her Preſent both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*: which

Bœotia.

the unhappy woman seeing, threw her self after him into the Sea, and was turned into the Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the moralizing of the Fable unto the *Mythologists*: observing only by the way, the antiquity of that politick practise, to *love the treason and hate the Traitour*. But the glories of this Citie did not end with *Nisus*. For shaking off the *Cretan* yoke it became *sui juris* once again; and being conveniently seated on the very *Isthmus*, amounted to that height of prosperity that they contended with the *Athenians* for the Island of *Salamis*. And in this war they so crushed the power and spirit of *Athens* by one fatall overthrow, that the *Athenians* to prevent all the like dysasters, did ordain by Law, that whosoever mentioned the recovery of *Salamis*, was to lose his life: so that *Solon* was compelled to faign himself frantick, the better to propound the enterprise. In which, although the State of *Athens* got the Ile of *Salamis*: yet did the *Megarenses* continue a *Free-people*, till brought under (with the rest) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made subject unto *Rome*.

3 *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South with *Megaris*, and the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North with the River *Cephisus*; on the East with *Attica*, and a branch of the *Ægean* Sea; and on the West with *Phocis*. Thus named from βοῦς, which in *Greek* signifieth an Oxe: because when *Cadmus* weary of seeking his sister *Europa* (whom *Jupiter* had stollen out of *Phœnicia*) came to the Oracle at *Delphos*; he was commanded to follow the first Oxe he saw, and where the Oxe did rest it self, there to build a Citie.

In the Countrie nothing singular but an ancient custome of burning before the door of an house in which a new-married wife was designed to dwel, the *Axe-tree* of the Coach which brought her thither: giving her by that Ceremonie to understand (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his Morals) that she must restrain her self from gadding abroad; and that being now joined unto an husband, she must frame herself to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Country also are the Straits of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the neighbouring Bathes, called *Thermopylæ*, not above 25 foot in breadth: which in the war that *Xerxes* made against the *Greeks*, were valiantly defended by *Leonidas* King of *Sparta*, with no more then 300 of his men: who having valiantly resisted that Armie which in its passage out of *Persia* had drank Rivers drie, and slain at least 30000 of them, dyed every man upon the place. To hide the greatnesse of which losse, lest it should terrifie the rest of his Armie which were coming on, *Xerxes* commandedd all the slain men to be buried in severall pits, except a thousand, as if no more then they had been lost in that passage.

Places of most observation in it: 1 *Thespias*, on a River of the same name, at the fall whereof into the Bay it is pleasantly seated: shadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*; and consecrated as that was, unto the *Muses*, hence called *Thespiades* in the Poets. 2 *Platea*, nigh to which *Mardonius*, Generall to the *Persians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the losse of *Mardonius* himself and 160000 men on the *Persian* side; and on the other no more then 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Arcadians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenses*. In memorie of which brave exploit, and to preserve the names and honour of those *Worthies* who there laid down their lives for the liberty of *Greece*, there was a festivall kept annually by the *Plateans* in the month of *September*, with solemn *Sacrifices*, and a kinde of divine acknowledgment unto the deceased, continued from the time of *Aristides* the *Athenian* who first ordained them, to the dayes of *Plutarch*, who records it: but how long after I am not able to say. In this great fight the Commander in chief was a noble *Spartan*, called *Pausanias*, who afterwards having a design to make himself Soveraign of all *Greece*, and being discovered in the practise, fled for sanctuarie to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence because it was counted sacriledge to constrain him by violence, it was unanimously resolved to wall up the entrances, his own Mother laying the first stone. It is recorded that before the fighting of this battell, the *Athenians* had been told by the *Oracle* that they should be Conquerors if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Plateans* within whose territories the *Persians* had prepared to fight, bestowed that field on the State of *Athens*. In requitall of which noble act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged their Citie, having been first burnt and sacked by the *Persians*, and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedemonians*, because confederate with *Athens* in the war against them. 3 *Leuctra*, remarkable for the great overthrow which the *Thebans* under the conduct of *Epaminondas*, gave unto the *Spartans*, and their King *Cleombrotus*, there slain: by which victory they did not only preserve their own liberty, but brought their enemies to that fall of courage and reputation, that they could never rise again: the divine vengeance overtaking them in that very place, where some of their Nation had deflowred the daughters of *Schedasus* who had given them courteous entertainment. For which, when no reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate Damosels slew themselves to avoid the infamie of consenting to their own dishonour, and were buried in those very fields where this battell was fought. 4 *Ascra*, the birth-place of *Hesiod*, a man (according to *Paterculus*) *elegantis ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis*: though it hath pleased that proud Critick *Julius Scaliger*, intending to deifie *Virgil*, to prefer the worst verse in the *Georgicks* of the one, before the whole works of the other. 5 *Lebadia*, near the River *Cephisus*, the Inhabitants whereof were counted the most superstitious of all the *Grecians*: memorable for the Den or Cave of *Trophonia*, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trophonius*. Into which Cave none were permitted to enter and receive the Oracle but after many ointings, washings, and the like superstitious preparations: too long and many to be specified in this place and time. A town which still preserves so much of its ancient estimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Country of *Achaia* hath the name of *Levadia*, by which the *Turks* call it at this present. 6 *Cheronea*, or *Coronea*, the birth-

place

place of *Plutarch*. Near unto which was fought that memorable battell betwixt *L. Sylla* and the *Romans*, againſt *Archelaus* one of the Lieutenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an armie of 120000 ſouldiers, of which 10000 only eſcaped with life, the *Romans* loſing but 14. 7 *Orchomenon*, no leſſe memorable for another victorie obtained by the ſame *L. Sylla*, againſt *Dorilaus* another of that Kings Commanders, having an armie of 80000 men, of which 20000 loſt their lives that day. After which victories, when *Sylla* might eaſily have deſtroyed that King, he ſuddenly patched a peace up with him, that he might haſten unto *Rome*, where *Marius* and *Cinna* had trodden his faction under foot; preferring by that act the purſuit of his own private quarrels before that of his Countrie; endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, then it had been formerly. 8 *Aulis*, a Port town on the ſhores of the *Ægean* Sea, where the *Grecians* took ſhipping when they went to the war of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the enterprize untill they had deſtroyed that Citie. Concerning which, thus ſhe in *Virgil*:

Non ego cum Danais Trojanam *excindere Gentem*
Aulide juravi.

That is to ſay:

I took no oath at *Aulis* to deſtroy,
As did the *Greeks*, the Town and State of *Troy*.

But the chief Citie of this Country, and ſuch as had a ſpeciall influence over all the reſt, was the Citie of *Thebes*, ſituate on the banks of the River *Cephiſus*, where built by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician* after all his wandrings. Famous in old times for the wars between *Eteocles* and *Polynices*, the ſons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and wife *Jocaſta*. The hiſtorie of which war is the moſt ancient piece of ſtorie, that we finde of all *Greece*; the former times and writings containing nothing but fables, little ſavouring of *humanity*, and leſſe of *truth*; as of men changed into Monſters, the adulteries of the Gods, and the like. In this town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who ſo cruſhed the *Lacedemonians* at the battell of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea*: that they could never after re-obtain their former puiſſance. This *Common-wealth* long flouriſhed, and at laſt being overburthened in the *Phocian* war, was glad to ſubmit it ſelf to the protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Philip*: who by this means firſt got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thruſt his whole body. Upon the death of *Philip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedons*; but *Alexander* his ſucceſſour quickly recovered it: and to diſhearten the *Greeks* in the like attempts, he razed the Citie, ſelling all the inhabitants of age and ſtrength; only *Pindarus* houſe he commanded to be left ſtanding, in honour of that learned Poet. At this ſack of the town, one of the *Macedon* ſouldiers entred the houſe of a principall woman, named *Timoclea*, raviſhed her, and rifled her coffers; but ſtill demanding more treaſure ſhe ſhewed him a deep Well, ſaying, that there all her money was hidden. The credulous villain ſtooping down to behold his prey, ſhe tumbled into the Well and over-whelmed with ſtones; for which noble act, the generous Prince not only diſmiſſed her unhurt, but moſt highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Caſſander*, and followed for the moſt part, as the reſt of the *Bœotians* did, the fortunes of *Macedon*. Reduced at this time to the State of an ordinarie Burrough, and called *Scibes* by the *Turks*.

4 PHOCIS is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bœotia*, on the Weſt with *Doris* and *Locris*, on the North with the River *Cephiſus*, and on the South with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Country ſomewhat ſwelled with Mountains, but thoſe of eminent note in the elder times. The chief whereof 1 *Helicon*, 2 *Citheron*; both conſecrated to the *Muſes*, and both contending with *Parnaſſus* for height and bigneſſe. 3 *Parnaſſus*, of ſo great an height, that in that great *deluge*, in which moſt of theſe parts of *Greece* were over-whelmed with the waters, *Deucalion* and *Pyrrha* ſaved themſelves, and many others, on the top hereof: for which and for its two ſummits reaching to the clouds, of great renown amongſt the Poets; as in *Ovid* thus:

Mons ibi verticibus petit arduus aſtra duobus,
Nomine Parnaſſus; *ſuperatque cacumine nubes.*

Parnaſſus there with his two tops extends
To the toucht ſtars, and all the clouds tranſcends.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Anticyra* ſituate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, an herb very medicinall for the Phrenzie; whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyras*, applyed to mad men. 2 *Pytho*, or *Pythia*, ſaid to be ſeated not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the world: *Strabo* relating how *Jupiter* deſirous to know the exact midle of the earth, let looſe two Eagles, one from the Eaſt and the other from the Weſt, which flying with an equall wing (ſo we muſt conceive) and meeting at this very place, ſhewed it apparently to be the Navell of the World. By reaſon of which convenient ſituation in the heart of *Greece*, it was made a Seſſions town for all the *Grecians*, and honoured with the Court and generall Aſſemblie of the *Amphictiones*, men choſen out of the prime Cities of *Greece*, who had power to decide all Controverſies, and to make Lawes for the

Phocis. common good. A Court first instituted by *Acrisius*, as *Strabo* telleth us; or as *Halicarnasseus* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the son of *Helles*, from whom they seeme to have their name. The Commissioners from the severall Cities, with reference to the places for which they served, had the name of *Pylagoræ*; when assembled, they were called the *Amphictyones*: their meetings, at the beginning of the Spring and Autumn. Some instances concerning their authoritie will not be amisse. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cyrrhenians* having by Piracie wronged the *Thessalians*, were fined by this Councell. And after that the *Lacedæmonians* for surprizing *Cadmea*; and the *Phocians* for ploughing up the Land of *Cyrrha*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: and because they continued obstinate, and paid not their amercements, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiscate unto that Temple. But they disobeying this Decree also, spoiled the Temple it self: for which, war being proclaimed against them by the rest of the *Grecians*, who by the assistance of *Philip* King of *Macedon*, brought them to obedience; the Councell was again assembled. In which it was decreed that the *Phocians* should raze the wall of their Cities; that they should pay the yearly tribute of 60 *Talents*; that they should no more keep Horse and Arms, till they had satisfied the Treasurie of the Temple; nor any longer have a voice in those Conventions. It was also then enacted, that the lost suffrages of the *Phocians* should be vested in King *Philip* and his successours Kings of *Macedon*; on whom they also did confer the perpetuall Presidentship, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the 70 Elders among the *Jewes*; and in our times, the Diets of the Empire, and the Assemblies of the *Switzers*, carry most resemblance. 3 *Cyrrha*, on the Sea side, the Port town to *Delphos*. 4 *Crissa*, so called from *Crissæus* the son of *Phocus*, and grandchild of *Æacus*, situate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*, called sometimes from hence *Crissæus Sinus*. 5 *Scarphia*, memorable for the defeat of *Critolaus* Captain of the *Achæan* Armie, by *Metellus* one of the *Roman Prætors*: the losse of which battell drew after it the destruction of *Corinth*. It was observed in the successe of this great fight, that a band of *Arcadians* escaping out of the battell came unto 6 *Elatea*, another Citie of this Province, and were there kindly entertained on memorie of some former alliances, till news came of the overthrow of *Critolaus*: when ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquish the town, (for *adversitie seldome meeteth with returns of friendship*) they were set upon, and all slain by the *Romans*, in the selfe-same place in which their Ancestors had unworthily forsaken the rest of the *Grecians* in their war against *Philip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick *Libertie*. 7 *Daulis*, a Citie appertaining to *Tereus* King of *Thrace*, who having married *Progne* the daughter of *Pandion* King of *Athens*, ravished her sister *Philomela*, and cut out her tongue the better to keep his villanie undiscovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double injury, first made him ignorantly eat his own son *Itys*, whom she had baked in a Pye; and after killed him, with the help of her ravished sister. 8 *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which with that of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of *Egypt*) were the most famous *Oracles* of the ancient *Gentiles*: dark Riddles of the Devill, couched and contrived with so much cunning, that the meaning of them was most hidden when it was thought most easie to be discerned. Instance of which that given to *Crœsus*, in the war by him projected against the *Persian*, which was thus delivered:

Crœsus Halyn penetrans magnam subvertet opum vim.

When *Crœsus* over *Halys* goes
A mighty Nation he o'rethrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, crossed the River; was vanquished by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*, and his Kingdome conquered. The like we finde of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who before he made war against the *Romans*, consulted with the *Oracle*, and received this answer.

Aio te Æacide Romanos vincere posse.

Which doubtfull prediction he thus construed; *Te posse vincere Romanos*, that he should overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his cost that the meaning was, *Romanos posse vincere te*, that the *Romans* should overcome him; as indeed it happened. By another kinde of the same fallacie which the *Logicians* call *Amphibolia*, did this great enemy of mankind overthrow another: who demanding of the Oracle what successe he should have in an expedition which he was in hand with, received his answer in these words:

Ibis redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *Ibis, redibis, nunquam per &c.* engaged himself in the war, and was therein slain. Whereupon his followers canvassing the Oracle found the meaning of it to be this, *Ibis, redibis nunquam, per &c.* The like jugling he also used in those supernaturall Dreams which Philosophers call Ἀμφιδόπεμπλα. For *Cæsar* dreaming that he carnally knew his own mother the night before he passed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common mother of the *Romans*: and *Hippias* the son of *Pisistratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the same projects the same dream, was killed and buried in the bowels of his mother the earth: so that had *Cæsar* miscarried in his action, and

Hippias

Hippias thrived: yet ſtill had the Devill been reputed his crafts-maſter, and the father of truths. But as the Eccleſiaſticall hiſtory telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apoſtata* conſulting with the Devill, was told that he could receive no anſwer, becauſe that the body of *Babylas* the Martyr, was entombed nigh his Altar: ſo neither could the Devils deceive the world as formerly they had done, after Chriſt the truth it ſelf was manifeſted in the fleſh, and tormented theſe unclean ſpirits, though as they alledged, before their time. *Auguſtus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whoſe time our Saviour was born, conſulting with the Oracle about his ſucceſſour, received this not ſatisfying anſwer: *Locris.*

Παῖς ἑβραῖος ἀλεγεί με θεοῖς μακάρεσσιν ἀνάκτων
Τὸν δὲ νόμον θεσπεσίης ἐκ δώμων ἔνδοις ἰκέσθαι,
Λοιπὸν ἀπὸ σκηῶν ἐκ βωμῶν ἡμετέρων.

An *Hebrew* child, whom the bleſt Gods adore,
Hath bid me leave theſe *ſhrines* and pack to hell;
So that of *Oracle* I can no more:
In ſilence leave our *Altar*, and farewell.

Whereupon *Auguſtus* coming home, in the *Capitol* erected an *Altar*, and thereon in capitall Letters cauſed this inſcription to be ingraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by Chriſts birth loſt much of their wonted vertue, ſo after his *paſſion* they loſt it almoſt altogether. Concerning which *Plutarch* in a tract of his *Morals*, called Περὶ τῆς ἀπολωλότων χρηστηρίων *why Oracles ceaſe to give anſwers*, telleth us a notable ſtory, which was this. Some company going out of *Greece* into *Italie*, were about the *Echinades* becalmed; when on the ſuddain there was heard a voice, loudly calling on one *Thamus* an *Egyptian*, then in the ſhip. At the two firſt calls he made no anſwer, but to the third he replyed, ſaying, *Here I am*: and the voice again ſpake unto him, bidding him when he came to *Palodes*, to make it known, that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which are certain ſhelves and rocks in the *Ionian* Sea, *Thamus* ſtanding on the poope of the ſhip, did as the voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty noiſe of many together, who all ſeemed to groan and lament with terrible and hideous ſhreekings. News hereof coming to *Tiberius* he cauſed the learned men in his Empire, to enquire out of their Books who that *Pan* ſhould be; by whom it was anſwered, that he was the ſon of *Mercury* and *Penelope*; with ignorance enough, and little ſatisfaction to the buſineſſe propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly obſerved the circumſtances of this accident, found it to happen at the time when our Saviour ſuffered on the *Croſſe*; who was indeed the true God *Pan*, the *chief Shepherd and Biſhop of our ſouls*, as the Scripture calleth him: and that upon this divulging of his death and paſſion, the Devils who uſed to ſpeak in *Oracles*, did with great grief and lamentation forſake that Office, which had been ſo gainfull to them in ſeducing mankind. That all *Oracles* at that inſtant ceaſed, I dare not ſay; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: it being ſaid by *Juvenal* who lived in the reign of *Domitian*, Delphis *Oracula ceſſant*, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then ſilent; the reſt decaying ſenſibly in a ſhort time after.

But to proceed, the Temple of *Apollo* being ſpoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, cauſed the war betwixt them and the *Thebans* called the *Holy War*: in which the *Thebans* being likely to have the worſt, ſent for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the quarrell by ſubduing both. The treaſure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple, was reckoned at 60 talents of Gold: but it proved *Aurum Toloſanum*, and brought a ſudden ruine on their State and Nation: Sacriledge being ſo impardonable a crime, even amongſt the Heathen, that the fault of ſome few countenanced by the reſt of a people, hath brought deſtruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill fortune ranſacked by *Brennus* and his *Gaules*, in the main of the *Macedonian* Empire; all of them miſerably periſhing who had any hand in it.

5 *LOCRIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phocis* and a branch of the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt with *Ætolia*; on the North with a long ridge of hils which part it from *Theſſalie*; and on the South with parts of *Achaia*, *Bœotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Straits of *Antirrhium*, and a part of the *Ionian* Sea. So that for largeneſſe of extent, and the commodiouſneſſe of the Seas, it yeeldeth to no Province in *Attica*, though not ſo fruitfull as ſome others. Divided into the three Nations of the *Locri*, 1. *Azolæ*, lying towards the South, on both ſides of the *Straits*; ſo called from ſome ill ſmels of the Country or people; 2 the *Epicnemidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, ſo named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnaſſus*; and 3. the *Opuntii*, ſo called from *Opus* their chief Citie, lying on the North ſide of the River *Cephiſus* on the Coaſts of the *Ægean* or *Eubœan* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1 *Opus*, the head Citie of the *Opuntians*, ſituate on the River *Aſopus*, being one of the main branches of *Cephiſus*. 2 *Cynus*, the Port town to *Opus*. 3 *Thronium*, the prime town of the *Epicnemidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Livie*, *Ptolemie*. 4 *Cnemides*, at the foot of Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5 *Amphiſſa*, the chief Citie of the *Ozolæ*, ſituate in the Inland parts of it: the people whereof refuſing to yeeld to the ſentence of the *Amphictyones*, againſt their confederates the *Phocians*, were the cauſe that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Againſt whom grievouſly infeſting the *Bœotians*, and manifeſtly aſpiring to the command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* deſperately oppoſed, not ſo much with poſſibility of prevailing, as by the ſharp and biting orations of *Demoſthenes*, made againſt his proceedings: which being by him called *Philippicks*, occaſioned

Doris, & Ætolia.

tioned *Tully* to call his bitter invectives against *M. Antonius* by the ſame name alſo. But the ſucceſſe hereof was ſuch as commonly attendeth a broken fortune, the *Athenians* being vanquiſhed at *Charonea*, and *Philip* declared Captain of *Greece* againſt the *Perſians*, obtaining under that title the command he ſought. 6 *Evantia*, as *Ptolemie*; *Oeantia*, as *Plinie* and *Pauſanias* call it; oppoſite to *Ægira* in *Achaia propria*. 7 *Molychria*, by *Ptolemie* placed here; but by others reckoned in *Ætolia*. 8 *Naupactus*, ſo called from the building of ſhips there by the *Heraclidæ*, ſituate on the *Corinthian* Bay near the mouth thereof. Given by the Citizens of *Athens* to the poor *Meſſenians*, when after the end of the third war, the *Lacedæmonians* unwilling to have them troubleſome neighbours (and they ſcorning to be quiet ſlaves) compelled them to ſeek new habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the *Colfe* of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that name ſubject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, *anno* 1499. Of theſe *Locrians*, thoſe of *Italie* were a branch or Colonie, whoſe Lawgiver was *Zaleucus* ſpoken of elſewhere.

6 *DORIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phocis*, on the Weſt with *Ætolia*, on the North with the hill *Oeta*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Theſſalie*; and on the South with *Ætolia*, and part of *Locris*. The air hereof is very healthy, and the ſoil ſufficiently fruitfull if well manured, but now the greateſt part lyeth waſte, for want of tillage. Firſt peopled by the *Dores* or *Dorienſes*, deſcended from *Dorus* the ſon of *Hellen* and grandchild of *Deucalion*; by whom placed in *Theſſalie*, afterwards ſpreading into this Country which they left their name to, as their proper dwelling: though many of them following the *Heraclidæ* into *Peloponneſus*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the greateſt part of *Laconia* alſo, imprinting on the ſame their *Dialect* or form of ſpeech, from them called the *Doricke*.

Chief Cities hereof are 1 *Doris*, ſo called in memorie of *Dorus*, the firſt Progenitour of this people. 2 *Erineus*, ſeated at the foot of *Parnaſſus*, mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Ptolemie*, and the reſt of the ancients. 3 *Bium*, as *Ptolemie*; or *Boion*, as *Strabo* and *Plinie* call it. 4 *Cytinum*, near *Parnaſſus* alſo, in the common impreſſions of *Diodorus Siculus* the Hiſtorian, falſly called *Cynthinium*. 5 *Lilæa*, ſituate not farre from the ſpring or fountain of the River *Cephiſus*; which riſing hereabouts paſſeth thorow the whole length of *Achaia* and falls into the *Ægean* or *Eubœan* Sea.

7 *ÆTOLIA* hath on the Eaſt *Locris*, on the Weſt *Epirus*, on the North *Doris*, on the South the *Ionian* Sea. Said to be ſo called from *Ætolus* the ſon of *Mars*, who being by *Salomoneus* caſt out of *Elis*, fix'd himſelf in this Country.

Here is the Forreſt *Calydon*, where *Meleager* and the flower of the *Greek* Nobility ſlew the wild Bore. Here is the River *Evenus*, over which the Centaure *Neſſus* having carryed *Deianira*, wife of *Hercules*; and intending to have raviſhed her, was ſlain by an arrow which *Hercules* on the other ſide of the River ſhot at him. Here alſo is the river of *Achelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things, as that being rivall with *Hercules* in the love of *Deianira*, he encountred him in the ſhape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules* had pluckt off one of his horns, the *Nymphs* made of it their ſo much celebrated *cornucopia*.

The people of this Country were the moſt turbulent and unruly people of all *Greece*, never at peace with their neighbours, and ſeldome with themſelves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reaſon of the craggineſſe of the country: yet they brought them to ſuch terms that they were compelled to let the *Romans* into *Greece*, who quickly made an end of all.

Principall towns hereof, were 1 *Chalcis*, ſituate near the ſpring-head of *Achelous* before mentioned. 2 *Arachthus*, near the river ſo called, which ariſing hereabouts paſſeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3 *Olenus*, not far from the Forreſt of *Calydon*. 4 *Pleurona*, giving name to the adjoyning Country, called hence *Pleuronia*: the people whereof had the name of *Curetes*: ἀπὸ τῆς κειρᾶς, from their ſhaving; it being their cuſtome to ſhave the fore-parts of their heads, and let the hair grow on the hinder parts only: *ne hoſtes eos cæſarie apprehenderent*, becauſe their enemies ſhould not lay hold on them by the foretops, and ſo pull them down. 5 *Thermus*, the Parliament-Citie or place of generall Aſſembly for all the Eſtates of *Ætolia*, which meeting was called *Panætolium*, choſen for thoſe meetings, in regard of the ſituation and ſtrength thereof; as ſituate welnear in the middeſt of the Country, environed with rockie Mountains, of ſteep and difficult aſcent. For that cauſe made alſo the receptacle of their wealth and treaſure in all times of danger; but taken by the laſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, with all the ſpoile in it, in his war againſt them. 6 *Calydon*, near the forreſt ſo called, giving name unto it; the royall ſeat of *Oeneus* father of *Meleager*; divided into two parts by the River *Evenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*:

Et Meleagream *maculatus ſanguine* Neſſi,
Evenus, Calydona *ſecat*.

That is to ſay:

Calydon, *Meleagers* town, the flood
Even divides, defil'd with *Neſſus* bloud.

Adjoin-

Adjoining hereunto were the the *Athamanes*, whom *Plinie* makes a people of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Athemania*; but ſuch, (as little as it was) as gave it the title of a Kingdom to *Animander*: a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made eſpeciall uſe of in their wars againſt *Philip* King of *Macedon* the father of *Perſeus*, ſuggeſting to him and his children, that they were deſcended of the houſe of *Alexander* the great, and ſo ingaging them in a hope of that Kingdom to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of moſt note is 1 *Dium*, 2 *Athenæum*, both took by *Philip* in that warre. *Achaia*

Theſe as they were the laſt Actors on the ſtage of *Achaia*, ſo had they the moſt deſperate part in all the tragœdie of that Countrie. The affaires whereof, governed ſucceſſively by that State which was moſt, powerfull were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*: whoſe counſels and concluſions went for law amongſt them. But that *Eſtate* being broken, if not ſubverted by the power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Bœotians* who came next in play had the chief command, uniting almoſt all the reſt in deſign with them againſt the *Spartans*; who now grow terrible to all. Becoming inſolent by the courſe of too much proſperitie, and the many great victories which they had againſt the *Spartans*; and thereupon quarrelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cauſe of *Philips* coming into *Greece*; who as he had learned amongſt them the uſe of arms, ſo made he uſe thereof at laſt, and of their diſſenſions, to unite all the States of *Greece* under his command. *Thebes* it ſelf being took and ſacked by *Alexander* the ſon of *Philip*, as before is ſaid. The *Macedonians* thus prevailing, partly by force, but ſpecially by art and practiſe, there was no people in *Achaia* that durſt oppoſe them till theſe *Ætolians*, a reſtleſſe and impatient people took the cauſe in hand: Who thrived ſo well under *Antigonus* and *Philip*: two of the laſt Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many towns, invaded *Theſſalie*, attempted *Macedon* it ſelf: and when they could not otherwiſe obtain their purpoſe in the deſtruction of that Kingdome, opened a paſſage for the *Romans* to effect it for them. But finding no ſuch favour at the *Romans* hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* againſt them, drawing thereby thoſe forces againſt themſelves which they had invited into *Greece*: and were the firſt people of all the *Grecians* that were conquered by them: though by the mediation of the *Rhodians* and ſome other friends, their Countrie was reſtored unto them, with the loſſe only of *Cephalenia*, *Zant*, and ſome other Iſlands which the *Romans* were reſolved to keep as the fruits of the war. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then *Conſul*, and chief Commander in this war. After which time the ſeverall *Eſtates* hereof enjoyed ſo much liberty, as the *Romans* their new *Maſters* thought fit to give them: till finally made abſolutely ſubject in the time of *Veſpaſian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponneſus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the diviſion of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, the Weſt parts hereof being divided from the reſt, was called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of *Macedon*, under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*: the principall office of this part being called the *Proconſul* of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his ſucceſſours, Emperours of *Conſtantinople*, till the deſtruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*. But ſo that it remained not alwayes under the command of one ſole Officer, the *politie* of that State being altered, and this Country parcelled out into many Governments: eſpecially after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines* or Weſtern *Chriſtians*. At what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a noble *Grecian*, and one of the (then) *imperiall* familie, ſeiſed on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, part of which laſt, and all the firſt he left to *Michael* his ſon: who held them though with ſome diſpute betwixt him and *Michael Paleologus*, the firſt Emperour of *Conſtantinople* after the expulſion of the *Latines*. *Charls* the laſt Prince of that familie dying without iſſue about the year 1430. bequeathed *Ætolia* to another *Charls*, the ſon of his brother: and *Acarnania* (being that part of *Epirus*, which the Princes of *Ætolia* held) to his baſe ſons, *Memnon*, *Turnus*, and *Hercules*. But many quarrels hapning upon this diviſion, *Amurath* the 2. having then newly conquered *Theſſalonica*, compoſed the differences by taking all unto himſelf, *anno* 1432. There were at that time other Princes of like authoritie, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Bœotia*, but the firſt the chiefeſt: as honoured not only with the title of Dukes of *Athens*, but the Princes of *Achaia* alſo: ſuch being the fortune of that Citie, as to have the firſt and laſt great ſway in the affairs of *Achaia*. For at the tranſlation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey* of *Troyes*, a *French* man, was made Duke of *Athens*, and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Æmilius* ſpeaketh, *anno* 1220. which honour afterwards was conferred on a kinſman of *John di Brenne*, the laſt King of *Jeruſalem*, Protectour of *Baldwin* the 2. the laſt Emperour of the *Latines*, mentioned by the ſaid *Æmilius*, *anno* 1288. By the heir generall of this houſe it was conveighed in marriage to *Izaulus di Accio*, a Noble man of the Realm of *Naples*: whoſe ſon *Walter* for a time obtained the ſoveraigntie of the State of *Florence*, *anno* 1342. but loſt it ſuddenly again by his too much cruelty. *Francis di Acciavol*, the laſt Prince of this houſe, having been brought into the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his *Favourites*, ſurrendred his eſtate herein, at the perſwaſion of that *Tyrant*, in exchange for the Countrie of *Bœotia*, and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he no ſooner had received but he was ſent by *Mahomet* to *Zoganus*, his Lieutenant in *Morea*, by whom at firſt courteouſly received, at laſt cruelly murdered. And ſo the whole Country of *Achaia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, *anno* 1454. or thereabouts.

EPIRUS.

Epirus.

EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the East with *Ætolia*, on the West with the *Adriatick*; on the North with *Thessaly*, *Macedon*, and some part of *Albania*; and on the South with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the solidities and firmnesse of it; the word *Epeiros* in the Greek tongue, signifying as much as *terra firma*, or the firm land. But by the *Turkes* at this day it is called *Albania*, which name they give to all the lands and Countries in their possession, lying upon the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Countrey was born *Olympias*, mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the first foreiner, who made tryall (though to his owne losse) of the power and puissance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal*, next to *Alexander*, the second great souldier of the world. Here is also Mount *Pindus* sacred to *Apollo* and the *Muses*, dividing this countrey from *Thessaly*, and therefore common unto both: as also the *Acroceraunian* hils, so called, because they are much subject unto thunder and lightning; eminent for their height and much feared by Mariners: who when they see a little cloud rising on the top hereof, are sure of a tempest. Finally here are the famous Rivers *Acheron*, and *Cocytus*, which for their *black waters* and unsavoury taste are said to be the Rivers of Hell: from which last the sacrifices and solemnities made in honour of *Proserpine* whom *Pluto* ravished and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Whence by a *Metonymie*, these Rivers are taken sometimes, for hell it selfe, as in that of the Poet;

Flectere si nequeo superos, Acheronta *movebo.*

Since those in *Heaven* I cannot move,
The powers of *Hell* I meane to prove.

The soyle hereof is very barren, and in many places full of Forrests, and thin of people; but towards the Sea side reasonably fruitfull: plentifull of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep, of more then ordinary bignesse, and yeelding the best breed of Horses. The people use a distinct language from the *Grecians*, though of the *Greek* tongue not utterly ignorant: and by reason of the barrennesse of their own countrey, become great wanderers, especially in summer time, when they travell into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Asia minor*, hiring themselves to work in harvest under the *Turkes*, as also to thresh, winnow, and make clean their Corn; and in the Winter time return to their wives and children. Able of body, swift of foot, apt to undergoe any toyle and labour; having withall good courages and high projections, which makes such of them as delight not in works of drudgerie, to look for action in the warres, and otherwise to rob and spoile in the neighbouring mountaines of *Albania*. Till their subjection to the *Turkes*, much used both by the Kings of *Hungary*, and the State of *Venice*, in their severall warres; serving on Horse, or Foot, as occasion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Western parts, but not so faithlesse to the party by whom entertained.

Antiently it was divided into *Chaonia*, (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the West, and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which parted by the river *Achelous*; the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Thesprotia*, and *Almene*: all very populous in old times, and so continued till *Paulus Æmilius*, on the conquest of *Macedon*, overthrew 70 of their Cities. Few of which being since reedified, and the Countrey for a long time languishing under the *Turkes*, here are not any faire Townes or well-peopled Cities at the present to be spoken of; and therefore we must look on such as flourished in the times foregoing. The principall whereof, 1 *Dodona*, one of the Cities of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and *Oracle* of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonæus*, situate in a fair grove, the trees whereof were said to be *Vocall*, and to give the *Oracle*; though others say, it was delivered first by a paire of *Pigeons*; whereof the one afterwards fled to *Delphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Ægypt*. It was the antientest *Oracle* of all *Greece*; and so perhaps was the Town also. Said to be first built by *Dodone* the sonne of *Jupiter* and *Europa*: more probably so called from *Dodonim* the sonne of *Javan* and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who first inhabited this Region; the whole Countrey (*Greece* I mean) being called *Javan* from the Father (by which name commonly it occurreth in the *Hebrew* text,) this Town *Dodona* from the Sonne. 2 *Cassiope*, a Port Town, with a faire *Promontory* of the same name adjoining to it. 3 *Onchesimus*, by *Strabo* called *Orchimus*, and by *Pliny Echinus*, a Port town also now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4 *Panormus*, on the Sea side also, retaining still the old name, and but little else. 5 *Antigonia*, more within the land, founded or repaired by *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, now called *Argiro-Castro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6 *Phœnice*, once the chief Town hereof, which being sacked by the *Illyrians* under *Teuta* their Queen gave the *Romans* an occasion of quarrell with them; upon complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7 *Pelades*, a Port town, the principall in that part which was called *Thesprotia*; as 8 *Torona*, on the River *Thyamis*, and 9 *Sybota*, an antient Haven Town (now called *Syoita*) was in that part hereof which was called *Almene*. 10 *Argos*, the chief Town of the *Amphilochians*. This part hereof was first named *Molossia*, from *Molossus* the son of *Pyrrhus* and *Andromache*, remarkable for the best breed of Mastives, hence called *Molossi*; and afterward *Chaonia*, by *Helenus* the son of *Priamus*, by Pyrrhus the son of *Achilles* setled in this Countrey, who having unfortunately slain his brother *Chaon*, caused

cauſed it in memory of him to be called *Chaonia*; *Chaoniamq; omnem* Trojano à Chaone *dixit*, as it is in *Virgil*. Of theſe *Moloſſians*, *Pluto* the third ſon of *Saturn* was ſometimes King, called from the flat and hollow ſituation of this countrey, conſiſting much of deep valleys, the King of Hell.

Townes of eſpeciall note in *Acarnania*, 1 *Anactorium*, on the bay of *Ambracia*, now called *Vanizza*. 2 *Ambracia*, the Regall Seat or Court of *Pyrrhus*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoining Town, ſituate in or neer the place where *Ambracia* ſtood. Once ſubject unto *Periander*, King or *Tyrant* of *Corinth*, who being ſlain by a woman named *Lionna*, whom he kept as his *Concubine*, occaſioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their deliverance to worſhip a *Lion*. Afterwards being taken from the children of *Pyrrhus* by the *Macedonians*, and from them wonne by the *Ætolians* in the time of their greatneſſe, it was beſieged by *Fulvius* a *Roman* Conſul ſpoken of before. Who ſeeing that he could not force it, was willing at the mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodians*, and other friends of both parties, to conclude a peace: but ſo that he diſpoiled this City at his going hence of much excellent *Imagery*, carrying away with him unto *Rome* the Pictures of the *nine Muſes* moſt admirably well done by the hand of *Zeuxis*, the rareſt *Painter* of his times. 3 *Buthrotum*, a *Roman* Colony, by *Pliny* called *Colonia*, ſimply; now a ſmall Village called *Butrinte*. 4 *Leucas*, ſituate on the point of a *Promontorie* of the ſame name alſo, antiently memorable for the Temple of *Apollo*; from the top of which *Promontorie* by leaping into the Sea, ſuch as unfortunately loved were cured of that malady: the firſt triall of that kinde being made by *Sappho*, that famous *Poeteſſe*. At that time joined unto the ſand, but ſince by the violence of the Sea, or the hand of man made into an Iſland; according unto that of *Ovid*,

Leucada *continuam veteres habuere Coloni*,
Nunc *Freta circumeunt*; ——

That is to ſay:

Leucas in former times join'd to the land,
Environ'd round with waters now doth ſtand.

It was called *Leucas*, from the whiteneſſe of the Rock or *Promontorie*, having before the ſeparation or disjunction of it been called *Neritos*; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Iſle and Promontory: both town and Iſland at this time called S. *Maure*, taken by *Bajazet* the ſecond, from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Jews*, (who doe ſtill inhabit it) at their expulſion out of *Spaine*. 5 *Nicopolis*, a Colonie of the *Romans*, of great both wealth and beautie in the time of S. *Paul*, who from hence dated his Epiſtle to *Titus*: called in that Poſtſcript, *Nicopolis of Macedonia*, becauſe *Epirus* at that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a diſtinct Province of it ſelfe. It was firſt built by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on a Promontory oppoſite unto *Actium*, on the other ſide of the Bay: that being the place, where his Land ſouldiers were incamped before the Navall battell betwixt him and *Mark Anthony*: and was thus called either in memory of his victory; or from a poor man and his Aſſe, whom he met there the day before. For asking the mans name, he told him that his name was *Eutyches*, *i. e.* Fortunate; and that the name of his Aſſe was *Nicon*, *i. e.* Conquerour; which happy *Omen* made his ſouldiers courageous, and hopefull of victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the Aſſe, the other of his Maſter. It is now a ſmall village called *Preveſa*.

6 *Actium*, on the Sea-ſhore, nigh unto which *Auguſtus* and *Antony* fought for the Empire of the world. The Navy of the later conſiſted of 500 Gallies; the former had 250 onely, but thoſe crowned with victory: *Antonius* ſhamefully deſerting his ſouldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*; who on the very firſt charge fled away for *Egypt*. The town now ruined, the *Promontory* upon which it ſtood called *Cabbo di Figulo*.

The Countrey was firſt peopled by *Dodonim* the ſon of *Javan*, or at leaſt by ſome of his poſterity, coming hither from the Iſle of *Rhodes*, whoſe memory was preſerved a long time in the Towne of *Dodona*, him, or from him ſo denominated. Afterwards being parted into ſeverall Nations, and thoſe Nations united in the common name of *Epirots*: it became a great and powerfull Kingdome, governed by a race of Kings deſcending from *Pyrrhus* the ſonne of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time of *Pyrrhus* the ſonne of *Æacides*. A man of ſuch courage and magnanimity, that he did not onely recover his owne Kingdome, of which *Caſſander* had deprived his Father; but got the Kingdome of *Macedon* from *Caſſanders* children: outed of which he tried his fortunes with the *Romans*, Anno Mundi 5683. V. C. 471. After his death this Kingdome was ſhrewdly ſhaken by the *Macedonians*, and ſhortly after ſubdued by *Paulus Æmilius*, who (as we now ſaid, deſtroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For, deſirous to ſatisfie his ſouldiers after his victory in *Macedon*, he ſent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principall men of every City. Theſe he commanded to deliver up all the gold and ſilver which they had; and to that end as he gave out, he ſent certaine companies of ſouldiers along with them; unto whom he gave ſecret inſtructions, that on a day by him appointed, they ſhould fall to ſack every one the town, whereunto they were ſent. A barbarous and bloudy decree, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer then 150000 *Epirots* made and ſold for ſlaves. But the chief motive which induced him to ſo great a cruelty, was by diſpeopling this countrey, lying with a long and faire Sea-coaſt over againſt *Italy*, to give the *Romans* opportunity to

land

Albania.

land their Armies, without any reſiſtance, for the further progreſſe of their Forces into *Macedon*, *Thrace*, *Moeſia*, or where elſe they pleaſed. Which ungodly policie was afterwards imitated by *William* the *Conquereur*, who laid waſt all that part of *Hampſhire*, ſince called *New Forreſt*, and therein 36 Pariſh Churches: that he might have a ſafe landing place for his *Norman* Forces, if the *Engliſh* ſhould at any time endeavour to make head againſt him. Being made ſubject to the *Romans*, it was a while part of the Province of *Macedonia*; but afterwards when *Macedonia*, was made a *Dioceſe*, it became a diſtinct Province of it ſelfe, called by the name of *Old Epirus*, to difference it from the Province of *New Epirus*, which lay Eaſtward of it. At the diviſion of the Empire it belonged to the *Conſtantinopolitans*; and ſo continued till the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*: at what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a Prince of the *Imperiall* family, ſeiſed on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, as before is ſaid; and ſped ſo well in his deſigns that he took the ſtrong City of *Durazzo* from the State of *Venice* (to whom it fell in the diviſion of that ſpoil) and cunningly (if not treacherouſly) intercepted *Peter* the third Emperor of the *Latines*, whom, as ſome ſay, he cauſed to be murdered at a banquet. After his death, his whole Eſtate being divided into two parts; *Ætolia* with that part hereof which is called *Chaonia*, continued in his houſe till the time of *Charles* Prince of *Ætolia* and *Epirus* ſpoken of before, after whoſe death it was ſubdued by *Amurath* the ſecond, as before was ſaid. The reſidue hereof, together with that part of *Macedon* which is called *Albania*, fell to the family of the *Caſtriots*: the laſt of which named *John* (the Father of *Scanderbeg*) ſeeing himſelf unable to reſiſt that Tyrant, who had already ſwallowed up all his neighbour Princes; ſubmitted his eſtate unto him, and gave unto him all his ſonnes for hoſtages. No ſooner was the old Prince dead, but *Amurath* ſeiſed on his eſtate, murdered his three eldeſt ſonnes; and cauſed *George* the youngeſt, to be trained up in the Law of *Mahomet*: who afterwards eſcaping out of his power, and recovering all his Fathers countries aſſumed alſo the ſtyle or title of Prince of *Epirus*. After whoſe death his children not being able to make good their game, loſt it to *Mahomet* the *Great*, as ſhall be ſhewn more fully in the ſtorie and deſcription of *Albania*, which is next to follow.

4 *ALBANIA.*

ALBANIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Macedonia*; on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*: on the North, with *Sclavonia*; on the South with *Epirus*. The countrey mountainous and barren; watred with few Rivers, and thoſe of no great note amongſt the Antients, as 1 *Laus*, 2 *Apſus*, 3 *Panaſus*, 4 *Celidnus*; all of them falling into the *Adriatick*.

It took this name from the *Albani*, once the Inhabitants of this tract; from whom the chiefe City hereof was called *Albanopolis*. Other townes of moſt conſideration, are 1 *Stetigrade*, or *Veſtigard* (called by ſome the *Holy City*) ſituate in the borders of *Epirus* on the top of an hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagles neſt: one of the laſt townes in all this Countrey which was taken by *Scanderbeg*, at his recovery of his birthright and eſtate herein; but being once taken by him held good courageouſly againſt the *Turke*, the ſouldiers neither fainting in their oppoſitions, nor corrupted by mony. There was in the town one only Well, into which a treacherous *Chriſtian* caſt a dead dog; at the ſight of which, being the next day drawn up, the ſouldiers gave up the town: being ſo unſeaſonably *ſuperſtitious*; that no perſwaſion, nor the example of the Captaine, or the *Burgo-maſters*, could make them drink thoſe (as they thought) defiled waters. 3 *Durazzo*, a town of great ſtrength, firſt called *Epidamnum*, and afterwards *Dyrrhachium*. Under the wals of which town, was the firſt bickering between the ſouldiers of *Cæſar*, and *Pompey*, not onely to the preſent loſſe, but alſo the utter diſcomfiture of *Cæſar*, as he himſelfe confeſſed; if the enemies Captain had knowne how to have overcome. I muſt not omit the valour of *Sceva* at this ſiege, who alone ſo long reſiſted *Pompeys* Army that he had 220 darts ſticking in his ſhield, and loſt one of his eyes, and yet gave not over till *Cæſar* came to his reſcue.

Parq; novum fortuna videt concurrere, bellum
Atque virum----denſamq; ferens in pectore ſylvam.

Fortune beholds an unaccuſtom'd fight,
An *Army* and a *man* together fight,
Whoſe breſt a wood of Arrowes covered quite.

In the diviſion of the *Eaſtern* Empire amongſt the *Latines* it fel into the power of *Venice*; taken at laſt after a long and tedious ſiege by *Amurath* the ſecond, *an.* 1474. 4 *Dibra*, in the hill countries, neer *Epirus*: the firſt town which ſubmitted to the valiant *Scanderbeg*, at his revolting from the *Turks*, ſuppoſed to be the *Deborus* of *Ptolemie*; 5 *Croia*, conceived to be *Epicaria* of *Ptolemie*, the chief Town of all this countrey, ſeated amongſt inacceſſable mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by *Scanderbeg*, but by wile: who having got into his power the Secretary of the principall *Baſſa*, forced him to write letters in his Maſters name unto the Governour hereof to deliver it unto him; which was done accordingly; afterwards in vaine beſieged by *Amurath* the ſecond, who under the wals hereof gave up his wretched ſoule to the Devill, and thrice beſieged by *Mahomet* his ſon and ſucceſſour, before he could againe poſſeſſe it, but taken at the laſt after *Scanderbegs* death; as if the *Genius* or tutelar

Deitie

Deity of the place had departed with him. 6 *Petrella*, a town of great ſtrength, ſeated on the top of an hill (as almoſt all the Townes of *Albania* are) about 25 miles from *Croia*; delivered unto *Scanderbeg* at his firſt ſitting down before it; as alſo was 7 *Petra Alba*, three miles from *Petrella*, neer the borders of *Macedon*, and ſituate like the other on the top of a mountaine; the River *Emathus* running under the bottom of it. 8 *Stellusa*, fifty miles from *Croia*, built on the top of an high hill in the middle of a pleaſant and fruitfull valley, with great and ſpacious plains about it. 9 *Dagna* or *Dayna*, a place of great importance in the hill countrey towards *Sclavonia*; for the poſſeſſion whereof aroſe a war betwixt *Scanderbeg*, and the State of *Venice*: but the *Venetians* being worſted at the battell of *Drivo*, relinquiſhed their pretenſions to it. 10 *Aulon*, a Port-town now called *Vallona*, ſituate over againſt *Hydruntum* or *Otranto* in *Italy*, from which diſtant about 60 miles. The town unwalled, but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle. A town unfortunately fit for the invaſion of *Italy*, and was accordingly made uſe of by *Achmetes* the chief *Baſſa* under *Mahomet* the *Great*, who from hence paſſed his Army over into *Apulia*, took the Town of *Otranto*: and had not the death of *Mahomet*, and the combuſtions thereon following amongſt the *Turkes*, altered the deſigne, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of *Rome* unto *Conſtantinople*. 11 *Apollonia*, a town of great note in the time of the *Romans*, a Sea-town furniſhed with a commodious Haven, which they held as their entrance into *Greece*, to that purpoſe ſerving them as commodiouſly, as *Calice* did the *Engliſh* in their wars with *France*. *Albania.*

This countrey antiently was a part of *Macedon*, inhabited by the *Talautii*, *Æſtræi*, and *Albani*, from which laſt (but not till theſe later times) it had the name of *Albania*: but whether theſe *Albani*, were a Colonie of the *Albanians* of *Aſia*, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When made a Province of the Empire it contained all *Prevalitana*, and ſome part of *Macedonia Salutaris*; under the Dioceſe of *Dacia*, in the time of *Juſtinian*, but at firſt of *Macedon*, Diſmembred from the maine body of it, when the *Latines* had ſubdued *Conſtantinople*; it fell unto the Noble family of the *Caſtriotes*: who though they tooke unto themſelves the title of Kings or Princes of *Epirus*, (moſt of which they held) as the countrey of more note and eminence; yet was *Albania* the greateſt ſtrength, and *Croia* the chief City thereof, the ſeat of their reſidence; called in that reſpect by ſome writers, the Kings of *Albania*. *John Caſtriot*, the Father of *Scanderbeg*, ſeeing himſelfe unable to reſiſt the *Turkes*, became their *Homager*, and delivered four ſonnes for *Hoſtages*; whom *Amurath* the ſecond in their Fathers life time, cauſed to bee circumciſed, and turne *Mahometans*; and after his deceaſe murdered the three eldeſt, and ſeized upon *Croia* the chief City, with the reſt of the countrey. But *George* the youngeſt of thoſe ſons, being reſerved for better fortunes, was carefully brought up by *Amurath* (who ſomewhat paſſionately loved him) in the arts of war; though ſome of his Courtiers then told him that he nouriſhed a *Serpent in his boſome which would one day ſting him*. *Amurath* to make triall of his diſpoſition, offered him on a time the Crown of *Albania*: to which he prudently replyed, that he *preferred the honour of his ſervice before all the Kingdoms of the World, and that he held his hand fitter for a ſword, then his head for a Crown*. Satisfied with which anſwer the *Tyrant* preferred him to the place of a *Sanziack* or *Provinciall* Governor: & gave him ſome Office of Command in all thoſe Armies, which he ſet out againſt the *Chriſtians*. Eſcaping out of the battell wherein *Caramben* the great *Baſſa* was overthrown and taken Priſoner by *Huniades*, he got the Town of *Croia* by a peece of wit, as before was ſaid: and in a very ſhort time after, made himſelfe Maſter of *Petrella*, *Petra Alba*, *Stelluſa*, and all the reſt of the countrey by the reputation and terrour of his firſt ſucceſſe. Having recovered his inheritance out of the hands of the *Turkes*, he reconciled himſelfe to the *Church* of *Chriſt*: ſtyling himſelfe the *Souldier* of *CHRIST JESUS*, from that time forwards. Invaded by a vaſt Army of *Turkes*, he overcometh *Alis Baſſa*, and kils 20000 of his men. With no more then 20 horſe and 50 foot, he aſſaulteth *Muſtapha* in his Camp; in which 5000 *Turkes* were ſlain, and 300 taken: with whom encountring not long after in the open field, he ſlew 10000 of his men, took many priſoners, and *Muſtapha* himſelf for one, whom he ranſomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Hoſt of *Amurath*, then beſieging *Croia*, he killed *Periſſes Baſſa*, hand to hand in a ſingle combat: and in the time of *Mahomet* who ſucceeded *Amurath*, vanquiſhed *Iſaac* the great *Baſſa*; routed his whole army, had the ſpoil of his Camp, took 20 of his faireſt Enſignes, and ſlew 30000 of his ſouldiers. Not to inſtance in the reſt of his noble actions, it is reported that in the courſe of his war againſt the *Turkes*, he killed no fewer then 3000 of them with his own hands: uſing a *Turkiſh Scymitar* in all his fights, of great weight and bigneſſe. Which when *Mahomet* on a peace between them had deſired to ſee, and afterwards returned againe with this cenſure of it, that he *ſaw nothing in it more then ordinary*: the gallant Prince ſent back this anſwer, that the *vertue of the weapon depended on the ſtrength of his Arm, which hee could not ſend him, for that he did reſerve it for the death of his Enemies*. Finally having held his Cards againſt *Amurath* and *Mahomet*, two moſt fortunate *Gameſters*, for the ſpace of 24 yeares, he ſet up his reſt at laſt a winner: dying in peace at *Lyſſa*, then belonging to the State of *Venice*; *Jan.* 17. *an.* 1466. and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the *Turkes* about nine years after, his body was digged up by them, not in ſpight, but honor: that man accompting himſelf happy who could get any of his bones to preſerve as a relick; ſuppoſing that as long as he had it about him, he ſhould be invincible. But with him died the liberty of his Countrey alſo, not long after ſubdued by the *Turkes*, and made a Province of that Empire, as it ſtill continueth: the name of *Albania* being by them extended over all *Epirus*, and ſo much of *Dalmatia* alſo as is under their power.

The armes of this kingdome (or rather of the Kings thereof) were *Gules* an Eagle *Sable*.

5 MACEDONIA.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt with *Albania*; on the North with *Mœſia Superior*, and part of *Thrace*, and on the South with *Epirus*, and *Achaia*.

It was firſt called *Æmonia* from Mount *Hæmus*, which ſhutteth up that ſide hereof which is towards *Mœſia*; after *Æmathia*, from a King of it callled *Æmathus*; *Macedonia* from *Macedo*, the ſon of *Deucalion* and the Father of *Caranaus*, the firſt King of the line of *Alexander*: and finally *Kittim* or the Land of *Kethim*, whereof ſee *Maccab.* c.1. *v.*1 & *cap.*8. *v.*5. from *Kittim* the ſonne of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet* who was planted here. Antiently of more large extent then it is at the preſent; extending from the *Ægean* Sea unto the *Adriatick*, till the taking of *Albania* out of it, which hath ſtraitned it upon that ſide, but the reſt as formerly.

The Countrey, taking it together is very fruitfull and pleaſant, though on the outward parts thereof begirt with rough mountaines and thick forreſts: in former times much celebrated for its *mines* of gold and ſilver, but long ſince exhauſted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Æmathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelasgia*, *Hſtiotis*, *Phiniotis*, *Theſſalie*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Paraxia*, *Edonis*, and many others of leſſe note inhabited by 152 ſeverall Nations: now principally divided (beſides *Albania*) into *Theſſalie*. 2 *Macedon* ſpecially ſo called, and 3 *Mygdonia*, which the *Turkes* call *Jamboli*.

1 *THESSALIE* hath on the Eaſt the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt *Albania*; on the North *Macedon* and *Mygdonia*; on the South, *Achaia*. A ſweet and delectable countrey, the pleaſures and delights whereof inclined the people to be very effeminate and diſſolute in their courſe of life; in love with luxury and eaſe, and much like the *Perſians* in behaviour: whoſe entrance into *Greece* they did therefore favour. Yet notwithſtanding this debauchednеſſe, they were eſteemed the beſt Horſemen of all the *Grecians*: by their excellent managing of which creature (as if they had been one peece with it, and either lent the Horſe their mindes or borrowed his body) they gave occaſion unto the fiction of the *Centaures*, halfe men, halfe beaſts.

It is now called *Comenolitati*, and of old was very famous for many things, eſpecially for the hill *Olympus*, of ſo great height, that it ſeemeth to tranſcend the clouds; and therefore frequently by the Poets tooke for Heaven it ſelfe. 2 For the hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapithæ*, over whom *Pirithous* was King. 3 For the Mountaines of *Pelion* and *Oſſa*, the dwelling places of the *Centaures*, who intending to raviſh *Hippodame* the Bride of *Pirithous*, on her wedding day, were ſlaine by *Hercules* and the *Lapithæ*. 4 For the delectable Valley of *Tempe*, ſituate betwixt *Oſſa* and *Olympus*; extending in length ſix miles, and five in breadth: ſo beautified with Natures gifts, that it was ſuppoſed to be the Garden of the Muſes. 5 And laſtly, for the *Dolopes*, and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had command at the ſiege of *Troy*: theſe laſt, by reaſon that they were a laborious and thrifty people, being fabled by the Poets to have firſt been *Emmets*; transformed unto men at the prayers of *Æacus* when he wanted ſouldiers.

——————Mores quos ante tenebant,
Nunc quoq; habent, parcum genus eſt, patiensq; laborum,
Quæſitiq; tenax, & quod quæſita reſervet.

The cuſtome they of *Emmets* ſtill retain,
A ſparing Folk, and unto Labour ſet;
Strangely addicted to all kinde of gain,
And wary Keepers of what ere they get.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Tricca*, the Epiſcopall See of *Heliodorus*, the Authour of that ingenious peece called the *Æthiopick* Hiſtory: which he ſo prized, that hee choſe rather to loſe his Biſhoprick then conſent to the burning of his Booke, which a Provinciall Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A peece indeed of rare contexture, and neat contrivances, without any touch of looſe or laſcivious language: honeſt and chaſt affection being the ſubject of it; not ſuch as old or modern Poets ſhew us in their Comedies, or other Poems. For here we have no inceſtuous mixture of Fathers, and daughters; no *Pandariſm* of old Nurſes; no unſeemely action ſpecified where heat of bloud and opportunity doe meet; nor indeed any one paſſage unworthy of the chaſteſt Ear. 2 *Lamia*, where the *Athenians* after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their freedomes, beſieged *Antipater*: which was the laſt honourable enterpriſe undertaken by that great and renowned City; known in old Hiſtories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3 *Lariſſa*, ſituate on the South of *Demetrias*, but on the ſame Bay; memorable for the birth of *Achilles*; from hence called frequently in the Poets *Lariſſeus Achilles*. 4 *Demetrias*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelaſgicus* (now the *Golf of Armenia*) of very great ſtrength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the Iſle of *Eubœa*, and the City of *Corinth*; kept all *Greece* in awe, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters of Greece*: the *Grecians* never thinking themſelves at liberty, till thoſe townes were diſtrantled by the *Romans*. 5 *Pharſalis*, nigh to which was fought the great battell betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, for the Soveraignty of the *Roman* Empire: a battell more famous

famous then bloudy, 6000 only of 300000, which were in the field on both ſides, being therein ſlain. A battell before which the *Pompeians* were in ſuch a miſerable ſecurity, that ſome of them contended for the Prieſthood which was *Cæſars* Office; others diſpoſed of the *Conſulſhip*, and preferments in the Citie of *Rome*: *Pompey* himſelf being ſo rechleſſe, that he neither conſidered into what place it were beſt to flie if he loſt the day; or by what means he might provide for his own ſafety, and end the war. As if the war had been made againſt ſome ignoble Enemie, and not againſt that *Cæſar*, who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, tooke priſoners one million of men, and ſlain as many. 6 *Philippi*, ſo named from *Philip* the *Macedonian*, the firſt founder of it; ſituate in the further part of the ſame plains of *Pharſalia*; and famous for as memorable a Battell as that before, and of no leſſe conſequence: that namely, betwixt *Auguſtus* and *M. Antonius* on the one ſide, againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius* on the other; theſe later being rather overcome by chance then valour. For either of them thinking the other vanquiſhed, ſlew himſelf in the field: being the two laſt that ever openly ſtood out for the common Liberty, and therefore called by *Cremutius Cordus*, *Ultimi Romanorum*, or the laſt of the true *Roman* Spirits. 7 *Gomphi*, an ancient Citie bordering on *Epirus*. 8 *Phera*, in which Citie *Alexander* the Tyrant reigned; againſt whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting, was ſlain in battell: the Tyrant being not long after murdered by his wifes brother, and by that means all *Theſſalie* recovering liberty. 9 *Pagaſa*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelaſgicus*, which from hence is ſometimes named *Pegaſicus*; in which the ſhip called *Argo*, was ſaid to be built, ſo famous for the renowned voyage of the *Argonautes*. The hill *Pelion* ſpoken of before, is not far from hence. 10 *Pythion*, or *Pytheum*, of great note for the *Pythian* games there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: the Conquerour in which games, were crowned at the firſt only with an *oaken Garland*, but afterwards with one of *Lawrell*. Of which thus the Poet: *Theſſalie.*

Neve operis famam poſſet abolere vetuſtas
Inſtituit ſacros celebri certamine ludos,
Pythia *de domiti* Serpentis *nomine dictos, &c.*

Thus made to ſpeak *Engliſh* by *G. Sandys*:

Then leſt the well-deſerved memorie
Of ſuch an act in future times ſhould die
He inſtituted the ſo famous *Games*
Of free contention, which he *Pythia* names.
Who ran, who wreſtled beſt, or rak'd the ground
With ſwifteſt wheels, the *Oaken Garland* crown'd.

Theſe games, together with the *Olympick*, *Iſthmian*, and *Nemæan* ſpoken of before; made the four annuall meetings amongſt the *Grecians*; renowned for the univerſall concourſe of the nobleſt ſpirits. 11 *Doliche*, which together with *Pythium*, and 12 *Azorium*, another Citie of this tract, ſtanding near together, are called in *Livius* the Hiſtorian by the name of *Tripolis*. 13 *Hypata*, the *Metropolis* of *Theſſalie*, ſo called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopick* Hiſtorie before mentioned: who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliacus*, now *Golfo di Ziton*, and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*: upon which Mountain, *Hercules* being tortured with a poiſoned ſhirt, ſent by his innocent wife *Deianira*, ſaid to have burned himſelf; thence called *Hercules Oeteus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pagaſa*, and *Demetrias*, are in the Region called *Phthiotis*; *Lariſſa*, *Doliche*, *Phthium*, and *Azorium*, in that called *Pelaſgia*; *Gomphi*, and *Tricca*, in *Eſtiotis*; the reſt in *Theſſalie*, properly and ſpecially ſo named.

This Country at firſt called *Æmonia*, afterwards *Pelaſgia*, then *Pyrrhæa* from *Pyrrha* the wife of *Deucalion*, and finally *Theſſalia*, from *Theſſalus* one of the companions of *Hercules*; by *Plinie* is called *Driopis*, *Eſtiotis* by *Strabo*, *Pelaſgia* by *Diodorus*, and by *Homer*, *Argos*; the name of ſome chief Citie or particular Province, being figuratively uſed for the whole. Divided commonly into four parts, 1 *Theſſaliotis*, 2 *Eſtiotis*, 3 *Pelaſgiotis*, and 4 *Phthiotis*: the name of *Theſſalie* or *Theſſaliotis* in the end prevailing, accordingly diſtributed into ſeverall governments, united finally in the perſon of *Philip* the father of *Alexander*; who partly by force, but ſpecially by art and practiſe, made himſelf Maſter of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt *free* and *ſubject*, under the *Macedonian* Kings of the ſecond Race; it became ſubject with that Kingdome to the State of *Rome*: firſt reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*, after a Province of it ſelf, when *Macedon* was made a *Dioceſe*, part of which it was. But from a Province of that *Dioceſe*, and a member of the *Eaſtern* Empire it was made a kingdome: given with that title to *Boniface* Marqueſſe of *Mont-ferrat* in exchange for *Candie*, together with the Citie of *Theſſalonica*, and ſome part of *Peloponneſus*, at the diviſion of that Empire amongſt the *Latines*. Which title he affected in regard that *Reiner* the brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created *Prince* of *Theſſalie*, by the Emperour *Emanuel*, whoſe daughter *Cyri Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to wife. In him as it began, ſo this title ended; *Theſſalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Theſſalie* reverting to the Empire when the Greeks recovered it: from whom ſubdued, and added to the *Turkiſh* Empire in the reign of *Amurath* the 2. *anno* 1432.

Macedon.

2 *MACEDON* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Mygdonia*, on the Weſt with *Albania*, on the North with Mount *Hæmus*, on the South with *Theſſalie*. The Country for the moſt part fruitfull, as before was ſaid; but not ſo ſurfeiting with delights as to make the people wanton or effeminate in their courſe of life; as being naturally good ſouldiers, exact obſervers of military diſcipline, and inured to hardneſſe: which their many ſignall victories doe moſt clearly evidence, both in *Greece* and *Aſia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own wits reckoned them amongſt the barbarous Nations; and yet by a ſtrange kinde of contradiction aſcribe unto their Country the *ſeats* of the *Muſes*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimple*, with a fountain of the ſame name at the foot thereof; both conſecrated to the *Muſes*, from hence called *Pimpleides*. Here alſo was the hill *Libethris*, and the Province of *Pieria*, from whence the *Muſes* had the names of *Libetbrides*, and *Pierides*; by this laſt called more frequently then by any other name what ever, eſpecially by the *Greeks* themſelves. But the birth of *Ariſtotle* in this Country doth more convince the *Grecians* of this fooliſh arrogance, then all the *Muſes* in the world. A man ſo admirable in the generall courſe of learning, ſo univerſally comprehenſive of all Arts and Sciences: that the beſt witted *Grecian* might have been his ſcholar, and thought it a great happineſſe, as King *Philip* did, that they had any children but to be *tutored* by him.

The principall Rivers hereof, beſides *Erigon* and *Aliacmon*, ſpoken of before; are 1 *Axius*, now called *Vardari*, riſing out of the hill *Scardius*, a branch of Mount *Æmus*, and paſſing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the *Golfe* of *Theſſalonica*, as it is now named: the faireſt River of thoſe parts, and of ſweeteſt waters; but ſuch as maketh all the cattell *black* which drink of it. 2 *Chabris*, 3 *Echedorus*, both riſing out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the ſame Bay alſo. Beſides which there are three other fair and capacious Bayes aſcribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Mygdonia*, that is to ſay, *Singeticus*, now *Golfo di Monte Sacro*; and *Toronicus*, now the *Golfe* or Bay of *Aiomana*; and the third common unto *Thrace* alſo, which is *Sinus Strimonicus*, now the Bay of *Conteſſo*.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, according to the ſeverall Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Almopes*, 1 *Hormia*, called afterwards *Seleucia*. 2 *Europus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*. 3 *Apſalus*. Of *Syntice*, 4 *Triſtolus*, 5 *Paroræcopolis*, 6 *Gariſcus*, 7 *Heraclea*, for diſtinction called *Heraclea Syntica*; there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edonis* bordering towards *Thrace*, 8 *Scotuſa*, 9 *Berga*, 10 *Amphipolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which encompaſſed, whence it had the name; ſeated ſo cloſe on the edge of *Thrace* that it is queſtionable to which of them it belongs of right, once garriſoned by the *Athenians*, and from them took by *Philip* the *Macedonian*, in the firſt riſe of his fortunes. 11 *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* alſo, and by ſome Writers laid unto it, but I thinke erroneouſly: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned, by whom called *Philippi*: ſituate in a Country ſo rich in mines of gold, that the ſaid *Philip* drew thence yearly 1000 *talents*, which make 600000 *French* Crowns, or 140000 *l.* of our Engliſh money. Afterwards made a *Roman* Colonie and accounted the chief Citie of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Acts* 16. 12. to the people of which S. *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. Next in *Emathia*, we have 12 *Tyriſſa* in the midlands, bordering upon *Theſſalie*, now called *Cereſi*. 13 *Ædeſſa*, called afterwards *Ægeas*, and now *Vodena*; the firſt town of all this country taken by *Caranaus*, the founder of the firſt race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14 *Berœa* on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honoured with the preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof are by S. *Luke* commended for their readineſſe in receiving the Goſpell. 15 *Pella*, on the ſame Bay alſo, the birth-place of *Alexander* the Great, from hence called *Juvenis Pelleus*. 16 *Pydna*, upon the ſame Bay at the influx of the River *Aliacmon*, in which *Caſſander* beſieged and took *Olympias* the mother, *Roxane* the wife, and *Hercules* the heir apparent of *Alexander*; all whom he barbarouſly murdered. This cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himſelf of *Alexander*, who had once knocked his head and the wall together; and partly to cry quit with *Olympias*, who had before as cruelly murdered *Aridæus* the baſe ſon of *Philip*, and *Eurydice* his wife, with whom *Caſſander* was ſuppoſed to be over-familiar. Memorable alſo is this Town for the great battell fought near it betwixt *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon*, and *P. Æmilius* the *Conſul*, in which *Perſeus* having ſhamefully deſerted his Armie, loſt both the battell and his Kingdome, with no leſſe then 20000 of his foot which were therein ſlain: the *Romans* having ſo cheap a victory, that it coſt them not above an hundred or ſixſcore men. 17 *Dium*, not far from the hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea; of which mile the River *Helicon* becoming there a Lake, and called *Baphyrus*, taketh up one halfe: ſituate in the borders towards *Theſſalie*, the way unto it out of the *Tempe* being ſtrait and narrow, and almoſt impaſſable, by reaſon of the ſpurs of the Mountains, running overthwart it: which had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted it. But *Perſeus* hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, only took care to get his treaſure out of *Dium*, and ſo abandoned both the paſſage, and the town together. 18 *Phylace*, more within the land: as is 19 *Eribœa*. But theſe four laſt are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3 *MYGDONIA* hath on the Eaſt the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt *Macedon*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the North *Edonis* and *Sinus Strimonicus*, on the South *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the *Golfe* of *Theſſalonica*. So that it is almoſt a *Peninſula*, environed on three ſides with water.

Here is in this Country the hill *Athos*, ſtanding in a *Peninſula* (the *Iſthmus* being once cut thorow by *Xerxes*, but ſince cloſed again) ſaid to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 dayes journey long, halfe a dayes in breadth, reſembling the ſhape of a man lying with his face upwards: the higheſt point whereof co-

vered

vered perpetually with ſnow, is ſaid to caſt a ſhadow as far as *Lemnos*. Exceeding fruitful in graſſe, fruit, oil, and wine; and wondrous plentifull in hares; according to that of *Ovid*: *Macedon.*

Quot Lepores in Atho, *quot Apes paſcuntur in* Hybla.

How many Hares in *Athos* feed,
What ſwarms of Bees on *Hybla* breed.

Inhabited only by *Greek* Monks whom they call *Caloires*, of the order of S. *Baſil*, to whom the hill commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long ſince dedicated: the place being ſo priviledged by the *Grand Signeur*, that neither *Turke* nor *Grecian* may inhabit in it, except ſuch *Grecians* only as profeſſe this life. Of theſe there are about 6000, diſperſed in 42 *Monaſteries*, built after a militarie manner for fear of Theeves and *Pyrats*, wherewith much infeſted in times paſt: frequented with great concourſe of people coming thither to behold and adore ſome *Relicks* (for which they are of much eſteem:) the free oblations of thoſe *Pilgrims*, and ſome benevolence from the *Turks* which do much reſpect them, being the chief means of their ſubſiſtence. The manner of their life is like that of the ancient *Hermits*, poorly clad, their ſhirts of *Woollen*, which they both ſpin and weave themſelves; none of them idle at any time, doing ſtill ſomewhat for their lively-hood, and the advancement of the houſe of which they are, as dreſſing vines, felling timber, yea and building ſhips: few of them giving themſelves to ſtudy, and ſome of them of ſo groſſe an ignorance, that they can neither write nor read: bound by their *Order* to lodge and entertain ſuch ſtrangers as have occaſion to paſſe that way according to their rank and calling, and that of free coſt, if it be deſired.

Towns of moſt note, according to the ſeverall Regions and parts hereof, are for *Mygdonia* ſpecially and properly ſo called, 1 *Antigonia*, ſo called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the firſt founder of it. 2 *Xilopolis*, 3 *Terpillus*, 4 *Phyſco*, 5 *Aſſorus*, all mentioned by *Ptolemie*, but not elſe obſervable. 6 *Apollonia*, for diſtinction ſake called *Apollonia Mygdoniæ*, to difference it from *Apollonia* in *Albania*, then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the ſtudies of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here learnt the *Greek* tongue. For *Amphaxitis*, there was 7 *Arethuſa*, 8 *Stagira*, now called *Nicalidi*, renowned for the birth of *Ariſtotle*, hence named *Stagirites*. 9 *Theſſalonica*, ſituate on the bottome of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*, by the name of the town. Anciently the *Metropolis* or head Citie of *Macedon*, the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, after the removall thereof from *Sirmium*; as alſo of the *Primate* of the *Greek* Church, who reſided here. To the people of this Citie did S. *Paul* write two of his Epiſtles continuing in great power and credit till the fall of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire into the hands of the *Latines*: at which time it was beſtowed firſt on *Boniface* Marqueſſe of *Montferrat*, the new King of *Theſſalie*: after whoſe death it fell unto the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432. when forced by *Amurath* the 2. to become *Turkiſh*. Which notwithſtanding it ſtill preſerves the reputation of a beautifull and wealthy Citie, inhabited by rich Merchants who drive here a great trade, eſpecially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for beauty, riches, and magnificence, little inferiour unto *Naples*: and though the *Turks* and *Jews* make the greateſt number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 30 Churches for the uſe of *Chriſtians*. As for the *Jews* they ſwarm here in ſuch great abundance, that in this Citie and that of *Conſtantinople* only, there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and contemned by all ſorts of people. 10 *Syderocaſpæ*, of old called *Chryſites*, remarkable for its mines of gold and ſilver, ſo beneficiall to the *Turk* that he receiveth hence monthly 18000 and ſometimes 30000 crowns *de claro*. Next for *Chalcidice*, there was 11 *Panormus*, a Port town, 12 *Stratonice* in the *Peninſula* of Mount *Athos*. 13 *Athos* or *Athoſa*, in the ſame *Peninſula*, with a Promontorie of the ſame name, nigh which it ſtood. 14 *Acanthus*, now called *Eryſſa*, on the Bay of the *Holy Mountain*. And finally in *Paraxia*, we have 15 *Ampelus*, 16 *Torone*, giving name to the Bay adjoining, called anciently *Sinus Toronicus*, now *Golfo di Aiomama*. 17 *Caſſandria*, on the Sea ſide, ſo called from *Caſſander* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Potidea*. 18 *Derris*, 19 *Merillus*, 20 *Pallene*, ſituate in the *Cherſoneſe* or Demy-Iſland, called *Petalene*, and by ſome *Petalia*; formerly conſecrated to the *Muſes*: but before that infamous for the war which the Giants are fabled to have made here againſt the Gods; at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the fields adjoyning *Campi Phlegræi*, in which this great battell is ſuppoſed to be fought. The occaſion of the Fable was, (as both *Theagenes* and *Eudoxus* do expound the ſame) that the Inhabitants hereof in thoſe elder times being men of a moſt impious and inſolent life, got the name of *Giants*: whom when *Hercules* endeavoured to ſubdue and reduce to reaſon, it happened that there fell a great tempeſt of thunder and lightning, by which they were conſtrained to flee and ſubmit themſelves. Hence the report that thoſe *Giants* made war againſt the Gods. Others have placed theſe *Phlegræan* fields in *Theſſalie*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am that ſome place nearer to the hils of *Pelion*, *Oſſa*, and *Olympus*, doth agree beſt with it: if at leaſt *Ovid* were not out in his narration, who makes thoſe Mountains to be heaped upon one another for their better reaching to the skies, and fighting upon even ground as the ſaying is. For thus that Poet:

Affectaſſe ferunt regnum cæleſte Gigantes,
Altaque congeſtos ſtruxiſſe ad ſydera Montes.
At pater omnipotens miſſo perfregit Olympum
Fulmine, & excuſſit ſubjectum Pelion Oſſæ.

Macedon.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

The *Giants* once the Throne of heaven affected
And hils on hils unto the Stars erected.
Till *Jove* with thunder high *Olympus* brake,
And *Pelion* did from under *Oſſa* take.

But from thoſe Fables to proceed to more reall ſtories: this Country was firſt peopled by *Citim* the ſon of *Javan*, paſſing over out of *Aſia Minor*; in memorie whereof, here was not only a town called *Citium*, ſpoken of by *Livie l.*42. but the whole land of *Macedon* is in the book of *Maccabees* called the land of *Kettim*, *Maccab.*1. *v.*1. and the inhabitants hereof called *Citims*, in the 8 chapter of the ſame book, *v.*5. ſpreading in tract of time from one Sea to the other, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, ſome Colonies of them paſſed from hence to *Italie*, and firſt inhabited that Countrie, as hath there been ſaid. Such as continued in theſe parts, divided into ſeverall tribes, as in all parts elſe, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*: a people not much taken notice of in the former times, living a poor and painfull life, *Goatherds* and *Shepherds* for the moſt part, ſcarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next invader; much leſſe to dream of conquering either *Greece* or *Perſia*. And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unfitly, (though by him ſpoke in paſſion and to their diſgrace) that *his father* Philip *had firſt made them Gentlemen*. For *Philip* having learned the *Rudiments* of war under *Epaminondas*, (being then an Hoſtage with the *Thebans*) and by that means acquainted with the temper and ſtate of *Greece*: not only freed his own Kingdome from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the factions raiſed amongſt the *Grecians* (which he knew how to feed and cheriſh for his own improvement) brought them at firſt wholly to rely upon him, and after to be ſubject to him. Inſomuch that never any Monarchy had a ſwifter growth, nor a more ſpeedy diſſolution: there paſſing not ful 40 years from the firſt of *Philip* to the laſt of *Alexander*: in which ſpace it was both begun, perfected, and broke to pieces. For the foundation being laid in *murder*, *perjurie* and *treaſon*, as at firſt it was, was never likely to be bleſſed with a long continuance.

The KINGS of *MACEDON*.

A.M.			A.M.			A.M.		
3155	1	*Caranaus*, 28	3415	9	*Amintas*, 50	3574	17	*Argæus* II.
3183	2	*Cœnus*, 12	3465	10	*Alexander* 43	3571	18	*Amintas* III. 19
3195	3	*Tirimas*, 38	3508	11	*Perdiccas* II. 28	3594	19	*Alexander* II. 1
3253	4	*Perdiccas*, 51	3536	12	*Archelaus* 24	3595	20	*Alorites*, 4
3284	5	*Argæus*, 38	3560	13	*Oreſtes* 5	3599	21	*Perdiccas* III 6
3322	6	*Philippus*, 38	3563	14	*Archelaus* II. 4	3605	22	*Philip* II. 24
3360	7	*Europus*, 26	3567	15	*Pauſanias* 1	3629	23	*Alexander* the Great.
3386	8	*Alcetas*, 29	3568	16	*Amintas* II. 6			

Of theſe 23 Kings, only ſix are famous: *viz. Caranaus* the firſt King, originally of *Argos*, of the race of *Hercules*, and by an *Oracle* commanded to lead a Colony into this country, and to follow the firſt flock of Cattell he ſaw before him. Being here arrived in a tempeſtuous ſtormy day, he eſpyed a herd of *Goats* flying the fury of the weather. Theſe *Goats* he followed unto *Ædeſſa*, into which by reaſon of the darkneſſe of the air, he entered undiſcovered, won the town, and in ſhort ſpace became Lord of all the Country. 2 *Perdiccas* the fourth King, who at *Æga*, built a buriall place for all his ſucceſſors; aſſuring the people that as long as their Kings were there buried, his race ſhould never fail; and ſo it happened. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the great, who was buryed at *Babylon*, was tranſlated to the ſons of *Demetrius*. 3 *Europus*, who in his infancie was carryed in a cradle againſt the *Illyrians* his enemies, and returned victorious. This the *Macedons* did either becauſe they thought, they could not be beaten their King being preſent: or perſwaded themſelves that there was none ſo void of *honour* and *compaſſion* as to abandon an infant, no way able to ſave himſelf from deſtruction, but by the valour and fidelity of his ſervants. 4 *Alexander*, the ſon of *Amintas*, famous for a notable exploit on the *Perſian* Embaſſadours; who being ſent from *Megabizus*, requeſted a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No ſooner were they entred, but *petulantius eas* Perſis *contrectantibus*, as *Juſtine* relateth the ſtory, they were called back by this *Alexander*, ſending in their ſteads young ſpringals maidenly attired; who upon the like indignities offered, ſlew theſe effeminate *Aſians*. After which he behaved himſelf ſo diſcreetly, that the *Perſian* Monarch gave him all *Greece*, between *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. *Philip* father unto *Alexander*, who governed firſt as Guardian to the ſon of *Perdiccas* his elder brother; but afterwards took unto himſelf both the Kingdom and title of King: which he continued in the depoſition of his Nephew and naturall Soveraign, the murder of the reſt of his brethren, and the deſtruction of all ſuch as oppoſed his practiſes. But being otherwiſe a man of approved abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Illyrians*, ſubdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*,

and

and a great part of *Peloponneſus*: and was choſen Generall of the *Greeks* againſt the *Perſians*. But as ſoon as he had made all things ready for this expedition, he was ſlain by one *Pauſanias* a young Gentleman, whom he had formerly abuſed. 6 *Alexander* the ſon of *Philip*, who recovered ſuch parts of *Greece*, as on the death of his father had befooled themſelves with an hope of liberty. He ſubdued *Darius* the great King of *Perſia*, *Taxiles* and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchie of the *Grecians*; and in the height of his ſucceſſes was poiſoned at *Babylon* by *Caſſander*, one of his great Captains: his Revenue at the time of his death, amounting to 300000 talents yearly. After his death his new got Empire was much controverted in the point of ſucceſſion; he himſelf having bequeathed it to him, who was thought moſt worthy by his Armie: and the Souldiers, according to their ſeverall affections and relations, thought their own *Leaders* moſt deſerving. At laſt the title of King (and in effect nothing but the title) was by conſent of the Commanders caſt on *Aridæus*, a baſtard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protectour (for *Aridæus* was a little crazed in his braine) and to be Generall of the Armie. As for the Provinces they were aſſigned unto the Government of the chiefe Commanders, *viz.* *Egypt* to *Ptolemie*, *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philotus*, *Media* to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia*, and *Phrygia major* to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Caſſander*, *Lydia* to *Minander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia minor* to *Leonatus*, *Aſſyria* to *Seleucus*, *Perſis* to *Peuceſtes*, *Thrace* to *Lyſimachus*, and *Macedon* it ſelf unto *Antipater*: the other parts of the *Perſian* Empire being left to them, unto whoſe hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this diviſion held not long. For *Perdiccas* being once ſlain by *Ptolemie*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonus*, theſe two became quickly too great for the reſt: *Ptolemie* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus* to the Kingdom of *Egypt*; and *Antigonus* bringing under his command not only all *Aſia minor*, but *Aſſyria*, *Media*, and almoſt all the Eaſtern parts of the *Perſian* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time ſucceeding in the Protectourſhip, baniſhed *Olympias* the mother of *Alexander*, out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a ſtep-dames love unto *Aridæus*. But he being dead, ſhe returned out of *Epirus*, (the place of her baniſhment) into *Macedonia*, where raiſing a ſtrong partie among the people, ſhe put *Aridæus* and his wife *Eurydice* to death; proclaiming *Hercules* the ſon of *Alexander*, King: both ſlaine not long after by *Caſſander* the ſon of *Antipater*; who to make ſure work, murdered alſo with the like cruelty *Roxane* and her ſon, another *Alexander*, the laſt ſurviver of that houſe. And ſo the royall familie being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himſelf the title of King: as did *Seleucus*, who had now recovered all the *Perſian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*; the like did *Ptolemie* in *Egypt* and *Caſſander* in *Macedon*.

Macedon.

The ſecond Race of the *MACEDON* KINGS.

A.M.

3648 1 *Caſſander*, ſonne of *Antipater*, ſuppoſed to have been the poiſoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the blood-royall of *Macedon*: his reigne full of troubles and difficulties, 19.

3667 2 *Alexander* and *Antipater*, ſons to *Caſſander*, but not well agreeing, called unto their aide *Lyſimachus*, and *Demetrius*; by whom they were both in ſhort time murdered, 4.

3671 3 *Demetrius*, ſonne to *Antigonus*, the powerfull King of *Aſia*, after he had in one battell againſt *Seleucus*, loſt both his father, and all his *Aſian* Dominions; ſettled himſelfe in *Macedon*: but being there outed by *Pyrrhus*, he fled to *Seleucus*, and with him dyed, 6.

3677 4 *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, was by the ſouldiers, voluntarily forſaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*; but after 7 months, the ſouldiers revolted to *Lyſimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born.

3678 5 *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Seleucus*, the laſt ſurviver of *Alexanders* Captains, 7.

3685 6 *Ceraunus*, or *Ptolemie Ceraunus*, ſon to *Ptolemie* of *Egypt*, having traiterouſly ſlain his friend and Patron *Seleucus*, ſeiſed on *Macedon*, but loſt it, together with his life, unto the *Gaules*; who then plagued theſe Countries. After whoſe death this Kingdome being diſtracted amongſt many Competitors, ſettled at laſt upon

3687 7 *Antigonus Gonatas*, the ſon of *Demetrius*, who for his valour ſhewn in expulſing the *Gaules*, was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrhus*, then returning from *Italie*; yet after the death of *Pyrrhus* he again recovered his eſtate; but outed once again by *Alexander* the ſon of *Pyrrhus*, 36.

3723 8 *Demetrius* II. ſon of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander* the ſon of *Pyrrhus*, 10.

3733 9 *Antigonus* II. ſurnamed *Doſon*, left by *Demetrius* as Protectour to his young ſon *Philip*, uſurped the Kingdom. He divers times vanquiſhed and cruſhed the *Grecians*, beginning then to caſt off the yoke of *Macedon*, 12.

3745 10 *Philip*, the ſon of *Demetrius*, 42.

3787 11 *Perſeus*

Thrace. 3787 11 *Perſeus* the ſon of *Philip*, the laſt King of *Macedon*; the ſubverſion of which eſtate was firſt begun in the time of his Father, who had not onely warred upon the *Ætolians* and others of the *Greekes*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their protection; but ſided with *Hannibal* againſt them. Upon which grounds they ſent firſt *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, one of their Conſuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquiſhed at the battell of *Cuxos-cephalos*, and his Kingdome made tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a quarrell againſt *Perſeus* alſo, managed with variable ſucceſſe by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders; they diſpatched *Paulus Æmilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to abſolute ſubjection: Who ſped ſo well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perſeus* led captive unto *Rome*, *anno* 3789. In which triumph, beſides the pomp of leading a Captive King in bonds, *Æmilius* cauſed the ready money which he brought out of *Greece* to be carryed in 750 Veſſels, every veſſell containing 3 *Talents*; which made ſo infinite a ſumme, that the *Roman* people were free for many years after from all taxes and impoſitions.

3798 *Macedon* thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to ſay *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda* or *Salutaris* and *Prevalitana*; in the new modell of *Conſtantine* became a *Dioceſe*, the *Dioceſe* hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Achaia*, *old* and *new Epirus*, *Macedonia Prima*, and the greateſt part of *Salutaris*, the reſidue of *Salutaris* and *Prevalitana*, (which makes up the Countrey now called *Albania*) being laid to the *Dioceſe* of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eaſtern Empire, till towards the laſt fatall diſſolution of it, though many times haraſſed and depopulated by the *Sclavonians*, *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, and others of the barbarous people, at their ſeverall invaſions of it: finally conquered by the *Turkes*, firſt under the conduct of *Bajazet* their fourth king taking *Nicopolis*, a town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonius*, now the Bay of *Conteſſo*; and after under *Amurath* the ſecond their ſixt King, making themſelves maſters of *Theſſalonica* the chief City of it, and therewith of all the countrey. By reaſon of which many invaſions and laſt deſolation by the *Turkes*, there is ſcarſe one of all thoſe many Cities before mentioned now of any eminence; except *Theſſalonica* onely: the reſt being miſerably deſtroyed. And for the Countrey it ſelfe it is governed by a *Turkiſh Sanziack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, his annual *Revenew* being but 8000 Crownes: nor any thing elſe required of him then to maintaine 100 horſe in ordinary pay, for defence of his Province, and to finde 400 Horſe on extraordinary occaſions, as the *Grand Signeur* ſhall command him.

7 THRACE.

THRACE hath on the Eaſt, *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontis*, and *Helleſpont*; on the Weſt *Macedon*; on the North, the hill *Hæmus*; on the South, the *Ægæan* Sea, and part of *Macedon*. A very large and goodly Province, extending 20 dayes journey in length, 7 dayes journey in breadth: and in relation to the heavens, reaching unto the 44 degree of Northern latitude, ſo that the longeſt day in ſummer is about 15 houres three quarters.

By ſeverall men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names: by *Stephanus*, *Aria*; by *Suidas Odryſa*; by *Lycophron*, *Creſtona*; by ſome writers, *Scythia*; by *Joſephus* the *Hebrew*, *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace* or *Thracia*, and that as ſome ſay from *Thrax*, the ſon of *Mars*; as others from *Thraca*, an Inchantreſſe; more probably from the ſerity and barbarous condition of the firſt Inhabitants; the name in the Originall *Greek* bearing that conſtruction: moſt likely from *Thyras* the ſon of *Japhet*, who firſt planted here, in memory of whom it did retaine the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Joſephus*; beſides many other footſteps and remembrances of him, in the name of many of their townes, and ſome of their Princes; of which we have already ſpoken in our generall Preface. Finally by the *Turkes* it is called *Romania*, either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here; or becauſe *Conſtantinople* the chief City of it was antiently called *Nova Roma*: and by that name it is now called in moſt modern Writers.

The Countrey generally is neither of a rich ſoyle nor a pleaſant air, the corn and other fruites by reaſon of the coldneſſe of the *Climate* leiſurely ripening, the Vines yeelding more ſhade then juice, and the trees for the moſt part more leaves then fruit: yet in ſome parts there be many large and goodly *plaines*, where they reape good ſtore of corn, but of Pulſe eſpecially; and towards the Seaſide they have plenty of wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for ſtrength and goodneſſe.

The people antiently were very bold and valiant, and called by ſome *Αυτόνομοι* becauſe every man was a law to himſelfe. So that it was truly ſaid by *Herodotus*, that if they had either beene all of one minde, or under one King, they had been invincible. Of manners they were rude and ſavage, ſomewhat neer to bruiſhneſſe; buying their wives, and ſelling both their ſonnes and daughters, as in open market: in which, ſince imitated by the *Turkes*, who poſſeſſe their Countrey. The men were more courageous then comely, wearing cloathes according to their conditions, ragged and unſeemly. The *marryed* women were in love to their husbands ſo conſtant, that they willingly ſacrificed themſelves at their funerals. The *Virgins* were beſtowed, not by their own parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither beauty nor vertue for their dowry, were put off according to their money; moſt times ſold as other cattell, in the markets. In matters of *Religion*, they worſhipped *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: ſwearing eſpecially by the firſt, from whom they bragged themſelves to have been deſcended

ded. But their chiefe *nationall deity*, was one *Zamolxis*, sometimes a native of this Countrey, who having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, prescribed them good and wholesome Lawes, assuring them that if they did observe the same, they should goe unto a place when they left this world, in which they should enjoy all manner of pleasure and contentment. By this means having gotten some opinion of a *divinity* amongst them, he absented himselfe, after was worshipped as their God. Upon these *principles*, when any one was born amongst them, his Parents and other friends sitting round about him, lamented bitterly his coming into the world, ripping up all the miseries and afflictions whereto he was to be exposed in this present life, and so deplored his condition as absolutely miserable and unhappy. But on the contrary, when any one chanced to dye, they buryed him with all joy and alacrity highly rejoycing that by this means he was freed from the crosses and dysasters of this wretched World. Expressed thus briefly, after his wonted manner by mine Authour. *Lugentur Puerperia, natiq; deflentur; funera contra* festa *sunt, & veluti sacra cantu lusuq; celebrantur.* A peece of such sound and Orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in these times of darkenesse; and savouring very much of the Primitive piety: by which the *Obits* of the Saints were kept as *Festivals*, no notice being taken of the day of their births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non nativitatem sed mortem* Sanctorum *Ecclesia pretiosam & festam judicat.* *Thrace.*

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymnestor*, who villaniously murdered *Polydorus*, a younger sonne of *Priamus*; for which fact, *Hecuba* the young Princes mother, scratched him to death. Here also lived the Tyrant *Tereus*, of whom before in *Phocis:* and *Diomedes*, who using to feed his Horses with mans flesh, was slaine by *Hercules*, and cast unto his horses. And finally here reigned King *Coys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propose as a pattern of rare temper, both in mastering and preventing passion. For when a neighbour Prince had sent him a present of Glasses, of the purest metall, and no lesse accurate in the workmanship or fashion of them: (having dispatched the messenger with all the due complements of Majesty and gratitude) he broke them all to peeces; lest if by mishap any of his servants should doe the like, he might be stirred to an intemperate choler.

Chief mountaines in this couhtrey, besides *Hæmus* spoken of already, are 1 *Rhodope*, the highest next Mount *Hæmus* in those parts of the World, craggy, and rough, the top whereof continually white with snow: memorable for the fate and fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholy humour (having lost his wife) betooke himselfe unto these mountaines: where with his *Musick* he affected both Woods and Beasts, who are said to have danced unto his *Musick*: from this place of his abode called *Rhodopeius*, from his countrey *Thracius*; *Non me Carminibus vincet nec* Thracius Orpheus, &c. as the Shepheard boasteth in the Poet. The truth is, that he was a man of an heavenly *Muse*, and by his dictates and good Counsell laid down in verse, first of all civilized this people; and weaned them by degrees from their bestiality. Hence the occasion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodope* it selfe, it is in the midst of this Countrey, thwarting it from Mount *Hæmus* towards the West: which with the spurres and branches of it, and the plaines adjoining lying betwixt the River *Nessus* on the West, and *Melas* or *Niger* on the East, made up the Province of the Empire, called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountaine. 2 *Pangæus*, rich in Mines of Silver; 3 *Melampus*, shooting towards the Sea, full of rocks and cliffes; and 4 *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principall Rivers hereof besides *Strymon* spoken of before, the boundary in some places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are 1 *Nessus*, by the *Grecians*, now called *Mestro*, by the *Turkes*, *Carasou*, which rising out of Mount *Hæmus* falleth into the Sea, near the Isle of *Thassus*. 2 *Athyras*, in which name the memory of *Thyras* the sonne of *Japhet*, seemes to be preserved; which rising in Mount *Hæmus* also, loseth it selfe in the *Propontick*; as doth 3 *Bathynias*; another river rising from the same Mount *Hæmus*. 4 *Hebrus*, the most noted River of this countrey, rising out of Mount *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Ægean* neer the Isle of *Samothrace*, a river of so slow a course that it is not easie to discerne which way it goeth: but memorable in the Poets for the fate of *Orpheus*, who being torn in peeces by the *Thracian* women, had his limbes thrown into it by those *Furies*. 5 *Thearus*, good against the scab both in man and Beast, issuing out of 30 Fountaines, some hot, some cold; with the pleasantnesse of whose waters *Darius* the King of *Persia*, was so delighted, that he erected a pillar in honour of it.

The chief Towns 1 *Abdera*, now called *Polystilo*, situate not far from the fall of the River *Nessus* into the *Ægean*, the birth place of *Democritus*, who spent his whole life in laughing at the follies of others. 2 *Potidea*, of old a Colonie of *Athens*, from whom it revolted and submitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians* not enduring the affront, beleaguered it, and after two yeares siege, and the expence of 2000 Talents, could not recover it againe but on composition. 3 *Adrus*, on the *Ægean* Sea, a town of great strength and safety, and therefore used by the later *Constantinopolitan* Emperours for the securing of great persons. For hither *Michael Palæologus* sent *Jathatines* the *Turkish Sultan*, flying to him for aid; and hither *Mahomet* the *Great* sent *Demetrius*, Prince of *Peloponnesus*, when he yeelded up his countrey to him; both under colour of providing for their ease and safety, but in plain terms to keep them in honourable Prisons. 4 *Lysimachia*, on the Sea-shore, once of great importance, built by *Lysimachus*, who after *Alexanders* death laid hands on this Countrey: afterwards garrisoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, on the withdrawing of whose Forces for some other service, it was taken and razed to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the people of it carried into captivity; but by *Antiochus* the *Great* re-edified and new peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient situation and former glories of the place. 5 *Philippolis*, so called

Thrace.

led from *Philip* King of *Macedon* the father of *Alexander*, who built and fortified it as a bridle to hold in the *Thracians*: called also *Trimontium*, from three hils on which it was situate: beautified in the time of the *Romans* with a goodly *Amphitheatre*, continuing entire and whole till these latter days, and might have lasted longer by many Ages; did not the *Turks* dayly take away the stairs thereof, which are all of marble to make money of them. Here are also many other antient Monuments, though the town be much wasted and destroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above 100000 persons: which notwithstanding it is populous, and well frequented, by reason of the convenient situation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. 6 *Trajanopolis*, so called from the Emperour *Trajan*, by whom either founded or repaired; indifferently well peopled, and still preserving its old name. 7. *Selimbria*, on the coast of the *Propontick* Sea, beautified with a commodious port for receipt of small vessells; and many Bayes adjoyning capable of greater: by *Ptolemy* called *Selibria*, and *Olibria* by *Suidas*. 8 *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus*, or the *Black Sea*, now *Sisopoli*. 9 *Rhinopolis*, on the same Sea also. 10 *Nicopolis*, at the foot of the Mount *Hæmus*; there being another of that name neer the River *Nessus*. 11 *Perinthus*, on the *Propontick* sea, near the influx of the River *Arsus*. A town of great note in the antient businesses of *Greece*, of great strength, and peopled formerly with men of such resolutions, that they maintained their liberty against *Philip* of *Macedon*, after almost all the rest of *Thrace* had submitted to him. 12 *Heraclea*, at once a Colony of the *Thebans*; and afterwards of much request in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Vespasian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperours of *Rome*; as also with an *Amphitheatre*, cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the worlds seven Wonders: and finally, made the *Metropolitan* City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the *Diocese* of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. 13 *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon*, the greatest City of *Thrace*; as possibly enough it was in power and riches, though not in greatnesse of extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, rich in Trade, and mistresse of a fair and goodly territory adjoyning to it: the people whereof had been malitious enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally induced *Philip*, spoken of before, to set upon them. In which attempt he sped so well, that what he could not get by force, he obtained by money; bribing some of the principall Officers to betray it to him: for the recovery whereof, *Demosthenes* oft moved the people of *Athens* in those elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiacks*. 14 *Sestos*, in the *Thracian Chersonese*: which being a *Peninsula* abutting over against *Troas*, on the *Asian* side, is now called Saint *Georges Arme*. Opposite whereunto, on the other side of the Water, in the town of *Abydus*, remarkable for the *Tragicall* Loves of *Hero*, and *Leander*, celebrated by *Musæus*, an old *Greek* Poet. 15 *Callipolis*, on the Northern Promontory of this *Chersonese*, the first City of note that ever the *Turkes* possessed in *Europe*, taken by *Solyman*, the sonne of *Orchanes*, the second King of the *Ottoman* race, *anno* 1358. from whence they easily, and in little time, spred themselves all over the rest of *Thrace*: the ordinary passage of late times betwixt *Europe*, and *Asia*, by reason of the convenient Harbour, and safe Anchorage. 16 *Cardia*, seated on the Western side of it, opposite to the Isle of *Lemnos*, and the birth-place of *Eumenes*: who being a poor *Carriers* son, attained to such ability in the Art of Warre; that after the death of *Alexander* the *Great*, under whom he served, he seized on the Provinces of *Cappadocia*, and *Paphlagonia*: and siding (though a stranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias*, and the Blood-royall, against the *Greek* Captains; vanquished and slew *Craterus*, and divers times drave *Antigonus* (afterward Lord of *Asia*) out of the field: but being by his own souldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him slain. 17 *Sardica*, situate towards Mount *Æmus*, memorable for the Councel there held against the *Arians*, an. 351. 18 *Adrianople*, seated near the midst of *Thrace*, called antiently *Uscudama*, but got this name from *Adrian* the Emperor, who repaired, and beautified it, made subject to the *Turks* by *Bajazet*, an. 1362. from the first taking of it made the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings, til the taking of *Constantinople*, by *Mahomet* the *Great*: by whom removed unto that City. 19 *Pera*, opposite to *Constantinople*, on the further side of the water (as the word doth signifie in the *Greek*) by some called *Galata*: once peopled by a Colony of *Genoese*, as the Mart and Factory of that State; taken by *Mahomet* the Great, *an.* 1453. but still repleni shed, for the most part, with *Christian* Merchants, and Artificers.

But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the East is, the renowned City of 20 *Constantinople*, seated in so commodious a place for Empire, that it over-looks both *Europe* and *Asia*; and commands not onely the *Propontis*, and the *Bosphorus*, but the *Euxine* Sea. First, founded by one *Byza*, from whom named *Byzantium*: but being taken by the *Persians*, and from them recovered by the *Spartans*, (unwilling that the *Persians* should grow strong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Pausanias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the Birth of our Saviour. In vain besieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and of great strength in the flourish of the *Roman* Empire. The walls of a just height, every stone whereof was so joyned with Couplets of Brasse, that the whole seemed but one intire piece; adorned besides with Turrets, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger*, in his war against *Severus* the Emperour, it indured a siege of three years against all the forces of the *Romans*: during which time, the people were so distressed by Famine, that men meeting in the streets, would draw, and fight; the Conquerour feeding on the Vanquished. For want of Artillery to discharge on the Assaylants, they cast down upon them whole *Statuas* made of Brasse, and the like curious Imagery. Houses they pulled down to get timber for Shipping; the women cutting off their hair to inch out their tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, lost it all by one Tempest. Compelled to yeild by this misfortune, the principall of the Nobility were put to the Sword, the wealth of the Inhabitants given for a prey to the Souldiers; the walls thereof dismantled, the Town left in rubbish. Yet there appeared so much of Majesty and Beauty in the very Ruines: *Ut mireris utrum eorum qui primi extruxerunt, vel eorum qui deinceps sunt demoliti, vires*

sint

sint potiores, as *Herodian* hath it. Re-edified afterwards by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, he honoured it with his own Name, and made it the chief Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City finiſhed *May* 11. *anno* 331. And being ſo finiſhed, was endowed with all the Priviledges of *Rome*, an equall number of *Senators*, one of the Annuall *Conſuls*, and all other Officers of State choſen out of both; the Citizens of the one being *Free* of the other, and capable of all places of moſt truſt and power. For that cauſe called *NOVA ROMA*, in ſome following times. This City he adorned alſo with magnificent Buildings, curious *Statues*, and ſuch like Ornaments, tranſported hither from *Old Rome*: which City he ſpoiled of more coſtly pieces then any twenty of his Predeceſſours had brought unto it. At this day the chief Buildings are the *Turks Seraglio*, and the Temple of Saint *Sophia*: which as they differ not much in place and ſituation, ſo as little in magnificence and ſtate. The Temple of Saint *Sophia*, was, if not built, yet re-edified by the Emperour *Juſtinian*. It is built of an ovall form, ſurrounded with pillars of admirable workmanſhip, adorned with ſpacious and beautifull Galleries, roofed all over with *Moſaique* work: and vaulted underneath very ſtrongly for the fabrick, and pleaſing for the eye. The doors are very curiouſly wrought and plated; one of which, by the ſuperſtitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noahs* Ark: and yet this Temple is little more then the Chancell of the ancient Church, which contained in length 260 foot, and 180 in breadth: and to our Saint *Pauls* in *London*, may ſeeme for the bigneſſe, to have been but a Chappell of eaſe. But what it wants in Greatneſſe, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the elegancy of the building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the fabricks in the whole world: the ſides and floor, all flagged with excellent Marble; and before the entrance a goodly *Portico*, or *Porch*, in which, as well the *Chriſtians*, who viſit it out of curioſity, as the *Turks*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their ſhoos. By *Mahomet* the *Great*, after the taking of the City, converted to a *Turkiſh Moſque*, as it ſtill continueth; frequented by the *Signeur* almoſt every *Friday*, which is the *Sabbath* of that people. Near hereunto ſtandeth the Palace, or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperours, on the north-eaſt Angle of the City, where formerly ſtood the antient *Byzantium*: divided from the reſt of City by a wall, containing three miles in circuit, and comprehending goodly groves of *Cypreſſes* intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of pleaſures which luxury can affect, or treaſure compaſſe. The *Palace* it ſelf injoying a goodly proſpect into the Sea, was firſt built by *Juſtinus* the Emperour, afterwards much enlarged by the *Ottoman* race; containing three great Courts one within another: the buildings yeilding unto thoſe of *France*, and *Italy* for the neat contrivance; but farre ſurpaſſing them for coſt, and curiouſneſſe. *Conſtantinople.*

As for the City it ſelf, it is ſaid to be 18 miles in compaſſe, and to contain 700000 living ſouls; yet would be more populous then it is, if the Plague, like a cruell *Tertian Ague*, did not every third year ſo rage amongſt them. Fortified towards the Land with three ſtrong, and high Walls, the one higher then the other, the outermoſt higheſt of them all: towards the Sea with one wall onely, built after the old faſhion with many Turrets, which very ſtrongly flanker, and defend the ſame. But formerly both the Town and *Cherſonneſe* in which it ſtandeth, was defended from the incurſions of the barbarous people, by a ſtrong wall built on the very *Iſthmus* of it, ſome ten miles from the City, reaching from one Sea to the other. The work of *Anaſtaſius*, who ſucceeded *Zeno*, anno 494. A City which a farre off gives to the eye a moſt pleaſing object; ſo intermixt with Gardens, and beſet with Trees, that it ſeemes a City in a Wood: but being entred, much deceiveth the expectation which it promiſed, the buildings of it being mean, if not contemptible. The *ſtreets* for the moſt part exceeding narrow, but raiſed on each ſide for the greater cleanlineſſe: the houſes but of two ſtories high, ſome of rough Stone, and ſome of Timber; without any outward grace, or exterior garniſhing: in many places nothing but low Sheds, or rowes of ſhops, and in ſome places long dead walls belonging unto great mens houſes. The principall beauty of the whole, next to ſome Monuments of Antiquity, which are ſtill preſerved, and the Tombs, or Sepulchres of ſome of the *Ottoman* Kings; which are very ſumptuous; are the *Moſques* or Temples of the *Turks*, about eight thouſand in number; And the Port or Havent, ſo conveniently profound, that Ships of greateſt burden may ſafely lay their ſides to the ſides thereof, for the receit or diſcharge of their lading; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated on the *Thracian Boſphorus*, that there is no winde, whatſoever it be, which brings not in ſome ſhipping to it. But that which gives the greateſt pleaſure to the ſight, from the hills adjoyning, is the ſituation of it on ſeven Mountenets, moſt of them crowned with magnificent *Moſques*, built all of *white Marble*, round in form, and finiſhed on the top with gilded *Spires*, reflecting the ſun beames with a marvellous ſplendour. On the firſt whereof, ſtandeth the ruines of *Conſtantines* Palace, exceeding ſtately to behold; on the ſecond, a fair *Turkiſh Moſque*, built on the Palace antiently belonging to the *Greek Patriarch*; on the third, a ſtately *Moſque*, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the ſecond, and a very large *Hoſpitall*, for entertainment of Pilgrims, and relief of the poor; the Annuall rents whereof are valued at 200000 *Checquines:* On the fourth and fift, the Sepulchres of *Selimus* the firſt, and *Baiazet* the ſecond. On the ſixt, the *Moſque*, and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, numbred amongſt the preſent *wonders* of the world; and on the ſeventh, the Temple of Saint *Sophia*, and the *Turkes Seraglio*, ſpoken of already. In which reſpect it is called Ῥώμη ἑπτάλοφος, by *Nicetas*; *Urbs ſepticollis*, by *Paulus Diaconus*; and ſo acknowledged to be by *Janus Douza*, *Phines Moriſon*, *G. Sandys*, and others of our modern Travellers, the eye-witneſſes of it. So that if there be any Myſtery in the number of *Seven*, or that the ſitting of the *Great Whore* on a *ſeven-headed* beaſt, be an aſſured direction to find out the *Antichriſt*: we may as well look for him in *Conſtantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the *Great Turk*, the profeſſed enemy of *Chriſt*, and the *Chriſtian Faith*, hath his ſeat and reſidence, as amongſt the *ſeven hils* of *Old Rome*, where the *Pope* reſideth: Or if his

ſitting

Thrace.

ſitting in the *Temple* of *God*, ſhew us where to find him, we may as well look for him in the *Temple* of Saint *Sophia*, now a *Turkiſh Moſque*, as in Saint *Peters* Church at *Rome*, ſtill a *Chriſtian* Temple.

But to return again unto *Conſtantinople*, as it was made by *Conſtantine* the *Imperiall* City, and conſequently the chief City of the Eaſt in all *Civill* matters: ſo it became in little time to have a great ſway alſo in affaires of *Religion*. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſaid to be firſt preached in *Byzantium*, by Saint *Andrew* the Apoſtle, the firſt Biſhop thereof: afterwards ſpreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches of it regulated by many Biſhops: the chief preheminence in matters which concerned thoſe Churches, was given unto the Biſhop of *Heraclea*, *Heraclea* being at that time the *Metropolis*, or principall City of the Province. But after that *Conſtantinople* was built by *Conſtantine*, and made the *Imperiall* City as before was ſaid: it did not onely over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it ſelf the *Metropolitan* dignity, but ſtood in competition with the other *Patriarchall* Churches, for the Supreme Power, inſomuch as at the ſecond *Generall Councell*, holden in this City, it was unanimouſly decreed, that the *Patriarch* hereof, ſhould in degree of honour be next unto the Biſhop of *Rome*, and above thoſe of *Antioch*, and *Alexandria*; the ſame Decree confirmed in the Councell of *Chalcedon* alſo; by which not onely all the Churches in the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace*, but alſo of *Natolia*, or *Aſia Minor* (except *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of *Antioch*) were containing no leſſe then 28 of the *Roman* Provinces, were made ſubject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the firſt pretending onely the preſervation of the *Priviledges* of thoſe two great Churches, but indeed fearing leſt *New Rome* might in the end get the precedency of the *Old*, did oppoſe this Act; and ſome of his Succeſſours perſiſted in the ſame reſiſtance: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, eſpecially after the Emperour *Juſtinian* had by his *Imperiall* Edict confirmed the ſame. By whom it was finally ordained, *Senioris Romæ Papam primum eſſe omnium Sacerdotum*; *beatiſſimum autem Archiepiſcopum* Conſtantinopoleos, *Novæ Romæ*, *ſecundum habere locum*: that is to ſay, that the Pope of *Rome* ſhould have the firſt place, in all *Generall Councels*, and the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, or *New Rome*, ſhould have the ſecond. Encouraged wherewith, and with the countenance and favor of the Emperor *Mauritius*, *John* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the *Great*, took to himſelf the title of *Univerſal* or *Oecumenical* Biſhop, the *Paſtor Generall* (as it were) of the Church of CHRIST. And though Pope *Boniface*, by the grant of that bloody Tyrant *PHOCAS*, got that title from him: yet the Patriarchs of *Conſtantinople* made good their ground, never ſubmitting either themſelves, or their Churches to the Popes Authority; for that cauſe ſpecially, accounted by the Church of *Rome* for *Schiſmaticks*, accordingly reviled, and perſecuted with all kind of indignities. How it ſucceeded with theſe Patriarchs in the times enſuing, and by what means their juriſdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Muſcovie*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and Eaſt, hath been ſaid already. Certain it is, the conſtant reſidence of the Emperours, from the time of *Conſtantine*, gave great ground unto: of whom I ſhould here adde the names, but that I muſt firſt ſumme up the affairs of *Thrace*, before the building of this mighty and predominant City; and take a brief view of the reſt of thoſe Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*.

Concerning which, we are to know, that the antient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strimonii*, *Bardi*, *Dolongi*, *Sapæi*, *Saii*, and ſome others; united by moſt writers in the name of *Thracians*. Governed at firſt by the Kings or Princes of their ſeverall Tribes, as moſt Nations elſe: diſtinguiſhed from the common people, as in other pompes, ſo moſt eſpecially by their *Gods*, which their Kings had to themſelves apart, and were not to be worſhipped by the beſt of their Subjects. Theſe not agreeing well together for the common good, gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*, a good opportunity, to invade their Country, to ſeize on the Sea-townes thereof, and plant Colonies in them: the Country in thoſe times being meanly peopled, and conſequently giving that advantage unto the *Grecians*, as the *Indies* in theſe later times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portugueze*, *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon*, proving bad neighbours hereunto upon all occaſions, at laſt provoked *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a ſhare; who being choſen *Arbitrator* betwixt two Competitors for that Kingdome (drawn at laſt into fewer hands) came not unto the Councell with ſuch poor attendants as *Juſtice* and *Piety*, but with a great and puiſſant *Army*; wherewith having vanquiſhed and ſlain the two *Pretenders*, he pronounced ſentence for himſelf, and made *Thrace* his own, compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their *Revenue* for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander*, this Country was ſeized on by *Lyſimachus*, as his part of the ſpoil, who here built the City *Lyſimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians* now accuſtomed to a forrein yoak, were either Subjects, or at leaſt Tributaries to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their warres againſt the *Romans*, they incurred the diſpleaſure of that people, who having ſetled their affairs in other places, and repulſed the *Cimbri*: thought it fit time to call the *Thracians* to accompt for their former Actions; but ſped ſo ill in the attempt, that *Porcius Cato* loſt his whole Army in the onſet, cunningly intercepted in their woods and faſtneſſes. *Didius* the *Prætor* coming in, whilſt the *Thracians* were buſie in the chaſe, gave them ſuch a ſtop, that he deſerved a *Triumph* for it: and the Victory more eaſie to *Metellus*, who ſucceeded *Cato* in that charge, and *triumphed* alſo over them; as alſo did *Lucullus* on another Victory, A. U. C. 680. Broken with ſo many ill ſucceſſes, they were finally ſubdued by *Piſo* in the time of *Auguſtus*: becoming ſo obſequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhiſemalces*, a great and puiſſant King hereof, aided him with a ſtrength of Horſe againſt the *Pannonians* and *Illyrians*, who had then rebelled.

After-

Afterwards made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, in *Conſtantines* new Modell it became a *Dioceſe*, under the *Præfectus Præfetorio Orientis*: *Thrace* it ſelf being caſt into four Provinces, that is to ſay, *Thrace* ſpecially ſo called, *Hæmimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia*, and the *Lower Maſia*, ſpoken of before, being added to it: of which the Preſidents of *Rhodope* and *Hæmimontum*, were not to be appealed from to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, as the others were; but onely to the *Præfect* of *Conſtantinople*, the *Imperiall* City. But as *Alfonſus*, King of *Caſtile*, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, was once heard to ſay (never the *Wiſer* for ſo ſaying) That *had he ſtood at the elbow of* Almighty God, *when he made the World, he would have ſhewed him how ſome things might be better ordered*: ſo give me leave to play the fool, and to ſay this here, that had I ſtood at *Conſtantines* elbow, I would have counſelled him to lay the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* to the *Præfecture* of *Illyricum*, who had originally onely the Dioceſes of *Macedon* and *Illyricum* under his command; and not have placed it under the *Præfect* of the Eaſt, who had both *Aſias*, and all *Ægypt* under his Authority. For being that there lay *Appeals* from the *Vicars* of Lieutenants of the ſeverall *Dioceſes* to their ſeverall and reſpective *Prefects*: how great a trouble muſt it be to the ſubjects of *Thrace*, on every occaſion of *Appeal*, to poſt to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the *Prefect* of the *Orient*; when *Sirmium* and *Theſſalonica*, the ordinary reſidences of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyrium*, were ſo hard at hand. But *Conſtantine* was an abſolute Prince, and might doe what he liſted. He had not elſe removed his ſeat ſo farre towards the Eaſt, and left the weſtern parts of the Empire open to the barbarous people, out of a fancy onely to preſerve the Eaſtern. For that it was a fancy onely the event did ſhew, the *Perſians* for all this, prevailing more then ever formerly; and *Thrace* it ſelf, though honoured with the *Imperiall* City, and planted with ſo many *Roman* Colonies, ſo ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay waſt and deſert many Ages after. Inſomuch as the *Goths* being by the *Hunnes* driven over the *Danow*, where by the Emperour *Valens* plainted in this Country, (the Emperour having a deſigne to uſe them in his following warres) where not contented with the portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, waſting the whole Province, taking divers townes, and endangering *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, from whence not driven, (*Valens* himſelf being killed in the warre againſt them) but by the coming of ſome *Saracens* to the aid of the Citizens. Nor could the reſidence of the Emperours ſo protect this Country, but that it was continually haraſſed, and depopulated by the *Sclaves*, *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, *Saracens*, and other barbarous people falling in upon it: nor hinder one *Bryonnius* in the time of *Michael Ducas*, and *Nicephorus Botoniates* from aſſuming to himſelf the title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* race from getting ground every day on the *leſſer Aſia*, incroaching upon *Thrace* it ſelf, and in the end obtaining the *Imperiall* City. *Thrace.*

And here perhaps it is expected, conſidering the *Turks* are now poſſeſſed of *Thrace*, and the reſt of *Greece*, that we ſhould make relation of the nature of that People, their cuſtomes, forces, policies, originall, and proceedings. But the diſcourſe thereof, we will deferre till we come to *Turcomania*, a Province of *Aſia*: from whence they made their firſt inundations, like to ſome unreſiſtible torrent into *Perſia*; and after into the other parts of the world now ſubject to them. And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our Deſcription of the reſt of *Greece*, conſiſting of the Ilands ſcattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Ægean*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian* Seas: leaving out ſuch as properly belong to *Aſia* to our deſcription of that Country, though otherwiſe *Greek* Ilands, and ſo accompted both for their Language and Originall.

The ISLANDS of the *PONTICK* and *PROPONTICK* SEAS.

Before we come to the deſcriptions of theſe Ilands, we muſt firſt look upon the Seas in which they lie: beginning with the *PONTICK* firſt, becauſe the *Greateſt*, and that which doth communicate and convey its waters unto all the reſt. A Sea made up Originally of the confluence of thoſe mighty Rivers, (the greateſt in thoſe parts of the World) which do fall into it: that is to ſay, the *Danow*, *Boryſthenes*, and *Tanais* falling out of *Europe*, beſides many other fair and large Rivers (though of leſſer note) to the number of at leaſt an hundred, which pay Tribute to it: the whole compaſſe of it being 2700 miles; in form, by ſome reſembled to a *Scythian Bow* when it is bended. A Sea not ſo ſalt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with ice in winter; ſeldome remitted in the ſpring on the Northern ſhores: the Traffick of it wholly in a manner engroſſed by the Turkes, who is maſter of all the Sea-coaſt of it, ſave what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim-Tartar*. At firſt called Ἄξεινος from the inhoſpitableneſſe of the neighbouring people; which being brought to ſome conformity, cauſed the Sea to be called Εὔξεινος. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Siniſtrum*, becauſe in the way from *Rome* to *Aſia Minor* it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, for its greatneſſe; and the *Black Sea*, becauſe of the great miſts thence ariſing. Others not unprobably affirme, that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black-ſhipwraks here happening. For it is a very dangerous ſhore full of Rocks and Sands: and for this cauſe there is on the top of an high tower, a lanthorn, in which there is a great pan full of pitch, rozen, tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the ſhore. This Sea being the biggeſt of all thoſe parts, gave occaſion to them

Propontis. them which knew no bigger, to call all ſeas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant, deerant quoque littora ponto*; and in another place of the ſame Poet,—— *nil niſi pontus & aer*; a better reaſon doubtleſſe of the name, then that of the *Etymologiſts*: *Pontus, quia ponte caret.* Of this Sea the chief Iles are *Thimius*, and *Erithininus*, little famous. From hence the Sea bending Southward, is brought into narrow bounds, not being fully a mile broad; and called *Thracius Boſphorus*: *Thracius*, for its ſite nigh *Thrace*; and *Boſphorus*, for that Oxen have ſwomme over it, and hath no Iland worth naming.

This Strait having continued 26 miles in length, openeth it ſelf into the *Propontis*, 30 miles in compaſſe; confined with *Thrace* on the one ſide, and with *Bythinia* on the other: ſo as they which ſaile in the midle, may deſcry the land on all parts. Now called *Mare di Marmora*, from the Iland *Marmora*, which formerly called *Proconneſus*, hath for its abundance of *Marble* purchaſed this new name. The ſoile apt for Vines, and not deſtitute of Corn, yeilding alſo good paſturage for Goats, whereof here is plenty, with an incredible number of *Partriges* amongſt the Rocks: the Country of *Ariſtæus*, a famous Poet, who flouriſhed in the times of *Cræſus*. Antiently it had in it two Cities of the ſame name with the Iland, called the *Old* and *New Proconenſus*, the former firſt built by the *Mileſians*, an *Aſian* people; the latter by the natives of this Iland. But both theſe being long ſince decayed; it hath now onely a ſmall Village towards the North, with an Haven to it; inhabited by *Greeks*, as is all the reſt of the Iland: ſuch *Chriſtian Slaves* as are in great numbers employed here by the *Turkes* in digging Marble for their *Moſques*, and other buildings, being onely ſojourners, not houſe-keepers, and therefore not accompted amongſt the Inhabitants. Here is alſo in this *Propontick* Sea, the Ile of *Cyzicus*; but being it is on *Aſia* ſide, we ſhall there ſpeak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a leſſer Channell, is called *Helleſpont*, from *Helle*, daughter to *Athamas*, King of *Thebes*, who was here drowned. Over this famous *ſtrait* did *Xerxes*, according to *Herodotus*, make a bridge of boats to paſſe into *Greece*: which when a ſuddain tempeſt had ſhrewdly battered, he cauſed the Sea to be beaten with 300 ſtripes; and caſt a pair of *Fetters* into it, to make it know to whom it was ſubject. *Xerxes* in this expedition wafted over an Army conſiſting of two millions, and 164710 fighting men, in no leſſe than 2208 bottomes of all ſorts. When all the *Perſians* ſoothed the King in the unconquerableneſs of his forces; *Artabanus* told him, that he feared no enemies but the Sea and the Earth; the one yeelding no ſafe harbour for ſuch a Navie; the other, not yeelding ſufficient ſubſtance for ſo multitudinous an Army. His return over this *Helleſpont* was as dejected, as his paſſage magnificent; his Fleet being ſo broken by the valour of the *Greeks*, and the fury of the ſea: that for his more ſpeedy flight, he was compelled to make uſe of a poor fiſher-boat. Neither yet was his paſſage ſecure; For the boat being overburdened, had ſunk all, if the *Perſians* by caſting away themſelves, had not ſaved the life of their King. The loſſe of which noble ſpirits ſo vexed him, that having given the *Steerſman* a golden Coronet, for preſerving his own life: he commanded him to execution, as a Co-author of the death of his ſervants. It is now called the *Caſtles*, or *the ſea of the two Caſtles*; which two Caſtles ſtand one on *Europe*, the other on *Aſia* ſide; in the Townes of *Seſtos*, and *Abydos*. Theſe Caſtles are exceeding well built, and abundantly furniſhed with munition. They ſearch and examine all Ships that paſſe that way: they receive the *Grand Seignieurs* cuſtomes, and are in effect the principal ſtrength of *Conſtantinople*. At theſe Caſtles, all Ships muſt ſtay three dayes; to the end, that if any *Slave* be run away from his maſter, or theeves have ſtolen any thing, they may be in that place purſued and apprehended. So that theſe Caſtles are as it were the out-works of *Conſtantinople* to defend it from all invaſions, and from any forces which may come unto it by Sea, out of the *Mediterranean*. And for the ſafety thereof, from ſuch as may finde paſſage into the *Euxine*, there are ſituate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Boſphorus* two ſtrong Caſtles alſo: the one above *Conſtantinople* on *Europe* ſide, anciently called *Damalis*, and now the *Black tower*, ſtrongly fortified, and compaſſed with a wall twenty two foot thick, which with the oppoſite Caſtle on the *Aſian Shore*, doe command that entrance. No *Europæan* Iſle of note in either Strait. And therefore on unto

The ISLANDS of the *ÆGEAN* SEA.

Helleſpont, after a forty miles courſe, expaciateth its waters in the *Ægæan* Seas; ſo called either from *Ægæus*, the father of *Theſeus*, who miſdoubting his ſons ſafe return from the *Minotaure* of *Crete*, here drowned himſelf: or ſecondly, from *Ægæ*, once a principall City, in the prime Iſland *Eubœa*: or thirdly, becauſe that the Iſlands lie ſcattered up and down like the leaps of a wanton Goat, from the *Greek* αἴγειος.

The chief Ilands of it are 1 *Samothrace*, 2 *Thaſſus*, 3 *Imbrus*, 4 *Lemnos*, 5 *Eubœa*, 6 *Salamis*, 7 *Ægina*, 8 the *Cyclades*, 9 the *Sporades*, and 10 *Cythera*: all which, eſpecially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the *Iſlands* of the *Archer*; the Sea, being by the *Mariners* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatneſſe, compared unto the narrow Seas which lie about it.

1 *SAMOTHRACE* is a ſmall Iland oppoſite to the Coaſt of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; ſo called, *quaſi Samos Thraciæ*, to difference it from the *Aſian Samos*, bordering on *Ionia*.

For-

Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the Trojan, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Ariſtotle* writing of the Common-weal of theſe *Samo-Thracians*, telleth us that it was firſt called *Leucoſia*, and afterwards *Samus* from *Saus*, the ſonne of *Mercury* and *Rhene*, the letter M being interpoſed. It is now called *Samandrachi*, plentifull in Honey, and Wilde Deer, and better ſtored with commodious harbours, then any other in theſe Seas. It hath a town of the ſame name with the Iland, ſituate on an high hill on the North part hereof, over-looking a capacious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infeſting of theſe Seas in a manner deſolate. *Lemnos.*

II *THASSUS*, another little Iland on the ſame Coaſt, oppoſite to the influx of the River *Neſſus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Pliny* called *Æria*, and *Æthria*; by *Ptolemy Thalaſſia*, at the preſent *Thaſſe*. In compaſſe betwixt forty and fifty miles; ſufficiently fruitfull, well repleniſhed with woods, and yeilding good ſtore of the beſt Wines: mountainous in ſome places, but thoſe mountains fraught with *Quarries* of excellent *Marble*, which the *Romans* called *Thaſſium*, from the Iland: and in the times of *Philip*, and *Alexander* the *Great*, ſo rich in Mines of uſefull metals, that thoſe Kings received yearly 80 talents for their *Cuſtomes* of them. It hath one town of the ſame name with the Iland, ſituate on a large plain in the north part of it, bordering on a goodly Bay, which ſerves for an *Haven* to the Town: and on the South parts where the Country is more mountainous and hilly, there are two towns more, each of them ſituate on an hill; but the names thereof occur not amongſt my Authors.

III *IMBRUS*, another ſmall Iland, now named *Lembro*, is ſituate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*; in compaſſe about thirty miles, but more long then broad, ſtretching north and ſouth; and diſtant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Iland mountainous for the moſt part except towards the Weſt; where it hath ſome pleaſant and well-watered Plaines: in which a town of the ſame name, ſituate at the foot of the mountain, once ſacred unto *Mercury*, but not elſe obſervable.

IV *LEMNOS*, an Iland of more note, lyeth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbrus*; memorable amongſt the Poets for the fabulous fall of *Vulcan*, who being but an homely brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great paſſion thrown out of Heaven; and falling on this Iland, came to get his halting. Howſoever, he was antiently worſhipped by the people hereof, and from hence called *Lemnius*. In compaſſe about an hundred miles, but more long then broad, extended from the Eaſt to the Weſt; on every ſide well furniſhed with convenient *Creeks*, and ſome pretty Havens; by which the want of Rivers is in ſome ſort recompenſed.

The Country for the moſt part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Ilands; but otherwiſe ſwelled with riſing mountainets, the enterpoſed valleys being very fruitfull of wheat, pulſe, wine, fleſh, cheeſe, wooll, flax, linnen, and all other neceſſaries: onely wood is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was ſaid, yet have they good fiſhing on the Sea-coſt, for their uſe and ſuſtenance; and in ſome parts *Hot-bathes* for health and medicine. But the chief riches of this Iland is in a *Mineral Earth* here digged, of excellent Vertue for curing wounds, ſtopping of fluxes, expulſing poiſons, preſervative againſt infections, and the like: called *Terra Lemnia*, from the place; and *Terra Sigillata*, from the ſeal or *Character* imprinted on it. For being made up into ſmall pellets, and ſealed with the *Turks* Character or *Signet*, it is then (not before) ſold unto the *Merchants*; by whom diſperſed over moſt parts of the *Chriſtian* world. Upon the ſixt of *Auguſt* yeerly they goe to gather it; but not without much Ceremony, and many religious preparations, brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Iland; and ſtill continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, who are the principall in the work. There is one hill onely where it groweth, the top whereof being opened, they diſcover the vein, reſembling the caſting up of wormes; and having gathered as much of it that day, as the *Prieſts* think fit, it is cloſed again: certain bags of it being ſent to the *Grand-Signeur* yeerly, the reſidue *ſealed* up, and ſold to the forain Merchant.

But to return to the *Topographie* of the place, the eaſtern parts hereof are ſaid to be fat and fruitfull, the weſtern very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and thoſe three garriſoned by the *Turks*; who being Lords of the whole Iland, have new named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dioſpolis*: Of which the firſt was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Iland, as large, and well-peopled now, as ever formerly, but of no great eſtimation, when it was at the beſt; ſeated upon an high hill looking over the Sea; with a handſome market-place, on which mount *Athos* caſts a ſhadow, though diſtant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* ſtill remaining. 2 The ſecond of the two Cities was then called *Hephæſtias*, memorable for the temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephæſtiades*, ſince deſolate and deſtroyed, and a new town built in the place of it, being called *Chochino*: This town not great, but of a reaſonable ſtrength, memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance, which a notable *Virago* named *Marulla*, made againſt the *Turkes*, in the time of *Mahomet* the *Great*, the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Iland. For ſuddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpoſe to ſurpriſe this town, they found more reſiſtance at the gates then they did expect: none more commended then this Maiden, who ſeeing her Father ſlain, took up ſuch weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, untill the

Eubœa.

reſt of the Citizens wakened with the *Alarum*, came unto her reſcue, and forced the enemy to retire. Near hereunto is the hill on which *Vulcan* is fabled to have fell; more eminent for the *mineral earth* here onely gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a *Labyrinth* to have ſtood in the dayes of old, little inferiour unto thoſe of *Crete* or *Ægypt*: the ruines of it ſo decayed, that *Eellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3 The third place of note is *Setira*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Chappell in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their *Oriſons* on the ſixt day of *Auguſt*, before their gathering of the Earth, ſo often mentioned.

Beſides theſe on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, there are alſo ſome of leſſe note on the ſhores of *Macedon*, the principall whereof are 1 *Peparinthus*, as *Ptolemy*; *Euonus*, as *Pliny* calls it, containing about 40 miles in compaſſe: now, called *Sarquius*, as *Caſtaldus*, or *Limene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eaſtern part with a Caſtle built upon a Rock. Others of leſſe note are, 2 *Scyathos*, now *Scyati*; 3 *Scopelos*, 4 *Alonejus*, 5 *Cicynthus*, now *Pontico*; and 6 *Dromus*; of which little memorable: all which, together with thoſe formerly deſcribed on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, being but the *Acceſſories* of the ſeverall *Continents*, upon which they border, following the fortune of the *Principall*, and were conquered in them.

V *EUBOEA* known to the antients by the names of *Macris* and *Abantis*; to the moderns, by that of *Necropont*; frontireth all along the Coaſt of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in fertility: one part hereof, torn away from it by an *Earth-quake*, and lying ſtill ſo near unto it, that between the Iland and the *Continent* is onely a little *Euripus*, which ebbeth and floweth ſeven times in one day: the reaſon of which, when *Ariſtotle* could not finde, it is ſaid, that he threw himſelf in the Sea, with theſe words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me.* In this Iland is the Promontory *Capareus*, where *Nauplius*, the father of *Palamedes*, placed his falſe fires, to the deſtruction of ſo many *Greeks*. For underſtanding how his ſon *Palamedes*, whom he deemed to have been ſlain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherouſly circumvented by the policy of *Ulyſſes*, and *Diomedes*: he conceived ſuch a diſpleaſure againſt the whole hoſt of the *Grecians*, that he intended their generall deſtruction. To this end he cauſed fires to be made on the tops of the moſt dangerous and unacceſſible rocks in this whole Iland: which the *Greeks* taking (according to the cuſtome of the time) to have been the marks of ſome ſafe Haven, made thitherward; and were there miſerably caſt away, there periſhing 200 Ships, and many thouſand men. But when *Nauplius* underſtood how *Diomedes* and *Ulyſſes*, whoſe ruine he principally intended, were eſcaped, he drowned himſelf, for very vexation, in this very ſame place. *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius* ſon, is ſaid to have invented four of the *Greek* letters, *viz.* $\vartheta, \chi, \xi, \varphi$; to have firſt inſtituted *Sentinells* in an Army, and to be the firſt inventour of their *Watch-word*.

It is in length 150 miles, ſtretched out from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt, in breadth, not above twenty, where it is broadeſt; the whole compaſſe 365 *Italian* miles: The Queen of the *Ægean* Sea, not onely for greatneſſe, but for fertility and ſtrength; plentifull in Corn, Wine, Oyle, Fruit, and wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbours, and capacious *Bayes*, and thoſe well fortified: watred alſo with the Rivers of *Cireus*, and *Neleus*; two Rivers of ſo ſtrange a nature, that if a ſheep drink of the former, his wool turneth *white*, but *coal-black*, if he drink of the latter: For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is alſo ſaid to be a ſtone called *Amianthus*, which is drawn into threed like hemp, and good cloth made of it: which, when it is ſtained, in ſtead of being ſent unto the *Fullers*, is thrown into the fire, and ſo cleanſed. But whether this be ſo, or not, (for I put it onely upon hear-ſay) certain it is, that it was once enriched with *Mines* both of Braſſe, and Iron, though thoſe now decayed; and *quarries* of pure *Marble*, which continue ſtill.

The Iland, before it was conquered by the Turks, was very populous: but the people moſt delighted to live in Villages; the Cities, or walled towns being onely three. 1 *Cariſto*, antiently *Caryſtus*, with little or no variation, but by *Plinie* called *Ægea*, and *Chironia*; memorable for its marble quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Caryſtiæ*. 2 *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the *Turkes*, *Eribos*, ſeated on a plain near the waters ſide, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay, called the *Golf* of *Negropont*; a populous, ſtrong, and wealthy City, ſo fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, that in the judgement of moſt men, it was held invincible, when the *Turks* firſt ſate down before it. Nor was it purchaſed by the *Turk* (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Conſtantinople*, undertook the buſineſſe) at a lower price then the loſſe of forty thouſand men, who were ſpent, upon it: but taken at the laſt, and the people put unto the Sword, without conſideration of Sex, or Age. A town in former times of ſo great wealth and power, that it ſent Colonies abroad into *Macedonia* (a principall Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidice*, as alſo into *Sicil*, and ſome parts of *Italy*: and had a ſtrong influence on the affaires of *Achaia* alſo, as being ſituate near the Continent, that it was joyned to it by a bridge. When it was in the hands of the King of *Macedon*; this town, together with *Demetrias* in *Theſſaly*, and the Caſtle of *Acrocorinth*, were called the fetters of *Greece*: inſomuch, that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the Father of *Perſius*, to ſet the *Grecians* at liberty, the *Grecians* made anſwer, that in vaine was their *liberty* reſtored them, unleſſe theſe three towns were firſt diſmantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Lawes; in memory of that benefit, they refuſed to declare againſt them in behalf of *Antiochus*, who thereupon made himſelf maſter of the Town, and conſequently of the Iland. But forced to leave the place upon the loſſe of the battell at *Thermopylæ*, it became free again; till finally made ſubject unto *Rome*, with the reſt of *Greece*; and with it made a part of the Eaſtern Empire.

In

In the diviſion whereof amongſt the *Latines*, it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*; who from hence uſed with their Gallies to inteſt the ſhores of *Turkie*, and diſturb their trade. Provoked wherewith, eſpecially with their taking of *Ænus* a City of *Thrace*, under the conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admirall, who in that enterpriſe had took 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Iſland: *Mahomet* the *Great* reſolves upon the conqueſt of it; and with a puiſſant Army ſets before the Town. And though it coſt him dear, yet at laſt he got it, and therewith all the Iſland alſo, which depended on the fortunes of it, *an.* 1471. *Salamis*

SALAMIS is nigh unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*, famous for the overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes*, by the *Athenians*, and their confederates. What was the number of the ſouldiers and gallies of the *Perſian* ſide, hath been already declared. The *Grecian* Fleet conſiſted of no more then 270 veſſels, whereof 127 were rigged and ſet forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only: the reſt by the *aſſociates*. Yet was the *admiralty* committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedæmonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common ſafety, before an unſeaſonable contention for priority. The *Spartans* ſeeing the inequality of forces, intended not to have hazarded the battell, but with full ſayl to have retired to *Peloponneſus*, into which countrey the *Perſians* had made incurſions; reſpecting more the welfare of their own countrey yet defenſible, then the deſperate eſtate of *Attica*. This deſigne was by *Themiſtocles*, (as carefull for the eſtate of *Athens*, as they for *Sparta*) ſignified to *Xerxes*: who getting between them and home, compelled them to a neceſſitie of fighting; but to his own ruine. For in the conflict more then 200 of his ſhips were ſunk, and moſt of the reſt taken; the *confederates* having loſt of their Navy, forty onely. Between the *Athenians* and *Megarenſes*, were many contentions for this Iſland: the fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the ſame name, the royall ſeat of *Telamon* the father of *Aiax*, ſo famous in the warre of *Troy*: more memorable for giving birth to *Solon* the *Legiſlator* of *Athens*, one of the ſeven wiſe men of *Greece*.

VII. *ÆGINA*, now called *Engie*, an Iſland ſituate over againſt *Sinus Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægean*; hence called *Golfo di Engia*, the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his juſtice and integrity one of the three *Judges of Hell:* the other two being his brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly beene called *Oenone*, and *Oenope*; but tooke this name from *Ægina* the daughter of *Aſopus* a King of *Bœotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is ſaid to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus:* The people hereof are properly called *Æginenſes* and *Æginetæ*, much ſpoken of in the wars of *Athens*, from which diſtant about 12 miles. The ground hereof is very ſtony, but good for barley, of which very plentifull: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving people, to whom they gave in thoſe dayes the name of *Myrmidons*, (the Iſland being alſo called *Myrmidonia*) *quod formicarum more terram foderent*, becauſe *Emmet-like*, they digged up and under the earth, to make it the more fit for tillage, and dwelt at firſt in *Caves* without any houſes. Hence the occaſion of the fable of turning *Emmets* into men at the prayers of *Æacus*; both tale and people, after (I know not how) carried into *Theſſaly*, where before we found them.

VIII. The *CYCLADES*, ſo called becauſe they lie in a *circle* round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are alſo called the *Iſlands* of the *Arches*, becauſe they are in the ſea called *Archipelago*. They ſtand ſo cloſe together, that in a clear day a man may ſee 20 of them at a time, for which cauſe it is with good reaſon accounted to be a dangerous place for ſaylers in a ſtorm. The chief of theſe *Cyclades*, are 1 *DELOS*, *quaſi* δῆλος, ſignifying *apparent*, becauſe when all the earth had abjured the receipt of *Latona* at the requeſt of *Juno*; this Iſland then under water, was by *Jupiter* erected aloft, and fixt to receive her; and in it was ſhe delivered of *Apollo* and *Diana*: of which thus *Ovid*:

——— *Erratica* Delos
Errantem accepit, tunc cum levis inſula nabat.
Illic incumbens, ſub Palladas *arbore, palmæ:*
Edidit, invita, Geminos Latona, *noverca.*

Unſetled *Delos* floating on the wave,
A little Iſland entertainment gave
To wandring *Laton*, ſpight of *Juno*'s head,
Under *Minerva*'s Palme-tree brought to bed.

Notable alſo is this Iſland for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a cuſtome neither permitting men to die, or children to be born in it; but ſending ſick men, and great-bellied women to *Rhene*, a ſmall Iſland, and not much diſtant. By a more antient name it is called *Ortygia*; and by that name mentioned in many of the Poets both *Greeke* and *Latines*. The chief town of it called alſo *Delos*, is ſituate on a plaine environed with rocks, neer the hill called *Cynthus:* whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*, as of *Delius* and *Delia* from the Iſland. In this towne had *Apollo* both his Temple and *Oracle*, delivered here more plainely then in other places, and for that reaſon (as ſome ſay) called *Delos*; the word in *Greek* ſignifying *manifeſt*, or apparent: made famous by the reſort of people from all places hither, eſpecially from the neighbouring Iſlands, who ſent yearly multitudes of men and troopes of *Virgins*, to celebrate his ſolemnities with heards

Cyclades.

of *Sacrifices*. More wealthy afterwards by the removing of the trade of *Corinth* hither, that town being utterly destroyed by the *Romans*, and this made choice of by the *Merchant*, partly by reason of the immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient situation betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*. Continuing in great wealth and power till *Mithridates* laid it waste; and at last on the ceasing of *Oracles* utterly forsaken. Both Town and Island now called *Dilos*. By which name also *Rhene* an adjoining Island (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polycrates* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it at the least in name.

2 *TENOS* by *Aristotle* called *Hydrusa*, by some *Ophiussa*, by the Modernes, *Tyna*. The chiefe Town of it of the same name; so called from one *Tenes*, the builder of it, and giving name unto the Island. Memorable for a fountaine called *Dipnosus*, of which *Aristole* and *Athenæus* doe both affirm, that the waters will not mix with wine. The onely Island of this seat, which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*; the rest being subject to the *Turk*, deserving therefore the first place in our description of those Islands that incompasse *Delos*, though antiently

3 *ANDROS*, (*prima inter Cyclades*) was reckoned chief amongst the *Cyclades*, or first at least in order, because next to *Delos*: originally called *Cauron*, afterwards *Antandros*, and at last *Andros*, from *Andrus* the son of *Eurymachus*, who founded the chief town in it, of the same name also. Memorable for a pleasant fountaine mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof, on the *nones* of *January*, yearly, had the taste of wine. It still retaines the name of *Andros*.

4 *NAXOS*, now *Nicsia*, one of the biggest of the pack, as being about 80 miles in compasse. In antient times called *Veneris insula*, or the Island of *Venus*, afterwards *Dionysia* by reason of its aboundance of wine and the goodnesse of those Wines together, consecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greekes* call *Dionysius*: From its wonderfull plenty of Wheat, called by some *Sicilia Minor*, or the *lesser Sicil*; but at last *Naxos* from one *Naxos*, who had the conduct of a Colony of *Carians* hither. But notwithstanding this new name *Bacchus* did still retaine the honour to be worshipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marrying here *Ariadne*, (as the Poets fable) whom *Theseus* had left upon the *Rocks*; whose *Coronet* or Chaplet being by his meanes made one of the heavenly *Constellations* is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*, by the name of the Island, though commonly by Astronomers *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The women of this Island are said by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eight moneth; as *Bacchus* was: more certainly famous in true story for the beauty and fertility of it; and for a kinde of excellent *Marble* called *Ophitis*, or *Serpentinus*, the ground whereof is green, diapred with blew or purple spots; in much esteem amongst the *Romans*. When these Islands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John Quirino* a *Patritian*, or Gentleman of that City (as they did divers of the rest on other *Undertakers*) from whom it came to the Noble family of the *Crispos*, who held it till the year 1572. *James* the last of that house lost it to *Selymus* the second.

5 *GYAROS*, a little Island into which the *Romans* used to banish *delinquents*: hence that of *Juvenal* cited by Sir *G. Sandys*.

Aude aliquid brevibus Gyaris, *vel carcere dignum,*
Si vis esse aliquid: probitas laudatur, & alget.

If thou intend'st to thrive, doe what deserves
Short *Gyaros*, or *Gives*: prais'd vertue sterves.

6 *PAROS*, now *Paria*, by some of the Antients called *Pactia*, by others *Minois*, but obtained this new name from *Parus*, a son of *Jason*, memorable for quarries of the whitest *Marble*, of which commonly the *Statuas* of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latines*. In compasse about 50 miles running in a long Plaine from East to West, having once a Town of the same name seated in the North, once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careless of keeping their promises and contracts: whence ἀναπαίστους grew into a *by-word* applyed to those who made no reckoning of their promises. There is now a town in it called *Cephalo*, but of no great note.

7 *SCYROS* opposite to *Magnesia* in *Asia Minor*, famous for the birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*, and that it was the lurking place of *Achilles*. For his mother *Thetis* being forewarned by an *Oracle* that he should be slain in the *Trojan* war, sent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Island, where hee was brought up in womans attire among the Kings daughters, and deemed a *Virgin*; till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the Kings daughter, it was proved to be otherwise. Others relate that *Ulysses* discovered him by a wile, who coming thither like a *Pedler* or Petit-Merchant, with *trinkets*, and other ware to avoid distrust; exposed his Merchandise to the view of the Damosels: and that the other Ladies falling on the *tires* and Laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the *Speare* and *Shield*. Which when *Ulysses* had observed he made him leave that company, and away for *Troy*. The handsomnesse of the fraud take from *Ovid* thus,

Consci

Conscia venturi genitrix Nereia fati
Dissimulat cultu natam; & deceperat omnes;
In quibus Ajacem, sumptæ fallacia vestis.
Arma ego fœmineis animum motura virile m
Mercibus inserui, &c.

Englished by *G. Sandys* in his Translation of the *Metamorphosis.*

The whole designe in Order to relate,
Thetis fore-knowing great *Achilles* fate,
Disguiz'd her sonne, so like a *Virgin* dreſt
That all mistook, and *Aiax* with the rest.
When *Armes* with womens trifles, which might blind
Suspect, I brought to tempt a manly mind.
Yet was the *Heros* Virgin-like arraid;
Who taking the *Shield* and *Speare*, I said
O Goddesse-born, for thee the fate of *Troy*,
Her fall reserves; why doubtst thou to destroy
Great *Pergamus*! then made him d'off those weeds,
And sent the mighty unto mighty deeds.

There is another of this name, betwixt *Negropont* and *Lesbos*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the *Scene* of this action: but the generall opinion is for this, (though that the greater) to which the situation of it amongst the rest of those Islands, where reigned so many of the *Greek* Kings interessed in the war of *Troy*, seems to give good countenance: the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in those dayes, so much towards the North.

8 *MELOS*, situate betwixt *Crete*, and *Peloponnesus*, and equally distant from them both: the Promontories of *Scylleum* in the one, and that of *Dictymeum* in the other, shooting out against it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phœnicians*, who coming out of *Biblus*, a town of that countrey, gave that name unto it, gave that name unto it, called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greekes*, from its aboundance of Honey. The birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philosopher, hence surnamed *Melius*, but more properly Ἄθεος, or the *Atheist*: the first who in those dark times of ignorance, absolutely denyed that there was a God. *Protagoras Deos in dubium vocavit*, Diagoras *excluſit*, saith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compasse. The soyle sufficiently fruitfull in corn and oyl, but defective in wine. Here is great plenty of *marble* curiously bespotted, and no small store of *milstones*: as also great quantities of pitch, and brimstone, and some sulphurie or hot springs, good for many diseases. The chief town of it called *Milo* also.

9 *SERIPHUS*, 20 miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the education of *Perseus*, the son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Island, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but such as are brought from other places, keep their naturall tone: from whence *Proverbially*, silent and sullen persons were called *Ranæ Seriphiæ*. It is now called *Serphena*, a stony and rocky Island, and hath a town of the same name.

10 *CIA*, by some called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, opposite to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Sunium*, in compasse about 50 miles, made towards the West in fashion of a *Crescent* or half Moon. Mountainous and hilly, except towards the North. By *Pliny* said to have been torn from *Eubœa* by a sudden violence of the Sea, many men perishing in the waters. Of old times beautified with three faire towns, 1 *Julis*, 2 *Carthæa*, and 3 *Careſſus*; of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whose names occurre amongst the Antients, as *Miconus* now called *Micole*, 12 *Cythnus*, now *Cauro*; 14 *Syphnus*, now *Sifino*; 15 *Theraſia* or *Theuſia*, now *Santorini*. 16 *Cimolis* called formerly *Echinuſa*, but now *Polino*; 17 *Olyarus* now *Quiminio*; 18 *Sicenus*, now *Sicino*; 19 *Polyegros*, now *Falconara*; 20 *Amorgos*, now *Morgo*, one of the biggest of them all, but not else observable.

The *SPORADES*, so called from σπείρω *spargo, eo quod in mari sparsæ sunt, & non in* circulum *coactæ*, because they lie dispersed and scattered; not formed into a *Circle* as the *Cyclades* are. In number twelve, *viz.* 1 *Anaphe*, so called by the *Argonautes*, ἀνὰ τὸν ἀναφανέντα σωτῆρα, because the Moon did suddenly, and beyond her naturall course appear unto them, then grievously distressed by tempest. *Apollo* worshipped here, is hence called *Anaphæus*. It is now called *Nanfio*. 2 *Astypalea*, now *Stampalia*, in compasse 88 miles; by some of the Antients called *Theon Trapeza*, or the *table of the Gods*. In *Astypale*, the chief town of it was *Apollo* worshipped, from hence sometimes called *Astypaleus*. 3 *Helene*, so called from that fair *Greek Dame*, whom *Paris* is here said to have first deflowred; now called *Macronisso*. 4 *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is said to have been buried: But others finde his grave at *Naxos*, and some at *Chios*, the difference being almost as great

Sporades. great about the place of his *buriall*, as the place of his birth. There are 5 *Laguſa*, 6 *Phocuſa*, 7 *Phecaſia*, 8 *Philocandros*, 9 *Schinuſa*, 10 *Strybia*, of little note either in Poetry or ſtory. And finally *Thera*, not far from *Ægina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Calliſte*, but named thus by *Theras* a *Theban* Gentleman; the ſon of *Autesion* conducting hither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Minyans*, (theſe laſt of *Theſſaly*) caſt out of *Lemnos* by *Pelaſgus*: in memory of whom, as the founder of their name and Nation, the Iſlanders uſed to celebrate an Annuall Feaſt. A ſedition after happening amongſt this people, the weaker party under the conduct of one *Battus*, admoniſhed ſo to doe by the *Oracle* of *Apollo*, paſſed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*, the birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who aſcribes his Originall to this Iſland, as, himſelfe thus witneſſeth.

Καλλίστη φερεπάροιθε, τὸ δ' ὔστερον οὔνομα Θήρη,
Μήτηρ ἰοέσσης πατρίδος ἡμετέρης.

That is to ſay:

Calliſte, which men *Thera* now doe call,
Of my deare Countrey the *Originall*.

X *CYTHERA* now called *Cerigo*, lyeth in the bottom of this Sea, not above five miles diſtant from *Capo Malo* in *Peloponneſus*, formerly called *Porphyris* from the aboundance of *Marble*, whereof the Iſland yeelds good plenty. In compaſſe about 60 miles, enriched with a delightfull ſoyle, and many havens, but thoſe ſmall, and unſafe, and very difficult of entrance: environed on all ſides with rocks, of themſelves inacceſſible, by which defended from the *Turkes* who hitherto have ſuffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it, to whom it fell in the diviſion of the ſpoile amongſt the *Latines*, ſo often ſpoken of before. It had a Town of the ſame name, ſome two furlongs from the Haven ſtood the Temple of *Venus*, (the antienteſt dedicated to that Goddeſſe which the *Grecians* had) and therein her *Statua* in complete Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the ruins whereof are ſtill to be ſeen) was *Helen* the wife of *Menelaus*, willingly raviſhed by *Paris* the ſon of *Priam*; but not enjoyed by him till he had brought her to a ſmall Iſland of the *Sporades*, by her name called *Helene*, as before is ſaid. From the devotions of this people paid ſo duely to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cytherea*, by which often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*.

Parce metu Cytherea, *manent immota tuorum*
Fata tibi.

That is to ſay:

Drive feare faire *Cytherea* from thy minde,
Thou thy ſonnes Fate immoveable ſhall finde.

And ſo I paſſe from the *Ægean* to the *Cretan* Sea, obſerving this onely by the way, that moſt of the 69 Kings, which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the warre of *Troy*, were Kings onely of theſe ſmall Iſlands, or elſe of other places as inconſiderable for wealth and potency: every ſmall Town and territory having in thoſe early times amongſt the *Grecians* (when *ambition* had not taught the great ones to devoure the leſſe) a peculiar King.]

The ISLANDS of the CRETAN SEAS.

The *CRETAN SEA* is properly that part of the *Ægean* or *Ionian* Seas, which lyeth about the ſhores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the command and power thereof: as in thoſe times, the Sea about *Carpathos*, another Iſle of the *Ægean* had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*, though ſituate in the *Ægean* alſo. The Iſles hereof are 1 *Crete*, 2 *Claudi*, 3 *Dia*, and 4 *Letoa*: for *Melos* and *Cimolis*, named by *Ptolemie* amongſt the Iſlands which adjoin on *Grete*, have been already ſpoken of amongſt the *Cyclades*, in the accompt whereof they paſſe by conſent of Writers.

1 *CRETA*, now *Candie*, hath on the Eaſt the *Carpathian* Sea; on the Weſt, the *Ionian*; on the North the *Ægean*; on the South, the *African* or *Libyck*: In form extending Eaſt and Weſt, with three points or *Promontories*, whereof that towards the Eaſt, called antiently *Samonium*, is now called *Cabo di Salamone*, that on the South-weſt, looking towards *Afric*, formerly named *Hermea*, now *Capo Grabaſſe*; and finally that on the North-weſt towards *Peloponneſus*, of old called *Cimarus*, and now *Capo Cheſtin*. This laſt directly oppoſite to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*, the Sea betwixt them being ſo troubleſome and tempeſtuous, eſpecially on *Laconia* ſide, that at laſt it grew into an ordinary *caveat*, *Maleam prætervectus obliviſcatur quæ ſunt domi*, viz. that he which was to ſaile by the point of *Malea*, ſhould lay aſide the care of all other matters and attend his preſent ſafety onely.

It

It hath in ſeverall Ages and in ſeverall Authors obtained ſeverall names: by *Homer* and *Euſtathius* called *Hecatompolis* from the number of an hundred Cities then contained in it; by *Plinie* and *Solinus*, *Macaros* and *Macaroneſos*, that is to ſay, the *happie Iſland*, from the goodneſſe of the ſoil, and temper of the air. By *Stephanus*, *Idæa*, from *Ida*, a famous Mountain of it; by *Giraldus*, *Telchionia*, from the *Telchini*, the Prieſts of *Cybele*, who was here had in great requeſt. At the preſent, *Candie*, either *a Candore* from the *whiteneſſe* of the rocks wherewith environed, or from *Candie* the *Metropolis* or chief town thereof. But the general name, which hath prevailed moſt in all ſorts of writers, is that of *Crete*, ſo called *quaſi Cureta*, by a *Syncope*, or abbreviation from the *Curetes*, the firſt inhabitants hereof; who together with the *Corybantes* and *Telchini* were the Prieſts of *Cybele*, the principall goddeſſe of this Iſland; and they ſo called ἀπὸ τῆς κουρᾶς, from their *tonſure*, or ſhaving of the head. A cuſtome much in uſe amongſt the Prieſts of ſome of the *Pagan* Deities, and poſſibly enough from them tranſmitted to the Church of *Rome*. And to this *Etymologie* I do rather incline then either to derive the name from *Crete* the ſon of *Jupiter* and the Nymph *Idea*, or from *Crete* the daughter of *Heſperus*, though both theſe have their Authors alſo. Nor dare I to reject the conceit of *Bochartus*, who fetching the *Etymons* of moſt people from the *Punick* language or Originall, will have the *Cretans* to be deſcended from the *Cerethites*, a Nation of the *Philiſtins* well known in Scripture: the word *Cereth* being abbreviated into *Creth*, from which into *Crete*, and *Cretans*, is no difficult paſſage. But in my mind his conjecture is better then his proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience, that the chief arms of the *Philiſtins*, were their *Bow* and *Arrows*, as appears 1 *Sam.* 31.3. and that the *Cretans* anciently were expert at thoſe weapons alſo: yet this concludes no more that the *Cretans* are of the race of the *Philiſtins*, then that almoſt all Nations elſe had the ſame Originall; the *Bow* and *Arrows* being the ordinary weapons of moſt people formerly, till cuſtome and experience trained them up to others of a later date, as he himſelfe acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate tractates. *Crete.*

In reference to the heavenly bodies it is ſituate under the beginning of the fourth *Climate*, ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is no more then 14 hours and a quarter. And in relation to the earth ſet in the middle of the Sea, at ſo even a diſtance from *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk* as if naturally deſigned to be what *Ariſtotle* hath pleaſed to call it, the *Lady* and *Miſtris of the Sea*. For it is diſtant from *Peloponneſus* an hundred miles, as many from *Aſia the leſſe*, and not above 150 from the ſhores of *Africk*: So verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis *magni medio jacet inſula* Ponto.

Joves birth-place *Crete*, a fruitfull land,
In the middle of the Sea doth ſtand.

It is in length 270. in breadth 50 miles, in compaſſe about 590. The ſoil is very fruitfull, eſpecially of *wines*, which we call *Muſcadels*, of which they tranſport yearly 12000 *Buts*: together with Sugar-Candie, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Orenges, Lemmons, Raiſons, Melons, Citrons, Pomegranats. Yet as other Countries of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in corn: the moſt or greateſt part of which is yearly brought hither from *Peloponneſus*.

The Iſland is very populous, inſomuch that it is thought that upon any ſudden occaſion, the *Signeury* of *Venice* can raiſe in it 60000 men able to bear arms. The people have formerly been good ſea-faring men; a vertue commaculated with many vices, which they yet retain, as envie, malice, and lying; to which laſt ſo infinitely addicted that an horrible lye was called proverbially *Cretenſe mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimenides*, a native of this Iſland, whoſe words thus cited by S. *Paul* in that to *Titus*, *cap.* 1. *v.* 2.

Κρῆτες ἀεὶ ψεῦσται, κακὰ θηρία, γαστέρες ἀργαί.

The *Cretans* alwayes lyers are;
Unrulie beaſts, of labour ſpare.

To which this Proverb may be added, *viz.* Τρία Καππαδόκια, that is to ſay, There are three Nations whoſe names begin with the letter K, worſe then any others; *viz.* Καππαδόκαι, Κρῆτες, Κίλικες, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though ſome I know apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capua*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the ſame letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are ſick of their old diſeaſes, as great Lyers, and as idle as ever formerly; covetous withall and very ſubtile, impatient of labour, and not caring to learn any ſcience perfectly: only well practiſed in ſhooting to which accuſtomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert then the *Turks* themſelves.

The language generally ſpoken is the *Greek* tongue, though the Gentleman and Merchant by reaſon of their dependence on the State of *Venice*, ſpeak *Italian* alſo. Both languages uſed alſo in divine offices, the people being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* ſervice uſed alſo in many places, ſince the ſubjection of this Iſland to the *Venetians*. Converted firſt unto the faith by S. *Paul* the Apoſtle, who having planted the Goſpel of life amongſt them, left the *watering* of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Biſhop of this Iſle, recommending unto him the care of the Churches there, with power of *Ordination* and *Eccleſiaſticall cenſure*, as appears clearly by the Text.

Which

Crete. Which power that it belonged to *Titus* as Bishop, and not their *Evangelist* only, is affirmed expresly, not only by the subtcription of the said Epistle, where he is plainly called ὁ Κρητῶν ἐκκλησίας πρῶτος Ἐπίσκοπος, the first Bishop of the Church of the *Cretians*: but by the concurrent testimonies of *Eusseb. Eccl Hist. l.3.c 4 S. Ambr. in præfat. Ep. ad Tit. S. Hieron. in Tit. c.1.v.5.* and in his tract *de Scriptor. Ecclesiasticis. Theodoret* cited by *Oecumen. in præfat. ad Ep. Tit. Oecumenius* himself in *Tit.1.* and finally by *Theophylact*, in his preface to the same Epistle. All which in plain terms call him *Bishop*, and the Bishop of *Crete*, according to that sense and meaning of the word *Episcopus*, as it was used in their times distinct from *Presbyter*. The Church hereof whilest wholly under the *Greek* Patriarchs was governed by four Archbishops, and 21 Bishops: but since the subjection of this Island to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbishop, which is he of *Candie* the chief Citie, and eight Bishops only; besides the titular Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who hath here his residence: some Prelate of the *Latine* Church having been alwayes honoured with that emptie title ever since the recoverie of that Citie from the Western *Christians*.

Famous was this Island amongst the Ancients for many things, memorized both by the *Poets* and old *Historians*. For here reigned *Saturn* in the first ages of the World, father of *Jupiter*, born here and secretly nursed in the hill called *Ida*. For seeing that by the compact betwixt *Saturn* and his brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own life only, but all his male children to be murdered as soon as born: *Jupiter*, by the care of his mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and secretly nursed in Mount *Ida*, as before was said: the crying of the Infant, being drowned by the noise of loud-sounding Cymbals, purposely used by his *Rockers* to avoid discovery. Whence afterwards the *Corybantes* or Priests of *Cybele*, used in her sacrifices the like *musicall* instruments, continually sounding and withall shaking of their heads (like *Fidlers*) in an *antick* and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*.

Non te progenitum Cybeleius *ære canoro*
Lustravit Corybas.

That is to say:

No *Cybeleian Corybas* that day
That thou wast born, did on his *Cymbal* play.

Here also lived *Minos* and *Radamanthus*, whose lawes were after imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*, and who for their equitie on earth are fained by the Poets to be (together with *Æacus*) the *Judges in Hell*. In this Island also lived the lewdly-lustfull *Pasiphae*, wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who, they say, begat on her the *Minotaure*: *Dædalus* having framed for her an *artificiall cow* into which she conveyed her self, and by that means obtained her desire. The fable is thus expounded, that *Pasiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Minos* Secretaries; whose company by the *pandarisme* of *Dædalus* she enjoying, was delivered of two sons; one called *Minos*; the other, *Taurus*. And whereas it is said, that the *Minotaure* was slain by *Theseus*, like enough that the annuall tribute of 7 children which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in some prison; *Minos* and *Taurus*, being the keepers or jaylors. As for the action of *Pasiphae*, I think it not altogether impossible to be true: considering how *Domitian*, to verifie the old relation, exhibited the like beastly spectacle in his *amphitheatre* at *Rome*: for thus saith *Martial*:

Junctam Pasiphaen Dictæo, *credite*, Tauro
Vidimus: accepit fabula prisca fidem.
Nec se miretur (Cæsar) *longæva vetustas,*
Quicquid fama canit, donat arena tibi.

The fable's prov'd a truth, our eyes did see
The *Cretan* Bull sport with *Pasiphae*.
What cause hath then *antiquity* to glory?
We saw it done, she only heard the story.

Finally, here was the so much celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dædalus* for the including and safe keeping of the *Minotaurus*; so full of various windings and turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof it was impossible for him to come out but by the help of a clew of threed. By this *Minotaure* (half a man half-bull) the children of the *Athenians* paid yearly to *Minos* in way of tribute are said to be murdered; till killed by *Theseus* son of *Ægeus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the daughter of *Minos* falling in love taught him a means to kill the Monster, and gave him the clew of threed before spoken of, to conduct him out again: the morall or historie whereof hath been shewn before. Nor must it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the *Geographer* who flourished in the time of *Tiberius Cæsar* was of *Cretan* parents (though born in the Citie of *Amasia*, in the Realm of *Pontus*) which addes unto this Island as much true renown, as any of the fictions or stories, (be they which they will) of the former times.

Things most observable at the present are these that follow, 1 that it breeds no serpents nor venemous

venemous worm, or ravenous or hurtfull creature; ſo that their ſheep graze very ſecurely without any Shepheard: 2 If a woman bite a man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it; which if true, then the laſt part of the priviledge foregoing (of breeding no hurtfull creature) muſt needs be falſe. 3 They have an hearb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth hee ſhall feel no hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be beleived who ſpeakes it. 4 Here is (beſides many other *medicinall* herbs) that called *Dictamum* or *Dictamnos*, of eſpeciall virtue againſt poiſon, either by way of prevention or preſent cure; peculiar onely to this Iſland: it affordeth great ſtore of *Laudanum*, a juice or gum forced with incredible labour out of a certaine tree *Ciſto*, of which the mountaines yeeld aboundance, good to cauſe ſleep, if moderately and carefully taken, but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation, it brings the laſt ſleep upon a man, out of which not to be awakened, till the ſound of the laſt Trumpet raiſe him.

Chief Mountaines of it, 1 *Ida*, now *Pſiloriti*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, begirt about with many fair and pleaſant villages, ſheltred by it from the violence of winde and Sun, the hill being ſo high that from the top hereof both ſides of the Iſland may be eaſily ſeen. Here *Jupiter* is ſaid to have been ſecretly nurſed, from hence called *Ideus*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* uſe to ſhew ſome tracts of the antient *Labyrinth*, being indeed no other then the ruines of ſome larger Quarry: the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* being ſo defaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to finde any ruins of it. 2 *Dicte*, now called *Sethia*, in ſome places *Laſti*, ſo high that all the winter long it is covered with ſnow; yet all the ſides thereof garniſhed with *Cypreſſe* trees, a mountaine of ſuch ſuch fame, that the whole Iſland ſometimes had the name of *Dictæa*, the City *Dictinna*, the Promontorie *Dictymæum*, and the Herb *Dictamnos*, all ſeeming to take name from hence. 3 *Leuci*, a long chaine of hils ſo named from the whiteneſſe of them, now called *De Marara* and by ſome *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principall of thoſe that be are 1 *Melipotamus*, 2 *Scaſinus*, 3 *Epicidnus*, and 4 *Divotro* towards the North; 5 *Populiar* towards the Eaſt, and 6 *Limens* towards the Weſt: none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of burden, ſcarſe of little Barkes. But that defect ſupplyed by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many *Creeks* and *Bayes*, ſome capacious Havens, and great ſtore of fiſh, among which a kinde of bearded *mullet* reckoned among the delicacies of the antient *Romans*. By the convenience of which *Harbours*, their Fiſh-trade, and the ſituation of it in the midſt of the Sea; the people antiently were eſteemed ſo good *Sea-faring* men, that when the people of thoſe times did tax a man with any incredible report, they uſed to ſay, *Cretenſis neſcit pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no *Sayler*.

In former times there were reckoned in this Iſland an hundred Cities, thence called *Hecatompolis*, of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolemie*: for ſo many of their names he gives us. Thoſe of moſt note were 1 *Gnoſſus*, the ſeat-royall or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne*, the daughter of *Minos*, had the name of *Gnoſſis*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not far off. 2 *Cydon*, or *Cydonia*, a Midland City (as the former) memorable for an excellent kinde of Apple, which the *Latines* called *Poma Cydonia*, amongſt whom they were in great requeſt, as they are at this day, (though by the name of *Adams apples*) amongſt the *Turkes*, the moſt antient of all the Cities of *Crete*, many of which were at firſt Colonies of this; for which reaſon it was called commonly *mater urbium*. 3 *Eleuthera*, as *Ptolemie*, *Erythræa*, as the printed copies of *Florus*, corruptly call it, one of the firſt Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4 *Miletum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolemie*, the place in which S. *Paul* left *Trophimus* ſick, as is mentioned 2 *Tim.* 4.20. which happened when the Apoſtle hovered about that coaſt, as is ſaid *Act.* 27, 7, 8. &c. For that it could not be that *Miletum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Epheſus*, appeareth by his being at *Hieruſalem*, *Act.* 21. 19. and other circumſtances of the ſtory. 3 *Cortyna*, nigh to which ſtood the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus*: memorable alſo for a reed, growing on the River *Lenæus*, (neere to which it ſtood) of which they made their ſtrongeſt Arrowes, by *Virgil*, *Æneid.* 11. called *Spicula Cortynia*, as alſo for a light garment much uſed by Hunters, which *Claudian* calls *Cortyniam veſtem*, apparelling *Diana* the great *Huntreſſe* with it. 6 *Dictamum*, as *Ptolemie*, or *Dictynna*, as *Pliny* cals it, ſo named from the hill *Dicte*, near to which it is ſituate; one of the chief Cities of the North parts of this Iſland; as 7 *Ampelus*, ſo named from its plenty of vines was upon the South. 8 *Minoa* a Port town (now called *Altomara*) ſo named from *Minos*, in the Eaſt; and 9 *Corytus* on a Promontorie of the ſame name in the Weſt ſide of it.

But theſe and almoſt all the reſt ſpoken of by *Ptolemie*, being ſo deſtroyed by time and warres, that the ruines of them are hardly viſible, we muſt behold it in the preſent condition and eſtate thereof: divided into four parts or Provinces, aceording to the names and number of the four chief Cities, that is to ſay, 1 *Sittia*, 2 *Candie*, 3 *Rhetimum*, and 4 *Canea*.

In the firſt part called *SITTIA*, lying towards the Eaſt, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Pariſhes, of which ſix onely are of the Church of *Rome*, the reſidue holding the *Communion* of the Church of *Greece*; the principall whereof are 1 *Sittia* or *Cytia*, conceived by ſome to be the *Ciſteum* of *Ptolemie*, a ſmall Town, but populous and very well fortified. 2 *Gerapetra* betwixt *Sittia* and *Candie*, ſeated on the Sea ſide on a lofty rock, at the bottom whereof is ſaid to be a dangerous whirl-pit, ſuppoſed to be the *Panormus* of *Ptolemie*. 3 *S. Macor*, the dwelling place of one of the Biſhops of the *Latines*.

2 In the ſecond part hereof called the Territory of *CANDIE*, lying directly Weſt of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Townes and Villages, making up amongſt them 99 Pariſh Churches; whereof 77 are of the *Communion* of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 onely of the Church of *Rome*. Of theſe

Crete. theſe the principall, 1 *Candia*, an Archbiſhops See, the *Metropolis* or head City of the Iſland, which takes name from hence; ſituate on the North-coaſt hereof towards the *Ægean*, beautified with a ſafe and commodious Haven, and fortified ſo ſtrongly, that it ſeems impregnable; affirmed by ſome to be the *Matium* of the Antients; but I find no ſuch place in *Ptolemie*, or in *Ortelius* his Theſaurus. The City fair and large, built for the moſt part of free ſtone, with low rooфes after the manner of *Italy*, the ſtreets broad and ſpacious: from whence a faire and pleaſant plain leadeth to a place called the *Cave* of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. 2 *Malviſin*, 3 *Themene*, *Caſtell nuvo*, 5 *Boniſacio*, 6 *Belvedere*, 7 *Mirabello*, of which little memorable.

3 In the third part, being the territorie of *RHETIMO*, lying North-weſt of the territorie of *Candie*, are accounted 265 Townes and Villages, making up 44 Pariſhes, whereof 36 are *Grecians*, and but 8 of the *Latines*. The chief of which are 1 *Rhetimo* in the ſhore of the Northern Sea, as *Candie* is, well fortified, and a Biſhops See; but not elſe obſervable. 2 *Milopotamo*, an Epiſcopall See alſo, ſo called of the River *Milopotamos*, on which it is ſeated. 3 *Agiſtiman*, 4 *Mandrus*, 5 *Loppa*, hardly worth the naming.

4 In the fourth and laſt part hereof, being the territorie of *CANEA*, taking up all the Weſt of the Iſland, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, diſtributed into 47 Pariſhes: of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church, and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Thoſe of moſt note are 1 *Canea*, built by a Colonie or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentlemen on the North Coaſt alſo, ſuppoſed to ſtand in the ſame place where once *Cydon* did; ſecond to none but *Candie* for wealth and beautie, but far before it for the commodiouſneſſe of the port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more then a thouſand good Gallies at a time, and therefore ſtrongly fortified with two *Citadels* or Caſtles, on each ſide of the Haven, one; as the door and entrance of the countrey. 2 *Chiſamo*, in *Latine* called *Cyſamum*, old and decayed, the wals thereof onely holding good againſt the ruines of time, ſituate in a low mooriſh place towards the *Ægean*. 3 *Selino*, built upon an hill on the Seaſide, oppoſite to *Chiſamo*. 4 *Sfachia* or *Spachia*, ſituate on the foot of the mountaines, of old called *Leuci*, now *della Spachia* from this town: unwalled, but fortified with a Caſtle, built for a place of refuge againſt the incurſions of ſuch *Pirates* as annoied the Coaſts; in which the Governour for this part hath his chief aboad. By which account it will appear that in the whole Iſland are no more then 1044 Townes and Villages, 207 Pariſh Churches: of which there be but 48 which are accompted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the reſidue, 159 in number, retaining their *Communion* with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the ſtory of this Iſland, wee can aſcend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the ſonne of *Uranus* and *Veſta*, or of *Heaven* and *Earth*: who better favoured by his mother, obtained the Kingdome of *Crete*, his elder brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon wars ariſing betwixt the Brethren it was ordered thus, that *Saturn* for his own life ſhould enjoy the Kingdome, which after his deceaſe ſhould return to the *Titans*: and for performance of this contract the ſonnes of *Saturn* to be ſtrangled aſſoone as born. But *Cybele* the wife of *Saturn* unawares to her husband, preſerved firſt *Jupiter*, and after others of her ſonnes, which comming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his ſons, they made war againſt *Saturn*, but in concluſion were ſubdued by the aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring againſt the *Gods*, *Saturn* and *Jupiter* his ſon, being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquiſhed a new war aroſe betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occaſioned onely (as many unnaturall warres ſince theſe times have been) by *fears* and *jealouſies*: which ended at the laſt in the flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became ſole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death; and dying was interred at *Gnoſſus*, with this inſcription or Epitaph in old *Greek* letters ὁ Ζεὺς τοῦ Κρόνου, that is to ſay, *Jupiter the ſon of Saturn*. After his death, worſhipped by the blinde *Gentiles*, as the chief of their Gods, and honored frequently with the title of Πατὴρ ἀνδρῶν θεῶν τε, the father both of Gods and men, though moſt incongruouſly and abſurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thouſands living, in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed, he being dead, *Minos* begotten by him on *Europa*, ſucceeded here: who wiſely taking the advantage which the convenient ſituation of the Iſland gave him, made himſelfe *maſter of the Seas*; and afterwards enlarged his Dominions by the conqueſt of the *Megarenſes* and *Athenians*, upon which laſt he impoſed amongſt other hard conditions, a tribute of ſeven male children yearly, to be kept as *hoſtages*; determined after three years by the valour and good fortune of *Theſeus*. But *Minos* being ſlain in *Sicil*, and his poſterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themſelves after the manner of a *Common-wealth* or *Free-eſtate*: the Lawes and Ordinances whereof firſt deviſed by *Minos*, were of ſuch eſteem, that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large deſcribed by *Ariſtotle* in the ſecond Book of his *Politicks*, ch. 8. Under this government it continued till the *Romans* having taken in all the reſt of *Greece*, picked a quarrell with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his war againſt them, yet *Florus* ſtates the matter rightly, affirming that the warre was undertaken on no other ground, but *ſola nobilem inſulam vincendi cupiditate*, a covetous deſire onely of ſubduing ſuch a wealthy Iſland. And to this war they went with ſo proud a confidence, that M. *Antony* who commanded in it, carryed more chaines with him to bring home his Priſoners, then Armes to conquer them. An inſolence which he paid right deare for, his navy being vanquiſhed by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his ſlaine ſouldiers hanged upon the *Maſts*, and himſelfe periſhing in the action, by a fit of ſickneſſe. *Metellus* who ſucceeded him in that charge went

went on more ſucceſſefully, firſt taking *Gnoſſus*, *Eleuthera*, (or *Erythræa*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydonia*, their principall Cities; and not long after all the Iſland: uſing the vanquiſhed Iſlanders with ſuch inhumanity, that moſt of them poiſoned themſelves to avoid his cruelty: rewarded with no other honour for ſo great a victory, then that he got the ſurname of *Creticus*; his *Triumph* being denyed by the faction of *Pompey*, againſt whoſe will he had put himſelfe upon that ſervice. Thus added to the *Roman* Empire it was united unto *Cyrenaica* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, both making up one Province onely, governed by a *Proconſul*, till the death of *Nero*: afterwards ſeparated from it, but the time I finde not. During the reign of *Conſtantine*, in 36 yeares together here fell no reign, ſo that this Iſland was in a manner wholly deſolated. But *Helena* the mother of *Conſtantine* having obtained rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new-peopled by ſeverall Colonies brought out of *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoining. By *Conſtantine* made a Province of the dioceſe of *Macedonia*, it continued a member of the Eaſtern Empire till the time of *Michael Balbus*, when ſubdued by the *Saracens*: from whom recovered under the more fortunate conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire, *anno* 963. In the diviſion of the ſpoile amongſt the *Latines* it was firſt given to *Boniface* Marqueſſe of *Monſferrat*, by whom ſurrendred willingly to the State of *Venice*, who had a minde to be poſſeſſed of all the Iſlands of that Empire: he being recompenſed with the Kingdome of *Theſſalie*, the faire and wealthy City of *Theſſalonica*, and many townes and territories in *Peloponneſus*. Under that State it ſtill continueth, in vain attempted by *Selimus* the ſecond, in the yeare 1571. at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*: and gallantly defended for this yeare laſt paſt, againſt all the forces of *Ibrahim* the late Grand Seigneur. What the ſucceſſe of this war will be we ſhall ſee hereafter. *Crete.*

For the defence hereof againſt the inſurrections of the Inhabitants who did at firſt ill brooke the *Venetian* Government, there are ſome ſtanding forces kept in conſtant pay; beſides ſuch as are maintained in ſeverrall Garriſons, the City of *Canea* having in it no fewer then ſix companies of ſouldiers; *Candie* 2000 ſouldiers, and the leſſer Cities proportionably: over which there is ſet ſo ſtrong a guard, that a naturall *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the preſervation of their *intereſſe* in it from a forain power, they have furniſhed the Iſland with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the ſhores: and have exceedingly fortified the haven of *Suda*, with two ſtrong Caſtles: this haven being capable of more then 1000 veſſels, and therefore meritoriouſly reputed the door and entry into the Countrey. It is reported that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the ſecond, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this haven, money more then enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniard* ſeemed only to intend the retreat and relief of his own Navy, when he ſhould undertake any expedition againſt the *Turk*: yet the wiſe *Venetians* ſaw, that by this haven he might at all times awe, and when he liſted, ſurprize the whole countrey.

¶ The other Iſlands of this Sea, as of leſſer note, will be paſt over in few words. The firſt of which is called *CLAUD*, mentioned, *Act.* 27. 16. ſituate on the South weſt of *Crete*, by *Mela* called *Gaulos*; wherein in *Plinies* time was a town or City named *Gaudos*; now called *Gozo*, with the Iſland. 2 *DIA*, now *Standia*, a very ſmall Iſland, and of little note. 3 *LETUA* on the South-eaſt of *Crete*, now called *Chriſtiana*. And 4 *ÆGILIA*, or *Ægialia*, by *Pliny Æglia*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponneſus*; now called *Ceterigo* by *Sophianus*. Of which and others of leſſe note (if leſſe may be) there is no more to be ſaid but that they have alwayes followed the fortunes of *Crete*, on which they ſeen to have their principall dependence.

The ISLANDS of the *IONIAN SEA*.

The *IONIAN SEA* is ſo called either from one *Ionius*, the ſon of *Dyrachius*, whom *Hercules* having ignorantly killed threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preſerve his memory, as *Didymus* is of opinion: or from *Iona*, a Region in the extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*, or from *Io* the daughter of *Inachus*, as *Lycophron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean* which lieth from the *Ægean* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick*, from which parted about *Epidamnum*, (otherwiſe called *Dyrrachium*) as is ſaid by *Ptolemie*: or rather at the ſhooting out of the *Acroceraunian* hils; as affirmed by *Pliny* and other writers; and ſo along the ſhores of the two *Calabrias*, to the Iſle of *Sicil*. Chief Iſles whereof which paſſe in the accompt of *Greece*, (for of thoſe lying on the coaſt of *Italy* we have ſpoke elſewhere) are 1 the *Strophades*, 2 *Zacynthus*, 3 the *Echinades*, 4 *Cephalenia*, 5 *Corcyra*, and 6 *Ithaca*.

1 The *STROPHADES* are two ſmall Iſlands now called *Strivali*, lying againſt *Meſſene* in *Peloponneſus*; famous for nothing but the *Harpies*, ravenous birds affirmed to have the faces of women, but the talons of *Vultures*, ſent by the offended Gods, (as the fable goeth) for the puniſhment of *Phineus* King of *Arcadia*, who had put out the eyes of his ſons by a former wife, at the inſtigation of their *Step-dame*. For which ſo plagued by theſe *Harpies*, that he could ſet no meat on his table whereſoever he was, but theſe ravenous creatures firſt devoured it, and then bewrayed the diſhes in which it was. Much pitied by the *Argonauts*, whom he had curteouſly entertained, they ſent *Zethus* and *Calais* the winged iſſue of *Boreas* and *Orythia*, who drave them thence, and having purſued them to thoſe Iſlands turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which fable was contained the ſad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by *Flatterers*, Informers,

Zant. and falſe accuſers, by whom their name and Government was made diſtaſtfull: till by good counſel they had purged their Courts of ſuch ugly monſters: concerning which *Alphonſus* King of *Naples* was uſed to ſay, that theſe *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades and dwelt at Rome*. They are inhabited onely by ſome few *Greek* Friers: and in one of them there is a ſpring of freſh water, which hath his fountaine in *Peloponneſus*, and paſſing under the Sea ariſeth here. The *Greek* Prieſts are called *Caloirs*, *quaſi καλοὶ ἱερεῖς boni Sacerdotes*. About 30 in number: they weare long hair, never eat fleſh, and but ſeldome fiſh: feeding uſually on hearbes, olives, oyl and the like. They never goe out of the Iſlands, neither doe they, on any occaſion, permit women to come amongſt them. They all labour for their ſuſtenance, ſome in tillage, ſome in vineyards, ſome in fiſhing, ſo that among very many of of them three or foure onely can read. But of theſe ſomewhat hath beene ſaid elſewhere already.

2 *ZACINTHUS*, or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compaſſe; and diſtant from *Peloponneſus* 20 miles, ſo called of *Zacinthus* ſon to *Dardanus*. The countrey is wonderfully ſtored with oile, wines, currans: of which laſt they made yearly 150000 *Zechines*, for their own coffers; and 48000 Dollars, which they pay for cuſtome to the ſigneurie of *Venice*. They were a very poore people when the *Engliſh* uſed to traffique there firſt, but now they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants firſt frequenting the countrey, they much marvelled to what end they bought ſo many *currans*, and demanded whether they uſed to dye cloathes, or fat hogges with them; for ſo they themſelves did: but now they have learned a more profitable uſe of them. Here are alſo very good ſalt-pits, freſh water plenty, but little or no wood, and leſſe Corn; their ground being husbanded, as the caſe ſtands with them, to their better advantage: but ſo that many times they are ready to ſtarve, if either the wind or the Sea prove croſſe unto them, and hinder them from fetching their proviſions both of fleſh and corn out of *Peloponneſus*. In which reſpect they are faine to hold fair Quarter with the *Turkes* conſidering how eaſie it is for him to diſtreſſe them for want of victuals. The Iſland is much troubled with *earthquakes*, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their houſes very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Prieſts are to ring the Bells, to ſtirre the people to prayers. They have a cuſtome here at weddings to invite many young men whom they call *Compeeres*; of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring. Which done it is accompted as deteſtable a ſinne as Inceſt, to accompany her in any carnall kinde; and therefore they chooſe ſuch to be their *Compeeres*, who have formerly been ſuſpected of too much familiarity with her.

The Iſland is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a ſpitefull and vindicative nature; not to be reconciled, if angred. It containeth in it 48 Townes and Villages, the chief whereof which paſſeth by the name of a city is called alſo *Zant*, ſtretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountaine, but in breadth not anſwerable: beautified with a faire and convenient *Haven* opening towards *Greece*, ſafe from the danger of Pirats, though not of windes, capable of great fleets of ſhipping both for bulk and number; and ſo frequented from all parts, that he who hath a minde to goe out of it, need not ſtay for a paſſage: yet notwithſtanding this great concourſe and reſort of ſtrangers, the Town is rather rich, then well built or beautifull: the ſtreets hereof uneven and rugged, and the buildings by reaſon of the often Earthquakes very low. On the Eaſt ſide of it, on a round ſteep Mountaine, ſtandeth a very ſtrong Caſtle, a little City of it ſelfe, well garriſoned, impregnably fortified, and of a very difficult entrance: which commandeth not the City and Harbour onely, but a great part of the Sea adjoining. Upon the wall thereof continually ſtands a watchman, to deſcrie what ſhipping is at hand, and hangeth out as many flags as he diſcovereth Veſſels. And over the doore of the Town-hall (the better to inſtruct the Magiſtrares in their publick dutie) it is ſaid theſe verſes are inſcribed.

Hic locus 1 odit, 2 amat, 3 punit, 4 conſervat, 5 honorat,
1 Nequitiam, 2 pacem, 3 crimina, 4 jura, 5 probos.

Thus *Engliſhed* by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*,

This place doth 1 hate, 2 love, 3 puniſh, 4 keep, 5 requite,
1 Voluptuous riot, 2 peace, 3 crimes, 4 Laws, 5 th' upright.

In matter of *Religion*, the people being generally *Greeks* both in birth and language, are for the moſt part of that Church alſo; but ſome adhere unto the *Latine*; each party having their own Biſhop: of which the *Greek* Biſhop hath his Cathedrall in the Church of S. *Nicolas* near unto the Haven (which it giveth name to) and therein a Monaſtery of *Caloires* or *Monkes* of *Baſil*; the *Latine* Biſhop hath his reſidence and Cathedrall within the Caſtle, and therein a *Convent* of *Franciſcans*. The *Jews* have in this Town their *Synagogue* alſo: but there are not many of them, if not lately increaſed. In *civill* matters they are ſubject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the *Providore*) having his reſidence in the Caſtle, aſſiſted by a Chancellour, and two Counſellours, (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The fortunes of this Iſland in former times, and by what means it fell to the *Venetians*, we ſhall ſhew anon.

The *ECHINADES* are certain little Iſlands, or rather great rocks, now called *Curzolari*, famous for no-

nothing but the great battell of *Lepanto* fought nigh them betwixt the *Venetians* and the *Turkes*: the *Turks* having in their Navy 207 ſayle of ſhips, the *Venetians* and their *confederates* but 145of all ſorts. But it pleaſed God to give the victory to the weakeſt: the iſſue of it being ſuch, that the *Turkes* loſt 29000 men, who were killed in the fight; 39000 more which were taken priſoners, 140 of their Gallies,400 peece of Ordinance, and 200 *Chriſtian* Captives which were then redeemed: the *Chriſtians* buying this great victory with the death of 7656 men or thereabouts: too great a price,could it have been purchaſed with a leſſe. A victory obtained not far from the point of *Actium*, wherein *Auguſtus* overcame the Navie of *Marcus Antonius*; and thereby got the Empire to himſelf alone, of which before he was but *Joint-tenant* with his Adverſary.So that this place ſeems to be marked out for a Stage of eminent actions; and that this later *Navall* fight was but the ſecond part of the firſt. *Cephalenia*

But to return unto theſe Iſlands,they ſtand juſt againſt the mouth of the River *Achelous*; of which thus the Poet,

Turbidus objectas Achelous *Echinadas exit*;

Fierce *Achelous* with the Sea is mixt
Where the *Echinades* (great rocks) are fixt.

Theſe Iſlands are in number five, faigned by the Poets to be ſo many *Naiades*, or Sea-Nymphes whom *Achelous* the River God upon ſome diſpleaſure *Metamorphoſed* into theſe Rocky Iſlands. But the truth is, that they were cauſed by the dirt and mud, which this River carried with it into the Sea, where at laſt it ſetled to firm ground. Of which himſelf ſaith thus in *Ovid*.

——————*Fluctus noſtriq; mariſq;*
Continuam deducit humum, pariterq; revellit,
In totidem, mediis (*quod cernis*) Echinadas, *undis.*

The fury of the Sea-waves, and mine own,
Continuall heaps of mud, and Earth drew down;
Which parted by the inter-running Seas,
Made, as thou ſeeſt, theſe five *Echinades.*

4 CEPHALENIA.

CEPHALENIA, the moſt populous Iſland of this Sea,is ſituated over againſt *Acarnania*,part of the Province of *Epirus*, having on the South-Eaſt *Zant*, on the North-weſt *Corcyra* or *Corfu*.In length containing 80 miles, 40 in breadth, the whole compaſſe being reckoned at 160. Once called *Tetrapolis* from the number of foure Cities in it: but three of them were decayed in the time of *Ptolemie*, who takes notice of no more then one,and that of the ſame name with the Iſland.Woody and mountainous in moſt places; but the mountaines intermixt with Valleys, and the Woods with champagne: plentifull in Wheat, Honey, Currans, *Manna*, Oyle, incomparable though not long-laſting *Muſcadels*; as alſo in Cheeſe, Wool, Turkies: and Powder for the dying of Scarlets. So deſtitute of water, as having no River and not many Fountaines, that when their Cattell would drink,they gape both morning and evening to receive the dew diſtilling inſenſibly from the clouds.

The people are for the moſt part *Greeks*,ſome few *Italians* naturalls of the Signeury of *Venice* being intermixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed at 6000 families; the number of the townes and villages to 200 or thereabouts. The principall whereof 1 *Cephalenia*, fortified with good workes, and a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2 *Argaſtolie*, an haven town, diſtant ſix miles from *Cephalon*; the Port thereof capable of a ſufficient Navie. 3 *Sydre*,another Port-town alſo, lying towards the South.

As for the fortunes of this Iſland, it was firſt called *Melena*; after *Teleboas*: and being known by that name, was made ſubject to *Thebes*, by the valour and good conduct of *Amphitryon*, the *Theban* Generall, by whom *Pterelas*, the King hereof, was ſlaine inbattell. During which warre, and the ſtay of *Amphitryo* in this Iſland it hapened that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by miſadventure killed his wife *Procris* with an Arrow, which he ſhot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own countrey, fled unto *Amphitryo* his old friend, then newly victorious over the *Teleboans*: who pitying his caſe, made him the Governour of this Iſland, (ſince from his name) called *Cephalenia*. Having continued for ſome time in the power of the *Thebans*, it paſſed together with *Zant*, and ſome other Iſlands into the hands of the *Macedonians*; from whom in the declining of their affairs,the *Acheans* got the Iſle of *Zant*, and the *Ætolians*, *Cephalenia*: But long they had not held them when the *Romans* began to look towards *Greece*, who under colour of ſetting the *Continent* at liberty, made themſelves maſters of both the *Iſlands*; that ſo they might at leiſure poſſeſſe the whole,as in fine they did. In the diviſion of the Empire they fell as parts of *Greece*, to the *Conſtantinopolitans*: and on the taking of that City by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, they fell with almoſt all the reſt of the Iſlands, to the State of *Venice*: the Governors whereof retaining *Corfu*, and ſome others of moſt importance in the hands of the *Signeury*, permitted theſe, (as many other of leſſe note) unto private Adventurers. At the concluſion of the peace betwixt *Mahomet* the *Great*, and the State of *Venice*, theſe two with *Neritos* or *Leniadia*, (ſpoken of in *Epirus*) were ſeiſed on by that Tyrant in deſpight

Corcyra. of that treaty or conclusion; as belonging unto private persons, not to the *Republick*: recovered afterwards by the *Venetians*, in the reign of *Bajazet* the second, in the name of the State, and as parts thereof still governed and defended by them.

6 CORCYRA.

CORCYRA (now *CORFV*) more antiently was called *Phæacia*; but took this later name from a Nymph so called, whom *Neptune* is reported to have here deflowred. Situate over against *Epirus*, from which 12 miles distant, stretched out from East to West in the form of a Bow, the length thereof being 54 miles, 24 the breadth; and so the biggest of these Seas. Commodiously seated for the trade and estate of *Venice*, as the Center of their Dominion, and command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous, and defective in water, much subject to be blasted with Southernly windes, and therefore they sow little corn, and plant lesse Fruites. The Northern parts levell and delightfull, adorned with whole Groves of Lemmons, Orenges, Figtrees, Olives, and Pomegranates; enriched with plenty of grain, aboundance of Wines, great store of Oile, and Olives, and most excellent Honey. Blest with a very temperate and healthfull Air, made Odoriferous by most pleasant and sweet-smelling fruites; which grow most plentifully in each part hereof. *Alcinous*, who so curteously entertained *Ulysses* after his ship-wrack, was once king of this Island: whose Gardens answerable to the naturall delights and sweetnesse of it, are so much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus.

Quid bifera Alcinoi *referam pomaria; vosq;*
Qui nunquam vacui prodistis in æthera, Rami?

Which may be *Englished* in these words,

Why should I name *Alcinous* fertile ground,
And trees which never without fruit are found?

Townes of most note and strength herein, 1 *Pagiopoli*, 2 *Castello S. Angelo*, of good esteem in respect of many others, but farre short of 3 *Corfu*, the chief and strongest of the Island, which the *Turks* have found by their frequent repulses to be impregnable. For it is situate at the foot of a Mountaine, on the top of which are built two inaccessible Fortresses as being strongly fenced with a naturall Rock. The one is called *The old Fortresse*, and the other, *The New*: justly esteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whose Trade and Power would soon decay, should these Forts be lost. For which cause the two Governours (for each Fort hath one) are sworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold intelligence with one another, by word or writing: lest by the treachery of the one, the other might be wrought also from his faith and duty. Neither is their command here for more then two yeares; their commission then terminating, and new successours being sent them. The town inhabited for the most part by *Grecians*, as is all the residue of the Island; beautified with one of the most commodious havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the residence of an *Archbishop*. A town of such a publick concernment, in regard of the strength and situation, that it is accompted of as the key of *Venice*, and one of the strongest Bulwarkes of *Christendome* against the encroachment of the *Turke*. The story of it since dismembred from the Eastern Empire, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, we have had before.

7 ITHACA.

ITHACA, now called *Val de Campare*, lieth on the North-east of *Cephalenia*, being in compasse 50 miles: most famous for the birth of *Ulysses*, the son of *Laertes*; of which thus the Poet,

Effugimus scopulos Ithacæ, *Laertia Regna.*
Et terram altricem sævi execramur Ulyssis.

From th' *Ithacan* Rocks, *Laertes* Realm we fled,
And curs'd the Land which dire *Ulysses* bred.

It was also called *Dulichium*, or else there was some other Island of that name, not farre from *Ithaca*, whereof *Ulysses* was also King; who is hence called *Dulichius Heros*, among the Poets: and in this Taunt of *Aiax* to him, *Dulichius vertex* signifieth the head of *Ulysses*.

Sed neq; Dulichius, *sub* Achillis *casside, vertex*
Pondera tanta feret;

Achilles helm's too great a weight I trow,
For weak *Ulysses* head to undergoe.

But

But as weak a man as Ajax thought him: he was the Maſter-wit of *Greece*, for the times he lived in, and one that did as good ſervice in the war of *Troy*, as the beſt ſword-man of them all. A warre to which he went ſomewhat unwillingly as fearing the ſad conſequences and events thereof: inſomuch that he faigned himſelf mad, ploughing the ſhore, and ſowing ſalt in ſtead of corn. But *Palamedes* to make triall whether this was reall, or but counterfeit only, caſt young *Telemachus* the ſon of *Ulyſſes* before the Plough: which he obſerving, either drove the Plough beſides him, or lifted it over him. Diſcovered by this means, and engaging with the reſt in the *Trojan* war, he found out the deſign of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it alſo; in the courſe whereof by his wit and courage, he did very good ſervice: aſſociated with *Diomedes* in the action againſt *Rhesus* King of *Thrace*; and with *Palamedes* in forraging the Countrie for proviſions. By his policie was the *Palladium* ſtollen out of *Troy*, and conſequently the Citie taken and deſtroyed; whoſe fate depended on the preſervation of that fatall Relick. After the ending of the war which held out ten years, he was with-held from *Ithaca* ten years longer by winds and tempeſts, and the diſpleaſure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*: in which he ſaved himſelf from the inchantments of the *Sirens*, the allurements of *Circe*, the crueltie of *Polyphemus*; and after many dangers came home in ſafety. A man of ſo compleat a vertue, that *Homer* maketh him the pattern of a temperate and prudent man, in the Books called *Odyſſes*, (by his name as the *Greeks* pronounce it) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect ſouldier.

The Countrie is generally very rockie, and barren, exceeding plentifull of *Goats*, but no *Hares* live in it: inhabited for the moſt part by Pirates and exiles, men baniſhed out of civill ſociety, and willingly acknowledging no Superior over them: but ſubject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*: which hitherto hath maintained theſe Iſlands againſt the *Turks*, though many times attempted by them in the moſt proſperous times of their arms and victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, with almoſt all the Iſlands of the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas (as being a people ſtrong in ſhipping, and ſo moſt able to preſerve a poſſeſſion of them:) ſome of the greateſt and moſt conſiderable either for their riches or the commodiouſneſſe of ſituation, were furniſhed with convenient garriſons in the name of the State. The reſt they did beſtow on the better ſort of the Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own coſts and charges; who accordingly poſſeſſed themſelvs of one, two, or more of them, as they were of abilitie to ſet out their Gallies for the keeping of them: the *Signeurie* having nevertheleſſe a care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals: whereby they did not only preſerve thoſe Seas from the *Genoa* Pirats, but for long time defended all their Iſlands alſo as well againſt the *Greeks*, as the *Turkiſh* Emperours. But all the Iſles of the *Ægean* being loſt to the *Turk*, except *Cythera*, and *Tenos* on the *European*, and *Carpathos*, or *Scarpanto* on the *Aſian* ſide: they have now only *Crete* with the Iſles adjoyning, and thoſe of the *Ionian* Sea, under their command; and theſe (but ſpecially the Iſle of *Crete*) endangered at the preſent by the *Turkiſh* Tyrant.

Thus having tooke a view of the ſeverall Provinces and Iſles which belong to *Greece*, according to the ancient and preſent ſtate of each particular: let us next take a view of the *Grecian* Emperours, who have had here their principall reſidence, and poſſeſſed the whole, though for a while their Empire was extended over all the Eaſt; as they here follow in this enſuing Catalogue of

The *Conſtantinopolitan Grecian*, or *Eaſtern* EMPEROURS.

A.Ch.		
331	1	*Conſtantine*, ſurnamed the *Great*, having reigned 21 years in *Rome*, tranſlated his Imperiall Seat to *Conſtantinople* which himſelf had founded.
341	2	*Conſtantius* the 3. ſon of *Conſtantine*, in the diviſion of the Empire, had for his partage *Thrace*, *Conſtantinople*, and all the Provinces of the Eaſt. After the death of his two brethren he remained ſole Emperour, but reſided for the moſt part in the Eaſt, a great Patron of the *Arians*, and as great a Perſecuter of the *Orthodox Chriſtians*.
366	3	*Julian*, ſurnamed the *Apoſtata*, ſon of *Conſtantius*, the brother of *Conſtantine* the *Great*; at firſt a Chriſtian, afterwards a profeſſed enemie of the Goſpel: fortunate in his wars againſt the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Tranſalpine* Nations, whileſt he was a Chriſtian: prodigiouſly ſlain in the *Perſian* war, when become a *Perſecuter*.
368	4	*Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, choſen by the armie, a religious Prince, made peace with the *Perſian*, and ſetled the affaires of the Chriſtian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of meane birth, but great abilities in war, was elected Emperour.
368	5	*Valens*, the brother of *Valentinian*, made partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Conſtantinople* and the Eaſt; *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome* and the Weſtern parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* faction, and the firſt who brought in the *Goths* on this ſide of the *Danow*, whom he placed in the deſert parts of *Thrace*, to the deſtruction of the Empire and himſelf to boot.
382	6	*Gratian*, the eldeſt ſon of *Valentinian*, ſucceeded his father in the Weſt, and his uncle *Valens* in the Eaſt; after whoſe death he left *Italie* and the Weſt to *Valentinian* his younger

younger brother. Distressed by the *Gothes*, he made *Theodosius* partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murdered by *Andragathius*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.

383 7 *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the 2. on the traitour *Eugenius*. He vanquished the *Goths*, utterly suppresst the *Pagan* superstitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* it self; and strengthened the Church of Christ with good Laws and Ordinances.

399 8 *Arcadius*, the eldest son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his father in the East, as his brother *Honorius* did in the West: the *Roman* Empire after this last division of it, being so distracted and torn in pieces, that it was never since united.

412 9 *Theodosius* II. son of *Arcadius*, made peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed against the *Hunnes* and *Persians*, his more dangerous Enemies, and caused the *Ephesine* Councell to be called against *Nestorius*.

454 10 *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and marryed with *Pulcheria* his Masters sister; he called the Councell of *Chalcedon* against *Dioscorus*.

461 11 *Leo* a *Thracian* born, elected by the joint consent of the *Senate* and *Souldiery*, sitting the Councell of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.

478 12 *Zeno*, the son-in-law and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodorick* and the *Goths* into *Italie* against *Odoacer*: A tyrant and a great drinker, in one of his drunken fits, buryed quick by his Empresse. In his time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by fire; in which perished amongst other things 120000 Volumes of good *Manuscripts*.

494 13 *Anastasius*, a mean Officer, of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empresse created Emperour; a great Patron of *Eutyches*; yet fortunate in his wars against the *Persians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Constantinople* besieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great distresse, if *Proclus*, a famous *Mathematician*, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.

521 14 *Justin* the son of a *Thracian* shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastasius*, a catholick Prince, and Patron of the *Orthodox* Clergy, whom he called from banishment.

528 15 *Justinian*, the sisters son of *Justinus*, with whom first consort in the Empire, recovered *Africk* from the *Vandals*, by *Belisarius*, and *Italie* from the *Goths* by *Narses*: and finally reduced the laws of *Rome* into form and method.

566 16 *Justin* II. nephew of *Justinian*, instituted the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*, and lost a great part of *Italie* to the *Lombards*. Unable of himselfe to oppose the *Persians*, he chose

577 17 *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders to be consort with him, who afterwards succeeded in the sole command.

584 18 *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his wars against the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*; by whom at his return marryed to *Constantine* his daughter, and declared his successour. Refusing to ransome some of his souldiers, taken prisoners by *Caganus* King of *Avares*, he lost the affections of his armie.

604 19 *Phocas*, a common souldier, in a military tumult chosen Emperour, murdered the Emperour *Mauritius*, with his wife and children; and made Pope *Boniface* supreme Bishop or *head of the Church*: slain in a popular tumult by the common people for his lusts and cruelties.

611 20 *Heraclius*, a noble man of *Constantinople*, chosen by the generall consent repaired the ruines of the Empire, vanquished the *Persians*, recovered *Hierusalem* out of their hands, and brought home the Crosse unto *Constantinople* in triumphant manner, whence the feast called *Exaltatio crucis*, *Septemb.* 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to disperse his dotages.

641 21 *Constans* or *Constantine* II. son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his wars against the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places; picking a quarrell with the *Romans* he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choicest Ornaments, which the *Goths* and other *barbarous* people had left: and ransacking the Isle of *Sicil*, was there slaine by the women.

670 22 *Constantinus* III. son of the former *Constantine*, from his long or early beard surnamed *Pogonatus*, repulsed the *Saracens* from *Constantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from passing over the *Danow*.

687 23 *Justinian* II. son of *Constantine* the 3. subdued *Mesapotamia*, *Armenia*, and some part of *Persia*; forcing the *Saracens* to sue for peace, and become his *tributaries*. Against whom *Leontius* on the one side, and *Abstmarus* on the other, severally taking arms were declared Emperors; *Justinian* taken by *Leontius*, hath his nose cut off, and his person committed to custodie: but making an escape, by means of *Trebellin* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperiall dignitie; and being too violent in the pursuit of his revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar by the command of

713 24 *Philip-*

713 24 *Philippicus Bardanes*, Admirall of his Navie, elected Emperour by the Souldiers, a great enemy of *Images*, which he cauſed to be caſt out of the Church: whereby incurring the diſpleaſure of

715 25 *Anaſtaſius* II. called alſo *Artemius*, his principall *Secretarie*, who thruſt himſelf into the Empire; forced to relinquiſh it by that armie which he had raiſed againſt the *Saracens*: in which tumult the Citie of *Conſtantinople* was ſacked and ſpoiled.

717 26 *Theodoſius* III. made Emperour in this tumult by the ſouldiers, hearing of the approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eaſtern Armies, reſigned the Empire, and took *Orders* to preſerve his life.

718 27 *Leo Iſauricus*, in whoſe time *Caliph Zulciman* beſieged *Conſtantinople* the ſpace of three years: and when by cold and famine 300000 of the *Saracens* were ſlain, they deſiſted. At this ſiege was that fire invented, which we for the violence of it, call *wild fire*; and the *Latines*, becauſe the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græcus ignis*: by which the *Saracens* ſhips were not a little moleſted. He was alſo a great Enemie to *images*, for which cauſe hated by the Pope and Clergie of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the nick-name of *Iconomachus*.

741 28 *Conſtantinus* IV. ſon of *Leo*, ſurnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized, he berayed the font; followed his fathers zeal in removing *images*, which created him much trouble, one *Artabardus* being choſe Emperour againſt him, but at laſt defeated.

777 29 *Leo* III. ſon of *Conſtantine Copronymus*, commonly called *Leo* the 4. (*Leontius* the uſurper (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one) an enemie of *Images*, and fortunate in his wars againſt the *Saracens*.

782 30 *Conſtantine* V. the ſon of *Leo* and *Irene*, firſt governed the Empire with his Mother; by whom at laſt ſupplanted, and deprived of ſight, he dyed of melancholy.

798 31 *Irene* wife of *Leo* the 3. firſt conſort with *Conſtantine* her ſon, and afterwards ſole Empereſſe of *Conſtantinople*: for her better ſupport in which eſtate ſhe ſided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the ſecond Councell of *Nice* for defence of *Images*. In her time *Charls*, ſurnamed the *Great*, was by the Pope and people of *Rome* created Emperour of the Weſt. For the Popes knowing their own greatneſſe to grow out of the ruines of the *temporall* power, committed the Empire of the Weſt unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperours became much weakened; and the *French* being the Popes creatures, were in tract of time brought to their devotion. In following times, when *Frederick Barbaroſſa* was by Pope *Alexander* the 3. pronounced non-Emperour; *Emanuel* of *Conſtantinople* ſued for a re union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this anſwer, *Non licere illi conjungere, quæ majores ejus de induſtria disjunxerunt*: Let no man preſume to joyn, what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put aſunder.

803 32 *Nicephorus* a *Patritian*, made Emperour by the ſouldiers, perſwaded that *Irene* had made choiſe of him to be her ſucceſſour, ſlaine in a pitcht field againſt the *Bulgarians*.

812 33 *Michael*, ſurnamed *Curopalates* from his office, (the Mayre of the *Palace* as it were) husband to *Procopia* the daughter of *Nicephorus*, aſſumed the Empire: which finding his own weakneſſe, he did ſoone relinquiſh, and betooke himſelfe unto a Monaſterie.

814 34 *Leo* V. ſurnamed *Armenius* from his Country, Generall of the horſe to *Michael*, demoliſhed the *images* which his predeceſſour had ſet up; ſlain in the Church during the time of divine ſervice.

821 35 *Michael* II. ſurnamed *Balbus*, having murdered *Leo*, aſſumed the Empire; unfortunate in his government, and dyed of madneſſe.

830 36 *Theophilus*, the ſon of *Michael Balbus*, an enemy of *images*, like his father, and as unfortunate as he; loſing many battels to the *Saracens*, at laſt dyed of melancholy.

842 37 *Michael* III. ſon of *Theophilus*, firſt with his mother *Theodora*, who took unto her ſelf the ſupreme command; and after of himſelf ſole Emperour; his mother being made a Nun.

866 38 *Baſilius*, ſurnamed *Macedo*, from the place of his birth, made conſort in the Empire by *Michael* the ſon of *Theophilus*, whom he baſely and treacherouſly murdered; killed caſually by a Stag.

886 39 *Leo* VI. for his learning ſurnamed *Philoſophus*, the ſon of *Baſilius*, a vigilant and provident Prince; moſt of his time, with variable ſucceſſe ſpent againſt the *Bulgarians*.

912 40 *Conſtantine* VI. commonly called the VII. ſon of *Leo Philoſophus*, firſt under his uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his mother, and after under *Romanus Lacopenus*, governed the Empire: by which laſt ſo miſerably depreſſed that he was fain to get his livelyhood by painting. But *Lacopenus* being depoſed and turned into a

Monaſterie

Monaſterie by his own ſons, *Conſtantine* at laſt obtained his rights, and reſtored learning unto *Greece*.

961 41 *Romanus*, the ſon of *Conſtantine*.

963 42 *Nicephorus*, ſurnamed *Phocas*, firſt Governour or Protectour to the young Emperour *Romanus*; after whoſe death created Emperour by the armie, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greateſt part of *Aſia minor* from the power of the *Saracens*; ſlaine in the night by *John Zimiſces*, his wife *Theophania* being privie to it.

971 43 *John Zimiſces*, Emperour in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better then he did obtain it; vanquiſhing the *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, and others of the *barbarous* Nations: and left it at his death to the ſons of *Romanus*.

977 44 *Baſilius* II. ſurnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperours had been before him, in regard that at their births they were wrapped in purple (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperiall colour: ſubdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.

1027 45 *Conſtantinus*, VII. or VIII. brother of *Baſilius*, and with him partner in the Empire; after whoſe death he governed three years by himſelf, but did nothing memorable.

1030 46 *Romanus* II. for his prodigalitie ſurnamed *Argyropolus*, husband of *Zoe* the daughter of *Conſtantine* the 8. drowned in a Bath by the treaſon of his wife and her Adulterer.

1035 47 *Michael* IV. ſurnamed *Paphlago* from his Country, firſt the Adulterer, and afterwards the husband of *Zoe*: but dyed very penitent.

1042 48 *Michael* V. ſurnamed *Calaphates*, a man of obſcure birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he depoſed from the Government, and turned into a Monaſterie. Out of which being again taken, in a popular tumult, ſhe put out the eyes of *Calaphates*, and being then 60 yeares of age, beſtowed both the Empire and her ſelfe upon

1043 49 *Conſtantine* IX. ſurnamed *Monomachus*, formerly husband to a Neece of *Romanus* the 2.

1055 50 *Theodora*, ſiſter unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Conſtantine*, managed for two years the affairs of the Empire with great contentment to all people. But grown in age ſurrendred it to

1057 51 *Michael* VI. ſurnamed *Stratioticus*, an old but militarie man, depoſed within the year by

1060 52 *Iſaacius*, of the noble familie of the *Comneni*; valiant, of great courage and diligent in his affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with conſent of the Senate and people, to

1063 53 *Conſtantine* X. ſurnamed *Ducas*, a great *Juſticier*, and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his ſubjects and contemned by his enemies.

1071 54 *Romanus* III. ſurnamed *Diogenes*, marryed *Eudoxia* the wife of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Took priſoner by the *Turks*, and ſent home again, he found a faction made againſt him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himſelf at his return depoſed, and ſo dyed in exile.

1075 55 *Michael* VII. the ſon of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, ſurnamed *Parapinacius*, by reaſon of the famine which in his time happened, made Emperour in the aforeſaid tumult. But being found unable for ſo great an honour (the *Turks* prevailing in all places) he was depoſed again and put into a Monaſterie.

1081 56 *Nicephorus* II. ſurnamed *Bolionates*, of the houſe of the *Phocas*, ſucceeded in the place of *Parapinace*, depoſed within 3 years by the *Comneni*.

1084 57 *Alexius Comnenus*, ſon of the Emperour *Iſaacius Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whoſe time the Weſtern Chriſtians with great forces prepared for the recovery of the *Holy Land*. Of whoſe purpoſes being very jealous he denyed them paſſage through his Countrie; in the end forced to finde them victuals and other neceſſaries.

1113 58 *Calo-Johannes*, the ſon of *Alexius*, had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, from whom he tooke *Laodicea* and ſome other places of importance. He alſo vanquiſhed the *Scythians* or *Tartars* paſſing over the *Iſter*, moſt of which he either ſlew in battell, or ſold as captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this ſide that River. He alſo conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, tranſporting many of them into *Bithynia*.

1142 59 *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger ſon of *Calo-Joannes*, an under-hand enemie to the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, and an open enemie to the *Turks*: by whom intrapped in the dangerous ſtraits of *Cilicia*, and his Armie miſerably cut off; he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.

1180 60 *Alexius* II. ſon of *Manuel*, depoſed and barbarouſly murdered by *Andronicus*, the *Couſin Grman* of his father, with his wife and mother.

1183 61 *Andro-*

1183 61 *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenum* in *Paphlagonia*, by reaſon of his dangerous and ambitious practiſes; after his death, pretending to reform the State came unto *Conſtantinople*: firſt made *Protector*, afterwards *conſort* in the Empire with young *Alexius*. Whom having barbarouſly ſlain, and got the Empire to himſelfe, he was not long after cruelly torne in pieces in a popular tumult.

1185 62 *Iſaacius Angelus*, a noble man of *Conſtantinople*, and of the ſame *Comnenian* race, deſigned to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular election proclaimed his ſucceſſour; depoſed by *Alexius* his own brother, and his eyes put out.

1195 63 *Alexius Angelus* deprived his brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64 *Alexius Angelus* II. ſon of *Iſaac Angelus*, who being unjuſtly thruſt out of his Empire by his uncle *Alexius*, had recourſe to *Philip* the Weſtern Emperour, whoſe daughter *Mary* he had marryed: who ſo prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. that the armie prepared for the *Holy Land*, was employed to reſtore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the Uſurper fled, *Alexius* the young Emperour is ſeated in his fathers throne, and not long after ſlain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* aſſault and win *Conſtantinople*, make themſelves Maſters of the Empire, and divide it amongſt them: alotting to the *Venetians* Candie, many good towns of *Peloponneſus*, and moſt of the Iſlands: to *Boniface* Marqueſſe of *Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Theſſalie*; to others of the *Adventurers* other liberall ſhares; and finally to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, the main body of the Empire with the title of Emperour.

EMPERORS of the *LATINES* in *CONSTANTINOPLE*.

1200 65 *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, firſt Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Conſtantinople*, taken in fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria* coming to aid the *Greeks*, and ſent priſoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.

1202 66 *Henry* the brother of *Baldwin*, repulſed the *Bulgarians*, out of *Greece*, and dyed a Conquerour.

1215 67 Peter Count of *Auxerre* in *France*, ſon in law of *Henry*, cunningly entrapped by *Theodorus Angelus* a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had beſieged in *Dyrrachium*. But of an Enemy being perſwaded to become his gheſt, was there murdered by him.

1220 68 *Robert* the ſon of Peter, having ſeen the miſerable uſage of his beautifull Empereſſe, whom a young *Burgundian* formerly contracted to her, had moſt deſpitefully mangled, cutting off both her noſe and ears; dyed of hearts grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whither his melancholy had carried him to conſult the *Pope* in his affairs.

1227 69 *Baldwin* II. ſon of *Robert* by a former wife, under the protection of *John de Brenne* the titularie King of *Hieruſalem*, ſucceeded in his fathers throne: which having held for the ſpace of 33 years; he was forced to leave it: the Citie of *Conſtantinople* being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to ſue in vain for ſuccours to the *French*, *Venetians*, and other Princes of the *Weſt*.

The EMPIRE *reſtored unto the GREEKS.*

1260 70 *Michael* VIII. ſurnamed *Palæologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperours, Emperour of the *Greeks* in the Citie of *Nice*, moſt fortunately recovered *Conſtantinople*; the town being taken by a partie of 50 men ſecretly put into it by ſome Country labourers under the ruines of a mine. Preſent in perſon at the Councell of *Lyons*, at the perſwaſion of the Pope, he admitted the *Latine Ceremonies* into the Churches of *Greece*; for which greatly hated by his ſubjects, and denyed the honour of Chriſtian buriall.

1283 71 *Andronicus* II. vexed with unnaturall wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled againſt him.

1328 72 *Andronicus* III. firſt partner with his grandfather, afterwards ſole Emperour.

1341 73 *John Palæologus*, ſon of *Andronicus* the 3. in whoſe minoritie *Contacuzenus* his Protectour uſurped the Empire, and held it ſometimes from him, and ſometimes with him, till the year 1357. and then retired unto a Monaſterie: leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whoſe reign the *Turks* firſt planted themſelves in *Europe*.

1384 74 *Andronicus* IV. the ſon of *Johannes Palæologus*.

1387 75 *Emanuel Palæologus*, the ſon of the ſaid *John*, and brother of *Andronicus* the 4. in whoſe time *Bajazet* the ſixt King of the *Turks* did beſiege *Conſtantinople*; but found ſuch notable reſiſtance that he could not force it.

1417 76 *John*

1417 76 *John* II. ſon of *Andronicus* the 4.
1420 77 *John* III. ſon of *Emanuel Palæologus*, in perſon at the Councell of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches; in hope thereby to get ſome aid from the Weſtern *Chriſtians*: but it would not be.
1444 78 *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, the brother of *John* the 3. In whoſe time the famous Citie of *Conſtantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great, 1452. the miſerable Emperour, who had in vain gone from door to door to beg or borrow money to pay his ſouldiers, (which the *Turks* found in great abundance when they took the Citie) being lamentably trod to death in the throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may obſerve ſome fatal contrarieties in one and the ſame name: as firſt, that *Philip* the father of *Alexander* laid the firſt foundation of the *Macedonian* Monarchie: and *Philip* the father of *Perſeus* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the firſt, and *Baldwin* the laſt Emperour of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople*. Thirdly, that this town was built by a *Conſtantine*, the ſon of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch: and was loſt by a *Conſtantine* the ſon of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch alſo. And fourthly, the *Turks* have a Prophecie, that as it was won by a *Mahomet*, ſo it ſhall be loſt by a *Mahomet*. So *Auguſtus* was the firſt eſtabliſhed Emperour of *Rome*, and *Auguſtulus* the laſt: *Darius* the ſon of *Hyſtaſpes*, the reſtorer; and *Darius* the ſon of *Arſamis* the overthrower of the *Perſian* Monarchie. A like note I ſhall anon tell you of *Hieruſalem*. In the mean time I will preſent you with a fatall obſervation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus verſed in *Albions England*.

Not ſuperſtitiouſly I ſpeak, but *H* this letter ſtill,
Hath been obſerved ominous to *Englands* good or ill.
Firſt *Hercules*, *Heſione*, and *Helen* were the cauſe
Of war to *Troy*; *Æneas* ſeed becoming ſo outlawes.
Humbor the *Hunn* with forein arms did firſt the *Brutes* invade,
Helen to *Romes* imperiall Throne, the *Britiſh* Crown conveyd.
Hengiſt and *Horſus*, firſt did plant the *Saxons* in this Iſle:
Hungar and *Hubba* firſt brought *Danes*, that ſwayed here long while.
At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Hardie-Cnute*, the *Dane*:
Henries the firſt and ſecond did reſtore the *Engliſh* raign.
Fourth *Henry* firſt for *Lancaſter* did *Englands* Crown obtain.
Seventh *Henry*, jarring *Lancaſter* and *Yorke*, unites in peace:
Henry the eight did happily *Romes* irreligion ceaſe.

A ſtrange and ominous letter; every mutation in our State being as it were uſhered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire ſince the diviſion of it into the Eaſt and Weſt, I could never yet learn. That they were exceeding great, may appear by three circumſtances, 1 *Zonaras* reporteth that the Emperour *Baſilius* had in his treaſury 200000 talents of gold, beſides infinite heaps of ſilver and other moneys. 2 *Lipſius* relateth, how *Benjamin* a *Jew* in his diſcourſe of *Europe*, ſaith, that the cuſtome due to the Emperours, out of the victuals and merchandize ſold at *Conſtantinople* only did amount to 20000 crowns daily. 3 We find, that at the ſack of *Conſtantinople*, there was found an invaluable maſſe of gold, ſilver, plate, and jewels, beſides that which was hid in the earth. For ſo the covetous Citizens choſe rather to employ their wealth, then afford any part of it to the Emperour: who with tears in his eyes, went from door to door to beg and borrow mony, wherewith he might wage more ſouldiers for the defence of the town.

The arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a croſſe *Sol* between four *Greek* Betz's of the ſecond: the four Beta's ſignifying, (as *Bodin* ſaith) Βασιλεὺς, Βασιλεῶν, Βασιλεύων, Βασιλεῦσι.

It may perchance be expected that we ſhould here make an additionall Catalogue of thoſe *Turkiſh* Emperours, who have reigned in *Conſtantinople*, ſince the taking of it: and being they are poſſeſſed of *Greece* and do now inhabit it, that we ſhould here alſo ſpeak of the *Turks* themſelves, their cuſtoms, forces, policies, originall, and proceedings. But the diſcourſe of thoſe things we intend to reſerve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Aſia*, from whence they made their firſt inundation into *Perſia*, and afterwards into other parts of the world now ſubject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their name. And though the *Peninſula* called anciently *Taurica Cherſoneſus* (now part of *Tartaria Procopenſis*) be within the bounds of *Europe* alſo: yet we will deferre the deſcription and ſtory of it, till we come to the affairs of the *Tartars*: and will here conclude our diſcourſe of *Europe*, and prepare for *Aſia*.

And ſo much for *GREECE*, the laſt of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.

A TABLE OF THE LONGITUDE and LATITUDE OF THE CHIEF TOWNS and CITIES Mentioned in this BOOK.

A

	Long.	Lat.
Amſterdam	27.39	52.40
Antwerp	24.30	51.48
Athens	46.10	40
Ausburg	32.30	48.20
Aulona	51.20	41.30
Arras	24.	51
Anſlo	36.30	59.20

B

Amberg	39.15	50.10
Belgrade	45	47.40
Bergen	34.16	61.25
Bern	29.45	46.25
Brandenburg	35.30	52.36
Breme	30.20	53.23
Bruges	24.36	51.30
Brunſwick	32.40	52.30
Bruſſels	26.42	51.24
Buda	42	47.20
Boden	52.30	45.30
Bornholm	40.50	55.30

C

Cleve	29.35	51.58
Conſtantinople	56	43.5
Confluentz	27.30	50.30
Conſtance	28.30	47.30
Copenhagen	34.50	56
Corinth	54.20	39
Colen	27.40	51
Cracow	42.40	50.12
Cephalone	52	38.30
Caſan	96.10	35.10
Corfu	42	39.30

D

Dantzick	45	54.50
Darſaw	63	48.40
Deventer	33.25	51.50

Dort

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude.

	Long.	Lat.
Dort	26	52
Doway	25	51
Dresden	36	51.3

E

Emden	28.26	53 34
Erford	34.30	51.10
Elsenore	36.30	57

F

Flensberg	36.40	55
Franeker	27	54
Frankford ad Moen	30	50.30
Frankford ad Oderam	24	52.30
Friburg	20	48.1

G

Glogaw	43.50	51.25
Gran	42.30	48
Gratz	34	48
Grodesk	56.30	51.30
Gaunt	30.20	50.40
Cuesna	42	52.40
Groyningen	32.10	53

H

Aderstevc	35.5	60.50
Hallar	3	67.14
Halberstat	32.40	52.10
Heidelberg	28	49.35
Hamburg	30	54.30

I

Ene	34	52
Ingolstad	32.10	48.40
Inspruch	32.50	44.55
Juliers	27.30	52

L

Arissa	70	33
Leige	22	50.50
Leopolis	52.50	49
Lipsich	30.30	51.20
Lubeck	31.20	54.48
Lucern	29.53	46.42
Lunemburg	32.18	53.27
Luden	26	53
Luxenburg	28	50

M

Magdeburg	37.50	52.18
Marpurg	30.10	51
Mentz	27.30	50.30
Metz	27.40	49.9
Madleburg	25	52
Minden	31.30	52.58
Munchen	32.50	48
Munster	29.10	52
Montz	26	51
Mosco	70.30	55.40
Melvin	48	54.50

N

Nancie	28.45	49.20
Norlingen	33	49
Nurenberg	31.30	49.30
Nimmegen	28	52
Novogrod Magn.	62.50	60.30
Novogrod Infer.	80	55.20
Nicopolis	56.30	40
Negropont	56.10	41
S. Nicolas	69	64

Olmuntz

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude.

O

	Long.	Lat.
Olmuntz	41	40.30
Osnabrug	29.36	52.29
Oiant	43.30	57

P

	Long.	Lat.
Pragne	39.15	50.10
Preslaw	46	51.10
Pasnaw	42	52.48
Presburg	40	48.26
Plescow	59 10	59
Pechora	66.50	67
Pernow	53 30	58.40
Plotzcow	57.30	57.40

R

	Long.	Lat.
Rab	40.35	48.50
Ragusi	44.40	42.30
Regensberg	32.15	48.59
Rostoch	34.18	54.20
Rustow	72.50	57
Rugen	40.20	55.10
Riga	53.30	58
Regiment	49.10	55.30

S

	Long.	Lat.
Saltsburg	35.40	47.40
Schalholt	3. 14	65.42
Schleistat	28.6	48.22
Slesvick	31.20	55.15
Spires	27.40	49.20
Stetin	37.40	54
Stockholm	42	60.15
Sibiore	99.20	59.30
Slowada	86.30	58.50
Strasburg	27.50	48.44
Stagira	55.30	43.30

T

	Long.	Lat.
Thessalonica	53.40	44.20
Triers	26	49.30
Trent	33.40	45.20
Tubing	30.30	48.40
Twer	68.10	57.10

U

	Long.	Lat.
Valenciennes	26.29	50.10
Ulme	32.30	48.20
Vienna	37.45	48.20
Vilna	54.30	55
Upsal	40.30	60.52
Vsting	79.30	61.30
Vtrecht	27.33	52.10
Vicegrod	61.30	51.30
Vesalia	31.30	51.30

W

	Long.	Lat.
Wiburg	55.58	63.6
Witteberg	35.10	50.55
Wismar	33.30	54.14
Wologda	74 30	60.
Wormes	28	49.45
Woortzburg	30.10	49.57
Wardhuys	50.30	70.30

Z

	Long.	Lat.
Zara	46.25	45.40
Zemla Nova	83.30	74

The End of the second Book.

The Emendation of the chief *Errata* in this ſecond Book.

FOl. 9.*l.*14 for *Bern* r. *Pern*, 12. 55. for *Porter* r. *Prior*, 21. 64. for 142 r. 1421, *fol.*22.7. for *Overwater* r. *Oudewater*, ib. 28. for *Alemar* r. *Alkmar*, 24.44.for *Soferes*, r. *Bofereres*, 33.35. for *S. Luys* r. *Sluys*, 45.62. for *battels* r. *broils*, 56.8. for *Halto* r. *Hatto*, 42.37.for *Cretius* r. *Cetius*, 61.3. for *Gebwiſer* r. *Gebwiler*, ib. 17. for *Malz-munſter* r. *Maſz-Munſter*, 75 30. for *Tega* r. *Teya*, 76.17. for *Richard the* 3. r. *Richard the* 1. 78.22.for *Oſtaar* r. *Ottacar*, 79.34. for *holy* r. *whole*, 80.7. for *have* r. *being*, 83.31. for *Provinces* r. *Princes*, 93.15. for *Antonius* r. *Antoninus*, 98.34. for *ſtreet* r. *ſtrait*, 101.59. for *Woods* r. *Woad*, 107.14. for *Perſia* r. *Tartarie*, ib.16. for *Paſacaſons* r. *Sacaſons*, ib. 35. for *regent* r. *preſent*, 117.5. for *in time* r. *infinite*, 124.12. r. *alſo added*, 137.7,8.d. *Knight of the Garter*, 152.3.for *pleaſure* r. *diſpleaſure*, 157.40 for *ſon* r. *ſucceſſour*, 154.15. for 1600 r. 600. 161. 53.for *weak* r. *weaker*, 172.6. for *from* r. *five* 178.24. for *only and* r. *and only*, 179.62. for 100000 r. 10000, 180. 39. for *all the time* r. *till the time*, ib. 44. for *all* r. *at*, 183. 59. for *ulns* r. *vines*, 187.66. for *Hungari* r. *Hunugari*, 186.56. for 200 r. 206, 192. 11.d. *which* ib.17. d. *whole*, 193.52. for *Eaſt parts with*, r. *Eaſt parts of*, ib.56.for *are in it*, r. *in it, are*, 201. 16. for *ſubdued*, r. *ſubducted*, 206. 12. for *The other work*, *The other was the work*, ib.20.d. *up*, 210.412. for *Perſian* r. *Aſian*, 214.7. for *Scominus* r. *Scombrus*, 217.6. for *Cynus* r. *Cyrus*, 221.11. for *Conro* r. *Coron*, 222. 3. for *of which* r. *which of*, 224.29. for *mutually* r. *finally*, 225.65. for *this being* r. *that being*, 228.29. for *Macedon* r. *Modone*, 235. 54. for *Attica* r. *Achaia*, 237.57. for *into* r. *up in*.

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The Third Book

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE and HISTORIE

OF THE

LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL THE PRINCIPALL
Kingdomes, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

JUSTIN. HIST. L. 1.

Imperium Asyrii *qui postea* Syri *dicti sunt, annos* MCCC *tenuerunt. Imperium ab* Asyriis *ad* Medes Arbaces *transfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.

Omnes quæ usquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quæretur; & vario exitii genere tollentur.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Seile*, 1652.

Asia

of the

Christian Church

containing the

Epic Iliad Book

ASIÆ

Descriptio Nova

Impensis

HENRICI SEILE

Johañ Goddard sculp.

1652.

EURO

PÆ

SIA

TA

RUSSI

SAMO

IEDA

BAIDA

PARS

EUROPÆ

NA

TO

LIA

MEDITERRANEI PARS

MARIS

AFRICÆ

PARS

MARE RVBRVM

ARABIA DESERTA

ARABIA FELIX

AYAMAN olim

PERSIA

FARSIA

Mare de Sala

Vel Bachu seu

Chualeskomore

Kalki Tartari

Ieselbas

MARI ARABICUM

INDICUM

OCEANUS

ORIEN

T

Ilhas do Majarenhas

Os tres Irmaõs

Ilhas das Cabras

Ilhas do Almirante

Ide Natal

Ide Diego Roiz

Maldiva

Canal de Ganfar

Canal de Candu

Ide Cabolin

Ide Ceilã

Zanzibar

Pemba

Melinde

Mombaza

Magadoxo

Zocotora

Cide Guardafuy

Mazuam

Suaquem

Loquetta

Dofala

Cansila

Dangala

Barbanda

Zeila

Ide Natal

Ide Ceilã

TARTARICUM

OCEANUS OCCIDENTALIS

CHINENSIS

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM

Mongul

Tartar

Chianca

Tinduc

Cambalu

Quinsay

Xiamen

Xanton

Quincheu

Quicheu

Quanceu

Sichio

Sichin

Iuno

Luicheu

Pechio

Sachiuno

Ochio

Nanquin

Sancam

Suchuan

Liampo

Chilan

Lequeo grande

Lequeo pequeno

Lequeo menor

I. Formosa

Das Reys Magos

I. de Fogo

Sando

Bungal

Tuyuma

Aquata

Nasima

Cisma

Ferro

Ilhas dos Hermosos

Ilhas de Sirta

Malabre

Duas Colunas

Tauxuma Insule

S. Clara

Sacuma

I. dos Mangues

I. dos Arrecifes

I. de S. Lourenço

I. de S. Helena

I. dos Pinheiros

I. de Dio

I. de Goes

Ilhas

I. de Nassou

Bara de Nizamb.

I. dos Cocos

Ilhas de Salomão

Pulo Cambir

Pulo Aube

Pulo Condor

Pulo Timoa

Pulo Pisang

Pulo Cecir

Pulo Taya

Pulo Lingin

Pulo Timaon

Pulo Aor

Pulo Tioman

Pulo Pinang

Pulo Capas

Pulo Sambilangan

Pulo Lima

Pulo Sapata

Pulo Varela

Pulo Cambelan

Pulo Bras

Pulo Panjang

Pulo Sumatra

Pulo Batu

Pulo Nias

Pulo Babi

Pulo Mancabo

Pulo Lucipara

Pulo Macaon

Pulo Cambing

Pulo Bintang

Pulo Sambu

Pulo Sambilan

Pulo Sambilangan

Pulo Timaon

Pulo Aor

Pulo Tioman

Pulo Pinang

Pulo Capas

Pulo Sambilangan

Pulo Lima

Pulo Sapata

Pulo Varela

Pulo Cambelan

Pulo Bras

Pulo Panjang

Pulo Sumatra

Pulo Batu

Pulo Nias

Pulo Babi

Pulo Mancabo

Pulo Lucipara

Pulo Macaon

Pulo Cambing

Pulo Bintang

Pulo Sambu

Pulo Sambilan

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The Third Book

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE and HISTORIE

of the Leſſer and Greater

ASIA,

And all the principall Kingdomes, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

OF ASIA.

ASIA is bounded on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean*, and *Ægean* Seas, the *Helleſpont*, *Propontis*, *Thracian Boſphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea; the *Palus Maotis*, the Rivers *Tanais*, and *Duina*; a line being drown from the firſt of the two ſaid Rivers unto the other; by all which parted from *Europe*. On the North it hath the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the Eaſt the Streits of *Anian* (if ſuch there be) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare Del Zur*, by which ſeparated from *America*: on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathian*, waſhing the ſhores of *Anatolia*; and the main Southern Ocean, paſſing along the *Indian*, *Perſian*, and *Arabian* coaſts: and finally, on the South-weſt the *Red Sea* or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africk*. Environed on all ſides with the Sea, or ſome Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Iſthmus* in the South-weſt, which joynes it to *Africk*; and the ſpace of ground (whatſoever it be) betwixt *Duina*, and *Tanais*, on the North-weſt, which unites it to *Europe*.

It took this name, as ſome will have it, from *Aſia*, the daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*, the wife of *Japetus* & (by him) mother to *Prometheus*: as others ſay from *Aſius* the ſon of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Conntrey firſt, afterwards all *Anatolia* or *Aſia Minor*, and finally, the whole Continent had the name of *Aſia*. Others again (but more improbably) derive the name from *Aſius* the Philoſopher, who gave the *Palladium* unto the *Troians*; in memory whereof that Countrey firſt, and after the whole Continent did receive this name. But theſe *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great affection to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* language) will have it called ſo from *Aſi*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying *Medium*, or the middle: becauſe *Anatolia* or the *Leſſer Aſia*, which gives name (as he conceiveth) to the *Greater* alſo, lieth in the middle, as it were betwixt ſome parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And ſo farre the Conjecture doth find countenance from ſome antient writers; that *Aſia* is ſaid by *Plinie* to be *inter Africam & Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *Medium noſtris aquoribus excipi*, to be embraced in the *middle* of two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus* and the *Mediterranean*) and finally, by *Euſtathius* (conceive them all of *Anatolia* or the *Leſſer Aſia*) μέσην ἀμφοῖν ἔχειν διάθεσιν, to have a *middle* ſituation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what name, and on what grounds ſoever it be called by the *Greeks* and *Latines*; it is otherwiſe, and with better reaſon called in holy Scriptures by the name of *Semia*; as being that portion of the world, wherein the whole poſterity of *Sem* had their ſeates

and dwellings: if the observation of *Maginus* be of any weight.

It is situate East and West from the 52. to the 169 degree of *Longitude*: and North and South from the 82 degree of *Latitude* to the very *Æquator*; some onely of the Islands lying on the South of that Circle: so that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts is but twelve houres onely; but in the most Northern parts hereof for almost four whole moneths together no night at all. And for a measurement by miles, it stretches in length 5200. and in bredth 4560. miles.

This Countrey hath heretofore been had in especiall honour, 1. For the Creation of man, who had his first making in this part of the world 2. Because in this part of it stood the garden of *Eden*, which he had for the first place of his habitation. 3. Because here flourished the four first great Monarchies of the *Assyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes* and *Persians*. 4. Because it was the Scene of almost all the memorable actions which are recorded by the pen-men of the holy Scriptures. 5. Because that here our Saviour CHRIST was born, here wrought he most divine miracles, and here accomplished the great work of our Redemption. 6. And finally because from hence all Nations of the World had their first beginning, on the dispersion which was made by the sonnes of *Noah*, after their vain attempt at *Babel*.

The chief Mountains of this great Continent, not limited within the bounds of any one Province (for of those we are to speak in their severall places) are 1. Mount *Taurus*, which having its beginning in *Lycia*, a Province of *Anatolia*, passeth directly East-wards to the *Indian* Ocean: and reckoning in its severall windings, & turnings with its spurs and branches every way, is said to be 6250. miles long, and 357 m. broad. This Mountain, or rather Ridge of hils, divideth the *Greater Asia* (as the *Æquator* doth the World into North and South: memorable for three difficult passages from the one to the other, the first out of the rest of *Anatolia* into *Ciliciæ*, called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*; the second out of *Scythia* or *Tartarie*, into *Turcomania*, called *Caucasiæ Portæ*; and the third out of *Scythia* into *Persia*, called *Portæ Caspiæ*. Of which and of the whole course of this Mountain, more at large hereafter. 2. *Imaus*, which beginning neere the shores of the Northern Ocean runneth directly towards the South; dividing the *Greater Asia* (as the *Meridian* doth the World) into East and West, and crossing Mount *Taurus* in right Angles, in or about the *Longitude* of 140. This on the North of *Taurus* hath no other name among the *Latines*, then *Imaus* onely: and by that name divideth *Scythia* into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*: but by the *Tartars* is called *Altay*, by some writers *Belgion*. And on the South-side of that Mountain is known in *Ptolomy* by the name of *Bittigo*, extending from Mount *Caucasus*, or some other Branch of the *Taurus* to the Cape of *Comari* in the Southern Ocean: supposed by some to be Mount *Sephar* mentioned, *Gen.* 10. *v.* 30. of which we shall say more also when we come into *India*.

The estate of *Christianity* in this vast Continent is in ill condition, discountenanced and oppressed, though not quite extinguished. For all the great Princes and Commanders of it being either *Mahometans* or *Pagans*; the most that can be hoped for of the Christian Faith, is a *toleration* or connivence: and that not found but with an intermixture of such afflictions as commonly attend discountenanced and disgraced *Religions*. Yet is not *Christianity* so over-powered either by *Mahometanisme* or *Paganisme*, but that in *Asia* the *Lesser*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and *Armenia*, a great part of the inhabitants do retain the *Gospel*, under their severall *Patriachs* and *Metropolitans*: differing in some few points from one another; but in many from the Church of *Rome*, with which they hold neither correspondency nor *Communion*. Nor want there many *Christian* Churches in the Empire of *Persia*, nor in those of *Tartarie* and the *Indies*, antiently planted in those Countreys; besides the late increase thereof in the *Eastern Islands*, by the diligent preaching of the *Jesuites* and some late *Factories* there setled by the *English* and *Hollanders*: of all which I shall write in place convenient.

In reference to the *Roman* Empire, whose Dominion did not often extend beyound the River *Euphrates*, this Continent conteined onely three *Dioceses* or *Juridicall Circuits*; that is to say, the *Diocese* of *Pontus*, *Asia* properly so called, and the *Orientall*: which with the *Dioceses* of *Thrace* and *Egypt*, were under the command of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; the greatest Officer of power and jurisdiction, next to the Emporours themselves in the *Roman* Monarchie. And these three *Dioceses* conteined in them to the number of thirty seven Provinces, *viz.* the Provinces of *Bithynia*, 2. *Helenopontus*. 3. *Pontus Polemoniacus*. 4. *Galatia Prima*. 5. *Galatia Salutaris*. 6. *Honorius*. 7. *Paphlagonia*. 8. *Cappadocia prima*. 9. *Cappadocia secunda*. 10. *Armenia prima*, and 11. *Armenia secunda*, conteined in the *Diocese* of *Pontus*, and governed by the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant thereof: II. the Provinces of *Pamphylia*. 2. *Lycia*. 3. *Caria*. 4. *Pisidia*. 5. *Lycaonia*. 6. *Lydia*. 7. *Phrygia Pacatiana*. 8. *Phrygia Salutaris*. 9. *Asia* specially so called. 10. *Hellespont*, and 11. the *Isles* of *Anatolia*, making up the *Diocese* of *Asia*: whereof the three last were governed by a peculiar Officer called the *Proconsul* of *Asia*, the others by the ordinary Lieutenant or *Vicarius*. III. The Provinces of *Isauria*. 2. *Cilicia prima*. 3. *Cilicia secunda*. 4. *Cyprus*. 5. *Phœnices*. 6. *Phœnices Libani*. 7. *Syria*. 8. *Syria Salutaris*. 9. *Palestina prima*. 10. *Palestina secunda*. 11. *Palestina Salutaris*. 12. *Euphratensis*. 13. *Osroene*. 14. *Mesopotamia*, and 15. *Arabia*, constituting the *Diocese* of the *Orient*, under the *Comes Orientis*. The rest of *Asia* subject unto the *Parthian* or *Persian* Kings, besides those of *India* (and of many Regions and Countreys not then discovered) was never conquered by the *Romans*, and therefore not within the compasse of this distribution.

At this time *Asia* stands divided amongst nine great Monarchs, that is to say, the *Turke* commanding all those parts and Provinces which antiently belonged to the *Roman* Empire: 2. The *Persian*, ruling in all the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, possessed by the *Persian* Kings in the time of *Alexander* the *great*, or the *Arsacidæ* or *Parthians* in the times of the *Romans*. 3. The *Great Cham* of *Tartarie*, commanding over all the North parts of *Asia*, antiently known by the name of *Scythia*: 4. The King of *China* governing in that large and populous Countrey. 5. The King of *Barma*, whose dominion comprehends all or the greatest

part

part of *India* beyond the River of *Ganges*; and the *Great Mogor*, whole Empire is extended over all *India* on this ſide of that River. And ſome there be who in the deſcriptions of this great Continent follow this diviſion. But for our parts for the better underſtanding of the *Greek* and the *Roman* ſtories and the eſtate of the *Aſſyrian*, *Babylonian* and *Perſian* Monarchies, to which the holy Scriptures do ſo much relate: we ſhall conſider it as divided into the Regions of 1. *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*. 2. *Cyprus*. 3. *Syria*. 4. *Paleſtine*. 5. *Arabia*. 6. *Chaldea*. 7. *Aſſyria*. 8. *Meſopotamia*. 9. *Turcomania*. 10. *Media*. 11. *Perſia*. 12. *Tartaria*. 13. *China*. 14. *India*, and 15. the *Oriental Iſlands*.

ANATOLIA or ASIA MINOR.

ANATOLIA or ASIA MINOR, is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from the greater *Aſia* on the Weſt with the *Thracian Boſphorus*, *Propontis*, *Helleſpont*, and the *Ægean Sea*, by which parted from *Europe*: on the North with *Pontus Euxinus*, called alſo the *Black Sea*, and *Mare Maggiore*, and on the South by the *Rhodian*, *Lydian*, and *Pamphylian* Seas, ſeveral parts of the *Mediterranean*. So that this it is a demi-Iſland or *Peninſula*, environed on all ſides with waters, excepting a ſmall *Iſthmus* or neck of land extending from the head of *Euphrates* to the *Euxine* Sea, by which joined to the reſt of *Aſia*.

It was antiently called *Aſia Minor*, to difference it from the reſidue of this great *Continent*; afterwards *Anatolia*, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀνατολῆς, from the more Eaſtward ſituation of it in reſpect of *Greece*; and now *Natolia* by the *Turks*, with little deviation from the former name. But here it is to be obſerved, that as this *Leſſer Aſia* was a part of the greater, and the *Dioceſe* of *Aſia* a part of *Aſia* the *Leſſe*: ſo was *Aſia* properly & ſpecially ſo called, but a part only of the *Aſian Dioceſe*; the *Lydian Aſia* a part of *Aſia* properly ſo called, and the *Proconſular Aſia* but a part of that. The limits of *Aſia* the *Leſſe* and the ſeveral Provinces conteined in the *Aſian Dioceſe*, have bin ſhewn already. And as for that part hereof which had the name of *Aſia* properly and eſpecially ſo called, it contained only the two *Phrygia's* both the *Myſia's*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*: which falling unto the *Romans* by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Attalus* the laſt King of *Pergamus*; were by them made into one Province, and called *Aſia*, after the name of the whole *Continent*, this being as it were the *earneſt-penny*, to make ſure the reſt. So witneſſeth *Strabo*, where he ſaith, Ῥωμαῖοι ἐπαρχίαν ἀπέδειξαν τριῶν Ἀσίαν πεσσαγορίσαντες ὁμώνυμον τῇ ἠπείρῳ, *Lib.* 13. And for the *Lydian Aſia*, that contained onely ſo much of the *Roman* or *proper Aſia*, as antiently did belong to *Lydia*, that is to ſay, *Lydia* it ſelf, together with *Æolis* and *Ionia*, and ſome parts of the *Greater Myſia* adjoining to it. Which as it had originally the name of *Aſia*, from *Aſia* a chief City of it neer the foot of mount *Tmolus*, which both *Suidas* and the *Great Etymologiſt* have taken notice of; before that name became to be communicated to the Greater *Continent*: ſo it reteined that name to it ſelfe in ſeveral, diſtinct both from the *Greater* and the *Leſſer Aſia*, as alſo from the *Aſia propria* of *Ptolomie*, and others of the antient writers. And of this *Aſia* only is it, which the Scriptures ſpeake; both in the Book of the *Acts*, and the *Revelation*: the ſeven Churches mentioned in the one being found in this *Lydian Aſia*; and the paſſages in the other concerning *Aſia*, not to be underſtood of any but of this alone. For whereas it is ſaid *Acts* XVI. That when they had gone throughout *Phrygia* and the Region of *Galatia*, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghoſt to preach the Word in *Aſia*, after they were come to *Myſia* they aſſayed to go into *Bithynia*, and came down to *Troas*: moſt clear it is, that neither *Galatia* nor *Bithynia* though Regions of the *Leſſer Aſia*, nor *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, or *Troas*, all Regions of the *Proper Aſia*, were any part of that *Aſia* which the Scripture ſpeaks of. So alſo where it is affirmed that upon St. *Pauls* preaching and diſputing for two years in *Epheſus*, all *they which dwelt in* Aſia *heard the word of the Lord*: *Acts* XIX. V. 10. It is not to be meant of any but the *Lydian Aſia*, whereof *Epheſus* at that time was the principal City. So alſo *Acts* XIX. V. 22. 26. 31. and chapter XX. V. 18. Finally for the *Proconſular Aſia*, which together with *Helleſpont* and the *Iſles*, made up a Government apart, exempt from the command of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant of the *Aſian Dioceſſe*, it contained onely *Æolis* and *Ionia* with the South part of *Lydia*, or the Countreys lying about *Epheſus*. So witneſſeth St. *Hierome* for the *Chriſtian* writers, where he affirmes that although all the whole *Peninſula* have the name of the *Leſſer Aſia*; *Specialiter ubi* Epheſus *Civitas eſt*, Aſia *Vocatur*, yet more particularly the parts adjoining unto *Epheſus* have the name of *Aſia*. And this appeareth by the diſtribution of the Provinces before laid down, where *Lydia* is reckoned for a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, diſtinct from the *Proconſular Aſia* which we now inſiſt on.

So having cleered our way in regard of the name proceed we next unto the Regions or place thus named, according to the notion in the largeſt latitude, extending from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, and from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mediterranean*. By which account it reacheth from the 51. to the 72. degree of *Longitude*, and from the 36. to the 45. degree of *Latitude*: the length hereof from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, being eſtimated at 630. miles; the breadth from *Sinus Iſſicus* in *Cilicia* to the City of *Trabezond*, at 210. As for the ſituation of it in reference to the *Heavenly* bodies, it lieth almoſt in the ſame poſition with *Italy*, extending from the middle *Parallel* of the fourth *Clime* to the middle *Parallell* of the ſixt: ſo that the longeſt ſummer day in the Southern parts, is about fourteen hours and a halfe; and one hour longer in thoſe parts which ly moſt towards the North.

The temperature of the aire is exceeding ſound, and the ſoile generally exceeding fruitfull; abounding in moſt excellent paſtures, and antiently very plentiful of all fruites both for uſe and pleaſure, as ſtill it would be were it cultivated as in former times. Once very populous and repleniſhed with goodly Cities, now in a manner waſte and deſolate, lamenting the deſtruction of 4000. Townes, ſome of them deſtroyed by *Earth-*

quakes, (the falling sickneſſe of moſt great Cities in the *Eaſt*) but moſt by warre; and have little now to boaſt of but the comodiouſneſſe of the Havens which are very many, though moſt of them but meanly traded, as in a Countrey ill manured; and of little *manufactures*.

The people antiently, eſpecially thoſe of *Greek* original, and the nations bordering on the *Euxine*, were very warlike and induſtrious: the reſt, eſpecially the *Lydians* and thoſe of the greater *Phrygia*, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their pleaſures. All of them at this time affected with the ſame diſeaſe; inſomuch that the *Turkes*; (unleſſe compelled thereto by extreame neceſſities) never inroll their Children in the number of *Janizaries*. The greateſt part of them generally profeſſe the *Chriſtian* faith; but overpowered by *Mahometaniſme*, which is here moſt prevalent: all followers of the Church of *Greece*, and ſubject all (except thoſe of *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*,) to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. And as they are of the *Communion* of that Church, ſo they retaine the *Greek liturgies* for Sacred Offices; not ſo well underſtood amongſt them in former times, when it was more generally ſpoken there then it is at the preſent; now over-topped in moſt places by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* tongues. And though in former times by reaſon of the many *Greek* Colonies planted in this Countrey, the Conqueſt of it by *Alexander* the *Great*, and the ſubjection of it to the *Syrian* Kings of the *Macedon* race, that language became generally underſtood amongſt them: in ſomuch as three of the *Greek Dialects*, *viz.* the *Doricke*, the *Ionian*, and the *Æolick*, were ſpoken here: yet did it never ſo prevaile as to become the Vulgar language of the People, or to extinguiſh any of the Vulgar tongues: For it is ſaid of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, that he underſtood two and twenty languages without any *Interpreter*; which were no other then the languages of ſo many Nations ſubject to himſelfe, whoſe Dominion was contained for the moſt part within *Aſia Minor*.

Principall Mountains of this Countrey are *Hermione* in *Pontus*, *Argæus* in *Cappadocia*, *Ida* in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, *Olympus* in *Myſia*, *Tmolus* in *Lydia*, *Amanus* in *Cilicia*, and finally *Antetaurus* and *Scordiſcus* in *Armenia Minor*. Out of which for the moſt part flowe the chief Rivers hereof, that is to ſay. 1. *Iris*, (now *Caſilmach*) 2. *Thermodor*. 3. *Halis*. (now *Ottomangruch*) 4. *Parthenius* (now *Dolop*) 5. *Sangarius*, now *Sangri*, all of them falling into the *Euxine Sea*. 6. *Aſcanius*. 7. *Rhyndacus*. 8. *Æſapus*. and 9. *Granicus*, paſſing into the *Propontis*. 10. *Simoeis*. 11. *Scamander* called alſo *Xanthus*, ending their ſhort courſe in the *Helleſpont*. 12. *Caicus*. 13. *Hermus*. 14. *Cayſtrus*, and 15. *Maander*, looſing themſelves in the *Ægean*. 16. *Calbis*. 17. *Xanthus* called alſo *Lycus*. 18. *Limyrus*. 19. *Cataractes*, diſchannelling into the *Mediterranian*; and 20. *Melas*, adding to the waters of the great River *Euphrates*. Of moſt of which we ſhall ſpeak more particularly in their ſeveral places.

In reference to the State of *Rome*, it contained the whole Dioceſſe of *Pontus*, except *Armenia* the *Greater*; the *Aſian Dioceſſe* intirely without any exception; and the peculiar juriſdiction of the *Proconſull of Aſia*; together with the Provinces of *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſſe* of the *Eaſt*. But becauſe the names of many of thoſe Provinces were of new invention, and ſome of them of as ſhort continuance; we will conſider it according as it ſtood divided antiently, and before the *Romans* had made any conqueſts in it, into the Provinces of 1. *Bithynia*. 2. *Pontus*. 3. *Paphlagonia*. 4. *Galatia*. 5. *Cappadocia*. 6. *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up though in other names, the *Portick Dioceſſe*. 7. *Phrygia Minor*. 8. *Phrygia Major*. 9. *Myſia* the Greater and the Leſſer. 10. *Æolis* and *Ionia*. 11. *Lydia*. 12. *Caria*. 13. *Lycia*. 14. *Lycaonia*. 15. *Piſidia*. 16. *Pamphilia*. 17. the Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. 18. *Iſauria*. 19. *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of the *Eaſt* as before was ſaid.

1. *BITHYNIA.*

BITHYNIA is bounded on the eaſt with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the weſt with part of the *Euxine*, the *Thracian Boſphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South with *Myſia* and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at laſt *Bithynia*, and that as ſome ſay from *Bithynius*, once a King hereof; more probably from the *Thyni*, a people of *Thrace*, who paſſed over the *Boſphorus* and ſubdued it, called therefore by ſome writers *Thracia Aſiatica*. So witneſſeth the Poet *Claudian* ſaying,

Thyni *Thraces erant, qua nunc* Bithynia *fertur.*

By *Juſtin* the Hiſtorian it is called by the name of *Metapontus*, by reaſon of its neighbourhood to the *Euxine*, and the *Ponticks* Region.

The Countrey naturally rich, and in thoſe parts hereof which lie next the *Boſphorus*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, ſo plentifully enriched with fruitful hills, and pleaſant orchards, when kept by the more curious *Chriſtians*, that it was thought not to be inferiour to the ſo much celebrated *Tempe*: now robbed of all thoſe former beauties by the careleſſeneſſe of the *Turks*, who affect neither art nor ſumptuoſitie in their retirements and delights.

Chiefe Rivers hereof are *Phillis*. 2. *Sangarius* now called *Sangri*, both falling into the *Euxine* Sea; this laſt ariſing from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furtheſt parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his journey hither. 3. *Aſcanius*, which riſing alſo in *Phrygia Major*, but more neer the borders of this Countrey, falleth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay called *Sinus Aſcanius*. Which with a lake in the ſame Countrey called *Lacus Aſcanius* doth plainely manifeſt that the *Bithynians* are derived from *Askenaz*, the Sonne of *Gomer* and grand-ſon of *Japhet*.

The principal Townes hereof are 1. *Scutari* over againſt the Haven of *Conſtantinople*, called antiently *Chryſopolis* for that there the *Perſians* received their tribute from the other Cities of all theſe parts of *Aſia Minor*. An ample Town, well garriſoned within, and ſurrounded round about with moſt pleaſant Orchards

chards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royall *Seraglio*. Not far off is a Tower called the *Maiden-Tower*, serving both for a Fort and watch-tower; and being furnished for defence with twenty pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Calcedon* on the same shore also, a Colonie of the *Megarenses*, called *blinde* by the *Oracle*, for neglecting *Byzantium* and chooſing the loſſe convenient place for their habitation. And yet did *Conſtantine* the *Great* reſolve upon the ſame place alſo for his *Regall* Citie: but changed his reſolutions on a kinde of miracle: it being obſerved that when his workmen began to draw the plat-forme, ſome *Eagles* conveyed away their lines to the other ſide of the *Boſphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *Generall Councell* there aſſembled by Command of the Emperour *Martianus*, for repreſſing the hereſie of *Neſtorius*; in which were five hundred and thirty Biſhops: now ſo decayed that it can onely ſhew ſome few of the ruines of it: *Scutari* being riſen on the fall thereof. 3. *Nicomedia*, ſo called from *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia* (the ſon of *Zipes*, and grand child to that *Bithynian* King, who ſo valiantly defended his own and his Countreys liberty againſt *Calantius*, one of great *Alexanders* Captains,) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an hill, environed with a pleaſant and delightfull Plain: honoured with the ſeate and reſidence of many of the *Roman* Emperors, when their affaires called them into the Eaſt, before the building of *Conſtantinople*; on that occaſion made the Throne on which many of Gods Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdome*, eſpecially in the perſecution under *Dioclesian*. In thoſe times wealthy and of fame, now much decayed, but notwithſtanding well inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks* for the commodiouſneſſe of the freſh Springs which are thereabouts. 4. *Libuſſa*, betwixt *Nicomedia* and the River *Aſcanius*, memorable for the death and Sepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made Priſoner to the *Romans* when *Pruſius* King of *Bithynia* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himſelf by poiſon. 5. *Pruſa*, founded by another *Pruſius*, whoſe name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as moſt in *Aſia*, honoured for a long time with the reſidence of the *Turkiſh* Kings till the removall of their ſeat to *Adrianople* by *Mahomet* the firſt; and ſtill ennobled with the ſepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* race, except the Emperours themſelves. By the *Turks* called *Burſa*. 6. *Nica* or *Nicaa*, by the *Turks* called *Neichia*, but moſt commonly *Iſnichs*, ſituate, neer the fennes of the River *Aſcanius*, occaſioned by the frequent overflowings of that River: by ſome affirmed to be the *Metropolis* of *Bithynia*; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claime that honour. Firſt named *Antigonia* from *Antigonius* the founder of it; and afterwards *Nicaa* by the name of *Nica* wife unto *Lyſimachus*, both of them Captaines of the Great *Alexander*; which laſt had the happineſſe to ſurvive the overthrow of the former, and was the longeſt liver of thoſe great Commanders. Sufficiently famous both in *Eccleſiaſticall* and *Civill* ſtory for the firſt *Generall Councill* there holden, by the appointment of *Conſtantine* the Great *Anno* 314. for ſetling the peace of the Church then miſerably diſtracted by the *Arian* Hereſie. The number of Biſhops there aſſembled no more then 318. yet of ſuch high eſteem for learning and piety, that never Councel hath been held in ſo great an Honour. Here was alſo held the Counceł by the Empereſſe *Irene*, for eſtabliſhing the veneration of Images; that paſſing by the name of the *Nicene* Councel, the Acts thereof might be of greater reputation amongſt ignorant men. In which it was decreed by ſuch doubtfull Arguments, as *Let us make man after our own Image*, once mainly inſiſted on by a *Legate* of the Eaſtern Churches, that they ſhould be reverenced and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the bleſſed *Trinity* it ſelf. This City was alſo the *Imperiall* City of the *Greek* Emperours, after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*; and there continued till the expulſion of the *Latines*: Under theſe

Emperours of the GREEKS reſiding at NICE.

A. Ch.

1200. 1. *Theodorus Laſcaris* ſon in law to *Alexius Angelus* the Uſurper; upon the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines* paſſed over into *Aſia*, and fortifying the City of *Nice* made it the head City of his Kingdome, conteining *Bithynia*, both the *Phrygia's*, both the *Myſia's*, *Lydia*, *Æolis* and *Ionia*.

1223. 2. *John* ſurnamed *Ducas*, the husband of *Irene* daughter of *Theodore Laſcaris*, ſucceeded his Father in law in the Empire; to which he added *Pontus*, moſt of the Iſles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of importance in *Thrace* it ſelf.

1256. 3. *Theodorus* II. the ſon of *Ducas*.

1259. 4. *John* II. the ſon of *Theodore* the ſecond, an Infant of about ſix years old, ſupplanted firſt, and after cruelly depoſed and deprived of right.

1259. 5. *Michael Palæologus*, deſcended from the *Imperiall* family of the *Comneni*, firſt took upon him as *Protector* of the Infant-Emperour, and afterwards as his *aſſociate* in the Empire: in which confirmed by many fortunate ſucceſſes as well againſt the *Latines* as ſome Greek Uſurpers in *Theſſaly* and *Peloponeſus*, eſpecially the taking of *Conſtantinople*; he deprived the young Emperour of his ſight, made himſelf ſole Emperour, and left it unto his poſterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continuall diſquiets, till the year 1452. when Conquered by *Mahomet* the *Great*, as before was ſaid. But this recovery of *Conſtantinople* was the loſſe of *Nice*, taken not long after the removall of the *Imperiall* ſeate by *Sultan Ottomans*, *Anno* 1299. who preſently thereupon took on himſelfe the ſtile of *King*, from which before he had abſtained.

As for the fortunes of *Bithynia* it ſelf, I look upon the *Bithynians* as a *Thracian* people, whom both *Strabo* and *Herodotus* ſpeak of as the founders of the name and Nation. Of ſuch a King of theirs as *Bithynius* I finde ſome mention in my Authors; and poſſibly it might be he who had the leading of the *Thyni*, or *Bithyni*, in this expedition: that being the name rather of his Nation, then his proper Family. But for the line of Kings which held out till the flouriſh of the *Roman* greatneſſe, they begun to reign here ſome few generati-

ons

ons before the time of *Philip* and *Alexander* the *Macedonians*: by whom having other imployment, and lying out of the road towards *Persia* they were little troubled. *Calantus* one of *Alexanders* Captains, made an expedition into their Countrey, and was vanquished by them: and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, (one of *Alexanders* greatest Princes) who though he humbled them for the present, yet got he neither title nor possession by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Prusias*, so shuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they still preserved their own estates. This *Prusias*, when the *Romans* became so considerable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece* or *Syria*, peeced himself with them: and having aided them in their warres against *Philip* and *Antiochus* both, and most unworthily promised to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for succour) unto their Embassadours, made all sure on this side. His Sonne and successour *Nicomedes*, being outed of his Kingdome by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and restored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Fendatarie*, as did *Nicomedes* his next Successour simamed *Philometor*: who dying without issue in the time of *Augustus*, gave his whole Kingdome to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; continuing so till the division of that Empire into the *Eastern* and the *Western*; when falling to the share of the *Constantinopolitans*, and with them to the power of the *Turkish* Tyrants who do still possesse it.

2. PONTUS.

PONTUS is bounded on the East with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the West with *Bithynia* and the River *Sangarius*; on the North with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South with *Phrygia Major*; *Paphlagonia*; *Galatia* and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia* or *Asia Minor* from *Bithynia* to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*; but not of answerable breadth; and gives name to the Sea adjoining, *a Ponto regione illi adjacente ita appellari*, as *Ortelius* hath it; called from hence *Pontus* by the *Latines*, the adjunct of *Euxinus* comming on another occasion, which we have spoken of before. A Countrey of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Masters of it) into these four parts, viz. *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* specially so called. 2. *Pontus Galaticus*. 3. *Polemoniacus*; and 4. *Pontus Cappadocius*.

1. PONTUS specially so called or *Metapontus* bordering on *Bithynia* and bounded on the East with the River *Parthemius* which divided it from *Paphlagonia*; had for the Chief Cities thereof 1. *Claudiopolis*, so called in honor of *Claudius* the *Roman Emperor*; as 2. *Flaviopolis*, in honor of *Flavius Vespasianus*; and 3. *Juliopolis*, in honor of the *Julian* family, all midland Towns. 4. *Diospolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, so called from a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter*, of great resort. 5. *Heraclea*, a Colonie of the *Phocians*, called for distinctions sake, (there being many of that name) *Herclea Ponti*: memorable of late times for being the seat or residence of a branch of the *Imperial* family of the *Cõneni*; when at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, *David* & *Alexius Comneni* fled into these parts: the first fixing here his Royal residence commanded over this part of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*; the other possessing himself of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabezond* his Regall or Imperiall City. But these two Empires, though of the same date, were of different destinies: that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus* being partly conquered by the Greek Emperours residing at *Nice*, and partly seized on by the *Turks* in the beginning and first fortunes of the *Ottoman* family; the other keeping up the Majesty and State of an Empire, till the year 1461. when subdued by *Mahomet* the *Great*. 6. *Phillium*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Phillis*, upon which it is seated. 7. *Amastris*, the farthest Town of this part towards the East, on the Sea-side also; once of great strength, but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, *Amisus*, and other Townes, in the war against *Mithridates* the great King of *Pontus*.

2. Eastward of *Pontus* specially so called, or *Metapontus*, as *Justin* the historian call's it, lyeth PONTUS GALATICUS, so named because added to *Galatia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities whereof were 1. *Sinope*, pleasantly seated on a long point or *Promontorie* shooting into the main, remarkable in antient storie for the birth and sepulture of *Mithridates* before mentioned; and in the later times for being the chief seat of the *Isfendiars* and noble Family of the *Turkes*, who had taken it with the rest of this tract from the *Comneni*, and held it till the same year in which the Empire of *Trabezond* was subdued by *Mahomet*. First built by the *Milesians*, and continuing in a *free estate*, till taken by *Pharnaces* a King of *Pontus*, and made the *Metropolis* of that Kingdome. 2. *Castamona*, the head City of the Principality of the *Isfendiars* before mentioned; preferred by them for strength and conveniency of situation, before *Heraclea*, or *Sinope*. 3. *Themiscyra*, now called *Favagoria*, seated on a spacious plain neer unto the Sea, and antiently giving name to the Province adjoyning. 4. *Amasia*, the birthplace of *Strabo* the *Geographer*, remarkable in the Ecclesiastical Histories for the *Martyrdome* of St. *Theodorus*; and of late times for being the residence of the eldest Sonnes of the *Grand Signeur*, sent hither as soon as circumcised, never returning back again till the death of their Father. Accompted now amongst the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province, a midland Town, as also is 5. *Cabira*, called afterward *Diopolis*, memorable for the great defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*; more for the trick which *Mithridates* there put upon *Lucullus*. For being well acquainted with the covetousnesse of the *Romans*, he saw no better way to save himself and the rest of his forces after the defeate, then to scatter his treasures in the way which he was to take: that by that meanes his enemies might slacken the pursuite to collect the spoiles, and he preserve himself to another day: and so accordingly it proved. 6. *Comana*, to difference it from another of that name, called *Comana Pontica*; to which other being of *Cap-*

p.

padocia, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in safety by the trick aforesaid, and thence escaped unto *Tygranes* the *Armenian* King, with 2000. horse.

3. Eastward of *Pontus Galaticus* lieth *Polemoniacus*, so called by the *Romans* either from *Polemonium* a chief town of this tract, or from *Polemo* the last King hereof, after whose death this Kingdome came unto the *Romans*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Polemonium* on the Sea-side, spoken of before. 2. *Hermanassa*, a Sea-town also, more in the land. 3. *Neo-Cæsarea*, (now *Nixaria*) the *Metropolis* of *Polemoniacus*, when made a Province of it self. 4. *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and called *Megalopolis*, by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopontus*. 5. *Sebastia*, so called in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Sebastos*; a place of great strength, and one of the first Townes in the *Lesser Asia*, which held out against *Tamerlane*; in revenge whereof when he had took it, he caused 12000. men women and children to be most cruelly buried alive in some hollow pits, which he had digged for that purpose. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow: where also *Tamerlane* with an Army of 800000 of his *Tartars*, encountred with *Bajazet* the *Turke*, comming to the reliefe of *Sebastia*, with an Armie of 500000. fighting men. The issue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having lost 200000. of his souldiers, was himself taken prisoner, and carried by the insolent Conqueror in an iron cage, against the barres whereof he beat out his brains. 6. *Barbanissa*. 7. *Megalossus*. 8. *Gozalvia*, *&c.* not much observable in Story.

In this part of *Pontus* is the rise and fall of the River *Thermodon*, on the bankes whereof the *Amazones*, a sort of Warlike women are said to dwell, so called, either *quasi* ἀμάζας, because they used to cut off their right pappes, that they might not be an impediment to their shooting: or from α and μάζα *sine pane*, because they used not to eat bread; or from ἅμα ζῆν, because they used to live together. They were originally of *Schythia*, and accompanied their husbands to these parts, about the time of the *Scythians* first irruptions into *Asia*, in the time of *Sesostris* King of *Egypt*. The leaders of this people into *Cappadocia*, were *Plinos* and *Scolpythus*, two young men of a great house, whom a contrary faction had banished. They held a great hand over the *Themiscyrii*, who inhabited this region, and the Nations round about them; At last they were by treachery all murdered. But their wives now doubly vexed, both with exile and widowhood; and extremity of grief and fear producing its usual effect, desperatenesse: they set upon the Conquerors under the Conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpesia*; and not onely overthrew them, but also infinitely inlarged their Dominions.

The *Amazon Queens.*

1 { *Lampedo.* / *Marpesia.* } First *Queens* of the *Amazones* in these parts.
2. *Ortera.*
3. *Antiopa*, whose sisters *Hippolyte* and *Menalippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theseus* to single combate: and were at last hardly vanquished, to their eternal credits.
4. *Penthesilea*, who came with a troope of brave *Viragoes*, to the aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*: she invented the *Battaile axe*, and was at last slaine by *Pyrrhus*, sonne to *Achilles*. Long after her death reigned *Thalestris*; who came to *Alexander* being in *Hyrcania*, and plainly told him she came to be his bed-fellow; which done she returned; and at last by little and little this Female Nation was extinct. They used in matters of *copulation* to go to their neighbouring men thrice in a year: if they brought forth males, they sent them to their fathers; if females, they kept them and trained them up in all discipline of war and courage. Of these more elsewhere.

4. the most Eastern part of *Pontus*, called CAPPADOCIUS, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*, extended from *Polemoniacus* to *Colchis*, and the River *Euphrates*, the utmost boundaries of this Countrey. Places of most consideration in it. 1. *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces* a King of *Pontus*. 2. *Cerasu*, by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniacus*, from whence *Cherries* were brought first to *Rome*, *Anno* V.C.680 called therefore *Cerasa* by the *Latines*. 3. *Ischopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And so is also 4. *Trapezus*, now *Trabezond*, the Imperial City of the *Comneny*, here raigning over *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, and these parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded first by *Alexius Comnenus* (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his Son *Emanuel*) who at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians* fled unto these parts; which willingly submitted unto his command, *Anno* 1200. Here his posterity flourished in great prosperity, preserving the Majesty of the Empire in a better measure then the *Constantinopolitans* themselves till the time of *David* the last Emperour, in whose reign the City of *Trabezond*, and therewith all the whole dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*; the poor Emperour ledde prisoner into *Greece*, and there cruelly murdered. A famous Emporie and specially for the trade of fish, caught by the People on the shores of the *Euxine* Sea; here salted, and from hence transported in great quantities, to *Constantinople*, *Caffa*, and other places. And for their better help herein, it is said that there is a Mountain not far from this City, affording a black stone, which being beaten in a Mortar serves instead of salt, wherewith they season the fish, which they send abroad. A City honored heretofore with the residence of the Lord Deputies or Lieutenants of the *Grecian* Emperour, for defence of the outparts of the *Euxine* against the *Persians*, and now the Station of such Gallies as are maintained by the *Grand Seignur*, to scoure the coasts of the *Black Sea*, and secure their trade. More in the land stand. 5. *Zephyriam*. 6. *Aza*. 7. *Cocalia*. 8. *Cordyle*, and many others named in *Ptolomy*, but not else observable.

The antient Inhabitants of this Countrey were called *LEUCOSYRI* or *White Syrians*, governed by a race of Kings descended from the Royall house of *Achemenes* King of *Persia*. The first of them called

led *Mithridates*, one of the seven Competitors for the *Persian* Kingdome, on the death of *Cambyses*. But that honour failing on *Darius* (of which more hereafter) he seated himself in these remote parts of *Asia Minor*; the Ancestour of many great and puissant Princes, but none more memorable then one of his own name, *Regum Orientis post* Alexandrum *Magnum Maximus*, the most potent King of all the East since the time of *Alexander* the great, as my Author hath it. A Prince of great abilities both in war and councill, and one who longer held it out against the *Romans*; then *Pyrrhus*, *Annibal*, and the great Kings of *Macedon* and *Syria* had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part against *Aristonicus*; who would not consent to the admission of the *Romans* unto *Pergamus*, according to the will of *Attalus*. Afterward, conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Asia*; in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Souldiers dispersed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: in like manner, as in after times the *English*, taught perhaps by this example, murdered all the *Danes* then resident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* massacred all the *French* inhabiting *Sicilia*, as we have formerly declared. He dispossessed *Nicomedes*, sonne to *Prusias*, King of *Bithynia*; *Ariobarzanes*, King of *Cappadocia*; and *Philomones*, King of *Paphlagonia* of their estates; because they persisted faithful to his enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Grecians* to rebell, possessed himself of *Athens*, and divers places of importance in *Greece*, *Thrace*, and *Asia*; and allured all the Isles, except *Rhodes*, from their obedience to the *Romans*. And finally having disturbed their victories, and much shaken their estate, for the space of 40. years: he was with much ado vanquished by the valour and felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey* the Great; three of the greatest Souldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* puissance so much pluck down his proud heart, as the rebellion of his son *Pharnaces*, against him; which he no sooner heard, but he would have poisoned himself; but having formerly so used his bodie to a kind of poison allaied (which from his inventing of it, we now call *Mithridate*) that the venome could not work upon him; he slew himself. He is said to have been an excellent Scholler, and to have spoken perfectly the languages of 22. Nations; the languages of so many nations which were subject to him. But neither his learning nor his courage could preserve him from those common miseries, which ordinarily attend a falling greatnesse. And so ended this long and tedious war, exceeding troublesome to the *Romans*, but withall very beneficial. For under colour of giving aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Galatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and both *Armenia's*: insomuch as it is truely said by L. *Florus*, *totum pene Orientem & Septentrionem involvit*, that in his ruines he involved both the East and North. But to proceed: after his death the Kingdome continued unto his posterity, but *Tributaries* to the *Romans*, till the time of *Nero*, when *Polemo* the last King hereof dying without issue; it was *contoned* and divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bithynia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*; onely that part of it which was called *Polemoniacus* retaining the dignity of a Province distinct and separate. And so it remained till the reign of *Constantine* the Great, who changing the names, lessening the bounds, and increasing the number of the Provinces, left onely the Province of *Pontus*, and *Bithynia* in the state he found it. And for the rest he cast it into two new Provinces, that towards the East, retaining the name, but not the bounds of the old *Polemoniacus*, wherein were the Cities of *Trapezus*, *Neo-Cæsarea*, *Cerasus*, *Comana Pontica*, *Palemonium*, and *Petræorum Civitas*, called afterwads *Justiniana*; of which *Neo-Cæsarea* was the *Metropolis*. That towards the East, separated from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia* by the River *Parthemius*, he caused to be called *Helenopontus*, by the name of his Mother; and thereunto assigned the Cities of *Amasia* the *Metropolis* of it, *Ibora*, *Euchaita*, *Zela*, *Andrapus*, *Ægeum Climacus*, *Sinope*, *Amisus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this division held not long, both being united into one and called *Helenopontus* by *Justinian*; continuing after that a member of the *Eastern* Empire, till the comming of *David* and *Alexius Comneni* from *Constantinople*, whereof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabezond*, as before s said. But their estates being overthrown, it remains wholly to the *Turkes*, who do now possesse it.

The Armes of the Emperours of *Trabezond* the greatest Princes of these parts till the *Turkes* subdued them, were *Or*, an Eagle volant *Gules*.

3. *PAPHLAGONIA.*

PAPHLAGONIA is bounded on the East with the River *Halys*, by which parted from *Cappadocia*; on the West by the Rivers *Parthemius*, which part it from the Province of *Ponthus* and *Bithynia*; on the North with that part of the Kingdome of *Pontus* which was named *Galaticus*; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major* and *Galatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the Sonne of *Phineus*, estated in it by his Father who had newly conquered it.

The Countrey was but small, and of little power, and consequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The principall of such as were, were 1. *Gangra*, observable for a Councill holden there in the *Primitive* times, *Anno* 339. commonly called *Synodus Gangrensis*. 2. *Conica*, or *Cinata*, of so convenient a situation that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was master of this Countrey. 3. *Pompeiopolis*, raised out of the foundations of some lesser town, by *Pompey* the great, and by him so named. 4. *Germanopolis*. 5. *Xoana*. 6. *Andrapa*, called afterwards *Nava Claudiopolis*, to difference it from another City of that name in *Pontus*.

This Province though but small in circuite, was heretofore the seat of four different Nations, *viz.* 1. the *Tibareni*, of whom it is said, that they never waged warre on any enemy, but they faithfully certified them before-hand, of the time and place of their fight. 2. The *Heptacometa*. 3. The *Mossynoeci*, both which were a people so beastly and shamelesse, that they used to performe the work of generation in publique;

publique; not knowing that *Multa sunt honesta factu, quæ sunt turpia visu:* and 4. the *Heneti*, to whom the *Venetians*, as we have already said, do owe their first originall. The Kings which ruled in this Countrey derived themselves from *Philomenes*, who assisted *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his defence against the *Greeks*: in memory of whom this Region for a while was called *Philomenia*. Applying themselves unto the times, they were alwaies favourable to the strongest, serving the *Persian*, and submitting to *Alexander* as he passed that way; and so maintained their estate without much molestation, till the time of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*: who finding them firme unto the *Romans*, then growing to great power in the *Lesser Asia*, deprived *Philomenes* then King hereof, and took the Kingdome to himselfe, fortifying the chiefe townes and places of it. Restored again unto his Kingdome by the power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his death. But the Countrey being very much wasted, and most of the Cities of it destroyed and desolated in the course of that warre; it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Galatia*. Not reckoned a distinct Province in the time of Saint *Peter*, who writing to the *Jewes*, dispersed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynnia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwise esteemed then as a member of *Galatia*, in the time of *Ptolomie*. Afterwards it was joyned to *Pontus* by the Emperour *Constantine*: part of it after that, with some parts of *Pontus* and *Bithynnia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperour *Theodosius*, and called *Honorias*, in honour of his sonne *Honorius*, whereof *Claudiopolis*, a Citie of *Pontus*, properly so called, was made the *Metropolis*. But by *Justinian*, the name of *Honorius* being abolished, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again; the whole Countrey, as before limited, was governed by an *Imperiall* Officer, whom he called *Prætor Justinianus*: continuing under the command of the *Constantinopolitans*, till the taking of that Citie by the *Latines*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabezond* till the conquest of it by the *Turkes*, by whom called *Rom*.

4. GALATIA.

GALATIA is bounded on the East with *Cappadocia*; on the West with the River *Sangarius*, and some part of *Pontus* specially so called, or *Metapontus*; on the North with *Paphlagonia*; on the South with *Pamphylia*. So called from the *Gaules*, who having ranged over *Greece*, passed into *Asia*, and brought a great part of it under their command: but being broken by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Mysia*, and the *Lesser Phrygia*, were at last confined to this Countrey. It was also called *Gallo-Græcia*, from that mixture of *Gaules* and *Grecians*, who uniting into one body when they came for *Asia*, were commonly called *Gallo-Græci*. By *Suidas*, *Græco-Galli*, and the Countrey suitably *Græco-Gallia*.

The Countrey very plentifull of all manner of fruites, even unto voluptuousnesse; and providently provided of the Stone called the *Amethyst*, which is said to preserve from drunkennesse the man that weareth it. The name doth signifie as much, derived from A *privativum*, and μέθυσος, *ebrius*, which commeth from μέθυ, signifying wine.

The people had a custome in their publique funerals, to cast letters fairely written, into that last and fatall fire wherein the dead body was to be burned, supposing that their friends should read them in the other world. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excelled all Nations: insomuch that *Athenæus* telleth us of one *Ariamnes* a rich *Galatian*, that he feasted the whole Nation for a year together with the *Sacrifices* of Buls, Sheep, Swine, and other provisions, boyled in great Caldrons made for that purpose, and distributed amongst them in Tents and Boothes erected for that entertainment. A brave flash of a vain-glorious hospitality.

Rivers of note here are not any but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Halys*, *Sangarius*, and some others. The Towns of most consideration in it were 1. *Ancyra* on the banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief Citie of the *Tectosages* a *Gallick* Nation, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Countrey; memorable in Church-story for a *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, *Anno* 299. called *Synodus Ancyrana*; but of most note at the present for the making of *Chamlets*; now called *Angauri*. 2. *Olenus*. 3. *Agrinama*, Cities of the same people also. 4. *Tavium*, or *Tanium* (for I finde both names) the chiefe Citie of the *Trocmi* or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen statue of *Jupiter*, whose temple there was a privi ledged Sanctuary. 5. *Androsia*. 6. *Phabarena*, Cities of that nation also. 7. *Therma*, a *Roman* Colonie, so called of the hot Bathes there, the chief Citie of the *Tolibosti*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Tolistobogi*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8. *Talachbachora*, belonging also to that people.

Besides the Nations above named, here dwelt also the *Byceni* and *Proseliminita*, who had also their peculiar Cities, mentioned by name in *Ptolomie*, but of little or no observation in the course of story. Of all which Nations, onely the *Tectosags*, were of *Gallick* originall; who with others of their Countreymen under the conduct of *Belgius* and *Bremius*, having ransacked *Pannonia* and *Illyricum*, fell at last into *Macedon*; where having tyrannized a while, and laid waste the Countrey, they were at last vanquished and expulsed by *Antigonus Gonatas*. After this overthrow under the conduct of *Lamnorius*, and *Luterius*, they ferried over the *Hellespont*, and subdued almost all *Asia Minor* on this side the *Taurus*; employed there, by those petty Kings and States against one another: their reputation grown so great, that no Prince thought himself secure without their alliance, or able to make warre without their assistance. The very *Switzers* of that age; as *mercenary*, but more *faithfull* unto those that hired them. But being over rigorous in compelling their neighbor Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too severe in the exacting of their *Tributes*: they inforced *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by whose favour they had setled about the *Hellespont*, to become their enemy. Vanquished by him, they were constrained to contein themselves within the

bounds

bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was called *Galatia*, and *Gallogræcia*. Here for a while they kept their antient courage and estimation, molesting many times their neighbours, and sometimes setting themselves to hire in the wars of others: but in the end they lost both courage and esteem, and were *Gaules* onely in name, retaining little in them of their Ancestours valour. For as most plants and trees lose much of their vertue, being transplanted into another soile, so these men lost their native courage, strength, and hardinesse, being weakened by the *Asian* pleasures and delicacies. For as *Tully* saith, for a man to be good in other places, is no mastery; but in *Asia* to lead a temperate life, is indeed praiseworthy: So might one have said to the *Gaules*, that to be couragious and patient of travell amongst the mountains, was no whit to be admired; but to have continued so amidst the delights of *Asia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But these men were so farre from assailing the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they lost their own Countrey to *Manlius* a *Roman* General. A warre which *Manlius* undertook for no other cause, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* against the *Romans*: nor was there any memorable act performed herein, but that of *Chiomena* the Kings wife, who being ravished by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilest he busied himself in telling the money agreed on for her ransome, to cut off his head; which she presented to her husband. But *Manlius* got little honour by this successe, not being welcomed with a *triumph*, at his comming home, according to the *Roman* custome; because he undertook the warre of his own accord, without commission from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the fruites of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Feudataries*. This happ'ned *anno* V. C. 564. After which time, I find *Deiotarus* by consent of the *Romans*, to reign here as King: who siding with *Pompey* in his warre against *Cæsar*, incurred the anger of the *Victor*; and had died for it, had not *Tullie* pleaded his cause and obtained his pardon. But he being dead, his Countrey in the time of *Augustus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lollius Paulinus* being the first President or Governour of it: enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and some part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galaticum*. Reduced to its first bounds by the Emperour *Constantine*; and divided into two Provinces by *Theodosius*, the one called *Galatia Prima*; the other *Salutaris*, from its *medicinall* waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the *Metropolis*. In the falling of the *Eastern* Empire it was partly seised on by the *Turks*; not totally come into their hands, till the subverting of the Empire of *Trabezond*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chianger*.

5. CAPPADOCIA.

CAPPADOCIA is bounded on the East with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Armenia Minor*; on the West with *Galatia*; on the North with *Pontus Polemoniacus*, and *Cappadocius*; and on the South with *Lycaonia*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*. So called of a River, as *Plinie* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it and *Galatia*.

The Countrey very plentiful of wine, and most kind of fruits, rich in mines of Silver, Brasse, Iron, and Allom: affording also besides a mean sort of *Alabaster*, good store of *Crystall*, *Jasper*, and the *Onyx* stone. But the greatest wealth hereof is their breed of horses, infinite almost in numbers, and fit for any service they can be put to. And this is universal, in all parts of the Countrey, but not the other, there being some parts of it mountainous and very barren, especially about the spurres and branches of the *Antitaurus*: which is a chaine of hils thrusting out of the *Taurus*, and bending themselves unto the North, upon the edges of this Countrey and the two *Armenia's*. Here is also in this Countrey the mountain *Argæus*, said to be of so great an height, that from one of the summits or tops thereof, a man of perspicacious eyes may discern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Countrey in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, so vicious and lewd of life, so monstrously addicted to all kind of wickednesse, that besides the share they had in the old *Greek* proverb, of τειὰ Καππὰ κάκισα, they had some proverbs to themselves: Καππαδόκης, & Καππαδόκιον τέρας, that is to say, a *man of Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian Monster*, being used *proverbially*, to signifie a man most extreamly wicked. The words so used by *Gregory Nazianzen*, speaking of *Gregory* or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either *Suidas* or *Erasmus*, two right learned *Criticks*, understand him rightly. And they made good the *Proverb* in the times of the Gospell: *Gregory* that bloody Butcher of *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Asterius*, *Eustathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch-Heretick *Eunomius*, being all of this Countrey. Yet such is the influence of *Christianity*, where once entertained, that this lewd disposition of the *Cappadocians* was so corrected and restrained by it; that this Countrey afforded as many godly Prelates, and couragious Martyrs, as any other whatsoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen* before remembred, who with *Gregory Nyssen*, and St. *Basil*, all learned and religious Bishops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongst many Martyrs of great faith and constancy, St. *George*, a noble *Coppadocian*, Collonell or Tribune of Souldiers under *Diocletian*, more celebrated in the Churches both East and West, then any other Saints in all the *Calender*, the blessed Apostles and Evangelists excepted onely, & for that reason made Patron of the Order of the *Garter* by K. *Ed.* the 3. Finally, it is reported of these *Cappadocians*, that they were not onely morally wicked, but naturally venomous also: insomuch that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the mans blood was a poison to the snake and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey, were 1. *Halys*, spoken of before, which had here its fountain and Originall; the end of *Cræsus* Empire both in site and fate, the utmost bound of his dominions on that side; which purposing to passe over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountred with and vanquished by *Cyrus* the great King of *Persia*. 2. *Iris*, which ariseth in this Countrey also, and passing thorough

thorough it and a part of *Pontus*, diſchannelleth it ſelf, as the other doth in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperour *Tiberius*, after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by him called *Cæſarea*: the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia*, and the Epiſcopal See of renowned St. *Baſil*. 2. *Nyſſa*, the See of *Gregory*, ſurnamed *Nyſſenus*, the brother of *Baſil*. 3. *Nazianzum*, the Epiſcopal See of another *Gregory*, ſurnamed *Nazianzenus*: three men, which as for the piety of their converſation they were not equalled in thoſe times; ſo for their admirable abilities in all kind of learning, nothing inferiour to the moſt eminent of the antient *Grecians*. 4. *Tyana*, the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia ſecunda*, after the ſubdiviſion of it by the Emperour *Valens*. 5. *Archelais*, in the *Prafecture* of *Gardnacreta*, ſo called from *Archelaus* a *Cappadocian* King, the founder or repairer of it. 6. *Comana*, for diſtinctions ſake called *Comana Cappadocia*, to difference it from another of that name in *Pontus*; by *Ptolomie* placed, I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*, as is alſo *Nyſſa* before mentioned. Memorable in old times for a Temple conſecrated to *Bellona*, whoſe *Prieſts* and other inferiour Officers of both ſexes, amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and upwards; for maintenance of whom the *Prieſts* received the *Revenue* of the Region next adjoyning to it; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the ſame kindred alſo. 7. *Dio-Cæſarea*; called formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8. *Fauſtinopolis*, ſo called in honour of *Fauſtina*, wife of the Emperour *Antoninus*. 9. *Andraca*. 10. *Phiara*. 11. *Salambria*. 12. *Campe*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomie*, with many others as obſcure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the antient Writers, is 13. *Erzirum*, ſituate on the very confines of the *Greater Armenia*, for that cauſe made the *Rendez-vous*, or place of meeting for the *Turkiſh* Souldiers when there is any expedition in hand againſt the *Perſian*; at which place alſo after the ending of the warre for the preſent year, they are disbanded and ſent home to their ſeveral quarters. And 14. *Pterium*, not named in *Ptolomie*, but memorable for the great battel fought in ſight thereof between *Cræſus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Perſia*; in which *Cræſus* having loſt the field, and with it his Kingdome, found the *Oracle* true, (though not in the ſenſe which he expected) that *Cræſus* paſſing over the River *Halys*, ſhould overthrow a great eſtate, as indeed he did: but it was his own, and not the *Perſians*.

That the *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togarma*, the Sonne of *Gomer*, hath been ſo fully proved already in our *Generall Preface*, that we ſhall not trouble our ſelves to repeat it here: Nor ſhall we need to ſay more in confuting of their opinion, who would fetch *Capththorim* out of *Egypt* from the reſt of his brethren, to plant him in this Countrey, than hath there been ſaid. Their fortunes in the former times I find little of: ſubjected by the *Perſian* with the reſt of *Aſia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Cræſus*, who before had given the law unto it; as to the *Phrygians*, *Paphlagonians*, *Bithynians*, *Myſians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given together with *Atoſſa* his Siſter to *Pharnaces* a noble *Perſian*, who had ſaved him from the fury of a ravenous Lion running upon him with full mouth, as he was a hunting. A noble loyalty, and no leſſe royally rewarded. From him deſcended *Ariarathes* King hereof in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, continuing ſtedfaſt in his duty to the Crown of *Perſia*, when almoſt all the reſt of the Kings of *Aſia* yielded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to accounts in his march for *Perſia*. But after his deceaſe, *Perdiccas* having the command of the Army, ſet upon him, vanquiſhed him, and moſt cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kindred as could be found. One of his Sonnes, who fortunately had eſcaped this ſlaughter, ſpying his time, when the *Macedonians* were at warres amongſt themſelves, recovered his eſtate again, and paſſed it over to his off-ſpring: continuing in his line, without any ſubjection, till the time of that *Ariobarzanes*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his dominion, as was told before. Reſtored again unto his Kingdome by the power of the *Romans*, he became their *Homager*, holding, as did his Succeſſours, by their *courteſie* onely: Continuing yet in ſtate of Kings, till the death of *Archelaus* the laſt King hereof. Who having angred *Tiberius*, for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life-time of *Auguſtus*, as did others of the *tributary* States and Princes, was by him then poſſeſſed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting ſomewhat againſt the State. Where the old Prince even ſpent with Age, the Gout, and ſome other diſeaſes, had without queſtion been condemned by the ſervile *Senate*: but that one of the Witneſſes depoſed, that he had ſaid that *if ever he went back into* Cappadocia, Tiberius *ſhould find*, quales ſibi nervi eſſent, *what a man he was*. Which moved ſuch a laughter in the *Senate*, the old King being neither able to ſit nor ſtand, that he was diſmiſſed: *Tiberius* thinking that he could not puniſh him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King conſtrued to the beſt, and in the way of gratitude, bequeathed his Kingdome at his death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly enlarged by the addition of the greateſt part of the Kingdome of *Pontus*: and ſo it ſtood in the time of *Ptolomy*, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocius*, and *Polemoniacus*, as parts and members of this Province. Divided beſides thoſe into theſe eight *Præfectures*, that is to ſay, *Clamanienſis*, *Sargaranſene*, *Gardaocreta*, *Cilicia*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycaonia*, *Antiochiana*, and *Cataonia*. But *Pontus*, *Lycaonia*, and *Antiochiana* (he meanes *Piſidia* as I take it) being made Provinces of themſelves, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*: it returned unto its naturall bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cæſarea*, as is ſaid before, was the *Metropolitan*: and ſo remained, till the Emperour *Valens* a great Patron of the *Arian* faction, of purpoſe to deſpight St. *Baſil*, who oppoſed that hereſie, created another Province out of it, called *Cappadocia ſecunda*, whereof the *Metropolis* was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eaſtern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trabezond*; together with which it fell unto the hands of the *Turkes*; by whom the whole Province with the addition of *Pontus*, is now called *Amaſia*; after the name of that City, which the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his reſidence; and is ſaid to yield yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* 60000. Ducats.

6. ARMENIA MINOR.

ARMENIA MINOR is bounded on the East with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Major*; on the South with Mount *Taurus*, which separates it from *Cilicia*; on the West and North with a long chain of hills called *Mons Scordiscus*, by some called *Mons Amanus*, by others *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reason of the name hereafter.

The Countrey of the same nature with *Cappadocia*, before described, in some parts over-grown with Mountains, by which and by the River *Euphrates* so inclosed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance: in others pleasant and delightfull; well watered with sweet streams, and some fair Rivers issuing out of the Mountains, the principall whereof is *Melas*, so called from the *blackness* of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into these four Regions, that is to say, *Laviana*, *Aravena*, *Melitene*, lying on the *Euphrates*; *Marianna* more within the land towards *Cappadocia*: each of which had their severall Cities, whose names are to be found in *Ptolomie*. The principall 1. *Melitene*, the chief City of the Region so called, and the *Metropolis* of the lesser *Armenia*. Called afterwards *Malaxia*, and now *Sunr*: the territory thereof abounding in Oyle and Wine, not inferiour to the best of *Greece*. The City said by *Onuphrius* to be a Colonie of the *Romans*: much spoken of by *Eusebius* and other writers of *Ecclesiasticall* story, for the piety of the *Christians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Persecution*. 2. *Nicopolis*, and 3. *Oromandus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his victory there obtained against the forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria* and both *Armonia's*. 4. *Garnace*, a well fortified town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gorneas*. 5. *Cuonsun*, and 6. *Arabyssus*, memorable for the exile of Saint *Chrysostome*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, confined unto these places by the power and malice of the Empresse *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his *Orthodoxie* in points of faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interred.

This Countrey was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* by their incursions and Colonies possessed themselves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*: continuing part of their estate till the warre of *Mithridates* against the *Romans*. Who being discomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thousand horse to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had married his daughter. By whom at first neglected, and not suffered to come into his presence; but afterwards on the apprehension of the common danger more esteemed and set by: insomuch that his royall entertainment there, and the refusall of *Tigranes* to yield him up when required by the *Romans*: occasioned *Lucullus* to bring his forces into these parts, subduing all before him to the bankes of *Euphrates*. His victories being seconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Augustus*, this Countrey was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire: the greater *Armenia*, lying on the other side of that River, though conquered also in that warre, not being taken into the accompt of the *Roman* Provinces, till the time of *Traian*; *Augustus* thinking it an high point of wisdome (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond those bankes. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eastern Empire; when wasted by the *Persians*, and subdued by the *Turkes*; by whom called *Genech*, or as some say *Pegia*.

And so much of the Provinces of the *Pontick* Diocese lying within *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*; converted to the *Christian* faith by the two great Apostles of *Jews* and *Gentiles*; as appeareth by Saint *Paul's* Epistle to the *Galatians*, and Saint *Peter's* to the *Strangers* dispersed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynnia*.

7. ASIA PROPRIA.

COme we now to the ASIAN *Diocese*, and first to that part thereof which *Ptolomie* and others (for the reasons spoken of before) call *Asia Propria*. Antiently the most rich and flourishing part of all this *Peninsula*; and so affirmed to be by *Tullie*, who telleth us that the *tributes* which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly sufficed to defray the publick charges for defence thereof. *Asia vero tam opima est & fertilis ut & ubertate agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine pastionis, & multitudine earum rerum quæ exportentur, facile omnibus terris antecellat.* But as for *Asia* (saith he) it is so fertile and so rich, that for the fruitfulnesse of the fields, variety of fruites, largenesse of pasture-grounds, and quantity of commodities which were brought from thence; it very easily excelled all other Countreys. The fortunes of the severall Provinces we shall see anon. Brought under the command of the *Persians*, they continued subject to that Crown, for some generations: but at last taken from them by the *Grecians*, under the prosperous ensignes of victorious *Alexander*. After whose decease, the Empire being divided among his Captains, *Asia* fell to the share of *Antigonus*; whose sonne *Demetrius* seized on the Kingdome of *Macedonia*: and left *Asia* to *Seleucus Nicanor*, King of *Syria* and the East, being also one of *Alexander's* heires. The sixt from this *Seleucus* was *Antiochus* called the *Great*: who waging warre with young *Ptolomy Philopaters*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his father to the protection of the *Romans*; and otherwise practising against their estate; provoked the *Senate* of *Rome* to send *Scipio* (surnamed from his *Asian* victories) *Asiaticus* against him: who compelled him to forsake *Asia*, which the *Romans* presently took into their possions. But finding it agreeable to the present estate of their Affaires (the Kingdome of *Macedonia* standing in their way) to make further use of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former warre; they gave unto *Eumenes* the Provinces of *Lycaonia*, *Phrygia*,

Phrygia, *Myſia*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*, *Lycia* and *Caria* to the *Rhodians*: knowing full well, that they could eaſily take them back again, when they ſaw occaſion. More hereof in the ſtory of the Kings of *Pergamus*: on the deceaſe of *Attalus* the laſt King thereof, theſe Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*.

It contained only after the accompt of *Cicero*, the Provinces of *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Phrygia's* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctuall and particular proceeding in it, we will conſider it as divided into 1. *Phrygia Minor*. 2. *Phrygia Major*. 3. *Myſia*. 4. *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Aſia* more eſpecially ſo called. 5. *Lydia*, and 6. *Caria*.

8. PHRYGIA MINOR.

PHRYGIA MINOR, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Myſia*, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Greater Phrygia*; on the Weſt, with the *Helleſpont*; on the North, with the *Propontis*; on the South, with the *Ægean* Sea. Called *Phrygia* from *Phryx* a River in the *Greater Phrygia*; or as ſome ſay, from *Phryxus*, the ſonne of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*; who flying from the treacherous ſnares of his Mother in law, did here ſeat himſelf. *Minor* was added to it to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was alſo called *Phrygia Helleſpontiaca*, from its ſituation on that *Streit*: and *Troas*, from *Troas* the chief City of it; by which name it occurreth in the book of the *Acts*. It was called alſo *Epictetus*, but the reaſon of the name I finde not, except it came from the *Epicteti*, a People dwelling on the Eaſt parts of *Bithynnia*, and conſequently neere this place.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Scamander*, on whoſe Bankes ſtood the renowned Citie of *Troy*, honoured by *Heſiod* with the title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Countrey a litle before they were to be married uſed to bath themſelves, and to ſay theſe words, λάβε τὴν ἐμὴν Σκάμανδρε παρθενίαν, that is to ſay, *Take O* Scamander *my Virginity*. Which opportunity, *Cimon* an *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his head, like a River-god, and ſo deflowred *Callirhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another: occaſioning thereby the leaving off of this fooliſh cuſtome. It was alſo called *Xanthus* by the *Poets*, *Xanthúmq; bibiſſent*, as in *Virgil*; and watered a litle Region called *Lycia*, of which more anon. 2. *Æſopus*, parting this litle Region from the *Leſſer Myſia*; the boundary of it on the North, as the Promontory called *Lectium* is the furtheſt point of it towards the South. 3. *Simoeis*, now called *Simores*, falling into the *Helleſpont* not far from the Promontorie called *Rhœteum* (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*): but riſing out of Mount *Ida*, an hill of this Region, on which *Paris* (being by his Father expoſed to the fury of wild Beaſts) judged the controverſy of the golden ball in favour of *Venus*; reſpecting neither the great riches of *Juno*, nor the divine wiſdome of *Pallas*, but tranſported with a ſenſuall delight fatall in the end to the whole Countrey.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Dardanum* or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Æneas*. 2. *Aſſus*, mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 13. by *Plinie* called *Apollonia*; who telleth us that the earth about it is of ſuch a nature that it will conſume a dead body in fourty daies. 3. *Trajanopolis*, whoſe name declareth its founder. 4. *Sigæum* the Port-town to *Troy*, neere a noted Promontory of the ſame name. 5. *Troy*, ſituate on the River *Scamander*, the beauty and glory of the Eaſt: called *Ilium*, and *Pergamus* for the reaſon to be ſhewn anon. A famous Town, from the people whereof, all Nations deſire to fetch their originall. The beauty of it may be (as ſome write) yet ſeen in the ruines, which with a kind of majeſty entertain the beholder: the walls of large circuit, conſiſting of a black hard ſtone cut four-ſquare; ſome remnants of the Turrets which ſtood on the walls, and the fragments of great Marble Tombes and monuments of curious workmanſhip. But certainly theſe are not the ruines of that *Ilium*, which was deſtroyed by the *Grecians*, but 6. *Troas* or *New Troy*, built ſome four miles from the ſituation of the old, by *Lyſimachus*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and called it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri*, in honour of *Alexander* the *Great* who begun the work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times called *Troas* onely, and by that name mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 6. then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruine onely, but every day made more ruinous then other by the *Turks*, who carry daily the ſtones and Pillars of it to *Conſtantinople* to adorn the houſes of the *Baſſas*. 7. *Scamandria*, a ſtrong piece, but of later foundation, cunningly ſurprized by *Ottoman* the firſt King of the *Turkes*, in the time of a funerall. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the buildings, glories, and fall of it, take this ſtory with you.

The Kings of TROY.

A. M.

2487. 1. *Dardanus* ſonne to *Corinthus* King of *Corinth*, having killed his brother *Jaſius*, fled into this Countrey, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*; according to that verſe of *Virgil*,

Dardanus Iliacæ *primus pater urbis & autor.*
Both of *Troy* Town, and *Trojan* race
Dardanus the firſt founder was.

2518. 2. *Erichthonius*, of whom litle memorable. 75.

2593. 3. *Tros* the ſonne of *Erichthonius*, who ſo much beautified and enlarged the Citie of *Dardania*, that from thence-forth it was called *Troja*, and the people *Troës*. By ſupporting the unnaturall malice of *Saturn*, againſt his ſonne *Jupiter*, he loſt his own ſonne *Ganimedes*: who being taken priſoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the *Eagle* for his Enſigne, is by the Poets ſaid

to have been ſnatched up to Heaven by an *Eagle*. 60.

2653. 4. *Ilus* the ſonne of *Tros*, who built the Regall Palace called *Ilium*; and did withall ſo enlarge the City, and added ſo much Ornament and beauty to it, that it is frequently called *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Turretsof it, were of his erection, which being by the *Greeks* called Πύργοι, and ſometimes Πύργωμα, occaſioned the whole Citie to be called *Pergamus*. 54.

2707. 5. *Laomedon*, who new-built *Troy*: which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Grecians* (juſtly conceiving diſpleaſure againſt the treacherous King) twice took and defaced; *Laomedon* himſelf being ſlain the latter time. 36.

2743. 6. *Priamus*, who re-edified *Troy*; but giving leave to his ſonne *Paris* to raviſh *Helena*, wife to *Menelaus* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greekes* to renew their ancient quarrell: who after a ten years ſiege, forced the Town, having loſt of their own men 860000. and killed 666000. of the *Trojans*, and their Aſſociates, A.M. 2783. So as that of *Ovid* was moſt true,

Iam ſeges eſt ubi Troja *fuit*, *reſecandaq́; falce*,
Luxuriat Phrygio *ſanguine pinguis humus*.
Corne fit for ſithes now growes where *Troy* once ſtood,
And the ſoyle's fatted with the *Phrygian* bloud.

Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be conſidered First, whether the *Grecians* in theſe ten years lay continually before it, and it ſeemes they did not: but that rather they did beat up and down, waſting the Countrey. and robbing the Seas, for the firſt nine yeares; and in the tenth onely laid a formall ſiege. This is the more probable, becauſe that in the tenth year of the warre, *Priam* is recorded by *Homer* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have ſat on a high Tower; and to have learned of *Helen* the names and qualities of the *Greek* Commanders: which he could not be thought ignorant of, if they had ſo long together layn in eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken, and here we finde a difference. For ſome Hiſtorians tell us, that *Æneas* and *Antenor*, being either weary of the warre, or diſcontented that it was not managed by their ſole advice, or otherwiſe corrupted by the *Grecians*, betrayed it to the enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudiciall to his *Æneas*; whom he intended to make the pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth us of a *wooden-horſe*: wherein divers of the *Greek* Princes lay hidden, which by *Sinon* one of the *Grecians*, was brought to *Troy*-gates: and that the people deſirous of that monument of the enemies flight, made a breach in their walls, that gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on hiſtory; it is thought by ſome, that over the *Scæan* Gate where the *Greekes* entered, was the portraiture of a large and ſtately horſe: and by others, that the walls were battered by a *wooden Engin* called an *Horſe*, as the *Romans* in after ages uſed a like Engine called a *Ramme*. Neither of which is much improbable: but with me perſwade not the integrity of *Antenor* or *Æneas*, for whoſe ſakes the fable of the *wooden horſe* was firſt invented.

The Citie being thus deſtroyed, the *Trojans* who remained in the Country, when *Æneas* and *Antenor* had forſaken it, began to think of ſome other place for their habitation: which having often ſhifted they fixed at laſt by advice of an *Oracle*, ſome four miles from the former; giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and ſorry village when *Alexander* came thither; who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the onely one they had, and a meane one too) offered up his own ſhield and took down another, which he uſed after in his fights againſt the *Perſians*: honouring it with gifts, and promiſing the people to rebuild and inlarge their City. But what he lived not to make good was performed by *Lyſimachus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next called the *Alexandrian Troas*, at laſt *Troas* ſimply. A free City it continued till the warre of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; in the courſe whereof *Fimbria* a *Roman Quæſtor* having ſeditiouſly ſlain the Conſul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bithynia*, and made himſelf Maſter of the Armie, being refuſed entrance here as a theefe and a Rebell, beſieged the City, and in the ſpace of eleven daies took it. And when he boaſted that he had done as much in eleven daies as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in as many yeers, one of the *Ilians* tartly anſwered, *That they wanted an* Hector *to defend them*. Afterwards *Julius Cæſar* emulous of *Alexanders* attempts, and deſcended from *Julus* of *Trojan* race, reſtored them to their liberty, and inlarged their territories: a *Colonie*, and an *Univerſity* of the *Romans* of no mean eſteem. But time and war, and the barbaritie of the *Turks*, have brought it unto rubbiſh, as before was ſaid.

In the diſtributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, this little Region, with that of *Myſia Helleſpontiaca* adjoining to it, made up the Province called by the name of *Helleſpontus*, ſubject with *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and the *Aſian* Iſles, to the exempt juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Following the fortunes of *Conſtantinople* till the taking of that City by the *Latines*, it became then ſubject to the *Greek* Emperours reſiding at *Nice*: conquered not long after by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* family. In the diviſion of whole Empire on the death of the ſecond *Otadine*, the whole Province of *Helleſpont*, with part of the greater *Myſia*, and *Æolis*, adjoining to them, and ſome part of *Lydia*, were ſeized upon by *Caraſus* a man of great power amongſt the *Turks*; who here erected a ſmall kingdome, called from him *Caraſia*, or *Caraſi-illi*: long ſince ſwallowed up by the *Ottoman* race, in the time of *Orchanes*, ſon of *Ottoman*, and the ſecond King of that houſe.

9. PHRYGIA MAJOR.

PHRYGIA MAJOR is bounded on the Eaſt with *Galatia*; on the Weſt with *Myſia* interpoſed betwixt it and the leſſer *Phrygia*; on the North with *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* ſpecially ſo called; on the South with *Lydia*. Called *Phrygia* for the reaſons before laid down; the word *Major* being

being added for distinctions sake, because the *greater* of the two.

The People of this Countrey were antiently more *superstitious* then the other *Asians*, as appeareth by the rites used in the Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and some other Godesses said to be also the Inventors of *Augury*, and other kindes of *Divination*. And yet for the most part men of after-wits, and all for *had I wist*; whence the Proverb, *Serò sapiunt Phryges*, applyed to those who wanted forecast, and knew better to lament misfortunes then to keep them off; and used not to bethink themselves of what would follow till it was too late. A people noted for effeminacy and lightnesse of conversation: and for fear they should not of themselves be wanton enough, their very *Musick* was so fitted as to dispose them to *lasciviousnesse*. Where by the way, I find three sorts of *Musick* spoken of amongst the Antients: the first, that which *Aristotle* calleth ἠθικὸν, because it setled and composed the affections; and *Boëtius*, the *Lydian Musick*, because much used by that people, before corrupted by long ease and ill example. It consisted principally of long notes or *Spondees*; such as is that supposed to be which *Elisha* called for, *Kings* 1. *chap.* 3. *v.* 15. to invite the spirit of prophesie to him, and was played by *David* before *Saul* to drive away the ill spirit from him. And of this sort was the *Church-Musick* of the *Primitive* times, fitted to calme mens passions, and raise their devotions; *ut per oblectamenta aurium* (as Saint *Augustine* hath it) *assurgat animus ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleasure of the ears the passions might be calmed, and the soul inflamed with pious and devout affections. The second sort is that which *Aristotle* calleth πρακτικὸν, or *Active* (as the other ἠθικὸν or *morall*) commending it before the other in the education of youth, because more stirring them to action; consisting of *Dactyles*, or one long note and two short ones, by him and *Boëtius* both called *Dorian*, as most peculiar to that people. The third and last by the Philosopher called ἐνθουσιαστικὸν, or ravishing, because it unhingeth the affections and stirreth men to lascivious gestures, and wanton thoughts; consisting of short notes or *Tribrachies*; *Boëtius* termes it *Phrygian*, as most in use amongst this loose and ungoverned nation; such as the *French Musick* in our age. A sort of Musick forbidden to be used by *Aristotle* but upon the *Theatre*, for contentation of the rude and unpolished people, by reason of that influence which it had upon mens behaviour. *Mutatâ Musicâ* (saith the *Orator*) *mutantur & mores; Curandum itaq; ut* Musica *quàm gravissima & sedatissima retineatur*, that is to say, the change of *Musick* maketh an alteration of manners; care therefore to be taken in the Common-Wealth, that the Musick be composed and grave, and such onely used. But see how farre this fidling humour hath led me out of the way; I return again.

The Countrey very rich and pleasant, well watered with the River *Sangarius* and *Marsyas*. Of which the former hath its spring or fountain in this Countrey, but his fall in the *Euxine*; on the banks whereof standeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The later was so called from one *Marsyas*, who striving with *Apollo* for preheminence in *Musick*, was by him flead: which fact (say the Poets) was so lamented, that from the tears of the mourners grew this River. The chief Townes are 1. *Gordion*, the seat of *Gordius*, who from a plowman being raised and chosen King of this Kingdome; placed the furniture of his waine and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, tied in such a knot; that the Monarchy of the world was promised to him that could untie it: which when *Alexander* had tried and could not undo it, he cut it with his sword. 2. *Midaium*, the seat of *Midas*, son to this *Gordius*, who being not a little covetous, intreated of *Bacchus*, that what ever he touched should be turned into gold; which petition granted, he was almost starved, his very victuall turned into gold till he had repealed his wish; and afterward for preferring *Pan's* pipe before *Apollo's* Harpe, his head was adorned with a comely paire of Asses eares. 3. *Colosse* where dwelt the *Colossians*, to whom Saint *Paul* writ one of his Epistles. 4. *Pessinus* where the Goddesse *Cybele* being worshipped, was called *Dea Pessinuntia*. The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they should be Lords of the world, if they could get this Goddesse into their possession. Hereupon they send to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to please a potent neighbour especially the *Romans*, being their Countrey-men, as descended from *Æneas* and his *Troians*; granted their request, and the Goddesse is shipp'd away for *Rome*. But behold the unluckinesse of fortune. The Ship, Goddesse and all made a stand in *Tiber*; neither could it be advanced forward by force or art. It hapned that one of the Vestall Virgins named *Claudia*, being suspected of unchastity, resolved to put her self upon this experiment: and fastning her girdle to the ship prayed to the Goddesse, that if she were causelessely suspected, the ship might be suffered to go forward; which was no sooner heard then granted, *Claudia* drawing the ship up the water to *Rome*; where I leave the people wondering at the miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it stands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by some made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* knot plac'd in it also; but neither rightly. Not far off stood the mountain *Dindyme*, overlooking the City, in which the Priests of *Cybele* had their usuall residence, thence called *Dindymene*. 5. *Apamea*, situate not far from the banks of *Meander*, antiently a most flourishing Emporie, & the *Metropolis* of the whole Countrey, till *Constantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pacatiana*: making 6. *Synnada* the *Metropolis* of the first. 7. *Hierapolis*, and 8. *Laodicea*, two noted Cities in those times, the principall of the other Province. 9. *Juliopolis*, and 10. *Tiberiopolis*, so called from the Emperours to whose honour dedicated. 11. *Dorylaum*, &c. Not known unto the antient Writers, but of more note in modern stories, are 1. *Sagnta*, the habitation of *Ertogul*, Father of *Othoman* the first King of the *Turks*. 2. *Chara-chisar*, by the *Grecians* called *Melampyrgos* or the *Black Tower*. 3. *Billezuga*. 4. *Eineg'oll*, places of consequence and importance taken by the said *Ottoman* from the Christians in the first rise of his fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they descended (as was shewn before) from *Gomer* the eldest sonne of *Japhet*, and *Askenaz* the eldest sonne of *Gomer*: of which, *Gomer* first placed himself in the mountainous Countreys of *Albania*; and afterwards in the more pleasant plaines of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeris*

(the poſterity of *Gomer* being generally called *Cimmerians*) did preſerve his memory. And as for *Aſkenaz*, he firſt took up his dwelling in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, and the banks of the *Helleſpont*, where was antiently a City and Territory called *Aſcania*, ſome Iſles adjoining called *Inſulæ Aſcaniæ*, the name of *Aſcanius* alſo very frequent in *Troy* it ſelf. An antient people they were doubtleſſe, eſteemed the antienteſt of the world by *Pſammiticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this experiment. Deſirous to inform himſelf to what Nation the priviledge of Antiquity did of right belong, he cauſed two Children to be kept in a fold, where they were ſuckled by goates; all mankind being prohibited upon very great penalties; to have recourſe to them. All the language which the children learned from their ſpeechleſſe nurſes, was no more then *Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* language ſignifieth Bread, and being of no ſignification at all in any other which was then known to the *Ægyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* on their ſide. But other Nations of the world not yielding to this ſentence, by a *Writ of Errour*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum* impannell'd a new *Jurie*; wherein it was pronounced on the *Scythians* ſide, *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*. Where by the way, *Goropius Becanus* makes the like uſe of this experiment, to prove the *High-Dutch* to be the Original or Mother-tongue of the world: becauſe *Becker* in that language ſignifieth, as with us a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Countrey reigned *Niobe*, who preferring her ſelf before *Latona*, the mother of *Phœbus* and *Diana*, had her Children ſlain before her face by an unſeen meanes, and was her ſelf turned into a ſtone, as the Poets fable. Here alſo reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting wiſdome to make uſe of it: is feigned to ſtand in hell up to the chin in water, and that too under a tree whoſe fruit toucheth his lips; yet both the one and the other flie from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*,

——*Tibi* Tantale *nullæ*
Deprenduntur aquæ, quæq; imminet, effugit arbor.

In *Engliſh* thus.

Thou canſt not, *Tantalus*, thoſe waters taſt,
The tree juſt at thy lippes, flies off as faſt.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the tyranny of time or war, the *Phrygians* were made ſubject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their command till the conqueſt of *Lydia* by the *Perſians*: with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the ſtronger by the acceſſion of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the ſword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antigonus* one of his great Captains: and on his overthrow at the battell of *Ipſus*, to *Seleucus* the Conquerour, the firſt King of that race: following the ſame fortune after that with the reſt of *Aſia*, till they came to be poſſeſſed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Conſtantine* laying to it the *Greater Myſia* made two Provinces of it: the one called *Salutaris*, from ſome miraculous cures there wrought by the *Arch-Angel Michael*, as was then generally believed: the other called *Pacatiana*, from *Pacatianus*, who in the time of the ſaid *Conſtantine* was *Præfect* for the *Prætorium* of the Eaſt, and divers years before had began his honours with the *Lieutenantſhip* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Conſtantinopolitans* it became a prey unto the *Turkes* of the *Selzuccian* Family; poſſeſſed by them till the death of *Aladine* the laſt King of that race: when ſeized upon together with the *Greater Myſia*, and thoſe parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidin*, a great *Turkiſh* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdome, called by his name *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi*; extorted ſhortly from his heires by the houſe of *Ottoman*.

10. *MYSIA.*

INterpoſed betwixt the two *Phrygia's* lieth the Countrey of MYSIA, bounded on the Eaſt with *Phrygia Major*; on the Weſt with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean* Sea; on the North with parts of *Bithynia*, *Propontis*, and the *Helleſpont*; and on the South with part of *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and the *Ægean*. So called from the *Myſians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether theſe *Myſians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or ſome inter-lopers which thruſt in afterwards amongſt them, I find not determined. Moſt probable it is they were naturall *Phrygians*; being as ſuperſtitious in the worſhip of their ſeverall *Deities*, as any *Phrygian of them* all: and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, from the abundance of *Beech-trees* which grow amongſt them, by them called *Myſæ*. A people of ſo baſe and contemptible quality that it grew into a common proverb to call a fellow of no worth *Myſiorum poſtremus*.

The principall Mountain of this Countrey is that called *Olympus*, ſituate in the north-parts hereof bordering towards *Bithynia*: which as it is called *Olympus Myſius*, to difference it from *Olympus* in *Greece*; ſo the people of the *Greater Myſia*, where this Mountain is, are called *Olympeni*, to difference them from the *Myſii* or *Mœſi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, thoſe of moſt note beſides *Æſopus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*. are 1. *Caicus*, on whoſe bankes ſtand's the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence paſſeth into the *Ægean* Sea, at the Bay of *Elæa*, and 2. the famous River of *Granicus*, which hath his fountain in *Myſia Major*, and paſſing through *Myſia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the bankes hereof, in his firſt eſſay againſt the *Perſians*: by whom upon the firſt noyſe of his preparations he was ſo ſlighted, that *Darius* King of *Perſia*, gave command to his Leiutenants reſiding in *Aſia Minor*, that they ſhould take him alive, whip him with rods, and ſo convey him to his preſence, A notoble example of pride and fall of the *Perſians*. But *Alexander* ſoon taught them another leſſon. For though the *Perſians* were poſſeſſed of the higher bankes of the River, with an intent to ſtop his paſſage; yet he reſolved to charge them in the face of their ſtrength: knowing full well that if he could beat them on a place of ſo great advantage, he ſhould not one-

ly

ly lessen them in point of reputation, but beget an opinion of himself that he was invincible. And so accordingly it proved, the *Persians* being vanquished by him, and all the Kingdomes and Provinces of this *Asia*, submitting to him on the noyse of the Victory (as an Enemy not to be resisted upon equall termes) some few Townes excepted. And therefore it was wisely advised by *Machiavell*, that he who takes upon him to defend a passage, should with his ablest forces oppose the *Assailant*; because in all invasions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Streets, and Mountaines; they do not onely dishearten their Souldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellowes and partakers, of being succoured and defended by such weak Protectors. Which caution if the *Persians* Commanders had observed either here, or at *Pyla Ciliciæ* spoken of hereafter; *Alexander* had not so easily subverted the *Persian* Monarchy. But the fatall period of it was now drawing on, and the men either naturally Cowards, or els prodigiously besotted.

It is divided commonly into *Mysia Minor*, or the *Lesser Mysia*, which lying on the West towards *Troas* and the *Hellespont*, is called sometimes *Mysia Hellespontiaca*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperour *Constantine*, made up that Province which he called the *Consular Hellespont*: and *Mysia Major*, called from *Olympus* which was in it, *Mysia Olympena*, and the Inhabitants *Olympeni*; which joyned by that Emperour to the western parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he caused to be called *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reason formerly delivered.

Places of most observation in the *Lesser Mysia*, were 1. *Abydus*, standing on the narrowest of the *Hellespont*, opposite unto *Sestos* in *Thrace*; first built by the *Milesians* with the consent of *Gyges* King of *Lydia*, to whom the Countrey then belonged. Memorable both in the antient and modern story. In antient story for the famous resolution of the Inhabitants, when besieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into some distresse, and hopelesse of good conditions from him, the young men of the Town who had bound themselves by oath to die rather then fall into his hands, set fire thereof, and barbarously slew themselves with as many of the women and children as could be met with. Which newes being brought to *Philip*, moved so little compassion, that he said he would give the *Abydeni* three daies leisure to die; and therefore would not suffer any of his souldiers to enter the Town, then set open to him, either to take the spoile thereof, or hinder this bloudy execution, till the three daies end. In Modern story no lesse memorable for the taking of it by the *Turkes*, in the reign of *Orchanes* the sonne of *Ottoman*, through the treason of the Governours daughter: who bewitched with the person and valour of *Abdevachmen*, a young *Turkish* Gallant, whom she had beheld from the Towers of the Castle, threw a letter to him as he drew neer the wall, wherein she manifested her affection, and promised to make him master of that fortresse, if he would perswade his Generall to raise the siege, and come with a strong party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever since in the power of the *Turkes*, well fortified, and one of the two Castles spoken of before, which defend *Constantinople* on that side from all force by Sea. 2. *Cyzicus*, seated in the *Propontis*, in an Island of the same name also, but so neer the Continent that it joyned to it by two bridges. The *Metropolis* of the *Consular Hellespont*, by consequence an Arch-Bishops See in the prosperous times of Christianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother-Cities or *Metropoles* of their severall Provinces. A town of wonderfull strength and beauty, when first known to the *Romans*, called therefore by *L. Florus*, the *Rome* of *Asia*: who gives this character also of it, *Cyzicum nobilis civitas, arce, mœnibus, portu, turribusq; marmoreis Asiatica plaga littora illustrat*, that is to say, that the noble City of *Cyzicum* by the excellency of the Walls, Bulworks Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautifie and illustrate the Shores of *Asia*. Honoured amongst many other goodly and magnificent buildings with a glorious Temple, the pillars whereof being four Cubits thick, and fifty Cubits high, were each of one entire stone onely; the whole fabrick all of polished Marble, every stone joyned unto the other with a line of *Gold*. In vain besieged by *Mithridates* in the time of his warre, who lost before it by the sword, pestilence and famin no fewer then 300000 men; and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an *Earthquake*, the *falling Sickneſſe* of the East, as before is said, it could never be restored to its former luster: the very ruines of it daily made more ruinous by transporting the stones and Marbles to *Constantinople*, for the Embelishing of that City. 3. *Lampsacus* on the same *Propontis*, in which the beastly god *Priapus* was worshipped in as beastly a figure: *quem non denudo* (as wittily *Lactantius* scoffeth it) *ne quid appareat risu dignum*; supposed to be the same with the *Syrian* or *Phœnician Baal*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures. For this and on some other reasons, *Alexander* had conceived against it such an high displeasure when he was in *Asia*, that he resolved to raze it to the very ground. And seeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Ambassadour from the Town to obtain his favour, commanded him to hold his peace, and sware as by way of prevention that he would deny whatsoever he requested of him: whereupon *Anaximenes* intreated him to destroy the City, which now for his oaths sake he could not do; and so this wicked City at that time escaped. 4. *Parium*, so called, as some say, from *Parius*, the sonne of *Jason*, a Colonie at first of the *Milesians*, of the *Romans* afterwards: *Troas* and this, the onely two *Roman* Colonies in all the Province. By *Homer* called *Adrastia*: as *Lampsacus* in the same Author is called *Pityusa*. More in the Land. are 5. *Scepsis*. 6. *Hieragerme*, both mentioned by *Ptolomy*, but of more antiquity then fame.

Chief Cities in MYSIA MAJOR or OLYMPENA, are 1. *Dainta*, in the North-parts not far from *Olympus*. 2. *Apollonia*, near a large Lake sacred to *Apollo*, in the same parts also. 3. *Palæ Scepsis*, or *Scepsis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Ægean* Sea, joining upon *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*. 4. *Adramyttium* mentioned, *Acts* 27. where Saint *Paul* took ship to go to *Rome*. 5. *Antandrus* on the same Sea also, now called Saint *Dimitri*, named at first *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmeritans* here inhabiting (which sheweth that *Mysia* antiently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterwards *Edonis*, and at last

Antandrus

Antandrus, either becauſe built or repaired rather by the men of *Andros*, an Iſland of the *Ægean*, ſpoken of before amongſt the *Cyclades*; or becauſe the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the ſon of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his ranſome, or rather in exchange for him as the word doth intimate. 5. *Protoſelene*, on the ſame coaſt alſo. More in the land. 6. *Præpemiſſus*. 7. *Troianopolis*. 8. *Alydda*, of which little memorable. 9. *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this tract, ſituate in a goodly plain on the banks of the River *Cycus*, of a ſmall Town or fortreſſe made a ſtately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent *Library* containing 200000. Volumes; for the writing or tranſcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here firſt invented, which from hence to this day is called *Pergamenum*. Here alſo were thoſe coſtly hangings firſt invented which we now call *Tapeſtrie*; by the *Romans* called firſt *Aulæa*, from *Aula*, ſignifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof (by whom invented) being the firſt room furniſhed and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous *Phyſician*, living very healthfully to the age of 140 years: his health preſerved to ſo great age, by theſe means ſpecially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2. Never eating any thing that was rawe; 3. Alwaies carrying about him ſome ſweet perfumes. Finally, this was one of the *ſeven Churches* to which Saint *John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were originally a City of *Myſia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of the *Lydian Aſia*; within the limits whereof thoſe *ſeven Churches* were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hereof which flouriſhed here for ſome ages in ſuch wealth and ſplendour, they came but from a poor and obſcure original. The firſt of them one *Philetærus*, an *Eunuch*,, belonging to *Antigonus* one of the Great *Alexanders* greateſt Captaines; and after his death to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*, by whom truſted with his money and accompts. Fearing the furie of his Maſter then grown old and tyrannous, he ſeized on the Caſtle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 talents, which he offered with his ſervice unto *Seleucus* the firſt King of *Syria*. But both *Lyſimachus* and *Seleucus* dying ſhortly after, he kept the money to himſelf, and reigned in this City as an abſolute King: leaving the Kingdome at his death to his Brother *Eumenes*, no better man then a poor Carter, till raiſed by the fortunes of this *Eunuch*. *Eumenes* furniſhed with money though of no great territory, was able by the *Gaules* and other Mercinaries; not only to preſerve himſelf againſt the *Syrian* Kings who laid claim to his City, but alſo to enlarge his bounds as he ſaw occaſion. But the main improvement of this Kingdome happ'ned in the daies of *Eumenes* the ſecond, the ſonne of *Attalus*, the brother and Succeſſour of this *Eumenes*: who being uſeful to the *Romans* in their warres againſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, and *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Troas*, and both the *Myſia's*; which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that warre. The reſt of the affaires hereof till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this ſhort Catalogue of

The Kings of *Pergamus*.

A. M.

3668. 1. *Philetærus*, the firſt King of *Pergamus*, of whom before. 20.

3688. 2. *Eumenes*, Brother, or as ſome ſay, the Brothers ſonne of *Philetærus*, vanquiſhed *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Hierax*, in a fight neer *Sardis*, and awed *Seleucus Callinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*. 22.

3710. 3. *Attalus* Brother of *Eumenes*, reſtored *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian* to his Kingdome, and diſcomfited the *Gaules*, compelling them to keep themſelves within the Countrey ſince named *Galatia*. A Confederate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.

3754. 4. *Eumenes* II. Sonne of *Attalus* gratified by the *Romans* with the ſpoiles of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditary Enemie to the Kingdome of *Macedon*, which he laboured the *Romans* to deſtroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more uſe of theſe *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow to leſſe liking with them.

3782. 5. *Attalus* II. Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdome was offered by the *Romans* in the life of his Brother then leſſe gracious with them; but he moſt gallantly refuſed it, to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.

3792. 6. *Eumenes* III. Brother of *Attalus* the ſecond, and Tutor or Protectour to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whoſe minority he governed the eſtate as King.

3813. 7. *Attalus* III. Sonne of *Attalus* the ſecond, ſucceeded on the death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdome but five years onely deceaſed without iſſue, & bequeathed it by his laſt Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had poſſeſſion of ſo great a Legacy, *Ariſtonicus* the baſe Sonne of *Eumenes* made himſelf maſter of *Mindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and eſtates hereof. Againſt whom the *Romans* making warre were aided by the greateſt part of the *Aſian* Kings; not ſeeing their own danger and deſtruction to draw neer unto them, by letting ſuch a potent neighbour come amongſt them to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this warre, though they had the better of it. For being now made maſters of the riches and ſweets of *Aſia*, they took with them their vices alſo: growing thereby to great riot, and unparalleled luxurie: which overcame the rigour and ſeverity of their former diſcipline, and made them apt for faction, and thoſe bloody quarrels, which proved the ruine of their State. So truly was it ſaid by *Juſtine*, *Sic* Aſia *facta* Romanorum, *cum opibus ſuis vitia quoque ſua* Romam *tranſmiſit*. This Kingdome taking it in the largeſt extent thereof being thus ſubdued and ſetled as a *Roman* Province., had the name of *Aſia*, according to the name of the Greater *Continent*; by *Ptolomie* and others called *Aſia propria*: continuing under the ſubjection of the *Roman* Emperours till the tranſlating of the Imperiall ſeat unto *Conſtantinople*; as after that unto the Emperours of

of the East, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* family. Which being ended in the person of *Aladine* the second, those parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdome of *Caraſan*, or *Caraſa-Illi*, as those which had been laid to the Greater *Phrygia*; made up the *Aidinian*: both of them swallowed up long since by the *Ottoman* Kings, the *Acceſſories* running the same fortune as the *Principalls* did.

II. *ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.*

BEsides the *Proper Asia* spoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* Kingdome, there was one part hereof, which antiently had the name of *Asia*, before it was communicated to the greater *Continent*, or this whole *Peninsula*. This for distinctions sake the *Romans* called the PROCONSULAR ASIA; because committed to the government of one of their *Proconsuls* (who had his residence in *Ephesus* the principall City of this Province) together with the *Consular Helleſpont*, and the Province of the *Isles of Asia*. This we have spoken of before, as also how the Countrey lying about *Ephesus*, had more especially the name of *Asia*, then any other: so specially that *Erasmus* thereupon inferreth that by *Asia* in the *New Testament*, (but more peculiarly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Asia* in which *Ephesus* standeth.

This being agreed on for the name, we shall bound it on the East with *Lydia*, whereof it was antiently a part; on the West, with the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with *Mysia*; and on the South, with *Caria*. And having so bounded it, we shall divide it into the two Regions of ÆOLIS and IONIA: that of *Æolis* lying on the North, towards *Mysia*; as *Ionia* doth upon the South, towards *Caria*: possessed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of them so named.

Principall Towns in ÆOLIS, are 1. *Acarnea*, over against the Isle of *Lesbos*, the Royall seat sometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*, who being once a Scholler of *Aristotles* but unworthy of so good a Master, seized on this City, and here committed so great cruelties, that at last he was taken by the people, sowed in an Oxes hide, and so baited to death. 2. *Pitane*, on a little River so named, falling into *Caicus*, not farre from the influx or fall thereof into the *Ægean*: in which Town they had an Art of making bricks which would swimme on the water. 3. *Elæa*, on the mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 4. *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Augustus*, called *Sebastopolis*. 5. *Cene*, by *Strabo* called *Cane*, by *Mela*, *Canne*, not farre from a *Promontarie* of the same name. 6. *Cuma*, the principal and greatest of all *Æolis*, the birth-place of *Ephorus* a learned man of elder times, and the habitation of *Sibylla* sirnamed *Cumana*, to difference her from *Sibylla Cumæa*, so named from *Cuma*, a City of the Realme of *Naples*. 7. *Phocæa*, a Colonie of the *Athenians*, so named from the multitudes of Sea-Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phoca*) which thrust themselves a shore at the building of it. The people hereof over-burdened by the *Persians*, and impatient of so great servitude as was laid upon them; forsook their Countrey, binding themselves by a fearful oath, never more to return unto it: and after many and long wanderings came at last into *Gaule*, where they founded the famous City of *Marseilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Josephus* said to be descended of *Elisha* the Sonne of *Javan*, who therefore calleth them by the name of *Elsei*. And it is possible enough that so it was: *Elisha* being planted in *Greece* where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponesus*; from whence some of his race in succeeding times might passe over into *Asia*, and possesse those coasts. For that they were a *Greek* people is confessed by all; the *Æolick dialect* or phrase of speech, taking name from hence. Not otherwise much mentioned in the course of story, then as partakers of the same fortunes with the rest of their *Asian* Neighbours before related, and so not necessary to be now repeated.

IONIA, as a larger tract, requires a more particular & punctuall description. For here the River *Lycus* falleth into the *Meander*, and here *Meander* and *Cayster*, two of the most famous Rivers of *Asia Minor*: (of which more hereafter) fall into the *Ægean*. Here is the renowned City of *Ephesus*, honoured with one of the worlds *seven wonders*, the long abode of Saint *Paul*, and the death and sepulture of Saint *John*; the Promontory *Trogyllium*, with a little Isle adjoyning of the same name, mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 15.

Principall Cities of this tract, are 1. *Myus*, on an arme of the Sea, assigned together with *Lampsacus*, and *Magnesia*, by *Artaxerxes* to *Themistocles*; when being banished his own Countrey he fled to his greatest Enemie for entertainment; and there met with more safety then *Athens* would, and more honour then it could afford him: So that he well might say (as he often did) *Periissem nisi periissem*. And on the other side, the King was so overjoyed at his comming to him, (as having now upon his side the man who had most hindered him in the conquest of *Greece*) that many times in his sleep he was heard to clap his hands and say, *Habeo Themistoclem Atheniensem*. In after-times, the water drawing further off, the soyle brought forth such an innumerable multitude of fleas, that the inhabitants were faine to forsake the City, and with their bagge and baggage to retire to *Miletus*: Nothing hereof being left but the name and memory in the time of *Pausanias*. 2. *Erythra*, memorable for the habitation of one of the *Sibyls*, from hence called *Sibylla Erythræa*; of which Propheteſſes we shall speak more when we come to *Africk*. 3. *Lebedus*, of most note in the elder-times for those publick Plaies, which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4. *Clazomene*, situate in a small Ilet, neer unto the shore, of much esteem amongst the *Romans* for the wines there growing; and no lesse honoured by the *Asians* for a beautiful Temple of *Apollo* seated neer unto it. 5. *Priene*, the birth-place of *Bias*, one of the seven *Wise-men* of *Greece*. 6 *Ipsus*, renowned for the great battel betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexanders* chiefe Commanders; the Victory wherein falling to *Seleucus*, with the death of his Adversary, estated him in all the Con-

quests

quests of his Master, except *Egypt* onely. 7. *Teos*, the birth-place of *Anacreon* that lascivious and drunken Poet, hence sirnamed *Teius*; the *Ovid* of the *Grecians* both for wit and wantonnesse: of both which it may well be doubted whether the smoothnesse of the verse, or the wantonnesse of their expressions be the more predominant. 8. *Smyrna*, a faire and antient City, on a Bay thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*: the greatest part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the fairest on the side of an hill overlooking the waters. Destroyed by the *Lydians*, it was re-edified by *Antigonus* and *Lysimachus*, two of *Alexanders* great Commanders; of good accompt in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the *seven* Asian *Churches*, to which Saint *John* inscribed his *Revelation*: Much traded and frequented to this very day especially for Chamlets, Grograines, and such stuffes; made for the most part at *Ancyra* the Chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vended to the forreign Merchant. For government of the trade whereof, and of other commodities of these parts, the *English* Merchants have an Officer called the *Consul* of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it amongst others, a goodly Temple, dedicated unto *Homer*, said to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. 9. *Colophon*, most memorable for the Inhabitants of it, so skilled in horse-man-ship, that the side on which they served in warre was sure of Victory; whereupon *Colophonem addere*, to put a good end to any businesse, grew into a Proverb. It was also another of those Cities, which so ambitiously contended for the birth of *Homer*; of which there were seven in all, as the old Verses tell us, saying

Septem urbes certant de stirpe insignis Homeri
Smyrna, Rhodos, Colophon, Salamis, Chios, Argos, Athenæ.

Whether *Homer* purposely concealed his Countrey, that all places might challenge him for theirs, I am not able to say. But sure I am that *Paterculus* speaketh it in the commendation of *Hesiodus* (the next *Greek* Poet after him in course of time) that he had specified his birth-place: *Qui vitavit ne in id quod* Homerus *inciderit, patriam & parentes testatus est.* 10. *Ephesus*, the *Metropolis* of the *Roman Asia*, and the seat of the Primat of the *Asian* Diocese: memorable in the purest times of *Christianity*, for being the Episcopall See of *Timothy* the Evangelist, the first Bishop hereof. 2ly In that Saint Paul directed to the people of it, one of his Epistles; and 3ly for the burial of Saint *John* the Apostle, who by some learned men of the elder times, is said to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead but sleeping; building that thought upon that saying which went abroad among the Brethren, *that that Disciple should not die. John* 21. *v.* 23. And no lesse memorable amongst the Gentiles for that sumptuous and magnificent Temple here consecrated to *Diana*: which for the largenesse, furniture, and workmanship of it, was accompted one of the Wonders of the World. The length thereof said to be 425. foot, 220. foot in breadth, supported with 127. Pillars of Marble, seventy foot in height, of which twenty seven were most curiously engraven, and all the rest of Marble polished. The modell of it contrived by one *Ctesiphon*, and that with so much art and curiosity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finished. When finished it was fired seven times, the last time by *Erastratus*, onely to get himself a name: which hap'ning on the same night in which *Alexander* the *Great* was born, gave occasion to that weighty but witty scoffe, that *Diana* (she was counted one of the Godesses of *midwifery*) could not attend the preservation of her Temple, being then busied at the birth of so great a Prince.

As for those *Iones*, or *Ionians*, they were no doubt the descendants of *Javan* the fourth sonne of *Japhet*, as hath been shewn before in our *generall Preface*: but whether they came hither out of *Græcia*, or passed from hence into that Countrey, hath been made a question. The *Athenians* boasting of themselves to be *Aborigines*, men growing as it were out of the Soile it selfe, without any *Ancestors*, report that those *Ionians* were a Colonie of their Plantation. But *Hecatæus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the contrary, Saying that the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from those of *Asia*: for that *Attica* was antiently called *Ionia*, *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus* doth declare expresly. Most probable it is, that *Hecatæus* was in the right; these parts of *Asia* lying so directly in the way from the vally of *Shinaar* unto *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave some of his company here, when he ferried the rest over to the opposite Continent. I know *Pausanias* ignorant of their true antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion* the sonne of *Xuthus* and grandchild of *Deucalion*: wherein he came so neer the truth, though he missed the men, that it was the grand-son of that man who escaped the flood, from whom both the *Athenians*, and those *Ionians* had their true Originall. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aide to those *Ionians* against the *Persians*, who on the overthrow given to *Cræsus*, pretended to the Lordship or Dominion of *Asia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch. Upon which ground, and the sending of fresh aid to them upon their revolt in the time of *Darius*, that King first undertook the invasion of *Greece*.

After this yielding to the times they followed the fortune of the strongest, subject successively to the *Persians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Constantinopolitans*, and *Turks*; till the death of *Aladine* before mentioned: when both *Æolis* and *Ionia* got a new name, and are now called *Sarcan*, from *Sarachan* a *Turkish* Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine* seized upon this Countrey, and erected here a petit Kingdome. long since subdued by those of the race of *Ottoman*.

12. LYDIA.

LYDIA is bounded on the East with *Phrygia Maior*, and some part of *Pisidia*, from which separated by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Asia* specially so called; on the North, with the *Greater Mysia*; on the South, with *Caria*. So called from *Lud* the Sonne of *Sem*, by some of whose posterity it was first inhabited. In the full Latitude and extent thereof,

of, as antiently comprehended in *Æolis* and *Ionia*, the adjoining Provinces, it made the *Lydian Asia* spoken of before; within the verge whereof all the *seven Churches* were contained, mentioned by Saint *John* in the *Revelation*.

The people of this Countrey are said to have been the first coyners of money, the first Hucksters and Pedlers, and the first inventers of dice, ball, cheſſe, and the like games: necessity and hunger thereunto enforcing them, according to that of *Persius*, *Artis Magister, ingenii q, largitor venter*. For being sorely vext with famine, in the time of *Atis*, one of the progenitors of *Omphale*; they devised these games; and every second day playing at them, beguiled their hungry bellies. Thus for 22 years, they continued playing and eating by turns: but then seeing that themselves were more fruitfull in getting and bearing children, then the soile in bringing forth sustenance to maintaine them: they sent a Colony into *Italy* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the Sonne of *Atis*, who planted in that Countrey, called at first *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuscany*.

This Countrey was also called *Mœonia*, and was thought to have been the native soile of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the seven contending Cities, and those which seem to have most colour for their claime, were antiently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was said before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Mœonides*, and *Mœonius Vates*: and in some Authors, *Carmen Mœonium* is used for *Homers* Poeticall abilities, as *Carmine* Mœonio *consurgere*, in *Ovid*. *Bacchus* is also called sometimes by the name of *Mœonius*, but for a very different reason; *viz.* because antiently there were no Trees in all this Countrey, but the Vine onely.

Principall Mountaines of this Countrey are 1. *Sipylus*, and 2. *Tmolus*; this last of most accompt in regard of the great fruitfulnesse of it, covered over with Vines, and yielding abundance of the best *Saffron*. Chiefe Rivers of it are 1. *Hermus*, which rising out of *Phrygia Major*, passeth onely by the skirts hereof, and so falleth into a fair Bay of the *Ægean*, opening towards the Isle of *Clazomene*. 2. *Pactolus*, which rising at the foot of mount *Tmolus*, falleth not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongst the Poets for its golden sands. 3. *Caystrus*, no lesse notable for the abundance of Swans, which swim thereon, whose fountain is in *Phrygia Major* also neer the borders hereof; and his fall in the *Ægean* also over against the Isle of *Samos*. 4. *Mæander*, which rising out of a branch of the *Taurus* in the furthest parts of the said *Phrygia*, towards *Lycaonia*, passeth by *Magnesia*, and endeth his course in the same Sea, neer the City of *Ephesus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the least, as *Prusæus* counteth them. Of which in generall thus the Poet

Quique recurvatis, lud it Mæander *in undis.*
Mæander plaies his watry pranks,
In his so many winding banks.

The Countrey by reason of these Rivers was exceeding fruitfull, abounding in all sorts both of wealth and pleasures, well cultivated and manured above ground, and under-neath inriched with prodigall veines of Gold and Silver, and some precious gemmes. Which made the people, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more sensuall and voluptuous and lesse fit for action, then any plot of their new Masters could have brought them to; had not the naturall delicacies of the Soyle it self, contributed to the advancement of their design. And yet before, they were sufficiently infamous for their luxury, and excesse of riot, when best seen in warres: so that it is a marvel they were able to prevaile on the neighbour Nations, and bring them under their command; as in the times of some of *Cræsus* Predecessors it is said they did. Unlesse perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Mœcenas*, the great favorite of *Augustus Cæsar*, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *ubi res vigiliam exigeret erat sanè insomnis, providens, & agendi sciens; simul ac aliquid ex negotio remitti posset, otio ac mollitie penè ultra fœminam fluens.* No man more vigilant then he in times of businesse, nor woman more effeminate in his times of leisure.

Principall Cities of this Countrey were 1. *Sardis*, on both sides of *Pactolus*, the seat Royall of *Cræsus* and the Kings of *Lydia*; till the conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*. After which time, being taken by the *Grecians* it so startled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his *Attendants*, to say aloud every day whilest he was at dinner, that the *Grecians had taken Sardis*; continuing that *Memento* till it was recovered. Which course (I note this onely by the way) was commonly observed in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Calice* did remain in the hands of the *English*; and might be profitably revived till again recovered from the *French*. Overthrown by a most terrible *Earth-quake*, (to which disease most of these *Asian* Cities have been very much subject,) it was re-edified again at the cost of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the *Metropolis* of this Province, and one of the *Seven Churches* of the *Lydian Asia*, of which the holy Spirit took such speciall notice. The others (besides *Pergamus*, already mentioned in the *Greater Mysia*, and *Ephesus*, and *Smyrna*, in the *Proper Asia*) were 2. *Philadelphia* neer or on the banks of the River *Caystrus* the second City in accompt next to *Sardis* it selfe: and honoured with the dignity of a *Metropolitan* as appeareth by the Acts of the *Constantinopolitan* Councill, where *Eustathius* Bishop hereof doth subscribe himselfe, Ἐπίσκοπος τῆς Φιλαδελφέων Μητροπόλεως, Bishop of the *Metropolis* of *Philadelphia*, in the Province of *Lydia*. 3. *Thiatyra*, honoured with the same privilege also, as appears by the constant Order observed as well in the *Civill* as *Ecclesiasticall* Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The reason whereof (for otherwise it was contrary to the practise both of Church and State, to have in one Province more then one *Metropolis*) was the respect had to those severall Churches in regard of their primitive antiquity, and the foundation of them by Saint *John* the Apostle, as it was generally believed. 4. *Laodicea*, by *Ptolomy* placed amongst the Cities of this Province, as it stood in his time, and before: but afterwards laid by *Constantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the *Metropolis* thereof (which honour *Hierapolis* had before enjoyed) it being well observed by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not dispose of their

Provinces

Provinces according to Nations; ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕτερον τρόπον διατάξαι τὰς διοικήσεις, ἐφ' ἃις τὰς πολίτας δικαιοδοσίας, but according to those *districts* or Circuits, in which they kept their Courts of justice. Next unto these, there were of especiall consideration, 5. *Magnesia ad Maandrum*, so called because situate on that River, to difference it from 6. *Magnesia penes Sipylum montem*, another of the same name neer the hill *Sipylus*. The first assigned over to *Themistocles* together with *Myus* and *Lampsacus*, as was said before. The other memorable for the great battell fought neer unto it, betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*: the losse whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occasioned the losse of all his *Asian* Provinces on this side of *Taurus*, and the payment of 15000 talents for the charge of the warre, besides some other hard conditions then imposed upon him. 7. *Alabanda*, opposite to *Magnesia* on the other side of *Maander*, the people whereof, immediatly on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not onely sent Ambassadors to *Rome* to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did, but built a Temple to it, and appointed *Anniversary* Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made *Godesse*. A thing more to be wondered at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor people for bestowing on their City, so divine an honour. 8. *Trallis*, on the banks of *Cayster*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Bishop, and godly Martyr, writ the Epistle *ad Trallenses*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the Sonne of *Sem*, is testified by the generall consent of such antient writers, as treat of the dispersions of the Sonnes of *Noah*: to which opinion the neerenesse of the names of *Lud*, *Ludim*, and *Lydi* (or λύδοι, as the *Grecians* call them) seems to give good countenance. Nor shall I here dispute it further, as a point unquestioned: the tale of *Lydus*, I know not what Nobleman that should name this Countrey, being taken up amongst the *Greeks* for want of more certain truths. Once setled here, they grew up suddenly to a Kingdome; Amongst the Antient Kings whereof are numbered *Manes* as the first, *Cotis*, and *Atis*, and then *Asius* (from whom *Lydia* first, and after all the Continent, had the name of *Asia*) as his immediate Successors. After them I find mention of one *Cambletes*, said by *Athenaus* to be so great a Gourmandizer, that in his sleep he eat his wife; and finding her hand in his mouth next morning, slew himself for shame: and of another named *Andramytes*, as infamous for his filthy lusts as *Cambletes* for gluttony. But the race of these Kings ending in *Omphale* the Mistresse of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion spinne amongst her Damosels; the *Heraclida* or posterity of *Hercules* succeeded next: of whom there is no constant and continued succession till the time of *Ardisius* the nineteenth in order of that line, who began his reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*. Under his successors the affaires hereof so exceedingly prospered, especially under *Haliattes* the Father of *Crœsus*, that *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, acknowledged themselves Vassalls to this Crown: conceived both in wealth and power to be equall to the *Ægyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdomes, till the Conquest of *Syria* and *Ægypt*, by *Nabuchadnezzer*, gave him the preheminence. But being come unto the height it received a fall in the person of *Crœsus* the Successour of him who so much advanced it. The Kings hereof from the time of the said *Ardisius*, take in order following.

The Kings of *Lydia*.

A.M.

3190. 1. *Ardisius*. 36.
3226. 2. *Haliactes*. 14.
3240. 3. *Melos*, who overcame the people of *Sardis*. 12.
3252. 4. *Candaules*, who shewing his wife naked to *Gyges*, was by him slain; who marying his wife, succeeded him in his Kingdome. The whole story is this. *Candaules* had to his wife a woman of unparallell'd beauty; And supposing the greatnesse of his happinesse, not to consist so much in his own fruition, as the notice which others might take of it, intended to shew her in natures bravery to *Gyges* the master of his heards. *Gyges* at first disswaded him from an attempt so foolish: but seeing no perswasion could prevaile, he condescended. When he had seen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, *Candaules* cryed to him, *Esto fidelis, Gyges*: which words the Queen marking, and seeing the back of *Gyges* as he left the chamber, the next morning sent for him. When holding a poynyard in her hand, she gave him his choise, either presently to be slaine, or else to kill the King and take her to wife, with the Kingdome for her Dower. Of which two evils he made choice of that which he thought the best, and so killed *Candaules*.
5. *Gyges* the first of this new line, added *Ionia* to his other dominions. A Prince of so great wisdome, for the times he lived in, that all other Kings his neighbours fate as (it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them: occasioning thereby the fiction of a Ring he had, by which made invisible, when and as often as he pleased.
3305. 6. *Ardis* II. the Sonne of *Gyges*. 37.
3342. 7. *Sardiattes*. 15.
3357. 8. *Haliactes* II. of whom before. 57.
3406. 9. *Crœsus* the last King of *Lydia*, subdued *Doris*, and *Æolis*; after which victories, he was overcome by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*: in which battell, a Sonne of *Crœsus* who had been dumb from his cradle, seeing a Souldier ready to kill his father, suddenly broke out into these words, *Rex est, cave ne occîdas*. After this overthrow, and the captivity of *Crœsus* (one of the richest Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Persian* Province, A. M. 3420.

The

The *Lydians* after this rebelled; but being again ſubdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their horſes of ſervice, diſpoyled them of all their armour, and trained them up in all manner of looſe and effeminate living; weakening by this means a powerful Nation, which before that time had not onely maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoining. After this they continued *Perſian* till the Conqueſt of *Aſia* by the *Macedonians*, in the diviſion of whoſe ſpoiles they fell to the portion of *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*: following the common fortune of the reſt of this *Aſia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire; it had the *Lower Myſia*, or *Myſia Olympena* annexed unto it: by means whereof the limits of each became ſo confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one are many times aſcribed to the other. In the falling of the Eaſtern Empire it was made (as all the reſt of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that part of it which lieth next to *Æolis*, ſubject to the *Caraſian* Family; as the other part towards the *Phrygia Major* were to the *Aidinian*; of which before.

13. CARIA.

CARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Lycia*; on the North, with *Lydia* and *Ionia*; on the Weſt, with the *Icarian* or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South, with the *Carpatian*. So called from *Cares* the Sonne of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, once the Lord hereof; Who is ſaid to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Augury*, though others aſcribe it to the *Phrygians*.

In this Countrey is the Hill called *Latmus*, the dwelling or rather retiring place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the ſtudy of *Aſtronomy*, found out the changes and courſes of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been her Paramour. Others adde, that *Jupiter* hid him him in a cave under this Hill, and caſt him into a dead ſleep; (which notwithſtanding, ſhe deſcended ſometimes to kiſs him) whence came the old By-word, of *Endymionis ſomnium dormit*. Here is alſo in this Countrey the River *Salmacis*, ſaid to infeeble all ſuch as either drink of it, or bath in it: from whence the Poets raiſe their fiction of *Salmacis* and *Hermaphroditus* deſcribed by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida ſpolia ſine ſanguine & ſudore*, mentioned by *Tully* in his book of *Offices*, and there uſed for effeminate and wanton exerciſes.

Places of moſt note in it, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the hill *Latmus*, the birth-place of *Thales* one of the ſeven wiſe-men of *Greece*, from hence called *Mileſius*, and the Mother of no fewer than 75. (or as *Pliny* ſaith of 80.) Colonies, diſperſed in ſeverall places of *Greece* and *Aſia*; antiently honoured with the Oracle of *Apollo* ſurnamed *Didymæus*, whoſe Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Mileſians*, to ſo vaſt a greatneſs that it remained without roof, compaſſed about with a *Grove*, and dwelling houſes, and ſumptuouſly ſet out with coſtly workmanſhip. This is that *Miletus* mentioned *Acts* XX. to which Saint *Paul* called together the Biſhops of *Epheſus*, and other the adjoining Cities, *ab Epheſo & reliquis proximis Civitatibus*, ſaith Saint *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lions*, Lib. 3. cap. 14. Antiently it was called *Lelegis* and *Anactoria*. 2. *Mindus*, which being but a ſmall Town, had ſo great Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynick* cryed out and ſaid, *Ye men of* Mindus *take heed that your City run not out at your Gates*. 3. *Heraclea ad Latmum*, ſo called becauſe ſituate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that name. 4. *Borgylia*, or *Borgylos*, as *Plinie* calleth it, where antiently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared to that of *Epheſus*. 5. *Miliſa*, in old times famous for two Temples ſacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 furlongs was paved with ſtone for the eaſier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of *Proceſſion*; the principall of the Citizens ſerving there as *Prieſts*, which office they held unto their deaths. 7. *Primaſſus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perſeus*. Who meaning to force it by Maine, and finding the earth ſo ſtony that it would not work, commanded the *Pyoneers* notwithſtanding to make a noiſe under the ground, and cauſed great mounts of rubbiſh to be raiſed ſecretly in the night at the mouth of the Mine, as if the work went very well forwards: At laſt he ſent word unto the Townſ-men, that two parts of their wall ſtood only upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, they ſhould find no mercy; which heard, the Citizens yielded up the Town unto him. So uſefull in the Art of warre is a piece of wit, that it prevailes ſometimes more than Mines or Batteries.

In the South-weſt of this Province, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea like a ſpacious Promontory, ſtands the Countrey of DORIS, ſo called of the *Dores*, a *Greek* people, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were, 1. *Cnidus*, not farre from a foreland or Promontory of the ſame name, famous of old times for the marble Image of *Venus*, called hence *Dea Cnidia*. 2. *Creſſa*, a noted Haven-Town in the time *Ptolomy*. 3. *Halicarnaſſus* (now called *Neſi*) the birth-place of *Herodotus*, and *Dionyſius* named hence *Halicarnaſſeus*; two famous Hiſtorians: and the ſeat-Royall of *Artemiſia* Queen of the *Carians*, (called from hence ſometimes the Queen of *Halicarnaſſus*,) who in the honour of her husband *Mauſolus*, built a ſtately monument, accounted one of the worlds *ſeven wonders*; of which thus *Martiall*, ſpeaking of the *Roman Amphitheatre* erected by *Domitian*;

Aere nec vacuo pendentia Mauſolæa
Laudibus immodicis Cares *ad aſtra ferant.*
That is to ſay,
Mauſolus' tomb filling the empty Aire,
Let not the *Carians* praiſe beyond compare.

That the *Carians* were ſo called from *Cares* the ſonne of *Phoroneus*, King of *Argos*, hath been ſaid

before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them ſo called from *Car*; which in the *Phœnician* language ſignifieth a Sheep or a Ram; with numerous flocks whereof they did once abound. And this may ſeem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians*, next neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, called ſheep by the name of *Cara*; Κάρα, Ἴωνες τὰ πρόβατα, ſaith *Heſychius*, the old *Gramarian*. But from whomſoever they had their name, certain it is they were a very warlike people, *eò avmorum pugnaq; amans* (ſaith *Pomponius Mela*) *ut aliena etiam bella appeterent*; who when they had no warres at home, would ſeek out for action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mauſolus* reigned here, whoſe wife *Artemiſia* (lately mentioned) aided that King in his undertakings againſt *Greece*. Afterwards in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, we meet with *Ada* Queen hereof, who aided him againſt the *Perſians*, adopting him for her Sonne and Succeſſour. Subject after her deceaſe to the *Macedonians*, it followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of theſe Provinces till the defeat of *Antiochus* neer *Magneſia*; in the diviſion of whoſe ſpoiles it was given to the *Rhodians*: incorporated not long after to the State of *Rome*, and made a Province of the Empire. Wreſted from the Eaſtern Emperours by the *Turkes* of the *Selzuccian* Family; the greateſt part hereof, on the death of *Aladine* 2d. was raiſed unto a petit Kingdome by the name of *Menteſia*, ſo called from *Mendos* (or *Mindus*) the chief City of it, the reſidue being laid to the *Caraman* Kingdome, both long ago ſubdued by the *Ottoman* Family: that of *Menteſia* by *Mahomet* ſurnamed the *Great*, who diſpoſeſſed *Elias* the laſt Prince thereof, *Anno* 1451.

LYCIA.

LYCIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pamphylia*; on the Weſt, with *Caria*; on the North, with parts of *Lydia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. Environed on three ſides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which part it from the Countries above mentioned; by conſequence naturally ſtrong, and not very acceſſible: the Sea, for the ſpace of twenty miles ſhutting up the fourth. And here it is to be obſerved, that beſides this, there was a little Region of the ſame name, not far from *Troy*, not much obſerved by our *Geographers* either old or new: but mentioned ſometimes by the Poets; as in *Virgill Æneid.* 4. *Qualis ubi hybernam* Lyciam, *Xanthique flaventa deſerit*, &c. which is meant plainly of the *Phrygian* or *Trojan Lycia*: the word *hyberna* being added becauſe of its Northern ſituation in reſpect of this.

The People hereof were ſometimes called *Xanthi*, from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which riſing in two ſprings from the foot of mount *Cadmus*, paſſeth by a Town called *Xanthus* alſo, and falleth into the Sea. But generally they were called *Lycii*, and the Countrey *Lycia*, from *Lycius* the ſonne of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who either conquered them, or did ſome memorable Act amongſt them, which deſerved that honour.

The principall Mountain of this Countrey, and indeed of *Aſia*, is the Mountain *Taurus*, which hath his beginning in this Province, extending Eaſtward to the great *Orientall* Ocean: of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already, and more is to be ſaid hereafter, when theſe hils are grown unto the greateſt. One of the branches of it, and the moſt notable in this Countrey, is that called *Chimæra*, vomiting flames of fire like *Cicilian Ætna*: the bottom whereof was infeſted with *Serpents*, the midle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the higher parts made dangerous by the dens of *Lions*. Hence by the Poets made a Monſter, having the head of a Lion, the body of a Goat, and the taile of a Serpent; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*.

Quoque Chimæra *ingo mediis in partibus Hyrcum*,
Pectus & ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat.

In Engliſh thus,

Chimæra from a Goat her mid-parts takes
From Lions head and breaſt, her tail from Snakes.

This dangerous Mountain was firſt planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monſter; employed upon this buſineſs by *Jobares* the King of *Lycia*, to whom he had been ſent by *Prœtus* King of *Argos* who was jealous of him; and ſent with letters to require that King to kill him. Whence came the ſaying, *Bellerophontis literas portare*; applied to thoſe, who were unawares imployed do carry letters tending to their own deſtruction: ſuch as thoſe carried by *Vriah*, to *Joab* the Generall, by command of *David*.

This Countrey was ſo populous, that antiently there were reckoned threeſcore Cities in it, of which ſix and thirty remained in the time of Saint *Paul*; now nothing left of them but the names and ruins. Thoſe of chief note were, 1. *Myra*, the *Metropolis* of *Lycia*, when a *Roman* Province; by conſequence an Arch-Biſhops See, when Chriſtian. St. *Nicholas* one of the Biſhops hereof in the primitive times, is ſaid to have been a great Patron of Scholars: his feſtivall annually holden on the ſixt of *December*, is celebrated in the Church of *Rome* with ſeveral paſtimes, and ſtill in ſome Schools here in *England* (as in that of *Burford* in the County of *Oxon* (where I had my breeding and my birth) for a feaſt and a play-day. Of this City there is mention *Acts* 27. *v.* 5. 2. *Telmeſus*, the Inhabitants whereof were famous for *South-ſaying*, and accounted the firſt Interpreters of Dreams. 3. *Patara*, or *Patras*, (formerly called *Sataros*) beautified with a fair Haven and many Temples; one of them dedicated to *Apollo* with an *Oracle* in it, for wealth and credit equall unto that of *Delphos*. 4. *Phaſelis*, on the Sea-ſide alſo, a neſt of Pirates in the times of the *Reman* greatneſs, by whom then haunted and enriched, as *Algiers* is now: but taken by *Servilius*, a *Roman* Captain, at ſuch time as *Pompey* ſcowred the Seas. And unto the *Pirates* of this Town the former Ages were indebted, for the firſt invention of thoſe ſwift Veſſels, which the *Romans* called

led a *Phaſelus*, by the name of the Town; we may render it a *Brigantine*. 5. *Cragus*, with a Mountain of the ſame name thruſting out eight points or Promontories neer to the *Chimæra*. 6. *Rhodia*, or *Rhodiopolis* as *Plinie* calleth it, moſt probably the foundation of the neighbouring *Rhodians*. 7. *Solyma*, on the borders hereof towards *Piſidia*; the people of which were conquered and added unto *Lycia* by the ſword of *Bellerophon*, whom *Jobares*, with a minde to kill him according to the requeſt of *Pætus*, imployed in that ſervice. 8. *Corydalla*, neer the Mountain called *Maſigrum*, the *Maſſycites* of *Plinie*. 9. *Podalea*, the chief Town of *Mylias*; as 11. *OEnoanda* is of *OEbalia*, two little Regions in this Countrey.

The *Lycians* were in former times a puiſſant people, extending their power upon the Seas, as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Perſian* not without great difficulty; the people with ſuch obſtinacy defending their liberty, that ſome of them being beſieged by *Harpagus*, Lieutenant unto *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, they firſt burnt their wives, children, ſervants, and riches, in a common fire; and then made a furious ſally upon the Enemy, by whom put all unto the ſword. To *Alexander* in his march this way towards *Perſia*, they ſubmitted without any reſiſtance. After whoſe death, they fell with the reſt of theſe parts into the hands of *Seleucus*. On the defeat of *Antiochus* at the battel of *Magneſia*, it was given to the *Rhodians*, for their aſſiſtance in that warre; but governed as a free eſtate by a *Common Council* of fourteen Senators, elected out of their principall Cities: over whom was one chief *Preſident* or Prince of the Senate whom they called by the name of *Lyciarchus*. In theſe remained the ſole power of impoſing taxes, making warre, and peace, appointing *Juſticiaries* and inferiour Magiſtrates, and all things appertaining to the publick government. A ſhadow of which power they retained when brought under the *Romans*, and a ſhadow onely: the Supreme power being no longer in the *Senate* of *Lycia*, but in that of *Rome*. Nor had their *Lyciarchus* any thing but an empty name, and the vain privilege or ordering and diſpoſing the publique games, wherein by his office he preſided. When made a Province of the Empier, it had the ſame fortune as the others had till it fell into the power of the *Turks*: after the death of the ſecond *Aladine* made a part of the Kingdome of *Caramania*; of which more anon.

15. *LYCAONIA.*

LYCAONIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Armenia Minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the Weſt, with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North, with *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Piſidia*. So called from the *Lycaones* a people of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycaonians* Inhabitants of *Lycaonia* a Town of *Phrygia Major*, who inlarging themſelves into theſe parts, gave this name unto it. Either of which I ſhould preſer before their conceit who derive it from *Lycaon* King of *Arcadia*, diſpoſſeſſed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdome; or think that *Lycaon* was a King of this Countrey, and not of that.

Places of moſt note herein, 1. *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the *Metropolis* hereof when a *Roman* Province; a place of great ſtrength and conſequence, ſituated advantagiouſly in the Mountains for defence and ſarety, and therefore choſen for the ſeat of the *Turkiſh* Kings in *Leſſer Aſia*, at ſuch time as they were moſt diſtreſſed by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*; who under the command and preſence of the Emperour *Conrade* did in vain beſiege it; forced to depart thence with great loſs both of men and honour. Afterwards made the Seat-Royall of the *Aladine* Kings, the former race being extinguiſhed by the *Tartars*, and finally of the Kings of the houſe of *Caraman*, whoſe Kingdome, called the Kingdome of *Caramania*, contained all the South-parts of the *Leſſer Aſia*, that is to ſay, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Iſauria*, *Cilicia*, *Piſidia*, and this *Lycaonia*. 2. *Lyſtra*, the birth place of *Timothy* the Evangeliſt, where *Paul* and *Barnabas* having miraculouſly healed a Cripple were adored as Gods, and not long after on the inſtigation of ſome *Jews*, which came down from *Antioch* and *Iconium*, moſt deſpitefully treated; *Paul* being ſtoned into the bargain, though it pleaſed God, to raiſe him to life again, *Acts* 14. *v.* 19, 20. Such was the divine pleaſure of Almighty God, that he that did conſent to the ſtoning of Saint *Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the Cloaths of his Executioners, ſhould ſuffer in the ſame kind wherein he had treſpaſſed, and feel ſome ſmart remembrance of his former Actions. 3. *Derbe*, honoured by the preaching of the ſaid Apoſtles. 4. *Laranda*, ſo called by *Ptolomy*, and ſtill preſerving its old name; the ſecond place for reputation next unto *Iconium*. 5. *Adopiſſus*. 6. *Paralais*. 7. *Canna*. 8. *Caratha*, with others named by *Ptolomy*, but not els obſervable.

Nor indeed were the *Lycaonians* themſelves, from whomſoever they deſcended, of any great note or obſervation in the former times: ſubject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdome, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Ptolomy*, when made a Province of the Empire. Diſmembred from it by ſome of the following Emperours: either to create new Offices and preferments for ſome *Court-favourite*; or to ſatisfie the *ambition* of ſome Prelates, aſpiring to the dignity of a *Metropolitan*; it was made a Province of it ſelf. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at firſt a member of the *Selzuccian* Kingdome, as afterwards of the *Caramanian*. Which laſt founded by *Caraman* a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the ſecond, the laſt King of the *Selzuccian* Family, was a great eye-ſore unto thoſe of the houſe of *Ottoman*, from the time of *Amurath* the firſt, who firſt warred upon it, to the reign of *Bajazet* the ſecond, who in fine ſubverted it, *Anno* 1486. as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter when we come to *Cicilia*; the laſt of the Provinces of that Kingdome, in the courſe of this work.

16. PISIDIA.

PISIDIA, hath on the East, *Armenia Minor*; on the West, some parts of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North, *Lycaonia*; on the South, *Pamphylia*, and some part of *Cilicia*; from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*. So called from the *Pisidæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not amongst my Authors.

The Countrey small, but furnished with great plenty of all provisions, as appeareth by that passage of *Livie*, where speaking of the expedition of *Manlius* unto these parts, he telleth us that he came into the fields of *Sagalassa* (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich soyl, and plentifull of all manner of fruit. *Inde ventum est* (saith he) *in agrum* Sagallassarum, *uberem fertilemq; omni genere frugum.* But this to be understood onely of the plains and champain; the mountainous parts hereof, being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* hereof, when a Province of the *Roman* Empire, called for distinctions sake *Antiochia Pisidiæ*, mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the *Jews* Synagogue therein, honoured by Saint *Pauls* preaching, the summe of whose divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Seleucus* the first King of *Syria* of the *Macedon* race, and by him so called in honour of his Father *Antiochus*. 2. *Seleucia*, the foundation of the same *Seleucus*, called also to distinguish it from others of that name, *Seleucia Pisidiæ*. 3. *Lysinnia*, on the borders hereof towards *Phrygia*. 4. *Selge* a Colonie of the *Lacedemonians*. 5. *Sagalassa*, situate in the most fruitfull part of all this Countrey, as appears by that of *Livie* before mentioned. 6. *Cremna*, which onely had the honour of a *Roman* Colonie. 7. *Termessus* strongly situate in the *Straits* of the Mounts; the hilly Countrey about which hath the name of *Milyes*. 8. *Olbanissa*. 9. *Plutanessus*, of which little memorable.

As for these *Pisidæ*, they were originally descended of the *Solymi*, Inhabitants of the borders of *Lycia*. A valiant People, and so affirmed to be by *Livie*, who calleth them *longè optimos bello*. Nor did he speak it without cause, this small Nation holding out against the *Persians*, and not conquered by them, when their great neighbours were subdued. Against these, *Cyrus* the brother of *Artaxerx' Mnemon* King of *Persia* did pretend a quarrell, as if they had trespassed on the borders of his Province. Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occasion to leavy an Army, pretending revenge on them; but intending to dispossess his brother of the *Persian* Monarchy: but *Tisaphernes* Lieutenant to the King in *Asia*, seeing greater preparations than were sufficient to oppose the weak *Pisidians*, made the King acquainted with his suspitions; who accordingly provided for resistance. The Army of *Cyrus* consisting of 12000 *Grecians*, and 100000 *Persians*: the Kings forces were no fewer than 900000 fighting men. They met at *Cunaxa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyrus* lost both the victory and his life. The *Grecians*, who had made their side good, and stood in honourable terms of composition, being by *Tisaphernes* betrayed, lost the best of their company. The rest under the conduct of *Xenophon*, made safe retreat home in despight of 200000 men which followed at their heels. This *Xenophon*, was an agent in, and the historian of this expedition: by whose example the *Spartans* first, and after them the *Macedonians*, were encouraged to attempt the conquest of *Persia*. But to return to these *Pisidians*, they fell with others of their neighbours, under the power of the *Macedonians*, and were made part of the Dominion of *Seleucus*. Abandoned by *Antiochus* to the will of the *Romans*, and setled in obedience by the Military progress of *Manlius*, spoken of before; they were in *Ptolomies* time annexed to *Pamphylia*, as a part thereof. Afterwards made a distinct Province of it self, and so continued till those parts of the Eastern Empire were subdued by the *Turks*: first part of the *Selzuccian*, and *Aladinian* Kingdomes, after of the Kingdome of *Caramania*; whereof more anon.

17. PAMPHYLIA.

PAMPHYLIA, is bounded on the East, with *Isauria* and *Cilicia*; and on the West, with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North, with *Pisidia*, separated from it by the main body of that Mountain; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in those parts which lie next to it is called *Mare Pamphylium*. The reason of the name I find not, unless we think with *Metaphrastes* that it was so named, *quod ex omnibus gentibus conflata esset*, because inhabited by a mixture of many Nations: for so *Pamphylia* in the *Greek* tongue doth expressly signifie. And probable enough it is, that lying neer unto the Sea with an open shore, opposite to *Africk*, neer *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, severall Nations from those parts might repair unto it; and from thence the name.

The Countrey for the most part is very mountainous, over-run with the Branches of Mount *Taurus*; but those branches feed great store of Goats, of whose hair are made abundance of *Chamlets* and *Grograines*, not inferiour unto Silks for fineness. Towards the Sea, which for the space of a hundred and fifty Miles coasts along this shore, more pleasant, populous and fruitfull; well watered, and as well planted. The principall Rivers hereof, being 1. *Cataractus*. 2. *Cestrus*, and 3. *Eurymedon*;

Nigh

Nigh to which laſt, *Cimon* the ſonne of *Hilliades*, Captain Generall of the *Athenian* Army, overthrew in one day both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Perſians*. The manner thus: Having by plain force b ſck their Navy, of which he took and ſunk no fewer than forty Ships and three thouſand Gallies, he ſtowed the *Perſian* Veſſels with his beſt men, attired in the habit, and wearing the Colours of the *Perſians* in the tops of their Ships. In their approach the Camp was opened, and all prepared to entertain their victorious Countrey-men: but the *Greeks* once in ſuddenly put them to the ſword, and took twenty thouſand of them Priſoners.

Principall Cities of it, 1. *Attalia*, founded by *Ptolomy Philadelpus* King of *Egypt*, and for long time the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing Citie of all this Province; well fenced, and ſeated very commodiouſly for Trade, on a very fair Bay, now called *Golfo di Sattalia*, by the name of the Town but little altered. And though the *Romans* did conferr the honour of the *Metropolitan* City upon *Aſpendus*; yet ſtill *Attalia* had the ſtart in point of riches; and is to this day a wealthy and well traded *Empory*, the wealthier for the fair *Taqeſtries* which are herein made. Of this Town their is mention *Acts* 14. *v*. 25. 2. *Perge*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly feſtivals there held in honour of her; from hence called *Diana Pergæa* · more famous *in the fulneſs of time* for Saint *Paul's* preaching in it, mentio- *Acts* 14. *v*. 25. 3. *Side*, renowned in times of *Gentiliſm*, for a Temple of *Pallas*. 4. *Magydis*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from *Side*. 5. *Aſpendus*, an inland Town, but ſtrongly ſituate; made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the *Romans*: remarkable for the Fidlers or *Muſitians* of it, who with one hand both held their Harps and plaid upon them, keeping the other free for more gainfull uſes; whence the *Proverb* of *Aſpendus Cithariſta*, an *Aſpendian Harper*, by which they ſignified a Theef. The Town firſt founded by the *Argines*, the Colonie ſent thither being led by *Mopſus*, from whom the Countrey hereabouts had the name of *Mopſia*. 6. *Olbia*, not far from *Attalia*. 7. *Caracenſium*, and 8. *Colobraſſus*, two of the Towns of that part hereof, which had the name of *Cilicia aſpera*: as 9. *Cretopolis*, and 10. *Menedemium*, of that part which was called *Carbalia*.

Of theſe *Pamphylians* there is little to be ſaid in point of ſtory, but that they were for the moſt part on the ſuffering hand; ſubject from time to time to thoſe mightier Princes, who would not let their neighburs reſt in quiet by them. Being on the ſame ſide of *Taurus*, and of eaſie acceſs, they became firſt Vaſſals to the *Syrian*, and after to the *Perſian* Kings. When *Alexander* paſſed that way in his march towards *Perſia*, he took in all the Sea-Towns of it: the whole brought under with the reſt of the *Aſian* Provinces, by *Antigonus* firſt, after by *Seleucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whoſe line, this People and their neighburs of *Cilicia*; being left to themſelves, and tempted by *Mithridates* to his faction, began to be troubleſome on the Seas, and and proved notable *Pirates*; and were the firſt Authors or inventers of thoſe great Gallies of a hundred and forty or a hondred and ſixty Oars a peece; which the *Italians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphyli*. But forced to leave this trade at laſt, being warred upon by the *Romans* with great forces both by Sea and Land (a fuller narrative whereof we ſhall have in *Cilicia*) in the concluſion of that warre, they loſt that liberty which ſo ſmall a time they had enjoyed; and were made Vaſſals unto *Rome*. Afterwards made a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, they ran the ſame fortune with the reſt, till ſubdued by the *Turks*: and at the death of *Alidine*, were ſeized on by *Caraman*, and ſo became a part of his Kingdome. Of which we ſhall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And ſo much for the Provinces of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, (the Provinces of the Iſles excepted whereof more anon) converted to the *Chriſtian* faith by three great Apoſtles, but moſt eſpecially by Saint *Paul*, of whoſe travels through moſt Cities and Regions of it there is ſuch pregnant evidence in the book of the *Acts*. And that Saint *Peter* and Saint *John* had alſo their parts herein, appears by the *Revelation* of the one, and the firſt Epiſtle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watering; but *God himſelf giving the increaſe*. Paſs we on next unto ISAURIA and CILICIA, which though Provinces of the *Dioceſe*, of the *Orient*, were parts of the *Caramanian* Kingdome: of which having taken a Survey, and ſo cleared our ſelves of this *Peninſula*, we will then ſayl about ſuch Iſlands as make up the remainder of the *Aſian Dioceſe*.

18. *ISAURIA. CILCI*[illegible]

THeſe two, though diſtinct Provinces, I have joined together, becauſe the firſt was onely a part of the laſt; *Cilicia* antiently comprehending both. The fourtunes of both being the ſame alſo in point of ſtory.

ISAURIA, a mountainous and hilly Province, ſeated on both ſides of *Taurus*, hath on the Eaſt and South the reſt of *Cilicia*, whereof antiently it was a part; on the North, *Piſidia*; on the Weſt, *Pamphylia*. So called from *Iſaurus*, the chief City of it, when firſt made known unto the *Romans*; which being taken by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, imployed by *Pompey* in that ſervice, reduced the conquered Countrey under the command of *Rome*, and gave unto the Conquerour the ſumame of *Iſauricus*.

The quality of the Soyl, and whole eſtate of this ſmall Province, take thus from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who had ſeen theſe Countries. Ciliciæ *lateri dextro adnexa* Iſauria, *uberi palmite viret, & frugibus multis*; *quam mediam flumen navigabile* Calicadnus *interſcindit, &c.* "*i. e.* On the right hand of "*Cilicia* lyeth *Iſauria*, a Province of a wealthy ſoyl, plentifull of Vines and much other fruits; which "the River *Calecadnus* parteth in the very middeſt. Beautified beſides many Towns with two principall "Cities. 1. *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*: and 2. *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperour

" brought a *Roman* Colonie. For as touching 3. *Isauria*, heretofore a walled City, and of moſt eſteem, " it hath been long ago deſtroyed, as yielding too ſecure a refuge to the neighburing Rebels; inſomuch that " now there are ſcarce any viſible tracts of its former greatneſs. And not much after, *Hæ duæ Provinciæ bello quondam* Piratico *cæteris mixtæ Prædonum, a* Servilio *Proconſule miſſæ ſub jugum, factæ ſunt vectigales*; *i. e.* " Theſe Provinces (*Cilicia* and this) heretofore in the *Piraticall* warre joyning with thoſe " Robbers, were brought under by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, and made ſubject to the State of *Rome*. And here we have in brief, the nature of the Countrey, the names of the chief Rivers, and the principall Cities, with ſo much of the ſtory as relates to the firſt ſubjugation of it. What further doth concern it we ſhall hear in *Cilicia*, upon the which it did depend.

2. CILICIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Syria*, or rather that part thereof which is called *Comagena*, ſeparated from which part by a branch of the Mounta in *Taurus*, called *Amanus*; on the Weſt, with *Pamphylia*; on the North, with *Iſauria*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Syria* ſpecially ſo called. It was thus named as the old tradition was, from *Cilix* the brother of *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, a neer neighbour to it: but as *Bochartus* (of whoſe humour I have told you often) from *Callukim*, a *Phœnician* word ſignifying ſtones, *quia lapidoſa eſt Regio*, becauſe in ſome parts, eſpecially in that which was called *Cilicia Trachæa*, or *Cilicia Aſpera*, it was very ſtony. It is now called *Caramania*, as the laſt Province of the *Caramanian* Kingdome, which held out for thoſe falling Princes, when the reſt was conquerd by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* race.

The Countrey ſaid by *Marcellinus*, to be *terra dives omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitfull of all neceſſaries. Which Character holdeth good chiefly in the Eaſtern parts, which heretofore had the name of *Cilicia Campeſtris*; the weſtern parts lying towards *Pamphylia*, formerly called *Cilicia aſpera*, being rough and ſtony. But generally where the lands lie in ſeverall, and are duly cultivated, it anſwereth to the former *Character*: being alſo very well watered, and having a fair and large Sea-coaſt, for the ſpace of there hundred miles and upwards. Which notwithſtanding, it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited, a great part of the Countrey lying in large and common fields, to which none can lay any proper claim, and therefore planted onely with Goats and Sheep: out of which the Commoners on all ſides raiſe good profit by cheeſe and butter, by their fleeces chiefly. Here is alſo a good breed of Horſes, of which ſix hundred yearly are culled out for the ſpeciall ſervice of the *Grand Signeur*. But as they have ſome profitable and uſefull creatures; ſo have they others as dangerous and hurtfull to them, eſpecially thoſe which the Vulgar *Grecians* call *Squilachi*, of a mixt making betwixt a Dog and a Wolf, which go in troops, and are ſo bold and theeviſh withall, as they uſe to ſet upon a man as he is a ſleep, and leave him neither hat, cloak, nor fardell, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1. *Pyramus*, now called *Malmiſtra*, which riſing on the North ſide of the *Taurus*, and forcing his paſſage through that Mountain, makes ſuch a noiſe in falling down the precipices and rocks thereof, as reſemblanceth at a great diſtance a clap of Thunder. 2. *Orymagdus*. 3. *Calicadnus* ſpoken of before. 4. *Cidnus*, which riſeth in the *Anti-Taurus*, a River of a violent courſe, and ſo cold a water, that as *Pliny* writes, it cureth the Gout: the waters of which proved very dangerous to *Alexander* the *Great*, the coldneſs of them ſtriking violently into his ſtomack; and deadly to *Fredrick* the firſt Emperour of the *Germans*, as he here bathed himſelf, the violence of the ſtream tripping up his heels, and he not able to recover was preſenly drowned.

Of their chief hils I need add nothing, having already ſaid that the Countrey is parted by *Amanus* from *Syria*; and by *Taurus* it ſelf from *Piſidia* and *Armenia Minor*: not eaſie of entrance by the firſt, but very difficult by the laſt: the *Streits* thereof called *Pylæ Cilicia*, or the Ports of *Cilicia*, being indeed ſo ſtrait, and almoſt impaſſable, that had they been guarded or regarded by the *Perſians*, as they ſhould have been, the progreſs of *Alexanders* victoties might have ended there But *Arſenes*, who had the charge of them, durſt not ſtand his ground, and ſo left them open to the Enemy: whom by thoſe Ports he put into the poſſeſſion of the Kingdome of *Perſia*. With better faith, though no better fourtune did the Souldiers of *Peſcenius Niger* make good theſe *Streits* againſt the Emperour *Severus*: the Monarchy of the World lying a ſecond time at ſtake, and to be tried for in this *Cock-pit*. For the *Nigrians* poſſeſſed of theſe *Streits* and entrances, couragiouſly withſtood the *Severian* party, till at laſt a ſudden tempeſt of rain and thunder continually darting in their faces, as if the very Heavens had been armed againſt them, they were fain to leave the paſſage, and therewith the victory, to the adverſe faction; having ſold that at the loſs of 20000. of their own lives, which *Alexander* had the happineſs or the hap to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Countrey towards *Pamphylia*, lived a Tribe or Nation called the *Soli*, originally of *Attica*: but in long tract of time diſuſed from converſe and communication with their Countrey-men, they ſpake that language ſo corruptly, that from their barbarous manner of pronunciation, and as rude expreſſion, came the word *Solœciſmus*. Yet amonſt theſe were born three men of eminent note, that is to ſay, *Chryſippus* the Philoſopher, *Philemon* and *Aratus* the Poet; out of the writings of which laſt Saint *Paul* vouchſafed to uſe this paſſage τοῦ γὰρ γένος ἐσμέν, i. e. *for we are alſo his offſpring*, *Acts* 17. *v.* 28. That bleſſed Apoſtle thought himſelf never the worſe *Preacher*, for being brought up in humane learning at the feet of *Gamaliel*: nor held it any diſparagement to the influences of the *Holy Ghoſt* to make uſe of it in his *Sermons*, and divine diſcourſes. And therefore to prevent thoſe *cavils* which ignorance or miſpriſion might chance to make in times ſucceeding, he hath thrice vouchſafed the words and teſtimony of the heathen writers; *viz.* of *Epimenides*, *Titus* 1. *v.* 12. of *Menander*, 1 *Cor.* 15. *v.* 33. and that of *Aratus* before mentioned. So lawfull is it in this kind for thoſe of the *ſpirituall Iſrael* to *rob* the *Ægyptians*; and to make this *Hagar* ſerviceable to their Miſtreſs *Sarah*.

Principall Cities in this Province, 1. *Solæ*, the habitation of the *Soli* before remembred; by ſome ſaid

to

to be built by *Solon* the *Athenian*; but generally affirmed to have been planted by those of *Rhodes* and *Attica*: mistakingly called *Heliopolis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, which is as much in *Latine* as *Solis civitas*, or the City of the Sunne. On the site hereof then decayed and ruinous (the Town having been destroyed by *Tygranes* the *Armenian* King in his late warres against the *Romans*) did *Pompey* build his City of *Pompeiopolis* after his victory over the Pirates, who not onely lorded it over the Seas, and consequently obstructed trade and merchandize, but wasted and spoiled the Villages of *Italy* it self. *Pompey* being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary punishment on the Ring-leaders, with the rest peopled this new Town, and the Countrey adjoining; allowing them competent possessions, lest want and necessity should again inforce them to the like courses. An action truly commendable, and worthy so great a Captain, rather to take occasion of offending from the people, than after offence done to punish them. *Hythlodæus* in the *Utopia*, somewhat bitterly, though perhaps not unjustly, inveigheth against the lawes of *England*, for ordaining death to be the punishment of theft, *Cum multò potius providendum fuerit, uti aliquis esset proventus vitæ; ne cuipiam sit tam dira furandi primùm, deinde pereundi necessitas.* Whereas (saith he) the lawes ought to make provision for putting men into some orderly course of life, and not let them runne upon the necessity of stealing first, and then being hanged for it. 2. *Tarsus*, the birth-place of Saint *Paul* the Apostle, for that sufficiently famous, were there nothing else to commend it to consideration. But it was a Town withall of great note and consequence, the *Metropolis* first of all *Cilicia*, and after the division, of *Cilicia Prima*. The Inhabitants whereof had the privilege of *Roman* Citizens. Situate in a goodly plain on the banks of the *Cydnus*, and by some said to be the work of *Sardanapalus* the last King of *Assyria*; it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this *Tarsus*; and 3. *Anchiala*, another City of this Countrey, neer the Sea-side, and not farre from the Promontory *Zephyrium*. Of the same date (if the said Monument speak truth,) but neither of the same fortune nor continuance: that being utterly decayed, but *Tarsus* still remaining of great wealth and strength. Much spoken of in the wars of the *Holy Land*, and in the Stories of the *Caramanian* and *Ottoman* Kings. And thoughthe *Tarsians* to ingratiate themselves with *Julius Cæsar*, would needs have their City called *Juliopolis*; yet the old name survived the new, and it is to this day called *Tersia* or *Terassa* by the vulgar *Grecians*; but *Hamsa* by the *Turks*, as *Bellonius* telleth us. 4. *Adena*, the *Adana* of *Ptolomy*, a large Town but unwalled, instead whereof defended by a very strong Castle. Situate in a fruitful soyl, both for wine and corn, wherewith the Town is alwaies furnished for the use of those that are to travell over the *Taurus*, who commonly take in here three daies provision. 5. *Epiphania*, the birth-place of *George* the *Arian* Bishop of *Alexandria*; thrust on the world of late by some learned men (but of more industry than judgement) for *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr. 6. *Mopsuestia*, as famous, or infamous, rather for giving title to *Theodorus Mopsuestenus*, Bishop hereof, and a great Patron of the *Nestorian* Heresies, in the time of Saint *Chrysostome*. The City otherwise of good note, and of great consequence, in the course of the *Roman* warres, described at large by *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Issus*, upon a spacious Bay, called hence *Sinus Issicus*, neer the borders of *Syria*: memorable for the great battel here fought betwixt *Alexander* and an handful (in comparison) of his *Macedonians*, and that vast Army of *Darius* (himself there in person) consisting of 600000 undisciplined *Asians*, whereof so many lost their lives, that the dead bodies seemed to have buried the ground. For partly by the unskilfulness of the Commanders, who chose so ill a place to fight in that they could make no use of their mighty numbers, and partly by the effeminatness of the *Asian* Souldiers, unable to endure the charge, there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of the *Persians*, 40000 of them being taken Prisoners, amongst them the wives and daughters of *Darius*; and not above 100 of the *Alexandrians*, if *Qu. Curtius* be not partiall in relating the Story. A victorie which assured *Alexander* of his former purchases, and opened a way unto the rest: the *Persian* not being able to make head again till he had pierced into the bowels of their Empire, and added *Syria* and *Egypt* to his former Conquests. Of so great consequence is one full Victory to the losing and getting of a Kingdome. This Town it self now called *Aiazzo*, and the great Bay on which it standeth *Golfo di Aiazzo*. 8. *Alexandria*, built by command of the Conquerour neer the place of battel, commodiously for trade, as upon the Sea, but otherwise in a fenny and boggy soyl, which makes the air there to be very unwholesome to men not used to it; little now remaining, but a few houses on the Seashore built of straw and mudd, hardly affording it the reputation of a sorry village; and would not long continue such, but that it is the neerest Haven to the Town of *Aleppo* (whereof more in *Syria*) which draweth unto it the resort of some Christian Factors, whose houses are of clay and timber, but of them not many. The Town at first called *Alexandria*, as before was said; diminished first to *Alexandretta*, now called *Scanderone*. 9. *Nicopolis*, another of *Alexanders* foundations, so named in memory of his great Victory before mentioned. 10. *Amavarza*, a City of great Antiquity in the time of *Strabo*, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Cilicia Secunda*. 11. *Heraclea*, mentioned by *Bellonius*, and by him placed in a fruitful and well cultivated plain, at the foot of mount *Taurus*, a fair and large Town as he reporteth it, and distant from *Adana* towards the North-west about three dayes journey. But I find no such Town in *Strabo*, or *Ptolomy*, or any other of the Antients. 12. *Scandeloro*, a City of *Cilicia Aspera*, or that part of *Cilicia* which lieth towards *Pamphilia*, heretofore with the adjoining territory governed as a State distinct, when all the rest of this Countrey was under the kings of *Caramania*: against whom the Prince hereof, being a *Mahometan* had preserved his liberties, by the assistance of the Knights of the *Rhodes*, and the King of *Cyprus*. And when the *Caramanian* Kingdome was subdued by *Baiazet*; he made so good conditions for himself, that he had other lands and estates in the *Lesser Asia*, assigned to him in exchange for this, and so surrendred this to the will of the conquerour.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey were of the Progenie of *Tarshish* the Son of *Javan*, by whom, or some

ſome of his poſterity, to preſerve his memory, the City of *Tarſus* was firſt built; Increaſed in tract of time by ſome new Colonies out of the neighbouring parts of *Syria*, it followed for the moſt part the fortunes of it: ſucceſſively together ſubject to the *Aſſyrians*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians*. In the declining fortunes of the houſe of *Seleucus*, they began to ſtand upon their own legs, and might have continued longer in ſo good a poſture, had they not hearkned to ill Counſails. Tempted by *Mithridates* to join with him againſt the *Romans*; of whoſe greatneſſe all the Eaſtern States were grown very jealous; and being naturally good Sea-faring men, they began together with the *Pamphylians*, to infeſt the Seas. At firſt they ventured no further then the ſhores adjoining. But after emboldened with ſucceſſe, and finding that the *Romans* were ſufficiently embroiled in *domeſtick* troubles, and a ſharpe warre with *Mithridates*, they fell upon the coaſts of *Greece*, and in fine of *Italy* it ſelf; *Publius Servilius* the *Proconſull* firſt imployed againſt them, gave them an overthrow at Sea: and following his good fortune ſet upon them in their Harbours and retiring places. In which purſuit he not only took from them *Phaſelis*, a ſtrong Town in *Lycia*, one of their *Retreats*, and others of their beſt and ſtrongeſt *Receptacles*: but waſting the whole Countrey of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Iſaurus*, the moſt defenſible Town thereof, which he took and ranſacked. No ſooner was *Servilius* departed home but they broke out more violently then before; filling all the creeks and ports of the Eaſtern Seas with their *Frigots*, *Brigantines*, and other light *Piraticall* Veſſels: inſomuch that *Pompey* himſelf thought it to be an action not unbecoming his greatneſs to undertake the warre againſt them. And he purſued it to ſuch purpoſe, that having armed 500 ſail of all ſorts, and ſtored his ſhips with 130000 men, he ſet upon them all at once; and in the ſpace of one ſole moneth made an end of the warre. An action not ſufficiently to be wondered at, if we conſider either the ſpeedineſſe of it, done in ſo little time as a moneth; or the cheapneſſe of the victory, purchaſed without the loſſe of one *Roman* Veſſel; or finally the importance and conſequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infeſt the Seas, and all *Cilicia* ſubjected to the State of *Rome*. How they were afterwards diſpoſed of hath been ſhewn already. After this they did very good ſervice unto *Pompey* in his warre again *Ceſar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aids,

Atq; Cilix *juſta nunc non* Pirata, *carinâ*.
And the reformed *Cilicians* now
No *Pirates*, in his fleet did row.

Nor were they pliant unto him onely, as unto their Conquerour, but generally ſo tame and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the firſt *Proconſuls* or Lord Deputies which were ſent to govern them, that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province; ſave that the *Panthars* (ſome of which one of his friends had prayed him to ſend to *Rome* for the adorning of his triumph) were for fear of him fled into *Pamphylia*. At the firſt conqueſt by the *Romans* it was divided only into *Campeſtrem* and *Trachæam*, as was ſaid before; of which *Campeſtris* was reduced immediately to the form of a Province. *Aſpera* or *Trachæa* was a while continued under the Government of Kings, till the time of *Veſpaſian*, and then made a Province as the other. By the ſucceeding Emperours, on ſome reaſons of State (if not thoſe intimated in *Lycaonia*) the number of Provinces being increaſed (though the bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly) the whole was divided into three: that is to ſay, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campeſtris* wholly; *Cilicia ſecunda*, containing the *Maritime* parts of *Cilicia Aſpera*; and *Iſauria*, taking up the mountainous parts of this laſt diviſion. Laid by the Emperour *Conſtantine* to the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*; and conſequently ſubject in ſpiritual matters to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis* had his uſual reſidence. In the falling of the Eaſtern Empire, it was conquered by the *Saracens* in the time of *Muhaveas* or *Mnavi*, the ſixt *Caliph*. Continuing under their command till their declination, it was recovered by the *Greek* or Eaſtern Emperours, and from them conquered by the *Turks* in the courſe of their Victories. But the firſt race of *Turkiſh* Kings being worn out by the *Tartars*, and the *Aladinian* Kings ending in *Aladine* the ſecond; it was part of the new Kingdome of the *Caramanians*; continuing theirs till the deſtruction of that line by *Bajazet* the ſecond, *Anno* 1486. by whom incorporated with the reſt of the *Ottoman* Empire.

Thus having made our Progreſs over all the Provinces of the *Leſſer Aſia*, and ſhewn how every one of them was made ſubject to the *Turkiſh* Tyranny: we muſt next draw down the Succeſſion of ſuch *Turkiſh* Kings as have reigned herein, till it was wholly conquered by the Princes of the houſe of *Ottoman*. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the *Turks* having made themſelves Maſters of the Kingdome of *Perſia*, and following their ſucceſſes into *Syria* alſo; fell to a breach amongſt themſelves. For making up whereof it was condeſcended unto by *Axan*, the then *Perſian* Sultan, that *Meloch* and *Ducat* two of his diſcontented Kinſ-men, ſhould be infeoffed in the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus* and their ſeverall Territories; with whatſoever they could conquer from the *Caleph* of *Egypt*, poſſeſſed at that time of moſt part of *Syria*, and ſome of the adjoining Provinces. It was alſo then agreed upon, that a third but neerer Kinſman called *Cutlu Moſes*, another of the *Leaders* of the oppoſite faction, ſhould have leave to conquer for himſelf whatſoever he could win from the *Chriſtian* Princes; And he accordingly being furniſhed with a competent Army, ſubdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the *Greater Aſia*, with *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia* in *Aſia Minor*. Which and the reſt of their affairs take here in the enſuing Catologue of

The *Turkiſh* Kings in *Aſia Minor* of the *Selzuccian* Family.

1075. 1. *Cutlu Moſes*, Nephew to *Trangolipix*, the firſt *Perſian* Sultan of the *Turks*, won *Media*, part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*.

2. *Sc-*

2. *Solyman*, Son of *Cutlu Moſes*, for a while diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his eſtates by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, in their firſt paſſage towards the *Holy Land*.
3. *Mahomet* the Sonne of *Solyman*, recovered moſt of his eſtates in the *Leſſer Aſia*, but outed of them and ſubdued by
4. *Muſat*, Sultan or Lord Deputy of *Iconium*, but of the ſame *Selzuccian* family, who was thereby poſſeſſed of all the *Turkiſh* Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*.
5. *Caliſaſtlan* the Sonne of *Muſat*, to whom his Father left *Iconium* with the adjacent Provinces, wreſted *Amaſia*, and *Ancyra* from his brother *Jagupaſan*; *Sebaſtia*, and *Caſarea*, from his brother *Doduſa*; which with their ſeverall Territories were bequeathed unto them, by the will of their Father. He overthrow the Emp. *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his Kingdome.
6. *Reucratine*, the third Son of *Caliſaſtlan*, having diſpoſſeſt his three brethren *Maſut*, *Caſpatine*, *Caicoſrhoes*, of the eſtates left them by their Father; became ſole Monarch of all the *Turkiſh* Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*. In the later end of whoſe reign, *Occata* the *Tartarian Cham* having driven the *Turks* out of *Perſia*, many of them under the conduct of *Aladine*, a Prince of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family, joined themſelves to their Countreymen here, with whoſe help they won *Cilicia*, from the *Grecian* Emperours, who in the reign of *Calo-Johannes*, (the *Turks* being then embroyled by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*) had not long before regained it: and after the deceaſe of *Reucratine*, advanced him to the whole eſtate.

The *Turkiſh* Kings in *Aſia Minor* of the race of *Aladine*.

7. *Aladine*, deſcended in direct line from *Cuſſanes*, the laſt *Turkiſh* Sultan in *Perſia*, having with many of his Nation ſeated himſelf in *Cilicia*, firſt made *Sebaſtia*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief Seat or reſidence: Which after the death of *Reucratine*, he removed to *Iconium*, as the antient Regall City of the former Kings.
8. *Azalide*, by ſome called *Azadine*, eldeſt Son of *Aladine*, waſted the moſt part of his reign in wars with his brother *Jathatine*; whom at laſt he forced into exile.
9. *Jathatine*, on the death of his brother poſſeſſeth the Kingdome; ſlain afterwards in ſingle combate by *Theodorus Laſcaris*, Emp. of the *Greeks* at *Nice*.
10. *Jathatine* II. Son of the former, driven out of his Kingdome by the *Tartars*, and dyed in exile: the *Turks* becoming Tributaries and Vaſſals unto the *Tartarian*.
11. *Maſut* and *Cei-cubades* of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family (but whether the Sons of the ſecond *Jathatine* I am not able to ſay) ſubſtituted in his place, as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.
12. *Aladine* II. Son of *Cei-cubades*, ſucceeded his Father in the Kingdome, but as Vaſſall and Leigeman to the *Tartars*. After whoſe death leaving no iſſue of his body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongſt them his Dominions. To *Saracban* fell *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and part of *Lydia*; from him named *Sarchan*, *Sarachan*, or *Saracha-Illi*; to *Aidin* the reſt of *Lydia*, *Phrygia Major*, and the greateſt part of the *Greater Myſia*, from him called *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi*; to *Caraſus*, the *Leſſer Phrygia*, with the reſt of *Myſia*; from him denominated *Caraſan*, or *Caraſa-Illi*. To the Family of the *Iſfendiars*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus*, which lieth next to *Bithynia*. There were alſo leſſer *Toparchies* or ſub-diviſions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a ſecond of *Amaſia*, a third of *Amiſus*, a fourth of *Scandeloro*; beſides many others. But the main body of the eſtate was ſeized by *Caraman*, who for his ſhare had the whole Provinces of *Lycia*, *Lycaonia*, *Piſidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Iſauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Regall City of *Iconium*, the greateſt part of *Caria* (the reſt of it appertaining to the Prince of *Menteſia*) with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and ſome Towns in *Phrygia*; continuing in his family for as many deſcents (as either of the former had held before) in great power and luſtre, under

The *Turkiſh Kings* in *Aſia Minor* of the houſe of *Caraman*.

13. *Caraman*, the firſt raiſer of this family, Contemporary with *Ottoman* the firſt King of that race.
14. *Aladine* Son of *Caraman*, and Son-in-Law of *Amurath* the firſt, of the houſe of *Ottoman*, by whom ſubdued, but pardoned and reſtored unto his eſtate, on the humble entreats of his wife.
15. *Aladine* II. Son of the former, ſubdued by *Bajazet* the firſt, and hanged by *Tertumaſes*, one of *Bajazets* great Commanders.
16. *Mahomet*, Son of *Aladine* the ſecond, recovered his Kingdome on the death of *Bajazet*, vanquiſhed and led captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon and vanquiſhed by *Mahomet* the Son of *Bajazet*, redeemed his peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns; and was finally ſlain at the ſiege of *Attalia*.
17. *Ibrahim*, the Son of *Mahomet*, and Son-in-Law of *Amurath* the ſecond, againſt whom unadviſedly raiſing war, he was forced to ſubmit and become his *Tributary*: after whoſe death, rebelling againſt *Mahomet* the *Great*, he was then alſo vanquiſhed, and a reconciliation made betwixt them.

18. *Ibrahim*

18. *Ibrahim* II. by ſome called *Pyramus*, the Son of *Ibrahim* the firſt, ſupported *Zemes* brother of *Bajazet* the ſecond in his warre againſt him: for which *Bajazet* having ſetled his affairs, invaded and ſubdued the Kingdome of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in battel, and ſo united that Eſtate unto the reſt of the Dominions of the houſe of *Ottoman*. The ſtrange ſucceſſes of which houſe, from the firſt riſing of it to theſe preſent times, ſhall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania*, from whence this Nation firſt attempted and atchieved the conqueſt of *Perſia*, and which only of all their large poſſeſſions doth retain any thing of their name. In the mean time we will ſurvey the Iſlands of this *Leſſer Aſia*, and ſo proceed to their poſſeſſions in the *Greater*, as they ly before us.

19. *The Province of the* ASIAN ISLES.

THe Province of the *ASIAN ISLES* comprehendeth all the Iſlands in *Aſia Minor*, from the mouth of the *Helleſpont* to the *Rhodes*, reckoning that for one: united firſt into a Province by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*; next reckoned as a part of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, and afterwards, together with the Province of the *Helleſpont*, and that of *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo called, making up the peculiar or exempt juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Thoſe of moſt conſideration are, 1. *Tenedos*, 2. *Leſbos*. 3. *Chios*. 4. *Samos*. 5. *Coos*. 6. *Icaria*. 7. *Patmos*. 8. *Claros*. 9. *Caparthos*. 10. *Rhodes*. Others of leſs note, having nothing memorable but their names, are ſcarce worth the naming.

1. *TENEDOS*, is ſituate at the mouth of the *Helleſpont*, overagainſt the noted Promontory called of old *Sigeum* (but now *Cape Janizarie*) a Promontory of *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*, from which diſtant not above five miles. The Iſle it ſelf in circuit no more then ten; ſwelling with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts levell; in both producing as good wines as the beſt of *Greece*. It took name, as the generall tradition was, from *Tenes* the Son of *Cycnus*, King of a little City in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, who being falſly accuſed by his Step-dame for ſolliciting her to that inceſtuous mixture which ſhe had violently importuned, and he as piouſly refuſed, was by the command of his Father put into a cheſt, expoſed to the mercy of the Sea, and here miraculouſly preſerved. Here for a time he is ſaid to reign with great commendation for his juſtice; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been ſlain by the hand of *Achilles*; of whom therefore it was not lawful to make mention in any of the Sacrifices offered in the Temple hereof. But *Bochartus* caſting off all this as an old wives fable, will have it ſo called from *Tzr-edum* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying *Red clay*, which the Potters made uſe of in their earthen veſſels. A town it had of the ſame name with the Iſland, in which a Temple ſacred to *Apollo Sminthius*; and 2. another called *Aſterion*, ſituate neer a little River well ſtored with *Crab-fiſh*, whoſe ſhells were made in the form of an Ax or Hatchet. From which Town as the Iſlanders have in ſome Authors the name of *Aſterii*; ſo from the other circumſtance they are ſaid to have had the ſtamp of an Hatchet on their coin or money. Memorable for an old cuſtome obſerved amongſt them, which was, that at the back of the Judge there alwaies ſtood a man with an Ax advanced; as well to terrifie the Witneſſes from giving falſe evidence to the Judge, as the Judge from pronouncing a falſe ſentence upon the evidence. Whence the Proverb, *Tenedia Securis*. More memorable for the finall deſtruction of *Troy*, which was plotted here, the *Grecians* withdrawing their forces hither, as if gone in earneſt, but from hence ſetting ſail again to ſurpriſe the Town, when they ſaw their plot had took effect. And ſo I leave it with that *Character* which the Poet gives it.

Eſt in conſpectu Tenedos, *notiſſima famâ*
Inſula, dives opum Priami *dum Regna manebant.*
Nunc tantum ſinus, & ſtatio male-fida carinis.

In *Engliſh* thus,

In ſight of *Troy* an Iſland ſtands, well known,
Call'd *Tenedos*; rich, and of great renown,
While'ſt *Priami* Kingdome flouriſhed; now (they ſay)
Grown a poor Road, for ſhips an unſafe Bay.

2. *LESBOS*, the largeſt of theſe *Aſian* Iſles, is diſtant from the main land of *Troas* about ſeven miles; 168 in compaſs: reckoned the ſeventh in bigneſs of the *Mediterranean*; which *Ariſtotle* in his Book *de Mundo*, ranketh in this Order following. τυγχάνει μὲν ἐξιόλογοι, Σικελία, καὶ Σαρδόι, καὶ Κύπρος, καὶ Κρήτη, καὶ Εὐβόια, καὶ Κύπρος, καὶ Λέσβος. That is to ſay, The moſt conſiderable of theſe, are *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, *Crete*, *Euboea*, *Cyprus*, and *Lesbos*. And though both *Scylax* in his *Periplus*, a nameleſs Poet in *Euſtathius*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and others of the Antients, vary in ordering of the reſt, according as their information or fancies led them: yet *Lesbos* comes in the ſeventh place conſtantly, without change at all. Upon which ground *Bochartus* will have it called *Lesbos* from *Esburith* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying ſeven: contracted firſt to *Esbu*, by leaving out the laſt ſyllable of it; and then by changing *bu* to *bos*, and prefixing *L* to the beginning. Far enough fet, and were it but as dearly bought, would be good for Ladies: this Iſland being reckoned in the ſeventh place for no other reaſon, but becauſe it lay furtheſt off and moſt North from *Sicilie*, from whence they ordered their accompt; and not any myſtery in the name thereof.

It had then the name from *Lesbos* the Chief City of it, as that from *Lesbus* the Son of *Lapythus*, who married *Methymna* the Daughter of *Macarius* Prince hereof: from which *Macarius*, it had ſometimes the name of *Macaria*; as that of *Mitylene* by which it is now commonly called, from *Mitylene* another of the daughters of the ſaid *Macarius*. And that the memory of the whole family might be preſerved

ſerved in this Iſland, *Methymna* alſo had a City called by her name, one of the principal of the Countrey.

The Countrey towards the Weſt and South reported to be mountainous and ſomewhat barren; the reſt level and fruitful: plentiful of excellent corn, and abounding in delicious wines, compared by *Athenæus* to *Ambroſia*, the liquor of the Gods, as the Poets fable; affording alſo plenty of ſheep, and ſtore of horſes; theſe laſt couragious and ſtrong, though but low of Stature. More memorable for the eminent perſons which it hath produced, as 1. *Sappho* an *Heroick* woman, whoſe invention was the *Sapphick* verſe, and therefore called the *tenth Muſe*. 2. *Pittacus*, one of the *ſeven Wiſemen* of *Greece*. 3. *Theophraſtus*, that notable Phyſician and Philoſopher. 4 *Alcæus*, the ſucceſſour of *Orpheus* in the excellency of *Lyricall* poeſie; and 5. *Arion*, the *Muſician*, who was ſo perfect on his *Harp*, that being caſt into the Sea playing on that inſtrument, a *Dolphin* took him on his back, and wafted him ſafe as far as *Corinth*, where he related the whole ſtory unto *Periander*, atteſted by the Mariners who had thrown him overboard. And though this be by ſome rejected as a poetical fiction; yet paſt all doubt, the man was not only an excellent *Muſician*, but an eminent Poet, the firſt inventor of *Tragedies*, a chief *Lyrick*, and the Author of the verſe called *Dithyrambick*.

Principal Towns herein, 1. *Lesbos*, ἀφ' ἧς ἡ ὅλη νῆσος Λέσβος ἐλέγετο, from whom (ſaith *Stephanus*) the whole Iſland had the name of *Lesbos*. 2. *Methymna*, ſo named from *Methymna* one of the daughters of *Macarius*, ſpoken of before. 3. *Mitylene*, ſo named from the other daughter, and wife of *Lesbus*: now the Chief City of the Iſland, ſeated on a *Peninſula* looking towards the main land, ſtrong by nature, and fortifyed by Art: enjoying on either ſide a commodious Haven, that on the South moſt fit for Gallies; the other capable of ſhips of burden. Beautified heretofore with magnificent buildings, and ſweetned with variety of delights and pleaſures: little now left of it ſince ſubdued by the *Turks*, but a ſtrong Caſtle manned with an able Garriſon, and a well-ſtored *Arſenall* for Gallies, kept here in readineſs to preſerve thoſe Seas from Pirates; with which much infeſted. But the two firſt long ſince decayed and grown out of knowledge, thoſe of moſt note next *Mitylene*, are 4. *Vaſilica*. 5. *Theodori*. 6. *Caſtel-Gera*: all of late daies, and therefore of no obſervation in point of Story.

The Iſland was firſt inhabited by the *Pelaſgians*, conducted hither by *Zanthus* the Sonne of *Triopus*; whence named *Pelaſgia*: afterwards by ſome *Ionians* and people of ſundry nations planted here by *Macarius*, (the father of *Mitylene* and *Methymna*) who by his prudence and the reputation of his juſtice, obtained a kind of Soveraignty over the neighbouring Iſlands. *Lesbus* the Sonne of *Lapithus* arriving here with his Family, maried *Methymna*, and had the Iſland for her Dower; though *Mitylene* had the hap to have the predominant City, and the Iſland conſequently called by her name. Made ſubject to the State of *Athens*, in the time of the *Peloponneſian* warre (when almoſt all *Greece* banded againſt that City) they revolted from it, and were ſo ſtraitly beſieged by *Paches*, an *Athenian* Captain, that they ſubmitted unto mercy. The Generall ſends to *Athens* to know what ſhould be done with the *Mitylenians*; Anſwer was ſent, that he ſhould put them to the ſword. But the *Senate* on the morrow after, repenting of that cruell Decree, ſent a countermand. Theſe latter Meſſengers made no ſtay, but eating with one hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene*, juſt as *Paches* was reading the former Order; by this ſpeed prevented. So neer were theſe miſerable people to a fatall deſtruction. Subdued by the *Romans* with the reſt of *Greece*, they fell together with it to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperours: from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and ſome other of theſe Iſles, *Anno* 1124. by the State of *Venice*, upon a quarrel betwixt them and the *Grecian* Emperour. Confirmed unto that Signeury by the Emperour *Baldwin*, and all the reſt of the *Ægean* added to their portion; thoſe above-named were again recovered by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas*, the *Greek* Emperour, then reſiding at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year 1335. the Emperour *Cale-Johannes* gave it to *Franciſcus Cataluſius*, a Noble Gentleman of *Genoa*, with one of his Siſters, for her Dower. By whoſe poſterity enjoyed till the year 1462. when *Mahomet* the *Great* incenſed againſt *Dominicus Cataluſius* the then Lord hereof, for the murder of his elder Brother, a Vaſſall and Tributary of his Empire (thoſe Princes paying to the *Turk* an annuall tribute of 4000 Ducats) but more for harbouring the *Pirates* of *Spain* and *Italy*; beſieges him in *Mitylene* his principall City; which in 27 daies (for ſo long it held) he conſtrained to ſubmit unto him, and therewith all the Iſland alſo. Some of the Chief families, being removed unto *Conſtantinople*, upon ſome reaſons of State, the main body of the people were permitted to remain here to till the land; and ſo continue to this day, with ſome few *Turks*, inconſiderable for their ſtrength or numbers, entermixed amongſt them.

3. *CHIOS*, the next to *Lesbos* both in ſite and bigneſs, lyeth oppoſite to the ſhore of *Ionia*, from which diſtant not above four leagues, is in compaſs about 126 miles. So called, as ſome ſay, from *Chione* a fair Nymph hereof, much ſought after by many Suters: as others ſay, from χίων, a *Greek* word ſignifying *Snow*, wherewith the mountains of it are ſometimes covered. And ſome again will have it take name from *Chios* the Chief City of it, which being built in the form of the *Greek* letter χ, firſt got that name unto it ſelf, and afterwards did communicate it to the whole Iſland. *Iſidore* in his *Originis* gives another reaſon, and will have it called ſo from a *Syriack* word ſignifying *Maſtick*, whereof there is plenty in this Iſle. *Chios inſula* (ſaith he) *Syrâ linguâ appellatur, eo quod ibi* Maſtyx *gignitur*; *Syri enim Maſtychen* Chion *vocant*. And were it ſo, that *Chios* in the *Syriack* did ſignifie *Maſtick*, there could no better reaſon be aſſigned for the name: this Iſland being more furniſhed with that commodity, than any place in the world beſides. A gumme it is growing out of the *Lentiſck* tree, which in the moneths of *July* and *Auguſt* the Inhabitants force out of thoſe trees by making with ſharp inſtrumeuts a deep inciſion into the the barks of them; out of which the juice dropping is afterwards hardned like a gumme, and in the *Septem-*

ber

ler following gathered. A Commodity with yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sultanies*, every *Sultanie* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*: and therefore the felling of the *Lentisck* tree, at the time of the distilling of this precious juice, interdicted on the penalty of losing the right hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Island are Corn and Oyl in indifferent plenty, some *quarries* of most excellent *Marble*, a certain green earth like the rust of brass; some Silks, and Cotton-Wool, but short in worth to those of *Smyrna*, and other places: Honey as good as any the world affordeth; and a vein of most delicious wines, those specially which grow on the Mountain *Arvis*, now called *Amista*. Of which *Plin.* gives this commendation, *In summa gloria fuere* Thasium, Chiumque; *ex* Chio, *quod* Arvisium *vocant*. Of all wines (saith he) those of *Thassus*, and *Chios*, are of best esteem; and of those of *Chios*, the *Arvisian*. *Strabo* extolleth them in the *Superlative* degree, and calleth the wine hereof, οἶνον ἀειστὸν πάντ' Ἑλλήνιχῶν, incomparably the best of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, speaking of an *Epicurean* or voluptuous liver, affirms that he conceived it the supreme felicity λαὶ δὲ συμβῆναι, καὶ πιεῖν οἶνον Λεσβίον, to *lie with* Thais, *and drink these* Arvisian *wines*. Here are also infinite store of *Patriges*, of a red colour, kept tame, and fed in flocks like Geese, in the Streets and *Greensworths* of their villages: some little Boy or Girl driving them to field, and calling them home again with a *whistle* when the night comes on.

The Island divided commonly into two parts, the *Higher* called *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and West, hilly, and rough, but intermixt with fruitful vales and pleasant Rivers: the *Lower*, opposit unto it, called *Catamorea*, swelled here and there with gentle hillocks, on which groweth the *Lentisck*. The whole inhabited by *Greeks* intermixt with *Genoese*, and (since their conquest by that people) some few *Turks* amongst them. Which mixture with the *Genoese*, tempereth the levity of the *Greeks* with *Italian* gravity: the better sort of people both in apparrel and manners coming neer the *Genoese*, once the Lords of this Island: the common sort continuing their old *Greek* humour of mirth and jollity, (not sensible of the *Turkish* thraldome under which they suffer) with as much licentiousness as ever. And though this intermixture hath so corrupted their language, that neither the *Greek* nor the *Italian* be here rightly spoken, but a compound tongue made up of both: yet keep they their Religions still distinct and separate, as if they had never known another.

Here are reckoned in it six and thirty Towns and villages, the principall whereof are, 1. S. *Elias* in the North. 2. *Pigrine*, in the midest hereof; and 3. *Chios* it self, now called *Sio* (as is all the Island) one of the seven Cities contending for the birth of *Homer*, whose Sepulchre they pretend to shew in an old Castle neer the Mount and Town of S. *Elias* (which were it his, would be a better argument for his buriall here, than it is for his birth.) The Town situate in the most pleasant and fruitfull part of the Countrey, to which both industry and Art have given great advantage: here being few houses without Orchards of excellent fruits, as Oringes, Limons, Pomegranats, Citrons, and a kind of Fig, much praised for their quickness of tast by the antient *Romans*. It standeth on the East-side opposite to the Shores of *Asia*, stretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the West-side backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did stand. The Buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying: though otherwise secure once entred; and for directing of the entrance a Lantern advanced by the *Genoese* (when Lords hereof) to give light by night, and serve for a land-mark in the day. Fortified on the North-side by a large and strong Castle, environed with deep ditches, well furnished with munition, and a *Turkish* Garrison. And because the Island is on all parts accessible, not naturally fortified with rocks, and dangerous precipices, as many others; besides this Castle, they have all along the Coast small *Watch-towrs*, which with smoke by day, and fire by night, give notice unto one another of such Vessels as they see approaching: the *Guards* about the Castle being so intent also about their charge, that every minute of the night there goeth a word about the walls to declare their vigilancie.

The *Chians* were at first a *free people*, governing themselves as a Commonwealth; and by reason of their many harbours, able to furnish out a Navy of 80 Sayl, which gave them the *Lordship* of those Seas; till eclipsed by the *Rhodians*. Besieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, with his utmost power, who when he could not get it by force, proclamed freedome to the Slaves (of which here were many) and liberty to marry with their Masters wives, if they would rebell against their Masters. And when this policy would not do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of indignation, he gave over the siege. At last they became subject to the *Romans*, with the rest of *Greece*, and followed punctually the same change of fortunes, as did those of *Lesbos*; which we have spoken of before: till given by *Andronicus Palæologus*, one of the last *Greek* Emperours, to the *Justinians*, a noble *Genoesian* Family, assistant to him in his wars. Under them it continued as *tributaries* to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*) to whom they annually paid eighteen thousand *Ducats*; till the year 1566. When *Solyman* the *Magnificent* picking a quarrell with them for some suspected correspondency with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greatest *Bassas*, to seize the Island. And he accordingly presenting himself before the City with a strong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did so astonish and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other summons than the sight of his Navy, they surrendred themselves unto his disposing, upon *Easter-day*, being the same day he came before it. Since that it hath continued *Turkish*, all save their *Religion*, enjoyed by them with like liberty as in former times.

4. *SAMOS*, is on the South-east of *Chios*, distant about five miles from the shores of *Ionia*; about eighty or eighty seven in compass; environed for the most part, especially on the North-west with inaccessible Rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little use by reason of the *Pirates* which infest those Seas. The soyl sufficiently enriched with most kind of fruits, abundantly plentifull o

Oyl, &

Oyl, and Olives, but of *Vines* altogether unfurniſhed · which is the more to be admired in regard all the Ilands and ſhores about it, produce them in ſo great a plenty. It ſtretcheth from the Eaſt to the Weſt: and on the South part of it ſtood the City *Samia*, neer unto the Haven before ſpoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the reſt of the Iland; now wholly deſolate in a manner, becauſe of the *Pirates*, and in moſt places very much over-grown with woods: becoming thereby very uſefull to thoſe *publick enemies*, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the ſudden put a ſhip to Sea, for purſuit of their *Robberies*. The chief commodity it affordeth beſides thoſe above, is a *medicinall* Earth, uſefull for *Chirurgery* and *Phyſick*: of which in former times were thoſe Veſſels made, called *Vaſa Samia*, in great requeſt amongſt the *Romans*.

Antiently it had the names of *Dryuſa*, *Anathemuſa*, *Melamphylas*, and *Cipariſſa*: out-worn by that of *Simos*, which it ſtill retaineth. Memorable in old times for the birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Sibyls*, hence called *Samia*; and finally of the wiſe-man *Pythagoras* (a wiſer than any of the *ſeven-wiſe Maſters*, ſo renowned amongſt them) who firſt brought Philoſophy into *Greece*, and from thence into *Italy*. Once a *free Common-wealth* of no ſmall eſteem, the Inſtitutes whereof are mentioned by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the ſeverall Commonwealths then being: afterwards made ſubject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a man ſo fortunate that for a long time he never fell into any miſchance. Fearing leſt ſuch a long calm would bring on a tempeſt, he let fall into the Sea a moſt precious Ring, by him deſervedly eſteemed; that ſo it might be ſaid he had ſome miſ-fortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a fiſh brought accidentally to his table, he was overcome by *Oronzes* a *Perſian*, and brought to a miſerable death. Leaving a notable example that fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a ſharp ſting, hath alwaies ſome miſery following in the train of a long concatenation of felicity. From this time forwards it ran the ſame fortune with the reſt of theſe Ilands; ſubject ſucceſſively to the great *Monarchies* in former times, as of late times to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5. *ICARIA*, (now called *Niceria*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the Weſt-ward of it, narrow, but extended out in length; the whole compaſs ſeven and thirty miles: neighboured by two great Rocks, or little Ilands, of old called *Melanthii*, now the *Fermices*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night eſpecially. Meanly inhabited at the preſent, though abounding in paſturage, and yielding ſufficiency of corn: Havenleſs, and therefore the leſs frequented, yet that defect ſupplyed by commodious Roads. In former times called *Doliche*, then *Macris*, after *Ichthiaſa*: which name it held till the flight of *Dædalus* out of *Crete*. Who juſtly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pander* to his wife in her loves with *Taurus*, ſecretly with *Icarus* his ſonne, fled out of that Iland. And becauſe he would be ſure to out-ſtrip the *Rowers* who purſued him, he added ſails unto his Boat, which it is ſaid he firſt invented. But *Icarus*, coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new device, clapped on too much Canvaſs, and bearing too great a Sayl, was here caſt away. Hence the new name both to this Iland, and the Seas adjoyning to it: and the occaſion of the Fable of *Dædalus* putting wings upon his ſhoulders, when he fled from *Crete*; and of his ſonnes flying too high, whereby the wax melted which his wings were faſtned with, and ſo he periſhed in the water. Of which thus *Ovid*

Dum petit infirmis nimium ſublimia pennis
Icarus, Icariis *nomina fecit aquis.*
In *Engliſh* thus,
Whilſt *Icarus* weak wings too high did ſoare,
He fell, and gave name to th' *Icarian* ſhore.

6. *PATMOS*, now called *Palmoſa*, is ſituate on the South of the other two; A little Iland, not above 30. miles in compaſs. Mounteinous, but indifferently fruitful, eſpecially of wheat and pulſe: of other commodities and fruits not ſo well provided. On one of theſe Mounteins ſtands a town of the ſame name with the Iland; having on the top thereof a Monaſterie of *Greek Caloiros*; and on the bottom a fair haven (I mean in reference to the Iland). Fourty ſail of Ships are ſaid to belong unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in thoſe proviſions which the ſoyl affordeth not: the ſoyl about the town being ſo incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on or near it, but on ſuch earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Iland (as to others in other parts of the world) did the *Roman* Emperours uſe to confine offenders. A puniſhment laid by *Domitian* on S. *John* the *Divine*, who in this place writ his *Revelation* to the Churches of *Aſia*. So much the Text affirmes for certain, as to the writing of it in this Iland. And the Inhabitants by *tradition* point unto an houſe on the North-ſide of the Town in which it was written; and not far off, the *Cave*, where it was *revealed*. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks*, and *Latines*. They alſo ſhew a dead mans hand; which they affirm to be his, the nayls whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (ſaith *Magnus*) claim it for the hand of one of their *Prophets*. Let them diſpute the controverſie, whilſt we haſt to

7. *CLAROS*, another Iland not far off, containing about forty miles in compaſs. Well ſtored with commodious Harbours, but very mountainous, ſome of thoſe hils of ſuch an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Epheſus* in *Ionia*, though diſtant at leaſt eighty miles, may be eaſily ſeen. It is now called *Calamo*. Neighboured by *Lero* (of old called *Leros*) a little Iland not above eighteen miles in circuit; but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furniſhing the neighbouring Countries with ſome ſtore of *Aloes*. Sacred in formertimes was *Claros* to *Apollo*; reckoned by him amongſt his honours in his brags to *Daphne*: wher he declares,

——— *Mihi* Delphica *tellus*,
Et Claros, *et* Tenedos, Patareaque *Regia ſervit.*

That is to ſay,

The folk of *Delphos*, *Tenedos* and *Clare*,
And Royall *Patara*, my Vaſſals are.

8. *COOS*, *COS*, or *COUS*, for by all theſe names it was called of old, is ſituate over againſt *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Ægean*; that is to ſay, in that part thereof which is called *Mare Myrtoum*, the *Myrtoan* Sea. A Sea ſo called, as ſome ſay, from one *Myrtilus*, the Coachman or *Charioteer* of *OEnomaus*, who having betrayed his race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Plinie* leſs probably conceiveth that it took name from *Myrtos* a little Iland not far from *Eubœa*: a little to far off to extend its name to the ſhores of *Caria*. And therefore conſidering that *Lydia* antiently was called *Myrtus*, and that in thoſe times *Æolis* and *Ionia* lying on this Sea, were accompted but as parts thereof; I think we may reſolve with more probability that it derived this name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea ſtands the Iſle of *Coos*, now called *Lange*, affording Saylers as they paſſe by a moſt beautifull proſpect, lying for the moſt part flat and level, but ſwelling towards the Eaſt with ſome gracefull mountains, out of which iſſue many ſweet and pleaſant ſprings to refreſh the Iland, which maketh it more than ordinarie fruitful. Productive of *Cypreſs* trees, *Turpentine*, and ſundry others, both delightful and *medicinall*, but moſt eſpecially celebrated for thoſe rich wines, which the Good Fellows of *Rome* ſo much loved to quaff, called *Vinum Cos*. It is in compaſſe 70 miles, having a Town of the ſame name, in the ſuburbs whereof *Stomalimne* ſtood, antiently the Temple of *Æſculapius*, famous, and rich with the offerings of thoſe who having by his aſſiſtance (as they ſuppoſed) recovered health, came hither to make payment of their vowes, and expreſs their gratitude. It is now fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, held by a Garriſon of *Turks*: and beſides this, two Villages onely in the Iland, and both inhabited by *Greeks*.

In elder times it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria* and *Nymphæa*, and at laſt of *Coos*. Memorable in being the Countrey of many famous men who were herein born; *viz.* of *Hippocrates*, the Revivor of *Phyſick*, then almoſt decayed, who is hence called *Hippocrates Cous*. 2. *Simus*, a Phyſician alſo; 3. *Ariſton*, a *Peripatetick* Philoſopher. 4. *Philetas*, as good an Oratour as a Poet. 5. *Nicias*, who for a time oppreſſed the liberty of this people, and 6. of *Apelles* the famous Painter, who to expreſs his art in the picture of *Venus*, (riſing naked out of the Sea) aſſembled together all the moſt beautifull woman of this Iland, uniting in that piece their divided perfections. Which famous peece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stomalimne*, one of the principal of this Iland, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Auguſtus*, and their dedicated to *Cæſar*, as the mother of the *Julian* Family: the *Coans* in regard hereof being eaſed of a great part of their annuall tributes. Not much leſs memorable for that fine thin ſtuffe (ſuch as now called *Tiffanies*) ſo much in uſe amongſt the Chief Ladies of *Rome*: which at once ſhewed them cloathed and naked. *Perlucidâ ntuntur veſte, ita ut nudæ conſpici poſſint*, as my Author hath it. Theſe they called *Veſtimenta Coa*, and *Veſtes Coas*, ſo often mentioned by the Poets, eſpecially in their *Amatoria*; as *Coa puellis Veſtis*, in *Tibullus*; *Induc me Cois*, in *Propertius*; *Sive erit in Cois*, ſaith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others alſo, too many, and too long to be added here. I paſſe to

9. *CARPATHOS*, ſituate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Iland, called hereabouts the *Carpathian* Sea. A rugged and unpleaſing ſoil, full of difficult mountains, but thoſe mountains ſtored with quarries of moſt excellent Marble. In circuit about 60 miles, extending more in length than breadth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long ſince periſhed, that of *Carpathos* being ſtill remaining, and ſtill the principall of the Iland; both now called *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the ſhore, and every one of them furniſhed with ſome Port or Haven, but ſmall, and for the moſt part very unſafe. Situate in the midle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*, it hath continued hitherto in the poſſeſſion of the State of *Venice* (if not taken from them very lately) to whom being given with other of the Ilands of theſe *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern forces, it hath the fortune or felicity to continue theirs, when almoſt all the reſidue were ſubdued by the *Turks*. The people *Greek*, of the communion of that Church, notwithſtanding their ſubjection to a State of *Italy*.

10. *RHODES*, ſituate in the *Rhodian* or *Carpathian* Sea, lyeth over againſt the coaſt of *Lycia*, in *Aſia Minor*, from which diſtant about 20 miles. Formerly called *Ophiuſa*, *Aſteria*, *Æthræa*, *Trinachia*, *Paeſſa*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, and at laſt *Macaria*; it ſettled finally and fortunately in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roſes*, which the ſoil produceth, *Rhodos* in that language ſignifying a *Roſe*, the *Iſle of Roſes*, as it were: but as the Poets ſay, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of theſe Seas, here deflowred by *Apollo*; or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the daughters of *Apollo* begat on *Venus*: For ſo one of them thus declareth;

Inſula dicta Rhodos, *de Sole et* Cypride *nata eſt*.
Rhoda, from whom this Iſle took name,
Of *Venus* and *Apollo* came.

The Iland 140 miles in compaſs, enriched with a moſt temperate air, and a fertile ſoyl, producing fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent paſtures, adorned with trees which alwaies do continue green: and in a word ſo bleſt with the gifts nature, that it gave occaſion to the fable of thoſe *Golden Shewers*, which were once ſaid to have fallen upon it. The *wines* hereof ſo excellent, and ſo rich of taſt, that by the *Romans* they were uſed in their ſecond courſes, or reſerved for the ſacrifices of the Gods, as too good for mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cauſe of which perpetual flouriſhing, and continuall ſpring, is to be aſcribed to the powerfull influences of the *Sun*, ſo dearly cheriſhing this Iſland, or ſo much in

Love

love with it, that it is constantly affirmed that no day passeth wherein he shineth not clearly on it, be the air in all other places never so much over-cast with Clouds, or obscured by mists. Fained for that cause to have been naturally a meer Marish, altogether unhabitable, if not covered with waters, till loved by *Phœbus*, and erected above the waves by his vigorous influences.

Of the People we shall speak anon; Look we in the mean time on the places of most observation. 1. *Lindun* (now *Lindo* a pety Town, but formerly of more esteem:) of note in those times for the Temple consecrated to *Minerva*, by *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdome. As also for the birth of *Cares*, the *Architect* of the huge *Colossus*, whereof more presently; but specially for the nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the *seven wise* men of *Greece*: the other six, being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilo* of *Sparta*, *Bias* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Miletum*, and *Pittacus* of *Mitylene*. Seven men of whom the *Grecians* most immensely bragged, as if the World could neither afford them equals, or an equall number: for which derided handsomely by *Lactantius*, an old *Christian* writer, who scoffe's their paucity, and calleth it a miserable and calamitous age, *in quo septem Soli fuerunt qui hominum vocabula mererentur*; in which there were no more than seven who deserved to be accompted men. 2. *Rhodes*, antiently, as now the chief City of it, the Iland from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in later times, depending on the fortunes and strength hereof. No place in elder times held superiour to it, for the convenency of the Haven, magnificent buildings, delightfull Orchards, and other excellencies. Situate on the East part of the Isle, on the declining of an hill, and neer the Sea, where it enjoyeth a safe and commodious Haven: treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five strong Bulwarks, besides divers Sconces, and other out-works: this Town, and *Famagusta* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two strongest holds in the *Turkish* Empire. In former times, one of the principall *Vniversities* of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marseiles*, *Tarsus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old *Academies* of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a most noted place of Study, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperour) did withdraw himself, when *Augustus* had declared his two Nephewes *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his Heires: pretending onely a desire to improve himself in the waies of *literature*; whereas the true cause was his envy at their preferment. Honoured in those times with that huge *Colossus*, one of the *seven wonders* of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindum* before mentioned. Composed of Brass, in height seventy *Cubits*, every finger of it being as great as an ordinary man; and consecrated to the *Sun*, as the proper Deity of the Iland. Twelve years in making, and having stood but sixty six years, was pulled down in an instant by an *Earthquake*, which terribly shook the whole Iland. The *Rhodians* being forbid by an *Oracle* to erect it again (or possibly pretending such an *Oracle* to save that charge) yet held the brass and other materials of it (in a manner) sacred. Not medled with, nor sacriligiously purloined till *Mnavias* the Generall of *Osmen*, the *Mahometan Caliph*, finding in himself no such scruple of conscience, (after he had subdued this Iland) made a prey hereof; loading nine hundred Camels with the very brass of it. From this *Colossus*, was the Iland sometimes called *Colossa*, and the People *Colossians*: not those *Colossians* (as some have very vainly thought) to whom Sain *Paul* writ his Epistle, those being of *Colosse*, a Town of the *Greater Phrigya*, as hath there been noted. Here was also in this City antiently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many presents both of *Greeks* and *Romans*; of both which People the *Rhodians* were then held in a fair esteem, but the *God* and the *good Wines* in greater. Towns of less note, are 3. *Villa nova*. 4. *Russicare*, and some others, but as little memorable.

This Iland was first Peopled by *Dodanim* the sonne of *Javan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly but corruptly *Rhodanim*; mistaking the *Hebrew* letter *Daleth* for that of *Resh*, letters so like as easily it might draw them to that mistake. Finding this Iland too narrow for him, he left here a Colony, and with the main body of his People passed into *Greece*, where he planted the Countrey of *Epirus*, as hath there been said. Those which staid here, being mistakingly called *Rhodians* (or called so by the *Grecians*, not looking with too curious eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundant of *Roses* herein growing) making the best use of their Haven, and other the advantages of their situation, became so expert in maritime affairs, that by *Florus* they are stiled *Populus nauticus*; and that not onely in the way of Trade and Marchandize, but of power and government: holding for many years the command of these Seas, and prescribing Lawes for the Regleiment of Navegation. Which being called the *Rhodian* Lawes, became the generall Rule for deciding *marine* causes, and ordering the Affaires of Sea, in all the parts and Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: and so continued till supplanted in these Western parts by the Lawes of *Oleron*. Fearfull of falling under the *Macedonians*, they applied themselves unto the *Romans*; whom first they aided in their warres against *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*; and afterwards in that also against *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this last service with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Asian* Provinces, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his *composition*; they became so faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Ilands of the *Mediterranean* and *Ægean* Seas, revalted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*; this onely adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their strength at Sea, or of those good Officers, they began to take upon them as *Mediatours*, and thought themselves fit men to advise their *Masters*. Grown troublesome by their frequent interpositions, and losing much of their esteem by such *impertinencies*: they began to grow jealous of the *Romans*, and incline to *Perseus* King of *Macedon*; whose Father they before opposed with their utmost power. A change which *Perterculus* expresseth with some admiration. *Rhodij ipsi fidelissimi antea* Romanis, *dubia jam fide proniores in* Regis *partes visisunt*, as his words there are. But yet they held for them against *Mithridates*, as before was said; and served their turn on all occasions; untill insensibly they bretraied their liberty to the power of their friends; and of *Confederates* and Allaies, became their *Vassals*. Made by *Vespasian* into a Province with the rest of the Isles, the Governour or *President* of that Province fixing here his residence, as the chief of those Ilands: which gave the title of *Metropolitan*

tropolitan to the Bishop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued, (or under that of *Constantinople* after the division) till the year 1124. when taken from the *Grecians*, by the State of *Venice*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperour *John Ducas*, then residing at *Nice*. Wonne from the *Grecians* by the *Turks*, the Knights of Saint *John* of *Hierusalem*, being utterly driven out of *Asia*, possessed themselves of it, by the favour of *Emanuel* the then Emperour, who aided them in the conquest, *Anno* 1308. Afterwards proving bad neighbours to the *Turkish* tyrants, whom they ceased not to infest upon all occasions, they were many times in vain invaded: *Mahomet* the *Great*, famous for taking *Constantinople* and the Empire of *Trabezond*, spending some time before their City with both loss and shame. At the last 1522. it was again besieged by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Lilladamus Villerius* being then *Great Master*: who did as much in defence hereof as policy and puissance could extend unto. But multitude in the end prevailed, and upon *Christmas* day, the *Turk* entred *Rhodes* as Conquerour; though possibly he might have said (as *Pyrrhus* once said of a like victory against the *Romans*) that *such another victory would have quite undon him*. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by some *Jews* banished out of *Spain*, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: the Christians, which are licensed to dwell in the Countrey, and have leave to trade there in the day time, not suffered upon pain of death to stay there all night. And so we pass from the Ilands of the *Asian Diocese*, to the Isle of *Cyprus*, a neer neighbour unto *Anatolia*, but no member of it: the rest of that *Diocese*, and those Seas, as 11. *Possidium*. 12. *Arcesine*. 13. *Bugialos*. 14. *Minyas*. 15. *Sirne*. 16. *Cesi*, and the rest, yielding but little matter of observation, besides their names.

OF

OF CYPRUS.

CYPRUS is ſituate in the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt two hundred miles, in breadth, ſixty, the whole cumpaſs reckoned five hundred and fifty: diſtant about ſixty miles from the rocky ſhores of *Cilicia* in *Aſia Minor*, and about an hundred from the main Land of *Syria*, towards which it ſhooteth it ſelf out with a long ſharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main land, from which rent in former time by a Violent *Earthquake*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; and worn unto this narrowneſs by the continuall working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath oftner changed its name, or at leſt had more names on the By than this. Called at firſt *Cethin*, or *Cethinia*, from *Ketim* the ſonne of *Javan*, who firſt planted in it; 2. *Ceraſtis*, from the abundance of Promontories, thruſting like *horns* into the Sea, (as the word intimates in the *Greek*.) 3. *Amathuſia*. 4. *Paphia*. 5. *Salaminia*; theſe three laſt from the principall Towns in thoſe parts hereof. 6. *Macaria*, from the fruitfulneſs and felicities of it. Beſides theſe it hath in ſome times had theſe By-names alſo, as 7. *Aſperia*, from the roughneſs of the Soyl. 8. *Collinia*, from the frequency of Hills, and Mountains. 9. *Æroſa*, from the Mines of Braſs, which abound therein. 10. And finally, all thoſe forgotten or laid by, it ſetled at the laſt in the name of *Cyprus*. So called, ſay ſome, from the abundance of *Cypreſs* Trees, with which moſt plentifully provided; as others from *Cryptos* a *Greek* word, ſignifying *Concealed* or hidden, becauſe ſometimes concealed by the Surges from the eye of Saylers; but moſt improbably ſaid by others to take name from *Cyrus*, who founded here the City of *Aphrodiſia*, whereas indeed ſix hundred years before *Cyprus* his birth, we find it by this name in *Homer*; more rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, ἀπὸ Κύπρου τῆς θυγατρὸς Κινύρου, from *Cyprus* daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the *Trojan* Warres: though in my mind the firſt comes neereſt to the truth, the *Cypreſs* Tree, not onely growing here in ſo great abundance, but being antiently peculiar in a manner to this Iland onely.

But on what ground ſoever it was called *Cyprus*, certain I am it had the name of *Ceraſtis* upon very good reaſon: no Iland or Region that I know of (for the bigneſs of it) thruſting out ſo many ſharp Promontories. For on the Weſt, there is 1. the Promontory called *Acamas*, now *Capo S. Piſano*. 2. *Drepanum*, now *Trapano* and *Melechia*. 3. *Zephyrum*, or *Caput Calidoni*, now *Punta Malota*. On the South, 4. *Phrurium*, now *Capo Bianco*. 5. *Curias*, or *Capo della Gatte*. 6. *Gades*, or *Capo Chiti*. 7. *Throni*, or *Capo Pila*. On the Eaſt, 8. *Pendaliun*, now *Capo di Griego*. 9. *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andrea*. And on the North, 10. *Crorjon*, now *Capo Cornochiette*; beſides ſome others of leſs note. Some of the Poets give another reaſon of this name, as that *Venus* offended with the People of *Amathus* for ſacrificing their gueſts, ſhould turn them into *horned* Cattell: *Vnde etiam nomen traxere Ceraſtæ*, as it is in *Ovid*. But that meerly fabulous; ſomewhat of kind unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*, and the *Kentiſh Long-tailes*. Yet ſo far we may join with *Ovid*, that the Iſland was not only called *Ceraſtis*; but that the People were alſo called *Ceraſtæ*, of which there wants not proof from ſome other Authors; with which we need not trouble our ſelves, that name being altogether worn out of uſe, and no other but that of *Cyprus* given it in common ſpeech. Nor is it a matter of more ſtrangeneſs that *Cyprus* ſhould be called ſo by the *Grecians*, from its abundance of *Cypreſs* Trees, antiently and originally peculiar to this Iland, as before was noted: than that the ſame *Grecians* ſhould give unto the neighbouring Iland the name of *Rhodes*, from its great plenty of *Roſes*; or to the neighbouring Continent the name of *Phœnicia*, from its great plenty of *Palme-trees*; the words ſo ſignifiying in that Language.

It is ſituate under the fourth *Climate*, ſo that the longeſt day in ſummer is no more than 14. hours and an half: and for that cauſe the air in ſummer time exceeding hot and ſwelthry: the ſoyl moyſtned with ſome few brooks, meriting rather the name of torrents, than rivers; which being generated for the moſt part by rain water, are not ſeldome dried up by the heat of the Sun: inſomuch that in the reign of *Conſtantine* the Great, this Iland was for 36 years together almoſt utterly forſaken; no rain falling all that time. Theſe inconveniences notwithſtanding, it is ſtored with ſuch plenty of all things, that without the help of any forreign Nation, it is of it ſelf able to build a tall ſhip from the keel to the top-ſail, and ſo put it to Sea furniſhed with all things needful for a voyage, or a Sea-fight. It alſo aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wooll, Turpentine, and Allum; Verdegreece, all ſorts of Metals, ſtore of Salt, Grograms, and other commodities: whereupon this Iland was once called *Macaria* (*i.e.* happy.) By reaſon of which wounderful affluence of all neceſſaries, and that variety of pleaſures (even to ſenſuality) which the place afforded, it was antiently conſecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence

called *Venus Cypria*, and *Dea Cypri*, *Sic te diva potens Cypri*, in *Horace*; and in *Ovid*,

Festa dies Veneris, *tota celeberrima* Cypro,
Venerat; *ipsa suis aderat* Venus *aurea festis*.
Venus feasts hallowed through all *Cyprus* came;
And *Venus* with her presence grac'd the same.

The people hereof are warlike, strong and nimble; of great civility, hospitality to their neighbours, and love to strangers of all Nations, *Jewes* onely excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jewes* inhabiting *Egypt* and the adjoining Countreys, drew themselves together, and chose one *Axander* for their Captain: under whose conduct they entred into this Island, and laid it desolate, killing in it 240000 persons of all sexes and ages; not without much bloodshed vanquished and slain by *Lucius* the Emperours Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no *Jew* to enter into the Iland: but come he hither voluntarily or by force of tempest, they lay hands on him, and lead him presently to execution. A hated Nation, that neither innocence can protect, or equity reprieve from that cruel custome.

The women in former times much noted for their Unchastity, to which their worshipping of *Venus* was no small incentive; it being the custome of these women to prostitute themselves on the shores to the passers by: their very *Virgins* not refusing to be hanselled there, before their mariage; either to raise their portions by the sale of their bodies, or else to please their Godess with such beastly sacrifices. And if *Volaterranus* may be credited (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on Queen *Carlotte*, when she came to *Rome* to seek for aid against *James* the bastard, who had dispossessed her of this Kingdome, shewed themselves little chaster than those antient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the men, *Æsclepiades* the Author of the verse so named. 2. *Xenophon*, an old Poet. 3. *Zeno*, and 4. *Apollonius*, the Philosophers. 5. *Epiphanius*, the learned Bishop of *Salamis*; and 6. above all, Saint *Barnabas*, the dear Associate of Saint *Paul*, being all natives of this Countrey.

The Christian faith was first here planted by Saint *Paul*, and *Barnabas*, as the very first fruits of their Apostleship, after they had been separated to the work of the Ministry by the Imposition of hands; as appeareth *Acts* 13. v. 4. &c. The Church hereof, by reason of the Antiquity of it, and the honour of this joint foundation, so privileged in the best ages of Christianity, that the Arch-Bishop of this Island had all prerogatives of a *Primate*; consecrated by his own Suffragan Bishops, and acting in all sacred and Ecclesiastical affaires, without dependance on, or relation to, the See of *Antioch*, whereunto all other Bishops in the Eastern *Diocese* were either subordinate or subject. Which privilege being questioned in the Council of *Ephesus*, was by the Fathers there assembled, on a full hearing of the cause, approved and ratifyed; confirmed by the Civil sanction of the Emperour *Justinian*, whose wife was a native of this Island; and by the name of *Jus Cyprium*, the privilege or exemption of the *Cyprian* Church, transmitted to the Prelates of succeeding times. Which notwithstanding, they continued in good correspondence with the Eastern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the rites and forms thereof; till the *Venetians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latine* Service into some of their Churches, and appointed Bishops and other Ministers of the *Papall* party, for execution of the same. And for the Government of these Churches, they had at first fourteen Bishops and Arch-Bishops, to gratify Queen *Alice*, (who had a mind to enrich her friends with some of the spoiles of them) reduced by *Innocent* the third to four only, that is to say, the Arch-Bishoprick of *Nicosia*, the Bishopricks of *Famagusta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each See furnished with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latines*, of which the Bishops for the *Latines* have all the Lands and annual *Revenues*, which of right belong to those Cathredrals, the *Greek* Bishops living upon stipends, leavyed on the Priests and Deacons of their jurisdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was said, here are very few: and of those few, the principall are called *Lycus*, and *Lapithus*; the first running towards the South, the last towards the North; both not seldome so dried up, that they leave their empty Channels without any water. Both also have their Source from the hill *Olympus* (the highest Mountain of the Iland) garnished with Trees and fruits of all sorts; in compass about eighteen Leagues (which make four and fifty *Italian* miles) and at the end of every League a Monastery of *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, and a fountain of fresh water for the use of the house. Here are also two other little Rivers, the one called 3. *Bodens*, the other 4. *Tolius*, but of the same nature as the former.

By *Ptolomy*, or in his time, divided into four parts or Provinces, but since it fell into the hands of the *Lusignan* family, distributed into twelve Counties or *Cantrades*; most of them called by the names of their Principal Towns. *viz.* 1. *Nicosia*. 2. *Famagusta*. 3. *Paphia*. 4. *Audima*. 5. *Limissa*. 6. *Masorum*. 7. *Salines*. 8. *Messoria*. 9. *Crusocus*. 10. *Pentalia*. 11. *Carpassus*. 12. *Cerines*. The whole containing, besides these Cities and great Towns, 805 Villages, or thereabouts, which they called *Casales*; whereof the one half antiently belonged unto the *Crown*; the other half divided betwixt the *Lay-Nobility*, and the *Ecclesiasticks*: the Patrimony of these last being computed at 80000 Crowns of annual rents, besides casualties, and the vails of the Altar. But because the tracing out of these *Cantrades* will be very difficult (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the division made hereof in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of 1. *Paphia*, 2. *Amathusia*, 3. *Lapethia*, and 4. *Salamine*.

1. *PAPHIA*, so called of *Paphos* the chief town thereof, taketh up the West part of the Iland: in which the Townes of most importance and observation, are, 1. *Paphos*, on the Sea-side, by *Pliny* called *Pala-paphos*, or old *Paphus*, built as some say by *Cyniras*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and so named in memory of *Paphus* his father: but as others say, by *Paphos*, the Sonne of *Pygmalion*, Kings

of

of *Phœnicia* and *Cyprus*: to which last *Ovid* doth agree, who speaking of *Pygmalions* statue, turned into a woman by the power of *Venus* (or rather of his beautiful wife, fabled, for the surpassing whiteness of her skin, to be made of *Ivorie*) he addes this of her,

Illa Paphum *genuit de quo tenet insula nomen.*
She *Paphus* bare, from whom the name
Of *Paphia*, to the Iland came.

Here *Venus* had her so much celebrated Temple; hence the name of *Paphia*; and here her *Votaries* of both sexes in their natural nakedness did perform her sacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearfull *Earthquake*; or as the *Legends* have it, by the prayers of Saint *Barnabas*; the ruins of it still remaining. 2. *Paphos Nova*, or *New Paphos*, Now called *Baffo*, five miles from the old, built by *Agapenor*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Law-giver, after the sack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent tempest: consecrate to the same impure Godess, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; those which here offered, not thinking they had done her sufficient service, unlesse they went in a solemn manner of procession, and paid their vowes also at the other. 3. *Arsinoe*, situate betwixt both; built by, or called so in honour of *Arsinoe* daughter of *Ptolomy* the first King *Egypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that house. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trepano*, under the Promontory so named, a well-traded Port, but miserably defaced by the *Turks*, when they took this Iland. 5. *Connelia*, one of the richest of the Iland, by reason of the plenty of Sugar, and Cotton, and Wooll, growing thereabouts. Built in the place of 6. *Cithera*, dedicated to *Venus* also, but differing from the Iland of that name in the *Ægean* Sea, rather in pronunciation than the purity of her oblations: the last syllable save one, in the name of that Iland, being short in verse, but this of *Cyprus* sounding long, as in this of *Virgil.*

Est Amathus, *est celsa mihi* Paphos, *atq;* Cithera.
Cithera, *Amathus* divine,
And lofty *Paphos*, are all mine.

2. On the South-East of *Paphia* lieth the Province or *District* of *AMATHUSIA*, taking up the South parts of the Island which look towards *Egypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Amathus*, giving name unto this division, then of most note, and much frequented for the annuall sacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples: the ruins of both hardly now discerned. Built as some say by *Amasis* King of *Egypt*, when he conquered this Iland; but as others say by some of the *Anathites*, descended from *Anath* one of the Sons of *Canaan*. 2. *Cetium*, or *Citium*, (for I find it called by both names) the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, hence called Κιτιεὺς, or *Citiensis*; and memorable for the death of *Cimon* the *Athenian* Generall, a Town wherein the memory of *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, is most apparently preserved. 3. *Episcopio*, one of the chief of all the Island, built on the place, or out of the decay, of 4. *Curias*, not far from the Promontory of the same name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollo* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollo Hylates*: his Altars in those times held so sacred, that whosoever presumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea from the Promontory or rocks adjoining. 5. *Salines*, or *Salinæ*, so called from the rich Saltpits, one of the chief Towns of this part; and giving name to one of these twelve *Castrades*, into which the whole is now divided.

3. *LAPETHIA*, the third part of the Iland, lyeth on the North thereof, opposite to *Cilicia* in *Asia Minor*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Nicosia*, the Regall City of the Kings, and the See of the Arch-Bishop, and the chief of the Iland: antiently called *Ledronsis*, and *Lentenis*; but those names long ago laid by. Situate in the midest of the Isle; and in a plain and champain Countrey, abundantly fertile and delightfull. Environed with a fair wall, so exactly round as if it had been drawn with a pair of compasses; in circuite about five miles, and both for situation, numbers of people, and magnificent buildings of all sorts both publick and private, compared by some to the most beautiful City of *Florence*. Fortified by the *Venetians*, when in their possession, with new walls, deep ditches, and eleven strong Bullwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern fortification. But notwithstanding all these works, and the help of 250 peece of Cannon planted on the walls, and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the second or third assault, *Septemb.* 9. *Anno* 1570. So evident a truth it is, that Fortifications are more strengthened by the gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2. *Cerines*, situate neer the Sea, strong by art and nature, and furnished with all things necessary to endure a siege; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alfonsus Palacius* the unwarlike Governour, terrified with the great slaughter made at the sack of *Nicosia*, before the enemy came neer it. At first called *Ceuranie*, and said to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* King, when he first subdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Iland to that Crown; blest with a more temperate and wholsome air, than any other in the Countrey. 3. *Tremitus*, the birth-place of *Spiridion*, a Bishop of the *Primitive* times, renowned for miracles, many of which reported by *Sozomen*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 10. and other *Ecclesiasticall* writers. Wholly decaied, the ruine of it much contributing to the rise of *Nicosia*. 5. *Lapithus* (by *Pliny* called *Lapetos*) on the banks of a small Riveret of that name. Of so great note in former times, that it gave to this Division the name of *Lapethia*. In this part standeth the hill *Olympus* (now the Mountain of the *holy Cross*) described before.

4. *SALAMINE*, the fourth and last Province of this Iland, taketh up the whole East-parts hereof: So named from 1. *Salamis*, once the chief City of the Isle, and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof, in the *Primitive* times. Destroyed by the *Jewes* in the reign of *Trajan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, sacked, and razed unto the ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclius*, it never could again recover: the *Metropolitan* See after that subversion, being removed to *Nicosia*

cosia. It was sometimes, and by some writers, called *Constantia* also; but that name could give it no more perpetuity than the other of *Salamis*. Memorable whilest it stood for the founder of it, being *Teucer* the sonne of *Telamon* King of *Salamis*, an Isle of the *Ægean* Sea; banished his Countrey by his Father, and setled in this Iland by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phœnicia*: as also for a famous Temple sacred unto *Jupiter*, hence called *Salaminius*. Out of the ruins hereof arose 2. *Famagusta*, now the prime City of these parts; built as is said by *Costa*, the Father of Saint *Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the East end of the Iland, in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one called the *Cape* of Saint *Andrew*, and the other *Capo di Griego*, or the head of *Græcia*. In compass not above two miles, in form foursquare, but that the side towards the East stretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen foot in breadth, an old stone wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (opposite to *Tripolis* a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South-east, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow passage not above forty paces broad, but after opening wider and wider, maketh a convenient Harbour, rather safe than large, assured both by the difficult entrance, and a chain crossed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified: the works of it of the old fashion, generally decaied except one Bulwark, which was built according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Palisadoes*, Curteins, Casemates, and all other Additaments: most gallantly defended by *Bragadine* the noble Generall, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who spent no lesse then 118000 great shot upon it; and at last yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3. *Aphrodisium*, so named of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4. *Arsinoe*, built also by one of the *Arsinoes* Queens of *Egypt* (there being two others of this name, and the same foundation,) now called *Lescare*, and antiently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*. 5. *Tamassus*, of good note in the time of *Strabo*, for rich Mines of Brass, as afterwards for abundance of *Verdegreece* and *Vitriol*, found plentifully in the fields adjoyning. 6. *Idalium*, neer a Mount of the same name, so called by accident. For *Chalcenor* the founder of it being told by *Oracle*, that he should seat himself, and build a City where he first saw the rising Sun: one of his followers, seeing the Sun begin to rise, cried out ἴδου ἥλιον, that is to say, *behold the Sun*. Which *omen* taken by *Chalcenor*, he here built this City. But whether this were so or not (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple, neighboured by the *Idalian Groves*, so memorized and chanted by the antient Poets. So strong an influence had lust and sensuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Iland was defiled with those brutish Sacrifices which day by day were offered to that impure deitie: though to say truth, it was no marvail if having made their *Belly their God*, they made also in the next place their *glory their shame.*

The first Inhabitants of this Iland were the posterity of *Cittim* the Sonne of *Javan*, and grand-sonne of *Japhet*: who having seen his brother *Tarshish* setled in *Cilicia*, (where his memory is still preserved in the City of *Tarsus*) planted himself and his retinue in this opposite Island. The City of *Cetium* as *Ptolemy*, or *Citium* as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the antientest of the Iland; which with the authority of *Josephus* and others of the antient writers, put it out of question. But being this Iland was too narrow to contain his numbers, and willing to seek further off for a larger dwelling, he left here so many of his followers as might serve in time to plant the Countrey; and with the rest passed into *Macedon*, where we have already spoken of him. Made tributary first to *Amasis* King of *Egypt*, from which distant about three or four daies sailing. Subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a neer neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring people, made themselves masters of the Sea-coasts and maritime places. *Cinyras* the Father of *Myrrha* (by whom both Father and Grand-Father to *Adonis*) is said to have been King of both. The like affirmed of *Belus* one of his Successors, who is said to have been the founder of the City of *Citium*, named so (if not rather repaired than new built by him,) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the first Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Teucer* the Sonne of *Telamon* banished his Countrey, accompanied with many followers from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*, was settled in the East-parts hereof, where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his first plantation. Yet so, that the *Phœnicians* kept their former hold: it being evident in Story that *Elulæus* one of the Successors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*,) and a Co-temporary with *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*, passed over into *Cyprus* with a puissant Navy to reduce the *Citieans* to obedience, who had then rebelled. The Iland at first comming of *Teucer* hither so infinitely overgrown with woods, that the people were not able to till the land. Insomuch that notwithstanding the great wast made of them, both in building ships, and casting metals, a law was made that every one which would should fell them, and take as much ground in severalty for his own inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for tillage. Encourged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phœnicians*, and *Ægyptians*, so bestirred themselves, that at last they brought it unto *Champagn*: parcelled out in succeeding times amongst nine Kings, for so many *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch found at his comming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did subdue all those petit Princes, yet he took not from them their estates, or titles: contented with the conquest of it, and an annual tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, we find *Evagoras*, and *Nicocles*, to whom *Isocrates* inscribed two of his Orations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, *Citium* it self (such was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not subject unto any other. The King whereof to indear himself with the Conquerour, gave him a sword, μαχαίραν θαυμαστὴν, saith *Plutarch*, an admirable sword, both for colour and lightness, which he after used in all his fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his estates amongst them, the Princes and people of this Iland were in great distractions; not knowing to whom they

they might submit for their best advantage. But *Ptolomy* who had seized on *Egypt* for his part of the spoil, being strong in shipping, settled them by a personal visit; and fortifying some of the best pieces in it, assured the Countrey to himself. To him and his posterity it continued subject till the time of *Ptolomy Auletes* the nineth King of this line in our Accompt, who gave it for a portion to one of his Brethren: in whose time, the *Romans*, without any colour or pretence of quarrell, but only to enrich themselves with the spoil of the Iland, sent *Portius Cato* to subdue it. And he at first assayed to get it with the Kings content, offering him, in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Priest-hood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainful Office, and of high esteem among that people. But when *Ptolomy* for fear of a worse mischief had made away himself by poison, *Cato* without more ceremony takes possession of it. And because *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Historian, hath so significantly expressed this business, and withall described so punctually the estate of this Iland; we will adde to this discourse from him; though somewhat be repeated which was said before. *Cyprum insulam procul à Continente distantem, & pretiosam*, &c. "The Isle of *Cyprus*, farre distant from the Continent, and well stored with *Harbours*, is famous, besides "many *Municipall* Towns, by two principall Cities, that is to say, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*, the one "sacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Isle so admirably fruitful, and with all things furnish-"ed, that without the help of any forrein Nation, it is able of it self to build and rig forth a ship from "the very keel unto the top-sail, and trim it with all tackle necessary for a present voyage. Nor do I "shame to say, that with greater avarice than justice, the *Romans* did invade this Iland; King *Ptolo-*"*my*, our old Confederate and Ally, being unworthily proscribed, for no other reason, but that our "treasury was bare, our *Exchequor* empty. And he no sooner had prevented this dishonour by a quick "and voluntary death, making away himself by poison, but the Iland was forthwith made tributary, "and the riches of it, *velut hostiles exuvia classi imposita & in urbem adducta per Catonem*, as the spoils "of some conquered enemy were brought on Ship-bord, and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far and to this purpose he.

I know there is another cause alleged for the sending of *Cato* on this Errand, *viz.* that *Clodius* who was then *Tribune* and sped the *Edict*, might have opportunity by his absence to revenge himself on *Cicero* and some others of the opposite faction: but the main business was the money, as before was said; the prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thousand Crowns, of coin now currant. Which money and moveables, amounting unto so vast a sum, he fearing to lose by Sea, divided it into many small portions, which he put into several boxes, *viz.* in every box two *Talents* and fifty *Drachms*. At the end of every box he fastened a long rope with a piece of Cork; by which floating above the water, the money, if by Shipwrack lost, might be espied again: which was not much unlike the *buoyes* which Mariners fasten by long ropes to their Anchors, that they may be the sooner found. We see by this that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Countrey was very weak: *Avariùs magis quam justius summus assecuti*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* also. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the division of the Empire assigned to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours: under whom it suffered, as all other parts of the Empire did, by the violent invasion of the *Saracens*, who spoiled and ransacked it in the time of *Constans* the second, destroying then the City of *Salamis* or *Constantia*. But that tempest being overblown, they returned again unto that Empire, governed by a Succession of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* usurping the *Greek* Empire, compelled *Isaacibus Comnenus*, one of the bloud Royal, to shift for himself: who seasing on this Iland made himself King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191. when *Richard* the first of *England*, being denyed the Common courtesie of taking in fresh water, and seeing his Souldiers abused by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Prisoner, but subdued the whole Iland. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamasdes* King of *Armenia*; *Catenis, sed ne quid honori deesset, aureis vinxit*; So did our *Richard* keep a *decorum* towards this Prisoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but silver. King *Richard* having thus possessed himself of this Countrey, sold it for ready money, (which for his mannaging of his intended wars against the *Turk*, he most needed) unto the Templers: and taking it, upon I know not what discontent, again from them, he bestowed it on *Guy* of *Lusignam*, the titulary and miserable King of *Hierusalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the title of that lost and shipwracked Kingdome; with which title he and some of his Successours for a time were honoured.

In the posterity of this *Guy*, this Iland continued free and absolute till the year one thousand foure hundred twentythree when *Melechella* (or *Melechnaser*) Sultan of *Egypt*, invaded this Countrey, took *John* King hereof Prisoner, ransomed him for 150000 Sultanies, restored him to his Kingdome, and imposed on him and his Successours, the yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was Father to another *John*, whose two Children were *Carlotte* a legitimate daughter, and *James* a bastard Sonne. *James*, after the death of his Father, dispossessed his Sister *Carlotte* of the Crown, by the consent and help of the *Sultan* of *Egypt*. and the better to strengthen himself against all opposition, he took to wife *Catharina Cornari*, daughter by adoption to the *Venetian Senate*; whom at his death he made his heir, if the child she went withall (having then none by her) should die without issue, as it did, not long after it was born: and she seeing the factious Nobility too head-strong to be bridled by a female authority, like a good child resigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian State*, *Anno* 1473. These defended it against all claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Ægyptian*, and after to the *Turkish Sultans*, the 40000 Crowns before mentioned;) till the year 1570. when *Mustapha*, Generall of the *Turks*, wrested it from the *Venetians*, to the use of his Master *Selimus* the second, who pretended title to it as Lord of *Ægypt*. The governour of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loss, was *Signior Bragadino*: who as long as hope of succours, meanes of resistance, or possibility of prevailing continued,

stually

with incredible valour made good the Town of *Famagusta*, in whose defence consisted the welfare of the whole Island. At last he yielded it on honourable conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Mustapha* the *Turkish* Generall inviting to his Tent, the principall men of worth in the Town, caused them all to be murdered: and as for *Bragadin* himself, he commanded his ears to be cut off, his body to be flead alive, and his skin stuffed with straw, to be hanged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the prisoners and spoiles were in two tall ships, and one Gallion, sent unto *Selimus*; but he never saw them. For a Noble *Cyprian* Lady destinated to the lust of the *Grand Signeour*, fired certain barrels of powder; by the violence whereof both the vessels and the booty in them, were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroick act; inferiour unto none of the *Roman* Dames, so much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman* than a *Christian* Lady.

Thus having summed up the affaires of this Iland from the first plantation of it, till this last sad conquest, I will lay down the succession of the *Cyprian* Kings of the Noble *Lusignam* Family, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The Kings of *Cyprus*.

1. *Guy* of *Lusignam*, the *titulary* King of *Hierusalem*, estated in the Kindome of *Cyprus* by *Richard* the first of *England*.
2. *Almericus*, the brother of *Guy*.
3. *Hugh*, the Sonne of *Almericus*.
4. *Henry*, the Sonne of *Hugh*.
5. *Hugh* II. Sonne of *Henry*.
6. *Hugh* III. Sonne of *Hugh* the second.
7. *John*, Sonne of *Hugh* the third.
8. *Henry* II. the Brother of *John*.
9. *Hugh* IV. Sonne of *Guido*, the younger brother of *John*, and *Henry* the second.
10. *Peter*, the Sonne of *Hugh* the fourth.
11. *Petrinus*, the Sonne of *Peter*.
12. *James*, younger brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
13. *Janus*, the Sonne of *James*, made Tributary by *Melechnaser*, to the Kingdome of *Ægypt*.
14. *John* II. the Sonne of *Janus*.
15. *Carlotte*, sole Daughter and heir of *John* the second, first maryed to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*; outed of her estate and Kingdome, by
16. *James* II. the bastard Sonne of *John* the second, who by a strong hand seized upon it; and by help of the *Venetians* kept it during life.
17. *James* III. born after the decease of his Father, whom he survived not very long. After whose death, being the last of this Family, the *Venetians* possessed themselves of *Cyprus*: which they invaded with no better title than the *Romans* had done in former times; and not likely to be blest with a long fruition of that which they had so unjustly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here it is to be observed that these *Cyprian* Kings retaining the title of *Hierusalem* (towards which they sometimes cast an eye) bestowed upon their greatest Subjects, and deserving Servitors, both titles of Honour and Offices of State, belonging antiently to that Kingdome. So that we find amongst them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cæsarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabor*; a Seneschall of *Hierusalem*, a Constable, Marshall, and High Chamberlain of that Kingdome also. With better reason, though no doubt with as little profit, as the Pope gives Bishopricks, and Arch-Bishopricks in *Greece* or *Ægypt*. But those titular Offices are now quite extent, though possibly some of the titles of honor which were took from thence, may be still remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famagusta*, and *Nicosia*, on which the whole Iland did depend, all other Cities of it, and the whole by consequence, were forced to submit to the *Turkish* Tyranny. The Noble men, and Citizens of principall quality, either most cruelly massacred in the sack of those Towns, or banished for ever their native Countrey, as men whose living there might possibly endanger their new conquest. But the Countrey people, Artificers, and persons of inferiour rank, permitted to enjoy both their lives and livelyhoods; together with their severall and respective religions, in the same manner as before: paying such ordinary taxes as were laid upon them. And so this goodly Iland came into the hands of the *Turks*, who have hitherto enjoied the possession of it: For notwithstanding that the *Venetians*, inthe year next following, with the help of the Pope and King of *Spain*, gave the *Turks* that great and memorable overthrow, at the famous battel of *Lepanto*: yet did they nothing in pursuit of so great a victory for the recovery of this Iland; and indeed they could not: the confederates returning home, and dissolving their Fleet, as soon as they had secured their own estates by the overthrow of the *Turkish* Navy. And though the *Venetians*, to put the best face they could on so great a losse, so highly pleased themselves with the following Victory, that they put the same in balance with the losse of *Cyprus*: yet an ingenious *Turk* to let them see the folly of so vain a boasting, compared the losing of *Cyprus*, to the loss of an Arme, which could not without a miracle be recovered; and the loss at *Lepanto* to the shaving off of ones beard, which growes the thicker for the cutting, as indeed it proved: For the next year

the

the *Turks* armed out another Navy, no leſſe formidable than the other had been before, braving therewith the whole Chriſtian Forces, not as then disbanded.

What the Revenues of it were to the Kings hereof, I cannot certainly determine. The profits of Salt only, and that of the Cuſtome-houſe yielded yearly to the Signeury of *Venice*, when it was in their hands, a million of Crowns. For the Cuſtomes and profits of the Salt were farmed for 500000 Crowns *per annum*, which being turned into the Chief *Cyprian* Commodities, were counted double worth that money, when unladed at *Venice*. To which if we ſhould adde the lands of the former Kings, and other waies of raiſing money on the Subject, I cannot ſee, but the *Intrado* of the Crown muſt needs amount conſtantly to a million and an half yearly, if it were not more.

The Armes hereof were quarterly, firſt *Argent*, a Croſs *Potent* between four Croſſes *Or*; ſecondly Barre-wiſe of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Azure*, ſupporting a Lion Paſſant *Azure*, Crowned, *Or*; thirdly, a Lion *Gules*; and fourthly, *Argent*, a Lion *Gules*; as *Bara* a *French* Herald hath given the *Blazon*.

On the Eaſt of *Cyprus* towards *Syria* ly four ſmall Ilands, which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Clides*, not far from the Promontory of that name; both Promontory and Iland now called Saint *Andrews*: and towards the Weſt another little knot of Iſlets, which he calls *Carpaſia*; but nothing memorable in either. So I paſſe them over.

There are in *Cyprus*
Arch-Biſhops 2. Biſhops 6.

And ſo much for CYPRVS.

OF

OF SYRIA.

SYRIA is bounded on the East, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Cilicia* and *Armenia Minor*, from the last parted by Mount *Taurus*; and on the South, with *Palestine*, and some parts of *Arabia*. The length hereof from Mount *Taurus* to the edge of *Arabia*, is said to be five hundred twenty and five miles; the breadth from the *Mediterranean* to the River *Euphrates* computed at four hundred and seventy; drawing somewhat neer unto a square.

In the Scriptures it is called *Aram*, and the People *Aramites*, because first peopled and possessed by *Aram* the sonne of *Sem*, though *Hamath*, *Arphad*, and *Sidon*, the sonnes of *Canaan*, did also put in for a share: and yet not called thus by the Scriptures onely, but by some of the Heathen writers also. For *Strabo* doth not onely acknowledge, that the *Syrians* in his time were called Ἀεμμοι, but citeth *Possidonius* a more antient Writer, for proof that the Ἀελμοι, which *Homer* speaketh of must be those *Syrians*: further averring, that the *Syrians* called themselves by the name of *Aramæi*, or plainly *Aramites*. But by the *Greeks* they are called *Syrians*, or *Surians*, from the City *Tyre*, called antiently by the name of *Sur*, or *Tsur*, (of which more hereafter) either because the *Tyrians* or *Tsurians*, had in those times the command of the Sea-coasts of this Countrey; or else that *Tyro* or *Tsur* being the chief Mart-Town of all those parts, was the place where they traded with these *Aramites*. Conform to which antient Appellations, the City of *Tyre* is again called *Sur*, and this Countrey *Soria*.

But here we are to understand, that though the *Syria* of the *Romans*, as it was a member of that Empire, was limited within the bounds before laid down; yet antiently as well the *Aram* of the *Hebrewes*, as the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of greater Latitude: of which because it may be usefull to the understanding of *holy Scriptures*, and of some *Classick* Authors also, I shall enlarge a little further. For *Aram*, taken in the largest exception of it, extendeth from the Coast of *Cilicia*, North, to *Idumæa* towards the South; from the River *Tigris* in the East, to the *Mediterranean* Sea, upon the West, conteining besides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans* (in which *Palestine* also was included) *Arabia* the *Desart*, and *Petræa*, *Chaldæa*, *Babylonia*, and all those Provinces to which the name *Aram* is either prefixed or subjoyned in the Book of God, as *Aram-Naharaijm*, *Aram-Sobah*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maahah*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-Beth-Rehob*; all mentioned in the holy Scriptures. Some doe extend it further yet, and do not only bring *Armenia* within the Latitude of this name, which they derive from *Aram-minni*, whose neighbourhood to *Syria* may give some colour to the errour; but even those People of *Cappadocia* bordering on the *Euxine* Sea, the Inhabitants of which were antiently called *Luco Syri*, or *white Syrians*. But this not having any good warrant or authority wherewithall to back it, shall not come under the compass of this consideration. But for the rest, I find it generally agreed upon amongst the learned, that *Aram-Naharaijm*, is the same with the whole Countrey of *Mesopotamia*, so named both by the *Jewes* and *Grecians*, because it is environed with the two famous Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*; which *Priscian* by a meer *Latine* name, would have to be called *Medanna* (but *Inter-Amna* by his leave would express it better) and as for *Padan-Aram* wherein *Laban* dwelt, which is called *Sede-Aram* by the Prophet *Hosea*, *chap.* 12. *v.* 13. that is a part onely of the other: the whole Countrey of *Aram-Naharaijm* or *Mesopotamia* being divided into two parts; whereof the more fruitfull lying North-ward, is called *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whose Inhabitants *Xenophon* gives the name of *Syrians*; the barren and more defart lying towards the South, which by the same Author is called *Arabia*. For *Aram-Maachah*, mentioned 1 *Corin.* 19. 6. it is conceived to be that part of *Syria*, which was after named *Comagena*, whereof *Samosata* was the *Metropolis* or Mother City. And as for *Aram-Sobah*, of which and of *Adadezer* the King thereof, there is so frequent mention in the Books of the *Kings* and *Chronicles*, it was the Province lying on the North-East of *Damascus*, and [illegible] the banks of the River *Euphrates*, and is the same with that which [illegible] called [illegible] from the City *Palmyra*. South-west of which amongst the pety Kingdomes on the North of *Gessur* in the Land of *Palestine*, lay the Kingdome of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, confederate with *Ammon* in the warre which they had with *David*, 2. *Sam.* 10. 6. Nor did the *Greeks* less extend the name of *Syria*, then the *Hebrewes* did the name of *Aram*, if they stretched it not further. Certain I am, that *Strabo* comprehendeth the *Assyrians* in the name of *Syria*, where he affirmeth, that the *Medes* over-ruled all *Asia*, καὶ καλούσασι τὴν τῶν Σύρων ἀρχὴν, the Empire of the *Syrians* (he meaneth the *Assyrians*) being overthrown. And in *Herodotus* it is said, that those whom the *Barbarians* call *Assyrians*, ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἐκαλέοντο Σύριοι, were called *Syrians* by the *Greeks*. And to that purpose *Justin* also, *Imperium* Assyrij, *qui postea* Syri *dicti sunt*, *Annos* 1300 *tenuere*. But these all writ

writ after the time that *Seleucus* and his race had the poſſeſſion of the Eaſtern Empire: who living for the moſt part in *Syria*, from whence they might more eaſily furniſh themſelves with Souldiers out of *Greece*, (as they did moſt commonly for all their military expeditions) cauſed all the other parts of their large dominions to be called in tract of time by the name of *Syria*. But on the other ſide, as the *Syria* of the *Romans* extended not to the Eaſt and South, as the *Aram* of the *Hebrews* did: ſo it contained ſome other Regions, that is to ſay, thoſe of *Phœnicia* and *Paleſtine*, which were not comprehended in the name of *Aram*; as being planted by a people of another race, and of different fortunes, till brought together under the command of the *Babylonians*. In which regard we will treat ſeverally of the natures of the ſoyl and people; their originals, government, and ſucceſſes, till we have brought them into one hand: and then continue their affaires as one joint eſtate. But firſt we will ſurvey the antient and preſent fortunes of Chriſtianity, and other Religions herein embraced or tolerated, wherein the whole, according to the bounds and limits before laid down, is alike concerned.

And for Religions in this Countrey, here is choiſe enough; thoſe namely of the *Mahometan*, *Chriſtian*, *Pagan*; and one compounded out of all, which is that of the *Druſians*. The *Mahometan* imbraced by the generality of the people throughout the whole, and by all that be in any office or authority, is only countenanced and approved of, though the reſt be tolerated. The Pagan intertained onely in the mountainous Countreys bordering on *Armenia*; inhabited by a people whom they call *Curdi*, or the *Curdenes*, ſuppoſed to be deſcended from the antient *Parthians*, as being very expert in Bows and Arrows, their moſt uſual Annes. A race of people who are ſaid to worſhip alike both God and the Devil; the one that they may receive benefits from him, the other that he may not hurt them. *Se alios deos colere ut proſint, alios ne noceant*, as *Lactantius* doth affirm of the antient *Grecians*. But their principall devotions are addreſſed to the Devil only, and that upon good reaſons, as themſelves conceive. For God they ſay is a good man, and will do no body no harm, but the Devill is a miſchievous fellow, and muſt be pleaſed with ſacrifices that he do not hurt them. And for the *Druſians*, they are conceived to be the remainder of thoſe *Frankes* (by which name the *Turks* call all Weſtern Chriſtians) who driven unto the mountains, (when they loſt the ſoveraignty and poſſeſſion of the Holy Land) and defending themſelves by the advantage of the place, could never be wholly rooted out by the *Turks*: contented at the length to afford them both peace and liberty of their religion. But they have ſo forgot the Principles of that Religion, that they retain nothing of it but baptiſm; and not that generally neither: accounting it lawful moſt unlawfully to marry their own Daughters, Siſters, or Mothers: and yet conform unto the *Turks* in their habit only, wearing the white *Turbant*, as the *Turks* do; but abhorring Circumciſion, and indulging to themſelves the liberty of wine, by law forbidden to the *Turks*. A people otherwiſe very warlike, ſtout and reſolute: with great, both conſtancy and courage, reſiſting hitherto the Attempts of the *Turkiſh* Sultans. The Countrey they poſſeſs environed with the confines of *Joppa* about *Cæſarea Paleſtina*, betwixt the Rivers of *Jordan* and *Orontes*, extending Eaſtwards as far as the plains of *Damaſcus*: ſo that there is no part of *Syria*, except *Comagena*, unto which their habitations reach not.

But for the Chriſtian Faith it was firſt preached here by ſome of the diſperſed Brethren, (which fled from the rage of perſecution) in *Phonice*, and the City of *Antiochia*, amongſt whom Saint *Peter*, *as he paſſed through all quarters*, *Acts* 9 31. is by the Fathers ſaid to have been the Chief. The Church more fully planted in it by *Barnabas* firſt, after by *Paul* and *Barnabas* jointly. Who ſpending there a whole year together, inlarged the borders of the Church, and gained much people, as is ſaid *Acts* 11. *v.* 19. &c. inſomuch that *here the Diſciples were firſt called Chriſtians*, *v.* 26. Not called ſo accidentally as a thing of chance, but on a ſerious conſultation had amongſt themſelves, and a devout invocation on the name of God to direct them in it. The word χρηματίσαι uſed in the Originall importeth ſomewhat of *Oracular* and *Divine* direction. And certainly it ſtandeth with reaſon that it ſhould be ſo. For if upon the giving of a name to *John* the *Baptiſt*, there was not only a conſultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father called to adviſe about it; and if we uſe not to admit the pooreſt child of the pariſh into the congregation of Chriſts Church by the door of *Baptiſm*, but by the joint invocation of the name of God for his bleſſings on it: with how much more regard of *Ceremony* and *Solemnity* muſt we conceive that the whole body of Chriſts people were *baptized* into the name of *Chriſtians*? And there is ſome proof for it too, beſides *probability* and *conjectures*. For *Suidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus* an old *Coſmographer*, do expreſly ſay, that in the daies of *Claudius Cæſar*, ten years after the *Aſcenſion* of our Lord and Saviour, *Euodius* received Epiſcopal conſecration, and was made Patriarch of *Antioch* the *Great* in *Syria*, ſucceeding immediately to St. *Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the *Diſciples* were firſt called *Chriſtians*, τῶ αὐτῶ Ἐπισκόπῳ Εὐοδίῳ προσομιλήσαντος αὐτοῖς, καὶ ὀνομάσαντος αὐτοὺς τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, &c. *i. e. Euodius* their Biſhop calling them to a *Solemn Aſſembly*, and impoſing this new name upon them, whereas before they were called *Nazarites* and *Galilæans*. A people ſo hated by the *Heathen*, that they ceaſed not to ſlander them from the firſt beginning. *For as concerning this Sect, we know that it is every where ſpoken againſt*, ſaid the *Jews* of *Rome* to the Apoſtle, *Acts* 28. 22. *Tacitus*, a *Roman*, but a *Gentile*, goes yet further with them, calling them *homines per flagitia inviſos, & noviſſima meritos exemplo*; the calumny in his time being ſtrong and generall, that at their private meetings they devoured Infants, and had carnall company with their Mothers and Siſters. Which defamations notwithſtanding they grew in few years to ſo great numbers that they were a terrour to their Enemies, though grievouſly afflicted, tortured, and put to ſeverall kindes of death, under the ten *Famous Perſecutions*, raiſed againſt them, by *Nero*, *Anno* 67. 2. *Domitian*, *Anno* 96. 3. *Trajanus*, *Anno* 110. 4. *Marcus Antonius*, *Anno* 167. 5. *Severus*, *Anno* 195. 6. *Maximinus*, *Anno* 237. 7. *Decius*, *Anno* 250. 8. *Valerianus*, *Anno* 259. 9. *Aurelianus*, *Anno* 278. 10. by *Dioclesianus*,

tianus, *Anno* 293. All, but this last especially so extremely raging, that (as Saint *Hierome* writeth in one of his Epistles) there were martyred 5000 for each day in the year, except the first of *January*, on which they used not to shed bloud. But *sanguis Martyrum semen Ecclesiæ*. This little grain of Mustard-seed, sowed by Gods own hand, and watered by the blood of so many holy men, grew so great a tree, that the branches of it spred themselves over all the world: and got such footing, even in the *Roman* Army it self, (men commonly not of the strictest kind of *Religion*,) that when *Julian* the *Apostata* had vomited out his soul, with *Vicisti tandem Galilæe*, they elected *Jovinian*, though a *Christian*, for his Successor, with this acclamation, *Christiani omnes sumus*, We are also *Christians*. But see how the *baptizing* of Gods people by the name of *Christians*, in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my way. I return again, both to the place and to the Author. In whose evidence, besides what doth concern the imposition of the name of *Christian* upon the body of the faithful, we have a testimony for Saint *Peters* being Bishop of *Antioch*, the first Bishop thereof (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at least) as is said positively by *Eusebius* in his *Chronologie*, Saint *Hierome* in his Catalogue of Ecclesiasticall writers, Saint *Chrysostome* in his *Homilie de Translatione Ignatii*, *Theodoret*, *Dialog.* 1. Saint *Gregory Epistol. lib.* 6. *cap.* 37. and before any of them by *Origen*, in his sixt *Homily* on Saint *Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in respect that *Antioch* was accompted alwaies the principal City of the East parts of the *Roman* Empire (the *Prefect* of the East for the most part residing in it) the Bishop hereof in the first Ages of Christianity had jurisdiction over all the Churches in the East, as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Constantine* the *Great* the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Isauria*, with those of *Mesopotamia* and *Osroena* were after added: containing fifteen *Roman* Provinces, or the whole *Diocese* of the Orient. And though by the substracting of the Churches of *Palestine*, and the decay of Christianity in these parts by the conquests of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the jurisdiction of this Patriarch hath bin very much lessened: yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flourished in the year 1130. reciteth the names of 13 *Archiepiscopal*, 21 *Metropolitical*, and 127. *Episcopal* Sees, yielding obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which that number is much diminished, *Mahometanism* more and more increasing, and Christianity divided into Sects and factions: insomuch as of three sorts of Christians living in these Countreys, *viz.* the *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and *Melchites*, onely the *Melchites* are subordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And first for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greatest body of Christians in all the East, they are so named in way of scorn by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite Schismatick*, separating without just cause from their communion. The name derived from *Malchi*, signifying in the *Syriack* language a King or Emperour: because adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and decisions of preceding Councils, ratified by authority of the Emperour *Leo*, by whom subscription was required to the Acts thereof, and were in that respect, (as we use to say) of the Kings Religion. Conform in points of doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate divine service as solemnly on the Saturday as upon the Sunday: subject to their true and original Patriarch, who since the destruction of *Antioch* doth reside in *Damascus*; and on no terms acknowledging the authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name either from *Marona*, one of the principall Villages where they first inhabited; or from the Monasterie of S. *Maron*, mentioned in the first Act of the Council of *Constantinople* holden under *Mennas*, the Monks of which called *Maronites*, were the head of their Sect. Some points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Christians*; others in which they differ onely from the Church of *Rome*. Of the first sort, 1. That the *Holy Ghost* proceedeth from the Father onely, without relation to the Sonne. 2. That the Souls of men were created all together at the first beginning. 3. That male Children are not be Baptized together, but at severall times by one and one. 4. That *Heretiques* returning to the Church, are to be re-baptized. 5. That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother till her *purification*, and therefore not Baptizing Children till that time be past, which after the birth of a *Male Child*, must be forty daies, of a *Female*, eighty. 6. That the *Eucharist* is to be given to Children presently after *Baptism*. 7. That the fourth Mariage is utterly unlawfull. 8. That the Father may dissolve the mariage of his Sonne or Daughter. 9. That young men are not to be *Ordained Priests* or *Deacons* except they be maried. 10. That nothing Strangled, or of blood, may be eaten by *Christians*. 11. That Women in their monethly courses are not to be admitted to the *Eucharist*, or to come into the Church. 12. And finally (which was indeed their first discrimination from the *Orthodox Christians*) that there was but one will and action in *Christ*, the Fautors of which opinion had the name of *Monothelites*. Of the last kind, 1. That the Sacrament of the Lords Supper was to be administred in *both kinds*; 2. and in Leavened bread; 3. that bread to be *broken* to the Communicants (and not each man to have his wafer to himself,) according to the first Institution. 4. Not *reserving* that Sacrament, 5. nor *carying* any part of the consecrated Elements to sick persons in danger of death. 6. That *Mariage* is nothing inferiour to the single life. 7. That no man entreth the Kingdome of Heaven till the General Judgement. 8. That the *Saturday* or old *Sabbath* is not to be fasted; 9. nor the Sacrament upon daies of fasting to be administred till the Evening. They withdrew themselves from the See of *Antioch*, and set up a Patriark of their own, many ages since, (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schism, the honourable title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Successour of that Apostle in the See thereof. Dispersed about the spurres and branches of Mount *Libanus*, where they have many Townships and scattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common speech the true antient *Syriack*; that is to say 1. *Eden*, a small village, but a Bishops See, by the *Turks* called *Æchera*, 2. *Hatchtuth*, 3. *Sherrie*, 4. *Bole-*

sa,

ſa, or *Blouſa*, little ſuperiour to the reſt in bigneſs or beauty, but made the ſeat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongſt them. At ſuch time as the Weſtern Chriſtians were poſſeſſed of theſe parts, they ſubmitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulſion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever ſince depended. His reſidence for the moſt part at *Tripolis* a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to viſit his Churches, and take an accompt of his Suffragan Biſhops (who are nine in number) then at *Blouſa*, as is ſaid before. Won to the Papacy again by *John Baptiſt* a Jeſuite, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, who ſent them a Catechiſm from *Rome* printed in the *Arabian* language (which is generally ſpoken by them) for their inſtruction in the Rudiments of that Religion: yet ſo, that their Patriarch ſtill retains his former power, and the Prieſts ſtill officiate by the old liturgies of thoſe Churches in the *Syriack* tongue. So that this reconciliation upon the matter is but a matter of complement on the one ſide, and oſtentation on the other: without any increaſe of power or patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though diſperſed in many places of this Countrey, yet ſince they are more entirely ſettled in *Meſopotamia*, where their Patriarch alſo hath his abode or reſidence, we ſhall there ſpeak of them.

The language vulgarly here ſpoken is the *Arabick* tongue, continued here ever ſince the ſubjugation of theſe Countreys by the *Saracens*. But antiently they ſpake the *Syrian* and *Phœnician* languages. Of which the firſt, (for of the other we ſhall ſpeak when we come to *Phœnicia*) was the very ſame with the *Chaldæan*, (as the learned *Brerewood* hath obſerved) either originally ſo, or elſe received by them when firſt conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which reſpect the *Jews* when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the language which they brought with them the name of *Syriack*; being a compound of the *Hebrew* and *Chaldæan* tongues: *Chaldæan* for a great part of it, as to the ſubſtance of the words; but *Hebrew* as to the notation of points, Conjugations, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original ſpeech. And of this more herafter alſo, when we come to *Paleſtine*. But whatſoever their language was in former times, it is now ſo overtopped by the *Arabick*, that it is ſpoken in ſome Villages of the *Maronites* onely in all theſe Countreys; the *Arabick* being generally uſed in all the reſt, as was ſaid before.

Principall Rivers of theſe parts, are, 1. *Chorſæus*, called *Chiſon* by the *Hebrews*, which hath its fountain in *Paleſtine*, but his fall in *Phœnicia*, not far from Mount *Carmel*. 2. *Orontes*, now called *Saldino*, and by ſome writers *Jordan* the leſs, ariſeth out of the hills called *Pieria*, not far from Mount *Libanus*, and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about *Apamia*, and paſſing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not farre from it. It was firſt called *Typhon*, and took this name from one *Orontes* who built the firſt bridge over it, as we find in *Strabo*. 3. *Eleutherus*, which riſeth out of ſome part of *Libanus*, and glideth with a ſpeedy courſe thorough a ſtrangely-intricate Channel, into the *Mediterranean* Sea: guilty of the death of the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who falling from his horſe as he purſued the *Infidels*, and oppreſſed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lyeth buried at *Tyre*. It is now called *Caſmer*. 4. *Singas*, by ſome ſaid to be called *Marſoas* alſo, which ariſing in the mountainous parts of *Comagena*, and paſſing by the City of *Aleppo*, falleth into *Euphrates*. 5. *Euphrates*, the moſt famoſt River of the Eaſt; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1. *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phœnicia*, we ſhall there ſpeak of it. 2. *Pieria*, out of which the River *Orontes* hath its firſt Originall. 3. *Caſius*, not far from *Antioch*, ſaid to be four miles high perpendicularly. 4. *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of *Cedars* growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solomon* for the holy Temple. Beſides which it afforded ſuch ſtore of *Frankincenſe*, that ſome derived the name from λίβανος, ſignifying Frankincenſe in the *Greek*: and ſo repleniſhed with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen uſed to ſing (as *Gallen* telleth us) that *God rained honey*; and yearly filled their pots and veſſels with the ſweets thereof. This the moſt famous and greateſt Hill of all theſe parts, extending in length 150 miles, that is to ſay, from *Sidon* a City of *Phœnicia*, to *Smyrna*, one of the Cities of *Cœle-Syria*: and taking ſeven hundred miles in compaſs. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* Chriſtians, who to keep that dwelling to themſelves, without the intermixture of *Mahometans*, doe yearly pay to the *Great Turk* ſeventeen *Sultanies* a man, for every one above twelve years of Age, each *Sultanie* being reckoned at ſeven ſhillings and ſix pence of our money. And yet thoſe *Maronites* though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the ſmalleſt *Sect*, for numbers, in all the Eaſt, not eſtimated to exceed twelve thouſand houſholds, by reaſon of the indiſpoſition of this Mountain, in moſt places unfit for habitation. For beſides the craggineſs and ſteepineſs of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inacceſſible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with Snow, not melted in ſo hot a *Climat* at the neereſt approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this name: the word *Leban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phœnician* Language ſignifying *White*, or *whiteneſs*: even as from the like *whiteneſs* of Snow, the higheſt part of the *Pyrenan* hills had the name of *Canus*; and that perpetuall Ridge of Mountains which part *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. 5. *Anti-Libanus*, oppoſite to the former, and from that ſo called, a rich, but litle Vally onely being interpoſed, out of which Vally the *Orontes* hath its ſpring or Fountain; the hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it ſelf. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South being but a branch or excurſion of it, called *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives ſome hint, in which both paſs for one by the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Countrey was antiently divided into theſe ſix parts, *viz.* 1. *Phœnicia*. 2. *Paleſtine*. 3. *Syria* ſpecially ſo called. 4. *Comagena*. 5. *Palmyrene*, and 6. *Cœle-Syria*, or *Syria Cava*. But *Paleſtine*, coming under a more diſtinct conſideration, we ſhall now ſpeak onely of the reſt.

1. PHOENICIA.

PHOENICIA is bounded on the East and South, with *Paleſtine*; on the North, with *Syria* properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called by the *Grecians*, from the abundance of *Palm-trees* therein growing, the word φοινιξ in that language ſignifying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof (for I know there are other *Etymons* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was antiently the ſpeciall *Cognizance* or Enſign of this Countrey, as the *Olive-branch* and *Conie* of *Spain*, the *Elephant* of *Africk*, the *Camel* of *Arabia*, and the *Crocodile* to *Egypt*, being peculiar to thoſe Countries. And in an old Coyn of the Emperour *Veſpaſian's* ſtamped for a memoriall of his conqueſt of *Judæa*, the Impreſs is a woman ſitting in a ſad and melancholick poſture at the back of *Palm-trees*, with theſe two words, *Judæa Capta*, inſcribed thereon: in which no queſtion may be made but that the deſolate woman ſignifieth the Land of *Judæa*, and the Palm *Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being ſeated immediatly on the North at the back of *Jewrie*.

But it was thus firſt called by the *Greciaans* onely, the *Latines* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themſelves, and the People of *Iſrael* their next Neighbours, they are called *Canaanites*, or the poſterity of *Canaan*, five of whoſe ſonnes, *viz. Zidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chamathi*, were planted here: the other ſix inhabiting more towards the South and East, in the Land of *Paleſtine*. For further evidence whereof we may adde theſe reaſons: firſt, that the ſame woman which in Saint *Mathews* Goſpel, *chap.* 15. *v.* 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by Saint *Mark*, *chap.* 7. *v.* 26. called a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, Where mention is made in the Book of *Joſuah* of the Kings of *Canaan*, the *Septagint* (who very well underſtood the Hiſtory and Language of their own Countrey) call them βασιλεῖς τῆς φοινίκης, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, the *Pœni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all diſpute a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Originall*, would anſwer that they were *Chanaai*, meaning (as Saint *Auguſtine* that Countrey-man doth expound their words) that they were Originally *Chanaanites*, of the ſtock of *Canaan*. And laſtly, from the Language of it, which antiently was the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanitiſh*, or the Language of *Canaan*; ſpoken both here and in *Paleſtine* alſo, before that Countrey was poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Jacob*: as appeareth plainly by thoſe names by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were called, when and before the *Iſraelites* came firſt to dwell amongſt them, which are meerly *Hebrew*. And ſo much, as unto the Language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* alſo, who in the entrance of his Book inſcribed *Chanaan*, declares what profit may enſue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew* tongue, *cujus* Phœnicia *lingua dialectus fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* language was a *dialect* onely.

The Countrey of it ſelf not great, extended in a good length, from the further ſide of mount *Carmel* where it joyns with *Paleſtine*, to the River *Volanus* on the North, by which parted from *Syria*: but withall ſo narrow, that it is litle more than a bare Sea-coaſt, and therefore very rightly called *terrarum anguſtiſſima* by a modern Writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increaſe of Trade (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the naturall Commodities which the Land afforded: yet for the quantity there of no place could be more plentifully furniſhed with Oyl, Wheat, and the beſt ſort of *Balm*, and moſt excellent Honey; the lower part hereof being deſigned for the Seat of *Aſher*, of whom *Moſes* propheſied, *Deut.* 33. *v.* 24. *that he ſhould dip his foot in Oyl.* So that the Countrey generally, it was well conditioned, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautifull Cities, than ſuch a ſpan of Earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianus*, *Acclivis monti Libano* Phœnicia *Regio*, *plena gratiarum & venuſtatis*, *urbibus decorata magnis & pulchris*, *&c. i. e.* Falling from Mount *Libanus* lieth the Countrey of *Phœnicia*, full of all graces and elegancies, adorned with great and beautifull Cities, of which the moſt renowned for the fertility of their ſoyl, and the fame of their achievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, *&c.*

The People antiently by reaſon of their *Maritime* ſituation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almoſt all the Ports of the then known World, and ſending more Colonies abroad upon forreign *Plantations* than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenuous People, ſaid to have been the firſt *Navigators*, the firſt builders of Ships, the firſt inventors of Letters, (of which hereafter more on ſome other occaſion) and the firſt authors of *Arithmetick*; the firſt that brought *Aſtronomy* to an Art or Method; and the firſt makers of Glaſs. Defamed in holy Scripture for their groſs *Idolatries*, by which they laid a ſtumbling-block at the feet of the *Iſraelites*: *Aſtoroth* (or *Aſtarte*) the Godeſs of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or ſome other, I diſpute not here) being ſo highly prized amongſt them, that *Solomon* himſelf when he fell from God, made this one of his *Idols*. Once yearly, as *Euſebius* telleth us, they ſacrificed ſome of their ſonnes to *Saturn*, whom in their language they called *Moloch*. And in the inmoſt retreats of *Libanus* had a Temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of moſt filthy luſts, intemperately uſing the naturall Sex, and moſt unnaturally abuſing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Chriſtian* Faith prevail ſo far as to extinguiſh theſe ungodly rites, till *Conſtantine* finally deſtroyed both the Temples and *Idols*, and left not any thing remaining of them but the ſhame and infamy. St. *Auſtin* addeth, that they did proſtitute their Daughters unto *Venus*, before they maried them: and it is moſt likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cypriots* being ſo near neighbours, and ſubject for a time to the ſame Princes alſo, could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in ſo narrow a Region, but what are common unto others, and ſhall there be ſpoken of. Moſt proper unto this is the River of *Adonis* (now called *Canis*,) ſo named moſt probably

bly from *Adonis* the Dearling of *Venus*, whose rites are here performed with as much solemnity as they be in *Cyprus*. His Obsequies celebrated yearly in the moneth of *June* with great howlings and Lamentations, *Lucian* fabling that the River usually streameth blood upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*,) to give the better colour to their Superstitions. But the truth is, that this *redness* of the water ariseth onely from the winds, which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, doe thereby carry down the stream a great quantity of *Minium* or *red Earth* from the sides of those hils, wherewith the waters are discoloured. Such use can *Satan* make of a naturall Accident to blind the eyes and captivate the understandings of besotted people.

Chief Mountains of this Countrey are, 1. *Libanus*, spoken of before, which hath here its first advance or rising. 2. *Carmel*, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Countrey, of which it is the utmost part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Palestine*. Washed on the North-side with the Brook *Chison*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea: steep of ascent, and of indifferent altitude, abounding with severall sorts of fruits, Olives and Vines in good plenty, and stored with herbs both *medicinable* and sweet of smell. The retreat sometimes of *Elias*, when he fled from *Jesabel*, whose habitation here, after his decease, was converted to a *Jewish* Synagogue. To this place (being then in the possession of the Kings of *Israel*) did that Prophet assemble the Priests of *Baal*, and having by a miraculous experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* follies, caused them to be cut in peeces on the banks of the River *Chison* neer adjoyning to it. Upon this visible declaring of the power and presence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew perswaded that *Oracles* were there given by God; by *Suetonius* called the God *Carmelus*. Where speaking of *Vespasian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperiall dignity, he addeth, *Apud Iudæam* Carmeli Dei *oracula consulemem ta confirmavere sortes, &c.* that consulting in *Judea* with the *Oracle* of the God *Carmelus*, he was assured that whatsoever he undertook should succeed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Friers Carmelites*, as successouts unto the *Children of the Prophets* left here by *Eliah*, had their name from hence: the Ruines of whose *Monastery* are still to be seen, with a Temple dedicated to the blessed *Virgin*; and under that a *Cave* or *Chappell*, said to have been the lurking place of that holy Prophet in the time of his troubles.

Places of most importunance in it, 1. *Ptolemais*, now nothing but a ruine of what it hath been, but formerly of great strength and consequence. Named *Ace* at the first, a refuge for the *Persian* Kings in their wars against *Egypt*: enlarged, or rather new built, by *Ptolomy*, the first of that race, by whom called *Ptolemais*, which name still continued, though *Claudius Cæsar* planting there a *Roman* Colony, would fain have had it called *Colonia Claudii*: after the conquest of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omer* the great *Caliph*, it returned towards its first name, and was called *Acon*, or *Acre*, both names still remaining in *vulgar* speech, as that of *Ptolemais* amongst *Latine* writers. Situate in the flourish of it on a flat or levell, in form of a triangular-Shield; on two sides neighboured by the Sea which comes up close to it; on the third looking towards the *Champaign*: environed with a double wall, to each wall a Ditch; fortified on the outside with Towers and Bulwarkes, within the wals so strongly housed as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of fortresses, and not ordained for private dwellings. In the midst of the City was one Tower of great strength and beauty, which had sometimes been the Temple of *Bel-zebub*, and was therefore called the *Castle of Flies*: on the top whereof was maintained a perpetuall light, like the *Pharos* of *Egypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to such Mariners as made towards this Port. Took from the *Christians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them wrested by the *Turks* with the rest of *Syria*, it became *Christian* again *Anno* 1004. in the Reign of *Baldwin* the first, brother of the famous *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and second King of *Hierusalem*, by the help of the *Genoese*, who for their pains had the third part of the City assigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the *Turks*, and from him taken again by the *Western Christian*, under the conduct of *Philip* of *France*, and *Richard* the first of *England*, *Anno* 1191. it continued in the possession of the Kings of *Hierusalem*, notably defended by the *Hospitalers* (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. When besieged by an Army of a hundred and fifty thousand *Turks*, it was forced to yield, though lost by inches: and the *Turks* fearing lest the *Christians* would again attempt it, razed it to the ground; demolishing the large walls and arches of it, which lie like massy Rocks on their old foundations. Memorable in those times, for the brave service here done by the *Christians* of the Western parts; of which none more renowned than those of our *Richard* the first, and *Edward* the first. This later here treacherously wounded by an Infidell, with a poisoned knife, the venome whereof could by no means be asswaged, till his most vertuous wife (herein proposing a most rare example of conjugall affection) sucked it out with her mouth. And for the former, he became so terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their Children began to cry, they would say, *Peace King* Richard *is coming*: and when their horses started, they would spurre them saying, *What you Jades, doe you think that King* Richard *is here*. By the *Mamalucks*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for habitation rather than defence: not Peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have so many but for the Haven adjoyning; which though a small Bay, and of very ill anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Western World, trading here for their Cotton Wools, with which the neighbouring Countrie is abundantly furnished. I have staid the longer in this place by reason of the great fame and importance of it, as being the last hold which the Christians had of all their conquests; with the loss whereof they laid aside all thoughts of those *holy wars*.

2. *Tyre*, seated in a rocky Iland, about seventy paces from the main Land; well built, and circular of form, as well by Art as Nature impregnably fortified. A Colonie of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Esay*, *Chapter* 23. *verse* 12. called the *Daughter of Sidon*: but by them built upon an high hill; the ruines whereof by the name of *Palætyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining still.

Removed unto the Iland by *Agenor* King of the *Phœniclans*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tzor*, from the rockie ſituation of it, (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the *Greeks* to *Tyrus*, and from them taken by the *Latines*, though known to them alſo by the name of *Sarra*, (the *Tyrian purple* being by *Virgil*, and ſome other of the antient Poets, called *Sarrarum Oſtrum*,) and now at laſt returned to its firſt and originall name, vulgarly at this day called *Sur*. A City in the elder times of great trade and wealth: the Prophet *Eſay chap.* 27. *v.* 8. calling the Merchants hereof *Princes*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of thoſe times both for Learning and Manufactures, eſpecially for the dying of *Purple*, firſt here invented, and that as *Julius Pollux* ſaith, by a very Accident: the Dog of *Hercules* (or if not his, ſome Dog or other) whoſe lips by eating of the fiſh called *Conchilis* or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reaſon of the wealth and pleaſures, her deſtruction was fore-ſignified by the holy Prophets: accompliſhed in Gods own time by *Nebucadnezzar*; who with great induſtrie and toil joyned it to the Continent. But his works being demoliſhed by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrians*, it was after ſeventy years again reedified; and having flouriſhed after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the Great was again demoliſhed; to whoſe indefatigable perſeverance nothing was impoſſible. For having filled the Channell with the ſtones and rubbiſh of old *Tyre*, and rammed them in with huge beams brought from *Libanus*, he made a paſſage for his Army: and having once approached the walls, ſo over-topped them with Towers, and frames of Timber, that at laſt he made himſelf Maſter of it, putting to the ſword all ſuch as reſiſted, and cauſing two thouſand of them to be hanged in cold blood, all along the Shore, for a terrour to others. This rendition of the Town was divined by the *Southſayers* which followed the Camp of *Alexander*, upon a dream which he had not long before. For dreaming that he had diſported himſelf with *Satyres*; the Diviners onely making of one word two, found that Σατυρὸς was no more than Σὰ Τύρος, that is, *Tua Tyrus*; and it hapned accordingly. Recovering once again both her riches and beauties, ſhe became a confederate of the *Romans* in the growth of their fortunes, endued by them with the privileges of their City, for her great fidelity. Made in the beſt times of *Chriſtianity*, the *Metropolitan* See for the Province of *Phœnicia*, the Biſhop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Biſhops. Subjected to the *Saracens* in the year ſix hundred thirty and ſix, and having groaned under that yoke for the ſpace of fourhundred eighty and eight years, was at the laſt regained by *Guarimund* Patriarck of *Hieruſalem*, in the Reign of the ſecond *Baldwin*, the *Venetians* contributing their aſſiſtance in it, *Anno* 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladine*; but finally brought under the *Turkiſh* thraldome, *Anno* 1289. as it ſtill continueth. Now nothing but an heap of ruines, but the very ruines of it of ſo fair a proſpect, as ſtriketh both pity and amazement into the beholders; ſhewing them an exemplary pattern of our humane frailty. Subject at the preſent to the *Emir*, or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the beſt of the *Levant*; but of no great trading.

3. *Sarepta*, by the *Hebrews* called *Sarphath*, ſituate on the Sea-Coaſt betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*. Memorable in holy writ for the miracle here performed by the Prophet *Eliiah*, in raiſing the poor Widows Sonne: in Heathen writers, for the pureſt *Wines*, little inferiour unto thoſe of *Falernum* in *Italy*, or *Chios* in *Greece*. Of which thus the Poet.

Vina mihi non ſunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,
Quæque Sareptano *palmite miſſa bibas.*

In *Engliſh* thus,

I have no *Chian*, or *Falernian* wines,
Nor thoſe of *Gazas* or *Sarepta's* vines.

4. *Sidon*, the antienteſt City of all *Phœnicia*, and the moſt Nothern of all thoſe which were aſſigned for the portion of the ſonnes of *Aſer*: beyond which the Countrey of *Phœnicia*, having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-coaſt, beginneth to open towards the Eaſt in a fine rich vally, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South: once cloſed up from the reſt of *Syria* with a very ſtrong wall, long ſince demoliſhed. It was ſo called from *Zidon*, one of the ſonnes of *Canaan*, who firſt planted here; not (as ſome ſay) from *Sida* the daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof: this City being mentioned in the Book of *Joſuah*, when no ſuch *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightful ſoyl, defended with the Sea on one ſide, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it & *Libanus*; from whence deſcended thoſe many Springs, with which they watered and enriched their moſt pleaſant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are ſaid to be the firſt makers of *Chriſtall Glaſs*; the materials of the work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolomais*, and onely made fuſible in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principall workmen both for Stone and Timber, in their ſeverall buildings of the Temple. The People hereof ſo flouriſhing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zechariah chap.* 9. *v.* 2. calleth them the *wiſe Sidonians*. A City which at ſeverall times was both the Mother and Daughter of *Tyre*: the Mother of it in the times of *Heatheniſm*, *Tyre* being a *Colony* of this People; and the Daughter of it when inſtructed in the *Chriſtian* faith, acknowledging the Church of *Tyre* for its Mother-Church. The City in thoſe times very ſtrong both by *Art* and *Nature*, having on the North-ſide a Fort or *Citadell*, mounted on an inacceſſible Rock, and invironed on all ſides by the Sea: which when it was brought under the command of the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, was held by the Order of the *Duch Knights*; and another on the South-ſide of the Port, which the *Templars* guarded. Won by the *Turks* with the reſt of this Countrey from the *Chriſtians*, and ruined by thoſe often interchanges of fortune: it onely ſheweth now ſome markes of the antient greatneſs; the preſent *Sidon* ſtanding ſomewhat Weſt of the old, and having little worth a particular deſcription.

The Haven decayed, or ſerving at the beſt for Gallies; with a poor *Block-houſe* rather for ſhew than ſervice: the walls of no greater ſtrength, and as little beauty; and the buildings ordinary, but that the

Moſque,

Moſque, the *Bannia* of Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are ſomewhat fairer than the reſt: yet gives a title at this time to the *Emir* of *Sidon*, one of the greateſt Princes of all this Countrey, of whom more hereafter. 5. *Berytus*, originally called *Geris*, from *Gergethi* the fift Sonne of *Canaan*, took this new name from *Berith* a *Phœnician* Idol herein worſhipped; and now called *Barutti*. Deſtroyed by *Tryphon* in the warres of the *Syrians* againſt the *Jews*, it was re-edified by the *Romans*, by whom made a Colonie, and honoured with the name of *Julia Felix*, *Auguſtus* giving it the Privileges of the City of *Rome*. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the *Jews*, much adorned and beautified; and of no mean eſteem in the time of the Chriſtians: when made an Epiſcopall See under the *Metropolitan* of *Tyre*. Being a place of no great ſtrength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath ſped better than the reſt of theſe Cities (though ſtronger than this) retaining ſtill her being, though not all her beauties; well ſtored with merchandize, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call Saint *Georges*; in which there is a Caſtle, and in that an Oratory of the ſame name alſo. All ſacred to Saint *George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the *Dragon*, and thereby delivered a Kings daughter, but what Kings I know not, nor they neither. 6. *Biblis*, ſometimes the habitation of *Hevi* the fourth Sonne of *Canaan*, and then called *Hevaa*: afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, Father and Grand father of *Adonis*, by his Daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already ſpoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of ſuch eſteem in the Primitive times of Chriſtianity, that it was made a Biſhops See; deſolate and of no repute ſince it loſt that honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7. *Orthoſia*, called alſo *Antaradus*, becauſe oppoſite to *Aradus*, another old City of this tract, but in after ages called *Tortoſa*, and by that name well known in the Hiſtories of the Holy Warre, undertaken by the Weſtern Chriſtians. To whom it made ſuch ſtout and notable reſiſtance, that though beſieged on all ſides with united forces (the whole Army formerly divided, ſitting down before it); yet after three moneths hard ſiege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themſelves with ſpoiling the adjoining Country 8. *Tripolis*, ſeated in a rich and delightful plain, more fruitful than can be imagined: one of which fruits they called by the name of *Amazza Franchi*, i. e. *Kill-Frank*, becauſe the Weſtern Chriſtians, whom they call by the name of *French*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is ſaid to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis*, no leſſe than 100000 Crowns. As for the Town, it ſtandeth about two miles from the Sea, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*; ſo called becauſe built by the joint purſes of three Cities, that is to ſay, *Tyrus*, *Sidon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, till made one of the Epiſcopal Sees, belonging to the Arch-Biſhop of *Tyre*, in the Primitive times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal Accompt by the time that the Weſtern Chriſtians warred in the Holy Land: when conquered by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the four Quarters of their Empire; which were, *Hieruſalem* for *Paleſtine*, *Edeſſa* for *Comagena*, or *Meſopotamia*; *Antioch* for *Syria*, and this for *Phœnicia*. Committed at the firſt taking of it, to the cuſtody of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe* in *France*: whoſe poſterity, whileſt it laſted, had from hence the title of Earles of *Tripoli*. A City, which I know not by what good hap, hath ſped better than any of thoſe parts, retaining ſtill as much in ſtrength and beauty as ever it had; if not grown greater by the ruine of all the reſt. Situate two miles from the Sea, as before is ſaid, but not above half a mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the Weſt ſide of it, compaſſed with a wall, and fortified with ſeven Towers, of which the fourth is commonly called the Tower of *Love*, becauſe built by an *Italian* Merchant, who was found in bed with a *Turkiſh* Woman, for which he had forfeited his life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring bank of ſand, which every day groweth greater and neerer to it; by which in time there is a Prophecy which ſaith it ſhall quite be choaked: On both ſides of it many ſtore-houſes for the Merchant, to ſtow his goods in, and ſhops to ſell them; the way from thence unto the City having on both ſides very pleaſant Gardens.

The Town it ſelf ſtretched out in length from South to North, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleaſant ſprings into the chief of their gardens: in which, and in thoſe towards the Haven, and on other ſides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great ſtore of Silk-Worms; ſelling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. The buildings generally low, and the Streets but narrow, except that leading towards *Aleppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook, at the Eaſt-ſide of the City are built two Bridges; and on the South-ſide a ſtrong Caſtle mounted on an hill, built by the *French* when they had the cuſtody hereof; now garriſoned for the *Grand Signeur* with 200 *Janizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Phœnicia*; honoured with the reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the moſt part dwelling in this Town; and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandretta*, removed hither ſome fourty years ago by the *Turks* appointment; that Haven lying unfenced and more open to Pirates.

That the *Phœnicians* were deſcended of the Sonnes of *Canaan* hath been proved already. And being deſcendants of that ſtock, they were at the firſt governed like them, by the *Chiefs* of their families, whom they honoured (as moſt Nations did) with the title of Kings: But moſt of the *Canaanitiſh* Kings being overcome and ſlain by *Joſuah*, *Agenor*, a ſtout and prudent man, one of thoſe many Kings which commanded in thoſe parts of the Countrey, ſeeing how impoſſible it was to reſiſt that enemy; borrowed ſome aid from *Ægypt*, where he had his breeding, to make good the Sea-coaſts of his Countrey, in which the *Philiſtims* who interpoſed upon thoſe coaſts betwixt him and *Ægypt* concurred alſo with him. By which aſſiſtance, and by the fortifying of *Zidon*, *Tyre*, and *Ace* (or *Ptolomais*) which were all the Cities of this Countrey that were then in being: he did not only preſerve his own eſtate from the preſent danger, but left it ſo aſſured to the Kings ſucceeding, that neither *Solomon* nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Iſrael* durſt

durſt attempt upon them. To *Agenor* ſucceeded his Sonne *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus* his elder brother going into *Greece* in ſearch of his Siſter *Europa*, raviſhed by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his death) from whom, as ſome conceive, this Countrey had the name of *Phœnicia*. And though I have declared my ſelf for another reaſon of this name, which I like much better; yet I ſhall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bochartus*: who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the Sonnes of *Anak*, (as if the old *Phœnicians* were ſuch Giantly men) which muſt firſt be contracted in *Beanack*, then by the *Grecians* turned into *Pheanac*, and at laſt into *Phœnix*. Such farre-fetched and extorted Originations never pleaſe my fancy, who had much rather hearken to the old received opinions touching the firſt Originals of names and nations, where there is not very pregnant reaſon to perſwade me otherwiſe; than ſtrain my ſelf ſo farre for a new invention; or hearken unto thoſe that do. But for what cauſe ſoever they were named *Phœnicians*, certain it is they were a very active and induſtrious people, trading in the moſt parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Bœotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain*; *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Carthage*, in *Africk*, were of their foundation. Nay if we may beleeve *Bochartus*, there was no Iland, or Sea-coaſt in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *Britiſh* Ocean, wherein they did not keep ſome factory, or erect ſome Colony. What Kings ſucceeded *Phœnix* in a conſtant and continued courſe, I can no where find. Moſt like it is they were not under the command of any one Prince: and that beſides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were ſome others who called themſelves Kings of *Phœnicia* alſo, as well as they. Of which ſort were *Cyniras*, *Paphus*, and *Pygmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblis*, and lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*; as did alſo *Belus* who gave ſome part of that Iſle to *Teucer*, as is ſaid before. There is alſo found mention of one *Phaſis*, a *Phœnician* King, at ſuch time as the *Grecians* conquered *Troy*. After him none till the ſubjugation of this Countrey by the *Babylonians*: *Tetramneſtus*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in ſucceeding times, being Tributaries to the *Perſian*, and no abſolute Princes. Whether it were that the *Phœnicians* were made ſubject to the Kings of *Tyre*, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preſerve their memory; I am not able to determine. Certain it is that the Kings of *Tyre* came in ſhort time to be of very great repute, and to poſſeſſe themſelves of the coaſts of *Syria*, and *Phœnicia*, and a great part of *Cyprus*: whereby, and by the benefit of their trade and ſhipping, they grew rich, and powerfull, and of great conſideration in affairs of the World. The names and hiſtory of whom I ſhall here ſubjoin, in this enſuing Catalogue of

The Kings of *Tyre*.

A. M.

1. *Abibalus*, as *Joſephus*, *Abemalus* as *Theophilus Antiochenus* calleth him, Co-temporary with *Samuel*: ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the Sonne of *Syrach* mentioneth, *Eccleſ.* 46. verſe 18.
2. *Saron*, the Sonne of *Abibalus*, whom *David*, as *Euſebius* ſaith, compelled to pay tribute; complained of by that Prophet, *Pſal.* 83. v. 7.

2931. 3. *Hiram*, the Sonne of *Saron*, confederate with *David*, to whom he ſent Cedars, with Carpenters and Maſons, towards his buildings in *Hieruſalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebuſites*; as he did afterwards to *Solomon* when he built the *Temple*. Much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*. 53.

2955. 4. *Baleaſtartus*, or *Bazorus*, ſucceeded *Hiram*. 7.

2962. 5. *Abdaſtartus*, Sonne of *Baleaſtartus*, ſlain by the four Sonnes of his own nurſe, having reigned 9 years; the eldeſt of which four, did for the ſpace of 12 years uſurp the Kingdome.

2983. 6. *Aſtartus*, brother of *Abdaſtartus*, recovered the Kingdome to his houſe, out of the hands of the *Uſurpers*. 12.

2995. 7. *Aſtorinus*, or *Athorinus* as *Theophilus* calleth him, the younger Brother of *Aſtartus*. 9.

3004. 8. *Phelles*, the Brother of theſe three Kings, and youngeſt Sonne of *Baleaſtartus*, reigned eight moneths only.

9. *Ithobalus*, called *Ethbaal*, 1 *Kings* 16. 31. Sonne of *Aſtorinus*, ſlew his Uncle *Phelles*, and ſo regained his Fathers Throne; before which he was the *High-Prieſt* of the Godeſs *Aſtaroth* or *Aſtarta*, (a dignity next to that of the King). He was the Father of *Jezabel*, the wife of *Ahab*, ſo often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.

3037. 10. *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, Sonne of *Ethbaal*. 6.

3043. 11. *Mettimus*, by ſome called *Matginus*, Sonne of *Badezar*, and Father of *Eliſa*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.

3052. 12. *Pygmalion*, the Sonne of *Mettimus*, who ſlew *Sicheus* the husband of his Siſter *Eliſa*, to get his riches; but yet was coſened of his prey: his Siſter *Eliſa*, accompanied with her Brother *Barca* (the founder of the Noble *Barcine* Family, of which *Annibal* was) and her Siſter *Anna*, flying into *Africk*; where ſhe built the renowned City of *Carthage*. 47. The names of his Succeſſors we find not till we come to

13. *Elulæus*, deſcended from a Sonne of *Pygmalion*, who overthrew the Fleet of *Salmannaſſar* the *Aſſyrian*, in the port of *Tyre*.

14. *Ethobales*, or *Ethbaal* II. who vaunted himſelf to be as wiſe as *Daniel*, and to know all ſecrets, as ſaith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *chap.* 28. *v.* 1, 2. And yet not wiſe enough to preſerve his

his Kingdome from *Nabuchadonosor*; who after a 13 years took the City of *Tyre*, and subjected it unto his Empire.

15. *Baal*, the Sonne and Successor of *Ethbaal* the second, but a *Tributary* to the *Babylonians*.

After whose death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by such titular Kings onely as were sent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sidon* did recover breath in the fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the unsettlednes of the *Persian*: yet being of the *Persian* faction, and having dependance on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therefore depoted *Strato* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrew the City of *Tyre*, in the taking whereof he had spent more time than in forcing all the Cities of *Asia*.

After this time *Phœnicia*, being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the fortune of the whole, subject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the house of *Seleucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans*; subject to the *Constantinopolitans*, till the fatall year 636. when subdued by the *Saracens*. Successively conquered by the *Turks*, Christians, and after their expulsion by the *Turks* again: then by the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the rest of *Syria*, by *Selimus* the first united to the *Turkish* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late to the *Emir* of the *Drusians*, (commonly called the *Emir* of *Sidon*) of which people we have spoken before. A people who in the time of *Amurath* the third, were governed by 5 *Emirs* or Princes; one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who so resolutely resisted *Ibrahim Bassa*, *Anno* 1585. This *Man-Ogli* then kept his Court or residence at *Andirene*, a strong place situate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he sent to make his peace unto the above-named *Ibrahim*, 320 Arcubuses, 20 packs of *Andirene* Silks, and 50000 Ducats. At a second time he presented him with 50000 Ducats more, 480 Arcubuses, 1000 Goats, 150 Camels, 150 Buffes, 1000 Oxen, and 200 Weathers. By these rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the present *Emir* of *Sidon*; who since the year 1600. hath reduced almost all the Countreys belonging once to five Princes, under his own Empire; containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barut*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Acre*, *Saffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his seat of residence, *Nazareth*, *Cana*, Mount *Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This present *Emir*, by name *Faccardine*, was not long since driven out of his Countrey by the *Turk*, and forced to fly to *Florence*: but he again recovered his own, laid siege to *Damascus*, and caused a notable rebellion in *Asia*; not quenched in a long time after. And finally having possessed himself of the City and Castle of *Damascus*, prepared for the taking of *Hierusalem* also; threatning to make the Christians once more Masters of it. This was in the year 1623. How he sped afterward, and whether his Sonne, as stout and valiant as himself, hath since his death succeeded him in his Estates, I am not able to say: having of late heard nothing of them.

2. *SYRIA PROPRIA.*

SYRIA PROPRIA, or *Syria* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Palmyrene*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Cilicia*; on the South, with *Phœnicia* and some part of *Cœle*, *Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the Land of *Hamath*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures; the Kingdome of *Toi* or *Tou*, next neighbour, and sworn Enemy to *Adadezer* King of *Aram-Sobah*: who hearing of the great discomfiture which *David* had given unto that King, sent his Sonne *Joram* or *Adoram*, (for the Scripture calls him by both names) with Presents unto him, as well to congratulate his success, as to be assured for times to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the Sonnes of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in these parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Palestina* (which we shall meet withall in the course of this work) either built by him or his posterity. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am perswaded to believe by these following reasons. *viz.* 1. From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, conjoined together, as in *Esay* 10. 9. and *Jer.* 49. 23. So in other places, *viz. Where are the Gods of* Hamath *and* Arpad, 2 *Kings* 18. 34. *The King of* Hamath, *and the King of* Arphad, *Esay* 37. 13. And we know well that *Arvad* was the name of an Iland over against the mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, one of the Rivers of this Countrey: so called from *Arvad*, one of the Sonnes of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus*, by which this Isle was known unto them. 2. By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobah* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the East, with the King whereof (as bordering Princes use to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the most part were in open warre. Of which see 2 *Sam.* 8. 9, 10. & 1 *Chr.* 8. 9, 10. 3. From the authority of Saint *Hierome*, who finding mention in the Prophet *Amos*, cha. 6. v. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the *Great*, determineth it to be that City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principall City of this part, and indeed of *Syria*): the title of *Great* being added to it, to difference it from some other Cities of this name of inferiour note. And 4. from comparing the places in Scripture, with the like passage in *Josephus* the Historiographer. The Scripture telleth us; that *Hierusalem* being forced by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekias* the King was brought Prisoner to *Nabuchadnezzer*, being then at *Riblath*, 2 *Kings* c. 2. v. 6. to *Riblath in the Land of Hamath*, *v.* 21. where the poor Prince first saw his Children slain before his face; and then miserably deprived of sight, that he might not see his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Josephus*, where this sad tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiqu. l.* 10. *c.* 10. and if we ask Saint *Hierome* what he thinks of *Reblatha*, he will tell us that it was *Urbs ex quam nunc* Antiochiam *vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On these grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of scripture above-cited, though there were other Towns and Territories of the same name also.

The

The Countrey is naturally fertile; the hedges on the high-way sides affording very good fruits, and the adjoining fields affording to the Passenger the shade of Fig-trees. Were it not naturally so, it would not be much helped by Art or Industry, as being very meanly peopled, and those few people without any incouragement either to plant fruits or manure the Land. Their Sheep are commonly fair and fat, but so overladed in the tail, both with flesh and fleece, that they hang in long wreathes unto the ground, dragged after them with no small difficulty. *Pliny* observes it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* Sheep were a Cubit long, and had good store of wooll upon them. *Natur. Hist.* l. 8. c. 48. And modern Travellers report, that the tails of these sheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and sometimes 30 pounds and upwards. The like hath also been affirmed of the sheep of *Palestine*, comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the reason why the rumpes or tails of sheep (and of no beast else) were ordained to be offered up in sacrifice, of which *Levit.* 3. v. 9. But besides the store of Wooll which they have from the sheep, they have also great plenty of Cotton Wooll, which groweth there abundantly; with the seeds whereof they sow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The stalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as tough as a Beans; the head round and bearded, in the size and shape of a *Medlar*, and as hard as a stone: which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white soft *Bombast* intermixed with seeds, which parted with an instrument, they keep the Seeds for another sowing, and sell the Wooll unto the Merchant: a greater quantity thereof issuing from that litle shell than can be imagined by those who have not seen it.

The people heretofore were very industrious, especially about their gardens; the fruitful effects whereof they found in the increase of their herbs, and plants. Whence the Proverb, *Multa Syrorum Olera*. But withall they were observed to be very gluttonous, spending whole daies and nights in feasting, great scoffers, and much given to laughter. Crafty and subtile in their dealings, not easily to be trusted but on good security: and so were the *Phoenicians*, their next neighbours also. Hence came the *Greek* Adage which *Suidas* speaketh of, Σύρος πρὸς Φοίνικας, *Syri contra Phoenices*, used by them when two crafty knaves endeavoured to deceive each other. They were noted also to be superstitious, great worshippers of the Godess *Fortune*, but greater of their *Syrian* Godess, whatsoever she was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a womanish and effeminat nation; prone unto tears, and such as on the death of their friends would hide themselves in caves from the sight of the Sun. *Herodian* addeth, that they were wavering and unconstant, lovers of plaies and publick pastimes, and easily stirred up unto Innovations. But at this time, they are almost beaten out of all these humours, having been so often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown servilely officious to them that govern them: not without cause, defective in that part of industry which before enriched them.

Where by the way we must observe, that this Character of the people, and that of the Countrey belong not to this part alone, exclusively of those which follow, but to all *Syria*, and every part and Province of it, except *Phoenicia*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its Character by it self. The whole by *Ptolamy* divided, besides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Coele-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and subdivisions, as 1. *Pieria*. 2. *Casiotis*, from the hills adjoining. 3. *Seleucis*. 4. *Apamene*. 5. *Laodicene*. 6. *Cyrrestica*. 7. *Chalcidice*, and 8. *Chalybanotis* from their principall Cities. Of which in all he musters up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of some note, most of them now grown out of knowledge, and many of them of no mark or observation in the course of business. So that omitting his method we will follow our own, and take notice only of such places as antiently were, or at this present are, of most observation and importance in the course of Story: with reference notwithstanding to the subdivisions made by *Ptolomy*, as they come in my way, reckoning *Cyrrestica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Casiotis*, and the territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamea*, into *Syria Propria*; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*.

First then to begin with those Cities which ly most towards the East, we have in *Cyrrestica*, 1. *Zeugma*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, memorable for the passage of *Alexander* the *Great*, who there passed over his Army on a Bridge of Boats. 2. *Berræa*, supposed by some both antient and modern writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo*; but the position of the place agreeth not with that supposition, *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Cosmographers* in the 72. degree of *Longitude*, and the 38. of *Latitude*; whereas *Berræa* is assigned by *Ptolomy*, to the 36. degree of *Latitude*, and the 71. of *Longitude*. Besides that the River *Singas* on which *Aleppo* is situate, keepeth it self almost on an even course in the *Latitude* of 37. between 20 and 30. minutes over; which is more by a degree and a half than the site assigned unto *Berræa*. 3. *Cybros*, as in the *Latine* Copies of *Ptolomy*, mistook for *Cyrrhus*, once the chief City of this part, from hence called *Cyrrestica*. 4. *Heraclea*, neer which *Minerva* had a Temple: in which, as in that sacred to her in *Laodicea*, they used once yearly to offer a *Virgin* for a sacrifice: but afterwards on the sight of that gross impiety changed it to an *Hart*. 5. *Regia*, now *Rugia*, two dayes journey from *Antioch*, took by the *Christians* in the beginning of the warres for the *Holy Land*. 6. *Hierapolis*, of great renown in those dark times of ignorance and idolatry for the *Syrian Godess* therein worshipped; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the *Holy City*, being formerly by the *Grecians* called *Callinice*, by the *Syrians*, *Magog*, one of the first seats of *Magog* the Sonne of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The *Godess* so esteemed of in those wretched times, that from all parts, *Assyria*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and costly offerings: *Nero* himself who scoffed at all Religions else, being for a while a great Votary of this *Syrian* Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice* the wife of *Seleucus* in the midst of the City, compassed with a double wall about the height of 300 Fathome: the roof thereof inlaid with gold, and made of such a fragant and sweet-smelling wood, that

that the clothes of them which came thither retained the ſent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places inclosed for Oxen, and beaſts of Sacrifice; and not farre off a lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their ſacred fiſhes: the Prieſts attending here for their ſeverall Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, beſides many more ſubſervient Miniſters. The tricks and jugglings of theſe Prieſts to deceive the people, he that liſt to ſee, may find them copiouſly deſcribed in the *Metamorphoſis* of *Apuleius*: which changing but the names and times, may ſerve for a Relation of thoſe gulleries and Arts of *Leger-de-main*, which the *Friers* and *Pardoners* have practiſed in the Church of *Rome*. 7. *Chalybon*, whence the parts adjoining were called *Chalybonitis*; conceived by *Poſtellus* and ſome others to be *Chalepium* or *Aleppo*, but on no good ground: this City having one degree leſs of Northern Latitude, than *Berroea* had. 8. *Barbariſſus* in the ſame ſubdiviſion neer the banks of *Euphrates*. 9. *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria* which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwiſe memorable. 10. *Telmediſſa*, another Town of the ſame diviſion, and as little famous. 11. *Seleucus*, ſo named from the founder of it, the firſt Eaſtern Monarch of that race, and the greateſt Builder of the World: founding nine Cities of this name, ſixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochus*, ſix by the name of *Laodice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Apamia* his firſt Wife, beſides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Aſia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this, the Countrey hereabouts had the name of *Seleucis*. 12. *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his Mother; from which the Region adjoining is called *Laodicene*. Built by him in the place where formerly had ſtood the City *Rhamantus*, ſo called from a certain Sheepherd, who being ſtrook with a flaſh of lightning cryed out amazedly *Rhamantus*, that is to ſay, *Deus ab excelſo*, before which time it had been named *Leuca Acte*, from the whiteneſſe of the Sea-cliffs neer to which it is ſituate: the Countrey roundabout commended antiently for the beſt wines, and choiſe of very excellent fruits. 13. *Apamia*, ſo named in honour of *Apamia*, the wife of *Seleucus*, which together with *Laodicea* and *Seleucus* before mentioned, having the ſame founder, and maintaining a ſtrict league of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Siſters. From this the Countrey neer is called *Apamene*. 14. *Emeſa*, (now *Hamſe*) the Epiſcopall See of *Euſebius*, hence called *Emeſenus*, who flouriſhed in the time of *Conſtantius* the Sonne of *Conſtantine*: in whoſe name are extant certain Homilies, juſtly conceived to be of a later date. The City ſeated in a ſpacious and fruitful plain of *Apamene*, watered with many pleaſant and cheerfull Riverers; once of great note, as may be eaſily conjectured from the walls hereof, which are ſtill perfect and entire, built of poliſhed ſtone, and of very large circuit: but the dwelling-houſes ſo decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy obſervation. 15. *Epiphania*, in the cantred or ſubdiviſion of *Caſiotis*; called at firſt *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Sonne of *Canaan*, the founder of it; and upon that account miſtaken by Saint *Hierome* for another Town of the ſame name in the Tribe of *Naphthali*: ſo different from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we ſhall ſhew hereafter when we come to *Paleſtine*) that they can by no means be the ſame. But that old Town being gone to ruin, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*, obeyed therein as *Joſephus* telleth us by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* ſtill called it *Amatha* as in former times, *Antiqu.* l. 1. ca. 7. 16. *Latriſſa*, which ſtill preſerveth its old name, being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the warres of the *Holy Land*, eſpecially for the death of *Baldwin* the firſt Brother of *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, *Anno* 1118. 17. *Gebal*, the *Gabala* of *Ptolomy* and others of the antient Writers, ſituate on the South of *Laodicea*, from which twelve miles diſtant; mentioned *Pſal.* 83. as a confederate with *Tyre* and other uncircumciſed Nations, in their hatred and deſignes againſt the *Iſraelites*: at this day called *Gabella* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembred in the Stories of the *Holy Warres*. 18. *Aradus*, one of the Co-founders of *Tripolis*, ſituate in a rocky Iland of a mile in compaſs, directly oppoſite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and diſtant from the Continent about twenty furlongs. So called from *Arvad* one of the Sonnes of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that name in the Prophet *Ezek.* chap. 27. v. 8. 11. This once a Kingdome of it ſelf, containing not this Iland only but ſome part of the Continent; eſpecially about *Amaradus* (ſo called becauſe built over againſt it) ſituate on the Northern banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Phoenicia*. 19. *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*, but afterwards by the continuall enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; ſo named of *Daphne* one of the Miſtreſſes of *Apollo*, who was here worſhipped by the name of *Apollo Daphnæus*, and had here his *Oracle* and his *Groves*, with other the Additaments appertaining unto thoſe Idolatries; as much eſteemed of but more ſumptuous than thoſe of *Delphos*. The Grove about ten miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypreſſes* and other trees, ſo tall and cloſe to one another, that they ſuffered not the Sunne to enter in his greateſt heats: the ground perpetually covered with the choiſeſt Tapeſtry of nature, watered with many a pleaſant ſtream, derived from the *Caſtalian* founteins as it was given out; and yielding the moſt excellent fruits both for taſte and tincture, to which the wind and air participating the ſweetneſs of the place, did adde a moſt delightfull influence.

A place deviſed for pleaſure, but abuſed to luſt: he being held unworthy of the name of a man, who transformed not himſelf unto a Beaſt, or trod on this unholy ground without his *Curtezan*: inſomuch as they which had a care of their good names, did forbear to haunt it. A fuller deſcription of it he that liſts to ſee, may find in the firſt Book and 18. chapter of *Sozomens Eccleſiaſticall* Hiſtory, who is copious in it. The Temple ſaid to have been built by *Seleucus* alſo, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperour; and therefore much reſorted to by *Julian* the *Apoſtata* for that purpoſe alſo. But the body of *Babylas* the *Martyr* and Biſhop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the command

command of his Brother *Gallus* then created *Cæsar* by *Constantius*; the Devil and his *Oracles* were both frighted away; as the devill did himself confess to *Julian*. Who being desirous to learn here the success of his intended expedition into *Persia*, received this Answer, that no *Oracle* could be given as long as those divine bones were so neer the Shrine. Nor was it long after, before the *Idol* and the *Temple* were consumed by a fire from Heaven; as was avowed by those who observed the fall of it: though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Christians*, and in revenge caused many of their Churches to be burned to ashes. 20. *Antioch*, situate in that part hereof, which is called *Casiotis*, first built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Asia*, by whom named *Antigonia*; but finished and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and slain him at the battell of *Issus*: by the *Jewes* or *Hebrews* once called *Reblatha*. Built neer the place, and partly out of the ruines of an antient City, in the second Book of *Kings* called *Riblah in the Land of Hamath*; *Hamath the Great* in the sixt of *Amos*; by *Josephus* and the *Syrians*, *Reblata*. Memorable in those daies, for the Tragedies of *Jehoahaz* and *Sedechias*, Kings of *Judah*: the first of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty by *Pharaoh Neco* King of *Egypt*, 2 *Kings* 23. 33. the other of his eyes and Children by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was said before. In following times it was by some *Greek* writers called *Epidaphne*, from the neerness of it to that *Grove*: as afterwards in the times of *Christianity*, by the name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God, either from the many miracles there done in the Primitive times; or from the great improvement which the *Christian* faith did here receive, where the *Disciples* first obtained the name of *Christians*. The Royall seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*, and in the flourish and best fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary residence of the *Præfect* or Governour of the Eastern Provinces; next of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, who had not only the superintendency over the *Diocese* of the *Orient*, though that large enough, but also of the Dioceses of *Egypt*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*; extending so his Jurisdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured also with the residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, especially of *Verus* and *Valens*, who spent here the greatest part of their times; and from the first dawning of the Gospel, with the Seat of the *Patriarck*. A title of such eminency in all times of the Church, the second in Accompt to the See of *Rome* (till *Constantinople* being made the *Imperiall* City, got precedence of it) that there are at this time no less than four great Prelates which pretend unto it: that is to say, the *true Patriarck*, governing the Christians of those parts, whom they call *Syrians* or *Melchites*; the *Pseudo-Patriarcks* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the greater credit to their *Schism* doe assume this title: and finally, a *titular Patriarck* nominated by the Pope, who since the time that the *Western Christians* were possessed of these *Eastern* Countries, hath assumed a power unto himself of nominating *Patriarks* for *Alexandria*, *Hierusalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City seated on both sides of the River *Orontis*, about twelve miles distant from the shores of the *Mediterranean*; the River *Parfar* passing on the South-side of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration, compassed with a double wall, the outwardmost of which was stone, the other of brick, with four hundred and sixty Towers in the walls, and an impregnable Castle at the East-end thereof, and on the other side defended with high broken Mountains, whereunto was adjoyning a deep Lake, comming out of the River *Parfar*, before mentioned. Adorned in former times with many sumptuous Palaces, and magnificent Temples, answerable to the reputation of so great a City: till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamalucks*, men careless of all State and beauty in their fairest Cities, it began to grow into decay. Recovered by the *Western Christians* from the power of the *Turks*; after a siege of seven moneths, *June* 3. *Anno* 1098. confirmed in their possession by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very sight hereof within few daies after, (*June* 28.) obtained against *Corbanas*, Lieutenant to the *Persian* Sultan; in which with the loss of four thousand and two hundred of their own, they slew a hundred thousand of the Enemy. The Town and territory given by the Conquerours to *Bohemund* a noble *Norman* and Prince of *Tarentum*: who by practising with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the chief Towers thereof, afterwards called Saint *Georges* Tower, was secretly let into the City, and so made way for all the rest. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as some say, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his sonne about ten years after; succeeded in this principate by *Tancred* and *Roger*, Princes of great renown in those *holy wars*: which last unfortunately slain by the *Turks*, not far from *Aleppo*, in the year 1120. *Baldwin* the second having revenged his death by a signall victory, joyned this estate to the Kingdome of *Hierusalem*. Betrayed about sixty years after this, that is to say, in the year 1188. it came into the power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Egypt* and *Damascus*; and therewithall no fewer than five and twenty Cities which depended on the fortunes of it: the glories of this famous City so declining after this last *Tragedy* (but whether laid desolate of set purpose, or destroyed by the injury of time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the sepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own sad ruines; hardly preserving the repute of a sorry village. Such is the instability of all worldly glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembred the same day with *Antioch*. Of which the most observable is 21. *Albaria*, distant two daies march from *Antioch*, remembred in the Warres of the *Holy Land*.

As for the story of this Province, as a State distinct, we find it had a King of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the Kingdome of *Toi*, or *Tou* before remembred) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*; and the Isles adjoining. Vassalls in time succeeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who lorded it over all the Sea-coasts hereof: and consequently had great influence on the Inlands also. And it continued in this State till the *Assyrian* Kings began to turn their forces Westward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglath Phileser*, after the subversion of the Kingdome of *Damascus*; or by *Salmanassar* after the destruction of that of *Israel*. The proud but dreadful vaunt which *Senacherib*, the Successour of those mighty Monarchs, made to *Hezekiah*, viz. *Where are the Kings of Hamath and Arphad*;

Arphad; ſhews clearly that thoſe Kingdomes had been conquered not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanaſſer*, or *Tigluh Phil-ſer*. Afterwards in the ſtruglings betwixt the *Babylonians* and *Egyptians* for the chief command, it was a while at the devotions of the Kings of *Egypt*; it being at *Rebluth* in this Province, that *Jehoahaz* King of *Judah* was put into bonds, by the command of *Pharoah Neco*, as was ſaid before. But *Neco* being long after vanquiſhed by *Nebuchadnezzer* King of *Babylon*, it returned again unto that Crown; and after the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Syria*.

3. COMAGENA.

COMAGENA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*; on the Weſt, with the Mounteins called *Amanus*, which divide it from *Cilicia*; on the North, with *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with *Palmyrene*. Called alſo *Euphratenſis* and *Euphrateſia*, when a *Roman* Province, by reaſon of its ſituation bordering on that River.

The reaſon of the name I find not amongſt my Authors: but find that many learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria*, which the Scriptures call *Syria Maacha*, mention whereof is made 1 *Chron.* cap. 19. v. 6. gainſayed by others becauſe they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manaſſes*: but with no great reaſon as I take it. For being it is joined (in the 2 of *Chron.* 19. v. 6. above mentioned) in the ſame action with *Meſopotamia*, and *Syria Sobah*; and not ſo only, but placed between them in the method of that holy pen-man; I dare not think but that they were all very neer neighbours, and ranked according to the natural ſituation of them. Which agreeth very well with the ſite of this *Comagena*, having *Meſopotamia* on the Eaſt, and *Aram-Sobah* on the South. Nor is it any ſtronger proof unto the contrary that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manaſſes*; then if a man ſhould ſay that there is no ſuch Province as *Mansfield* in *High Germany*, becauſe there is a Town of that name in *England*; or no ſuch place as *Savoy* among the *Alpes*, becauſe there is an houſe of that name in *London*.

As for the people hereof, beſides what they have common with the reſt of the *Syrians*; they were of old much given unto *Divinations*; and for that cauſe derided thus in the ſixt *Satyr* of *Juvenal*.

Spondet amatorem tenerum vel divitis orbi
Teſtamentum ingens, calida pulmone columbæ
Tractato Armenius *vel* Comagenus *Aruſpex.*
Pectora pullorum rimabitur, exta Catelli
Interdum & pueri. Faciet quod deferat ipſe.

Thus Engliſhed by my honoured friend Sir *Robert Stapylton.*

A childleſs rich mans Legacy, or young love
Are found i'th'lights of a warm trembling Dove,
By *Comagene* Sooth-Sayers; they look into
A dead Chicks breſt, the ſame th' *Armenians* do.
They view the entrails of a dog, and reach
A childs perhaps; They do it and then peach.

Chief places of this part, 1. *Samoſata*, the *Metropolis* or head City of it, when a *Roman* Province ſituate neer the banks of *Euphrates*, over which it had a bridge for paſſage into *Meſopotamia*. Unfortunate for being the birth-place of *Lucian* that profane Scoffer of *Chriſtianity*, though otherwiſe a man of a quick wit, and great abilities: as alſo of *Paulus Samoſatenus*, Patriarch of *Antioch*; condemned of *Hereſie* in a Councill holden in his own City, *Anno* 273 (by the great and moſt learned Biſhops of that Age, there aſſembled together) for teaching that our Saviour was no other then a natural man, but neither God nor the Sonne of God, as the Scriptures teſtify. 2. *Germanicia*, (by ſome called *Germanicopolis*) on the other ſide of the Countrey neer the Mountain *Amanus*: no leſſe unfortunate than the former in being the birth-place of *Neſtorius* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, who troubling the peace of the Church with *Heterodoxie*, and impertinent nicities, about the bleſſed Mother of Chriſt, as alſo about the nature and perſon of Chriſt himſelf: was thereupon condemned of *Hereſie* in the Council of *Epheſus*, *Anno* 435. In former times called *Adata*, or as ſome write *Adapa*: but took this new name from *Germanicus Cæſar*, in honour of whom it was made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus*: teſtified by this Inſcription extant in *Onuphrius*, viz. COLONIA JULIA GERMANICIA, SACRA, AUGUSTA, FELIX. 3. *Singa*, ſo called from the River upon which it is ſituate. 4. *Antiochia penes Taurum* ſo called becauſe ſeated at the foot of that Mountain; to difference it from the other of this name in *Syria*. 5. *Pimara*, one of the chief Cities of that part which is called *Pieria*. 6. *Doliche*, a ſmall Town, but made an Epiſcopall See in the beſt times of the Church, as appeareth by the Acts of the Councills of *Antioch*, and *Conſtantinople*, in which there is ſome mention of the Biſhops of it. 7. *Aleppo*, now the Principall of all the Countrey, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Sepharvaim*, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17. 24. It was thus called as ſome ſay from *Halep*, which in the language of thoſe parts ſignifieth milk, afforded liberally by the rich paſtures round about it: as others more improbably from *Aleph*, the firſt letter of the *Greek* Alphabet, becauſe the firſt in eſtimation of the Cities of *Syria*. Moſt probably from *Alepius*: Leiutenant here in the time of *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, who did here many notable exploits, and amongſt others, in or neer the ruins of ſome old Town of theſe parts, not yet agreed on (in caſe it be not *Sepharvaim* before mentioned) advanced this City. Situate on the banks of the River *Singas*, which riſing out of the hill *Pierius*, with many windings and turnings runneth thorough *Comagena*, and there falleth into *Euphrates*. Deſtroyed by *Haalon* King of the *Tartars*,

at ſuch time as the Weſtern Chriſtians were poſſeſſed of this Countrey and the Holy Land: but being repaired and re-peopled became by reaſon of the commodious ſituation of it to be much frequented by Merchants from all parts of the world. Situate in the midſt betwixt *Tripolis*, *Berytus* and *Alexandretta*, the three prime Ports of *Turkie*, on the one ſide; and the *Perſian* territories on the other: it was made choyſe of for the Staple of the Eaſtern commodities, brought to *Euphrates*, and then boated to this Town by the River *Siugas*. A City of great trade at preſent, the *Engliſh* Merchants (amongſt others which frequent the ſame) having here three houſes for the Stowage and diſpoſing of their Commodities; and a chief Officer or *Super-Intendent* over the whole *Factory*, whom they call the *Conſul* of *Aleppo*. But greater was the trade hereof in the former times, before the *Portugals* found out a way by Sea to thoſe *Eaſtern* Countries, ſince followed by the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders* and other Nations. The building of it low, but of one Roof high, (as in moſt Towns of *Syria*) with a plain topp plaſtered to walk upon: and with Arches before their doors, or houſes, as well to paſs dry under them in time of rain, as to ſhew their wares. Pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Gardens, with the ſweet ſmels whereof very much refreſhed: the ordinary Reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*, ſafe rather in the remoteneſſe of it from any Enemie, than the ſtrength of the place, as being nothing leſs than well fortified. Neer one of the Gates they ſhew a Sepulchre, by them affirmed to be Saint *Georges* (whom of all the Chriſtian Saints they only worſhip) before which they maintain a lamp which burns continually. 8. *Aman*, in the way betwixt *Tripoli* and *Aleppo*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be that *Hamath*, mention whereof is made 2 *Kings* chap. 17, 12. A City of a large circuit, pleaſantly ſeated on two hills, which give it a fair proſpect over ſix of the neighbouring villages: a thing not to be boaſted of as the world now goeth, by many of the *Syrian* Cities. On a third hill once ſtood a Caſtle, now decayed and ruinous; beneath it a fair River which runs gently by it; environed round about with Orchards of Palm-trees and very good fruits. 9. *Chalmodora*, ſeated by *Ptolomy* on *Euphrates*, of which no ruins now remaining; unleſs the name be changed to 10. *Byrrha*, as perhaps it may be, that being made by *Ptolomy* the moſt Northern Town of *Comagena*; and this the utmoſt Town which the *Ægyptian Mamalucks* (then Lords of *Syria*) had upon this River, and the boundary betwixt them and the Sultans of *Perſia*. Memorable for an old ceremony here uſed by thoſe *Mamalucks*, who accounted not themſelves worthy of the name of a Sultan of *Egypt*, till in this place in ſolemn pomp in the ſight of their Army, they had forced their horſe into the River, and made him drink of the waters of of it: teſtifying by that ceremony aſwell the extent of their dominions, as their readineſs to defend the ſame againſt all Invaders. A ceremony performed with great State by *Campſon Gaurus*, in the war betwixt him and *Selimus* the firſt. But for all this he loſt the field, and his life to boot, in the fight neer *Aleppo*: and therewith did not only leave him *Syria*, as the fruits of his Victory; but opened him a fair way to the conqueſt of *Egypt*, which ſoone after followed. And hereto I refer the Cities of 11. *Henu*, and 12. *Ivah*, with their ſeverall Territories; mentioned together with the City of *Sepharvaim*, *Eſay* 37. v. 13. and 2 *Kings* 18. v. 34. it being probable that if *Sepharvaim* were the City now called *Aleppo*, as the *Jews* that dwell there ſay it was; that then the other two joined together with it, muſt be hereabouts, though we find no tract of them in the old *Geographers*.

And if they were (as it ſeems probable to me) we have then more Kings in this Province in the elder times than the King of *Maacha*; unleſſe perhaps it may be ſaid that the Kindome of *Maacha* (or of *Aram-Maacha*) being broke in pieces, theſe petit States aroſe from the ruins of it. Of little obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs, whether entire or ſubdivided into parcels: but that the King hereof (the King of *Maacha*) aided the *Ammonites* againſt *David* with 1000 men: no very great number I confeſs, (as one who lay more out of the danger than the reſt of the *Syrian* confederates did) but ſufficient to ingage them in the quarrel with them. Nor find we any thing after this touching their affairs, but that the Kings of *Henu Ivah* and *Sepharvaim* (who ſhared the greateſt part amongſt them) being ſwallowed up by the *Aſſyrians*, (as the forementioned Texts do expreſſely ſay) ſome Colonies of the people hereof, were ſent by *Salmanaſſar* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, to plant the deſolate dwellings of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, as appeareth plainly in the 2. of *Kings* chap. 17. v. 24. A courſe in which the Conquerour dealt exceeding wiſely; weakning thereby the great Cities and mightier States of this Countrey, which otherwiſe might have been apt enough to revolt again; and ſtrengthning therewithall their conqueſts in the Land of *Iſrael*, which otherwiſe had lain open to the next Invader, and yielding little or no profit to the publick Treaſurie.

After this time it followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Syria*, till *Tigranes* the laſt King hereof was ſubdued by the *Romans*. At what time all the reſt of *Syria* being reduced under the form of a Province, this part being then in the poſſeſſion of *Antiochus*, Sonne of that *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Euſebes* whom *Tigranes* had ſpoiled of his eſtates: was left unto him by the Conquerours with the title of King. Continuing in his line till the death of another *Antiochus* the laſt King hereof; when made a Province of the Empire by *Tiberius Cæſar*, as is ſaid by *Tacitus*; *Qu. Servæus* being ſent hither as the firſt *Roman Prætor* for the government of it: though *Sueton* doth refer it to the times of *Veſpaſian*.

4. PALMYRENE.

PALMYRENE is bounded on the Eaſt by the River *Euphrates*; on the Weſt, by *Syria* properly and eſpecially ſo called: on the North, with *Comagena*; and on the South with Mount *Libanus* (dividing it from the Province of *Cœle-Syria*, and part of *Arabia Deſerta*.

It took this name from *Palmyra* the Chief City of it. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, it had the name of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris*. Called *Syria Secunda*,

to

to distinguish it from *Syria* specially so called, which by them was named *Syria Prima*, and *Salutaris* in regard of the *medicinal* waters springing in many places of it. But before it had any of these names, it was in the Scriptures called *Aram-Sobah*, whereof *Adad-ezer* was King in the time of *David*, as we reade 2 *Sam.* 8. 3. and 1 *Chron.* 18. 3.

The Countrey destitute of Rivers fit for Navigation, save that it bordereth on *Euphrates*; but liberally furnished with those hot springs, good for many diseases, which gave it the name of *Salutaris*. Of which thus writeth *Marcellinus* lib. 14. *In his tractibus navigerum nusquam visitur flumen, at in locis plurimis aquæ suavitate naturæ calentes emergunt, ad usum aptæ multiplicium medelarum.* So he. The sense whereof we had before.

Places of most observation, are 1. *Palmyra*, seated in a desart and sandy plain, one of the Cities built by *Solomon* in the *Wilderness*, mention of which is made 1 *Kings* chap. 9. v. 17, 18. this *Palmyra* being supposed to be that City which is there called *Tadmer*, or *Tamer* in the *Vulgar Latine*. The cause for long time of much contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as situate in the borders of either Empire: not fully setled in the *Romans*, till that they had subdued *Zenobia*, then the Queen hereof. By *Adrian* the Emperour who repaired it, it was called *Hadrianople*, but it held not long, the old name in short time prevailing above the new. 2. *Gezer*, 3. *Bethboron* the upper, and 4. *Bethboron* the nether, said to be fenced Cities with *Walls*, *Gates*, *and Barres*, 2 *Chron.* 8. 4. and 5. *Baalath*, four of the other Towns here built by *Solomon*; but either quite worn out of knowledge, or called by new names in the time of *Ptolomy*, who saith nothing of them. 6. *Adada*, built, as the name doth intimate, by some of the *Adads* Kings of this Countrey or of *Damascus*, to which last made subject. 7. *Sura* more towards the River *Euphrates*, in the *Notitia*, called *Flavia Firma Sura*, which sheweth that it was either repaired or made a Colonie by the Emprour *Vespatian*, whose fore-name was *Flavius*: honoured with an Episcopal See also in the times next following, as appeareth by the Acts of the Council of *Constantinople*. 8. *Alamatha*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, which if it were lawful for me to *criticize* upon my Author, I should conceive to be that *Hamath* of the Scriptures, which is call'd *Hamath Sobah*, 2 *Chro.* 8. 3. against which *Solomon* prevailed: the mistake from *Camatha* to *Alamatha* being not uneasie in the *Transcripts*. And if it were the same as I think it was, confirmed herein by that passage in the second of *Chron.* chap. 18. ver. 3. where it is said, that *David* smote *Hadad-ezer* King of *Sobah* unto *Hamath*, *as he went to stablish his dominion by the River Euphrates*. By which it seemeth that *Hamath* stood upon that River as the *Camatha* or *Alamatha* of *Ptolomy* is said to do. I should conceive it to be the chief seat of those Kings, and the Principal City of this Kingdome: the word *Sobah*, being added to it, not onely for distinctions sake, but in way of eminency. 9. *Resapha*, a Town of note in the time of *Ptolomy*, but of greater in the holy Scripture, where it is represented to us by the name of *Reseph*, *Esay* 3. 12. *Reseph Civitas Syria* as St. *Hierome* hath it: and a Town of *Syria*, then most like this. 10. *Betah*, and 11. *Berothai*, two other Cities of this Kingdome, taken by *David* in his warre against *Hadad-ezer*, 2 *Sam.* 8. 8. the last supposed to be the *Barathins* of *Ptolomy*, though placed by him here some time, they are Towns of *Arabia*, the D*esart* by which it seems it was alotted in the change of time.

This part of *Syria*, as the rest, was once a distinct Kingdome of it self, by the name of the Kingdome of *Sobah*, or of *Aram-Sobah*. The first KING thereof, whose name occurs in holy Scripture, being *Rehob*, the Co-temperare of *Saul* King of *Israel*; by whom discomfited in battel, as is said 1 *Sam.* 14. 47. But *Adad-ezor* the Sonne of *Rehob*, a Prince of greater power and valour then his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command, (as is said 2 *Sam.* 10. 19. conceived himself a fit match for *David*, and thereupon opposed his passage, *as he went to recover his border at the River Euphrates*. In which action though he lost a thousand Charets, and twenty thousand Foot, and seven hundred Horse, yet would he not so end the warre, but first with the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, and after with the *Ammonites* and their confederates; and finally by the aid of the *Mesopotamians*, renewed the quarrell. But being discomfited also in this last enterprise with the loss of forty thousand and seven hundred men, and his life to boot, the Kingdome of *Zobah* was brought under by the Kings of *Damascus*. The Storie of this warre we have in the 2 of *Sam.* cap. 8. and 10. in the first of *Chron.* cap. 18. and 1 *Kings* 11. 23, 24. yet were not the Kings of *Damascus* so well setled in it, but that *David* had possessed himself of *Betah* and *Berothia*, and other peeces of importance: the Regal City of *Hameth-Sobah* being wonne by *Solomon*, and many of the best Towns of it built by him to assure his conquest. But the Kingdome *Solomon* being rent in pieces in the next Succession, the Kingdome of *Zobah* fell again unto those of *Damascus*; and so continued till *Damascus* it self was conquered by the Kings of *Assyria*: unless perhaps that *Hamath* which *Jeroboam* the second is said to have subdued (together with *Damascus* it self) to the Crown of *Israel*, 2 *Kings* 14. 28. were this *Hamath Soba*; as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the Affaires of this Countrey, till the time of *Gallienus* the *Roman* Emperour: during whose reign amongst the rest who *cantonned* that Empire betwixt themselves, (commonly called the Thirty Tyrants) *Odenatus* a man of great power and vertue assumed the Imperial habit, and took unto himself the command of these parts of *Syria*, together with *Mesopotamia* and some other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapores* the King of *Persia*; against whom he had so good an hand, that he discomfited him in battell, seized upon his Treasures, took many of his Nobles, and most of his Concubines. For which great Acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus*, he was not long after slain by *Maonius* his own Cousen German. Who by that murder hoped to obtain the Principality of *Palmyreni* (for by that name it was now called): but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate Widow, a most masculine Ladie, not onely preserved the principalitie of *Palmirene* for the use of her Children; but took upon her both the *Purple* habit, and the command of his Annie: which she managed

with great wisdome and gallantry, the rest of the time of *Gallienus*, and all the reignes of *Claudius* and *Quintilius* his two next Successors. But vanquished and took Prisoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happiness to unite the broken limbs of that Empire into as strong a body as ever formerly) she was led in Triumph thorow *Rome*. The terrour of her name, and the unusualness of the sight, so heightning the general expectation: *ut ea specie nihil unquam esset pompabilius*, saith *Trebellius Pollio*; That never any shew was esteemed so glorious. A Ladie of so strong a vertue, and of such command upon her self, that she is said never to have made use of her husbands company, when she perceived her self with child. After this nothing singular in the Story of *Palmirene*, but that when all the rest of *Syria* was subdued by the Christians of the West, this Province and the next onely were made good against them by the *Turkish* Sultans of *Damascus*.

5. *COELE-SYRIA.*

COELE-SYRIA is bounden on the East with part of *Palmyrene*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Palmyrene*, and some part of *Syria Propria*, from which divided by the Interposition of Mount *Libanus*; on the South, with *Iturea*, and *Arabia Deserta* also.

It was called by the *Greeks Cœle-Syria*, *i.e. Syria Cava*, because partly situate in the hollow vallies interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*: and sometimes also *Syro-Phœnicia*, from the intermixture of those people; as the *Phœnicians* which went with *Dido* into *Africk*, were called *Libo-Phœnices*. By the *Romans*, when made a distinct Province of their Empire, it had the name of *Phœnice Libani*, or *Phœnicia Libanensis*, to difference it from the other *Phœnicia*, which they called *Maritima*: but before all this by the *Hebrews* named *Aram-Damasek*, *Syria-Damascena* in the *Latine*, from *Damascus* the chief City of it: unless perhaps we should rather say, that *Aram-Damasek* conteined only that which lay between the Mountaines of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; the rest being added by the *Romans*, out of the neighbouring parts of *Palestine*, and *Arabia-Deserta*, as perhaps it was.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1. *Abanah*, and 2. *Pharphar*, the Rivers of *Damascus*, as the Scripture calleth them, 2 *Kings* chap. 5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, spoken of already; the other that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chrysorrhoas*, or the golden flood; which rising in the Hills of this Countrey, passeth by *Damascus*; and so together with the other into the *Mediterranean* Sea. Chief Mountaines of it, 1. *Alsadamus*, by the *Phœnicians* called *Syrion*, by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a Ridge of Hills which beginning at the East point of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly Southwards, shutting up on that side the land of *Israel*, whereof more in *Palestine*, 2. *Hippus*, a ledge of Mountains in the South parts of this Province, where it bordereth on *Arabia Deserta*.

Towns of most consideration in it, 1. *Heliopolis*, so called from an Image of the Sun there worshipped in time of *Paganism*; now *Ballebec*, or (as some say) *Balbec*. 2. *Chalcis*, more East-ward towards *Damascus*, which gave the title of a King to *Ptolomy Mennæus*, and his sonne *Lysanias*, the Kingdome then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Iturea* in *Palestine*. But that Family being either expired, or grown out of favour, and *Abila* with *Iturea* otherwise disposed of, the title of the King of *Chalcis* with the Town and territory, was given to *Herod* brother of *Agrippa* the first, King of *Jewrie*. Erroneously supposed by some learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Countrey called *Chalcidice* takes denomination: that *Chalcis* being placed by *Ptolomy* a degree and an half more East than *Damascus*, and two degrees more towards the North; whereas this *Chalcis* lieth on the West of that City, in the shades of *Libanus*, and in the very same degree of Northern *Latitude*. 3. *Abila*, seated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis*, from whence the Countrey round about is called *Abilene*: given to *Lysanias*, the sonne of the former *Lysanias* King of *Chalcis*, with the title of *Tetrach*. Mentioned *Luk.* 3. 1. with those other Princes which shared *Palestine* amongst them: not that he was the sonne of *Herod*, as antiently *Beda* and *Euthymius*, and of late-times some very industrious men have been of opinion; but partly because the Cities of *Chalcis* and *Abila* of right belonged to those of the Tribe of *Naphthalim* (though never conquered or possessed by them) and so to be a part of *Palestine*; and partly because the *Tetrarchy* of *Abilene*, when Saint *Luke* wrote that Gospel, was possessed together with the rest by King *Agrippa*. Restored (as it seemeth) to the former Family, after his decease; for known it was by the name of *Abila-Lysanie* in the time of *Ptolomy*. 4 *Adada*, memorable for the victory which *Aretas* King of *Arabia* obtained neer unto it, against *Alexander* King of *Jewrie*: the Kingdome of *Syria* then lying open as a prey to the next Invaders. 5. *Hippus*, or *Hippon*, as *Plinie* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that name. 6. *Capitolias*, now called *Suente*. 7. *Gadara*. 8. *Scythopolis*. 9. *Gerasa*, and 10. *Philadelphia*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* as Cities of *Cœle-Syria*, but of right belonging unto *Palestine*, where we mean to take more notice of them. 11. *Damascus*, situate in a large plain environed with hills, and watered with the River *Chrysorrhoas*, which with a great noise descendeth from the Mountains, and so abundantly serveth the City, that not only most of the houses have their Fountains of it, but their Orchards and gardens have some Rivulets conveyed into them. The Countrey round about abundantly enriched with plenty of most excellent wines (the vines hereof bearing grapes all the year long) and great store of wheat, as their Orchards with variety of most delicate fruits: our *Damascens*, (or *Prunа Damascena* as the *Latines* call them) coming first from hence; as also do our *Damask* Roses but infinite short of their naturall sweetness, by the transplantation. A place so surfeiting of delights, so girt about with odoriferous and curious gardens, that the vile Impostor *Mahomet* would never be perswaded to come into it: for fear (as himself was used to say) lest being ravished with the ineffable pleasures of it, he should

ſhould forget the buſineſs he was ſent about, and make there his Paradice. But *Muhavias*, one of his Succeſſors, having no ſuch ſcruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the moſt part) till the building of *Bagdat* by *Bugiafer* the twentieth *Caliph*, about an hundred years after this Removall.

The chief buildings of it of late times, till deſtroyed by the *Tartars*, were a ſtrong Caſtle, in the opinion of thoſe times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamerlane*, whom nothing was able to withſtand: and as Majeſticall a Church, gamiſhed with fourty ſumptuous porches, and no fewer then 9000 Lanterns of gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who fled thither for Sanctuary) was by the ſaid *Tamerlane* moſt cruelly and unmercifully burnt and pulled down unto the ground. Repaired by the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt*, when Lords of *Syria*, it hath ſince flouriſhed in Trade, the people being induſtrious, and celebrated for moſt excellent Artizans: the branching of Satins, and fine Linnen which we call by the name of *Damasks*, being amongſt many others, one of their inventions. Renowned in the Old Teſtament for the Kings hereof, and the birth of *Eliezer*, *Abrahams* Steward (ſo honourably antient was this City); and in the New, for the Converſion of Saint *Paul*, who firſt preached the Goſpell in this place, and here ſo narrowly eſcaped the ſnares of his enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the houſe in which he was, by the help of *Basket*. 12. *Eden*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*, and antiently of ſuch eſteem, that the whole Countrey of *Damaſcus* was called *Beth-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5.

But antient and honourable though this City was, we find nothing of the ſtory of it, till the time of *David*, the Kings thereof untill thoſe daies, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the Kings of *Zobah*. The firſt exploit aſcribed unto them in the Holy Scripture, is their coming to the aid of *Adad-ezer*, upon his firſt defeat by *David*: in which action having loſt 22000 men, they were ſo broken, that they did not only ſuffer *David* to put Garriſons in the beſt Cities of *Damaſcus*. but patiently became his Servants, and brought preſents to him, 2 *Sam.* 8. 5, 6. The name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in Scripture, is by *Joſephus* affirmed out of *Nicolas Damaſcenus*, to have been *Adad* (a name much cheriſhed and aſſumed by the Kings his Suceeſſours): who keeping conſtant to the party of *Adad-ezer* in his following wars; was at laſt ſlain with him in that great diſcomfiture which *David* gave them, mentioned in the 2 of *Sam.* chap. 10. v. 18. In which Text the Scripture telleth us nothing of the death of thoſe Kings, that being ſupplyed to us by *Joſephus* out of their Records. Who alſo addeth, that *Rezin* one of the Chief Commanders of *Adad-ezer*, taking this advantage, not only uſurped his Maſters Kingdome, but made himſelf Maſter of the Kingdome of *Damaſcus* alſo. From this time forward the Seat-Royall of the Kings of *Syria*. Nor is this the tradition of *Joſephus* only, but founded plainly on the Scriptures; of which ſee 1 *Kings* 11. v. 23, 24. the Scriptures after this, taking no notice of any other Kings of *Syria* (by the name of Kings of *Syria*) but of thoſe that reigned in *Damaſcus*; who in ſhort time had ſwallowed up the petit Kingdomes of *Geſſur*, *Iſh-tok*, *Rehob*, beſides that of *Sobah* beforementioned.

The Kings of *Syria* or *Damaſcus*.

1. *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Adad-ezer* King of *Sobah*; in whoſe quarrel he was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *David*.
2. *Rezin*, of whom the Scripture ſaith in the 2 of *Chron.* that when *David* ſlew them of *Sobah*, *he fled from Adad-ezer his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to* Damaſcus *and dwelt therein, and reigned in* Damaſcus.
3. *Adad* II. an *Idumæan*, ſuppoſed to be of the family of *Adad-ezer*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Ægypt*, where he maried *Taphnes*, the Queens Siſter: and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Countrey, and as ſome write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damaſcus*, and reigned there as King.
4. *Hezion*, Succeſſour unto *Adad*.
5. *Tabrimon*, the Sonne of *Hezion*, as is ſaid 1 *Kings* 15. 18.
6. *Ben-hadad* the Sonne of *Tabrimon*, hired by *Aſa* King of *Judah*, to aid him in his wars againſt *Baaſha* of *Iſrael*.
7. *Ben-hadad* II. Sonne of the former, twice invaded *Iſrael* in the reign of *Achab*, but both times notably repulſed; the firſt time by a ſally of 700 men at the ſiege of *Samaria*, the next at *Aphec*, where with the like number in effect he was taken priſoner, and his Army routed.
8. *Hazael*, Captain of the hoſt to *Ben-hadad*, annointed King of *Syria* by the Prophet *Eliſha*, whom God appointed ſo to do, that by his hands he might avenge himſelf on *Ben-hadad*, whom *Hazael* ſlew, but he proved as ill a neighbour to the Kings of *Iſrael*, as thoſe before him. He attempted upon *Judah* alſo in the time of *Joas*, but bribed with the Treaſures of the Temple, he withdrew his forces.
9. *Ben-hadad* III. Sonne of *Hazael*, diſcomfited in three ſet Battels by *Joas* King of *Iſrael*.
10. *Ben-hadad* IV. Sonne of *Ben-hadad* the third.
11. *Ben-hadad* V. Sonne of *Ben-hadad* the fourth.
12. *Ben-hadad* VI. Sonne of *Ben-hadad* the fifth, in the time of one of which three Kings, but which one we find not for a certain, *Jeroboam* the Sonne of *Joas* King of *Iſrael*, ſubdued

both *Chamath*, and *Damascus*: of which see 2 *Kings* 14. v. 18.

13. *Rezin* II. Sonne of *Ben-hadad* the sixt, and the last King of *Damascus*, who joining with *Pekah* King of *Israel*, against *Ahaz* of *Judah*, enforced him to call unto his aid *Teglat Phalasar*, King of *Assyria*, by whom *Rezin* was taken, and beheaded, and the City of *Damascus* won: the Kingdome of *Syria* by that means united to the *Assyrian* Empire.

After this time the *Syrians* continued subject to the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the *Medes* and *Persians*, became a part of their estate: remaining so till the first battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* fought near *Issus* in *Cilicia*. The victory wherein falling to the *Macedonian*, gave him without more trouble than the seige of *Tyre*, the possession of *Syria* and *Phoenicia*. He dying not long after his conquest of *Persia*, this Countrey lay as it were at stake betwixt *Ptolomy* King of *Egypt*, and *Antigonus* the chief Lord of *Asia*: but the possession of it, together with the rest of the *Persian* Empire in both *Asias*, fell in conclusion to the share of *Seleucus*, for his many great and signal victories surnamed *Nicanor*; a man strangely preferred. For being at the first, Governour of *Chaldea* onely, he was forced to leave *Babylon*, and forsake his Province for fear of *Antigonus*, then dreadful to all the *Macedonian* Captaines; and to flie into *Egypt*, where he became *Ptolomies* Admiral. After which *Ptolomie* fighting a pitched field with *Demetrius*, son to *Antigonus*, took *Seleucus* with him; and having won the battel, gave him aid and license to recover his former government. *Seleucus* wel-beloved of the people, soon made himself Master, not of *Chaldea* onely, but of all the *Persian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*: and not long after (being seconded by his good friend *Ptolomy*, *Cassander*, and *Lysimachus*) he encountred *Antigonus* at *Ipsus* in *Ionia*, where *Antigonus* himself was slain, and his whole army routed. This victory made *Seleucus* Lord of all *Asia*, from whence passing over into *Europe*, he vanquished and slew *Lysimachus*: seven moneths after which victory he was slain by *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, whose patron and protector he had formerly been; being yet the last survivor of all *Alexanders* Princes, and the onely possessour of all the dominions which his master had, by the way of conquest, *Egypt* excepted. His Successours, although they were Lords of all *Asia*, yet since in *Syria* they kept their residence, to the end that they might the better furnish themselves with Souldiers out of *Greece*, upon all occasions, as was said before; they were commonly called the Kings of *Syria*. But long they held not in that greatnes of estate and power which *Seleucus* left them: though being a full-bodied Tree, and of several Limbs, it endured the lopping off of many branches, and many a sad blow at the very root of it, before it fell. For in the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of this house, *Arsaces* a noble *Parthian* recovered from it all the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire, lying on that side of *Euphrates*, and erected the so much celebrated *Parthian* Kingdome, whereof more in *Persia*. And in the reign of *Antiochus Magnus*, so called for his victories in *Egypt*, *Judea*, and *Babylonia*, the *Romans* extorted from it all the *Asian* Provinces, on this side Mount *Taurus*; not wanting many provocations to incite them to it: for he not only had made warre against *Ptolomy Philopater* King of *Egypt*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their protection; but stirred up the Cities and States of *Greece* against them; invaded *Lysimachia*, and some other parts of *Europe* in defiance of them; and had received *Annibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, their most mortal enemies, into his dominions, governing his Counsels by the influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that ambition and avarice, to adde to their fame and Empire by the overthrow of so great a Prince, did perswade much with them. So that the point being brought to a ready issue, they pleaded it on both sides in the battel of *Magnesia*, a City of *Lydia*, to which *Antiochus* brought an Army of 300000. foot, and as many armed *Chariots*, besides store of *Elephants*, if the *Roman* writers be not over-lavish in their reports. But rejecting the advise of *Annibal*, and committing his affaires wholly to *Evil Counsellers*, he was vanquished by no more than four *Legions* of enemies, and for his peace, compelle to quit all his *Asian* Provin ces, on that side of *Taurus*, and to pay 15000. *Talents* in ready mony for the charge of the warre. The rest of his estates they were content he should enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile cessisset*, (as *Florus* handsomly puts it on him) because he had so easily relinquished that. Afterwards in the civil broyles among themselves, about the succession of the Kingdome, *Alexander*, King of the *Jews*, took from them many of their best Towns in *Palestine*, as *Joppa*, *Gaza*, *Anthedon*, *Azotus*, *Rhinocorura*, almost all *Samaria*, and *Gaulonitis*, with *Sythopolis*, *Gadara*, and many other strong Towns in *Cœle-Syria*. Finally, when they had consumed almost all the Royal race, and changed their Kings no less than ten times in 40. years, (a sure sign of a falling and expiring Kingdome) they were fain to cast themselves upon *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, a puissant and successful Prince, till ingaged in the quarrel of *Mithridates* against the *Romans*: by whom stripped of all his Estates on this side *Euphrates*, he was fain to content himself with his own *Armenia*, leaving *Syria* to the absolute disposal of *Pompey*, who presently reduced it to the form of a Province. This said, we have not much more to do with the house of *Seleucus*, but to lay down their names, and times of their several governments, till we draw towards the last end of

The *Macedonian* Kings of *Syria*.

A. M.

3654. 1. *Seleucus Nicanor*, the first King of this house. 31.

3685. 2. *Antiochus*, surnamed *Soter*, or the *Saviour*; memorable for nothing so much, as marying with *Stratonice* his Fathers wife, in his Fathers life-time.

3704. 3. *Antiochus* II. by his flattering Courtiers surnamed *Theos*, or the God: but being poisoned by his wife he proved a mortall.

3719.

3719. 4. *Seleucus* II. ſurnamed by the like flattery *Callinicus*, or fair Conquerour; becauſe ſhamefully beaten by the *Parthians*.

3739. 5. *Seleucus* III. called for the like reaſon *Ceraunus*, or the *Thunderer*; the eldeſt ſonne of *Callinicus*.

3742. 6. *Antiochus* III. ſurnamed *Magnus*, the younger ſonne of *Callinicus*, a Prince that imbraced many great actions, and was fortunate in his ſucceſſes beyond *Euphrates*: he plagued the *Jews*, but loſt all *Aſia Minor* unto the *Romans*.

3778. 7. *Seleucus* IV. called *Philopator*, the ſonne of *Antiochus*, who firſt began to caſt his eye upon the riches of the Temple at *Hieruſalem*.

3790. 8. *Antiochus* IV. ſurnamed *Epiphanes*, or the *Illuſtrious*, but more truly *Epimanes*, or the *mad*, the great ſcourge of the *Jews*; brother of *Seleucus Philopator*. With whom beginneth the ſtory of the firſt Book of the *Maccabees*.

3802. 9. *Antiochus* V. called by the name of *Eupator*, the ſonne of *Epiphanes*; who by *Lyſias* his Captain tyrannized over the poor *Iudæans*, for the litle time that he reigned; as did alſo

3804. 10. *Demetrius*, ſurnamed *Soter*, ſonne of *Seleucus Philopator*, by the hands of *Nicanor*: having poſſeſſed himſelf of the diademe by the death of *Eupator*, ſlain in his favour by the Souldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards depoſed for a time by *Alexander Bala*, pretending himſelf to be the Sonne of *Eupator*, ſupported herein by the *Antiochians*.

3814. 11. *Alexander Bala*, diſcomfited in his firſt battell by *Demetrius*, whom he ſlew and vanquiſhed in the ſecond; maryed *Cleopatra* Daughter of *Ptolomy Philometor*, by whoſe aid he was victorious. But a quarrel breaking out between them, *Ptolomy* invaded *Syria*, and cauſed himſelf to be crowned King of it: *Alexander* being ſlain by ſome of his Souldiers.

3819. 12. *Demetrius* II. ſurnamed *Nicator*, Sonne of *Demetrius* the firſt, recovered his Fathers Kingdome, a friend of the *Maccabees*, but ſo cruell to his own people, that he was driven out of his Kingdome by *Tryphon* Generall of his Armies.

3821. 13. *Antiochus* VI. ſurnamed *Emhem*, the Sonne of *Alexander* and *Cleopatra*, advanced unto the Throne by *Tryphon*, and after ſlain by him to make way for himſelf unto the Throne.

3824. 14. *Tryphon*, called alſo *Diodorus*, having driven out *Demetrius*, and ſlain *Antiochus*, made himſelf King.

3827. 15. *Antiochus* VII. ſurnamed *Sedetes*, brother of *Demetrius*, having overcome and ſlain *Tryphon*, ſucceeded him in the eſtate; for a while victorious againſt the *Parthians*, but afterwards overcome and ſlain by them. After whoſe death *Demetrius Nicator* (having lived in *Parthia* ſince the loſs of his Kingdome) was reſtored again unto the Throne; which having held about 4 years, he was again diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by

3843. 16. *Alexander* II. ſurnamed *Zebenna*, an *Ægyptian* of mean birth, ſet up by *Ptolomy Euergetes*, and pretending himſelf to be the adopted Sonne of *Antiochus*; afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by

3845. 17. *Antiochus* VIII. from the croockedneſſe of his noſe ſurnamed *Gryphus*, Sonne of *Demetrius*, aided herein by the *Ægyptian*, with whom reconciled: having reigned about eight years in peace, embroiled himſelf in warre with his half-brother *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Cyzicenus*; which with variable ſucceſſes on both ſides, continued till the time of his death, having reigned 29 years in all.

3874. 18. *Seleucus* V. Sonne of *Antiochus Gryphus*, in the beginning of his reign overcame and ſlew his Uncle *Cyzicenus*; but being vanquiſhed by *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Euſebes* or *Pius*, one of the Sonnes of *Cyzicenus*, he fled into *Cilicia*, and was there burnt in his palace.

19. *Antiochus* IX. ſurnamed *Euſebes*, having firſt vanquiſhed *Seleucus*, and afterwards *Antiochus*, another of the Sonnes of *Gryphus*, was crowned King of *Syria*; but ſlain not long after in the *Perſian* wars.

20. *Philip*, and *Demetrius* III. ſurnamed *Eucærus*, younger Sonnes of *Gryphus*, jointly Kings of *Syria*, but reigning in their ſeverall parts. Of which *Demetrius* intending to diſſeize his brother, was himſelf vanquiſhed, and forced to fly into *Parthia*; leaving the whole Kingdome unto *Philip*. During which warres amongſt themſelves, *Syria* was invaded, and in part conquered, by *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, and *Alexander* King of the *Jews*.

3884. 21. *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, during theſe diſſentions was by the *Syrians* choſen King, that by his power they might be freed from the *Jews* and *Arabians*: the moſt puiſſant Prince that had reigned in *Syria* ſince the time of *Antiochus* the *Great*, as being King of *Syria* by election, of *Armenia* by ſucceſſion, of *Media* by conqueſt. But ingaging himſelf with *Mithridates* (whoſe daughter he had maryed) againſt the *Romans*, was vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*: who with the loſs of five *Romans* onely, and the wounds of an hundred, is reported to have ſlain of his Enemies above a 100000 men. Finally, being again broken and vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*, he yielded himſelf to *Pompey* (who being appointed *Lucullus* ſucceſſour, deprived him of the honour of ending that warre;) and retaining to himſelf *Armenia* only, he left all *Syria* to the *Romans*; having reigned eighteen years. And though *Antiochus Comagenus*, the Sonne of *Euſebes*, petitioned *Pompey* for a reſtitution to the Throne of his Anceſtours; yet it would not be granted: *Pompey* replying that he would not truſt the Countrey into ſuch weak

weak hands as were not able to defend it againſt the *Arabians*, *Parthians*, and the like Invaders; and ſo reduced it preſently to the form of a Province. The government of this Countrey under theſe new Lords, was accompted to be one of the greateſt honours of the Empire: the *Præfect* hereof having almoſt regall juriſdiction over all the regions on this ſide *Euphrates*; with a ſuper-intendency over *Egypt*. *Niger* the concurrent of *Severus*, was *Præfect* here: and on the ſtrength hereof preſumed on that competition. So alſo was *Caſſius Syrus*, who being a Native of this Countrey, and well-beloved by reaſon of his moderate and plauſible demeanour, had almoſt tumbled *M. Antoninus* out of his Throne. On this occaſion it was enacted by the Senate, that no man hereafter ſhould have any *militer* or *legall* command in the Province where he was born: Leſt perhaps ſupported by the naturall propenſion of the people, to one of their own Nation; and heartned by the powerableneſs of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himſelf which was common to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and paſſed but for one Province only, *Phœnicia* being alſo taken into the accompt, which made the *Antiochians* ſo proud and inſolent, that *Adrian*, in his time intended to ſubduct *Phœnicia* from it, *ne tot civitatum Metropolis* Antiochia *diceretur*, (ſaith *Gallicanus*) that *Antioch* might not be the chief of ſo many Cities. But what he lived not to accompliſh, was performed by *Conſtantine*. By whom *Phœnicia* was not only taken off, but *Syria* it ſelf divided into four diſtinct Provinces, as was ſhewed before; each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City: but all ſubordinate to the command of the *Comes* or *Præfect* of the Eaſt, as he to the command of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; the greateſt Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often ſpoke already.

For the defence hereof aſwell againſt all Forrein invaſions, as the inſurrections of the Natives, (a wavering and inconſtant People) the *Romans* kept here in continuall pay four Legions, with their Aids, and other Additaments. For ſo many *Mutianus* had here in the time of *Galba*; and by the ſtrength and reputation of thoſe Forces, was able to transfer the Empire upon *Veſpaſian*. And though the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperours to whoſe ſhare it fell in the diviſion of the Empire, rather increaſed than diminiſhed any part of this ſtrength: yet when the fatall time was come, and that Empire was in the Declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Haumar* their third *Caliph*, *an.* 636. poſſeſſed themſelves of it, *Heraclius* then reigning in *Conſtantinople*. And it continued in their power, till *Trangrolipix* the *Turk* having conquered *Perſia*, and the Provinces on that ſide of *Euphrates*, paſſed over the River into *Syria*, and made himſelf Maſter of a great part of that alſo. A quarrell falling out betwixt him and his neereſt Kinſ-men, and thereby a great ſtop made in their further progreſs, was thus compoſed, by the mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* in the time of *Axan* his Succeſſour. To *Cutlu Muſes* was aſſigned a convenient Army, to be by him employed againſt the Chriſtians, with Regal power over the Provinces by him gained, without relation or ſubordination to the *Perſian* Sultans: of whoſe ſucceſſes and affairs hath been ſpoke elſewhere. To *Melech*, and *Ducat*, two others of his diſcontented Kinſ-men, but all of the ſame *Selzuccian* family, he gave the fair Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, and thoſe parts of *Syria*, with whatſoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, who then held all *Phœnicia*, and the Sea-coaſts of *Paleſtine*, to be held in fee and vaſſalage of the Crown of *Perſia*. To theſe two brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the *Turkiſh* Kingdome in *Syria*: who with their Succeſſors, by reaſon that here they held their reſidence, cauſed themſelves to be called

The *Turkiſh* Kings of *Damaſcus*.

1075. 1. *Melech* and *Ducat*, the firſt *Turkiſh* Kings of *Damaſcus* by the gift of *Axan* the ſecond Sultan of the *Turks* in *Perſia*, added to their dominions all the reſt of *Syria*, together with *Cilicia* and ſome neighbouring Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*.

2. ——— Sultan of *Damaſcus*, at ſuch time as the Chriſtians of the Weſt won the *Holy Land*: againſt whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damaſcus*; and in a ſet Battel diſcomfited and ſlew *Roger* the *Norman*, Prince of *Antioch*.

1146. 3. *Noradine* (the Sonne of *Sanguin*) Generall of the Armies, and Sonne-in-Law to the former King, ſucceeded him in the eſtate. A noble Prince, memorable amongſt other things for a gallant anſwer made to his Commanders, when they perſwaded him to take the advantage on the death of *Baldwin* the third, and to invade *Hieruſalem* whilſt the Chriſtians were buſie in ſolemnizing his Funerals. Not ſo, ſaith he, *Compaſſion and regard is to be had of the juſt ſorrow of thoſe Chriſtians, who have loſt ſuch a King, as could not be equalled in the world.*

1175. 4. *Melechſala*, Sonne of *Noradine*, contemned by reaſon of his youth, by his Nobles and Souldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King, by whom diſpoſſeſſed firſt, and after vanquiſhed.

1176. 5. *Saladine* the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Egypt*, having vanquiſhed the *Perſians*, or *Parthians*, coming under the conduct of *Cacobed*, Uncle to *Melechſala*, to reſtore that Prince to his Eſtate, remained King of *Damaſcus*: and by the puiſſance of his Armies recovered from the *Chriſtians* all *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hieruſalem*.

1199. 6. *Eladel*, or *El-Aphzal* the eldeſt Sonne of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Damaſcus*, which he exchanged for that of *Egypt* with his Brother *Elaziz*.

7. *Elaziz*, the ſecond Sonne of *Saladine* ſucceeded upon this Exchange in the Realm of *Damaſcus*, murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.

8. *Saphradine* the Brother of *Saladine*, having barbariouſly murdered eight of the Sonnes of *Saladine*, (the youngeſt called *Saphradine* eſcaping onely, who was after Sultan of *Aleppo*) poſ-

ſeſſed

ſeſſed himſelf of the Kingdome of *Damaſcus*, left at his death to *Corradine* his Sonne or Nephew.

9. *Corradine*, Sonne or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death left Sultan of *Damaſcus*, to which all *Syria* and *Paleſtine* were then ſtrife *Provincials*. But the treacheries and murders of *Saphradine* crying loud for vengeance, *Haalon* the *Tartar* in the year 1262. having taken the King of *Damaſcus* Priſoner (but whether *Corradine* or ſome other I am not able to ſay) brought him before the walls of the City, threatning to kill him in the ſight of his people, if they did not deliver it unto him. Which the Citizens refuſing to do, the wretched King was torn in peeces, and the City taken by aſſault: the Kingdome by the Conquerors conferred upon *Agab* the Sonne of *Haalon*. And ſo ended the *Selzuccian* family of the Kings of *Damaſcus* in the perſon of *Corradine*, or the Sonne of *Corradine*, moſt miſerably murdered by the *Tartars*; as it had done in *Egypt* 17. years before in the perſon of *Melechſela* and *Elmutam* the Sonne of *Meledine*, as villainouſly diſpoſed and murdered by the *Mamalucks*. So ſlippery is the foundation of thoſe Kingdomes which are laid in blood.

Nor did this Kingdome hold long in the hands of the *Tartars*, recovered from them in ſhort time by the *Mamalucks* then Kings of *Egypt*; from them once more regained by the furious *Tamerlane*, who in the year 1400. beſieged *Damaſcus* with an Army of 1200000. men (if the number be not miſtaken, and one Cypher added more than ſhould): in purſuite whereof he filled up the ditches with his Priſoners, put all the people, to the ſword, and with great art raiſed three Towers as a trophey of his victory, built with the heads of thoſe whom he had ſo ſlaughtered. A man ſo ſtrangely made up of vice and vertues, that it is hard to ſay which had the predominancie. But the violence of this tempeſt being overblown, the *Mamalucks* from whom he had alſo conquered the Kingdome of *Egypt*, recovered *Syria* by degrees, and repaired *Damaſcus*: continuing in their power till the year 1516. when *Selimus* the firſt diſcomfited *Campſon Gaurus* the *Ægyptian* Sultan in the fields of *Aleppo*. Upon the newes whereof the Citizens of *Damaſcus*, fearing the ſpoil of their rich City then of very great trading, ſet open their Gates unto the *Victors*; as did all the other Cities and Towns of *Syria* by their Example. By means whereof, without any more blows, the *Turks* became Lords of all this Country; as the next year of *Egypt* alſo by the vanquiſhment and death of *Tonombeius* who ſucceeded *Campſon*: ſo rooting out the name and government of the *Mamalucks*, and adding thoſe rich Kindomes to the *Turkiſh* Empire.

And ſo much for *Syria*

MOUNT HERMON.

IN our paſſage out of *Cœle-Syria* into *Paleſtine*, we muſt croſs Mount *Hermon*; a ledge of hills, which beginning at the Eaſt point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places, and by ſeveral Nations called by divers names. By *Ptolomy* called *Alſadamus*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; by the *Phœnicians*, *Syrion*; & by that name remembred in the book of *Pſalmes*. But *Alſadamus* they are called onely where they border upon *Cœle-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Traconitis* from *Arabia-Deſerta*, they are called by *Moſes* and the Scriptures *Hermon*; part of the Kingdome of *Og*, the King of *Baſan*, as is ſaid, *Joſuah* chap. 12. ver. 6. *Syrion* by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed *Deut.* chap. 3. v. 9. Running farther after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead* or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonita*, after the name of the Region along which they paſs: and are conceived to be the higheſt part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long Ridge of Mountains which there take beginning. And ſo we are to underſtand the words of the Prophet *Jeremie* ſaying, *Galaad tu mihi caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to ſay, that as the head is the higheſt part of a man; ſo theſe hills, or this part of them, was the higheſt of all the branches or ſpurres of *Libanus*. Called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that heap of ſtones which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a witneſs of the *Covenant* which was made betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. ver. 27. the word ſignifying in the Original *an heap of Witneſſes*. And *Laban* ſaid, *this heap is a Witneſs between me and thee this day*; *therefore was the name of it called* Galeed, ver. 28. By theſe hills, and the main body of the *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountaines of *Phœnicia* and *Idumæa* on the Weſt, the land of *Paleſtine* is ſo ſhut up on every ſide, that no Foretreſs can be ſtronger by wit or Art, than that Countrey by Nature, the paſſages in ſome parts ſo narrow as hardly to afford paſſage for a ſingle perſon, *Clauditur undiq; montibus, hinc abruptis rupibus, et profundis vallibus concurſu Torrentium, inde altis et implexis anfractibus ſic contractis, ut per anguſtos colles vix pateat tranſitus viatori*, as my Author hath it. I forgot to adde, that that part of theſe hills, which commonly is known in Scripture by the name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sihon*, as *Deut* 4. ver. 48. where it is ſaid that the *Iſraelites poſſeſſed the Land from* Aroer *on the bank of the River* Arnon, *even to Mount* Sion, which is *Hermon*: As alſo that one of the higheſt tops or Summits of it, had the name of *Amana*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the fourth of the *Canticles*, by ſome miſtaken for *Amanus* a branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the Leſſer *Aſia*, with which *Solomon* had but ſmall or no acquaintance. And ſo having cleared our ſelves of ſo much of this Mountain as lay before us in our way, we paſſe over to *Paleſtine*: where we ſhall meet with it again, (or rather with the Weſtern parts and branches of it) under the names of *Gilead* and *Trachonitis*, as a part of that Country.

OF

OF PALESTINE.

PALESTINE is bounden on the East, with the Hills last mentioned, by which parted from *Cœlo-Syria*, and *Arabia-Deserta*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, and some part of *Phœnicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus* which divides it from *Syria*, and the rest of *Phœnicia*; and on the South, with some part of *Arabia Petræa*.

It was first called *Palestine* from the *Philistims*, the most potent Nation of those parts. A name first found in the History of *Herodotus*, but generally used in times succeeding by the *Greeks* & *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adæquate name of the whole Countrey, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more restrained, and properly belonging to so much hereof as was in the possession of the Tribes of *Israel*. And of this sort are 1. *Canaan*, or the Land of *Canaan*, so called from *Canaan* the Sonne of *Cham*, by whom first peopled after the flood. 2. The *Land of Promise*, because by God promised to *Abraham* and his seed for an habitation. 3. *Israel*, from the *Israelites* or Sonnes of *Jacob*, whose surname was *Israel*. 4. *Judæa*, and by us *Jewry*, from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most prevalent of the Tribes of *Israel*. And 5. *Terra Sancta* or the *Holy Land*, because the subject of the greatest part of the Holy Scripture: and that the work of our Redemption was herein accomplished by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithstanding we must know, that though these names do many times by a *Synechdoche*, express the whole Countrey of *Palestine*: yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Israelites* were ever Masters of the whole: except onely in the times of *David*, and of some of the *Maccabean* Princes, as also in some part of the reign of *Herod* the Great; all which had the good fortune to command it totally.

But being the most considerable People of it were the Tribes of *Israel*; we will first look upon the Countrey People under that capacity. And for so much hereof as was held by them, it is situate between the third and fourth Climats: the longest day being fourteen hours and a quarter: the whole length but 200 miles, and not above 80 in the breadth, yet was of such a fruitful soil, that before the comming in of the *Israelites*, it had 30 Kings: and after the comming in of that people so extreamly populous, that *David* numbred on Million and 300000 fighting men, besides those of the Tribes of *Levi* and *Benjamin*. But of the fruitfulness hereof more shortly.

As for the People they were by composition of a midle stature, but strong of bodie: in their best times a murmuring and stiff-necked genneration, never well pleased either with God or man, with their Priests or Princes; seldome conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much constant to themselves. So crippled in their goings betwixt superstitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly. Idolatrous above measure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon*: and after that as superstitious and severe in the point of their Sabbath, as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worship of Idols. No *Medium* on either side, but extream in both. Divided antiently into these four ranks, that is to say, 1. *Jews*, 2. *Hellenists*, 3. *Proselytes*, and 4. *Samaritans*; all of them pretending a right unto this Countrey, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of these the first called *Jews*, from *Judah*, the predominant Tribe; and *Hebrews*, from *Heber* the Sonne of *Sela*, grand-sonne of *Sem*, and one of the Ancestors of *Abraham*: were such as naturally descended of the Tribes of *Israel*, and lived for the most part in their own Countrey, adhering to the Law of *Moses*; and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Testament, from the book of *Genesis* to the book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called also *Israelites*, because descended from the loins of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave the name of *Israel*, for his greater honour: but after the ten Tribes were carryed away by *Salmanassar* to an endlesse captivity; and the two tribes (with the remainder of the rest) returned from that temporary one, which they found in *Babylon*: the name of *Israelites* was laid by; and that of *Jews* assumed, as more proper to them. These read the Scriptures, and executed all *Divine Offices* in their natural *Hebrew*.

2. The *Hellenists*, were such as were *Jews* by parentage, but lived dispersed in most Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: called by that name (we may *English* it the *Græcizing Jews*) because they read the Scriptures in the *Greek* or *Septuagints* translation; and performed all publique offices in that language also. In other things as *superstitious* in their Sabbaths, as tenacious of their *Circumcision*, and others of the rites and ceremonies of the law of *Moses*, as the *Jews* of *Palestine*; and for that reason scorned and derided by the *Gentiles* amongst whom they lived; *Credat Iudæus apella*, saith one of their Poets; relating to their circumcising; *Recutiæ Sabbata palles*, saith another of them, with scorn enough unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illic ritus & cæteris mortalibus contrarii*, saith *Tacitus* a graver Author, of the whole body of their *Rituals* or Acts of worship.

3. The

3. The *Proselytes* were such, as not being *Iews* by birth, or discent of parentage, conformed themselves unto their customes, and desired to be admitted into their Religion. And these were also of two sorts, the one called *Proselyti Portæ*; and the other *Proselyti fœderis*. The first of these, admitted by the *Iews* to the worship of God, and instructed in the hopes of the life to come, were onely tied to those precepts which the *Hebrew* Doctors call the *Precepts of the sonnes of Noah*; but were neither circumcised, nor otherwise conform to the Law of *Moses*. Which Precepts of the Sonnes of *Noah*, so called because supposed to be given by *Noah* unto his Sonnes, when he came out of the *Ark*, were seven in number; that is to say, 1. That they dealt uprightly with every man. 2. That they blessed and magnified the name of God. 3. That they worshipped not any false Gods, but to abstain from Idolatry. 4. To refrain from all unlawful lusts and copulations. 5. To keep themselves from theft and robbery. 6. From shedding bloud. And 7. not to eat the flesh or member of any beast taken from it when it was alive, by which all cruelty was forbidden. These though they were admitted to the worship of God, and might repair unto the Temple, yet because of their Uncircumcision they were not suffered to converse with the *Iews*, nor to come into the same Court of the Temple with them: but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart assigned them in the worship of God, which was called *Atriam Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the outermost of all. The other *Proselytes* which were called *Proselyti fœderis*, conformed in all things to the *Iews*; as in Circumcision, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies: and were accounted of as adopted *Iews*, privileged as they were to worship in the *Inner Court*; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile*; and in a word, partakers with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their race or parentage. These last in the New Testament called simply *Proselytes*, without any addition: the former by the name of Σεβόμενοι, or the *worshipping Gentiles*, of which see *Acts* 16. *v.* 14. & *chap.* 17. *v.* 4. 17. & *chap.* 18. *v.* 4. &c.

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they possessed a great part of this Countrey which the *Proselytes* did not, yet were not so much *Iews* as they. But of these more anon when we come to *Samaria*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jews* themselves they are divided also into severall *Sects*, as *viz.* 1. *Essæni*, 2. the *Sadduces*, 3. the *Scribes*, 4. the *Pharisees*, 5. the *Herodians*, and 6. the Gaulonites or *Gallileans*. The *Essenes* or *Essæni* derive their name as some conceive from *Asca*, which signifieth *facere*, to doe, because they laboured with their hands; as others say from *Asa*, which signifieth θεραπεύειν, or to *cure diseases*, because they were much given to the study and practice of *Phisick*. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The first time they were heard of was in the time of *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, about 150 years before *Christ's* nativity, then mentioned by *Josephus*, *Antiqu. Judaic. l.* 13. *cap.* 9. A *Pithagorean* kind of *Jew*, and not much differing in opinion from those old *Philosophers*, professing as they did. 1. Community of goods. 2. Abstaining even from lawfull pleasures. 3. Forbiding of Oaths. 4 Forbearing Wine, and drinking Water. 5. Ascribing the conduct of affairs to *fate* or destine. 6. Using onely inanimate or un bloody Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but these the principall: *forbiding mariage* not being common to the *Sect*, but onely to some few amongst them. And though we find no mention of them in the New *Testament*, the *Sect* in those times being small and inconsiderable; yet it is thought that Saint *Paul* alludeth to their *Tenets*: as where he adviseth *Timothy* to make use of *Wine*, and glanceth upon those who prohibited *mariage*, 1 *Tim.* 4. 3. or condemned others in the use of *meat and drink*, 2. *Coloss.* 16. As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Manasteries* or *Colledges*, and in every one had their συμνῶον, or *Oratory*: admitting none into their fellowship or society, unless he brought all he had into their common Treasury; and not then neither under a three years *Probationership*. More of them he that listeth to see, may satisfie himself in that tract of *Philo*, intituled *De vita contemplativa*, where he most copiously describeth their *Institutes* and course of life: mistakingly applied by *Eusebius* to the *Primitive Christians*, as if that Tract had purposely been composed of them by that learned *Jew*.

2. The *Sadduces* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, and is thought to be the first founder of them; or from *Sadok* an *Hebrew* word, signifying *Justice*; the men pretending to be so exact and strict *Justiciaries*, as if they would justifie themselves before Gods Tribunall. The occasion of the Sect or heresie (for both it was) said to arise from a mistake of *Antigonus* a right learned man, who teaching that we ought not to serve God, as Servants doe their Masters, for the hope of reward; occasioned *Sadoc* and *Baitus*, two of his *Auditors*, to conceive that there was no reward nor recompence for a godly life, and consequently no *Resurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. These were the most capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Act.* 23. 6. 8. *Mat.* 22. 3. *Luke* 20. 20. 27. &c. But other *Dogmata* they had not mentioned in the holy Scripture, ascribing nothing unto Fate, or Predestination, but all things altogether to a mans free-will. 2. Teaching the soul to be annihilated at the hour of death. 3. Rejecting all Traditions; and 4. Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moses*. In most of their opinions contrary to the Scribes and Pharisees, but joining with them both in opposing Christ, and though like *Sampsons* foxes they looked divers wayes and were tied together by their tails onely; yet in those tails they carried fire-brands to destroy Gods harvest; and had done it if they had been able.

3. But indeed the Pharisees were the men who were the Master-wits in the Arts of mischief. *Homines robustioris impietatis* in the Fathers words. Fellowes of such a perfect and concocted malice, that they were almost able to possess the devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to separate. *Separists* we may rightly call them. For they were first ἀφορισμένοι εἰς τὸν νόμον, separated to the study of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpose at the feet of *Gamaliel*: and 2ly ἀφορισμένοι

εἰς ἑ ἁγιωσύνῃ, ſeparated from the reſt of mankind, by a more ſtrict profeſſion of ſanctity; as the *Phariſee* boaſted of himſelf that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might ſo ſeem unto ſimple men, they did thirdly ſeparate themſelves from the ſociety and converſation of others not ſo pure as themſelves, whom they called *populum terræ*, or the Sonnes of the earth: upbraiding Chriſt that he kept company with *Publicans* and *Sinners*: and more then ſo, uſed a particular kind of habit, and had a garbe unto themſelves which no others had; uſing it for a by-word amongſt themſelves, that *Veſtes populi terræ ſunt conculcatio Phariſæorum*. To which end, as their Countenances were more clouded and ſevere than others; ſo did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broder ſize than others did; which by the way, were *ſcrols* of *Parchment* bound about their heads and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandments of God: fooliſhly ſo interpreting thoſe words of *Deut. And they ſhall be as frontlets between thine eyes, &c. chap. 6. ver.* 8. They began at the ſame time with the *Sadduces*; which was about 300 years before Chriſts nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, beſides thoſe ſpecified above, which were alſo *practicable*, they mentioned 1. a *Pythagorean Metempſuchoſis*, affirming that the ſoul of a righteous man paſſed from one man into another, at the time of his death: from whence the divers opinions touching Chriſt our Saviour, *Mat.* 16.v.14. are ſuppoſed to ſpring, as if his body had been animated with the ſoul of *Elias*, *John* the *Baptiſt*, *Jeremy*, or ſome other Prophet. 2. They adhered ſo tenaciouſly to unwritten traditions, that in compariſon of them, they neglected the written Law as either inſufficient or impertinent. And 3. aſcribed ſo much ſanctity unto frequent waſhings, eſpecially when they came from Market, *Mark* 7. v.4. where poſſibly they might meet with ſome unclean perſon; and before their ſitting down to meat, *Mat.* 15. 2. that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and waſh, the *Phariſee* would rather chooſe to waſh than drink, though he died for thirſt. More of them he that liſt to ſee, may find it copiouſly ſet down in the four and twentyeth chapter of Saint *Matthew*; and thither I referre the Reader. By means of which pretenſions to ſo great a *ſanctity*, and ſome other arts they had to abuſe the people, they grew ſo ſtrong, and had ſuch ſtore of followers, and dependants on them, that they became formidable in ſhort time to their Kings and Princes. Inſomuch that *Alexandra* durſt not enter on the government in her Childrens nonage as *Joſephus* telleth us *Antiqu. lib.* 13. *cap* 23. untill ſhe had permitted all things unto their diſpoſing, καὶ μηδὲν ἄνευ τῆς ἐκείνων γνώμης, *&c.* and promiſed to doe nothing without their advice. And this ſhe did by the direction of King *Alexander* her dying Husband, whoſe Government as he found by too ſad experience, had in many things proved unſucceſsfull, διὰ τοῦτο ὑβριζόμενος παρ' αὐτοῦ, becauſe he had put ſome ſcornes upon them, and otherwiſe offended that prevailing faction. A faction ſo predominant amongſt the People. ſaith the ſame *Joſephus*, *Antiqu. lib.* 19. *cap.* 18. ὡς καὶ κατὰ βασιλέως πλάττοντες, καὶ καθ' Ἀρχιερέως, *&c.* that whatſoever they pleaſed to ſpread abroad either of the *High Prieſt*. or the King himſelf, how falſe and ſcandalous ſoever; it was received for truth without more diſpute, or any enquire made into it.

4. But of the *Phariſees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on as either the Authors or Promoters of any Sect of Religion in the *Jewiſh* Church; but as the names of two oppoſite factions in the Civil State. The firſt were ſuch who depending upon *Herods* fortune, as he did on the pleaſure of the *Roman* Emperours; ſollicited the paying of tribute to the *Romans*; and earneſtly preſſed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more indeered to his Maſters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground, nick-named *Herodians* by the people, as men that more endeavoured the greatneſs and eſtate of *Herod*, than the proſperity and liberty of their native Countrey. And poſſible enough it is, that ſome amongſt them ſeeing the magnificence of *Herods* palace, and experimentally knowing his proweſs; might fancy him to be the *Meſſiah*, ſo long looked for and thereby own this name with a better title than the others did. Oppoſite unto theſe were thoſe called the *Gaulonites* (we may call the one the *Court-faction*, the other the *faction* of the *Countrey* or Common-people): ſo named from one *Judas*, a *Gaulonite* as *Joſephus* calleth him from the place of his birth; a *Galilæan*, as *Gamaliel* calleth him, *Acts* 5.37. from the place of his abode or habitation. By him the *Jews* were practiſed with to deny this tribute, telling them that it was a manifeſt token of their ſervitude. and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven: drawing them finally on this ground into open armes, in which action he and his adherents periſhed, and were brought to nothing. Moſt of his followers were of *Galilee*, though he had ſome diſciples in *Hieruſalem* and *Samaria* alſo: and of theſe *Galilæans* were thoſe poor men, whoſe bloud *Pilate* is ſaid *to mingle with their Sacrifices*, *Luke* 13. 1.

The language of this people by them called the *Hebrew*, was naturally and originally the ſame which *Abraham* found in the land of *Canaan*, at his comming thither: as hath been ſhewn before when we were in *Phœnicia*. Uſed by them conſtantly till their ſubjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive to that Countrey, and conforming themſelves to the ſpeech and dialect of it: they came at laſt to ſpeak a kind of broken language, neither true *Chaldæan*, nor good *Hebrew*, but one made of both. *Chaldee*, as to the main body of it, but *Hebrew*, as to the Affixes, points, and Conjugations; being the ſame with that which we now call the *Syriack*. And at their comming home, after ſeventy years, had ſo far loſt the knowledge of their Mother-tongue: that they were not able to underſtand the words of the Holy Scripture, when *Ezra* read it in their hearing; inſomuch that he was forced to employ ſome learned in that tongue, to expound it to them. To this the *Scribes* ſo often mentioned in the New Teſtament, muſt refer their originall: there being no ſuch Office heard of till the time of *Ezra*, though long before that time the Law had ordinarily been read unto them in the feaſt of Tabernacles. For this cauſe they were called *Scribes of the Law*, *Ezra* 7. 6. *Doctors*

ctors of the Law, *Luke* 5. 17. and ſimply by the name of Lawyers, *Luke* 7. 30. as men whoſe office was to expound the Law, and make it intelligible to the people. Theſe people we may reſemble to the Canoniſts in the Church of *Rome*, or the Divinity Reader in ſome School or College: and grew to ſo great eſtimation in the *Jewiſh* State, that it was hard to ſay at laſt whether the *Phariſees* or they were the better men. For what the *Phariſees* gained on the common people by pretence of ſanctity, theſe got more juſtifiably by their zeal to the written word, which they endeavoured to preſerve from the common dangers both of corruption and contempt. And though I look on thoſe men eſpecially, as the name of a function, not a Sect: yet being they held ſo cloſe to the Phariſees, and concurred with them in moſt of their ſuperſtitions, as appeareth *Mat.* 23. I conſider them as a ſtrong and potent faction, of great authority and influence in affaires of moment.

For matters of *Religion*, the people of this land were privileged above all others, had they had the grace to make good uſe of it: the Law being given to them by God the Father, the Goſpel preached amongſt them by God the Sonne, and that Goſpel countenanced and confirmed before their eyes, by the miraculous operations of the Holy Ghoſt. The Government of that Church in the time of the Law by a ſubordination of Prieſts and Levites to their ſeveral heads; the Prieſts divided by King *David* into 24. ranks or *Claſſes*, each *Claſſis* ſerving in their tumes at the holy Temple: the chiefs or Heads of which ſeveral *Claſſes* made but that body of men which are called *Principes Sacerdotum*, or chief Prieſts, ſo often mentioned in the writings of the holy Evangeliſts. Over all which there was one ſupreme, whom they called *Summum Sacerdotem*, or the High-Prieſt, deſcended lineally from *Aaron*, till the *Romans* out of averice and reaſon of State made the office ſaleable. And becauſe poſſibly the High-Prieſt might be under ſome *pollution*, and ſo uncapable by law to perform his Office, he had his *Suffragan* (or *Sagan*) to diſcharge it for him. Of which ſort was *Zephaniah*, the *Sagan* or ſecond Prieſt to *Semiah*, mentioned *Ierem.* 52. 24. And of this ſort is *Annas* thought by ſome to have been to *Caiaphas*; and for that cauſe the title of High-Prieſt to be given to both, *Luke* 3. 2. though others think that *Annas* was High-Prieſt in right, and the other in fact: the one being depoſed by the *Romans*, and the other *ſuper-induced* into the place. In time of *Chriſtianity* they were governed as in other Churches, by a ſubordination of Prieſts to Biſhops, the firſt ſaid to be Saint *Iames*, the Sonne of *Alphæus*, commonly called the *Lords Brother*: affirmed by *Ignatius*, Scholar to the Apoſtles, in his Epiſtle *ad Trallianos*; by *Egeſippus* who lived in the Apoſtles times, as Saint *Hierome* and *Euſebius* cite him; as alſo by *Clemens* of *Alexandria* cited by *Euſebius*, hiſt. l. 7. c. 14. by *Cyrill* of *Hieruſalem*, *Catechiſm.* 4. and 14. *Epiphanius*, *Hæreſ.* 78. n. 7. Saint *Ambroſe* in *Gal.* 1. Saint *Chryſoſt.* on the laſt of Saint *Iohns* Goſpel; Saint *Hierome* in his Catalogue of *Eccleſiaſtical* writers; Saint *Auguſtine cont. Creſcon.* l. 2. cap. 37. to whom there may be added the joint conſent of 289. Prelates, aſſembled in the ſixth General Council holden at *Conſtantinople*, affirming *Iames* the *Lords Brother* to be the firſt Biſhop of *Hieruſalem*: all of them, with the Fathers before mentioned, taking the word Biſhop in that ſenſe in which it generally paſſed for the times they lived in. His Succeſſors ſubject at the firſt to the Biſhop of *Caſarea*, as their *Metropolitan*; though privileged in their own Dioceſe with the rights of *Patriarchs*, as appears evidently by the Acts of the *Nicene* Council. But afterwards for the greater honour of the Holy City, wherein our Saviour wrought the work of our Redemption, it was ordained at *Chalcedon*, that the Biſhop of *Hieru alem* ſhould have as well the juriſdiction as the name of a *Patriarch*; the three *Paleſtines*, (for *Conſtantine* had before divided it into ſo many Provinces) being ſubducted from the power of the See of *Antioch*, to make up this *Patriarchate*. So ſtood it in the elder times, but now by the incroachment of *Mahometaniſm* the Chriſtian faith is ſo obſcured, and the beauties of it ſo Eclipſed: that were it not for ſome Sects of Chriſtians dwelling in Mount *Sinai*, and about *Hieruſalem*, it might be ſaid without any manifeſt untruth to be quite extinguiſhed.

But to look back upon the Countrey, it cannot be deſcribed more fully and ſignificantly than *Moſes* hath done it to our hands in the 8. of *Deut.* Where it is ſaid to be *a land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountains and depths that ſpring out of the Vallies and Hills; a Land of Wheat and Barly, and Vines, and Fig-trees, and Pomgranates; of Oyl-olive, and Honey; a Land wherein was bread without ſcarceneſs; a Land whoſe ſtones were as Iron, and out of whoſe Hills one might dig braſs.* An ample commendation, and yet in ſome ſort ſhort of the fertility of this flouriſhing Countrey, which did not onely conſiſt in the choice and plenty, but the perpetuity of its fruits: it being on record in the Epiſtles of the Emperour *Julian*, (ſurnamed the *Apoſtate*) that the Fig-trees, and other fruit-trees herein, were ſeldome or never without fruits: the old not fully falling off, till the new come on, which his report if true, (as certainly he did not love our Saviour ſo well as to flatter the Countrey for his ſake) we have then an anſwer to the difficulty which hath ſo much perplexed all Commentators of former times, and that is, why our Saviour ſhould curſe the Fig-tree for not bearing fruit; when the Text ſaith, that *the time of fruits was not yet come*, *Mar.* 14. 13. For though the time for new fruits was not come as yet (it being then but early Spring) yet our Saviour being hungry might expect to find ſome of the old, and failing of his expectation lay that curſe upon it. Nor is this ſolution of the doubt diſcountenanced, (rather much confirmed) by the Character and condition of the Countrey as it ſtands at preſent, naturally adorned with beautiful mountains and luxurious vallies, the rocks affording excellent waters, and the Air never pinched with colds, nor ſcorched with heats: though either by the negligence of the Inhabitants, or ſome curſe laid upon the land, far ſhort of that fertility with which once it flouriſhed. Yet ſtill *Figs*, *Olives*, *Pomgranates*, *Palm-trees*, are here very frequently to be ſeen; ſome ſtore of *Wine*, with *Oranges*, and the *Apple* of *Paradice*, which they preſerve upon the trees all the year long, (which agrees very well with that of *Julian* ſpoken of before) well furniſhed with *Honey* and *Sugar-canes*; as alſo with Goats, Swine, Hares, Quailes, and Partriges: but peſtred ſo in many places with rats and mice, that if it were not for certain

Birds which feed upon them, it were not possible for the people to have any Harvest. *Balm* they had antiently, not now. Nor any Nuts, Peares, Plums, or Cherries, but what are brought hither from *Damascus*.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey, are, 1. *Chison*, the *Chorsaus* of *Ptolomy*, which riseth out of Mount *Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not farre from Mount *Carmel* in *Phœnicia*. 2. *Cedron*, a *Torrent* rather than a River, passing betwixt *Hierusalem* and the Mount of *Olives*; but more remarkable for many notable actions, than many others of a greater both name and course. For over this Brook did *David* pass when he fled from *Absolom*; and over this our Saviour the Sonne of *David* passed, when he went to his passion. On the banks hereof did *Asa* the King of *Judah* burn his mothers *Idols*, 1 *Kings* 15. as *Josiah* did the vessels which were made for *Baal*, 2 *Kings* 23. 3. *Zared*, and 4. *Napthea*, which arising out of the hils of the tribe of *Judah*, have their fall into the Mediterranean. 5. *Arnon*, which hath its spring in the hills so called, and endeth its course in the *Mare Mortuum*. 6. *Jabor*, oft mentioned in the Scriptures, which issuing out of the Mountains of *Galaad*, and 7. *Hermon* which springing from the hills so named, lose themselves in *Iordan*. 8. *Iordan*, so called from *Ior* and *Dan*, two neighbouring fountains, out of which he seemes to take his source: though they do also fetch their spring from *Phiala*, a round deep well at the foot of *Anti-Libanus*, about twenti-four miles from these fountains, into which he maketh his way like a *Mole*, under ground. A River of more fame than length, breadth or depth, running from North to South, almost in a strait line to the *Dead Sea* only, where he endeth his course; not navigably deep, nor above ten yards in breadth, where broadest; shadowed on both sides with *Poplars*, *Tamarisk-trees*, and reeds of many several sorts, of some of which the *Arabians* make darts and *Iavelines*, of others *Arrows*, and some again they fashion into pens to write with. Passing along it maketh two *Lakes*, the one in the *Upper Galilee*, by the antients called *Samachonitis*; dry for the most part in the Summer, and then covered with shrubs and sedge; not mentioned in the Holy Scriptures: the other in the *Lower Galilee*, about a hundred furlongs in length, and about fourty in breadth, called the *Sea of Galilee* from the Countrey, the *Lake of Tiberias* from a City of that name on the banks thereof, and for the like cause called also the *Lake of Genezareth*. And it is to be observed, that the River passeth thorow this Lake with so swift a course, that it preserves it self distinct from the waters of it both in tast and colour, as is affirmed of *Nilus* for a long space in the *Mediterranean*, and other great Rivers in their falls. Finally, having run thorow the plains of *Hiericho*, it finisheth its course at last in the *Mare Mortuum*, or *Dead Sea*. Honoured with the name of a *Sea*, because salt, and large: seventy miles long, and sixteen broad, furnishing with salt the whole land of *Iewrie*: but called the *Dead Sea*, either because it hath no visible influx into the *Ocean*, nor is at all increased with the waters of this River and many other *Torrents* which fall into it; or because no living creature is nourished it it, suffocated with the *bituminous* savour which it sendeth forth, from the abundance of which matter it is also called *Lacus Alphaltites*. Nigh hereunto stood the once-famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*, with three others more, whence the valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, destroyed for their abominations by a fire from heaven: now fruitful in shew onely, but not in substance; the fruits here growing, being very fair unto the eye, *sed levi tactu pressa in vagum fatiscunt pulverem*, but if touched, moulder into ashes, as *Solinus* hath it.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it besides *Anti-Libanus* and Mount *Hermon* spoken of already, which be onely borderers, are, 1. Mount *Sion*, memorable for the *Tower of David*, which was built upon it, called frequently the *Holy Hill of Sion*. 2. Mount *Moriah*, famous for the intended sacrifice of *Isaac*, and the Temple of *Solomon*. 3. Mount *Calvarie*, on which CHRIST suffered, supposed to be the burial place of our Father *Adam*. 4. Mount *Tabor*, on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5. Mount *Olivet*, from which he ascended into Heaven. 6. Mount *Garizim*, whereon stood the *Samaritans* Temple, their ordinary place of worship, mentioned *Iohn* 4. 20. 8. The Mountains of *Saron*, stretching with intermixed vallies from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean*, not far from *Tyre*; there ending in a white cliff, and for that cause called *Capo Bianco* by the Sayler. The whole Mountain pleasantly enriched with the fragant smells of Rosemary, Sweet Marjoram, Hyssop, Baies, and other odoriferous plants which do grow their naturally: but for all that destitute of any other Inhabitants than Leopards, Boars, Jaccalls, and such savage Creatures. 9. the Mountains of *Gilboa*, the highest on the West of *Iordan*; as 10. those of *Basan*, celebrated for their height in the book of *Psalmes*; and 11. those of *Abarim*, on the East side of it: from one of the Summits of which last called *Nebo*, by some writers *Pisgah*, the Lord gave *Moses* a Survey of the *Land of Promise*.

As for this whole Countrey comprehended in the name of *Palestine*, it hath had divers divisions, according to the quality of the People, or the will of those who have been formerly Masters of it. Divided first betwixt the *Philistims*, *Perezites*, *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the sonnes of *Canaan*, on this side *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the sonnes of *Jacob*, it was divided into the twelve Tribes, of 1. *Judah*, 2. *Benjamin*, 3. *Simeon*, 4. *Dan*, 5. *Aser*, 6. *Nephthali*, 7. *Zabulon*, 8. *Issachar*, 9. *Gad*, 10. *Reuben*, 11. *Ephraim*, and 12. *Manasseth*. When that great breach was made by *Ieroboam* in the Kindome of *David*, it was broken into the two Kingdomes of *Judah* and *Israel*; of which the first contained onely the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other ten. When the *Israelites* were led captive into *Assyria*, and a new set of People planted in their rooms, those new-comers, from *Samaria* their capitall City, had the name of *Samaritans*: And when the men of *Judah* were released of their long captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themselves the name of *Iewes*: after which time the whole Countrey of *Palestine* antiently possessed or subdued by the seed of *Abraham*, was divided into 1. *Perœa*, 2. *Iturœa*, 3. *Galilee*, 4. *Samaria*, 5. *Judœa*, and 6. *Idumœa*. When conquered

quered by the *Romans*, all theſe were joined into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria*, or at leaſt ſubordinate. But *Conſtantine* not liking of the one or the other, went a way by himſelf, and caſt it into three Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Paleſtina Prima*, 2. *Paleſtina Secunda*, and 3. *Paleſtina Salutaris*; the *Metropolis* of the firſt being *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*; of the ſecond, *Samaria*; of the third, *Hieruſalem*. But this diviſion of *Conſtantines* growing out of uſe, we will adhere unto the former, beginning firſt with thoſe parts hereof which lay on the other ſide of *Iordan*, becauſe firſt conquered and poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Iſrael*; who at that gate found entrance into the reſt; and coming round to *Idumæa*; which laſt of all theſe Provinces was added to the State of *Iewry*. In the *Chorographis* whereof, I muſt confeſs my ſelf a Debtor to Sir *Walter Raleigh*, whoſe induſtry herein hath ſaved me a great deal of ſearch, though ſometimes I make bold to differ from him, & add to him as I ſee occaſion.

PERÆA.

PERÆA, is that part of *Paleſtine* which lieth betwixt the River *Iordan* and the mountains of *Arnon*, which divide *Paleſtine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*, Eaſt and Weſt; and reacheth from *Pella* in the North, to *Petra* the chief Town of *Arabia Petræa* in the South. By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Egypt*, who deſcribes it thus. *Peræa* Judeæ *pars eſt ulterior*; Arabiæ & Egypto *proxima*, *aſperis diſperſa montibus & à cæteris* Indæis Jordane *amne diſcreta*. *Peræa* (ſaith he) is the furtheſt part of *Iudæa*, neighbouring *Arabia* and *Egypt*, interſperſed with rough and craggy mountains, and parted from the reſt of the *Iews* by the River *Iordan*. So called from the *Greek* word περὰ, in regard of the ſituation of it on the other ſide of that River, and not improperly might be rendred by *Tranſ-Iordana*. Bleſſed with a rich ſoil, and large fields beſet with divers trees, eſpecially of Olive, Vines, and Palms. The habitation in times paſt of the *Midianites*, *Amorites*, and *Ammonites*; as alſo of the two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*. Of all which I ſhall ſpeak in order, beginning with the *Midianites*, and the Children of *Lot*, as the firſt occupants hereof; upon the knowlege of whoſe affairs, the ſtate and ſtory of the *Iſraelites* hath ſo much dependance.

And firſt the *MADIANITES* inhabited on the South-Eaſt of the *Dead* Sea, at the very entrance of the Countrey; deſcended from one or more of the five Sonnes of *Madian*, the Sonne of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen.* 25. v. 4. Who leaving the reſt of their brethren to ſeek themſelves new habitations more towards the banks of the Red Sea, and the deſarts of *Arabia Petræa*, continued neer unto the place of *Abrahams* dwelling; and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in blood and Mariages, came in ſhort time to loſe all the knowlege of the true God; and to worſhip Idols as the reſt of their neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1. *Recon*, built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites*, which was ſlain by *Ioſuah*: afterwards called *Selah*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. accounted at that time a City of the *Edomites*: next of the *Iſmaelites* or *Arabians*, and by them called *Hagar*. Beſt known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Petra*, and by that name we ſhall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia*. 2. *Midian*, on the banks of the *Dead* Sea, the ordinary reſidence of their Princes, abſolute of themſelves at firſt, as in other places; but at the time when *Moſes* and *Ioſuah* led the people into their poſſeſſions, ſubjected unto *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*; whoſe Dukes their five Kings or Princes are ſaid to be, *Ioſuah* 13. 21. A people whom the *Iſraelites* had neither commiſſion or intent to make warre upon, if they had not cauſeleſly provoked them at the requeſt of the *Moabites*, by ſending amongſt them (as *Balaam* the falſe prophet had adviſed) the moſt beautiful of all their women, not only to entice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worſhip of their Idols alſo. A miſchievous and ſucceſsfull plot, but alike dangerous to both parties: God ſending a fierce plague amongſt the *Iſraelites*, which coſt them the lives of 24000 perſons, beſides ſuch as periſhed by the ſword; and giving a command to *Moſes* to avenge him of the *Midianites* who had ſo provoked him. On which commiſſion *Moſes* culled out 12000 men, and ſent them under *Phineas* againſt the *Midianites*; by whom all their Princes were ſlain, their Cities and goodly Caſtles burnt with fire, their men, women, and male-children put unto the ſword; as is related in the one and thirtieth Chapter of the Book of *Numbers* Yet notwithſtanding this great ſlaughter they recovered their former power, if not a greater; and after the death of *Barac* the Judge of *Iſrael*, did for the ſpace of four years ſo afflict that people, that they were fain to hide themſelves in the *Caves and ſtrong holds of the Mountains*, as is ſaid *Iudg.* 6. 2. their enemies having left them neither ſheep, oxe, nor aſſe, or any ſuſtenance at all, *v.* 4. But *Gideon* being raiſed up by God for their deliverance, encountred with their four Kings and put them to flight: of which four, *Oreb* and *Zeb* were taken and ſlain by the *Ephraimites* at the paſſage of *Iordan*; *Zebah* and *Salmanah*, taken by *Gideon* himſelf, and executed by his own hand, as the ſtory telleth us. In this war there are ſaid to have periſhed of this people and their Confederates, no fewer than 120000 perſons: by which ſo weakned that we hear no more of them from this time forwards, in any action of importance: their name and Countrey being firſt incorporated into that of the *Edomites*; and after into that of the *Iſmaelites* and other the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petræa*.

2. The *MOABITES*, poſſeſſed all the Countrey from the *Midianites* in the South as far as to *Eſebon* in the North, on both ſides of the River *Arnon*: having *Iordan* on the Weſt, and the hills of *Abarin* on the Eaſt. Poſſeſſed at the firſt by the *Emmims*, a race of *Giants*, whoſe chief City was *Sheneth Kiriathaim*. But theſe being vanquiſhed and broken by *Cherdorlaomer* and his Aſſociates, of which ſee *Gen.* 14. 5. their forlorn ſeats were taken up by the *Moabites*, deſcended from *Moab* one of the Sonnes of *Lot*, who lived here in great proſperity till the time of *Vaheb*. Grand-father unto *Balac* the

Sonne of *Zippor*, from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab* on the North of the River *Arnon*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the North bound or border of it. In which estate it stood in the time of *Moses*.

Chief Cities of it at that time were 1. *Rabbat*, the Regall seat of *Baalac* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhalmathum* of *Ptolomy*. 2. *Diblatham*, destroyed with the rest of *Moab* by *Nabuchadnezzer*, as is said *Ier.* 48. 22. 3. *Gallim*, the principality of *Phalti* the Sonne of *Laish*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michael*, formerly maried unto *David*, 1. *Sam.* 25. 44. 4. *Muthana*, and 5. *Nathaliel*, thorow which the *Israelites* passed, after they had left the well called *Beer*. 6. *Bamath*, where *Moses* was encamped when he sent to *Sehon* to demand a passage thorow his Countrey, *Numbers* 21. 19. &c. 7. *Mizpah*, the City of Refuge to the Father and Mother of *David*, in the time of his troubles under *Saul*. 8. *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, not medled with by *Moses* in his march this way, the Lord himself forbidding him to touch upon it, or distress it; because it had been given by him for an inheritance to the Children of *Lot*, *Deut.* 2. 9. Which prohibition was not onely for this place particularly (though this particularly their mentioned) but for all the lands and terretories then in their possession. 9. *Kir-hasareth*, of chief note for the barbarous and inhumane fact of *Mesha* the *Moabitish* King, who being besieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom*, without hope of escape, sacrificed his own eldest Sonne on the wall hereof, which so moved the Kings of *Judah*, and *Edom*, that they forsook the King of *Israel* whose the quarrel was. So the siege was raised, 2 *Kings* 3. 27.

Now as *Moses* did not at the present disobey Gods Order in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; so neither did the *Moabites* on their parts provoke him to it; giving him a free and open passage in his march for *Canaan*: out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were subdued, they should be put into possession of their lost estates. And though they were deceived of that expectation, the *Israelites* looking on the Countrey which they had conquered, as the spoiles of the *Amorites*; and given it for a possession to the Tribe of *Reuben*: yet durst they not do any thing in the way of Annes, but sent for *Baalam* the false Prophet, to cast them by his curses and incantations into some diseases, whereby their strength and courage might be taken from them. *Balaac* the Sonne of *Zippor* was at this time King. After whom we find not the name of any other till we come to *Eglon*, who with the help of *Ammon*, and *Amalek*, over-mastered *Israel*, and for the space of eighteen years tyrannized amongst them: when slain in his own house, and afterwards 10000 of his people by the hand of *Ehud*. But this indignity was in the times succeeding revenged by *Saul* in some part, who made warre upon them; but more by *David* who subdued them, and made them Tributaries. And not so onely but subjected them to the vilest offices, as is intimated in that form of Speech, *Moab is my wash-pot*, *Psal.* 60. 8. Taking their opportunity they withdrew themselves from the house of *David*, and put themselves under the command of the Kings of *Israel*, to whom they paid for tribute in the time of *Ahab*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their fleeces on: but quickly weary of those payments, and revolting from the house of *Ahab* also, they were invaded by *Jehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumæa*; by whom being vanquished, *Mesha* their King was fain to shut himself up in *Kir-hasareth*, as was said before. After this joining with the *Ammonites*, and the *Idumæans*, or Sonnes of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehosophat* King of *Judah*, to whom God gave a memorable and signall victory, without blow or battel: the *Ammonites* first setting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another, till they were almost all destroyed, 2 *Chron.* 20. 23. From this time we hear nothing of them; but that probably they recovered some parts of their former dwellings, when the two Tribes and a half, on the East of *Iordan* were carryed away captive by *Tiglath Pileser*. Possessed hereof and of other their habitations, till the reign of *Zedekias* King of *Iudah*; when vanquished, with the rest of these Nations by the *Babylonians* and *Assyrians* under *Nabuchadnezzar*. Nor find we any mention of them in the ages following; the name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of use: the South parts of their Countrey laid to *Arabia Petræa*, as the East parts were to that also of *Arabia Deserta*; and all the rest, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Iews*, swallowed up in the general name of *Palestinians*.

3. The *AMMONITES*, inhabited on the North-East of the River *Arnon*, and possessed all that tract from *Aroer* on the head of that River to the City of *Rabbah*; and on both sides of the River *Iaboc*, as well within the mountains of *Galaad* as without the same. The seat in elder times of the *Raphaims*, and *Zamzummins*, a Giantlike race of men, as the *Emmins* were; but vanquished also, as the others, by *Cherdorlaomor*; *Ashtaroth*, and *Heth*, being then the principal of their habitations. Succeeded to, in their desolate and forsaken dwellings by the children of *Ammon*, the other Sonne of *Lot*, and the brother of *Moab*: both houses running the same fortune, these *Ammonites* being conquered and deprived of the best part of their Countrey on the South-side of *Iaboc*, by *Og* King of *Basan*; as the *Moabites*, at the same time of theirs by *Sehon*. A monument of which subjection was the bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabbah*, the chief City of *Ammon*; there to be seen when *Moses* had subdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth *Deut.* 3.

Chief Cities at such times as the *Israelites* first conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were 1. *Rabbah*, the Regall City of their Kings; taken by *Og* of *Basan*, as is said before; but again quitted as it seemeth on the comming of *Moses*, that he might be the better able to keep the field. Memorabble in succeeding times for the death of *Uriah*, slaine here by a design of *Davids*, when besieged by *Joab*. Who having brought it to termes of yielding sent for the King to come before it, that he might have the honour of taking a place so defensible, environed in a manner with the River *Iaboc*, and therefore called the *City of waters*, 2. *Sam.* 12. 27. Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Ptolomy Philadelphus* King of *Egypt*, who

who having made himself master of those parts of *Arabia*, which lie near unto it, and liking the conveniencie of the situation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia*. 2. *Dathema*, supposed to be *Rithma* by the learned *Iunius*; mentioned *Num.* 33. 18. (the *Hebrew* letters *D.* and *R.* being much alike) a place of great strength amongst the *Ammonites*. 3. *Minneth*, in the South border, and 4. *Abel vinearum* in the East border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the pursuit of that people when subdued by *Iephte*. 4. *Mitspa*, sometimes one of the Cities of the halfe Tribe of *Manasses*, and at that time honoured with the residence of *Iephte*; but afterwards recovered by the children of *Ammon*: in whose hands it was when utterly destroyed and burnt by *Iudas Maccabæus*. 1. *Macc.* 5. 35. 6. *Maged*, and 7. *Bosor*, two other strong places of the *Ammonites*, there also mentioned; but said to be in the *Region* of *Galaad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Countrey of the *Ammonites* lying on this side of the Mountains was at that time called.

As for those *Ammonites*; they had nothing at all to do with *Israel* as they passed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them nor provoked by them to any acts of hostility. Afterwards not well pleased, that they were no restored to the possession of those lands which had been taken from them by *Og* of *Basan*, (conferred by the decree of *Moses* on the tribe of *Gad*); they joined with the *Midianites* in their expedition. But worsted by the puissance and good fortune of *Gedeon*, they lay still a while, till stirred up by some secret motions from Almighty God, to avenge him on that sinful and idolatrous people, who by worshipping the Gods of the Heathen, had provoked him to anger. Prosperous in it for a time, till his wrath was pacified, who having made use of them to chastise his people, delivered up his rod to be burnt by *Iephte*, vanquished, and driven home by him with a very great slaughter. Not so much chrushed by the unsuccessefulnes of this attempt, but that in the time of *Saul* they break out again, and besieged *Jabesh Gilead*, *Nabas*, a cruel Tyrant, being then their King: who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loss of every mans right eye; to the end that they using to carry a great *Target* on their left Armes; wherewith the eye on that side was wholly shadowed, they might by this means be disabled from all future service. But *Saul* came time enough to save them from that shame and loss: for that cause so offensive to *Nabas*, that to despight him, he shewed friendship to *David* in the time of his trouble. A curtesie which *David* was so mindful of, that he sent Ambassadours to *Hanan* the Sonne of *Nabas* to make acknowledgment of it, and to confirm the amity which he had with his Father: but found so ill requital from him, that instead of thanks and kind accepance, his messengers were despightfully handled, their beards half shaven, and their garments cut off by the knee. Incensed wherewith he sent *Joab* against them: by whom the Countrey was laid wast, and *Rabbah* their chief City taken; their Kings Crown, weighing a talent of Gold, set on *Davids* head, and all the Prisoners executed with great severity, some of them being cast into lime-kills, and the rest torn in peeces with saws and harrows. Quiet a long while after this we hear no great newes of them till the reign of *Iehosophat*, against whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open warre; but fell by one anothers swords, as was said before. Not well recovered of this blow, they were subdued and made *Tributaries* by *Ozias* King of *Iudah*, and so continued in the time of *Iotham* his Sonne; who so increased the *tribute* laid upon them by his Father, that it amounted to a hundred *Talents* of Silver, ten thousand measures of Wheat, and as many of Barley. Taught by this lesson how to value the Kings of *Iudah*, they continued either quiet neighbours or obedient subjects, though much improved in power and reputation by regaining the greatest part of their antient dwellings on the removal of the two Tribes and an half, on the East of *Iordan*, to the land of *Assyria*, by *Tiglath Phul-Assur*. For after this, (with reference to the common danger) *Baulis* their King, was so strict a confederate with *Zedechias*, that when *Nabuchadnezzar* had taken *Zedechias* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedaliah* as his Deputy to command the Countrey; *Ismael*, one of the blood of the Kings of *Iudah*, was sent by *Baulis* to slay him. But he paid dear for his attempt; his Countrey being shortly conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Grecians* when they came to Lord it over them, to those of *Gileaditis*, and *Philadelphia*; according to the new name of their principal City, and the old one of the Mountains and hills adjoining.

4. The *REUBENITES* took name from *Reuben* the eldest of *Jacobs* sonnes by *Leah*, of whom in the first muster which was made of them at Mount *Sinai*, there were found 46000. fighting men, and 43700. at the second muster, when they passed over *Iordan*. Their dwelling was on the East of that famous River; having the *Gadites* on the North, the *Desart Arabia* on the East, and the Land of *Moab* on the South, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of most observation here, 1. *Abel-Sittim*, seated in that part of the Countrey which was called the *Plains of Moab*: the last incamping place of *Moses*; afterwards by the *Iews* called simply *Sittim*; memorable for the *wood* so often mention in the Scriptures, of which the *ark of the Lord* was made; In after times by the *Greeks* and *Romans* it was called *Abila*, mistook by some for that *Abila* or *Abilene* whereof *Lysanias* was *Tetrarch*: that Town and territory as *Iosephus* doth affirm expressely being situate amongst the spurres and branches of *Libanus*, farre enough from hence. 2. *Bethabora*, or *Beth-Bara*; where *Iohn* baptized, and *Moses* made his last and most divine exhortations to the Tribes of *Israel*, contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3. *Machærus*, the strongest in-land City and Castle in those parts of the world, standing aloft upon a Mountain every way unaccessible; first fortified by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Iews*, as a frontire Town against the *Arabians*; and afterwards demolished by *Gabinius* one of *Pompeys* Lieutenants in the warre against *Aristobulus*. Unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Iohn Baptist*, where murdered by the command of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee*, and Lord of this Countrey of *Perea*. 4. *Lasa*, or *Leshah*, of which *Gen.* 10. 19. by the *Greeks* called *Callirhoe*, by

reason of the fair fountains rising from the Hills adjoyning, out of which issue springs both of hot and cold waters, as also bitter and sweet: all which soon after joined into one stream make a wholesome *Bath*, especially for *convulsions*, and contraction of sinewes. 5. *Medeba*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Ioab*, 1 *Chron.* 19.7. 6. *Bosor*, or *Bozra*, a City of *Refuge*, and one of those that were assigned unto the *Levites* on that side of the water. 7. *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod* in honour of *Livia*, the mother of *Tiberius Cæsar*: different from that which the *Geographers* call 8. *Libias*, (though by some confounded) the same with *Laban*, mentioned *Deut.* 1.1. 9. *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, giving name unto the adjoining Desart, from whence *Moses* sent his Ambassage to *Sehon* King of the *Ammorites*. 10. *Bamath-Baal*, the chief City of the worshippers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balaac* to curse the *Israelites*. 11. *Hesbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon* King of the *Ammorites*. 11. *Adam*, or the City *Adam* (*Ios.* 3. 17.) where the Tribes passed drie-foot over *Iordan*, opposite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the Mountain *Nebo*, from which *Moses* took a view of the land of *Canaan*: an hill as it seemeth, of two tops, whereof that which looketh towards *Iericho* is called *Pisgah*, that which looketh toward *Moth* being called *Hnir*. Here is also an high hill named *Peor*, where the filthy Idol *Baal* was worshipped also, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*.

5. The *GADITES*, were so called from *Gad* the seventh sonne of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilphah* the hand-maid of *Lea*; of whom were found at the first muster when they came out of *Egypt* forty five thousand five hundred and fifty fighting men; and at the second when they entred the land of *Canaan*, forty five thousand bearing armes. Their situation was betwixt the *Rubenites* on the South, and the halfe Tribe of *Manasses* upon the North, the River *Iordan* on the West, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on the East; by which last parted from the dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*.

Cities of most observation, 1. *Aroer*, on the banks of the River *Arnon*, the principall Citie of the *Gadites*. 2. *Dibon*, more towards *Iordan*, of great note in the time of *Iosuah*, and of no small accompt in the time of Saint *Hierome*. 3. *Beth-nimrah*, of which *Esay* prophesied that the waters thereof should be dried up; seated upon the *Arnon* also. 4. *Nastoroth*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5. *Beth-haram*, mentioned by *Iosuah*, chap. 13. v. 27. by *Iosephus* called *Betaramptha*; new built by *Herod Antipas*, and called *Livias*, in honour of *Livia* the wife of *Augustus Cæsar*, translated into the *Julian* family; who also laid unto it fourteen villages to make it of the greater power and jurisdiction. 6. *Beth-ezob*, by *Iosephus* called *Vetezabra*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the siege of *Hierusalem* when destroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by famine to eat her own sonne. 7. *Succoth*, not far from the River *Iordan*, so called from the Tents or Booths which *Jacob* set up there in his passage from *Mesopotamia* to the land of *Canaan*: the People of which Town having denied reliefe to *Gedeon* as he followed the chace of *Zeba* and *Zalmanah*, were by him miserably tortured at his return, under a *tribulum* or *threshing carre*, wherewith he tore their flesh, and bruised their bodies. 8. *Jahzoz*, another of the Regall Seats of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*; first taken by *Moses*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Esay* 6. 8.) then possessed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from them regained by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 *Macc.* 5.8. 9. *Mahanaim*, so called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Iacob* (*Ger.* 32. 2.) as ready to defend him against all his Enemies, the word in the originall importing a *double Army*. A place of very great strength and safety, and therefore made by *Abner* the seat Royall of *Ishbosheth*, the Sonne of *Saul*, during the warre he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David* during the rebellion of his Son *Absolom*. 10. *Rogelim*, the City of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, so faithfull to *David* in that warre. 11. *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead*, so called from the situation of it neer the Mountains of *Gilead*; a Town of speciall note in the Book of God; particularly for the pacification here made betwixt *Iacob* and *Laban*; for the death of *Ahab* King of *Israel*, who lost his life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally for the Election of *Iehu* to the Crown of *Israel*, Anointed at the Siege hereof by a Son of the *Prophets*. 12. *Pennel*, so called from the enter-view which the Lord pleased to bestow there on his servant *Iacob* at his return out of *Mesopotamia*, mentioned *Gen.* 32. 32. the word signifying the place of the *face* or vision of God: defaced by *Gedeon*, for their churlish usage of him, when he craved relief of them against the *Midianites*; to whom together with the *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, the whole territory appertaining to these two Tribes did once belong. But being from them taken by *Og* King of *Basan*, and *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of those Kings to the hands of *Moses*: by whom assigned unto the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben* for their habitation; Continuing theirs till the fatall period of this Kingdome of *Israel* began to approach: at what time these two Tribes with the half Tribe of *Manasses*, lying on the East of *Iordan*, being carried captive into *Assyria* by *Tiglath Philaser*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their ancient dwellings. Of which possessed till their subversion by the *Babylonians*. Afterwards this whole Countrey coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the name of *Perea*, for the reason formerly delivered. And being worne peece-meal by the *Maccabeans*, came with the rest of the Kingdome of *Iudah* to the possession of *Herod* the *Great*: by whom bequeathed at his death unto *Herod Antipas*, one of his Sonnes, who held it together with both *Galilees*, under the name of *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Perea*, as *Iosephus*, or of *Galile* onely as Saint *Luke*: who being dead, it was bestowed on *Agrippa* King of the *Iews*, of whom more hereafter.

ITURÆA.

ITURÆA, hath on the East and North *Cale-Syria*; on the West, the River *Iordan*; and on the South *Peræa*. So called from *Itur* one of the Sonnes of *Ismael*, seated in this tract; though left by his posterity to the *Amorites*, one of the most powerful tribes amongst the *Chananites*; and by them made the patrimony of the Kings of *Basan*. The race of which Kings ending in *Og*, the wealthiest and best parts hereof, were given by *Moses* to the half Tribe of *Manasses*; such parts of it as lay towards *Damascus* being seized on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdome of it self, called the Kingdome of *Gessur*; and the more mountainous and unpleasant left to the first inhabitanes, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdome of *Gessur*, and those of the half tribe of *Manasses*, shifting from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Grecians*, the name of *Itureа* revived again and grew into very good esteem, the *Ituræans* being reputed for good Souldiers, especially at the Bow and Arrowes; of which thus the Poet in his *Georgicks lib.* 2.

——— Ituræas *taxi torquentur in arcus.*
Of the best Eugh that can be had
The *Ituræan* Bows are made.

The whole Countrey in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonitis* and *Itureа* specially so called: this last again being subdivided into *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Paneas*. For whereas it is said in Saint *Lukes* Gospel, that *Philip* the brother of *Herod*, was *Tetrach* of *Ituræa* and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Iosephus* that for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Paneas*: it must needs be that the four last mentioned Provinces make up that one which by Saint *Luke* is comprehended in the name of *Ituræa*; distinct from that of *Trachonitis* though a part hereof. Inhabited in the time of *Iosephus*, as in those of *Iosuah* and *David*, both by *Iews* and *Syrians*: the *Syrians* dwelling in the mountainous, and more barren parts, the *Iews* in that which was assigned them in the time of *Moses*: the whole not yielding unto *Galilee* for extent of ground; but far inferiour to it for wealth and fruitfulnes; not well inhabited where best, and in some places which are desart and very barren hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but wild-fruits. Such was it in the time of *Iosephus*, and not bettered since.

1. *TRACHONITIS* is that mountainous and hilly Countrey, which beginning at the borders of the *Ammonites*, where the hills are called the Mountains of *Galaad*, extendeth it self Northwards as far as *Libanus*: the hills in those parts being by the *Iews* called *Galeed*, *Syrion*, and *Hermon*; but by the *Grecians*, for the craggednes and roughnes of them, by the name of *Trachones*. The people mischievously bent and much given to witch-craft, as we find in *Strabo*. *Momanam regionem incolunt* Ituræi *&* Arabes, *maleficis omnes*. So he, or his Transtatour rather, for I have not the Originall by me. Where by *Arabians* he meaneth those of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the same with *Ituræa*, though differing from it as the *Cots-wold* Countreys do from the rest of *Glocestershire*, or as a part d th from the whole; because united by that name into one estate at the time he lived in. *Solet &* Trachonitis Iturææ *nomine appellari*, saith the learned *Grotius*, according to the generall consent of the antient Writers. A people generally addicted to spoyl and robberie, living especially on the spoil of those Merchants which traded to and from *Damascus*: till with some difficulty restrained to a more orderly life by *Herod*, on whom *Augustus Cæsar* had bestowed the Countrey, to the end that by strong hand he might hold them in.

The People and the Countrey by *Iosephus* are thus described. "The *Trachonites* (saith he) have "neither Towns nor lands, nor heritage or any other possessions, but only certain retreates and caves under "the ground, where they lived like beasts: and having made abundant provision of water and victuals, "were able to hold out a long time against any assailant. For the doors of their Caves were made so nar"row that they could be entered but by one at once; and the way to them not direct, but full of turnings "and windings, not possibly to be found out but by the help of a Guide, the whole Countrey naturally "consisting of craggy Rocks. The passages of the Caves once entred they were found to be very large and "spacious: sufficient to contain great multitudes of these theevish people, who when they had not oppor"tunity to spoile their neighbours, would rob one another, and omitted no kind of wickednes; being so "accustomed to theft that they could not live otherwise. But I conceive that this is not meant generally of all the people, but only of some bodie of theeves or out-lawes, which possessed themselves of the streits of the Mountains; and from thence issued to assault and spoil the Passengers. For it is afterwards expressed, that revolting upon the news of *Herods* death, and committing new out-rages, they no sooner heard of his recovery but they fled the Countrey, and betook themselves unto a strong Castle in *Arabia*, where they increased to the number of a thousand persons. So that there is no question to be made at all but they had villages and towns, and lands and heritages, in the more civill parts hereof; though not amongst those Mountainers which *Iosephus* speaks of. And amongst those, I reckon, 1. *Gerra*, 2. *Elere*, 3. *Nelaxa*, 4. *Adrama*; all named by *Ptolomy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees or upwards: more towards the East than well agreeth with the position of this Countrey, or any part of *Batanea* lying more towards the West than *Trachonitis*, though to that part of *Ituræa*, by him ascribed. Hither also I refer the City of 5. *Tisbe*, the Countrey of old *Tobit*, and the Prophet *Elias*. 6. *Tob*, where *Jephta* lived in exile, when oppressed by his Brethren, till the necessities of his Countrey called him to the publick government; and 7. *Hippos*, at the foot of those Mountains, reckoned amongst the Cities of *Cælé-Syria*.

2. *BATANEA* is that part of *Iturea*, which antiently made up the beſt and greateſt part of the Kingdome of *Baſan*, whence it had this name: the changing of *S* to *T*, as *Aſſyria* into *Attyria*, and the like, being uſuall among the *Greeks*. But that Kingdome being brought to an end by *Moſes*, it was given to the half tribe of *Manaſſes*, ſo called of *Manaſſes* the Sonne of *Joſeph*, of whom there were found at the firſt muſter neer Mount *Sinai* 32200 men able to bear armes: which though conſumed in the Deſarts, yet were they of ſuch a ſwift increaſe, that there were found 52700 fighting men of them when they paſſed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that ſide of the River, ſtretching from *Jaboc* on the South, to the Realm of *Geſſur* on the North, and from the mountains unto *Jordan* Eaſt and Weſt, was exceeding fertile: repeniſhed withall ſorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodlieſt Woods in that part of the World; the Oakes of *Baſan* being celebrated in the Holy Scriptures.

It had in it 60. fenced Cities when firſt conquered by thoſe of this Tribe. The principall of which 1. *Pella*, formerly called *Butis*, but being rebuilt by *Seleucus* the Great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*, with reference to a City of that name in *Macedon*, the birth-place of *Alexander*, to whom *Seleucus* owed his greatneſs and whole eſtate. Deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannaus* King of the *Jews*, becauſe not willing to admit of the Law of *Moſes*; it was afterwards reſtored by *Pompey* to its former luſtre. Memorable in Church-ſtory for the Admonition or premoniſhment given by a voice from Heaven to the Chriſtians dwelling at *Hieruſalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*: that ſo they might eſcape that deſtruction which the *Roman* Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. 2. *Edrey*, the Seat-Royall of the Kings of *Baſan*. 3. *Carnaim*, on the banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Maccabaus*, who ſet fire on the Temple of the Idols there; and burnt therein all ſuch as fled thither for ſanctuary. 4. *Ephron*, a ſtrong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the ſame *Judas Maccabaus*, for refuſing to give a paſſage to his Army. 5. *Jabeſh Gilead*, more neer unto the Mountains, whence it had that *Adjunct*; memorable in the Scriptures for the ſiege of *Nabas* King of the *Ammonites*, the raiſing of that ſiege by *Saul*, and the gratitude of the People towards him again, in taking down, imbalming and intombing the bodies of him and his Sonnes, which the *Philiſtims* had moſt deſpitefully hanged on the walls of *Bethſan*. 6. *Aſtaroth*, a City of great note in the Elder times; the ſeat of the *Rephaims*, a Giantlike race of men, of whom deſcended *Og* of *Baſan*; from whence the Countrey adjoining had the name of the *Land of Giants*. *Aſtaroth* the Godeſs of the *Sidonians* had here her worſhippers. 7. *Gaulon*, ſometimes poſſeſſed by *Og* of *Baſan*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of ſuch eſteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North part of *Baſanitis* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*, divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*, ſo often mentioned by *Joſephus*. And of this City or Countrey was that *Judas* of *Galilee* ſpoken of in the fift of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 8. *Gamala*, in the Lower *Gaulonitis*, ſo called becauſe the Hill upon which it ſtood was faſhioned like the back of a Camel: invincibly ſituate, ſtrengthned both by Art and Nature: and at the laſt with ſo great difficulty, and hazard of *Veſpaſians* perſon, ſtormed by *Titus*, that the *Romans* in the heat of the execution, ſpared neither Women nor Children; inſomuch that all the Inhabitants periſhed, except ſome few Women which had hid themſelves. 9. *Gadara* after ten moneths ſiege taken and deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannaus* King of the *Iews*; repaired by *Pompey*, and by *Gabinius* made one of the five ſeats of Juſtice for the whole Countrey of *Paleſtine*: the other four being *Hieruſalem*, *Iericho*, *Hamath*, and *Sephoraih*. 10. *Geraſa*, or *Gergeſa*, the Chief City of the *Gergeſites*, the people whereof on the loſs of their Swine, intreated our Saviour to depart out of their coſts, as Saint *Matthew* hath it. Saint *Luke*, and Saint *Mark* aſcribe it to the People of *Gadara*, not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangeliſts at ods in the Relation, but becauſe they were two neighbouring Cities, and their fields lay in Common *pour cauſe de vicinage*, as our Lawyers phraſe it; and ſo the ſtorie might be common to both alike. 11. *Hippus*, not far from the River *Iordan*, ſo called from a Garriſon of Horſe there placed by *Herod*: not from the Mountain *Hippus*, as ſome ſuppoſe; which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12. *Iulias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa*, in the Southern border of his eſtate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*; to ingratiate himſelf with *Iulia*, the wife of *Tiberius Ceſar*. 13. *Abel*, by *Ioſephus* called *Abel Maacha*, for diſtinctions ſake: where *Sheba* that Grand Rebell being beſieged by *Ioab*, and the City brought into ſome danger; had his head cut off and thrown over the wall, at the perſwaſion of a wiſe woman of the Town. So the rebellion ended, and the City was ſaved.

North of *Baſanitis* or *Batanea* lieth the Kingdome of *GESSUR* by a latter name called *AURANITIS*, from *Hauran*, a chief City of it mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel* chap. 16. 18. A Kingdome ſpoken of by *Moſes* as the Northern bound of the Half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Iordan*. *Deut.* 4. 14. by *Ioſuah* as the Northern border of the Kingdome of *Baſan*, chap 12. 5. but reckoned as a part of *Syria*, becauſe held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam.* 15. 8. A Kingdome though of no great territorie, yet of ſome conſideration in the eye of the World; *David* eſteeming the alliance of the Kings hereof of ſome uſe unto him; and therefore marying *Maacha*, the daughter of *Tolmai*, King of *Geſſur*, by whom he had *Abſolom* and *Tamar*. And to this King it was that *Abſolom* fled on the killing of *Amnon*, abiding here three years as the ſtorie telleth us.

Conterminus to this, or at leaſt not very much diſtant from it, was the petit Kingdome of *Iſh-tob*, which ſent 12000. men to the aid of the *Ammonites* againſt *David*: and not far off, but more towards *Palmyrene*, or *Aram-Zobah*, that of *Beth-Rehob*, confederate in the ſame war alſo with the other *Syrians*; mention whereof is made in the ſecond book of *Sam.* chap. 10. ver. 6. Which whether they belonged to *Syria*, or to thoſe North-parts of *Ituræa*, is of no great certainty, and as little conſequence.

For

For after their greateſt and laſt exploit we hear no more news of them; ſwallowed up not long after (as it ſeems) by the Kings of *Damaſcus*.

To return therefore into *Geſſur*, as more certainly within the limits of *Paleſtine*, the places of moſt obſervation in it were, 1. *Geſſur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2. *Maha-cath* or *Macati* as ſome call it: conceived to be that *Maacha* mentioned 1 *Chron.* 19.6. But of this we have already ſpoken in *Comagena*. 3. *Chauran* or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel* chap. 47. whence theſe Northen parts of *Paleſtine* were called *Auranitis*. 4. *Chaſar-Hevan*, there mentioned by that Prophet alſo. 5. *Uz*, neer the borders of *Damaſcus*, the firſt habitation of *Uz* the Sonne of *Aram* and Grand-child of *Sem*, by whoſe name ſo called: ſuppoſed to be the founder of *Damaſcus* alſo, and that more probably than that the Countrey thereabouts ſhould be the Land of *Hus*, enabled by the dwelling and ſtory of *Iob*. 6. *Sueta*, mentioned by *Brochardus*, and by ſome conceived to be the habitation of *Bildad* ſurnamed the *Shuchite*, one of *Iobs* three friends mentioned in that ſtory: but both of him, and *Iob* himſelf and the Land of *Hus*, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Fort of great ſtrength and uſe for the commanding of the Countrey; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the ſecond, by digging with incredible labour thorow the very rock upon which it was ſeated.

As for the fortunes of this part, the Tribes on that ſide of *Iordan* were led captive into *Aſſyria*, and the Kingdome of *Damaſcus* ſubverted by *Tiglah-Phalaſſar*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian* and *Perſian* Empires, together with which it came to the *Macedonian* Kings of the race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of that houſe (but the time I find not) it made up the greateſt part of the Kingdome of *Chalcis*; poſſeſſed by *Ptolomy* the Sonne of *Mennæus*, in the beginning of *Herods* greatneſs, who dying, left it to *Lyſanias* his eldeſt Sonne, murdered about ſeven years after by *Marc. Antonie*, on the ſuggeſtions of *Cleopatra*, who preſently ſeized on his eſtates. But *Antonie* and *Cleopatra* having left the Stage, *Lyſanias*, a Sonne of the murdered Prince entreth next upon it, by the permiſſion of *Auguſtus*. During whoſe time *Zenodorus* Lord of the Town and territory of *Paneas*, farming his demeaſnes, and paying a very grat Rent for them: not only ſuffered the *Trachonites* to play the *Robbers*, and infeſt the Merchants of *Damaſcus*: but received part of the booty with them. *Auguſtus*, on complaint hereof, giveth the whole Countrey of *Trachonites*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, before created King of *Iewrie*: that by his puiſſance and power, he might quell thoſe Robbers, and reduce the Countrie into order: Leaving unto *Lyſanias* nothing but the City of *Abila* (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoining territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch* of *Abilene*, mentioned *Luke* 3. Nor did *Herods* good fortune end in this. For preſently on the death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Auguſtus* gave him alſo the diſtrict of *Paneas* (of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Galilee*): which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lyſanias*, made up the *Tetrarchie* of *Philip* his youngeſt Sonne, affording him the yearly Revenue of 100. *Talents*, which make 37500 l. of *Engliſh* money. On *Philips* death, his *Tetrarchy* was by *Cains Caligula*, conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his Sonne *Ariſtobulus*, whom he had alſo dignified with the title of King; after whoſe death, and the death of *Agrippa Minor*, who next ſucceeded, his eſtates eſcheated to the *Romans*, and have ſince had the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

3. *GALILEE.*

GALILEE is bounden on the Eaſt, with *Batanea*, and part of the halfe Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Iordan*; on the Weſt, with the Sea-coaſt of *Phœnicia*, on the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Anti-Libanus*; on the South, with *Samaria*. So called, as ſome ſay, from *Geliloth*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying as much as *borders*, becauſe the bordering Countrey betwixt them and the *Iews*.

The Countrey not ſo large as that on the other ſide of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fruitfull of it ſelf, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman; and ſo well cultivated in old times that there was hardly any waſt ground to be found in it. Thick ſet with Cities, Towns, and Villages in the time of *Ioſephus*, and thoſe ſo populous and rich that the ſmalleſt Village in it is affirmed by that Author, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitants. A number beyond all parallel if reported rightly; and not miſtaken in the tranſcripts. The people from their childhood very ſtout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want or deard of penury: which ſeconded by their vaſt and almoſt incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough peece of employment, when ſubdued by *Titus*. And this, together with their zeal to the *Iewiſh* Religion, makes it more than probable, that there was ſomething in them of the antient *Iſraelite*; and that they were not meerly of an *Aſſyrian* either ſtock or ſpirit, but intermixt with ſuch remainders of the Tribes as had ſaved themſelves either by flying to the Mountains, or hiding themſelves in Caves and Deſarts, or otherwiſe were inconſiderable for ſtrength and numbers; in the great tranſplantation of them made by *Salmanaſſar*. And in this I am the more confirmed by their ſpeech or language, which was the ſame with that of the natural *Iews*, differing no otherwiſe from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *Engliſh* doth from that which is ſpoke in *London*: as appeareth by the communication which the Damoſel had with Saint *Peter* in the High-Prieſts Hall; in which ſhe plainly underſtood him, but ſo that ſhe pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the *Tranſplantation* been ſo univerſal as ſome think it was, and that both ſick and ſound, old and young had been caried away; and none but Colonies of the *Aſſyrians* to fill up their places: it muſt needs be that thoſe Newcomers would have planted their own language there; as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britans*, on this ſide of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this ſide of *Iordan* (eſpecially

cially *Simeon* and *Dan*) which either borderiug upon *Iudah*, or having their lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or subjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was antiently into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*. The *Higher* so called from its situation more amongst the Mountains, had also the name of *Galilea Gentium*, or *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*. And that either because it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the rest of the *Iews*, or because a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyre*. But for what cause soever it was called so first, certain it is, it held this name unto the last; known by it in the time of the Apostles, as appeareth by Saint *Matthews* Gospel, chap. 4. ver. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is situate on the South of the other, memorable for the birth and Education of our blessed Saviour, whom *Iulian* the *Apostata*, called, for this cause, in scorn, the *Galilean*: as for the same, the Disciples Generally had the name of *Galileans* imposed upon them, till that of Christian, (being a name of their own choosing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greater part of both, known in the New Testament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned *Mat.* 4. 25. *Mark* 7. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to say, 1. *Cæsarea Philippi*, 2. *Aser*, 3. *Cedes-Nepthalim*, 4. *Sephet*, 5. *Chorazim*, 6. *Capernaum*, 7. *Bethsaida*, 8. *Iotopata*, 9. *Tiberias*, and 10. *Scythopolis*. By which accompt it stretched from the *Mediterranean* to the head of *Jordan*, East and West, and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a square of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Israel*, the whole *Galilee* was so disposed of, that *Aser*, *Nepthalim*, and a part of the tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the Higher; *Zabulon*, and *Issachar* in the Lower: according to which distribution we will now describe them.

1. The Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, was so called from *NAPHTHALI* the sixt Sonne of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the handmaid of *Rachel*; of whom at their first muster were found 53400 fighting men, and at the second 44540 able to bear armes. The land alotted to them lay on the West-side of the River *Jordan*, opposite to the Northen parts of *Ituræa*, where before we left; having on the East, the Tribe of *Aser*, and that of *Zabulun* on the South. Within which tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the Tribe of *Dan*: the chief of those which were with-holden by the Gentiles, being *Chalcis*, *Abila*, *Heliopolis*, Cities accompted of as belonging to *Cœle-Syria*, where they have been spoken of already.

That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN*, lay on the North-east part hereof, confronting the most Northen parts of *Ituræa*, as before was said, where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, besides many others of less note. And it seemed destined to this Tribe by some old presage, the Eastern fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its originall in this tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Cherdorlaomer* and his Associates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a possession in it. Of which see *Gen.* 14. v. 14. The Town of moment first called *Leshem*, by some Writers, *Laish*: afterwards subject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon strength thereof made good against those of *Naphthali*; but taken by some Adventurers of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is said *Josuah* 19. 47. that finding their own Countrey too little for them, *they went up and fought against* Leshem, *which they took and called* DAN. Accompted after this exploit, the utmost bound Northward of the land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being measured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beersheba* in the South: remarkable for one of the *Golden Calves* which was placed here by *Ieroboam*; and for the two spring-heads of *Iordan*, rising neer unto it. When conquered by the *Romans*, it was called *Paneas*, from a fountain adjoining of that name: which, with the territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, who held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before is said, was given by *Augustus Cæsar* unto *Herod* the *Great*, and by him at his decease to *Philip* his youngest Sonne, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Ituræa* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cæsarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius Cæsar*, partly to preserve the memory of his own name, and partly to distinguish it from another *Cæsarea* situate on the shores of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cæsarea Palestinæ*, and being so repaired by him, it was made the *Metropolis* of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name *Mat.* 16.13. when Saint *Peter* made that confession or acknowledgement of his Lord and *Master*, *That he was* CHRIST *the Sonne of the living God*. By King *Agrippa*, who succeeded him in his estates, in honour of the Emperour *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance; the Town being called *Cæsarea Panea* in the time of *Ptolomy*, and simply *Paneas*, as before, in the time of Saint *Hierome*. Of this *Cæsarea* was tha woman whom our *Saviour* cured of a bloody Flux, by touching but the hem of his garment: who in a pious gratitude of so great a mercy, erected two *Statuaes* in this place, representing CHRIST, and her self kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Iulian* the *Apostata*, by whose command it was cast down, and a *Statua* of his own set up in the place thereof, miraculously destroyed by a fire from heaven, the City being at that time and long time before, an Episcopall See. Of less note there were, 1. *Haleb*, and 2. *Reccath*, both situate in the confines of it. And not far off the strong Town and Castle of 3. *Magdala*, (the habitation as some say of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Pharisees* desired a signe of our Saviour CHRIST, as is said *Mat.* 15.39. and 16.1. the same, or some place neer unto it, being by Saint *Mark* reporting the same part of the Story, called *Dalmanutha*. chap. 8.10.11. But whether this Castle did antiently belong to these *Danites*, or to those of *Naphthali*, or to the Half Tribe of *Manasses* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of those which were in the possession of the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, the Cities of most eminent observation were, 1. *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Junius* and *Tremelius* called *Chatzar*, the

the Regal City and Metropolis of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendez-vous* of 24. *Canaanitish* Kings in the war with *Josuah*; by whom it was taken notwithstanding, and burnt to ashes. But being afterwards re-built it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who so grievously for the space of 20. years afflicted *Israel*, till vanquished by *Deborah* and *Barak*. Destroyed in that warre, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in so good estate in our Saviours time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*: in being still, but known by the name of *Antiopia*. 2. *Cape nam*, seated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*, of which Country it was accompted the *Metropolis*, in the time of our Saviour, with whose presence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapolitans*. Some marks of its former greatnes it retained when Saint *Hierome* lived, who confesseth it to be a Town of some good capacity; but so decaied in the time of *Breidenbech* and *Brochardus*, that it consisted but of six poor Fishermens houses. 3. *Hamath*, so called from *Hamath* the Sonne of *Canaan*, planted in these parts; a Town of such esteem in the elder times, that it was reckoned one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*, and therefore called in Scripture, *introitum Hamath*, or the *entrance of Hamath*; as *Num.* 34. 8. *Jos.* 13. 5. *Judg.* 3. 3. &c. Mistaken by Saint *Hierome* for another of the same name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks*, and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I say he is mistaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolomy* two degrees more Eastward than *Cæsarea Philippi*, the most Eastern City of all *Galilee*; and two degrees more North than that, though the most Northern City of all *Palestine*. The ground of this mistake we have seen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Israel*, by *Jeroboam* the second the Son of *Joas*: and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Scythopolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and some other of the Cities of this tract unto *Cœle-Syria*. 4 *Kadesh*, to difference it from others of the same name, called *Kadesh-Naphthalim*, high-seated on the top of an hill, as is said *Jos.* 20.7. the King whereof being taken and slain by *Iosuah*, it was made one of the Cities of *Refuge*, and given to the *Levites*. Most memorable for the birth of *Barac*, who discomfited *Sisera*, Lieutenant of the host of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the *Jewish* State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis* in the time of the *Romans*; and an Episcopal See in the first ages of Christianity. 5. *Riblah*, watered with the Fountain of *Daphnis*, a little Riveret, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: to which City, as some say, (but I think erroniously) *Zedechias* the unfortunate King of the *Iews* was brought Prisoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, who caused his Children to be slain before his face, and then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Errour in them that say it, the scæne of this sad Tragedy being by *Iosephus* laid in *Reblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, the same which in succeeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Iosephus* who for so long was Governour of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be so ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transferre that bloody execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Countrey. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greatest Towns in the Tribe of *Naphthali*, should be capable of the Court and train of that mighty Monarch; especially for so long a time, as he is said to have attended in that place the success of his forces then before *Hierusalem*, and the disposal of the State when the Town was taken. 6. *Saphet*, another of the *Decapolitan* Cities, strongly if not impregnably seated; one of the strongest Fortresses of the Western *Christians*, as it was after their expulsion, of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, who from hence wasted and subdued all the neighbouring Countrey, as far as to the very Sea. The onely place, not of this Countrey onely, but of all the East, in which the *Iews* (who possessed a third part of this Town) have any shew or shadow of a Common-wealth. 7. *Bethsemes*, mentioned *Ios.* 15. 38. made tributary unto those of this Tribe; though otherwise possessed by the *Canaanites* who held out against them. 8. *Carthan*, or *Kiriatham* situate neer the mountain which in following times was called *Mons Christi*, because much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choice of his Apostles, as is said *Mark.* 3. 13. and where he also made that Divine Sermon, recited in the 5, 6, & 7. Chapters of Saint *Matthews* Gospel. 9. *Masaloth*, a place of great strength, but forced by *Bacchides* Generall of the Armies of the Kings of *Syria*, in the time of the *Maccabees*. 10. *Cimereth*, a strong City, after called *Gennesareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring neer unto it, is sometimes called the *Lake of Gennesareth*, as *Luke* 5. 1. &c.

2. The Tribe of *A S E R* was so called from *Aser*, the 8. Sonne of *Iacob*, begotten on *Zilpah* the hand-maid of *Leah*; of whom at their first muster when they came out of *Egypt* were found 41500 persons, able to bear Armes, all above 20. years of Age; and at the second muster when they entred the Land of *Canaan*, 53400 fighting men of the new increase. The portion of the land allotted for their habitation was plentifull in wine, oyl, and wheat, with great store of *Balsam*: extending from the coast of *Sidon* to *Ptolemais*, 30 miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eastward to the Tribe of *Naphthali* some twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolemais*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command: yet had they in this narrow compasse many beautiful Cities, and Towns of note, which they were quietly possessed of till their subjugation by the Kings of *Assyria*.

The principal of those, and others which have since been founded, 1. *Aphek*, memorable for the great slaughter there made of the *Syrians*, when besieged by *Benhadad*: of whom 100000. were slain by the *Israelites* under the leading of *Ahab*, and 27000 killed by the fall of the wall. 2. *Gabala*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* amongst the mid-land Cities of *Phœnicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe; one of those twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refusal peopled by the *Israelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards re-built and strongly fortified by *Herod* the *Great*. 3. *Giscala*, a Town of great strength and consequence, the birth-place of *John* or *Iehochanan*, one of the three seditious in *Hierusalem* when besieged by *Titus*, where he did more mischief than the enemy. Attempting to betray

tray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Masters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being re-built by the Authority of *Iosephus*, then Governour of *Galilee* for the *Iews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon composition. 4. *Cana*, for distinction sake called *Cana-Maor*, to difference it from another of that name in the *Lower Galilee*, assumed for the dwelling of that woman, whose daughter *Christ* delivered of an evil Spirit: called by Saint *Matthew*, a woman of *Canaan*, cap. 15. a *Syro-Phœnician* by Saint *Mark* chap. 7. the *Syro-Phœnicians* of this Tract, being originally of the race of *Canaan*, as was said before. 5. *Hethlan*, or *Chethlan*, the furthest City of the North; as 6. *Messal*, or *Masheal*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aser*. Of later date there are. 7. *Thoron*, a strong piece built by the *Christians* on the hills neer *Tyre*, to hinder the excursions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, of great importance in the wars of the *Holy Land*, and giving name to the noble family of the Lords of *Thoron*: one of which being Constable to King *Baldwin* the third, lieth buried in the Chappel adjoyning to it, a curious piece of workmanship, and Dedicated by the name of the blessed Virgin. 8. *Belfort*, so named from the strength and beauty of it; seated on the high grounds neer the River *Naar*; and memorable for the great repulse which *Saladine* the Victorious King of the *Turks* received before it; being forced to raise his siege with dishonour and loss, on the comming of the *Christian* Armies. Some other Forts here are of the same erection, as 9. *Monifort*, and 10. *Mount-Royall* (or *Castrum Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended against the Infidels.

3. The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was so called from *Zabulon* the tenth sonne of *Jacob* by his wife *Leah*: of whom there mustered neer Mount *Sinai*, 57400 able men; and 65000. at their second muster when they came into *Canaan*. Their territory lay on the South of *Aser* and *Nephthalim*, and the North of *Zabulon*, extending from the *Lake* of *Tiberias* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Jokneham*, the King whereof was slain by *Josuah*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2. *Zabulon*, or the *City of men*, a Sately and magnificent City, till burnt to the ground by *Cestius*, a *Roman* President. 3. *Cana-Minor*, so called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aser*, the birth-place of *Nathaneel*, and as some say of *Simon Zelotes*: memorable for the mariage at which our Saviour wrought his *first miracle*, of turning water into wine. Called in Saint *Johns* Gospel *Cana of Galilee*. 4. *Bersabe*, standing in the border betwixt both *Galilees*, and therefore strongly fortified by *Josephus* against the *Romans*. 5. *Dothan*, where *Ioseph* found his brethren as they fed their flocks; and where the Prophet *Elisha* strook blind the *Syrians*, who besieged him in it. 6. *Bethsaida*, situate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*, but most renowned for the *miracles* and *preaching* of our Lord and Saviour. 7. *Nazareth*, now a small village, seated in a vale betwixt two hills, not far from *Ptolemais* or *Acon*; upon one of which two hills it was formerly built, where still are to be seen the ruins of many Churches, here founded by the *Christians*: it being in the flourishing times of *Christianity* an *Arch-Bishops* See. Of great esteem, for being, if not the birth-place, yet the habitation of the Virgin *Mary*, who was here saluted with those joyful tidings, by an *Angel*, as she sate in her chamber. Of which chamber it is said in the Popish legends, that it was after the *Virgins* death had in great reverence by the *Christians*, and remained in this Town, till the *Holy Land* was subdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, Anno 1291. Then most miraculously transported into *Scalvonia*; but that place being unworthy of the *Virgins* Divine presence, it was by the *Angels* carried over into the Sea-coast of *Italy*, Anno 1294. That place also being infested with theeves and pyrats, the *Angels* removed it to the little village of *Loretto*, where her *miracles* were quickly divulged: insomuch that *Paul* the 2. built a most stately Church over this *Chamber*, and *Xistus* the fift made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our famous Lady of *Leretto*. Here did our blessed Saviour spend a great part of his life before his *Baptism*; from whence both he and his Disciples had for many years the name of *Nazarites*. 8. *Iotopata*, strongly seated on the top of a Mountain, neer the *Lake* of *Gennesareth*, fortified by *Iosephus* in the warre with the *Romans*, but after a long siege taken by *Vespasian*, and in it *Iosephus* the Historian, chief Governour of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9. *Tiberias*, raised out of the ground by *Herod* the *Tetrarch*, and named thus in honour of *Tiberius Cæsar*. Situate in a fruitful soyl, on the edge of the *Lake*, which afterwards took the name of the *Lake* or *Sea* of *Tiberias*: this City being held to be the greatest of the *Lower Galilee*, and the *Metropolis* of the *Decapolitan* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called Saint *Matthew* from the receipts of the *Custome-house*; and neer unto it that he raised the daughter of *Jairus*. 10. *Bethulia*, more within the land, seated on an high hill, and of very great strength, as appears by the story of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. 11. *Iapha*, a place of like strength, but forced by *Titus*, who in the fury of the storm slew in it above 15000. persons, and carried away with him 2000 Prisoners. 12. *Sephoris* or *Sipphora*, the habitation of *Ioachim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the blessed Virgin: fortified with strong walls by *Herod* the *Tetrarch*, who made it his Regal seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that time, it had been made by *Gabinius*, one of the five *Iuridical Resorts* for the *Palestinians*; after that, not without great difficulty forced by *Vespasian*; and is now nothing but a Castle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*; the ordinary Residence for the most part of the *Turkish Sanziack* who hath the Government of this Province, and lately, if not still, of the *Emirs* of *Sidon*, *Faccardine* the late *Emir* having been made the *Sanziack* of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not farre off is Mount *Tabor*, famous for the transfiguration of our Saviour; for a sumptuous Chappel built on the top of the hill in memory of it, by the Empresse *Helen*, mother of *Constantine* the *Great*, and for the Fountain of the brook *Chison*, which presently divided into two streams, runneth Eastward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*, and Westward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4. The

4 The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is ſo called from *Iſſachar* the ninth ſonne of *Jacob*, by his wife *Leah*, of whom were found at the firſt muſter 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the ſecond muſter. Their lot, in the partition of the land amongſt the *Tribes*, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the *half Tribe* of *Manaſſes* on this ſide *Jordan*, North and South; extending from that River to the *Mid-land* Sea. A territory not ſo well repleniſhed with ſtrong and eminent Cities, as was that before; nor yielding ſo much matter of obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs.

Thoſe of moſt note in it, 1. *Tarichæa*, on the ſide of the *Lake*, about eight miles from *Tiberias*, o great ſtrength both by Art and Nature, as witneſſed the notable reſiſtance which *Veſpaſion* found when he beſieged it: by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible ſlaughter. 2. *Ciſhion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3. *Remeth*, called alſo *Jarmuth*, another Citie of the *Levites*, where the hills of *Gilboa* take beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Weſtward, and the City of *Jezreel* towards the Eaſt. 4. *En-hadda*, neer which *Saul* being diſcomfited by the *Philiſtims*, ſlew himſelf for grief, or elſe for fear of falling into the hands of thoſe mercileſs Enemies, againſt whom he had ſo often returned victorious. 5. *Naim*, on the banks of the River *Chiſon*, where *CHRIST* raiſed to life the Widowes Sonne. 6. *Hapharaim*, or *Aphraim*, on the banks of the ſame River alſo. 7. *Endor*, of chief note for the *Witch* with whom *Saul* conſulted; and the diſcomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gedeon*, who periſhed at *Endor*, and *became as the Dung of the Earth*, ſaith the Royall *Pſalmiſt*. 8. *Dabarath*, one of the *Cities of refuge*. 9. *Arbela*, not far from the Cave of the two theeves which ſo greatly infeſted *Galilee* in the time of *Herod*. And 10. of a later date the Caſtle of *Pilgrims* (*Caſtrum Peregrinorum* in *Latine* Writers) built by *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, and after fortified by the *Templers*, for the ſecurity of ſuch as traveled to the *Holy Land*: and for long time the *Magazine* or *Store-houſe* of the *Weſtern Chriſtians*; now called *Tortora*. Situate on the ſhores of the *Mediterranean* neer a ſpacious bay; on the North-ſide whereof Mount *Carmel*, deſcribed already.

As for thoſe *Galileans* which ſucceeded in the place of theſe Tribes, they were for the moſt part originally ſuch as were ſent hither by *Salmanaſſar* to inhabit there, when the *Iſraelites* were led away into endleſs thraldome; but intermixed with ſome Remainders of the ten Tribes, as was ſaid before. And yet as if they had been wholly of the ſame extraction with the reſt of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much deſpiſed by the *Jews* (as witneſſeth that ſcomful by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: though theſe as *Orthodox* in *Religion* as the *Jews* themſelves. In which ſo zealouſly affected, that neither threats nor force could make them offer ſacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperours, whom they looked on as the Enemies of their Law and liberty. Brought under the command of the Kings of *Iewry* by the *Maccabæans*, and with the reſt of that Kingdome beſtowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod*, ſurnamed *Antipas*, the ſecond of his Sonnes then living, with the title of *Tetrarch*, which he enjoyed till the death of our *Saviour*, and on his deprivation (being baniſhed to *Lyons* in *France* by the Emperour *Caligula*) beſtowed upon *Agrippa* his brothers Sonne, the firſt King of the *Iews* ſo named. Under him and his Sonne *Agrippa* the ſecond, it continued till the generall revolt of the *Jewiſh* Nation: Subjected by the ſword of *Titus* to the power of the *Romans*, it hath ſince followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

4. *SAMARIA.*

SAMARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Jordan*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Galilee*; and on the South, with *Judæa*. So called from *Samaria*, the chief City of it, of which more hereafter.

The Countrey interchangeably compoſed of fields and mountains, excellent good for tillage, and full of trees, yielding variety of fruits; watered both with the dew of heaven, and many freſh ſprings which the Earth affordeth it, occaſioning thereby abundance of graſs, and conſequently of Milch-beaſts exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no leſs populous, but now famed for neither.

The people for the moſt part were originally the deſcendants of thoſe *Aſſyrians* whom *Salmanaſſar* ſent hither to poſſeſs the dwellings of the captive *Iſraelites*. Gentiles at firſt, till better inſtructed by the *Lions* whom God ſent amongſt them, and after by the Prieſts ſent hither by the Kings of *Aſſyria*, they entertained the five Books of *Moſes*, and out of them learned *the manner of the God of the Land*, 2 *Kin.* 17. Further then this they would not go, rejecting all the reſt of the ſacred *Canon*; and no ſtrict obſervers of this neither. And though at firſt they ſo embraced the worſhip of God, as that they ſtill adhered to the gods of the Nations, where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Aſhimah*, *Nibbar*, *Tartak*, and the reſt of that rabble, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17. yet they were ſoon taken off from thoſe impieties, and became zealous in the worſhip of one onely God, erronious cheifly in the place which was deſtined to it. The wicked policy of *Ieroboam* the Sonne of *Nebat*, was as naturall to them, as if they could not have poſſeſſed his eſtates without it: and therefore would not ſuffer their people to go up to *Hieruſalem* to worſhip, as the Law required. More pious yet in this than their Predeceſſours, that they erected no *Golden Calves* in *Dan*, and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: though to divert the people from the *Temple of God*, they would have a *Temple* of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as ſacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the *Iews*: *Schiſmaticall* enough in this, but not idolatrous and *Schiſmaticall*, as the others were; yet ſo conceited of themſelves, and their own perfections, that they imagined themſelves defiled by any company but their own. If therefore they had viſited any of their neighbour nations, at their return they uſed to ſprinkle themſelves with u-

rine: but if by negligence, or the neceſſitie of buſineſs, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themſelves, cloathes and all, in the next fountain. But in this the *Iews* cryed quittance with them, not ſo much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *Iohn* 4. 9. but loading them, on the other ſide, with all the bitterneſſe of reproach and hatred. There are two *manner of people* (ſaith the Sonne of *Sirach*) *which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that ſit on the Mountains of* Samaria; *the Philiſtims, and the fooliſh people that dwell at* Sichem. *Eccluſ.* 50. And this continued to the times of our *bleſſed Saviour*; whom when the *Iews* endeavoured to reproch with their heavieſt calumnies, they could find out none ſo great as to ſay he was a *Samaritan*, (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converſe with *Devils* and familiar ſpirits.

Of theſe there were ſome *Sects* alſo as amongſt the *Iews*, 1. the *Doſitheans*, ſo called from *Doſitheus* or *Doſthai*, ſuppoſed to be the firſt Prieſt who was ſent thither by the Kings of *Aſſyria*: agreeing with the *Iews* in *Circumciſion*, and the *Sabbath*, and the doctrine of the *Reſurrection* (in which laſt they differed from the common *Samaritan* who was a *Saducee* in that point) but differing from them in ſome points of as ſignal conſequence. For they rejected the writings of all the *Prophets*, as not θεοπνευστοι, inſpired by the *Holy Ghoſt*; they eat of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoreans*; abſtained from mariage, like the *Eſſenes*; and in the point of *Sabbath-keeping* out went the *Phariſees*: it being reſolved upon amongſt them, that in what poſture ſoever a man was found on the *Sabbath-day-morning*, in the ſame he was to continue without alteration the whole day after. 2. The *Sebvians*, ſo called from *Sebva* or *Sebviah* one of the Companions of that *Doſthai*: who though they kept all the publick *feſtivals*, as the *Iews* and the other *Samaritans* did, yet they kept them not at the ſame time; transferring the *Paſſeover* to *Auguſt*, the *Pentecoſt* to *Autumn*, and the feaſt of *Tabernacles* to the time of the *Paſſeover*; not ſuffered for that cauſe to worſhip in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3. The *Gortheni*, who kept the ſame *Feſtivals*, and obſerved the ſame times of thoſe Solemnities, as the *Law* required; but kept onely one of *the ſeven dayes* of thoſe great *Feſtivals*, and laid by the reſt, as dayes of ordinary labour. In other points not differing from the other *Samaritans*, who though at firſt poſſeſſed of all the land belonging to the *ten Tribes* of *Iſrael*, were yet reduced at laſt to a narrower compaſs: ſhut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judæa*, within the antient territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on this ſide of the water.

1. The *half Tribe* of *MANASSES* on this ſide of *Jordan* was ſituate betwixt *Iſſachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South, extending from the *Mediterranean* to the banks of that River. In which the places of moſt conſequence and conſideration, 1. *Beth-ſan*, environed almoſt with the land of *Iſſachar*, ſituate neer the banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to ſtreighten and be like it ſelf, having been almoſt loſt in the Sea of *Galilee*: firſt called *Nyſa*, and ſo called by *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater* the founder of it, in memory of his Nurſe there buried: but the children of *Manaſſes* not being able to expel the natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-ſan*, or the *houſe* of an *Enemy*. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded thoſe parts of *Aſia*, and compelled ſome of the *Jews* to ſerve them againſt the reſt (whom notwithſtanding their good ſervice they put all to the ſword) they new-built this City: called therefore by the *Grecians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Cœle-Syria*. Memorable in the *old Teſtament* for the hanging of the dead bodies of *Saul* and his ſonnes on the walls hereof, by the barbarous *Philiſtims*; in the time of our *Saviour* for being the greateſt of all the *Decapolitan* Region; as afterwards in the flouriſhing times of *Chriſtianity*, for being the See of an Arch-Biſhop: now nothing but a deſolate village, or an heap of rubbiſh, out of which many goodly *Pillars*, and other peeces of excellent Marble are often digged. 2. *Terzah*, uſed by the Kings of *Iſrael* for their Regal Seat; till the building of *Samaria*, and the removal of it thither. 3. *Acrabata*, the territory whereof called *Acrabatena*, was after made one of the ten *Toparchies* of *Judæa*. 4. *Thebes*, not far from *Samaria*, where the Baſtard *Abimelech* was wounded with a ſtone which a woman threw at him from the wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to ſlay him, that it might not be ſaid he periſhed by the hands of a woman. 5. *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: neer whereunto there ſtood an *Altar*, conſecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*; and not farre off the fatal ſtone on which *Abimelech* ſlew 70 of his Brethren. An heatheniſh cruelty, and at this day practiſed by the *Turks*. 6. *Aſophon*, an ignoble village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolomy Lathurus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the *Jews*: which victory he uſed with ſo great barbarity, that he ſlew all the Women as he paſſed along, and cauſed young children to be ſod in *Caldrons*. 7. *Bezek*, the City of the bloody Tyrant *Adoni-Bezek*, whoſe ſtory (touched upon before) ſee at large in *Judges* chap. 1. By *Joſephus* it is called *Bala*, and ſeemeth to be the place in which *Saul* aſſembled the chief ſtrength of *Iſrael* and *Judah*, to the number of 330000. men, for the relief of *Iabeſh Gilead* then diſtreſſed by the *Ammonites*. 8. *Iezreel*, the Royal City of *Ahab* and the Kings of his race, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*; So neer unto the Borders of *Iſſachar*, that ſome have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in ſacred ſtory for the ſtoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Iezabel*; and the breaking of *Iezabels* neck by command of *Iehu*. A City which gave name to the plains adjoyning, called the valley or *Plains of Iezreel*, (but by the name of *Campus Magnus* in the book of *Maccabees*; lib. 1. cap. 12.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean*: famous for the great and many battels which have been fought in it, as namely of *Gideon* againſt the *Madianites*, of *Saul* againſt the *Philiſtims*, of *Ahab* againſt the *Syrians*, of *Jehu* againſt *Iehoram*, and finally of the *Chriſtians* againſt the *Saracens*. 9. *Megiddo*, unfortunately obſervable for the death of the good King *Ioſiah*, ſlain hereabouts in a battel againſt *Pharaoh Neco*, King of *Egypt*; and before that of *Ahaziah* King of *Judah*, who received his death-wound at *Gabar*, a Town ad-

adjoining, when purſued by *Iehu*. 11. *Dora*, or *Dor*, as the Scriptures call it, on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Caſtle of *Pilgrims* in the tribe of *Iſſachar*; a very ſtrong and powerfull City, and therefore choſe by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having firſt treacherouſly taken, and barbarouſly murdered *Ionathan* the *Maccabean*, after he had received 200 talents for his ranſome, and no leſs villanouſly ſlain *Antiochus* the ſixt of *Syria*, his Lord and Maſter, whom he ſucceeded in his throne; was by *Antiochus* the ſeventh, with an Army of 120000 foot, and 8000 horſe, beſieged in this City, and moſt deſervedly put to death. 12. *Cæſarea*, antiently called the Tower of *Straton*, from *Straton* a King of the *Zidonians*, new built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large *Theatre* and *Amphitheatre*, both of poliſhed Marble, but with a fair and capacious haven, which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honour of *Druſus Cæſar*, Sonne-in-Law of *Auguſtus*, he cauſed one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Druſius*, the City it ſelf to be called *Cæſarea Paleſtina*. In this City was *Cornelius* baptized by St. *Peter*; here did St. *Paul* plead in defence of *Chriſtianity*, before *Feſtus* then the *Roman* Preſident; and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was ſmitten by an Angell, and devoured by worms, after his *Rhetorical* Oration, which his *Paraſites* called the *voyce of God and not of man*. The *Metropolis* of all *Paleſtine*, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Paleſtina Prima*, when by *Conſtantine*, or ſome of his Succeſſors, cantoned into three: the firſt Biſhop hereof being ſaid to be that *Cornelius* whom Saint *Peter* here initiated in the faith of CHRIST. 13. *Antipatris*, another City of *Herods* building, in the place where *Kapharſalama*, mentioned 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. had ſometimes ſtood; who in honour of his Father *Antipater* gave it this new name. Neer hereunto did *Iudas Maccabæus* overthrew a part of *Nicanors* Army; and not far off the Mountain where *Abdia*, the Steward of *Ahab*, hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preſerved againſt the fury of *Iezabel*: finally to this City it was that S. *Paul* was conveyed by the command of *Lyſias*, to ſave him from the *Iews* who lay in wait to deſtroy him.

2. The Tribe of EPHRAIM was ſo called from *Ephraim* the ſecond and yourgeſt ſonne of *Joſeph*; of whom were muſtered in the *Deſarts* 45000 fighting men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South; extending from the River *Jordan* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1. *Soreu*, on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitfull valley, which reacheth from *Cæſarea Paleſtina*, as far as *Joppa*. 2. *Lydda*, upon the ſame ſhores, where Saint *Peter* (*virtute Chriſti in eum ſua*) cured *Æneas* of the Palſey. By the *Gentiles* it was called *Diospolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the *Chriſtians* in the time of the *holy wars*, it had the name of the St. *Georges*: partly from a Magnificent Temple which the Emperour *Juſtinian* there erected to the honour of that bleſſed *Martyr*; but principally from an opinion which they had amongſt them, that he ſuffered martyrdome in that place. An opinion founded on miſtakes, firſt of a *Cenotaphium*, or an empty Monument, erected in this City to preſerve his memory, for the grave in which he was interred; the other, in taking the word *Paſſio*, uſed in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his ſuffering, which is meant onely of the ſtory or *celebration*. But howſoever they intituled it by the name of Saint *Georges*, as was ſaid before, and made it on that accompt alſo an *Epiſcopall* See. 3. *Ramatha*, or *Aramathea*, a City of the *Levites*, ſuppoſed to be the dwelling of *Joſeph*, who begged of *Pilate* the bodie of CHRIST. 4. *Helon* or *Aialon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo. 5. *Themnath-Chares*, given by the *Iſraelites* to *Ioſuah*, who enlarged the ſame, and made it a ſtrong and goodly City; honoured with the ſepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the nine *Worthies* of the World; and afterwards made one of the *Prefectures* of *Judæa*, by the name of *Thamnitica*. 6. *Adaſa*, or *Adarſa*, where *Iudas Maccabæus* with 3000 *Iews* overthrew the Anny of *Nicanor*. 7. *Ieſſeel*, called otherwiſe *Pelethi*, which gave name and birth unto the *Pelethites*, part of *Davids* guard, under the governance of *Benaiah*. 8. *Silo*, ſituate on the top of a lofty mountain; the receptacle of the *Ark*, till taken and carryed thence by the *Philiſtims*. 9. *Michmas*, the habitation of *Jonathan* one of the *Maccabean* Brethren, ſituate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hieruſalem*, now called *Byra*. 10. *Nioth*, where *Saul* propheſied. 11. *Bethoron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow which *Judas Maccabæus* here gave to *Lyſias*. 12. *Pirhathon*, on the Mountain *Amalec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of *Iſrael*. 13. *Sichem*, called alſo *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times of *Sichem* the father of that *Hamor* who deflcured *Dinah* the daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cauſe deſtroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*, repaired again, and afterward by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground; a third time re-edified by *Ieroboam* the Sonne of *Nebat*, and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damaſcus*; yet notwithſtanding theſe blowes it was of good eſteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two daies, and converted many. Memorable for *Iacobs* Well which was very neer it, more for its neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the bleſſings were to be read to the people (of which ſee *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Ioſ.* 8. 23.) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the uſe of the *Samaritan* Nation; at the coſt and charge of *Sanballat* a great Prince amongſt them. Who having marryed his Daughter to *Manaſſes*, brother of *Iaddua* the *High Prieſt* of the *Iews*; and fearing he would put her away, to avoid the ſentence of excommunication, which he was involved in for that match, promiſed him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple anſwerable unto that of *Hieruſalem*, and make him the *High Prieſt* thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not ſtood above 200 hundred years, when deſtroyed by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabean*: the place remaining notwithſtanding a place of worſhip, as appeareth *Ioh.* 4. 20 As for the City of *Sichem* or *Sichor*, it was by the *Grecians* called *Neapolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, who cauſed it to be called *Flavia Cæſarea*; of which Colony was that renowned

Iustin Martyr. 14. *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the Kingdome of *Israel*, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Samrom*, (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coast) whence it had the name. A stately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brochardus*, who had traced the antient ruins of it, to be bigger than *Hierusalem*. Destroyed by the *Assyrians* when they carryed away the Ten Tribes, but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sonnes of *Hyrcanus* above-mentioned. But *Herod* the Great, who was pleased with the situation of it, did again re-edifie it, in more stately manner than before, as appeareth by the great store of goodly Marble pillars, and other carved stones, in great abundance found amongst the rubbish: and having rebuilt it to his mind, inclosed it with a strong wall, and beautifyed it with a goodly Temple; in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebastos*, he caused it to be called *Sebaste*. Memorable after this new erection for the Sepulchre of *John Baptist*, and being made the *Metropolis* of *Palestina Secunda*, (by consequence an *Arch-Bishops* See), now nothing but a few Cottages filled with *Grecian* Monkes.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themselves (so called from this their principall City) less subject to the vicissitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Descended for the most part from the *Assyrians*, and such other Nations, as were sent thither to fill up the empty places of the Captive Tribes: but called *Cutheans* by the *Jewes*, either because most of them were of *Cuth*, a Region of *Persia*, as *Josephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzestan*: or else by way of scorn, for *Chusites*, as being of the posterity of the accursed *Cham*, by *Chus* his sonne. Having imbraced the Law of *Moses*, they began to think better of the *Jews* than the other Nations, but fitted their affections to the change of times: it being the observation of the said *Iosephus*, that as often as the *Iews* were in any prosperity, then they called them *Cousins*, and would be of the same Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were strangers which came thither out of forrain Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in that *Character*. For when *Alexander* the *Great* had granted the *Iews* a release of the seventh years tribute, and the *Samaritans* desiring the like exemption, pleaded for themselves Ἑβραῖοι μὲν εἶναι, &c. that they indeed were very *Hebrews*, though it pleased the *Sidonians* to call them *Sichemites*. But when *Antiochus* raged against them with fire and sword, the *Samaritans* sent letters to him, disclaming all relation to those of *Judah*, and challenging their descent from the *Medes* and *Persians*. Nor were they content onely to disclame all kindred with the *Iews* in the times of trouble, when any persecution rose against them for the Law of God; but did them also all ill offices, and joyned with their Enemies to their destruction: especially after the *Iews* had refused to admit of their assistance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindred with great malice, and no less perverseness. But the fortune of the *Iews* did at last prevail, the whole Nation being subdued by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabean*, who destroyed their *Schismaticall* temple also, and levelled *Samaria* it self to the very ground. After this subject to the *Iews*, who possessed themselves of most of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrower compass than they were in formerly: but still so hated and contemned, that nothing was able to appease that inveterate malice, which they had conceived, till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to seek their dwellings in other Countries. Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman* Empire, by the name of *Palestina Secunda*: successively subject with the rest to the *Persians*, *Saracens*, and *Turks*, who doe now possess it.

IUDÆA.

IUDÆA is bounded on the East, with the *Dead Sea*, and the River *Iordan*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Samaria*; and on the South, with *Idumæa*. So called from the *Iews*, or People of the Tribe of *Iudah*, who after their return from the Captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Iew* unto all the Nation; as they did that of *Iudæa* to this part of the Countrey.

The Soyl of the same nature with that of *Samaria*, before described; but that it is more swelled with hills, and more stored with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we shall say no more as to the generall character and description of it; but look on the particular parts as it stood divided betwixt the *Philistims*, the Ttibes of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Judah*, and *Benjamin*.

And first, the PHILISTIMS commanded all the Sea-coasts from the South of *Phœnicia*, to the North of *Idumæa*, or from the *Castle of Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both into the accompt. But *Joppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that being taken in by the *Israelites*, they held no more than six Towns of any importance, with the Countries and territories adjoyning to them: but those so populous and strong, that by their own power, and the assistance of the *Edomites* and the rest of their neighbours, not well affected to the *Tribes*, they kept them unto harder terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we summe up the story and successes of their affairs.

In the mean time let us survey the Countrey which was holden by them, notwithstanding all that could be done against them by the Kings of *Israel*: and therein we shall find worth our observation, 1. *Geth*, or *Gath*, the birth-place of the huge Giant *Goliah*, slain by *David*; as also of many others of the like Gigantine proportion, slain by *Davids* worthies. Destroyed by *David*, or rather slighted and dismantled, it was re-built by *Reboam* the sonne of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, who found the *Philistims* there garisoned but ill neighbours to him; and finally laid wast by *Hazael* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in Saint *Hieromes* time; till in these last Ages *Fulk* the King of *Hierusalem* erected there a new Castle from the antient ruins. From hence as I conceive,

ceive, the Idol *Dagon*, ſo much worſhipped by theſe *Philiſtims*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* called *Ater-Gatis*; and not from *Gatis* a *Syrian* Queen, as is ſaid by many. 2. *Accaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably againſt the *Danites* and *Judæans*: much ſpoke of in the holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worſhip of *bel-zebub*, that is to ſay the *Lord of Flies*: ſo called by the *Iews*, either in contempt of the *Idolatries* committed to him, or becauſe of that great multitude of *flies* which attended his ſacrifices, whereof ſome ſay, the Temple of *Hieruſalem* was wholly free. But whatſoever he was, or for what cauſe ſo named, certain it is that he was here had in eſpecial honour, and therefore called in Scripture the God of *Accaron*: and hither *Azahiah* the King of *Iſrael* ſent his meſſenger to enquire of this *Idol* concerning his health. 3. *Aſhdod* (by the *Grecians* called *Azotus*) memorable in holy writ for the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the *Ark* of the Lord was brought; that *Idol* falling down before it, as not able to ſtand upright when the *Ark* ſo neer. Neer to this Town was *Iudas Maccabeus* overcome and ſlain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*; and not long after the Town it ſelf was taken by *Ionathan* the brother of *Iudas*, who put the Citizens to the ſword, and burnt all ſuch as fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very *Idol*, conſumed in the ſame fire with the *Idolaters*. Re-built by *Gabinius*, a *Roman* General, in the times of *Chriſtianity* it was made an *Epiſcopal* See; and continued a fair village till the daies of Saint *Hierom*. 4. *Aſcalon*, on the Sea-ſide alſo, ſaid to be built by *Aſcalus* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a warre againſt the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and ſtrongeſt Cities of the *Philiſtims*, of great note amongſt the *Gentiles* for a Temple dedicated to *Dirceto* the mother of *Semiramis*, here worſhipped in the form of a *Mer-maid*: and for another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod* the father of *Antipater*, and Grand-father of *Herod* the *Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*) is ſaid to have ſerved as the Prieſt. It had in the firſt times of *Chriſtianity* an Epiſcopal See; and in the courſe of the *holy warres* was beautified with a new wall and many fair buildings by King *Richard* the firſt. 5. *Gaza*, more within the land, on the River *Beſor*; a fair and ſtrong Town, formerly called *Aſſa*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the *Heathens*; or elſe it was ſo called by the *Perſians*, in regard that *Cambyſes* here laid up the treaſure which he had provided for the warre of *Egypt*; the word *Gaza* in the *Perſian* language ſignifying treaſures. Of which *Cambyſes* it is ſaid by *Pomponius Mela*, *cum armis Ægyptum peteret huc belli opes et pecuniam in vehi curavit*. After which it was made the Receipt or Treaſury in which the *Perſians* laid the *tributes* of the Weſtern Provinces; whence all Riches had in time the name of *Gazæ*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it againſt the *Philiſtims*, he again deſerted it. Deſtroyed by *Alexander* the *Great*, and re-built again it made notable reſiſtance againſt the *Maccabees*, till at laſt forced by *Simon* the brother of *Judas*, who liked the place ſo well that he intended to have made it his place of reſidence; not ſo decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the dayes of *Brochardus*. And is ſtill the beſt of all this coaſt, built on an hill encompaſſed with rich and pleaſant vallies; the building low and mean as in other places; but ſome of them adorned with pillars of fair *Parian* marble, digged out of the remaining ruins. 6. *Maioma*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it ſelf by *Conſtantine*, by whom called *Conſtantia*: but reſtored again by *Julian* unto thoſe of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maiuma*.

Theſe were the chief places holden by the *Philiſtims*, a ſtrong and Giantlike race of men, ſuch as the Scripture call by the name of *Anak*, or the *Sonnes* of *Anak*. Originally deſcended from *Caſluhim*, and *Copthorim*, of the race of *Mizraim* the ſonne of *Cham*: as appeareth both by the common conſent of antient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jerem.* 47. 4. and *Amos* 9. 7. Theſe being ſetled firſt in the borders of *Egypt* and *Idumæa*, where the *Caſluhim* gave name unto the Province of *Caſiotis*, and the Mountain *Caſius*; proceeded North-wards and ſubdued the *Avim*, a *Canaaniſh* people, planting themſelves in their habitations, as is ſaid expreſſely *Deut.* 2. 23. Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Iſaac* went down to *Gezar*. Governed at firſt by one King, whom they called alwayes by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Egyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*; ſometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but ſtill united in the times of approaching dangers. Too ſtrong to be ſubdued by the Tribes of *Iſrael*, they made head againſt them, and maſtered them at ſeveral times for above 150. years, Tyrannizing over them, till broken by *Sampſon*, and for a time kept off by *Samuel*. Recovering again, they vanquiſhed the *Iſraelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they diſcomfited, and hanged his dead body barbarouſly on the walls of *Bethſan*. But *David* a more fortunate Prince, overthew them in many ſet battels, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the ſtrongeſt Towns they had: and by that means ſo weakned them that they durſt not ſtirre all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troubleſome in the dayes of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their army overthrown, *Ita* and *Ammia*, two of their ſtrong Forts, took and razed; and the Town of *Gath* again diſmantled. In the time of the *Idolatrous Achaz*, aſſociating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the deſtruction of *Judah*) they brake out again, took *Bethſemes*, *Aialon*, *Timnah*, and ſome other Towns, carried away many Priſoners, and ſlew much people. But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them the greateſt part of their Country, betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Which notwithſtanding, they recovered to ſo great eſteem that the whole Countrey had from them the name of *Paleſtine*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabæans*, they loſt both their power and reputation, paſſing in common eſtimate as a part of *Iewry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the times ſucceeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN*, ſo called from *Dan* the fift ſonne of *Iacob*, by *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were muſtered at Mount *Sinai* 62700. fighting men; and 66400. at the ſecond muſter in the Land of *Canaan*; where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim* on the North, *Simeon* on the South,

South, the Tribe of *BENIAMEN* on the East, and the *Mediterranean* on the West.

Places of most note in it, 1. *Ioppa* (now called *Iaffa*) once a famous Mart-Town, and the onely Haven to *Judæa* in foregoing times: the Town, where *Ionah* took ship to fly unto *Tarshish*; where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* from death to life, and where he lying in the house of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a vision taught the conversion of the *Gentiles*. This City they report to have been built before the *flood*: and here they say reigned *Cepheus*, whose daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perseus* delivered from a Sea-monster, some of whose bones the people use to shew to strangers; even till the flourishing of the *Romans*. Just as our Citizens of *Coventry* and *Warwick*, shew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunsmear* heath, and the bones of I know not what Gyant, slain by *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garrisoned by the *Syrians*, who having in the Port a Fleet of good power and strength, invited 200 of the chief Citizens to go aboard with them, and there drowned them all: for which their fleet was fired by *Judas*, and such as did escape the fire fell upon his sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, and the second time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers, by King *Lewis* of *France*, in the year 1250, the *Holy Warres* then drawing to their finall end. Now nothing standing of it but two little Turrets where are certain *Harquebusses* for defence of the Haven; none of the best, defended from the South and West winds with eminent Rocks, but exposed to the fury of the North, which makes it more unsafe than the open Seas, when inraged by Tempests. Not much frequented by the Merchant, who trade here but for Cottons onely; and hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2. *Rama*, by the *Moores* called *Ramula*, situate in a sandy plain on the rising of a little hill; built of free-stone, but the streets thereof narrow, and the houses contemptible. More beautifull in the ruins of some Christian Churches, and a Monastery built by *Philip* the *Good* of *Burgundie*, where the house of *Nicodemus* stood, than in any of the remaining edifices. 3. *Iamnia*, neer *Ioppa*, where *Judas* burnt the rest of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was seen to *Hierusalem*, 240 furlongs off; mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and in the times of *Christianity* an Episcopall See; now not discernable in the ruins. 4. *Cedar*, or *Cedron*, fortified against the *Iews* by *Cendebæus* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hereabouts was overthrown by the *Maccabees*. 5. *Modin*, a small Town, but honoured with the birth and sepulchre of those *Maccabæans*; the Sepulchre being seven Marble Pillars of so great an height, that they served as a mark for Seamen. 6. *Gibbethon*, in the Countrey called *Makats*, a City of the *Levites*, but afterwards possessed by the *Philistims*; at the seige whereof *Nadab*, the Sonne of *Ieroboam* King of *Israel*, was slain by *Baasha*, who succeeded; and *Omri* chosen King on the death of *Zimri*. 7. *Cariathiarim*, where the Ark of the Lord was kept for 20 years in the house of *Aminadab*; that is to say, from the sending it home by the *Philistims*, till brought to *Hierusalem* by *David*. 8. *Beth-semes*, to which the *Ark* was brought by a yoke of Kine, turned loose by the *Philistims*: for irreverent looking into which there were slain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer then 50070 persons of this City. 9. *Tsarah*, neer which is a fountain, called the Fountain of *Æthiopia*, because *Philip* there baptized the *Ethiopian Eunuch*. 10. *Caspin*, taken with great slaughter by *Iudas Maccabæus*. 11. *Lachis*, remarkable for the death of *Amaziah* King of *Iudah*. 12. *Aialon*, a City of the *Levites* also, in the valley whereof the Moon is said to have stood still at the prayers of *Iosuah*, as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon*: the motion of the Heavens being staid, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites*. To this Tribe also belonged the Town and Territory of *Dan*, or *Lesshem*, afterwards called *Cæsarea Philippi*, in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALIM*; whereof we have there spoke already.

3. The Tribe of *SIMEON* was so called from *Simeon* the second Sonne of *Iacob* by his first wife *Leah*: of whom were found at the first muster 59300 able men; and but 22200 at the second muster, when they came into *Canaan*. Where they enjoyed but a small Territory to themselves, their lot falling amongst the *Philistims*, whom they were not able to expell: and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Iudah*, where they were permitted to enjoy some Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards in the reign of King *Hezekiah*, some of them possessed themselves of *Gedar*, belonging to the Children of *Ham*; and others passing Southwards into *Idumæa*, smote the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the Mountains thereof, and dwelt in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themselves and their Children, many of them undertook the Office of *Scribes* or *Scriveners*, and dispersed themselves amongst the rest of the *Tribes*, teaching their Children to write, and giving themselves to the employment of *Publick Notaries*: God herein verifying the curse which *Iacob* had denounced on *Simeon*, that he *should be divided and scattered in* Israel. But for their fixed habitation which fell to them by lot, it lay betwixt *Dan* upon the North, and *Idumæa* on the South; the Tribe of *Iudah* on the East, and the *Philistims* upon the West.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Gerar*, the Royall seat of the two *Abimelechs*, Kings of the *Philistims*, with whom *Abraham* and *Isaac* had to do; and probably of some other of their Kings and Princes, till subdued by the *Israelites*. Situate in the South border of *Canaan*, not far from the Wilderness of *Beersheba*, but in a very healthfull air; called therefore *Regio Salutaris* in the times succeeding. 2. *Siceleg*, or *Ziglag*, belonging to the *Philistims* till the time of *David*, to whom given by *Achish* King of *Gath*, for his place of retreat, when persecuted by *Saul*, from whom flying he lodged here all his goods and carriages: sacked by the *Amalekites*, but the booty recovered from them speedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David*. 3. *Haiin*, a City of the *Levites*. 4. *Cariath-Sepher*, that is to say the *City of Books*, seated within the bounds of *Simeon*, but belonging to *Iudah*, which some hold to be the University or *Academie* of old *Palestine*. A Citie of the *Levites* also, and at first pos-

sessed

ſeſted by the Sonnes of *Anak*, or men of a *Gigantine* ſtature, but taken by *Othoniel*, the Sonne of *Kenaz*, on the promiſe and encouragement which was given by *Caleb*, that whoſoever took it ſhould have his Daughter *Achſah* to wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir*, *Iudg.* 1. 11. known in the time of Saint *Hierome*, by the name of *Daema*. 5. *Chorma*, conceived by ſome to be that place mentioned *Num.* 14. 45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* purſued thoſe of *Iſrael*. 6. *Beerſheba*, or *Puteus juramenti*, ſo called of the Well of waters, and the oath which was there ſworn betwixt *Abraham* and *Abimelech*, *Gen.* 21.31. Memorable in the Scripture for the *Grove* which *Abraham* there planted, the wandring of *Hagar* thereabouts, when ſhe was caſt out of *Abrahams* houſe with her young ſonne *Iſmael*, and the dwelling of *Iſaac*, for which cauſe called the City of *Iſaac*. Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan*, the length whereof is often meaſured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan*: and for that cauſe well fortified by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, when they were poſſeſſed of this Countrey, as ſtanding on the borders of *Idumæa*, and the *Deſarts* of *Arabia*, in the way from *Egypt*.

4. The Tribe of *I U D A H* was ſo called from *Iudah* the fourth ſonne of *Iacob*, by his wife *Leah*; of whom there were numbred at the firſt generall muſter taken neer Mount *Sinai*, 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500, at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan*. The greateſt Tribe, and therefore anſwerably fitted with the largeſt territory; bordering on the *Dead* Sea, Eaſt; upon *Simeon*, Weſt; and the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumæans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes: but otherwiſe unable to contain or feed thoſe infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* muſtering 470000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the reſt of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native Sovereignty over all the others, the *Scepter*, the *Legiſlative* power, and the worlds *Meſſiah*, being all promiſed unto this.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Arad*, ſituate in the entrance of *Iudæa*, in the way from the Wildernes of *Edom*. 2. *Hebron*, one of the antienteſt Cities of *Canaan*: the ſeat of *Giants*, called *Anakim*, or the ſonnes of *Anak*. This word *Anak* ſignifieth a chain worn for ornament: and it ſeemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the ſpoils of his enemies, wore a chain of Gold, leaving both the cuſteme and name to his poſterity. We read the like of *Manlius Torquatus* in the *Roman* Hiſtories. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a buriall place for his dead, and in it his wife *Sarah* was firſt buried; and after her four of the *Patriarchs*. Adjoyning to this town is the plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham* the Father of the faithfull, ſitting in his Tent, was viſited from Heaven by God in the ſhape of man. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hieruſalem*; to this place came the Tribes to anoint him King over *Iſrael*; and hither came *Abſalon*, under the pretence of paying his vowes, to uſurp the Kingdome of his Father. 3. *Tecoa*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet; and alſo of that woman, who by the words which *Ioab* put into her mouth, perſwaded the King to call *Abſolon* from exile. In the Wildernes of this *Tecoa*, there aſſembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and *Mount Seir*, to overthrow *Iuda*. But the Lord being appeaſed by the *publique Faſt*, proclamed and kept by *Iehoſaphat* and the people, ſowed diſſentions amongſt them: So that *the children of* Ammon *and* Moab *ſtood up againſt the inhabitants of* Mount-Seir, *utterly to ſlay and deſtroy them; and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *every one helped to deſtroy one another*. 4. *Cerioth*, or *Carioth*, the birth-place of *Iudas*, hence ſurnamed *Iſcariot* (or the man of *Carioth*) who betrayed our Saviour. 5. *Jether*, or *Jatter*, nigh unto which was fought that memorable battell, wherein *Aſa*, King of *Iudah*, by the help of God, diſcomfited *Zerah*, King of the *Arabians*; whoſe Army conſiſted of a *Million* of fighting men. 6. *Marſha*, the native Soyl of the Prophet *Michah*, neer whereunto firſt *Aſa* King of *Iudah* diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Terah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, conſiſting of above a Million of men; and afterwards *Gorgias* was overthrown by *Iudas Maccabæus*. 7. *Emaus*, (after called *Nicopolis*) memorable for the third overthrow which *Iudas* gave to the ſaid *Gorgias*; for our Redeemers ſhewing himſelf after his *Reſurrection* to *Cleophas* and another of his Diſciples; & for the *hot Bathes* hereabouts, which gave the name of *Salutaris* to this part of *Paleſtine*. The ſouvereign vertue of which waters *Sozomen*, a *Chriſtian*, attributes to the waſhing of *Chriſt's* feet in them, as he paſſed by at that time; but *Ioſephus*, a *Iew*, aſcribes (as it is moſt likely) unto naturall cauſes. 8. *Haſor*, or *Chatſor*, one of the fomtiere Towns towards *Idumæa*. 9. *Odalla*, or *Hadullan*, an antient and magnificent City, taken and deſtroyed by *Joſuah*; and long after much enlarged and beautified by *Ionathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10. *Ceila*, or *Keila*, where *David* ſometimes hid himſelf when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the aſſaults of the *Philiſtims*. 11. *Eleutheropolis*, or the *Free City*, not far from *Hebron*, a City of later date than any of *Iudah*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and much remembred by Saint *Hierome*. 12. *Azecha*, not far from *Emaus*, to which *Joſuah* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon* and his four Aſſociates, whom he diſcomfited in the cauſe and quarrell of the *Gibeonites*, moleſted by them for ſubmitting to their common Enemy. Seated in the vally of *Terebinth*, and of very great ſtrength; preſuming upon which, it revolted from *Ioram* King of *Judah*, at the ſame time that *Libna*, and the *Edomites* had revolted from him. 13. *Beth-Sur* (or *Seth-Sora*) that is to ſay, the *houſe* on the *Rock*, ſo called from the ſituation on a rocky hill, one of the ſtrongeſt places of *Sudah*: Fortified firſt by *Roboam* the ſon of *Solomon*, after by *Iudas Maccabæus*, and finally made impregnable by his brother *Simeon*. 14. *Adoram*, bordering on the *Dead-Sea*, beautified alſo by *Roboam*. 15. *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took his name from the words of *Lot*, alleging that it was but a *little one*, *Gen.* 19.20. as the word *Tſohor* doth import; in whoſe eſcape it was preſerved: being otherwiſe one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pentapolis*, doomed unto deſtruction; the other four, *Sodom*, *Gomorrah*, *Adama*, and *Seboim*, being at the ſame time deſtroied by fire and brimſtone. 16. *Maſſada*, ſituate on an high

high Mountain called *Collis Achillæ*, an impregnable fortreſs, built by *Herod* the *Great*, in the place where *Ionathan* the *Maccabee* had ſometime raiſed a very ſtrong Caſtle; Which he fortified with 27. Turrets, and left therein, as in a place impregnable, and inacceſſible, a *Magazine* of Armes and all warlike furniture for an Army of 100000 men. 17. *Libna*, a ſtrong City ſeated in a corner of *Iudah*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Beniamin*. This City revolted from *Ioram* King of *Iudah*, at the ſame time the *Edomites* did: and continued a *free State*, even as long as *Iudah* continued a Kingdome. 18. *Ziph*, in the wilderneſs, wherein *David* hid himſelf from the fury of *Saul*. Hither, when *Saul* purſued him, *David* came into his Camp (the watch being all aſleep) and took thence his ſpear, and a *Cruſe* of oyl, and departed. *Abiſhai* indeed would fain have killed him: but *David*, though he knew that *Samuel* had by Gods command abdicated *Saul* from the Kingdome, and that himſelf was appointed in his ſtead, would not touch him, but left him to the judgement of the Lord, whoſe *annointed* he was. 19. *Bethlem*, or (to diſtinguiſh it from another of this name in *Zabulon* ſo called) *Bethlem-Iudah*, where Chriſt was born; and the *Innocents* ſuffered for him, before he had ſuffered for them. In this general Maſſacre of young children, a ſonne of *Herods*, which was at nurſe, was alſo ſlain: Which being told unto *Auguſtus*, he replyed, *he had rather be* Herods *ſwine than his ſonne*. His *ſwine* being ſafe in regard the *Iews* were forbidden hog-meat; but his ſonnes frequently made away upon *fears* and *jealouſies*. A Town for this cauſe had in great reſpect by the Primitive *Chriſtians*, beautified by *Helen* with a Stately Temple, which yet ſtandeth entire; by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by Saint *Hierome*) with ſome goodly Monaſteries, in one of which the body of that Father lieth; and by the *Weſtern Chriſtians* with a See Epiſcopal. 20. On the frontire of this Country towards the *Philiſtians*, was that ſtrong Caſtle, which *Herod* repairing, called *Herodium*, ſeated on a hill, the aſcent unto which was made with 200 ſteps of *Marble* exceeding fair and large. In this Countrey alſo are the hils of *Engaddi*, in a Cave of which *David* cut off the lap of *Sauls* garment, and all along the bottomes whereof were the gardens of *Balſamum*, or *Opobalſamum*, the trees of which, were by *Cleopatra* (at ſuch time as ſhe governed *M. Antony*, and the Eaſt,) ſent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Ægypt*; and *Herod*, who durſt not deny them, plucked them up by the roots and ſent them to her.

5. The Tribe of *BENIAMIN* took name from the twelf and youngeſt ſonne of *Iacob*, by *Rachel* his beſt beloved wife, who died in that Child-birth: of which at the firſt muſter neer unto Mount *Sinai*, were numbred 35000 able men; and at the ſecond muſter when they entred the *Promiſed Land*, there were found of them fit for Armes, 45600. perſons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the folly of the men of *Gibeah*: all *Iſrael* arming againſt it, as one man. For beſides thoſe that periſhed in the former battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the ſword: the fury of the Conquerours after that great victory ſparing neither man nor beaſt, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities alſo which they came unto. So great an havock was there made even of innocent maidens, that when the edge of this diſpleaſure was taken off, there were not wives enough found for thoſe few young men which had eſcaped; the other Tribes having bound themſelves by a ſolemn oath, not to beſtow their daughters on them: inſomuch, that they were fain to provide themſelves of wives of the daughters of *Iabeſh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manaſſites* beyond *Iordan*, which they took by aſſault, and of the daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by Stratagem. The whole ſtory ſee at large in the Book of the *Iudges*, chap. 19,20,21.

The territories of this Tribe lay betwixt thoſe of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Iudah* on the South, having the *Dead-Sea* to the Eaſt, and Tribe of *Dan* to the Weſt-ward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities, were, 1. *Micmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 13.2. and the abiding place of *Ionathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* brethren. 1 *Macc.* 9.73. 2. *Miſpah*, famous in being the ordinary place of aſſembly, for the whole body of the people, in matters of warre or peace: as alſo in that ſtanding in the midſt of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the ſeat of *Iuſtice* to which *Samuel* went yearly, to give judgement to the people. 3. *Gebah*, the North border of the Kingdome of *Iudah* toward *Iſrael*. 4. *Gibeah*, the Countrey of *Saul*, the firſt King: where the abuſing of the *Levites* wife by the young men of this Town, had almoſt rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the garden of *Iſrael*. 5. *Ai*, a great and ſtrong City, in the ſiege of which, the *Iſraels* were firſt diſcomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had ſtoln the *accurſed* thing, the Camp was purged; *Joſuah* by a warlike ſtratagem ſurpriſed it. 6. *Gibeon*, the mother City of the *Gibeonites*, who preſaging the unreſiſtable victories of the *Iſraelites*, came to the Camp of *Joſuah*, and by a wile obtained peace of *Joſuah* and the People. Emploied by them in hewing wood and drawing water for the uſe of the *Tabernacle*, after the fraud was made known unto them; called *Nethinims*, *Ezr.* 43. from *Nathan*, which ſignifies to *give*, becauſe they were *given* to the ſervice of the *Tabernacle* firſt; of the *Temple* after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, ſlew ſome of them, for which fact the Lord cauſed a famine on the land: which could not be taken away till ſeven of *Sauls* ſonnes were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This famine did God ſend, becauſe in killing thoſe poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken, which *Joſuah* and the Princes ſwore concerning them. In defence of thoſe *Gibeonites* it was, that *Joſuah* waged war againſt the Kings of the *Canaanites*; and ſtaied the motion of the Sun by his fervent praiers. 7. *Jericho*, deſtroied by the ſound of *Rams-horns*, was not onely levelled by *Joſuah* to the ground, but a curſe inflicted on him that ſhould attempt the re-building of it. This curſe notwithſtanding, at the time when *Ahab* reigned in *Iſrael* (which was about five hundred years after the ruine of it) *Hiel a Bethelite*, delighted with the pleaſantneſs of the place, reedified it. But (as it was foretold by *Ioſuah*) as he laid the foundation of the wals, he loſt his eldeſt Sonne; and when he had finiſhed it, and was ſetting up the gates thereof, he loſt alſo the younger. It may be *Hiel*, when he began his work minded not the prophecy; it may be he be-

lieved

lieved it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Iosuah*, not so much to proceed from the spirit of prophecy, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being spoken in way of wish, or execration. And it is possible, it may be, he chose rather to build the eternity of his name on so pleasant and beautifull a City, than on the lines and issues of two young men. 8. *Anathoth*, the birth-place of the Prophet *Ieremy*, and the patrimony of *Abiathar* the *high Priest*, sent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own when deposed from his Office by that King. 9. *Nob*, called 1 *Sam.* 22. 19. the *Cit* of the *Priests*, destroyed by *Saul*, for the relief which *Abimelech* the high Priest had given to *David*; the *Ark* of the Lord then residing there. 10. *Gilgal*, upon the banks of *Iordan*, where *Iosuah* did first eat of the fruits of the Land, and kept his first *Passeover*; where he *circumcised* such of the People as were born during their wandring in the Wilderness; and nigh to which he set up twelve stones for a Memorial to posterity that the waters of *Jordan* did there divide themselves to give passage to the twelve *Tribes* of *Israel*; where *Agag*, King of the *Amalekites*, was hewen in peeces by *Samuel*, and where *Samuel* once every year administred Justice to the People. For being seated in the midst of the land of *Israel* betwixt North and South, and on the Eastside of the Countrey neer the banks of *Iordan*, it served very fitly for that purpose: as *Mispah* also did, which stood in the same distance in regard of the length of the land of *Canaan*, but situate towards the West Sea, neer the land of the *Philistims*: used therefore enterchangeably for the ease of the people, 11. *Bethel*, at first called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the vision which *Iacob* saw here at his going towards *Mesopotamia*, as is said *Gen.* 28. 19. It signifieth the house of *God*, and was therefore chosen by *Jeroboam*, for the setting up of one of his *Golden Calves*; though thereby, (as the Prophet saith) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the *house of vanity*, *Osee* 4. 15. and 10. 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdome of the *Ten Tribes*, and the Southern border of that Kingdome on the coasts of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Abijah* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a member of his Kingdome till the destruction of it by the *Chaldæans*. Called with the rest of those parts, in the time of the *Maccabees* by the of *Apharema*, which signifieth a thing taken away, because taken from the *Ten Tribes*, to which once it belonged, 1. *Maccab.* 11. 34. where it is said, to have been taken from the Countrey of *Samaria*, and added unto the borders of *Iudæa*. 12. *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and said to have been added to the Realm of *Iudah*, having been formerly the South border of the Kingdome of *Israel*, and therefore strongly fortified by *Baasha*, in the time of *Asa* King of *Iudah*. 13. *Chadid*, or *Hadid*, one of the three Cities (the other two being 14. *Lod*, and 15. *Ono*) which were inhabited by the *Benjamites* after the Captivity. Destroyed in the warres with the Kings of *Syria*, and afterwards rebuilt by *Simon* the *Maccabæan*.

But he chief glory of this Tribe, and of all the rest, and not so only, but of all the whole world besides, was the famous City of *Hierusalem*: seated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be ascended with steep and difficult ascents, (except towards the North;) environed on all other sides also with some neighbouring mountainets, as if placed in the middest of an *Amphitheatre*. It consisted in the time of its greatest flourish of four parts, separated by their several Walls, as if severall Cities; we may call them the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City* seated upon their severall hills. Of these, that which we call the *City of Herod*, had formerly been beautified with the houses of many of the *Prophets*, as in our Saviours time with that of *Mary* the mother of *John Mark*, mentioned acts 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Christians*: the Western part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod* (a wicked but magnificent Prince) for cost excessive, and for strength invincible; containing gardens, groves, fish-ponds, places devised for pleasure, besides those for exercise. Fortified with three Towers at the Corners of it, that on the South-East of the wall, 50 *Cubits* high, of excellent workmanship, called *Miriamnes Tower*, in memory of his beloved but insolent wife, rashly murdered by him. Opposite to which on the South-West corner, stood the Tower of *Phaselus*, so called by the name of his brother, 70 Cubits high, and in form resembling that so much celebrated *Ægyptian Pharos*; and on the North Wall on an high hill the Tower of *Hippicus* exceeding both the rest in height by 14 Cubits, and having on the top two *Spires*, in memory of the two *Hippici*, his very dear friends, slain in his service by the wars.

2. On the South-side stood that part which was called the *Old City*, possessed if not built by the *Iebusites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*; but after called the *City of David*, because taken by him, who thereon built a strong and magnificent Castle, the Royall Court and Mansion of the Kings succeeding. In the West part hereof stood the *Tower* of *David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cæsar*, composed of Marble, and every where enterlaid with gold; and not far off the house of *Annas* and *Caiaphas*, to which the Conspirators led our Saviour to receive his tryall.

3. That which was called the *Lower City*, because it had more in it of the *Valley*, was also called the *Daughter of Sion*, because built after it, in majesty and greatness did exceed the Mother. For therein upon Mount *Moriah* stood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon,) and betwixt it and Mount *Zion*, on another hill, the Palace which he built for his Wife the Daughter of *Ægypt*, and that which he founded for himself, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the *Temple*. West hereof on a lofty rock overlooking the City, stood the Royall Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabeans*, re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa* (though of *Herods* race,) and not far off the *Theater* of *Herods* building; adorned with admirall pictures, expressing the many victories and triumphs of *Augustus Cæsar*. In this part also stood Mount *Acra*, and on that once a *Citadell* built by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, but razed by *Simon*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brothers, because it overtopped the Temple; the house of *Helena* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from *Paganism* to *Judaism*, had here her dwelling, and here died; and finally

ly *Herods Amphitheatre*, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained ſometime with ſuch ſhews and ſpectacles as were in uſe amongſt the *Romans*. And in this part alſo on an high and craggy rock, not far from the Temple, ſtood the *Tower of Baris*, whereon the ſame *Herod* built a ſtrong and impregnable *Citadell*, in honour of *Marc. Antonie*, whoſe Creature he firſt was, called by the name of *Antonius*, having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them 50. *Cubits* high, and the other 70. afterwards garriſoned by the *Romans*, for fear the *Jews* preſuming on the ſtrength of the Temple, might take occaſion to rebel.

4. As for the *New City*, which lay North to the *City of Herod*, it was once a Suburb onely unto all the reſt; inhabited by none but mechanicall perſons, and the meaneſt tradeſ-men; but after incompaſſed by *Agrippa* with a wall of 25 *Cubits* high, and fortified with ninety Turrets. The whole City fenced with a wonderfull circumvallation, on all parts thereof, having a Ditch cut out of the main Rock, as *Joſephus* an eye-witneſs writeth, ſixty foot deep, and no leſs than two hundred and fifty foot in bredth. Firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Melchiſedech* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jebuſites* themſelves, ſay others: by whomſoever built, called at firſt *Jebuſalem*, afterwards *Jeruſalem*, with the change of one letter only; inlarged in time, when made the Royall ſeat of the houſe of *David*, to the Magnificence and greatneſs before deſcribed, till it attained unto the compaſs of ſixty furlongs, or ſeven miles and an half. Unconquered for the firſt four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Iſrael*: and when *David* attempted it, the people preſumed ſo much on the ſtrength of the place, that they told him in the way of ſcorn, that *the blind and the lame* which they had amongſt them (as the Text is generally expounded) ſhould defend it againſt him. But as I think, the late learned Mr. *Gregory* of *Chriſt-church* in *Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, that the Jubeſites by the *blind and lame* (as they knew well the *Iſraelites* called *blind and lame*) did underſtand thoſe *Tutelar Idols*, on whoſe protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*) for defence thereof: and then the meaning muſt be this, thoſe Gods whom you of *Iſrael* call *blind and lame*, ſhall defend our Walls. Why elſe ſhould *David* ſay (had they meant it literally) that his ſoul *hated the lame and the blind*? 2 *Sam.* 5. 8. or why ſhould the People of *Iſrael* be ſo uncharitable, as to ſay that the *blind and lame ſhould not come into the Houſe* (or Temple of God) were it meant no otherwiſe? But notwithſtanding theſe vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Joab*, that fortunate and couragious leader, and made the Royal ſeat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* 30000 workmen, which wrought by the ten thouſand every moneth; 70000 Labourers which carried burdens; 80000 Quarry-men that hewed ſtones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overſeers of the work, no leſſe then 3300 men. The deſcription of this Stately Fabrick we have in the firſt of *Kings*, cap. 6. 7. In the year of the world 2350 it was deſtroyed by *Nabuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hieruſalem*: rebuilt again after the return from the *Captivity*; but with ſuch oppoſition of the *Samaritans*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tooles in one hand, and their ſwords in the other, to repulſe, if need were, thoſe malicious enemies. But yet this Temple was not anſwerable to the magnificence of the former; ſo that the Prophet *Haggi* had good occaſion to ſay to the People, cap. 2. ver. 3. *Who is left among you that ſaw this houſe in her firſt glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in compariſon of it?* Nor fell it ſhort thereof onely in the outward ſtructure, but ſome inward *Additaments*. For it wanted, 1. The *Pot* of *Mannah*, which the Lord commanded *Moſes* to lay up before the *Teſtimony for a Memorial*, *Exod.* 16. 32. &c. 2. The *Rod of Aaron*, which onely budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Iſrael*, and was commanded to be kept before the (Ark of the) *Teſtimony*, for a token againſt *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, *Num.* 17. 10. 3. The *Ark of the Covenant*: the making whereof we have *Exod.* 25. 10. and the placing of it in the *Oracle*, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 *Kings* 6. 19. 4. The *Two Tables of the Law*, writ by Gods own finger, and by *Moſes* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5. *The fire of Sacrifice*, which came down from Heaven, mentioned *Levit.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 1. which by the Prieſt was to be kept continually burning, never to go out. This ſecond Temple, partly becauſe it was grown ruinous, partly becauſe it ſeemed not magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the *Jews*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* pulled down, and ſet up another in the place; making it not much inferiour (if at all) unto that of *Solomon*, but far ſuperiour to the other: *immenſæ opulentiæ Templum*, as *Tacitus* moſt truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did ſometimes vouchſafe his preſence. But here we are to underſtand, that by the Temple is not meant the *Fabrick* onely, or the houſe it ſelf, but alſo all thoſe ſeveral *Courts* with which encompaſſed, being four in number: That is to ſay, *Atrium Sacerdotûm*, or the *Prieſts Court*, which was next unto the *Temple*, wherein ſtood the *brazen Altar* for the dayly ſacrifice, and the *Laver* for the waſhing of the Prieſts and the Sacrifice alſo: into which *Court* might none enter but the Prieſt alone. 2. Then there was *Atrium populi*, or the *Peoples Court*, ſeparated from the other by a wall of three *Cubits* height; to which the *people* did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to ſay their prayers, and to make payment of their vowes. In the middle of this Court, did *Solomon* maken a brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Succeſſors, 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afterwards in imitation of his *Porch* built before the *Temple*, were many *Porches* built about it, for the people to repaire into in rainy weather, which gave to this whole Court the name of *Solomons porch*; whereof ſee *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. Without that ſtood 3. *Atrium Fœminarum*, or the *Womens Court*, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chron.* 20. 5. in the time of *Iehoſophat* King of *Judah*; in which ſtood their Treaſury, or poor-mans Box, mentioned in the one and twentieth Chapter of Saint *Lukes* Goſpell, from whence this whole Court had ſometimes the name of Treaſury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20. where it is ſaid, that *theſe words ſpake* J E S U S *in the Treaſury*, that is to ſay in the *Womens Court*, where the

the *Treasury* or *Alm-Box* stood. Betwixt these last was an Ascent of fifteen steps, on which the *Levites* used to sing those 15. *Psalmes* which do immediately follow the hundred nineteenth *Psalm*, upon each step one; from whence they had the name of *Psalmi Graduales*, or *Cantica graduum*, *i.e.* the *Psalms* or Songs of *degrees*. And so farre all was counted *holy Ground*, upon which none might tread but either natural *Jews*, or *circumcised* Proselytes, whom they called *Proselyti fœderis*, as before was said; or such of the other *Sex*, (not natural *Jewesses*) who having received all outward *initiations*, had bound themselves unto the observation of the law of *Moses*. 4. So was it not with the fourth and last Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the *Court* of the *Gentiles*, designed for the use of those *Gentiles* whom they called *Proselyti portæ*, bound onely unto the keeping of the *Precepts* given the Sonnes of *Noah*. For in that, as unsanctified ground, (though counted part of the *Temple* also) did they permit a market of sheep and oxen, the sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of money-changers, for the oblations of the people: stabling the poor *Gentiles* amongst their Cattel, and ranking them with the worst of men. And out of this *Temple*, or *Court of the Temple*, did *CHRIST* our Saviour cast the *buyers and sellers*, and overthrew the *Tables of the money-changers*, asserting it to its *primitive* and original use, which was to be an *house of prayer for all the Nations*. This last *Court* separated from the other by a wall of three Cubits height, adorned with certain Pillars of equal distance, bearing this inscription, Μη δεῖ ἀλλόφυλον ἐντὸς τῦ Ἁγίυ παεέναι, *i.e. Let no Alien* (or one that is no *Iew*) *enter into the holy place*, And to this wall it is that the Apostle alludeth, saying, *He hath broken down the middle wall of partition betwe.n us* (i.e. betwen the *Iews* and *Gentiles*) *making one of twain*, *Ephes.* 2. 14, 15. inferring hereupon that the *Gentiles* are no more *strangers and forreiners*, *but fellow Citizens with the Saints, and of the houshold of God*, v.19.

But to go forwards with the *Temple*, having continued in the glories to which *Herod* brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally destroyed by *Titus* the sonne of *Vespasian*, in the 69. year after *Christs* nativity. At what time the Temp'e of *Delphos* was utterly overthrown by *Earth-quakes* and thunder-bolts from Heaven, neither of them ever-since repaired, though much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two miracles evidently sheweth that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the *Iewish* Ceremonies, and *Heathen* Idolatries, that so the Kingdome of his sonne might be all in all. For this destruction of the *Temple* of *Hierusalem* I may call a miracle, in regard it was done against the command of *Titus*, who was not onely careful to preserve it, before his Souldiers had put fire to it, but did all that possibly might be to quench it. His reason was Ῥωμάιων γὰρ ἴσως ἡ βλαβλὼ; as *Iosephus* hath it, because the loss thereof would redound so highly to the prejudice of the *Roman* Empire, in being deprived of such a glorious and magnificent structure. But do he what he could with his utmost industry, there was no quenching of it till it was consumed. And it addes somewhat to the marvel, that this should happen on the tenth day of *August*, on which day, the first Temple had been burnt by *Nabuchadnezzar*. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope I shall not be accounted superstitious for this observation) to see how happy or unfortunate one and the same day hath been found unto divers persons. In the wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniards* for the *Realm* of *Naples*, Friday was observed to be very lucky to that great Captain *Gonsalvo*; he having on that day given the *French* many notable overthrows. Wednesday is said to have been fortunate to Pope *Sixtus* the fift; for on that day was he born, on the same made a Monk; on that day created *Generall* of his Order; on the same made Cardinal, the chosen to be Pope, and finally on the same inaugurated. To *Henry* the seventh of *England* Saturday was observed to be very fortunate in all his actions, as was the 24. of *February* unto *Charles* the fift, on what day soever: for on that he came into the world, & in that he took *K. Francis* Prisoner at the battel of *Pavie*, and on the same received the Imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath or Saturday it was taken by *Pompey*, on the same by *Herod*, and on that also by *Titus*.

But goe we forwards to *Hierusalem* as now it standeth, it lay in rubbish and unbuilt (after the destruction of it by *Titus*) till repaired by *Adrian*: and then the Temple not so much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the Reign of *Julian* that Politick Enemy of the Church; who to diminish the infinite number of *Christians* by the increase of the *Jews*, began again to build this Temple. But no sooner were the foundations laid, but a terrible *Earth-quake* cast them up again, and fire from Heaven consumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other materials. As for the City it self, after the desolation in it which was made by *Titus*, it was re-edified by the Emperour *Ælius Adrianus*, who named it *Ælia*, drave thence the *Jews*, and gave it to the *Christians*. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this Mount *Calvary* is comprehended, which was not in the Old before: As on the other side a great part of Mount *Sion*, part of the City of *Herod*, and the Soyl where the *New City* stood, are left out of this: the ruines of the other still remaining visible, to shew the antient greatness and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it stands at present, it is now onely famous for the Temple of the *Sepulchre*, built by *Helena* (whom most report to have been daughter to *Coilus* a *British* King) Mother to *Constantine* the great. Much a doe had the good Lady to find the place where the LORDS body had been laid: for the *Jews* and *Heathens* had raised great hillocks on the place; and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the earth digged away, she found the three *Crosses*, whereon our blessed *Saviour*, and the two *Theeves* had suffered. To know which of these was the right *Cross*, they were all carried to a woman, who had been long visited with sickness, and now lay at the point of death. The *Crosses* of the two *Theeves* did the weak woman no good: but as soon as they laid on her the *Cross* on which the *Lord* died, she leaped up and was restored to her former health. This *Temple* of the *Sepulchre*, even at the first building, was highly reverenced and esteemed by the *Christians* of these parts: and even untill our daies, it is much resorted to, both by *Pilgrims* from

all

all the parts of the *Romiſh* Church, who fondly and ſuperſtitiouſly hope to *merit* by their journey: and alſo by divers Gentlemen of the *reformed Churches*, who travell hitherward; partly for curioſity, partly for love to the antiquity of the place, and partly becauſe their generous ſpirits imitate the heaven and delight in motion. Whoſoever is admitted to the ſight of this *Sepulchre*, payeth nine crowns to the *Turkiſh* Officers: ſo that this tribute onely is worth to the *Grand Signeur*, eighty thouſand Duckats yearly. The other building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible. Built of flint ſtones, Low, and but one roof high; flat on the tops for men to walk on, and fenced with battlements of a yard in hight to preſerve them from falling; the under-rooms no better than vaults, where they repoſe themſelves in the heat of the day.

Some houſes neer the Temple of *Solomon*, and the Palace of *Herod*, adorned with Arches toward the Street, where the paſſenger may walk dry in a ſhowr of rain; but not many ſuch: nor any thing but the ruins left of the antient buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles: and yet to thoſe which take a ſurvey thereof from ſome hills adjoining, where the ruines are not well diſcerned from the ſtanding edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleaſing proſpect. And as the place is, ſuch is the people, inhabited for the moſt part by *Artizans* of the meaneſt quality, gathered together of the ſcumme of divers Nations: the greateſt part conſiſting of *Moores*, and *Arabians*; a few poor *Chriſtians*, of all the *Oriental* Sects, which dwell there for *devotion*, and ſome *Turks*, who for the profit which they make of *Chriſtians*, are content to ſtay in it. Inſomuch that when *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, being then not cured of his wounds, and was carried into this City on the backs of ſome of this raſcal people, he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for *England*, and bad him ſay, that he *ſaw Duke* Robert *carried into Heaven on the backs of devils.*

Come we now to the *Tribe* of *L E V I*, though indeed not reckoned for a *Tribe*, becauſe not planted cloſe together as the other were, nor had whole Provinces to themſelves, but mingled and diſperſed amongſt the reſt of the people, having forty eight Cities aſſigned them for their habitation, proportionably taken out of the other *Tribes*. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly that they being ſet apart for his Service, might be at hand in every place to inſtruct the People; and partly to fulfill the Prophecy which he had ſpoken by *Jacob*, who had fore-ſignified to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he ſhould *be divided in* Jacob, *and ſcattered in* Iſrael. The like fortune he had propheſied of *Simeon* alſo; of the accompliſhment whereof, ſo far as it refered to him, and the diſperſion of his *Tribe*, we have ſpoken before. Now to make up the number of the *twelve Tribes*, *Joſeph* was divided into *Ephraim*, and *Manaſſes*; and the *Levites* were reckoned to belong unto that *Tribe*, within whoſe territorie, that City which they dwelt in, ſtood. Their maintenance was from the *tenths* or *tithes*, the firſt fruits, offerings, and Sacrifices of the People: and as it is in the eighteenth of *Joſhua*, *v.* the ſeventeenth, *The Prieſthood of the Lord was their inheritance.* There were of them four kinds. 1. *Punies* or *Tirones*, which from their childhood, till the five and twentieth year of their age, learned the duty of their offices. 2. *Graduates*, λυσαι, which having ſpent four years in the ſtudy of the Law, were able to anſwer and oppoſe in it. 3. *Licenciates*, περλυται, which did actually exerciſe the *Prieſtly* function. And 4. *Doctors* (*Rabbins* they uſe to call them) who were the higheſt in degree. For maintenance of whom they had (as before is ſaid) the *Tithes*, firſt fruits, and offerings of all the reſt of the People; beſides the 48 Cities aſſigned for their habitation: which laſt, with the ſeverall territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the ſpace of two thouſand *Cubits*, ſeems to have been a greater proportion of it ſelf, than any of the other *Tribes* (with reference to the ſmall number of the *Levites*) had in their poſſeſſions. Then for the *Tithes*, there was not onely a full *tenth* ſet out of all kinds of increaſe, but ſuch an impoſition laid upon all ſorts of grain, as came to more than a ſixt part of the Crop it ſelf. For firſt, out of ſix thouſand buſhels (and ſo accordingly in all after that proportion) a ſixtieth part at leaſt, (and that they termed the *Therumah* of the *evil eye*, or the *niggards* firſt fruits) was to be ſet forth as the *firſt fruits* of the threſhing floor, which was an hundred in the totall. Out of the reſidue, being five thouſand and nine hundred Buſhels, the *firſt Tith* paid unto the *Levites* came to five hundred and ninety Buſhels: and of the reſidue, being five thouſand three hundred and thirty Buſhels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the *ſecond Tithe* unto the *Prieſt* which miniſtred in the *holy Temple*: yet ſo, that ſuch as would decline the trouble of carrying it in hand unto *Hieruſalem*, muſt pay the price thereof at the *Prieſt's* own eſtimate. Laying which ſeverall ſummes together, it appears demonſtrably, that of ſix thouſand Buſhels (*& ſic de cæteris*) there will accrew one thouſand two hundred ſeventy and one Buſhels to the *Prieſts* and *Levites*; and but four thouſand ſeven hundred ſeventy and nine to the Lord or Tenant; which is not fully a ſixt part, as was ſaid before. Then had they the firſt born of mankind and all unclean Beaſts, redeemed at a certain rate; the *firſt fruits* of Wine, Oyl, and wool; the *firſt fruits* of the dough, and of the firſtlings of clean Beaſts (their bloud being ſprinkled on the *Altar*, and the fat offered for a burnt offering) the *fleſh* remained unto the *Prieſt*. They had alſo the meat-offerings, the ſinne-offerings, the treſpaſs-offerings, the ſhake-offerings, the heave-offerings, and the Shew-bread: as alſo of all *Euchariſticall* Sacrifices the breaſt and the ſhoulder; of others the ſhoulder, the two cheeks, and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the skin; beſides the *free-gifts* of the people appearing thrice yearly before the Lord; and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident that they were farre moore liberally provided for than the reſt of the *Tribes*; though they had no whole Countrey allotted to them, as the others had. And ſo much for ſuch parts of the Land of *Paleſtine* as were poſſeſſed in part or wholly, by the Sons of *Jacob*: proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of *Eſau*.

IDUMÆA.

IDUMÆA.

IDUMÆA, or the Land of EDOM, is bounded on the East and South, with *Arabia Petræa*; on the North, with *Judæa*; and on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from the *Edomites*, or Children of *Esau*, whose name is *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 1. the Father of the *Edomites*, v.43. by whom it was planted and possessed: or as others say from the *Idumæi*, a people of *Arabia*, who in a mutiny being forced to forsake their Countrey, came and setled here. The first the more certain of the two, and therefore I adhere to that.

The Countrey towards the Seaside very fat and fruitful; but where it bendeth towards *Arabia*, exceeding mountainous and barren. Heretofore it afforded *Balm*, not now: but still it hath some store of *Palm-trees*, for which much celebrated by some writers of antient times, as *Arbusto* Palmarum *dives* Idume, in the Poet *Lucan*. Sandy and full of vast desarts, for which, and for the want of water, it is thought unconquerable. For though they have many wells there for the use of the natives, yet to them only are they known, not obvious at all to the eyes of strangers, no not upon the strictest search that can be imagined. But all places are not so well furnished, as appeareth by the sad condition which the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom* were fallen into, when they led their Armies thorough the desarts of this Countrey against the *Moabite*, finding herein no water for man or beast: insomuch that the King of *Israel* said, *Alas that the Lord hath called these three Kings together to deliver them into the hand of Moab*, 2 *Kings* 3. 10. Not otherwise delivered out of this perplexity, but by a miracle from Heaven: God sending them the next day an abundance of water, without wind or rain, or any other visible means, ver.17,20.

The people antiently rude and barbarous, greedy of change in government, easily stirred to insurrections, and in love with tumults. Professed enemies to the *Iews*, till conquered by them: and when compelled by *Hyrcanus* to the *Iewish* Religion, they were at the best but false friends, and in the siege of *Hierusalem* by *Titus*, did them more mischief than the *Romans*. At this time subject to the *Turk*, and differ not much in life and custome from the wild *Arabians*.

Rivers of note there can be none, where so little waters. One Lake it hath, though possibly it had been better had they been without it, now small, and every day growing less; the passage being long since bared which it had to the Sea. Antiently, though then narrow, it was two hundred furlongs, or five and twenty miles long; bordered on each side by hills of Sand, which born by the winds into the water did so thicken the same, that it was not easie to be discerned from the dry land; insomuch as whole Armies have been swallowed up in it. Thence called *Barathrum* by the *Latines*; The true name of it formerly was the lake of *Sirbon*. By the *Italians* it is now called *Lago di Teveso*, by the Natives *Bayrema*, the utmost bound of *Palestine* where it joineth on *Ægypt*.

The Chief mountains of it, are, 1. Mount *Seir*, the first habitation of *Esau*, after he left his dwelling in the Land of *Canaan* to make room for *Iacob*, as is said *Gen.* 36. 7, 8. Not called so unless by *Anticipation* (a thing not unusuall in the Scriptures) till the coming of *Esau* thither; the word *Seir* signifying *hairy* or *brisled*, such as *Esau* is described to be, *Gen.* 27.11. To this St. *Hierome* doth accord, deriving the name of *Seir* from *Esau*, *Sumpto ab autore nomine*. His reason is, *Seir quippe interpretatur Hispidus & pilosus qualis* Esau *fuit*. So he in his Comment on *Esaiah*, *cap.* 21. For the same cause, is the whole Countrey of *Edom*, sometimes called Mount *Seir*, in Scripture, by the name of this Mountain, as 2 *Chron.* 20. 10, 23. The 2. hill of note is that called *Cassius*, not far from the Lake of *Sirbon*, now nothing but an huge heap of sand, formerly famous for a Temple of *Iupiter*, and the Sepulchre of *Pompey* the Great. Who being basely murdered here (after his defeat neer *Pharsalia* by *Iulius Cæsar*) by the command of *Ptolomy* the younger, King of *Ægypt*, unto whom he fled (or rather by the command of *Achillas* who then governed his Counsails) by the piety of a private Souldier was here interred in an obscure and homely, but honest Sepulchre. The Sepulchre afterwards re-edified and made more suitable to the man, by the Emperour *Adrian*. The piety of the Souldier not a whit the less for the cost of the Emperour; in whose name *Lucan* had bestowed this *Epitaph* on that first Monument.

Hic situs est Magnus; *placet hoc Fortuna Sepulchrum*
Dicere Pompeii, *quo condi malluit illum,*
Quam terrâ carnisse Socer.

Which may be *Englished* to this purpose.

Here *Magnus* lies, Such, Fortune, is thy doom
That this vile earth should be great *Pompeys* Tomb.
In which even *Cæsars* self would rather have
His Son-in-Law interr'd, than want a grave.

Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Dinhabah*, the City of *Bela*, the first King of *Edom*. 2. *Avith*, the City of *Hadad*, and 3. *Pan*, the City of *Hadar*, two others of the Kings hereof: which three are mentioned *Gen.* 36. 32.35.39. 4. *Berzamna*, placed here by *Ptolomy*, supposed to be the same with *Bersbabee* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, the utmost border South-wards of the Land of *Canaan*: of which more there. 5. *Caparorsa*. 6. *Gammararis*, and 7. *Elasa*, all of them mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which sheweth them to be of some consideration in those times; though now forgotten with the former. 8. *Anthedon*, on the South-side of the River *Besor*; opposite to *Gaza* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, which is situate on the Northern bank. A port Town, once of good repute, till defaced by *Alexander* King of the *Iewes*: re-edified afterwards by *Herod* the *Great*, and named *Agrippias*, in honour of *Agrippa* the favorite and Sonne-in-Law of *Augustus Cæsar*. 9. *Raphia*, memorable for the great defeat which

Ptolomy Philopater there gave unto *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Magnus*. 10. *Rhinocurura*, ſo called from a mishap which befel the Inhabitants hereof, by mangling and defacing their noſes. By *Plinie* and *Strabo* called *Rhinocurula*; and at this day *Pharamica*. Memorable for an old but ill-grounded *tradition*, that here the world was divided by lots, betwixt the poſterity of *Noah*: and ſo conſiderable in the warres of the *holy land*, that it was ſtrongly fortified by *Baldwin* the firſt, to obſtruct the paſſage of ſuch forces as uſually came out on *Egypt* to aid the *Turks*. 11. *Oſtracine*, now *Stragioni*; on the Sea-ſide beneath *Anthedon*, and in that part of the Countrey which from Mount *Caſius* hath the name of *Caſiotis*: aſcribed by *Ptolomy* to *Egypt*; but being they are both on the North of the Lake of *Sirbon*, more properly belonging to *Paleſtina*. But moſt of theſe being now buried in their ruines, there are left none but a few Cattles and ſcattered villages: the villages inhabited for the moſt part by *Arabians*, the Caſtles garriſoned by *Turks*. The chief of which lying on the Sea in the road to *Egypt*, are 12. *Hamones*, a ſmall Caſtle not farre from *Gaza*, uſed chiefly for a *Toll-booth*, to receive cuſtome of ſuch Merchants as paſs that way. 13. *Hariſſa*, a ſmall Caſtle alſo, ſerving ſpecially for the ſame uſe, but ſtronger and of more importance becauſe neer the Sea; from which not above two miles diſtant; and for that cauſe garriſoned with a hundred Souldiers: environed with a few houſes, by reaſon of the commodity of the water, which is ſweet and wholeſome; elſe little better than a Deſart. 14. *Catio*, an other Caſtle, or rather *Toll-booth*, with a garriſon of about 60 Souldiers in it: ſeated in a place ſo deſert and unfruitful, that nothing vegetable groweth in it, but a few ſtarved *Palm-trees*; The water which they have there ſo bad and brackiſh, though eſteemed good enough for the common Souldiers, that all which the Captain drinketh is brought from 15. *Tina*, a Town upon the Sea-ſhore, about twelve miles diſtant, and the laſt upon this coaſt towards *Egypt*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Countrey were the *Horites*, the *Horites which dwelt in Mount Seir*, as we reade in *Gen.* cap. 14, v. 6. that is to ſay, which dwelt in that hilly Countrey which afterwards was called Mount *Seir*. But whether it were ſo called from *Eſaus* dwelling here, as is ſaid before, or from *Seir* the *Horite*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 20. as perhaps may probably be ſuppoſed, need not now come into diſpute. Broken by *Cherdolaomer* and his Aſſociates, they were the more eaſily ſubdued by *Eſau*. Who leaving the land of *Canaan* to his brother *Iacob*, *Gen.*36.7,8. becauſe thoſe parts in which they dwelt did not afford them room enough for their ſeveral Cattel, came into this Countrey, and having *deſtroyed the* Horites *from before them*, *ſucceeded* in their habitations, *and dwelt there in their ſtead even unto this day*, *Deut.* 2. 22. Tis true, we find *Eſau* in *Mount Seir*, before this remove: for it is ſaid, that *Iacob* at his firſt coming out of *Meſopotamia*, ſent meſſengers before him to *Eſau* his brother, unto the *Land of Seir*, the *Countrey of Edom*, *Gen.* 32. 3. And hence a queſtion hath been moved, how *Eſau* dwelling there before *Jacobs* coming, can be ſaid to remove thither to make room for him. To this Sir *Walter Raegh* and ſome others anſwer, that at the time when *Jacob* came out of *Padan-Aram*, *Eſau* dwelt in thoſe parts of the Mountains which lie on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, called afterwards *Galaad* and *Mount Hermon*, by which *Jacob* muſt needs paſſe in his way to *Canaan*; which Mountains then were called by the name of *Seir*, and from thence *Syrion* by the *Zidonians* or *Phœnicians* in the ages following: from whence driven by the *Amorites* at ſuch time as they vanquiſhed thoſe of *Moab* and *Ammon*, they were forced to ſeat themſelves on the South of *Canaan*, where *Moſes* found them. But with this I am by no means ſatisfied. For beſides that it maketh *Eſau* to carry a *Mount Sier* with him, whereſoever he went; it doth expreſſely differ from the plain words of Scripture, both in the occaſion and the time of his ſetling there: the victories which the *Amorites* had over the *Ammonites and Moabites*, being then freſh and newly gotten when *Moſes* with the children of *Iſrael* came into theſe parts, which was at the leaſt 200. years after *Eſau* did withdraw himſelf to the land of *Edom*. And therefore I ſhould rather think, that *Eſau* finding himſelf diſtaſted by his Father and Mother, in regard of his *Canaanitiſh* mariages, and the hatred which he bare to *Jacob*, departed from them, and ſojourned in the South parts amongſt the *Horites* of *Mount Seir*; that thither *Jacob* ſent his meſſengers to make peace between them; that the reconciliation being made, *Eſau* returned unto the place where before he ſojourned; and having brought thence his children, cattel, and the reſt of his ſubſtance, fixed himſelf again neer the houſe of his *Fathers*; and finally, that on *Iſaacs* death, finding his family increaſed, his heards of flocks augmented, and the reſt of his ſubſtance alſo doubled by the death of his father; he thought it fit alſo to enlarge his dwelling, and ſo removed back once more to *Edom*. A thing not needful to be done had he dwelt in *Galaad*, *Hermon*, or any other part of that Mountainous Tract: conſidering the great diſtance betwixt thoſe Mountaines and the City of *Hebron* in which *Iſaac* dwelt, nigh to which *Iacob* alſo had ſet up his dwelling.

But on what ground ſoever *Eſau* left the poſſeſſion of the land of *Canaan* to his brother *Iacob*, certain it is, he did it not without ſome ſtrong impulſions from the ſpirit of God, by whom the poſſeſſion of that Land was deſigned for *Iacob*; to whom the bleſſing & the birth-right had been both preferred. And though *Eſau* overruled by Almighty God, ſeemed to have forgotten all diſpleaſure againſt his brother: yet the quarrel began by them in the womb of *Rebecca*, brake out more violently in the times of their poſterity. Inſomuch that *Moſes* could by no means obtain a paſſage thorow *Edom* into the *Promiſed Land*, though he ſought it by a fair addreſs, and preſſed it by all thoſe motives and inducements which a wiſe and underſtanding man could have ſet before them. For though the King of *Edom* then being, ſeemed to pretend nothing but the ſafety of himſelf and his people, both which he might have hazarded (in all humane Reaſon) by opening the cloſures of his Mountains, and letting in a Nation mightier than his own: yet it is poſſible there might be as much of ſtomach as worldly policy, and that aſwell the buying of the birth-right for ſo ſleight a trifle, as the getting of the bleſſing by ſuch fraudulent means, might not be forgotten. For he not onely denyed them paſſage and

and ſent back word expreſſely they ſhould not go thorow, but came againſt them with much people and a ſtrong band, as is ſaid *Numbers* 20. 20. But the *Edomites* could not for all this prevent their deſtiny, or make the word of God to be ineffectuall, by which it had been ſignified, when they were yet in their mothers womb, that the *elder ſhould ſerve the younger*. Not verified in *Eſaus* perſon, for *Iacob* called him his *Lord Eſau*, profeſſed himſelf to be his Servant, and willingly ſubmitted to his ſuperiority; but in the iſſues of them both: then ſpecially when *David* had ſubdued the *Edomites*, and made them Homagers and Vaſſals to the Crown of *Iudah*, 2 *Sam.* 8. 14. Nor is leſs intimated in thoſe words of the 60 *Pſalm*, where it is ſaid, *Over Edom will I caſt my ſhooe*; it being a cuſtome of old times to fling their ſhooes upon a Countrey conquered or deſigned for conqueſt. *Pro actio calceamenti ſuper Regionem aliquam denotat ſubiicere*, as my Author hath it. And in alluſion unto this, there is a ſtory in the Chronicles of the Kings of *Man*, how *Magnus* King of the *Iſles* ſent his Ambaſſadours to *Murchard* a King in *Ireland*, commanding him on the next *Chriſtmas* day to carry openly the ſhooes of King *Magnus* upon his ſhoulders, in teſtimony, ſaith the ſtory, that he was his Vaſſal. The caſting of the Shooe on a conquered Countrey, or the treading of it under feet, another ceremony of this nature mentioned *Deut.* 33.29. do come both to one, and ſignifie that vaſſallage or bondage, which ſuch a captivated Country was reduced unto.

But on the other ſide, there was another part of the heavenly *Oracle*, which made for *Edom*: *Iſaac* had ſignified to *Eſau*, that though the bleſſing given to *Jacob* could not be revoked, and that he muſt content himſelf with being a ſervant to his brother for a certain ſeaſon: yet there ſhould one day come a time in which he ſhould not onely break that yoke from off his neck, but obtain the dominion over him, *Gen.* 27. 40. The firſt part verified, when the *Edomites* revolted from the Kings of *Judah* in the time of *Joram*, or *Jehoram* the Sonne of *Jehoſophat*: and inſtead of a *Vice-Roy* ſent unto them from the Court of *Hieruſalem*, ſet up a King of their own Nation; never returning after that to the houſe of *David*. For though *Joram* made war preſently upon them, and got the victory, yet he did not proſecute it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their ſtrong holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got honour enough in the eye of the world by being maſter of the Field; or ſhewing his abilities in command of a greater Army than the *Edomites* could bring againſt him. The like errour was committed alſo by *Amaziah*, who by a vaſt Army of 300000 fighting men, did no greater wonders, than the killing of 10000, and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left garriſons in any of their defenſible places, nor reduced any part of their Countrey under his obedience. And for the later part thereof, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater* an *Idumæan*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* his Sonne, and their Succeſſors, who in the decrepit age of the houſe of *Iacob*, became Kings of the *Iews*, and lorded over them with inſolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate paſſages of their State and ſtory, it ſeemeth that at the firſt they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of thoſe ſeverall families of which they were the heads or Princes. But as ambition and power did prevail among them, the moſt potent having vanquiſhed or awed the reſt, took to himſelf the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their ſeveral Cities in which they reigned, ſeem to have been choſen by election, or otherwiſe to come in by ſtrong hand, as the ſword could carry it. The names of which are thus ſet down in the book of *Geneſis*.

The Kings of *Edom*.

1. *Bela*, the Sonne of *Beor*.
2. *Iobab*, the Sonne of *Zerah*.
3. *Haſham*, of the Land of *Temani*.
4. *Hadad*, the Sonne of *Bedad*, who warred againſt the *Midianites*, and vanquiſhed them in the fields of *Moab*, *Gen.* 36. 35.
5. *Samlah*, of *Maſrekah*.
6. *Saul*, of *Rehoboth* by the River *Euphrates*.
7. *Baal-Hanan*, the Sonne of *Achbor*.
8. *Hadar*, the Sonne perhaps of *Baal-Hanan*, for I find no mention of his Father. After whoſe death, the heads of the ſeverall Families reſumed the Government again, ruling over their own *Tribes*, without any one *Soveraign* or Supreme. And all theſe Kings they had before there reigned any King in *Iſrael*, *Gen.* 36. 31. that is to ſay, before any form of *Supreme* Government was eſtabliſhed amongſt them in the perſon of *Moſes*, called by the name of a King in the book of *Deut.* chap. 35. *v.* 5. But this diſtracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at ſuch time as the Children of *Iſrael* came out of *Egypt*: for it was unto the *King of Edom* that *Moſes* ſent Meſſengers from *Kadeſh* to deſire a paſſage thorow his Countrey. Which being denied, and the *Edomites* in Armes to defend their paſſes, *Moſes* forbore to force his way, though the neereſt for him, partly becauſe he had no mind to ſpend thoſe forces in fighting with hills and deſarts, which were deſigned for the conqueſt of another Countrey; but principally becauſe God commanded him not to medle with them, or to take ſo much as a foot of their Countrey from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no ſuch *obligation*, having vanquiſhed the *Syrians* and other Nations round about him, followed his fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Garriſons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites became his ſervants*. Governed from thenceforth by a Deputy or *Vice-Roy* (as is ſaid before) till the time of *Joram* the Son of *Jehoſophat* King of *Judah*; in whoſe Reign they revolted as before was ſaid. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeavoured, that ſo the word of God might be all in all. Onely the *Simeonites* in the reign of *Hezekiah*, wanting paſture for their cattel, and room for themſelves, ſeized on the parts which lay neereſt to them, deſtroyed the inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their habitations, becauſe there was paſture for their flocks, 1. *Chron.* 4. 39. Provoked wherewith, and with the natural *Antipathy* which

was between them. No people were more mischievously bent against *Judah*, than these *Edomites* were: no men so forward of themselves to assist *Nabuchadonosor* against *Hierusalem*; none that so vehemently cryed *Down with it down unto the ground*; none half so ready to set fire to the *holy Temple*. But they got little by this service to the *Babylonians*, their own thraldome following close upon that of *Judah*: with whom made fellow-subjects to the *Chaldæans*, as afterwards to the *Persians*, and Kings of *Syria* of the race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of that house, subdued by *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabæan* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be *Circumcised*, and to receive the *Law* of *Moses*: not onely reckoned after that, as a Province of the *Jewish* Kingdome, but as naturall *Jews*. Which notwithstanding, and that the setting of that Crown on the head of *Herod* and his house, being originally *Idumæans*, might in all reason have extinguished their inveterate malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Forgetting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians*, they would needs aid the *Romans* against them also: putting themselves into *Hierusalem*, when besieged by *Titus*, onely of purpose to betray it; joyning with the *seditious* there, doing more mischief in the City than the enemy had done without; and finally, setting fire to the *second Temple*, as they had done unto the *first*. Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

Having thus gon through with the story of those neighbouring Nations which encompassed *Canaan*: it will be seasonable to look on the affairs of the *Canaanites* first, and after of the house of *Jacob* who possessed their Countrey. First for the *Canaanites*, they descended from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*, who with his eleven sons were here setled immediatly after the confusion at *Babel*. Of those twelve, (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phœnicia*, and the coasts of *Syria*, that is to say, *Sidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Semari*, and *Hamathi*: the other seven in those parts which we now call *Palestine*, though not all of that, the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Ammonites*, and *Ituræans*, being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of those seven came those seven Nations, which by Gods appointment were totally to be rooted out, *viz.* the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, the *Hittites*, the *Iebusites*, the *Hivites*, the *Gergeshites*, and the *Perizites*. But from which of the sons of *Canaan* these last descended, is not yet agreed on, unless perhaps they were descended of the *Sinites* (not otherwise reckoned in this muster) and got the name of *Perizites*, on some new occasion. Governed at first by the *Chiefest* of their severall Families, with the names of Kings; the number of which increased as their Families were subdivided into smaller branches: insomuch as *Iosuah* found 31 Kings of the *Canaanites* onely, besides what might descend from those who were setled in *Phœnicia* and the borders of *Syria*. The most potent of those Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Iebusites*, and the *Chanaanites* properly so called. Of which the *Amorites* had not onely inlarged their borders beyond *Iordan*, but in the reigns of *Og* and *Sihon*, ruling at the same time in their severall parts, had thrust the *Ituræans*, *Ammonites* and *Moabites*, out of most of their Countries: and so restored the same again to the race of the *Emmims* and *Zanzummims* (of which they were) who had been dispossessed thereof by the Sons of *Lot*. These vanquished in the time of *Moses*, and their habitations assigned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half-tribe of *Manasses*. The *Canaanites* properly so called, as they were the first which fought with the house of *Iacob*; so they were the last of all these people that contended with them. They first fought with them under the conduct of *Arad* their King, who thinking it more safe and prudent to encounter the Enemy in an other mans Countrey, than to expect them in his own; gave battell unto *Moses* in the *Desarts* of *Moab*: and having cut off some of the out-parts of his Army, and taken a few Prisoners, he went home again. But *Iabin*, under whom they made their second onset, went to work more resolutely; and taking a time when the iniquities of that People cried loud for vengeance, so prevailed against them, that he tyrannized over them for the space of 20 years. After which time, his Army being discomfited by *Barak*, in the time of *Debora*; *Sisera*, his great Captain, slain by *Iael* the wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*; and most of his Cities taken and possessed by the *Israelites*; he perished himself in the close of that war; for it is said that they prevailed against *Iabin the King of* Canaan, *till they had destroyed him*, Judg. 4. 24. As for the *Iebusites*, they were grown so formidable (at the time of the comming of the *Hebrews*) to the rest of their neighbours, that their King *Adonibezek* bragged that he had cut off the thumbs and great toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the crums which fell under his table. But being vanquished by *Iudah*, he was served in the same kind himself by *Iudah* and *Simeon*, and carried to *Hierusalem*, where he died: the whole Countrey of the *Iebusites*, and the City of *Hierusalem* it self, the fortress of *Mount Zion* excepted onely, being made a prey unto the Victor. And though the *Iebusites* held that fortress till the time of *David*, yet being they were onely on the defensive side, and made no open war against those of *Israel*, I reckon the *Canaanites* as the last which did contend with them for the chief command.

The *Canaanites* thus conquered, and for the most part worn out of the Countrey, the *Israelites* succeeded in their possessions; according to the promise of God made to *Abraham*, renewed to *Isaac*, and confirmed to *Iacob*. Governed, after the death of *Moses* and *Josuah*, by the *Congregation of the Elders*, as appears by many passages in the book of *Iudg.* the *Iudges* (as the Scripture calleth them) not being the *ordinary* Magistrates, but raised up *occasionally* by God for some speciall purpose, according to the exigence of their affairs. Carrying in this a likeness unto the *Dictators* in the State of *Rome*. So that the Government at the first was an *Aristocratie*; though to say truth, it rather was a *Theocratie*, as the Fathers call it, that is to say, a government wherein God presided more immediatly than in other Nations. And thereupon when the People cried out to *Samuel* to have a King, God said unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the people, for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me that I should not reign over them*, 1 *Samuel* 8. 7. God was their King, and he had mightily reigned over them since they came out of *Egypt*; but they desired to have *a King like to other Nations*, to go in and out before them, and to fight their battels; a King whom they might see with their bodily eyes, and converse with him in such manner as the people did, which dwelt round about them. And so came in the *Monarchy* or Kingly Government, begun

gun in *Saul*, but confirmed in *David*; the first a *Benjamite*, the second of the Tribe of *Judah*; of which *Jacob* had fore-told at the time of his death, that the Kingdome of his People should be vested in it. But there were onely three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole house of *Israel*; the Kingdome after *Solomons* death being rent in twain; ten of the twelve *Tribes* revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Sonne of *Nebat*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and so much of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simeon*, as lay intermingled with and in the Tribe of *Judah*, remaining firm to *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who misguided by some *evil Counsellers* which were about him, had given occasion to the breach. A breach that never could be soldered or made up again; notwithstanding the fair opportunities which were after offered, of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel* (for so the two Kingdomes were distinguished) in the time of *Joas*; and rejoining *Israel* to *Judah*, in the time of *Asa*. The opportunity offered to *Asa* King of *Judah* for regaining the revolted Tribes, was the confusions which in his time had fallen out amongst them by severall factions, each challenging the privilege of making a King unto it self: *Nadab* the Sonne of *Jeroboam* being slain by *Baasha*, *Ela* the sonne of *Baasha* murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* deposed by *Omri* the Father of *Ahab*, and *Tobni* a competitor against *Omri* also. During which time, as the people must needs suffer many great oppressions, which might make them think of their allegeance to the house of *David*: so could not *Asa* have wanted many fair advantages (had he made his best use of them) of working on the divided Kingdome, and reducing it back unto his house. But there were two reasons which prevailed more against this re-union, than any that could be presented to invite them to it. First the imperiousnes and arbitrary government of the Kings of *Judah*, putting to death without formality of law, those that had displeased them; as in the case of *Shimei*, *Ioab*, and *Adonijah*, in the daies of *Solomon*: and raising on the Subject what sums they pleased, though more for ostentation of their own magnificence, than the necessities of the State. Of which exactions *Rehoboam* the Sonne of *Solomon* was so far from promising a release, or some mitigation at the least, that he threatned to make them more than double what they had been formerly: and how knew they, but that *Asa*, and all such as descended from him, might be of the same temper also, and act according to those Principles which their Fathers left them. Whereas the Kings of *Israel* holding by no other title than the love of their people, and the moderate and regular form of their government over them, had put their mouthes in such a tast of the sweets of liberty, and made them so much masters of their own both lives and fortunes; that *Naboth* durst deny his vine-yard to *Ahab*, though offering full compensation for it; and *Ahab* durst not question the life of *Naboth*, but by suborning witnesses to accuse him of blasphemie. So that the present confusions under which they suffered by the change and violent death of so many Kings one after another, being only temporary, and not likely to continue long; were no perswasions unto them to accept of *Asa*, and much less to offer themselves unto him; who conceived all adversity to be far more tolerable than the weighty Scepter of that house. And there was something also of present profit which swaied the business. The people were obliged by the Law of *Moses* to make three chargeable journeys yearly to *Hierusalem*, to worship there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double tenth yearly out of their estates (besides offerings and other casualties) to the *Priests* and *Levites*. *Jeroboam* out of an ungodly policie, fearing these frequent journeys unto *Hierusalem* might be an occasion of reducing them to the house of *David*, released them of that charge and trouble, by setting up a new form of worship, erecting golden Calves for them in *Dan* and *Bethel*, and leaving every man unto the liberty of his own opinion, so it tended not to the establishment of the *old Religion*. And on the other side the *Levites* which dwelt amongst them, and received their *Tithes*, not willing to conform to these new impieties, and finding that their Ministery was no longer useful, withdrew themselves into the Kingdome of *Judah*, and left the antient places of their habitations: by means whereof, the people were released of those payments also. If they returned again to their old obedience, and accepted *Asa* for their King, they must return again also to their old Religion; the golden Calves of their own imaginations and inventions must no more be worshipped: and (which no doubt prevailed most on the common people, who like that Religion best which costs them nothing) the antient payments to the *Priests* and *Levites* must come up again. Rather than so, they were resolved to suffer yet a little longer, to please themselves in expectation of more settled times: and so no falling off to *Asa*, though as moderate and religious a Prince as they could have wished for, had they had power of fashioning a King to their own desires. Now as this opportunity of rejoining *Israel* unto *Judah*, proved unsuccesful unto *Asa*, so did the like of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel* prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the Sonne of *Jehoahaz* and grand-child of *Iehu* King of *Israel*, who being provoked by *Amaziah* King of *Judah* made warre upon him; and not onely discomfited him without battell, and took him prisoner without blowes, but led him captive to the very walls of *Hierusalem*, and by his authority got the gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with this honor, (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Israel*) he caused 400 Cubits of the wall to be broken down, thorow which breach he entered triumphantly in his chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him: and being entered, sacked both the Royal palace, and the holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Ioas* of uniting *Judah* unto *Israel*; and this the loss of it. For the people, otherwise like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whose noble Acts they had heard much speech; were so exasperated by these rash and unseasonable out-rages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the *Holy Altars* were not safe from; and as a covetous and ungoverned Tyrant, not able to concoct the fulness of his own prosperities. If he were thus unsatiable in his covetousnes, and insupportable in his pride, when he was a *Candidate* for their Kingdome: when in all common prudence he should have sought their loves, and insinuated into their good opinions, by easing them of former taxes, and shewing them fair hopes of his moderate government: what must they look for when their towns were fill'd with garrisons, *Hierusalem* stuffed with armed troops; & all the Princes of the house of *David*, from whom they might

Redemption from cruel bondage, deſtroyed or baniſhed, or otherwiſe made unable to afford them ſuccours? Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to riſe as one man againſt him, and let him ſee, that neither their Army was ſo ſcattered, nor themſelves ſo cowed, but that they durſt adventure it to a farther trial. The fear of which made *Ioas* ſenſible of the loſs of his opportunity: and ſo content with hoſtages for his ſafe retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his victory, than the ſpoil and honour. And that this poſſibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the ſucceſs of the affair to a further hazard; may be made probable by the like occurrence in the ſtory of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this. *Peter de Medicis* had very weakly opened the gates of *Florence* to *Charles* the eighth, then in his paſſage towards *Naples*. *Charles* entreth it *triumphantly* as a conquered City, armed in compleat manner, and his lance on his thigh; his whole army with him. Many inſolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to fight in defence of their liberties. *Charles* willing to go forwards on his march towards *Naples*, propounds conditions in writing: but ſo intolerable, that *Peter Cappon* one of the chief Citizens catching the papers out of the Kings Secretaries hands, and tearing them before his face; *do you*, ſaith he, *ſound your trumpets, we will ring our bells, and ſee what will follow.* Which ſtout and peremptory dealing did ſo daunt the *French*, that they condeſcended upon very eaſie termes to abandon the City, and reſtore all the places appertaining unto their eſtate, which were then in his power. The like conſideration probably might prevail with *Ioas*, as did then with *Charles*; and prompt him not to fight with an inraged multitude in the ſtreets of a City where he could make no uſe of his horſe; and where he might be more galled with women and children, throwing ſtones or darts out of their windows, and from the tops of their houſes, than with an armed enemy in the open field. Nor wanted *Ioas* an example of this kind in the times before him, even that of *Abimelech* in the book of *Iudges*, who having taken the Town of *Thebet*, and forced all the men and women into the *Caſtle*, was ſlain there by a peece of a Mill-ſtone, thrown at his head from one of the Turrets of it by the hands of a woman.

To proceed further in the ſtory of theſe ſeveral Kings, or recapitulate the ſumme of their principal actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unneceſſary: the Scripture being in the hands of all ſorts of perſons, in which their actions, and ſucceſſions, are at large contained. So that I onely ſhall ſubjoin their names, with the time of their reigns, and the year of the world in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the reſt unto the induſtry and ſearch of the Chriſtian Reader, of whoſe acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no queſtion. This onely I premiſe as concerning the *Iudges*, that the time of their continuance in that authority is not to be meaſured from the time of their coming to it, till the entrance of the next Succeſſor, as in that of the Kings; theſe being occaſionally raiſed by Almighty God, for ſome preſent ſervice, and no ſtanding or eſtabliſhed *Magiſtrates*; except *Moſes and Ioſuah* onely, who held the government during life, and managed it as abſolute Princes.

The Judges and Captains of the *Hebrews*.

A. M.		A. M.	
2454.	1. *Moſes*, a *Levite*, the Lawgiver of the *Hebrews*, brought by him out of the Land of *Egypt*. 40.	2693.	8. *Tola*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. 23.
2494.	2. *Joſuah*, an *Ephramite*, who ſetled them in the land of *Canaan*. 33.	2716.	9. *Iair*, a *Gileadite*. 22.
2526.	3. *Othoniel*, of *Judah*, by whom they were delivered from the *Meſopotamians*.	2760.	10. *Iephtah*, a *Gileadite*, by whom the People were redeemed from the hand of the *Ammonites*,
1530.	4. *Ehud*, a *Beniamite*, who reſcued them from the hand of *Eglon* King of *Moab*.	2766.	11. *Ibſan*, of *Bethlehem*. 7.
2610.	5. *Deborah* the Propheteſs, and *Barack* the *Nephtalite*, who diſcomfited the hoſt of *Jabin* King of the *Canaanites*.	2773.	12. *Elon*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.
2650.	6. *Gideon*, a *Manaſſite*, who ranſomed them from the power of the *Midianites*. 40.	2783.	13. *Abdon*, an *Ephramite*. 8.
2690.	7. *Abimelech*, the Baſe Sonne of *Gideon*. 3.	2790.	14. *Samſon*, a *Danite*, the Avenger of the People upon the *Philiſtims*.
		2809.	15. *Eli*, the High Prieſt, in whoſe time the Ark was taken by the *Philiſtims*.
		2849.	16. *Samuel*, the Prophet, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, in the later end of whoſe government, the People being weary of the command of their former Rulers, deſired to have a King, to go in and out before them like other Nations.

The Kings of the *Hebrews*.

A. M.	
2878.	1. *Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the firſt King of the *Hebrews*, an unlucky one to begin withall. 17.
2890.	2. *David*, the Sonne of *Jeſſe*, of the Tribe of *Judah*, the moſt victorious King of the *Hebrew* Nation. 40.
2930.	3. *Solomon*, the Sonne of *David*, renowned for building of the Temple. The Kingdome afterward divided into *Judah*, and *Iſrael*.

The

The Kings of *Judah*.

A. M.

2971. 1. *Rehoboam*, the Sonne of *Solomon*, the first King of *Judah*. 17.

2988. 2. *Abijah*, the Sonne of *Rehoboam*. 3.

2991. 3. *Asa*, the Sonne of *Abijah*; discomfited the numerous Army of *Zerah*, the *Ethiopian* or *Arabian King*.

3031. 4. *Iehosaphat*, the Sonne of *Asa*, a great Reformer of the State, both Ecclesiasticall and Civil. 35.

3056. 5. *Iehoram*, the Sonne of *Iehosophat*. 8.

3064. 6. *Ahaziah*, the Sonne of *Ieboram* by *Athaliah* his wife, the Sister of *Ahab* King of *Israel*. 1.

3065. 7. *Athaliah*, the Daughter of *Omri*, and Sister of *Ahab*, having destroyed the Regall race of the house of *David*, usurped the Kingdome for 7. years.

3072. 8. *Ioash*, the onely surviving Heir of the house of *David*, restored by *Iehojada* the Priest, to the Throne of his Ancestors. 40.

3112. 9. *Amaziah*, the Sonne of *Ioash*, vanquished by *Ioash* King of *Israel*, and a breach forced thorow the walls of *Hierusalem*. 29.

3141 10. *Azariah*, the Sonne of *Amaziah*, called also *Uzziah*; smote with a *Leprosie* by the Lord. 52.

3192. 11. *Iotham*, the Sonne of *Uzziah* or *Azariah*. 16.

3208. 12. *Achaz*, the Son of *Iotham*, in whose time, and on whose occasion, the Kingdome of *Damascus* was ruined by *Tiglath-Pileser* King of *Assyria*; and the Tribes on the farther side of *Iordan* led into captivity. 16.

3224. 13. *Hezekiah*, the Sonne of *Ahaz*, a religious Prince; in whose time the Kingdom of the ten Tribes was destroyed by the *Assyrians*; and that of *Assyria*, by the *Babylonians*.

The Kings of *Ispael*.

A. M.

2971. 1. *Ieroboam*, the Sonne of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the first King of *Israel*. 22

2993. 2. *Nadab*, the Son of *Ieroboam*. 2.

2995. 3. *Baasha*, of the Tribe of *Issachar*, having slain *Nadab*, reigned in his steed. 24.

3019. 4. *Ela*, the Son of *Baasha*. 2.

3021. 5. *Zimri*, a King of seven daies onely, the murderer of *Ela*, and his own Executioner.

6. *Omri*, the Captain of the host, who removed the Regall seat from *Tirzah* to *Samaria*. 8.

3029. 7. *Ahab*, the Son of *Omri*, and husband of *Iezebel*.

3051. 8. *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Ahab*. 2.

3053. 9. *Ieboram*, the Brother of *Ahaziah*. 12

3065. 10. *Iehu*, the Captain of the host, vanquished and slew *Ieboram*, reigning in his steed. 28.

3093. 11. *Iehoahaz*, the Son of *Iehu*. 17.

3110. 12. *Ioash*, the Son of *Iehoahaz*. 16.

3126. 13. *Ieroboam* II. the Son of *Ioash*. 41.

3178. 14. *Zachariah*, the Son of *Ieroboam* the second, after an *Interregnum* of 11 years, succeeded in the Throne of his Father: slain at the end of six moneths, by

15. *Shallum*; who at the moneths end was slain by

3178. 16. *Menahem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 10.

3188. 17. *Pekahiah*, the Sonne of *Menahem*; slain by

3190. 18. *Pekah*, the Son of *Remaliah*; served in the same kind after a reign of 20 years, by

3210. 19. *Hoseah*, the Son of *Ela*, in the fifth year of whose reign, and the 18th year from the death of *Pekah*, *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*, having by a siege of three years carried the City of *Samaria*, destroyed the Kingdome of *Israel*, and led the greatest part of the People into Captivity.

3253. 14. *Manasses*, the wicked sonne of the good King *Hezekiah*, restored *Idolatry*, and put to death the Prophet *Esaiah* for opposing his irreligous courses. 55.

3308. 15. *Amon* the sonne of *Manasses*, and as bad as he; slain by a conspiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but two years onely.

3310. 16. *Iosiah*, the sonne of *Amon*, a right godly King, unfortunately slain by *Pharaoh Necoh* King of *Egypt*, at the battel of *Megiddo*. 31.

3341. 17. *Iehoahaz*, the sonne of *Iosiah*, a King of 3. moneths onely, deposed and sent Prisoner by *Pharaoh Necoh*, to *Riblah* in the land of *Hamath*, since called *Antiochia*.

18. *Iehoiakim* the sonne of *Iosiah*, and half Brother of *Iehoahaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necoh*, who changed his name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Iehoiakim*. 11.

3351. 19. *Iehoiachin* or *Iechoniah*, the sonne of *Iehoiakim*, at the end of three moneths led captive unto *Babylon*, with his wives and Mother, and the great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20. *Zedekiah*, an other of the sonnes of *Iosiah*, and brother by the whole blood of *Iehoahaz*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Iehoiachin* or *Iechoniah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling against his Benefactor, contrary to the Counsel of the Prophet *Ieremy*, he was taken Prisoner in the 11. year of his reign, *Hierusalem* destroyed, the Temple ruinated, and the People carried Captive to the land of *Babylon*. A.M. 3362. where they lived in exile 70 years: which time being expired, *Cyrus* the King of the *Persians*, gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edifie their City and Temple; which work being finished, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah*, and *Zorobabel*, and the Nation again setled in some part of their old possessions, they were after governed by their *High-Priests*, and the *Counsel of the Elders*, which they called the *Sanhedrim*: the *High-Priest* bearing the chief stroke, and being looked on as the man of the greatest power. And therefore I will here subjoyn the Catalogue of so many of them,

as

as governed the affaires of this Countrey from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the estate hereof both as *Priests* and *Princes*, till their subjection by the *Romans*.

The High-Priests of the *Iews*.

A. M.

3427. 1. *Iosuah*, the *High-Priest* at the time of the Return, assistant to *Zorobabel* in rebuilding the *Temple*, which he lived not to finish; though continuing (as som say) in the Government 100. years. But I believe rather, that the names of his Successors being lost, the whole time is ascribed to him.

3530. 2. *Ioiakim*, said to be the sonne of *Iosuah*; in whose time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the Temple was finished, and the Worship of God restored.

3580. 3. *Ionathan*, or *Iohanan*. 30.

3610. 4. *Iaddus*, who entertained *Alexander* the *Great* coming to *Hierusalem* (of whom more anon) the brother of that *Manasses*, for whose sake, and on whose occasion, the Temple on Mount *Garazim* was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.

3630. 5. *Onias* succeeded *Iaddus*, as *Iaddus* had done *Ionathan*, not by birth (as formerly) but by the Election of the People.

3651. 6. *Simon*, surnamed *Iustus*. 9.

3660. 7. *Eleazer*, the brothet of *Simon*. 32.

3692. 8. *Menelaus*, the brother of *Eleazer* and *Simon*.

3718. 9. *Onias* II. 14.

3732. 10. *Simon* II. 10.

3742. 11. *Onias* III. the sonne of *Simon* the 2.

3787. 12. *Iason*, the brother of *Onias* the 3.

3789. 13. *Menelaus* II. the brother of *Iason*; in whose time the Temple was profaned by the *Syrians*, at the command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.

3794. 14. *Alcimus*, under whose Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Countrey and *Religion*, by whom succeeded in the office of High-Priest, after his decease. Among these none of greater note than *Iaddus*, High-Priest at such time as *Alexander* the *Great* having conquered *Syria* marched towards *Hierusalem*, and was encountred by this *Iaddus* in his *Priestly* vestments; assuring him in the name of the most high God, and making it demonstrable from the Prophecy of *Daniel*, that he should prosper in his enterprize against the *Persians*. An hope which *Alexander* did imbrace with the greater confidence, because (as he affirmed to *Parmenio* his chief commander) he had once at *Diu*, a City of *Macedon*, seen in a dream or Vision such a person as *Iaddus* was, so habited, and professing the same one God, by whom he was encouraged to pursue the action which he had in hand, with assurance of Victory. And upon this, the *Iews* were so much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own laws, and to enjoy with freedome their own Religion. But it held onely for his own time. For shortly after his decease, they were on both sides plagued by the Kings of *Egypt* and *Syria*, who ransacked their Cities, slaughtered their People, made havock of their goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of forbidden meats, and offer sacrifice unto Idols. At the last God raised up *Mattathias* and his five sonnes to resist these insolencies, who in the reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, undertook the protection of the People, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable overthrows, insomuch that the *Iews* made choice of *Iudas* surnamed *Maccabaus* (the eldest of the five brethem) for their Prince or Governour.

The *Maccabean* Princes of *Jewry*.

A. M.

3799. 1. *Judas Maccabaus*, one of the nine Worthies, vanquished three great and puissant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lysias*, men of great renown, being Commanders of the forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes* before mentioned.

1805. 2. *Jonathan*, the brother of *Judas*, vanquished the forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* King of *Syria*; and after many notable exploits and deeds of Armes, was treacherously murdered by *Tryphon*, aspiring at that time to the *Syrian* Diadem.

3823. 3. *Simon*, the brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, subdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Joppe*, and *Jamnia*, and cleered *Judæa* of the *Syrians*: perfidiously slain in the course of his fortunes by his sonne-in-law *Ptolomy*. 8.

3831. 4. *Johannes Hyrcanus*, the third sonne of *Simon*, (his two other Brethren being in the power of *Ptolomy*) succeeded in the Government. He destroyed the Temple on Mount *Garazim*, subdued the *Idumæans*, compelling them to be *Circumcised*; transferred the warre into *Syria*, and dying left the Sovereignty to his eldest sonne *Aristobulus*.

The *Maccabean* Kings of *Judah*.

3862. 1. *Aristobulus*, the first King of *Judah* after the *Babylonian* captivity; starved his mother, and slew *Antigonus* his brother.

3863. 2. *Alexander*, the brother of *Aristobulus*, exceedingly inlarged the Kingdome of *Jewrie*, but was withall so great a Tyrant, that he slew of his subjects 50000 in battel; and commanded 800 of his principal enemies to be hanged before his face. 27

3. *Alex-*

3890. 3. *Alexandra* or *Solome*, wife to *Alexander*. 9.
3899. 4. *Hyrcanus*, elder ſonne to *Alexander*, was diſturbed in his ſucceſſion by his younger brother *Ariſtobulus*; but was at length firmly eſtabliſhed in his Throne, by *Pompey*: who carried *Ariſtobulus* with his ſonnes, *Alexander* and *Antigonus*, captives to *Rome*. *Alexander* eſcaping out of priſon, troubled the quiet of his Countrey, till he was ſurprized by *Gabinius*, and ſlain by *Scipio*, two of *Pompeys* Captains: after whoſe death *Antigonus* ſet free by *Iulius Caſar*, deprived *Hyrcanus* of his Kingdome, and cut off his eares. Revenge ſuddenly followed this villany: for he was ſlain by *Marcus Antonius*, and his Kingdome given to a ſtranger.

The ſtranger Kings of *Iewry*.

A. M.
3920. I. *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, ſurnamed the *Great*, ſonne of *Antipater* an *Idumæan*, was by *Mar. Antonie* created, and by *Auguſtus* confirmed King of *Jewrie*, under whom that Kingdome was more inlarged, and in greater ſplendour, than ever it had been in the time of *David*. A Prince of great magnificence, but of great vices. During his reign, the *Scepter being now departed from Iudah*, the Lord CHRIST was born.
A. C.
6. 2 *Archelaus*, eldeſt ſonne of *Herod* at the time of his death, ſucceeded with the title of King, but in truth and realty poſſeſſed onely a *Tetrarchie* or fourth part of the Kingdome, though the beſt and largeſt of the four, containing *Iudæa*, *Samaria*, and *Idumæa*. The reſt of *Herods* Kingdome was divided into three other *Tetrarchies*, i.e. the *Tetrarchie* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*, given to *Herod Antipas*; 2. That of *Ituræa* given to *Philip*, another of the ſonnes of *Herod*; And 3. That of *Abilene* conferred on *Lyſanias*. Baniſhed into *France*, his *Tetrarchie* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontus Pilate*, at our Saviours Paſſion.
16. 3. *Herod* II. ſurnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*, on the baniſhment of *Archelaus*, ſucceeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* family, but not in his *Tetrarchie*; and at laſt followed him in his baniſhment alſo. This is he who murdered *Iohn Baptiſt*, and in whoſe time CHRIST ſuffered.
40. 4. *Herod* III. ſurnamed *Agrippa*, Nephew to *Herod* the *Great*, by his ſonne *Ariſtobulus* begotten on *Mariamne* of the race of the *Maccabees*; was by *Caligula* firſt inveſted in the *Tetrarchy* of his Uncle *Philip* with the title of King, and next in that of *Antipas* alſo, and finally by *Claudius* in that of *Lyſanias* alſo; ſome part of the *Tetrarchie* of *Archelaus* being added unto his dominions. This was the man that murdered *Iames*, and impriſoned *Peter*, and in the end was ſtricken by an Angel, and devoured by wormes. 7.
47. 5. *Agrippa Minor*, ſonne of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom Saint *Paul* pleaded in defence of the Goſpel; and the laſt which had the title of King of the *Iewes*: for in his time the City of *Hieruſalem* was deſtroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdome made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Anno 73.

And here it is to be obſerved, that when *Salmanaſſar* had ſubdued and captivated the ten Tribes of *Iſrael*, he ſent new Colonies of his own to plant this Countrey; that ſo fruitful and well-ſituate a part of his Empire might yield its juſt tribute, and not lye open to the fury of the next Invader. But the *Romans* not having (it ſeemeth) ſo much policy or providence, as thoſe whom they accounted barbarous; having laid the Countrey deſolate, left it unfurniſhed of new Colonies; whereby the *Perſians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entring the *Roman* Empire at this doore, have ſucceſſively driven the *Romans* out of the whole houſe. Now that we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakned and almoſt utterly rooted out the *Iewiſh* Nation, we will relate ſome of their particular *maſſacres*: which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the enemy, then juſtly deſerved by themſelves; they wiſhing, though (I ſuppoſe) not deſiring, that the innocent Bloud of our Saviour ſhould *be on them and their children*. Firſt then the inhabitants of *Cæſarea* ſlew of the *Iews* in one day, about 20000, and ſuch as fled were took and impriſoned by *Florus* the *Roman* Lieutenant of *Iudea*. To revenge this ſlaughter, the *Iews* ſet upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmiſh 13000 of them were ſlain. The people of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the ſword; they of *Damaſcus*, 10000; *Antonius* a *Roman* Captain, ſlew in *Aſcalon* 10000 of them; and *Ceſtius* another Captain, 8040 perſons. Now to come to the warres here managed by *Veſpaſian*. This *Veſpaſian* in the ſiege of *Aphaca*, ſlew and took priſoners, 17130. perſons. In *Samaria*, 11600. perſons; in *Iotopata*, 42200 perſons. In *Ioppa*, ſo many killed and drowned themſelves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies: and the reſt ſo totally periſhed, that there remained none to carry tidings unto *Hieruſalem*, of the loſs of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were ſlain, and made captives, 45000 perſons, beſides thoſe which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there periſhed 90000. and none left alive but only two women: In *Gaſcala* 5000. men dyed by the ſword; in the City of *Gadera* there were ſlain 32200, beſides an infinite number of ſuch as had drowned themſelves. In *Hieruſalem* it ſelf, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the ſword, and partly by the famine; the worſer enemy of the two: there were found 2000 in privies and ſinks; and 97000 taken priſoners, inſomuch that 30 *Iews* were ſold for a penny. So punctual was the *Divine Juſtice* in *retaliating* to this wretched people according to the meaſure of their iniquities; that they who bought their Saviour for 30 *pence*, ſhould be ſold at 30 for a penny in the open market.

Now that *Hieruſalem* was able to contain ſuch a number of people, is evident in that when *Ceſtius* was Lieutenant of *Iewry*, the *High-Prieſt* did at his requeſt number the people which came thither to eat the

the *Paschall Lamb*, and found them to be two millions and seven hundred thousand living souls, all sound and purifyed: For to leapers, or men having a flux of seed, or women in their monethly terms, or to strangers; it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid siege to the City it was in the feast of the *Passeover*, when most of the people were there assembled; God (as it were) having thus imprisoned them. All these massacres, besides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite numbers which were slain in the fields and villages, which drowned themselves, and which were privately made away, amounting all to almost 2000000 of people, hapned in the compass of 4 years, beginning at the 12 of *Nero*, and ending at the 2d. of *Vespasian*: yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till the year 136. For then this miserable people, having stirred two notable rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the last under *Adrian* the Emperours; were generally banished their native Countrey, and never again permitted to inhabite it, otherwise than as strangers. After this dissolution the *Iews* were dispersed all over the world, and especially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell: yet they found every where so little favour, that having divers times been put to grievous mulcts and ransomes, they were at last thrust out of most of the Kingdomes of *Europe* also. They were banished out of *England* by *Edward* the first, *Anno* 1290. Out of *France*, by *Philip* the fair, 1307. Out of *Spain*, by *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, 1492. Out of *Portugal*, by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by *Charles* the fift, 1539. Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romish* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*; in most Cities of *Italy*; especially *Rome* it self, where there are no less then 15000 or 20000 of them; and also in the Popes Countrey of *Avignion*. The reason why they are permitted to live thus under the Popes nose, is pretended to be an expectation of their conversion, which is a meer pretence; indeed the true reason being the benefit hence arising to his Holiness coffers: the hopes of their conversion being very small, and the means less. For besides the scandal, *datum & acceptum*, by the *Papists* fond worshipping of Images, so peremptorily contrary to the first table of the Law: they are not permitted to see any book of the Christian Religion, no not so much as the new Testament. And (which worketh much upon men of their metall) because at their conversion they must quit all their goods unto the Church, as being ill gotten, and by consequence the works of the devil; which in their baptism they promise to renounce. They have also a Synagogue at *Amsterdam*, and are pretty thick spred over the Dominions of the *Turkes*: who notwithstanding so hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they used to say in detestation of a thing, *I would I might dy a Iew*. Neither will they permit a *Iew* to turn *Turk*, unless he be first baptized. And though their multitudes be so great both in *Thessalonica* and *Constantinople*, that it is conceived they do amount to the number of 160000 persons: yet are they not only contemned and hated, but there and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous assembly of the Common people, and constantly every *Easter*, whersoever they be, in danger of death. Insomuch that if a *Iew* do but stir out of doors betwixt *Maundie Thursday* at noon, and *Easter Eve* at night, the *Christians* of the East amongst whom they dwell, (though far fewer in number) will be sure to stone them, because at that time, they buffeted, derided, and in fine crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turks* dominions, because imployed as *Publicans* in gathering and enhauncing the publick tributes, which they exact with all severity that may be, and improve unto the most. And no less hated in all parts of the *Christian* world, as enemies to the *Cross of CHRIST*, so unreclaimably addicted to their antient *Judaism*, and so abhorring from the conversation of other men, that it is not possible that they should reap any other harvest than contempt and scorn from those amongst whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief. They are a people which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; especially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like dogs, and used like slaves, yet never shew so much as an angry Countenance. A Nation which will thrive whersoever they come, but most by *usury* and *brocage*; not lending any thing but on pawnes, and those once forfeited never more redeemable. The best of both *Sexes* said to have an unsavoury rankness, not incident (if not caused by sluttishness) to other people: from whom as different in their habit as in their *Religion*. And as for that, they retain still *Circumcision* as the badge and cognizance of their Nation, but mingled with many ceremonies not prescribed by the law, nor observed by the Antients: placing a void chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be present, though unseen, at the solemnity. And upon this they are so besotted, that they conceive the female sex uncapable of eternal life, because not capable of *Circumcision*: and therefore use to name them with no other Ceremonie, than at the six weeks end to have some young wenches lift up the Cradle with the child in it, which she that standeth at the head, giveth the name unto. Of their *Sabbath* so extremely doting, that they have added to the *superstitions* left them by the *Pharisees*: and herein they are so precise, that if a *Iew* travel on the *Friday*, and in the Evening fall so short of his journeys end, that it amounts to more then 2000. Cubits, or six Furlongs, which they accompt a *Sabbath dayes* journey, there must he sit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a wood, or field, or the high-way side, without fear of wind or weather, of Theeves or Robbers, and without taking order for meat or drink: *periculo latronum prædonumq; omni, penuria item omni cibi potusq; neglectis*, as *Buxdorfius* hath it. And so farre have they gone in despight of Christ, as to declare it unlawful to lift *the Ox or Asse out of a ditch*, permitted in the strictest times of *Pharisaical* rigor. So pertinacious in retaining the *difference of meats and drinks*, that thy will by no means sit at the same table with other men: and so precise in the dressing of it, that they will eat of no flesh but of their own killing onely; and that too with such cautions and reservations, that if any of the entrailes be corrupt or dislocated, they will sell the whole beast to the *Christians* for a very trifle. Beneficial in that onely to the neighbouring Christian. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, not so much out of dislike of that liquor, for they are generally

generally good fellows, and love their bellies; as for fear the wine ſhould be baptized; a Ceremony much uſed in the Eaſtern parts. Of the coming of their *Meſſiah* ſo full of hopes, that there is no great Warrier ſtirring, but they look upon him as the man, till ſome ſad tragedy or other, which they ſuffer under that perſwaſion, makes them ſee there error: promiſing to themſelves whenſoever he cometh, a reſtitution of their Kingdome; and ſuch felicities therein in the litteral ſenſe of ſome Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more *myſtical* and ſacred meaning. That in good time (but Gods not theirs) they ſhall be made partakers of the ſeveral bleſſings which thoſe Texts do ſpeak of, is both the hope and wiſh of all pious men, who cannot chooſe but grieve to behold the *natural branches* ſo long diſmembred and cut off from the *tree of life*. And this they neither hope nor wiſh for but on ſome fair grounds preſented to them by Saint *Paul*: who ſaith expreſſely, that when the *fulneſs of the* Gentiles *is once come in, that then all* Iſrael *ſhall be ſaved*; *Rom.* 11. 25,26. The words ſo plainly poſitive that they need no commentary; or if they did, we have the general conſent of the antients, beſides the conſtant current of moſt modern writers, which cheriſh the glad hopes of their *converſion to the Goſpel*, which the Apoſtle doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Athanaſius*, *Hierome*, *Auguſtine*, *Chryſoſtome*, for the primitive times; *Beda* and *Hugo Cardinalis* in the times ſucceeding, *Gorram* and *Thomas Aquinas* for thoſe of *Rome*, *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bullinger* and *Peter Martyr* for the *Reformed* Churches, beſides divers others of great note, ſo expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much; which he that doth deſire to ſee, may find them with the expoſitions of moſt *Chriſtian* Writers, in a Book writ by Doctor *Willet*, entituled *De generali et noviſſima* Judæorum *vocatione*; and thither I referre the more curious Reader. Out of all I ſhall take theſe words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that paſſage of Saint *Paul* to the *Romans*, viz. *Non ita* Judæi *perierunt, ut nulla de illorum ſalute ſpes ſuperſit*; The *Jews* (ſaith he) are not ſo wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there ſtill remain ſome hopes of their ſalvation. Of their *Salvation* then by the Goſpel of *Chriſt*, when the *fulneſs of the Gentiles* is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their reſtitution to their *temporal* Kindome, is a further queſtion, and not ſo cleerly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be ſomewhat in that Book which may ſeem to intimate it. That the opinion of being reſtored by the *Meſſiah* to that temporal power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, was prevalent as well amongſt *Chriſts Diſciples*, as the reſt of the *Iews*, is, as I take it, clear enough in the holy Goſpel. In ſuch a Kingdome and no other did the two ſonnes of *Zebedee* deſire to ſit on both hands of their Maſter: and the ſame was it and no other, which all of them expected, appeareth by the words of *Cleophas*, *Luke* 24.21. that *Chriſt ſhould have reſtored* them. *We thought* ſaid he, that this would have proved the man that ſhould have *redeemed Iſrael*, Redeemed *Iſrael*? from what? from ſinne and Satan, or the curſe and bondage of the Law? Not ſo, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῆς ζυγῦ τῆς δουλείας; but from the yoke of vaſſallage which the *Romans* had ſo lately impoſed on them, ſay the Fathers right. Touching the ſame it was that they moved him ſaying, *Lord wilt thou at this time reſtore again the Kingdome of Iſrael*? *Acts* 1.6. In anſwer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no deniall, as unto the *thing*, nor tells them that they never muſt expect ſuch a *reſtauration*; but only puts them off as unto the *time*, and bids them reſt themſelves on the pleaſure of God the Father, in whoſe hands the diſpoſing of all *Kingdomes* was. *It is not for you* (ſaith he) *to know the times and ſeaſons, which the Father hath in his own power*, ver.7. By which anſwer (as it ſeems to me) there is a poſſibility of reſtoring them to their *Kingdome* alſo, though not in the τὸ νῦν, at that very inſtant when they were moſt deſirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know, that being a ſecret which the *Father* hath reſerved to himſelf alone.

But leaving theſe ſpeculations of a reſtitution of the Throne of *Iſrael*, and the great power and privileges it may then enjoy; let us look back on the eſtate in which it flouriſhed in the former times, when the forces and Revenue of it were at the higheſt. And firſt for the *Revenues*, they amounted in the time of *Solomon* (as is ſaid 2 *Chron.* 9. 13.) to 666 *Talents* of Gold, beſides the benefits of his *Cuſtomes* and *Impoſitions*, which cometh to two Millions, and nine hundred ninety and ſeven thouſand pounds of yearly income. A vaſt ſumme for ſuch a litle Kingdome. Nor can we reckon them at leſs, if they were not greater, in the time of *David*: of whom it is affirmed, 1 *Chron.* 22. 14. that he left to *Solomon* an hundred thouſand *Talents* of Gold, and ten hundred thouſand *Talents* of Silver, towards the building of the Temple: beſides three thouſand *Talents* of Gold, and ſeven thouſand *Talents* of Silver, formerly depoſited for that purpoſe, as is ſaid 1 *Chron.* 29. 4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a *Jewiſh Talent*, reckoning a *Talent* of Gold at four thouſand and five hundred pound, and a *Talent* of Silver, at three hundred ſeventy five pound, will amount in our money to eight hundred and forty millions and one hundred twenty and five thouſand pounds. So vaſt a ſumme, that it had been ſufficient to have built a *Temple* of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the *Temple* of *Solomon*, without other materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and induſtrious *Brerewood*, that by the *Talent* in thoſe places we are to underſtand a far leſſer ſumme than the ordinary *Hebrew Talents*: which whether it doth there ſignifie a *Sicle* onely, which is half a Crown of *Engliſh* money, as *Eupolemus*, cited by *Euſebius*, was of opinion; or that every *Talent* of Gold, came to three golden Crowns of *Athens*, which maketh forty five ſhillings of *Engliſh* money, as *Julius Pollux* hath it in his *Onomaſticon*; I am not able to determine. But meaſuring it by the laſt eſtimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two millions and two hundred ninety and five thouſand pounds: a vaſt ſumme for a King to leave in ready money, which was alwaies exerciſed in war. And though I doe not find expreſly what the *Revenues* of *Judah* might amount unto after the diviſion: yet by one circumſtance I find them to be very great. For it is written 2 *Kings* 18. 14. that the yearly *tribute* impoſed upon *Hezekiah* by the King of *Aſſyria*, was three hundred *Talents* of Silver, and thirty *Talents* of Gold, amounting (according to the ordinary *Hebrew Talent*, which queſtionleſs is there intended) to two hundred forty ſeven thouſand

and

and five hundred pounds of *English* money: and therefore probably his ordinary *Revenue* must be thrice as much, above tha ttribue; Elſe the *Aſſyrian* had not left him a ſubſiſtance for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the *Revenues* of this Crown were leſs to *Herod*, than formerly to *Solomon* or *David*; conſidering his vaſt expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, and the large *Legacies* he gave at the time of his death; not paralleld by any King before or ſince, though of a larger and more ample territory than he ſtood poſſeſſed of.

What forces the Kings of the *Hebrews* were able to bring into the field, may beſt be eſtimated by the muſter which *David* made when he numbred the People: the inrolment of ſuch as were able to bear arms, and fit for ſervice, coming in all to five hundred thouſand fighting men, in *Judah* onely, and eight hundred thouſand men in the Tribes of *Iſrael*. Tis true, that *David* never brought into the field ſo vaſt a multitude; but when the Kingdomes were divided, and warre denounced betwixt *Jeroboam* and *Abijah*, we find almoſt the whole number brought into the field: that is to ſay, eight hundred thouſand on the ſide of *Jeroboam* the King of *Iſrael*, and four hundred thouſand by *Abijah* the King of *Judah*. After this, out of that ſmall Kingdome, *Aſa* the Son of *Abijah*, being invaded by *Zerah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thouſand men; which was more than the inrolment made in the time of *David*. An infinite proportion for ſo ſmall a Kingdome; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above belief: had not that God who ſaid to *Abraham*, that his *ſeed ſhould be as the ſtars of Heaven for multitude*, been able to have made it good.

As for the ſtory and affairs of this Countrey ſince the time of *Adrian*, the *Iews* being all expelled their native Soyl, and *Chriſtianity* in fine prevailing over all thoſe parts, it was inhahited as the reſt of the Empire was, by men of that *Religion* onely: in this Countrey ſo advanced and countenanced, that *Helena* the Mother of *Conſtantine*, is reported to have built in it no leſs than two hundred Temples and Monaſteries in places of moſt note for the miracles of *Chriſt* our Savio ur, or the dwelling of ſome of his *Diſciples*. In the year 615. the *Perſians*, under the conduct of *Choſroes* their King, became Maſters of it; and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Hieruſalem* alſo: expelled thence by the valour and good fortune of the Emperour *Heraclius*, who recovering the *Croſs* on which *Chriſt* ſuffered, out of the hands of the *Pagans*, carried it with as great a triumph into *Conſtantinople*, as *David* once did the *Ark* into *Hieruſalem*. But this glory and rejoycing did not long continue: For within twenty years after the recovery of this City from the power of the *Perſians*, it was again conquered and ſubdued by *Homar* or *Aumar Caliph* of the *Saracens*, *Anno* 637. Under this yoak the captivated *Chriſtians* had long ſuffered, when they changed the Tyrant but not the tyranny: the *Turks* about the year 1079. overcoming the *Saracens*, and domineering in their ſteed. Twenty years did the *Chriſtians* langniſh under this oppreſſion, when one *Peter* an *Hermite*, travelling for devotion to the *holy Lnd*, and being an eye-witneſs of the miſeries under which they groaned, at his return, made his addreſſes to Pope *Vrban* the ſecond, acquainting him with the ſad condition of the poor *Chriſtians* in thoſe Countries. A *Councill* thereupon is called at *Clermont* in *France*, where the Pope (willing to imploy the *Chriſtian* Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home) did ſo effectually advance and indeer the buſineſs, that no fewer than three hundred thouſand fighting men, under ſeverall Leaders, undertook the ſervice. And it proſpered ſo well with them in the firſt beginning, that having beaten the *Turks* out of *Aſia Minor*, taken the great City of *Antioch*, and moſt of the ſtrong Towns of *Syria*, they incamped before *Hieruſalem*, and in ſhort time took it, *Anno* 1099. after it had been four hundred years and upwards in the power of the *Infidels*. The City being thus gained, was offered with the title of King, to *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, Sonne of *William* the *Conquerour*: but he upon the hopes of the Kingdome of *England*, refuſed that honour, never proſpering, as it was obſerved, after that refuſall. *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorreine*, had the next offer of it, which with a religious joy he accepted of; though on the day of his Inanguration he refuſed the Crown: affirming that it was not fit for a *Chriſtian* Prince to wear in that City a *Crown of Gold*, where the Redeemer of the World ware a *Crown of Thornes*.

The Kings of *Hieruſalem*.

1099. 1. *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorreine*.

1100. 2. *Baldwin* of *Lorreine*, brother of *Godfrey*, wonne *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria*.

1118. 3. *Baldwin* II. ſurnamed of *Bruges*, Couſin of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, the Former Kings, overcame the Sultan of *Damaſcus*, and inlarged his Kingdome by the addition of *Tyre*.

1131. 4. *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having maryed *Milliſcent* the daughter of *Baldwin* the 2d. ſucceeded after his deceaſe; unfortunately killed with a fall from his horſe.

1142. 5. *Baldwin* III. Sonne of *Fulk* and *Milliſcent*, fortified *Gaza* againſt the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, and recoverd *Paneade* from the King of *Damaſcus*.

1164. 6. *Almericus*, the Brother of *Baldwin* the 3d. ſo diſtreſſed the great *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him; by whom ſlain, and his Kingdome transferred on *Sarracon*, the *Turkiſh* Generall.

1173. 7. *Baldwin* IV. Sonne of *Almericus*, overthrew *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turkes* in a fight neer *Aſcalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.

1185. 8. *Baldwin* V. Sonne of *Sibyll* the Siſter of *Baldwin* the 4th. by *William* Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, unnaturally poiſoned by his own mother, having reigned only five moneths, to make way for her ſecond husband, called

1185.

1185. 9. *Guy* of *Luſignan*, the laſt King of *Hieruſalem*, that had the poſſeſſion of the City, during whole time *Saladine* the Sultan of *Ægypt* won that Kingdome, *Anno* 1187. which his Succeſſours defended againſt all invaſions, till the year 1517. in which *Selimus* the firſt, Emperour of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, together with *Ægypt*, to his Empire. When *Hieruſalem* was taken by the *Chriſtians*, the *German* Emperours name was *Fredericus*, the Popes, *Urbanus*, the *Hieroſolymitan* Patriarch, *Heraclius*; and ſo alſo were they called, when the *Chriſtians* again loſt it. This is the conceit of *Roger Hoveden* in the life of *Henry* the ſecond; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not ſee.

After the taking of *Hieruſalem* by Sultan *Saladine*, the *Chriſtians* retired their forces into ſome of the other Towns of the *Holy land*; which they made good againſt the enemy: and defended them under the government of theſe three Kings following, viz.

10. *Conrade* Marq. of *Montferrat*, husband of *Iſabel* the daughter of *Almericus* King of *Hieruſalem*.

11. *Henry* Earl of *Campagne*, ſecond husband of *Iſabel*.

12. *John di Brenne*, husband of *Mary*, or *Yoland* as ſome call her, daughter of *Conrade* and *Iſabel*, the laſt *Chriſtian* King that ever had poſſeſſion in *Syria* or *Paleſtine*: inhabited ever-ſince by *Moores* and *Arabians*, few *Chriſtians*, and not many *Turks* but ſuch as be in garriſons onely. *Yoland* the daughter of this *John di Brenne*, was wife to *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who in her right intituled himſelf King of *Hieruſalem*: and ſo now do the Kings of *Spain*, as heirs unto, and poſſeſſors of the Kingdome of *Naples*. Concerning which title it would not be amiſſe to inſert this ſtory. When the warres, in Queen Elizabeths time, were hot between *England* and *Spain*, there were *Commiſſioners* of both ſides appointed to treat of peace. They met at a Town of the *French* Kings, and firſt it was debated in what tongue the negotiation ſhould be handled. A *Spaniard* thinking to give the *Engliſh* Commiſſioners a ſhrewd gird, propoſed the *French* tongue as moſt fit: it being a language which the *Spaniards* were well skilled in; and for theſe gentlemen of *England*, I ſuppoſe (ſaith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the language of their fellow-ſubjects: their Queen is Queen of *France* as well as of *England*. Nay in faith my maſters, replyed Doctor *Dale*, (the maſter of the Requeſts) the *French* tongue is too vulgar for a buſineſs of this ſecrecy and importance, eſpecially in a *French* Town. We will rather treat in *Hebrew*, the language of *Hieruſalem*, whereof your maſter is King: and I ſuppoſe you are therein as well skilled, as we in the *French*. And thus much for this title.

The Armes of the Chriſtian Kings in *Hieruſalem* was *Luna*, a croſs croſſet croſſed, *Sol*, which was commonly called the *Hieruſalem Croſs*. But for their forces and Revenues, I cannot ſee how any eſtimate may be made hereof, in regard they ſubſiſted not by their own proper ſtrength, but by the Purſes and the Forces of the *Weſtern* Chriſtians; more or leſs active in that ſervice, as zeal, or emulation, or deſire of glory were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Kinght-hood in this Kingdome after the recovery thereof from the power of the *Turks*, Were

1. Of the *Sepulchre*, ſaid to be inſtituted originally by Queen *Helena*, the Mother of *Conſtantine* the Great, by whom the Temple of the *Sepulchre* was indeed firſt built: but more truly by *Philip* King of *France*, Anno 1099. at ſuch time as that Temple was regained from the *Turks*. Their Armes the ſame with that of the Kings before *blazoned*, repreſenting the five wounds of our Saviour *CHRIST*. At the firſt conferred on none but Gentlemen of blood and fortunes; now ſaleable to any that will buy it of the *Pater-Guardian*, who with a Convent of *Franciſcans* doth reſide neer that Temple.

2. Of Saint *John of Hieruſalem*, begun by one *Gerrard*, Anno 1114. and confirmed by *Pope Paſchalis* the ſecond. Their badge or Cognizance, is a White Croſſe of eight points. Their duty to defend the *Holy land*, relieve Pilgrims, and ſuccour *Chriſtian* Princes againſt the Infidels. They were to be of noble parentage and extraction: and grew in time to ſuch infinite riches, eſpecially after the ſuppreſſion of the *Templars* (moſt of whoſe lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the ſeveral parts of *Chriſtendome* no fewer than 20000. Mannours; and of ſuch reputation in all *Chriſtian* Kingdomes, that in *England* the Lord Prior of this Order, was accompted the Prime Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminiſhed, by the withdrawing of the Kings of *England* and other Proteſtant Princes from the Church of *Rome*: who on that change, ſeized on all the Lands of this Order in their ſeveral Countries, and either kept them to themſelves, or diſpoſed them to others as they pleaſed. Of theſe we ſhall ſpeak more when we are in *Malta*, where they now reſide: advertiſing onely at the preſent, that their firſt *Great Maſter* was that *Gerrard* by whom they were founded; the laſt that had his reſidence in the *Holy land* one *John de Villiers*, in whoſe time being driven out of *Paleſtine*, they removed unto *Cyprus*, and in the time of *Fulk de Villaret* Anno 1309. to the Iſle of *Rhodes*. Outed of which by *Solomon* the *Magnificent* Anno 1522. they removed from one place to another, till at laſt by the magnificence of *Charles* the fift Anno 1530. they were ſetled in *Malta*: and there we ſhall ſpeak farther of them.

3. *Of the Templers*, inſtituted by *Hugh* of *Payennes*, Anno 1113, and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius*. Their enſign was a *Red Croſs*, in token that they ſhould ſhed their blood to defend *Chriſts* Temple. They were burried *Croſs-legged*, and wore on their backs the figure of the Croſs; for which they were by the common people called Croſs-back, or Crouch-back, and by corruption, Crook-back. *Edmund* Earl of *Lancaſter*, ſecond ſonne to our *Henry* the third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called *Edmund Crook-back*; which gave *Henry* the fourth a fooliſh occaſion to faign, that this *Edmund* (from whom he was deſcended) was indeed the eldeſt ſonne of King *Henry* the third, but for his *crookedneſs* and

deformity, his younger brother was preferred to the Crown before him. These Knights had in all Provinces of *Europe* their subordinate governours, in which they possessed on lesse than 16000 Lordships: the greatness of which Revenue was not the least cause of dissolving the Order. For *Philip* the fair, King of *France*, had a plot to invest one of his sonnes with the title of *King* of *Hierusalem*, and hoped to procure of the *Pope* the revenue of this order to be laid unto that Kingdome for support of the Title: which he might the better do, because *Clement* the fift then Pope, for the love he bare to *France*, had transferred his seat from *Rome* to *Avignion*. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being dissolved, the lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights *Hospitallers*, or of Saint *John*. The crimes objected against this Order was, first, their revolt from their professed obedience unto the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, who was their visitor; Secondly, their unspeakable pride; and thirdly their sinnes against nature. The house of our Law-students in *London*, called the *Temple*, was the chief house of the Knights of this order in *England*: and was by the Knights of Saint *John*, whose principal mansion was in *Smithfield*, sold unto the students of the Laws, for the yearly rent of 10 l. about the middle of the reign of *Edward* the third.

These three orders M. *Selden* (and deservedly) putteth not in his *Titles of honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiss a woman: honourary Knight-hood, and the love of Ladies, going together like vertue and reward.

Thus much for *Palestine*.

OF

OF ARABIA.

ARABIA hath on the East, *Chaldæa*, and the Bay or *Gulf* of *Persia*; on the West, *Palestine*, some part of *Ægypt*, and the whole course of the *Red-Sea*; on the North, the River *Euphrates*, with some parts of *Syria* and *Palestine*; and on the South, the main Southern Ocean. But at some times the name extended somewhat further: *Pliny* enlargeth it as far as to *Comagena*, the North part of *Syria*, in regard that many *Arabian* Colonies had been their planted by *Tigranes*; and *Xenophon* comprehending in it the greatest part also of *Mesopotamia*, because situate on the West of the River *Tigris*, and consequently the Western part of the *Assyrian* Empire, as the word *Ereb* doth import; from whence some derive the *Etymon* and name hereof. Which notwithstanding, in the generall esteem of Authors it is bounded only as before.

As for the name, there be some that derive it from *Arabus* a supposed Sonne of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*; others from three suppositious Sons of *Janus Pater*, one of the pretended Grand-Sonnes of *Cham*. Who is fabled to have sent his Sonne *Arabus* into *Arabia Deserta*; *Petreius*, into *Arabia Petræa*; and *Sabus*, into *Arabia Felix* the dwelling place of the *Sabæans*. And for this trim conceit we are beholding to the *Berosus* of *Frier Annius*. More probable is their conjecture who derive the name from the *Hebrew*, *Arab*, signifying *black*, by reason of the swarth or tawny complexion of the inhabitants, who are *inter nigrum & fulvum*, as *Vertomannus* an eye-witness hath informed us of them: on the same reason as one of the Provinces of *Africa*, is commonly entituled the *Land of Negroes*. But the most likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from *Harabi*, which signifieth in the *Hebrew* a Theef or Robber, such as the *Arabians*, in all ages, have been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *In the waies thou hast sate for them as an* Arabian *in the Wilderness*, as our *English* reads it, *tanquam Latro insidians in solitudine*, saith the *Vulgar Latine*, *Jerem.* 32. St. *Hierome*, though he render it, *quasi Latro*, as the *Vulgar* doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, that the word doth also signifie an *Arabian*, *quæ gens* latrociniis *dedita usq; hodie incursat* Palestinæ *fines*, *&c.* which people being addicted to theft and robberie, do to this day (saith he) infest the coasts of *Palestine* which border neer them, and lay in wait for those which had any occasion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the observation of *Martin del Rio*; *Adeo* latrocinii *is infames sunt*, *ut* Hebræis Arabs, latronem *denotat*, *sicut* Chananæus *Mercatorem*, Chaldæus *Mathematicum*: *i. e.* So infamous were they for their theft and frequent Robberies, that it was as familiar with the *Jews* to call a thief by the name of *Arabian*, as by *Chanaanite* to signifie a Merchant, or to use the word *Chaldæan* for a *Mathematician*. In the same sense they came in the succeeding times to be called *Saracens*, from *Sarak* or *Saraka*, an *Arabian* word, which signifieth to steal; whereof more anon: no otherwise than one of the *American* Islands had the name of *Ladrones*, or *Insula latronum*, given by *Magellanus*, from the theevishness of the Inhabitants, who had stoln his cock-boat.

I have staid the longer on the name, because it doth express so much of the *Character* of the people also: living for the most part upon spoil and robberie, as all that travell that way know by sad experience. Of mean statures, raw-boned, tawny or swart-complexioned, having feminine voices; of swift but noiseless gate, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no set dwellings (except only in *Arabia Felix*) living in tents which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of pasturage, and hope of booty: for this last cause hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countreys; and having robbed retire with a marvellous speed. Mounted on *Dromedaries* for that purpose, a beast of most incredible swiftness, satisfied with little food, though without water to it, and will easie carry a man a hundred miles a day without any refreshing. Nor are such horses as they have, though but poor and lean, of less speed, or less patient of travel: whom they feed twice a day with the milk of Camels, and think them not worth keeping, if not able to outgoe an *Ostrich*. As now, formerly all horsemen, and but ill appointed; fitter to rob and spoil than to deal with Souldiers, as riding stark naked, and trusting rather to the swiftness of their horses than any other way of resistance where they were opposed.

Their language is the *Arabick*, so called from this Countrey, but not proper to this Countrey onely. Spoken in all places where *Mahometanism* hath got any footing. The *Alcoran* being written in it, the publick offices of their Religion performed in it, and the tongue taught in Schools as generally as with us the *Latine*: but made the natural language in *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, the three *Arabia's*, *Egypt*, and all *Barbary*, except the Kingdome of *Morocco*. A great extent, but short of that which some give to it, who will have it spoken in two parts of the whole habitable world.

The Christian faith was first here planted by Saint *Paul*, of whose being in *Arabia*, after his conversion, he telleth us, *Gal.* 1. 17. to which the coming in of the *Saracens* gave a great increase in the time of *Mavia* their

Queen, during the Empire of *Valentinian* the first; *Moses* a man of exemplary piety, and famed for many miracles, being created their first Bishop: after more generally propagated over all the Countrey by their King *Alamandarus*, *Anastasius* then reigning in the East. But long it had not been received, when supplanted by *Mahometanism*, which had its first beginning here, and hath so universally overspred the whole face hereof, that now there are no *Christians* left in all the Countrey, except only in *Elor* a Port Town in the Bay of *Arabia Felix*, in *Petra* the chief City of *Arabia Petræa*, and two small Monasteries about Mount *Sinai*.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles, but of so unequall and *heterogeneous* composition, that no generall *Character* can be given of it: and therefore we must look upon it, as it stands divided into *Arabia Deserta*, 2. *Arabia Petræa*, 3. *Arabia Felix*, and 4. the *Arabick* Ilands.

1. *ARABIA DESERTA.*

ARABIA DESERTA, (called *Beriara* by the *Turks*) is bounded on the East, with *Babylonia*; on the West, with parts of *Palestine*, and *Arabia Petræa*; on the North, with *Palmyrene* and *Mesopotamia*, from which last parted by *Euphrates*; and on the South, by some parts of *Petræa*, and *Arabia Felix*.

It hath the name of *Deserta*, from the vast desarts which are in it, and the un-inhabitednes thereof, called also by *Aristides*, *Aspera*, from the roughnes; by *Servius*, *Inferior*, or the Lower, in regard of the situation of it more towards the River; by *Lucian*, from the frequent bottoms and vallies in it, *Arabia Cava*; and finally by the *Iews* it was called *Kedar*, from the *blacknes* or swarthines of the People; the word in *Hebrew* signifying as much as *Sun-burnt*; whence the people are by some writers called *Kedareni*, and by *Pliny Cedrei*.

But the common and most usuall name of it is *Arabia Deserta*, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a sandy Countrey full of vast *desarts*, in which all such as travell use to carry their Provisions with them, and to guide themselves in their journey by the course of the *Stars*: though in some parts which lie neer *Euphrates* and the Mountains of *Arabia Felix*, it have some few towns, and those resorted to by Merchants. But this is onely in those parts, the residue of the Countrey being so desolate and wast, that one who had travelled in it, doth describe it to be so wild a place, *vt nec homines nec bestiæ videantur, nec Aves; imo nec arbores nec germen aliquod, sed non nisi montes saxosi, altissimi, asperrimi.* A Countrey saith *Guilandinus Melchior*, where are found neither men nor beasts, no not so much as birds or trees, nor gras nor pasture, but onely stones, high, and most craggy mountains

The people for the most part used to dwell in Tents, alluded to by *David Psalm* 120. *v.* 5, which they removed from place to place as the pasture for their cattell failed them: taking no other care for houses than the boughs of *Palm-trees* to keep them from the heats of the Sun, and other extremities of weather. Hence by the Antients called *Scenitæ*, or men dwelling in Tents (in which respect the *Jews* call the *Tartarians Kedarim*, from the like course of life which these *Kedareni* or *Arabians* lived) but the name reaching into the other parts of *Arabia* also, where they use the same kind of living; of whom more anon.

Yet notwithstanding most memorable is this Countrey in sacred story, both for the dwelling place of *Job*, and the habitation of those *Wise-men* who came out of the East unto *Hierusalem* to worship *Christ*, the new-born King of the *Jews*. That *Job* was an inhabitant here, appeareth by the situation of his dwelling, being in the East, as is said in the Story of him, chap. 1. v. 3. that is to say, in the Countrey lying East to the Land of *Canaan*, as this part of it doth, and therefore called simply by the name of the *East*, as *Judg.* 6. 3. where by the *Children of the East*, are meant expresly the Inhabitants of *Arabia the Desart*, who together with the *Midianites*, and *Amalekites*, oppressed those of *Israel*. Secondly, by the ill neighbourhood which he found from the *Sabæans*, who inhabited in this part also; and of the *Chaldæans* mentioned v. 17. the next borderers to it: and Thirdly, by the inconsequences which needs must follow if we place him as some do, in the land of *Vs*, neer unto *Damascus*. For how improbable must it be for the *Sabæans* of the *Red-Sea* or the *Persian* gulf; or the *Caldæans*, dwelling on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, to fall upon *Jobs* Cattell grazing near *Damascus*: the Countries being dis-joyned by such vast *Desarts*, and huge Mountains, that it is impossible for any Strangers to pass them, especially with any numbers of Cattel, in respect of those large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extreme want of water in all that passage? And how impossible must we think it, that the pen-man of the story of *Iob*, who certainly was guided in it by the *Holy Ghost*, should be so mistaken, as to place *Iobs* dwelling in the *East*, if the *Land of Vs* wherein he dwelt bordered on *Damascus*; which lay not on the East, but the North of *Canaan*? A City called *Vs*, or *Vz*, there was situate neer *Damascus*, so called from *Vz*, the Son of *Aram*, *Gen.* 10. 23. A *Land of Vz* also amongst the *Edomites*, spoken of in the *Lamentations* of the Prophet *Ieremie*, chap. 4. v. 21. so called from *Vz*, one of the posterity of *Esau*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 28 and finally, a *Land* of *Vs*, or *Vz*, so called from *Hus* the sonne of *Nachor* the Brother of *Abraham*, mentioned *Gen.* 22. 21. which is that situate in this Tract, the habitation and possession of that righteous man: the Countrey hereabouts being called *Ausitis*, and the people *Ausitæ*, though by mistaking in the *transcripts*, we find them named Αἰσῖται, or *Æsitæ*, in the fifth of *Ptolomy*. The like I say also of the *Wise-men*, or *Magi*, who came to *Hierusalem* from the *East*, that they dwelt in this Countrey, where the said *Ptolomy* placeth the City *Sabe*; according unto that fore-signified by the Royall *Psalmist*, that the *Kings of Arabia and Saba should bring their gifts*, *Psalm* 72. 10. Confirmed herein by the situation of the Countrey lying East of *Canaan*; the authority of those Fathers who lived neerest to the time of our Saviours birth, *Justin Martyr*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*,

prian; and by the teſtimony of *Guillandinus Melchior* above-mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the people hereof, that they came neither out of *Meſopotamia*, or *Arabia Feliz*, as many wiſe-men doe believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia* the *Deſart*, which City (ſaith he) when my ſelf was there, was, as I judged, called *Semiſcaſach*.

Cities of note in a Countrey ſo deſart and uninhabited we muſt look for few; yet ſome there are, inhabited by a more Civill ſort of people, whom they call by the name of *Moores*, giving that of *Arabian* to thoſe onely, who live roming and robbing up and down. *Ptolomy* gives the names of forty Cities and villages in it (*civitates & vicos* ſaith the *Latine*) the memory of moſt of which is now utterly periſhed. Thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1. *Sabe*, or *Saba*, the habitation of thoſe *Sabæans* who pillaged *Iob*; ſo called from *Sheba*, the grand-ſonne of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen.* 25. 3. Of whom, and of the reſt of that line, it is ſaid, in the ſixt verſe of that chapter, that *Abraham gave them gifts, and ſent them away from* Iſaac *Eaſt-ward, unto the Eaſt Countrey*: now called *Semiſcaſac*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2. *Theman*, which poſſibly may be the Countrey of *Eliphaz* the *Themanite*, one of the *viſitants* of *Iob*; As 3. *Shuah*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bildad*, another of them, hence ſurnamed the *Shuhite*. 4. *Tharſacus*, by *Pline* called *Aphipolis*. 5. *Zagmais*, near the *Perſian* Gulf, in the Countrey of the *Raubeni*, ſuppoſed to be deſcended from *Miſhma* the fourth ſonne of *Iſmael*. 6. *Phunion* the 36th. 7. *Oboth* the 37th. manſion of the Children of *Iſrael*. 8. *Rheganna*, another of thoſe named by *Ptolomy*, in the *Greek* Copies called *Eeganna*. Of any Town of note now being more than this, and *Semiſcaſac*, before named, I find nothing certain.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Countrey, of whom there is any certain Conſtat, were the poſterity of *Huz*, the Sonne of *Nachor*, and the Sonnes of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, of whoſe being ſetled in theſe parts, we had before good teſtimony from the Book of God: and intermixt with them lived ſome of the deſcendants of *Iſmael* alſo. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Ptolomy* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their originall from *Adheel* the third, and the *Raubeni*, from *Miſhma* the fift ſonne of *Iſmael*, as ſome ſay they doe; I ſee no reaſon but the whole Countrey might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar* the ſecond Sonne, as well as from the tawny complexions of the people of it. From them deſcended the Tribes or Nations ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, that is to ſay, the *Orcheni*, *Chaucabeni*, *Auſitæ*, *Maſoni*, *Materni*, and *Agræi*, beſides the *Adubeni*, and *Raubeni*, already ſpecified. But being a diſ-joynted people not under any ſetled form of Covernment, nor poſſeſſed of any thing worth looking after, they were either held not worth the conquering, in regard of their penury; or elſe unconquerable in reſpect of their Countrey, impaſſable for great Armies, by reaſon of the rolling Sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive that lying ſo near to the *Chaldæans*, they followed the fortunes of that mighty Monarchy, ſubjects unto it whilſt it ſtood, and after *Tributaries* unto thoſe who ſucceſſively poſſeſſed themſelves of the Supreme power. Not looked at by the *Romans*, or regarded by them, who aimed at wealth as well as honour, in their expeditions: nor otherwiie ſubject to the *Turk* at this preſent time, than as they can make uſe of him and his protection in their frequent robberies. Though counted of as a part of the *Turkiſh* Empire, becauſe the more civill *Arabians* are indeed his ſubjects.

2. *ARABIA PETRÆA.*

ARABIA PETRÆA, (now called *Barra*, *Baraab*, and *Barthalaba*) hath on the Eaſt, *Arabia Deſerta*, and part of *Sinus Perſicus*, or the Bay of *Perſia*; on the Weſt, the *Iſthmus* which joineth *Africa* to *Aſia*, and part of the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the North, *Paleſtine*; and on the South, a long ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the rockineſs of the ſoil hereof, or more properly from *Petra* the chief City of it, called alſo by *Æthicus*, *Sicaria*, but I know not why; by the *Hebrews*, *Chus*, generally tranſlated *Ethiopia*; by *Willian* of *Tyre*, *Arabia Secunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the firſt. By *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pliny* it is called *Nabathæa*, which name it had from *Nabaioth*, the eldeſt of the twelve Sonnes of *Iſmael*, though properly that name belonged only to thoſe parts which lay next *Judæa*: fruitfull though joining to the Deſarts; and thus remembred by the Poet, as an Eaſtern Countrey.

Eurus *ad Auroram*, Nabathæaque *regna receſſit*.
Eurus unto the Eaſt did flie,
Where fruitful *Nabathe* doth lie.

The Countrey much of the ſame nature with the other, but in ſome parts thereof more fertile if well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich land, flouriſhing with variety of trade and trafick. But for the moſt part full of untravellable Deſarts, except to thoſe which carry their proviſions with them for fear of ſtarving, and goe in great companies or *Carvans* for fear of robbing, and yet much travelled by Merchants who trafick into *Egypt* and *Babylonia*, the commodities whereof they lay on *Camels*, which are the ſhips of *Arabia*, as their Seas, the Deſarts. For upon one of theſe *Camels*, they will lay ordinarily 600. and ſometimes 1000. pound weight: yet not afford him water above once in four days, not oftner in fourteen, if there be occaſion. So that the *Camel* carrying ſo great a burden, and ſeldome fewer than 500 going in one voyage; the Merchant, if he ſcapeth robbing, makes a rich return. Of theſe *Deſarts* the moſt memorable are thoſe of *Sin*, and *Pharan*, in which the *Iſraelites* ſo long wandred: not beautified with graſs, nor adorned with trees, the *Palm* onely excepted; nor furniſhed with water but by rain or miracle.

The people of it for the moſt part deſcended of the ſonnes of *Chus* and *Iſmael*, intermixed with the *Madianites*

dianites descending from *Abraham* by *Keturah*, and the *Amalekites*, descended probably from *Amalek*, the Grand-sonne of *Esau*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. but all united at the last in the name of *Saracens*. This name derived, as some think, from *Sarra*, signifying a desart, and *saken* which signifieth to inhabit, because they live for the most part in these desart places; as others say, from *Sarak*, signifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia* before delivered. This last most suitable to their nature, and best liked by *Scaliger*. *Saraceni à vicinis dicuntur ab* Elsarak, i. e. λῃστικοὶ, νομαδικοὶ, *quod rapinis victitent*. So he, in his second book *de Emend. Temp.* A people not reckoned of in the former times, till made remarkable by their conquest of a great part of the world; but alwaycs counted warlike and martial men. Of whom take this Character out of *Marcellinus*. "The *Saracens* (saith he) whom "we are neither to wish for our friends or enemies, are a martiall people, half-naked, clad as far as the "groin with painted *Cassocks*, ranging up and down on *Camels*, and swift horses, as well in peace as "troublesome times. Not used unto the *Plough*, to plant trees, or get their livings by tillage, they wander "from one place to another, without house or home, or any constant dwelling place, or the use of laws: "nor can they long endure the same either Air or Soyl, the manner of their lives being alwayes flitting; like "ravenous kites, which if they chance to spie a prey, snatch it up in their flight, or if they chance "to fasten on it as it lieth on the ground they make no long stay. Their food is chiefly upon "*Venison*, and store of milk, herbs which they gather from the ground, and birds which they "get by fowling; but altogether ignorant of corn and wine. Their wives they hire onely for a time, "though for a shew of Matrimony they present their husbands with a spear and a tent, as in way of "dowrie; but they part with them when they please. Both Sexts most extremely given to carnal lusts; "the women as rambling as the men, maried in one place, and brought to bed in another; leaving their "children where they fall, without more care of them. So farre, and to this purpose he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principall are, 1. That called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which passing thorow this Country endeth his course in the *Red Sea*. 2. *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the *torrent of Ægypt*, which rising in this Countrey, and passing by the borders of *Idumæa*, hath its fall in the lake of *Sirbon*, and together with the waters thereof, loseth it self at last in the *Mediterranean*.

With Mountains it is better stored, and those of eminent observation, as 1 Mount *Sinai*, famous in all ages, for the promulgation of the Law, and of late times for a Monastery of *Maronites* on the top thereof. The hill so high, that both shores of the *Red Sea* may be thence seen: but easie of ascent by reason of steps cut out of the rock: which notwithstanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monastery made an Episcopall See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the letters of *Eugenius* Bishop hereof to the Arch-Duke *Charles*, *Anno* 1569. complaining that the *Turk* had sold all their lands, and that himself and the Monkes were fain to pawn their holy Vessells, and take up money on Usury. Here is also a *Mesque* or *Mesquit* of *Turks*, who resort in pilgrimage to this hill, as well as the Christians. 2. Mount *Horeb*, where the *Israelites* worshipped the *Molten Calf*, about a mile and an half distant from Mount *Sinai*, but not so high, on the top of which is a Church also; and a Monastery of *Coloires*, or *Greek Monks*, at the bottom; exceeding hospitable to strangers, whom they entertain of free cost, and cheerfully shew them all the places worth observation, which the Scripture mentioneth in that tract. Both hills by *Ptolomy*, called *Melani*, or the Black Mountains; the last now called *Orel*. 3. Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumæa*, and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of most observation, 1. *Petra*, the name-giver to this part, at first called *Recem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*: afterwards called *Serah* when pertaining to the *Idumæans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Crat*. Best known in holy Scripture by the name of *Selah*, before mentioned, which signifies the same with the *Latine Petra*. A City of great note and strength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. and by him called *Jock-beel*, but in vain besieged by *Scaurus*, a *Roman* Generall, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the perswasion of *Antipater*, to take a sum of money and raise his siege. Nor did the Emperour *Trajan* speed much better at it, his Souldiers being still beat off in all their assaults, the very next man to him slain with a dart, and himself forced to cast away his *Imperiall* habit, and flie for his life: the heavens themselves, if *Dion* (who is never sparing of the like prodigies) may be believed, fighting against the *Romans* with thunder, lightning, whirlewinds, and tempests, as often as they made any approaches to it. But in the end subdued with the rest of the Countrey. In such esteem, by reason of the strength of it, by the *Soldans* of *Ægypt*, that they kept here their choisest treasures: and in the course of the *Holy Wars*, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Christians*, as the key that opened the Gates of *Palestine*, on the South border whereof, not far from Mount *Hor*, beforementioned, the Town is situate. The *Metropolis* of the Province when first under the *Romans*; and made the Seat of a *Latine* Bishop, when the Christians of the West were the Lords thereof. 2. *Bosra*, said to have been built by *Augustus Cæsar*, because by him repaired, when decayed and ruined; afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the *Romans*. This last most certain, and for such testifyed by this antient inscription, in an antient coin, *COL. BOSTRAN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANÆ*: Memorable also for the birth of *Philip* the Emperour, one of that *Alexanders* next Successors; by whom it was caused for a time to be called *Philippus*; for the *Metropolitan* dignity removed hither from *Petra*, somewhat before the time of *Justinian*, but by whom I find not; and for being the Episcopall See of *Titus* (hence surnamed) *Bostrenus*, a Reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the *Apostate*. A City of as great antiquity as the most that be, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 33. though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is still remaining, and well known by the name of *Bussereth*. 3. *Elama*,

on

on a bay of the *Red Sea*, called hence *Sinus Elaniticus*, 4. *Phara*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderneſs of *Paran* ſeems to take its name. 5. *Berenice*, ſo called from ſome of the Queens of *Ægypt*, but better known by the name of *Eſion-geber*, one of the Stations or incampings of the Children of *Iſrael*; and made by *Solomon* the ordinary harbour for his Ships which ſailed to *Ophir* in the *Eaſt-Indies*. 6. *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, giving name to the Wilderneſs or Deſart of *Sur*, comming cloſe up to it; remarkable for the firſt incamping of the Tribes of *Iſrael* after their miraculous paſſage over the *Red Sea*; and the defeat which *Saul* gave to the *Amalekites*, whom he ſmote from *Havilah* to this place. 7. *Havilah*, ſo called from *Havilah* the Sonne of *Chus*, being the furtheſt border of theſe *Amalekites* and *Iſmaelites* on the Gulf of *Perſia*, as *Sur* was on the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*. 8. *Madian*, ſo called of *Madian*, the Sonne of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, ſituate towards the *Red Sea* alſo; the City of *Jethro*, whoſe daughter *Zipporah* was the wife of *Moſes*: who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Ægypt*, was by Gods ſecret providence directed hither; that keeping the flocks of *Jethro* in the Deſarts adjoining, he might acquaint himſelf with the waies and paſſages, thorow which he after was to lead the houſe of *Iſrael*. 9. *Rephaim*, the incamping place of *Moſes*, where he diſcomfited the *Amalekites*; and to which the ſaid *Jethro* came to him with his wife and *Children*; adviſing him to eaſe himſelf of ſome part of that burden, which the government of ſo great a people would elſe bring upon him. 10. *Kadeſh-barnes*, the ſtation of the Tribes, when the ſpies which were ſent to diſcover the Land of *Canaan*, returned back unto them; memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Propheteſs; and 11, *Thara*, no leſs memorable for the mutiny and puniſhment of *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abirom*, the place remembred *Numb.*33. 27. but others will have 12. *Makheloth*, mentioned v. 25. of that Chapter, to be the Stage of that action; the Scriptures being ſilent in this particular. The reſt of their encamping places, being moſt of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpoſe, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do alſo ſome of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accompted of by *Ptolomy* as Cities of this Province; but ſpoken of already in our Deſcription of *Paleſtine*, to which more properly belonging.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, were the *Madianites*, the *Iſmaelites*, the *Amalekites*, and the Children of *Chus*; who dwelling promiſcuouſly together, are ſometimes uſed for one another: the Merchants which bought *Joſeph* of his Brethren being indifferently called *Midianites*, and *Iſmaelites*, *Gen.* 37. 28. and *Zipporah* the wife of *Moſes*, who queſtionleſs was a daughter of *Madian*, being by *Miriam*, and *Aaron*, called an *Ethiopian* or *Chuſite*, as in way of reproach, *Num.* 12. 1. But being they were different Nations, and ſuch as had ſome ſpeciall ingagement with or againſt the Children of *Iſrael*; we will conſider them by themſelves, till we have brought them into one body, by the name of *Chuſites*, *Hethiopians*, or *Arabians*, which are all the ſame.

And firſt, the *MADIANITES* were ſuch of the poſterity of *Madian*, the ſonne of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, who preſerving the knowledge of the true God, withdrew themſelves from all communion with the idolatrous *Canaanites*, at ſuch time as the reſt of their brethren did aſſociate with them; and ſetled themſelves more towards the banks of the *Red Sea*; where they did all good offices to the children of *Iſrael*, as they paſſed thorow their Countrey. Of theſe the *Kenites* were a branch, as appeareth *Judges* 1. 16. where *Jethro* the Prince or *Prieſt* of *Madian* is called a *Kenite*: ſome of which turned *Proſelytes*, and dwelt with the *Iſraelites* in *Canaan*, of which race *Heber* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael* who ſlew *Siſera*, was undoubtedly one. The reſt, continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former curteſies) to withdraw themſelves from them; leſt they ſhould periſh with them in the ſame deſtruction. Afterwards we hear litle of either People, loſing their name in the greater Nation of the *Iſmaelites*, with whom intermingled; or paſſing with them into the ſame common notion of *Arabians*, *Chuſites*, or *Ethopians*.

2. Nor were the *AMALEKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance: deſcended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grand-ſonne of *Eſau*, (though I deny not but there are ſome reaſons to be urged againſt that opinion,) and planted on the back of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or *outwork*. A people miſchievouſly bent againſt thoſe of *Iſrael*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Eſau* their fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently ſet on at *Rephidim*, when they ſuppoſed them ſpent and wearied with their flight from *Egypt*. And though diſcomfited in that battel, yet they continued in their malice againſt the *Tribes*: and joyning firſt with the *Canaanites* againſt them when they were in their *March*; and after with the *Midianites* when not well ſetled in their new poſſeſſions. A provocation ſo ill-taken by the *Lord of hoſts*, becauſe unnatural, and ill-grounded, that he declared his reſolution from the time of the battel of *Rephidim*, to put *out the remembrance of* Amalek *from under Heaven*, *Exodus* 17. 14. Accordingly, when the Children of *Iſrael* were provided for it, he commanded *Saul* to ſet upon them, and to ſlay both man and woman, Infant and ſuckling, yea their ſheep and Cattel. But ſome of them eſcaped this ſlaughter, and fell not long after upon *Ziglag*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ranſacked; but being by him followed on the firſt intelligence, they were eaſily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their malice yet ſurvived their power; and what they could not do by their proper forces, they endeavoured to affect by joyning with the *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, and other enemies of *David*, in their warres againſt him. And this was *ultimum conamen*, one of the laſt flaſhes of their dying light: nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times ſucceeding, moſt of the Nation being worn out, and thoſe few which were left, retiring to the Mountains of *Edom*; but thereof alſo diſpoſſeſſed by the *Simeonites*, during the reign of *Hezekiah*.

3. The

3. The *ISMAELITES*, descending from *Ismael*, the sonne of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nations, and grown wondrous populous, spread themselves over a great part of these three *Arabias*: all of them either *Theeves* or *Merchants*; trading to *Egypt*, in *spicery*, and *balm*, and *myrrhe*, or robbing those which traded in the like commodities. Called also *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as 1 *Chron.* 5. 10. *Psalm* 83. 6. &c. and by that name well known to many of the antient writers. A people for the most part of a vagabond and roguish life, more given to spoyl, than any honest course of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be armed against them: so verifying the prediction which was given of *Ismael*, that he should be a wild man, *having his hand against every man, and every mans hand against him.* Saint *Hierome* so conceives that Prophecy to have been accomplished. More fitly verified perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens*, (by which, and by the name of *Scenites*, they were most generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made such foul havock in the world, and were esteemed the common enemies of all *Civil* Nations. Never so governable in their best and most orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one body with the *Chusites*, and the rest of these Nations: and then no further than it stood with their lust or liking.

4. As for the *Chusites*, though they permitted the Nations above specified to inhabit in those Desarts and wast places which themselves either could not people or cared not for: yet were they alwayes of most power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground containing now all *Petræa*, the South part of *Deserta*, and the Mountains which divide *Petræa* from *Arabia Felix*; which from them was called *Chus*, or the land of *Chus*. Rendred in all places of the *old Testament* by the name of *Ethiopia*, first by the *Septuagint*, and afterwards by all the Fathers *Greeks* and *Latine*, the *Vulgar* translation of the Bible, and almost all the other translations at this day extant. And rendred right enough at first, as in all times since, though by some mistaken: who having never heard of any other *Æthopia* than that in *Africk*, have transferred thither all those actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The *Septuagint*, no doubt, were not so ignorant of the affaires of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Masters. And he that looks into the History of *Herodotus*, who lived 150 years before that translation; will find, that by the *Grecians* they were called *Æthiopians*: and called so questionless from the self same reason, that is to say, the swarthyness, or Sun-burnt-ness, of their complexion, as the *Æthiops* of *Africk* were; that name being framed of the *Greek* word Αἴθω, signifying to burn, and ὄψ, a countenance, by reason of their tawny and Sun-burnt Countenances. For speaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceed, Ἀρσάμην δὲ ἀπὸ Αἰθιόπων τῶν ὑπὲρ Αἴγυπτον οἰκημένων ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης &c. "*Arsames* (saith he) was Captain of "the *Arabians* (he meaneth the *Troglodites*) and *Æthiopians* which are beyond *Egypt*: but the Ea- "stern *Æthiopians* were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from the other in the structure of their "bodies, but their hair and voice onely: the *Eastern Æthiopians* wearing their hair smooth, those of *Libya* "curled. The *Æthiops of Asia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Æthiops of Africa* were arrayed with "the skins of beasts. Here then we have an *Asian Æthiopia* in the time of *Herodotus*: the same acknowledged by *Pausanias* an old *Greek* writer, and by *Philostratus* after him, though they look for it in the wrong place; the first amongst the *Seres* in the North of *Asia*, the other on the River *Ganges*, too much in the East. Nor doth *Æthicus* one of the old *Cosmographers*; published by *Simlerus*, shoot more neer the mark, who speaking of the River *Tigris*, saith that it buryeth it self, and runneth under the ground in *Æthiopia*: Which though *Simler* doth interpret of these parts of *Arabia*; yet questionless that Author meaneth it of the Countreys about Mount *Taurus*, where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having passed under those vast mountains, riseth up again.

But what need further search be made to find out the situation of this *Æthiopia*, when it is bounded out so plainly in the holy Scriptures. For when it is said of *Zipporah* the wife of *Moses*, that she was an *Æthiopian* woman, *Num.* 12. 1. who is well known to have been a native of this Countrey; and when it is said in the 2 *Chron.* 21. 16. that *the Lord stirred up against* Jehoram *the spirit of the* Philistims, *and of the* Arabians *that were near the* Æthiopians: it must needs be that the *Æthiopia* there spoken of must be conterminous to the rest of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Countrey wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, that he *would lay wast the land of* Egypt *from the Tower of* Syene *even unto the borders of* Æthiopia, chap. 29. 10. that is to say, from one end thereof unto the other: it followeth necessarily, that *Æthiopia* there meant, must be this part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Chus*, as the bound of *Egypt* most remote from the tower of *Syene*, which all *Geographers* acknowledge to be in the extreme South parts thereof towards the *Cataracts* of *Nilus*. For to expound it as some do, of *Æthiopia* in *Africk*, on the borders whereof *Syene* stood, and stood so indifferently betwixt it and *Egypt*, that *Stephanus* an antient Writer makes it very doubtfull to which of the two it did belong; were to make the Scripture speak plain *non-sence*, as plain as if a man should say, that the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands* from *Graveling* to *Flanders*; or that the sword hath ranged over all *England*, from *Barwick* to *Scotland*. As then we have found this *Æthiopia* of the *old Testament* to be neer the *Philistims* on the one side, and the Land of *Egypt* on the other; so may we find it to be bounded also on the East, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldæa*: the River *Gihon*, which is said to compass the whole Land of *Æthiopia* (or the land of *Chus*) *Gen.* 2. 13. being no other than a branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldæa*. So that the translation of the *Septuagint* in reading *Chusitis*, or the land of *Chus*, by *Ethiopia*, needs no such alteration or emendation as some men suppose. The mistakes (whereof there have been many) which arise from hence, not being to be charged on them or on their *translation*, but on the *ignorance* of the *Reader*, or *errour* of such *Expositors*, who dreaming of no other *Æthiopia* than *of that in* Africk, have made the Scriptures speak such things as it never meant, and carried these

Chusites

Chuſites into the *African Ethiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may be ſaid, that this poſterity of *Chus*, being ſtreitned in their own poſſeſſions, or willing to ſeek new adventures, might have croſſed over the *Red-Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but ſeven miles broad where narroweſt); and mingling with the Sons of *Ludim* on the other ſide, might either give the name of *Æthiopians* to them, or receive it from them.

Now to go forwards with the ſtory, the firſt great action attributed to theſe *Chuſites*, or *Arabian Æthops*, incorporated with the reſt of thoſe mingled Nations, is the expedition of *Zerah*, the King hereof, againſt *Aſa* King of *Judah*, drawing after him an Army of a *million*, and three hundred Chariots of war (the greateſt Army ever read of in unqueſtioned ſtory) but for all that, diſcomfited by the *Lord of hoſts*, on the praiers of *Aſa*, and all the ſpoyl of that huge Army carried to *Hieruſalem*. After this *Tirrakah*, another of theſe *Æthiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *Aſſyrian* Kingdome might prove unto him, prepared a puiſſant Army againſt *Senacherib*; then beſieging *Libna*, threatning the conqueſt of all *Judah*, and invading *Egypt*: upon the news of whoſe approach *Senacherib's* forces which were even upon the gaining of *Peluſium*, the Gate of *Egypt*, were fain to diſlodge and provide for their ſafety. For though *Herodotus* call *Senacherib* King of *Arabia* and *Aſſyria*, yet was he Maſter onely of thoſe parts of *Arabia*, which had been formerly poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Iſrael*, being no more than ſome few Cities of *Petraa*, bordering next unto them: or perhaps called ſo onely in reſpect of thoſe parts of *Syria* and *Meſopotamia*, which were ſometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*, as before is ſaid. What part they after took in the great war betwixt *Nebuchadnezzar* and *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*, is not hard to ſay. For that beſides the ſame *reaſons of ſtate* obliging them to ſide with the *Egyptian* were ſtil in force; their giving *Necho* leave to paſs thorow their Countrey with his Army, to invade the *Babylonian* on the banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tirrakah* and *Zerah*, were Kings of this *Aſian*, and not of the *African Æthiopia*, is moſt clear and evident: partly in regard the Kings of *Egypt* would never ſuffer ſuch huge Armies to paſs thprow the whole length of their Dominions; but principally becauſe it is ſaid in the holy Scriptures, that *Aſa* having overthrown that vaſt Army of *Zerah*, ſmote all the Cities about *Gezar*, which formerly had belonged unto the *Philiſtims*, but were then poſſeſſed by theſe *Chuſites* and their Aſſociates. After this, either as *Confederates* or ſubjects, we find them aiding unto *Xerxes* in his war on *Greece*: and like enough it was that in *Alexanders* march from *Egypt* towards *Perſia*, they ſubmitted to him, as did all the other Countries thorow which he paſſed. He being dead, *Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, ſent *Athenæus* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an ambuſh was diſcomfited by them; *Demetrius* the Sonne of *Antigonus* thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to ſue for peace. In the time of the *Selencian* race in *Syria*, we find them governed by Kings of their own, moſt of them called by the name of *Aretas*; of which one was of ſpecial note in the declining fortunes of the *Seleucidans*, for bidding very fair for the Crown of that Countrey; another mentioned by Saint *Paul*, 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damaſcus*. In the flouriſhing of the *Roman* fortunes, the Kings hereof having firſt aided *Mithridates* and *Tygranes* in the warre againſt them, ſubmitted themſelves unto *Lucullus*, being then no neerer to them than *Armenia Major*. The like they did to *Pompey* alſo, being then in *Judea*. First vanquiſhed by *Ælius Gallus* in the time of *Auguſtus*; but the Victory not improved to an abſolute conqueſt, till the time of *Trajan*: when partly by his perſonall preſence, and partly by the valour and good fortune of *Palma*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquiſhed, and brought into the form of a *Roman* Province; but ſo that they had Kings of their own, (*Vaſſalls* and *Feudataries* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the riſe of *Mahomet*; of which more hereafter.

3. *ARABIA FELIX*

ARABIA FELIX is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Perſian*; on the Weſt, with the *Arabian* Gulf; on the North, with a long ridge of mountains, which part it from *Deſerta*, and *Petraa*; and on the South, with the boundleſs Ocean. Environed on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impaſſable mountains, in ſituation and figure much reſembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the fertility and happy condition of it, being eſteemed the moſt fruitful and pleaſant and Countrey in all *Aſia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balſamum*, *Frankincenſe*, Gold, and precious ſtones: by *Curtius* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincenſe* wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a ſtory, that when *Alexander* in his Adoleſcency or boyage was ſacrificing to the Gods, and caſt into the fire with both hands great ſtore of *Frankincenſe* and *Myrrhe*; *Leonidas*, his Governour, bid him be more ſparing of thoſe precious and dear Commodities, till he was Maſter of the Countrey in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembring, when he brought almoſt all the Eaſt under his obedience, he ſent unto *Leonidas* a ſhip laden with *Frankincenſe*, biding him from thenceforth ſerve the Gods more liberally. But aſwel for the reaſon of this adjunct, as a more perfect Character, and deſcription of it, take along this of *Ammianus Marcellinus* who deſcribes it thus. "On the Eaſt, and South hereof (ſaith he) are the *Happy Arabians*, ſo called becauſe ſo rich "in corn, aſwel as plenteous in cattel, vines, and *odoriferous ſpices* of all kinds; ſhut up betwixt the *Red Sea*, "and the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo acquainted with all bleſſings, which either Element can afford: well fur- "niſhed with *Roades*, and quiet harbours for ſhipping, the Towns of Trade and merchandiſe ſtanding "very thick, the retiring houſes of the Kings, paſſing neat and ſumptuous. Beſides moſt wholeſome foun- "tains of *medicinall* waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers very cleer and pure, and a temperature "of Air exceeding healthy, ſo that whoſoever conſidereth all things aright, may well conclude, that there

"is nothing wanting to the accompliſhment of its felicity in the higheſt degree. So *Ammianus Marcelli-*
"*nus*. To which we need adde nothing more to ſet forth its happineſs, than that *Danæus* in his comment on Saint *Auguſtines Echiridion ad Laurentium*, is perſwaded that it was the *local* place of *Paradiſe*. *Dicitur* (ſaith he) *Paradiſi terreſtris Regio pars quædam eſſe* Arabiæ, *quæ nunc dicitur* Felix. But it hath other names beſides this of *Felix*, by the *Arabians* themſelves called *Jeman*, and *Al-jeman* (*Ayaman* corruptly by the *Turks*) which in that tongue ſignifieth the South, or *Southern Region*. By *Virgil* it is named *Panchaia*, *quaſi tota dehiſcens*, becauſe of the many chops and chinks which the ardour of the Sunne makes in the ſands thereof, though by him much extolled alſo for its plenty of *Frankincenſe*,

Totaq; thuriferis Panchaia *pinguis arenis*,
Famed are the whole *Panchaian* lands
For rich and incenſe-bearing ſands.

The People antiently, though more civil than the reſt of the *Arabians*, had yet many ſtrange and barbarous cuſtomes. *Adultery* amongſt them was puniſhed with death, as in other places, but he onely was held an *Adulterer*, which enjoyed any that was not his own kinſwoman, be ſhe his Siſter or his mother, and ſo they kept themſelves in their own families, community of wives or woemen was eſteemed no crime. And of this there is a tale in *Strabo*, that a King of this Countrey had 15. ſonnes, and but one daughter, who according to the cuſtomes hereof, was the common wife of all the Brethren: every of which had a *ſtaff* of like making, which when he went in unto his Siſter he did leave at the door, and by ſo doing did forbid entrance to the reſt till it were removed. The young Lady wearied with a continual exceſs of dalliance, ſecretly procured a *ſtaff* like unto the reſt, which when ſhe was deſirous to prohibit their acceſſes to her, ſhe left at her chamber door; and by that means did many times enjoy her deſired privacy. At laſt it happned that all the Brothers being together, one of them departed towards his Siſters lodging; Where finding a *ſtaff* before the door, and knowing that he had left his brethren in one place together, accuſed her of *Adultery*: but the truth being made known, the Lady was quitted, and her viſits afterwards reſtrained. Of *dead bodies*, they took no care, not ſo much as of their *Chiefs*, or *Princes*, but left them to the cuſtody of the next *dung-hil*. They bragged much of their deſcent from *Jupiter*; and neglected all ſciences and arts, as diſparagements to ſo great nobility. Commendable onely in the keeping of their faith and promiſes, and in that moſt punctual. Much of the ſame condition are the preſent Inhabitants, ſave that leſs faithful in their contracts, and by their law reſtrained from the medling with the wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themſelves to the grazing of cattel, and the reſt to Merchandize, wherein very cautious, and cunning: but hating to this day all *Mechanical* Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixed with others till the coming of the *Turks* amongſt them, of which but few, and thoſe diſpoſed of in garriſons: boaſting of their nobility, and *glorying* in nothing more than their greateſt ſhame, namely that the falſe Prophet *Mahomet* was their Countrey-man, whoſe impieties are here generally embraced and followed.

Amongſt the rarities of this Countrey, ſome account the *Phœnix*, which growing old burneth it ſelf in a neſt of *ſpices*, and from thence a young one is ingendred; one of them onely at a time, which after a life of five or ſix hundred years, thus reneweth her kind. But this *tradition*, queſtioned in former times by *Pliny* and ſome others, is now proved a *fiction*; contrary both unto divinity and natural reaſon, though ſome of the Fathers made uſe of it as an argument to prove the *Reſurrection* againſt the *Gentiles*, by whom the *tradition* was believed. More common, but of no leſs obſervation, is the *Oſtrige*, a Bird which ſwalloweth all it findeth, be it ſtones or Iron, They delight chiefly in the *Deſarts*, in the ſands whereof they lay their eggs, and then forgetting where they left them ſit on thoſe they meet next. In that reſpect accounted for a ſimple fowl, though otherwiſe of wit enough to preſerve themſelves, keeping in flocks, and oftentimes with their fearful ſhreeches affrighting *Paſſengers*, to whom they do appear a farre off like a Troop of horſemen. Their wings too little for their bodies, ſerve them not for flight, but to run more ſpeedily; and by that means not eaſily caught, though much laid in wait for, for their skins, which the people ſell unto the Merchant with the feathers on them. Nor of leſs note is the *Frankincenſe*, though of common uſe; almoſt peculiar to this Countrey, and here but to thoſe parts thereof which were formerly poſſeſſed by the *Sabi*, the wood out of which this *gum* proceedeth being about 100 miles long, and 500 broad; gathered onely in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Countrey is much commended by *Ammianus* for plenty of Rivers, the principal whereof are ſaid by *Ptolomy*, to be 1. *Betus*. 2. *Prion*. 3. *Harman*. 4. *Lar*; but the modern names thereof I find not. Many fair *lakes*, and ſtore of large capacious *Baies* on each coaſt of the Sea, as 1. *Sinus Eliniticus*. 2. *Sachalites*. 3. *Leanites*. 4. *Sinus Magoram*. 5. *Sinus Iehthy-phagorum*. 6. *Meſſanites*. 7. *Sacer Sinus*, or the holy Bay, and 8 the Road or *Naval ſtation* called *Neogilla*. Mountains of moſt note, 1. Thoſe which are called *Melanes*, at the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf. 2. *Cabubuthra*, at the entrance of the *Red Sea* or *Gulf* of *Arabia*. 3. *Hippus*. 4. *Prionotus*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence ſo denominated. 5. *Climax*. 6. The Mountains called *Dedymi*, &c.

Towns of good note in antient times it had very many, no Region affording unto *Ptolomy* the names of more; and amongſt thoſe, many commodious Ports for trafick, the Sea begirting it for the ſpace of three thouſand miles and upwards. Of moſt importance and obſervation in thoſe times were, 1. *Zabrum*, 2. *Badæ*, 3. *Rhabana*, 4. *Carman*, 5. *Manambis*, 6. *Sabe*, 7. *Are*; the Royal ſeats of ſo many ſeverall Kingdomes, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the title of *Regia*. Then there are 1. *Macoſmos*, 2. *Meara*, 3. *Nagara*, 4 *Sabbatha*, 5. *Mapha*, and 6. *Saphar*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of ſome ſeverall Nations. Amongſt the Ports, he reckoneth, 1. *Soſippus*, 2. *Trulla*, 3. *Tretos*, 4. *Cryptus*, 5. *Itamos*, and 6. *Moſcha*: amongſt the moſt noted Empories

ports or Towns of Trafick, 1. *Muſa*, 2. *Ocelis*, 3. *Arabia*, 4. *Cane*. Beſides which there are ſome which do preſerve the memory of their firſt Plantations, as, 1. *Saphta*, upon the *Perſian* Gulf, ſo called from *Sabta*, the third Sonne of *Chus*. 2. *Rhegama*, or *Regma* (as the *Greek* copies of *Ptolomy* have it) ſo named from *Regma* or *Raama* his ſixt Soane; On the ſame Gulf alſo. 3. *Sabe*, on the ſhores of the Red Sea, and 4. *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, ſo named from *Seba* the eldeſt Sonne of the ſame *Chus*, from whom the rich and potent nation of the *Sabeans* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him named, we ſhall take more particular notice of ſome that follow. 1. *Muſa*, a noted Port on the entrance of the *Red-Sea*, frequented antiently by the *Ethiopian* and *Egyptian* Merchants, who there laded their ſhips, with *Frankincenſe*, *Myrrhe*, *Spices*, and other commodities of this Countrey, bringing in, in exchange thereof, Saffron, corn, wine, ointments, purple dies, &c. 2. *Sabe*, the Regal Seat of the Kings of the *Sabeans*, particularly of that Queen ſo memorized in holy Scripture: called in the old Teſtament the *Queen of Sheba*, from her Countrey and place of dwelling, in the New Teſtament, the *Queen of the South*, becauſe of the Southern ſituation of it in reſpect of *Judea*: ſaid there to come from the furtheſt parts of the world, becauſe there was no part of the world which lay ſouth to the Countrey of the *Sabeans* over which ſhe reigned. Situate on a little Mountain, aſſumed by *Agatharcides* to be πολὺ κάλλιστον ἅπ κατὰ τ' Ἀραβίαν, the moſt beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the Metropolis of the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabeans*; rich in all the excellencies of *Nature*, eſpecially in *Frankincenſe*, a gum peculiar to them only, and growing here in a wood of about 100 miles long, and 50 broad, not gathered but in the Spring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Countrey hereabouts from hence called *Thuriferæ*, and this ſweet gum appropriated ſoly to it. Sabæi Arabum *propter thura clariſſimi*, as we find in *Pliny*, *Solis eſt thurea virga* Sabæis, as it is in *Virgil*; and finally—*Thuriferos, felicia Regna*, Sabæos, in the *Argonauticks* of *Valerius Flaccus*. It was called alſo *Mariaba*, and by that name occurreth in ſome antient Writers. 3. *Saphar*, more towards the *Perſian* Gulf, on the South-ſide of the mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homeritæ*; adorned in times of Chriſtianity with a beautifull Temple. 4. *Sabbatha*, or *Sabota*, as *Pliny* calleth it, ſeated about the middeſt of the Countrey, on the top of an high and lofty hill, from whence it had a gallant proſpect on the fields adjoyning; antiently large and populous, and ſtrongly fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the walls, the principal that conſecrated unto *Sabis*, the God of their Nation, to whom they offered the tith of their *Frankincenſe*, *ubi decimas Deo quem* Sabin *vocant*, *menſura non pondere capiunt Sacerdotes*, as we read in *Pliny*.

But theſe and almoſt all the reſt being grown out of knowledge, there have riſen in their rooms, 1. *Egra*, on the ſhore of the *Red Sea*, neer the Bay called *Sinus Elaniticus*, by *Ptolomy* called *Arga*, by the *Arabians* themſelves, *Algiar*, the Port Town to *Medina*, from which about three daies journey diſtant. 2. *Jatrib*, or *Jathrib*, in the way betwixt *Aygiar*, and *Medina*, the birth-place of *Mahomet*; by whom fortified with a mud-wall as his place of retreat in the firſt beginnings of his fortunes. 3. *Medina*, or commonly called *Medina Talnabi*, corrupty for *Medinatho-Inabi*, that is to ſay, the City of the *Prophet*, ſo called from the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, that vile *Impoſture*, which is there to be ſeen; although not in ſuch an iron coffin, or drawn up to the roof of the Temple by vertue of an *Amant* there placed, as ſome deliver. The Town ſituate in a deſolate and barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petræa*; but of great trade, rich, and well inhabited: the Sepulchre of that falſe Prophet drawing thither a continuall reſort of *Pilgrims*. The Temple gorgeous, having 3000 lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb incloſed within an Iron grate, but of no magnificence or beauty: covered with a carpet of Green Velvet, which is ſent hither yearly by the *Grand Signeur*, the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable ſhreds or peeces, and ſold for *Relicks* by the Prieſts, (to ſuch as come in Pilgrimage thither) to their great enriching. 4. *Cufa*, the ordinary reſidence of the firſt *Caliphs*, till the removing of the Imperiall Seat to *Damaſcus* in *Syria*; and after that, the uſuall place of meeting for conſultation in affairs of State, relating to the peace of this Countrey, and the common intereſt of this People: as memorable for the Sepulchre of *Mortis Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Perſian Sophies*, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*. 5. *Meccha*, ſuppoſed to be the *Mechara* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate in the like barren ſoyl, not far from *Medina*, but of far greater reſort and trafick: the whole wealth in a manner of this Countrey, together with the commodities of *Perſia*, and *India*, being firſt brought hither, and from hence on Camels backs tranſported into *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and other parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire. Unwalled, and either for that cauſe or for concealement of their fopperies from the eyes of Chriſtians, it is made death for any Chriſtian for to come within five miles of it. Utterly deſtitute of water, but what they keep in ciſternes from one ſhewer of rain to another, or elſe brought thither with great charge; otherwiſe pleaſantly ſeated, rich, and containing about 6000 families: every year viſited with three *Caravans* or troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damaſcus*, and *Grand Caire*: who having done their buſineſs and devotions there, go afterwards in *Pilgrimage* to *Medina* alſo, to the great enriching of both places. 6. *Ziden*, the Haven Town to *Mecca*, from which diſtant about 40. miles, ſituate on the *Red Sea*, in a ſandy ſoyl, unwalled and much expoſed both to wind and weather, but wealthy, well-built, and of great reſort. 7. *Zebit*, now the *Metropolis* of the Countrey, ſituate about half a daies journey from the *Red Sea*, in a large plain between two mountains; a Riveret of the ſame name paſſing by it, well-traded for Sugars, ſpice, and fruits; the ordinary reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbe*, by whom taken not longer after *Aden*. 8. *Eltor*, a Port Town of this Countrey, where the Chriſtians are ſuffered to inhabit. 9. *Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, neer the Streights called *Babe'-Mandell*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Madoce* of *Ptolomy*, but more agreeing in ſituation, with the famous Emporie by him called *Arabia*. The faireſt Town of the whole *Peninſula*, of great ſtrength, both

both by Art and Nature, well-traded, and well-fortified, having a large capacious Haven, seldome without good store of shipping, and containing to the number of six thousand persons. Once a distinct Kingdome of it self, but treacherously surprized by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1538. and therewith all the rest of the Countrey made afterwards the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebit*, are supposed to be no fewer than thirty thousand *Timariots*. 10. *Oran*, the Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. 11. *Thema*, or *Theman*, the same I take it, which our later travellers call *Zeman*, situate more within the land, affirmed by *Benjamin* the *Jew*, surnamed *Tuledensis*, to be a Town of 15 miles square, but to have within the walls thereof great quantity of ground for tillage. 12. *Zarval*, a retiring place of the *Caliphs*, when they lived in this Countrey. 13. *Hor*, on the point or Promontory called *Chorodemus*, a Garrison not long since of the Kings of *Ormus*. 14. *Muskahat*, on the *Persian* Gulf, neer the point of Land called *Cape Rozelgate*; opposite to *Surat*, in the East *India*, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who have fortified it with a well-built Castle, for defence of their ships and Frigots which frequent those Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Persians*, many of the Inhabitants whereof were since setled here. Of the affairs of this Countrey we shall speak anon; having first took a brief view of the Ilands which belong unto it.

4. THE ARABICK ILANDS.

The *ILANDS* which lie round about the shores of *Arabia Felix*, and have been antiently accompted as parts thereof, are dispersed either in the 1. *Red-Sea*, 2. *Southern* Ocean, or 3. the Gulf of *Persia*.

1. The *RED-SEA*, (called also by the Antients *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern *Ocean* which interposeth it self betwixt *Egypt* on the East; *Arabia Felix* and some part of *Petræa* on the West; the North-East bound of it touching upon *Idumæa*, or the Cost of *Edom*. Extended in length from the Town of *Sues*, antiently called *Arsinoe*, in the bottom of it, to the streights of *Babel-Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean, for the space of one thousand and four thousand miles, in breadth for the most part but one hundred, but in some places almost two: the Streights themselves not being above a mile and an half; antiently chained by the Kings of *Ægypt*, as is said by *Strabo*, but now left open by the *Turk*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and unquiet Sea, full of sands and shelves; insomuch as they who passe in and out, are fain to make use of *Pilots* which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the channel. Sufficiently famous in all times and stories for the miraculous passage of the Children of *Israel*.

It took the name of the *Red-Sea*, as some conceived, from the *redness* of the sands; as others have delivered, from the *redness* of the waters: but later observations have discovered the weakness and absurdity of these *Etymologies*; the Sea and Sands being coloured here as in other places. By the *Grecians* it was called *Erythræum*, which in that tongue signifieth *Red* also, not from the colour either of the sands or waters, but from one *Erythras* supposed to be the Sonne of *Perseus* and *Andromeda*, who commanded the Eastern shores hereof. And these come neerer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, because it took beginning on the coasts of that Countrey: which word in the *Hebrew*, signifying *Red*, as appeareth *Gen.* 25. 30. first given as a nick-name to *Esau*, and from him afterwards to *Mount Seir*, or the Land of *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 31. was by the *Greeks* rendred *Erythræum*, and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latines*. Whence the name of the *Red Sea* became known to all, but the reason of the name to few.

Of the great trafick which was antiently driven up this Sea, we shall speak hereafter, when we are in *Egypt*, on the other side of it. Look we now on the Ilands which belong to *Arabia*, as they all generally do. Known in the times of *Ptolomy* by the names of 1. *Adani*, 2. *Æni*, 3. *Are*, 4. *Cardamine*, 5. *Combusta*, 6. *Damanum*, 7. *Hieracum*, or the Isle of *Hawkes*, 8. *Maliaci*, 9. *Polbii*, 10. *Socratis*, 11. *Timagenis*, and 12. *Zygæna*. But by what names now called, and of what note then, is a thing so doubtfull, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almost all of them to be small, desolate, or but meanly inhabited, described by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeness, said to be an hundred twenty and five miles long, though but twelve broad, called *Dalaqua*, with a City in it of that name, where they gather *Pearls*. 2. Then there is *Camaran*, most extremely hot, of most note for the many spoils there made by the *Portugals*. 3. *Xamoa*, the earth whereof is said to be *Red*, (perhaps to countenance the vulgar tradition of calling this the *Red Sea* from the colour of the sands or shores) and the King a *Moore*. 4. The *Samaritan Iland*, spoken of by *Scaliger*, inhabited by a remainder of that people; who assoon as they saw any stranger land upon their coasts, would most religiously desire him not to touch them.

II. The SOUTHERN OCEAN comprehendeth that vast body of waters, which from the Eastern banks of both *Æthiopia's*, coast along on the South of *Arabia Felix*, and so directly East-ward to the furthest *India*: in this regard called by some Writers *Oceanus Indicus*, by others *Mare Australe*, from the situation; and by some also *Mare Rubrum* or the *Red Sea*, from *Erythras* a great King (as they suppose) reigning hereabouts, and giving name not onely to the *Red Sea* (or Gulf of *Arabia*) strictly and specially so called, but to all the Sea-coasts also from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia* to the coasts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythræum*.

In this vast Ocean *Ptolomy* placeth many Ilands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, viz. two Ilands by the name of *Insulæ Agathoclis*. 2. Three more by the name of *Cocconati*. 3. *Dioscoris*, by *Pliny* called *Dioscurias*, with a City of the same name in it. 4. Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus Sachalites*

Sachalites, by the name of *Zenobii*. 5. *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrrina*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythras* before mentioned, being a great Hill planted with trees. 6. *Sarapias*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Turgana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Egyptian* Idol. None of them now of any Credit, nor formerly of any great note, the two laſt excepted.

III. On the Eaſt-ſide of *Arabia Felix*, betwixt it and *Perſia*, lieth another large Arm of the *Southern* Ocean, antiently called *Sinus Perſicus*, or the Bay of *Perſia*, now *Golfo di Elkadiffe*. A turbulent and unruly Sea, the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end, and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combatting or claſhing of which two great waters, makes it ſo unquiet. *Ptolomy* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*,) 1. *Tylus*, which *Arianus* ſets at the mouth of *Euphrates*, *Solinus* in the *Indian Seas*, affirming it to be well ſtored with vines, and olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophraſtus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place miſtaken) affording good materials for ſhipping. 2. *Apphana*. 3. *Tharo*. 4. *Ichara*; of which nothing memorable. To theſe ſome late Travellers have adjoyned two others, if not ſome of the former under thoſe new names, that is to ſay, 5. *Bayren*, and 6. *Gonſiar*, where they take the beſt *Pearles* in the World, in beds of *Oiſters*. Other Ilands of this Bay (if any) do belong to *Perſia*: where, if occaſion ſo require, we ſhall ſpeak more of them.

To return therefore to the main-land of *Arabia-Felix*, the firſt Inhabitants thereof were the ſonnes of *Chus*, and the families which they brought with them. Their memories preſerved in the names of ſome of the chief Towns and Nations, till the dayes of *Plinie*, *Ptolomy*, and ſome others of the antient writers. Divided afterwards into the ſeverall Tribes or Septs of the *Caſſanitæ*, *Cinædocolpitæ*, *Homeritæ*, *Adramitæ*, *Eleſari*, *Salchalitæ*, *Anaritæ*, *Gerræi*, *Ægæi*, *Sabæi*, *Minæi*, *Leanitæ*, *Cattabani*, *Abuceni*, and divers others: each governed ſeparately and apart by their ſeveral *Chiefs*; whom they honoured, as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which ſpoken of by *Juſtine*, named *Hierotimus*, is ſaid to have been the Father of 500 Children. Eaſie to have been overcome, becauſe ſo divided, if any potent neighbour had attempted the conqueſt of them: as it is wondrous ſtrange they did not, conſidering the richneſs of the Countrey, and the many temptations which it had to invite them to it. More worthily deſerving the name of *Felix* in that never conquered, than in all the other rarities and delights thereof. By *Alexander* once deſigned for the ſeat of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the conqueſt of it, having finiſhed his warre againſt the *Perſians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petræa*, though once *Auguſtus* did attempt it, employing in that action, *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Egypt*, one *Samos* being then King of thoſe parts which lay neereſt to him. The *Romans* at their firſt entry found no reſiſtance. But when by the extraordinary heat of the air, and drinking ſalt waters, they began to grow diſeaſed and ſickly; the *Arabians* fell luſtily upon them, and made them return back both with loſs and ſhame. After this nothing done by the *Romans* to diſturb their quiet; nor much done by the *Chriſtians* to advance their glories: the whole divided into almoſt as many *Religions* as Principalities and Eſtates. Moſt of them Gentiles, but *Circumciſed*, as the *Iſmaelites* and other *Arabians* had been of old; many *Jews* intermingled with them, and ſome ſtore of *Chriſtians*, but thoſe divided alſo into *Sects* and *factions*. And in this ſtate it ſtood, when *Mahomet* firſt began to broach his blaſphemous dotages. By birth of *Jathripp*, an obſcure village then, not far from *Medina*; his Father called *Abdilla*, an Idolatrous *Pagan*; his mother named *Hemina*, as perverſe a *Jeweſs*. Deprived of both his Parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an Uncle: who not able to give him education, not willing to be at the charge to keep him longer, ſold him at ſixteen years of age to the *Iſmaelites*, by whom expoſed to ſale in the open markets, he was bought by one *Abdulmutalif*, a wealthy Merchant. By him employed at firſt in *drudgery*, and ſervile offices, till noting his great wit, and fitneſs for better ſervices, he at laſt uſed him as his *factor*, ſending him with his *Camels* and loads of Merchandize, into *Syria*, *Perſia*, *Egypt*, and other places: wherein he did behave himſelf with ſuch dexteritie, that he much increaſed his Maſters wealth, and his own eſtimation. Of perſon he is ſaid to be low, and withall ſcald-headed; but otherwiſe comely to the eye, and of good aſpect. Much troubled with the *falling ſickneſs*, which infirmity he made good uſe of afterwards, affirming that thoſe fits were nothing but *heavenly raptures*, in which he did converſe with the Angel *Gabriel*. He is ſaid to have been alſo well skilled in *Magick*, by which he taught a *white Pigeon* to feed at his ear, which he gave out to be the *Holy Ghoſt*, by whom inſtructed in the law which he was to publiſh: but this not till afterwards. By *Sorceries*, comelineſs of perſon, and the great knowledge which he had in his maſters buſineſs, he gained ſo farre on the affections of his *Miſtreſs*, that on the death of *Abdalmutalif*, ſhe made him her husband. Poſſeſſed of all his maſters wealth, he affected eaſe; and being till then of no *Religion*, or at beſt a *Pagan*, he began to harken unto *Sergius*, a *Neſtorian* Monk, who flying out of *Syria* for fear of puniſhment (the hereſies of *Neſtorius* being newly both revived and cenſured) came into *Arabia*, where he found entertainment in the houſe of *Abdalmutalif*, the Maſter of *Mahomet*. By his perſwaſions, who found him a fit Inſtrument for the *devil* to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of hammering out a *new Religion*, which might unite all parties in ſome *common principles*, and bring the *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles*, into which the world was then divided, under one *Profeſſion*. Reſolved on this, he retired himſelf unto a Cave not farre from *Mecca*, as if he there attended nothing but *meditations*: *Sergius* in the mean time ſounding in the ears of the people, both his parts and piety. The people being thus prepared to behold the *Pageant*, out-comes the principal *Actor* with ſome parts of his *Alcoran* (pleaſing enough to *ſenſual* minds) which he profeſſed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel*. And finding that this edified to his expectation, he next proclaimed liberty to all *ſlaves* and *ſervants* as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the *natural liberty* of mankind was moſt dearly tendred: which drew unto him ſuch a rabble of unruly people, that with-

out fear of oppoſition, he diſperſed his doctrines, reducing them at laſt to a book or method.

The Book of this religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to ſay, the *Collection of Precepts*: the Originall whereof they feign to be written on a Table which is kept in Heaven, and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angell *Gabriel*. A Book ſo highly reverenced by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the cover of it, *let none touch this but he that is clean.* The body of it (as it now ſtandeth) was compoſed by *Oſmen* the fourth *Caliph*; who ſeeing the *Saracens* daily inclining to divers *hereſies*, by reaſon of ſome falſe copies of *Mahomets* Lawes; and that the Empire by the ſame means was likely to fall into civill diſſention; by the help of his wife, who was *Mahomets* daughter, he got a ſight of all *Mahomets* papers, which he reduced into four *Volumes*, and divided into one hundred twenty and four Chapters; commanding expreſly upon pain of death, that that book, and that onely, ſhould be received as *Canonicall*, through his Dominions. The whole body of it is but an expoſition and gloſs on theſe eight Commandments.

1. *Every one ought to believe that God is a great God; and one onely God, and Mahomet is his Prophet.* They hold *Abraham*, to be the *friend* of God; *Moſes* the *meſſenger* of God; and *Chriſt* the *breath* of God: whom they deny to be conceived by the *Holy Ghoſt*, affirming that the Virgin *Mary* grew with child of him by ſmelling to a Roſe; and was delivered of him at her breſts. They deny the myſtery of the *Trinity*; but puniſh ſuch as ſpeak againſt *Chriſt*, whoſe Religion was not (they ſay) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his pilgrimage to *Mecca*, doth not, comming or going, viſit the Sepulchre of *Chriſt*, is reputed not to have *merited*, or bettered himſelf any thing by his journey.

2. *Every man muſt marry to encreaſe the Sectaries of Mahomet.* Four wives he alloweth to every man, and as many Concubins as he will: between whom the Husband ſetteth no difference either in affection or apparrell; but that his wives onely can enjoy his *Sabbaths* benevolence. The women are not admitted in the time of their lives to come into their Churches; nor after death to Paradiſe: and whereas in moſt or all other Countries, Fathers give ſome portions with their daughters, the *Mahometans* give money for their wives; which being once paid, the contract is regiſtred in the *Cadies* book, and this is all their formality of Mariage. More of this theme we ſhall ſpeak when we are in *TRECOMANIA*.

3. *Every one muſt give of his wealth to the poor.* Hence you ſhall have ſome buy ſlaves, and then manumit them; buy birds, and then let them flie. They uſe commonly to free Priſoners, releaſe bondſlaves, build caves or lodgings in the waies for the relief of Paſſengers, repair bridges, and mend highwaies. But their moſt ordinary almes conſiſt in ſacrifices of Sheep or Oxen, which when the ſolemnity is performed, they diſtribute among the poor; to whom alſo, on the firſt day of every year, they are bound to give the tith or tenth part of their gettings in the year fore-going: inſomuch that you ſhall hardly find any beggers amongſt them.

4. *Every one muſt make his prayers five times a day.* When they pray they turn their bodies towards *Mecca*, but there faces ſometimes one way, ſometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* ſhall come behind them, being at their devotions. The firſt time is an hour before Sun-riſing; the ſecond at noonday; the third at three of the clock after noon; the fourth at Sun-ſetting; the fift and laſt, before they go to ſleep. At all theſe times the Cryers keep a balling in the ſteeples (for the *Turks* and *Saracens* have no bells) for the people to come to Church. And ſuch as cannot come muſt when they hear the voice of the Cryers, fall down in the place where they are, do their devotions, and kiſs the ground thrice.

5. *Every one muſt keep a Lent one moneth in a year.* This Lent is called *Ramazan*, in which they ſuppoſe the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This faſt is only intended in the day time, the law giving leave to frollick it in the night as they beſt pleaſe, ſo they abſtain from Wine, and Swines fleſh, prohibited by their Law at all times, but never ſo punctually abſtained from, as in the time of their *Lent*.

6. *Be obedient to thy Parents*; which law is the moſt neglected of any; never any children being ſo unnatural as the *Turkiſh*.

7. *Thou ſhalt not kill*; and this they keep unviolated among themſelves; but the poor Chriſtians are ſure to feel the ſmart of their fury. And as if by this law, the actual ſhedding of bloud only were prohibited, they have invented puniſhments for their offenders, worſe than death it ſelf. As firſt the *Strappade*, which is hanging of them by the arms drawn backwards: when they are ſo bound, they are drawn up on high, and let down again with a violent ſwing, which unjoynteth all their back and armes. Secondly, they uſe to horſe up their heels, and with a great cudgell to give them three or four hundred blowes on the ſoles of their feet. Thirdly, it is ordinary to draw them naked up to the top of a Gibbit or Tower, full of hooks; and cutting the rope to let them fall down again. But by the way they are caught by ſome of the hooks, where they commonly hang till they die for hunger.

8. *Doe unto others as thou wouldeſt be done unto thy ſelf.* To thoſe that keep theſe Lawes he promiſeth Paradiſe, and a place of all delights, adorned with flowry Fields, watered with Chryſtalline Rivers, beautified with Trees of gold, under whoſe cool ſhade, they ſhall ſpend their time with amourous Virgins, whoſe manſion ſhall not be far diſtant. The men ſhall never exceed the age of thirty; nor the women of fifteen; and both ſhall have their virginities renewed as faſt as loſt.

Fryday he ordained to be the Sabbath-day, partly to diſtinguiſh his followers from the *Jewes* and *Chriſtians*, who ſolemnize the daies enſuing; but principally becauſe he was on that day proclamed *King* or *Emperor*, and ſolemnly ſo created. Wine and Swines-fleſh are the principall things forbidden by the *Alcoran*, the laſt whereof they unanimouſly refrain; but on the firſt they are ſo ſotted, that when they come at

it

it, they ſeldome go home again unled; inſomuch that all the wines in *Conſtantinople* have been thrown about the ſtreets, and death made the penalty for any that will preſume to bring any more into the City. *Mahomet* taught them that every one ſhould be ſaved by his own *Religion*; him onely excepted that revolted from the *Alcoran*, unto another law; but ſo that under the notion of Religion, he means onely ſuch as worſhip the one and onely God; excluding by that means the old Idolaters of the Gentiles from the hopes of ſalvation. And he taught too, that at the end of the world all men that profeſſed any ſuch Religion, ſhould go into *Paradiſe*, the *Jews* under the banner of *Moſes*, the *Chriſtians* under the banner of *Chriſt*, and the *Saracens* under the banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no man therefore to abjure the faith in which he was born, but commend and approve ſecretly ſuch as they find zealous and conſtant in their own Religion, yet holding it an eſpecial honour to have daily new *proſelytes*, they incite them by hope of freedome and preferment, which with many are motives too much prevailing. Hence I have heard many ſay, that it is better for a man that would enjoy liberty of conſcience, to live in the Countries profeſſing *Mahometaniſm*, than *Papiſtry*: for in the one he ſhall never be free from the bloody *inquiſition*; in the other he is never moleſted, if he meddle not with the *Law*, their *women*, or their *ſlaves*.

The opinions which they hold concerning the end of the World are very ridiculous: as that at the winding of a horn, not all fleſh onely, but the *Angels* themſelves ſhall die; that the Earth with an Earthquake ſhall be kneaded together like a lump of dough; that a ſecond blaſt of the ſame horn, ſhall after fourty dayes reſtore all again; that *Cain* ſhall be the Captain or ring-leader of the damned, who ſhall have the countenance of dogs and ſwine; that they ſhall paſs over the bridge of Juſtice, laden with their ſinnes in ſatchels; that the great ſinners ſhall fall into hell, the leſſer into purgatory onely; with a thouſand of the like fopperies; which it is needleſs to add here, conſidering that the *Alcoran* it ſelf is now extant in the *Engliſh*, and every one that liſts may read it. A thing ſo full of *tautologies*, inchoærencies, and ſuch groſs abſurdities, of ſo impure and carnal mixture, that he muſt lay aſide the uſe of his natural reaſon, who is taken by it, if force, ambition, or the want of *Chriſtian* education do not lead him on. For if we ſeriouſly look into the cauſes of the deplorable increaſe and long continuance of this Religion, we ſhall find them to be chiefly theſe, 1. The Greatneſs of the Victories gotten by the *Saracens*; who eaſily compelled the conquered Nations to receive their Law. 2. The great zeal and diligence of the *Arabians* themſelves, who being a numerous People, and much given to Merchandiſe, have poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Sea-coaſts of *Africk*, from the ſtreights of *Babel-Mandel*, almoſt as farre as to the *Cape of good hope*; of all the Ilands in thoſe Seas, and many *Factories* and good Towns on the coaſts of *India*: in all which they have ſetled their Religion alſo, as a thing inſeparable from their Nation. 3. A peremptory reſtraint of all diſputation in any point of Religion whatſoever it be. 4. The ſuppreſſing of Philoſophy, and the ſtudy of Humane Sciences; the light whereof might eaſily detect the groſſeneſs of their Superſtitions. 5. The ſenſual liberty allowed of having variety of wives, and as many Concubines as they are able to keep. 6. The promiſe of the like ſenſual pleaſures in the other world, with which a ſenſe not illuminated with the Spirit of God, doth for the moſt part uſe to be more affected, than with the ſpeculative hope of ſpirituall happineſs. 7. The forbiding of *Printing* and printed Books, by which the People might come to ſee the verity and purity of the *Chriſtian* faith; the falſhood and impurity of the Law of *Mahomet*. Theſe laſt not uſeful, or at leaſt not able to induce belief, if the firſt had not opened and prepared the way.

For indeed force of Armes was the ſtrongeſt Argument by which *Mahomet* himſelf confirmed, and his Succeſſors in their times have ſince propagated and diſperſed his doctrines. Strengthened by the reſort of that *raſcal Rabble* which repaired to him, he aſſaults *Medina*, pretending a quarrel to the *Jews*, who had there a *Synagogue*. Repulſed at firſt with loſs of men, and a wound in his face, by which ſome of his fore-teeth were beaten out, there likely to have made an end of his new *Religion*, if not recovered by his Souldiers for a further miſchief. At the next onſet he prevailed, the battel being fought neer a place called *Bedez*, ſituate betwixt *Mecca* and *Medina*, frequently mentioned in the *Alcoran*. After which fight he took the City, converting the *Synagogue* to a Temple for his own impieties: the news whereof ſo ſtartled the *Phylarchy*, or nobility of *Mecca*, that they armed all their powers againſt him, and ſped ſo well in the beginning of the warre, that they drove him forcibly from their territories, which not long after he ſubdued, and ſet his chief ſeat at *Mecca*. From that his flight, the *Saracens* began their computation of years (as we from CHRISTS Nativity) which they call the *Hegira*; which beginneth about the year of our Redemption 617. concerning which time, I cannot but obſerve, that *Mahomet* compiled his deviliſh doctrine, beginning his Empire; and *Boniface* the third aſſumed his *Antichriſtian* title, beginning his unlimited Supremacy, nigh about the ſame year. It was called the *Hegira*, from the Arabick *Hegirathi*, which by the learned in that tongue, is rendred by διωγμὸς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἐγερθείς, i.e. *the perſecution raiſed ab ut Religion*. *Joſeph Scaliger* in the firſt edition of his moſt laborious work *de emendatione temporum*, caſteth off this *Etymology* with *purum putum mendacium*. He will not have it called *Æra fugæ* or *perſecutionis*, but *Æra Hagarene*: becauſe forſooth the *Arabians* were by ſome called *Hagarens*. I believe it would have puzled *Joſeph*, with all his reading, to ſhew unto us any *Epoche* or *Æra*, which is taken from the name of a Nation. And therefore other reaſon he giveth us none but this. *Nos autem ſcimus vocem illam primogenia ſignificatione ab* Hagarenis, *non à fuga duci*. But time, and oppoſition, at the laſt reclamed him from this error: and in the ſecond edition of his work, he is content to follow the common opinion of thoſe men, whom in the firſt he whiſtled off with the infamous appellation of *mendaces*.

But to proceed, It hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Ea-

ſtern Emperour, joyned themſelves unto him. They had long been diſpleaſed with their condition; and now hoped to mend it. Exaſperated by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, when they ſerved in his warres againſt the *Perſian*, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he *had more ſtore of Steel than Gold*: but then they wanted a fit head to reſort unto. Now ſerving *Heraclius* in the ſame warre, they were uſed by his Officers in the ſame ill manner. Asking their pay, the *Treaſurer* of the *Army* made them this churliſh anſwer, that *there was ſcarce money enough to pay the* Roman *and* Grecian *Souldiers; and muſt thoſe* dogs *be ſo importunate for their wages?* Provoked herewith, and hearing the fame of *Mahomet*, they betook themſelves to him: who ſtrengthned by their forces, and the coming in of the reſt of their Countrey-men, ſoon brought the three *Arabias* under his ſubjection. To which, having defeated the Emperors forces ſent againſt him, he added ſome parts of *Syria* and *Egypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there dyed frantick and diſtempered, in the 70th. year of his Age, and three and twentieth of his *impoſtures*: of which he had ſpent thirteen at *Medina*, and the reſt at *Mecca*; from his firſt ſerling in which City the years of his Empire were computed. His dead body being kept four daies in expectation of a *reſurrection*, which he promiſed to perform at the end of three; grown full of ſtench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there intered: his Succeſſors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that *Religion* after his deceaſe, which they derided in his life; and calling themſelves *Caliphs*, or *Vicars* Generall, to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of which we haſten; made intricate, not more by their own *confuſions*, than by the difference of thoſe names by which they are preſented to us by ſeverall Writers, according to the times and Languages in which they writ.

The *Caliphs* or Emperours of the *Saracens*.

A.C.	A.H.	
622	5	1. *Mahomet* the Impoſtor, of whom before.
632	15	2. *Ebubezer*, or *Uquebar*, *Mahomets* Father-in-Law, and one of his Great Captains, ſupplanted *Ali*, to whom the Empire was deſigned by the will of *Mahomet*; and took unto himſelf the name of *Caliph*. 2.
634	17	3. *Haumar*, the ſecond of *Mahomets* Great Captains, having the command of the Army under *Ebubezer*, ſucceeded him in the eſtate; and added to it *Perſia*, *Egypt*, *Paleſtine*, with great part of *Syria* and *Meſopotamia*. 12.
647	30	4. *Oſmen*, the third of *Mahomets* great Captains, Husband of *Zeineb*, his ſecond daughter; ſucceeded under that pretence, and added all *Barbary* to his Empire. Diſtreſſed by the faction of *Hali*, and beſieged in his own houſe, he ſlew himſelf, in the eighty ſeventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign.
657	40	5. *Hali*, the Kinſman and next heir of *Mahomet*, and the husband of *Fatime* his eldeſt daughter, ſucceeded on the death of *Oſmen*: murdered by the procurement of *Muavias* neer *Caſa* in *Arabia Felix*.
660	43	6. *Muhavias*, having murdered *Hali*, his Sonne *Haſem* or *Oſſan*, and eleven of the Sonnes of that *Haſem*, the twelfth onely eſcaping with life (from whom deſcended the Family of the *Alaveci*, and the *Perſian Sophies*) aſſumed the Government as rightfull Succeſſor to *Oſmen*, whoſe widow, the daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to wife. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great part of *Aſia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeya*.
681	64	7. *Gizid*, the Son of *Muhavias*, more skilled in Poetry than in Armes.
		8. *Habdalla* and *Marvan*, Competitors for the Supreme dignity; but carried at laſt by *Marvan*.
685	68	9. *Abdimelech*, the Sonne of *Marvan*, eſtabliſhed the begun conqueſts of *Armenia* and *Meſopotamia* 22.
707	90	10. *Vlidor Vlit*, under whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* firſt conquered *Spain*. 9.
716	99	11. *Zulcimin*, Brother to *Vlit*, whoſe Captain *Mulſamas* beſieged *Conſtantinople*, till his Ships were burnt, and his men conſumed with the Plague. 3.
719	102	12. *Homar* or *Haumar* II. Son of *Vlidor Vlit* 2.
721	104	13. *Izit*, or *Gizid* II. the brother of *Haumar*, with whom during his life he was joynt *Caliph*, and after his deceaſe enjoyed it wholly to himſelf.
725	107	14. *Evelid*, by ſome called *Iſcham*, in whoſe time *Charles Martel* made ſuch havock of the *Moores* in *France* Anno 734. their General then named *Abderamen*. 18.
743	125	15. *Gizid* III. the Son of *Gizid* the ſecond.
744	126	16. *Hyces*, by ſome called *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Gizid* the third, ſlain by *Marvan*.
745	127	17. *Marvan* II. the laſt of the houſe of *Ben-Humeya*, ſlain by *Abdalla*, of the houſe of *Fatime* and *Hali*. 7.
752	134	18. *Abdalla*, of the houſe of *Alaveci*, or *Alabeci*, deſcended from *Hali*, and *Fatime*, the eldeſt daughter of *Mahomet*: called alſo the Family of *Abas*, becauſe of their deſcent from *Abas* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.
756	138	19. *Abdallas* II.
		20. *Mahomet* II. ſurnamed *Bugiaſer*, or *Abugefer*, who built the City of *Bagdat*, made from that time the conſtant ſeat of his Succeſſors till their fatall period.
777	156	21. *Mahadi*. 9.
786	168	22. *Muſa*, or *Moyſes*. 1.

787. 169. 23. *Aron*, or *Arachid*, who compelled *Irene* Empreſs of *Conſtantinople* to pay him tribute. 23.
810. 193. 24. *Mahamad*, or *Mahomet* III.
825. 198. 25. *Abdalla* III. who took and ſpoyled *Crete*, and overthrew the *Greeks*; he ſpoiled *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*. 17.
832. 215. 26. *Mahomet* IV. waſted *Italy*, burnt the ſuburbs of *Rome*, and haraſſed the fore-named Ilands. 40.

Others reckon theſe *Caliphs* to have ſucceeded *Mahomet* II.

815. 198. 25. *Mamon* 12.
827. 210. 26. *Mutetzam* 8.
835. 218. 27. *Wacek* 4.
839. 222. 28. *Methucall* 12.
851. 234. 29. *Montacer* 1.
852. 235. 30. *Abul Hamet* 6.
858. 241. 31. *Almatez* 4.
863. 245. 32. *Motadi Bila* 7. After whoſe death the *Ægyptians* with-drew themſelves from their obedience due to the *Babylonian Caliph*, and choſe one of their own, to whom all the *Arabians*, or thoſe of the *Mahumetan* religion, in *Africa* and *Europe*, ſubmitted themſelves. Of the *Ægyptain Caliphs*, when we come into that Countrey: take now with you the names onely of the *Syrian* and *Babylonian Caliphs*; for ſtory of them I find little or none; the power being totally in the hands of the *Sultans* of the ſeverall Provinces, and nothing left unto the *Caliphs* but an aiery title; the ſhadow of that mighty Tree, which formerly had ſpread it ſelf over moſt parts of the World.

The *Babylonian Caliphs* after the diviſion.

A.C.	A.H.	
870	252	1. *Mutemad* 21.
891	273	2. *Mutezad* 8.
897	281	3. *Muchtaphi* 8.
907	389	4. *Muchtedir* 24.
931	313	5. *Elhaker* 1.
932	314	6. *Ratze* 7.
939	321	7. *Muctade* 4.
943	325	8. *Muſteraphe* 2.
947	325	9. *Macia*, and *Taia* 44.
989	361	10. *Kadar* 41.
1030	412	11. *Kaim* 5.
1035	417	12. *Muctadi.* 60.
1095	477	13. *Muſtetaher* 22.
1117	499	14. *Muſteraſchad* 18.
1135	517	15. *Raſchid* 25.
1160	542	16. *Muſteneged* 9.
1169	551	17. *Muſtazi* 10.
1179	561	18. *Narzi* 39.
1225	597	19. *Taher.*
		20. *Muſtenatzer.*
1255	638	21. *Muſtatzem*, the laſt *Caliph* or *High-Prieſt* of the *Saracens* of *Bagdet*, or *Babylon*, living in the accompt of a Prince or an Emperour, or looked on as the Supreme Lord of the *Saracen* Empire: ſtarved in his Caſtle of *Bagdet*, and his whole poſterity rooted out, by *Allan*, or *Halon* the *Tartar*, in the firſt year of his reign. Yet there is ſtill remaining a carcaſs of the old body, one whom they call *Caliph*, at whoſe hands the neighbour Princes uſe to receive their *Diadems* and regalities: ſo we find *Solyman* the *magnificent*, after his conqueſt of *Chaldæa*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*, to have been by one of theſe poor titulary *Caliphs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*, Anno 1513.

This unwieldy body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: loſing to the Kings of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the greateſt part of *Spain*; to the *Genoeſe*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*; to the *Normans*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally moſt of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haallon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, ſtarved *Muſtatzem* the *Babylonian Caliph*, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his poſterity: and *Sarracon* the firſt *Turkiſh* King of *Egypt*, brained the laſt *Ægyptian Caliph* with his horſemans Mace; leaving not one of his iſſue or kindred ſurviving. The office of the *Caliphs* is now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Mufti* or chief Prieſt of the *Turkiſh Mahometans*.

As *Mars* ſhewed himſelf a friend unto thoſe *Moors* in their warres and triumphs; ſo alſo did *Phœbus* powre down no leſs celeſtial influence, on ſuch as addicted themſelves to Scholarſhip. *Bagdet* in *Chaldæa*, *Cairoin*, *Feſs*, *Morocco*, in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their *Univerſities*: out of which came the Philoſophers, *Avicen*, and *Averroes*; the Phiſicians, *Rhaſis*, and *Meſue*; the Geographers, *Leo*, and *Abilfada*; & almoſt all the *Textuaries* & profound Writers (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Albumazar*, &c.) in *Aſtrology*; from whom a great part of our *Aſtronomicall* and *Aſtrologicall* termes are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdome, Iland or Province, which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdome of *Feſs* and *Morocco* ovely: *Arabia* it ſelf, the very firſt ſeat of their power, acknowledgeing a ſubjection to the *Turkiſh* Empire. For firſt *Petræa* and *Deſerta* being ſubdued by the *Turks*, when they conquered *Perſia*, or otherwiſe following the fortunes of the preſent *Victor*, were afterwards accounted of as ſubject unto the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*, who out of that Countrey and all *Syria*, had by degrees diſſeized the *Selzuccian* Family. And as the vaſſals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more moleſted *Selimus* in his march towards *Egypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their night-Alarms, than all the forces of the *Mamalucks* in the field againſt him. But *Egypt* being ſubdued, and the *Mamalucks* utterly deſtroyed, ſome of their *Chiefes* being gained by money, and the reſt by promiſe

miſe of preferment, the whole Nation of theſe wild *Arabs* ſwore *alleageance* to him; continuing in accompt as Subjects unto his Succeſſors, but in effect doing what they liſt: governed as formerly by the *Chiefes* of their ſeverall *Clannes*, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk* than they do of the *Chriſtians*. And as for *Felix*, it continued alſo in a *free condition*, in reſpect of any forein power, till of late times the *Turks* and *Portugals* entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538. *Solyman Baſſa*, Admirall of the *Turkiſh* Fleet againſt the *Portugals*, who had diverted the trade of the *Red Sea*, and otherwiſe given offence to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* by aiding the *Perſians*, went with a ſtrong Army to take *Diu*, a Town and Iland of *East-India*, then in their poſſeſſion. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the beſt traded Ports of *Arabia Felix*, invited the King thereof aboard, moſt trecherouſly hanged him, and ſurprized the City. The like he alſo did to the King of *Zibit*, the Port Town to *Mecca*: and by that means got poſſeſſion of all the Coaſts of this Countrey, bordering on the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; of which the *Turks* ſtill continue Maſters. But in the inland parts, and towards the *Perſian* Gulf, of no power at all; not ſuffered to travell up and down without a *Paſs* from ſome of the *Arabian Chiefes*, or if they do, in danger to be ſet upon by the *Natives*, who brook them not. Some parts hereof which lie next unto the Iſle of *Ormus*, made one Kingdome with it; but the Kings originally of this Countrey, by whom the City of *Ormus* was firſt builded; and ſo continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals*, Anno 1622. who ſince the taking of that Iſle by the King of *Perſia*, hold *Muskahat*, and ſome other peeces upon this Continent. The reſidue of the Countrey *cantonned* amongſt a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.

And ſo much for *Arabia*.

6. CHAL-

6 CHALDÆA, 7 ASSYRIA, 8 MESOPOTAMIA.

THese Provinces, which properly and originally constituted the *Assyrian* Empire, I have joined together in the *Title*, because united in the story, and affairs thereof; though severally to be considered in the description, and *Chorographie* of them.

CHALDÆA is bounded on the East, with *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; on the West, with *Arabia Deserta*; on the North, with *Mesopotamia*; and on the South, with the *Persian* Bay, and the rest of *Deserta*. Originally called *Chasdim*, from *Chesed* the fourth Son ne of *Nachor* the brother of *Abraham*. Chesed *quoq; quartus est, à quo* Chasdim, *id est* Chaldæi *postea vocati sunt*, as Saint *Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* should derive their name from *Chesed*, being a People long before *Cheseds* birth, I am not able to determine: unless he taught them the first Principles of the Art of *Astronomy*; or was the Author of some signall benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the chief City of it; and at this day by *Bellonius*, *Azamia*; by the *Arabians*, *Keldan*; by the *Turks*, *Curdistan*.

But the name of *Chaldæa* sometimes went beyond these bounds, taking in some part also of *Mesopotamia*, as appeareth by that passage of Saint *Stephen*, saying, *Acts* 7. v. 2, 3, 4. That *the God of glory appeared to our Father* Abraham, *when he was in* Mesopotamia, *before he dwelt in* Charran; *And said unto him, Get thee out of this Countrey, and from thy Kindred, and come into the Land which I shall shew thee. Then came he out of the Land of the* Chaldees, *and dwelt in* Charran, *&c.* Where clearly that part of *Mesopotamia* which lay next unto *Assyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the name of *Chaldæa*, or the land of the *Chaldees*. Which I desire the Reader to take notice of, because I must make use of this observation in another place.

The Countrey by *Herodotus* said to be so fruitful that it yielded ordinarily *two hundred*, and in some places *three hundred* fold; the blades of wheat and barley being (as he affirmeth) four fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is said of the *Babylonians*, that they mowed their corn twice, and seeded it a third time, or else it would be nothing but blades: and yet so, that the worst of their land yielded fifty, and their best an hundred fold increase. Nor is the nature of the soyl so altered in long tract of time, but that (as late *Travellers* have observed) it would in all likely-hood attain to its first fertility, if it were ordered with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be said as to the natural fruitfulness and delights of this Countrey, than that it pleased Almighty God to make choice of some part hereof for the *terrestrial Paradise* or *Garden of Eden*, in which he placed our Father *Adam*, at his first creation. For here that *Paradise*, by men both skilled in Divinity, and Geography, is affirmed to have stood. Yet amongst all sorts of Writers we find different opinions. Some make *Paradise* to be a place of pleasure, and the four Rivers to be the four Cardinal Vertues: but these allegories on the Scripture are not warrantable. Others place it in the air, under the circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, rise up again in those places, where they are now found: but this is so vain a foppery, that I will not honour it with a confutation. Such as make *Paradise* local, are divided also into three ranks, (for I omit the rest) whereof some place it under the Æquator; but this agreeth not with the bounds prescribed by the Holy Ghost. Some conceive the four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Nilus*, and *Ganges*; and that *Paradise* was the whole world: but this cannot be, for then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradise*, it must also follow that he was driven out of the world, which were absurd. Those of the soundest judgements place it here, in an Iland which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and some branches running from them both: the uppermost of which is called *Pison* (falsely rendred *Ganges*) which watereth the land of *Havilah*, or that part of the land of *Havilah* which is now called *Chuzestan* or *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia* containing *Susiana*; and the lowermost is named *Gihon*, (improperly by some translated *Nilus*, which compasseth the East parts of *Arabia Petræa*, by the *Septuagint* for the reasons above-mentioned, rendred *Ethiopia*. And this agreeth both with the position of this Countrey, and the course of those Rivers. For that *Tigris*, and *Euphrates* (which the *Hebrew* text called *Hiddekel*, and *Perah*) do here join their streams, is confessed on all sides. Then as for *Pison*, it is no other than that River by *Ptolomy* called *Basilius*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more neerly *Piso-Tigris*, or *Pasi-Tigris*, *Pervenit ad fluvium*, Pasitigrin *incolæ vocant*, as his own words are. A little stream, which watering the Land of *Havilah*, or the Countrey of the *Chavelei*, or *Chaulasei*, or *Chaulterei* (for by these severall names they are called amongst the antients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabathæans*, an *Arabian* People) powreth it self into the *Tigris*, and falls toge-

ther

ther with it in the Gulf of *Perſia*. And finally for *Gihon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maarſares*, and by others *Marſyas*, it is no other than a branch of *Euphrates*, which watering the Land of *Chus*, or *Ethiopia Aſiatica*, take which name you will, loſeth it ſelf at laſt in the Lakes of *Chaldæa*.

But though in generall the Countrey was extremely fruitfull; yet in ſome places was it covered with a ſlimy matter, which the overflowings of the waters, and the nature of the ſoyl together, did bring forth abundantly. Uſed by them in their buildings inſtead of morter, than which more durable and binding; and therefore choſen for the cement of the Tower of *Babel*, *Gen.*11.3. Some alſo tell of a clyff which opening ſendeth out ſuch a ſtink that it killeth birds as they flie over it: and others of a like open place neer a Town called *Ait*, which continually throweth out boyling pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moores*) filling therewith the adjoining fields; and that herewith the people uſe to pitch their boats. But this is in ſome places onely, the Countrey generally being both healthy and delightfull, as before was ſaid.

The people antiently were much addicted unto Sooth-ſaying and Divinations; and no leſs noted for being Authors of the firſt Idolatry that was ever practiſed in the world. Induced unto the laſt perhaps by the power of their Kings, who would needs confer divine honours upon ſome of their Anceſtors. But to the firſt inclined by their own diſpoſition, and the ſituation of their Countrey, yielding a fair ſenſible *Horizon*, (for the *Rationall* is alike in all places both in hills and valies) and conſequently profitable to the obſervation of the riſing and ſetting of the Stars, whether *Heliacal*, *Acronicall*, *Matutine*, or *Veſperline*, as the *Artiſts* phraſe it. Whereunto may be added the length of life in thoſe elder times, furniſhing them with the greater meaſure of experience concerning the diſtinct motions of each ſeverall *Orb*, and the full period of the courſes of each ſeverall *Planet*. Certain it is, that they grew ſo noted in this Art, that at the laſt every *Aſtrologaſter*, or figure-flinger, was called a *Chaldæan: Gentis nomine ad eos homines tranſlato, qui ſeſe illius ſapientiæ ſpecie venditabant*, as *Beza* hath obſerved in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the people thus flouted by the *Satyriſt*.

Chaldæis *ſed major erit fiducia, quicquid*
Dixerit Aſtrologus, *credent à fonte relatum*
Ammonis, *&c.*

That is to ſay,

Joves Oracles no greater credit have,
Than *Sooth-ſayings* of a *Chaldee* cozening knave.

The language which was ſpoken here had the name of the *Chaldee* or *Chaldæan* tongue: of great antiquity, and ſanctified by the *Holy Ghoſt*, ſome Chapters of the prophecy of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jewes* did not underſtand it, as appeareth by the words of the Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings*, chap. 18. ver. 26. deſiring *Rabſaketh* to ſpeak to them in the *Chaldee* tongue, that the common People of the *Jewes* might not hear his blaſphemies. A further proof whereof may be, that a man may have ſome knowledge in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*, as many are, no doubt, at this preſent day. But whatſoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards, when the *Jews* came to live amongſt them during the Captivity: out of whoſe long commerce with them, both nations loſt their proper languanes, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriack*. Of this we ſpake before when we were in *Syria*, and *Paleſtine*. And this is now the naturall language of this Countrey, and its neighbour *Aſſyria*, but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabick*, not vulgarly ſpoken elſewhere, for ought I can find; but uſed by many others, in their ſacred offices, by whom not commonly underſtood. For in this language all the Sects of the Eaſtern Chriſtians do officiate their publick *Liturgies*, that is to ſay, the *Neſtorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who uſe the *Greek Liturgie*, amongſt the *Sectaries*.) The like do alſo the *Indians*, or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*; the *Cophties* or *Chriſtians* of *Ægypt*, and the poor remainder of *Chriſtians* in the Iſle of *Zocatara*, an Iſland on the coaſt of *Africk*. Uſed to thoſe *Liturges* when that language was more underſtood amongſt them; though now worn out of *Vulgar* knowledge by the overſpreading of the *Arabick*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkiſh* Conqueſts. In which the *Prelates* of theſe Churches have fallen into the great errour of the Church of *Rome*: and without taking notice of the alterations hapning in the *Vulgar* tongues of thoſe ſeverall nations, which are united under them into one opinion, keep up a language in their *Liturgies* which they underſtand not: as if the capacities of the people could be ſooner raiſed to the underſtanding of an unknown language; than the publick *Liturgies* be fitted unto their capacities. The antient piety of the Church and the modern languages of Gods people are not inconſiſtent; though out of private ends ſome have taught us otherwiſe. But I fear this errour (as ſome others) will not be ſo eaſily remedied, as reprehended. From the tongne in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, paſs we to the Religion it ſelf, whoſe Sacred Offices are ſo celebrated.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached in this Countrey by Saint *Peter*, of whoſe being in *Babylon*, (the chief City hereof) himſelf aſſureth us in the laſt words almoſt of his Firſt Epiſtle: and other buſines he had none here but to preach the Goſpell. Much perſecuted by the *Perſians*, (who were then poſſeſſed of all theſe parts) it prevailed at laſt, *Chriſtianity* growing up the faſter for the cutting down. The *Patriarchall* See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, ſucceſſour unto *Babylon* in repute and greatneſs, if not alſo in name, the Biſhop whereof, by order of the *Nicene* Councill, had the *Eccleſiaſticall* juriſdiction of theſe parts with the name of *Catholique*, and the next place in *Seſſion* at all publick aſſemblies of the Church, next after the *Patriarch* of *Hieruſalem*. And beſides this the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*, acknowledge him for their *Primate* or *Metropolitan*;

politan; as they did afterwards in his right, the Patriarch of *Muzal*. At this preſent here are ſome remainders of *Chriſtianity*, part of them *Jacobites*, but the moſt *Neſtorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have ſpoke already, and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our paſſage forwards. So that without more delay we may take a view of their principall places. And in the firſt place we meet with *Babel*, (in the *Hebrew* ſignifying confuſion) famous for the confuſion of languages which here hapned. For immediately after the Univerſal deluge, *Nimrod* the ſonne of *Chus*, the ſonne of *Cham*, perſwaded the people to ſecure themſelves from the like after-claps, by building ſome ſtupendious Edifice, which might reſiſt the fury of a ſecond deluge. This Counſel was generally imbraced, *Heber* onely and his Family, (as tradition goeth) contradicting ſuch an unlawful attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majeſty, 5146 paces from the ground: having its *baſis* and circumference equal to the height. The paſſage to go up, went winding about the outſide, and was of an exceeding great breadth, there being not only room for horſes, carts, and the like means of carriage, to meet and turn; but lodging alſo for man and beaſt, and (as *Verſtegan* reporteth) graſs and corn-fields for their nouriſhment. But God beholding from an high this fond attempt, ſent amongſt them (who before were of one *language*) a confuſion of tongues: which hindred the proceeding of thisbuilding, one being not able to underſtand what his fellow called for.

2. *Babylon*, on the Bank of *Euphrates*, the antienteſt City in the World, on this ſide of the flood, firſt built by *Nimrod*, in the place deſtinated to the raiſing of the Tower of *Babel*, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdome; afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*, one of his Succeſſors; and finally much increaſed both in bulk and beauty by *Nabuchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himſelf the whole glory of it, ſaying in his pride, *is not this the great* Babel *that I have builded? Dan.* 4. 30. A City of great fame and ſtate, accompted one of the worlds nine wonders, and deſervedly too.

The compaſs of the walls 365 furlongs, (or 46. miles) according to the number of the dayes in the year; in height 50. Cubits, and of ſo great breadth, that carts and carriages might meet on the top of them: fmiſhed in one year by the hands of 200000 workmen, employed dayly in it. Situate on both ſides of *Euphrates*, over which there was a ſumptuous bridge, and at each end of that bridge a magnificent Palace: and beautified alſo with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Penſile Gardens*, made with great charge, and born up with moſt ſtately Arches. In a word, ſo great and vaſt it was, that *Ariſtotle* ſaith, that it ought rather to be called a Countrey, than a City: adding withall, that when the Town was taken, it was three dayes before the furtheſt parts of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town muſt be underſtood of the ſurprize thereof by the *Medes and Perſians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a Clerk as he was) in his marginal notes upon the *Politicks* of that Author, hath moſt vainly told us. Which whether it were that there were Gates at the end of every ſtreet, which made it be ſo long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not wakened from their drunken feaſt, in the time whereof it was ſurprized, I determine not. Revolting in the time of *Semiramis*, the news came to her as ſhe was ordering her hair: whereupon, leaving her head half-dreſt ſhe went and beſieged it; never ordering the reſt of her hair, till ſhe had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophons Cyri-paideia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euphrates* ran quite thorow the Town, round about whoſe banks the politick Prince cut many and deep channels: into which when the *Babylonians* were ſecurely merry at a general feaſt, he ſuddenly drained and emptied the River, conveying his own forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Channel; and in a little time made himſelf maſter of it. From the *Perſians* it revolted in the reign of *Darius Hyſtaſpes*: and that ſuſtenance might not be wanting to the men of warre, they ſtrangled the moſt part of the women, being thought in actions of this quality, not ſo much as neceſſary evils. When they had for twenty moneths ſo obſtinately defended the Town, that the *Perſians* had leſs hope than ever of prevailing; *Zopyrus* one of *Darius* Captains, mangling his body, and disfiguring his face by cutting off his noſe and ears, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the tyranny of his King. They crediting his words, and knowing his proweſs, commited the charge of the whole army unto him, as a man, to whom ſuch barbarous uſage had made the King irreconcilable. But he taking the beſt opportunity, delivered both the Town and Souldiers into the hands of his Soveraign. Which made *Darius* often ſay, that he had rather have one *Zopyrus*, than twenty *Babylons*. Here died *Alexander* the Great, after whoſe death the *Grecian* Captains regardful rather of their own ambitions, than the common loyalty, divided the Empire among themſelves; leaving the body of the King 8 dayes unburied. A wonderful change of fortune, that he who living thought the world too ſmall for his valour, being dead ſhould find no place big enough for his body. After this taking of it by the *Macedonians*, the glories and magnificence hereof began to decline, leſſned unto a fourth part in the time of *Qu. Curtius* the hiſtorian; *in ſolitudinem redacta*, reduced to deſolation in the dayes of *Pliny*; and being turned into a *Park*, in which the Kings of *Perſia* did uſe to hunt, in the time of Saint *Hierome*. That wondrous change occaſioned partly by the injury of time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat Royal of their Empire more towards *Greece*; but principally by *Seleucus Nicanor*, who offended with the *Babylonians*, built the City of

3. *Seleucia*, the ſecond City of note in all this Countrey, ſituate in a place more commodious and healthy, neer the meeting of *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, and about 40 miles more North than *Babylon*, out of which he drew 500000 perſons for the peopling of it. Nor did this new City rob the old onely of its power and greatneſs, but alſo of its very name; being called *Babylon* in ſome of the antient Authors; Βαβύλων περσικὴ πόλις, Μητρόπολις, Σελευκία καλυμένη, as (for one) by *Stephanus*. In the primi-

tive

tive times of *Christianity*, the Biſhop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldæans*; with a ſuper-intendency over the *Chriſtians* of *India* alſo, as before was ſaid. But this *Supplanter* was in time brought to ruin alſo, And

4. *Bagdad*, a new City raiſed from the ruins of it; built neer the foundations of *Seleucia* by *Bugiaſer* the twentieth *Caliph* of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as ſome write) of eighteen millions of Crowns; which becauſe of the many Gardens contained in it had the name of *Bagdad*, the word ſo ſignifying in the *Arabick* tongue. Firſt built upon the Weſtern bank of the River *Tigris* neer to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095. removed to the other ſide of the River, by *Muſtetaher*, the 45 *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, becauſe leſs ſubject to the inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned ſtill for the ſame City, as if built by *Bugiaſer*, by whom being made the ſeat of his Royall Reſidence, (whoſe Succeſſors were from hence called the *Caliphs of Babylon*) it flouriſhed in great pride and ſplendour, till taken and taked by *Allan*, or *Haalan* a *Tartarian* Captain, who here ſtarved *Muſteatzem*, the laſt *Caliph* of it, and rooted out his whole poſterity, as if the *Caliphate* and the City were to end together. But the Town revived again, though the *Caliph* could not; continuing to this day a City of great wealth and trafick, but nothing comparable unto what it was for beauty and bigneſs; being not above ſeven miles in compaſs, and having nothing in the buildings to be juſtly bragged of. Taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* with the reſt of the Countrey, it became ſubject to the *Turks*; from them recovered by *Abas* the King of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1625. and again recovered by the *Turks*, about the year 1640. In which changes it can be no marvell that ſhe hath loſt much of her former ſplendour. Maintained eſpecially at the preſent by the trade of *Aleppo*, to which, beſides ſuch goods as go up the water, there paſſe yearly many *Caravans*, or troops of Merchants, each of them having in it ſome hundreds (if not thouſands) of *Camels* laden with commodities. For whoſe ſafe lodging, as they paſs (the waies being generally ill provided for Travellers, in theſe Eaſtern Countreys) there are ſome houſes of receipt built at the publick charge, or by ſome ſpeciall Benefactor, to preſerve his memory; moſt of them ſtrong, and many very fair and lovely: which in the dominions of the *Perſians* they call *Caravane-Ruwes*; in the *Turkiſh*, *Canes*. And for communicating the ſucceſs of their buſineſs unto the place from whence they came, they make uſe of *Pigeons*, which is done in this manner. When the *Hen-Pigeon* ſitteth, or hath any young, they take the *Cock*, and ſet him in an open Cage: whom, when they have travelled a daies journey, they let go at liberty, and he ſtrait flieth home to his Mate. When they have trained them thus from one place to another, and that there be occaſion to ſend any advertiſements, they tie a letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by ſome of the houſe, advertiſed thereby of the eſtate of the *Caravan*. The like is alſo uſed betwixt *Ormus*, and *Balſora*. But of this enough.

5. *Cteſiphon*, on the River *Tigris*, not far from *Seleucia*, by whoſe fall it roſe; occaſioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, ſpeaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the building of *Seleucia* ſo neer unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhauriendam*, Cteſiphontem *juxta tertium ab ea Lapidem condidere Parthi*. Firſt built, ſaith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*, afterwards beautified and walled by *Pacorus*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the Seat-Royall of the *Perſian* Kingdome. Many times beſieged and aſſaulted by the *Roman* Emperors; but moſt commonly without ſucceſs; and amongſt others, by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, that bitter enemy of the Goſpell, who here breathed out his ſoul to Satan, in theſe dying words, *Viciſti tandem Galilea*. But *Vardanes* (whoſoever he was) cannot of right be called the firſt founder of it, who raiſed it rather from the rubbiſh of an old foundation: this City being the ſame with that which *Moſes* calleth *Calne*; and *Ezekiel*, *Canneh*, *Gen.* 11. and *Ezek.* 27. 23. and therefore rightly ſaid by *Pliny* to be built in *Chalanitide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6. *Sipparum*, remarkable for the great Trench made neer it, to receive the over flowings of *Euphrates*, which otherwiſe might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*: in compaſs 1280 furlongs or 160 miles; In depth 20 fathoms. A vaſt and expencefull work; but that nothing was to be admired when *Babylon* it ſelf was up and in full proſperity.

7. *Apamia*, a City of *Seleucus* foundation alſo, ſituate at the fall of *Piſon* into the River of *Tigris*.

8. *Vologeſia*, placed by *Ptolomy* amongſt the Cities of *Chaldæa*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Aſſyria*; built or repaired by one of the *Vologeſes* Kings of *Perſia*, and from him denominated.

9. *Borſippa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Barſita*, memorable for the great victory which *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, obtained here againſt *Nabonid* the King of *Babylon*, by *Scaliger* called *Darius Medus*, (of which more anon): whom having vanquiſhed, he pardoned him (as he ſaith) his life, and gave him the government of *Carmania*.

10. *Balſora*, the Port Town to *Babylon*, ſituate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Perſicus*, and conſequently of great wealth and trading: The riches of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and ſome part of *India*, being landed here, and ſo carryed to *BABYLON*, and thence up the water to *Aleppo*. Suppoſed to be the City of *Teredon*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*; built or repaired by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long ſince taken from the *Turks* by *Abas*, the *Perſian*.

7. ASSYRIA.

ASSYRIA is bounded on the East, with *Media*, by which parted by the mountain called *Coathras*; on the West, with *Mesopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tigris*; on the North, with some part of *Turcomanie*, and part of *Chaldea*. So called from *Assur* the sonne of *Sem*, by whom first inhabited. But having long since lost that name, as to vulgar speech, it is by *Niger* called *Adrinse*; by *Mercator*, *Sarh*; by the *Turks*, *Arzerum*.

The Countrey very plain, and levell, exceeding fruitfull, and abounding in Rivers. For besides *Tigris*, which washeth one whole side thereof, *Ptolomy* assigneth to this Countrey the Rivers of 2. *Lycus*, 3. *Caprus*, and 4. *Gorgos*; all of good note, and all of them increasing, with their tributarie Streams, the greatness of *Tigris*.

The people were antiently great warriers, and together with the *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans*, commanded a great part of the East; extending their dominion from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*; insomuch that not the people of this Province only, but of all the Provinces almost of this spacious Empire, had the name of *Assyrians*. The men for all this, exceeding formall in their habit, wearing long robes which trailed on the very ground, their hair long, their hats or *Caps Pyramidall* like the *Persian Mitres*; not stirring out of doors but perfumed with Musk, rings on their fingers, and a Scepter in their hands; and very frequent in their washings, especially after copulation. As for their women, it was an antient custome with them, to expose the fairest unto sale in the open Market; and with the money given for those, to put off such as were deformed and not so amiable. And hence perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this lesson of giving less portions with such daughters as will sell themselves, but greasing the fat sow (as the saying is) with the addition of some hundreds; which made the merry fellow say, *That the money were a good match if the wench were away.*

The *Christian* faith was first here planted by Saint *Jude*, and took such deep root in that plantation, that it could never be pulled up, notwithstanding the cruel persecutions raised against it by the Kings of *Persia*; who when they saw there was no means to destroy it by violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with heresie. And to that end, as also to revenge himself upon the Emperor *Heraclius*, a great Champion of the *Orthodox* belief against *Nestorianism*, *Chosroes* the great King of *Persia* inforced all the *Christians* of his Empire unto those opinions, which he knew that Emperour condemned; permitting none who were counted *Catholicks* within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to instruct them otherwise (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Persian* Empire) *Nestorianism* prevailed so far, that it extended over all the Countreys East of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; and Northwards too amongst the *Tartars*, of which more hereafter. Governed by their own *Patriarch* who resideth at *Mosul*, now the chief City of this Countrey; and honoured by his people with the Title of *Jacelich*, mistaken or pronounced amiss for *Catholique*; an attribute given antiently to all *Orthodox* Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Nestorians*, were, 1. That there were two persons in our Saviour, as well as two natures; but yet confessing that *CHRIST* from the first instant of his conception, was both God and man. 2. That the *blessed Virgin* ought not to be called Θεοτόκος, or the *Mother of God*; but yet acknowledging her to be the *Mother of God the Sonne*. 3. That *Nestorius*, condemned for these opinions in the third and fourth *Generall Councills*, was an holy man; for whose sake they condemn Saint *Cyrill* his profess'd *Antagonist*, and all those Councils wherein any censure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough, (their rejecting *Episcopall Confirmation* excepted only) as 1. in celebrating the Sacrament of the Lords Supper with leavened bread; 2. communicating in both kinds; 3. enjoining no necessity of *auricular* Confession; 4. contracting mariages in the second degree of Consanguinity; 5. permitting second and third mariages unto men in *Orders*, after the death of their first wives; 6. not praying before the *Crosse*, nor giving religious worship to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for these *Nestorians*, if so named aright, considering the qualifications added unto their opinions; now (but corrupely) called *Nestranes*; the greatest Sect of *Christians* in all the East.

The solemnities which these Christians use in contracting mariage, because not very usual, I will here relate. Their Wives they never see till the day of their mariage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her parents for her. Agreed upon the business, they meet in the Chancell of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the *Bridegroom* and his friends standing on the one side; the *Bride* and her kindred on the other. When there, the *Cassisse* or Church-man biddeth the *Bridegroom* to put his hand thorow the hole in the Partition, and take his *Bride* by the hand, which he doth accordingly: the mother of the *Bride*, with a sharp-pointed instrument, made of purpose, pricking the *Bridegrooms* hand all over, with sufficient eagernes. If when he feeleth the smart, he lets go her hand, they take it for a sign that he will not love her; but if he hold her fast, and wring her hand till she cry again, they take it for a very good *Omen*, and are glad they have so well bestowed her. After the mariage consumate, if a male-child be born unto them, the Father loseth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldest Sonne: so as if the Fathers name be *Moses*, and his Sonnes name *Joseph*; the Father is no more called *Moses*, but *Abba-Joseph*, or the Father of *Joseph*. So highly do they reverence mariage, and the fruit thereof, posterity.

It was antiently divided into these six parts, 1. *Arraphachitis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; so calledfor *Arphaxaditis*, or the plantation of *Arphaxad*, the Sonne of *Sem*. 2. *Adiabene*, bordering on

on *Mesopotamia*, so called, *quasi* Ἀδιαβατος, or inaccessible, because fenced with such unfordable Rivers, *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, that there was no easie comming to it; διὰ δυχερειὰν ϗ διάβασιν, as it is in *Suidas*: or rather for *Adiavenena*, from *Diavas*, and *Adiavas*, the chief Cities of it (the same which *Ptolomy* called *Lycus*, and *Caprus*) as in *Marcellinus*. 3. *Calacine*, and 4. *Sittacene* from *Sittace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 5. *Arbelites*, and 6. *Apollo-niates*, from *Apollonia* and *Arbela*, two others of the principall Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Assyria* brought unto our hand, 1. *Calach*, one of those four which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Assur*, *Gen.* 10. 11. and one of them to which the *Ten Tribes* were transplanted by *Salmanasser*, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. & 18. 11. of such esteem in those elder dayes, that *Calacine*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Calachene* as *Strabo* more rightly calleth it, did take name from hence. 2. *Sittace*, situate about two miles from the banks of *Tigris*, in the way from *Babylon* to *Susa*. A City, when it gave name to the parts adjoyning, both great and populous; well seated, in a fruitful soyl, and well shaded with trees of several sorts; supposed by the situation of it to be that *Accad*, (or rather built in or neer the place of it) which was one of the first four Cities of *Nimrods* Kingdome. 3. *Arbela*, on the banks of the River *Caprus*, built as some say by *Belus*, (or *Belochus*) *Priscus*, an *Assyrian* King, whence it had the name. Neer unto which there is a place which *Strabo* calleth Κυπαρίσσων, or *Cupressetum*, conceived by some to be the place where *Noah* framed the *Ark*. 4. *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* conquest, as appeareth by the name which is wholly *Greek*: not otherwise observable but for giving the name of *Apolloniates* to the Countrey adjacent. Adde unto these, 5. *Gaugamela*, situate in the middle space betwixt *Lycus* and *Caprus*; memorable for the last and greatest battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* the King of *Persia*: who had he made good the Eastern banks of the River *Tigris*, might easily have hindred the *Macedonians* from coming over: the River being so extremely swift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to pass it but by linking their hands and armes together, and making one entire body to oppose the current; and therewithall of so great depth, that the footmen were fain to hold their Bows and Arrows over their heads, to keep them from being moistned and made unservicable. But having miserably lost this opportunity by the cowardise of *Mazæus*, who had the keeping of this pass; he was inforced to venture all upon a battel: drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 horse, and 200000 foot, in their accompt who speak least of it (for *Arrianus* makes it above a Million.) Opposed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 foot, and 7000 horse of his *Europæans*; but those victoriously successful: 40000 of the *Persians* slain, (but *Diodorus Siculus* speaks of 900000) with the loss of 300 *Macedonians* onely, as is said by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable victory, a Mountain neer the place of the battel, was by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Strabo* and some other antients. 6. *Rehoboth*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is said to have built in *Assur*; by some supposed to be *Birtha*, an antient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering so neer unto *Mesopotamia*, that by *Ptolomy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7. *Rhesen*, another of the Cities of *Nimrods* building, seated by *Moses* between *Calach* and *Ninive*, *Gen.* cap. 10. v. 12. and there commended for *a great City*. Which *Character* with the site thereof have induced some learned men to think it to be the same which is by *Xenophon* called *Larissa*, seated by him on the River *Tigris*, much about this place, and said to be a City of such strength and greatness, that it was no less than two *Parasangs*, or four miles in compass, the walls in height a hundred foot, twenty five in breadth; so strongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who besieged it, could have never taken it if a casual Eclipse of the Sunne had not discouraged the defendants. But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Larissa* for another of the principal Cities. 8. *Ninive*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines* called *Ninus*; first built by *Nimrod*, and called *Ninive* with relation unto *Ninus*, his sonne or Nephew, after the example of *Cain* whose steps he followed: of whom it is said that he *built a City, and called it after the name of his sonne* Enoch, *Gen.* 4. 17. I know the building of this City is by some ascribed to *Assur*, grounding themselves on that of *Moses*, *Gen.* 10. 11. *Out of that Land went forth* Assur, *and built* Ninive *&c.* But I like better of their judgement who take *Assur* in this place for the name of the Countrey and not of the man; making the Text to speak of *Nimrod*, and to say of him, *Et egressus est in* Assur, &c. that is to say, *And he went forth to* Assur *or the land of* Assyria, and *there built* Ninive, Rehoboth, *and the rest* there named. A City so enlarged by some of the succeeding Kings, that it came at last to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compass 480 furlongs, or 60. miles; and therefore said in the Book of *Jonah*, to be a City of three dayes journey, in circuit, as indeed it was; accompting 20 miles for a dayes journey, according to the common estimate of those elder times, as also of the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the times succeeding. Nor was it of less strength than greatness, the walls an hundred foot high, and so broad that three Carts might go abrest on the top thereof: and in those walls 1500 Turrets, each of 200 foot in height. So strong, that it was thought to have been impregnable, especially because of an antient *Prophecy*, which signifyed that the Town should never be taken, till the River became an enemy to it. A Prophecy which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the seat of his warre against *Belochus*, and *Arbaces*, then in armes against him: who having besieged it three years without hope of success, at last the River over-flowing, carried before it twenty furlongs of the Wall. Which accident so terrified the effeminate King, that he burnt himself in the midst of his enemies, and left the Town to the Besiegers. Threatned destruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jonah*, it escaped then upon repentance. But the people going on in their wicked courses, it was destroyed by *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an encouragement to the *Assyrians* to rebel against him, as formerly against some of his Predecessors: and so destroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril* of *Alexandria*, as himself affirmeth in the comment on the Prophet *Nahum*, ὡς μηδὲ ὅπου ποτὲ γέγονεν ὁρᾶσθαι λοιπὸν, that one scould scarle discern in what place it stood. 9. *Mosul*, at this time, and for long since, the chief of *Assyria*, seated on

the

the *Tigris*, and raiſed out of the ruins of *Ninive*: of moſt note for being the ordinary abiding place of the *Neſtorian* Patriarch, who either in the City it ſelf, or the Monaſterie of Saint *Hermes* neer adjoyning to it, hath his conſtant Reſidence. The *Neſtorians* in this City ſo conſiderable both in power and number, that though it be in the hands of *Mahometans*, either *Turks* or *Perſians*, yet there are numbred in it fifteen *Chriſtian Churches*, and at leaſt 40000 ſouls. A *Sect* ſo maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Biſhop*) for the greatneſs of the juriſdiction which this Patriarch hath; that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, ſet up an *Anti-Patriarch* againſt him, to whom he gave the title of the *Catholique* of *Muſal* alſo; to whom the *Neſtorians* dwelling in the Northern parts of *Meſopotamia* (if ſome writers of the *Papal* party may be believed) do ſubmit themſelves. 10. *Arzeri*, of greater ſtrength than *Moſul*, though of leſs antiquity and repute; from which the whole Province of *Aſſyria*, is now called *Arzirum*. And 11. *Scheheruzi*, at this time of the greateſt note, as being the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*, who hath 10000 *Timariots* under his command, to defend this Countrey, and be ready for any ſervice, as occaſion is.

MESOPOTAMIA.

MESOPOTAMIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Tigris*, by which parted from *Aſſyria*; on the Weſt, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagena*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Major*; and on the South, with *Chaldæa*, and *Arabia Deſerta*, from which laſt it is parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* alſo.

In the Scripture it is called moſt commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria Culta*; but that name properly belonging to the North-parts of it: *Aram* or *Syria*, becauſe inhabited originally by the *Aramites*, whom the *Greeks* call *Syri*; and *Padan* or *Culta*, from the fruitfulneſs and riches of it, exceeding plentifully ſtored both with corn and wine, and furniſhed with all neceſſaries for the life of man; in that regard by *Strabo* called *Meſopotamia Felix*. The Southern parts hereof being barren and full of Deſarts, not having any herbage in them, ὑδὲ ἄλλο δένδρον, nor any kind of Tree, as we read in *Xenophon*; amongſt ſome of the antient Writers, had the name of *Arabia*: partly becauſe ſo like in nature to *Arabia Deſerta*, and partly becauſe planted with *Arabian Colonies*. The name which comprehends both parts is ſometimes *Syria Tranſ-fluvialis*, or *Syria* beyond the River (*Euphrates*,) of which ſee 2 *Sam.* 10. 16. But generally in the *Hebrew* it is called *Arom-Naharaijn*, which the *Greeks* render properly by *Meſopotamia*, or the Countrey in the middle of Rivers; environed by *Tigris* on the Eaſt, and *Enphrates* on the Weſt and South; the River *Chabaras* or *Abaras*, paſſing alſo thorow it. The *Latines* generally call it by the ſame name which the *Greeks* had given it: *Priſcian* only to ſhew his faculty in *Grammar*, calling it *Medamna*, by the *Turks* now *Diarbech*.

As is the Countrey, ſuch the People, the moſt *Adjective* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to ſtand by themſelves, but ſtill requiring the addition of ſome neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. Nothing that they can call their own, their Name, their Language, nor their Countrey. Beholding for their *Name* in the North, to *Syria*, in the South, to *Arabia*; the *Chaldæans* alſo putting in for a ſhare, and challenging thoſe parts which lie next *Aſſyria*, to belong to them. Their *Language* antiently the *Syriack*, at this day the *Arabick*. Their Countrey ſucceſſively ſubjected to the *Babylonians*, *Aſſyrians*, *Medes* and *Perſians*. From them firſt conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Pompey*; reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperour *Trajan*; more fully ſetled and confirmed by *Aurelianus*. But being recovered by the *Perſians*, they fell together into the power of the *Saracens*, and are now commanded by the *Turks*. Never appearing of themſelves on the *Stage* of action, but when once God ſhewed his mighty power in their many weakneſſes, and raiſed them up to be a Scourge to the houſe of *Iſrael*; of which ſee *Judges* chap. 3. v. 8. Hired afterwards by *Adadezer* King of *Syria Zobah*, in his warre againſt *David*; by whom moſt ſhamefully defeated, 2 *Sam.* 10. 16, 18. Yet notwithſtanding memorable in the Book of God for the birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*, the long abode of *Jacob*, and the birth of his Children: in that reſpect affording an *Original* to the *Hebrew* Nation.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached here by Saint *Thaddæus*, one of the 70. Diſciples, Anno 43. upon this occaſion. *Agbarus* the *Toparch*, or Prince of *Edeſſa*, one of the chief Cities of this Countrey, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the fame of JESUS, beſeeched him by a ſpecial meſſage to come and help him: whereunto our *Saviour* made this Anſwer, *that he could not viſit him in perſon, the things he was to do, whileſt upon the earth, being to be performed only in the land of* Canaan; *but that he would take care of his health in convement time.* Accordingly, not along after his *Aſcenſion*, Saint *Thomas* the Apoſtle, by immediate revelation from our Saviour, ſent *Thaddæus* thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Goſpel preached, and many of the Nation converted to it; the *Acts* whereof, together with the Copies of the ſeveral Letters from *Agbarus* to CHRIST, and from CHRIST to him, preſerved in the *Archives* of *Edeſſa*, were by *Euſebius* tranſlated out of the *Syriack*, and inſerted into the body of his *Eccleſiaſticall Hiſtory*, lib. 1. cap. 14. Once planted, it found good increaſe, continuing in the purity of it till about the yeare 530. at what time one *Jacobus Syrus* (ſo called from his birth and abode in *Syria*) took on him the defence of the Errors of *Eutyches*, touching the unity of natures in CHRIST our Saviour. Whoſe followers finding the Patriarchs of *Antioch* too vigilant over them, removed for the moſt part further off, ſetling themſelves in *Babylonia*, and *Meſopotamia*, where they continued in great numbers: Governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the *Jacobites* in *Syria* are alſo ſubject, who takes unto himſelf the title of Patriarch of *Antioch*, and is ſucceſſively called

led *Ignatius*, as if the undoubted Succeſſor of that Saint and Martyr; ſuperior in that regard to the Patriarch of *Hieruſalem* who is alſo a *Jacobite*. The Patriarchal See, fixt in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, neer the City of *Merdin*; but the Reſidence of the *Patriarch* for the moſt part at *Caramit*: the number of *Chriſtians* under his obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced ſince unto 50000. That which they hold as *Jacobites*, diſtinct from all other *Chriſtians*, is 1. The acknowledgement but of one nature, one will, and one operation (as there is but one perſon) in Chriſt our Saviour. 2. In ſigning their Children before Baptiſm, in the Face or Arm, with the ſign of the Croſs, imprinted with a burning iron. 3. Retaining *Circumciſion*, and uſing it in both Sexes. 4. Affirming the Angels to conſiſt of two ſubſtances, Fire, and Light; and 5. Honouring the memory of *Dioſcurias* (of *Alexandria*) and *Jacobus Syrus*, condemned by the antient Councils. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*,

1. Not enjoining on the People the neceſſity of *Confeſſion* to a Prieſt, before they admit them to communicate.

2. Not admitting Purgatory, nor Prayers for the Dead.

3. Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt* in both kinds.

4. Allowing the mariage of Prieſts; And

5. Teaching that the ſouls of men deceaſed, are not admitted preſently to the *Viſion* of *God*, but remain ſomewhere in the Earth, to expect Chriſts coming. In which laſt, (letting aſide the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; ſo to the firſt (touching the unity of nature in our Saviour Chriſt) they have of late added ſuch qualifications, as poſſibly may make it capable of an *Orthodox* ſenſe.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey, (beſides *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, of which more hereafter,) 1. *Chaboras*, which riſing in Mount *Maſius*, paſſing directly South, falleth into *Euphrates*; as alſo doth, 2. *Syngarus*, by *Pliny*, called *Maſca*, ariſing out of the Mountain *Syngarus*, which is but the more Weſtern part of the ſaid Mount *Maſius*. Which names of *Maſca*, *Maſius*, and the *Maſieni* (being the name of a People dwelling thereabouts) ſhew plainly that they go upon very good grounds who place *Maſch*, or *Meſech*, one of the ſonnes of *Aram* in theſe parts of the Countrey.

It was divided antiently into, 1. *Anthemaſia*, 2. *Chalcitis*. 3. *Gaulanitis*. 4. *Accabene*. 5. *Ancorabitis*, and 6. *Ingine*: each part containing ſeveral Cities or Towns of name. Theſe ſix when conquered by the *Romans* reduced unto two Provinces onely, viz. 1. *Meſopotamia*, lying on the South of Mount *Maſius*, or the head of *Chaboras*; and 2. *Oſrhoene* on the North: this laſt ſo named from one *Oſrhoes*, the Prince or Governour of theſe parts in the time of the *Perſians*, as *Procopius* telleth us.

Chief places of the whole, 1. *Edeſſa*, the Metropolis of *Oſrhoene*, ſituate on the River *Scirtas*, which runneth thorow the middeſt of it, not far from the fall thereof into *Euphrates*. Memorable for the Story of *Agbarus* before related, amongſt Church-Hiſtorians: and in the *Roman* Hiſtories, for the death of the Emperor *Caracalla*, ſlain here by the appointment of *Macrinus*, Captain of his guard. The occaſion this. The Emperour conſcious to himſelf of his own unworthineſs, employed one *Maternianus* to enquire amongſt the Magicians in the Empire, who was moſt likely to ſucceed him: by whom accordingly advertiſed that *Macrinus* was to be the man. The letters being brought unto *Caracalla*, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the reſt of the Packets, to the hands of *Macrinus*, (who by his Office was to be attendant on the Emperours perſon) that he might open them, and ſignifie unto him the contents thereof at his better leiſure. Finding by this the danger in which he ſtood, he reſolved to ſtrike the firſt blow; and to that end entruſted *Martialis*, one of his *Centurions*, with the execution; by whom the Emperour was here killed as he withdrew himſelf, *Levandæ veſicæ gratiâ*, as my Author hath it. So impoſſible a thing it is to avoid ones Deſtiny; ſo vain a thing for any Prince to think of deſtroying his Succeſſor: and therefore very well ſaid to *Nero* in the times of his tyranny, *Omnes licet occideris, Succeſſorem tuum occidere non potes*, that though he cauſed all the men of eminence to be forthwith murdered; yet his Succeſſor would ſurvive him, and eſcape the blow. But to return unto *Edeſſa*, in following times it was made one of the four *Tetrarchies* of the Weſtern Chriſtians when they firſt conquered *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*; the two firſt Governors or *Tetrarchs*, ſucceſſively ſucceeding *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the Kingdome of *Hieruſalem*. But in the year 1142. it was again recovered by *Sanguin* the *Turk*, Father of *Noradin* Sultan of *Damaſcus*, and by the loſs thereof no fewer than three Arch-Biſhopricks withdrawn from the obedience of the See of *Antioch*.

2. *Cologenbar*, another ſtrong peece adjoining, beſieged on the taking of *Edeſſa*, by the ſame *Sanguin*, who was here ſtabbed in a drunken quarrell by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort ſaved for that time.

3. *Niſibis*, ſituate ſomewhat to the Eaſt of Mount *Maſius*, called alſo *Antiochia Mygdonia*; from the River *Mygdonius*, which runneth thorow it; and afterwards *Conſtantia*, from *Conſtantius* the Sonne of *Conſtantine*. A City of great note in thoſe elder times, a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Meſopotamia*, properly and ſpecially ſo called: which being beſieged by *Sapores* the King of *Perſia*, (*Conſtantius* ruling in the Eaſt) and in no ſmall danger to be loſt, was gallantly defended by *James* the then *Biſhop* of it, whom *Theodoret* calls not onely, *Epiſcopum Civitatis, ſed Principem & Ducem*, not the Biſhop only of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, *libr.* 2 *cap* 31. So little inconſiſtencie was there found in thoſe early daies betwixt the *Epiſcopall* function and civill buſineſſes, that the Biſhops were not interdicted from the Acts of war, when the neceſſities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after moſt unworthily delivered to the ſaid *Sapores* by the Emperour *Jovinian*; which drew along with it in ſhort time the loſs of the Province.

4. *Ur*,

4. *Ur*, ſeated on the Eaſt of *Niſibis*, betwixt it and *Tigris*; and ſo placed by *Ammianus* who had travelled this Countrey. Conceived to be the Birth-place of *Abraham*, and called *Ur of the Chaldees*, *Gen.* 11. 28. either becauſe the *Chaldees* were in thoſe daies poſſeſſed of the place; or becauſe the name of *Chaldæa* did comprehend alſo thoſe parts of this Countrey which lay towards *Tigris*, as was ſhewn before. For that the place from which *Terah* the Father of *Abraham* did return to *Haran* in *Meſopotamia*, was rather ſituate in this coaſt where *Ur* is placed by *Ammianus*, than betwixt the Lakes of *Chaldæa* and the *Perſian Golf*, where moſt Writers place it, may appear probable for theſe reaſons.

1. Becauſe it is ſaid by *Joſuah*, chap. 24. ver. 12. That *Terah* the *Father of Abraham* and the Father of *Nachor* dwelt *on the other ſide of the Flood*; that is to ſay on the further ſide of the River *Euphrates*, and that too ἀπ' ἀρχῆς, as the *Septuagint*; *ab initio*, as the *Vulgar Latine*; in the firſt beginning. Which cannot be underſtood of any *Ur*, placed on or neer the Lakes of *Chaldæa*, thoſe being on this ſide of that River. 2. Becauſe all the reſt of *Abrahams* Anceſtors from *Phaleg* downwards, were ſeated in the Northern parts of *Aſſyria* and *Meſopotamia*: and it were ſtrange that *Terah* ſhould be planted ſo far from the reſt of his kindred. 3. Becauſe from *Ur* in *Meſopotamia* neer the banks of *Tigris*, the way to *Canaan*, (to which *Terah* did intend to go) was directly by *Haran*: whereas if he had dwelt (as ſome ſay he did) by the Lakes of *Chaldæa*, his way had been directly Weſt thorow *Arabia Deſerta*, and not to have travelled, with his family, ſo far North as *Haran*; and then to have fallen back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, croſſing *Euphrates* twice with his herds and Cattel. 5. *Haran*, the place to which *Terah* did remove when he went from *Ur*, and from which *Abraham* did remove when he went towards *Canaan*; ſo named in memory of *Haran* the ſonne of *Terah*: but called afterwards by the name of *Carræ*, and by that name well known to the *Roman* Writers for the death of *Craſſus*, that wealthy *Roman*, whoſe eſtate, (beſides the tenth which he offered to *Hercules*, and three moneths corn diſtributed amongſt the poor) amounted to 7100. Talents, which comes in our money to one Million, 331250. l. But all his wealth could not preſerve him from the ſlaughter, ſlain neer this City, with the routing of his Army alſo by *Horodes* King of *Parthia*; of which briefly *Lucan*,

——*miſerando funere* Craſſus
Aſſyrias Latio *maculavit ſanguine* Carras.

Which may be *Engliſhed* to this purpoſe,

By a defeat lamented *Craſſus* ſtains
With *Roman* blood the *Aſſyrian Carras* Plai.

Called the *Aſſyrian Carræ* by Poeticall Licence, becauſe the *Aſſyrians* formerly had been Lords thereof. And no leſs memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous Temple of the *Moon*, worſhipped here (but in no place elſe) under both *Sexes*: ſome honouring it as female Deity, then called *Dea Luna*; and others in the ſhape and dreſs of a man, and called *Deus Lunus*. But with this fortune and ſucceſs, as ſaith *Spartianus*, *qui* Lunam *fœmineo nomine putabat nuncupandam, is* mulieribus *ſemper inſerviat*; that they who worſhipped it in the form of a *Woman*, ſhould be alwaies ſubject to their Wives (I trow there were but few of that Religion) *qui vero* Marem *deum crederet, is uxori dominetur*; but he that worſhipped it as a man, ſhould preſerve the maſterie. 6. *Amida*, neer the River *Tigris*, the Metropolis of *Meſopotamia* when one Province only, and before it fell into the hands of the *Romans*: much beautified by *Conſtantius* the Sonne of *Conſtantine*, by whom named *Conſtantia*. But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great ſtrength, as a frontire Town againſt the *Perſians*, and by them much aimed at. Honoured of late times with the Reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Chriſtians*, as the chief City of this Province: for this cauſe alſo made the dwelling of the *Pſendo-Patriarch* of the *Neſtorians* (or *Noſtranes*) of the Popes erection; and the chief Seat alſo of the *Baſſa* or other Officer, governing this Countrey for the *Turks*; by whom called *Caramit*, or *Kara Amida*, that is to ſay, *Amida the black*, becauſe it was walled with black ſtone. 7. *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the meeting of *Chaboras* with *Euphrates* not far from *Carræ*, mentioned by *Stephanus*, and *Arrianus*, and by *Ptolomy* miſtakingly called *Pharga*; the ſeat or firſt plantation of *Phaleg*, one of *Abrahams* Anceſtors: *Serug*, another of them giving name to 8. *Sarug*, about a daies journey off from *Haran*, ſpoken of by ſome later writers. 9. *Singara*, on the River ſo named, a well fortified City in the time of *Ammianus*, by whom mentioned, *lib.* 20. 10. *Berabde*, mentioned by the ſame Author, by whom ſaid to have been a very ſtrong Fort, ſeated on a pretty high hill, and bending towards the banks of *Tigris*; before whoſe times it had antiently bin called *Phœnicha*. 11. *Virta*, ſuppoſed to have been the work of *Alexander* the Great, cireled with walls, environed with half-moones and Bulwarks, and made unacceſſible: in vain beſieged by *Sapores* the *Perſian* King after the taking of *Bezabde*. The ſame perhaps with the *Birtha* of *Ptolomy*. 12. *Merdin*, not far from which in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, is the Patriarchall See of the *Jacobite Sectaries*.

The firſt Inhabitants of theſe Countries, though united from the firſt begining under the ſame Princes, and form of Government; came from ſeverall Families: all the three ſonnes of *Noah* concurring as it were in this plantation. From *Nimrod*, *Havilah*, and others of the poſterity of *Chus*, the ſonne of *Ham*, came the *Babylonians*: with whom *Cheſed* the Sonne of *Nachor*, of the houſe of *Sem*, intermingling families; or being the Author of their language, or of ſome other ſignall benefit; gave to them the name

of

of *Chaldim*, whence came that of *Chaldeans*. From *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, and those of *Arphaxads* posterity, intermingled with the Sonnes of *Mash*, the sonne of *Aram*, came the *Mesopotamians*, and *Assyrians*. And that *Japhet* also and his Children may put in for a part, the neighbourhood of the *Medes*, and *Albanese*, descended from him, makes it somewhat probable.

But, whatsoever parents they descended from, *Nimrod* the Sonne of *Chus* made so bold with them, as to bring them under his command: planting in *Chaldea*, the Cities of *Babylon*, and *Calne*; in *Assyria*, *Ninive*, *Rhesem*, and *Calach*; and finally *Rehoboth* (if that were *Birtha*, as some think it was) in *Mesopotamia*. By these strong Forts he curbed the natives, and assured his power; being the first that altered the Paternall form of Government, and drew unto himself the government of severall Nations, not having any dependance upon one another. The foundation thus laid by him, his Successors soon raised the building to a wondrous height; advancing the *Assyrian* Empire, from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*; and that too in a shorter time than could be imagined, but that the world was then divided into petit States, not cemented together with the ligaments of power and policy: for though there be litle found of *Belus* the Sonne of *Nimrod*, but that he spent most of his time in draining the marishes, and making firm ground of those vast fennes which lay neer to *Babylon*, which were works of peace: yet by those and the like works of peace he so setled his affairs at home, that he gave his Sonne *Ninus* the better opportunity to look abroad; who mightily improved his Empire, and was the greatest and most powerfull of all that line; extending his dominions from the River *Indus*, to the *Mediterranean*; and from the *Caspian* Sea, to the Southern Ocean. His Successors we shall find in the following Catalogue of

The *Assyrian* Monarchs.

A. M.

1798 1. *Nimrod*, called by some *Saturnus Babylonius*, the Sonne of *Chus*, and Nephew of *Cham*, was the first who altered the Paternal government, and usurped dominion over others; making *Babylon* his Imperiall City. 47.

1845. 2. *Belus*, or *Jupiter Babylonicus*, the Sonne of *Nimrod*, whose Image was worshipped by the old Idolaters under the names of *Bel* and *Baal*. 62.

1907. 3. *Ninus*, the Sonne of *Belus*, conquered *Armenia*, *Syria*, *Media*, *Bactria*, and the *Persian* Provinces, and removed the Imperiall Seat to *Ninive*, by him much beautified and inlarged. 52.

1959 4. *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*, subdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* also, she was vanquished and slain by their King *Staurobates*. Of this great Lady it is said, she was born in *Ascalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and exposed to the fury of wilde beasts. But being born not to die so ingloriously, she was brought up by shepherds, and at full age presented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in mariage to his onely Sonne. Going with him to the warres, she fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her person and spirit, took her to his bed. This bred in him a greater affection towards her, so that he granted her at her request, the command of the Empire for five daies; making a *Decree* that her will in all things should be punctually performed: which boon being gotten, she put on the Royall Robes, and (as some Writers doe report) commanded the King to be slain. Having thus gotten the *Empire*, she exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army consisting of one hundred thousand Chariots of warre, three millions of Foot, and half a million of Horse. A woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her insatiable lusts: in which if the *Greek* writers say true (as we have no reason to believe it of so gallant a woman) she was very guilty.

2001 5. *Ninus* II. the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.
2039 6. *Arias* 30.
2069 7. *Arabius* 40.
2109 8. *Belus* II. 30.
2139 9. *Armamatrites*.
2177 10. *Belochus Prisc.* 35.
2212 11. *Belochus Jun. Balæus* 52.
2264 12. *Altades* 32.
2296 13. *Mamitus* 30.
2326 14. *Mancaleus* 30.
2356 15. *Spherus* 20.
2376 16. *Mancaleus* II. 30.
2406 17. *Sparetus* 40.
2446 18. *Ascatades* 40.
2486 19. *Amintes* 45.
2511 20. *Belochus Jun.* 45.
2556 21. *Bellopares* 30.
2586 22. *Lamprides* 22.
2618 23. *Sasares* 20.
2638 24. *Lampares* 20.
2668 25. *Panmas* 45.
2713 26. *Scramas* 19.
2732 27. *Mitreus* 27.
2759 28. *Tatanes* 32.
2791 29. *Tautes* 40.
2831 30. *Tineus* 30.
2861 31. *Dercillus* 40.
2901 32. *Eupales* 38.
2939 33. *Loastines* 45.
2984 34. *Pyrithiades* 30.
3014 35. *Ophrateus* 20.
3034 36. *Ophraganeus* 50.
3084 37. *Ascrasapes* 24.
3126 38. *Sardanapalus*, by *Eusebius* called *Tonosconcolos*, the last King of this Race. Of which being

being 38. in all, there is ſcarce any thing remaining but the very names: regiſtred in this order by *Beroſus*, or rather by Frier *Annius* a Monk of *Viterbum* in *Tuſcany*, who hath thruſt upon the world, the fancies of his own brain, under the name of that antient Hiſtorian. The chief Kings of note after *Semiramis*, were,

1. *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her Sonne; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants ſubdued the *Arrians*, *Bactrians*, and *Caſpians*, but was otherwiſe a man of effeminate and unkingly carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the elder *Bacchus*, ſo much celebrated amongſt the *Grecians*.

2. *Belus* the ſecond, who recovered that Countrey which afterwards was called *Judæa*, to the *Aſſyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predeceſſor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the ſword of *Abraham*,) and ſubdued many other nations.

3. *Belochus Priſc.* the tenth King, who by ſome writers is ſaid to be the Author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auſpicium*. For of Sooth-ſaying there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Auſpicium*, *quaſi Aviſpicium*, taken from the flight of birds, either on the right hand, or on the left; (and hence the Proverb commeth, *avi ſiniſtrâ*, good luck, becauſe in giving, the right hand is oppoſite to the receivers left;) or from the number of the birds, whence *Romulus* had promiſed to him the Empire, before his Brother, becauſe he had ſeen the double number of Vultures: or laſtly, from the nature of them, whence the ſame *Romulus*, ſeeing the *Vultures*, was (ſaith *Florus*) *ſpei plenus urbem bellatricem fore, ita illi ſanguini, & prædæ aſſuetæ aves pollicebantur.*

2. *Aruſpicium*, *ab inſpiciendo*, in which the *Sooth-ſayers* obſerved whether the Beaſt to be ſacrifiſed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the entrails were of a naturall colour, exulcerate, &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Hiſtories afford variety of Examples in this kind; I need give no particular inſtance. A kind of *Divination* ſaid to be practiſed firſt by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians*; inſtructed in the knowledge thereof by one called *Tages*, who appearing to certain Ploughmen out of a Furrow, taught them this myſtery, and ſo vaniſhed.

3. *Tripudium*, ſo called *quaſi Terripudium*, and *Terripavium*, from the trembling or ſhaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future ſucceſſes, by the rebounding of crums caſt unto Chickens. We have an inſtance of this in the life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being ſeditiouſly buſie in promoting the Law *Agraria*, was fore-warned by the keeper of his Chickens to deſiſt from that enterpriſe, becauſe when he had thrown the crums to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens only, and the ſame without eating went back again, which was taken for a ſign of ill luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been of good. But *Tiberius* ſlighting the advertiſement, and purſuing his deſign, was the ſame day ſlain.

4. *Augurium*, ſo called *ab avium garritu*; was a prediction from the chirping or chattering of birds; as alſo from the ſounds and voices heard they knew not whence, nor on what occaſion. In which later kind the death of *Cæſar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his houſe, and the poiſoning of *Germanicus* by the ſounding of a Trumpet of its own accord: in the former, an Owl ſcreeching in the Senate-houſe was deemed ominous to *Auguſtus*; and a company of Crowes following *Sejanus* to his houſe with great noiſe and clamor, was judged to be fatall to that great Favorite; and ſo it proved.

4. *Manitus*, the thirteenth King; who revived again the antient Diſcipline, corrupted by the ſloathfulneſs and effeminacie of his Predeceſſors; and by the terrour of his name awed the *Ægyptians*.

5. *Aſcatades*, the eighteenth King, more abſolute in *Syria*, and the Weſtern-parts, than any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardanapalus*, the laſt King of this Race; who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern ſo great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces* his Lieutenant in *Media* to conſpire againſt him. By whom, aſſociated with *Belochus* Governour of *Babylon*, he was beſieged in his City of *Ninive*: and there reduced unto ſuch extremities, that gathering his treaſures all together, he burnt himſelf and them in one funerall Pile, *eo ſolum facto virum imitatus*, as is ſaid by *Juſtine*. The treaſure which he is ſaid to have burnt with him amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thouſand Millions of Talents of Silver: which in our *Engliſh* money comes to twenty thouſand and five hundred Millions of pounds. A maſs of money, which as it muſt be long in gathering, ſo probably it had not ſeen the Sun in many years, and therefore grown ruſty, deſired a fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be to end his life with that, in which he placed his *Summum Bonum*: It may be in ſpight unto his enemies; and it is poſſible it might be in policy, that ſo great a treaſure not falling to the poſſeſſion of his foes, might ſo much the more diſable them from making reſiſtance againſt, or detaining the Empire from his next rightfull Succeſſors. For it is of all things the moſt fooliſh, both to loſe our Treaſure, and with it to enrich our Adverſaries. On which conſideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian Fleet* at *Gades*, and the *Genoeſe* theirs at *Tripolis*; that their lading might not come into the Poſſeſſion of their enemies, the *Engliſh* and *Mahometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media* and *Perſia* with the confining Provinces: *Belochus* ſtrengthened himſelf in *Aſſyria*, *Chaldæa*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdome being called the Kingdome of *Aſſyria*.

The new Kings of *Aſſyria* and *Chaldæa*.

A.M.

3146. 1. *Phul Belochus*, the beginner of this new *Monarchy*.

3194. 2. *Phul Aſſur*, deſtroyed *Galilee*, and ſubdued the Kingdome of *Damaſcus*, the ſame who

is called *Tiglah Philaſſar* in the holy Scriptures.

3217. 3. *Salmanaſſar*, who deſtroyed *Samaria*, and ruined the Kingdome of *Iſrael*, and carried the 10 Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonaſſar* of the *Chronologers*.

3227. 4. *Sennacherib*, whoſe blaſphemous hoaſt was vanquiſhed by Angels from heaven, and he himſelf murdred by his two ſonnes *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*. 7.

3233. 5. *Aſſerhaddon*, who revenging his Fathers death on his brothers, was depoſed by his Deputy of *Chaldæa*, and the ſeat Royal transferred from *Ninive* to *Babylon*. 10.

3243. 6. *Merodach Baladan*, governour of *Babylon*, ſucceeded his Maſter in the Throne, conceived by ſome to be the *Mardocempades* of *Ptolomy*, by others to be alſo the ſame King who by his Captain *Holofernes* did ſo plague *Judæa*.

3283. 7. *Ben Merodach* 30th. ſonne of *Merodach Baladan*. 21.

3304. 8. *Nabopullaſſar*, who vanquiſhed *Pharaoh Necho King of Egypt*. 25.

3339. 9. *Nabuchodonoſor* the Great, by ſome called the *Hercules* of the *Eaſt*: who conquered *Egypt* in the life of his Father, with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*, he joyned alſo with *Aſtyages* King of *Medes*, in ſubverting the proud City of *Ninive*; and in the 18th. year of his reign deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*, and carried the People captive unto *Babylon*. But in the laſt ſeven years of his reign he was ſo diſtracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beaſts of the Field; according to the word of God ſpoken by *Daniel*, chap. 4. during which time his ſonne *Evilmerodach*, his daughter *Nicocris* with *Nigliſſat* her husband, and *Laboraſaradach* their ſonne, governed his Empires as *Protectors*; and therefore are by ſome reckoned as Kings. Finally *Nabuchadnezzar* having recovered his ſenſes, was again reſtored unto the Throne, and died, when he had reigned in all 44. years.

3583. 10. *Evilmerodach*; the ſonne of *Nabuchadnezzar*, ſlain by *Aſtyages*, King of the *Medes*. 26.

3409. 11. *Balthaſſar*, ſonne of *Evilmerodach* (the *Nabonidus* of *Beroſus*, a Prince of a diſſolute and cruel nature, was in the later end of his reign aſſailed by *Cyaxares* the Sonne of *Aſtyages*, (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*,) and by *Cyrus* the *Perſian*; by whom he was ſlain in the 17th. year of his reign, and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes and Perſians*. A. M. 3426.

That this was the end of *Balthaſſar*, is the common opinion. But *Joſephus Scaliger* in his learned and induſtrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be ſlain in a tumult by his own people: who elected into the Empire a Noble man of the *Medes*, called in prophane ſtories, *Nabonidus*; in divine, *Darius Medus*; who after a 17 years reign was ſlain by *Cyrus* King of the *Perſians*. But by the leave of ſo worthy a man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet *Jeremy*, had pronounced, (Chap. 27.) *That all Nations ſhould ſerve* Nabuchadnezzar, *and his ſonne, and his ſonnes ſonne*, whereas *Nabonidus* was a Prince of ſtrange blood, and ſo the Nations were not to ſerve him; and in *Balthaſſar*, the ſonnes ſonne of *Nabuchadnezzar*, was this word accompliſhed. But let us examine his arguments, and withall the ſcoffes, which very prodigally he beſtoweth on ſuch as maintain the contrary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of *Chronologers*; *boni & diligentes viri*, good ſimple meaning men; *& addunt alia nihil veriora*, are his firſt complements; *Ut igitur, quod Chronologorum eſt, omnes reſipiſcant, &c.* therefore that they may repent their ever being *Chronologers*, he bringeth in *Beroſus*, Cited by *Joſephus*, in his firſt book againſt *Appion*. But *Beroſus* there maketh *Nabonidus* (to whom he ſaith the Kingdome of *Balthaſſar* was by the people delivered) to be a *Babylonian*, and not as *Scaliger* would have him ſay, a noble man of the *Medes*: neither can the authority of *Beroſus* countervail that of *Daniel*, who in his 6 Chapter telleth *Balthaſſar*, that his Kingdome ſhould be *divided among the Medes and Perſians*. His ſecond argument is drawn from the nature of the word ἀναδέξαλο, καὶ Δαρεῖος ὁ Μήδος ἀναδέξαλο τὴν ἀρχὴν, as it is in the ſame Chapter, *and Darius the Mede took the Empire*: by which word *took* is implyed (ſaith he) not a forcible invaſion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we anſwer, that *Darius* indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him by *Cyrus*, and his army conſiſting of *Medes* and *Perſians*: who according to the word of God, had taken it from *Balthaſſar*, *Darius* being then abſent. *Quid ſi probavero* (ſaith he) *eum cognominatum fuiſſe Medum*? he hath yet one trick more than all theſe; and *Medus* muſt not be the *national* name, but the ſurname of *Darius*, which he proveth out of a fragment of *Megaſthenes*, cited by *Euſebius*, in his work *de præparatione Evangelica*, where he is called Μήδος ἀπὸ Ἀστιάγους τοῦ Μήδου, &c. an argument of all others the moſt ſlight and trivial. For beſides that Μήδος may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and beſides that it thwarteth the places of *Jeremy* and *Daniel* already quoted; it is diametrally oppoſite to another place of the ſame *Daniel*, in his ninth chapter; where he is called *Darius, of the ſeed of the Medes*. Of this *Darius* more anon when we come into *Media*. As for *Nabonidus*, queſtionleſs he was the ſame with *Balthaſſar*. For beſides that *Joſephus*, and *Beroſus*, attribute to either of them the reign of 17. years, the ſame *Joſephus* (who might beſt know the truth in this caſe) telleth us that *Balthaſſar* was by the *Babylonians* called *Naboandel*; a name not ſo great a ſtranger to *Nabonidus*, as *Scaligers Darius*, or *Herodotus* his *Labonitus*. But in this we muſt pardon *Joſeph*. Scorn and contradiction was a part of his eſſence. For had he not been in ſome things ſingular, in all, peremptory; he had neither been a *Saliger*, nor the ſonne of *Julius*.

But leaving *Joſeph* to the ſingularity of his own conceits; we find nothing done by the *Aſſyrians* or *Chaldæans* after this ſubjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of ſo great an Empire. Succeſſively inſlaved by the *Medes*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians*; then by the *Perſians* again, afterwards by the *Saracens*, next by the *Turks*, a third time by the *Perſians*, once again by the *Turks* of the

Ottoman

Ottoman Family, unto whom now subject: never endeavouring to assert in the way of war, or opposition, either their antient reputation, or their native liberties; but suffering themselves to be won, lost, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrelsome Masters, as if they had no title to their own Countrey, but were born to follow the fortunes of all pretenders. The reason of which is principally to be ascribed to the form of Government used amongst the *Persians*, which was so *Despoticall* and absolute, if not tyrannicall, that they held all the people conquered by them in the nature of slaves; not suffering any to grow great in a state of inheritance, or to enjoy any place of power and profit under them in the conquered Provinces, but at the pleasure of the Prince: as it is now used amongst the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the great men having no alliances amongst themselves, and as few dependants amongst the people; were never able to take head against the Conqueror; but in the fall of the present Prince fell together with him: it being a good rule of *Machiavel*, that where the antient Nobility is in good regard linked in alliances with themselves, and well respected by the common and inferiour people, there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conqueror, to win a Countrey, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other side, where Nobility is quite worn out, & the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of slaves, there both the Conquest will be easie, and soon assured. For to what purpose should the Subjects resist the Conqueror, or stand any longer to their King, than he stands to himself, when they are sure the Conqueror can lay upon them no heavyer burdens, than they were accustomed to before; and have withal a flattering hope that their new Masters may be gentler to them, than their former were? It fares with them no otherwise than with *Æsops Ass*, which refused to make the opportunity of an escape from the hands of the enemie, by which he was taken, because he knew it was not possible they should lay more load upon his back, than his old Master made him bear. To which condition the *Chaldeans* and *Assyrians* being brought by the *Persians*, and never accustomed to the tast of a better fortune: have followed the same successes as the *Persians* did; falling together with them from one hand to another; the particular accompt of whose estate we shall find in *Persia*: taking this onely for the *close*, that when *Solyman* the *Magnificent* had discomfited *Tamas* King of *Persia*, and taken the great City of *Bagdat*; *Caramit*, *Merdin*, and the rest both in *Assyria*, *Chaldaa*, and *Mesopotamia*, submitted to him without any resistance, and received his Garrisons. And for a confirmation of his estate he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, who by an old *Prerogative* had the nomination or confirmation at the least of the Kings of *Assyria*, and the Sultans of *Ægypt*, the Royall Ornaments and Ensignes, *Anno* 1534. incorporating by that means those Regions into his estates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left a *Beglerbeg* at *Bagdat* to command in chief; and divers *Sanziacks* in their severall and respective Provinces. And though the *Persian* Kings have since taken, and are still possessed of some places of importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the said investiture, and the long possession following on it, for Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire: as I do *Media* of the *Persian*, though *Tauris* and some other peeces of it be possessed by the *Turks*.

OF

OF MOUNT-TAURUS.

MOUNT-TAURUS is a conſtant and continuall Ridge of hils, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian* Seas; running thorow the whole length of *Aſia* from Weſt to Eaſt, and dividing it, as the *Æquator* doth the Globe, into North and South. It was called *Taurus* from the word *Tur* or *Taur*, which in the *Syriack* and *Chaldæan* ſignifieth a mountain, the common name of all high mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reaſon of its greatneſs and continued length; yet ſo, that it had other names alſo in ſome parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it paſſed, and on which it bordered. The courſe whereof is thus ſet down by Sir *Walter Ralegh*: premiſing onely, that it beginneth in the Province of *Lycia*, a Region of *Aſia Minor*, neer the *Mediterranean*. "Theſe Mountains (ſaith he) which "ſunder *Cilicia* from the reſt of *Aſia* the leſs, on the North thereof are called *Taurus*; and where they part "it from *Comagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called *Amanus*. On the Eaſt ſide of the River *Euphrates* "(which forceth it ſelf a way thorow it) it ſometimes reſumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in *Ptolomies* "three firſt Tables of *Aſia*, and ſometimes taketh the name of *Niphates*, as in the fourth: retaining that "uncertain appellation, ſo long as they bound *Armenia* from *Meſopotamia*. After the River *Tigris* "hath alſo cut them aſunder, they continue the name of *Niphates* altogether, untill they ſeparate *Aſſyria* "and *Media*, but then they call themſelves *Coatras*: although between the upper and lower *Media*, "they appear not alwaies, but are ſeen diſcontinued, and broke in pieces; ſuch parts of it as are found "in the midle of that Countrey being called *Orontes*, thoſe which lie more towards the Eaſt being named "*Coronus*; out of the Southern parts whereof iſſueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the antient "*Perſia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eaſt-ward by the name of *Coronus*, they give unto the "*Parthians* and *Hyrcanians* their proper Countries: and afterwards change themſelves into the *Moun-* "*tains* of *Seriphi*, out of which riſeth the River *Margus*. And now beginning to draw towards the end "of their courſe, they firſt make themſelves the South border of *Bactria*; and are then known by the "name of *Paropamiſus*: and after take unto themſelves the name of *Caucaſus*, where the famous Rivers "*Indus*, *Hydaſpis*, and *Zaradrus*, have their firſt beginnings. In this point do they hold their heads "exceeding high, to equal the Mountains of *Imaus*, whom they encounter within the 35, 36. & 37. "Degrees of *Latitude*, and the 140 Degree of *Longitude*: known by no other name than this, till finally "they terminate their courſe in the *Indian* Seas. So farre, and to this purpoſe, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the antient Writers could trace the courſe of this Mountain no further than the meeting of it with *Imaus*; yet later obſervations follow it to the wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucaſus* being now known by the names of *Delanguer*, and *Naugrocot*. But this is to be underſtood onely of the main body of theſe Mountains, which hold on in an even courſe from Weſt to Eaſt; not of thoſe ſpurres and branches of it, which ſhoot either to the North or South: ſuch as are the *Anti-Taurus* in ſome parts of the *leſſer Aſia*; the *Gordiæan* hills, and the *Montes Moſchici*, with thoſe which *Pliny* calleth *Pariedri*, others *Pariardes*, in *Armenia Major*: and that of *Caboras*, which ſheweth it ſelf on the North-Eaſt of *Aſſyria*, with divers others.

In ſuch a continual courſe of Mountains it muſt needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not eaſily ſubdued, nor ſo ſoon reduced unto civility, as ſuch who were poſſeſſed of places leſs defenſible, and fitter for commerce and trafick with the reſt of mankind. And they continued in theſe late times the laſt which were brought under by the *Turks*, and *Perſians*, the mightieſt Monarchs of thoſe parts; though bordering on, or totally environed with their dominions. Two Kingdomes they afforded of long continuance: one towards the Weſt where it cloſeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria Comagena* from *Armenia Major*; the other towards the Eaſt, ſeparating *Media* from *Hyrcania*. For want of other names to deſcribe them by, we will call the firſt the Kingdome of *Aladeules*, and the laſt the Kingdome of *Bahaman*; according to the names of the two laſt Kings.

1. The Kingdome of *ALADEULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it ſelf as farre towards the Eaſt, as to the banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Meſopotamia* from *Armenia Major*. Inhabited by a people naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing than their want of all things, who as men dwelling in a rough and barren Countrey, could litle profit themſelves by *husbandry*, and therefore gave themſelves to *grazing*, breeding on their paſtures ſome ſtore of horſe and camels, which they ſold to others, but eſpecially maintaining themſelves and their families by hunting and ſtealing. Suppoſed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the leſſer *Aſia*, which by long and continual warres in the former Ages, were forced to forſake their dwellings, and for ſafety of their lives to flie to theſe unpeopled and deſolate Mountains. Where ſearching every hill and dale, and following the opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly

chiefly the mildeſt *Temperature* of the Air, and moſt cheerfull aſpect of the Sunne: they built in many places poor villages, and afterwards ſome better Towns. The principal of which is named *Marus*, ſo called as it is conceived from the River *Marſyas*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Cœlene*, paſſeth by the ſame, and not farre off falleth into the River *Euphrates*.

When it was made a Kingdome firſt, it is hard to ſay, the Kings hereof being mean and inconſiderable in the eye of the world; not worth the conquering, and wanting power to conquer others and enlarge their territories: nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himſelf with reigning over rocks and Mountains. The laſt was *Aladeules* ſo much ſpoken of in the *Turkiſh* Hiſtories, and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by ſome writers to have been the Author of ſuch a *Paradiſe*, as we ſhall find deſcribed when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Perſia*; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him moſt really and truly known in the ſtories of the former times, was the ſtout oppoſition which he made againſt the *Turks*, in their warres with *Perſia*: He had before given no ſmall check to the proceedings of *Bajazet* the ſecond in his conqueſt of the *Caramanian* Kingdome; and no leſſe troubled *Selimus* the ſonne of *Bajazet*, in his *Perſian* warres, impeaching what he could the greatneſs of the *Ottoman* family. Fought with by *Selimus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of courage, till betrayed by *Alus Beg*, General of his horſe; and ſeeing his Army terrified by the ſhot of the *Turks*, he was fain to flie. But being at laſt taken, and put [illegible] by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdome was converted to a *Turkiſh* Province, Anno 1515. and continueth to this day.

2. The Kingdome of *BAHAMAN* was ſituate more towards the Eaſt, amongſt the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hyrcania*, as before was ſaid. The Mountains in thoſe parts ſo high, that Travellers at the end of a two daies journey, may diſcern the *midle Region* of the Air to be beneath them; exceeding troubleſome to aſcend, about 50 miles in height when once got to the top; but more dangerous by reaſon of the Rocks and *precipices* in the going down: full of inhoſpitable ſtreights, and ſo cold and barren, that were not *Sovereignty* a temptation above all reſiſtance, no man would take upon him the command of ſo poor a Kingdome. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it ſparkle in the night, like the hill *Veſuvius*, in *Italy*: by means whereof here are many *Hot-Bathes*, three of them walled about, two open; to which reſort unſound & decrepid people in very great multitudes. The chief Town of it *Larry-Joon*, in the ordinary road or paſs betwixt *Omoal* the laſt Town of *Hyrcania*, and *Damoan* the firſt of *Media*. But the Kings Seat was in a village called *Ryna*, where he had a Caſtle ſo built upon the beſt advantages of art and nature, that it ſeemed invincible: adorned, above, with gardens, flowers, and moſt pleaſant fruits; and furniſhed beneath with a Rivulet of pureſt water, which pleaſantly paſſing thorow the Caſtle, fell into the *Vallo*. A Caſtle of ſo large a circuit, that beſides the Kings Family or Court, it was able to admit a garriſon of 10000. men.

The laſt King hereof was the foreſaid *Bahaman*, derived from a long deſcent of Royal Anceſtors, comparing for antiquity with the *Perſian Sophies*: who though ill-neighboured on both ſides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the Kings of *Perſia* on the other; yet had they with great fortune, policy, and valor, maintained their *Royalties*, againſt all pretenders. But *Abas* the late *Perſian Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced *Hyrcania*, picked a quarrel with *Bahaman*: pretending that by the opportunity of his ſituation he might rob his *Caravans*, hinder his progreſs towards the *Hyrcanian* Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which riſing from Mount *Taurus* watered and enriched his *Perſian* territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected, yet it was cauſe enough of quarrel that he might ſo do: and therefore is beſieged in his Caſtle of *Ryna*, with an Army of 30000 men. Finding no poſſibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Perſians* proceeds by *treachery*: invites the old King into his Camp under colour of parley, and by his means drew his two ſonnes out of the Caſtle to the *parley* alſo. Whom having got into his power, he firſt cauſed their heads to be cut off; and after making uſe of their ſeales and ſignets, obtains a ſurrender of the place; and with it the poſſeſſion of this mountainous Kingdome, Anno 1601. or thereabouts, united ever ſince to the Crown of *Perſia*.

OF

OF TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA is bounded on the East with *Media*, and the *Caspian* Sea; on the West with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North, with *Tartary*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*; who from hence made their first expedition for the conquest of *Persia*, and after spread themselves over all those parts of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*, now in their possession. A Countrey which consisteth of four several Provinces, each province having to its self its particular story; and therefore we must look upon it as it is now divided into those four parts, that is to say, 1. *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly and specially so called. 2. *Colchis*, now called *Mengrelia*. 3. *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; and 4. *Albania*, which they now term *Zuiria*.

1. ARMENIA MAJOR.

ARMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the East with *Media*, and some part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the *lesser Asia*; on the North, with *Colchis* or *Mengrelia*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia* and some part of *Assyria*.

It was called *Armenia*, as some say *quasi Aram-Mini* or the *Minni* of *Syria*: but as others say, *quasi Har-mini*, that is to say *Mons Mini*, or *Montana Miniadis*: the *Mini* or *Minni*, being a region of this tract, mentioned by *Jeremie* the Prophet, chap. 5. ver. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Ararat* and *Askenaz*, which shew the situation of it to be hereabouts. *Major* was added to it for distinction sake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the first seat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themselves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Countrey in the most part soverspread with hills, branches of those huge mountains of *Taurus*, and *Anti-Taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful vallies, liberally furnished with Cattel, and good store of fruits, though much subject to deep snows, which do much annoy it. The Riches of it not to be better estimated than by the frankness of *Tigranes*, once King hereof. Who being fined by *Pompey* at 6000 Talents, not onely very readily laid down that summe, but added of his own accord to every *Roman* Souldier 50 *Drachmas* of Silver, 1000 *Drachmas* to each Captain, and to every *Colonel* a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added some part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdome of *Syria*, unto his estate: yet those being new Acquests, and not fully setled, were not much likely for the present, to enrich his coffers: new conquered Provinces being for the most part more chargeable than beneficial to the *Victor*.

The people are generally great bodied, of comely personage, and patient of all kind of labour; good Archers, when put to it, but careless of honour got by warre; merry, desirous to be at ease, and apt to be soothed. The women tall, but homely, of a manly look, most of them skilfull at their bow, or some other weapon. Their families for the most part great, the Father and all his posterity to the third and fourth generation living under a roof, after whose death the eldest whether Sonne or Brother hath the chiefest Rule. In diet and clothing all alike: and in most places they are said to be very industrious, painful in tillage, and well seen in *manufactures*, especially rich *tapestries*, Grograins, and watred *Chamlets*: with which they trafick into most Cities of the *Turks* and other *Mahometans*, privileged as they say, by a *Charter under Mahomets* own hand, above other *Christians*; and upon that occasion more dispersed in the Eastern Countries, than any Nation in the world, the *Jews* excepted.

They have a language of their own which they call the *Armenian*, not onely used amongst them in common talk, but in sacred offices: the Scriptures being translated into that language also, and that as the people do affirm by the hand of Saint *Chrysostome*, at such time as (on the solicitation of the Empress *Eudoxia*, his most eager enemy) he was confined to the lesser *Armenia*, by the Emperor *Arcadius*, to whom also they ascribe the invention of the *Armenian Characters*, or letters, still in use amongst them.

They received the *Christian* faith by the preaching of Saint *Bartholmew*, and were antiently of the jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick Diocese*, which together with the *Asian Diocese*, and that of *Thrace*, were by the *Council* of *Chalcedon* laid unto that *Patriarchate*. But falling into the opinions of *Eutyches* touching one nature onely in CHRIST our Saviour, they withdrew themselves long since, from the communion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater detestation than all other *Christians*; and those two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other opinions which they hold besides those of *Eutyches*, which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* sense, and those wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1. Denying *Purgatory*, and prayers for the dead

dead. 2. Admitting none to be made *Prieſts* except thoſe that be maried. 3. Denying the body of Chriſt to be really under the *ſpecies* of bread and wine; and 4. *Rebaptizing* ſuch as come to their *Communion* from the *Latine* Churches; are theſe that follow: in which they differ alſo from moſt Churches elſe, viz. in receiving *Infants* to the *Lords Table*, immediately after *Baptiſm*. 2. In abſtaining from *unclean* beaſts. 3. In faſting on *Chriſt-maſs* day; and 4. In holding their children over the fire, as a neceſſary circumſtance in *Baptiſm*, becauſe *John the Baptiſt* told the people which followed him, that CHRIST ſhould baptize them with the *Holy Ghoſt, and with fire*; in which place he meaneth not *materiall fire*, but the lively purgation of the *Holy Ghoſt*, according to the nature of fire. The Church of this ſect is Governed by two *Patriarchs*, whereof the one hath under his juriſdiction this *Turcomania*; comprehending 150000 Families, beſides very many *Monaſteries*: and the other hath under him the two Provinces of *Armenia* the leſſer, and *Cilicia*, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts. The firſt reſiding antiently in *Sebaſtia*, the *Metropolis* of the greater *Armenia*; the ſecond originally at *Melitene*, the *Metropolis* of *Armenia Minor*, but of late at *Sis*, a ſmall City, not farre from *Tarſus* in *Cilicia*. Both honoured with the title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of 30. Biſhops.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Araxes*, which riſing out of Mount *Abos*, an *Armenian* Mountain, firſt runneth Eaſtward as farre as *Media*, and then bendeth it ſelf towards the *North*, and after a long courſe is divided into two Branches; whereof the one falleth into the *Caſpian* Sea, the other into, 2. *Cyrus*, another great River of this Countrey. The fountain of this laſt in Mount *Caucaſus* in the furtheſt North of *Turcomania*; and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with 3. *Cambyſes*, another great River of theſe parts; and ſo together haſten to the *Caſpian* alſo. 4. *Euphrates*, by the *Turks* called *Frat*, by the *Hebrews*, *Perah*, famous in Scripture for its watering the garden of *Eden*, hath its fountain in the hills which they call *Niphates*, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. A River of great length and ſwiftneſs. For having forced it ſelf a paſſage through the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runneth in the Weſt of *Meſopotamia*, with a ſtream ſo violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* or *Birra*, a Town on the North-Weſt of *Meſopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdat*, are fain to come back again by land, ſelling thoſe Boats for eight crowns which they bought for 50. At *Apamia*, a City of *Chaldæa* it is joyned with *Tigris*, with which the greateſt branch of it paſſeth thorow the City of *Babylon*, and ſo into the *Perſian* Gulf: the reſt of it being cut into many *Channels*, for fear it ſhould overflow and drown the Countrey, are quite loſt in the *Lakes* of *Chaldæa*. 5. *Tigris*, a ſwifter ſtream than that, whence it had the name; the word in the *Median* tongue ſignifying an *Arrow*. A River of ſo ſtrong a courſe, that it paſſeth thorow the Lake *Thonitis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth the *Armenians* an eaſie paſſage to *Bagdat*: who on a few *Rafts* born up with *Goat-skins* blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their voyage thither. It is called *Heddekel* in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the garden of *Paradiſe*; ſituate in an Iland made by the imbracement of this River and *Euphrates*, with their ſeveral Branches. Riſing originally out of the Lake of *Thelpitis*, in *Armenia Major*, where now we are; it is preſently almoſt ſwallowed by the gaping Earth; and paſſing under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compaſſing the Eaſt parts of *Meſopotamia*, which it divides from *Aſſyria*; meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its firſt and ſecond birth, thus the Poet *Lucan*.

At Tigrin *ſubito tellus abſorbet hiatu,*
Occultoſq; tegit curſus; rurſuſq; renatum
Fonte novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.

That is to ſay.

Tigris, ſoon ſwallowed by the thirſty earth,
Finds there a buriall where it had its birth:
But breaking out at a new ſpring, vouchſafes
With the Salt Sea as to mixt it ſweeter waves.

Mountains of moſt note, are, 1. *Abos*, glorying in the fountains of the great River *Araxes*. 2. *Periardes*, or *Periarges* as *Ptolomy*, *Pariedri*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a branch or ſpurre of the great mountain *Taurus*. 3. *Udaceſpes*, another branch of that great Mountain. 4. Some part of *Anti-Taurus*. 5. The Mountains called *Montes Moſchici*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea: which name they took from *Meſech*, or *Moſoch* the ſonne of *Japhet*, preſerving the remembrance of his planting there. 6. *Niphates*, one of the ſpurres of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is ſaid to iſſue. 7. The *Gordiæan* Mountains, conceived by many learned men to be the mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops whereof called *Baris*, the Ark of *Noah* is moſt generally affirmed to reſt. Affirmed by many antient writers of the Chriſtian Church, and countenanced not onely by *Joſephus* and ſome others of the Elder Hiſtorians; but by the *Septuagint* themſelves: who in the 37 chap. of *Eſay* v. 38. and 2 *Kings* 19. 37. have rendred *Ararat* by *Armenia*. And be it ſo, let *Ararat* be *Armenia*, and conſequently the mountains of *Ararat* be *Armenian* Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark reſted on the *Gordiæan* mountains, or any others of this Countrey, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logically*, for ought I can ſee, that the Garden of *Eden* muſt be looked for in *Armenia* alſo; becauſe ſituate in the circlings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two *Armenian* Rivers. Thoſe Rivers have indeed their fountains in *Armenia Major*, but compaſs not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long courſe they encounter each other in the ſpacious plains of *Babylonia*. And ſo thoſe mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, becauſe there firſt grown to a diſcernable and ſuper-eminent height above all the mountains of thoſe parts: became not the reſting place of the Ark, till after a further courſe towards the Eaſt, they were grown to their fulleſt height; which

is

is in those parts of it betwixt *Scythia*, and *Persia*, which are called Mount *Caucasus*: not that Mount *Caucasus*, which lieth on the North of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrus* is said to rise; but that which lieth on the East-side of the *Caspian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do cross each other. But of this elsewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the principall whereof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordiæan* Mountains, called in some writers *Cordiæi*, from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiene*, but most commonly called *Corduene*, bordering on *Assyria*. The Kingdome once of *Zarbienus*, who siding with *Lucullus* against *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* murdered with his wife and Children; but honoured by *Lucullus* with a stately and magnificent funeral. 2. The 2d. Province of note is called *Cotacene*, neer the *Montes Moschici*. 3. *Tosarene* bordering on the River *Cyrus*. 4. *Colthene* on the banks of *Araxes*. 5. *Sophene*, neer the turnings of the River *Euphrates*; mistook by some industrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6. *Basisine*, on the North-West, neer the springs of that River. But what Cities did belong to each, I find no where specified

Those of most consequence in the whole, 1. *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Caput Gentis*: of most esteem in those times, and the Seat-royall of the Kings of *Armenia* from its first foundation. Built by *Artaxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the perswasion of *Annibal*, whilest he abode in this Countrey: who liking the situation of the place, drew on it the model of a strong and gallant City, according to which Plat-form it was presently built. Taken and sacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*, it never could revive again to its former splendour: in the middle ages called *Esckia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coim*; if not built rather out of the ruines of it. A City memorable for two great battells neer unto it; the first between *Lucullus* on the one side, against *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were victors: the second between *Selimus* Emperor of the *Turks*, and *Hysmael* the *Persian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were conquerors, *Anno* 1514. A victory which he bought with the loss of 30000 of his best men, and such a terrour to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it, the only day of doom. The fields adjoining to the Town wherein this cruel battel was fought, called the *Chalderan fields*. 2. *Sebastia*, now *Suassia*, seated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the *Mountain Taurus*, the residence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their first separation from the See of *Constantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: so named in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebastos*. But of late divested of that dignity, the *Patriarchall* See, by reason of the fierce wars raging in this Countrey betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monastery of *Ecmeazin*, neer the City of *Ervan* in *Persia*, in the dominions of which King these *Armenian Christians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Jelphelins*. 3. *Tigranocerta*, beautified and inlarged, if not first founded, by *Tigranes* above-mentioned, by whom repleniished with people of severall Nations, whose Countries he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdome: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Paisant, who sent not somewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great resistance, those severall Nations not agreeing amongst themselves: and therein besides other Treasure, no less than 8000 Talents in ready money. The City situate neer a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Nicesorius*. 4. *Arsamosata*, by *Pliny* called *Arsimote*, on the banks of *Euphrates*. 5. *Cholna*, so called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul* the sonne of *Aram*, one of the first Planters of this Countrey, 6. *Baraza*, by the Emperor *Leo* much enlarged and beautified, dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*; and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7. *Arsirata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*. 8. *Theodosiopolis*, built on the foundation of some of the more antient Cities, by the Emperor *Theodosius*, and of him thus named. 9 *Colonia*, the strongest and most defensible City hereof, when possessed by the *Romans*. 10. *Clumassun*, a strong Town on the banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the first in his way towards *Persia*, and therewith *livery* and *seisin* of the rest of this Countrey, since wholly conquered by his Successors. 12. *Chars*, not far from the same River also, supposed to be the *Chorsa* of *Ptolomy*, of which not long since the ruins onely; but in three weeks so repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, Anno 1579. that it is thought to be impregnable. 13. *Thespia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Thespitis*, and to the Region called *Thespites*; but now not in being. 14. *Arminig*, now of greatest name, and esteemed the *Metropolis* of this Countrie: situate in that part of the Lake of *Vastan* (the *Martiana palus* of the antient writers) which lieth next to this Countrey; and by that well fortified; the onely City of *Armenia* possessed by the *Persians*, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 15. *Van*, both for natural situation, and the works of art, accompted by the *Turks* for their strongest Bulwark in these parts against the *Persians*; and for that cause well garrisoned, and as well munitioned.

This Countrey was first planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the sonne of *Aram*, and by *Mesech* one of the sonnes of *Japhet*, who with their families or Colonies possessed the same: the one leaving the remainder of his name in the *Montes Moschici*; the other in the Town called *Cholna* and the Region called *Colthene* by *Ptolomy*, *Cholobatene* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdome assoon as any, that of *Babel* excepted, *Ninus* the third from *Nimrod* finding *Barzanes* King hereof, whom he forced to acknowledge his superiority, and to aid him in his warres against *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*. Kings of most note in times succeeding, for we have no constant Catalogue of them, were 1. *Araxes*, who being warred on by the *Persians*, was promised victory by the *Oracle*, on the sacrifice of his two fair daughters. Willing to satisfie the Gods, and yet spare his children, he sacrificed two of the daughters of *Mesalcus*, a noble man of this Countrey, by whom in revenge hereof his own daughters were slain, and himself so closely followed, that swiming the River then called *Helmus*, he was therein drowned, and thereby

gave

gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2. *Artaxa*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; ſpoken of before. 3. *Tigranes*, the moſt mightie King that ever reigned in *Armenia*, to which he added by his proweſs *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia* in *Aſia Minor*, the whole Countreys of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phœnicia*. But ſiding with *Mithridates*, whoſe daughter he had maryed, againſt the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrown in two grea: battels, and outed of the greateſt part of his dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had ſucceeded *Lucullus* in command of the Army, and truſting more unto his goodneſs than a wiſeman would, he put himſelf into his power: by whom condemned in a great ſum of money for the charge of the war, and ſtripped of all the reſt of his eſtates; he was ſuffered to enjoy *Armenia Maior*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sophene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* lefe unto it ſelf, and the leſſer *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sonnes, who being found guilty of ſome practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carryed Priſoner unto *Rome*, and his Countrey brought into the form of a Province. 4. *Artavaſdes*, circumvented by *Mar. Antonie*, who led him Priſoner to *Rome*, but (*catenis, ne quid honori ejus deeſſet, aureis*, as the Hiſtorian tells us of him) it was in chaines of Gold for his greater honour; giving *Armenia* to one of the ſonnes of *Cleopatra*. And though 5. *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdome, yet he and his Succeſſors held it but as Vaſſals of the *Roman* Empire: the Senate after that confirming and ſometimes nominating the *Armenian* Kings. Continuing in this eſtate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province, (made after that a part of the *Pontick Dioceſe*) who adding *Meſopotamia* alſo unto his dominions, make *Tigris* the Eaſtern border of his Empire, which *Auguſtus* thought fit to limit with the banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajans* time, in the reign of *Conſtantius*, *Julian*, and the Emperors following; whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Juſtinian* the ſecond (he began his Empire *Anno* 687.) when ſubdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperour, but ſoon loſt again, it continued ſubject to the *Saracens*, till the breaking in of the *Turks*, *Anno* 844. of whom more anon. The greateſt part of the *Turks* emptying themſelves into *Perſia*, and other Countreys which they took from the Eaſtern Emperors, the Chriſtians of *Armenia* began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom governed, till again ſubdued by *Occadan*, or *Hoccata* ſonne of *Cingis*, the firſt *Cham* of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make ſo abſolute a conqueſt of it as to extinguiſh either Chriſtianity, or the race of the Kings: *Haithon*, ſurnamed *Armenius*, reigning after this, and going in perſon to *Mangu*, the great *Cham* of *Tartarie*, *Anno* 1257. And in our own *Chronicles*, in the reign of King *Richard* the ſecond, we find mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian* King, who came hither to ſue for aid againſt the *Turks*, by whom then diſpoſſeſſed of his eſtates. By *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, one of the Princes of this Countrey, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1472. it was made a Province of that Kingdome: and ſo continued till the year 1515. when conquered by *Selimus* the firſt, and by him made a part of the *Turkiſh* Empire; more fully ſetled and aſſured in the reign of *Amurath* the third, who by cauſing many Forts and Garriſons to be planted in it, made the conqueſt abſolute.

The Armes of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, governed by Princes of its own of the Chriſtian faith, were *Gules*, 3 heads of a Buck *Argent*, Crowned *Or*.

2. COLCHIS.

COLCHIS is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Iberia*; on the Weſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Tartars Precopenſes*; on the North, with *Tartarie*, from which parted by thoſe vaſt hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucaſi*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which ſeparated by the *Montes Moſchici*.

The reaſon of the name I find not. Nor can yield unto *Bochartus*, who fetcheth the original of the name and Nation, from *Cuſluhim*, one of the ſonnes of *Mizraim*, the ſonne of *Cham*: the *Etymology* of the name being too much wreſted, and *Egypt* too farr off to give a being to *Colchis* in thoſe early dates: though poſſibly in times ſucceeding, the *Ægyptians* hearing by the *Greeks* of the wealth of the Countrey, might ſend Colonies of their people thither, as to other places. It is now called *Mengrelia*.

The Countrey ſaid to be very fruitful if the care of the husbandman were not wanting. Their vines they plant at the feet of great trees, which twining about the armes thereof lade them full of Grapes: with which, and other fruits riſing from the Earth, they uſed of late times to furniſh the Store-houſes of their Kings, for want of ready money to fill his Coffers; their tributes being paid in ſuch commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of gold found in the ſands of their Rivers iſſuing from the *Caucaſian* Mountains. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*; χρυσοφορῶσι δ ἐν τῷ Καυκάσῳ πολλαὶ πηγαι ψῆγμα ἀφαλὲς, Many of their ſprings ſaith he, which come out of *Caucaſus*, carry veins of Gold. The like ſaith *Strabo* alſo, and ſome other Antients. With which, and out of their rich Mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings hereof were ſo well furniſhed with thoſe metals, that the furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now ſo deſtitute of both, that the people for want of money to buy and ſell with, are inforced to barter their commodities, and change one for another.

The people at the preſent very rude and barbarous; ſo inhumane and voide of naturall affection, that they ſell their children to the *Turks*. The better ſort of them much given to belly-cheer, dancing and ſinging looſe ſonnets of love and daliance; uſing much wine in their intertainments, which the more their Gueſts drink, the better welcome; inflamed wherewith they offer them for a cooler their wives or Siſters, with

charge to yield them all content, esteeming it no small credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the women much averse from the entertainment, whether to please themselves or obey their husbands, let them tell that can.

The *Christian* faith was first here planted in the time of the Emperour *Justinus*, by whose perswasion *Taurus* Prince of the *Colchi*, then at the Court in *Constantinople*, became a Christian, and being baptized, was returned back into his Countrey, with the title of King. But *Cabades* the King of *Persia* much offended at it, proclamed war against him: which hindred the further progress of the Gospell, till the year 860. About which time *Methodius* and *Cyrill*, two reverend men, were by the Patriarch of *Constantinople* employed in this service; which they successfully effected: in that regard they hold to the communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the jurisdiction of that Patriarch. To whom conform in most dogmaticall points of their Religion, and in many practicall. And though they have a distinct language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate their Divine Offices in the *Greek* tongue, and follow the *Rituals* of that Church; which few of them understand any better than the *Vulgar Papists* of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany*, do the *Latine* service. Whether it be that they have no learned men amongst them, either to translate their old *Liturgie*, or to compose a new, or that they hold tall alterations in Religion to be matters of danger; or that ignorance is the best mother of devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The chief Rivers of this Countrey, are, 1. *Hippus*, 2. *Cyaneus*, 3. *Charistus*, all rising out of the *Caucasian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*. 4. *Phasis*, the principall of all, rising out of the *Montes Moschici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there called *Boas*. Navigable with smaller vessels a great way up into the Countrey, and with great ships 18 miles from the Sea. Memorable amongst the Antients for the landing of the *Argonautes*, in the mouth thereof; and those delicate fowl called from hence *Phasides*, or *Phasiani*, (*Pheasants*,) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this expedition of the *Argonautes*, being the most remarkable action in those elder ages of the world, when Piracy and depredations were accounted for *Heroical* vertues: it was no other than the adventure of some noble *Grecians*, for the gold of *Cholchos*. The Age wherein it hapned was about the 11 year of *Gideon* the Judge of *Israel*. The chief Adventurers, *Jason*, *Orpheus* the famous Poet, *Castor* and *Pollux* the Sonnes of *Tindarus*, *Telamon* and *Peleus* the Sonnes of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*; *Laertes* the Father of *Ulysses*, *Amphiaraus* the Sooth-sayer, *Hercules*, *Theseus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. These moved with the great noise of the wealth of *Colchos*, and the riches of King *Ætus*, then therein reigning, resolved upon a voyage thither, embarked in a ship called *Argos* (whence the name of *Argonautes*) whereof one *Typhis* was chief Pilot. Passing the *Hellespont*, *Propontick*, and *Thracian Bosphorus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea: and after many difficulties and strange Adventures (which such *Knights Errants* could not chuse but encounter with) they landed in the River *Phasis*, and came to the Kings Coutt, and there were kindly entertained. But finding the Kings Treasures to be too well guarded to be took by force (said by the Poets to be kept by a *Dragon* alwaies waking) they practised with *Medea*, the daughter of *Ætes*, to assist them in robbing her Father. Who being in love with *Jason*, on promise of mariage with him, assented to it: by whose Artifices (which the Poets call *Magicall* charmes) the *Guardians* being circumvented, and the treasure gotten, they all, together with *Medea*, imbarked again, and after a long and dangerous voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the substance of the Story; which being the greatest and most notable voyage which the *Grecians* in those early daies had undertaken, occasioned the Poets to advance it to the highest pitch, and to disguise it with many fictions, and ingenious fancies. But not without some ground entituled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the design). For the Rivers, as before was said, having Golden sands, which fell down from the mountains, (as in many other parts of the world they are found to have) it was the custome of the people to lay many Fleeces of wooll in the descent of those Rivers, in which the grains of Gold remained, though the water passed through, which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true.

But leaving these *Adventurers* to pursue their fortunes, let us go forward to survey the *Colchian* Cities; the principall whereof, 1. *Dioscurias*, a Town of great wealth and trade, founded by *Amphitus*, and *Telchius* two *Spartans*, the Charioters of *Castor* and *Pollux*, (and so named in honour of their Masters, whom the *Greeks* call Διόσκουροι) which two *Spartans* passing further East, were afterwards the founders of the Nation from them called *Heniochi*, or the Chariot-drivers. A Town of such resort by Merchants from most parts of the world, that here were spoken 300 different languages; insomuch that the *Romans* (as *Pliny* saith) were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters, for dispatch of business, and negotiating with those Merchants. 2. *Sybaris*, the seat-Royal of the *Colchian* Kings, about nine miles from which was the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonauts*. 3. *Siganeam*, neer the mouth of the River *Cyaneus*; as is also, 4. *Æa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Æapolis*, an *Ægyptian* Colony, planted there by *Sesostris* (in the time of *Rehoboam* the Sonne of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted but without success the conquest of *Colchis*. 5. *Neapolis*, so called from the newness or late foundation of it, when that name was given. 6. *Phasis*, so called from the River, upon which it is situate, retaining both the site and name to this very day: the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom called *Phassum*. 7. *Alvati*, a well fortified place. More in the land are placed by *Ptolomy*, 8. *Mechlessus*, 9. *Sarace*, 10. *Zadris*, 11. *Surium*; *&c.* not much observable.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey most probably came of out of the neighbouring *Armenia*, and there-

therefore the posterity of *Hul* or *Chul*, from whence perhaps the name of *Colchis*: to whom in tract of time, some Colonies out of *Ægypt* (a seafaring people) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth hereof, did adjoin themselves; the *Colchians* on that ground, (or from some part of his Army left there by *Sesostris*) being said by *Ammianus Marcellinus* to be the antient off-spring of the *Ægyptians*. The most antient of their Kings was *Ætes* spoken of before: who entertaining *Phryxus* flying out of *Greece* from the fury of his stepdame *Ino*, with great store of treasure, occasioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of *Colchos*, disguised under the fiction of the *Golden Fleece*. Of most note after him, *Selauces*, and *Esubops*, who first discovered the rich mines of Gold and silver, of which metals they made all their *Utensils*, even the beams of their Chambers. The fame whereof drew thither *Sesostris* the great King of *Ægypt*, who being vanquished in the field was fain to lay aside all those hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Ægypt* in worse state than he came; but that he left behind him an *Ægyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*; which after occasioned others of that Countrey to repair hither also. Living in peace and unmolested from this time forwards, they were unhappily ingaged by *Tigranes* of *Armenia*, to side with him against the *Romans*; and in his overthrow gave such advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of *Colchis* was fain to submit himself to *Pompey*, to dismiss his forces, leave his fastnesses, and finally to redeem his peace, by sending to him a Bedstead of purest Gold, and many other rich presents. After this, the *Romans* had here their Agens, and received hence some annuall profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Distressed between the *Persians* and *Constantinopolitans*, they had much ado to stand upright; though betwixt both they kept themselves in a kind of liberty: as of late times, betwixt the *Persians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, their too potent Neigbours. But at the last *Anno* 1579. *Amurath* the third, to make the safer passage for his forces in *Georgia*, sent *Uluzales* his Admiral with a great Fleet into the *Euxine* Sea, who comming up the River *Phasis* took the City of *Fassum*, fortified it, and laid so certain a foundation of a future conquest; that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demolish some of his fortifications, yet they were afterwards repaired, and *Fassum* made the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, as it still continueth.

3. *IBERIA.*

IBERIA is bounded on the East, with *Albania*; on the West, with *Colchis*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; and one the South, with the *Montes Moschici*: by the first mountains parted from *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and by the last from *Armenia Maior*.

It was so called from the River *Iberus*, which running thorow it, falleth at last into the more noted River *Cyrus*: but is now called *Georgia*, and that as some say from Saint *George* the *Cappadocian Martyr*, whom here they have in very great reverence, as their tutelary Saint and Patron: as others say, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Bishop, by whose preaching they were brought unto *Christianity*; and some again will have them called properly *Gordiaans*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their neer neighbourhood to those mountains. But the most probable opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongst other of the *Caspian* nations. Though to say truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth somewhat further than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending also that part of *Armenia Major* which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Countrey of *Albania*, if I guess aright.

The Countrey for the greatest part, is covered with Mountains, woods, and thickets, and in that regard unconquerable for the difficulty of the mountainous passages; yet notwithstanding it is very fruitfull in many places, having many fertile plains, and wealthy vallies; well watered, and of great increase to the husbandman, if he be not wanting to himself in care and industry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written, that they were a very warlike nation, and used to set as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had slain Enemies in his life: as also that those of the same Tribe or family had all things common; he being the Ruler which was eldest: and that some of them did derive themselves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cause never marying out of their own kindred. The present *Georgians* very warlike, strong of bodie, and valorous in fight; for a long time defended themselves and Countrey from the *Turks* and *Persians*, with great prudence making use of the one against the other. But overpowred by the vast multitude of *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have lost many of their best Forts, and much of their liberty.

The Christian faith was first here planted in the time of *Constantine* the *Great*, by means of a Christian captive women (such extraordinary waies doth God find out to promote his Gospell): who being of a most devout life, and exemplary piety, had by her prayers to *CHRIST* restored a young child to health which was thought past cure; and healed the Queen hereof of a desperate maladie, when no help of *Physick* would prevail. Whereupon the King sent Ambassadours to *Constantine*, desiring Ministers and Preachers to be sent to *Iberia*, to instruct the people in the faith: which was done accordingly. Since that time, Christianity hath flourished in this Countrey without interruption; though by *Mahometans*, and *Pagans*, on all sides encompassed: agreeable in doctrinal points to the Church of *Greece*, whose *Rituals* also the *People* do to this day follow. Not subject for all that to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own *Metropolitan* onely; who hath under him about 18 Bishops, and resideth for the most part in Saint *Catharines* Monastery on Mount *Sinai*. By means of which remote dwelling of their principall Pastor, *Mahometanism* hath got some footing, and *Jesuitism* began to creep in amongst them. The occasion of which last was this.

About the year 1614. the *Persians* making an inrode into this Countrey, took the City of *Cremer*, and therein *Cetaba*, the mother of Prince *Teimurazes*, whom leading her captive into *Persia*, and not able to

prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they moſt cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jeſuites* then travelling in thoſe Countreys, and willing out of that ſad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholique cauſe, cut off the head of a dead man whom they found in the way, anoined it with oyl and odours, brought it into *Georgia*, and ſignified unto the Prince, that they had with them the head of the bleſſed Martyr *Cetaba*, deſiring leave to live in ſome Monaſtery, and have the keeping of the holy *Relique* committed to them. This eaſily believed, and granted, the head was placed with great honour in the Church of Saint *George* at *Aberdall*; much reſort to it from all parts by diſeaſed perſons: whom if paſt cure, the *Jeſuites* ſent home again, preſcribing them in the way of preparation a long time of repentance; if curable by outward means which they applyed, the cure was preſently aſcribed to the holy *Relique*. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Proſelytes* to themſelves; and had no ſmall hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimurazes* to ſubmit himſelf to the Pope, as the *Vicar of CHRIST*. When in the heat of all their glories, a letter cometh from *Maacla*, a Lady attendant on the Princeſs, (but then living in *Perſia*, as a ſlave or bond-maid) ſignifying that her Maſter by her perſwaſion, had got into his power the body of his mother *Cetaba*; which he might ranſome if he pleaſed; two Travellers withall, who came out of *Perſia* with the *Jeſuites*, reporting what they ſee them do with the dead mans head. By which means the *Impoſture* being diſcovered, the body of the Queen was ſent for, the falſe *Relique* was caſt out of the Church, and the falſer *Jeſuites* into priſon, and next out of the Countrey.

Rivers of note I find not any, either in *Ptolomy* or any of our modern writers, but what are touched upon before, except onely the River of *Iberus* ſpoken of before, from which the Countrey is thus named. The whole in general ſo deſtitute of waters, that *Pompey* in his march this way againſt the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 bladders filled with water for the uſe of his Army.

Places of moſt antiquity and importance in it, 1. *Artaxiſſa*, 2. *Vaſada*, 3. *Lubium*, 4. *Armaſtica*, all named by *Ptolomy*; this laſt by *Pliny* called *Harmaſtis*. 5. *Cremen*, the chief City now poſſeſſed by the *Georgians*. 6. *Cachete*, honoured with a fair Church, the moſt beautifull of all the Countrey, dedicated by the name of Saint *George*. 7. *Triala*, where are to be ſeen the ruins of a large City, and many Churches; by what name antiently called, I find not. 8. *Altuncala*, or the *Golden Caſtle*, a ſtrong fortreſs, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Georgian* Princes, ſince the time of the wars betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*. 9. *Archichelech*, a ſtrong Caſtle taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* in his wars againſt *Tamas* King of *Perſia*, and ever ſince holden by the *Turks*. 10. *Teflis*, a large and capacious Town, forſaken by the *Georgians* at the coming of *Muſtapha*, Generall of *Amurath* the third againſt the *Perſians*: who liking the ſituation of it, cauſed it to be repaired and fortified, planted thereon an hundred peeces of Ordinance, and left therein a Garriſon of 6000 Souldiers. 11. *Lori*, diſtant from *Teflis* about two daies journey of a Carriers pace, ſtrengthned with a lofty Caſtle, environed with deep ditches, and a thick wall, amounting to a mile in compaſs. Seiſed on by *Ferat Baſſa*, the Succeſſour of *Muſtapha*, who repaired the walls, planted thereon 200 ſmall peeces of Ordinance, and garriſoned it with 7000 *Turks* for defence thereof. 12. *Tomanis*, a ſhort daies march from *Lori*, the Countrey lying betwixt both full of rich fields and paſtures, abounding with corn, fruit, and cattel. Nigh unto which the ſaid *Ferat* raiſed a new Fortreſs for the better command of the Streights and paſſages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and ſo to *Teflis* (the Key of *Media* or *Sirvan*) the wall whereof being 1700 yards in compaſs, he cauſed to be planted with 200 peeces of Artillery; and with incredible diligence cut down a thick wood which lay before it; and otherwiſe would have been a receptacle of theeves, or Enemies. 13. *Gliſca*, 14. *Baſcapan*, *&c.* poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Turks* to make good their footing in this Conntrey. But poſſibly moſt of theſe ſtrong holds now poſſeſſed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, though within the Countrey of the *Georgians*, that name not being limited to *Iberia*, as was ſaid before.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were ſuch who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the ſonne of *Japhet*, from whom this people at the firſt, as *Joſephus* hath it, had the name of *Thobeli*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the nations in it of moſt note were the *Tibareni*, *Moſſynœci*, *Chalybes*, and of leſs efteem the *Biſeries*, *Sapires*, *Macrones*, *&c.* united at the laſt in the name of *Iberi*, from the River *Iberus*, of which *Pliny* ſpeaketh, the principall of all this Countrey. Too fruitfull of increaſe for ſo narrow a dwelling, ſome of them put themſelves to ſeek their fortunes, where after long wandring they fell upon the Coaſt of *Spain* next the *Pyrenees*, where they ſtaid themſelves, giving the name of *Iberus* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Countrey. Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid againſt the *Romans*, they came in accordingly: and in his fall diſcomfited by *Lucullus* in three ſeverall battells, were fain to ſtand upon their guard as well as they could: firſt holding fair with *Pompey* who ſucceeded *Lucullus* in his charge. But breaking out again on a new temptation, they were incountred by him. In which battel 9000 of their men being ſlain and 10000 taken, they were conſtrained to ſue for peace, not otherwiſe to be obtained till *Artaces* the King of theſe *Iberians*, gave his ſonnes for Pledges. After this *Feudataries* to the *Roman* and *Grecian* Emperours, till the fatall inundation of the *Saracens* had ſo weakned that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledged no more ſubjection to thoſe of *Conſtantinople*, till *Conſtantinople* it ſelf became the Imperiall ſeat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whoſe quarrels with the *Perſian Sophies*, this Countrey began to ſuffer a new invaſion: ſome Towns and Forts of it being taken by *Solyman*, in his march or paſſage againſt *Tauris*. Afterwards in the time of *Amurath* the third, who ſet his mind moſt eagerly on the warre with *Perſia*, a great part of it was ſubdued by *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh Generall*: who inviting the widow Princeſs and her two ſonnes to come to his tent, ſent the young Princes to *Conſtantinople*, and by that means had opportunity to affiue

his

his purchaſes. And though the *Perſians* did their beſt to aſſiſt the *Georgians*, yet proved they but a kind of miſerable comforters; as much puniſhing or plaguing this poor Countrey with their aides, as the *Turks* by their armies. So that now it ſtands divided betwixt the *Grand Signeur* and its naturall Princes: the *Georgian* Princes holding the greateſt part, but the *Turks* being in poſſeſſion of the ſtrongeſt holds; kept by them under colour of ſecuring their way to *Perſia*, for which this Countrey is indeed but unhappily ſeated.

4. *ALBANIA.*

ALBANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Caſpian* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Iberia*; on the North, with the *Caucaſian* Mountains; on the South, with the *Moſchici*. So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it; and of late called *Sairia*; but reckoned in theſe laſt ages as a part of *Georgia*.

The Countrey of ſo rich a ſoil, that without the leaſt labour of the husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her ſtore, and where it is but once ſown, will yield two or three reapings. But being ill husbands on it in former times, they occaſioned *Strabo* to give them this note for a remembrance, That they *needed not the uſe of the Sea, who knew no better how to make uſe of the Land.* The people antiently ſo ſimple that they could not reckon above an hundred; ignorant of weights, meaſures, and the uſe of money. Old age they had in high eſteem, but held it utterly unlawfull to make ſpeech of the dead. And of theſe *Pliny* doth report that they were gray-headed from their very youth, and could ſee as well by night as by day; the verity of which laſt may be ſomewhat queſtionable. But withall they are affirmed to have been a ſtout and couragious people, ſtrong bodies, patient of toil and labour, as they are at this day. And well the men may be couragious and ſtout, where the women are ſo truely maſculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted credit, that they were excerciſed in Armes and martiall feats, as if deſcended lineally from the antient *Amazons*; whom *Plutarch* placeth in this tract, reporting ſome of them to be aiding to theſe *Albanians* in their war with *Pompey*: which poſſibly might be no other than ſome the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principall Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Soana*, giving name to the *Soani*, one of the Nations of theſe parts mentioned by *Pliny*. 2. *Caſius*, 3. *Gerrus*, 4. *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albani* came unto this people. 5. *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrnus*) ſpoken of in *Armenia Major*, but more properly belonging to this Countrey, becauſe herein it hath its ſpring, and the greateſt part of its courſe alſo. For riſing out of the Mountain *Caucaſus*, which ſhuts up this Province on the North, it paſſeth thorow the middeſt of it, till it come to the borders of *Armenia*, where it beginneth to bend more towards the Eaſt: and having received into its Channel all the former Rivers, beſides many others of leſs note, falleth with twelve mouths into the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Mountaines of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations; the *Montes Moſchici* on the South, and *Caucaſus* upon the North, being rather common boundaries betwixt ſeverall nations, than peculiar unto any one; though from the laſt the *Iberians*, and theſe *Albanians*, be in ſome writers called *Caucaſia Gentes*.

Cities and Towns I find many in it, but little of them more than their very names. 1. *Chabala*, by *Pliny* called *Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Inſignior Albana urbs*, the moſt noted City of this Countrey. 2. *Albana*, ſo called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was ſeated. 3. *Teleba*, 4. *Namechia*, 5. *Thelbis*, 6. *Getarra*, neer unto the influx of the River *Cyrus*. How theſe are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to ſay. The chief now being, and worthy to be ſo accounted, is the City of *Derbent*, ſituate neer the *Caſpian* Sea, from which to *Teſſis* a City ſpoken of before, remain the foundations of a high and thick wall, affirmed to have been built by *Alexander* the *Great*, to defend theſe parts againſt the irruptions of the Northen unconquered nations. The Town environed with two walls, and ſo defended by difficult and narrow paſſages of the rocks, that it is not eaſily acceſſible: but taken for all that by *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh* General, *Anno* 1587 and made the ordinary reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*. Conceived to be the *Caucaſia Porta* of the Antients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the title of *ingens naturæ miraculum*: by *Egeſippus* for the ſtrength of it called *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which by the *Turks* called *Demir-can*, the word ſignifying in their language, a *gate of iron*. The other places of this tract are either of no accompt and eſtimation, or elſe are ſpecified before amongſt the Cities and good Towns of the *Georgians*, of whoſe Country this is now a part: yet we may add 2. *Subran*, upon the borders of *Media*. 3. *Santa Maria*, north of *Derbent*; both of them on, or neer the banks of the *Caſpian* Sea.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Countrey, ſeem to have been of the plantation of *Gether* the Sonne of *Aram*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whoſe memory was long preſerved in the City of *Getara* before-mentioned; So called by him or ſome of his poſterity in remembrance of him. The People living ſomewhat out of the common road, were little troubled with Invaders from forreign parts; neither the *Perſians* nor *Macedonians* looking ſo far North. Nor poſſibly had the *Romans* taken notice of them, had they not ingaged themſelves with *Tigranes* firſt, and afterwards with *Mithridates*. Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000, and well beaten by him, they were content to ſue for peace. But finding that the *Iberians* alſo had took up Arms, they ingaged again, leavying an Army of 12000 horſe and 50000 foot, in which *Oroezes* their King, with his brother *Coſis*, were in perſon preſent. And though they had made good the banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the moſt part only with skins of beaſts, they made but ſmall reſiſtance againſt the *Romans*; notwithſtanding the gallant charge of *Coſis*, who aſſaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour ſo be ſlain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving pledges

unto *Pompey* for their good behaviour, we find little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the time of *Trajan*. Who having conquered and reduced *Armenia Major* to the form of a Province, resolved to shew his power to these neighbouring nations: and to that end imposed a King on the *Albani* of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, do their homage to him. In times succeeding no news of them; either because remote from the stage of Action, or serving under the command of some greater nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered by *Occadan*, or *Hoccata* the Cham of *Tartarie*, together with *Iberia*, and *Armenia*, they were a while subject to that Empire: and passing in succeeding times by the name of *Georgians*, partook of the same fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turk*, who by reason of the strong footing which he hath gotten amongst them, is become a dreadful neighbour to them, if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief.

Thus having taken a survey of all the Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire both in *Europe* and *Asia*, and touched upon the means by which they are possessed of *Ægypt*, whereunto all the rest of their hold in *Africk*, serves but for an accessory; we will now look upon the story of this people, their first originall, the great success of their affairs, the Princes under whose command they have made these conquests. Which having done, we will proceed to a Description of the Persons, Manners, and Conditions of the *Turks* themselves, their power and policy, with other things considerable in so great an Empire.

And first for the original of the *Turkish* Nation, they were most probably the Descendants of those *Turcæ*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the fennes of *Mæotis*. Of whom thus *Mela*, speaking of the *Gelani* a *Scythian* people. *Juxta* Thyrsagetæ Turcæque *vastas sylvas occupant, aluntque venando, &c.* Next unto them (saith he) live the *Thyrsagetæ* and the *Turcæ*, possessed of vast woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and desart Countrey with continuall rocks, as farre as to the *Arympheians*. And *Pliny* mustering up the barbarous nations of those parts, joins the *Tussagetæ* (or *Thyrsagetæ*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arympheians*, as *Mela* doth, *usq; ad solitudines silvosis vallibus asperas*, spreading themselves unto the rough desarts, and woody vallies. Not known by action (though by name) till the time of *Tiberius* the second, who began his Empire *Anno* 577. when pressing hard on the *Avares*, a neighbouring Nation; they compelled them to forsake their seats and pass into *Europe*, where they made themselves masters of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary*. In the time of *Heraclius*, we find them with other barbarous nations at the siege of *Constantinople*, but under the command of the *Persians*. After which they began to set up for themselves, and in the year 763. made a road into those Countreys which we last described, and loading themselves with prey and booty, returned home again. But liking better of these parts than their own poor dwellings, in the year 844. they brake once more thorow the *Caspian* Streights, and passing through *Iberia*, seized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themselves; giving it the name of *Turcomania*: in which wide and spacious Countrey they roamed up and down, without any certain habitation, removing their heards and families from one place to another, as they had formerly been used to do in the fennes of *Mæotis*; and as the *Tartars* and wild *Arabs* do untill this day. And so they lived, a poor and contemptible nation, till *Mahomet* the Sultan of *Persia*, rebelling against his Lord and Master the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, called in these *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a signall victory. The victory obtained, the *Turks* desire their wages, and a fair dismission; but could speed in neither; the Sultan being loth to part with such a necessary mischief, till his affairs were better setled; and therefore shuting up the passages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them: Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader, they began to spoil and wast the Countrey, a multitude of needy people, and some of the discontented Souldiers coming daily to them. Assaulted by the *Persians*, in the first battel they not onely got a notable victory, but such store of Armour, horses, and other necessaries, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himself: whom having overthrown and slain in the second fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclamed King of *Persia*, in the year one thousand and thirty, or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongst the *Turks* two most noted *Tribes*, the *Selzuccian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the *Selzuccian*, *Tangrolipix*, *Cutlu Muses*, *Melech*, and *Ducat* were the heades: of which *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that *Clan* or Family was setled in the throne of *Persia*; *Cutlu Muses* furnished with an Army against the Christians, possessed himself of a great part of *Asia Minor*; *Melech* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Cousen the *Persian* Sultan; were vested into the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, with their severall Territories. But the line of *Tangrolipix* and the rest being all worn out, as hath been shewn in our descriptions of *Syria* and *Anatolia*; the man of most nobility amongst the *Turks* was *Ottoman*, the chief of the *Oguzian* family, Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Macham*, a small territory in the Realm of *Persia*. Which *Solyman*, flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Persia*, was drowned in crossing the River *Euphrates*, as he passed with his few Subjects towards *Asia Minor*, the best place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the chief-ship of his Tribe to *Ethrogul* his sonne: who obtained of the last *Aladine* of the *Selzuccian* Family, the village of *Sugut* in *Bithynia* for himself and his small handfull of people. To him succeeded his sonne *Ottoman*, in the year 1280. who to revenge some injuries done unto his people by the improvident Christians, took from them Castle after Castle; and in the end possessed himself of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperiall Seat of the *Grecian* Emperors. Emboldned with such great successes, and hearing of the death of *Aladine* the second, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himself the Title of Sultan, *Anno* 1300. from which before he had abstained. To this time, and these small beginnings, we must reduce the first foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire;

in-

increased unto its present greatness by the courage and good fortune of these Princes following.

The Kings of the *Turks* of the *Oguzian* or *Ottoman* Family.

1300. 1. *Ottoman*, the sonne of *Ethuogul*, the first *Turkish* Sultan of this line, added to his small territory the greatest part of *Bithynia*, and some part of *Pontus*. 28.

1328. 2. *Orchanes*, took the City *Prusa*, and made it his residence; and was the first that put footing in *Europe*, where he got *Gallipolis*, and other peeces.

1350. 3. *Amurath*, wonne the *Thracian Chersonese*, the strong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*, where he was slain by a common Souldier in the fields of *Cossova*. 23.

1373. 4. *Bajazet*, made himself master of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedan*, and *Achaia*. He was taken prisoner by *Tamerlane*; and brained himself in an iron cage, in which the insolent Conqueror used to carry him. 26.

1399. 5. *Mahomet*, united the dismembred Empire of his Father, and inlarged it with the more absolute conquest of *Dacia*, part of *Sclavonia*, and the rest of *Macedon*. 17.

1416. 6. *Amurath* II. subdued from the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achaia*, *Thessaly*, *Epirus*; he shaked the State of *Hungary*, and dyed before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

The *Ottoman* Emperors.

1450. 7. *Mahomet* II. sumamed the Great, and first Emperor of the *Turks*, ruined the two Empires of *Constantinople*, and *Trabezand*, twelve Kingdomes, and two hundred Cities. 31.

1481. 8. *Bajazet* II. subdued the *Caramanian* Kingdome, and part of *Armenia*; and drove the *Venetians* from *Morea*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.

1512. 9. *Selimus*, having poisoned his Father, subverted the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*; bringing it, together with *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the yoke of the *Turks*. 7.

1519. 10. *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, surprised *Rhodes*, *Belgrad*, *Buda*, with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia*. 48.

1567. 11. *Selimus* II. an idle and effeminate Emperour, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians* the Isle of *Cyprus*, and from the *Moores*, the Kingdome of *Tunis*, and *Algiers*. 8.

1575. 12. *Amurath* III. took from the disagreeing *Persians*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Tauris*, and the fort *Guierine* from the *Hungarians*. 20.

1595. 13. *Mahomet* III. took *Agria* in *Hungaria*, which Kingdome had likely bin lost, if he had pursued his victory, at the battell of *Keresture*. 8.

1603. 14. *Achmat*, who the better to enjoy his pleasures, made peace with the *German* Emperor, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.

1618. 15. *Mustapha*, brother to *Achmat*, succeeded; a novelty never before heard of in this Kingdome; it being the *Grand Signeurs* common policy to strangle all the younger brothers: howsoever this *Mustapha* was preserved, either because *Achmat* being once a younger brother, took pitty on him; or because he had no issue of his own body, and so was not permitted to kill him.

1618. 16. *Osmen*, succeeded his Unkle *Mustapha*; and being unsuccessful in his war against *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* slain in an uproar, and *Mustapha* again restored; yet long enjoied he not his throne: for the same hand that raised him, plucked him down, and seated young *Amurath* in the place.

1623. 17. *Morat* (or *Amurath* the IV.) Brother of *Osmen*, of the age of 13. years, succeeded on the second deposition of his Unkle *Mustapha*; who proved a stout and masculine Prince, and bent himself to the reviving of the antient discipline. To the great good of Christendome, he spent his stomach on the *Persians*.

18. *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Morat*, preserved by the *Sultaness* his mother in his brothers life; and by her power deposed again for interdicting her the Court. He spent a great part of his reign in the warre of *Crete*, against the *Venetians*; but without any great successe.

1648. 19. *Mahomet* IV. sonne of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vast Empire, containing all *Dacia*, and *Greece*, the greatest part of *Sclavonia* and *Hungary*, the Isles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurican Chersonese* in *Europe*; of all the Isles and Provinces, which we have hitherto described in *Asia*; and in *Africk* of all *Ægypt*, the Kingdomes of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Suachem*, and *Erocco*. Nor is their stile inferiour to so vast an Empire, *Solyman* thus stiling himself in his Letter to *Villerius* great Master of the *Rhodes*, at such time as he intended to invade that Iland: i.e. Solyman *King of Kings*, *Lord of Lords*, *most high Emperour of* Constantinople *and* Trabezond, *the most mighty King of* Persia, Syria, Arabia, *and the* Holy Land; *Lord of* Europe, Asia, *and* Africa;

frica; *Prince of* Meccha, *and* Aleppo, *Ruler of* Hieruſalem, *and Soveraign Lord of all the Seas and Iſles thereof.*

As for the perſons of the *Turks*, they are generally well-complexioned, of good ſtature, proportionably compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things ſuperfluous; hot and venereous, ſervile to their Prince, and zealous in their Religion. They nouriſh no hair upon their heads, except it be a Tuft on the top of their Crowns; by which they think that *Mahomet* will ſnatch them up into Paradiſe at the day of judgement. For which reaſon they keep on of all ſides, though never ſo poor, accounting it an approbrious thing to ſee any men uncover their heads; ſaying when they diſlike of any thing which they ſee, or hear, *I had as liefe thou hadſt ſhewn me thy bare ſkull.* In their familiar ſalutation they lay their hands on their boſomes, and a little incline their bodies; but when they accoſt a perſon of rank, they bow almoſt to the ground, and kiſs the hem of his garment. Walking up and down they never uſe, and much wonder at the often walking of Chriſtians. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory exerciſe with his companion; a *Turk* demanded them whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloiſter, why come you downwards? If to the neither end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief recreation, which they alſo follow with much lazineſs, ſitting on carpets in the ſhadow, and ſending ſome of their ſlaves to fetch their arrowes. They prefer, as they paſs the ſtreets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made maſter of his ſword with whom they walk. As they ſhave their heads, ſo they wear their berds long, as a ſign of freedome; but their ſlaves keep theirs ſhaven and cloſe cut.

The women are of ſmall ſtature, for the moſt part ruddy, clear, and ſmooth as the poliſhed *Ivory*; as neither afflicted with the weather, and often frequenting the baths: of a very good complexion, ſeldome going abroad, and then masked; laſcivious within doors, pleaſing in matters of incontinency, and they are accounted moſt beautiful, which have the greateſt eyes, and are of the blackeſt hue. Every *Turk* is permitted to have four wives, and as many ſlaves as he is able to keep, yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending women being drowned, and the man diſmembred. Theſe women live in great awe and reſpect of their husband, never ſitting with him at the table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into ſome room. If their husband hath been abroad, at his comming in they all riſe from their ſtools whereon they ſate, kiſs his hand, and make an obeiſance, and ſtand as long as he is in preſence. The children which they have, they carry not in their arms as we do, but aſtride on their ſhoulders; they live immured from the ſight of the world: and permit not any male children, no not their own ſonnes, to come among them after they are twelve years old. From their husbands they cannot be divorced, but on ſpecial occaſion: but their husbands may put away their wives, or give them to their ſlaves, when and as often as they liſt. Far better is it with the ſiſters or the daughter of the Sultan; to whom when her Father or brother beſtoweth her on one of the *Baſſas*, giveth her a dagger, ſaying *I give thee this man to be thy ſlave or bedfellow; if he be not loving, obedient, and dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this* Canzharre *or dagger to cut off his head.* When they are ma ryed, their husbands come not to bed unto them, till they are ſent for, and then alſo they creep in at the beds feet. That ever any of their Ladies made uſe of their daggers, I could never read, onely I find, that *Lutzis Baſſa*, the chief man of the Empire next the Sultan himſelf, and of him very much beloved, having given his wife, which was ſiſter to *Solyman* the *Magniſicent*, a box on the ear, was upon complaint by her made, thruſt from all his honours, baniſhed into *Macedon*, and had doubtleſs been ſlain, if the Emperours love and his own merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the Sultans daughter: her ſonnes being accounted as meer and ordinary *Turks* onely, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain.

The better ſort of the *Turks* uſe the *Sclavonian* Tonque, the vulgar ſpeak the *Turkiſh* language, which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Perſians* their words of State; from the *Arabick* their words of Religion; from the *Grecians* their words or terms of war; and from the *Italians*, their terms of navigation.

They were formerly idolatrous Pagans, and were firſt initiated in *Mahometaniſm*, when they got the Soveraignty of the *Perſian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1. The *Saſſi* or *Novices*. 2. The *Calſi*, or readers. 3. The *Hegi*, or writers of books, for printing they uſe not. 4. The *Napi*, or young Doctors. 5. The *Caddi*, whereof there is at leaſt one in every City, to judge of offences. 6. The *Mudreſſi*, who uſe to overſee the *Caddis*. 7. The *Medlis*, or principal Church Governour under the *Muſti*. 8. The *Caldeleſcais*, whereof there are onely three, one of *Greece*, the other for *Anatolia*, the third for *Egypt* and *Syria*: Theſe ſit with the *Baſſas* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporall ſuits. 9. The *Muſti*, whoſe ſentence in law and religion is uncontroulable. He abaſeth not himſelf to ſit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more reverence to the Emperor than he doth to him.

His forces are either for the Sea, or the land. His Sea forces are great in regard of his ſpacious ſea-coaſts, vaſt woods, and number of Subjects: he never ſuffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he ſhewed his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his onely veſſels, which being unable to cope with ſhips of any bigneſs, were not onely the occaſion of that overthrow, but alſo have hearmed the *Florentine*, onely with ſix great ſhips of war, to ſwager in the Seas; ſo that for more ſafety the tribute of *Egypt* is of late ſent to *Conſtantinople* by land. The Captain *Baſſa*, or Admirall, notwithſtanding with a Navy of 60 ſail, makes a yearly progreſs about the Seas, and Sea Towns, to annoy the enemy, ſuppreſs Pyrates, collect the tributes, and to redreſs the abuſes committed in the maritime Towns, belonging to the Admirallity: which annuall circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*.

There

Their land forces are either horſe or foot, they which ſerved on horſeback are the *Spahi* and *Aſapi*: theſe latter ſerving to weary the enemies, and dull there ſwords with there multitudes; of whoſe bodies the *Janizaries* uſe to make mounts whereon to aſſault the wall of a beſieged Town: and are by them ſo contemned, that a *Janizary* once ſold 2 of them for a ſheeps head. As for the *Spahi*, they till they are inrold into pay, are of the ſame originall and education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the ſame name *Azamaglans*. Their pay is ten aſpers a day. The *Turk* is able and doth maintain 150000 Horſes at little or no coſt, which no other Prince can do with 14. millions of Gold; for whereſoever any Parcell of Land is conquered, it is divided into diveis parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men, whom they call *Timariots*. Theſe are to pay unto the Emperour certain rents, and at their own charges to ſend to his wars ſo many horſe, excellently appointed for the field: and which is the chief point of their ſervice to keep the ſubjects and all parts of his Empire in awe. For being as they are diſperſed in all quarters of his Dominions; the people can no ſooner ſtir, but theſe will be aſſembled and fall upon them. Theſe *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 257000 have their abode in *Europe*, and 402000 in *Aſia* and *Africa*. Were it not for theſe *Timariots* as the *Turks* ſaying is, no Graſs would grow where the *Grand Signeurs* horſe hath once ſet his hoof: for if the care of manuring the ground were commited to Paiſants and not to military men, the greateſt part of this Empire would grow waſt and deſolate. Theſe *Timariots* were inſtituted by *Ottomon* the firſt *Turkiſh* King of this Family, and a curſe by him laid on them that ſhould annihilate the inſtitution. The name is derived from the *Turkiſh* word *Timar* ſignifying a ſtipend.

But the nerves and Sinews of this warlike body, are the *Janizaries*; who by originall being Chriſtians, are choſen by the *Turkiſh* Officers, every five years, out of his *Europaan* dominions: and ſo diſtributed abroad to learn the language, cuſtomes, and religion of the *Turks*; afterward according to there ſtrength, will, or diſpoſition, placed in divers chambers. They of the firſt chamber are preferred ſome to be *Chiauſies*, ſuch as go on Embaſſies, and execute judgements; others to *Sanziacks*, or Governours of Cities; ſome to be *Baſſas* or commanders of horſemen; and others to be *Beglerbegs* (*ideſt*, Lord of Lords) to command the reſt in generall. They of the other chambers are the *Janizaries* or *Pretorian* Souldiers of the Guard, to whoſe faith and truſt the care of the Emperours Perſon is committed. The tithing of theſe young ſpringals is as we have ſaid every fifth year, and ofner ſometimes, as occaſions ſerve. By which means he not only diſarmeth his own ſubjects and keepeth them from attempting any ſtirre or innovation in his Empire: but ſpoileth all the Provinces he moſt feareth, of the Flower, Sinews and ſtrength of their People; choiſe being made of the ſtrongeſt youths only, and fitteſt for war. Theſe before they are inrold in pay, are called *Azamoglans*, and behave themſelves with much ſubmiſſiveneſs towards their Seniours and governours: but when once they are honoured with the title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride and haughtineſs: till of late they were not permitted to mary; neither now can any of their ſonnes be accounted any other than a naturall *Turk*, (whom of all the reſt they accoum the baſeſt) the eldeſt onely excepted: to whom this Pretogative was granted by *Amurath* the third when he came to the crown. They are in number 40000. of which 16000 are alwaies reſident in *Conſtantinople*. In this City they are diverſly employed, being as Conſtables to ſee the Peace kept; as Clerks of the Market to ſee to the weights and meaſures; as Officers to arreſt common offenders; as Warders to look to the gates, to guard the houſes of Embaſſadours, and to travel with ſtrangers for their more ſafety; in which charge they are very faithfull. There pay is but five aſpers a day, and two gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, and 100 men being their greateſt preferment; yet are they very obſequious to their Captain or *Aga*, who is inferiour to the meaneſt *Baſſa*, though in power perhaps above the chiefeſt. For the crafty *Turks* join not power and authority; and if they obſerve the *Janizaries* to love and reſpect their *Aga*, they quickly deprive him of life and office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the firſt, *Anno* 1365. their greateſt eſtabliſher *Amurath* the ſecond: their name ſignifieth young Souldiers. Now concerning theſe *Janizaries*, we will farther conſider the ſway they bear in deſigning the Succeſſour. 2. There inſoleney towards the Emperour, and his Officers. 3. Their behaviour in the vacancy of the throne; and 4. Their puniſhments.

1. Concerning the firſt, I never find any particular ſway the *Janizaries* carryed in the deſignation of their Emperour, till the death of *Mahomet* the Great; when the *Baſſas* having choſen *Corcut* the ſonne of *Bajazet*, were overruled by the *Aga* and his *Janizaries*; who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father and ſonne to *Mahomet*. Though I am not ignorant, that when this *Mahomet* ſucceeded in the Throne, the joyful acclamations made by the Souldiers was accounted the chiefeſt ſign of his ſecure and perpetuated eſtabliſhment. But the chief inſtance of their power herein, was the inthronizing of *Selimus* the firſt, who being but the ſeventh ſonne of this *Bajazet*, was not only preferred by them before his brethren in his Fathers life time, but by their aids alſo he ſeverally maſtered them, and in the end poiſoned his Father. To omit other examples, even of late *Anno* 1622. they ſlew the young Emperour *Oſmen*, drew his Unkle *Muſtapha* out of priſon, and eſtabliſhed him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the firſt example in which I find them peecant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the reign of the abovementioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Baſſa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court gates, and told the Emperour; *They would teach him like a drunkard a beaſt and a raſcall as he was, to uſe his great place and calling with more ſobriety and diſcretion*. Not long after conceiving further diſpleaſure againſt the ſaid *Bajazet*, they ſhook their weapons

weapons againſt him, and refuſed to take him into the middeſt amongſt them; and were not, without great and vile ſubmiſſion on his part, appeaſed. Againſt *Selimus* the firſt, they alſo mutined, when being reſolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better purſuit of his victories againſt the *Perſian*, he was by them forced to return home unto *Conſtantinople*. Againſt *Solyman* they mutined ſo violently, that they compelled him to diſplace *Ruſtan* his chief *Baſſa* or favorite. Againſt *Amurath* the 3d. for placing over them a new *Aga*, they ſo ſtrongly oppoſed themſelves; that firſt they ſet fire on *Conſtantinople*, and burnt therein, beſides ſhops and ware-houſes, twentyfive great Innes, ſeven Temples, and 15000 houſes, and in the end conſtrained him to give them money, and to yield alſo into their hands two of his chief Counſellors, by them ſuppoſed to be their adverſaries; whom they drew about the ſtreets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622 above-named) in the year 1600 they grew ſo diſcontented with *Mahomet* the 3d. that they not onely threatned to deſtroy the Principal Officers of the Court, and the baniſhment of the *Sultaneſs* his Mother, but the depoſing of himſelf alſo.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the cuſtome of theſe *Janizaries*, between the deaths of an old *Emperor*, and the beginning of a new, to commit divers inſolencies; as the rifling of the houſes of the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Baſſas*, and principall men about the Court, whom they ſuſpected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outragious miſchiefs. Of theſe we find frequent mention, as after the death of *Amurath* the 2d. and *Mahomet* the *Great*: at which laſt time the Merchants of *Conſtantinople*, being naturall *Turks*, eſcaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Baſſa* avoid the fury of their ſwords. This ſpoil they took for ſo certain a due, that if they were diſappointed of it, they would preſently raiſe commotions both in Court, Field, and City, unleſs ſome preſent ſatisfaction were made them. To this end *Ackmat* diſtributed among them two millions and an half of Ducats; *Selimus* the firſt, two millions; others made an encreaſe of their dayly pay. But *Selimus* the 2d. diſtributing among them 100000 *Sultanies* onely, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had inlarged his bounty: and the great *Baſſaes* were rapped about the pate with their *callivers*, for perſwading them to quietneſs. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious liberty, which in the vacancy of the Empire was uſually committed, the death of the old Emperour was with all ſecrecy concealed, till the arrivall of the new. To omit others, I will inſtance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the firſt, and *Solyman* onely. This *Solyman* died at the ſiege of *Sigeth* in *Hungary*, which was ſo cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Baſſa* the ſpace of twenty dayes; that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his ſonne *Selimus* had poſſeſſed himſelf of *Conſtantinople*, and came alſo to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately ſtrangled the Phyſicians and Apothecaries which knew of his death, commanded the Souldiers to go on in their ſiege, and diverſe times ſhewed them the Emperor ſitting in his horſe-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he uſed to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead body, ſitting ſtill in the ſame manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the firſt, the *Baſſaes* of the Court called their *Divanos*, as formerly they uſed, gave order for the levying of an Army, as if ſome warre were intended, and the Kings Phyſicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him ſtill in cure. But the Penſioners and *Janizaries* miſdoubting the matter, with all egerneſs deſired to ſee him, which when the *Baſſaes* durſt not deny, they appointed the next day for their viſit. The next day the body was apparrelled in royall large robes, placed in a chair, at the end of a long gallery, and a litle boy cunningly ſet behind him to move the Kings hand to his head, as if he ſhould ſtroke his beard, as his manner was: which ſignes of life and ſtrength the Souldiers ſeeing, held themſelves contented, and ſo was his death concealed the ſpace of 41 dayes.

4. As for the laſt, Theſe inſolent and unſufferable pranks committed ſo commonly by theſe maſterfull ſlaves, ſo exceedingly ſtomached *Bajazet* the 2. that he ſecretly purpoſed with himſelf, for curing ſo dangerous a diſeaſe, to uſe as deſperate a remedy; which was to kill and deſtroy ſuddenly all the *Janizaries*. It is like that this *Bajazet* being a Scholar, had read how *Conſtantine* the Great had caſſed the Prætorian Souldiers, and deſtroyed their camp, as men that were the cauſes of all the ſtirres in his Empire, and whoſe pride was come to an intollerable height: and having the ſame cauſe to deſtroy his *Janizaries*, hoped to have done it with as much eaſe and ſafety as the other did; but they having notice of the plot, for the time continued ſo united and linked together, that he durſt not then attempt it; and afterward ſiding with his ſonne *Selimus*, caſt him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperors never durſt puniſh them openly, but when any of them proveth delinquent, he is ſent privately in the night time to *Pera* over-againſt *Conſtantinople*, where by the way he is drowned, and a peece of Ordinance ſhot off, to ſignifie the performing of the *Sultans* command.

Now for the Emperors themſelves, we will conſider them in matters of pleaſure, in matters of ceremony, and in matters of State, the laſt being conſiderable in three main points, which are the murdering of their brethren, the removing of their ſonnes, their revenue, and therein a touch of their governenment. To theſe we will adde, what apparent ſymtomes may be obſerved to prognoſticate the ſtanding, decreaſing, and increaſing of this puiſſant Monarchy.

1. For the firſt, he hath not ſo few as 500. (ſometimes a 1000) choice virgins kept in a Seraglio by themſelves, all ſlaves born of Chriſtian Parents, and indeed the rareſt beauties of his Empire. When he is diſpoſed to take his pleaſure with any of them, they are all ranked in a gallery, and ſhe is by the *Aga* of the women prepared for his bed, to whom he giveth his handkercher. She that beareth him the firſt ſonne, is honoured with the title of *Sultaneſs* (Queen Mother we may call her) neither can he make any of them free, unleſs he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are ſtrictly looked too, and liberally provided for, and not ſeldome times are beſtowed by the ſucceeding *Sultan*, on his great *Baſſaes*, and ſuch us he chiefly favoureth, which is a principall honour. They are attended

tended on by women, and Eunuches; these being not gelded onely, but deprived of all their genitalls, and supplying the uses of nature with a silver quill: which in humane custome was brought in among them by *Selimus* the second, because he had seen a Gelding cover a mare.

2. These ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the most part the building of a *Mosche* onely to help to the salvation of their souls: or towards them by others, which are most apparent in the entertainment of Embassadors. For when such come to his presence, they are led between two of his Courtiers, and comming before the Throne on both sides (whereof the *Bassaes* sit with admirable silence, resembling rather *Statuaes* than men;) they bow themselves to the ground with all humility, laying their hands on their breasts, but never uncovering their heads, which (as we before noted) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards, it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts towards a Prince so glorious. The reason why they are thus brought in between two, is said to be for their greater honour: but is indeed a fear that they have, lest the *Grand Seignieur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embassie, should be stapped. Which wariness they have used, ever since the time that *Miles Cobiletz*, a *Servian*, scrambling from among the slain at the battel of *Cassova*, and being admitted to the speech of *Amurath* the first, the Author of that overthrow; stabbed him into the belly with his dagger.

3. Amongst all the jarres and discontents that be, none have been with more unkindness begun, or more eagemets prosecuted, than those of brothers: and that not only in private families, but in the stems of Princes; the multitude of Pretendants, being the originall of most civill wars. To prevent these publick emotions, the Emperors of *Habassia* use to immure up all their younger children in the hill *Amaza*; the *Persians* do put out the eyes of their younger brothers; and the *Turks* do murder them: strange and horrid courses, whereby to avoid the fear of a war in the State, they sturre up a war in their own bowels. The first amongst the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the first, on his brother *Jacup*; whom immediately after his Fathers death he strangled with a bow-string: this being the only instrument of their *Fratricide*, because thereby none of the blood-royall of *Ottoman* is spilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the *Great*, caused his young brother then at nurse, to dy the death; and was not without much ado perswaded from being the executioner himself. *Amurath* the third, caused his five brethren to be at once strangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his sonne, no fewer then nineteen in one day. By this course they imagine their own estate to be infinitely secured, as knowing that *Mustapha* a younger sonne, stirred a rebellion against *Amurath*; and *Zemes* against *Bajazet*, both the second of those names: that *Solyman*, *Musa*, and *Isa*, severally afflicted *Mahomet* the first, and *Corcut*, *Selimus*; the first of these names also. But yet they will not know, that nothing sooner putteth their younger Brothers into these acts of hostility, than an inevitable certainty of a violent and unnatural death: whereas were they but sure of life, and a liberall and Princely maintenance, it is more than probable, they would rest content, as in other Kingdomes the younger Princes do. And notwithstanding their barbarous policy, in particular, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the counterfeits have heretofore much disturbed the quiet of their Predecessours: for thus we find *Amurath* the second to have been vexed by one that took upon him the name of *Mustapha* elder brother to *Mahomet*, then late deceased; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of sedition in their neighbours Countreys. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*, after that a counterfeit *Nero*, and before two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm so often troubled with these *Mock-kings*, as *England*; a counterfeit *Richard* the 2d. being made in the time of *Hen.* the 4th. a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Hen.* the 6th. counterfeit *Duke* of *York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the 7 h. and a counterfeit *Edw.* the 6th. under Q. *Mary*. To prevent these walking spirits, *Mahomet* the third, laid out the dead bodies of his Father and nineteen brethren, as a common spectacle for all that passed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Signeur Mustapha*, miraculously scaped the bow-string twice; 1. when his brother *Achmat*, and 2ly. when *Osmen* his young Nephew were made *Sultans*, and was the first that in this Empire did ever succeed in the collateral line: as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the second, on the death of *Morat* or *Amurath* the fourth, his elder brother.

4. The removing of the young Princes is done for three reasons: 1. to wean them from the pleasures of the Court, 2ly. to train them up in arms, and inure them to hardness, 3ly. and principally to avoid the danger of a Competitour, whereof old Princes are especially jealous. The common places destinated to this Princely exile, are *Amasia* in *Cappadocia*, *Magnesia* in *Lydia*, and such like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old Sultans by such a great distance think themselves secure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their sonnes actions, and have intelligence of almost every particular thought, the least suspicion being cause sufficient to destroy them; so we find *Mustapha*, sonne to *Solyman*, the hopefullest branch that ever sprang from the *Ottomon* tree, to have been shamefully strangled by the command of his Father, upon a rumour onely of a mariage which he was said to have negotiated with the *Persian* Kings Daughter. When these Princes are once setled in their government, it is a crime meriting no less punishment than death, to depart thence and come unto *Constantinople*, before their Fathers death; or unless they are by their Fathers sent for. Of this we have a Tragical examplein *Mahomet* a Prince of great hope, sonne to *Bajazet* the second: who desiring to see the fashion of his Fathers Court, left *Magnesia* to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a seafaring man to *Constantinople*, and having obtained his desire he returned to his charge. This strange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variously entercepted, stirred such jealousies in the suspicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him secretly poisoned.

5. As

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it consisteth either in money received, or in money saved. The money saved, is first by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continnally 60000 to attend him in his wars without any pay but the spoil of the Enemie. And second by the *Timariots*, who nourish and bring into the Field more horses than any Prince in Christendome can keep (as we have already said) for 14 millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Botervs*) is only 15 millions of *Sultanies*, which is nothing in respect of so great an Empire: the chief reason whereof is the Tyrannicall government of the *Turk*, which deters men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their estates; as knowing all their gettings to lie at the *Grand Signieurs* mercy. His extraordinary revenue is uncredible; For besides that no Embassadour commeth before him empty handed; no man is master of his own wealth, further than it stands with the Emperours liking: so that his great *Bassaes* are but as spunges to suck up riches till their coffers swell; and then to be squeezed into his Treasury. These men, as he advanceth without envy, so can he destroy without danger: no man here hoping for Partakers, if he should resist, as not being ignorant that one mans fortune is built on the desired overthrow of another. Such riches as they gain, if they hap to die naturally, return to the Emperors coffers, who giveth only what he pleaseth to the Children of the deceased. These *Bassaes* have in their particular Provinces, their *Divanoes*, or Law-Courts, where justice hath bin administred formerly with great integrity; but now not a little corrupted; yet the comfort is, that such as miscarry in their right, shall without delay know what to trust to; and the *Bassaes* upon complaint to the Emperor are sure to die for it. Over these *Bassaes* (the chief of whom is the *Vizier Bassa*, or President of the Council) preside two *Beglerbeggs*; one for *Greece*, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the present state of the Empire, many judge it to be rather in the wane, than the increase, which judgement they ground upon good reasons, whereof these are the chief.

1. The body is grown too monstrous for the head: the Sultans since the death of *Solyman* never accompanying their Armies in person (except *Morat*, or *Amurath* the fourth) but rioting and wasting their bodies and treasures at home.

2. The *Janizaries*, who have been accounted the principall strength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp: corrupted with ease and liberty, drowned in prohibited wines, enfeebled with the continual converse of women, and fallen from their former austerity of discipline.

3. They have of late given no increase unto their Dominions: and as in the paths of vertue, *non progredi est regredi*; so in Empires, by violence gotten, when they cease to be augmented, they begin to be diminished.

4. Rebellions have in these latter times been in this Empire strangely raised, and mightily supported; which commotions the former Sultans were never acquainted with.

5. The greatness of the Empire is such, that it laboureth with nothing more than the weightiness of it self; so that it must in a manner needs decline *Pondere pressa suo*, overburdened with its own mightiness. For as in a naturall body, a surfeit killeth more than fasting; so in the body *Politick* also, too much extent doth sooner draw on a ruin, than either too little; or a mediocrity.

6. The Sonnes of the *Grand Signieur*, whose bravery of mind is ever suspected by their Fathers, are nursed up (contraty sometimes to their natural inclinations) in all effeminacy; which once rooted in them in their youth, doth alwayes after subject them to the softness and baseness of libidinous pleasure.

7. They have lost much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very name did carry with it: insomuch that not the *Venetians* onely have by Sea often mated, and once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* withstood their greatest forces, for the space of 200 years, by land; the *Polonians* forced them to dishonourable retreat and composition: but the poore Prince of *Transylvania* did divers times discomfit them, with the death of many of their *Bassaes*; the *Florentines* with six ships onely, intercepteth their trade; and the poor *Emir* of *Sidon* held it out against them many years together.

8. By the avarice and corruption reigning in the Court; all peace and warre, all Counsels and informations, all injuries and favours, being now made saleable. And

9. It is visible and apparent, that their Empire was long since at the highest: *Et naturaliter quod procedere non potest, recedit*, as *Velleius* hath it: when an Empire can ascend no higher, by the ordinary course of nature it must have a fall. All these are more than probable *Prognosticks* of a sinking Monarchy; and yet there is a greater than any of these, that is to say, the present State of Affaires. The young Emperor *Mahomet* the fourth, now reigning, is but a weak staff to support so vast an Empire: considering not onely the infinite casualties to which children are naturally subject; but the dangers which he may justly fear from a Rebellious Souldiery, and a Factious Court; Who by the murder of one Emperor, and the deposition of two, have made themselves so formidable, but withall so odious in the sight of the Imperiall house, that there is no way left to save them from a merited vengeance, but to translate the Empire to some other Family; though by the rooting out of this. Which whensoever it shall happen, either by the naturall death, or unnaturall destruction of the present *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* race: which I look on as a matter not to be avoided, except by miracle. Supposing then the line of *Ottoman* to fail, (as it is most probable that it will) what will become of this vast Empire? Three there will be to offer at it, viz. the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Janizaries*, and the *Bassas*. And first the *Crim-Tartar* may plead a composition, made by his Ancestors, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* family; which is, that he supplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, should on the failer of the heirs males succeed in this Empire. Besides which, he may hope for no small succors, not onely from the rest of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Cham* himself, to recover his Estate herein, if with-holden from him: thereby to adde unto the Present greatness and renown of the *Tartars*, the access of such a spacious

cious Empire. 2. The *Bassars* may conceive no small possibilities of dividing this great Empire among themselves, partly by the Example of *Alexanders* Captains, who after their maiters death (there being yet some of the blood Royall remaining) parted amongst themselves not onely the new-gotten Provinces, which they had conquered from the *Persians*; but even the Kingdome of *Macedon*, his old Inheritance: partly by an example in their own Histories, by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Alidine* the 2d. *Caraman*, *Sarachan*, *Ædin*, *Caraſius*, and the reſt of the more powerfull Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkiſh* Kingdome in the *Leſſer Aſia*: and partly by the opportunity which they have as Governours in their ſeverall Provinces, and having ſo many bands of Souldiers under their command; which may eaſily inveſt them as *Proprietaries* in thoſe Eſtates, of which they have already ſuch a fair poſſeſſion. And ſo we find the *Sultans* or Provincial Governours of the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*, to have done before them. 3. The *Janizaries* may alſo build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly, who to excite them to the Enterprize have the Example of the *Prætorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body farre more Politique and better compacted than this is); who out of their own company created the farre greater part of the *Roman* Emperors, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppoſe them in it. But above all Examples that of the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt* doth make faireſt for them; who were born of *Chriſtian* Parents, as theſe are; appointed for the Guard of the *Sultans*, as theſe are; purpoſely entertained and inured to the warres, to take from the naturall ſubjects, the uſe of Armes, as theſe are; men of approved valour, and the chief Bulwark of that Kingdome againſt the *Chriſtians*, as theſe are: and then why may they not be like them in this laſt Attempt, for ſetting in their Maſters Throne, as theſe *Mamalucks* did. Adde hereunto, that they are already in (a manner) poſſeſſed of *Conſtantinople*, the head town and heart of the Empire; and their hopes are not vain. For my part I hold them to be the men moſt like, unleſs the Princes of *Chriſtendome* lay aſide private malice, joyn all in arms to ſtrip this proud Peacock of his feathers: and (upon ſo bleſſed an advantage) to break in peeces with a rod of iron, this inſolent and burdenſome Monarchy. A thing rather to be deſired than expected. But this by way of ſuppoſition, and as in a dream, I awake.

The enſign of this Empire (or armes of it) is the *Croiſſant*, or half moon; but how blazoned I cannot tell you: nor are the learned yet reſolved on the beginnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them, from the Eaſtern *Gentiles*, who worſhiped the Moon under both ſexes; as we learn in *Spartianus*. Some make it common to them, with the other *Mahumetans*; and they derive it from a pretended miracle of *Mahomet*: who to ſhew his power, is ſaid to have made the Moon fall into his lappe in two peeces; and to have reſtored her whole again to the heavens. Others are of opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Signeur* at the winning of *Conſtantinople*; *ut ſignum victæ gentis penes quam orientis imperium eſſet.* And of this mind is *Juſtus Lipſius*, induced thereto as it ſeemeth, by the figure of the *Croiſſant* born in ſome old *Byzantine* coins. A pretty plauſible conceit; and therefore till we have a better, may paſs as currant as the money.

And thus much I thought convenient to inſert in this place, concerning the originall, proceeding, and continuance; the naturall diſpoſitions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: this being as the onely Province which retaineth their name; ſo both the firſt they were poſſeſſed of, and the laſt which they have fully conquered of all their Dominions.

And thus much of *Turcomania.*

Ooo OF

OF MEDIA and PERSIA.

THese I have joyned together also, because the affairs thereof have been so united, in making up the second of the four great *Monarchies*, and running the same fortunes ever since, that they are hardly to be parted in course of story, though each must have unto it self a distinct *Chorographie*. First then, we begin with *MEDIA*.

MEDIA is bounded on the East, with *Parthia*, and some part of *Hyrcania*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; on the West, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Assyria*; on the North, with the *Caspian* Sea, and those parts of *Armenia Major* which now pass in the accompt of *Georgia*; and on the South, with *Persia*. So called from *Madai* the sonne of *Japhet*, by whom first planted and possessed, after that general dispersion made at *Babel*. Known by this name amongst the antients both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time called *Sheirvan* by the *Turks* and *Persians*: the word signifying in the language of this Countrey, a *Milkie-Plain*.

The Countrey of a large extent, and of so different nature, as one would think it not the same. The North parts lying betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrcanian* Sea, very cold and comfortless: so barren, that for the most part they make their bread of dried *Almonds*, and their drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and those but of Apples; nor any droves of tame cattel, as in other places, their food being generally on *Venison*, or the flesh of wild beasts took in hunting. But on the South-side of the *Taurus*, the soyl is very rich, and the Countrey pleasant, plentifull both of corn and wine, and all things necessary: full of fat pastures, some of them so large in compass, that 50000 horses do graze upon it.

The people antiently great Warriers, as those who ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themselves and their own vertue the foundation of the second *Monarchy*. But being not long after incorporated into the same Empire with the *Persians*, have not onely ever since followed the same fortunes with them, but participate of their nature also: and therefore we shall hear more of their *Character* when we come to *Persia*. *Polygamie* antiently amongst them, so farre from being esteemed a sinne or an inconvenience, that it was a punishment for the common *Villager* to have less than seven wives; or the woman, if of noble birth, fewer than five husbands. In their warres they use commonly to envenom their Arrows with an oyl or liquor, made of a *bituminous* water called *Naphta*, whereof there is great plenty both here, in *Persia*, and *Assyria*. The oyl called *Oleum Mediacum*, from this people only because their invention, and by them most mischievously used. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being shot from a slacker bow (for a swift and strong motion took away its vertue) did burn the flesh wherein it fastned with so great a violence, that nothing but dust could mitigate the fury of it, water increasing rather than diminishing that malignant flame.

The *Christian Religion* was first here planted by Saint *Thomas*, but never had the happiness to be so universally embraced as in other places; alwayes opposed and suppressed, either by *Paganism* in the time of the old *Persian* Kings; or by *Mahometanism*, since the first conquest of this Countrey by the power of the *Saracens*. Some *Christians* yet there be amongst them either of the *Armenian* or *Nestorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Persian* Empire) the specialties of whose *Religion* have been elsewhere spoke of. Here live also very many *Jews*, indulged the free exercise of their *Religion*: many of which are the Descendants of those *Tribes* which were transplanted hither by *Salmanassar*. But the *Religion* generally embraced and countenanced is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Persian* Sects, the Language of which Nation they do also speak, though they had a language of their own, different from that of the *Parthian*, *Elamite* or *Persian*, as appeareth *Acts* 2. *v.*9. where they are reckoned as distinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1. *Orontes*, 2. *Coronus*, 3. *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Assyria*, 4. *Jasonium*, 5. *Lagoas*; all of them (except *Chaboras* onely) the disjointed branches of Mount *Taurus*: which is here more broken and divided than in any part of his course besides.

Out of these flow their principall Rivers, 1. *Amandus*, 2. *Strato*, and 3. *Carindas*; of greatest eminence in this Countrey, in the time of *Ptolomy*, but otherwise of no great account or observation. 4. *Canac*, the Divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*, but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to assign. Adde hereunto the great Lake, now called *Argis* (by the *Persians*, *Kolsalan*) but by *Strabo* named *Marriana Palus*, situate in the confines of *Assyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the fish whereof, dryed by the Sun and wind, and sold into divers other Countreys, the people of these parts raise a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many *Provinces*, the principall of which 1. *Tropatene*, 2. *Charomithrene*, 3. *Daritis*, 4 *Marciane*, 5. *Amariace*, and 6. *Syro-Media*: these and the rest reduced to two in the later reckonings, viz. *Atropatia*, and 2. *Media Major*.

1. *ATRO-*

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof which lieth betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governor of theſe parts in the time of *Darius*, the laſt perſian Monarch, who ſo valiantly held out againſt the *Macedonians*. The *Tropatene*, (as I take it) of the antient Writers. A barren, cold, and unhoſpitable Countrey, as before deſcribed: and for that cauſe allotted for the dwelling of many of the captive *Iſraelites* brought hither by *Salmanaſſar* when he conquered that Kingdome: their numbers being found ſo great in this Northern Region, that *Benjamin* the *Jew*, reckoned no fewer than 50000 of them in one City onely, which he calleth by the name of *Madai*. And that great numbers of them were tranſplanted hither, appeareth by that paſſage 2 *Kings* 17. 6. where it is ſaid, that they were placed in *Halah* and *Habor* by the River of *Gozan*, and *in the Cities of the* Medes. Now *Halah* or *Chalah* ſeems moſt probably to be that Region of *Aſſyria* which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chalatone*, in the North of that Countrey towards *Media*; *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chaberus*, which parteth this Countrey from *Aſſyria*, in which Mountainous tract there was in thoſe times a City of the ſame name alſo. Betwixt which City and the banks of the *Caſpian* Sea, I find in *Ptolomy* the City *Ganzania* in the 40th. degree and 40 *minutes* of Northern *Latitude*: in which there are apparent footſteeps of the name of the River *Gozan*, upon whoſe banks it was moſt likely to be ſeated.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Hamadum*, by *Benjamin* the *Jew* called *Madai*, repleniſhed in his time with families of the captive *Iſraelites*. 2. *Gauraxania*, another dwelling of thoſe Tribes, ſpoken of before. 3. *Mandigarſis*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4 *Gelan*, the *Gelæ* of the antients, whom the *Greeks* call *Caduſii*. 5. *Bochn*, more towards the the *Caſpian* Sea, hence called *Mare de Bochn*. 6. *Eres*, a place of great ſtrength, but poſſeſsed by the *Turks*, and made the reſidence of ſome of their principal Officers: taken by *Muſtapha*, Generall of the *Turkiſh* forces in the time of *Amurath* the 3d. and by him fortified as the Gate and entrance of this Countrey. 7. *Sumachia*, or *Shamaki*, betwixt *Eres* and *Derbent*, taken by *Oſman Baſſa*, at the ſame time, Anno 1578. and made the Reſidence of a *Beglerbeg*, Anno 1583. Conceived to be the *Cyropolis* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Perſinas* called *Cyreckbata*, bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch, by whom built or beautified. Remarkable at the preſent for a Pillar of flint-ſtones, inter-woven with the heads of many of the *Perſian* nobility, moſt barbarouſly ſlain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a terrour to others.

2. *MAJOR MEDIA*, or *MEDIA* ſpecially ſo called, is that part hereof which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Antients for one of the godlieſt Countries in all *Aſia*: the fields (ſaith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatneſs and fertility very rich, and no leſs pleaſent for freſh Springs and cleer veins of water: where one may ſee plenty of green Meadows, and in them a breed of generous horſes, which they call *Niſæi*, mounted by as valiant and generous Riders, who with great jollity uſe to go unto the warres, and charge furiouſly upon the Enemy. The men commended by *Polybius* (καὶ τὰς ἀρετὰς ἀνδρῶν, &c.) as well as the Countrey.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1. *Ecbatana*, of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we find that *Semiramis* the wife of *Ninus* in a warre made againſt the *Medes*, who had then rebelled, taking an affection to the place, cauſed water-courſes to be made to it from the further ſide of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a paſſage thorow the hills, with great charge and labour. Deſtroyed by the injury of time it was re-edified by *Deioces* the ſixt King of the *Medes*, and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Seleucus Nicanor*, Succeſſor unto *Alexander* in his *Aſian* Conqueſts. For beauty and magnificence litle inferiour to *Babylon* or *Nineve*, before deſcribed. In compaſs 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 *Italian* miles. The walls thereof affirmed in the book of *Judith* to be 70. *Cubits* high, 50. *Cubits* broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 *Cubits* higher; all built of hewn and poliſhed ſtone, each ſtone being ſix *Cubits* in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be underſtood only of the innermoſt wall, there being ſeven in all about it, each of them higher than the other, and each diſtinguiſhed by the colour of their ſeverall Pinnacles; which gave unto the eye a moſt gallant *Proſpect*. From which variety of colours it is thought to have the name of *Agbatha*, or *Agbathana*. In former times the ordinary reſidence of the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Perſians* in the heats of the ſummer, as *Suſa* (the chief City of *Suſiana*) in the cold of winter. The Royall Palace being about a mile in compaſs, was built with all the coſt and cuuning that a ſtately manſion did require: ſome of the beams thereof of *ſilver*, and the reſt of *Cedar*; but thoſe of *Cedar* ſtrengthned with Plates of *Gold*. Said by *Ioſephus* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*. Which muſt be underſtood no otherwiſe in the truth of Story, than that he over-ſaw the Workmen, or contrived the *Model*, appointed to that office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the building of the ſame is aſcribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* race, it became a ruin. 2. *Tauris*, ſituate in or neer the place of *Echatana*, out of whoſe rubbiſh it was built. Diſtant a 150 miles from the *Caſpian* Sea, under the ſhadow of *Orontes*, now called *Baronta*, but opening Southwards towards a large and ſpacious *Campagn*: in compaſs about ſix miles, and beautified on the South-weſt within a large and pleaſant garden, the work of Sultan *Tamas*, who reſided here often; the buildings for the moſt part of brick, which flat Roofs (as generally in all the Eaſt) well peopled, as containing 200000 perſons of all ſorts and Sects. Of great trading, ſubdued by the *Turks* by whom it was thrice taken within very few years, viz. by *Selimus* the firſt, Anno 1514. by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, Anno 1530. and by *Oſman Baſſa*, generall of *Amarath* the 3d. Anno 1585. But this laſt finding it too chargeable to be always garriſoned, and nototherwiſe tenable but by force, pulled down the walls, and built a large and capacious *Citadel*: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Hamze Mirza*, Prince of *Perſia*, and father of Sultan *Soffy*, Anno 1614. after it had been for a hundred years a continuall prey unto the *Turks*. 3. *Arſacia*, ſo named by *Ptolomy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by ſome of the *Par-*

thian race. Ruined long since, but more beautifully revived than ever in the present. 4. *Casbin*, raised from the ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the banks of a little River, which serveth it for houshold uses, but not for trafick. Exceedingly enriched by removall of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamas*, partly invited thereunto by the richness of the soyl, and the commodiousness of the place, but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to incroach on his dominions. In compass about seven miles, beautified with a large market-place, many stately *Mosques*, and the *Sultans* Palace: this last adjoyning to the first, convenient enough, but neither of great state nor beauty. 5. *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the book of *Tobit*, so called from *Ragas* the sonne of *Phaleg*, the founder of it: situate neer the spacious Plain, so memorable for the great breed of horses spoken of before; and therefore in that book called the *Plain of Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Europus*, and so stands in *Ptolomy*. 6. *Nassivan*, supposed by some to be the *Artasata*, more probably the *Nasmana*, of the Antient Writers: a place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Persian* warres. 7. *Ardoville*, on or neer the banks of the great lake *Argis*, spoken of before: the birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine* and *Aider* the first Authors of the *Sophian* Sect, and the burrall place of Sultan *Hysmael* the first *Persian* Sultan of that line. 8. *Sultania*, about six dayes journey from *Taurus*, environed with high Mountains, the tops of which continually covered with snow, may be seen farre off: founded by *Alyaptu*, the 8th. King of the Sixt or *Tartarian* Dynasty; and by him made the Royall Seat of the *Persian Sultans*, whence it had the name. But ruinated by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former splendour, but the *Mosques*, or Temples (one of them, the fairest in the East) which the *Tartars* spared. 9. *Tyroan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, situate in a large Plain, but not farre from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleasant Gardens of private men, and one belonging to the King, environed with a wall of greater Circuit than the City. 10. *Turcoman*, in the midle way betwixt *Tauris* and *Casbin*. 11. *Damoan*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 houses, not here considerable but for the signification of the name; which is said to signifie a *Second Plantation*: and being situate at the foot of so high a Mountain, occasioneth some of the *Jews* to think that the *Ark* rested not farre off, as perhaps it did not. 12. *Maran*, in the Extremity of the Countrey, but of lesser note.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the posterity of *Madai*, as before was said; *Ragau* the sonne of *Phaleg* taking up those parts which lay next *Assyria*. Divided in long tract of time into several *Tribes* as the *Coduſii*, *Amariacle*, *Margasi*, *Sagartii*, *Debryces*, *Tapyri*, and some others. Governed by *Kings* immediatelly from the first *Plantation*: for we find that *Pharnus* King hereof was overthrown and slain by *Ninus* the grand-sonne of *Nimrod*. After this made subject to the *Assyrians*, their Kings were onely *titular*, at the best but *Homagers*, perhaps no better than *Provincial* Governours under that great Monarnarchy. Of most esteem amongst them was that *Arsaus*, who with an Army of 800000. men (if the number be not mistaken) incountred the *Caduſii*, by whom discomfited and slain. But the *Caduſii* so broken, that they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Persians*, and so continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the last of these *Provincials*, and the first Monarch of the *Medes*. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to see his Lord and Master in a womans dress, spinning among his Concubines, & otherwise behaving himself in a brutish manner, which so moved him, that he resolved to be no longer subject to so vile a Monster. Communicating his thoughts unto *Belochus* Governour on *Babylon*, and well seen in *Astrology*, he was incouraged to proceed; and sped so well, that having made themselves Masters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them shrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his Estates. To *Belochus* fell *Assyria*, and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces of the West of *Tigris*: to *Arbaces*, *Media* and the rest, which now make up the Kingdome of *Persia*. But being a mild Prince, and desirous by fair and gentle means to assure his Empire, he confirmed the *Persian Satrapaes* in their former Governments; reserving nothing to himself but a *titular Soveraignty*. Of whom and his Successors more, when we have taken in the rest of the Provinces.

PERSIA.

PERSIA is bounden on the East, with *India*; on the West, with *Media*, *Assyria*, and *Chaldea*; on the North, with *Tartarie*; on the South, with the main Ocean. So called from *Persis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave law to all the rest: as that is said to do from *Perseus*, the sonne of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirmed by the *Grecians* to have conquered these *Eastern* Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus *Isidore*, Persæ *populi à* Perseo *Rege sunt vocati*, *qui à* Græcia *in* Asiam *transiens ibi barbaras gentes gravi diuturnoq; bello perdomuit*, *et victor nomen subactæ Genti imposuit*. In the Scripture it is constantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the sonne of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Persians* had subdued *Babylon*, and transferred the supreme Monarchy to themselves, we find this people called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Persian* seems to come), the word *Paras*, (or *Pharas*) signifying as much as horsemen. Given therefore to this Nation, as it is supposed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not onely taught them the art of *horsemanship*, but set forth a law, that it should be a repoach to any man to go on foot, *sive multum sive parum itineris esset conficiendum*, whether the journey that he had to go were long or little. Called sometimes also *Achæmenis*, from *Achæmenes* the sonne of *Perses*, one of the first known Kings hereof; and by that name, *Non tot* Achæmeniis *armantur* Susa *Sagittis*, they occurre in the second of *Propertius*. Where by *Achæmenia Sagitta*, he means *Persian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, stretched out in length from the 82. degree of *Longitude*, to the 120. being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23. degree of Northern *Latitude*, to the 43. being 20 more; According unto which position, with reference to the heavenly bodies, we shall find it seated under the third, fourth,

fourth, fifth, and sixt, *Climates*: the longest summers day in the Southern parts being thirteen houres and almost three quarters, and fifteen houres one quarter in the parts most Northwards.

The Countrey not alike in all places, as it is impossible it should in so great a compass. But generally it is of a pure and wholesome air, the high hills shading it on the one side from heat of the *Clime* under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sea, wherewith encompassed, cherishing a great part thereof. And so it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*. *Regio non alia in tota* Asia *salubrior habetur; temperatum cœlum, hinc perpetuum jugum opacum et umbrosum, quod æstus levat; illinc mare adjunctum, quod modico tepore terras fovet.* Then for the Earth, it is by reason of the great heat of the Sunne, very dry and sandy, in many parts destitute of water, few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by consequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatness of it: men loving to inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the use of water. Which notwithstanding, it is furnished with all necessaries both for life and pleasure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as shall be shewed in the description of the several Provinces.

The people antiently were trained up to the warres, but chiefly unto *Archerie* from their very childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many wives as they pleased, they never saw the children begotten of them, untill five years old. At that age sent unto their Fathers, they were taught presently to handle the *Bow* and *Arrows*. Upon this ground we find the *Bow of Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeremy* chap. 4. and the *Quiver of Elam* by the Prophet *Esaiah* chap. 22. *v.* 6. as the Armes peculiar to that Nation, or most used amongst them. They were good *horsemen* also, and well skilled at their darts and slings, till wealth, and ease, and the pride of so great an Empire, made them wholly feminine: depriving them of those abilities both of mind and body, wherein they did excell most Nations in their harder times. In all their fortunes very obsequious, if not servile, to their Kings and Princes; in whose presence it was a crime to spit, but to deny obedience unto his commands an offence so heinous, as was not to be punished with less than the loss of life, and want of buriall. In this observance of their Kings, followed, if not out-stripped, by the modern *Persian*. A race of men, affirmed to be *cunctorum hominum mitissimi*, the most meek or patient of the world, especially compared with those of the same Religion, the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of learning, as the *Turks*; But studious, many of them in *Physick*, and *Astrology*; most of the better sort much delighted in *Poetry*, which they give their minds to. For the most part addicted to *hospitality*, magnificent in expence, Lordly in their complements, fantastical in their Apparell, maintainers of *Nobility*, and desirous of peace. Such as apply themselves to *Trades*, and Mechanick arts, prove excellent in the making of Silkes, and Cloth of Gold: those which betake themselves to warre, proving very good Souldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their cost, who by their long warres against them have got nothing but blows. The women said to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightfull in the sequestrations of pleasure.

Their *Religion* at the first was *Paganism*, wherein directed principally by their Priests or *Magi*; men of a strict austere life, forbidding outward ornaments, and the use of gold; making the ground their bed, and the Herbs their food: their whole time spent in offering to the Gods the prayers and sacrifices of the people, as if they onely might be heard; or else in divinations and foretelling of things to come, from whence the names of *Magick* and *Magician* are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not onely *Philosophi*, Lovers of wisdome; but *Philothei*, the Lovers of God. Of such esteem that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Persian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the discipline of the *Magi*: and of such power and intimacy in the Royall Court, that one of those *Magi*, on the death of *Cambyses*, possessed himself of the *Persian* Monarchy. In a word, such as the *Druides* were to the *Galls* and *Britans*, the *Gymnosophists* or *Brachmans* to the antient *Indians*, and the *Chaldæans* in the Empire of *Babylon*, the same, if not of greater sway in affairs of moment, were the *Persian Magi*. And *Persians* they must be if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Countrey being to be admitted of that Society: though by a *Metaphor* applied to the Professors of the same Arts, though of other Countries; as those which came from the East to worship *Christ* are by Saint *Matthew* called *Magi* (*Mat.* 2. 1.) though they came from *Arabia*.

The people then were *Gentiles* as to their Religion; and besides other Gods which the *Gentiles* worshipped, they were great *Idolaters* of the *Fire*; which they offered sacrifice unto in time of peace, and carried it with them as their *Tutelar Deitie* in the time of warre. At what time (especially if the King were there in person) it was born in the very front of their Army, attended on by their *Priests*, and followed by a train of boyes all clothed in Scarlet, to the number of 365. according to the number of the daies of the year. In this equipage, with a great deal of pomp besides, did *Darius* set forwards to fight with *Alexander*, at the battell of *Issus* in *Cilicia*. A superstition derived from them to the *Medes* and *Assyrians*, their next-neighbouring Nations, and not extinguished to this day in some parts of this Countrey; in which many of these *Fire-worshippers* are still remaining. But from a God, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman-Usher*, and to attend on Kings and persons of greatest eminence: used to be born before the Emperors of *Rome*, as a point of *State*. Insomuch that *Commodus* though fallen out with his Sister *Lucilla*, permitted her notwithstanding to enjoy her Seat in the publique *Theatre*, ἐν τῷ πρωτοκλισίῳ αὐτῆς, and fire to be born before her, as in former times; as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Christian faith was first planted in the Provinces of the *Persian* Kingdome by Saint *Thomas* the Apostle: and held in all points answerable to those of the *Catholick* Church, till *Sapores* to despight the Emperour *Heraclius*, a right *Orthodox* Prince, commanded that all the Christians in his Dominions should conform themselves to the opinions and tendries of the *Nestorian* Sect, by that means universally spread over all these Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled some *Armenian*

Chriſtians, who with their Patriarch removed hither, when their own Countrey was made the ſeat of a long and miſerable war betwixt the *Perſian* and the *Turk*: but found not here ſo ſafe a dwelling as they did expect, 1200 of them being ſlain by *Abas* the late *Perſian* Sultan, on a ſuſpicion that they went about to reconcile themſelves to the Pope of *Rome* (whom he held to be more inclinable to the *Turk* than to him,) in the year 1609. Which notwithſtanding (ſo miſerable a condition do theſe Chriſtians live in) he ſuffered two Convents of *Auguſtine* and *Carmelite* Friers, to be ſetled at the ſame time even in *Spaw-hawn* it ſelf; and many *Jeſuites* to live peaceably up and down the Countrey, which ſerve for little elſe than to give intelligence. Here are alſo many *Jews* diſperſed over all the Provinces of this Empire; allowed their *Synagogues*, and publick places of aſſembly. But the Religion publickly authorized and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, impoſed on this Countrey by the *Saracens*, when by them ſubdued: differing in ſome points from the *Turks*, eſpecially about the true Succeſſour of that falſ Seducer (of which more anon) the cauſe of the long wars betwixt thoſe nations.

As for the *Perſian* language it is very antient, ſuppoſed to be as old as the Confuſion at *Babell*: ſome words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra* which lived in the *Perſian* Court, have been made uſe of in ſome parts of the holy Scripture. A tongue which ſtill hath left ſome remainders of it, in the language of the modern *Perſian* (as thoſe of judgement in this tongue have delivered to us): notwithſtanding ſo long tract of time, and the conqueſt of this Countrey by the *Greeks*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*. Not ſpoken onely in this Countrey, nor limitted within the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire, but uſed alſo in the Court and Camp of the *Great Mongul*, and ſome parts of *Zagathay*: and where not *vulgar* unto all, ſtudied and underſtood by perſons of more eminent ſort, as the *Latine* by the Gentry of theſe weſtern parts. Inſomuch as he that hath this Language, may travell over all the *Eaſt* without an *Interpreter*.

Rivers here are but few, as before was ſaid, and thoſe few not navigable; by conſequence of little note or eſtimation. The principall of thoſe that be, are 1. *Eulæus*, the chief River of *Suſiana*, emptying it ſelf into *Sinus Perſicus*: a River of ſo pure a ſtream, that the great *Perſian* Kings would drink of no other water. 2. *Ochus* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongſt the Antients, becauſe it was navigable; opening with a fair Channel into the *Caſpian* Sea, to which it haſteneth from *Mount Taurus*; and ſo doth alſo, 3. *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a fatall bound to theſe great neighbours. A River which the *Perſians* have ſeldome paſſed to inlarge their dominions, but they received ſome notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*: and when the *Tartars* made over it under the conduct of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*, for the invaſion of *Perſia*, they were ſhamefully beat back again by *Hyſmael Sophie*. Nor is it leſs memorable in old ſtories for the famous paſſage of *Alexander* over it, in purſuit of the murderers of *Darius*. For having followed *Beſſus* to the banks of this River, and not knowing how to paſs over his men, there being neither ſhips upon it, nor timber neer at hand to build them, he cauſed a great number of bags and bladders to be ſtuffed with ſtraw, and ſo in 3 daies tranſported his Army. So that I may truely ſay with his own Hiſtorian, *Unum id Conſilium quod neceſſitas ſubjecerat, iniit*; neceſſity is the beſt Author of fine inventions. 4. *Zioberis* in *Hyrcania*, which riſing out of the ſame mountainous tract (as the two laſt-mentioned) after a long courſe above ground, in the open light, hideth himſelf again for the ſpace of 38 miles, and then breaketh out at a new fountain; and falleth into 5. *Rhadaga*, another chief River of thoſe parts. And this *Alexander* the *Great* found to be true, by caſting two Oxen into the River *Zioberis*, which by the current of the ſtream were carryed under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its riſe again. 6. *Hidero*, by what name known unto the Antients I am not able to ſay, but of great note amongſt modern *Travellers* for the fall thereof into the Sea: ſo ſteep and ſtrong, that the people are ſaid to ſacrifice or banket under the fall thereof, the ſtream ſo violently ſhooting over their heads, that it never wetteth them.

Mountains of moſt note, are thoſe which paſs by the name of *Taurus*, which having left *Media* on the Weſt, paſſeth thorow the Northern Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire, dividing *Parthia* from *Hyrcania*, and *Paropamiſus* from *Bactria*, and *Aria* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Coronus*, the *Seriphian* hills, *Paropamiſus*, *Caucaſus*; whereof more as occaſion ſerveth in their proper places.

It is divided into the particular Provinces of 1. *Suſiana*, 2. *Perſis*, 3. *Carmania*, 4. *Ormuz*, 5. *Gedroſia*, 6. *Drangiana*, 7. *Aria*, 8. *Parthia*, 9. *Arachoſia*, 10. *Paropamiſus*, 11. *Hyrcania*, and 12. *Margiana*. Which we will ſeverally ſurvey in the *Chorography* and ſtory, till we have joined them altogether in the *Perſian* Monarchy; and then purſue the hiſtory as conjunct and faſhioned into the body of one Empire.

1. *SUSIANA.*

SUSIANA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Perſis*; on the Weſt, with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*; on the North, with *Aſſyria*; on the South, with a branch of the River *Tigris*, and ſome part of the Gulf of *Perſia*.

It was ſo called *quaſi Cuſiana*, or the Land of the *Chuſites*, from *Chus* the eldeſt ſonne of *Ham*, and the grandſonne of *Noah*; by whoſe ſonne *Havilah*, it was firſt peopled; and therefore called in Scripture the land of *Havilah*, this being that land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to incompaſs, in the Book of *Geneſis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that land of *Havilah* lay on both ſides of the River *Euphrates*,

Euphrates (which the Countrey of *Suſiana* doth not) and was the Eaſtern bound of the *Iſmaelites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in thoſe parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is ſaid in the firſt of *Sam.* chap. 15. ver. 7. to *have ſmitten the* Amalekites *from* Sur *to* Havilah, that is ſay from the *Red Sea* to the gulf of *Perſia*: it muſt be underſtood of *Havilah* in the firſt extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the *Eaſt Indies* (ſo called from a ſonne of *Jocktan*) or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the Eaſt ſide of *Euphrates*, and is that *Suſiana*, in which now we are: it being no where found that *Saul* was ſo great a Traveller as to ſee the *Indies*; or of ſuch puiſſance as to force a paſſage thorow the Countreys of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being loſt, that of *Cuſiana* or *Suſiana* did ſtill remain; preſerved to this day in that of *Chuſeſtan*, by which now called.

The Countrey memorable in the Scriptures for *Gold*, *Bdellium*, and the *Onyx*-ſtone; which doth abundantly ſet forth the richneſs and commodities of it: *Bdellium* being a Tree (for of the other two nothing need be ſaid) about the bigneſs of an *Olive*, yielding a certain *Gum* very ſweet to ſmell to, but bitter of taſt; which in time hardneth to a *Pearl*, as *Eugubinus* and *Beroaldus* have delivered to us.

Divided antiently into many particular Regions, or at leaſt known by ſeverall names in its ſeverall quarters. For where it bordered upon *Tigris*, it was called *Meliſene*; *Cabandene*, where it touched upon *Perſis*; where it confined on the *Elymeans*, it had the name of *Caſſia*; and neer the wall or Ditch called *Vallum Paſini*, it was called *Characene*. Watered beſides *Eulæus*, and *Tigris* before ſpoken of; with the Rivers *Orontes*, and *Maſæus*, with that branch of the River *Tigris* which *Ptolomy* called *Baſilius*; *Curtius*, *Paſi-Tigris*; and the Scriptures, *Piſon*.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Aracca*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, the ſame which the Scriptures call *Erech*, and one of the four which *Nimrod* built in the firſt beginning of his Empire, *Gen.* 11. Remembred by *Tibullus* for the fountains of *Naphtah* (of which the *Medians* made their oyl ſpoken of before) a bituminous liquor, eaſily taking fire, but not eaſily quenched. Of which thus the Poet,

Audet Areccæis *aut unda perhoſpita Campis.*

Where by *unda perhoſpita*, he meaneth that *bituminous* liquor called *Napthta*, iſſuing from the fields of *Erech*, as the learned *Salmaſius* hath obſerved in his notes on *Solinus*. 2. *Suſa*, the *Shuſan* of the book of *Heſter*, and *Nehemiah*, honoured with the reſidence of the *Perſian* Monarchs in winter, as *Ecbatana* in ſummer. Situate on the River *Eulæus*, by the Prophet *Daniel* called *Ulai*. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Memnon* the ſonne of *Tithonus*, ſlain by the *Theſſalonians* in the *Trojan* warres: the walls whereof as *Caſſiodorus* hath reported, cemented with Gold. But howſoever, it was doubtleſs a magnificent City, and of infinite wealth: *Alexander* finding in it 50000 *Talents* of gold uncoined, beſides ſilver wedges, and Jewels of ineſtimable value. Memorable for the great feaſt here made by *Ahaſuerus* of 180 dayes continuance for his Lords and Princes: imitated by the *Perſian* Sultans to this very day; who with a Royal Feaſt of the like continuance do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruine, and perhaps not that. 3. *Elymais*, the chief City of the *Elymæi*, by *Ptolomy* (unleſs his Copies be corrupted) miſtakingly called *Eldimæi*. Situate on the banks of *Eulæus* alſo, neer the border of *Perſis* (the Nation of the *Elamites* or *Elymæi* taking part of both Provinces). Of great note antiently for a ſumptuous Temple of *Diana*, ſacrilegiouſly ranſacked by *Antiochus*, of which ſee 1 *Mac.* 6. 2. and of ſuch wealth, by reaſon of the concourſe of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Severus Sulpitius* calleth it *Oppidum opulentiſſimum*, a moſt opulent City. 4. *Sela*, on the banks of *Eulæus* alſo; reckoned by *Ammianus* amongſt the moſt eminent of this Province: ſo named from *Selah* the ſonne of *Arphaxad*, who firſt planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Suſa* is aſcribed by *Euſtathius* in his *Hexameron*, Σελὰ ἀφ' ὃ Σουσίδος are that Authors words; perhaps more truly than to *Memnon*: and unto whom the Original of the *Coſſæi*, whom *Ptolomy* placeth in this tract, is referred by *Euſebius*. 5. *Tarſiana*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice onely of the chiefeſt,) the ſame no doubt which *Ptolomy* calls *Tariana*, and joynes next to *Sela*. 6. *Agra*, upon the banks of *Tigris*, not farre from *Erech*. But there is litle left of theſe, but what is to be found in the antient Writers; now hardly viſible in their Ruins; The Towns of moſt note now remaining, being 1. *Jaaroome*, inhabited for the moſt part by *Jewes*, of which here are no fewer than a thouſand familes; ſuppoſed to be the deſcendants of thoſe whom *Salmanaſſar* tranſplanted out of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*. 8. *Sanm*. 9. *Caſa*; of which litle memorable.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Chuſites* of the houſe of *Havilah*, the ſonne of *Chus*; the *Coſſæi* and the *Suſiani*, deſcended from *Sala* the ſonne of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elymæi*, the poſterity of *Elam* the ſonne of *Sem*. Betwixt the two laſt Nations long and frequent warres, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Aſſyria* compoſed the differences; by making both ſubject to their Empire. After this, nothing memorable in the ſtory of it, till the tranſplanting of the *ten Tribes* into the Regions of *Aſſyria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Iſraelites* were removed hither; ſo many of this Nation were ſent out (with others) to poſſeſs themſelves of the void places of thoſe *Tribes*. Called *Cutheans* by the *Jews*, becauſe the moſt conſiderable number of them came from this Province, called in the Scriptures *Cuſh*, by *Joſephus Cutha*, and by him reckoned for a Region of *Perſia*, as indeed it was, the time wherein he lived conſidered: difference onely in the Dialect or form of ſpeech, that Countrey which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*, being named *Cuth* by the *Chaldeans*; by the *Perſians Chuzeſtan*: that name continuing to this day.

2. PERSIS.

PERSIS hath on the East, *Carmania*; on the West, *Suſiana*; on the North, *Media*; and on the South, ſome part of the *Perſian* Bay or *Sinus Perſicus*, which took name from hence. The reaſon of the name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in fine gave both name and law to the reſt of this Empire. It had antiently been called *Cephene*, but now moſt commonly by the name of *Fars*, or *Farſiſtan*; more neer to *Pharas*, the old name of it both in the *Arabick* and *Hebrew*.

Such parts hereof as lie towards the North are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either fruit or corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very cleer. Thoſe parts which lie towards the *Perſian* Gulf, of as bad a nature, though of different quality, ſandy, and hot, and beareth little fruit but *Dates*, and few trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both there lieth a rich and pleaſant Countrey, abounding with corn, fruit, and cattell; great ſtore of Roſes, of Roſe-water conſequently, wherewith and with thoſe skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occaſion, they uſe to furniſh all the adjoining Provinces. And to make up the *Character* of a happie Countrey, to which nothing wanteth, it is well ſtored with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are 1. *Bagradas*, which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2. *Rhogomanes*, by ſome called *Araxes*, now *Bindimir*, on whoſe banks ſtood the renowned *Perſepolis*. 3. *Orontes*, dividing *Perſis* from *Suſiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4. *Briſoana*, ending its courſe in the ſame Sea alſo.

Mountains of note I find not any but thoſe which part this Region from *Suſiana*; not known by any ſpeciall name (for ought I can find) but of ſufficient note for the difficult paſſages out of one Countrey into the other, called *Pyla Perſidis*, defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Perſian*, againſt *Alexander* the *Great*, who was here very handſomely beaten, and forced to ſave himſelf by a cloſe retreat. And though *Alexander* was ſhewed a *By-path* afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* ere he was aware; yet he was taught by this hard leſſon, that if thoſe who kept the ſtraits of *Cilicia*, and the banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates* had made like reſiſtance, he had not bought the *Perſian Monarchy* in ſo cheap a Market.

It was divided antiently into *Paraticine*, bordering on *Media*. 2. *Mardiene*, joining on the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*. 3. *Miſdia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the ſeverall nations intetmingled here as in other places, had their ſeverall Cities. The chief whereof 1. *Auſinza*, ſeated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas* and *Briſoana*. 2. *Jonacapolis*, on the ſame Bay alſo, neer the influx of *Rhogomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3. *Axima*, more within the land, now called *Lanſilla*. 4. *Marraſium*. 5. *Obroatis*, or *Orebatis*, as ſome Copies have it. 6. *Paſarracha*, in the *Greek* text of *Ptolomy* called *Paſacgadæ*, and *Paſagrada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch. Which violated by a Souldier of *Alexanders*, in hope of finding ſome rich booty, he met with nothing but this modeſt inſcription, *Cyrus ego ſum qui* Perſicum *regnum conſtitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum telluris invideas, qua corpus meum obtegitur*. The Sacrilegious Souldier though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7. *Perſepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the East, called therefore *Regia Orientis*, by *Qu. Curtius*; ſituate neer the banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the moſt part of *Cypreſs* wood, the walls of the houſes being made of Marble, digged out of an adjoining Mountain. Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at large deſcribes it, to be the richeſt and goodlieſt City in all the world. And well we may believe him for the richneſs of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents*, in ready money for his own ſhare, after the Souldiers had made what ſpoil they liſted of coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewells of unſpeakable value. But the chief beauty of it was the Royall Palace, built on an hill, environed with a treble wall, the firſt of 16 Cubits height, the ſecond of thirty, and third of ſixty; all of them of black poliſhed marble, with ſtately battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Turrets; which gave to the beholders far and neer a moſt goodly Proſpect. Nor was the inſide of leſs beauty, than the out-ſide of Majeſty: the Roofs thereof ſhining with Ivory, ſilver, gold, and Amber; and the Kings throne being wholly compoſed of Gold, and the richeſt Pearls. But rich and ſtately though it were, and one of the greateſt Ornaments of the Eaſtern world; it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit conſumed with fire, at the inſtigation of *Lais* that infamous ſtrumpet; as in revenge for ſo many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Perſians* formerly had burnt in the *Grecian* warres. And though *Alexander* in his ſober ſenſe did repent him of it, and gave order that it ſhould be re-edified; yet did it never riſe to its former height; the Conquerour dying ſhortly after, and that purpoſe with him. So ruined in the age of *Qu. Curtius*, (who lived in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*), that he profeſſeth *veſtigium ejus non inveniri niſi* Araxes *amnis oſtenderet*, that no footſteps of it had been found, if not ſhewn and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whoſe banks it ſtood. But by the fall thereof roſe 8. *Shyras*, now the chief City of this Province, ſituate in a fair large plain hemmed about with mountains, under one of which it is pleaſantly ſeated; in compaſs about nine miles, well built and beautified with fair Gardens and magnificent *Moſques*: two of which larger than the reſt, are made more eminent by the addition of two *Spires* or Steeples covered with a painting of *Gold* and *Azure*; the fabricks for the moſt part of *Moſaick* work, as light almoſt by night as day, by reaſon of a thouſand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is ſaid by a modern *Traveller*) which for *good wine, pretty women, pleaſant fruits, and a gallant People*, may hold compariſon with the beſt in *Perſia*. 9 *Moyown*, on the North-eaſt of *Shyras*, delightfully ſituate amongſt woods and fruitfull paſtures, and bleſſed not onely with good wine, but wholeſome waters; of which laſt, few parts of *Perſia* have much

much cauſe to brag. 10. *Bamaraw*, on the Southweſt of *Shyras* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the ruines of an antient Caſtle, ſituate on the top of a lofty mountain. 11. *Goyaam*, a Town of a thouſand houſes. 12. *Berry*, of no great bigneſs, but of moſt eſteem by reaſon of a fair *Moſque*, a School for the *Arabick* tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their falſe Prophets; of which the *Perſians*, beſides *Mahomet* and *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The firſt Inhabitants here were of the poſterity of *Elam* the ſonne of *Sem*, and ſuch who under his conduct were ſetled here; called from hence *Elamites* in the uſual ſtile of holy Scriptures, by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, *Elymai*: who ſpreading themſelves into *Suſiana*, and by degrees alſo into other Provinces, became ſo conſiderable, that the name of *Elamite* and *Elam* were of great renown: having a language to themſelves diſtinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Act.* 2. and comprehending under that appellation the adjoining Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*, where *Suſa* is ſaid to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Perſia*, hath been ſhewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of the *Meſabata*, *Rapſii*, *Hippophagi*, *Suzai*, *Megores*, and *Stabai*, were at firſt under the command of their own Princes onely: amongſt which *Cherdolaomer* is of greateſt fame, who having the conduct of ſome *Adventurers* of this nation, aſſociated himſelf with *Amramphel* the leader of ſome *Aſſyrian* Troops: and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Aſſyria* invaded *Paleſtine*, ſubdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* priſoner, and in the end were overthrown by the forces of *Abraham*. Of no note after this expedition till the time of *Perſes* the Father of *Achamenes*, who being *Provinciall* Governour of theſe Countreys under *Sardanapalus*, joined with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the war againſt him: and by the victory, got for himſelf the dominion over thoſe eſtates, which he had formerly ruled for the *Aſſyrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the *Supreme Lords*; Whoſe Succeſſours, till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order thus.

The Kings of *Perſis*.

1. *Perſes*, from whom perhaps the name of *Perſis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Perſeus* the ſonne of *Danae*; or the ſonne of that *Perſeus* by *Andromeda*.
2. *Achamenes*, from whom the *Perſians* had the name of *Achamenii*, and the ſucceeding Kings were called *Achamenides*.
3. *Cambyſes*, in ſome places of *Herodotus* called alſo *Darius*.
4. *Cyrus*, from whoſe ſecond ſonne named *Teiſpeus*, deſcended that *Darius*, the ſonne of *Hyſtaſpis*, one of the ſeven *Perſian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the preſent line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.
5. *Cambyſes* II. the ſonne of *Cyrus*.
6. *Cyrus* II. ſurnamed the *Great*, ſonne of *Cambyſes* and *Mandane* the daughter of *Aſtyages* King of *Media*: who joining with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and tranſlated thereby the Supreme power to the *Medes* and *Perſians*. Of which more hereafter.

CARMANIA.

CARMANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Gedroſia*, and ſome part of *Aria*; on the Weſt, with part of *Perſis*, and the Gulf of *Perſia*, from hence called alſo by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*; on the North, with *Parthia*; and on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief People of it: but the reaſon of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Chyrman*; thoſe parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deſerta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by ſome *Dulcinde*.

The Countrey for the moſt part barren, and but ill inhabited. That part which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deſerta*, being truly ſuch; a wildemeſs or very *Deſart*, having in it neither Town nor village, but ſome ſcattered houſes, and thoſe but ill provided of food and neceſſaries, full of unprofitable ſands, deſtitute of water; and of a very hot and unhealthy air. And though the other part hereof which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Seacoaſt of above 200 leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themſelves into it, yet are they not the richer by it: the ſhores being full of rocks, and the Rivers ſmall; ſo that they neither have good Port nor ſafe coming to it. The beſt commodities hereof (beſides their *Manufactures*) are *Dates*, *Myrrhe*, *Arſenic*, ſome few mines of ſilver, more of braſs and iron, and good ſtore of *Alabaſter*. In which regard, the Inhabitants hereof were antiently called *Ichthyophagi*, becauſe they lived wholly upon *fiſh*, the Countrey yielding little elſe for the life of man. Carmani *ſine veſte ac fruge, ſine pecore ac ſedibus, piſcium cute ſe velant, carne veſcuntur, prater capita toto corpore hirſuti.* The *Carmans* (ſaith *Pomponius Mela*) have neither fruits, nor rayment, nor houſe, nor cattel; but cloth themſelves with the skins, and feed themſelves with the fleſh of fiſhes; hairie not onely in their heads, but over all their bodies alſo. Where by the way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* muſt be out in his informations, who telleth us of theſe very *Carmans*, that their Countrey though far leſs than that of *Arabia Felix*, and far more obſcure, was as well repleniſhed with Rivers, and for fertility of ſoil not inferior to it. But we muſt underſtand the one of the beſt parts of *Carmania*; the other of *Deſerta* onely.

Amongſt

Amongst the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the rest, he mentioneth 1. *Saganis*, 2. *Sagareus*, and 3. *Hydriacus*. Of which *Saganis* onely is named by *Ptolomy*, the other Rivers or the same under divers names, being 1. *Dara*, 2. *Andanius*, 3. *Cathrappus*, 4. *Achindana*, 5. *Salsus* (the *Sagareus* as I take it of *Ammianus*) 6. *Candriaces*, 7. *Zoromba*, and 8. *Samidace*, most of them falling into the Gulf of *Persia*, few navigable, or of any use in the way of trading.

Mountains of most note 1. that called *Semiramis*, from some exploit of that great Lady. 2. *Strongelus*, so named from the roundnes of it; and 3. a continued ridge of hills, dividing this Countrey from *Gedrosia*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Cantharis*, 2. *Agris*, 3. *Tisa*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the names of Cities. 4. *Cyrza*, and 5. *Gocharta*, two Port-Towns. 6. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conquerour, who here or hereabouts kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon. 7. *Portospani*, by *Ammianus* called *Ortospana*, and by him reckoned amongst the faireſt and richeſt of all the Countrey. 8. *Armuzi*, (or *Armuzium* as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the shore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory neer-adjoining, and to the Noble Isle of *Ormus*, of which more anon. 9. *Gunbroone*, not long since a poor village; but since the fall of *Ormus* (from which not above nine miles distant) grown a populous Town, consisting at the least of a thousand houses. 10. *Jasques*, at the opening of the *Persian* Gulf into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it called *Carpella*, is of late named *Capodi Jasques*. 11. *Carmania*, the *Metropolis* or mother City of the Province, in former times of good esteem; and now of passing good repute both for cloth of gold, and the making of the best *Scymitars*. A weapon of such value amongst the *Mahometans*, and so esteemed of by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of their Navy at the battle of *Corfu*, *Anno* 1574. most of them who were taken *Prisoners* threw their *Scymitars* into the Sea, for fear the *Christians* should be masters of such excellent weapons. It is now called *Chyrmin*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the antient name. 12. *Lar*, more within the land towards *Persis*, seated in a barren and inhospitable Countrey, full of huge heaps of sands, both loose and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind sitteth into plains and Mountains; without grass, water, herbs, or any other necessary for the use of Travellers, the City being served with rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in cisterns. The City notwithstanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long since to the number of 5000 houses; of which the greatest part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an earthquake: now most remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces square; a goodly *Mosque*, adorned with *Masaick* work, and a strong Castle seated on the top of an hill, furnished with great plenty of Ordinance brought hither from *Ormus*. This once a Kingdome of it self, or the head City of a Kingdome, acknowledging no subjection to the *Persian Sophies*: till conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chawn* Duke of *Shyras*, who sent hence as much treasure as was said to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole posterity, *Anno* 1604. or thereabouts. 13. *Tecoa*, or *Dea-chow*, a Town of the jurisdiction of *Lar*, not far from which is a huge wall cut out of the solid rock by incredible labour, which served formerly both for the boundary and defence of that sandy Kingdome against the *Persians*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof, were the posterity of *Sabta*, the sonne of *Chus*, who wanting room on the coast of *Arabia Felix*, where they were first planted, passed over into *Sophta* (from them so named) an Island of the *Persian* Gulf, and afterwards into the main land of *Carmania*, where they built and gave name to the City of *Sabis*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. Divided in some tract of time into the severall Nations of the *Sazotæ*, *Aræ*, *Charadræ*, *Chelonophagi*, *Cabadinæ*, and *Pasagardæ*.

Neither the People nor the Countrey memorable in the way of story; but by Accident onely: it being here that *Alexander* being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, in imitation of *Bacchus*, who first conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually feasting with his friends, on a scaffold drawn with eight horses; his Companions following in their Chariots: some adorned with Purple and Silk; others with Flowers and Green Boughs; themselves wearing Garlands on their heads, and carrying their Carowsing Cups in their hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler seen: all their Armour, was Cups, Barrells, and Flaggons; their Skirmishing Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minstrells, playing on their Fluits; by Women, dancing; Boyes, shouting; all playing the drunken Foolls most naturally. Thus march they through the Countrey of *Carmania*, in as great dissoluteness, as if *BACCHUS* himself had indeed been there, and led the Mummery; and for seaven whole daies this sottishness continued. So that *Curtius* well observeth, *Si quid victis saltem adversus comessantes animi fuisset, mille hercule viri, modo & sobrii, septem dierum crapula graves in suo triumpho capere potuerunt*: a thousand *Persians*, sober and well provided, had their hearts been answerable to so good an opportunity, might have destroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the honour of their Countrey, and their own liberty.

4. ORMUS.

ORMUS, not so much memorable for the greatness, as the wealth, the conveniency of the situation of it, is an Iland situate in the entrance of the *Persian* Gulf: commanding not long since over some part of the Continent of *Carmania*, and some few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and most of the Ilands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to speak of the Isle it self, we must take a brief survey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Persicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, so famous, so full of Ilands, and so much frequented (I use the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the name which *Ptolomy* calls *Armuza*) a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*, from which unto a Cape or foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants call *Muces*, the passage is so strait and narrow, that one may very easily see to the opposite shore. The Strait once passed, the Bay beginneth to open and inlarge it self, as farre at the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balsora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfalls is lost in the Sea. The whole Gulf measured by the shores of *Orbicular* form, in compass 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 *Italian* miles) in all the coasts and sides whereof the Villages and Towns stand exceeding thick, affording frequent passage to and fro for shipping. So farre, and to this purpose he. To which description of his, so exact and punctual, our late *Navigations* have not added much; but the change of names: the whole Bay being now called *Mare Elkatiffe*, and the entrances thereunto the Streits of *Balsora*; these last so called because they opened the way to the Town of *Balsora* the most noted Empory of those parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Isles hereof, besides those on the *Arabian* shore, of which we have already spoken, are, 1. *Taxiana*, on the coast of *Susiana*. 2. *Tabiana*. 3. *Sopththa*, and 4. *Alexandri*, or the Isle of *Alexander*, on the shores of *Persis*. Of which that which is called *Sopththa*, seems to take name from *Sabta* the sonne of *Chus*, planted upon the opposite shore of *Arabia Felix*, and therein giving name to the City of *Sapthta*, which we find in *Ptolomy*: And finally joyning to *Carmania*, there are the Ilands called 5. *Sugdana*, the chief Town whereof was anciently named *Miltus*; and 6. *Vorochtha*, situate at the very mouth of the Straits, now called *ORMUS*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armuza*, in *Carmania*, neer adjoyning to it, and unto which it did in former times belong.

This Iland situate as is said at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, is in compass about 20 miles, stony, and full of rocks, in a manner barren of all necessaries except salt, wherewith their very Rocks are covered, and of salt-stones many houses built. So destitute of all things fitting for the life of man, that the Inhabitants had all their victuals, even the very water which they drank, from some of the adjoyning Countries. The air so hot in time of Summer, that the people rest themselves in caves, covered over with wood, where they stand or sit in water up to the chinne: and have loop-holes in the tops of their houses to let in the wind. Which notwithstanding, in regard of the situation, it was of late one of the richest *Empories* in all the world, the wealth of *Persia* and *East-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by water to the River *Euphrates*, and so by boats or on camels backs, to *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripolis*; from whence dispersed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to some beyond.

The people hereof in their persons, habit, and Religion, participate somewhat of the *Arabians*, but most of the *Persians*. *Mahometans* for the most part of the *Suphian Sect*: the rest, but few in number, of the *Christian* faith, to which converted by the preachings of Father *Gasper*, a *Portugal Jesuite*; since the setling of that Nation there.

The chief and onely City was of the same name with the Iland, founded some seven hundred years a goe by one *Mahomet Dranka*, descended from the Kings of *Suba*, in *Arabia Felix*, who with many families of the *Sabaans* passed over the Straits into *Carmania*, and the Isles adjoyning, and liking the situation of this Iland, built this City in it, which he called *Ormus*, or *Armuzium*, according to the name of the Town and Promontory upon which it lieth. The City seated at one end of the Isle; about 2 miles in compass: well built, and adorned with a fair market place, some Churches, and a well-fortified Castle furnished with all necessaries to maintain a Siege. By reason of its wealth and resort of Merchants, grown to such esteem, that it gave occasion to this *Distich*,

Si terrarum Orbis unaquia patet, annulus esset,
Illius Ormusium gemma locaretur ibi, foret.

That is to say,

Were all the World a Ring, this Isle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the Stone.

It was first under its own King, whose dominion extended also into some part of the Continent on either side, and over all the rest of the Ilands within the Gulf. His *Revenue* of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was discovered under the conduct of *Albukerque*, *Anno* 1506. Who having fortified some part of it for their own defence, and made it the Staple of their trade for the *Indian Merchandise*; so enriched the same, that the *Revenues* of those Kings (though *Vassals* and Tributaries to the *Portugal*) amounted to 14000 *Serafs* yearly. In this flourishing state it stood till the year 1622. when *Abas* the *Sultan* of *Persia* having received some affront at the hands of the *Portuguese*, or desirous to remove the trade of *Ormuz* to some Port of his own, gave order to *Emangoly Chawn*, the Duke of *Shiraz*, to lay siege unto it, with an Army of 15000 men. Who seeing no hopes of mastering it by his land-forces only, furnished himself with the ships and Cannon of some *English* Merchants, to whom he promised many things which he never performed. For being once master of the City he destroyed it utterly, remov-

moving the Ordinance to *Lar*, the wealth thereof to his own treasurie of *Shiras*, the materials of the houses to *Gombroon* spoken of before: the *Portugueze*, and *Christian* natives passing over unto *Muskahat* in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the *English* Captains that adventured in it, were disappointed of the spoyl which they did expect: yet so much honour hath been given by the King of *Persia* to the *English* Nation, that their *Agent* who resideth at *Gombroon* takes custome of all strangers which do trafick thither.

5. GEDROSIA.

GEDROSIA is bounded on the West, with *Carmania*; on the East, with *Cambaia* or *Guzarat* a Province of *India*; on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Drangiana* and *Arachosia*. The reason of the name I find not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Gest*; by *Castaldus*, *Circan*.

The Countrey desolate and barren, like the worst part of *Carmania*, much destitute of fresh water, and covered over with loose sands, dangerous to the native and stranger both. Some rain they have, but not sufficient to allay the heat and drouth which they suffer under, and yet by reason of that heat it affordeth in some places *Nard* and *Myrrhe*, with some other spices. Some *Brooks* here are, or rather *Torrents*, which falling from the hills do somewhat qualifie the indisposition of the soyl, and make it habitable, The chief of which was called *Arbius* antiently; the chief Mountain *Batius*.

Towns of most name in it, 1. *Rhagiana*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of a City; and 2. a Port or Harbor called *Mulierum portus*, or the *Haven of women*. 3. *Arbis*, upon the banks of the River *Arbius*, presented to us also by the name of a City. 4. *Musarna*, the chief of the *Musarna*, a chief tribe of this Countrey. 5. *Parsis*, or rather *Easis*, as the *Greek* text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Ptolomy*. 6. *Gest*, the chief City at the present; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Masarna* bordering on *Arachosia*, the *Parsira* towards *Carmania*, the *Rhamna* on the banks of *Indus*, and the *Orbita*, or *Arbituri*; on the shores of the Ocean. The Countrey of no note in preceding times, till made famous by the follies of *Alexander*. Who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Porus* that there was litle hopes of the Conquest of *India*, would needs make a fruitless voyage to see the Ocean. And having satisfied himself with the sight of that furious Element (as if his very seeing it had sufficiently subdued it to him), landed his Army on this coast. Where in his march for want of victuals, water, and other necessaries, he lost more men in the vast and uncomfortable Desarts of this Countrey, than in all the military services he had put them too: the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting 15000 Horse, and 120000 Foot, whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiscretion.

6. DRANGIANA.

DRANGIANA hath on the South, *Gedrosia*; on the North and West bounded with *Aria*; on the East, with *Arachosia*; So called from *Drangus*, now *Ilment*, the chief River of it: the modern name thereof being *Segestan*, from *Sige*, the now principall City.

The Countrey very hilly, and so closed with Mountains, that the River above named is scarce able to force its passage thorow them. Of no great beauty to invite or reward a Conqueror; yet with the rest, brought under the great *Persian* Monarchs; the fortunes of which Crown they have alwaies followed. So meanly planted that *Ptolomy* findeth in it but ten Towns of name: the chief whereof, 1. *Ariaspe*, mistook perhaps for *Agriaspe*; and if so, then the mother City of the *Agriaspa*, whom *Curtius* placeth in this Tract. 2. *Propthasia*, by some of the Antients called *Phradag*, the Metropolis of this poor Province; much boasted of by the old Inhabitants hereof who had seen no better, (as Countrey-villagers use to brag of the next market-Town) and said by *Ammianus* to be rich, and of high renown, the quality of the place considered. Still of some note amongst the Natives, by whom called *Sistan*. 3. *Arivada*. 4. *Pharazana*, of which nothing memorable. 5. *Sige*, now of most credit in this Countrey, from hence called *Segestan*. 6. *Timocani*. 7. *Mulebet*, the chief seat of the Kindome of *Aladine*, or *Aleadine*, who had here a *Fooles-Paradise* of his own, of which more anon.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Barii*, and the *Daranda*, from which last, the greatest of the two, the Countrey might perhaps be called originally *Darandiana*, abbreviated to *Drandiana*, and at last corrupted easily into *Drangiana*. But I offer this onely as conjecturall. They were called also by some Writers by the name of *Arabians*, and that as *Ammianus* thinks, because they descended from that people: but I think rather from a branch of the River *Arabius*, which parteth this Countrey from *Gedrosia*. For I conceive the *Arabians* were too wise to forsake their own Countrey, and go so farre, to get so litle by the bargain. Together with the rest of the *Persian* Provinces, subdued by *Alexander*, who being in this Countrey, hapned on the discovery of the treason intended against him by *Philotas*, the sonne of *Parmenio*, the most renowned of all his Captains. After this litle memorable till these later daies, when it grew famous by means of *Aladine* a seditious *Persian*, Lord of the vally of *Mulebet*, spoken of before, who there made a *terestrial Paradise*, which he promised to all his *Partizans*: but the company growing too great for the safety of the Kingdome, they were quickly dispersed: and *Aladine*, with his *Fools-Paradise*, both taken away together, Anno 1262. Some attribute this fiction of *Paradise* to *Haidarules*, the Mountain King of *Taurus*, vanquished by *Selim* the first. The whole story is this, out of *Paulus Venetus*. *Aladine*

Ladine inhabited a valley in this Countrey, the entrance into which he fortified with a strong Castle called *Tigado*. Hither he brought all the lusty youths and *beautifull maidens* of the adjoyning Provinces. The women were confined to their chambers, the men to prison; where having endured much sorrow, they were severally cast into dead sleeps, and conveyed to the women: by whom they were entertain'd with all the pleasures, youth and lust could desire, or a sensuall mind affect. Having injoyed this happiness a whole day, they were in a like sleep conveyed to their irons. Then would *Aladine* inform them how they had been in *Paradise*, and that he could seat them there eternally; if they durst hazard themselves in his quarrels. This when they had sworn to do, they were destinated to the *massacre* of such Princes as were like to prove his bad neighbours; and they accordingly did execution. But neither he nor *Aladeules* were the first who trained up their followers in the Arts of murder. One there was before either of them, whom the Writers of those times call the *Old man of the Mountains*, inhabiting the mountainous parts of *Tyre* and *Sidon*; and from thence sending his Disciples in the like *Temptations*, to make away the Western Princes whom he stood in fear of, during the course of the *Holy warres*. For out of his *School* came those Wretches, who murdered the Count of *Tripolis*, being in the Church at his Devotions; and desperately slew *Conrade* Marques of *Montferrat*, walking openly in the market-place at *Tyre*; and with like carelessenes of their own lives dangerously wounded Prince *Edward* (after King of *England*) sitting in his Tent. These the *Italians* call *Assassines*, (whence the word to *Assassinate*) intimating thereby a desperate *Cut-throat*, but the reason of that name is not yet agreed on: mistakingly by some *Latine* Writers of the darker times called *Arsacidæ*, and their commander *Rex Arsacidarum*, as if descended from *Arsaces*, the founder of the *Arsacidan* race of the Kings of *Persia*.

7. *ARACHOSIA.*

ARACHOSIA hath on the West, *Drangiana*; on the East, the great River *Indus*; on the South, *Gedrosia*; and *Paropomisus* on the North. So called from *Arachosia* the chief City of it; but now best known by the name of *Cabul*, the name of the chief City at this present.

Of the Countrey I find little spoken, but that it is watered with a branch of the River *Indus*, or rather with some nameless River which falleth into it. By the overflowings whereof is made a Lake which *Ammianus* calleth *Arachotoscrene*, by *Ptolomy* called *Arachotos*, after the name of *Arachotos* the chief Town of it, neer to which it is.

Towns here were once thirteen, whose names and situation we find in *Ptolomy*, but little or nothing of them in other Writers. The principal, 1 *Arochotos*, on the Lake so named, said to be built by *Semiramis* in her march towards *India*, and by her to have been named *Cephene*. 2. *Alexandria*, or (for distinctions sake) *Alexandria Arachosiæ*, the work of *Alexander* the *Great*, in his like march against the *Indians*: built at the foot of one of the branches of Mount *Taurus* shooting towards the South, and peopled with a Colony of 7000 old *Macedonian* Souldiers, foresent with age, and with the travel of the wars, whom he left there to inhabit it: his Army being here recruited with the forces which had served under *Parmenio*, consisting of 12000 *Grecians* and *Macedonians*. It is now called *Cabul*, accounted the cheif City of it, in that capacity gives the name of *Cabul* unto all the Province. 3. *Arbaca*, seeming by the name to be the work of one *Arbaces*, but whether of *Arbaces* the great King of the *Medes*, I am not able to say. 4. *Choaspa*, neer some River of that name, as I conjecture; there being besides *Choaspes* the chief River of *Media*, another of that name also in *India*; and probably another hereabouts to give name to this Town. 5. *Phoclis*, 6. *Sigara*, 7. *Dammana*, of which I find nothing but the names. 8. *Sin*, now a Town of name amongst them, but not much observable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Pargyetæ*, called also *Arimaspæ*, and *Euergetæ*, a powerfull Nation of themselves, brought under the command of *Alexander* by means of *Amenides*, sometimes the Secretary of *Darius*, whom he made their Governour. And besides them the *Syeri*, *Rophitæ*, and the *Eoritæ*, which three made up the main body of the *Arachosians*, committed by *Alexander* to the government and command of *Menon*. Following after this the fortunes of the *Persian* Empire, they changed their Masters as that did, till the comming in of the *Tartars*. Since that time governed for the most part by a King of their own, especially since the dividing of the Kingdome of *Persia* amongst *Tamerlanes* children: some of which held it as a distinct estate, by the names of the Kings of *Cabul*; till growing great by the conquest of some parts of *India*, they took unto themselves the name of the *Great Mongul*; Now Lords not onely of this Countrey, but of the greatest part of *India* on this side of *Ganges*: of whom we shall speak more when we are in *India*, that being the chief Seat of their Power and Empire.

8. *PARAPOMISUS.*

PAROPAMISUS is bounded on the South, with *Arachosia*; on the North, with *Bactria*, from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*, which is here called *Paropamisus*, by the name of the Countrey: on the East, with some part of *India*; on the West, with *Aria*. So called *quasi Paropanesus*, from the resemblance which it hath to an Island, begirt on all sides almost with Rivers: in which respect by *Ptolomy* called *Paropanisus*, and not *Paropamisus*; by which last name the *Latins* for the most part call it, some of them *Paropamissus*, with a double *ss*. But that

name being loſt long ſince, it is now by ſome called *Dache*, by others *Candahor*, but moſt commonly *Sableſtan*.

The Countrey mountainous and hilly, here and there intermixt with Valleys: the Mountains of great height, and exceeding barren; the Valleys indifferent fruitful, but ſo over-ſhadowed with thoſe hills, that the cleereſt day in ſome places ſeems but like a twilight. The people as obſcure as their Countrey, ſcarce known to any of their neighbours in the time of *Alexander*; the barbarous nations neereſt to them eſteeming them unworthy of their acquaintance. *Agreſte hominum genus, & inter Barbaros maxime incognitum*, as it is in *Curtius*.

Rivers of moſt note herein, 1. *Oxus*, (of which before) which riſing out of Mount *Caucaſus*, paſſeth Northwards, and afterwards divideth *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*. 2. *Dargamanis*, 3. *Coacus*, both owing their original to ſome of the branches of Mount *Taurus*. Which chain of hills, beginning hereabouts to draw towards their end, are towards the Weſt called *Paroetes*, where they give being to the River *Dargamanis*, before named; more Eaſtward they have the name of *Paropamiſus*; and *Caucaſus* they are properly called where they are thwarted by *Imaus*, in the very point, as it were, where *Scythia*, *India*, and the *Perſian* territories do encounter Each other. The hills in that place mounted to ſo great an height, that from the tops thereof the Stars appear much greater than in other places: the riſing and ſetting of which are from hence eaſily diſcerned: made memorable by the fable of *Prometheus*, who is ſaid to have been bound here by command of *Jupiter*; on which, *viſtum Promethea fuiſſe antiquitas tradit*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. *Prometheus* is indeed by the Poets feigned to have ſtoln fire from heaven, and to have made a man of clay: for which preſumptuous fact, *Jupiter* bound him on the hill *Caucaſus*; where a *vulture* continually fed on his his Liver. But according either to the truth of Story, or their gueſs at leaſt, who make ſome Story the ground of Every Fable; *Prometheus* being a very wiſe man, inſtructed the dead and clayie carcaſſes of others with wiſedome; and that being very deſirous to learn the nature of the ſtarres, (which is the fire he ſtole from heaven) he made the higheſt part of Mount *Caucaſus* his ſtudie, where the inward care he had to accompliſh his deſire, might juſtly have been compared to a *Vulture* gnawing on his entrails; and of this opinion is Saint *Auguſtine*. But far more memorable is it made for being the reſting place of the Ark of *Noah*, whereof we have already ſpoken in our Generall Preface.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Naulibis*, and 2. *Ortoſpana*, both named by *Ptolomy*, and reckoned by *Ammianus* for the moſt famous of this Countrey. But in what their fame conſiſted I cannot find. 3. *Parſiana*, 4. *Gazaca*, 5. *Doreacana*, 6. *Bagarda*; all named by *Ptolomy*; but not elſe obſervable. 7. *Candahor*, now the *Metropolis* of the Countrey, a Town of great trade, by reaſon of the ſituation of it on the borders of *India*; in that reſpect giving to the whole Countrey the name of *Candahor*. By which name reckoned for a Kingdome, and uſed amongſt the many titles in the *Stile Imperiall*. Nothing conſiderable of it in the courſe of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Perſian* Monarchs, it followed the fortune of the reſt till theſe latter times; when the *Perſians* being overlaid by the *Tartars*, it became ſubject to ſome Kings of the race of *Tamerlane*, reigning in this Province, till brought under by the Kings of *Cabul*, of the ſame extraction. Finding thoſe Kings intent on the conqueſt of *India*, they freed themſelves from all ſubjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600. or thereabouts, when the laſt King, unable to defend himſelf againſt *Abdura* King of the *Usbeques* (a *Tartarian* people, but ſubject in ſome ſort to the Crown of *Perſia*) ſurrendred his Kingdome to *Eſtobar* the *Great Mongul* (deſcended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whoſe dominions border cloſe upon it. Recovered to the *Perſian* Crown by *Mirza* the ſonne of *Abas*, and father of *Saffie* the now Sultan; a Prince of much gallantry, but of more misfortunes: the *Perſian Sophies*, ſince that conqueſt, uſing the title of Kings of *Candahor*, in the Regal ſtile.

9. ARIA.

ARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Paropamiſus*; on the Weſt, with *Parthia*; on the North, with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*, from which laſt parted by the mountain *Bagoas*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, eſpecially by the *Grecians*, till changed (as they ſay) into *Media*, on the comming thither of *Medea*. For ſo *Pauſanias*, amongſt others, Παραγενομένη ἐς τὴν ἣ λεγομένην τότε Ἀρίαν, τότε ἀνδρὸς ἴδιον τὸ ὄνομα καλοῦσι Μήδους ἀπ' αὐτῆς, i. e. comming into the Countrey then called *Aria*, ſhe cauſed it after her own name to be called *Media*. But the name of *Aria* was not loſt, though it were removed; remaining proper to this Countrey till theſe later ages; now changed with little alteration into that of *Eri*.

The Countrey much ſubject unto heates, environed with deſarts, beaths, and forreſts; yet neer the mountains which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have ſome fruitful *Champagnes*; bearing very good fruits, and amongſt others, a ſtrong wine, and of long continuance; keeping both taſt and colour above 80 years. They have alſo here a *Drug* ſomewhat like to *Myrrhe*, and a kind of *Saphyr*, but not right.

Rivers of note I meet with none but that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Arias*, by the name of the Province, making a *Lake* of the ſame name. The fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Paropamiſus*, and the fall thereof in the ſaid *Lake*: the waters of it firſt increaſed by a nameleſs Streame falling from the Mountains called *Seriphi*, being that part of *Taurus* which divideth this Countrey from *Margiana*.

Antiently it was populous and well-inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Thoſe of moſt conſequence, 1. *Aria*, on the banks of the River *Arias*, the ſeat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* ſpeaketh of in this Tract: but whether they received this name from the Province, or beſtowed their own nam:

name upon it, I determine not. 2. *Bataxa*, 3. *Sotera*, 4. *Orbitana*, 5. *Sarmagana*, 6. *Artacanda*, by *Strabo* called *Artacana*, 7. *Nisibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*, 8. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the *Great Conqueror*, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians*, for the better awing of the Countrey, which by some former rebellions had been troublesome to him. But these, and most of those remembred by *Ptolomy*, being grown out of knowledge, there remain now of speciall note, 9. *Heri*, or *Eri*, seated not far from the place of the antient *Aria*, but much superiour to it in strength and greatness. Said by *Maginus* to be in compass thirteen miles, and so plentifully stored with *Roses*, that the inhabitants of the Countrey call it the *City of Roses*. Naturally of a strong situation, compassed about with a very good wall, and watered with deep Channels, conveyed unto it by *Tamerlane*, that most puissant *Tartar*, by whom either founded or repaired. 10. *Sasuar*, a place of good importance, and the second in esteem next to *Heri* it self.

The old Inhabtants were the *Masdarani*, *Nisæi*, *Astareni*, the *Cassirotæ*, *Obares*, *Drachamæ*, *Borgi*, *Paranti*, &c. united altogether in the name of *Arians*, by that name subject to the *Persians*, and subdued by *Alexander*. Against whom when they had rebelled, and were worsted by him, they were compelled to betake themselves to the strength of a Cave, seated upon the top of an inaccessible Rock, and with small force easily defended. But to *Alexander* nothing was impossible. For piling up a great mass of timber, equall unto the mouth of the Cave, when the wind served opportunely, he put fire unto it, and by that means so filled the Cave with fire and smoak, that some of them were stifled, some half-burnt, and the rest forced to yield to the Victors mercy. Nor was this the onely action of note during that Rebellion, though it was the greatest. The common Souldier also had his honour in it. *Sarlibarzanes*, a *Persian*, whom *Alexander* had trusted with the command of this Province, had drawn them unto this *Revolt*, and became their head. Who to express his courage in the sight of the *Arians*, challenged the proudest He of the *Macedonians* to a single combat. The challenge cheerfully accepted by one *Erignis*, one of the most aged in the Army: and saying aloud, *ostendam quales milites* Alexander *habet*, he valiantly charged upon the Rebell; and at the second *venew* slew him. The *Arians* after this triall of their disabilities, remained in quiet, taking the same fortunes as the rest of the *Persians* did, in their change of Masters. Of late, by *Mahomet Codubanda*, it was aliened for a time from the Crown of *Persia*, and given to Sultan *Abas*, his second sonne, who took unto himself in his Fathers life-time the title of the King of *Heri*. But comming to the Crown by the murder of his elder Brother, and the death of his Father, he united *Heri* once again to the *Regal Diademe*, but kept as a distinct title in the *Royall stile*.

10. *PARTHIA.*

PARTHIA is bounded on the East, with *Aria*; on the West, with *Media*; on the North, with *Hyrcania*; and on the South, with that part of *Carmania*, which by *Ptolomy* and others of the Antients was called *Deserta*. The reason of the name we shall see anon. But that name being laid aside it is now called *Arach*.

The Countrey walled as it were round with Mountains, and in most parts overgrown with *woods*; by which defended from those heats to which otherwise it would be subject, it produceth many things of necessary use for the life of the people; but nothing for riot and excess. In other places where the shade of the wood is wanting, the whole Countrey is in a manner but a *sandy Desart*, dangerous to Travellers, and impassable even with the help of *Guides*, the sands continually driven from one place to another, taking away all tracts of a beaten way. For which cause there be certain Castles at each three miles end, built at the Kings charge, as well for the direction as the reception of Passengers; and Cawseys of many miles in length, in some other places, for their better travelling; the sands on each side of them so loose and light, that if a man should fall aside, he were lost remedilesse.

The people antiently were very couragious and stout, as commonly they are in all barren Countries, and were withall of a *Scythian* extract and originall. Exceeding spare of diet, and good reason for it, the Countrey not affording any superfluities; but otherwise much given to pleasures, allowing themselves plurality of wives and Concubines. Good horsemen, and to that so used, that they consulted of all business both private and publique, when they were on horse-back. Such lovers of the warres, that they accompted no man happy after his decease but who died in battell; esteeming of all others but as fooles or Cowards. Their Souldiers for the most part *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto their weapons, and to manage horses: insomuch as of 50000 horse which the *Parthian* King had in the field against *Marcus Antonius*, there were not above 800. *Free-men*. But their greatest fame consisted in the handling of their *Bow and Arrows*, esteemed the best *Archers* in the world, and not undeservedly; having the Art of shooting backwards, and making their Retreat or flight more terrible, than their charge or onset. Whence that of *Seneca*.

Terga conversi metuenda Parthi.
The *Parthians* flight
Doth most affright.

Which, with the manner of their fight, more copiously described by *Lucan* thus.

Pugna levis, bellumq; fugax, turmæq; fugaces,
Et melior cessisse loco quam pellere miles.
Illita terra dolis, nec Martem *cominus unquam*

A usa pati virtus, ſed longè tendere nervos.

Which I find thus *Engliſhed* to my hand.

Light skirmiſh, fleeing warre, and ſcattered bands,
And better Souldiers when they run away,
Than to cut off an enemy that ſtands.
Their crafty *Gall-craps* on the ground they lay,
Nor dares their courage come to down-right blows,
But fight beſt furtheſt off, moſt truſting to their bows.

From hence it was that *M. Craſſus*, in his expedition againſt them, being told by an *Aſtrologer*, that his enterpriſe would prove unproſperous, by reaſon of ſome *ill aſpect* which he had found in *Scorpio*; *Tuſh* (ſaid he) *I fear not* Scorpio, *but* Sagittarius. And to theſe warlike exercíſes of horſe and Archery, the temper of the Air and Soyl, gave no ſmal advantages, the dry Air ſeaſoning their Bow-ſtrings, and their large fields affording them ſufficient room to train their horſes. *Cœlum enim quod ſiccum eſt, nervos intentos facit; Regio tota plana eſt, et ob eam rem equis accommodata*, as it is in *Dion*. But this is to be underſtood not of *Parthia* onely, but the whole Countrey of *Perſia*; ſubject at that time to the power of the *Parthian* Kings. Next to theſe *Parthians*, the *Engliſh* have been looked on formerly, as the ableſt Bow-men, having gotten by their *bow and arrows* as many notable victories over the *French*, as the *Parthians* ever did obtain upon the *Romans*. But at this time *Archery* both here, and elſewhere, is quite laid aſide, the *Gun* ſilencing all offenſive weapons: how juſtly I determine not. The point hath been long ſince debated betwixt Sir *John Smith*, and Sir *Roger Williams*; many great wits appeared upon either ſide; and the ſumme of their ſeverall Arguments drawn up together by Sir *Clement Edmunds* in his judicious obſervations upon *Cæſars Commentaries*, to which the Reader may repair for his ſatisfaction. All I ſhall ſay is only this, that victories as great as any in thoſe elder daies have been obtained with farre leſs bloodſhed, ſince the *Gun* came up, than in any of the times before it.

The *Religion* of this People hath ſuffered under the ſame changes with the reſt of *Perſia*, but they have a language of their own, mixt of *Mede* and *Scythian*. For which beſides the teſtimony of humane Authors, we have the Authority of Scriptures; where the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, and *Medes*, are named as Nations of a ſeverall language, or a different *Dialect* at the leaſt, *Acts* 2.

Rivers of note I find not any, nor any Mountains proper and peculiar to them: *Coronus*, part of the great Mountain *Taurus*, lying in common betwixt them and *Hyrcania*; as *Maſdoramus* doth betwixt them and *Aria*, and the hills called *Parchoatras*, betwixt them and the *Deſarts* of *Carmania*. So that for want of ſuch known Landmarks, the finding out of their antient Cities would be very difficult, if any learned *Antiquary* ſhould undertake it.

The Countrey antiently more populous, the towns and villages thicker ſet, than they be at the preſent: many Cities, and 2000 villages having been overthrown with *Earth-quakes*. In *Ptolomy* we find the names of 25. of their Cities diſtributed into the 4 Provinces or *Tetrarchies* of *Camiſene* towards *Hyrcania*; *Parthiene*, bordering on *Media*; *Paracanticene*, confining on *Aria*; *Tabiene*, neighbouring *Carmania*. The principall of which, and of thoſe that are now in being, 1. *Genonia*. 2. *Charax*. 3. *Arſacaria*. 4. *Apamia*, which by the name ſeems to have been of the foundation of *Seleucus*. 5. *Dardamana*. 6. *Syndaga*. 7. *Paſacarta*. 8. *Hecatompyle*, the Royall City, ſo called from the number of an hundred Gates in the walls thereof, by which we may conjecture at the antient greatneſs: the *Parthians*, which had ſeen no greater, calling it by the glorious name of *Half the world*. 9. *Hiſpaan*, commonly called *Spahan*, or *Spawhawn*, raiſed out of the ruins of *Hecatompyle*, and as that was, the Regal City for theſe parts. In compaſs about nine miles, of figure round, and ſeated in the middeſt of a large and capacious Plain, beautified with many pleaſant Gardens, goodly Bathes, and handſome *Moſques*. But the greateſt glory of it lieth in the market-place or *Midan*, quadrangular in form, but the ſides unequal; cloiſtred about, and well ſtored with merchandiſe of all ſorts, but drugs eſpecially: the Court or *Quadrangle*, ſerving for horſe-races, and other warlike exerciſes which are done on horſe-back. On the weſt-ſide a magnificent *Moſque*, built of white Marble five yards high, and the reſt above that of brick; curiouſly interwoven with *Arabick* Poeſies. In the middeſt a fair Conduit, wherewith they purifie themſelves when they go to their prayers. On another ſide the *Royall Palace*, wrought in the Front with *Antique* works; the Floors on the inſide covered with rich *Perſian* Carpets; and the Roofs chargeably embоſſed with Gold and *Azure*. 10. *Jelphea*, on the other ſide of the River on which *Spawhawn* is ſeated, as the Burgh of *Southwark* is to *London*; wholly inhabited (at this time) by *Armenian* Chriſtians, from hence called *Jelpheliues*, who live here in great freedome, both for perſon, and conſcience, but that their *Poll-money* is taxed at an higher rate. 11. *Croom*, a right pleaſant and healthy City, well built, of large ſtreets, and ſeated on the banks of a ſmall but delightfull River, iſſuing out of the *Coronian* Mountains, neer to which it ſtandeth. Conſiſting at the preſent of 2000 Families, but antiently, as may be gathered from ſome ruins, of farre greater compaſs. Much honoured by the *Perſians* for the Sepulchre of *Fatima*, the daughter of *Mahomet*, from whom the *Sophian* Sect and Princes do derive their Pedegree. 12. *Cuſham*, a rich and pleaſant City, about 60 miles from *Spawhawn*, well-built, and peopled by a number of *Artizans*, who for the making of Silks, Sattens, and cloth of Gold, are in great eſteem. Beautified amongſt other things with a ſtately and magnificent *Caravans-Raw*, built by Sultan *Abas*,

for

for the reception of Strangers, whether Merchants or other Travellers, but fit to entertian any Prince of *Asia*. The City of no great age, the work either of *Ussan-Cassanes*, the *Armenian*, who got the Crown of *Persia*, in the year 1470. or at the highest of *Cassam*, the sonne of *Axan* and Grand-sonne of *Tangrolipix*, the first *Turk* here reigning; from one of which it had this name. 13. *Tawgebawt*, where the *Persian* Kings have a house of pleasure, of no great receipt, but for the cost and ornaments of it, and the delectablenes of the Gardens adjoyning to it, not yielding to any in this large Empire: and for *Grots*, *Ecchos*, *Labyrinths*, and the other excellencies of Art, perhaps not fellowed in the world, especially considering that it standeth in the midle of a sandy Desart.

The *Parthians* were originally a *Scythian* Nation; banished their own Countrey, and glad to plant themselves in this barren Region, calling themselves by the name of *Parthians*, which in their language signifieth as much as *Exiles*. A People so obscure and poor, either not knowing or not caring for the use of money, that none of *Alexanders* great Captains would vouchsafe to be their Governour; but let it lie as an Appendix of *Media*, to the Kings whereof it had originally been subject, till one *Philip*, a man of small regard, took the place upon him. Falling at last, with the rest of *Alexanders Asian* purchases, into the hands of *Seleucus*, it was governed by the Lieutenants of the *Syrian* Kings, till the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of that house. During whose reign, *Arsaces* a noble *Parthian*, provoked by some indignities, slew the Governour, and took the estate upon himself, perswading all the rest of the Provinces to do the like: and thrived so well in his design, that he not onely gained the Kingdome of *Parthia*, but united to it all the Provinces lying on the East of *Euphrates*. Of whom and his Successors more, in the story of *Persia*. After this nothing singular which concerns this Province, but that as this *Arsaces* did recover the *Persian* liberty from the power of the *Greeks*; so *Gempsas*, one of the Sultans of this Province also, redeemed (though but for a little time) this *Parthia* and the parts adjoyning, from the yoak of the *Tartars*; as shall be shewn in prosecution of the *Persian* History.

II. *HYRCANIA.*

HYRCANIA is bounded on the South with *Parthia*; on the North, with the *Hyrcanian* or *Caspian* Sea; on the East, with *Margiana*; and on the West, with *Atropatia*, or *Atropatene* (as *Ammianus* calleth it) the North part of *Media*. Divided from *Parthia* by the interposition of *Coronus*, part of the main body of mount *Taurus*. The way thorow which, said by the *Persians* to be cut out at one blow by the *Scymitar* of *Mortis Haly*, their second *Mahomet*, as not above fourty yards in breadth, in the broadest parts of it, the hills on both sides towring to the very clouds. With small strength easily defended against mighty Armies, and possibly may be the same which the Antients called *Porta Caspia*, before described.

It took the name of *Hyrcania*, from *Hyrcana*, a large and spacious forest betwixt it and *Scythia*; sometimes called *Caspia* also, from the *Caspii*, a chief People of it; of whom it is reported, that when their Parents came to the age of 70 years, they used to shut them up, and starve them, as being then no longer usefull to the Common-wealth. But both those names growing out of use, it is by *Mercator* called *Diargument*; by some late Travells *Mezendram*; by some others *Corcam*.

Those parts hereof which lie towards the South are said to yield abundance of wheat, wines, figges, and fruit: those towards the *Caspian* Sea, as plentifull of Grass and pasture. But betwixt both, nothing in a manner but continual forests, and those so intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no small difficulty to find passage thorow them. Full, as most other Forests are in those Eastern parts, of *Panthers*, *Leopards*, *Lions*, *Tigers*: these last of such an horrible fiercenes, that it grew into a common Proverb used of cruel men, that they had sucked an *Hyrcanian* Tiger; *Hyrcanaq; admorunt ubera Tigres*, as it is in *Virgil*.

Principall Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Zioberis*, spoken of before. 2. *Maxera*, or *Mazeras*, mentioned by *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ammianus*; and 3. *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caspian*, and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caspii* and *Hyrcani*, bordering next unto it; now from the Town of *Bochu*, in *Atropatia*, called *Mare di Bochu*. Fashioned in an *Ovall* form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 600 miles from East to West. Stormy, and troublesome, by reason of those many great Rivers which fall into it from all the Provinces adjoyning; which notwithstanding it hath no visible commerce with the *Ocean*, nor doth it at any time overflow its banks: finding some passage under ground to discharge it self of those vast streams of water which are powred into it. Well traded by the *Moscovite* Merchants, who having the command of the River *Volga* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) sail over it, and land at *Farabant*, or some other of the Port-Towns, where they trade for silks. Some Ilands here are in it, but not many, or of any great fame but onely that they served the Nations which lay neer it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* tempest under *Tamerlane*; as the Isles of *Venice* did to the *Italians* at the comming of *Attila*.

Places of most consideration; 1. *Hyrcania*, once the *Metropolis* of the Province, and so called by *Ptolomy*; still extant, but of less esteem, and still called *Hyrcan*. 2. *Tambrace*, in old times of the greatest streng.h, and most defensible, but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the warre against *Arsaces* the *Parthian* for the recovery of those Countries then revolted from him. 3. *Adrapsa*; 4. *Masaca*, 5. *Anarosa*; of which we find the names, amongst others, in the antient Writers. 6. *Asharaffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a spacious Plain, containing about 2000 houses; and now of most reputation of all this Province, by the long Residence therein of *Abas*, the late *Persian* Sultan; who built there a magnificent Palace, & another two miles off at a place called *Abassebant*. The furniture whereof, besides costly Carpets, in Plate

and Jewels, at such time as Sir *Dodmore Cotton* was there Ambassadour, is said to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at 20 millions of Pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in silks than Jewels; such a vast summe to be expended on the furniture of one Palace onely, being beyond the possibility of the *Revenue* of the *Persian Sophies*; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. 7. *Farabant*, on a navigable Arm of the *Caspian* Sea; for beauty, wealth, and greatness, of most note in this Countrey. Well traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, especially by the *Russian* Merchant, as before is said; whose ships come hither in *March*, and return in *July*; it being from hence to *Astrachan* but ten daies sail. Beautified with goodly Gardens, a Royal mansion of the kings, and a spacious Market-place. 8. *Chiacoporo*, neer the Sea also, but on the banks of a River; the water whereof is said for eleven moneths to be fresh and sweet, and for the twelf month very salt. 9. *Barfrushdee*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furnished with wood and water. 10. *Omoall*, a Town of about 3000 houses, seated on the North side of the *Taurus*, in a pleasant and fruitfull soyl; resorted to by the people of so many Nations, that seven languages are there commonly spoken. Once larger, as appeareth by some ruins, than it is at the present; by some conceived to be the *Nabarca* of the Antients, honoured in those times with an Oracle. 11. *Strava*, a town of great trafick, for raw silks especially. 12. *Mesandre*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoyning to it) hath the name of *Mezendrum*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, besides the *Caspii*, were the *Maxeræ*, *Astabeni*, *Chrindi*, and the *Arsitenses*; united in the name of *Hyrcans* in the time of the *Persians*, and by that name well known at the comming of *Alexander*. Against whom they so defended themselves by tying the boughs and twigs of their Trees together, that it was impossible for him to come at them till with incredible pains and labour he had caused their woods to be cut down: at sight whereof the People, who supposed the King had too much other business, and of more importance, than to put himself unto that trouble, did submit unto him. Falling to the share of *Seleucus*, they were the first people that were gained by *Arsaces*, and joined with him in recovering their former liberty, though they got nothing by the bargain but the change of their *Master*. In all times since, they have been looked upon as Members of the *Persian* Empire, till the conquest of it by the *Tartars*; in the distractions of whose great Empire after *Tamerlanes* death, it fell to some Princes of his house; who governed here under the vassallage and protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathay*. Recovered not long since to their old obedience by Sultan *Abas*: who for the better setling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat Royall from *Spawhawn*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Casbin*, to *Ashiraffe*, then a small town, now the chief of this Countrey.

12. *MARGIANA.*

MARGIANA is bounded on the West, with *Hyrcania*; on the East, with *Bactria*; on the North, with part of *Tartary*, from which severed by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Aria*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus* which runnes thorow the Countrey: but is now named *Fremigen*.

The Countrey environed with Mountains, and in most places of it full of sandy Desarts. But where it is watered with the Rivers, *Arias*, and *Margus*, it is very fruitfull, stretching it self into a large and spacious plain, containing in the circuit neer 200 miles. The Plain once compassed with a wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*: more memorable for the huge stocks of *Vines* which are said to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and sometimes bearing branches of grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired in regard there is no other place neer unto it where the vine will grow. And if the *Ark* rested on the top of Mount *Caucasus*, as it is most probable it did; why may not this be some of the remainder of that first *Vineyard* which was planted by *Noah*, when he descended from these Mountains, as is affirmed by the constant tradition of the people which inhabit here.

The people mixt of *Scythian* and *Persian* breed, partaking of the fierceness of the one, and the behaviour of the other. Conform unto the *Persians*, in Religion, language and apparell; distinguished from them in the colour of their *Turbants* onely, which are commonly *Green*; and therefore by the *Persians* called *Jeselbas*, or *Green-caps*; the *Turbants* of the *Persian* being alwayes Red.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey are, 1. *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which rising out of the foot of the Mountains, and passing thorow the middest of the Province, receiveth into its channell the River, 2. *Arias*, hasting out of *Aria*; and so together lose themselves in 3. *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*. Out of the joint streams of which several Rivers is made a large Lake now called *Sabucamber*, but antiently *Palus Oxiana*, from the principall River.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Alexandria*, or *Alexandria Margiana* for distinction sake; one of the six towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Countrey; called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*; next *Antiochia* from *Antiochus Soter* King of *Syria*, by whom fortified with a very strong wall. It is now called *Indion*, and esteemed for the chief of the Countrey. 2. *Jasonium*, seated on the confluence of *Margus* with a nameless River issuing from the *Seriphian* Mountains. 3. *Nigæa*, as the printed books of *Ptolomy* call it; but mistook for *Nissa*, or *Nysea*. 4. *Argadina*. 5. *Rhea*; of which nothing memorable. 6. *Marin*, neer to which *Ismael* the first of the *Sophian* race, discomfited the forces of *Sabas* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Massagetes*, and the *Parni*, taking up the midlands; the *Dorbicæ*, bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the East. United by the name of *Margians* they were subdued by the Kings of *Persia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to his Empire: who to assure himself hereof built six Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the East, all situate

on

on the tops of hills, and built at ſuch convenient neerneſs that they might afford ſuccour to each other, as occaſion ſerved. After this nothing ſingular in the ſtory of them; involved in the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Perſia*, till *Perſia* was conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, though the reſt of the *Perſian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoak by *Gempſus*, the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Perſia* for a time, yet part of this Province, and of *Bactriana*, are ſtill ſubject to them.

13. *BACTRIA.*

BACTRIA or *BACTRIANA*, is bounded on the Weſt, with *Margiana*; on the Eaſt & North, with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamiſus*, from which parted by the hills ſo named, and the Mountain *Caucaſus*. It took this name from *Bactra*, the chief City of it; and is now called *Choraſſin*, but by ſome named *Batter*.

The Countrey towards the River *Oxus*, is for the moſt part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all ſorts of fruits excepting Olives; rich metals, and ſome precious ſtones, as *Emeralds*, *Chriſolites*, and *Jacinthes*. Plenty of paſtures there be alſo, well ſtored with Cattell, and thoſe of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greateſt part hereof to the South and Weſt is nothing but a ſandy Deſart; and by reaſon that the ſands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be diſcerned: inſomuch as Travellers reſt all day, and take their journey in the night, that they may guide themſelves by the courſe of the Stars, as upon the Sea, not without great danger of being loſt or buried, whilſt alive, in that ſandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puiſſant and warlike nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Aſſyrians*, not with leſs by the *Perſians*; alwaies in armes, cruel, and reſembling the *Scythians*, whoſe neer neighbours they were: and (which may very well paſs for their greateſt vertue) *multum a* Perſarum *luxu abhorrentes*, abhorring naturally from the *Perſian* luxuries. But withall unnaturall to their Parents, whom when old they caſt unto their dogs, kept for that purpoſe, and called *Canes Sepulchrales*, or buriall dogs. The women gorgeous in apparell, and proud of geſture, but prodigall of their bodies to their meaneſt ſlaves. The men to this day do retain their antient ſtoutneſs; but hard beſet betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Tartars*, who ſeverally pretend a dominion over them.

No Province of the *Perſian* Empire hath ſo many Rivers. The principall of which are 1. *Artamis*, and 2. *Zariaſpes*, mingling ſtreams together, as do alſo 3. *Ochus*, and 4. *Orgomanes*; all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a boundary betwixt the *Perſian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either, we have ſpoke already.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Bactra*, the *Metropolis* or chief City of it, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains *Sogdii*; giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Bochor*, and ſtill keeps the dignity of the *Metropolitan*: the ſeat of the Chief-Prieſt or Biſhop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Countrey alſo, doth now belong) having here his reſidence, in power and reputation equall to the King himſelf. Well fortified, and ſtored with all military proviſions: the birth-place (as *Maginus* ſaith) in theſe latter Ages of *Avicenna*, that learned Philoſopher and Phyſician; and in the firſt Ages of *Zoroaſter* the more learned *Aſtrologer*. 2. *Ebuſus*, once the Regal ſeat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of *Regia*. 3. *Zariſpe*, or *Chariſpe*, the chief City of the *Chariſpe*, a great Tribe of this Countrey. 4. *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*: theſe two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5. *Encratidia*, built or repaired by the *Macedonians*; as the name, being meerly *Greek*, doth ſeem to intimate. 6. *Alicodra*, as antient as the reſt, but of no great note in the courſe of buſineſs. 7. *Iſtigiat*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of thoſe before ſpoken of: ſuperiour to *Bochor* in elegancy, ſtate and greatneſs, though not in dignity; and held by ſome to be the pleaſanteſt of the Eaſt.

This Countrey was as ſoon peopled as any ſince the generall *Deluge*. It had not elſe been poſſible that *Zoroaſter* King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him aſſaulted, ſhould bring into the field an Army of 400000 men of this, and perhaps ſome other of the neighbouring Provinces, as moſt credible writers ſay he did. Encountring *Ninus* with this Army he prevailed at firſt, and ſlew of the *Aſſyrians* neer an hundred thouſand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his forces, invaded him a ſecond time with an Army of 1700000 foot, and 200000 horſe (the greateſt on record in all ages ſince that time, except that of *Semiramis*) with which he overcame *Zoroaſter*, ſlew him in the field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaſter* is aſcribed the invention of *Aſtronomy*, but on no good ground: that Art or Science being ſtudied before the flood, (if *Seths* Pillars mentioned by *Joſephus* be of any credit): and therefore probably no otherwiſe to be aſcribed to *Zoroaſter*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or becauſe he firſt committed that unto writing, which he had received by *tradition*; or becauſe he brought thoſe confuſed notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being ſlain, and *Bactra* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the wife of *Menon* (but on the merit of that ſervice made the wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became ſubject unto the *Aſſyrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Perſians*; in the ſpring of which great Monarchy, *Beſſus* a falſe and cruell Traitor, did command this Province: and having villainouſly ſlain *Darius*, his Lord and Maſter, aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Perſia*, under the name of *Artaxerxes*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes* one of his Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruell death: the *Bactrians* became ſubject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in obedience, one *Theodotus*, who formerly had the Government of it for the *Syrian* Kings, taking unto himſelf the title of King, and the poſſeſſion of the Countrey, about the

the ſame time that *Arſaces* and the *Parthians* made the like revolt. Wreſted from his poſterity by one *Enthydemus*, the recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cauſe put to the trial of a battel. In which, though *Antiochus* had the better, and ſhewed more perſonal valor in it than any time after: yet he was glad to come to a compoſition, and left to *Euthydemus* both the Crown and the Countrey. Made not long after an acceſſion to the *Parthian* Kingdome; it continued part thereof whileſt that Kingdeme ſtood: and in the time of *Ptolomy* (as long time before) had for the chief tribes or nations of it the *Salataræ*, and *Zariaſpæ* towards the North; the *Comani*, or *Coamoni* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in the South; the middle parts being taken up by the *Thocari*, ſaid to be *gens magna*; the *Scordæ*, *Savadii*, *Maricæ*, *Tambyzi*, *Amariſpæ*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Perſian* State, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the new *Pretenders*: and at this time ſo neutrall betwixt the *Perſians*, and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is wholly under the power of either. More averſe from the *Perſian* government ſince the alteration of *Religion* made there by *Hyſmael*, and the reſt of the Sect of *Mortis Hali*: theſe *Bactrians* being of the old race of *Mahometans* which adhered to *Haumar*, *Oſmen*, and *Abubecher*, as the true Succeſſours of their falſe Prophet: and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* faction, whom they call commonly *Caphars*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of *Mahomet*.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of thoſe ſeveral Provinces which conſtitute the *Perſian* Empire, and ſhewn by what means they were firſt united into one eſtate: we muſt next look upon the names and actions of thoſe mighty Monarchs, who have ſucceſſively, and from time to time enjoyed the Soveraignty. By what good chance *Arbaces* from a Deputy or Lieutenant of *Media*, obtained the Diademe for himſelf, we have ſhewn before: and we have ſhewn how liberally he enfeoffed the *Vice-Roys* of the ſeverall Provinces (which in the diviſion made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his ſhare;) in the propriety and command of thoſe Countreys, which before they held. Nothing reſerved unto himſelf, and his poſterity, but the title onely; and perhaps ſome acknowledgments made to them, as the Lords in chief. Nor left he leſs liberty to his own *Medians*, than to the reſt of the Provinces: which turning to licenciouſneſs was ſo hurtful to them, that they were glad at laſt of that wholeſome ſeverity, which *Deioces*, a more Lordly King, began to exerciſe: who taking to himſelf a guard, building the Royall City of *Ecbatana*, and fortifying ſome other places of importance, firſt brought the people under the command of law: in that regard not unfitly called by *Herodotus*, the firſt King of the *Medes*.

Kings of the *Medes*.

A. M.

3146. 1. *Arbaces*, at firſt Governour of the *Medes* under *Sardanapalus* the *Aſſyrian*; but joining with *Belochus*, overcame his Maſter, and was the firſt founder of the *Median* Monarchy.

3174. 2. *Mandanes*, the ſonne of *Arbaces*.. 50.

3224. 3. *Siſarmus*. 30.

3254. 4. *Medidus*, by ſome called *Artyræ*. 25.

3279. 5. *Cardiceus*, whom ſome call *Arbianes*. 13.

3292. 6. *Deioces*, the founder of *Ecbatana*, and the *Legiſlator* of the *Medes*, whom he firſt brought under the command of Law, and a Regal Government, the former Kings having left the reigns ſo looſe on the necks of the peopl, that they ſeemed to reign by curteſie only; and had no more authority amongſt their Subjects, than any of the mean Lords had upon their Vaſſals.

3303. 7. *Phraortes*, a man of great proweſs and fortune; he made all *Aſia* ſtand in fear, and compelled the *Perſians* to be his tributaries; but was after overtopped by the *Scythians*. 22.

3331. 8. *Cyaxares*, united to his Empire the *Saracens*, and the *Parthians*. The King was ſo overlaid by the *Scythians*, who in the reign of *Phraortes*, had broke into *Media*; that he was little better than their rent-gatherer. But having endured them for above two years, he plotted their finall extirpation, and committed his deſign to the Nobles, who willingly gave ear to it. One night they invited the chief of the *Scythians* to a banquet, where having well liquored them, and put them all to the ſword, the baſer ſort willingly returned homeward. 40.

3371. 9. *Aſtyages*, the ſonne of *Cyaxares*, who having maried his Daughter *Mandane*, to *Cambyſes* the Tributary King of *Perſia*; dreamed that ſhe had made as much water as drowned all *Aſia*: hereupon he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Noble men, to ſee the Child killed; but he loathing ſo cruel a fact, committed the charge of executing the Kings commandment, to *Mithridates* the Kings heard-man. He preſerved the life of the young infant, to whom he gave the name of *Cyrus*, whoſe fortune at laſt lifted him up to the Kingdome of *Perſia*: when abhorring his Grand-Father for that intended cruelty, he both bereft him of his Kingdome, and confined him to *Hyrcania*, when he had reigned thirty five years. A. M. 3406.

3406. 10. *Cyaxares* II. in the Scripture called *Darius Medus*, ſonne to *Aſtyages*, of the age of 52. years ſucceeded his father. For *Cyrus* pretending no quarrel to his Unkle who had never wronged him; left him the Kingdome of *Media*; and took unto himſelf the Soveraignty of

Perſia

Persia, which before was tributary to the *Medes*; not making any other alteration in the State of *Media*.

At this division of the *Median* Empire, as *Torniellus* in his *Annalls*, (and that not improbably) is of opinion, it was also agreed on, that *Cyrus* should take the daughter and only child of *Cyaxares* to wife; that they should both join together, in subduing of their neighbours; that whatsoever they won, should belong to *Cyaxares*, (who was even then an old Prince) during his life; and that *Cyrus* should be his heir. In the twentieth year of their severall reigns, they took *Babylon*, slew *Baltazar*, and destroyed the Empire of the *Chaldeans*. This action, the Scriptures attribute wholly to *Cyaxares*, who is by them called *Darius Medus*; whereof Saint *Hierome* allegeth three reasons: 1. *Ordo ætatis*, 2. *Regni*, 3. *Propinquitatis*. 1. *Darius* was the elder; 2. the Empire of the *Medes* was more famous than that of the *Persians*; and 3. the Unkle ought to be preferred before the Nephew. We may adde to these three, the composition above-mentioned, made between these Princes, at the beginning of their reigns or the death of *Astyages*. The *Greek* Writers attribute the victory onely to *Cyrus*, and that on three reasons also. The *Persians* desirous to magnifie *Cyrus* their own Conntrey-man, gave him all the glory of the action; and from the *Persians* the *Greeks* had it. Secondly, *Cyrus* was only imployed in the siege, (*Darius* then being absent) and by his valour and conduct was the Empire of the *Chaldeans* ruined. And thirdly, *Darius* lived not fully two years after the great victory; so that before remote Nations had taken notice of the conquest, *Cyrus* was actually in the Throne. *Josephus* onely in the 11 Chapter of his Book, cutteth the thread even between these two Princes, and telleth us that *Darius*, *with his ally Cyrus*, *destroyed the estate of the Babylonians*. That this *Darius Medus* of *Daniel*, is the *Cyaxares* of the *Greeks*, is more than manifest. For *Josephus* in the place above-cited telleth us, ὃς ἦν Ἀστυάγους υἱὸς ἕτερον παρὰ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐκαλεῖτο ὄνομα: *That he was* Astyages *sonne, and is otherwise called by the* Greeks: now ask the *Greeks* what was the name of the sonne of *Astyages*, and *Xenophon* will tell you, that it was *Cyaxares*. As for the name of *Nabonidus*, which *Joseph Scaliger* in spight of reason, and the whole world of Chronologers, would thrust upon this *Darius Medus*; we have already refelled it, though we are not ignorant that *Helvicus* and *Calvisius*, two most worthy Writers, have followed him, as in all his *Canon*, so also in this particular Error. But to proceed unto the course of the *Persian* history, after the death of this *Cyaxares*, *Cyrus* succeeded in his Throne, and the Empire of the *Medes* was incorporated in that of the *Persians*, as it hath ever since continued, if not subject to it.

The first *Dynasty*, or Race of the *Persian* Monarchs, of the house of *Achamenes*.

3406. 1. *Cyrus*, who having vanquished *Astyages*, united to the Empire of *Persia* the whole Kingdome of *Media*; the Countreys of *Armenia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, some part of *Arabia*, and all the Provinces possessed by the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs. After which victories, he was slain by *Tomyris* a Queen of the *Scythians*, as some Writers say: others affirming that he escaped alive (but wounded) out of the battel, died in his own Kingdome, and was buryed at *Pasagarda*, a Town of *Persis*. This *Cyrus* is magnified by *Xenophon*, as *Æneas* is by *Virgil*, and *Ulysses* by *Homer*. 29.

3434. 2. *Cambyses*, the sonne of *Cyrus*, subdued *Psamniticus* King of *Ægypt*, which Countrey he united to his Empire. Having a mind to marry his own Sister, he was told by his Lawyers that they knew no law which admitted such mariages, but that there was a law, that the *Persian* Kings might do what they listed. This King was a very bloudy Tyrant.

The *Inter-regnum* of the *Magi*.

Cambyses at his expedition into *Ægypt*, constituted *Patizithes*, one of the *Magi*, Vice-Roy in his absence. He hearing of the Kings death, conferred the Kingdome on his own sonne *Smerdis*, making the people beleeve, that he was the brother of *Cambyses*: A matter of no difficulty, considering, how retirement from the publique view was a chief point of the *Persian* majesty. But the Nobles either knowing the true *Smerdis* to be slain, or suspecting the overmuch retiredness of the new King; began to search out the matter. *Otanes* had a daughter, which was one of the Kings Concubines; her he commanded when the King took next his pleasure with her; to feel whether he had any ears: for *Cambyses* (in I know not what humour) had cut off the ears of this *Magus*. This commandment she obeying, found out the falshood. The *seven Princes* informed of this imposture, join together, and slew this *Pseudo-Smerdis*, in the eighth moneth of his reign. This done, to avoid contention, they agreed among themselves, that the *seven Princes* meeting on the Palace green, should acknowledge him for King, whose horse before the rising of the Sunne, first neighed. The evening before the day appointed, the horse-keeper of *Darius* the sonne of *Hystaspis*, brought his masters horse into the green, together with a mare, which the horse then covered. In the morning the Princes met; and *Darius* his horse knowing the place, and longing for his mare, neighed lustily: on which the Princes presently acknowledge *Darius* for their King.

The

PERSIA.

The restoring of the Kingdome.

3443. 3. *Darius Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, descended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Persians*, thus elected King, took *Babylon* (which had revolted) by the ingenious fetches of *Zopirus*; and over-ran all *Asia* and some part of *Greece*. 36.

3479. 4. *Xerxes*, to revenge the overthrow at *Marathron*, attempted to subdue the *Greeks*: by whom he was overthrown in the navall battle of *Salamis*; and that famous and honourable exploit of the *Græcians*, at *Thermopylæ*. 21.

3500. 5. *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, was he who sent *Esdras* to re-build the Temple of the Lord; and received *Themistocles*, being banished from *Athens*. This also was he, as some would have it, whom the Scriptures call *Ahasuerus*, the Husband of *Hester*; though others choose rather to place that story in the time of *Xerxes*. 44.

3544. 6. *Darius* II. surnamed *Nothus*, in whose time the *Ægyptians* revolted and chose a King of their own. 19

3563. 7. *Artaxerxes* II. from the greatness of his memory surnamed *Mnemon*; under whom hapned that famous retreat of *Xenophon* with an handfull of *Græcians* thorow most of the Provinces of this Empire; by which they shewed the way to the *Macedonians*.

3599. 8. *Ochus*, a great Tyrant, but a valiant Prince, recovered *Ægypt*, subdued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and some part of *India*; and was at last slain by *Bagoas*, one of the Eunuchs of his Chamber.

3625. 9. *Arses*, the sonne of *Ochus*, most villanously murdered by the same Eunuch, for fear he should revenge the death of his Father.

3629. 10. *Darius* III. Governour of *Armenia*, and Cousin German of *Ochus*, before his comming to the Crown named *Codomannus*; by the means of the said *Bagoas* made sole Monarch of *Persia*. But being vanquished by *Alexander* the *Great* in the three battels of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Persians* was transferred to the *Græcians*, A.M. 3635.

The certain Revenues of this great Monarchy, seem to have been 14560 Talents; for so much the last *Darius* received yearly. But what the casuall and extraordinary *Intrado* was, is not easie to say, though manifest it is, and demonstrable by many strong and evident reasons, that they farre exceeded the *certain*. For first, the *Persian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces; Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the ransome of his mother and two daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold; Thirdly, *Alexander* found in the Treasury of *Damascus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Susa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoyned; in that of *Pasagardis*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Persepolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents: besides the infinite riches of the Treasury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly specified; an huge and most unspeakable summe. Fourthly, in that the gold and riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, sent from *Persia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (besides that which every Captain and common Souldier had provided and laid up for his own maintenance) loaded ten thousand Mules, and five thousand Camels.

After this overthrow of the *Persian* Monarchy, this Nation lay obscure 535 years, viz. from the 3635 year of the world, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Successors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Arsacidan* Kings of *Parthia* Μετὰ γὰρ Δαρεῖον, &c. as *Herodian*. "For after *Darius* had lost his Kingdome to *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, and after "the Victor himself was dead also; the more potent Captains divided *Asia* among them. But discords "often arising, and the *Macedonions* puissance, by these often broiles, not small broken; *Arsaces* one of "the *Parthian* Nobility, perswaded the barbarous people of the East, and among them the *Persians*, to "cast off the *Greek* yoak, and stand for their liberty: he himself taking upon him the title of King, and "investing himself with a Diadem, A.M. 3718. The *Persians* by this revolt, got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrant* onely: these *Parthian* Princes lording it with as high an insolencie, as ever the old *Persian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria*, did before. From this *Arsaces*, all the rest of his Successors, and those too of the family of *Artabanus*, or the second race of *Parthian* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperors that of *Cæsar*, or the old *Ægyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their usual stile was *Rex Regum*, or *King of Kings*: and by that stile with arogance and insolence inough, *Vologeses* thus inscribed his letters to *Vespasian* the *Roman* Emperor, *Arsaces*, *Rex Regum*, *Flavio Vespasiano*: giving himself the title of *Kings of Kings*; but the other nothing but his bare names onely. To which, *Vespasian* without taking notice of the *Parthians* pride, returned his answer to him with this superscription, *Fl. Vespasianus Regi Regum Arsacidi*: whether with more scorn, or modesty, it is hard to say. They also called themselves the Brethren of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefest Gods they worshipped. Great Princes questionless they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the world besides: whose names and acts occurre in these following Catalogues of

The

2. The *Arſacidan* or *Parthian* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

A. M.

3718. 1. *Arſaces*, the founder of the *Parthian* family.

3741. 2. *Mithridates*, or *Arſaces* the 2d. aſſaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men, but without ſucceſs.

3761. 3. *Pampatius*.

3773. 4. *Phraartes*, the ſonne of *Pampatius*.

3783. 5. *Mithridates* II. brother of *Phraartes*, ſubdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.

6. *Phraartes* II. ſlain in a warre againſt the *Scythians*.

3857. 7. *Artabanus* Uncle to *Phraartes* the 2d.

8. *Pacorus*, the ſonne of *Artabanus*.

9. *Mithridates* III. brother of *Pacorus*.

3903. 10. *Herodes*, brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and cauſed to be ſlain in his own ſight. He alſo vanquiſhed *M. Craſſus*, and ſlew 20000 *Romans*: and becauſe *Craſſus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he cauſed molten gold to be powred down his throat. A miſerable death, but in reſpect of the divine Providence a moſt juſt revenge upon him for his ſacrilege, in robbing the Temple of *Hieruſalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the diſgrace which thereby hapned to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompenſed by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*, who ſlew great numbers of them in a pitched field, and amongſt others *Pacorus* the Kings ſonne; the day of the battell being the ſame, in which *Craſſus* had before been vanquiſhed. After this victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the firſt Triumph that ever the *Romans* had beheld for a *Parthian* victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have ſhrewdly ſhaken it at the leaſt, had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that ſervice. Finally, *Herodes* was ſlain by his ſonne *Phraartes*.

11. *Phraartes* III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruell. Againſt him marched *Marcus Antonius* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an abſolute overthrow, of 16 legions, ſcarce ſix returning home in ſafety. This King ſubmitted himſelf and Kingdome unto *Auguſtus*, reſtoring the *Roman* enſigns, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Craſſus*. The onely mark of the *Parthians* ſubjection, was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperours of *Rome*: which alſo was of no long continuance.

12. *Phraartes* IV. ſonne of *Phraartes* the 3d. whom he ſlew and ſucceeded.

13. *Orodes* II. ſonne of *Phraartes* the fourth, ſlain in a conſpiracy.

14. *Vonon*, ſubſtituted in the place of *Orodes*, but outed by

15. *Tiridates* who was alſo diſpoſſeſſed of his life and Kingdome by *Artabanus*, a ſtranger to the blood of the *Arſacida*, the family of *Arſaces* giving place to that of this *Artabanus*; of which family we have the names of twelve Kings ſucceſſively reigning: the moſt conſiderable of them being *Choſroes*, the 8th. King of this line, from whom the Emperor *Trajan* gained *Armenia* and *Meſopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire, members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Perſian* Crown by *Sapores* the 9th King of the next *Perſian* Dynaſty. But for thoſe twelve Kings of this houſe they are theſe.

The 3d. Dynaſty of the Kings of *Perſia*, and the 2d. of the *Parthian* Race.

1 *Artabanus*.
2 *Bardanes*.
3 *Goteres*.
4 *Vonones*.
5 *Vologeſes*.
6 *Artabanus* II.
7 *Pacorus*.
8 *Choſroes*.
9 *Parmaſpates*.
10 *Vologeſes* II.
11 *Vologeſes* III.
12 *Artabanus* III. the laſt King of this new race of the *Parthians*, whoſe overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the firſt *Perſian* King of the 4th. *Dynaſty*, occaſioned the tranſlation of the Diadem to the naturall *Perſians*; after it had continued in two *Parthian* families for the ſpace of 470 years. Which Tranſlation as it was wrought by the unreſiſtable power of God, who onely hath the diſpoſing of Crowns and Scepters; ſo in the way of ſecond cauſes it may be principally referred to the barbarous maſſacre of this people by *Antonius Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperor. Who having negociated a mariage with the daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to ſolemnize the nuptials; was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choiceſt of his Souldiers, and other Subjects in Triumphall Ornaments. Which honourable train was no ſooner come neer his Army, but he commanded his Souldiers, (on a watch-word given) to put them all to the ſword, the King himſelf hardly eſcaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* ſucceeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* ſet upon him to revenge that ſlaughter. But underſtanding after a long fight of three daies continuance, that *Macrinus* had ſlain *Caracalla*, they made peace with him: but were ſo

weakned

weakned and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Persians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation the Regall power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Persian* (his name perhaps suggesting some high thoughts unto him) did so much husband the opportunity, that he slew *Artabanus* the last King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the royall seat into *Persia*. Yet was not this so easilly effected, the *Parthians* notwithstanding their former losses, maintaining a cruell fight for three dayes together: so difficult was it to vanquish that Nation, when their forces were broken; impossible when they were whole. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this success, sent a peremptory embassie to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman Emperor*, to have all the Provinces of *Asia*, which had formerly belonged to the *Persian* Monarchy, redelivered to him: a matter not so easily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to suppress so insolent an enemy, marched towards *Persia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his enemy more work, he divided into three parts: whereof the first was to march into *Media*; the second into *Persia*; the third himself led in the mid-way between both, to succour both as occasion required. But his device succeeded not happily: for his two Armies being by the *Persians* broken, he with much danger and hast retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Persian* Empire, the establishment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperor being vanquished and taken prisoner by *Sapores* the second King of this race. So that now the name of the *Persian* grew so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Constantine* the Great, transplanted many of the Colonies and Garrisons of the North-west part of the Empire, into the East; to keep the *Persian* from growing to farre upon the *Roman* Provinces; and removed also the seat of the Empire nigher unto them, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*. And thus having shown the beginning and establishment, the foundation and building of the new Kingdome of the *Persians*: take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, untill they once more lost the soveraignty of their own Nation, and became slaves again.

The 4th. Dynasty, or race of the *Persian* Kings.

228	1	*Artaxerxes* 15.
243	2	*Sapores* 31.
272	3	*Ormisdae* 1.
275	4	*Vararanes* 3.
278	5	*Vararanes* II. 16.
294	6	*Vararanes* III.
294	7	*Narses* 7.
302	8	*Misdates* 7.
310	9	*Sapor* II. 70.
380	10	*Artaxerxes* II. 11.
391	11	*Sapores* III. 5.
396	12	*Varanes* IV. 10.
406	13	*Isdigertes* 21.
427	14	*Vararanes* IV. 20.
447	15	*Vararanes* V. 17.
464	16	*Perozes* 20.
484	17	*Valens* 4.
488	18	*Cabades*, dispossessed by
499	19	*Lambases* 4.
503	20	*Cabades*, again restored.
533	21	*Cosroes Magnus* 48.
581	22	*Hormisda* 8.
589	23	*Cosroes* II. 39.
628	24	*Siroes* 1.
629	25	*Adhesir.*
	26	*Sarbatus.*
	27	*Barnarius.*
630	28.	*Hormisda* II. the 28. and last King of the

race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth *Dynasty*: of whom besides the two first Kings, whose Acts are spoken of before, the most remarkable were, 1. *Vararanes* the second, in whose time *Carus* the Emperour passing over *Euphrates*, and laying sieige to *Ctesiphon*, was there slain by a thunderbolt. 2. *Narses*, the son of *Vararanes*, who first discomfited *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars*, in the Empire of *Diocletian*, and totally ruined his *Army*: for which *Galerius* being forced to lacquey it by the Emperors Chariot in his purple Robes, was so highly shamed, that to recover his credit he set upon *Narses* once again, routed him, and took Prisoners his wives and children. 3. *Sapores* the second, the sonne of *Misdates*, who began his reign before his birth. For his Father dying without issue, left his wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having signified by their art to be a male, the *Persian* Princes caused the Crown and Royall Ornaments to be set upon his Mothers belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puissant Prince he proved; holding continuall warr with *Constantine* and his Successours till the death of *Valens*, and gaining from them the best part of *Mesopotamia*: but withall a great Persecuter of the *Christians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are said to have suffered in his time. 4. *Isdigertes*, a Prince so esteemed of by *Arcadius* the Eastern Emperor, that he made him Protector of his Empire during the minority of his sonne *Theodosius*: which trust he Royally performed, and was a great friend unto the *Christians* in his own dominions. 5. *Cabades*, first outed of his Kingdome by *Zamaspes*, and restored again, was the first *Persian* King who permitted the free exercise of the *Christian* Religion. He slew *Zeliobes* a King of the *Hunnes* comming to his aid against the *Romans*, because he had before promised to assist the Emperour; and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of his estates. 6. *Cosroes* the sonne of *Cabades*, surnamed the *Great*, a Constant enemie of the *Romans*, from whom he conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and sacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the war brought home to his own doors by *Mauritius*, who was afterwards Emperour, and his own Countries in a flame, he took such thought of it that he died of a feaver. 7. *Cosroes* the second, as great an enemie to the Emperor *Heraclius*, from whom he took all that was left of *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hierusalem* it self: most of it recovered by *Heraclius*; in despight of whom he caused all the *Christians* in his Kingdome to turn *Nestorians*. 8. *Hormisda* the second, the last of this *Dynasty*, who being first weakned by Civill and Domestick dissensions, was vanquished by *Haumar* and his *Saracens*, *Anno* 634. burying so the glory of this renowned Nation, in the grave of oblivion and infamy.

The

The *Saracen icall Caliphs*, having added this Kingdome to their huge Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*: not one Supreme for the whole Kingdome, but severall Governours or *Sultans* for each several Province; called by new names, and moulded into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorazan*, *Manzenabar*, *Usbeck*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of themselves, and warring upon one another, as their humours led them, without relation to the *Caliph*, or Lord in chief. During which bustles it so hapned that *Mahomet*, the Sultan of *Persia* (so called because he was the chief in command and power) picking a quarrell with his neighbour the *Sultan* of *Babylon*, (*Pisiris* he is called in some *Christian* writers, by whom taken or mistaken for the *Caliph* himself) made warre upon him. But finding him countenanced and supported by the power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then possessed of some part of *Armenia Major*, to come in to his aid: by whose means he overthrew the *Caliphs* forces, and might have got the Soveraignty of *Persia* unto himself, if he had used his victory and his friends with any tolerable discretion. But denying to pay these *Turks* their wages, and send them home, he occasioned them to make head against him under the conduct of *Tangrolipix* their principall leader; to whom being once in armes, severall discontented persons of the naturall *Persians* did unite themselves. Encouraged with which additions, and being furnished with Horse and Armour, and other necessaries, by the spoil of the Countrey; they give battell to the *Sultan* himself: whom having vanquished and slain, *Tangrolipix* by the joint consent of both Armies is made King of *Persia*; the Founder of

The fift Dynasty, or the *Turkish* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1030. 1. *Tangrolipix*, of whom sufficiently before.
2. *Axan*, the sonne of *Tangrolipix*; by whom *Cutlu Muses*, his neer Kinsman, was sent with great forces against the *Christians*, whom he dispossessed of a great part of *Asia Minor*.
3. *Balak*, Sultan of *Persia*, in the begining of the warres in the *holy land*, undertaken by the Western *Christians*; against whom he is reported to have sent his forces. Of whose Successors I find nothing till the time of
1198. 4. *Cassanes*, the last King or *Sultan* of the *Turks*; vanquished in the year 1202 by the *Cham* of *Tartary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the death of *Axan*, or his next Successor, the *Turks* lost the Soveraignty of *Persia*, though they kept the possession of some parts of it; the Soveraingty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*: and that it was so held by both, till the *Tartars* dispossessed the one, and destroyed the whole progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the opinion of *Beniamin Tuledensis*, a learned Jew, which had travelled most part of the East; to whose judgement herein I subscribe as most sound and rationall.

The Sixt *Dynasty*, or the *Tartarian* race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1260. 1. *Haalon*, or *Ulah-Kuhkan*, by *Occata* the great *Cham*, made King of *Persia*, exterminated the whole race of the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*.
1266. 2. *Habkakaihon*, the sonne of *Haalon*.
1282. 3. *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haiton* called *Tangador*, who made himself a *Mahometan*, and was named *Hamed*, the brother of *Habkakaihon*.
1284. 4. *Argon-Khon*, the eldest sonne of *Habkakaihon*.
1292. 5. *Geniotukhon*, brother of *Argon-Khon*.
1295. 6. *Badukhan*, the Unkle of the last, of which three there is little memorable.
1296. 7. *Gazun*, the sonne of *Argon-Khon*, who made *Casbin* his Imperial seat.
1305. 8. *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is said to have been the founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the brother of *Gazun*.
1317. 9. *Abusaid*, sonne of *Alyaptu*, that reigned in *Persia*. After whose death, *Anno* 1337. (being the 736. of the *Mahometan Hegira*) the more potent Princes of the *Tartars* seized on the severall parts and Provinces of it, every one calling himself King of that part or Province which he was possessed of. And amongst them *Gempsas* the Sultan or Soldan of *Parthia* (though a *Persian* born) put in for a share, and made himself master of his own Province, and some parts adjoining: made on that ground by some of our Christian writers (who very imperfectly have transmitted to us the affairs of this Countrey) the sole King of *Persia*. In this confusion it continued till the comming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind driving all before him, composed the differences, by getting all unto himself. But as Philosophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance, so the course of business, and the successes of actions may instruct us also, that a Kingdome forced to bow under the command of a prosperous Army, is not so well assured to the Victor, but that the fury of the war once past, it may return again to its former liberty, or open a more easie passage to some new Invader. And so it fared with the conquests and successes of *Tamerlane*, whose issue quickly lost this Kingdome, and almost all the rest of his other purchases: leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly by his own imprudence in cantoning his Estates amongst his Children, and partly by the weakness of his

Succeſſours in the Realm of *Perſia*: this Kingdome did relapſe immediately to the ſame confuſions in which he found it; having almoſt as many Soveraign Kings, as Provinces. Moſt of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the houſe of *Tamerlane*, and thoſe who afterwards ſucceeded in the Title of Kings of *Perſia* of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Dynaſty: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithſtanding the great and proſperous ſucceſſes of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Perſia* (and well enough content with that): ſuch as they were we find them in this order following.

1405. 10. *Mirza Charok*, the fourth ſonne of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded by his appointment in the Realm of *Perſia*.
1447. 11. *Oleghbeg*, ſonne of *Mirza Charok*, vanquiſhed and ſlain by his own ſonne.
1450. 12. *Abdalatife*, ſlain not long after by his own Souldiers.
1451. 13. *Abdula*, the ſonne of *Oleghbeg*, and brother of *Abdalatife*, vanquiſhed by
1453. 14. *Abuſaid* II. deſcended from *Moroncha*, the third ſonne of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded on the death of *Abdula*.
1461. 15. *Zeuzes*, whom ſome call *Jooncha*, others *Malaonchres*, diſcomfited and ſlain in battel by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, *Anno* 1472. which was about 70 years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The ſeventh *Dynaſty* of the *Turcoman*, or the *Armenian* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1472. 1. *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, by ſome called *Aſymbeius*, by others more truely *Ozem-Azembec*, was the ſonne of *Tracheton*, one of thoſe poor *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Princes diſpoſſeſſed by *Bajazet* the firſt, and reſtored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his neighbours, he was warned to deſiſt by *Zeuzes* the *Perſian* King, with whom encountring in a pitched field he overcame him, and got that Kingdome by the victory.
1478. 2. *Jacub*, the ſecond ſonne of *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne; and repulſed the *Mamalucks* out of *Meſopotamia* and *Aſſyria*, which they had invaded: He was after poiſoned by his wife.
1490. 3. *Julaver*, a Kinſ-man of *Jacubs*, ſucceeded him in the eſtate, which he held only three years, and then left it to
1493. 4. *Baiſinger*, a Prince of the ſame blood, who living in adultery with the wife of *Jacub*, had conſpired his death. 2.
1495. 5. *Ruſtan*, aſſaulted by *Aider* or *Secaider* of the *Sophian* faction, who then began to be of power.
1498. 6. *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the laſt King of this *Turcoman* or *Armenian* race; firſt vanquiſhed *Secaider* at the battel of *Derbent*, and cut off his head: but was after overthrown and ſlain by *Hyſmael* the ſonne of *Aider*; upon the quarrell and occaſion which here followeth.

Mahomet the Impoſtor and firſt Emperour of the *Saracens*, by his laſt Will and Teſtament, bequeathed the ſucceſſion into that Eſtate, to *Hali* his neer Kinſ-man, and the Husband of *Fatime*, his Eldeſt Daughter. But *Abubezar*, *Haumar*, and *Oſmen*, three powerfull men, and the Chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, ſucceſſively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, ſupplanted firſt, and afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Muhavias* a great man of warre, who ſucceeded in it; and to ſecure himſelf therein, ſlew *Haſem* or *Oſſan*, the ſonne of *Hali*, and eleven of the ſonnes of that *Oſſan*; the twelf called *Muſa Ceredine* eſcaping with life. From him deſcended lineally one *Guine* the Lord of *Ardoville* in *Media*; who conſidering that their had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the eſtabliſhing of that high honour in his own family, as the right Heirs to it. A man of ſo great reputation amongſt the people, that *Tamerlane* having made a conqueſt of *Perſia*, thought it no diſhonour to his greatneſs, to beſtow a friendly viſit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his ſonne called *Aider*, who afterwards for the purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Tzophy*; the word ſo ſignifying in that language: who alſo proved of ſuch eſteem and power with all ſorts of men, that *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, the firſt King of the *Armenian* or *Turcoman* race thought fit to make him Husband unto one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the ſonne of *Uſſan*, and ſome of his Succeſſours, ſeeing him grow unto ſuch power and eſtimation with the common people; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to depreſs him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the Caſe then ſtood, practiſed to adde unto his party under the popular pretence of reforming things that were amiſs in their Religion: and grew ſo powerfull in the end, that he gave battel unto *Ruſtan* and *Alamat*, the two laſt Kings of the former race. But *Alamat* having got the victory, cauſed him to be ſlain; and delivered *Hyſmael* and *Solyman* his two ſonnes, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual priſon. But *Amazar* a man of a more ingenuous diſpoſition, afforded them not only liberty, but alſo good education: inſomuch that *Hyſmael Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertook revenge for the death of his Father, which work he ful-

fulfilled, having overcome and ſlain King *Alamat*, and his ſonne *Elvan*. After this victory, he being crowned King, or *Shaugh* of *Perſia*, altered the form of Religion: making *Hali*, and himſelf the true Succeſſors of *Mahomet*; but condemning *Abubezer*, *Haumar*, and *Oſmen*, with the *Turks*, as rebells and *Schiſmaticks*.

Hence proceeded the divers warres, which to the *Perſians* loſs, have hapned between them and the *Turks*: the *Perſians* burning whatſoever book or Monument they find concerning thoſe three; and the *Turks* holding it more meritorious to kill one *Perſian* than ſeventy Chriſtians. *Surius* in his Commentaries, writing purpoſely of the *Acts* of *Hyſmael*, ſaith, that the *Jews* on ſome fond conceit were perſwaded that he was the *Meſſiah* they had ſo long looked for: But it proved quite contrary, there never being Prince that more vexed and grieved them.

The eighth *Dynaſty*, or *Sophian* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1505. 1. *Hyſmael Sophi*, the founder of this Family, overthrown by *Selimus* the firſt, in the *Calderan* fields. 20.

1525. 2. *Tamas*, the Sonne of *Hyſmael*, vanquiſhed by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countries of *Chaldæa*, *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*, with ſome part of *Media*. 53.

1578. 3. *Aider*, the ſecond ſonne of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdome, impriſoning his elder brother; but his cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona*, his own Siſter, having reigned only 15 daies.

4. *Hyſmael* II. eldeſt ſonne of *Tamas*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne; but murdered with the privity of his Siſter alſo, who found him of too rough a nature for her to govern; having reigned neer two years.

1579. 5. *Mahomet Codabanda*, advanced unto the throne by his Siſters faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his firſt entrance cauſed her to be beheaded for the former murders. During his time, not fully ſetled in the State, *Amurath* the 2d. by his Lieutenants won from him almoſt all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.

1585. 6. *Abas*, the ſecond ſonne of *Mahomet*, having treacherouſly practiſed the death of *Mirze*, his elder brother, ſucceeded his Father, recovered almoſt all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdomes of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candahor*, and *Hyrcania*, to the Crown of *Perſia*.

7. *Soffie*, the Nephew of *Abas* by his ſonne *Mirza*, (whoſe eyes he cauſed to be put out on a falſe ſuſpition) at the age of fifteen years ſucceeded: committed by his Grand-father during his minority to the protection of *Emangoly*, *Chawn*, or Duke of *Shyras*. A Prince, who ſince he came to age, hath had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdel* and other places, which had been taken from them in the time of *Abas*.

The Government of theſe *Perſian* Kings, though it be *deſpoticall* and ſevere, hath a great deal leſs of the *Tyrant* in it than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: theſe cheriſhing their Brethren, maintaining *Nobility* amongſt them, and incouraging induſtry; which makes them to be better ſerved than the *Turk* or *Tartar*; to both whom they are farre inferiour both in power and treaſure. Their Officers of of State, and men of principall inployment, for the moſt part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the Eaſt): ſuch Perſons being thought moſt truſty; becauſe abſtracted from the obligations of wife and children, they ſtudy more the Princes ſervice than their own advantages. Their forces conſiſt moſt of *Horſe*, to which they are inclined more generally than to ſerve on foot: and yet the greateſt hoſts of horſe which they have brought at any time into the field, came not to above 30000; but thoſe well furniſhed and appointed; maintained on *Lordſhips* and Eſtates after the manner of the *Turkiſh Timariots*. The *Foot-Souldiers* of his own Countries, but poor and raw, and very ſeldome ſtand their ground. That defect being for the moſt part ſupplied by *Mercinaries*. The inconvenience of which being found by *Sultan Abas*, he ſerved himſelf of children bought of *Chriſtian* Parents, neer the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian Sultans* had their *Mamalucks*) whom they call by the name of *Cozel-Baſſas*, or *Red-caps*, ſo named from the colour of their *Turbans*, trained up by them in their Religion, and warlike Diſcipline; as the *Turks* their *Janizaries*; yet farre inferiour to the *Turk*, againſt whom if they have prevailed ſince the time of *Abas*, they may aſcribe the greateſt part of their good fortune to thoſe diviſions and *Rebellions* which in theſe late times have been frequent in the *Turkiſh* Empire. And as for their *Sea-forces* they are inconſiderable: For though they have a large Sea-coaſt both on the *Perſian* Bay, the *Caſpian* Sea, and the Southern Ocean, yet are they very poor in ſhipping; ſuffering the *Moſcovite* to ingroſs the trade of the *Caſpian* Sea; the *Portugals* to manage that of the *Southern* Ocean; as formerly that alſo of the *Perſian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormuz*.

The *Revennes* of this Kingdome in the time of *Hyſmael* the firſt *Sophy*, were exceeding great: inſomuch that *Tamas* his Succeſſor to ingratiate himſelf with all ſorts of people, releaſed them of all kinds of *Cuſtomes* impoſed on *Merchandiſe* either imported or exported. And this they ſay amounted to the ſumme of 90000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a million and

800000 Crowns of annuall income. Which notwithstanding, his *Revenue* was computed at four or five millions of Crowns yearly; raised out of *Domain* lands, the *tenth* of fruits, the profit of *mines*, and the *fine* payed by every subject when he sets up shop. But *Tamas* finding this not to be sufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his money, and thereby for the present his *Revenues* also. Since that they have been much empaired by the Conquests made upon them by the *Turks*, who had got from them so much land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*, and yielded to the grand *Signeur* one million of yearly income: whether improved again or not to their former height, I am not able to determine.

And so much for *Persia*.

OF

OF TARTARIA.

TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with *China*, the *Orientall* Ocean, and the ſtreights of *Anian*, by which parted from *America*; on the West, with *Ruſſia*, and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *frozen* Ocean; and on the South, with part of *China*, from which ſeparated by a mighty wall; the the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Bactria*, and *Margiana*, two *Perſian* Provinces; the *Caſpian* Sea, which ſeparates it from *Media* and *Hyrcania*; the *Caucaſian* Mountains interpoſing betwixt it and *Turcomania*; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia* and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a puiſant and mighty people now poſſeſſed hereof; the reaſon of whoſe name we ſhall ſhew hereafter.

It containeth all thoſe great and ſpacious Provinces which the antients called *Seres*, *Scythia extra Imaum*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Sacæ*, *Sogdiana*, the greateſt part of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europæa*: extending it ſelf the whole length of *Aſia* from the River *Tanais* to the *Eaſtern* Ocean, taking in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, and ſome other parts of *Europe* alſo. So that if we meaſure it by miles, it is ſaid to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South: a greater quantity of ground than the *Turkiſh* Empire, but of leſs fertility and accompt.

In meaſuring by the way of degrees, it reacheth from the 50. degree of *Longitude*, to the 195. which is 145. degrees from West to East: and from the 40th. degree of Northern *Latitude*, unto the 80th. which is within ten degrees of the *Pole* it ſelf. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the ſixt *Clime*, where the longeſt day in ſummer is 15 hours; till they ceaſe meaſuring by *Climates*, the longeſt day in the moſt Northern parts hereof being full ſix moneths; and in the winter-half of the year, the night as long.

The Countrey lying under ſuch different *Meridians*, and ſuch diſtant *Climes*, muſt needs be ſuch as no generall *Character* can be given of it, and therefore we ſhall deferre that, with the names of the Rivers, and chief Mountains, to the deſcription of the ſeveral and particular Provinces. But for the people, being much of the ſame nature in every part, we may take the meaſure of them here. Aſſumed to be of ſquare ſtature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noſes, ugly Countenances; ſwart of complexion, not ſo much by the heat of the Sunne, (which keeps farre enough off) as their naturall ſluttiſhneſs. Barbarous every where in behaviour, eſpecially in thoſe parts which they call *Aſiatica*, and *Antiqua*: but withall very ſtrong of body, ſwift of footmanſhip, vigilant in time of ſervice, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The women ſuitable to the men, ſcorning or wanting ornaments to ſet themſelves out, or when they do, they ſeldome go beyond copper, feathers, or ſuch precious *gew-gawes*.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was ſaid; eating their *Enemies* when they take them, as in way of revenge, firſt letting out their blood which they receive into *Cups*, and uſe it as wine unto their feaſt. Though ſwift of foot, yet generally they love to ride though it be but on *Oxen*; about whoſe necks, as about their horſes, when they travell, they uſe little bells, with which *muſick* they are much delighted. Their *ſpeech*, even in their common talk, is a kind of *whining*; and their ſinging little better than the *howling* of wolves. They eat commonly with unwaſhed hands, the durt and greaſe about their fingers ſerving as a ſawce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink uſe mares milk. Homely of habit, made of the courſeſt ſtuff, and reaching no lower than the knee: and if they go to the charge of furrs, contrary to the cuſtome of other people, they wear the hairy ſide outwards, and the skinne next their own bodies; onely to ſhew the richneſs of their Apparell. And yet ſo proud in this beggery, that they account the *Chriſtians* but as dogs, contemn all the reſt of the world, and think their *Cham* the onely conſiderable Prince, by whoſe name they *ſwear*, as by their Gods.

In matter of *Religion* it is hard to ſay whether *Mahometaniſm* or *Paganiſm* be of moſt extent: ſome parts hereof being wholly *Pagan*, ſome wholly *Mahometan*, and ſome mixt of both. But of the two the *Pagan* is the better *Gentleman*, as being of the *elder* houſe, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of *Mahomet* not being entertained amongſt them till the year 1246.

And yet theſe have not ſo prevailed, as to extinguiſh the remainders of *Chriſtianity*, of which there are amongſt them many ſeverall *Churches*. The *Chriſtian* faith firſt planted amongſt the *Scythians* by the preaching of Saint *Andrew*, and Saint *Philip*, two of the Apoſtles. Overgrown in theſe later Ages by the Sect of *Neſtorians*, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to inſtruct them in more *Orthodox* Tenets. Before the prevailing of the *Tartars*, beſides the *Circaſſian* Chriſtians of whom more anon, there are in the moſt remote parts of *Tartary*, whole Kingdomes of that *Religion*; as namely that

of *Texduc*, then the chief of all; besides some numbers of them in *Tangath*, *Cauchinteles*, *Cassar*, *Samarchan*, *Karthim*, *Suchair*, *Ergimul*, and *Caraiam*, where in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who surveyed these parts about the year they lived intermingled with the *Pagans*. Not so diminished since the conquest of those Countries by the *Tartars*, but that they are of a considerable number, especially in *Cathay* it self: where they are said to have a *Metropolitan* in the City of *Cambalu* (the principall City of that Empire) and he so honoured by the Great *Cham*, that they receive their Crowns successively from no hands but his.

As for the *Tartars*, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard*, said to be the off-spring of the *Ten Tribes*, whom *Salmanassar* led away captive, and that especially for three reasons. The first is, that the word *Tatari*, by which name (saith he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, signifieth in the *Syriack* and *Hebrew* tongues, a *Remnant*. But unto this it is answered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as some; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they first dwelt, as most think: and again, that though the *Hebrew* word שארית signifie a remnant, yet can it not properly be applyed to the *Tartars*; who so infinitely exceed the *Jews*, that they cannot be thought to be a remainder of them. Secondly, he allegeth for proof thereof, that this people use *circumcision*, the character of the *Jewish* Nation. And hereunto it is replyed, that *circumcision* was common to many people, besides the *Jews*, as to the *Ægyptians*, *Æthiopians*, *&c.* and that rather as a national custome, than a religious ordinance; and again, that the *Tartars* cannot be proved to have received *circumcision*, before they received *Mahometanism*. Thirdly, there is brought to confirm this opinion a place of *Esdras*, cap 13. lib. 2. where it is said, that the Ten Tribes (that they might the better keep Gods Statutes) passed over the River *Euphrates*, and after a journey of an year and a half, came into a Countrey called *Arsareth*. To refell which, those of the contrary opinion find no better course, than by shewing the impossibilities of it. For the *Tartars* (when their name was first known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, observed not the Sabbath, nor any other point of *Jewish* religion: and so the Ten Tribes retired not hither to keep Gods Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite West from *Assyria*, and those places to which *Salmanassar* transplanted the *Israelites*; and so it could not be passed over in a journey towards the North. And Thirdly, it is very improbable, that the *ten Tribes* should either be so simple, as to leave *Assyria*, where they were peaceably setled; or so valiant, as to force a passage thorough those Countries of *Scythia*; which neither *Persians*, *Greeks*, or *Romans* were able to withstand in the best of their fortunes.

To let pass therefore all imaginations of a forein Pedegree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of *Scythians*, who pressed by want, or otherwise oppressed by the King of *Tenduch* unto whom they were subject, armed themselves against him, obtained a memorable victory, and setled *Cingis* their chief Captain in the Royall Throne. Anno 1162. After which growing of more power, and inlarging their dominions further, they united in the name of *Tartars* all the *Scythian* Nations: as *Mahomet* did those of the three *Arabias* in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many severall *Tribes* of the *German* Nations, were united in the names of *Franks* or *Alemans*. Not known in *Europe* by this name till their many great and signall victories had made them formidable, which was about the year 1212. within very little of which time they had made themselves Masters of a larger Empire, than that of *Macedon* or *Rome*, in their greatest glories. But being of a hasty growth it decaied as suddenly; the greatest part of their *European* purchases being conquered from them by the Dukes of *Moscovy*, and the Kings of *Poland*; as their acquests in *Asia*, and *Africk*, by the *Turks* and *Persians*. Yet still they are possessed of so large a territory, that were they not distracted into severall States; or did those severall states depend upon one *Supreme*; that one *Supreme* might very easily give law unto all his Neighbours; and make the *Turks* and *Persians* tributaries, as in former times. But laying aside these speculations of what they might do if united under one command: let us now look upon them as they are divided into these five parts, that is to say, 1. *Tartaria Precopensis*, 2. *Asiatica*, 3 *Antiqua*, 4. *Zagathay*, and 5. *Cathay*.

1. TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS.

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the East, with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*; on the West, with the River *Borysthenes*, now called *Nerper*, by which last parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*; on the North, with part of *Russia*; and on the South, with some part of the *Euxine* Sea: and by this accompt lying totally within *Europe*.

It had the name of *Precopensis*, from *Precopia* a chief Town thereof. By some called *Tartaria Minor*, to distinguish it from the greater body of that people: the Inhabitants hereof most commonly passing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*, in which their *Cham* or Emperor doth reside most usually. The Countrey by them now possessed, part antiently of *Sarmatia Europea*, was inhabited by a warlike nation called the *Tauri*; from whom those parts hereof which lie betwixt the Empire of *Russia*, and the two Rivers *Tanais* and *Borysthenes*, were called *Tauro Scythia*; that which shooteth out into the Sea, encompassed with the *Euxine* on the one side, and *Palus Mœotis* on the other, being called *Taurica Chersonesus*. In the description whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made bold with some part of *Asia* to lay together the estate of the *Russian* Empire: so now to satisfie for that trespass, I shall make bold with part of *Europe*, to lay together the discourse and affairs of *Tartary*,

The whole Countrey plentiful of fruits, and the soyl indifferently disposed to tillage and grazing, though more accustomed unto the last: the people more delighting in their heards of cattel, than in the fulness of their

their *Garners*. Camels, Horſe, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great ſtore of delicate fowl, and abundance of fiſh, bred in the large *Fennes* of *Mœotis*: and in their forreſts plenty of all ſorts of *Veniſon*. Which (*character* as it belongeth generally to all the Countrey, ſo moſt eſpecially to the *Cherſoneſe* or Demy-Iland. United to the main land with ſo narrow an *Iſthmus*, that the *Tartars* once went about to dig it thorow: from whence ſome ſay they had the name of *Precopenſes*, *Precoph* in the *Sclavonian* tongue ſignifying a deep trench, or a digging thorow. In length not above 24 *German*, or 96. *Italian* miles; in breadth but 60 of the one, or 15 of the other. Bleſt with a very temperate Air, and a gentle winter: which beginning with the laſt of *December* ends the firſt of *March*. Never extreme, and when the froſts are at the ſharpeſt, but of ſhort continuance. Divided in the middeſt with a chain of hills extended from the Eaſt to Weſt, the boundary of the Dominions of the *Turk* and *Tartar*.

The people of the ſame complexion and compoſition, as the reſt of the *Tartars*; and not much different in manners. Their diet, Roots, Cheeſe, Garlick, and of the poorer ſort, for the moſt part horſeflesh (none but the better ſort preſuming upon Beef or Veniſon, though of both abundance) which they eat without bread or any thing elſe: and therefore when they go to the wars every Souldier takes two horſes with him, the one to ſerve upon, and the other to kill. And yet for all this havock which they make of horſeflesh, there are few years in which they ſell not 40 or 50 thouſand in the fairs of *Moſco*. Towns they build none, ſcarce willing to maintain thoſe which were built to their hands. Nor have they (except men of trades and *manufacthures*) any ſtanding houſes, removing up and down with their Droves of Cattel, moving their houſes with them, (which they build on wheels) from one place to another. Of money they make no eſteem, preferring braſs and ſteel before other metalls, becauſe more uſefull to them for Swords and Knives. Good Souldiers for the moſt part, eſpecially at the *Bow* and *Arrows*; to which ſo accuſtomed from their child-hood that they can ſhoot as readily backward as forward. Trained alſo of late times to the *Harquebuſe*, well skilled in handling the *Turkiſh Scymitars*, and their horſemens Staves. Not to be vanquiſhed but by death, as men that are reſolved rather to die than be taken *Priſoners*: and if victorious, more intent upon taking Captives (eſpecially young Boys and Girles, whom they ſell to the *Turks*) than upon any other Booty or ſpoils of war.

The *Religion* moſt embraced and countenanced is that of *Mahomet*, mingled with ſome of their old Principles of *Chriſtianity*: for they confeſs that CHRIST ſhall be the *Judge both of quick and dead* in the day of judgement, and puniſh thoſe that ſpeak irreverently of him. In that regard more favourable to the *Chriſtians* than other *Mahometans*, which makes great ſtore of *Grecian* and *Armenian* Chriſtians to dwell amongſt them. The language which they ſpeak is their own *Tartarian*, but intermixt with much of the *Arabick*, and *Turkiſh* Tongues, and when they write, they uſe either *Chaldean* or *Arabian* Characters.

Rivers of moſt note in it, are 1. *Boryſthenes*, & 2. *Tanais*, which though they have their ſpring-heads in the Empire of *Ruſſia* (as was there declared) have their falls in this: the firſt in the *Euxine* Sea, in the 57th. the other into *Palus Mœotis* in the 67th. Degree of *Longitude*; by which we may conjecture ſomewhat of the length of the Countrey. 3. *Hipanes*, 4. *Carcimitis*, falling into the *Euxine*. 5. *Agaris*, and 6. *Byces*, which loſe themſelves in the Fennes of *Mœotis*; As do alſo 7. *Paſiaſcus*, 8. *Gerus*, 9. *Lycus*, from the mainland, and 10. *Iſtrianus* from the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*. By the confluence of which waters, and many others falling from the *Aſian* ſide, the lake or Fennes of *Mœotis* are of great extent, in compaſs at leaſt a thouſand miles, well ſtored with fiſh, and ſtill retaining ſomewhat of the ſweetneſs of thoſe many Rivers which are emptyed into it. So called from the *Mœotæ* who formerly inhabited on the banks hereof, and giving name to an excellent kind of fiſh which were called *Mœotides* by the Antients. At this day generally called *Mar delle Zabahe*, by the *Italians* commonly *Mar della Tana*, the ſea of *Tanais*, and ſometimes alſo *Mer Bianco*, or the *White* Sea, to difference it from the *Euxine*, which they call the *Black*, for the reaſons formerly delivered. Paſſing directly towards the South, it is ſtreightned by a narrow Channel not above four miles in breadth though about 24 in length, called antiently by the name of *Boſphorus Cimmerius*. *Boſphorus*, becauſe Oxen did uſe to ſwim over it; *Cimmerius* from the *Cimmerii* who poſſeſſed the adjoining Countrey on the *Aſian* ſide: but known at this day by the name of *Stretto di Caffa*; from the City *Capha* neer unto it; and by the Inhabitants *Voſpero*, more neer the originall. Out of this Streight that confluence of waters which do meet in the *Mœotick* Fennes do make their way into the *Euxine*. According to that of *Lucan*.

Quaq; Fretum currens Mœotidas *egeritundas.*
Where the *Mœotick* Pools at laſt
Thorow a narrow Streight makes haſt.

Chief Cities of it at the preſent, 1. *Capha*, or *Caffa*, in the *Cherſoneſe* not far from the Streight called hence *Stretto di Caffa*; a flouriſhing Empory, and furniſhed with a large and capacious Haven. Heretofore poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, who by the benefit of this Port, and the plantation which they had in *Perah* on the North ſide of *Conſtantinople*, engroſſed into their own hands the whole trade of the *Euxine*. Taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, Anno 1475. it became ſubject to the *Turks*, and drew into that thraldome all the Southern parts of the *Cherſoneſe* which depended on it: deprived thereby of the greateſt part of its former luſtre, the *Chriſtian* Churches being deſtroyed, the Towers and publique buildings razed, the houſes of the *Genoa* Merchants which were fair and beautifull deſtroyed and ruined; yet ſtill the principall of this *biland*, or Demy-Iland; and antiently better known by the name of *Theodoſia*, and by that name remembred in *Ammianus*. 2. *Precoph*, in *Latine* called *Precopia*; a Town and Caſtle ſituate in or neer the place where ſtood the *Eupateria* of the Antients: called alſo *Pompeiopolis*, *Heraclea*, and *Achillis Curſus*. 3. *Corſunum*, the *Cherſoneſus* of *Ptolomy*, antiently a *Greek Colony*; & then accompted for the chief of the

the whole *Peninsula*: rich, populous, and well-traded, by reason of the Haven which was safe and large; and of great beauty and magnificence, as the ruins testifie. By the *Turks* at this day called *Sari-Germanum*, or the *yellow Tower*, the soyl about it being of a *Saffron* colour. 4. *Cremam*, or *Crim*, the antient Seat of the *Chams* or Princes of these *Tartars*; and at that time the fairest and greatest of this *Island*. Situate in the middest thereof, and fortified with a strong Castle, for the height of the walls, and depth of the ditch esteemed impregnable; supposed to be the *Taphra* of *Pliny*, or the *Taphros* of *Ptolomy*. Mentioned by *Florus*, as then lately taken by some *Roman* Emperor, and so most likely to be *Trajan*, the first that ever extended the *Roman* Empire beyond *Danubius* and the *Euxine*. Situate in the very *Isthmus*, and so commanding both the *Euxine* and the Lakes of *Mœotis*; as *Corinth* betwixt the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas. 5. *Panticapæum*, situate on the very *Bosphorus*, and now called *Vospero* by the natives: the antientest City of this *Peninsula*, and said by *Ammianus* to be the mother of all the *Greek* Colonies which were planted in it. 6. *Tanais*, the *Tanais* of *Ptolomy* and other antients, because situate on the mouth of that River, or rather betwixt the two mouths of it, distant from one another a degree of *Longitude*. A town of great trade, and well frequented by the Merchants of all those Countries which border on the *Euxine* Sea: but subject to the *Turks* who hath there a Garrison, and by them called *Azac*. 7. *Ingermenum*, situate on a large and lofty Mountain, and fortified with a Tower or Castle of stone, under which there is a Church, with great charge and Art cut out of the Rock: formerly of great wealth and fame, now decaied and ruinous. 8. *Jamboli*, by some called *Balachium*. 9. *Mancopia*, by the *Turks* called *Mingutum*, 10. *Circum*; all boasting of their severall Castles. 11. *Oczakow*, or *Oczacovia*, situate neer the influx of the great River *Borysthenes* into the Bay of *Cancimitis*; and so most like to be built in the place of that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Olbiah*, *Pliny*, *Olbiopolis*. Honoured of late times (since the taking of *Taurica* by the *Turks*) with the residence of the great *Cham*: from whence these *Tartars* are by some called *Olsanenses*. 12. *Metropolis* as *Ptolomy*, or rather *Miletopolis* as *Pliny* calleth it; a Colony in old times of the *Milesians*, not farre from *Olbia*. Besides all which, and many others mentioned by the antient Writers of which there is nothing now remaining; the Court of the great *Cham* in Summer time makes a moveable City; built upon *Wheel-houses*, and transported from one place to another, as occasion serveth: which houses at every station are orderly disposed of into Streets, and lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agwa*, or a Town of Carts.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were of *Scythian* race; for by that name some elder writers call not onely the true and proper *Scythians* lying on both sides of *Imaus*; but even the *Sauromatæ* or *Sarmatians* also; and those not onely of *Sarmatia Asiatica* bordering next unto them, but even such *Europæan* nations, as lived on the Northern banks of *Ister*, and the *Euxine* Sea. And so they are affirmed to be by *Ptolomy* himself, though otherwise more exact than any in distingnishing *Sarmatia Europæa* from *Asiatica*; and *Asiatica* from the *Scythian*. For speaking of the Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, inhabiting on the *Palus Mœotis*, he ranks them thus. Καὶ παρ' ὅλων τ πλευρὰν τῆς Μαιώτιδ@, &c. *i. e.* And all along the coasts of *Mœotis*, dwell the *Iazyges* (distinct from those called *Metanastæ*) and the *Rhoxolani*; and more within the land, the *Hamaxobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*, and in the *Chersonese* it self, dwell the antient *Tauri*, subdivided into the severall Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Napæi*, and *Arinchi*, by the said *Ptolomy* included in the general name of *Tauro Scythæ*. To none but these of all the *Europæan Sarmatians* doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been those *Scythians* against whom *Darius* King of *Persia* made his fruitless warre. Picking a quarrell with this people, because their King had denied to give him one of his daughters to wife; or to revenge, as others more improbably say, the inrode which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Asia*; he drew together an army of 700. thousand. Passing over the *Thracian Bosphorus*, he came at last to the banks of the *Ister*, where it parteth *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*; and there for the passage of his men caused a bridge to be built; to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60. knots: commanding them every day to untie one knot, and if he came not back before all were united, to return to their houses. This done he marched towards his enemies, who still fled before him; leading him into the most desert and unhabitable parts of their Countrey: and when they had brought him into a streight, sent Ambassadours to him with a *bird*, a *mouse*, a *frog*, and an handfull of *Arrows*; willing the *Persians*, if they could, to expound that *Ridle*. *Darius* willing to hope the best of his design, conjectured that the *Scythians* did submit unto him, by delivering into his hands their *Air*, *Earth*, *Water*, and *Arms*, *Hierogyphicall* signified in their present. But *Gobrias*, one of the *seven Princes* made this exposition, that if the *Persians* could not flie like a *bird* thorow the air, or like a *mouse* creep under the earth, or like a *frog* swim over the water, they could by no means scape the *Persian* Arrows. And to say truth this *Commentary* best agreed with the *Text*. For these *Scythians* following close upon him, or rather driving him before them, and vexing him with continuall skirmishes, forced him to make such hast to get over the River, that he lost 80000 of his men in the fight and flight. This was the onely memorable Action of these *Europæan Scythians* in those elder ages: more memorable in the times succeeding for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is said of these *Tauri*, or *Tauro Scythæ*, that for the pleasing of their Gods, especially of *Diana*, whom they called *Orsiloche*, they used to sacrifise all such strangers as they could lay hands on, and with their heads most barbarously adorned the walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Christian* Advocates of the Primitive times, did much use to upbraid the *Gentiles*; taunting them with the sacrifices of *Diana Taurica* (so named from hence) as inconsistent with the nature of a God or goodness: most rightly giving them this brand or censure, that they were not *sacra*, but *Sacrilegia*. *Et præstat profanus esse quam sic religiosus.* Better it was to be of no Religion, than of one so cruel.

But to go forwards with the story, in the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unless

unleſs it were that the Emperour *Trajan* (as *Florus* ſeems to intimate) took the City of *Taphre*. Which if he did, he added by that action ſomewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman* Empire: this people being never reckoned amongſt their Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name of their infeſting the *Roman* territories (as the other barbarous Nations did) except they paſſed in the account of the *Gothes*, *Alani*, *Hunnes*, *Avares*, or other of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* people, by which the majeſty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Perſians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with eaſe effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Joccatha*, or *Hoccata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Bathu*, or *Roydo*, one of their moſt renowned Commanders, ſubdued all theſe parts, together with *Ruſſia*, on the North *Bulgaria*, and *Hungarie* on the East. Subject at firſt to the command of the Great *Cham* of *Cathaia*, as the reſt of the *Tartarians* were, they came at laſt to have a Prince of their own; one *Lechtan Cham*, deſcended from the aforeſaid *Bathu*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at laſt of ſo great power by conquering the *Aſiatick Tartars* which lay neereſt to them, that *Mahomet* the *Great* thought fit to keep them down before grown too ſtrong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha*, then poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, made himſelf maſter of the greateſt part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*, and the Port of *Tanais*; thereby commanding both *Mœotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the firſt, who had maryed a daughter of this *Crim-Tartar* (for ſo they call him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men againſt his Father; the *Turks* and theſe *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* ſhould aid the *Turk* upon all occaſions, with 60000 horſe, if it were required; that they ſhall not make war with any of their neighbours, (except the *Moſcovite*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they ſhall pay yearly to the *Grand Signieur* in the way of tribute 300 Chriſtians; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or depoſition of his Predeceſſor, ſhall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royall Banner in token of his Confirmation in that eſtate: that in reward of theſe ſervices the *Crim-Tartar* ſhall have yearly from the *Grand Signieur* 5500 *Ducates* in the way of penſion; and ſucceed finally in the *Turkiſh* Empire, if ever the male iſſue of the houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould chance to fail. According unto this agreement the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time againſt the *Perſians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not, and that with great and puiſſant Armies, the Great *Cham* ſometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects (leaving but one man in an houſe to attend their cattel) and ſometimes adding 50000 *Circaſſians*, and others of the *Aſian Tartars*. And for the *Moſcovite*, whom he is left at liberty to aſſault by this *Capitulation*; he hath had ſo hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571 they pierced as far as to the City of *Moſco*, and ſet fire on the Suburbs: which flaming into the City built moſt of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 miles in compaſs, within the ſpace of four hours burnt the greateſt part of it, and therein no fewer than 800000 of all ſorts of people: A quartel not to be compoſed, the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdomes of *Caſan* and *Aſtrachan*, which the *Ruſſe* poſſeſſeth; but even to *Moſcovie* it ſelf, as hath there been ſhewn. Nothing ſo punctuall is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the contract, who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worſt his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his ſlave or *Vaſſall*. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling *Mahomet* the *Crim-Tartar* for a deſign to intercept *Oſman Baſſa* in his way from *Perſia* to *Conſtantinople*; authoriſed the ſaid *Oſman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two ſonnes, betrayed by ſome of his own Counſellers (corrupted with *Turkiſh* Gold) were ſtrangled with a Bow-ſtring; *Iſlan* a brother of the *Crims*, firſt ſworn a *Vaſſall* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkiſh Begler-beg* or *Baſſa* to command in chief. What hopes he hath of ſucceeding in the *Turkiſh* Empire, if the houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould fail, hath been already taken into conſideration, in our diſcourſe upon that ſubject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to ſay; his ſubjects having little money, and living moſt upon the bartery of their Cattel. But beſides what he hath in Lands or cuſtomes, and the 5500 *Ducats* yearly which he receiveth from the *Turk*; he hath the *tenth* of all the ſpoils which are got in the warres, and a *Cheekire* for every Captive, for ſome two or three (whoſoever taketh them) according unto their eſtates.

As for his power, what he can do in horſe we have ſeen already; And as for foot, and Ammunition, and other neceſſaries, he is ſupplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth ſometimes eſpouſe his quarrels) by whoſe aſſiſtance they have brought the *Moſcovites* to ſome extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Signieur*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Bathori* (whom *Amurath* the 3d. commended to the Crown of *Poland*) ſent Ambaſſadours to negotiate his election to that Kingdome: and to induce them thereunto promiſed them in his letters amongſt other things, that their *Pope* ſhould be his *Pope*, their *Luther* his *Luther*; and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with *Horſe-fleſh*. His Embaſſie entertained with *Laughter*, as it well deſerved.

2. TARTARIA DESERTA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Precopenſis*, and the Empire of *Ruſſia*; on the Eaſt, with *Antiqua* and *Zagathay*, from which laſt parted by the River *Spane*, which falleth into the *Caſpian* Sea about the middle of it, and the great Lake of *Kitay*, from Eaſt to weſt; on the North, with the *Scythick* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucaſian* Mountains, and ſome part of the *Caſpian*.

It took this name from the many *Deſarts* which are in it, and is called alſo *Aſiatica*, to difference

it

it from *Precopensis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or because it taketh up the whole Continent of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Ptolomy*, except some part hereof incorporated to the *Russian* Empire.

The Countrey of it self sufficiently fruitful, if well mannured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and industrious people, would yield large increase: as appears by the ill husbandry of the *Tartars*, who sow nothing on it but *Mill* and *Panicum* (grains unknown to us) and that without giving it any tillage, receive very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a Nation that hateth *Agriculture*, and laugheth at *Christian* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (so they call our bread) neglect all that which is not of a rank pasture for their Herds and Cattell; moving from one place to another as the grass faileth them; which maketh it so full of *Deserts*, and so empty of Towns, as to deserve the name of *Tartaria Deserta*.

The people or Inhabitants of it are of severall sorts; derived from three severall Originalls, and disposed of in three severall parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly Idolaters. 2. the *Circassians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the most part *Christians*; and 3. the *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mahometans*. These again subdivided into severall Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*, of which the most considerable are, 1. the *Nagaian Tartars*, 2. the *Zavolhenses*, 3. the *Thumenenses*, 4. the *Kirgessi*: besides the *Hordes* or Kingdomes of *Casan* and *Astrachan* added unto the Empire of *Russia*, where described already; and others of inferiour note, not here considerable.

But before we come to speak of these people in their severall places, we must first look upon the whole Countrey as presented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: bounded by *Ptolomy* as before, save that it did extend more Westwards, and was unknown to him in the Northern parts of it; now possessed by the *Moscovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of fourty severall Nations which did then inhabit it, and of about as many Towns of good estimation. Of which there are few or none remaining: and for the names of some of the principall of them, we shall have them presently.

Rivers of most note in it, 1. *Marabius*, 2. *Rhombitus* the Greater, and 3. the Less; 4. *Anticus*, 5. *Theophanius*, 6. *Psathis*, 7 *Thesyris*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Vardanes*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and *Mœotick* Fennes. 10. *Udonis*, 11. *Alnuta*, and 12. *Rha*, paying their tributes to the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of these the principall is *Rha*, by the modern *Latines* called *Volga*, by the *Tartars Edi*, rising in *Russia*, not far from the City of *Mosco*, (where we have described it). Most memorable, besides the seventy mouths or Channels, wherewith it openeth into the *Caspian*, for a *medicinable* and wholesome root growing on both sides thereof, which the Physicians call *Rha*, by the name of the River, and for distinctions sake *Rha Pontick*, to difference it from *Rhubarb*, or *Rha Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it, this last being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Ob*, a River unknown to *Ptolomy*, rising out of the lake of *Kitay*, a Lake in bigness like the Sea, and full of many little Ilands (most of them inhabited). Which River at its first parting from this Lake is said to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing still bigger and bigger, emptieth it self at last in the *Northern* Ocean, the present boundary betwixt the *Russian* and the people in the North of this Countrey.

Principall Mountains of this part, 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River issuing out of it. 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Montes Ceraunii*, lying in the furthest parts hereof (then known unto my Author) to the North and East. 4. *Caucasus*, or *Caucasii Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caspian* Seas, and parting *Sarmatia Asiatica* from *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*. A chain of hills of which *Aristotle* saith, *acumine & latitudine omnium maximi*, &c. that for height and breadth they are the greatest of the East, the tops whereof are lightned by the Sunbeams in midnight till almost day-break, when it is dark-night in the valleys beneath. Not passable for horse or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* shore) but at one place onely, called *Sarmatiæ Pylæ*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucasiæ Portæ*, from the hills adjoining. Situate in the 81 degree of *Latitude*; and not far from the *Caspian* Sea: but that so intricate and narrow, that very small force may keep it against strong Armies. So carefully did Almighty God in his heavenly Providence, shut up this fierce and barbarous people, from the rest of Mankind, by such unfordable Waters, and impassable Mountains: not to be freed out of their prison, till he thought good to use them, as the executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the punishment of sinful and impenitent Nations. This said, we will consider those particular Nations, which before we named, and are now possessed of it in their several places.

1. Opposite to the *Precopenses* lie the *CIRCASSIANS*, extended from the *Cimmerian Bosphorus* and the Fennes of *Mœotis*, towards the Eastern shores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the space of 500 miles, and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name imposed on them by the *Tartars*; whereas before, they were called by *Pliny*, *Zigæ*, by some writers *Zychi*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Ptolomy*.

The Countrie very fitly seated for trade and merchandise, as having a fair and large Sea-coast, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of those spoken of before passing thorow these tracts) and not a few capacious Baies, and commodious Havens. Of which the principall were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Cercetis*, *Syndi*, and *Buta* two known Havens, and specified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. But these conveniences not much looked after by the present Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the warres, than to trades, or *merchandise*. A stout and military people, trained to their weapons from

from their child-hood; and sold as soon as trained to it by unnaturall Parents. For from these parts did the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt* fetch their first *Originall*; from hence supply themselves with a perpetuall *Seminary* of slaves and Souldiers, raised by degrees unto the highest dignities of that slavish Empire. And from these parts the *Persian Sophies* are supplied with their *Cozzel-Bassas*, disciplined and instructed by them like the *Turkish Janizaries*.

The *Christian* faith was here planted in the yeat 860 or thereabouts, by the Ministry of *Cyrill* (or *Chiarill*) and *Methodius*, employed in that service by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. In which respect their Churches are of the *Greek* Communion, conform thereto in rites and doctrine, and of the jurisdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters *practicall*. For it is ordinary with these half *Christians* not to baptize their children till eight years old; to hear divine service standing without their Churches, into which they very seldome enter (especially the Gentlemen) till the 40th. or (as some say) the 60th. year of their age: dividing the whole course of their life betwixt *God* and the *Devil*, in dedicating their youth unto theft and Robbery, their old Age (when they can no longer commit those villanies) to the difficult business of repentance.

Places of most observation amongst the Antients, 1. *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory, so called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief people of these parts; of whom more anon; situate on the very shore of the *Bosphorus*, from hence denominated. 2. *Phanagoria*, in old times a well-traded Empory; situate on a litle Iland raised out of the Sea by the care and industry of the *Greeks*, who had here a Factory. 3. *Apathurgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* surnamed *Apaturia* (which name she gave unto this place) because (saith *Strabo*) when the Giants assaulted her, she craved help of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. 4. *Gerusa*, by *Ptolomy* honoured with the title of *Civitas*; the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called Saint *Georges*. 5. *Oenuntia*, neer the mouth of the River *Thesyris*. 6. *Arazi*, more within the land, which with 7. *Ampsacis*, hath the name of a City also. The name of their chief Havens we have seen before. But few of these or any other mentioned by the antient Authors, being now visible in their ruins: the chief of those which are now extant are 1. *Locoppa*, 2. *Consoco*; but of no great note.

The people antiently though divided into the severall Tribes of the *Thyrsageta*, *Ziga*, *Turca*, the *Hunnes*, *Avares*, and *Mœota*, all noted Nations; besides the *Coaxtra*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambæ*, *Pselii*, and others as obscure as they: were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which those several tribes concentred. Descended in the right of that common originall from *Gomer* the sonne of *Japhet*, first planted in the mountainous places of *Albania*: his posterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themselves in the mountains called *Cimmerini*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, some of them passed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whose time it was extant: and others in some tract of time keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand fixed themselves in these parts, here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, and generally to all the people descended of them. From these particularly as the stout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri* do derive their Pedegree; so from these and the children of *Mesech*, *Magog*, and *Tubal*, the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Asia*, the *Moscovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians*, are to fetch their Originall: all of them great and puisant Nations, and all involved promiscuously in the name of the *Scythians*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable expedition which they made into *Media* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Lesser Asia*: the *Cimmerians* by themselves alone, or by them as principall the rest of these *Sarmatians* in a body together as a *Scythian* People. Distressed with want, or to disburden their small Countrey of superfluous multitudes, these *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulassar*, or *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*, communicating their design with the rest of the *Scythians* to enlarge their quarters, holding along the course of the *Euxine* Sea, and passing thorow the Countrey of *Colchis*, first seized on some parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built, and leaving there their carriages and the weakest of their train with sufficient guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they possessed themselves of *Sardis*, the royall City, and after of the rest of the Countrey or the most part of it; *Ardis*, the sonne of *Giges*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withstand them. Both besides being wearied with long warre, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like case betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the business: assigning to the *Cimmerians* all those parts of his dominions which lay beyond the River *Halys*, and setling his *Lydians* in the rest. By this transaction there were so good correspondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyaxares*, King of the *Medes*, invaded the Countrey of these *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invasion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*; *Halyattes* did espouse the quarrell, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in mariages and blood they became one people; or at least passed not under the accompt of strangers, or the name of *Aliens*. Such end had this most notable expedition of these *Cimmerians*; not much remembred after this for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many petit Princes, but all associated with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*: that King being so great amongst them, that his sonne *Machares*, having maried into some of their families, was made King of *Bosphorus*. But *Machares* having made his peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in succeeding times till the invasion of the *Tartars*, by whom subdued, they acknowledged at first the Great *Cham* for their Soveraign Lord: whose power declining, they have successively been subject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Moscovite*, but most commonly to the *Crim-Tartar* as their neerest neighbour and most able to hurt them.

them. And him they furnish on command with 50000 horse for the *Grand Signeurs* service: yet so that they supply the *Persian* with his *Cozzel-Bassas*, and sometimes serve under him for pay, as they do under any which will entertain them. Governed like the *Suissers*, by their severall *Commonalties*, yet so, that every *Commonalty* hath some principall man (which the *Switzers* have not) whom they call *Morseys*, (that is Dukes) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt these and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greatest *Hords* or *Tribes*, of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of these the *Crims*, or *Precopenses* were a *Castling* onely, proceeding out of this great *Swarm* or Nest of Hometts, though afterwards they became their masters. Of the Countrey or the People we say nothing here: having sufficiently spoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, situate on the River *Volga*, and from thence so named: *Volgar*, and *Bolgar* differing but litle in *Orthographie*, and not much in sound.

This Countrey, as I take it by the situation, should be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether so called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted alliance; or that he had made any *conquests* there; or from some other Prince of the same name; I determine not. And in this tract were those two Pillars advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Ptolomy* called *Columnæ Alexandri*, in whose time they stood without defacement: there being also *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, neer the Banks of *Tanais*; occuring in the same Author by the name of *Aræ Alexandri*. Which probably occasioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander* in pursuit of the *Scythian* warre, as farre as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the course of his actions, that he never got beyond the River *Iaxartes*; distant from *Tanais* no less than 2000 miles.

This Tribe first governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the *Great Cham*, was in the year 1506. subdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made subject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Basilius* the *Great Duke* of *Moscovy*, who thereupon assumed the title of King of *Bolgar*, which his Successors still preserve, with the Town it self; well garrisoned to keep open the whole course of the River *Volga*, by which they mannage the great trade of the *Caspian* Sea. But for the main body of this people, they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a limb of the same body with him, and are subject unto his commands: though by reason of their neighbourhood to the *Moscovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themselves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. East of the *Zavolhenses*, on the other side of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, spreading as far as the borders of *Zagathay*, and declining Southward towards the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Montes Hippici*. Accompted the best men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruell than the rest: void of all Arts, not having, or contemning, money, or the use of Corn. *Horse-flesh* and *Mares Milk*, their best diet; the flesh either rosted by the Sun, or heated by continuall hanging at their sadle-bow. And with such cheer (nor worse nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinson* and other *English* men in their travells to the *Caspian* from the River *Volga*. Their chief Town, if possibly it deserve that name, is called *Scharayirzik*, the Residence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Sellistare*, where the said *Jenkinson* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by severall *Morseys*, the Heads or *Chiefs*, no doubt, of their severall *Clans*: agreeing well enough together against the *Moscovite*, whom they infest with frequent inrodes, and put him to the charge of continual Garrisons, at *Casan*, *Astrachan*, and *Wiatra*. Their warres for the most part only *prædatorie*, rather to get some present booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their dominion: and therefore commonly pacifyed, and sent home with presents. The *Great Duke* is so good a Statesman, as to think the expence of money cheaper than that of blood; especially when he hath to deal with such an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of consequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and consequently nothing to be got but blowes. Their *Morseys*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharayick* was the Chief; to whose direction, and appointment (especially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly submit themselves.

4. Betwixt these *Nagaians*, and the *Circassians*, lie those Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, spreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*: but intermixt with the *Heselites*, and *Baschurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of less power. Their life, for the most part in continuall motion, removing with their wives and families from one place to another; and governing themselves in their removes, by the sight of the *Pole-star*. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentile*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number, not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a tree, though they stink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or sweetned, before they return back to the same Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Priests*, by whom sanctified & besprinkled in their publick meetings with a certain mixture compounded of blood, milk, earth, and Cow-dung. A most sweet *confection*, but good enough for them that desire no better. And yet with these the *Moscovite* is fain to hold faire compliance, and to send them every year some presents, for fear they should joyn with the *Nagaians*, or otherwise disturb him in his *Caspian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of these *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolhenses*, and the territory of *Viatka* in the Empire of *Russia*. A warlike people, and living neer a dangerous neighbour: for which cause they do not straggle so abroad in petit companies, as the others do, but keep together in great bodies. For the most part much delighted in *Negromancy* and *conjurations*. In which the devill so befools them, that he suffereth them to raise tempests, and sometimes by *Diabolicall* illusions to defeat their enemies.

The

The only *Hord* of all *Deserta*, which still continue in obedience to their natural Lord the great *Cham* of *Cathay*. And unto these we may adjoin the *Molgomozans*, all *Gentiles*, and the most barbarous of all; living in Caves, and feeding upon worms, and mice, and Serpents, and such other Vermine, as would be poison unto any but such *Molgomozans*, who are more poisonous than those creatures.

These *Hords*, together with the Kingdomes of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, and such of the *Russian* Provinces as lie on the East of *Tanais* and the River *Duina*, make up that Countrey which antiently passed under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: inhabited originally, by the Descendants of *Gomer*, *Mesech*, *Tubal*, *Magog*, the sonnes of *Japhet*, spreading themselves more Northwards as they grew in numbers, out of *Aloania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and the *Pontick* or *Cimmerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olandæ*, *Gerri*, *Samocolchi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimitæ*, *Agritæ*, *Merdi*, *Conapseni*, *Chanides*, *Basilici*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippophagi*, and others of as little note: these last so called from their eating of horses, which dyet they have left unto their Successours. So like in manners and conditions to the neighbouring *Scythians*, that they passed commonly by that name: and by that name are memorable for the expedition by them made into *Asia* the *Greater*, at such time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Asia Minor*. For passing without opposition thorow the *Sarmatian Streights*, where they might have been easily kept out, and leaving behind them the more barren Countrey of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*, where they were incountred, but victorious, by *Phraartes*, then King of the *Medes*. Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, assayed it by cunning; and first perswaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countries, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon, full of prey and presents, they marched towards *Ægypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Psamniticus* the *Ægyptian* King, who had heard of their comming, and thought it best to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his greater cost. Out-vying the *Median* (as of the two the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treasure, and so sent them back again into *Media*; from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that people and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their tributes, and using all kind of insolencies: till in the end, *Cyaxares*, the sonne and Successour of *Phraartes*, acquainting some of his most faithful subjects with his design, caused the better part of them to be plentifully feasted, made them drunk, and slew them; recovering thereby the possession of his whole estate. Afterwards, imitated by the *English* in their *Hock-tide* slaughter. Such of them as escaped this blow, and were not willing to be subject to the Kings of *Media* (as many of them were) were suffered to return home by the same way they came, where at their coming, they found foul work made by their wives and their slaves, the story whereof we had when we were in *Russia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the stories of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, unless those *Amazons*, who attended their Queen *Thalestris*, when she bestowed a visit on *Alexander*, were rather of these *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of those of *Pontus* and *Thermodon*, as I think they were: the neerness of their dwelling to *Hyrcania*, in which place they found him, inducing me to this opinion. But possible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that some of these *Sarmatian* tribes, though by other names, hearing of the successes of the *Hunnes*, *Avares*, and other barbarous nations which made havock of the *Roman* Empire; might join themselves unto them, and make up their numbers: those nations being else two small to compound such Armies, as by them were brought into the field against the *Romans*, with out such like helps. What their estate hath been since subdued by the *Tartars*, hath been shewn already.

3. ZAGATHAY.

ZAGATHAY is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen Ocean*; on the West, with *Tartaria Deserta*, from which separated by the River *Soane*, and the Lake of *Kitay*; and on the South, with the *Caspian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Persia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the Great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imaum*, of the antient writers.

The Countrey spreading but so far, on all sides; as before appeareth, comprehendeth all those Provinces and tracts of ground, which antiently were called 1. the Countrey of the *Sacæ*, 2. *Sogdiana*, 3. *Zagathay*, specially so called, 4. *Turchestan*; included antiently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and 5. the *Terra incognita* which *Ptolomy* makes to be the Northern boundarie of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a survey of all which particulars, we shall find the temper of the whole.

1. SACÆ, or the Countrey of the *Sacans*, is bounded on the East, with the mountain *Imaus*; on the West, with *Sogdiana*; on the North, with *Zagathay*, properly and specially so called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Sacæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not.

The Countrey antiently either barren, or ill manured; full of vast Forests, wide Desarts, and the like unhabitable places. Few or no Cities in it, and not many villages (*civitates autem non habent*, as my Author hath it) the people living for the most part in Caves, or otherwise wandring up and down with their droves of cattel. Called for that reason *Nomades* by some antient writers. The name not proper to these onely, but common to all those who followed the like roving life, as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Libya* and *Numidia* in *Africk*. Onely one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (Λιθινὸς πύργος, in the *Greek*) or the Castle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the most part by *Camels*, or travellable onely with those Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was antiently into many Tribes, the *Carate*, and *Comari*, neer the River *Jaxartes*; the *Massageta*, and *Comeda*, neer the hills called *Ascatanas*; the *Bylce* and *Grynæi*, more within the Country. All joined in one by the name of *Sacæ*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progress into *Armenia* (to which they had an easie passage by the Northern banks of the *Caspian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacasena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there slain by the *Persians* in the middest of their Feastings, they left there also some resemblance of their name, in an annuall festivall called *Sacea*, celebrated by the *Persians* in memoriall of their good success in the warre against them. Such as stayd here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch, did so good service to that Prince, that *Amorges* the King of these *Sacæ*, is said to have rescued him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwise he had been slain, or taken Prisoner. In the declining of that Kingdome, they were subdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian*, and *Sogdian* warres; who hereabouts, by *Cobertanes* a noble *Persian*, was presented with a Bevy of beautifull Ladies, one of the which was that *Barsine* whom he made his wife, and had by her that *Hercules*, whom *Polysperchon* and his faction proclamed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or suffered; as they have been made by the opinion or mistake of others. Who building *Castles* in the *Air*, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Ancestors) from this Originall: as if they were called *Saxons*, *quasi Sac-sonnes*, or the *sonnes* of *Sacæ*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of these *Sacæ*, when they left these parts, must be great, or little. If little, how can we conceive it possible they should force their way thorough those valiant Nations of both *Sarmatias*; who to the last maintained their liberties and estate against the *Romans*. If great enough to force their passage (for stout and provident Nations use not to give passage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it possible they should be shut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Chersonees*. The *Saxons* then, whatsoever they were, were no *sonnes* of the *Sacæ*; and what in likelihood they were hath been elsewhere shewn.

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the East, the *Sacæ*; on the North and West, *Zagathay* specially so called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Countrey, though of themselves a spurre or branch of the Mountain *Caucasus*.

The Countrey indifferently fruitfull, and very rich in pasturage, because very well watered. For besides *Oxus* and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The principal of which, 1. *Dymus*, and 2. *Araxates*, both navigable and capable of very good ships; both also running down the hills with a headlong course, and passing thorough the champain Countrey, empty themselves at last in the lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolemy* saith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of most consideration it, 1. *Drepsa*, the *Metropolis* or mother-City of this people. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus Darapsa*: situate on the River *Oxus*. 2. *Oxiana*, on the same River, and from thence denominated. 3. *Marnca*, on the same River also. 4. *Alexandria*, called for distinctions sake, *Alexandria Oxiana*; which name declareth both the founder and the situation. 5. *Alexandria*, for the same cause of distinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either because the last City which he built in these parts, or because it lay furthest off on the borders of the *Scythians*; against whose invasions or irruptions it was said to be built. 6. *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Cyroschata*, more memorable, and not less antient, than any of those named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus*, to fortifie his borders against the *Scythians*. It held out against the great *Macedonian*, a long time: and he himself comming nigher to the wells, than discretion would permit an ordinary Generall, had such a blow on the neck with a stone, that he fell to the ground, his eyes swimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for slain. But reviving he took the Town by a mine, and levell'd it with the ground, in revenge of so great a danger.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydracæ*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cheraſmii*, neer the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jasii*, and *Tachori*, neer the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepsiani* in the East parts bordering on the *Sacæ*; whose chief City was *Drepsa*: descended from their severall roots, but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own person, as before was said, at the sollicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Persian*, it rebelled again. Who being suppressed, and the Countrey in some measure quieted, *Arimazes*, a native of the Province, renewed the war. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of such notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force not fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 300 of his youngest and most active men, on the promise of great reward, to climb the hill, and without any noise to shew themselves at the back of the Enemy. Which having performed with the loss of 30 of their company, *Alexander* sent one *Cophes* to *Arimazes*, to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back: who terrified with what he saw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was scourged and crucified for his labour. So necessary in the Art of warre-fare is a peece of wit. After this time, it ran the same alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Persians* did; till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom still subject.

3. *ZAGATHAY* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Cathay*; on the West, with *Turchestan*, and part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the North, with the Countrey of the *Samoyeds*, the *Terra Incognita* of the Antients; on the South, with the *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*. Antiently part of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*, and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the first Prince hereof since the time of the *Tartars*.

The

The Countrey reasonably fruitfull, but not so rich in the naturall temper of the soyl, as the industriousness of the people, more civill farre than any other of the *Tartars*; studious of good letters, lovers of Arts as well ingenious as *Mechanick*; well skilled in *manufactures*, and very seldome without the confluence of forein Merchants. Populous, and well-stored with towns and villages; both for their own more handsome dwelling, and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Jaxartes*, now called *Chesel*, the principal of all this Countrey: great of it self, but made much greater by the waters of 2. *Daix*, another River of good note, rising out of the mountain called *Norosus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with whose streams they are dischannelled in the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Jartus*, and 4. *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are whose names I find not in my Authors, descending from the mountains of this Northern Region, which are great and many. As viz. 1. *Norosus*, spoken of before. 2. *Asphisii*, on the North of that. 3. *Toporus*, more unto the North. 4. The mountains called *Sychi*, more Northward still. 5. Those called *Anarei*, besides 6. *Imaus*, of most name, but common unto *Cathay* as well as to *Zagathay*.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Aspabota*, the only Town ascribed by *Ptolomy* to this Countrey, and by him honoured with the title of *Civitas*. 2. *Zabaspia*, of less antiquity, but of greater estimation at the present time. Situate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Abias*) on the brink of the *Caspian*, and much frequented by the Merchants of forein Countreys, chiefly from *India*, and *Cathay*. 3. *Marachanda*, antient, and of fame, but placed by *Ptolomy*, (why I know not) amongst the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North side of *Oxus*, and consequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes*, (who having delivered the Traitor *Bessus* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) against the *Macedonian* Army; by which besieged under the command *Menedemus*. But *Menedemus* being slain, with some of his Souldiers, *Spitamenes* escaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was slain by his own wife, and his head presented to the Conqueror. Here was it also that *Alexander*, being then Master of the Town, in a drunken fit slew his dear friend *Clytus*, who at the battel of *Granicus* had saved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarchand*, the seat-Royall of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the spoils and treasures he got in the wars; there being brought hither from *Damascus* only (and by that one instance we may guess at the rest) 8000 *Camels* laden with the choicest moveables. Still the chief Residence of the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, but farr short of that magnificence which once it held. 4. *Bichend*, of no Antiquity, nor of such great name as the Regall *Samarchand*, but at this time of greater wealth; situate somewhat in the midland, but populous, and a well-traded Town. 5. *Azara*, memorable for being made the *Rendezvous* of that mighty Army which *Tamerlane* raised against the *Turks*, consisting in the totall of 1200000 fighting men when it was at the biggest. 6. *Maranis*, from which place the said *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

These *Tartars*, called *Zagathayans*, by the name of their Countrey, are of a different government from that of the Great *Cham* of *Cathay*, though subject to him at the first: and have so been ever since the time of *Zaicham* or *Bathu*, the third great *Cham*; who gave it unto *Zagathay*, a younger sonne, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* succeeded *Og*, by some called *Zain-Cham*, (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather studied to preserve than enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fiercer and more warlike nature, made the first proof of his valour and good fortune against the *Moscovite* (for spoyling a City which had put it self under his protection) whom he overthrew with the slaughter of 25000 foot, and 15000 of his horse. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greater, *Gino Cham*, the great Emperor of the *Tartars* gave him to wife his onely daughter, and therewithall declared him his heir apparent. Incouraged and inabled with this advancement he first brake down the wall of *China*, encountred with the King thereof, overcame him in battel, and imposed on him the summe of 300000 Crowns of yearly tribute. Having left things quiet at his back, and taking with him a great part of the forces of *China*, he advanced forwards against *Bajazet*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatness of whose growing Empire he began to be jealous. Passing along the left-hand shores of the *Caspian* Sea, and so through *Albania*, and the rest of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and conquered as he went) he came at last into *Asia Minor*, where neer the City of *Sebastia*, he encountred with *Bajazet*, vanquished him; slew 200000 of his men, and carried him away captive in an iron Cage. Restoring those Princes dispossessed by *Bajazet* unto their estates, and taking to himself all the *Turkish* Provinces in *Anatolia*; he bestowed a private visit on *Constantinople*, which seen, he marched towards *Syria*, subdued both that Province and the Kingdome of *Egypt*, then possessed by the *Mamalucks*; visited *Hierusalem*, and did honour to the *holy Sepulchre*; returned by *Babylon*, and won it, and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia* and *Assyria*. And taking *Persia* in his way, impatronized himself of that Kingdome also; and such parts of *India*, as either lay neer *Persia*, or his own dominions: now made the *Soveraign Lord* of all the Regions and Kingdomes in both *Asias*, excepting the chief *India*; for which the rich Kingdome of *Egypt* may be put in balance. Come home at last to *Samarchand*, he there died in peace. A Prince of strong body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them such raies of majestie, that ordinary men could scarce endure to look upon them. His hair long, contrary to the custome of the *Mahometans*, (for the most part shaved on their heads) for which he pretended a descent from *Sampson*. Perfect in the *Arabian* learning, and a lover of all learned men, a hater of *Idols*, and *Polytheism*, and a great friend to the *Christians*. More fortunate in the conquering of so many Kingdomes, than in laying any sure foundation to maintain his conquests. For by holding his seat Royal in *Samarchand*, *Cambalu*, and other the chief Cities of *Cathay*, he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to

their former Governours: and by parcelling his estates amongst his Children, and kindred, this mighty flood which had so quickly overflown both *Asias*, returned in very little time within its own proper and originall banks. Even *Zagathay* it self, divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Cham* for the *Lord in chief*) the most considerable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the new beginnings and unsetledness of the *Sophian* Empire, invaded *Persia*: but instead of recovering that Kingdome into the power of the *Tartars*, he lost some Provinces of his own. *Hyrcania*, *Margiana*, and some part of *Bactria*, being since subdued by *Abas* the late *Sultan*. Nothing since memorable, that I meet with in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*.

4. *TURCHESTAN* is bounden on the East, with *Zagathay* specially so called; on the West, with the River *Soane*, parting it from *Deserta*; on the North, with those desarts which *Ptolomy* blindeth under the name of *Terra incognita*; and on the South, with the *Caspian* Sea. So called from the *Turks*, some of which people when they left their first Seats neer the Fennes of *Mœotis*, setled in this Country, and here still continue.

The Countrey as desert and ill planted, as the rest of *Tartary*, not so much out of any defect in the soyl it self, as in the humour of the people: who though originally *Turks*, do yet compose themselves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian Nomades*, neglecting tillage, and abiding in no place longer than that place affords them pasturage for their Cattell: huge herds of which they keep as their greatest treasure, but more to cloth their backs with the skinns, than to fill their Bellies with the flesh.

Amongst the Rivers of most note we may reckon, 1. *Rhymnus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which by the position of it in the 91 degree of longitude, seems to be of this Tract. It riseth out of the mountains called *Montes Rhymnici*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it. 2. *Ardock*, not known by that name amongst the Antients, and whether known at all or not, I am not able to say. Shaping its course towards the North, and weary of so cold a clime, and such barbarous people, after a long and swift course of a thousand miles, it hideth it self under the ground for five hundred more: but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loseth it self for ever in the great Lake of *Kitay*.

To look for Towns amongst a people which delight not in settled houses, were a labour lost: yet some I find ascribed unto them. The principall, but of no great note, 1. *Calba*, and 2. *Ocerra*; Then there is 3. *Crastina*, situate on or neer the Lake of *Kitay*, never without the company of *Russian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Russians* sailing to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathaian Tartars* travelling to it by land. By these two nations more peopled, to maintain their traffick, than by the *Turcomans* themselves, in whose land it standeth.

These *Turcomans* are of the posterity of some of those *Turcæ*, who wanting room, or otherwise oppres'd with want, forsook their antient dwelling neer the Fennes of *Mœotis*, and the coasts of the *Euxine* Sea, to seek new dwellings, *Anno* 844. That their whole body settled here, and from hence made their conquest of *Persia*, as some very industrious men are of opinion, I by no means grant. For when the Sultan of *Persia*, having by the means of *Tangrolipix* and those Mercinary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the victory; and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his service: it is said he shut up the passages of the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The shutting up of which River, and fortifying against them all the passages and bridges of it, had not served his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place: for then he must have manned against them the River *Oxus*, and such as lay betwixt them and him in the common rode. Nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling in this Province, on the East side of the River *Volga*, would undertake the fording of that dangerous and violent Water, and force themselves a way thorow *Albania*, and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers than 3000 men, which was the whole strength that they carryed with them. So that it is not to be doubted but that they came first into *Persia* out of *Turcomania*, and not out of *Turchestan*: and probable enough, that when they first left their own abode, and came unto the Northwest shores of the *Caspian* Sea, they might there divide themselves; Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and passing thorow the *Sarmatian* or *Albanian* Streights, made their way into *Armenia*, and those parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The residue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and crossing the *Volga*, where they found the passage most easie for them, settled themselves in these parts of *Scythia* which they found less peopled, now from them named *Turchestan*. Some of which hearing of the good success of their Countrey-men in the Conquest of *Persia*, might afterwards join with them to assure that purchase. Governed since their first comming hither by the *Chiefs* of their severall *Clans*, whom they honour with the title of *Chams*; but all of them tributaries, and vassals to the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdome of *Zagathay*, which antiently passed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*, and was accompted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imaum*, hath on the South, *Turchestan*, and part of *Zagathay*, strictly and specially so called; extending Northwards to the *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean; and bounded on the West, with the River *Ob*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern Tract are now called by the name of *Samoyeds*; neither the people nor the Countrey known to the antient *Romans*: and indeed neither of them worth the knowing. The men black haired, naturally *beardless*, and not to be discerned from women, but that the women wear a long lock down to their eares. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer*-skins, or *Seil*-skins, with the hairy side outwards; (nothing more wise in that than the other *Tartars*). Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place without any propriety of house or dwelling; the leader of each company their Priest, whom they call their *Popa*, who at every one of their Removes is to offer sacrifice. *Idolaters* they are all, and most of them *Witches*, especially such as live most towards the East, and furthest off from the *Moscovite*, who many times destroy their Idols, and rob them of the skins of *Bevers*, black *Foxes*, and *Sables*, wherewith those Idols are set forth to the publick view,

Be-

but beſtow on them greater heats in a good Fire; into which they commonly uſe to caſt them.

Theſe *Zagathaian* Provinces, with thoſe of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before deſcribed, made that part of *Scythia*, which antiently was called *Scythia intra montem Imaum*: though in the time of *Ptolomy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Saca*, and *Sogdiana*, were reckoned of as Provinces of the Kingdom of *Perſia*; this *Scythia* was reſtrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended onely *Turcheſtan* and the *Speciall Zagathay*. Inhabited beſides the ſeveral Nations dwelling in the four *Perſian* Provinces, by many fierce and ſavage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alanoeſi*, *Saubeni*, and *Maſſai*, towards *Terra incognita*; the *Tectoſages*, and *Aſiotæ*, neer the Mountain *Imaus*; the *Jaxarte* on the banks of the River ſo called; and the *Mologeni*, not farr off; the *Zarataæ*, and *Saſones*, neer the Mountains *Alani*; the *Galactophagi*, or milk-eaters, more towards the Eaſt; the *Taporei*, and the *Sychi*, by the hills ſo named; and many others not material to be here remembred. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom firſt ſubdued.

And now we are at laſt come to *Scythia*, truely ſo named; *Sarmatia Europæa* and *Aſiatica* being called ſo onely by way of participation and reſemblance; becauſe the inhabitants thereof had ſo much in them of the manners and conditions of theſe natural *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to ſpeak ſomething of them, their name, Antiquity, diſpoſition, cuſtomes, and the moſt memorable actions relating to them, as far as we can go by the light of ſtory.

Firſt, for the name, the *Gracian* Fablers have derived it from one *Scythes* the ſonne of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Monſter, half woman, halfe Viper. The *Gramarians*, ἀπὸ τῆς σκύζης ſignifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is ſaid of the *Jewiſh Puritans*, who *faſted to be ſeen of men* σκυθρωποὶ ἀφανίζουσι that they looked with a ſowr, ſevere, and a disfigured Countenance. *Goropius Becanus* doth derive it rather from the *Dutch* word *Schutten*, ſignifying to ſhoot: agreeable enough to the cuſtome and exerciſe of the *Scythians*, who are obſerved by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the antient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Schutten* ſignifieth the ſame in the antient *Scythick*; or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the tongue of the *Scythians*, will not ſo eaſily appear.

Letting that paſs therefore as a matter not to be defined, let us look on the Antiquity of theſe *Scythian* Nations: and we ſhall find it to be great, if not greateſt of all. *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*, That the *Scythians* were of all others, the moſt antient people, was received for an *Oracle*, in the elder ages of the world: and ſo reſolved by way of verdict, when the great controverſie touching the *Antiquity* of thoſe Nations was to be determited betwixt the *Ægyptian* and the *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath paſſed with ſuch a generall approbation, that it is, now to be diſputed. In which regard I am ſo far of the judgement of *Becanus* in that particular as to conceive that the Countreys lying on the North of Mount *Caucaſus* (on which the *Ark* is thought moſt probably to have reſted) were peopled by the ſonnes of *Noah* before they travelled towards the Weſt, or ſet themſelves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had elſe no doubt heard ſomewhat amongſt our Antiquaries, of the ſettling of ſome of thoſe *Adventurers* in theſe Northern Regions, when giving off that enterpriſe, and falling upon new plantations, they either went themſelves, or ſent forth their *Colonies*, into all places of the world. But of any ſuch plantations, *negry quidem*, not one word ſay they. Nor can it probably be ſuppoſed that *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria* could have raiſed 400000 fighting men out of that one Province (though ſome of the adjoining Provinces were took into the reckoning) in thoſe early daies, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the great *Aſſyrian*; had the *Bactrians*, and the reſt of theſe *Scythian* nations been but a *Caſtling* as it were of ſome ſecond ſwarm, and not *coævall* with the firſt. But beſides theſe preſumptions we have other proofs: viz. an old and conſtant tradition on this ſide the Mountains, that the great *Vineyard* of *Margiana* was of *Noahs* planting; and 2. the affirmation of *Porcius Cato*, (though one of the writers of Frier *Annius*) *in Scythia Sagarenatum mortale genus*, that mankind was repaired in theſe parts of *Scythia*, ſo called from *Sabatius Sagi*, an *Armenian* King, whoſe Dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of ſtrong preſumption, if not demonſtrably concludent, that theſe People were of the firſt plantation which was made after the flood; before the reſt of the world was peopled by the *Confuſion* of *Languages*: *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*, could not elſe hold good.

As for their diſpoſitions, and naturall inclinations, they are ſaid by *Trogus*, or his *Epitomator Juſtine*, to be *Gens & laboribus & bellis aſpera*, "A Nation patient of labours, and fierce in warr; of bodily "ſtrength immenſe and vaſt; yet ſo much maſters of their affections, that they made no further uſe of their "greateſt victories, than the augmentation of their fame. Theft they eſteemed the greateſt crime, and "that they puniſhed ſo ſeverely, that their Flocks and Herds might and did ſafely wander from one place to "another, without fear of ſtealing. In them they placed their greateſt wealth, feeding themſelves with "the milk thereof, and making their rayment of the skinns. Silver and gold they contemned as much "as it was coveted by others: there being no deſire of riches, where there was no uſe. *Meum*, and *Tu-*"*um*, thoſe common *Barretours*, and authors of debate amongſt other men, were not known amongſt "them: and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any incloſures, nor troubled themſelves with the "care of building. But putting their wives and children upon wains, or wagons, covered with hides a-"gainſt the weather, they removed from one place to another, no longer ſtaying upon one, than they found "graſs and herbage to ſuſtain their Cattel. So juſt in all their actions, that they needed not the "reſtraint of lawes; and had attained to ſuch an eminent degree of humane perfection, as not to covet. In "a word, that moderation which the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of learning and Phi-"loſophy, was to theſe ſo natural: that the ignorance of vice did as much contribute to their welfare, as

" the knowledge of vertue. Such are the antient *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being such, it was a wonder that the great Monarchs of the world who had wealth at will, should make warre upon them, amongst whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conquerour. Yet either on desire of glory, or to add unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were first invaded by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch, who quarrelling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Massagetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both sides of the River *Oxus*, discomfited her Army, and slew her sonne *Spargapises*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen having in a second battail obtained the victory, and took *Cyrus* prisoner, is said to have cut off his head, and cast it into a boul of blood, with this scornful taunt, *Satia te sanguine quem sitisti*, now drink thy fill of blood which thou hast so thirsted. But others tell us otherwise of the success of this fight. By whom it is reported that the horse of *Cyrus* being disordered on the sight of some *Elephants* which came from *India* to her aid, and himself dangerously wounded, the *Scythians* had won the victory, but for the comming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacans*, (who of a conquered Enemy was become his Confederate) by whom he was rescued, and b the 20000 fresh men which he brought with him, obtained the honour of the day; though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. With *Alexander* they are said to begin the war, as loth to be behindhand with him; arming themselves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, so neer their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them down, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulsed, and wise enough to suffer what they could not hinder, they sued for peace, and had it granted; *Alexander* being called away by the revolt of the *Bactrians*, a matter of more consequence than these *Scythian* brables. With *Alexanders* Successours they had nothing to do, nor with the *Persian* Kings of the *Parthian* race: the *Parthians* being their *Allies*, and of *Scythian* breed. And for the *Romans*, it is well observed by the *Historian*, *Romanorum arma audivere magis quam sensere*, that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it: Remaining undisturbed in their honest poverty, till the *Tartars* an obscure and beggerly people brake out of their *Prison*, and carryed the whole World before them.

As for their Kings, I find some of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be supposed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue, did either reign in the same place, or over the same Nations, or that they succeeded one another. Howsoever we will take their names as they come before us in this list of

The Kings of *Scythia*.

1. *Scythes.*
2. *Napis.*
3. *Phitra.*
4. *Sagillus.*
5. *Targitana.*
6. *Plinus.*
7. *Scholypethus.*
8. *Panaxagora.*
9. *Tanais.*
10. *Indathyrsus.*
11. *Saulius.*
12. *Spargapisis.*
13. *Tomyris.*
14. *Aripethes.*
15. *Seiles.*
16. *Ostimasdes.*
17. *Lanthinus*, the last of all those *Scythian* Kings who are conceived to have the government of these warlike Nations. But for my part I dare not say that ever any one King did command the whole people generally; each *Tribe* or Nation having their particular Kings, as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for those Kings, if such Kings there were (as for some of them I durst venture to swear the contrary) they must be such as in their severall Countries were of greatest fame, most taken notice of in the world, or imployed in the conduct of their joynt and united forces; and so conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian* Nation; as *Cassibeline*, King of the *Trinobantes*, and perhaps not that, is by some writers said to be the King of the *Britains*, because he had the conduct of their forces against *Julius Cæsar*.

CATHAY.

CATHAY is bounded on the West, with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imaus*; on the East, with the *Orientall* Sea, and some part of *China*; on the North, with the *Scythick*, or *Frozen* Ocean; and on the South, with *China* onely. So called, as some think, from the *Chate*, an old *Scythian* people.

The Countrey, notwithstanding the cold Clime under which it lieth, is said to be abounding in wheat, rice, woll, hemp, silk, and musk: Great store of that medicinall root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rha-barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rha-Ponrick* growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have also very great herds of *Camels*, of whose hair they make those stuffs which are hence called *Camelets*, or *Chamlets*: and such an infinite breed of horses, that the great *Cham* feedeth yearly 10000 white mares, which he keeps for their milk. Some of their Rivers are reported also to yield *golden sands*. But whether it be so or not, certain it is, that it is so well provided of all things both for necessary use, and the pleasures of life, that it is thought to be inferiour to few Countries of *Europe*. The Air indeed not so temperate, as in many places; in summer-times extremely hot, and in winter miserably cold: the thunders and lightnings being here so terrible, that in summer many men die for fear, when they hear it. The winds no less violent than the thunder, do sometimes tear up trees by the roots, and beat men from their horses; but seldome bring with them any storm of rain: the greatest showers which they have, hardly wetting the ground.

The

The people are generally very warlike, ſtrong of body, quick of action, fearleſs of the greateſt dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean ſtature, little eyes, ſharp-ſight, and thin beards. Induſtrious they are in ſeverall *manufactures*, of a good wit for diſpatch of buſineſs: more honourable than the reſt of the *Tart ars*, as loving to dreſs themſelves gorgiouſly, to fare ſumptuouſly (if there be occaſion) to live in handſome houſes, and to frequent the moſt populous and beſt-traded Cities. They accompt not any for a wife till ſhe bear them children, nor till then do medle with their dowries; but repudiate them at a certain time, if they find them barren. They reverence their *Cham*, or Emperor, even to *adoration*: not ſuffering any ſtranger to come in his preſence, except he be firſt *purged*: if any any otherwiſe preſume, it is preſent death.

The *Religion* publiquely allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, but ſo that they obey the *Pentateuch* of *Moſes*, and obſerve many things there commanded. It was much laboured by Pope *Innocent*, and King *Lewis* of *France*, that they ſhould receive the *Chriſtian* faith; and they found ſome inclinations in the people, and chief Princes to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their *ſuperſtition*, that *Mahomet* allowed of many wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleſhly luſts, they conformed to that: Yet ſo, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it ſelf (I mean *Cathay* ſtrictly ſo called) and ſome *Chriſtians* alſo; the ſtate of whoſe affairs we have ſhewn before.

Chief Rivers of the whole, 1. *Paliſanga*, navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great ſtore of merchandiſe. 2. *Caromoran*, ſo broad and deep that no bridge can be made over it. 3. *Quiam*, one of the greateſt in the world; in length about an hundred dayes journey; for breadth, in moſt places ſix miles, in many eight, and in ſome ten. 4. *Quiantu*, about half a mile over, and well ſtored with fiſh. Here are alſo very many *Lakes*, both large, and uſefull, as 1. the Lake of *Camiclu*, in which are ſaid to be ſo many pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fiſh for them: which is therefore interdicted (without ſpeciall licence) upon pain of death. 2. the Lake of *Caraim*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and ſo full of fiſh as might ſuffice for all the Countrey, did they love to eat of it. Their mountains we ſhall climb over in their ſeverall places.

It comprehendeth thoſe two large and ample Provinces which the Antients called *Serica*, and *Scythia extra montem Imaum*: the firſt conceived to be *Cathay* eſpecially ſo called; the laſt now named *Altay*, and ſubdivided into ſeverall Regions, of which more anon.

1. *SERICA*, hath on the Eaſt ſome part of *China*; on the South, the reſt of *China*, and ſome part of *India*; on the North, *Altay*, or *Scythia extra montem Imaum*; on the Weſt, the mountains of *Imaus*. In which I follow not the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, who for want of that knowledge in theſe remote Countries which theſe latter ages have afforded, is fain to ſhut it up on the North and Eaſt, with a *Terra incognita*. At the preſent it is called *CATHAY*, and that moſt probably from the *Chata* a *Scythian* People, who ſubduing the old Inhabitants, became maſters of it.

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera*, the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres*; very induſtrious in their times, and amongſt other things in the making of *ſilks* (made of a fine wooll growing on the leaves of trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great eſteem amongſt the *Romans*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere, tam longinquo orbe petitur, ut in publico matrona tranſluceat*; being farre fetch'd, and dear-bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they induſtrious onely, but chaſt and temperate. The names of Theeves and whores were not known amongſt them. They eat not any unclean fleſh, nor uſed the company of their wives, either after conception, or during their menſtrual purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years; the quietneſs and mildneſs of their diſpoſition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watchet or Sea-green eyes, and good compoſure. Men of few words, but very juſt in all which they ſaid or did. Governed by a common Councell of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the uſe of the State.

If you will take the character both of the Countrey and People from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus. "Firſt of the Countrey, that it is plentifull and large, circled about with a chain of "mountains, the two famous Rivers *Oechardes* and *Banthiſis* with a ſtill and ſlow ſtream running thorow "the midle of the incloſed plain, ſpatiouſly ſtretched out to the ſides of the *precipices*; in one place large "and open, in another lying flat and low with an eaſie deſcent; in which regard they have abundance of "corn, ſtore of Cattel, and plenty of *Orchards*. The temperature of the Air pleaſant and wholeſome, the "conſtitution of the weather cleer and pure, the blowing of gentle winds moſt commodious, and the woods "with a pretty glimmering of light, both within and under them: from whence the people with much "ſprinkling of water, ſoften that which the trees bring forth like a kind of *Fleece*, kemb a moſt fine "and tender matter, which they ſpin into *ſilk*, ſerving in former times for the nobility and gentry, now "become common to thoſe alſo of inferiour rank. Then for the *People*, he ſaith that they are a frugall "Nation, lovers of quiet, not troubleſome unto their neighbours, without the uſe of Arms, and the "knowledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers, and ſo farre from covetouſneſs, or curio-"ſities, that when any Merchants come unto them to buy their *ſilks*, without much bearing of the price, "they let them have ſuch things as are bred amongſt them, without looking after the commodities of o-"ther Countries. So he. And if he did not over-act the *Panegriſt* (as I ſee no reaſon why he ſhould) n-ever were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Countrie happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and mountains they had very many) were 1. the *Montes Caſii*, and 2. *Auzacii* towards the Eaſt. 3. the *Annibæ*, environing a great part of the Countrey. 4. the *Aſmiræi*, 5. and thoſe called *Serici*, neer the City *Sera*. 6. *Tagurus*. 7. *Ennodorus*, and 8. *Ottorocorus*. But by

by what names now called it is hard to say. Out of which flowed these principall Rivers, 1. *Oechardes*, by *Pliny* called *Cambris*, rising out of the *montes Auzacii*; 2. *Psitara*, issuing out of the *Asmiri*; 3. *Bautisus*, whose fountain is in the *montes Casii*; and 4. *Lanos*.

Towns of chief note amongst them, 1. *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Seres*, to the Province and people. 2. *Ottorocora*, neer the hills so called; whence it had the name. 3. *Issedon*, for distinctions sake called *Issedon Serica*, to difference it from another of that name in *Scythia*, called *Issedon Scythica*; the chief City of the *Issedones*, *gens magna*, one of the greatest Nations in all the Countrey, as is said by *Ptolomy*. 4. *Orosana*, 5. *Drosache*, 8. *Daxata*, of which little memorable. But these and all the rest (about nine more named by *Ptolomy*) being all decaied, let us next look on the chief Cities, as it stands at the present, by the name of *Cathay*: The principall whereof, 1. *Cambalu*, supposed to be the *Issedon Serica* of the Antients; Built of free stone, and situate in the middest of the Countrey, as the heart and center to the rest. It is seated on the River *Polysanga*, honoured with the great *Chams* residence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all sorts. Besides other merchandises, there are every year 10000 Carts loaded with *silk*, sent thither from *China*. This City is in compass 28 miles, besides the suburbes: in which, besides other inhabitants of all sorts, are 50000 Astrologers, or rather fortune-tellers. 2. *Xandu*, the Royall Palace of the Emperor, is of a soure square figure, every side extending 8 miles in length. Within this *quadrant* is another, whose sides are 6 miles long: and within that another of four miles square, which is the Palace it self. Betwe n these several Walls, are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, F shponds, places for all manner of exercise; and Parks, Forrests, Chases for all manner of game. 3. *Carian*, where the women are said to guild their teeth. 4. *Gouza*, a fair City and a great, adorned with many *Idol-Monasteries*. 5. *Careanfu*, neer which there groweth an herb called *Chiay-Cathay*, of admirable effect against many diseases, and so esteemed of by the natives, that they value an Ounce of this, at a Sack of *Rhubarb*. 6. *Segui*, the residence of a *Nestorian* Bishop.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in those parts which lay next the *Scythians*, are said to have been *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters, most probably a *Scythian* Nation, that custome being so abhorrent from the mildness of the *Serican* temper. Or else, we must correct the Copies of *Ptolomy*, by the History of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who instead of *Anthropophagi*, placeth the *Alirrophagi* in the self same tract. The other Nations not distained with the like reproaches, are the *Sizyges*, and *Anabi*, not farre off the *Auzacian* mountains; the *Pisa* neer the River *Oechardes*; the *Geranei*, and *Rhabbanei*, their neerest neighbours; the *Throani* dwelling towards the East, the *Bata* and *Ottocorora* more towards the South. These with the residue, governed by a Common Councel of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the service of the Common-wealth, as was said before. And more than this we hear not of them in the way of story: the natives never going abroad to vent their wares, and having little speech with Strangers, when they come amongst them. Being vanquished by the *Chatæ*, a *Scythian* Nation, from whom it is likely that it took the name of C A T H A Y; (for in this I go but by conjecture:) they continued under Kings of their own, till subdued by the *Tartars*; against whom they made such stout resistance, being besieged by *Cingis* in their principall City, that when they wanted stones to cast out of their engines, they supplied that want with molten silver, and held it out so long, that *Cingis* finding victuals to grow short in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man should be eaten. But at the last being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens massacred, and their King or Emperor (as some call him) slain: after whose death, and not before, *Cingis* assumed the title of *Cham*, or Emperor. The residue of their story we shall have hereafter.

ALTAY, called also *SCYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM*, is bounded on the South, with *Cathay*; on the West, with the mountain *Imaus*; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; on the East, with the Ocean. Called *Scythia*, because planted by a brood of the *Scythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Scythia* which lay on the West side of that mountain, neerest unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Countrey, have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it standeth by the name of *Scythia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring nations: the mountains called *Auzacii*, *Casii*, and *Ennodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*, as *Imaus* jointly to both the *Scythia's*, which it divided antiently the one from the other: though now this last be reckned to belong to *Cathay* alone, because the *Tartars* on both sides of it profess themselves subjects to that *Cham*. This the most famous mountain in the East of *Asia*; beginning at the shores of the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean; and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or *Indian* Seas. By which account it divideth the *Greater Asia* into East and West, as *Taurus* doth into North and South, which Mountain it crosseth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140. as before was said. That part hereof which lyeth on the South of *Taurus*, was by the Antients called *Bitigo*; and by the modern is named *Gates*: of which we shall speak more when we come to *India*. That on the North of *Taurus*, called *Imaus* properly, was antiently most memorable for dividing the vast Countreys of the *Scythians* into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*; a division much observed by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of some of the *Chams* of *Tartary*; most generally known by the name of *Altay*, but by some called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1. *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hills so named. 2. *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chauranai*. 3. *Sata*. 4. *Issedon Scythica*, so called to difference it from the other of that name

name in *Serica*. Theſe with the reſt, and all the Countrey, as far as it was known in the daies of *Ptolomy*, inhabited by the *Abii*, *Hippophagi*, or horſe-eaters, a diet ſtill uſed by the *Tartars* or modern *Scythians*. 2. The *Iſſedones*, who are ſaid by *Pomponius Mela* to make *Carouſing Cups* of their Fathers heads, firſt trimed and gilded. 3. The *Chamranei*, and 4. the *Chata*; who being (as it ſeemeth) the moſt potent Nation, cauſed all the reſt to be called by the name of *Cathay*; communicating that name alſo to the conquered *Seres*. Beſides the poſſeſſions of which Tribes, there were alſo the Regions of *Acbaſſa*, *Caſia*, and *Auzacitis*, theſe laſt ſo called from the Mountains upon which they bordered.

More than this we have not to ſay of this Countrey by the name of *Scythia*, there being nothing memorable of it in the courſe of ſtory, or worth the obſervation in the way of *Chorography*. Let us therefore look upon it, as preſented to us by the name of *ALTAY*: though therein I ſhall trouble my ſelf no further than by giving a brief touch on the ſeverall parts of it. Of which the moſt that can be ſaid, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not ſomething in them of further uſe. Now for theſe Provinces the principall of them are, 1. *Caſcar*, 2. *Cheſmur*, 3. *Lop*, 4. *Camul*, 5. *Tainfu*, 6. *Caindu*, 7. *Carazan*, 8. *Cardandan*, 9. *Erginul*, 10. *Tanguth*.

1. *CASCAR*, bordering upon *China*, a *Mahometan* Countrey, but admitting of ſome Chriſtians alſo. In ſome parts both ſexes do indulge themſelves this mutual privilege, that if the husband or the wife be abſent above twenty daies, the other party is at liberty to mary again.

2. *CHESMUR*, the inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters*, and *Inchanters*, cauſing the dumb *Idols* to ſpeak, the winds to riſe, and the ſun to be darkned. For ſtudying which *black Arts* (if they come to them by ſtudy) they have many *Monaſteries*, in which their *Hermits* or *Monaſticks* live a ſtrict kind of life, and are very abſtemious.

3. *LOP*, memorable for a great Deſart of thirty daies journey: ſo true a *Deſart*, that whoſoever doth not mean to be ſtarved muſt carry all his victuals with him. Dangerous to travellers, if not beforehand made acquainted with their danger; the *evill ſpirits* uſing to call men by their names, and make them go aſtray from their company, where they periſh with famine, or are devoured with wild beaſts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. *CAMUL*, an Idolatrous Countrey, the people whereof accompt it a great honour to them to have their wives and ſiſters at the pleaſure of ſuch as they entertain. From which brutiſh cuſtome when reſtrained by *Mango Cham*, they petitioned him at three years end to be reſtored again to their former liberty; *proteſting* they could never thrive ſince they left that cuſtome. Which deſire of theirs was at laſt granted, and is ſtill in uſe.

5. *TAINFU*, more civil than the reſt, the people being very induſtrious and good Artificers, making the moſt part of the Arms which are uſed by the *Cham*; and ſome alſo which they ſell to Merchants.

6. *CAINDU*, with a Town in it of the ſame name, of great reſort by Merchants (ſuch as we commonly call *petit Chapmen*) for the *Womens veils* here made, with very great Art, of the barks of Trees. And it is well that they have veils to hide their ſhameleſsneſs, the women of this Tract being proſtituted unto every Traveller.

7. *CARAZAN*, inhabited by a barbarous and ſavage people, who in the day-time live in dens for fear of *Serpents*, with which (and ſome of them ten paces long, and ten ſpans in thickneſs) they are much infeſted; and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lyons. They have an uſe, that when any ſtranger cometh into their houſes, of an handſome ſhape, to kill him in the night; not out of deſire of ſpoil, or to eat his body, but that the ſoul of ſuch a comely bodie, might remain amongſt them.

8. *CARDANDAN*, neer *Carazan*, and as ſavage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their bodies, which they count for the greateſt Ornament. In caſe of ſickneſs they ſend not to the *Phyſician*, but the next *Inchanters*: who taking Counſail of the Devil, apply ſome remedy; or if they think the man paſt cure, they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help; and ſo put him off.

9. *ERGINUL*, poſſeſſed by an *Idolatrous* people, but mixed with ſome *Mahometans*, and *Neſtorian Chriſtians*. In which Countrey they have certain *Bulls* as big as *Elephants*, with mains of fine *white haire* like ſilk, ſome of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine engender a race of ſtrong and laborious Beaſts, not inferiour in that kind to Oxen. Here is alſo found a beaſt of an exquiſite ſhape, but not bigger than a *Goat*, which at every full Moon hath a ſwelling under the belly, which being cut off by the *Hunters*, and dryed in the Sunne, proveth to be the beſt *Musk* in the World.

10. *TANGUT*, the greateſt and moſt potent of all the reſt, inhabited by an induſtrious and laborious people, amongſt whom the Art of printing is ſaid to have been extant a thouſand years. Bleſſed heretofore with a great increaſe of *Chriſtianity*; but now the *Gentiles* or *Idolaters* make the greateſt part, with ſome *Mahometans* amongſt them. And for the ſerving of thoſe Idols, they have not onely many large and beautifull Temples, built in the manner of *Chriſtian* Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 perſons; but alſo many fair *Monaſteries* for the uſe of their *Votaries* and *Recluſes*. They are poſſeſſed of many Towns, moſt of them well fortified, and planted with good ſtore of Artillery. The chief of which, 1. *Sachian*, bordering on the *Deſart* of *Lop*, inhabited by ſome of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they firſt uſed the *Art of printing*. 2. *Campion*, the *Metropolis*, or Mother City of this

this Countrey: where the Christians in the time of *Paulus Venetus* had three fair *Churches*: now overnumbred by the *Gentiles*. who have here many *Monasteries* for the use of their *Idols*, and many Religious persons dedicated to their service only. Who though they live more honestly than the rest of their *Order*, and hold it an impiety to tempt a woman to the act of lust; yet if the woman make the offer, they hold it no small sinne to refuse her curtesie. 3. *Succuir*, situate amongst Mountains clothed with *Rhubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the world, but so neglected by the natives, that did not the forein Merchant bring it into request, they would scorn to gather it. This once a Kingdome of it self, but subject now, with *Targuth*, to the *Cham* of *Cathay*, or the *Great Cham* of *Tartary*.

5. TARTARIA ANTIQUA.

TARTARIA ANTIQUA hath on the South, *Altay*; on the West, and North, the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the East the Streights of *Anian*, by which parted from *America*. So called, because the first habitation of the *Tartars*, who from this den or Jail, made their first eruptions, and have since over-grown so much of *Asia*.

The Countrey cold, and comfortless, as lying under the *Polar Circle*, and in part beyond it: not fit for any but for such as can live no where else: yet heretofore a receptacle of many *Christians* (though those of the *Nestorian* Sect) who here enjoyed that liberty of their Religion, which the *Persians* and *Saracens* denyed them in more pleasing Countries. It containeth many Regions, some not considerable. Those of most note, are 1. *Thebet*, 2. *Tabor*, 3. *Tenduc*, 4. *Bargu*, 5. *Anian*, and 6. *Tartar*.

1. *THEBET*, a fenny *Region*, and full of woods, rich in *Corall* which they find on the Sea-shore, and use it instead of money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary Seat of the *Abassi*, or Pope of this Idolatrous people; much reverenced, and having in his power the disposing of all Offices which concern the service of their *Idols*; They have also some good store of *Musk*; and abundance of wild beasts which are bred in their Forests. But no beasts wilder than the people, who in times past (if not at the present also) used to bury their Parents in their own bowels, and to make drinking cups of their skuls; for fear lest in the midst of their jollity they should forget their Progenitors. Yet not more barbarous than immodest; it being contrary to their custome to take a wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the Mothers use to prostitute their daughters to the Merchant-Strangers, who having had their pleasure of them gratify them with a Jewell or some other present; which they wear on their wedding day: she being the most acceptable Bride to her husband, who bringeth the greatest *Dowry* with her of those base rewards. It contained once eight petit Kingdomes, (*Homagers* to the Kings of *Tenduc*) with many Cities: but now laid desolate by the *Tartar*.

2. *TABOR*, once a distinct Kingdome also. One of the Kings whereof in the year 1540. came to the Courts of *Charles* the fift, and *Francis* the first; where he found Princely entertainment. But upon proof that he was a *Factor* for the *Jews*, and secretly solicited many unto that Religion, by the command of *Charles*, he was burnt at *Mantua*.

3. *TENDUC*, a populous Kingdome of it self, but greater in name and power, the Kings hereof commanding all these North-East parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. Christian in Religion, till the Conquest of it by the *Tartars*, though according to the *Nestorian* tendries: but now *Mahometan* for the most part, with some remainders, and but few, of Christianity. Divided into many large and spacious Provinces, as *Chinchintales*, *Cerguth*, *Egrigaia*, *Cercham*, others of less note, so called according to the names of their principall Towns, or having some Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Those of most note in *Tenduc* it self, 1. *Coras*, the ordinary sepulture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was subdued by the *Tartars*, and since that also. 2. *Caracoras*, where *Cingis* was first honoured with the Title of King. The Kings hereof bearing the port of Kings, and the office of Priests, were antiently called by the name of *Presbyter Johannes*, or *Prester John*: a title now erroniously conferred by some on the Emperour of the *Abassines* or *Æthiopians* in *Africk*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joseph Scaliger*, a man of such infinite reading, should be so deceived: and by the authority of his judgement deceive so many. For finding that there was a *Presbyter Johannes* in the North of *Asia*, and hearing vulgarly that title given unto him in *Africk*; he fell upon a fancie that this *Abassine* Emperour was formerly of so great power, as to extend his empire over *India*, and the *North* of *Asia*; and in this last, for the assurance of his conquests, to hold his residence. A monstrous, and undefensible fancy. For besides that all histories, even those of the *Abassines* themselves, are silent in it: how improbable is it, that a King reigning in the heart of *Africk*, should subdue the most remote parts of *Asia*; and there keep his Court: so many great States and most puissant Nations, being interposed? or that so memorable an exploit should be buried in silence, and found in no record but in *Scaligers* head? Besides it is well known, and generally granted, that the *Presbyter John* of *Asia*, was by Sect a *Nestorian*; but he that is so called in *Africk*, of the Sect of the *Jacobites*: and further, that the Christians of *Æthiopia* are circumcised, which never was reported of those of *Asia*.

Letting this pass therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill-grounded fancy, we are to know that formerly this Province of *Tenduc*, was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin-Cham*, the King thereof. After whose death a certain *Nestorian* shepheard (that is to say, the master of great flocks of sheep) being Governour of the *Naymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himself the title of king of *Tenduc*; whom they called by the name of *Praest John*, or Prince *John* (the same word in their language, as in the *Hebrew*, sig-

ſignifieth both *Prieſt* and *Prince*.) Dying he bequeathed his eſtate and flocks to his brother *Unt-cham*, (commonly called in one word *Uncham*) a greater ſheep-maſter than he, whoſe flocks ranged over all the paſtures of the *Moles*, or *Monguls* and *Tartars*, though dwelling fourteen daies journey off, whom he had in ſubjection: the title of *Prieſt John*, or *Presbyter Johannes*, going along with the dignity and Royall eſtate. And though afterwards this *Uncham* was ſubdued by the *Tartars*, yet his poſterity for long time were ſuffered to enjoy the title of Kings and Presbyters; (but Vaſſals, and *Homagers*, to the Great *Cham*): the *Great Chams*, in regard of their nobility, and royall parentage, beſtowing their daughters on them in marriage; as is ſaid by *William de Rubraquis*, who travelled in theſe Countries, Anno 1253. the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Uncham*) but commonly called *Presbyter Johannes*, as his Fathers were

4. *BARGU*, on the extreme North-weſt, bordering on both thoſe ſides the cold *Scythick* Ocean ſituate under the *North-ſtarre*; of the ſame nature, both for the ſoyl and people, as that of the *Tartars*. And

5. *ANIAN*, on the North-Eaſt, oppoſite unto it, giving name unto the *Streights of Anian*, lying betwixt *Tartarie* and *America*, which Streights the *Tartars*, and ſome other of theſe Northern nations, are thought to have paſſed over, and to plant that Countrey.

6. *TARTAR*, ſo called of the great River *Tartar*, the principall of this Northern Traſt, and giving name unto the *Tartars*: this being their Originall Countrey, where they lived like beaſts, having neither faith, nor letters, nor habitation, nor the uſe of Arms, nor any reputation amongſt their neighbours. In matter of *Religion*, the worſt ſort of *Gentiles*, worſhipping the Sunne, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth: to which they offered in the morning faſting, the firſt of their meats and drinks.

Their *Idols* made of *Felt*, and placed on both ſides of the doors of their tents or booths, as the preſervers of their Cattel, and the Authors of milk. Divided into five *Clans*, or Tribes, denominating ſo many Towns and territories in which they dwelt, that is to ſay, 1. *Mongul*. 2. *Teke-Mongul*, or the *Great Mongul*) 3. *Sommongul*, or the *water-Mongul*. 4. *Mercat*. 5. *Metrit*: each of them Governed by its *Chief*, as commonly it is amongſt barbarous Nations; though all thoſe *Chiefs* ſubordinate to ſome higher power. Oppreſſed by *Uncham*, or *Unt-cham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their paſtures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattel, with joint conſent they removed ſomewhat further off, and denied their *Tribute*. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Teka-Monguls*, and ſo well husbanded, that they admitted him for their King. For publiſhing abroad amongſt the Credulous people, that an armed man appeared to him in his ſleep, with a white horſe, and ſaid, O *Cangius*, or *Cingis*, *it is the will of immortall God, that thou be Governour of the* Tartars, *and free them from bondage, and paying tribute*; he found, a generall belief; eſpecially amongſt thoſe of his own *Clan*, who joyning themſelves to him, followed him, as their *Ring-leader*, in all his actions. Thus backed and ſtrengthned he made warre againſt the *Sommonguls*, ſlew their Commander, and ſubdued them: and by their help, ſucceſſively aſſaulted the *Mercats*, and *Metrits*, whom he alſo vanquiſhed. And having thus ſubdued all the *Clans* of the *Tartars*, and added the eſtates of *Thebet*, and *Tanguth*, unto his Dominions, he was by the conſent of the *ſeven Princes*, or *Chiefs* of their *Clans*, (*Thebet*, and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a ſeat on a peece of *Felt*, (the beſt throne they had or could afford) and ſalured King; with as great reverence and ſolemnity as their ſtate could yield. And firſt to make triall of his power, and their obedience, he commanded the *ſeven Chiefs* or Princes to ſurrender their places, and each of them to cut off the head of his eldeſt ſonne: which was done accordingly. Had *John of Leiden* been a *Scholar*, as he was but a *Botcher*, I ſhould think he had ſtudied the Acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Aſſured by this of their fidelity and obedience, he ſet upon the *Naymans*, a people of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himſelf fit for ſome great alliance, he ſent to *Uncham*, and demanded one of his daughters for his wife, Which *Uncham* with ſome threats, but more ſcorn, denying; he marched againſt him, ſlew him in the field, and poſſeſſed his daughter, and with her alſo his eſtate. Proud with this good ſucceſs, and encouraged by ſo great an increaſe of power, he invaded the Kingdome of *Cathay*; pretending for that alſo the authority of an *heavenly viſion*, in the name of the *immortall God*: in which attempt, diſcomfited at firſt with a very great overthrow, but at laſt victorious; conquering the ſeveral nations of it by one and one, till in the end he brought the warre to the chief City of that Kingdome, which at laſt he took, and therewithall the title of *Cham* or Emperor. Continuing in this dignity for the ſpace of ſix years, and every year adding ſomewhat to his dominions, he was at laſt wounded in the knee at the Caſtle of *Thaygin*, of which wound he died, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*.

This is the beſt accompt I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the originall of this ſpreading Nation, and the deſcription of the Country of their firſt habitation. They that have *chriſtned* ſome of the moſt Northern parts of it by the names of the *Tribes* of *Dan*, and *Naphtalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more credit have ſupplied thoſe vacant places, which they knew not otherwiſe how to fill, with the pictures of wild beaſts, or monſtrous fiſhes: which might well enough have pleaſed the eye, without betraying the judgement of the looker on. Of his Succeſſors I am able to make no certain Catalogue, their names being doubtfully delivered, and the ſucceſſion much confounded amongſt our writers: the names of the *Provincial* Sultans being many times impoſed upon us, inſtead of thoſe of the *Chams* themſelves. But we will wade through thoſe difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them, as the light of ſtory will direct me: firſt adding (what ſhould have been before remembered) that it is recorded, that *Cingis* before he joyned battel with *Uncham*, conſulted with his *Diviners* and *Aſtrologers* of the ſucceſs. They taking a green reed, cleft it aſunder, writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Uncham* on the other; and placed them not farre aſunder. Then fell they to reading

reading their *Charms*, and conjurations; and the reeds fell a fighting in the ſight of the whole Army, *Cingis* Reed overcomming the other: whereby they foretold the joyfull news of victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly hapned. And this was the firſt ſtep by which this baſe and beggerly Nation began to mount unto the chair of Empire and Soveraignty; whereas before they lived like beaſts, having neither letters, nor faith, nor dwelling, nor reputation, nor valor, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was ſaid.

The great *Chams* of *Tartars*.

A.C.

1162. 1. *Cingis*, *Cinchius*, *Zingis*, or *Changius*, was made King or *Cham* of the *Tartars*; he ſubdued *Tenduch*, and *Cathaia*, changing the name of *Scythians*, and *Scythia*, to *Tartartans*, and *Tartaria*. 6.

1168. 2. *Jocuchan Cham*, or *Hoccata*, ſucceeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was firſt known in *Europe*, Anno 1212. in which year they drove the *Polſockie* from the banks of the *Euxine* Sea. By his Captain *Bathu*, or *Roido*, he ſubdued *Moſcovia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*; waſted *Hungary*, *Boſnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*; and by his other Captains, took *Perſia* from the *Turks*.

3. *Zaincham*, *Bathu*, or *Barcham*, ruined the *Turks* Kingdom of *Damaſcus*, and *Aſia* the leſſe.

4. *Gino Cham*, whoſe daughter conveyed the Empire unto her husband *Tamerlane* or *Tamberline*.

1370. 5. *Tamir-Cutlu*, *Tamir-Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great tyrant, but withall an excellent Souldier. It is thought, that he ſubdued more Provinces in his life-time, than the *Romans* had done in 800 years. Of whoſe acts we have ſpoke at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongſt his Children, as *Perſia* to *Mizi Charok* his fourth ſonne, *Zagathay* to another, (perhaps unto *Sautochus* his eldeſt ſonne) and ſo to others.

1405. 6. *Lutrochin*, the ſecond ſonne of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded in *Cathay*, though the eldeſt was before proclaimed, which his Father had before prognoſticated: who when his ſons came to him before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Sautochus* who was the eldeſt, but lifting up the chin of *Lutrochin*, who was the ſecond. He lived not long, ſucceeded to by

7. *Ailan*, who added little to his eſtate.

8. *Mungo Cham*, to whom *Haiton* an *Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian* Hiſtory) went for ayd againſt the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. By whoſe perſwaſion the ſaid *Mango Cham* is ſaid to have been *chriſtned*, with all his houſhold. and many nobles of both ſexes.

9. *Cublay Cham*, the ſonne of *Mango*.

10. *Tamor Cham*, the Nephew of *Cablay* by his ſonne *Cingis*.

11. *Demyr Cham*, the great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1540 or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are, who have ſince reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable acts have been done among them. The great diſtance of Countries, and difficulty of the journey have hindred further diſcoveries. For the great *Cham*, and his next neighbour the King of *China*, will neither ſuffer any of their ſubjects to travell abroad; nor permit any foreiners to view their dominions, or enter into them; unleſs either Embaſſadours or Merchants, and thoſe but ſparingly, and under very great reſtraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their affairs.

The government is tyrannicall; the great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his *tongue*, (beſides which they have almoſt no laws) conſiſteth the power of life or death. He is called by the ſimple vulgar, *the ſhadow of ſpirits, and ſonne of the immortall God*: and by himſelf is reputed to be the *Monarch* of the whole world. For this cauſe every day aſſoon as he hath dined, he cauſeth his trumpets to be ſounded; by that ſign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the earth, to go to dinner. A fine dream of univerſal Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the ſeven chief Princes aſſemble to crown his ſonne; whom they place on a black coarſe cloth; telling him, if he reign well, heaven ſhall be his reward; if ill, he ſhall not have ſo much as a corner of that black cloth to reſt his body on: then they put the crown on his head, and kiſſing his feet, ſwear unto him fealty and homage. And at the funerall of theſe great Monarchs, they uſe to kill ſome of his *guard-Soudiers*, whereof he hath 12000 in continuall pay; ſaying unto them, *Ite & domino noſtro ſervite in alia vita*. *Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obſequies of *Mango Cham*, no fewer than 10000 were ſlain on this occaſion.

Theſe *Chams* are for the moſt part ſevere juſticers, and puniſh almoſt every ſmall fact with ſudden death; but theft eſpecially. Inſomuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a pail of milk from a womans head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the womans out-cry was apprehended; and cut a ſunder with a ſword, ſo that the blood and the milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *lying* puniſhed with leſs than death, and ſo ordained to be by the lawes of *Cingis*. their firſt Emperour, a wiſer man, than poſſibly could be expected from ſo rude a Countrey, and of ſo little breeding in the knowledge of books or buſineſs: the *Tartars* being utterly without the uſe of letters, till the conqueſt of the *Huyri*, a *Cathaian* nation, but of Chriſtian faith.

What forces the *Great Chams*, in the height of their power, were able to draw into the field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, conſiſting of 1200000 horſe and foot, as was ſaid before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we ſhall find them not inferiour to the greateſt Princes. For *Cublay Cham*, long after the diviſion of this great eſtate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the field againſt *Naian* his Unkle, and one *Caidu*, who had then rebelled, an Army of 100000 foot, and 360000 horſe; there

there being 500000 horſe on the other ſide. Which made almoſt a million of men in both Armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay* and thoſe of *Turcheſtan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the firſt is ſaid to have been able to raiſe 300000 horſe, and the laſt an hundred thouſand more. For ſtanding forces, he maintains 12000 horſe, diſtributed amongſt four Captains, for the guard of his perſon: beſides which he hath great forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occaſion be: ſo that he need not fear any outward invaſion, and much leſs any homebred rebellions.

Of the *Revenues* of the *Cham*, I can make no eſtimate, but may conclude them to be what he liſt himſelf: he being the abſolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of wooll, Silk, hemp, corn, and Cattel. Then doth he draw into his own hands all the gold and ſilver which is brought into the Countrey, which he cauſeth to be melted, and preſerved in his treaſurie: impoſing on his people inſtead of money, in ſome places *Cockle-ſhels*, in others a black coin made of the bark of trees, with his ſtamp upon it. And beſides this, hath to himſelf the whole trade of *Pearl-fiſhing*, which no body upon pain of death dare fiſh for, but by leave from him. So that his Treaſury is conceived to be very rich, though his Annual in-come be uncertain, or not certainly known.

And ſo much for *Tartary*.

OF CHINA.

CHINA is bounded on the East, with the *Orientall* Ocean; on the West, with *India*; on the North, with *Tartary*, from which separated by a continued chain of hills, part of those of *Ararat*; and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great wall extended 400 Leagues in length: built as they say, by *Tzaintzon*, the 117th King hereof; and on the South, partly with *Cauchin-China*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean.

It was called antiently *Sina*, or *Sinarum Regio*, by which name it is still called at the present by our modern *Latinists*; and from whence that of *China* seems to be derived. By *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countries *Sanglai*, by the natives *Taine*, and *Taybinzo*, which last, signifies no other than a Realm; or by way of excellence, *the Realm*. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzinin*; and the inhabitants call themselves by the name of *Tangis*.

It is said to contain in circuit 69516 *Diez* of *China* measure, which reduced to our *European* measure, will make a compass in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the borders of *India*, to *Colim*, one of the *Northern* Provinces of this Continent, 1800 Leagues. But they that say so, speak at randome. For besides that 1800 Leagues in length, must needs carry a greater compass than 3000 Leagues; they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no sober man will grant. And answerable to this vast compass, it is said also to contain no fewer than 15. Provinces, every one of which is made to be of a greater Continent than the greatest Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of waste ground, or full of unhabitable Desarts, as in other places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit once for all to lay down in this *Diagramme* following.

The Provinces, Cities, and Towns in *China*.

Pro.	Cit.	To.	Pro.	Cit.	To.
1 *Canton*	37	190	9 *Honan*	20	102
2 *Foquien*	33	99	10 *Pagnia*	47	150
3 *Olam*	90	130	11 *Tartan*	47	78
4 *Sisnam*	44	150	12 *Quinchen*	45	113
5 *Tolenchia*	51	155	13 *Chagnian*	43	95
6 *Cansay*	24	122	14 *Susnam*	41	105
7 *Minchian*	25	29	15 *Quinsay*	31	114
8 *Ochian*	19	74			

By which it doth appear, that in these fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities; 1593 walled Towns; and besides them 1154 Castles, 4200 Towns unwalled, and such an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Country seems to be but one City onely.

It reacheth from the 130th, to the 160th Degree of *Longitude*: and from the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, to the 53d degree of *Latitude*. So that it lyeth under all the *Climes* from the third to the nineth, inclusively: the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours and fourty minutes; increased in the most Northern parts, to 16 hours, and 3 quarters. Enjoying by this site an air somewhat of the hottest, especially in those parts which ly neer the *Tropick*; but withall very sound and healthy, and fit for the production of the choisest fruits.

The Countrey very rich and fertile insomuch that in many places they have two, and in some three harvests in a year; well cultivated, and sowed with all manner of grain, and planted with the best kind of fruits; which do not onely come to a speedy maturity, but to more excellencie and perfection than any of these Western parts. The like is also said of their *Pearls*, and *Bezoar*; fairer and of greater vertue than those of *America*, or any other part of the world besides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley, Rice, Wooll, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of metals, Fruits, Cattle, Sugar, Honey, *Rhubarb*, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, *medicinall woods* called *China-wood*, by the name of the Countrey, Musk and Salt: the custome for which last in one City onely, which is that of *Canton*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crownes. It yieldeth also an *Herb*, out of which they press a delicate juice, which doth not onely serve them instead of wine, but preserveth their health, and freeth them from many of those inconveniences which the immoderate use of wine doth breed to others. Such store of *Poultry* of all sorts, but of Ducks especially, that in the Town of *Canton* onely before mentioned

mentioned, it is thought there are 12000 eaten every day, one day with another.

The people are for the most part of swart complexion, but more or less, according to their neerness to the heats of the Sun; short-nosed, black-eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their garments very long, and are so much delighted with their own fashion and composure, that as the *Negroes* use to paint the devil *White*, as a colour contrary to their own: so when these *Chinois* use to draw the picture of deformed persons, they set him forth in a short coat, broad eyes, long nose, and a bushy beard. They are much given unto their Bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately: drink their drink hot, and eat their meat with two sticks of *Ivory*, *Ebonie*, or the like, not touching their meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of linnen. The use of *silver forks* with us, by some of our Spruce gallants taken up of late, came hence into *Italy*, and from thence to *England*. Their mariages they celebrate most commonly in the *New-Moon*, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: in which solemnity they spare for no cost or charge, musick, and Stage-plays, and good cheer many daies together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their natural industry, and their proficiencie in *Manufactures* and *Mechanick* Arts. For the sonne is bound to follow his fathers occupation: which law preventing the roaving about of idle people, and exciting in each breast an emulation of every Art; maketh the Inhabitants excellent Artificers. In giving almes they are bountiful to the maimed, and the lame; but reject the blind, as being sufficiently able to get sustenance for themselves by corporall labour; as grinding of Corn, &c. They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing*, before it was known in *Europe*: but print not as we do, from the left hand to the right; nor as the *Jews*, from the right hand, to the left; but from the top of the leaf, downward to the bottom. *Gunnes* also have been used among them time out of mind: whence they are so well conceited of themselves, that they use to say, They themselves have two eyes, the *Europæans* one, and the rest of the people of the world, not one. A pretty flourish of self-praising. Now *Gunnes* were in use in these Eastern Countries, and consequently also amongst them, even when *Bacchus* made his expedition into *India* (which was some three or four years before, or after the departure of *Israel* out of *Ægypt*,) Sir *Walter Rawleigh* seemeth to affirm: because *Philostratus* in the life of *Apollonius Tyanæus*, telleth us how *Bacchus* was beaten from a City of *Oxydracæ*, by thunder and lightning; which he interpreteth to be the *Cannon*. But certainly himself in another place of his most excellent book, acknowledgeth this *Philostratus* to have written fabulously: and therefore no fit foundation for a conceit so contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Besides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of thunder and lightning from Heaven, *Severus* discomfited *Pescinnius Niger*; and by the same means, was himself repulsed from the wall of *Petra* in *Arabia*; we may (if this interpretation hold good) as easily maintain, that *Severus* had great Ordnance in his Camp, and the *Arabians*, in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Gertrudenberg* learned it of the *Chinois*; or whether good inventions, like good wits, do sometimes jump, I dare not determine: sure I am that he first taught it in *Europe*; and as some say, in the year 1440. At *Halam* a Town of *Holland*, it is first said to be practised; and at *Mentz*, perfected. Now whereas it is by some doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not; I must not herein be both a Judge, and a party; but must leave the decision of the point to men unintereſſed. Onely this I dare boldly say, that this most excellent invention hath been much abused, and prostituted to the lust of every foolish and idle paper-blurrer: the treasury of learning being never so full, and yet never more empty, over-charged so with the froth and scumme of foolish and unnecessary discourses. In which (though all Nations have their share therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accompted the most blame-worthy: who not content to scatter their *poor conceptions* onely amongst themselves, and print them in their own tongue onely (as our *English Paper-Blurrers* do) publish them in the *Latine* to the eye of others, and send them twice a-year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Readers eye, nor the Printers hand. *Scriptorum plus est hodie quam muscarum olim cum caletur maxime*; the complaint once of an old *Comedian*, was never truer than at the present.

But not to dive too deep into this dispute, the people, as before was said, are good *Artificers*, ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *porcellan* dishes, curious carvings, and the fine painted works which we have in Tables, Leathers, Stuffes, being brought from thence. A politick and judicious Nation; but very jealous of their women, and great tyrants over them, not suffering them to go abroad, or sit down at the Table if any stranger be invited, unless he be some very neer kinsman. A tyranny or restraint, which the poor women give no cause for, being said to be very honest, and much reserved; not so much as shewing themselves at a window for fear of offence: and if they use painting, as most of them do, it is rather to preserve themselves in the good affections of their husbands, than for any other lewd respects. For the most part of a fair hair, whereof very curious: binding it about their heads with Ribbands of silk, garnished with pearles and pretious stones. Neat in their dress, and very costly in their apparel, with reference to their estates, and the degree of their husbands: the richer sort wearing Sattin striped with Gold, and interlaced with very rich *Jewels*; the poorer in Serge, and razed velvets. They have most of them little feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cause bind them up hard from their very infancy: which they endure patiently though it be very painfull, because a small foot is accounted for so great a grace. And yet it is conceived that this proceedeth not so much from their own curiosity, as from the jealousy of the men, who have brought it in; to the end that they should not be able to go but with a great deal of pain, and that going with so ill a grace, and so little ease, they should have no desire to stirre much abroad. A custome so antient and received, that it hath got the force of law; and if any mother should do otherwise in breeding their daughters, they would undergo some censure

or mark of infamy. If a desire to see their *Parents* get them the freedome of a visit, they are carryed to them in close chairs, and attended by so many waiters, that it is not possible that any man either so see them, or hold any discourse with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Countrey containeth no fewer than 70 Millions. Which though it seem to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we consider the spaciousnes of the Countrey; 2. The secret goodnes of the stars, and temperature of the air; 3. The abundance of all things necessary to life; 4. That it is not lawful for the King to make any war, but meerly *defensive*, and so they enjoy perpetuall peace; 5. That it is not lawfull for any *Chinois* to go out of the Countrey; and 6. That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elsewhere. For the ships do resemble a City; in which they buy, sell, are born, and die. And on the River which watreth thewalls of *Nanquin*, up to *Paquin*, which is no les than 300 leagues, the ships are said to be so thick ranked, that it seemeth to be a continuall street.

The people hereof in matters of *Religion*, are generally all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the creation: That there was one *Taine*, who created *Panzon*, and *Panzona*, whose posterity remained 90000 years; but they for their wickednes being destroyed, *Taine* created *Lutitzem*, whohad two horns; from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth, they cloath him in his best apparell, all perfumed, set him in his best chair, and there all his neerest kindred kneeling before him, take their leave with tears. When he is *coffined*, they place him in a room richly furnished, and set by him a table full of viands and good cheer, with candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which *ceremonies*, we find, how whilst the funerall was preparing for *Francis* the *French* King, his *Statua* apparelled in royall robes, with the Crown, Scepter, &c. was laid on his bed; whither dinner and supper was daily served in, with the like state and solemnity as when he was living. But to return again to my dead *Chinois*; when he had lain, as is above said, fifteen dayes, he is carried forth to his funerall, the place whereof is in the fields: for to be buried within the walls, were a thing of all others the most wretched. Hither, when they are in the manner of a procession, come; they burn his body, and with it men, cattell, and other provision, for his attendance and sustenance in the other world: as they use in the funeralls of *Tartary*. As great *Idolaters* as any, sacrificing to the very devil, and that upon the same reason, as the most ignorant sort of the *Gentiles* do, because forsooth he is a wicked and mischievous creature, and would otherwise hurt them.

Yet in the midle of this darknes there appeareth some light, whereby we may perceive that *Christianity* had some footing here in the times foregoing; For they believe, that *God* is an *immortall spirit*; that by him the first man was made of nothing; that the soul dieth not with the body, but is capable of reward and punishment in another life, according to the works it hath done in this. Which lest they should be thought to be onely some remainders of the light of nature, the learned men amongst the antient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having so much *divinity* as this, without the *Gospel*; we may here add, that the *Idol* most generally worshipped by them, is painted with three heads looking one on another, signifying, as themselves affirm, that they have all but one *will*: which makes some think they had been antiently instructed in the doctrine of the *holy Trinity*. They have also the picture of a very *fair woman* holding a *Child* in her Arms, who as they say, was daughter of some great King, and that she was delivered of that Infant when she was a *Virgin*. And as some add, they have portraitures, of the fashion, and with the marks or *Characters* of the twelve *Apostles* (as usually painted in some part of the *Christian* Church): of whom they are able to say nothing, but that they were great *Philosophers* who lived vertuously here, and were therefore made *Angels* in Heaven. And finally they hold that there is a great number of Saints, or men estated in an eminent degree of happines, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, industry, or valour, or lived an austere life without wronging any man, or otherwise deserved nobly of the common-wealth, as the Authors of some signall benefit unto their Countrey. These I conceive to be some evident remainders of *Christianity*, or the Remembrances rather of that *Christianity* which formerly was known amongst them: First planted here (as may be probably collected) by Saint *Thomas*, or some of his Disciples, an antient *Breviary* or Liturgy of the *Indian* Churches, giving good hint to it; Where it is said, *Per D.* Thomam *regnum cœlorum volavit et ascendit ad Sinas*: i. e. that by Saint *Thomas* the Kingdom of Heaven was preached unto those of *China*. Some *Characters* here were also of it in the time of the *Tartars*, though now obliterated, and not visible but in these defacements. And in this state it stood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jesuites* (commendably industrious in the propagation of the *Christian* faith) not without great danger to themselves, have endeavoured, and in part effected, their *conversion*. For though they have gained but few *Proselytes*, (in regard of those infinite numbers of people which are said to live here) yet some *Converts* they have made amongst them, and thereby sown those seeds of that saving truth (though mingled with some *Tares* of their own) which may in time increase and spread over all the Countrey.

Hills of great note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolomy*, in his description of the Countrie called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be this *China*: agreeable unto the observation of modern writers, by whom it is affirmed to be so plain and levell, and so unswelled with hills at all, that they have *Carts* and *Coaches* driven with *sayles*, as ordinarily as drawn with horses, in these parts. Not the les destitute of Rivers for this want of mountains, *Ptolomy* naming in it, 1. *Asptchura*. 2. *Semus*. 3. *Ambastus*, and 4. *Cotiaris*; all which had there their fount and fall: and yet he knew the out-skirts of the Country onely. Here are also many great *Lakes*, not inferiour to some Seas in bigness; so plentifull in fish, as if they contended with the soyl, which should be most profitable: and yet so little swelled with winds (though the winds many times blow strongly) that both upon these *Lakes*, and on the Rivers and Sea-coasts, they pass up and down in small barks, with no other sail than a bough set up an-end

in

in the middeſt of them; by the help whereof they make good ſpeed in their navigations. Nor do theſe *Lakes* or Rivers uſe to overflow their banks, or endamage the Countrey: but when they do, it brings ſome fatall ruine with it; as in the year 1557 when the *Lake* of *Sancey* breaking out overwhelmed ſeven Cities, many Towns, and of Villages, and Countrey people, almoſt infinite numbers.

Towns of moſt note amongſt the *Sinæ*, though nothing but the names be remaining of them, 1. *Bramæ*; and 2. *Rhabana*, honoured with the title of *Civitates*. 3. *Aſpithra*. 4. *Achatara*, more within the land; but all four under ſome degree of Northern *Latitude*. 5. *Thine*, the *Metropolis* of the Countrey, by ſome called *Sinæ*. 6. *Sarata*. 7. *Catoranagara*; theſe on the South-ſide of the line. But in this *Ptolomy* was miſtaken, it being found by the more certain obſervations of our later writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees of the *Æquinoctiall*; and ſo not capable of having any Towns or Cities of a *Southern* Latitude. Here was alſo a large bay called *Sinarum Sinus*; a Promontory named *Notium*, in the fourth degree of Northern *Latitude*; and another named *Satyrorum*, lying under the *Æquinox*. More than this, of the Cities of the antient *Sinæ*, I have nothing to ſay, which I dare offer to the Reader.

But to behold them as they are preſented to our view in the modern *China*, it hath been ſaid, that for number there are no fewer than 591 Cities, and thoſe ſo uniformly built, ſo conformably to one another, that they differ not in form, and faſhion, but in quantity onely. Much like the Cities of *Utopia* mentioned by Sir *Thomas More*, *Idem ſitus omnibus, eadem, quatenus per locum licet, rerum facies*; ſo neer reſembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Moſt of their Cities have the benefit of ſome navigable River neer which they ſtand: the waters whereof ſerve them both for navigation, and domeſtick uſes. Two great Streets croſſing one another in the very middeſt, ſo broad, that ten horſemen may ride a breſt in the narroweſt of them; ſo ſtrait, that a man ſtanding in the middle, may ſee either end: each end being ſhut up with a Gate of great ſtrenghth and beauty; and thoſe Gates fortified and ſtrengthned with thick plates of iron. Generally greater and more ſtately than thoſe of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegancy which the *Magnificent* Churches, and more ſumptuous buildings for the diſpatch of publique buſineſſes, in theſe parts abound with. Their private houſes for the moſt part are alſo low, and deſtitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries; the principall ornaments and graces of *Architecture*. Nor are their Cities built onely for reſort, or trade, but for ſtrength and ſafety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the wal's of brick or ſtone, ſtrong above belief, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places: and every night the Gates not only locked but ſealed; not to be opened till unſealed by the principall Magiſtrate.

But not to reſt our ſelves on this generall *Character*, let us take a more particular veiw of ſome of the principall. And in that liſt we find 1. *Quinſay*, called *Suntien* by the natives, containing once in circuit an hundred miles, and having in the middeſt of it a *Lake* of 30 miles compaſs, in which *Lake* are two goodly Ilands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all neceſſaries, either for majeſty, or convenience; in which are celebrated the publique feaſts, and the mariages of the better ſort. The *Lake* is nouriſhed with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polyſango*, and *Cacamucan*; on which Rivers 12000 bridges lift up their ſtately heads: and under whoſe immenſe Arches, great ſhips, with ſails ſpread abroad, and *top* and *top-gallant*, may and do uſually paſs. It was alſo ſaid to have had ten market-places, each of them four miles aſunder, and every one in form *quadrangular*, the ſides thereof half a mile in length. Here were ſaid alſo to be twelve *Companies* of tradeſmen or Artizans, each company having 12000 ſhops; and in all a million and 600000 Families. But now on the removall of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and ſince to *Nanquin* and *Paquin* by the *Princes* of the houſe of *Hombu*, ſeconded partly the fury of the warres, and partly by the violence of Earth-quakes; it hath loſt no ſmall part of her antient beauty, and renown. 2. *Unguen*, famous for the abundance of *ſugar* there made. 3. *Nanquin*, ſeated 9 leagues from the Sea, on a fair a d navigable River, whereon ride for the moſt part no fewer than 10000 of the Kings ſhips, beſides ſuch as belong to private men. The Town in compaſs 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and ſtately Gates: The ſtreets in length two leagues, wide, and paved; the number of houſes is about 200000. ſo that it may equall four of the faireſt Cities of *Europe*. 4. *Paquin* or *Pamia*, where the King continually reſideth; and that, either becauſe the air hereof is more healthfull and pleaſant, than any of the other, or becauſe it lieth neer unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetuall warre: ſo that from hence the dangers which may by their invaſions happen unto the Countrey, may with more convenience be either prevented, or remedied. The City ſaid to be inferiour to *Nanquin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Souldiers, and Magiſtrates, occaſioned by the Kings abode. Environed on the South, with two walls, of ſo great breadth that twelve horſemen may runne abreſt upon them; on the North, with one wall onely, but that ſo ſtrong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little annoyance on that ſide as they do on the other. But the greateſt Ornament hereof is the Royall Palace, compaſſed about with a triple wall, the outwardmoſt of which would well inviron a large City: within which ſpace, beſides the many lodgings for *Eunuchs* and other Courtiers, are Groves, hills, fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleaſure: larger in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royall Palaces of *Europe*. 5. *Canton*, ſuppoſed to be the *Caligara* of *Ptolomy*; by the *Chinois* called *Quamchen*, the leaſt of the *Metropolitan* Cities of this Countrey, but beautified with many triumphant Arches, a navigable River, large ſtreets, and many goodly bridges. Fortified with deep trenches, 83. Bulwarks, and ſeated in ſo rich a ſoyl both for Fowl and Catteil, that here are ſaid to be eaten dayly 6000 hogs, and 12000 Ducks, beſides proportionable quantity of other victuals. If this be one of the leaſt of their *Metropolitans*, what may we fancy of the greateſt? A Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City it ſelf; but at night excluded, and forced to find lodging in the Suburbs. By reaſon of which

restraint, they have settled their Mart at *Macaan*, the Port-Town to this, where they have their Factor, and many Families, the Town being almost wholly peopled by them. 6. *Sucheau*, seated in the marishes like *Venice*, but more commodiously, because those marishes are of fresh water; the streets and houses founded upon piles of *pine-tree*; with many bridges, and conveniencies for passage both by land and water. Well traded, as the fittest *Center* for dispersion of merchandise from all the other Ports of the Kingdome: by the multitude and frequency of ships, almost denying faith to the eyes, which would think all the ships of *China* to be here assembled. So infinitely rich, that the small Region whereof it is the head containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the king of yearly income. 7. *Hamseu*, the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Chequian*, about two dayes journey from the Sea (of which distance from the Sea is *Sucheau* also) in compass less than *Nanquin*, but better builded: no place in it taken up with gardens, Orchards, or other pleasures; but all employed for shops, houses, and other edifices. So beautified with *Triumphant Arches*, erected to the honour of deserving Magistrates, that in one street there are 300 of great mass or workmanship. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-sides of the Channels watering every street, beset with trees of shade, and most excellent fruits: and in the midle of the City a round high mountain, which gives the eye a gallant prospect into every street. And not farre off a pleasant *Lake*, of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with groves and gardens, and the *Lake* it self even clothed with vessels of all sorts, on which the Citizens use to feast, and entertain their idle time with plaies and spectacles. Two Cities so repleni shed with all kind of pleasures, that the *Chinois* use it for a Proverb, *Thien Xam, thien thum, ti Xamsu hum*, that is to say, look what the Hall or Presence Chamber is in heaven, that *Hamseu* and *Sucheau* are on earth. 8 *Focheo*, beautified amongst many other Stately structures, with a magnificent Tower erected on 40 marble pillars of great elegancy, cost, and bigness, every pillar being 40 spans in height, and 12 in breadth: not to be parallelled, as some say, by any the like work in *Europe*. 9. *Lochiau*, in which are 70000 families. 10. *Colant*, famous for the best *Porcellane*. 11. *Xaiton*, whose Harbour is never without 500 ships. 12. *Scianhay*, within 24. houres sail of the Isle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with a strong Garrison and a Navy. Situate in a pleasant and wholesome soyl, the whole Countrey so set forth with trees, as if it were one continued Orchard. So populous, that it conteineth 40000 households, most of which get their livelihood by weaving Cottons: it being supposed that here are 200000 persons which attend that maintenance. 13. *Chinchiamsu*, whence by a River made by hand there is a passage to *Sucheau*; the water of which never freezeth, and for that cause so clogged with ships in time of winter, that the passage is stopped with the multitudes of them. 14. *Cergivan*, of the same fashion with the rest, though of lesser note. So like they are to one another, that we may say with *Ovid* on the like ocasion.

——— Facies non omnibus una,
Nec diversa tamen, qualem decet esse sororum.

Which I find thus *English'd* by *George Sandys*.

Amongst them all no two appear the same,
Nor differ more than Sisters well became.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country, in the time of *Ptolomy*, were towards the North, the *Semantini*, bordering a mountain of that name, and the only one remembred in all this Countrey; more Southward, the *Acadræ*, and *Aspithræ*; Towards the Sea the *Anabastæ*, and *Ichthyophagi* (these last so called from living wholly upon fish.) From what Original they came it is hard to say, whether from the *Indians*, or the *Scythes*: or that it was primitively planted by some of the posterity of *Noah*, before the enterprise of *Babel*; which last may propably be concluded from the extreme populousness of the Country, the many magnificent Cities, their industry and ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their neighbours, more ignorant in those things than themselves. And hereunto the *Chronicles* of *China* seem to give some ground, which tell us of 340 Kings, which for the space of four thousand years have therein reigned. For as their *Chronicles* inform us, (if they may be credited) the Countrey being without Rule or settled government, was first reduced into order by one *Vitey*, the Sonne of *Ezolom*, by whom the people were instructed in *Physick*, *Astrology*, *Divination*, and the art of tillage: to which this *Vitey*, having found out the way of cutting or sawing timber, added the use of *Ships* and *Houses*, and many other the effects of *mechanicall* hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of his Commanders, subdued a great part of the Countrey, he drew them into Towns and villages, distributed them into Offices, and severall trades, disposing those of the same trade into Streets by themselves, and commanding that no man without leave from himself, or his Officers, should follow any other trade than that of his Father. He prescribed them also the fashion of their Garments, taught them the art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdome well established unto his posterity. Of this race there are said to have been 217 Kings, who held the State 2257 years. The last of them was that *Tzaintzon*, who being ill-neighbored by the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) built that vast wall spoken of before, extended 400 Leagues in length, and at the end of every League a strong *Rampart* or *Bulwark*, continually garrisoned, and well furnished with all warlike necessaries. He being slain by some of his Subjects, burdned and wasted with this work, the race of *Vitey* ended; and that of *Anchosan* succeeded, a Prince of much prudence, but greater courage; In his line it continued under 25 Kings, but shrewdly shaken towards the close by a civil war, betwixt *Trunthey* the 23 of this house, and his Nephew *Laupy*. Hardly well settled under *Quiontey* the last of this house, when *Tzobu*, a great Tyrant of the other faction, set upon him, and slew him. And so the majesty of the blood-royall being trod under foot, the Crown was also tossed from one hand to another, and made a prey unto the strongest: there being of the race of this *Tzobu*, eight Kings, reigning 62. years. Of the race of *Dian*, five Kings, who

who reigned thirty one. Of the race of *Tzoy*, three onely, who reigned thirty seven. Of the race of *Tenco*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 294 years: and eight there were who reigned 120 years, of the house of *Tautzom*. Of other upstart families to the number of five, were fourteen Kings also, who governed onely for the space of 66 years: And then one *Zaitzon*, deriving himself from *Vitey*, the first King of this Countrey, obtained the Kingdome; which he, and seventeen of his posterity, for the space of 320 years, governed with much peace and honour. *Forfar*, the last King of that Royall Family, foretold by prophecy that he should be deprived of his Kingdome by one who had *an hundred eyes*, neglected the *Advertisement*, as unworthy credit; but it fell out agreeable to that prediction, when vanquished by *Chisan-baan* (which word signifieth *an hundred eyes*) Lieutenant unto *Uzan*, a *Tartarian* Prince, but *Feudatarie* and Vassal to the *Great Cham*. *China* thus made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was governed for the space of 93 years, under nine *Tartar*-Kings, Tributaries to the Great *Cham*: and when it did revolt in the daies of *Gino-Cham*, the fourth from *Cingis*, it was reduced again by the valour of *Tamerlane*. For though *Hombu*, or *Combu*, the new elected King of *China*, having expelled the *Tartars*, and repaired the breaches of the wall by them thrown down, had brought into the field an Army of 350000 horse and foot: yet nothing could withstand the fortune of *Tamerlane*, who obtained the victory, with the slaughter of 60000 *Chinois*. But wisely moderating his prosperity, he thought it the best and safest way, to let that Nation have a King of their own; imposing on him the fine of 300000 Crowns of ready money, and such other conditions as were most pleasing to the victor, and yet not destructive to the vanquished. Before this time the *Chinois* were possessed of a great part of that Countrey which we now call by the name of *Cathay*; which lying without the wall of *China*, was taken from them by *Tamerlane*, and made by him part of the Empire of *Tartary*. Which possibly might be the reason, (part of *Cathay* being antiently a member of the Kingdome of *China*, and still retaining somewhat of their customs and ingenuity) that by some writers, easily misguided by such probability, *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the same. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinois* extend in those times onely over part of *Scythia*, but also over part of *India*, and most of the *Oriental* Ilands. But the Princes of the house of *Hombu* finding their own Kingdome large enough to content their desires, abandoned all the *Accessories* and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereunto, not onely by their own moderation, but by some misfortunes which befell them. For as we find that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempests, lost no fewer than 206 of their ships and gallies, resolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the *Seas*, which had used them so unkindly: So the *Chinois* having received a great overthrow, and loss of 800 ships, nigh unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Ilands from obedience unto them, and contented themselves with the bounds which nature had bestowed on them. And of their moderation herein, we have a late example. For when the people of *Corea*, a small Iland abutting on the confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*, they submitted themselves unto the King of *China*: who having repulsed the enemy, and thereby cleared his own Countrey from danger, presently redelivers over unto the *Coreans*, their Town and liberty. A rare fact of a contented people. Which whether it savoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this family hath the Realm continued under twelve Kings for the space of 200 years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth of this line, succeeded his elder brother, unfortunately slain with a fall from an horse. Reported for a Prince of good disposition, great judgement, and a severe Justiciary. But whether still alive, or who hath since succeeded, if he be deceased, I am yet unsatisfied: though whosoever he be that now sits in the throne, or at least pretends a right unto it, he hath but little joy in this great estate; the *Tartars* being called in to abet some differences touching the succession: who finding their advantages, and the unwarlikeness of the People, are said to have lately broken down the *Partition-wall*, and let in infinite numbers of their Country-men, and made themselves Masters in short time of the best parts of the Countrey. In which estate it now standeth, for ought I have heard unto the contrary.

The *Government* of this Kingdome is meerly *tyrannicall*; there being no other Lord but the King; no title of dignity or nobility ever known amongst them; nor toll or duty paid unto any but to him: the younger Princes of the blood being mantained by *stipends*, and *annuall pensions*, large enough to support their trains, but without any Lands or *Tenants*, for fear of drawing on them any great *dependances*. The King alone is the generall Landlord, and him the subjects do not onely reverence as a Prince, but adore like a God. For in the chief City of every Province, they have the Kings portraiture made of gold, which is always covered with a veil: and at every New-moon, the Magistrates and other inferiour Officers use to kneel before it, as if it were the King himself. By these and other artifices of the like contrivement the Common-people are kept in such awe and fear, that they are rather slaves than subjects: calling their King the *Lump of the world, and Son of the evershining Sun*, without whose light they were able to see nothing. In every Province, except *Paquin* and *Tolenchia* onely, he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Roys*, maintained by liberall stipends from the publique treasury: but those he governeth by himself. Some laws they have, and those affirmed to have been written 2000 years since, as is like enough they were. So strongly do they savour of the ignorance and *Atheism* of the darkest times: the manner of life by them allowed, most *obscene* and shameless, their *idolatries* most gross and palpable, their *exorcisms* ridiculous, and the prostitution of their *Virgins* most abhominable, and the variety of sensuall prophanations, to an illuminated mind most base and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their course of life (notwithstanding the brags which they make of themselves) but their Arts and industry.

The *forces* which this King is able to draw into the Field must needs be infinite, considering that incredible number of subjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people

people; *Italy*, with the Iſles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Switzers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain* not above ſeven Millions, and the Kingdome of *England* about four: this Countrey one is computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions than all together. Proportionably his Levies muſt be ſo much greater than can be ordinarily raiſed out of thoſe Countries. But becauſe it may be thought that his ſubjects, though more in number, may be leſs trained to the warres than thoſe of *Europe*; the contrary is affirmed by ſuch as have taken an eſtimate of the forces which every Province is bound to entertain in continuall readineſs. And by that eſtimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557 (though a time of peace) there were diſperſed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions; 846500 Foot, and 948350 Horſe. Nor is he leſs powerfull for *Sea-ſervice*, having continually great *Fleets* for the guard of his coſts in continuall attendance; and many more ready to ſet out when there is occaſion: inſomuch that the *Chinois* uſe to ſay in the way of a *Proverb*, that their King is able to make a bridge of ſhips from *China* to *Malaca*, which are 500 leagues aſunder. Some of theſe ſhips (whereof the King hath above a thouſand of his own, beſides thoſe of his ſubjects) of great magnificence and beauty: the Officers and Souldiers in all which are exceeding well paid, and rewarded anſwerably to their merits. And as this King is able to raiſe greater forces than any, from his own eſtates; ſo doth he alſo *de facto* do it, when the urgency of his affairs do require it of him: his ordinary ſtint being 300000 foot, and 200000 horſe, without which compleat number (not onely in the *muſter-rols*, but in bodies of men) he vouchſafes not to go into the field.

Anſwerable unto theſe great *Levies* of men; muſt be his *Revenue*: which they who have travelled in this ſearch, (if they tell us true, and do not build upon an hope of not being confuted, as for my part I fear they do) affirm to be 120 millions of Crowns; anſwered unto him out of the profit of the *mines* of Gold, Silver, and other metalls; the *tenth* of all commodities which the Earth brings forth; the *tolls* impoſed on that uſpeakable quantity of merchandiſe, which paſſeth on ſo many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the *cuſtomes* taken of all thoſe rich wares which are brought into *Europe*, and the *Gabell* laid on Salt in all parts of his Kingdome. Out of which ſumme, the payment of his Fleet diſcharged, the entertainment of the Souldiers ſatisfied, and his Court defraied; there remaineth 40 millions of Crowns *de claro* to be diſpoſed of, either in his treaſury, or private pleaſures, or the works of magnificence, and oſtentation.

And ſo much for *China*.

OF

OF INDIA.

INDIA is bounded on the East, with the Orientall Ocean, and some part of *China*; on the West, with the *Persian* Empire; on the North, with some branches of Mount *Taurus*, which divide it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the neerest of esteem and note in all the Country, towards these parts of the world.

It is conceived to be the largest Country of any one name in the world, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of such a great extent on the Sea-coasts of it, that it was as much as a ship could sail in 40 daies. Extended from 106, to 159 Degrees of *Longitude*; and from the *Æquator* to the 44th degree of Northern *Latitude*. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the first, to the end of the sixt *Clime*: the longest Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 hours only, and in the parts most North, 15 hours and an half.

Concerning the monstrous Fables which the ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Countrey, give me leave to say, that as the Poets used of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with strange fictions, and prodigious *metamorphoses*; or as our modern *Geographers*, in the Maps of the world, fill up those unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain description, with strange pictures and uncouth shapes of beasts and trees: so also the writers in former ages have filled the more remote Countries, of which they knew little, with such impossible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the fables of men with dogs heads; of men with one leg only, yet of great swiftness; of such as live by sent; of men that had but one eye, and that in their foreheads; and of others, whose ears did reach unto the ground. It is reported also that this people by eating a dragons heart and liver, attain to the understanding of the languages of beasts; that they can make themselves, when they list, invisible; that they have two tubs, whereof the one opened yields wind, the other rain, and the like. But these relations, and the rest of this strain, I doubt not but the understanding Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the same mind with *Curtius*, *Plura equidem transcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare ausus sum quæ dubito, nec subducere sustineo quæ accepi*: I may perhaps relate some things which I do not credit, but shall not let them pass without some censure; that so I neither may impose any thing on the Readers belief, nor defraud him any thing conducible to his contentation.

The Country, to report no more of it than it doth deserve, enjoyeth an exact temperature of the air; two Summers, (or one as long as two,) and a double encrease: blest with all things which are either necessaryto the life of man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with mines of Gold and Silver, and with precious stones; with spices of all sorts, and *Civets*; with the best *medicinable* drugs; metals of all kinds, except *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all sorts of Cattel, except horses. Somewhat defective also in Wheat and Vines, that so this Countrey might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed also for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinoceros*, Elephants. These last more savouring of reason and humane ingenuity, or else more tractable and docile, than any brute Creature whatsoever. Of this we have a fair instance in the story of the Acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* sate on, finding his Master strong and lusty, rushed boldly into the thickest of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himself out of the battell, kneeled down, and into his own trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his master.

The greatness of the Creature makes it yet more admirable, that either he should have soul enough of his own, to actuate so vast a body; or being of such strength and bigness should submit himself to the instructions of another: some of these *Indian* Elephants, as *Ælianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high, and as many long, and in breadth or thickness about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford less plenty or variety, than we find on shore: yielding abundance of the richest and fairest Pearls, huge shoales of fish, and amongst them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that land-monster the *Elephant*. For though the ordinary dimension of the Whale be but 36 *Cubits* in length, and eight in thickness: yet *Nearchus* in *Arianus* is said to have measured one in these *Indian* Seas, which was of the length of 50 *Cubits*, and of breadth proportionable: not to say any thing of that incredible report of *Plinie*, who speaketh of some *Indian* Whales which were nine hundred and threescore Foot, or four Acres long.

The people are of five sorts, and as many *Religions*, that is to say the Naturall *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it; 2. *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago possessed themselves of some Sea-Towns driving the Natives up higher into the Country; 3. *Jews*, scattered

tered and disperſed (as in other places) into all parts of it; 4. *Tartars*, in thoſe parts and Provinces which are under the *Great Mogul*; and 5. *Portugueze*, who have many Colonies and *Factories* in the Ports and Iſlands; but brag as if they had made a conqueſt of all the Countrey. Which notwithſtanding, conſidering that the Naturall *Indians* are by far the greateſt number, we muſt relate to them only in the *Character*, which is made of this people. Affirmed to be tall of ſtature, ſtrong of body, and of complexion inclining to that of the *Negroes*: of manners Civill, and ingenuous, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The Common ſort but meanly clad, for the moſt part naked, content with no more covering than to hide their ſhame. But thoſe of greater eſtates and fortunes (as they have amongſt them many antient and Noble families) obſerve a majeſty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparel; ſweetning the laſt with oils, and perfumes, and adorning themſelves with Jewels, Pearls, and other Ornaments befitting. They eat no fleſh, but live on Barley, Rice, Milk, Honey, and other things without life.

The *Women* not of much fairer complexion than the men, yet of lovely countenances, wear their hair long and looſe, but covered with a thin vail of *Calicut Lawn*. Their ears hung with many rings, ſo great and heavy, that they are torn, and ſtretched to much diſproportion; their noſes alſo ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their eſtate and quality. Servilely obſequious to their husbands, whoſe affections they divide amongſt them without jarre or jealouſy: the men allowed here, as in all the Eaſt, the uſe of many wives, whom they buy of their parents for a yoke of Oxen; and may mary as often as they liſt. In which they have too great a privilege above the women, who after the deceaſe of their common husband, do either burn in the ſame flame with him, or elſe are forced to doom themſelves to perpetuall Widow-Hood. But of this we may ſpeak more hereafter when we come to the particulars.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt planted in theſe Countries by Saint *Thomas*, from whom the remainders of *Chriſtianity* take denomination; and unto whom the Records and *Miniments* of that Church do aſcribe their converſion. For in one of their *Treviaries* written in the *Chaldæan* tongue, and tranſlated into *Latine* by Father *John Maria Campani* a *Jeſuite*, we find it thus, *Per D. Thomam evanuit error Idololutriæ ab Indis*, &c. i. e. By Saint *Thomas*, the errors of Idolatry vanquiſhed out of the *Indies*; by Saint *Thomas*, they received the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*, and the Adoption of Sonnes; by Saint *Thomas*, they believed and confeſſed the Father, the Son, and Holy-Ghoſt; by Saint *Thomas*, they kept the faith received of one God: And finally by Saint *Thomas*, the ſplendour of ſaving doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body as they ſay, intombed in the City of *Maliapar*, upon the Coaſt of *Choromandell*; the truth of which tradition I diſpute not here. But this plantation of the Goſpel by the hand of Saint *Thomas* was not univerſal over all the Countrey; but in ſome parts and Provinces only; or elſe was forced to give ground a while to prevailing *Heathenim*. For in the reign of *Conſtantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the further-ſide of the River *Ganges* (for ſo I underſtand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the miniſtery of one *Frumentius*, of the City of *Tyre*, who having ſpent the greateſt part of his time amongſt them, was employed in that ſervice, and conſecrated the firſt Biſhop (for thoſe Churches) by the great *Athanaſius* of *Alexandria*. But being the foundation of this building was laid by Saint *Thomas*, the remainder of *Chriſtians* here being, aſcribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*. Governed originally by their own Biſhops, ſubordinate to an Archbiſhop of their own alſo, reſiding at *Augamale* fifteen miles from *Cochin*, one of the chief Cities of this Countrey: who for long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Muſul*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by theſe *Chriſtians* of *India* he is ſtill termed. The number of theſe *Chriſtians* computed at 15 or 16 thouſand families; or at 70000 perſons in the accompt of others: inhabiting for the moſt part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the outlets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, ſtretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called Cape *Comari*. The points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*, 1. Their adminiſtring the Sacrament of the Euchariſt in bread ſeaſoned with ſalt; 2. Adminiſtring in both kinds, but uſing inſtead of wine (which is ſcarce or not at all to be had in this Countrie) the juice of raiſins ſoftned in water over night, and ſo preſſed forth; 3. Not baptizing children untill 40 dayes old, except it be in danger of death; 4. Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Croſs; 5. Allowing one mariage to their Prieſts, but debaring the ſecond; 6. In painting God with three heads on one body to denote the Trinity. 7. Denying the uſe of *extreme Unction*; and 8. Not acknowledging the Popes Supremacie. And in this State they ſtood till the year 1599, when by the ſollicitation of the *Portugals*, they renounced their obedience to the *Patriarch* of *Muſall*, and ſubmitted their Churches to the juriſdiction of the *Pope* of *Rome*, in a *National Synod* held at *Diamper*, not farre from *Maliapar* by the Arch-biſhop of *Goa* (the Primate of the *Portugals* in thoſe parts) not onely rejecting all opinions contrary to the *Romiſh* Tenets, but delivering all their Books and *Liturgies* to be altered and reformed by the ſaid Arch-biſhop, according to the Rites and doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But theſe comparatively to the reſt, come not to an handfull; the main body of the People wallowing in their *Gentiliſm*; and ſtill retaining many of thoſe antient Cuſtomes, which they uſed of old: as viz. 1. Not knowing their wives after they have born them two children; 2. Nor keeping them, if after five years *cohabitation*, they can raiſe no iſſue by them; but then exchanging them for others; 3. Rewarding none for any military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands the head of an enemy; 4. Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decaied by Age, or ſickneſs. To theſe they have ſince added others of a later invention, perhaps more barbarous, of which we may have opportunity to ſpeak anon. Their Prieſts or learned men, in the time of old were called *Brachmans* from one *Brachman*, the preſcriber of their

Rites

Rites and Laws, by whom inſtructed in the *Rudiments* of their *Philoſophy*; a *Sect* of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnoſophiſts*; who were to them as the *Chaldei*, to the *Aſſyrians*; the *Magi*, to the *Perſians*; and the *Druides*, to the antient *Britans*. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the moſt part an auſtere and ſolitary life in Caves and Deſarts; feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abſtaining from all carnall pleaſures: but that time paſt, they may indulge themſelves more liberty, and admit the company of women. Others of them live together with the common-people, as being their ordinary Prieſts. Of theſe, the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Countrey, ſurprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many ſtrange queſtions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himſelf confeſſed) ſome not unſatisfying though ſtrange anſwers. To theſe *Gymnoſophiſts*, or *Brachmans* the *Bramines* do now ſucceed, both in place and authority; but differ from them moſt extremely in point of learning, and the civilities of their lives: theſe *Bramines* being the moſt impure, libidinous, and ſenſuall beaſts in all the Countrey; privileged with the firſt nights lodging of every Bride, which when ſated with their filthy luſt, they ſell, or trafick with, to ſtrangers; ſerving as *Stallions* to old men, and as *Pandars* to young; ſo fleſh'd in wickedneſs, and ignorant of all good letters, that they have nothing of a man but the voice and ſhape. *Mahometaniſm* is alſo entertained in a great part of the Countrey, firſt brought in by the *Tartars*, and neighbouring *Perſians* unto whom conterminous; but much increaſed by the victories of the *Great Mongul*: who being originally a *Tartar*, and of that Religion, hath cauſed it to be propagated in moſt parts of his large dominions.

Mountains of moſt note in it, beſides *Caucaſus*, and ſome other of the branches of *Taurus* or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Perſian* Empires, 1. *Sardonix*, full of mines of thoſe precious ſtones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2. *Vindius*. 3. *Bittigo*. 4. *Adiſathras*. 5. Thoſe called *Apocopi*, and 6. Thoſe named *Orodii*. And on the further ſide of *Ganges*. 7. *Sevyrrus*. 8. *Maandrus*. 9. Thoſe called *Damuſi*, and 10. *Semanthinus*; part of this laſt extending alſo unto *China*. All of them very fruitfull in the production of mines, and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of Chief note of all is that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Bitigo*, and is now named *Gates*, the Southern part of the great Mountain *Imaus* ſpoken of before: extended from Mount *Caucaſus*, where it croſſeth the *Taurus* in right Angels, to Cape *Comari*, a known Promontory of *Induſtan*, or the Hither *India* (which it divideth into Eaſt and Weſt) for the ſpace of 400 leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Poſtellus* a learned Writer, to be that Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the 10th of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the Sonnes of *Joktan*, *Gen.* 10. *v.* 30. With probability enough, for ought I can ſee, the ſonnes of *Joktan* being ſettled in theſe parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire which lie neereſt to them. And ſo farre *Stephanus* doth concurre with *Poſtell*, as to affirm of this Mount *Sephar*, that it is *Mons Indiæ*, an *Indian* Mountain: both of them grounding on Saint *Hierom*, who expreſsly ſaith, *Sophera mons Orientis in* India, *juxta quem habitaverunt filii* Jectam, i. e. that *Sephar*, or *Sopher*, is the name of a Mountain of the Eaſt in *India*; neer to which dwelt the ſonnes of *Jocktan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we ſhould transfer it into *America*, as I ſee ſome do; and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*, which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other; and thence as ſome will have it to the Streights of *Magellan*. Which ſhould we grant, we muſt not look for *Joktan*, or the ſons of *Joktan*, either in *Arabia Felix*, where *Bochartus* placeth them; nor in the Eaſtern parts of *Aſia*, where moſt probably they may be found: but we muſt croſs the vaſt Orientall Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were: beſides, that granting this for true, we muſt allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moſes*; which no Author that I ever met with did ſo much as dream of.

Rivers of moſt note are, 1. *Indus*, which ariſeth out of that part of *Taurus* which the Antients called *Paropamiſus*, the Moderns, *Naugrocot*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a courſe of 900 miles, falleth into the Ocean at ſeven Mouths, that is to ſay 1. *Sagappa*, being the moſt Weſtern, 2. *Sinthum*, 3. *Aureum*, 4. *Cariphi*, 5. *Sappara*, 6. *Sabalaſſa*, 7. *Lonibare*, the moſt Eaſtward. But five of theſe being chaoked with ſands, or drawn into the neighbouring Chanells, there now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and antient ſtories for giving name unto the Country, and that ſo celebrated voyage of *Alexander*, who ſayled down it towards the *Indian* Ocean: the voyage holding above five moneths, of which there is ſaid to have paſſed no day wherein he ſailed not 15 miles, or 600 Furlongs. 2. *Ganges*, which riſeth as ſome ſay from the Mountain *Imaus*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Imaus* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is firſt collected into a Lake, or Pool (ſuppoſed by others for the fountain and Original of it) whence with a gentler pace it paſſeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers. In the narroweſt place of eight miles breadth, in the broadeſt 20. ſeldome ſo ſhallow but that the depth thereof is 100 foot, or 20 *Geometrical* paces. Parted into five great Chanels it falleth at laſt into the Sea; the firſt of which moſt towards the Weſt, is called *Cambyſum*, 2. *Magnum*, 3. *Cambericum*, 4. *Pſeudoſtomum*, and 5. that which lyeth furtheſt towards the Eaſt, called *Antiboli*. This River erroneouſly ſuppoſed to be that *Piſon* which watered *Paradiſe*: and to encreaſe the reputation of the error, we find it countenanced by *Joſephus*, and other no leſs eminent names; and alſo backed by ſome traditions of the people which inhabit neer it. By whom it is affirmed that one of the *Bengalan* Kings ſent men up the River, who came at laſt to a pleaſant place, bleſt with a fragrant Earth, ſweet air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth ſo poſſeſs them, that at the mouth of this River called *Gangaſagie*, ſuch as are weary of this world uſe to caſt themſelves into the current,

rent, and are presently devoured by a fish called *Sea-dogs*, by whom they hope to find a quick passage to *Paradise*. The occasion of which error among the Antients proceeded from those words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Pison*, that it compassed the land of *Havilah*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River must be *Pison*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For besides *Havilah* the sonne of *Jocktan*, planted in some part of *India*; there was another *Havilah* the sonne of *Chus*, settled in the land of *Havilah* or *Chusiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this last indeed watered by the River *Pison*, and the first by *Ganges*; too farr asunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken or mistaken one for another. But not less famous, because none of those which neighboured the garden of *Eden*: perhaps of greater fame than any of those which did. For to this River do the superstitious *Indians* make their solemn Pilgrimages, vainly conceiving that they shall be sure of their eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the People ascribe the fertility of the Countreys adjoining, as the *Ægyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Countrey antiently, and at this present is, divided into two main parts, (each subdivided into many particular Provinces) viz. 1. *India intra Gangem*, 2. *India extra Gangem*. Of each of which we will first take a brief survey with reference to the state and story of it in preceding times; and then consider them with reference to the present age.

INDIA INTRA GANGEM.

INDIA INTRA GANGEM, is bounded on the East, with the River *Ganges* till the fall thereof into the Sea, and after that with that large and spacious Bay, called antiently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the West, with *Paropamisus*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; and part of the *Arabian* Seas: on the North, where it is broadest, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*, and other parts; and on the South, where it endeth in a sharp point or Promontory, by *Ptolomy* called *Commaria extrema*, but now Cape *Commari*, with the *Indian* Ocean. So named from being situate on this side of *Ganges*; by the moderns *Indostan*.

The Countrey of the same nature formerly, as it is at the present, not altered but by changing of the chanels of *Indus*; which being shifted by an *Earthquake*, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a sandy Desart: *Indus* (as many other of the *Indian* Rivers) fatning and enriching all the land which it overfloweth. The people of those elder times much like the *Scythians*, especially in their course of life, living without Cities, Temples, Houses, in their moveable tents: their food the bark of a tree called *Tala* which served for bread; and the flesh of bucks, does, and other venison, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them *Free-men*, but no *Slaves* to be found amongst them. Less warlike than the *Scythians*, but as great Contemners of death as they: the very women contending eagerly amongst themselves, which should accompany their Husband (one husband having many wives) to his Funerall Pile. Of which thus Saint *Hierome*, *Hæ igitur contendunt de amore viri, & ambitio summa certantium est ac testimonium castitatis dignam morte censeri.* A cuttome still retained amongst them; of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said in another place.

Principall Rivers of this part, 1. *Hydaspes*, by *Ptolomy* (and by him only) called *Bidaspes*, one of the furthest bounds of *Alexanders* conquests. 2. *Suastus*, 3. *Coa*, 4. *Acesines*, very memorable in the Gests of *Alexander*. 5. *Sandabilis*, 6. *Zaradrus*: all comming from the Northern Mountains, and all falling (*Hydaspes* with three other Rivers first received into it) into the greater bed of *Indus*. 7. *Diamna*, 8. *Sorabus*, and 9. *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Chanell of *Ganges*. 10. *Naragonas*, issuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11. *Baris*, from *Bittigo*. 12. *Chaberis*, from *Adisathras*. 13. *Tindis*, from the hill called *Uxentus*; and 14. *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of less note. By what names called at the present, I determine not; nor find I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtless to be found in 1. *Catamul*, 2. *Cebcha*, 3. *Ray*, 4. *Chenao*, 5. *Rebeth*, all tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6. *Taphi*, 7. *Harunda*, 8. *Chambel*, 9. *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with such others of the principal Rivers as are now known by name unto us, shall occasionally be touched on in that which followeth. Besides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Gests of *Alexander*, (but the name occureth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleasant, shaded on every side with woods; memorable for the great refreshment which it gave to *Alexanders* Army, when even pined with thirst.

The Countrey so exceeding populous in the time of *Ptolomy*, that it afforded him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Countrey in the world. Of which 1. *Cottiara*, 2. *Nigama*, 3. *Sageda*, 4. *Rarassa*, 5. *Masopelle*, and 6. *Pityndra*, are honoured with the name of *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of their severall and respective Nations. 7. *Ozene*, 8. *Sora*, 9. *Palibothra*, 10. *Gange*, 11. *Batana*, 12. *Hippocura*, 13. *Carara*, 14. *Modura*, 15. *Orthura*, and 16. *Malurgi*, mentioned as the Royall seats of severall Princes; by the name of *Regiæ*. 17. *Bardaxema*, 18. *Tyndis*, 19. *Argari*, 20. *Curula*, 21. *Chaberis*, on the River so called. 22. *Palura*, on the shores of the Golf of *Bengala*, and 23. *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambysum*. 24. *Tilegramocum*; marked out above the rest with the name of *Civitates*, (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not so distinguished. And finally 25. *Monogsassum*, 26. *Simylla*, neer a Promontory of the same

name.

name; 27. *Nitra*, 28. *Maziris*, 29. *Elancorum*, 30. *Colchi*, 31. *Salur*, 32. *Sobura*, 33. *Poduca*, 34. *Melange*, 35. *Maliarpha*, 36. *Contacissyla*, 37. *Nosygue*. 38. *Barygaza*. Specifyed as the most noted and celebrious *Empories*; besides 39. *Canthimus*, 40. *Stathmus*, (and 41 a Road opposite to *Chryse*) two commodious *Stations* or Roads for shipping. The names and situation of these places is the most we find of them, which makes me pass them over with a bare recitall, only to shew how populous and well planted this Countrey was in the time of my Author.

Of less name, but of more note in the course of story, 1. *Nysa*, built by *Bacchus* at the time of his *Indian* conquest, and called thus by the name of his *Nurse*, to preserve her memory, his mother dying in Child-birth of him. Replenished by him with his sick and wounded Souldiers, whose posterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who spared the City and the people for his love to *Bacchus*, who was therein worshipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Baies, Vines, and Ivy, whose shadie branches covered the roof of it. In the middest thereof an Image, with all the Instruments belonging to a plentiful *Vintage*, all of Gold or Silver. 2. *Taxilla*, or *Taxiala* as *Ptolomy* calleth it, seated betwixt *Indus* and *Hydaspes* in the Region called *Varsa*, and built most probably by *Taxiles* a puissant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in elder times with a Temple dedicated to the *Sunne*, and therein with an *Ivory* image of *Ajax*, a Golden Statua of *Alexander*, and the portraiture of King *Porus* made in copper. The floor of *Mosaical* work pouldred with Pearls, the walls of red marble interlaied with gold, which made it shine a far off, like a flash of lightning. 3. *Nagarna*, called also *Dionysiopolis*; in memory of *Bacchus* who was also called *Dionysius*, and *Liber Pater*. 4. *Adorne*, by *Diodorus* called *Aornos*, and *Avernus* by *Strabo*; so strongly seated on a Rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, imitating, and therein out-going the Acts of *Hercules*, assault it with the greater force, and at last he carried it. 5. *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaspes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus* his beloved horse, which had served him in all the course of his Fortunes, and dyed hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6. *Pireta*, another of his foundations, so called by the name of his dog, whom he dearly loved. 7. *Alexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his foundations also. 8. *Mazage*, on the West of *Indus*, one of the first Towns of *India* taken by the *Macedonians*, though garrisoned within, and environed without by an host of 300000 men: but yielded after some resistance, with the use of her own body, by *Cleophe* the Queen thereof, who received it back with other favours from the hands of the Conqueror. 9. *Nora*, a strong City on the same side of *Indus*, taken by *Polysperchon*, one of his Commanders. 10. *Samus*, on the banks of the same River, taken by *Alexander* in the course of his navigation down that sea of waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought against him with poisoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolomy*, afterward King of *Ægypt*, was dangerously wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had seen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11. *Oxydrace*, the chief City of the *Oxydracans*, at the siege whereof *Alexander* is said to be the first that scaled the walls, and the last that could do so: the ladder breaking as soon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their darts, he was by the Souldiers desired to leap down amongst them; but he in a daring *bravado* leaped into the Town among his enemies, where it was not only his good hap to light upon his feet, but to have an old tree at his back to defend him behind. In this posture he is said to have maintained the fight a long time against all the Souldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and by that example teaching the rest to be more mannerly: till being wearyed, and dangerously wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of of his body to his knees. In this case *Leonatus*, *Pencestes*, and some other of his Captains, came to assist him; who defended their dying Master, till the whole Army entred the Town, and put all the people to the sword, in revenge of their King, whose life they had little hope to enjoy, though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this story, ranging it in the same Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Donzel del Phœbo*, *Rosicleer*, *Belianis*, *Amadis*, and the rest of the rabble of *Knights errant*. Neither is this the first time that *Curtius* hath disgraced the soundness of *Alexanders* judgement, and the truth of his actions, with the like idle and impossible fables: though indeed in that particular, he saith that it was *multo magis ad temeritatis quam ad gloria famam*. And 12. *Nicæa*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Acesines*, in memory of his many great and signal victories. Not far from which finding how unwilling his Souldiers were to pass further East, he purposed to leave behind him some Monument of his great exploits, and to make his fame immortall amongst the *Indians*. And to that end he caused the form of his Camp to be inlarged, and the *Cabbins* to be made bigger than sufficed for his men to lodge in, the *Mangers* to be set higher than his horses could reach, *Armour* and *Bits* for horses of too great a size (made not for use, but ostentation of his might,) to be scattered up and down the Camp for the savage people to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongst knowing men but a suspicion that his Actions were indeed less memorable than they are reported to have been, since he so vainly laboured to have them thought greater than indeed they were.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Indo-Scythæ*, inhabiting on the North-West of *Indus*, the *Mazagæ*, *Sadani*, *Piratæ*, *Limyrices*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Arvari*, *Oxydracæ*, *Malli*, and *Lambatæ*; the *Gandarides*, or *Gangarides*, neer the mouth of *Ganges*; the *Cassirei*, under the shades of Mount *Vindius*. The *Musicani*, *Chatziei*, *Polindæ*, *Phyllitæ*, *Bittigi*, *Chadramotitæ*, *Pezuari*, *Adisathri*, *Mandulæ*, *Dryllophitæ*, *Sabaræ*, *Pandioni*, with many others to the number 122 several nations, if *Megasthenes* be not out in his reckoning; too many and too impertinent to be mustered here.

Originally descended from the Sonnes of *Noah* before they left these Eastern parts to go towards the

unfortunate valley of *Shinaar*. We could not elſe have found this Countrey ſo full of people in the days of *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*: who leading an Army compounded of ſeveral nations to the number of four millions and upwards (if *Cteſias*, and *Diodorus Siculus* who reports it from him be of any credit, but certainly the greateſt Army that was ever raiſed) was encountred by *Staurobates* King of *India*, with greater forces made up of naturall *Indians* onely, by whom ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth part of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than ſome one of thoſe *Colonies* which were ſent from *B A B E L*; or rather a ſecond or third *Swarm* of thoſe former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the firſt *Adventurers*. For that any of the firſt *Adventurers*, who were preſent at the building of the Tower of *B A B E L*, travelled ſo far Eaſt, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the ſearch of their *plantations*. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, that the plantation of *India* preceded the attempt of *B A B E L*; though by whom made there is nothing to be ſaid for certain. Yet if I might have liberty to expreſs my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe that all the Eaſtern parts of *Perſia*, with *China*, and both the *Indiaes*, were peopled by ſuch of the ſons of *Sem*, as went not with the reſt to the Valley of *Shinaar*. For otherwiſe I can ſee no reaſon, that the poſterity of *Japhet* ſhould plant the greateſt part of the Leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Iſles thereof; and that the ſonnes of *Cham* ſhould ſpread themſelves over *Babylonia*, *Paleſtine*, the three *Arabiaes*, and the whole Continent of *Aſrick*; the poſterity of *Sem* being ſhut up in a corner of the Greater *Aſia*, hardly ſo big as ſome one Province taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the ſonnes of *Sem* an equall Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in theſe Eaſtern Countreys, ſpreading themſelves this way as they grew in numbers, before the reſt of the *Adventurers* went to ſeek new fortunes at the Tower of *B A B E L*. And being that the Countrey was large and wealthy, and might have room enough to ſpare for ſome ſecond commers (eſpecially deſcending from the ſame root with them) I doubt not but to place here alſo all the ſonnes of *Jocktan*, *Havilah*, *Chatſarmaveth*, *Saba*, *Abimail*, who have left here ſome tract or monument of themſelves, as hath been ſhewn at large in our *G E N E R A L L P R E F A C E*; and as concerning *Ophyr*, ſhall be ſhewed hereafter. To proceed therefore to our Story, the next who made any invaſion on this Countrey, after that of *Semiramis*, was *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater*, the ſonne of *Jupiter* and *Semele*, accompanyed with *Hercules Ægyptius*; not much more fortunate than ſhe: the forces of *Bacchus* being defeated, and *Hercules* forced to throw away his Golden Shield. But what they could not do by *Arms*, they effected by *Arts*. *Bacchus* inſtructing them in the uſe of *wine*, oyl, ſacrifices, and the Art of *Architecture*, and drawing them into Towns and Cities, for that cauſe honoured as a G O D. To *Hercules* they aſcribe the Nation of the *Pandioni*, proceeding from a daughter of his called *P A N D Æ A*: the memory of both preſerved in Statuaes and Pillars erected by them.

After this unattempted till the time of *Alexander*, who having made a full conqueſt of the *Perſian* Empire, invaded *India* with an Army of an 120000 fighting men. Beginning with *C L E O P H E*, Queen of the *Mazaga*, a people of *Indo-Scythia*, he brought her to conformity, poſſeſſed himſelf both of her perſon and eſtate; on whom he begot a ſonne called *Alexander*, who is ſaid to have ſucceeded in her Dominions. Being paſſed over the River *Indus*, *Taxiles* (by ſome called *Omphis*) a prudent Prince, whoſe Kingdome is affirmed to be bigger than *Ægypt*, ſubmitted of his own accord, offering his ſervice and aſſiſtance to promote his conqueſt, and preſenting him with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents of ready money. The King made welcome, but his money not ſo much as looked on: the *Macedonian* being ſo far from fingring of this *Indian* gold, that he gave him a thouſand Talents of his own treaſure. Encouraged by this Royall dealing, *Abiajares*, another puiſſant Prince of the oppoſite faction unto *Taxiles*, ſubmitted alſo, and was as graciouſly received: *Porus*, whoſe Kingdome lay on the other ſide of *Hydaſpes*, would not be ſo conquered, and therefore muſtereth up his forces, and valiantly made good the banks of the River. But vanquiſhed at the laſt, not without much difficultie, he was made a Priſoner to the Victor; who honouring the man for his brave reſiſtance, gave him his liberty and Kingdome with a great inlargement. The Conqueror had a great deſire to go further Eaſt, but the Souldiers would not be perſwaded: ſufficiently taught by *Porus*, what they were to look for, if the *Indians* ſhould unite their forces. Unable to prevail, he erected in the place twelve *Altars*, as high as *Towers*, where he obſerved many ſolemn Games and Sacrifices: and having ſacrifiſed to *Hydaſpes*, *Indus*, and *Aceſines*, he ſailed down *Indus* towards the Southern Ocean; which ſeen at diſtance, he turned towards *Gedroſia*, and thence to *Babylon*, where he died.

After his death *Eumenes* raiſed ſome part of his forces hence. But the *Macedonians* being plunged in a *Civil* war, one *Androcottus* ſtirred up the *Indians* to recover their freedomes; making himſelf at firſt their Captain, but at laſt their King. Poſſeſſed of all that had been conquered by the *Greeks*, he was encountred by *Seleucus*, who had then got the command of *Aſia*: againſt whom he brought an Army of 600000 fighting men. Frighted wherewith, *Seleucus* made peace with him, and contracted a ſolemn League betwixt them; continued with the interchange of friendly Offices amongſt their poſterity; and more confirmed by an interview betwixt *Antiochus* the *Great*, and *Saphagaſenus*, one of the Succeſſors of *Andracottus*; by whom *Antiochus* was preſented with 150 Elephants, and the promiſe of ſome treaſure to be ſent after him. By the Poſterity of *Andracottus* was the Kingdome held till the proſperity and full height of the *R O M A N* Empire. The power whereof though they rather knew by report, than trial, yet was it not amiſs to entertain a potent, though remote State, in terms of amity. Therefore they ſent Embaſſadours unto *Auguſtus*, who preſented him with a number of *Tigers*, (which beaſts (ſaith

(ſaith *Dion*) till then, the *Roman* people had never ſeen) and which was the moſt pleaſing, a little boy born without arms, who with his feet could bend a bow, ſhoot, and play on wind inſtruments, as exactly as others with their hands. *Trajan* the Emperor had a great deſire to ſee this Countrey, but was diverted from that purpoſe by matters of more neceſſary importance to the State of his Empire. Moved with the fame of *Antoninus*, the *Roman* Emperor, they ſent a ſolemn Ambaſſie to him; making him Umpire in ſome Controverſies which they had with the *Bactrians*: from which Ambaſſadors it is probable that *Ptolomy* the *Geographer* who then lived, might receive his informations of the eſtate of this Countrey. The like they did to *Julian* the *Apoſtate* alſo, then ſetting forwards on his expedition againſt the *Perſian*; deſiring his friendſhip and alliance. How it was with them in the time of *Conſtantine* and *Juſtinian*, hath been ſhewn already. After theſe times by little and little, hiſtories have been in a manner ſilent concerning the affairs hereof; but for ſome conqueſts made on the parts next *Perſia*, by the *Chaliphs* of *Bagdet*. For notwithſtanding that there was continual traffick from the *Red Sea* hither; and between the *Perſians*, *Turkiſh*, and *Indian* Merchants for ſpices, and the other commodities of this Region; yet were not theſe Merchants acquainted with the ſtate of the Countrey; becauſe they entered not into it, but were met by the *Indian* Merchants at *Sarmachand*, being as it were the common Emporie. Neither did the *Ægyptians* at all enter into *India*, but were met by the *Indians* at *Ormus*, or ſome other Iland: even as now the *Chinois*, make ſome of the *Philippine*, the ſtaple of their trade with the *Spaniards*; whom they licence not to come into the *Continent* among them. But our modern navigators have withdrawn this maſk of obſcurity, and ſhew us her lively portraiture in as lively colours. One of the firſt which brake the ice, and gave us any certainty of their affairs, was Sir *John Mandeville*, accompted at his comming back for the greateſt *Fabler* in the world: ſo incredible ſeemed his reports of the magnificence of thoſe Kings, and the wealth of their Countreys, and the many rarities which he found amongſt them. But better thought of by our neighbours, he obtained a Monument in a Convent at *Leige*, the Friers of which keep ſome things of his, *Comme pour honorable memoire de ſon excellence*, for an honorable memorial of his Excellencies. Many of his *Relations* ſince confirmed by the *Portugals*, who under the conduct of *Vaſquez de Gama* firſt diſcovered this Countrey, by the new way of the Cape of *good hope*, *Anno* 1497. By whom and ſome later obſervations, we have been informed, that in this part of *India* were no fewer than 47 Kingdomes, whereof ſome few have ſtill their own natural Kings; the reſt all ſubject to the power of the *Great Mogul*: Contracted into a leſſer number by joining many leſſer territories into one Diviſion, we ſhall look on it as diſtributed into 15 Provinces. Some have reduced them unto five, but give us neither the bounds nor extent of any of them. And others in the deſcription of their travels, ramble up and down with ſuch uncertainties, (moſt of them being men of trades and ignorance) that though they tell us where they lodged, and what entertainments they did meet with; yet we ſhall hardly know by them (for I think they did not know themſelves) in what Province they were; or to what part the ſeverall Towns thorow which they paſſed, did of right belong. So that our paſſage thorow theſe Countries (having ſuch blind guides to follow) will be full of difficultie, and not ſo ſatisfactory to the Reader as he might expect. Howſoever, I deſire him to bear me company, whileſt I take the beſt ſurvey I can of theſe 15 Provinces, to which the whole may be moſt handſomely reduced: that is to ſay, 1. *Dulſinda*, 2. *Pengab*, 3. *Mandao*, 4. *Delly*, 5. *Agra*, 6. *Sanga*, 7. *Cambaia*, 8. *Decan*, 9. *Canara*, 10. *Malabar*, 11. *Narſinga*, 12. *Oriſſan*, 13. *Botanter*, 14. *Patenaw*, and 15. *Bengala*.

1. *DULSINDA.*

DULSINDA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Indus*; on the Weſt, with *Paropamiſus*, and *Arachoſia*, two *Perſian* Provinces; but for the moſt part, under the command of the *Great Mogul*; on the North, with *Caucaſus*, by which parted from *Tartary*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Cambaia*. So that it taketh up all the Northern parts of this Eſtate, which lie upon the Weſt of the River *Indus*: from which River called by the Natives *Sinda*, moſt probable it is that it took this name: and therefore I have written it with an *ſ*, *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* with a *c*, as I ſee ſome do, but on no good reaſon.

The Countrey by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it more temperat, but leſs fruitful than the reſt of *India*. The ſeat, in antient times, of the *Mazagæ*, and *Indo-Scythæ*, when ſubdued by *Alexander*. Made up at preſent, of many leſſer Kingdomes, and ſmaller Provinces, denominated, for the moſt part, from the principal Tows, and Cities of them, as in other places.

Amongſt which thoſe of moſt eſteem, are 1. *Caximir*, *Caſcimir*, or *Cheſmur*, (for by all theſe names it is called) the chief of a Kingdome once, unto which it gave name, till ſubdued by *Echebar*, the *Mogul*; who in a pleaſant Iland, (in the middeſt of a great and deep Lake, about three leagues off the City) beſet round with Trees, built a Royall Palace: which he honoured ſometimes with his Court, removed hither from *Lahor*, partly the better to aſſure this new conquered Kingdome; but principally becauſe his Palace at *Lahor*, and therein an infinite deal of Treaſure, had but newly been conſumed by fire. The City it ſelf ſituate in the moſt healthy Country of all *India*, encompaſſed with high Mountains, covered for the moſt part of the year with ſnow; the reſt a delicate, goodly plain, diverſified with Paſtures, Woods, Corn-fields, Meadows, Parks, Gardens, and Rivers, even to admiration. The air hereof, and of the Country round about, by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, and the ſnowie Mountains, very cool and temperate. The ſoil abundantly productive of Wheat, Rice, and Vines; which laſt they plant at the foot of the Mulberry-tree, which ſeemeth by this means, to bear double fruits. Both Town and Kingdome ſubdued by *Echebar*, the *Mogul*, about the year 1597. their own diſſentions more conducing to

that ſubjugation, than any viſible force which he brought before it. 2. *Roree*, a Fort of the *Moguls* towards *Paropamiſus*; but bordering upon the Country of *Multan*, to which People it properly belongeth: garriſoned not ſo much for fear of the *Perſian*, (for *Paropamiſus*, now called *Cabal*, is his antient Patrimony,) but to preſerve the People from the ſpoil of Theeves, who alwaies hang about the Mountains. 3. In the moſt Northern parts hereof, ſtood the *Nagara* of *Ptolomy*; miſtook by ſome for the modern *Agra*, of which more anon. 4. *Seſtan*, the chief City as I take it, of the Kingdome of *Rebat*; ſituate on the Eaſt of *Caximir*, betwixt it and the *Indus*: in the ſame Latitude with that, but not of ſo temperate an air; the ſnowy Mountains much conducing to the Temperature of the Realm of *Caximir*. 5. *Multan*, a great and antient City, and the chief of a Kindome, on the South of *Caximir*, or *Cheſmur*; and about three *French* leagues from the banks of the River *Indus*. The ordinary thorow-fare of the *Caravans*, in the way from *Lahor* to *Spahan*, (the chief Seat of the *Sophy* or King of *Perſia*) forced to abide there divers dayes, ſometimes ten or twelve, to enrich the Town, which of it ſelf is of no great trading, nor otherwiſe able to ſubſiſt but by this device. 6. *Duckee*, a Fort or Garriſon, ſituate in the Streights of the Mountains to ſecure the *Caravans*, and protect other Paſſengers from the danger of Robbers, hovering in theſe hill-countries, the out-parts of this Empire.

2. PENGAB.

OPpoſite to *Dulſinda*, on the Eaſtern-ſide of the River *Indus*, but more inclining towards the South, lieth the Country, or Diviſion rather, which my Author calleth by the name of *PENGAB*; bounded on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which divideth it from *Dulſinda*; on the South, with the Kingdome of *Mandoa*; on the North, and Eaſt, with thoſe many Kingdomes, which we have comprehended under the name of *Botanter*.

The reaſon of the name I find not, nor any thing memorable of the Country; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambatæ*, *Caſpiri*, *Cylindrine*, and *Suaſtene*: ſubdued by *Alexander* in his expedition into *India*: the famous Rivers of *Aceſines*, and *Hydaſpis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their courſe. So that it ſeemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdome of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Lahor*, on the Eaſtern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the faireſt and moſt antient City in both the *Indies*; of moſt eſteem for wealth and greatneſs. In compaſs about ſixteen miles, and honoured for a while with the ordinary Reſidence of the *Great Mogul*, till on the burning of his Palace, ſpoken of before, he removed his Court to *Caximir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at laſt to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldeſt ſonne, or heir apparent, ſent hither for avoiding all occaſion of factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding great trade, as being the chief Staple for the Spices in theſe parts, and other commodities of *India*, from hence tranſported into *Perſia* by the way of *Candahor*, the principall Town of *Arachoſia*; and ſo to *Spahan* the chief City of the *Sophian* Empire, where they are ſold, by reaſon of ſo long and chargeable a journey, at exceſſive rates. It is ſaid that 12000 Camels at the leaſt paſs every year thorow it with their lading, beſides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormus* till that Town was taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great Maſs of treaſure which a late Governour hereof did leave behind him. At whoſe death *Echebar* the *Mogul* (for the *Mogul* is the heir General unto all mens wealth) found in his Coffers three millions of Gold ready coined, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoined, and ſome ſtore of Jewels: beſides Horſes, Elephants, Houſhold-furniture, and other goods almoſt invaluable. 2. *Sultan-puare*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good eſteem. 3. *Athec*, in the common Road from *Lahor* to *China*; reported in the deſcription of the travels of *Benedictus a Goes*, *a Portugal Jeſuite*, to be a moneths journey from *Lahor*, and yet in the ſame Province with it. Which if it be true, either the Province muſt be large, or his journies ſhort: or if not true, we muſt remember that we had it from the pen of a *Jeſuite*. And yet as great as this Province or Diviſion is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns of conſideration which may be ſaid with confidence to belong unto it.

3. MANDAO.

THe Kingdome of *MANDAO* is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*; on the Eaſt, with *Delly*; and on the Weſt, with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao*, the chief City of it.

The Country more mountainous and rugged than the reſt of theſe Provinces, by reaſon of the many branches of Mount *Bittigo*, the Southern part of the *Imaus*, which do overrun it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The men, as moſt of thoſe who live in ſuch mountainous tracts, of a warlike temper; comparatively with the reſt of the *Indians*: the women here antiently as valiant as the men in other places; riding aſtride, and practiſed in the Arts of Horſemanſhip: for that cauſe called *Amazons*; ſome of which are ſaid to be ſtill remaining. Inſomuch as it is written in the ſtories hereof, that the King of this Countrey not long ſince going to the warres, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife marching in the Front of two thouſand women all well mounted and prepared for ſervice.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Mandao*, ſeated on the bankes of the River *Mandova*, (the *Manda* of *Ptolomy* and the Antients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, ſaid to be 30 miles in compaſs; yet ſo well fortified, and furniſhed with all neceſſaries for defence and reſiſtance, that it held out

twelve

twelve years against *Mirumudius*, or *Merhamed*, the *Great Mogul*, who then besieged it. Surrendred at the last, and with it the Kingdome. Memorable for the great battail fought before it betwixt the said *Merhamed*, then comming to the relief thereof; and *Baburius* King of *Cambaia* who had then distressed it: in which fight *Baburius* lost his tents and Treasures, and was fain to fly disguised unto *Din*, to crave aid of the *Portugals*. 2. *Molran*, once the chief City of a Kingdome, or a Kingdome rather of it self, but of no great note: the women whereof though not so good Souldiers as their Ancestors of the female sex, yet to come as neer them as they can, use boots and spurs when they take a journey, and so fitted sit astride the saddle. 3. *Scernus*, on the River so called, of more Antiquity than greatness; as is also 4. *Polymbothie*, the *Palibothra* of *Ptolomy* and others of the antient writers, then the chief Town of the *Palibothei* (by *Pliny* and *Strabo*, called *Prasii*) a People of as great authority and power as any in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it self of great power and wealth, till *Baburius* King of *Cambaia* having conquered the Realm of *Citor*, and therewith a great part of *Sanga*, made an attempt upon this also. *Ujalgee* then King of *Mandao* finding himself too weak for so strong an Enemie, craved aid of *Merhamed* (or *Miramudus* as the *Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*, then reigning in *Chabul* or *Arachosia*, and possessed of some parts of *India* also since the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own subjects, some mercinary *Persians*, and a great body of *Zagathaian Tartars*, from whom originally descended, came in accordingly: discomfited the vast Army of *Baburius*, consisting of of 150000 horse, and 500000 foot, in two set battails, the first at *Docets*, the next at *Mandao*; and following his blow possessed himself of the whole Kingdome of *Cambaia*. But not content with that success, quarrelled the *Mandoan* King in whose aid he came; besieged him in his principal City, which at last he won, and therewithall the Kingdome also: the wretched King shewing hereby a fair both evidence and example to succeeding ages, that the easiest way for a Prince to ruin his own estate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Forrein power into his own Dominions, which he cannot as easily thrust out, as he hath brought them in.

4. DELLY.

DELLY is bounded on the West, with *Mandao*; on the East, with the Kingdome of *Botanter*; on the North, with the Eastern parts of *Pengab*; on the South, with the Eastern parts also of the Kingdome of *Agra*. So named from DELLY the chief City of it, by some called *Delin*.

The Countrey, besides what is common to it with the rest of *India*, is said to be more abundantly stored than any other part of it with horses, Elephants and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing singular, except it be that many of them taking more delight in theevery than honest trades, live for the most part upon spoil: but those especially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being such of the nobility or better sort, who since the conquest of their Countrey by the *Great Moguls*, have lived like *Out-Laws* on the Mountains. Of the same temper with the *Resbutes* in *Cambaia*, and the *Agwans* in *Sanga* and *Dulfinda*; who rather than submit themselves to a forrein yoak, (as they count that of the *Mongull*) choose to forsake their proper dwellings, and all honest waies and means of living.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Delly*, A City not only honoured heretofore with the residence of the *Great Moguls*, who from hence pass in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongst their most knowing Subjects; but beautified with many sepulchres of their antient Kings, whose funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deserted of late times, by the *Great Moguls*, moving their Courts from place to place, as they inlarged their Empire, and increased their conquests: yet still a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains and Commanders, do frequent the same; and have their houses and pleasure of retirement in it. 2. *Tremel*, upon the Western side of the River *Mandova*; but not much observable. 3. *Diceti*, memorable for the great battel fought neer unto it, in which *Merhamed* the *Mongul* overthrew the forces of *Baburius*, and therby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambaia*.

This Countrey governed a long time by its natural Princes, was at last conquered by some *Moores* or *Saracens*, comming from *Persia* or *Arabia*, but I find not which, who grew to so great power and wealth, that *Sanosaradine*, a *Mahometan*, one of their *Descendants*, dreamt of no less than the conquest of all *India*, if not of the whole Continent of *Asia* also. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for the beginning of the *Ottoman* Empire) subdued by little and little all the neighbouring Princes which made head against him; he pierced at last into *Canora*, now called *Decan*, and conquering a great part of it returned back to *Delly*. The pursuit of his victories he left unto one *Abdessa* his Lieutenant there, who added the rest of that Countrey to his Masters territories; but kept the possession to himself, confirmed therin by *Sanosaradine*, with the Title of *Regent*. But *Sanosaradine* dying in a war against the *Persians*, left for his Successor a sonne so unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him unto other *Masters*, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithstanding of sufficient power to preserve it self, from any of their equal neighbors, till the rising of the *Great Moguls*: whose puissance being unable to withstand, it submitted at the last to *Adabar*, the son of *Merhamed*, the second Emperor of this line: who to assure himself of the peoples loyaltie, and confirm his conquests, settled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next prosperous emergency, as before was noted.

5. AGRA.

THe Realm of *AGRA* is bounded on the North, with *Delly*, and *Mandao*; on the South, with *Sanga*, and *Cambaia*; on the West, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the Kingdome of *Cambaia*; on the East, with *Oriſtan*, or *Orixa*. So called from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the Seat Royall, of late times, of the Great *Monguls*.

The Country ſaid to be the beſt and moſt pleaſant of *India*, plentifull in all things, and ſuch a delicate, even peece of ground, as the like is hardly to be ſeen. Well watered, as with other Rivers, ſo moſt eſpecially with thoſe of *Tamtheo* and *Jemena*; which laſt runneth thorow the middeſt of it, North and South, or rather from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt: from whence bending more directly Eaſtwards, it falleth at laſt into the *Ganges*, or that which is ſuppoſed to be *Ganges*, for the bed of that great River is not certainly known. The People for the moſt part Gentiles; *Mahometaniſm* coming in with the *Great Mogul*; and generally inclining ſomewhat to the *Pythagorean*. For ſuch as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena*, neither eat fleſh, nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they eſteem ſo ſacred, that thereof they uſually make their Temple, and ſay their prayers therein, but naked (in which poſture they both dreſs their meat and eat it): lodging upon the ground, being impoſed by them as a penance, and ſo conceived.

Places of moſt eſteem herein, 1. *Fatipore*, or *Fettebarri*, on the Weſt-ſide of the River, a very fair and goodly City, once beautified with a Royall Palace here built by *Echebar* (after the removall of his Court from *Caſcimir*) with many ſpacious gardens belonging to it, but much decaied, ſince the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which moſt of the Stones are carried, and no ſmall quantity of Corn ſowed within the Walls. 2. *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*; inferiour to *Lahor* for wealth and greatneſs, but far more populous: the conſtant reſidence of the Court here in theſe latter times, drawing to it great reſort of all ſorts of People. By ſome ſuppoſed to be the *Nagara* of *Ptolomy*; but ſuch a ſuppoſition as is built on no better ground, than ſome reſemblance of the names. For *Ptolomies Nagara* is by him placed on the Weſtern-ſide of *Indus*, in the Latitude of 33. whereas this *Agra* ſtandeth on the Eaſt of the River *Jemena*, five Degrees more Southwards, in the Latitude of 28. But what it loſeth in Antiquity, it hath got in honor: the Town and Territory being a peculiar Kingdome, till *Echebar* the *Mogul* ſubdued it, Anno 1598 in his paſſage from *Lahor* to *Decan*. But it loſt nothing by the hand. For *Echebar* delighted in the ſituation of it (and that withall it ſtood in the middeſt of his Kingdomes) made it the Seat Royall of his Empire; fixt there, for the moſt part ever ſince: by means whereof exceedingly increaſed in wealth, beauty and greatneſs: the very Caſtle in which the *Mogul* uſually reſideth, being two miles in compaſs, environed with moſt high and unſcalable walls, and fortified with great ſtore of Ordinance. The whole ſpace betwixt it and *Fatipore*, being 18. miles, affirmed to be a continuall Market: and all the *Intervall* from hence to the Town of *Lahor* (from which diſtant 600 miles towards the South) adorned with continuall Rowes of Trees on both ſides of the wayes, moſt of them bearing a kind of Mulberry; and at every ten miles end, houſes erected by the King or ſome of the Nobles, for beautifying the way to the Regall City, preſerving their own memory, and the ſafe lodging of Paſſengers, in danger otherwiſe, by night of Theeves and Cutthroats. 3. *Hendee*, a Town more towards the South, beautified with a fair Caſtle of the Kings, cut out of the main Rock, and wrought with carved work round about, fortified with 50 peeces of Ordinance, and thought impregnable: for that cauſe made a Priſon for great perſons. Here are alſo two Hoſpitals for ſuch Captains (and Captains only) as are maimed in the wars. 4. *Beani*, twelve courſe or 18. miles from *Fattipore*; the moſt noted place for *Indico* in all the *Indies*; for the making whereof they have here twelve mills. Which *Indico*, (by the way) groweth on a ſmall ſhrub like our Gooſe-berry-buſhes, bearing ſeed like a Cabbage-ſeed: which being cut down, are laid in heaps for half a year, and when rotten, brought into a vault, to be trodden with Oxen from the Stalks, and being ground ſmall and fine at the Mills, is laſt of all boiled in furnaces, refined and ſorted.

6 SANGA.

SANGA is bounded on the North, with the Eaſt parts of the Realm of *Agra*; on the South and Weſt, with *Cambaia*; from which parted on the Weſt, by the Mountain *Gate*; and on the Eaſt, with *Oriſtan*. The reaſon of the name I find not: this Country being too far South to be ſo called from *Sangalaſſa*, a Town of chief note neer the fountains of *Indus*, where placed by *Arianus*, lib. 5.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Azmere*, or *Aginer*, 180 miles from *Agra*. At the end of every courſe (each courſe a mile and an half) a fair pillar erected, and at every tenth courſe a fair *Seraglio* (ſuch as we call Innes) for the entertainment of Travellors. All built by *Echebar*, who wanting Children, is ſaid to have gone in Pilgrimage, on foot from *Agra* to *Azimere*, ſaying his prayers at the end of every courſe, and lodging all night at the tenth. 2. *Citor*, the chief City of *Sanga*, and once a Kingdome of it ſelf, or the chief of that Kingdome. Situate in the midle way betwixt *Surat*, a known Port of *Cambaia*, and *Agra* ſpoken of before: and moſt magnificently built on the top of a rocky hill, to which the paſſage is ſo narrow, and ſo well fortified, (there being in it three Gates, at the top, the middle, and the bottom) that thereby, and by other advantages of Art and nature, it was thought impregnable. Affirmed to be 12, miles in compaſs, beautified with many goodly buildings both publique and private; but once more glorious than it is; here being to be ſeen the ruins of 100 Temples, and above 100000 houſes, either demoliſhed by the wars, or ſuffered to decay by the *great Moguls*, who would not willingly have any thing in the *Indies* of more Antiquity, than themſelves; and therefore are rather inclined to build new Cities, than uphold

uphold the old. The greatneſs and Antiquity of it have made ſome men think that it was the Royall Seat of *Porus*. Others affirm the ſame of *Delly*, but neither rightly: the Kingdome of *Porus* lying more towards the River *Indus*, and not ſo far South. Governed not long ſince by a Queen called *Crementina*, not more fair than valiant, who revolting from *Baburius* King of *Cambaia*, to whom ſhe formerly had paid tribute; was diſpoſſeſſed of the Town of *Cator*, where ſhe had fortified her ſelf with 30000. foot, and 2000 horſe: the People in a deſperate reſolution, laying all their treaſures on an heap, which they burnt together with themſelves; in which flame it is ſaid that there periſhed 70000 perſons. But the *Cambaian* did not long enjoy his victory. For not long after both the City and a great part of the Countrey, was conquered by the great *Mogul*, the mountainous parts hereof being held againſt him by *Ramee*, the Sonne or ſucceſſor of Qu. *Crementina*: till ſeeing himſelf deſtitute of all better helps, he put himſelf into the hands of one of the Sonnes of the late Sultan, by whom reconciled unto his Father. Some other Towns there are in this Province, and in that of *Agra* before mentioned, and thoſe of good eſteem perhaps amongſt the natives; but of no obſervation or importance in the courſe of buſineſs.

7 *CAMBAIA.*

CAMBAIA hath on the Eaſt *Delly* and part of *Mandao*; on the Weſt, *Gedroſia* a Province of the *Perſian* Empire; on the North, *Dulſinda*, and the reſt of *Mandu*; on the South, the main Ocean, and ſome part of *Decan*. It lieth on both ſides of the *Indus*; and is ſo called from *Cambaia*, the chief Province of it. The whole divided into 1. *Sinda*. 2. *Guzarate*, and 3. *Cambaia* ſpecially ſo called.

1. *SINDA* hath on the Eaſt the River *Indus*, by which ſeparated from *Mandao*; on the North, that part of *Sanga* which is called *Dulſinda*; on the Weſt, parts of *Gedroſia*, and *Guzarate*; and on the South, the reſt of *Guzarate* onely: coaſting along the Weſtern banks of the River *Indus*, whence it had the name; that River being now called *Sind*, as was ſaid before. And for this reaſon, as I take it, the Weſtern part of *Sanga* lying North of this, took the name of *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* (with a C) as moſt commonly written.

The Country for the generality very rich and fertile; but in ſome places nothing but a ſandy *Deſart*, inhabited for the moſt part by wild Aſſes, Foxes, Deer, and ſome wilder beaſts; but none ſo wild as the *Calies*, a robbing nation, ſo numerous withall, that they ſometimes rob whole *Caravans* as they paſs that way, notwithſtanding the many Forts and Caſtles built of purpoſe to ſecure thoſe paſſages.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Tutta*, (or *Gutu Negar Tutta*) on the banks of *Indus*, a Town of great trade, but moſt frequented by the *Portugals*; who here receive ſuch *Indian* commodities, as come down the water from *Labor*; returning Pepper in exchange, which they bring up the River from their other *Factories*. 2. *Lowribander*, at the mouth or out-let of the *Indus*, three dayes journey from *Tutta*, the Port-town unto which it is, notwithſtanding that diſtance. Supposed to be ſituate in or neer the place of that *Alexandria* which *Alexander* built in memory of his navigation down this River to the *Indian* Ocean. An Haven much frequented becauſe free from worms, which about *Surat*, and other Havens on theſe Seas, ſo infeſt the ſhips, that without much coſt and care beſtowed upon them, they make them unable to return. 3. *Catwalla*, memorable for the *Tenure*, as given by *Echebar* the *Mongul* to a company of Women and their poſterity for ever, to bring up their daughters to dancing, and more wanton exerciſes. 4. *Radempoore*, a great Town with a ſtrong Caſtle, ſeated at the edge of the *Deſarts*: thorow which thoſe that are to paſs uſe here to provide themſelves of water and other neceſſaries for their journey. 5. *Nuraquamire*, a pretty Town on the further ſide of the Deſarts, eſteemed a *Paradiſe* by ſuch as have paſſed thorow thoſe uncomfortable and dangerous ſands, for the ſpace of ten or twelve daies journey. 6. *Sarrama*, a large Town, twenty miles from *Tutta*; the Center in which all lines meet, and from whence the diſtances of all Towns in *Sinda*, are accuſtomably meaſured.

The Countrey antiently ſubject to the Kings of *Cambaia*, and in the right of that Crown to the *Great Mongul*: but the people for the moſt part ſo untamed and maſterful, that except in ſome of the greater Towns they pay no *Tributes*, and in ſome places even within half a daies journy of *Tutta*, will acknowledge no King, but rob and ſpare whom they pleaſe. If at any time the *Mogul* ſends a force againſt them, (as he doth ſometimes) they fire their houſes, made like a *Bee-Hive* of ſtraw and mortar, which are ſoon rebuilded; and retire themſelves unto the Mountains. Yet one good quality they have amongſt many ill ones. When they have robbed a *Traveller*, or took money of him in the way of toll or cuſtome for his paſſage by them, they will conduct him honeſtly to the end of the *Deſarts*, leſt any ſhould rob him but themſelves.

2. *GUZARATE* hath on the North, *Sinda*; on the South, the main Ocean; the River *Indus* on the Eaſt; on the Weſt, *Gedroſia*, which the *Indians* call *Nawatacas*, but the *Perſians*, *Circam*.

The Soil of the ſame temper and fertilitie with that of *Cambaia*, ſpecially ſo called; and there we ſhall ſpeak further of it. The common people whom they call *Guzarates* of the ſame diſpoſition generally with the reſt of the *Indians*: but the greateſt part of the Countrey is poſſeſſed by the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches*, the antient Inhabitants of this tract. Who when their Countrey was ſubdued by the *Moores* or *Saracens*, retired unto the Mountains and faſtneſſes of it, ſtanding upon their guard, and were never yet ſubdued by the *Great Monguls*. Who though poſſeſſed of the Sea-ſhores, and moſt Towns of conſequence, are fain to leave the inland parts and open Countries to the power of theſe *Out-lawes*: who either prey upon the people, or force them to compound for their peace and quiet at uncertain prices. Their Arms moſt commonly a Sword, Buckler, and Launce; well-horſed, and reſolute in any thing which they undertake:

which

which made one of the *Moguls* say of them, *that no men in the world knew to die, but they.*

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Din*, in a *Peninsula* looking towards *Persia*, but on the Eastside thereof, neer the mouth of *Indus*. Possessed by the *Portugal*, and by them fortified with a strong and impregnable Citadel, built with the leave and liking of King *Badurius*, thereby to buy their aid against *Merhamed* the *Mongul* who had newly vanquished him. A matter of such consequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Bo elius* confined to *India* for some Crimes by him committed, undertook (in hope by the merit of that service to obtain his pardon) to carry the first news of it in a small vessel not above 18 foot long, and but 6 foot broad (the best which for the present could be provided): which with great courage he performed, and thorow that large, wide, and tempestuous Ocean, came in safety with his news to *Lisbon*, to the great joy of the King, but greater admiration of all sorts of people. Scarce settled in their new possession, when besieged by *Solyman Bassa*, Admirall to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 ships and Gallies, *Anno* 1537. offended with the *Portugals* for aiding the King of *Persia*, more for diverting the Spice-trade unto *Alexandria*. In which he had so ill success, that having assaulted it in vain with his Land-forces, he was fain to raise his siege in such hast and tumult, that he left his great Ordnance behind him. 2. *Sauran*, a Town and Castle of the *Resbutes*, spoken of before; and by them held against the power of the *Great Mongul*. 3. *Boldra*, a very fair and beautiful City, but of no great compass. 4. *Ardovat*, not far from the banks of the *Indus*, on the North of this Region towards *Sinde*. 5. *Madrbat*, by some called *Amadabat*, affirmed to be both for wealth and greatness the cheif of *Guzarate*, neer as big as *London*; well walled, and situate on a plain neer the Rivers side; seldome without Merchants of all Religions, *Jews*, *Gentils*, *Christians*, *Moores*, some of all, and neither. 6. *Stringi*, 7. *Periuo*, 8. *Serkesse*; this last remarkable for the Sepulchres of the old Kings of *Cambaia*, fair, and well kept, and visited from all parts of the Kingdome.

Nothing considerable in this part of the Countrey, as to point of story, but what is common to them with the rest of *Cambaia*; but that the *Resbutes*, or *Rasbooches* still remain unconquered. Possessed not only of the hills and Mountains, but of some strong holds: and governed by the Heads of their *Casts* or Tribes: all which acknowledge the *Mongul* for their *Superiour* in regard of his power; but none of them obey him as their Lord or Soveraign: conceiving it to be some abatement of their own authority, if they admit of him as an Umpire to compose their differences, which they sometimes do.

3 *CAMBAIA* specially so called, hath on the North, *Mandao*; on the South, the main Ocean, and some part of *Decan*; on the East, *Delly*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains; on the West, the Main Ocean, with some part of *Guzarate*. It standeth on the East-sides of the out-lets of *Indus*, running along the Sea-shore for 500 miles, and took this name from *Cambaia* the chief City of it.

The Countrey said to be the most fruitful of all *India*, abounding in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Spices of all sorts, and choicest fruits: of silk and Cotton so great plenty that they fraught yearly forty or fifty ships with those commodities. In the mountains they find *Diamonds*, *Chalcedonies*, and a kind of *Onyx*-stone, which are called *Cornelines*, and corruptly *Cornelians*. Amongst the Rarities hereof, they reckon the *Abades*, a great Beast, twice as bigge as a Bull, having on their snowts a little horn, and the hide so hard as no man can pierce it with a thrust; which is the *Rhinocerot* of the Antients.

The people effeminate and unwarlike, and therefore not much used by the *Moguls* in a war of consequence; to supply which defect he furnisheth himself with Souldiers out of *Persia*, of which his standing bands consist; most of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation also. More given to merchandise than war, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitful withall) as any people in the world: treacherous in their trust, proud in their carriage, bloody upon advantage, and much given to *Venerie*; ignorant of letters, but well practised in *Mechanical* Arts. In matters of Religion, for the most part *Gentils*; not knowing, or contemning the Law of *Mahomet*; but very punctual in their own heathenish superstitions. The *Bannians* in this Countrey, being natural *Indians*, nusled in *Paganism*, and so wedded to their old Idolatries, that no perswasions can prevail with them, make the greatest number: and seem to be all *Pythagoreans* in some opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath blood or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plantons and such natural fruits; paying a large *Revenue* yeerly to the *Great Mogul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongst them. And because new opinions should not grow amongst them, they marry in their own *Tribes* only, and never out of their own *Trades*; secure thereby as they conceive from all *innovations*.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Cambaia*, three miles from the *Indus*, and as many in compass, one of the neatest and best built in all the East. So populous withall, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families, and is therefore called the *Caire* of the *Indies*. Of most esteem in all this Kingdome (though far less than *Madabat*) to which it doth impart its name. 2. *Barocho*, Southwards of *Cambaia* on the top of an hill, with a fair River underneath it: well-walled, and noted for the best *Calicuts* (a kind of linnen Cloth so called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was first made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. 3. *Swalley*, still more unto the South, and about a mile from the Sea-shore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the ships ride which trade at *Surat*. 4. *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Swalley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and Shallops; fortified with a Castle of Stone well stored with Ordnance. The houses for the most part of Sun-dried bricks, very large and lasting: built with flat roofs, but battlemented on all sides for fear of falling; and beautified with goodly Gardens of Pomgranats, Melons, Figs, and Limons, interlaced with Riverets and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the *English* Merchants, who have here their President, and a magnificent house for the reception and staple of their Commodities. 5. *Neriand*, a great Town, and as remarkable for

the

the making of *Indico*; which growing on a ſmall ſhrub like our Gooſe-berry-buſhes, bears a ſeed like a *Cabbage* ſeed, and being cut down, is laid in heaps for half a year. Grown rotten, it is brought into a vault to be trod by Oxen from the Stalks, then ground in Mills, and finally boyled in furnaces, refined and ſorted, and ſo ſold to the Merchant. 6. *Damam*, upon the Sea-ſide over againſt *Diu*, and poſſeſſed as that is by the *Portugals*. A beautifull and pleaſant Town, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle at the North-end of it, of white chalky ſtone, well planted with Ordnance: oppoſite whereunto on the South-ſide of the Town, a goodly Church, edged atop with white. Which with the houſes, for the moſt part of the ſame colour alſo, afford a pleaſing proſpect to the ſailers by. 7. *Cumpanel*, ſituate on the top of an high mountain, and environed with a ſeven-fold wall; once the Seat Royall of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8. *Daraiotote*, a place of ſuch ſtrength that the great *Moguls* could never get it by force. Rendred at the laſt upon compoſition, conditioned they ſhould ſtill be governed by a King of their own. 9. *Netherby*, a great market of brazen ware, beaſts, and Armour. 10. *Bandre*. 11. *Tanai*, &c.

This Kingdome taking in *Guzarate* and *Sinda*, as parts hereof, is extremely populous, ſaid to contain 6000 Towns and Villages very well inhabited: but the people not accuſtomed to, or unfit for warres. Antiently governed by Kings of their own, it was firſt ſubdued by the *Arabians* or *Moores*, Anno 1423. under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machamut*: who having forced the *Resbutes* or naturals of the Country to betake themſelves unto the Mountains, was made King hereof. To him ſucceeded his ſonne *Mamudius*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was ſupplied by his ſonne *Baduruus*, who having conquered the Kingdome of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandao* alſo. His Army for that warre conſiſted of 500000 foot, 150000 horſe, 1000 great pieces of Ordinance, 500 wagons loaded with powder & ſhot, and as many wain-loads of gold and ſilver to pay his Army. But being diſcomfited in two great battels, by *Merhamed* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgee* the *Mandoan* King had called in to his aid, he ſhaved his beard, and fled in a diſguize to *Diu* then poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, whom he licenced in that diſtreſs to build the *Citadel*: ſlain afterwards by a mean mariner, at his return from the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, whom he had viſited on ſhip-board. And though *Mamudius* his Succeſſor endeavoured to free his Kingdome from both pretenders: yet weakned with the loſs of ſo great an Army he was not able to effect it. Firſt driven from *Diu*, which he had beſieged both by Sea and land, to his great diſhonour; and after vanquiſhed in battell by *Adabar* the ſonne of *Merhamed*, not far from *Serkeſſe*, the antient buriall-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but then the Sepulchre of the Kingdome: which by that victory fell to the *Great Monguls*, who have ſince enjoyed it.

8 *DECAN.*

DECAN is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with the *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Delly* and *Cambaia*; on the South, with *Malavar*, and *Canara*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

It lieth along the Sea-coaſt, for the ſpace of 250 miles, betwixt *Aliga*, and *Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending Eaſt, as farre as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thruſting into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and thoſe mountains till it meet with *Delly*. The ſoil much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *India*, but not ſo flouriſhing as *Cambaia*. The People for the moſt part *Mahometans*, which Religion was firſt planted there by the conqueſts of *Sa Noſaradine*, 350 years ago; yet not without ſome entermixture of their antient *Gentiliſm*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Bider*, the Seat Royall of *Mamudza*, once ſole King of this Country, who to beautifie and adorn this City, commanded every one of his *Prefects*, or ſubordinate Governors, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reſide therein certain moneths in the year; each one to leave a ſonne there in perpetual hoſtage. Situate in the moſt Northern parts of the Countrey neer the borders of *Delly*; from the King whereof *Mamudza* had then newly revolted: and therefore would make ſure of this place, as moſt in danger. 2. *Viſapore*, bordering on *Cambaia*, the Princely Seat of *Idalcan*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, after it was diſmembered into ſeverall Kingdomes. 3. *Danger*, confiningon *Canara*, a beautifull and flouriſhing City, once the chief Seat of *Niſalamoccus*, or *Nizalmoxa*, another of the Kings hereof after that diviſion. 4. *Decan*, ſo called by the name of the Province, of which the chief City next to *Bider* the Imperiall Seat. Six miles from which there is an hill encompaſſed with an high wall, and kept by a ſtrong Garriſon, becauſe of the great ſtore of *Diamonds* which are digged out of it. The town ſo wealthy, that the people generally are attired in ſilks, or the pureſt *tiffany*. 5. *Sintacora*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, where it falleth into the Sea. 6. *Goa*, a Sea-Town alſo, ſituate in a little but moſt pleaſant Iland called *Ticuarinum*, fifteen miles in compaſs; oppoſite to the mouth or out-let of the River *Mandova*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and pleaſantneſs of ſituation, one of moſt note in all this Country. Poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, who have here their *Arſenall*, and harbour for their *Indian* Fleet; by which they do command theſe Seas. So ſtrongly fortified withall, that though beleagured by *Idalcan* (of whom before) with 35000 horſe, 6000 Elephants, and 250 peece of Ordnance, Anno 1573. yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient ſituation and ſtrength thereof, the ordinary Reſidence of the *Portugal Vice-Roy*, who hath here his Counſell, Chancellor, and other Officers, for the government of ſuch parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as alſo of the Arch-Biſhop or Primate of the *Indian* Churches planted by that nation, who is hence called the Arch-Biſhop of *Goa*. 7. *Chaul*, a Sea-Town in the hands of the *Portugals* alſo; and by them well fortified: Inſomuch as *Niſamalocco*, aſſaulting it at the ſame time with a very great Army, was fain to leave

leave it as he found it. 8. *Balaguate*, in the uplands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name: *Bal* in the *Persian* language signifying a top, or summit of a mountain, and *Guate* an Hill. 9. *Brampore*, once the chief seat of another Kingdome; now the chief City of those parts of *Decan* which are subject to the *Great Mongul*. Situate on a great River in the middest of a spacious Plain, beautifull, and of very great trading; in bigness equall unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mogul*, without any resistance, *Anno* 1600. *Miram* then King thereof forsaking it, and betaking himself to 10. *Syra*, a strong hold both by art and nature. Situate on the top of an hill, in compass five leagues, and environed with a triple wall, furnished with victuals, and all other necessary provisions, sufficient to maintain 60000 men many years; 3000 great peeces of Ordnance planted on the walls. Besieged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting men, he held out against him: till overcome by promises of fair correspondence, drawn out of his hold (some of his Counsellers being bribed to perswade him to it) he was detained by the *Mogull*; and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes yielded up the Fort, and therein all the *Princes* of the Royall family, accustomably kept therein when the *Throne* was full; which vacant, the next *Heir* was taken hence, to succeed unto it. Of the same nature as it seemeth with the hill *Amara* in *Ethiopia*.

The Countrey formerly inhabited by a people called *Venaztrari*, by Religion *Gentiles*, and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sanosaradine*, a *Mahometan*, and King of *Delly*: who driving the Inhabitants into the Hill-Countries, possessed himself of a great part of it, compelling them to submit unto his Religion. The residue hereof subdued by *Abdesa*, whom *Sa Nosaradine* left here to pursue the warre, was by him governed with great justice for 20 years: when dying, he left his government to his sonne *Mamudza*, confirmed by the Successor of *Sa Nosaradine* in his Fathers *Regency* on the payment of an annuall tribute. *Mamudza* soon finding that the young King was of no great Spirit, not only refused to pay the tribute imposed upon him, but took unto himself the title of King of *Decan*: giving this name unto the Countrey (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a Mungril body of *Christians*, *Mahometans*, and *Gentiles*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in language, customes, or Religion; the word *Decan* signifying in that tongue, as much as an illegitimate brood, or a body of Bastards. Out of these he made choice of twelve (others say eighteen) whom he appointed Governors of so many Provinces: not daring to trust any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the Countrey: and hoping that these *Slaves* thus promoted by him, would be more subject to command. But here his silly hopes deceived him. For these *Slaves* either governed by their masters example, who had done the like unto the sonne and *Heir* of *Sa Nosaradine*, or presuming on their own strength, and some forein aids, left to their master nothing but an empty title, each one becoming absolute in his severall Province. Nor did his Successors for any long time enjoy that title; *Daquem* the last of them being taken at *Bider* his chief City: and thereupon the name of King usurped by every one of those petit Tyrants. Reduced at last into fewer hands, such of them as were left became considerable Princes; as appeareth by the great Army raised by *Idalcan* for the siege of *Goa*. But in the end, distressed on the one side by the *Portugals*, who embarred their trade, and invaded on the other side by the *Great Mogul* with most puissant Armies; *Melic* entituled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampore*, were in fine subdued by *Echebar*, about the year 1600. Against whom and his Successors, though the *Venazarari* still hold out, as the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Amdanager*, and perhaps some other petit Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country; the residue of these *Roytelets*, and petit Princes, (if any of them be remaining) being *Homagers* or Vassals to him. Against whose further Progress to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* so greedily aimed at, the puissant Kings of *Narsinga*, and those of *Malabar*, have opposed their power: whose Kingdomes and estates we must next survey, before we take a view of those other provinces, which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9. CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof antiently it was a part) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the East, with *Narsinga*, from which separated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the West, with the Ocean. The reason of the name I find not; nor much worth the searching.

The Countrey hath a fair Sea-coast, with many capacious Harbors to it, which cannot but adde much to the wealth thereof; as liberally furnished in the in-land parts, with Rice, Figs, and Sugars; but destitute of Wheat, Pulse, and Barley. Not much the poorer for that want, the people either not knowing or not regarding the use of bread; but living on such fruits as the earth produceth of it self without the charge or care of the husband-man. In other things, but little differing, if at all, from the rest of the *Indians*: their Religion for the most part *Paganish*; but intermixt with *Mahometans*.

Principall Towns and Cities of it, 1. *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2 *Onor*, a Port-Town of good note, sometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3. *Buticalia*, situate in the richest part of all this Country; never possessed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4. *Mangalor*, a town of great wealth and trade; fortified with a strong Castle, once destroyed by the *Portugueze*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narsinga*, who is Lord of this Country. 5. *Mayendre*, more within the land. And so is also 6. *Lispor*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant. 7. *Solsette*, in a *Peninsula* of 20 miles compass containing 36. Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants: the Town about 9 miles from *Goa*, and subject with the whole *Peninsula* to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now subject to the Kings of *Narsinga*; but formerly under the command of its own Princes: he

the name of *Canara*, comprehending in thoſe times all that Countrey alſo, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Noſaradine* and *Abdeſſa*, and by *Mamudza* cantoned into many *Prafetture*, this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narſingan*, who taking his advantages, in the minority of one of their Princes, became Maſter of it. And when the *Idalcan*, (for I take that not ſo much for the name of a man, as a Title of dignity) quarrelled his poſſeſſion of it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdomes of *Decan*, *Chriſmarao* then King of *Narſinga*, brought a powerfull *Advocate* to defend his right, that is to ſay, an Army of 606000 Foot, 29650 Horſe, and 537 Elephants: every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four men in it, with which ſtrong *Argument* the *Idalcan* being confuted in the *Schooles* of war, with much difficulty ſaved himſelf, though he loſt his cauſe: the *Narſingan* ever ſince continuing quiet in the poſſeſſion of this Country; except onely ſome of the Sea-Towns in the power of the *Portugals*. Who in the year 1567 deſtroyed in thoſe few places by them poſſeſſed no fewer than 200 of their *Idol-Temples*, with many of their *Pagodes*, or *Idols* in them; converting the Rents and Lands which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raiſed from the ſeverall Ports which they hold herein, to the maintenance of a College of *Jeſuites* in *Salſette*, and other *Religious* houſes founded by them, in their other Cities.

10. *MALABAR.*

MALABAR is bounded on the North, with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gangeraco*; on the Eaſt, with the great Mountain *Gates*, by which divided from the Realm of *Narſinga*; on the Weſt and South, with the main Ocean. On the Coaſt whereof it doth extend for the ſpace of 300 miles, that is to ſay, from the River *Gangeraco*, to the Cape *Comori*, which I conceive to be the *Commaria Extrema* of *Ptolomy*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing anſwerable to the length, not above 50. miles where broadeſt, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Conus*,

The Country more populous, for the bigneſs, than any in *India*; enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitfull Soyl, well watered, and indented with many *Creeks*: unfit for Corn, but plentifull in *Rice*, and all manner of Spices, as Ginger, Cinnamon, *Caſſia*, Pepper, and moſt excellent fruits. Amongſt their Trees, there is one whoſe name my Author ſpeaks not, which bears *Dates* like unto the Palm; out of which they have not onely wood for Fewell, but they draw from it, wine, ſugar, oyl, fine cloth and cordage: another tree, which beareth Cotton, and Cypreſs, or Cobweb-lawn, of the leaves whereof they make a fine ſtuff like to *Sattin* or *Taffata*. They have alſo great ſtore of Apes, and Monkeyes, Parats, Paraquitoes, and other Creatures not known in theſe parts but from thence: not to ſay any thing of their Lions, Elephants, Bears, Bugles, common to them with others of their *Indian* neighbours. The flowers there alwayes in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green, by reaſon that the Air is ſo ſweet and temperate.

The people are of coal-black colour (differing therein from the reſt of the *Indians*, ſwarth and complexioned like the *Olive*) well limbed, and wearing their hair long and curled: about their heads an hankerchief wrought with gold and ſilver, and about their middle a cloth, which hangeth down to conceal their nakedneſs. Of manners treacherous and bloody, more properly to be termed deſperate than ſtout and valiant; and for more ſurety in their wars, they uſe poiſoned Arrows, as they do alſo in their theeving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In *Religion* for the moſt part *Gentiles*, and more beſotted generally on their Idolatries, than the reſt of theſe Nations. The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worſhip, ſeated upon a brazen throne, and crowned with a rich *Diadem*. From his head iſſue out four horns, from his mouth four Tusks; his eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his noſe flat and ugly, his viſage terrible, his hands like claws, his legs and thighs like thoſe of a Lion. In a word, we cannot paint the *Devill* in a more ugly figure, than they do their *God*. Unto this *Pagode*, or his *Prieſt*, they offer the virginity of all their daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privy parts a *Bodkin* of gold and ſilver, upon which the *Bride* (maried moſt commonly at ten or twelve years of Age) is forcibly ſet; the ſharpneſs of it being ſuch, that it forceth out the blood in great abundance: and if ſhe prove with child that year, it is ſaid to be of his begetting, and the more eſteemed. Others with more humanity, inſtead of torturing their daughters to this wretched *Idol* (parallell almoſt to the offering of their ſonnes to *Moloch* amongſt the *Syrians*) preſent them to the *Bramini*, or *Idol-Prieſt*, to be deflowred the firſt night of the wedding: and without one of theſe two handſels, no man is ſuffered to enjoy the uſe of his wife, not their Kings themſelves. More privileged yet than many women neighbouring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themſelves with their husbands bodies: but may have many Husbands either ſucceſſively or at once, as they liſt themſelves: and if at once, ſhe ſends her children to that husband (as we know who did) who ſhe thinks to have the beſt right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we ſaid before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be *cantonned* into many Kingdomes. Divided at preſent, and long ſince, into thoſe of 1. *Cononor*. 2. *Calecut*. 3. *Granganor*, 4. *Chochin*. 5. *Cai-Colam*. 6. *Coulan*, and 7. *Travancor*.

1. *CONONOR*, joineth to *Canara*, extending Southward on the ſhore about 20 miles, where it bordereth on the Kingdome of *Calicut*. The chief Cities of which, 1. *Cononor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built, and beautified with a very fair Haven, not more ſafe than ſpacious, capacious of the greateſt veſſels, and for that cauſe much frequented by forein Merchants; but ſpecially by the *Portugals*, who for the aſſuring of their trade have here a *Citadel*, erected and well garriſoned with the Kings conſent.

lent. 2. *Cota*, not far from *Cangeraco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*. 3. *Peripatan*, on the confines of *Calicute*. 4. *Marabia*. 5. *Tramopatan*. 6. *Main*, intermediate Towns, but not much observable.

2. *CALICUTE*, South from *Cononor*, extending on the Sea-shore 25 Leagues, and situate in the most pleasant and fruitfull part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Pandarane*, on the skirts of *Cononor*. 2. *Tanor*, a retiring place of the Kings. 3. *Patangale*. 4 *Chatua*, on the borders of *Cranganor*. 5. *Chale*, a strong peece, once in the hands of the *Portugueze*, but in the year 1601 recovered by the King of *Calicute*, who had besieged it with an Army of 90000 men. 6. *Capacote*, the Haven to *Calicute*. 7. *Calicute*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea three miles, and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houses, but standing some of them far asunder, mean and low-built, few of them exceeding the height of a man on horse-back; the soil being so hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cause unwalled. Insomuch that Merchants houses are here valued but at 20. Crowns, those of the common sort at no more than ten. Which notwithstanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Syrians*, *Indians*, yea the very *Tartars*, these last from the furthest parts of *Cathay* 6000 miles distant. The common Staple in those times of all *Indian* Merchandise, till distracted into severall Ports by the power of the *Portugals*: who being more industrious, and better *Architects*, have forced a foundation on the shore for a very strong Castle, by which they do command the Haven, and receive custome of all Merchandise going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of *Calicute*, he besieged it with 100000 men: and though the *Portugals* held it out a whole winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it, but first demolished it to the ground, that it might not be made usefull to those of *Calicute*. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no less wantonness; the men here using to change wives with one another, to confirm their Amities: & the women spending their whole time in adorning themselves with Rings and Jewels, about their ears, necks, legs, arms, and upon their brests; though going naked for the most part, one would think that a little dressing might suffice them. If covered, it is onely with a smock of *Calicut*, a kind of linnen cloth here made, and from hence so called: and that not used but by those of the better sort.

3. *CRANGANOR*, lieth on the South of *Calicute*, a small Kingdom, and affording little worth the speaking of: but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of those old *Christians*, whom they call *Christians* of Saint *Thomas*. *Cranganor*, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be so full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and exposed to publique scorn both by the *Idolaters* and *Mahometans*, amongst whom they live. The City rich, commodiously built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with his crooked streams the most part of the Country, makes it fat and flourishing.

4. *COCHIN*, more South than *Cranganor*, extended on the shore for the space of 40. Leagues: and therein many *Christians* of the first plantation, besides some *converts* made of later times by the *Jesuites*. Towns of most note herein. 1. *Augamale*, the Arch-Bishops See of those antient *Christians*, fifteen miles from *Cochin*. 2. *Cochin*, a Bishops See, but of later *erection*, and the chief City of this Kingdome, which takes name from hence. Situate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Mangat*, by which almost encompassed like a *Demy-Iland*; Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very safe and spacious; as also by the friendship of the *Portugal* Nation. By whose power and favor they have not onely freed themselves from the King of *Calicute*, to whom before they did acknowledge some subjection; but drawn from thence a great part of the trafick also: this King permitting them to erect a Castle on the Haven, to secure their trade; which the other on good reasons of State forced them to destroy. The King hereof in some respect *superiour* unto him of *Calicute*, when a *Vassal* to him: this King being the *Pope* or *Chief Bishop*, as it were, of all the *Bramines*: for which cause reverenced by all the Kings of *Malabar*, (as the Pope by many Princes of these Western parts) who look upon him as the head of their *superstition*, and pay him many Annuall duties.

5. *CAI-COLAM*, is on the South of *Cochin*, with which agreeing both in the temper of the Air, and the fertility of the Earth: which notwithstanding, the King hereof is not so rich as his other neighbours. Here live also many of the old *Christians*, taking name from Saint *Thomas*; but those so destitute of *Priests* and Ministers to instruct them in the Principles of *Christianity*, that once in three years there came some formerly from the Patriarch of *Muzall*, in *Assyria*, to baptize their children. Better I hope provided for in these later daies: since their emboso ming and reconcilement to the Church of *Rome*. Their chief Town of the same name with the Country, hath a very fair Haven, in the fashion of a *Semi-Circle*; well traded till destroyed by the *Portugals*; but since that re-edified. Of less note there are many both Towns and Villages, but such as do deserve here no particular mention.

6. *COULAN*, upon the South of *Cai-Colam*, extended 20. Leagues more Southwards upon the Shores, is said to be destitute of corn, but plentifull of *pepper*, and most sorts of spices. So stored with Horses, and fit Riders to serve upon them, that the King hereof keeps 20000 Horse in continuall readiness either for invasion or Defence. This Kingdome, as the rest before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Coulan*, 24. miles from *Cochin*, and once a member of this Kingdome; of great resort by forein Merchants, by reason of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary Seat of the *Cobritin*, or chief *Priest* of the *Bramines*, till removed to *Cochin*: and held to be the *Metropolis* or mother City of all *Malabar*; the rest being thought to be but *Colonies* of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many *Christians*, as well of the originall foundation of *Christianity*, as of the late improvements which are made by the *Jesuites*.

7. *TRA-*

7. *TRAVANCOR*, called alſo *TRANCANOR*, reacheth from the Kingdome of *Coulan*, to the Cape of *Comarim*, and turning towards the Eaſt, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cael*, in the Kingdome of *Biſnagar* or *Narſinga*. By which accompt it hath the benefit of the Sea on all ſides except towards the North: reaching in breadth from the Weſt Seas unto the Eaſt about 90 miles. The Country, as the reſt before, inhabited by many with the name of *Chriſtians*, if they may be called ſo which want *Sacraments*: the condition of theſe *Thomaan* Chriſtians in former times being ſo unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the *Jeſuites*, (if the *Jeſuites* may be believed from whom we have it) they had ſeen no Prieſt, nor other Miniſter of the Goſpell. Chief Towns hereof, (for of thoſe many others of leſs note I ſhall make no mention) are 1. *Travancor*, the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well-built, nor of very much trading. 2. *Quilacare*, the head City of a peculiar Signeury, but held of the Kings of *Trancanor*, as their next and immediate Lords, though all thoſe Kings alſo *Fendataries* of the Crown of *Narſinga*. And were that the worſt *Tenure* by which they hold, it might be tolerable; but there is a matter of worſe conſequence which attendeth theſe beſotted Princes. The Kingdome here is but a pomp of twelve years continuance, and then endeth in a ſad *Cataſtrophe*. For at the end of thoſe twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilacare*, prayeth before the *Idol* above mentioned, then mounteth on a Scaffold covered with ſilk or Tapeſtry, and in the ſight of all his People, gathered together to behold this ſtrange ſolemnity, cutteth off his noſe, ears, lips and other parts, which he caſts towards the *Idol*, and in concluſion cuts his own Throat for his finall Sacrifice: his deſigned Succeſſor being preſent at this bloody Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was *Scepter* bought at ſo dear a rate: For though all *Crowns* be lined with *thornes*, yet here the pomps of ſoveraignty be leſs laſting than in other places; the *entrance* full of fears, and the end, of horrors.

Theſe Kingdomes heretofore but one, till the year 900 or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into theſe ſeven by *Sarama Pereimal*, the ſole Monarch. He by the ſollicitation of ſome *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein ſo devout, that he reſolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, there to end his daies. At his departure, he divided his eſtates into theſe ſeven parts, diſtributing them amongſt the neereſt of his kindred: aſſigning unto him of *Coulan* the preheminence in ſacred matters, and the *Imperiall* dignity unto him of *Calecute*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to ſay, *Chief Emperor*, or as ſome write, a God on earth. He only privileged with the right and power of *coinage*; the reſt to be ſubordinate, if not ſubject to him. From *Pereimals* ſetting forwards to the City of *Meccha*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings, and begin their years; as the Chriſtians from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his heſts were punctually obſerved. But the Kingdome of *Calicute* being weakned by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themſelves from that ſubjection, and in the end to caſt off all Relation to him, and to his *Prerogatives*. Yet ſtill he is eſteemed of more power and majeſtie, than any of the reſt of the Kings of *Malabar*; and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have no where met with, but conjecture them to be very great; firſt in regard of that infinite trading which is mannaged from moſt parts of the World in his Port of *Calicute*; the cuſtomes and impoſts upon which muſt needs be of exceeding value; and ſecondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are ſaid to equal ſome Kings in *Africk*, and Dukes in *Europe* nor a few.

Quid Domini *facient? audent cum talia* Fures.
And if the man ſuch riches have,
Then what muſt he that keeps the Knave?

What *Forces* he is able to raiſe may be fully ſeen by that which hath been ſaid before; wherein we find him with an Army of 50000 men beſieging and taking in the Fort of *Chalen*; with another of 100000. beleagureing the Caſtle which the *Portugals* had built neer his City of *Calicute*. And when the ſaid *Portugals* ſtirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head againſt him, he fell upon them ſuddenly both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-ſouldiers, and 200 good Veſſels of war for the ſervice at Sea. Sufficient force to reduce the reſt of theſe petit Kings to their old acknowledgements, but that ſome of them to avoid the danger, have put themſelves under the *Vaſſallage*, or protection at the leaſt, of the *Great Mongul*: others by ſuffering the *Portugals* to build forts in their Kingdomes, have engaged them in defence of their eſtate againſt this pretender. His forces conſiſt moſt of Foot, Horſe being unſerviceable in theſe Countries, by reaſon of thoſe many Rivers which interlace it. And theſe *Foot* are compounded moſt of Gentry which they there call *Nairos*, trained to their weapons when they are but ſeven years of Age; every one to that weapon which he moſt delighteth in; which makes them very expert and nimble at them: much privileged for that cauſe by the Lawes of the Countrey; and ſo eſteemed of by the King, that out of them his Siſters chooſe what men they pleaſe to be their *Husbands*; ſome of them by that means being made the Fathers of the King ſucceeding.

Nothing elſe memorable touching the affairs of *Calicute*, but the way of ſucceſſion to the Kingdome: the Crown deſcending upon none of the Kings Children, but on the ſonne of his Eldeſt Siſter, or neereſt kinſwoman. For being that one of the *Bramines* hath alwaies the maidenhead of his Queens, and that ſome of theſe *Stallions* are continually allowed to keep them company; it is preſumed, or very probably ſuppoſed, that the Queens Children are the *Bramines*, and not the Kings.

8. *NARSINGA.*

NARSINGA is bounded on the South, with *Travancor*; on the Weſt, with the Mountain *Gates*; on the North, with *Oriſtan* or *Orixa*; on the Eaſt, with the Golf of *Bengala*. So called from

Narsinga the chief City of it, and the Royal residence of the King.

The Countrey is said to be in length 600 miles, or as some say of as much extent as can be travelled in six moneths: plentiful in the same commodities which the rest of *India* do h afford, except *Pepper* and some other spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not so well furnished with Rivers, as some other places: which want is liberally supplyed by water falling from the Mountains, and received into trenches, meers, and *Lakes*, which do wonderfully cool, moisten, and enrich the land, causing the Corn and Cattel to prosper above all imagination. Most destitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year passeth without rain, they fall into such extremities, that they are fain to sell their children.

The People, in Religion *Gentiles*, so worshipping one God, as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they join the *Devil* or their *Pagodes* in Commission with him, whereto induced by the perswasion of their beastly *Bramines*, who thereout suck no small advantage. Some Christians there are intermixt, of the *old plantation*, especially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*: but not so well instructed in the *Principles* of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*, nor to dissuade them from the use of some *Heathenish* customes, though barbarous, inhumane, and against all reason; not used in any place but amongst the *Indians*. Amongst which I reckon for most savage, the forcing of poor women to burn themselves with their husbands bodies, the womens kindred not the husbands thrusting them on these hard conditions, who reckon it a disgrace to their familie, if she should refuse. And because they will be sure not to have that infamy stick upon them, they have ordered that the woman who shall so refuse, must shave her head, and break her Jewells, and not be suffered to eat, drink, or sleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miserable than the Flames which they seek to shun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greedinesse, and to contend which shall be foremost: she being thought to have been most loving during his life, which is now most willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her self to his *Manes*, at the funeral pile: whereunto thus alludeth the Poet.

Et certamen habent lethi, quæ viva sequatur
Conjugium; pudor est non licuisse mori.
Ardent victrices, & præbent pectora flammæ;
Imponunt q; suis ora perusta viris.

A shame 'tis not to dy: they therefore strive,
Who may be fam'd to follow him alive.
The Victor burns, yields to the flame her brest;
And her burnt face doth on her husband rest.

Chief Cities of this Countrey, 1. *Cael*, on the borders of *Travancer*, belonging antiently to the Kings of *Coulan*, now to those of *Narsinga*; the people whereabout called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Christians*, who live for the most part by fishing for *Pearl*, which they sell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalan* Merchants. 2. *Golconda*, the chief City of the Province called *Musulipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian* Sect; but a Vassal to the Kings of *Narsinga*. 3. *Chamdagrin*, one of the Seat-Royals of the King. 4. *Prepeti*, three miles from *Chamdagrin*, memorable for an yearly feast here celebrated in honour of *Perumal* (once sole King of *Malavar*) reckoned for a Saint at least in these parts of *India*: the offerings at which accustomably amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5. *Chadambaram*, the Mother-City of those *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Perumal*, who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of annual rent, all consumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have bren born out of *Perumalls* head. 6. *Madura*, honoured with the residence of the *Chocanadi*, or the Chief *Prelate* of the *Bramines* of this Kingdome; so numerous, that in this Town, and the territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thousand. The seat also of one of three *Naichi*, or tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narsinga*: the other two residing at 7. *Gingi*, and 8. *Tanaor*, the Chief Towns of their Principalities, but not else observable. 9. *Maliapur*, called also *St. Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of that Apostle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolatrous Indians*, whose posterity, in other things like unto other men, are said to have one leg and foot as big as an *Elephants*: a punishment inflicted on the whole Generation for the sin of their Ancestors: How true this is I cannot say, but sure I am that *Dorotheus* saith, that he resteth at *Calamina*, where he was slain with a dart. However, the *Portugals*, to make some use of the old tradition, removed some bones from this place, which were said to be his, and enshrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much visited by profitable *Pilgrimes*, to their great enriching. The City once so large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples for the use of divers Nations which resorted thither. In these later daies desolate and forlorn, inhabited onely by some old Christians, till the *Portugueze* began again to people it with new Colonies. 10. *Choromandel*, giving name to a large Sea-Coast, lying on the West side of the Golf of *Bengala*. 11. *Casta*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Countrey; but buried quick in the same grave with him. 12. *Negapatan*, in the same Region, inhabited for the most part by Saint *Thomas Christians*. 13. *Tarnassari*, once the head City of a Kingdome so called, the King whereof was able to bring into the field, 100000 horse and foot, and 100 armed Elephants, but now subject to the King of *Narsinga*. The people black, but so out of love with their own colour, that they willingly prostitute their wives or daughters, to any people of a whiter and more cleer complexion. 14. *Bisnagar*, once the chief City of this kingdome, whence the King is sometimes called the King of *Bisnagar*. In those times 24 miles in compass, with nine Gates in it, (amongst others) continually guarded with Souldiers; and a magnificent Palace not elsewhere equalled. In the year 1565. sacked by four of the *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joint forces had invaded this kingdome, it became desolate and forsaken; and the Court removed to 15. *Penegarde*,

eight

eight daies journey within the Land (*Biſnegar* being ſeated on the borders of *Decan*) But long it had not ſtaid there when removed to 16. *Narſinga*, where it hath ever ſince been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdome, unto which it gives name, though the King many times call himſelf by the name of that City where he reſideth for the preſent.

Of the Antiquity of this kingdome I have little to ſay; theſe Eaſtern parts not being known at all till theſe later times, nor well known in theſe. About the year 1550 their King then reigning was impriſoned by three of his Captains or Commanders; who ſhewed him only once a year to his Subjects, parting the power and government amongſt themſelves. He being dead, and his ſonne kept in the like reſtraint, *Romaragio* the firſt Captain aſcended the Throne, *Timaragio* mannaged the Eſtate, and *Bengahe* commanded the Army. But theſe Uſurpers being overthrown by the kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565. *Timaragio* the Survivor took the charge of all; whoſe ſonne, to make himſelf ſure of the kingdome, murdered his impriſoned Soveraign (the life and liberty of kings being much of a date) whence followed many broiles and troubles touching the Succeſſion, till ſettled in the perſon of *Chriſnarao*, the undoubted Heir: who did not only reſtore peace and quiet to *Narſinga* it ſelf, but recovered *Cantra* out of the hands of the *Idalcan*, who had before endangered his eſtate therein. Of the great Army which he led againſt this *Idalcan*, we have ſpoke already: adding here onely, that before he went upon this enterpriſe (called the journey of *Rachiol*) he ſacrificed in nine daies 2036 Beaſts to the Countrey Idols, the fleſh whereof he cauſed to be diſtributed amongſt the poor; Routed at firſt, and being perſwaded by ſome about him to go out of the field, he is ſaid to have made this Noble Anſwer, that he *had rather the* Idalcan *ſhould boaſt that he had ſlain him, than vanquiſhed him.* And thereupon leaping into the thickeſt of his enemies, and well followed by the valianteſt of his Friends, he obtained the victory. But this vaſt Army of 606000 foot, 30000 Horſe, 537 Elephants, with neceſſaries anſwerable to ſuch infinite multitudes, ſpeaks only what he can do on extreme neceſſity, or when he hath ſome long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better meaſured by their ſtanding forces, than by premeditated *Levies*. And herein this Prince comes not much ſhort of his greateſt neighbours: his ſtanding bands conſiſting of 40000 *Nairos*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, which ſerve on foot; 20000 Horſe, who are either *Perſians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants; well paid, and kept in continual readineſs: his foot defraied out of his *Revenues*, his Horſe maintained like the *Turks Timariots* out of certain lands diſtributed amongſt his Captains (ſome of which are ſaid to have a million of Crowns *per Annum*) to furniſh him with theſe ſtable bands of Horſes and Elephants.

As for his *Revenue* it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three, defraying with the reſt the expence of his houſhold, and the entertainment of his Foot. This ſum amaſſed together out of the lands, mines, and forreſts of the Countrey, which are wholly his; and the waters of of ſome Rivers, (ſold by him to his ſubjects) which he monopolizeth; the common people having nothing but their Armes and Labour. Of which, the mines, forreſts, and one third of the lands, he retaineth to himſelf; the other two being divided amongſt his Captains. So that it is no marvel if ſo rich a Countrey yield him ſuch an *income*, conſidering it is all his own. I do rather wounder (of the two) it ſhould yield no more.

9. ORISTAN.

ORISTAN or ORIXA, is bounded on the South, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with *Delly*, and *Mandao*; on the North, with the Kingdomes of *Botanter*; on the Eaſt, with the Golf of *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*; ſo called from *Oriſſa*, the chief City of it.

The Countrey hath plenty of Rice, cloth of Cotton, and a fine ſtuff like ſilk, made of graſs, and there called *Yerva*; with which, together with *Long Pepper*, Ginger, *Mirabolins*, and other commodities here growing, they uſe to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Oriſſa* only. The people ſo well governed, or ſo hating theft, that in the time of their own kings, before they came under the *Moguls*, a man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points of the ſame temper and religion with the reſt of the *Indians* ſubject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moiſten and refreſh it, but none ſo beneficial to the Kings hereof, as the River *Guangen* (of old called *Chaberis*) the waters whereof eſteemed ſacred by the Kings of *Calicute* and *Narſinga*, and much uſed by them in their ſacrifices and ſuperſtitious purgations, are wholly ingroſſed by this King, who ſelleth them to thoſe Princes at exceſſive rates. Beſides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-coaſt, of 350 miles in length; that is to ſay, from Cape *Guadarino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narſinga*; to Cape *Leogora* in the Eaſt, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, becauſe not ſo well provided of commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far leſs Territory.

Towns of moſt note herein, 1. *Oriſſa*, on the Sea-ſide, or not far from it, the beſt traded Port of all this Kingdome; to which the name thereof is to be aſcribed, as the Head-City of the Countrey. 2. *Cateoha*, ſix daies journey within the land, the ordinary reſidence of their Kings, before it was ſubdued by the *Great Monguls*. 3. *Angeli*, a well-frequented Port, at the bottom of the Golf of *Bengala*, from whence many ſhips are yearly laden with *Indian* wares. 4. *Bacolli*, or *Bacola*, more within the land, and once the head City of a Kingdome, but a very poor one. 5. *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat fleſh, or kill any beaſt. 6. *Senerpate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deſerves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom; but that the Kings hereof were *Gentiles*, ſubdued not many yeers ſince by the K. of *Patanaw*: and both, grown weaker by that war, by *Echebar*, the *Great Mongul*.

10. BOTANTER.

BOTANTER (under which name I comprehend all those petit Kingdomes which are crowded together in the North and North-East of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Oristan* and *Patanaw*; on the West, the River *Guenga* or *Chaberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Sanga*; on the North, the *Zagathaian Tartars*, divided from it by some branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the East, the famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Bottia*, the principall City of *Botanter*, which is the chief of these small Kingdomes.

The Countrey great, of three moneths journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be seen five dayes journey off, in which are said to dwell a people with ears of a span long or more, whom otherwise those of the Valleys count as *Apes*. In those parts which are next *Sanga*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more enclined to the *Olive* Colour. Their garments they wear close to their bodies, so streight that one cannot see a pleit or wrinckle; and those they never put off by night nor day, whilest they are able to hang on: nor do they wash at any time, for fear of defiling so pure a Creature as the water. Content with one wife (deservedly to be held a miracle in these Eastern parts) and yet *cohabit* not with her after two or three Children. When any of them dy, the *Sooth-sayer* is to tell them what to do with his body: according to whose direction (first consulting his Books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towes of note there are amongst them. The principall, 1. *Bottia*, the *Metropolis* of it. 2. *Calamur*, and 3. *Negarist*, their Staples for the sale of their cloth, (most of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinoys*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, who resort frequently to those markets. This a distinct Kingdome of it self, the Kings whereof are called *Dermair*, but *Vassals* to the great *Mongul*. And so is he of

2. COUCHE, another Kingdome of this Tract, frontire upon *Cauchin-China*, beyond *Ganges*; so called from *Couche*, the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reason that it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will; full of good pastures by that means, and those well stored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Deer, and other Cattel, though the people neither kill nor eat them. But on the contrary build *Hospitals* for them, in which when lame and old they are kept till they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them; their small money being *Almonds*.

3. GOUREN, a kind of Desart or unpeopled Country, joyneth close to this. In which are few Villages, grass longer than a man, and therein many *Buffes*, Tigers, and other wild Basts, none wilder than the Theeves who frequent the wildernesses.

In this Tract also are the Kingdoms of RAME, and RECON, joining upon *Zagathay*, or enclining towards it; possessed by the *Mongul Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before; but *Feudataries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachosia*, who commanded in the North-East of *Persia*, and these North parts of *India*: and from those places drew his Army or the greatest part of it, when called unto the aid of *Gulgee*, the King of *Mandu*. Here is also the Kingdome of TIPPURA, naturally fenced with hills and mountains; and by that means hitherto defended against the *Mongul Tartars*, their bad neighbours; with whom they have continuall warres. But of these Northern Kingdomes lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be said, and that little of no certain knowledge: those parts being hitherto so untravelled, that they may pass in the Accompt of a *Terra Incognita*.

11. PATANAW.

PATANE or PATANAW, is bounded on the North, with the Realms of *Botanter*; on the East, with *Ganges*; on the West, with *Oristan*; and on the South, with the Kingdome and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patane* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdome of this name in the further *India*: but whether it were so called because a Colony of this; or from some resemblances in the nature of the severall Countries, or from the signification of the word in the *Indian* language; I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that though they have the same name, yet they are under several Governments, and situate in farre distant places: no other wise agreeing than in some resemblances, as *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolnshire*.

The Country yieldeth veins of Gold which they dig out of the pits, and wash away the earth from it in great Bolls. The people tall, and of slender making, many of them old: great Praters, and as great dissemblers. The women so bedecked with silver and copper, especially about the feet, that they are not able to endure a shooe. Both Sexes use much washing in the open Rivers, and that too intermixt together in their naturall nakedness; especially such as live neer the banks of the River *Jemena* (esteemed more holy than the rest) which from *Agra* passing thorow this Country, falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Patane*, a large town and a long one, built with very broad streets; but the houses very mean and poor, made at the best of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The *Metropolis* of this Kingdom, because the antientest, and that which gives the name unto it. 2. *Bamaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the Gentiles from remote Countries use to come in *pilgrimage*, to bath themselves in the holy waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flourishing, and beautified upon the Rode with handsome Villages. 3. *Siripur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of this Country; not yet subdued by the *Great Mongul's*. 4. *Ciandecan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jesuites*, when blamed by them for the worship of so many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the law of God and nature. For causing them to rehearse the *Decalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more against those com-

commandements in worshiping so many *Pagodes*, than they themselves in worshipping so many *Saints*. 5. *Satagim*, a fair City (for a City of *Moores*) once part of *Pataman*, since ascribed to *Bengala*.

The people of this Country properly called *Pataneans*, but corruptly *Parthians*, were once of great command and power in these parts of *India*. Lords for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*, into which driven by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grand-father of *Echebar*. Their last King being slain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joined in an *Aristocracy*, and warring upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their Successors attempted *Oristan*, and added that also to their Estate. But they could not long make good their fortunes; subdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, and made subject to him. Three of them, viz. the Prince of *Siripur*, the King of *Candecan*, and he whom they call *Mansadalim*, retain, as yet (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their antient *Paganism*, as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometanism*, have vassalled themselves to the great *Mongul*, now the Lord Paramount of the Country.

12. *BENGALA.*

BENGALA is bounded on the North, with *Pataxaw*; on the East, with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*; on the South and West, with the *Gulf* of *Bengala*; So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth in length on the *Gulf* and River 360 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land A Countrey stored with all things necessary to the life of man, great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and Long-Pepper. Such aboundance of Silk, & Cotton, and of Flesh and Fish, that it is impossible that any Countrey should exceed it in those commodities. And which crowns all, blest with so temperate and sweet an air, that it draws thither people of all sorts to inhabit it. Here is also, amongst other rarities, a Tree called *Moses*, which beareth so delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* to sin.

The natural Inhabitants for the most part, are of white complexion, like the *Europeans*, subtil of wit, and of a courteous disposition, well skill'd in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandize, if not somewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with some smattering in *Philosophy*, *Physick*, and *Astrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparell: not naked as in others of these *Indian* Provinces, but clothed in a shirt or smock reaching to their feet, with some upper Garment over that. The women of an ill name for their unchastity, though *Adultery* be punished with cutting off of their noses. Neat, if not curious and too costly in this one custom, that they never seeth meat twice in the same Pot, but for every boyling buy a new one. In *Religion*, for the most part *Mahometans*, especially on the Sea-shores, which lay most open and commodious to the *Arabians*; by whom *Mahometanism* was here planted many ages since.

Of Rivers we need take no care having spoke of *Ganges*. That with its many Channels may abundantly serve to water so small a Province. But hereof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now unto the Cities. The principall whereof, 1. *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, situate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the most beautifull Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by *Pilgrimages*, by reason of the holyness and divine operations ascribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it: there being few years in which not visited by three or four hundred thousand *Pilgrims*. 2. *Gouro*, the seat-Royall of the antient Kings. 3. *Catigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4. *Taxdi*, once a Town of great trafick, and situate in those times on the banks of *Ganges*; now by the changing of the Channel (occasioned by the frequent overflowings of it) above a league off from the River. 5. *Porto Grande*, and 6. *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*, but without Forts for defence, or rules for Government. Places like the *Asylum*, which was built by *Romulus*; whereunto such as dare not stay in their own Countries, or any well-regulated Cities, use to make their resort; privileged here to live in all kind of licentiousness.

Here is also in the North parts of this Province, or adjoining to it, the City and Kingdom of *ARACHAN*. Lying along the banks of *Ganges*, but so remote from the Sea, that it is 50 miles distant from the neerest branch of it. Wealthy, and populous withall; governed heretofore by a King of its own, so wallowing in wealth and sensuall pleasures, that he had in this City and the parts adjoyning twelve Royall Palaces or *Seraglios*, all stowed with women for his lust. Now subject with *Bengala* and *Pataxaw*, betwixt which it lieth, to the Empire of the great *Monguls*.

There are also some small Ilands in the Gulf of *Bengala*, which I account unto that Kindom. 1. *Bazacata*, now called *Basse*. 2. *Barasse*, of which name there are five in *Ptolomy*, three of them by *Mercator* said to be *Mindanao*, *Cailon*, and *Subut*. 3. Two, called the Ilands of *Good fortune*, by him placed under the *Æquator*, and said to be inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters; as also were three more which he calls 4. *Sabadiba*, now named *Cainam*. 5. *Insula Satyrorum*, or the *Isles* of *Satyres*, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like *Satyres*. And 6. those called *Maniola*, in number ten, (now *Islas de Pracel*) reported by *Ptolomy* to be so stored with *Adamant* stones, that they violently drew to them any ships or vessels, which had iron in them: for which cause they which used these Seas fastned the planks of their ships with wooden pins. But our later *Navigators* find no such matter unless perhaps it be in the exploits of Sir *Huon* of *Bourdeaux*, where indeed we meet with such an Iland, in the course of his *Errantrie*.

But to return again to the Kindome of *Bengala*, we find it of a different constitution from the rest of the Kingdomes of these parts. Not governed by a family of Successive Princes, descended from the Stemme of a Royall Ancestrie, as the others are. Chance, or necessity, had brought thither many *Abassines*, or *Æthiopians*, who made a conquest of the Country; and those

choſe a King out of themſelves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regall honor to the *Abaſſine* Nation, they procured thence yearly certain thouſands of *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto the warres, advanced unto the higeſt commands in *civill* and *military* ſervice; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Soveraign: as the *Mamalucks* in the Kingdome of *Egypt*, whom herein they followed. By ſome *Arabians* trading with them, they came in time to admit *Mahometaniſm* amongſt them, on the Sea-coaſts eſpecially. Diſpoſſeſſed firſt of ſome part of their Kingdome, lying about *Satagan*, by the *Pataneans*; when driven to ſeek new dwellings by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*: and of their whole Kingdom, by the valor and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the reſt of his eſtate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this ſide of *Ganges* (the Kingdomes of *Malabar* and *Narſinga* being but a *Parentheſis* in the conſtruction of this ſentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his deſcent from the *Mongul-Tartars*, one of the five great *Tribes* or Nations into which that People were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almoſt all the greater and leſſer *Aſia*, unto his eſtates: left *Perſia*, with the parts of *India* which lay neereſt to it on the North, to *Myrza Charrok*, his fourth ſonne. But his iſſue failing in *Abdula*, the 4th. of that line, thoſe eſtates fell to *Abuſaid*, deſcended from *Maromcha*, the third ſonne of *Tamerlane*: Whoſe ſonne and Succeſſor called *Zeuzes*, by ſome *Malaouchres*, being diſſeized of the greateſt part of the Kingdome of *Perſia*, by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*: the rights of all, with the poſſeſſion of *Arachoſia* (now called *Chabul*) and *Paropamiſus* (now *Candahor* or *Sableſtan*) together with ſo much of *India* as was held by thoſe Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger ſonnes of *Abuſaid*; whoſe poſterity laying hold on ſuch opportunities as were offered to them, have made themſelves Maſters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whoſe Succeſſors and their achievements we ſhall here preſent.

The *Great Monguls*.

1473. 1. *Hamed*, the ſonne of *Abuſaid*, of the race of *Tamerlane*, after the conqueſt of *Perſia* by *Uſſun-Caſſanes*, ſucceeded in *Chabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* ſubject to the *Tartars*.

1500. 2. *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, in danger to be diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his Eſtates by the neighbouring *Uzbeques*, living upon the borders of *Perſia*, *Tartary*, and *India*, whom at laſt he quieted; enlarged his dominions by the conqueſt of ſome part of *Patanaw*, and other Kingdomes in the North.

1532. 3. *Hamoyen*, the ſonne of *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, commonly called *Emanpaxda*, vanquiſhed by the *Parthians*, or *Pataneans*, and their confederates, craved aid of *Tamas*, the 2d. *Perſian* Monarch of this line, on promiſe to conform to the *Sophian Sect*: and by that aid confirmed and ſettled his affairs, but held himſelf to the former Principles of his *Irreligion*.

4. *Merhamed*, or *Miramundus*, ſonne of *Emanpaxda*, called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*, againſt *Badurius* the *Cambaian*, vanquiſhed the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields, and conquered the Kingdomes of *Mandao*, and *Balaſſia*, with ſome other Provinces.

5. *Adabar*, the ſonne of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambaia*, unto his Dominions.

1550. 6. *Mahomet Selabdin*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the moſt fortunate and victorious Prince of all this family, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Caximur*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Oriſſa*, *Bengala*, *Patanaw*, and divers others of leſs note.

1605. 7. *Selim*, ſurnamed *Jangheere*, the ſonne of *Echebar*, who added nothing that I hear of, to his fathers conqueſts.

1627. 8. *Blockie*, the grandchild of *Selim* by his eldeſt ſonne, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* at *Agra*) proclamed King on the death of his Grand-father; but ſhortly after made away by *Aſaph Chawn*, ſo to make room for

1627. 9. *Curroon*, the third ſonne of *Selim* or *Jangheere*, and ſonne-in-law unto *Aſaph Chawn*; having by his own Miniſters, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclamed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royall blood, ſucceeded into the Eſtates, and was crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince: ſtill living for ought I hear to the contrary.

To look a little on theſe Princes, their eſtate and power; in matters of *Religion* they have generally been *Mahometans*, that Religion being long ſince embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally deſcended. But not ſo ſcrupulous or preciſe in that profeſſion, as to endeavour the ſuppreſſing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his ſonne *Jangheere*, being ſo inclined unto *Chriſtianity*, that they permitted the *Jeſuites* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* it ſelf the Imperiall City, and many other chief Cities in his dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, that being doubtfull what *Religion* to adhere unto, he cauſed 30 Infants to be ſo brought up that neither their Nurſes nor any body elſe ſhould ſpeak unto them; reſolving to addict himſelf to the *Religion* of that Country, whoſe language ſhould be ſpoken by them, as moſt agreeable to nature: and he did accordingly. For as thoſe Children ſpoke no *language*, ſo was he poſitive, and reſolved in no *Religion*. Able to ſee the vanities of *Mahomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the ſtrictneſs of *Chriſtianity*. And though *Selim* who

ſuc-

ſucceeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects, declared himſelf for that *Religion*; yet his affairs being once ſettled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as *Neutral* as his Father. Sultan *Curreon* now Reigning, of the ſame *Neutrality*, and 'tis well he is ſo, there being no *Religion* ſo impure and bloody, which he would not diſhonor by his known ungraciouſneſs.

The Language ſpoken by theſe Princes, and their natural Subjects the *Mogores*, or *Mongul-Tartars*, is ſaid by ſome to be the *Turkiſh*. But I think rather that it is ſome Language near it, than the very ſame: And that the Language which they ſpeak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from wich the *Turks* (a *Scythian* people) differ but in *Dialect*, a ſprinkling of the *Perſian* intermixt amongſt it. A mixture not to be denied, in regard of their long dwelling in that Countrey, the entercouſe which their Subjects of thoſe parts have with theſe of *India*, and that the greateſt part of their Souldiers, Officers and Commanders, are ſupplied from thence.

Their Government is abſolute, if not *Tyrannical*, the *Great Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every mans eſtate which is worth the having: the perſons and purſes of his Subjects at his ſole diſpoſing, ſo that he may amaſs what treaſures, and raiſe what forces for the Wars his need requireth, or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Miniſters ſhall ſuggeſt unto him. Firſt, for his *Treaſures*, it is conceived that his *Revenue* doth amount yearly to Fifty Millions of Crowns, and there are reaſons to perſwade that it may be more. The Countrey very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the world, the *Impoſt* upon which is of infinite value, beſides the vaſt ſums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countreys whatſoever, which hold traffick here; their commodities not being to be parted with but for ready coyn. The whole Land being alſo his, he eſtates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himſelf, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleaſure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themſelves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbents death, to enter on the whole eſtate of the *Tenant* by the way of *Eſcheat*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him of courſe, the wife and children of the deceaſed being fairly dealt with, if he content himſelf with the perſonal eſtate, and leave the Land to them to begin anew. For inſtance, of thoſe huge ſums which in ſo rich a Countrey may be had this way, it is ſaid that when the *Vice Roy* of *Lahor* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three millons of Gold, beſides Silver, Jewels, Horſes, Elephants, Furniture and Goods, almoſt invaluable: And of one *Raga Gagnar*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the *Great Mongul* ſeized of his into his hands 3300 pound weight of Gold, beſides Plate and Jewels. Beſides theſe means of heaping treaſure, all the *Mines* of the Countrey are wholly his, and the *Preſents* given by all ſorts of *Suters*, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his preſence which comes empty handed. Finally, if *Badurius*, which was King of *Cambaia* onely, could bring into the field at once 500 Tun of gold and ſilver to pay his Army; and after the loſs of all that treaſuee, advanced upon the ſudden the ſum of 600000 Crowns, which he ſent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to ſuccor him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite *Treaſures* muſt we think this Prince to be maſter of, who hath more than four times the eſtate of the King of *Cambaia*, and far more trading now than in former times?

By the like Parallel we may conjecture ſomewhat at his *Forces* alſo. *Badurius* the *Cambaian* brought into the field againſt *Merhamed*, and the King of *Mandio*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horſe, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 pieces of braſs Ordnance, of which were four *Baſiliſks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen; and 500 Carts loaded with powder and ſhot. What then may we conceive of this Prince, who is Lord of ſo much a greater eſtate than he, but that his *Levies* may be raiſed proportionably to ſo great Dominions? But becauſe poſſibly *Badurius* did extend himſelf to the utmoſt of his power, and having loſt two Battels, was never able to recruit again, which no wiſe Prince would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any ſuch hazards on the loſs of a Battel, can in an inſtant raiſe 50000 Elephants, 300000 Horſe, and Foot proportionable; and yet have ſtock enough for an *After-game*, if that he ſhould chance to loſe the firſt. But it is ſeldom that he hath advanced to ſo high a *Muſter*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an Hundred thouſand men, and a thouſand Elephants for fight; though poſſibly of all ſorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in time of *Progreſs*, it is ſaid that his followers of all ſorts amount unto two hundred thouſand; and that his Tents do uſually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithſtanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire have not only been at a ſtand, ſince the death of *Echebar*; But the *Rasbooches* in *Cambaia*, the *Venazarari* in *Decan*, and other puiſſant Rebels in other parts of his Dominions, hold out ſtill againſt him, ſome of them being ſaid to command as much land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in a readineſs 20000 Horſe, & 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature or Divine Providence hath given to Empires, as to men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

2 *INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.*

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM is that part of the great *Continent* of *India*, which lieth on the further ſide of the River *Ganges*, from the ſpring or fountain of it, whereſoever it be, to the fall thereof into the ſea by the firſt and laſt mouth thereof, which is called *Antibali*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this ſide of that River. From hence extended Eaſtward as far as *China* and the *Oriental* Ocean, on other parts bounded as before.

The Countrey in thoſe elder times ſo renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it had the name of *The Silver Region*, and an other of *The Golden Cherſoneſe*: this laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Ophir* of *Solomon*, of which

which more hereafter. The People of the ſame nature and diſpoſition, in the elder times, as thoſe which did inhabit on the hither ſide of the *Ganges*: not ſo well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reaſon of the remoteneſs of their ſituation; nor ſo well diſcovered at the preſent. So that the beſt Accompt we ſhall be able to give of it, will not be ſo exact and punctual as of that before: with reference either to the eſtate hereof in the times of the Antients, or the affairs of it in theſe daies.

Mountains of moſt note in it, 1. *Bepyrrus*, 2. *Maandrus*, 3. *Semanthinus*; and 4 theſe called *Damaſi*, touched upon before, in our general diſcourſe of *India*. Out of which, and from other Springs, flow theſe following Rivers, 1. *Catabeda*, 2. *Bocoſanna*, 3. *Sadus*, 4. *Temala*, 5. *Beſynga*, 6. *Chriſſoras*, 7. *Polandas*, 8. *Attabas*, theſe three laſt in the part hereof called the *Golden Cherſoneſe*. 9. *Daonas*, and 10. *Dorias*, riſing out of the Mountains called *Damaſi*. Others there are whoſe names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now diſtinguiſhed, it is hard to ſay. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1. *Balanga*, 2. *Cirtatha*, 3. *Taſale*, 4. *Tagma*, and 5. *Malihura*, have the name of being the *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Nations. 6. *Triglyphon*, only honoured with the name of *Regia*; more memorable perhaps for the *white Crows*, and *bearded Hens*, which are ſaid to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat-Royal of ſome petit Prince. After theſe 1. *Sada*, on the banks of the River *Sadus*, 2. *Samba*, 3. *Sabara*, 4. *Coli*, 5. *Zaba*, and 6. *Sinda*, have the name of Cities. 7. *Baracura*, 8. *Berabonna*, 9. *Bebynga*, 10. *Tacola*, 11. *Sabana*, and 12. *Thibon baſtus*, are marked out for the moſt noted *Empories*, or Towns of trade; the memory of *Sabana* being ſtill preſerved in the Frith of *Sabor*, betwixt this *Cherſoneſe* and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by thoſe ſpecial Adjuncts, of which, 1. *Cocconagara*, and 2. *Balonca*, in the *Golden Cherſoneſe*; 3. *Rhandamarcotta*, in the Midlands, 4. *Pentapolis*, neer the mouth of *Ganges* called *Antibolum*; 5. *Agnigara*, neer the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6. *Corygaza*, one of the principal Towns of the *Maranda*, may be ſome of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Maranda* laſt ſpoken of, were the *Gangarides*, and *Gangani*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacorai*, bordering on the Mountain *Bepyrrus*; as the *Tilada* on *Maandrus*; and the *Animacha*, and *Caboca*, neer the hills called *Damaſi*. The *Baſada*, ſaid to be crooked, ſhort, and thick; but of a cheerful aſpect, and cleer complexion: of which compoſition alſo the inhabitants of the *Golden Cherſoneſe* were obſerved to be: the *Barra*, and *Cudura*, on the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; the *Leſtori*, a Theeviſh and Piratical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of ſo hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow. Theſe, with the reſt, too many to be here recited, the iſſue in moſt likelyhood of *Chavilah* and *Saba* the ſonnes of *Joktan*; of whom we find ſo many footſteps in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabaraco Sinu*, *Sabana Emporio*, *Sobanus Fluvio*; and in the Countreys now called *Ava*, and the Kingdom of *Cavelan*. Of any of their actions we find little in antient ſtories, or of the power of any of their former Kings: but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander*, that beyond the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Aggramenes* (the moſt powerfull King of all thoſe Countreys) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horſe, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to trie maſteries with him; yet his Souldiers were ſo terrified with it (remembring the hard bout which they had with *Porus*) that no perſwaſions could prevail with them to go further Eaſtward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unleſs the converſion of the *Indians* in the time of *Conſtantine*, may be applyed to thoſe on that ſide of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the later obſervations and diſcoveries of it, we find it (as moſt barbarous Countreys elſe till reduced to Order) diſmembred and ſubdivided into many eſtates, almoſt as many Realms as Cities, and diſtinct governments amongſt them, as Tribes and Nations. Moſt of them *Gentiles* in Religion, with whom the name of *Chriſt* and *Chriſtianity* not ſo much as heard of, till the comming of the *Jeſuites* thither; who have not onely obtained leave, but ſome invitations, for the promoting of the *Goſpel*. And for *Mahometaniſm*, though it had got ſome footing on the Sea-coaſts of the Golf of *Bengala*, as lying moſt convenient for the trade of the *Arabian* Merchants: yet on the North, and midland parts, and thoſe towards *China*, and the *Oriental* Seas, it was as little heard of as *Chriſtianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them; to which as many of the reſt as are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are thoſe of, 1. *Brama* or *Barma*, 2. *Cauchin-China*, 3. *Camboia*, 4. *Jangoma*, 5. *Siam*, and 6. *Pegu*.

BRAMA.

THe Kingdomes of *BRAMA* or *BARMA* have on the Weſt, the River *Ganges*; on the North, part of *Cathay* in *Tartarie*; on the Eaſt, *Cauchin-China*; and on the South, the Kingdomes of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramanes*, or *Brames*, poſſeſſed for many ages paſt of theſe North-Weſt Countreys. By the tranſpoſing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdomes of *Barma*.

The Countrey of theſe *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the neereſt of the *Peguan* Kingdomes for the ſpace of 150 Leagues, but far more from Weſt to Eaſt: watered with many great and remarkable Rivers, iſſuing from the Lake *Chiamay*, which though 600 miles from the Sea, and emptying it ſelf continually into ſo many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compaſs, and is nevertheleſs full of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and the commodiouſneſs of the Lake, the Countrey is wonderfully en-

enriched, as *Egypt* by the overflowings of *Nilus*. Which notwithstanding, there are in it many huge forrests, in the West especially, and therein many Lions, Tigers, Ounces, Serpents, and other Creatures of a mischievous and hurtfull Nature.

The whole Countrey containeth the Kingdomes of 1. *Calam*, 2. *Prom*, 3. *Melintay*, 4. *Miranda*, 5. *Bacam*, 6. *Tangu*, 7. *Ava*, and 8. *Brama*.

Of 1. *MELINTAY* and 2. *MIRANDA*, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the rest, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the first rising of his fortunes, becoming the foundation of his following greatness. Of 3. *BACAM*, it is said that it is plentifully enriched with Mines, both of Gold and Silver. In 4. *CAVILAN*, commonly and contractedly called *CALAM*, we find apparent foot-steps of the name of *Chavilah* the sonne of *Jocktan*. Of the rest more is to be said, not much.

5. *PROM*, though it be a little Kingdome, is exceeding populous, and stored with warlike people. Given by the second King of *Pegu* of the *Tanguan* Race, to a younger sonne; who being by his Father commanded to the siege of *Martaban* which had then revolted, not only did decline the service, but rebelled against him; and by the strength of this small Kingdome held it out three years. But seeing his Fathers fortunes in a manner desperate, he repented of his disobedience; and went unto his aid, with an Army of 50000 men of his Natural Subjects. Treacherously poysoned on the way by his chiefest Counseller, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6. *TANGU*, is the name of one of these *Bramian* Kingdoms, so called from the chief Town thereof: formerly subject with the rest to the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their several Vice-Royes. One of which taking his advantage of the warres between the Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to set up for himself, and husbanded his affairs so well, that he became sole Lord of these *Bramian* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the rest in this part of *India*. Not long enjoyed by his successor, when dispossessed and slain by one whom he married to his Sister, and made Governour of this very Province. In which he bore himself so stoutly, that being sent for by his King to aid him against some of his Rebels, and to bring all the inhabitants of the Country with him; he answered that he would send one half; to send all, unreasonable. Incensed with which denial the King armed against him; but he put the Leaders to the sword, and seized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and dispairing of reconcilement, he took upon himself the title of King of *Tangu*; and to secure himself therein, joined with the King of *Arrachan* against his Soveraign, whom he most barbarously slew (after he had put himself into his hands) with his wife and children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of his villany, subdued not long after, with the rest of these *Indian* Princes, by the King of *Barma*; of which more hereafter.

7. *AVA*, another of these Kingdoms, and one of the plantations of *Chavilah* also, is liberally furnished with all things necessary for the life of man. It affordeth also store of *Rubies*, which they dig out of the Mountains; a certain creature which breeds *Musk*, together with great plenty of horse and Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*, which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built, issuing out of the Lake of *Chiamay*, and communicates the same to the whole Province. Subject for many ages past to the Kings of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is said; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling against the sonne and successour of his Benefactor, and by him slain in single Combat, this Kingdome was conferred on a sonne of the Conqueror. A Prince of more vertue than his brother, and one which grew at last unto so great power, that in the bustles or combustions of the Kingdome of *Pegu*, he surprised or forced the Fort of *Siriangh*, formerly given unto the *Portugals* by the King of *Arrachan*, slew all the Souldiers, and spitted *Philip de Brito*, who commanded in it. After which, gathering together the dispersed *Peguans*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himself a good bargain by it, if the sudden coming of the King of *Barma*, had not spoiled his markets.

8. *BRAMA* or *BARMA*, the most Southern of these *Bramian* kingdomes, the king whereof was *Fendatarie* to the kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no accompt when the *Portugals* came first acquainted with *India*, not in many years after; now of most renown. For sitting still when all the rest of their neighbours were embroiled in wars, they gathered so much power and strength, that in the end, one of the later kings hereof observing how the forces of his neighbouring Princes were consumed, and their treasures wasted; levyed an Army of 300000 fighting men, 40000 Elephants, with all things suitable. And with this power subdued the kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odia*, (the two chief Cities of these parts) invaded the kingdome of *Siam*, and possessed himself of it; making in little time all the lesser Princes to become his *Tributaries*, as they still continue.

CAUCHIN-CHINA.

CAUCHIN-CHINA is bounded on the West, with the Kingdomes of *Brama*; on the East, with the Great Realm of *China*; on the North, extending towards *Tartary*; and on the South, bordering on *Camboya*.

The Countrey aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great store of silks, of which the Inhabitants make *Taffata*, and other stuffes. It affordeth also plenty of *Porcellane* Earth, which being made into Cups, Dishes, and other Utensils of household, is sold by the name of *China-ware*: well counterfeited of late amongst us, by putting a white crust on our *Potters* earth, as neat for use and shew as the naturall *China*.

The

The people very ſtout and warlike, eſpecially for Foot-ſervice, though they have many horſes here, and thoſe fit for warre. Well-practiſed on their *Peeces* alſo, on which they ſpend great ſtore of powder, but not ſo much in warre, as in ſports and triumphs: yet making much more than they ſpend, the earth in ſome parts yielding very fit *materials* for that commodity. Trained up to *Manufactures*, eſpecially to the making of Powder, Silks, and *Porcellane*, which they ſell to the *Chineſe*. *Idolaters*, for the moſt part, as are thoſe of *China*, whoſe Characters and language they alſo uſe: but ſo that there appear ſome inclinations unto *Chriſtianity*, in many of them, who have erected many *Croſſes*, and do admit the pictures of the *Bleſſed Virgin*, and the finall judgement. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progreſs in the *Goſpel*, if they had met with better Teachers than theſe *Laymens* books.

The chief City hereof is called *Cauchin-China* by the name of the Province, ſituate on a River coming out of *China*; and paſſing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Country divided into three Provinces, and as many Kings, over which one *Paramount*: but he and they the Tributaries of the King of *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Iland called *Ainao*, ten miles from the land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fiſhing for *Pearls* The onely Province of the *Indies*, which is wholly ſubject to the power of a forein Prince; the *Portugals* holding in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces.

3 CAMBOIA.

CAMBOIA is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin-China*; on the East and South, with the Ocean; on the Weſt, with parts of the Kingdome of *Siam*, and the Realms of *Jangoma*. So called from *Camboia* the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Camboia* ſpecially ſo called.

1. CHAMPA, the Northern part hereof bordereth *Cauchin-China*, and is liberally provided of all neceſſaries: beſides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in ſilver, much uſed in *Barbes*, and at the funeralls of great perſons. This a diſtinct kingdome of it ſelf, but ſubject with the reſt to the king of *Barma*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Country, is ſituate neer the Sea-ſide, and of very good trafick.

2. CAMBOIA ſpecially ſo called, lieth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Country, well ſtored with Elephants and *Rhinocerots*, which laſt the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth alſo great plenty of a ſweet-wood, which they call *Calumba*, as precious and as much eſteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the ſame, or ſome *Species* of it as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Fleſh, and Fiſh; well-watred with the River *Mecon* iſſuing out of *China*, & having received many leſſer ſtreams falleth firſt into a great Lake of 200 miles compaſs, and thence into the *Indian* Ocean, making betwixt the *Lake* and that an hundred Ilands. By the overflowings of this River the whole Country is enriched (as *Egypt* by the like overflowings of *Nilus*): the inhabitants at thoſe times betaking themſelves to their upper Rooms, and paſſing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be ſtrong and warlike, though more enclined to merchandiſe and navigation than to deeds of Arms. *Idolaters* of the worſt kind, eſteeming Men and Beaſts of a like condition in regard of any future judgement; of late beginning to ſet up, and adore the *Croſs*, which is (it ſeems) the firſt *Principle* of *Religion*, in which the *Friers* are wont to inſtruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet, by theſe new Teachers, from burning the women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning their Nobles with the King, uſed onely here; but voluntarily to expreſs their loves, not upon conſtraint.

The chief Towns of it, 1. *Camboia*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia*, and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Situate on the River *Mecon* before deſtroyed: where it hath its fall into the Sea; well traded, as the Staple for all this Country, the commodities whereof are brought hither, and here ſold to the Merchant. 2. *Cudarmuch*, twelve league from *Camboia*, on the ſame River alſo. 3. *Coul*, on the Sea-ſide in the very South-weſt Angle of all the Country. The Kings whereof, once abſolute, and at their own diſpoſing, till invaded by a vaſt Army of the neighbouring *Laos*; in which their King being ſlain, and his forces weakned, his ſonne and Succeſſor was conſtrained to become a *Vaſſal* to the crown of *Siam*. But fearing the loſs of his eſtate, when that Kingdom was made ſubject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598. he applied himſelf unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninſula* (part of his dominions) extending three leagues into the Sea; and ſent to the *Jeſuites* for ſome of their *Society* to live and preach amongſt his people. Not able for all theſe honeſt Policies to preſerve himſelf from being made a *Fendatary* of the King of *Barma*.

4 JANGOMA.

JANGOMA or the Country of the LAOS, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Camboia* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Menon*; on the Weſt, with the River of *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdome; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Brama*.

It took this name from *Jangoma* the chief province of it, the other two (for here be three of them in all) being thoſe of *Lovea*, and *Curroy*. All of them joyned together called the Country of the *Laos*, by the name of the people, a mighty Nation and a ſtout, by Religion *Gentiles*, naked from the middle upwards, and truſſing up their hair like a cap. Their Country very rich and levell, but very ill-neighboured by the *Gueo-*

ns

ri (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name of *Gangigu*) who poſſeſs the mountains: whence falling in great companies to hunt for men whom they kill and eat, they commit cruel butcheries amongſt them. Inſomuch as this people, not able to defend themſelves againſt their fury, or rather wanting good leaders to conduct and order them (for it is ſaid that they can make a million of men) were fain to put themſelves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no further than the humour took them.

Towns they have none of any note, except thoſe three which give name to the ſeverall Provinces; and thoſe of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the moſt part live on the banks of their Rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber; or elſe upon the Rivers in boats and ſhallops, as the *Tartarians* of the Deſarts in their Carts or wheel-houſes. One of their Rivers (commonly called the River of *Laos*) ſaid to extend 400 Leagues within the land, as far as *Tartary*, and *China*; and from *July* to *September* to invert its courſe, and flow back ſtrongly toward its fountain. Not governed by any certain rule or order, till they ſubmitted to the Patronage of the king of *Siam*; and then no oftner than they liſted: though for their ſakes, that king engaged himſelf in a war againſt the *Cannibals*, their moſt deadly enemies, accompanyed with 25000 foot, 20000 Horſe, and 10000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of thoſe *Cannibals* (of whom otherwiſe they had been devoured) in the year 1578 they deſcended the River in great multitudes, to the number of 200000, and fell into the Realm of *Camboia*. But they made an unproſperous adventure of it. For though the king of *Camboia* loſt his life in the battel, ye he gave them ſuch a fatal blow, that they were almoſt all ſlain, drowned, or captived in the fight. Weakned wherewith they became an eaſie prey to the *Vice-Roy* of *Tangu*, when he firſt made himſelf ſole Maſter of this part of *India*. Who giving to his brother the kingdome of *Ava*, and leaving to his eldeſt ſonne the kingdome of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignry over all the reſt, conferred this Countrey, with the title of king of *Jangoma*, on a younger Sonne. But he, begotten on a daughter of the king of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole *Indian* Empire, was eaſily perſwaded by the *Talapoies*, (ſo they call their Prieſts) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his claim by the kings of *Arracan* and *Tangu*, by whom that king was ſlain, and his kingdome waſted. How he ſped afterwards I find not. But probable it is, that he ſubmitted with the reſt to the king of *Barma*.

5. *SIAM.*

SIAM, is bounded on the North, with *Jangoma*, and part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, ſave that it toucheth on the Eaſt, with a part of *Camboia*, and on the Weſt, with a point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all thoſe kingdomes which paſs under this name, as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Countrey of greater length than breadth, ſtretcheth it ſelf South-wards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninſula* or *Deny-Iland*, called antiently *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe*: one of the five famous *Cherſoneſes* or *Peninſulaes* of the elder writers; the other four being *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Cherſoneſe* neer *Propontis*, the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in the *Euxine*, and the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* in the North of *Germany*, now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the *Golden*, ſuper-added to it, from its plenty of Gold, for which much celebrated by the Antients, both *Greeks*, and *Romans* (and therefore not improbably thought by ſome to be *Solomons Ophir*) ſtil famous with the reſt of the Countries of the kingdome of *Siam*, for abundance of Gold, Silver, Tinn, and other metals; great quantity of Pepper ſent yearly thence, with ſtore of Elephants, and horſes: the whole Countrey very fat, and fertile, well ſtored with Rice, Corn, Graſs, and all other neceſſaries.

The people generally much addicted to pleaſures, if not to Luxury; delighted much with Muſick and rich apparel; and ſuch as ſtand much upon their honour. For their inſtruction in good letters they have *publick Schools*, where their own Lawes, and the myſteries of their own religion, are taught them in their natural Language; all other Sciences in ſtrange tongues underſtood by none but by the learned. To tillage they can frame themſelves, and are painful in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanicall* Arts, which they put over to their *Slaves*. In Religion for the moſt part Gentiles, worſhiping the four Elements amongſt other Gods; to each of which as they are ſeverally affected, ſo are their bodies to be diſpoſed of: either burnt, buried, hanged, or drowned, after their deceaſe; as in their lives they were moſt devoted to the fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some Chriſtians here alſo in and about the parts poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*; but more *Mahometans*: who poſſeſſing two hundred Leagues of the Sea-Coaſts of this Countrey, have planted that religion in moſt part of the Countrey now by them poſſeſſed.

It containeth in it many kingdomes, ſome of little note; thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1. *Malaca*, 2. *Patane*, 3. *Jor*, 4. *Muanay*, and 5. *Siam*, properly and ſpecially ſo called. Of which *Malaca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, *Jor* and *Patane* are poſſeſſed by the *Arabians* or *Saracens*; the other two have followed the fortunes of the kings of *Siam*.

1. The kingdome of *MALACA* taketh up the South part of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Ptolomy* calleth *Malanatin*, in the extreme South-point hereof neer unto *Sabana*, then a noted *Emporie*, for the ſpace of 270 miles. So called from *Malaca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Muſicana*, or built very neer it, from whence this Tract is called by *Strabo*, *Muſicani terra*. The City ſeated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here ſaid to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflowings whereof, and the neerneſs of it to the *Line* (being but two degrees to the North) the Air hereof, and all the territory belonging to it, is very un-

unwholſome; and for that cauſe the Countrey but meanly populous. In compaſs it is ſaid to be 20 miles, of great wealth, becauſe of almoſt infinite trading; for Spices, *Unguents*, Gold, Silver, Pearls, and pretious Stones, the moſt noted *Emporie* of the Eaſt. Inſomuch that is ſaid by *Ludovico Barthema*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more ſhips than any one City in the world, more by far ſince the comming of the *Portugals* to it, than it was before. The People (as in all this tract) of an Aſh-colour, with long hair hanging over their faces; bloody and murderous, ſpecially when they meet one another in the Night. Few other Towns of any note in a place ſo unhealthy, except 2. *Sincapura*, ſituate Eaſt of *Malaca*, neer the Promontory of old called *Magnum*; ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Zaba* of *Ptolomy*; and that more probably than that it ſhould be his *Palura*, as *Maginus* would have it; *Palura* being a City of the *Hither India*, and different at the leaſt 20 degrees of *Longitude* from any part of this *Cherſoneſe*. But whatſoever it was called in the former times, it was in theſe latter ages the mother of *Malaca*; the greateſt part of the Trade and people being removed from thence to this newer foundation: before which time it was the beſt frequented *Emporie* in theſe parts of the Eaſt. 3. *Palo Zambilin*, 120 miles on the Weſt of *Malaca*, from whence to *Sincapura*, coaſting about the Southern Cape (now called *Cape Liampo*) we have a Sea-ſhore of 270 miles, as before was ſaid. No other habitation of any reckoning, but a few ſheds upon the ſhore for the uſe of Fiſher-men, and ſome ſcattered Villages in the land: the People dwelling moſt on Trees for fear of Tigers.

This Tract in former times poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1258 became a kingdome of it ſelf; founded by *Paramiſera*, and ſome other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the tyranny of their own king, came into this Country, where they were lovingly received by *Sangeſinga*, then reigning under the *Siamite*, in *Sincapura*. Him they perfidiouſly ſlew, and inveſted *Paramiſera* in his Dominion. Outed of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to ſeek a new dwelling, and after two or three Removes, fell upon the place where *Malaca* now ſtandeth, which City, pleaſed with the commodiouſneſs of the ſituation, he is ſaid to have built. The trade of *Sincapura* in ſhort time removed hither alſo, which ſo increaſed the wealth and power of the Kings hereof, that joyning with the *Moores* who began to plant themſelves on the ſhores adjoyning, and receiving withall the Law of *Mahomet*, they began to caſt off all ſubjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the ſonne and Succeſſor of *Paramiſera* had ſubmitted his new-raiſed kingdom, and became their *Homager*. Incenſed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500 ſent out a Navy of 200 Sail to diſtreſs it by Sea, and an Army of 30000 men and 400 Elephants to beſiege it by land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindred by Tempeſts, and the inſolencies of ſome of his Souldiers, the *Portugals*, in the year 1511, under the conduct of *Albuquerque* had poſſeſſed themſelves of it, who built there a Fortreſs and a Church. And though *Alodinus* the ſonne of the expelled King (whoſe name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Eſtate, and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the kings of *Jor* and *Achen* (two neighbouring Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have ſeverally and ſucceſſively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they ſtill keep it in defiance of all oppoſition which hath been hitherto made againſt them.

2. North unto that of *Malaca* lieth the kingdome of *JOR*, *IOR*, or *IOHOR*; ſo called of *Jor*, or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the moſt part by *Moores*, or *Saracens*, *Mahometaniſm* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Country alſo. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of ſo much power, that joining his Land-forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he beſieged *Malaca*, and built a Royall Fort before it: in which, when taken by *Paul de Lima*, by the defeat of this king, were found 900 pieces of braſs Ordnance. After this, picking a quarrel with the king of *Pahan*, he burnt his houſes, barns, proviſions, and the Suburbs of the City it ſelf: but in the courſe of his affairs, was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Iſle of *Sumatra*) his old confederate, who after 29 daies ſiege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this king or kingdom, I am not able to reſolve. In former times it did acknowlege him of *Siam* for the *Lord* in *chief*.

3. More North-ward yet lieth the kingdome of *PATANE*, denominated from *Patane* the chief City of it: but different from *Patane*, in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *York-ſhire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* from *Holland* in *Lincoln-ſhire*, as hath been fully ſhewn before. The City made of wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and compoſed together: the *Meſquit* onely (moſt of the people being *Mahometans*) is built of brick. The *Chinois* make a great part of the Inhabitants of it, inſomuch that in this ſmall City there are ſpoke three languages, viz. the *Chineſe*, uſed by that people, the *Malayan* (or language of *Malaca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this ſmall Crown is *Feudatary*. Built of ſuch light ſtuff and combuſtible matter, it muſt needs be in great danger of fire; and was moſt miſerably burnt in the year 1613 by ſome *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of ſome of their Fellows: at which time the whole City was conſumed with fire the *Meſquit*, the Queens Court, and ſome few houſes, excepted onely. The Country governed of late years by Queens, who have been very kind to the *Engliſh*, and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories* in *Patane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late Queen a little before that diſmall fire, offended with the King of *Pan* or *Pahan*, who had maried her Siſter, and reigned in a little Iland not farre off, ſhe ſent againſt him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 men: by which compelled to correſpond with her deſires, he brought his Queen and her children with him to make up the breach.

4. The Kingdom of *SIAM*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, is ſituate on the main-land (the reſt before deſcribed being in the *Cherſoneſe*), betwixt *Camboia* on the Eaſt, *Pegu* on the Weſt, the kingdome of *Muantay* on the North, and the main Ocean on the South. The chief Cities of it, 1. *Socotai*, memorable for a temple made wholly of mettall, 80. ſpans in height, raiſed by one of the Kings; it being the

the cuſtome of this Country, that every king at his firſt coming to the Crown, is to build a *Temple* which he adorneth with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2. *Quedoa*, renowned for the beſt Pepper, and for that cauſe very much frequented by forreign Merchants. 3. *Tavay*, upon the Sea-coaſt where it joineth to *Pegu*. Whence meaſuring along the ſhores till we come to *Champa* before mentioned; being all within the Dominions of the king of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Cherſoneſe* into this Accompt) we have a Seacoaſt of the length of 600 Leagues. 4. *Lugor*, upon the ſea-ſide alſo, neer that little *Iſthmus*, which joineth the *Cherſoneſe* to the land; from whence to *Malaca* is 600 miles ſail all along the coaſt. 5. *Calantan*, the head City of a little kingdome but ſubject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6. *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the kingdome, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Menam*, for trade and merchandiſe. So populous and frequented by forreign nations, that beſides the natives here are ſaid to be thirty thouſand houſholds of *Arabians*. The Houſes of it high built, by reaſon of the *Annual* deluge, during which time they live in the Upper rooms; and unto every houſe a boat for the uſe of the familie. Thoſe of the poorer ſort dwell in little ſheds made of reed and timber; which they remove from place to place for the beſt convenience of their markets. And yet ſo ſtrong that being beſiged by the *Tanguan* Conqueror, then king of *Pegu*, *Anno* 1567. with an Army of fourteen hundred thouſand fighting men, for the ſpace of 20 moneths together, it reſolutely held good againſt him: not gained at laſt by force but treaſon, one of the Gates being ſet open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Chriſtianity, but hitherto ſo ill inſtructed in the principles of it, that they maintain amongſt many other ſtrange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years (from what time I know not) the world ſhall be conſumed with fire, and that under the aſhes of it ſhall remain two egs, out of which ſhall come one man and one woman, who ſhall people the world anew.

5. *MUANTAY* the laſt of theſe Kingdomes, lieth betwixt *Jangoma* and *Siam*: memorable for nothing more then the City of *Odia*, or *Udia*, the principal of all the Kingdomes of *Siam*, and the uſual reſidence of thoſe Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Caipumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the warres, and in continual readineſs for preſent ſervice. For though this King be Lord of nine ſeveral Kingdomes, yet he uſeth none of them in his wars but the naturall *Siamites*, and thoſe of this City and the reſt of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is ſaid that for the uſe of this City only (being ſeated like *Venice* upon many little Ilands not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 skiffes, and ſhallops; ſerving to waft the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great ſtrength, and almoſt impregnable. But being beleagured by the *Tanguan* or *Bramian* Conquerour with ten hundred thouſand fighting men (an Army bigge enough to have buryed a greater City than this; if every man had but caſt a ſhovell full of earth upon it) it was wonne at laſt.

The Government of theſe kings of *Siam*, was abſolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being ſole Lord of all the land in his kingdomes, which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to Huſbandmen, during life or pleaſure, but never paſſed over unto any, the right of Inheritance. And theſe he grants unto his Subjects, beſides rents in money, upon condition to maintain a determinate number of horſe, Foot, and Elephants: thereby inabled without further charge unto the Suhject to leavy 20000 Horſe, and 250000 Foot for preſent ſervice; beſides far greater numbers out of the reſidue of his people, if occaſion be. And for his ordinary *Guard* he was ſaid to keep 6000 Souldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which beaſts he is reported to have 30000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the war. By reaſon of ſo great a power he became Maſter of the Realms of *Camboia*, and *Champa*; held thoſe of *Malaca*, *Jor*, *Pahan*, and *Patane*, as his Vaſſals and Tributaries with that of *Jangoma* and the *Laos*, under his protection. But when the fatal time was come; and that his City of *Siam* was betrayed to the king of *Pegu*, he poiſoned himſelf upon the newes; his ſonne becoming *Tributary* to the *Peguan* Victor. This ſonne of his; too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a ſonne of the *Peguan*, a vicious and tyrannical King, (degenerating from the gallantries of ſo worthy a Father) by whom he was beſieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting men. Unable to reſiſt this Army, if he had preſently declared ſuch a reſolution, he entertained the king with Treaties, and promiſes of delivering the City to him, till the third moneth after, (which was *March*) when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Countrey for 120 miles about: by which ſudden and violent inundation, and the ſword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there periſhed all of this great Army except 70 thouſand. After this blow, the conquering *Siamite Anno* 1600 beſieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more annon: and dying in the year 1605. left his eſtate unto his Brother. Whoſe ſonne ſucceeding, ſettled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *Engliſh* Merchants *Anno* 1612. and was in a fair way of obtaining the ſoveraignty of *Pegu*, then deſtroyed and waſted; if the violent and unreſiſtable coming of the king of *Barma* had not croſſed him in it; to whom now ſubject with the reſt of the *Indian* Princes on that ſide of the River.

6. *PEGU.*

PEGU is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Jangoma*, and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the kingdomes of *Brama*; on the Weſt and South, with the kingdome and Golf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City, as that is by the name of the River upon which it ſtandeth. Divided commonly into the kingdoms and eſtates of 1. *Verma*, 2. *Macin*, 3. *Orrachan*, 4. *Martavan*, and 5. *Pegu* ſpecially ſo called.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a ſmall kingdome bordering upon *Bengala*, and ſo denominated from *Verma*, the chief Town thereof. A kingdome which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moores* and *Mahometans*, which can be ſaid of no other of theſe *Indian* kingdoms.

The people black, naked above the Waſte, and covered beneath it onely with a veil of Cotton: in matter of Religion *Gentiles*, and in warre right valiant. This laſt apparent by the long and frequent warres which they had with the *Peguans*: to whom made Tributary in concluſion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACIN*, ſo called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of theſe *Peguan* kingdoms. Of ſmall eſteem but for the great quantity of the ſweet-wood by the *Latines* called *Lignum vitæ*, by the natives *Calamba*, ſo much in uſe for Funeralls and Bathes, (as was ſaid before;) held alſo by the *Indians* for a Sovereign and unparallell'd *Medicine* againſt many dangerous diſeaſes; great quantities whereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchant. One of the firſt kingdoms which was conquered by the king of *Barma*, (upon whom it bordereth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORRACHAN* or *Arrachan*, lieth on the Weſt of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*, environed round with mountains and impaſſable woods. Chief Towns thereof, 1. *Diaga*, taken and deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the king of *Arrachan*. Anno 1608. 2. *Sundiva*, ſituate in an Iland unto which it gives name, ſix leagues off from the continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, Anno 1602. and from them taken by this king about two years after, and made a member of his kingdom. The Iland 30 leagues in compaſs, very ſtrong, fruitfull, and the Town well fortified. 3. *Arrachan*, the head City, which gives name to all, diſtant from the Sea 45 miles, but ſeated on a large and capacious River. The king and kingdom of no note, till the ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the deſolation of which State the king hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, beſieged the ſecond *Tanguan* king in the Caſtle of *Macao*; and had betwixt them the whole pillage of that wealthy City, together with the poſſeſſion of the beſt Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Arrachan* in triumph, leading with him the *white Elephant* of the king of *Pegu*, ſumptuouſly adorned; the brother and two ſonnes of the *Peguan* following in the *Pageant*. A ſolemn and magnificent entry. The better to aſſure himſelf of his new dominions, this king beſtowed upon the *Portugals* the fort of *Siriangh*, on the River of *Pegu*. For which favour ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taken his ſonne, and put him to a grievous ranſom, they brake out into open warres. In the purſuit whereof, after many loſſes, the king recovered from them the Iſle of *Sundiva*, and manning out a Fleet of 1200 ſail (of which 75 were of ſo great burden as to carry every one, twelve peeces of Ordnance) and in that fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 greater peeces, beſieged the Fortreſs; aſſiſted in that action alſo by the king of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his deſign, yet like enough he had prevented the king of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613 as before is ſaid, had he not been outed in the mean time of his own kingdom, by the king of *Barma*: of whoſe great riſe, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Arrachan*, were the firſt foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richeſt of theſe kingdoms, lieth South to *Arrachan*, a little turning towards the Weſt. The ſoyl ſo fertile that it yieldeth three Harveſts in a year, and ſent annually 15 ſhips to *Cochin*, and as many to *Malaca*, laden with Rice. Rich alſo in Mines of Iron, lead, ſteel, braſs, ſilver, gold, and *Rubies*: and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forreſts well-ſtored with Harts, Bores, and *Buffoles*, ſtore of Pines and Palms: the woods with *Sugar-canes*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and ſhrubs either *Medicinal* or *odoriferous*. The principall City of it called alſo *Martavan*, ſituate on an Haven open at all times of the year, and not choked with ſands, as uſually other Havens are in the *Indian winter*: of great trading, much ſplendour, and a temperate air. Faithfull unto the laſt to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were ſubject, and in that conſtancy they twice repulſed the king of *Siam* who then had conquered the moſt part of the Kingdome of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* cauſed two of his cowardly Captains to be caſt into a chaldron of ſcalding oyl; and at the third aſſault became maſter of it. *Bannalaius* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects, being compelled to hide themſelves in the woods and Deſarts.

5. *PEGU*, the moſt predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Croſcent* or half-moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on that coaſt from *Negrais* unto *Tavan* the next Town of *Siam*, for the ſpace of three hundred miles, and upwards; but little leſs in breadth, if not quite as much. So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs thorow the middeſt of it, and gives this name alſo unto *Pegu* the moſt noted City.

The Soyl hereof exceeding fruitfull, by reaſon of the annuall overflowings of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth alſo many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make wax) ſtore of *Elephants*, and abundance of Parats which ſpeak plainer, and are much fairer than in any place elſe.

The people of a mean ſtature, ſomewhat corpulent, and naturally beardleſs. If any ſtragling hair thruſt forth, they alwayes carry Pinſers with them, to pull them out. Nimble and ſtrong, but yet not very fit for warre; ſpending too much of their ſtrength in the love of women, to which moſt paſſionably addicted. They black their teeth, becauſe they ſay that dogs teeth be white: and wear no cloths but on their heads and about their nakedneſs. Said by the *Jews* to be deſcended from ſome of the *Tribes* of *Iſrael* confined hither by *Solomon*: but by the *Peguins* themſelves, to be begotten of a dog and a *China woman*, which were

were ſaved here upon a Shipwrack. By *Religion* for the moſt part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every world: more *Orthodox* in aſſigning after this life according to the merits of the party deceaſed, one place of *Torments*, and another of *Delights* and pleaſures, if they had not added a third alſo for *ſatisfaction*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdome, 1. *Coſmi*, ſeated in a Territory full of Woods, as thoſe Woods of Tigers, Wild Bores, Apes, and Parats: the houſes made of *Canes*, which ſerve here for timber, (ſome of them being as bigge as Hogs-Heads) covered over with thatch. 2. *Joccabel*, a great City, on the River *Pegu*. 3. *Dian*, on the ſame River alſo, where they make Barks or Veſſels as big as *Galeaſſes*; which ſerve both for trade and habitation. 4. *Coilan*, a City four-ſquare, and each ſquare four miles. 5. *Lunagon*, a pleaſant Town, and full of *Palm*-trees. 6. *Dala*, in which were the Kings Stables for his ordinary Elephants: his four *White Elephants* (for ſo many he had) being alwaies kept about the Court, not ſeen abroad but in great ſolemnities, when trapped in furnitures of Gold, and no leſs honoured by the people, than the King himſelf: called therefore King of the *White Elephant* by the neighbouring Princes. 7. *Silvanpeda*, where many victualling Barkes are made to ſerve for dwelling on the Sea. 8. *Meccao*, where they uſe to unload ſuch goods as are to paſs by Land to *Pegu*. Neighboured by the ſtrongeſt Caſtle in all this Kingdome, and therefore choſen by the King for his place of Retreat, when diſtreſſed by the Kings of *Arrachan*, and *Tangu*. To the laſt of which making choice to yield up his perſon, with his Wife and Children, becauſe he had maryed him to his Siſter, he was by him perfidiouſly and baſely murdered. 9 *Siriangh*, a ſtrong peece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arrachan* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Britto*, in the year one thouſand ſix hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good againſt him, and the King of *Tangu* his Aſſociate, for the ſpace of thirteen years together; was at laſt forced to yield himſelf priſoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a ſpit. 10. *Pegu*, the glory of theſe parts, great, ſtrong, and beautifull; Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old*, inhabited by Merchants, the *New*, by the King and his Nobility. The houſes made of wood, but covered with Tiles; a *Coco-Tree* before every houſe, yielding a comfortable ſhade, and a pleaſant ſhew. The Steetes as ſtrait as any line, and ſo broad that ten or twelve men may ride abreſt in the narroweſt of them. In figure ſquare, each ſquare having five Gates, beſides many Turrets; all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with walls of ſtone, environed on all ſides with great Ditches; and in the middeſt the Royall Palace, walled and ditched about, moſt ſumptuouſly gilded; but ſpecially the Temple or *Idol-chapel*, the walls whereof were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleaſure as the world could yield: his empire not extending only over theſe kingdoms now deſcribed, but over all the Provinces or kingdoms of the *Bramanes* alſo; which he governed by his ſeverall *Vice-Roys*, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* kings. A happineſs too great to continue long. For in the year 1567. the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* king of *Tangu*, by the aid of his faction, and reputation of his vertues, entered into rebellion, and ſlaying the Nobles of the Land, uſurped that kingdome. After this he ſubdued the Cities and kingdoms of *Calam*, *Melintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* or *Bramanes*; and therfore taking to himſelf the title of king of *Brama*, becauſe his fame and fortunes took their riſe from his victories over them. Following the courſe of his Succeſſes, he firſt aſſailed the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulſed with loſs. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleaguered *Pegu*, and ſubdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the ſiege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying he gave the kingdome of *Ava* unto one of his Brothers; that of *Prom* to one of his grandſonnes; the kingdome of *Jangoma* to a younger ſonne, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, to his eldeſt ſonne, a Prince of vicious and tyrannical nature; and not more cruell to his ſubjects, than they diſobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both ſides, the people to defend their liberty, the King to preſerve his Royalty. During theſe civill diſcords, the titulary king of *Siam*, whoſe late overthrow was not yet fully digeſted, came violently into the Countrey of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Graſs, and Fruits; killing man, woman, and child, and having ſatisfyed his Fury, returned to his home. This ſpoil of the fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unſupportable famine, which conſumed all the inhabitants of this flouriſhing kingdome, except ſuch whom the *Grantries* of the City of *Pegu* preſerved, *Anno* 1598. For here the Fathers devoured their Children, the ſtronger preyed upon the weaker; not only devouring their more fleſhy parts, but their entrails alſo: nay they broke up the skulls of ſuch as they had ſlain, and ſucked out their brains. This calamity incited another Tributary Prince of *Tangu*, to make his beſt advantage out of his neighbours affliction; though made his Brother-in-Law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For juſtly fearing the diſpleaſure of his angry Prince, to whoſe aid he had refuſed to come, when ſent for by him, he joined himſelf with the king of *Arrachan*, beſieged his Lord and Soveraign in the Fort of *Meccao*. Brought to extremities, the unfortunate Prince, thought beſt to put himſelf into the hands of his brother of *Tangu*; who aſſaulted and entred *Pegu*, where he found as much treaſure as 600 Elephants, and as many horſes, could conveniently carry away. This havock being made, he villanouſly murdered the King, Queen and their Children, and departed; leaving the gleaning of his ſpoil to the King of *Arrachan*: who, *Anno* 1600, was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Barma* having with an Army of an hundred thouſand fighting men, and four-

ty thousand Elephants, subdued the Kingdomes of *Macin*, and *Arracan*, followed the currents of his Victories; conquered *Siam*, drove the king thereof from *PEGU*, where he hath built a most Magnificent Palace: and is now the sole Monarch of the twelve Kingdomes of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-settled Estate, we cannot yet understand: what his *Revenues* are, what his Government, what his Forces. Merchants, whose inquisitiveness into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full satisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statists* are not permitted to observe; and such of the Natives as could give us the most light, are not suffered to travell. Onely we may conjecture by the great Wealth of those several Princes, and the vast Armies by them raised in their severall Territories, that his *Annual Revenues*, *Casualties*, and united *Forces* must be almost infinite.

And so much for
INDIA.

OF

OF THE ORIEN-TAL ILANDS.

THE *ORIENTAL ILANDS*, ſo called from their ſituation in the *Oriental* or Eaſtern Seas, may be divided into the Ilands of 1. *Japan*, 2. the *Philippinæ*, 3. the Iſles of *Bantam*, 4. the *Moluccoes*, 5. thoſe called *Sindæ*, or the *Celebes*, 6. *Javi*, 7. *Borneo*, 8. *Sumatra*, 9. *Ceilan*, and 10. certain others of leſs note.

1. *JAPAN.*

JAPAN is an aggregate body of many Ilands, ſeparated by ſmall *Gulfs*, Streights, and turnings of the Sea, but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be 66. in all; others aſcribe that number to ſo many Kingdoms into which theſe Ilands (be they in number more or leſs) uſe to be divided. But whatſoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find) there are three only of accompt, to which the ſeverall petit Kingdoms are now reduced: that is to ſay, 1. *Japin* ſpecially ſo called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms; of which 26 are under the King of *Meaco*, 12 under the King of *Amagunce*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferior note. II. *Ximo*, which containeth in it nine Realms, the principall whereof are thoſe of *Bungo* and *Figen*. III. *Xicoum*, which comprehendeth four onely of theſe petit *Signeuries*.

JAPAN, the chief of all theſe Ilands, to which the reſidue may be accompted of but as *Appurtenances*, is ſituate over againſt the ſtreights of *Anian*, towards which it looketh to the North: diſtant from *New Spain* on the Eaſt 150 leagues, or 450 *Engliſh* miles; and 60 leagues from *Cantan* a Province of *China*, oppoſite to it on the Weſt. On the South it hath the vaſt Ocean, and thoſe infinite ſholes of Ilands which are called the *Phillippinæ*, and the Iſles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from Weſt to the Eaſt 200 leagues, but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in ſome places not above ten leagues over, and in the broadeſt parts but thirty.

The Country mountainous and barren, but of a very healthy air, if not too much ſubject unto cold, yet in ſome places they have Wheat ripe in the moneth of *May*; but their Rice, which is their principall ſuſtenance, they gather not before *September*. The ſurface of the Earth, clothed with woods and forreſts, in which ſome *Cedars* of ſo tall and large a body, that one of them onely is ſufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it ſtored with divers metals, and amongſt others with ſuch inexhauſible mines of gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth ſome of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered in this time with ſheets of gold, as ours in *Europe* are with lead. But I find no ſuch matter in our latter travellers. Their Fields and Medows full of Cattel, but hitherto not made acquainted with the making of *Butter*; their Fens much viſited by wild-Ducks, as their houſe yards with Pigeons, Turtles, Quails, and pullen.

The People for the moſt part of good underſtanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and ſubtil in their dealings. Of body vigorous and ſtrong, accuſtomed to bear Arms untill 60 years old. Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads ſhaved off. Patient they are of pain, ambitious of glory, uncapable of ſuffering wrong, but can withall diſſemble their reſentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no man for his poverty, ſo it come not by his own unthriftineſs, for which cauſe they deteſt all kinds of *gaming*, as the wayes of ill-husbandry; and generally abhorre *ſlandering*, *theft*, and *ſwearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feaſts in black; their teeth they colour black alſo to make them beautiful; they mount on the right ſide of the horſe, and ſit, (as we are uſed to riſe) when they entertain. In *Phyſick* they eat ſalt things, ſharp, and raw; and in *their ſalutations they put off their ſhooes*. The very *Antipodes* of our world in cuſtoms, though not in ſite: and the true type or Figure of the *old Engliſh Puritan*, oppoſite to the *Papiſt* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that oppoſition. In other things they do much reſemble thoſe of *China*, if not the more *ceremonious* of the two: waſhing their infant-childten in the neereſt River, as ſoon as born; and putting off their ſhooes when they go to meat.

The people have but one *Language*, but that ſo intermingled with the words of others nations, that it ſeems rather to be many languages than one. They have long uſed the Art of *printing*, which probably enough they might have from *China*: the *Characters* whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and ſignifie not only letters, but ſome whole words alſo. In matter of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring antiently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, and giving divine honour to wild beaſts, and the Stags of the Forreſts: but

ſpecially worſhiping ſome of their deceaſed Prieſts and *Princes*, by the names of *Fotoques*, and *Cames*; to the firſt of which they uſe to pray for goods of the other world, and to the laſt for *Temporall* bleſſings. Their Prieſts they call by the name of *Bonzes*, ſetled in goodly *Convents*, and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the providence of God, and the immortality of the ſoul. Of late times by the care and diligence of the *Jeſuites*, *Chriſtianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with ſuch a large increaſe as their letters, called *Epiſtolæ Japanicæ*, have been pleaſed to tell us, I am ſomewhat doubtfull. They tell us there of ſome Kings of theſe Ilands whom they have converted and baptized; that within 50 miles of *Meaco*, they had 50 Churches, 200 at the leaſt in all, that in the year 1587 the number of their Converts was two hundred thouſand. Of this, if the one half be but true, we have great cauſe to praiſe God for it, and to give them the commendation of their pains and induſtry: not letting paſs the memory of the firſt *Adventurer*, who was Father *Xavier*, one of the firſt foundation of this *Society*, (employed in this buſineſs by *Ignatius*, the firſt founder of it) who landed here about the year 1556.

Rivers of note I find not any, though the Iland be generally well-watered: more memorable for two mountains in it, than for all the Rivers. One of which called *Figenoiama*, is ſaid to tranſcend the clouds in height; the other (but without a name) uſeth to caſt forth dreadfull flames, like *Sicilian Ætna*; on the top whereof the *Devill* environed with a white and ſhining cloud, doth ſometimes ſhew himſelf unto ſuch of his *Votaries*, as live about this hill an abſtemious life, like the antient *Hermits*.

Chief Cities of the whole Ilands, 1. *Meaco*, ſeated in *Japan*, and the chief of that Iland, formerly 21 miles in compaſs, but now by reaſon of their warrs, ſcarce a third part of it. The ordinary reſidence of the *Trium viri*, or three principall Magiſtrates, which ſway the affairs of all theſe Ilands: of whom the firſt entituled *Zazo*, hath the chief care in *ſacred* matters; the 2d named *Voo*, doth preſide in *Civill*; and the third called *Cabacama*, manageth the concernments of *Peace* and *Warre*. At this time it is uſed for the common *Empory* of the trade of *China*: that people not permitting Merchants to come amongſt them, but bringing to this place their merchandiſe, as the common *Staple*, where they are ſure to meet with Chapmen to buy it of them. 2. *Oſſacay*, a great and renowned City, conceived to be the richeſt in all the Eaſt; of ſo great trade, that every ordinary merchant is ſaid to be worth 30000 Crowns. 3. *Fenoiama*, or *Figenoiama*, at the foot of the hill ſo called, and about nine miles from *Meaco*. An Univerſity of the *Bonzes*, for whoſe convenience and ſtudy, one of the Kings of *Japan* is ſaid to have founded in this Town, and about that mountain, 3800 *Convents*, and to endow it with the third part of the *Revenues* of the Kingdom of *Vorn*. Theſe Colleges or Convents now reduced to 800 onely: but ſtill the *Univerſity* of ſuch fame and credit, that they give not the command or government of it unto any but the Kings ſonne, or his neereſt kinſman. 4. *Banoam*, another of their *Univerſities*, where they give degrees; affirmed to be as big as *Paris*. 5. *Bongo*, the chief of all that Province; in which the *Jeſuites* have a College; the *Japonites* learn the *Portugal* language, and the *Europæans* that of *Japan*. 6. *Coia*, the ſepulture of their Princes, or of ſome part of them: it being antiently ordained, that if their whole bodies be not here interred, they muſt at leaſt ſend one of their teeth. 7. *Fiongo*, about 18. leagues from *Meaco*, the ſubject of many great misfortunes. Deſtroyed in part by *Nabunanga* one of the Kings of this Iland, who lived Anno 1550: that which he left, terribly ſhattered by an *Earth-quake* Anno 1596. moſt of the ruins of it ſince conſumed by fire. 8. *Amangaſaqui*, five leagues from the Sea. 9. *Surungo*, as big as *London* with the Suburbs. 10 *Edoo*, a much fairer than that, and the chief Seat of one of their Kings. 11. *Firando*, a ſeat-Royall alſo of ſome other King, where, in the year 1613. there was a *Factory* eſtabliſhed for the *Engliſh* Merchants. 12. *Ochinoſamanus*, one of their moſt noted Havens. 13. *Toſa*, or *Tonſa*, giving name to one of the Ilands.

Theſe Ilands utterly unknown to the Antients, were firſt diſcovered by *Antonio Mota*, a *Portugal*, in the year 1542. I know *Mercator* taketh it for the *Aurea Cherſoneſus* ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; and I cannot chooſe but wonder at it. The ſituation of it ſo far diſtant from that of the *Cherſoneſe*, that either *Mercator* muſt be groſſely out in his conjecture; or *Ptolomy* as much miſtaken in his informations; which no man hitherto can juſtly accuſe him of. But paſſing by the improbability of *Mercators* fancy, we are to know, that in former times theſe Ilands were ſubject to one Prince, whom they obeyed and reverenced with great affection: which government continued, as themſelves report, 1600 years in great State and Majeſty. But in the end, the *Dairi*, (ſo they call their King) addicting himſelf wholly unto pleaſures, and laying the burden of Government upon other mens ſhoulders, his Deputies or inferiour Officers uſurped *Regal* power, plumed themſelves with Eagles feathers, uſed in their ſtiles the name of *Jucatas*, or Kings; and in a word, left nothing but the name of *Dairi*, to their Lord and Soveraign. His iſſue to this day do enjoy that title, and but little elſe: the Princes bordering on *Meaco*, once his Royall ſeat, hardly allowing him ſufficient means to find himſelf victuall and Apparell; but otherwiſe befooling him with as glorious titles, as if he were poſſeſſed ſtill of his antient power. Onely they let him execute the place of an *Harald*, in giving Arms, and ſelling dignities and honours; which brings him in the greateſt profit he hath to truſt to. Of all theſe Kings, he which can make himſelf Lord of *Coquinai* (which are the five Realms about *Meaco*) is called Prince of *Tenza*, and eſteemed Soveraign of the reſt. Which height of dignity *Nabunanga* before mentioned, in his time attained to; after him *Faxiba*, and ſince him *Taicoſuma*: that ſovereignty being now in a likely way to become *hereditary*. For *Faxiba* having brought under his command moſt of theſe ſmall Kingdoms, tranſported the vanquiſhed Kings, and the chief of their Nobles, out of one Countrey into another: to the end that being removed out of their own Realms, and amongſt ſtrange ſubjects, they ſhould remain without means to revolt againſt him. A mercifull and prudent courſe. Having reduced into his power at leaſt 50 of theſe petit Kingdoms, he divided the greateſt part of the conquered

quered territories. amongst his own faithfull friends and followers: binding them to supply him with certain numbers of men upon all occasions. By which, and other politick courtes, he so setled himself in those estates, that *Taicosuma* his sonne succeeded without opposition, who had he lived would have abolished the vain title of the *Dairi*; or took it to himself as he had the power; sollicited thereto by the King of *China*. But dying in or about the year 1607. *Feresama* his son succeeded; and may be still alive for ought I can learn.

What the *Revenues* of this King are, it is hard to say. I gues them to be very great, in regard he maketh two millions of Crowns yearly, of the very Rice which he reserveth to himself from his own demeasns. The store of Gold, and pretious stones which these Islands yield, being wholly his, must needs adde much unto his Coffers. And for his power, it is said that *Faxiba* was able to raise so good an Army out of the estates demised by him to his faithful followers; that he resolved once on the conquest of *China*: and to that end had caused timber to be felled for 2000 vessels for the transporting of his Army. And had he lived a little longer, tis probable enough he might have shaken that great Kingdome, the *Japonits* being so much the better Souldiers, that a small party of them would defeat a good Army of *Chineſe*. The fear whereof made the King of *China* after his decease correspond so fairly with his Successour.

Adjoining to *Japan*, betwixt it and *China*, lyeth the Iland of *CORE A*, extended in length from North to South: the people whereof being distressed by the *Japonites*, called in the *Chineſe*, by whom delivered from their Enemies, and restored to liberty, as before was noted.

2. *PHILIPPINÆ.*

SOuth of *Japan*, lieth a great frie of Islands which are now called *PHILIPPINÆ* in honour of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, in whose time discovered by *Legaspi* a *Spanish* Captain, *Anno* 1564. Strangely mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Barussa* of *Ptolomy*, those being placed by him in the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, five degrees South of the *Æquator*; these situate on the East of *China*, in 13 or 14 degrees of Northern Latitude: those being only five in number, these reckoned at above ten thousand.

The Air in all of them generally very mild and temperate, especially in the midland parts; that on the shores, somewhat inclining unto heat. The soil abundantly fruitful of all commodities both for necessity, and delights; that is to say, Rice, Pulse, Wax, Honey, Sugar Canes, many pleasant fruits, the faireſt Figges of all the world, plenty of fish, variety of Birds and Beasts, as well wild as tame, great store of Cotton Wooll, some Mines of Gold, and of other mettals great abundance.

Of all these Islands there are only fourty in possession of the King of *Spain*, belonging properly to *Asia*, but by him placed under the Government of *New Spain* in *America*, because discovered by *Legaspi* at the instigation or procurement of *Don Lewis de Velasco*, who was then Vice-Roy of that Province. In these 40 Ilands there are thought to be at the least a million of people subject to that Crown; many of which have been converted by the *Friers* and *Jesuites* unto *Christianity*. Of these the principal in account are, 1. *LUSSON*, affirmed to contain in compass 1000 miles; beautifyed by the *Spaniards* with a fair City, seated on a commodious Haven, which they call *Manilla*, in which resides the Depury or Lieutenant Governor for all these Ilands; and the bishop of the *Philippines* for ordering all affairs of those Churches. II. *MINDANAO*, 380 Leagues in compass; in which are many good Towns, as 1. *Cailon*, 2. *Pavados*, 3 *Subut*, 4. *Dapiro*, and some others. III. *TANDAIR*, more fruitful than any of the rest, and of good extent, 160 Leagues in circuit; more specially called *Philippina*, because first discovered and so named. IV. *PALOHAN*, as much mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Bazacata* of *Ptolomy*.

These, with the rest, subject in former times to the Kings of *China*, till they did voluntarily abandon them, and confine their Empire within the Continent. On this relinquishment the people fell into *Civil* warres, every man getting what he could for himself, and the stronger preying on the weaker: which factions and divisions gave great help to the *Spaniard* in the conquest of those few which are under their power. Ilands of more importance to the *Spaniards*, than is commonly thought: and therefore furnished by them at their first plantations, with Bulls, Kine, Horses, and Mares, which before they wanted, and do now reasonably abound with. For besides the abundance of victuals, and some plenty of Gold which they find therein, the situation is very fit to subdue the rest of the neighbouring Ilands; to settle the commerce betwixt *China* and *Mexico*; to bring on a continual trade betwixt the Ilands of this Sea, and those of *America*; and finally to prevent the *Moors* or *Arabians* from planting their *Mahometanism* any further Eastwards.

Not far from these, on the South of *Japan* bending towards the west, is another great heap of Rocks and Ilands. Some of them rich in Gold, and furnished with very choise fruits, and other necessaries, and peopled with a stout and warlike breed of men, well skilled in *Archerie*. The chief whereof have the names of 1. *Lequin Major*, 2. *Lequin Minor*, 3. *Hermosa*, 4. *Reix Magos*, &c. of which little memorable. And not far off those called 5. *Cinmbabon*, in which is said to be a *Plantanimal*, or sensible tree, and 6. *Mathan*, unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Magellanus*, slain there in a battel with the Natives.

3. The Isles of *BANDAN.*

THe Isles of *BANDAN* are in number seven, that is to say 1. *Mira*, 2. *Rosalargium*, 3. *Ais*, 4. *Rom*, 5. *Nerra*, 6 *Ganuape*, the least of all, continually burning, and for that cause deserted of its inhabitants, and 7. *Bandan*, bigger than any of the rest, and therefore giving name to all. Situate South of the *Philippines*, in the seventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitful of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all these parts, for which cause never without the concourse of forein Merchants from *Java*, *Malaca*, and *China*; and of late times from these Northern Countreys of *Europe* also. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a Peach or Peach-tree, the innermost part whereof is the Nutmeg it self, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the *Arabian* name of *Maciz* or *Mace*; and over that the fruit it self, as it is in Peaches, *Malacotons*, and such fruits as those.

The people barbarous and rude, slothfull, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living confusedly together without rule or order. Some of them still continue in their antient *Paganism*; but the greatest part are thought to be *Mahometans*, in which *Religion* very zealous, and so devout that they will not go unto their work or wordly businesses, till they have visited the *Mesquits*, and there done their devotions. A shame or Pattern shall I say in this, unto many *Christians*. All of them bloody and revengefull, but yet so farre from wronging the body of a dead Enemy, that they use to bury it with sweet odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principall, 1. *Nera*, and 2. *Lontoor*, joined in a league against the rest; the quarrell rising from the cutting down of certain trees, proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loss of their common liberty. Subject in shew to the King of *Botone* one of the *Moluccoes*, but too much at their own disposing. They had not else entred into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchfull *Hollanders*, they did not only settle four *Factories* there; but for the security of their trade, and to awe the *Natives*, they have built three Forts. They had also turned one of their *Mesquits* to a *Fortress*. Whereat the people were so incensed that they promised liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it: who falling desperately on fired it over their heads, and killed every man of them. The *English* Merchants have some trading also in these Ilands, more acceptable than the other, because not so insolent.

There is not far off another Iland, not in this accompt, called *Timor*, situate in the tenth degree of *Southern* Latitude; the chief of many little Ilands which lye round about it; but not else observable, except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabiants for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. The *MOLUCCOES.*

THe *MOLUCCOES* are in number many, the King of *Terenate* which is one of them, being said to have dominion over 70 Ilands; but the *determinate* number of them I do no where find. Situate on both sides of the *Æquator*, and consequently of an hot and intemperate air: the soyl so drie and spongious, that it sucketh up the greatest shewr of Rain that doth fall amongst them, before it can pass into the Sea. Not very well furnished with necessaries for the life of man; but that defect supplied with the abundance of Spices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Mastick*, *Aloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities, for which the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of these Ilands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A spice, which groweth on Trees like Bay-trees, yielding blossoms, first white, then green (at which time they yield the pleasantest smell in the world) and last of all Red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature so extreme hot, that if a Pail of water should only stand in the Room in which they are cleansed and sorted, the *Cloves* in two daies would dry it up. Of which nature the unspun silks of *China* are affirmed to be.

The people for the most part *Idolaters*, intermixt with some *Mahometans* dwelling on the shores, and of late times with *Christians* in their severall *factories*. Of severall *Originals*, and different languages, but all in generall fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedness. Few of them clothed, nor much caring to hide their shame; Not civilized by the cohabitation of more modest and civill Nations. Pitty such ill conditions should be lodged in such handsome bodies: the people being said to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for strength and valour not fellowed by any of them.

Of all the Ilands which pass under this name, there are not above five or six of any rekoning: that is to say, 1. *Terenate*. 2. *Tidor*. 3. *Macir*. 4. *Rachian*. 5. *Machian*, and 6. *Botone*: none of them above six leagues in compass, many not so much; the whole cluster of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 leagues in the Circumference. Some reckon *Polerone* amongst them, a little Iland not far off (if not one of the number) and well stored with Cloves. Frequented first by the *English* Merchants, from them taken by the insolent and ingratefull *Hollanders*: who being to restore it upon composition, cut down all the *Clove-trees*, so to deprive the *English* of the benefit of it.

Of the rest, *Rachian*, and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; So hath *Botone* also, if that be one of them, the King whereof had antiently some title and authority over those of *Bandan*. *Macir*, and *Machian*, are subject to the King of *Ternate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion, and said to be the Lord of 70 Ilands. This the most puissant member of this scattered body; and for that cause most aimed

at

at by all Competitors: the *Spaniards* having here one Fortreſs, and the *Hollanders* three: both nations hated by the Natives, whom they conſume and waſt in the wanes betwixt them; but of the two, the *Spaniard* looked on by the people as the more *Gentleman*; the other ſtomacked and deſpiſed for their *ſordid* dealings. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory or *Chorographie* of them, but that they were diſcovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the reign of *Charles* the fift, who employed him in it, Anno 1519. And that there is in *Ternate* a prodigious mountain, in height above the clouds of the Air, and in nature agreeing with the Element of fire, which it ſeems to mount to: huge flames whereof, with dreadfull thunders, and a dark ſmoak, it ſends forth continually.

5 The *SINDÆ* or *SELEBES*.

Neer the *Moluccoes*, and almoſt intermingled with them, are a ſet of Ilands which *Ptolomy* calleth *SINDÆ*, and the Modems, *SELEBES*, many in *tale*, but not above four of any *weight*, that is to ſay, 1. *SELEBES*. 2. *Gilolo*, 3. *Amboina*. 4. *Macaſſer*, of which the two firſt are ſituate under the *Æquator*, and the laſt ſomewhat on the South of it: all of them in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, and a long time after; inſomuch as the Kings of the *Moluccoes*, did uſe to ſend their condemned perſons into theſe Ilands, there to be devoured. Which ſaid in generall, we will take a more particular view of them as they lie before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the reſt, and hath under it many leſſer Ilands, is large and rich. The ſoil thereof exceeding fertile, the people tall and comely, and of color, not ſo much black, as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late. Governed by many Kings or petit Princes, the cauſe of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are ſaid to have been converted to Chriſtianity, and for that cauſe much hated by their heatheniſh Subjects, who thereupon rebelled againſt them. It is ſituate Weſt of the *Moluccos*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Chriſtian Kings: but poſſibly not ſo called untill their converſion; the proper name thereof being *Cian*. 2. *Nibon*, in the South, and 3. *Terolli*, in the North parts of it.

2. *GILOLO*, called alſo *Batachina*, is one of thoſe Iſlands, which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Mor*. Of large extent, conceived to be half as bigge as *Italy*. By that accompt (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater than *Zeilan* is in compaſs, though of leſs reputation: that being governed by its own Princes, this ſubject for the moſt part to the king of *Ternate*. Situate Eaſt of the *Moluccos*, exceeding plentiful of Rice, well ſtored with wild hens, and on the ſhores provided of a kind of *Shell-fiſh*, which in taſt much reſembleth mutton. A tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread, and of the ſap or juice of it they compoſe a pleaſing drink which ſerveth them inſtead of wine. The air intemperatly hot; the people well proportioned, but rude and ſavage; ſome of them *Gentiles*, ſome *Malometans*, of which laſt Religion is their king. The chief Town of it is *Batchame* or *Batachina*, (whence the new name unto the Iland) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3. *AMBOINA*, South of the *Æquator*, and the third of the *Sindæ*, hath many Ilands of leſs note which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compaſs about five hundred miles, ſaid by *Maginus* to be extremely rough and barren; which muſt be underſtood with reference to ſome kinds of grain. For otherwiſe it is very fertile, abundantly productive of Rice, Citrons, Limons, Orenges, *Coquo-nuts*, *Sugar-Canes*, and other fruits; and very plentiful of *Cloves*. Which laſt, as it makes ſome to reckon it amongſt the *Moluccos*, ſo may it be the reaſon why the Iland is defective in ſuch fruits as require much moiſture: the *Clove* being of ſo hot a temper, as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moiſture of the Earth which is neer unto it.

The people much given to *Piracy*, wherewith they do infeſt all the neighboring Ilands. Defamed for *Cannibals*, or man-eaters: it being here a conſtant cuſtome, that when their parents are grown old, or ſick of any incurable diſeaſe, they give them unto one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Amboyna*, by the name of the Iland. Firſt taken by the *Portugals*, and by them ſecured with a ſtrong fortreſs: during whoſe power here, the *Jeſuites* who had in it their ſeveral Reſidences converted many to *Chriſtianity*. But in the year 1605. the Iland and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen* of *Hagen* for the States of the united Provinces: who having cleered the Countrey of the *Portugal* Forces, poſſeſſed themſelves of it. Received by the natives at their firſt comming with joy and triumphs: but they got little by the change, as they found ſoon after; their new Maſters being more burdenſome and unſufferable than the old had been. For claiming in the right of conqueſt, they think they may oppreſs the Natives by the law of Arms, and ingroſs all trade unto themſelves as the true *Proprietaries*. Infamous even amongſt the rude and ſavage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity executed upon ſome of the *Engliſh* (the greateſt Patrons under God which they have in the world) whom in the year 1618 they moſt cruelly tortured, and moſt wickedly murdered, under colour of ſome plot to betray their Fortreſs: but in plain truth for no other reaſon but becauſe they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. Weſt of *Amboina*, and South-weſt of *Celebes*, lieth the 4th of theſe Ilands called *MACASSAR*, ſaid to contain from Eaſt to Weſt 600 miles; plentiful of Rice, Fleſh, Fiſh, Salt, and Cotton-wool; not deſtitute of Gold and Pearls, and well ſtored with *Sanders* (*Sandalum* it is called in *Latin*) a medicinal wood, growing like a Nut-tree: of ſeveral colours, white, red, yellow, but the red, the beſt: the fruit in making, like a Cherry, but of no eſteem. In ſome parts overgrown with woods, in which certain *fierie Flies* make nightly ſuch ſhining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the midle covered with high Mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The

The people for the most part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the Sea-coasts with some *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Senderem*, the Kings Seat, situate neer a large *Lake*, very commodiously for trafick. 2. *Macassar*, an *English Factorie*, so called according to the name of the Iland.

Neer to these Islands, and somewhat North to *Battachina* are some other Isles, plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man, but inhabited by a theevish and *Piratical* people: the principal of which, 1. *Terrao*, 2. *Sanguin*, 3. *Solor*, 4. *Moratay*, in which last they eat *Battata* Roots instead of bread; besides some others of less note. Most of the People *Gentiles*, except those of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Christian Faith, by some of the *Jesuites*, hath brought many of his subjects to the same Religion.

6. BORNEO.

WEst of these *Celebes*, lieth *BORNEO*, of more note and greatness, than any hitherto described in these *Indian* Seas. In compass after their accompt who speak most sparingly, 2200 miles; but as some say no less than three moneths sayl about. Situate under the *Æquator*, which parteth the dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Laus*: opposite on the North, to *Camboia*; on the South, to *Java*; on the East, to *Celebes*; on the West, unto the Isle of *Sumatra*.

The Countrey said to be provided naturally of all things necessary; yet said withall to be unfurnished of Asses, Oxen, heads of Cattell, except only horses, and those but of small stature neither: the greatest riches of it being *Camphire*, *Agatrick*, and some mines of *Adamants*. Erroneously conceived by *Mercator* to be the *Insula bona Fortuna* spoken of by *Ptolomy*; that being seated opposite to the out-lets of *Ganges*, in the *Latitude* of a hundred fourty five Degrees, and fifteen minutes; this Eastward some Degrees of the *Golden Chersonese*, and consequently twenty degrees Distant at the least from that Iland in *Ptolomy*.

The people generally more white than the rest of the *Indians*, of good wits, and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans* or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two *Religions*; the King of *Borneo* and his Subjects being all *Mahometans*; those of *Laus* still remaining in their antient *Gentilism*. These think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; ascribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* especially, whom they salute at his first rising with great Reverence, saying certain verses. Their publicke businesses are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Counsellers* of *State* meet, and ascend some tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* rise, and then go to the *Senate-house*. The same Apparell generally of both *Religions*; but thin, by reason of the great heat of the Air, a shirt of Silk, or of *Calicut*, or some such slight stuff, worn more for modesty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Borneo*, situate in the North-west part of the Iland neer a goodly bay, but in the middle of the Fens like the City of *Venice*; and seated as that is, on *Piles*, the building sumptuous, of hewed stone, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The Town so large as to contain 25000 Houses in the smallest reckoning, the principal of all the Iland, which takes name from hence. 2. *Cabura*. 3. *Taiaopura*. 4. *Tamaoratas*. 5. *Malano*; all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodious Havens. 6. *Sagadana*, a Factory of *English*. 7. *Lavi*, on a large Bay in the South-East part of the Iland, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Laus*. 8. *Paro*, on another capacious Bay, not farre from *Lavi*, and directly opposite to *Borneo*: that being seated on the North-west, and this on the South-East of the Iland. Betwixt these two Kings is the whole divided; but so that he of *Borneo* hath the greatest part of it, and therefore keeps the greater State: not to be spoken with but by the mouth of some of his own *Interpreters*; and in his Palace served by no other Attendants than *Maids* or *Women*.

7. JAVA.

OPposite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Isles of *JAVA*, two in number; both situate South of the *Æquator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly distinguished into *Major* and *Minor*, or the Greater and the Lesser *Java*.

1. *JAVA-MAJOR*, the more North-ward of the two, and by much the bigger, is said to be in compass 3000 miles, and that by them who elsewhere reckon *Borneo* for the biggest of these Seas. But the truth is, that the South-parts of this Iland not being perfectly discovered make the measurement thereof to be very uncertain. Conceived most probably to be the *Jabadiu* of *Ptolomy*, the most Northern part whereof is placed by him in the 8th Degree of *Southern* Latitude: said by him to afford much gold and silver, to be exceeding fruitfull of all other necessaries; and finally that the name did signifie *κριθῆς νῆσος*, or the Iland of Barley. All which agreeth punctually with the present Iland, the word, *Jabad* signifying a kind of grain much like our *Barley*, and *Diu* in the *Persian* and *Indian* tongues signifying an *Island*. And so in *Jabadiu*, we have found the Iland of *Iava*, the mutation of B. into V. being very ordinary.

Then for the riches and fertility of it, it is said to yield great plenty of fruits, and corn, but of *Rice* especially; flesh of all sorts, salted and sent from hence into other Countries; great store of fowl, both wild and tame; plenty of gold, some precious Stones, and the best kind of brass; silks in abundance, and great quantities of pepper, ginger, Cinnamon, and some other spices. In a word so befriended by the bounty of nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitome Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a lesser Volume. But withall it is much exposed unto storms and tempests, from which seldome free.

The

The people of a midle Stature, corpulent, and of broad faces, moſt of them naked or covered onely with a ſlight ſilken ſtuff, and that no lower than the knee: accompted the moſt *Civill* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their deſcent from *China*: but withall treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careleſs of their words, to which ſo uſed, that they count it not amongſt their *Faults*. And therefore when a king of theirs had broke promiſe with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he anſwered that *his tongue was not made of bone*. Cruel they are alſo ſaid to be, and implacable, if once offended: accuſtomed of old to eat the bodies of their friends: accounting no buriall ſo honourable; nor obſequy, ſo applauſive. This alſo a cuſtome amongſt many of the reſt of the *Indians*, and ſo hath been ever ſince the beginning of the *Perſian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hyſtaſpis* underſtanding of this cuſtome, and withall knowing how the *Grecians* uſe to burn their dead; ſent to the *Greeks*, that it was his pleaſure they ſhould eat the bodies of their dead: But they uſed all means of perſwaſion and entreaty, not to be forced to ſo bruitiſh and barbarous a cuſtome. Then commanded he the *Indians*, to conform themſelves to the faſhion of the *Grecians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greeks* did to eat them. So impoſſible is it for a cuſtome either to be ſuddenly left off, or to ſeem undecent and inconvenient, if once thorowly ſettled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans* or *Gentiles*, according to the fancy of their ſeverall Kings, whereof in this Iland there are very many, one for every great Tribe, or more powerfull Family. Zealous in their Religion which ſoever it be, as appears by the ſad ſtory of the daughter of the King of *Ballambua*, murdered by her husband the King of *Paſſarva*, the ſecond night after her wedding, with all her Attendants, becauſe they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in ſome common *Principles* they agree well enough, puniſhing *Adultery* with death; in which caſe the woman chooſeth her neereſt kinſman for her *Executioner*: but otherwiſe ſpending day and night in much ſloth and dalliance. Of the two, *Gentiliſm* is the more diffuſed, becauſe moſt antient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very ſwift growth, and of a great increaſe for ſo ſhort a time.

Their chief Towns, 1. *Panarucan*, neer a burning hill, which in the year 1586. break forth exceedingly, oppreſſed infinite numbers of men, and caſt great ſtones into the City for three dayes together. 2. *Jortam*, a Town of 1000 Houſholds, the Inhabitants whereof are *Gentiles*, and have their Temples in the Woods: the *Chief-Prieſt* of whoſe ſuperſtition hath his dwelling here, of great authority and power over all the Iland. 3. *Ballambua*, 4. *Paſſarva*, 5. *Tabam*, 6. *Matara*, 7. *Dannis*, 8. *Taggal*, 9. *Surrabaia*, 10. *Catabaon*; the Seats of ſo many of their Kings; ſome of them alſo furniſhed of convenient Havens. 11. *BANTAM*, the ſeat alſo of a King, but of moſt trade in all the Iland, ſeldome without the company of *Engliſh*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*; the principall *Factory* of the *Engliſh* in all the *Indies*, though they have many beſides this. The Town unwholeſomely ſeated in a mooriſh ground, and much ſubject to fire. 12. *Sunda*, ſituate in a place abounding in pepper. 13. *Agracan*, a convenient Port; Here was alſo in the time of *Ptolomy* a Town called 14. *Argyropolis*, or the *Silver City*, long ago deſtroyed. And now there is, 15. *Sura*, a new Town in the territories of the King of *Bantam*, built by ſome of the Subjects of the King of *Paſſarva*, who being oppreſſed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a conſtant Succeſſion, adopting ſome of the other *Javans* into their *Society*, as they find their numbers to diminiſh.

Of the ſtory of this Iland I can ſay but litle. Divided into many petit and inconſiderable Kingdoms; and thoſe divided too by Mountains; croſſing the Iland in the middle from Weſt to Eaſt, which cut off all commerce and correſpondence betwixt one another. Some of theſe Kings *Mahometans*, ſome *Gentiles*, as before was ſaid; all ſubject or *Homagers* at leaſt to one of the Kings of the *Gentiles*, who hath his dwelling in the middeſt of the Iland. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be richeſt, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greateſt territory, whoſe Family, after long warre and blood-ſhed, begun in the murder of his daughter, is ſaid to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Paſſarva*. Theſe Kings much reverenced by their ſubjects, and ſo well obeyed, that whatſoever they command, is done, be it never ſo dangerous.

2. *IAVA-MINOR*, ſituate on the South of the other, is ſaid to be 2000 miles in compaſs, and to be very neer the firm land of *Terra Auſtralis incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not ſo much on certain knowledge as unſure conjecture) to be of the ſame nature and condition with the *greater Iava*. The Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and deareſt friends, and to worſhip all day whatſoever they ſaw firſt in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, diſtinguiſhed by the names of their principall Towns. Six whereof he had ſeen, which are theſe that follow. 1. *Felech*, where the Townſmen were *Moors*, and the Paiſants *Gentiles*. 2. *Baſma*, which did acknowledge the *Great-Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any *tribute*. 3. *Samara*, where none of the *North-Stars* could be ſeen. 4. *Lambri*, in which ſome men were ſaid to have tails like dogs. 5. *Fanſur*, in which they have a *Tree*; the wood whereof put in water, will ſink like iron; of which they uſe to make *Launces* that will pierce an Armour. And 6. *Dragorian*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious, but that the people of it uſe to eat their neereſt kinſmen; and that no *Prodigie* at all, becauſe uſed by others.

To theſe two we may joyn *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Iava*, fertile of *Rice*, but otherwiſe of ſo wateriſh and moiſt a Soyl, that the men and Cattel uſe to go knee-deep when they ſow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the Eaſt of the ſame *Iava* the Iland *Baly*, exceeding popu-

populous for the bigneſs, ſuppoſed to contain 600000 Inhabitants; and very well provided of *Buls*, *Buffais*, Goats, Horſes, Swine, many kind of fruits, and ſome ſtore of metals.

8. *SUMATRA.*

SUMATRA lieth on the North of the *Greater Java*, betwixt it and the *Streight* of *Sincapura* the moſt Southern Town of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*. The *Streight* in that place ſo ſtreight and narrow not above a musket ſhot in breadth, that ſome conceive this Iſland to have been formerly joined unto it by ſome little *Iſthmus*, ſince worn away by the violence and working of the Sea: and that this Iland, and not the Land of *Malaca* was that *Golden Cherſoneſe* which we find in *Ptolomy*. More probably by farre, than that we ſhould run after to the Iſle of *Japan* ſituate on the Eaſt of *China*, ſo farr from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North-weſt to the South-Eaſt, is ſaid by ſome to be 900. by others but 700 miles, the breadth 200, and the whole compaſs one and twenty hundred. Strangely affirmed by ſome writers to be the biggeſt of all the Eaſt; who yet aſſign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Situate under the *Æquator*, which divideth it into two parts, very neer an equalite: that on the North-ſide reaching unto five degrees, that on the ſouth-ſide but to ſeven degrees from the line it ſelf. By which accompt there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by conſequence muſt be very hot, but withall unwholſome, not ſo much in regard of the extream heats, as by reaſon of the groſs vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers which are found to be in it; and the thick woods which intercept the free courſe of a purging wind. The ſoil not capable of ſuch grain as in otherplaces, except Rice or *Millet* (for I know not otherwiſe how to render the *Latine*, *Milium*) but yielding Ginger, Pepper, *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and *Caſſia*, in great abundance. It affordeth alſo great plenty of Wax and Honey, ſtore of Silks and Cottons; rich mines not onely of tin, iron, ſulphur, and other Minerals; but of Gold ſuch quantity, that ſome conceive this Iſland to be *Salomons Ophir*. And if *Pedrunka Sirie* one of the Kings of this Iland, in a letter written to King *James* did not brag too impudently, it may be probable enough. For by that letter it appeareth that all the furnitures of his houſe, and the trappings of his Elephants, and horſes, withal his Armour, were of pure Gold, and that he had in his dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entituleth himſelf in his *Regal Stile*.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cunning *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundred and thirty years ſince, at what time by the diligence of ſome *Arabian* Merchants trading to this Iſland, *Mahometaniſm* began to ſpread upon the Coaſts. But in the inland parts of the Countrey they are *Gentiles* ſtill, and ſtill retain amongſt them their old barbarous cuſtomes. The moſt loving men unto their enemies that were ever known; for otherwiſe they would never eat them. Having eaten they uſe their ſkuls inſtead of money, which they exchange or barter for ſuch neceſſaries as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthieſt man amongſt them, who hath moſt of this coin. Thoſe of the other Religion though in moſt points and cuſtomes they agree with the reſt of the *Mahometans*, have this one ſingular to themſelves: which is, that once every year on a certain day they go ſolemnly unto their *Meſquits* to ſee if *Mahomet* be come; leading a ſpare Horſe for him to ride upon: which (miſſing him) is mounted at their coming back, by the beſt man in the company. Of any great Progreſs that *Chriſtianity* hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That here are many and great Rivers, hath been ſaid before, but their names I find not. Here are alſo many Mountains, and thoſe great and high; that of moſt note called *Balalvanus*, ſaid to burn continually. Out of which, or not farre off do ariſe two Fountaines, of which the one is ſaid to runne pure Oile, and the other the beſt *Balſamum*: which I bind no man to believe but ſuch as have ſeen it.

Chief Towns hereof 1. *Achen*, the Seat Royall of that Kingdome, beautifyed with the Regal Palace, to which they paſs thorow ſeven Gates one after another, with green Courts between the three outermoſt; thoſe three continually guarded with women expert at their weapons, and uſing both ſwords and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his perſon. The materials of this Palace mean, but the furniture coſtly; the walls thereof being hanged commonly with *Velvet* and *Damask*, and ſome times with cloth of Gold. 2. *Pedir*. 3. *Pacem*, 4. *Cambar*, 5. *Menimtabo*, 6. *Aura*, and 7. *Andragide*, the ſeats of ſo many of their Kings. 8. *Paſſaman*, a Town of great trade, but ſituate in a mooriſh and unhealthy place; found ſo experimentally by too many of the *Engliſh*, who have there their Factory. 9. *Priamon*, and 10. *Tecon*, of a more healthy aire, but not ſo commodious in their Havens as is that of *Paſſaman*: theſe 3 Towns ſtanding in that part of the Countrey where the *Pepper* groweth.

All that we know touching the ſtorie of this Countrey, is that the *Portugals*, when they firſt came hither, found in it nine and twenty kings; reduced ſince to a ſmaller number. For *Abraham*, ſometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Arabians* ſubdued the Realms of *Pedir* and *Pacem*. *Aladine* who ſucceeded him, being onee a *Fiſherman* and grown famous for his exploits at Sea, was by this King preferred to the mariage of one of his Kinſwomen, made his Lord *Admirall*, and by him truſted with the protection of his ſonne and heir: of whom inſtead of a Protector he became the murtherer, and uſurped the State unto himſelf. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdomes of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Manucabo*, and almoſt all the reſt in the North-part of the Iland. In this kings time, the *Engliſh* were firſt ſettled in their Factory there. Grown old (an hun-

hundred years at leaſt) he was impriſoned by his eldeſt Sonne, impatient of a longer ſtay, alleging that his age had made him unfit for government, *Anno* 1604. The name of the New King *Sultan Peatrucka Sirie*, who in his letter to King *James* ſpoken of before, ſtiles himſelf the *Sole King* of *Sumatra*: either with greater brag than truth, or elſe becauſe the Kingdomes of *Tecoo*, *Priaman*, and *Baroſe*, being conquered by him, all the reſt were become his *Tributaries*. Aſſociated with the forces of the King of *Jor*, or *Johor*, who had maried his Siſter, he beſieged *Malaca*, and diſtreſſed it: But being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his diſpleaſure upon his *Confederate*, and ſubdued that Kingdome; who with the King of *Siak* (ſome other petit Prince neer *Jor*) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1613. brought Priſoners to *Achem*.

The Government of this King is abſolute, and meerly arbitrary, executing what he hath a mind to without *form of Law*. So cautelous, that without his *Placard* no ſtranger can have *Ingreſs* into his dominions, or free *Egreſs* out of them. Nor is admittance to his preſence granted unto any whom he firſt ſends not for by an Officer with a *Gilded Staff*. He is conceived to be ſtrong both by Sea, and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained, able to put to Sea 120, or if need be 200 Gallies and *Frigots* fit for any ſervice, moſt of which carry *Demi-Cannon*, Culverin, *Saker*, Minion, and other the like Ordnance of Braſs. So great a Maſter of his Subjects, that in 21 daies he had a goodly Channel drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Of his *Revenues* I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of Golden furnitures which he hath about him.

And now I am fallen on this Kings Gold, I cannot but take notice of ſome Ilands on the Weſt of *Sumatra*, called *Aureæ Inſulæ*, or the *Golden Ilands*; the chief of which named *Andramania*, is poſſeſſed by *Cannibals*, or man-eaters. Oppoſite unto which on the Eaſt ſide of this Iland, are thoſe called *Linga*, *Banca*, and *Bintam*; which laſt is ſaid to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious *Station* for ſhipping. The houſes built of ſtone, but thatched except that of the King (for even theſe ſorry Ilands love to have a King of their own) whoſe houſe more eminently ſeated, is more handſomly covered.

9. ZEILAN.

WEſt of *Sumatra*, ſomewhat inclining to the North, is the Iland of ZEILAN, ten Degrees diſtant from the *Æquator*, and neer adjoining to the Promontory in the hither *India* which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only; the whole circumference at 700 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the ſituation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the antient Writers. *Ortelius* and moſt other intelligent men of theſe later times are of that opinion. Onely *Mercator*, who hath carried the *Golden Cherſoneſe* to the Iſle of *Japan*; and fixed *Taprobane* in that of *Sumatra*, (in which laſt I muſt confeſs he hath many Partners) will have this Iland to be that which *Ptolomy* calls *Nanigerus*, though that be four Degrees more Weſt than the Promontory of *Cory*, to which this Iſle in former times ſeems to have been joined.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, that this *Zeilan* or *Ceilan* is the *Taprobane* of the Antients, we will a little look on the State of that Iland, with reference to the times when thoſe Authors lived. By *Ptolomy* affirmed to be plentiful in Rice, Honey, Ginger, Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, and all kind of metals; By *Pliny*, that the Gold is purer, and the Gemmes fairer, than any in *India*; that there were alſo Groves of Palm-trees, and great ſtore of Elephants, is declared by *Ælian* and ſome others. Watered with many fair and pleaſant Rivers, *viz.* 1. *Soana*, 2. *Azanus*, 3. *Baracus*, 4. *Ganges*, 5. *Phaſis*: the hills in many places having a full proſpect over the adjoining Vallies; the chief of which were *Malea*, and thoſe called *Calibi*, the vales perpetually enriched with the choiceſt fruits. Exceeding populous for the bigneſs, and ſtored with many Towns of note. Of which *Magrammum* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*. 1. *Margana*, 2. *Jogana*, 3. *Sindocanda*, 4. *Hodoca*, 5. *Nubartha*, 6. *Dogana*, 7. *Dionyſiopolis*, 8. *Bocana*, 9. *Abaraha*, 10. *Procurum*, 11. *Nigadiba*, and 12. *Anubingara*, have the name of *Cities*. 13. *Moduttum*, and 14 *Talicorum*, noted for the Towns of trafick; 15. *Priapis*, 16. *Mardus*, 17. *Rhizala*, 18. *Spatana*, and 19. that of the *Sun*, for commodious Havens; 20. *Anurogrammum* being honoured with the Title of *Regia*, or the Royal City. As for the name, it is ſaid by *Ptolomy* to have been firſt called *Taprobane*, then *Simondi Inſula*, and finally in his time *Salice*, and the People *Sale*; from whence the name of *Selan* or *Seilan* ſeems to be derived.

To take a view of it at the preſent, I find it ſaid to be of an *Ovall* form, divided from the main land by a narrow Channel, the Heavens refreſhing it with their dewes, the Air with a fragrant freſhneſs, and the waters with their many Rivers and Fountains; the Earth diverſifyed into lofty hills, and lowly Vallies; her inward Chambers filled with Metals, and Jewels, her outward Coat of the pleaſanteſt colour, ſtored with whole woods of *Cinnamon*; beſides *Fruits*, *Limons*, *Oringes*, &c. bettering thoſe of *Spain*. Of *Fouls* and *Beaſts* great plenty both wild and tame; and the beſt breed of Elephants in all the world. Deſtitute only of the *Vine*, the want of which ſupplyed with a pleaſant drink made of the juice of fruits, more natural to them than the other, and ſo preſervative of life that the people are reported to be longer lived than in any other parts. In a word ſo abounding in all contentments, that the *Indians* hold it to be *Paradiſe*, and take upon them to point out ſome of *Adams* footings, left for a memorial in ſome parts of it. And to confirm them in their Error, they have an Hill there which the *Spaniards* call by the name of *Pico de Adam*, affirmed to be ſeven Leagues in height, from whence *Adam* aſcended into Heaven: for

that cauſe viſited by the *Moores* or *Arabians*, with continuall *Pilgrimages*.

The people for the moſt part tall and ſtrait of body, naked from the girdle upwards, unwarlike, and much given unto eaſe and pleaſures; So queaſie ſtomached that the pooreſt of them will not eat that meat which another hath touched; inclined to bravery, and therefore make wide holes in their ears, which they ſtretch out with *Jewels* to their very ſhoulders. Cunning *Artificers* in all metals, one of them making a *Crucifix* of ſuch exquiſite workmanſhip, that it ſeemed to give life to the dead; and was ſent by the Arch-Biſhop of *Goa* to the King of *Spain*, as the rareſt *Jewell* which had ever graced his Royall *Cabinet*. They are alſo very active, and well skilled in *Iuggling*, both men and women, travelling thorow *India* with their tricks and *Hobby-horſes*, by which they get themſelves both delight and money. In matter of *Religion*, they are generally *Idolaters*, eſpecially the *Natives*, whom they call *Cingalas*, which live in the Inlands; the Sea-coaſts (as in other Ilands) being filled with *Mahometans*. No *Chriſtians* that I hear of but in *Columbo*, a Town of the *Portugals*.

Cities of moſt repute amongſt them, 1. *Candie*, the Seat of one of their Kings, ſuppoſed to be the *Sindocande* of *Ptolomy*, memorable for the *ſtatues* of their ſuppoſed *Adam*, moſt artificially wrought, of five or ſix Fathoms high, *Symetrically* proportionable to the print of his foot, which they conceive to have amongſt them. 2. *Ventane*, of great renown for an *Idol-Temple*, in compaſs 130 paces, of great height, and all white except the top, which hath the *Spires* thereof ſo gilded, that when the Sun ſhines, men are not able to look upon them. 3. *Jamaſipatan*, 4. *Triqui-Lemale* (ſuppoſed to be the *Tariche* of *Ptolomy*, 5. *Batecolom*, 6. *Vilaſſem* 7. *Tanamaca*, 8. *Laula*, 9. *Galle*, the Seats of ſo many of their Kings. 10. *Nagarita*, conceived to be the *Nagiri*; as 11. *Agena*, the *Jogana* of *Ptolomy*. 12. *Colmuchi*, the Seat Royall of the chief King of this Iland, ſituate on a capacious Bay in the South-weſt of it, and of moſt trade in all this Country: many great ſhips laden with *Cinnamon*, Gemmes, Elephants, and other *Indian* commodities, going yeerly hence. Fortified by the *Portugals* (by whom called *Columbo*) with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built with the Kings leave at firſt, to ſecure their trading; but ſince uſed by them as a curb to hold him in with, and to compell him to pay *tribute*.

This Country firſt diſcovered to be an Iland by *Oneſicritus*, Admirall of *Alexanders* Fleet, was in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by ſeverall Nations. The principall of which were the *Galthi*, and *Mudute* dwelling in the North, the *Rhogandani*, and *Namigiri* in the South; the *Sindocardæ* in the Weſt, and the *Tarachi* in the Eaſt: the middle parts being taken up by the *Anurogrammi*, *Nagadibi*, *Soani*, *Semne*. But little or nothing is ſaid of them in the way of ſtory, but that they were good *Mimicks*, did imitate the tunes of birds, and could ſpeak to two at once, as if *double-tongued*; that they were very ſtudious of *Aſtrology*, and worſhipped the Sun and the Hoſt of Heaven; that ſome of their Ambaſſadors coming to *Rome*, in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*, *Solem à Læva oriri mirati ſunt*, *&c.* admired to ſee the Sun riſe on the wrong ſide of them; and finally that the King was choſen by the people with reſpect had to his age and clemency; who being inthroned, appointed thirty Judges to adminiſter Iuſtice to the Subject, without the *Major part* of whom, ſentence of death was to paſs on no man. In following times this *Monarchy* (for ſuch it was in the time of thoſe Authors) was broken into many peeces: the *Portugals* finding nine Kings in it, at their firſt coming hither, all *homagers* or Tributaries to the King of *Colmuchi*. After that this their chief King was wickedly murdered by his *Barber*, who drove the other Kings out of the Country, and for a while uſurped the *Monarchy* to himſelf. Since which time, having once again recovered their Kingdoms, ſix of them (as I have ſomewhere read, but remember not where) put themſelves under the protection of the *Great Mongul*, and became his *Feudataries*.

Neer hereunto on the Coaſts of *Malabar*, are the Ilands which they call *Maldivæ*, many in number, but ſo called from the principall of them, as that from *Maldiva*, a noted and well-traded *Empory*, where the King reſideth. Not very plentifull of neceſſaries for the uſe of man, did not the *Palm* alone ſupply them in all other wants. Inhabited by an induſtrious and ſober people, who make themſelves long garments of Silk or Flax brought from other places, wherewith more modeſtly adorned than the reſt of the *Indians*: and by their fiſhing draw up ſhels of ſuch mingled colours, that they ſerve amongſt the *Siamites* inſtead of money.

10. *ILANDS OF LESSE NOTE.*

BEſides theſe *Ilands* repreſented to us by their ſeverall names, and ſome who have nothing but their names to take notice of; there be many thouſands of leſs note which we find in groſs: theſe *Indian* Seas being ſo prodigiouſly full of Ilands, that it is almoſt impoſſible to believe there ſhould be ſuch multitudes; but utterly impoſſible to credit what is told us of them. Some of the moſt remarkable of them we have touched upon, as *Acceſſories* or *Appurtenances* to ſome greater Ilands. The reſt we ſhall preſent only in the generall *muſter*, together with a taſt of ſome of thoſe ſtrange reports, with which ſome men have fouled their Papers, and abuſed their Readers. Of the *Philippines*, there are ſaid to be 11000. though but 40 of them in poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. More South, but over againſt *China*, is another *frie* of them affirmed by *Mariners* to be no fewer than 7448 and (as if nature had delighted to diſport her ſelf by ſowing Ilands in theſe Seas) another Shoal of them about *India*, no fewer in number than 12700: all which laid together would make a Continent as large as three or four parts of *Europe*; and are ſtill groaning under the burthen of *Heatheniſm*. Theſe *Ilands* ſtand ſo nigh unto one another, that they ſeem not only to ſuch as are a far to be all but one *firm land*; but whoſoever alſo paſſeth between them, may with his hands touch the boughs of the trees on the one ſide, and on the other. Of theſe and the other *Indian* Ilands, travellers relate many incredible fables; *viz.* that here be *hogs* that have two teeth growing out of their ſnowts, and

asmany behind their ears, of a ſpan and a half long; a *tree* whoſe Weſtern part is rank poiſon; and the Eaſtern part an excellent preſervative againſt it. They tell us alſo of a *fruit*, that whoſoever eateth, ſhall for the ſpace of 12 hours be out of his wits; and of a ſtone, on which whoſoever ſitteth, ſhall ſuddenly have a *rupture* in his body. We are told alſo that hereabouts are taken *Tortoiſes* of that bigneſs, that ten men might ſit and dine within one of the ſhells; And that there is a tree, which all the day time hath not a flower on it, but within half an hour after Sun-ſet, is full of them. All huge and monſtrous lies, and not fit for credit. *Galvano* reporteth alſo, that in ſome of theſe Ilands there is a *fruit*, of which if a woman that is w^h child eat, her child will preſently move; that there is a River plentifully ſtored with fiſh, whoſe water is yet ſo hot, that it doth immediately ſcald off the skin of any beaſt that is caſt into it; that ſome of the men have tailes; and moſt of their ſwine horns: that they have *oyſters* which they call *Brar*, the ſhels whereof are of ſo large compaſs, that they *Chriſten* Children in them; that in the Sea there are ſtones which grow and increaſe like fiſh, of which the beſt lime is made; that there is a bird called *Monicodiata*, which having no feet is in a continuall motion; and that there is a hole in the back of the Cock, in which the Hen doth lay her egges, and hatch her young ones. I bid no man to believe theſe Relations: for my part I ſay with *Horace*,

Quodcunq; oſtendis mihi ſic, incredulus odi.
What ever thus thou tell'ſt me, I
Will alwayes hate it as a lye.

And ſo much for theſe *Eaſtern-Ilands*.

An Advertiſement to the Reader touching the *Errata* of this part.

IN the firſt place the Reader is to be advertiſed that Fol. 63. from the 24th. line to the 32, I have adventured to prove the Alamatha of Ptolomy to be the Chamath, or Hamath-Sobab, of the Holy Scriptures: The place il pointed, but the judicious Reader will eaſily find out the ſcope and meaning. Yet if this ſhall not be approved of, I ſhould then think it to be that Elam or Helam, where David diſcomfited the Army of the Meſopotamians; mention whereof is made 2 Sam. 10. v. 16, 17. In the next place he is to know, that Fol. 91. within the compaſs of five lines, the victory which Aſa king of Judah obtained againſt the numerous Army of Ethiopians, is twice repeated: in the firſt place aſcribed to Iethir, in the next to Mareſha. But being that Scripture doth more clearly aſcribe it unto Mareſha, (though the other alſo hath good Authors) let that of Iethir be ſupplied in this manner following. 5. Iethir, or Iatthir, in the North Border of this Tribe, towards Eleutheropolis: a City antiently of the Levites, in S. Hieroms time called by the name of Iethira, and then repleniſhed altogether with Chriſtians; now nothing but the name remaining, 6. Mareſa, &c. And finally whereas Ajalon p. 87. is placed in the Tribe of Ephraim, and page 90 in the Tribe of Dan, the reaſon is, becauſe being ſituate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by ſome writers aſcribed to Dan, and by others to Ephraim. The like may be alſo ſaid of Michpas, mentioned alſo in two Tribes according as it is diſpoſed of by ſeverall Authors. Which being advertiſed, ſuch literal faults as do occurre in this third Book, may be mended thus.

FOl. 4. line 62. for nine read ſix 7. 37. for doubtfull r. doughty ib. 42. for right r. fight 11. 26 for Pamphylia r. Lycionia 12. 42. for perſpicuous r. perſpicacious 11. 22. for Rom r. Roni 14. 22. for Caouſum r. Cucuſum 18. 64. for pride and fa'l r. pride and folly 19. 6. for Streets r. Straits 20. 6 for Cycus r. Caicus 23. 1. for comprehended r. comprehending 25. 47. for Manle r. a mine 27. 67. for Cicilia r. Cilicia 29. 1. for Hiliades r. Miltiades 34. 29. for Eſburich r. Esbuith 38. 18. d. Stomalymne 60. 9. d. by the Iews or Hebrews once called Reblatha 61. 5. for long after r. not long after 63. 34. for and a Town r. if a Town ib. 37. for Barathius r. Barathene for here ſometimes are the Towns r. among the Towns ib. 38. for by which r. to which 65. 16. for this City r. the City of Damaſcus 71. 37 for forbearing r. forbidding 75. 21. for Amorites r. Moabites ib. for Reſon r. Recem 76. 28. for Livias r. Iulias 100. 34. for of which they were r. of which line Og and the Kings of Baſan were 113. 18. d. this and 114. 43. for Serah r. Selah 118. for 500 r. 50. fol. 120. 7 & 181. 23. for Tuledenſis r. Tudelenſis. 122. 27. for Trocomania r. Turcomania ib. 55. for herſe r. houſe 127. 4 d. containing Suſiana 131. 4 to Chaldæa, adde, and on the South with Suſiana, a Province of Perſia 132. 3. for Cities r. Rivers for Adiavenena r. Adiavena ib. 30. for 500000. r. 90000. 137. 19. for ab inſpiciendo r. ab Aras inſpiciendo 138. 11. for 30th. r. the 118. 51. for where r. when 159 17. for Gauzarania r. Gauzania 159. for which r. with ib. 61. for ſubdued r. till ſubdued 160. 11. for Naſmana r. Naſuana 163. 30. for Theſſalonians r. Theſſalians ib 64. for difference r. differenc 167. 62 for 24000. r. 240000. fol. 173. 37. for Travels r. Travellers 181. 48. for that reigned in Perſia r. the laſt of the race of Haalcu that reigned in Perſia 183. 26. for the 2d. r. the 3d. 190. 6. for that r. yet 195. 59. d. the chief 191. 50 for beſides r. ſides 197. 32 for it is now r. it is not now 207. 23. for Now r. Now that ib. 35. for Halam r. Harlem 210. 28. for maintenance r. manufacture 214. 27. for vanquiſhed r. vaniſhed 56. for Diamper r. Liamper 115. 1. for a Sect r. ſome 119. 29. for Angels r. angles 217. 18. for Nagarna r. Nigara 220. 3. to Paropamiſus adde with Arachoſia now called 222. 8. for Tamtheo r. Tamlico. 56. for Arra, r. Agra 223. 21. & 24. for Sanga r. India 224 for Delly r. Sanga 225 33 d. Delly and ib. 37 for Delly r. Cambaia ib. 45 for neer r. more neer 233 41 for Mandao r. Sanga 234 4 & 10 for Sanga r. Pengab.

A TABLE OF THE LONGITUDE and Latitude of the chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Book.

	A				*Eres*	87	40	40	50	*Ormus*	91	20	27	30
Achem	132	30	3	40	*Ergimul*	150	0	58	20	*Oxiana*	107	41	20	
Aden	82	0	13	50		F					P			
Agra	118	10	34	0	*Famagusta*	69	20	30	30	*Pacem*	132	0	4	0
Aleppo	72	30	38	0	*Fasso*	57	50	45	40	*Pedir*	131	10	4	0
Amboino	162	50	4	20	*A*	G				*Pegu*	135	0	20	10
Amodabat	169	50	23	10	*Gabara*	80	50	36	10	*Ptolomais*	66	40	29	40
Antioch	72	30	39	0	*Gaza*	70	50	39	10	*Persepolis*	90	40	30	40
Apamea	61	30	43	40	*Geſt*	107	30	26	30	*Patane*	138	10	6	50
Arachan	129	10	24	10	*Gilolo*	161	30	1	10		Q			
Ardovat	140	50	25	0	*Goa*	112	20	14	40	*Quianſu*	144	40	42	30
Arminig	76		41			H				*Quinſay*	153	0	40	0
Ava	142	30	27	50	*Heri*	99	50	30	0		R			
Amaſtro	66	30	44	30	*Hormar*	165	25	35	10	*Rhabana*	196	30	47	0
	B				*Hieruſalem*	72	20	33	0	*Rhodes*	61	40	37	20
Babylon	82	20	33	0		I				*Rages*	79	10	28	0
Bacen	88	50	42		*Jeſdi*	94	40	32	0	*Regis*	82	10	36	0
Balſora	82	40	31	10	*Indio*	105	40	38	0		S			
Banda	164	0	4	50	*A*	*Jericho*	73		33		*Sableſtan*	114	0	30	0
Baticalla	111	30	12	40	*Joppa*	71	20	34	0	*Sarmachan*	130	0	47	0
Pengala	125	10	21	20	*Istigias*	110	30	39	40	*Samaria*	72	20	33	40
Bethlehem	65	45	31	50		L				*Sciro*	57	30	41	10
Biſnagar	114	20	14	10	*Lequin Major*	165	0	28	0	*Siam*	139	10	14	30
Bulgar	88	30	54	30	*Liompo*	160	20	34	40	*Sidon*	72	10	36	30
	C				*Lop*	134	20	53	0	*Sind*	109	30	27	0
Cabul	112	20	31	0		M				*Siras*	90	40	30	40
Caindu	137	30	47	40	*Macao*	140	10	23	20	*Smirna*	60	20	40	30
Calecut	112	40	10	30	*Machan*	160	40	0	30	*Sigeſtan*	105	0	31	0
Cambalu	161	10	51	40	*Macin*	85	30	25	50	*Sultania*	92	40	37	20
Camboia	142	20	11	40	*Malaca*	136	30	2	50	*Succuit*	143	10	56	0
Campion	148	0	57	30	*Maldiva*	113	0	3	0	*Sunda*	138	8	6	40	*A*
Cananor	112	50	11	0	*Maliapar*	118	0	13	20	*Suſis*	73	40	48		
Candahor	110	40	33	40	*Mamora*	155	40	0	40	*Scarpanto*	62	10	36	0	
Capha	68	50	48	0	*Mandao*	121	0	25	0		T				
Calamines	149	0	9	0	*Mangalor*	112	0	11	30	*Tangu*	152	0	63	30	
Cauchin China	140	30	20	0	*Martavan*	134	30	17	10	*Talcan*	85	0	47	0	
Cranganor	113	0	9	40	*Meccha*	73	30	25	0	*Tarnaſſar*	119	40	17	10	
Ceraſo	73	0	44	40	*Medina Talnabi*	73	0	27	30	*Tarſus*	71	20	40	0	
Choromandel	115	20	22	30	*Meaco*	170	30	37	0	*Tauris*	90	30	38	10	
Cheſmur	115	10	3	0	*Mindanao*	160	40	7	0	*Tenduc*	168	30	67	30	
Chianſu	147	30	27	0	*Moltan*	114	20	24	30	*Thebet*	138	50	44	0	
Chirman	98	30	27	30	*Multan*	109	50	29	20	*Trabezond*	74	30	44	40	
Cincapura	136	40	1	20	*Mongul*	159	29	60	40	*Tripolis*	72	20	37	0	
Cochin	114	0	9	40	*Muſhal*	84	0	34	50	*Troy*	59	0	42	30	
Colmucho	117	30	6	40		N				*Tyre*	72	10	36	3	
Comori	115	10	7	10	*Naguian*	97	0	53	30	*Tidore*	160	40	0		
Conlan	114	30	7	10	*Naim*	94	10	33	40		V				
Cantan	149		25		*Nayman*	140	0	65	10	*Van*	86	30	36	50	
Chaul	109	40	17	30	*Narſinga*	119	0	18	0	*Varma*	130	20	20	10	
	D				*Nazareth*	72	40	34	10		X				
Damaſcus	74	30	35	0	*Nicomedia*	63	10	44	20	*Xamdu*	168	40	55	40	
Decan	113	20	14	0	*Niſabul*	102	10	38	40	*Xara*	130	0	17	0	
Delly	114	0	19	10	*Nice*	57	41	40			Z				
Derbent	84	50	42	20	*Ninive*	82	36	40		*Zagaſpi*	101	20	42	30	
Diu	108	0	20	30		O				*Zama*	74	40	11	40	
Dornate	137	50	7	50	*Odia*	138	30	12	0	*Zibit*	70	0	22	20	
	E				*Onor*	111	40	19	10						
Epheſus	60	30	39	40	*Orixa*	118	40	29	40						

The end of the third Book.

COSMOGRAPHIE,
The Fourth Book:

PART I.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF
AFRICA,

AND ALL THE PRINCIPAL
Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

C. JUL. SOLIN. cap.33.

Vltra hos (Æthiopes) monstrosæ gentium facies; Aliæ sine naribus æquali totius oris planitie, informes habent cultus: Aliis concreta Ora sunt modicoque tantum foramine calamis avenarum pastus hauriunt. Nonnullæ linguis carent, in vicem sermonis utentes nutibus, manibusque.

PTOLOM. GEOG. l.1. cap.5.

Constat per ipsas temporum traditiones, quasdam partes Continentis terræ quæ à nobis habitatur, nondum propter difficilem magnitudinis peragrationem, ad notitiam pervenisse: quasdam vero non tales, ac fertur, esse, &c. necesse ergo est ut ibi novissimis temporis nostri traditionibus penitus quasi adhæreamus.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Seile*, 1652.

THE ATLANT

ICKE SEA

THE AETHIOPIAN OCEAN

THE EQUATOR OF THE ÆQUINOCTIAL LINE

THE TROPICKE OF CAPRICORNE

Ylles of Cabo Verde somtimes Hesperides or Gorgades

The Fortunates Iles now caled ý Canaries

Ý Straights of Gibraltar

NUMIDIA now called BILEDULGERID

THE INNER LYBIA

what this day is called SARRA which is as much to say as a desert

ý Desert of Cano

THE COUNTRY OF GUALATA KING

THE COUNTRY OF GENHOA

Mandingua

Bangana

Caragoles

GUINEA

Will: Trevethen Sculp

AFRICÆ Descriptio Nova Impensis Henrici Seile 1652

PART OF ASIA

MEDITERRANEAN SEA

Cyprus

ARABIA

Y ARABIA

AND THE

INDIAN SEA

THE EAST OCEAN

THE KINGDOME OF NUBIA

The desert of Barca

Ormus

Mascate

Ide Masyra

C de Masyra

Cd Batu

Dofar

Cd Fartaque

Cd Guardafui

Xel

Aden

Babelmandel

The Land Zocotora

Abbadel Curia Zocotora

Cd da Fug

Dara

Badis

Balli

Dobal

Dangal

Barbora

Zeila

Arabia Felix

Mecca

Suaquem

Dancali

Amasen

Angote

Tigrai

Bolighe

Vangue

Gojam

Beleguanze

Fatigar

Ola hi

Barua

Barnagais

Dembea

Gojam

Gojame

Gojame

Gojame

COSMOGRAPHIE,

The Fourth Book:

PART I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE and HISTORIE OF

AFRICK,

And all the chief Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF *AFRICK.*

AFRICK is bounded on the East by the *Red-Sea*, and Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Asia*; on the West, by the main *Atlantick* Ocean, interposing betwixt it and *America*; on the North, by the *Mediterranean* Sea, which divides it from *Europe* and *Anatolia*; and on the South, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean, separating it from *Terra Australis incognita*, or the Southern Continent; Parted from all the rest of the World, except *Asia* only, to which joyned by a narrow *Isthmus* not above 60 miles in length. Memorable for the great design which *Cleopatra* the last Queen of *Egypt* had upon it, which in brief was this: When *Mark Anthonie* was encountred by *Augustus* in the Naval battel of *Actium*, *Cleopatra* fearing the success, fled through the midst of all his Fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her guard; Being come to the North part of this *Isthmus*, she gathered together all her portable treasures, and intended to hoist her shipping out of the *Mediterranean*, and hale them over the Land to the *Red-Sea*; whence she had purposed to take sail, and together with her Sweetheart *Anthonie* and some other choicest friends, to seek out some other place of dwelling far enough from the *Romans*; But from this, *Anthonie*, who fled after her, and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at last disswade her.

The Form hereof is like a *Pyramis* reversed; the *Basis* of which, from *Tanger* on the Streit of *Gibraltar* to the point where it joyneth unto *Asia*, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 *Italian* miles; the *Conus* of it very narrow; But from the *Conus* or *Pyris* to the most Northern part of the *Basis*, it extendeth it self the space of 4155 miles, being much lesse then *Asia*, and far bigger then *Europe*.

By the *Grecians* it is called most commonly *Libya*, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the *Æthiopians*, *Alkebu-lam*; by the *Indians*, *Besecath*. But the most noted name thereof is *Africa*, which *Josephus* out of *Cleodemus* and *Polyhistor*, deriveth from *Epher* or *Apher*, one of the Nephews of *Abraham* by *Midian* the son of *Keturah*. The *Arabians*, by whom it is called *Ifrichia*, derive it from the Verb *Faruch*, signifying to *divide*; because more visibly divided both from

from their own Country, and the reſt of the World, then any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the *Greek* Fablers fetch it from one *Afer* a Companion of *Hercules*, whom he attended unto *Spain*. Some fetch it out of *Aphar*, an Hebrew word, ſignifying *Duſt*, agreeable to its ſandie and duſtie ſoile: *Feſtus* an old Grammarian, from *A Privativum*, and the Greek word φρίκη, which imports a Country void of cold, as ſuitable to the fiery temper of the Aire. By *Bochartus*, who brings all from the old *Phenician*, it is ſaid to be derived from *Peruc*, *Spica*, an Ear of corn; which mollified into *Feric*, came at laſt to *Africk*, that is to ſay, a *Country plentifull in Corn*. Which Etymologie of his may receive ſome countenance from that great plenty of Corn which was bred in this Country, eſpecially in thoſe parts hereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africk*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Barbary*; the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africk*. But in my mind, (if that from the Hebrew *Epher* or *Aphar*, be not worth accepting) I ſhould prefer the *Etymon* of *Feſtus* before any other; unleſſe we might be ſure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Suidas* telleth us it was: for then without all peradventure we would ſeek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in ſome elder writers, i.e. *Olympia*, *Oceanica*, *Eſchatica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonis*, *Heſperia*, *Ortygia*, and perhaps ſome others, it is enough to our deſign to take notice of them.

It is ſituate for the moſt part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Æquator* croſſing it almoſt in the very midſt; and for that cauſe ſuppoſed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with ſuch ſtrange people, as hardly did deſerve to be counted men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, gueſſing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by ſuch ſtrange Brutes, as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like dogs: 2. The *Sciapodæ*, who with the ſhadow of their Foot could and did uſe to hide themſelves from the heats of the Sun: 3. The *Gamoſaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the uſe of weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the ſight of men: 4. The *Blemmyæ*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their breaſts: 5. The *Ægypani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be men, but the ſhape and making of their bodies. Theſe people (as they thought) poſſeſſed ſome ſmall portion of the mid-land parts of this great Country; the reſt they knew not, or conceived to be unhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late diſcoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Country proving in moſt parts to be well inhabited; and the coolneſſe of the nights, by miſts, dewes, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

Quodq; die Solis vehementi excanduit æſtu,
Humida nox reſicit, paribusq; refrigerat horis.
That is to ſay,
What the Sun burns by day, the Night renewes,
And doth as much refreſh with moyſtning dewes.

For notwithſtanding that it be in ſome places full of ſandy deſarts, a diſeaſe incident to ſome parts of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and other Countries of a more Northernly ſituation; yet it is ſaid by ſome, who ſpeak it upon knowledge, that the greateſt part of thoſe Regions which lie under the Line or near it, (both in *America* and here) have ſo many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, ſuch abundance of Cedars and other ſtately Trees of ſhade, ſo many ſorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing and at all times beautified with bloſſoms; as may make them hold compariſon with any others ſuppoſed to be of a more temperate ſituation.

But as was ſaid before, the Ancients knew not much of this Country, and therefore ſpoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-ſay. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian*, imployed by that State, diſcovered much of the Weſtern Shores of this great *Peninſula*, yet he ventured not much into the Land; nor did his *Journal* (either ſuppreſſed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to purſue thoſe Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* tongue, but ſince tranſlated into *Greek*, and publiſhed at *Baſil* by *Sigiſmund Gelenius*, ann. 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that ſome *Phœnicians* in the dayes of *Pharao Neco*, paſſing down the *Red Sea*, ſhould ſail about the Coaſts of *Africk* to the Streits of *Gibraltar*, and ſo return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what thoſe Ages diſbelieved or eſteemed impoſſible, is now grown ordinary; the *Circumnavigations* about this Country being very frequent, ſince firſt performed by *Vaſques de Gama*, an Adventurous *Portugal*, in the year 1497. by means whereof theſe latter Ages are better inſtructed in the particulars of it then the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman* Empire and ſome parts adjoyning upon *Egypt*, more then the ſtrange Beaſts, and more ſtrange Reports which they had from hence, occaſioning hereby the By-word, *Africa ſemper aliquid apportat novi.*

Touching the State of *Chriſtianity* in this great Continent, it is very weak; moſt of thoſe Regions which *Chriſtian religion* had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mahometiſm* having ſince regained from *Chriſtianity*: Inſomuch that not only the North-part of *Africk* near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Goſpel once ſo exceedingly flouriſhed, that three hundred *Catholike* Biſhops were at one time baniſhed thence by *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*, is at this preſent utterly void of *Chriſtians*, (except ſome few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*) but even in all this vaſt Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely *Chriſtian*, but the Kingdom of *Habaſſia* only, and perhaps not that; none where the *Chriſtians* are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but only *Egypt*;

Egypt; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and some few Towns upon those Coasts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have those Nations gotten by our late Discoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godlinesse*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or dispersed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly so called, *Egyptians*, *Habassines*, *Arabians*, *Jewes*, and some *European* Christians: the *European* Christians only in their Forts and Garrisons, the *Jewes* in all the good Towns where Trade is stirring, the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-coasts bordering on the *Red-Sea*, but wandering in great herds or companies all about the Country with their wives and children; the *Habassines* and *Egyptians* in their severall Kingdoms: The *Africans* again subdivided into *Moors* and *Caferes*, of which the *Moors* are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*, the *Caferes* dwelling in the inland and more Southern parts, not discovered antiently, in their wonted *Gentilisme*. Accordingly, the Languages herein spoken are different also; The *Portugal* or *Spanish* being used by the *Europeans*; 2. The *Chaldee* or *Syriack* by the *Jewes*; 3. The *Arabick* by those of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* only; 4. The *Habassine*, and 5. The *Egyptian*, in those Kingdoms; 6. That called *Aquel-amarig*, or the *Noble language*, supposed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with some *Arabian* words, and spoken generally in *Morocco*, and so amongst some of the inhabitants of *Barbary* neareſt to Mount *Atlas*; 7. That named *Sungai*, used in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8. That called *Gubeo*, spoke by those of *Æthiopia inferior*, and such of the *Land of Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained only the *Dioceses* of *Egypt*, *Africk*, and part of the Dioceſe of *Spain*. The Dioceſe of *Egypt* subdivided into the Provinces of, 1. *Libya superior*, 2. *Libya inferior*, 3. *Thebais*, 4. *Augustanica*, 5. *Arcadia*, and 6. *Ægyptus* specially so called; distinguished by other names in the *Nicene* Councel: That of *Africk*, into *Tripolitana*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Zeugitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, 6. and *Mauritania Sitifensis*; that other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the Dioceſe of *Spain*. The reſt of this *Peninsula*, as they never conquered, so it never was much taken into consideration. But being more perfectly discovered now then in former times, (though not so perfectly as that I can be able to promise an exact accompt of it) it is divided commonly into these seven parts; 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Barbary* or the *Roman Africk*, 3. *Numidia*, 4. *Libya*, neither of which the same with those of the antient *Romans*, 5. *Terra Nigritarum*. 6. *Æthiopia superior*, and 7. *Æthiopia inferior*. Such of the Islands as do properly belong unto any of these, shall make up the eighth. In the Descriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plautanus*, and begin with *Egypt*, as being peopled and possessed before all the residue.

OF *EGYPT*.

EGYPT is bounded on the East with *Idumæa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the West with *Barbary*, *Numidia*, and part of *Libya*; on the North with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the South with *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Abassine* Empire.

This Country in the holy Scriptures is called *Misraim*, from *Misraim* the son of *Chus*, and grandson of *Cham*, by whom first planted after the flood; the footsteps of which name do remain amongst the *Arabians*, who still call it *Misre*. Named in the same regard in the Book of *Psalms*, the *Land of Ham*; a name retained in some of the sacred offices of the old *Egyptians*, where (as *Plutarch* witnesseth) it was called *Chemia*, for *Chamia* no doubt, as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the first stock of their nation. In Prophane Authors it hath had the several names of, 1. *Aeria*, from the serenity of the Aire, which is never clouded; 2. *Potamia*, from the propinquitie of the Sea, washing two sides of it; 3. *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges* a supposed King thereof; 4. *Melampodus*, from the black colour of the soil; 5. *Osiria*, from their God *Osiris*, here in high esteem; and finally, 6. *Ægyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the reſt, either from *Ægyptus* the Brother of *Danaus* once King hereof, (in the stories of this Nation better known by the name of *Rameses*) or from *Ægyptus* the old name of the River *Nilus*, by whose annual overflowings made both rich and famous; and of the soil and rubbish which that River brought with it from the higher Countries, it was by some supposed to have been raised into firm land and gained out of the sea; Called therefore in some Writers by the name of *Nili donum*, or the gift of *Nilus*. Yet some there be who would have it called *Ægyptus* for *Aigupthus*, and that derived from *Ai*, and *Coptus*, which signifieth the Land or Country of *Coptus*, that being supposed to have been antiently the chief City of it. And some again will have the name derived from *Chioth*, by which the *Ægyptians* call themselves to this very day.

It conteineth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Asna*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Æthiopia*, 562 *Italian* miles; in breadth (exclusively of *Cyrene* and *Libya*) from *Rosetta* unto *Damiata*, or from the most Westerly Branch of *Nilus* to the farthest East, 160 of the same miles; to which the adding of those two Provinces make a great accession: Situate under the second and fift *Climates*, so that the longest day in Summer is but 13 houres and an half.

By reason of this Southernly situation of it, the Air is here very hot and offensive, so that to avoid the insupportable heats thereof, and to have the benefit of some fresh wind, the Inhabitants are accustomed to build high Towers in all their Towns, on which they use to solace and refresh themselves.

The

The ſoyl made fruitfull by the overflowings of *Nilus*, (whereof more anon) is ſo exceeding plentifull of all ſorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum populi Romani*, the *Granarie* or Store-houſe of the People of *Rome*: which Citie it did annually furniſh with four moneths proviſion; inſomuch that it was ſaid by *Plinie*, that the greatneſs of the *Roman* Empire could not long continue without the corn and wealth of *Egypt*, the plenty or famine of that City depending wholly on this Country. It abounds alſo with rich Paſtures, in which they feed great ſtore of *Camels*, Horſes, Aſſes, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, greater of growth then uſually in moſt places elſe; and by reaſon of the mooriſhneſs of the Country, they have great ſtore of Fowls: Of Poultrie they have alſo good numbers about their houſes, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the ſitting of the *Hen*, but the heat of *Furnaces*, or Ovens; in which their eggs are orderly laid in dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is alſo liberally furniſhed with great plenty of Mettals, ſome precious Stones, good Wines, and the choiceſt Fruits, as Limons, Orenges, Pomgranats, Citrons, Figs, Cherries, and ſuch as theſe, excellent both for taſte and colour; and of Palm-trees a great abundance; of which though we have ſpoke before, yet we ſhall here more fully declare the nature and ſtrange properties of them: They grow in couples, Male and Female, both thruſt forth Cods full of ſeed, but the Female is only fruitfull, and that not except growing by the Male, and having his ſeeds mixt with hers. The pith of theſe Trees is an excellent Sallad, better then an *Hartichoke*, which in taſte it very much reſembleth. Of the branches they make Bedſteds, Latices, &c. of the leaves, Baskets, Mats, Fans, &c. of the outward huſk of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner, Bruſhes. The fruit it bears, beſt known by the name of *Dates*, are in taſte like Figs: and finally, it is ſaid to yield whatſoever is neceſſary to the life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never ſo ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the burden, but ſtill to reſiſt the heavineſs of it, and to endeavour to lift and raiſe it ſelf the more upwards. For this cauſe planted in *Church-yards* in the *Eaſtern* Countries, as an *Embleme* of the *Reſurrection*: inſtead whereof we uſe the *Ewe-tree* in theſe cold Regions. For the ſame reaſon, given to *Conquerours* as a token of *Victory*; it being the Embleme or *Hieroglyphick* of a Souldiers life. Hence *figuratively* uſed for precedency; as, *Huic equidem conſilio palmam do*, in *Terence*; ſometimes for the *Victory* it ſelf; as, *Non auferent tamen hanc palmam*, in *Plinie*, & plurimarum *palmarum* homo, for a man that had won many prizes in the *Fence-School*, as in *Tully*, *pro Roſcio*; more naturally for the ſign of Victory, as in that of *Horace*,

——— Palmaque nobilis,
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.
That is to ſay,
The Palm, *of victory a ſigne,*
Equal's men to the Powers Divine.

The People, though the Countrie lie in the ſame Clime with *Barbarie*, are not black, but tawnie, or *Olive-coloured*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela* to weep and mourn over the bodies of their dead, daubed over with dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having imbalmed them to lay them in ſome inward room of their Houſes: the men to keep themſelves at home, for the houſhold buſineſſes, the women to follow merchandiſe and affairs abroad; the men to carry burdens upon their heads, and the women theirs upon their ſhoulders: *Antipodes* in theſe laſt to moſt other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious People, the firſt Inventers of *Geomotry*, *Arithmetick*, *Phyſick*, as alſo of *Aſtronomy*, *Necromancy*, and *Sorcery*. They firſt taught the uſe of *Letters* to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accuſtomed at the firſt to expreſs their conceits in the ſhape of Birds, Beaſts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*; of which two or three Examples out of *Orus*, will not be impertinent. For *Eternity* they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: for a *Year*, they painted a ſnake, with his tail in his mouth, to ſhew how one year ſucceeding another, kept the World ſtill in an endleſs circle. For a *moneth*, they painted a Palm-tree, becauſe at every new Moon, it ſendeth forth a new branch. For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; as well for that he ſoared ſo high, as that he governeth the leſſer birds. For *integrity* of life, they painted fire and water, both becauſe theſe Elements are in themſelves moſt pure, and becauſe all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was *abominable* to the Gods, they painted a Fiſh, becauſe in their Sacrifices the Prieſts never uſed them; and the like. From this manner of expreſſing ones ſelf, the invention of *Letters* is thought to have had its original (though learnt by them no queſtion of the children of *Iſrael*, when they lived amongſt them:) the Hiſtory whereof, take briefly and word for word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formas animalium Ægyptii, &c.* The *Egyptians* firſt of all expreſſed the conceptions of the minde, by the ſhapes of beaſts; and the moſt ancient monuments of mans memory, are ſeen graven in ſtones; and they ſay, that they are the firſt inventers of *Letters*. Then the *Phœnicians*, becauſe they were ſtrong at Sea, brought them into *Greece*; and ſo they had the glory of that, which they received from others: For there goeth a report, that *Cadmus* ſailing thither in a *Phœnician* ſhip, was the Inventer of that Art among the *Greeks*, when they were yet unexpert and rude. Some report that *Cecrops* the *Athenian*, or *Livius* the *Theban*, and *Palamedes* the *Grecian*, did finde out ſixteen Characters at the time of the *Trojan* War; and that afterward *Simonides* added the reſt. But in *Italy* the *Etrurians* learned them of *Demaratus* the *Corinthian*; and the *Aborigines*, of *Evander* the *Arcadian*. So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phœnicians* were

were the first inventers of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-masters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with safety maintain, having *Lucan* in consent with *Tacitus*.

Phœnices *primi* (*fama si creditur*) *ausi*
Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris.

Phœnicians *first* (*if fame may credit have*)
Dar'd in rude Characters *our words ingrave.*

Of this minde also is *Isidore* of *Sevill* in the first book of *Originations*, who also addeth, that for that cause the *Fronts* of Books, and the *Titles* of Chapters were written in *red letters*, as it is by some still in use. *Hinc est quod &* Phœniceo colore *librorum capita describantur*, *quia ab ipsis litera initium habuere*, *cap.* 3. As for these less vulgar Letters which the *Latines* call *Cyphræ*, and whereof every exercised *Statesman* have peculiar to himself; they were first invented by *Julius Cæsar*, when he first began to think of the *Roman* Monarchy; and were used by him in his Letters to his more private and tryed friends, that if by misfortune they should be intercepted, the contents of them should not be understood; ὅπως ἄγνωστα τοῖς πολλοῖς ἦ τὰ χρήσιμα, *ne obvia literarum lectio cuivis esset*. *Augustus* one of the greatest *Politicians* of the World, had another kinde of obscure writing; for in his Letters of more secrecy and importance, he always used τὸ δεύτερον ἀεὶ στοιχεῖον, to put the letter immediatly following in the order of the *Alphabet*, for that which in ordinary writing he should have used. As for *Brachygraphie*, or the Art of writing by short *Characters*, so usefull for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is spoken: I finde in *Dion*, that *Mæcenas* that great *favorite* of *Augustus Cæsar*, and favourer of Learning, did first invent them, *ad celeritatem scribendi*, for the speedier dispatch of writing: καὶ αὐτός σημεῖα γραμμάτων τινα (they are the very words of my Author) ἀεὶς τάχος ἐξεῦρε. *Isidor* in the second Chapter of his book above-mentioned, ascribeth it to *Aquila* the *Libertus* or *freed-man* of this *Mæcenas*: and to *Tertius Persannius*, and *Philargius*, who added to this invention. Yet had all they their chief light in it from *Tullius Tito*, a *freed-man* of *Cicero's* who had undertaken and compassed it in the *Prepositions*, but went no further. At the last it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into order and method; the whole volume of his contractions consisting of 5000 words. *Deinde* Seneca *contracto omnium*, *digestóque & aucto numero*, *opus effecit in quinque millia*. But now I make haste to take a survey of these *Egyptians* as they stand at the present, much differing from the ingenuity and abilities of their Predecessors.

For such as have observed the nature of the Modern *Egyptians*, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Ancestors, prone to innovations devoted to luxury, cowardly, cruel, addicted naturally to cavill, and to detract from whatsoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other men more observant then faithfull, of a wit much inclining to craftiness, and very eager on their profit: Of person, of a mean stature, tawnie of complexion, and spare of body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities apply themselves to *merchandise*; grow rich by Trading; reasonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in their dress and Fashion. Those in the Country who betake themselves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a savage and nasty People, crusted over with dirt, and stinking of smoak; fit company for none but those of their own condition. Nothing now left amongst them of the *Arts* of their Ancestors but an affectation which they have unto *Divinations*; to *Fortune-telling* great pretenders, by which, and by some *cheating-tricks* in which very well practised, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and so get their livelyhood: occasioning the *vagabonds* and straglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the same false Arts, to assume their names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an *Hochpot* or medley of many Nations, *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Turks*; the natural *Egyptian* making up the least part of the reckoning.

The *Women* of the same complexion with the men, but well formed and featured, did they not too much affect a seeming *corpulency*; which if they cannot get in flesh, they will have in cloaths. Very fruitfull in child bearing, and quick of dispatch when they are in labour: some of them having three or four children at a Birth; those that are born in the eighth moneth living to good Age, and not in danger of death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities, cover their faces with black *Cypres* bespotted with red; their armes, and ancles, garnished with bracelets and hoops of gold, silver, or some other Mettal. Those in the Country, for a vail use some dirty clout, having holes onely for their eyes, which little is too much to see and abstain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the custom in all places else, the women use to make water standing, and the men couring on their knees.

The old *Egyptians* were so eminent in Arts and Learning, that from them *Pythagoras* and *Democritus* learnt their *Philosophy*; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato* their Forms of Government. *Orpheus* and *Homer* their Poetical fictions of the Gods. Particularly, here flourished *Aristarchus* that famous and learned *Grammarian*, 2. *Herodian*, a diligent Student and searcher into curious Arts, 3. *Ammonius*, the Master of *Plotinus*, 4. *Didymus*, surnamed *Chalcenteros*, for his indefatigable industry in several Sciences, 5. *Manethon*, an old *Historian*, of whom we have nothing but some fragments, 6. *Appianus*, an Historian of a later date, whose works are extant, 7. *Didymus* the *Grammarian*, 8. *Cl. Ptolomæus*, the

the Geographer; 9 *Achilles Statius* the Poet; 10. And before all, the profound Philosopher *Mercurius*, surnamed *Trismegistus*. And after their conversion to the faith of *Christ*, 1. *Pantænus*, the first Reader of Divinitie in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2. *Origen*, and 3. *Clemens Alexandrinus*, both skilled in the universality of Learning; 4. *Dionysius*; 5. *Athanasius*, and 6. *Cyril*; all three Bishops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their severall times. Now nothing but ignorance and Barbarism to be found amongst them.

The *Christian* faith was first here planted by S. *Mark*, whom all Antiquity maketh the first Bishop of *Alexandria*. His successors, till the time of *Heraclus* and *Dionysius*, chosen continually out of the *Presbyterie* or Cathedral-Clergie; afterwards out of the *Clergie* at large. Their Jurisdiction setled by a Canon of the Council of *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole Diocese of *Egypt*, (taking the word *Diocese* in the Civil notion) containing *Libya*, *Pentapolis*, and *Egypt* specially so called; to which, though *Epiphanius* addes *Thebais*, *Maræotica*, and *Ammoniaca*, yet he addes nothing in effect. *Thebais* and *Maræotica* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniaca* was of *Libya*. Afterwards the *Æthiopian* or *Abassine* Churches became subject to this *Patriarch* also, and do acknowledge to this day some relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens*, and the subjugation of this Country, *Christianity* fell here into great decay; languishing so sensibly since those times, especially since the conquest of it by the *Turks*, that whereas *Brochardus* in his time reckoned three hundred thousand *Christians*, in the last estimate which was made of them, they were found to be but fifty thousand. This small remainder of them, commonly called *Cophti*, either from the Greek word κόπτω, *scindo*, because they retained the use of *Circumcision* with their *Christianity*, or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reside; or finally by *abbreviation* from *Ægophti*, corrupted from *Ægyptii*, their own National name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithstanding in some particulars, in some from all other *Christian* Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The points most proper to them, 1. Using *Circumcision* with their *Baptism*, but rather as a *National* then *Religious* custome; though in that sense also laid aside, as is said by some, by the perswasion of some *Legates* from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Caire*, An. 1583. 2. Conferring all sacred Orders under the *Priesthood*, on Infants immediately after Baptism; their Parents, till they come to sixteen years of age, performing what they promised in their behalf, *viz.* Chastitie, fasting on Wednesday and Friday, and the four Lents of the year. 3. Reputing Baptism not to be of any efficacie, except ministred by the Priest, in the open Church, in what extremity soever. 4. And yet not *baptizing* any Children till the fortieth day, though they die in the *interim*. 5. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Eucharist*, assoon as Christened. 6. Contracting marriages even in the second Degree of Consanguinitie, without dispensation. 7. Observing not the *Lords day*, nor any of the *Festivals*, except only in *Cities*. 8. And in their Liturgies, reading the Gospel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, 1. Administring the Sacrament of the *Lords Supper* under both kinds. 2. Administring in leavened bread. 3. Admitting neither *Extreme unction*, nor the use of the *Eucharist* to those that are sick. 4. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead. 5. Not using Elevation in the act of Administring. And 6. Reckoning the *Roman* Church for *Heretical* and esteeming no better of the *Latines* then they do of the *Jewes*. In these opinions they continue hitherto against all *Opponents* and perswasions: For though *Baronius* in the end of the sixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath registred an Ambassage from *Marcus* the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8. wherein he is said to have submitted himself and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*; yet upon further search made, it was found but a *Cheat*, devised to hold up the reputation of a sinking cause. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* still adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practise and solicitation of some busie *Friars*, have been drawn to be of the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, and to use her *Liturgies*.

What their Religion was before *Christianity*, is obvious to the eye of a vulgar Reader; even the worst of *Gentilism*; these People not only worshipping the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, creatures of greatest use and glory; nor only sacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the rest of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their severall times of some publike benefit to mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing Divine honours to *Crocodiles*, Snakes, Serpents, *Garlick*, Leeks and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the *Christian* Fathers, so most deservedly exposed unto publike scorn, by the pens of the Poets.

Porrum & cæpe nefas violare, & lædere morsu.
Felices populi, quibus hæc nascuntur in Hortis
Numina. — *Quis nescit qualia demens*
Ægyptus portenta *colat*, &c.

Which may be rendred to this purpose.

To bite an Onion *or a* Leek, *is more*
Then deadly sinne. The Numen *they adore*
Growes in their Gardens. *And who doth not know*
What monstrous Shapes for Gods in Egypt *go?*

But the God most esteemed by them, and by all sorts of the *Egyptians* the most adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Oxe, with a white star in his forehead, the *Effigies* of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs only

only in his tail. But it ſeemeth his *Godſhip* was not ſo much reſpected by Strangers. For *Cambyſes* when he conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his ſword thorow the thigh, and cauſed all his Prieſts to be ſcourged: And *Auguſtus* being here, would not vouchſafe to ſee him, ſaying, Θεὸν ἀλλ' οὐχὶ σὸν σεβόμενον βούν ἐθέλω ἰδεῖν, that the Gods and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the object of his devotions. A ſpeech moſt truly worthy ſo brave an Emperour.

Amongſt the *Rarities* of this Country, ſome were the works of nature, and ſome of induſtry and magnificence. Of this laſt kinde, I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramides*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their ſeveral kindes, the envy of the Ages paſt, and the aſtoniſhment of the preſent. Of the *Labyrinth* we ſhall ſpeak anon, in the courſe of our buſineſs. Look we now on the *Pyramides*, many in number, three moſt celebrated, and one the principal of all, ſituate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Weſtern banks of *Nilus*. This laſt, the chief of the Worlds *ſeven Wonders*, ſquare at the bottom, is ſuppoſed to take up eight acres of ground. Every ſquare 300. ſingle paces in length, aſcended by 255. ſteps, each ſtep above three Foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top conſiſting but of three ſtones onely, yet large enough for 60. men to ſtand upon. No ſtone ſo little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the reſt for others of thoſe mighty Princes) who imployed in it day by day twenty yeers together, no fewer then 366000. men continually working on it. The charges which they put him to, in no other food then *Garlick*, Radiſhes, and Onions, being computed at a thouſand and eight hundred *Talents*. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is ſaid to be the work of a daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finiſh her Fathers undertaking, and raiſe her own unto the height, by the proſtitution of her body, requiring but one ſtone towards the Work from each one of her Cuſtomers; but the tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater Truth, though affirmed by *Joſephus*, and ſuppoſed by many good *Divines*, that the drudgery put upon the *Iſraelites* did concern theſe *Pyramides*: the *Materials* of theſe works being *ſtone*; their imployment, *brick*: But paſt all doubt, advanced by thoſe conſiderate Princes upon good advice, and not for oſtentation only of their power and glories. For by this means they did not only eternize their memory to ſucceeding Ages, but for the preſent kept the Subject from ſloth and idleneſs; who being a People prone unto *Innovations*, were otherwiſe like enough to have fed that ſin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

Next theſe *Pyramides*, I place the Iſle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Iſland oppoſite unto *Alexandria*, once a mile diſtant from the Land, but joyned to the Continent by *Cleopatra* on this occaſion. The *Rhodians* then Lords of the Sea, uſed to exact ſome tribute or acknowledgement out of every Iſland within thoſe Seas; and conſequently out of this. Their Ambaſſadors ſent unto *Cleopatra* to demand this tribute, ſhe detained with her ſeven days, under colour of celebrating ſome ſolemn *Feſtivals*; and in the mean time, by making huge dams and banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and ſpeed, united the Iſland to the ſhore. Which finiſhed, ſhe ſent the *Rhodians* away empty-handed, with this witty *jeere*, telling them *that they were to take Toll of the Iſlands, and not of the Continent.* A work of great rarity and magnificence, both for the bigneſs of it, taking up ſeven Furlongs of ground, and for that cauſe called *Heptaſtadium*, and that incredible ſpeed wherewith it was finiſhed. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in *Greek* and *Latine Pharos*, by the name of the Iſland, it was built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus* for the benefit of Sailors (the Seas upon that coaſt being very unſafe and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deſervedly eſteemed another of the Worlds ſeven Wonders: the other five being 1. the *Mauſoleum*, 2. the Temple of *Epheſus*, 3. the Walls of *Babylon*, 4. the *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes*, and 5. the *Statue* of *Jupiter Olympicus*. This Watch-tower, or *Pharos*, was of wonderfull height, aſcended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein lights burned nightly, as a direction to ſuch as ſailed by Sea. The *Materials* were white marble: the chief Architect, *Soſtratus* of *Gnidos*, who ingraved on the work this inſcription, *Soſtratus* of Gnidos, *the ſon of* Dexiphanes, *to the Gods protectors, for the ſafeguard of Sailers.* This inſcription he covered with *plaiſter*, and thereon ingraved the name and title of the King the Founder: to the end that the Kings name being ſoon waſted and waſhed away, his own which was written in marble, might be eternized to poſterity, as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cæſar* purſuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having diſcontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Souldiers, had his Navy which here lay at anchor aſſaulted by *Achillas*, one of young *Ptolomies* ſervants, *Cæſar* himſelf being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the skirmiſh he haſted to the *Pharos*, meaning to ſuccour his Navy in perſon: but the *Egyptians* making towards him on all ſides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and ſwim for his life. And though to avoid their Darts he ſometimes ducked: yet held he ſtill his left hand above the water, and in it divers Books, which he carried ſafe unto his ſhips; and animating his men, got the victory. It is ſaid that *Egypt* hath only two doors; the one by land, which is the ſtrong Town of *Peleuſium*, or *Damiata*; the other by water, which is this *Pharus*: *Tota Ægyptus maritimo acceſſu*, Pharo; *pedeſtre verò*, Peluſio, *velut clauſtris munita exiſtimatur*, ſaith *Oppius*.

Amongſt the rarities of Nature, we may reckon thoſe ſtrange Beaſts and Fiſhes, proper almoſt unto this Country, *i.e.* the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horſe) the *Ibis*, the *Aſpe*, and many ſeverall ſorts of Serpents. To ſpeak of which particularly were a work more proper to a *Natural* Hiſtory, then a *Geographical*. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* then

all the reſt, cannot be parted with in ſilence: A creature of a ſtrange nature, hatched of an egg no bigger then that of a *Turkie*; and yet increaſing to the length of thirty foot: his tail as long as all the reſt of his body, with which he is accuſtomed to intail his prey, and draw it into the River: His feet armed with claws, and his back with impenetrable ſcales; his mouth ſo wide (of which he moveth only the upper jaw) that he is able to ſwallow a whole Heifer: equally uſed to both Elements, but better ſighted in the water, then on the land: Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and ſuch as uſually flies from thoſe which dare ſet upon him; and eaſily vanquiſhed by the *Dolphin*, who ſwimming under the water woundeth him in the belly, where aſſaultable only. Whether ſo eaſily deſtroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kinde of Water-Rat) skipping into his mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers ſay, hath of late been queſtioned. That which I look on as a rarity of the greateſt moment, if not rather to be accounted *ſupernatural)* is that, about five miles from the City of *Caire*, there is a place in which on every *Good-Friday* yeerly, there appear the heads, legs and arms of men riſing out of the ground, to a very great number: which if a man draw near unto them, or touch any of them, will ſhrink again into the earth. Suppoſed by ſome to be an *Impoſture* of ſome *Water-men* only, who ſtick them over-night in the ſands, and keeping them ſecret to themſelves, obtain thereby the *Ferrying* over of many thouſands of People, to behold the ſight. But *Stephen Dupleis*, a ſober and diſcerning man, in the opinion of *Goulartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwiſe of it, affirming ſurely that he was an eye-witneſs of the wonder, that he had touched divers of theſe riſing Members, and that as he was once ſo doing to the head of a childe, a man of *Caire* cried out unto him, *Kali, Kali ante materaſde*, that is to ſay, *Hold, hold, you know not what you do.* A ſtrange *Fore-runner* (if it be of undoubted credit) of the *Reſurrection* of the whole Body, preſented yearly in the *riſing* of theſe ſeveral parts.

Of leſs diſpute, but not leſs *rarity* in nature, are theſe that follow. 1. That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a cloud do ſometimes happen to diſſolve upon them, it bringeth on their bodies innumerable ſores, and ſtrange diſeaſes. 2. The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are ſaid to follow on the ſame. Of which it is thus ſaid by *Lucan*;

Terra ſuis contenta bonis, non indiga mercis,
Aut Jovis; *in ſolo tanta eſt fiducia* Nilo:

The earth content with its own Wealth, doth crave
No Forreign Mart, *nor* Jove *himſelf*; *they have*
Their hopes alone in Nilus *fruitfull wave.*

This *Nilus* hath his head, not in the *Mountains* of the *Moon*, as the Ancients thought, but in the Lake *Zembre*, in *Æthiopia Interior*: and running in one continual *Channel* (excepting where it brancheth into little Iſlands, as it ſometimes doth) till it waſheth the mid-land of *Egypt*, is before its influx into the Sea, divided into ſeven great ſtreams, opening into the Sea with ſo many mouths, namely, 1. *Heracleoticum*, 2. *Bolviticum*, 3. *Schaniticum*, 4. *Patinicum*, 5. *Mendeſium*, 6. *Caniticum*, 7. *Peluſaicum*. The firſt and laſt of theſe currents (which are the only two now left) being far diſtant from other, and growing into one, at the firſt point of the Rivers diviſion, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*, becauſe to ſuch as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Anatolia*, it reſembleth the *Greek* letter Δ. The other part is called *Thebais*, from *Thebe*, the chief City of it.

This *Nilus* from the 15. day of *June*, ſwelleth above his banks, for the ſpace of 40. days; and in as many more, gathereth his waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen *Cubits*, then the earth is deficient in her abundance of increaſe, for want of moiſture: and if the waters ſurmount the *ſuperficies* of the Earth, more than ſeventeen Cubits, then, like a drunken man, it cannot produce its natural operation, as having his ſtomack (as it were) over-laid, and ſurcharged with too much liquor: but if the mean be granted, there is no Country which can brag of the like Fertility; the Corn being all houſed before the 20. of *May*. During this *Inundation*, they keep their beaſts and cattel on the tops of ſuch little hils, which either the Providence of Nature or the induſtry of man hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decreaſe of the Waters; and on theſe hills alſo ſtand the moſt of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood, like ſo many Iſlands, and holding a commerce and continual traffick by the entercourſe of Boats and Shallops, by which they do tranſport their Marketable commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time that the River doth not thus over-flow the Country, it is not only the Forerunner to a following dearth, but prognoſticateth ſome enſuing miſchief to the Prince and State. Confirmed by the teſtimony of good and creditable Authors; who have told us that in the 10. and 11. years of *Cleopatra*, the River increaſed not at all: that it was noted as a Foreteller of the Fall of thoſe two great, but unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* & her Sweetheart *Antonius*. A ſecond commodity which ariſeth from the over-flowings of *Nilus*, is the health which it bringeth with it in moſt parts of the Country; the Plague which oftentimes miſerably rageth upon the firſt day of the flood, abating inſtantly: inſomuch that whereas 500. may die of that diſeaſe in the City of *Caire* but the day before, there dieth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River, is, that keeping its waters united in a body together after it falleth into the Sea; it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean* further then any part of it can be ſeen from the ſhore. Add unto theſe the many living creatures which the ſlime thereof engendreth on the withdrawing of the River to its natural channel: whereof *Ovid* thus,

Sic

Sic ubi deſeruit madidos ſeptemfluus *agros*
Nilus, *& antiquo ſua flumina reddidit alveo,*
Plurima Cultores verſis Animalia *glebis*
Inveniunt.

Which I *Engliſh* thus.

So when the Seven-mouth'd Nile *the fields forſakes,*
And to his ancient Channel him betakes,
The Plough-men many living Creatures find,
By turning up the mud that's left behind.

Amongſt which Creatures ſo ingendered, are ſaid to be ſuch innumerable heaps of *Frogs*, that if Nature, or *Divine Providence* rather, did not furniſh this Country with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured, the *Plague* of *Frogs* would come a ſecond time upon them to their utter deſtruction. Now becauſe *Nilus* runneth in its certain *Channels*, and that the People have no other water to make uſe of for all neceſſities, there are many By-trenches and deep Ditches cut in convenient places, (by the care and munificence of their Kings) to receive its waters, and to communicate them to the People, who know almoſt no other drink then the waters hereof, and indeed they need not, the water of this River being of ſuch excellent both taſte and vertue, that when *Peſcominus Niger* ſaw his Souldiers murmure for want of Wine, *What* (ſaid he) *do you grumble for wine, having the waters of* Nile *to drink?*

On the banks of the River ſtood that famous *Labyrinth* built by *Pſamniticus*, which we have touched upon before; ſituate on the South of the *Pyramides*, and North of *Arſinoe*, or the City of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compaſſe of one continued wall, a thouſand houſes, and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble, and had only one entrance, but innumerable turnings and returnings, ſometimes one over another, and all in a manner invious to ſuch as were not well acquainted with them: The building more under the ground, then above; the Marble-ſtones laid with ſuch art, that neither Wood nor Cement was imployed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers ſo diſpoſed, that the Doors upon their opening did give a report no leſſe terrible then a crack of Thunder; the main Entrance all of White-marble, adorned with ſtately Columns, and moſt curious Imagerie: The end at length being attained, a pair of Stairs of 90 ſteps conducted into a gallant *Portice*, ſupported with Pillars of *Theban* ſtone; which was the entrance into a fair and ſpacious Hall, (the place of their generall Conventions) all of poliſhed Marble, ſet out with the *Statues* of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Dædalus* in the *Cretane* Labyrinth; though that fell as ſhort of the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferior unto *Pſamniticus* in power and riches.

On the Banks of this River alſo grew thoſe ſedgie Weeds called *Papyri*, of which Paper was made in former times: They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moyſt'ning them with the glutinous waters of the River, they preſſed them together, and after dryed them in the Sun. By means of this Invention, Books being eaſier to be tranſcribed and reſerved then formerly, *Ptolomie Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*: and underſtanding how *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this *Egyptian* Paper, ſtrived to exceed him in that kind of magnificence, prohibited the carrying of it out of *Egypt*. Hereupon *Attalus* invented the uſe of Parchments, made of the skins of Calves and Sheep; from the materials called *Membranæ*, and *Pergamena* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cauſe that in ſhort time the *Egyptian* Paper was worn out of uſe; in place whereof ſucceeded our *Paper* made of Rags, the Authors of which excellent Invention our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the uſe of theſe Papers and Parchments were firſt made known, I obſerve three wayes of writing amongſt the Antients, (I hope I ſhall be pardoned this ſhort digreſſion.) 1. On the inward ſide of the Bark of a Tree, which is in Latine called *Liber*, and whence Books have the name of *Libri*. 2. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Caudex*, gave the *Latines* occaſion to call a Book *Codex*. 3. They uſed to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to ſignifie, from whence a Letter-carrier was named *Tabellarius*. The Inſtrument wherewith they wrote, was a ſharp-pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*, a word now ſignifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of *Phraſe* which any man uſeth; as, *Negligens ſtylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus ſtylus*, in *Cicero*. I ſhould have alſo noted, that they uſed ſometimes to write in *Leaves*; That the *Sibyls* Oracles being ſo written and ſcattered abroad, had the name of *Sibyllæ Folia*, and that from thence we have the phraſe of a *Leaf of Paper*. But of this Argument enough.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus*, and that great increaſe of wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural commodities of the Earth: let us next look on the *Red-Sea*, and the great Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of *Trading*. A Sea whereof we have ſpoke already, as to the reaſon of the name, the extent thereof, and the ſeveral Iſlands contained in it; and therefore ſhall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Country, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous paſſage of the *Iſraelites* through it as upon dry-land, and the drowning of *Pharaohs Cenchres* and all his people, at large commemorated in the books of Holy Scriptures: as alſo for that through it the Spices of *India* and *Arabia* were brought to *Alexandria*, and thence by the *Venetians* diſperſed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Aſia*. I ſuppoſe I ſhall not do amiſſe to ſet down hiſtorically out of *Galuano*, a rela-

tion of the beginning, continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received so great commodity. *Know then (saith he) that* Ptolomie Philadelphus, 277 *years before the* Incarnation *was the first that set on foot this Navigation:* Cosir *(of old called* Myos-Hormos*) on the sea-side, being the ordinary Haven, out of which they hoysed sail for* India; *and into which they returned, full fraught with their commodities. From hence they were by land conveighed to* Coptus, *and so down the* Nile *to* Alexandria: *by which Traffick the City grew exceeding rich; insomuch that the Custom-house there yielded* Ptol. Auletes 7 *millions and an half of gold yearly. The* Romans *being Lords of* Egypt, *enhanced the Customs to double that sum: they sent into* India *every year (as* Plinie *witnesseth)* 120 *ships, whose lading was worth* 120000 *Crowns; and there was made in return of every Crown,* 100. *When the* Vandals, Lombards, Goths, *and* Moors *had torn in peeces the* Roman *Empire, all commerce between Nations began to cease. At last perceiving the inconvenience, they began anew: conveighing the* Indian *commodities, partly by land, partly by water, unto* Capha *in* Taurica Chersonesus, *belonging to the* Genoese: *Next* Trabezond *was made the Mart-town, then* Sarmachand *in* Zagatate, *where the* Indian, Turkish, *and* Persian *Merchants met to barter wares: the* Turks *conveighing their merchandise to* Damascus, Baratti, *and* Aleppo; *from whence the* Venetians *transported it to* Venice, *making that the common* Emporium *of Christendome. Once again,* viz. Anno 1300. *the* Soldans *of* Egypt *restored the passage by the* Red-Sea; *which having continued more then* 200 *years, is now discontinued by the* Portugals, Spaniards, English *and* Dutch, *which bring them to their several homes by the back side of* Africk: *So that not only the Traffick of* Alexandria *is almost decayed, and the Riches of the* Venetians *much diminished; but the Drugs and Spices have lost much of their vertue, as impaired by too much moisture.* So much saith he, touching the course and alteration of this Trading: to which I shall take leave to adde, That for the better and more quick return of such Commodities as were usually brought into this Sea, some of the Kings of *Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it, to the River *Nilus*, passable by Ships of greatest burden; the marks of whose proud attempts are remaining still. *Sesostris* was the first who designed the work, having before with good successe cut many Trenches from the River, and some Navigable, into many places of the Country; by which unprofitable Marishes were drained, the Country strengthened, Trade made easie, and the People better furnished with water then in former times. *Darius* the great *Persian* Monarch, seconded the same *Project*; so did one of the *Ptolomies*; The like is said of a Capricious *Portugal* in these later times. But they all gave it over on the same consideration, which was a fear lest by letting in the *Red-Sea* they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a second Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Asia Minor* which lay neerest to them; that Sea being found to be much higher then the *Mediterranean*, and the flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to understand, that all which hitherto hath been spoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* strictly and specially so called, containing only so much of the Country of *Egypt* as lieth upon the Banks and Channels of the River *Nilus*; and not to all that tract of ground which lay betwixt the *Red-Sea* and the borders of *Libya*, which was reckoned in the compasse of the kingdom of *Egypt*; much lesse as comprehending *Libya* and *Cyrene* also, though now accounted Members of that great Body, and antiently parts or Provinces of the *Diocese* of it. For *Egypt*, in the largest sense and acception of the word, may be, and generally is divided into these three parts, *viz.* 1. *Egypt*, in the general notion, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the borders of *Idumea* to the the *Roman Libya* or *Marmarica*, lying Westward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleoticum*, and on the borders of *Æthiopia Superior*, from the said *Red-Sea*, to the Country of *Libya Interior*. 2. *Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly so called, and the Province of *Cyrene*, or *Pentapolis*. And 3. *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Libya* to the greater *Syrtis*, where it bordered with that part of the *African Diocese*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this first acception of it we shall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains, and chief Cities; which done, we shall describe the other in their proper places; and then unite them all in the *Generall Story*.

As for the Mountains of this Country, there are very many: there were no living else for the people in the time of the overflowings of the River. The principal of these, 1. Those called *Montes Libyci*, lying in a long chain on the West of *Nilus*; 2. *Alabastrinus*; 3. *Porphyritus*; 4. *Troigus*; 5. *Basanitus* on the East thereof. Betwixt these Hils the course of the River is so hemmed in on both sides, that at the upper part of the stream where it first entreth into *Egypt*, the space betwixt the Mountains is not above four miles broad, enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Caire* to thirty seven; thence opening wider and wider, till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Country doth increase in breadth. On these and other of the Mountains and lesser Hils, stand most part of the Towns, the receptacles of the Country-people in the time of the Flood, rising when least, to fifteen *cubits*, or seven yards and an half.

Rivers of note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that; that being sufficient of it self to enrich this Country, which otherwise would be nothing but a *Sandy Desart*. But what they want in Rivers, is supplied with *Lakes* and Trenches, which serve for watering their Cattel, tempering of mortar for their buildings, and other such inferior uses; sometimes perhaps for drink for the poorer sort, who cannot be conveniently furnished with the waters of *Nile*. Amongst the Trenches (which were many, as before was said) those of most estimation were the Works of *Ptolomie* and the Emperor *Trajan*: the first falling into that branch of the *Nile*, which maketh the Isle called *Heracleotis*; the other into the main body of it, not far from *Caire*. These two, by reason of the many fresh springs which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authors; and betwixt these was seated the

Land

Land of *Goſhen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea*, on the Eaſt and Weſt. The chief of note amongſt the Lakes, were thoſe called, 1. *Mareotis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Plinie* called *Arapotes*, *Maria* by *Ptolomie*; all which names are now loſt, and changed into that of *Lagodi Antacon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Laccus*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which in the book of *Maccabees* is called *Aſphar*, lib. 1. cap. 9. And 3. *Moeris*, now called *Buchaira*, more memorable then the reſt, in compaſſe 3500 furlongs, 50 fathom deep, in the midſt whereof were two *Pyramides* 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it: the Fiſh of this Lake, for one ſix moneths in the year, ſaid to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the Kings Exchequer; for the other ſix, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Amari*, into which the Trench or River called *Ptolomaus*, doth diſcharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided antiently into two parts only, 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extreme branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which letter it reſembleth to him who ſtanding on the Sea-ſhore could take a view of it. 2. That called *Thebais*, from *Thebe* the principal City of it, comprehending all the reſt of the courſe of that River, ſhut up on both ſides with the Mountains ſpoken of before. But this Diviſion leaving out all thoſe parts hereof which lie on the Eaſt-ſide towards the *Arabian Golfs*, and on the Weſt as far as to the borders of *Libya Marmarica*: the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 *Cantreds* or Diſtricts, by them called *Nomi*, increaſed in the time of *Ptolomie* the Geographer to 46. *Ortelius* out of divers Authors hath found 20 more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a Dioceſe of the Empire, it was divided into four Provinces, (not reckoning *Marmarica*, and *Cyrene* into the accompt:) that is to ſay, 1. *Ægyptus* ſpecially ſo called, containing all the *Delta*, and the Diſtrict or *Nomus* of *Mareotica*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2. *Auguſtanica*, ſo called from *Auguſtus Ceſar*, on the Eaſt of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petræa*. 3. *Arcadia*, ſo called from the Emperor *Arcadius*, in whoſe time it was taken out of *Thebais*, lying on both ſides of the River, from the *Delta* to the City of *Antinous*. 4 *Thebais*, extending on both ſides of the River from the borders of *Libya Marmarica* to the *Red-Sea*, (as the other doth) unto *Æthiopia*. Divided otherwiſe by ſome, into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Æthiopia* to the City of *Antinous*; *Mediam*, ſtretching thence to the point of the *Delta*; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the reſt. But at this time, that part hereof which lieth on the South and Eaſt of *Caire*, is called *Saud*, or *Salud*, honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the antient *Pharaohs*, becauſe neareſt unto *Æthiopia* their moſt puiſſant neighbour. 2. That betwixt *Caire*, *Roſetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Errifia*, wherein the *Ptolomean* Princes did moſt reſide, becauſe moſt convenient for receiving ſupplies of men from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Caire* to *Teneſe* and *Damiata*, is now called *Maremna*, in which the *Turks* and *Mamalucks* made the ſeat of their Empire, becauſe more neighbouring to the *Chriſtians*, whom they ſtood in fear of, as likewiſe to invade them upon that ſide. In the whole Country there was reckoned in the time of *Amaſis* the 2d. no fewer then 20000 Cities: but if the Towns and Villages be not reckoned in, I ſhould much doubt of the accompt. By *Diodorus Siculus* it is ſaid that there were 3000 in his time: but *Ortelius*, on a diligent ſearch, finds 300 only.

Thoſe of moſt note in the Province of *Auguſtanica*, 1. *Peluſium*, the moſt Eaſtern City of *Egypt* towards *Idumæa*, ſituate on the moſt Eaſtern channel of *Nilus*, called hence *Peluſiacum*; by *Ammianus* ſaid to be the work of *Peleus* the Father of *Achilles*, commanded by the Gods to purge himſelf in the Lake adjoyning, for the murder of his brother *Phocus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to thoſe who came thither by Sea; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Auguſtanica*, the birth-place of *Ptolomie* the Geographer, and the Epiſcopal See of S. *Iſidore*, ſirnamed *Peluſiotes*, whoſe eloquent and pious Epiſtles are ſtill extant. Out of the ruines hereof (if not the ſame under another title) aroſe, 2. *Damiata*, memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the *Chriſtian* Armies; for none more then that under *John de Brenne* the titulary King of *Jeruſalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, *An.* 1220. During which (being of 18 moneths continuance) the Famine and the Peſtilence ſo extremely raged, that the Town in a manner was diſpeopled, before the *Beſiegers* knew any thing of their condition: till in the end two venturous Souldiers, admiring the ſilence and ſolitude of ſo great a City, in a *Bravado* ſcaled the walls, but found no man to make reſiſtance: the next day the whole Army entred, where they found in every houſe and every corner of the ſtreets whole heaps of dead bodies, none to give them burial; A lamentable and ruthful ſpectacle! 3. *Heros*, or *Civitas Heroum*, in the *Arabian Iſthmus*, at the very bottom of the *Golf*; remarkable for the firſt interview betwixt *Jacob* and *Joſeph*, after his coming into *Egypt*. 4. *Heliopolis*, or the *City of the Sun*, now called *Betſames*, in the Scriptures *On*, of which *Potiphar* the Father of *Aſenath* (whom *Pharaoh* married unto *Ioſeph*) was Prieſt or Prince, as is ſaid *Gen.* 41. 45. Given (as *Ioſephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the ſons of *Iacob*; by conſequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Rameſes* or *Goſhen*; and memorable in times ſucceeding for a publike Temple built for the *Iewes* with the conſent of *Ptolomie* ſirnamed *Philadelphus*, by *Onias* the High-Prieſt, then diſpoſſeſſed of his authority and office by the power of *Antiochus*: a Temple much eſteemed by the *Helliniſts* or *Grecizing Iews*; and though *Schiſmatical* at the beſt in its firſt original, yet not *Schiſmatical* and *Idolatrous*, as was that of Mount *Garizim*. 5. *Bubaſtis*, ſomwhat more North then *Heliopolis*, by ſome of the Antients called *Avaris*, by the Scriptures *Pibeſeth*, another City of that tract, now better known by the name of *Zioth*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the *Notitia* calleth *Caſtra Iudæorum*; memorable in times of *Paganiſme* for a famous Temple of *Diana*. 6. *Arſinoe*, on the ſhore of the Red Sea, ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe* ſiſter of *Philadelphus*, and wife to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards

wards called *Cleopatris*, in honour of Queen *Cleopatra*; now better known by the name of *Sues*; Of great commerce and trading in the time of the *Ptolomies*: Now almoſt abandoned, and would be utterly deſerted, were it not made the ſtation of the *Turkiſh* Gallies, that command the *Gulfe*: which being framed at *Caire* of ſuch Timber as is brought thither by ſea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and ſometimes from the Shores of the *Euxine* Sea, are again taken in peeces, carried from *Caire* unto this City on the backs of Camels, and here joyned together. Conceived to be the ſame which in former times was called *Baal-Zephon* (of which ſee *Exod.* 14.9.) the laſt incamping-place of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, who from hence paſſed through the *Red Sea*, as upon dry land. 7. *Gleba Rubra*, by the *Greeks* called *Hiera Bolus*, and ſometimes *Erythra Bolus* alſo more neer the *Latine*; the redneſs of the ſoyl giving name unto it: ſituate on the River or Trench of *Tralan*: more memorable for a misfortune that befell it then for any thing elſe; purpoſely burnt by *Amenophis* the fift, upon this occaſion: Being blinde, he was aſſured by ſome of his *Wizards* that if he waſhed his eyes with the Urine of a Woman which had never known any but her own husband, he ſhould be reſtored unto his ſight. After a long ſearch and many vain tryals, he met with one whoſe water cured him; whom he took to wife: and cauſing all the reſt whom he had made tryal of, to be brought together to this Town, he ſet fire on the City, and burnt both it and all the women there aſſembled; which tale, if true, is little to the credit of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of moſt note and obſervation in the Province of *Egypt* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, are 1. *Alexandria* ſituate Weſtward of the *Delta*, over againſt the Iſle of *Pharos*; and built upon a Promontory thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; with which on the one ſide, and the Lake *Mareotis* on the other, it is exceeding well defended: the Work of *Alexander* the *Great*, and by him peopled with *Greeks* immediatly after his conqueſt of *Egypt*. The Regal Seat of the *Ptolomies*, whilſt *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom: and afterwards the *Metropolis* of it, when a *Roman* Dioceſe; Adorned with many ſtately buildings; of which moſt memorable the *Serapium* (or Temple of their God *Separis*) for ſumptuous workmanſhip, and the magnificence of the Fabrick, inferiour to none but the *Roman* Capitol: and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had ſtored it with 700000. Volumes; unfortunately burnt in the War againſt *Julius Caſar*; a City of great trading, and infinite Riches; μέγιστον ἐμπόριον τῆς οἰκουμένης, the greateſt *Empory* of the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens ſo abounded in all licentiouſneſs both of life and ſpeech, that they ſpared not the Emperour himſelf, if he came in their way. But they paid dearly for their folly. For *Caracalla* not ſo patient of a Contumely as ſome wiſer Princes, having felt the laſhes of their tongues, when he was amongſt them, aſſembled all the youth of the City, as if out of them he would have choſen ſome to attend his Perſon; and ſuddenly gave command to his Souldiers, to put them all to the ſword. A ſlaughter ſo great and univerſall, that the River *Nilus* coloured with the blood of the ſlain, might not improperly at that time be called a *Red Sea*. In this City, *Anno* 180. *Gantenus* read here both *Divinity* and *Philoſophy* to all ſuch as would come to hear him: which as it is conceived to give the firſt hint to the inſtituting of *Univerſities* in the reſt of *Chriſtendom*; ſo from that ſmall beginning the *Schools* of *Alexandria* grew ſo great and eminent, that *Nazianzen* calleth them Παντὸς παιδεύσεως ἐργαστήριον, the ſhop, or work-houſe, as it were, of all kinds of Learning. Much ſhort of what it was even in point of *trading*, eſpecially ſince the diverſion of the Trading from the Bay of *Arabia*; and utterly diveſted of thoſe beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the preſent by a mixture of Nations, *Moors*, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Chriſtian Cophtives*; more for ſome little gain which they reap by Traffick, then any pleaſure in the place; Now called *Scanderia* by the *Turks*, remarkable only for the houſe of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the moſt part in *Caire*) and a Church in which S. *Mark* their firſt Biſhop was ſaid to be buried. 2. *Canopus*, ſituate eaſt of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*, ſo called from *Canopus* the Pilot of *Menelaus*, who having ſuffered ſhipwrack upon this coaſt, was there interred by his Maſter: A Town ſo branded in old times for varieties of all kinde of beaſtlineſs and luxury, that as *Seneca* very well obſerved, he that avoided the viciouſneſs and debauchery of it, could not ſcape the infamy: the very place adminiſtring matter for ſuſpicion. 3. *Roſetta*, on the ſame branch of the River, and not far from *Canopus*, out of whoſe ruines it aroſe; built by a *Slave* of one of the *Egyptian Caliphs*, unwalled and deſtitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all ſorts of commodities, and well frequented by the Merchant. 4. *Nicopolis*, now called *Munia*, the Monument of ſome eminent Victory, and probably of the conqueſt of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town ſtanding within 30. Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5. *Aphrodites* and *Aphroditopolis*, ſo called from *Venus* who was here worſhipped: ſituate betwixt the two middle branches of the *Nile*. 6. *Sais*, betwixt the ſame branches of the River alſo; whence that *Nomus* or Diviſion had the name of *Saites*. It is now called *Sibnit*, or *Signiti*. 7. *Plinthine*, on the Sea-ſide; and 8. *Hierax*, more within the land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Maraotica*.

In *Arcadia*, called alſo *Heptanomus*, becauſe it contained ſeven of the *Nomi* or Diviſions into which *Egypt* was diſtributed by the *Macedonians*, the Places of moſt note were and are 1. *Memphis*, on the Weſtern bank of *Nile*, not far from the ſharp point of the *Delta*, where the River firſt beginneth to divide it ſelf; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, by one of which who removed the Seat Royal from *Thebo* hither, it is ſaid to be built; and called thus by the name of his daughter. In compaſs, when it flouriſhed, about 20. miles; Great, populous, and adorned with a world of Antiquities; amongſt others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, and *Serapis*, beſet with *Sphynxes*:

now

now nothing left of the Ruines of it, but the Statues of ſome monſtrous Reſemblances, ſufficient to ſhew what it hath been formerly. The *Pyramides* before deſcribed, ſtood not far from hence; to which the Poet relateth, ſaying,

Barbara Pyramidum ſileat miracula Memphis.

Let barbarous Memphis *brag no more*
Of her Pyramides, *as before.*

2. *Babylon*, called for diſtinctions ſake, *Babylon Ægyptiorum*, built on the other ſide of the River, and ſomewhat more unto the North: ſaid to be founded by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian* Monarch, the firſt that made this Kingdom ſtoop to the yoke of a forreiner; and by him peopled with ſome *Babylonians* or *Chaldæans*, tranſplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruines; amongſt which many of the *Chriſtian* Temples and Monaſteries do lie there in rubbiſh; the Caſtle whereof ſerved long after for the Garriſon of the three Legions, appointed to defend this Country in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by ſome to be the *Babylon* mentioned by S. *Peter* in his 1 Epiſtle *cap. ult.* which the following words, *and Mark my ſon*, (S. *Mark* being the firſt Biſhop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apoſtle of *Egypt*) may make ſomwhat probable: but the truth and reality hereof, I diſpute not now. Out of the ruines of this City aroſe, 3. *Caire*, now, and for many Ages paſt the chief of this Country: raiſed from the aſhes of old *Babylon* by the *Chaliphs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamalucks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compaſſe not above eight miles, but full of Streets, the number of which ſaid to be 18000. every one of them fortified with a Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every ſeveral ſtreet an impregnable fortreſſe. Found ſo by *Selymus* the firſt, when he conquered *Egypt*, who ſpent three dayes in forcing his way through it with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean, the publique, ſpecially the *Moſques*, beyond thought magnificent. Viſited every ſeventh year with a dreadful Peſtilence; yet ſtill ſo populous, that it is conveived to be in good health, if there die not above a thouſand in a day, or 300000 within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards both within the City, and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleaſant Lake, but made more pleaſant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual ſolace and delights. Fortified at the South end with a ſtately Caſtle (the Palace of the *Mamaluck Sultans*) ſituate on the top of a Mountain, overlooking the City, and a great part of the Country alſo. So large, that it ſeemeth a City of it ſelf, immured with high walls, divided into many partitions or ſeveral Courts, in times paſt the places of exerciſe; and entred by dores of iron. Deſtroyed for the moſt part, by *Selimus*, for fear of giving opportunity to ſome rebellion; or envying the *Mamalucks* the glory of having been the Maſters of ſo brave a Manſion: that which is left, now ſerving for the habitation of the *Turkiſh Baſſa*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4. *Matared*, or *Matarea*, not far from *Caire*; the ſoile whereof is ſaid to be ſo rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with ſand or gravel, ſo moderating the extreme rankneſſe of it. 5. *Arſinoe*, on the Weſt ſide of the *Nile*, and ſomwhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before deſcribed; called alſo (to difference it from another of the ſame name on the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*) the *City of Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monſter. 6. *Nilopolis*, or *Nili Civitas*, in the Iſland called *Heracleotis*, made by the imbracements of the River: moſt memorable for being the Epiſcopal See of *Cheræmon*, a right godly Prelate; of whom ſee *Euſebius* in the 6 Book and 34 Chap. of his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory. 7. *Troia*, on the Eaſtern ſtream which makes that Iſland, not much obſervable but for giving name to the *Montes Troici* lying neer unto it, out of which were digged the ſtones which made the *Pyramides*. 8. *Cynopolis*, in a little Iſland up the water. 9. *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercurie*, called alſo *Hermopolis magna*, to difference it from another of that name not far from *Alexandria*; to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10. *Antinous*, now *Antius*, founded by *Adrian* the Emperor, in honour of *Antinous* his eſpecial favourite; the moſt Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11. *Dionyſias*, or the City of *Bacchus*, ſituate on the Southern end of the Lake of *Moeris*, in the *Nomus* or Diviſion called *Oaſis parva*. 12. *Cly ſma*, upon the ſhores of the *Golf*, a *Roman* Garriſon.

Cities of moſt note in the Province of *Thebais*, 1. *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antonixus*, one of the greateſt of this part. 2. *Ptolomais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolomies*, and the goodlieſt City of this Province, ſucceeding unto *Thebe* both in power and greatneſſe. 3. *Saiet*, a fair and large Town, ſix dayes journy from *Caire*, going up the water; but by what name called amongſt the Antients, I do nowhere find. Affirmed (erroneouſly, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joſeph* and *Mary*, when they fled with *CHRIST* our Saviour from the fury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now ſomwhat ruinous; of the foundation of *Helena* the mother of *Conſtantine*. The City much reſorted to (on the ſtrength of this Tradition only) by many aged *Chriſtian Cophties*, who deſire to die there. 4. *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the banks of the River. 5. *Tentyra*, in a little Iſle ſo called, made by the circlings of the *Nile*: The inhabitants whereof were the onely men who durſt encounter the *Crocodile*; A creature of a terrible name, but a cowardly nature; of which it is ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that it aſſaulteth thoſe which flie from it, and flieth from thoſe who do aſſault it; In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is ſaid by the Apoſtle *James*, 4, 7. that if he be *reſiſted, he will flie from us*. Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Eſt Leo, *ſi fugias; ſi ſtas, quaſi* Muſca *recedit.*

Give ground, a Lyon he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.

6. *Coptos*, upon the head of a Trench or water-courſe which falleth into the *Nilus*, on the South of *Tentyra*, but on the other ſide of the River; in old times a moſt noted *Emporie* for *Indian* and *Arabian* wares; from whence not only the *Chriſtians* of this Country are thought to have the name of *Cophties*, but the whole Country to be originally called *Ægyptus*, from *Ai-Coptus*, or the land of *Coptus*. 7. *Thebe*, the reſidence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Buſiris*, in compaſs 140 furlongs, or 17 miles and an half; called alſo *Hecatompyla*, from the number of an hundred Gates which were ſaid to be in it. So beautified with Coloſſes, Temples, Palaces, the Sepulchres of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State, that it was thought μαθημάτων ὑπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου ὅτω κεκοσμῆθαι, to be the *Noneſuch* of the world. Decayed on the removing of the Court to *Memphis*, it became a ruine ſo long ſince, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Iuvenal*; as he telleth us, ſaying,

Atque vetus Thebe *centum jacet obruta portis.*

Old Thebe, *yielding to the Fates,*
Lies buried with its hundred Gates.

8. *Abydus*, now called *Abutick*, once the ſeat-royal of *Memnon*, from thence called *Memnonium*, renowned for the Temple of *Oſiris*; more for the *Statue* of *Memnon*, which though made of ſtone, did at the riſing of the ſun yield a vocal ſound. 9. *Elephantis*, on the banks of *Nile*, neighboured by *Crophi* and *Mophi*, two ſharp Rocks, betwixt which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the *Leſſer Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we ſhall ſpeak more fully in *Æthiopia*. The City ſeated in an Iſland of the River *Nile*, on the borders of *Æthiopia ſub Ægypto*, (as the Antients called it) known unto *Ptolomie* by the name of *Elephantina*, but to our Eccleſiaſtical writers by the name of *Tabenna*. Memorable in times of Heatheniſm for the Town and Temple of *Onuphis*, wherein ſtood the *Nilometrium* or ſtanding-pillar, by which they did obſerve the increaſe of the River; removed ſince to the Caſtle of *Michias*, two miles from *Caire*: in times of *Chriſtianity*, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tabeniſiotæ*. 10. *Syene*, (now *Aſna*) a little North of *Elephantis*, ſituate directly under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by ſome *Aſtronomers*; which when the Sun entred into that Sign, was wholly enlightened with his beams, without any ſhadow; ſo perpendicularly did the body of it ſtand over the pit. This the laſt City of *Egypt* towards *Æthiopia*.

And now I ſhould proceed, according to my Method in other places, to the Storie of *Egypt*: but being that *Libya* and *Cyrene* are now accompted Members of it, the fortunes whereof they have alſo followed in all or moſt of the mutations of State & Government, I ſhall firſt take a view of them as the limbs of this body, and ſhew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed.

2. *MARMARICA.*

2. LIBYA or *MARMARICA*; hath on the Eaſt, *Egypt*, properly ſo called; on the Weſt, *Cyrene*; on the North, that part of the *Mediterranean* Sea, which was hence called *Mare Libycum*, and ſometimes *Parthenium*; and on the South, ſome part of *Æthiopia Superior*.

It had the name of *Libya*, from the old *Greek* word λίβυς, ſignifying *black*, agreeable to the complexion of the people, which is black and ſwarthie; λίβυς, *antiqua lingua Græca niger*, ſaith a learned Writer; or poſſibly enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word ſignifying *thirſt*, as ſuitable unto the nature of the ſoile, which is drie and *ſandie*, in which reſpect called by the Greeks *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya ſicca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from theſe Coaſts towards *Greece* and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybs*, and the Promontorie in *Sicilie* oppoſite unto it, that of *Lilybæum*. It was alſo called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmaridæ*, a chief People of it, though placed by *Ptolomie* in *Cyrene*: and ſometimes *Barca*, from *Barce* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Marmarica*, by both names united.

The Country for the moſt part very dry and barren, and but meanly peopled; inſomuch as *Alexander* paſſing through part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the ſpace of four dayes ſaw neither Man, Beaſt, Bird, Tree, nor River. Covered over in moſt places with a thick, light ſand, which the winds remove up and down continually, turning vallies into hils, and hils into vallies. Found by *Cambyſes* to his coſt, who as baſely eſteeming of the *Gods* as he did of his Subjects, ſent part of his Army into this Country to deſtroy the Temple above mentioned; but in the paſſage towards that prohibited place, fifty thouſand of them were overwhelmed and ſmothered in a ſtorm of ſand, the reſt with much adoe eſcaping. Called therefore *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*, as before was noted; and *Libya ſitiens*, thirſty *Libya*, (—— *per calidas* Libyæ ſitientis *arenas*) in that Verſe of *Lucan*.

The People, neighbours unto *Egypt*; and conſequently much of the ſame condition. Said by *Herodotus* (by whom they are called *Adyrmachidæ*) to be governed by the like Lawes and Cuſtoms as the *Egyptians* were; but to differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark and black, of conſtitution lean

lean and dry, and inclining to *Melancholy*; angry on every light occaſion, very litigious, and eager proſecutors of their dues. By an old obſervation among themſelves, they abſtained both from Beef and Hog-meat. So obſtinate in denying their accuſtomed *Tributes*, that he who could not ſhew the marks of his ſufferings for it, either *black* or *blue*, was accompted no body: And ſo reſolved to conceal any thing diſgraceful to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a Robbery, no torment could compell him to tell his name. At this time, little differing in perſon, temper or condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Moors*, and *Arabes*, intermixt amongſt them.

Converted to the faith of *Chriſt*, with, or not long after the reſt of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the *Patriarchate* of *Alexandria*; whoſe juriſdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*: to the calling of which famous Council, this Country occaſionally concurred, by bringing into the World that wretched *Arius*, who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils* had diſturbed the Church. His *Hereſie* condemned in that famous Council; but his Perſon, by the Divine juſtice of God, reſerved to a more remarkable puniſhment. Being ſent for by the Emperor *Conſtantine* to make a *Recantation* of his former *Hereſies*, he firſt writ out a Copy of his own Opinions, which he hid in his boſom; and then writing out the *Recantation* expected from him, took oath that he did really mean as he had written: which words the Emperor referred to the *Recantation*, he to the Paper in his boſom. But God would not be ſo cozened, though the Emperor was. For as he paſſed in triumph through the ſtreets of *Conſtantinople*, he drew aſide into a private houſe of Eaſe, where he voided his guts into the draught, and ſent his ſoul as an *Harbinger* to the Devil to make room for his body.

Not more infamous for the birth of this *Miſcreant*, who denied the *Divinity* of *Chriſt*; then famous for the birth of one of the *Sibyls*, hence ſirnamed *Libyca*, by whom the ſame had been foreſhewn. Which *Sibyls* ſeem to have taken denomination from σὶο βόλαι, i. *Iovis conſiliorum conſciæ*. They were in number ten, viz. 1. *Perſica*, 2. *Libyca*, 3. *Delphica*, 4. *Cumæa*, 5. *Samia*, 6. *Helleſpontiaca*, 7. *Tiburtina*, 8. *Albunea*, 9. *Erythræa*, and 10. *Cumana*; which laſt is affirmed to have written the Nine books of the *Sibyls*. They were all preſented by an old woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay ſo great a ſum of mony as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the old woman burnt three of them, requiring as much mony for the other ſix, as for all; which being denied, ſhe alſo burnt the other three, asking as much for the three remaining, as for the reſt; which *Superbus*, amazed, gave, and the old Trot vanquiſhed. Theſe books contained manifeſt tokens of the kingdom of *Chriſt*, his name, his birth, and death. They were burned by the Arch-traitor *Stilico*. So that thoſe Prophecies of theirs which are now extant, are for the moſt part only ſuch as had been extracted out of other writings, where their authority had been quoted. Concerning which, though *Caſaubon* and ſome other of our great *Philologers* conceive them to be *piæ fraudes*, compoſed of purpoſe by the Fathers of the *Primitive* times, to win credit to the Faith of CHRIST; yet dare I not ſo far diſparage thoſe moſt godly men, as to believe they would ſupport ſo ſtrong an *edifice* with ſo weak a prop, or borrow help from falſhood to evict a truth; Or if they durſt have been ſo impudently venturous, how eaſie had it been for their learned Adverſaries, *Porphyrie*, *Julian*, and the reſt of more eminent note, to have detected the *Impoſture*, and ſilenced the *Chriſtian Advocates* with reproach and ſcorn? But of this enough here; more at large elſwhere.

Rivers of note I find not any. 'Tis well, if in a Country ſo full of *ſands*, there be any at all: ſome *Lakes* I meet with in my Authors, the principal of which, 1 *Laccus*, 2 *Lacus Lacomedis*, now *Linxamo*, 3 *Cleartus*; ſufficient to preſerve their few Cattel from the taint of thirſt. The Mountains of moſt note, thoſe called *Anogombri*, 2. and that named *Azar*; this laſt extended Weſt and Eaſt in a ſtrait line, from the 51 degree of *Longitude*, to the 53. 3 *Aliphus*; 4 *Ogdomus*; 5 *Tmodes*; 6 *Alpis*; not much obſervable, but that they ſerve for *Land marks* to diſcover the Country.

Towns of note there are none now in it. Of moſt eſteem in former times, 1 *Batrachus*, by ſome called *Menelaus*, an Haven-town. 2 *Phthia*, and 3 *Aneſiſphyra*, two Port-towns alſo. 4 *Tetrapyrgia*, ſo called from its four Towers, the *Antipyrgus* of *Ptolomie*. 5 *Meſuchis*, more within the land. 6 *Mazacila*, another midland town. 7 *Chæreola*, mentioned among the chief Cities of this tract, by *Ammianus*. 8 *Paratonium*, now *Porto-raſſa*, which with *Peluſium* are by *Florus* called the two *Horns* of *Egypt*, which whoſoever held faſt, would be ſure to maſter it. By ſome old writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus* and *Strabo*, from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, ſeated very near it. So antiently honoured with an *Oracle*, (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is ſaid to have come hither to enquire of her death; *Perſeus* and *Hercules*, touching their Adventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great: but the *Oracle* by that time had learnt to flatter, and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the ſon of that God whom he came to worſhip. The Temple ſeated in the middle of a vaſt ſandie *Deſart*, environed with a pleaſant and delightful *Grove*, about ſix miles or more in circuit, watered with wholſom ſprings, refreſhed with a temperate air, and ſhaded with Fruit-bearing trees, which carried in their leaves a perpetual ſpring; Fortified with a triple wall, within the firſt whereof was a *Royal Palace* of the Kings, within the ſecond a *Seraglio* for his Women, in the third Lodgings for the Officers of Court; The *Oracle* fitly placed (ſo the *Prieſts* would have it) near the *Seraglio* of the Ladies; Before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the *Oblations* were firſt waſhed, then offered. A place of great repute in *ſacred* and *civil* eſtimate; all the adjoining Country taking hence the name of *Ammoniaca*, and by that name reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*. 9 *Antiphra*, on the Eaſt border of it, towards *Alexandria*. 10 *Barce*, called afterwards *Ptolemais*, by the name of one of the

Ptolomies, by whom repaired and beautified. Of ſuch accompt, that from hence the whole Country had the name of *Barca*, and the Inhabitants of *Barcai*, (——*Latéque furentes Barcæi*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Libyarchæ* and *Baſſachitæ*, in the North; the *Ogdoni*, *Buzes*, and *Adyrmachidæ*, in the South; the *Goniatæ*, and *Proſaditæ*, in the midland parts; the *Libyægyptii*, bordering neareſt unto *Egypt*, with the people whereof ſo intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one name and nation. Others there were of leſſe, or as little note, but all deſcended properly of *Naphtuhim* the ſon of *Miſraim*, from whom the name of *Neptune*, originally a *Libyan* Deity, ſeems to be derived yet ſo, that *Lehabin* his brother muſt come in for a ſhare; the founder, as it is conceived, of the *Libyægyptii* before mentioned. Being then of the ſame original with thoſe of *Egypt*, they followed the ſame fortunes alſo, till the times of the *Ptolomies*; by whom ſometimes given for portion, with the title of a Kingdom to their younger children. By the laſt will and teſtament of *Apion*, the laſt King hereof, a Baſtard-ſon of *Ptolomie* ſirnamed *Euergetes*, the ſeventh King of that houſe, bequeathed unto the Senate and People of *Rome*. By whom firſt ſuffered to live under them, as a *Free-Eſtate* till the conqueſt of *Egypt*; then reckoned as a part of that, and ſo accordingly deſcribed by *Ptolomie*; where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammoniaca*, occurre amongſt the *Nomi* or *Diviſions* of it. Afterwards made a diſtinct Province of that *Dioceſe* and governed by a *Lord Preſident*, under the *Præfectus Auguſtalis*, or Supreme Commander for the Emperours.

3. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Marmarica*, on the Weſt with *Africa Propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and ſome part of the *Mediterranean*, and the Greater *Syrtis*; on the North with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South with *Libya Inferior*, or the *Deſarts* of *Libya*.

It took this name from *Cyrene* the chief City of it, from whence ſomtimes alſo called *Cyrenaica*; by *Plinie* and ſome other *Roman* Writers it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, *viz* 1 *Cyrene*, 2 *Ptolemais*, 3 *Arſinoe*, 4 *Darnis*, 5 *Berenice*; by *Ammianus* for the ſame reaſon *Libya Pentapolis*, the name of *Libya* extending over many of theſe *Roman* Provinces. And finally, at the preſent, it paſſeth with that laſt deſcribed by the name of *Barca*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the *Greater Syrtis* unto *Egypt*, is no leſſe then 13000 miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Country in the South parts deſolate and barren, ſtored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the People living up and down in ſcattered houſes, and at ſuch a diſtance, as if it were in ſo many Iſlands. Deſtitute not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping: if any fell, it was dried up preſently by the ſands. But within fifteen miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful, and well inhabited.

The People in old times were ſaid to have been utterly ignorant of buying and ſelling, of fraud and ſtealing, not knowing or not caring for the uſe of money; content with little, not ſuperfluous in their clothes or buildings, their houſes for the moſt part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Oſier-twigs. Much altered in the firſt part of their *character*, ſince the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Theeviſh nation, given wholly to Robbery and ſpoile. So lazie, that they will not manure or till their Land, but provide themſelves with Corn from *Sicily*, laying their Children to *pawn* for it, till by their Thieving they can raiſe a ſufficient ſumme to diſcharge the debt.

One onely River I find in it, but of fame enough to ſerve for many; By *Ptolomie* called *Luthon*, by *Plinie Lethon*, by the Poets *Lethe*. Swallowed by the Earth not far from its firſt original, it riſeth up again about *Berenice* fained therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create *forgetfulneſſe* in all them that drink of it; it being the condition of the dead to remember nothing. Thence the occaſion of the fancie. Some *Lakes* I find alſo in it, whereof one occaſioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the land (where indeed more neceſſary) neer *Paliurus*. With Mountains better ſtored, (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, 1. Thoſe called *Herculis Arenæ*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Country Eaſt and Weſt; 2. *Bucolicus*, on the South of thoſe; and 3 *Volpos*, a long ridge of hils; bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1. *Apollonia*, in the Eaſt parts, neer the Promontorie called *Zephyrium*, in the confines of *Libya* or *Marmarica*. 2. *Cyrene*, in the Weſt of that; once of ſuch power, that it contended with *Carthage* for ſome preheminencies: Then the chief Lady of this tract, which it gave this name to. The birth place of *Eratoſthenes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jewes* compelled to carry our *Saviours* Croſſe. 3. *Ptolemais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arſinoe*, built or repaired by *Ptolomie Philadelphus*; the Epiſcopal City of *Syneſius*, a learned and religious Biſhop of the Primitive times, as appears by his Epiſtles extant. 4. *Arſinoe*, on the Eaſt ſide of the River *Lathon*, ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe*, the ſiſter of *Philadelphus*, and wife of *Magas* once King of this Country. 5. *Berenice*, on the Weſtern bank of the ſaid River; ſo called from *Berenice* the mother, or (another of the ſame name) the daughter of *Magas*: the furtheſt Town of all this Country, bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the *greater Syrtis*. This laſt a Quick ſand very dangerous to *Mariners*, in compaſſe 635 miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6. *Paliurus*, more within the land, but on the borders of *Libya* or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7. *Aptungis*, now *Lungifari*, by *Ptolomie* called *Aptuchi Fanum*. 8. *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules*, near the *greater Syrtis*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing

robbing the Orchards of the *Heſperides* of their golden Apples. Thoſe *Heſperides* ſaid to be *Aegle*, *Arethuſa*, and *Heſperethuſa*, the three daughters of *Atlas*: their Orchard placed by *Ptolomie* betwixt this Tower and *Paliurus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantick* Iſlands; by *Virgil*, in *Mauritania Tingitania*; by *Plinie*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and poſſibly in all alike. *9 Zemythus.* 10 *Acabis*, in the midlands; all worn out of memory. 11 *Feſſan*, of greateſt name now, though ſcarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Aſbetæ* on the Eaſt, the *Barcitæ* near the *Greater-Syrtis*, the *Macatutæ* and *Laganici*, near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably deſcended from *Naphtuhim* the ſon of *Mizraim*, of whom there ſtill remain ſome footſteps in *Aptuchi Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Aptuchus*. This *Aptuchus* by ſome miſtakingly called *Autuchus*, and by the *Grecians* ſaid to be the ſon of *Cyrene*, and the brother of *Ariſtæus*: who being ſent out to ſeek their fortunes, *Ariſtæus* fell into the Iſle named *Ceos*; and *Aptuchus* or *Autuchus* into *Libya*, both by them firſt planted. *Neptune*, the Deity of this Country, by the *Egyptians* called *Neptitim*, ſeems to come from *Naphtuhim*; moſt highly worſhipped by this people, becauſe he firſt taught them τὴν τῶν ἁρμάτων καταζεύξιν, the Art of training Horſes to the Coach or Chariot; in which the *Cyreneans* after grew ſo expert, that they could drive their *Chariots* in a round or circle, and alwayes keep their Chariot-wheels in the ſelf-ſame tract. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan* landing in this Country, had built the City of *Cyrene*; and founded it in ſo good a courſe of life and diſcipline, that in ſhort time it came to have dominion over the moſt part of this Country, and to contend with *Carthage* about their territories. Warred on by *Apryes* King of *Egypt*, they ſued unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their aſſiſtance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themſelves, they craved aid of *Ptolomie* the firſt of that race, by whom they were finally ſubdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a ſon of his laſt wife by a former husband, whom he had married to *Arſinoe* one of his daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the marriage of *Berenice* the daughter and heire of *Magus*, with the ſon of *Ptolomie Philadelphus*. Alienᵉd from which Crown again, for the preferment of ſome of the younger Princes, and in the end given by one of the *Ptolomies*, the laſt king hereof, to the People of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by whom united in one Government with the Iſle of *Crete*; but made a Province of it ſelf by the following Emperours: never ſince ſeparated from the fortune and affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we haſten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the queſtion in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythian*, being not eaſily decided. Whether it were ſo antient, as the *Egyptians* ſay, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, that they had the memorie and ſtorie of 13000 years, and a ſucceſſion of 330 Kings in the time of *Amaſis* the ſecond, who was Cotemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if underſtood of *Solarie* years, meaſured by the courſe of the Sun, muſt not be allowed of, becauſe it maketh them many thouſand years older then the Creation: but if of *Lunarie*, which is moſt agreeable unto the Accompt of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their years by moneths, it will amount unto no more then to 1000 or 1100 years, and ſo fall anſwerably to the times following after the Flood. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and thoſe of 24 or 25 ſeveral *Dynaſties*, the matter is not ſo ſoon made up: For either thoſe Kings, muſt not be all Kings, or Supreme Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their ſeveral *Regents* or *Vicegerents*, armed with Regal power; thoſe *Dynaſties* not the ſucceſſions of ſo many Regal families, but of their *Subſtitutes* and Lieutenants, many of which might live ſucceſſively under one *Supreme*: or elſe we muſt needs look on *Egypt*, as diſtracted in thoſe times into ſeveral Kingdoms, amongſt the Princes of thoſe *Dynaſties* before remembred: or finally, we muſt look for ſome of thoſe Kings and Princes before the *Flood*. By either of theſe wayes, the buſineſs may be well agreed: For if that moſt of them were but the names of ſeveral *Regents*, (as probable enough it is) there might be many ſuch in the reign of one King; according to the Kings fancie, the merit of particular perſons, or the neceſsities of State: Changes of great Officers, eſpecially if grown too great, are not new nor ſtrange. If they were all Kings or Supreme Rulers, (as is alſo probable) we find not any thing of moment to perſwade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their ſeveral parts (as in other Countries in thoſe times) till the greater had devoured the leſs. Or if they were the names of ſuch Soveraign Princes as had the ſole command of *Egypt* before the *Flood*, (as ſome think they were) they might amount in all to ſo great a number, and ſo many *Dynaſties*; the iniquity of thoſe times, the ambition of great perſons, and conſequently the ſhort lives of the Kings being duely pondered. That *Egypt* and moſt part of the world was peopled before the *Flood*, hath been already proved in our *Generall Preface*: If peopled, then no queſtion under ſome form of Government, the names of which Governours (call them Kings, or Rulers, or what elſe we pleaſe) might be preſerved in *Egypt* on pillars of braſs or ſtone, or otherwiſe tranſmitted by tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Mizraim*, by whom this Country was firſt planted after the *Confuſion* of *Babel*. But that old ſtock of Kings and People being deſtroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Mizraim* ſucceeded next in their deſolate dwellings: yet ſo, that the poſterity of *Chus* and *Lehabim*, two others of the ſons of *Cham*, had their ſhares therein. From the firſt of which deſcended the Inhabitants of thoſe parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, or Golf of *Arabia*: in which reſpect not only one of the *Nomi* or Diviſions bordering on the *Iſthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*; but the people dwelling on thoſe ſhores, were called *Arabes*, divided into the *Arabes Azarei*, and *Arabes Adei*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Liby-Ægyptii*, or *Libyans* and *Egyptians* intermixt together,

inhabiting in *Maræotica* and the Weſtern parts. But though theſe People were derived from ſeveral Anceſtors, they made one Nation in the totall: Subject to *Mizraim* as their chief, and after his deceaſe, unto his Succeſſors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may obſerve, that in *Cham* our greateſt Antiquaries finde the name of *Iupiter Hammon*; *Mizraim* they gueſs to be *Oſiris* the great God of *Egypt*. To him ſucceeded *Typhon* not by right of blood, but by uſurpation. Who diſpoſſed by *Lehabim*, the brother of *Mizraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Egyptius*) the Kingdom was reſtored to *Orus* the ſon of *Oſiris*. During the time of theſe few Princes hapned all thoſe things which are recorded in the Scriptures concerning *Egypt*: from the firſt going down of *Abraham* in the time of *Oſiris*, to the advancement of *Ioſeph* in the Reign of *Orus*: in which there paſſed the 15. 16. & 17. *Dynaſties* of Regal Vice-Royes; Lieutenants only, as I take it, to thoſe mighty Princes. The Kings themſelves called generally by the name of *Pharaoh*, though they had all their proper and peculiar names: as afterwards their Succeſſors here had the name of *Ptolomy*, and the *Roman* Emperours, that of *Cæſar*. Not troubling our ſelves therefore with their many *Dynaſties*, we will lay down the Succeſſion of their Kings, as well as we can; the diſagreement of Hiſtorians and Chronologers, touching this Succeſſion, being irreconcileable.

The *Pharaohs* or Kings of *Egypt*, of *Egyptian* Race.

A. M.		
	1.	*Mizraim*, the ſon of *Cham*, by the *Grecians* called *Oſiris*, in whoſe time *Abraham* went into *Egypt*.
	2	*Typhon*, an Uſurper.
	3	*Orus*, the ſon of *Oſiris*, reſtored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lehabim*: the Advancer of *Ioſeph*.
2207.	4	*Amaſis Themoſis*, or *Amos*, in whoſe time *Iacob* went down into *Egypt*. 25.
2233.	5	*Chebron*. 12.
2245.	6	*Amenophis*, or *Amenophthis*. 21.
2266.	7	*Amerſis*, the ſiſter of *Amenophthis*, 22.
2288.	8	*Mephres*.
2300.	9	*Meſpharmutheſis*. 25.
2325.	10	*Thamoſis*, or *Thuthmoſis*, 10.
2335.	11	*Amenophthis* II. ſuppoſed to be *Memnon*, and the *Vocal Statue*, 31.
2366.	12	*Orus* II. the *Buſiris* of the *Grecians*, a bloody Tyrant, who commanded the male-children of *Iſrael* to be ſlain, 37.
2403.	13	*Acencheres*, by ſome called *Thermutis*, the daughter of *Amenophthis* the ſecond, and afterwards the wife of *Orus*, who preſerved *Moſes*, 12.
2416.	14	*Rathoſis* the ſon of *Orus*, 6.
2422.	15	*Acencherus*, 12.
2449.	16	*Cenchres*, by ſome called *Arenaſis*, *Bocchoris* by others; drowned in the *Red-Sea* with his horſe and chariots, 16.
2453.	17	*Acherres*, 8.
2462.	18	*Cherres*, 10.
1472.	19	*Armais* by the *Grecians* called *Danaus*, whoſe 50. daughters being married to the 50. ſons of his brother *Egyptos*, murdered their huſbands: for which cauſe *Danaus* being forced out of *Egypt*, paſſed into *Greece*, where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the *Grecians* the name of *Danai*.

A. M.		
1575.	20	*Rameſes*, ſurnamed *Egyptus*, the brother of *Danaus*.
1550.	21	*Amenophthis*, III.
2590.	22	*Sethos*, or *Seſothis* 55.
2645.	23	*Rhapſaces* or *Ranſes*, 66.
2711.	24	*Amenophthis*, IV. 40.
2751.	25	*Rameſes*, II. 26.
2777.	26	*Thuoris* 7. After whoſe death ſucceeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Dioſpolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the ſpace of 177 yeares; their names we find not but that one of the lateſt of them, whoſe daughter *Solomon* married, was called *Vaphra*; and perhaps *Ogdoos* who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.
2961.	39	*Smendes*, the *Siſac* of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Rehoboam* the ſon of *Solomon*; conceived to be the *Seſoſtris* of *Herodotus* and others of the ancient Writers. Of whom it is reported, that being a King of great wealth and puiſſance, he had brought under ſubjection all his neighbouring Princes: whom he compelled in turns to draw his *Chariot*. It hapned that one of theſe unfortunate Princes, caſt his eye many times on the Coach wheels: and being by *Seſoſtris* demanded the cauſe of his ſo doing, he replyed, that the falling of that ſpoke loweſt, which but juſt before was in the height of the wheel, put him in minde of the inſtability of Fortune. The King deeply weighing the parable, would never after be ſo drawn in his *Chariot*. He alſo was the firſt that encountred the *Scythians* in battel; having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army againſt them. The *Scythians* much

A. M.

much marvelled that a King of so great Revenues would wage War against a Nation so poor; with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unprofitable; but to be vanquished a perpetual infamy and disgrace. For their parts they resolved to meet him, as an Enemy, whose overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to joyn, the *Egyptians* were discomfited, and pursued even to their own doors by the Enemy. But the *Scythians* could not enter the Countrey, because of the Fens, with whose passage they were unacquainted; and so they returned.

2987. 40 *Pseusenes*, conceived to be the *Cheops* of *Herodotus*, founder of the vast *Pyramis* before described, 41.
3028. 41 *Nepher-Cherres*. 4.
3032. 42 *Amnoiphtis*, V.
3041. 43 *Opsochon*, the *Asychis* of *Herodotus*.
3047. 44 *Psamuchos*, 9.
3056. 45 *Psusennes*, II. 14.
3070. 46 *Sesonchis*, 21.
3091. 47 *Userthon*, 15.
3106. 48 *Takellotis*, 13.
3119. 49 *Patubastis*, 40.
3159. 50 *Osorchon*, the second *Hercules Ægyptius*, as some will have it, 8.
3167. 51 *Psamnis*, 15.
3185. 52 *Bochoris*, called *So*, 2 *King*. 17. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacon* the King of *Ethiopia*. 44.
3229. 53 *Sabacon* King of *Ethiopia*, 8.
3238. 54 *Sevachus* son of *Sabacon*. 14.
3252. 55 *Tarachon*, falsly supposed to be the *Therah* of the Scriptures. 18.
3270. 56 *Stephinates*, 7.
3277. 57 *Niclupses*, 6.
3288. 58 *Psamniticus*, who first made the *Grecians* acquainted with *Egypt*, 54.
3335. 59 *Necho*, who slew *Josiah* at the battel of *Megiddo*, 25.
3360. 60 *Psamnis* II. 6.
3366. 61 *Aprios*, called *Hophra*, *Ier*. 44. subdued by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and deposed by *Amasis*. 25.
3391. 62 *Amasis* II. 44.
3435. 63 *Psamnites*, or *Psamniticus* II. a King of six moneths only; vanquished by *Cambyses*, the second Monarch of *Persia*, who united *Egypt* to that Empire, under which it continued till the time of *Darius* the sixth King of the *Medes* and *Persians*, in the 11. year of whose reign it revolted from him, and became a kingdom of it self, as in former times.
3555. 64 *Amyrtæus*, the first King after the Revolt, 6.
3561. 65 *Nepherites*, 6.
3567. 66 *Achoris*, 12.

A. M.

3579. 67 *Psamnites* III. 1.
3580. 68 *Nepherites* II. a King of two moneths only.
69 *Nectanebos*, 18.
3598. 70 *Teos*, 2.
3600. 71 *Nectanebos* II. the last King of the natural Egyptian race, that ever governed *Egypt*, by the name of a King. For in the 18 of the reign of this King, *Egypt* was again recovered by the valour of *Ochus* the eighth Emperor of *Persia*. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came & without blows won this fertile kingdom; which yielded him, during his life, the yearly value of 6000 talents. After his death, this kingdom fell to the share of *Ptolomeus* the son of *Lagus*, from whom all the subsequent Kings of *Egypt* were called *Ptolomies*,

A. M. The *Ptolomean* Kings of *Egypt*.

3641. 1 *Ptolomie*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, reputed the son of *Lagus*, but supposed to be the son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, and half-brother to *Alexander*. 40.
3681. 2 *Ptol. Philadelphus*, who filled the *Library* of *Alexandria* with 700000 *Volumes*, and caused the 72 *Interpreters* to translate the Bible.
3717. 3 *Ptol. Euergetes*, the son of *Philadelphus*, vanquished *Seleucus Callinicus*, and probably had subdued that kingdome, if not called back by domestick dissentions. 26.
3743 4 *Ptol. Philopater*, a cruel, voluptuous, and incestuous Prince; cruelly slew *Cleomenes* the last king of *Sparta*, who had fled to his father for relief in the time of his exile. 17
3760. 5 *Ptol. Epiphanes*, at the age of five years succeeded his father; protected by the *Romans* against *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his kingdom. 28.
3784. 6 *Ptol. Philometor*, the son of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* the daughter of the *great Antiochus*; protected in his nonage by the *Romans* also: caused himself to be crowned king of *Syria*, but again relinquished it. 35.
3829. 7 *Ptol. Euergetes* II. for his deformity called *Physcon*, the brother of *Ptol. Philometor*: A wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest part of his reign in a causeless war against *Cleopatra* his wife and sister. 29.
3858. 8 *Ptol. Lathurus*, reigned 16 years with *Cleopatra* his mother, by whom dispossed of his estate for the

A. M.		
		the ſpace of ten years; after her death was ſole Lord of *Egypt*. His brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Aſſociate in the time of his deprivation, and paſſing in the Accompt of the Kings of *Egypt*.
3892.	9	*Ptol. Auletes*, the ſon of *Lathurus*, ſirnamed alſo *Dionyſius*, whoſe Brother being ſetled by him in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, was moſt unjuſtly ſtripped by the power of the *Romans*, and he himſelf outed of *Egypt* by his own ſubjects, but reſtored by the aid & love of *Pompey*.
3922.	10	*Ptol. Dionyſius* called alſo *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his wife and ſiſter, ſucceeded *Auletes* in the throne, which they held together by the ſpace of three years. In the laſt of which, *Pompey* was barbarouſly ſlain on the ſhores of *Egypt*, by the command of *Achilles* the young Kings Governour; and the young King himſelf unfortunately ſlain in the *Alexandrian* Tumult againſt *Julius Ceſar*.
3925.	11	*Cleopatra*, the wife and ſiſter of *Dionyſius*, reſtored to the Crown of *Egypt* by the bounty of *Ceſar*, of whom exceedingly beloved for her wit and beauty. After which ſhe governed *Egypt* 19 years in her own ſole right, with great pomp and ſplendor: when being imbarqued in the bed and fortunes of *Marc. Antonie*, ſhe killed her ſelf not long after his fatal overthrow at the battel of *Actium*, that ſhe might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.

Theſe *Ptolomean* Princes of *Egypt*, were for the moſt part in wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquiſhed; neither Prince having cauſe to boaſt of his bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whoſe life and love with *Marcus Antonius* I will not now relate; this Country fell to the ſhare of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour hereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*; no *Senator* being permitted to come into it; it being a maxim of State, not to ſuffer men of great houſes to come into that Country, whoſe revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was *Egypt*. For beſides the natural ſituation of the place very defenſible; and beſides the abundance of money, with which it was ſtored; this Country alone furniſhed the City of *Rome* with Corn, for four moneths yearly. Whence *Veſpaſian* being choſen Emperor by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his concurrent *Vitellius*, haſtened hither; to this end only, that detaining the ordinary proviſion of victuals, he might by famine compell the City of *Rome* to ſtand at his devotion: *Ut urbem quoque externæ opis indigam fame urgeret*, as the Hiſtorian hath obſerved. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperors ſole *Peculiar*: afterwards made (as well it might) an entire *Dioceſe* of it ſelf, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*. In the diviſion of the Empire allotted to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, whoſe Government being thought to be inſupportable by this wanton People, they called in the *Saracens*, by whom the *Greek* Garriſons were caſt out, and the Country made ſubject to *Haumar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards, weary of them alſo, they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. So that from this time forwards we ſhall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time, the one reſiding at *Caire* in *Egypt*, to whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* of *Spain* and *Africk* did ſubmit themſelves; the other at *Bagdat*, who Lorded it over all the reſt, at leaſt as to the ſupreme title, and ſome chief Prerogatives, though the main power was *cantonned* and diſpoſed of among their Sultans.

The *Caliphs* of *Egypt*.

A Ch.	A. H.		A. Ch.	A. H.	
870.	247.	1 *Achmades*, or *Achmat*. 10.	1035.	412.	11 *Muſteratzer Billahi*. 60.
880.	257.	2 *Tolen*. 3.	1096.	472.	12 *Muſteale*. 5.
883.	260.	3 *Hamaria*. 29.	1100.	477.	13 *Elamir Bahacan Illahi*. 35
903.	280.	4 *Abarun*, ſlain by *Muctaphi*, the Caliph of *Babylon*.	1135.	512.	14 *Elhapit Ladin Illahi*.
940.	317.	5 *Achid Muhamid*, the ſon of *Tangi*. 3.			15 *Etzahar*.
943.	320.	6 *Abigud*, the ſon of *Achid*. 27.			16 *Elphaiz*.
970.	347.	7 *Meaz Ledin, Illahi*, of the race of *Phatime* and *Hali*. 5.			17 *Etzar Ledin Illahi*, the the ſon of *Elphaiz* the laſt *Caliph*, or King of *Egypt*, of the race of *Phatime*: the *Turks* ſucceeding after his death in this opulent kingdome. Concerning which we are to know, that *Elphaiz* the father of
975.	352.	8 *Aziz*, the ſon of *Meaz*. 21.			
996.	373.	9 *Elhachain*. 23.			
1019.	396.	10 *Etaber Leazizdin Illahi*. 16.			

of *Etzar*, being over-power'd by *Almericus* King of *Hieruſalem*, craved aid of *Norradine* the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Damaſcus*, which he received under the conduct of *Sarracon*, or *Shirachoch*, a right valiant and ſtout Commander; who taking his advantages, not only cleared the Country of *Almericus*, but got the whole kingdom to himſelf; daſhing out the brains of *Elphais* with his horſemans-mace. And though *Etzar* his ſon aſſumed for a while the title of *Caliph*; yet the deſtruction of himſelf, and the whole *Phatimean* family, rooted out by *Sarracon*, ſoon put an end to that claim, and left the kingdom in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Turkiſh* Sultans.

The fourth *Dynaſtie*, or the Race of the *Turkiſh* Kings or *Caliphs* of *Egypt*.

1163. 1 *Aſereddin*, ſirnamed *Shirachoch*, called *Sarracon* by the Chriſtian writers; the firſt of the *Turks* which reigned in *Egypt*; of the Noble family of *Alub*.

1186. 2 *Zeli-heddin*, called *Saladine* by the Chriſtian writers, the ſon (or as ſome ſay, the nephew) of *Sarracon* or *Shirachoch*; confirmed in his eſtate by the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*, under whoſe juriſdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schiſmaticks; He obtained alſo the kingdom of *Damaſcus*, conquered *Meſopotamia*, *Paleſtine*, and in the year 1190 regained the City of *Hieruſalem*. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to ſucceeding Ages, nor to glorifie him in the kingdom of Heaven, but the ſaving knowledge of *CHRIST JESUS*.

1199. 3 *Elaziz*, the ſecond ſon of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Egypt*, which he exchanged afterwards with his brother *Eladel* for the kingdom of *Damaſcus*.

4 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphtzel*, by the Chriſtian writers called *Meledine*, ſucceeded upon this exchange, in the kingdom of *Egypt*: and overcame the *Chriſtians*, without the loſſe of a man, at the ſiege of *Caire*, by letting looſe the Sluces of *Nilus*, which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleaſure.

1210. 5 *Elchamul*.

1237. 6 *Melech Eſſalach*, by the Chriſtian writers called *Melechſala*, the ſon of *Elchamul*, who overcame *Lewis* the 9. of *France*; and going with that King towards *Damiata*, was ſlain by the ſouldiers of his guard, called *Mamalucks*.

1242. 7 *Elmutan*, the ſon of *Melech Eſſalach*, ſucceeded for a time in his Fathers throne; But the *Mamalucks* being reſolved to obtain the kingdom for themſelves, inforced him to flie to a Tower of Wood, which they ſet on fire; & the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran cloſe by it) was there drowned: & the *Mamalucks* ſetled in the kingdom, *An.*1245.

Theſe *Mamalucks* were the ofspring of a People on the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, vulgarly called the *Circaſſians*: whom *Melechſala* either bought of their Parents, or (at the ſecond hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Maſters of thoſe Countries, to ſupply the want of valour in the idle and effeminate People of *Egypt*: and out of them ſelected a choiſe Band of men for the guard of his perſon. Knowing their ſtrength, and finding their opportunity, they treacherouſly ſlew *Melechſala* their Lord and Maſter; appointing one *Azeddin Ibek*, a *Turco-man* by nation, and therefore by moſt Chriſtian writers called *Turquimenius*, (one of their own number) a man of great ſpirit and valour, to ſucceed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supreme Authority into the hands of the *Egyptians*; and not permitting their own ſons to enjoy the name and privilege of *Mamalucks*, they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circaſſian* ſlaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, by them to be inſtructed in the *Egyptian* language, and the Law of *Mahomet*. Being thus fitted for imployment, they were taught the Diſcipline of War, and by degrees advanced unto the higheſt Offices of power and truſt; as now the *Janizaries* are in the *Turkiſh* Empire: in choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman Turks* were Precedented by thoſe of *Egypt*; ſo it is poſſible enough that the *Janizaries* may make as great a Change in the *Turkiſh* Empire, as the *Mamalucks* did in the *Egyptian*. So unſafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the ſole guard of his perſon, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of ſuch, whom not the ſenſe of natural duty, but the hopes of profit or preferment may make uſeful to him. For thus we find, that *Conſtantius* a King of the *Britains* was murdered by his Guard of *Picts*: moſt of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of thoſe whom they intruſted either with the guard of their perſons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no man can be ignorant how many times the Princes and Eſtates of *Italy* have been brought into the extremeſt dangers, by truſting too much to the honeſty of mercenarie Souldiers and Commanders. Take we for inſtance the proceedings of *Giacopo Picinino*, who with his Followers firſt took Pay of *Ferdinand* the firſt of *Naples*; left him, to fight for his vowed Enemy *John* Duke of *Calabria* the ſon of *Renè* Duke of *Anjou*; whom alſo he forſook in his greateſt need. The like we find of *Franciſco Sforza*, firſt entertained by the Duke of *Millain*, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*, from them

them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the Pay of the State of *Millain*, made uſe of their own Army to ſubdue that City. Nor can I ſpeak better of the *Switzers* or their dealing in this kind with the *French* Kings, the *Sforza's* Dukes of *Millain*; and with whom not (to ſay the truth) that ever truſted or employed them.

Now as it is unſafe for a Prince to commit the cuſtody of his perſon, or the defence of his Eſtates to the faith of Forreiners; ſo is it dangerous to him to call in ſuch aids, and to commit his fortunes either wholly or principally unto their fidelity. A moderate ſupply of men, money, or munition, from a confederate King, is, I confeſſe, in moſt caſes convenient, in ſome neceſſary: as well to ſave their Natives from the ſword; as to trie a friend, and intereſt an Allie in the ſame cauſe. But to invite ſo great a number of Succours, as from Helpers may become *Maſters*, and oppreſſe the people whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have ſuffered ſhipwrack, and which a good *Pilot* of the State ſhould with all care avoid. For as in the ſickneſs of the body *natural*, it is hurtful to a mans health and life, to take more *phyſick* then it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digeſt, or put out again: ſo in the body *politick*, it is a perilous matter to receive more ſuccours, then what (after they have done the deed they were ſent for) we may either with conveniencie reward and ſettle with us, or at liberty expell. Of all Surfeits, this of Forraign ſupplies is moſt uncurable: and *Ne quid nimis*, if in nothing elſe true, is in this caſe, oracle. There is no Kingdom (I am verily perſwaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all examples, were infinite and tedious; to inferre ſome, pleaſing to the Reader; and to illuſtrate the point, not unneceſſary. To begin with former times: *Philip* of *Macedon*, called into *Greece* to aſſiſt the *Thebans* againſt the *Phocians*, brought all that Country, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans*, by aiding the *Sicilians* againſt the *Carthaginians*, poſſeſſed themſelves of that flouriſhing Iſland; by aſſiſting the *Hedui* againſt the *Sequani*, maſtered *France*; by ſuccouring *Androgeus* againſt *Caſſibelan*, ſeiſed on *Britain*; by ſiding with the *Ætolians* againſt *Perſeus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of *Macedon*; and by the ſame courſe what not? In after-ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thruſt out of all; the *Iriſh* called in the *Engliſh*, by whom they were in proceſs of time totally ſubdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mogul-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. Theſe forrein ſupplies are invited or let into a Country, commonly in four caſes. Firſt, when ſome one man upon diſcontent or deſire of revenge, openeth them a way to a Country: upon which motives, *Narſes* invited the *Lombards* into *Italy*; and Count *Julian* brought the *Moors* into *Spain*: the one to be revenged on the Empreſſe *Sophia*, who had deſpitefully reviled him; the other to revenge himſelf on King *Rodorick*, who had raviſhed his daughter. Secondly, when a weaker Faction makes way for them, to maintain their cauſe againſt a ſtronger: On which ground the Duke of *Burgundy* being oppreſſed by the faction of *Orleans*, made way for *Henry* the fifth to paſſe into *France*; and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining cauſe againſt *Henry* the 4th. Thirdly, when an ambitious Prince makes uſe of a forrein power, to uſurp upon the rights of another man: And for that cauſe *Ludowick Sforze* perſwaded *Charles* the 8. to undertake the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Naples*, that by the countenance of his Arms he might appropriate to himſelf the Dukedom of *Millain*. Fourthly, when a King overburthened by a forrein or domeſtick force, which he is not able to reſiſt, requires the help of a forrein friend: in which caſe, *Plus à medico quam à morbo mali*, the *Phyſick* proves many times worſe then the *Diſeaſe*: for thus the Kings of *Naples* of the houſe of *Aragon*, being in danger of the *French*, drew in the Aids of *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, the Couſin-German once removed of the King then being: And the *Caliphs* of *Egypt*, not able to withſtand the forces of *Almericus*, craved aid of the *Turks*; by which meane both thoſe kingdoms were made a prey to their forrein friends, and by avoiding *Scylla* fled into *Charybdis*. Nay many times it ſo happeneth, that theſe forrein ſuccours joyn in deſign with thoſe againſt whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them: And ſo we find that the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into *Gaul*, to prevent the breaking in of the *Franks* or *French*, joyned with them in a common league againſt the *Romans*, whom they diſpoſſeſſed at laſt of all that Country. Onely amongſt ſo many examples to this purpoſe, we find the *Low-Country-men* to have proſpered by theſe forrein aids; who by the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, ranſomed themſelves from that yoke of bondage which was intended to be put upon them by the King of *Spain*. This I acknowledge to be true, and look upon it as a great Argument of the integrity and honeſty of the *Engliſh* Nation; although it be as true withall, that the *Engliſh* never had ſuch an Army there, as to be able to ſubdue them. But give me ſuch another inſtance, I will quit the cauſe: for the ſame *Low-Country-men* found it otherwiſe with the Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Henry* the 3. of *France*, whom they created Duke of *Brabant*, and their Governour-Generall; permitting him to bring in as many of the *French*, as either his authority or their own monies were able to raiſe: who was no ſooner ſetled in that command, but he made it his chief buſineſs to ſeize upon their ſtrongeſt Holds, and to be a more abſolute Prince amongſt them, then ever the *Spaniards* or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, that theſe forrein Succours are the laſt to be tryed, and the leaſt to be truſted, of any remedies in State. But it's now more then time to return to the *Mamalucks*; and in them to

The

The third *Dynaſtie* of the *Egyptian* Kings, or the Race of the *Mamalucks*.

A. Ch.

1255. 1 *Turquimeneius*, who being promoted to the kingdom, releaſed King *Lewis*, whom *Melechſala* his predeceſſor had taken priſoner; but performed not half of the conditions agreed upon.

2 *Clothes* (by ſome called *Elmutahaz*) taking advantage of the miſeries of the *Turks* then diſtreſſed by the *Tartars*, ſeiſed on the greateſt part of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*.

1260. 3 *Bandocader* perfected the begun conqueſts of *Clothes*, and took from the *Chriſtians* the ſtrong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much ſpoil.

4 *Melechſait*, or *Melechſares*, reſtored the power of the *Mamalucks* in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the ſon of *Henry* the 3. of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.

1289. 5 *Elpis*, or *Alphix*, recovered from the diſſenting *Chriſtians*, the ſtrong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre*, and *Sidon*; all which he razed to the ground, that they might not be any more ſerviceable to the affairs of the *Chriſtians*.

1291. 6 *Araphus*, or *Euſtrephus*, by birth a *German*, releaſed *Henry* Duke of *Mecklebourg*, after he had been priſoner 26 years. He rooted the *Chriſtians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolomais* the laſt Town they there held, and ſo razed it, that he made it fit to be ploughed.

7 *Melechneſar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Araphus*, was diſcomfited by *Caſſanes*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the loſs of 40000 *Egyptians*: but *Caſſanes* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*; for which ſervice he was afterward made Sultan of *Egypt*.

8 *Melechadel*, whom I ſuppoſe to be that Sultan that governed *Egypt*, when *Tamberlane* with unreſiſtable violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain; neither can I meet with any conſtant and continued *ſeries* (which I dare relie on) of his ſucceſſors in this kingdom, till I come to

9 *Melechella*, or *Melechnaſer*, who in the year 1423. ſubdued the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluck* Sultans.

A. Ch.

1465. 10 *Cathbeyus*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a profeſſed enemy of *Bajazet* 2. the 8th King of the *Ottomans*.

1498. 11 *Mahomet* the ſon of *Cathbeyus*, depoſed by the *Mamalucks*, for fear the kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being againſt their uſual cuſtome, that the ſon ſhould ſucceed his father in the name and privileges of a *Mamaluck*.

1499. 12 *Campſon Chiarſeſius*, ſucceeded on the depoſing of *Mahomet*.

13 *Zanballat*, who dethroned *Campſon*, and not long after was depoſed by

1500. 14 *Tonombeius*; outed of his Eſtate by the joynt-conſent of the *Mamalucks*, ſo to make way for *Campſon Gaurus*.

1501. 15 *Campſon* II. ſirnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the diſordered and factious eſtate both of Court and Country, and for the ſpace of 16 years governed very proſperouſly: But ſiding at the laſt with *Hyſmael* the *Perſian Sophie* againſt *Selimus* the firſt of that name, the 3. Emperor and ninth King of the *Ottoman* family, he drew his Kingdom into a war, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himſelfe ſlain in battel.

1517. 16 *Tonombeius* II. ſucceeded *Campſon Gaurus* both in his Kingdom and misfortunes: vanquiſhed in his firſt year by the ſaid *Selimus* the firſt, *An.* 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was uſed to ſay, *That he had gotten a Farm to feed his* Gomoglans, *or young Souldiers*. So *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, as it ſtill continueth.

What the *Revennes* of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they muſt be, beyond the proportion of belief, or elſe they could never have been Maſters of ſufficient Treaſure to finiſh thoſe vaſt Structures which they undertook. Twelve thouſand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted Annually unto in the time of the *Ptolomies*, which of our money makes the ſumme of Two *Millions* and 347750 pounds.

pounds. Which ſumme, *Auguſtus Cæſar* (appropriating this Province to himſelf) is ſaid to have doubled: But whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the reſt in Corn, I determine not. Certain it is, that there was yearly ſhipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperour, Two hundred thouſand Meaſures of Wheat, every Meaſure weighing Twenty pound weight; which cometh to Seven Millions and an hundred forty thouſand of our *Engliſh* Buſhels: Sold by him, or diſtributed *gratis* amongſt the Poor, as he ſaw occaſion. So that there might be very well ſome abatement in Money, conſidering that the Corn amounted to ſo great a ſumme. Nor were they much leſſe, if ought at all, when the *Mamalucks* ruled in this Country. For *Campſon Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no leſſe then Ten millions of *Ducats*, at one clap, amongſt his Souldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical government, and partly through the diſcontinuance of the uſual Traffick through the *Red-Sea*, receive no more then Three *Millions*; one of which is hoorded in his own Coffers; the ſecond is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Baſhaw*, for ſupport of his charge; the third is diſtributed among his Garriſon-ſouldiers, and ſuch of them as by land guard his own Million to *Conſtantinople*; for by ſea he dareth not venture it, for fear of the *Florentine*, who with a few ſhips Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

And ſo much for *EGYPT*.

OF

OF BARBARY.

BARBARY is bounded on the East with *Cyrenaica*; on the West with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantick* also; on the South with Mount *Atlas*, by which separated from *Libya Inferior*, or the Desarts of *Libya*.

It containeth in it the whole *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, & part of the *Dioceſe* of *Spain*: subject in former times to the Commonwealth of *Carthage*, and the great Kings of *Mauritania* and *Numidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninſula*; and afterwards extended it over all the reſt of the Country on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the ſubjugation of it by the *Saracens*, by whom called *BARBARY*, either from *Barbar*, ſignifying in their language an uncertain murmur, ſuch as the ſpeech of the *Africans* ſeemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar* ſignifying a *Deſart*; which doubled, made up firſt *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It is ſituate under the third and fourth *Climates*; ſo that the longeſt Summers day in the parts moſt South amounteth to thirteen houres three quarters, increaſed in the moſt Northern parts to fourteen houres and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantick* Ocean to the *greater Syrtis*, for the ſpace of 1500 miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narroweſt 100 miles; but towards the *Straits*, where broadeſt, almoſt three hundred.

The Country in ſuch parts as lie neareſt to the *Mediterranean*, is full of hils, covered with woods, and ſtored with plenty of Wild-beaſts; provided reaſonably well of moſt ſorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, inſomuch that moſt of the Inhabitants live of *Barley*-bread. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champain country, watered with many pleaſant Rivers iſſuing from that Mountain, and liberally furniſhed with Cherries, Figs, Peares, Plumes, Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oile, Honey, Sugar; ſome Mines of Gold, and that for purity and fineneſs nowhere to be bettered. Here are alſo beſides large Herds of Cattel, ſome Elephants, Lyons, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like ſavage nature, and of Apes great multitudes; Horſes good ſtore, of excellent both ſtrength and beauty. But taking it in the beſt parts, it falleth extremely ſhort of that infinite fertility which is aſcribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For beſides the miracle of five hundred Ears of Corn growing on one ſtalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, that not far from the City of *Tacape*, in the way to *Leptis*, a man might ſee a great Date-tree overſhadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig-tree, under that a Pom-granat, under that a Vine, and under all, Peaſe, Wheat, and Herbs; all growing and flouriſhing at one time. It is affirmed alſo by the ſame Author, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that ſome fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that a peece of ground of four cubits ſquare, was uſually rented out at ſo many *Denarii*: by which accompt, (as the learned *Budæus* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground muſt be worth yearly 12800 of the *Roman Seſtertii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparallel'd increaſe of the Fruits of the Earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The People are of a duskiſh colour, but inclining to *blackneſſe*: much of the ſame nature with the *Arabians*, by whoſe numerous families formerly they were overſpred; but the *Africans* of the two the better active of body, well skilled in Horſmanſhip, but impatient of labour; covetous of honour, inconſtant, crafty, and unfaithful; ſtudious in matters of their Law, and in ſome of the *Liberal* Sciences, eſpecially *Philoſophie* and the *Mathematicks*, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countries they are admitted to be Readers: they are alſo ſaid to be ſtately of gate, exceedingly diſtruſtful, in their hate implacable, and jealous of their women beyond all compare. The women of a comely body, and well featured, beautiful in blackneſſe, of delicate ſoft skins; and in their habit and apparel beyond meaſure ſumptuous: ſo dreſt, to make themſelves more amiable in the eyes of their huſbands; for otherwiſe not permitted to ſtir abroad, and ſeldome to ſee any body but thoſe of their own houſes.

The Language ſpoken at the preſent in moſt of the *Maritime* Towns, except thoſe of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabick* tongue. In thoſe two Kingdoms, and moſt part of the Country-villages, the *Punick* or old *African*, the antient languages of the Country: the *Punick*, ſpoken in all places where antiently the *Carthaginians* were of any power; the *African* (whatſoever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not ſubject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder; which though it was the Language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it ſpread ſo far as to extinguiſh or ſuppreſſe the old natural tongues: and in the *Colonies* themſelves ſo much degenerated in ſhort time, ſo barbarouſly and imperfectly ſpoken; that a Siſter of the Emperor *Severus*, who lived in *Leptic*, a *Roman* Colonie, coming to *Rome* to ſee her Brother, ſpoke it ſo incongruouſly, that the Emperor was aſhamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of S. *Auguſtine*, an *African* Biſhop, were preached in *Latine*, becauſe preached in *Hippo* his Epiſcopal See, which was then a Colonie of the *Romans*; yet he confeſſeth that he was ſometimes fain to uſe ſuch words as were not *Latine*, to be the better underſtood of his Congregation.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt planted, in that part hereof which was called *Africa Propria* by *Epænetus*, one of the 70 Diſciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopſis*, affirmed to be the firſt Biſhop of *Carthage*: In *Mauritania*, by S. *Simon* the Apoſtle, ſirnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphraſtes* addeth, that S. *Simon Peter* preached here alſo, when by the Decree of *Claudius Cæſar* he was forced from *Rome*; and at his going hence, left *Creſcens* his Diſciple to promote the work. But by whomſoever planted firſt, it found good increaſe, and was ſo propagated in ſhort time over all this Country, that in the year 250. or before, there were in it above 90 Biſhops; for ſo many were aſſembled in the Synod of *Labeſitum*: and in the year 398. when the faction of the *Donatiſts* was of greateſt power, we find no fewer then 214 *Catholick* Biſhops met together in the Councel of *Carthage*. Which as it is an argument of the great increaſe of *Chriſtianity*, in thoſe parts of *Africa*; ſo it ſhewes alſo that the Church was in ill condition; ſo overpower'd by the violence of that mighty faction, who had at leaſt 270 Biſhops of their own opinion; that the *Orthodox* party was neceſſitated to increaſe the number of Biſhops, for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary ſide, if ever the difference ſhould come to be examined in a publike meeting. Theſe Biſhops ranked into ſix Claſſes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Biſhops of each Province ſubject to their own *Metropolitan*, who in this *Dioceſe* (contrary to the uſage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them ſubordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally inveſted with *Patriarchal* juriſdiction over all theſe parts. *Latius fuſa eſt noſtra* Provincia: *Habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritanias duas, ſibi cohærentes*, are S. *Cyprians* words. Which ſhew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better *Geographer* then an Hiſtorian or Divine: He would not elſe have told us in ſuch poſitive terms, that thoſe of *Barbary* remained in their old *Idolatrie* till 250 years before *Mahomets* birth, at what time they received the *Goſpel*, and not before: But the good man miſtook the reviving of the *Orthodox* faith, in the time of *Juſtinian*, after it had been long ſuppreſſed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* faction (who at one time baniſhed hence 300 *Catholike* Biſhops) for the firſt planting of the Goſpel. Otherwiſe not to be excuſed. But after this *Reviver*, it held not long, when ſuppreſſed by the *Saracens*; and ſo ſuppreſſed, that except it be in ſome few Towns poſſeſſed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of *Chriſtianity* to be diſcerned in all this Country; *Mahometiſm* being elſwhere univerſally imbraced amongſt them.

Amongſt the men of moſt note for Souldiery, which have been born in this Country, we may reckon *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three ſons: 2. *Annibal*, 3. *Aſdrubal*, and 4. *Mago*; men hardly to be parallel'd in any Ages: 5. *Maſiniſſa*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Cotemporaries: and in the following times. 6. *Septimius Severus*, the Roman Emperour. Amongſt thoſe addicted to the Muſes, thoſe of moſt note, 1. *Terence*, 2 *Apuleius*. But for Divines, no Region in the world afforded men of more eminent note, nor better deſerving of the Church. 1. *Tertullian*, 2. *Cyprian*, 3. *Julius Africanus*, 3. *Arnobius*, 4. *Lactantius*, 5. *Victorinus Afer*, 6. *Optatus Melevitanus*, 7. *Victor Uticenſis*, and above all, 8. the moſt learned and divine S. *Auguſtine*, a man of ſuch admirable abilities, and indefatigable induſtry, ſo conſtant a Defender of all Orthodox doctrines againſt the *Hereticks* of thoſe times, that he deſervedly got the name of *Malleus Hæreticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Country, beſides Mount *Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it ſelf) 1. *Phocra*, 2. *Heptadelphus*, and 3. *Atlas minor* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; 4. *Cinnaba*, 5. *Garas*, 6. *Madethubadus*, and 7. thoſe called *Gariphi*, in *Cæſarienſis*, 8. *Thambes*, 9. *Mampſarus*, 10. *Uſaletus*, and 11. *Zuchabarus*, in *Africa Propria*. Of which, and others, we may ſpeak more, if occaſion be, in our deſcription of the Provinces in which they are. And for the Rivers of moſt note, though none of any long courſe in ſo narrow a Country: we have in *Tingitana*, 1. *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantick*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2. another of the ſame name, and the ſame *exit* alſo, but far more to the North, towards the Streit of *Gibraltar*; 3. *Moſocath*, mollified by *Saluſt* the Hiſtorian into *Mulucha*, and by him placed betwixt the *Numidians* and the *Moors*; 4. *Malva*, the boundarie at this day betwixt the Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Algiers*; 5. *Phthuth*, of more fame then any, of which more anon: in *Cæſarienſis*, 6. *Naſabath*, 7. *Siſaris*, and 8. *Sorbetes*: in *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunes*, 8. *Rubicatus*, which riſing out of Mount *Thambes*, falleth into the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*; 9. *Triton*, which iſſuing out of the hill called *Uſaletus*, and making the great Fen called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its courſe alſo in the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10. *Bagradas*, the greateſt in all this tract, which riſing out of Mount *Atlas*, firſt runneth towards the Eaſt, and then receiving from the hill called *Mampſarus* the addition of another Stream, paſſeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his courſe.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and *Land marks*, I ſhould now proceed to the deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces hereof, as in other places. But becauſe each part almoſt hath had for theſe later times its particular Hiſtory, and that it is divided at the preſent into ſeveral Governments, and under the command of ſeveral Princes: I will here lay down ſo much of the Storie of it as concerns the whole, before ſuch diviſion; and afterwards purſue the *Hiſtorie* and *Chorographie* of the ſeveral parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Country was firſt peopled by *Phut* the third ſon of *Cham*: who leaving his brother *Mizraim* well ſetled in the Land of *Egypt*, paſſed towards the Weſt; and leaving *Lehabim* his nephew betwixt him and *Mizraim*, poſſeſſed himſelf of all the reſt from the *greater Syrtis* to the *Ocean*. Remainders of whoſe name we find in the River *Phut*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Phthuth*, with but little difference, ſave that it ſavoureth more of the *African* roughneſſe) near which *Joſephus* findeth a Region called the Country of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phuteans*:

Phuteans: ſeconded herein by S. *Hierome*, who ſpeaking of this *Regio Phutenſis* in *Mauritania*, (where the River *Phuth* is placed by *Ptolomy*) voucheth in generall terms the teſtimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latine*. So that of this there is no queſtion to be made. Such Nations as deſcended of this Plantation, ſhall be hereafter ſpoke of in their ſeveral Provinces. Governed at firſt by the Chiefs of their ſeveral families; but in the end reduced under the command of the Kings of *Mauritania* and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two firſt, Natives of this Country, of the race of *Phut*; the laſt deſcended alſo of the ſeed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*; who on the conqueſt of their Country by the Children of *Iſrael*, forced to ſeek new dwellings; and having ſtore of ſhips to tranſplant themſelves and their families, ſetled in the maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa* properly ſo called. For, that the people of thoſe parts, though loſt into other names and families, were antiently of a *Canaanitiſh* or *Phœnician* race, may be made apparent, 1. By the nearneſſe of their Language, the *Punick* or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* tongue, differing only in the dialect and pronunciation. 2. By the name *Pœni*, or *Phœni*, little differing from that of the *Phœnices*. 3. By this teſtimony of S. *Auguſtine*, who telleth us in the Comment on S. *Pauls* Epiſtle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finiſhed by him; *Interrogati Ruſtici noſtri quid ſint, reſpondent* Punici *Chanani*; that is to ſay, that when any of the Inhabitants of this Country (he himſelf was one) were asked what they were, they anſwered, *Chanaanites*. 4. We find in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyſes* having totally conquered *Egypt*, intended a war againſt the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it ſeemeth) of ſome power: but the *Phœnicians*, being the onely Sea-faring men *Cambyſes* then had, abſolutely denied to be imployed in that ſervice; they being ſprung from the ſame tree, that the *Carthaginians* were. 5. We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagrius Scholaſticus*) how on two marble-pillars, ſituate nigh unto *Tingis* or *Tanger*, there was in the *Phœnician* language and character engraved, *Nos fugimus à facie* Joſhuah *prædonis, filii* Nave: that is to ſay, *We flie from the face of that Robber*, Joſhuah *the ſon of* Nun. The ſetling of this people there, a great incitement queſtionleſſe unto *Dido* to come thither alſo; who feared as much danger from her brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whoſe hands had been embrued in the blood of her husband, as the others did from the ſword of *Joſuah*. Gathering together all her treaſures, which were very great, accompanied with her brother *Barca* and her ſiſter *Anna*, ſhe ſet ſail for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after ſtood the City of *Carthage*, ſhe obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigneſſe then ſhe could compaſſe round about with an Oxes hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byrſa*, which at firſt it had. Firſt founded in or about the year of the world 3070. which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomons* Temple, 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the deſtruction of *Troy*. By which accompt (I note this only by the way) it is impoſſible that *Dido* or *Eliſa* (for by both theſe names we find her called) ſhould ever ſee the face of *Æneas*, unleſſe it were in picture, or imagination; and therefore as impoſſible ſhe ſhould either fall in love with him, or be got with child by him, or finally kill her ſelf on her being forſaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a generall belief with moſt ſorts of men. Hereunto conſenteth *Auſonius*, who honouring the *Statua* of this abuſed Princeſſe with an *Epigram* of 18 verſes, among others gives us theſe four.

Invida cur in me ſtimulaſti Muſa Maronem,
Fingeret ut noſtræ damna pudicitiæ?
Vos magis Hiſtoricis *(Lectores) credite de me,*
Quam qui furta deûm, concubituſque canunt.

Why didſt thou ſtir up Virgil, *envious Muſe,*
Falſely my name and honour to abuſe?
Of me let Hiſtories *be heard, not thoſe,*
Who to the World, Jove's *theft and luſts expoſe.*

Credible it is, that *Æneas* being driven on the coaſt of *Africk*, was by ſome Prince there courteouſly entertained, as a man whoſe fame had been his *harbinger*: but why the ſtory ſhould be faſtned on *Dido*, I ſee not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her ſelf, gave occaſion to the Poet to feign, that it was for the love of *Æneas*: whereas it was indeed to avoid the luſt and fury of *Jarbas*, a potent King in *Africk*, who violently deſired to have his pleaſure on her.

But to proceed. This City thus founded in a place commodious for trade and merchandiſe, in ſhort time grew exceeding wealthy; And having wealth enough to hire *mercenary* ſouldiers (of which the needy *Mauritanians* & *Numidians* did afford good ſtore) they conquered all the Sea-coaſts from *Cyrene* to the Streits of *Hercules* (now called the Streits of *Gibraltar*) and ſo much alſo towards the South, as was worth the conquering; within which ſpace poſſeſſed of 300 Cities. Grown to ſuch height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongſt them the Kings of *Numidia* and *Mauritania*, were at their devotion: They began to caſt their eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy Iſland, lying near unto their Coaſt; which queſtionleſs they had poſſeſſed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatneſs, and fearing their neighbourhood, had not took upon them the defence of the *Mumertines*, and under that pretence got ſome footing in it. The end of this war, after many brave exploits on both ſides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*, their abandoning all the Iſlands betwixt them and

and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 *Talents*, amounting to about two millions of Crowns. And ſuch end had the firſt *Punick* war, managed for the moſt part in *Sicil:* during which time, and the firſt war there managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it ſelf was twice invaded; firſt by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracuſe*, (or ſo commonly called) and afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General; but with no other great ſucceſſe, then the ſpoil of the Country. The ſecond followed not long after, but the *Scene* was altered: begun in *Spain*, proſecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the ſon of *Amilcar*, deſcended from *Barca* the brother of *Dido* or *Eliſa*; who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increaſed his reputation and experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes*, into *Italy* it ſelf; defeated the Army of the *Romans*, and ſlew ſome of their Conſuls; ſo proſperous in the battel of *Cannæ*, where the whole ſtrength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good fortune, and made uſe of his victory, he might within four or five dayes after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the forces of *Scipio:* who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently tranſlated the war to *Carthage*. The iſſue was, that on the loſſe of the battel of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were neceſſitated to ſubmit themſelves to the will of the Conqueror; that is to ſay, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships and Gallies excepting ten; to make no war without leave of the *Romans*, to pay for the charges of the war 10000 *Talents*, and ſuch other extremities. So ended the ſecond *Punick* war, *An. V. C.* 602. And the third followed not long after; not any way occaſioned by thoſe of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the people of *Rome*, who would not think themſelves ſafe whileſt that City ſtood, and therefore ſent another *Scipio* to lay ſiege unto it; by whom, after a long and ſtout reſiſtance, it was at laſt taken and deſtroyed; the Treaſure which was found in it, notwithſtanding their former loſſes, and the low eſtate it was reduced to, beſides what was conſumed by fire, and reſerved by the ſouldiers, amounting to 470000 pound weight of ſilver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thouſand pounds of our *Engliſh* money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewithall the reſt of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed againſt her, and aided the *Romans* in theſe wars, yet they ſoon found their own fortunes buried in the ſelf-ſame Grave. Subverted, one after another, as occaſion was, they became all ſubject unto *Rome*, their Kingdoms and Eſtates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of theſe were reckoned ſeven in all, that is to ſay, 1 *Africa Propria*, called alſo *Zeugitana*, and *Proconſularis*, 2 *Byzacena*, 3 *Tripolitana*, 4 *Numidia*, 5 *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*, 6 *Sitiſenſis*, and 7 *Tingitana*. Of which the laſt (I know not why) was laid to the *Dioceſe* of *Spain*, called therefore *Hiſpania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, by ſome elder Writers: the other ſix made up the *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorius* for *Italy*, who had here his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till ſubdued by the *Vandals*, a *German* nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb* on the Coaſt of the *Baltick*, where now lie the Dukedoms of *Mecklenbourg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory ſtill retained there in the ſtile of thoſe Princes, who call themſelves *Duces Vandalorum*; and in the Confederacie of the *Hanſe-towns*, called by ſome *Latine* Writers, *Civitates Vandalicæ*. A Nation of great power, and numbers, (the *Burgundians* being only a part of theſe) one of the five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11. year of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul* by the treacherous practiſes of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Weſtern Empire; and after an abode of three years paſſed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi* and *Alani* their Aſſociates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them alſo. So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperours Vicegerent in *Africa:* who ſtomacking to ſee his Office beſtowed on *Caſtinus* an unworthy man, and his enemy; betrayed the Country to theſe *Vandals*, in the laſt year of the life and reign of *Gundericus*; an *Arian* in Religion, as were the reſt of the Nation, to which induced by their neighbourhood and acquaintance with the *Goths:* which *Hereſie* as they brought with them into *Africk*, driving thence all the Orthodox *Chriſteans*; ſo they continued in it till their extirpation.

The *Vandal* Kings of *Africa*.

A. C.		
412.	1	*Gundericus*, who firſt invaded *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Africk*. 16.
428.	2	*Genſericus*, who at the requeſt of *Eudoxia* the widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy* and ſacked the City of *Rome*, the ſpoil whereof for 14 dayes he gave to his ſouldiers: but at the requeſt of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterward married, he did not burn it. This *Eudoxia* was wife to the Weſtern Emperor *Valentinian*; who having a mind to a Lady of *Rome*, the wife of one *Maximus*, he cunningly ſlipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his finger, and by that token ſent for the Lady to the Court; and when ſhe was come, raviſhed her. To revenge this diſgrace, *Maximus* ſlew *Valentinian*, made himſelf Emperor, and forced *Eudoxia* to be his wife. But ſhe ſtomacking a match ſo unequal to her high birth, and having ſome incling of the manner of her husbands death, ſent for *Genſericus* into *Italy*. This *Genſericus* conquered *Carthage* and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.

A. C.		A. C.	
476.	3 *Honoricus*, ſon of *Genſericus*. 7.	530.	7 *Gilmir*, the ſon of *Genzo*, one of the Deſcendents of *Genſericus*; overcome by *Beliſarius* a worthy and politique Leader, whom the Emperor *Juſtinian* imployed in that ſervice.
484.	4 *Gundebundus*, ſon to *Genzo* the brother of *Honoricus*. 15.		
499.	5 *Traſimundus*, brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.		
523.	6 *Hildericus*, the ſon of *Honoricus*, depoſed.		

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals*, (having continued in *Spain* and *Africa*, 146 years) by the valour of *Beliſarius*. Who after this good ſervice, was imployed by *Juſtinian* againſt the *Gothes*, then reigning in *Italy*; againſt whom he proceeded very fortunately: but being on I know not what envy, called to *Conſtantinople*, his eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his bread at the Gate of the Temple of S. *Sophia*. A bad reward for ſo good a ſervant. But to go on: *Juſtinian* having regained *Africk*, to honour his new Conqueſt, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio-Præfectus* of *Italy*, to which formerly ſubject; and increaſing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of it ſelf; appointing his *Præfectus Prætorio Africæ* to reſide in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his charge; which he then alſo raiſed to a *Conſular* Province, having in former times been *Proconſular* only. But long it held not in this ſtate: For in the year 647. the *Romans* were finally expulſed by *Hucba* a famous Leader, whom *Oſmen* the third *Caliph* of the *Saracens* had deſigned to this ſervice. *Africk*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the *Saracenical* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the *Caliphs* growing leſſe and leſſe, and every one of their *Sultans* or *Provincial* Officers getting what he could for himſelf; this Country was diſtracted into many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at laſt reduced to four of moſt conſideration; that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of 1 *Tunis*, 2 *Tremeſen* or *Algeirs*, 3 *Feſſo*, and 4 *Morocco*. To the *Chorography* and *Hiſtory* whereof we do now proceed, adding hereto in the fifth place the Iſles of *Barbary*.

1. *TUNIS.*

THe Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in Latine called *Regnum Tunetanum*) hath on the Eaſt *Cyrene*, on the Weſt the Kingdom of *Algeirs* or *Tremeſin*, on the North the *Mediterranean*, on the South Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis* the chief City of it.

The Country towards the Eaſt barren and deſtitute of water; but in the Weſtern parts ſufficiently plentiful of Corn and other fruits, and generally well ſet with Trees. The people more patient of labour then the reſt of *Barbary*, and for that cauſe perhaps more healthy; but queſtionleſſe of ſo good conſtitution, that they live commonly to great Age, unleſſe a violent death prevent them; and are not much afraid of ſickneſs, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as ſome call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*, called ſince *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the preſent *Numidia*, lying on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countries, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, were 1 *Audas*, 2 *Buzara*, 3 *Cinna*, 4 *Dios*, or the Hils of *Jupiter*, 5 *Gillius*, by ſome named *Gigion*, and 6 thoſe called *Thizibi*. Rivers of moſt eſteem with them, though not much with others, beſides thoſe mentioned before, 1 *Ampſaga*, now called *Collo*, and by ſome *Sat Gemar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremeſen*; 2 *Catuda*; 3 *Cyniphus*, iſſuing from the hils called *Zuchabarus*, and falling into the Sea not far from *Tripolis*. Beſides which there were ſome great *Lakes*; the chief whereof, 1 *Hipponites* near Mount *Cinna*; 2 the Lake of *Pallas*, or that called *Palus Tritonia*, where *Minerva* was ſaid to have ſhewed herſelf the Inventreſs of Spining and of Oyle, and for that much worſhipped by this People; 3 *Sylura*, another great Lake, but not ſo famous as the former, becauſe not honoured by a Goddeſſe.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1. *Africa* ſpecially ſo called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Ampſaga* to the Leſſer *Syrtis*; 2. *Tripolitana*, from the Leſſer *Syrtis* to the Greater; 3. *Numidia*, lying on the Weſt of *Zeugitana*, or *Africa Propria*; and 4. *Byzacena*, ſo called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the territory whereof ſo extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of corn were ſent to *Rome* in the time of *Auguſtus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitius Nero*, growing on one ſtalk. But this Diviſion being long ſince worn out of memory, it is divided at the preſent into the Provinces of, 1. *Ezzab*, 2. *Tripolis*, 3. *Tunis*, 4. *Conſtantina*, 5. *Bugia*.

1. *EZZAB* is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A ſmall Region, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich, (the richer, in regard they are free from *tributes*) their wealth not riſing from the commodities of their own Country, which affordeth them little elſe beſides *Dates* and *Olives*; but from ſuch merchandiſe which they buy of the *Venetians*, and ſell to the *Numidians*. The richeſt, thoſe of *Meſrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath ſome, but none of note: the chief of which, 1. *Meſurata*, 2. *Sibeca*, both upon the Sea; of which the firſt gives name unto that little Province ſpoken of before. Of more note in the former times was *Philæni Villa*, ſituate on the Greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory then called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoyning *Altars*, called *Philæni Aræ*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occaſion. Some controverſies being grown betwixt thoſe of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their bounds; it was agreed, that two men at a ſet houre ſhould be ſent out of each

City

City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meer-ſtone* of their ſeveral Territories: The *Phileni*, two brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were ſo quick of foot, that they had goten a good way into the Country of the *Cyrenenſes*, before they were met; wherewith the *Cyreneans* much enraged, put to them this choice, either to go ſo much back again, or to die in the place: This laſt accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Country before their own; for preſervation of whoſe name and honour to ſucceeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect theſe *Altars*.

2. Weſt of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*, which together with *Ezzab* made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*: Not much more fruitful then the other, except in Barley; but more commodiouſly ſeated in regard of the Sea, which is here more ſafe for navigation, the former lying wholly on the *greater Syrtis*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leptis Magna*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from another, but of leſſe note, and therefore called *Leptis Parva*, ſituate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A town of ſo great wealth and trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Carthaginians*. 2. *Euphranta*, called alſo *Pyrgos Euphranta* from ſome ſtrong Tower in it, on the Weſtern-bank of the *greater Syrtis*. 3 *Cinſterna*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Cyniphus*. 4. *Cabis*, the utmoſt City of this Province weſtward; the ſame which *Ptolomie* cals *Tacapa*, ſituate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the *leſſer Syrtis*. 5. *Sabratha*, and 6. *Heva*; not elſe obſervable, but that together with *Leptis Magna* they made up that one City which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7. *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with *Colonies* from thoſe three Cities before mentioned. A City of great name and riches, till deſtroyed by the *Saracens*: By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colleges, and Hoſpitals; and flouriſhing in much wealth and luſtre, it became a Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject to the Kings of *Tunis*, till taken by the *Genoes* with a Fleet of 20 ſail, and by them ſold to the King of *Feſſe*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter* of *Navar*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, the firſt Monarch of *Spain*; whoſe Nephew *Charles* the 5. conferred it on the Knights of S. *John* of *Hieruſalem*, then expelled from *Rhodes*: whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Baſa* General of *Selimus* the ſecond, diſpoſſeſſed by force, *An.* 1551. ſince that the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Begterbeg* for theſe *African* Provinces, and made an uſual retreat for *Pyrats*, who infeſt theſe Seas, and do much miſchief to the Coaſts of *Sicil*, *Italy*, and others of the *Chriſtian* Countries.

3. The Province of *TUNIS*, lying Weſtward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up ſo much of this Kingdom, as antiently contained the Province of *Byzacena*; and ſo much of the *Roman Africk*, as lieth on the Eaſt of the River called *Guadilharbar*, the *Hipponites Lacus* of the Antient writers. The Country antiently ſo fruitful, that it yielded uſually an increaſe of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, beſides the teſtimony of approved Authors, the wondetfull, if not prodigious Ears of Corn which before we heard of, may ſerve ſufficiently. Now indigent, and ſo unprovided of all Grain for the uſe of their families, that they are fain to furniſh themſelves out of other places: the People not daring to manure or ſow their land, for fear of the *Arabians*, who ever and anon fall into theſe parts, and ſpoil what they meet with.

Places of moſt note in it, in the elder times, 1. *Adrumetum*, or *Adrumyſtus*, now called *Machometta*, once a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Byzacena*; by conſequence, in the times of *Chriſtianity* an Archbiſhops See: walled and repaired by the Emperor *Juſtinian*, and by his command called *Juſtiniana*. 2. *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal* before his battel with *Scipio*. 3. *Nadagora*, memorable for the great battel betwixt the two renowned *Generals* of *Rome* and *Carthage*, not parallel'd ſince their own times, nor in thoſe before them. In which the great Controverſie between thoſe Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* ſhewed his ſingular judgment in ordering his Souldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in horſe, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage* to fight in a place of diſadvantage, he could do no marvels: the *Romans* with the loſſe of no more then 1500 of their own men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians* in the fight and chaſe. 4. *Salera*, the firſt place took by *Scipio* after the landing of his Army. 5. *Utica*, a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greateſt ſhips; much ſpoke of in the wars of *Carthage*, and memorable for the death of *Cato* (hence ſirnamed *Utican*) who here ſlew himſelf, for fear of falling into the hands of *Caſar*. It is now called *Biſerta*. 6. *Byzacium*, ſeated in liberal and fruitful ſoils, as was ſhewn before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7. *Ruſpinum*, made by *Caſar* the ſeat of his war in *Africk*, againſt the ſons and faction of *Pompey*: as memorable in the times ſucceeding, for being the Epiſcopal See of S. *Fulgentius*. 8. *Thyſtrus*, remarkable for the Tragedie of the *Gordiani*: Of which the Father in this City was ſaluted Emperor by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximinus* then their Emperor, whoſe *Procurator* they had ſlain in a tumult: but his party being diſcomfited by *Capellianus* whom *Maximinus* ſent againſt him, and his ſon killed in the defeat; upon the hearing of the news, he here hanged himſelf. 9. *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held out longeſt for the *Mercinaries*, in their deſperate Rebellion againſt the *Carthaginians*; by which the Eſtate of that great City was in danger of ruine, at the end of the firſt *Punick* war. 10. *CARTHAGE*, once the Lady and Miſtreſſe of *Africk*; ſituate in the bottom of a ſafe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very ſtrongly fortified both by art and nature; Environed with the Sea, except upon one ſide only, where joyned unto the Land by a narrow *Iſthmus* about two miles and an half in breadth: In compaſſe 24 miles; but meaſuring by the outward wall, it was 45.

For

For without the wall of the City it ſelf, there were three wals more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults under ground of 30 foot deep, wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horſe and all their Provender; and Lodging in thoſe Out-ſtreets for the *Riders* of the ſaid Horſe, and for 20000 Foot beſides, which never came within the City to annoy or peſter it. On the South-ſide ſtood the Caſtle called *Byrſa*, which took up two miles and an half in compaſſe; firſt built by *Dido*, on that ground which ſhe obtained of the *Libyans*, when ſhe got leave to buy only ſo much land of them, as ſhe could compaſſe round about with an Oxes hide. In that, the ſumptuous Temple of their antient Deities, *Juno*, *Apollo*, *Æſculapius*, *Belus*. On the Weſt-ſide, a ſtanding Pool made of the Sea-water; let into it by ſo narrow a paſſage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a ſtately *Arſenal*, with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the foundation and affairs of this mighty City we have ſpoke already. The Government of it firſt by Kings, thoſe *abſolute* enough at firſt, afterwards limited by the *Senate*, and finally made meerly *titulary* by the power of the People: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Ariſtotle* in the 2. of his *Politicks*. Their Territories, before the ſecond *Punick* war, when they were at the greateſt, extended on the Sea-coaſts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syrtis* to the *Streits*, and ſo unto the River *Iberus*, for the ſpace of 2000 miles in length: their *Revennes* anſwerable, and readily brought in, by reaſon of their infinite trading. Which made the *Roman* people think themſelves unſafe, whilſt this City ſtood. Reſolved on the deſtruction of it, they ſent againſt it L. *Martius* and M. *Manlius*, their two *Conſuls*, with a puiſſant Army: to whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the preſervation of the City it ſelf, which was faithfully promiſed. But when they had withall given up the ſons of their principal men to be ſent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future loyaltie; they were told, that a *City conſiſted not in wals, but in lawes and government*. Theſe with the *Co-poration*, ſhould remain as formerly; the Town to be removed ten miles further off, where there was no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was reſolved to abide the utmoſt; but they wanted neceſſaries for reſiſtance. That want ſupplied for want of Iron to make Arms, with Gold and Silver; the Houſes pulled down to furniſh them with timber to build a Navy; and noble Ladies cutting off the hair of their heads, to make Ropes and Cordage; 25000 Women liſted to defend the wals. But the fatal moment being come, a ſecond *Scipio* is ſent thither to diſpatch the work; by whom at laſt the Town was taken, and for 17 dayes together conſumed with fire; the Queen and multitudes of the People burning themſelves in the Temple of *Æſculapius*, becauſe they would not fall into the hands of the *Romans*. Reedified by *Julius Cæſar*, and made a Colonie, it recovered ſome part of her former luſtre; but ſo, that her chief glory was rather to be ſought for in her antient, then her preſent fortunes. *Populi Romani* Colonia, *olim Imperii ejus pertinax æmula, & priorum excidio rerum, quam ope præſentium clarior*; was her character in the times of *Pomponius Mela*. But in this laſt Eſtate, accompted for the *Metropolis* of the *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, the Reſidence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate* of the *African* Churches; who had 164 Biſhops under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* ſtood. Deſtroyed in the ſucceeding times by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it is at laſt reduced to nothing but a few ſcattered houſes, not above five and twenty ſhops, one Temple: all the reſt a ruine. So truly ſaid the antient Poet,

Sic patet exemplis Oppida poſſe mori.
Thus by examples do we ſee,
That Towns may die as well as We.

Of note at the preſent, 1. *Tunis*, ſuppoſed to be the *Themiſa* or *Thuniſa* of *Ptolomie*; of ſmall accompt till the laſt deſtruction of *Carthage*, by whoſe fall it roſe. Situate not far from the ruines of that famous City, in compaſs about five miles, and in that compaſs ſaid to contain 10000 houſholds. Of great traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of forrein nations, chiefly from *Genoa* and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the *Holy Wars*, for the ſieges and ſucceſſes of two of our *Engliſh* Princes; that namely of King *Edward* the firſt, in his fathers life time; and that of *Henry* the fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*: by both which (though the laſt ſerved only under the command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Compoſition; *Lewis* the 9. commonly called *S. Lewis*, dying at the firſt ſiege of it. 2. *Goletta*, a ſtrong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a Demy-Iland, divided from the main Land by two narrow paſſages, but ſo that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty, by *Charles* 5. *An.* 1535. together with the *Turkiſh* Navy riding in the Lake faſt by it; but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years after, *An.* 1574. 3. *Cairoan*, built by *Hucba*, who firſt conquered *Africk* for the *Saracens*, in a ſandie Deſart, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36 from any part of the Sea, to ſecure himſelf from any invaſion, which the commodiouſneſs of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the firſt founder of it, with an admirable Temple raiſed on Pillars of Marble, who placed alſo in it a College of Prieſts, and made it the chief Reſidence of his poſterity for the ſpace of 170 years, who reigned here under the great *Caliphs* as the *Sultans* of *Africk*. Deſtroyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424 year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco*; and ſtill of ſuch eſteem amongſt theſe *Mahometans*, that their chief men are brought thither to be buried from all parts of the Country, hoping by the prayers of thoſe *Prieſts* to find a ſhorter way to Heaven then in other places.

4 More Weſtward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, ſo called from *Conſtantina* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hipponites*, now named *Guadilharbar*, to *Conſtantine* a

Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the ſame with *Mons Audus* in *Ptolomie*. The ſoil hereof ſaid to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great ſtore of Butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Oroſius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Tabraca*, on the Eaſt; and 2. *Hippo Regius*, on the Weſtern bank of *Rubricatus*: both *Roman* Colonies, but this laſt moſt famous, in being the *Epiſcopal* See of renowned S. *Auguſtine*. 3. *Bona*, the birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about an hundred miles from the Sea, but ſituate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: ſo rich and fertile, that the Town flouriſheth to this day, adorned with a ſumptuous *Moſque*, and never without the company of Merchants coming from *Genoa*, *Tunes*, and the Iſle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits and Butter. 4. *Thuburnica*, another Colonie of the *Romans*. 5. *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the ſame nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6. *Culcua*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moors* now called *Cucutina*, but *Conſtantina* by the *Latines*, and moſt Nations elſe; Now the chief City of this Province, ſituate near a Mountain of the ſame name near the edge of *Bugia*. An antient City, but containing ſtill 8000 families, many ſumptuous Buildings, amongſt which a large Temple, two Colleges, and three or four Monaſteries: frequently viſited by the Merchant, every Trade having here its peculiar Street; their chief commodities, Wooll, Cloth, Silks, Oyl, and ſome ſorts of Fruits; which they exchange for *Dates*, or *Slaves*, who are here good merchandiſe. The City for the moſt part fenced about with high craggy rocks; and where thoſe want, with ſtrong wals, of a great height, and moſt exquiſite workmanſhip, declaring the antiquity of it; A further argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal Arch* not far from the City, and ſome *Hot Bathes*, after the manner of the *Romans*.

5. Moſt Weſtward lieth the Province of *BUGIA*, extended from Mount *Conſtantine* to the River *Ampſaga*, now called *Chollo* or *Sef-Gemar*: which with ſo much of *Conſtantina* as lieth on the Weſt-ſide of *Rubricatus*, made up that Province which the *Romans* called by the name of *Numidia*. The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half ſo much. Narrower then *Mauritania*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; *ſed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Country of a fat ſoil, plentiful both in fruits and corn, but moſt fit for paſturage; to which the people were ſo addicted, that many of them cared not for building Houſes, (inſtead whereof they uſed the *Hold* of a Ship with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from one place to another, as their Paſtures failed them. From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, ἀπὸ τῆ νέμειν, ſignifying to feed or graſe. The people of good mettal, ſwift of foot, and well skilled in horſmanſhip; but better in the onſet and to give a charge, then in ſtanding to it: ſuch as the wild *Arabians* are now ſaid to be.

Chief Towns hereof (beſides *Thuburnica*, *Culcua*, *Bona*, *Hippo*, ſpoken of before, belonging to *Numidia*, though not to *Bugia*) 1. *Bugia*, built by the *Romans* on the ſide of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by ſome conceived to have been the *Thebuaca* of *Ptolomy*, now the chief City of this Province, adorned with many ſumptuous *Moſques*, ſome Monaſteries and Colleges for Students in the Law of *Mahomet*, and many fair *Hoſpitals* for relief of the Poor; Fenced alſo with a ſtrong Caſtle. Secured by the ſtrength whereof, and growing rich by the fruitfulneſs of the ſituation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton; working much miſchief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies which they had at ſea, till taught more modeſty by *Peter* of *Navar* a *Spaniſh* Captain, *A.* 1508. by whom the Town was taken, and the people plundered. 2. *Chollo*, upon the Sea-ſide, the *Chollops Magnus* (as I take it) of *Ptolomie*; reported for a wealthie City. 3. *Nicaus*, ſeated towards Mount *Atlas*, in a pleaſant and delightful country; which though interſperſed with many hils, yet being thoſe hils are clothed with woods, yield them good ſtore of Goats and Horſes, and feed the Vallies with freſh ſprings which do iſſue from them; they rather adde then detract any thing from the pleaſures of it. 4. *Madaura*, by ſome called *Madurus*, the birth-place of *Apuleius*. 5. *Thunudromum*, another of the *Roman* Colonies. 6. *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Numidia* when a Roman Province, and formerly the Seat-royal of *Syphax* King of the *Maſaſyli*, within whoſe country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid unto this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Ampſaga*, and memorable for the tragedie of *Sophonisba*, the daughter of *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*; a Lady of moſt exquiſite beauty, and yet carried more charms in her tongue then in her eyes. Eſpouſed firſt unto *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, but after upon reaſon of State married unto *Syphax*: who being took priſoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of liberty and honour both, beſtowed her ſelf on her firſt Lover: but *Scipio* fearing leſt that marriage might withdraw *Maſiniſſa* from the *Roman* party, cauſed the Lady to be ſeized on; which *Maſiniſſa* not being otherwiſe able to prevent or remedie, ſent her a Cup of poyſon, which ſhe drank and died.

Of theſe *Numidians* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*; imployed by this laſt City in all their wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicil*. Siding at laſt with *Scipio* againſt that State, they did good ſervice to the *Romans* in the weakening and deſtruction of that City; whoſe fall they did not long ſurvive: firſt conquered in the war of *Jugurth*; after the death of *Juba*, made a *Roman* Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the ſucceſſion of them, follow in this Order.

The

The Kings of the *Numidians.*

1 *Gala*, the Father of *Maſiniſſa.*

2 *Deſalces*, the brother of *Gala*; according to the laws of the Country, which gave the Crown unto the brother, not the ſon of the former King, (like the law of *Taniſtry* in *Ireland*) ſucceeded *Gala.*

3 *N. N.* a ſon of *Deſalces*, in the abſence of *Maſiniſſa*, then ſerving under the *Carthaginians* in the wars of *Spain*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the throne: ſlain not long after by a Rebel.

4 *Maſiniſſa*, ſon of *Gala*, recovered the kingdome of his Fathers; but again outed by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*, betwixt whom and *Maſiniſſa*, touching *Sophonisba*, there was deadly feud. Aided by *Scipio* and the *Romans*, with whom aſſociated againſt *Carthage*, he not only recovered his own kingdome, but was gratified with the greateſt part of that which belonged to *Syphax.* A profeſſed Enemy to *Carthage*, (the final ruine whereof he lived to ſee) till the time of his death, being then ninety years of Age.

5 *Micipſa*, the ſon of *Maſiniſſa*; of whom nothing memorable.

6 *Jugurth*, the ſon of *Maſtanabilis*, one of the Brethren of *Micipſa*, having wickedly made away the two ſons of *Micipſa*, uſurped the kingdom; & manifeſtly withſtood the *Romans*, whoſe attempts ſometimes by force, ſometimes by ſubtility, but chiefly by money and bribes, he overthrew and made fruſtrate: *Et fuit in Ingurtha* (ſaith *Florus*) *quod poſt Annibalem timeretur.* At laſt, being broken by *Metellus*, vanquiſhed by *Marius*, and by *Bocchus* delivered into the hands of *Sylla*, he was by *Marius* led in triumph to *Rome.* In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver-wedges, 5775 pound weight; and in ready Coin, 28900 Crowns: it being the cuſtome of the *Romans* in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the riches and mony which they had brought out of the conquered Countries, to put into the common Treaſury.

7 *Hiempſal*, ſon of *Bocchus* king of *Mauritania*; gratified for his Fathers treacherie in betraying *Jugurth*, with the kingdome of *Numidia:* Relieved *Marius*, in his exile.

8 *Hiarbas*, another of the *Marian* faction, preferred to the *Numidian* Crown, but vanquiſhed and deprived by *Pompey*, at that time one of *Sylla's* Captains.

9 *Hiempſal* II. preferred by *Pompey* to this kingdom.

10 *Juba*, the ſon of *Hiempſal* the ſecond, who ſiding with *Pompey* againſt *Caſar*, in the Civil wars, gave a great overthrow to *Curio* one of *Caſar's* Lieutenants; *Curio* himſelf ſlain, his whole Army routed, ſuch as were taken priſoners murdered in cold blood. But being diſcomfited by *Caſar*, after *Pompey's* death, *Numidia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Thus by the fall of *Carthage*, and the death of *Juba*, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the *Romans.* Of which, the Nations of moſt note were the *Nigitimi*, on the Eaſtern parts of the *Mediterranean*, the *Machyni*, near the Leſſer *Syrtis*; the *Libyæ-Phœnices* and *Mideni*, bordering upon *Carthage*; the *Ionii*, *Navatræ*, and *Cirteſii*, taking up all the Sea-coaſts of *Numidia.* Such as inhabited more Southwards on the back of theſe, not ſo much conſiderable: None of them to be ſtaid upon, but the *Libyæ-Phœnices*, a mixt people of the old *Libyans* and new *Phœnicians*, as the *Liby-Ægyptii* were of the ſaid *Libyans* and the neighbouring *Egyptians.* The memory of all of them ſo defaced by the violent inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is ſcarce any tract or footſteps of them in all the Country. When conquered by the *Saracens*, they were at firſt ſubject to the *Caliph* or *Sultan* of *Cairoan:* after the ſpoile whereof by the *Arabians*, ſubdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of *Morocco*, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the diſtractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by ſome of the Relicts of the Stock of the *Almohades*, who took unto himſelf the title of King of *Tunis*, that City being his chief Seat. By him tranſmitted unto his poſterity, till the dayes of our Grandfathers; when *Muleaſſes*, one of the youngeſt ſons of Sultan *Mahomet*, having firſt murdered *Maimon* his eldeſt brother, and put out the eyes of twenty of the reſt, uſurped the Soveraignty. *Roſetta*, the onely one of thoſe Princes who eſcaped this maſſacre, by the aid of *Solyman* the *magnificent* obtained the Crown: outed thereof not long after by *Charles* the fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleaſſes*, An. 1535. But the Tyrant did not long enjoy his ill-gotten Soveraignty, when his eyes were were alſo put out by his own ſon *Amida*, and ſo committed to cloſe priſon: Nor did *Amida* enjoy it long, diſpoſſeſſed by *Abdamelech* his fathers brother. To *Abdamelech*, *Mahomet* his ſon ſucceeded, and in his life another *Mahomet* the brother of *Amida*; who being ſupported by the *Turks*, recovered from the *Chriſtians* the ſtrong Fort of *Goletta*; and dying, left the *Turk* his heire, who doth now poſſeſſe it.

2. TREMESEN, or ALGIERS.

THe Kingdom of *TREMESEN* is bounded on the East with the River *Ampſaga*, (now called *Maior*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the West with the Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, from which ſeparated by the River *Malutha* or *Malva*. So called from *Tremeſen* or *Teleuſine*, the chief City of it. Called alſo the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the City ſo named, ſometimes the Seat-royal of their Kings.

In the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*: *Mauritania*, becauſe a part of the Kingdom of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Cæſarienſis*, from *Cæſarea* the chief City of it, as that ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on whom the Kings hereof depended. Time made more antiently the Kingdom of the *Maſæſyli* one of the moſt powerful Nations in all this tract, over whom reigned *Syphax* before mentioned; called therefore by *Strabo*, *Maſæſylilia*, with good propriety; and corruptedly, *Maſſylia*.

The Kingdom extended in length from East to West, for the ſpace of 380 miles, but of breadth not anſwerable: Is generally of the ſame nature (as to the Soil and Air) with the reſt of *Barbary*; ſufficiently fruitful towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in the Southern parts. But meanly peopled, by reaſon of the continual ſpoils made by the *Arabians*, who poſſeſs the *Deſarts*; and the Cities of it much waſted by continual wars. Nor have the People any peculiar *Character*, but what belongeth to others of theſe *Africans* alſo.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Guagyda*, inconveniently ſeated, as paying their accuſtomed tributes to the King of *Tremeſen*, their natural Prince, and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here ſo numerous and powerful, that the Kings themſelves of this ſmall kingdom were fain to buy their peace of them at exceſſive rates. 2. *Tigedent*, ſomtimes famous, and abounding with men of learning; now almoſt forſaken, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of theſe *Arabians*. 3. *Tebocrit*, inhabited for the moſt part by Weavers. 4. *Breſch*, the Inhabitants whereof uſe to paint a black Croſſe on their cheek, and another on the palm of their hands: the reaſon of which cuſtom they are ignorant of, but ſome conceive it to be a remembrance of their *Chriſtianity*. 5, *Ned-Roma*, built as the people do pretend, by the antient *Romans*, as an *Epitome* or Abridgment of that mighty City, to which it is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance; and that imported by the name, which ſignifieth in their language, *Like to Rome*. Perhaps the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Novum oppidum* or the New-town, then a *Roman* Colonie. 6. *Batha*, once a great City, ſince decaied by wars. 7. *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, ſaid to contain no fewer then 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infeſting with their Gallies the Coaſts of *Spain*; till taken for *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, by *Peter* of *Navar* *A.* 1506. ſince which time peopled & poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*: In vain beſieged by the *Turks*, *A.* 1562. 8. *Maſalquivir*, a fair and capacious Haven on the ſame Sea alſo, and taken by the ſaid *Peter* of *Navar*, about the ſame time. 9. *Hareſgol*, in former times of much eſteem amongſt the *Moors*; but being deſtroyed by the King or Sultan of *Cairoan*, it bequeathed its greatneſs unto *Tremeſen*, which after grew into renown. 10. *Tremeſen*, once adorned with many beautiful *Moſques*, and five ſumptuous *Colleges*, curiouſly wrought with *Moſaick* work. So populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 families; and ſo well fortified, that it held out ſeven years againſt *Joſeph* the great King of *Feſſe*: not taken after that, though they were very much weakned by *Abulthaſen* or *Albohacen* his ſon, ſucceſſor, under a ſiege of 30 moneths. By thoſe, and the ſucceeding troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in ſtrength and beauty. More antient, 11. *Siga*, an *African* City, and a *Roman* Colonie; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bocchus*, ſometimes Kings of this Country. 12. *Arſenaria*, another Colonie of the *Romans*. 13. *Jol*, the ſeat-royal of king *Bocchus*, after ſuch time as this country was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Cæſarea*, in honor of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whoſe *Fendatories* the Kings hereof were then accounted; or as ſome ſay, in honor of *Claudius Cæſar*, by whom made a Colonie: the *Metropolis* of it alſo when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cæſarienſis*. Situate in or near the place where *Oran* now ſtands, which ſeemeth to have riſen out of the ruines of it. 14. *Saldæ*, a *Roman* Colonie alſo, out of whoſe ruines roſe *Algiers*. 15. *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gezeir*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, ſituate near the Sea, in the form of a *Triangle*, with an Haven to it, but neither great, nor ſafe from the north-winds, which do much annoy it. The buildings very beautiful; the publike Innes, *Bathes*, and *Moſques*, exceeding ſumptuous; every Trade having a ſeveral place or ſtreet by it ſelf. But that which is the greateſt grace of it, is the ſituation of the houſes ſtanding in even ſtreets one above another upon the riſing of a ſteep Hill; ſo that the windows of one ſtreet or row of houſing do all along overlook the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a moſt pleaſant proſpect. A City not ſo large, as ſtrong; and not ſo ſtrong, as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retrait-place of the *Turkiſh* Pirats, who domineer ſo infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations, that frequent thoſe ſeas. Famous alſo for the ſhipwrack which *Charles* the fifth here ſuffered, who beſieging this Town, loſt in the haven of it at one tempeſt, beſides an infinite number of Karvels and ſmall Boats, divers ſtrong Gallies, 140 ſhips, a great many excellent peeces of Ordinance; ſuch a number of gallant Horſes, that in *Spain* the race of horſes for ſervice had like to have been loſt for ever; and above half his men. It long enjoyed the benefit of proprietary Princes, (but *Homagers* or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremeſen*) till ſuch time as *Selimes* and *Mahomet* falling out, made the firſt, and that an irreparable breach in the Government. For *Selimes*, to ſtrengthen his

ſide,

ſide, implored the aid of *Hairaccius Barbaroſſa*, a noble Pirate; who taking his beſt advantage, ſlew the disjointed Brethren, and ſetled himſelf in the kingdom: which he had ſcarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſa* his brother, *An.* 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Bugia*, and was ſo renowned for Martial proweſſe, that *Solyman* the *magnificent* made him Lord *High-Admiral* of his Fleet: which office, when to the prejudice of *Chriſtendome* he had fortunately and for long time undergone; he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the heir of his kingdom; the kingdom of *Tremeſen* being made ſubject to the *Turks* much about that time. 16. *Tetuan*, and 17. *Sargel*, ſituate Weſtward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Pyracie.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpiditani*, *Taladuſii*, *Thalaſſii*, *Malchubii*, *Maccurebi*, *Chitua*, and others of as little note; the moſt predominant Nation being the *Maſaſyli*, over whom (and in that over all the reſt) reigned *Syphax*, ſpoken of before; unfortunately famous for his tragical love to *Sophonisba*; for whoſe ſake ſiding with the *Carthaginians* againſt the *Romans*, he was vanquiſhed and ſent priſoner to *Rome*. His kingdom given to *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his line till the death of *Jugurth*; and then beſtowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*, part of whoſe kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperor *Claudius*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Vandals*, and then by the *Saracens*, it followed the fortunes of theſe laſt, while they ſtood and flouriſhed: But growing into many diſtractions, and every *Sultan* or *Provincial* Governour ſhifting for himſelf, it became a Kingdom, under the ſtile and title of the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*. The majeſty of it much impaired by *Abulthaſen* or *Albohacen* King of *Feſſe*, who brought it, not long after, under his command. Recovering after ſome ſhort time its former liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and ſo continued till the time of *Abuchemen*; who incurring the hatred of his people, becauſe by his ſupine neglect the *Spaniards* had ſurpriſed and taken *Oran* and *Maſalquivir*, their two beſt Havens, made an eaſie paſſage for his brother *Abuzeiden* to the Regal diadem. *Abuzeiden* ſcarce well ſetled, loſt it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſa*, *An.* 1515. He to *Charles* the fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was reſtored, becoming *Homager* and *Tributary* to the Crown of *Spain*. But his ſucceſſor *Abdulla*, weary of the *Spaniſh* ſervitude, put himſelf under the protection of *Solyman* the *magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his deceaſe he left the poſſeſſion of his Kingdom alſo; ever ſince ſubject to the *Turks*; whoſe *Beglerbeg* or Supreme Officer for theſe *African* Provinces, reſides for the moſt part in *Algiers*, and hath 40000 *Timariots* under his command.

3. *FESSE*, & 4. *MOROCCO*.

THeſe Kingdoms I have joyned in title, becauſe united for the moſt part in the ſtorie and affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Eſtate under the *Xeriffes* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of *Hiſtory*, though of a different conſideration in the way of *Chorography*.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly ſo called; divided antiently into *Tingitana*, and *Sitifenſis*: *Cæſarienſis* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Maſæſyli* and the reſt of the Inhabitants of it, of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accompted any part thereof, till the death of *Iugurth*, when given to *Bocchus* King hereof, in reward of his treaſon for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name firſt given; the word *Tania*, ſignifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britannia*, *Luſitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps ſome others; and the name of *Mauri* given them ἀπὸ τῦ Μαυρῦ, which ſignifieth amongſt other things *obſcure* or black, by reaſon of the darkneſſe of their complexion. Accompted in their times, an hardy, but a bloody people; careleſſe of life, fearleſſe of death; implacable, if once offended, their thirſt of revenge not to be quenched but by blood. *Mauri ſunt genus hominum ſuapte natura cædis avidiſſimum, nihilque non facile audens, & deſperatis ſimiles, contemptu viz. mortis & periculorum*: the character given of them in *Herodians* time, and it holds good ſtill; notwithſtanding the intermixture of *Goths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the ſame nation with them, and paſſing by the ſame name in the Writers of the middle time. *Poſt hæc* Mauri *totam Hiſpaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam &c. dominio ſuo manciparunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Moors* we are to underſtand the *Saracens* which came out of *Africk*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1. *Atlas Minor*, ſo called to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is ſeven degrees more North, but ſhooteth as that doth with a point or Promontory into the main *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South of *Salla*. 2. *Durdus*, extended alſo into *Cæſarienſis*. 3. *Diur*, 4. *Phocra*, of which little memorable. Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Sala*, 2. *Subur*, 3. *Zilia*, 4 *Phuth*, 5. *Diur*, 6. *Cuſa*; all falling into the *Atlantick*: this laſt the ſame, as I conjecture, which our modern Writers call *Ommirabili*. And for the reſt, we muſt find amongſt them, 1. *Sifelmel*, 2. *Tenſiſt*, 3. *Niffis*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Metagonitæ* neer the Streits, giving name unto *Metagonitis* an adjoyning Promontory; the *Succoſii*, *Verbicæ*, *Nectiberes*, *Vacuatæ*, *Voli*; and on the Eaſt-ſide the *Maureſii*. Theſe laſt participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the Latines, *Mauri*; by the Greeks, *Mauruſii*: The Etymologie as before. Their deſcent originally from *Phut*, the ſon of *Cham*; whoſe memory preſerved here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Chanaanites*, of the ſame extraction, ſerved but as an *Acceſſory*. From thoſe two

fountains

fountains ſprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*. Governed by Kings; the moſt conſiderable of which when firſt known to the *Romans*, was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his friend and ſon in law, into the hands of the *Romans*: gratified for that treacherie with the Country of the *Maſæſyli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hiempſal* one of his ſons was, not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole Eſtates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax*, and *Maſiniſſa*, united by this means in the perſon of *Juba* one of his poſterity; the moſt potent Prince of all theſe parts: who falling in the *African* war againſt *Julius Cæſar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Criſpus Saluſtius* being made the firſt Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Ampſagus*, he gave to *Bocchus* and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but deſcended of the old Regal family. *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* againſt *Auguſtus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other ſide, diſpoſſeſſed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Feſſe*) in which confirmed for his good ſervice, by the conquering Emperor. *Juba* the ſon of the former *Juba*, grown famous for his eminent learning, was of a Priſoner made a Prince; inveſted after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his father, except *Numidia*: and by the bounty of *Auguſtus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the marriage of *Selene*, daughter of *Antony* and *Cleopatra*. After whoſe death, and the death of *Ptolomy* their ſon, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the patrimony of the *Roman* Empire; divided into two Provinces, *viz. Cæſarienſis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Ampſaga*, now the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Weſtern Ocean. This laſt divided into *Tingitana*, and *Sitifenſis*, (the River now called *Ommirobili* being the boundary betwixt them) by the Emperor *Conſtantine*: who leaving *Sitifenſis* to the Dioceſe of *Africk*, laid *Tingitana* (why I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*; they became members of thoſe Empires; in the declining of the laſt, divided into the two Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, to the deſcription and hiſtory whereof we do now proceed.

3. *MOROCCO.*

THe Kingdom of *MOROCCO* hath on the Eaſt the River *Malva*, by which parted from *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South Mount *Atlas*; and on the North the Kingdom of *Feſſe*. So called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it; in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Sitifenſis*, from *Sitiphis*, in thoſe times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Country ſaid to be fruitful of all things neceſſary to life, pleaſing to the ſight, and ſweet to ſmell to: particularly, well ſtored with Grain and Pulſe, plentiful of Oyl, Honey and Sugar, liberally furniſhed with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all ſorts of Fruits; exceedingly well ſtocked with Cattel, but with Goats eſpecially, whoſe skins afford a very excellent kind of leather, and of their fleece materials for the fineſt Chamlets, which are here made in moſt of their Cities. The whole Country divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts, *viz.* 1. *Guzzula*, 2. *Sus*, 3. *Morocco* ſpecially ſo called, 4. *Hea*, 5. *Haſcora*, 6. *Duccala*, and 7. *Tedles*.

1. *GUZZULA*, the moſt Southern Province of this Kingdom hath on the Eaſt ſome part of *Tremeſen*, on the Weſt *Sus* or *Suſa*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains called *Ilda*; on the South Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the territory of *Morocco*, and the reſt of *Suſa*. The Country rich in Mines of Braſſe, Iron, and other metals, of which are made many *Utenſils* for domeſtick uſes, exported hence into other places. The People barbarous and rude, not eaſily acknowledging ſubjection to the Kings of *Morocco*; and at continual wars amongſt themſelves, except only for two moneths in the year; which being the time of their publike Marts, and then much viſited with Strangers from other Countries, they lay aſide their private quarrels, and cheerfully entertain ſuch *Merchants* as repair unto them. Walled Towns here are not any, but ſome very great Villages; the chief whereof, 1. *Guzula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sus*, whence the name of the Province. 2. *Tagreſſa*, not far off, but on the other ſide of the water, towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Tedza*, inclining towards the borders of *Morocco*. Of theſe nothing memorable.

2. Weſt of *Guzzula*, lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, ſo called from the River *Sus*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold-Mines, the cauſe of continual wars amongſt the people; well ſtored with *Sugar-Canes*, which the Inhabitants know neither how to boyl nor purifie; and on the Sea-ſhores furniſhed with great plenty of *Amber*, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an eaſie rate. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Cape D'Aguer*, on a Promontory ſo called; a place of ſuch importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* then King of *Sus* (after of *Morocco* alſo) made them all the Forts which they had in this Country. 2. *Tagavaſt*, a rich and wealthy Town, the greateſt in the Province, and ſituate in a large Plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Teijent*, ſituate in a ſpacious Plain alſo, but on the banks of the River *Sus*: divided into three parts, each a mile from the other; which joyned together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. 4. *Meſſa*, or *Maſſa*, ſeated at the influx of the ſaid River, on the Promontory called *Cape Gilon*: three Towns in one; not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land, as ſeated in a barren and unpleaſing ſoile; remarkable for a fair Temple, the beams and rafters of which are made of the bones of *Whales*, which uſually are left dead on the ſhore. 5. *Tarodant*, a large Town, built by the *Africans*, before the conqueſt of this Country by the *Goths* or *Saracens*; the Reſidence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Feſſe*, when the Lords of this kingdom, but more enriched

of

of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce the people made more civil then in other parts of this Province: the whole number of them thought to amount to 3000 families. 6. *Tedza*, more within the land, bigger then *Taradant*, but leſs wealthy; the chief Ornament of it being a fair *Mahometan* Temple, liberally furniſhed with Prieſts and Readers of that Law, at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchiſa*, where it ſnoweth at all ſeaſons of the year, and yet the people go extreme thin in the ſharpeſt Winter. Nothing elſe memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriffe* made himſelf King of *Morocco*, it had the title of a Kingdom, and gave the title of King to *Mahomet* the ſecond *Xeriffe*, made King of *Taradant* or *Sus*, before he diſpoſſeſſed his brother of the Crown of *Morocco*. 3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCCO*, ſpecially ſo called, the moſt fruitful and beſt peopled part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lombardy* in wealth, and pleaſures: the very Hills hereof as fruitful as the Vallies in other places. To which fertility of the ſoil, the Rivers 1 *Tenſift*, and 2 *Aſifinuad*, give no ſmall advantage, though much defaced by the frequent incurſions of the *Portugals*, who have extreamly ſpoiled this Country. Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Delgumaba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills; at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Aſifinuad*. 2. *Elgiumuba*, a ſmall but ancient Town, on the River *Siſſeva*. 3. *Teſraſt*, a ſmall Town upon *Aſifinuad*. 4. *Imizmizi*, ſituate on a Rock, ſpacious, and ſeated neer the entrance of a narrow way leading into *Guzzala*. 5. *Tenezze*, an old Town, but very well fortified. 6. *Agnet*, upon the River *Tenſift*, all ruined except the Fort, and ſome ſcattered houſes: formerly ſecond unto none but *Morocco*, (from which diſtant 24 miles) the Hils and Valley about it adorned with pleaſant Gardens, fruitful Vineyards, a fair River, and Fields ſo fertile that they yield a fifty-fold increaſe. 7. *Secſina*, where they have ſnow at all times of the year. 8. *Temnella*, an *Heretical* Town, differing in opinion from the reſt of the *Mahometan* Sect; and ſo well-grounded in their Tenets, that they challenge all their *Oppoſites* to a Diſputation. 9. *Hantera*, very full of *Jewes*. 10. *Morocco*, the principal of this Province, and of all the Kingdom, ſituate in or near the place where once ſtood the *Bocanum Hemerum* of *Ptolomy*. Once reckoned amongſt the greateſt Cities of the World, at what time it was ſaid to contain 100000 families: ſince ſo defaced and waſted by the depredations of the *Arabians*, and the removal of the Seat-Royal to *Feſſe*, when that Kingdom was in the *Aſcendent*, that it is hardly a third part ſo great as formerly. The founder of it *Joſeph*, ſirnamed *Teleſinus*, the ſecond King of the houſe of the *Almoravides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Mumen*, one of his ſucceſſors. The principal buildings in it, are the Church and the Caſtle: the Church of *Moſque*, one of the greateſt in the World, adorned with many ſumptuous pillars, brought out of *Spain*, when the *Moors* had the poſſeſſion of that Country; and beautified with a ſtately Steeple, in compaſs at the bottom an hundred yards, and of ſo great height, that the Hils of *Azati* (one of the branches of the Leſſer *Atlas*) being 130 miles diſtant, may be thence eaſily diſcerned: the Caſtle very large, and ſtrong, on a Tower whereof ſtand three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary*-Duckets; which divers Kings have gone about to take down and convert into money, but all deſiſted in regard of ſome croſſe accident or other which befell them in it; inſomuch that the common people think them to be guarded with ſpirits.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further ſide of *Tenſift* and *Aſifinuad*, is the Province of *HEA*: Rough, mountainous, and woody, yet watered with many pleaſant Rils, and would be plentiful enough in all commodities, if the induſtry of the people were not wanting to it. A ſort of people little better then meerly barbarous, without all *Artiſts* either Ingenious or Mechanick; except ſome *Chirurgeons*, whom they keep to *circumciſe* their Children; and ſome few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their food a Pap made of Barley-meal, which in ſtead of Spoons they claw forth with their fingers; the Ground they eat on, ſerving for table, ſtools and napkins. At endleſs feud with one another; yet ſo kind to ſtrangers, that in one of their chief Towns, called 1 *Tedneſt*, the Gentlemen uſed to caſt lots who ſhould entertain them. A town of good eſteem in former times, ſituate in a large Plain on the River *Tenſift*: but in the year 1514. almoſt wholly abandoned, upon a rumor that the *Arabians* had a purpoſe to ſell it to the *Portugals*. 2. *Teculeth*, ſeated on a good Port, and once very well traded, there being in it at that time 1000 families, ſome Hoſpitals, and a beautiful *Moſque*; in the year 1514. deſtroyed by the *Portugals*. 3. *Tenent*, a Sea-town in the hands of the *Portugals*. 4. *Elmuridin*, a ſtrong peece, as the name importeth, the word ſignifying the *Diſciples Fort*; ſo called, becauſe a certain *Heretick* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yields good plenty) retired hither with his *Diſciples*, fortified it and defended it againſt the King of *Morocco*. 5. *Iguillinguiguil*, ſeated on the top of an hill, and fortified by the Country-people (or old *African-Moors*) againſt the *Arabians*. 6. *Tefethne*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great ſhipping. 7. *Tagleſſe*, a Den of Thieves and Cut-throats. 8. *Teſegdelt*; as courteous and civil, as the other barbarous: At the Gates whereof a Guard is ſet for entertainment of Strangers; whom if they have no acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in ſome Gentlemans houſe, where it coſts them nothing but thanks, and ſome kind acknowledgment.

5. Northwards of *Hea*, ſtands the Province of *DUCALA*, bounded on the Weſt with the main *Atlantick*, and on the North with the River *Ommirobili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Feſſe*. Of three dayes journy long, about two in breadth; thruſting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which ſome of the Ancients called *Vlagium*, others the Promontory of the *Sun*; but by the *Chriſtians* of *Europe* called the Cape of *Cantin*; by the *Moors*, *Gebelelhudic*. Populous enough, the quality of the men conſidered, ignorant both of letters and of all good manners: Yet not ſo

populous

populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandoned for fear of the *Portugals*, who have taken all their beſt towns on the Sea-coaſt, and deſtroyed the reſt. Amongſt theſe, 1. *Azaſi*, at the foot of the hils ſo called; ſurpriſed by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Store-houſe for their Merchandiſe. 2. *Azamez*, ſeated at the mouth of the River *Ommirobili*, the furtheſt town of this kingdom towards that of *Feſſe*; the people whereof were extremely addicted unto *Sodomy*, till ſubdued by the *Portugeze*. 3. *Elmedina*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province; but now for fear of thoſe Invaders, in a manner deſolated. 4. *Conte*, of the foundation of the *Goths*. 5. *Tic*, built by the old *African Moors*, but poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. 6. *Subeit*, 7. *Teneracoſt*, 8 *Centpuis*, 9. *Terga*, 10. *Bulahuan*; all ſacked and ruined by the ſame people, when they took *Azamor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is ſaid, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe* paſsing through this Province with an Army to repreſs theſe inſolencies, at every *Altar* (whereof here are many in the Roads) kneeled, and ſaid unto this effect: *Lord, thou knoweſt that the cauſe of my coming into this Wild place, is only to free this people of* Duccola *from the rebellious and wicked* Arabians, *and their cruel Enemies the* Chriſtians: *which purpoſe if thou doeſt not approve of, let the puniſhment fall upon my perſon, but not upon my followers who deſerve it not.* With greater piety then could be looked for from a blind *Mahometan*.

6. Eaſtward of *Duccala*, along the banks of *Ommirobili*, lieth the Province of *HASCORA*, a fruitful Country, intermixt of rich fields and pleaſant gardens: furniſhed with moſt ſorts of choiſeſt fruits, and amongſt others, Grapes of ſuch extraordinary greatneſs, that they are ſaid to be as big as a Pullets egg; Good ſtore of Honey it hath alſo, and ſome Mines of Iron. Inhabited by a more civil people then any of the reſt, and conſequently more deſerving ſo rich a ſoil. Places of moſt importance in it. 1. *Ezo*, an old town, ſituate on a lofty mountain. 2. *Eluinina*, of a later erection. 3. *Alemdine*, conquered for the King of *Feſſe* by a Merchant, whoſe Paramour the Prince or Governour hereof had taken from him: Situate in a pleaſant, but little Valley, but begirt with hils, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers. 4. *Tagodaſt*, on the top of an hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More Eaſt, betwixt *Haſcora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDLES*, bounded on the Eaſt with the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*, and on the North with that of *Feſſe*, from which laſt parted by the River *Servi*, which on the North-eaſt border of it meets with *Ommirobili*. The whole Province in form *triangular*; of no great either length or breadth, but ſufficiently fruitful, and well inhabited for the bigneſs. Some Towns it hath, and thoſe not meanly populous for ſo ſmall a Province; the chief whereof, 1. *Teſza*, built by the old *African-Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan* Moſques; the wals of which made of a kind of Marble, which they here call *Teſza*, whence the name of the town. 2. *Eſza*, ſeated on the River *Ommirobili*, where it receiveth that of *Deyme*, which riſing out of *Atlas-Minor*, and paſsing by *Teſza* laſt mentioned, doth here loſe its name. 3. *Chythite*, renowned for the ſtout reſiſtance which it hath made from time to time againſt thoſe of *Feſſe*. 4. *Ethiad*, abounding in all ſorts of victuals.

Theſe Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*: infeſted miſerably while it remained ſubject to the Kings of *Feſſe*, by the *Portugals* on the one ſide, and the wild *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which laſt people we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Africk*, they contented themſelves with the command, and left unto the *Natives* the poſſeſsion of it; forbidding the *Arabians* (with whoſe courſe of life they were well acquainted) to paſſe over *Nilus*. *Elcain*, the laſt of the ſucceſſors of *Hucba* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, having ſubdued the reſt of *Africk*, and added it unto his Eſtate, paſſed forwards into *Egypt*, which he conquered alſo, aſſuming to himſelf the title of *Caliph*: But in his abſence, the Lieutenant whom he left in *Africk* rebelled againſt him, and acknowledging the *Caliph* of *Bagdet* for his lawful Lord, received of him for this good ſervice the Kingdom of *Africa*. Deſpairing to recover his loſt Eſtate, and yet not willing that it ſhould be uſeful unto his Enemies, he licenced the *Arabians*, for a *Ducat* a man, to paſſe over the *Nile* with their tents and families: On which agreement, almoſt half the Tribes of *Arabia Deſerta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africa*; where they ſacked *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the reſt of the principal Cities; tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till reſtrained at laſt by *Joſeph* the founder of *Morocco*, (of whom more hereafter.) Since which time, though they loſt their unlimited Empire, yet they ſtill ſwarm like *Locuſts* over all the Country; and neither apply themſelves to tillage, or building houſes, or any civil courſe of life; nor ſuffer thoſe to live in quiet, who would otherwiſe manure and improve the Country. The reſt of the Storie of theſe Kingdoms we ſhall have anon, when we have taken a Survey of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*.

4. *FESSE*.

THe Kingdom of *FESSE* is bounded on the South with the Realm of *Morocco*, on the North with parts of the *Atlantick* and *Mediterranean*; on the Eaſt with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the Weſt with the *Atlantick* wholly.

It takes this name from *Feſſe* the chief City of it. Known to the Ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, ſo called from the City *Tingis* (now *Tanger*) then of greateſt note. Called alſo *Hiſpania Tranſfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, becauſe a part of that *Dioceſe*: and by ſome (*Pliny* amongſt others) *Bogudiania*, from *Bogud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Ceſar*: by others *Ampeluſia*, from its abundance of Vines. The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The

The Country of good temperature in regard of the Air, if not in some places of the coldest: but very unequally disposed of in respect of the Earth; here being in it many Desarts and large Forrests, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightful Fields. So that taking the estimate in the gross, it may be said to be a rich and flourishing Country, hardly inferior unto any. The particularities of which are to be considered in the *Characters* of the several Provinces, into which it now doth stand divided, that is to say, 1 *Temesna*, 2 *Fesse* specially so called, 3 *Elchaus* or *Chaus*, 4 *Garet*, 5 *Algara*, 6 *Erritis*, and 7 *Habat*.

1. *TEMESNA* hath on the South the River *Ommirabili*, on the West the Ocean; extended in length from West to East 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A champain Country, very level; and once so populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Castles; most of them ruined by the wars, and the wild *Arabians*, the greater destroyer of the two. The principal of those remaining, 1 *Teyeget*, neer the River *Ommirabili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited only by poor people, and a few *Smiths* compelled to live there for the making of Iron-instruments to manure the land. 2 *Thagia*, on the course of the said River; much visited by those of *Fesse*, for the Sepulchre of an holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Fessans* going thither in *pilgrimage* with such numbers of men, women and children, that their Tents seem sufficient to lodge an Army. 3 *Adendun*, more towards the Sea, but on a small River called *Guirla*, well walled, and fenced on one side by a Lake or Pool. 4 *Amsa*, on the shore of the *Atlantick*, once of great trade, and well frequented both by the *English* and the *Portugals*, by which last destroyed. 5 *Munsor*, destroyed in like manner by the wild *Arabians*. 6 *Nuchaida*, situate in so fertile and rich a soil, that the inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of shooes; Nothing now left of it but one Steeple, and a piece of the wall. 7 *Rabut* or *Rubut*, built by *Mansor*, or *Almansor*, a King of *Morocco*, neer the mouth of the River *Burugrug*, and by him made one of the best peopled Towns in *Africk*; built after the model of *Morocco*, but now so wasted, that there are not in it above 500 families; most of the ground within the wals being turned into meadows, vineyards and gardens. 8 *Fanzara*, on the River *Subu*, the *Subur* of *Ptolomy*, falling not far off into the other. 9 *Mahmora*, in the same tract also, once possessed by the *Spaniards*; neer which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Fesse*, for want of good intelligence betwixt them and the *Castilians*. 10 *Salla*, the *Sala* of *Ptolomy*, by the inhabitants called *Zale*, in ordinary Maps by mistaking, *Cale*; at the mouth of the River *Rebato*, which the antient Writers called *Sala*, as they named the Town. Beautified by King *Almansor* (who is here interred) with a stately Palace, a goodly Hospital, a fair Temple, and an Hall of Marble, cut in *Mosaich* works: intended for the burial-place of his posterity. A town much traded formerly by the Christian Merchants, of *England*, *Flanders*, *Genoa* and the Golf of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards* *An.* 1287. and within ten dayes lost again: and of late times made a nest of *Pyrates*, as dangerous to those which sailed in the Ocean, as the *Pirates* of *Algiers* to the *Mediterrean*. Whose insolencies the King of *Morrcco* not able to suppress for want of shipping, desired the aid of His Majesty *Charles* King of *Great-Britain*; by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and besieged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at last compelled to yield, the works thereof dismantled, the *Pirates* executed, and 300 *Christian* Captives sent unto His Majesty, to be by him restored to their former liberty; to the great honour of His Majesty, and the *English* Nation, *An* 1632.

As for the fortunes of this Province, they have been somwhat different from the rest of this Kingdom; trained by a factious Prophet to revolt from the King of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, whose Estate they very much endangered, sending an Army of 50000 men to the Gates of *Morocco*. But being discomfited by *Joseph*, sirnamed *Telephinus*, he followed them into their own Country, which he wasted with great cruelty for ten moneths together, consuming above a million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lyons. Repeopled afterwards by *Almansor* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* family, to more civil Inhabitants, by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province consequently reduced into some good Order.

2. Westward of *Temesna* lieth the Province of *FESSE*, properly and specially so called. Extended in length from the River *Burugrug* to the River *Inavis*, for the space of 100 miles. A very fruitful Province, well stored with Cattel, and exceeding populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better sort of Towns in other places; but contrary to the custom of other Countries, better inhabited on the hils then amongst the vallies; the people making choice of the mountains for their habitation, as places of defence and safety; but husbanding the vallies which lie neerest to them. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Macarmeda*, on the River *Inavis*, in a goodly Plain, but in a manner all ruined except the wals. 2 *Gualili*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the first founder of *Fesse*. 3 *Peitra Rossa*, where they have some Lyons so tame, that they will gather up bones in the streets like dogs, without hurting any body. 4 *Agla*, where they have brought their Lyons to so strange a cowardise, that they will run away at the voice of a child; whence a *Bracchadochio* is called proverbially a *Lyon* of *Aga*. 5 *Pharao*, by reason of the name thought by the Vulgar to be founded by some King of *Egypt*; but the *Latine* Inscriptions therein found, declare it to have been some work of the antient *Romans*. 6 *Maquille*, of more antiquity then note. 7 *Fesse*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, supposed to be the *Volubilis* of *Ptolomy*, but much enlarged and beautified by some new Accessions. Situate for the most part upon little hillocks, and watered by a pleasant and gentle Rivers (derived by *Aquæducts* and Conduits, into all parts of the City) which they now call the River of *Fesse*,

conceived by ſome learned men to be that which was anciently called *Phuth*, from *Phut* the firſt Planter of the *African* Nations. A City ſo beautifull and well ſeated, as if Nature and Art had plaid the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their dalliance. The Founder or enlarger of it, one of the Race of the falſe Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the Eaſt ſide of the River; that on the Weſt ſide, being the Work of one of his ſons: both ſo increaſing that at laſt they were joyned together. To theſe the Suburbs being added, have made a third. The whole called *Feſſe*, from *Fez*, an *Arabick* word, ſignifying *Gold*, whereof great quantity was found when they digged the Foundations: Divided into three parts, by the River, all of which contain 82000 houſholds, and 700 *Moſchees*, or *Saracenicall* Temples: the chief of which is *Carne*, or *Carnven*, being a mile and a half in compaſs. It hath 31 gates, great and high; the roof is 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about are divers Porches, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, are the publike ſtore-houſes of the Town. About the walls are Pulpits of divers ſorts, wherein the Maſters of their Law read unto the people, ſuch things, as they think to pertain to their ſalvation. The *Revenue* hereof is 200 *Ducats* a day of the old Rents; for ſo it was, *Anno* 1526. when *Leo Afer* wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or *Exchange*, incloſed with a ſtrong wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 ſtreets. There is alſo a Colledge called *Amarodoc*, a moſt curious and delicate building. It hath three Cloyſters of admirable beauty, ſupported with 8 ſquare pillars of divers colours: The roof curiouſly carved, and the Arches of *Moſaique* work of gold and azure. The gates are of braſs, fair wrought; and the doors of the private chambers of inlayed Work. This Colledge did coſt the Founder, King *Abuchenen*, or *Abu Henen*, 480000 Crowns. Here are finally ſaid to be in it many *Hoſpitals*, little inferior to the Colledges in building and beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred *hot Bathes* well built, with four Halls to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their clothes when they go to bathe themſelves: and beſides theſe 200 Inns, built three ſtories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with *Galleries* before all the doors for their Gueſts to walk in.

3. Eaſtward of the Territory of *Feſſe*, lieth the Province of *CHAUS*, extended in length from the River *Gurngrut*, or *Gurguigarn*, by which parted from *Temeſna*, and *Feſſe*, to the borders of *Tremeſen* for the ſpace of 190 miles, and 170 miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom: but meanly populous for the bigneſs, the Country being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants fierce and warlike; more given to proſecute their quarrels, then to Trade or Tillage. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Ham Liſnan*, a Town built in the more mountainous parts of the Country by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worſhipped; to which at certain times men and women reſorted in the night; where, after their devotions ended, and the *Candles* put out, every man lay with the woman he firſt touched; the exact platform of the *Family of Love*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but falſly, charged on the *Primitive* Chriſtians. 2 *Tezza*, adorned with three Colledges, many Baths, and Hoſpitals, and ſome beautifull Temples; one of them larger, though not fairer then that of *Feſſe*; in both Towns men of the ſame Trade have a ſtreet by themſelves: for greatneſs, wealth, and numbers of People, eſteemed the third City of this Kingdom. 3 *Dubdu*, an ancient Town, but not much obſervable. 4 *Teurert*, ſeated on the top of an Hill, in the midſt of a Plain, but compaſſed about with *Deſarts*. 5 *Beni Jeſſeten*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greateſt bravery and wealth conſiſteth: the women here wearing Iron-rings for ornaments to their ears and fingers. 6 *Tezergui*, ſubject to the *Arabians*. 7. *Adaggia*, the moſt Eaſtern Town of all this Region, ſituate in a *Peninſula*, made by the confluences of *Muluſo* and *Malva*. In this Country is the head of the River *Subur*, which riſing out of a great Lake in the woods of the Mountain *Seligus*, and receiving many leſſer waters, with a large and Navigable ſtream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northwards of *Chaus* lieth the Region called *GARET*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*; and reaching Eaſt and Weſt from the River *Malva*, where it bordereth on *Tremeſen*, to that of *Nochor*, where it toucheth on *Errif*, and *Algaria*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but twenty. The ſoyl in moſt places dry and deſart, like the Sands of *Numidia*: eſpecially all along the banks of the *Malva*, neer unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Chaus*, it is wholly *deſart* and unpeopled, not well inhabited in the moſt fruitfull parts of it, being full of mountains; the worſe for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, poſſeſſed of 1 *Cheſuſa*, and 2 *Medela*, two chief Towns hereof. 3 *Pennon de Veles*, by ſome called *Velez de Gomenera*, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains; built by the *Africans* or *Gothes*; but now in the poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards* alſo. 4 *Jafferin*, ſituate on the Sea alſo, founded by the *Mahometans* of the *Marine* Family. 5 *Tezzora* ſtanding on an hill, to which there is but one paſſage only.

5. Weſtward of *Garet* lieth *ASGARA*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: Shut up on the South eaſt-ſide with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which laſt runneth the River *Luccus*, called *Lix* by *Ptolomy*. The Aire hereof very temperate, and the ſoyl as fertile; ſupplying with the over-plus of its Commodities, the mountainous parts of *Feſſe*, and the Deſarts of *Garet*. Once full of Towns, till ruined and deſtroyed by the wars. A Monument whereof, 1 *Ginmba*, built by the ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2 *Larache*, in *Lutine Lariſſa*, the *Lixa* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Luccus*, and furniſhed with a good Port, but of difficult entrance, garriſoned when poſſeſſed by the *Moors* with 300 light horſe, and 300 *Harcabuziers*; but better fortified then before, ſince poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, into whoſe hands it

it was put by *Muley-Sheck* king of *Morocco* and *Feſſe*, when worſted by *Muley Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the civil Wars betwixt them. 3 *Cuſar Elcabin*, given by *Almanſer* to a poor Fiſher, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he loſt his Company in Hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a ſtately Hoſpital.

6. On the North of *Aſgara* is the Province of *EL-HABAT*, or *HABAT* coaſting along the *Atlantick* Ocean to the mouth of the *Straits*, in length 100 miles, about 80 in breadth. The Country very plentifull of all manner of neceſſaries and very well Peopled; the mountains which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times repleniſhed with many Cities, both of the foundation of the *Gothes*, *Romans*, and old *African Moors*, now much diminiſhed by the Wars. Thoſe of moſt note, 1 *Ezaggen*, the Inhabitants whereof by an ancient Priviledge granted by the Kings of *Feſſe*, were licenſed to drink wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a mountain, neer the River *Guarga*, about 35 leagues from *Feſſe*; and garriſoned with 400 Horſe for fear of the *Portugals*, who ſometimes make their excurſions thither. 2 *Baſra*, once a walled Town, and the Walls ſtill ſtanding, but very little or no Town in them. 3 *Homar*, ſometimes wel-peopled, but now little inhabited by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coaſt. 4 *Banirendo*, in a manner deſerted for the ſame reaſon. 5 *Alcazaer*, to diſtinguiſh it from another of this name called *Alcazer Guer*, taken together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier* by *Alfonſo* the fift of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1470. Nigh to which Town the three Kings *Sebaſtian* of *Portugal*, *Mahomet* and *Abdemelech* Competitors for this Kingdom, were ſlain in a day. There was alſo ſlain at the ſame time the great *Engliſh* Rebel *Stuckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, *Anno* 1570. Where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church: by whom appointed for the Conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for that end furniſhed with 800 Souldiers paid by the King of *Spain*; and by his *Holineſs* created Marquiſs of *Leinſter*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Caterlogh*, Viſcount *Murraugh*, and Baron of *Roſſe*. Thus furniſhed, he began his journey toward *Ireland*, *Anno* 1578. but hearing of theſe Wars, and deſirous to make a party in them, he loſt all his honours with his life. 6 *Arzilla* a Sea-Town, 70 miles diſtant from the *Streits*, now poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. 7 *Tanger* a great Town, and very ancient, diſtant from the *Streits* about 30 miles, belonging to the *Portugals* alſo. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Canaanites*, and by them built at their firſt coming thither, when they fled from the ſword of *Joſuah*, teſtified by the two Pillars erected neer this City, which before we ſpoke of: and from that name cauſed all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingitania*. Made afterwards a Colonie by the Emperour *Claudius*, who named it *Traducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and outlived the new. Neer to this Town it is ſaid that *Hercules* overcame *Antæus*, a monſtrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was an high Mountain called *Abyla*, oppoſite to which in the coaſt of *Spain* was another called *Calpe*, on which the ſaid *Hercules* placed his ſo famous Pillars. 8 *Sexta*, or *Senta*, ſituate on or neer that mountain unfortunately memorable for giving the title of an Earl to *Julian*, who firſt brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*, beautified in thoſe following times with many Temples, Colledges, and Learned men: taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1415. and now in the poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the Eſtates of *Portugal*, which in the late revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. 9 *Julia Conſtantia*, ſo called, and made a *Roman* Colonie, by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 10 *Laxus*, a *Roman* Colonie of the plantation of *Claudius*, in old times ſaid to have been the Court or Palace of the Giant *Antæus*. Not far from whence (that *Antæus* might not dwell alone) the old *Geographers* have placed the habitation of *Gerion*, as proper a Gentleman as himſelf, in a ſmall Iland of the *Streits*, called *Gerionis Inſula*, and by ſome *Erythia*.

7. Eaſtward of *Habat* is the Province of *ERRIF*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Nochor* (ſuppoſed to be the *Meluchath* of the Antient Writers) by which parted from *Garet*: A mountainous and cold Country in reſpect of the reſt of *Barbarie*, full of Woods and Forreſts; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without ſome herds of Goats, though otherwiſe not well ſtored with Cattell. In length 140 miles, in breadth 40 onely; inhabited by a race of valiant men, but exceſſive *Drunkards*. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages; The chief of which, 1 *Mazagon*, neer unto the *Streits*; a very ſtrong Town, and of great importance, but poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*; in vain beſieged by *Abdalla* the firſt, with an Army of 200000 men, *Anno* 1562. 2 *Mezemme*, ſeated on a mountain. 3 *Beni-Jerſo*, of like ſituation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Profeſſors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publickly taught it, as in an Univerſity; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Deſtroyed together with the *Library* of it, by ſome wicked Tyrant, *Anno* 1509. the Books therein being valued at 4000. Ducats. 4 *Terga*. 5. *Tegaſſa*, 5 *Gebbe*; of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of theſe two Kingdoms, we muſt next look upon them alſo in the general ſtory, from the time of the *Saracenical* conqueſt; Firſt let into this Country by the Treaſon of *Julian*, and for a while ſubject to the great *Caliph* or Succeſſor of *Mahomet*: afterwards to the King or *Caliph* of *Cairoan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, theſe Provinces with the reſt were afflicted by them; till the riſing of the Kingdom of *Fez*: begun in the perſon of *Idris*, of the blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his daughter *Fatima*: who perſecuted by the oppoſite faction, fled into *Mauritania*, where he grew into ſuch reputation, that in ſhort time he got both ſwords into his

hands. Dying about the 185 year of the *Hegira*, he left his power unto his ſon, of the ſame name with his father; the firſt founder of *Feſſe*. Oppoſite whereunto on the other ſide of the water, one of his ſons (but his name I find not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raiſing by that means a faction in the houſe of *Idris*, gave opportunity to *Joſeph* the ſon of *Teiſin* or *Telephine* of the houſe of *Luntune*, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocco*, to ſuppreſs that family: Who killing the Princes of that line, and 30000 of their ſubjects, brake down the wals which parted the two Cities from one another, united them by bridges, and ſo made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the diſſention of the *Saracens* there amongſt themſelves, he added all which they held in that kingdom unto his dominions: held by his ſucceſſors, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: the Catalogue of which Princes, called the houſe or family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades*, is this which followeth.

The Kings or *Miramomolims* of *Morocco*.

1 *Teiſin*, or *Telephine*, the firſt of the *Almoravides*, that reigned in *Africk*.
2 *Joſeph*, ſirnamed *Telephinus*, the ſon of *Teiſin*, founded *Morocco*, ſubdued the Kingdom of *Feſſe*, and added the Eſtate of the *Moors* in *Spain* unto his Dominions.
3 *Hali*, the ſon of *Joſeph*.
4 *Albo-Halis*, the ſon of *Hali*, ſuppoſed to be the publiſher of the Works now extant in the name of *Avicenne*, compiled at his command by ſome of the moſt learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquiſhed and ſlain by
5 *Abdelmon*, or *Abdel-Mumen*, the firſt of the *Almohades*; of obſcure parentage, but raiſed to ſo great power by the practiſes of *Almohad* a jugling *Prophet* of thoſe times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the kingdom of the *Almoravides* both in *Spain* and *Africk*, *An.* 1150. to which he alſo added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoan*.
6 *Joſeph* II. or *Aben-Joſeph*, the ſon of *Abdelmon*.
7 *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, ſirnamed *Almanſor*; a puiſſant and prudent Prince, of whom much before; ſon of *Joſeph* II.
8 *Mahomet*, ſirnamed *Enaſer*, or the *Green*, the brother of *Almanſor*: Diſcomfited by the *Chriſtians* of *Spain* at the battel of *Sier-Morena*, *An.* 1214. loſt his dominions; there being ſlain in this battel 200000 of the *Moors*, as ſome Writers ſay; who adde, that the *Spaniards* for two dayes together burnt no other fewel but the Pikes, Lances, and Arrows of their ſlaughtered Enemies, yet could not conſume the one half of them.
9 *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Enaſer*, by his ſon *Buxaf*: ſlain at the ſiege of *Tremezezir*, a Caſtle of *Tremeſin*, which was held againſt him.
10 *Almorcada*, a kinſman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his eſtate, and ſlain by *Budebuz*, of the ſame houſe of the *Almohades*.
11 *Budebuz*, the laſt of the houſe of the *Almohades*, ſetled in this Eſtate by the aid and valour of *Jacob Aben Joſeph* the new King of *Feſſe*: but dealing faithleſly and ungratefully with him, he was warred on by the ſaid *Jacob Ben Joſeph*, vanquiſhed and ſlain in battel; the ſoveraignty by that means tranſlated unto thoſe of the *Marine* family, *An.* 1270. or thereabouts.

But before I do proceed further with this *Marine* family, I muſt again look back upon *Mahomet Enaſer*, whom I conceive (the putation of the time being ſo agreeable) to be the *Admiralius Murmelius* mentioned by *Matthew Paris*, to whom our king *John*, An. 1214. is ſaid to have ſent ſuch a degenerous and unchriſtian Embaſſage. Which ſtrange name of *Admiralius Murmelius* was by that good Writer unhappily ſtumbled at, inſtead of *Miramomolim* (which alſo is corrupted from *Amir Elmumenim*, that is to ſay, *Princeps Fidelium*) an Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen-Moors* did much affect, and retained it long time amongſt them. The Story this. King *John* being overlaid by his *Barons* wars, and the invaſions of the *French*, ſent Ambaſſadors to this great Prince (then ruling over a great part of *Spain* and *Barbary*) for aid againſt them, offering to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive withall the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moor* exceedingly offended at it, told the Ambaſſadors that he had lately read the book of *Pauls* Epiſtles, which he liked ſo well, that were he now to chooſe a Religion, he would have imbraced *Chriſtianity* before any other: But every man (ſaith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greateſt thing which he diſliked in that Apoſtle, being (as he ſaid) the changing of the *Faith* in which he was born. This ſaid, he called unto him *Robert* of *London* Clark, one of the Ambaſſadors (a man ill choſe for ſuch an Errand, if the tale be true) of whom he demanded the form of the *Engliſh* Government, the ſituation and wealth of the Country, the manners of the people, the life and perſon of the King: in which being ſatisfied, he grew into ſuch a diſlike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the ſubſtance of the ſtory in *Matthew Paris*: But you muſt know he was a *Monk*, to which brood of men king *John* was held for a mortal Enemy; and therefore this Relation not to paſſe for Goſpel.

But

But whatſoever opinion King *John* might have of the power of this King (to whom tis poſſible enough he might ſend for aide) certain it is that he was grown ſo low in his Reputation, after the loſs of that great battell in *Siera Morena*, that not onely the *Spaniſh Moors* withdrew their obedience from him (as a Prince unable to ſupport them) but thoſe of *Africk* did revolt alſo from the Crown of *Morocco* (extreamly weakned by that blow) after his deceaſe. For *Gomoranca Aben Zein* of the houſe of *Abdalnad* ſeized upon *Tremeſen*, in the time of *Caid Arrax* his Succeſſour; as *Bucar Aben Merin* of the noble *Marine* Family (deſcended from a *Chriſtian* ſtock) did the like at *Fez*. Setled in his eſtate by the vanquiſhment of *Almorcada* the *Miramomolim*; he left it to *Hiaja* his ſon, under the governance and protection of a Brother of his called *Jacob Ben Joſeph*. But the young Prince dying ſhortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle: who aiding *Budebuz* (before mentioned) diſpoſſed *Almorcada* of the Realm of *Morocco*: and afterwards having juſt cauſe of quarrell againſt this *Budebuz* invaded his Dominions, overcame and ſlew him; and once again transferred the Imperial ſeat from *Morocco* to *Fez*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine* Family, who held their Reſidence in *Fez*, as the firſt ſeat of their power; *Morocco* being Governed by an under-King, the reſt of the Provinces of that Kingdom *cantonned* into ſeveral States; the Sea-coaſts in ſome tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his line (but with great confuſions) the Royall dignity remained till the year 1500. and ſomewhat after. Three only were of note in the courſe of buſineſs, that is to ſay, 1 *Jacob Ben Joſeph*, the advancer of the *Marine* Family to the Realm of *Morocco*; the eſtabliſher thereof in that of *Feſſe*; and of great power and influence in the affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain*, where he held *Algeir* and *Tariffe*, Towns of great importance; ſlain treacherouſly by one of his familiar friends, at the ſiege of *Tremeſen*. 2 *Aben Joſeph* the ſecond, a younger ſon of this firſt *Joſeph* (the iſſue of *Bucalo* his elder brother being quite extinct) ſucceeded after *Abortade*, the ſixt of the *Marine* Family in the Throne of his Father; and had added thereunto the Realm of *Tremeſen*, if not diverted by the revolt of *Alboali* his eldeſt ſon, continually in Arms againſt him. 3 *Alboacen*, the ſon of this *Aben Joſeph* and the eighth of the *Marine* Family, who after a ſiege of 30 moneths took the City of *Tremeſen*, & with that the Kingdom. But not ſo fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Chriſtian* Kings of *Spain*, againſt whom he led an Army of 400000 Foot, and 70000 Horſe, with all other neceſſaries; but vanquiſhed by the two Kings of *Caſtile* and *Portugal*, with far leſſer forces (their Army conſiſting but of 25000 foot, and 14000 horſe) at the River of *Salado* not far from *Tariff*, *Anno* 1340, Depoſed ſoon after his return by his ſon *Alboanen*, who loſt all which his Father and the firſt of the *Aben Joſephs* had gained in *Spain*; their Empire after this declining even in *Africk* it ſelf; the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*, and the greateſt part of the new Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themſelves from their obedience in the Eaſt parts of *Barbarie*; as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the Weſt. The Kingdom of the *Marines* thus approaching neer its fatal Period, it fortuned about the year 1508 that *Mahomet Ben Amet* a Native of *Dara*, in the further *Numidia* or *Bilodulgerid*, pretending a deſcent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, cauſed himſelf to be called *Xeriff*, the name by which the kindred and Succeſſors of that *Impoſtor* uſe to call themſelves; and being a poor *Hermit* only (with which *Mountebanks* and the high opinion of their Sanctity, this People have from time to time been extreamly fooled) plotted to make his ſons the chief Princes of *Mauritania*. To this end he ſent them in Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, whence they returned with ſuch an opinion of Sanctity, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe* made *Amet* the elder of them Governor of the famous Colledge of *Amadnrach*; the ſecond called *Mahomet*, Tutor to his Children; the youngeſt named *Abdel* ſtaying at home with his Father. In thoſe dayes the *Portugals* grievouſly infeſted the Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; to repreſs whoſe inſolencies *Mahomet* and *Amet* obtained Commiſſion; though much oppoſed therein by the Kings brother, who told him how unſafe it was to truſt to an armed hypocriſie; aſſuring him that if they once came unto any power (which under color of Religion they might quickly raiſe) it would not be eaſie to ſuppreſs them. But this good counſel was rejected, and the war went forwards. Furniſhed with an Army, they diſcomfit *Lopes Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* forces under King *Emanuel*; compell that King to abandon all his footing there; they ſubdue *Duccala*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City poiſon the tributary King, and ſalute *Amet* King thereof by the name of the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, inveſting *Mahomet* the other brother in the kingdom of *Sus*. In the career of their ſucceſſes died the king of *Feſſe*; and *Amet* his ſucceſſor, an improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam*-Tutors in their new Eſtates, conditioned they ſhould hold of him as the Lord in chief, and pay him the accuſtomed tributes.

The *Xeriffes* of *Morocco*.

A. C. 1 *Amet*, denied both tribute and ſuperiority to the King of *Fez*, whom he overthrew in a ſet field; and was after vanquiſhed and diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdom, (upon ſome quarrell breaking out) by his brother *Mahomet*.

1554. 2 *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Feſſe* unto it alſo by the vanquiſhment of *Amet* the King thereof; ſlain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.

1557. 3 *Abdalla*, the ſon of *Mahomet*.

1572. 4 *Abdalla* II. Sonne of the former had twelve Brothers, of which he ſlew

A. C. slew ten. *Hamet* being spared by reason of his supposed simplicity, and *Abdelmelech* escaping to the *Turks*.

5 *Mahomet* II. Sonne of *Abdalla* the second expelled by *Abdelmelech* and the *Turks*, fled to *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*, who together with the two Competitors were slain in one day at the battel of *Alcazar Guer*, Anno 1578.

1578. 6 *Hamet* II. the Brother of *Abdalla* the 2d. who added parts of *Libya*, and *Numidia*, to the Realm of *Morocco*, not absolutely subdued before.

1603. 7 *Muley Sheck* the eldest son of *Hamet*, opposed in his Succession by *Boferes* and *Sidan* his two younger brethren; in which War he dyed; as did also *Boferes* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, II. son of *Muley Sheck* had regained *Morocco*.

1607. 8 *Sidan* the third son of *Hamet*, immediately on the death of his Father caused himself to be proclaimed King of *Fez*, (where he was with his father when he died) and having won *Morocco* from *Abdalla* the son of *Muley Sheck*, became master of that kingdom also. Stripped afterwards of *Fesse* and *Morocco* both by the opposite factions; distressed by *Hamet Ben Abdela* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himself; and aided by *Side Hean* one of like hypocrisie, who seemed to aim but at a Limb of that great Estate; by whose assistance he was once more possessed of *Morocco*. These tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Country brought to some degree of peace and quietness. (though never absolutely reduced under his command, as in former times) a Rabble of Pirats nest themselves in *Salla*, a Port-town of the Realm of *Fesse*: creating thence great mischief to him both by sea and land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countries, whose busines led them towards those Seas. Unable to suppress them for want of shipping, he craved aid of King *Charles* of *England*: by whose assistance he became Master of the Port, destroyed the Pyrates, and sent Three hundred *Christian* Captives for a Present to his Sacred Majesty, *An.*1632. Nor staid he here; but aiming at the general good of Trade, and Mankind, he sent a Letter to His Majesty to lend him the like aid against those of *Algiers*, who did as much infest the *Mediterranean*, as the Pirats of *Salla* did the *Ocean*. The tenor of which Letters, as savouring of more piety then could be possibly expected from a *Mahometan*, and much conducing to the honour of his Sacred Majesty, I have here subjoyned.

The Letter of the King of *Morocco*, to the King of *England*.

WHen these our Letters shall be so happy as to come to your Majesties sight, I wish the Spirit of the righteous God may so direct your mind, that you may joyfully imbrace the Message I send, presenting to you the means of exalting the Majesty of God, and your own Reward amongst men. The Regal power allotted to us, makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of those People whom we govern: So that observing the duties we owe to God, we deliver blessings to the World; in providing for the publike good of our States, we magnifie the honour of God, like the Celestial Bodies, which though they have much veneration, yet serve only to the benefit of the World. It is the Excellencie of our Office, to be Instruments whereby happiness is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me Sir! this is not to instruct, (for I know I speak to one of a more cleer and quick sight then my self) but I speak this, because God hath pleased to grant me a happy Victory over some part of those Rebellious Pirats *that have so long molested the peaceful Trade of* Europe, *and hath presented further occasion to root out the generation of those who have been so pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, since it hath pleased God to be so auspicious to our beginnings in the Conquest of* Salla, *that we might joyn and proceed in hope of like success in the war against* Tunis, Algier, *and other places (Dens and Receptacles for the inhumane villanies of those who abhor Rule and Government.) Herein whilest we interrupt the corruption of malignant Spirits of the World, we shall glorifie the great God, and perform a Duty that will shine as glorious as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may see and reverence: A work that shall ascend as sweet as the perfume of the most precious Odours in the nostrils of the Lord; A work gratefull and happy to men; A work whose memory shall be reverenced so long as there shall be any that delight to hear the Actions of Heroick and magnanimous Spirits; that shall last as long as there be any remaining amongst men that love and honour the piety and vertue of Noble minds. This Action I here willingly present to You, whose piety and vertues equal the greatness of your power: that we who are Servants to the Great and mighty GOD, may hand in hand triumph in the glory which this*

Action

Action preſents unto us. Now becauſe the Ilands which you govern, have been ever famous for the unconquered ſtrength of their Shipping, I have ſent this my truſty Servant and Ambaſſador to know whether in your Princely wiſdome you ſhall think fit to aſsiſt me with ſuch Forces by Sea, as ſhall be anſwerable to thoſe I provide by Land: which if you pleaſe to grant, I doubt not but the Lord of Hoſts *will protect and aſsiſt thoſe that fight in ſo glorious a Cauſe. Nor ought you to think this ſtrange, that I who much reverence the Peace and accord of Nations, ſhould exhort to a War. Your great Prophet* CHRIST JESUS *was the* Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH, *as well as the* Lord *and* Giver of Peace: *which may ſignifie unto you, that he which is a lover and maintainer of Peace, muſt always appear with the terror of his Sword, and wading through Seas of blood, muſt arrive to Tranquillity. This made* JAMES *your Father of glorious memory, ſo happily renowned amongſt all Nations. It was the noble fame of your Princely vertues, which reſounds to the utmoſt corners of the Earth, that perſwaded me to invite you to partake of that Bleſsing, wherein I boaſt my ſelf moſt happy. I wiſh God may heap the riches of his bleſsings on you, increaſe your happineſs with your dayes, and hereafter perpetuate the greatneſs of your Name in all Ages.*

Such was the Letter of that King; whoſe motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles which not long after brake out in *Scotland*, put off the deſign. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purpoſes, let us take a view of the *Revenues* and *Forces* of this mighty Empire, before the late diſtractions made it leſs conſiderable. And firſt for the *Revenues* of it, the *Xeriffs* are the abſolute Lords of the whole Eſtate, and of his Subjects goods and bodies. The tenth and firſt-fruits of all ſorts of Fruits, Corn and Cattel, he demands of courſe, though many times contented in the name of the firſt-fruits with one in twenty. The fifth part of a *Ducat* he receiveth for every Acre of Land throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head whether male or female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandiſe he receiveth of every Native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impoſt alſo upon every Mill. When any of his greater Officers or Judges die, he is ſole Heir of all their Goods; and yet advanceth great ſums by the ſale of thoſe Offices. And in the levying of ſuch Taxes as are extraordinary, he uſeth to demand more then he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate ſomwhat of his Due, may think themſelves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their *Forces*, it is evident in matter of Fact, that *Abdulla* the firſt, at the ſiege of *Mazagon*, a Town held by the *Portugals*, An. 1562. had no leſs then 200000 men; and that *Abdel-Melech* at the battel of *Alcazar Quez*, againſt king *Sebaſtian*, had 40000 Horſe and 80000 Foot, beſides Voluntaries, and wild *Arabians*; it being ſuppoſed that he might have raiſed 30000 Horſe more (notwithſtanding the ſtrong party which was made againſt him) had he thought it neceſſary. It is ſaid alſo that *Abdalla* kept in conſtant pay 60000 Horſe, of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of *Sus*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other in 20000 in the kingdom of *Feſſe*: out of which he called 5000 of the beſt and ableſt for the guard of his perſon, well mounted and as richly furniſhed. Beſides theſe he hath bodies of Horſe in continual readineſs, maintained according to the manner of the *Turks Timariots*: and by Penſions given amongſt the Chiefs of the *Arabians*, who live like Outlaws in the mountains, and up and down in the skirts of of his Country, is furniſhed at his need with ſupplies from them. Well ſtored with Ammunition alſo, there being 46 *Quintals* of Gun-powder laid up monethly, in his famous *Arſenal* at *Morocco*: and yet not able to ſtay long (not above 3 months) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Proviſions are conſumed, to diſſolve and ſcatter.

THE ISLES OF BARBARY.

THe *ISLES* of *BARBARY*, which make up the fifth and laſt part thereof, are ſituate neer the *African* ſhores of the *Mediterranean*, aſſigned by *Ptolomy* to the Province of *Africa Propria*. In number ſixteen: 1 *Hydras*. 2 *Calathe*, 3 *Dracontias*, now called *Chelbi*. 4 *Ægymnus*, by *Strabo* called *Æginarus*, and now *Guietta*. 5 *Laruneſia*, now *Mollium*. 6 *Lapeduſa*, now *Lampedoſa*. 7 *Meſyrus*, 8 *Pontia*, 9 *Gaia*; all of little note. 10 *Inſula Glauconis*, with a City of the ſame name in it, now called *Goza*, and ſubject to the Knights of *Malta*. 11 *Æthuſa*, by ſome called *Æguſa*, and conſequently miſtaken for *Ægates*, which lieth neer *Sicily*. Of more note are the five that follow, *viz.*

1. *COSYRA*, now called *Pantalaria*, equally diſtant from *Africk* and the Iſle of *Sicil*, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten. Mountainous for the moſt part, and full of a black kind of Stone: the ſoyl not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cotton-wool; well ſtored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horſes. The People poor; by Religion *Chriſtians*, and ſubject to the King of *Spain*: very good Swimmers of both ſexes, and in their ſpeech and habit coming neer the *Moors*. It hath a Town in it of the ſame name with the Iſland, ſituate on the Sea-ſide in the Northern part of it, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle.

2 *CERCINA*,

2. *CERCINA*, now with little difference called *Carchana*, ſituate neer the coaſt of *Africk*, at the entrance (as it were) of the leſſer *Syrtis*: In length 25 miles, in breadth half as much, but in ſome places not above five. Exceeding fruitfull in old times, able to furniſh (as they did) the wants of *Cæſar* and his Army, when he warred in *Africk*; *Magno frumenti numero* Cercinæ *invento, naves onerarias, quarum ibi ſatis magna copia, complet, atque in caſtra ad* Cæſarem *mittit*, are the words of the Hiſtory. It hath a Town of the ſame name; Of no great note in way of ſtory, but for an handſom piece of wit here ſhewed by *Annibal*. Who flying from *Carthage*, met here ſome Merchants of that City, who had there ſome ſhipping in the Haven, and ſtanding in ſome doubt leſt by their diſcovery of his flight he might be purſued, pretended a Sacrifice to *Hercules*, the *Tyrian* Deity, to which he invited all the Sailers, and borrowed all their Sails to ſet up a tent for their entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them aſleep, he made on for *Aſia*, ſecure enough not to be purſued untill out of danger.

3. *LOTOPHAGITIS*, now called *Zerby*, and by ſome *Gerbe*, is ſituate in the bottom of the Bay of *Tripolis*, divided from the main Land by a narrow Ford. The Iland full of Bogs and Mariſhes, without other water, and in the midſt of it ſomewhat hilly; indifferently fruitfull, yielding, Dates, Olives, Barley, Mill, and the like commodities; inhabited by 30000 men, dwelling in low Cottages, and but ſimply apparelled. It had in it anciently two Cities, 1 *Meninx*, which ſometimes gave name unto the Iland, called *Meninx* by ſome elder Writers. 2 *Gerrapolis*, both now deſtroyed: inſtead whereof there is now one of more note then the reſt, called by the ſame name with the Iland, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle. Subject unto the *Turks*, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Iland taken by the *Chriſtian* Fleet, in the year 1559. for the King of *Spain*, to whom *Caravanus* the King thereof did ſubmit himſelf, conditioning to pay the yeerly Tribute of 6000. Crowns, one Camel, four Oſtriches, four Sparrow Hawks, and four Falcons. But the *Chriſtians* were ſcarce warm in their new poſſeſſion, when beſieged in the Caſtle by *Pial Baſſa*, to whom after ſome extremities they were fain to yield: there periſhing in this unfortunate Action, by ſword, famine, and ſickneſs, 15000 *Chriſtians*.

4. *GAULOS*, or *GAUDUS*, by the Inhabitants called *Gaudica*, is diſtant about five miles from the Iſle of *Malta*; to the Knights whereof it doth belong, given to them by the bounty of *Charles* the fift. The Iland 30 miles in compaſs, well watered and very fruitfull. So great an Enemy to Serpents and all venemous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here brought from other places. The People *Chriſtians*, but they ſpeak the ſame Language with the neighbouring *Saracens*. The chief Town is of the ſame name with the Iland, beautified with a Capacious Haven, lying betwixt the Weſt and South, and ſtrongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the *Turks* in the year 1551. who carried hence 3000 Souls into endleſs thraldom.

5. *MALTA*, the chief of the *African* Ilands, lieth betwixt *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, and the Iſle of *Sicil*: diſtant from this laſt about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about ſixty miles, in length 20, and in breadth 12. ſituate in the beginning of the fourth *Clime*, and eighth *Parallell*; ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is but 14 hours.

Anciently it was called *Melite*, and by that name occurreth not only in *Ptolomy* and other Writers, but alſo in the Book of the *Acts*, in the ſtory of St. *Pauls* Ship-wrack, this being the place where he and all his company were caſt on land: in memory whereof was built a little Chappell in the place of his Landing. So called moſt probably ἀπὸ τῆς μέλιτος, from the abundance of honey which it yielded in former times: *Cicero* charging it on *Verres*, that he came home loaded with 400 meaſures of honey, and ſtore of *Melitenſian* Rayments: *Jam non quæro unde* 400 *amphoras mellis habueris, unde tantum* Melitenſium *Veſtium*, ſaith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the ſame place for both; this Iſland being a neer neighbour of *Sicil*, which *Verres* governed then as Prætor. Nor is it ſtrange that an Iſland of the coaſt of *Africk*, and uſing for the moſt part the *Phocinian* or *Punick* Language, ſhould borrow its Appellation from the *Greek*: many of that Nation coming hither from the Iſle of *Sicil*, and inhabiting here; and the whole Iſland ſometimes ſubject to the power of the *Sicilian Greeks*, though for the moſt part under the command of the State of *Carthage*.

It is ſituate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by conſequence, of no great fertility, the want of which is ſupplied with the plenties of *Sicil*. Yet have they here no ſmall ſtore of Pomegranats, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent fruits, both for taſte and colour. They have alſo great abundance of Cotten Wool (*Goſſypium* the *Latiniſts* call it) which they ſowe as we do our Corn; the growth and ordering of this Wool, hath been ſhewn already, when we were in *Syria*. For the commoditie of this Wool, and the cloth made of it, the *Romans* had this Iland in great eſteem; thinking themſelves happy when they gained it from the *Carthaginians*.

The natural Inhabitants of it are ſaid to be churliſh and uncivil; of the *African* Language and complexion; but followers of the Church of *Rome*, the *Religion* whereof theſe Knights are ſworn to defend: The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number of both Sexes, ſuppoſed to be 20000. poſſeſſed of 90 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note, 1 *Malta*, ſo called by the name of the Iland, in the middle of which it is ſituate; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the ſtrength and ſafety of the Iland lying in defence of the Shores and Havens. 2 St. *Hermes* a ſtrong Caſtle at the point of a long *Languet* or tongue of Rock, thruſting out betwixt the two beſt Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1565, but at no cheaper rate then 20000 ſhot of Cannon, and the loſs of 10000 of their men. 3 *Valette* ſituate

tuate on the ſame Languet, not far from the Caſtle of S. *Hermes*, (or rather lying cloſe unto it) extended the whole breadth of the ſaid Languet from the one Sea to the other: and ſo commanding both the Havens. Built ſince the departure of the *Turks*, impregnably Fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valets*, the great Maſter who ſo gallantly repulſed their fury. In this Town the *great Maſter* hath his Palace, and the Knights their ſeveral *Alberges* or Seminaries, all very fair and handſome buildings. 4 *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Languet*, lying in the Eaſtern Haven, at the extremity of which Promontory in a Demy Iland ſtands the ſtrong Caſtle of 5 S. *Angelo*, built on a Rock, oppoſite to *Valette*, on the other ſide of the Haven; and found impregnable by the *Turks*, who in vain beſieged it. 6 *Iſola* a ſmall Citie and better deſerving the name of a Town, ſituate in another Promontory, on the South of the other; defended on the Weſtſide by a ſtrong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*, and on the Eaſtſide by the impregnable Caſtle of S. *Michael*, in vain aſſaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill ſucceſs at the Siege hereof gave over the enterprize, and ſailed home.

The People of this Iland originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with ſome *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicil*, as before was ſaid: For the moſt part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till ſubdued by the *Saracens*; By the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moors*, and by *Charles* the fift given to the Knights of the *Rhodes*, not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1522. Theſe Knights are in number 1000; of whom, 500 are always to be reſident in the Iland. The other 500 are diſperſed through *Chriſtendom*, at their ſeveral Seminaries, in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy* and *Germany*; and at any ſummons, are to make their perſonal appearance. Theſe Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number ſeven, *viz.* one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergn*, one of *Provence*, one of *Caſtile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Countrey where he liveth, is of great reputation. An eight *Seminary* they had in *England*, till the ſuppreſſion of it by *Henry* the 8. yet they have ſome one or other, to whom they give the title of *Grand Prior* of *England*. Concerning the original and riches of theſe Knights, we have ſpoken when we were in *Paleſtine*; now a word or two only of their places, and the election of their *great Maſter*. None are admitted into the Order, but ſuch as can bring a teſtimony of their *Gentry* for ſix deſcents; and when the Ceremonies of their Admiſſion (which are many) are performed, they ſwear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiours*, to live upon the Revenues of their *Order* only, and withall to live chaſtly. Of theſe there be 16 of great authority (*Counſellours of State* we may fitly call them) called the *Great Croſſes*; out of whom, the officers of their Order, as the *Marſhal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellour*, &c. are choſen: and who, together with the *Maſter*, puniſh ſuch as are convict of any crime, firſt by degrading him, 2 by ſtrangling him, and 3 by throwing him into the Sea. Now when the *Great Maſter* is dead, they ſuffer no Veſſell to go out of this Iland, till another be *elected*; leſt the *Pope* ſhould intrude on their *election*; which is performed in this manner. The ſeveral *Seminaries* nominate two Knights, and two alſo are nominated for the *Engliſh*: theſe 16 from amongſt themſelves chooſe eight; theſe eight chooſe a Knight, a Prieſt, and a Frier-ſervant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Croſſes*, elect the *great Maſter*. The *great Maſter* being thus choſen, is ſtiled (though but a Frier) *The moſt illuſtrious, and moſt reverend Prince, the* Lord Frier N.N. Great Maſter *of the Hoſpital of S.* John of Jeruſalem, *Prince of* Malta, Gaules, *and* Goza. Far different I aſſure you, from that of the firſt Maſters of this Order, who called themſelves only *Servants to the poor Servitors of the Hoſpital of* Jeruſalem; or that of the Maſter of the *Templers*, who was only intituled *The humble Miniſter of the poor Knights of the Temple.*

This Iland is conceived to yield to the *great Maſter* the yeerly rent of 10000 *Ducats*, the greateſt part whereof ariſeth out of *Cotton-wool*; beſides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Eſtate, the tenth part of the prizes which are won from the *Turks*; and certain thouſands of Crowns yearly out of the treaſure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the beſt *Commanderies* in every Nation. And for the ſcowring of the Seas, and ſecuring their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 Souldiers, and to carry 16 piece of Ordinance; with which they make excurſions many times to the coaſts of *Greece*.

And ſo much for *BARBARY*.

MOVNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbarie* to *Libya Interior*, we muſt paſs over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of hills, of exceeding great heighth, and of no ſmall length. So high that the top or *Summit* of it is above the clouds, at leaſt ſo high that the eye of man is not able to diſcern the top of it. *Extat in hoc Mari mons cui nomen* Atlas (ſaith Herodotus) *Ita ſublimis ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non poſſint.* Yet notwithſtanding, it is always covered with ſnow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of aſcent by reaſon of the ſharp and craggy *precipices* which occur in many places of it; the reſt where plainer, and more even, of ſuch wondrous ſteepneſs, that the *precipices* of the Rocks ſeem the ſafer way. Full of thick woods, and yielding to the Countries on the North ſide of it, the greateſt part of the Rivers, which refreſh and moyſten them: and where it bordereth on the proper or *Roman Africa*, of ſuch ſelf-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth, not planted, graffed, or inoculated by the hand of man. The beginning of it is on the ſhores of the Weſtern Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick* Ocean; in the 26 Degree, and 30 Minutes of Northern Latitude; and paſſing on directly Eaſtward, draw neer unto the borders of *Egypt*, part of *Marmarica*, or the *Roman Libya* only interpoſing. It is now called *Anchiſa*, and *Montes Clari*; And took the name of *Atlas* from *Atlas* a King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; fained by the Poets to be turned into this hill by *Perſeus*, and the head of *Meduſa*. Of the daughters of this King, their golden fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Heſpirides*, we have ſpoke already; though ſome remove the place of their habitation more into the Weſt (then by us diſpoſed of) and others into certain Ilands of the *Weſtern* Ocean, which we ſhall meet withall hereafter. He was ſaid to have been a man of ſuch wondrous height, that the Heavens reſted on his ſhoulders; of which, when weary, he diſcharged his burden on the ſhoulders of *Hercules*; the ground of the fiction either taken from the *height* of the Mountain, the top whereof ſeemeth to touch the skie; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Aſtronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets. In which knowledge he inſtructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more *Authentick* deſcription of it, take it thus from *Virgil.*

——— Jamque volans apicem & latera ardua cernit
Atlantis *duri, Cœlum qui vertice fulcit.*
Atlantis, *cinctum aſſiduè cui nubibus atris*
Piniferum caput, & vento pulſatur & imbri.
Nix humeros infuſa tegit, tum flamina mento
Præcipitant ſenis; & glacie riget horrida barba.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words.

Then flying, he the top and ſides deſcries
Of Atlas, *whoſe proud head ſupport's the skies.*
Atlas, *whoſe Pinie head with Clouds incloſed*
Is to the ſtorms of winde and rain expoſed.
Now hide's the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
Upon his Chin; his Beard with ice ore grown.

OF LIBYA INTERIOR.

LIBYA INTERIOR is bounded on the North with Mount *Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary* and *Cyrenaica*; on the Eaſt with *Libya Marmarica*, interpoſed betwixt it and *Egypt*, and part of *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire; on the South with *Æthiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Negro's*; and on the Weſt with the main *Atlantick* Ocean.

The reaſon of the name we have ſeen before, given to this Country in regard of its contiguouſneſs and reſemblance to the other *Libya*; or elſe becauſe deſcended from the children of *Lehabim*, by which that Country was firſt planted. For of King *Libs*, or Queen *Libya* (the daughter of *Epaphus*, and *Caſſiopea*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I ſhall take no notice. Diſtinguiſhed from the other, by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main land of *Africa*, the other being partly a *Maritime* Country.

Of the nature of the ſoyle and people we ſhall ſpeak anon, when we come to take a view of its ſeveral parts. Look we now on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans:* when, though not ſo well travelled or diſcovered as in theſe laſt times: yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and ſituation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, then any of our later Writers have preſented to us. The Rivers of moſt note, 1 *Salathus*, 2 *Chuſarus*, 3 *Ophiodus*, 4 *Noius*, 5 *Maſſa*, 6 *Sobus*, 7 *Daradus*, 8 *Stachiris*, and 9 *Maſitholus*; all of them paying tribute to the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean. Mountains of moſt note, 1 *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salathus*, 2 *Sagapola*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*. 3 *Ryſſadius*, from whence *Stachiris*. 4 the Mountain called *Deorum Currus* (of which more anon) whence *Maſſitholus*, and Mount *Capas*, out of which *Daradas*, have their firſt Originals. Then there are, 5 Mount *Uſurgala*, and 6 Mount *Girgiris*, from the

the first of which the River *Bagradas*, and from the last that of *Cyniphus*, do derive their waters; and passing thorow the breaches of *Atlas* (of which these Mountains seem to be some dismembred limbs) cross the whole breadth of the *Roman Africk*, to make themselves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Besides these, more within the Land, we finde the famous Rivers of *Gir*, and *Niger*: of which the first maketh the two great Lakes of *Nuba*, and *Cheloindas*; the second, those as great, or greater called *Nigritis*, and the Lake of *Libya*; which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Country so well watered as this seems to be, our Modern Writers should complain of such want of water, as if there were neither Spring nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moysten and refresh the earth, but the dews of Heaven, or some pits of salt and brackish water, not worth the tasting. *Ptolomy* must either be mistaken, which I hardly think; or our late *Travellers* not so punctual in their observations, which I rather credit: or else the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, *In his arenarum vastitatibus disperduntur*, must be dried up and swallowed in these sandy Desarts, as *Maginus* telleth us; or finally there hath hapned some later conflagration then that of *Phaeton*, to which the want of water may be better attributed, then it was to his. Of which thus the Poet,

Hinc facta est Libye, *raptis humoribus æstu*
Arida.——Which *Geo. Sandys* thus rendreth.
A Sandie Desart Lybia *then became,*
Her full veins emptied by the thirstie flame.

Places of note and name in those elder times, 1 *Salathes*, on the River so named, 2 *Bagaxi*, 3 *Jarzitha*, and 4 *Babiba*, are honoured with the name of *Cities*. 5 *Garama*, 6 *Gira*, and *Nigira*, the *Metropoles* of their several Nations. Then there were two Havens of some good esteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphosius*; besides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of these on the banks of the River *Niger*:) whose names and situation do occur in *Ptolomy*, which shews the Country not to be so unhabitable and void of people, as was pretended by some other (but less diligent) Writers.

Nations of most note in it in the former times, were the *Getuli*, on the back of *Mauritania*, a resolute and unconquered People, *Genus insuperabile bello*, as we finde in *Virgil*: 2 the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenaica*, and giving name to a large and spacious territory, called *Vallis Garamantica*; supposed to be the most remote Nation towards the South, as the *Indians* were towards the East, whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Judos*, in another Poet: 3 the *Pyrrhæi*, an *Æthiopick* Nation, on the South of the River *Gir*: 4 the *Nigritæ*, originally *Æthiopians* also, inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*; 5 the *Odranguli*, of the same original extraction, possessing the Counrry between the Mountains *Capha*, and *Thala*; 6 the *Perorsori*, dwelling neer the hills called *Deorum Currus*; 7 the *Meinaci*, at the foot of Mount *Thala*; 8 the *Nabæ* on the West of *Vallis Garamantica*. 9 the *Derbici*, dwelling on the west of the hill *Aranga*. And 10 the *Psylli*, placed by *Ptolomie* amongst the Inhabitants of *Cyrene*, but so neer the borders of this Country, and so far from the civilities of those Nations which conversed either with *Rome* or *Carthage*, that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a nature so venemous, that they could poyson a Snake. Insomuch, that when their wives were delivered, they would throw their children amongst a bed of *Serpents*, supposing that childe to be born of an *adulterate* bed, the very smell of whose body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poysonous vermine. Others there were of less note, which that Author calleth *Minores Gentes*; many in number, of small fame, and therefore not material to be here inserted; those of most note, the *Africerones* (whom some Authors call the *Gampsaphantes*) honoured with the Attribnte of *Gens Magna*, the greatest as it seems of those lesser Nations. None of them of much note in the way of story, except they were these *Libyans* which are so famoused in *Herodotus* for an expedition they made against the *South winde*. For when this wind blowing abroad the hills and desarts of sand, had dried up those many rills and waters they had among them, they to revenge this injury, by common consent armed themselves, and went to fight against him. But they took not the *South winde* unprepared. For he mustered up his forces, inconntred them with such a brave volley of sand, that he overwhelmed and slew them all. A better friend was the North wind to the Citizens of *Rhegium*, in *Italy*, and better was he rewarded for it; for having scattered a mighty fleet, which *Dionysius* prepared against them, he was by the common-councell, made free of their City. That part of *Cæsars* war which was managed here, we shall hereafter meet with on another occasion.

Thus having took a view of the state of this Country, as it stood of old; we will next look upon it in its present condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1 *Biledulgerid*, or *Numidia*. 2 *Libya Deserta*, or *Sarra*; and 3. a great part of that Country which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But because the greatest part of this last Country is to come under another Accompt, we will here only take the two first into consideration.

1. *NUMIDIA.*

1. NUMIDIA, is bounded on the East with *Egypt*, on the West with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North with Mount *Atlas* which parteth it from *Barbarie*, and *Cyrene*; on the South with *Libya Deserta*.

It was thus first called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whose description of all *Africk* we are much beholding; because of that resemblance which the People of it have to the old *Numidians*, which is after the custom of the *Nomades*, living without houses, under their Wagons, and Carts, as *Lucan* testifieth of them, thus

Nulla domus, planſtris habitant, migrare per arva
Mos, atque errantes circumvectare Penates.

They dwell in Wains, not houſes; and do ſtray
Through fields, and with them lead their gods each way.

And worthily may they owe their names to them, from whom they borrow ſo much of their nature: for the people to this day ſpend their lives in hunting, and ſtay but three or four dayes in a place, as long as the graſs will ſerve the *Camels*. This is the cauſe why this Countrey is ſo ill peopled, the Towns ſo ſmall in themſelves, and ſo remote from others. An example hereof is *Teffet* a great City in their eſteem, which yet containeth but 400 houſholds, and hath no neighbours within 300 miles of it.

The Country aboundeth with *Dates*, whence it is called *Dactylorum regio*, and in the Arabick *Biledulgerid*, which ſignifieth alſo a *Date-region*. Theſe *Dates* are (to ſpeak properly) the fruit of the Palm Trees, uſually growing in hot Countries, of which ſome are male, ſome female; the firſt bringing forth only flowers; the other fruit: and yet the male ſo beneficial to the increaſe of the *Dates*, that unleſs a flowred bough of the male be ingrafted into the female, the *Dates* never prove good, in caſe they bear any Dates at all, as before was noted. This fruit is the chief diet of the people: but this ſweet meat hath ſowre ſawce; for it commonly rotteth their teeth betimes. As for the ſtones of theſe *Dates*, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow fat, and yield ſtore of milk. The Aire hereof, of ſo ſound a nature, that if a man be troubled with the *French diſeaſe*, he ſhall there, without any courſe of *Phyſick*, finde a preſent remedy.

The natural Inhabitants of this Country, are ſaid to be baſe and vile people, theeves, murderers, treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding moſt commonly on *Dates*, Barley, and Carrion; accounting Bread a Diet for their Feſtival Dayes. But the *Arabians* who are intermingled with them, in moſt part of the Country, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) ingenuous, liberal, and civil. The Garments of theſe *Numidians*, of the courſeſt cloth, ſo ſhort that they cover not half the body: the richer ſort, diſtinguiſhed by a *Jacket* of *blew Cotton* with wide ſleeves. Their Steeds are *Camels*, which they ride on without *ſtirrop*, or ſo much as a *ſaddle*; a leather, thruſt thorow on hole made in the noſe of the *Camel*, ſerves them for a *bridle*; and to ſave the charge of *Spurs* they make uſe of a goad. Their Religion, *Mahometiſm*, to which perverted (*Chriſtianity* having once had ſome footing here) in the year 710. the *Azanaghi* and other people of thoſe parts then ſubdued by the *Saracens*: who held them for a Nation of ſo little reckoning, that no man of accompt amongſt them would deſcend ſo low, as to be their Prince, but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the *Chiefs* or Heads of their ſeveral *Clans*!

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and poſſibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Ptolomy*: the reſt which are mentioned in that Author, riſing out of *Mount Atlas*, and falling headily this way, finding theſe barren wilderneſſes to afford them the readieſt *Channels*, are trained along by the allurements of the Sands, and are either ſwallowed up in great Lakes; or being too liberal to the thirſty ſands in their way to the Sea, die at the laſt for thirſt in the midſt of the *Deſarts*.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a diſtinction into better and worſe.) 1 *DARA*; more cultivated then the reſt, becauſe of the River running thorow it, whence it hath its name: 250 miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of ſo different a nature from all the reſt, that here the Country people have ſome ſcattered Villages, the better ſort their ſeveral Caſtles. 2 *PESCARA*, ſo called from the chief Town of it, exceedingly infeſted with Scorpions; the ſting whereof is preſent death. 3 *FIGHIG*, ſo called from the chief Town alſo, inhabited by an induſtrious and witty People (in reſpect of the reſt) ſome of which betake themſelves to *Merchandiſe*; ſome to the ſtudie of their Law, which they ſtudie at *Feſſe*, and grow rich upon it. 4 *TEGOREARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited, better then any except *Dara*; as having in it 50 Caſtles or Gentlemens houſes, and 100 Villages. The people wealthy in regard of the gread trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good husbands in manuring their land on which they are forced to lay much ſoil; and will therefore let ſome of it *Rent-free* to ſtrangers, reſerving only the dung of themſelves and their cattell. 5 *BILEDULGERID*, ſpecially ſo called, abundantly fruitful in *Dates*, whence it had the name, but deſtitute of Corn by reaſon of the extream dryneſs of the ſoyle; and yet hath in it many Towns of good note among them. Of leſs note, 6 *Teſſet*, 7 *Segelmeſſe*, 8 *Zeb*, 9 *Tebelbeti*, and 10 *Feſſen*, ſo called from the chiefeſt of their Towns and Villages.

Towns of moſt note both now and in former times, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before, 1 *Timugedit*, in the Province of *Dara*, the birth-place of *Mahomet Ben Amet* and his three ſons, the founders of the *Xeriffian* Empire. 2 *Tafilete*, in the ſaid Province, to which place *Mahomet* the ſecond of theſe ſons and firſt King of *Morocco* of that Family, confined his eldeſt brother *Amet*, having took him priſoner, *Anno* 1544. 3. *Teffet*, a great Town of 400 houſes, but ſo poorly neighboured that there is no other inhabited place within 300 miles of it; but of that before. 4 *Techort*, the inhabitants whereof are very courteous to ſtrangers, whom they entertain at *free-coſt*; and chooſe rather to marry their daughters to them then to any of the Natives. 5 *Eboacah*, the moſt Eaſtern Town in

all

all this Country, distant about 100 miles from the borders of *Egypt*. 7 *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for Wells or *Fountain* of the *Sun*, the waters whereof being lukewarm at the Sun-rising, cooled more and more till noon, was then very cold, and so continued untill midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter, as if it had a natural *Antipathy* with the Sun, hottest when that was furthest off; and cold when neerest. 8 *Masucha*, seated on a Rock, garrisoned by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marius*, in the prosecution of that War. 8 *Capsa*, the chief City of all this tract, said to be built by *Hercules*; but questionless of very great strength, *anguibus arenisque vallata*, made inaccessible (saith the Historian) by the thick *Sands* and multitudes of *Serpents* which were harboured in them; but easily forced by *Marius* in his Wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly destroyed by *Cesar* in his war against *Juba*.

It seems by this, that those people neighbouring Mount *Atlas* were much at the disposal of the Kings of *Mauritania* in the times foregoing; and so they have been also in these latter times! For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of wisdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long possessed themselves of those parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698; but within twelve yeers (*Anno* 710.) they subdued this Country, and planted their *Religion* in it, though not themselves. Nor was *Amet*, the first *Xeriffe* of *Morocco* warm in that estate, when he thought it best for him to secure himself in it by the conquest of this: to whose successors, the chiefes of the Tribes hereof render some acknowledgements.

2. *LIBYA DESEETA.*

2. *LIBYA DESERTA*, is bounded on the north with *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid*, to which contiguous; on the East with *Nubia* a Kingdom and Province of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South with the land of *Negroes* wholly, and on the West with *Gualata*, another Province of these *Negroes* interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantick*.

The reason of the name of *Libya* we have had before. To which *Deserta* was added upon very good reasons, as well to difference it from the other *Libya*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to expres the barren and sandy condition of it: in which respect by the *Arabians* called *Sarra*, signifying in their language a rude and inhabitable *Desart*, as this Country is. So truly such, that men may travell in it eight days together without finding water, or seeing any tree, and no grass at all. The water which they have is drawn out of pits, exceeding brackish, and many times those pits so covered with the Sands that men die for thirst: the *Merchants* therefore carrying their water with them on the backs of *Camels*; which if it fail, they kill their *Camels*, and drink a water which they wring out of their guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as these *Desarts* be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Fesse* and *Tremesen*, trading to *Agades* and *Tombatum*, in the land of *Negroes*.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in shape or qualities; but if a worse of quality, it must be the *Lybian*. They did once worship a God called *Psaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then set at liberty, to say these words, *viz. Psaphon is a great God:* which the simple people hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine honours. Converted at last to the *Christian* Faith, they remained a while in the profession of the Gospel: exterminated by the *Saracens* about the year 710. who having added *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid* to their former conquests, planted their *Superstitions* in this Country also.

This Country is divided (as others into *Provinces*) into five great *Desarts*, to which those of less note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the borders of *Gualata* (interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantick* Ocean) and extending Eastward to the Salt-pits of *Tegaza*; having on the South *Gualata* and *Tombutum* in the land of *Negroes*, so destitute of water, that there is one pit only at the end of each hundred mile, brakish and unwholsom; and in the *Desarts* of *Azaoad* and *Araoan* which are parts of this, but one in an 150 or 200 miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eastward, to the *Desart* of *Targa*; bounded on the North with *Segelmesse* and *Tebelbeti*, *Numidian* Provinces; and on the South with the *Desarts* of *Ghir* and *Guber*. So void of water, (especially in that part thereof which is called *Gogden*) that in nine dayes travell there is not so much as one drop to be seen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eastward to the *Desart* of *Ighidi*; and reaching from *Tegorarin* in the North, to the *Desart* of *Agader* in the South: the best conditioned part of all this Country, well watered, of a temperate Aire, and a soyl reasonably fruitfull. In length from North to the South 300 miles; and liberally stored with Manna, which they gather into little vessels, and carry to *Agadez* to sell. Mingled in water or with pottage it is very cooling, and drank of in their Feasts, as a speciall dainty.

4. *LEMPTA*, extendeth from the Deserts of *Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of these two there is little to be said in several, but that this last was discovered lately by one *Hamar*, a guide to a *Caravan* of Merchants; who blinded with the sands wandred out of his way, and causing sand to be given him at every twenty miles end, found by the smell at last that they begun to draw nigh some inhabited Place, and told them of it 40 miles before they came to it.

Cities

Cities of note we hope for none, where we finde no water. Of such as go for Cities here, the most considerable, 1 *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, resembling Marble, which the Inhabitants, being 20 days distant from any habitation, and consequently many times in danger to die for famine, exchange for Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutum*, who come hither for it: Much troubled with the *South Winds*, which doth so drive the sands upon them, that it causeth many of them to loose their sight. 2. *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known resting place, and a great refreshment to the *Merchant* in the midst of these Desarts. 3 *Guargata* on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy People, 4 *Toberaum*, of little note, but that it serveth for a Stage or *baiting place* to the wearie Traveller. Of which kinde there are said to be others at the extremities or ends of each several *Desarts*; the *Havens* of such men as *sail* in these sandy *Seas*; but not else observable.

Nor is there much, if any thing, observable of them in the way of *story*, but that not looked after by any of the great *Conquerours*, either *Greeks* or *Romans*, much of the Country was possessed by *Arabian* Colonies (men fit enough to plant in such barbarous Nations) at such time as the *Saracens* planted their *Religion* here. The Government of the Country since, as it was before, by the *Chiefs* of their several *Clans*, or Families, who as they know no Law themselves, so do the People shew as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions: differing but little from brute Beasts, more then shape and speech.

And so much for *LIBYA INTERIOR.*

OF

OF TERRA NIGRITARVM.

TERRA NIGRITARVM, or *THE LAND OF NEGROES*, is bounded on the East with *Æthiopia Superior*, on the West with the *Atlantick Ocean*, on the North with *Libya Deserta*, and on the South with the *Æthiopick Ocean*, and part of *Æthiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigrita*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolomy*: and they so named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

The Country very hot, by reason of ifs situation under the *Torrid Zone*: yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in some places alwayes green; well watered, and exceeding fruitful, specially in those parts which lie within the compas of the overflowings of the River *Niger*, and on the further side of the River *Senaga*; abundantly well stored both with Corn, Cattel, and Garden-ware for the use of their Kitchins; well Wooded, and those Woods well furnished with *Elephants* and other Beasts, both wild and tame. Their greatest want (but such a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-trees*, few of which they have; and those they have, bear one kind of fruit only, which is like the *Chesnut*, but somwhat bitterer. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greatest welfare consisting in the overflowings of *Niger*, as that of *Egypt* in the inundations of *Nile*. In some parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver, very fine and pure: so that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of discovering *New-Worlds* as much as *Wealth*, they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as at the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the most part so rude and barbarous, that they seem to want that use of Reason which is peculiar unto man; of little wit, and destitute of all Arts and sciences; prone to luxury, and for the greatest part Idolaters, though not without some small admixture of *Mahumetans*. When the *Portugals* first sailed into these Coasts, they hereof took the Ships for great *Birds* with white wings; and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were casually painted on the beaks of the ships, were the eyes by which they saw how to direct themselves in their course. *Guns* seemed to them, for their hideous noise, to be the works of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be perswaded but that they were the work of *Gods own hands*. The very *Nobles* (if so noble a name may without offence be given to such blockish people) are so dull and stupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to civil society; and yet so reverent of their *King*, that when they are in his presence, they never look him in the face, but sit flat on their buttock, with their elbows on their knees, and their hands on their faces. They use to anoint their hair with the fat of Fishes, which makes them stink more wretchedly then they would do otherwise. Of complexion they are for the most part Cole-black, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South-side of the River *Senaga*, they are only Tawny: the *Blacks* so much in love with their own complexion, that they use to paint the Devil *white*; which I find thus versified.

The Land of Negroes *is not far from thence,*
*Neerer extended to th'*Atlantick *Main;*
Wherein the black Prince *keeps his residence,*
Attended by his jetty coloured Train:
Who in their native beauty most delight,
And in contempt do paint the Devil *white.*

They have tried all *Religions*, but agree in none. *Idolaters* at the first, as others the Descendants of *Cham*: Afterwards it is said that they received the *Rites* and *Religion* of the *Jews*, (but the time and occasion of it I do no where find) in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the last, *Christianity* prevailed in some Kingdoms of it. In the year 973. *Mahometism* began to get ground amongst them, by the diligence and zeal of some of the Preachers of that Law: the first who were reduced that way being those of *Melli*; after which *Tombuto*, *Oden*, *Gualata*, were infected with the same poyson also. In the end, all the rest of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of *Borneo*, some part of *Nubia*, and the Coasts of the *Atlantick* Ocean, which continue in their antient *Gentilism*: *Christianity* being confined to a corner of *Nubia* (if still there remaining) and some few Garrisons belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*. And as they are of different *Religions*, so are they also of several *Languages*: those of *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Tombutum*, *Melli*, and *Gngenti*, speaking the Language called *Sungai*; the *Guberoi*, *Canontes*, *Chasena*, and *Gangrates*, &c. that called *Guber*; *Gualata*, a language of its own; and those of *Nubia*, one resembling the *Arabick*, *Chaldean*, and *Egyptian*.

Mountains of most note in it, in the former times, were those of 1. *Arvalles*, and 2. *Arangus*, and 3. that called *Deorum currus*; this last supposed to be the same which is now called *Punta de Lopes Gonsales*; but that more probably which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large *Promontory*, thrusting

thrusting it self into the Sea; discerned afar off by the Saylor and the Country-people, as well by reason of his height, reaching to the clouds, as the continual lightnings and thunders which do issue thence.

Rivers of most note, besides *Nile*, which watereth it on the East, 1 *Senaga*, or *Canaga*, which riseth out of the Lake of *Guoga*, supposed to be the same which *Ptolomy* calleth *Lacum Chelonidem*; and if so, then must this be the River *Gir*, of which he saith, that having fallen into that *Lake*, and there swallowed up, it thence produced another River, whose name he telleth not, little inferiour unto *Nilus* for the length of its course, the variety of strange Creatures which are bred therein, or the distinction which it maketh in the face of this Country: the people on the one side of it, being Black, on the other Tawnie; the soyl on the one side very barren, on the other fruitfull. In the end having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantick* by two great Out-lets. 2 *Niger*, a River better known to *Ptolomy* by name then nature; now found to have its rise from a great Lake within two degrees of the *Equinoctiall*, whence running northwards for a time, he hideth himself under ground for the space of 60 miles together: when rising up again, and making a great Lake called the Lake of *Borneo*, he bendeth his course directly Westward, and taking in many less *Channels*, he teareth the earth into many Islands, and at last falleth into the Sea. Of as long course, and the same wondrous nature, as the River *Nilus*. For from the fifteenth day of *June*, it overfloweth all the adjacent fields, the space of 40 days together, and in so many more, recollecteth his waters, into their proper *Channels*; the whole Country being indebted to these inundations, for its fertility, which otherwise could be but small, since the dryness of the soyl can afford no *exhalations*, whereby clouds may be generated, and the earth refreshed with moystures, or revived with dewes.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Ptolomy*, 1 *Nigira*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, 2 *Panagra*, 3 *Malachath*, 4 *Anygath*, 5 *Thumondacana*, 6 *Sulice*: and others to the number of 17 in all; situate all along the course of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the situation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the Ancient Towns and People being quite defaced, we must look upon it now as it standeth divided at this time into several Kingdoms, 25 at the least in all (some say many more) the chief of which are these that follow.

1. *ORA ANTEROSA*, A large tract of ground on the *Western Ocean*, extended from *Cape Blance* to the River *Carthage*, sandy and barren, but reasonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanaghi*, were accompted formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized since the *Portugals* and other *Christian* Nations began to trade there; of middle stature, complexioned between black and ash colour; great lyers, very treacherous, poor and parsimonious, and very patient in extreams both of heat, and hunger. The chief Towns, 1 *Porto di Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*) and 2 *Porto del Riscatto*, two frequented Havens, thus named occasionally by the *Portugueze*, at their first coming thither. 3 *Arquin*, a strong Fortress of the *Portugals*, situate on or neer the Promontory now called *Cape Blance*, and giving name unto some Ilands, five or six in number, lying neer unto it, called the Isles of *Arquin*, inhabited by a barbarous People, named the *Azanhays*; but of no great note. These coasts discovered first by the *Portugals*, *An.* 1452. under the conduct of Prince *Henry*, son of *John* the first, or by his incouragement and directions.

2. *GUALATA*, distant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of *Ora Anterosa* being interposed) is but a small Country, though a Kingdom, containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with some Territorie of ground and petty *Hamlets* belonging to them. Fruitfull only in *Dates*, Mill, and Pulse; but of these two last no great abundance. The Inhabitants Cole-black, hospitable towards strangers, to their power, but poor and miserable; without Laws, setled form of Government, Gentry and Judges.

3. *AGADEZ* bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Desarts* of *Libya*; the People of it generally given to grazing, their houses made of green boughs, which upon every change of Pasture they carry with them. So that we are to look for few Towns among them, but these moveable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the most part by *Merchants Strangers*, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremesen*. The Town well walled, the houses of a better building then the Country promiseth; the People civiller, and more fair conditioned then the rest of the *Negroes*, seated commodiously on a River which falleth into the *Senaga*, and by that means hath correspondence with the Ocean also. The King hereof, a Tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, payeth him 15000 Crowns of Annual tribute.

4. *CANO*, a large Province on this side of the River *Canaga*, full of woods, mountainous, and in some parts desart; but plentifull enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons, and Pomgranats, with good store of *Cotton Wool*. Well-watered besides that great River with some lesser Streams. Sufficiently populous, and stored with good Towns and Villages, the habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen; as the chief Town called *Cano*, is of wealthy Merchants. This the Seat-Royal of their King, a *Tributary* also unto him of *Tombuto*; environed with a wall, built of a Chalk stone, as most part of the houses are.

5. *CASENA*, on the East of *Cano*, but less fruitfull far, the Country over-grown with vast woods, and the soyl untractable; affording only Mill, and Barley, but of that good plenty. The People as black as any Coal, with great noses, and most prominent lips. Their houses very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly; none of them numbring more then 300 Families.

6 *SANAGA*,

6. *SANAGA*, lying on the other ſide of that River, from which thus named, extendeth to the *Atlantick* Ocean, as far as to the Promontory which by *Ptolomy* named *Arſinarium*, is now called *Cape Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Paſtures, goodly Trees, and moſt ſorts of Fruits; plentifull enough of Mill and Pulſe, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with *Lakes* and Rivers. No tame beaſts about their fields, but Goats, Cows and Oxen; of Lyons, Leopards, Wolves and Elephants, too great a plenty. The people extreme black, much given to lying, treacherous, very full of talk, exceſſively venereous, and extremely jealous. A King they have, but ſuch a one as holdeth but by *courteſie* only, having no certain Rents or *Revennes*, but what given By his Nobles.

7. *GAMBRA* or *GAMBEA*, a ſmall Kingdom on the River ſo named, but bordering in ſome places on the *Atlantick*. In thoſe parts very pleaſant, the Trees always flouriſhing, the air very hot; in other parts of the ſame nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good ſtore of Rice, which the other doth not.

8. *TOMBUTUM*, on the further ſide of the River *Sanaga*: exceeding plentiful of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Deſtitute of Salt, but what they buy of forrein Merchants at exceſſive rates; and ſmall ſtore of horſes. Well watered by a branch alſo of the River *Niger*, and many wells of purpoſe made to receive ſuch waters, as by artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The People courteous, rich, and pleaſant, ſpending whole dayes and nights in ſinging and dancing. Their food, Fleſh, Butter, Milk, and Fiſh, which they mingle together, and make it neither toothſom nor wholſom. The chief Towns, 1 *Tombuto*, which gives name to this Kingdom, ſituate about twelve miles from a branch of the *Niger*, and founded by the *Saracens* or *Arabians* in the 610. year of their *Hegira*. The houſes all of mud and thatch, except one fair Church, and the Kings palace, both of lime and ſtone. Inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great trade betwixt this and *Feſſe*. 2 *Gago*, the reſidence of the King; large, without wals, the buildings very poor and mean, except ſuch as belong unto the King or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their wares ſumptuous and precious, but exceſſive dear. The Town about 400 miles diſtant from *Tombuto*, ſituate in a fruitful Country for Rice, Fruits, and Fleſh, and well repleniſhed with freſh water. 3 *Gabra*, a large Town, but unwalled, and of no better building then the other two.

9. *MELLI*, lying on the Eaſt of *Tombutum*, is a ſpacious and fruitful Province, ſituate all along on a branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, eſpecially in Corn, Cattel, and *Cotton Wooll*: the people generally very wealthy; of greater wit, civility and induſtry then the reſt of the *Negroes*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwalled, but large, as containing in it 6000 families; furniſhed with many Temples, Prieſts and Readers of the *Mahometan* Law, which thoſe of this Country did firſt unhappily admit of. This the Seat-royal of their Kings, who are very courteous unto ſtrangers; but *Homagers* and Tributaries to the King of *Tombutum*.

10. *GHENEOA*, ſituate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombutum*, and *Melli*, but ſo that it bordereth in one place on the *Ocean* alſo; is a wealthy Country: but hath neither Town or Caſtle in it, except that wherein the King reſideth, who is a Vaſſal alſo to the king of *Tombutum*. That town the reſidence alſo of their Prieſts, Doctors, and Merchants: of which the *Prieſts* and *Doctors* are apparalled in white, but all the reſt in black, or *blew Cotton*. The people have great traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*; and though made very rich by the overflowings of *Niger*, and the wealth of the Country, they have great ſtore of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and ſelling at home, they uſe iron-mony.

11. *GUBER* lieth on the Eaſt of the former Province; of the ſame length, and naturally well fenced with lofty mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick ſet with Villages, in which dwell their Husbandmen and Shepherds, rich in their numerous herds of all ſorts of Cattel, as alſo great quantities of Rice and Pulſe: the people very induſtrious, and good Artificers. Their principal Town is called *Guber* alſo, a town of 6000 families, the uſual reſidence of their King; full of wealthy Merchants, and rich in *Manufactures*.

12. *GIALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The people whereof are of ſuch admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an horſe when he is in his full gallop, ſtand in the ſaddle when he runneth faſteſt; turn themſelves about upon his back, and ſuddenly ſit down. Of their Country I find little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bemoin* one of their kings, being overlaid with Civil wars, in the year 1489. went for aid to the king of *Portugal*, and gave great hopes of his Converſion to the *Chriſtian* faith; But being ſhameſully murdered by *Pedro de Vas* the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts fell together with him.

13. *GUINEA*, is a Sea-coaſt Country, extended from *Sierra Leona* (ſo called from the *Lyon like* roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory) in the tenth degree of *Longitude*, to the borders of *Benin* in the 30. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this name the whole Sea-coaſt of *Africk* from *Cape Blanco* and the Country of *Ora Anteroſa*, to *Angola* and *Congo* incluſively, in the *Lower Æthiopia*. But take it in the proper ſenſe, as before limited, and we ſhall find it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barley, Cotton-wooll, and a ſort of Pepper which the *Portugals* call *Pimienta del Rabo*, the Natives *Melegueta*, and we *Guinie-pepper*: of double the efficacie of the *Pepper* which comes from *India*; and therefore forbidden to be ſold by the Kings of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian* trade ſhould be diſcontinued. Well ſtored with Sheep and Poultry, and of *Dates* good plenty; All other Fruits which they want or care for, are brought thither from *Gualata*. Birds in abundance, and

Of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut doth afford a moſt excellent liquour, more pleaſant, ſtrong, and nouriſhing, then the choiceeſt Wines; which they drink of in their great Feaſts, even to drunkenneſs. The people of both Sexes very rude and barbarous, aſwel in their habit, as their manners; yet amongſt many barbarous cuſtoms they have one moſt commendable, which is the breeding of their *Maidens*: When marriageable, they place in an houſe ſevered from the reſt of their Cities like a *Cloyſter* or *Monaſtery*: where for 2 yeers ſpace they are trained up by ſome old man of beſt eſtimation. At the yeers end they are brought out well apparalled with *Muſick* and Dances; where the young men pleaſe themſelves in the choice of their wives, for whom having bargained with their *Parents*, they ſatisfie the old man for his care and pains in their Education. They keep one day of reſt weekly, but therein differ from all Nations in the world beſides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tueſday*. Diſtracted into as many Kingdoms as great *Tribes* or Families: the Kings thereof ſubordinate unto one another, as they lie more within the Land, till they end all in a ſubjection to the King of *Mandinga*. Places of moſt note, 1 *Songus* the principal of *Mandinga*, about 100 Leagues Eaſtward from the Cape of *Palmes*. 2 *Budomel*, the chief Town of the Kingdom ſo called. 3 *Vxoo*, in the Center of all the Country. 4 *Mina*, a ſtrong hold of the *Portugals*, ſituate neer the Cape, called *Cabo de Trois pentas* the three-pointed Cape; named ſometimes alſo S. *George de Mina*, by the name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the *Mines* of *Gold* which they hoped to finde there; By which, and by the Fort of *Arguin*, which they have upon Cape *Blanco* in the North part of this Land of the *Negros*, they command all the Countries which they call by the name of *Guinea*. This Town not built untill the year 1485. in the beginning of the reign of *John* the 2d. though the diſcovery of theſe coaſts had been made before *An.* 1452. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, Son of *John* the firſt. By whoſe incouragement the *Portugueze* did firſt imploy themſelves in Forreign Diſcoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas.

14. *BENIN*, lieth directly Eaſt of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province or Kingdom of it: the King whereof is ſaid to have 600 Wives, with all which twice a yeer he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuſe not the name) have moſt of them 80 Wives, ſome more; he that is pooreſt, ten, or twelve, and the more the merrier. The people thereof do cut and raſe their skin with three lines drawn to the Navel; eſteeming it neceſſary to ſalvation. They uſe all, both men and women, to go naked till they are Married; and then to be clothed only from the waſt to the knees: ſo that had our Sir *Thomas Moor* lived in theſe parts, he had in ſome meaſure had his deſire. For he among other ſtrange plots in his *Utopian* Common-wealth, telleth us, how there it is the cuſtom, for ſome reverend *old Sire* to bring in naked, the young man; and ſome *hoary* old Matron, to preſent naked, the young woman; between whom a Marriage is propounded. For, ſaith he, in buying a horſe, the chapman not only vieweth his naked carkaſe, but taketh off all his trappings and ſaddle, leſt under them ſome blame might be hidden: and why then in chooſing of a wife, ſhould we take one, of whom we ſee no more then the face (*unius Palmæ ſpatium*) and perhaps ſcarce that. The learned and ingenuous Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he diſlike of Marriages made upon ſuch uncertainties, yet he would have this diſcovery made by ſome friends of the Parties, not by them themſelves: it being as he ſaith very inconvenient, that after ſuch a plain and familiar ſight of each others perſon, there ſhould be a refuſal upon either ſide. But theſe new *Projects* I refer to your modeſt cenſures.

15. *GUANGARA* lieth on the North of *Benin*, a wealthy and well peopled Country; but their Towns and Villages very mean, except that called by the ſame name with the Country, where the King reſideth, which is ſomewhat better then the reſt, well traded, and full of rich Merchants. The King hereof of ſo great Revenues, that he keepeth ſeven thouſand Archers, and five hundred Horſe in continuall pay; but *Homager* and Tributarie to the King of *Bornum*.

16. *BORNUM*, a large and opulent Country on the Weſt of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Diſtinguiſhed equally in a manner into hills, and valleys: the hills inhabited by Neat-herds, and Sheepherds, breeding great flocks and herds of Cattel, with Mill, and many other fruits to us unknown; the *Vales* repleniſhed with many Market-Towns, and as full of Corn. The People are of no *Religion*, but live like beaſts, without *propriety* ſo much as in their wives or children: nor are they differenced by names, as in other places, but by ſome mark upon their bodies. Which though it ſeem ſtrange to us of this preſent Age, yet was it thus in part, with our *Saxon Anceſtors*. Whence have we elſe the names of *White*, *Brown*, *Black*, *Gray*, *Green*, and *Tawny*; or thoſe of *Long*, *Short*, *Low*, *Curle*, *Criſpe*, and others, but from ſuch *Originals*? not to ſay any thing of the names of Trades, and Occupations, ſo familiar with us. The name of their chief City is *Borneo*, where the King reſideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay three thouſand horſe, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is ſaid to have no other *Revenue* then what he getteth by ſtrong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, thoſe Kings muſt needs be good Warriours, and have great ſucceſſes alſo in their undertakings: it being alſo ſaid of theſe Kings of *Borneo*, that all the Furniture of their Horſes, all the Diſhes, Cups, and Platters which they eat or drink in, yea the very Chaines for his Dogs were of fineſt Gold.

17. *Gaoga*,

17. *Gaoga* lieth betwixt *Borneo*, and the Deſarts of *Nubia*: the Country almoſt ſquare, each ſide thereof extended 500 miles. The People ignorant, rude, uncivil, but ſpecially thoſe which dwell in the mountains: their houſes built moſt of boughs and leaves, which once dry, eaſily take fire; but the beſt is, they are ſoon repaired: their greateſt wealth is in their Cattel, which they keep moſt tenderly. About the year 1420. they were brought into ſubjection by a *Negro-Slave*, who having ſlain his Maſter, by the help of his wealth grew ſtrong enough to incroach on his neighbours; and ſelling ſuch Captives as he took, for horſes of *Egypt*, became King of *Gaoga*, and in fine very gracious with the *Mamaluck* Sultans. His Succeſſors have ſince ſo enlarged their Territories, that they are ſecond unto none but the Kings of *Tombutum*.

18. *NUBIA* hath on the Weſt *Gaoga*, bounded on the North with *Egypt*, extended Eaſtward unto *Nilus*, by which parted from *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire. So called from the *Nubæ*, an antient and potent people of this Tract, ſpoken of by *Ptolomie*: the great Lake, anciently called *Nubæ Palus*, being hence denominated. A diſtinct people from thoſe of the ſame name, dwelling on the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, neer unto *Sinus Avalites*, who from the ſhortnes of their ſtature paſſed in accompt for *Pigmies*; Νῦβαι Πυγμαῖοι, ſaith *Heſychius* an old Grammarian: theſe being a ſtrong and potent Nation, and well skilled in wars. Inſomuch as *Cyriacus* once a King hereof, underſtanding of ſome preſſures laid upon the *Chriſtians* of *Egypt*, is ſaid to have raiſed 100000 Horſe for their aid and ſuccor; but by the perſwaſions of the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, went back unfought with. For at that time the Country was wholly *Chriſtian*, and had been ſo from the very dayes of the Apoſtles; but are now fallen off again to their former *Idolatries*, or become *Mahometans*, for want of Miniſters to inſtruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarez*, the writer of the *Æthiopick* Hiſtory, that at his being in the Court of the *Abaſſine* Emperor, there came Ambaſſadors out of *Nubia* to intreat a ſupply of Paſtors to inſtruct their Nation, and repair *Chriſtianity* amongſt them; but were unchriſtianly rejected.

Here is a *Poiſon* in this Country of which the tenth part of a grain will diſpatch a man in a quarter of an hour, and is ſold for ten Ducats an ounce; the Cuſtoms for which unto the King is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill Commodity they have many good; that is to ſay, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; ſome ſtore of Gold, and other Mettals. The Country naturally ſandy, but well refreſhed with Lakes and Rivers, which do much inrich it; inſomuch as the people generally are very wealthy, and manage a great trade with the Merchants of *Caire* and *Egypt*. Their chief City is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; ſaid to contain no fewer then 10000 families; but their houſes built of nothing but thatch and mortar. In other parts, eſpecially towards the river *Nilus*, they have many Villages; few or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, beſides thoſe in *Guinea*, but of leſſer note; as 19. *BITO*, 20. *TEMIANO*, 21. *ZEGZEG*, 22. *ZANFARA*, 23. *GOTHAN*, 24. *MEDRA*, 25. *DAUM*. Of which there is nothing to be ſpoken, but of their poverty or riches, bleſſings or curſes common to them with the reſt of theſe Nations; and therefore I purpoſely omit them.

This Country, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Libya Interior*; inhabited beſides the *Nubæ* and *Nigritæ* ſpoken of before, by the *Nabathræ* dwelling about the hill *Arvates*, the *Aronca* neer the hill *Arangus*, the *Agargina*, *Xylinces*, and *Alchalinces*, *Æthiopick* Nations. Not much conſiderable in the buſineſs of former times; nor much diſcovered (not very perfectly at this day) till the year 973. at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a ſuperſtitious zeal to propagate their Sect, firſt opened the way into theſe Countries: the People then living like bruit beaſts, without King, Law, or any form of Government; ſcarce knowing how to ſow their Lands; clad in the skins of as very beaſts as themſelves, and challenging no propriety in wives or children. Firſt conquered by *Joſeph* King of *Morocco*, of the race of the *Almohades*; and after that by the *five Nations* of *Libya Deſerta*, who divided them into fifteen parts, every one of thoſe *five Nations* poſſeſſing three of them. One of the Kings of theſe *Libyans*, named *Soni Heli*, being ſlain by *Abuaci Iſchia* General of his forces, and the reſt terrified with that blow, *An.* 1526. the *Negroes* once again recovered their long loſt liberty, and inſtituted divers Kings of their own. Amongſt them, *Izchia* was moſt deſervedly made King of *Tombutum*, who managed his affairs ſo well, that he conquered the Kings of *Guber*, *Agadez*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfora*, *Zegzeg*, *Ghenoa*, *Gambea*, and *Ceſena*; which he made his *Tributaries*. So that his ſucceſſors are now the greateſt of thoſe five Kings, who have the ſupreme power over all the reſt. The other four, 1. the King of *Mandinga*, lording it over the Realms of *Benin*, *Gioloſi*, and the Kings of *Guinea*: 2. the King of *Borneo*, the onely one that is deſcended of the *Libyan* race, in greatneſs of command next to him of *Tombuto*; 3. the King of *Gualata*, whoſe Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein abſolute and ſupreme; and 4. the King of *Gaoga*, Paramount over all the reſt.

But becauſe the greateſt power is in the hands of the King of *Tombuto*, who poſſibly enough may in ſhort time bring all the reſt under his command, we will take a more particular view of his eſtate; affirmed to be the richeſt Prince in theſe parts of *Africk*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of gold, ſome of which weigh 1300 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him, they kneel on both their knees, and bowing their heads unto the ground, caſt ſand over their ſhoulders and upon their heads, going forwards ſtill upon their knees. His Court he keeps in a royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horſe, but with many more Foot, all

armed with Bowes and empoiſoned Arrows. To the *Jewes* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to trade in his kingdoms, and confiſcateth the goods of all ſuch of his Subjects as hold traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law, and liberal in ſtipends to the Doctors and Profeſſors of it. Of greater power then any other beyond *Atlas*, but the *Habaſſine* Emperor. And though *Amet* the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, in the year 1589. had ſome hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this kingdom, even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire ſix moneths journey by Camels beyond *Morocco*; yet it held not long: this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being ſince that time in as eminent power, as ever in any times before.

And ſo much for *TERRA NIGRITARVM.*

OF

OF
AETHIOPIA SVPERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR, is bounded on the East with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Sinus Barbaricus*; on the West with *Libya Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia*, in the Land of the *Negroes*, and part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with *Egypt*, and *Libya Marmarica*; and on the South with the Mountains of the *Moon*, by which parted from the main body of *Æthiopia Inferior*.

It was first called *Ætheria*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Plinie* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Æthiopia*, from the *Greek* words Αἴθω, signifying to *burn*, and ὄψ a *Countenance*; because the violent heats of the Sun had so scorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The additions of *Sub Ægypto*, *Superior*, and *Interior*, serve only to distinguish it from the other *Æthiopia*, which lieth further off from *Egypt*, on the outside of this. It is called also *Regnum Abyssinorum*, from the *Abaseni*, or *Abyssini*, a people of *Arabia Felix*, who passing over the *Red-Sea* (not above seven miles broad in the narrowest place) came and setled here. And in the Scripture it is stiled by the name of *Ludim*, from *Lud* the son of *Mizraim*, who first planted it, as hath been proved by many strong and concluding Arguments in our *general Preface*.

It is situate on both sides of the *Equinoctial*, extending from the South *Parallel* of seven Degrees, where it meeteth with some part of the other *Æthiopia*; to the Northern end of the Isle of *Meroe*, situate under the fift *Parallel* on the North of that Circle. And though by this Accompt it fall short of the dimensions assigned by some, who extend it from one *Tropick* unto the other; yet is it of a very great length, no less then 1500 miles; the breadth about half as much, the whole circumference amounting to 4300 miles. Yet so, that all this vast tract of ground, is not to be understood of that part of the Country which is under the command of the *Abassine* Emperour, commonly but mistakingly called *Prestor John*: but of the whole Country of *Æthiopia*, as before limited and extended; containing besides his Estate, the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*, and the Provinces of *Quiloa* and *Melindi*; which two last are now reckoned of as parts of *Æthiopia Inferior*: The Isle of *Meroe* in the North is possessed by *Mahometans*, the most bitter enemies of this King: all on the West of *Nilus*, betwixt it and the South-east of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anzichi*, an *Idolatrous* and man-eating Nation, subject to a great Prince of their own: and all the Coasts of the *Red-Sea*, as well within the *Streits* of *Babel Mandel* as without, except the Port of *Erocco* only, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no subjection unto his commands; but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Adea* before mentioned.

But taking it in the largest signification and extent hereof (according unto which we must here describe it) it comprehendeth the three Countries called anciently *Æthiopia Sub Ægypto*, *Troglodítica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera*. Of these the two last are by some reckoned but as parts of the first: though certainly the *Troglodites* were a different Nation from the *Æthiopians*. For past all doubt the *Troglodites* were Originally an *Arabian* people, so called *quia τρώγας subeunt*, from their living in *Caves* and dens: in which respect their part of this Country had the name of *Arabia Troglodítica*, in *Dioscorides*, and some others of the Ancient Writers. Of these it is affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, that they were not the Masters of any wealth, and that their speech was rather a gnashing of the teeth, then any articulate and intelligible Pronunciation. *Nullarum opum Domini sunt* Troglodítæ, *strident magis quam loquuntur*. As for their houses, they were (saith he) no better then *Caves*, and their food then *Serpents*. With whom concurreth *Plinie* also for their dwelling in Caves, and consequently for the reason of the name, saying positively, *Troglodítæ spelúncas excavant*. Called for the same reason in the holy Scripture, 2 *Chron.* 12.3. by the name of *Sukchei*; the word *Succoth* (whence that name derived) not only signifying in the *Hebrew* Tents, or Tabernacles, but Caves, and Dens; and so translated *Psal.* 10. *v.* 9. and *Job* 38. *v.* 40. As for that part hereof which was called *Regio Cinnamomifera*, taking up the Southern parts in the time of *Ptolomy*, it took that name from the abundance of *Cinnamon*, which was then growing by it, now not a tree of it to be found in all this Country; as the *Portugals*, who have looked narrowly for it, have affirmed unto us. Shipped at *Mosylon*, a noted Emporie, placed by *Ptolomy* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence transported into *Egypt* and other Countries; as is said by *Plinie*, *Portus Mosylítes quo* Cinnamomum *devehitur*: the Spice in some Authors being called *Mosulum*, by the name of the Town. ἄριστον δὲ τὸ λεγόμενον Μόσυλον, τὸ ἀπὸ Μοσύλα πόλεως Of *Cinnamon* the best is that which is called *Mosulon*, because brought from the City of that name in *Æthiopia*, saith *Simeon Sethi* in his Tract *de Facultatibus Ciborum*. As for this *Cinnamen* (I note this only by the way) it is the inner bark of a Tree, as big as an *Olive*, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three years is renewed, and stripped off again. Some think it came first from the *Sinæ* or the Country which the *Romans* called *Sinarum Regio*, the Moderns *China*; and that it was so called, *quasi Sinæ Amomum*, the *Amomum* of the *Sinæ*; *Amomum* being the name of a sweet perfume growing in *Assyria* and *Armenia*. But then it should be written *Sinamomum*,

momum and not *Cinnamomum*: yet to give the greater credit to the former opinion, they of *Ormus* call it *Bar-China*, or the wood of *China*. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Æthiopia* it self. The people of it in old times were said to have been great *Astrologers*; the first ordainers also of sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were also noted to be very good *Archers*, and to draw the longest and strongest Bowes of any Nation: the *Persian* Bow (though those the greatest of all *Asia*) being only three Cubits long; but these of *Æthiopia*, four. *Utuntur etiam Æthiopes quatuor cubitorum arcubus*, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is said also by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their *Arrows* small, but strong; for the most part poisoned; *Æthiopum geminata venenis Vulnera*, as we find in *Claudian*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to spend our time too much upon these particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two strange things of this Country: 1. That the *Air* and *ground* are so parching hot, that the people not only dare not go out of doors without shooes, but that they rost their meat also by setting it in the Sun. 2. That there is a *Lake*, whose waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding salt and unpleasing; but at all other times most sweet and delicate to the palate.

This Country being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy* laid together, is but meanly populous; the *distemperature* of the *Climate*, and the dry barrenness of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cause *Africk* is by *Strabo* compared to a *Leopards* skin, the distance of whose spots sheweth the dispersedness of the towns, and habitations in those *torrid* countries. A Country scarce in Wheat, but sufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barley, Beans, Pease, and the like; they have abundance of *Sugars*, Minerals of all sorts, and infinite herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally, there is no Country under heaven fitter for increase of Plants and Living creatures, if industry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are destitute of many necessary things, which otherwise the natural commodities of the Country would supply them with: For they have here great store of *Flax*, but make no *Cloth*; plenty of *Vines*, yet make no *wine*, except it be to serve the palaces of the King and the *Patriarch*. Abundance of *Sugar-canes*, and Mines of *Iron*; but know not how to make use of either unto any advantage. Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig *Channels* or trenches to derive their waters to the rest of the land which want them: those Rivers almost choaked with *Fish*, their Woods crammed with *Venison*, which they trouble not themselves to catch.

By this we may conjecture somwhat of the people also; Lazie and given unto their ease, ill-clothed, and not much better housed; extremely inclined to *Barbarism*, destitute of all learning, not to be credited unless they swear by the life of their Emperours; they hate a *Smith* equally with the Devil: their colour is generally olive-tawny, excepting only their King himself, who is always of a white complexion, (a wonderful prerogative, if true.) This blackness of their bodies, by the Poet attributed to the burning of the world by *Phaeton*.

Sanguine tum credunt, in corpora summa vocato,
Æthiopum populos nigrum traxisse colorem.

Which may be thus *Englished:*

Their blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part,
The Æthiopians grew so black and swart.

But the true cause hereof, whatsoever it be, may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Christian* faith was first made known in this Country by the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip* the *Evangelist*, and one of the *Seven*; more generally imbraced by the pains and preaching of S. *Matthew* the Apostle hereof; but not totally propagated over all this Empire till the reign of *Abraham*, An. 470. who in his life entituled himself the Defender and Propagator of the *Religion* of *CHRIST*, and after his death was generally honoured as a *Saint*. Suppressed in part by the coming in of the *Abasenes* and other *Arabians*, it was again revived and more universally received then in former times, in the reign of *David* king of the *Axumite Æthiopians:* who in a war against *Dunmus* king of the *Homerites* in *Arabia Felix*, solemnly vowed to the God of the *Christians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the victory: And so accordingly he did, sending his Ambassadors to the Emperor *Justinian* for some Bishops and other learned men to instruct his people. The particulars of those Opinions wherewith they have since corrupted the purity of the true Religion, I find thus registred. 1. They use to *circumcise* their Children, both males and females. 2. They baptize the males 40, and the females 80 dayes after their *circumcision*. 3. After the receit of the Sacrament, they are not to spit till Sun-set. 4. They profess but *one nature*, and one will in *CHRIST*. 5. They accept only the three first General Councels. 6. Their *Priests* live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg. 7. They *baptize* themselves every *Epiphany*-day in Lakes and ponds, because that day they suppose *Christ* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan*. 8. They eat not of those Beasts which in the old Law are reckoned for *unclean*. 9. They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewish Sabbath* equally solemn with the *Lords Day*. 10. They administer the *Eucharist* to Infants presently after Baptism. 11. They teach, that the Reasonable soul of man is derived from their parents by *Seminal propagation*. 12. That Infants *dying unbaptized*, are sanctified in the womb by vertue of the *Eucharist* received by the Mother after her *Conception*. And finally, they shew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they say, by the *Apostles* assembled

bled at *Hieruſalem* for that purpoſe; the Contents whereof they obſerve moſt ſolemnly. Theſe are the moſt material points in which they differ from the Tendries of the *Catholique* Church; And there are other points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, as *viz.* 1. Adminiſtring in *both kinds*; 2. Without either *Elevation* or *Reſervation*; 3. Rejecting maſſie Images, and 4. *Extreme Unction*; 5. Allowing the firſt marriages to their Prieſts and Biſhops; and 6. in renouncing all relation to the Pope of *Rome*, who to the buſineſs of theſe Churches is a very ſtranger, and ſo hath been from the very firſt foundation of them. For it appeares by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabick*, and tranſlated into *Latine* by *Piſanus*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna*, as they call him) of theſe *Abaſſine* Churches, was in thoſe times ſubordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacie by the Fathers which were there aſſembled; and conſtantly ever ſince approved and practiſed by theſe Churches; in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembred before their own. To this Patriarch, by an antient priviledge belongeth the ſeventh place in the *Seſſions* of all *General Councils*; the Archbiſhop of *Seleucia* (or *Babylon*) only interpoſing betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*. Elected by the *Abaſtine* Monks of St. *Antonies* Order remaining in *Hieruſalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, (of which *Order*, and of whoſe juriſdiction he muſt alwayes be) he is ſent into this Country to take his charge: where in ſome points of *Civil* nature he hath equal priviledge with the Emperour himſelf; and in *Spiritual*, hath the ſole power of excommunicating an obſtinate Sinner. All other *Eccleſiaſtical* Dignities, from the Biſhoprick to the loweſt Benefice, are conferred by the Emperour onely.

The principal Mountains of it in the former times, had the names of 1 *Prionotus*, 2 *Iſius*, 3 *Monodactylus*, 4 *Gaurus*, and 5 *Mons Satyrorum*; all of them in that part which was called *Trogloditica*; 6 *Garbala*, 7 *Elephas*, and 8 *Maſte* in the Iſle of *Meroe*: the reſt of the Country flat and level, or the hils not eminent. Rivers of moſt note, 1 *Aſtapus* (now *Abanni*) ariſing out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena*. 2 *Aſtaboras*, now *Tacaſſi*; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3 *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whoſe ſpring unprofitably ſought for in the elder times, is now ſaid to be out of the Lake *Zembre* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Æquator*: whence paſſing through ſpacious *Deſarts*, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms, he at laſt entreth into this. Here in ſome places ſtrugling amongſt broken Rocks, and leſs free paſſages, he falleth with ſuch a wonderful noiſe into the Vallies beneath, that a Colony planted by the *Perſians* neer one of theſe *Cataracts*, (ſo they call thoſe huge fals of his) were ſo dulled and deafned with the noiſe, that they were fain to abandon their habitations. Nor doth it only dull and deafen the neighbouring people, but the very hils do ſeem to tremble at the noiſe it maketh. Of which thus the Poet,

Cuncta tremunt undis, & multo murmure montis,
Spumeus invictis albeſcit fluctibus amnis.
Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words;
The noiſe the Mountains ſhakes, who roar for ſpite
To ſee th' unvanquiſh'd Waves cloth'd all in white.

Of theſe *Cataracts* there are two moſt noted: the one called *Catarractes Major*, in the borders of this Country towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Phila* and *Pſelcis*, Æthiopian cities; the other called *Catarractes Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syens*, the laſt City of that Country towards this. So turbulent is this River amongſt the Hils. And yet as terrible as theſe fals are ſuppoſed to be, one may divers times ſee the Country people in a little Boat not able to contain above two perſons, to venture down them without fear; appearing after they have been long toſſed in the waters a great diſtance off, as if they had been ſhot out of an *Engine*. Nor is he of ſuch quiet paſſage in the open Countries, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels to receive his waters; which if not curbed and leſned by ſuch wayes as theſe, might by ſome ſudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in reſpect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for long time to the *Abaſſine* Emperors an annual tribute. Which when the *Great Turk*, ſuppoſing it a needleſs charge, had once denied; this people, by the command of their Emperor, did open their Sluces, and break down the Dams; whereby the water fell ſo violently and ſo faſt into *Egypt*, that the *Turk* was not only glad to continue the tribute, but to give them great ſums of mony to make up their works. But others ſay, that this acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptian* Kings, not ſo much for keeping up the waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Habaſſine* Emperors ſhould divert the Stream, and ſo deprive that Country of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are alſo ſaid to be ſome *Lakes* of that poiſonous nature, that whoſoever drinketh of them, doth either immediately fall mad, or elſe is troubled for long time with continual *drowſineſs*. Of which thus *Ovid*,

Æthopeſque Lacus, quos ſi quis faucibus hauſit,
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate ſoporem.
Which may be paraphraſed in theſe words:
Who doth not know the Æthiopian Lake?
Of which whoever drinks, his thirſt to ſlake,
Either grows mad, *or doth his ſoul oppreſs*
With an unheard of heavy drowſineſs.

To

To look upon the State as it ſtood in the former times, we finde in it beſides the *Lakes* and Rivers before mentioned, three capacious Bayes, that is to ſay, *Sinus Adulicus*, 2 *Sinus Avalites*, and 3 *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two laſt neighboured by the now Countries of *Aden* and *Quiloa*. Havens of note, and Rodes for ſhipping, there were five in all, *viz.* 1 *Bathus*, or the deep Haven, 2 *Dioſcorum Portus*, or the Haven of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, 3 *Theon Soterum*, or the Haven of the *Saviour-Gods*, 4 *Portus Evangeliorum*, *Goſpel Port*, or the Port of good News. And 5 *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the ſame name neer adjoyning to it. For other Promontories, which in ſo long a tract of Sea muſt needs be many; the principal were, 1 *Baſium*, 2 *Mnemium*, 3 *Dimetris*, 4 *Aſpis*, 5 *Ara Amoris*, 6 *Colobon*, 7 the Promontory of *Saturn*, 8 *Moſylon*, with a noted *Empory* of the ſame name, 9 *Aromata*, neer another well frequented *Empory* of the ſame name alſo; and 10 that of *Noti cornu*. Then for the Towns of greateſt Trading, beſides thoſe laſt mentioned, we have, 1 *Avalites*, 2 *Malao*, 3 *Mundi*, 4 *Cube*, and 5 *Acane*, in the Bay of *Avalites*, 6 *Opone* in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7 *Eſſina*, on the South of the *Æquinoctial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongſt many others, the names of 1 *Epitherias*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ptolemais Ferarum*, 2 *Adulis*, and 3 *Avalites*, giving names unto their ſeveral Bays, 4 *Rapta*, the *Metropolis* of that part of this Country which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the ſhores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Raptus*, upon which it is ſituate; ſo they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Raptum*. 5 *Meroe*, the chief City of the Iſle ſo called. 6 *Sabath* in the Bay of *Adulis*, which poſſibly might be ſome Colony of the *Sabeans* in *Arabia Felix*. 7 *Coloe*, by *Plinie* called *Tolen*, not far from the great *Luke* ſo named, 8 *Cambuſis* by *Ptolomie* called *Cambyſi Ærarium*, from ſome treaſures laid up here by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian*, in his invaſion of this Country. 9 *Auxumi* the chief City of the *Auxumites*, a moſt potent people of theſe parts; and the Seat Royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings. 10 *Napata*, as *Ptolomy*; but by moſt others called *Tanape*, of old the reſidence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, ſacked and ruined by *Petronius*, preſident of *Egypt*. For when *Candace* (the Predeceſſour, I believe, of her whoſe *Eunuch* was baptized by *Philip*) had ranſacked and waſted *Egypt* with fire and ſword; *Petronius*, Lieutenant to *Auguſtus*, drave them home, harried the whole Country, put this City to the ſpoyle; and to prevent the like inrodes, fortified the Frontires of his Province. *Philæ*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, garriſoned by the *Romans* till the time of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned. Of ſome of theſe, and others not here mentioned, we may have opportunity to ſpeak more hereafter, in the ſurvey of ſome of theſe particular Provinces, into which this Country ſtands divided at this preſent time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are ſaid to make up 70 Kingdoms, moſt of them ſubject to the *Abaſſine* Emperor, the principal of which are, 1 *Guagere*, 2 *Tigremaon*, 3 *Angote*, 4 *Amgara*, 5 *Damut*, 6 *Goijami*, 7 *Bagamedrum*, 8 *Barnagaſſum*, 8 *Adel*, 9 *Adea*, 10 *Dancali*, 11 *Dobas*, 12 *Fatigar*, 13 *Xoa*, 14 *Barus*. Concerning which I muſt premiſe, that I finde the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times diſagreeing, ſometimes falſe: So that I muſt profeſs my ſelf to be leſs ſatisfied in the deſcription of this Country then in any of the reſt which have gone before. Such as it is, I here preſent it to the Reader.

1. *GUAGERE.*

GUAGERE containeth only the Iſland of *Meroe*, an Iland of much note and fame amongſt the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Aſtaborus*, the two chief Rivers of this Country. The length hereof 350 miles, the breadth 125. abundantly plentifull of Gold, Silver, Braſs, Iron, Ivory, Precious ſtones, and an excellent kinde of *Mineral* Salt. Well ſtored with moſt ſorts of beaſts both tame and wilde; and of the laſt ſort with Lyons, Leopards, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants, and Dragons.

The People are of the ſame nature and complexion with the reſt; *Mahometans* by Religion, and the profeſſed Enemies of the *Abaſſine* Emperour, againſt whom they do not only defend themſelves by the advantages and benefit of their ſituation; but confederating with the *Turks* and *Arabians*, fall many times with great forces into his Dominions. It is ſaid by *Plinie* of the Inhabitants of this Iland, that twice a year, *viz.* When the Sun is in the 16th. degree of *Taurus*, and the 14th. of *Leo*, they have the Sun ſo perpendicular above their heads, that he caſts no ſhadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, then their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to 120 years of Age, and therefore called *Macrobii* by the old *Greek* Writers. The women ſaid to be of ſuch great breſts in the former times, that they did ſuckle their children over their ſhoulders (as ſome women are now ſaid to do neer the *Cape* of *good Hope*) the dug being bigger then the childe. Of which thus *Juvenal*.

In Meroe *craſſo, majorem Infante mamillam.*

In Meroe *the Mothers pap*
Is bigger then the childe in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof, 1 *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Iland, but took the ſame from

from *Meroe*, a ſiſter of *Cambyſes* King of *Perſia*, or as *Euſebius* ſaith, from *Merida*, the mother of *Chenephris*, a King of *Egypt*. *Joſephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Saba*; on authority of whoſe miſtake it hath been made the *Regal* City of that Queen of *Sheba* (the Queen of *Egypt* and *Æthiopia* as *Joſeph* calleth her) who came to *Solomon*. An opinion ſo received amongſt theſe Ilanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have reſtored the name of *Saba* to this City, as of greater eminence. The City ſaid by ſome to contain about 5000 houſes, great and ſumptuous, the ſtreets thereof to be large and ſpacious with Galleries on each ſide before the doors of their houſes, where men walk ſafe from all extremities of heat or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (beſides others of inferiour note) built of *Alabaſter* and *Jaſper*, wrought with *Antique* works: the doors belonging to thoſe Gates, of *Cedar*, curiouſly wrought; the wayes which lead unto them, for the ſpace of two Leagues beſet with Palms, Orange-trees, Cedars, Cypreſſes, and others no leſs uſefull both for ſhade and fruit. In the place where the four ſtreets going from theſe Gates, do croſs each other, a goodly Arch erected upon ſtately Pillars, fairly wrought and gilded; with the *Statue* of S. *Matthew*, made of braſs, but gilded, on the top thereof. Such it is ſaid to be by ſome. Others think there is no ſuch City; it may not be ſo beautiful, as thoſe ſome have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times, 2 *Sacolche*, 3 *Dararum Vicus*, 4 *Eſer*; of which we have little but the names.

This Iland was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being choſen for their King who excelled the reſt in ſtrength, perſon, or in ſtock of Cattel; but thoſe Kings ſo ſubject to their *Prieſts*, that by a Meſſenger or *Herald* they were ſentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the throne; And thus it ſtood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his armed Souldiers, ſlew all theſe *Prieſts*; and freed himſelf and his Succeſſours from ſo great a *ſlavery*. Afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; honoured for the moſt part with the Seat of thoſe Kings, and memorable in thoſe times for the *Table* of the *Sun*; which was a place neer the City of *Meroe*, always furniſhed with variety of roſted meats, ſet there by night at the charge and command of the King (much taken as it ſeemeth with this coſtly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would: called therefore the Table of the Sun, becauſe aſcribed unto his bounty by the ignorant People. In the declining of this Kingdom, occaſioned by the inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Iland was ſeized on by that People, and hath been ever ſince kept by them, together with the reſt of the Country lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, in which are contained as ſome write, the Kingdom of *Damote*, *Sua*, and *Jaſculum*, antiently belonging to this Empire, now diſmembred from it: not much obſervable but for being a thorowfare to great troops of *Pilgrims*, which every *Lent* paſs by them out of the *Abaſſine* Dominions to the *Sepulchre*, and other like places in and neer *Jeruſalem*.

2. *TIGREMAON.*

TIGREMAON, hath on the north *Guagere*, and the River *Marabo*, by which laſt parted from *Barnagaſſo*; on the South the Realm of *Angote*; on the Weſt, *Nilus*. On the Eaſt it is ſaid to extend to the *Red-Sea*, but the Sea parts thereof poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, and the adjoyning Coaſts by the *Moors* and *Arabians*; the inland parts promiſcuouſly inhabited, eſpecially more towards the Sea, by *Chriſtians* and *Ethnicks*. Divided into many inferiour Regions, the principal whereof 1. *Sabain*, 2 *Torrates*, 3 *Balgada*, ſo called perhaps from the chief Towns of them, and 4 *Tigrai*, the moſt large and ample of all theſe ſubordinate Provinces, as containing in it 17 great tracts under ſo many Lieutenants which rule all affairs both of Peace and War. The People black of colour, deformed of ſhape, in condition miſerable, of conditions wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet ſo that with a little digging they finde water in them. Their chief City *Caxumo*, or *Caſſumo*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolomie* calleth *Auxume*, *Stephanus Axomites*, *Procopius Auzomide*: by all of them eſteemed the *Metropolitan* City of *Ethiopia*, and the Seat Royal of their Kings. In witneſs whereof are many ancient buildings yet remaining, ſome Pillars which reſemble the *Ægyptian Obelisks*, admirable for their height and workmanſhip: 60 foot high, and full of *Characters* or Letters ingraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian Auxumites*, the moſt potent Nation of this Countrey, had their name from hence: more probably conceived to be the Regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) then any other of the Kingdom; and ſtill affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperours. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Beimalechi*, but I know not in what part to finde it: ſome in a Royal Palace neer that Lake of *Zembre*, built in the year 1570, by ſome *European Architects* ſent hither by *Francis* Duke of *Florence*: and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all, but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a *Royall Progreſs* from one place to another, which *wandring Court*, or *moving City*, is ſaid to be no leſs then ten miles in compaſs, when the *Pavilions* which belong to it are diſpoſed of into rank and order.

This Kingdom is governed by a Prince of its own, but one who is an *Homager* and Tributary to the *Abaſſine* Emperour, to whom he payeth yeerly 200 horſes of the beſt *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of ſilkes, great ſtore of *Cotton-Wool*, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion, I have nowhere met with.

3. ANGOTE.

ANGOTE is bounded on the North with *Tigremon*, on the West with *Nilus*, on the South with the Kingdom of *Amara*, on the East with *Dancali* and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of hils and vallies, both extremely fertile, productive of the choicest fruits, and great herds of Cattel. The people eat but once in 24 houres, and for the most part make that meal in the night; their dyet raw Venison, or smoaked Beef: the mony most in use amongst them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which custom of using Salt, pepper, and the like instead of mony, was in former times amongst most people the onely bartery or way of exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glaucus* golden Armour was valued at an hundred Kine, and *Diomedes* Armour at ten only. Afterward in Justice *commutative*, it was deemed convenient to have some common Judge, or valuation of the equality or inequality of goods: the invention of which the *Jews* attribute to *Cain*, the *Grecians* to *Hermodice* the wife of *Midas*, the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nummus*, or νόμισμα from νόμος, because it was ordained by law: *Pecunia*, either because in elder times the chief of their wealth consisted in cattel, as now among the *Irish*; or from a Cow (*Pecus*) which was stamped on it: and *Moneta*, *à monendo*, as *Suidas* saith; because when the *Romans* stood in need of money, *Juno monebat*, *Juno* admonished them that they should use justice, and there should be no want of money. To this Goddesse, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worshipped it in the figure of a Woman holding a pair of Scales in one hand, and a *Cornucopia* in the other: by the Poet called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfitly, the greatness of her power considered.

But to return again to *Angote*: I find not much spoken of the Country in the way of story; nor meet I with the names of any of their Towns or Cities; unless that 1 *Angote* it self, as also 2 *Abugana*, 3 *Giannamora*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may possibly be so called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4. AMARA.

AMARA hath on the North *Angote*, on the South *Damut*, on the West it stretcheth towards the *Nile*, and on the East bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Country very plain and champaign, little swelled with hils, sufficiently fruitful, and well stored with all sorts of Cattel. The chief City of it called *Amara* by the name of the Province, situate in the midst of the Empire; and though not much distant from the *Æquator*, if not plainly under it, yet blessed with such a temperate air, such a fruitful soyl, such ravishing pleasures of all sorts, that some have taken (but mistaken) it for the place of *Paradise*: So strangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and Humane industry have joyned their helps together to enrich and beautifie it.

But that which is the greatest Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, situate in a large and delightful Plain: the bottom of the Hill in circuit 90 miles, and a dayes journey high; the Rock so smooth and even (but lesser and lesser towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly polished: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the light; so easie of ascent, that one may ride up with great pleasure, and in the midst of the Ascent a spacious Hall, as it were to rest in: the top it self is a large plain 20 leagues in circuit, compassed with an high wall, to the end that neither man nor beast fall down upon any chance; beautified towards the South with a rising hill, out of which issueth a sweet Spring, which watering the several palaces and gardens of it, uniteth it self into a Lake for the use of Cattel: the Plain enriched with all sorts both of fruit and grain; adorned with two magnificent *Monasteries*, in each of which are founded 1500 Knights of the Order of S. *Anthony*, a Religious *Militia*; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger sons of the *Emperour* are continually inclosed, to avoid sedition: they enjoy there whatsoever is fit for delight or *Princely education*; and from hence some one of them, who is most hopeful, or best liked, is again brought out, if the Emperor die sonless, to be made successor. This mountain hath but one ascent up, as before was said, which is impregnably fortified; and was destinate to this use *Anno* 470, or thereabouts, by the Emperor *Abraham Philip*, advised hereunto, as he gave out, by an heavenly vision. In one of these Palaces is a famous *Library*, wherein are said to be many books, which with us are either in part or totally lost; as the Oracles of *Enoch*, with the mysteries which escaped the flood, being by him engraven on pillars; the whole works of *Livy*, and others. Which being heretofore translated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabick* tongue (when having plundered all the most famous *Libraries* of the East and West, they burnt the *Originals*, out of a plot to make that language as renowned and as generally studied as the *Greek* or *Latine*) are said by some good fortune to be here preserved.

5. DAMUT.

DAMUT hath on the North *Amara*, on the West *Bagamedrum*, on the South *Goiamy*, and on the East the great Lake of *Barcena*, and some part of *Zanguebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior*. The Country plentifully furnished with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and Living creatures of all sorts. For none more famed then for their *Slaves*, sold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, *India*; and much esteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in war, dexterity

dexterity in buſineſs, but ſpecially for their fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this cauſe placed in Offices of great truſt and power by many of the *Eaſtern* Princes, who uſing a tyrannical Form of Government, and not daring to truſt the ſword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto places of Court or Counſell, do for the moſt part arm theſe *Slaves*, and truſt them alſo with the conduct of their chief Affairs. A truſt, in which they never falſified or failed in a true diſcharge, but when preſuming of their power, and thoſe Advantages which ſo great a truſt and power had preſented to them, they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Bengala*, and kept it many yeers in a ſucceſſion of the *Abaſſine Slaves*, wherewith they ſtill made up their numbers, till outed not long ſince by the *Great Mongal*.

The Oxen of this Country are ſaid to be neer as great as Elephants, their horns ſo large that they ſerve as *Tankards* to carry, and as *Barrels* to keep either wine or water. Here is alſo ſaid to be a kinde of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wilde, faſhioned like an horſe, but no bigger then an Aſs; but we muſt think theſe *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinocerots*, or elſe we ſhall very much miſtake the truth of the matter. And for the People (to go them both over once again) they are for the moſt part *Gentiles*; ſome *Chriſtians* intermixt amongſt them, who have ſundry Monaſteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the Principality of *Couche*, ſaid to have more Gold in it then all *Peru*; a *Mountain all of Gold*, if the *Friers* ſay true. The People *Gentiles*, but the Prince not long ſince gained to the *Chriſtian* Faith, into which he was baptized by the *Abbot* or chief Governour of the *Monaſteries* on the hill *Amara*; *Gradeus* the Emperour being his *Godfather*, by whom named *Andrew*. And here they have an hill of great height, and very difficult aſcent, from the top whereof they uſe to caſt headlong ſuch of the Nobility, as by the Emperours ſentence are condemned to die. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom or this Principality, I am not able to reſolve, unleſs, 1 *Damut*, and 2 *Couche* may be two, and the two moſt eminent, as giving name to thoſe eſtates.

6. GOIAMY.

GOIAMY, hath on the North *Damut*, on the Weſt *Bagamedrum*, on the South and Eaſt ſome Provinces of the other *Æthiopia*. The Country in the North parts full of *Deſarts* and Rockie Mountains, in the reſidue plentifully furniſhed with all things neceſſary. Great ſtore of Gold they finde, but *droſſie*; the people not knowing how to refine and purifie it; or loth here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way; for fear of drawing in the *Turks* and *Arabians* to partake of the booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers or rather *Torrents*, which come tumbling down the hills with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall, making a noiſe not much inferiour to a clap of thunder: and amongſt other *Lakes*, two of ſpecial note, which for their greatneſs ſeem to be Seas; in which, as ſome report, *Mermaids*, and *Tritons* or Men-fiſhes uſe to ſhew themſelves; and out of which it is thought by others that the Fountains of *Nilus* do ariſe; and both true alike. But paſt all doubt the *Abaſſines* themſelves are of this opinion; and therefore in the ſtile of the *Negaz* (ſo they call their Emperour) he is termed King of *Goiamy*, with this addition, *In which are found the Fountains of Nilus*. Deceived alike in their opinion touching this particular, the Springs or Fountains of that River being further South: though poſſibly having loſt himſelf in theſe vaſt *Lakes*, and iſſuing hence into a more contracted Channell, he may be ſaid to have a ſecond birth from hence, though not the firſt. And theſe I take to be the *Lakes*, which were diſcovered by the *Romans* in the time of *Nero*. Who following the deſign of ſome other great *Potentates*, *Seſoſtris*, *Cambyſes*, *Alexander* and *Philadelphus*, in diſcovering the true *Original* of this famous River, imployed two *Centurions* in that ſervice; who aided in it by the then King of the *Æthiopians*, are ſaid to have come at laſt unto certain great *Mariſhes* (moſt probably the lower and ſedgie parts of theſe *Lakes* now mentioned) of whoſe extent the Inhabitants themſelves were ignorant; nor poſſible to be diſcovered any further, the weeds having ſo overgrown the water, that there was no further paſſage to be made by boat, and leſs by wading.

Betwixt this Country and *Damut*, which we laſt paſſed thorow, is ſaid to be a Province of *Amazons*, warlike and fierce, and very expert at the *Bow*; whoſe Queen knoweth no man, and by the reſt honoured as a Goddeſs. Theſe, they ſay, were firſt inſtituted by the Queen of *Saba*: as true, as that which ſome have added of the *Phœnix* viſible in this Country, of *Griffons*, and of *Fowls* ſo big that they make a ſhadow like a Cloud. Which ſtrange reports I have here added, to ſupply the defect of Towns and Cities of which I meet not with ſo much as the naked names; as undiſcovered places in our *Maps* and *Charts*, are filled up with *Monſters*.

7. BAGAMEDRUM.

BAGAMEDRUM, or SAGAMEDRUM (for I finde both names) lieth on the Weſt of *Goiamy*, betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nilus*: and keeping all along the courſe of that River, as far as *Gnagere* or *Meroe*, encountreth with the Southern point of *Barnagaſſo*. Some do extend it alſo beyond that Iland, but making the whole length thereof but 600 miles,

do confute themſelves. The greateſt Province of this Empire it may probably be, *cæteris hujus Æthiopiæ amplißimum*, as they ſay it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it muſt be 1500 miles, not 600 only.

The Country plentifull in Mines of the pureſt *Silver*, which they cannot draw thence but by fire, which makes it run like long rods or Ropes of Mettall. And yet as large, and wealthy as they ſay it is, I am more to ſeek for Towns and rich Cities in it, then in the *Deſarts* of *Libya*, or the ſands of *Arabia*. Merchants and Travellers for the moſt part go no further then the Sea coaſts of the Country, of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the Inlands; and of the Natives ſuch as have travelled abroad into other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant men, know little more of their own Empire, then the place they lived in. Or probably their beſt Cities not containing above 2000 houſes, few of them ſo many, and thoſe patched up of thatch, dirt, and hurdles (unleſs ſome of the Nobility or wealtheir Merchants are provided better) they may have no great reaſon to ſpeak much of them; or to acquaint us with the names of ſuch ſorry places, as are indeed not worth the naming. VVhich I conceive to be the true condition of moſt or all the Inland Towns in this large Eſtate.

8. *BARNAGASSO.*

BARNAGNES or *BARNAGASSUM*, hath on the Weſt *Guagere*, or the Iſle of *Meroe*; on the Southweſt as ſome ſay, a point of *Bagamedrum*; on the South *Dangali*, and *Adel*; on the Eaſt, the *Red Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it ſtretcheth towards *Egypt*, the Kingdoms of *Jaſculum* and *Sua*, poſſeſſed by the *Mahometans*, being interpoſed.

The Country very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well ſtored with pleaſant Riverets, beſides the neighbourhood of the *Red Sea* on the one ſide, *Nile* and *Abanhi* on the other. Remarkable for a *Mountain* in the Weſtern part of it, which being ſpacious in the beginning groweth ſtrait by little and little, and then enlargeth it ſelf again to a League in circuit. On the top thereof a *Royal Palace*, a Church, a Monaſtery, and two very large Ciſterns, with a piece of ground able to entertain and keep 500 men. To be aſcended one way only, and that but to a certain mark; to which being come, they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets to the top of all; not to be took by force, by reaſon of the impoſſibility of aſcent; nor by long ſiege, or any extremity of Family, in regard it yields proviſion enough to maintain it ſelf. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province againſt *Turks* and *Moors*.

It containeth beſides *Barnagaſſo* it ſelf, the two Provinces of *Canſila*, and *Daſila*; though rather ſubject to the Governour or Vice-Roy of it, then parts and members of the ſame. Towns of moſt moment in the whole, 1 *Beroa*, or *Barua*, conceived by ſome to be the *Colony* of *Ptolomy*, the Reſidence of the *Vice Roy*, ſituate on a pleaſant and fiſh full River. 2 *Zameta*, honoured ſometimes alſo with the *Vice-Royes* preſence; but rather as a retiring place in times of leiſure, then a Town of ſtrength. 3 *Suachen* ſituate in an Iland of the *Red Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richeſt Cities of the Eaſtern parts, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, ſecured by nature from all ſtorms, or ſmooth tides, ſure Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great ſhips of burden. Situate in a little Iland, the whole circumference whereof it taketh up, inſomuch that veſſels of all ſorts, both within the Haven and without, do uſually unlade themſelves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the Ship beaks ſerve for bridges. A wealthy and well traded Town both by Sea and Land, to which from the more in-land parts of the *Abaſſine* Empire the Mountains open a ſafe paſſage for the carriage and re carriage of their commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long ſince with all the reſt of the Country lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the ſeat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*, whom in imitation of the *Romans*, they call the *Beglerbeg* of *Abaſſia*; as if by the poſſeſſion of this ſmall part of that Empire, they would entitle the *Grand Signeur* unto all the reſt. The Town conceived by ſome to be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Oſtium Sabaſticum*, or rather *Subaiticum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Ptolomais Ferarum*, or the *Epitherias*, as *Plinie* calleth it of the Ancient Writers. And ſome again will have it to be the *Succhæ* of *Plinie*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodites* (who are called *Succhei* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whoſe part of the Country it is ſeated, and to which name it hath ſome reſemblance. 4 *Biſam*, not far from *Erocco*, remarkable for a Monaſtery ſituate on the top of an high Rock environed with dreadful Precipices upon every ſide; in which live 3000 *Monks*, eating by three and three together, in a common *Refectorie*: this being the chief of ſix others in this Province of *Barnagaſſo*, the fartheſt not above 30 miles diſtant. For maintainance of whom, and a great number of poor Children which they daily feed, beſides the Tythes of all the Mountain in which it ſtandeth (fruitful and rich, and at leaſt 30 miles in compaſs) they have many good Farms at the foot of the ſaid Mountain, and an hundred ſmall Villages appertaining to them, out of which they raiſe yeerly great proviſion of Corn, and above 2000. head of *Cattell*; their Revenues out of *Tigremaon* being reckoned in. A *Revenue* able to maintain them and their Hoſpitality in regard their *Novices* or young *Monks* are ſent abroad to earn their living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the husbandrie of the houſe: the elder onely being found at the charge of the Monaſtery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5 *Erocco* another noted Port on the *Red Sea* or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a paſſage openeth thorow the *Streits* of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suachen*; conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolomy*,

lony, the *Adeliten* of *Pliny*: Now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, or at their command. 6 *Santar*, 7 *Giabel*, 8 *Lacsari*, and 9 *Abarach*; theſe four laſt in the Province of *Dafila*.

This Country at the preſent, and for long time paſt, is ſubject both to the Great *Negus*, or the *Preſtegian* of *Æthiopia*, and the *Grand-Signeur* of the *Turks*; naturally ſubject to the one, and *tributary* to the other. Governed by a King of their own, whom they call *Barnagaſſus*, by the name of his Province, a Vaſſal and *Homager* to the *Æthiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly tribute of 150 of the beſt breed of Horſes, beſides ſome quantities of Silk, and ſome other commodities: but ſo ill neighboured by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay alſo to the *Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa* reſident at *Suachen*, 1000 Ounces of Gold yearly for a *compoſition* For the *Turks* having by the conqueſt of *Egypt* made themſelves maſters of thoſe Countries towards *Æthiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Mamaluck* Sultans; within ſhort time (*viz.* An. 1558.) poſſeſſed themſelves alſo of the town of *Suachen* and the parts adjoyning; made it the reſidence of one of their *Beglerbegs* or *Baſſa's*, and gave him the title of *Beglerbeg* of *Abaſſia*, as before was ſaid: Forgot by the induſtrious Collector of the *Turkiſh Hiſtory*, in his enumeration of the *Beglerbegs* or *Baſſas* of *Africk*. To this they added not long after all the reſt of the Sea-coaſts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after ſome ſhort breathing made a further inrode; in which they did ſo waſte the Country, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagaſſian* (not being aided by the *Negus*) to this *Compoſition*.

9. DANGALI, & 10. DOBAS.

SOuth and South eaſt of *Barnagaſſo*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI* and *DOBAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahometans* or *Arabian Moors*; both in continual enmity with the *Abaſſine* Emperors; and both of like nature in regard of the ſoil and people.

DANGALI hath on the North *Barnagaſſo*, on the South ſome part of the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the Eaſt the *Red-Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*, on the Weſt *Dobas* before mentioned. It taketh up ſome part of the *Arabick Bay* within the Streits of *Babel-Mandel*; and without thoſe Streits, the greateſt part of that ſpacious Bay which anciently was called *Sinus Avaliticus*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Moſylon*, (neighboured by a noted *Emporie* of the ſame) now the Cape of *Docano*; neer unto which the Sea makes a little *Gulf*, and ſuddenly ſtreitneth it ſelf again, ſo as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve leagues broad; And in this *Channel* are five or ſix Ilands which hinder the paſſage; ſo as Sailers muſt have good experience, to avoid the Rocks which lie neer thoſe Ilands.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Bebul*, or *Babel*, which gives name to the Streits of *Babel Mandel*; a narrow *Frith*, opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* Ocean. 2 *Vella*, a well-frequented Port, conceived to be the ſame which *Strabo* calleth *Antiphila*; not found by that name in *Ptolomy*. 3 *Zagnani*, and 4 *Zama*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Lacca*. 5 *Docano*, neer the Cape ſo called, and therefore probably the *Moſylon* of the antient Writers. 6 *Dangali*, not far from the Sea-ſide, which gives name to the Kingdom. Nothing elſe memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great *Lakes*, wherein live *Crocodiles*, as in *Nilus*.

On the South-weſt of *Dangali* lieth the Realm of *DOBAS*, extended on the Weſt to the borders of *Angote*. The Country large, containing twelve, or as ſome ſay, 24 ſeveral *Prefectures*: Of ſo good Paſturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater ſize then in other places, and thoſe for number not eaſily matched in all this Empire. The people ſuch profeſſed Enemies of the *Chriſtian* faith, that they ſuffer not any man to marry, till he hath killed twelve *Chriſtians*. Some reckon them for *Tributaries* to the *Prete*, or *Negus*; but it is only when they liſt: ſo far from being *Contributioners* towards the ſupport of his eſtate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their towns, 1 *Doba*, which gives name to the whole kingdom. 2 *Bally*, upon the ſame River, but more neer the head, on which *Dobas* ſtandeth.

11. ADEL.

ADEL is bounded on the North with ſome parts of *Dangali* and the *Red Sea*; on the South with *Adea*; on the Eaſt with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean; on the Weſt with *Fatigar*; extended on the Sea-coaſt from the Cape of *Docano*, to the Cape of *Guardaſu*, conceived moſt probably to be the *Ardmata* of *Ptolomy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Country plentiful of Fleſh, Hony, Wax, Corn, Gold and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, and many of thoſe Sheep of ſuch burdenſom Fleeces, that their tails weigh 25 pounds: ſome Kine they have, which have horns like a Stag; others but one horn only, and that in the forehead, about a foot and an half long, but bending backwards. The People inhabiting on the Sea coaſts, are of *Arabian* parentage, and of the *Mahometan* religion; thoſe towards the Inland Countries, of the old *Æthiopick* race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief towns hereof, 1 *Zeila*, a noted Port town, ſituate in or neer the place where *Ptolomy* placeth *Avalites*; ſtored with variety of merchandiſe, and yielding ſome repreſentation of *Antiquity* in the building thereof, being *lime* and *ſtone*, materials not much uſed amongſt them in theſe later times. Of great both beauty and eſteem, till the year 1516. when ſacked and burnt by the *Portugals*;

before

before that time the moſt noted Emporie of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian* trade. 2 *Barbora*, ſeated on the ſame Sea-coaſt, well frequented by Merchants, and poſſibly may be the *Mundi* or *Malao* of *Ptolomy*; neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mount Fellez*. 3. *Mette*, another of the Sea-towns neer the Cape of *Guardafuni*, ſuppoſed to be the *Acane* of the Antient writers. 4 *Aſſam*, 5 *Selir*, and 6 *Bidar*, on the Sea-coaſts alſo. 7 *Arar*, the principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Country formerly a member of the *Æthiopian* Empire, is of late grown to ſo great ſtrength and reputation, that the Kings hereof have freed themſelves from all ſigns of ſubjection to that Crown, and think themſelves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power by *Gradogna*, or *Guadameth*, who reigned here in the year 1540. by whom *Claudius* the *Neguz* was ſo overlaid, and his Country ſo deſtroyed by continual incurſions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himſelf into the heart of his Eſtates, and crave aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their aſſiſtance and the help of their ſhot, he was twice victorious; yet in the third battel he was vanquiſhed, and in the fourth *An.* 1559. ſlain upon the place. This King accounted for a *Saint* by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual wars againſt the *Chriſtians*, did ſo eſtabliſh the affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it ſo well ſetled unto his ſucceſſors, that the *Abaſſine* Emperor hath ever ſince left it out of his *Titles*; though many other of thoſe ſmall Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial ſtile*, in which he hath as little power as he hath in this. It is ſaid alſo, that in the battel wherein *Claudius* was ſlain, and his Army routed, conſiſting of 60000 Foot and 500 Horſe of his own Subjects, beſides the *Portugals*: the King of *Adel* got into his poſſeſſion the greateſt maſſe of Coin and treaſure that was ever ſeen. A victory obtained as well by policie as force; the *Abaſſines* being ſeldom fought with, or their Country waſted and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the ſtrict obſervance of their *Lenten* Faſt, they were grown ſo weak, that they were not able to diſcharge their domeſtick buſineſſes, and therefore moſt unable to reſiſt a prevailing Enemy.

12. *ADEA.*

ADEA or *ABEX*, as ſome call it, hath on the North the Kingdom of *Adel*, on the South and Weſt ſome parts of the *Abaſſine* Empire, on the Eaſt the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafu*, where it joyneth with *Adel*, along the greateſt part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the reaſon of which name hereafter.

The Country plentifully fertile, ſhaded with Woods and ſpacious Forreſts, and thoſe Woods liberally furniſhed both with Fruits and Cattel; the *Champagn*-Country not leſs fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other neceſſaries, beſides a great ſtore of Horſes. The people of an *Olive-colour*, in ſome places more inclined to black: Not clothed but from the girdle downward; nor very well armed in time of war, but with poiſoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original extraction, whoſe language they retain with ſome little difference in pronunciation.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Adea*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, becauſe the old reſidence of the Kings. 2 *Carfur* upon the Sea-coaſt, ſometimes called *Opone*, then a noted *Emporie*, and ſituate neer the Promontory called *Zingis extrema*. 3. *Azun*, and 4 *Zazelle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eſſina* and *Tonica* of the Antient writers. 5 *Magadazo*, a petit Kingdom of it ſelf: a wealthy and well traded Town, ſituate in a fruitful and delightful ſoyl, and neighboured by a ſafe and capacious Haven; much traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Ada* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambaia* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* commodities, which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abaſſine Slaves*, which laſt they value as the chiefeſt *merchandiſe* which this Country yieldeth. Firſt built by ſome *Arabian Moors*, who flying from the King of *Luza* their mortal enemy, under the conduct of ſeven Brethren, came into theſe parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was ſaid; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-coaſts of both *Æthiopias*, as far as to the *Cape dos Corrientes*, which is ſomwhat to the South of the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*. The Kings hereof in former times, *Vaſſals* to the *Abaſſine* Emperor, to whom they paid an yearly *tribute*; this Kingdom ſtill remaining amongſt his titles: but ſince the taking of *Magadazo*. made ſo obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Eſtate of the *Abaſſine* in it is but meerly *titular*.

13. *FATIGAR*, & 14. *XOA.*

FATIGAR hath on the Eaſt *Adel*, and ſome part of *Adea*: on the Weſt the little Realm of *Xoa*; on the South *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Country *Champagne*, ſufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furniſhed with pleaſant and delicious fruits. Moſt memorable for a *Lake* of twelve miles compaſs, on the top of a Mountain, well ſtored with Fiſh; from whence and from the reſt of the Mountain iſſue many Rivers, which much enrich the vallies and fields adjoyning. The chief Town hereof, (if any one be better then other) I conceive to be *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or ſo called from it.

Weſtward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of *XOA* bordering Weſt on *Amara*, Southward upon *Damut*; furniſhed with great ſtore of Corn and Cattel, but not much beautified with Towns of any conſideration. Nothing obſervable in the Hiſtory or Deſcription of it, but that together with

Fatigar

Fatigar and others of the mid-land Provinces, it hath continued constant in obedience to the *Abassine* Emperours; notwithstanding all those *misadventures*, which have hapned to that Empire in these later dayes.

15. BARUS.

ON the South East of *Adea* lieth the Province of *BARUS*, extended Eastward to some part of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and touching at the Western point upon that of *Fatigar*. The soyl and People much of the same condition with the rest of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Christians* for the generality in the mid-land parts. Those *Christians* subject (as the rest) to the *Abassine* Emperour; but he hath neither place of strength, or consideration in all the Country; those of most note, *viz.* 1 *Brava*, once a Free Town, and governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth* by twelve Aldermen or *Common Counsellors*, deseended from the seven *Arabian* Brethren by whom first built; the founders of *Magadora* also, as before was said. But now, together with 2 *Pate*, and 3 *Gogia*, all upon the Sea, made subject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken under the Conduct of *Tristran de Cugna*.

Besides these, there are many other Kingdoms mustered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the swelling vanity whereof we shall see anon) but of so little observation in the course of business, and so obscure in the esteem of such as have spoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to finde their names: and having found their names, to bid you not to seek for more, there being nothing else in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the body aggregated of these several Members, it was first planted, as is noted and proved elswhere, by *Ludim* the son of *Mizraim* and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture have the name of *Ludim*. A nation not much taken notice of in the first Ages of time, but by an Errour of *Josephus*: who giving too much credit to some *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the reputation of the *Jews* to the highest pitch, telleth us a story how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moses*; the City of *Meroe* besieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands by *Tharbis* the daughter of the King who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married to him. All this not only questioned but rejected by discerning men as a *Jewish* Fable that hath no ground to stand upon in true Antiquity. With little better fortune, and as little truth do the *Æthiopians* tell the story of their own *Original*. By whom we are informed that *Chus* the son of *Cham* first reigned in this *Æthiopia*, to whom succeeded his son *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*: that from the death of *Dedan* till the reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the People lived in Caves and holes digged under the ground, as did the *Troglodites* an ancient Nation of this Country in the times long after: that *Arac* first built the City of *Aruma*, and by that pattern taught them the use of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend is the story of *Maqueda* a Queen hereof, and the fourth from *Aruch*, whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Testaments, for the *Royal Visit* which she bestowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with childe by *Solomon* when she was in his Court, she was delivered of a Son, whom she caused to be called *Melech*, or *Melilech*, and at the age of 20 years to be sent to his Father. By whom instructed in the Law, and *circumcised*, and called by the name of *David*, he was returned into his Country, with *Azarias* the son of *Zadok* the Priest, who had stollen the two Tables of the Law and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen resigned the Empire to her son. His Successors afterwards called *David*, till *Indion* (as they call him) the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace* returning home baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the substance of the *Legend*, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Gospel.) That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been shewn already, as also what absurdities must needs arise from supposing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore most probable it is that this Countrey was first peopled by the children of *Ludim*, as before was said. To whom the *Abassenes* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added: and in some tract of time be of such great power, as to put their name upon the Countrey. For that the *Abassenes* were originally an *Arabian* People, appeareth by *Stephanus* one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Uranius* (An ancienter Author then himself) hath told us this, Ἀβασηνοὶ ἔθνος Ἀραβίας. Another *Stephanus*, and he a very learned Grammarian and *Lexicographer*, hath as he thinks decided the controversie, by making *Sheba* the son of *Chus* the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the son of *Regma* the Father of the *Æthiopians*; and for this cause hath fitted us with this pretty *Criticism*, that *Sheba* when it is written with ס *Samech* must be rendred *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia* when writ with ש *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controversie: it being evidently clear that both *Sheba* the son of *Chus*, and *Sheba* the son of *Regma* were originally setled in *Arabia*, as there hath been shewn; though I deny not but that some of the Posterity of *Chus* in those elder time, (before the coming over of the *Abassine* nations) might either out of too much populosity or desire of change, cross over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up such parts of this Countrey as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled, with whom conjunct at last, both in name and government. And as for *Mayneda* (supposing that to be her name) she was doubtless Queen of the *Sabæans* in *Arabia Felix*; not of the *Æthiopians*, in the waste of *Africk*. For besides the longsomness of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel, it is very probable that the Son of *Solomon* by this Lady would never have suffered *Egypt* to have layen in quiet, whilest *Sesac* the King thereof

thereof made war upon *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon* alſo, and ſo by conſequence his half Brother: But to leave theſe uncertain Fables, the firſt action of moment which we meet with in unqueſtioned Story, touching theſe *Æthiopians*, is that which hapned betwixt them and *Cambyſes* the *Perſian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Perſia*, conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Ethiopia* unto *Ægypt* alſo: Upon this Reſolution he ſent Ambaſſadors to that King, to ſearch into the paſſages of his Country, and diſcover his ſtrengths; and by them ſent a Tun of wine, ſome Bracelets, a Purple habit, and a Box of ſweet ointments to preſent him with. VVhich Preſents being tendred to him, he looked upon the Unguents and the Purple Robe as too ſlight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be bonds or fetters, and openly laught at them, as too weak to hold in a Priſoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleaſed, and ſorrowed that his Country yielded no ſuch liquour. But underſtanding well enough what this *viſit* aimed at, he gave the Ambaſſadors at their parting (amongſt other gifts) an Æthiopian Bow of great length and ſtrength, requiring them to tell their Maſter, that untill every *Perſian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer then the *Perſian*, as before was noted) it would be no ſafe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cauſe to thank the Gods for giving the *Æthiopians* ſo contented mindes, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from *Egypt* by vaſt mountains, we finde then not looked after by the *Macedonians*. Nor had the *Romans* medled with them, had they not been provoked by *Candace*, the Queen hereof, during the Empire of *Auguſtus*: who having made a War on *Egypt*, was by *Petronius*, Governour of that Province, brought to ſuch conformity, that ſhe was fain to ſue for peace, and to purchaſe it with the loſs of ſome part of her Country. To keep them quiet for the future, *Philæ* an *Æthiopian* City, but on the borders of *Egypt*, is made a Garriſon by the *Romans*, and the ſeat of their *Deputy* for theſe parts: held by them till the Empire of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned, becauſe the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the *Æthopian* Kings were reckoned of as friends to the *Roman* Empire; in ſo much as *Juſtinian* ſent unto *Heliſtheus*, as *Juſtin* his Succeſſour did unto *Archetas*, the then Kings of this Country, to crave their brotherly aſſiſtance againſt the *Perſians*.

Of their Converſion to the Faith in the reign of a ſecond *Candace* (unleſs as *Plinie* thinketh, *Candace* was the general name of all their Queens) we have ſpoke already. To which the *Æthiopians* adde, that after the baptizing of their firſt *Philip* (the ſon of that *Candace*) by the hands of the *Eunuch*, the Emperours ſucceeding had the name of *Philip*. Till the religious life of *John*, a Cotemporary of the Emperour *Conſtans*, honoured as a Saint after his deceaſe, made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of *John* prefixed that of *Presbyter*, becauſe (as they affirm) he executeth as well the *Sacerdotall* as the *Regall Office*; *Rex idem hominum Divumque Sacerdos*; the very *Anius* of the Poet: And this ſo commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Preſter John*, and his eſtate the Empire of *Preſter John*; with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive, that this vulgar name of *Preſter-John*, is but a corruption or miſtake for *Prætegian* or *Precious John*; and that the word *Prete* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no leſs. And yet I more incline to thoſe, who finding that the word *Preſtegan* ſignifieth an *Apoſtle*, in the *Perſian* tongue, and *Preſtigani*, an *Apoſtlical* man: do thereupon infer that the title of *Padeſcha Preſtigiani*, an *Apoſtolick King*, was given unto him for the *Orthodoxie* of his belief, which not being underſtood by ſome, inſtead of *Preſte-gian*, they have made *Prieſt-John*, in *Latine Presbyter Johannes*; as by a like miſtake, one *Pregent* (or *Prægian* as the *French* pronounce it) commander of ſome Gallies under *Lewis* the 12. was by the *Engliſh* of thoſe times called *Prior John*. *Preſtegian then*, not *Prieſt-John*, is his proper adjunct; contractedly, but commonly called the *Prete* by the Modern *French* who uſually leave out *ſ* before a *conſonant*. Their Empire greater heretofore, then it is at the preſent, ſhrewdly impaired of late times by the *Turks* and *Arabians*: of which the firſt have taken from him all his Countries from the Iſle of *Meroe* unto *Egypt*; with all the Sea-coaſts of *Barnagaſſo*; the later as much encroaching on them on the reſt of the *Maritime* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they ſuffred more then the Kings of *Adel*, who have divers times laid waſte their Country, diſcomfited ſome of them in the open Field, and in the year 1558. ſlain their King in battell. Not cured of thoſe wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who ſucceeded *Claudius* that was ſlain in battell, was ſo far from being able to revenge the death of his Predeceſſour, that being ſuſpected to incline to *Mahometaniſm*, he was defeated by the *under-king* of *Barnagaſſo*. Since which time they have ſo languiſhed by inteſtine diſſentions, that though *Alexander* the third (if there were ever ſuch a King, which I finde much doubted) is ſaid to have ſetled his affairs by the aide of the *Portugals*; and that ſome ſtrange ſucceſſes have been ſince reported of a later Emperour; yet the truth is, that the eſtate hereof hath been ſo imbroiled in *civil* Wars, and ſo many of their Emperours ſucceſſively murdered, that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakened, and the Countrey made a prey to impuiſſant Enemies. For in the year, *Anno* 1603. the Emperour *Melech Gogad*, ſucceeding in the throne by the depoſition and impriſonment of his Predeceſſour (under colour of Baſtardie) was not long after ſlain by one *Zezelezeus*, and *James* or *Jacob* advanced unto the Empire: *James* not long after vanquiſhed and ſlain by one *Sazinoſius*; and he ſo terribly diſquieted with Treaſons aud Conſpiracies, that in the year 1607 he was fain to ſue for aide to the King of *Spain*, and tender a ſubmiſſion of the *Abaſſine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the ſpirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not ſo eaſily be laid down (though there followed a long

long calm between) but that it brake out again within few yeers paſt (that is to ſay, about the year 1648) more violently then it did before: a powerfull Rebell ſtarting up, who diſpoſſeſſed the *Prete* of almoſt all his Kingdoms, and reduced the iſſue of the war unto one Town only, in which he had beſieged his perſon. And in all probability he had got that too, and with that the Empire, had not a *French-man* then living in the Country, found means to put himſelf into it; who training the people of the place to the uſe of Arms (according to the way of *Europe*) made a ſally out upon the Enemy, routed him, and ſo raiſed the ſiege, and by that means preſerved the Emperour and the Empire from moſt certain ruine.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe diſaſters, theſe later Emperors have ſtill preſerved their majeſty amongſt their Subjects, whom they hold in *ſervitude* enough, though they keep not ſuch a diſtance as in former Ages, when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and uſed to ſhew himſelf but thrice in a year, *viz.* on *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Holirood* day: by which retiredneſs it was thought that he made his preſence more acceptable; ſome holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majeſty of a King, then to make himſelf too common an object for the eye of the vulgar. The like kind of ſtate was once kept by thoſe Kings of *France* of the firſt *Merovignian* line; who withdrawing themſelves from all publike affairs, uſed only to ſhew themſelves (as we have already ſaid) on *May-day*. A greater retiredneſs then this, was that which *Valleda* Queen of the *Tenctteri* (a people of the *Rhene*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have uſed; for when the reſt of the *Germans* then in arms, ſent Ambaſſadors to her to inform her of their victory againſt the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to ſpeak to her or to ſee her; *Arcebantur aſpectu, quo venerationis plus ineſſet.* Such a keeping of ſtate, the politick Prince *Tiberius* uſed, when the *German* legions mutined; for he daigned not himſelf to ſee them pacified, but ſent his ſon; the reaſon was, *quia majeſtati major è longinquo reverentia*. And no doubt the ſame keeping of diſtance ſwayed much with him, when he forſook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Caprea*: though I deny not, but a propenſion to follow his *unnatural* pleaſures the more ſecurely, together with his deformities on his face, had alſo their powers upon his reſolution.

The title of this great and mighty Emperour, (but neither ſo great or mighty in power as in title) runneth thus: *N.N. Supreme of his Kingdoms, and the Beloved of GOD, the Pillar of Faith, ſprung from the ſtock of* Judah, *the ſon of* David, *the ſon of* Solomon, *the ſon of the Column of* Sion, *the ſon of the ſeed of* Jacob, *the ſon of the hand of* Mary, *the ſon of* Nahu *after the fleſh, the ſon of S.* Peter *and* Paul *after the ſpirit; Emperour of the higher and leſſer* Æthiopia, *and of the moſt mighty Kingdoms, Dominions, and Countries of* Xoa, Goa, Caffares, Fatigar, Angotæ, Balignazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, *where are the fountains of* Nile, Amara, Banguamedron, Ambea, Vangucum, Tigremaon, Sabaim, *the birth-place of the Queen of* Saba, Bernagaſſum; *and Lord of all the Regions unto the confines of* Egypt.

It ſeemeth by this title, that theſe *Æthiopian* Emperours, however the truth of ſtory goeth, conceive themſelves to be ſprung from *Salomon*, & *Maqueda*, (or *Nizaule*, as *Joſeph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by ſome reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the ſame with thoſe of the Tribe of *Juda*, which are a *Lyon rampant* in a field *Or*: and that the Motto of them is to this effect, *viz. The* Lyon *of the Tribe of* Judah *ſhall overcome.* But *Bara*, an expert Herauld, giveth this Prince no ſuch Coat-armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a croſs portate *Mars*, charged with a crucifix *Sol*, between two ſcourges of the ſecond. And yet not altogether to diſcredit the old Tradition, ſo generally received amongſt them, it may be probable enough, that when the *Abaſſens* came into *Æthiopia*, ſome of the *Sabæans* their next neighbours came along for company, and amongſt them ſome of the *Royal race* of the Queen of *Sheba*; with ſome of which, by reaſon of their great Nobility, ſome of the *Abaſſine* Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impoſſibility, but that *Solomon* (conſidering his courſe of life) might get a ſon upon the body of that Queen, from whom the *Æthiopian* Princes might be thus deſcended.

As for the Government of theſe Emperors, it is abſolutely *Regal*, or to ſay better, perfectly *Deſpotical*: the people being treated by them more like ſlaves then ſubjects; taking away *Signeuries*, and giving them unto whom he pleaſeth, the deprived party not daring to expreſs the leaſt diſcontent. By them ſo reverenced, that it was antiently a cuſtom, if the King were *blind*, or *lame*, or *maimed*, for the Subject to inflict on his own body the like *impreſſion*: ſtill had in ſo much honour by the greateſt Subject, that at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his *Pavilion* as they paſs by, though he be not in it. He on the other ſide ſeldom appeareth to his Subjects but with his *Crown* upon his head, and a *Silver Crucifix* in his hand; his face then covered with a peece of *Watchet-Taffata*, which he lifteth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his *Forces* and *Revennes*, ſome of our late Obſervations ſpeak nothing but wonders. Some ſay his Empire reacheth from the *Red Sea* to the *Atlantick* Ocean, and from one *Tropick* to the other: Some, that he is of ſo great Riches, that he is able to purchaſe a *moyetie* of all the world, if it were to be ſold; others, that he is able to raiſe for any preſent ſervice a million of men; And he himſelf is ſaid to have offered to the *Portugals* one *million* of money, and another of men, if they would imploy it in a war againſt the *Infidels*. But notwithſtanding theſe great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be ſuch a *Miracle* as ſome of theſe Reports have made of him: For they that ſpeak moſt knowingly of his *Revennes*, affirm that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being diſcharged, he coffereth up but three *millions* of Crowns *per annum*, which is no great matter; and upon extraordinary emergencies of war and trouble, will be eaſily waſted, or brought into a narrower compaſs.

And yet to make up this *Revenue*, beſides the Crown Lands or *Demain Imperial*, he laieth ſome *Tax* or other upon every houſe, receiveth the *tenth* of all that is digged out of their Mines, and levieth on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaſeth to chooſe, ſo it be not that in which the Lords themſelves inhabit.

This, though it be no great *Intrado*, conſidering the large extent of his Dominions, and form of his Government, yet it is greater in proportion then his *Forces* are. For notwithſtanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag of raiſing a *million* of men for preſent ſervice; it is well known that he was never able to advance half that number in his greateſt neceſſity; and amongſt thoſe whom he can raiſe, there are but few who can deſerve the name of Souldiers: for the people being poor and beggerly, and brought up in a ſervile and baſe condition, are naturally deſtitute of that courage and alacrity of ſpirit which ſhould be in men profeſſing *Arms*, or fit for noble undertakings; and are beſides, on certain *jealouſies* of State, ſo diſuſed from war, that they know not how to uſe their weapons when there is occaſion. So that for my part I conſider him as a weak and *impuiſſant* Prince, of no authority or influence out of his Dominions; nor able to defend himſelf from the continual incurſions of his neighbours (ſome of them mean and petit Princes) which lie neereſt to him. *Land-locked* on every ſide from traffick and commerce with the Seas, incroached upon Northward by the *Turks*; confronted on the Weſt by the King of *Borneo*, who poſſeſſeth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the Eaſt continually bearded and baffled by the King of *Adel*, ſometimes a *Vaſſal* of his own; and on the South with the *Gallæ* a barbarous Nation of the other *Æthiopia*, who lay all waſte before them whereſoever they come; and finally in theſe later times by his own Subjects alſo. Injuries not to be indured, had he power to help it.

But the chief Stay of this Eſtate, is an *Order* of *Knighthood* entituled by the name of S. *Antony*, to which every Father that is of the Degree of a Gentleman is to deſtinate one of his ſons, if he have above two, but not the eldeſt. And out of theſe they cull about 12000 Horſe, which are to be the ſtanding Guard of the Emperours perſon: their Oath is, To defend the *Frontiers* of the Empire, to preſerve *Religion*, and to make head againſt the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbats* of this Order (for it is partly *Religious*, partly *Military*) live in the Mountain of *Amara*; where they have two *Monaſteries*, as well for the training up of theſe Knights in the time of their youth, as their *retirement* when grown old and diſcharged from ſervice.

And ſo much for *Æthiopia Superior*.

OF

Of ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the East with the *Red-Sea* (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulf of *Arabia* to the Southern Ocean) on the West with the *Æthiopick* Ocean; on the North with *Terra Nigritarum*, and the *higher Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Conus*, with the Main Ocean parting it from the Southern undiscovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reason before delivered. *Inferior* was added for distinctions sake, because somwhat of a lower situation then the other is. By *Ptolomy* called *Æthiopia Interior*, because lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge then the neerer did: and by late Writers for the contrary reason called *Æthiopia Exterior*, because situate without and beyond the other.

It comprehendeth all *Ptolomies Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia Sub Aegypto*, and all those Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of *Terra Incognita*. The Countrey so little discovered in those elder times, that we finde mention onely of some eminent Mountains, as 1. *Canchis*. 2. *Lon*. 3. *Zipha*. 4. *Barditis*. 5. *Moschi*, one onely Region known by name, called *Agisimba*, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a large extent. The people not distinguished here, as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kinde of diet; some of them being called *Anthropophagi*, from their eating of men, and others *Ichthyophagi* from their living on fish. Of these the first inhabiteth on the Eastern shores, near the Bay of *Barbaria*; the principal of whom had the name of *Rapsii*: the last on the shores of the Western Ocean, near *Magnus Sinus*, or the Great Bay; called also from their Western situation, by the name of *Hesperii*. Nothing else told us of these parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the *Lakes* or Fens of *Nilus* were occasioned by the great abundance of snow which fell from the *Mountains* of the *Moon*: and that in many parts hereof, there were *Rhinocerots*, Tygers, Elephants, but these last all white.

Such was the face of this Countrey in those elder days. The Character of it at the present, generally and in brief is thus given by *Aubanus*, viz. That it is *mountainous* in the West, *sandy* in the midst, and *desart* towards the East. But for the several qualities of the soyl and people, being of very different tempers; we shall give the better description of them in their several *inclosures*, then as presented thus in *common*. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills and Rivers of most reckoning in it; the principall of their Mountains are 1 those called *Cantaberes*, in the Province of *Angola*; 2 *Lunæ Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopias*, now found to belong unto this alone. A chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, full of sharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and savage People; the valleys underneath of so great a *depth*, that they seem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Country is the Lake of *Zembre*, so much renowned for giving birth to the greatest Rivers of the world; though it self but 50 miles in compass. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1 *Nilus*, which passing thorow some part of this Country, and traversing the whole length of the *Abassian* and *Egyptian* Empires, endeth its long course in the *Mediterranean*. 2. *Zaire* the greatest of all *Africk*, but unknown to the Antients, which running Eastward thorow the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the lesser streams of 1 *Vamba*, 2 *Barbela*, 3 *Coanza*, 4 *Lelunda*, makes many Islands in his way, and at the last by a mouth of 28 miles wideness disgorgeeth his full stomack in the Western Ocean. 3 *Cuama*, which making his passage towards the East and much increased by the addition of six great Rivers, after a long course of 700 miles (in all which it is navigable) loseth it self in the *Indian* or *Æthiopick* Ocean: and 4 *Fluvius Spiritus Sancti*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*, which shaping a course opposite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in conclusion in the Southern Seas. It is divided most properly into these four parts, that is to say, 1 *Zanquebar*. 2 *Monomotapa*, 3 *Cafraria*, 4 *Manicongo*. Some also add the Country of *Aian*, subdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*. But these we have ascribed with better reason to the other *Æthiopia*, within the bounds whereof they are wholly situate.

1. *ZANGUEBAR.*

ZANGUEBAR, or *ZANZIBAR* is bounded on the East with the *Red-Sea*, or the Indian Ocean; on the West with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*: on the North with the *higher Æthiopia* only; on the South with *Monomotapa*. The reason of the name I finde not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agisimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia Interior* & so much of the other as lieth on the South of the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimanci*, by which parted from the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*. The Country on both sides of that River known in old times by the name of *Barbarians*, giveth to a large adjoyning Bay the name of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and was much famed in those elder times for the best sort of *Myrrhe*: the *Myrrha Trogloditica*, & *Myrrha Barbara*, or *Barbarica*, being used for the same, by some of the Antients, because the *Troglodites* and the people of this *Barbaria*, joyned on one another. Here was also in those elder times a good race of Ginger; of which saith *Dioscorides*, Μάκερ φλοίος ὃς κομιζόμενος ἐκ τῆ Βερβάρα, that it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbara*. Where by the way the *Scholiasts* upon that Author, and *Plinie* in the 12 *Book* have been much mistaken; whereof the first takes this *Barbara* or *Barbaria* for some part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh that the *Myrrhe* of these parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the drossiness and coursness of it, as if so called only because unrefined. The principal Town hereof called *Rapta*, by the name of the River; seated not far from the Sea, and by reason of the great Trade of it, esteemed the *Metropolis* of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolomy*. A noted Promontory of the same name was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called; The Country is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflown with unruly Rivers; and withall so full of Woods and Forrests, that for want of passage for the wind, the Air is generally (as in all *Fenny* Countries of the like obstruction) exceeding *pestilent*. The people of complexion black, and of curled hair: *Mahometans* on the Sea-coasts; in the Inland parts *Idolaters*, extremely given to Witchcraft and Divinations. Naked above the waste, and beneath covered only with the skins of Beasts, or some such mingled-colour stuffe as the *Scottish Plad*. The *Moors* which dwell on the Sea-coasts, use to adventure on the Seas in little Vessels, sowed together with leathern thongs, and calked with *gumme*; having no other sails in them then the Leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of as slight a making, as those used anciently by the *Britans*, whereof thus the Poet:

Primùm cana silix, madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim; cæsoque induta juvenco
Vectoris patiens, tumidum superenatat Amnem.

Which I find thus rendred to my hand:

The moystned Osier *of the hoary Willow*
Is woven first into a little Boat;
Then cloth'd in Bullocks hides, upon the Billow
Of a proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to say, 1 *Melinde*, 2 *Mombaza*, 3 *Quiloa*, 4 *Mosambique*, 5 *Sofala*, all along the Coasts; 6 *Moenhemage*, 7 *Corova*, 8 *Calen*, 9 *Anzuga*, 10 *Monzalo*, 11 *Badin*, 12 *Mombra*, 13 *Mombizo*, 14 *Embroe*, and 15 *Macaos*, more within the Land. Of the nine last, not being perfectly discovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we shall now be silent. But the first six lying upon the Shores or neer it, and consequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like *Adventurers*, shall be surveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom on the South of the Realm of *Adea*, in the *Higher Æthiopia*, from which parted by the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimanci*: so named from *Melinde*, the chief City of it; well walled, and seated in a fruitful and delightful soyl; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Flesh, Limons, Citrons, and most sorts of fruits; but not well furnished with Corn, the greatest part whereof is brought out of *Cambaia* a Province of *India*. The houses built of lime and stone, after the manner of *Europe*. The Inhabitants on the Sea-coasts of *Arabian* breed, and of that Religion; those of the Inlands, which are of the original Natives, for the most part *Heathens*. Most of them of an *Olive colour*, but inclining to white; the Women generally of as white complexions as in other places; but they have some black people also: And all of them more *civil* in their Habit, course of life, and entertainment in their houses, then the rest of this Country. Great friends unto the *Portugals*, and befriended by them, ever since the kind entertainment which they gave unto *Vasques de Gama*, whom they furnished with *Pilots* to direct him in his way to *India*, when first discovered by that People.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of these petit Kingdoms, of the same nature for the temper of the soil and people that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombaza* the chief City of it, situate from *Melinde* about 70 miles, in a little Iland of 12 miles compass; but of good influence on some part of the *Continent* also. The Isle and City said to have some resemblance unto the *Rhodes*. The Town about a league in circuit, environed with a wall, and fortified with a Castle; the Streets thereof very narrow, but well built, most of the houses being brick, and the *Mosques* capacious. The King hereof a *Mahometan*, as are most of his Subjects, and a bitter enemy of the *Christians*. For which cause, and upon some discourtesies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vasques de Gama*, *An.*1500. but abandoned again by reason of the unhealthy Air, nor well agreeing with the constitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards having taken in *Alibeg* and five *Turkish* Gallies, the better to enable themselves against the *Portugals*; the Town was taken and ruinated by *Thomas de Cotigno*, sent thither *An.*1589. by the *Portugal* Vice-Roy residing in *Goa*; there being taken at that time (besides the spoil of the City) all the *Turkish* Gallies, and in them 23 greater, and as many lesser Peeces of Ordinance: such of the *Turks* and Citizens as escaped the slaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themselves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Imbians*, a man-eating people, who had before besieged the City; and gathering up such gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King, and as many of the principal Citizens as they could get into their hands. 2 *Ampaza*, the second Town of note, was taken by the *Portugals* about two years after.

3. *QUILOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Country rich and pleasant, the Inhabitants for the most part of *Arabian* Ancestry; of complexion neer unto a white, their women comely, sumptuous in attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their houses, which are generally well built and richly furnished. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whose honour they are very tender) the people of this *Quiloa* are said to have a strange custom amongst them, more to be mentioned for the rarity then the decency of it; which is the sowing up of the private passages of nature in their female children, leaving only a small vent for their urine: Thus sowed, they keep them carefully at home,

home, till they come to be married: And she that is by her Husband found to want this sign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kinde of ignominie sent back to her Parents, and by them as disgracefully received.

It took this name from *Quiloa* the chief Town thereof, situate in a little Iland, but neer the shore, from which parted by a narrow *Fryth*, opposite to the mouth of the River *Couva*, by some called *Quiloa*. First built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*, by *Ali*, the son of *Sultan Hiscben*, who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, because their Mothers were *Persians*, and his an *Abassine*, sought new Adventures in these parts, and bought this Iland. His Successors grown rich and powerful by the trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land: and so adorned *Quiloa*, the chief Town of their Kingdom, that for sumptuous and magnificent buildings, there were few like it in those parts. Proud of their many good successes they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom under the conduct of *Vasques de Gama*, An. 1500. the City it self was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave some Fortresses erected by them in convenient places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a quarrel with *Abraham* then the King of this Country, whom in the year 1505. they deposed from his Kingdom, and placed another in his Throne, under colour of not paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* rose in Arms, displaced their new King, demolished their Fortifications, and sent them to learn better moderation in their prosperous Fortunes, *An.* 1509. The business coming after to a composition, the *Quiloan* covenanted for the yeerly *Tribute* of 1500 Marks of Gold paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quiloa*, so called of *Mosambique* the chief City of it, situate in a little Iland, the principal of three, opposite all of them to the mouth of the River *Mogbincats*, and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Prassum*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*, and by him made the furthest known place of all this Coast. In the Iland there are said to be sheep whose tails are 25. pound weight, as in other places of these Countries, and some parts of *Syria*; Hens, *black* in feathers, flesh, and bone; and if sodden make the water as black as ink, but yet sweeter in taste then any other. Of *Pork* good store, the more because the people are for the most part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all hog-meat is forbidden. The in-land parts more barren, but very populous: so ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* first came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they sold fifteen Kine, and then fell out among themselves who should have the *Bell*. The Town conveniently seated on a large and spacious Haven, and fortified with a very strong Castle, in the hands of the *Portugals*: who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, use to call in here and fit themselves with all things necessary to pursue their voyage. A Town of so great wealth and trading, that the Captain of the Castle in the time of his Government (which continueth only for three years) is said to lay up 300000 *Ducats* for his Lawfull gains of the Gold that cometh from *Sofala*. A gain so great, that at the end of his three years, he is to serve for three years more at some place or other of the *East Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*; and then permitted to return to his native Country. Such of that Nation as are suffred to inhabit here, are enjoyned to be married, to the end the Iland should be well-peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwise perhaps might have few else in it, but the Garrison Souldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants.

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Mosambique*, from which parted by the River *Cuama*, the greatest River of those parts; and thence extended to the mountains which they call *Manica*, by which separated from *Monomotapa*. So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, situate in a little Iland (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoyning. Both Town and Iland subject unto the power of the *Portugals* who have a Fort, the better to secure the *Factory* by them here erected; one of the richest in the world; the People bringing hither great quantity of *Gold* (of which they have most plentifull Mines) which they exchange with them for their cloth, and other commodities. It is supposed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two *Millions* yeerly. The supposition so agreeable to all other circumstances, that little question need be made of the truth thereof. Insomuch as this Country for its abundance of *Gold* and *Ivory*, is by some thought to be that land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* sent; and of this opinion *Ortelius* in his *Thesaurus* was the first Author; but in my minde, upon no probable conjectures, and against very strong presumption. For first *Ophir* the son of *Joctan* of whom mention is made in the 10. of *Gen. vers.* 29. and from whom the land of *Ophir*, in all likelyhood took its name; is in the next verse said to have planted in the East: whereas this *Sofala* is situate South-west from *Chaldea*; in which the confusion of Tongues, and dispersing of the People, began. And secondly, it is impossible for the Navie of *Solomon* which lay at *Ezion Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*, to have spent three years in coming hither, and returning: which we finde to have been the usual times of finishing the voyage to *Ophir*, 1 *Kings ch.* 10. *Ophir* then is some part of *India*; but whether it were the Iland of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*, or one of the *Molucco's*, or the land of *Malaza*, called by the Ancient *Aurea Chersonesus*, I dare not determine; considering what worthy men maintain these several opinions.

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only inland Province of any note, hath on the East *Mombaza*, and *Quiloa*; on the West the famous River *Nilus*; on the North some part of the Dominions of the *Abassine* Emperours; on the South *Mosambique*. The Country very plentifull of Mines of *Gold*, yet the People use it not for *money*, but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks & *Taffatas*, with which they use to cloath themselves from the Girdle downwards,

wards. In ſtead of money, they make uſe of *Red Counters*, much reſembling Glaſs. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacie with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are alſo ſubject a wild and cruel people, called *Agag*, inhabiting on Lake *Zembre* and the banks of the *Nilus*; diſperſed about the fields in their homely cottages, black, *Cannibals*, and of an horrible aſpect; more horrible then otherwiſe they would be, by drawing lines upon their cheeks with an iron-inſtrument, and forcing their eye-lids to turn backwards. By the aſſiſtance of this people, the King of *Moenhemage* hath hitherto preſerved his Eſtate againſt the King of *Monomotapa*: and they themſelves by ſome of their own Leaders did ſo diſtreſs the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a ſmall Iland, where he hardly ſcaped a violent and untimely death, moſt of his people being ſtarved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the reſt of theſe Provinces, we can ſay but little, and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the moſt part from one another both in ſpeech and behaviour; each Village under a ſeveral King, and each in continual quarrel with its next neighbours, whom if they overcome, they eat. At leaſure times they live by hunting, and the fleſh of Elephants. And amongſt theſe, but more upon the Borders of the *Abaſſine* Empire, I place the *Galla*, a Nationleſs nation, as it were, without houſe or dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agags* (whom ſome call *Jagge* or *Giacqui*) are affirmed to be; who watching their advantages, and joyned together in ſome Arts of doing miſchief, have made of late ſuch deſolations in the Countries of the *Preſtor-John*.

2. *MONOMOTAPA.*

MONOMOTAPA, *BENOMOTANA*, or *BENOMOTAXA* (for by all theſe names it is called) is bounded on the North with the River *Cuama*, by which and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt and South by the River of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, by which ſeparated from *Cafraria*; and on the Eaſt by the main Ocean. So that it is almoſt an Iland: ſaid to contain in compaſs 750 *Spaniſh* leagues, or 3250 *Italian* miles.

The Air hereof is ſaid to be very temperate, and the Country very good and pleaſant, yet full of Forreſts. Well watered, beſides the two great Rivers before mentioned with the Streams of 1 *Panami*, 2 *Luanga*, 3 *Arruga*, 4 *Mangeano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their ſands. By means whereof, it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great ſtore of Paſturage, on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beaſts very large and great: ſuch ſtore of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reaſon but to make merchandiſe of their Teeth: their *Gold*-Mines great and ſmall reckoned to 3000; ſome in the hils of *Magnice*, others in the Provinces of *Matuca* and *Boro*: the places where the Mines are, known without further Art in the diſcovery of them, by the dryneſs and barrenneſs of the ſoil; as if Nature could not hoord up gold in her ſpacious boſom, but ſhe muſt needs be barren of all good works.

The People are of mean ſtature, and black complexions; but ſtrong and active, couragious, and of ſuch footmanſhip, that they out-run horſes. Their Apparel *Cotton-Cloth*, which they make, or buy from ſome other place: their Diet Fleſh Fiſh Rice, Mill, and an Oil called *Suſiman*. Their Religion *Paganiſm* for the moſt part; yet they worſhip not Idols, but believe in one God onely, which they call *Mozimo*: and ſeem not much averſe from the *Chriſtian* faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They puniſh nothing more ſeverely then *Witch-craft*, *Adultery*, and *Theft*: and in the puniſhment of *Delinquents* they uſe no Prisons, but execute them as ſoon as apprehended, which is the reaſon that the Vulgar have no doors to their houſes, that being a privilege for the Nobles. They may have as many Wives as they will, but the firſt the principal, and her Children only to be heirs: the women here very much reſpected (as a ſecond *England*) the Emperor himſelf, if he meeteth any of them in the ſtreets, giving them the way. Not to be married till their *Menſtrua* or Natural purgations teſtifie their ability for conception; and therefore they ſolemnize the firſt *Flux* thereof with a liberal Feaſt.

Provinces of moſt note in it, and adjoining to it, but reckoned as Members of this Empire, are

1. *Matuca*, rich in Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botonghi*, who though they dwell between the *Line* and the *Tropick*, have in the winter ſuch deep ſnows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not ſpeedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrientes* (*Caput Currentium* in the *Latines*) wealthy in fat paſtures and great herds of Cattel; more in her unexhauſtible Mines of Gold. Moſt memorable for a large, and in thoſe times an impregnable Fortreſs, built formerly by ſome forrein Prince to ſecure the Mines; built of ſquare ſtones, and every ſtone of marvellous greatneſs, without any ſign of cement or other mortar; the walls hereof 25 ſpans thick, but the height not anſwerable; over the Gate certain characters written, which the moſt learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of ſome of the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine* Emperours, when their power and Empire was at the higheſt. By the Inhabitants, who conceive it to be a work beyond humane power, it is thought to have been built by Devils: but by thoſe who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, aſcribed to *Solomon*. though ſituate 510 miles more Weſtward then *Sofala*, by their own accompt. The Air here very cold, by reaſon of the ſharp blaſts coming from the *Pole-Antartick*; ſo much the colder, in that they have no wood or other fewel, but what they make themſelves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*,

3. *BORO*, and 4 *QUITICUI*, both furniſhed with Gold alſo in their Mines and Rivers, but not ſo pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet ſuch as ſerve their turn ſo well as to ſpoil all induſtry; the people here being very careleſs in providing neceſſaries, which they preſume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHAMBAN*, governed by a King of its own, but Vaſſal and Tributary to the Emperour of *Monomotapa*; the King whereof in the year 1560. was Chriſtened by *Gonſalvo Silveria* a *Spaniſh Jeſuite*, by the name of *Conſtantine*; his Queen baptized by the name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further progreſs of *Chriſtianity*. Touching 6 *Matana*, 7 *Melemba*, 8 *Quinbebe*, 9 *Berteca*, and 10 *Bavagul*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their names.

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the houſes being here ſo thin, that from the border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is ſaid, there is no ſign of any building either old or new. The principal of thoſe that be, 1. *Tongum* in the Province of *Inhamban*, and the Seat royal of thoſe Kings; memorable for the baptiſm of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2 *Simbus*, ſuppoſed to be ſo called from the *Agiſymba* of *Ptolomie*, the chief town of the Province of *Torre* or *Batne*, diſtant from *Sofala* one and twenty dayes journey, and neighboured by the remains or ruines of the old Fortreſs before deſcribed. 3 *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperour makes his uſual reſidence, giving this name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himſelf, whom they call *Benomotaxa*, or *Monomotapa*, the word in their language ſignifying a King or Emperour.

The King hereof accounted one of the greateſt of *Africk*, hath under his command, beſides the Provinces deſcribed, ſome part of *Cafraria*. Of great riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which ſo abundantly ſupply all the Royal occaſions, that he exacteth no kind of tribute from his Subjects, but ſome certain dayes ſervice in his Works; and from his Nobles gifts and preſents, without which none of them are to come before him. His forces great, the multitudes of men conſidered; but weak, for want of skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern ſervice, the Arms they moſt uſe being only Darts and Targets. For which cauſe, (and in regard the people of the ſubject Kingdoms are ſo prone to *Rebellions*, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the *Tributary* Kings as Hoſtages of their Fathers loyaltie) he wageth *mercenarie* Souldiers of other Nations, whom he diſtributeth abroad in his ſeveral Provinces: and amongſt theſe it is affirmed, that he hath a ſtrong Battaillon of *Amazons*, a warlike race of women who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the outskirts of *Zanzibar*; compared by ſome, for their fidelity and proweſs, to the *Turkiſh Janizaries*. And yet not truſting wholly to the faith of theſe *Mercenaries*, it is ſaid that he keeps 200 *Maſtives* for the Guard of his perſon. Much reverenced by his Subjects, by whom he is ſerved upon the knee; and when he cougheth or drinketh, all thoſe that are about him make ſuch a ſhout, that the town rings of it. In one particular they differ from moſt Nations elſe, which is, that ſuch as are admitted into his preſence are bound to ſit down, in token of reverence; to ſtand before him, being a ſign of the greateſt dignity which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced *Chriſtianity* in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonſalvo* the Jeſuite, by the name of *Sebaſtian*, (that being the name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning.) But afterwards on the ſuggeſtions of ſome *Arabians* then in great place about him, having cauſed the *Jeſuite* to be ſlain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 men, under the conduct of *Franciſco Barretio*; to whom he offered very honorable amends for the iujury done: but *Barretio* having in hope ſwallowed all the Gold in the Country, would not admit of any peaceable agreement, but referred the buſineſs to a battel; in which being overcome himſelf, and his whole forces not long after conſumed by ſickneſs, the hopes of *Chriſtianity*, and the *Portugals* intereſſe in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. *CAFRARIA.*

CAFRARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*; on the South and Weſt with the main Ocean; on the North extended to ſome parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Cafars*, which in the *Arabian* tongue ſignifieth an *Heretick*; a name by them given to *Chriſtians*, *Heathens*, and thoſe of their own Religion alſo, which differ in *opinion* from them; but given to this Region by ſome late Writers, becauſe deſtitute of another name.

The Country for ſo much of it as hath been diſcovered, is ſaid to be full of great Herds of Cattel, and flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, Foxes, Hares, Oſtriches, *Pelicans*, Herons, Geeſe, Ducks, Pheſants, Partriges; in a word all things neceſſary for the life of man, were it ſomewhat better ſtored with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally ſtored with Woods and Forreſts: the Hils thereof ſo intermixt with graſſie Vallies, that pity 'tis ſo beautiful and rich a Country ſhould be inhabited by ſo barbarous and rude a people; who being utterly unprovided of towns and houſes, live in woods like beaſts. Of colour black, thick lips, flat noſes, long ſhaped heads, and moſt monſtrous ears, extended far beneath their ſhoulders, by hanging in them iron-chains, glaſs, bullets, Bels, and ſuch ponderous bables. Theſe Ornaments common to both ſexes, who alſo uſe (for their greater beauty) moſt hideouſly to laſh themſelves in all parts of their bodies, even their very bellies; as if no lace could better ſort with their naked skins, with which only, except ſome flap of leather to hide their privities, they are here apparelled.

But

But amongſt all the ſeveral Nations which inhabit this moſt flouriſhing Country, none are more barbarous then thoſe whom they call the *Imbians*, dwelling not far from the *Cape of good Hope*; tall, ſquare, and ſtrong, addicted always to War and *Rapine*, and feeding on the fleſh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying friends, whoſe death they haſten for the *Shambles:* The skuls of whom they uſe for their drinking Cups. Their weapons poiſoned *Arrows* and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they always carry *fire* before them, menacing thereby to roſte or boil all ſuch as they overcome. Their King (if ſuch a ſacred name become ſuch an impious Monſter) they account for *Lord* of all the earth, as the *Portugals* of all the Seas: and he with the old Giantlike Arrogance, not only threateneth the deſtruction of men, but ſhooteth his poiſoned Arrows againſt *Heaven* it ſelf, as often as the rain or heat offends him. In the year 1589. about 80000 of them made an inrode into *Zanzibar*, laid deſolate all the Country as far as *Mombaza*, which City they beſieged, ſacked, and devoured the People of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our deſcription of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, ſcarce ſo much as houſes; and thoſe ſo mean that they deſerve not to be ſo called: except it be ſome ſheds on the Sea ſides for the uſe of Saylors. Of moſt note in it is *Soldania*, ſituate on a large and capacious Road, about fifteen or ſixteen Leagues from the *Cape of good Hope:* not ſo much noted for the building, as the Bay it ſelf, where ſuch as are to ſail towards the *Indies*, uſe to take in freſh water, and make proviſion of things neceſſary for ſo long a Voyage.

But that which is of moſt note in all this Country is the *Cape* it ſelf; diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their firſt *Indian* undertakings, by whom, for the continual Tempeſts which he found about it, it was firſt called *Tormentoſa:* But afterwards having doubled the *Cape*, and thereby finding good hopes of a proſperous voyage, they cauſed it to be called *Cabo di Buona Speranza*, or the *Cape of good Hope: Vaſques di Gama*, the firſt diſcoverer of this way to the wealth of *India*, being then their *Admiral*, *An.* 1597. It conſiſteth of three great points or head-lands, of which that which is neereſt us, is the *Cape of good Hope:* the middlemoſt hath the name of *Cabo Falſo*, becauſe miſtaken for the other by ſome of the *Portugals*, returning homewards: the third called *Cabo della Guglia*, or the *Cape of Needles*, by reaſon of thoſe ſharp points which ſhoot towards the Sea. On the top of the *Cape*, a large and pleaſing plain, adorned with great variety of flowers, and covered with a carpet of graſs; it is called the *Table* of the *Cape*, and yieldeth a large proſpect over the Sea on all ſides. The Sea here is very rough and tempeſtuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkinde: whereupon a *Spaniſh* Captain being ſore vexed with a ſtorm, expoſtulated with GOD why he ſuffered his *good Catholicks* to endure ſuch torments, and permitted the *Engliſh Hereticks* and Blaſphemers, to paſſe ſo eaſily.

The Country is not ſubjected unto any one Prince, the *Natives* being governed by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clans*; nor finde I hitherto that either the *Portugals* or *Spaniards* have took poſſeſſion of any one part of it, in the name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the beſt title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom poſſeſſion was taken of it in the reign of King *James*, by one *Captain Fitz-Herbert*, who called the *Aſcent* unto the *Table* King *James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his beget any good title, or whether the title of a Country lying ſo far off be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *Stateſmen*.

4 *MANICONGO.*

MANICONGO is bounded on the South with *Cafraria*, and the *Mountains* of the *Moon*; on the Weſt with the *Æthiopick* Ocean; on the North with the Realm of *Benin* and other parts of the land of the *Negroes*; and on the Eaſt with *Zanzibar*, and ſome part of the *Abaſſine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the principal of thoſe many Kingdoms which are united in this Name.

The Aire hereof ſo temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*, inſomuch as the People do not uſe to change their garments, or make more *fire* then, then at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the nights ſo equal to the dayes that for the greateſt part of the year there is little difference, the Country being ſituate under the *Æquator*, though more of it on the North then the South thereof. Not over hot notwithſtanding in the heats of Summer, by reaſon of the cool windes which then blow continually, and the great dewes which falling in the night make ſome compenſation for the extream fervour of the day. The ſoyl ſo exceeding fruitfull in the production of herbs, plants, fruits, and ſuch ſtore of Paſturage, that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of Sheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares and Conies; Elephants of that bigneſs that their teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of ſo vaſt a bulk that they will eat a whole Deer at once: not to ſay any thing of their *fowl* both wilde and tame, which they have here in great abundance.

The People of mean ſtature, black of complexion, thick lips, and having the apple of the eye of divers colours, which makes them ghaſtly to behold; ſtrong and long-lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In *Religion* for the moſt part *Heathens*, ſome worſhipping the Sun and Moon, others the Earth, as the Mother and Nurſe of all things; and ſome again wilde Beaſts and Serpents. So populous, that without any ſenſible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is ſuppoſed that they ſell 28000 *Slaves* to the *Portugals* yeerly; by whom they are ſent into *Braſil*, there

there to work in the Mines and Sugar houſes. The *Chriſtian* faith admitted in ſome few of their Provinces, but ſpecially in that of *Congo*, where firſt preached, in the reign of *John* the 2. king of *Portugal*, An. 1490. by *Gonzalvo de Suſa*, who having converted and baptized the Kings Uncle, and one of his Sons, prevailed ſo far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects did imbrace the *Goſpel*. Received there by the people with ſuch infinite joy, that when their firſt *Biſhop* came to live amongſt them, they cauſed the wayes from the Sea-ſide to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chicken, Kids, Partriges, Fiſh, Veniſon, and other neceſſaries, to teſtifie their rejoycings in that happy change. And, though many of the Subjects in the other Provinces were *baptized* accordingly, and for a time imbraced the Faith; yet after ſome ſmall trial of it they relapſed to their former *Heatheniſm*, either unable or not willing to conform to ſo ſtrict a Rule.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Bengo*, 2 *Coanza*, 3 *Dande*, 4 *Barbela*, 5 *Ambrizi*, 6 *Loza*, 7 *Zaire*. This laſt the greateſt of them all, if not of all *Africk* alſo: of which though we have ſpoke already, we ſhall adde this here; That it falleth into the *Æthiopick* Sea with ſo great a violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen ſometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural ſweetneſs, not intermingled nor corrupted with the ſalt Sea-waters; Nor can the people ſail above five miles againſt the ſtream, by reaſon of the *Cataracts* or huge falls which it hath from the Mountains, more terrible and turbulent then thoſe of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of moſt note, they are 1 *Sierra, Complida*, or the Long mountain; 2 *Mons Chriſtalli*, or the *Chriſtalline* mountain, ſo called from the abundance of *Chriſtal* which is found therein; 3 *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the *Sun*, of exceſſiue height; 4 *Montes Salnitri*, ſo called from their abounding in that kind of Mineral; and 5 the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich in Mines of Silver.

It conteineth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general muſter in the ſtile Imperial, wherein their King calleth himſelf King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Sandi*, *Bangu*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abundi*, *Matana*, *Quiſoma*, *Angola*, and *Cacango*; Lord of the *Congemes*, *Amolaze*, *Langelungi*, *Anzuichi*, *Cucchi*, and *Zoanghi*. Many of theſe not ſo well diſcovered as to afford us any matter fit for our diſcourſe; the principal of thoſe that be, are

1. *ANGOLA* bounded on the South with *Cafraria*, on the North with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*, on the Eaſt with ſome part of *Zanzibar*, on the Weſt with the main Ocean. The Countty rich in Mines of *Silver*, and moſt excellent *Copper*; ſome ſtore of Kine and Horſes brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their tails, the wearing whereof is held for a ſpecial ornament, then keep for any other uſe: their chiefeſt diet being *Dogs*, which they fat for the *Shambles*; and to that dainty ſo affected, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give twenty ſlaves and upwards for a good large Dog. By this we may conjecture ſomewhat at the nature of the people, who beſides this are ſaid to be much given to *ſorcerie* and *divinations* by the flight of Birds, skilful in *medicinal* herbs and poiſons, and by familiarity with the *Devil* able to tell things to come. Permitted as moſt *Pagans* are, to have as many wives as they will; who with the reſt of the women, whether maids or widows, uſe at the firſt ſight of every *New Moon* to turn up their bare bums in defiance of her, as the cauſe of their troubleſom purgations.

In this Country are the Mountains called *Cantaberes*, rich in Mines of Silver; but thoſe Mines not ſuffered to be digged, for fear of drawing ſome unneceſſary war upon them; ſo that they uſe *Glaſs-beads* for money and therewith alſo do adorn the perſons of greateſt eminence. Their principal City called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal reſidence of their Kings, but not elſe obſervable.

This Country was firſt diſcovered by the *Portugals* under the conduct of *Diego Can*, An. 1486. the King hereof at that time *Vaſſal* unto him of *Congo*, and ſo continued till that King did imbrace the Goſpel, whereupon they revolted from him, and have ſince ſubſiſted of themſelves without ſuch dependance. At firſt they held good correſpondencie with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free traffick in their dominions: But after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many of them as they found in *Cabazza*, An. 1578. under colour of ſome pretended treaſon. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of theſe parts for the King of *Portugal*, arming ſuch people as he had, with two Gallies and ſome other Veſſels paſſed up the River of *Coanza*, waſting the Country on both ſides: Againſt whom the King of *Angola* raiſed an Army of a *Million* of men; but amongſt thoſe multitudes of men there were ſo few Souldiers, that an handful of the *Portugals*, aided with ſome of the forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, A. 158[illegible]. Since that, the trade with *Portugal* is revived again, and the King hereof hath expreſſed ſome good affections unto *Chriſtianity*, ſending unto the King of *Congo* for ſome *Prieſts* to inſtruct him in it, but obtained them not; the ſtate of *Religion* in that kingdom being then declining.

To this king belong alſo the two Provinces of *Matana* and *Quiſoma*, though both uſed in the titles of the King of *Congo*: of which the firſt lying towards the Sea, is ſaid to be of a wholſom air, and a fertile ſoil, outwardly furniſhed with fruits, and inwardly with Mines of *Chriſtal* and other metals; but not very rich, for want of ſome convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great *Lake* called *Aque Lunda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Commonwealth*; but tributary at that time to the K. of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke, by reaſon of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars againſt him.

2. *BAMBA* hath on the South the River of *Conza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Songo*, on the Eaſt *Pemba*; on the Weſt the *Æthiopick* Ocean.

Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of Silver, well ſtored with Beaſts and Birds, as well tame as wilde: Amongſt the Birds, *Parrets* both green and gray, and many which are taught to ſing, not much inferior for their muſick to the birds of *Canaries*. Amongſt the Beaſts of moſt note is that called the *Zebre*, ſhaped like a *Mule*, but from the ridge of the back to the belly ſo ſtreaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and thoſe ſtreaks naturally ſet in ſuch even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye a moſt pleaſing object. But wilde, and of ſo ſwift a foot, that *Velox ut Zebra*, to be *as ſwift as a Zebre*, is grown into a Proverb amongſt the *Portugals*. The men ſo ſtrong, that it is ſaid of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or ſtrike a Slave quite thorow the midle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a veſſel of wine, weighing 325 pound weight, containing the fourth part of a But; and hold it ſo till it be qiute drawn out. It containeth in it many *Signeuries*, moſt of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1 S. *Paul*, ſituate on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Leanda*, inhabited for the moſt part by *Portugal* families. 2 *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is ſituate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Loſe* and *Ambrizi*.

3. *PEMBA* hath on the Weſt *Bamba*, on the Eaſt the Lake *Zombre*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North *Batta*, and on the South *Angola*. Eſteemed to be the richeſt and moſt pleaſant Country of all *Manicongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beſet with *Palm trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are always green. The water of ſo good a nature that it never hurteth any that drink of it: the Aire exceeding wholſom, and the earth as fruitfull; productive of all ſorts of grain, but ſpecially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *muſtard ſeed*, but bigger, which they grinde in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferiour to VVheat. The People much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbariſm* ſince the coming of the *Portugals* thither, whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparell. So well skilled in the vertues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Phyſitian*, *Chirurgeon*, and *Apothecary*. Antiently clothed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained ſtill by the *Villages* and poorer ſort in ſome part of the Country. Their chief City, formerly had the name of *Banza*, ſo called becauſe the Kings Court (as the word doth ſignifie) but ſince the receiving of the *Goſpel* it is called S. *Saviours*; diſtant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (ſince it became *Chriſtian*) with a *Biſhops* See, and a fair *Cathedral*, in which are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers, and Ornaments accuſtomably belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it ſelf ſituate on the ſide of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a ſpacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compaſs, full of Villages, Burroughs, and ſcattered houſes, which are thought to houſe 100000. perſons, moſt of them *Portugals*, and their Servants.

4. *BATTA* hath on the VVeſt and South *Pemba*, on the Eaſt the Mountains of the *Sun*, and thoſe called *Sal nitri*; on the North *Pango*. Of the Soile and People there is nothing ſingular to be ſaid, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more military, and better furniſhed for the VVars then the reſt of theſe Provinces: neceſſitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and ſavage People, dwelling about the ſpurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jagges* or *Giacchi*. Theſe naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Seirra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous parts of this Region, under the conduct of one *Elembe*, where they are ſince grown into a People; and become a terrour to their neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans fleſh, which they prefer before that of Beeves or Mutton; not yet ſo qualified by the change of their Country as to build houſes, ſow or plant, or to breed up Cattell; finding it far the eaſier life to maintain themſelves by the labour and ſpoil of others. And which is yet moſt ſtrange of all, though they have each of them many wives, ten or twenty a piece, yet they have no children; but ſtrangle them aſſoon as born, leſt they ſhould be an hindrance to their often wandrings. But as *Plinie* once ſaid of the *Eſſeni*, *Gens æterna eſt in qua nemo naſcitur*: ſo we may alſo ſay of theſe, that they do not want ſucceſſion, though they breed no children; ſelecting out of their Captives and ſtollen children, ſome of either Sex (but neither ſteal nor take them captive under twenty yeers old) to be the *Seminary* (as it were) of a new poſterity. Againſt theſe *Monſters* thoſe of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwiſe able to defend themſelves, their wives and children, from their hands and teeth: inſomuch as this one Province, though none of the biggeſt, is able to raiſe 70000 men, well armed, and fit for any ſervice. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province; ſituate on the banks of the River *Lelanda*, and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, who is always of the *blood Royal*, honoured ſometimes with ſitting at the Kings own Table, which none elſe may do, and of ſo great authority in all *conſultations* that no body dares to contradict him.

5. *PANGO*, is bounded on the South with *Batta*, on the Eaſt extended to the Mountains of the *Sun*, which cloſe up this Country; on the North with *Sunda*; and on the Weſt with parts of *Pemba*, and *Sango*. Of the People, little ſingular, of the Country leſs. Neighboured on the North-eaſt towards *Sierra de Chriſtall*, with the *Languelungi*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Æthiopes Heſperii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; a barbarous Nation, but of ſo conſiderable power, that they are found amongſt the reſt in the *Stile Imperial*. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, not ſubject till of late times to the Kings of *Congo*. The chief Tow of it called *Pango*, is ſeated on the Weſtern bank of the River *Barbele*; the ordinary reſidence of the *Vice-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. *SUNDA*, is bounded on the South with *Batta*, on the North with the great River *Zaire*; on the Eaſt with *Barbele*; and on the Weſt with part of *Songo*. The Country rich in ſeveral Mettals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other, becauſe it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives, and Armour; well furniſhed alſo with *Martrons*, *Sables*, and other Furrs of great eſteeme amongſt Forreigne Merchants. This is the beſt

Region

Region of this Kingdom,not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*; nor much more in length.Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*,which it communicateth to the whole.

7. *SONGO*, is bounded on the East with *Batta*, and *Anzichana*; on the West with the *Æthiopick* Ocean; on the North with the Kingdom of *Loanga*; and on the South with the River *Ambrizi*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both sides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here so turbulent and broad, and so full of *Ilands*, that the one part of it hath little or no commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo* gives this name to the Country; in which is nothing singular for the Soil or People.

8. *ANZICHANA*, hath on the West, part of *Songo* and *Loango*, extended thence unto the East as far almost as the Lake of *Zembre*; on the North some part of the Land of *Negroes*, on the South the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it. The cruellest *Cannibals* in the world; for they do not only eat their Enemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that they may be sure not to want these Dainties, they have *shambles* of mans flesh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous withall, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when sold joynt by joynt then if sold alive, they will cut them out, and sell them so upon the *Shambles*. Yet with these barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be so cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will discharge 28 Arrows (for so many do their *Quivers* hold) before the first of them falls to ground: and of so great fidelity to their Masters, and to those which trust them, that they will rather choose to be killed then either to abuse the trust, or betray their Master. For that cause more esteemed by the *Portugals*, then their other *Slaves*. And for the same, and that only, worthy of so good a Country; said to be rich in Mines of Copper, and very plentifull of *Sanders* both red and gray; which tempered with *Vinegar*, is found by the *Portugals* to be a certain remedy against the *Pox*; as the smoak thereof against the *head-ache*. Towns they have none, or none at least of any reckoning, which deserve place here.

9. *LOANGO* hath on the East *Anzichana*, on the West the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the North *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guinea* in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South the Province of *Songo*, from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Country very hot, as lying under the Line, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more stored with Elephants, then any other of these parts; stretching in length 200 miles within the Land, and for the most part very well watered. The Inhabitants, whom they call *Bramas*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accustomed (as the *Anziqui* and other of these barbarous *Africans*) unto *Circumcision*. Governed by a King of their own, once subject to the Kings of *Congo*; but of late times, both he and the King of the *Anziqui* (for they are also under the command of one *Soveraign* Prince) have freed themselves from that subjection, though still the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani-Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1 *Penga*, the Haven to the rest. 2 *Morumba*, 30 Leagues more Northwards, and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns being more civil then the rest, apparell themselves with the leaves of *Palm trees*; but not so well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree as the more civilized People of the Realms of *Congo*, who out of the leaves thereof well cleansed and purged draw a fine long thred, of which they make Velvets, Damaskes, Sattens, Taffaties, Sarcenets, and the like fine Stuffes.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom seated on the Continent, Let us next look upon the Ilands. The principal of which *LOANDA*, situate over against the Town of S. *Paul* in the Province of *Bamba*; said to be first made out of the sands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coanza*, cast into an heap, and at last made into an Iland. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the same name with the Iland, possessed by the *Portugals*. The Iland destitute of Rivers, but so well furnished with waters, that every where within less then half a yard digging, they find sweet and good: Waters so contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be salt and brackish; when it floweth towards the Iland then most fresh and sweet. But most remarkable is this Iland for the *Cockle fishing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the sands, in baskets, and part them from the sand, as they lie on the shore; the *shells* of which being naturally distinguished into divers colours, serve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, instead of *money*; which is a matter of such moment unto this King that he entertains a Governour in the Iland for no other reason, but to take care about this fishing.

Besides this, there are many Ilands in the River of *Zaire*, now subject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars against them; fighting in Boats which they made of the bodies of a Tree, by them called *Liconde*. The tree so big, that two or three men or more are not able to fathom it: insomuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largest of them, able to contain 200 men. Upon the shores of these Ilands, and in others of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have so great numbers of *Anchioves*, that in winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of these several Members, and of the rest expressed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*, so called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now distinguished from the rest by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or of better fortune, then any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Discovered by the *Portugals* under *Diego Can*, An. 1486. at what times these Kings were at the greatest: called by their subjects *Mani-Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the word *Mani*, signifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated since to the Kingdom also. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath since hapned in this Kingdom may best be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Kings of *Congo*.

1486. 1 *John* not ſo called till converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*, and then *baptized* by this name, in honour of *John* the 2. King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1490. in whoſe reign this diſcovery and *Converſion* hapned.

2 *Alphonſo*, eldeſt ſon of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Chriſtian* Faith, and for that oppoſed by *Panſe Aquitino* his younger Brother: whom with a very ſmall Army, zealouſly invocating the aſſiſtance of *Jeſus Chriſt*, he is ſaid to have vanquiſhed. A Prince, who during his long reign of 50 years did ſeriouſly promote the *Goſpel*, and cauſed all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown, and Churches to be built, and furniſhed in convenient places.

3 *Pedro*, the ſon of *Alphonſo*, in whoſe time was founded the Colledge of 28 *Canons*, in the *Cathedral* Church of S. *Croſs*, in the Town of S. *Saviours*.

4 *Franciſco* the ſon of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.

5 *Diego*, or *James*, one of the kinſmen of *Franciſco*, in whoſe time *Religion* growing into diſcredit, by the ſcandalous lives of ſome of the *Secular Clergie*; *John* the 3. King of *Portugal* ſent four *Jeſuits* thither; who are ſaid to have *converted* in five moneths 5000 perſons; and to build three Churches.

6 *Henry*, the brother of *Diego*, after a ſharp War touching the Succeſſion, in which were ſlain all the *Portugals* of S. *Saviours*, except the *Prieſts*, at laſt ſucceeded; not long after ſlain in battell againſt the *Anziques*.

7. *Alvarez*, the ſon of *Henry*, forced by the *Jagges* or *Giacchi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himſelf, together with the *Portugal* Prieſts, to an Iland of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till reſtored to his Crown by the aid of *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugal*; after by famine he had loſt almoſt all his company.

8 *Alvarez* II. Son of *Alvarez* the firſt, who much ſollicited *Sebaſtian* and *Henry* Kings of *Portugal*, to ſend him a new ſupply of Preachers; the old ſtore being waſted in the Ilands of *Zaire*.

9 *Alvarez* III. Son of *Alvarez* the 2. not being born in Lawfull wedlock, was oppoſed by one of his Siſters and a younger Brother, both of lawfull birth; whom he overthrew, *Anno* 1587. and in the place of the victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revennues* of theſe Kings of *Congo*, I am able to ſay nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great power and riches. His *Riches* viſible by the great treaſures which he draweth from the *Mines* of ſilver, and of other Mettals in his Kingdome; from the trade of *Cockle ſhells*; the only money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himſelf; the great gain which he makes by *Slaves* and from Elephants teeth; the preſents which he hath in way of Tribute from the King of *Angola*. And though it be not eaſie to ſay what he layeth up yeerly, becauſe he hath not his *Revenue* in Coin, as moſt Princes have; yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furniſhed with all things, as any Monarch in *Africk*.

As for his *Forces*, they conſiſt moſt in the multitudes of his Subjects, which were they well armed and uſed to the Wars, would make him formidable to the reſt of the *African* Princes. And though he hath no garriſons or Towns of war, but muſt truſt, if once invaded, unto *Caſtles of bones*; yet he doth reſt ſecure enough from all fear of danger except out of *Europe*: being able to raiſe againſt his *Rebels*, or any of his invading neighbours; 400000 men out of *Bamba* only; all armed according to their manner; and 70000 men at leaſt well exerciſed in Wars againſt the *Jagges*, from the Province of *Batta*; beſides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The *Arms* of this King are *Mars*, five ſwords meeting in Baſe *Sol*, which Coat was taken by *Alphonſo*, the ſecond King in this Catalogue, becauſe in the battell which he fought againſt *Panſe Aquitine*, he and his Souldiers ſaw (or ſuppoſed they ſaw) ſuch a number of ſhining ſwords hanging in the Aire, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And ſo much for *Æthiopia Inferior*.

OF

OF THE ISLES OF AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Isles of *AFRICK*, we must observe another course then that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Asia*: these Ilands not belonging to any part of the *Continent*, nor under the command of any great Prince, in the accompt of whose Estates they might be considered; but being all of them *independent* and *sui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themselves apart. In our *Chorographie* of which, and the stories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to travel; begining first with those that lie in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and so proceeding by the *Cape of Good Hope* to the Streits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the shorter passage into *America*, and there σὺν θεῷ καὶ ταῖς Μούσαις, conclude our journey. These then we will consider either joynt or separate, as delivered to us by the names of 1 The *Æthiopick Ilands*, 2 *Socotara*, 3 *Madagascar*, 4 *Mobelia*, 5 S. *Helens*, 6 S. *Thomas*, 7 The *Princes Iland*, 8 The *Gorgades* or Ilands of *Cape Vird*, 9 The *Canaries* or the *Fortunate Ilands*, 10 *Madera*, 11 The Iland of *Holy Port*, and 12 The *HESPERIDES*.

1. THE ÆTHIOPICK ILANDS.

1. THE *ÆTHIOPICK ILANDS*, so called because they lie upon the Coast of *Æthiopia Superior*, which were onely known unto the Antients, are more in number then in weight: some of them situate within the Streits of the *Red Sea* or the Gulf of *Arabia*; others without those Streits in the open Ocean.

1. Of those within the *Streits*, not reckoning such as lie upon the shores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already spoken; there is 1 *Asiarte* or *Astrata*, now called *Caiussa*. 2 *Ara Palladis*, so called from some Altar of that Godess, which was there erected. 3 *Gypseris*, by *Plinie* called *Cyris*, but *Gypsus* in *Justinians* Code, renowned in former times for its plenty of metals. 4 *Macaria*, or the *fortunate* Ilands, so called from the fertility and pleasures of it. 5 *Orneon*, or the *Isle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6 *Daphnis*, by *Ptolomie* called *Daphnine*, opposite to a famous Port-town of the same name in the Continent. 7 *Bacchias*, so called from *Bacchus* unto whom consecrated. 8 *Anti-Bacchias*, so named because opposite to it. 9 *Acanthine*, supposed by some to be now called *Anghotina*. 10 *Insula Diodori*, conceived by the Learned to be the same which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and giveth name unto the *Streits* or entrance of the Bay of *Arabia*, now called the Streits of *Babel Mandel*. 11 *Isidis Insula*, memorable for a Temple dedicated to the Godesse *Isis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Isidis*; the same which is now called *Pascua*, as *Bel-forest* thinketh. 12 *Mundi*, an Iland in the Bay of *Avalites*, opposite to a noted *Emporie* of the same name on the shores of that Bay. Besides all which, we find in *Ptolomie* two Ilands by the name of *Thrisitides*, two more called *Chelonitides* or *Cathrata*, two others passing by the name of *Gomadeæ*, together with the Isles of *Myron*, *Pan*, and that called *Insula Magorum*; which make up one and twenty in all; but of no note or observation in the course of business, or the conduct of humane affairs.

Those of most note in the Open Ocean, which still preserveth the name of the *Red-Sea*, and is sometimes called the *Indian*, sometimes the *Arabian* Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypadis*, are but four in number; that is to say, 1 *Myrica*, by the Translator of *Ptolomie* called *Myrsiaca*; 2. 3. two Ilands called by the name of *Menan*, a degree more Northwards then the other; and 4 *Awicusia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Insula*, as called by *Ptolomie*, the most North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the most noted Iland of this Sea. I know that many Learned men will have this Iland to be that which *Ptolomie* and others of the Antients call *Dioscoridis*: but because *Dioscoridis*, by all those Antients, is made to be an Iland of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Isle of *Africk*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our best modern *Geographers*, that *Socotara* lieth over against Cape *Guardafu*, (the *Aromata* of *Ptolomie*, as before is said) from which distant not above 30 leagues: which site and distance sort well with *Amicusia*, but can by no means be applied unto *Dioscoridis*; *Amicusia* being placed but two Degrees on the East of that Promontorie in the *Longitude* of 85. whereas *Dioscoridis* is situate from it almost four degrees, in the *Longitude* of 86, and 40 *Minutes*; besides as great or greater difference in their several *Latitude*. So that supposing it for granted, that *Socotara* is that Iland which was antiently called *Amicusia*; and having cleered my way so far, I now proceed to the Description and affairs thereof.

2. SOCOTARA.

2. SOCOTARA, the greatest Iland of these Shores, is situate, as before was said, against Cape *Guardafu*, from which distant about 30 leagues; *Abadalemy* a small Iland lying in the middest, that is to say, 15 leagues from the *Cape*, and 14 from the Iland. The length hereof 60 miles, 25 the breadth;

divided

divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height, the top of which are for the moſt part covered with ſands. The Iland extremely vexed with winds. and moleſted with dryneſs, inſomuch as it is deſtitute of moſt things neceſſary for the life of man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but ſome ſmall quantity of Mill, Dates, and ſome kind of Fruits. Provided notwithſtanding of ſome good Paſtures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furniſhed with medicinal Druge, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragons blood*, which is a *Red gum* iſſuing from the bark of a tree; and the beſt *Aloes* in the world, from hence called *Aloes Socotrina*.

The People of an *Aſh-colour*, very rude and barbarous; their bread for the moſt part of *Dates*, the reſt of their food being milk and butter; their hair long, and their clothing only enough to hide their nakedneſs. The *Women* as good Soldiers as the Men; countenancing or occaſioning the tradition of the *Arabians*, that they came from the *Amazons*: And the better Husbands of the two, governing all affairs both within and without. All of them by profeſſion *Chriſtians*, governed by a *Biſhop* of their own, with ſome few *Prieſts*, but ignorant enough of all things which concern *Religion*. More generally *Circumciſed* then *Chriſtened*, though both uſed among them. *Jacobites* in Sect, as the *Abaſſines* their neighbours are; and zealous worſhippers of the *Croſs*, which they alwayes hang about their necks. So pertinaciouſly addicted unto *Magick*, and therein ſo expert, that they bring incredible things to paſs: not to be weaned from thoſe *black Arts*, though the Biſhop excommunicate all ſuch as uſe them. They hold opinion that S. *Thomas* ſuffered ſhipwrack upon their Coaſts, as he ſailed towards *India*; and that his Ship being drawn to land, was turned into a *Church*: but it appeareth neither by their life or doctrines, that any *Apoſtolical* man hath ſet foot amongſt them.

They live for the moſt part in *Caves*, or *Cabbins* of no other ſtuffe then the boughs of trees; ſo that we are to look for few Towns among them. The principal, 1 *Zocotara*, giving name to the Iland, the place of the Kings reſidence, and a Biſhops See. 2 *Tamarind*, and 3 *Deliſha*, two Port-towns, and reaſonably well traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4 *Coro*, and 5 *Benin*, two other Ports, poſſeſſed and garriſon'd by the *Portugals*. The King hereof a Vaſſal to the King of *Fartac*, one of the petit Princes of *Arabia Felix*, not far from *Aden*; in habit and Religion *Turkiſh*: Attended on when the *Relater* was there, *An.* 1614. by five Camels and five Horſes only, yet thoſe all in the Iland.

Nigh hereunto are two Iſlands, (thoſe poſſibly which *Ptolomie* calleth *Monan*) the one inhabited by men only, and the other by women; who do meet at their accuſtomed times to preſerve their kind, but make no long ſtay, the Air of the one being found unhealthy for the conſtitution of the other Sex. The other Ilands of theſe Coaſts, ſcattered up and down in the Bay of *Barbaria*, (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolomie*) as 1 *Don Garcia*, 2 the three Brethren, 3 S. *Brandon*, 4 *Francis*, 5 *Maſcadenna*, 6 *Comoro*, and many others of as ſmall note, are not worth the ſpeaking of.

3. MADAGASCAR.

3. MADAGASCAR, the greateſt of the world, is ſituate over againſt *Moſambique* in *Æthiopia Inferior*, ſuppoſed to be the *Menuthias* of *Ptolomie*, the onely Iland by him named on the Coaſt of that Country; but by the *Portugals* called the Iſle of S. *Lawrence*, becauſe diſcovered by them on the day of that Saint, *An.* 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 miles, (which is longer then *Italy*) and 4000 in compaſs: the middle part hereof oppoſite to the Promontory which *Ptolomie* calleth *Praſſum*, now the Point of *Moſambique*, from which diſtant 170 miles: in reference to the Heavenly Bodies, ſituate from the 17 Degree of Southern *Latitude* to the 26.

The Country plentifull of all things neceſſary for the life of man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Hony, Wax, Cotton wooll, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Limons and other cooling fruits, ſome ſtore of Ginger, *Cloves* but little different from thoſe of *India*, Red Sanders, Saffron, *Amber*, and ſome Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to ſay any thing of their Beeves and Muttons, ſo large, and good, and ſo good cheap, that for a twopenny Bead or ſome ſuch trifle they will ſell Beeves and Sheep of good taſte and bigneſs: ſuch numbers of Elephants, that they ſend thence yearly great ſtore of *Ivory*: and amongſt other rare fruits, they have plenty of thoſe which they call *Cocos* or *Coconuts*; a kind of *Date* as big as a *Cabbage*; the liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, taſtes like wine and ſugar, the kernel big enough to content two men; and like *good Ale* it affords not only meat and drink, but clothing; as alſo furniture for their houſes, tackle for their ſhips, fewel for the fire, and timber for building; the body of the Tree being ſtrait and high, and towards the top diverſified into many branches. A Country far too good for ſo bad a people.

For they, as Travellers report, and moſt Writers teſtifie, are treacherous, inhoſpitable, ignorant both of Prayers and Feſtivals, deſtitute of the diſtinction of time into years and moneths, not knowing any proper names for the dayes of the week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked, except their *privities* which they cover with Cotton. *Idolaters* in the midland parts, & *Mahometans* upon the ſhores. Commendable only for their hate to *Polygamie*, and reſtraining themſelves to one wife; the defiling of the marriage-bed ſeverely puniſhed: but otherwiſe ſo eager upon *copulation*, that their Boyes at the age of twelve years, and the Girls at ten, think they ſtay too long, if they keep their *Virginities* any longer; ſome of them, like *Quartilla* in *Petronius Arbiter*, begin ſo early, *ut nunquam meminerint*

nerint ſe Virgines fuiſſe, that they remember not the time when they loſt their *Maidenheads*. Of colour they are black, and of ſtrong compoſition; their breaſts and faces cut and pinkt, to appear more beautiful. Much given unto the wars, well armed according to their Country manner, and exceeding good *Archers*. Amongſt them there are ſome white people, ſaid to come from *China*.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their names I find not: and at the mouths of thoſe Rivers ſome convenient Havens, into which they admit the forrein Merchants, but ſuffer none to come on land; which the Merchant hath no cauſe to be ſorry for, finding himſelf not ſafe on ſhipboard from their treacherous practiſes. So that we can give but ſmall Account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their names: as *viz.* 1. *S. Auguſtines*, on a fair Bay in the South-weſt point, as 2 *Gangomar* in the North-eaſt of it; 3 *Antaboſta*, 4 *Point-Antogil*, 5 *Santo-Jacobo*, 6 *Matatana*, 7 *Angoda*, 8 *Herendo*, 9 *Andro-arco*, and 10 *Roma* or *New-Rome*, ſo entituled by ſome zealous *Romaniſt*, in hope to have it thought that the Popes of *Rome* have got ſome footing in this Iland.

This Iland known, but very imperfectly, in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many ſtrange things of it; but none more ſtrange then that of the Bird called *Ruck*, of ſuch incredible ſtrength & bigneſs, that it could ſnatch up an *Elephant* as eaſily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Diſcovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506. as before was ſaid; and ſince frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further touching the Eſtate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four parts, under ſo many Kings, each of them in continual wars againſt one another, but well enough agreed to defend themſelves againſt the coming in of Strangers: yet as ſome ſay, they would be well enough content with an *Engliſh Plantation*; either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more courteous then the *Portugals*, and not ſo covetous as the *Dutch*; or elſe by the ſtrength of our Shipping, and the reputation of our *intereſſe* in it, to keep off all others.

4. *MOHELIA*, & 5. *MAURITIUS Iland.*

ADjoyning to *Madagaſcar*, and as it were attending on it, I find divers Ilands; ſome on the North-weſt, ſome directly Eaſt. On the North-weſt we have 1 *Meottey*, 2 *Chamroe*, 3 *Mohelia*, and 4 *Joanna* Iland; on the Eaſt, 5 the Iland of *Mauritius*, and 6 *Englands Foreſt*. Of theſe *Mauritius* is the greateſt, but *Mohelia* the beſt inhabited.

4. *MOHELIA* ſituate on the North-weſt of *Madagaſcar*, is about 20 miles in length, and 16 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, *Coconuts*, Limons, Orenges, Pom-Citrons, Pulſe, *Sugar-Canes*; ſtore of Fiſh taken on the ſhores, and other neceſſaries. The People of complexion black, of compoſition large and ſtrong, couragious, affable, leſſe treacherous then their neighbours of *Madagaſcar*. Of the ſame Language and *Religion* with thoſe of *Arabia*, from whence they ſeem to have deſcended; but by reaſon of their commerce and intercourſe with the *Portugals*, they ſpeak that tongue alſo. The *Women* of the like complexion: to amend which, and ſeem more lovely, they pink their arms and faces in ſeveral ſhapes. Both ſexes no otherwiſe apparalled then their natural garments, with ſome *Plantane* Leaves about their middle to hide their ſhame.

Their *Religion* that of *Mahomet*, as before is ſaid: their *Prieſts* in great eſteem amongſt them; ſo their *Temples* alſo, which they keep clean and neatly matted, not ſuffering any man to enter with his ſhooes on his feet. Their chief Town *Merianguea*, at the Weſt-end of the Iſle, ſtrong and well-garriſon'd. Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities: one of the laſt Kings leaving two daughters, the one married to a *Native*, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger then this, on the Eaſt of *Madagaſcar*, is the Iſle of *MAURITIUS*, ſo called by the *Hollanders* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whoſe time they firſt ſet footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by ſome *Cygnæa*. In compaſs about 100 miles: well ſtored with Beeves, Hogs, Goats, moſt ſorts of Fiſh; and liberally endowed with all the bleſſings of Nature, ſweet Waters, moſt delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any uſe both of food and building; plenty of *Ebonie* of all colours, but the beſt *coal-black*. Yet altogether deſtitute of humane Inhabitants: inſomuch as we may ſay of this, as the Poet of the World, before Man was made:

Sanctius his Animal, *mentiſque capacius altæ*
Deerat adhuc, & quod dominari *in cætera poſſet.*

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

But yet the Chief, *with Supreme power poſſeſt,*
Was wanting, he that ſhould command *the reſt.*

6. S. *HELENS*, & 7. *The Iſles of ASCENTION.*

6. AS deſtitute of Inhabitants as the Iſle of *Mauritius*, is that of S. *HELEN*, on the Weſt ſide of the *Cape of Good Hope*, & in the 16 Degree of Southernly *Latitude*; no other Iland interpoſing betwixt

betwixt *Madagascar* and it, except those of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tristram de Acugna*, neer the *Cape* it self; but of so little note as not worth the naming. The Iland very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with so steep an ascent, that the *Mariners* have amongst them a merry saying, that *A man may choose whether he will break his* heart *going up, or his* neck *coming down.*

It was thus called because discovered by the *Portugals* on *S. Helens* day: not then inhabited nor since, the King of *Spain* suffering none to dwell there, because it had been made an unlawful *receptacle* for *uncustomed* Goods, whereby he lost exceedingly both in power and profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the first Discovery with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as also with Figs, Limons, Orenges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly: and grow all the year long. Intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies:* in which they might refresh themselves, and bestow their sick, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Used for the same purpose by the *English* and *Hollanders*, who so domineer about the Iland, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor neer it, or own their *property*, if they see any shipping in the Rode. No buildings in it but the ruins of a little Chappel, destroyed by the *Hollanders:* and some fragment of a little Village begun by some *Portugal* Mariners, but demolished by the King of *Spain.*

7. Northwest from hence is the Isle of *Ascension*, so called because discovered on *Ascension* day: but not inhabited, nor any use at all made of for ought I can finde. Of the same bigness with S. *Helens*, 30 miles in compass, and about 700 *English* miles distant from it.

8. S. *THOMAS*, 9 the *PRINCES* Iland, and 10 the Isle of *ANNIBON.*

8. THe Iland of S. *THOMAS* is situate directly under the *Æquator*, of *Orbicular* form, the *Diameter* being 60 miles; by consequence the *Perimeter* or compass 180; and just so many from the shore of the Realm of *Congo.* At the first discovery nothing but a continual *Forest*, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negroes*: these last brought hither from the opposite *Continent*, with whom the Air agrees so well, that they attain generally to 110 years of Age, few of the *Portugals* unto fifty. The Aire so vehemently hot that it sorteth not with the constitution of the *Europæans.*

The Country destitute of wheat, which if sown here, turneth all to *blade*, and brings forth no Ear, nor will any fruits here prosper that have any stone in them: but so abundant in *Sugar-canes* and well stored with Sugars, that 40 Ships are hence loaded yeerly, with that one commoditie; for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or Sugar-houses, and in each of them 200 Slaves, in some 300 which belong to the works; six dayes in seven these *Slaves* work for their Masters, and the seventh for themselves; which they spend in sowing and planting their Seeds, Fruits, and Provisions. Where by the way, these Sugar-works or *Ingenios* are a late invention; the boyling and baking of Sugar (as it is now used) not being above 200 years old; and the refining of it more new then that: first found out by a *Venetian* in the days of our Fathers, who is said to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his son a Knight; who (though he was no Knight of the *Post*) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of boyling and refining Sugars, our Ancestors not having such luxurous Palates, sometimes made use of rough Sugar, as it came from the *Canes*; but most commonly pleased themselves with honey, more wholsom, because more natural then these forced Inventions. But to proceed in the description of this Iland, in the midst thereof thereof there is said to be a woody Mountain, overshadowed continually with *Clouds*, which so moysten the trees that grow there in a great abundance, that from thence falleth a sufficient quantity of waters to refresh their Fields, and feed their *Sugar-Canes*; notwithstanding the extream heat of the Clime and Aire.

The *Religion* here allowed of is the *Christian* only, first preached here by the *Portugals* or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a *Bishop*, his title the Bishop of S. *Thomas*, but his charge extendeth also over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo.* The principal City of it hath the name of *Pavoasan*, a Colony of *Portugals*, consisting of 700 Families, or about that number: situate on a fine River, and a pleasant Haven: seldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither in exchange for *Sugars*, Wheat, Wine, Cheese, Hides, and other things more necessary then those *Sugars*, for the life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders* in the year 1599. but again recovered or abandoned.

9. *THE PRINCES ILAND*, (*Insula Principis* in the *Latine*) so called for that the *Revenues* of it were alotted to the Prince of *Portugal*, is situate in three Degrees of Northern *Latitude.* The Country very fruitfull for the bigness of it; but not much observable: except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clerehagen, Anno* 1598. abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended, as is fit for a *Princes* Iland, by a *Messe* of *Chaplains*, *viz.* 1. the Isles of *S. Matthew*, 2 *S. Cross*, 3 *S. Paul*, and 4 *S. Conception*. and waited on by *seven* servants (so many Ilands neer *Cape Vero*) all in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbacene.* But because the former four yield no matter of *History*, and these last seven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought having said thus much of them, to have said enough.

10. Southwest hereof, but on the other side of the Line, lieth the Isle of *Annobon*, (*Insula Anniboni* as the *Latines* call it) So named because discovered upon *New-yeers day.* Inhabited, and of very good fishing all along the Coasts of it; but that Fishing made unsafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venemous and hurtfull Creatures, which are said to be about the shores in great abundance.

11. The

11. The *GORGADES*, or Isles of *CAPE VERD.*

11. THe *GORGADES*, or Ilands of *Cape Verd* (*Insula Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are 9. in number; called by the last name because situate over against *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negroes*. Their names 1 S. *Anthony*, 2 S. *Vincent*, 3 *Buenavista*, 4 S. *Lucies*, 5 *Insula Salis*, the Isle of *Salt*, 6 *Del Fogo*, or the Isle of *Fire*, 7 *S. Nicholas*, 8 *Maggio*, or *Majo*, 9 *S. Jago*. Some add to these a tenth, called *Brava* Discovered all in the year 1440 by a *Genoese* called *Antonio de Noli*, employed therein at the charges & direction of *Henry* Duke of *Visco* one of the younger sons of K. *John* of *Portugal*, the first of that name. Of the most little to be said. The principal, and indeed the only ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, *S. Jago*, 1 *Majo* is of most repute for a *Lake* of two Leagues long; the waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2 *Del Fogo* is so called from the Flakes of fire which it sends forth usually, and fell so thick upon the Ship of Sir *Anthony Sherley* when he took the Iland, *An.* 1596. that one might have writ his name in the ashes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3. The principal of all *S. Jago*, yet but seven miles long; rockie and mountainous, but full of very pleasant Valleys, and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Riblera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; situate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and sacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, in the year 1585, and after by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, An. 1596.

The name of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almost forgotten. Given to those Ilands, as supposed (but I cannot see upon what grounds) to be the seat of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation or dwelling place of *Medusa* and her two fair sisters. This *Medusa* said, or rather fabled by the Poets, to have been a Woman of great beauty; Who either for suffering her body to be abused by *Neptune*, in one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her self before *Pallas*, had by the said Goddess, her hair turned into *Snakes*; and this property annexed unto them, that whosoever looked on her, should be turned into *stones*: which quality is retained after she was slain, and beheaded by *Perseus*. Thus and far more fabulously the Poets. The Historians (for as some think, *omnis fabula fundatur in historia*) relate, how this *Medusa* was indeed a Lady of such exceeding beauty, that all men that saw her, were amazed: and of such a wise and subtile brain, that for that cause only men attributed unto her a *Serpents* head. She abounding in wealth, and by *piracy* molesting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Grecians*, under the leading of *Perseus*; who in a single combat slew her. *Perseus* when he plucked off her helmet, admiring that beauty which he had destroyed, cut off her head, and carried it into *Greece*: where the people beyond measure wondred at the rare compositure of her face, and the exceeding beauty of her haire; and are therefore said to have by her head been metamorphosed into stones. *Pausanias* in his *Corinthiacks* so reports the story.

12. *The CANARIES.*

THe *CANARIES* are in number seven, situate over against the Coast of *Libya Interior*; so called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Plinie*, *Ptolomy*, and other of the Ancient Writers they were called *Insulæ Fortunatæ*, the fortunate Ilands; and amongst them of greatest note five being made the fixed place of the first *Meridian*; removed since to S. *Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But those Antients knew but six of them by name, and in the naming of these six do not well agree. By *Plinie*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are said to be 1 *Ombrio*, 2 *Junonia Major*, 3 *Junonia Minor*, 4 *Capraria*, 5 *Nivaria*, and 6 *Canaria*. By *Ptolomy* thus reckoned, 1 *Aprositus*, 2 *Hera* (or *Junonia*) 3 *Pluitania*, 4 *Casperia*, 5 *Canaria*, and 6 *Pincuria*; Where we may note also to our purpose, that though these Authors disagree in all the rest of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Translator unto *Ptolomies Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one; which sheweth that one to be of eminence enough to give the name of *Canarie* Ilands unto all the rest. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the Ancients had of their fruitfulness and other excellencies; in which respects, several Countries, in those times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1 *Canarie*, 2 *Palma*, 3 *Tenaritte*, 4 *Gomero*, 5 *Ferro*, 6 *Lanserotte*, and 7 *Fuerte Ventura*.

1. *CANARIA* or *Canaria Magna*, because the biggest of the Cluster is said to be 90 miles in compass, and to contain 9000 persons: Plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, *Sugar Canes*, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which, and of their Cheese, and the skins of Beasts they raise great profit: but from nothing more then from their Wood (whereof they have very great abundance) used by the Clothier for the well colouring of his Cloth. From hence and from the other of these Ilands which bear this name, come the fine singing Birds called *Canary Birds*; and so do also those rich Wines (the fruit of the *Rhenish* Grape transplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A sort of wine, if not sophisticated and abused, which is said to fume less into the head, please the *Palat* more, and better help the natural weakness of a cold stomack (if moderatly and discreetly used) then any other Wines whatsoever. Brought hence in such abundance to supply our luxury, that no less then 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yeerly into *England* and the *Netherlands* onely.

2. *PALMA*, the one of the least in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in VVine and Sugars; abundantly well stored with Cattell, and great plenty of Cheese; and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spanish* Fleets, as they passe to *Brasil*, and *Peru*. This Iland together with *Canary*,

and *Tenariffe*, make up the Biſhoprick of the *Canaries*, one of the Biſhops whereof was that *Melchior Canus* a *Dominican* Frier, whoſe works now extant in defence of the Church of *Rome*, ſhew him to have been a moderate and learned man, and Maſter of a perfect *Ciceronian* ſtile. The reſidue of the Ilands are of the Dioceſe of *Madera*.

3. *TENARIFFE*, ſomewhat leſs then the *Grand Canarie*, but of the ſame fertility and condition with it; is moſt remarkable for a Mountain of ſo great an height, that it may be ſeen 90 Leagues at Sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 miles high, others 15. Leagues, and ſome advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. VVith truth enough moſt of our *Travellers* and *Geographers* hold it to be the higheſt in the whole world. The Form, *Pyramidal*, in ſhape agreeing to theſe Prodigies of Art and Wonder, the *Ægyptian Pyramides*. The top whereof ending in a ſharp point, called the *Pike of Tenariffe*, is ſaid to be ſeldom without ſnow; and therefore problably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Plinie*.

4. *HIERRO*, or *FERRI inſula*, ſo called from the *Iron Mines* therein, is by ſome thought to be the *Pluitalia*, by others the *Aproſitus* of *Ptolomy*; and ſome again more probably the *Ombrio* of *Plinie*, if this and *Ptolomies Plvitalia* be not one and the ſame, as for my part I think they be. And it might poſſibly have thoſe names in the *Greek* and *Latine*, becauſe it hath in it no freſh waters but what they do receive in ſhowres, and preſerve in *Ciſterns*: it being added by late VVriters (which the Ancients knew not) that theſe ſhowres do daily fall upon them from the *Leaves* of a tree, which always covered with a Cloud doth diſtill theſe waters, preſerved in a large *Ciſtern* underneath the tree, for the uſe of Man and Beaſt throughout the Iland.

5. *GOMERA*, now as *civil* and well *cultivated* as any of the reſt, was the moſt barbarous of all when firſt diſcovered: it being here, and here only the ordinary ſign and evidence of their *Hoſpitality*, to let their friends lie with their wives, and receive theirs in teſtimony of *reciprocal* kindneſs: for which cauſe here, as in ſome places of the *Indies*, the Siſters ſon did uſe accuſtomably to inherit.

6. *LANSAROTE* the firſt of theſe Iſlands which was made ſubject to the Crown of *Caſtile*, diſcovered by ſome adventurous *Biſcains* An. 1393. by whom ſpoiled and pillaged, and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality brought away Priſoners into *Spain*. On this diſcovery the Kings of *Caſtile* challenged a propriety in all theſe Ilands; of which more anon.

In this of *Lanſarote* there was an Epiſcopal See erected by Pope *Martin* the 5. removed unto the Iſle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*.

7. *FUERTE-VENTURA*, of the ſame nature with the reſt, ſuppoſed to be the *Capraria* of *Plinie*, and the *Caſperia* of *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable. Neer unto theſe, but not within the name and notion of the *Fortunate* or *Canary* Iſles, are certain others of leſs note, that is to ſay, 1 *Gratioſa*, 2 *S. Clara*, 3 *Roca*, 4 *Lobos*, 5 *Alegranco*, and 6 *Infierno*, ſmall and of no Accompt, nor yielding any matter of obſervation.

The knowledge of theſe Ilands being loſt with the *Roman* Empire, they lay concealed and undiſcovered till the year 1330. or thereabouts, when an *Engliſh*, or as ſome ſay, a *French* ſhip, diſtreſſed by tempeſt, did in that misfortune fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the reign of King *Alphonſo* the fourth, *Lewis de Ordo* was deſigned for the conqueſt of them. VVho being repulſed at *Gomera*, *An.* 1334. gave the entercourſe over, though on this ground the *Portugals* build their firſt claim unto theſe Ilands. But the news ſpreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the ſixt thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, ſon of *Alphonſo de la Cerde* the right heir of *Caſtile*, by the old name of the *Fortunate Ilands*; and to aſſiſt him in the conqueſt, cauſed Levies of Souldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy*. VVhich coming to the ears of the *Engliſh* Ambaſſadors in the Popes Court, they feared ſome tranſport had been made of the *Britiſh* Ilands (then which they thought that none could better deſerve the name of the *Fortunate Ilands*) and in all haſte diſpatched a Poſt to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the danger. The People at the time of this firſt Diſcovery were ſo rude and ignorant, that they did eat their fleſh raw for want of fire; and tilled or rather turned up the earth with the horns of Oxen, for want of Ploughs or Tools of Iron; their Beards they ſhaved with a ſharp flint, and committed the care of their children to the nurſing of Goats. To kill a Beaſt was conceived to be the baſeſt office that could be poſſibly put upon them, and therefore commonly impoſed on Priſoners and condemned perſons, who being thus made the common *Slaughter-men*, were to live ſeparate from the reſt. Their Government by Kings, in each Iland one: when at their deaths, they ſit up naked in a Cave, propped againſt the wall with a ſtaff in his hand, and a veſſel of Milk faſt by him, the better to enable him for his journey to the other world; and leaving him in the Grave with theſe ſolemn words, *Depart in peace, O thou bleſſed Soul.* The like Funeral they beſtowed alſo on the chief of their *Nobles*. Yet was not the Government in thoſe times ſo purely *Regall*, but that they had a Common Councell (as it were) out of all the Ilands, conſiſting of 130 perſons: who did not only direct in *Civil* matters, but in Sacred alſo, preſcribing to the People both their Faith and VVorſhip; and for their pains were priviledged with the firſt nights lodging with every Bride, which the Husband was to offer to ſome one of them.

But to return unto the Story, nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerde*, in purſuance of the Popes Donation, it hapned in the year 1393. that ſome Adventurers of *Biſcay*, ſetting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to ſeek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongſt theſe Ilands. And having pillaged *Lanſarote* as before was ſaid, and obſerved the number, greatneſs, and ſituation of all the reſt, returned into *Spain*

with

with great ſtore of Wax, Hides, and other commodities, with which thoſe Ilands did abound: extremely welcom to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Caſtile*, and did intend from that time forwards to poſſeſs himſelf of them. By *Catharine* the Dowager of this King *Henry*, during the minority of *John* the 2. the Conqueſt of them was committed to *John* of *Betancourt*, an adventurous *French-man*, (conditioned he ſhould hold them under the ſoveraignty of the Crown of *Caſtile*) by whom four of the Ilands were ſubdued, though he himſelf periſhed in the action, *An.*1417. Young *Betancourt* the ſon, not able to ſubdue *Canary*, to which moſt of the Ilanders had retired, fortified himſelf as well as he could in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*, and took unto himſelf the title of King: which he left not long after to one *Menault*, in whoſe time the Ilands under his command received the Goſpel. and had a See Epiſcopal in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*. But this new King making money by the ſale of his ſubjects (as well of the new *Chriſtians*, as the old *Idolaters*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Caſtile*; and *Pedro Barva de Campos* with three ſhips of war is ſent againſt him: with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Caſtile*, he ſold his intereſſe in theſe Ilands to one *Fernando Peres* a Knight of *Sevil*, who by the wealth and power of that City made good his purchaſe, and left it unto his ſucceſſors. But we muſt know that the poſterity of this *Peres* enjoyed the four leſſer Ilands only; *Canaria* it ſelf, *Tenariffe*, and the Iſle of *Palmes*, being under the command of their own Kings, and ſo continued till the reign of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, who in the year 1483. under the conduct of *Alphonſo* of *Muxica*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two noble Captains, became maſter of them; and tranſlated the Epiſcopal See from *Lanſarote* to the *Great Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim theſe Ilands in right of the firſt diſcovery, yet the poſſeſſion hath gone alwayes with the Crown of *Caſtile*. Divided at the preſent into two Eſtates, (but the one ſubordinate to the other) *Gomera*, *Lanſarote*, and *Hierra*, being in the hands of ſome private Subjects; thoſe which belong unto the Crown, being *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuerte-Ventura*, are ſaid to yield yearly to the King 50000 *Ducats*; the Seat of Juſtice being fixed in the Iſle of *Canaria*, unto which all the reſt reſort as they have occaſion.

13. *MADERA*, & 14. *HOLY-PORT*.

13. *MADERA*, the greateſt Iland of the *Atlantick*, is ſituate in the Latitude of 32 over againſt the Cape of *Cantin* in *Morocco*; in compaſs 140 miles, ſome adde 20 more. So called of the wilderneſs of Trees there growing, when firſt diſcovered; the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latines* call *Materia*, & we *Engliſh* Timber: with which the Iſle was ſo overgrown, that the beſt way to cleer it and make it habitable, was by conſuming them with fire; which raged ſo horribly for the time, that the people imployed in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refreſh themſelves. But the *Husbandry* was well beſtowed; the *Aſhes* making ſo good *compoſt* to enrich the ſoil, (as burning the Turf of barren lands, and ploughing the Aſhes of it, on ſome grounds with us) that at the firſt it yielded *ſixty-fold* increaſe. And though the firſt vertue of that experiment be long ſince decayed, yet ſtill it yieldeth *thirty fold* in moſt places of it; fruitful withal of a kind of Plant uſed in dying Clothes, which is hence called *Mader*; and of *Sugar Canes* in ſuch a wonderful manner, that for a time the fifths of the *Sugars* herein made amounted yearly to 60000 *Azzobes*; now not half ſo much. The Iſle wonderfully fruitful alſo of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choiceſt Wines, the Slips whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more grapes then leaves, and Cluſters of two, three, and four ſpans long. The Hils well ſtored with Goats; the Plains with numerous Herds of Cattel; the Woods with Peacocks, Thruſhes, Pigeons: theſe laſt ſo ignorant of the injury which Man might do them, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would ſuffer themſelves to be taken up; but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

The whole Iland in all parts well watered, having beſides many pleaſant Springs, eight handſome *Riverets*, wherewith ~~the Earth refreſh'd and moiſtned, yields the ſweeter~~ Herbage; which otherwiſe by reaſon of the heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be ſo nouriſhing. The chief City of it hath the name of *Fonchial* the See of an Archbiſhop, and the Seat of Juſtice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Junonis*, or *Antolala*, as many learned men conceive; and again forgotten, it was of later times diſcovered by one *Machan* an *Engliſh*-man, who was caſt upon it by a tempeſt, *An.*1344. who burying there his wife, or ſome other woman which he had in his company, writ on her tomb his name and coming thither, with the cauſe thereof; which gave the *Portugals* occaſion to look further after it. Deſolate, and unpeopled at the firſt diſcovery; now exceeding populous, and of no ſmall advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which firſt united, *An.*1420. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* before mentioned.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI*, or the Iſle of *HOLY-PORT*, is diſtant from *Madera* about 40 miles, neighbouring the Coaſts of *Mauritania Tingitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Ptolomie*. So called, becauſe diſcovered by ſome *Portugal* Mariners (by the direction and encouragement of the ſaid P. *Henry*) on *All-hallows* day, *An.*1428. Deſolate and unhabited at the firſt diſcovery, but now very well peopled. In compaſs about 15 miles; well ſtored with Corn and Fruits, great ſhoals of Fiſh upon their ſhores, plenty enough of Beeves and Goats; but ſuch abundance of Conies (bred of one *Doe Coney* brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no leſs peſtered with them in theſe later times, then the *Baleares* were of old; inſomuch that they were out of hope to withſtand the miſchief, or repair the *damages* ſuſtained by them: A little Iland not far off, breedeth nothing elſe. The chief Town of it *Porto Santo*, or *Holy-*

Port, ſeated on a convenient Rode, but a ſorry Haven: was taken by Sir *Amias Preſton*, in our wars with *Spain*, An. 1596. but being ſacked and ſpoiled, was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was ſaid, and reckoned for the moſt remote *Colony* which the *Carthaginians* or *Phœnicians* had in the Weſtern Ocean, beyond which they conceived the Sea to be unnavigable, (proved otherwiſe by *Hanno's* voyage) choked with mud and weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (*Æthiopum populos alit ultima Cerne*) by *Feſtus Ruſus*, and others of the Antient writers.

15. THE HESPERIDES.

15. THE *HESPERIDES*, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are ſaid to be two in number, ſituate in the *Atlantick* Seas, but we find not where. Much memorized and chanted by the Antient Poets, for the giving a ſafe and pleaſant habitation to the daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the name of *Heſperides* alſo); the curious Gardens by them planted, and the *Golden Apples* of it which were kept by a Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Hiſtorians* remove theſe Gardens out of the Sea into the main Land of *Africk*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already ſpoken of. Which notwithſtanding, it is granted that there were antiently ſome Ilands in the *Atlantick* Ocean, noted by this name, and ſaid to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord: and therefore probably the ſame which *Plutarch* in the Life of *Sertorius* calleth *Inſulæ Atlanticæ*, and deſcribes them thus. "Αι δύο μὲν εισὶ, λίαν παντάπασι ποσθμῷ διακεκριμέναι, &c. They are (ſaith he) two Ilands parted "by a narrow *Streit* of the Sea, diſtant from the main land of *Africk* 10000 furlongs (which in our "accompt cometh to 1250 miles) called alſo the Iſles of *Bleſſed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Ilands*. "They have rain there very ſeldom, but a fine ſweet Dew, which makes the Earth exceeding fruitful "both for tillage and planting fruits, which ſometimes grow without any care or labour of the "husband-man; ſufficient by their plenty and ſweetneſs to maintain the people, much given to eaſe, "and hardly troubling themſelves with any buſineſs. The Air for the moſt part very temperate, never "extreme in any changes of the ſeaſon; the rigor of the Northern and Eaſtern winds being by ſo "long a paſſage thither very much abated; as on the other ſide the Weſtern and South-Eaſtern "winds do much refreſh it with ſuch Miſts as they bring from the Sea, to the great comfort of the "people. A place ſo generally ſweet, that the Barbarous people in it have a conſtant and approved "opinion, that theſe ſhould be the *Elyſian Fields*, the ſeats of the bleſſed ſouls departed, deſcribed "by *Homer*: with the report whereof *Sertorius* was ſo highly taken, that he intended to have given "over the purſuit of the *Civil* wars, and there to ſpend the reſt of his dayes in peace and happineſs; "which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, men accuſtomed unto ſpoil and rapine, had not took him off. So far and to this purpoſe *Plutarch*. But what theſe Ilands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great diſtance from the Coaſt of *Africk*, they cannot be the *Fortunate Ilands* ſpoken of before) I cannot eaſily determine: unleſs we ſhould conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Ilands of *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola*, on the Coaſts of *America*; to the Storie and *Chorographie* whereof we are now to haſten.

And ſo much for the *Iſles* of *Africk*.

A Table of the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

	Long.	*Latit.*	
A			
Agadez	39. 20.	25. 30.	
Alexandria	67. 0.	31. 20.	
Algiers	33. 0.	35. 20.	
Amara	63. 30.	5. 0.	*A.*
Angola	45. 10.	7. 0.	*A.*
Asna	66. 30.	25.	
Azamor	18. 30.	32. 40.	
Arquin	11. 10.	20. 20.	
Adrimetum			
B			
Babel Mandel	80. 01.	12. 50.	
Bagamedrum	62. 36.	6. 0.	
Barca	62		
Benin	41. 0	7. 40.	
Bona	37. 10.	35. 40.	
Borno	44 30.	17. 10.	
Brava	74. 30.	0. 30.	
Budomel	10. 20.	14 30.	
Bugia	34. 30.	35. 10.	
Babylon Egypt			
C			
Caire	67. 30	30. 0	
Cyrene	53. 30	32. 0	
Canaria	9. 30	27. 20	
Carthage			
Cirta			
D			
Damiata	69. 0	32. 40	
Damut	51. 0	11. 20	
Dancali	65. 0	17. 30	
Dara	66. 50	12. 0	
Docono	78. 20	12. 30	
F			
Fatigar	74. 0	2. 40	*A.*
Feffe	21. 50	32. 50	
Fierro	6. 20	26. 30	
Forte ventura	11. 0	28. 0	
Fouchial	8. 10	31. 30	
G			
Gamba	64. 49	17. 30	*A.*
Guoga	55. 0	22. 0	
Goyami	57. 0	14. 0	*A.*
Gualata	13. 30	23. 30	
Guber	29. 20	10. 40	
H			
Holy Port	10. 0	32. 30	
L			
Lanserot	11. 40	29. 30	
M			
Madagascar	77. 0	19. 0	*A.*
Midazo	78. 0	5. 10	
Malta	46. 0	35. 30	
Manicongo	47. 20	7. 0	*A.*

	Long.	*Latit.*	
Morocco	10. 0	30. 30	
Melinde	71. 20	3. 20	*A.*
Meroe	68. 20	16. 15	
Mezzata	47. 48	30. 40	
Mina	28. 50	6. 20	
Mombaza	72. 0	4. 50	*A.*
Mosambique	70. 20	14. 40	
Memphis			
N			
Nubia	60. 0	17. 40	
O			
Oran	29. 40	35. 0	
P			
Palma	6. 20	28. 0	
Pascar	59. 40	1. 20	*A.*
Q			
Quiloa	69. 50	8. 56	
R			
Rameses	68. 30	30. 30	
S			
Sabaim	68. 20	8. 40	
Septa	22. 0	35. 40	
Suachem	72. 40	18. 40	
Sus	27. 30		
Salla			
T			
Tangier	30. 50	35. 0	
Tefethne	16. 10	30. 0	
Tegnit	27. 40	28. 10	
Teient	17. 0	30. 30	
Tenariffe	8. 10	27. 30	
Thesset	20. 0	29. 10	
Telesine	29. 0	34. 10	
Tigremahon	65. 0	6. 0	
Tombuto	20. 50	15. 0	
Tunis	40. 0	36. 0	
Thebes in *Egypt*			
V			
Vella	77. 0	13. 0	
Utica			
Z			
Zacatera	88. 0	12. 50	
Zegreg	36. 40	14. 40	
Zeila	80. 0	11. 20	
Zigec	45. 50	40. 50	
Zimbaus	59. 0	25. 20	*A.*

A is the Mark of a Southern Latitude.

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

COSMOGRAPHIE,

The Fourth Book:

PART II.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY OF

AMERICA,

AND ALL THE PRINCIPAL
Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Ilands of it.

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

Matth. 24. 14.

Et prædicabitur hoc Evangelium regni, in universo Orbe, in testimonium omnibus Gentibus: & tunc veniet consummatio.

S. Hieronym. in locum.

Signum Dominici adventus, est Evangelium in toto Orbe prædicari, ut nullus sit excusabilis: quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Seile.* 1652.

AMERICÆ

Descriptio Nova
Impensis
HENRICI SEILE
Will: Trevethen sculp:
1652

TERRA
BOREALIS
INCOG
The Artick Circle
QVIVIRA
AMERICA
MEXICA
NOVA
ALBI
ON
NEW
GA
Mexico
Granada
Cibola
Capichi
Calicuse
Lavrezina
Los Mogo
Ila desgraciada
Villao
S Thomas
Luzublada
Roca Partida
THE
SOUTHERN
OCEAN
MARE DEL
SUR
THE PACIFICK
SEA
THE EQUINOCTIAL CIRCLE
The Tropicke of Capricorne
I de Los Tubarones
Ids Pedro
TER: AUSTRAL: INCOGNITA
Frotum Magell

Part of Groenland

Brasil

PART OF

Cortegana

Madrid

Toledo

Conuna

SPAIN

Cabo de Lobo

EUROPE

Lisbona

Setuba

C. Roxent

Calis

C. S. Vincent

Larache

Ilas Desiertas

Ilas Salvages

Ilas de Madera

Ilas de Canaria

Ilas de Cabo Verde

Ilas de Bermudas

Ilas de Barlovento

Ilas de Tabago

Ilas de Trinidad

Ilas de Barbada

Ilas de Martin Vaz

Ilas de Fernando de Lorenha

Ilas de Abrolhos

Ilas de Barbara

Ilas de Tamaraca

Ilas de S. Augustho

Ilas de Abreu

Ilas de Jacob

Ilas de Padram

Ilas de Alagado

Ilas de Plagama

Ilas de Tahaiar

Ilas de Ascention

COSMOGRAPHIE,
Lib. IV. Part. II.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY OF AMERICA,

And all the principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF *AMERICA.*

AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and the *Vergivian* Seas, by which parted from *Europe* and *Africa*; which Seas, the Mariners call *Mare del Nort*; on the West with the *Pacifique Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long, but narrow *Streit*, called the *Streits* of *Magellan*; the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Iland* or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: *New*, for the late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vespacius* an Adventurous *Florentine*, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to finde out those parts, came from the directions and example of *Columbus* who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places which *Americus Vespacius* never saw: it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*. The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used then that of *America*, is, the *West Indies*: *West* in regard of the VVestern situation of it from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mistook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Seamen used to call all Countries, if remote, and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on *conjectural* presumptions, then Demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries. Their Reasons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the Ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the World which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Antients was by supposition, at the best by Demonstration only, and not in fact; or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2ly. It is said that *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian* discovered a

great Iland in the Weſtern Ocean, and after a long voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voyage, (which ſome conceive to be *Hanno* himſelf) informs us that he ſailed not Weſtwards, but more towards the South: and therefore this *great Iland*, whatſoever it was, (whether *Madera* or ſome one of the *Fortunate* Ilands, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3. It is alleaged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* ſpeaks of a great Iland of the *Atlantick* Ocean, *Libyam & Africam adæquans* (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Libya*, and *Africk* properly ſo called: which he confeſſeth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore poſſibly never extant but in ſome mens fancies. 4. That *Ariſtotle* in the Book *de Mundo* (if that Book be his) ſpeaks of an Iland very fruitful, and full of navigable Rivers; diſcovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Iland being affirmed by that Author to be *Multorum dierum itinere à* Gadibus *remota*, hath made ſome men conceive it to be this *America*, or ſome of the great Ilands of it. As if it might not be as well one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*, or ſome other of the Ilands in the Road of *Hannos* voyage. Certain *I* am, that one of the beſt friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly loſe ſuch an opportunity of ennobling their performances in *Navigation*, (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit, and knoweth of no ſuch place as is there deſcribed by that Author, whoſoever he were. 5. Some have produced theſe Verſes of *Seneca*, to inferre a knowledge of this Country amongſt the Antients. *Viz.*

Venient annis ſæcula ſeris,
Quibus Oceanus *vincula rerum*
Laxet, & ingens pateat tellus,
Novoſq; Typhis *detegat Orbes,*
Nec ſit Terris ultima Thule.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

In the laſt dayes an Age ſhall come,
Wherein the all-devouring Fome
Sha'l loſe its former bounds, and ſhew
Another Continent *to view.*
New-Worlds, *which Night doth now conceal,*
A ſecond Typhis *ſhall reveal;*
And frozen Thule *ſhall no more*
Be of the Earth the furtheſt Shore.

But this Argument can bring no neceſſary, nor ſo much as a probable inference of any ſuch Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* ſhewing as well the continual dangers, as the poſſible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were more Lands diſcovered, then thoſe formerly known. 6. Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is ſaid in the holy Scriptures to have ſent for Gold. But *Ezion-Geber*, which is there alſo ſaid to be the ſtation where his Navie lay, was ſituate in the bottom of the *Red Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had ſent this way, his ſhipping muſt have lain at *Joppa*, or ſome other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence ſet forwards thorow the Streits of *Gibraltar*, and ſo plainly Weſtward. 7. Finally, in the Hiſtory of *Wales* writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the ſon of *Owen Gwinedth* Prince of *Wales*, of purpoſe to decline ingaging in a *Civil war* raiſed in that Eſtate, in the year 1170. put himſelf to Sea, and after a long courſe of Navigation came into this Country; where after he had left his men, and fortified ſome places of advantage in it, he returned home for more ſupplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the reſt of that Nation. To which ſome adde, that here is ſtill ſome ſmattering of the *Welch* or *Britiſh* tongue to be found amongſt them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Pengwin*, and the like: in which regard ſome ſorry Stateſmen went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the ſoveraignty of theſe Countries; Others more wiſe, diſſwaded from that vain Ambition, conſidering that *Welch men*, as well as others, might be caſt upon thoſe parts by force of tempeſt, and eaſily implant ſome few words of their own among the people there inhabiting. And though I needs muſt ſay for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they ſay, then thoſe which look for this New World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Ilands of *Ariſtotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Diſcoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet am *I* not ſo far convinced of the truth thereof, the uſe of the Mariners *Compaſs* being not ſo antient (without which ſuch a Voyage could not be performed) but that *I* may conclude with more ſatisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former Ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer ſaid once of *Britain*, then newly conquered by the *Romans*; Britannia *qualis ſit, qualeſque progeneret, mox certiora & magis explorata dicentur; quippe jam diu clauſam aperit ecce Principum maximus* (he means *Claudius Cæſar*) *nec indomitarum modo ſed & incognitarum ante ſe Gentium Victor*: ſo may we ſay of *America*, on theſe late diſcoveries: What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do, and ſhall know more certainly then in former times; ſince thoſe puiſſant Kings of *Spain* have laid open all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquiſhed, but even unknown Nations. For God remembring the promiſe of his Son,

that

that his Goſpel ſhould before the end of the VVorld be preached to all Nations, ſtirred up one *Chriſtopher Colon* or *Columbus*, born at *Nervy*, in the Signeury of *Genoa*, to be the inſtrument for finding out thoſe parts of the World, to which the ſound of the Goſpel had not yet arived. VVho being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not perſwade himſelf (the motion of the Sun conſidered) but that there was another *World* to which that glorious Planet did impart both his light and heat when he went from us. This *World* he purpoſed to ſeek after, and opening his Deſign to the State of *Genoa*, An. 1486. was by them rejected. On this repulſe he ſent his brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*; who in his way hapned unfortunately into the hands of Pirats, by whom detained a long while, but at laſt inlarged. Aſſoon as he was ſet at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*, where his Propoſition found ſuch chearfull entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Chriſtopher Columbus* was ſent for to come thither alſo. But God had otherwiſe diſpoſed of this rich purchaſe. For *Chriſtopher* not knowing of his Brothers impriſonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his ſervice to have been neglected; and thereupon made his Deſires known at the Court of *Caſtile*: where after many delayes, and ſix yeers attendance on the buſineſs, he was at laſt furniſhed with three ſhips only, and thoſe not for Conqueſt, but Diſcovery. VVith this ſmall ſtrength he ſailed on the main Ocean more then 60 days. yet could ſee no Land, ſo that the diſcontented *Spaniards* began to mutinie; and partly out of ſcorn to be under the command of a Stranger, partly deſirous to return, would not go a foot forwards. Juſt at that time it hapned that *Columbus* did diſcern the clouds to carry a cleerer colour then they did before: and probably conceiving that this clearneſs proceeded from ſome nigh habitable place, reſtrained the time of their expectation within the compaſs of three days; paſſing his word to return again if they did not ſee the Land within that time. Toward the end of the third day, one of the Company called *Rodrigo de Triane* (he deſerves to have his name recorded, being no otherwiſe rewarded for ſuch joyful news) deſcried Fire; an evident Argument that they drew neer unto ſome ſhore. The place diſcovered was an Iland on the Coaſt of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guhanani*; by *Columbus* S. *Saviours*; now counted one of the *Lucaios*. Landing his men, and cauſing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Croſs thereof, which he erected neer the place where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took poſſeſſion of this *NEW WORLD*, for the Kings of *Spain*, *Octob.* 11. *An.* 1492. Afterwards he diſcovered *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola*, and with much treaſure and content returned towards *Spain*: and after three other great Voyages fortunately finiſhed, he died in the year 1506. and lieth buried at *Sevil*. Preferred for this good ſervice by the Kings themſelves, firſt to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and next unto the title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the Iſle of *Jamaica*; but ſo maligned by moſt part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla* being ſent into thoſe parts for redreſs of grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him Priſoner into *Spain*. Nor did they only ſtick after his death to deprive him of the honour of this *Diſcovery* (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard* whoſe *Cards* and Deſcriptions he had ſeen) but in his life would often ſay that it was a matter of no ſuch difficulty to have found theſe Countries: and that if he had not done it when he did, ſome body elſe might have done it for him. VVhoſe peeviſhneſs he confuted by this modeſt artifice, deſiring ſome of them who inſolently enough had contended with him touching this Diſcovery, to make an Egg ſtand firmly upon one of its ends. VVhich when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruizing one end of it, made it ſtand upright; letting them ſee without any further reprehenſion, how eaſie it was to do that thing which we ſee another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was ſeconded by *Americus Veſpuſius*, an old venturous *Florentine*, imploied therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*; from whom the *Continent* or Main land of this Country, hath the name of *America*; by which ſtill known, and moſt commonly called. To him ſucceeded *John Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the Father of *Sebaſtian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*, who diſcovered all the North-eaſt Coaſts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *New-found land* and *Terra di Laborador* in the North, cauſing the *American Roytelets* to turn all *Homagers* to that King and the Crown of *England*. Followed herein by divers private *Adventurers* and undertakers, out of all parts of *Europe* bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellanus* was the firſt that compaſſed the whole World, and found the South Paſſage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake* and *Cavendiſh* of *England*. *Frobiſher* and *Davies* attempted a Diſcovery of the North-weſt paſſage; *Willoughby* and *Burroughs* of the North-eaſt. So that according to that elegant ſaying of the learned *Verulam*, in his *Advancement of learning*, this great building the World, *had never thorow-lights made in it till theſe our dayes*: by which as almoſt all parts of *Learning*, ſo in eſpeciall this of *Navigation*, and by conſequence of *Coſmographie* alſo, hath obtained an incredible proficiency in theſe later times.

For in the Infancy and firſt Ages of the VVorld, (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort but not unprofitable digreſſion) men lived at home, neither intent upon any Forreign Merchandiſe, nor inquiſitive after the Lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours: or in the Language of the Poet,

Nondum cæſa ſuis peregrinum ut viſeret Orbem,
Montibus, in liquidus Pinus *deſcenderat undas.*

The Pine *left not the Hils on which it ſtood*
To ſeek ſtrange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had inſtructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preſervation of himſelf and his children from the general *Deluge*: the Poſterity which deſcended from him had thereby a pattern for the making of Ships and other Veſſels (perfected in more length of time) whereby to make the waters paſſable, and maintain a neceſſary intercourſe betwixt Nation and Nation. Tis true, the Heathen Writers which knew not *Noah*, attribute the invention of ſhipping to ſundry men, according to ſuch informations or traditions, as they had received: *Strabo*, to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus* to *Neptune*, who was therefore called the God of the Seas, and *Tibullus* to the People of *Tyre*, a Town indeed of great wealth and traffick, and the moſt famous *Empory* of the elder times; ſaying

Prima ratem ventis credere docta Tyrus.

The Tyrians *firſt the Art did finde*
To make Ships travell with the Winde.

And queſtionleſs the *Tyrians*, and the reſt of the *Phœnicians* enjoying a large Sea-coaſt, and many ſafe and capacious Havens, being in theſe times moſt ſtrong at Sea, and making ſo many fortunate Navigations into moſt parts of the then known World, might give the Poet ſome good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phœnicians*, the *Egyptians* (their next neighbours) might derive the Art of *Navigation*; though being an ingenuous People they did add much to it. For whereas the firſt Veſſels were either made of the body of ſome great Tree, made hollow by the Art of man; or elſe of divers boards faſhioned into a Boat, and covered with the skins of Beaſts; (ſuch as are ſtill in uſe amongſt theſe *Americans*) the *Phœnicians* brought them firſt into ſtrength and form; but the *Egyptians* added Decks unto them. By *Danaus* King of *Egypt* when he fled from his brother *Rameſes*, the uſe of ſhipping was firſt brought amongſt the *Grecians*: who before that time knew no other way of croſſing their narrow Seas, but on Beams or Rafters tied to one another. Nave *primus ab Egypto* Danaus *advenit*, ante enim Ratibus *navigabatur*, as it is in *Plinie*: where we may ſee the true and genuine difference betwixt *Ratis* and *Navis*; though now both uſed indifferently for all ſorts of ſhipping. Amongſt the *Grecians* thoſe of *Crete* were the ableſt Sea-men; which gave occaſion to *Ariſtotle* to call *Crete* the Lady of the Sea; and to *Strabo* to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following times, the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were moſt conſiderable in this kinde; and by the benefit of their ſhipping much diſtreſſed the *Romans*. But ſo it hapned (as all things do and muſt concur to Gods publick purpoſes in the alteration of Eſtates) that a Tempeſt ſeparating a *Quinqueremis* or Gallie of five banks of Oars, from the reſt of the *Carthaginian* Fleet, caſt it on the ſhore of *Italy*: by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Ship-wrights, ſoon became Maſters of the Sea. That *France* and *Spain* were taught the uſe of ſhipping by the *Greeks* and *Phœnicians*; is a thing paſt queſtioning: *Marſeilles* in the one being a *Phocean*, and *Gades* in the other a *Tyrian* Colony. As for the *Belgians* and the *Britains*, it is probable that they firſt learnt it of the *Romans* (though formerly they had ſome way to tranſport themſelves from one ſhore to the other.) For *Cæſar* telleth us of the *Belgæ*, *Ad eos Mercatores minimè commeant*, that they were not at all viſited by Forraign Merchants. And the ſame *Cæſar* found the Seas betwixt *France* and *Britain* ſo ill furniſhed with Veſſels, that he was fain to make ſhips to tranſport his Army: *Singulari Militum ſtudio circiter ſexcentas & duodetriginta Naves invenit*, as his own words are. Having thus brought Navigation to the greateſt height which it had in thoſe days; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Veſſels; and the *Tackle* unto them belonging. That the *Phœnicians* firſt invented open Veſſels, and the *Egyptians* Ships with Decks, hath been ſaid before: and unto them alſo is referred the Invention of Gallies with two Banks of Oars upon aſide; which kinde of Veſſels grew ſo large in the courſe of time, that *Ptolomy Philopator* is ſaid to have made a Gallie of 50 banks. Great Ships of burden, called *Cirræa*, we owe to the *Cypriots*; Cock boats, or Skiffs (*Scaphas*) to the *Illyrians* or *Liburnians*: Brigantines (*Celoces*) to the *Rhodians*; and Frigots or light Barks (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phaſelis*, and *Pamphyli* (which we may render *Men of War*) were the invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phaſelis* a Town of *Lycia*, in *Aſia Minor*. As for *Tackle*, the *Bœotians* invented the Oar; *Dædalus* and his ſon *Icarus*, the Maſts and Sails: VVhich gave occaſion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete* they made wings to their bodies; and that *Icarus* ſoaring too high, melted the VVax which faſtened his wings unto his ſhoulders, and thereby periſhed; the truth being, that preſuming too much on this new invention, he ran himſelf upon a Rock, and was caſt away. For *Hippagines*, veſſels for the tranſporting of Horſe, we are indebted to the *Salaminians*; for grapling hooks, to *Anacharſis*; for Anchors to the *Tuſcans*; and for the Rudder, Helm, or Art of Steering to *Typhis* the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*: who noting that a Kite when ſhe flew, guided her whole body by her Tail; effected that in the devices of Art, which he had obſerved in the works of Nature. By theſe helps ſome great Voyages were performed in the elder times; the greateſt, thoſe of *Jaſon Ulyſſes*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of theſe, *Jaſon* and his companions, ſayled in the ſhip called *Argo*, through the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulyſſes* through the *Mediterranean* only; ſmall gullets if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander's* journey ſo famouſed, and accounted then ſo hazardous, was but ſayling down the River *Indus*, and four hundred furlongs into the *Ocean*; and for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt*, it is very

very apparant, that they went with great leiſure, and crawled cloſe by the ſhore-ſide: otherwiſe it had been impoſſible to have conſumed three whole years in going from *Ezion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the uſual time of theſe voyages, as appeareth in 1 *King.* 10. 22. After the fall of the *Romans* Monarchy, the moſt potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean* were the *Genoeſe* and *Venetians*, in the Ocean the *Engliſh* and the *Hanſ-towns*, neither of which ever attempted any great diſcoveries.

But in the year 1300. one *Flavio*, of *Malphi* in the Realm of *Naples*, found out the *Compaſs*, or *Pixis Nautica*, conſiſting of 8 winds only, the four principal, and four collateral: And not long after, the people of *Bruges* and *Antwerp* perfected that excellent invention, adding 24 other ſubordinate winds or points. By means of this excellent Inſtrument, and withall by the good ſucceſs of *Columbus*: the *Portugals*, Eaſtward; the *Spaniards*, Weſtward; and the *Engliſh*, Northwards, have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions; which had been utterly impoſſible to have been performed, and had been fooliſhly undertaken, when that help was wanting. *I* know there hath been much pains taken by ſome learned men, to prove the uſe of the *Mariners Compaſs* to be far more antient then is now commonly pretended. *Fuller*, a very learned and induſtrious man, but better skilled in the *Hebrew* tongue, then the *Philologie* of the *Greeks* and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* (the moſt famous Sea-men of old times) but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the cauſe. Nor is it poſſible that ſuch an excellent invention, ſo beneficial to the common good of all mankind, ſhould have been forgotten and diſcontinued for the uſe of more then 2000 years, if ever the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* had been maſters of it; who could not poſſibly conceal it (had they been ſo minded) from the *Common-Mariners*, or they not have communicated it for gain, or deſire of glory, to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, under whom ſucceſſively they lived. As little moment do *I* find in ſome other Arguments, as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the Antient writers, or the *Verſoria* of *Plautus*, ſhould be by them intended of the *Mariners Compaſs*. For plainly the *Verſoria* of *Plautus* is no other then that peece of *tackle* which our Mariners now call the *Bolin*, by which they uſe to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every wind. And ſo much doth appear by the Poet himſelf, in the Comedie which he cals *Mercator*; ſaying, *Hinc ventus nunc ſecundus eſt, cape modo Verſorium.* So called from *Verſo*, to turn often; or from *Verſum* the firſt *Supine* of *Verto*; whence *Velum vertere* is a common phraſe amongſt the *Latines*, uſed for the ſhifting of the Sail as the wind doth vary. As for the *Load ſtone*, it is called indeed *Heraclius Lapis*, Ἡρακλεὶς λίθος by the *Greeks*, not becauſe *Hercules Tyrius* whom the *Phœnicians* invocated when they were at Sea, had firſt found out the vertue of it, as our *Fuller* thinketh; but becauſe firſt found neer *Heraclea*, a City of *Lydia*. Κίκληται δ' ὅτι ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείας τῆς ἐν Λυδίᾳ πόλεως, ſaith *Heſychius* the old *Grammarian*. Called for the ſame reaſon *Magnes*, by the writers both *Greek* and *Latine*, becauſe firſt found in the Territory of *Magneſia*, a City of *Lydia* alſo, whereof *Heraclea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us for the *Greeks*, Ἡράκλειαν λίθον τινες τὴν Μαγνησίαν ἀπέδωσαν, διὰ τὸ τὴν Ἡράκλειαν τῆς Μαγνησίας εἶναι: Heraclium *Lapidem quidam* Magneſiam *reddiderunt*, *quia* Heraclea *pars eſt Magneſiæ.* Called for the very ſame reaſon *Lydius Lapis* alſo, and by them known only as a *touch ſtone*. Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latines*,

Quem Magneta *vocant patrio de nomine* Graii,
Magnetum *quia ſit patriis de finibus ortus.*

Which Stone the Greeks *do* Magnes *name,*
Becauſe it from Magneſia *came.*

But I have rambled further then I did intend, drawn by the vertue of the *Load-ſtone* too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America*: where the *Spaniards* at their firſt Arrival found the People without all manner of Apparel, nought skilled in *Agriculture*, making their bread either of a Plant called *Maize*, or a kind of Root called *Jucca*; a Root wherein is a venemous liquor not inferior to the moſt deadly poiſons; but having firſt queezed out this juice, and after dryed and prepared the Root, they made their Bread of it. They worſhipped Deviliſh Spirits, whom they called *Zemes*; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of *Cotton wooll*, like our *Childrens Babies*: to which they did great reverence, as ſuppoſing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them; and to blind them the more, the *Devil* would cauſe theſe *Puppets* to ſeem to move, and to make a noiſe: They ſtood alſo in ſo great fear of them, that they durſt not diſpleaſe them; for if their wils were not fulfilled, the *Devil* ſtrait executed vengeance upon ſome of their Children; ſo holding this infatuated People in perpetual thraldom. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not ſeen, that they thought the *Chriſtians* to be immortal: wondring exceedingly at the Sails, Maſts, and Tacklings of their Ships; themſelves knowing no Ships or other Veſſels, but huge Troughs made of ſome great-bodied tree. But this opinion of the *Chriſtians* immortality (in the ſenſe they meant it) did not long continue: for having taken ſome of them, they held their heads under the water till they had quite choaked them; by which they knew them to be mortal like other men. Quite deſtitute of all good learning, they reckoned their time by a confuſed obſervation of the courſe of the Moon: and ſtrangely admired to ſee the *Spaniards* know the health and affairs of one another, only by reading of a Letter. Of a plain and honeſt nature, for the moſt part, they were found to be; Loving and kind in their entertainments, and apt to do good offices both private and publike,

publike, according to their underſtandings: encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond ſome certain hills (but they knew not where) thoſe which lived honeſtly and juſtly, or offered up their lives in defence of their Country, ſhould find a place of everlaſting peace and happineſs. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls immortality, and of ſome *Ubi* for the future reception of it, that we find ſome tract or other of it in moſt barbarous Nations. And as for *Gold* and *Silver*, which the new come *Chriſtians* ſo adored, they eſteemed them no otherwiſe then as droſſe; though many times they adorned themſelves therewith for the colours ſake, as they did alſo with ſhels, feathers, and the like fine *Gew-gawes*.

Of complexion moſt of theſe *Americans* were reaſonably fair and cleer, little inclining unto blackneſs: notwithſtanding that a great part of this Country lieth under the ſame parallel with *Æthiopia*, *Libya*, and the Land of *Negroes*. So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as ſome imagine) the cauſe of that blackneſs: though accidentally it may turn the skin into ſuch a colour; as we ſee in many Country-Laſſes, even in colder *Climates*, whoſe faces are continually expoſed to the Sun and weather. Others more wiſe in their own conceits (but in no bodies elſe) will have the Natural Seed of the *Africans* to be black of colour; contrary both to ſenſe and reaſon, Experience and true Natural Philoſophie being both againſt it. And ſome will have this *Blackneſs* laid as a curſe on *Cham*, (from whoſe poſterity the *African* Nations do derive themſelves) becauſe, forſooth, he had carnal knowledge of his wife when they were in the *Ark*: a fancie as ridiculous, as the other falſe. So that we muſt refer it wholly to Gods ſecret pleaſure, though poſſibly enough the curſe of God on *Cham* and on his poſterity (though for ſome cauſe unknown to us) hath an influence on it.

Touching the Original of this People, it is moſt probable that they deſcended from the *Tartars*; for which there are ſome Arguments of eſpecial weight. For firſt, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*, as having no remainder of the Arts, Learning, and Civilities of it: And ſecondly, that they came not from *Africk*, in regard they have no *black men* amongſt them, except ſome few which dwell on the Sea coaſts over againſt *Guinea* in *Africk*, from whence they are ſuppoſed by ſome tempeſt to have been brought hither: Thirdly, that they have not the leaſt token or ſhew of the arts and induſtry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that ſide of *Aſia*. The *affirmative* Arguments prove firſt, that they came from *Aſia*; next in particular from *Tartary*. That they came out of *Aſia*, is more then manifeſt, in that the Weſt-ſide of the Country towards *Aſia* is far more populous then the Eaſt towards *Europe*: of which there can be no other reaſon aſſigned, then that theſe parts were firſt inhabited, and that from hence the reſt was peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this people, and the particularities thereof, their incivility, and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are moſt like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the Weſt-ſide of *America*, if it be not Continent with *Tartary*, is yet disjoyned by a very ſmall Strait, as may be perceived in all our *Maps* and *Cards*, as alſo in the Deſcription of theſe Countries: ſo that there is into theſe Countries a very quick and eaſie paſſage. And fourthly, the people of *Quivira*, which of all the Provinces of *America* is the the neareſt unto *Tartary*, are ſaid to follow in their whole courſe of their life, the Seaſons and beſt paſturing of their Cattel, juſt like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*; an evident argument of their Original deſcent.

But from what Root ſoever they did firſt deſcend, certain it is that they had ſetled here many Ages ſince, and overſpread all the parts and quarters of this ſpacious Continent; there being no place which the *Spaniards* or any other Adventurers found deſolate or waſte, and without Inhabitants. But their numbers much diminiſhed ſince theſe late Diſcoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themſelves moſt inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked People, killing them up like ſheep appointed to the ſlaughter, or otherwiſe conſuming them in their Mines and works of drudgery. And had not *Charles* the fifth ordained with moſt *Chriſtian* prudence, that the *Natives* ſhould not be compelled to work in the *Mines* againſt their wils, but that the *Spaniards* ſhould provide themſelves of *Slaves* elſwhere, the *Natives* in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of *Chriſtianity* and the Goſpel. For ſo exceeding barbarous and bloody were they at their firſt coming thither, that *Haithney*, a Noble-man amongſt them, being perſwaded to imbrace the *Chriſtian* faith, demanded firſt what he ſhould get by being of that Religion? and was anſwered, that he ſhould get *Heaven* & the joys thereof: Then would he know, what place was deſtinate to ſuch as died *unbaptized?* and was anſwered, that they went to *Hell*, & the torments of it: Finally, asking unto which of theſe two Places the *Spaniards* went? and being told they went to *Heaven*; he renounced his *Baptiſm*, proteſting that he would rather go to Hell with the unbaptized, *then to live in* Heaven *With ſo cruel a people*. The reſt were driven unto the *Font* like ſo many horſes to the watering place; and received into the Church of *Chriſt* without any inſtruction: inſomuch that one old *Frier* (as himſelf confeſſed to *Charles* the fifth) had Chriſtened 700000 of them, and another of that rank 300000. never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the *Chriſtian* faith, or points of Religious converſation, (except it were to be obedient to their Paſtors and Teachers.) Yet here I muſt confeſs, (for I am loth to defraud any man of his due) there hath been made a great improvement of *Chriſtianity*: the number of *Chriſtians* in this Country, being thought by ſome learned men of the Church of *Rome* to equal all thoſe of the *Latine* Churches in *Europe*. And though perhaps conſtrained at firſt unto it as a *new Religion*, and of a ſtricter Rule then that which before they had; yet by long time and education, it is now grown more plauſible and familiar to them. The Church hereof governed by the four Archbiſhops of 1 *Mexico*, 2 *Lima*, 3 S. *Foy*, & 4 *Dominico*; who have under them 25 Suffragan Biſhops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When

VVhen this new world came first acquainted with the old, *Isabel* Queen of *Castile*, would not permit any of her husband *Ferdinando's* subjects to be planted here, viz. *Arragonians*, or *Valentians*, but licensed the *Castilians*, *Andalusians*, *Biscains*. and the rest of her own people only, envying the wealth hereof to the rest. VVhen she was dead, *Ferdinando* licensed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding only the *Portugals*. But so rich a prize could not so warily be fenced, but that *Portugals*, *French*, *English*, and now of late the *Low-country-men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniards* harvest; who well hoped to have had a *Monopoly* of so wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any *rivall* or competitor, the possession (I cannot say the love) of a country so abundantly fruitful. For though some of the Kings of *Spain*, have been used to say, that they loved the *East Indies* for their *Mistress* only, in whose favours they could patiently enough endure a *Rival*; but esteemed *America* as their *wife*, in whose love they could not brook a Competitor without fowl dishonour; yet by his leave (or without it rather) some of his neighbours have made bold with his *wife* in these later times, though in the affections of his *Mistress* they have greater interest. But these attempts of the *English* and *Hollanders*, have been an occasion of great strength to the whole Country. For whereas in our first VVars with *Spain*, our private *Adventures* found the Sea-coasts almost naked of defence, and thereupon many a rich and prosperous voyage to these parts: the *Spaniards* upon sight of that weakness and disadvantage, so strongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, we were not able to accomplish that with great and publick Forces, which before had been performed by small and private; which caused our *Captains* and Adventurers, failing oftentimes in the *Continent*, to make up their Market on the Seas, in the return of the *Spanish* Navies, as they yet do.

This *New World* is very plentifull of Spices, Fruits, and such Creatures which the *old World* never knew; stocked with such store of Kine and Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* since the first discovery) that the *Spaniards* kill thousands of them yearly, for their tallow and hides only; blest with such abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines more Gold then Earth: a Mettal which the *Americans* not regarding, greedily exchanged for *hammers*, knives, axes, and the like tools of iron; for before, they were wont to make their *Canoes* or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of fire. Other particularities shall be specified in the particular Descriptions of the several Countries. I shall now only take a brief view of such of their Beasts and Fowls, as either this *old World* did not know, or knew not in such shapes and qualities, as are there presented. Their *Lyons* less in greatness then those in *Africa*, are said to be of colour gray, and so nimble as to climb Trees; their Dogs snowted like *Foxes*, but deprived of that property which the *Logicians* call *Proprium quarto modo*, for they could not *bark*: their *Hogs* with talons sharp as *Razors*, and the navil of their bodies on the ridge of their backs: their *Stags* and Deer without *Horns*; their *Sheep* (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable as with us, for food and raiment, but accustomed to the carrying of burdens, some of of 150 pound weight. Amongst such strange *Beasts* as this *old VVorld* kew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whose name I find not) whose forepart resembleth a *Fox*, the hinder part an *Ape*, except the Feet only which are like a Mans: beneath her belly a Receptacle like a Purse where she keeps her young till they be able to shift for themselves, never coming thence but when they suck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a barbed Horse, seeming to be armed all over, and that with Artificial (rather then natural) Plates, which do shut and open. The *Vicugne* resembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the *Fleece* whereof they make Rugs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the *Belly* finde the *Bezoar*, sometimes two or three, a soveraign *Antidote* against Poisons and venemous Diseases. A kinde of *Hare* resembling a *Want* in his feet, and a *Cat* in his tail, under whose chin nature hath fastned a little Bag, which she hath also taught him to use as a *Store-house*; for in this, having filled his Belly, he preserveth the remnant of his *Provision*. The *Pigritia*, a little Beast (not so named for nought) which in fourteen days cannot go so far as a man may easily throw a stone. Then for their *Birds*, they have them there in such variety of colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly represent in Feathers whatsoever they see drawn with Pencils; insomuch as a *Figure* of S. *Francis* made of *Feathers* was presented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*, whose eye could not discern them to be natural colours, but thought them pencil-work, till he made tryal with his fingers. One called the *Tominejo*, of all colours, so little that it seems no bigger then a Bee or Butter-flie; the mouth thereof no bigger then the eye of a needle, yet yielding not to the *Nightingale* in the sweetness of its note and Musick; the Bird and Nest put into Gold Scales, not weighing above 24. grains, yet beautified with *Feathers* of so many colours, especially in the neck and brest, that the *Indians* make great use of them in their *Feather pictures*. Others as big as these are little. The *Condores* of such strength and greatness, that they will fall upon a *Sheep* or Calf, open it, and eat it. Like Miracles of nature have they in their *Fruits* and *Plants*, more proper unto *Natural History* then to this Discourse: and many *medicinal* Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the consideration of the Learned *Herbarists*. I am too *much a Fool to be a Physitian*, and therefore will not deal in such things as are out of my Element. Yet somewhat of this kinde we may chance to meet with in the Description and Survey of the several Provinces, into which this *new World* is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninsulas*; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana*, from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, supposed (for the most Northern parts of it are not yet discovered) to contain 13000 miles in compass. That towards the South, hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Country of *Peru*, the circumnavigation whereof

is

is reckoned at 17000 *Italian* miles. The *Iſthmus* which joyneth theſe two together, very long but narrow; in ſome places not above twelve miles from Sea to Sea; in many not above ſeventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the Streite of *Darien*, from a River of that name in *Peruana*, neer unto the *Iſthmus*, and is ſo ſmall a Ligament for ſo great a Body, that ſome have thought of turning theſe two *Peninſulas* into perfect Ilands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Councel of *Spain*, the cutting of a navigable channel through this ſmall *Iſthmus*, ſo to ſhorten their common voyages to *China*, and the *Moluccoes*. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly becauſe if he ſhould imploy the *Americans* in the work, he ſhould loſe theſe few of them, which his people have ſuffered to live; partly becauſe the *Slaves* which they yearly buy out of *Africa*, do but ſuffice for the Mines and Sugar-houſes; but principally, leſt the paſſage by the *Cape of good hope*, being left, thoſe Seas might become a receptacle of *Pirats*. Which doubtleſs was a very prudent and Politick conſideration. Many times I have read of the like attempts begun, but never of any finiſhed. *Seſoſtris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius* of *Perſia*, one of the *Ptolomies*, and a late capricious *Portugal*, had the like Plot, to make a paſſage from the *Red Sea* to the *Mediterranean*: ſo had *Cæſar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Iſthmus*. Another of the ſame nature, had *Charls* the *great*, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danow*; the like had *Lucius Verus* to joyn the *Rhene*, and the *Rhone*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicanor* alſo King of *Syria*, intended to have made a channel, from the *Caſpian* to the *Euxine* Sea; an infinite project: but neither he nor any of the reſt could finiſh theſe works; God it ſeemeth, being not pleaſed at ſuch proud and haughty enterpriſes. And yet perhaps the want of treaſure hath not been the leaſt cauſe, why the like projects have not proceeded; beſides the dreadfull noyſes and apparitions, which (as we have already ſaid) continually affrighted the workmen.

Not leſs obſervable then this great but unſucceſsful deſign, of cutting a paſſage thorow this *Iſthmus* from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but a like ſucceſsleſs Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous *Engliſhman*, in a paſſage over it by Land. This man being one of the Followers of Sir *Francis Drake*, ariving in a ſmall Bark with 70 of his Companions, a little above *Nombre di Dios*, the chiefeſt Town of all the *Iſthmus*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entred the South Sea, went to the Iſle of *Pearls*, where he ſtayed ten days; intercepted in two *Spaniſh* Ships (who feared no Enemy on that ſide) 60000 pound weight of Gold, 200000 pound weight in bars of ſilver, and returned in ſafety to the Land. And though by the mutinie of ſome of his own Company he neither returned into his Country, nor unto his Ship: yet is it an *Adventure* not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other; and by the *Spaniſh* Writers recorded with much admiration.

But to return to the Diviſion of this Country, and the two main parts thereof which this *Streit* uniteth: *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninſula*, may be moſt properly divided into the Continent, and Ilands: the *Continent* again into the ſeveral Provinces of 1 *Eſtotiland*, 2 *Nova Francia*, 3 *Virginia*; 4 *Florida*, 5 *Californica*, 6 *Nova Gallicia*, 7 *Nova Hiſpania*, and 8 *Guatimala*; each of them branched into many ſub-diviſions, and leſſer Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninſula*, taking in ſome part of the *Iſthmus*, as before we did, hath on the *Continent* the Provinces of 1 *Caſtella Aurea*, 2 *Nova Granado*, 3 *Peru*, 4 *Chile*, 5 *Paragnay*, 6 *Braſil*, 7 *Guiana*, and 8 *Paria*, with their ſeveral members, parts, and particular Regions. The Ilands which belong to both diſperſed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mare del Zur*, where there is not any one of note, but 1. Thoſe called *Los Ladrones*, and 2 the Ilands of *Solomon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mare del Norte*, reduced unto 3 the *Caribes*, 4 *Porto Rico*, 5 *Hiſpaniola*, 6 *Cuba*, and 7 *Jamaica*. In the ſurvey of which particulars we will begin with thoſe which lie on the North-eaſt of this great Continent, not poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*; and paſſing thorow the Plantations of ſuch other Nations as have any footing in the ſame, come by degrees to the Eſtates of the King of *Spain*, that we may lay them altogether without interruption: beginning with *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern part, and that which (as ſome ſay) was diſcovered firſt.

OF

OF ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend thoſe Regions of the *Mexicana* which lie moſt towards the North and Eaſt, hath on the Eaſt the main Ocean, on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the Weſt, ſome unknown Tract not yet diſcovered; and on the North a Bay or Inlet of the Sea called *Hudſons Straits*, and called ſo from *Henry Hudſon* an *Engliſhman*, who by this way endeavoured to finde out a more commodious and quick paſſage to *Cathay* and *China*, then had been formerly diſcovered. It comprehends, 1 *Eſtotiland* ſpecially ſo called, 2 *Terra Corterialis*, 3 *Newfound Land*, and 4 the Iſles of *Bacaleos*.

1. And firſt *Eſtotiland* ſpecially ſo called, is the moſt Northern Region on the Eaſt ſide of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudſons Straits* on the North; and *Terra Corterialis*, on the South. The ſoil ſufficiently enriched with natural endowments, ſaid to have in it Mines of Gold and other Mettals; but I doubt it lieth too much North for Gold, whatſoever it may do for Braſs and Iron. The People rude and void of goodneſs, naked, notwithſtanding the extream cold of the Country; not having either the wit or the care to cover their bodies with the skins of thoſe Beaſts which they kill by hunting; though their Bellies teach them to keep life by the Fleſh thereof. Said by the firſt *Diſcoverers* to ſow Corn, to make Beer or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Groen-land*; as alſo to have many Cities and Caſtles, ſome Temples conſecrate to their Idols, where they firſt Sacrificed men, and after eat them. The Language which they ſpake, expreſſed in *Characters* of their own; but ſome knowledge of the *Latine* Tongue there had been amongſt them, and *Latine* Books in the Library of one of their Kings, underſtood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Country by the firſt *Diſcoverers*, who were certain *Fiſhermen* of *Freezland*, caſt by a Tempeſt on this Coaſt about the year 1350. Six of them only got on Land, where all died ſave one: who after a long wandring from one Princes Court to another, found means to return into his own Country: the King whereof called *Zichumi*, being a great *Adventurer* in the feats of Arms, prepared for the further Diſcovery and Conqueſt of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice*, who deſiring to ſee the faſhions of the World, furniſhed a ſhip at their own charges, and paſſing the Straits of *Gibraltar* held their courſe northward, with an intent to ſee *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by tempeſt on this Iland, *An.* 1380. they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly proſperous in a War againſt thoſe of *Norway*: who liked *Nicolo* ſo well, that he gave him a command in his Navie, and under his good conduct woon many Ilands, diſcovered *Groen-land*, and provided for the conqueſt of *Eſtotiland* alſo. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the buſineſs was purſued by his brother *Antonio*, the King in perſon making one in the undertaking: who liked the Country ſo well, being once poſſeſſed of it, that he built a City in it, and there determining to ſpend the reſt of his days, ſent back *Antonio* unto *Freezland*, with the moſt of his People.

This is the ſubſtance of the ſtory of the firſt Diſcovery, publiſhed long ſince by one *Franciſco Marcellino* out of the Letters of the *Zeni*, which had they been conſidered of as they might have been, we had not ſo long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the World. But whether it were that their reports were eſteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Diſcovery; there was nothing done in purſuance of it: *Zichumi* never going back to his own Country, and *Freezland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite loſt again till theſe later days. Said in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well ſtored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds which they found there for their refreſhing: the Haven where they Landed to be called *Cape Trin*; the People to be of ſmall Stature, fearfull, and to hide themſelves in Caves, at the ſight of the *Freezlanders*: that there was a Mountain always burning or caſting ſmoak; together with a certain Spring, whence iſſued a water as black as Pitch; but no ſuch Cities, Forts, and Temples, as the *Fiſherman* ſpake of. The Country Weſt from *Freezland* 1000 miles.

To give you the face of it as it ſtands at the preſent, it is ſaid to be well cultivated, fruitfull of all neceſſaries for the life of man, and rich in mettals; but extream cold: watered with four Rivers, which riſing out of an high Mountain in the midſt of the Country, diſperſe themſelves over all parts of it. The People ſaid to be more ingenious, of better judgements, and more skilled in moſt *Mechanick* Arts then the reſt of the *Americans* were at the firſt Diſcovery; which argueth ſome more civil People to have been formerly amongſt them. Their Garments of the skins of Beaſts or Sea-Calves; with which alſo they covered the outſide of their Boats, to keep out the water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whether the name of Cape *Trin* be ſtill remaining, I am not able to diſcover; this Country lying ſtill for the moſt part hidden in a *Northern Miſt*. All we can ſay, is, that ſome *Engliſh* names have been impoſed of late on ſome

Capes and Promontories lying on the Northern ſhores hereof towards *Hudſons Straits*, by *Hudſon* and ſuch others of the *Engliſh* Nation who purſued that enterpriſe. Of which ſort are *Prince Henry's Foreland*, towards the Eaſt, almoſt at the entries of thoſe *Straits*: and then proceedng towards the Weſt, *Cape Charls*, *Kings Foreland*; and laſt of all, *Cape Wolſtenham*, at the end thereof, where theſe Straits open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudſons Bay*. But of theſe more particularly in another place, where we endeavour the Diſcovery of ſuch parts of the World as are yet *unknown*, and ſo within the compaſs of a *Terra incognita*.

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North *Eſtotiland*, on the South *New-France*. So called from *Gaſpar Corterialis*, who in the year 1500 left his name unto it. It is called alſo *Terra di Laborodoro*, both from the pains required of the Husbandman, and the great recompence which it gives him: in the ſame ſence as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples* is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the *French*, who ſucceeded in the poſſeſſion hereof after the *Spaniard* had forſook it, it was called *New-Bretagne*, with reference to *Bretagne* in *France* their own natural Country.

The People at the firſt coming of *Corterialis* were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, ſwift of foot, and very good *Archers*: their clothing of Beaſts skins, their habitations *Caves*, or ſome ſorry Cottages; their Religion *Paganiſm*, or none; their directions *South-ſaying*. Not ſo forgetful of the Law which Nature had planted in them, as not to know the neceſſary uſe of *marriage*; but extremely jealous. Better conditioned at the preſent then in former times, by their neer neighbourhood to the *French*, and commerce with *Forreiners*: affirmed to be very well diſpoſed, to feed moſt generally on Fiſh, and to adorn themſelves with *Bracelets* of braſſe or ſilver. Their chief Towns, 1 *Breſt*, 2 *Sancta Maria*, 3 *Cabo Marzo*, of which little memorable.

The Country firſt diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, the ſon of *John Cabot* before mentioned: who in the year 1499. at the charges and encouragement of King *Henry* 7. ſetting ſail from *Briſtol*, firſt made the diſcovery of theſe parts, as far as to the *Latitude* of 67 and an half, (which brings *Eſtotiland* within the compaſs alſo of his Diſcoveries.) The Land which he firſt ſaw, he called *Prima Veſta*; and an Iland lying before it he called *S. Johns*, becauſe diſcovered on the day of *S. John Baptiſt*. They found upon the Country plenty of *White Bears*, Stags greater then ours, Scut-fiſhes of a yard long, and ſuch ſtore of *Cod fiſh* (which the Inhabitants called *Baccalaos*) that their multitudes ſometimes ſtaied his ſhips: hence the occaſion of their name. Returning home, he found great preparations for a war in *Scotland*: ſo that nothing elſe was done in this Diſcovery by the *Engliſh* Nation. But three years after, *Gaſpar Corterialis* a *Portugueze*, ſetting ſail from *Lisbon*, fell upon thoſe parts of *Cabots* Diſcoveries, which ſince bear his name: from whence he brought the peece of a gilded Sword of *Italian* workmanſhip, left there moſt probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of; drowned in the ſea, or ſlain by the *Salvages* on the land; as was his brother *Michael*, in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the *French* having planted in *Nova Francia*, caſt an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Breſt* to a town hereof, (according to the name of a noted Port in *little Bretagne*): but whether they ſetled any *Colonie* in it, or only did reſort unto it in the way of trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the *Latines* call it) is a great Iland lying on the South of *Corterialis*; from which parted by a *Frith* or Streit called *Golfe des Chaſteaux*. So called from the late diſcovery of it, when diſcovered firſt, though it be ſome ſcores of years ago: as *Wickhams* College in *Oxford* hath the name of *New College*, though founded divers Ages paſt, becauſe it was the *Neweſt* when that name was given.

The dimenſions of the Country I have nowhere met with. But for the quantity hereof, it is ſaid to be better inhabited in the North parts then in the South, though the South the fitter of the two for habitation. Furniſhed upon the ſea coaſts with abundance of Codfiſh, as alſo with Herrings, Salmons, Thornbacks, Smelts, Oyſters, and Muſcles with Pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Country, naturally beautified with Roſes, ſown with Peaſe, planted with ſtately Trees, and otherwiſe diverſified both for pleaſure and profit: the Air hereof never very extreme, more temperate in the depth of winter then with us in *England*, the Brooks being never ſo frozen over, that the ice is able to bear a dog; & thoſe little Froſts but ſeldom holding 3 nights together. The people of reaſonable ſtature, full eyed, broad-faced, but beardleſs, their faces coloured with *Oker*; their houſes, Poles ſet round meeting together in the top, and covered over with skins, an *hearth* or fire-place in the midſt; their Boats of Bark, 20 foot long, and 4 in breadth, not weighing above 100 pound weight, every of which will carry four men, and is by them carried to all places of their Removes.

Places of moſt importance in it are the ſeveral *Havens* (of which it is conceived to have more, and more commodious, then any one Iland of the World for the bigneſs of it): not beautified with towns or buildings, but yielding very ſafe ſtations to the greateſt ſhips: the chief whereof 1 *Rennoſa* or *Roigneuſe*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-Eaſt Angle of the Iland; of much reſort for fiſhing, from ſeveral Countries. 2 *Portus Formoſus*, or *Fair-Haven*, three miles North of the other, capable of great ſhips, and bearing into the main land above 40 miles. Situate in the *Latitude* of 46. and 40 minutes. 3 *Thornbay*, by the *Portugals* named *Enſeada Grande*. 4 *Trinity Bay* on the North of Cape *S. Francis*, by the *Portugals* called *Bahia de la Conception*; a large Bay, five miles broad in the narroweſt place, yet ſafe withall and of very good *Anchorage*. 5 *Bona Veſta*, the name of a Port and Promontory. 6 *White-Bay*, or *Bay-Blanche*, as the *French* call it, ſafe and capacious, on the North of the promontory of *S. John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Grat*, on the North-eaſt Angle of the Iland, is no Port of note. Then on the South-ſide of the Iland, and the Weſt of

Cape

Cape de Raz, is 7 *Port Treſpaſſez*, 8 *Port Preſenza*, and 9 *Port des Baſques* (or the *Biſcains* Haven) and on the Weſt-ſide, having doubled the Cape *de Raye*, in the South-weſt Angle of the Iland, there is 10 *S. Georges* Bay; all of them ſafe, capacious, and of great reſort.

4. Before the Iland, at the diſtance of 25 Leagues from *Cape de Raye*, lieth a long bank or ridge of ground, extended in length many hundred leagues, in breadth 24 leagues where broadeſt, in other places but ſixteen; and all about it certain Ilands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACALAOS* (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitudes of *Codfiſh* (by the Natives called *Bacalaos*) which ſwarmed hereabouts; ſo numerous, that they hindred the paſſage of his ſhips, as before was noted, and lay in ſuch ſhoals upon the Coaſts, that the Bears caught them with their claws and drew them on land. The Government at that time by Kings, before whom the People in the moſt formal expreſſions of duty and reverence uſed to rub their noſes, or ſtroke their foreheads: which if the King obſerved or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had ſo adored him, he turned his head to his left ſhoulder as a mark of favour.

The firſt Diſcoverers of this Country (but not known then to be an Iland) were the two *Cabots*, *John*, and his ſon *Sebaſtian*, imployed herein by *Henry* the 7. 1497. as before was noted: the buſineſs being laid aſide at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot*, two of *Briſtol*; who taking a more perfect view of it then was took by the *Cabots*, aſcribed to themſelves the diſcovery of it, and animated King *Henry* the 8. unto the enterpriſe, which was done *An.* 1527 but with ill ſucceſs. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britons* of *France* had reſorted to it; and changed the names which by the *Engliſh* had been given to the Bayes and Promontories. But the *Engliſh* would not ſo relinquiſh their pretenſions to the *Primier Seiſin*: And therefore in the year 1583. Sir *Humfrey Gilbert* took poſſeſſion of it in the name of the Queen of *England*, interdicted all other Nations the uſe of Fiſhing, and intended to have ſetled there an *Engliſh* Colonie. But being wracked in his return, the ſending of the *Colonie* was diſcontinued till the year 1608. when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Briſtol*, who moſt ſucceſsfully performed it; the *Colonie* ſo proſpering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turneps, Coleworts of their own ſowing; ſome probability of metals, a certainty of *Sables*, *Muſk*, and other precious commodities, beſides their fiſhing, though that the great occaſion of their ſetling there. Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fiſh, all about the Coaſts, that ordinarily our men take 200 or 300 of them within four houres ſpace; which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*.

OF

CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North with *Corterialis*, on the South with *New-England*, on the East with the Main Ocean; the Countries lying on the West, either not yet discovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greatest, not of this Province only, but of all this *Peninsula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiscovered parts of this Northern Tract, sometimes inlarged into great Lakes, and presently reduced to a narrower channell, with many great windings and *Reaches* in it. Having emboſomed almost all the rest of the Rivers of this Country, it emptieth it self into the Great Bay of St. *Lawrence*, over against the Isle of *Assumption*, being at the mouth 40 Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom deep. It is also called *Nova Francia* from the *French*, who following the tract of *Cabot* and *Corterialis* made a further Discovery of these parts, and planted several Colonies in them. The business first undertaken by *Jaques Cartier*, *An.* 1534. received here gladly by the *Natives*, with singing, dancing, and expressing much signe of joy: pursued by *Monsieur Roberval*, sent thither in the year 1542. by King *Francis* the first, not only to discover the Country, but to plant some parts of it, who built there a fair Fortress for his greater safety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their several times.

The nature of the soil and people we shall best discover in the several parts of it; each differing from one another, and so not easily conformed to a general *Character*. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole, 1 *Canada*, of which before, 2 *Pemtegonet* or *Norumbegue*, as some call it, of which more hereafter. 3 *Quimbeque* falling into the Ocean as the others do, 4 *Rio S. Johan*, ending its course in a large Bay called *Bay Francoise*, interposed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the rest of this Country. 5 *Les trois Riviers*, which rising far north, and passing thorow two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*, 6 *Sagnenay*, of the same Original, Course, and Fall. A River of so strong a Current, that it suffereth not the Sea to flow up its Channel; so deep, that in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards: and having received many lesser streams, looseth it self at last, where the other doth.

It containeth in it the several Regions of 1 *Novia Francia*, specially so called, 2 *Nova Scotia*, 3 *Norumbegue*, and 4 the *Isles* adjoyning.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA* specially so named, is situate on the South of *Corterialis*, and on the North of the great River *Canada* towards the East; but on both sides of it, in the Western and more in-land parts. The Country naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, *Matterns* and Foxes, whose flesh the People did eat raw (till more civilized) having first dried it either in the smoak or Sun, as they do their Fish. They have also store of Conies, Fowle and Fish great plenty; one Fish more memorable then the rest, which they call *Adothnel*, whose body and head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greatest Jewels are their Chains of *Esurgnie*; a shell-fish of the whitest colour, excellent for the stanching of blood; which they fashion into Beads and Bracelets, and so wear, or sell them. Not very plentifull of fruits, or fit for tillage; yet it beeedeth some Corn, and of pulse good plenty. The Aire more cold then in other Countries of like height, partly by reason of the greatness of the River, which being wholly of fresh water, and so large withall, chilleth the Aire on both sides of it; partly because of the abundance of Ice, and those hills of snow which the north-winde passeth over in the way to this Country.

The People, when the *French* first discovered them, very rude and barbarous; few of them furnished with houses, but removing from one place to another, as their food decayed, and carrying all their goods with them (a thing easily done) upon those removes. Such as lived towards the Sea, or the greater Rivers, somewhat better housed. For in the day time they fish in their *Boats*, which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them upside down, sleep under them. As ill apparelled as housed; for they went all naked, except a little piece of skin before their *Privities*. Some of them had their heads quite shaven, excepting one Bush of hair on the top of the Crown, which they suffered to grow to the length of an horses Tail, tied up with Leather-strings in a knot. Each man allowed his two or three wives apiece; and they so constant to their Husband that they never marry after his death, but keep themselves continually in a *mourning habit*, a vizard as it were, made of grease and Coal-dust, which they spread over all their bodies. The women labour more then the men, both in fishing and husbandry; digging the ground instead of Ploughing, with certain pieces of wood, where they sow their *Maiz* (a Plant of which they make their Bread, in most parts of *America*) *Idolaters* in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are most of them at this day; the *French* and others which have planted in these Northern parts having added little more unto *Christianity*, then by the *Colonies* they brought with them. Yet in the midst of this darkness they saw so much light, as to believe that when they died, they went immediatly to the *Stars*, from thence conveyed

veyed to certain green and pleasant fields full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the *immortality* of the soul, and that there was some place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1. *Hochelaga*, round in figure, compassed about with three Course of timber Ramparts, one within the other, sharp at the top, about two Rods high; with one gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kind) with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50 great houses, in the midst of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their fire on. Situate far within the Land, about six or seven Leagues from the banks of the River *Canada*, in the most pleasant part of the Country; and therefore made the seat of their King whom they highly reverenced, and carried him on their shoulders sitting on a Carpet of skins. 2 *Stadac*, or *Stadacone*, and 3. *Quebecque*, which the *French* call S. *Croix*, on the course of the same River also; this last a Colonie of the *French*. 4 *Tadonsac*, a safe but small Haven, not capable of above 20 ships; at the mouth of *Saguenay*. 5 *Franco-Roy*, a Castle built by *Monsieur Roberval*, when he came first into this Country. 7 S. *Lewis*, designed for a French Colonie by *Monsieur de Champlain*, An. 1611. but never came to great effect: yet so much *Champlain* got by the undertaking, that he left it his name to a great Lake of this Country (full of little Ilands) in the Lands of the *Vroqueis*, inhabiting on the South of the river *Canada*, into which it emptieth it self at the last.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA* containeth that part of the Countries of *Canada* or *Nova Francia*, which the *French* call *Accadie* or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninsula* or Demy-Iland) with so much of the main-land as lieth between the River *Canada* and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoise*, from the River of S. *Croix* upon the West, to the Isle of *Assumption* on the East. So called by King *James*, in the Grant of these Countries to Sir *William Alexander*, after Lord *Secretary* of *Scotland*, and by King *Charles* for his approved fidelity most deservedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters-Patents of which Donation bear Date *Anno* 1621. What time the *French* having been outed of their holds here by Sir *Sam. Argal* Governour of *Virginia*, had abandoned the South parts of *Canada*, and betook themselves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Course of that River. And in pursuance of this Grant, the said Sir *William Alexander* in the year 1622. sent a *Colonie* hither: and having procured a new Map to be made of the Country, caused the *Peninsula* lying on this side of the *Bay Francoise* to be called *Nova Caledonia*; that on the North thereof to be called *Nova Alexandria*; giving new names also unto most of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accomplishment of which business, he obtained also a Patent for advancing a certain number of Persons to the hereditary dignity of *Baronets*, or Knights of *Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly, distinguished from others by a Ribbin of *Orange tawney*; the money raised upon which Patent was to be wholly imployed towards this Plantation. But being unable with those helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burden for a private person) or willing to imploy his money to more profit, he sold *Port-Royal* to the *French*, and after discontinued his endeavours in it.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Port Royal*, in *Accadie* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay-Francoise*, once made a Colonie of the *French* by *Monsieur de Monts*, *An.* 1604. continued with much difficulty till the year 1613. when destroyed by Sir *Samuel Argal* then Governour of the *English* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reason that the *Jesuites* whose neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to nest there. Sold since again unto the *French*, as before is said, by whom still possessed. 2 S. *Lukes Bay*, by the *French* called *Port au Monton*. 3 *Gaspe*, a noted Port in *New-Alexandria*, opposite to the Isle of *Assumption*. 4 *Gachepe*, on a fair Bay in the same Coast also.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the North-east *Nova Scotia*, on the South west *Virginia*. The air is of a good temper, the soil fruitful, and the people indifferently civil; all of them, as well men as women, painting their faces. The men are much affected to hunting; and therefore never give their daughters to any, unless he be well skilled in that game also. The *Women* are here very chast, and so well love their husbands, that if at any time they chance to be slain, the widows will neither marry, nor eat flesh, till the death of their husbands be revenged. They both dance much; and for more nimbleness, sometimes stark naked. The Sea upon the Coasts so shallow and so full of sands, that it is very ill sailing all along these shores. The towns, or habitations rather, so differently called by the *French*, *Portugals*, and *Spaniard*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet most have formerly agreed upon *Norumbegua*, or *Arampec*, as the Natives call it; said to be a large, populous, and well-built town, and to be situate on a fair and capacious River of the same name also. But later Observations tell us there is no such matter; that the River which the first Relations did intend, is called *Pemtegonet*, neither large nor pleasant; and that the place by them meant is called *Agguncia*, so far from being a fair City, that there are only a few Sheds or Cabins covered with the barks of trees, or the skins of beasts. Howsoever I have let it stand on the first reports, it being possible enough that the Town might fall into decay, deserted on the coming of so many several *Pretenders*; and that the Sheds or Cabins which the last men speak of, may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoyning to these Countries of *Canada* are several Ilands not joyned in any common name, but yet deserving some consideration in this place and time. The principal whereof, 1 *NATISCOTEC*, called the Isle of *Assumption*, situate in the very mouth of the River, was first discovered by *Jaques Carher*, An. 1534. in length 35 Leagues, seven or eight in breadth. The Iland very plain and level, of a fruitful soil, beautified with Trees of several sorts, replenished with great plenty both of Fowl and Fish, and furnished with convenient Rodes, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited, for ought I can find. 2 *RAMEÆ*, a frie of little Ilands in the great Golf of S. *Lawrence*,

on

on the South of *Natiscotec*, first found out or frequented by the Citizens of S. *Malo* in *Bretagne*, *An.* 1590. of great resort for the *Morse-fishing*, used upon the Coasts, which is here so gainfull, that a *French* Bark in a very little time killed 1500 of them. These Morses (take this by the way) are a kinde of Sea-Horses, or Sea-Oxen, with two teeth of a foot long growing downwards out of the upper Jaw, sold dearer then *Ivory*, because esteemed a Soveraign *Antidote* against poisons. They have also four feet, no ears, the horns about half an ell in length; the skin when dressed, twice as thick as that of a Bull; their flesh when young, as sweet and tender as a Veal. So fat and unctuous that with the bellies of five of them, there is made usually an Hogs-head of *Train-oil*, as good as that of the *Whale*. 3. *BRION*, a small Iland on the South of the *Ramea*, about two Leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich soil, fat pasturage, well shaded with tall and lofty trees; and neighboured by a smaller Iland called *Isle Blanche*, of the like fertility. 4. *BRITON*, (*Insula Britonum*) so named from *Jaques Breton* a *Frenchman*, in the time of *Francis* the first, called also the Iland of S. *Lawrence*, is situate on the South east of the Isle of *Brion*, in form *triangular*, in compass about 80 Leagues; pleasant and fruitfull, though for the most part swelled with hils. Destitute of Rivers but interlaced with great Arms of the *Sea*, well stored with shell-fish; and in the midst thereof a great Lake full of little Ilands: the Woods repleniished with plenty of Deer, *black Foxes*, and a Bird called *Pengwin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the *Portugals* did sometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the Aire too cold for them, they again deserted it. The chief Hauen is by the *English* called *Newport*, by the *French Port aux Anglois*, from the great resort of the *English* to it, in regard of their fishing. 5. *ISLE DE SABLE*, by the *French* so called from the sands which lie high about it; distant from the *Breton Isle* about 30 Leagues to the South, 15 Leagues in compass, but more long then broad, and of unsafe Landing. The planting of it, in regard of the safety of the place, attempted twice by the *French*, and once by the *Portugals*, but without succes. 6. Others of less note, as *Menego*, and *Les Isles des Oiseaux*, I pass over purposely; there being nothing or but little to be spoken of them.

So it appears by this Accompt that though the *French* have given the name of *Nova Francia*, to all these Countries; yet they never had the honour of the first discoverie, wherein the *English* and the *Portugueze* had precedency of them: nor are possessed of any considerable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large share; the *English* Masters of the best Ports, and all the Inlands of the Country in the hands of the *Salvages*. Of these some great and powerfull Nations over-sway the rest, the chief whereof are the *Iroquois* on the North-east of *Norumbegua*, neighboured by the *Ochataignins*, the *Alboumequins*, and the *Nebicerines*, the *Souriquois*, and *Etechimins*, of *Accadie* and *new Alexandria*: the *Montagnets*, and the *Attogovantans*, on the banks of the *Canada*. All of them stout and hardy people, false of their words, treacherous in their practises, and mercileſs in their revenges. So well acquainted with the factions and divisions of *Europe*, that they know how to make use of one Nation against another; and by that means to keep themselves in their first estate, without being subject unto any. So that the footing which the *English*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtained amongst them, serve rather to secure themselves in the way of their Trading, then to entitle them unto any possession or command in the Country; the *French* being shut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*; the *Scots* pretending only to a Bay or two in the South of *Accadie*; and the *English* being only *Tenants at the Will* of the Natives for such conveniency of fishing as they have in the adjoyning Ilands.

OF

OF

VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North *Canada*, on the South *Florida*; on the East *Mare del Noort*; the western boundaries not known, or not well discovered. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that *Virgin*-Monarch; when discovered (to any purpose) by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *An.* 1584. By the natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that name; one of the chief in all the Country.

The Inland parts hereof are Mountainous and barren, full of thick woods, a Receptacle for wilde Beasts, and the wilder *Salvages*. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitfull, as will appear by the Survey of its several Provinces; Premising first that *Virginia* in the full Latitude thereof extendeth from the 34th. degree where it joyns with *Florida*, unto the 44th. where it quartereth on *Norumbega*.

The first Discovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, *An.* 1497. did first entitle the Crown of *England* to this Country; The Design after seconded by one Mr. *Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petit Kings or Princes hereof; who did Homage to K. *Henry* the 8. then sitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Westminster*: but nothing further done in pursuance of it. And though *John Verazzani*, a noble *Florentine*, at the incouragement and charge of King *Francis* the first, *An.* 1524. discovered more of the Country then *Cabot* did; yet the *French* too much in love with the pleasures of *France*, or intangled in *Civill* Wars amongst themselves, looked no further after it: Insomuch that the Country lying thus neglected, was re-discovered by the charges and direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then *Captain of the Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, *An.* 1584. who sending Master *Philip Amadas*, and Master *Arthur Barlow* upon this employment, did by them take possession of it in Queen *Elizabeths* name, in honour of whom he caused it to be called *Virginia*. The next year he sent hither a *Colonie* under the conduct of the noble Sir *Richard Greenvile*: who not supplied with necessaries for their subsistence, returned home again. In the year 1587, a second *Colonie* is sent hither, but as successless as the first: the business being undertaken only on a private Purse, not owned as the *interesse* of the State, or of publick moment, till the year 1606. In the mean time the North parts of this Country being more perfectly discovered by Captain *Bartholomew Gosnold*, *An.* 1602. and the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to say, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into these three parts, 1 *New-England*, 2 *Novum Belgium*, 3 *Virginia* strictly and specially so called. To which the Isles of the *Bermudas* shall come in for a fourth.

NEW ENGLAND hath on the North east *Norumbegua*, and on the South-west *Novum Belgium*. So called by the *Adventurers* by whom first planted, not so much because opposite to *Nova Albion*, as some men conceive; as in imitation of the like adjuncts of distinction, given by the *French* and *Spaniards* to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like.

The Country situate in the middle of the *Temperate Zone*, betwixt the degrees of 41. & 44. equally distant from the *Artick Circle*, and the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; by consequence naturally of the same degree of heat with *France* or *Italy*: But by reason of the thick mists which arise from the Seas adjoyning, those heats so moderated, that the Aire is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *Englisb* body. The soil not only fruitfull of such commodities as grow there naturally; but also of all sorts of grain which were brought from *England*. Great store of Woods and trees both for fruit and building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of salt and fish upon the shores; and as for Turkies, Partriges, Swans, Geese, Cranes, Ducks, Pigeons, such a full variety, as serves not only for necessity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of most note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many sorts of Fish, some Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Masts, Cables, Timber fit for shipping: in a word whatsoever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might be at better rates, and with far less trouble be supplied from hence; at least, if we believe the *Relations* of it published in the year 1622.

The People for the most part well enough disposed, if not roughly handled, hospitable, and more civil then the rest of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of *Religion*, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *Englisb* at their first setling there *Anno* 1608. they would use to say that *King* James *was a good King, and his* God *a good God, but their* Tanto *naught*. Which *Tanto* was an evil Spirit which did haunt and trouble them every *Moon*, and therefore they worshipped him for fear. Which notwithstanding, I finde not any great increase of *Christianity* amongst the *Natives*: our *Englisb* Undertakers thinking it sufficient if *they and their houses served the Lord*, without caring what became of the souls of the wretched People; which hitherto have *sate in darkness and the shadow of death*, notwithstanding those *New lights* which have shined amongst them.

And

And as for thoſe New-comers which have planted there, all *Engliſh*, though ſome immediately out of *Holland*; I cannot better tell you of what ſtrain they were, then in the words of *John de Laet*, *Novi Orbis lib.* 3. *cap* 8. where he obſerveth, *Primos hoſce* Colonos, *uti & illos qui poſtea acceſſerunt, potiſſimùm aut omnino fuiſſe ex eorum hominum* Secta, *quos in Anglia* Brownitas *&* Puritanos *vocant, quales non pauci & in* Belgium *ſuperioribus annis ſe receperunt, & hinc ad ſocios ſunt profecti.* They were (ſaith he) either for the moſt part or altogether of that *Sect*, which in *England* are called *Brownists* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly betaken themſelves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to joyn with their Brethren in *New-England.*

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Tameſcot*, where our men found Oyſters of nine inches long. 2 *Nanſic*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this tract. 3 *Sagahadoc*, of moſt note, and deſervedly too: Of a mile and an half broad at the mouth or influx, and ſo upwards for the ſpace of a dayes journey, where it maketh a large Lake three dayes journey broad, with ſix Ilands in it; nouriſhed with two large Channels, the one from the North-eaſt, the other from the North-weſt, each of them riſing from a *Lake*, the leaſt of which four dayes journey long, two broad, the other double it. Of leſſe note, 4 *Apanawapesk*, 5 *Ramaſſoc*, 6 *Aſhamahaga*, &c.

The Country on the Sea ſide full of notable *Havens*, populous, and very well inhabited; inſomuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the ſpace of 70 miles above twenty *Havens*, ſome of them capable of 500 or 1000 ſail; moſt of them ſheltered from the furies of wind and ſea, by the interpoſition of ſome Ilands, of which about 200 lie upon that Coaſt. In the ſpace of 70 miles he reckoneth forty Villages of the Barbarous people, the chief of which, 1 *Macadacut*, 2 *Segocket*, 3 *Pemmaquid*, 4 *Nuſconcus*, 5 *Kennebecque*, &c. all called by the name of ſome Brook or water upon which they were ſeated. Since added by the *Engliſh*, 1 S *Georges Fort*, the firſt Plantation of the *Engliſh*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagahadoc*, in a Demy-Iland, *An.* 1607. 2 *New Plimouth*, ſeated in a large and capacious Bay; at the firſt building (*An.* 1620.) conſiſting of nineteen families only, but in ſhort time improved to an handſom Town: which as it was the firſt Town, ſo it was the firſt Church which was ſetled there, modelled according to the form of Mr. *Robinſons* Church in *Holland*, that notorious *Separatiſt*, and after made a pattern to the reſt of theſe Churches, each abſolute and *Independent* in it ſelf, without ſubordination unto any Superior. For my part, I behold *Epiſcopacie* as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Chriſt*: but if there were no other Pretenders to it then *Presbyterie* and *Independencie*, I ſhould as ſoon look for the Scepter and Throne of Chriſt (as they pleaſe to phraſe it) in the *Co-ordination* of *New England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the Kirk of *Scotland*. 3 *Briſtow*, upon the Seaſide alſo, but more North then *Plimouth*. 4 *Barſtaple*, ſo called with reference to a noted Sea town of that name in *Devonſhire*; as 5 *Boſton*, with like reference to as noted a Sea-port in *Lincolnſhire*. 6 *Quillipiack*, on the Bay of *Maſſachuſets*; a Town of an old name, but a new plantation.

This part of *Virginia* firſt diſcovered by Captain *Goſnold*, An. 1602. and the next year more perfectly ſurveyed by ſome of *Briſtol*, was by King *James* An. 1606. granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, to be planted and diſpoſed of for the publike; Sir *John Popham*, then *Chief Juſtice* of the *Common Pleas*, being one of the *Chief* alſo in that Commiſſion. By his encouragement, and principally at his charge, a *Colonie* was ſent thither *An.* 1607. under the Preſidencie of Captain *George Popham*, and *Ralegh Gilbert*, who built the Fortreſs of S. *George* at the mouth of *Sagahadoc*. But the Preſident dying the next year, and not long after him the *Chief-Juſtice* alſo, the *Colonie* deſpairing of good ſucceſs, returned home again. Succeſſleſly again attempted *An.* 1614. the *Undertakers* were reſolved to make further trial of their fortune, and in the year 1616 ſent out eight ſhips more: but it never ſetled into form till the year 1620. when by the building of *New Plimouth*, and ſome encouragements ſent thence to bring others on, it grew in very ſhort time to ſo ſwift a growth, that no *Plantation* for the time ever went beyond it. The growth of *old Rome* and *New England* had the like foundation: both Sanctuaries, *Ad quæ turba omnis ex finitimis gentibus* novarum rerum *cupida confluxit*, as *Livy* telleth us of the one; reſorted to by ſuch of the neighbouring Nations, as longed for *innovations* in Church and State.

2. *NOVUM BELGIUM* or *NIEUW NEDERLANDT*, hath on the North-eaſt *New-England*, on the South-weſt *Virginia* ſpecially ſo called. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their plantation in it *An.* 1614. the Country being then void, and conſequently open to the next *Pretender*, according to that *Maxime* in the Civil laws, *Quæ nullius ſunt, in bonis dantur occupanti.* And yet they had ſome better title then a bare *Intruſion*, having bought *Hudſons* Cards and Maps, and otherwiſe contented him for the charge and pains of his *Diſcovery*, *An.* 1609. Of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38. Degree and an half, to the 41. 15. of a good temperature both of Aire and ſoil: fruitfull of thoſe things which the Earth brought forth of its own accord, abundance of wilde Grapes, and Nuts, Trees of great height and bulk for ſhipping; plenty of Herbage, ſtore of Plants, the effects of nature: and where the People did their part, ſuch increaſe of *Maize* (a Plant of which they make their Bread) as ſhewed their care and induſtry to be well beſtowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furniſhed (within their command) with Wheat and other ſorts of Grain; as alſo of Flax, Hemp, and ſuch other Commodities as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The *Woods* repleniſhed with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the *Rivers* not inferiour to any in *Sturgeons*, Salmons, and other the beſt ſort of Fiſh which can ſwim in the water.

The

The People though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the ſame diſpoſition with the other *Savages*. Clad in Beaſts skins, for the moſt part without certain dwellings, dwelling toegther many Families of them under one poor roof, made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the bark of Trees. Their houſhold ſtuff a *Tabacco Pipe*, a wooden diſh, and an *Hatchet* made of a broad flint; their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of fiſhes. Their Religion *Idolatry*, or worſe, their chief God the *Devil*, whom they worſhip under the name of *Menetto*; but with leſs pomp and Ceremony then is uſed in *Africk*. Of manners, fearfull and ſuſpicious (not without good cauſe) wonderfull greedy of revenge; but if well uſed, tractable and obedient unto their Superiours; fickle, but very faithfull unto thoſe who truſt them: conceived to be inclinable to the *Chriſtian* Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of thoſe who had ſtudied *godlineſs* more then *gain*.

Rivers of note they have not many. That want ſupplyed by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coaſt; the principal of thoſe that be 1 *Manhattes*, by ſome called *Naſſovius*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Noordt Rivier*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-Port*, ſo called by *Cornelius May*, the Maſter of a Ship of *Holland*, at their firſt Plantation; another channel of it, which from the noiſe thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying it ſelf againſt an Iland called the *Iſle of Nuts*. The River about 15, or 16. Fathom deep at the mouth thereof, affordeth a ſafe Road for ſhipping, but of difficult entrance. 2 *Zuid Rivier*, ſo called becauſe more Southerly then the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not ſo well diſcovered.

Towns here are few either of the old or *New* Plantations. The *Natural* Inhabitants live together in *Tribes*, many Families of thoſe *Tribes* under one Roof, as before was ſaid; but thoſe Families ſo remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a ſcattered Village. Nor do I finde that either the *Hollanders* or the *Engliſh* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to building; The title of the *Dutch* being ſubject unto ſome diſputes; and the Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh* not confirmed and ſetled. *Hudſon* an *Engliſhman*, had ſpent ſome time in the Diſcovery of this Country, and given his name to one of the Rivers of it. With him the *Hollanders*, An. 1609. as before is ſaid, compounded for his Charts, and Maps, and whatſoever he could challenge in the right and ſucceſs of that his Voyage. But they were hardly warm in their new habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governour of *Virginia*, ſpecially ſo called (having diſpoſſeſſed the *French* of that part of *Canada*, now called *Nova Scotia*, *An.* 1613.) diſputed the poſſeſſion with them; alledging that *Hudſon*, under whoſe ſale they claimed that Country, being an *Engliſhman*, and licenſed to diſcover thoſe Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or diſmember it (being but a part or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour ſubmits himſelf and his Plantation to his Majeſty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for, and under him. But a new Governour being ſent from *Amſterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes; but began to fortifie himſelf, and entitle thoſe of *Amſterdam* to a juſt propriety. To which end, he gave unto the Country the name of *New Netherland*, conferred new names on all the Bays and Rivers of it; and poſſeſſed himſelf of a little Iland neer that Branch of the *Noordt-River*, which themſelves call *Hell-gate*: where he laid the foundation of a Town, called *New-Amſterdam*; and built a Fortreſs by the name of *Orange-Fort*, which he garriſonned, and planted with five pieces of Cannon, complaint whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him repreſented to the *States* of *Holland*: it was declared by the ſaid *States* in a publick inſtrument, that they were no ways intereſſed in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *Weſt-Indian* Company of *Amſterdam*; and ſo referred it wholly to his Majeſties pleaſure. Which being declared, a Commiſſion was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore* to plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARY-LAND*; the like not long after to Sir *Edmund Loyden*, for planting and poſſeſſing the more Northern parts which lie towards *New-England*, by the name of *Nova Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then ſeem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there, for the ſum of 2500. l. yet taking advantage of the troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raiſed their demands to a greater height; but furniſhed the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to uſe their Weapons. A moſt miſchievous and wicked Act; not only tending to the damage and diſcouragement of the preſent Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Chriſtians out of all theſe Countries. But the beſt is, they were the firſt that ſmarted by it; the *Salvages* thus armed and trained, fell fowl upon them, deſtroying their Farme-Houſes, and forcing them to betake themſelves to their Forts and Faſtneſſes. What hath been ſince done (for the giving of new names to ſome of the old places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *Engliſh*, I can hardly ſay: but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpoſe, till it be made a Work of more publick intereſſe.

3. *VIRGINIA* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the North-eaſt *Nieu Netherlandt*, on the South-weſt, *Florida*, the name reſtrained to this part only, ſince the two laſt Plantations, which before was common to the whole. The Country lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. degree of Northern *Latitude*; by conſequence the Aire inclined unto heats, if not refreſhed and moderated by a conſtant Gale of Eaſtern winds which they call the *Brize*; and the blaſts driving on it from the open Seas. Diverſified moſt pleaſantly into hills and valleys; the Mountains clothed with woods, and the Fields with fruits. The ſoil ſo fruitful that an Acre of Land well ordered will return 200 Buſhels, or 25 Quarter of Corn. Said alſo to be rich in veins of *Allom*, as alſo in Pitch, Turpentine, ſtore of Cedars, Grapes, Oile, plenty of ſweet Gums, ſeveral ſorts of Plants for the Dyers uſe, ſome Mines of Iron and Cop-

per, of Timber trees almoſt infinite numbers; as alſo great abundance of Cattel, Fiſh, Fowl, Fruit, and of *Maiz* no ſcarcity. Some *Chriſtall* found amongſt the Mountains, on the ſhore ſome *Pearls*; nothing deficient either in the ſoil or Aire for the incouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The People are but few in number for ſo large a Country, and thoſe as different in ſize, as in ſpeech or manner; Some of them, whom they call *Saſques-hanoxi*, of ſo vaſt a greatneſs, that in compariſon of the *Engliſh* they ſeemed as Giants: clad with the skins of Bears, and Wolves in ſo ſtrange manner that the head of the Beaſt hung before their breaſts inſtead of a *Jewel*; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other ſide, whom they call *Wigcocomoci*; of ſo low a ſtature, that in relation to the other, they appear as *Pigmies*. But generally they are all of tall ſtature, well limbed, for the moſt part without Beards, and the one half of the head kept ſhaven: clothed in looſe Mantles made of the skins of Deer, with an Apron of the ſame to hide their nakedneſs; the reſt of their bodies painted over with the figures of Serpents or of ſome other Creature of as horrid ſhape. Strong and accuſtomed to the cold which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconſtant, crafty, and ſomewhat more induſtrious then the reſt of the *Savages*; but given to anger, and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they worſhip all things (and them only) which are like to hurt them, as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder &c. So that it may be ſaid of them, as once *Lactantius* ſaid of the ancient *Romans*, did not the ignorance of theſe poor Wretches render them excuſable, and make them fitter objects for our Prayers and pittie, then our ſcorns) *Digniſſimi homines qui Deos ſuos ſemper haberent præſentes.* One Devil-God above all the reſt (they call him *Oke*) whom they worſhip, as themſelves confeſs, more for fear then Love. Not yet converted from theſe horrible and groſs *Idolatries* by the long neighbourhood of the *Engliſh*; accuſed in that reſpect moſt juſtly by thoſe of *Rome*.

No Country for the bigneſs of it can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers, the principal of which 1 *Powhatan* (ſo called by the name of that petit *Roitelet*, whoſe Territory it paſſeth thorow) which having run a courſe of an hundred miles, and Navigable all that way by ſmaller Veſſels, is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad. 2 *Apamatuck*, 3 *Nanſamund*, and 4 *Chikahamania*, all Tributaries to *Pawhatan*. 5 *Pamanuke*, fourteen miles more North then *Pawhatan*, but of leſſer note. 6 *Toppahanock*, Navigable 130 miles. 7 *Patawomeke*, paſſable by Boat 140 miles, and ſix or ſeven miles broad where it falleth into the Sea; increaſed by many leſſer ſtreams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well ſtored with Fiſh. 8 *Pawtunxut*, of a ſhorter Race, but a deeper Channel then moſt of the former (16. or 18. Fathom deep) and of more choiſe of fiſh then the others are.

Along the Banks of theſe Rivers dwell their ſeveral Tribes, ſcarce any one of which making up an hundred men (that of *Patawomeke* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30. and ſome not ſo many. Their Habitations not containing above ten or twelve houſes a piece, but in thoſe houſes ſundry particular Families, are for the moſt part covered with the barks of Trees; ſo placed, that the Common Market place ſtandeth in the midſt, at an equal diſtance; the houſes of their *Weroances* (or the *chiefs* of their Tribes) and that which ſerveth them for a Temple, being ſomewhat finer then the reſt. And of theſe Habitations ſome are preſented to us by the names of *Ooanoke*, by the *Engliſh* called the *Blinde Town*, 2 *Pemeoke*, 3 *Shycoake*, ſaid by my Author to be *Civitas ampla*, a large City, but we muſt underſtand him with Relation to the reſt of this Country. 4 *Chowanoak*, 5 *Secatan*, 6 *Mattaken*, 7 *Weopomioke*, 8 *Pyſhokonnok*, ſaid to be inhabited by none but women, 9 *Chipano*, 10 *Muſcamunge*, both upon the Sea; moſt of them called by the name of thoſe ſeveral *Tribes* which inhabit in them.

In reference to the *Engliſh* and their *Plantations*, we are to know that they made choice of the Southſide of a large and goodly Bay for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thruſting it ſelf a great way up into this Country, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before mentioned, is by the Natives called *Cheſepoack*, and yeildeth the only ſafe entrance into this part of the Country: the *Capes* thereof for that cauſe fortified by the *Engliſh*; that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of moſt note which have been either ſince built or frequented by them, 1 *James Town* (*Jacobipolis*, ſo named in honour of King *Iames*; on the South-ſide of that Bay, not far from the River *Chikahamania*: firſt founded in the year 1606, at what time it was trenched about, and ſome Ordnance planted on the Works. 2 *Henries* Town (*Henricopolis*) ſo named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the eldeſt ſon of King *Iames*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 80 miles from *Iames Town*. 3 *Dales-gift*, ſo called, becauſe built and planted at the charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, *An.* 1610. 4 *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*. 5 *Ketoughtan*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Cheſepoack*, very much traded by the Engliſh. 6 *Wicocomoco* the chief Town of *Pawhatan*, one of the Roitelets of this Country; much courted by the *Engliſh* at their firſt ſetling here, and a long time after: a *Crown* being ſent him by King *Iames* with many other rich preſents, the better to ſweeten and oblige him; but for all that he proved a treacherous and unfaithfull neighbour.

The ſum of the Affairs of this laſt Plantation, is, that the buſineſs being reſumed in the year 1606, and a *Commiſſion* granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the work, they fell in hand, by the Counſell and incouragement of Capt. *Smith*, with the building of *James Town* (having firſt fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a *Colony* of 100 men. Theſe being almoſt conſumed by famine

famine and other miſeries, were the next year recruited with 120 more brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire having caſually conſumed their houſes, once again diſcouraged them. But the houſes being reedified, and a Church added to the houſes, by the induſtry of *Smith* their Governour, the *Colonie* began to flouriſh, and to increaſe in reputation amongſt the *Savages*, eſpecially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Pawhatan*. In the year 1609. the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 perſons, (and of them 200 expert Souldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Muskets, with victuals and ammunition neceſſary; and 39 of their *Weroances* or Petit-Kings Tributaries and Contributioners to the *Engliſh*. Sir *Thomas Gates* and Sir *George Summers*, ſent thither with 9 ſhips and 500 men, loſt a great part of their numbers in the Iſle of *Bermudaz*: the reſt not well according with the old *Plantation*, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three Ships more, *An.* 1610. But falling into a deſperate ſickneſs, and come home to *England*, he recommended the eſtate of the *Engliſh* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furniſhed them with Men, Cattel, and other neceſſaries: after whom came Sir *Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and ſome heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry* Earl of *Southampton*, the affairs here began to ſettle in a proſperous way; when unexpectedly in the year 1621. the *Salvages* falling on them (fearing no ſuch treacherie) killed 340 of their men; and had alſo then ſurprized *James Town*, if one of the *Savages*, who had received the *Chriſtian* faith, had not diſcovered their intention. Since that, recovered of that blow, it went happily forwards: and might by this time have been raiſed to ſome power and greatneſs, if the *Engliſh* by diverting on ſome by plantations, and by imploying indigent and neceſſitous perſons in ſo great a work, had not diſcouraged the deſign. For certainly one might ſay of this *Plantation*, as the *Scripture* doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few or none were ſent unto it (except the Principals) but ſuch as *were in diſtreſs, or debt*, or ſome way or other *diſcontented*: men never likely to advance and purſue a buſineſs of ſuch publike *intereſſe*. Commendable howſoever in this particular, (though perhaps that commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themſelves conſtantly to thoſe *Forms of Worſhip* which were eſtabliſhed and obſerved in the Church of *England*.

As for the *Natives* of the whole, they were divided (as was ſaid) into ſeveral *Tribes*, every Tribe under the command of their ſeveral *Chiefs*: which *Chiefs* though many in number, and of little power, knew well enough how to keep their *State* unto their Subjects, and to ſhew it alſo unto Strangers. For when *Powhatan* was pleaſed to give audience unto Captain *Newport* and the reſt of the *Engliſh* ſent from *Smith*, they found him on a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather imbroidered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of skins like an *Iriſh* Mantle: at his head and feet an handſom young woman; on each ſide of the room twenty others, with their necks and ſhoulders painted *Red*, and about their necks a great chain of Beads; his principal men ſitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithſtanding this great *State*, (and great it was indeed for ſuch petit Princes) he and the reſt became ſo ſubject to the *Engliſh*, that in *Smiths* time they did not only pay their *Tributes* or Contributions, but at his command would ſend their *Slaves* and Subjects to *James-Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the *Colonie*. And it is probable enough that thoſe of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerful Plantation (as followed with the *ſtronger zeal*, and carried on by the united purſes of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence alſo amongſt the *Natives*; though I find it not expreſſed in ſo many particulars.

4. The Iſles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number (ſome ſay 400 at the leaſt) are ſituate directly Eaſt from *Virginia*, from which they are diſtant 500 *Engliſh* miles, 3300 of the ſame miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John Bermudaz* a *Spaniard*, by whom firſt diſcovered. Called alſo the *Summer-Ilands*, from the ſhipwrack of Sir *George Summers* upon that Coaſt; ſo much delighted with the ſadneſs of the miſadventure, that he endeavoured what he could to ſettle a *Plantation* in it.

That of more fame and greatneſs then all the reſt, to which the name is now moſt properly aſcribed, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 32. & 30 minutes. Well ſtored, when firſt diſcovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers fruits, Mulberries, *Palmitos*, Cedars; as alſo of Silk-worms, *Pearls* and *Amber*, and ſuch rich Commodities: of Fowl ſo infinite an abundance, that our men took a thouſand of one ſort, as big as a *Pigeon*, within two or three hours. The Aire hereof very ſound and healthy, found by experience (the beſt Argument in ſuch a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *Engliſh* man; yet terribly expoſed to tempeſts of rain, thunder, and lightning: For which, and for the many ſhipwracks happening on the Coaſts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be ſaid to own it; the Mariners have pleaſed to call it the *Iland of Devils*. The ſoil affirmed to be as fertile as any, well watered, plentiful in *Maize*, of which they have two Harveſts yearly: that which is ſowed in *March*, being cut in *July*; and that which is ſowed in *Auguſt*, being mowed in *December*. No venemous creature to be found in all the Iland, or will live, brought hither. And beſides theſe Commodities, of ſo ſafe a being, ſo fenced about with Rocks and Ilets, that without knowledge of the paſſages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the *Haven*; yet with ſuch knowledge, there is entrance for the greateſt ſhips. The *Engliſh* have ſince added to theſe ſtrengths of nature, ſuch additional helps, by Block-houſes, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of *Impregnable*.

It was first discovered (but rather accidentally then upon design) by *John Bermudaz*, a *Spaniard*, about the year 1522. and thereupon a *Proposition* made in the Council of *Spain*, for setling a *Plantation* in it; as a place not to be avoided by the *Spanish Fleets* in their return from the Bay of *Mexico* by the Streits of *Bahama*. Neglected notwithstanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George Summers*, sent to *Virginia* with some Companies of *English* by the Lord *De la Ware*, An. 1609. Who being shipwracked on this Coast, had the opportunity to survey the Iland; which he so liked, that he endeavoured a *Plantation* in it, at his coming home. *An.* 1612. the first *Colonie* was sent over under *Richard More*, who in three years erected eight or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordinance. *An.* 1616. a new Supply is sent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applied themselves to sowing Corn, setting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and planting that gainful Weed *Tobacco*. *An.* 1619. the business is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the *Publick*, many great Lords and men of Honour being interessed in it: Captain *Butler* sent thither with 500 men, the Isle divided into *Tribes* or *Cantreds*, to each Tribe a *Burrough*; the whole reduced to a setled Government both in *Church* and *State*, according to the Law of *England*. After this, all things so succeeded, that in the year 1623. here were said to be three thousand *English*, ten Forts, and in those Forts fifty peeces of Ordinance; their numbers since increasing daily, both by Children borne within the Iland, and supplies from *England*.

OF

OF FLORIDA.

FLORIDA is bounded on the North-east with *Virginia*; on the East with *Mare del Noort*; on the South and some part of the West with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the rest of the West with part of *New Gallicia*, and some Countries hitherto not discovered. Extended from the River of *Palmes* in the 25 degree of *Latitude* to *Rio de Secco* in the 34. which evidently speaketh it for a Country of large dimensions.

It was first discovered by the *English* under the conduct of *Sebastian Cabat*, *An.* 1497. afterwards better searched into by *John de Ponce*, a *Spaniard*, who took possession of it in the name of that King, *An.* 1527. and by him called *Florida*, either because he landed there upon *Palm*-Sunday, which the *Spaniards* call *Pascua di Flores*, or *Pascha Florida*; or else *quia Florida erat Regio*, by reason of that fresh verdure and flourishing estate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is said to be called *Jaquasa*.

This Country lying *Parallel* to *Castile* in *Spain*, is said to be of the same temper both for Aire and Soil, but that it is abundantly more fruitfull: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of *Maize* (the natural bread-Corn of the Country) which they sowe twice a year, *viz. March* and *June*, and reap in the third month after, laying it in some publick Barns, and thence distribute it to the necessities of particular persons. Well stored with several sorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Chesnuts, Grapes, and Plums of both excellent taste and colour: Beasts wilde and tame of all kindes which these Countries yield; and of like sorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forrests full of the largest Okes, and the loftiest Cedars; some Cypress-Trees and Bays of a large proportion; with great plenty of that Wood which the Inhabitants call *Pavame*, and the *French* name *Sassafras*; the bark whereof is Medicinal against some Diseases; and another Tree which we call *Esquine*, affirmed to be a Soveraign and present Remedie for the *French* disease. It is also said to be enriched with some Mines of Gold and Silver, neglected by the *Natives*, till the coming of the *Spaniards* and *French* put a price upon them; and to have in it *Emeralds* of great worth and beauty, with many *Turquoises* and Pearls. Others report that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongst them came from some ships which had been wracked upon those Coasts: contrary whereunto it is said by the *Natives*, that in the Hills which they call *Apalatei*, there are found great Veins of a reddish Mettal, which the *French* concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to search into them.

The People are of an *Olive-Colour*, great stature, and well proportioned; naked except their Privities, which they hide with the skins of Stags: their Arms and knees stained with divers paintings, not to be washed off; their hair black, and hanging down as low as their thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of dissimulation. So stomackfull that they do naturally love War and Revenge, insomuch that they are continually in War with one or other. They are crafty also and very intelligent, as appeareth by the Answer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a *Spaniard*, who was here among them *An.* 1549. For when he went to perswade the people that he was the son of God, and came to teach them the Law: Not so, replyed a *Floridan*, for *God never bad thee to kill and slay, and work all kinde of mischief against us.* The Women when their Husbands are dead, use to cut off their hair close to their ears, and strew it on his Sepulchre; and cannot marry again, till their hair be grown long enough to cover their shoulders. *Hermophrodites* are here also in great plenty, whom they use as beasts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kinde of drudgery. They have all a gross belief of the souls immortality, but are otherwise Idolaters.

Mountains this Country hath not many, as being generally plain and level; the chiefest those called *Apalatei* before mentioned; supposed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of most note, 1 *Rio Secco*, 2 *Rio Grande*, 3 *Serravahi*; the two first named so by the *Spaniards*, and the last by the *Natives*: 4 *Garunna*, 5 *Ligeis*, 6 *Axona*, 7 *Sequana*, and 8 *Charente*, so called by the *French*, according to the names of the best Rivers in *France*; both *French* and *Spaniards* having severally and successively the possession of it. Here are also 9 *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers; 10 *Rio de Neives*, or the River of *Snow*; and 11 *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*, all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular description of these Rivers, their rise, course, and greatness, I finde not in any of my Authors. Only *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River, called *Porto Riale*, reckoned the chiefest of this Country, the mouth whereof is three miles broad, where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the VVest, and the other pointing to the North. Some of these Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with *Crocodiles*, a creature dangerous alike both by Land and VVater.

The Country not so well discovered and planted hitherto as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly distributed into several *Tribes*, as were all Nations of the VVorld at their first *Discovery*.

The

The principal of these they reckon the *Quevenes*, *Marianes*, *Canagadi*, *Camoni*, *Avavares*, and *Malicones*, the *Susolas*, *Quitones*, and other names not usual unto us of *Europe*; though these more passable then many which have gone before: mollified perhaps by the *French* and *Spaniards*, and not presented to us in their natural roughness; all governed by their *Paracousti*, or several *Chiefs*, and those at deadly *Feuds*, and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as *Panuca*, *Avanares*, *Abarduosia*, *Joguazia*, *Apalchia*, *Anthia*, *Samovia*, *Colas*; but they acquaint us neither with their site nor bounds: except it be that *Panuca* lyeth on the borders of *Hispania Nova*, beyond the large and spacious Bay of the *Holy Ghost*; and *Calos* neer the Cape called *Cape di Florida*. Others distinguish it by the names of the several *Roytelets*, which varying with the change of the person, makes that division to be very variable and uncertain also. But it is generally agreed that the *Peninsula*, which pointeth on the Isle of *Cuba*, hath the name of *Tegesta* or *Florida* specially so called; the name of *Florida* being first given by *John Ponce* unto this part only, though afterwards communicated unto all the rest of this Country. A *Demy-Iland* stretching in length from the South to the North 100 Leagues; in breadth where broadest 30 Leagues, and in some places 20 only. VVell known by the Cape of *Martyrs*, looking into the Isle of *Cuba*; the River of the *holy Ghost*, and three goodly Bays, the chief whereof, that entituled to S. *Joseph*; all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole environed about, save where it is joyned unto the *Continent*, with Bars of sands, and scattered Ilands, which serve unto it as the *out-Works* to some notable Fortress.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 S. *Helens*, on or neer a *Promontory*, so named where this Country bordereth on *Virginia*: once fortified and possessed by the *Spaniard*, but not long since abandoned. 2 *Fort de Charles*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Maio*, and so called in honour of *Charles* the ninth, in whose time the Conquest of this Country was undertaken: but ruined by the *Spaniard* in the VVar between them. 3 *Port Royal*, a well frequented Haven on the Mouth of the River, of that name; but whether there be any Town now remaining, I am not able to say. More in the Land (for these lie all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*, *Apalche* supposed to be a place of great consideration, and in regard of the opinion which was had of the wealth thereof; (but found to be a small Town, of but 40 Cottages) and therefore first attempted and took in by the *Spaniard*, in their invasion of this Countrey under *Pamphilus* of *Narvaes*, *An.* 1528. recovered by the Natives after his departure. 5 *Ante*, an open Burrough, nine days journey from *Apalche*, where the *Salvages* gave the *Spaniards* a sharp encounter, and slew many of them; but being vanquished at the last, they forsook the Town; of it self not tenable. 6 *Ocalis*, an unwalled Town, but consisting of 600 Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houses) the chief of the Kingdom of *Acuera*. 7 *Osachile*, the chief Seat of the King so called; and, 8 *Vitacuchus*, a Burrough of 200 Cottages, the principal of the Kingdom of *Vitatuchus*, both taken by the *Spaniards* at the same time also. 9 S. *Matthews*, on the Eastern shore of the Demi-Iland above mentioned, possessed and fortified by the *Spaniard*. 10 S. *Augustines* on the same shore, but more South then the other, situate at the mouth of a small River so named, fortified by the *Spaniard* with many a strong Castle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, *An.* 1485. there being found in the Fort of S. *John*, in which the strength of the Town consisted, 18 brass pieces, and 20000 *Florents* in ready money, for the pay of the Garrison. Repaired afterwards more strongly then ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have also Garrisons in two other places of this Country, *viz.* S. *Philip*, and S. *Jago*; but I cannot say distinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Country, is of one kinde only, though managed by several persons: the Supream power residing in the *Chiefs* of their several *Tribes*; at such continual enmity with one another, that they very seldom joyn together in any Counsels, wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the present *Floridans*, as the *Romans* did of the ancient *Britans*; *Nec quicquam adversus Validissimas gentes utilius nobis fuit, quam quod in commune non consulebant.* The not communicating of their Counsells, hastned on their bondage. Yet in the Government of these *Chiefs* there was somewhat of the *Parliamentary* way used with us in *Europe*. For as in all matters of concernment those *Chiefs* advised with their *Counsell*, so if it were a business which concerned the *publike*, their *Priests* and others of most note for gravity and wisdom, were admitted to the *Consultation*. But being severally too weak for a strong Invader, and never joyned together to defend themselves, they made themselves an easie prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*. *Et sic dum singuli pugnabant*, universi *vincebantur*; by trusting to their single forces they were all subdued. For in the year 1512 *John Ponce* a Native of *Leon* in *Spain*, setting sail with three ships from the Iland of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm-Sunday* fell on the *Peninsula* before described, and for that cause or from the flourishing verdure of it, called it *Florida*; but did no more then scowre along upon the coasts, and give new names to such of the Promontories and Rivers as he had discovered; and having only a slight skirmish with some of the *Salvages* returned back again. The business eight years after was again revived by *Vasques de Ayllon*, who setting sail from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hispaniola*, attained unto the Northeast parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of S. *Helen*. and the River of *Jordan*: and having treacherously enslaved some of the *Natives* (whom he had invited to a Feast) prepared for *Spain*; where he obtained the Kings Patent for a new Plantation. But his perfidiousness could not prosper. For in the year 1524 coming with his ships upon this Coast, one of them perished on the Rocks, and 200 of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprise: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more use of these Discoveries,

coveries, then wickedly to enrich themſelves by ſtealing Men, whom as wickedly they ſold for *Slaves*. Nor had the voyage of *Pamphilus de Narvaez* An. 1528. any better end; though undertaken with a Band of 400 foot and 80 horſe. For having took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of his Soveraign *Charles* the fifth, finding ſome hopes of great treaſures to be had at *Apalche* (diſtant above a moneths journey from the place of his landing) he would needs march thither. In which action, though he got that and ſome other Towns, yet he loſt himſelf; few of his men returning ſafe into their Country, and they not knowing what became of their Generall. As fruitleſs, but more famous was the enterpriſe of *Hernandes a Soto*, begun in the year 1538. and continued till 1543. who with a little Army of 350 Horſe, and 90 Foot, overran a great part of the Country, and brought many of the *Petit* Princes under the command of *Spain*. But making only a *Depradatorie* war of it to enrich himſelf, and waſte the Country, without ſetling any *Colonie*, or building any fortifications in it to make good his gettings, the Action ended with his life, which he loſt by a Feaver: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the war had ſpared, under the conduct of *Ludovico Muſcoſo di Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties.

And ſo the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter, ſent on this voyage by *Gaſpar Coligni* Admiral of *France*, An. 1562. under the conduct of *Ribault*; who falling on that part of the Continent which lieth on the Eaſt ſide of the *Peninſula*, gave the firſt Promontory which he touched at the name of *Cape Francois*: and after running Northward along that Coaſt, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Seine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garund*, and others of moſt note in his own Country. Coming as far North as the great River of *Porto-Royal*, he there built a little Fortreſs which he called *Fort Charles*, where he left 26 of his men to keep poſſeſſion, and returned for *France*: his ſoldiers following not long after, as well as they could, deſtitute of ſupplies from home, and not able with ſo ſmall a number to command them there. The Action reinforced about two years after under the conduct of *Landonier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former voyage: by whom ſome further progreſs was made in this undertaking, and a little Town built on the banks of the River *Maio*, (ſo called by *Ribault*, becauſe in that moneth diſcovered by him) which he named *Charles-Fort*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*. But a mutinie hapning amongſt his men, and ſome complaints made of him in the Court of *France*; he was called home, and *Ribault* ſent again to purſue the enterpriſe: Who entring on his charge in *Auguſt*, *An.* 1565. was preſently ſet on by the *Spaniards* both by ſea and land; his ſhips forced violently on the Rocks, the new Town ſacked, the *Colonie* put unto the ſword, very few eſcaping; *Ribault* himſelf murdered in cold blood by the Enemy, after faith given him for his life. It was thought that above 600 *French* were ſlain in this action. So ended the *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new *Civil* war, and loth to engage himſelf againſt the *Spaniard*, till the year 1627. when at the charge of *Dominicus Gurgius* a private perſon, out of an honeſt zeal to the honour of his Country, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Arx Carolina*, and raiſed two Caſtles more on the banks of the *Maio*, which they had furniſhed with ſuch Peeces as they took from the *French*, and garriſoned with 400 ſoldiers: Yet giving a couragious onſet, by the aid of the *Salvages*, (to whom the name and neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them all, demoliſhed the works, and hanged all ſuch of the Soldiers as the ſword had ſpared; and ſo returned into *France*: where in ſtead of honour and reward for ſo great a ſervice, he was in danger of loſing both his life and fortunes, compelled to lurk amongſt his friends till the times were changed. The *Spaniards* after this, to keep ſome kind of poſſeſſion, though not finding it in riches anſwerable to their greedy deſires, fortified S. *Matthews* and S. *Auguſtines* on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Demy Iland*, with the Caſtles of S. *Philip* and S. *Jago* in other parts of the Country towards the North eaſt: thinking himſelf ſo ſtrong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no forrein forces dare appear on that ſide of the Country. So that it ſeems he playes the part of *Æſops Dog* in the *Manger*, neither reſolved to plant there himſelf, nor willing that any others ſhould.

Having thus taken a ſurvey of the main Land of *Florida*, let us next take a view of ſuch Ilands as lie diſperſed up and down in the Seas adjoyning, called by one general name *LUCAIOS* or *LUCALÆ INSULÆ*; many in number, but reducible to theſe three heads, 1 The *Tortugas*, 2 The *Martyres*, & 3 The *Lucaios* ſpecially ſo called.

1 *THE TORTUGAS* are ſeven or eight little Ilands lying on an heap at the South weſt point of the *Peninſula*, called the *Cape of Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; diſtant from the Port of *Havana* in the Iſle of *Cuba* (oppoſite unto which they lie) about ſix leagues. Well known amongſt the Sailers, becauſe much avoided; or rather avoided becauſe known, the danger of their company making their further acquaintance ſhunned.

2 *THE MARTYRES*, called alſo the *Caios*, are three great Rocks rather then Ilands, covered with a white ſand, and full of buſhes; the middlemoſt of the three the greateſt: ſituate over againſt the South-eaſt Promontory of the ſaid *Peninſula*, called from hence *Cabeca de los Martyres*, or the Cape of *Martyrs*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his firſt diſcovery of this Country, becauſe they ſeemed afar off to have ſome reſemblance to men impaled upon Stakes, as many of the *Martyrs* were in the *Primitive* times. Infamous for the many ſhipwracks which have ſince there hapned; but of great obſervation amongſt *Sea faring* men, becauſe they know by leaveing theſe Rocks or Ilands on the left hand of them, that they are already entred in the Streits.

3 *THE*

3. *THE LUCAIOS* ſpecially lie diſperſed on the Eaſt of the *Peninſula*; many in number, and ſo called from *Lucaioneque*, the greateſt and moſt Northern of them, ſituate in the 27 degree of *Latitude*; of more length then breadth, but hitherto known by name only. Of greater note, though not ſo big, is that called 2 *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucaoneyn* and the *Peninſula*; in length 13 Leagues, and eight in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent current interpoſing betwixt it and the *Demy-Iland*, called the Streits of *Bahama*, yet not ſo ſtreit but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of ſo forcible a Courſe, that many times neither winde nor Oars can prevail againſt it. 3 *Guanahani*, the moſt famous of all theſe Ilands, becauſe the firſt that was diſcovered by *Columbus*, being then almoſt out of hope of proceeding further; who thereupon cauſed it to be called S. *Saviours*; well ſhaded at that time with Trees, full of freſh Springs, and very plentifull of *Cotton*: now overgrown with ſhrubs, and buſhes. 4 *Guanima*, by *Columbus* when firſt diſcovered, called S. *Maria de Conception*; begirt about with Rocks and quick ſands, but otherwiſe of a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoyl, full of delicate Springs. Others there are to the number of 24. or thereabouts, whoſe names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we finde nothing of them but their very names, I ſhall not trouble my ſelf with the *Nomenclature*.

Of all in general it is ſaid that they obeyed their King ſo ſtrictly (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from an high Rock, they performed the ſame; though he gave no reaſon but his Will. The *Women* of ſo perfect beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forſook their own Countries, to enjoy their *Loves*: their ſhape and beauty the more diſcernable in regard not ſuffered to wear any thing till their *purgations*, nor after that but nets of *Cotton*, filled with leaves of Herbs. But now, and long ſince, there are neither men nor women to be found in any of them: the People being long ſince waſted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola*; or conſumed by Famine and Diſeaſes, or otherwiſe made away in Priſons, and by ſeveral Torments; to the number of a Million and 200000, as ſome have told us. And ſo we paſs unto the other ſide of thoſe Northern Conntries; oppoſite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the main Land of *Florida*: that when we fall into the Countries now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, we may not wander out of them till this work be finiſhed; except it be to take a progreſs into ſome of the Ilands, which cannot otherwiſe be viſited but by ſuch a *ſtart*.

OF

OF CALIFORMIA.

CALIFORMIA in the large and general acception of it, containeth all thoſe Provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the Weſt-ſide of that Northern *Peninſula*, beyond *Nova Gallicia*, and *New Spain*: though in the ſtricter, limited to that Province onely which lieth like a *Demy-Iland* on the other ſide of a long and ſpacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *Califormia*. But taking it in the largeſt ſenſe, it hath on the Weſt, and ſo unto thoſe undiſcovered parts which lie furtheſt North, to the Streits of *Anian*. So witneſſeth *John de Laet*, l. 6. c. 11. *CALIFORMIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum* Novæ Hiſpaniæ *atque* Galliciæ *ad Occidentem objicitur, ad extremos* Americæ *Septentrionalis terminos, & Fretum quod vulgo* Anian *vocant*. Limited in the ſtricter ſenſe and acception of it, to an Iland (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the Weſt hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the *Chorographie* and Story of it, we muſt divide it into the Continent and the Iland: the Continent ſubdivided into the two large Provinces of 1 *Quivira*, and 2 *Cibola*; the Iland into 3 *Califormia* ſpecially ſo called, and 4 *Nova Albion*.

And firſt, the Continent of this part which we call *Califormia*, hath on the Eaſt ſome parts of *Nova Gallicia*, and beſides that thoſe vaſt and undiſcovered Countries which lie on the Weſt-ſide of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the oppoſite ſhore: bound on the North with the unknown parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-weſt, with the Streits of *Anian*, if ſuch Streits there be; on the Weſt, with the Sea interpoſing betwixt it and the Iland called *Mer Vermiglio*; and on the South and South-weſt with the reſt of *Nova Gallicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noort*: A River, which riſing in the 40 degree of Northern latitude, firſt parteth *Tignez* a Province of *Quivira*, from that of *New-Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*; and after a long courſe falleth into the Sea called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cinoloa*, another of the Provinces of that Diviſion. Divided as before was ſaid, into the two great Provinces of 1 *Quivira*, and 2 *Cibola*.

1 *QUIVIRA*, taking up the moſt Northern parts of this ſide of *America*, is ſaid to be very plain and level; of few trees, not many houſes, nor much ſtored of people; quite deſtitute of fruits and corn, and yielding nothing for mans life but the fleſh of beaſts, which they eat raw, and ſwallow down in great bits without any *chewing*. The men apparelled in Buls-skins from the head to the feet; the women, though in a cold Country, with no other garment then their hair, which they wear ſo long, that it ſerveth them in ſtead of a vail to hide their *nakedneſs*. They live in *Hoords* and companies, like the *Hoords* of the *Tartars*, not having any certain dwellings (except ſome chief men) but remove from one place to another, like the antient *Nomades*. Neer neighbours unto *Tartary*, from whence (not being much diſtant from it) it is ſuppoſed that the Inhabitants firſt came, and from hence by degrees peopled all *America*.

The Country being full of herbage, breeds great ſtore of Cattel; differing not much in bigneſs from thoſe of *Europe*, but that they have an high bunch betwixt their ſhoulders, briſtled upon the back like Bores, with ſomwhat which reſembleth the mane in Horſes, and the beard in Goats; their legs ſhort, and clad with fetlocks, their horns ſhort, but ſharp; the whole Beaſt of an aſpect ſo horrid, that an Horſe will not venture neer them, till well acquainted. Yet in theſe Beaſts lie all their Riches; theſe being to this people, as we ſay with us of our *Ale* to drunkards, meat, drink, and cloth, and more too: For the hides yield them houſes, or at leaſt the covering of them; their bones, bodkins; their hair, thread; their ſinews, ropes; their horns, maws, and bladders, veſſels; their dung, fire; their Calveskins, budgets to draw and keep water; their blood, drink; and their fleſh, meat. There is thought to be ſome traffick from *China*, or *Cathay*, hither: For when *Vaſques di Coronado* conquered it, he ſaw in the further Sea certain ſhips, not of common making, which ſeemed to be well laden, and did bear in their prows the figure of *Pelicans*; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of theſe two. I know ſome place this Country more within the Land: and others are ſo far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it cloſe unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coaſts, upon good authority; though I deny not but that ſome parts hereof may be more remote. Or elſe to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; that the *maritime* parts being known by other names, the *Inlands* might retain more ſpecially the name of *Quivira*, as we have ſeen in many other Countries before deſcribed.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, becauſe I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Seio*, the other called *Cicuic*, and the third *Tignez*: which I look upon as the *maritime* parts of the ſame one Country; but better peopled and frequented then the *Inlands* are, becauſe lying in the way of trafick. The principal Towns of which Provinces, 1 *Acus*, or *Acuco*, a ſmall town, but ſituate in a ſtrong and defenſible place; about which groweth ſome ſtore of *Cotton*, which from the place the Natives call by the name of *Acuco*.

2 *Tignez*, on the banks of a River ſo called; inhabited by a ſtout and couragious people, who being reſolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when beſieged by *Vaſques de Coronado*, after they had held out above ſix weeks, laid all their houſhold-ſtuffe and treaſure in an heap together, which they ſet on fire; and taking their wives and children into the midſt of their ranks, made a deſperate Sally on the Enemy. A reſolution worthy of a better fortune, moſt of them being ſlain in the fight, and the reſt trod under the horſes feet, or drowned in paſſing over the River. Yet would not thoſe few which were left give up the Town, till it was fired about their ears, and no longer tenable: the *Spaniard* buying this victory (notwithſtanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loſs of moſt of their horſes, the death of ſeven of their men, and the wounding of eighty. 3 *Cicuic*, a ſmall *Burrough*, but the chief of that Province, four dayes journey from *Tignez*: from whence the whole way unto *Quivira*, ſpecially ſo called, being 90 miles, hath in it neither ſtone, nor tree, nor any land-mark; inſomuch as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of *Cow-dung*, to ſerve for their direction in their coming back.

The firſt diſcovery of this Country is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza* Viceroy of *Mexico*, who deſirous to get wealth and honour by ſome new *Adventures*, imployed in the diſcovery of theſe Northern parts Frier *Marco de Niſa*. By him and by a *Negro* which he had for his Guide, there was ſome light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but ſo diſguiſed in lyes, and wrapt up in fictions, that that light was little more then *darkneſs*. Yet by that glimmering, *Franciſco Vaſques di Coronado*, in the year 1540. undertook the buſineſs; and ſped ſo well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tignez*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a further journey by the report of the *Salvages*, (who deſired to haſten him out of their Country) telling him of the wealth of a *Tatarax*, who reigned in the inland parts of *Quivira*, a Bearded man (thoſe of this Country wearing none) of a white complexion, and one who in his Chappel worſhipped a *Croſſe* and the Queen of Heaven. On went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tatarax*, a poor naked Prince, maſter of no more treaſure then a brazen plate hanging on his breſt, and without any ſuch ſign of *Chriſtianity* as they did expect. So fruſtrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their labour for their pains, and the honour of a new diſcovery, with the loſs of many of their men they returned to *Mexico*, An. 1542. Some *Friers* made bold to ſtay behind, but were all ſlain by the people of *Quivira*, except onely one, who like *Jobs* meſſenger was left to carry news of the murder: The *Spaniards* never after looking into theſe cold Countries, where nothing elſe was to be gotten but blows and hunger.

2. *CIBOLA* hath on the North *Quivira*, on the South and South-eaſt parts of *New Gallicia*, from which divided by the River called *Rio del Nort*, as before was ſaid; the Weſt-ſide of it waſhed with the *Mer Vermiglio*, interpoſed betwixt it and the Iland, or *California* ſpecially ſo called. By the Natives it is called *Zuni*.

The Air hereof indifferently temperate, if not too much ſubject in the winter to froſts and ſnows. The Country for the moſt part level, rarely ſwelled with hils, but thoſe very rockie. No Trees that bear them any fruit; few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedars, from which abundantly ſupplied both with fewel and timber, plenty of *Maize*, and ſmall white Peaſe, which they make their bread of; great ſtore of Veniſon, but they kill it only for the skin; ſome quantities of Sheep, known for ſuch by their *Fleeces* only, but otherwiſe as big each of them as an Horſe or Oxe, ſome of their horns weighing fifty pounds. Of Lyons, Beares, and Tygers ſo great a number, that they have more then enough for themſelves, and could well ſpare them to their neighbours.

The People generally well limbed, and tall of ſtature, ingenious in reſpect of ſome other *Salvages*; and though naked except their Privities only, or covered only with a Mantle, yet thoſe *Mantles* wrought in divers colours, which with ſome quantity of *Cotton* which they have amongſt them (none of it growing in their Country) ſhew them to be an induſtrious Nation, and to maintain a courſe of trade with ſome of their neighbours. A further Argument of which is thoſe painted skins, which they have from *Cicuique*, or ſome other Country which lies towards the Ocean; my Author telling that they travel for them eight dayes journey towards the North; and probably enough may be ſome of thoſe Commodities which the Inhabitants of the *maritime* Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cathay* or *China*, with which they are ſuppoſed to traffick, as before was ſaid. Like induſtry is noted in the Women alſo, one of which will grind and knead more *Maize* in a day, then the women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the reſt of the *Salvages*.

This Country was firſt made known to the *Spaniards* by the Travels of Frier *Marco de Niſa*, employed on new Diſcoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was ſaid. Leaving *Conliacan*, the moſt Northern Province of *Nova Gallicia*, he overcame a tedious *Deſart* four dayes journey long, at the end of which he met ſome people who told him of a pleaſant Country four dayes journey further, unto which he went: And ſtaying at a place called *Vacapa*, he diſpatched the *Negro*, whom he took with him for his Guide, to ſearch towards the North; by whom he was advertiſed after four dayes abſence, that he had been informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a moneths journey thence, wherein were ſeven great Cities under the Government of one Princeſs, the houſes of which were built of ſtone, many ſtories high, the Lintrels of their Doors adorned with *Turquoiſes*; with many other ſtrange reports of their markets, multitudes, and riches. But neither the Frier nor the *Negro* had the hap to ſee it: the *Negro* being killed on the very borders, and the Frier ſo terrified with the news, that he thought it better to return, and ſatisfie the *Vice Roy* with ſome handſome

Fiction,

Fiction, then put himself upon the danger of a further journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Reports which the *Negro* sent him; gave to the *Desarts* in his way the name of the Kingdoms of *Tonteac* and *Marata*; ascribed unto this last a great City called *Abaco*, once well inhabited, but at that time destroyed by wars; to the other a more civil and well-clothed People, then in other places. Inflamed with which reports *Vasques de Coronado* undertook the action, but found the Frier to be a *Frier*; nothing of moment true in all his *Relations*: the Kingdom of *Marata* to be found only in the Friers brains; *Tonteac* to be nothing but a great *Lake*, on whose Banks had once been many Cottages, now consumed by Wars. And as for the seven Cities of such wealth and bigness, he found them to be seven poor *Burroughs*; all situate within the compass of four Leagues, which made up that so famous Kingdom which the *Frier* dreamt of. The biggest of them held about 500 Cottages; the rest of them not above half that number. One of them, lest he might be said to return without doing something, he besieged, and took: but found it such an hot piece of service, that he was twice beaten down with stones, as he scaled the Rampiers: but having taken it at the last, he found in it great plenty of *Maize* to refresh his Army, and caused the Town (consisting of 200 houses or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for some resemblance which it had to that City in *Spain*. Such as have since endeavoured the Discovery of these North-west parts, and sailed along the shores hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, have added hereunto the names of some points or Promontories: known in the Maps by the names of *Po de S. Clara*, not far from the mouth or influx of *Rio del Nort*, 2 *Las Plaias*, 3 S. *Michael*, 4 *Rio de Toron*, 5 *Laques del Oro* bordering on *Quivira*; and 6 *Rey Coronado*, on the East of that.

Betwixt this Region and *Quivira* specially so called, lieth a Country, which the said *Vasques* names *Tucayan*, memorable for the famous River of *Huex*, on the Banks whereof for the space of 20 Leagues stand 15 Burroughs well-built, and furnished with Stoves, (if he hath not in this part of the Story out-lied the Frier) as in other cold, but more civil Countries, against the extremities of Winter. This Region stretching seven days journey to the River of *Cicuique*, I reckon to belong to the North-east parts of *Cibola*. As I do also the fruitfull Valley of *Aroia de Corazones* which they passed in their way hither from *Conliacan*; with the Town and Territory of *Chichilticala*, and the Valley of *Nuestra Sennora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts of it: not knowing otherwise what Province to refer them to.

Proceed we now unto the Iland, the other general part of this Division, parted from *Cibola* and *New Gallicia* by a narrow Sea called *Mer Vermiglio*; and by some, the Golf of *Californica*; environed on all other parts by the main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22d. degree of Northern Latitude to the 42d. but the breadth not answerable. The most Northern point hereof, called *Cabo Blance*, of which little memorable. The most Southern, called the Cape of S. *Lucas*, remarkable for the great prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Cavendish* in his Circumnavigation of the World, *An.* 1587. Supposed in former times to have been joyned, in the North parts of it, above the Latitude of 27. to the rest of the Continent, and so described in most of our later Maps, till the year 1626 and after that in the Chart or Map of *John de Laet*, *An.* 1633. which I wonder at: himself affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Iland; *l.* 6 *cap.* 11. and that he had seen a fair Map in parchment, a very fair and ancient draught, *Qua* Californiam *in ingentis Insulæ modum, a Continente divideret*, in which it was expressed for a spacious Iland, *lib.* 6. *cap.* 17. The reason of the Errour was, that those who first endeavoured the Discovery of it, sayling up the Sea of *Mer Vermiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North; till it seemed to be no bigger then some mighty River; but that of such a violent current that no Boat was able to pass upwards with wind or Oar, unless haled up with Cords by the strength of men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rio de Bona Guia*; known by that name, and continued in the opinion of being a River till the year 1620 or thereabouts. At what time some Adventurers beating on these Coasts fell accidentally upon a strait but violent passage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a strong current into *Mer Vermiglio*: discovering by that Accident, that the waters falling into that Sea, was not a River, as formerly had been supposed, but a violent breaking in of the Northern Ocean; by consequence that this part of *Californica* was not a Demi-Iland or *Peninsula* but a perfect Iland. And looking on it as an Iland, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *Californica* specially so called.

1. And first *Californica* specially so called, containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38. where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*, of which Country though so neer to *New Spain*, and *New Gallicia*, and though discovered so long since, we yet know but little: the *Spaniards* either wanting men for new *Plantations*, or finding small incouragements here to invite them to it. Furnished on the Sea-coasts with great plenty both of Fish and Fowl, which they finde in great Ilands of Weeds floating on the Seas: and more within the Land, with a kinde of Beast haired like a *Goat*, and with teats like a Cow, but otherwise resembling *Deer*, which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it said to cast Fire Ashes, which the *Spaniards* for that reason call *Cacofogo*. The People numerous, and thicke set; insomuch that on the Banks of the supposed River of *Bona Guia* were numbred three and twenty Nations, all of severall Languages. In their persons like the rest of the *Salvages*; but of different dresses. Some of them painting their Faces all over, some half way only; others with painted *Vizards* resembling faces: holes in their nostrils for their Pendants; the tips of their Ears loaded, if not over-loaded, with the bones of Fishes hanging at them. A girdle about their waste, to which they fasten a bunch of feathers that

hang down behinde them like a Tail: the Women uſing the like Bunches before them alſo. Their chief God the *Sun*, (as that of *Cibola* is the *Water*) which they moſt affectionately worſhip, as the cauſe of the increaſe of their fruits and plants. Joyned in commiſſion with which God, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to worſhip a woodden *Croſſe* (the more irrational *Idolatry* of the two) which he cauſed to be erected at his coming away, with inſtructions to kneel before it every morning, at the firſt riſing of the *Sun*: ſo teaching them to worſhip their two *Idols* at once, or to tranſlate their devotions from the *Sun* a Creature of *God's*, to a plain wooden *Croſs* (of which they knew nothing but the form) the work of a *Carpenter*. It is alſo told us of this people, that each family is ordered by the Father of it, without other government: yet ſo well managed, that they allowed but one wife to a man, and puniſhed *Adultery* with death; the *Maids* not ſufferd to converſe or talk with men before their marriage, but to abide at home and work; the *Widows* not to marry again, till they had mourned at leaſt half a year for the death of their Husbands. Matters more favouring an *Utopian* Commonwealth, then a *Californian*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 The Capes of S.*Clara*, and S.*Lucas*; the firſt on the South eaſt point of the *Peninſula* towards *New Gallicia*; the other on the South-weſt towards *Aſia*. 2 S. *Croſſes*, (*Sinus S.Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven neer the Cape of S.*Clara*, ſo called becauſe diſcovered upon *Holy Rood* day. 3 *Cabo di las Plaias*, more within the Bay; ſo named, becauſe the ſhore ſhewed in little hillocks, without graſs or ſhrubs; the *Spaniſh* word ſignifying as much. 4 *Cabo Boxo*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the land on the other ſide may be eaſily ſeen) in the *Latitude* of 29. 5 S.*Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Iland of the ſame name, with ſome Cottages in it. 6 S.*Thome*, an Iland of 25 Leagues in compaſs, at the mouth of the *Gulf*; riſing towards the the South in an high Mountain, under which a convenient Road for ſhipping, the Sea being thereabouts 25 fathoms. Then on the other ſide towards the Sea, we have 7 S.*Abad*, a convenient Haven, ſurrounded with a Country which ſeemed rich and pleaſant. 8 *Cape Trinidado*, a Promontory well known to Sea men. 9 *Cape de Cedros* ſo called from the *Cedars* growing neer it, in the *Latitude* of 28, & 15 minutes; with an Iland not far off of the ſame name alſo. 10 Cape *Enganno*, in the *Latitude* of 31. 11 *Puebla de las Canoas*, ſo named from the multitude of *Boats* (by themſelves called *Canoes*) which the people uſed: four degrees more Northward then that Cape. And 12 *Cabo de Galera*, ſo named from the reſemblance which it had to an *Hat*, in the *Latitude* of 36. But theſe two laſt I take to be within the Country of *Seyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quivira*. Underſtand here, that theſe are onely the names of places, not of Towns or Villages, (for whether there be any ſuch, I am yet unſatisfied:) and that there are many other Promontories, Bayes, Rivers and Ilands on both ſides of this Region, which I find no names for.

The firſt diſcovery of this Country we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez* (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534. furniſhed out two ſhips from the Haven of S.*Jago* in the Weſtern ſhores of *Hiſpania Nova*, to ſearch theſe Seas: who making ſome ſmall progreſs in it, encouraged him the next year to purſue it in perſon; and paſſing up the Gulf as high as to the River of *S.Peter* and *Paul*, (ſo called, becauſe diſcovered on the 29 of *June*, the Annual feaſt of thoſe Apoſtles) for want of victuals and other neceſſary proviſions, returned back again. The buſineſs having ſlept a while, was in the year 1539. awakened by *Franciſco de Ulloa*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before: who did not only ſearch to the bottom of the *Gulf*, but having thorowly canvaſſed all the Eaſtern ſhores, he turned his courſe, and made as fortunate a Diſcovery alſo of the VVeſtern coaſts. Landing, he took poſſeſſion of the Country with the wonted ceremonies for the King of *Spain*, and in the place ſet up a *Croſs* to ſerve as a Remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Fernando the Alarcon*, who diſcovered many Leagues up the courſe of the ſuppoſed River of *Buena Guia*, where *Naguacatus* one of the *Chiefs* of their *Clans* or Tribes did ſubmit unto him: advancing ſo far towards the North, that at the laſt he heard news of *Cibala*; but unprovided at that time for a journey thither. And on the other ſide, *Rodorico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coaſting along the VVeſtern ſhores of this Country, diſcovered two ſmall Ilands beyond Cape *Galera*; the one of which he called S. *Lukes*, and the other the Iland of *Poſſeſſion*: and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinas*, more properly belonging to the Province of *Seyo*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was *Gold* and *Silver*; and hungry Honour yielding but a poor ſubſiſtence: the further ſearch of theſe Countries was quite laid aſide; almoſt as little known now, as before *Columbus* firſt ſet ſail upon *New Diſcoveries*.

4. *NOVA ALBION* formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but ſome part of this Iland; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and ſo Northwards as far as to Cape *Blanco*, as they call it now. Diſcovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the World, *An.* 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England*, his own Country, which was once called *Albion*.

The Country abundantly repleniſhed with Herds of Deer, graſing upon the hills by thouſands: as alſo with a kinde of Conies, in their feet ſomewhat like a *Want*, and on each ſide a Sack where they keep ſuch victuals as they cannot eat. The fleſh of theſe Conies ſerves the People for food; and of their skins, the kings or Chiefs of their ſeveral Tribes, make their Royal robes. The men quite naked; the Women with a piece of Mat inſtead of an Apron, chaſte, and obedient to their Husbands. Their houſes made of Turf and Oſier, ſo wrought together, as ſerves to keep them from the Cold:

in

in the midſt whereof they have an Hearth where they make fire, about which they lye along upon Beds of Bulruſhes. VVhat Towns they have, and whether they have any or nor, and by what names called if they have any, muſt be referred to a further Diſcovery: there being nothing to that purpoſe delivered hitherto. And yet not ſeated ſo far North, but that it may be capable of a further light, if any noble Undertakers would adventure on it.

The *Engliſh* were no ſooner landed, but the Inhabitants preſented themſelves before the *Generall*, with preſents of Feathers, and Kalls of Net-work made of Bull-ruſhes; which he received and requited with great humanity. The news of their Arrivall being carried further, one of their Kings thought fit to beſtow a viſit on them. A perſon of a goodly ſtature, attired in *Cony-skins*, with many tall men attending on him; one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged three Crowns; with as many Chains; the Chains of bone, but the Crowns of Knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniouſly compoſed. After him followed many of the common ſort, every one having his face painted with white, black, and ſome other colours; and every one with ſome preſent or other in their hands, even the very Boys. Being brought into the *Generals* preſence, the Mace-bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not underſtood: and that being ended, the King cauſed the Crown to be put upon the *Generals* head, and the three Chains about his neck: the Common People offering Sacrifices about the Fields in great Solemnity. Not to be interdicted thoſe Superſtitions, though the *Engliſh* (whom they took for Gods) ſeemed offended at them. Finally, after much kindneſs expreſſed on both ſides, the *General* promiſing in the name of the Queen of *England*, to take them into his protection; he cauſed a Piliar to be erected in the place; on which he faſtned the Arms of *England*, the Queens name, and his own, and ſo returned unto his Ships. But the Country lying ſo far off that no benefit could redound by it to the *Engliſh* Nation, but the honour of the firſt Diſcovery: the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at laſt quite left out of the Maps or Charts; only a Point or Promontory, by the name of *Po de Franciſco Draco*, being left unto us to preſerve his memory. And though we have cauſed the name of *Nova Albion* to be reſtored unto the Maps, as it was before: yet we muſt let the Reader know, that the name of *New Albion* hath been given lately with as much propriety, but more hopes of profit and advantage, to that part of *Virginia* which lieth betwixt *Mary-Land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Oppoſite to Cape *Blance*, in the extreme North parts of *America*, the ſuppoſed Kingdome of *ANIAN*, from whence the Streits of *Anian* which are thought by ſome to part *America* from *Aſia*, do derive their name; is conceived to lie. Suppoſed, and ſuppoſed only; for not certainly known: the very being of ſuch a Kingdom, and ſuch *Streits*, being much ſuſpected.

OF

OF

NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Nova Hiſpania*, or *New Spain*; on the West with the River *Buena Guia*, and the Gulf of *Californ̄ia*; the Countries beyond it on the North not diſcovered hitherto. So called becauſe of ſome reſemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia* a Province of *Spain* in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for diſtinctions ſake.

It is ſituate between the 18. and 28. degree of Northern *Latitude*, which meaſured from the Port of the *Nativity* (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Navidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the moſt Northern border of *Cinaloa*, makes 300 Leagues: the breadth hereof, for ſo much as is poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, but an hundred only. But taking in *New Biſcay*, and *Nova Mexicana* into the Accompt, the breadth will be greater then the length.

The Aire hereof generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat then cold, many times ſubject unto Thunders and great ſtorms of rain; but for the moſt part of ſo ſound a conſtitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious diſeaſes ſeldom known amongſt them. The ground by conſequence ſomewhat of the drieſt; if not moyſtned with the morning dewes, which fall very frequently: and whether by the temperature of the Aire or Soil, apt to produce a kinde of Gnat (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a bean, which by their ſtings do very often plague the People, and raiſe bliſters on their bodies as big as *Walnuts*.

The Country more Mountainous then plain, and in moſt parts ſandy; Quarries of ſtone in many places, but little Marble, or any other ſtone of value. Good ſtore of Mines of Braſs and Silver, few of Gold or Iron; and amongſt all their Mettals a great Mixture of Lead. The ſoil ſo rich that it yields 60 meaſures of Wheat for one; and for one of *Maize*, above two hundred: the Rivers plentifull of Fiſh, and the Woods of Beaſts; great ſtore of Bees without ſtings, which make their Honey in the Forreſts without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, *Malcotons*, and other *Europæan* Fruits, they thrive better here then they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the *Olive*: of which the laſt is moſt an end undermined by Emmets, and the firſt thruſts out ſuch an harveſt of Leaves (occaſioned by the natural rankneſs of the ground) that they ſeldom come to their perfection.

The people wavering and inconſtant, apt upon any diſcontent to forſake their houſes, betake themſelves unto the woods, and many times to return to their antient *Barbariſm*. Crafty, and docile even in matters which concern *Religion*: but ſlothful and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages. Much given to ſinging, dancing, and ſometimes to drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquour, few of them would betake themſelves to the cares of Husbandry. Of ſtature reaſonably tall; their garments for the moſt part a ſhirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, faſtned with two Buckles about their ſhoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatneſs of their ſeveral Tribes: thoſe *Tribes* commanded by their *Chiefs*, who ſucceed *hereditarily*; but ſubject to the Judges and other Officers of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themſelves generally to *merchandiſe*, and the ſearch of metals, ſome few to husbandry and graſing; but make not the beſt uſe which they might of the Country: For though here be great plenty both of *Sugar-Canes* and of *Caccineel*, yet they neglect to refine the one, and attend the ordering of the other; finding perhaps an eaſier or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

Mountains of moſt note in all this Country, is that betwixt *Guadalaiara* and *Zacatecas*, a League in height, but of ſuch a *precipice* withal, that no horſe nor cattel can aſcend it: their other hils rocky, but clothed with woods, full of vaſt Pines, large Okes, and great ſtore of Wolves. The River of moſt name is that called *Bazania*, which riſing out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hiſpania*, fals down a *Cataract* about four Leagues from *Guadalaiara*, of ten fathoms deep, and ſo tumbleth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place fordable, nor having any paſſage over it but on Reeds and *Rafts*, on which the paſſenger ſitteth with his commodities, his horſe ſwimming by; not ſafe at any time, and at moſt times dangerous. Some *Lakes* here be of 20, ſome of 12 Leagues compaſs; environed with rich Paſtures on every ſide. Thoſe of leſs note ſhall be remembred in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of ~~1 *Cinaloa*, 2 *Conliacan*, 3 *Xalisco*, and 4~~ *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſtern Shores, 5 *Zacatecas*, 6 *New Biſcay*, 7 *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all theſe ſomewhat ſhall be ſaid, though of each but little.

1. *CINALOA*, is the moſt northern Province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the Weſt with the River of *Buena Guia*, and ſome part of the Bay of *Californ̄ia*; on the Eaſt with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepecſuan*; on the North with the South parts of *Cibola*, on the South with *Conliacan*.

The Aire for the moſt part clear and healthy; the Soil fat and fruitful productive of *Maize*, Pulſe, a ſort

ſort of long Peaſe which the *Latines* call *Phaſeoli*, but we have no proper *Engliſh* name for; of which abundantly plentifull. Great ſtore of *Cotton-wooll*, wherewith both Sexes are apparrelled. Well watered with the Rivers, 1 *Petatlan*, 2 *Tamochala*, 3 *Paſcua*, 4 *Taquimi*; of no long courſe, all of them riſing from the hills of *Teperſuam*, and thoſe but 36 Leagues diſtant from the Sea-ſhores. By reaſon of theſe Rivers here are very rich paſtures, which breed great ſtore of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattell.

The People are generally tall, higher then the *Spaniards* by a hand breadth, warlike and ſtrong, not conquered by the *Spaniard* without great difficulty; their Armes a Bow and poiſoned Arrows, with great maſſie Clubs. Their Garments for the moſt part of *Cotton-wooll*; their hair nouriſhed to a great length, which the men tye up in a knot, but the Women ſuffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes at the firſt coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without Clothes at all, but to hide their ſhame; moſt miſerably poor, worſhippers of the Sun, and not a few *Cannibals* amongſt them.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 S. *Philip* and *Jacob*, ſituate on the bank of a River about 42 Leagues from the Town of *Couliacan*, but of no great note; 2 S. *Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards* planted here long ſince; and re-inforced by a ſupply brought thither in the year 1554 by *Franciſco de Tharra*; ſcarce able to defend themſelves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon diſturb them with a freſh Alarme. Beſides theſe here are only ſome ſcattered Villages, and thoſe not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Country, when they firſt made themſelves Maſters of it under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1542. People every where ſubmitting without any reſiſtance; or if they gathered to an head, ſoon diſperſed again. For what could naked men do againſt an Army?

2. *COULIACAN*, or *CULUCAN*, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coaſting along the Bay of *Californía*, which it hath on the Weſt; and part of *New Biſcay* on the Eaſt. The Country well provided of fruits, inferiour unto none for all ſorts of Proviſions; and not without ſome Mines of *Silver* found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it, 1 *Rio de Muchéras* or the River of *Women*, in the North part of the Province; ſo called becauſe the *Spaniards* found there more women then men; occaſioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*. 2 *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River; both ſides whereof are very well Peopled. 3 *Piaſtla*, more towards *Xaliſco*.

The People not much different from the reſt of *Gallicia*, ſave that their *Women* were more handſom both for dreſs and perſonage: all clothed in Garments of Cotton-wool, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the men not free from the Sin of *Sodom*. Their houſes neatly thatched with ſtraw; and over the *Lintrels* of the Doors ſome Paintings as ſhameleſs as the very fowleſt of *Aretines* Poſtures. Ignorant of *Gold*, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted, to their coſt, with *Silver*; which they are compelled to dig, and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof 1 *Hiuſtla*, on the River ſo called, about a dayes journey from the Sea; well built and artificially contrived in reſpect of others; never recovered of that blow which it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conqueſt of this Country waſted all before them. 2 *Quinola*, neer *Rio des Mugeres*. 3 *Quatrabarrios*, an old Town but new named by the *Spaniards*, becauſe it conſiſted of four parts. 4 *El Leon*, an old Burrough which from a *Lyon* there found, had this new name alſo. 5 *Couliacan* on a River ſo named, once the chief of this Province. 4 S. *Michael*, on the River of *Women*, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25. but afterwards deſerted or removed rather to a fitter place: and now fixed in the Valley of *Harroba*, two Leagues from the Sea, in a flouriſhing and wealthy Soil both for Corn and Paſturage. The whole Country conquered by the *Spaniards*, *Anno* 1531. under *Nonnez de Guzman*; moſt barbarouſly burning down the Towns, and deſtroying the People; as if they came not to ſubdue but root out the Nation.

3. *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as ſome Writers call it, hath on the North *Couliacan*, on the South *New Spain*, on the Eaſt the Province of *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſt the large Bay of *Californía*. So called from *Xaliſco* the chief Town of it, when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

The Soil hereof very fit for *Maize*, which it yields good ſtore of, but not often herbage good for Cattel, which is reckoned for their greateſt want. The North parts called *Chiametla*, of the two moſt fruitfull, and better peopled; having in it ſtore of VVax and Honey, with ſome Mines of *Silver*. The People formerly *Man-eaters*, and much given to quarrell; from which Reformed ſince their *Converſion* to the Goſpel: Tenacious ſtill of one of their ancient Cuſtoms, which is to carry the ſmalleſt burden upon their ſhoulders, and not under their armes; which to do they think very much mis-becoming.

Chief Rivers hereof 1 S. *Sebaſtians*, 2 *Rio de Spiritu Sancto*, and 3 the great and famous River of *Baranna* ſpoken of before. Upon the banks of which are ſituate their moſt principal Towns, *viz.* 1 *Xaliſco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards Sierra de Xaliſco*, thruſting it ſelf into the Bay of *Californía*, over againſt the Iſlands called the *Three Maries*; the City taken and deſtroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, *An.* 1530. 2 *Compoſtella*, now

now the chief City of the Country, and a Bishops See; founded by the said *Nonnez de Guzman*, *An.*1531. when he had fully conquered the Country: by whom peopled with *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in so ill a place, and so bad an air, destitute both of food for men and grass for horses, as plainly shewed him to have better judgment in Souldiery then in *Architecture*. 3 *Purification*, a small Burrough on the Sea-side, and in the extremity of this Country towards *Nova Hispania*, neer the Port of *Natividad*. 4 *S. Sebastian* in *Chiametla*, on the River so called, first built by *Francisco de Tharra* above mentioned; who having found hereabouts some rich Mines of *Silver*, brought hither in the year 1554. a new *Spanish* Colonie; and building houses for his *Miners* in convenient places, occasioned the whole Tract to be called *de Tharra*.

4 *GUADALAIARA* hath on the West *Xalisco*, on the East and South some parts of *Nova Hispania*, on the North the Province of *Zacatecas*; well watered with the River *Barania* which runneth thorow the midst thereof, some of his by-streams moystening the other parts. The Country very wealthy in Mines of *Silver*, plentiful of *Maize*, and fortunate in the production of Wheat and such other fruits, as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the People we have before applied in generall to all the Natives of *New Gallicia*, but most peculiar unto these.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Guadalaiara*, so called by the name of the Province, situate on the banks of the River *Barania*, or some branch thereof, in a sweet aire and a most rich and pleasing soile; where founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An.1531. when he had perfected his Conquest: better advised in the choise of the place, then in that of *Compostella* before mentioned. A City of so good esteem, that it passeth for the *Metropolis* of all *New-Gallicia*; honoured with the Courts of *Judicature*, the residence of the Kings Treasurers, & a Bishops See, removed hither from *Compostella*, A.1570. Beautified on this last occasion with a fair *Cathedral*, a Convent of *Franciscans*, and another of *Augustine* Friers. 2 *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the said *Nonnez* in that part of this Country which is called *Tepique*: but not else observable. 3 *Sancta Maria de los Lagos*, built by the same founder, 30 leagues on the East of *Guadalaiara*, and the best defence of all this Province against the *Chichimecas*, a barbarous and untamed people on the North and East parts of this Country: who harbouring themselves in the thickest of the woods, and some unknown Caves, do many times prey upon the Country, which they would utterly destroy, if not thus repressed.

5 *ZACATECAS* is bounded on the South with *Guadalaiara*, on the North with *New Biscay*, on the West with *Culnacan* and some part of *Xalisco*, on the East with *Panuco* one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Country of a different nature. In the west parts, called properly *Los Zacatecas*, rich in Mines of *Silver*, (no one Province more) but destitute of Wheat, *Maize*, Water, and all other provisions; as if it were designed for some wealthy *Miser*, who could live upon the sight of treasure. The Eastern parts properly called *Uxitipa*, not so well furnished with *Silver*, but most abundantly provided with all sorts of fruits; their woods replenished with Deer, their fields with Corn, and every tree giving entertainment to some Bird or other; in a word, nothing wanting in it either for necessity or pleasure. Of the People I find nothing singular, but that they are affirmed to be more industrious then the most of their neighbours; whether by force or nature (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their *Silver*-mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Los Zacatecas*, neighboured by most wealthy Mines, 40 Leagues on the North of *Guadalaiara*; inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciscans*. 2 *S. Martins*, 27 Leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were first opened by *Francisco de Tharra* before mentioned; who with many slaves, and all things necessary for a war, was sent upon that errand by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, An. 1554. The town inhabited by a Colonie of 400 *Spaniards*, besides women and children. 3 *S. Lukes*, & 4 *De Avinno*, built amongst *Mines* as wealthy as those before, by the same *De Tharra*: as also was 5 *Erena*, a small Town, but of the same estate for *Silver*; distant from *Zacatecas* 25 leagues towards the Northwest. 6 *Nombre di Dios*, in the most Northern parts of this Country, 68 leagues from *Guadalaiara*; the foundation of the same *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the *Natives*, and quieted them after some Rebellions by gentle usage, built this Town in a pleasant and fruitful soil: and having got the Government of the Countries which he had discovered, drew hither so many of the *Spaniards* and chief men of the Natives, by granting them the propriety of some *Silver* Mines, that it became the chief and best peopled Town of all this Province. 7 *Durango*, in the valley of *Guadiana*, about eight Leagues distant from *Nombre di Dios*, peopled by a Colonie of *Spaniards* conducted thither by *Alfonso Pacheco*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this treasure. 8 *Xeres de Frontera*, first built for the repressing of some of the *Salvages*, who used to infest the borders towards *Guadalaiara*, during the Regencie of the Marquess of *Villa Maurique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *UXITIPA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*. subdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, imployed therein by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An.1529. at that time Governour of that Province. Dismembred from it since the Conquest of *Zacatecas*, and made a Member of the *Prefecture* of *New Gallicia*. The chief Town of it called *S. Lewis*, built in a pleasant Valley by the said *Pacheco*, and by him peopled with a Colonie of *Spaniards*: the town not distant from *Panuco* above twenty Leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCAIA*, or *New Biſcay*, hath on the South *Los Zacatecas*; on the VVeſt *Cinalca*; on the North *Nova Mexicana*; the Countries towards the Eaſt not diſcovered hitherto. So called by *Franciſco de Tharra*, by whom firſt ſubdued; from the neer neighbourhood which it had unto *Nova Gallicia*, of which ſince reckoned for a part.

The Country ſubject in the VVinter to great Froſts and Snows; but notwithſtanding well provided for of all things neceſſary; and wonderfully enriched with Mines of *Silver*. They have alſo ſome of *Lead*, which ſerve very fitly for the Melting and Purifying of the other; uſed to this purpoſe not alone in theſe *Mines* of *New Biſcay*, but in thoſe alſo of *New Spain*. The People reſolute and ſtout, not Conquered at the firſt Attempt, nor won ſo much by force, as by fair perſwaſions.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 S. *Barbara*, and 2 S. *Johns*, about three Leagues diſtant; built only for the benefit of the *Mines* adjoyning. 3 *Ende*, the furtheſt Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North, of whom a Colonie was there planted (by reaſon of the adjoyning *Mines*) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did alſo Fortifie it, by the direction of *de Tharra*, under whom a Colonell. Diſtant from S. *Barbara*, and S. *John* about twenty Leagues, and an hundred and twenty Leagues from *Los Zacatecas*. More North by ſeventy Leagues at leaſt, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniard*, are ſaid to be thoſe four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Cienagas*; but I have nothing of them certain.

This Country firſt ſubdued by *Franciſco de Tharra*; who after he had built *Durango* in the North parts of *Las Zacatecas*, and aſſured that Province, advanced with a Troop of 130 horſe, for the Diſcovery and Conqueſt of his Northern Neighbours. Encountred at the firſt more with hunger and thirſt then with any oppoſition of the Inhabitants; inſomuch that they were fain to eat their Horſes: and afterwards by the Rebellion of the *Natives*, who killed the greateſt part of ſuch Horſes as were left uneaten. But not diſcouraged herewith, nor with the many difficulties which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his paſſage thorow the VVoods by the ſwords of his Souldiers, he prevailed at laſt; and having ſetled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinoloa*, which he alſo Conquered; and planted there a Colony in the Town of S. *Johns*, as was ſaid before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA*, is bounded on the South with *New Biſcay*, on the Weſt with *Quivira*; the Countries on the North and Eaſt not diſcovered hitherto, though ſome extend it Eaſtwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 Leagues from the Town and *Mines* of S. *Barbara*, and how much beyond that none can tell; the *Relations* of this Country being ſo uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare ſay nothing poſitively of the ſoil or People, but much leſs of the Towns and Cities which are ſaid to be in it ſo named by *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Citizen of *Mexico* in *New Spain*, by whom diſcovered and ſubdued.

For firſt, they tell us of the People, that they are of great ſtature (and that like enough, but not ſo probable) that they have the Art of dreſſing *Chamois* and other *Leather*, as well as the beſt *Leather-Dreſſer* in all *Flanders*: or that they have Shoes and Boots ſo well ſewed and ſoaled, that no *Shoo Maker* in all S. *Martins* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the houſes well built of Lime and Stone, ſome of them four Stories, and in moſt of them *Stoves* for the Winter Seaſon. The Streets even, and ordered in an excellent Manner. Particularly they tell us of a Town called, 1 *Chia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cuames*, which is ſaid to contain eight Market-Places, and all the houſes to be plaiſtered and painted in moſt curious Manner. 2. Of *Acoma*, that it is ſituate on the top of a Rock, a great Town, yet no way unto it but by *Ladders*; and in one place a paire of ſtairs but exceeding narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well fortified by Nature (they ſay true in that, if any thing were true which they tell us of it) and all their water kept in Ciſterns (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3. Of *Conibas*, on a Lake ſo called, the City ſeven Leagues long, two broad; (a ſecond *Ninive*) but the Houſes ſcatteringly built amongſt Hills and Gardens, which takes up a great deal of the room: Inhabited by a People of ſuch ſtrength and courage, that the *Spaniards* only faced it, and ſo went away. Much of this ſtuff I could afford you, but by this taſt we may conjecture of the reſt of the *Feaſt*.

The Country firſt diſcovered by *Auguſtino Royaz*, a *Franciſcan* Frier, *Anno* 1580, who out of Zeal to plant the Goſpel in the North, accompanied with two other Friers of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the *Adventure*. But one of the *Monks* being killed by the *Salvages*, the Souldiers plaid the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram* a Frier of the ſame Order (from whoſe mouth we muſt have the former Fictions) deſirous to preſerve the lives of his Fellows which ſtaid behinde, encouraged one *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Native of *Cordula*, but a Citizen of *Mexico*, to engage in ſuch an *holy Cauſe*: who raiſing a Band of 150 horſe, accompanied with many *Slaves*, and Beaſts of Carriage, undertook the buſineſs. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchi*, *Paſnugates*, *Toboſi*, *Patarabyes*, *Tarrahumares*, *Tepoanes*, and many other as hard names, which he paſſed thorow in his way. But coming at the laſt to a great River which he called *Del Nort* there he made a ſtand; cauſed the Country on both ſides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, ſituate in the 37th degree of *Northern* Latitude, and diſtant from old *Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name

ſince changed to that of S. *Fogi*, but ſtill the *Metrrpolis* of that Province, the *Reſidence* of the Governour, and a pretty Garriſon conſiſting of two hundred and fifty *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming hither, *viz.* 2 *Socorro*, ſo called by the *Spaniards* becauſe of that ſuccour and relief they found there for their half ſtarved Bodies. 3 *Senecu*, 4 *Pilabo*, and 5 *Seviletta*, old Towns, but now *Chriſtened* by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Goſpel; each of them beautified with a Church. 6 S. *Johns*, built afterwards in the year 1599 by *John de Onnate*, who with an Army of five thouſand followed the ſame way which *Eſpeio* went; and having got a great deal of Treaſure laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the moſt I dare relie on for this Country: And this hath no ſuch VVonders in it, but what an eaſie Faith may give credit to: though I had rather believe the *Friers* whole Relations, then go thither to diſprove any part thereof.

OF

OF

NOVA HISPANIA.

NOVA HISPANIA is bounded on the East with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Golf of *Mexico*; on the West with parts of *Nova Gallicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North with the reſt of *New Gallicia*, ſome part of *Florida*, and the *Golf*; on the South with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-ſea onely. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*; with reference to which the Kings of *Spain* call themſelves *Reges Hiſpaniarum* in the Plural number.

It extendeth from the 15. Degree of *Latitude* to the 26. excluſively, *i.* meaſuring it on the East-ſide by the Bay of *Mexico* to the North of *Panuco*; but ſix degrees leſs, meaſuring it on the Weſt-ſide to the Port of *Natividad*, where it joyneth with *Gallicia Nova*. Or making our accompt by miles, it is in breadth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200 *Spaniſh* leagues, or 600 *Italian* miles; but hardly half as much on the other ſide. The length hereof from the East point of *Jucutan* to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200 *Italian* miles, or 400 Leagues, which is juſt double to the breadth.

The air exceeding temperate, though ſituate wholly under the *Torrid Zone*: the heats thereof much qualified by thoſe cooling blaſts, which fan it from the Sea on three ſides of it; and by thoſe frequent ſhowres which fall continually in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, the hotteſt ſeaſons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhauſtible *Mines* of Gold and Silver, ſome of Braſs and Iron; plenty of *Coco-nuts*, of which we have ſpoke before; great ſtore of *Caſſia*; ſuch a wonderfull increaſe of *Coccineel*, that 5670 *Arrobas* of it (each *Arroba* containing 25 Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure) have been ſhipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way, this *Coccineel* groweth on a ſmall tree or ſhrub having very thick leaves, which they call a *Tuna*, planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: out of the ſeed whereof ariſeth a ſmall worm at firſt no bigger then a Flea, and the greateſt not much bigger then our common Lady-cows, which they much reſemble; which feeding on the leaves, and overſpreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the *Natives* twice a year, ſtifled with aſhes or with water (but this laſt the beſt) dried to a powder in the ſhade, and ſo tranſported into *Europe*. Here is alſo great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulſe of all ſorts, and of all ſuch Plants and Roots as we ſet in Gardens for the kitchin; Pomgranats, Orenges, Limons, Cittons, *Malcotoons*, Figs and Cherries, even to ſuperfluitie; Apples and Pears in leſs abundance, few Grapes, and thoſe few they have not fit for wine; Plenty of *Maize*, and other Plants unknown in *Europe*; Birds and Beaſts, wild and tame of all ſorts, and of each no ſcarcity. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but ſome in one, ſome in another, according to the conſtitution of the ſoil and air: which is ſo different in this Country, that in ſuch parts hereof as are hot and dry, their Seed-time is in *April* or *May*, their Harveſt in *October*; but in ſuch places of it as are low and moyſt, they ſow their Corn in *October*, and reap in *May*: thus having two Harveſts in a year, and yet but one.

The People more ingenious then the reſt of the *Salvages*, exquiſite at ſome *Mechanick* Arts, eſpecially in the making of their *Feather pictures*; and ſo induſtrious withall, ſo patient both of thirſt and hunger, that they will ſet at it an whole day without meat or drink, turning every Feather to the light, upwards, and downwards, every way, to ſee in which poſture it will beſt fit the place intended to it. No better *Gold ſmiths* in the world, nor men more expert anywhere in refining Metals. Curious in painting upon Cotton whatſoever was preſented to the eye. But yet ſo *barbarous* withall, that they thought the Gods were pleaſed with the blood of men, which ſometimes they *ſacrificed* unto them. So ignorant, that when they firſt ſaw the *Spaniards* on *Horſe back*, they thought the horſe and man to have been one creature; and would ask what the Horſes ſaid, when they heard them *neigh*: So careleſs of the worth of *Gold*, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Glaſs-beads, little Bels, and ſuch petit trifles. But whatſoever they once were, is not now material: the *Spaniards* having made ſuch havock of this wretched people, that in 17 years they deſtroyed above 6 *millions* of them; roaſting ſome, plucking out the eyes of others, conſuming them in their Mines, and mercileſly caſting them amongſt wild beaſts where they were devoured. And as for thoſe who do remain, beſides their own natural *ingenioſities*, they have ſince learned the *Civilities* and Arts of *Europe*. What elſe concerns this ſoil and people, we ſhall ſhew more particularly, if we find it neceſſary, in their proper places.

Amongſt the Rarities of this Country (though there be many Plants in it of a ſingular nature) I reckon that which they call *Magney*, or *Mete*, ſaid to be one of the principal: a Tree which they both plant and dreſs as we do our *Vines*. It hath on it 40 kind of Leaves fit for ſeveral uſes: For when they be tender, they make of them Conſerves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shooes, Girdles, and Cordage; upon them there grow certain *Prickles*, ſo ſtrong and ſharp, that the People uſe them inſtead of *Sawes*. From the top of the Tree cometh a Juyce like *Syrrup*; which if you ſeeth it, will become Honey; if purified, *Sugar*; they may make alſo wine and vinegar of it. The *Bark* of it roaſted maketh a good Plaiſter for hurts and ſores; and from the higheſt of the Boughs comes a kind of *Gum*, a ſoveraign Antidote againſt Poiſons.

Nor is it leſs a *Rarity*, though leſs uſefull to the good of Mankind (except it be to keep them in continual mind of the *Fires* of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Country called *Propocampeche* (ſituate in the Province of *Mexico*) which vomiteth Flames of Fire like *Ætna*: and another in the Province of *Guaxaca*, which ſendeth forth two burning ſtreams, the one of *Red Pitch*, and the other of *Black*; a fit reſemblance of thoſe Fountains of *Fire* and *Brimſtone*. Though they have many other Mountains, yet theſe moſt memorable. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watrie commodity, yet here are none remarkable for length or greatneſs, but *Panuco* only, of which more preſently. The want thereof ſupplied by ſome famous Lakes, and the neighbourhood of the *Gulf* of *Mexico*. Amongſt the *Lakes*, the principal are thoſe of *Mexico* (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Gallicia Nova*, which for its greatneſs hath the name of *Mare Chapalicum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greateſt beauty is the *Golf* of *Mexico*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of the World: in form completely *Circular*, in compaſs no leſs then 900 miles; environed with the main Land, the *Peninſulas* of *Florida* and *Jucutan*, and the Iſle of *Cuba*: two onely Paſſages in and out, and both well fortified; the one betwixt the Point of *Jucutan* and the Iſle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent current entreth; the other betwixt the ſaid Iland and the Cape of *Florida*, where it makes as violent an *exit*: the Sea ſo headie in the middeſt, and yet ſafe enough, that ſhips are not to ſail in it directly forwards, but muſt bend either towards the North or South, as their journey lieth. Upon this Golf the King of *Spain* hath alwayes ſome ſhips in readineſs; by which he more aſſureth his Eſtates in this part of *America*, then by all his Garriſons.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of 1 *Panuco*, 2 *Mexicana*, 3 *Mechoacan*, 4 *Tlaſcala*, 5 *Guaxaca*, 6 *Chiapa*, 7 *Jucutan*. Some others of leſs note, but reduced to theſe.

1 *PANUCO*, the moſt Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by ſome called *Guaſtecan*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Golf* of *Mexico*; on the Weſt with *Uxitipa*, a member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in *New Gallicia*; on the North with *Florida*, and ſome Countries not yet diſcovered, from which parted by the River of *Palms*; on the Southweſt with *Mechuacan*, and on the South with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which riſing out of the hils of *Tepecſuan*, bordering upon *Cinoloa* and *Couliacan*, and dividing *New Biſcay* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, paſſeth thorow the middle of this Country, and ſo at laſt into the *Golf*.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 50 leagues, and the breadth as much. Divided into three provinces: That towards *Mexicana*, called *Aiotuxetlan*, of a fruitful ſoil, and not without ſome Mines of Gold; once very populous, till in the year 1522. diſpeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez* in his war againſt them. The other called *Chila*, leſs fruitful, but poſſibly for want of People to improve the Land: for being formerly of a ſtout couragious nature, and truſting overmuch to their *Fens* and *Faſtneſſes*, they put the *Spaniards* to ſuch trouble when they warred upon them, that the Conquerours to ſecure themſelves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out and deſtroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palmes*, inclined to barrenneſs, and unpleaſant; but the name I find not.

Chief Towns hereof at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, 1 *Las Caxas*, 2 *Yxicuyan*, 3 *Nachapatan*, 4 *Taquinite*, 5 *Tuzeteco*, deſolate and laid waſte by the cruel *Spaniards*. Of moſt note now, 6 *Tanchipa*, and 7 *Tamiclipa*, two ſmall Burroughs in the Province of the River of *Palmes* (for ſo I call it) inhabited by the *Natives* only. 8 S. *Kallap*, another ſmall Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few *Chriſtians*, with a Convent of *Auguſtinian* Friers; ſacked by the *Savages* in the year 1571. 9 *Tampice*, or S. *Lewis de Tampice*, a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, ſituate on the North banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof, where it hath a very large Haven, but ſo barred with ſands, that no ſhip of great burden can make uſe of it; the River otherwiſe ſo deep, that Veſſels of 500 tun might ſail 60 leagues at leaſt in it againſt the ſtream. 10 S. *Stevan del Puerto*, on the Southern ſide of that River, in the Latitude of 23. about 65 Leagues on the North of *Mexico*, from the Sea eight leagues; now the *Metropolis*, and town of greateſt trade in all this Country. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez* in the place where formerly had ſtood *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, but by him deſtroyed. Oppoſite hereunto on the other ſide of the River, lie great ſtore of *Salt-pits*, out of which the people of this town raiſe their greateſt profit. 11 S. *Jago de los Valles*, or S. *James* in the *Vallies*, 25 leagues Weſtward (but inclining to the South withall) from S. *Scevan del Puerto*; ſituate in an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: to the Inhabitants whereof (all *Spaniards*, as in that before) the King of *Spain* hath granted many fair poſſeſſions, to defend thoſe parts (then being the borders of his Eſtates) againſt the *Salvages*.

This Country firſt attempted by *Franciſco Garaio*, but the conqueſt of it finiſhed by *Cortez*, as before is ſaid: each ſtriving, as it ſeemeth, who ſhould moſt deface it, and be enrolled for the greateſt *Man-ſlayer* of the two. But having carried on the courſe of their Victories almoſt as far as to the River of *Palms*, they deſiſted there; either becauſe already glutted with humane blood, or that the conqueſt of thoſe parts would not quit the charge. Inſomuch as in all that Country from the River of *Palms* to the Cape of *Florida*, though lying all along on the *Golf* of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* have not one foot of Ground: ſecure enough, becauſe it lieth all along that *Golf*, that no other Nation can poſſeſs it.

2 *MECHU-*

2. *MECHUACAN* hath on the North-east *Panuco*, on the East *Mexicana*, on the South part of *Tlaſcala*, on the West the main Ocean, and on the North the Province of *Xaliſco* in *New Gallicia*. So called from the abundance of Fiſh which their Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own language ſignifying *Locum Piſcoſum*, or a Country of *Fiſh*.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-coaſts is 80 Leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana*, but ſixty only. The length I finde not yet agreed on. Bleſt with an Aire ſo ſound and ſweet that ſick Folk come hither out of other Countries, to recover their health: Well ſtored with Rivers, ſome Lakes, innumerable Springs of running water, and here and there ſome *hot Bathes* iſſuing from the Rocks. The Soil ſo plentifully productive of all ſorts of grain (even to admiration) that in ſome parts hereof four Meaſures of Seed have brought forth 600 Meaſures of the ſame grain, in the following Harveſt. Well VVooded, and by reaſon of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Paſtures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all *America*, for *Medecinal* Herbs and Plants of very Soveraign Nature for the good of Mankinde. It affordeth alſo ſtore of *Amber*, Mulberry Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and ſuch other things, as chiefly ſerve for Pomp and pleaſure.

The People tall of ſtature, but ſtrong and Active: of a good wit, and skilled in many excellent *Manufactures*. They ſpeak four Languages of their own; but that moſt generally uſed, is by the *Spaniards* called the *Taraſcuan* Tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious Language, yet moſt of them ſpeak the *Spaniſh* alſo. More pliant to the Manners and Apparell of that Nation, then the reſt of *New Spain* (the *Mexicans* excepted only) and ſo inclinable to the *Goſpel*; that they are almoſt all gained from their old *Idolatries*. Inſomuch that the whole Country being divided into 50 Pariſhes; every Pariſh hath its ſeveral *Prieſts* and inferiour *Miniſters*, who in the Language of the place do inſtruct the People, in which they Preach to them, and hear their *Confeſſions*: beſides many Convents of *Dominicans* and *Auguſtine* Friers.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns or *Burroughs*, beſides ſcattering Villages; 90 of which have *Free Schools* in them, and almoſt every one a *Spittle* for relief of the Sick. The principal thereof, 1 *Zinzontza*, the ſeat of the old Kings of *Mechuachun*; in the firſt times of *Chriſtianity* in this Country, made a Biſhops See, till removed to *Paſcuar*. The firſt Biſhop *Vaſquez de Quiroga*. 2 *Paſcuar*, of no great note at preſent, but that the Biſhops See was removed thither, becauſe neerer to *Mexico*, from which diſtant 47 Leagues. 3 *Valladolit*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Biſhops See, removed hither from *Paſcuar*, and here finally ſetled in a fair *Cathedral*, *Anno* 1544. ſituate neer a large *Lake* (ſaid to be bigger then that of *Mexico*) which doth not only afford the City great ſtore of Fiſh, but yeildeth them the opportunity of ſeverall pleaſures which they take in Boats upon the Water. The Lake and Citie by the Natives called *Guayangareo*. 4 S. *Michaels*, in the way from *Mexico* (from which diſtant about 40 Leagues) to the ſilver *Mines* of *Zacatecas*. Firſt built by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to defend the People of this Province, from the *Chichamechas*, a barbarous and hitherto an unconquered People who terribly moleſt the Nations upon whom they border. 5 S. *Philips*, built at the ſame time by the ſaid *Velaſco*. 6 *Conception de Salaya*, ſeventeen Leagues from *Valladolit*, 35 from *Mexico*; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez* the Vice-Roy, *An.* 1570. to be a Stage for Travellers, in their journeys Northwards. 7 *Guaxanato*, bordering on *Panuco*, and not far from S. *Jago de Los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea, we have 8 *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Gallicia*, two miles from the Ocean; A Town of not above 30 houſes, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and ſafe Road for ſhipping (by the *Spaniards* called *Malacca*) which makes it ſeldom without the company of Saylers. 9 *Natividad*, (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly ſet ſail to the *Philippine* Ilands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendiſh* in his *Circumnavigation* of the VVorld. 10 S. *Jago* (or S. *Jago de Buena Speranza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*; the ſhores whereof are ſaid to be full of *Pearls*. 11 *Colima* ten Leagues from the Sea, but more South then the other, built in the year 1522 by *Gonſalvo de Sandovall*. 12 *Zacatula*, by the *Spaniards* called *Conception*, ſituate on the Banks of a large (but nameleſs) River, which riſing about the City of *Tlaſcala*, paſſeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, was a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, not ſubject nor ſubordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were moſt of the Princes of theſe parts: the Frontires of the Kingdom fenced with ſtakes of wood, like a *Palizado*, to hinder any ſudden incurſion of the *Mexican* Forces. The laſt King called *Tangayvan Bimbicha*, ſubmitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, *An.* 1522. and willingly offred himſelf to *Baptiſm*. But the *Spaniards* were not pleaſed with either, becauſe deprived thereby of the ſpoil of the Country. But at laſt *Nonnez de Guzman*, then *Preſident* of the Courts of Juſtice in *Mexico*, picked a quarrell with him, accuſed him falſly (as is ſaid by the very *Spaniards*) of ſome practiſes againſt his King; burnt him alive with moſt barbarous and unheard of cruelty, and ſo confiſcated his eſtate.

3. *Mexicana*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Golf* of *New Spain*, on the VVeſt with *Mechuachan*: on the North with *Panuco* and ſome part of *Nova Gallicia*; on the South with *Tlaſcala*, and part of the Southern Sea; ſo called from *Mexico*, the chief City not of this Province only but of all *America*.

It is in breadth from North to South, meaſuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130 Leagues; thence growing narrower in the midland parts hardly above ſixty; and on the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*, not above ſeventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other, that is to ſay, from the point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantla*, on the Golf of *Mexico*, to the Haven of *Acapulco*; on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of miles I do nowhere finde. But meaſuring it from 17 degrees

grees and an half of *Latitude*, unto the 22. and allowing ſomething for the ſlope; we may conclude it to be much of the length, as it is breadth, that is to ſay about 130 Leagues.

The Country is inferiour to *Peru* in the plenty and purity of *Gold* and *Silver*, but far exceeding it both in the *Mechanical* and *ingenious* Arts which are here profeſſed, and in the abundance of fruits and cattel: of which laſt here is ſuch ſtore, that many a private man hath 40000 Kine and Oxen to himſelf. Fiſh is here alſo in great plenty; that only, which is drawn out of the *Lake* whereon *Mexico* ſtandeth, being reported worth 20000 Crowns yeerly, to the Kings *Exchequer*. The People for the moſt part wittie and induſtrious, full of valour and courage; good Handicrafts-men, if they ſtoop ſo low as to *Trades* and *Manufactures*; rich Merchants if they give themſelves to more gainfull traffick; And hardy Souldiers, if trained up and employed in ſervice. Their ancient Arms were Slings, and Arrows, ſince the coming of the *Spaniards* practiſed on the *Harcubuize*. In a word, what was ſaid before of *New Spain* in general, as to the ſoil and People of it, is moſt appliable to this.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *Los Yopes*, which parteth this Province from that of *Tlaſcala*. 2 *Citala*, and 3 *Mitla*, both running Eaſtward towards the *Gulf*. 4 *Papagaio*, in the way from *Mexico* to *Acapulco*; with a fair bridge over it. 5 *Las Balſas* of a violent courſe, and in bigneſs equal unto *Tagus* in *Spain*; paſſable only by a bridge made of Kaſts and Reeds, not very ſtrongly joyned together. 6. The River of S. *Francis*, both large and ſwift, but in ſome parts fordable. Mountains of note I finde not any which require a more particular conſideration; and ſo paſs them over.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1 *Mexico*, the ſeat of an Archbiſhop, and of the *Spaniſh Vice-Roy*, who hath the power to *make Laws* and Ordinances, to give directions and determine controverſies; unleſs it be in ſuch great cauſes which are thought fit to be referred to the Councel of *Spain*. This City was firſt ſituate in the *Lakes* and Ilands, like *Venice*, everywhere interlaced with the pleaſant currents of freſh, and ſea-waters; and carrying a face of more civil government then any of *America*; though nothing, if compared with *Europe*. But the Town being deſtroyed by *Cortez*, it was built afterwards on the firm Land, on the Edge of the *Lake*, and bordering on a large and ſpacious *Plain*. The *Plain* on which it bordereth, is ſaid to be 70 Leagues in compaſs, environed with high hills, on the tops whereof the ſnow lyeth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great *Lakes*, the leaſt of them fourty miles in circuit, the one Salt and the other freſh, each of them alternately ebbing and flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the Salt Lake ſtandeth the City of *Mexico* with many other goodly Towns, and ſtately houſes: on which *Lake* alſo, 50000 Wherries are continually plying. The Town in compaſs ſix miles, and containeth 6000 houſes of *Spaniards*, and 60000 of *Indians*. It is a by-word, that at *Mexico* there are four fair things, *viz.* The *Women*, the *Apparell*, the *Horſes*, and the *Streets*. Here is alſo a Printing-houſe, an *Univerſity*, and a Mint; the *Cathedral* Church, ten Convents of *Nuns*, ſeveral houſes of *Jeſuits*, *Dominicans*, *Franciſcans*, *Auguſtinians*, and other Religious Orders; ſome *Colledges*, many Spitles and *Hoſpitals*, and other publick buildings of great State and beauty. By the Natives it was anciently called *Temiſtatan*, the name of *Mexico* being given on a new occaſion, of which more hereafter: moſt miſerably endammaged by the breaking in of the waters, *Anno* 1629. which ſwelled ſo high that they not only overwhelmed the meaner houſes, but the Vice-Roys Palace; drowned many thouſands of the People, and deſtroyed the houſhold ſtuff of the reſt. Occaſioned by the avarice of the Kings Miniſters, who had inverted the money to their private uſe which ſhould have fortified the Banks. 2 *Tezcuco*, ſituate on the ſame *Lake*, but ſix Leagues from *Mexico*; heretofore twice as big as *Sevil*; and for the beauty of the ſtreets, and elegancie of the houſes not inferiour to any. Served with freſh water from the hills, brought in Pipes and *Conduits*, though ſeated on the brink of a *Salt Lake*. 3 *Quitlavaca*, built wholly in the *Lake* like *Venice*, and therefore by the *Spaniards* called *Venezuela*: a City of 2000 houſholds: the way unto it over a *Cawſey* made of flints; half a League long, and about twenty ſpans in breadth. 4. *Uztacpalapa*, half in the *Lake*, and half without, with many Ponds of freſh water, and a beautifull Fountain; A City of 10000 Houſholds, ſix Leagues from *Tezcuco*, and two from *Mexico*. 5 *Mexicaltzingo*, a Burrough of 4000, and 6 *Cuyocan*, one of 6000 Families, both upon the Lake: beautified in the times of their *Paganiſm* with many Temples, ſo gorgeouſly ſet out to the eye, that afar off they ſeemed of ſilver, moſt of them now converted into *Monaſteries* and *Religious* houſes. 7 *Chulula*, the faireſt of all the *Lake*, ſcarce excepting *Mexico*, with which it anciently contended both for ſtate and bigneſs: ſaid to contain 20000 Families, and to be beautified with ſo many Temples, that their *Turrets* equalled the number of the days of the yeer. The People ſo addicted unto their *Idolatries*, and ſo barbarous in their bloody and beaſtly *Sacrifices*, that no fewer then 6000 *Infants* of both Sexes were yeerly murdered on their *Altars*. 8 *Meſtitlan*, ſeated on an high hill, begirt about with moſt pleaſant *Groves* and ſhady VVoods: A Town of about 30000 Inhabitants, the Villages about the hill being reckoned in; ſituate 14 Leagues, or two days journey from *Mexico*, in the way to the Province of *Panuco*; the high way on both ſides ſet with fruitfull Trees, to the great comfort and refreſhment of the way-faring man. 9 *Clantixolleper*, twenty Leagues from *Meſtitlan*, a *Manour* to which 40000 of the *Natives* do owe ſuit, and ſervice. 10 *Autepeque*, on the South of the City of *Mexico*, at the foot of the Mountain *Propopampeche*; a Town belonging to the Marquis of *Valla*, and ſeated in the moſt delicious place of all *New Spain*. 11 *Acachicha*, on the North-eaſt of *Mexico*, betwixt it and the *Golf*, bordering on the Province of *Pepantla*. 12 *Acapulco*, an Haven Town of the South-ſea, ſituate on a ſafe and capacious *Bay*; at the entrance of it a League broad, and in the body of it full of convenient *Stations* and *Docks* for ſhipping: ſo that it is accompted the ſafeſt Haven of all thoſe Seas. At the bottom of it towards the VVeſt, ſtands the Town and Caſtle, the Caſtle opportunely ſeated on a little fore-land both to command the Town, and ſecure the Port; well walled and

fortified

fortified with four very ſtrong *Bulwarks*, on which are planted good ſtore of Ordinance; the Garriſon conſiſting ordinarily of 400 Souldiers: ſtrengthened the rather in regard of the uſual entercourſe which is betwixt this Port and the *Philippine* Ilands.

The Original Inhabitants of this Country (as far at leaſt as their *Records* are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the moſt rude and barbarous *Savages* of all theſe parts; together with the *Ottomies*, ſomewhat more civil then the reſt, but yet rude enough. By theſe *poſſeſſed* till about the year 902. as it is conjectured from their *Annals*, when vanquiſhed and diſſeized by ſome new comers, whom they called by one name *Navatlacos*; iſſuing as it is conceived from thoſe parts of *Gallicia Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, An. 720. or thereabouts, but lingring in their march and waſting al the Countries as they lay before them. Of theſe there were ſeven *Tribes* in all, *i.e.* the *Sachimilci*, the *Chalca*, the *Tepaneca*, the *Culva*, the *Tlafluici*, the *Tlaſcaltecæ*, all of them ſetled in theſe parts, and the five firſt about the *Lake*, before the coming in of the 7 *Tribe*, which was that of the *Mexicans*, ſo called from *Mexi* their chief Captain; who much delighted with the ſituation and conveniences of *Temiſtitan* then a ruined town, cauſed it to be rebuilt, and beautified by the name of *Mexico*. This town from that time forwards was reputed the head-City of their *Common-wealth*; the ſix *Tribes* governing in common, or the *Chiefs* rather of thoſe Tribes in the names of the whole, after an *Ariſtocratical* manner. But weary at the laſt of this equal power, which the prevalencie of ſome Tribes had made very unequal, the *Mexicans*, one of the weakeſt of the *Tribes*, oppreſſed by the reſt, reſolved to ſeparate themſelves, and to commit the ordering of their affairs to a King of their own: at firſt elected by themſelves; but afterwards when they had conquered moſt of the other *Tribes*, the choice intruſted unto ſix, one for every *Tribe*, (the *Tlaſcaltecæ* which was the ſeventh of their *Tribes*, and the Founders of *Tlaſcala*, governing themſelves long before, as a State apart) who in their choice had an eſpecial eye on thoſe which were ſtrong and active, and fit for military employments; the people holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their Kings, if once they were reputed Cowards. The *Politie* and *Inſtitutes* of this *Mexican* kingdom, I forbear to write of, further then as they lie before me in the way of their Story, digeſted by the government and ſucceſſion of their ſeveral Kings, whoſe names and actions do occurre in the following Catalogue, of

The Kings of *Mexico*.

A. Ch.

1322. 1 *Acamapitzli*, Nephew to the King of *Couliacan*, but of the *Mexican* blood by the Fathers ſide, elected for the firſt King; who joyned *Couliacan* and *Tonganeam* unto his Eſtate, and ſetled that kingdom at his death in the way of *Election*.

1373. 2 *Vitzovitzli*, ſon of *Acamapitzli*, ſubdued the Tribe of the *Suchimilchi*, and others of the neighbouring Nations.

1394. 3 *Huizilihuiel* ſon of *Vitzilovitli*, conquered the Tribes of the *Chalca* and *Culva*, with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants.

1415. 4 *Chimal Pupuca*, ſon of *Huizilihuiel*, won the Town of *Tequixſuiac*, and reduced the rebellious *Chalca* under his command.

1425. 5 *Iſcoalt* brother of *Huizilihuiel*, by the valour of his Couſin *Tlacaellec*, freed himſelf from the yoke of the *Tepanecæ*, to whom the *Mexicans* had before been Tributaries; and added their dominions unto his eſtate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whoſe death the *Electors* by a joynt conſent choſe *Tlacaellec* for their King, as a man of whoſe vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refuſed it, ſaying, that it was more convenient for the *Commonwealth*, that another ſhould be King, and that he ſhould execute that which was for the neceſſity of

A. Ch.

the *State*, than to lay the whole burden upon his back: and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the publick, as well as if he were. Upon this generous refuſal they made choice of *Motecumo* the firſt.

1438. 6 *Motecumo*, one of the Brothers of *Chimalpupuca*, brought in the cuſtom of uſing no other *Sacrifices* at their Coronations, but of ſuch *Priſoners* as the new King ſhould firſt take in the wars. By the valour and good fortune of *Tlacaellec*, he ſubdued ſo many of the Nations (whoſe names I hold unneceſſary to be here repeated) that he extended his eſtate from one Sea to the other.

1467. 7 *Axayacaci*, the Nephew of *Iſchoalt* by his ſon *Tecozomoeliqueto*, enlarged his Empire by the conqueſt of *Tetentepeque*, 200 miles from *Mexico*, to fit himſelf with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of *Tlatelulco* who rebelled againſt him, to ſo hard a ſtreit, that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple.

1479. 8 *Ticoicatzi*, the ſon of *Azayacaci*, added twelve Cities, with their Territories, to the *Mexican* Empire.

1484. 9 *Abuczozin*, brother of *Ticoicatzi*, extended his borders to *Guatimala*, repaired or rebuilt a great part of *Mexico*,

A. C. *Mexico*, and brought thither a channel of freſh water.
1502. 10 *Motecuma* II. Son of *Axaacaci*, before his Coronation, conquered 44 Cities. He ordained that no *Plebeian* ſhould bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18. year of his Reign was ſubdued by *Cortez*.

As for this *Cortez*, to whom the *Spaniards* ſtand indebted for the Kingdom of *Mexico*, he was born in *Medeline*, a Town of *Eſtremaduram*, 1485. and in the nineteenth yeer of his Age, employed himſelf in the Trade and buſineſs of *America*, for the improvement of his Fortunes, *Anno* 1511. he went as *Clark* unto the Treaſurer for the Iſle of *Cuba*, where he husbanded his Affairs ſo well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep, and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in ſhort time he was able to put in 2000 *Caſtellins* for his ſtock as *Partner* with *Andrew de Duero*, a wealthy Merchant. Grown richer, he was taken to be Partner with *James Velaſques* in the Diſcovery of *Tabaſco*, and the parts neer *Jucutan*, *An.* 1518. And now reſolved to venture all his ſtock both of friends and money, he furniſhed himſelf of eleven Ships, and with 550 men ſet ſail from *Spain*, and arrived at the Iland of *Acuſamill* (now called *Santa Crux*) and ſailing up the River of *Tabaſco*, ſacked the Town of *Potonchon*, the Inhabitants refuſing to ſell him victual. After this by the help of his Horſe and Ordinance he diſcomfited 40000 of the naked *Savages*, gathered together to revenge themſelves for the ſack of that Town; and received the King thereof in vaſſallage to the Crown of *Spain*. Being told that Weſtward he ſhould meet with ſome *Mines* of Gold, he turned his courſe for the Haven of S. *John de Ulloa*, where landing he was entertained by *Tendilli*, Governour of the Town and Country for the King of *Mexico*, who underſtanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of ſo great an Emperour (of which *Tendilla* had informed him by eſpecial Meſſengers) he ſent him many rich Preſents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the ſight hereof, he reſolved to go unto the place where ſuch *Treaſures* were; took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of *Charles* the fift King of *Spain* and Emperour; and building there the Town *de la vera Crux*, left in it 150 of his men. Attended by no more then 400 Foot, 15 Horſe, and ſix pieces of Ordnance, he purſued his Enterprize, by practiſe gained unto him thoſe of *Zempoallan*, and *Tlaſcalla*, whom he underſtood to be ill-affected to *Motecuma*: aſſiſted with whoſe Forces he paſſed on for *Mexico*, ſacked the Town of *Chololla* (a Town of 40000 houſholds) in his march, he was kindly received into *Mexico* by the frighted King, whom he cauſed to acknowledge himſelf a *Vaſſall* to *Spain*, and to preſent him in the name of a Tribute with ſo much Treaſure as amounted to 162000 *Caſtellins* of Gold. A quarrell growing not long after, *Motecuma* the unhappy King was by one of his own Subjects killed in the Tumult, and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. But aided with the whole Forces of the *Tlaſcalans*, and a recruit of more *Spaniards* (ſent thither on a Deſign againſt him) he made up an Army of 100000 *Savages*, 900 *Spaniſh* Foot, 80 Horſe, 17 pieces of Ordnance: and having with great diligence made ready a Navie of 13 *Galliots*, and 6000 *Canons* or Boats; laid ſiege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a Siege of three moneths, the City is taken, ſacked and burnt, *Auguſt* 13. 1521. But afterwards rebuilt more beautifully then it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hands of the *Spaniards* by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private *Adventurer*, endowed for that good Service by *Charles* the fift with the Town and Territory of *Tecoantepeque*, in the Province of *Guaxaca*, and many other fair eſtates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the title of Marqueſs of *Valla*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are ſaid to have worn a *Crown* reſembling that which is now uſed by the Dukes of *Venice*. His *Coronation* held with great pomp, but moſt bloody Sacrifices. His *Revenues* thought to be almoſt infinite, raiſed out of all Commodities and paid in kinde, whether *Natural* or *Artificial* only, the King participating of the fruits of all mens *Labour*, and ſharing with them in their wealth; ſome paying in Cups full of powder of Gold of two handfuls a piece; ſome *Diadems*, and Beads of Gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; *Turkeſſe* ſtones, Golden Targets, rich *Feather-Pictures*, &c. Not to ſay any thing of matters of inferior value: all which in ſuch a wealthy and large eſtate, muſt needs afford him a *Revenue* equall to the greateſt Monarch. And for the incouragement of his Souldiers and Men of VVar, here were ordained three Orders of *Knighthood*, (or at leaſt ſuch diſtinctions of perſonall merit, as had reſemblance to ſuch Orders) the firſt diſtinguiſhed by a *Red Ribband*, the ſecond called the *Lyon* or *Tiger Knight*, and the third the *Gray Knight*: all priviledged amongſt other things to be clothed in *Cotton*, wear Breeches, to adorn themſelves with gold and ſilver, and to have Veſſell gilt or painted: high points, and not permitted unto any elſe. But it is time that I proceed to the reſt of the Provinces.

4. *TLASCALA* lieth betwixt *Mexicana* and *Guaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred Leagues; the breadth along the ſhores of the *Gulf* reckoned 80 Leagues, on the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of *Maize* which they make their bread of; the word in that Language ſignifying *Locum panis*, or the place of Bread, the ſame with *Bethlehem* in the *Hebrew*.

The Country very plentifull both of Corn and Cattell, full of rich Paſtures, and wonderfully ſtored with *Maize*: Level and plain except towards the Sea, where occurreth a large chain of craggie Mountains; The richer in the fruits of Nature for thoſe fair and pleaſant Rivers wherewith it is watered; the principal of which 1. *Rio de Grijalva*, ſo called from *John de Grijalva*, who firſt diſcovered it; employed herein by *James Velaſques*, the advancer of *Cortez*. 2 *Rio de Zempoall* ſo called from the Town of *Zempoallan* about which it riſeth. 3 *Zahuate*, which makes its way thorow the chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the *Golf*. 4 *Rio de Zacatula*, a River of the longeſt courſe

courſe in all this Province; riſing neer *Tlaſcala*, and falling many Leagues off into *Mare del Zur*. The People much of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mexico*, though upon jealouſies of State their moſt bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good uſe to advance their Conqueſts on that Kingdom.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Tlaſcala* it ſelf, which gives name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a *Commonwealth*, according to the *Democratical* Models. Situate on a little Hill betwixt two Rivers; and in the middle of a large, but pleaſant Plain, 60 miles in compaſs. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, that it contained 300000 Inhabitants, now ſcarce 50000. It had four *Streets* (or rather *Quarters*) each of them governed by a Captain in time of war: and in the middeſt a Market-place ſo fair and ſpacious, that 30000 perſons might aſſemble in it, to buy and ſell, or for any other buſineſs. 2 *Puebba de los Angelos*, (the City of *Angels*) but moſt commonly *Angelos*: built by *Sebaſtian Ramirez*, An. 1531. in the way from *Vera Crux* to the City of *Mexico*, from which laſt 22 leagues diſtant. A Biſhops See, and thought to contain in it 1500 families. 3 *Zempoallan*, on the River ſo named, the Inhabitants whereof did great ſervice to *Ferdinando Cortez* in his conqueſt of *Mexico*. 4 *Napuluca*; of great reſort for a Fair of Cattel; and ſuch a kind of Court for ordering the trade thereof, as we call the *Pie-powders*. 5 *Guaxocingo*, a pleaſant and well-peopled town, ſituate at the foot of the burning Mountain before mentioned, by the aſhes and embers whereof the fields are many times annoied. 6 *Segura*, or *Segura de la Frontera* in the Region of *Tepeac*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the conqueſt of *Mexico*, with fair ſtreets and handſome houſes, by whom peopled with *Spaniards*. 7 *Vera Crux*, the firſt town built in this Country by the ſaid *Cortez*, now a *Biſhops See*: ſituate neer unto the *Gulf*, and a great thorow-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which diſtant about 60 leagues. 8 *S. John de Ulua*, the moſt noted Port of all this Province; fenced with a Peer againſt the fury both of winds and ſea, defended naturally by Rocks and Quickſands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both ſides of the entrance. 9 *Medellin*, built by *Cortez* An. 1525. and planted with *Spaniards*: ſo called in memory of a town of the ſame name in *Eſtremadara*, in which he was born: ſituate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlalſcallans* were originally one of the *ſeven Tribes* which drave the *Chichimecas* out of their poſſeſſions: and either finding no room left for them on the Banks of the *Lake*, or elſe willing to ſubſiſt alone, withdrew themſelves from the reſt, founded the City of *Tlaſcala*, and there erected a *Democratical* Eſtate. Stomacked for this by the other *Tribes*, and many times invaded by thoſe of *Mexico*, after they had ſubdued the reſt: they ſtill maintained themſelves againſt all attempts; and in the end aſſiſted *Cortez* in the deſtruction of that Kingdom they ſo deadly hated. Privileged for that reaſon by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of tribute (except it be an handfull of Wheat for every perſon) and ſuffered to live under his protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name, ſaid to contain 200 good Towns and Burroughs, 1000 Villages and upwards, and in them 150000 of the Natives, beſides *Spaniſh* Colonies. Diſtributed into 36 *Claſſes* or *Rural Deanries* for *Eccleſiaſtical* Government, in which are thought to be 30 *Convents* and Religious Houſes.

5 *GUAXATA* is bounded on the Weſt with *Tlaſcala*, on the Eaſt with *Jucutan* and *Chiapa* one of the Provinces of *Guatimala*, on the North with the Bay of *Mexico*, and on the South with *Mare del Zur*. Extended on the South-ſea to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to fifty only: in breadth from ſea to ſea where it bordereth on *Tlaſcala*, 120 leagues; not above 60 where it confineth on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxata* once the chief town of theſe parts, now named *Antequera*.

The Air heteof very ſound and ſweet, and the Soil as fruitfull: plentifull not only of thoſe commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Country; but of ſuch quantities of *Silks*, and ſtore of *Mulberries*, that if the *Natives* paid their *Tithes* as the *Spaniards* do, that very *Revenue* would ſuffice to endow five Biſhopricks, as good as that which is there already: ſcarce any River of this Country, but hath *Sands* of *Gold*: ſuch plenty of *Coccinele* (a rich grain uſed in dying *Scarlets*, of which before) as alſo of *Caſſia*, Gold, Silver, and other metals, that if the people did but adde ſome induſtry to the wealth of the Country, they might be the richeſt men in all *America*. But being naturally ſlothfull, and impatient of labour, they loſe all opportunities of gathering riches, and live but from hand to mouth, as we uſe to ſay. Docile enough, and ſo indulgent unto thoſe who take pains to teach them, that here are reckoned 120 *Convents* of *Dominican* Friers, beſides other Schools; theſe laſt conceived the greater number

It is ſubdivided into many particular Provinces (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*) as 1 *Miſteca*, 2 *Tutopeque*, 3 *Zapoteca*, 4 *Guazacoalco*, 5 *Gueztaxatla*, and 6 the *Vale* of *Guaxata*; this laſt moſt memorable, in that it gave the title of Marqueſſo *del Valle* to the famous *Cortez*. Towns of moſt obſervation, 1 *Teozopotlan*, once the chief town of *Zapoteca*, and the ſeat of their King. 2 *Cuertlavaca*, of great note for a *Labyrinth* not far off, hewn out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3 *Antequera*, in the Vallie of *Guaxata*, a ſtately City, and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*, as that with Marble-pillars of great height and thickneſs. 4 *S. Illifonſo* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5 *S. Jago* in the Valley of *Nexapa*, ſeated upon a lofty hill. 6 *Del Spiritu Santo*, diſtant about three leagues from the ſhores of the *Golf*, in the Province of *Guazacoalco*; the foundation of *Gonſalvo de Sandoval*, A. 1526. 7 *Aguatulco*, or *Guatulco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South-ſea; much uſed by thoſe which trade from *Peru* to *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern ſeas. By conſequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpoſe both by *Drake*, and *Cavendiſh*, in their voyages about the world. 8 *Tacoantepeque* a Port of the ſame Sea alſo, but of far leſs note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650.

inhabited, by 150000 of the Natives liable to tribute, beſides women and perſons under age, not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6 *JUCUTAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a *Demi-Iland*, is faſtened to the Continent only where it meets with *Guaxaca*; the furtheſt point of it oppoſite to the Iſle of *Cuba*. Diſcovered firſt by *Fernandes de Cordova*, employed therein by *Don Chriſtopher Morante*, An. 1517. and called *Jucutan*, not as ſome conceit it, from *Joctan* the ſon of *Heber*, who they think came out of the *Eaſt*, where the Scripture placeth him (*Gen.* 10.30.) to inhabit here; but from *Jucutan*, which in the language of the Country ſignifieth, *What ſay you?* For when the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither asked the name of the place, the *Savages* not underſtanding what they meant, replied *Jucutan*, that is, *what ſay you?* whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compaſs of it, taking the Province of *Tabaſco* into the accompt, is ſaid to be 900 miles, or 300 leagues. The Air hot, and the Country deſtitute of Rivers; not otherwiſe provided of water but by pits and trenches, which abundantly ſupply that want. Sufficiently barren, the ſoile not bearing Wheat, or any *European* fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of *Gold* or *Silver*, or any other Metal, to enrich the people: who muſt either live by trades and labour, or elſe beg their bread. Nothing remarkable in the Country, but that here ſeemed to be ſome remnants of *Chriſtianity*, at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither: the people conſtantly obſerving a kind of *Baptiſm*, which they call in their own language a *ſecond birth*, expreſſing by that word a *Regeneration*; not ſuffering any one to marry untill ſo *initiated*. And poſſible enough it is, that this may be the Country upon which *Madoc ap Owen* fell; who though he might by ſome good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he ſhould make any ſuch ſecond voyage hither, as is ſaid in their *Cronicles*, I by no means grant.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Merida*, almoſt in the navel of it, ſituate in the 20 degree of *Latitude*, the ordinary ſeat of the Governour, and the See of a *Biſhop*: diſtant from the Sea on each ſide about twelve leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought to have ſome reſemblance. 2 *Valladolit*, 30 leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a moſt ſumptuous Monaſtery of *Franciſcan* Friers. 3 *Campeche*, (or *S. Franciſco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) ſituate on the ſhore of the *Golf*; A town when firſt known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000 houſes, and beautified with ſuch monuments of art and induſtrie, as ſhewed that there was ſomewhat in this people which was not *barbarous*. ſince that not more obſervable, then for being ſuddenly ſurprized by *Parker* an *Engliſh* Captain, *A* 1596. who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the town, and many priſoners, beſides a great ſhip full of gold, ſilver, and other the like precious commodities, deſigned for the King of *Spains* own uſe. 4 *Tabaſco*, ſituate in the beſt part of this Country, ſo different from all the reſt, that it is made by ſome a diſtinct province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nueſtra Sennora de la Victoria*, moſt commonly *Victoria* only; and that in memory of the firſt fortunate victory which *Cortez* had upon this people, arming themſelves againſt him for the ſacking of *Pontonchan*. 5 *Pontonchan*, ſacked by *Cortez* for denying to ſupply him with victual. 6 *Salamanca*, ſo called with reference to a town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coaſt of this Country lie many Ilands, *viz.* 1 *La Zarza*, 2 *Deſconoſcida*, 3 *Triangulus*, 4 *Vermeia*, 5 *Los Negrillos*, 6 *Los Alacranes*, all within the *Golf*. Without it. 7 *Zaratan*, 8 *Pantoia*, 9 *Lamanay*, 10 *De Mucheres*, or the Iſle of Women; 11 *Cozamul*, by ſome called *Acuſamil*. This laſt the biggeſt, as 15 leagues long, 5 broad; and the moſt remarkable, as being the uſual way which the *Spaniards* travelled in their diſcoveries of this Country from the Iſle of *Cuba*. For here firſt landed *Fernando de Corduba*, An. 1517. who paſſing over to *Jucutan* (but four leagues diſtant) brought back nothing but ſtripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grijalva*, in the ſame purſuit; who paſſing by *Jucutan* to the Province of *Guaxata*, left his name behind him to a River. And finally here landed the moſt fortunate *Cortez*, who coaſting about the *Demi Iland*, landed neer *Tabaſco*, and there firſt hanſelled his good fortune with a notable victory. Yet neither the Iland nor *Peninſula* diſcovered perfectly, till the year 1527. when both ſubdued by *Franciſco de Monteio*, to the Crown of *Spain*. The Iland now called *Santa Crux*.

OF

OF

GVATIMALA.

GVATIMALA is bounded on the North by *Jucutan*, and the Golf of *Honduras*; on the South with *Mare del Zur*; on the East (or South-east rather) with *Caſtella Aurea*; on the Weſt with *New Spain*. Extended 300 leagues in length upon the Coaſts of *Mare del Zur*; but meaſuring by a ſtrait line, not above 240: the breadth thereof 180 leagues, where broadeſt; in moſt places narrower. So called from *Guatimala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the ſeat of the Governour, and the *Courts* of *Juſtice*.

The nature of the ſoil and people (if differing in any material thing from thoſe before) we will conſider in the View of thoſe ſeveral parts into which this Country is divided. The principal whereof, 1 *Chiapa*, 2 *Verapaz*, 3 *Guatimala* ſpecially ſo called, 4 *Honduras*, 5 *Nicaragua*, 6 *Veragua*. The reſt of leſs note, eaſily reduced to theſe.

1 CHIAPA hath on the Weſt *New Spain*, on the Eaſt *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucutan*; and *Mare del Zur*, upon the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much leſs in breadth; and antiently inhabited by four Nations, all of ſeverall Languages.

The ſoil not very natural for Corn or Fruits: though Pot herbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and *Lentils*; yet Vines and other richer fruits ſeldom come to good. *Wood-vines* they have, which yield a very pleaſant pulp; and if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their trees, moſt of them, greater then in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the *Cypreſs*, whole Woods of *Walnuts*, but the Nut not ſo big as thoſe of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield *Roſin*, ſome ſuch precious *gums*, as in other places are not uſual; and ſome there are whoſe Leaves being dried into a powder, afford a ſoveraign plaſter for *exulcerate* ſores: And they have need too often to make uſe of theſe *Plaſters*, the Country being full of *Snakes* and other venemous Creatures (ſome of the *Snakes* no leſs then 20 foot in length) whoſe poiſon being ſtrong and deadly, doth require ſuch helps. Of the People nothing ſingular, that I have met with; but that they are more *muſical* and exact in painting then the reſt of the Natives.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1 *Cividad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapenſes*, at the foot of an hill, ſituate in a round Plain, encompaſſed about with Mountains like an *Amphitheatre*: afterwards made a Biſhops See, and privileged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by ſuch City-Magiſtrates as they call *Alcaides*. 2 *Chiapa*, in a vale adjoyning; before the building of the other, of moſt note in this Province: yet ſtill before it in regard of its ſituation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and *Maize*, then all the reſt of the Country. 3 *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zoques*, poſſeſſed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monaſtery of *Dominican* Friers. 4 *Capanavatzla*, the principal Town of twenty five which the *Quelenes* held in this tract: remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the ſame *Dominicans*. 5 S. *Bartholmews*, another town in the territory of the ſame *Quelenes*: neer which is ſaid to be a great Pit, or opening of the earth, into which if any man caſts a ſtone, though never ſo little, there preſently followeth a loud and fearfull noiſe like a clap of thunder. 6 *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvaridi*, when he was Governour of theſe parts; the chief Town of a little Province called *Soconuſco*. 7 *Caſapualca*, a ſmall Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the fields adjoyning; the waters whereof are noted to riſe and fall, as the Ocean doth flow or ebbe, and at equal diſtances of time. Of thirteen Townſhips which the *Zeltales* were poſſeſſed of, I find no one named; though painted all of them, and ſet forth to the eye of the Traveller, with *Coccinele*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon theſe *Rarities* of Nature, I cannot but take notice (though ſomewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which turns wood to ſtones: of a Spring in the *Cantred* of *Taſixa*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry; of another in the ſame *Cantred*, which for one three years, though it rain never ſo little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and ſo ſucceſſively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many leſſer ſtreams, is ſwallowed up neer a Village of the *Chiapenſes*, called *Otztutan*, never after ſeen. None of them famed for *Golden Sands*, as are thoſe of *Guaxata*; though it be thought there be ſome Veins of gold and ſilver, but hitherto neglected for want of *Slaves* to work the *Mines*.

2 VERAPAZ is bounded on the Weſt with *Chiapa*, on the Eaſt with *Guatimala* and *Hondura*, on the North with *Jucutan*, and on the South with the Territory of *Soconuſco*. In *Latine* called *Provincia Vera Pacis*; by the *Spaniards Verapaz*, becauſe not conquered by the *ſword*, but won to the obedience of the King of *Spain* by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friers.

The Country 30 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high Hills and deep Valleys, bac no fruitfull plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which so hinder the free passage of the winds, that the Aire hereof is very shewery: Insomuch that for nine moneths in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reason of this moysture much annoyed with *Mosquits* a kinde of *Gnats*, very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwise (as with Fish and other necessaries) they were well provided. No *Mines* of Gold or Silver discovered hitherto, though the *Spaniards* have many times in vain attempted it. Instead whereof some of their Trees drop a kinde of *Amber*, which they call *Liquid amber*; some *Mastick*, and some other Gums: they have also many *Medicinal* woods, as *Sarzaparilla*, that called *China*-wood, and many others.

The People tractable and conform to the *Spanish* Government, except the *Lecandones*, and *Pachuteci*, some Rembinders of the ancient *Salvages*, who keeping in the Mountains and craggie Rocks of this Country, have hitherto retained both their Native Freedom, and their old *Idolatries*. No Towns herein possessed by the *Spaniard*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. The principall of these S. *Augustines*, not so much memorable in it self, as for the neighbourhood of a *Cave* betwixt two Mountains, from which the Rain descending turns into *Alabaster*, naturally fashioned into *Pillars* and other *Pourtraitures*. Into which also many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joyned into a body, make an handsom River, able almost at the first appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they also have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea called *Golfo Dulce*; but of so little use and Trading that I finde no name for it, unless it should be that *Yztapa* which *Herrera* speaks of, by whom placed in *Guatimala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* specially so called, is bounded on the West with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa*; on the East with *Nicaragua*; on the North with *Honduras*, and on the South with *Mare del Zur* or the *Pacificque Ocean*. Extended 30 Leagues from the North to the South, and on the Shores of *Mare del Zur*, not above seventeen. But reckoning in *Tzalcos*, *Chaluteca*, and S. *Saviours*, three adjoyning *Regions*, by some made Provinces distinct, the dimensions of it must be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Country Mountainous, but withall very full of *Rivers*; by consequence commodious both for fishing and hunting. Fruitfull of Wheat, *Maize*, and other Provisions, but those fruits not lasting. Not so much subject unto rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with winds. Full of rich Pastures, and those Pastures of great Heards of Cattell. Good store of Cotton-wool, some *Balsamum*, and other *Medicinal* Liquours; as also of the best *Sulphur*, and many *Apothecaries* Drugs which I have no skill of. The People Pusillanimous and fearfull, greater proficients in *Christianity* and Civility then most of the *Savages*, but so that it is thought they would relapse again to their ancient *Paganism*, and revive again their old barbarous customs, if not held in by the bridle of fear, and the curb of power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Women good Spinners.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *Guacapa*, a River of a course but of 13 Leagues, yet of great depth, and navigable half the way, which falleth into *Mare del Zur*. 2 *Lempas*, watering the Burrough of S. *Saviours*; which hath its rise from a great *Lake*, and his fall in the same Sea also. Here is also said to be a *Lake* neer the Village of *Ytzepeque*, of the waters whereof are made both *Sulphur* and *Allom*. And here is said to be a *Volcana* or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being spent; yet the said Monuments of his Furies do remain among them; another not far off which still casts out smoak.

Towns of most note, 1 *Guatimala*, or S. *Jago de Guatimala*, the chief Town of the Province, situate on a little River betwixt both *Vulcanos*, by one of which most terribly wasted. *An.* 1541. But being re-edified, it hath since exceedingly flourished, by reason of the Bishops See, the residence of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice. 2 S. *Salvador*, 40 Leagues Eastwards from *Guatimala*, by the Natives called *Cuzculan*; situate on the River *Guacapa*, seven Leagues from the Sea, and neighboured by a great Lake of five Leagues compass. 3 *Acaxutla*, at the mouth of the same River, the Port Town to S. *Saviours*. 4 S. *Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Samsonate*, the most noted *Empory* of this Country; the Place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain*, and those of *Peru*. 5 S. *Michaels*, two Leagues from the Bay of *Fonseca*, which serves unto it for an Haven. 6 *Veres de la Fontera*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Chulutecan* (by which name it was formerly known) situate on the Frontires towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South east of the Bay of *Fonseca*; that Bay so named in honour of *Roderick Fonseca* Bishop of *Burges*, and *President* of the Councel for the *Indies*, *An.* 1532. by *Giles Gonsales de Avila*, who first discovered it; About and in this Bay are ten little Ilands, four of which inhabited, and plentifully furnished with wood, water, and salt.

4. *HONDURA* hath on the South *Guatimala*, specially so called; on the West, the Bay or Arm of the Sea called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*: on the North and East the Sea called *Mare del Nort*; on the South east *Nicaragua*; on the South *Guatimala* specially so called. In length from East to West by the Banks of that Sea 150 Leagues, and about 80 Leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras* imposed upon it from the *depth* of the Sea about the principall Head land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Country either Hills, or Vallies, little *Champagne* in it: fruitfull of *Maize* and wheat, and of very rich Pasturage; made so by the constant overflowings of their Rivers about *Michaelmass*; which do not only soil their grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1 *Hagnara*,

2 *Chamelucon*,

2 *Chamalucon*, 3 *Ulna*, all neighboured by fertile fields, and pleasant meadows. Some *Mines* of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet discovered; the people being so slothful and given to idleness, that they had rather live on Roots, then take pains in tilling of their land; and therefore not easily intreated to toyl for others, but where necessity and strong hand do compell them to it.

Towns of most note, 1 *Valladolit*, by the Natives called *Commyagna*, 40 leagues distant from the Sea, situate in a pleasant and fruitful Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamalucon*; and honoured with a Bishops See, fixed here about the year 1558. built neer the place where once *Francisco de Monteio* Governour of this Provinee had planted a Colonie of *Spaniards*, An. 1530. by the name of S. *Maria de Commyagna*. 2 *Gracias di Dios*, 30 leagues Westward of *Valladolit*, built by *Gabriel de Royas*, An. 1530. to be a place of defence for those who worked in the *Mines*, against the *Savages*. But finding himself unable to make it good, he defaced and left it: Reedified again by *Gonsalvo de Alvarado*, and since well inhabited. 3 S. *Peters*, eleven leagues distant from the Port of *Cavallos*, but seated in a most healthy air, and therefore made the dwelling place of the *Farmers* of the Kings *Customs*, who have their houses in this town, and follow their business in the other, as occasion is. 4 *Porto de Cavallos*, so called from some *horses* thrown overboard in a violent tempest: the most noted Haven of these parts, and strong by natural situation; but so ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Captain *Christopher Newport*; and *An.* 1596. by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deserted on those spoils, and not since inhabited. 5 S. *Thomas de Castile*, 18 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally strong, and fortified according to the Rules of Art: to which as to a place of more strength and safety, *Alfonso Briudo de Castilla* President of the Sessions of *Guatimala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6 *Traxillo*, seated on the rising of a little hill betwixt two Rivers (one of them that which is called *Haguara*) distant from *Cavallos* 40 leagues to the East, and 60 leagues to the North of *Valadolit*: surprized and pillaged by the *English*, An. 1576. Not far hence towards the North-east lieth the *Cape* of *Honduras*, from whence the shore drawing inwards till it joyn with *Jucutan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay called the Golf of *Honduras*. 7 S. *George de Olancho*, so named of the Vallie *Olancho*, in which it is seated; a Vallie noted heretofore for some *golden Sands*, which *Guajape*, a River of it, was then said to yield.

5 *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North with *Honduras*, on the East with *Mare del Nort* and the Province of *Veragua*, on the South with *Mare del Zur*, on the West with *Guatimala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Salsedo* who first subdued it, it was called the *New kingdom* of *Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither, would not so be lost.

The Country destitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua*, called *Costa Rica*, reckoned a Province of it self. The want hereof supplied by a great *Lake* or a little Sea, called the *Lake* of *Nicaragua*, 120 leagues in compass, ebbing and flowing like the Sea; upon the banks of which stand many pleasant villages and single houses. A *Lake* well stored with Fish, but as full of *Crocodiles*: and having made its way by a mighty *Cataract*, emptieth it self into the Sea about four leagues off. Not very rich in Corn, (most of which is brought them from *Peru*) but well stored with Cattel; level and plain, and shadowed with frequent trees; one amongst others of that nature, that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth presently. Affirmed to be as full of *Parrets*, as *England* of Crows; stored with great plenty of *Cotton wooll*, and abundance of *Sugar canes*. In a word so pleasing generally to the eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mahomets Paradise*.

The People for the most part speak the *Spanish* tongue, and willingly conform themselves to the *Spanish* garb both of behaviour and apparel: well weaned from their old barbarous customes, retained only by some Mountainers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good stature, and of colour indifferent white. They had before they received *Christianity*, a setled and politick form of government: only as *Solon* appointed no law for a mans killing of his father, so had this people none for the killer of a *King*; both of them conceiting that men were not so unnatural as to commit such crimes. A *Thief* they judged not to death, but adjudged him to be *slave* to that man whom he had robbed, till by his service he had made satisfaction: A course more merciful, and not less just, then the loss of life.

Chief towns hereof, 1 *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, situate on the *Lake* aforesaid; the Residence of the Governour, and the *Bishops* See; built in a sandy soil, and begirt with woods. 2 *Granada*, on the same *Lake*, sixteen leagues from *Leon*, beautified with a fair Church and a strong Castle, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova*: the City seated in a liberal and wealthy soyl, well furnished with *Sugar-canes*; for the refining of which here are many *Work houses*, which they call *Ingenios*. 3 *Segovia*, distant from the former about 30 leagues; rich in veins of Silver. 4 *Jaen*, (all called according to the names of some Towns in *Spain*) situate at the end of the Lake aforesaid, from whence by a long and narrow channel it disemboqueth into the Sea neer the Port of S. *John*. 5 *Realeio*, about a league distant from the Port of *Possession*, in the *Latitude* of 12 degrees & 40 minutes, inhabited for the most part by *Shipwrights* and Mariners. 6 *Nicoia*, giving name to a little territory, within the bounds whereof standeth 7 *Avarines* also. 8 *Cartago*, 40 leagues from *Nicoia*, equally distant from both Seas, on each of which it hath a convenient Port: this Town the principal of that part which is called *Costa Rica*.

6 *VERAGUA* hath on the West *Costa Rica*, on the East bounded with the *District* of *Panama*; washed on both other sides by the sea: extended 50 leagues in length from West to East; not above 25 where narrowest, from one sea to the other. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of greatest note in it at the first Discovery.

The

The ſoil hereof Mountainous and exceeding barren, not fit for tillage, and leſs uſefull in feeding Cattel; ſufficiently provided of *Maize* and Pot-herbs, but elſe of little neceſſary for the life of man, unleſs the People could eat *Silver*, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Mettals, but eſpecially of *Gold*, here are ſuch never-periſhing *Mines*, that the *Spaniards* think them able to ſupply all wants, and cure all Diſeaſes. Once being asked what made them ſo greedy of that Mettall: it was anſwered, *That they were much troubled with grief of heart, for which Gold was a moſt Soveraign Medicine.* And as the Country, ſuch the People, hardy, couragious, and warlike, and ſuch as bear the *Spaniſh* yoke with great impatience: the ſtouteſt and moſt untameable People, being bred moſt commonly in Mountainous and woody Countries.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1 *Veragua*, which gives name unto it. 2 *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Yebra*, at the mouth of which *Columbus* purpoſed to have ſetled a *Spaniſh* Colony, for the better tranſporting of his *Gold*. But finding that the Channel, on the ceaſing of ſome rain which had fallen before, was become ſo ſhallow, that no ſhip could go in or out, he gave over that purpoſe. 3 *La Trinidad*. 4 *La Conception*: all falling into *Mare del Nort*. Their chief Towns, 1 *Conception*, on the Mouth of that River, the ſeat of the Governour. 2 *La Trinidad*, on the banks of that River, neer the Port of *Belen*, and ſix Leagues Eaſtwards of *La Conception*. 3 *S. Foy (oppidum S. Fidis)* twelve Leagues from *Conception* on the South, where the *Spaniards* melt, and caſt their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4 *Carlos*, not far from the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*. 5 *Philippina*, on the VVeſt of *Carlos*. Each ſeated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bays lie a Frie of Iſlands, which the Spaniards call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongſt them. Thirty in all; the principall *Zebaco*, *Cabaio*, *S. Marie*, *S. Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the People being dragged into the *Continent* to work in the *Mines*.

This Countrey oweth its firſt Diſcovery unto divers men, according to the ſeveral Members and diviſions of it: The laſt in order, being the firſt that was diſcovered, but the laſt that was conquered, had the honour to be viſited by *Columbus* himſelf. VVho driving up and down theſe coaſts in the year 1502 hit on the entrances of the River, which afterwards he cauſed to be called *Belen*; where hearing that there was plenty of *Gold* in the Mines of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him as was ſaid before; and finding nothing fit to ſuſtain his men, he bent himſelf though unwilling to a further ſearch. He had before touched upon *Honduras* alſo; but I finde not that he landed on it: the ſetling of theſe Countries being deſtinated to another hand. Twenty yeers after this the moſt fortunate *Cortez* having fully quieted and compoſed the affairs of *Mexico*, reſolved to make his Maſter Lord of the reſt of *America*. And to that end ſent out his Officers and Commanders into ſeverall parts; by *Pedro de Alvarado* he ſubdued *Guatimala*; *Hondura*, by *Chriſtopher de Olid*: *Veragua*, and *Nicaragua*, by *Conſalvo de Corduba*. But fearing leſt the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he reſolved to viſit them in perſon. Attended by a choiſe Band of 150 horſe, and as many foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in *October*, 1524: and held on his progreſs as far as to *Truxillo*: where finding that *Gonſales de Cordova* had ſo plaid his game, as there was no neceſſity of going further, he made a ſtand, having marched above 400 Leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in *April* 1526. he came home to *Mexico*, with whoſe return we conclude alſo our ſurvey of the Northern *Peninſula*, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexicana*.

And ſo much for *Mexicana*.

OF

OF

PERVANA.

PERVANA the other of the two great *Peninſulas* into which the vaſt Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now ſtand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramis* reverſed: more anſwerably thereunto then *Africk*, though that ſo reſembled. Joyned to the other by a ſtrait and narrow *Iſthmus*, called the *Straits* of *Darien*, whereof we ſhall have opportunity to ſpeak more anon: which looks but like a ſtone miſ-laid in ſo great a building; or the firſt ſtep by which we are to climb the top, as in other *Pyramids*.

The name derived from *Peru*, the chief Province of it; the *Circumnavigation* ſaid to be 1700 miles. Nothing elſe to be ſaid in the general, but what will ſerve more fitly for particular places; except it be the deſcription of ſome prime Mountains and principall Rivers: which being of too long a courſe to be reckoned unto any one particular Province, may more properly deſerve place here. Of theſe the chief 1 *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons*, called by the firſt name from *Franciſco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who firſt diſcovered it; by the ſecond from the *Amazons* a kinde of ſtout and warlike VVomen, who are ſaid to have inhabited on the banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Peru*, the fall in the North Sea, or *Mare del Nort*. A River of ſo long a courſe, that the ſaid *Orellana* is reported to have ſailed in it 5000 miles, the ſeveral windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of ſo violent a current, that it is ſaid to keep its natural taſt and colour above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accompted 60 Leagues from one point to the other. 2 *Orenoque*, navigable 1000 miles by ſhips of burden, and 2000 miles by Boats and *Pinnaces*, having received into it an hundred Rivers; openeth into the ſame Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Ilands (ſome equal to the Iſle of *Wight*) the moſt remote of thoſe Channels 300 miles diſtant from one another. By ſome it is called *Raliana*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the diſcovery and deſcription of it; or rather in diſcovering it ſo far, as to be able to deſcribe it. 3 *Maragnon*, of a longer courſe then any of the other, affirmed to meaſure at the leaſt 6000 miles, from his firſt riſing to his fall; and at his fall into the Sea, to be no leſs then 70 Leagues from one ſide to the other. More properly to be called a Sea, then many of thoſe great *Lakes*, or largeſt Bays, which uſually enjoy that name. 4 *Rio de la Placa*, a River of a leſs courſe then the other, but equall unto moſt in the world beſides; in length from its firſt Fountain 2000 mile; in breadth at his fall into the Sea, about 60 Leagues; and of ſo violent a ſtream, that the ſea for many Leagues together, altereth not the taſte of it. All theſe as they do end their Race in the *Atlantick*, ſo they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at the leaſt ſome *Spur* or branch of that great body.

But before we venture further on more particulars, we are to tell you of theſe *Andes*, that they are the greateſt and moſt noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Timama* a Town of *Popayan*, in the New Realm of *Granada*, and thence extended Southwards to the ſtraits of *Magellan*, for the ſpace of 1000 Leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 Leagues where they are at the narroweſt; and of ſo vaſt an height withall, that they are ſaid to be higher then the *Alpes*, or the head of *Caucaſus*, or any of the moſt noted Mountains in other parts of the VVorld. Not eaſie of aſcent, but in certain Paths, by reaſon of the thick and unpaſſable VVoods, with which covered in all parts thereof which lie towards *Peru* (for how it is on the other ſide, or by what People it is neighboured, is not yet diſcovered) barren, and craggie too withall, but ſo full of venemous Beaſts, and poyſonous Serpents, that they are ſaid to have deſtroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Peru*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a People as rude and ſavage as the place, and as little hoſpitable. The moſt noted Mountains of *America*, as before was ſaid, and indeed the greateſt of the World. Of fame ſufficient of themſelves not to be greatned by the addition of impoſſible Figments, or improbable Fictions. Among which laſt I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius* a right learned man, who will have theſe Mountains to be that which the Scripture calleth by the name of *Sephar*, *Gen.*10.30. and there affirmed to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the ſons of *Joktan*: the vanity and inconſequences of which ſtrange conceit, we have already noted when we were in *India*.

Proceed we now unto the particular deſcriptions of this great *Peninſula*, comprehending thoſe large and wealthy Countries, which are known to us by the names of 1 *Caſtella Aurea*, 2 The New Realm of *Granada*, 3 *Peru*, 4 *Chile*, 5 *Paragnay*, 6 *Braſil*, 7 *Guyana*, and 8 *Paria*, with their ſeverall Ilands. Such other Iſles as fall not properly and naturally under ſome of theſe, muſt be referred unto the generall head of the *American* Ilands in the cloſe of all.

OF

OF CASTELLA DEL ORO.

CASTELLA del ORO, *Golden Caſtile*, (*Aurea Caſtella*, as the *Latines*) is bounded on the East and North with *Mare del Noort*, on the West with *Mare del Zur* and ſome part of *Veragua*, on the South with the New Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Caſtile*, with reference to *Caſtile* in *Spain*, under the favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was firſt diſcovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for diſtinctions ſake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the firſt Diſcoverers found in it. It is alſo called *Terra Firma*, becauſe one of the firſt parts of *Firm land* which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before diſcovered nothing but ſome *Ilands* only.

The Soil and People being of ſuch ſeveral tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will conſider both apart in the ſeveral Provinces, of 1 *Panama*, 2 *Darien*, 3 *Nova Andaluzia*, 4 S. *Martha*, & 5 the little Province *De la Hacha*.

1 *PANAMA*, or the Diſtrict of *Panama*, is bounded on the East with the Golf of *Uraba*, by which parted from the main land of this large *Peninſula*; on the VVeſt with *Veragua* one of the Provinces of *Guatimala* in *Mexicana*; waſhed on both the other ſides with the Sea. So called of *Panama* the town of moſt eſteem herein, and the Juridical Reſort of *Caſtella Aurea*.

It taketh up the narroweſt part of the Streit or *Iſthmus*, which joyns both *Peninſulas* together: not above 7 or 8 leagues over in the narroweſt place betwixt *Panama* and *Porto Bello*, if meaſured by a ſtrait line from one town to the other; though 18 leagues according to the courſe of the Road betwixt them, which by reaſon of the hils and rivers is full of turnings. Of ſome attempts to dig a Channel through this *Iſthmus* to let the one Sea into the other, and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by land, we have ſpoke already.

The Air hereof foggie, but exceeding hot, and conſequently very unhealthy, chiefly from *May* unto *November*: the Soil either mountainous and barren, or low and miery; naturally ſo unfit for grain, that it yieldeth nothing but *Maize*, and that but ſparingly; better for paſturage, in regard of its plenty of graſs, and the goodneſs of it: ſo full of Swine at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither, that they thought they never ſhould deſtroy them; now they complain as much of their want or paucitie. As for the Inhabitants, whatſoever they were formerly is not now material: moſt of the old ſtock rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room; ſo that the Country in all parts except towards the Sea, is almoſt deſolated or forſaken.

The Country, as before was ſaid, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers: the principal whereof, 1 *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Lagartos*, or the River of *Crocodiles*, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noort* betwixt *Nombre de Dios*, and *Porto Beleno*. 2 *Sardinilla*, 3 *Sardina*, 4 *Rio de Colubros*, or the River of *Snakes*; & 5 *Rio de Comagre*, all falling into the ſame Sea. Then on the other ſide, 6 *Chepo*, whoſe ſands in former times yielded plenty of gold. 7 *Rio de las Balſas*, on the banks whereof groweth great ſtore of timber for the building of ſhips. 8 *De Congos*, emptying it ſelf into the Bay of *S. Michaels*.

Towns of moſt note, 1 *S. Philip*, ſeated on a ſafe and ſtrong Haven called *Porto Belo*, built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the ſecond, but by the counſel of *John Baptiſta Antonelli*, to be the ſtaple of the trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama*; partly in regard of the unhealthineſs of *Nombre di Dios*, where it was before, but chiefly becauſe that Town was found to have lien too open to the invaſions of the *Engliſh*. Fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles (on each ſide of the Haven one) but for all that ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. 2 *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently ſeated in the Upper-ſea, for a Town of trade; and for that reaſon made the *Staple* of ſuch commodities as were trucked betwixt *Peru* and *Spain*; which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there ſhipped for *Peru*; or brought ſo from *Peru* and landed at *Panama*, were by land brought unto this place, and here ſhipped for *Spain*. It took this name from *Diduco Niqueſa* a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, who having been diſtreſſed by tempeſts was driven in here, and bid his men go on ſhore *en nombre de Dios*, in the name of God. In reference hereunto by the *Latines*, borrowing a *Greek* word, it is called *Theonyma*. Of great trade once, on the occaſion before mentioned: but in the year 1584 the trade was removed unto *Porto Belo*, by the counſel of *Antonelli* before named; and ſome years after that, the Inhabitants alſo. To haſten which, the taking of this town by Sir *Francis Drake*, ſerved exceeding fitly. 3 *Acla*, on the Coaſt of the ſame Sea alſo, but on the South-eaſt of *Nombre de Dios*. 4 *Nata*, or S. *Jago de Nata*, ſituate on the Lower ſea on the borders of *Veragua*, about 30 leagues on the weſt of *Panama*. 5 *Panama*, the chief City of *Caſtella Aurea*, the Reſidence of the Governour of the *Courts* of *Juſtice*, honoured with a *Biſhops* See, a *Suffragan* to the Archbiſhop of *Lima*; and beautified with three fair Monaſteries, and a College of *Jeſuites*. Seated in the 9. degree or Northern *Latitude*; and ſo near the Sea, that the waves come cloſe unto the wall. A town through which the wealth of *Spain* and *Peru* paſſeth every year: yet not containing

taining above 350 houſes; the number of the Soldiers greater then that of the Citizens. 6 S. *Crux la Real*, a League from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes* brought out of *Guinea*.

This Province was the firſt of thoſe on the *Firm land* which were diſcovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Iland lying on the ſhore neer *Porto Belo*, which he cauſed to be called *Los Baſtimentos*; becauſe being caſt hereon by chance, he found good ſtore of *Maize* and other proviſions, called *Baſtimentos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Ilands of this Province, are thoſe which *Columbus* never ſaw, called the *Ilands* of *Pearls*, ſituate in the Southern ſea, oppoſite to *Panama*, from which diſtant 17 leagues or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called *Tarorequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the reſt of them rather *Rocks* then Ilands. Much famed not onely for the abundance, but the excellencie of the *Pearls* there found, fairer then thoſe of *Margarita* and *Cubagna* ſo much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniards*, till by their *cruelty* and *covetouſneſs* they unpeopled the Ilands, and deſtroyed the *Pearls*. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and ſome *Slaves* of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Maſters Cattel in the fields and paſtures.

2 *DARIEN* hath on the North the *Diſtrict* of *Panoma*, on the South *New Granada*, on the Eaſt the River of *Darien* whence it hath its name, and the *Golf* of *Uraba*, and on the Weſt the main Southern Ocean.

The Country of a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil: ſo happy in the production of *Melons* and ſuch other fruits, that within twenty dayes after they are ſown, they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth *Grapes* and other fruits, either natural hereunto, or brought hither from *Europe*. A tree here is called *Hovo*, not elſwhere known; the ſhade of which is conceived to be ſo wholſom, that the *Spaniards* ſeek them out to ſleep under them. Out of the *Bloſſoms* of it they diſtill a perfumed Water; of the *Bark* a Bath or *Lavatorie*, good for the opening of the pores, and redreſs of wearineſs; and from the *Roots* they draw a Liquour which they uſe to drink of. Of Beaſts and Fowl great plenty, whether wild or tame; and ſome of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1 *Darien*, whence it hath the name; A clear water, and much drank of, but of a ſlow courſe and a narrow channel, able to bear no bigger Veſſels then thoſe of one peece of wood uſed among the *Savages*: we may call them *Troughs*. But with this ſlow courſe it falleth at laſt into the Golf of *Uraba*, a large Arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is ſaid to be eight leagues over. 2 *Rio de las Redas*, & 3 *De la Trepadera*, both emptying themſelves into the *Golf* of *Uraba*. 4 *Corobaci*, on the ſame ſide of the Country alſo. 5 *Beru*, a River of the South-Sea, not much obſervable, but that ſome have laboured to derive the Etymologie of *Peru* from thence.

Towns of moſt note, though few of any, 1 *Dariene*, on the Bank of the *Golf* of *Uraba*; oftentimes ſo unhealthy by the Miſts which do thence ariſe, that the Inhabitants uſe to ſend their ſick people to the freſh Air of *Corobarie* to revive their ſpirits. By the *Spaniards* it wat called S. *Maria Antiqua*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Enciſus* a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, *An.* 1510. and grew ſo ſuddenly into wealth and reputation, that within four years it was made an *Epiſcopal* See: But being built too neer the Banks of the *Dariene*, in a mooriſh and unhealthy place, both the *Epiſcopal* See, and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forſaken by themſelves, or deſtroyed by the Savages: ſo that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the *Golf* of *Vraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but ſome few ſcattered houſes in all that tract, for the uſe of the Natives, who formerly made their Neſts like Birds, on the tops of trees. 2 *Bizu*, 3 *Los Angadeſos*, two ſmall villages on the other ſide of the Country, poſſeſſed by the Savages. Beſides theſe, and ſome ſorry ſheds here and there diſperſed, all the reſt a Deſart. So that not being able to maintain the reputation of a diſtinct Province, the government hereof hath of late been devolved on the *Prefect* of *Panama*.

3 *NOVA ANDALUSIA* hath on the Weſt the River *Darien*, and the *Golf* of *Uraba*; on the Eaſt the Province of S. *Martha*, on the North the main Ocean, and on the South the *new Realm* of *Granada*. So called with reference to *Andaluſia* a Province of *Spain*. Called alſo by ſome Writers *Carthagena*, from *Carthagena* now the chief City of it.

It is in length from the *Golf* of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen* 80 Leagues, and neer upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of woods, but in thoſe woods great ſtore of Roſin, Gums, and ſome kinds of *Balſams*. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Tree, which whoſoever toucheth, is in danger of poiſoning. The Soil, by reaſon of the abundance of rain which fals upon it, very moyſt and ſpewie; inſomuch that few of our *European* fruits have proſpered in it. Few veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*, where the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming found great ſtore of treaſure: But it was taken out of the graves and *Monuments* of the dead, not found in *Mines*, or digged for as in other places: ſuch being the reputation of that Territory in former times, that the *Nations* far and neer did carry the bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantity of *Gold*, *Jewels*, and other Riches. The *Natives* very fierce and ſtout, whiles they were a People: But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrows before fully conquered, they have been ſo conſumed and waſted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *Rio de los Redos*, & 2 *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3 *Zenu*, which paſſing thorow the Province above-mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the

Ocean over against the Iland *Fuerte*. 4 S. *Martha*, of long course, and much estimation: For rising in the most Southern parts of the *New Realm* of *Granada*, neer the *Æquinoctial*, it passeth thorow the whole length of that Kingdom, and at the last mingleth its streams with that of the River *Magdalen*, not far from *Mopox*. By the *Natives* it is called *Cauca*. And as for Mountains, those of most note are a continual Ridge of hils by the *Spaniards* called *Cordillera*, by the Natives *Abibe*; craggie, and difficult of ascent; in breadth affirmed to be 20 leagues, but the length uncertain, the furthest ends of them towards the South not discovered hitherto.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Carthagena*, situate in a sandie *Peninsula*, ten degrees distant from the *Æquator*: well built, and for the bigness of it of great wealth and state; consisting of 500 houses or thereabouts, but those neat and handsom. Beautified with a *Cathedral*-Church, three Monasteries, and one of the best Havens of all *America*. Well fortified on both sides since the taking of it by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585. took it by assault, and carried thence besides inestimable sums of money, 240 Brass-peeces of Ordinance. 2 *Tolu*, by the *Spaniards* called *S. Jago*, twelve miles from *Carthagena*; memorable for the most soveraign *Balsam* of all these parts, called the *Balsam* of *Tolu*; little interior, if at all, to the *Balsam* of *Egypt*. 3 *Mopox*, or *Santa Crux de Mopox*, neer the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalens*. 4 *Baranca de Malambo*, on the Banks of the River *Magdalen*, six leagues from the Ocean; where such Commodities as are brought by sea for the *New Realm* of *Granada*, use to be unshipped, and carried by *Lighters* or small Boats up the River. 5 *Sebastian de Buena vista*, built by *Alfonso de Oieda*, An. 1508. in his first attempt upon this Country, situate on a rising ground neer the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a league and an half from the sea. 6 *Villa de Maria*, 30 leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4 S. *MARTHA* hath on the West *Nova Andalusia*, on the East *Rio de la Hacha*, on the North the main Ocean, on the South the New Realm of *Granada*: about 70 leagues in length, and as much in breadth. So called from S. *Martha* the chief City of it.

The Country mountainous and barren, not fit for pasturage or tillage; productive notwithstanding of Limons, Orenges, Pomgranats, and such other fruits as are brought hither out of *Spain*. The Air on the Sea-coasts very hot and scalding, and in the midland parts as cold, because of the neighbourhood of some Mountains alwayes covered with snow. The principal of those Mountains, a long Ridge of Hils by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sierras Nievadas*, or the *Snowy mountains*; discernable by the Mariners 30 leagues at sea, by whom called the Mountains of *Tairona*, from a Vallie of that name beneath them; the Inhabitants whereof by the advantage of those hils have hitherto preserved their liberty against the *Spaniards*. The rest though subject to the *Spaniards*, have their several Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant and ill-natured people; made worse perhaps then indeed they are, by reason of their hate to the *Spaniards*, whose government they live under with great unwillingness.

Chief Rivers of this Province, 1 *Rio Grando de la Magdalena*; which hath its fountain in the hils of the *new Realm* of *Granada*, not far from the *Æquator*, but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Carthagena* and S. *Martha*, in the *Latitude* of 12 Degrees; where dividing it self, it maketh an Iland of 5 leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; discernible for ten leagues space from the rest of the *Main*, by the taste and colour of the water. 2 *Rio de Cazaze*, which falleth into the *Magdalen*, as doth also 3 *Cæsar*, by the Natives called *Pompatao*; which having its fountain neer the City of Kings in the Vale of *Upar*, passeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4 *Ayumas*, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth westward for the space of 70 leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalens*, as before is said, neer the Forrest of *Alpuerte*. 5 *Bubia*, 6 *Piras*, 7 *Don Diego* 8 *Palamini*, 9 *Gayza*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of most observation, 1 S. *Martha*, situate on the shores of the Ocean, in the *Latitude* of ten Degrees & 30 Minutes; neighboured by a safe and convenient Haven, defended from the winds by an high Mountain neer unto it, and honoured with an *Episcopal* See. Small, and ill built when it was at the best; nor well recovered of the spoil it suffered by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1595. and by Sir *Anthony Sherley* the next year after. 2 *Tenariffe* on the Banks of the *Magdalen*, 40 leagues from S. *Martha*. 3 *Tunalameque*, by the *Spaniards* called *Villa de las Palmas*, twenty leagues to the South of *Tenariffe*. 4 *Cividad de los Reges*, or the City of the Kings, situate in the Vale of *Upar*, on the banks of a deep and violent River called *Guatapori*, which not far off falleth into the *Cæsar*: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Toirona*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of *Spain*. 5 *Ramada*, by the *Spaniards* called *New Salamanca*, in the same Valley of *Upar*; as liberally furnished with veins of Brass, as it is with stones. 6 *Ocanna*, on the western Reach of the River *Cæsar*, equally distant from its confluence with *Ayumas*, and its fall into *Magdalen*.

5 *RIO DE LA HACHA* is the name of a little Province lying on the North-east of S. *Martha*: environed on two sides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the East) with a large and spacious Arm of the Sea called *Golfo de Venezuela*: the Extremities hereof North-west called *Cabo la Vela*; on the North-east, *Cabo di Coquiboccoa*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a small Town, consisting of no more then an hundred houses, but big enough to give name to so small a Province. Built on a little hill about a mile from the Sea; the Haven inconvenient and exposed to the Northern winds, but the Soil about it very rich, fruitfull of all such Plants as are brought from *Spain*; well stored with veins of *Gold*, excellent *Salt-wiches*, and some *Gems* of great worth and vertue. Distant 8 leagues from *New Salamanca*,

manca, and 18 leagues from the *Cape la Vela*: ſurprized and ſacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1595. 2 *Rancheria*, ſix leagues on the Eaſt of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the moſt part by ſuch as get their living by *Pearl-fiſhing*. 3 *Topia*, five leagues from *La Hach*, and almoſt as much from the Sea: the Fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca*, were terribly waſted by the *Engliſh*, in the year aforeſaid; becauſe the Governour of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000 *Ducats* not to burn that Town, would not ſtand to his bargain.

Theſe Countries diſcovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was ſaid; were afterwards brought under the power of *Spain*, by two ſeveral men, imployed in the ſubduing of their ſeveral parts, *An.* 1508. To *Didaco Niqueſa* was allotted the government and conqueſt of thoſe parts hereof which lie on the Weſt of the Bay of the *Uraba*, containing the Præfectures of *Darien* and *Panama*, by the name of *Caſtella del Oro*: And to *Alfonſo Oreda*, all that lay on the Eaſt of that *Gulf*, by the name of *Nova Andaluſia*. But theſe two finiſhed not the work, though they firſt begun it: *Enciſus* diſcovering further on the River of *Dariene*, then *Niqueſa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South ſea, where *Panama* and the beſt of their trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Præfectures of *S. Martha* and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and ſubdued by the *Spaniard*) being added to it. One of their laſt Kings which held out againſt the *Spaniards*, was called *Abibeia*, who had his *Palace* on the top of a tree, (as moſt of his ſubjects had their houſes) from which when *Franciſco de Vaſques* a *Spaniſh* Captain could by no other *Rhetorick* win him to deſcend, he laid his *Axe* to the Root, and began to fell it: which ſeen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his life and *Palace* at the will of his Enemies.

OF NOVA GRANADA.

NOVA GRANADA, or the *new Realm of Granada*, is bounded on the North with *Caſtella Aurea*; on the Weſt with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt with *Veneznela*. The Countries lying on the South, are not yet diſcovered, ſhut up with vaſt Hils, and impaſſable Mountains; except only in thoſe parts which lie near the Sea, where the Way lyeth open to *Peru*. Thus called by *Gonſalvo Ximenez*, the firſt Diſcoverer, who being a Native of *Granada* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it.

It is in length 130 Leagues, and as much in breadth; reckoning *Popayan* for a part of it, though by ſome made a diſtinct government. So that we may divide the whole into theſe two parts, *Granada* ſpecially ſo called, lying on the Weſt: and 2 *Popayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA* ſpecially ſo called, hath an Ayr for the moſt part well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and ſhortneſs of dayes. The Country full of Woods, but of great fertility; well ſtored with Corn and Paſturage, many Herds of Cattel; ſome veins of Gold and other Metals, and in that part hereof which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of *Emeralds*: and amongſt their woods, that called *Guajacan*, Medicinable for the *French* diſeaſe, grows in great abundance. The People tall and ſtrong of body, not very induſtrious, the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in ſongs and dances. The *Women* of a white and more clear complexion then any of their neighbours, and more handſomly habited; apparelled in black, or party-coloured *Mantles*, girt about their middles; their hair tyed up, and covered moſt an end with *Chaplets* intermixt with flowers, and artificially compoſed.

Rivers of note I find not any, but thoſe of *S. Martha*, and *S. Magdalen*, deſcribed before: nor any diſtinction of it into ſeveral Provinces, but that the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Panches*, *Colyma*, and *Muſi*, by which the *Savages* were diſtinguiſhed, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; with reference to which the principall of their Towns are by ſome deſcribed.

Towns then of greateſt note, 1 *S. Foy de Bagota*, but commonly *S. Foy*, the *Metropolis* of this new Realm, the See of an *Archbiſhop*, and the ſeat of the Governour. Built by *Gonſalvo Ximinez de Queſada*, at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the banks of which they uſed to ſacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, beſides thoſe of the Natives; and ſituate in the fourth Degree of Northern *Latitude*. 2 *S. Michael* twelve Leagues on the North of *S. Foy*, a well-traded market. 3 *Tocayma* in the territorie of the *Punches*, a barbarous and man-eating People, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards*, and maſters of the richeſt part of all the Country. The Town about 15 Leagues from *S. Foy*, towards the North eaſt; and ſeated on the banks of *Pati*, a little River, which not far off is ſwallowed up in the body of *Magdalen*. 4 *Tudela* is the Country of the *Muſi* and *Colymæ*, two warlike Nations; ſituate on the banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colonie of the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither; but deſerted by them not long after, for fear of *Savages*, though the want of Proviſions was pretended. 5 *Trinidado*, on the ſame River, but ſomewhat lower, and more remote from the *Savages*; by whom notwithſtanding much annoyed: the fields thereof full of veins of *Chriſtal*, *Emeralds*, *Adamants*, and *Chalcedonians*. 6 *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the ſame territorie of the *Muſi* and *Colyma*, Anno 1572. 7 *Tunia*, ſo called according to the name of the *Tribe* or Province in which it is ſituate; built on the top of an high Hill that it might ſerve for a retreat and Fortreſs againſt the *Savages*; now a well-traded *Emporie*, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impreſs 200 horſe for preſent ſervice. 8 *Pampelona*, 60 Leagues from *S. Foy*, towards the North eaſt, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattel. 9 *Merida*, on the North of *Pampiona*, the furtheſt Town of all this Province on the North eaſt towards *Veneznela*; As 10 *S. John de Los Lianos*, or *S. John* upon the *Plaines* is in the South-eaſt, 50 Leagues from *S. Foy*, and ſeated in a corner full of veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA* lyeth on the Weſt of *new Granada*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called; from which parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Country; on the North bounded with *Nova Andaluzia*, or *Carthagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the Weſt. Extended in length from North to South 130 Leagues at the leaſt; and from the River to the Sea betwixt 30 and 40.

The Country, over-cloyd with rain, breeds but little *Maize*, leſs Wheat, and almoſt no Cattel; though in ſome places richer then it is in others. The People anciently *Man-eaters*, and as rude as any; now more induſtrious and affable then the other *Americans*; eſpecially about *Popayan*, where the ſoyl is alſo better tempered then in other places. The Rivers of moſt note beſide that of *S. Martha*, which we have ſpoken of already; and ſome leſſer ſtreams which fall into it; are 1 *Rio di S. Juan*, 2 *Rio de Cedros*, 3 *Rio de S Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greateſt note, 1 *Popayan*, called by the name of the King hereof, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; ſituate on a nameleſs but pleaſant River, in the midſt of a Plain, of great wealth, and a healthy Ayr; in two Degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern *Latitude*; the ordinary reſidence

dence of the Governour, and See of a Bishop. The building fair unto the eye, but slight; excepting the *Cathedral*, and a Monastery of the Fryars called *De mercede*, which are strong and lasting. 2 *Antiochia*, (or *Santta Fides de Antiochia*) on the borders of *Nova Andaluzia*, 100 Leagues distant from *Popayan*. Seated upon a little River which fals into the *Martha*, from which twelve Leagues distant. 3 *Caramanta* on the *Martha* it self. 4 *Patia* in a pleasant Valley, on the banks of a small River, but of excellent water. 5 *S. Anne* in the *Cantred* of *Anzerman*, by which name it is sometimes called: Built on a little Hill betwixt two sweet Rivers, and compassed round about with a Grove of most pleasant Fruits. 6 *S. Jago de Arma*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Arma*; situate in a territorie very rich in *Gold*, but otherwise unprovided of all manner of necessaries: Fifty Leagues to the North-east of *Popayan*. 7 *Carthage* in the Province of *Quimbaia*, 22 Leagues from *S. Jago de Arma*, seated in a Plain betwixt two torrents, seven Leagues from the River of *S. Martha*. 8 *Cali*, a League from that River, but on the banks of another, in the Latitude of four Degrees: neighboured by a vast and mighty Mountain, at whose foot it standeth; where built by *Sebastian de Betalcuzar*, the first discoverer of this Country. 9 *Bonaventure* on a Bay so called in the Southern Ocean; a smal Town, but of great use for the conveyance of the Commodities of *new Spain* unto *Popayan*, and other Towns of this Province. 10 *Timana*, 80 Leagues from *Popayan* towards the East, at the foot of that vast ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far Southwards as the Streits of *Magellan*. 11 *S. Juan de Pasto*, situate in a pleasant Valley, but one Degree from the *Æquator*. 12 *Sebastian de la Plata*, so called of its *Silver Mines*, in the South-east confines of the Province. 13 *Almaguer*, on the sides of a plain but barren Mountain. 14 *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Chicu*; in a barren soyl, were not *Gold* a supplement of all wants, which is there found in some abundance.

To this Province belong also some Ilands in the Southern Ocean, that is to say, 1 The *Isle* of *Palmes*, South of the Cape of *Corrientes*, so called from the abundance of *Palms* which are growing in it. 2 *Gorgona*, opposite to the mouth or outlet of *Rio de S. Juan*, an Iland of three Leagues in compass, the Hils so high, the Vallies so extreamly low, the Sun so little seen amongst them, and the Woods so dark, that some have likened it to Hell. Not much observable, but that it did afford a lurking place unto *Francis Pizarro*, in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulsed from landing on that Coast. 3 *Del Gallo*, a small Iland, not a League in circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Country thus divided into two *Prefectures*, but both subordinate to the *Juridical Resort* in the City of *S. Foy de Bagota*; is indebted for its first Discovery to two several persons. *Granada* specially so called, was first discovered by *Gonsalvo Ximinez de Quesada*, employed therein by *Ferdinand de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canarie* Ilands, Anno 1536. who passing up the River of *Magdalen* without molestation (more then the difficulties of the wayes thorow Fens and Forrests) as far as the *Cantred* of *Bagota*, was there encountred by that King, whom he easily vanquished: and wasting all his territories, carryed with him thence great quantity of *Gold*, *Emeralds*, and other treasure. The residue of those Petit Princes which then governed in their several *Tribes*, either submitted to him without opposition, or else were vanquished at the first rising. Having discovered and subdued every several Province, and miserably murdered *Sangipa* the last King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made use in subduing the *Panches*; he caused it to be called *The new Realm of Granada*, for the reason formerly laid down: and summing up the spoyles he had gotten in this easie war, he found them to amount to 1800 *Emeralds*, 191294 *Pezoes* of the finest Gold, 35000 of a courser and inferiour alloy. In his return he heard the news of *Sebastian de Betalcazars* marching on the other side of the River of *S. Martha*; who having at the same time discovered and subdued the Province of *Popayana*, was beating out his way towards the North Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Francisco Pezarro* the Conqueror of *Peru*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*; and having secured all the Country to the very Sea, resolved to open a way homewards thorow those Regions, which lay betwixt his own Province, and *Mare del Noort*: And this he did resolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Country, full of *Gold*, was in that Tract possessed by *Popayan* and *Columbaz*, two Petit Princes, but yet the greatest in those parts. Encountred in his march by the Roytelets of *Patia* and *Pasto*, he soon made them weary, and retire themselves into the Woods and impassable Mountains; and passing slowly on, came at last to *Popayan*. Where though the *Savages* entertained him with some frequent skirmishes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to possess themselves of their best Towns, and to build others in such places as they thought convenient. But this was after the first Conquest, according to the coming over of succeeding *Colonies*: The first Conquest being finished Anno 1536. when the *New Realm of Granada* was subdued by *Ximinez*.

OF

OF PERV.

PERV is bounded on the East with that vaſt ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the Weſt with *Mare del Zur*, on the North with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*, on the South with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the firſt of note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Country, occaſioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 Leagues, but the breadth not equal. In ſome places 100 Leagues broad, in others 60. in the reſt but 40. more or leſs according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of ſo different a nature from one another, as if they were far diſtant both in ſite and ſoyl. Theſe parts the *Plains*, the *Hill Countries*, and the *Andes* the *Plains*, extended on the Sea ſhore, in all places level without Hils; the *Andes* a continuall ridge of Mountains without any Vallies; the *Sierra*, or Hill Countries compoſed of both. Each part ſtretched out from North to South, the whole length of the Country: the *Plains* from the Sea ſhore to the Hill-Countries, for the moſt part ten Leagues broad, in ſome places more; the *Hill-Countries* 20 Leagues in breadth where narroweſt, and as much the *Andes*. In the *Plains* it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the *Hill Countries* Rain from *September* to *April*, after that fair weather. In the *Hill Countries* the Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*; in the *Plains* their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*. So that a man may travel from *Summer* to *Winter* in one day; be frozen in the morning at his ſetting forth, and ſcorched with heat before he come to his journies end. Some other differences there are, as that the *Andes* are covered with VVoods and Forreſts, whereas the *Hill Countries* are bare and naked; the *Plains*, where there are ſtore of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea beſides, ſandy and dry, and in moſt places deſtitute both of Fruits and Corn; in ſome parts of the *Hill Countries* where there are no Rivers, and a Rain but ſeldom, plenty of Roots, *Maize*, Fruits, and all other neceſſaries. In the *Plains* there never bloweth any but the Southerly wind, though it bring no rain with it; and in the *Hils*, winds from every Coaſt, and of every nature, ſome bringing Rain, ſome Snow, ſome claps of Thunder, and others fair weather at the heels of them. Inſomuch that it is obſerved, that ſuch of the Inhabitants of the *Plains* as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find ſuch pains in the head and ſtomack, as *freſh-water* ſouldiers when firſt Sea-ſick.

Not to purſue theſe differences any further in the ſeveral parts, we will look upon the whole in groſs: which we ſhall find but meanly furniſhed for the bigneſs, with thoſe Commodities which ſo large a Country might afford: inſomuch as many of the People live moſt on *Roots*, here being little VVhear, and not ſuch quantities of *Maize* (the ordinary bread grain of the *Americans*) as to ſerve their multitudes. Nor find I that the Cattel of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increaſe. Inſtead of which they have in their woods and paſtures infinite numbers of beaſts ſomewhat like wild Goats, (which they call *Vicagues*) and great ſtore of a kind of ſheep by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for fleece and burden; as big as a ſmall breed of Horſes, but in taſt as pleaſing as our *Mutton*, and no leſs nouriſhing. A Creature ſo well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himſelf over-loaded, no blows or violence ſhall make him move a foot forwards till his load be leſſened; and of ſo cheap a dyet, that he is content with very little, and ſometimes paſſeth three whole dayes without any water. The *Camels* of theſe parts, and not much unlike them.

This as it is by ſome accompted for a Creature proper to this Country only (though in that miſtaken) ſo may it paſs amongſt the *Rarities* hereof: many of which it hath both in Beaſts, and Plants, and in inanimate bodies alſo. Amongſt their *Plants* they have a *Fig tree*, the North part whereof looking towards the Mountains, bringeth forth its Fruits in the *Summer* only; the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitful only in *Winter*. Some as deſervedly do count the *Coca* for a wonder, the Leaves whereof being dryed, and formed into *Lozenges*, (or little Pellets) are exceeding uſeful in a journey. For melting in the mouth, they ſatisfie both hunger and thirſt, and preſerve a man in ſtrength, and his ſpirits in vigour: and generally are eſteemed of ſuch ſoveraign uſe, that it is thought that 10000 Baskets full of the Leaves of this Tree are ſold yearly at the Mines of *Potoſia* only, each of which at the Markets of *Cuſco* would yield 12.d. or 18.d. a piece. Another *Plant* they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a ſick perſon, will inſtantly diſcover whether he be like to live or die. For if on the preſſing it in his hand he look merry and chearfull, it is an aſſured ſign of his *Recovery*: as on the other ſide, of death, if ſad and troubled. Amongſt their *Beaſts*, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanacu*: of which it is obſerved that the *Males* ſtand *Centinel* on the Mountains, while the *Females* are feeding in the Vallies: and if they ſee any men coming towards them, they ſet out their throats, to give their *Females* notice of ſome danger near: whom when they come up to them, they put in the front of the *Retreat*, interpoſing their own bodies betwixt them and their enemy. Nor want they Rarities of nature even in things *inanimate*: here being ſaid to be a round *Lake* near the *Mines* of *Potoſi*, whoſe water is ſo hot, though the Country be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themſelves are

not

not able to endure the heats thereof if they go but a little from the Banks: there being in the midſt thereof a boyling of above 20 foot ſquare. A *Lake* which never doth decreaſe, though they have drawn a great ſtream from it to ſerve their *Mettal-Mills.*

More profitable though leſs rare, thoſe *Metals*, which thoſe Mills are made for; and not leſs profitable, one of thoſe Vulgar Plants, I mean *Tobacco*, growing more abundantly here then in other Countries of *America:* for which cauſe, and the reſemblance which it hath to *Henbane*, in form and quality, it is called the *Henbane* of *Peru* by *Gerrad* and ſome others of our Modern *Herbaliſts.* A Plant, which though in ſome reſpect being moderatly taken, it may be ſerviceable for *Phyſick*: yet beſides the conſumption of the purſe, and impairing of our inward parts; the immodetate, vain, and phantaſtical abuſe of this ſtinking weed, corrupteth the naturall ſweetneſs of the breath, ſtupifieth the brain, and indeed is ſo prejudicial to the general eſteem of our Country-men, that one ſaith of them, *Anglorum corpora qui huic plantæ tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degeneraſſe videntur.* The two chief Vertues aſcribed unto it (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort digreſſion) are that it voideth *Rheume*, and is found to be a ſoveraign *Antidote* againſt *Lues Venerea*, that loathſom Diſeaſe of the *French* Pox: For this laſt, like enough it is, that ſo unclean a Diſeaſe may be helped with ſuch an unſavory Medicine. But for the ſecond it may perhaps conſiſt more in opinion, then truth or reality; the *Rheume* which it is ſaid to void, being no more then what it breedeth at the preſent. We may as well conclude that *Botled-Ale* is good for the breaking of winde (which effect we finde commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the ſame winde which it ſelf conveyed into the Stomack. But *Tobacco* is by few now taken as *Medicinal*; it is of late times grown a *Good-fellow*, and fallen from a Phyſitian to a Complement. An humour which had never ſpred ſo far amongſt us, if the ſame means of prevention had been uſed by the *Chriſtian* Magiſtrates, as was by *Morat Baſſa* among the *Turks:* who commanded a Pipe to be thruſt thorow the Noſe of a *Turk* whom he found taking *Tobacco*, and ſo to be carried in deriſion all about *Conſtantinople.* It is obſerved that the taking of Tobacco was firſt brought into *England* by the Marriners of Sir *Francis Drake*, *An.* 1585. And that it hapned not unfitly in the way of an *Antidote* to that immoderate uſe of drinking, which our *Low Country* Souldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time, *An.* 1582. Before which time, the *Engliſh* of all Northern People were deemed to be moſt free from that *Swiniſh* Vice, wherein it is to be feared that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch.* Certain it is, that it is taken ſo exceſſively by both theſe Nations, that I may juſtly ſay with a learned *Fleming*, Herbæ *ejus non dicam uſus ſed abuſus, non modo in* Anglia, *ſed in* Belgio, *& alibi, inſanum in modum jam adolevit.*

But the greateſt riches of this Country is moſt out of ſight hid in the *Bowels* of the earth, but found in thoſe never-decaying *Mines* of Gold and Silver; more eminently abounding in this one Province then in all *America.* For inſtance whereof we may take the *Silver Mines* of *Potozi*, diſcovered in the yeer 1545. the fift of which, payable into the Kings Exchequer, amounted in forty yeers to a 111 millions of *Pezoes*, every *Pezo* being valued at ſix ſhillings and ſix pence; and yet a third part of the whole was diſcharged of that payment. By this one we may gueſſe ſomewhat of the reſt; as by the proportion of one member the *dimenſions* of the whole body may be probably aimed at; unleſs the riches of theſe Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by ſome knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold then Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arias Montanus*, and ſome other very learned men, that this *Peru* is that land of *Ophir* to which *Solomons* Navy went for Gold, induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chron. lib.* 2. *cap.* 3. *ver.* 6. *That the Gold was the Gold of Paruaim.* A fancy not of ſo ſandy a foundation, as many others of that kinde, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Country, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards.* By means whereof not only *Spain*, but all *Europe* alſo is better furniſhed with gold and ſilver, then ever formerly. For in the firſt Ages of the VVorld our Anceſtors the *Britains* (I muſt digreſs here once again) had no other money then Iron-rings, and Braſs-rings, which they uſed for inſtruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the moſt uſual Materials of their coyn, was moſt times Braſs, and ſometimes Leather. *Corium forma publica percuſſum*, as it is in *Seneca* Of which laſt ſort we finde that *Frederick* the Emperour made uſe at the ſiege of *Millain*; and the *Engliſh*, in the time of the *Barons* VVars. And why not ſo? conſidering that no longer ſince in the year 1574 the *Hollanders* being then reduced to ſome extremities, made money of *Paſt boord.* But this hapneth only in Caſes of neceſſity, the two Mettals of gold and ſilver having for many hundred years (though not in ſuch abundance as in latter times) been the chief inſtruments of Exchange and Bartery betwixt man and man, & queſtionleſs will ſo continue to the end of the VVorld. I know Sir *Thomas More* in the ſecond Book of his *Utopia*, preferreth Iron before Gold, becauſe more neceſſary for all uſes; *Ut ſine quo non magis quam ſine igne atque aqua vivere Mortales queant:* and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring gold and ſilver into contempt, telling us how the *Utopians* uſe to employ thoſe *Metals*, in making Chamber pots, and Veſſels of more unclean neceſſities; eating and drinking for the moſt part in glaſs or earth. He telleth us alſo how they make chains and fetters of Gold, to hold in their rebellious ſlaves, and Malefactors; how they puniſh infamous perſons by putting Gold Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their ears, and chains of gold about their necks: how they adorn their little children with precious Jewels, which *gayeties* when they come to Age, and ſee them worn by none but ſuch little children, they uſe to caſt away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys leave off without conſtraint their Babies, Cobnuts, and other *Crepundia.* He further telleth us how the Ambaſſadors of the *Anemolii* (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongſt them richly and gorgiouſly attired, were took for ſlaves, by reaſon of their Golden Chains, and the meaneſt of their Followers thought to be the Ambaſſadors: how the elder Boys derided the

ſtrangers

Strangers for wearing jewels, as if they had been children ſtill; and how the People laught at their chains of Gold, as being too weak to ſhackle ſuch ſturdy Fellows. Now though it pleaſed that wiſe State to have any Gold or Silver at all amongſt them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any eſteem which themſelves had of it, but therewith to provide themſelves of Forreign aids, and pay their Armies, when the neceſſities of their affairs, or other reaſon of State did require the ſame. How this device would ſort with the humours of thoſe People whom *Lucian* antiently did Fable, and ſome of later times more reall, do fancy to have their dwelling in the Moon: I am not able to ſay, as having hitherto had no commerce nor correſpondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though poſſibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and finde it to ſort well enough with their condition. Certain I am this ſublunary World of ours will never brook it. And ſo I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of *Peru*: the extraordinary plenty of gold and ſilver which thoſe and the reſt of the *New World*, have furniſhed the *old World* withall, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men, to be the cauſe of the dearneſs of all commodities at the preſent times, compared unto the cheapneſs of the times foregoing: for where much is, there greater prices will be given, then in other places. And yet there want not ſome that add alſo other cauſes, of the high prizes of our days: *viz. Monopolies*, Combinations of Merchants and Craftſmen; *tranſportation* of Grain, pleaſure of great perſonages, the exceſs of private men, and the like: but theſe laſt I rather take to be *con-cauſes*, the firſt being indeed the principal. For, (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savil*, hath it in the end of his notes on *Tacitus*) the exceſſive abundance of τὰ τῦ πόρῳ μείζονα ὄντα, things which conſiſt meerly on the conſtitution of men; draweth neceſſarily τὰ τῦ δεῖν ὄντα, thoſe things which nature requireth, to an higher rate in the Market. *Captâ ab* Auguſto Alexandriâ (ſaith *Oroſius*) Roma *in tantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quam antehac, rerum venalium pretia ſtatuerentur.* As for that queſtion, whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which ſupplieth it ſelf with money, by Traffick and the works of Art; or that which is ſupplied by *Mines* growing, as the gift of nature, I finde it by this tale in part reſolved. Two Merchants departing from *Spain* to get gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buyeth *Moors* to dig and delve with; the other fraughteth his veſſell with *ſheep*: and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines, ſet his ſlaves to work, and the other hapning in graſſie ground, put his ſheep to grazing. The *Slaves* grown cold and hungry, call for food and cloathing; which the ſheep-maſter by the increaſe of his ſtock had in great abundance: ſo that what the one got in gold with toil, charges and hazard both of life and health, he gladly gave unto the other in exchange or Bartery, for the continual ſupply of Victuals, Clothes, and other neceſſaries for himſelf and his ſervants. In the end the Mines being exhauſted, and all the money thence ariſing exchanged with the Shepherd for ſuch neceſſaries as his wants required: home comes the Shepherd in great triumph, with abundance of wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the *Engliſh* and the *Hollanders* by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick, did in concluſion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the ſecond, and out-vied him (as it were) in wealth and treaſure; notwithſtanding his many Mines of Gold and ſilver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicana*, *Guinea*, ſome in *Spain* and *Italy*, and theſe of *Peruana* which now we handle, and which have given occaſion unto this Diſcourſe or Digreſſion rather.

It is now time to take a view of the People alſo, affirmed to be (for the moſt part) of great ſimplicity; yet ſome of them (thoſe ſpecially which lie neer the *Æquator*) to be great diſſemblers, and never to diſcover their *conceptions* freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in the Wars, well skilled in managing ſuch weapons as they had been uſed to, and fearleſs of death; the rather prompted to this laſt by an old opinion held amongſt them, that in the other world they ſhall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great perſon who was attended on in his life, they uſe to kill and bury with him one or more of his ſervants to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living much like the *Jews*; but not in habit: conform therein to the other *Savages*, but that thoſe cover their upper parts with ſome decent garment, and leave the other Members bare. But this is only neer the *Æquator*; both Sexes elſwhere wearing Mantles to their very *Heels*. Habited in one faſhion over all the Country, except the dreſſing of their heads, wherein ſcarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his faſhion to himſelf. The *Women* leſs eſteemed here then in other places, treated as *Slaves*, and ſometimes cruelly beaten upon ſlight occaſions: the men (as *S. Paul* ſaith of the ancient *Gentiles*) leaving *the natural uſe of the woman, and burning in their luſts towards one another.* For which if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that *recompenſe which was meet.*

Rivers of moſt note 1 *S. Jago*, on the borders towards *Popayana*; a River of a violent courſe, and ſo great a depth, that it is 180 Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2 *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over againſt the Iſle of *Puna*, on the further ſide of the *Æquator*; an Iland of twelve Leagues in compaſs, and exceeding fruitfull. 3 *Guagaquil*, of a longer courſe then any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur* on the South of *Tombez*; over againſt the Iſle of *Lobos*. No Iland after this of note upon all this Coaſt. If any come in our way which runneth towards the Eaſt, we ſhall meet with them in the view of the ſeveral Provinces; and ſo we ſhall of the Hills or Mountains which are moſt conſiderable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to loſe themſelves; in compaſs 80 Leagues, and uſually Navigable with ſhips and barks. The waters of it not ſo ſalt as thoſe of the ſea, but ſo thick that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many habitations, as good as any in *Peru*. By a fair water courſe or River it paſſeth into a leſs *Lake*, which they call *Aulaga*, and thence moſt probably

bably findeth a way into the Sea, or elſe is ſwallowed in the Bowels of that thirſty earth; but the firſt more likely.

It is divided commonly into three *Juridical Reſorts*, *viz.* of 1 *Quito*, 2 *Lima*, and 3 *Charcos*; each having under it many ſeveral and ſubordinate Provinces; too many and of too ſmall note to be here conſidered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greateſt reckoning, 1 *Quito*, 2 *Los Quixos*, 3 *Lima*, 4 *Cuſco*, 5 *Charcos*, and 6 *Collao*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the midlands; to which the Ilands of it ſhall be joyned in the cloſe of all.

1. *QUITO* is bounded on the North with *Popayan*, on the Weſt with *Mare del Zur*; on the South with the Province of *Lima*, and on the Eaſt with that of *Los Quixos*. So named from *Quito* the chief Town and Province of the firſt diviſion.

The ſoil as fertile and as fit for the fruits of *Europe*, as any other in *Peru*: well ſtored with Cattell, eſpecially the *Pacos* or *Peruvian* ſheep; and plentifully furniſhed both with Fiſh and Fowl. In many parts great ſtore of *Nitre*, of which they make moſt approved good *Gunpowder*: and in ſome Rivers, eſpecially that of S. *Barbara*, many veins of Gold. The people generally induſtrious, eſpecially in the making of Cloth of *Cotton*, equal almoſt to ſilks for fineneſs; of *conſtitution* ſtrong and healthy; but given to lying, drinking and ſuch other vices: with which they are ſo much in love that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the *Chriſtian* Faith, nor willingly reclaimed from their ancient *Barbariſm*. Extreamly puniſhed with the *Pox*, an hereditary diſeaſe amongſt them; the very Girls and untouched *Virgins* ſo infected with it, that neither *Tobacco*, *Guajacan*, nor *Sarſa-parilla*, all which this Country doth afford in a great abundance, is able to preſerve them from it.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Carangues*, a large and ſumptuous *Palace* of the ancient Kings, ſo named becauſe ſituate in the Territory of the *Carangues*, a barbarous, bloody, and man-eating people; ſubdued by *Guayanacapa*, one of the mightieſt of the Kings of *Peru*; from whom revolting, and withall killing many of his Miniſters and Garriſon-Souldiers, they were upon a ſecond conqueſt brought to the banks of a great *Lake* into which 20000 of them being killed, were thrown. The *Lake* from thenceforth called *Yaguarcocha* or the Lake of blood. 2 *Otavallu*, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferiour to the other; yet giving name unto the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth. 3 *Quito*, the chief of this Reſort, and once the *Regal* ſeat of its proper Kings (till made ſubject by *Guayanacapa* before mentioned) the ruines of whoſe *Palace* are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called S. *Franciſco*, built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the *Equinoctial*, well fortified, and as well furniſhed with *Ammunition*: inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards* beſides the Natives. The ſtreets whereof ſtrait and broad: the buildings decent: the principal of which, the *Cathedral* Church, the Courts of Juſtice, and two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a *Flaming* Mountain, or *Vulcano*; which in the year 1560 caſt out ſuch abundance of cinders, that if a rain had not hapned beyond expectation, had made great ſpoil upon the place. 4 *Tacunga* fifteen Leagues from *Quito*; and 5 *Rhiobamba* in the Territory of the *Purvaſii*, 40 Leagues from that; each of them honoured with another of thoſe ancient Palaces. 6 *Thomebamba* neighboured by another of the Kings *Palaces*, but more magnificent then the former; ſituate in the Country of the *Canares*: amongſt whom anciently the *Women* tilled the Land, and did all without doors; whiles the Men ſtaid at home and ſpun, and attended houſewifry. 7 *Cuenca* 64 Leagues from *Quito*, on another Road, ſituate in a Country full of *Gold*, Silver, Braſs, Iron, and veins of *Sulphur*. 8 *Loxa*, ſixteen Leagues ſouthwards of *Cuenca*, ſituate in the fift Degree of *Southern* Latitude, and in a ſweet and pleaſant Valley called *Guxibamba*, between two fine Riverets. The Citizens well furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, but not otherwiſe wealthy. 9 *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on the Eaſt of *Loxa*; and 10 *Jaen*, 35 from that: both ſituate in the Province of *Quachimayo*, and both ſo called in reference to two Cities of thoſe names in *Spain*: Then on the Sea coaſts, there are, 11 *Portus Vetus* (*Puerto Veio* as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea-ſide, but in ſo ill an Air that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the firſt Towns of this Country poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up hereabouts the bones of a monſtrous Giant; whoſe Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12 *Mantu* the Port Town to *Porto Veio*, from whence the trade is driven betwixt *Panuma* and *Peru*; the town it ſelf ſituate in a rich vein of *Emeralds*. 13 *Guayaquill*, or *S. Jago de Guayaquil*, called alſo *Gulata*; ſeated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, neer the influx of the River *Guayaquil*; a noted and much frequented Empory. 14 *Caſtro*, a Colonie of *Spaniards* planted, *An.* 1568 in that part of this Country which they call *Provincia de los Eſmeraldos*, bordering on *Popayan*. 15 *S. Michael*, by the old Natives called *Piura*, the firſt Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation. 16 *Payta*, a ſmall Town, but neighboured by the ſafeſt and moſt frequented Haven of all this Country; as guarded from the winde by the Cape of *S. Helens* on the North, and *Punta Piurina* on the South; two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt *An.* 1587. by Capt. *Cavendiſh*; Who at the ſame time alſo pillaged the Iſle of *Puna*, the moſt noted Iland of this Tract, ſituate in the Bay of *Tombez*, as was ſaid before. Fruitfull of all things neceſſary to the life of man; *Parats* for pleaſure, *Sarzaparilla* for his health. The people in preceding times ſo ſtout and Warlike that they maintained a long War with thoſe of *Tombez*, till in the end compoſed by the mediation of the King of *Peru* (to whom the King hereof (for a King it had) became an Homager; as ſince their embracing of the Goſpel, to the Kings of *Spain*.

2 *LOS QUIXOS*, lieth on the East of *Quito*, and the west of *El Dorada*, (one of the Cantreds of *Guiana*, so called from its abundance of Gold) but little different in the nature of the soil and people from the Province of *Quito*, but that this is somewhat the more barren, and less stored with those rich metals which the *Spaniards* come for. The People have also a distinct tongue of their own, though they both understand and speak the *Peruvian* language.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Baeza*, built in the year 1559. (which was within two years of the first discovery of this Region) by *Giles Ramirez de Avila*; 18 leagues from *Quito* towards the East: now the seat of the Governour. 2 *Archidona*, 20 leagues on the the South-east of *Baeza*. 3 *Avila*, on the North of *Archidona*; so called with reference to *Ramirez de Avila* before mentioned, or to a Town of that name in *Spain*. 4 *Sevilla del Oro*, a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, as the others are.

On the East of this Province lieth the Cantred of *Canelam*, inhabited by a blockish and ignorant People, and destitute of all things necessary for the comforts of life. Most mercilesly tormented, and cast to dogs to be devoured, by *Pizarro*, because they could not shew him the readiest way to some richer Country then their own; this being the most barren Region of that part of *Peru* which they call *La Sierra*, or the *Hill-Countries*. More Eastwards yet in that part which they call the *Andes*, lie the Cantreds of the *Bracomori*, commonly called *Juan de Salinas*, by the name of the first Discoverer of it: A Country not inferior unto many for the quantity of Gold, superior to any for the pureness of it. Chief Towns of which, 1 *Valladolit*, 2 *Loiola*, by the Natives called *Cumbinama*; 3 S. *Jago de las Montannas* (or S. *James* of the *Mountains*) all *Spanish* Colonies; and all of the foundation of *John de Salinis à Loiola*, once the *Pro-Prefect* of the Province, by whom first thorowly subdued to the Crown of *Spain*.

3 *LIMA*, called also *LOS REYES*, is bounded on the North with *Quito*, on the South with *Charcas*, on the West with *Mare del Zur*, on the East with *Collao* and the Province of *Cusco*. So named from *Lima* or *Los Reyes*, the chief City of it. Extended from the 6. to the 16. Degree of *Southern Latitude*: or measuring it from the Promontorie *del Aguja* North, to *Arequipa* on the South, it reacheth to 250 leagues. The soil of the same nature with that of *Quito*, but more distributed into Vallies, and better peopled.

Places of most observation, 1 *Miraflores* in the valley of *Zanu*, 110 leagues on the North of *Lima*, and about five leagues distant from the Sea, on which it hath an Haven belonging to it, called *Chencepen*. The Town well seated, and inhabited by a wealthy people, made such by the abundance of *Sugar canes* in the neighbouring Valley. 2 *Truxillo*, in the rich and flourishing Valley of *Chimo*, on the banks of a small, but pleasant River, and about two leagues from the sea; where it hath a large, but unsafe Haven, which they call *El Azzecife de Trugillo*. The Town it self situate in the 7. Degree and 30 minutes of *Southern* Latitude: well built and rich, one of the principal of *Peru*; inhabited by 1500 *Spaniards* besides the Natives, and beautified with four *Convents* of several Orders. 3 *La Parilla*, in the valley of the *Santa*, in which it standeth, and by which it is furnished with a safe and convenient Road for shipping; 20 leagues Southwards of *Truxillo*, and neighboured by rich Mines of silver not long since discovered. 4 *Arnedo*, seated amongst Vineyards in the Valley of *Chancay*, ten leagues North of *Lima*. 5 *Lima*, by the *Spaniards* called *Cividad de los Reyes*, or the City of *Kings*, situate in the Valley of *Lima*, the most fruitful part of all *Peru*, in the *Latitude* of twelve Degrees and an half. Built with much art, for all the chief streets answer to the Market-place; scarce any private house which hath not water conveyed into it from the River; environed round about with sweet fields, and most pleasant gardens. The founder of it *Francisco Pizarro*, who laid the first stone on *Twelf* day (which the *Spaniards* call the *Feast* of *Kings*) whence it had the name, *An.* 1553. A Town of greater wealth then bigness, the Riches of *Peru* passing yearly thorow it: well housed, whether we respect the private or publike edifices: the *Cathedral* Church, made after the the model of that of *Sevil*; the *Convents* of Religious Orders, the *Courts* of Justice, and the *Palaces* of the Archbishop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly buildings; the Cathedral Church so well endowed, that the Revenues of the Archbishop do amount yearly to 30000 *Ducats*, besides what belongeth to the *Canons* and other Ministers. 6 *Collao*, the Haven town to *Lima*, from which two leagues distant: a Town of 600 families, for the most part Sea-men; every house having some Cellar in it for the stowage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, &c. for the use of Mariners; besides those, publike ware-houses for the several commodities which pass from *Lima* hither, or from hence to *Lima*. Unfortified till the year 1579. when sacked and spoiled of infinite treasures by Sir *Francis Drake*; since that time strengthened by two *Bulwarks*, and a wall of earth, with 30 peece of Brass Ordnance planted on the works. 7 *Pachacama* in the Valley so called, but four leagues on the South of *Lima*: memorable for a Temple, in which *Pizarro* found above 900000 *Ducats* of gold and silver, not reckoning in those infinite treasures which the souldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8 *Guarco*, a Colonie of 300 *Spaniards*, sixteen leagues on the South of *Pachacama*; environed with the best fields for Wheat in all *Peru*. 9 *Valverde*, in a Valley of the same name, so called from the perpetual *greenness* of it; best furnished with Vines, and those affording the best wines of all this Country. A large Town, consisting of 500 *Spaniards*, besides women and children, and other inhabitants of the Country: well traded, considering its distance from the Sea, *Puerto Quemado* the Haven to it, being six leagues off; and beautified with a fair Church, an Hospital, three Frieries, and the handsomest women of these parts. Distant from *Lima* 35 leagues. 10 *Castro Verreyna*, in the Valley of *Chocolococha*, 60 leagues from *Lima*, enriched with Mines of the purest Silver, digged out of a dry and barren hill, alwayes covered with snow, and standing in so sharp an air, that the *Spanish* women

women will not be delivered in it, but are carried further off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that vein of *Tobacco*, which our Good-fellows celebrate by the name of the right *Verreinas*. 11 *Arequipa* in the Valley of *Quilca*, 120 leagues from *Lima*, a pleaſing and delightfull town; which ſituate at the foot of a *flaming* mountain, (from which in the year 1600 it received much harm) enjoyeth a freſh and temperate Air, and a ſoil alwayes flouriſhing. The ſilver of *Plata* and *Potoſi* paſſeth thorow this town, and is ſhipped for *Panama*, at an Haven belonging to it, ſituate on the mouth of the River *Chile* (upon which *Arequipa* ſtandeth) but diſtant from the town about 14 leagues. 12 *Caxamalca*, more within the land, but more towards the North; heretofore beautified with a Royal *Palace* of the Kings of *Peru*; memorable for the impriſonment and murder of *Atabilaba*, or *Athnalpa*, the laſt King of this Country, vanquiſhed not far off by *Franciſco Pizarro*. 13 *Cachapoyaro*, in the *Cantred* ſo called, the beſt inhabited of any one *Cantred* of thoſe parts, ſuppoſed to contain in it 20000 of the Natural Inhabitants which pay duties to the Kings of *Spain*; and ſo eſteemed for beautiful women, that from hence the Kings were antiently furniſhed with their *Concubines*. 14 *Leon de Guanuco*, (the addition given it from the Province in which it ſtandeth) a Colonie of *Spaniards*, rich, ſweet, and very pleaſantly ſeated: beautified heretofore with a moſt magnificent Palace of the Kings; as now with ſome *Religious* houſes, a College of *Jeſuites*, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midland Towns there are, but of no great note, and therefore purpoſely paſſed over.

4 *CUSCO* comprehendeth, as the chief, all thoſe ſeveral Provinces of the *Hill-Countries*, and the *Andes*, which lie Southwards of the Province or *Cantred* of *Guanaco*. Bleſt with a ſweet and temperate Air, not over-ſcalded with the Sun, nor dulled with the diſtempers of the *Evening*-miſts: the Country full of freſh Rivers, notable good paſturage and great herds of Cattel; well ſtored with *Coca*, which is gathered here in ſome abundance, and moſt excellent Veniſon.

Places of moſt repute in it, 1 *Bombon*, in the ſame Latitude with *Lima*; neighboured by a Lake called *Laguna de Chinca cocha*, ten leagues in compaſs, begirt about with pleaſant hils, and built upon with many rich and as pleaſant villages; out of which runneth the River *Marannon*, one of the greateſt of theſe parts, ſuppoſed by the Inhabitants to end his courſe in the *Mare del Noort*. 2 *Parcos*, once beautified with a Regal *Palace*, ſeated on the top of a little hill, and begirt about with craggie mountains. 3 *Guamanga*, by the *Spaniards* called S. *Juan de la Vittoria*, ſituate under the 13 Degree of *Southern* Latitude, on the banks of a freſh and pleaſing ſtream: well built, the houſes being all of ſtone, and tiled or flatted; three Churches, one of them a *Cathedral*, beſides divers Convents. 4 *Bilcar*, ſuppoſed to be built in the very Center of *Peru*; where ſtill remain the ruines of a ſumptuous Palace. 5 *Guancabelica*, a new Town, or but newly raiſed into eſteem, ſuppoſed to contain at the preſent 2000 *Spaniards*, and double that number of the *Natives*. Increaſed ſince the year 1566. from a beggerly Village to this greatneſs, by the Mines of *Quick-ſilver* then diſcovered: *Mines* of ſuch Riches, that the Kings part out of them amounteth yearly to above 40000 *Pezoes*, which is about 130000 l. of our *Engliſh* money. And yet this is not all the benefit he receives from them neither; that *Mineral* being found ſo neceſſary for the purifying and ſpeedy extraction of their *Gold*, that it is not ſaid without cauſe by the *Chymiſts*, that *Quick-ſilver gives the matter to* Gold, *and Sulphur the form*. 6 *CUSCO*, in the *Latitude* of 13 Degrees and 30 minutes, about 130 leagues on the Eaſt of *Lima*; and ſituate in a rugged and unequal ſoil, begirt with Mountains; but on both ſides of a pleaſant and commodious River. Once the ſeat-royal of the *Ingas* or *Peruvian* Kings; who the more to beautifie this City, commanded every one of his *Nobility* to build here a *Palace* for their continual abode: ſtill of moſt credit in this Country, both for beauty and bigneſs, and the multitudes of Inhabitants; here being thought to dwell 3000 *Spaniards*, and 10000 of the *Natives*, beſides women and children. The *Palace* of the Kings advanced on a lofty mountain, was held to be a work of ſo great magnificence, built of ſuch huge and maſſie ſtones, that the *Spaniards* thought it to have been the work rather of devils then of men. Now miſerably defaced, moſt of the ſtones being tumbled down to build private houſes in the City; ſome of the Churches raiſed alſo by the ruines of it, and amongſt them perhaps both the Biſhops Palace and *Cathedral*, whoſe annual Rents are eſtimated at 20000 *Ducats*. Yet did not this vaſt Building yield more luſtre to the City of *Cuſco*, then a ſpacious *Market-place*; the *Center* in which thoſe highwayes did meet together, which the *Ingas* had cauſed to be made croſs the Kingdom, both for length and breadth, with moſt incredible charge and pains, for the uſe of their Subjects. Of which more hereafter. 7 S. *Franciſco de la Vittoria*, at the foot of the *Andes*, a *Spaniſh* Colonie, and about 20 leagues from *Cuſco*. 8 S. *Juan del Oro*, in the Valley of *Caruayan*, neighboured with rich Mines of the pureſt Gold, whence it had the name; a Colonie of *Spaniards* alſo. Beyond the *Andes* lie ſome Countries much famed for wealth; the diſcovery whereof hath often been attempted by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes with loſs, not ſeldom with ſome hopes of a better fortune, but hitherto without ſucceſs.

5 *COLLAO* lieth on the South of thoſe Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Cuſco*; having on the Weſt the reſt of *Lima*, on the South *Los Charchos*, on the Eaſt thoſe unknown Countries beyond the *Andes*. Shut up on the Eaſt and Weſt by two mountainous Ridges; which keeping in one main body till they come beyond the City of *Cuſco*, do there divide themſelves, and grow wider and wider, not to meet again.

The Country plain and full of Rivers; well ſtored with rich paſtures, and thoſe paſtures with great herds of Cattel: barren of Corn, and not well furniſhed with *Maize*; inſtead whereof they make their bread of a Root called *Popa*, dried in the ſun and bruiſed to powder; of which the *Spaniards* make

great gain at the Mines of *Potosi*. Yet notwithstanding this great want, it is thought to be the most populous part of all *Peru*; the soundness and temperature of the Air (which is here very much commended) as much conducing to the populositie of a Country as the richness and plenties of the Soyl. The people also of a clearer and more solid judgement then the rest of *Peru*: and so well skilled in the observations of the course of the *Moon*, that the *Spaniards* at their coming hither, found the year distinguished into *Moneths*, weeks, dayes; for each of which they had a proper and significant name. The famous Lake of *Titicaca* is within this Province.

Places of greatest note in it, 1 *Chuquinga*, naturally strong and almost inaccessible, invironed either with unfordable waters, or impassable Mountains: one *Causey* only leading to it, which for the space of three Leagues, is said to be capable but of one at once. 2 *Ayavire*, enobled with many fair and costly buildings; specially with *Monuments* of the dead which exceed the rest both in cost and number: for that cause by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sepulturas*. The Inhabitants of this Tract much wasted by the *Civil* Wars which the *Spaniards* had amongst themselves. 3 *Hatuncolla* the *Metropolis* or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth signifie: not far from which the famous River *Caravaya*, famous for the abundance of *Gold* in the sands thereof, hath its first original. 4 *Chiquita*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the banks of the Lake of *Titicaca*; a Town of so great trade and riches, that the Governour hereof is named immediatly by the King; his place being estimated at the worth of 50000 *Ducats* yeerly. 5 *Tiaguanaco*, at the mouth or out-let of that Lake; supposed to be the most ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now most remarkable for the ruines of certain great and stupendious buildings, some of the stones whereof are said to be 30 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and six in thickness: not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines (which this People had not till of late) but by some strange Arts. 5 *De la Paz*, or *Nuestra Sennora de la Paz*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Pueblo Neuvo*, and by the Natives *Chiquiabo*, according to the name of the *Cantred* in which it standeth, is situate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of winde and weather; but over-looking a large plain of great fertility, well watered, and well wooded both for fruits and fewell. 7 *Chilane*, 8 *Acos*, 9 *Pomata*, 10 *Cepita*; and others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima*, and *Collao*; on the South with *Chile*; on the West with *Mare del Zur*; on the East with some Countries not yet well discovered, interposed betwixt it and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. This also called by the name of *Plata*, according to the name of the chief City of it.

The Country extended in length from North to South, but 300 Leagues; but measuring by the Sea-shores, above 400. Not very rich in corn or cattel, though in many places furnished with good Pasture-grounds; but for the inexhaustible Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, not to be equalled in *Peru*. Of these the principal those of *Porco* and *Potosi*, but these last the chief: out of which comes that mass of *Silver*, which yieldeth the King so much profit yeerly, as before was mentioned. The *Mine* 200 Fathoms deep, to which they do descend by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800 steps: some of the workmen not seeing the Sun many moneths together; many fall down with their loads of silver on their backs, pulling others after them; and many dying in the Works for want of Air. For the refining of this *Silver* there are 52 *Engines* or *Silver-Mills* upon a River neer unto it; 22 more in the Valley of *Tarapia* not far off, besides many which they turn with horses. The Poets words never more literally verified then in these deep *Mines*; where speaking of the *Iron-Age*, he describes it thus;

Nec tantum segetes, alimentaque debita dives
Poscebatur humus; sed itum est in viscera terræ;
Quasque recondiderat, Stygiisque admoverat umbris,
Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.

Which I finde thus rendred by *George Sandys*.

Nor with rich Earths just nourishments content,
For treasure they her secret entrails *rent.*
That powerfull evil, which all power invades,
By her well hid, and wrapt in Stygian *shades.*

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Plata*, so called from the rich Mines of Silver, found in Mount *Porco* neer adjoyning, well emptied by the ancient *Ingas*, but searched into again by *Francisco Pizarro*, who (it is thought) might have raised hence 200000 Ducats of yeerly income, if hopes of greater at *Potosi* had not took him off. The town commodiously seated in a fruitfull soil, in the 19th. Degreee of *Latitude*, and 180 Leagues distant from the City of *Cusco*; honoured with the seat of the Governour, and the *Courts* of Justice; and beautified (besides many Religious houses) with a fair *Cathedral*; the See of the best endowed Bishoprick of all *Peru*; his *Revenues* being estimated at 80000 *Ducats* of yeerly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Chuquisacay*. 2 *Oropesa*, twenty Leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francis de Toledo*, when Vice-Roy here, in the rich and pleasant Valley called *Cochabamba*, An. 1565. 3 *Potosi*, neighboured by those wealthy Mines already mentioned. Discovered first in the year 1545. before which time this Town was but a sorry Village; now the best peopled and frequented in all the Province; said to be constantly inhabited by four or five thousand *Spaniards*, many more of the *Natives*;

Natives; not ſo few as 30000 VVorkmen appertaining to it, but lodged in the Villages adjoyning: beſides the infinite reſort of *Merchants* in purſuit of profit, and idle *Gallants* who come hither for their Luſts and Pleaſures. Situate in the 21 degree and 40 Minutes of *Southern* Latitude, in a cold and very barren ſoil; yet plentifully furniſhed with all commodities, both for neceſſity and delight. For as the money is, ſo the *Market* always. 4 *Miſque*, a ſmall Town, but one which furniſheth *Potoſia*, with good plenty of wine, as 5 *Lagunilla*, and 6 *Tarixa*, do with VVheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of fruits. 7 *Arica*, the moſt noted *Haven* of this Country, in the *Latitude* of 19 Degrees, and 80 Leagues or thereabouts from the Mines of *Potoſia*; the wealth whereof brought hither on the backs of their ſheep, is here ſhipped for *Lima*; the truth hereof experienced by Sir *Francis Drake*, who ſeized here on three *Spaniſh* Ships, in one of which was 57 Bars of ſilver, each of them twenty pound weight apiece. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this coaſt, which is altogether Rockie, barren, and unfit for habitation; accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* ſtory, which we ſhall ſum up with as much brevity as we can: The People generally governed by the *Chief* of their *Tribes*, as in all Countries elſe where neither the Arms of Forreiners, nor the ambition of ſome few of the Natives, had not diminiſhed any thing of thoſe *Natural* Rights. Not ſubject to any one *Supream* till theſe latter times; the *Ingas*, or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatneſs but a little before their Fall. Their Territory at the firſt ſo ſmall that it was not above five or ſix Leagues in compaſs; ſituate in that part of the Country where the City of *Cuſco* now ſtandeth. Oppoſed at their firſt incroachments by the *Cannares*, a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Ingas* had not helped themſelves by a piece of wit: giving it out, that their Family had not only been the *Seminary* from which mankinde came; but the Authors of that Religion alſo which was then in uſe; particularly that the whole world having been deſtroyed by a Flood, except only ſeven (ſo far they hit upon the truth) which ſeven had hid themſelves in a Cave called *Paticambo*; where having lived in ſafety till the fury of the waters had been aſſwaged, they came abroad at laſt and re-peopled the Country; that *Viracocha* the Creator, and great God of Nature had appeared to one of them, and taught him how, and with what rites he would be worſhipped; which rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*. And finally that the ſame *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the *chief* of their Family; aſſuring him that he would aid him with inviſible forces againſt all their enemies. This tale ſoon gained belief amongſt thoſe *Barbarians*; and that belief drew many to take part with the *Ingas*, by that aid victorious. This is ſuppoſed to have hapned 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an end to this flouriſhing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. VVithin which time they had brought all this Country which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoyning Provinces under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Ingas*, as the *Ægyptians Pharaoh*, the *Tartars Cham*; the word *Inga* ſignifying an *Emperour*, as *Capa Ingas* (by which they alſo ſometimes called them) the *only Emperours*. Much reverenced by their Subjects, and ſo faithfully ſerved, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of *Treaſon*. Nor wanted they good arts whereby to *indeer* their Subjects, and keep them out of leiſure to foment new factions. The way of *indeerment*, by the fair and ſatisfactory diſtribution of the ſpoils gotten in the wars, whether Lands or Goods: all which they divided into three parts: allotting the firſt unto the ſervice of the Gods; the ſecond for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third to the relief of the common people. A diſtribution far more equal then that of *Lycurgus*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cauſe of wars, they kept the people buſied in their Works of *Magnificence*; as building *Palaces* in every one of the *Conquered* Provinces, which ſerved not only as *Forts* to aſſure the Conqueſt, but were employed as *Store-houſes* to lay up Proviſions, diſtributed amongſt the people in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of great trouble, ſo of chiefeſt uſe, was the croſs-wayes they made over all the Country, the one upon the *Mountains*, and the other on the *Plains*, extending 500 Leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome* and *Ægypt*. For they were forced to raiſe the ground in many places to the heighth of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flatteſt *Plains*; to cut thorow ſome Rocks, and underprop others that were ruinous; to make even ſuch wayes as were uneaſie, and ſupport the *Precipices*: and in the *Plains* to vanquiſh ſo many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a ſandy Country muſt needs carry with it. Kept to theſe tasks, the people had no leiſure to think of practiſes: yet well content to undergo them, in regard they ſaw it tended to the *Publike Benefit*. And for the *Caciques* (ſo they call the *Nobility*) the *Inga* did not only command them to reſide in *Cuſco*, to be aſſured of their perſons: but cauſed them to ſend their *Children* to be brought up there; that they might ſerve as *Hoſtages* for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered alſo that all ſuch as repaired to *Cuſco* the Imperial City, ſhould be attired according to his own Country faſhion; ſo to prevent thoſe *Leagues* and *Aſſociations*, which otherwiſe without any note or obſervation might be made amongſt them. Many ſuch *Politike* Inſtitutions were by them deviſed, which had little of the *Barbarous* in them, and clearly ſhewed that there were other Nations which had *Eyes in their Heads* beſides thoſe of *China*. What elſe concerns the ſtorie of them, offereth it ſelf in the following Catalogue of

The Kings of *Peru*.

1. Manga-Capac, *deſcended of the chief of the firſt ſeven Families, the firſt who laid the foundation of this puiſſant Monarchie; ſubdued the* Cannares, *and built the City of* Cuſco.

2. Sinchi-Rocha, *eldeſt ſon of* Mango, *ſubdued a great part of* Collao, *as far as* Chancara.

3. Loque-

3. Loque-Yupanqui, *the ſon of* Sinchi, *conquered* Chiquito, Ayavire, *the* Canus, *and the Inhabitants about* Titicaca, *the firſt advancer of the ſervice of* Viracocha, *from whom he did pretend to have many* viſits.

4. Mayta-Capac, *the ſon of* Yupanqui, *ſubdued all the reſt of* Collao, *the Province of* Chuquiapa, *and a great part of the* Charcas.

5. Capac Yupanqui, *or* Yupanqui II. *the ſon of* Mayta, *enlarged his Kingdom Weſtward unto* Mare del Zur.

6. Rocha II. *or* Yncha Rocha, *eldeſt ſon of* Yupanqui *the ſecond, enlarged his Kingdome towards the North, by the conqueſt of the great Province of* Antabuyallam, *and many others.*

7. Jahuar-Huacac, *ſon of* Rocha *the ſecond, added to his Eſtates (by the valour of his brother* Mayta) *all the Southern parts from* Arequipa *to* Tacaman. *Depoſed by the practiſe of his ſon.*

8. Viracocha, *the ſon of* Huacac, *having ſetled and inlarged his Empire; raiſed many great and ſtately works, and amongſt others many* Aquæducts, *of great uſe but charge. For fear of him,* Hancohualla, *King of the* Chuncas, *with many thouſands of his People forſook their Country.*

9. Pachacutec-Ynca, *ſon of* Virachoca, *improved his Kingdom by the conqueſt of many Provinces lying towards the* Andes, *and South-Sea; with that of* Caxamalcu *Northwards.*

10. Yupanqui III. *or* Yncha Yupanchi, *ſon of* Pachacutec, *ſubdued the* Conches, *and* Moxes, *with ſome part of* Chile.

11. Yupanqui IV. *or* Tapac Ynca Yupanchi, *ſon of* Yupanqui *the third, extended his Dominions as far as* Quito.

12. Huayna-Capac, *or* Guaynacapac, *ſon of* Yupanqui *the fourth, the moſt mighty Monarch of* Peru, *conquered the whole Province of* Quito; *and is ſuppoſed to be the founder of thoſe two great Roads ſpoken of before.*

13. Huaſcar, *or* Guaſcar Ynca, *the eldeſt ſon of* Guaynacapa, *after a reign of five years depoſed and ſlain by his Brother.*

14. Athualpa, *or* Atubaliba, *the third ſon* Guaynacapa, *by the daughter and heir of the King of* Quito: *into which Kingdom he ſucceeded by the will of his Father. Commanded by his Brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of* Quito, *he came upon him with ſuch power, that he overcame him, and ſo gained the Kingdom. Vanquiſhed afterwards by* Pizarro *at the battle of* Caxamalca, *he was taken Priſoner. And though he gave in ranſome for his life and liberty, an houſe piled up on all ſides with Gold and Silver, valued (as ſome ſay) at ten millions of Crowns; yet they perfidiouſly ſlew him.*

1533 15. Mango-Capac II. *the ſecond ſon of* Guaynacapac, *ſubſtituted by* Pizarro *in his Brothers Throne; after many viciſſitudes of Fortune, was at laſt ſlain in the City of* Cuſco; *and ſo the Kingdom of the* Ingas *began and ended in a Prince of the ſame name; as it had happened formerly to ſome other Eſtates.*

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who ſubdued this moſt potent and flouriſhing Kingdom, and made it a member of the *Spaniſh* Empire; and we ſhall find that he was born at *Truſiglio*, a village of *Navarr*; and by the poor whore his mother, laid in the Church-porch, and ſo left to Gods providence: by whoſe direction (there being none found that would give him the breaſt) he was nouriſhed for certain daies, by ſucking a Sow. At laſt, one *Gonſalles*, a ſouldier, acknowledged him for his ſon, put him to nurſe, and when he was ſomewhat grown, ſet him to keep his Swine: ſome of which being ſtrayed, the boy durſt not for fear return home, but betook himſelf to his heels, ran unto *Sevil*, and there ſhipped himſelf for *America*; where he attended *Alfonſo de Dioda* in the diſcovery of the Countries beyond the Golf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his voyage to the South Sea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the conqueſt of *Panama*. Grown rich by theſe Adventures, he aſſociated himſelf with *Diego de Almagro*, and *Fernando Luques* a rich Prieſt: who betwixt them raiſed 220 ſouldiers, and in the year 1525. went to ſeek their Fortunes on thoſe Southern Seas, which *Balboa* had before diſcovered. After divers repulſes at his landing, and ſome hardſhip which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took ſome of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the wealth of the Country; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commiſſion for the conqueſt of it; excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furniſhed he landeth in *Peru* again, at ſuch time as the wars grew hot betwixt the two Brethren for the Kingdom; and taking part with the faction of *Guaſcar*, marched againſt *Atubaliba*; whom he met with in the Plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a parley, then to fight a Battel. *Pizarro* taking this advantage, picked a quarrel with him, and ſuddenly charged upon him with his Horſe and Ordnance, ſlaying his Guard without reſiſtance; and coming near the Kings perſon (who was then carryed on mens ſhoulders) pulled him down by the Clothes,

Clothes, and took him Priſoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 80000 *Caſtellans*; and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 *Marks* (every *Mark* weighing eight ounces) of his houſhold Plate; and in the ſpoil of *Caxamalca*, almoſt infinite riches. This, with the Kings ranſom, came to ſo great a ſumme, that beſides the fift part which *Pizarro* ſent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his Brethren kept unto themſelves; every Footman had 7200 *Ducats*, and every Horſeman twice as much, for their part of the ſpoyl; beſides what they had gotten in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miſerable King, their Priſoner, hath been ſhewn already. Upon which Act, though they put many fair pretences; yet God declared that he was not pleaſed with their proceedings; few of the greateſt undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro* in reward of ſo great a ſervice was made the firſt Viceroy of *Peru*, and created Marqueſs of *Anatilla*; yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief companion, who had raiſed a ſtrong faction in that State; he was after ſlain at *Lima*, by ſome of that faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befell all the reſt; his brother *John* ſlain by the *Peruvians*, *Martin*, in *Lima* with himſelf; *Ferdinando* ſecretly made away in priſon; and finally *Gonſales* the fourth Brother (with the ſon of *Almagro*) ſeverally executed for their Treaſons and Inſurrections which they had acted in this Country againſt their King. So little joy doth wealth ill-gotten bring along with it, to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whoſe ſtrange both fortunes and misfortunes in the courſe of his life, are to be paralelled only with the like of *Sinan*, a great *Baſſa* in the Court of *Selimus* the firſt; who being born of baſe parentage, as he being a child was ſleeping in the ſhade, had his genitals bitten off by a *Sow*. The *Turkiſh* Officers which uſually provided yong boyes for the ſervice of the *Grand Signieur*, being in *Epyrus* (for that was *Sinans* Country) and hearing of this ſo extraordinary an Eunuch; took him among others, along with them to the Court; where under *Mahomet* the great, *Bajazet* the ſecond, and his ſon *Selimus*, he ſo exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief *Baſſa* of the Court; and ſo well deſerved it, that he was accounted *Selimus* right hand, and was indeed the man, to whoſe valour eſpecially, the *Turks* owe their Kingdom of *Ægypt*; in which Kingdom, then not fully ſetled, he was alſo ſlain.

But to return unto *Peru*, no queſtion but the *Forces* and *Revenues* of it were exceeding great. For though we find no particular muſters which they made of their men; or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field; yet by their great ſucceſſes, and many victories, we may conclude them to be maſters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of conduct. Nor can we otherwiſe conjecture at the greatneſs of their yearly *income*, but by the greatneſs of their treaſure; ſo infinite and almoſt incredible, that all the Veſſels of the Kings houſe, his Table, and Kitchin were of Gold and Silver; *Statues* of Giants in his Wardrope, together with the reſemblances in proportion and bigneſs, of all the Beaſts, Birds, Trees, Plants, and Fiſhes, which were found in that Kingdom, of the pureſt Gold; Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, Cheſts, all of Gold or Silver; Billets of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Billets of Wood cut out for the fire; three houſes full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, beſides infinite other treaſures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew ſo wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an horſe, 60 Crowns for a ſmall Veſſel of Wine, and forty for a pair of Shooes: Conſuming all upon their Luſts, and ſacrificing their *Gods of Gold* to their *God the Belly*.

OF

OF

CHILE.

CHILE is bounded on the North with the *Deſart* of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in length, interpoſed betwixt it and *Peru*: on the Weſt with *Mare del Zur*: on the South with the Streits of *Magellan*; and on the Eaſt as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main Atlantick; the Countries lying on the Eaſt betwixt it and *Paragnay*, not yet well diſcovered.

This Country lyeth wholly beyond the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, by conſequence in the *temperate Zone*: extended in length from the borders of *Peru*, to the mouth of the *Streits*, 500 Leagues, but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile*, from the word *Chil* (which in more tongues then ours doth ſignifie as much as cold) from the extream coldneſs of the Aire and Clime; ſo vehement here in our Summer *Solſtice*, that many times both the Horſes and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardned like a piece of *Marble*.

The ſoil hereof in the midland parts Mountainous and unfruitfull; towards the Sea-ſide, levell, fertile, and watered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: productive of *Maize*, Wheat, and moſt excellent paſturage; plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, ſtore of Cattel, and Wine enough for the uſe of the people; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* proſpering here exceedingly; as do alſo all the Fruits and Plants which are ſent from hence into this Country. The people very tall and warlike, ſome of them of a *Gigantine* ſtature, affirmed (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high; yet well conditioned with this greatneſs, where not much provoked. Their garments of the skins of Beaſts, their Arms Bow and Arrows: white of complexion, but as *hirſute* and ſhaggie-haired, as the reſt of the *Salvages*.

Rivers of note there are not any but what will fall within the view of its ſeveral Provinces: Divided commonly into 1 *Chile*, ſpecially ſo called, and 2 *Magellanica*.

1. *CHILE* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the North with the Deſart of *Alacama*; on the South with *Magellanica*; on the Weſt with *Mare del Zur*; and on the Eaſt with ſome unknown Countries, lying betwixt it and *Paragnay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*, not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reaſon of the name, together with the nature of the ſoyl and people, we have ſeen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontorie near the influx of it, in the Northern borders of this Province. 2 *Rio de Coquimbo*, 3 *La Ligua*, 4 *Topocalma*, 5 *Cacapool*, 6 *Canten*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*; and beſides theſe, a nameleſs, but more famous River, which in the day time runneth with a violent current, and in the night hath no water at all. The reaſon of it is, becauſe this River having no conſtant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the *Snow* falling from the Mountains; which in the heat of the day melted into water, is precipitately carryed into the Sea; but congealed in the coldneſs of the night, yields no water at all, whereby the Channel becometh empty.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Copiapo*, giving name to a fertile Valley, in the moſt Northern tract hereof; and neighboured by a ſmall, but commodious Haven. 2 *Serena*, a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from the influx of *Rio de Coquimbo*, on whoſe banks it is ſeated; where built by *Baldivia* the Conquerour and firſt Governour of this Province, *An.* 1544. The territory round about it rich in Mines of Gold: the Town it ſelf of 200 houſes, but ſo well peopled, that at the landing of ſome of the *Engliſh* under Captain *Drake*, they preſently ſent out 300 Horſe and 200 Foot to compell them back unto their ſhips, which they did accordingly. 3 S. *Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 houſes in it) becauſe the *Reſidence* of the Governour, and the *Courts* of Juſtice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and ſome Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers; ſituate in the 34 Degree of *Southern* Latitude, on the banks of the River *Topacalma*; at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val paraiſo*, the beſt and moſt noted of this Country; out of which the *Engliſh* under *Drake* took a *Spaniſh* ſhip, and therein 25000 *Pezos* of the pureſt Gold, beſides other Commodities. 4 *Conception*, 70 Leagues on the South of *S. Jago*, ſituate on the ſhores of a large and capacious Bay (by the Natives called *Penco*) by which and the mountains on all ſides ſo ſtrongly fenced, that the Governour when diſtreſſed by the *Savages* (as ſometimes they are) retireth hither for his ſafety. Well fortified in ſuch places as are acceſſible, and garriſoned with 500 ſouldiers, beſides the Townſmen. Oppoſite hereunto lyeth the Iſle of *S. Marie*, ſo near the ſhore, that it ſeems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea; fruitful, and very well provided of Swine and Poultrie, but the people ſo in fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Conception*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5 *Auracona* (ſo I think they call it) a ſtrong Fortreſs in the Country of the *Auracans*, the moſt potent Nation of theſe parts, who weary of the *Spaniſh* yoke, revolted againſt *Baldivia*, overcame him in a ſet fight, and at laſt killed him: this piece being thereupon forſaken, & of no more uſe. 6 *De los Confines*, built by *Baldivia* in the borders of the Country of thoſe *Auracans*, to ſerve for a defence to the Mines of *Ongol* near adjoyning:

joyning: distant from the Sea shores about 18 Leagues, enlarged by *Garsias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Villa Nueva de los infantes*. 7 *Imperiale*, in the 38 Degree and 40 Minutes of *Southern* Latitude, situate on the banks of the River *Cauten*, an Episcopal See, and the best Fortress of the *Spaniards* in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colonie of *Spaniards* in the year 1551. and by *Baldivia* called *Al Imperiale*, because they found an *Eagle* with *two heads* made in wood, on the doors of their houses; a monument perhaps of some *Germans*, who had here been shipwrackt. A Town of so great wealth and power before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a war betwixt them and the *Araucans*, spoken of before, they are said to have brought into the field 300000 men. 8 *Villa Rica*, another Colonie of *Spaniards*, 16 Leagues on the South-east of *Imperiale*, and 25 Leagues from the shores of *Mare del Zur*. 9 *Baldivia*, the most noted Town of all these parts, situate in the Valley of *Guadallanguen*, in the Latitude of 40 Degrees or thereabouts: adorned with a safe and capacious *Haven*, and neighboured by *Mines* of Gold of such infinite riches, that *Baldivia* (by whom built for defence of those Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each single workman, 25000 Crowns a man, and sometimes more. Sacked by the *Savages* An. 1599. since repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10 *Osorno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chilve*, (or *Ancud*, as the *Savages* call it) situate in a barren soyl, but well stored with *Gold*, and thought to be more populous then *Valdivia* it self. 11 *Castro*, the most Southern Town of all this Province, in the *Latitude* of 44. built in a large and fruitful Iland of the Bay of *Ancud*, said to be 50 Leagues in length, but the breadth unequal; in some parts nine, in others not above two Leagues. 12 *S. Juan de la Frontera*, on the further side of the *Andes*, towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong also certain Ilands lying on the coasts and shores hereof. 1 *S. Marie's*, spoken of before. 2 *Mocha*, upon the South of that, five Leagues from the Continent, fruitful of grain, and very good pasturage; sufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the descendants of those *Americans* who fled hither to avoid the tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their liberty against that Nation: of which so jealous, that they would not suffer the *English* under *Drake* and *Cavendish* to land amongst them, for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or some friends of theirs. 3 *Castro*, which we have spoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*; on the South with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Streits of *Magelan*; on the West with *Mare del Zur*; on the East with *Mare del Noort*, or the main *Atlantick*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom first discovered; of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the *Streits*, 300 Leagues: in breadth from one Sea to the other, where broadest, above 400 Leagues; in some but 90 only, and in others less, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramis*. The inland parts of the Country not yet discovered: those on the Sea side observed to be rockie and unfruitful, exposed for the most part of the year to such bitter colds, that the Snow lyeth alwaies on the Mountains. The people said to be tall of stature, and some of them of a *Gigantine* bigness, reported to be ten or eleven foot high; and by the *Spaniards* for that reason are called *Patagons*. Both great and less, sufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurnished of any houses, notwithstanding the rigour of the cold.

No Houses doth imply no Towns, and therefore we must look for none, in so rude a Country, as hath not hitherto conversed with more *civil* Nations. So that the most that we can do, is to coast the shores, and see what names of *Ports* or *Promontories* we can find therein. And first upon the Sea coasts towards *Mare del Zur*, they place (beginning at the North, and so descending) 1 The Promontorie called *Cabo de las Islas*. 2 The *Port* or Haven of S. *Stephen*. 3 The Valley of *Nuestra Sennora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4 The Promontorie called *Punta Delgado*. 5 *Porto de los Reyes*. 6 *Ancon Sinsalida*, on the banks of a semi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few Ilands. 7 *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of *Victorie*, situate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the *Streits*, so called from the name of the Ship in which some of *Magellanes* souldiers did first compass the world. For *Ferdinand Magellano* a noble *Portugal*, and well skilled in *Navigation*, at the perswasion or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom (upon some discontents received in the Court of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*) he had made offer of his service, undertook the finding out (if possible) a shorter cut to the *Moluccos*, then discovered formerly. In the year 1520 he began his voyage, and keeping on the coast to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October*, fel upon the *Cape* of *Virgins*, at the very entrance of this Streit, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon; and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of these *narrow Seas*, since called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entred into *Mare del Zur*. Afterwards passing the *Moluccos*, he was killed in a fight against the Ilanders of S. *Matthew*, a little Iland not far off, but more near the *Pilippins*; which notwithstanding the ship called *Victoria*, returned to *Spain* in safety, and brought the welcome news of their good success.

We use to say that Sir *Francis Drake* was the first that sayled round about the world, which may be true in a mitigated sense; *viz.* that he was the first *Captain*, or man of note that atchieved this enterprise, *Magellanus* perishing in the midst of it; and therefore is reported to have given for his device, a *Globe*, with this motto, *Tu primus circumdedisti me*. This navigation was begun, *An.* 1577. and in two years and an half with great vicissitude of fortune, finished; concerning which his famous voyage, a Poet then living, directed to him this *Epigram*.

Drake *pererrati novit quem terminus orbis,*
Quemq́, ſimul mundi vidit uterq́, polus:
Si taceant homines, facient te ſydera notum;
Sol *neſcit comitis non memor eſſe ſui.*

Drake, *whom th'encompaſs'd earth ſo fully knew,*
And whom at once both poles of heaven did view:
Should men forget thee, Sol *could not forbear*
To chronicle *his fellow travailer.*

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, theſe *Magellan* ſtraits, are in the 52 degree; and are by M. *John Davis*, who profeſſeth to know every Creek in them, thus deſcribed. "For 14 Leagues within the *Cape* of S. "*Marie*, lyeth the firſt *ſtrait*, where it ebbeth and floweth with a violent ſwiftneſs: the *ſtrait* not be- "ing fully half a mile broad, and the firſt fall into it very dangerous and doubtful. Three leagues this "ſtrait continueth, when it openeth into a ſea, eight miles long, and as much broad; beyond which, ly- "eth the ſecond ſtrait, right Weſt, South-weſt from the firſt; a perilous and unpleaſing paſſage, three "leagues long, and a mile in breadth. This ſtrait openeth it ſelf into another ſea, which is extended even "to the *Cape of victory*; where is the ſtrait properly called the *ſtrait of Magellane*; a place of that na- "ture, that which way ſoever a man bend his courſe, he ſhall be ſure to have the wind againſt him. The "length hereof is 40 leagues; the breadth in ſome places two leagues over, in others not fully half a "mile. The Channel in depth 200 Fathoms, ſo no hope of Anchorage; the courſe of the water full of "turnings and changings; withal ſo violent, that when a ſhip is once entred, there is no returning. On "both ſides of it are high Mountains continually covered with ſnow; from which proceed thoſe counter- "winds, which beat with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place aſſuredly not pleaſing to view, and ve- "ry hazardous to paſs. So far, and to this purpoſe M. *Davis*.

But to proceed, the way thus opened, was travelled not long after, An. 1525. by *Garſias de Loyaſa*; next in the year 1534. by *Simon de Alcazavo*, and four years after by three ſhips of the Biſhop of *Placenza* in *Spain*; but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure thorow; till undertaken and performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1577. after which it grew more familiar amongſt the ſeamen; Howſoever, we are ſo much debtors to the attempts of others, as that we owe to them the moſt part of the names of thoſe Bayes and Promontories, which they diſcovered in the *ſearch*: though many of them ſince new named by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*. Thoſe of moſt note, proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, 1 *Cabo de Quade*. 2 *Cape Gallant* 3 *Cordes Bay*. 4 *Cape Froward*, being the very point or *Conus* of this great *Pyramis*. 5 *Porto Famine*. 6 A little Iſle called *Elizabeths Iland*; and at the *exit* of the ſtrait into *Mare del Noort*, the Cape of *Virgins*. Then bending Northward toward the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the main Ocean 1 *Rio de la Crux*, neighboured by a Promontorie called *Cabo de las Bareras*; where *Magellano* ſtaid all *September*, and the greateſt part of *October*, in expectation of an opportunity to diſcover further. 2 The Bay of S. *Julian*, out of which he ſet ſayl for this adventure, about the later end of *Auguſt*, leaving there two of his companions condemned of *mutinie*. 3 The Port of *Deſire*. 4 A large Promontorie called the *Cape of S. George*. 5 The outlets of a fair River, named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6 A goodly Haven entituled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7 The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8 The Bay of *Anegada*. 9 The Promontorie called the Cape of S. *Andrews*. And 10 the River of S. *Anne*, beyond which lyeth the Province of the River. This is the moſt that I can ſay touching *Magellanica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points and Promontories; and this is nothing (as we ſee) but a *Nomenclator*. It muſt be better peopled and more diſcovered, before it can afford diſcourſe of more variety. All we can adde, is that the paſſage back again from *Mare del Zur* to the *Atlantick*, hath not been found ſo ſafe and eaſie, as from the main *Atlantick* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted firſt by *Ladrilliro* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Garcia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*; and attempted only: performed not long after the voyage of Sir *Francis Drake*, by *D. Pedro Sarmiento*, imployed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no leſs danger; ſo much, that few have ſince endeavoured to return that way.

As for the fortunes & affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to underſtand that it was firſt diſcovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro's* chief friends and aſſociates. But he having other deſigns in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himſelf, and to out *Pizarro*, did diſcover it only: the conqueſt of it being reſerved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro* on the ſetling of his affairs by the death of *Almagro*, had imployed in that action. He going ſouldierlike to work, not only did ſubdue the people; but as he gained ground, built ſome Fortreſs, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. This done about the year 1544. his ill luck was to meet with a more ſtubborn and untractable people, then either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who quickly weary of the yoke, beſieged one of his Forts, encountred *Baldivia* himſelf coming with too ſmall a power to relieve his people, vanquiſhed and ſlew him in the field. Some adde that they poured *Gold* into his throat (as the *Parthians* are reported to have done to *Craſſus*) bidding him *ſatiate himſelf with that which he ſo much thirſted*. After this blow given in the year 1551. the *Savages* recovered the rich vallies of *Aranco*, *Tucapel*, and *Purene*; which they keep from them till this day: The Towns of *Los Confines*, and *Villa Rica*, both on the borders of thoſe Vallies, then deſerted alſo. Nor ſtaid they there, though they took time to breathe a little. For in the year 1599 (having provided themſelves of 200 Corſlets, and

ſeventy

seventy Muskets) they brake out again; surprised and sacked the Town of *Baldivia*; forced *Imperiale*, after a whole years siege to surrender without any conditions; and in the year 1604. took *Osorno* by famine. Of thirteen Cities which the *Spaniards* had possessed amongst them, they had taken nine; some of them since recovered, but the most demolished. As ill it thrived with them in *Magellanica*, where *Pedro de Starmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies to command those Streits, *An.* 1584. The one he setled near the mouth of the *Streit*, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jesus*, and left therein 150 of his men; the other he intended on the narrowest place of the Streit, to be called *Cividad del Roy Philip*, which he resolved to fortifie, and plant with Ordnance. But winter coming on, he left there others of his men, promising to relieve them shortly with all things necessary. But such was his unhappy fate, that after many shipwracks and disappointments which befell unto him in the pursuit of his design; he was at last taken by the *English*, under the command of Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, who was there in person: and his two Colonies for want of timely succours, either starved at home, or eaten by the Savages as they ranged the Country.

OF PARAGVAY.

PARAGVAY is bounded on the South with *Magellanica*; on the East with the main *Atlantick*; on the North with *Brasil*; on the West with some unknown Countries betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River *Paraguay* (one of the greatest of the world) which runneth thorow it: the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great store of *Silver* they expected from it.

The Country (for so much as hath been discovered) is said to be of a fruitfull soil; capable of Wheat and other fruits of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedingly: nor do the *Cattell* increase less which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horses multiplying in a wonderfull manner. Well stored with *Sugar Canes*; and not unfurnished with *Mines* both of Brass and Iron; some veins of *Gold* and Silver, and great plenty of *Amethysts*. Of Stags great plenty, and of *Monkeys* almost infinite numbers; not to say any thing of Lyons, Tigers, and such hurtfull Creatures, which a few would be thought too many. Of the People there is nothing said, but what hath been before observed of the other *Savages*.

Chief Rivers of it, 1 *De la Plata*, whose course we have described already. 2 *Rio de Buenos Ayres* so called from the chief Town by which it runneth. 3 *Zarcaranna*, which riseth in the Country of the *Diaguitas*, and falling into a *Lake* at the end of his course, doth from thence pass into the body of *De la Plata*. 4 *Estero*, which rising in the Valley of *Chalcaqui*, and passing thorow two great *Lakes*, meets with 5 the *Bermeio*, and both together fall into *De la Plata* neer the Town of S. *Foy*. 6 *Pilcomayo*, which hath its Fountain neer the Mines of *Potosi*, in the Province of *Charcos*; but his fall in the same River with those before. Then on the North side of that River, there is 7 that of S. *Saviour*, or S. *Salvador*, as the *Spaniards* call it; 8 *Rio Nigro*, or the *Black* River, of a longer course; but buried in the end, as the other is, in the Deeps of *La Plata*. 9 *Tquaan*, and 10 several others, whose united streams make the great River *Parana*, the second River of esteem in all this Country: But swallowed in that of *Plata*. Besides these 11 *Rio de S. Martin*, and 12 *Rio Grande* falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of 1 *Rio de la Plata*, 2 *Tucaman*, and 3 *La Crux de Sierra*. The rest not conquered by the *Spaniard*, or not well discovered, cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both sides of that River; ascending many Leagues up the water, but not extended much upon either side. The reason of the name, the quality of the soil and people, we have seen before.

Chief Towns hereof 1 *Buenos Ayres*, or *Neustra Sennora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Cividad de la Trinidad*, seated on the Southern bank of the River of *Plata*, where built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, *An.* 1535. Deserted by the Inhabitants, and again new-Peopled by *Cabesa de Vacca*, *An.* 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned; and finally in the year 1582 re-edified and planted with a new *Colony*. Situate on the rising of a little hill, in the 34 Degree and 45 Minutes of *Southern* Latitude, and about 64 Leagues from the Mouth of the River; fortified with a mud Wall, and a little Castle, with some pieces of Ordnance; yet neither large, nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. 2 S. *Fe*, or S *Fidei*, 50 Leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the same side of the water neer the confluence of it with the River *Estero*: of the same bigness as the other, but somewhat richer: the People here being given to clothing, which *Manufacture* they exchange with the *Brasilians* for *Sugar*, *Rice*, & other necessary Commodities. 3 *Neustra Sennora del Assumption*, but commonly *Assumption* only, higher up the River, from the mouth whereof 300 Leagues distant: situate in the *Latitude* of 25. and almost in the midst betwixt *Peru*, and *Brasil*; well built and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Country. Inhabited by three sorts of men, first natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accompted 400 Families; 2. The *Mestizos*, begotten by the *Spaniard* upon the *Natives*; and 3 *Mulatos* born of the *Spaniards* and the *Negroes*; of which two last here are thought to be many thousands. Not far off is a great Lake called *Ytupuam*, in the midst whereof an huge Rock, above 100 Fathom high above the water. 5 *Cividad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Ontiveros*, by the Natives *Guayra*, 80 Leagues North from the Town of *Assumption*; situate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitfull soyl, but a sickly Air: for which cause, and the frequent insurrections of the *Savages*, but meanly peopled. 6 S. *Anne*, on the banks of the same River *Parana*; 7 S. *Salvador*, on a River of the same name. Besides these, there are up the River above *Assumption*, three noted Ports. 8 *Puerto de Guaybiamo*, 9 *Puerto de la Candelaria*, and 10 *Puerto de Los Reyes*, but whether Towns, or only Havens on that River for dispersing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to say. The last save one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas* and the death of 80 of his men by the hands of the *Savages*.

2. TU-

2. *TUCUMAN* lieth on the West of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the confines of *Chile*, thorow which they make their way unto *Mare del Zur*, as thorow the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Nort*: the exact bounds hereof to the North and South not yet resolved on.

The Country, for so much hereof as lieth towards *Chile*, well manured and fruitfull; that towards *Magellanica*, barren, untilled, and not well discovered; no veins of Gold or Silver in it, though situate in a temperate and agreeable Air. Watered by the two Rivers of 1. *Salado*, so called from the brackishness and saltness of it; and 2 *Del Estero*, spoken of before, so named because sometimes it breaketh out of his banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and habit, in both which they conform to the garb of the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof 1 *S. Jago del Estero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Varco*: the principal of this small Province, honoured with a Bishops See, and the seat of the Governour; and distant about 180 Leagues from *Buenos Aires*. 2 *S. Michael de Tucuman*, seated at the foot of a rockie mountain, but near a very fruitful soyl both for Corn and Pasturage, distant 28 Leagues from S. *Jago*. 3 *Talavera*, or *Nuestra Sennora de Talavera*, but by the Natives called *Esteco*; situate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitful soyl, and inhabited by an industrious People, grown wealthy by their *Manufactures* of Cotton-woolls, which grow hereabouts in great abundance: with which they drive a great trade at the *Mines* of *Potosi*, from hence distant but 140 Leagues. 4 *Corduba*, in a convenient place for trade, as being equally distant from S. *Juan de la Frontera*, in the Praefecture of *Chile*; and S. *Foy*, in *Rio de la Plata*; 50 Leagues from each; and seated in a Rode from *Peru* unto *Buenos Aires*; much travelled consequently by those who go from *Peru* to *Brasil* or *Spain*. 5 *New London*, and 6 *New Cordura*, built at such time as *Garsias de Mendoza*, son of the Marques of *Cannete*. and Vice Roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Besides these, 7 *Morata*, 8 *Chocinoca*, 9 *Sococha*, & 10 *Calabinda*; Townships belonging to the *Natives*.

3. S. *CRUX DE SIERRA*, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guapay*, and in the Country of the *Chiquitos* and *Cherignanaes*, two Tribes of the *Savages*: by some accounted to *Peru*, because under the *Juridical Resort* of *Charcos*, but so far distant from the neerest bounds of that Province (100 *Spanish* leagues at least) that I think fitter to accompt it to the Province of *Paraguay*, betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guapay* it is wholly seated.

The soil abundantly productive of *Maize* and Wines; plenty of most sorts of *American* fruits, which I can give no *English* name to; a kind of *Palm*, of whose trunk they make great store of meal, of good taste and nourishment. But neither soil nor Air agreeable to the fruits of *Europe*, which ripen slowly, and soon die. So destitute of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make use of Rain-water, preserved in pits: the cause of no small wants, and of many great murders, the people either dying for thirst, or killing one another for some water to quench it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Sancta Crux*, situate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but situate in open field, inlarging it self into many Plains, and thirsty Vallies: neighboured by a Brook or *Torrent* breaking from the Rocks; which four leagues from the town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth supply the town with Fish. 2 *Baranca*, 60 leagues from the Mines of *Potosi*. 3 *Tomina*, 4 *Lagunilla*, and 5 *Tarixa*; three Forts erected for defence of this Province against the incursions and Alarms of the *Cherignanaes*. 6 *Neyva Rioja*, once a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, but sacked and dispeopled by the *Cherignanaes*, when the Count of *Neyva* was Vice-Roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nuflo de Chaves*, who in the year 1548. first discovered those parts, was treacherously slain by one of the *Savages*.

The principal Nations of this Country, when first known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Quirandies*, *Timbues*, and *Carcares*, the *Chanes*, *Chiminei*, *Guaranyes*, the *Guayacurves*, *Cacoves*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both sides of the River of *Plata*: the *Tucumanes*, *Juries*, and *Diagnitas*, in the *Cantred* of *Tucuman*; more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no hold, the *Chnnesses*, *Xaquesses*, *Xacoaes*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerfull Nations, hitherto unconquered. The first discovery of this Country ascribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spanish* Adventurer; who in the year 1515. passing up the River to the *Latitude* of 34 Degrees, and 40 minutes; and unadvisedly landing with too small a power, was there unfortunately slain. The design after prosecuted by *Sebastian Cabot*, An. 1526. who sailed against the stream as high as the River *Parana*: at the reception of which, the great River called till then by the name of *Paragnay*, begins to be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortress called *Fort Cabot*; and 30 leagues more up the River, that called S. *Anne*, (both long since ruined) where *Diego Garcias* a *Portugal* found him, in the year next following. In the year 1535. the business was resumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*; and sent *John de Aiolas* to discover Northwards; of whose unhappy end we have heard before: Not fully setled till the year 1540. when *Alvares Nonnez*, commonly called *Cabesa de Vacca*, made a more full discovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing since done for the further planting of the Country, though some places have been marked out for new *Plantations*; here being little Gold and Silver, and consequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

OF

OF

BRASIL.

BRASIL is bounded on the East with *Mare del Noort*, or the main *Atlantick*; on the West with ſome undiſcovered Countries, lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragnon*; and on the South with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reaſon of the name I find not, except it came from the abundance of that wood called *Braſil* wood, which was found amongſt them; as the famous Iſle of *Cyprus* from its plenty of *Cypreſſes*.

It reacheth from the 29. to the 39. Degree of *Southern* Latitude; or meaſuring it by miles, it is ſaid to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the Sea to the *Andes*: which muſt be underſtood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwiſe all that which is poſſeſſed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Braſil*, is ſo ſhort of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they poſſeſs nothing but the Sea coaſts, and ſome few Leagues (comparatively) within the land, the greateſt part of it being ſo far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been diſcovered.

The Country full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forreſts, diverſified into Hils and Plains always pleaſant and green. The Air for the moſt part ſound and wholſom, by reaſon of the freſh winds which do reign amongſt them; there being all along the Coaſts certain quick winds riſing from the South, about two houres before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants: yet in regard it is ſomewhat moyſt, it is held to be more agreeable to old men then to young. The ſoil in moſt parts very fruitful, were it not cloied with too much rain; but howſoever liberally provided of *Sugar canes*, (no one Country more) for refining of which they have their *Ingenios* (as they call them) or *Sugar houſes* in moſt parts of the Country, in which they entertain many thouſand *ſlaves*, brought hither yearly from *Guinea* and *Congo*, and other maritime parts of *Africk*. A trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them; there being few years in each of which they bring not out of *Braſil* to *Portugal* 150000 *Arrobes* of Sugar, every *Arrobe* containing 25 Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure. Here is alſo infinite quantities of that *red Wood* uſed in dying Cloth, which we commonly call *Braſil Wood*; (but whether the wood took that name from the Country, or the Country rather from the wood, I determine not) the trees whereof are of that incredible greatneſs, that whole families live on an *Arm* of one of them, every tree being as populous as the moſt of our villages. In other Commodities common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular inſtance.

Amongſt the *Rarities* hereof, are reckoned 1 the *Plant* called *Copiba*, the bark of which being cut doth ſend out a *Balm*, the ſoveraign vertue whereof is ſo well known to the very Beaſts, that being bit by venemous ſerpents, they reſort unto it for their cure. 2 The Herb called *Sentida* or *Viva*, which roughly touched will cloſe the leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of ſight. 3 A kind of *Wheat* in the Valley neer unto S. *Sebaſtian*, which is continually growing, and alwayes ripe; or never wholly ripe, becauſe alwayes growing: for when one Ear doth grain, another doth bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4 The *Oxeſiſh*, with eyes and eye-lids, two arms a cubit long, and at each an hand with five fingers and nails, as in a man; under the arms two teats, inwards, like a Cow, in every female. 5 A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All Saints*, which had the face of an Ape, the feet of a Lion, and all the reſt of a man; of ſuch a terrible aſpect, that the Souldier who ſhot him fell down dead: but this I rather look on as an *aberration* of Nature then a *rarity* in her. 6 Beaſts of ſuch ſtrange ſhapes, and ſuch ſeveral kinds, that it may be ſaid of *Braſil*, as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid apportat novi*; every day ſome new object of Admiration.

The people here are endowed with a pretty underſtanding: as may ſeem by him, who tartly blamed the covetouſneſs of the *Spaniſh*, for coming from the other end of the world to dig for Gold; and holding up a wedge of Gold, cryed out, *Behold the God of the Chriſtians*! But in moſt places they are barbarous, the men and women go ſtark naked, and on high *feſtival* dayes hang Jewels in their lips: theſe *feſtival* days are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry, over the roſted body of a *fat man*; whom they cut in *collops*, called *Boucon*, and eat with great greedineſs, and as much delectation. They have two vile qualities, as being mindfull of injuries, and forgetfull of benefits. The Men cruel without meaſure; and the Women infinitely laſcivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reaſon of which one being demanded, made anſwer; becauſe they had amongſt them neither *Law*, *Faith*, nor *Rulers*. They are able Swimmers, as well Women as Men; and will ſtay under water an hour together. Women in Travel are here delivered without any great pain, and preſently go about their buſineſs belonging to good houſe-wives. The good-man (according to the faſhion of our kinder ſorts of Husbands in *England*, who are ſaid to *breed their wives children*) being ſick in their ſtead, and keeping their Bed; ſo far that he hath Brothes made him, is viſited by his *Goſſips* or Neighbours, and hath *Junkets* ſent to comfort him. And amongſt theſe there are ſome

Rarities,

Rarities, if not *Monſtroſities* in Nature: it being ſaid of thoſe which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like Beaſts, ſuch as *Orſon* is fained to have been in the old *Romance*; and probably ſo ingendred alſo; that the *Guaymares* disbowell women with childe, and roaſt the children; and finally that the ſavage Nation of *Camucuiara* have their Paps almoſt down unto their knees, which they tie about their waſte when they run, or go faſter then ordinary.

Rivers of note I finde not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, then proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way, as we croſs the Country, we ſhall not paſs them over without ſome remembrance. And ſo proceed we to the diviſion of the Country, not into Provinces or Nations, as in other Places, but into *Prafectures*, or Captainſhips as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we ſhall ſeverally touch on as we trace the coaſt, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata*, unto that of *Guiana*; that is to ſay,

1. The Captainſhip of S. *VINCENT* bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the moſt civil People of all *Braſil*. Chief Towns whereof 1 *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, capable of good Ships of burden, but diſtant from the Main three Leagues. A Town of no more then 120 houſes, yet the beſt of this *Prafecture*; beautified with a Pariſh Church, and two Convents of Friers. Taken and held two moneths by Sir *Tho: Cavendiſh*, An. 1591. ſince that environed with a Wall, and fortified with two Caſtles. 2 S. *Vincents* better built, but not ſo well fitted with an Haven; of about 70 houſes, and 100 Inhabitants. 3 *Itange*, and 4 *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of leſſer Veſſels. 5 S. *Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleaſant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River of *Iniambis*. A Town of about 100 houſes, one Church, two Convents, and a Colledge of *Jeſuits*; neighboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains called *Pernabiacaba*. 6 S. *Philips* a ſmall Town on the banks of *Iniambis*, which there begins to inlarge it ſelf, and paſſing thence falleth at the laſt in the River *Parana*, one of the greateſt Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. Of *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, ſo called becauſe entred into that moneth by *John Diaz de Solis*, *An.* 1515. neglected by the *Portugals*, it was ſeized on by the *French* under the conduct of *Villegagnone*, employed herein by Admiral *Chaſtillon*, a great friend of the *Hugonets*, to whom it was intended for a place of *Refuge* (as *New-England* afterwards for the like) but within three years after their firſt coming hither (*An.* 1558) regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the ſword. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1 *Collignia*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*, ſo named in honour of *Gaſpar Colligni* (commonly called *Chaſtillon*) by whoſe incouragement it was founded. Situate on the Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2 S. *Sebaſtians*, built at the mouth of the ſame Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French*, and fortified with four ſtrong Bulwarks. 3 *Angra des Reyes*, diſtant twelve Leagues Weſtward from the Mouth of the Bay; not long ſince made a *Portugal* Colony. Beſides theſe, there are two great *Burroughs* of the natural *Braſilians*, in which are ſaid to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. *Of the HOLY GHOST (del Spiritu Santo)* one of the moſt fertile Provinces of all *Braſil*; well ſtored with *Cotton-wool*, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large and full of Fiſh. The only Town of note in it, is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief buildings of it, a Church dedicated to S. *Francis*, a Monaſtery of *Benedictines*, and a Colledge of *Jeſuits*; the chief conveniency, a ſafe and commodious Haven, capable of the greateſt Veſſels.

4. *Of PORTO SEGURO*, the ſecure Haven, ſo called by *Capralis* who firſt diſcovered it, when being toſſed at ſea by a terrible tempeſt, he had here refreſhed himſelf. Chief Towns hereof 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity then *Fame*; of more fame then bigneſs; as not containing fully 200 Families. 2 *Santa Crux*, three Leagues from the other; a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: the Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Avera* in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3 *Santo Amaro*, or S. *Omers*, once of great note for making Sugars; for which uſe here were five *Ingenios*, or *Sugar Engines*; deſerted by the *Portugals* for fear of the Savages, againſt whom they had not power enough to make good the place; and the Sugars deſtroyed of purpoſe, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous People.

5. Of *DES ILHEOS*, or of the *Iſles*, ſo named from certain Ilands lying againſt the Bay on which the principal Town is ſeated, called alſo *Ilheos*, or the Iland (with like *Analogie* as a Town of good note in *Flanders*, hath the name of *Inſula*, or *Liſle*) The town conſiſting of about 150 or 200 Families, ſituate on a little River, but neighboured by a great *Lake* of 12 Leagues in compaſs (out of which that River doth ariſe) full of a great but wholſom Fiſh, which they call *Monates*, ſome of which are affirmed to weigh eight and twenty pounds. This Colony, much endangered by the *Guaymuri*, a Race of *Savages* more *Savage* then any of their Fellows: who being driven out of their own Country fell into this *Prafecture*, which they had utterly deſtroyed, if ſome of S. *Georges* Reliques, as the *Jeſuits* tell us (but I binde no man to believe it) ſent by their General from *Rome*, An. 1581. had not ſtayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. *Of*

6. *Of* TODOS LOS SANTOS, or *All Saints*, ſo called from a large *Bay* of that name, upon which it lieth; in breadth two Leagues and an half, 18 Fathoms deep, and full of many little Ilands, but flouriſhing and pleaſant, and well ſtored with *Cotton-Wooll*. A *Bay* in which are many ſafe *Stations* and *Roads* for ſhipping, and therefore of great uſe and conſequence in thoſe furious ſeas. Memorable for the hardy Enterpriſe of *Peter Heynes*, a *Dutch-man*, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*; who in the year 1627 ſeized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, conſiſting of 26 Sail of ſhips (four of them being Men of VVar) all lying under the protection of the Forts and Caſtles built for the ſafety of that *Bay*. For thruſting in amongſt them with his own ſhip only (the reſt not being able to follow) he ſo laid about him, that having ſunk the *Vice-Admiral*, he took all the reſt, conditioning only for their lives; notwithſtanding all the ſhot which was made againſt him from the Ships and Caſtles, and 42 Pieces of Ordnance planted on the ſhore. Chief Towns hereof 1 S. *Salvador*, built on a little hill, on the North ſide of the *Bay*, by *Thomas de Souſa*; adorned with many Churches, and Religious houſes; and fortified (beſides the wall) with three ſtrong Caſtles, the one called S. *Antony*, the other S. *Philip*, and the third *Tapeſipe*. Yet not ſo ſtrong by reaſon of ſome hills adjoyning which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, *An.* 1624. recovered by the *Spaniards* the next yeer after, and ſince loſt again. 2 *Paripe* more within the Land, four Leagues from S. *Saviours*. 3 *Seregippe del Rey*, a ſmall Town, and ſeated on as ſmall a River, but amongſt many rich Paſtures, and ſome veins of ſilver.

7. Of *FERNAMBUCK*, one of the richeſt *Præfectures* for *Tobacco*, *Sugar*, and the great quantity of *Braſil-wood*, which is brought hence yeerly for the *Diers*, in all this Country; but deſtitute of Corn, and moſt other neceſſaries, with which ſupplied from the *Canaries*, and ſometimes from *Portugal*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Olinda*, the largeſt and beſt peopled of all *Braſil*: containing above 2000 perſons, not reckoning in the *Church-men*, nor taking the great number of *ſlaves* which they keep for their *Sugar-Works* into the Accompt: for whoſe uſe they have here eight *Parochial* Churches, five *Religious* houſes, and ſome *Hoſpitals*. Situate neer the Sea-ſide, but on ſo uneven a piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a *Regular* fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well-built Caſtle; and that well planted with Braſs pieces. VVhich notwithſtanding, in the year 1595 the Caſtle and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they uſed to ſtow all their chief Commodities) were took by Capt. *James Lancaſter*, and ſome few of the *Engliſh*, who having tarried in the Haven above a moneth, brought home with him eight of his own ſhips, four *Frenchmen*, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance; all laden with the choiceſt Merchandiſe of *Braſil* and *India*. 2 *Amatta de Braſil*, ten miles from *Olinda*, the Inhabitants whereof live by ſelling the *Braſil-wood*. 3 S. *Laurenzo*, a well frequented Village, but as yet unwalled. 4. *Poincur*, upon a River ſo named. 5 *Antonio de Cabo*, neer the Cape of S. *Auguſtines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6 *Garaſu*, about five Leagues from *Olinda*, inhabited for the moſt part by poor and *Mechanical* perſons, till the year 1632. when taken by the *Hollander*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This *Præfecture*, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque* (a great houſe in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* united: the town of *Olinda* being took by them in the year 1629. the Port and all the *Avenues* unto it ſo ſtrongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it.

8. Of *TAMARAÇA*, ſo called from an Iland of that name, diſtant about five miles from *Olinda*; of no great note but for the Haven, and an impregnable Caſtle on the top of an hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a ſtrong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and ſo blocked it up, that it hath ſince been of no uſe to the *Spaniard*. This the leaſt *Præfecture* in *Braſil*, but withall the ancienteſt; extended three Leagues onely in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earles of *Monſanto* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly, when entire, thirty thouſand *Ducats*. But his Rents much diminiſhed, if not quite inverted, ſince the loſs of the Haven.

9. *Of* PARAIBA, ſo called from a River of that name (but by the *Spaniard* called *Domingo*) of moſt note herein. On the banks whereof ſtandeth *Paraiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, about three Leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty good ſhips to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long ſince by 500 *Portugals*, beſides *Slaves* and *Negroes*. Not walled, till they began to ſtand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loſs of *Olinda*, but more ſecured by a ſtrong Caſtle on the Promontory called *Cabo Delo*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, then by any works within the Land. A Caſtle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were poſſeſſed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoyning Haven called *Port Francois*; but outed by the *Portugal*, *Anno* 1584. who have ſince held their footing in it, but with fear of the *Hollanders*, eſpecially ſince their taking of a little Iland lying over againſt them, called the Iſle of *Noronha*.

10. Of

10. Of *RIO GRANDE*, ſo called from the River *Poteingi* (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River, not made a *Præfecture* till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next *Pretender*, ſome of the *French* began to fix here, *Anno* 1597. But the King of *Spain* not willing to have any ſuch neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiba*, to drive them thence; which was done accordingly. But then the *Savages* beginning to riſe up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to ſeek aide from him of *Fernambuck*; by whoſe help having ſlain five thouſand, and took three thouſand of them, the reſt became *Vaſſals* to the *Portugals*: who built here an impregnable Caſtle (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned and furniſhed with Ammunition and all other neceſſaries; very few *Portugals*, except thoſe of the Garriſon, being yet come over.

11. Of *SIARA*, a late *Præfecture* alſo, in which the *Portugals* have no more then a Caſtle, with a dozen houſes or thereabouts, beſides that of the Governour adjoyning to it. So named from an Haven called *Siara*, but of no great note, and capable but of little Veſſels. Of ſome trade in regard of the *Chryſtall*, *Cotton-wooll*, and ſome precious ſtones, found in the Country hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and purſue the Conqueſt; here being great plenty of *Sugar Canes*, but no works to make it.

12. Of *MARAGNON*, an Iland lying in the mouth of the great River ſo called, in the furtheſt parts of *Braſil* Northwards, and many Leagues diſtant from *Siara* the laſt of their *Præfectures*; the Country intervening not yet diſcovered, or otherwiſe made known unto us then by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the *Coaſt*. An Iland of a fruitfull ſoil, if pains and huſbandry were not wanting: affording naturally *Maize*, and a Root called *Maniot*, both which the *Savages* uſe for bread; good ſtore of Cotton-wools, Saffron, *Braſil-wood*, and the beſt *Tobacco*; and in ſome places *Balm* and *Amber*. Watered with many freſh Rivers, and pleaſant Springs: well-wooded both for Timber and Fewell: and in a word, bleſſed with ſo temperate an Aire (though ſo near the *Æquator*) that no place can be more commodious for the life of man. The People ſtrong of body, healthy and long lived without any *baldneſs*; induſtrious in their *Feather-works* and *Manufactures* of Cotton; the *Women* curious in ordering their hair, fruitfull in Child-bearing, and that till 50 years old and ſometimes more. Both Sexes naked till their Marriage; and then apparelled onely from the waſt to their knees.

The Villages hereof poſſeſſed by the Natives, conſiſted but of four great Houſes; each of them two or three hundred foot in length, and twenty or thirty foot in breadth; ſo placed as they reſembled a *Quadrangular* Cloyſter: And in each Houſe ſo many Houſholds, that commonly each of their Villages or *Taves* (for ſo they called them) contained three hundred perſons, and ſome twice that number: Of theſe were twenty ſeven in all, whoſe names I hold impertinent to be muſtered here: The totall eſtimate of the People when the *French* came thither, amounting to 12000 Souls. For the *French* Trading in this Iland, and carrying themſelves courteouſly amongſt the *Natives*, found them not unwilling to admit a *Colonie* of that Nation, if ſent over to them: by whoſe aide they might free themſelves from all other *Pretenders*, and be inſtructed in the Goſpel. Accordingly a *Colonie*, and four *Capuchin* Friers, are ſent over to them *Anno* 1612. Some *Savages* gained unto the Faith, and a ſtrong Caſtle called S. *Lewis* commodiouſly built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance; the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not reſted there when diſ-ſeized by the *Portugals*, ſent thither under the Conduct of *Hierome de Albuquerque*, *Anno* 1614. Who to the Caſtle of S. *Lewis* which the *French* had built, added thoſe of S. *Mary*, and S. *Francis*, planted two Villages in the Iland by the names of S. *Andrew*, and S. *Jago*, and ever ſince have held it without moleſtation.

13. Of *PARA*, the moſt Northern *Præfecture* of *Braſil*, towards *Guiana*; ſo called from the River of *Para* (ſuppoſed to be a branch of the River of *Amazons*) which runneth thorow it. The River at the mouth of it, two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Channel fifteen Fathoms deep: on the Banks whereof (but on an higher ground then the reſt) the *Portugals* have built the Caſtle of *Para*, in form *Quadrangular*, and well walled except towards the River: the Country thereabouts inhabited by 300 *Portugueze*, beſides the Garriſon.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one *Supream*. Divided into many *Tribes*, and each Tribe governed by their *Chiefs*, as in other Countries. Theſe Tribes ſo many, and the Muſter of their names ſo uſeleſs, that I now forbear it. In this eſtate they lived when diſcovered firſt; but by whom firſt diſcovered, will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get ſome colour of a Title for the Crown of *Caſtile*, aſcribe it to *John Pinſone*, and *Diego de Lepe*, two of their own Countrey; who as they ſay, had Landed on it in the year 1500, before the coming of *Capralis*, though the ſame year alſo. The *Portugals* attribute the Diſcovery of it to *Pedro Alvarez de Capreli*, ſent by their King *Emanuel* to the *Eaſt-Indies*: who being driven over hither from the Coaſt of *Guinea*, took poſſeſſion of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a *Croſs*, giving the name of *Sanctæ Crucis*, or the *Holy Croſs*, to this new Diſcovery. That name changed afterwards to *Braſil* from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongſt them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Veſpucius* a Noble *Florentine*, and af-

ter him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation in the year 1503. were by *Emmanuel* employed in a further Diſcovery. Who ſpeeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals* did accordingly ſend over ſome *Plantations* thither. But a great controverſie growing betwixt them and the *Spaniard*, to whether of the two it of right belonged: the *Spaniard* was content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the ſixt (by whom the whole undiſcovered World was divided betwixt thoſe two Kings) it ſeemed to fall within the Grant to the Crown of *Caſtile*. Enjoyed by this *Emmanuel*, and the Kings ſucceeding till the death of *Sebaſtian* (which *Sebaſtian* the *Jeſuites* look on as the Founder of all their Colledges in this Country) and by the *Spaniards* ſince the death of *Henry* (whoſe reign continued but a yeer) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*; that Nation being ſo prudently jealous of their intereſs in it, that they would ſuffer any of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongſt them. By them poſſeſſed entirely without any Rivals (I mean for ſo much of the Country as they had ſubdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part; and got the *Prafectures* of *Fornanback*, and *Todos Los Sanctos* (or the Bay) by the Right of War. The reſt with all the other Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late *Revolt* of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, ſubmitting unto *John* the 4th. of the houſe of *Bragance*, whom the *Portugueze* had made their King, *Anno* 1639.

OF

OF GVIANA.

GVIANA is bounded on the East with the Main *Atlantick*; on the West with the Mountains of *Peru*, or rather ſome undiſcovered Countries interpoſed betwixt them; on the North with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South with that of the *Amazons*. The reaſon of the name I find not, unleſs it be ſo called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the *Line*, extended from the fourth Degree of *Southern*, to the eighth of the *Northern* Latitude. The Air, notwithſtanding this ſituation under the *Æquator*, affirmed to be temperate, the Eaſtern winds (which they call the *Brizes*) conſtantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extreme heats thereof by their cooler blaſts. The Country towards the Sea ſide flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and ſwelled with hils: in all places ſo adorned with Natures *Tapeſtrie*, the boughs and branches of the Trees never unclothed or left naked, (fruit either ripe or green growing ſtill upon them) that no Country in the world could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we ſhall ſee anon, when the particular parts hereof come into Diſcourſe.

Of the People it is ſaid in generall, that they have amongſt them no ſetled Government; and though they acknowledge ſome ſuperiority in the *Chiefs* of their *Tribes*, yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they pleaſe. *Adultery* and *Murder*, which are only puniſhable, not otherwiſe expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer ſort have two or three Wives, and ſomtimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, alike jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any further ceremony or *formalities* of Law, they beat out their brains. Their wives, eſpecially the elder, they uſe for *Servants*; and he which hath moſt ſuch, is the greateſt man. Without *Religion*, or any notion of a *Godhead*; not ſo far onwards on the way to the worſhip of the true God, as to be *Idolaters*: for though *Idolatrie* be miſtaken in the proper Object, it ſuppoſeth a *Deitie*; and they who have this *Principle*, That there is a God, have learned one, and not the leaſt of the points of their *Catechiſm*. Their *Accompts* amongſt themſelves they keep with a bundle of ſticks; which they diminiſh or increaſe according to the times of their contract. Their *Funerals* they ſolemnize with a Feaſt, but with ſuch diverſity in the deportment of both Sexes, that whiles the *Women* howl extremely, the *Men* perform the *Obſequies* with ſinging and exceſſive *drinking*; the one as improper for a *Feaſt*, as the other for a *Funeral*.

Rivers of moſt note in it, beſides 1 *Orenoque*, & 2 the River of *Amazons*, and thoſe rather boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, then proper unto this alone. 3 *Arrawari*, 4 *Conawini*, 5 *Caſſpurough*, or *Caſſipure*, all falling into the ſame main *Atlantick*, betwixt the River of *Amazons* and *Wiapoco*: the laſt ariſing out of the Lake of the *Arachoſi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or influx into the Sea, and but five ſpans deep. 6 *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7 *Wia*, 8 *Cajane*, 9 *Marwine*, 10 *Eſſequebe*, a River of twenty dayes journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque* or *Raliana*.

The whole divided commonly into theſe four parts, 1 *Rio de las Amazones*, or the River of *Amazons*, 2 *Wiapoco* or *Guiana* ſpecially ſo called, 3 *Orenoque*, and 4 the Iſles of *Guiana*.

1. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazons*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the tract of that famous River. The ſoil in ſome places dry and barren, in others fertile and productive of the choiceſt fruits. Full of large Woods, and in thoſe Woods moſt ſort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongſt others of moſt note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*) which they call the *Totock*; a tree of great bulk, and as great a fruit; this laſt as big as a mans head, and ſo hard withall, that when the fruit grows ripe and ready to fall, the people dare not go into the woods without an helmet or ſome ſuch ſhelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their brains. The *kernels* of it, for the moſt part ten or twelve in number, have the taſte of *Almonds*, and are ſaid to be *provocative* in point of *Venerie*. Of which the Savages have this By-word, *Pigue ſecke in Saccowe pingean Totocke*; that is to ſay, Eat *Totock*, if thou wouldſt be potent in the Acts of *Venus*. Here are alſo *Sugar-canes* in ſome places; and the Plant called *Pita*, the taſte whereof is ſaid to be like Strawberries, Claret-wine, and Sugar.

The principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Yaos*, *Cockettuway*, *Pattecui*, *Tockianes*, *Tomoes*, and *Wackebanes* dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons*, and *Aroüians* poſſeſſed of the Ilands. Towns of note I have met with none amongſt them; though every houſe (moſt of them 150 foot in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the leaſt an hundred perſons) might paſs ſufficiently for a Village. Yet they are ſafer houſed then ſo, for otherwiſe their houſes would afford them but little comfort in the overflowings of the River, which drown all the Country: and therefore they betake themſelves to the tops of trees, and there remain, like Birds, with their ſeveral families, till the waters be drawn

in again. and the earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find ſome of theſe their dwellings called by proper names, as 1 *Matarem*, 2 *Roakery*, 3 *Anarcaprock*, 4 *Haaman*, 5 *Womians*, and 6 *Cogemymne*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The firſt Diſcoverer of this River and the parts adjoyning, was *Orellana* the Lieutenant of *Gonſales Pizarro*, whom his brother *Franciſco Pizarro* then Viceroy of *Peru* had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noiſe of ſome rich Countries beyond the *Andes*, he raiſed ſufficient forces, and paſſed over thoſe *Mountains*; where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a Boat, and ſent this *Orellana* to bring in proviſions. But the River which he chanced into, was ſo ſwift of courſe, that he was not able to go back; and therefore of neceſſity to obey his fortune in following the courſe of that ſtrong water. Paſſing along by divers deſolate and unpeopled places, he came at laſt into a Country planted and inhabited; where he firſt heard of the *Amazons* (by thoſe *Savages* called *Comapuyaras*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people: And in the end having ſpent his time in paſſing down this River from the beginning of *January* to the end of *Auguſt* 1540. he came at laſt into the Sea; and getting into the iſle of *Cubana*, ſailed into *Spain*: the courſe of his voyage down the water he eſtimated at 1800 leagues (or 5400 *Engliſh* miles) but found no *Amazons* in his paſſage, as himſelf affirmed; only ſome *maſculine* women ſhewed themſelves intermixt with the men, to oppoſe his landing; and in ſome places he found men with *long hair* like women; either of which might make theſe parts believed to be held by *Amazons*. But to proceed, Arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got *Commiſſion* for the conqueſt of the Countries by him diſcovered; and in the year 1549. he betook himſelf unto the ſervice. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at leaſt, he could never hit upon the *Channel* which brought him down, though attempted often. Which ill ſucceſs, with the conſideration of his loſs both in fame and fortunes, brought him to his grave; having got nothing but the honour of the firſt diſcovery, and the leaving of his name to that famous River, ſince called *Orellana*. The enterpriſe purſued, but with like ſucceſs, by one *Pedro de Orſua*, An. 1560. after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *Engliſh* and the *Hollanders* have endeavoured an exact diſcovery, and ſeverally begun ſome *Plantations* in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the others; their *Quarters* being beaten up by the neighbouring *Portugals*, before they were ſufficiently fortified to make any reſiſtance.

2. *WIAPOCO*, or *GUIANA* ſpecially ſo called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both ſides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath its name. A River of a long courſe, but not paſſable up the ſtream above 16 miles, by reaſon of a *Cataract*, or great fall from the higher ground: in breadth betwixt that *Cataract* and the *Æſtuarium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Æſtuarium* or influx a whole mile at leaſt, and there about two fathoms deep.

The Country on both ſides of this River very rich and fertile; ſo natural for *Tobacco*, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. *Sugar-canes* grow here naturally without any planting, and on the ſhrubs great ſtore of *Cotton*, and the Dye by ſome called *Orellana*. Plenty of *Veniſon* in their Woods, and of *Fiſh* in their Rivers; their fields well ſtored with Beaſts, which themſelves call *Moyres*, in ſhape and uſe reſembling Kine, but without any horns. The people generally of a modeſt and ingenious countenance; Naked, but would wear cloaths if they had them, or knew how to make them. Their bread is made of a Plant called *Caſſavi*; of which alſo being dried and chewed, and then ſtrained thorow a wicker-veſſel, they make a kind of drink in colour like *new Ale*, but not ſo well taſted, and of leſs continuance. The greateſt part of their food is *Fiſh*, which they intoxicate with a ſtrong-ſented wood, and ſo take them up as they lie floating on the top of the water. Much troubled with a worm like a *Flea*, (by the *Spaniards* called *Nignas*) which get under the nails of their *Toes*, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no leſs torture of the *Patient*, without ſpeedy prevention: No better remedy found out, then to poure Wax melting hot on the place affected; which being pulled off when tis cold draws the *Vermin* with it, ſometimes 800 at a pull. The *women* of ſuch eaſie *child birth*, that they are delivered without help, and preſently bring the child to his father (for they have ſo much natural modeſty as to withdraw from company upon that occaſion) who waſheth it with water, and *painteth* it with ſeveral colours, and ſo returneth it to the mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleaſant and goodly ſtreams. The names of ſome of them on both ſides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long courſe, a goodly River all the way, and at the mouth thereof to be large and broad; which paſſing thorow the heart of the Country, in the 4 Degree & 40 minutes of Northern Latitude, may poſſibly occaſion both the whole, and this part more ſpecially to be called *Wiana*, & by the *Dutch* who cannot pronounce the double *VV*, *Guyana*. Certain I am that by the name of *Wiana* I have found it written in approved Authors. But what need further ſearch be made after leſſer Rivers, (which will offer themſelves to us of their own accord) when we have a *Lake* to paſs over like a Sea for bigneſs, (*magnum, famoſum, & vaſtum inſtar maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Yaos* or *Jaos* called *Raponowinin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimen*? Situate about a dayes journey from the River *Eſſequebo*: and neighboured by the great and famous City *Manoa*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado* (or the *Golden* City) from the abundance of Gold, in coin, plate, armour, and other furniture, which was ſaid to be in it. The greateſt City, as ſome ſay, not only of *America*, but of all the world. For *Diego de Ordas*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his *Mexican* wars, and by him condemned for a mutinie, put into a Boat alone without any victual, and ſo caſt off to ſeek his fortune; affirmed at his return, that being taken by

ſome

ſome of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King then reſiding at *Manoa*, he entred the City at high-noon, travelled all the reſt of that day, and the next alſo untill night, before he came to the Kings Palace; but then he ſaith that he was led blindfold all the way: And therefore poſſibly enough this City might be no ſuch miracle as the ſtory makes it; *Don Diego* being either abuſed by the reports of the *Savages*, or willing to abuſe the world with ſuch empty fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *Engliſh* have ſeverally ſought, and that with incredible diligence to find out this City, yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be ſaid in the Poets language,

——*Et quod non invenis uſquam,*
Eſſe putes nuſquam——i.e.

That which is nowhere to be found,
Think not to be above the ground.

Nor is there much more credit to be given unto his *Relations* of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*; who being forſook, one of the younger Brethren of *Atabaliba* the laſt King of *Peru*, at the conqueſt of that Kingdom with many thouſands of his Followers came into this Country, and ſubduing the *Caribes*, erected here a ſecond *Peruvian* Monarchy. For beſides that *Atabaliba* had no brethren but *Guaſcar* and *Mango* who both died in *Peru*, how improbable muſt it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing ſo well the thirſt of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either ſuffer him to return and diſcloſe the ſecrets of his State; or ſend him away loaded with Gold, as tis ſaid he did? VVho ſheweth his Treaſure to a Thiefe, doth deſerve to loſe it. And therefore letting paſs theſe dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us deſcend to places of leſs *Magnificence*, but of greater reality. Amongſt which I reckon 1 *Caripo*, moſt memorable for a Colonie of *Engliſh* there planted by Capt. *Robert Harcourt*, *An.* 1608. ſituate on the banks of the *Wiacopo*, near the mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock ſo difficult of acceſs, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Ayr ſo ſound and anſwerable to the conſtitution of an *Engliſh* body, that of 30 which were left there for three years together, there dyed but ſix, and thoſe ſix rather by misfortune, and ſome croſs accident, then by any diſeaſes. 2 *Gomeribo*, on the top of an hill near the mouth of the Bay of *Wiacopo*, poſſeſſed awhile by ſome *Hollanders*, but ſoon deſerted. 3 *Moyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Marwinen*., 4 *Crewinay*, on the other ſide of the ſame River, poſſeſſed by the *Caribes*: the King of the firſt (for each *Tribe* had its ſeveral Princes) being named *Maperitaka*, affirmed to be a vertuous man, and kind to *ſtrangers*; of the later, *Minapa*. 5 *Tanparamunen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River. And 6 *Moreſhego*, four dayes journey from the other; both poſſeſſed by the *Caribes*. The King, or *Cacique* of thoſe laſt, at Cap. *Harcourts* being there (of which time we ſpeak) named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of *Buff*.

The principal Families of this part, beſides the *Yaos*, or *Jagos*, and the *Maraons* ſpoken of before, who poſſeſs almoſt all the Sea-coaſts of this Country, are ſaid to be *Arwacca*, the *Sapayoy*, the *Mayos*, and the *Aracouri*; of different Languages, and Cuſtoms, though neer neighbours unto one another. Originally inhabitants of the Iland of *Trinidado*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Country, poſſeſſed themſelves of the Sea ſhores, and the parts adjoyning: each Tribe or Family being governed by its ſeveral *Chief*, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders* for a time had ſome footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their ſhort ſtay amongſt them, then to make the People diſ-affected to the *Engliſh*; of whoſe pretenſions to theſe parts, and deſigns to plant them they had good Intelligence. And ſo much was confeſſed by ſome of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance, how much the *Engliſh* were abuſed in thoſe miſ-reports. Afterwards in the year 1604. Captain *Charles Leigh* ſet Sail from *Woolwich* on the *Thames*, and in *May* fell upon the River of *Wiapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, gratified with an Houſe and Garden, and his Aide craved againſt the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of King *James* and the Crown of *England*; and cauſed the River of *Wiapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caroleigh*: but that name ended with his life, and that ſhortly after, he dying in his return on Ship-board. The deſign went forwards notwithſtanding, and in the year 1608 an *Engliſh* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new poſſeſſion taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned; the Country further ſearched into by that Noble Gentleman, then ever formerly by any, or by many ſince. After three years, the Colony wanting fit ſupply, returned home again; the Plantation never ſince purſued, though by ſome projected. Yet ſo far are theſe *Savages* beholding to the *Engliſh* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there againſt the *Caribes*, ſo at their going off they taught them the uſe of Arms, and put them into a *poſture of defence*; inabling them thereby to preſerve themſelves againſt all their Enemies.

3. *ORENOQUE*, or the Province of the River of *Orenoque* comprehendeth the North parts of *Guyana*, lying upon and towards the Banks of that famous River of which we have already ſpoken. The Country very rich and pleaſant, conſiſting of large Plains, many miles in compaſs, adorned with the embroydery of Flowers, and unknown Plants, exceeding pleaſant to the eye; and ſometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furniſhed with rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Rivers liberally

ſtored

ſtored with Fiſh, and the *Forreſts* both with Beaſts and *Fowls*. No Country in *America*, not *Peru* it ſelf, ſaid to be comparable to it for abundance of Treaſure. Some alſo add a whole Mountain of *Chryſtall* to be ſeen afar off from *Winecaporo*: and tell us (but in generall terms) of more goodly Cities then elſwhere in all *Peruana*, but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *Engliſh* could ever ſee them, though they diligently ſearched into moſt parts of this Country.

The People, as of ſeveral Nations, ſo of ſeveral Natures: The *Capuri*, and *Macureos*, for the moſt part *Carpenters*, live by making *Cunoas* or Boats, which they ſell into *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinadado* for *Tobacco*, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dyeth, they make great lamentation; and after the fleſh is putrified and fallen from the bones, they take up the *Skeleton*, and hang it up in the houſe where he dwelt, decking his skull with *Feathers* of all colours, and hanging gold Plates about the bones of his arms and thighs. Of the *Tivitivas* dwelling upon ſome of the Northern branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that are a goodly and valiant People, and to have the moſt manly and moſt deliberate ſpeech of any Nation in the World. A People which eat of nothing that is ſet or ſown: the children of Dame *Nature*, and therefore will not be beholding for their lively-hood unto Art, or Induſtry; uſing the tops of the *Palmito* Tree for Bread; Fiſh, Deer, and Swines-fleſh, for the reſt of their ſuſtenance. The *Aſſawy*, *Sayma*, *Wikeri*, and *Aroras*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with ſmoother hair: And to uſe Arrows dipt in ſo ſtrange a poyſon, as doth not only bring death, but death with moſt unſpeakable torments, eſpecially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwaca* of this Tract I finde nothing ſingular, but that when any of their Kings or *Caciques* die, their wives and neereſt of the kindred beat their bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink like ſpice.

Places of moſt importance in it (for to ſpeak any thing particularly of thoſe many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque*, were an endleſs labour) 1 *Comolaha*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but ſomewhat diſtant, in which they keep ſome Annual Fairs for the ſale of *Women*. One of our *Engliſh* men, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1595. affirmeth that he bought eight of them (the eldeſt not above eighteen) for a half-penny red hafted knife, which he brought from *England*: But withall telleth us for his credit that he gave them to ſome *Savages* of his acquaintance. 2 *Morequito*, a known Port upon ſome branch of the *Orenoque*; of much uſe to the *Engliſh* in their firſt Diſcovery of theſe parts. 3 *Wenicapora*, ſo called from another branch of that River bearing this name; from whence was ſhewed an high Hill ſaid to be of *Chryſtall*, but ſo far off, that it was thought better to believe then to go and ſee. Others report of this Mountain that above it there is a mighty River, which falling down this *Cataract* on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noiſe, as if 1000 Bells were knocked one againſt another. And poſſible enough it is, that this great fall of water diſcerned far off, may (with the help of Sun-ſhine) carry ſome reſemblance of a *Chryſtalline* Mountain. 4 *S. Thome*, ſituate on the Main Channel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 houſes, ſtretched out in length for half a mile, but ſlightly built; a Pariſh Church in the midſt of it, and at the Weſt end a Convent of *Franciſcan* Friers. The only Town of all *Guiana* poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; not fortified till againſt the laſt coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1617, but taken by him at that time, and ſince that by the *Hollanders*, *An.* 1629. though by both quitted not long after, it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The ſeverall Nations of this Tract have been named before, Diſcovered firſt by *Diego de Ordas*, *An.* 1531. furniſhed with a Patent for the conqueſt of it by *Charles* the fift. But not hitting on the right Channel, or otherwiſe not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain*: effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hierom de Ortal*, *Anno* 1533. and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded further then the others, *Anno* 1536. and finally by *Gonſalvo Ximenez de Queſada* and *Antonio Berreo* with far better fortune; who beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the ſearch of *Guiana*, fell caſually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly diſcovered till the yeer 1595. in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Priſoner this *Antonio Berreo*, and learning of him the ſucceſs of his Expedition, reſolved upon the undertaking: and ſearched ſo far into the Countrey by the courſe of this River, that ſome have ſince called it *Raliana*. The buſineſs followed the next yeer (after his return) by Captain *Lawrence Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that ſervice, who at his coming found the Country poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable houſes of the *Savages* had been laid together like a Town; and all the *Natives* who wiſhed well to the *Engliſh*, diſperſed and ſcattered. So that without any other effect of his journey, then the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he firſt diſcovered) he ſet ſail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the *Court*, that a Colony of *Engliſh* ſhould be planted there, and ſome proportionable force ſent over to make good the Action. But the motion upon good advice rejected, firſt in regard of the diſtance of it from the main body of our ſtrength: and 2. becauſe the *Spaniards* bordering neer upon it, might eaſily caſt out our ſmall Forces and make the enterpriſe diſhonourable to the *Engliſh* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of Honourable Atchievements. It was permitted notwithſtanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State: whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh*, and *Harcourt*, before ſpoken of. But they not being able to go thorow with ſo great a buſineſs, let it fall again. And ſo it reſted till the laſt unfortunate Voyage of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licenſed by Commiſſion under the great Seal to ſearch into ſome *Mines* of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Country. A deſign followed with great hopes by the *Undertakers*, moſt of them being perſons of honour, and well attended: but ſo unfortunate in the iſſue (the *Spaniards* being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking of S. *Thome*, he

he loſt his own Son, and a great part of his Forces; and after his return (not able with the reſidue to make good his ground againſt the Enemy) was executed on a former *Attaindure*, in the old *Palace* of *Weſtminſter*, Octob. 29. *An.* 1618. Of whom I cannot chooſe but note what is ſaid by *Camden Clarentieux*, in his *Annals*: *Vir erat nunquam ſatis laudato ſtudio & Regiones remotas detegendi, & Navalem* Angliæ *gloriam promovendi.* And ſo I leave him to his reſt in the bed of peace.

4. *THE ILANDS* which properly are accompted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either ſcattered on the ſhore, or in the mouths or bodies of the greater Rivers: ſome of them not inhabited, others of no name; and none at all of any reckoning. Only the Iſle of 1 *Trinidado*, and 2 *Tabago*, are of ſome eſteem: which though ſomewhat further off from the ſhores of this Conntry, yet being that of *Trinidado* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* paſs but for one *Prefecture* or *Provincial Government*, we ſhall deſcribe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDADO*, or *Inſula S. Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque* over againſt *Paria*, from which ſeparated by a *Frith* or *Streit*, by *Columbus* who firſt diſcovered it called *Boca del Drago*, or the *Dragons mouth*, becauſe of the dangerouſneſs of the paſſage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth Degree of *Northern* Latitude; the moſt Southern Angle of it called *Punta del Gallo*, as that on the North-eaſt *Punta de Galera*. The *Frith* or *Streit* but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the interpoſition of four or five little Ilands, which the Sea breaketh thorow with great violence, leaving only two entrances for ſhipping into the Golf, called the *Golf of Paria*. The length hereof 25 leagues, the breadth 18. of a cloudy and unhealthie Air, but a fertile Soil, abundantly well ſtored with ſuch commodities as are of the natural growth of *America*, viz. *Maize*, *Sugar-canes*, *Cotton-Wooll*, and the beſt kind of *Tobacco*, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidado*. Here is alſo a ſufficiencie of Fruits and Cattel for the uſe of the *Natives*; and here and there ſome veins of Gold and other metals: ſuch ſtore of *Pitch*, that innumerable ſhips might be laden with it; but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of ſhips, becauſe it ſoftneth in the ſun. The place in which it groweth, by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Brea*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The People of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with the other *Americans*: diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral *Tribes*, but moſt of them reduced under the power of two petit Princes. But the greateſt part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the tyrannie of the *Spaniards*, forſook their Country, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called *S. Joſephs*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the Iland, on the banks of a little River which the Natives call *Carone*, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour, who hath under him beſides this Iland the Provinces of *Guiana* and *El Dorado* (for ſo go his titles) yet a ſmall Town, conſiſting but of 40 houſes, when it was taken *An.* 1595. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; *Antonio Berreo* the Governour of it being then made priſoner, who furniſhed his taker with many notions (and ſome meerly fabulous) towards the diſcovery of *Guiana*.

This Iland firſt diſcovered by *Chriſtopher Columbus* in his third voyage, *An.* 1497. was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with ſome reference to the form hereof, ſhooting into the Sea with three *Points* or Promontories. Nothing elſe memorable in the fortunes and ſtory of it, but what is touched upon before.

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North-eaſt of *La Trinidad*, from which 8 miles diſtant: full of ſafe Harbours for the bigneſs, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well ſtored with Woods; amongſt which ſome *Palmito* trees, ſome like that of the *Braſil-Wood*, others not elſwhere to be found. Of Fowl and Fiſh ſufficient to maintain it ſelf. Now called *New Walcheren*, with reference to an Iland of that name in *Zealand*, by ſome of the *Low-Countrymen*, who begin to plant there.

OF

OF PARIA.

PARIA is bounded on the East with *Guiana*, and the Ilands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*; on the West with the *Golf* or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*; on the North with the main *Atlantick* Ocean, or *Mare del Noort*; the Countries lying on the South not discovered hitherto.

It took this name from a mistake of the *Spaniards* (as *Peru*, and *Jucutan* on the like) who asking, as all men do, the names of those new Regions which they discovered, and pointing to the hils afar off, were answered *Paria*, that is to say, *high hils*, or Mountains (for here begins that ledge of Mountains which are thence continued for the space of 3600 miles, to the streits of *Magellane*) and so hath it ever since held the name of *Paria*. By some Writers it is also called *Nova Andalusia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the soyl and people being very different, will be more properly considered in the several parts: The whole divided into the Continent and the Ilands; which with their subdivisions, may be branched into these particulars, *viz.* 1 *Cumania*. 2 *Venezuela*. 3 S. *Margarita*. 4 *Cubagua*, and 5 the lesser Ilands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the East the Golf of *Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the West *Venezuela*: on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it; on the banks whereof some Dominican Fryers (who first set footing in this Country) built themselves a *Monasterie*; that name communicated afterwards unto all the rest of this Tract.

It is extended East and West to the breadth of 110 Leagues; the length thereof from North to South, said to be 400. But there is little of it known, and less of it planted by the *Europæans*; except some places near the Sea: there being no part of all *America*, the description whereof hath come so imperfectly to our hands, as they have of this. For except it be the names of some *Bayes* or *Promontories*, and of two or three most noted Rivers, there is not much that doth require our consideration.

The Country, for so much as hath been discovered, neither rich nor pleasant; and consequently the less looked after: covered with shrubs, and overgrown with unprofitable Bryers and Bushes. Heretofore famed for *Pearl fishing*, all along the Coast, from the *Golf* of *Paria* to that of *Venezuela*, called therefore *Costa de las Perlas*; but that gainful trade hath long since failed it. Now only of esteem for a vein of most excellent *Salt*, found near the Promontorie of *Araya*, and the Bay of *Cariaco*; gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and yet never diminishing. The parts adjoyning take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontorie bordering on the Frith called *Boca del Drago*, the title or appellation of Cape *Salinus*. Of some strange Creatures in this Country, as the Beast called *Capa*, the soles of whose feet are like a shoo; a kind of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants or Pismires; Parrots, and Bats, of more then ordinary greatness, I forbear to speak.

Of the People I find nothing singular, except it be, that having plenty of good fruits, as of Fish and Flesh, they use themselves to a far worse dyet, feeding on *Horseleeches*, *Bats*, *Spiders*, *Grasshoppers*, *Worms*, *Lice*, and such other *Vermin*. In other things they seem to have a mixture of all ill customs used amongst the *Savages* of *Asia*, *Africk*, and *America*; as multitudes of wives, prostituting these wives for the first nights lodging, to the *Piacos*, or *Priests*; and for any after, to their *Guests*; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting strange colours on their bodies instead of garments; high-minded, treacherous, and revengeful; accustomed to the use of poysoned arrows, which they envenom with Snakes blood, and other mixtures. In one thing only different from the rest of their neighbours, which is the fencing of their Grounds or Orchards with a *Cotton-thred*, as high as ones Girdle; and an opinion which they have, that whosoever breaketh it, or goes over or under it, shall die immediatly. More safe in that perswasion, then by brazen walls.

Rivers of most note, though of little, 1 *Rio de Canoas*. 2 *Rio de Neveri*. 3 *Cumana de Bordones*. The chief Havens or Roads for shipping, 1 *Moxino*. 2 *S. Foy*. And 3 that called *Commenagot*. The places of most consideration, 1 *Cumana*, a Colonie of *Spaniards*, on the bank of the River of that name; but distant about two miles from the Sea, on which it hath a safe and convenient Harbour; the Town so hedged about with Woods, that nothing can be seen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governours house, seated upon the top of a lofty Mountain. 2 *S. Jago*, a strong Fortress built by the *Spaniards* for defence of the salt Lake, or *Salinas*, in the year 1622. on some intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpose to take them from him; fortified by the rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of Brass. 3 *S. Michael de Neveri*, on the River so called, a Fort of the *Spaniards*. 4 *Guaniba*, a Village of the *Natives*.

The Country first discovered in the third voyage of *Christopher Columbus*; but the possession of it was first taken by two *Dominicans*; who out of a *Religious* zeal to plant the Gospel in these parts; founded themselves a little *Cell* in the place where the burrough of *Cumana* was after built, *An.* 1513.

and

and doubtleſs had ſped very well in their *holy* purpoſe, if ſome covetous *Spaniards* had not treacherouſly ſeized upon one of the *Chiefs* of their *Tribes*, and carried him with his Wife and Train into *Spaniſh* bondage. For this the poor *Monks* ſuffered death; I may call it *martyrdom*; their death revenged by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, An. 1520. and he not long after ſlain by the *Savages*, who alſo at the ſame time deſtroyed two Convents of *Dominican* & *Franciſcan* Friers which had bin founded in the year 1518. A ſecond force ſent hither under *Gonſalvo de Ocampo*, waſteth a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs ſome of his people. But that ſtrength being withdrawn or defeated alſo, *Diego de Caſtellon* is ſent over by the Councel reſident in *Hiſpaniola*, to ſecure the poſſeſſion of the Country; by whom the Caſtle firſt, and after the Burrough of *Cumana*, was built and planted. Some other Attempts there were for a further conqueſt, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the Caſtle of S. *Michael de Neveri* by *Hierome of Ortal*, and the diſcovery of ſome of the inland Provinces 150 leagues from the Sea-ſide, by *Antonio Sedenno*, An. 1537. of which nothing followed, but the Regiſtring of that tedious March.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Cumana*; on the Weſt with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the New Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, one of the firſt Diſcoverers of it, *An.* 1599. becauſe he found a Burrough of ſome of the *Savages* ſituate in the middeſt of the waters, to which was no paſſage but by Boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt 130 leagues; in breadth where broadeſt about 80. The ſoil ſo plentiful of all ſorts both of fruit and grain; the Country ſo repleniſhed with all kind of Cattel, and excellent paſtures to maintain them, that the neighbouring Nations call it by the name of *the Granarie*. Such ſtore there goeth from hence of Wheaten meale, *Biſcoct*, Cheeſe, Hogs-fleſh, Oxe hides, and Cloth of Cotton ready made, as very well deſerves that title. Here is alſo very great plenty of Fiſh, Wild-beaſts for hunting, *Mines* of Gold and other metals; beſides an infinite deal of *Sarzaparilla* ſent to *Europe* yearly.

The People of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with thoſe of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that *Character*. The women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and ſwim, as well as the men; to till the land, and look to the buſineſs of the houſe, whileſt the men hunt or fiſh, to bring in proviſion. They count it a great part of beauty, to have very thick thighs; which they effect, by binding their legs hard below the knee, from their very childhood. Shameleſs enough till married, after more reſerved; though rather for fear of a divorce, then for love of modeſtie.

Rivers of note I meet with none; in ſtead of which many convenient Harbours and capacious Bayes. The chief, that called *Golfo triſte*, from ſome ſhipwracks or the like misfortune hapning to the Namer of it. 2 The Bay of *Coro* or *Venezuela*, large and ſpacious, which by a *Frith* or Streit of half a league over, receiveth the tribute of 3 The great Lake called the *Lake* of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lugo de Nueſtra Sennora*, or our *Ladies Lake*, in compaſs about 80 leagues; on the banks whereof dwell many Nations of the *Savages*, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain commerce with one another.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Maracapana*, the furtheſt Port upon the Eaſt, and one of the beſt on all this Coaſt; in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagna* had once a Garriſon, under colour of defending the Country againſt the *Savages*, but in plain truth to uſe it for an opportunity to ſeize upon their perſons and carry them away for *Slaves*. Thoſe parts hereby unpeopled, or but meanly populous. 2 *Venezuela*, the moſt Weſtern Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro*, ſituate in the *Latitude* of 11 Degrees: built on the Sea, where it hath an Haven on each ſide; the one capacious, but not ſafe; the other ſafe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a ſweet and healthie aire, and neighboured by the richeſt ſoil of all the Country, it hath been long the ordinary ſeat of the *Governour*, and the See of a *Biſhop* (Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*.) Once ſuddenly ſurprized by the *Engliſh*, An. 1595. and burnt to aſhes, but as ſuddenly repaired again. 3 *Caravalleda*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de Caravalada*, 80 leagues from *Coro* towards the Eaſt, ſeated upon the Sea neer an unſafe Haven, and defended from aſſault by the Caſtle of *Caracas*, ſo called from the name of the *Tribe* in which it ſtandeth. Neer unto which the hils ariſe to ſo great an height, that they ſeem to equal the *Pike* of *Tenariffe* ſo much talked of. 4 S. *Jago de Leon*, in the ſame tribe of the *Caracas*, took by the *Engliſh* the ſame year. 5 *Nova Valentia*, 25 leagues from S. *Jago de Leon*, and from *Coro* 60. 6 *New Xeres*, lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *New Valentia*. 7 *Nova Segovia*, one league only from *New Xerez*; ſituate on the banks of *Baraquicemiti*, the moſt noted River of this tract. 8 *Tucuyo*, in the Valley ſo called; not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich *Sugar-canes*, for which ſome *Sugar works* or *Ingenios* are here lately built. 9 *Truxillo*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de la Paz*. eighteen leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a *Factorie* for the ſale of their wares. 10 *Laguna*, on the bottom of the *Lake* it ſelf; not elſe obſervable but for the multitude of *Tygers* which do haunt about it.

This Country diſcovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alfonſo de Oreda*, as before is ſaid, was firſt pretended to for Neighbourhoods-ſake, by the *Spaniards* planted in *Cubagna*. Afterwards *John de Anpuez*, by order from the Counſell reſident at *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*, was employed in the Diſcovery of it, *An.* 1527. But *Charles* the fift having taken up great ſums of money of the *Velſeri*, a wealthy

thy Family of *Augſpurg*, pawned this Country to them; by whom *Ambroſius Alfinger* was ſent with 400 foot and 80 horſe, to take poſſeſſion. But he and his Succeſſors in that imployment, not minding ſo much the Conqueſt as the ſpoil of the Country; the Counſell of *Domingo* undertook the buſineſs once again; and in the year 1545. ſent over one *John de Caravajal*, who treading in the ſteps of the *Germans*, or rather outgoing them in all ſorts of Rapine, was outed on a ſecond order by one *John Perez de Toloſa*, by whom the Province was reduced into ſome good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africk*, began to mutiny; but their Deſign diſcovered, and themſelves all ſlain. Peace and contentment following after all theſe troubles, the Country was in little time ſo thorowly planted, and the Natives ſo incouraged in their ſeveral Tribes, that notwithſtanding the deſtructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*, here were reckoned not long ſince above 100000 of the *Savages*, not numbring thoſe above fifty or under eighteen years of *Age*; who by an Order of the Counſell of *Spain* for theſe parts of *America*, are exempt from *Taxes*.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Iland ſituate over againſt the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*; from the Main-land whereof it is diſtant about ſeven Leagues. So called from the abundance of *Pearls* which the *Spaniards* found at the firſt Diſcovery, which the *Latiniſts* call *Margaritæ*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it ſignifie no other then the Vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were alſo ſtore of thoſe of the greater eſtimate, ſuch as the *Romans* by the figure of *Antiphraſis* called *Uniones*, becauſe they always grew in couples. *Nulli duo reperiuntur indiſcreti*, ſaith *Plinie*; *unde nomen* Unionum *ſcilicet* Romanæ *impoſuere deliciæ*.

The Iſle affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length, and ſix in breadth; ſituate under the 11. Degree of *Northern* Latitude. Well ſtored with *Pearls* upon the Shores, when firſt diſcovered; but even then when moſt plentifully ſtored with that Commodity, ſhe had not water of her own to quench her thirſt, compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwiſe plentifull enough both of *Maize*, and Fruits. The People obſequiouſly ſervile to their Lords, the *Spaniards*; ſo long accuſtomed unto bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Monpater*, in the Eaſt corner of the Iland, a Fort of the *Spaniards*, built for ſecuring their rich Trade of *Pearl fiſhing*, and to defend their ſhips which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the houſe of the Governour. 2 *El valle de Santa Luzia*, two Leagues from the Sea, a *Spaniſh* Colony. 3 *Makanao*, the chief Village of the *Natives*.

This Iland firſt diſcovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, *Anno* 1498. grew ſuddenly into great eſteem, by reaſon of the rich *Pearl fiſhing*, which they found on the ſhores thereof. And in regard the *Natives* were ſo ready to betray their Treaſures (of which themſelves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the *Spaniards*, and obtained more liberties from the King, then the reſt of the *Savages*. Inſomuch that the *Spaniards* either could not or would not compell them to dive into the Sea for *Pearl*; but bought *Negro* ſlaves from *Guinea*, and the Coaſts of *Africk*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive unto the bottom of the Sea, many times ſeven or eight Fathom deep, to bring up the *ſhels*, in which that Treaſure was included: where many of them were drowned, and ſome maimed with *Sharks*, and other Fiſhes. But that rich Trade is much diminiſhed of late, if it fail not quite. The cauſe thereof to be imputed to the unſatiable avarice of the *Spaniards*, ſo greedy upon *Pearl*, that they deſtroyed the very *Seed*, and making gain of whatſoever they could meet with, for a little preſent profit loſt the hopes of the future. The Iland ſince leſs famous, and not much frequented. Viſited to its coſt in the year 1601, by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, who received here 500. l. in Pearls for the ranſom of Priſoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coaſt of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes*, to be ſold for *Slaves*.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Iland lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the firſt diſtant but one League, from the other ſix; it ſelf in compaſs about three. Rich on the ſhores, by the abundance of *Pearls* which were found about them, but very beggerly on the Land. Deſtitute both of graſs and water, by conſequence of Cattel alſo, except only *Conies*, and but few of thoſe. So that like many a Gallant who ſpend all upon the *back*, and nothing on the *belly*, ſhe had her out-ſide laced with *Pearls*, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their bread and water brought them out of other Countries; and their Fruits too, if they deſired to have any; here being very few Trees, and thoſe moſt of *Guyayacan*. But ſo abundant in this Treaſure, that the Kings Fifths for many yeers amounted to 15000 *Ducats* yeerly out of this poor Iland.

In this reſpect it was preſently reſorted to, and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony which they called *New Cadiz*: and grew in ſhort time unto ſo great power, that they made themſelves Maſters of the Port of *Maracapana Venezuela*, one of the beſt upon thoſe Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the *Savages* of *Cumana* had deſtroyed the Convent of *Franciſcans* on the oppoſite Shore, they cowardly forſook the Iland, and fled to *Hiſpaniola*. Sent back again by the *Counſel* there, under the conduct of *James de Caſtellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautiful and ſtrong then ever formerly. In great eſteem as long as the *Pearl fiſhing* did continue; now, with that decayed. Yet ſtill the Iland doth deſerve ſome conſideration, for a Fountain on the Eaſt part of it neer unto the Sea: continuing, though the *Pearls* be gone; which yieldeth a *Bituminous* ſubſtance like oyl, *Medicinable* for ſome diſeaſes, and is found two or three Leagues off, floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of Mankinde, and more eaſily found, then the *Pearls* which ſunk unto the bottom, and maintained our pride.

Four

Four miles from hence, but appendant to it, lieth a little Iland called *Coche*, three miles in compaſs, but ſo abundantly ſtored with *Pearls*, that it hath been worth in that one commodity for ſome moneths together, above a thouſand pounds a moneth of our *Engliſh* money. Firſt peopled, upon that occaſion, *An* 1529. but the occaſion failing, the *Plantation* ended, the Iſle being now unpeopled, as not worth the looking after.

5. *THE LESSER ILANDS* of this *Praefecture* or *Provincial* Government, lie all along upon the Coaſt of *Venezuela*, from Eaſt to Weſt; the principal of which 1 *Tortuga*, 12 or 14 miles on the Weſt of *Margarita*; four miles in length, hardly one in breadth; but yielding ſuch good ſtore of Salt, that three or four ſhips are laded with it every year. Well furniſhed with Goats and *Guayacan*; but not elſe conſiderable: except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the uſe of Mariners. 2 *Bonaire*, oppoſite to the Bay of *Golfo triſte*, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees; well-furniſhed with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattell, brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with ſome *Savages* out of *Hiſpaniola*, whom the *Spaniards* Chriſtened and ſent thither: ſome *Spaniards* with their Governour intermixt amongſt them. The Iland 16 miles in compaſs; not fruitfull naturally but in Trees, which are great and numerous. 3 *Curacaos*, nine miles on the Weſt of *Bonaire*, and as many in compaſs. Of a more fertile ſoyl by far, and of very rich Paſtures: the People given to grazing, and make great ſtore of Cheeſe, tranſported thence to other places: the Iland having towards the North, a convenient Harbour. 4 *Aruba*, on the North-eaſt of *Curaçaos*, from which nine miles diſtant; in compaſs not above five miles, for the moſt part level. One hill it hath (amongſt ſome others) faſhioned like a *Sugar-loaf*. Inhabited by few *Savages*, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Ilands on this Coaſt, as the *Toſtigos*, lying Eaſtwards of *Margarita*; 2 *Blanca*, 3 *Orchilla*, 4 *Rocca*, and 5 the *Iſle des Aves*, or of Birds, interpoſed betwixt *Tortuga* and *Bonaire*; ſome of them rather *Rocks* then Ilands: few ſtored with any living Creatures for the uſe of men; and none of them at all with men to manure and dreſs them: I paſs over here. And ſo proceed from theſe Ilands of the Province of *Paria*, to thoſe which are ſubordinate to the Counſel of S. *Domingo*, and make a Province of themſelves. But firſt we muſt go back, and bring up ſome of the Ilands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And ſo much of PERUANA.

OF THE AMERICAN ILANDS:

And first of those which are in *MARE DEL ZUR.*

THE *AMERICAN ILANDS*, scattered up and down the Shores of this *New World*, are commonly divided into those of *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacifique* Ocean; and those of the *Atlantick*, or *Mare del Noort*. The first so called by *Magellanus*, the first Discoverer: who passing thorow those troublesome and tempestuous Streits which now bear his name, found such a change upon his coming into the *Main*, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur (quod à tranquillitate vocavit Mare del Sur*, saith the Author of the *Atlas Minor)* from the calm and peaceable temper of it. By the *Latines* called *Mare Pacificum*, in the same regard. Called also the *Southern* Ocean, because of its situation on the South-side of *America*, in reference to some part of the *Golf* of *Mexico*, and the Streits of *Anian*. Not known unto the *Spaniards* till discovered by *Nonnius Vasques de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Caciques* or petit Kings of the Country about *Nombre di Dios*; Who seeing the *Spaniards* so greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirst should be satisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the opposite shore, this *Balboa* being the chief man in that Adventure: who discovering further on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the rest that followed to the *golden treasures* of *Peru*: Executed notwithstanding this good service by *Don Pedro de Avila*, within short time after. But the more full discovery of it is to be ascribed unto *Magellanus* and some later Adventurers, though the *Spaniards* got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as this *Southern* Sea was unknown to any but themselves, they conveyed their Gold and treasures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loss or charge, and thought their Ports upon that shore to be unaccessible. But after the way unto this Sea was found out by *Magellanus*; *Drake*, *Cavendish*, and the rest of our *English* Adventurers did so scoure these Coasts, that they left them neither Port, nor Ship, which they did not ransack; as hath been evidenced before in some particulars.

As for the Ilands of this Sea, they lie most of them so neer the shores, as if placed there by Nature to serve as *Out-works* to defend the *Continent*. Many in tale, but few of consideration; and of those few some of the chief have been described already in their proper places, as parts and members of the *Province* upon which they lie. The residue which lie too far off to come under such consideration, must be mentioned here; and those reduced to these two Heads, 1 *Los Ladrones*, & 2 the Ilands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Ilands situate betwixt the main Land of *America* and the *Philippine* Ilands, in the *Longitude* of 185. and the 4. Degree of *Northern* Latitude. So called by *Magellanus* who first discovered them, because of the *thievishness* of the Inhabitants, (*Insula Latronum* is their name in *Latine*) who had stollen his *Cock-boat*, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue still both their name and nature. Found such by *Cavendish* and *Noert* in their several Voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying *Iron* (a commodity which they highly prize) but either closely or openly stealing whatsoever they met with. The people tall of stature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulencie; extremely active, and good *Divers*, continuing a long time under the water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; insomuch as the *Hollanders* then with *Noort*, to make trial of it, cast five peeces of *Iron* into the Sea, all fetched out by one of them: The *women* as good at it as the men. Both Sexes given to filthy and promiscuous lusts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their incontinencie, the *Pox* having eaten off both their Lips and Noses.

Their Religion is worshipping the *Devil*, whose Images they have in wood on the head of their Boats; the Chappel and the Saint fit for such devotions. But for the nature of these Ilands, and what subjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of *Spain*, I am yet to seek. But like enough they yield as little as some others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authors to be parts of *America*.

2. The Ilands of *John Fernandes*, are two in number: so called from *John Fernandes* the first Discoverer, *An.* 1574. each of them five or six miles in compass, and about 300 miles distant from the shores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33. Degree of *Southern* Latitude; rockie and barren, but well wooded, and those woods repleniſhed with Goats, but their flesh not so savourie as in other places. Some store of *Sanders* there is in them, and of Palms no scarcitie. Plenty of Fish upon the shores, for which cause visited sometimes by the *Spaniards* living in *Peru*: and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads

for

for ſhipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they paſs this way. None elſe of note in all this Sea, but ſuch as lie upon the Shores of their ſeveral Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore paſſing thorow the *Straits*, and coming up unto the Ilands of *Paria*, where before we left; we will now look on thoſe of *Mare del Noort*, or that part of the *Atlantick* which waſheth the ſhores of this *New world* (the reaſon of which names we have ſeen before) ſubordinate to the Counſell or Government of S. *Domingo*, viz. 1 the *Caribes*, 2 *Porto Rico*, 3 *Hiſpaniola*, 4 *Cuba*, and 5 *Jamaica*. The reſt already ſpoken of in their proper places.

1. *THE CARIBES.*

THE CARIBES or *Cannibal Ilands*, are in number many; 27 of them known by their proper names; the reſt, of leſs note (though ſome of theſe of little enough) not yet ſo diſtinguiſhed. Called thus in general, becauſe inhabited by *Cannibals* and Man-eating People (at their firſt Diſcovery) as the word *Caribes* doth import. They lie extended like a Bow from the Coaſt of *Paria* unto the Iſle of *Porto Rico*: of different temper, as muſt needs be in ſuch variety; and therefore not within the compaſs of a general *Character*. Some of the principal we ſhall conſider more diſtinctly; and for the reſt it will be trouble enough to name them, or elſe paſs them by.

1. *GRANADA* the neereſt of this crew to the Main-land of *Cumana*, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 12 Degrees and 15 Minutes; in form like a *Creſcent* or half Moon, the two horns not a mile aſunder, the whole length but ſix. Shaded all over with thick Woods, but notwithſtanding of a rich and fruitfull ſoil. A Haven in it of good uſe; but no Town of note. The People of the ſame ill condition with the other *Savages*, but more wit to hide it; moſt miſchievouſly intended when they ſeem moſt kinde; and then the more to be avoided.

2. S. *VINCENT* 18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of ſo bleſſed a ſoil, that it brings forth abundance of *Sugar-Canes* without charge to the Husbandman, Watered with many pleaſant Rivers, and full of ſafe and convenient *Bayes* for the uſe of Marriners. In figue *Circular*, the *Diameter* being ſix miles over; the *Circle* by conſequence eighteen. The People but of mean ſtature, ſlothfull, and ſtudious only for their Belly: their love to which makes them to adventure in their ſmall Boats, hewn out of the body of a Tree, to paſs into the *Continent*, and return again, without help of the *Compaſs*; though diſtant from it at the neereſt, above 30 miles.

3. *BARBADOS* on the North-eaſt of S. *Vincent*, in the *Latitude* of 13 Degrees, and 20 Minutes. Of an *Oval* form, 17 or 18 miles in compaſs. The ſoil in ſhew like that of *England*, but far more fruitfull: on the Eaſt ſide thruſting out it ſelf with Points and Angles, which yield ſome *Bayes*, but full of *Quick-Sands*, and unſafe for ſhipping, on the South furniſhed with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very well provided of for Fruits or Cattel, till made a Colony of the *Engliſh*; who have brought thither from their own Country, Swine and Kine; *Oranges*, and the like from others. The chief Commodity made hitherto of this Plantation, comes by the planting of *Tobacco*; and by a kinde of courſe Sugar called *Barbados Sugar*, which muſt be quickly ſpent or will melt to nothing. Were they in ſtock, and not forced to make a quick return of their Commodities, they might make here as good *Sugars* as in other places. Yet this Plantation ſaid to be worth all the reſt which are made by the *Engliſh*; who (as I take it) are the ſole Colony in it: The Iland but at the courteſie of the *Spaniard*; without whoſe leave and liking not of force to hold it.

4. *MATININO* on the North-weſt of the *Barbados*, by the Salvages called *Madaninam*, with little difference. Everywhere ſwelled with Hills, of which three moſt eminent for height: one of them, which way ſoever a man looks upon it, carrying the reſemblance of an *Hat*. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian, with none but *Women*: afterwards, with a more fierce and barbarous People then the reſt of theſe Ilands: but neither Men or VVomen to be ſeen of late: whether deſtroyed, or removed further from the ſhores for fear of their deſtruction, is a thing uncertain.

5. *DOMINICA*, ſeated on the North of *Matinino*, twelve Leagues in length; exceeding fruitfull of *Tobacco*, which they ſell unto the *Europeans* for *Hatchets*, *Knives*, and other Inſtruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of *Hot-water*, and a commodious Haven at the Weſt ſide of it, into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The People as barbarous as ever *Cannibals* or *Man-eaters* to this very day: At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, and to no man truſty, but where they cannot hurt or dare not. Both Sexes wear their hair long, and colour their bodies over with *Oaker*. Yet bloody and barbarous though they be, they are ruled by a King of their own, diſtinguiſhed from the reſt in his dreſs or habit, whom they moſt readily obey.

6. *DESSEADA*, or the Land of *Deſire*, on the North-eaſt of *Dominica*, Diſcovered by *Columbus* in his ſecond Voyage; naked of Trees, and at the firſt ſight afar off, not unlike a *Galley*. Of great uſe to the *Spaniards*, who always take it in their way from the *Canaries* to the parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The

The like uſe do they make of 7. The Iſle of *GUADALUPE*, *parallel* to this, but directly Weſtward: at which the Fleets which come from *Spain* uſe to take freſh water, and there diſperſe themſelves to their ſeveral Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in moſt parts of the Sea adjoyning. North-eaſt from hence lieth

8. S. *Maria del Antigna*, commonly called *ANTIGNA* onely, and by ſome miſtakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven leagues in length, and as much in breadth; difficult of acceſs, and deſtitute of freſh water, but well repleniſhed of woods, and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colonie of the *Engliſh*, who do ſtill poſſeſs it.

9. *S. CHRISTOPHER*, on the North-weſt of *Guadalupe*, in the *Latitude* of 17 Degrees & 20 Minutes. The length ſix miles, the breadth in many places four, and in ſome but two: much ſwelled with hils, and towards the Eaſt provided of ſeveral *Salt-wiches*. The *French* and *Engliſh* had ſometimes in it their ſeveral Colonies: by whom the *Natives* were deſtroyed, or otherwiſe compelled to forſake their dwellings; convict, as was pretended, of ſome manifeſt treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the ſole poſſeſſion; ejected by *Frederick de Toledo*, as he paſſed this way with his Navie; though ſuffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable then dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief employment and commoditie lies in their *Tobacco*, by ſome much commended. Joyning hereto, or but a League from it at the moſt, is

10. The Iſle of *NIEVES*, affirmed to be five leagues in compaſs; well wooded and as pleaſantly watered; inſomuch as the Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Dominica* uſed to come hither for their pleaſures, but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for ſome *Bathes* or *Hot Waters*, found out by the *Engliſh*, who in the year 1528. placed a Colonie in it. But whether ſubſiſting of it ſelf, or a part of their Plantation in *S. Chriſtophers*, I am yet to learn.

11. *SANCTA CRUX*, by the Inhabitants called *Ayay*, on the North-weſt of S *Chriſtophers*, and the South-eaſt of *Porto Rico*, from which laſt diſtant 15 leagues. Woody and mountainous; not well provided of freſh waters; but on the Weſt-ſide furniſhed with a ſafe and commodious Road, under the covert of the mountains. Amongſt their fruits ſome that reſemble a *green Apple*; which taſted, ſo inflames the tongue, that for 24 houres it ſwelleth in ſo great extremity, as makes it altogether uſeleſs, but after that by little and little it abates again. The like hapneth alſo to the face, if waſhed before ſun-riſing with their *Fen-waters*, which are very frequent in this Iland; after the riſing of the ſun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colonie of the *Engliſh* alſo, but of later ſtanding then thoſe of *S. Chriſtophers* and *Barbados*.

Some of the principal of the reſt, 1 *Anguilla*, 2 *Barbada*, 3 *S. Bartholmews*, 4 *S Lucies*, 5 *S. Martins*, 6 *Montferrat*, 7 *Rotunda*, 8 *Saba*, 9 *Virgo Gorda*, & 10 *Sumbrero*; of which we have little but the names: the reſt, though known by ſeveral names, are not worth the naming. Onely we are to adde concerning the whole Nation of *Caribes*, once here inhabiting, that they did uſually hunt for Men, as Men for Beaſts, roving as far as *Porto Rico* to ſeek after their prey; and what they caught, was ſure to *go to the pot*, in the worſt ſenſe too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Iſle of *Guadalupe*, found 30 Captive Children which were reſerved to be eaten, and in their houſes divers veſſels filled with *Mans fleſh*, and ſome upon the *ſpit* ready to be roaſted. Nor had they laid aſide this diet, till after the year 1564. but how long I know not: For at that time, a *Spaniſh* ſhip coming to water at the Iſle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Ilands have been of late times well cleered of theſe Monſters; ſome of them brought unto better order, but the moſt deſtroyed as the common Enemies of mankind; the Ilands where they dwelt being either totally deſerted, or taken up by the *Europæans* and their ſeveral Colonies.

2. *PORTO RICO*. And 3. *MONICO*.

PORTO RICO lyeth on the North-weſt of *Santta Crux*, from which diſtant about 15 Leagues, and near upon as many from *Hiſpaniola*, 136 Leagues from the main Land of *Paria*, and not much leſs from the Cape of *Coquibocco* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Caſtella Aurea*. It took this name from the chief Town and Haven of it; but was called by *Columbus* at the firſt diſcovery S. *Johannis Inſula*, or the Iſle of S. *Johns*; by the Natives *Boriguen*.

It is ſituate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern *Latitude*; in form *quadrangular*, but of a greater length then breadth, ſuch as the *Geometricians* call *oblongum*: The length thereof being 30 Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Ayr hereof very pleaſant and temperate, not ſcorched with furious heats in Summer, nor made offenſive by the fall of continual rains; expoſed ſometimes (chiefly in *Auguſt* and *September*) to the troubleſomneſs of ſudden tempeſts, called *Hericanos*. The ſoyl indifferently fruitful, though ſomewhat Mountainous: here being (beſides other Hils of inferiour note) a ridge of high Hils which run croſs the Country from the one end unto the other. Their chief commodities *Sugar canes*, *Ginger*, *Caſſia*, and great ſtore of Hides: the *Europæan* Cattle having ſo abundantly increaſed, that they kill thouſands for their skins; leaving the fleſh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some *Mines* here were of Gold and Silver, but conſumed long ſince. And ſo are all the *Natives* alſo; of whom, in that reſpect, impertinent to give any Character.

Chief

Chief Rivers of the Iland, 1 *Cairobon*, 2 *Boyaman*: of divers fountains, and of ſeverall and divided courſes. 3 *Luyſa*, & 4 *Toa*, two Rivers growing out of one. The Spring of that one in the Mountains of *Guayamo*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 Leagues together, doth afterwards divide it ſelf into thoſe two ſtreams. 5 *Guiano*. 6 *Arezibo*. 7 *Guabiabo*; of leſſer note; but all of them, as well as all the reſt before, concluding in ſome ſafe and capacious *Haven*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Porto Rico* the chief town, built in a little Iland, on the North ſide of the greater, but joyned unto it with huge piles, and vaſt expences, by the command of *Philip* the firſt, *An.* 1514. Well built, with large ſtreets, and convenient houſes, according to the model of the Cities of *Spain*; and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*; the Biſhop one of the *Suffragans* of the Archbiſhop of S. *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*. The town unwalled, but fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles: the one of which ſecures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loſs of 40 or 50 men, by Sir *Francis Drake*, *An.* 1595. but taken two years after by *George* Earl of *Cumberland*, who had a purpoſe to have peopled it with an *Engliſh* Colonie. Diſcouraged from it by the death of 400 of his men, by change of Ayr, and ſome intemperance of Diet; he ſet ſayl for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Iland, but the diſfurniſhing it of 70 piece of Ordnance, and ſome part of their treaſure, which he brought home with him. 2 S. *Germans*, in the Weſtern part of the Iland, but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Iland, now both unfortified, and ſmall. 3 *Arezibo*, on the River ſo called. 4 *Luyſa*, the moſt noted Port of the Eaſtern parts, ſituate on the mouth of the River ſo named.

Eaſtward hereof betwixt it and *Hiſpaniola*, lies the Iland of *Mona*, (might not this think we be ſo called by *Madoc ap Owen Gwinedth*, of whom before?) three Leagues in compaſs; rockie and of a brackiſh earth; but fit for the production of Limons, Orenges, and ſuch kind of fruits, which are here in plenty. Not far off, but more towards the Weſt, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *Engliſh* call it, where they found ſuch infinite ſtore of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as Hail, and made them almoſt deaf with the very noiſe; their Eggs ſo thick upon the ground, that they loaded two Boats with them in three hours, and could hardly paſs forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Iſle of S. *Johns*, it was firſt touched upon by *Columbus* in his ſecond voyage, *An.* 1493. but firſt inhabited by *John Ponce* of *Leon*, *An.* 1510. who being courteouſly entertained by *Aignabana*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colonie of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Iland, which he called *Caparra*. The Colonie ten years after that removed to *Guanica*, and from thence to S. *Germans*: carrying with it the repute of the chief town of all the Iland, upon every remove, till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it ſince hath fixed. The Iland very populous for the bigneſs of it, when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives long ago conſumed by ſeveral *Butcheries*; and as ſome write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* in all the Country. What elſe concerns the ſtorie of it, we have ſeen before.

4 *HISPANIOLA.*

HISPANIOLA lyeth on the Weſt of *Porto Rico*; the diſtance we have ſeen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haitia*, and by ſome *Quiſqueia*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hiſpaniola*, or *little Spain*; and of late times beginneth to be called S. *Domingo*, from the chief Town of it.

The form thereof *Triangular*, extended in a ſharp *Angle*, called *Cabo del Enganno*, towards *Porto Rico*: the Weſtern end faſhioned like a large Bay, or *Semicircle*; the Northern point of which is named S. *Nicholas*; the Southern, *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in ſome places 60. in ſome but 30. thence growing leſs and leſs till it come unto the Eaſtern Angle; the whole compaſs eſtimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 & 20 Degrees of Northern *Latitude*. Of an Air much infeſted with Morning-heats, but cooler in the Afternoon by the conſtant blowing of a Sea-gale, which they there call *Viraſon*.

The Country for the moſt part beautiful and flouriſhing; the Trees alwayes in their *Summer-livery*, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual Spring. In many places ſwelled with high craggie Mountains, whence the name of *Hayty*, that word ſo ſignifying in the natural language of the *Natives*. Of ſuch an excellent herbage, that the Cattel brought hither out of *Spain* have increaſed almoſt beyond *Arithmetick*; grown wilde for want of *proper Owners*; and hunted unto death like the Stags of the forreſt, though onely to rob them of their skins. The ſoil ſo fertile, that in the ſpace of ſixteen dayes Herbs and Roots will grow ripe, & be fit to be eaten. So plentifully ſtored with *Ginger*, and *Sugar-canes*, that in the year 1587. there were ſhipped hence 27500. pound weight of Ginger, and 900. Cheſts of refined Sugar; an evident argument of the riches and fertility of it. A further proof hereof may be, the rich *Mines* of Gold, in which they uſed to find Gold without mixture of droſs or other metals. 2 The great increaſe of Sugar, one Cane here filling twenty, ſometimes thirty meaſures. 3 The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in ſome places to an hundred fold. But the *Mines* were long ago exhauſted, inſomuch as the Inhabitants are fain to uſe braſs-money: but in ſtead of thoſe of Gold, they have found out others of Braſs and Iron, and ſome few of *Silver*; but not much ſearched into of late for want of Workmen.

The reaſon of that want to be aſcribed unto the Covetouſneſs and Crueltie of the *Spaniſh* Nation: who out of an unſatiable thirſt for Gold, conſumed the people in their *Mines*; and out of the like thirſt for Blood, killed ſo many of them, that in few years they deſtroyed three *Millions* of the Natives. And it is probably ſuppoſed, that had not *Charles* the 5. reſtrained them by a *Penal Edict* from compelling the *Natives* againſt their wils to thoſe works of ſervitude, there had not been one *Native* left in

all

all this Iland, nor in any other part of their *Plantations*. Such as are left, are said to be of low stature, of black hair, and a complexion somewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in manners, habit, or Religion from the *Spaniards* there.

Rivers of most note, 1 *Ozama*, on whose Banks stands *Domingo*, the chief Town of the Iland, capable of the greatest ships to the very Wharf. 2 *Nigua*, which passing thorow rich Pastures, or making the Pastures rich, by its secret vertue; runneth towards the West: as do also, 3 *Yaquimo*, 4 *Nizao*, and 5 *Neyba*. 6 *Hayna*, of a contrary course to the other three. 7 *Yaqui*, or *Jacho*, which falleth into the Northern Seas. 8 *Nicayagua*, 9 *Cocitemuco*, 10 *Xanique*. These three last famous heretofore for their *Sands* of *Gold*. Some speak of 30000 Brooks and Rivers, which are found in this Countrey; two parts of which vast number had their *Golden Sands*. A thing so far beyond the charity of the strongest Faith, (though reported by a grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what Interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-course, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided, when the *Spaniards* first came amongst them, into several Provinces or Kingdoms, as 1 *Higuey*, 2 *Jacuaguia*, 3 *Samana*, in the Eastern parts. 4 *Yaquimo*, 5 *Boaruco*, and 6 *Xaragua*, towards the South. 7 *Guahabu*, and 8 *Cabaya*, in the West: and in the North, 9 *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold; 10 *Marien*, the Landing place of *Columbus*; and 11 *Maguana* in the center of the Iland, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Conabo*, of greatest power of any of those petit Roytelets. Another division of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all rising from one Mountain in the midst of the Iland into four Divisions: the River *Jache* running towards the North; 2 *Nubiba* hastning to the South; 3 *Yuna*, or *Junna* towards the East; and 3 *Hatibonico* to the West. But these divisions being long since grown out of use, we will survey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are 1 S. *Domingo*, first built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, *Anno* 1494. on the East bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1502) removed by *Nicolas de Obando*, then Governour of the Iland to the opposite shore. Situate in a pleasant Country, amongst wealthy Pastures, and neighboured with a safe and capacious *Haven*: the houses elegantly built, most of them of stone, and the whole well walled, beside a Castle at the VVest end of the Peer to defend the Haven: enriched by the residence of the Governour, the *Courts* of Justice, the See of an *Archbishop* (and besides many Convents and Religious houses) an *Hospital* endowed with 20000 *Ducats* of yeerly Rent. Esteemed of greatest Trade and concourse of Merchants till the taking of *Mexico*, and the Discovery of *Peru*; since that time sensibly decaying; and now reduced unto the number of 600 Families of *Spaniards*; the greatest part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negros*, *Mulatos*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586 took it by force, and held it for the space of a moneth, burning the greatest part of the houses, and suffering the rest to be redeemed at a certain price. 2 *Salvaleon*, 28 Leagues to the East of *Domingo*. 4 *Jaguana*, called also *Santa Maria del Porto*, from a safe and beautifull Haven adjoyning to it; situate in the VVest part of the Iland, of no great bigness, consisting of no more then 150 houses, when it was at the greatest; but made much less by Captain *Newport*, who in the year 1591. burnt it to the ground. 4 *Cotuy*, in the North of the Iland, opposite to S. *Domingo*, from which distant almost 60 Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great esteem for its *Mines* of Gold. 5 *Conception de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*; for whose sake afterwards adorned with a See *Episcopal*. 6 *Puerto de la Plata*, 40 Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern shore; where built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by whom also fortified: the second Town of wealth and Trade in all the Iland. 7 *Azua*, now called *Compostella*, a noted Haven, and much resorted to for *Sugars*, which it yields abundantly.

This Iland was first discovered by *Columbus* (for I believe not that it was any of the *fortunate Ilands* which we read of in the life of *Sertorius*) in the first voyage which he made: conducted hither by some of the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Cuba*. Landing, and gaining the good will of the *Savages*, by gentle usage, he obtained leave of one of their King or *Caciques* to build a Fortress in his Country, which he called *Navidad*, or *Natividad*, leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep possession: whom he found both mastered and murdered at his coming back. Being now better furnished for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Isabella*, (in honour of *Isabella* Queen of *Castile*) near the *Mines* of *Cibao*; which afterwards was deserted also, and the Colonie removed unto S. *Domingo*: the *Spaniards* sending one Colonie after another, till at last their number was increased unto 14000. besides women and children. But having rooted out the *Natives* by their infinite *cruelties*, and exhausted the riches of the Country with as infinite *covetousness*: they betook themselves to fresher *Quarters*, abandoning the Iland to devour the *Continent*. Once had the Ilanders rebelled, and fortified themselves in the Province of *Baoruco*; a place so naturally strong, that there was little need of the helps of Art. Not brought to leave that *fastness* but on such conditions as made the *Spaniards* less insolent, and themselves less *slaves*.

5. CUBA.

CUBA lyeth on the West of *Hispaniola*, from which parted by a *Frith*, or narrow Channel, interposed betwixt the two Capes of S. *Nicholas*, and that of *Mayzi*. Backed on the North with a frie of Ilands, called the *Lucaios*, and some part of the *Peninsula* of *Florida*; extended towards the East to the extream point or Foreland of *Jucutan*, called *Cape de Cotache*, from which distant about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Isle of *Jamaica*.

It

It is in length from East to VVest, that is to say, from Cape *Mazie* towards *Hiſpaniola*, to the Cape of S. *Anthony*, 230 Leagues; in breadth where broadeſt hardly 40, but fifteen in others. For the fertility of the ſoil contending with *Hiſpaniola* for the preheminence; but in the temperature of the Aire a great deal before it. Liberally ſtored with *Ginger*, *Caſſia*, *Maſtick*, *Aloes*, *Cinnamon* and *Sugar*, (not reckoning ſuch commodities as are common unto this with others) beſides great plenty of Fleſh, and Fiſh; and of Fowl no ſcarcity. The *Gold* more droſſie in the Mine, then in *Hiſpaniola*, but the *Braſs* more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but thoſe Mountains clad with divers trees, ſome of which drop the pureſt *Roſin*, and the Hills ſending to the Valleys many notable Rivers. Peſtered with many ſorts of Serpents, not ſo much out of any ill condition of the Soyl and Air, as by an old Superſtition of the *Savages*: in former times not ſuffered to kill them when they might (this being a Diſh reſerved for the higher Powers) not able afterwards to deſtroy them when it would have been ſuffered.

What other *Savage* Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they ſhould not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may adde in memory of the firſt Inhabitants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Iland, addreſſed himſelf unto *Columbus* at his firſt coming hither, adviſing him to uſe his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the ſouls of men have two journeys when they leave this world; the one foul and dark prepared for the injurious and cruel perſon; the other delectable and pleaſant for the men of peace. It is ſaid alſo of them that they knew not the uſe of *money*, nor underſtood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*: *Tenants in common* to the bleſſings which the earth brought forth, and *Coheirs* of Nature.

Amongſt the *Rarities* of this Iland, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy ſubſtance, which is found frequently on the Seas into which it falleth, excellent for the *Calking* of ſhips: Secondly, a Navigable River (but the name not told us) the waters of which were ſo hot, that a man could not endure to hold his hand in them. They tell us alſo thirdly of a Valley 15 Leagues from S. *Jago*, which produceth ſtones exactly round, as if made for pleaſure; but yet meerly natural. But theſe no greater *Rarities* then in other places: nor altogether ſo great as in *Hiſpaniola*. Of which they tell us of a fair River, whoſe waters are Salt, and yet none but freſh ſtreams fall into it: Of another Lake (three Leagues in compaſs) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any *Exit*. Neither of theſe ſo ſtrange or rare as the *Cucuyo*, a kinde of *Scarabe* or *Beetel*: the eyes and wings whereof when opened give ſo great a light, in the darkeſt places, that a man may ſee to read and write by it, as well as by Candle.

Rivers of moſt note, 1 *Cante*, much annoyed with *Crocodiles* (a Beaſt not common in theſe Ilands, nor elſwhere in this) exceeding dangerous to ſuch as repoſe themſelves on the Banks of the River. 2 *Arimao*, which disburdeneth it ſelf neer the Port of *Xagua*. 3 *Rio de Porcos*, full of Rocks and quick-ſands, at the entrances of it. 4 *Rio Eſcondida*, paſſing betwixt *Hubana*, and the Port of *Marancas*, 5 *Marien*, and 6 *Tanne*, of leſs note: Beſides theſe, there is *Xagua*, a ſafe *Station* and Road for ſhipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and ſpacious when once entred, above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all ſides from the winds, that ſhips lie here in ſafety without any Anchor. Some other *Baies* there be as uſefull, though not ſo conſiderable.

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1 S. *Jago* in the South part of the Iland, ſituate about two Leagues from the *Main*, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the moſt noted Port of all theſe Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velaſques*, *An.* 1514. Afterwards made a *Biſhops* See, beautified with a *Cathedral*; ſome *Religious* houſes; once not inferiour unto any for numbers of People, though now few enough. 2 *Baracao*, 30 Leagues on the East of S. *Jago*, the ſame Foundation as the other; and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben-Wood*. 3 S. *Salvador*, by ſome called *Bayamo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it ſtandeth; built by *Velaſco* in the moſt pleaſant and richeſt part of all the Iland; but not ſo fitly, as the other, for Trade and Merchandiſe. 4 *Porto del Principe*, an Haven Town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchie or bituminous liquor, ſpoken of before; which I conceive to be much of the ſame nature with the Fountains of *Naphta* in the East. 5 *Trinidad*, another of *Velaſcos* foundations, nine or ten leagues Eaſtward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well freqnented, but now forſaken, and meer nothing. 6 *Havana*, in the North parts, oppoſite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port; ſo ſtrongly ſituate and fortified both by nature and Art, that it ſeems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Caſtles; a greater then either oppoſite to the mouth of the Haven; all ſo commodiouſly built, and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and ſcatter the greateſt Navy. Neer one of them ſtandeth an high Tower, from the top whereof notice is given unto the *Guards*, of every ſhip that cometh within view of the *Watchmen*. The beſt aſſurance, not only of this Iland but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the moſt part with the ſeat of the *Governour*, and the greateſt Trade of all theſe Seas: the ſhips which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the *Gulf*, tarrying here for one another, till all met together, and ſetting ſail from hence by the *Streits* of *Bahama*, amongſt the Iſles of the *Lucaios*.

This Iland one of the firſt which was diſcovered by *Columbus*: who having almoſt tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, firſt fell upon the Iland of *Guahanani*, one of the *Lucaios*, to which he gave the name of S. *Saviours*. From thence he ſailed to *Baracoa*, on the North of this Iland, which he cauſed to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*; at whoſe charge and the incouragement of *Iſabella* his *Heroick* Queen, he purſued this enterpriſe. Landing, he asked the People if they knew *Cipango* (by which name *Paulus Venetus* calls the Iſle of *Japan*)

and they conceiving that he enquired after *Cibao* (of great note for the richeſt *Mines* in *Hiſpaniola*) pointed towards *Hayty*; ſome of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* by this means laid aſide, and all the thoughts of *Spain* upon *Hiſpaniola*, where they found many *golden provocations* to invite their ſtay; till hungring after more Gold, and ſome new Plantations, they paſſed over hither: and in few years by the prudent conduct of *Velaſco*, got ſuch footing in it, and made that footing good by ſo many Colonies; that their title and poſſeſſion was beyond diſpute; and ſo continueth to this day.

6. JAMAICA.

IAMAICA lyeth on the South of *Cuba*, from which diſtant 20 Leagues, and as much, or very little more, from *Hispaniola*. Diſcovered in the ſecond voyage of *Columbus*, by whom named S. *Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt about 50 Leagues, and in breadth 20. the whole compaſs eſtimated at 150. the middle of it under the 18 Degree of Northern *Latitude*. Of a rich ſoyl, abundantly provided of all things neceſſary: well ſtocked with Cattle, and no leſs plentifully ſtored with moſt ſorts of Fruits, which either Induſtry or Nature have ſupplyed it with. Great ſtore of *Cotton-Wooll*; and ſuch abundance of *Jaccu* (a Root whereof the *Savages* once made their bread) that it was deemed the *Granarie* of the neighbouring Ilands. And were it not diſfurniſhed of convenient Ports (which is all the want of it) would be as much frequented by the ſea-faring men, as any other in thoſe parts. Once very populous, now deſtitute of all the natural Inhabitants: this Iland, and that of *Porto Rico*, looſing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniards* cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the men, but deſtroyed poſterity: the *Women*, here and elſewhere ſo abominating their ſad condition, that they ſtrangled their Children in the birth, to the end they might not live to ſerve ſuch a cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof (for though it be well watered, it hath no great Rivers) 1 *Sevilla*, in the North-part of the Iland, beautified with a goodly Monaſterie, the Abbot whereof hath all *Epiſcopal* juriſdiction, and is priviledged to wear a *Miter*; in nothing more enobled, then that *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian (to whoſe *Decades* all ſucceeding Ages are to be beholding, for the *Chorographie*, and *Hiſtory* of theſe parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2 *Melilla*, a ſmall Town, but memorable for the unfortunate ſhipwrack of *Columbus*, on the ſhores adjoyning. 3 *Oriſtan*, on the South of the Iland, fourteen Leagues from *Sevil*. 4 *De la Vega*, now a ruine only, once a *Spaniſh* Colonie; and of great fame for giving the title of *Dukes* to *Chriſtopher Columbus*, and his brother *Bartholmew*. Since whoſe time nothing hapned prejudicial to the State of this Iland by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*; till conquered, but not held by Sir *Anthonie Sherley*, *An.* 1596.

Thus having took a ſhort Survey of the ſeveral parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government committed chiefly to two great *Vice-Royes*, the one of *Nova Hiſpania*, who reſides at *Mexico*; the other of *Peru*, who abideth at *Lima*; the principal Cities of thoſe Kingdoms. The firſt hath juriſdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Hiſpania*, *Guatimala*, *Caſtella Aurea*, and the Provinces of the *Mexican Ilands*; the other over thoſe of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such ſcattered pieces as they hold in *Guyana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to ſome of theſe. Of theſe the Vice Roy of *Peru* is of greateſt power, becauſe he hath the nomination of all the *Commanders* and Officers within his Government: which in the other are reſerved to the King himſelf. But that of *New Spain* counted for the better preferment, becauſe of its nearneſs unto *Spain* (in reſpect of the other) the beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the adminiſtration of *Juſtice*, and ordering the Affairs of the ſeveral Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lyeth no Appeal: that is to ſay, 1 *Guadalaiara*, for *Gallicia Nova*. 2 *Mexico*, for *New Spain*. 3 S. *Domingo*, for the Province of the *Ilands*. 4 *Guatimala*, for the diviſion ſo named. 5 And *Panama*, for *Caſtella Aurea*. Then for the other Government, *Quitos*, *Lima*, and *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*. 9 *Imperiale*, for *Chile*. 10 S. *Foy*, for the *New Realm of Granada*. From theſe, though no *Appeal* doth lie in matter of *juſtice*; yet both from them and the two *Vice-Royes* an *Appeal* may lie in affairs of State, or point of *Grievance*. And to this end there is a ſtanding *Counſel* in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the *Counſel of the Indies*, conſiſting of a *Preſident*, eight Counſellors, two Proctors *Fiſcal* (which we call the *Sollicitors* General) and two Secretaries, beſides other Officers: to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of theſe Countries; to appoint the *Vice-Royes*, to diſpoſe of all the great offices (except thoſe of the Government of *Peru*) and ſpiritual Dignities; to appoint *Viſiters* to go into thoſe Provinces for the examining the actions of all Officers, hearing the grievances of the People, and to diſplace or puniſh as they find occaſion; but with the Kings privity and conſent.

As for the *Eſtates* of private men, they which hold Lands or *Royalties* from the Crown of *Spain*, hold them but for life (except it be the Marqueſs of *Valſa* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*) after their deaths returning to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldeſt ſon, or the next of blood; but ſo that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not from any right of theirs. And though they have many times attempted to make theſe *Commanderies* and Eſtates *hereditarie*, and offered great ſummes of money for it, both to *Charles* the fifth, and *Philip* the ſecond; yet they could never get it done; the Kings moſt prudently conſidering, that theſe great Lords having the command of the Eſtates and Perſons of their ſeveral *Vaſſals*, would either grinde them into powder without any remedy; or upon any *Inquiſition* into their proceedings, take an occaſion to revolt. Both dangers of no ſmall importance, both by this uncertainty of their preſent *Tenure*, exceeding happily avoided.

The

The Revenue which the King receiveth hence, is ſaid to be three Millions of *Ducats* yeerly: moſt of it riſing out of the *Fifths* of the *Mines* of Gold and ſilver: the reſt by *Cuſtomes* upon *Manufactures* and all ſorts of *Merchandiſe*, and the *Acknowledgments* reſerved upon Lands and Royalty. But out of this there goeth great *Exits*, that is to ſay to the two Vice-Roys 12000 *Ducats*; to the *Preſident* and Officers of the Counſel of the *Indies* in *Spain* 20000 *Ducats*; to the Judges and Officers of the ſeveral Courts of *Judicature* very liberall Penſions; to every Arch-biſhop and Biſhop, of which there are 29. in all 2000 *Ducats* at the leaſt, and to ſome much more to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite Charges, in maintaining *Garriſons*, and entertaining ſtanding Bands both of Horſe and Foot, in ſeveral parts of this Eſtate; and the continual keeping of a ſtrong *Armada*, to conduct his *Plate-Fleets* to *Spain*, there muſt be made a great abatement, and the ſum will bear it. For howſoever at the firſt his *Revenues* came from hence without any great charge, more then the keeping of a few Souldiers to awe the *Savages*; yet after he fell fowl with *England*, and ſtartled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortifie all his Havens, and ſecure his Ports, and to maintain a ſtrong *Armada* at the Sea to Convoy his Treaſures. Before which time, the *Engliſh* (as is inſtanced in ſeveral places) did ſo ſhare in his *Harveſt*, that they left him ſcarce enough to pay his *Workmen*; which if they ſhould attempt again upon any breach, they would finde it very difficult, if not impoſſible, to effect any thing on the Coaſts, as in former times; or indeed any other way but by making themſelves too ſtrong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his *Fleets*, or hinder them from coming to him to ſupply his needs.

And ſo much of the AMERICAN Ilands.

A TABLE

OF

The *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

A	*Longit.*	*Latit.*
Acapulco	276. 0.	18. 0.
Almeria	272. 15.	20. 0.
Ancon	321. 0.	6. 20.
Anegadas	296. 0.	50. 0. *A.*
S Anna Equitum	318. 10.	27. 30. *A.*
Antigna	330. 20.	16. 10.
Antiochia	300. 50.	6. 40.
Arica	300. 30.	20. 0. *A.*
Aſcenſion	353. 20.	18. 50. *A.*
Aravalo	298. 10.	1. 30.
Acuzamil	286. 30.	19. 0.
S. Auguſtin	293. 0.	29. 50.
B		
Bihama	296. 30.	27. 0.
Barbados	322. 0.	13. 0.
Bovincas	296. 50.	15. 50.
C		
Campa	351. 40.	62. 50.
Cartagena	300. 0.	20. 10.
Carthago	299. 30.	3. 10.
Caxamalca	298. 30.	11. 30. *A.*
Cheſſapiake	308. 0.	38. 0.
Chiafmetlan	260. 0.	25. 40.
Chile	299. 0.	36. 30. *A.*
Colima	267. 20.	19. 50.
Collao	300. 0.	16. 0. *A.*
Coquimbo	301. 20.	29. 40. *A.*
Corduba	316. 20.	33. 0. *A.*
Coano	259. 40.	31.
Couliacan	266. 30.	27. 0.
Cuſco	297. 20.	13. 30. *A.*
D		
Darien	295. 40.	5. 30.
Deſeada	320. 0.	15. 20.
Dominica	359. 40.	14. 0.
E F		
Eſtade	305. 10.	47. 40.
Fernambuc	351. 40.	9. 20.
G		
Gorgona	295. 10.	3. 20.
Granada	318. 20.	11. 0.
Guajaquil	294. 30.	2. 30. *A.*
Guadalquahol	282. 20.	31. 0.
Guanape	294. 50.	8. 10. *A.*
Guardalupe	319. 20.	15. 20.
Guatimala	303. 0.	24. 20.
H		
Hangnedo	310. 30.	54. 0.
Havana	292. 10.	20. 0.

	Longit.	*Latit.*
Hochelaga	300. 50.	44. 10.
Hunedo	324. 0.	51. 30.
I		
Jabaque	315. 15.	17. 15.
S. Jago	298. 10.	30. 10.
Iſabella	305. 20.	18. 50.
L		
Lempa	274. 10.	16. 50.
Lima	296. 40.	23 30.
Loxa	293. 30.	9 50. *A.*
M		
Malagnana	306. 0.	23. 40.
Malones	279. 40.	13. 40.
Maracapana	312. 10.	8. 0.
Margarita	314. 10.	10. 50.
Mexico	283. 0.	38. 30.
Martha	301. 20.	10. 40.
S. Michael	291. 40.	6. 10. *A.*
S. Michael	327. 10.	47. 20.
Mona	309. 30.	18. 0.
Monſorate	319. 10.	15. 40.
Montroyal	301. 0.	45. 40.
Mopox	301. 10.	10. 0.
N		
Navaca	300. 20.	17. 10.
Niccia	284. 30.	10. 40.
Nives	318. 40.	16. 20.
Nombre de Dios	294. 30.	9. 20.
Norumbega	315. 40.	43. 40.
P		
Paca	302. 50.	31. 10. *A.*
Palto	290. 30.	5. 10. *A.*
Panama	294. 30.	8. 30.
Panuco	270. 10.	22. 20.
Paſto	304. 0.	1 40. *A.*
Pina	296. 20.	3. 0.
Plata	305. 0.	19. 50. *A.*
Popayan	297. 20.	1. 50.
Poſſeſſion	241. 30.	32. 20.
Potoſi	315. 10.	21. 10. *A.*
Q		
Quilcoa	298. 50.	16. 30 *A*
Quintete	303. 40.	34. 40 *A*
Quito	293. 10.	0. 10.
Quivira	233. 0.	41. 40.
R		
Roca	311. 0.	11. 10.

Ro.

Roquelay	314. 10.	50. 0.	

S

Saba	317 30.	17. 20.	
Salinas	321. 0.	53. 0.	
S. Salvadore	321. 10.	5. 0.	
Sante	294. 40.	9 30.	*A.*
Saona	309. 0.	16 50.	
Sorand	351. 40.	61. 0.	

T

Tabaco	322. 10.	10. 40.	
Tarnaco	270. 15.	24. 40.	
Tavaſco	275. 40.	18. 20.	
Teſtigos	316. 10.	11. 0.	
Thomebamba	293. 40.	1. 50.	*A.*
Tiquiſana	305. 20.	16. 0.	*A.*
Tochtipec	274. 40.	19. 0.	
Tortuga	303. 50.	20. 20.	
Totonteac	248. 20.	36. 0.	
Trinidad	295. 50.	21. 20.	
Tumbez	291. 40.	4. 10.	*A.*

V

Valparaiſo	300. 0.	33. 0.	*A.*
Vllao	242. 10.	30. 30.	
Vraba	297. 20.	7. 30.	
Vrcos	301. 0.	14. 50.	*A*
Wococan	307. 30.	34. 0.	

Z

Zacatula	269. 4.	20. 0.	

A. is the mark of Southern Latitude.

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

AN

AN

APPENDIX

To the Former VVork,

ENDEAVOURING

A DISCOVERY

OF THE

VNKNOWN PARTS

OF THE

WORLD.

ESPECIALLY OF

Terra Auſtralis Incognita,

OR THE

Southern Continent.

BY *PETER HEYLIN.*

HORAT. DE ARTE POET.

——————Pictoribus atque Poetis
Quidlibet audendi ſemper fuit æqua Poteſtas.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Seile*, 1652.

AN APPENDIX
To the Former VVork,

Endeavouring a Diſcovery
Of the *VNKNOWN PARTS* of the
VVORLD.

AND here we are upon a new and ſtrange *Adventure*, which no *Knight-Errant* ever undertook before. Of things *unknown*, as there is commonly no deſire, ſo leſs diſcourſe can probably be made upon them. By *unknown* therefore we muſt underſtand *leſs known*, or not well diſcovered; and in that ſenſe we may as well endeavour to ſay ſomwhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the *diſcovery*. And to ſay truth, even in the *known* parts of the World there is much *unknown*; as in the beſt and moſt flouriſhing Kingdoms of the Earth there is ſome waſte ground, either not cultivated at all or not ſo well inhabited as the reſt of the Country. For beſides many vaſt tracts of ground in the North and North-weſt parts of *Tartary*, and ſuch parts of *India* as lie Northwards towards *Delanguer*, *Nangrocot*, the Eaſt parts of *Caucaſus*, and the Realms of *Cathay*; it is conceived that the greateſt part of the midlands of *Africk* are *undiſcovered* to this day, or the knowledge of them ſo imperfect as comes neer a *neſcience*. And for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders (which are in part to be the ſubject of this enquirie) it is affirmed of the *Midlands* by *John de Laet*, (who hath made the moſt exact deſcription of it that was ever extant) *Minima ſui parte perluſtratum eſſe*, that the leaſt part of them hath been diſcovered hitherto to any purpoſe. Leaving theſe therefore as before without further ſearch, we will divide the *UNKNOWN WORLD* into theſe two parts, 1 *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2 *Terra Incognita Auſtralis*; which with their Subdiviſions we will now purſue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS, is that part of the *Unknown World* which lieth towards the North; and is to be conſidered in theſe three notions. 1. As directly under the *Pole*, which for diſtinctions ſake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2. As lying to the *North-eaſt* on the back of *Europe*, and *Aſia*; or 3. on the *North-weſt*, on the back of *America*.

1. *ORBIS ARCTICUS* is that part of *Terra Borealis Incognita*, which lieth under or about the *Arctick Pole*: the ſituation and dimenſions of which being taken with the *Aſtrolabe* by an *Oxford-Frier*, are by *Mercator* thus deſcribed out of the Itineratie of *James Cnoxe* of *Bois le duc*, or the *Boſcke* a Town of *Brabant*.

"Under the *Artick Pole* (ſaith he) is ſaid to be a *black Rock* of wondrous height, about 33 leagues "in compaſs; the Land adjoyning being torn by the Sea into four great Ilands. For the *Ocean* vio- "lently breaking thorow it, and diſgorging it ſelf by 19 Channels, maketh four *Euripi*, or fierce *Whirl-* "*pools*, by which the waters are finally carried towards the North, and there ſwallowed into the *Bowels* "of the Earth. That *Euripus* or *Whirpool* which is made by the *Scythick* Ocean, hath five *Inlets*, and by "reaſon of his ſtrait paſſage, and violent courſe, is never frozen: the other on the back of *Greenland*, "being 37 leagues long, hath three inlets, and remaineth frozen three moneths yearly. Between theſe "two there lieth an Iland, on the North of *Lappia* and *Biarmia*, inhabited as they ſay by *Pygmies*, the "talleſt of them not above four foot high. A certain *Scholer* of *Oxford* reporteth, that theſe four *Eu-* "*ripi* are carried with ſuch furious violence towards ſome *Gulf*, in which they are finally ſwallowed up, "that no ſhip is able with never ſo ſtrong a Gale to *ſtem* the *Current*; and yet that there is never ſo "ſtrong a wind as to blow a *Windmill*. The like reported by *Giraldus Cambrenſis* in his Book *De mi-*

rabilibus Hiberniæ. So far and to this purpose he. But *Blundevile* our Countryman is of another opinion (as indeed who not?) neither believing that *Plinie* or any other of the *Roman* Writers came hither to describe this *Promontory*: or that the *Oxford Frier* without the Assistance of some cold *Devil* of the *middle Region* of the Aire (and consequently able to endure all weathers) could approach so neer as to measure these cold Countries with his *Astrolabe*, or take the height of this *Blacke Rock* with his *Jacobs Staff*. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucians Dialogues*, then any serious discourse; we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. *THE NORTH WEST* parts of *Terra incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the back of *Estotiland*, the most Northern Province of *America*: by which it hath been much endeavoured to finde out a passage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go so far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Streits of *Magellan*. Attempted first by *Sebastian Cabot*, *An.*1497. at the charge of *Henry* the 7th. of *England*. But having discovered as far as to the 67 Degree of *Northern* Latitude, by the mutinie of his Mariners he was forced to return; where finding great preparations for a War with *Scotland*, that busines for the present was laid aside. Resumed by *Gaspar Corteriaglis*, a *Portugal*, An. 1500, and after by *Stephen Gomez* a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525. but neither of them went so far to the North as *Cabot*. Pursued with greater industry, but as bad Succes by Sir *Martin Frobisher*, who made three Voyages for these parts (the first of them in the yeer 1576.) and brought home some of the *Natives*, a Sea Unicorn horn (still kept in the great Wardrobe of *Windsor* Castle) and a great deal of the *Ore* of that Country, found upon tryal, when in *England*, not to quit the cost. A great Promontory which he passed by, he called Queen *Elizabeths Foreland*, in whose name he took possession of it; and the Sea running not far off, he called *Frobishers Streits*. The Seas full set with Icy Ilands, some of them half a mile about, and 80 Fathoms above water; the People like the *Samoeds*, the worst kinde of *Tartars*, in their lives and habit. *John Davies* followed the Design *An.*1585. at the incouragement of Sir *Francis Walsingham* then *Principal Secretary* of Estate: and having in three Voyages discovered to the Latitude of 73 by reason of the many difficulties which he found in the Enterprise, and the death of Mr. *Secretary*, he was fain to give over; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Estotiland* the name of *Fretum Davis*, in the Latitude of 65 and 20 Minutes, by which name still called. After him followed *Weymouth*, *Hall*, *Hudson*, *Balton*, *Baffin*, *Smith*, all *English*. The result of whose endeavours was the finding of some cold Ilands, and points of Land, which they named King *James* his *Cape*, Queen *Anns Cape*, Prince *Henries Foreland*, *Saddle Iland*, *Barren Iland*, *Red goose Iland*, *Digges his Iland*; all of them betwixt 80 and 81. and the imposing on some passages and parts of the Sea the names of *Hackluyts*, *Hendland*, *Smiths Bay*, *Hudsons Streits*, *Maudlins Sound*, *Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their undertakings. Nothing atchieved of publick moment but the Discovery of an Iand called *Cherry Iland* in the Latitude of 74 and the Shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they caused to be called King *James* his *New Land*, but most commonly *Greenland*; where they found many *white Bears*, with white, grey and Dun Foxes, Partriges, Geese, and some other Provisions, Sea-Unicorns Horns, great store of *Morses* (or Sea horses) the Oyl and Teeth whereof yield no small Commoditie. But most considerable for the Trade of *Whale-fishing*, which our men use yeerly upon those Coasts; of whose Oil, Bones, and Brain (this last supposed to be the true *Sperma Cœti*, now used as *Medicinal*) they raise very great profit.

3. *THE NORTH EAST PARTS* of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the North of *Russia* and *Tartaria*; by which the like passage towards *Cathay* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with like success. Endeavoured first by *Sebastian Cabot*, the son of *John Cabot* so often mentioned before, by whom trained up in the Discovery of the North east parts of *America*. His employment failing here in *England*, he betook himself unto the service of the King of *Spain*; and coming out of *Spain*, *An.* 1549. was by King *Edward* the sixt made *Grand Pilot of England*, with an Annual Pension of 166 l. 13 s. 4 d. In the year 1553. he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Discovery of *Russia* and the *North-east* Voyages, undertaken and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *Chancellour*, *Burrough*, *Jenkinson*, and after prosecuted by *Pet* and *Jackman*. Some of which perished in the Action, and were frozen to death; their ship being found the next year hemmed about with ice, and a particular Accompt of all things which had hapned to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Russia* (since that time made a common Voyage without dread or danger) and passing down the *Volga* to the *Caspian* Sea, and by that to *Persia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophie*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594 and in some years after, tried their Fortune also, under the conduct and direction of one *William Barendson*, their chief *Pilot*; but went no further then the *English* had gone before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they passed, as if they had been the first *Discoverers*; with pride and arrogance enough. Nothing since done of any note or consideration for the opening of this North-east passage, or giving us any better Accompt of the North of *Tartarie*, or any Countries beyond that; but what we had many Ages since out of *Paulus Venetus*; so that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly discourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant undertakings: Yet when I look upon the natures of those Shores and Seas, those tedious Winters of ten moneths with no Summer following; the winds continually in the North, and the *Main* Ocean paved with Ice so long together: I cannot choose but rank the hopes of these Northern Passages amongst those Adventures which are only commendable for the difficulties presented in them.

TERRA

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

WIth better hopes we may go forwards on the next Discovery, and try what may be done on *TERRA AUSTRALIS*, or the *Southern* Continent; though hitherto *INCOGNITA* also, almost as much unknown as the *Arctick* Ilands, which none but my good *Frier* of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our learned *Brerewood*, to be as large as *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*: and that upon such strength of Reasons, as cannot be easily over-born by any opposite. His Arguments in brief are these, 1. That as touching *Latitude*, some parts thereof come very neer to the *Aequator*, if they come not also on this side of it: and as for *Longnitude*, it keepeth along, though at several distances, the whole continual course of the other Continents. 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents, the Land which lieth on the North side of that Line, is four times at the least as large as that which lies South thereof: and therefore since the earth is equally poized on both sides of her *Center*; it must needs be that the Earth in answerable measure and proportion must advance it self in some places above the Sea, on the South side of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By consequence, what is wanting in the South parts of the other two *Continents*, to countervail the North parts of them, must of necessity be supplied in the *Southern* Continent.

The Country being so large, so free from the incumbrances of Frosts and Ice, and endless Winters; I have oft marvelled with my self that no further progress hath been made in Discovery of it: considering chiefly by the site and position of the Country, especially in those parts which lie nearest *Asia*, that there is nothing to be looked for elsewhere, either of profit or of pleasures, but may there be found. Whether it be, that there is some *Nil ultra* put to humane endeavours; or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the *Gospel*; or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themselves in *New Discoveries*, till the *Old* be thorowly planted, and made sure unto them; or that the *Merchant*, who in matters of this nature hath a powerfull influence, thinks his hands full enough already; and being setled in so many and so wealthy *Factories*, will not adventure upon more. Which of all these, or whether all of these together be the cause of this stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is that here is a large field enough for Covetousness, Ambition, or Desire of glory to spend themselves in; enough to satisfie the greatest and most hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth, and Worldly pleasures; besides the *Gallantry* and merit of so brave an Action. Most which hath hitherto been done in it, hath been by the incouragements of the Vice Royes of *New Spain*, and *Peru*: by the first of which we came acquainted with the Coasts of *Nova Guinea*; by the Later, with those Countries called the *Ilands of Solomon* but whether Continent or Ilands, not yet fully known.

And yet we must not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the honour, who passing thorow the *Streits*, which now bear his name, discovered those parts of it which from the *fire* thence seen he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Iland. Nor do the *English* or the *Dutch* want their part herein, though what they did, was rather *Accidental*, then upon Design. For in the year 1593. Sir *Richard Hawkins* being bound for the *Streits* of *Magellan*, was by a crois winde driven on some part of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hawkings* his *Mayden Land*; A Promontory of it shooting into the Sea with three points he called *Point Tremontein*, and a pleasant Isle not far off, by the name of *Fair Iland*. Sayling along these Coasts in the 50 Degree of *Southern Latitude*, for the space of 60 miles and upwards, he found the Country as he pass'd to be very pleasant; and by the fires which he saw in the night to be well inhabited. By the like accident, *An.* 1599. *Sibald de Wert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the *Streits* of *Magellan* fell upon some Ilands of this *Southern* Continent, in the *Latitude* of 50 Degrees and 40 Minutes, which he caused to be called *Sibalds* Ilands. And besides these we owe to the *Portugals* the discovery of such parts hereof, as they fell on in their way to the Eastern *Indies*; of which we have little but the names, as *Psittacorum Terra*, so called from the abundance of *Parrats* which they saw on the Coasts, over against the *Cape of good Hope*. 2 *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and possessed by *Idolaters*; with the two Kingdoms of 3 *Lucach*, and 4 *Maletur*; all three against the Isles of *Java*, from which little distant.

But the greatest light we have to see by into this dark business, is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice-Royes of *Peru*, and *Mexico*, as before was said. For in the year 1543. the Governour of *New-Spain* then being, sent *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccos*, who in that Voyage made a Discovery of a rich and flourishing Country which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others since his time called *Terra de Piccinacoli*; and in the year 1563, *Castro* the *Licentiate*, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, sent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the conduct of *Lopes Garcia de Castro*, discovered the *Ilands* of *Solomon*. To which if we subjoyn the success of the *Hollanders* in the Discovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Lands adjoyning: the best Description we can make of this Southern Continent, must be in the Chorography and History of their Adventures; *viz.* 1 *Terra del Fogo*, 2 *Insulæ Solomonis*, 3 *Nova Guinea*: beginning first with *Terra del Fogo*, because neerest to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO*, lies on the other side of the Streit of *Magellane*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now discovered to be an Iland, by one *Jacob Mayre* of *Amsterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Horn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 15. of *June*. *An.* 1615. and on the 19. of *January* following they fell even with the Streit of *Magellan*. On the 24. of the same Moneth they had the sight of another *Streit*,

which seemed to separate this *Terra del Fuego* from the rest of the *Southern Continent*; and on the 25. they entred into it. That part of the Land which (being entred into the *Streit*) they had on the West, they called *Terra Mauritii de Nassaw*; that on the East *Statenland*; the Streit it self, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the *Streit* they found to be in 55 degrees of Southern *Latitude*, and 50 Minutes, the Waters running into the North-Sea with so violent an *Eddie*, *Ut adversum maris æstum difficulter superare possemus*, saith he, who in the way of *Journal* or *Ephemerides*, hath described the whole course of this Voyage. In the whole course whereof nothing so much observable (besides this Discovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had lost a day (as must needs happen unto such, as in so tedious a Voyage had travelled Westward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders*, and to the rest of *Europe*; though they had calculated the days since their going out with all exactness. So that if there were any such *Morality* in the *Sabbath*, as some men pretend, these men must either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the rest of their Countrymen: or otherwise to complie with them, must be guilty of the breach of the *Sabbath* all the rest of their lives. But of this more at large elsewhere. To return therefore to this *Streit*, it is said to be seven *Dutch* miles, or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentifull of good fish; especially of Sea-Calves, and Whales. About the inserting of which *Streit* into the third Edition of my *Microcosm*, I received a Letter at such time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon*, An. 1625. subscribed *G.B.* and a little under that, *Sub grandi floridus*: which whether it were the Gentlemans *Motto*, or the *Anagram* of his name, I am not able to say, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his desires were satisfied in that next Edition of that Work. "For my encouragement wherein he gave me this "direction following. The News (saith he) of this *New Streit* coming into *Spain*, it pleased that King "in the year 1618, to send and search whether the truth were answerable unto the Report. And finding "it to be much broader then the other, and not above seven *Dutch* miles long: decreed, that being the "more easie and compendious way for Navigators, and less subject to dangers; his Auxiliary Forces "should be sent that way into the *East Indies*, to defend the *Philippinæ* and *Molucco* Ilands, and the "way by the *Cape of good Hope* to be left. In regard that every such voyage, requireth twice as much "time: besides the variety of winds, and often change of the Air, not only troublesom, but full of dis-"eases, consumeth the one half of the men before they return. Whereas this way gaineth time (and if "need be, they may dispatch business in the *West* as they travell into the *East*) without any extraordi-"nary danger or loss of men. So far the very words of my letter. The intelligence given me in this Letter, I finde confirm'd in a *Relation* of the Voyage made by Captain. *Don Juan de More*, *Anno* 1618, at the command and charge of the King of *Spain*, who presently arm'd and furnished eight tall Ships, to send this new way unto his *Philippines* and *Molluccos*, under the conduct of *Petrus Michaeles de Cordoelen*. Since it hath been found by experience, that even from our parts to the *Molluccos*, through this *Fretum de Mayre*, is but a passage of eight moneths: *Sine ulla insigni navigantium clade*, saith the *Narrator*. But of this streit enough, to satisfie my *unknown well-willers* request, and enform my Reader: extreamly sorry that the Gentleman was not pleased to impart his name, that so his memory might have lived in these Papers, if they themselves be destinate to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the soil, it is said to be very full of *Mountains*; but those Hills apparelled with woods, intermixt with Vallies; the Vallies for the most part full of little *Brooks* which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good Pasturage; the Sea-coasts well provided of Bays and Roads, not unsafe for shipping: though the Air every where, but chiefly neer the Sea, be much subject to Tempests. As for the People, they are said to be of a white complexion; but their Face, Arms, and Thighs, coloured with a kinde of *Oker*: of full stature and well proportioned, their hair black which they wear long to seem more terrible. The men most generally naked, the women only shaded on their secret parts, with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deserve the name of Houses; so that the most which we can do is to Coast the Iland. In which we finde towards *Mare del Noort* 1. A large Arm of the Sea, called *Entrado de S. Sebastian*. 2. The Cape of S. *Ives* 3 *Mauritius* land. 4. *Promontorio de Buen Suseio*, or the Cape of *Good Success*. Opposite whereunto in another Iland is the Cape of S. *Bartholomews*; and betwixt them the Streit called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *New South Sea*, as they call it, there are 5. *Barnwelts* Iland, 6. the Ilands of S. *Ildefonso*; 7. Cape *Horn* on a fair Promontory, in the South west *Ande*: which doubled, the Countrie goes along with a strait shore, on which I finde some Bayes and Capes, but no names unto them; till we come to the VVestern entrances of the Streits of *Magellan*, opposite unto Cape *Victoria*, so often mentioned.

2. *INSULÆ SOLOMONIS*, or the Ilands of *Solomon*, are situate on the VVest of *Terra del Fogo*, 11 degrees on the South of the *Equinoctial*. Discovered in the year 1567. by *Lopes Garcia de Castro*, sent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to finde out new Countries. By whom thus named, in hope that men would be the rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from these Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18. the principal: Some of which 300 miles in compass, others 200, and others of them less till we come to fifty, and beneath that, none. All liberally furnished with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinnamon, and some veins of Gold. The chief of these eighteen, are, 1 *Gundalcanal*, supposed to be the greatest of them; upon the coast whereof the *Spaniards* sailed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and sacked, because the People of it in a sudden surprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2 S. *Isabella*, 150 leagues in length, and eighteen in breadth;

breadth; the Inhabitants, ſome black, ſome white, ſome of brown complexion. 3 S. *Nicolas.* 100 Leagues in compaſs, inhabited by a People which are black of hue, but ſaid to be more witty then the other Salvages. All of them ſituate betwixt the Streits of *Magellan*, and the Ilands of *Theeves*; and yet not well agreed upon amongſt our Authors, whether to be accompted Ilands, or a part of the Continent: The *Spaniards* having ſayled 700 Leagues on the Coaſts hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they paſs generally in Accompt for Ilands, and by that name are under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governours, let them paſs ſo ſtill.

3. *NOVA GUINEA* lyeth beyond the Ilands of *Solomon*, in reſpect of us, proceeding as we have begun from the Land of Fire. Diſcovered, as before was ſaid *An.* 1543. by *Villa Lobos* (*Herrera* attributes the diſcovery of it to *Alvarez de Saavedra*, and ſets it higher in the year 1527.) more perfectly made known, if I gueſs aright, by *Fernando de Quir*. Who being ſent with two Ships to make a more full diſcovery of the *Ilands of Solomon*, and taking his courſe about the height of the *Magellan ſtreits*, diſcovered a main Land coming up cloſe to the *Æquinoctial*, on the Coaſts whereof he ſayled 800 Leagues, till he found himſelf at laſt in the *Latitude* of 15 Degrees, diſcovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purpoſed to ſettle a *Plantation*, and to that end preſented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Country I conceive by the ſite and poſition of it to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up cloſe as that doth to the *Æquinoctial*; and after turning to the South towards the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Malatur*. And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I ſhall afford the Reader this Deſcription of it, out of his *Memorials*; in which it is ſoberly affirmed to be a *Terreſtrial Paradiſe* for wealth and pleaſures. The Country plentifull of Fruits, *Coco-nuts*, *Almonds* of four ſorts, *Pom-citrons*, *Dates*, *Sugar canes*, and *Apples*: plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partriges, and other Fowl, with ſome Kine and *Buffals*. Nothing inferiour (as it ſeemeth) to *Guinea* in the *Land of Negroes*; and from thence ſo named. For, as he ſaith, he ſaw amongſt them Silver, and Pearls, and ſome told him of Gold; the Countries on the Coaſt ſeeming to promiſe much felicity within the Land. The Ayr he found to be whole and temperate, the Sea ſhores to be full of *Baies*, *Havens*, and the *Exits* of Rivers, making ſhew as of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, ſome *white*, ſome like the *Mulatos*, others like the *Negros*; diverſified in Habit, as well as Colour. Their bread made of three ſorts of *Roots*: without Government, but not without *Religion*; for they had their ſeveral *Oratories* and places of burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in daily wars with one another; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other weapons, but all made of wood. Of this Country whatſoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took poſſeſſion in the name of the *Catholike* King, and ſet up both a *Croſs*, and a *Chappel* in it; the Chappel dedicated to the *Lady* of *Loretto*.

The preciſe time of this *Diſcovery* I have nowhere found, but the time ſpent about it is by him affirmed to be 14 years. to the no ſmall endamagement of his health and fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his *Petition*, or any thing elſe done by others in purſuance of his *Propoſitions*. Whether it were on any of the reaſons before laid down; or that there was no *credit* given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the *Baies* or *Promontories*, as he paſſed along; but either took ſuch names as were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for ſuch names as were given before (ſtill taking *Ferdinando Quir's* new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontorie called *Cape Hermoſo*, in the Eaſt parts hereof near the Ilands of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Æquator*. 2 Another in the Weſtern part, but as near the *Æquinox*, called *Point Primiro*. 3 A third in the firſt bendings of the Coaſt towards the South called *Cape de Buena Deſeada*, or the Cape of *good deſires*. 4 *Rio de Valcanes*. 5 *Rio de Lorenzo*. 6 *Rio de S. Auguſtino*, on the Eaſt of Cape *Formoſo* towards the Streits. 7 The Rivers of S. *Peter*. 8 S. *Paul*. 9 S. *Andrew*. And 10 S. *James*, betwixt Cape *Formoſo* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certain of theſe laſt diſcoveries, and the greateſt certainty we have of that little, is nothing but a Liſt of names without any thing obſervable in the ſtate and ſtory of the ſame, they may ſtill retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore I will try my fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Royes of *Peru*, and *Mexico*, or taking out *Commiſſion* for a new Diſcovery, will make a ſearch into this *Terra Auſtralis* for ſome other Regions, which muſt be found either here or nowhere. The names of which, 1 *Mundus alter & idem*. 2 *Utopia*. 3 *New Atlantis*. 4 *Fairie Land* 5 The *Painters Wives Iland*. 6 The Lands of *Chivalrie*. And 7 The *New World in the Moon*.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, another world and yet the ſame, is a witty and ingenious invention of a learned *Prelate*, writ by him in his younger dayes (but well enough becoming the auſterity of the graveſt head) in which he diſtinguiſheth the *Vices*, *Paſſions*, *Humours*, and ill *Affections* moſt commonly incident to mankind, into ſeveral *Provinces*; gives us the *Character* of each, as in the deſcriptions of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it: and ſets them forth unto the eye in ſuch lively colours, that the vitious man may ſee therein his own *Deformities*, and the well-minded man his own *imperfections*. The Scene of this deſign laid by the Reverend Author, in this *Terra Auſtralis*; the *Decorum* happily preſerved in the whole *Diſcovery*; the ſtyle acutely clear, the invention ſingular. Of whom and his *New World* I ſhall give you that *Eulogie* which the *Hiſtorian* doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neq; poſt illum qui eum imitari poſſet, inventus eſt.*

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country firſt diſcovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord *Chancellour* of *England*; and by him made the Scene of a *Commonwealth*, which neither *Solon* nor *Lycurgus*, nor any of the *Legiſlators* of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fancied by *Plato*, *Ariſtotle*, *Tullie*, or any who have written the *Ideas* of a form of Government, though not reducible to practiſe. Some of his Plots we have took notice of already, as *viz.* his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt by making

making of those metals, Chains and Fetters for their *Malefactors*, Pans of Close-stools, Chamber-pots, and Vessels of such unclean use; by imposing it as a penalty on infamous persons, to wear Gold Rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as also his device to prevent mistakes and dislikes in mariages, by giving the parties a full view of each other, naked. Many more projects of this nature, some of them possible enough, but so *unpracticable*, so beyond hope of being looked on in the *modelling* of a *Common-Wealth*, that we may reckon his *device* amongst those strange fancies, *quæ nunquam antea spe concepta, ne dum opere tentata erant*. The man indeed (considering the times he lived in) of rare abilities; but his *Utopia* fitted only to the *Meridian* of this *Southern* Continent, this *Terra Australis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place else.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Iland of this *Southern* Continent, discovered by Sir *Francis Bacon*, the learned Viscount of S. *Albans*; one of Sir *Thomas Mores* successors in the place of Lord *Chancellour*, but far before him in the Excellency and feasibility of his invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Iland of the Western or *Atlantick* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*; both alike invisible. But for his falling on this Iland, his description of it, the City of *Ben-Salem* and the manner of his recception there, such handsome probabilities, and so fairly carryed, that to one not acquainted with the *State* of the *World*, it would seem a *Reality*. But above all things, the inventions and designs of *Solomons House*, for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving nature to the best advantages of life, and the benefit of mankind are beyond comparison. The man, I must confess had his personal errours (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded, *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtissimi*, as *Paterculus* once said of *Piso*: not one amongst many thousands (to pursue that *Character*) *qui aut otium validius diligat, aut facilius sufficiat negotio*. A man of a most strong Brain, and a *Chymical* Head. Who if he had been entertained with some liberal *Salarie*, abstracted from all Affairs both of *State* and *Judicature*, and furnished with sufficiency both of means and helps, for the going on in his *design*, would, I am confident, have given us such a body of *natural Philosophie*, and made it so subservient to the publike good, that neither *Aristotle* or *Theophrastus* amongst the Antients, nor *Paracelsus* or the rest of our later *Chymists*, would have been considerable.

4. *FAERIE LAND*, is another part of this *Terra Incognita*; the habitation of the *Fairies*, a pretty kind of *little fiends*, or *Pigmey devils*, but more inclined to sport then mischief; of which old Women, who remember the times of *Popery*, tell us many fine stories. A cleanlyer and more innocent cheat was never put upon poor ignorant people, by the *Monks* and *Friers*. Their habitation here or no where; though sent occasionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings, to our parts of the World. For not being reckoned amongst the *good Angels*, nor having malice enough to make them *Devils* (but such a kind of midling *Sprites*, as the *Latines* call *Lemures Larvæ*) we must find out some place for them, neither *Heaven* or *Hell*, and most likely this. Their Country never more enobled, then by being made the *Scene* of that excellent Poem, called the *Faerie Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greatest persons in her Court: but shadowed in such lively colours, framed so exactly by the Rules of *Poesie*, and representing such *Ideas* of all moral goodness; that as there never was a *Poem* more *Artificial*; so can no *Ethical* discourse, more fashion and inflame the mind to the love of vertue. *Invisurum facilius aliquem quàm imitaturum* shall be *Spencers Motto*; and so I leave him to his rest.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ILAND*, is an Iland of this *Tract* mentioned by sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his *History of the World*. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a *Spanish* Gentleman, imployed by his King in planting some Colonies on the *Streits* of *Magellan* (which we have touched upon before) Who being taken Prisoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about some *Iland* which the *Maps* presented in those *Streits*, and might have been of great use to him in his undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Iland*, saying, that whilest the Painter drew that *Map*, his wife sitting by, *desired him to put in one Countrey for her, that she in her imaginations might have an* Iland *of her own*. His meaning was, that there was no such *Iland* as the *Maps* presented. And I fear the *Painters wife* hath many *Ilands* and some Countries too upon the *Continent*, in our common *Maps*, which are not really to be found on the strictest search.

6. *THE LANDS OF CHIVALRIE* are such *Ilands, Provinces*, and *Kingdoms* in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any *known* part of the *World* and therefore must be sought in this. A grosse absurdity, but frequent in those kind of *Writers*, who in describing the *Adventures* of their Knights, in despight of *Geographie* (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjoyned Countries which are neer together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the description of many *Ilands, Provinces*, and mighty *Kingdoms*, which as the ingenious Author of the *History* of *Don Quixot*, merrily observeth, *are not to be found in all the Map*. Of this sort is the Isle of *Adamants* in Sir *Huon* of *Burdeaux*; the *Fayery-Iland* in the History of *Amadis de Gaul*; the hidden Iland and that of the *Sage Aliart* in S. *Palmerin* of *England*; the Ilands of *Lindaraza*, and the *Divelish Fauno*, with the Kingdom of *Lyra* (of which the *Amazonian* Lady *Archisipoza* was the rightfull Queen) and many others of that kinde in the *Mirrour of Knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primaleon*, and *Belianis* of *Greece*, *Parismus*, the *Romance* of *Romances*, and indeed who not of all that *Rabble*? Handsomly humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his *Iland* of *Barutaria*, of which the famous *Sancho Panca* was sometimes Governour, and the Kingdom of *Micomicona*. And yet I cannot but confess (for I have been a great Student in these Books of *Chivalrie*) that they may be of very good use to Children or young Boys in their *Adolescency*. For besides that they divert the minde from worse cogitations, they *perfect* him that takes pleasure in them in the way of

reading

reading, beget in him an habit of *ſpeaking*, and *animate* him many times to ſuch high conceptions as really may make him fit for great undertakings.

7. *THE NEW WORLD IN THE MOON*, was firſt of *Lucians* diſcovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a Conſcience', Apoſtatizing from the faith in which he was bred. *Ariſtophanes* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcygia*, or a City of Cuckoes in the Clouds. But *Lucian* was the firſt who found out this *New World* in the *Moon*: of which and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his *Dialogues* a conceited *Character*. But of late times, that World which he there *fancied*, and propoſed but as a *fancie* onely, is become a matter of a more *ſerious debate*: and ſome have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another *World* in the *Moon*, inhabited as this is by perſons of divers *Languages*, *Cuſtoms*, *Polities*, and *Religions*: and more then ſo, ſome means and wayes propoſed to conſideration for maintaining an *intercourſe* and commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the *Earth may be a Planet*, why may not this *Southern Continent* be that *Planet*, and more particularly that *Moon*, in which this other *World* is ſuppoſed to be? Certainly there are ſtronger hopes of finding a *New World* in this *Terra Auſtralis*, then in the Body of that *Planet*; and ſuch perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleaſure the later *diſcoveries* of *America*.

But I am no diſcourager of induſtrie and ingenuitie, which I love and honour whereſoever I find it. I know great *Truths* have many times been ſtartled upon leſs *preſumptions*. Nor would I be miſtook, as if in my purſuit of this *Terra Incognita*, I put ſcorn on any of *ſublimer* thoughts; or that I would have any man ſo much in love with the *preſent World*, as not to look for another *World* in the *Heaven* above. It is reported that in ſome controverſie betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Moſcovie*, the King of *Poland* ſent the *Moſcovite* a curious *Globe*, repreſenting the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each ſeveral Sphere: To which the *Muſcovite* returned this unworthy Anſwer, *Tu mihi* Cœlum *mittis*, *Redde mihi* Terras *de quibus contendimus*; You ſend me *Heaven*, ſaith he, but that will not ſatisfie, unleſs you give me back thoſe *Lands* which are now in queſtion. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not loſe their part on *Earth* for all *Heaven* it ſelf. Whom I deſire if any ſuch peruſe theſe Papers, to conſider, That as much as the moſt flouriſhing Country which is here deſcribed, doth fall ſhort of that *Paradiſe* wherein God placed our father *Adam*; ſo much and infinitely more did that Earthly *Paradiſe* fall ſhort of the unſpeakable glories of the Kingdom of *Heaven*. To the diligent and careful ſearch of which *Heavenly* Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of *GOD* which are here preſented, and that *viciſſitude* of Humane affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to ſome ſerious thoughts of that mighty *GOD* who made all theſe Works, in whom is no ſhew nor *ſhadow of change*. To whom be given all Glory, both in this *World*, and that to *come*.

Quicqnid enim Luræ *gremio complectitur Orbis,*
Permutat variátque vices, trepidóque tumultu
Æſtuat, & nunquam ſentit pars una quietem.
Nam ruit in ſeſe, & civili vulnere ſemper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; alióque renaſcitur ore,
Rurſus ut intereat; ſic non eſt omnibus unum
Partibus ingenium, non vis nativa. Sed Orbes
Aſtriferi, *& nitidi ſublimis* Regia *Cœli*
Immunis ſenii, & vultu immutabilis uno
Perpetuum ſervat ſolida & ſincera tenorem.

The Verſes are *G. Buchanans*, in his Book *De Sphæra*. Which I thus tranſlate, and therewithall conclude this Work.

The *World beneath the Moon*, its ſhapes doth varie,
And change from this to that; nor can it tarie
Long in one ſtate: but with it ſelf doth jar,
Kils, and is kili'd, in endleſs Civil war.
New-form'd again, 'tis but to die. The frame
Neither of *Bodies* nor of *Mindes* the ſame.
But *That above the Spheres*, the Heavens on high
In which *GOD* reigns in glorious Majeſty;
Free from old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Always preſents it ſelf in equal Grace.

Non nobis, Domine, *non nobis*, *ſed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.*

FINIS.

The Emendation of the *Errata* in the Fourth Book.

Fol. 3 lin. 1. for *Longo*, read *Congo*. f. 7. l. 3. for τὲς r ϭὲς. 8 3. for *intail*, r. *intangle*. ib. 18. for *ſurely*, r. *ſoberly*. 11. 29. for *Salud*, r. *Sabid*. 16. 34. for *likewiſe*, r. *likelieſt*. 16. 28. for 13000. r. 1300. fol. 19. 4. for *Therah*, r. *Zerah*. 21. 14. for *Alub* r. *Aſub*. 34. 10 dele *time made*. 36. 58. for *made them*, r. *made them quit*. 39. 7. for *Erritu*, r. *Erriſſe*. 16. 31. for *Agu*, r. *Agla*. 40. 9. for *Algaria*, r. *Asgara*. 41. 30. for *Sexta & Senta*, r. *Septa & Seuta*. ib. 38. for *theſe*, r. *the*. 42. 10 for *Sier*, r. *Sierra*. ib. 52. for *putation*, r. *computation*. 41. 20. for *are*, r. *all*. 43. 20 for *Algek*, r. *Algezire*. 43. 67. for 1554 r. 1544. fol. 44. 8. for 11. r. *the*. 50. 63. for *firſt King*, r. *ſecond King*. 53. 56. for *Oden*, r. *and then*. 54 30. for *Carthage*, r. *Canaga*. 62. 35. for *Amgara*, r. *Amara*. 66 38. for *or*, r. *of*. 73. 56. for *Barbarians*, r *Barbaria*. 87. 38. for *five*, r. *for*. ib. 48. 50. for *Tenariffe*, r. *Tenariffe*. ib. 53. for *Wood*, r. *Woad*. ib. 61. for *the one*, r. *one*. 89 38. for *Azzobes*, r. *Arrobes*. 97. 26. for *Gubanani*, r. *Guabanani*. 16, 50. for *turn at*, r. *atturn*. 29. 20. for *uſe*, r. *ſpace*. 102. 17. for *Rhone*, r. *Rhoſne*. 103 37. for *Nova Francia*, r. *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*. 118. l. 1. for *ſpecially*, r. *ſpecially ſo called*. 4. for *Lucayoncyn*, r *Lucaioneque*. 119. 16 d. *like a Demy-Iland*. 8. for *on the weſt*, r. on the Weſt *New Spain & New Gallicia*. 19 for *bound*, r. *bounded*. 123. 30. for *in*, r. *and*. 125. 38. for *Hiuſtla*, r. *Piaſtla*. 128. 1. for *S Fagi*, r. *S. Fe*. 122. 30. for *laſt I take to be*, r. *placed by I. de Eaet*. ib. 52. d. *more properly belonging to the Province of Seio*. 129. 55. for *Mcte*, r. *Meil*. 135. l. 38. 42. & 59. for *Guaxata*, r. *Guaxaca*. 156. 47. for *Diada*, r. *Oieda*. 160. 41. for *River*, r. *River of Plate*. 159. 55. for *S. Matthew*, r. *Mathan*. 170. for *Wiacopo*, r. *Wiapoco*. 196. 58. for *Faerie Iland*, r. *Firm Iland*. l. 60 for *Archiſipoza*, r. *Archiſilora*.

AN

An advertiſement to the Reader, concerning the enſuing TABLES.

SHort Tables may not ſeeme proportionable to ſo long a Work, eſpecially in an Age wherein there are ſo many that pretend to learning, who ſtudy more the Index *then they do the* Book. *But to this Work ſhort Tables will be long enough, conſidering that the Running titles on the top of each leaf, direct the Reader to a view of thoſe Countries which he is to travell; and conſequently to as much knowledge of thoſe things which concern thoſe Countries as this Work can give him. Howſoever that I may not be wanting in any poimt to the Readers eaſe, I have drawn thoſe titles into* Method *by the courſe of the* Alphabet; *and added all the reſt of the* Provinces *both great and ſmall, which are hercin mentioned and deſcribed: with the names of thoſe Eſtates and Nations, whether old or new, the ſum of whoſe affairs is here drawn together. This being done in the firſt of theſe* Tables, *I have reduced into a ſecond the names of thoſe particular Nations, with their ſeverall Tribes (the principall of them at the leaſt) which anciently inhabited thoſe Kingdoms, Provinces, and Iſlands, the Chorographie and Hiſtory whereof is my chief endeavour: that being* marſhalled *by themſelves, they be no hinderance to the Reader in the ſearch of thoſe places, which he hath more deſire to viſit. And finally whereas there are many things in this Work looking towards* Philologie, *and ſome particulars not eaſily reducible to the other* Tables, *I have digeſted the chief of them into a* third; *leaving the reſt unto the conſideration of the ſtudious Reader, who poſſibly might take it ill if nothing ſhould be left to his care and memorie.*

A Table of the principall Countries, Provinces, Mountains, Seas, and Iſlands, contained and deſcribed in this Book.

A

Bruzzo 157
Apulia 61
Apennine hils 37
Alps M. 131
Æolian Iſles 72
Adriatick Sea 100
Argow 141
Aquitanica 153
Aquitain 178
Anjou 167
Auxerrois 158
Amiens Vidamate 160
Auvergn 174
Aubigni 172
Angoleſm 177
Armaignac 181
Albret 182
Agenois 182
Aurange 187
Avignon 187
Alderney 198
Andaluzia 225
Algarve 239
Azores 239
Aſturia 219
Aragon 249
Angleſey 317

Lib. II.

Auſtraſia 48,63
Artois 9
Alſatia 60
Algow 67
Arthuſen 125
Aggerrhuis 132
Aſtrachan 158
Auſtria 74
Ausbach 83
Alſen 128
Abſyrtides 197
Anhalt 104
Arbe 197
Achaia propria 219
Arcadia 221
Argolis 225
Achaia 228
Attica 228
Athens 229
Ætolia 236
Athamanis 237
Acarnania 238
Albania 240
Ægean Sea 254
Ægina 257
Andros 258
Anaphne 259
Aſtypalea *ibid.*

Lib. III.

Aſia 13
Aſia minor 5
Aſia propria 14
Anatolia 5
Amazons 9
Æolis 21
Amathuſia 42
Ammonites 76
Auranitis 80
Aſer 83
Arabia 111
Deſerta 112
Petroſa 113
Felix 117
Amalekites 115
Aſſyria 131
Adiabene 131,132
Arrapachitis 131
Aladeule 140
Armenia major 142
Armenia minor 14
Albania 149
Atropatia 159
Arachoſia 169
Aria 170
Altai 200
Anian 203 & *l.* 4.
Agra 222
Aurea Cherſoneſus
Ava 239
Arracan 235
Amboina 251

Lib. IV.

Africa 1
Africa propria 28,29
Auguſtanica 12
Arcadia Egyptiaca 12
Ammoniaca 15
Aſgara 40
Algeirs 24
Atlas M. 48
Agadez 54
Æthiopia ſuperior 59
Æthiopia inferior 23
Æthiopick Iſles 84
Angote 64
Amcora 64
Adel 67
Adea 68
Agaſymba 73
Agags, or *Giacchi* 76 80
Angola 79
Aurichana 81
Aſcenſion Iſle 86
Annibon 86
Atlanticæ Inſ. 90
Antigrica 95
Andes M. 151
Antigo 180
Auſtralis Incognita 193

B

BAſilicate 60
Buri 62
Belgica 153. & *l.* 2,3
Barrois 158
Brie 158
Boulogrois 160
Bretagne 165
Beauſſe 170
Berry 171
Bourbon 173
Beaupolis 173
Buche 179
Bearn 180
Bigorre 181
Breſſe 191
Burgundie K 189
Burgundie D 193
Burgundie C 195

TABLE I.

Burgundie Tranſmarine 133
Biſcay 221
Betica 212
Bæturia 228
Baleares 248
Britaine 256
Bardſey 348
The borders 295

Lib. II.

Belgium 3
Bovillon *D.* 14
Brabant 18
Buren *E.* 28
Beverland 24
Berg 50
Briſgow 67
Bavaria 69
Bamberg *B.* 82
Baden 86
Bohemia 88
Brandenburg 95
Brunſwick 109
Bremen *B.* 115
Borglave 126
Baltick Sea 126
Baltick Iſlands 126
Bornholm 128
Bleſcida 130
Bodia *or* Bodner 144
Biarmia 156
Boſnia 193
Beſſarabia 204
Bulgaria 209
Bœotia 232
Boſphorus Thracius 254
Boſph. Cimmerius l. 3. 187

Lib. III.

Bithynia 6
Beth. Rehob. 80
Benjamin 92
Babylonia 128
Bahaman *K.* 141
Bactria 175
Bargu
Boranter 234
Bengala 235
Barma *or* Brama 238,239
Bantam 250
Borneo 252

Lib. IV.

Barbarie 25
Barbuta Antiqua 73
Bugia 32
Biledulgerid 50
Benin 56
Bornum 56
Baganiedrum 68
Barnagaſſum 66
Barus 69
Batta 80
Bambu 79
Bucidaos 105
Brion 108
Briton Iſle 108
Berſirdaz 113
Braſil 164
Batiama 118
Bonaire 127
Barbados 179
Boriquen 180
Borealis Incognita 191

C

Celtica 153
Campania 55
Campagna di Roma 84
Calabria 59
Superior 60
Inferior 59
Capitanate 62
Capreæ 63
Capraria 112
Camerine 95
Chioggia 101
Corſica 118
Champaigne 157
Cominges 181
Charrolois 194
Corduba *K.* 225
Corvo 241
Caſtile 233
Catalonia 245
Cerdagne 247
Connaught 311
Caſſiterides 318

Lib. II.

Cambray *B.* 13
Cleveland 48
Colon *B.* 53
Carinthia 77
Carniola 77
Cimbrick Cherſonеſe 121
Codonama 128
Corelia 156
Curland 168
Condora 156
Caſan 158
Croatia 193
Carpathian Mountains 181
Contado di Zara 195
Corinthia 228
Chaonia 238
Conſtantinople 250
Cyclades 257
Cythera 260
Crete 250
Candie 260.263
Canea 264
Claudia 265
Cia 265
Corcyra 268
Curzola 197
Cephalonia 267

Lib. III.

Cappadocia 13
Caria 25
Cilicia 31
Chios 35
Claros 37
Coos 38
Carpathos 38
Cyprus 41
Coole Syria 64
Comagena 61
Chuſites 116
Colchis 145
Cuſſian Sea 173
Circaſſans 190
Chaldæa 127
Carmania 165
Cathay 198
Caſcar
Cheſmur
Camul
Carazan
Cardandan
Caindu
China 206
Citor *K.* 222
Cambaia 223 224
Canara 226
Cononor 227
Calecut 228
Cranganor 228
Cochin 228
Cai-Coulan 228
Coulan 228
Couche 234
Champa 240
Camboia 240
Cauchin China 239

Lib. IV.

Cyrene 16
Carthage 30
Conſtantina 31
Chaus 42
Couche 63
Cafraria 77
Canarie Iſlands 87
Coſyra 45
Circina 46
Cano 54
Caiena 54
Canada 106
Cicuic 119
Cibola 120
Cou'iacan 125
Cinaloa 124
Californiа 119.121
Chiapa 137
Coſtu Rica 139
Chiametla 138
Caſtella Aurea 142
Carthagena 142
Cuſco 153
Collao 153
Crux de la Sierra 163
Charcha 154
Chilemalca 152
Clide 158
Capitaniæ de *S.* Vincent 155
di Rio di Ianiere
di Spitito Sancto 155
di Porto Segaro
dos Ilheos
di Todos los San.
di Fernambuc 156
di Timaraca
di Paraiba
di Rio Grande
di Siara 157
di Muzaggion
di Paria
Cumana 174
Cubagna 176
Caribes 179
S. Chriſtopher 180
Cuba 182

D

Dalphine 190

Lib. II.

Denmark 120
Ditmarſh 122
Dwina 160
Dalmatia 194
Dacia 200
Dardania
Doris 236
Delos 257

Lib. III.

Doris 25
Druſians 57
Decapolis 82
Dan 82.89
Dead Sea 74
Drangiana 168
Dialſinda 219
Delby 221
Diu 224
Decan 225

Lib. IV.

Ducala 37
Dara 50
Damut 64
Dancali 69
Dobas 69
Darien 143
Dominica 181
Deſeada 179

E

Europe 32
Exarchate 78
Extremadura 228
Ebuica 247
England 258
Eaſt Angles 278
Eaſt-Saxons 277

Lib. II.

Eaſt-Friſeland 115
Eſtland 167
Elis 220
Epirus 238
Euxine Sea 253
Erithynnus 253
Eubœa 256
Echinades 260

Lib. III.

Ephraim 87
Ergimul 201

Lib. IV.

Egypt 3.12
Erriffe 41
El-Habat *ib.*
Eſtotiland 183

F

Ferrara 79
Flaminia 77
Friuli 98
Florence *D.* 108.109
France 145
France ſpeciall 154
Iſle of France 156
Forreſt 172
Foix 180
Paial 240
Flores 241
Frumentaria 247

Lib. II.

Flanders 7
Flammengant 7
Imperiall 8
Gallicant 8
Franconia 81
Fionia *or* Fuinen 127
Fimera 128
Falſtri *ib.*
Frozen Ocean 133
Finmark 143
Finland 144
Freezland 134

Lib. IV.

Feſſe 3839
Fatigar 68

TABLE I.

Fuerte ventura 888
Florida 115
Fretum Davis 103
Fretum le Maire 194
Fairie-land 196

G

Iglio 112
Genoa *S.* 115
Geneva *S.* 139
Grisons *B.* 143
Gallia 145
Cisalpina 120
Comata 153
Braccata 127
Gastinois 155
Guisnes 160
Guise 161
Gurenne 179
Gascoign 180
Garneley 197
Guipascoa 221
Gallicia 223
Gades 227
Gibraltar *ib.*
Granada 229
Gratiosa 241
S. Georges 141

Lib. II.

Gelderland 27
Groyningen 29
Germanie 36
Gulick 49
Gothland *Cont.* 140
Gothland Isle 145
Groinland 134
Greece 215
Gyaros 258

Lib. III.

Galatia 11
Gadites 78
Gilead M. 69
Galilee 81
Gishar 80
Gaulonitis 80
Geo gia 147
Geodosia 168
Gazurate 223
Goa 225
Gouren 234

Lib. IV.

Guzzala 36
Garet 40
Goza 45
Gaulos 46
Gualata 54
Gumbra, Ghenega, Gialofi, Guber, Guinea 55
Guangara 56
Guega 57
Guagere 62
Goyami 65
Gallæ 72 76
Gorgades 87
Gomera 88
Guanahani 118
Guadalaiara 126
Guaxaca 135
Guatimala 137,138
Guiana 169, 170
Guadalupe 180

H

Hiero 72
Histria 99
Hetruria 107
Hapsburg *B.* 141
Helvetia
Heurepoix 155
Hispania 207
Hebrides 316
Holy Land 320

Lib. II.

Hainalt 11
Holland 21
South Holland 21
North Holland 22
Horn *E.* 19
Hegow 66
Hanaw 80
Henneberg *E.* 83
Hassia 111
Holstein 122,123
Hollandia 129
Hemodes 128
Hyperborean Mount. 153
Hungarie 182
Hæmus M. 213
Hellespont 254
Helene 259

Lib. III.

Hermon M. 69
Hierusalem 93
Hyrcania 173

Lib. IV.

Hea 37
Hascora 38
S. Helens 85
Hierro 88
Holy Port 89
Hesperides 90
Hondura 139
Hispaniola 181

I

Italie 34
Ile of Naples 63
Ischia 63
Isles of the Adriatick 100,196
Ilva 111
Ividot 162
Jarsey 197
Ireland 306
Ila 316
Jona 316

Lib. II.

Juitland 125
Iseland 133
Jugra 157
Illyricum 192
Imbrus 255
Ionian Sea 265
Ithaca 268
Illyris 195

Lib. III.

Ionia 21
Isauria 28
Icaria 37
Icarian Sea 37
Ishtob 80
Ituræa 77
Issachar 82
Judæa 88
Judah 91
Idumæa 97
Ismaelites 116
Iberia 147
Imaus M. 1,200
India 213
Intra Gangem 216
Extra Gangem 237
Isles of Bengala 235
Jangoma 240
Ior 244
Iapan 247
Iava major 252
Iava minor 253

Lib. IV.

Inhamban 77
Imbians 74 78
S. Iago 87
Iamaica 184
Insulæ Solomonis 194

K

Kent *K.* *l.* 1. 276
Kenites *l.* 2. 115
Kirgesse *l.* 2. 192

L

Latium 84
Lipara 72
Laitie of the Church 77
Luca *S.* 114
Lombardie 120
Liguria 115
Lugdunensis 153.192
Limaign 174
Limosin 176
La March 177
Languedock 183
Lionois 192
Lusitanica 212.238
Leon and Oviedo 219
Lemster 309
Lundie 318

Lib. II.

Limbourg 15
Luxenbourg 14
Leige *B.* 16
Luickland 16
Lorein 62
Luchtenberg 87
Lunenbourg 110
Lawenburg 110
Lusatia 94
Lippe *E.* 114
Langeland 128
Lawland 128
Lapland 143
Livonia 166
Lettenland 168
Lituania 169
Lucinia 192.195
Lesina 196
Laciosia 222
Liburnades 196
Locris 235
Lemnos 255
Leucadia

Lib. III.

Leuco-Syria 13
Lydia 22
Lycia 26
Lycaonia 27
Lesbos 31
Lapethia 43
Lop 201
Lamor 220
Laos 240
Lequin 249

Lib. IV.

Libya 14
Libya Deserta 51
Latophagitis 46
Loango 81
Loande *ib.*
Lanserotte 88
Lucaios 117.118
Lima 152
Ladrones 178
Lands of Chivalrie 196

M

Moloss 58
Mazara 71
Mona 71
Muriano 101
Marca Anconitana 81
Marca Trevigiana 97
Mediterranean Sea 67
Malamocco 101
Millain 121
Mantua 124
Modena 126
Montferrat 128
Maine 168
Monpensier 174
Murcia 232
Montpelier 247
Majorca *K.* 246
Majorca Island 247
Minorca 247
Mercia 280
Munster 311
Meath 319
Man 316
S. Maries 240
S. Michael 240

Lib. II.

Marquisate of the Empire 19
Machlyn 19
Mark 51
Muers 49
Mentz *B.* 55
Montbelgard 61
Moravia 93
Mecklenburg 100
Magdeburg 103
Misnia 102
Mansfield 104
Moscovie 154
Mosaiskie 154
Mordwitz 159
Massovia 173
Mellida 197
Moldavia 204
Mœsia 208
Methene 221
Mycenæ 227
Megaris 232
Macedon 242
Mygdonia 244
Melos 159

Lib. III.

Metapontus 8
Mysia 38
Midianites 75.115
Moabites 75

TABLE I.

Manaſſes 80.66
Meſopotamia 137
Media 158
Margiana 174
Mandao 220
Moultan 220
Moguls 236
Malabar 237
Male ur
Malaca 242
Muantay 243
Martavan 244
Macin 244
Meaco 247
Mindanao 249
Macaſſar 251
Madura 253
Maldivæ 251
Moluccos 250

Lib. IV.

Mauritania 35
Cæſarienſis 34
Sitifenſis 36
Tingitana 38
Morocco *K.* 36
Morocco *Pr.* 37
Mamalucks 21.23
Malta 46
Melly 55
Meroe 62
Monomotapa 76
Manicongo 78
Madagaſcar
Mohelia 85
Mauritius 85
Marie-land 111
Mexico 101,102
Mexico 131
Mechuacan 130
Martyres Iſles 117
Magellanica 159
Magellane Straits 160
Maragnon 169
Margarita 176
Matinino 179
Mona 181
Monico 181
Mundus alter & idem 195

N

Naples *K.* 54
Narbonenſis 153,184
Normandie 162
Nivernois 173
Navarre 211
Northumberland *K.* 279
North-Wales 292

Lib. II.

Namur 13
Naſſaw 79
Northgoia 87
Novogrod the Great 155
Novogrod Inferior 159
Northern Ocean 153
Norwey 131
Nova Zemla 160
Noricum 74
Negropont 256
Naxos 258
Nurenberg 87

Lib. III.

Naphthali 82
Nabathæa 113
Nagaians 192
Narſinga 231

Lib. IV.

Numidia antiqua 32
Numidia nova 49
Nubia 57
Norumbega 107
Nutiſcow 107
Nicaragua 139
New Bretagne 104
Nova Francia 106
New-found-land 104
Nova Scotia 107
New England 109
Novum Belgium 110
Nova Albion 111,122
Nova Gallicia 124
New Biſcay 127
New Mexico 127
Nova Hiſpania 129
New Granado 146
Nova Guinea 195
New Atlantis 196
New World in the Moon. 197

O

Orleanois 170
Oleron 197
Orange, *v.* Aurange
Olava 211
Oviedo 219
The Ocean 263,256
Orcades 315

Lib. II.

Overyſſell 26
Oldenburg 117
Oeland 145
Obdora 156
Oſilia 168
Oebalia 212
Ortygia 257

Lib. III.

Oſroene 136
Ormus 167
Oriſtan 233

Lib. IV.

Ora Anteroſa 54
Orenoque 171
Orbis Arcticus 191

P

Puglia 61
Prochita 63
Principate 57
Papacie 86,87,&c.
S. Peters patrimonie 82
Piſa *S.* 110
Planaſia 112
Parma *D.* 127
Piemont 134
Paris 156
Picardie 159
Pontheia 160
Perch 163
Poictou 175
Perigort 177
Province 186
Pirenean Mountains 206
Portugal 238
Pico 241
Powiſland 292
Pomona 315
Pictland 300

Lib. II.

S. Paul E. 9
Pfirtz 61
Palatinate of the Rhene 56
of Northgoia 87
Pannonia 182
Pomerania 98
Permia 157
Petzora 156
Pleſcow 154
Poland *K.* 165
Poland *Pr.* 176
Podolia 171
Podlaſſia 173
Pruſſia 173
Pharus 196
Pontus 210
Peloponneſus 218
Phocis 233
Propontis 254
Proconneſus 254

Lib. III.

Pontus 8
Galaticus 8
Pelemoniacus 9
Cappadocius 9
Paphlagonia 10
Phrygia major 6
minor 15
Pergamus *K.* 20
Piſidia 28
Pamphilia 28
Patmos 37
Paphia 42
Phœnicia 52
Palmyrene 62
Paleſtine 70
Philiſtims 88
Peræa 75
Panchaia 118
Paneas 82
Perſia 160
Perſis 164
Parapomiſus 169
Parthia 170
Pengab 220
Patenaw 234
Patane 242
Prom 239
Pega 243.244
Polerone 249
Philippine Iſlands 249

Lib. IV.

Pharos 9
Princes Iſland 86
Palma 87
Panuco 130
Peruana 141
Panama 141
Peru 148
Paria 174
Porto Rico 180
Pſittacoram Regio
Painters Wives Iſland

Q

Quereu 177

Lib. IV.

Quiloa 74
Quiticui 77
Quivira 119
Quitos 151
Quixos 152

R

Romandiola 77
Rome 85
Rhætia 91
Rethelois 161
Rochelois 178
Rouverghe 184
Rhe Iſle 197
Rouſſillou 246
Rothſay 316

Lib. II.

Raveſtein 19
Ravensburg 114
Rip 125
Ruſſia 150
Ruſſia Nigra 172
Rhezan 157
Raguſi 195,197
Raſcia 207

Lib. III.

Rhodes 38
Reubenites 75
Red Sea 120
Rio de la Hacha *l.*4. 44

S

Sicil 67
Stromboli 72
Sardinia 75
Sabinia 82
Spoletano Ducato 81
Sienna *S.* 110
Savoy 134,135
Switzerland 181
Saniterre 160
Soiſſons *K.* 161
Sologue 170
Sark 198
Spain 207
South-Saxons K. 276
South-Wales 293
Scotland 296
Sodore 316
Schecland 315
Sorlinges or Sillie Iſles 318
Sunderland 320

Lib. II.

Schowen 24
Spires *B.* 57
Sungow 61
Suevia or Schwaben 66,67
Saltzburg *B.* 71
Stiermark 76
Solms *E.* 80
Swartzenberg *E.* 83
Sileſia 93
Saxonie *D.* 101
Saxonie *Pr.* 103,105
Storemarth 123
Sleſwick 125
Selandania 126
Scandia 129
Sconia 129
Swethland 139
Sweden 142
Scrufinia 143
Smolensko 154
Severia 157
Sarmatia Europæa 161
Aſiatica *l.*3. 190
Samogitia 169
Sclavonia 191
Servia

TABLE I.

Servia 207
Savia 192,182
Sicyonia 219
Sparta 222
Samothracia 254
Salamis 257
Scyros 258
Seriphia 259
Sporades 259
Strophades 265

Lib. III.

Solæ 30
Samos 36
Salaminia 43
Syria 48
Syria propria 57
Syria Sobab 60
Syria Maacha 61
Samaria 85
Simeon 90
Saracens 114,121,123
Sophene 144
Susiana 162
Scythia 197
Sacæ 193
Sogdiana 194
Samoyeds 196
Serica 199
Sinda 223
Sanga 222
Sincapura
Siam *K.* 241
Siam *Pr.* 242
Sindæ or Selebes 251
Sumatra 254

Lib. IV.

Sus 36
Siara 51
Sanaga 55
Sofala 57
Sunda 80
Songo 82
Seio 119
Soconusco 137
Solomoni Jus. 194

T

Terra di Lavoro 55
Terra di Otranto 61
Tuscanie *D.* 107
Tyrrhenia 107
Tuscan Isles 111
Tierasche 161
Tourein 168
Tarraconensis 212
Toledo *K.* 232
Tercera 240
Thule 316.*l.*2.133
Thanet 319

Lib. II.

Tolen 24
Triers *B.* 54
Tirol 78
Tosinge 128
Tuver 159
Trondheim 332
Turingia 101
Transylvania 201
Thebes 233
Thessalia 242
Thrace 248
Thracius Bosphorus 254
Thynnus 253
Thallus 255
Thera 260

Lib. III.

Troy *K.* 15
Tenedos 31
Trabezond *Emp.* 9
Trachonitis 79
Taurus *M.* 1.140
Turcomania 142
Turks 150
Turcheſtan 196
Tartaria 185
Precopensis 186
Deserta 189
Antiqua 202
Tartar *Pr.* 203
Tcumenses 192
Tainfu 201
Tanguth 201
Thebet
Tabor } 202
Tenduc
Tarnassar 229
Travancor 229
Tangu 239
Tippara 234
Terenate 250

Lib. IV.

Thebais 13
Tunis *K.* 29
Tremesen 34
Taradant 36
Tedles 38
Temesna 39
Targa 51
Terra Nigritarum 53
Tombutum 55
Trogloditua 59
Tigrenaon 63
Torra 76
Tenariffe 80
Terra Corterialis 104
Tortugas 117
Tiguer 120
Tlascalla 134
Tabasco 135
Tucayan 121
Trimdado 173
Tabagna 173
Tortuga 177
Terra del Fuego 193

U

Val de Noto 70
Vulcanian Isles 72
Urbine *D.* 95
Umbria 81
Venice *S.* 96
Venice *C.* 101
Valesia 140
Valois 154
Veromendois 161
Vendosme 171
Venuiscine 187
Valentia 244
Ulster 310

Lib. II.

Utrecht 26
Vindelicia 69
Veteravia 79
Voitland 103
Volodomir 159
Volhinia 171
Valachia 205
Valeria 182, 192
Veggia 197

Lib. III.

Verma 244

Lib. IV.

Virginia 109,111
Uxitipa 126
Utrapaz 137
Veragua 139
Venezuela 175
S. Vincent. 179
Utopia 195

W

Wallisland 140
West-Saxon K. 276
Wales 288
North Wales 292
South-Wales 293
Wight 319

Lib. II.

Walchere 23
West-Friseland 24
Wurtzburg *B.* 82
Wittenberg 85
Waldeck 102
Westphalia 113
Walterdike 24
Worms *B.* 57
Waggerland 122
Wardhuis 132
Wiborch 126
Wheen 127
Wiatka 158
Worotine 159
Willoughbies Island 160
Windischland 192

X

Xantoign 178

Lib. IV.

Xoa 68
Xalisco 125

Z

Lib. II.

Zeland 23
Zutphen 28
Zemla Nova 160
Zaculeia 202
Zara 195,197
Zant 266

Lib. III.

Zabulon 84
Zavolhenses 192
Zagathay 193
Zeilan *or* Seilan 255

Lib. IV

Zerby Isle 46
Zanaga 51
Zuenziga 51
Zanzibar 73
Zocatora 83
Zacatecas 126
Mare del Zur 178

The End of the first Table.

TABLE II.

A Table of the ancient names of the Tribes *and* Nations *which are herein ſpecified; as they are delivered by* Ptolemie, Strabo, Plinie, *and the reſt of the old* GEOGRAPHERS.

A

Puli 61
Allobroges 131, 138
Ambiani 159
Abrincantes 163
Armorici 165
Ambiliates 165
Andes *or* Andegavi 167
Arverni 174,194
Aguenſes 179
Auſcii 180
Agarhenſes 185
Albigenſes 185
Arecomaci 185
Andibco 188
Apincenſes 190
Acuſiani 191
Aſtures 219
Antrigones 222
Arivacæ 235
Auxitani 245
Attrebatii 272

Lib. II.

Attrebates 10
Aduatici 24
Alemanni
Alauni 74,161
Ambilia 74
Ambilantii 74
Ambidramui 74
Angrivarii 114
Aebæi 217
Achivi 258
Ambrones 117
Argivi 226
Arii 128,177
Agathyrſi 161. & *l.*1. 300
Aorſi 170
Avarini 174
Avares 187. & *l.*3. 150,191
Azuli 185
Aravici *ib.*
Arotreſes 211
Æſtiæi 241

Lib. III.

Auſitæ
Adubeni 113
Agiæi *ib.*
Adramitæ
Avaritæ 121
Abuceni
Ægæi 121
Albani 149. & *l.*2. 240
Arymphæi 150
Amarindæ 163
Auradræ 166
Arbituri 168
Agriaſpæ 168
Aromaſpæ 169
Arii 170
Aſtoreni 171
Amariſpæ 176
Aſtorbeni 174
Æſchienſes 174
Alani 188,197
Arioche 188
Argaritæ 193
Anabi 200
Alanoeſi 197
Aſiotæ 197
Aletrophage 200
Abæi 201
Alpithræ 110
Acadræ *ib.*
Anabaſtæ 210
Avi
Arvari 217
Adiſathræ
Animachæ 238

Lib. IV.

Ægypiani 2
Adyrmachidæ 16
Arabes *Azari* 17
Arabes *Adri* *ib.*
Asbetæ 17
Africerones 49
Auroncæ
Agargeni 57
Achalincas

B

Rutii 59
Bellovaci 154
Bellocaſſi 165
Bajocenſes 163
Bituriges Cubi 171
Bituriges loſci & ubiſci 179
Boy 173. & *l.*2. 71,72,88
Bigerrones 181
Biterenſes 187
Bedii 223
Baſtuli 228
Baſtitani 235,245
Bruſleni 98
Belgæ 272. & *l.*2
Brigantes 272, & 312
Blanii 312

Lib. II.

Batavi 25
Brixantes 78
Biephi 203
Boiemi 88
Bemi *ib.*
Bary 94
Baſtarnæ 185,208
Boruſſi 173,175
Breuci 185
Beſſi 153,204
Bardo 252

Lib. III.

Byceni 11
Batrii 169
Borgi 171
Baſilici 193
Bylci 194
Batæ 209
Bittigi 217
Baſadæ 238
Barræ 258

Lib. IV.

Belemmyæ 2
Baſſachites 16
Bures 16
Barcitæ 17

C

Campans 55
Calabri 59
Cyclopes 68
Cenomanni 98,167
Carni 131
Centrones 136
Celtæ
Catalaun 157
Caletes 163
Carnutes 171
Cadurci 177
Convenares 180
Conſerani 180
Civari 191
Cheruſci 198
Cantabri 222
Cilini 223
Capori *ib.*
Carpentani 232,235
Celtici 233 & 242
Caſtel'lini 235,248
Conteſtani 245
Celtiberi 245
Cerretani 249
Caſerani 248
Cantiani 272
Cattieuchlani 272
Coritani 272
Cornavii 273
Caledonii 300
Cantæ 300
Cantini *ib.*
Cornubii 300
Cauci 312
Cariendi 312

Lib. II.

Caninefates 25
Caleucones 68
Carni 78
Charitini 85
Chaſmari 102
Cheruſci 107. 114
Catti 11
Chauci 110
Chauci majores 114
Chauci minores 116
Chanani 114
Charades 126
Cimbri 122,123
Cobandi 126
Chuni 185
Culi 126
Chedini 135
Ceraunii 198
Cucoenſii 203
Cribizi 211

Lib. III.

Cures 25
Caſſanitie 121
Carthobeni 113
Cynædocolpitæ 121
Cattabani 121
Caucaſy 149
Caſſæi 163
Caduſy 159,160
Chetonophagi 166
Cabadini 166
Caſpii 173
Chirondi 174
Chariſpæ 275
Coamani 176
Cimmerii 191
Coaxtræ 191
Caſſoritæ 171
Canapſeni 193
Chænides 193
Caratæ 194
Camari
Candari 194
Comedæ
Cheraſorii *ib.*
Cabocæ 238
Chatæ 199,201
Chauranæi 201
Caſpiræi
Chatzæi 217
Chadrammotitæ
Cadutæ 238

Lib. IV.

Cirteſii 33
Chituæ 35

D

Decenſes 191
Deceates 116,188
Dirtam 235
Danmonii 272
Durotriges 272
Dobuni 273
Damnii 300
Dimetæ
Darnii 312
Dauciones 239
Daci 285
Davi 105
Daurſii 198
Danduto 203
Dardani 208
Dinenſii 211
Danai 226

Do'opes

TABLE II.

Dolopes 242
Dolongi 252

Lib. III.

Debryces 163
Darandæ 169
Derbicæ 174
Drepſiani 194
Dryllophitæ 217

Lib. IV.

Derbici 49

E

Euganei 103
Euburiades 116
Euburones 163
Engoliſmenſes 177
Edetani 245,249
Ericni 312

Lib. II.

Elyſii 128,177
Eſtii 166,168
Ercuniates 185
Epicnemidii 235

Lib. III.

Eleſari 121
Elymæi 165
Euergetæ 169
Eoritæ 169

F

Erentini 18
Faliſci 180
Fidenates
Fluſſates 180
Friſii 198. & l.2.25. 116

Lib. II.

Francones 81
Finni 143.144
Frankes 81

G

Gubbales 285
Gagari 219
Gallaici 223
Gallaici Bracarii 242
Gallaici Lucenſes 242
Gereſæni 233
Gadeni 300
Gaugani 312

Lib. II.

Gothini 94
Gutæ 130
Gothones 141
Gythones 195
Galindæ 175
Gepidæ 187

Lib. III.

Gerræi 121
Georgi 147
Gordiæi 147
Gelæni 150
Gelæ 159
Gerri 193

Grynæi 194
Geranæi 200
Galactophagi 197
Gandarides 217
Gangeni 238

Lib. IV.

Goniatæ 16
Getuli 49
Garamantes 49
Gampſaphantes 249

H

Hirpini 58
Hetruxi 107
Heneti 102,103. *l.*2. 11
Hedui 173.194
Helvii 184

Lib. II.

Hermanduri 71.103
Heruli 99.100
Helveronæ 173
Hunni 187. & *l.* 3.191
Hunugari 187
Helotes 224

Lib. III.

Heptacometæ 10
Homeritæ 121
Hyrcani 173
Hamaxobii 188
Hyperborei 193
Hippophagi 193

Lib. IV.

Heſperii 73.80
Herpiditani 35

I

Apyges 81
Ingauni 116
Inſubres 121
Indigetes 248
Illercones 248
Illergetes 249
Jaccetani 249
Iceni 272

Lib. 2.

Intuergi 50
Iazyges Metanaſtæ 185
Iaſſii 185
Iapides 190
Inachii 226

Lib. III.

Iazyges 188
Iaſii 194
Iaxartæ 198
Iſſedones 221
Indo-Scythæ 217

Lib. 4.

Ionii 33
Ierbicæ 35
Ichthyophagi 73 & *l.*3.210

L

Latini 38
Laurentini 38
Lucani 60
Læſtrigones 68
Lepontii 131
Libyci 135
Lingones 157
Lexobii 165
Lemovices. 177

Leſtoraces 186
Lancienſes 219
Lemari 223
Luſitani 242
Lacetani 249
Lapithæ 242

Lib. 2.

Leuci 62
Longimani 102
Longiduni 102
Longobardi 107.186
Livoni 168
Liburni 198
Latovici 185
Leleges 202

Lib. III.

Lydians 23
Lyci 26
Lycaones 27
Limyrices 217
Leſtori 238
Lambatiæ 217

Lib. IV.

Libyarchæ 16
Lybi Ægyptii 16
Libyi Phœnices 33
Loganici 17

M

Eſapii 61
Medalli 136
Meldi 159
Mentilienſes 187
Marbogi 221
Meatæ 300
Menapii 312. & *l.*2.29

Lib. II.

Morini 17
Mattiaci 25
Mazæi 198
Medionatrices 62
Marſi 49,122
Marcomanni 75 93
Marſigni 94
Mœſi 208
Myrmidons 242
Moloſſi 238

Lib. III.

Maſſigni 10
Myſi 23
Materni 103
Minœi 121
Margaſi 160
Meſabatæ 165
Megores 165
Maſarnæ 169
Maſdorami 173
Maxeræ 174
Maricæ 176
Mœotæ 187,191
Merdi 193
Maſſagetæ 194.175
Maſſæi 197
Maragæ 217
Malli 217
Moſogeni 197
Muſicani 217
Marandæ 238

Lib. IV.

Macuratæ 17
Mathymi 33
Medini 33
Malchubii 35
Maccharobi 35
Mauri 35
Mauruſii 35
Metagonitæ 35
Maſæſili 34

Meinari 49
Macrobii 62

N

Annetes 167
Novantes 300
Nagnatæ 311.312

Lib. II.

Nervii 17
Nemetes 57
Norici 71.74
Noriſci 88.71
Naithones 96
Neteriates 103
Naharvali 173

Lib. III.

Nyſæi 173
Nabathæi 113
Napæi 188

Lib. IV.

Nigritimi 33
Novatæ 33
Neſtiberres 35
Nigritæ 46
Nubæ 46
Nabatræ 57

O

Xili 116
Oſiſmi 167
Oretani 298
Ottadini 272
Oidovices 288

Lib. II.

Oſyli 161
Oſoniates 185

Lib. III.

Olympeni 119
Orbitæ 169
Ocheni 113
Obares 113
Olandæ 193
Oxydracæ 194.207
Oxiani 194
Occacororæ 200
Opuntii 235
Ozolæ 235

Lib. IV.

Ogdoni 16
Odranguli 49

P

Eligni 59
Precutini 59
Piceni 57
Picentes 81
Picentini 57
Parthi 157
Pictones 175
Petrigorii 177
Peſici 219
Pictis 300

Lib. II.

Phrunduſii 106
Phiræi 106
Phatinæ 118
Pagiritæ 161
Phinni 179
Pagarini 170
Phrungudiones 175
Pæones 185
Parii 196

Petruſiæ

TABLE II.

Petruſtæ 168
Picentii 208
Pucini 211
Pelaſgi 220

Lib. III.

Proſelimnitæ 17
Phryges 17
Piſidæ 28
Paſagartæ 166
Paſargadæ 168
Paſargetæ 169
Parambi 173
Parni 174
Pſelli 191
Pialæ 200
Piratæ 217
Pezuari 217
Polindæ 217
Phyllitæ 217

Lib. IV.

Proſditæ 16
Pœni
Perasori 49
Pyrrhæi 49
Pſilli 49

Q

Quadi *l.*2. 75 93

R

Rutuli 84
Rhæti 131
Rhemi 157
Rhodones 167
Ruteni 184
Regni 272
Rhobognii 312

Lib. II.

Ramuraci 61
Ruguſci 68
Rugii 98
Reudigni 102
Rutheni 161
Roxolani 161.185. & *l.*3.188
Roſſi 161
Rhatacenſii 203
Raſciani 207

Lib. III.

Raubeni 113
Ramnæ 168
Rochitæ 169
Rhabbanæi 200
Rapſy *l.*4. 73

S

Samnites 57
Salentini 61
Sicano 68
Siculi 68
Sabini 82
Sadani 131
Salii 131.187
Salaſſi 135
Senones 121.157
Salures 163
Sueſſiones 159
Samnitæ 170
Seguſiani 173
Santones 178
Senitii 188
Sigeſtorii 188
Secuſiani 192
Scyrani 194.195
Scuri 223
Segalauni 191
Silures 288
Selgovio 300

Lib. II.

Sicambri 29. 81. & *l.* 1. 198
Suentes 68
Sevates 74
Salii 81. & *l.* 1.198
Suardones 103
Saxons 107.113.123. & *l.* 1.265
Sigalones 123
Subalingii 123
Sueones 139 42
Suethidi 39.42
Sitones 145
Suiones 145
Siculi 202
Sauromatæ 161
Savari 170
Sondini 175
Scordiſci 185
Sclavini 198
Sardiotæ 198
Sartones 198
Strimonii 152
Sapæi 152
Saii 152

Lib. III.

Soli 113
Sachalites 121
Sabæi 147
Soani 149
Suſcani 161
Sazæi 165
Stabæi 165
Sagartii 160
Sazaræ 166
Sieri 169
Salataræ 176
Scordæ 176
Savari 176
Sinchi 188
Sythi 117
Samocolchi 193
Socani 193
Seci 193
Seres 199
Scimnitæ 193
Sozyges 200
Semantini 210
Sadani 217
Soringi 217
Sabari 217

Lib. IV.

Succuſii 35

T

Tarentini 61
Tyrrheni 107
Tuſci 107
Taurini 134
Teſtoſages 184. & *l.*2.11.197
Toloſates 184
Turones 167
Tricaſſini 191
Teucteri 198
Turdetani 209.228
Turduli 228
Tuditani 242
Trinobantes 272
Talzalli 300

Lib. II.

Tungri 17
Treveri 55
Tribochi 161
Tauriſci 171.177.203
Turingi 102
Tricorneſii 208
Teutones 228
Triballi 211
Tegeates 222
Talantii 241

Lib. III.

Thynni 6
Themiſcyry 8
Tibareni 10
Trogmi
Toliboſti 11
Turcæ 150. 191
Thyrſagetæ 150. 191
Tapyri 160
Tombyzi 176
Thocari 176
Tauri 186.188
Tauro-Scythæ 188
Thyrambæ 191
Tachozi 194
Taporæi 197
Thoani 200
Tacoræi 238
Tilædæ 238

Lib. IV.

Taladuſii 35
Thaloſſii 35
Troglodites 59. & *l.*2.210

U

Veſtini 59
Umbri 81
Volſci 84
Veneti 103.165
Veii 108
Veragri 131
Valenſes 131.140.141
Veromandui 159
Venelhocaſſi 163
Vaccæi 180
Velauni 184
Volcæ 185
Vencienſes 187
Vaſionenſes 188
Valentini 191
Vocontii 191
Vaſcones 216.221
Varduli 222
Veutones 238
Vermines 300
Vacomagi 300
Volentii 312
Veniculi 312
Velibori 312
Utarni 312
Vodii 312

Lib. II.

Ubii 53
Vangiones 57
Veredonenſes 62
Vindelici 67.68.69
Vingeli 70
Virthungi 85
Varini 96
Vandali 101
Venedi 175
Vardæ 198

Lib. IV.

Veli 35
Vacuatæ 35

W

Winithi *l.*2. 96.99.192
Werciani *l.*2. 185
Winnili *l.*2.186

X

Xilinces *l.*4.57
Xanthi 43

Z

Zoelæ 219

Lib. III.

Zaviaſpæ 176
Zigæ 190.191
Zychi *or* Zinchi 190
Zaratæ 197

The End of the first Table.

A TABLE OF SOME PRINCIPAL THINGS herein contained, not properly reducible to the other two.

A

S. *Auguſtines* tart reply to an Atheiſtical demand l. 1 f. 2. The Order of *Friers* by him founded, 92. a.

Auguſtane Confeſſion why ſo called l. 2. f. 67. by whom, and where confirmed, 67. 71. &c.

Ariſtotle the Præcurſor of Chriſt *in rebus naturalibus* l. 1. f. 2. why he conceived the World to have been eternall *ibid.*

Abilene the Tetrarchie of *Lyſanias* where it was, l. 3. f. 64. and 81. Why reckoned *Luke* 3. amongſt the portions of *Herods* children, lib. 3. 64.

Abaſſines by whom converted l. 4. f. 60. their Hetrodoxies and Opinions *ibid.*

Ark of *Noah* where made l. 3. f. 132. in what place it reſted after the Flood l. 1. in f. 7, 8. and l. 3. 174.

Aſſur the ſon of *Sem* where planted l. 1. f. 10. and l. 3. 131. The *Aſſyrians* deſcended of him: why ſo eaſily conquered by all Invaders *ibid* f. 139.

Arphaxad the father of the *Chaldeans* l. 1. f. 10. firſt ſetled in the Region called *Arrapachitis*, *ib.* and l. 3. 131.

Aram the ſon of *Sem* the founder of the *Syrians* l. 1. 10. l. 3. 48. the large extent of that name in holy Scripture *ibid.*

Almodad the ſonne of *Jocktan*, where moſt probably fixed l. 1. 12.

Askenaz the ſon of *Gomer*, firſt ſetled in *Bithynia* and *Phrygia Minor* l. 1. 15. and l. 3. 6. 18.

Ananim the father of the *Hamamientes*, an *African* People l. 1. 14.

Antoeci what they are in Geographie l. 1. 25.

Antipodes what they are l. 1. 25. The tenet touching them derided by ſome of the Antients *ib.* condemned of Hereſie in the darker times of the Church *ib.*

Amphiſcii why ſo called, and what they are in Geographie l. 1. 25.

Armes why firſt uſed l. 1. 47. by whom firſt quartered 221. Why thoſe of *England* give place in the ſame *Eſcocheon* to the Armes of *France* 286.

Anakim the name of a Gigantine race of men, and why given unto them l. 3. 91.

Annals what they are l. 1. 21. and how they differ from Hiſtories *ib.*

Auguſtus, or an eſſay of the means and Counſels by which he reduc'd the Commonwealth of *Rome* to the ſtate of a Monarchie l. 1. 44.

Albigenſes what they were, and why ſo called l. 1. 193. The ſum and ſubſtance of their ſtory 192, 193. 147.

Anabaptiſts their furies and proceedings in the City of *Munſter* l. 2. 114. Their demands in the Inſurrection of the *Boors* 183.

Adamites why ſo called, and what l. 2. 89. and by whom deſtroyed *ib.*

Æolus why made the God of the winds l. 1. 72.

Ætna, the violent burnings of it l. 1. 69. and the cauſe thereof 69, 70.

Attila the *Hun*, why called *Flagelum Dei* l. 1. 184 & l. 1. 186. his bloody end, *ibid.* his Coat of Armes l. 2. 190.

Amphictyones what they were, and of their authority l. 2. 230. 233, 234.

Areopagites what they were, and from whence ſo called l. 2. 231.

Amethiſt a precious ſtone, and the vertues of it l. 3. 41.

Aſia whence ſo called at firſt l. 3. 3. the ſeverall notions of the word, and in what ſenſe uſed in holy Scripture 5. 21. the eſtate of *Chriſtianity* in it 4. amongſt whom divided *ibid.*

Amazons why ſo called l. 3. 9. Their dwelling place 9. 193. the ſum and ſubſtance of their affairs l. 3. 9.

Augur and *Aruſpex* how they differ l. 3. 137. whence they had their names *ibid.*

Avi ſiniſtra what it meaneth, and the reaſon of it l. 3. 137.

Aſpendius Citharista, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 36.

Arviſian wines much celebrated l. 3. 36. in what place they grow *ib.*

Amiclas ſilentium perdidit, a Byword, and from whence it came l. 1. 65.

Aulæa, Tapeſtries, why ſo called, and by whom invented l. 3. 20.

Adriatick Sea, whence it had the name l. 1. 100. the great extent ther-of in ſome antient writers, *ib.* & 101. maried to the Duke of *Venice* every holy Thurſday 101.

Amyris infanit an old Proverb; the meaning & occaſion of it l. 1. 61.

Aſſaſſines who they were, & where l. 3. 19. and f. 53. thence the word Aſſaſſinate.

Almains from whence ſo called l. 2. 36. 47. of what ſeverall nations they conſiſted 68. their affairs and ſtory *ib.*

Argonauts who they were, and whence ſo denominated l. 3. 146. their expedition into *Colchis ibid.* Their return by land from.

Argoſies great ſhips of burden, whence they had their name l. 2. 159.

Archerie where moſt practiſed in the elder times l. 2. 171. the excellency of the *Engliſh* at it 172. whether Guns or that to be preferred *ib.*

Auſtraſia what provinces it contained when firſt made a Kingdom l. 2. 63. the ſtory and Kings ther-of *ibid.*

Africa whence it had the name l. 4. 1, 2. the eſtate of Chriſtianity in it how much decaied. 2. the ſeverall Languages therein ſpoken. 3. The monſtrous things reported of it by ſome of the Antients 2.

Armenians in what points they differ from other Chriſtians lib. 3. 142. how, and by whom their Church is governed.

Alcoran the Book of the *Mahometan* Law, why ſo called lib. 3. 121. how highly reverenced *ib.* the doctrinals thereof, &c. reduced unto eight Commandements, *ibid.*

Amber where it groweth, how gathered, and the vertues of it l. 2. 172.

America not known to the antients l 4. by whom firſt diſcovered 95. 97. the people of it not ſo black as the *Africans* 100. That they are deſcended from the *Tartars* 100. The eſtate of Chriſtianity in it *ibid.* The ingenuity of the People in their Feather-pictures 101.

Armadilla a ſtrange beaſt in *America* the deſcription of it 101.

Australis Incognita, the vast greatness of it l. 4. why not yet discovered. 193.
Æs Corinthium what it was, how highly prized, and how occasioned l. 2. 227.
Anticyram naviget, a Proverb, and to whom applyable lib. 2. 233.
Anchorets, whence so called l. 1. 93. buried whilest alive *ib.*
Abades, a strange Beast, the *Rhinocerot* of the Antients lib. 3. 224.
Aloes, a precious wood, worth its weight in Silver l. 3. 240. *Aloes Zocotrina*, from what place it comes l. 4. 84.
Ἀναπαιδίζειν an old by-word, & the meaning of it l. 2. 258.
Arroba a *Spanish* measure, the content thereof l. 3. 129.

B

Babel, the attempt onely of some bold Adventurers, and not of all the sons of *Noah* lib. 1. 17. the languages occasioned then, not 72 in number, as by some supposed 9. the stupendious greatness of the Project l. 3. 129.
Burgundians why so called l. 1. 189. when first converted to the Faith *ib.* their Affaires and Story *ibid.*
Beaufort, why made the surname of the Children of *John* of *Gaunt* l. 1. 167.
Bishops coæval in most places with Christianity l. 1. 30. 144. 147. 167. l. 2. 216. l. 3. 73. 112. l. 4. 6. &c. how, and why hated by the *Biscaines* l. 1. 222. and the ill consequents thereof *ibid.* 221.
Belgæ, the valiantest of the *Galls* in the time of *Cæsar*, and for what reasons l. 2. 4.
Baltick Sea, why so called l. 2. 126. why it doth not ebb and flow like to other Seas *ib.*
Bel and *Baal*, whence the names derived l. 3. 136. why that of *Belzebub* a name for the Prince of devils 85.
Blind and Lame mentioned 2 *Sa.* 5. 6. what they were most probably l. 3. 94.
Bdelium mentioned *Gen.* 2. 12. what conceived to be l. 3. 163.
Belerophontis Litera, a By-word, the occasion of it l. 3. 26.
Brachygraphie, or the Art of short writing by whom first invented l. 4. 13.
Bos in Lingua, a Proverb, the meaning and originall of it lib. 2. 228.
Benedictines or *Black Monks*, by whom instituted l. 1. 92. *ib.* their habit and increase *ib.*
Black Friers or *Dominicans*, by whom founded l. 1. 92. why so called *ib.*
Bathes, not permitted by the Emp. *Adrian* to be used promiscuously by both Sexes l. 2. 141. *b.* The inconvenience arising from that intermixture *ibid.*
Bezar, the soveraign nature of it l. 4. 101. found in the belly of a beast called the *Vicague ibid.* that of *China* and the East more excellent than that of *America* l. 3. 206.
Brachmanes, what they were amongst the *Indians* l. 3. 214 their authority and course of life 215. succeeded in the first by the modern *Bramines* 215.

C

Creation of the World, and the Motives of it l. 1. 1. the concurrence of each person to it 3. The matter of it and the Method *ib.* how long since done 3.
Chaos or first matter of the world, expressed by *Moses* in the names of Heaven and Earth l. 1. 3. how described by *Ovid ib.*
Cities by whom first built, and on what design l. 1. 6. the causes of the greatness and magnificence of them 5.
Climes what they be, how many, and how distinguished l. 1. 25.
Commentaries what they properly are, and how they differ from History l. 1. 21.
Chronologies, how they differ from Historie l. 1. 21. by whom best performed *ib.*
Chorography what it is l. 1. 27. how it differeth from *Geography ibid.*
Cosmography defined 28. the general Latitude of the Notion *ib.*
Consuls when first ordained in *Rome* l. 1. 40. who the first Sole Consul 10. when the office ended *ibid.*
Cæsar the name at first of the *Roman* Emperours l. 1. 45. after of the designed Successour *ibid.* the unfortunate end of most of them. 46.
Cardinals by whom first ordained l. 1. 89. the election of the Popes assigned to them only, and by whose authority 125.
Capuam esse Cannas Annibali, a By-word, and the occasion of it l. 1. 56.
Campi Catalaunici, where lib. 1. 184.
Colonies why planted by the *Romans* l. 1. 184. the number of them, and how distributed *ib.* whether more usefull than a Forrest *ibid.*
Constantine converted to the Faith, and on what occasion l. 1. 47. his new Modelling of the Empire 48. Of which one of the chief Subverters 48. He cassed the *Prætorian* Guards 46. His Donation forged 89.
Chersoneses what they are, why so called, and how many of them l. 2. 121.
Christmass sports in *Twelftide*, by whom first instituted l. 1. 274.
Chus the son of *Cham* first planted in *Arabia* l. 1. 13. and 3. 116. His posterity (the *Chusites*) why call'd *Æthiopians* l. 3. 116. mistaken for the *Æthiopians* of *Africk* l. 1. 13. l. 3. 116 & l. 4. 69.
Casluhim more likely to be found in *Casiotis* than *Colchis* l. 1. 13.
Cimmerians the posterity of *Gomer* l. 1. 15. 152. first setled in *Albania* and *Phrygia Major ib.* & l. 3. 17. gave name to *Bosphorus Cimmerius* l. 2. 42. l. 3. 187. In *Europe* better known by the name of
Cimbri, the same with the *Cimmerians* l. 1. 152. & l. 2. 142. the *Cimbrick Chersonese* named from them l. 2. 121. Their attempt upon the *Roman* Empire l. 1. 186.
Citim the son of *Japhet*, first setled in the Isle of *Cyprus* l. 1. 16. & l. 3. 44. his posterity spreading into *Macedonia* lib. 2. 244. from thence into *Ætolia*, and so into *Italie* l. 1. 37.
Chatsermaveth the Father of the *Chadromatitæ*, an *Indian* People l. 1. 11, 12.
Cappadocians generally so lewd that they grew a By-word l. 3. 12. v. K.
Coa, and *Vestis Coa* a light garment much used by the Dames of *Rome* l. 3. 38. the *Coan* wine (*vinum Cos*) as much cried up by the good-fellows of that City *ibid.*
Colophonem addere, a Proverb, and from whence it came l. 3. 22.
Cotton-wooll, where it groweth, and how l. 3. 58. l. 4. 45, 46. & *passim alibi.*
Cuspinians happy guests at the Arms of *Germany* l. 2. 119.
Christians where first so called, and with what solemnity l. 3. 49. extremely

tremely hated by the *Gentiles ib.* Their persecutions, and encrease 50.
Chimæra the Monster what it was l. 3. 26. and how tamed by *Belerophon ib.*
Carmel a mountain of *Syria* l. 3. 53. mistook by the Gentiles for a God *ib.* The Friers Carmelites thence named *ib.* & l. 1. 92.
Curtius taxed for overstraining the Acts of *Alexander* l. 3. 217.
Cloves where they grow most plentifully, and the nature of them l. 3. 249.
Circassians where they dwell l. 3. 191. their opinions and practice *ibid.*
Cophti, the name of the Christians of *Egypt* whence to be derived lib. 4.6. their Tenets in matter of Religion, and estate at the present *ibid.*
Capphorim to be found in *Coptus* a Town of *Egypt* l.1. 14. carried against all reason into *Cappadocia ib.*& l.3.13.
Chusites why rendred *Ethiopians* in our *English* Bibles l.3.116. the Translation justifyed *ib.* the actions ascribed unto them not possible to be understood of the *Ethiopians* of *Africk* l.4. 69. the mistake laid on the Expositers l. 3. 116.
Calish the name of the Successors of *Mahomet* l.3.124. The Succession of them *ibid.* & 125. & l. 4. 21
Crocodiles their monstrous shape, and where most usuall l.4.9.
Coco-nuts a most excellent fruit, and of several uses l.4.84.
Cinnamon what it is, where and how it groweth, and from whence so called l.4.59.
Ciphers or private Characters for writing, by whom first invented l 4.5.
Chaldæans great Astrologers l. 3. 128. the name communicated unto all who professed that Art *ib.* so called from *Chesed* the Son of *Nachor* 127.
Cistercians or *White Monks* whence so called l.1.92.by whom ordained *ib.*
Capuchin Friers, by whom first instituted, and why so called l. 1. 92.
Centaures the fable of them whence it took beginning l.2.242.
Cretensis nescit Pelagus, a Proverb, the occasion of it l.2.261.
Carthusian Monks by whom instituted l. 1. 92. their strait kind of life *ib.*
Cocchinel a precious die, how and where it groweth l 4.148.
Corybantes the Priests of *Cybele* l.2.26.
Curetes what they were, and from whence so called lib. 2. 236. and 262.

D

Dictators what they were in the State of *Rome* l.1. 42. A Catalogue of them 43.
Diaries what they are, and how they differ from History l.1.21.
Delinquents how to be proceeded with l.1.58 gained more by favors than by rigour 59.
Druides what they were, and from whence so called l.1.212. Their chief seat in *France* 170. in *Britain* 318.
Dies observed as lucky or unluckie unto divers men l. 1. 83 l. 3. 95.
Dodanim the sonne of *Javan* first settled in *Rhodes* l.1.14 & l. 3. 39. his posterity passing into *Epirus* l.2.239.and there naming the *Dodonian* Grove 238.
David George a monstrous Heretick and what his Tenets l. 2. 22.
Dedan the son of *Regma* planted upon the shores of the *Persian* Gulf l. 1. 13.
Drusians what they are; their Religion and Country l. 3. 49. of their power and strength 57.
Dositheans a Samaritan Sect, and their superstitions l. 3. 86.
Divination by Birds, and the kinds of it l. 3. 137.
Damascen Plums, *Damask* Roses, and Damask linnen, from whence so called l. 3. 64, 65.
Drinking when first in fashion among the English 149
Despot the title of the Heir apparent in the Eastern Empire l. 2. 207. communicated after to inferior Princes *ib.*the Despots of *Rascia* l. 2. 207. of *Servia* 208. and of *Bulgaria* 212.
Drake Sir *Fra.* how said to be the first that sailed about the world lib. 4.159. by whom followed.

E

Epoche what it is in accompt of time, l.1.21.the several *Epoches* in story 22.
Europe whence so called l. 1. 32, 33. the original languages still in it 33.
Edward the 3d. his claim unto the Crown of *France*, mistaken in our common Chronicles l.1.150,151. not prejudiced at all by the *Salique* Law *ib.*
Enemies to be licensed flight l. 1. 196. how to be dealt withall when they are in our power lib. 1. 58.
Exarch what he was, and by whom ordained l.1.78.his proper Territorie 79. the Catologue and succession of them *ib.*
Electors of *Germany* how many l. 2. 44. by whom ordained *ibid.* Their Offices, and how performed *ib.*
Election of the Popes l.1. 91.of the Dukes of *Venice* 105.of the *German* Emperors l.2 44. of the great Master of *Malta* l. 4.47. the ordinary means for obtaining the Crown of *Bohemia* l.2.90.
Enterviews betwixt great Princes reckoned inconvenient l. 1. 117.
Elam the son of *Sem* where planted l.1.13.l.3.162.
Elisha the son of *Javan*, settled in *Elis* of *Peloponesus* l.1. 16. and after in the Isles of *Greece* l. 2. 220.thence called the *Isles of Elisha Ezek* 27.7.l.1.16.
Emir of *Sidon* what he is l. 3. 55. his power and strength 57.
Endymionis somnum, a Proverb, the occasion of it l.3.25.
Etymologies ridiculous of *Europe* l. 1. 32. of the *Hugonots* 168. of the *Wallons* l.2.4.of the *Lombards* 186.
Esseni, why so called, their opinions and *Dogmata* l.3.71.
Egypt peopled in probability before the flood l. 1.6.l. 4. 17. Some of the Dynasties of their Kings to have been before it.*ib.*
Elephants their vast greatness, and docile nature l.3.213.
Eunuchs why most employed by the Eastern Monarchs l.3.183.

F

Fight to be permitted an enemy, and debarred from a Souldier l.1.159.
Franks or *French* of what Nations they consisted, and why so called l. 1. 198. Their actions and atchievements 199. By whom converted to the faith, and on what occasion 147. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards* 152. the vastness of their Empire, and the reasons of the decay thereof 200. The name of *Franks* given

ven by the *Turks* to all Western Christians l. 3. 55.
Formalities of the Homage done by *Edward* the 3d. to the *French* King l. 1. 183. at the degradation of Priests l. 2. 66. at the investiture of the Dukes of *Carinthia* 77. of *Maurice* Duke of *Saxony* 107. of *Albert* Duke of *Prussia* 175. of the Duke of *Moscovie* 163. at the mariages of the *Nestorians* l. 3. 131. at the Coronation of the *Great Cham* 204. at the presenting of Ambassadors to the *Grand Signeur* 155. at the funerals in *China* 208.
Free Cities what they are, how many, and in what estates l. 2. 41.
Fig-tree why cursed by our Savior, as is said in the Gospels l. 3. 73.
Frankincense where it growth, and how l. 3. 117, 118. offered to the Gods 119.
Friers, and their several Orders l. 1. 92. in what esteem among the people 93.
Fire worshipped by the *Persians* l. 3. 161. carried in State before the *Romans ib.*
Forreign Guard dangerous to a Princes person l. 4. 2 [illegible]s forreign Aides unto a kingdome 22. On what occasions usually sought, and when most necessary *ib.*
Fides Attica a Proverb, the original of it l. 2. 229.
Franciscans or *Gray Friers*, why so called and by whom founded l. 1. 92. by the *French* called *Cordeliers ib.*

G

Gentlemen of *Venice* what they are, and in what esteem l. 1. 104.
Gallican Church the power and privileges of it l. 1. 4 8. 1 ,
Gabats a leprours kind of People in what parts they dwell lib. 1 181.
Guelfes and *Gibellines* whence so called, and when l. 1. 109. & l. 2. 88. the fancy of the *Elfes* and *Goblins* derived from thence *ib.*
Germans whence so named l. 2. 36. how terrible at first to the *Romans* 43 their original extraction 42. possessed of the Western Empire 43. the power of the Emperours impaired , and by what means 47, 48. now meerly titular 118.
Guicciardine gelded by the Inquisition l. 1. 89. and the substance of him in that place *ib.*
Gunnes where invented and by whom l. 2. 39. not used in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* l. 3. 207.
Gothes their original and first seat l. 2. 141. their Kings before they left the East 142. Their successes and affairs in *Italy* l. 1. 49. in *France* 185. in *Spain* 213, 214.
S. *George* the *Cappadocian*, a famous Martyr l. 3. 12. his *Cenotaphium* at *Lidda* in the holy Land 87. highly esteemed among the *Turks* 62. his Bank in *Genoa* l. 1. 119. made Patron of the most Noble Order of the *Garter* 287.
Giges whence said to have a Ring by which made invisible l. 3. 24.
Gaulonites what they were l. 3. 72. for what cause named *Galileans ib.*
Geter the sonne of *Aram* planted in *Albania* l. 1. 10. & l. 3. 149.
Gomer the sonne of *Japhet* first setled in *Albania* also l. 1. 16. & l. 2. 17. Of his posterity see *Cimmerians.*
Galileans of what stock they were l. 3. 81. scorned by the *Jews* 85. Their zeal unto Religion 72. 85. our Savior called a *Galilean*, and why 82.
Gipseys, from whence they have both their name, and feats l. 4. 6.
Grecians, in what they differ from the Church of *Rome* l. 2. 217. by which maliciously and unjustly persecuted *ib.* Their language not of such extent as in former times *ibid.*

H

H a Letter ominous to the State of *England* l. 2. 274.
Hebrew not the primitive language l. 1. 18. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews ib.*
Historie defined l. 1. 21. the necessary use of it, and to whom 19, 20. how it differeth from *Annalls*, *Commentaries*, *&c.* 21.
Heteroscii what they are in *Geography*, and from whence so called l. 1. 25.
Hydrography what it is, and by whom best written l. 1. 27.
Harlets whence used for the name of a common Prostitute li. 1. 163.
Holy oil of Rhemes in what state attended l. 1. 158. not so antient as the *French* pretend *ib.*
Hugonots whence so called lib. 1. 168. Their great power once, and present condition 148.
Hock-tide sports, the original of them, and from whence so named l. 1. 283.
Havilah the sonne of *Chus*, first planted about *Babylonia* l. 1. 13. called thence the Land of *Havilah*, in the second of *Gen.* lib. 3. 163.
Havilah the sonne of *Joktan* first seated in *India* l. 1. 12. the Kingdomes of *Ava* and *Chavilah* so called from him *ib.* & l. 3. 239.
Hollanders their great strength at Sea l. 2. 21. the great benefit they make by fishing on the Coast of *England* l. 1. 262. & l. 2. 5. Their base cheat put upon the *English* at the Isle of *Polerone* l. 3. 249. and bloody butcherie at *Amboyna* 251.
Hanse-Towns why so called, how many, and of what power at Sea l. 2. 41.
Hercynian Forrest, the beginning and extent thereof l. 2 42.
Harpies the Fable and the Moral l. 2. 265.
Homers birth, how contended for l. 3. 22. where born, and why called *Mæonides* 23, 24.
Hellenists what they were, and why so called l. 2. 215. & l. 3. 70. in what differing from the other *Jews ib.*
Herodians what they were, and from whence denominated lib. 3. 72.
Hamath or the Land of *Hamath* l. 3. 57. the Kings and Story of it *ibid.*
Hegira, the *Mahometan Epoche* l. 1. 22. from whence so called lib. 3. 158. the unstedfastnes of *Scaliger* about it *ibid.*
Hieroglyphicks what they were, and by whom first used l. 4. 4. some particulars of them.
Hul or *Chul* the sonne of *Aram*, in what parts first settled l. 1. 10. l. 3. 144.
S. *Hieronne* a Father of the Church, where born l. 2. 183. the Order of Monkes by him instituted lib. 1. 92.
Huanacu a strange beast, and the nature of it l. 4. 148.

I

I *Nfluence* of the heavenly bodies on particular Countries l. 1. 19.
Japhet how made partaker of the blessing of God, *Gen.* 9. 27. both in the Literal sence, and the Mysticall l. 1. 33.

Italians

Italians derived from *Cetim* the ſonne of *Japhet* l. 1. 37. ſo called from the *Æolians* 37, 38. by whom converted to the faith 36. their ſcandalous lives how puniſhed, and by what inſtruments 50.

Italie the name at firſt of the Eaſt parts of the Countrey only l.1.59. communicated after to the whole *ib.*& 34. the Kings thereof after the ruin of the Empire 52. abandoned by the Emperors, and for what reaſons *ib.*& 51.

Iland how cauſed l. 1. 23. whether better ſeated than the Continent *ib.*

Iſthmian Games l.2.227.

Joctan and his poſterity ſettled Originally in the Eaſt l.1.11,12.& l.3.138. the improbalities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix* 11. greater of their tranſplanting into *America* l.4 135.

Jarach the ſonne of *Joctan*, more probably to be found in *Arachoſia* than *Inſula Hieracum* lib. 1. 12.

Javan the ſonne of *Japhet*, the father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* l.1.16.l.2.228.l.3.22.

Japyx the name of the North-weſt wind, and why given unto it l. 1. 61.

Inquiſition when and why ordained l.1.231. The manner of proceeding in it *ib.* not admitted into many of the Papal Countreys *ib.*

Ireland why never conquered till the reign of King *James* lib. 1. 314.

John Baptiſts head how pittifully mangled by the Papiſts l.2.50.

Iulius Scaliger his cenſure of *Heſiodus* controuled by *Velleius* l. 2. 232. his baſe character of the *Engliſh* cenſured l.1.263.

Ioſeph Scaliger his ſingularity about *Nabonidus* l. 3. 138. and *Darius Medus*, *ibid.* His unſteadfaſtneſs about the *Hegira* 158.

Interim of *Germany* what it was, and how ill liked of all parties l. 2.67.

Imperial Chamber why erected, and where ſettled l.2.49. *Imperial Cities* v. Free.

Ioan the Virgin, not a witch, as the *Engliſh* l.2.63. nor ſo miraculouſly ſent as the *French* pretend *ibid.* what ſhe was indeed *ibid.*

Invention of Clocks, and Watches, l. 2. 4. of Pictures in glaſs, and laying colours in oil *ib.* of Printing 22. of Gunnes 39. Leathern Ordnance 174 Of wildfire Of the Battle-Ax l. 3. 9. of Watchwords 256. Of Dice, Cheſs, &c. 23. Of tragedies 35. Of Sailes for ſhips 37. Of Arithmetick and Aſtromony 52. Of the Purple die 54. Of Chryſtal glaſs *ib.* Of Paſtorals, Hour-glaſſes, military Engines l.1.68. Of Comedies 70 Of the Mariners compaſs lib. 1. 57. and l. 4. 99. Of Tacle for ſhips l.4. 98. of Letters, and Cyphers 5. of Brachygraphie 6. Of Paper l.4.9.

Jacobites what they are, and where moſt numerous l. 3.133. their Opinions *ib.* 134.

Indians or *Chriſtians of St. Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion l.3.214. The ſubmiſſion of their Churches to the Pope *ibidem.*

Indico, where and how it groweth l.3.222.

Janizaries, their inſtitution and number l.3.153. their office and power *ib.* their inſolencies and puniſhments 154. the likelieſt men to carry the *Turkiſh* Empire, if the line of *Ottomon* ſhould fail 157.

Jetur the ſonne of *Iſmael*, the father of the *Iturœans* l. 3.77.

Jews not ſuffered to land in *Cyprus* l.2.42. expulſed out of *England France*, and *Spain* 206. in danger to be ſtoned every *Maundy-Thurſday ib.* The hopes and hindrances of their converſion *ib.* the reſtitution of their Kingdome not denyed by Chriſt 107.

Iſrael and *Judah* when divided l.2. 102. the reaſons why no more united, though ſome opportunities were offered 101.

Jealouſie a predominant paſſion amongſt the *Italians* l.1.53. as alſo amongſt the *Moores* and *Spaniards* 208. the *Engliſh* little ſubject to it *ib.* 200. and the *Dutch* much leſs l.2.141.*b.*

Jeſuites by whom firſt inſtituted l. 92, 93. their vow of *Miſſion* 93. grown formidable to the *Popes ib.* induſtrious in planting Chriſtianity in the barbarous nations l. 3. 208. Chief Factors for the Kings of *Spain* l.1.201. They and the *Preſbyterian* or *Puritan* Preachers the great Incendiaries of Chriſtendome l.1.92.

Judges of Hell, what and who they were l.2.257,262. and why ſo accompted of *ib.*

K

Τὰ Κ-καικίσα, a Proverb, and of of whom intended l.2.261.

Καταδόκης, and Καταδόκιον τέκος, proverbially uſed for a wicked perſon l.3.12.

Kings called an ordinance of man, and why l.1.5. who of them antiently anointed 216. how they take precedency 286. not to uſe their people to the wars l. 2. 33. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen* l.2.54.

Kings evils a diſeaſe l.1. 131: the Cure therof hereditary to the kings of *England* 283.

Knighthood v. Orders

L

Lud the ſonne *Sem*, the father of the *Lydians* in *Aſia Minor* l.1.10.l.3.24.

Lehabim the Father of the *Libyæ Ægyptii* l.1.14.& l.4.16.

Ludim the ſonne of *Mizraim*, the father of the *Æthiopians* in *Africk* l.1.14.& l.4.69. improperly rendred *Lydians* in our *Engliſh* Bibles *Jer.* 16.9. *ibid*

Lady of *Loretto* her Legend l. 3. 88. the ſumptuoſity of her Temple l.1.81.

Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence ſo called l.1.34. The *Latine* tongue not the language of *Italy* 36. The reaſons of the ſpreading and extent thereof *ib.*

Lombards their original and firſt kings l.2.186. their affairs in *Italy* l. 1. 51. the ſubverſion of their kingdome there 51.

Luther his Birth, & firſt contentions with the Pope l 2. 105. the ſucceſs and ſpreading of his doctrine 106. and by what means ſpecially *ibid.* the Government of the *Lutheran* Churches 41. the condition of their Miniſters *ib.* their Rites and Ceremonies not much different from thoſe in the Church of *England ibid.*

Libertas prophetandi what, and where moſt in uſe l.2.166.

Liburni the name of a light veſſel l 2. 191. and of ſuch chaires as we call *Sedans ibid.* and from whence ſo named *ibid.*

Libanus a famous mountain, why ſo named l.3.51. the length, courſe and branches of it *ib.* & 9.

Lyſanias the Tetrarch of *Abilene*, whoſe

whose sonne he was l. 3. 81. why reckoned *Luke* 3. among *Herods* Children 64.
Levites why scattered and divided among the Tribes l. 3. 96. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ibid.*
Labyrinth of *Egypt* l. 4 9. for what causes made *ib* imitated by *Minos* in that of *Crete* l. 2. 261.
Letters, the first original, and history of them lib. 2. 2. & lib. 4 45.
Lemnia or *Terra Lemnia*, the soveraign vertues of it l. 2. 256 how made and ordered *ib.* why called *Terra Sigillata. ib.*

M

Man why created unarmed and naked l. 1. 4. the image of God in him, what it doth consist in *ibid.*
Monarchy, the neerest form of government to that of God lib. 1. 5. The Monarchs of *Spain* 253. of the *English Saxons* 262. of the *Assyrians* l. 3. 136. of the *Medes* and *Persians* 167.
Maires of the Palace, their institution and authority l. 1. 199. the Catalogue and succession of them *ibid.*
Massacres of the *Scythians* by the *Medes* l. 3. 193. of the *Romans* by *Mithridates* 10. of the *Danes* by the *English* lib. 1. 283. of the *French* in *Sicil* 74. of the *Hugonots* by the *French* 148.
Monks their original and increase l. 1. 92 by whom first brought under certain rules *ibidem* their several and particular Orders 92. &c.
Mesha and Mount *Sephar* mentioned *Gen.* 10. in what place they were l. 1. 12. l. 3, 12. 15.
Monastick life how accompted of in the former times l. 1. 96. whether to be preferred before a sociable *ibid.*
Mosaick work, what it is l. 1. 102.
Marcheta mulieris a barbarous custome of the *Scots* lib. 1. 296. whence named and by whom abrogated *ib.*
Moscovites, by whom converted; and of what opinions in religion l. 2. 151. from what Original they come 161.
Mares why used in battell among some of the Antients l. 2. 211.
Minotaure the Fable and true story of it l. 2. 261
Mithridates the Author of the Antidote so named lib. 3. 10. the Summe and substance of his Story *ibid.*
Masick the several sorts and effects thereof l. 3. 17. used by the primitive Christians in Gods publick service *ibid.*
Mysiorum postremus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 18.
Myrtoum Mare where it was, and from whence so named l. 3. 38.
Mastick what it is, where growing, and how gathered lib. 3. 35.
Melchites what they are, and from whence denominated l. 3. 50.
Maronites whence so called, their Tenets, and place of dwelling l. 3. 50. Their reconciliation with the Pope but a matter of complement *ibid.*
Mahomet, his birth and breeding l. 3. 120. his design to coin a new Religion *ib.* the causes of the great groweth and increase thereof 123. his succes and victories 122, 124.
Mongul, a Tribe of *Tartars* l. 3. 203. the Title of the great Emperors of the hither *Indi* 236. the Catalogue and succession of them *ibid.*
Magi, what they were in *Persia* l. 3. 161. Their esteem and power *ibid.*
Miramomoline what the word doth signifie lib. 4. 42. the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco ibid.*
Mariners compass by whom first invented, and by whom perfected l. 1. 57. & l. 4. 99. erroneously ascribed to *Solomon ib.*
Magnes why used to signifie the Load-stone by the *Latine* Writers l. 4. 99.
Morses, or Sea-horses, the description, and use made of them l. 4. 105.
Money not the onely instrument of exchange in the elder times lib. 4. 65. by what names called, and why *ibid.* Made sometimes of Leather and Pastbord 149. 150.
Mesech the sonne of *Aram*, planted about *Mons Masius* l. 1. 10. & l. 3. 136.
Mesech or *Mosoch* the sonne of *Japhet*, settled amongst the *Montes Moschici* in *Armenia Major* l. 1. 15, 16. & l. 3. 144.
Mogog the sonne of *Japhet* in *Cœle-Syria* and the borders of *Iberia* l. 1. 15. l. 3. 64.
Mizraim the son of *Cham*, the Father of the Nation of *Egypt* l. 1. 14. & l. 4. 3. 18.
Messene Servilior a Proverb, the occasion of it l. 2. 21.
Mastiff Dogs, why called *Molosse* by the *Latines* l. 2. 238.
Merced, an order of Religious persons, their institution, and employment l. 1. 237.

N

National Animosities to what cause ascribed l. 1. 19.
Normans what they were originally l. 1. 164. & lib. 2. 135. Their actions and Achievements *ibid.* when first fixt in *France* lib. 1. 164.
Nunnes, why so called, and by whom first instituted lib. 1. 93. Their particular Orders *ibidem.* of ill report for their unchastity *ibid.*
Nemæan Games, by whom first instituted, and on what occation l. 2. 225.
Names fatal to some Kingdomes l. 3. 109.
Nethinims what they were, and in what employed l. 3. 92.
Noahs seven Precepts, or the Precepts of the sonnes of *Noah* lib. 3. 71.
Naphtha the nature of it, and where most used lib. 3. 158. 163.
Nomades where they dwelt, and from whence denominated lib. 3. 193. l. 4. 32.
Navigation, the Original and story of it l. 4. 97. what nations most famous for it in the former times 98. and who at present *ib.* & l. 1. 165.
North-East passage by whom attempted and pursued l. 4. 154. Of the *North-West* passage *ib.* The litle probability of doing any good in either *ib.*
Nimrod, the Founder of the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Kingdoms l. 1. 13. l. 3. 136.
Nestorians whence so called l. 3. 131. their Tenets in Religion *ibid.* much hated by the Pope, and why 133.
Naphtuchim the sonne of *Mizraim*, where first planted l. 1. 14. & l. 4. 17. the name of *Neptune*, by some said to be thence derived *ibid.*
Nutmegs, how they grow, and where most plentiful l. 3. 250.

O

Ocean the Collection of waters l. 1. 26. the causes of its ebbing and flowing *ibid.* the Etymologie of the name, and vast greatnes of it 256.

Oropasia, a kind of Divination lib. 1. 49. an experiment of it *ibid.*

Ostracism, what it was, whence called, and with whom in use l. 2. 229.

Ovation, how it differeth from a Triumph lib. 1. 41. from whence so called *ib.* in what cases granted *ibid.*

Oracles which most famous lib. 2. 234. Their ambiguity and decay 234, 235.

Olympick Games by whom first instituted and restored l. 2. 220. where held, and who were Judges in them *ib.* All the Victors at one time of one City in *Italy* l. 1. 60.

Ostrich Feathers, why and how long the Cognizance of the Princes of *Wales* l. 1. 295.

Ovid why banisher into *Pontus* l. 2. 210.

Oleum Mediacum, v. *Naphta.*

Ophir not the Province of *Sofala* in *Ethiopia* l. 4. 75. where it rather was l. 1. 12.

Orders of Knighthood, of *Avis* 244. *Alcantara* l. 1. 237. of the *Annunciada* 178. of Saint *Andrew* 306. of Saint *Antony* l. 4. 72. of the Blood of our Lord Jesus Christ 87. Of the Bath 285. of *Baronets* 287. of the *Crescent* 170. of *Calatrava* 237. of *Dutch* Knights l. 2. 180. of the Dragon l. 2. 190. of the Elephant l. 2. 138. of the Golden Fleece l. 2. 31. of the *Gennet* 204. of the *Garter* l. 2. 87. of the Holy Ghost l. 1. 105. of Saint *Jago* l. 1. 237. of Saint *John* l. 3. 109. and l. 4. 47. of Jesus Christ 244. of Saint *Michael* 204. of Saint *Mark* 107. of *Merced* l. 237. of *Montesa* l. 1. 251. of *Nova Scotia* l. 1. 106. & l. 4. 107. of the *Patrie* or twelve Peers 204. of the Round Table l. 1. 287. of the Star l. 1. 204. of Saint *Stephen* l. 1. 113. of the Sepulchre l. 3. 109 of the *Templars* l. 3. 109. of Saint *Saviour* l. 1. 151. of the Glorious Virgin l. 1. 107.

Oratorians an order of Religious persons by whom first instituted l. 1. 93. used for a counterpoise to the *Jesuites ib.*

P

Persien and *Persees*, what they are in Geography lib. 1. 25.

Pretorian Guards by whom instituted and by whom cassiered l. 1. 46. Their power, the great authority of their Captains *August.* 20.

Peter-pence, by whom first granted to the Popes l. 1. 91. b.

Patricians a new Order devised by *Constantine*, and what it was l. 1. 46.

Pathrusim first planted in the land of *Pathros* l. 1. 14. & l. 4. 13.

Phalg, where probably first planted l. 1. 16. & l. 3.

Phut, the sonne of *Cham*, Father of the *Moores* or *Mauritanians* l. 1. 14, 15. l. 4. 26, 27.

Pope or *Papa* what it signifieth l. 1. 87. Common at first to other Bishops *ib.* the opportunities those of *Rome* had to advance their greatnes *ib. a* The meanes and steps by which they did attain to their temporal power 89. and still keep the same 90. how easie to be made hereditary 90, 91. Their Forces and Revenues 91. &c.

Presbyterian Discipline by whom first framed l. 1. 139. and how after propagated 140. the introduction of it into the Signeurie of *Geneva* 139. and the Realm of *Scotland* 298. why so importunately desired by some in *England* 266.

Petalism what it was, and where most in use l. 1. 70.

Picts what they were, and the story of them l. 1. 300.

Protestants where first so called and why l. 2. 56. the whole story of them 105, 106. the causes of the great increase of their Doctrines 106. their principal oversight 107.

Philippicks given by *Tully* for the name of his Orations against *M. Antony* l. 2. 235.

Pasiphae, how far the Fable of her may be thought historicall lib. 2. 262.

Parchment, in *Latine Pergamena*, where invented first l. 3. 21.

Phryges sero sapiunt, a Proverb, and the occasion of it lib. 3. 17.

Proselytes what amongst the *Jewes* l. 3. 71. the several sorts of them and to what obliged *ib.*

Pharisees, whence they had their name lib. 3. 71. Their *Dogmata*, and authority amongst the people 72.

Priests of the Jews provided of a liberal maintenance l. 3. 96. who they were whom they called the Chief Priests 73 of the High Priest and when made a Saleable Office 73. how *Annas* and *Caiaphas* were High Priests at the same time *ibid.* Their power and succession after the Captivity l. 3. 104.

Pelethites, who and why so called l. 3. 87.

Psalmes of Degrees, how many and why so named l. 3. 95.

Partition-wall, alluded to *Eph.* 2. 14. what and where it was lib. 3. 95.

Paradise where it was indeed lib. 3. 127. the severall fancies and opinions touching that particular *ibid.*

Prometheus, why feigned to be tortured by a Vultur l. 3. 170.

Pyramides of *Aegypt* their vast greatnes, by whom built, and why l. 4. 7.

Paper where first invented, and why so called l. 4. 9.

Printing where first invented, and by whom l. 2. 22. how much abused in these later times lib. 3. 207.

Palmes antiently used as a sign of Victory l. 4. 4. Set by the Christians in Church-yards, and for what reason *ibid.* of the rare nature of the Tree l. 4. 50.

Pygmeys where l. 1. dwel. l. 4. 57.

Presbyter John the name of the King of *Tenduc* l. 3. 202 erroneously ateribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abassine* Emp. *ib.* The ground of the mistake, and right name of that Prince l. 4. 70.

Pigritia, the name of a strange Creature in *America* l. 4.

Pellenea vestis, a By-word, and the meaning of it l. 2. 219.

Pluto why fancied by the Poets for the God of Hell l. 2. 237.

R

Rivers, their use, and condi-ons requisite for navigation l. 1. 27. the banks of great Rivers how defensible l. 3. 19.

Roy d'Yvetot a *French* By-word, the meaning and occasion of it l. 1. 162.

Religion naturally ingrafted in the heart

heart of man l. 1. 31. how it ſtandeth in relation to the parts of the World 31. 32.
Rome, of what circuit in her glory l. 1. 85. the number of its inhabitants *ib.* the extent of her Dominions 47. once made a Godeſs, and by whom l. 3. 24. Her Revenues computed at 150. millions of Crowns l. 1. 47. Her Empire ſubverted by *Conſtantine*, and how 48.
Roman Emperours, the ſucceſſion of them l. 1. 45. cut off by violent deaths till the time of *Conſtantine* 46. and the cauſe thereof *ib.* their negligence and degenerate ſloth 48.
Rex Romanorum what he is l. 2. 47. by whom and for what cauſe ordained.
Rhene, the fountain and courſe thereof l. 2. 6. 42. the ſeveral branches by which it falleth into the Ocean l. 2. 6.
Rhodian Laws, the Rule in former times of all marine cauſes l. 3. 49. and for how long they ſo continued *ibid.*
Red Sea from whence it had the name lib. 3. 120. how far extended by that name, *ibid.* & l. 4. 83.
Rhabarb or *Rhubard* where it groweth, and the vertues of it l. 3. 190. 202.
Retiredneſs from the Vulgar eye uſed by divers Princes lib. 4. 71.
Regma the ſon of *Chus* firſt planted on the ſhores of the *Perſian* Gulf l. 1. 13 & l. 3. 119.
Riphath the ſonne of *Gomer*, found in *Paphlagonia* lib. 1. 15.
Rhamnuſia why given for an adjunct unto *Nemeſis*, and what *Nemeſis* was l. 2. 229.

S

Sela the ſonne of *Arphaxad*, in what parts ſetled l. 1. 10. l. 3. 163.
Sheba, *Sabta*, and *Sabteca*, the ſonnes of *Chus*, all planted in *Arabia Felix*, and there the founders of the puiſſant nation of the *Sabeans* lib. 1. 13. lib. 3. 119.
Sabeans of *Arabia* the *Deſert*, from what root they came lib. 3. 113.
Seba the ſonne of *Jocktan*, planted upon the River *Indus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe* l. 1. 12. l. 3. 238.
Schola Salerni by whom writ, and to whom dedicated lib. 1. 57.
Siculæ Gerræ l. 1. 68. *Veſperi Siculi* 74. *Siculi Tyranni* 73. three By-words, and the meaning of them.
Sardonicus riſus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 1. 75.
Salique Law what it truely is l. 1. 149. not ſo antient as the *French* pretend *ib.* nor at all regarded by them but to ſerve the turns of ſome Uſurpers *ibid.* the inconveniences and injuſtice of it *ib.*
Seminaries for the *Engliſh*, by whom firſt erected, and where lib. 1. 158.
Sterling-money, why ſo called l. 1. 199.
Spaniards from whence they do deſcend l. 1. 212, by whom converted to the Faith 210. The dependence of the Popes on the Crown thereof *ibid.* their aim at the fift Monarchy *ib.* the greatneſs of their Empire 252. and the weakneſs of it 253. their crueltie towards the *Americans* l. 4. 100. &c.
Spa, medicinable waters, where, and for what moſt uſefull l. 2. 17.
Souldiers and great Commanders unfortunate for the moſt part, and why l. 2. 229.
Scanaerbeg his life and ſtory l. 2. 241. what became of his body *ib.* & 194.
Scots why ſo called l. 1. 296. their proceedings in the Reformation 298. their Kingdome held in vaſſallage to the Crown of *England* 105, 106.
Salmacida ſpolia a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 25.
Streights of Mountains, not to be abandoned by the Defendants l. 3. 30. the loſing of ſuch Paſſes of what fatal conſequence 19.
Syriack language what it was, and of what ingredients l. 3. 51. 72. when firſt made vulgar to the *Jews ib.*
Syrian Godeſs what ſhe was l. 2. 58. her magnificent Temple, *ib.* the deceits and jugling of her Prieſts, *ib.*
Syrorum multa olera; *Syri contra Phœnices*; two Proverbs, and the meaning of them 3. 58.
Seleucus a great builder l. 3. 59. his ſtrange riſe and fortunes 68.
Saduces whence they had their name l. 3. 71. their opinions and *dogmata*, *ib.*
Scribes what they were, when inſtituted l. 3. 72. and of what authority 73.
Samaritans what they were, l. 3. 81. Their Religion, Tenets, and Sects 85, 86. how hated by the Jews, and why 86. 88.
Simeon the ſonne of *Jacob*, how diſperſed in *Iſrael*, as his father propheſied l. 3. 90.
Solomons Porch, mentioned *Joh.* 10. 3. where and what it was 94.
Sclaves or *Sclavonians* whence ſo called l. 2. 298. Their affairs and ſtory, *ib.* given as a name to Bondmen, and on what occaſion 191.
Saracens why ſo called l. 3. 111. 114. their Character in former-times 114. they reſort to *Mahomet* 124. Their ſucceſſes, victories, and *Caliphs* 125. &c.
Scythians their original, antiquity, and achievements l. 3. 197. Their expedition into *Media* l. 3. 196. and ſucceſs in *Lydia* 191.
Soo h-ſaying how many kinds, and by whom each kind thereof invented l. 3. 137.
Sardanapalus an effeminate king l. 3. 160. why he burnt his Treaſure l. 3. 137.
Silks why called *Serica* by the *Latines* l. 3. 199.
Sibyls what they were, how many, and where they dwelt l. 4. 15. not counterfeited by the antient Fathers *ib.*
Silver and Gold where moſt plentifull l. 4. 149. the rich mines of *Potoſi* 154. how vilified by the *Utopians* 150. the cauſes of the dearneſs of things in our daies 150. not ſo advantageous to a State, as trade and merchandiſe *ib.*
Samia Vaſa what and how highly prized l. 3. 37.
Styx, a River of *Greece*, the uſual oath of the *Gods* l. 2. 222.
Sugars, when and by whom firſt refined l. 4. 80. what uſed inſtead thereof in the elder times *ib.* the great quantities thereof ſent yearly by the *Portugals* from the Iſle of S. *Thomas*, *ib.* and from their Sugar-works in *Braſil*.
Seriphia Rana, an old Proverb, the occaſion and meaning of it l. 2. 261.

T

Topographie what it is li. 2. 27. how it differeth from *Geographie*, *ib.*
Tarſhiſh the ſonne of *Javan*, planted about *Tarſus* in *Cilicia* l. 1. 16. l. 3. 31. not in *Tarteſſus*, as ſome ſay l. 1. 16.

Thiras the Father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasius* l. 1. 17. & lib. 2. 248
Togarma or *Torgama*, the sonne of *Japhet*, founder of the *Troemi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* l. 1. 15. l. 3. 13.
Tubal the sonne of *Javan*, first planted in *Iberia* l. 1. 16. l. 3. 148. the *Spaniards* how derived from him l. 1. 212.
Triumphs their originall and majesty l. 1. 41. in what they differed from an Ovation *ib.* in what cases denied a Conqueror 41. 42. when discontinued and laid by 42.
Tarantula a disease, how cured, l. 1. 62.
Tolosanum Aurum, a Proverb; the meaning and occasion of it l. 1. 184.
Tragedies by whom invented l. 3. 35.
Title of most *Christian* King, why given unto the Kings of *France* l. 1. 200. of *Catholick* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 252. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 285. of Defenders of the Church to the *Switzers* l. 2. 142. b. of *Basileus* to the Kings of *Bulgaria* l. 2. 211. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* l. 1. 184. l. 2. 216.
Tenedia Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it l. 3. 34.
Tails of sheep (and of no beasts else) why used in Sacrifice l. 3. 58.
Troy not besieged ten years together by the *Greeks*, and at last how taken li. 3. 16.
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differed from the former l. 3. 94. repaired and beautified by *Herod ib.* the several Courts about it 94, 95. all of them in the name of the *Temple ib.*
Turks, their originall, and conquests l. 3. 150. Their Kings and Emperours 151. Their persons, customs, and Religion 152. Their Estate and power 153. 156.
Timariots what they be, their institution and number l. 3. 153.
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* l. 3. 186. from whence most probably descended 203. their affairs and victories 203, 204.
Tamerlane his birth and parentage l. 3. 195. the summe and substance of his story *ib.*
Sr. *Thomas Moor*, no friend to Friers l. 1. 93. his new plot for wooing not approved of l. 4. 56. his device to bring Gold and silver into contempt fit for none but *Utopians* l. 4. 149.
Traffick, and the story of it l. 4. 9, 10. more advantageous to a State than mines of Gold and Silver. *ib.*
Tabacco where most plentifull l. 4. 143. why called the *Henbane* of *Peru ib.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the vertues ascribed unto it, examined *ibid.* by whom first brought into *England ibid.*
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* under God himself l. 3. 100.

V

Vina Massica whence so called and of what esteem l. 1 57.
Vidames in *France*, how many and what they are l. 1. 170.
Vandois, the same which the Latines call *Waldenses* l. 1. 193. Their life and doctrines, *ib.*
Ulisses not so farre as *Lisbon* l. 1. 238. the summe and substance of his story l. 2. 264.
Venus, whence called *Cytherea* l. 2. 260. whence *Dea Cypr.* l. 3. 4. 43. whence *Paphia* l. 3. 43. the brutishnels of the *Cypriots* both men and women in their Feasts, and Sacrifices 42, 43.
Ur the birth-place of *Abraham*, a Town of *Mesopotamia* l. 3. 135. that it was not in *Chaldea*, as by most supposed *ib.*
Uz or *Hus*, the Country and dwelling of *Job*, whereabouts it was l. 3. 112.
Virgils Fable of *Dido* disproved l. 4. 27. his *Æneas* suspected l. 3. 16.
Vandals, their first Seat l. 2. 200. their affairs, story, and the succession of their Kings l 4. 28, 29.
Vayvod, the meaning of the word l. 2. 203. the *Vayvods* of *Transilvania ib.* of *Moldavia*, 204. and *Walachia* 206.
Versoria in *Plautus*, what it is l 4 99. not used there for the Mariners compass, as by some supposed *ib.*
Vicugne, a strange, but profitable beast among the *Americans*, and the nature of it l. 4. 101. the *Bezar* found in the belly of it *ib.*

W

World why created l. 1. 1. how long since 3. Peopled before the generall Flood 6. the East parts planted before the attempt at *Babel* 17, 18. l. 3. 217. called *Cosmos* by the Greeks, and *Mundus* by the Latines from the beauties of it l. 1. 31. unequally divided in respect of Religion 31, 32.
Wallons what they are, and why so called l. 2. 4. & li. 1. 288.
Writing the original of it l. 4. 4. and the several forms l. 3. 207.
White-Friers from whence so called, and by whom first institutued l. 1. 92. called also *Carmelites*, and why, *ib.*
Whales, their dimensions and vast greatness l. 2. 213.

X

Xeriffe why used for the title of the Kings of *Morocco* l. 4. 43. the Catalogue and succession of them, *ib.*

Y

Yeugh-trees why planted in Church-yards l 4. 4.

A Computation of the forein Coins herein mentioned, with the English.

	l	s	d
Hebrew Talent in gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Ægyptian Talent	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Sestertium of *Rome*	7	16	3
A Shekel	00	2	6
Argenteus *Mat.* 26. 15.	00	2	6
A Drachma	00	00	7 ob
A Rubble	00	13	4
A Sultany	00	7	6
A Ducat	00	6	8
A French Crown	0	6	6
A Xeriffe	0	6	0
A Rix Doller	0	4	8
A Floren	0	3	0
A Frank	0	2	0
A Livre	0	2	0
A Gulden	0	2	0
A Spanish Reall	0	0	6
A Sous	0	0	1 qc
A Turkish Aspar	0	0	1 q
A Maravidis	0	0	0 q